



VIDEHA

विदेह

ISSN 2229-547X · www.videha.co.in



HISTORY OF MITHILA, VAJJI & ANGA

IN INDIA & NEPAL

VOLUME II

*Socio-Cultural-Economic History of Mithila, Vajji & Anga
in India & Nepal*

FROM PREHISTORY TO THE CONTEMPORARY PERIOD



VOLUME II OF II

Companion to Volume I — General and Political History

MITHILA / VIDEHA

VAJJI

ANGA

GAJENDRA THAKUR

Editor, Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal

ISSN 2229-547X · www.videha.co.in

HISTORY OF MITHILA, VAJJI & ANGA

IN INDIA & NEPAL — VOLUME II

Socio-Cultural-Economic History of Mithila, Vajji & Anga in India & Nepal

From Prehistory to the Contemporary Period

Gajendra Thakur

Editor, Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal

ISSN 2229-547X · www.videha.co.in

Publication Note

© Gajendra Thakur/ Preeti Thakur, 2026. All rights reserved except where a source or licence is stated otherwise.

History of Mithila, Vajji & Anga: From Prehistory to the Contemporary Period vol. 1 General and political history vol 2 socio-cultural-economic history **ISBN Number** : 978-93-344-9415-0

Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal · ISSN 2229-547X · www.videha.co.in

This volume is designed as a single 8 × 11 inch hardback edition. Maps, charts, diagrams and analytical figures prepared for the volume are reproduced in colour.

Historical names, administrative units and language labels are used according to period and evidence. Their appearance in one chapter does not imply timeless territorial, linguistic or social equivalence.

Editorial Note on Historical Method

The book distinguishes Mahākavi Vidyāpati, the earlier Maithili Padāvalī poet placed before Jyotirīśvara in the adopted framework, from the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura associated with the Oiniwar court and Sanskrit/Avahatṭa works. Evidence belonging to one figure is not transferred automatically to the other.

Śrottriya is not projected backward as a fixed medieval Maithil Brahmin sub-caste. In this volume, its emergence as a distinct sub-caste is treated as a much later development, around 1800 CE, on the basis of the Panji/Śākhā-pustak chronology adopted for the project.

Mithila, Videha, Vajji/Vṛji, Anga, Tīrhut, Madhesh/Tarai and modern administrative units are treated as overlapping historical-geographical frames rather than interchangeable names with permanent borders.

Literary memory, mythology, ritual tradition, archaeology, inscriptions, manuscript evidence, administrative records, census categories, ethnography and modern statistics are kept analytically distinct and are used according to the kinds of claims they can support.

Contents

PART I — LAND, ENVIRONMENT AND THE MAKING OF HUMAN LANDSCAPES	23
Chapter 1 — The Physical Foundations of Society.....	24
Chapter 2 — Prehistoric Settlement and Subsistence	32
Chapter 3 — CHALCOLITHIC AND EARLY AGRARIAN COMMUNITIES	42
Chapter 4 — ARCHAEOLOGY OF FOOD AND EVERYDAY LIFE	49
Chapter 5 — ENVIRONMENT, MOBILITY AND SETTLEMENT.....	57
PART II — EARLY HISTORIC SOCIETY: VIDEHA, VAJJI AND ANGA.....	63
Chapter 6 — THE SECOND URBANISATION	64
Chapter 7 — HOUSEHOLD AND FAMILY IN EARLY HISTORIC SOCIETY	72
Chapter 8 — SOCIAL DIFFERENTIATION BEFORE FIXED CASTE NARRATIVES.....	80
Chapter 9 — WOMEN IN EARLY MITHILA-VAJJI-ANGA.....	89
Chapter 10 — AGRICULTURE AND THE RURAL ECONOMY	97
Chapter 11 — CRAFTS AND TECHNOLOGY.....	105
Chapter 12 — Trade, Merchants and Markets.....	113
Chapter 13 — Vaishali as an Economic and Social Centre.....	122
Chapter 14 — Anga and Champa	130
Chapter 15 — Early money and monetisation	138
Chapter 16 — Buddhist and Jain institutional economies	148
Chapter 17 — Education, debate and intellectual communities.....	159
Chapter 18 — Health, medicine and the body.....	168
PART III — RELIGION, RITUAL AND CULTURAL FORMATION	178
Chapter 19 — From Vedic ritual landscapes to regional religious cultures.....	179
Chapter 20 — Buddhism in the social history of Vajji and Videha.....	189
Chapter 21 — Jainism and the Vaishali-Videha landscape	198
Chapter 22 — Śaiva, Śākta and Vaiṣṇava transformations	207
Chapter 23 — Sacred geography.....	216
Chapter 24 — Festivals and calendrical culture.....	225
Chapter 25 — Death, ancestors and life-cycle rites	235
PART IV — EARLY MEDIEVAL AND MEDIEVAL SOCIAL TRANSFORMATION.....	244
Chapter 26 — Land Grants and Changing Agrarian Society	245
Chapter 27 — Village, Market and Town.....	254
Chapter 28 — Labour, Service and Occupational Communities	264
Chapter 29 — Social Classification and Its Historical Formation	272
Chapter 30 — Brahmanical Institutions without Retrospective Caste Projection	281
Chapter 31 — The Panji Tradition	290
Chapter 32 — Women, Marriage and Property in Medieval Mithila	299
Chapter 33 — Karnata and Oiniwar-Period Social Economy	308
Chapter 34 — Islam, Migration and New Social Worlds	317
Chapter 35 — Persianate Culture and Mithila-Anga	326
PART V — LANGUAGE, LITERATURE AND KNOWLEDGE AS SOCIAL HISTORY.....	333
Chapter 36 — Languages Before Modern Standardisation	334

Chapter 37 — Formation of Literary Maithili.....	343
Chapter 38 — The Two Vidyāpatis and Two Historical Contexts	352
Chapter 39 — Tirhuta/Mithilakshar and Scribal Culture.....	360
Chapter 40 — Oral Culture	368
Chapter 41 — Angika and the Eastern Linguistic-Cultural Zone.....	376
Chapter 42 — Bajjika and Western Mithila	385
Chapter 43 — Sanskrit Learning and Scholastic Institutions.....	394
PART VI — MATERIAL CULTURE AND THE ARTS	402
Chapter 44 — Architecture and Settlement	403
Chapter 45 — Dress, Textiles and Ornament.....	412
Chapter 46 — Food History of Mithila, Vajji and Anga	420
Chapter 47 — Mithila Painting Before and Beyond the Modern Art Market	428
Chapter 48 — Mithila Painting and the Twentieth-Century Cultural Economy.....	436
Chapter 49 — Music, Song and Performance	445
Chapter 50 — Theatre and Dramatic Cultures	453
Chapter 51 — Fairs, Markets and Public Culture	461
PART VII — EARLY MODERN AND COLONIAL ECONOMIC TRANSFORMATIONS....	468
Chapter 52 — Mughal-Period Land, Revenue and Agrarian Society.....	469
Chapter 53 — Trade between Bengal, Bihar, Nepal and the Gangetic World.....	477
Chapter 54 — East India Company Expansion and the Remaking of Agrarian Relations.....	485
Chapter 55 — Permanent Settlement and Landed Society	493
Chapter 56 — Indigo and Commercial Agriculture	500
Chapter 57 — Opium and Other Commodity Networks.....	507
Chapter 58 — Famines, Scarcity and Food Security	515
Chapter 59 — Colonial Surveys and the Invention of Social Categories	524
Chapter 60 — Education under Colonialism	532
Chapter 61 — Print Culture	541
Chapter 62 — Railways, Roads and Changing Markets.....	551
Chapter 63 — Labour Migration	559
Chapter 64 — Women and Colonial Modernity	568
PART VIII — NEPAL MITHILA / MADHESH AS A SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC REGION .	576
Chapter 65 — The Historical India–Nepal Borderland Economy.....	577
Chapter 66 — Janakpur as Religious, Commercial and Urban Centre	586
Chapter 67 — Land, Tenancy and Agrarian Society in the Nepal Tarai.....	594
Chapter 68 — Forest Clearance, Malaria Control and Demographic Transformation	602
Chapter 69 — Migration and Settlement.....	610
Chapter 70 — Language, Education and Cultural Institutions in Nepal	617
Chapter 71 — Gender, Citizenship and Household Economy in Madhesh	625
Chapter 72 — Janakpur Art, Crafts and Cultural Economy	633
Chapter 73 — Border Markets, Remittances and Informal Exchange	640
PART IX — POST-1947 / POST-1950 DEVELOPMENT	647
Chapter 74 — Independence, Land Reform and Agrarian Change in Bihar	648
Chapter 75 — Abolition of Zamindari and Its Uneven Consequences	656
Chapter 76 — Agriculture after Independence	664

Chapter 77 — Kosi, Gandak and Major River-Development Projects.....	672
Chapter 78 — Floods as Social and Economic History	680
Chapter 79 — Rural Credit, Indebtedness and Banking	688
Chapter 80 — Cooperatives and Rural Institutions	696
Chapter 81 — Industrialisation and Its Limits	705
Chapter 82 — Bhagalpur Silk and Anga's Textile Economy.....	714
Chapter 83 — Makhana, Fish, Dairy and Specialised Regional Economies	723
Chapter 84 — Education after Independence.....	732
Chapter 85 — Health and Public-Health Transformation	741
Chapter 86 — Roads, Railways, Electricity and Communications	750
PART X — CASTE, CLASS, GENDER AND SOCIAL CHANGE.....	758
Chapter 87 — Historical Formation of Caste Relations	759
Chapter 88 — Dalit Histories	769
Chapter 89 — Adivasi and Forest-Connected Populations Where Regionally Relevant	778
Chapter 90 — Muslims of Mithila and Anga	786
Chapter 91 — Gender and the Household Economy	794
Chapter 92 — Women's Paid and Unpaid Labour.....	803
Chapter 93 — Marriage, Dowry, Inheritance and Changing Family Structures	812
Chapter 94 — Education and Social Mobility.....	821
Chapter 95 — Reservation, Affirmative Action and New Middle Classes	830
Chapter 96 — Rural Elites, Political Economy and Changing Landed Power	839
PART XI — MIGRATION, URBANISATION AND DIASPORA	848
Chapter 97 — The Longue Durée of Migration	849
Chapter 98 — Calcutta/Kolkata and Mithila–Anga Migration	858
Chapter 99 — Delhi, Mumbai and Post-Independence Mobility	867
Chapter 100 — Punjab, Haryana and Seasonal Agricultural Labour.....	876
Chapter 101 — Nepal–India Circular Migration	885
Chapter 102 — Gulf Migration.....	893
Chapter 103 — Remittances and Household Transformation.....	902
Chapter 104 — Urbanisation	910
Chapter 105 — Informal Economies and Street Commerce.....	918
Chapter 106 — Diaspora Cultural Institutions	926
PART XII — CULTURAL MODERNITY AND MASS MEDIA	934
Chapter 107 — Maithili Print and Literary Institutions	935
Chapter 108 — Angika Print and Literary Institutions.....	945
Chapter 109 — Radio and Broadcasting	953
Chapter 110 — Cinema, Video and Recorded Performance	961
Chapter 111 — Newspapers and Public Debate	970
Chapter 112 — Sahitya Akademi, Academies and Institutional Canon Formation	979
Chapter 113 — Women Writers and Alternative Literary Publics	988
Chapter 114 — Videha and Digital Literary Culture.....	997
Chapter 115 — Digital Archives and Cultural Preservation	1007
Chapter 116 — Unicode, Tirhuta and Technological Recognition.....	1015
PART XIII — THE CONTEMPORARY ECONOMY	1022

Chapter 117 — Demographic Structure and Population Change.....	1023
Chapter 118 — Agriculture in the Twenty-First Century.....	1032
Chapter 119 — Land Fragmentation and Rural Livelihoods.....	1042
Chapter 120 — Migration-dependent Economies.....	1052
Chapter 121 — Remittances, Consumption and Housing.....	1062
Chapter 122 — Education Economy and Coaching Migration	1072
Chapter 123 — Health Economy.....	1083
Chapter 124 — Roads, Highways, Airports and Connectivity.....	1092
Chapter 125 — Digital Payments, Mobile Phones and Platform Economies	1103
Chapter 126 — Tourism and Pilgrimage Economies.....	1112
Chapter 127 — Mithila Painting in the Global Market.....	1122
Chapter 128 — GI, Heritage Branding and Intellectual Property	1132
Chapter 129 — Climate Change and Agrarian Risk.....	1142
Chapter 130 — Flood Adaptation and Resilience.....	1151
Chapter 131 — India–Nepal Border Economies after Federalisation	1159
PART XIV — CONTEMPORARY SOCIAL AND CULTURAL CHANGE	1168
Chapter 132 — Family Transformation	1169
Chapter 133 — Changing Marriage Practices	1178
Chapter 134 — Gender, Education and Employment	1187
Chapter 135 — Youth Culture.....	1197
Chapter 136 — Social Media and Language.....	1206
Chapter 137 — Religious Change and Public Ritual	1215
Chapter 138 — Caste in Contemporary Society.....	1224
Chapter 139 — Madhesh, Federalism and Social Citizenship	1234
Chapter 140 — Maithili, Angika and Bajjika in Contemporary Public Life.....	1244
Chapter 141 — Cultural Heritage versus Living Culture.....	1254
Chapter 142 — The Future of the Regional Cultural Economy	1262
PART XV — SYNTHESIS	1271
Chapter 143 — The longue durée of social change.....	1272
Chapter 144 — From Subsistence to Market Integration.....	1281
Chapter 145 — Household, Caste, Class and Gender across Time	1290
Chapter 146 — Riverine Ecology and Economic History.....	1299
Chapter 147 — Language as Social Infrastructure	1307
Chapter 148 — India and Nepal: One Interaction Zone, Multiple Political Economies.....	1315
Chapter 149 — Cultural Persistence, Reinvention and Modern Institutions	1324
Chapter 150 — Conclusion: Socio-Cultural-Economic Histories without Timeless Essences	1332
Selected Chronology	1341
Glossary	1360
Historical Place-Name Concordance	1345
Language-Name Concordance.....	1346
Consolidated Bibliography	1347
Index.....	1399

List of Figures

Figure 1 — A generalized Himalaya–Tarai–Gangetic plain–Anga environmental transect (colour schematic).	25
Figure 2 — Schematic drainage architecture of the study region (colour; not to scale).....	27
Figure 3 — Indicative rainfall contrast among Bihar agro-climatic zones (colour chart).	29
Figure 4 — Evidence control for prehistoric reconstruction: direct context, supported inference, comparison, and rejected retrojection (colour schematic).	33
Figure 5 — Selected prehistoric anchors used in Chapter 2: direct study-zone evidence and explicitly labelled regional comparators (colour schematic; not to scale).	35
Figure 6 — Prehistoric subsistence as a seasonal mosaic rather than a one-way transition from foraging to farming (colour analytical diagram).	37
Figure 7 — Archaeological visibility on an active alluvial plain: burial, exposure and reworking can distort the apparent distribution of prehistoric settlement (colour schematic).	39
Figure 8 — Evidence matrix for selected Chalcolithic and early agrarian anchors. “Strong” indicates direct or repeatedly reported evidence in the cited excavation literature; “reported” indicates more limited evidence. Senuwar is included only as a Middle Ganga comparator.....	43
Figure 9 — Composite technology rather than a copper revolution: stone, bone, copper, ceramics and organic materials remained complementary.....	45
Figure 10 — Seasonal coordination in an early agrarian riverine household. The diagram is analytical rather than a reconstruction of one excavated household.	46
Figure 11 — From early farming to early historic society: continuity, overlap and uneven change rather than a universal technological break.	48
Figure 12 — The preservation filter: archaeological food remains are a selective sample. Absence from the recovered assemblage is not automatically absence from diet.....	49
Figure 13 — From archaeological residue to a defensible history of food. Different evidence classes support different levels of inference.	51
Figure 14 — A riverine foodscape: fields, herds, wetlands, forest edge and river routes fed into household processing and consumption.	52
Figure 15 — Seasonal scheduling and risk buffering in an early agrarian food system. Timings are schematic and varied locally.....	49
Figure 16 — Landscape units and settlement opportunities across the Himalayan foreland–alluvial plain. The transect is schematic and not drawn to scale.....	58
Figure 17 — Four fluvial processes that repeatedly reorganise settlement landscapes: lateral migration, cutoff, aggradation and avulsion.	59
Figure 18 — Archaeological visibility is produced by geomorphology as well as human occupation.	60
Figure 19 — Mobility without a false sedentary/nomadic binary: daily movement, seasonal resource use, exchange, temporary relocation and permanent site shift form a continuum.....	61
Figure 20 — Urbanisation as a convergence rather than an iron-triggered event. The components could develop at different rates and reinforce one another.	65
Figure 21 — Evidence bundle for identifying early urban settlements. No single indicator, including NBPW, is sufficient on its own.	66
Figure 22 — A conceptual Middle Ganga–Anga settlement network. The diagram shows functional interdependence, not a reconstruction of exact ancient roads or geographic coordinates.....	68
Figure 23 — Rural–urban interdependence in the early historic economy. Flows were reciprocal and could include produce, labour, taxes, manufactured goods, markets and institutional services.	70
Figure 24 — Evidence layers for reconstructing household and family. Each source type records a different aspect of domestic and kin life; convergence is stronger than any single indicator.....	73
Figure 25 — Social scales must not be collapsed into one another. Household, kin network, lineage and polity overlap but answer different historical questions.	74
Figure 26 — Household and renunciation as connected social institutions. Material support, mobility, teaching and continuing kin relations linked lay and monastic worlds.	76
Figure 27 — The household as a node in the early historic social economy. Food, care, property, ritual, labour and exchange were interdependent rather than separate spheres.	79
Figure 28 — Social differentiation before fixed caste narratives: several overlapping axes. No single axis explains all early historic hierarchy.....	80
Figure 29 — Normative varṇa scheme and empirical social categories in early Pāli sources. The relationship is not one-to-one.	81

Figure 30 — Differentiated participation in a gana-sangha polity. Collective rule among entitled lineages did not imply universal social equality.	84
Figure 31 — From social differentiation to later caste formations: a long-term process rather than an instant or uniform system.	87
Figure 32 — Evidence windows for reconstructing women's lives in the early historic region. Each source type reveals different aspects and has different limits.	90
Figure 33 — Women's social positions were formed across intersecting domains rather than by gender alone.	91
Figure 34 — Ambapālī and resource control in the Vesālī narrative: from urban status to durable religious patronage.	92
Figure 35 — Female religious and social pathways: opportunity and constraint coexisted.	93
Figure 36 — Early historic agriculture as a coupled system: land, water, seed, labour, livestock and storage had to work together.	98
Figure 37 — Schematic annual agrarian calendar for the Middle Ganga plains. It shows seasonal coordination, not a fixed calendar for every locality.	99
Figure 38 — Rural production and the competing claims on surplus: reproduction, reserves, labour, exchange, taxation and gifts drew on the same harvest.	101
Figure 39 — Evidence control for the rural economy of Mithila–Vajji–Anga: local archaeology has the strongest place-specific claim; more distant evidence requires stronger qualification.	102
Figure 40 — The craft production chain: raw material, preparation, transformation, finishing, circulation and repair/discard form a sequence of technological decisions.	105
Figure 41 — Evidence for local production becomes stronger when finished objects are joined by tools, raw material, unfinished pieces, waste and production features.	106
Figure 42 — Craft production as a distributed regional network linking resources, households, specialist workshops, markets, urban consumers, institutions and repair/recycling.	110
Figure 43 — Preservation bias: pottery and stone are much more visible archaeologically than wood, textiles and fibres. The bars are schematic, not measured values.	111
Figure 44 — Trade reconstruction is strongest when archaeology, texts, landscape and institutions converge.	113
Figure 45 — Markets and exchange operated at several nested scales, from households to long-distance networks.	116
Figure 46 — Commercial roles formed a network of producers, traders, financiers, carriers, markets and institutions rather than one homogeneous merchant class.	118
Figure 47 — Conceptual Ganga–Vajji–Anga exchange corridor; schematic, not a measured traffic map.	120
Figure 48 — Vaiśālī must be reconstructed by converging evidence, not by a single source.	122
Figure 49 — Vaiśālī as an urban system linking civic core, neighbourhoods, institutions, hinterland and routes.	124
Figure 50 — The city's social economy depended on interacting groups, not a single civic elite.	126
Figure 51 — Vaiśālī is an archaeological palimpsest: visible monuments and early urban history are not the same layer.	128
Figure 52 — Anga–Campā must be reconstructed from distinct evidence streams before they are combined.	130
Figure 53 — Campā as a riverine urban system: conceptual relationships among city, Ganga corridor, hinterland and markets.	131
Figure 54 — Selected excavated horizons at Campā: sequence and rebuilding rather than a single founding moment.	132
Figure 55 — Campā's economy depended on reciprocal flows among rural producers, urban households, merchants, crafts and institutions.	134
Figure 56 — Early money and monetisation: distinct evidence streams must be combined before historical inference.	138
Figure 57 — A punch-marked silver coin as a material process from metal supply to deposition.	139
Figure 58 — Selected monetary evidence in the middle and eastern Ganga corridor; conceptual, not a measured map.	142
Figure 59 — Monetisation as a spectrum of overlapping practices rather than an on/off condition.	142
Figure 60 — Religious institutional economy redistributed resources through reciprocal but non-equivalent flows among donors, renunciants, material provision and social value.	149
Figure 61 — Buddhist support combined individual restrictions on money and property with recurring provision for monastic life and collective continuity.	150
Figure 62 — The Jain fourfold Saṅgha linked monks and nuns practising strict renunciation with laymen and laywomen who remained within household economic life.	154
Figure 63 — Regional evidence from Vaiśālī and Campā must be distinguished from comparative early Indian evidence and from later endowed monastic systems.	157
Figure 64 — Early intellectual history requires separate control of textual, institutional and material evidence before synthesis.	159
Figure 65 — The Videha debate traditions model intellectual life as an interaction among patronage, established teachers, questioning and reputation.	162
Figure 66 — Campā's textual landscape brings Brahman students, an itinerant Buddhist Saṅgha, household audiences and other wandering teachers into one urban field.	164
Figure 67 — Knowledge circulated among Videha/Mithilā, Vaiśālī/Vajji, Campā/Aṅga and the Magadhan corridor through mobile people and institutions rather than a centralized university system.	166

Figure 68 — Early health history requires separate control of archaeological, Buddhist, Jain and medical/royal evidence before synthesis.	169
Figure 69 — Buddhist monastic care could turn illness into collective duties of nursing, provisioning and temporary rule adaptation.	171
Figure 70 — Urban water and drainage infrastructure can alter bodily exposure without by itself proving disease rates or a formal public-health administration.	173
Figure 71 — Early Buddhist, Jain and specialist-medical traditions negotiated bodily suffering through different combinations of restraint, care and treatment.	176
Figure 72 — Regional religious history requires separate control of Vedic texts, archaeology, śramaṇa traditions and later monumental evidence.	180
Figure 73 — The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa remembers Sadānirā as a ritual-cultural threshold; the narrative should not be read as a literal fire-clearing or single-migration map.	180
Figure 74 — Courtly ritual, wandering renouncers, urban/household patrons and communal institutions formed an overlapping regional religious ecology.	184
Figure 75 — Late Vedic, śramaṇa and Mauryan/post-Mauryan layers overlap; sequence does not imply disappearance of earlier practices.	187
Figure 76 — Buddhist social history requires separate control of discourse, Vinaya, archaeology and later memorial traditions before synthesis.	190
Figure 77 — Mithilā/Videha and Vesālī/Vajji function as distinct but connected regional nodes for teachers, patrons, householders, elites and monastics.	191
Figure 78 — The Ambapālī narrative links control of resources, meal patronage, status competition, land donation and the creation of durable monastic space.	193
Figure 79 — Buddhist regional embedding developed through overlapping phases of itinerancy, seasonal residence, regulated community life and civic-monumental memory.	196
Figure 80 — Jain social history requires Jain texts, Buddhist external evidence, archaeology and later sacred memory to be controlled separately before synthesis.	198
Figure 81 — The Kalpa Sūtra tradition remembers repeated rainy-season residence at Vaiśālī–Vāṇijagrāma, Mithilā and Campā–Pṛṣṭhacampā; the figures express regional recurrence, not a contemporary travel diary.	200
Figure 82 — The fourfold Jain community links monks, nuns, laymen and laywomen through differentiated forms of renunciation, material support and ethical participation.	203
Figure 83 — The Vaiśālī–Videha Jain landscape is best modelled as overlapping mobility, seasonal residence, lay–monastic networks and remembered regional nodes rather than a single sectarian territory.	205
Figure 84 — Evidence for Śaiva, Śākta and Vaiṣṇava transformation must be separated into inscriptional, material, textual and archaeological streams before regional synthesis.	208
Figure 85 — Early-medieval religious transformation is modelled as institutional thickening and overlap, not a single conversion line from earlier ritual to three mutually exclusive sects.	209
Figure 86 — Selected regional anchors show different evidentiary strengths: Mithila’s sculptural plurality, Vaiśālī’s layered sacred landscape, Aṅga–Mandar’s inscriptional Vaiṣṇava anchor, and the wider eastern Bihar corridor.	212
Figure 87 — Sectarian traditions became socially durable through linked processes of patronage, materialisation, ritual specialists, public practice, and the continued repair or reuse of sacred objects and places.	214
Figure 88 — Sacred geography must be reconstructed from separately dated textual, archaeological-epigraphic, ritual and later pilgrimage evidence before synthesis.	217
Figure 89 — A sacred centre can emerge through repeated association, materialisation, route formation and renewal; the sequence is cumulative rather than mechanically linear.	219
Figure 90 — Selected regional anchors illustrate different kinds of sacred evidence in Mithila–Videha, Vajji–Vaiśālī and Aṅga; their dates and evidentiary strengths are not uniform.	221
Figure 91 — Sacred centres could concentrate recurring demand for hospitality, household support, specialist labour and transport while remaining embedded in wider local economies.	223
Figure 92 — Calendrical history must separate astral-textual, monastic, epigraphic-almanac and ethnographic evidence before reconstructing a ritual year.	225
Figure 93 — A lunisolar ritual calendar coordinates lunar phases, solar position, astral reckoning and seasonal-local conditions; intercalation prevents unlimited drift between lunar months and the solar year.	227
Figure 94 — The ritual year contains overlapping seasonal, sectarian, household and recurrent observance cycles rather than one uniform sequence followed identically by everyone.	231
Figure 95 — Festival dates concentrate household labour, specialist services, market demand and use of public space, but the burdens and benefits are socially unequal.	232

Figure 96 — Life-cycle and mortuary history requires separate textual, archaeological and later-practice evidence streams before historical synthesis.	236
Figure 97 — Death unfolds as a social process involving the body, kin, disposal, property, specialists and subsequent memory rather than as a single ritual moment.	238
Figure 98 — The Vaiśālī relic tradition links cremation, Licchavi political claim, relic division and monumental commemoration while keeping textual memory and archaeology analytically distinct.	240
Figure 99 — Life-cycle rites connect persons and households to childhood, marriage, death, property, specialists and wider kin institutions, but their forms vary by chronology and community.	242
Figure 100 — Land grants: distinct evidence streams.	246
Figure 101 — The Bhagalpur plate: a bundle of agrarian and institutional rights.	247
Figure 102 — Selected regional land-grant nodes and documentary connections.	249
Figure 103 — Agrarian change through land grants: a controlled analytical model.	251
Figure 104 — Village, market and town: reciprocal flows.	256
Figure 105 — Regional nodes in the early medieval landscape.	258
Figure 106 — The haṭṭa as a rural–commercial interface.	259
Figure 107 — How to infer settlement hierarchy without overclaiming.	260
Figure 108 — Labour history: distinct evidence streams.	264
Figure 109 — A Pāla charter’s social and service field.	267
Figure 110 — Occupation depended on place and demand.	268
Figure 111 — From work to social group: a historical process.	270
Figure 112 — Social classification: distinct evidence streams.	272
Figure 113 — A Pāla charter addresses a social field, not a census.	276
Figure 114 — From social role to more bounded identity: possible pathways.	278
Figure 115 — Time-depth filter for using social labels.	279
Figure 116 — Brahmanical institutions: evidence before caste projection.	281
Figure 117 — How an early-medieval Brahman grantee was credentialed.	283
Figure 118 — Land, learning and authority: an institutional cycle.	286
Figure 119 — Chronology firewall: do not collapse different institutions.	283
Figure 120 — Panji history requires layered evidence.	291
Figure 121 — From lineage markers to matrimonial verification.	293
Figure 122 — Panji institutions changed over time.	294
Figure 123 — The Panji as a social-information network.	297
Figure 124 — Reconstructing women’s history requires layered evidence.	300
Figure 125 — Property is a bundle of distinct rights.	302
Figure 126 — Marriage links two kin networks without erasing separate property claims.	304
Figure 127 — A chronology firewall for women’s legal history.	306
Figure 128 — Karnata to Oiniwar: political periodisation and economic continuity.	309
Figure 129 — Agrarian surplus circulated through courts, markets, services and learned institutions.	311
Figure 130 — The 1324 rupture: separating political change from socio-economic persistence.	313
Figure 131 — Oiniwar-era court society as a distributed social-economic network.	314
Figure 132 — Political contact and social change, c. 1200–1550.	318
Figure 133 — Bidirectional migration and circulation around medieval Tirhut/Mithila.	319
Figure 134 — Channels through which new social worlds formed.	321
Figure 135 — Evidence firewall: conquest, migration, settlement and religious change.	324
Figure 136 — Persianate culture as a network rather than an ethnicity.	327
Figure 137 — Mithila–Anga inside regional Persianate circulation.	328
Figure 138 — The documentary interface between Persianate and Sanskrit–Maithili worlds.	329
Figure 139 — Evidence firewall for reconstructing Persianate culture.	332
Figure 140 — Language ecology before modern standardisation.	335
Figure 141 — Evidence bands for vernacular formation, c. 600–1600 CE.	337
Figure 142 — Regional speech continuum without hard medieval language borders.	339
Figure 143 — Evidence firewall: speech, written register, script and later standardisation.	341
Figure 144 — Formation of literary Maithili as an interacting cultural ecology.	344
Figure 145 — Selected evidence horizons for literary formation, c. 1200–1700.	346
Figure 146 — Genre and register in the expansion of literary Maithili.	348

Figure 147 — Evidence firewall for early Maithili literary history.....	350
Figure 148 — Two Vidyāpatis: evidentiary profiles in this volume	353
Figure 149 — Chronology without forced conflation.....	354
Figure 150 — Composition, manuscript and reception are different dates	356
Figure 151 — Evidence firewall for Vidyāpati attribution	358
Figure 152 — Tīrhuta: palaeographic ancestry is not the same as a fixed script identity	361
Figure 153 — The manuscript as a scribal ecosystem.....	362
Figure 154 — Four evidence layers in manuscript analysis	363
Figure 155 — From manuscript circulation to print and digital encoding	366
Figure 156 — Oral tradition as a chain of evidentiary events	369
Figure 157 — The performance ecology	370
Figure 158 — Routes of oral circulation	372
Figure 159 — Evidence firewall for oral history	374
Figure 160 — Angika and the eastern linguistic-cultural zone	377
Figure 161 — Classification is historical: labels change with institutions	378
Figure 162 — Social channels of linguistic circulation.....	382
Figure 163 — Evidence firewall: Anga is not automatically Angika	383
Figure 164 — Bajjika and the western Mithila contact zone.....	386
Figure 165 — Bajjika classification: the label changes with the institution	387
Figure 166 — One speech continuum, different state classification systems	390
Figure 167 — Evidence firewall: Vajji is not automatically Bajjika	392
Figure 168 — Sanskrit scholastic life as a distributed institutional ecology.....	395
Figure 169 — Tattvacintāmaṇi as a scholastic commentary engine.....	396
Figure 170 — Overlapping disciplines in the Sanskrit scholastic field.....	398
Figure 171 — Evidence firewall for reconstructing scholastic institutions	401
Figure 172 — Architecture survives through a preservation filter	403
Figure 173 — Settlement as a connected ecological system	406
Figure 174 — Four archaeological windows on architecture and settlement.....	408
Figure 175 — Evidence firewall for architectural history.....	410
Figure 176 — Dress survives through an unequal archaeological filter	412
Figure 177 — Textiles as a production, circulation and reuse cycle.....	414
Figure 178 — Three archives for reconstructing dress and ornament	416
Figure 179 — Chronology firewall for textile history	418
Figure 180 — How food history survives: an evidence hierarchy	421
Figure 181 — Alluvial food system: season, field and water	422
Figure 182 — From landscape to meal: a social chain	424
Figure 183 — Chronology firewall for regional cuisine	426
Figure 184 — Evidence chronology: from domestic surface to portable art	428
Figure 185 — Domestic ritual painting as a spatial system	429
Figure 186 — What changes when a ritual image becomes portable?	432
Figure 187 — Evidence firewall for the history of Mithila painting	434
Figure 188 — Twentieth-century transformation: from documentation to cultural economy	437
Figure 189 — The portable-painting value chain	438
Figure 190 — How cultural value was produced	440
Figure 191 — Cultural economy: opportunities and constraints	443
Figure 192 — Evidence ladder for music and performance history	446
Figure 193 — Song ecology across the social calendar.....	447
Figure 194 — Three interacting performance circuits	449
Figure 195 — The Bihula–Bishahari performance complex in Anga	451
Figure 196 — Evidence ladder for theatre history	454
Figure 197 — Kirtaniya dramatic architecture.....	455
Figure 198 — Mithila–Nepal dramatic corridor	457
Figure 199 — Theatre across changing media.....	460
Figure 200 — Evidence ladder for fairs and markets	462

Figure 201 — How a mela creates a temporary public	463
Figure 202 — Four public-culture nodes in the connected region.....	465
Figure 203 — From periodic exchange to mass public culture.....	467
Figure 204 — Fiscal geography from subah to village	470
Figure 205 — Akbar-era fiscal profiles of Tirhut, Hajipur and Munger	471
Figure 206 — Overlapping claims on agrarian surplus.....	473
Figure 207 — Evidence firewall for Mughal agrarian reconstruction	475
Figure 208 — Trade geography: trunk route and feeder corridors.....	478
Figure 209 — Patna as an entrepôt	479
Figure 210 — Commodity circuits documented in different periods	481
Figure 211 — Evidence firewall for reconstructing interregional trade	483
Figure 212 — From military leverage to direct revenue government, 1757–1793.....	486
Figure 213 — Agrarian mediation before and during the Company transition.....	487
Figure 214 — Regional administrative transition in Tirhut, Bhagalpur–Rajmahal and Monghyr.....	490
Figure 215 — Evidence firewall for the Company transition	491
Figure 216 — Permanent Settlement: what was fixed, and what remained contested	493
Figure 217 — Layered hierarchy of landed claims under permanent settlement	495
Figure 218 — Regional settlement profiles in Tirhut/Darbhangā, Bhagalpur and Monghyr/Anga	496
Figure 219 — Chronology firewall: 1793 and later consequences	498
Figure 220 — Indigo as an agricultural, industrial and financial chain.....	501
Figure 221 — Cultivation systems in colonial Bihar	502
Figure 222 — Regional indigo profiles across Mithila–Vajji–Anga.....	504
Figure 223 — Chronology firewall for colonial indigo	506
Figure 224 — The Bihar opium commodity chain	508
Figure 225 — Chronology of Company control over Bihar opium	509
Figure 226 — Regional commodity mosaic across Mithila, Vajji and Anga.....	511
Figure 227 — Evidence firewall for colonial commodity history.....	513
Figure 228 — From harvest shock to famine: a social process	516
Figure 229 — Three scarcity regimes in Bihar, 1769–1897	518
Figure 230 — Relief architecture in the Bihar scarcity of 1873–74	520
Figure 231 — Evidence firewall for famine and food-security history.....	522
Figure 232 — From local description to administrative category: the colonial classification chain	525
Figure 233 — Major stages in the nineteenth-century classificatory archive.....	526
Figure 234 — Classification as a feedback loop between society and the state.....	529
Figure 235 — Evidence firewall against retrospective social classification.....	530
Figure 236 — The layered educational ecology under colonialism	533
Figure 237 — Educational policy and institutional milestones, 1813–1917.....	534
Figure 238 — The colonial credential ladder and its access filters	537
Figure 239 — Regional educational nodes within the wider examination network	539
Figure 240 — Print ecosystem in colonial Mithila–Vajji–Anga.....	542
Figure 241 — Selected milestones in the regional print environment, 1835–1910	544
Figure 242 — Script and language choices in early modern Maithili print.....	546
Figure 243 — Print circulation as a feedback loop	548
Figure 244 — A layered transport system: river, road, rail, ferry and frontier routes.....	552
Figure 245 — Selected transport milestones in Mithila–Vajji–Anga, c.1860–1907.....	553
Figure 246 — How railway access could reorder market hierarchy.....	556
Figure 247 — Transport infrastructure and flood ecology	557
Figure 248 — Major labour-migration circuits from Mithila, Vajji and Anga	560
Figure 249 — Circular migration as a household economic cycle.....	562
Figure 250 — Labour mobility along a spectrum of control	564
Figure 251 — Source triangulation for colonial labour migration	565
Figure 252 — Institutional domains through which colonial modernity affected women.....	569
Figure 253 — Selected legal and institutional milestones affecting women, 1856–1935.....	571
Figure 254 — Layered medicalisation of female health and childbirth.....	573

Figure 255 — Gendered visibility in the colonial archive	575
Figure 256 — The India–Nepal borderland economy as connected zones	578
Figure 257 — Reported fiscal receipts in Saptari–Mahottari, c.1809	580
Figure 258 — From negotiated frontier to transport-linked international boundary	581
Figure 259 — Transport layers that reorganised the border economy, c.1800–1950	584
Figure 260 — Janakpur as an interacting sacred, water, market and mobility system	587
Figure 261 — Selected documented milestones in the making of modern Janakpur	588
Figure 262 — The pilgrimage-to-urban-economy circulation	590
Figure 263 — Pond counts across Janakpur’s urban core, sprawl and rural fringe, 1992 and 2022	592
Figure 264 — Land rights and fiscal channels in the Nepal Tarai	595
Figure 265 — Selected agrarian milestones in the eastern Tarai, 1793–1964	597
Figure 266 — Nepal Tarai jimidari and British Indian zamindari were not the same legal institution	598
Figure 267 — Original 1964 Lands Act ceilings for the Tarai	601
Figure 268 — Malaria control changed a landscape already inhabited and used	603
Figure 269 — Selected institutional milestones, 1954–1978	605
Figure 270 — Eastern Tarai land-use change, 1963/64–1978/79	606
Figure 271 — Terai share of Nepal’s national population, 1952/54–1971	608
Figure 272 — Migration and settlement channels in Tarai/Madhesh	611
Figure 273 — Planned resettlement and spontaneous settlement were different systems	612
Figure 274 — Net internal migration balance by ecological zone, 1981	615
Figure 275 — Settlement pressure became a self-reinforcing lowland process	615
Figure 276 — Reported Maithili mother-tongue population in Nepal censuses, 1952/54–2021	617
Figure 277 — Major language-and-education policy turns in Nepal, 1956–2018	619
Figure 278 — Institutional ecology of language, learning and culture in Nepal	621
Figure 279 — From constitutional language right to classroom practice	623
Figure 280 — Citizenship law: key gendered turns in Nepal, 1990–2023	627
Figure 281 — Male out-migration and the household economy	629
Figure 282 — Two gender gaps in Madhesh Province, 2021	630
Figure 283 — From formal rights to usable economic citizenship	632
Figure 284 — From ritual practice to cultural economy	634
Figure 285 — Janakpur painting: institutional milestones	635
Figure 286 — The Janakpur cultural-economy ecosystem	637
Figure 287 — Cultural-economy gains and tensions	639
Figure 288 — A layered Madhesh–Bihar border economy	641
Figure 289 — From everyday exchange to formal customs trade	642
Figure 290 — Remittance channels reported in the Dhanusha case study, 2012	644
Figure 291 — Selected monetary and payment milestones in Nepal–India exchange	646
Figure 292 — From Independence to a multi-instrument reform regime, 1947–1961	649
Figure 293 — What the 1950 Land Reforms Act changed — and what persisted	650
Figure 294 — From statute to village outcome: the implementation chain	652
Figure 295 — Shared reform laws, uneven regional contexts	654
Figure 296 — What abolition removed — and what it did not	657
Figure 297 — Lawful retention channels after vesting	658
Figure 298 — Why legal abolition produced uneven village outcomes	659
Figure 299 — One abolition law, different regional afterlives	663
Figure 300 — Four phases of agricultural change after independence	665
Figure 301 — Why Green Revolution gains spread unevenly	666
Figure 302 — Regional agricultural profiles within the study area	669
Figure 303 — From monsoon farming to a multi-input production system	671
Figure 304 — Kosi project milestones	673
Figure 305 — River development: benefits and trade-offs	675
Figure 306 — Gandak project as a transboundary system	677
Figure 307 — From construction to adaptive river management	679
Figure 308 — How a flood becomes a social and economic disaster	680

Figure 309 — Four flood events, four different historical patterns.....	683
Figure 310 — Typical seasonal sequence in north Bihar.....	681
Figure 311 — Flood shock and the household economy	686
Figure 312 — Institutional milestones in rural credit after independence	688
Figure 313 — Formal and informal borrowing channels can coexist within one household.....	690
Figure 314 — How a temporary shock can become persistent indebtedness.....	693
Figure 315 — Different regional production systems generate different credit needs.....	695
Figure 316 — Institutional milestones in cooperative and member-based rural organisation	697
Figure 317 — The PACS as a multipurpose rural service hub	699
Figure 318 — Federated institutions preserve local knowledge while pooling capacity at higher levels.....	702
Figure 319 — Regional ecology shaped the practical uses of rural institutions.....	703
Figure 320 — Industrial milestones and policy resets, 1952–2026	706
Figure 321 — Barauni as an industrial node: infrastructure, plants and linkages	707
Figure 322 — Why investment did not automatically become broad industrialisation	710
Figure 323 — Regional industrial forms within the Mithila–Vajji–Anga frame.....	712
Figure 324 — Institutional milestones in Bhagalpur silk and handloom, 1810–2026	715
Figure 325 — The Bhagalpur silk value chain: where value is created and where risk enters	717
Figure 326 — A connected Anga textile geography: Bhagalpur city clusters and Banka’s tussar belt	719
Figure 327 — Institutions around the weaver: support can strengthen bargaining, but coordination remains decisive.....	721
Figure 328 — Institutional milestones in specialised regional economies, 1983–2026	724
Figure 329 — Mithila wetland economy: makhana, fish and water chestnut can share one managed landscape	726
Figure 330 — Inland fisheries value chain: production gains depend on seed, water, harvest and market infrastructure.....	728
Figure 331 — Cooperative dairying turns a perishable household product into a daily regional cash circuit	730
Figure 332 — Post-independence education: institutional milestones from regional university building to mass school systems.....	733
Figure 333 — The education ladder: expansion at one stage reveals the next barrier to progression	735
Figure 334 — Regional higher-education geography: local centres reduced distance but did not end outward student mobility.....	738
Figure 335 — Bihar education in the mid-2020s: a large system whose next frontier is progression, learning and institutional quality	739
Figure 336 — Post-independence health transformation: institutional milestones from medical-college consolidation to comprehensive primary care	742
Figure 337 — The referral pyramid: local access succeeds only when each level can move patients safely to the next	744
Figure 338 — The epidemiological transition is additive: infectious, nutritional and chronic burdens coexist	747
Figure 339 — Mid-2020s health landscape: major mortality gains alongside continuing quality, nutrition and referral gaps ..	749
Figure 340 — Post-independence connectivity: major bridge, road, rail, power and digital milestones	751
Figure 341 — River crossings as network switches: bridges reorganised markets, migration and emergency access.....	752
Figure 342 — Electricity, telecom and fibre form an increasingly interdependent infrastructure stack	755
Figure 343 — Mid-2020s connectivity zones across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Mithila.....	757
Figure 344 — Caste relations changed as kinship, property, classification and representation changed	760
Figure 345 — Four institutional mechanisms repeatedly remade caste relations.....	761
Figure 346 — From ranked locality to enumerated and represented categories.....	765
Figure 347 — Regional emphases in caste formation across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Mithila.....	768
Figure 348 — Major institutional thresholds in modern Dalit history	770
Figure 349 — Household constraints and routes of bargaining power	772
Figure 350 — Multiple routes from inherited stigma to public assertion.....	775
Figure 351 — Regional emphases in Dalit histories across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Mithila	777
Figure 352 — Institutional thresholds in Adivasi and forest-rights history.....	779
Figure 353 — Uneven regional relevance across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and the eastern borderlands.....	780
Figure 354 — Distinguishing forest-connected livelihood from Scheduled-Tribe legal status.....	782
Figure 355 — Institutional pathways from marginal location to public claim-making	784
Figure 356 — Institutional thresholds in the Muslim social history of Mithila and Anga.....	787
Figure 357 — Four intersecting Muslim social worlds	788
Figure 358 — Selected district Muslim population shares in Census 2011	789
Figure 359 — Post-1947 institutional pathways from citizenship to capability	793
Figure 360 — Institutional thresholds reshaping the household economy, 1950s–2020s	795
Figure 361 — The household as an economic system of resources, provisioning, care, bargaining and risk	797

Figure 362 — Migration, remittances and the redistribution of household management	799
Figure 363 — Regional household-economy emphases across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Madhesh.....	802
Figure 364 — Statistical and policy thresholds in the visibility of women’s work	804
Figure 365 — The visibility spectrum of women’s paid and unpaid work.....	805
Figure 366 — Bihar Time Use Survey 2024: three work clocks by gender	807
Figure 367 — Regional mosaics of women’s paid and unpaid labour across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Madhesh	810
Figure 368 — Legal and demographic thresholds in the transformation of marriage and family life	813
Figure 369 — Marriage connects natal household, transfers, residence, inheritance and migration	816
Figure 370 — Bihar child-marriage indicator: change and the NFHS-5 urban–rural divide	818
Figure 371 — Regional mosaics of marriage and family change across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Madhesh	820
Figure 372 — Education and mobility: institutional thresholds from regional colleges to the UDISE+ era	822
Figure 373 — Education as a mobility ladder and a filtering system.....	824
Figure 374 — Bihar higher-education GER and the continuing transition bottleneck	826
Figure 375 — Regional education nodes and mobility circuits across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Madhesh.....	828
Figure 376 — Major institutional thresholds in Bihar’s affirmative-action history	831
Figure 377 — From affirmative action to new middle-class formation	832
Figure 378 — Bihar’s reservation architecture after the 2024 High Court judgment	833
Figure 379 — Regional affirmative-action institutions and new middle-class formation.....	837
Figure 380 — Major thresholds in the transformation of landed power, 1950–2026.....	840
Figure 381 — From landed dominance to a rural power portfolio	841
Figure 382 — Bihar operational holdings by number and operated area, Agriculture Census 2015–16	844
Figure 383 — Regional pathways of changing rural power	847
Figure 384 — Migration regimes widened in scale while older forms of mobility persisted	850
Figure 385 — Circular migration links source household, migrant, destination and return	852
Figure 386 — Local, regional, national and international mobility accumulated rather than replacing one another	854
Figure 387 — Subregions entered different destination chains through path-dependent networks.....	856
Figure 388 — Calcutta/Kolkata became a durable migration system through successive transport and labour regimes.....	860
Figure 389 — The Mithila–Anga to Calcutta/Kolkata corridor joined distinct source routes to multiple destination zones	862
Figure 390 — The Calcutta/Kolkata corridor connected migrants to several overlapping labour worlds	863
Figure 391 — Bi-locality linked Kolkata work to rural reproduction over repeated migration cycles	865
Figure 392 — Post-independence migration widened from older corridors into a multi-metropolitan system	869
Figure 393 — Delhi/NCR and Mumbai/MMR became distinct but connected metropolitan migration systems	871
Figure 394 — Metropolitan migration remained a circular household process rather than a one-way move	872
Figure 395 — Portability has improved faster than full urban citizenship for migrant workers	874
Figure 396 — The Punjab–Haryana corridor evolved with the rice-wheat system, labour scarcity and mechanisation	877
Figure 397 — Seasonal agricultural migration fitted into a recurrent multi-destination labour calendar	879
Figure 398 — Mechanisation reduced some farm tasks earlier than the paddy-transplanting labour bottleneck.....	881
Figure 399 — Unequal agrarian regions were connected by repeated outward and return circuits.....	883
Figure 400 — Nepal–India circular migration has combined durable openness with periodic disruption and denser border management.....	886
Figure 401 — Circular migration works through repeated exchanges among household, corridor and destination.....	888
Figure 402 — The open border supports multiple mobility regimes rather than a single migration stream	889
Figure 403 — Eastern Nepal–Bihar circulation is organised through several distinct border corridors	891
Figure 404 — Gulf migration expanded, became more regulated, suffered a pandemic shock and then rebounded.....	894
Figure 405 — Gulf migration operates as a recruitment, work, remittance and return circuit.....	896
Figure 406 — Official 2025 ECR clearance counts vary sharply across selected study-region districts.....	898
Figure 407 — Bihar and Nepal reach overlapping Gulf labour markets through different regulatory systems	900
Figure 408 — Bihar, 2007–08: the reach and budget importance of remittances varied across consumption quintiles	903
Figure 409 — One remittance inflow is allocated across competing household needs, liabilities and assets	905
Figure 410 — Nepal: first-priority use of remittances remained consumption-led between 2010/11 and 2022/23	908
Figure 411 — Remittances can widen household options yet also reproduce migration dependence	909
Figure 412 — Bihar’s urban population expanded strongly from 1961 to 2011 while the urban share rose slowly	911
Figure 413 — A schematic polycentric network of major and secondary urban nodes across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and adjoining Madhesh.....	913

Figure 414 — Madhesh, 2021: administrative municipal status and settlement-form urbanisation produce very different readings	915
Figure 415 — Migration and remittances feed back into housing, services, peri-urban growth and future mobility	916
Figure 416 — Urban informal commerce links producers, transport nodes, vendors, consumers, credit, regulation and digital systems	919
Figure 417 — Bihar, PLFS 2023–24: self-employment accounted for more than half of urban male workers in usual status	920
Figure 418 — PM SVANidhi combines a progressive loan ladder with financial and digital inclusion	922
Figure 419 — Nepal's 2024–25 informal-enterprise survey shows fixed, household, temporary and non-fixed premises	924
Figure 420 — Repeated migrant gatherings become durable institutions through organisation, calendars, records and translocal feedback	927
Figure 421 — Diaspora institutions carry a portable repertoire of language, ritual, performance, food, art and intergenerational teaching	929
Figure 422 — Origin region, destination, artists and digital publics form a multidirectional transnational cultural circuit	931
Figure 423 — Institutional continuity depends on access, participation, responsibility, documentation and succession	933
Figure 424 — Selected milestones in the modern Maithili print and literary-institutional public.	937
Figure 425 — Manuscript, print and digital script ecologies overlap rather than simply replacing one another.	939
Figure 426 — The modern Maithili literary field operates through linked institutional nodes in India and Nepal.	941
Figure 427 — Print and digital literary institutions form a feedback system of production, circulation and memory.	943
Figure 428 — Selected milestones in modern Angika print and literary institutions.	947
Figure 429 — Oral repertoire, print and digital archives form a chain of preservation and transformation.	948
Figure 430 — Angika literary institutions operate as a reciprocal ecology rather than a single hierarchy.	950
Figure 431 — Formal recognition and literary infrastructure should be analysed as separate dimensions.	951
Figure 432 — Selected institutional milestones in regional radio and broadcasting.	954
Figure 433 — Broadcasting as an institutional chain from speech community to archive	956
Figure 434 — Public-service, local FM/community and digital-audio ecologies overlap rather than replace one another.	958
Figure 435 — Evidence layers required for a social history of broadcasting.	959
Figure 436 — Moving-image and recorded-performance formats accumulated rather than simply replacing one another.	962
Figure 437 — From source repertoire to moving-image reception: the production and circulation chain.	964
Figure 438 — Preservation risks and required actions across moving-image carriers	968
Figure 439 — Screen circuits linking local performance, production hubs, festivals, home media, digital archives and diaspora	967
Figure 440 — Newspaper public debate as a circulation system.	973
Figure 441 — Selected milestones in Maithili newspaper and periodical culture.	971
Figure 442 — From event to historical evidence: a newspaper verification chain	974
Figure 443 — Transborder public sphere of Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh.	976
Figure 444 — Selected institutional milestones in Maithili literary recognition and support	980
Figure 445 — Literary canon formation as a recurring institutional feedback circuit	982
Figure 446 — Overlapping institutional layers that shape literary visibility.	984
Figure 447 — Maithili literary institutions across India and Nepal: one language field, two national systems.	986
Figure 448 — Women's authorship across overlapping literary publics	989
Figure 449 — Selected women in the Sahitya Akademi Maithili award sequence	991
Figure 450 — One Maithili language field, multiple institutional gatekeeping systems	993
Figure 451 — From alternative public to recoverable literary archive.	995
Figure 452 — Videha as a layered born-digital institution.	998
Figure 453 — The Videha digital literary ecology	1000
Figure 454 — From digital text to multiple access representations.	1001
Figure 455 — Preserving a born-digital literary institution	1004
Figure 456 — Preservation as a chain of responsibilities.	1008
Figure 457 — Preservation masters and access derivatives serve different functions.	1009
Figure 458 — A distributed regional archive depends on shared standards.	1012
Figure 459 — Six questions for testing preservation readiness.	1013
Figure 460 — From legacy fonts to interoperable Tirhuta text.	1016
Figure 461 — The technological recognition stack.	1017
Figure 462 — Why Unicode text differs from a legacy-font document	1019
Figure 463 — A sustainable Tirhuta digital ecosystem.	1021
Figure 464 — Demography and the contemporary economy: a feedback system.	1024

Figure 465 — Two official demographic baselines across the border; categories are not directly interchangeable.	1025
Figure 466 — How fertility, mortality and migration become economic change through population structure.	1028
Figure 467 — Reconstructing regional demography without inventing a fixed census boundary.	1030
Figure 468 — Twenty-first-century agriculture as a connected farm economy.	1033
Figure 469 — Agricultural mosaic across Mithila, Vajji and Anga; tendencies overlap and are not fixed borders.	1035
Figure 470 — The smallholder income problem: the economic chain from fragmented plot to household livelihood.	1037
Figure 471 — Climate-resilient agriculture as a repeated cycle of diagnosis, diversification, conservation, protection and learning.	1039
Figure 472 — From inheritance and parcel multiplication to a diversified household livelihood response.	1043
Figure 473 — The rural livelihood portfolio built around a small land base.	1046
Figure 474 — Creating economic scale through shared services and producer institutions without forcing ownership consolidation.	1048
Figure 475 — Land governance sequence from survey and record clarity to secure use, reorganisation and investment.	1050
Figure 476 — Circular migration as a repeated origin–destination system of labour, earnings, experience and return.	1052
Figure 477 — A migration-dependent household budget combines migrant earnings with farm, non-farm, public-support, credit and asset income.	1056
Figure 478 — Migration corridors segmented by distance, duration, skill and entry cost rather than one undifferentiated flow.	1056
Figure 479 — Portable protection for mobile workers requires linked identification, benefits, workplace protection, mobility assistance and return support.	1059
Figure 480 — Remittance transmission from destination earnings through transfer and household allocation to welfare, assets and local multipliers.	1063
Figure 481 — Remittance use as a household portfolio spanning survival, stabilisation, capability, assets and enterprise.	1065
Figure 482 — Incremental housing transformation from repair to service upgrades and diversified use.	1067
Figure 483 — Triangulating remittance, consumption and housing change requires several complementary evidence systems.	1070
Figure 484 — The education economy links household expenditure, learning services, mobility, credentials, local service demand and labour-market transition.	1073
Figure 485 — Coaching and educational migration operate through a spatial ladder from home and district towns to regional, national and global study hubs.	1075
Figure 486 — The true household cost of coaching migration includes mobility, exam, opportunity and risk costs in addition to tuition.	1076
Figure 487 — Studying and regulating the coaching economy requires administrative, household, examination, market, welfare and outcome evidence.	1081
Figure 488 — The health economy circulates household resources through care, financing, local markets, health labour and productive health outcomes.	1084
Figure 489 — Health access operates through a referral and mobility ladder, with bypassing when lower levels lack trusted services or diagnostics.	1085
Figure 490 — A health shock imposes indirect, access and long-term household costs in addition to the visible clinical bill.	1088
Figure 491 — Measuring a regional health economy requires household, facility, finance, market, workforce and outcome evidence together.	1090
Figure 492 — Effective connectivity is a chain linking the first mile, district nodes, trunk corridors and gateways; reliability and accessibility determine the economic reach of the network.	1093
Figure 493 — Major river crossings change economic distance by eliminating detours and opening new route combinations across the Kosi and Ganga.	1095
Figure 494 — Regional aviation expanded in successive layers: Darbhanga and Janakpur in 2020, major Darbhanga expansion from 2024, and Purnea commercial operations in 2025.	1099
Figure 495 — Connectivity must be measured with travel time, traffic, safety, resilience, aviation and economic-outcome data rather than infrastructure counts alone.	1101
Figure 496 — A digital payment depends on a chain of connectivity, identity, initiation, merchant acceptance and settlement; failure at any link can exclude the user.	1104
Figure 497 — Digital inclusion requires both reliable access and the capability to control, understand and contest transactions.	1104
Figure 498 — India–Nepal payment integration developed in distinct stages: merchant UPI acceptance in Nepal from 2024 and bilateral P2P UPI–NPI remittance from June 2026.	1110
Figure 499 — Platform economies coordinate customers, merchants and workers through software while redistributing costs, information and risk.	1108
Figure 500 — Visitor expenditure creates a local multiplier through linked transport, accommodation, experience, food, craft and service economies, but value can leak outside the destination.	1113

Figure 501 — Tourism and pilgrimage in Mithila–Vajji–Anga operate through overlapping cross-border, religious, heritage, cultural and ecological circuits rather than one linear route.	1115
Figure 502 — Pilgrimage economies move between ordinary demand, seasonal build-up, festival peaks and post-event costs; crowd capacity is therefore an economic variable.	1118
Figure 503 — Durable destination stewardship balances economic, physical, cultural and ecological capacity rather than maximising footfall alone.	1120
Figure 504 — Mithila painting moved from ritual surfaces into portable, national, international and digital markets without losing its older cultural meanings.	1122
Figure 505 — Direct sales, public portals, galleries, museums, digital platforms and souvenir channels distribute money, information and control differently.	1125
Figure 506 — Price formation depends on authorship, provenance, material qualities, recognition, originality and the market channel; there is no single “Mithila painting price”.	1127
Figure 507 — A durable global market requires economic fairness, cultural integrity, provenance and rights, and material preservation to reinforce one another.	1130
Figure 508 — Heritage identity, GI protection, copyright, marks, market branding and safeguarding are distinct but complementary layers.	1133
Figure 509 — A GI protects a qualifying origin-linked indication; it does not by itself monopolise techniques, guarantee producer income, or replace copyright.	1135
Figure 510 — Heritage branding creates durable producer value only when eligibility, traceability, market use, enforcement and benefit return form a functioning chain.	1137
Figure 511 — Intellectual-property rights are territorial even when Maithil cultural heritage and markets cross the India–Nepal border.	1140
Figure 512 — Agrarian climate risk emerges through a chain linking hazard, exposure, vulnerability, loss and response; adaptation changes the chain but cannot remove all residual risk.	1143
Figure 513 — Illustrative seasonal risk calendar: heat, water deficit and excess-water hazards overlap differently with rice, wheat, maize, livestock and water availability.	1144
Figure 514 — The 2025 Bihar–Madhesh warning: national or broad-regional rainfall totals must not be treated as farm-level water conditions; timing and local distribution drive crop-calendar risk.	1146
Figure 515 — Climate resilience is a portfolio: seed, calendar, water, soil, diversification, forecasts and finance must work around the farm household and its institutional access.	1149
Figure 516 — Flood resilience as a chain from monitoring and warning through protection, continuity, recovery and adaptation.	1153
Figure 517 — Flood resilience depends on a portfolio of structural protection, forecasting, drainage, emergency services, flood-storage landscapes and household finance.	1156
Figure 518 — Transboundary flood warning becomes useful only when upstream observation is converted into a trusted last-mile message and timely household action.	1154
Figure 519 — Adaptive basin governance treats every monsoon as new evidence for observing, anticipating, protecting, responding, recovering and revising the next plan.	1158
Figure 520 — Governance architecture of the post-federalisation India–Nepal border economy.	1160
Figure 521 — Infrastructure and policy milestones after Nepal’s federal transition.	1162
Figure 522 — Five cross-border flows that cannot be measured by customs data alone.	1164
Figure 523 — A producer- and household-centred dashboard for border-economy governance.	1167
Figure 524 — Family transformation as the interaction of demographic, economic, institutional and material change.	1170
Figure 525 — Household form, kinship network and resource network are analytically distinct.	1172
Figure 526 — Bihar and Madhesh provide different contemporary statistical baselines; definitions and dates must be kept visible.	1174
Figure 527 — A multi-local family circulates income, care, information and obligations across places.	1176
Figure 528 — Early marriage among women aged 20–24: Bihar trend and Nepal 2022 comparator; survey systems differ and are not one regional time series.	1179
Figure 529 — Marriage is a process involving search, eligibility, negotiation, ceremony, registration, residence and continuing kinship obligations.	1181
Figure 530 — Digitalisation widens the marriage search while education, work, caste/community, mobility and household strategy continue to filter matches.	1183
Figure 531 — Cross-border marriage joins one kinship relationship to distinct Indian and Nepali documentary and citizenship systems.	1185
Figure 532 — Bihar school GER by sex, 2024–25: girls exceed boys at each shown level, but absolute enrolment ratios fall sharply toward higher secondary.	1188

Figure 533 — AISHE 2023–24 estimated higher-education enrolment in Bihar: female enrolment (14.0 lakh) slightly exceeded male enrolment (13.6 lakh).....	1190
Figure 534 — Bihar PLFS 2025 labour-force participation, age 15+: a large male–female gap persists in both rural and urban areas despite educational gains.	1192
Figure 535 — From school access to economic agency: credentials must pass through mobility, job availability, care arrangements and social institutions before they become income and bargaining power.....	1195
Figure 536 — Bihar’s projected share of people aged 15–29 remains large but declines after 2021; projections are not new census counts.....	1198
Figure 537 — Bihar unemployment among people aged 15–29 in PLFS 2025: the urban youth rate is much higher than the rural rate under the same usual-status measure.	1199
Figure 538 — Rural Muzaffarpur youth, ASER 2023: high household smartphone access coexists with a large gender gap in personal ownership.....	1201
Figure 539 — Youth culture is produced through interacting institutions: education, work and migration, family and gender, media and consumption, language and locality, and public culture.	1202
Figure 540 — Social media and language form a feedback system: platform affordances shape visible forms, audience response and algorithmic selection, which feed back into community norms and everyday usage.....	1207
Figure 541 — Madhesh Province mother tongues in Census 2021: Maithili 41.73%, Bhojpuri 18.81%, Bajjika 18.44%, Nepali 5.76%, Tharu 4.17%, Urdu 4.08%, Tamang 1.65%, with the remainder grouped here as other languages.	1208
Figure 542 — India-wide Indic-language internet activities in the IAMAI–Kantar Internet in India Report 2024: video and music dominate, while social networking, shopping and search also occur substantially in Indic languages; these are not Bihar-specific estimates.	1209
Figure 543 — Different platform affordances affect different linguistic dimensions: typing and script choice, spoken registers, audiovisual performance, searchable spelling, algorithmic amplification and AI-assisted conversion.....	1211
Figure 544 — Public ritual operates as living infrastructure linking households, neighbourhoods, sacred sites, public institutions, media, migration and markets.	1216
Figure 545 — Madhesh Province religious affiliation in Nepal’s National Population and Housing Census 2021: Hindu 84.24%, Islam 13.28%, Buddhist 2.21%, Christian 0.18%, with the remaining reported religions grouped here as “Other”.....	1217
Figure 546 — Twenty-first-century public ritual is reshaped through interacting infrastructures: transport, migration, digital media, state capacity, environmental governance and markets.....	1220
Figure 547 — Evidence architecture for religious change: affiliation data must be combined with institutional records, ritual observation, media traces and historical comparison.	1222
Figure 548 — Contemporary caste is produced and contested across interacting institutions rather than operating as a single autonomous hierarchy.	1225
Figure 549 — Bihar Caste-Based Survey 2022–23: broad social categories as a share of the state population; rounded state-wide figures, not a direct map of Mithila, Vajji or Anga.....	1226
Figure 550 — Bihar survey poverty shares by broad social category; survey-defined poor means family monthly income up to ₹6,000, and the descriptive association is not a causal hierarchy.....	1227
Figure 551 — Madhesh Province housing quality by selected broad caste/ethnicity categories in Nepal’s NPHC 2021; the classifications are descriptive and are not equivalent to Bihar’s reservation categories.	1231
Figure 552 — Federalism as a three-tier social-citizenship architecture: rights and services become usable through coordination among federal, provincial and local institutions.....	1235
Figure 553 — Madhesh Province’s post-federal administrative field: eight districts, 136 local levels, 32 federal constituencies and 64 provincial first-past-the-post constituencies.	1237
Figure 554 — Legal identity becomes usable social citizenship through an administrative chain; each step can create access or exclusion.	1239
Figure 555 — Madhesh Province respondents reporting awareness of services provided by each level of government, 2022; awareness is not a measure of satisfaction or service quality.	1241
Figure 556 — Maithili, Angika and Bajjika occupy different recognition regimes in India/Bihar and Nepal/Madhesh; the categories are not directly interchangeable.	1244
Figure 557 — Madhesh Province mother-tongue shares in Census 2021; Angika is separately enumerated nationally but is not among the province’s leading mother tongues.	1246
Figure 558 — Analytical dashboard of institutional presence across census visibility, legal status, education, examinations, academics, broadcasting and provincial-language politics; it is not an official ranking.	1249
Figure 559 — Public-language equality depends on a chain from naming and legal status to institutional capacity, education, media and routine use; bottlenecks can occur at every stage.....	1252
Figure 560 — Heritage recognition is one stage in a living cultural cycle of practice, documentation, policy, reinterpretation and transmission.	1254

Figure 561 — Four regional examples show that safeguarding priorities differ by cultural form; visibility alone does not keep a practice alive.	1256
Figure 562 — Places, objects, knowledge, performance, language and livelihoods form one cultural ecosystem around communities of practice.	1255
Figure 563 — A living-culture dashboard evaluates transmission, participation, adaptability, livelihood, access, ecology, rights and documentation rather than publicity alone.	1260
Figure 564 — A regional cultural economy turns living practice into skills, rights, markets, income and reinvestment rather than treating visibility as the endpoint.	1263
Figure 565 — Local, tourism, digital and institutional markets offer different opportunities and leakage risks; shared infrastructure reduces dependence on any one channel.	1265
Figure 566 — Digital and AI tools can improve language creation, discovery, production and archives only when a provenance layer protects source, authorship, rights and edit history.	1267
Figure 567 — A 2026–2035 cultural-economy policy stack begins with living culture and builds skills, infrastructure, finance, markets, rights, cross-border cooperation and measurable accountability above it.	1269
Figure 568 — The <i>longue durée</i> of social change as cumulative transformation across major historical phases.	1273
Figure 569 — Social change emerges from interaction among ecology, households, land and labour, markets and mobility, state institutions, and language and culture.	1275
Figure 570 — Historical persistence usually works through reinvention under changing pressures rather than exact repetition.	1277
Figure 571 — India and Nepal remain different political economies within a cross-border social interaction zone.	1278
Figure 572 — Market integration as layered expansion from household provisioning to wider regional, national, cross-border and digital exchange.	1282
Figure 573 — Contemporary households combine production, wage work, enterprise, migration, education, savings and credit as a portfolio economy.	1285
Figure 574 — Infrastructure and institutions can lower transaction costs and widen access, while monopoly, debt, weak storage and exclusion can concentrate market power.	1286
Figure 575 — Market integration transmits both opportunity and shock; resilience depends on diversified income, storage, insurance, networks, public support and remittances.	1287
Figure 576 — The household is a changing institution connecting property, kinship, labour, care and social reproduction.	1291
Figure 577 — Caste, class and gender operate through distinct but interacting mechanisms, mediated by institutions.	1293
Figure 578 — Contemporary households are often multi-local networks linking origin, regional centres, migration destinations and digital-financial space.	1295
Figure 579 — Across time, persistent questions of ownership, labour, care, marriage, mobility and claims are answered through changing institutions.	1298
Figure 580 — Riverine ecology functions as economic infrastructure through soils, wetlands, settlement, mobility, markets and public works.	1300
Figure 581 — Floodplain economies follow a seasonal calendar in which risk, production and recovery are intertwined.	1302
Figure 582 — River engineering can reduce frequent losses while redistributing drainage, maintenance and breach risk.	1304
Figure 583 — Adaptive river governance combines forecasts, land-use decisions, livelihood diversity, maintained infrastructure, finance, cross-border coordination and ecological functions.	1306
Figure 584 — Language acts as shared infrastructure across household, education, public institutions, markets, media and digital systems.	1308
Figure 585 — Language infrastructure accumulates across oral, manuscript, print, broadcast and networked digital media.	1310
Figure 586 — Formal recognition becomes usable public access only when content, interfaces, comprehension and service outcomes align.	1311
Figure 587 — Digital language capability depends on encoding, corpora, speech tools, platforms, archives and governance working together.	1313
Figure 588 — One interaction zone can contain dense mobility and exchange while India and Nepal retain distinct political-economic institutions.	1316
Figure 589 — Selected institutional and infrastructure milestones have progressively changed the cost and form of India–Nepal exchange.	1318
Figure 590 — Labour, goods, energy and money cross the same border through different institutional channels.	1320
Figure 591 — Cross-border resilience depends on whether information, infrastructure and household adaptation outrun the transmission of shocks.	1321
Figure 592 — Cultural persistence operates through repeated cycles of practice, transmission, institutionalisation, reinterpretation and reproduction.	1325
Figure 593 — Cultural continuity is mediated by an ecology of household, associative, educational, cultural, state and market institutions.	1327

Figure 594 — Institutionalisation selects, documents, authorises and circulates culture, with consequences that should return to practitioners.	1328
Figure 595 — Cultural safeguarding should be measured through continuity, adaptation, access, livelihoods, documentation and institutional health.	1330
Figure 596 — A method for writing regional history without treating continuity as a timeless essence.	1333
Figure 597 — Mithila, Vajji and Anga are best reconstructed across interacting ecological, household, market, political, linguistic and cultural scales.	1335
Figure 598 — Long continuities and major transformations coexist across land, household, hierarchy, language, culture and economy.	1337
Figure 599 — Final interpretive framework: locate evidence, periodise categories, trace institutions, test distribution, compare scales, explain change and retain uncertainty.	1339

List of Tables

Table 1.1 — Comparative landscape table	31
Table 2.1 — Principal archaeological anchors and limits of inference	40
Table 3.1 — Selected Chalcolithic / early agrarian sites used in Chapter 3	48
Table 4.1 — Food evidence and limits of inference	56
Table 5.1 — Environmental setting and settlement implications	62
Table 6.1 — Selected archaeological anchors for the urbanising Middle Ganga–Anga region	70
Table 7.1 — Household evidence and limits of inference	79
Table 8.1 — Social categories, evidence and limits of inference	87
Table 9.1 — Named women, source settings and limits of inference	96
Table 10.1 — Agricultural evidence, interpretive value and limits	104
Table 11.1 — Craft evidence, what it can establish, and what it cannot establish alone	112
Table 12.1 — Evidence for trade and the limits of inference	121
Table 13.1 — Evidence for Vaiśālī as an economic and social centre, and limits of inference	129
Table 14.1 — Evidence for Aṅga and Campā, and limits of inference	137
Table 15.1 — Evidence for early money and monetisation, and limits of inference	146
Table 16.1 — Evidence for Buddhist and Jain institutional economies, and limits of inference	157
Table 17.1 — Evidence for education, debate and intellectual communities, and limits of inference	166
Table 18.1 — Evidence for health, medicine and the body, and limits of inference	177
Table 19.1 — Evidence for religious change and limits of inference	187
Table 20.1 — Evidence for Buddhism in Vajji and Videha, and limits of inference	197
Table 21.1 — Evidence for Jainism in the Vaiśālī–Videha landscape, and limits of inference	206
Table 22.1 — Evidence for Śaiva, Śākta and Vaiṣṇava transformations, and limits of inference	215
Table 23.1 — Evidence for sacred geography, and limits of inference	224
Table 24.1 — Evidence for festivals and calendrical culture, and limits of inference	233
Table 25.1 — Evidence for death, ancestors and life-cycle rites, and limits of inference	243
Table 26.1 — Selected evidence for land grants and agrarian change, with limits of inference	252
Table 27.1 — Evidence for village, market and town, with limits of inference	262
Table 28.1 — Evidence for labour and occupational communities, with limits of inference	271
Table 29.1 — Evidence for social classification and limits of inference	280
Table 30.1 — Brahmanical institutions: evidence, secure inference and chronological limit	289
Table 31.1 — Panji evidence: historical use and limit	297
Table 32.1 — Women, marriage and property: evidence, secure use and limit	307
Table 33.1 — Karnata and Oiniwar social economy: evidence, use and limit	316
Table 34.1 — Islam, migration and new social worlds: evidence, use and limit	325
Table 35.1 — Persianate culture and Mithila–Anga: evidence, use and limit	333
Table 36.1 — Languages before modern standardisation: evidence, secure use and limit	342
Table 37.1 — Formation of literary Maithili: major evidence and interpretive limits	350
Table 38.1 — Two Vidyāpati profiles: evidence domains and cautions	358
Table 39.1 — Evidence domains for Tirhuta/Mithilakshar and scribal history	367
Table 40.1 — Evidence domains for oral-culture history	375
Table 41.1 — Evidence domains for Angika and the eastern linguistic-cultural zone	384
Table 42.1 — Evidence domains for Bajjika and western Mithila	392
Table 43.1 — Evidence domains for Sanskrit learning and scholastic institutions	401
Table 44.1 — Evidence domains for architecture and settlement	411
Table 45.1 — Evidence domains for dress, textiles and ornament	418
Table 46.1 — Evidence domains for the food history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga	427
Table 47.1 — Evidence domains for the history of Mithila painting	435
Table 48.1 — Evidence domains for the twentieth-century cultural economy of Mithila painting	444
Table 49.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing music, song and performance	451
Table 50.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing theatre and dramatic cultures	460

Table 51.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing fairs, markets and public culture.....	468
Table 52.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing Mughal land, revenue and agrarian society	476
Table 53.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing interregional trade	484
Table 54.1 — Administrative phases in the remaking of agrarian relations, 1757–1793	492
Table 55.1 — Institutions and longer consequences of permanently settled landed society	499
Table 56.1 — Cultivation systems and distribution of agrarian risk.....	506
Table 57.1 — Commodity systems and their different forms of control	513
Table 58.1 — Major scarcity episodes and what they reveal about food security	522
Table 59.1 — Colonial classification sources: evidentiary value and limits.....	531
Table 60.1 — Evidence for colonial education: what each source can and cannot establish	539
Table 61.1 — Evidence for colonial print culture: what each source can and cannot establish	549
Table 62.1 — Evidence for transport and market change: strengths and limits.....	558
Table 63.1 — Evidence for colonial labour migration: strengths and limits	566
Table 64.1 — Evidence for women and colonial modernity: strengths and limits	575
Table 65.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing the historical India–Nepal borderland economy.....	585
Table 66.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing Janakpur as religious, commercial and urban centre.....	593
Table 67.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing land, tenancy and agrarian society in the Nepal Tarai.....	601
Table 68.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing forest clearance, malaria control and demographic transformation.....	609
Table 69.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing migration and settlement.....	616
Table 70.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing language, education and cultural institutions.....	623
Table 71.1 — Evidence domains for gender, citizenship and household economy.....	632
Table 72.1 — Evidence domains for Janakpur art, crafts and cultural economy.....	639
Table 73.1 — Evidence domains for border markets, remittances and informal exchange	646
Table 74.1 — Major agrarian-reform instruments in Bihar, 1947–1961	652
Table 75.1 — Formal effects of zamindari abolition and the principal limits that remained	661
Table 76.1 — Phases of agricultural change and their principal limits	668
Table 77.1 — Major river-development systems and their second-generation lessons	678
Table 78.1 — Selected post-independence flood events and what they reveal	683
Table 79.1 — Major post-independence rural-credit institutions and their historical significance	691
Table 80.1 — Major rural collective institutions and the coordination problem each addresses	701
Table 81.1 — Industrial forms, strengths and recurring limits	709
Table 82.1 — Selected Bhagalpur–Banka textile clusters: products, technical forms and recurring vulnerabilities	716
Table 83.1 — Selected specialised regional economies: ecological base, marketed output, recurring bottleneck and institutional linkage	729
Table 84.1 — Selected institutional anchors and contemporary scale indicators in the post-independence education system.....	737
Table 85.1 — Selected indicators and institutional anchors in the post-independence health transformation	746
Table 86.1 — Selected thresholds in the post-independence infrastructure transformation.....	756
Table 87.1 — Historical layers through which caste relations were institutionalised.....	764
Table 88.1 — Historical arenas of Dalit exclusion and change	777
Table 89.1 — Regional arenas of Adivasi and forest-connected history.....	785
Table 90.1 — Selected district Muslim population shares, Census 2011	790
Table 91.1 — Institutions reshaping household resources and gendered bargaining.....	800
Table 92.1 — Two measurement systems and what they reveal about women’s work.....	807
Table 93.1 — Legal and institutional thresholds affecting marriage, property and family formation	816
Table 94.1 — Educational mobility mechanisms and the constraints they address	826
Table 95.1 — Major affirmative-action instruments and their social effects	834
Table 96.1 — Forms of rural power and their historical conversion	843
Table 97.1 — Migration regimes across the longue durée	857
Table 98.1 — Labour worlds in the Calcutta/Kolkata migration system	865
Table 99.1 — Contrasting the Delhi/NCR and Mumbai/MMR migration systems	874
Table 100.1 — Phases in the Punjab–Haryana seasonal agricultural labour corridor.....	883
Table 101.1 — Major forms of Nepal–India circular mobility in the eastern borderland.....	891
Table 102.1 — The Gulf migration cycle: institutions, household decisions and recurrent risks.....	900
Table 103.1 — Remittances transform several household domains at once	909
Table 104.1 — Urbanisation is produced by several distinct but interacting processes.....	917

Table 105.1 — Informal economies combine flexibility with specific institutional vulnerabilities	924
Table 106.1 — Diaspora cultural institutions combine different functions, records and vulnerabilities	933
Table 107.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing Maithili print and literary institutions.....	943
Table 108.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing Angika print and literary institutions	952
Table 109.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing radio and broadcasting history	960
Table 110.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing cinema, video and recorded performance	969
Table 111.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing newspapers and public debate.....	977
Table 112.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing institutional canon formation	987
Table 113.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing women writers and alternative literary publics	996
Table 114.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing Videha and born-digital literary culture	1006
Table 115.1 — Evidence and preservation requirements for major digital-archive domains.....	1014
Table 116.1 — From technological recognition to durable Tirthuta access.....	1022
Table 117.1 — Evidence architecture for demographic reconstruction	1031
Table 118.1 — Evidence architecture for contemporary agricultural analysis	1041
Table 119.1 — Evidence architecture for land fragmentation and rural livelihoods	1049
Table 120.1 — Evidence architecture for studying migration-dependent economies.....	1059
Table 121.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing remittances, consumption and housing	1071
Table 122.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing the education economy and coaching migration	1082
Table 123.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing the health economy	1091
Table 124.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing transport connectivity	1102
Table 125.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing digital payments and platform economies.....	1111
Table 126.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing tourism and pilgrimage economies	1120
Table 127.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing Mithila painting in the global market	1130
Table 128.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing GI, heritage branding and intellectual property.....	1141
Table 129.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing climate change and agrarian risk.....	1150
Table 130.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing flood adaptation and resilience.....	1158
Table 131.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing India–Nepal border economies after federalisation	1167
Table 132.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing contemporary family transformation	1177
Table 133.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing changing marriage practices	1186
Table 134.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing gender, education and employment.....	1195
Table 135.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing youth culture	1204
Table 136.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing social media and language	1213
Table 137.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing religious change and public ritual	1222
Table 138.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing caste in contemporary society.....	1233
Table 139.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing Madhesh, federalism and social citizenship	1242
Table 140.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing Maithili, Angika and Bajjika in contemporary public life	1251
Table 141.1 — Evidence architecture for distinguishing heritage recognition from living cultural viability	1261
Table 142.1 — Evidence architecture for measuring the future of the regional cultural economy	1270
Table 143.1 — Evidence architecture for longue-durée social synthesis.....	1279
Table 144.1 — Evidence architecture for reconstructing the transition from subsistence to market integration.....	1288
Table 145.1 — Evidence architecture for reconstructing household, caste, class and gender across time	1298
Table 146.1 — Evidence architecture for reconstructing riverine ecology and economic history	1306
Table 147.1 — Evidence architecture for reconstructing language as social infrastructure	1314
Table 148.1 — Evidence architecture for reconstructing the India–Nepal interaction zone	1322
Table 149.1 — Evidence architecture for studying cultural persistence, reinvention and modern institutions	1331
Table 150.1 — Evidence architecture for socio-cultural-economic histories without timeless essences.....	1339

PART I

**LAND, ENVIRONMENT AND THE
MAKING OF HUMAN LANDSCAPES**

Chapters 1–5

Chapter 1 — The Physical Foundations of Society

The socio-cultural and economic history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga begins with landscape, but not with environmental determinism. Rivers, soils, forests, monsoon rhythms, wetlands, seismicity and routes created changing fields of possibility. They affected where settlement was easy or difficult, which crops could be sustained, how goods moved, where towns acquired strategic advantages, and why households repeatedly had to adapt to flood, erosion, drought, sedimentation and earthquake. None of those environmental conditions, however, produced a single inevitable political or cultural outcome. Human institutions mediated them. This chapter therefore treats physical geography as historical infrastructure: durable enough to shape recurring problems and opportunities, but dynamic enough to prevent the historian from treating any river course, floodplain edge or ecological boundary as timeless.

1.1 Historical geography as evidence, not destiny

Historical regions do not arrive with permanently surveyed natural borders. “Mithila,” “Videha,” “Vajji,” “Anga,” “Tirhut,” “Madhesh” and “Tarai” belong to different chronological and documentary contexts. Their spatial relationships changed with political authority, settlement, language, pilgrimage, transport and administration. Modern districts are useful for locating archaeological sites, soils and hydrological data, but they cannot simply be projected backward. The physical landscape is therefore used here as a frame for asking where movement, settlement, cultivation and exchange were possible, not as a device for drawing ancient borders from modern rivers.

This distinction is especially important in the Gangetic plains because rivers themselves migrate. The Eastern Gangetic Plains are characterized by shallow, aggrading channels, frequent avulsion and extensive flooding, while river systems differ substantially in sediment load and hydrological regime (Sinha et al. 2005). A settlement described in relation to a channel two millennia ago cannot automatically be located by assuming that the channel occupied its present course. Floodplain history is, in part, a history of moving reference points.

The same caution applies to ecological labels. The Tarai of Nepal is a physiographic piedmont plain made of recent and post-Pleistocene alluvial deposits south of the Churia region, but modern administrative “Madhesh” is a political and social formation with a different history. Likewise, the southern and eastern landscapes associated with Anga include Ganga alluvium as well as hill-margin and older-rock environments toward Banka and Munger. The study region is best understood as an interconnected environmental transect rather than a single uniform plain.

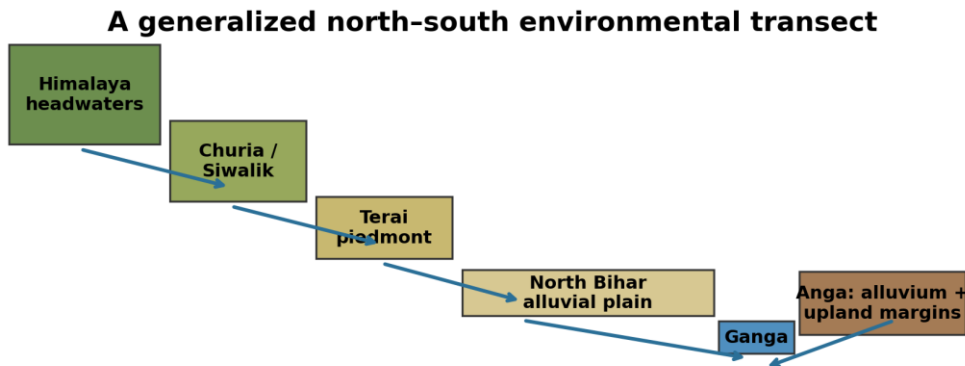
1.2 From Himalayan headwaters to the Gangetic plain

The most consequential physical relationship in northern Mithila is vertical as much as horizontal. Himalayan and middle-hill catchments gather monsoon rainfall and, in some basins, snow- and glacier-fed runoff; rivers descend through confined valleys, cross the Churia/Siwalik belt and then lose gradient abruptly on entering the Tarai and Gangetic foreland. Water and sediment that are tightly confined upstream spread across a very low-relief alluvial surface downstream. The result is not merely a river flowing from north to south. It is a linked mountain–piedmont–plain system in which rainfall, slope, sediment production and channel mobility are transferred across the India–Nepal border.

Nepal’s Forest Research and Training Centre describes the Terai physiographic region as a gently sloping piedmont plain of recent and post-Pleistocene alluvium between the Churia to the north and the Indian Gangetic plain to the south. This formulation is useful historically because it emphasizes continuity of

landform across a modern international boundary (FRTC 2022). The frontier has enormous political importance, but water, sediment, groundwater and ecological processes cross it.

The Himalaya–Tarai–plain gradient also created differentiated resource zones. Timber, forest produce, stone, grazing and upland products could move downslope; grain, salt, textiles and manufactured goods could move in several directions; rivers and foothill tracks could alternately facilitate and obstruct travel. Later chapters will test these possibilities against period-specific evidence rather than assuming a permanent trade system.



Not to scale. The historical regions overlap these environments but are not identical to them.

Figure 1 — A generalized Himalaya–Tarai–Gangetic plain–Anga environmental transect (colour schematic).

1.3 The Himalayan foreland basin and the making of alluvium

The Gangetic plain north of the peninsular uplands forms part of the Himalayan foreland basin, a long-lived zone of subsidence and sediment accumulation generated by the tectonic loading of the rising Himalaya. For social history, the crucial fact is not the geological mechanism by itself but its consequence: very thick Quaternary alluvium, low gradients and a surface continually reworked by rivers. Sinha and colleagues distinguish the Eastern Gangetic Plains by widespread aggradation, shallow channels and avulsion, characteristics that help explain why “stable” agricultural land may be locally fertile yet historically vulnerable to channel change (Sinha et al. 2005).

The Gandak and Kosi systems have built major megafan forms in the plains. The Gandak megafan preserves a complex history of river migration, soils and tectonic tilting; Mohindra, Parkash and Prasad (1992) used soil development to reconstruct surfaces of different ages and argued for major eastward shifting of the Gandak through the late Quaternary and Holocene. Later work has refined the tectonic and depositional picture, but the historical implication remains: soils and settlement surfaces are not all the same age even when they appear today as one continuous plain.

This dynamic alluvial architecture complicates archaeological preservation. Sites may be buried by sediment, eroded by migrating channels, isolated on older interfluvies or obscured by modern cultivation. Absence of visible surface remains in a floodplain cannot therefore be equated automatically with absence of past occupation. Archaeology in such a landscape must work with geomorphology.

1.4 The Ganga as trunk river and historical corridor

The Ganga cuts across the broader study region from west to east and separates much of the north-Bihar alluvial domain from the older uplands and south-bank plains associated with parts of Anga and Munger. It is simultaneously a drainage trunk, a floodplain-maker, a transport route, a source of fish and fertile silt, a ritual landscape and a boundary that has been crossed repeatedly. These functions were never identical in all periods. Navigation, ferrying, pilgrimage, taxation, military movement and commodity traffic each depended on technologies, political control and seasonal water levels.

The river also connects rather than merely divides. Himalayan tributaries deliver water and sediment to it from the north; hill and plateau-margin streams enter from the south and southeast. Bhagalpur's modern hydrogeological profile, for example, identifies the Ganga along with Kosi, Chandan and several smaller drainages across a landscape combining Indo-Gangetic alluvium with marginal alluvial tracts (Central Ground Water Board 2013a). That juxtaposition captures a central theme of Anga's physical history: Ganga-connected lowlands alongside routes toward older uplands.

Because the Ganga's bars, diaras, banks and channels are mobile, river-edge settlement is a negotiated geography. Fertility and connectivity may coexist with erosion and displacement. Later chapters on Champa, Bhagalpur, river commerce and pilgrimage will therefore treat the Ganga as an active historical process, not merely a line on a map.

1.5 Gandak / Narayani: a trans-Himalayan-to-plain system

The Narayani–Gandak system demonstrates the scale mismatch between mountain catchments and plain landscapes. Nepal's National Water Plan describes the Narayani basin as a major Himalayan drainage with tributaries including the Trishuli, Budhi Gandaki, Marsyangdi, Seti and Kali Gandaki. Downstream, the Gandak debouches onto the middle Gangetic plain and has constructed a large megafan in eastern Uttar Pradesh and northwestern Bihar (Government of Nepal, National Water Plan; Mohindra, Parkash and Prasad 1992).

The historical importance of such a system lies in repeated transfers: water from the Himalaya, sediment from rapidly eroding mountain terrain, routes that connect valleys to the plains, and flood risks that are experienced far from the sites of sediment production. The fan surface contains palaeochannels, oxbows, tals and soils of differing ages. These are archives of former river positions and, potentially, of changing settlement opportunity.

For Mithila and Vajji history, the Gandak is also a caution against treating a river as a fixed cultural frontier. A channel with a long record of migration may function as a political boundary in one period and as an internal corridor in another. Boundary claims must therefore be demonstrated textually and historically rather than inferred from physical geography alone.

1.6 Bagmati, Kamla and the interfan plains

Between the large Gandak and Kosi fan systems lie plains drained by rivers such as the Bagmati and Kamla. They are often less visually dramatic than the Kosi, but they are no less important to settlement history. Jain and Sinha's work on the Bagmati shows a highly dynamic anabranching river with repeated avulsion, overbank flooding, high suspended load and sensitivity to both sedimentological adjustment and tectonic tilting (Jain and Sinha 2004; 2005).

The Bagmati example matters methodologically. It demonstrates that instability in north Bihar is not limited to one "sorrowful" river. Interfan channels can also shift rapidly, create abandoned courses,

redistribute waterlogging and alter local gradients. Villages, roads, tanks, fields and administrative boundaries have repeatedly had to coexist with this mobility.

The Kamla and other foothill-fed systems belong to the same broad problem of low-gradient passage from Nepal into north Bihar. Their local histories differ, and no single fluvial model should be imposed on all of them. What they share is the capacity to transform cultivated space seasonally and episodically, linking agrarian opportunity to hydrological uncertainty.

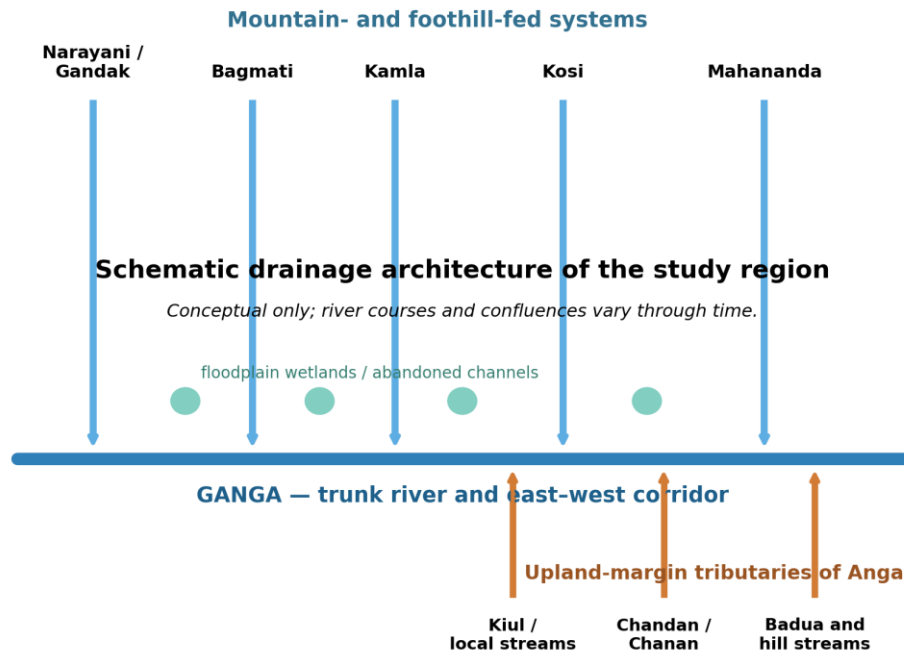


Figure 2 — Schematic drainage architecture of the study region (colour; not to scale).

1.7 The Kosi: megafan, sediment and avulsion

The Kosi is the clearest example of why geomorphology belongs inside social and economic history. Its basin links high Himalayan catchments, middle-hill tributaries, the Nepal plains and a vast alluvial fan in north Bihar. Sinha and colleagues' basin-scale analysis emphasizes the large sediment flux delivered to the foreland and identifies sediment dynamics as a central management problem connected with channel instability and flooding (Sinha et al. 2019).

Older popular narratives often described the Kosi as having migrated more than one hundred kilometres steadily westward over roughly two centuries. Chakraborty and colleagues re-examined historical maps and surface deposits and argued that the record is more complicated: oscillatory channel movement and nodal avulsion better fit much of the evidence than a simple, continuous westward sweep (Chakraborty et al. 2010). That revision is a useful lesson for this volume: even apparently familiar environmental histories require source criticism.

The 2008 avulsion, discussed fully in the companion political-environmental volume and later in this volume's chapter on river-development projects, showed how embankments, aggradation, maintenance, channel geometry and extreme flow can combine to produce catastrophic displacement. Here the point is more basic. The Kosi megafan is a productive agricultural landscape created by sediment and at the same time a landscape in which sediment can raise channels, bury fields, create new surfaces and redirect water. Fertility and hazard are products of the same fluvial system.

1.8 Mahananda and the eastern floodplain transition

East of the Kosi domain, the Mahananda and associated channels occupy a transition toward Bengal. Modern soil-landform work in Katihar identifies old alluvial plains, young alluvial plains, meander plains, active floodplains and char/point-bar environments, underscoring the fine-grained heterogeneity of what a small-scale map might simply label “alluvium” (Reza et al. 2022).

This heterogeneity matters for both agriculture and communication. Young sandy surfaces, silty floodplains, abandoned meanders and older, more stable tracts offer different combinations of drainage, soil development and flood exposure. Historical settlement density cannot be interpreted responsibly without attention to such local differences.

The eastern floodplain is also where the study region opens toward Bengal’s riverine world. That connection will become crucial for Champa, Bhagalpur, colonial commodity circulation, jute, migration and later rail and road networks. Physical geography created corridors; historical institutions determined how intensively they were used.

1.9 Anga’s southern and southeastern landscapes

Anga cannot be reduced to a north-Bihar floodplain model. The historical core around Champa/Bhagalpur is tied to the Ganga, but the wider eastern Bihar landscape grades southward toward older rocks, hill tracts and plateau-margin drainage. Modern Bhagalpur combines flat Indo-Gangetic alluvium and marginal alluvial tracts, while Banka rises toward hilly country adjoining Jharkhand and is drained by rivers such as the Chandan/Chanan, Badua and other hill streams (Central Ground Water Board 2013a; Census of India 2011, Banka District Census Handbook).

The Chandan rises in the uplands south of Bihar and flows northward toward the Ganga through Banka and Bhagalpur. Such south-to-north drainage creates a different environmental relation from the Himalayan rivers: seasonal hill streams carry water and sand from the plateau margin into the Ganga corridor. Modern district sources describe broad fertile northern plains but hilly and forested southern tracts in Banka, a contrast that would have affected cultivation, forest use, transport and settlement density.

Munger adds another environmental edge. The Central Ground Water Board describes rocky uplands and the Kharagpur Hill tract alongside pediplains and Ganga alluvium, with the river along the northern margin (Central Ground Water Board 2013b). The resulting socio-economic history is therefore one of interfaces: riverine lowland, older alluvium, rocky upland, forest resources and routes toward the Chota Nagpur plateau.

1.10 Soils: fertility, variability and the danger of a single “Gangetic soil”

The image of the Gangetic plain as uniformly fertile is useful only at the broadest scale. Alluvial soils vary by age, texture, drainage, sediment source, groundwater conditions and landform position. Bihar’s official agro-climatic classification distinguishes north-western and north-eastern alluvial zones from the southern alluvial zone, with differences in texture, rainfall and cropping possibilities (Government of Bihar 2019).

The north-western alluvial zone is described mainly as sandy loam to loam; the north-east includes sandy loam and clay loam with higher mean rainfall; south Bihar combines sandy loam, clay loam, loam and clay. These categories are modern agronomic summaries, not timeless soil maps, but they illustrate why agrarian history must be local. A crop regime successful on a better-drained older surface may fail in a waterlogged depression only a few kilometres away.

Floodplain soil is also historically renewed. Sediment deposition can replenish nutrients while simultaneously burying standing crops, property boundaries and infrastructure. Sand casting can turn former cultivated land into a low-productivity surface for years. Conversely, stable flood recession can produce highly productive seasonal fields. The same process may therefore appear as “fertility” in a long-run regional description and as disaster in household history.

1.11 Monsoon seasonality and the agricultural calendar

Monsoon timing provides one of the strongest recurring seasonal structures in regional history. Bihar receives most of its rainfall during the southwest monsoon, with official state summaries placing the principal rainy season from roughly mid-June through September. Agro-climatic means are higher in the north-east than in south Bihar, but annual and district variation is large (Government of Bihar 2019; Directorate of Economics and Statistics, Bihar).

The historical consequences extend beyond crop choice. Monsoon onset affects sowing, road conditions, ferry reliability, disease environments, fodder, fishing and labour demand. High water may expand river transport while cutting terrestrial routes. A delayed monsoon can produce water stress even in a region famous for floods. An intense monsoon can destroy crops through waterlogging or river breach. “Wet” and “dry” are therefore insufficient social categories; timing, duration and spatial distribution matter.

Climate is not stationary. The long-term history of rainfall variability and contemporary anthropogenic climate change will be treated in later chapters with period-appropriate data. This chapter uses modern climatology to establish the seasonal framework only; it does not project twentieth- or twenty-first-century rainfall averages unchanged into prehistory or antiquity.

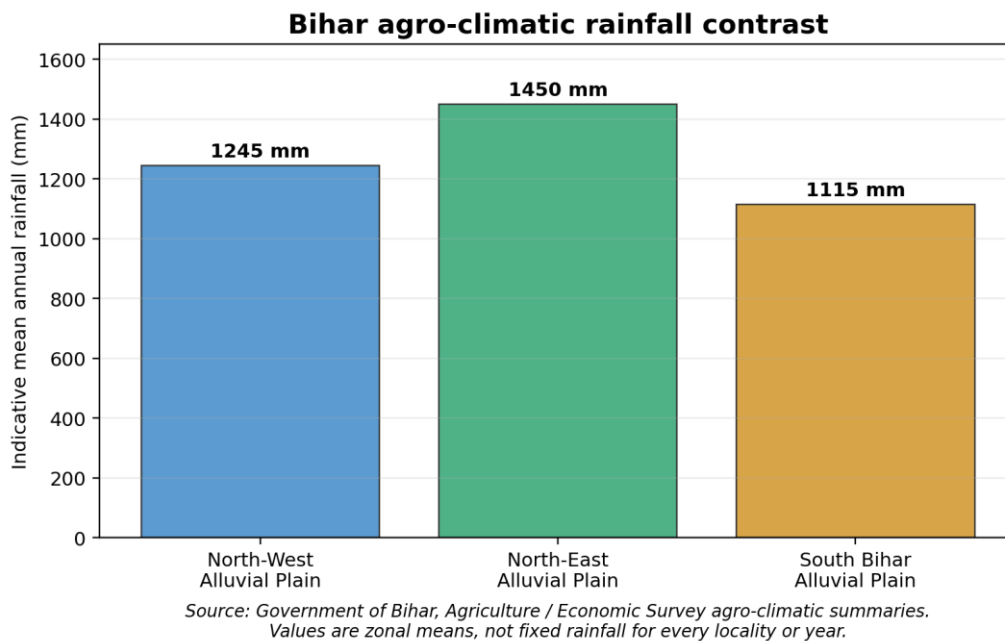


Figure 3 — Indicative rainfall contrast among Bihar agro-climatic zones (colour chart).

1.12 Wetlands, oxbows, tals and chaurs

North Bihar’s low relief and mobile rivers have produced abundant floodplain wetlands, abandoned channels, oxbows, marshes and shallow depressions. Singh and Sinha show that many wetlands in the Kosi–

Ganga interfluve are products of fluvial scouring, channel abandonment and later cut-and-fill processes (Singh and Sinha 2020). They are therefore not residual “unused” spaces but part of the river system itself.

Wetlands can store floodwater, support fish and aquatic vegetation, provide seasonal grazing and cultivation, and maintain local hydrological connectivity. Kabartal/Kanwar Jheel, now a Ramsar site, is one modern example of a larger north-Bihar floodplain complex; its contemporary ecological status should not be projected backward, but it demonstrates the continued importance of wetland mosaics in an intensively cultivated plain.

For social history, wetlands complicate land categories. A depression may be open water in the monsoon, marsh in one season, fishing ground in another and cultivated land when dry. Property, access rights and occupational specialization may therefore vary with water level. Later chapters on fisheries, makhana, agrarian society and rural commons will return to this seasonal multiplicity.

1.13 Flood, avulsion, erosion and deposition as different processes

Flood history requires precise vocabulary. Overbank inundation, embankment breach, bank erosion and avulsion are related but not identical. A river may flood while staying in its channel belt; it may erode one bank without abandoning the channel; or it may avulse and establish a new course. These processes have different implications for settlement, property and recovery. Treating them all as a generic “flood” obscures causation.

Bagmati studies show repeated channel migration and avulsion in an interfan setting, while Kosi research demonstrates how sediment accumulation and channel configuration interact with avulsion risk (Jain and Sinha 2004; Sinha et al. 2019). Such findings are not a substitute for historical sources, but they help historians interpret why old channels, abandoned levees and sudden shifts recur in maps and settlement memory.

Erosion and deposition also redistribute wealth. Land lost to a river may reappear elsewhere as char or diara; access to newly formed land can become contested. Sand deposition may ruin one field while silt deposition benefits another. Public works such as embankments, canals and drainage schemes redistribute these processes rather than abolishing them. That political ecology will become central in the modern chapters.

1.14 Earthquakes and the tectonic setting

The plains appear flat and quiet, but they lie beside an active Himalayan plate boundary and above subsurface structures capable of influencing river gradients. Jain and Sinha identified geomorphic anomalies in the Bagmati plains consistent with active tectonic deformation, while twentieth-century earthquakes demonstrated the region’s direct seismic vulnerability (Jain and Sinha 2005).

The 15 January 1934 Bihar–Nepal earthquake is catalogued by the USGS/ISC-GEM system at magnitude 8.0. Its effects belong to modern disaster history, but the event also reminds the historian that built environments, water systems and settlement hierarchies can be abruptly transformed by forces invisible in ordinary annual cycles. Earlier earthquakes are more difficult to reconstruct and require careful separation of geological, archaeological and textual evidence.

It would be a mistake, however, to explain every river shift through tectonics. Hydrology, sediment load, bank material, local slope and human intervention also matter. The methodological lesson is multicausality: tectonics is one control among several.

1.15 Forests, grasslands and ecological edges

The modern cultivated plain can conceal the historical importance of forests and grasslands. The Himalayan foothills and Churia–Tarai belt supported extensive forest environments; southern Banka and the Kharagpur hills likewise connect the study region to upland forest resources. Modern forest reports cannot reconstruct ancient vegetation directly, but they identify enduring ecological contrasts that shaped possibilities for timber, fuel, fodder, wild foods, hunting and shifting settlement fronts.

Forest clearance is a historical process, not a one-time transition from “nature” to “agriculture.” Different periods experienced expansion and contraction of cultivation, state claims over forest, disease environments, market demand and transport access. The Nepal Tarai, in particular, underwent major twentieth-century transformations through forest clearance, malaria control and migration; those developments will be treated later rather than projected into earlier centuries.

Edges between forest, wetland and field also supported specialized livelihoods. Fishing, pastoralism, gathering, boat work, seasonal cultivation and craft production often depended on access to more than one ecological zone. A social history organized only around permanent plough agriculture would miss these mixed economies.

1.16 Routes, mobility and the geography of exchange

Physical geography shaped route choice without dictating a single permanent network. The Ganga offered longitudinal movement; north–south rivers and foothill corridors linked the plains to Nepal; upland-margin streams and passes connected Anga toward the plateau and Bengal. In the dry season, carts and foot traffic could use surfaces that became difficult during the rains. Ferries turned river crossings into nodal points. Towns benefited when political authority, markets and routes coincided.

The same river could be route and obstacle. High water may facilitate boats yet interrupt land traffic; a shifted channel may strand an old landing place; sedimentation can change navigability. Historical trade claims must therefore be tied to evidence such as itineraries, inscriptions, administrative records, archaeological distributions or documented markets. A modern road parallel to an old river does not prove an ancient route.

This caution is especially relevant for discussions of Vaishali, Janakpur and Champa. Their historical importance cannot be derived from geography alone, but geography helps explain why certain locations repeatedly became attractive when institutions capable of organizing exchange emerged.

1.17 Environment, household economy and unequal risk

Environmental events are socially selective. A flood of the same depth affects a landowner with savings, a tenant farmer, a fisher, a landless labourer and a household with livestock in different ways. Access to raised ground, boats, credit, roads, embankments, drainage and state relief converts a physical hazard into unequal social outcomes. Gender and caste can shape mobility, asset ownership and access to compensation. These mechanisms belong to later periods where evidence is available, but the conceptual distinction is essential from the outset.

Likewise, “fertile alluvium” is not a social condition. Fertility becomes livelihood through land access, labour, seed, irrigation, livestock, markets and political rights. “River connectivity” becomes commerce only when boats, security, exchange institutions and demand exist. The physical foundation is therefore necessary but never sufficient.

The volume will repeatedly return to this distinction between environmental capacity and institutional realization. It prevents the familiar mistake of turning geography into destiny while still taking geography seriously.

1.18 Methodological implications for the rest of Volume II

Five rules follow from this chapter. First, historical regions must be mapped by period, not by a single modern outline. Second, rivers should be treated as mobile systems; historical place identification must allow for palaeochannels and avulsion. Third, modern climatology and soil classification can explain processes but cannot be projected unchanged into deep time. Fourth, hazards must be distinguished—flooding, breach, erosion, waterlogging, drought and earthquake produce different social consequences. Fifth, environment must be connected to institutions before socio-economic conclusions are drawn.

These rules shape the chapters that follow. Prehistoric settlement will be read against changing landforms and preservation conditions. Early urbanisation will be studied in relation to rivers and agrarian surplus without assuming that rivers alone produced cities. Agrarian chapters will distinguish soil potential from landholding systems. Trade chapters will separate possible corridors from demonstrated exchange. Flood and development chapters will distinguish natural processes from infrastructures that redistribute risk.

The result should be a regional history that is materially grounded but not reductionist: one in which the Himalaya, Tarai, Gangetic plains, Ganga corridor, wetlands and Anga uplands form changing environmental infrastructures for human action.

1.19 Comparative landscape table

Table 1.1 — Comparative landscape table

Landscape zone	Historical opportunities	Recurring constraints	Evidence needed before historical inference
Himalayan / hill catchments	Water, forest products, stone, routes to valleys	Steep terrain, landslides, seasonal access	Period-specific route, settlement and exchange evidence
Tarai / piedmont	Forest, grazing, groundwater, cross-border corridors	Waterlogging, disease environments, river migration	Archaeology, historical ecology, land and administrative records
North Bihar alluvial plains	Intensive cultivation, wetlands, river routes, dense settlement potential	Flooding, avulsion, erosion, drainage congestion	Geomorphology plus settlement, landholding and market evidence
Ganga corridor	East–west transport, fisheries, pilgrimage, alluvial agriculture	Bank erosion, channel migration, crossing costs	Navigation, ferry, market, archaeological and textual evidence
Anga alluvial–upland interface	River commerce plus forest/upland resources and plateau links	Seasonal streams, uneven soils, hill–plain access	Local archaeology, route evidence, district geology and historical records

Conclusion

The physical foundations of Mithila, Vajji and Anga are plural. North of the Ganga, Himalayan and foothill rivers build and rebuild a low-gradient alluvial plain in which fertile soils, wetlands, seasonal water and recurring channel instability coexist. South and southeast of the Ganga, the Anga landscape adds older alluvium, hill streams, rocky uplands and routes toward the plateau. Across Nepal and India, the Tarai and Gangetic plain form an environmental continuum crossed by a modern state boundary whose political importance does not interrupt hydrological process.

That continuity must not be confused with cultural or political unity. Environmental connection creates possibilities for movement and exchange; it does not prove a common polity, language or identity. Conversely, political boundaries can be historically powerful even where rivers and ecological systems cross them. The central methodological task of Volume II is therefore to connect physical process to social evidence without allowing one to substitute for the other.

Chapter 2 — Prehistoric Settlement and Subsistence

Prehistory in the Mithila–Vajji–Anga study region cannot be written as the early chapter of a community whose later name is already known. The archaeological record precedes the historical identities, states, literary languages and social classifications that dominate later periods. Accordingly, this chapter asks a narrower but more defensible set of questions: where are prehistoric occupations actually documented; what kinds of settlement and subsistence can be reconstructed from stratified evidence; what remains uncertain because alluvial processes have buried, eroded or displaced sites; and which wider Middle Ganga or Himalayan comparisons illuminate the problem without becoming substitutes for local evidence. The principal direct anchors used here are the Patu/Rato Khola lithic complex in eastern Nepal, Chechar–Kutubpur in present Vaishali district, and Chirand in north Bihar. Wider sites such as Lahuradewa and Senuwar are used comparatively and are labelled as such.

2.1 Prehistory without retrospective identities

Terms such as Mithila, Videha, Vajji and Anga belong to historical geographies whose documentary visibility is much later than the Stone Age occupations considered here. A lithic scatter in the Siwalik foothills is not evidence of an early ‘Maithil’ population, and a Neolithic settlement in modern Vaishali district is not automatically a settlement of the later Vajjian republic. Modern political borders are equally anachronistic as cultural boundaries for the early Holocene. The historian may use present district and national names to locate evidence, but those labels describe where the site is now, not who prehistoric inhabitants believed themselves to be.

This distinction is more than terminological caution. It changes the kinds of conclusions that can responsibly be drawn. Archaeology can reconstruct technologies, diets, settlement forms, seasonality, environmental choices and sometimes exchange or mobility. It is usually much less secure for language, ethnicity, caste, political identity or named religious affiliation in periods without writing. Those later categories will enter this volume only when the evidence capable of supporting them appears.

2.2 The evidence problem of an alluvial country

The north-Bihar plain is a difficult archive. The rivers described in Chapter 1 have repeatedly migrated, aggraded, incised and reworked their floodplains. A prehistoric occupation surface may be sealed beneath metres of younger sediment, truncated by a later channel, exposed only briefly on an eroding bank, or

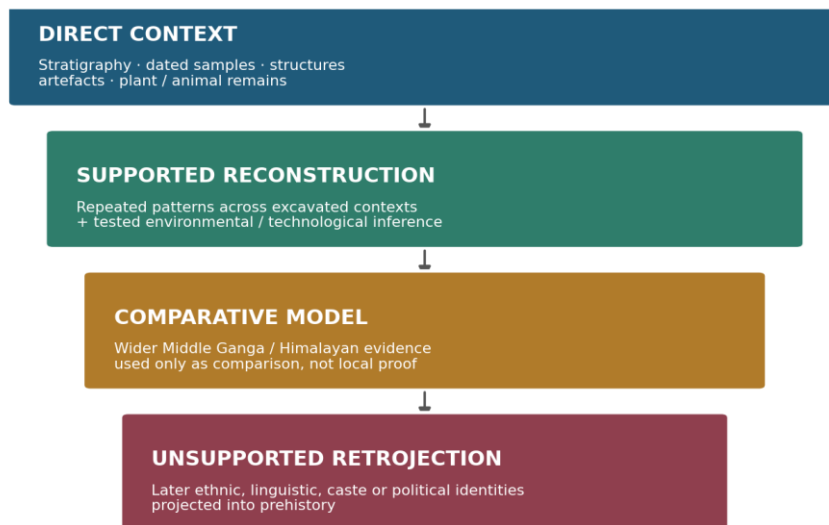
destroyed by agriculture and construction. Consequently, low site counts in an actively alluviating zone cannot be translated directly into low prehistoric population. Archaeological visibility is partly a geomorphological outcome.

The contrast with foothill terraces is instructive. In the Siwaliks, artefacts may survive on older terrace surfaces or within soils that can be related to Quaternary landforms; on a young floodplain, equivalent occupations may be deeply buried or displaced. This asymmetry helps explain why the prehistoric record of Nepal's Siwalik margins and the excavated river-bank mounds of Bihar looks discontinuous even though human use of the wider landscape need not have been discontinuous.

2.3 An evidence hierarchy for Chapter 2

The strongest claims in this chapter rest on excavated or closely contextualized material: stratigraphic position, structures, radiometric samples, lithic assemblages, pottery, bone and antler objects, botanical remains and faunal remains. A second level consists of inferences repeated across more than one secure context—for example, the association of wattle-and-daub architecture with settled or recurrent occupation. A third level uses wider regional comparisons, such as the archaeobotany of the Middle Ganga Plain, to frame questions that local excavation has not yet answered. The chapter does not use later literary traditions as evidence for prehistoric settlement.

This hierarchy is particularly important for chronology. The category 'Neolithic' is not a single date shared across South Asia. Local sequences differ; published radiocarbon determinations may be internally inconsistent; old excavations did not always use present sampling protocols; and technological traits can persist across chronological boundaries. Dates are therefore presented as ranges or as the published assessment of a particular context, not as a universal timetable.



Chapter 2 uses the upper three levels; the fourth is explicitly rejected.

Figure 4 — Evidence control for prehistoric reconstruction: direct context, supported inference, comparison, and rejected retrojection (colour schematic).

2.4 Eastern Nepal: the Patu / Rato Khola prehistoric record

The most important prehistoric evidence close to the Nepal side of the later Mithila region comes from the Siwalik foothills of Mahottari district. Gudrun Corvinus's surveys at Patu and along the Rato Khola established a large cobble-tool industry associated with older river terraces. The Patu 2 locality was described as a particularly dense concentration or activity area. The assemblage includes abundant flakes, choppers, core-scrapers and adze- or axe-like tools made largely from locally available cobbles. Corvinus's work is foundational because it connects artefacts to terrace geomorphology rather than treating isolated stone tools as self-dating objects (Corvinus 1987, 1989, 2007).

Later synthesis has emphasized that Patu is best understood in a Late Pleistocene–Early Holocene sub-Himalayan context rather than forced into an old, uniform 'Lower Palaeolithic chopper' category. Gaillard, Singh and Dambricourt-Malassé describe the Patu assemblage as a macrolithic industry with strong flake representation, unifacial and bifacial adze-like pieces, choppers and core-scrapers; a charcoal sample from the artefact-bearing horizon yielded an age around 7 ka BP and therefore a minimum age for the industry. The chronology is early Holocene, but the industry is not evidence for farming. It is evidence for human occupation and technological adaptation in a forested, stream-rich foothill environment (Gaillard, Singh and Dambricourt-Malassé 2011).

This matters to the history of the Nepal–India borderland in a negative as well as a positive sense. It demonstrates prehistoric human use of landscapes north of the present international boundary, while offering no basis for assigning those people to later Videha, Maithili, Madhesi or other identities. The archaeological continuity to be investigated is therefore occupation of an ecological corridor, not continuity of a named community.

2.5 Palaeolithic and Mesolithic labels: why terminology must remain provisional

Older South Asian prehistory often classified stone-tool industries primarily by typology. In the Siwaliks this produced long debates around 'Soanian', Acheulean, chopper-chopping and later macrolithic assemblages. Modern work gives greater weight to geological surface, stratigraphy, raw-material economy, reduction sequence and absolute dating. Patu is a good example of why the change matters: cobble tools alone do not make an assemblage ancient, and similar tool forms can recur when local river cobbles encourage comparable technical solutions.

For this volume, therefore, the labels Palaeolithic, Mesolithic and Neolithic are used as archaeological conveniences tied to the cited literature, not as rigid social stages. 'Mesolithic' at Patu describes a scholarly placement of a lithic tradition; it does not imply that the inhabitants followed the same subsistence regime as every other Mesolithic community in South Asia. Likewise, 'Neolithic' at Chirand and Chechar–Kutubpur refers to archaeological packages in which settled life, food production and characteristic material technologies become visible; it does not mean that foraging suddenly ceased.

2.6 North Bihar's strongest Neolithic anchors

Within Bihar, the excavated Neolithic record most relevant to the northern alluvial plain is concentrated at Chirand in Saran and Chechar–Kutubpur in Vaishali. They are not interchangeable. Chirand has a long excavation history, a thick Neolithic deposit and unusually rich bone and antler industries together with plant and animal remains. Chechar–Kutubpur is geographically closer to the later Vaishali–Vajji core and

therefore crucial for this book, but the excavated exposure was smaller and the published evidence is correspondingly more limited. The strength of the chapter lies in keeping those evidentiary differences visible.

Other Bihar sites such as Senuwar and Taradih are indispensable for understanding the broader Neolithic of Bihar, but they lie outside the principal north-bank Mithila–Vajji focus. They are used here to test regional models, not to fill local gaps. In the Anga/Bhagalpur zone, excavated sequences at Oriup and Champa become especially informative from Chalcolithic and later horizons; those belong to Chapter 3 and are not pulled backward to manufacture a Neolithic Anga story.

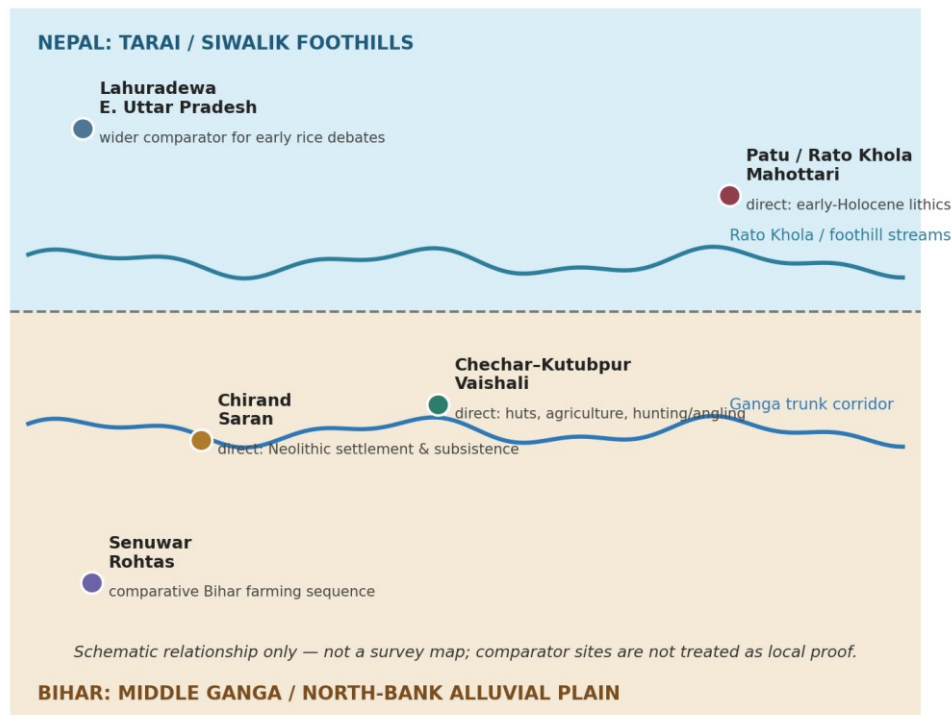


Figure 5 — Selected prehistoric anchors used in Chapter 2: direct study-zone evidence and explicitly labelled regional comparators (colour schematic; not to scale).

2.7 Chirand: a durable settlement on a riverine margin

Chirand lies on a major riverine corridor in north Bihar, near the Ganga–Ghaghara system. Excavation revealed a substantial Neolithic occupation underlying later cultural periods. B. S. Verma’s early reports emphasized the thickness of the Neolithic stratum and the variety of bone, antler, stone and ceramic materials. The site therefore provides something rare in the alluvial plain: not an isolated implement but a repeated occupation sequence in which architecture, tools and subsistence remains can be read together (Verma 1971; Verma 2007).

The settlement evidence includes post-holes, reed or bamboo impressions in burnt clay, rammed floors and circular or semicircular wattle-and-daub structures. These are lightweight technologies, but lightweight does not mean temporary. Mud, reed and bamboo are rational building materials in an alluvial environment where timber and grasses are available and heavy masonry is unnecessary for domestic structures. Rebuilding may have been frequent; the archaeological signature of repeated rebuilding is part of settled life rather than evidence against it.

2.8 Chirand's bone, antler and stone technologies

One of Chirand's most distinctive archaeological contributions is the scale and variety of its osseous industry. Excavators reported celts, scrapers, chisels, hammers, needles, points, borers, awls, diggers, pins, arrowheads and ornaments made from bone, antler, ivory and shell. The significance lies not simply in the list of objects. Manufacture required selection of suitable skeletal elements, cutting, scraping, grinding, perforation and finishing. Unfinished pieces indicate that at least some production took place within the settlement rather than all objects arriving ready-made (Verma 1971).

Stone technology remained important alongside bone. Ground and polished implements, pestles, querns and microlithic components indicate several chains of work: clearing or woodworking, processing plant foods, hunting and maintaining composite tools. The archaeological lesson is technological plurality. A 'Neolithic' community did not abandon small chipped stone simply because polished axes existed, nor did bone tools represent an inferior substitute for stone. Different raw materials were selected for different mechanical properties.

2.9 Plant economy at Chirand: what the seeds actually show

Palaeobotanical work at Chirand is unusually important for reconstructing subsistence. Vishnu-Mittre identified food-plant remains from Neolithic levels including rice, barley, lentil and field pea; later syntheses also discuss wheat and other pulses in the Bihar Neolithic record. These finds establish cultivation and consumption of multiple crops rather than a rice-only economy (Vishnu-Mittre 1972; Pokharia et al. 2017).

The chronology of the oldest Chirand plant remains has long been difficult because some early radiocarbon determinations were internally inconsistent. That problem should not be hidden by quoting one spectacular early number. Modern regional syntheses commonly place the Bihar Neolithic broadly in the late third to second millennium BCE, with Chirand often discussed around c. 2000–1500 BCE or somewhat wider depending on calibration and phase definition. The safe historical conclusion is the presence of a settled food-producing community in later prehistory, not an artificially precise founding year.

The combination of rice with winter cereals and pulses is socially more informative than a single crop label. It implies knowledge of different growing seasons and a household calendar that could distribute labour across the monsoon and cool seasons. Whether every listed crop was produced locally in every phase cannot be assumed; nevertheless, the assemblage supports a diversified plant economy.

2.10 Animals, hunting and aquatic resources at Chirand

The Neolithic economy was not a replacement of wild foods by domestic foods. Archaeozoological summaries from Chirand include domestic cattle, buffalo, sheep, goat and pig together with hunted deer, wild boar and other wild fauna. Fish, tortoise, molluscs and other aquatic resources fit the site's riverine setting. This is better described as a mixed agro-pastoral-foraging economy than as an agricultural economy with hunting as a marginal survival (Sinha 1994; eHRAF Ganges Neolithic synthesis).

The presence of wild fauna cannot by itself tell us the social organization of hunting, and cut-marked bones do not reveal whether particular species carried ritual meanings. Those questions require evidence not presently available. What can be said is that cultivation, animal keeping, fishing, hunting and gathering were compatible activities within one settlement system.

2.11 Chechar–Kutubpur: direct prehistoric evidence in modern Vaishali district

Chechar–Kutubpur is central to Volume II because it provides excavated prehistoric evidence inside present Vaishali district, close to the later landscape of Vaishali and Vajji. The Archaeological Survey of India's 1977–78 excavation report describes Period I as a pre-metal occupation over natural soil. Post-holes and burnt clay with reed impressions indicate wattle-and-daub houses plastered with husk-tempered earth; the available evidence suggested that at least some structures were circular. Most importantly for subsistence, the report characterized the economy as developed and rural, with agriculture accompanied by hunting and angling (Archaeological Survey of India 1977–78: 17–18).

The report's wording must be used carefully. 'Developed rural economy' is an excavator's interpretation, not a census of occupations. The direct evidence is architectural traces, tools, ceramics and subsistence indicators. The absence of metal in Period I helps distinguish the horizon technologically, but it does not by itself supply an absolute date. Nor does the site prove that the later city of Vaishali grew directly from this settlement without interruption. What it does prove is that food-producing communities occupied the Ganga-side alluvial zone of modern Vaishali before the urban and republican histories treated in later chapters.

2.12 Architecture and settlement permanence at Chechar–Kutubpur

Wattle-and-daub architecture is often archaeologically modest because walls decay and only post-holes, floors and burnt clay survive. At Chechar–Kutubpur, however, the combination of post-hole patterning, reed impressions and plastering material is enough to move interpretation beyond a transient camp. It indicates constructed domestic space and investment in maintaining a dwelling. The reported circular plan also places the site within a wider range of Neolithic house forms known from the Middle Ganga Plain.

Permanence should not be understood as immobility. Households could occupy a village for many years while members moved seasonally for fishing, grazing, hunting, fuel, raw materials or marriage exchange. Archaeology of a settlement mound records where durable activities accumulated, not the full annual movement of its inhabitants.

2.13 A subsistence mosaic, not a staircase of progress

The older language of 'food gathering' followed by 'food production' can imply a clean evolutionary threshold. The Bihar evidence is more usefully understood as a mosaic. Cultivated crops, domestic animals, wild game, fish and gathered plants coexisted. Different resources reduced different risks: cereal cultivation could generate storable calories; herds converted vegetation into meat and milk; fishing exploited predictable aquatic niches; hunting and gathering widened the seasonal food base.

This mixed system is exactly what should be expected in floodplain settings with strong seasonal contrasts. Households did not need to choose once and for all between farming and foraging. Their economic resilience may have depended on retaining several strategies. The proportion of each strategy almost certainly varied by site, year and season, and the surviving archaeological record does not permit a single percentage allocation.

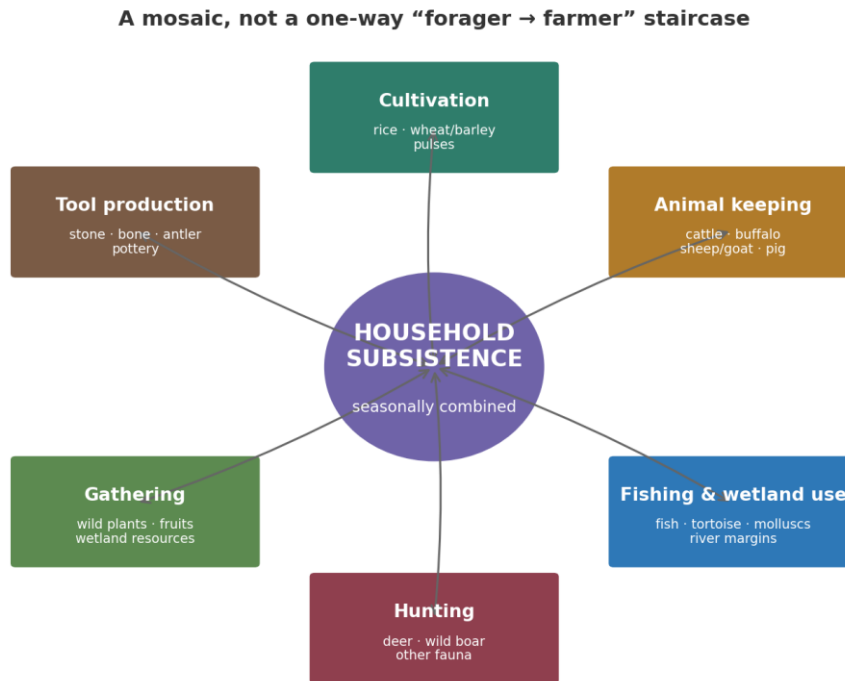


Figure 6 — Prehistoric subsistence as a seasonal mosaic rather than a one-way transition from foraging to farming (colour analytical diagram).

2.14 Rice and the wider Middle Ganga problem

Rice occupies a special place in debates over the Neolithic of the Middle Ganga Plain, but the history of rice should not be made simpler than the archaeobotanical evidence allows. Sites such as Lahuradewa in eastern Uttar Pradesh have produced very early rice-related evidence and have transformed discussion of cultivation in the region. At the same time, scholars have debated whether the earliest rice remains represent fully domesticated rice, managed wild stands, cultivation before full domestication, or later intrusive material. Fuller and later archaeobotanical syntheses emphasize that domestication is a biological and cultural process whose chronology cannot be established from the mere presence of rice alone (Fuller 2006; Pokharia et al. 2017).

For Mithila–Vajji–Anga history, Lahuradewa is therefore comparative evidence, not local proof. It demonstrates that early cultivation and rice management in the wider Middle Ganga world may have deep roots. It does not prove that the same practices began at the same date in Vaishali, Saran, Bhagalpur or the Nepal Tarai. Local chronology must come from local contexts.

2.15 Crop diversity and seasonal scheduling

The combination of rice, barley, wheat and pulses documented in the wider Neolithic–early historic Ganga archaeobotanical record points toward increasingly complex seasonal scheduling. Rice generally belongs to the monsoon cycle, while barley and wheat are winter crops in the modern region. Pulses can occupy several niches in rotation or mixed cultivation. Even without assuming modern agronomy, the archaeological presence of crops with different ecological requirements indicates accumulated practical knowledge of soils, rainfall and season.

Such scheduling has social implications. Sowing, guarding, harvesting, threshing, processing and storage concentrate labour at particular times. Households must coordinate labour and cope with sickness, flood or crop failure. Yet archaeology rarely reveals the rules by which labour was allocated. It would be unjustified to assign particular tasks to men, women or named social groups simply because later ethnographies do so.

2.16 Domesticated animals and the limits of identification

Cattle and other domestic animals broadened the economic base of Neolithic communities. They supplied meat and potentially milk, dung, traction or transport, although each use requires independent evidence. A cattle bone identified as domestic does not prove plough agriculture. Likewise, sheep and goats indicate managed herds but do not reveal ownership arrangements. The responsible reconstruction separates species identification from the social uses that may or may not be archaeologically visible.

Faunal assemblages are also filtered by preservation and recovery technique. Small fish bones, bird bones and molluscs are easily undercounted in excavations that did not use fine sieving or flotation. Older excavation reports can therefore make terrestrial mammals appear disproportionately important. This is another reason to treat subsistence percentages with caution.

2.17 Wetlands, fish and floodplain knowledge

The riverine setting of Chirand and the reported angling at Chechar–Kutubpur underline a form of expertise that is easy to obscure in narratives centred on crops. Fishing requires knowledge of channel seasonality, spawning, shallow-water habitats and appropriate gear. Tortoise, molluscs and wetland plants extend the resource zone beyond the cultivated field. Oxbows, abandoned channels and marsh edges were productive environments even when they were inconvenient for permanent architecture.

This ecological knowledge also links Chapter 2 back to Chapter 1. Floods were not only disasters. Seasonal inundation renewed soils, created fisheries and rearranged grazing and gathering zones. The same process could also destroy houses or bury fields. Prehistoric settlement in an alluvial plain was therefore adaptation to variability, not conquest of a stable landscape.

2.18 Archaeological visibility: burial, erosion and false absences

The distribution map of known prehistoric sites is not a transparent map of where prehistoric people lived. A mound on a stable levee can accumulate visible deposits, while a low flood-basin camp can disappear beneath younger alluvium. A river cut may expose artefacts far from their original depositional context, and modern embankments, brick cutting, road building and agriculture can remove the upper part of a site. Survey intensity is uneven as well: some districts have received repeated archaeological attention, others very little.

For this reason, the absence of a reported Neolithic mound in a particular part of Mithila or Anga is not evidence that the area was empty. It is evidence that secure sites have not yet been demonstrated there. That distinction will be maintained throughout Volume II: archaeological silence is a research condition, not a licence to invent continuity.

Why “absence of sites” is not the same as “absence of people”

Floodplain archaeology is filtered by burial, erosion, channel migration and modern disturbance.

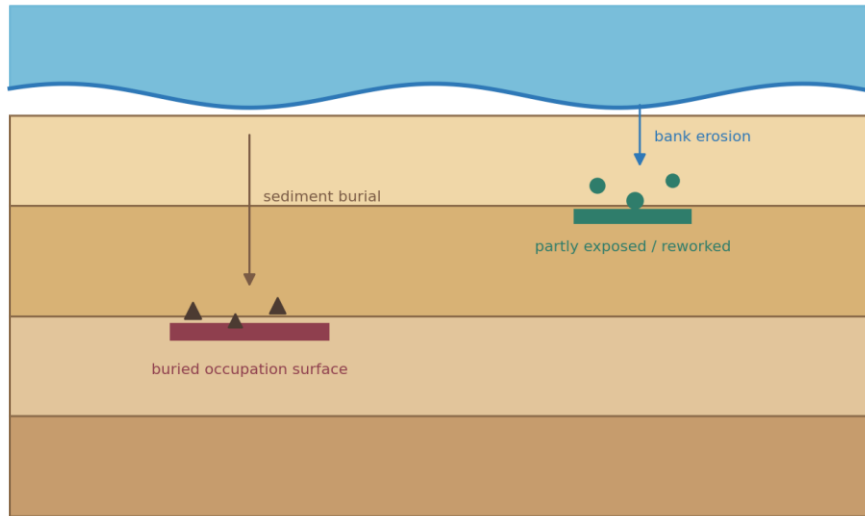


Figure 7 — Archaeological visibility on an active alluvial plain: burial, exposure and reworking can distort the apparent distribution of prehistoric settlement (colour schematic).

2.19 Mobility within sedentary life

Sedentism is best treated as a spectrum. Circular huts, floors and repeated occupation indicate residential investment, but a village-based household can still be highly mobile in its use of the landscape. Fishing trips, herd movements, hunting, raw-material procurement and visits to related communities create networks extending beyond the mound. The settlement is a node in those movements, not their boundary.

This perspective helps reconcile two kinds of evidence that are sometimes made artificially contradictory: durable domestic architecture and continued exploitation of wild resources. A household need not be a permanently enclosed farming unit to be sedentary in archaeological terms.

2.20 Material circulation without invented trade routes

Beads, stone raw materials, shell, ivory and other objects at Neolithic sites invite questions about circulation. Some materials may have been obtained locally; others may have moved through exchange or seasonal travel. Without geochemical sourcing, however, it is unsafe to draw precise trade routes. The presence of a bead made from a visually distinctive stone is not enough to identify a quarry, a merchant class or a long-distance market.

The correct historical inference is more modest: prehistoric households were connected to material landscapes wider than the immediate dwelling area, and some objects probably travelled between communities. Chapter 12 addresses trade only when stronger evidence for organized exchange becomes available.

2.21 What cannot yet be reconstructed: language, caste and political form

Nothing in the Patu, Chirand or Chechar–Kutubpur evidence permits identification of a spoken language. Archaeology does not allow these communities to be labelled Maithili-, Angika- or Bajjika-

speaking. Nor does it demonstrate the caste categories documented in much later periods. Burial practice, house size and artefact variation can sometimes indicate social differentiation, but the present evidence is insufficient to reconstruct a named hierarchy.

The same applies to political organization. A cluster of houses does not prove a chiefdom; the absence of a palace does not prove egalitarianism. The social scale of Neolithic communities can be explored through settlement size, storage, production and differential access to resources, but the present north-Bihar data are not rich enough to support a detailed constitutional model.

2.22 The Anga zone: a deliberate boundary of this chapter

For the eastern Bihar zone later associated with Anga, the archaeological sequence becomes substantially clearer in Chalcolithic and Black-and-Red-Ware horizons at sites such as Oriup and Champa. Excavations at Oriup, near Antichak in Bhagalpur district, identified a Chalcolithic Period I beneath later NBPW, Pala and medieval occupations. Champa likewise produced lower black-and-red-ware horizons below its early historic development. These are important, but they belong chronologically and analytically to Chapter 3.

This deliberate boundary prevents a common form of narrative inflation. Because Anga is historically prominent in the first millennium BCE, there is a temptation to supply it with an equally detailed Neolithic prehistory whether or not excavated evidence exists. Volume II will instead allow different regions to have different levels of prehistoric visibility.

2.23 Nepal–India comparison without a single origin story

Patu and the north-Bihar Neolithic sites belong to different archaeological traditions and ecological settings. Patu represents an early-Holocene lithic adaptation in the Siwalik foothills; Chirand and Chechar–Kutubpur represent later food-producing settlement in the Gangetic plain. Their inclusion in one chapter does not imply descent of one from the other. It demonstrates that the later trans-border region contained several prehistoric trajectories.

This plurality is historically valuable. The later cultural connectedness of Mithila across India and Nepal need not be justified by inventing a single prehistoric people. Long-term connectivity can emerge repeatedly through routes, marriage, markets, pilgrimage, language and political institutions in much later periods. Prehistory supplies a deep human landscape, not a charter of modern identity.

2.24 Conclusions: what Chapter 2 establishes

Four conclusions are secure enough to carry forward. First, prehistoric occupation is documented both in the eastern Nepal foothill zone and in the north-Bihar alluvial plain, but the archaeological traditions are not identical and should not be collapsed. Second, Neolithic communities at Chirand and Chechar–Kutubpur combined built domestic space with mixed subsistence: cultivation and animal keeping existed alongside hunting, fishing and gathering. Third, alluvial geomorphology strongly filters what survives and what is discovered, so archaeological absence must remain an open research question. Fourth, none of this evidence licenses the projection of later language, caste, political or regional identities into prehistory.

Chapter 3 begins where the material record becomes broader: Chalcolithic and early agrarian communities, increasing settlement numbers, copper alongside stone and bone, changing ceramic traditions, and clearer evidence in the eastern Bihar/Anga zone. The transition will be treated as a regional process with local differences, not as a universal stage that arrived everywhere at once.

Table 2.1 — Principal archaeological anchors and limits of inference

Site / zone	Secure signal	Subsistence / settlement	Main caution
Patu / Rato Khola, Mahottari	Contextualized cobble-tool industry on older terraces; early-Holocene dating framework	Human occupation and stone-working in a forested foothill/stream environment	Not evidence for farming or later Mithila/Madhesh identity
Chirand, Saran	Neolithic settlement with huts, stone and rich bone/antler industries, plant and animal remains	Mixed cultivation, animal keeping, hunting, fishing and gathering	Early dates are debated; do not force one exact founding date
Chechar–Kutubpur, Vaishali	Pre-metal Period I; post-holes, reed-impressed daub, circular huts; agricultural and hunting/angling evidence	Food-producing rural settlement in present Vaishali district	Small excavation; no direct line may be assumed to later Vaishali city or Vajji polity
Senuwar / Lahuradewa	Well-studied regional comparators for farming and archaeobotany	Help frame crop and chronology questions in the wider Middle Ganga region	Comparative evidence only; not local proof for Mithila/Vajji/Anga

CHAPTER 3 — CHALCOLITHIC AND EARLY AGRARIAN COMMUNITIES

3.1 Scope: an archaeological label, not a people

“Chalcolithic” is used here in its conventional archaeological sense for assemblages in which copper appears alongside stone, bone and other technologies. It does not name an ethnicity, language, polity or biological population. In the Middle Ganga Plain, copper is often scarce, while black-and-red ware, microlithic or ground-stone tools, bone implements, wattle-and-daub architecture and farming evidence continue from earlier contexts. For that reason the term is most useful as a descriptive chronological label, not as a claim that metal transformed every aspect of life at once.

3.2 Why Chapter 3 begins with continuity rather than a “revolution”

The excavated sequences do not support a simple staircase in which a Neolithic village abruptly becomes Chalcolithic after the arrival of copper. At Chirand, Chechar–Kutubpur and comparative sites farther south and west, older technologies persisted. House construction remained largely organic; microliths and bone tools continued; cultivation, fishing and animal use remained central. The significant change is therefore an enlargement and recombination of technological and economic repertoires rather than the instantaneous replacement of one system by another (Singh 2004; Archaeological Survey of India 1962–63, 1968–69).

3.3 Chronology is regional and must remain provisional

There is no single Chalcolithic date range that can be imposed on the whole Middle Ganga Plain. Site sequences begin and end at different times, radiocarbon programmes are uneven, and older excavations were often dated primarily by ceramic comparison. Recent reassessments of Early Farming and Chalcolithic chronologies in the Ganga Plain emphasize precisely this diversity. Senuwar, for example, provides a well-studied comparative sequence from Early Farming into a developed agrarian/Chalcolithic phase, but its dates cannot simply be copied onto north-Bihar or Bhagalpur sites (Singh 2004; Pokharia and colleagues in Indian Archaeology 1990–91; comparative discussion in recent radiocarbon reassessments).

3.4 Black-and-red ware: useful marker, dangerous identity label

Black-and-red ware (BRW) is a recurrent ceramic component in Chalcolithic and later horizons of the Middle Ganga Plain. Its surfaces reflect firing conditions that create dark and red zones on the same vessel. Archaeologists use its fabric, shape, finish, painted decoration and stratigraphic associations to compare assemblages. Yet BRW cannot be equated with one tribe, language or migration. Similar firing results and vessel traditions can occur across broad areas and long spans. In this volume pottery is therefore evidence for technology, food practice, chronology and interaction—not a shortcut to ethnic history.

3.5 Chirand: a long-lived riverine sequence

Chirand remains one of the essential regional anchors because repeated excavation exposed a deep sequence in which farming, fishing, hunting, bone working, microlithic traditions and pottery can be followed through time. Early reports described black-and-red ware, microliths, ivory and bone objects together with a few copper pieces in the pre-NBPW horizon; later work added structural evidence including post-holes, hearths, burnt-earth floors and reed or bamboo impressions in clay. The assemblage shows

technological addition rather than abandonment: copper occurs, but bone and stone remain economically important (Archaeological Survey of India 1962–63; 1968–69; Verma 2007).

3.6 Domestic architecture at Chirand

The architecture associated with these levels was largely perishable. Mud plaster, reed or bamboo impressions, post-holes and burnt floors indicate houses whose superstructures would leave only fragmentary archaeological traces. Hearths and ash pits show repeated domestic activity. Such evidence is especially important for social history because it directs attention away from elite monuments toward ordinary residential investment, fuel use, food preparation and household maintenance. It also warns against assuming that the absence of masonry means an absence of stable settlement.

3.7 Chechar–Kutubpur: a Vaishali-district agrarian anchor

The 1977–78 Archaeological Survey of India excavation at Chechar–Kutubpur, on the northern bank of the Ganga in present Vaishali district, described the earliest occupation as a developed rural economy in which agriculture, hunting and angling all mattered. Post-holes and clay chunks bearing reed impressions indicated wattle-and-daub houses plastered with husk-mixed earth. The excavators did not recover metal from the earliest phase in that season, a useful reminder that a community participating in a broader Chalcolithic ceramic horizon need not possess abundant copper (Archaeological Survey of India 1977–78: 17–18).

3.8 Chechar revisited: black-and-red ware, bone and copper

A later ASI excavation at Chechar in 1988–89 documented black-and-red ware in coarse and fine varieties, red-slipped ware and burnished black-and-red ware in Period I, together with bone tools, arrowheads, points and copper pieces. The difference between the two excavation reports should not be forced into contradiction: they sampled different areas and phases of a large, eroding mound. Taken together, they show both the uneven archaeological visibility of small metal objects and the persistence of bone technology within the same broad cultural horizon (Archaeological Survey of India 1988–89).

Evidence matrix: selected Chalcolithic / early agrarian anchors

	Black-and-red ware	Copper objects	Bone/lithic tools	Domestic structures	Agrarian evidence	Aquatic resources
Chirand (Saran)	strong	strong	strong	strong	strong	strong
Chechar (Vaishali)	strong	reported	strong	strong	reported	strong
Panda (Samastipur)	strong	strong	strong	reported	strong	—
Oriup (Bhagalpur)	strong	strong	strong	strong	—	—
Senuwar (comparator)	strong	strong	strong	strong	strong	reported

Senuwar is used as a Middle Ganga comparator, not as evidence for Mithila, Vajji or Anga.

Figure 8 — Evidence matrix for selected Chalcolithic and early agrarian anchors. “Strong” indicates direct or repeatedly reported evidence in the cited excavation literature; “reported” indicates more limited evidence. Senuwar is included only as a Middle Ganga comparator.

3.9 Panda in Samastipur: direct evidence within the Mithila plain

Panda (often written Pāṇḍ/Pand in excavation literature) is especially important because it lies in present Samastipur district, well inside the modern Mithila plain. Excavation assigned Period I to a Chalcolithic phase characterized by black-and-red ware, black-slipped, red and grey wares. Reported finds included stone hammers, axes and pestles, a copper hook, bone arrowheads, micro-beads and an earthen oven containing husk. This combination ties ceramic technology directly to domestic production and plant processing rather than to an abstract “culture” label (Choudhary 2005; Indian Archaeology 2001–02 and 2002–03).

3.10 The oven and husk at Panda: small evidence, large implications

An oven mixed with husk is a modest find, but its evidentiary value is high. Husk may enter clay intentionally as temper or accidentally through processing debris; either way it places cereal-processing waste within the domestic activity zone. It does not by itself identify the cereal species or prove specialized craft production. What it securely supports is an agrarian household environment in which plant residues, heating installations and ceramic vessels were entangled in everyday work.

3.11 Oriup: the clearest Chalcolithic anchor in the Anga/Bhagalpur zone

For the eastern zone later associated with Anga, Oriup in Bhagalpur district is a crucial stratified site. Trial excavation in 1966–67 revealed a Period I with black-and-red ware, an oven, a circular fireplace, a copper bangle, an archaic terracotta figurine and a microlithic core. The report also noted erosion probably connected with a river formerly flowing close to the site. Oriup therefore provides what Chapter 2 deliberately withheld: secure Chalcolithic occupation in the Bhagalpur zone without requiring an invented Neolithic ancestry for historical Anga (Archaeological Survey of India 1966–67).

3.12 Oriup and the river: settlement history includes erosion history

The excavators’ observation that part of Oriup had been eroded is methodologically important. A river can remove early occupation, bury it under silt or preserve only discontinuous pockets. Apparent cultural “gaps” may therefore reflect geomorphology as well as human abandonment. The same caution applies across the Ganga, Gandak, Ghaghara and Kosi-influenced plains. Settlement maps must be read as maps of surviving and discovered deposits, not as complete maps of ancient population.

3.13 Champa: separating the later city from the earlier regional horizon

Champa is indispensable to the later history of Anga, but its urban prominence should not be projected backward automatically. Excavations of the fortified settlement concentrated on NBPW and later structural phases; black-and-red ware occurred in association with some early rampart deposits, but the published sequence is not as straightforward a Chalcolithic anchor as Oriup. This volume therefore treats Oriup as the firmer source for a Chalcolithic Bhagalpur horizon and reserves Champa’s securely documented urban development for later chapters (Indian Archaeology 1970–71, 1971–72, 1972–73; Archaeological Survey of India, Indian Archaeology Today).

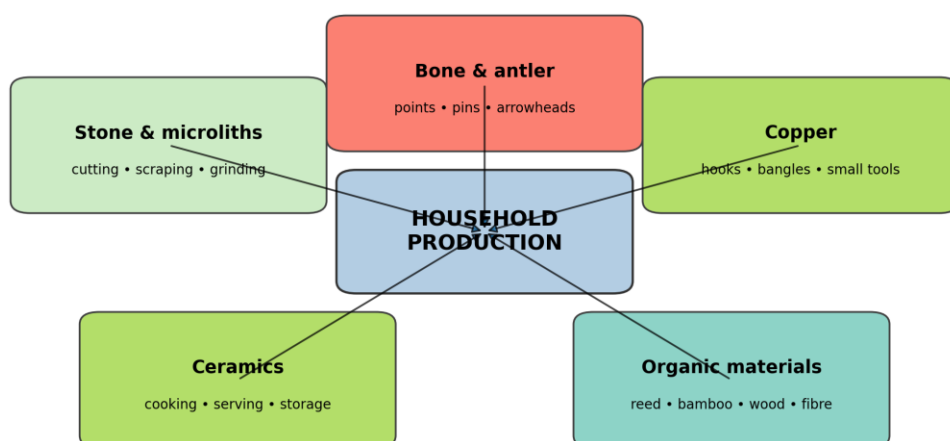
3.14 Copper was valuable because it was limited

The rarity of copper objects at many Middle Ganga sites is itself historically informative. Metal had to be acquired from geological zones outside most alluvial settlements, whether through direct movement, exchange or down-the-line transfer. Small bangles, hooks, wires, points or fragments therefore need not indicate a “copper economy.” They show selective access to a material with properties different from stone, bone or wood. The social value of copper may have exceeded its numerical share in the toolkit, but status cannot be inferred without contextual evidence.

3.15 Stone and bone did not become obsolete

Microlithic cores and flakes, ground stone tools, bone points, pins and arrowheads continue in contexts that also contain copper. This continuity is rational rather than technologically “backward.” Stone is durable and can be resharpened; bone is light and easily shaped; organic handles and shafts multiply the possible uses of both. A household choosing among materials was solving specific tasks, not moving through a textbook hierarchy from stone to copper to iron.

Composite technology rather than a copper revolution



“Chalcolithic” does not mean copper replaced older technologies; the archaeological record shows a composite toolkit.

Figure 9 — Composite technology rather than a copper revolution: stone, bone, copper, ceramics and organic materials remained complementary.

3.16 Agriculture: continuity, diversification and evidence control

Chapter 2 established that rice and a wider cereal–pulse package were already present in parts of the Bihar early-farming record. Chalcolithic communities inherited and elaborated those practices. Direct botanical evidence is strongest at sites with systematic recovery programmes; elsewhere, husk impressions, grinding tools, storage facilities and settlement context provide indirect support. The correct inference is therefore graded by site: rich archaeobotanical reconstruction where plant remains exist, and more limited agrarian interpretation where only processing equipment or husk-tempered clay survives.

3.17 Senuwar as a comparator for crop scheduling, not a substitute for Mithila evidence

Senuwar in the Kaimur region lies outside the Mithila–Vajji–Anga core, but its excavated Early Farming–Chalcolithic sequence is useful for understanding what a diversified agrarian economy can look like when plant remains are well preserved and studied. Archaeobotanical reports include rice, barley, wheat, millets and several pulses across the sequence. The site demonstrates the potential complexity of second-millennium BCE farming in the wider Middle Ganga world; it does not prove that Panda, Chechar or Oriup cultivated exactly the same crop package (Singh 2004; Indian Archaeology 1990–91).

3.18 Animals, fish and the persistence of broad-spectrum subsistence

Agriculture did not eliminate hunting, herding or fishing. Chechar’s excavation report explicitly mentioned angling; Chirand preserves abundant aquatic and animal evidence; comparative sites show cattle and other domesticates alongside wild fauna. The economic logic of riverine plains encouraged such diversity. Crop failure, flood timing and seasonal labour could be buffered by fisheries, grazing, hunting and gathered resources. “Agrarian” therefore means agriculture became structurally important, not that every household lived by crops alone.

Seasonal coordination in an early agrarian riverine household

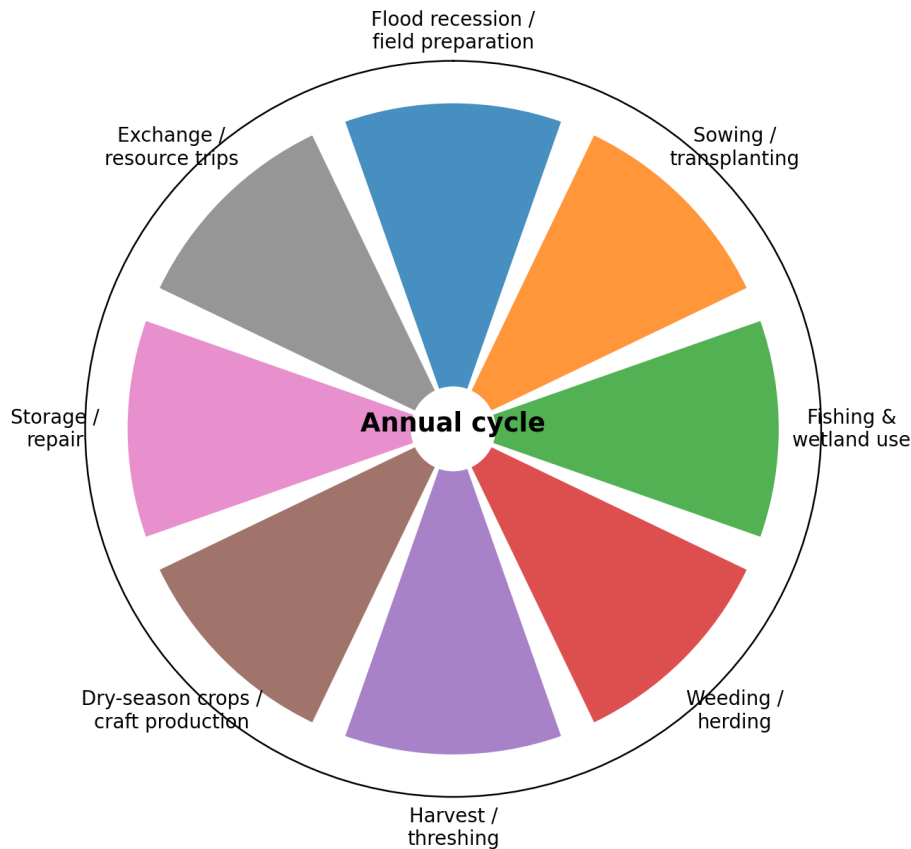


Figure 10 — Seasonal coordination in an early agrarian riverine household. The diagram is analytical rather than a reconstruction of one excavated household.

3.19 Hearths, ovens and the archaeology of daily work

Hearths at Chirand and Oriup and the oven reported at Panda bring the analysis to the scale of repeated daily labour. Fire transformed food, hardened clay, provided warmth, processed plant and animal materials and may have supported small crafts. Yet the same installation can perform several tasks across its life. Archaeology usually recovers the installation and residues, not a written label describing its function. Interpretation should therefore remain contextual and probabilistic.

3.20 Pottery and the social organisation of food

The expansion of ceramic repertoires—bowls, dishes, jars, basins, dish-on-stand forms and other vessels—made possible different combinations of cooking, serving, storage and transport. Variation in fabric and finish may reflect intended use, skill, firing control and local taste. It does not automatically prove full-time potter castes or centralized workshops. Repetition and standardisation can indicate specialized knowledge, but the labour organisation behind production remains a separate question.

3.21 Beads and material circulation

Stone, terracotta and other beads reported from several sites show that households invested labour in personal adornment and small portable objects. When raw materials are non-local, beads can also register circulation between ecological zones. Nevertheless, a bead is not a trade route. Without sourcing studies, quantities, workshop debris or distributional patterns, the safest conclusion is that Chalcolithic communities participated in material networks wider than a single settlement, while the precise mechanism—gift, exchange, itinerant craft or household travel—remains open.

3.22 Settlement growth without invented population totals

Regional syntheses observe that Chalcolithic sites are more numerous than securely identified earlier farming sites in many parts of the Middle Ganga Plain. This may reflect population growth, longer-lived settlements, increased ceramic visibility, greater archaeological attention, or all four. It is reasonable to speak of expanding and more archaeologically visible agrarian settlement; it is not reasonable to convert site counts directly into ancient population numbers without systematic survey areas and correction for preservation bias.

3.23 Household labour and gender: what archaeology cannot assign safely

Grinding grain, tending animals, fishing, making pottery, repairing houses and managing fires all required recurrent labour. Archaeology can reconstruct those tasks far more securely than it can assign them to men, women or fixed age groups. Later ethnographic patterns cannot simply be projected backward several millennia. Gendered labour undoubtedly existed, but its exact divisions must remain unknown unless burials, use-wear, spatial patterning or other context supplies stronger evidence.

3.24 Social differentiation: inequality is possible, hierarchy is not yet demonstrated

Differences in access to copper, beads or particular vessel types may have carried social meaning, but the sites discussed here do not yet justify a detailed hierarchy of chiefs, castes or classes. Houses are incompletely exposed; burials are limited; storage capacities are rarely quantified; and prestige goods are few. The responsible position is therefore intermediate: these communities were socially organised and probably

differentiated in multiple ways, but the form and permanence of inequality cannot be reconstructed with confidence.

3.25 Rivers, fields and the agrarian landscape

The most durable economic transformation was not copper itself but the deepening relationship between households and managed landscapes. Fields, grazing areas, fishing places, fuel zones, clay sources and routes had to be revisited season after season. Floodplain agriculture demanded knowledge of water timing and soil moisture; river migration could reward one location and destroy another. Early agrarian history is therefore also environmental history—a continuous negotiation among cultivation, mobility and unstable alluvial terrain.

3.26 From Chalcolithic to iron-using and NBPW horizons

Iron and Northern Black Polished Ware appear at different dates and with different local sequences across the Middle Ganga Plain. At some sites iron enters while black-and-red ware and older tool traditions continue. The transition is therefore best represented as overlap. This matters for the next chapters: early historic urbanisation did not begin on an empty landscape. It drew upon already settled agrarian communities, river knowledge, craft traditions and exchange networks while reorganising them at new scales.

From early farming to early historic society: continuity, overlap and uneven change



Continuities: rice and other crops • cattle and fishing • wattle-and-daub houses • stone/bone tools • local ceramic traditions

Change is cumulative and regionally uneven—not a single “revolution” or a migration identifiable from pottery alone.

Figure 11 — From early farming to early historic society: continuity, overlap and uneven change rather than a universal technological break.

3.27 What this chapter establishes—and what it refuses to claim

Four conclusions can be carried forward. First, Chalcolithic communities are securely documented in the Vaishali, Samastipur and Bhagalpur zones through Chechar, Panda and Oriup, while Chirand provides a closely related north-Bihar riverine sequence. Second, agriculture, fishing, hunting and animal management remained complementary. Third, copper enlarged rather than replaced older technologies. Fourth, settlement and material circulation became more archaeologically visible before the early historic urban horizon. None of this identifies the inhabitants as “Maithil,” “Vajjian” or “Anga” peoples in a later linguistic or political sense. Those identities belong to later evidence and must be demonstrated there.

Table 3.1 — Selected Chalcolithic / early agrarian sites used in Chapter 3

Site / area	Core evidence used here	Agrarian / domestic indicators	Metal evidence	Interpretive limit
Chirand, Saran	BRW, microliths, bone/ivory, hearths, post-holes	Plant economy from earlier sequence; fish/animal remains; houses	Few copper pieces / objects	Long sequence; phase dates and labels revised across campaigns
Chechar–Kutubpur / Chechar, Vaishali	BRW, bone tools, post-holes, reed-impressed clay	Agriculture, hunting and angling explicitly reported	None in 1977–78 sample; copper pieces in 1988–89 Period I	Different trenches/phases should not be collapsed
Panda, Samastipur	BRW, black-slipped/red/grey ware, bone arrowheads, stone tools	Oven with husk; domestic equipment	Copper hook	Detailed botanical species not established by the oven alone
Oriup, Bhagalpur	BRW, oven, circular fireplace, microlithic core	Domestic fire installations; river-edge settlement	Copper bangle	Agrarian crop package not directly established in cited report
Senuwar, Rohtas (comparator)	Early Farming–Chalcolithic sequence, ceramics and tools	Rich multi-crop archaeobotanical record	Copper objects in Chalcolithic phase	Comparator outside Mithila–Vajji–Anga core; cannot substitute for local evidence

CHAPTER 4 — ARCHAEOLOGY OF FOOD AND EVERYDAY LIFE

4.1 Scope: food archaeology is not a prehistoric cookbook

This chapter asks what people cultivated, collected, herded, caught, processed, cooked, stored and discarded in the early agrarian landscapes introduced in Chapters 2 and 3. The archaeological record can answer parts of those questions, but it cannot recover a menu in the modern sense. Carbonised grains identify plants that entered fires or deposits; bones and shells identify animals present in the archaeological assemblage; querns, hearths and vessels reveal processing possibilities. None of these, by itself, establishes the proportion of a food in the diet, a named recipe, a ritual rule, or the social identity of the person who prepared it. The method therefore moves from direct residue to bounded inference. This is particularly important for Mithila, Vajji and Anga, because later textual cuisines and modern regional food identities are rich enough to tempt retrospective projection. They belong to later chapters and must not be used to fill prehistoric silence.

4.2 The preservation problem: most food disappears

Food is among the least evenly preserved categories of material culture. Leaves, milk, oils, soft fruits, cooked gruels and many roots normally leave little macroscopic trace unless they are charred, mineralised, waterlogged or preserved as microremains. Bone survival varies with soil chemistry and burning; fish bones can be lost through coarse excavation screens; tiny seeds may remain invisible unless flotation or fine sieving is used. The result is a strong preservation bias toward durable shells, bones and accidentally charred plant parts. The absence of a species from an excavation report may therefore mean that it was not present, that it decayed, that the relevant area of the settlement was not excavated, or that recovery methods did not capture it. Archaeobotanical and zooarchaeological evidence are strongest when sampling procedures, stratigraphy and identification criteria are published. Figure 15 formalises this filtering problem and is a standing caution for every quantitative-looking food list in this chapter.

Figure 12 — The preservation filter: archaeological food remains are a selective sample

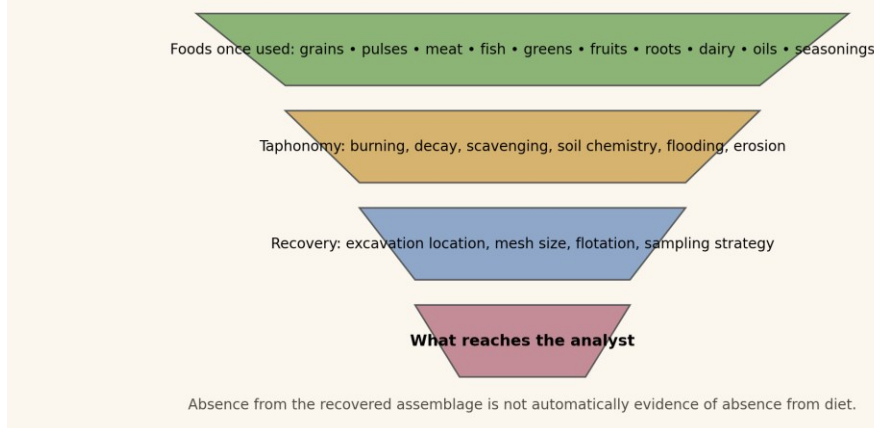


Figure 12 — The preservation filter: archaeological food remains are a selective sample. Absence from the recovered assemblage is not automatically absence from diet.

4.3 Chirand: the strongest local conjunction of plant and animal evidence

Chirand is unusually valuable because plant remains, animal bones, aquatic fauna, tools, pottery and domestic features can be considered within the same long archaeological sequence. Vishnu-Mittre's study of the Neolithic plant economy reported rice, barley, lentil and field pea from the lower levels, while later summaries also record wheat and pulses such as mung. Nath and Biswas identified a faunal assemblage including humped cattle, buffalo, sheep, pig, dog, deer, elephant, rhinoceros, carp and turtles. Excavation reports add hearths, ovens, bone tools and large ceramic assemblages. Taken together, these materials show a food-producing economy that was neither narrowly cereal-based nor simply a continuation of mobile hunting. Cultivation, animal husbandry, hunting, fishing and the use of wetland resources were concurrent. The evidence is nevertheless an assemblage of different recovery histories; it should not be converted into percentages of diet unless a specific quantified study supports such calculation (Vishnu-Mittre 1972; Nath and Biswas 1980; Verma 2007).

4.4 Rice was central, but 'rice economy' should not erase crop diversity

Rice is the most persistent crop in discussions of the Middle Ganga Neolithic because the ecology of the plain favoured wild and cultivated *Oryza* and because rice has a long later cultural importance. At Chirand, however, the archaeobotanical record also includes barley, lentil and field pea, with wheat and other pulses reported in the wider excavation literature. Senuwar, used here as a comparator rather than as a substitute for evidence from Mithila or Anga, shows even more clearly how rice could coexist with winter cereals, pulses and millets. This diversification matters economically. A household cultivating crops with different sowing and harvesting seasons could spread labour demands and reduce the danger of dependence on a single harvest. It also complicates simple stories in which rice agriculture alone explains sedentism. The archaeological record instead points toward combinations of crops adapted to monsoon, winter and local moisture regimes (ASI 1986-87; ASI 1990-91; Saraswat 2004).

4.5 Cultivation is not the same thing as domestication

The distinction between cultivation and biological domestication is essential when discussing early rice. Cultivation refers to human practices such as sowing, tending, water management and harvesting; domestication refers to inherited biological changes in the plant population. Archaeobotanical debates over shattering, rachis morphology and grain form show that these processes need not coincide. Lahuradewa, outside the core study region but within the wider Middle Ganga environmental zone, has been central to debate over very early rice use and cultivation. Later reassessments emphasise that the emergence of fully domesticated rice was protracted. For this volume, Lahuradewa is therefore comparative evidence for the antiquity and complexity of human-rice relationships, not proof that the same chronology applies to every site in Mithila, Vajji or Anga. At Chirand and Senuwar, the safer historical claim is that rice cultivation formed part of established village food economies by their excavated Neolithic phases (Fuller 2011; Tewari et al. 2008).

4.6 Winter crops altered the annual labour calendar

Barley, wheat, lentil, field pea and grass pea are not merely additions to a species list. When securely associated with winter cultivation, they imply a second agricultural season alongside monsoon cropping. The Senuwar palaeobotanical reports are particularly informative: Period IA included rice, barley, dwarf wheat, sorghum and ragi millets, lentil, grass pea and field pea, with weeds associated with cultivated fields. The coexistence of monsoon and winter crops implies repeated cycles of land preparation, sowing, weeding,

harvesting, threshing, drying and storage across much of the year. Such scheduling can support more stable sedentary households, but it also increases the need for labour coordination and the management of seed reserves. Because Senuwar lies in the Kaimur zone, this evidence is used as a regional model of what diversified farming could involve, while Chirand's local crop list provides the firmer anchor north of the Ganga (ASI 1990-91).

4.7 Field weeds are historical evidence too

Archaeobotanical reports sometimes list weeds beside crops, and those minor taxa are easy to overlook. Yet weeds can indicate the disturbed soils and seasonal fields in which crops grew, harvesting height, crop cleaning and the movement of seed contaminants. At Senuwar, taxa such as *Vicia*, *Setaria*, *Rumex* and wild rice occur with food grains. They remind us that a cultivated field was not a modern monoculture but an ecological community. Some weeds may have been tolerated, gathered, grazed by animals or accidentally brought into the settlement with harvested crops. Their presence also cautions against treating every recovered seed as a deliberately cultivated food. Archaeobotanical interpretation therefore depends on assemblage context rather than a binary division between 'crop' and 'wild plant' (ASI 1990-91; Saraswat 2004).

4.8 From harvest to meal: processing created the archaeological signature

A cereal does not move directly from field to pot. Harvesting can leave straw and husk; threshing separates grain; winnowing and cleaning remove chaff and weeds; pounding or grinding changes grain size and texture; soaking, parching, boiling or roasting changes the probability that food survives archaeologically. Querns, mullers, pestles and grinding stones therefore belong to the history of food just as much as charred grain. The food economy was partly an economy of repetitive processing labour. The archaeological challenge is that a quern can grind more than one substance and a pestle can serve multiple tasks. Consequently, the presence of grinding equipment supports intensive plant processing but does not identify a specific dish. Figure 12 sets out this evidence chain from residue and tool to appropriately limited historical claim.

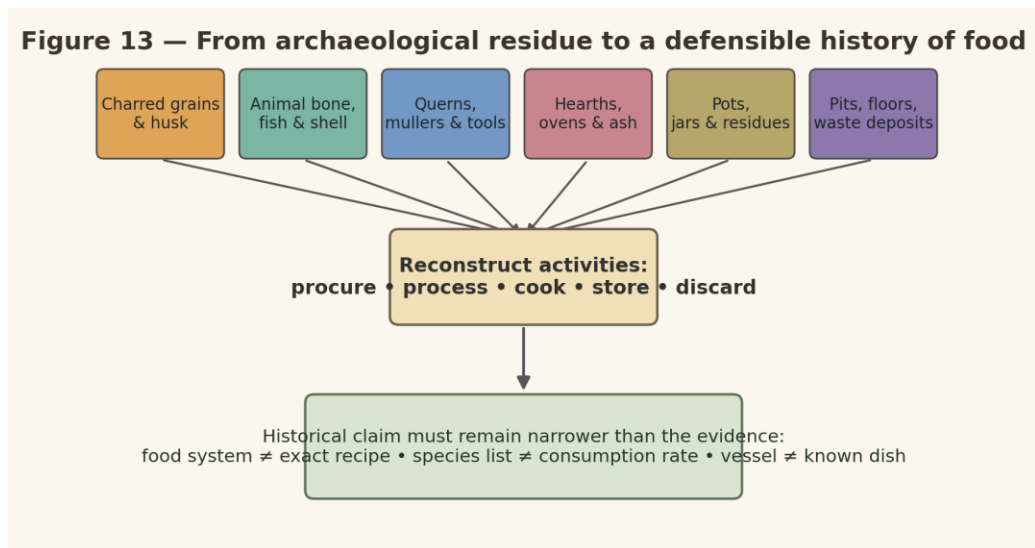


Figure 13 — From archaeological residue to a defensible history of food. Different evidence classes support different levels of inference.

4.9 Husk in clay: by-product, temper and household waste

The earthen oven mixed with husk excavated at Panda in Samastipur is a small but unusually concrete piece of evidence for the proximity of food processing and domestic construction. Husk can be incorporated into clay intentionally as temper, swept into building material as processing waste, or burned as fuel. Each pathway begins with the same underlying fact: cereal by-products circulated through the household rather than disappearing at harvest. Similar husk impressions in burnt clay and pottery at other Middle Ganga sites show how food production entered architecture and craft. Panda therefore provides a direct Mithila-plain anchor for the integration of crop processing, fuel, construction and cooking technology, even though the find does not by itself identify the cereal species used in the oven fabric (Choudhary 2005; ASI 2001-02; ASI 2002-03).

4.10 Cattle were more than meat

Nath and Biswas found humped cattle to be the most prominent domestic animal in the Chirand faunal collection, with buffalo, sheep and pig also represented. A food history must resist reducing these animals to carcasses. Cattle and buffalo could contribute traction, manure, mobility, hides and—where dairying occurred—milk, although direct evidence for each use must be demonstrated independently. Bone assemblages can show slaughter and species representation more securely than they can establish secondary products. The historical importance of herding lies partly in its complementarity with cultivation: animals could graze fallow or marginal land, consume crop residues and produce manure, while households retained a movable store of value and food. This mixed agro-pastoral logic is better supported than a specialised pastoral or specialised arable economy for Chirand (Nath and Biswas 1980).

4.11 Sheep, goats and pigs diversified household risk

Smaller livestock occupy different ecological and labour niches from cattle. Sheep and goats can exploit browse and grazing that would not support field crops, while pigs can convert household refuse and wetland-edge resources into animal biomass. Their bones at early farming sites therefore indicate a broader strategy of resource use. At Chirand, sheep and pig were well represented in the analysed assemblage; goat is also reported in archaeological syntheses of the site. The precise balance among these taxa remains dependent on identification and sample size, but their presence demonstrates that domestic animal management was not restricted to cattle. Mixed herds and pigs could buffer harvest failure, although this chapter avoids estimating meat availability or herd size without age profiles and quantified faunal data (Nath and Biswas 1980; Verma 2007).

4.12 Hunting remained economically rational

Wild deer, rhinoceros and elephant in the Chirand faunal record show that domestication did not eliminate engagement with uncultivated landscapes. Deer are especially important because they supplied meat and antler; antler and long bones could be transformed into points, awls and other implements. The presence of large wild mammals also speaks indirectly to habitats that no longer survive in the same form around the site. Hunting may have protected fields, supplied food, provided raw material or had social meanings that the bones alone cannot recover. What can be said securely is that early farmers did not draw a hard economic boundary between 'agriculture' and 'foraging'. Their subsistence system remained broad-spectrum and ecologically opportunistic (Nath and Biswas 1980).

4.13 Fish, turtles and molluscs place wetlands inside the economy

Aquatic remains are among the most important correctives to land-centred histories of early farming. Chirand yielded fish, turtles and shell; Oriup in Bhagalpur produced bone fishing hooks, possible net-related terracotta pieces and utilised tortoise shell; broader Ganges Neolithic syntheses also emphasise fish, molluscs and turtles. These finds show that rivers, oxbows, ponds and floodplain depressions were food-producing spaces in their own right. Fishing could be intensified seasonally as water receded and fish became concentrated, while monsoon expansion created different habitats and transport conditions. The evidence does not show that every settlement used the same techniques, but it makes clear that an agrarian village in this landscape was not economically confined to its fields (ASI 1966-67; Nath and Biswas 1980).

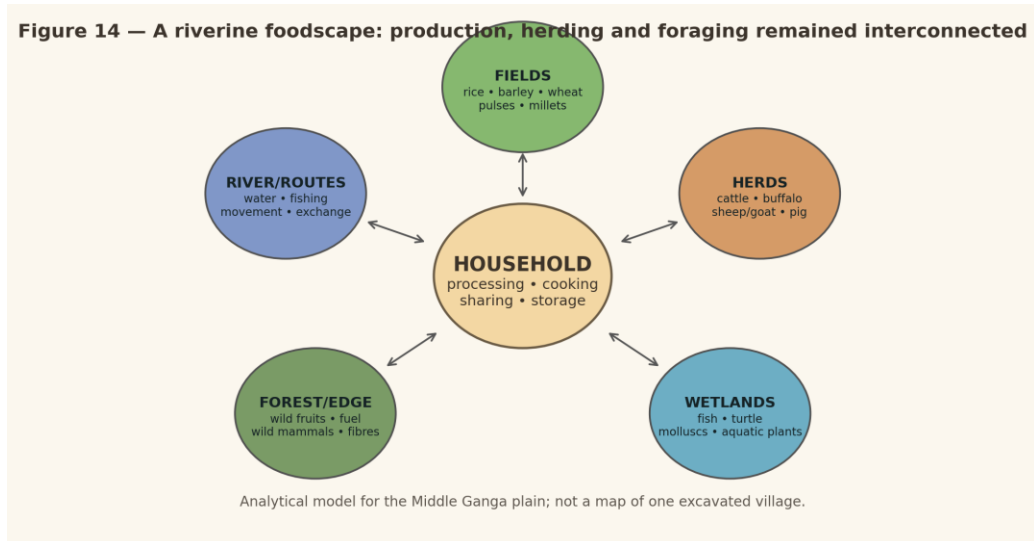


Figure 14 — A riverine foodscape: fields, herds, wetlands, forest edge and river routes fed into household processing and consumption.

4.14 Oriup: fishing technology in the Anga/Bhagalpur zone

Oriup provides the strongest excavated food-related evidence used here for the eastern zone later associated with Anga. In Period I, the excavators recorded an oven, a circular fireplace, numerous bone fishing hooks, bone points, terracotta objects interpreted as possibly associated with fishing nets, and pieces of tortoise shell used as tools. The settlement stood close enough to a river channel for erosion and silt deposition to affect its stratigraphy. Food procurement, cooking and river geomorphology can therefore be read together at the site. This is a more defensible early history of the Anga landscape than projecting the later commercial or literary identity of Champa backwards into the Chalcolithic horizon (ASI 1966-67).

4.15 Wild plants and forest-edge foods are structurally undercounted

Wild fruits, leafy plants, tubers, mushrooms, honey and other gathered foods are much less visible than cereal grains, especially in ordinary oxidised alluvial deposits. Archaeobotanical records from the Middle Ganga region nevertheless include wild jujube and other taxa, while the ecology reconstructed from faunal remains implies woodland, grassland and wetland edges accessible to settlements. It is therefore reasonable to include gathering as one component of the food economy, but not to invent a detailed species list for sites that have not produced one. Forest and scrub zones also supplied fuel, timber, fibres and fodder. These non-food resources mattered to diet indirectly because cooking, storage, house construction and animal keeping all depended on them.

4.16 Fuel was part of food technology

Every cooked meal required energy, yet fuel is rarely treated as part of economic history. Wood charcoal, burnt clay, ash and hearths show repeated combustion, but identifying the exact fuel species requires anthracological study. Households could draw on wood, brush, dung, crop straw and husk in different combinations. The choice would affect labour, smoke, cooking temperature and pressure on surrounding vegetation. Panda's husk-tempered oven and the repeated hearths or ovens at Chirand and Oriup demonstrate that crop by-products and local biomass were integrated into domestic technology. Without direct fuel analysis, however, dung or particular wood species should remain possibilities rather than claims.

4.17 Hearths and ovens: repeated fire creates social space

At Chirand, hearths and oblong ovens were associated with domestic structures; Oriup Period I contained an oven and circular fireplace; Panda yielded an earthen oven. These installations mark places where heat was repeatedly controlled. They could be used for cooking, roasting, parching, boiling with vessels, heating water or craft processes, and a single installation may have served several functions through time. Earlier interpretations sometimes called larger or multiple ovens evidence of 'community cooking'. That is possible, but size alone does not prove communal consumption. The more secure inference is that food preparation was spatially organised inside or beside houses and that fire installations were maintained features rather than accidental burns (Verma 2007; ASI 1966-67; Choudhary 2005).

4.18 Pottery multiplied ways of transforming food

The spread of pottery changed the technical possibilities of food preparation even when exact recipes remain unknown. Bowls, jars, basins, dishes and other vessel forms could support boiling, soaking, serving, fermenting, carrying or storage. Sooting, residues, abrasion and use-wear can sometimes narrow these possibilities, but vessel shape by itself is not a recipe. At Chirand and the Chalcolithic sites discussed in Chapter 3, pottery repertoires become more varied and increasingly wheel-made in later phases. This diversification suggests growing differentiation among containment, cooking and serving tasks. It also created new surfaces on which food could be preserved archaeologically as carbonised crusts or absorbed residues, although systematic residue analysis remains limited for the regional sequence used in this volume.

4.19 Boiling, roasting and gruel are possibilities, not named dishes

A combination of cereals, pulses, pottery and hearths makes several cooking methods technologically possible. Grain may be boiled whole, cracked, ground into meal, parched or incorporated into mixed preparations; meat and fish may be roasted, boiled or dried. Archaeology can identify the equipment and ingredients more readily than the final culinary form. For this reason the chapter does not translate the assemblage into modern terms such as khichdi, roti, rice-beer or regional fish dishes unless later period-specific evidence independently supports them. Similarity between an ancient technical possibility and a later cuisine is not evidence of continuity. The archaeological contribution is to define the range of feasible transformations and the labour invested in them.

4.20 Storage: one of the hardest parts of the food cycle to measure

Storage is economically crucial because it turns a seasonal harvest into year-round food and seed, yet storage facilities are inconsistently preserved and identified. Large jars, pits, bins and raised containers can all store grain, but the same features can have other uses. Regional Neolithic and Chalcolithic sites provide comparative evidence for pits and storage vessels, while the Chirand record is clearer for pottery and domestic

structures than for a single, well-quantified storage system. It would therefore be unsafe to estimate surplus from the number of jars. The strongest inference is functional: diversified cropping and sedentary households require some means of holding seed and food between harvests, but the scale, ownership and duration of storage must be established site by site.

4.21 Food security came from diversity rather than guaranteed surplus

A household combining rice, winter crops, livestock, fish and gathered resources had several ways to respond when one source failed. Flood damage to a field might coincide with productive fishing; a poor rice harvest could make pulses, livestock or stored grain more important; seasonal wild foods could bridge lean periods. This ecological diversity is a plausible form of risk buffering, not evidence that famine was absent. Early farmers remained exposed to flood, drought, pests, animal disease and storage loss. Figure 14 therefore presents a seasonal scheduling model rather than a prosperity narrative. The historical point is that food security depended on coordinating resources with different seasonal rhythms.

Figure 15 — Seasonal scheduling and risk buffering in an early agrarian food system

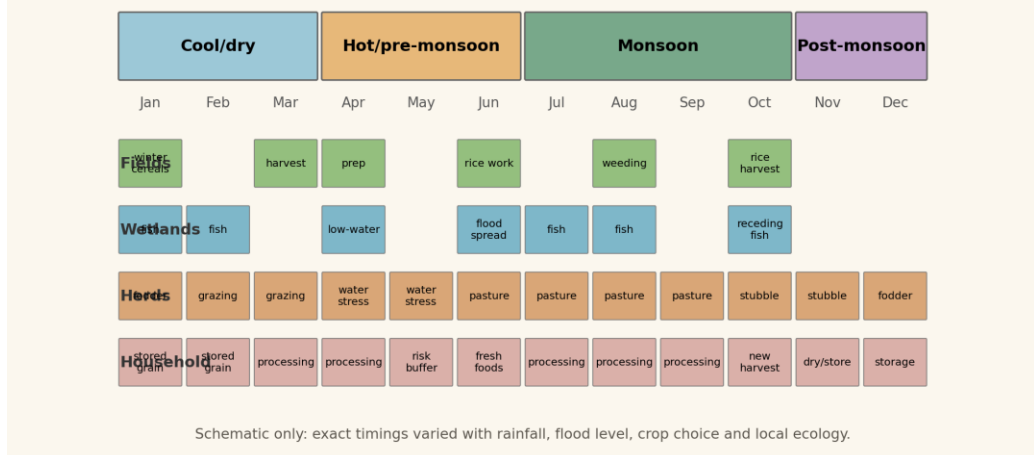


Figure 15 — Seasonal scheduling and risk buffering in an early agrarian food system. Timings are schematic and varied locally.

4.22 Food waste is evidence of labour and choice

Ash lenses, charred seeds, broken vessels, cut or burnt bones and shell concentrations are often classified as refuse, but refuse is the endpoint of economic decisions. A charred grain may represent accidental burning during drying, a cooking loss or discarded spoiled food; a butchered bone records carcass processing; broken pots mark repeated replacement of household equipment. Middens and floor sweepings can also reveal where tasks took place. The challenge is that deposits may be redeposited by flooding, trampling, pits or later construction. Context is therefore as important as the object. The archaeology of food is strongest when it reconstructs sequences of action—acquisition, processing, cooking, consumption and discard—rather than simply listing species.

4.23 Household labour can be reconstructed more safely than gendered labour

Grinding grain, carrying water, tending animals, fishing, collecting fuel, cleaning crops, maintaining hearths and making or repairing containers all required recurring labour. These activities can be inferred from tools and installations, but assigning each task to women, men, children or particular status groups requires independent evidence. Later ethnography cannot be projected mechanically into the third or second millennium BCE. Archaeology may eventually use skeletal stress, activity markers, spatial patterning or burial

evidence to refine labour histories, but the sites discussed here do not justify a fixed gender division of food work. The most defensible conclusion is that household subsistence was labour-intensive and coordinated across several activities.

4.24 Feasting and inequality: attractive hypotheses need stronger proof

Large hearths, decorated vessels or concentrations of animal bone can invite interpretations of feasting and social competition. Such practices are well documented in many archaeological societies, but they must be demonstrated through context: unusually large serving sets, patterned deposits, high-value foods, repeated event layers or spatial segregation. The evidence reviewed for Chirand, Panda, Chechar and Oriup does not yet support a detailed hierarchy of elite and common diets. Differences in access are possible, especially as settlement complexity increases, but this chapter keeps them as research questions rather than narrative facts. The social archaeology of food begins with variation in deposits; it should not assume stratification before that variation is securely shown.

4.25 Floodplain food systems were mobile even when villages were sedentary

Sedentary settlement did not mean that the productive landscape was fixed. River channels migrated, low-lying areas flooded, oxbows formed and silt renewed or buried fields. People could shift cultivation plots, move livestock seasonally, fish at different water levels and collect resources from changing wetland margins. The erosion observed at Oriup and the geomorphological problems discussed in Chapter 1 show why archaeological sites preserve only fragments of these wider catchments. A village mound is therefore the residential node of a larger and mobile foodscape. Figure 13 represents this relationship among fields, herds, wetlands, forest edge and river routes.

4.26 Nepal and the northern Tarai: a boundary of evidence, not a blank history

The title of this volume includes India and Nepal, but the prehistoric and early agrarian food record is not equally documented on both sides of the modern border. The Patu evidence discussed in Chapter 2 concerns lithic occupation in the eastern Nepal Siwalik/foothill environment and does not provide an archaeobotanical food assemblage comparable to Chirand or Senuwar. It would be methodologically wrong to transfer the Bihar crop and livestock package northward merely because later Mithila spans the international boundary. For the Nepal Tarai, Chapter 4 therefore records an evidence gap. Later chapters, when textual, archaeological and historical documentation becomes stronger, will reconstruct Nepal-side agrarian and food histories on their own evidence.

4.27 The eastern Anga zone: direct fishing evidence, limited plant evidence

For the Bhagalpur/Oriup zone, Period I provides unusually vivid fishing and hearth evidence but not the same published archaeobotanical resolution available for Chirand or Senuwar. This asymmetry should shape the narrative. It is possible to say that riverine resources, tortoise shell, fishing hooks and controlled fire were part of everyday life at Oriup. It is not equally secure to reproduce the full Chirand crop list as though excavated at Oriup. Regional comparison can suggest questions—whether rice, pulses or winter cereals were grown—but those questions remain open until local plant remains are securely reported. This is how a cumulative history avoids turning geographic proximity into fabricated evidence.

4.28 Conclusion: an agrarian economy remained a mixed food economy

The archaeology of food changes the scale of early history. Instead of treating the Neolithic and Chalcolithic mainly as ceramic or technological labels, it reveals daily systems of cultivation, herding, fishing, hunting, processing, cooking and storage. Chirand anchors a diversified local food economy; Panda connects cereal by-products with domestic technology in the Mithila plain; Oriup places fishing and hearths firmly inside the early Anga/Bhagalpur landscape; Senuwar demonstrates, comparatively, the potential complexity of mixed seasonal agriculture. None of these sites justifies a reconstructed cuisine in the modern cultural sense. What they establish is more fundamental: early agrarian communities survived by coordinating multiple ecological zones, multiple species and repeated household labour. Chapter 5 moves outward from these food practices to the larger question of environment, mobility and settlement.

Table 4.1 — Food evidence and limits of inference

Evidence	Principal anchor	Strongest supported inference	Do not infer automatically
Charred grain / husk	Chirand; Panda; Senuwar (comparator)	Plant presence, crop processing; sometimes cultivation	Dietary percentage, named dish, ownership
Animal bone	Chirand	Species present; husbandry/hunting when context allows	Exact meat consumption, dairy or traction without evidence
Fish / turtle / shell	Chirand; Oriup	Aquatic-resource use and fishing technology	Year-round intensity or social status of fishers
Hearth / oven / ash	Chirand; Panda; Oriup	Repeated controlled heating	Specific recipe or communal feast
Querns / mullers / pestles	Chirand and regional comparators	Plant/mineral processing	Which cereal or preparation without residues
Pottery forms	Chirand; Chechar; Oriup; Panda	Containment, heating, serving, storage possibilities	Vessel contents from shape alone
Pits / jars / bins	Regional comparators; variable local evidence	Possible storage where context supports it	Surplus size, taxation or household wealth

CHAPTER 5 — ENVIRONMENT, MOBILITY AND SETTLEMENT

5.1 Scope: settlement was an environmental negotiation

A settlement map is not simply a map of where people preferred to live. In the Himalayan foreland and Middle Ganga plain, the ground itself was repeatedly remade by rivers, sediment, monsoon floods, groundwater, erosion and local tectonic movement. The same processes that threatened houses could renew fields, create fisheries, open transport corridors or bury older occupations. This chapter therefore treats settlement as a negotiation among several changing variables rather than as a one-time choice of a “good” site. The purpose is not to make environment a deterministic cause of culture. Human knowledge, labour, storage, social cooperation, route networks and technology all affected how communities used a given surface.

5.2 A flat plain contains many different surfaces

At regional scale north Bihar and the adjoining Nepal Tarai appear extremely flat, but that appearance conceals differences that mattered greatly at household scale. Natural levees stand slightly above adjoining backswamps; abandoned channels become linear depressions; crevasse splays and bars create locally raised sandy ground; older alluvial surfaces may drain differently from younger floodplain deposits; and fan surfaces grade southward from the Himalayan front. Sinha’s work on the Gandak–Kosi interfan and later studies of the Gangetic plains emphasize this geomorphic diversity. A height difference of only a metre or two can change the duration of waterlogging, the accessibility of a well, the suitability of a crop, and the probability that a house floor remains dry during ordinary floods (Sinha 1995, 1996; Sinha et al. 2005).

5.3 Rivers of north Bihar do not all behave alike

Sinha and Friend classified rivers of the northern Bihar plains by source area—mountain-fed, foothills-fed, plains-fed and mixed-fed—and showed that their hydrology and sediment behaviour differ (Sinha and Friend 1994). A large Himalayan river brings a different combination of discharge, sediment calibre and seasonal variability from a smaller plains-fed stream. This matters for settlement history because “living by a river” could mean living beside a braided trunk channel, an anabranching foothills-fed river, a smaller meandering stream, or an abandoned channel that retained water after the active course moved elsewhere. The economic possibilities and risks were therefore not uniform across the floodplain.

5.4 Megafans and interfan plains created different settlement problems

The Gandak and Kosi have built enormous sedimentary bodies commonly described as megafans, while the terrain between them includes interfan tracts crossed by rivers such as the Bagmati and Burhi Gandak. Megafans are not static cones. Their surfaces contain active and abandoned channels, splays, flood basins and soils of different ages. Interfan plains likewise record channel avulsion, overbank sedimentation and waterlogging. Settlement history must therefore be reconstructed at the scale of individual landforms and local sequences, not by assuming that one river model describes the whole of Mithila and Vajji.

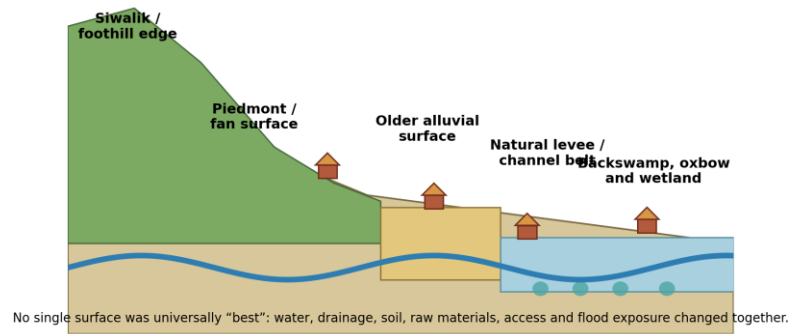
Figure 16 — Landscape units and settlement opportunities across the Himalayan foreland-alluvial plain

Figure 16 — Landscape units and settlement opportunities across the Himalayan foreland-alluvial plain. The transect is schematic and not drawn to scale.

5.5 The Gandak megafan: long-term shifting changed soil and settlement surfaces

Mohindra, Parkash and Prasad used geomorphology and soil development to argue that the Gandak channel shifted substantially eastward during the later Holocene, producing a sequence of geomorphic surfaces and soils of different ages (Mohindra, Parkash and Prasad 1992). Their reconstruction is important here not because every number must be transferred directly into archaeological chronology, but because it demonstrates that the apparent plain contains a history. Older surfaces may have had longer periods for soil development and settlement stability; younger surfaces may contain fresher sediment, abandoned channels and more recent disturbance. Archaeological survey that ignores landform age risks comparing areas with very different probabilities of preserving or exposing sites.

5.6 The Kosi megafan: do not repeat the simple westward-sweep story

The Kosi is often described as having migrated steadily westward across more than a hundred kilometres before being embanked. Chakraborty and colleagues re-examined historical maps and near-surface sediments and challenged that simple unidirectional narrative. They argued that the historical channel record is better understood as oscillation and random nodal avulsion across different fan lobes rather than a continuous sweep (Chakraborty et al. 2010). For settlement history the methodological lesson is decisive: abandoned channels cannot automatically be placed in a neat west-to-east or east-to-west chronological ladder. Each palaeochannel and occupation surface requires independent dating and stratigraphic control.

5.7 The Bagmati shows how often a river can reorganise an inhabited plain

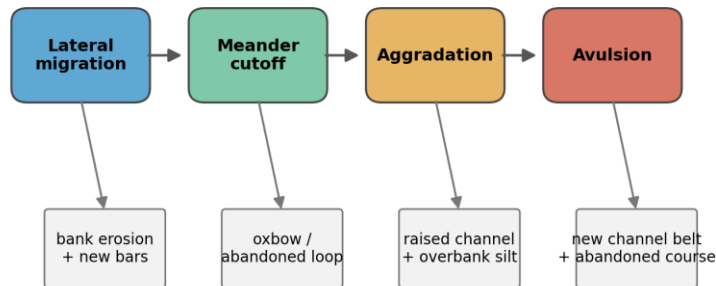
The Bagmati provides a well-studied example of a hyperavulsive, anabranching river. Jain and Sinha reconstructed repeated major and minor avulsions over the historical period and related them to overbank flooding, high wash load, channel aggradation, local slope and tectonic influences (Jain and Sinha 2003, 2004, 2005). The lesson extends beyond modern flood hazard. A settlement beside one branch might later stand beside an abandoned channel; a route crossing could become unusable; a former wet depression might receive sediment and become cultivable; another tract could become waterlogged. Settlement continuity at a named locality therefore need not imply continuity of the same river relation.

5.8 Aggradation raises channels as well as land

Overbank deposition can slowly raise floodplain surfaces, but sediment accumulation within and beside a channel can also reduce the relative depth of the channel and make avulsion more likely. Sinha's work on

northern Bihar emphasizes the combination of high sediment loads, rapid aggradation and low regional gradients (Sinha 1998). Communities living in such settings could benefit from fine silt deposited on fields while simultaneously facing increasing flood or channel-shift risk. The same sediment is thus both productive resource and geomorphic hazard.

Figure 17 — Four fluvial processes that repeatedly reorganise settlement landscapes



Settlement consequences could include field loss, improved silt, altered crossings, burial of sites, or relocation—often in combination.

Figure 17 — Four fluvial processes that repeatedly reorganise settlement landscapes: lateral migration, cutoff, aggradation and avulsion.

5.9 Natural levees offered advantages, not immunity

Natural levees form where coarser suspended sediment is dropped close to a channel during overbank floods, leaving slightly raised strips beside the river. Such surfaces can drain faster than adjacent flood basins and may therefore attract paths, fields and habitation. Yet a levee is created by flooding and remains part of the floodplain. It can be cut by bank erosion, breached by crevasse channels, or bypassed after avulsion. A raised settlement surface should therefore be understood as a risk-management choice within a floodplain, not as withdrawal from the floodplain.

5.10 Oxbows, abandoned channels and backswamps were productive spaces

The low areas between active channels preserve water, fish, aquatic plants, reeds, clay and grazing opportunities. Chapters 3 and 4 showed that early agrarian economies did not rely on fields alone. Wetlands extended that mixed economy into the settlement landscape. An abandoned channel could serve as a water source or fishery long after it ceased to carry the main river. Conversely, prolonged waterlogging could restrict house construction and some crops. The economic value of a wetland therefore depended on season, access, technology and household needs.

5.11 Flood was not one event category

Historical language often collapses several processes into “flood.” For settlement analysis it is useful to separate at least overbank inundation, prolonged waterlogging, bank erosion and avulsion. Ordinary inundation may leave fine sediment without destroying a settlement; bank erosion can physically remove the archaeological record; waterlogging can make an otherwise undamaged locality temporarily unusable; avulsion can transfer the main river into an entirely new corridor. These distinctions prevent modern disaster vocabulary from being imposed indiscriminately on archaeological deposits.

5.12 Sediment could improve a field and bury a house

Fresh alluvium may replenish nutrients or create new cultivable surfaces, but deep sand deposition can also render fields temporarily less productive. Fine overbank silt, coarse crevasse deposits and channel sands have different effects. Archaeologically, the same deposit may seal a floor and preserve it from later disturbance. Thus a sediment layer is not merely “flood damage”: it can be a record of the event that ended one occupation surface and created the substrate for another.

5.13 Soil age matters to archaeological expectations

The Gandak megafan study by Mohindra and colleagues linked geomorphic surfaces to differences in soil development. The broader implication is that older stable surfaces have had more time for pedogenesis, cultivation, erosion and repeated occupation, whereas young surfaces may bury older land beneath metres of alluvium. Survey intensity should therefore be adjusted to landform history. A dense scatter on one old surface and few sites on a recently aggraded tract cannot be read directly as a prehistoric population map.

5.14 Tectonics belongs in the settlement story, but not as a universal explanation

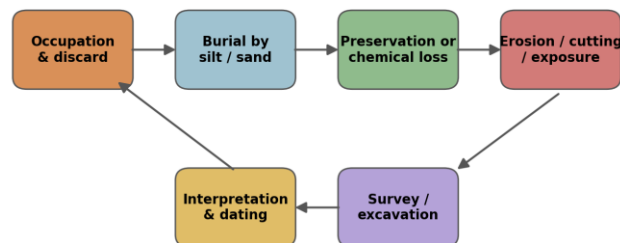
The Himalayan foreland is tectonically active, and Jain and Sinha documented channel anomalies in the Bagmati basin associated with subsurface structural controls and changes in local slope (Jain and Sinha 2005). Earthquakes can alter gradients, liquefy sediment, damage settlements and modify drainage, but not every channel shift should be attributed to tectonics. Hydrology, sedimentation and local topography also matter. The responsible historical formulation is therefore multi-causal: tectonic deformation can change the conditions under which fluvial processes operate.

5.15 Monsoon variability altered both opportunity and risk

The annual monsoon concentrated water and sediment delivery into a seasonal cycle. Stronger or differently distributed rainfall could increase flood frequency, bank erosion or channel activity; weaker phases could reduce surface water while exposing new bars and floodplain surfaces. Long-term alluvial sequences in the Ganga plain preserve responses to changing monsoon conditions, but settlement history should not assume that every cultural transition was climate-driven. Climate modifies a field of possibilities that communities respond to through cropping, storage, mobility, exchange and site choice.

Figure 18 — Archaeological visibility is produced by geomorphology as well as human occupation

The archaeological map records visibility as much as original settlement density.



Active floodplains can hide deeply buried occupations while eroding others into view; “no site found” is therefore not equivalent to “no settlement existed.”

Figure 18 — Archaeological visibility is produced by geomorphology as well as human occupation.

5.16 Archaeological visibility is a geomorphic process

One of the most important consequences of an active alluvial landscape is methodological. A village may disappear from the modern surface because it was buried beneath later sediment rather than because the area was abandoned. Elsewhere, bank cutting or gully erosion may expose artefacts and make a site unusually visible. Corvinus's work in Nepal repeatedly benefited from erosion that exposed archaeological material, while the deep alluvium of the Gangetic plain can conceal occupations. The archaeological map therefore records a history of discovery conditions as well as a history of settlement (Corvinus 2007; Darnal 2016).

5.17 Burial can preserve what surface exposure destroys

Rapid burial may protect floors, hearths, charred seeds or bones from later ploughing and weathering. The same process can place them beyond the reach of ordinary surface survey. Conversely, an eroding mound may yield abundant artefacts while losing stratigraphic context. This is why settlement counts must be accompanied by information about geomorphic setting, sediment depth and discovery method. "More sites" may partly mean "more visible sites."

5.18 River-cut mounds and terraces deserve different expectations

Chirand, Chechar, Panda and Oriup occupy different local settings, and their archaeological sequences cannot be reduced to one settlement template. A mound near a major river can preserve repeated occupations because people returned to or rebuilt on a relatively favourable elevation. A terrace-edge workshop such as Patu in eastern Nepal represents another relationship to topography and raw material. Comparing these places is useful only when the differences in landform, function and chronology remain explicit.

5.19 Sedentary settlement did not mean a fixed productive territory

A house can remain in one village while fields shift among available plots, cattle move to seasonal grazing, fishers use changing channels, fuel collectors visit forest margins and traders travel to other settlements. The mixed economies reconstructed in Chapters 3 and 4 therefore imply routine mobility within sedentary life. Archaeological categories such as "village" and "site" can obscure this wider taskscape if they are treated as self-contained economic units.

5.20 Seasonal mobility reduced risk

Floodplain households could respond to seasonal changes by moving activities rather than residences. Wet-season fishing, dry-season grazing on exposed surfaces, collection of reeds or fuel, and cultivation in differently drained plots spread risk across the landscape. The specific calendar varied locally, and the evidence does not permit a single prehistoric schedule. What can be defended is the structural point: diversified subsistence made spatial flexibility economically valuable.

Figure 19 — Mobility without a false sedentary/nomadic binary

A village can be sedentary while households, herds, fishers, traders and fields remain mobile across a changing floodplain.

Figure 19 — Mobility without a false sedentary/nomadic binary: daily movement, seasonal resource use, exchange, temporary relocation and permanent site shift form a continuum.

5.21 Paths and crossings moved with the rivers

Rivers were transport corridors but also obstacles. Fords, ferries and shallow crossings could shift as channels migrated or deepened. A settlement's advantage as a crossing point was therefore historically contingent. Routes often followed levees or other better-drained ground, while wetlands could redirect travel. These changing connections help explain why settlement importance cannot be inferred solely from straight-line distance between archaeological sites.

5.22 Exchange linked contrasting ecological zones

The alluvial plain lacked many stone and metal raw materials that appear in archaeological assemblages. Movement or exchange connected floodplain settlements to foothills, plateau margins and more distant geological sources. River routes were one component of that circulation. The contrast between resource-rich wetlands and relative scarcity of knappable stone in much of the alluvium created reasons for mobility even when food production was locally secure.

5.23 Relocation need not mean social collapse

When erosion removes a settlement edge or a channel occupies former fields, households may rebuild nearby while maintaining kin, ritual and economic connections. Archaeologically this can look like abandonment of one mound and foundation of another. Without independent evidence, such movement should not be labelled invasion, depopulation or “collapse.” In a mobile floodplain, relocation can be a normal strategy of continuity.

5.24 Eastern Nepal: the Sapta Kosi fan extends the same problem across the modern border

The Sapta Kosi forms a large alluvial fan after leaving the Siwalik Hills. Thakur and Tamrakar described Holocene fan deposits in eastern Nepal ranging from gravel to fine sand and mud and emphasized channel shifting, flooding, erosion and waterlogging as active geomorphic problems (Thakur and Tamrakar 2002). These observations matter to a history of Mithila in Nepal because the modern international boundary does not divide the sedimentary system. Northern and southern parts of the foreland must be analysed together while keeping their political histories distinct.

5.25 Patu and the Rato Khola: foothill terraces offered a different landscape from the deep plain

Corvinus's Patu industry in Mahottari was found on older terrace surfaces near the Rato Khola where erosion exposed abundant lithic material. The foothill/Siwalik setting offered quartzite cobbles and terrace surfaces unlike the fine alluvial tracts farther south. Patu therefore demonstrates both environmental diversity and discovery bias: the same erosion that threatens a surface can reveal a prehistoric workshop. It should not be used as evidence that the contemporary political or cultural identity of Mithila existed in the early Holocene; it is evidence for human use of a landscape that later formed part of the Mithila region (Corvinus 1987, 1989, 2007).

5.26 Anga and the eastern plain: rivers connected rather than isolated the Bhagalpur zone

Oriup and Champa belong to a different part of the river system from the north Bihar fan-interfan tract, but they reinforce the importance of river corridors. The Ganga and its tributaries connected fishing grounds, settlements and exchange routes through the Bhagalpur region. Chapter 4 already identified direct fishing technology at Oriup. Chapter 5 adds the spatial point: aquatic resources and movement along the river were part of settlement logic, while channel change could alter access and site preservation.

5.27 Population estimates require more than site counts

An increase in the number of known Chalcolithic or early historic sites may reflect genuine demographic growth, but it can also reflect longer occupation, larger settlements, better archaeological visibility or uneven survey. Settlement size, duration, contemporaneity and buried-site probability all matter. This chapter therefore avoids converting raw site totals into population figures. Demographic reconstruction becomes stronger only when survey coverage, chronology and landform history are controlled together.

5.28 Conclusion: settlement was durable because it could move

The apparent paradox of the alluvial plain is that long-term human continuity depended partly on flexibility. Rivers supplied water, fish, fertile sediment and routes, but they also eroded, flooded and shifted. Communities managed this uncertainty through location choices, diversified land use, seasonal movement, exchange and, when necessary, relocation. The historical unit is therefore not the immobile village but the settlement landscape: houses, fields, wetlands, paths, grazing areas, channels and remembered places that changed in relation to one another. This conclusion prepares the transition from prehistoric environmental adaptation to the more densely documented social and economic institutions of later chapters.

Table 5.1 — Environmental setting and settlement implications

Landscape / process	Potential advantages	Potential costs	Historical caution
Natural levee / raised bank	better drainage; route access; proximity to water	bank erosion; crevasse flooding; channel migration	raised ground is not flood-free ground
Backswamp / oxbow	fish, reeds, water, grazing, clay	waterlogging; mosquitoes; limited house sites	wetland value varies by season and technology
Older alluvial surface	longer soil development; relative stability	greater distance from active water in some settings	older surface does not automatically mean older occupation

Landscape / process	Potential advantages	Potential costs	Historical caution
Young fan / splay surface	fresh sediment; new land; changing channels	erosion, sand deposition, unstable drainage	low site visibility may reflect burial
Foothill / terrace edge	stone raw material; drainage; varied ecotones	erosion; local tectonic and slope hazards	cannot be treated as identical to low alluvial plain
Avulsion corridor	new water and sediment pathway	rapid relocation of channel and routes	abandoned channels need independent dating
Interfan plain	mixed river and wetland resources	frequent overbank flooding and waterlogging	small rivers can be highly mobile too

PART II

EARLY HISTORIC SOCIETY: VIDEHA, VAJJI AND ANGA

Chapters 6–18

CHAPTER 6 — THE SECOND URBANISATION

6.1 Scope: “second urbanisation” is a shorthand, not a single event

The expression “second urbanisation” is commonly used for the growth of towns, cities, states, specialised production and long-distance exchange in northern India during the early first millennium BCE, especially in the Ganga plains. It is useful only if it is not turned into a fixed date or a single-cause event. Archaeological sequences differ from site to site; some settlements grew gradually from earlier agrarian occupations, some acquired fortifications or durable architecture at different times, and some remained rural while participating in increasingly complex exchange networks. This chapter therefore uses “second urbanisation” as a regional process whose components became visible at different rates rather than as a moment when villages suddenly became cities (Allchin 1995; Sawant and Shete 2016).

6.2 What makes the process “second”

The term contrasts early historic urban growth with the much earlier cities of the Indus or Harappan civilisation. It does not imply direct institutional continuity between those urban traditions and the Middle Ganga cities. The long chronological and geographical gap requires independent explanation. The “second” urbanisation is thus a historiographical label for a renewed and differently organised urban process in the first millennium BCE. Its archaeological signature includes settlement concentration, fortifications, specialised crafts, exchange, coins, increasingly durable construction and the emergence of political and religious institutions, but the exact bundle varies among sites.

6.3 The Middle Ganga plain was not empty before cities

Chapters 2–5 demonstrated long sequences of hunting, farming, animal keeping, fishing, craft production and riverine mobility before the early historic period. Chirand, Chechar, Panda, Oriup and other sites already show communities capable of managing surplus, mixed subsistence and exchange. Urban growth must therefore be understood as a reorganisation and intensification of existing social landscapes, not as civilisation arriving in an unoccupied forest. This point also corrects older models in which dense forest was imagined as the single barrier that iron axes suddenly removed.

6.4 Iron mattered, but it was not an urban switch

Iron technology expanded the range and durability of tools and weapons and eventually contributed to cultivation, carpentry, construction and political power. Yet the archaeological chronology does not support a simple equation “iron = cities.” Iron appears in the Ganga plains before the mature early historic urban pattern. The long interval between initial iron use and large urban centres means that technology had effects only through labour organisation, agrarian production, exchange, institutions and demographic concentration. IGNOU’s archaeological synthesis explicitly cautions that iron sustained urbanisation but cannot by itself explain it; this chapter adopts that multi-causal position.

6.5 Agriculture supplied the indispensable rural base

Urban consumers had to be fed. Archaeobotanical evidence from the Ganga plains shows long-standing cultivation of rice together with other cereals and pulses before the NBPW horizon. Intensification could include extension of cultivation, more dependable storage, greater labour mobilisation and stronger flows of produce toward non-farming consumers. None of these processes requires every farmer to use an iron

ploughshare. The key historical change is the capacity of agrarian landscapes to support larger concentrations of people whose work increasingly included administration, trade, craft, warfare or religious service.

6.6 Surplus was social, not simply biological

A good harvest becomes an urban resource only if grain can be stored, moved and claimed. Households, chiefs, assemblies, rulers, merchants, monasteries and other institutions could redirect produce through gifts, tax, tribute, rent, exchange or ritual obligation. “Surplus” therefore should not be imagined as grain automatically left over after subsistence. It was created and channelled through social relations. This distinction is essential for a socio-economic history because it links agricultural productivity to power and institutions without assuming that state formation was mechanically produced by crop yields.

Figure 20 — Urbanisation as a convergence rather than an iron-triggered event

No single cause is sufficient: “second urbanisation” names a convergence of processes.

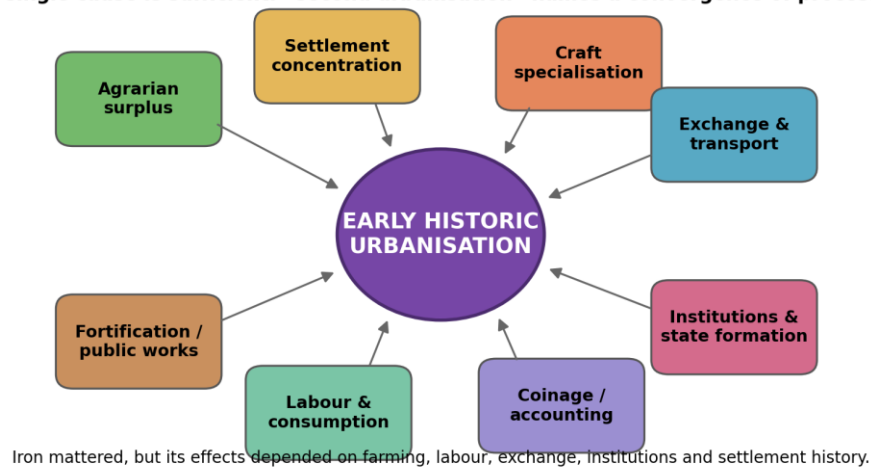


Figure 20 — Urbanisation as a convergence rather than an iron-triggered event. The components could develop at different rates and reinforce one another.

6.7 Northern Black Polished Ware: an important marker, not the definition of urbanism

Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW) is a distinctive fine ceramic tradition whose distribution has long been used to organise early historic chronology. Its lustrous surface, limited production and wide circulation make it valuable for studying cultural contact, exchange and status. Recent archaeological summaries stress, however, that NBPW is an artefact class rather than a synonym for a city (Kanungo et al. 2021). It can occur in settlements of different scale and function, while urban features may develop before or after particular ceramic horizons. This volume therefore uses NBPW as one chronological and economic indicator among several.

6.8 NBPW chronology is not a universal fixed bracket

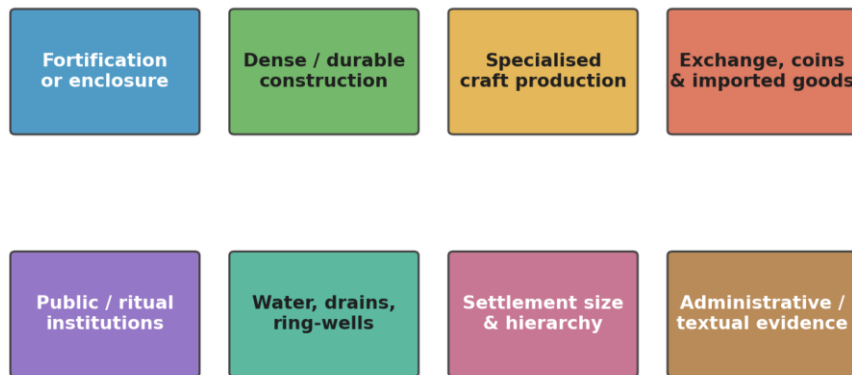
Published dates for NBPW vary by site and by the dating method used. Older schemes often placed its main beginning around the sixth century BCE, whereas some excavated sequences and later reviews allow earlier starts in particular contexts. The correct method is therefore site-specific: stratigraphy, associated ceramics, radiocarbon dates where available, coins and structural sequence must be assessed together. The chapter avoids assigning every NBPW sherd in Bihar to an identical century merely because the pottery shares a technological style.

6.9 What archaeologists should require before calling a settlement urban

Size is important but insufficient. A large mound can represent long occupation rather than a large simultaneous population. Fortification may indicate defence, display, flood management or political control, but a wall alone does not create an urban economy. Stronger diagnoses combine several lines of evidence: dense and durable buildings, specialised craft areas, public or institutional structures, water management, streets or drains, coinage and exchange goods, a settlement hierarchy with smaller dependent places, and evidence that substantial numbers of inhabitants were supported by production beyond their own household subsistence.

Figure 21 — Evidence bundle for identifying early urban settlements

A pottery type alone does not make a city.



Urban diagnosis is strongest when several independent indicators converge in stratified context.

Figure 21 — Evidence bundle for identifying early urban settlements. No single indicator, including NBPW, is sufficient on its own.

6.10 Vaishali: archaeology and historical identification must be kept distinct

Vaishali is central to the literary histories of Vajji and the Licchavis, but archaeology must be read independently of those texts before the two records are compared. The ASI's Patna Circle lists the excavated Buddha relic stupa at Harpur Basant and the large mound conventionally known as Raja Vishal ka Garh among the protected remains. The relic-stupa excavation yielded a relic casket and other objects; the ASI assigns its innermost stupa to approximately the fifth century BCE. At Raja Vishal ka Garh, excavation across the rampart identified several later defensive phases, while finds from the wider site range from the sixth century BCE onward. These data confirm a major early historic settlement complex; they do not by themselves prove that a particular mound was a republican assembly hall simply because of its modern name.

6.11 Vaishali's importance was regional, not only political

A centre capable of sustaining ritual establishments, craft activity, markets, visitors and political gatherings depended on a broad supporting landscape. The later textual image of Vaishali as a wealthy place is therefore best tested against settlement archaeology, transport routes and material culture rather than repeated as description. Its location in the north Bihar plain connected it to riverine and overland routes, to agrarian producers and to the wider network that linked the Ganga valley with the Himalayan foreland.

Urbanity here should be understood as the concentration of functions as much as the concentration of buildings.

6.12 Raja Vishal ka Garh and the danger of function-by-name

Archaeological place-names frequently preserve later memory. A mound called a “garh,” “palace” or “assembly” may indeed overlie an ancient fortified or public area, but the name cannot establish the original function of every structural phase. The three defensive phases reported by the ASI at Raja Vishal ka Garh belong to Sunga, Kushana and early Gupta periods, later than the sixth-century BCE horizon represented among the site’s finds. The chronological mismatch is a useful warning: the political importance of early Vaishali is not evidence that every surviving rampart belongs to the Vajjian republic.

6.13 Chirand: a rural–riverine settlement inside the urbanising economy

Chirand is especially valuable because it shows that “urbanisation” also transformed places that were not necessarily cities. Indian Archaeology 1962–63 reported a historical Period II, approximately 600–100 BCE, marked by the advent of iron and NBPW together with grey ware, terracotta figurines, beads and other objects. The sequence follows much earlier Neolithic and Chalcolithic occupation. Chirand therefore demonstrates continuity through a changing material economy: a long-lived riverine settlement became connected to early historic technologies and exchange without needing to be reclassified as an urban capital.

6.14 Rural sites were active participants, not passive suppliers

The countryside contained craft workers, traders, fishers, herders and households with their own consumption choices. Some rural settlements acquired fine pottery, beads, coins or iron tools through exchange. Others may have specialised in products sent to larger centres. Urban and rural were therefore relational categories. The same household could sell grain, obtain a manufactured implement, visit a religious centre, pay an obligation to a political authority and participate in a periodic market. Urban growth intensified these connections rather than replacing local economies.

6.15 Fortification was labour made visible

Large ramparts required organised labour, planning and repeated maintenance. Their social meaning lies not only in military defence but in the capacity to mobilise people and materials. Mud ramparts could consume enormous volumes of earth; brick walls required fuel, clay preparation, transport and specialist knowledge. Fortifications also marked boundaries and could structure gateways, movement and taxation. The appearance of defended centres is therefore evidence for collective or coerced labour and institutional capacity, though the political form behind that labour must be established separately.

6.16 Champa: Anga’s archaeological sequence is indispensable

The excavations at Champa, near modern Bhagalpur, prevent the history of “second urbanisation” from being reduced to the north Bihar–Magadha axis. Exploration reported black-and-red ware in lower deposits and NBPW in upper levels, while excavation revealed a substantial mud fortification and later brick construction. Indian Archaeology 1970–71 associated the rampart phase with black-and-red ware and NBPW and recorded ring-wells and other material. Subsequent seasons refined the sequence, and the 1975–76 excavation exposed multi-room brick structures assigned to the late NBPW period. Champa thus provides direct archaeological evidence for a fortified and architecturally complex early historic centre in the Anga region.

6.17 Champa's rampart did not appear from nothing

The Champa sequence contains ceramic traditions that precede or overlap the NBPW horizon. This is important because it supports a developmental rather than replacement model. Early historic urban features emerged on a settlement history already linked to the Ganga corridor. The relationship among lower black-and-red ware deposits, NBPW horizons, rampart construction and later brick buildings must remain stratigraphic: they should not be collapsed into one undifferentiated “Anga city” phase.

6.18 Ring-wells, drains and water management: ordinary infrastructure matters

Urban history is often written from walls, palaces and monuments, but small infrastructure may reveal more about daily density. Ring-wells, drains, paved floors and waste-disposal arrangements become increasingly important where many households occupy restricted space. Champa's excavations reported ring-wells in early historic contexts. Such installations do not automatically prove municipal government, but they indicate investment in water or sanitation technologies that are especially useful in dense settlements.

Figure 22 — A conceptual Middle Ganga-Anga settlement network

Urban growth was regional: towns depended on villages, routes, river crossings and other centres.

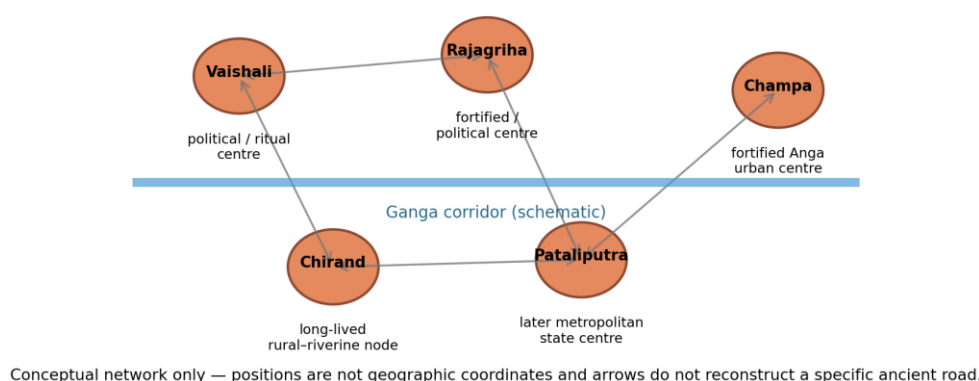


Figure 22 — A conceptual Middle Ganga-Anga settlement network. The diagram shows functional interdependence, not a reconstruction of exact ancient roads or geographic coordinates.

6.19 Craft specialisation increased the number of non-farming livelihoods

Potters, metalworkers, bead makers, carpenters, builders, textile workers, ivory and bone workers and other specialists could operate at several scales. Some production remained household-based; other work required workshops, furnaces, standardised products or access to imported raw materials. Urban centres concentrated consumers and institutions able to support specialists, while regional exchange connected craftsmen to villages and distant resources. The evidence should therefore be read as a continuum from part-time household production to highly specialised craft rather than as an abrupt division between “peasant” and “artisan.”

6.20 Iron technology widened possibilities for craft and construction

Iron's urban significance was broader than forest clearance. Nails, clamps, knives, axes, chisels and other tools affected carpentry, building and maintenance. Archaeometallurgical work on an early historic iron nail from Balirajgarh, for example, demonstrates sophisticated forging and work-hardening in the Middle Ganga region by roughly 2,300 years ago (V. Singh and M. R. Singh 2019). Such evidence is important because it

shifts discussion from abstract claims about an “iron revolution” to actual manufacturing knowledge and particular artefacts.

6.21 Exchange expanded through multiple media

Markets could operate through barter, weighed metal, coins, credit, gifts and institutional redistribution. Punch-marked coins become significant in early historic contexts, but monetisation was neither instant nor complete. A coin in an excavation proves that metallic currency reached that context; it does not prove that every transaction in the settlement was monetised. The spread of fine ceramics, beads, metals and other non-local goods provides an independent record of exchange alongside coinage.

6.22 NBPW itself records circulation and selective consumption

Because NBPW was produced in limited quantities and circulated widely, its presence can illuminate exchange and social differentiation. Kanungo and colleagues emphasise its value for studying contact and hierarchy. Yet the ware should not be treated automatically as “elite tableware” in every context: vessel form, quantity, associated finds and depositional setting matter. A few sherds in a rural settlement may reflect participation in regional circulation rather than the presence of an urban elite.

6.23 Roads and rivers created a network, not a chain of isolated capitals

Vaishali, Rajagriha, Pataliputra and Champa occupied different ecological and political settings, but their growth depended on movement among settlements. The Ganga and tributaries supported boats and ferry crossings; overland paths connected natural levees, market places and political centres. Routes changed with river migration and political security. It is therefore more accurate to imagine overlapping corridors and nodal places than a fixed road map projected backward from later itineraries.

6.24 Religious institutions were also urban-economic actors

Buddhist and Jain texts foreground teachers, monks, nuns, merchants and donors moving among major settlements. Archaeology adds monasteries, stupas, reliquaries and craft objects. Religious institutions drew food, cloth, building materials and donations from lay communities while also attracting travellers and concentrating exchange. Their economic role should neither be ignored nor reduced to commerce: ritual, learning, prestige, redistribution and hospitality all formed part of the urban social economy.

6.25 Political institutions concentrated resources

Monarchies and non-monarchical polities could both support urban centres. Fortifications, officials, armed retainers, assemblies and public ceremonies drew resources toward political nodes. The old opposition between “republic” and “monarchy” does not by itself explain why one settlement became urban. What matters materially is the capacity of institutions to mobilise labour, collect or redirect produce, regulate routes and maintain public works. The specific constitution of Vajji is treated in Volume I and later chapters; here the focus is the socio-economic consequence of institutional concentration.

6.26 Literacy belongs to the later visible phase, not to the beginning by assumption

Urbanisation often promotes record keeping, but the chronology of writing must be established from inscriptions and securely dated objects. The presence of states, trade or NBPW does not allow historians to assume widespread literacy at the beginning of the urban process. Brahmi and Kharoshthi inscriptions

become archaeologically visible in later first-millennium BCE contexts. Earlier administration may have used perishable media or non-written practices, but such possibilities cannot be converted into evidence without surviving traces.

6.27 Social inequality became more materially visible

Differences in house size, access to fine goods, jewellery, coinage, craft products and burial or ritual expenditure can provide clues to inequality, but no single object yields a caste or class identity. Urban settings likely intensified disparities because they concentrated political authority, merchants, specialists, dependants and labourers. Yet the archaeological record usually reveals unequal consumption more readily than it reveals the legal categories by which people understood that inequality. Later textual classifications must therefore not be retrojected automatically into every excavated household.

6.28 Women's labour is structurally necessary but archaeologically undernamed

Food processing, textile production, household management, childcare, exchange and ritual work were essential to sustaining dense settlements, yet artefacts rarely identify the sex of their users securely. Grinding stones, spindle whorls, cooking vessels or ornaments cannot simply be labelled “women's objects.” A socio-cultural-economic history must make household labour visible while keeping inference disciplined. Gender becomes more historically specific only when archaeological context can be combined with texts, inscriptions or osteological evidence.

6.29 Nepal-side Mithila: do not export the Bihar sequence without evidence

The political and cultural history of Mithila crosses the modern India–Nepal border, but the archaeological visibility of early urbanisation is uneven. At present, the well-published sequences used in this chapter come primarily from Bihar and the Middle Ganga plain. The Nepal Tarai contains important early historic sites, but many lie outside the historical Mithila focus and cannot simply be used as substitutes for Janakpur or eastern Madhesh. Until comparable excavated sequences are available, the correct conclusion is not “no urbanisation,” but “insufficient site-specific evidence to assign the same sequence with equal confidence.”

6.30 Conclusion: cities were produced by relationships

The second urbanisation was not a ceramic phase, an iron revolution or the automatic consequence of state formation. It was a long regional transformation in which agriculture supported larger non-farming populations; institutions mobilised resources; crafts became more specialised; settlements were fortified and internally reorganised; exchange networks widened; and some places accumulated political, commercial and ritual functions. Vaishali and Champa illustrate different trajectories, while Chirand shows how long-lived rural settlements participated in the same changing economy. The key analytical unit is therefore the network linking town and countryside. Chapter 7 turns from this urbanising landscape to the household, kinship and family relations that organised everyday social reproduction.

Figure 23 — Rural-urban interdependence in the early historic economy

Urbanisation reorganised exchange; it did not replace the countryside.

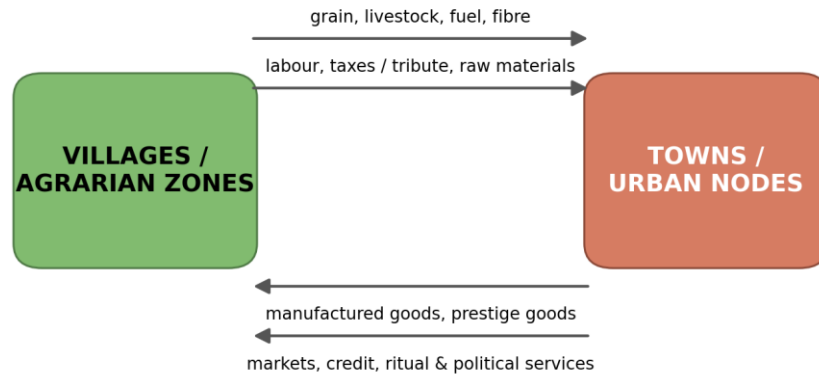


Figure 23 — Rural-urban interdependence in the early historic economy. Flows were reciprocal and could include produce, labour, taxes, manufactured goods, markets and institutional services.

Table 6.1 — Selected archaeological anchors for the urbanising Middle Ganga–Anga region

Place / context	Material indicators	What they support	What they do not prove by themselves
Vaishali / Harpur Basant and Raja Vishal ka Garh	relic stupa; early historic finds; later rampart phases	major ritual and settlement complex with long occupation	that every named mound had the political function assigned by later tradition
Chirand, Period II	iron; NBPW; grey ware; terracotta figurines; beads	participation of a long-lived riverine settlement in early historic material networks	that Chirand was an urban capital
Champa lower-to-NBPW sequence	BRW below; NBPW above; mud fortification	development of a fortified early historic centre in Anga	that all rampart phases belong to one political moment
Champa late NBPW structures	multi-room brick buildings; brick floors; ring-wells in related seasons	dense durable construction and household / infrastructural investment	a specific municipal constitution or population total
NBPW distribution	fine polished pottery circulated widely	exchange, chronology and selective consumption	urban status of every site where sherds occur
Iron artefacts	tools, weapons, nails, craft evidence	technological capacity supporting farming, construction and craft	a single-cause “iron revolution” that automatically produced cities

CHAPTER 7 — HOUSEHOLD AND FAMILY IN EARLY HISTORIC SOCIETY

7.1 Scope: household, family and lineage are not synonyms

A history of family cannot begin by assuming that every person lived in a nuclear family, a “joint family,” or a fixed patrilineage. These are analytical labels, not archaeological finds. A household is first of all a unit of co-residence, provisioning, labour and care; family describes relationships created through birth, marriage, adoption and social recognition; lineage refers to descent remembered across generations; and political clan membership may operate at a still larger scale. Early historic sources use several terms—among them *kula*, *gotta/gotra*, *ñāti* and *gahapati*—whose meanings overlap only partly and vary by textual setting. This chapter therefore reconstructs social relations by scale rather than treating every kin term as evidence for one timeless Indian family form (Thapar 1999; Chakravarti 1987; Olivelle 2019).

7.2 The evidence problem is unusually severe

Domestic life leaves abundant material traces—cooking vessels, hearths, grinding stones, storage facilities, ornaments, tools and architectural spaces—but these objects rarely identify kinship directly. Texts offer names for relatives, marriage rules, household heads and dependants, yet they are selective: Buddhist texts often foreground donors, renouncers and encounters around monasteries; Brahmanical legal texts prescribe ideals for particular social groups; later narratives may preserve older motifs while reflecting later social assumptions. The correct method is therefore triangulation. Archaeology can show how people lived together; texts can illuminate categories and norms; inscriptions can sometimes identify donors and relationships; none should be forced to answer questions beyond its evidentiary scale.

7.3 Domestic architecture is evidence for co-residence, not a family tree

Multi-room buildings at early historic Champa and domestic features at other Middle Ganga sites demonstrate investment in bounded residential space, water facilities and repeated household activity. They can sometimes reveal cooking zones, storage, craft work or rebuilding. They cannot by themselves tell us whether residents were parents and children, brothers with their spouses, unrelated workers, tenants, servants or a changing combination of these. A large house is not automatically a “joint family house,” just as a small structure is not automatically a nuclear household. Architectural interpretation must remain open to household fission, seasonal absence, lodgers, servants and changing life cycles (Archaeological Survey of India 1970–76; Allchin 1995).

7.4 Household archaeology works through repeated activity

The most convincing domestic identification comes from bundles of evidence: hearths or ovens, food-processing tools, storage jars, floor renewal, refuse disposal, spindle whorls or craft debris, water installations and repeated repair. Such combinations indicate that a place sustained everyday life over time. Even then, they reveal activity groups more securely than genealogies. This distinction is crucial for Mithila, Vajji and Anga because later social memory is rich in kinship narratives; archaeological house plans must not be retrofitted to match those narratives merely because both concern “families.”

Figure 24 — Evidence layers for reconstructing household and family
Household history is strongest when independent kinds of evidence converge.



No layer alone reveals a complete family structure; each has a different bias and scale.

Figure 24 — Evidence layers for reconstructing household and family. Each source type records a different aspect of domestic and kin life; convergence is stronger than any single indicator.

7.5 The household was a production as well as a consumption unit

Early historic households cooked and consumed food, but many also processed grain, spun fibre, maintained animals, repaired tools, stored produce and participated in craft production. The relative importance of each activity varied between rural settlements, market towns and larger urban centres. Household labour therefore linked agriculture to urbanisation: grain might be cultivated outside a town, processed within a household, taxed or exchanged, and redistributed through markets or religious institutions. The household is consequently best understood as a node connecting land, labour, consumption and exchange rather than as a purely private sphere.

7.6 Care work made settlement continuity possible

Children had to be fed and taught; the ill and elderly required support; births and deaths reorganised labour; absences through trade, war, pilgrimage or renunciation changed who remained at home. None of this is easily quantified, yet it is structurally necessary for understanding long-lived settlements. Social reproduction—cooking, cleaning, child care, nursing, maintaining clothing, transmitting skills and sustaining relationships—was economic work even when ancient texts did not count it as a market transaction. A socio-cultural-economic history must therefore recover care as a historical process without pretending that archaeology can always identify who performed each task.

7.7 Gahapati was a social category, not a synonym for every married man

Pāli sources frequently use gahapati for a lay household head, and scholarship on early Buddhism has shown that the term often carries associations of property, productive resources and local standing. Chakravarti's study of early Buddhist society treats the gahapati as a significant category in the agrarian and urban social order rather than simply as "any householder" (Chakravarti 1987). The term may appear beside merchants, landholders and substantial donors. It should therefore not be used to reconstruct every poor or

dependent household, nor should it be equated mechanically with the later religiously theorised Sanskrit *grhastha*.

7.8 Gahapati and *grhastha* belong to different conceptual histories

Recent scholarship has emphasised that *grhastha* became a religiously charged concept defined partly in relation to renunciation, whereas ancient Indian languages possessed several more ordinary terms for householders and household heads (Olivelle 2019). This matters methodologically. A Pāli narrative about a *gahapati* in the age of urbanisation cannot simply be translated into a fully developed four-*āśrama* model. The household was already economically central, but later religious systematisation should not be projected backward as if it were the universally shared social grammar of sixth- or fifth-century BCE Vajji and Anga.

7.9 Kinship vocabulary records several overlapping scales

Kula may designate a family, house, descent group or status-bearing line depending on context; *gotta/gotra* can indicate descent affiliation; *nāti* marks kin; other terms identify sons, daughters, mothers, fathers, siblings, wives, husbands, masters and dependants. Such vocabulary is evidence that kinship mattered, not a ready-made ethnographic diagram. Texts composed and transmitted in different communities use the same term with different emphases. The historian must therefore reconstruct relationships passage by passage rather than build one universal “ancient Mithila kinship system” from dictionary equivalents.

Figure 25 — Social scales must not be collapsed into one another

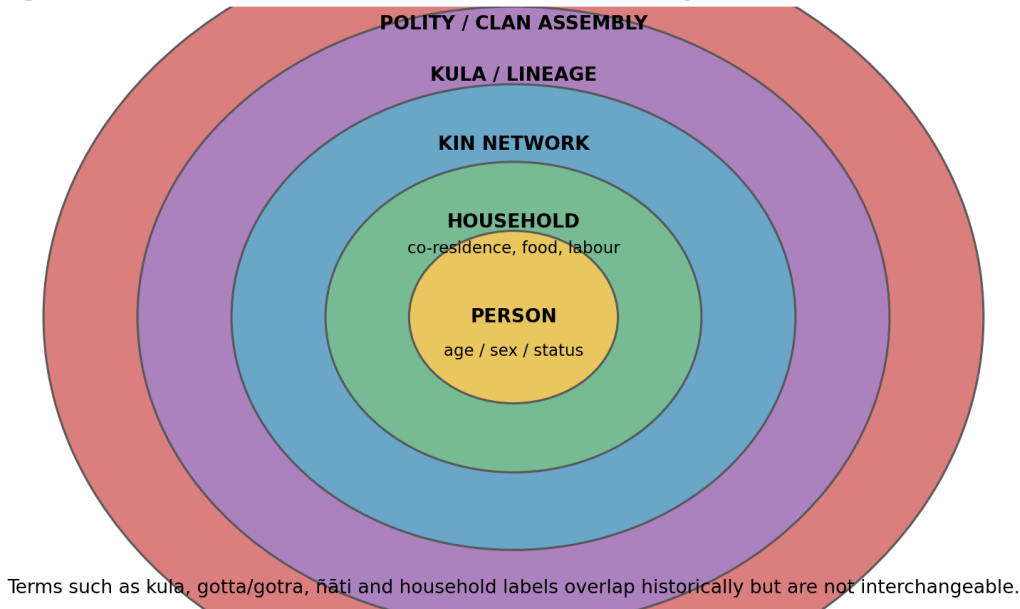


Figure 25 — Social scales must not be collapsed into one another. Household, kin network, lineage and polity overlap but answer different historical questions.

7.10 Lineage politics did not make every household politically equal

The Vajjian and Licchavi political order is often described through lineage or clan language. That vocabulary can illuminate the social basis of assemblies, but it should not be converted into an image of all households enjoying equal political voice. Political lineages may have contained differences of wealth, age, gender and status, while labouring dependants and non-member residents could live within the same

territory. Thapar's discussion of lineage society and the transition to state systems is useful precisely because it treats lineage as a form of political organisation embedded in changing economic relations, not as an undifferentiated family writ large (Thapar 1999).

7.11 Respect for Vajjian elders reveals institutionalised seniority

The “conditions of non-decline” preserved in the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta and the Aṅguttara Nikāya state that the Vajjis should honour and heed their elders (Dīgha Nikāya 16; Aṅguttara Nikāya 7.21). This is valuable evidence for the political importance of seniority and inherited authority. It does not prove a specific domestic residence pattern, but it shows that age and accumulated standing were normative political resources. Household authority and assembly authority may have reinforced one another for elite men, yet the text itself concerns public order rather than the internal organisation of every family.

7.12 The Vajjian rule concerning women and girls is a political norm, not a census of practice

The same list of Vajjian conditions warns against forcibly abducting women or girls of the clans and compelling them to live with abductors (Dīgha Nikāya 16.1.4; Aṅguttara Nikāya 7.21). The passage is important because it makes control over marriage, sexual violence and household incorporation a matter of collective political stability. It suggests that violations against women could provoke conflict between kin groups. But a rule against coercion is not proof that coercion never occurred, nor does it establish women's equality in inheritance, assembly participation or household decision-making. Normative protection and actual autonomy must be studied separately.

7.13 Marriage joined households and kin networks, but practice was diverse

Marriage transferred people, labour, property claims and ritual obligations between households. Yet the evidence for early historic north Bihar and Anga is not sufficient to reconstruct one uniform marriage rule. Buddhist narratives show arranged marriages, household conflict, remarriage and renunciation; Brahmanical texts classify approved and disapproved unions; later legal traditions elaborate inheritance and marital duties. These materials reveal debate and diversity more clearly than uniform practice. Modern north Indian marriage rules, including present-day caste endogamy and detailed genealogical prohibitions, must not be projected unchanged into the early historic period.

7.14 Dharmasūtras are normative archives, not household surveys

The surviving Dharmasūtras discuss education, marriage, property, inheritance, ritual obligations, sexual conduct, professions and relations among social categories (Olivelle 1999). Their importance is substantial, but so are their limits. They represent Brahmanical expert traditions, often articulate male elite ideals, and disagree with one another. They can show what some normative authors wanted ordered households to look like; they cannot demonstrate that every household in Vaishali, Champa, Mithila or the Nepal Tarai followed those prescriptions. In this volume they are therefore used comparatively and explicitly labelled normative.

7.15 Inheritance rules reveal competition over property and descent

Rules concerning sons, daughters, close kin, teachers, students and royal claims to heirless property demonstrate that inheritance was a contested legal and ritual problem. Āpastamba, for example, discusses succession in the absence of sons and allows a daughter a role within one such sequence, while other texts formulate different priorities (Olivelle 1999). The historical lesson is not that one rule governed all eastern

India, but that property transmission required social recognition. Household history must therefore consider death, succession and the reorganisation of labour as moments when kinship became economically consequential.

7.16 Ambapālī demonstrates female control of substantial resources in a specific elite case

In the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta, Ambapālī of Vesālī travels with carriages, hosts the Buddha and the monastic community, rejects a large offer from Licchavi youths for the privilege of providing the meal, and subsequently donates her mango grove to the Saṅgha (Dīgha Nikāya 16). Whatever the literary shaping of the episode, the narrative imagines a woman publicly controlling valuable movable and landed resources and acting as an independent donor. This is strong evidence against treating all women as economically invisible, but Ambapālī was exceptional in wealth and profession; her autonomy should not be generalised to all women of Vajji.

7.17 Female agency and patriarchal constraint coexisted

Gender history is distorted when it asks only whether women had “high” or “low” status. Early Indian sources preserve women as donors, workers, household managers, renouncers, wives, daughters, mothers, servants and courtesans, while also recording male control over marriage, sexuality, inheritance and public authority. Roy’s work on gender in early India is particularly useful because it treats power as relational and institution-specific rather than assigning one status score to all women (Roy 2010). A wealthy donor, a married cultivator, a servant and a nun occupied very different positions even within the same broad region.

7.18 Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī makes the household–renunciation boundary visible

The Vinaya tradition concerning Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī narrates women seeking “going forth from home into homelessness” and the eventual formation of a bhikkhunī community (Vinaya Piṭaka, Cūlavagga X; Horner 1952). The story is not a neutral transcript of one event; it is part of a monastic legal tradition concerned with rules and institutional legitimacy. Yet its language makes an important social distinction visible: religious renunciation required leaving household obligations and creating a new corporate community. The fact that such departure had to be regulated demonstrates how central the household remained as the ordinary unit from which renouncers exited.

7.19 Renunciation reorganised kinship rather than abolishing it

Monks and nuns depended on lay households for food, cloth, medicines, dwellings and land donations. Lay kin could remain emotionally or materially connected to renouncers, and household members could become donors to institutions in which relatives lived. The monastic world therefore did not stand outside the economy of family life. It redirected resources and created alternative communities with their own seniority, property rules and disciplinary structures. Urbanisation, household accumulation and renunciation were historically connected processes, not mutually exclusive social worlds (Chakravarti 1987; Olivelle 2019).

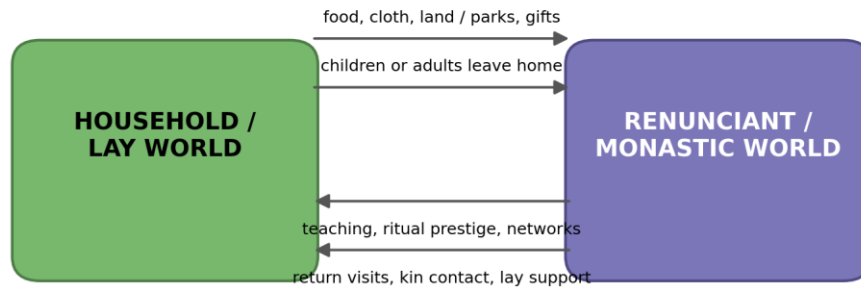
Figure 26 — Household and renunciation as connected social institutions**Renunciation did not erase the household; it reorganised obligations and flows.**

Figure 26 — Household and renunciation as connected social institutions. Material support, mobility, teaching and continuing kin relations linked lay and monastic worlds.

7.20 Children belonged to economies of learning and labour

Children appear unevenly in elite texts because legal, ritual and religious sources are more interested in succession, education, marriageability or renunciation than in ordinary childhood. Yet households required children to acquire language, agricultural knowledge, craft skills, ritual competence and social roles. Some boys entered formal student relationships in Brahmanical settings; Buddhist and Jain traditions also preserve novices and young renouncers. Girls' training is less visible in many normative sources, a textual silence that should not be mistaken for absence of learning. Household transmission was broader than formal schooling and included work learned by participation.

7.21 Age structured authority, dependency and care

The public honour accorded Vajjian elders suggests that age could be converted into authority, but ageing also produced dependency. Injury, illness and reduced mobility shifted labour burdens within households. Older people transmitted memory, ritual knowledge, property claims and social connections; younger adults supplied much of the physically demanding work. Because ancient sources celebrate venerable elders more readily than frail dependants, household care must often be inferred from demographic necessity rather than narrative prominence.

7.22 Dependants, servants and enslaved labour complicate the image of the kin household

Pāli texts refer to *dāsa* and *kammakāra* categories, while other early Indian sources describe servants, hired workers and forms of unfree labour. Chakravarti situates such labour within the economic world that also produced wealthy *gahapatis* and urban donors (Chakravarti 1987). A household could therefore contain people who were not kin but whose labour sustained domestic production and status. Archaeology generally cannot distinguish a servant's sleeping space from that of a poorer relative. The term "family household" should consequently not erase inequalities of freedom, property or coercion among co-residents.

7.23 Wealthy merchant and landholding households linked domestic life to markets

Setthi and gahapati figures in Buddhist literature are repeatedly associated with substantial wealth, gifts and urban or agrarian resources. Such households could convert surplus into religious patronage, credit, trade and political influence. Their prominence in texts is partly a source bias: monasteries remembered major donors more readily than poor cultivators. Nevertheless, they demonstrate that household accumulation was one mechanism through which the expanding market economy of the second urbanisation entered social life. Property was held, transmitted, consumed and displayed through households even when commercial transactions extended far beyond them.

7.24 Champa shows durable domestic investment but not a recoverable pedigree

Excavations at Champa exposed brick structures, floors, ring-wells and other features belonging to early historic occupation phases (Archaeological Survey of India 1970–76). These remains support a history of dense settlement, water management and durable residential investment in Anga. They may indicate households with sufficient resources to build and rebuild substantial spaces. But no excavated wall can tell us the caste, gotra or exact genealogical composition of its residents without independent evidence. The correct inference is social-economic differentiation, not a named family structure.

7.25 Chirand reminds us that household change was not only urban

Chirand's long occupational sequence shows household economies adapting through major technological and exchange transformations. By the early historic phase the settlement participated in iron-using and NBPW networks while retaining a strong riverine and agrarian base (Archaeological Survey of India 1962–63; Verma 1971). Families and co-residential groups in such places experienced urbanisation indirectly through markets, tools, prestige goods and institutional demands. A history restricted to palaces and walled cities would therefore miss much of the household transformation occurring in villages and riverine settlements.

7.26 Anga must not be reconstructed only from Magadhan or Vajjian texts

Champa is well represented archaeologically, but household narratives explicitly located in Anga are less abundant than the wider Buddhist textual record for Magadha and Vesālī. This asymmetry requires restraint. Regional social history can use the shared Middle Ganga economic context and Champa's excavated domestic infrastructure, while clearly marking when textual examples come from elsewhere. The existence of comparable pottery, coinage or urban forms does not prove identical marriage, inheritance or kinship rules across every polity.

7.27 Nepal-side Mithila remains an evidentiary frontier for early household history

The cultural geography of Mithila crosses the modern India–Nepal border, but household archaeology for the early historic Nepal Tarai is unevenly published and cannot simply be filled with evidence from Vaishali or Champa. Later Janakpur traditions are historically important, yet they cannot substitute for excavated domestic contexts of the mid-first millennium BCE. The responsible conclusion is therefore asymmetrical: we can discuss regional interaction and later cultural continuity while acknowledging that

early household structures north of the present border remain insufficiently documented for detailed reconstruction.

7.28 “Joint family” and “nuclear family” are poor default categories

Modern demographic categories can be useful when applied to modern censuses, but they are risky when imposed on early historic evidence. A household may expand when sons marry, contract after inheritance, include widowed relatives, servants or apprentices, and change again through migration or death. Even if a residence contained three generations at one moment, that does not prove a permanent joint-family institution. Conversely, a small house need not contain only parents and children. The life-cycle household is a better model: composition changed over time in response to marriage, property, work, mortality and mobility.

7.29 Later caste and genealogical systems must not be projected backward

The early historic sources certainly record social hierarchy, varṇa discourse, occupations, high and low kulas, and politically important lineages. They do not justify importing the fully developed caste subdivisions, Panji structures or Śrōtriya classification of much later Mithila into the Vajjian age. The same source-control principle used throughout this project applies here: a category must be demonstrated for the period in which it is used. Continuity of a regional name or later genealogy is not sufficient evidence for an unchanged household or caste institution.

7.30 Conclusion: the household connected economy, kinship and power

Early historic households were places where food was produced and consumed, children were raised, property transmitted, labour organised, dependants supported or controlled, marriages negotiated, religious gifts prepared and status reproduced. Yet households were not self-contained. They were embedded in kin networks, political lineages, markets, villages, cities and renunciant institutions. Vajji’s public norms concerning elders and women, Ambapālī’s economic agency, the bhikkhunī tradition, the prominence of gahapatis and the domestic archaeology of sites such as Champa together reveal a society in which household relations were fundamental but diverse. Chapter 8 therefore turns from the household to the wider problem of social differentiation before fixed caste narratives are imposed on the evidence.

Figure 27 — The household as a node in the early historic social economy

The household was simultaneously an economic, social, reproductive and ritual institution.

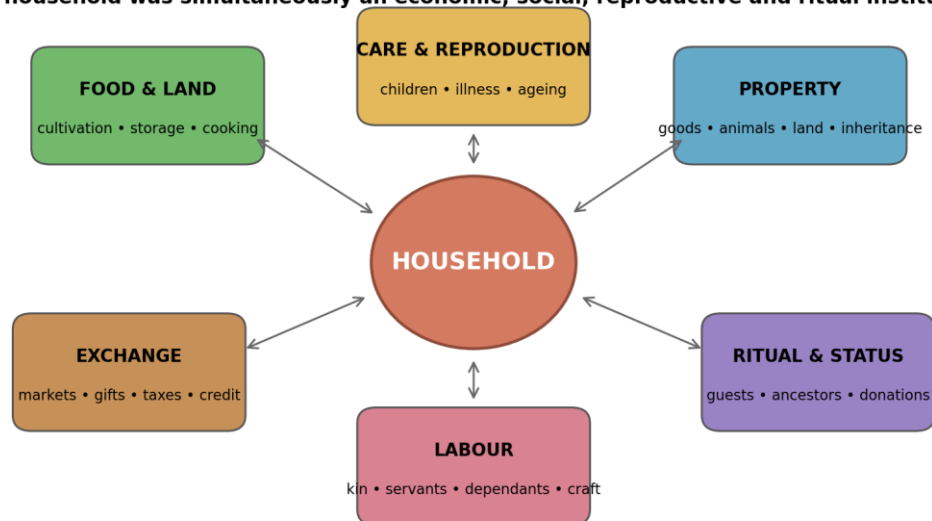


Figure 27 — The household as a node in the early historic social economy. Food, care, property, ritual, labour and exchange were interdependent rather than separate spheres.

Table 7.1 — Household evidence and limits of inference

Evidence	Can support	Cannot establish by itself	Use in this chapter
House plans, floors, hearths, storage	co-residence, repeated domestic activity, investment	exact genealogy, caste, nuclear/joint family form	Champa and comparative Middle Ganga domestic archaeology
Food, tools and craft debris	household production, consumption, labour routines	sex or kinship identity of each worker	linking household economy to Chapters 4–6
Dīgha Nikāya / Aṅguttara Nikāya	Vajjian public norms concerning elders, women, shrines and assemblies	universal compliance or complete family law	source-controlled evidence for Vajji
Ambapālī narrative	textual representation of a wealthy woman controlling resources and donating land	typical property rights of all women	case study of differentiated female agency
Vinaya bhikkhunī tradition	institutional memory of women leaving household life for renunciation	a neutral transcript of one event or all women's experience	household–renunciation interface
Dharmasūtras	Brahmanical normative debates on marriage, inheritance and household duties	actual practice in every Mithila, Vajji or Anga household	comparative normative evidence only
Terms such as kula / gahapati	categories of descent, status and household headship in specific texts	one timeless regional kinship system	terminological caution

CHAPTER 8 — SOCIAL DIFFERENTIATION BEFORE FIXED CASTE NARRATIVES

8.1 Scope: differentiation is not the same as a finished caste system

Early historic society in the Middle Ganga valley was unequal, but inequality should not be reconstructed by placing every person into a later, fully elaborated caste order. Political rank, control of land and labour, ritual prestige, occupation, lineage, gender, wealth, freedom or dependency, and access to institutions could all shape social position. These axes overlapped, yet they did not always coincide. A wealthy merchant might possess substantial economic power without belonging to a ruling lineage; a ritual specialist could claim high prestige without controlling the largest productive resources; an artisan could be indispensable to urban life while occupying a lower social rank in some textual classifications. The task is therefore to reconstruct historically visible forms of differentiation before assuming the later fixity of endogamous jātis. This follows the broader methodological shift from treating caste as a timeless fourfold structure to examining how social formations changed with settlement, production, state formation and ideology (Thapar 1999; Chakravarti 1987; Sharma 1983).

8.2 The sources speak in different social vocabularies

No single source provides a complete social census. Brahmanical normative texts organise society through varṇa and rules of ritual eligibility, marriage, inheritance and conduct. Early Buddhist texts frequently identify people instead through terms such as khattiya, brāhmaṇa, gahapati, seṭṭhi, vāṇijja, occupational labels, and categories of dependence such as dāsa and kammakāra. Archaeology reveals differences in house size, access to imported or prestige goods, craft production and consumption, but it rarely supplies the names by which people classified themselves. Later inscriptions make some occupational and donor categories more visible, yet they post-date much of the period considered here. These vocabularies must therefore be compared rather than collapsed. Apparent disagreement between texts may record different institutions, audiences and purposes rather than a simple choice between a “true” and a “false” social order (Fick 1920; Chakravarti 1987; Aktor 2017).

8.3 Social position worked through several overlapping axes

The most useful model is multidimensional. Birth and lineage mattered in ruling groups and ritual claims. Property and control over productive resources mattered for substantial householders. Occupation mattered because people could be identified as traders, cattle-keepers, metalworkers, potters, barbers or other specialists. Political rank mattered because participation in a gana-sangha assembly was not open to every resident. Dependency mattered because servants, hired workers and enslaved persons did not command the same autonomy as household heads. Gender and age structured access to property, ritual, movement and authority. These axes could reinforce one another, but they could also diverge. Figure 28 therefore treats hierarchy as a field of intersecting relations rather than a single ladder.

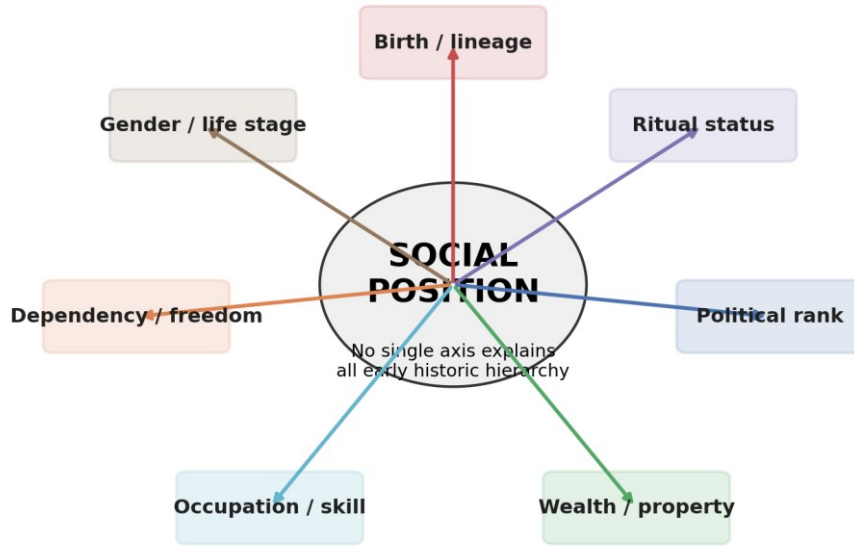


Figure 28 — Social differentiation before fixed caste narratives: several overlapping axes

Figure 28 — Social differentiation before fixed caste narratives: several overlapping axes. No single axis explains all early historic hierarchy.

8.4 Varṇa was a powerful classificatory ideal, not a demographic spreadsheet

The fourfold varṇa scheme—Brāhmaṇa, Kṣatriya, Vaiśya and Śūdra—became one of the most influential Brahmanical ways of imagining social order. Dharma literature attached consequences to these categories in ritual entitlement, marriage, work, punishment and social interaction. Yet modern scholarship stresses that the scheme was normative and ideological; other kinds of evidence do not simply reproduce it as a complete description of lived society (Aktor 2017). This distinction is especially important for north-eastern India in the age of the mahājanapadas. A textual rule assigning an occupation to a varṇa does not prove that every historical practitioner of that occupation belonged to one empirically identifiable group, nor does it establish that the same ranking operated uniformly in Vaishali, Champa, rural settlements and frontier zones.

8.5 Buddhist social vocabulary does not map neatly onto the four varṇas

Uma Chakravarti’s analysis of early Buddhist literature, building critically on Richard Fick, emphasises that the categories most visible in Pāli social description do not line up neatly with the full Brahmanical fourfold scheme. Brāhmaṇas and khattiyas are conspicuous, but economic life is often described through categories such as gahapati, seṭṭhi, merchant, cattle-keeper and named crafts rather than through an empirical “Vaiśya” bloc. Likewise, labouring dependence is frequently expressed through dāsa and kammakāra rather than by making “Śūdra” the ordinary descriptive term for all service work (Fick 1920; Chakravarti 1987). This does not mean that varṇa ideas were absent; it means that social practice generated additional categories that a historian must take seriously on their own terms.

8.6 The gap between normative and empirical categories is historical evidence

The mismatch between classificatory schemes is itself informative. It shows a society in which expanding agriculture, cities, merchant wealth, specialised crafts, political oligarchies and renunciant institutions created forms of status that could not be described adequately through one inherited ideological vocabulary. The historian should therefore resist translating gahapati as “Vaiśya,” khattiya as a simple equivalent of every later

Kṣatriya caste, or dāsa-kammakāra as a synonym for Śūdra. Figure 29 visualises this non-equivalence. Categories could intersect, and later traditions could assimilate them more closely, but the early historic evidence must be allowed to retain its plurality.

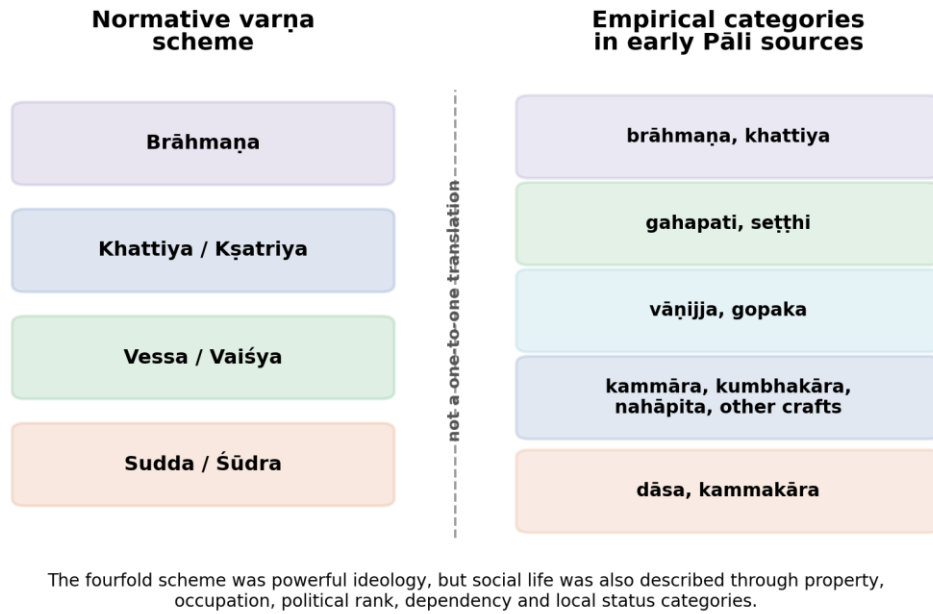


Figure 29 — Normative varṇa scheme and empirical social categories in early Pāli sources. The relationship is not one-to-one.

8.7 Brāhmaṇa status joined ritual authority to social competition

Brāhmaṇas appear in Buddhist as well as Brahmanical sources, which indicates that the category had social visibility beyond texts written by Brahmanical specialists. Yet the sources also preserve arguments about what made a true brāhmaṇa: birth, learning, conduct, sacrifice, austerity or ethical achievement. Such debate implies that status was claimed and contested, not merely recorded. In the expanding eastern polities, ritual specialists interacted with rulers, householders and renunciants in an environment where new forms of wealth and political authority were developing. Their prestige could be substantial, but it was not identical to political sovereignty or mercantile wealth. The presence of contest over the meaning of brāhmaṇa status should therefore be treated as evidence of social negotiation rather than as proof that a single uncontested hierarchy governed every community.

8.8 Khattiya status was especially important in ruling lineages and gana-sanghas

Pāli sources use khattiya prominently for ruling and aristocratic groups. In gana-sangha contexts such as the Licchavis and other oligarchic lineages of the north-east, khattiya identity was closely tied to political privilege and descent. This makes it dangerous to translate republican or assembly government into social democracy. A polity could distribute authority among multiple elite lineages while excluding most residents from the decisive political body. Thapar's distinction between lineage systems and state formations is useful here: collective rule among chiefs or lineage heads is still compatible with sharp internal hierarchy (Thapar 1999). The political significance of khattiya status also helps explain why social rank cannot be reduced to ritual ranking alone.

8.9 Gahapati marked substantial household status in agrarian and urban society

The gahapati is one of the most important categories that disappears when early society is forced into a four-varṇa template. In early Buddhist literature the term often denotes a substantial lay household head associated with property, agriculture, wealth, productive resources and local standing. Gahapatis could support renunciants, employ labour and participate in market and agrarian networks. Chakravarti therefore treats the category as central to the new social economy of the Middle Ganga valley (Chakravarti 1987). Not every gahapati was a merchant, and not every householder was a gahapati of comparable means. The term points to a social location produced by household control of resources; it should not be mechanically converted into a later caste name.

8.10 Setṭhi wealth created another axis of urban prestige

The setṭhi or wealthy merchant-financier represents a form of prominence associated with commerce, capital, credit and urban institutions. Literary traditions about major donors illustrate how mercantile wealth could produce public influence without being identical to royal or ritual authority. Older scholarship sometimes attempted to fit such people directly into the Vaiśya category, but the texts often identify them by economic title instead. This distinction matters for Champa and other commercial centres discussed later in the volume. Urbanisation created social power through circulation and accumulation as well as through land and lineage. Wealth could support monasteries, public works and networks of dependants, giving economic elites a visibility that a purely varṇa-based reconstruction would understate (Fick 1920; Chakravarti 1987).

8.11 Occupation was a practical language of social identity

Early Buddhist narratives identify people as traders, cattle-keepers, potters, metalworkers, barbers and other specialists. Such labels show that occupation could function as a meaningful social identity, especially for groups outside ruling and ritual elites. This does not mean that every occupation was already a closed hereditary caste. A profession could be learned within families, organised through local networks and associated with status without yet possessing all the later features of a jati. Fick's early twentieth-century study already noted the complexity of north-eastern society, and Chakravarti's later work emphasised the empirical importance of occupational categories in the Pāli record (Fick 1920; Chakravarti 1987). The safest historical language is therefore "occupational group" unless the evidence demonstrates heredity, endogamy and durable corporate boundaries.

8.12 Skilled crafts could be economically essential and socially unequal

Metalworking, pottery, carpentry, textile production, ivory working, leather work and other crafts were indispensable to early urbanisation. Archaeological concentrations of specialised production show increasing division of labour, while texts supply names for some occupational specialists. Economic necessity, however, did not guarantee equal prestige. Work involving particular materials, bodily substances or service relations could carry different valuations in different textual traditions. At the same time, skilled production created expertise and bargaining power. The relationship between occupation and rank was therefore neither uniformly degrading nor uniformly empowering. Chapter 11 examines craft organisation in detail; here the key point is that occupational differentiation preceded and contributed to later social boundary-making without allowing us to identify every early craft group with a later caste bearing a similar occupation.

8.13 Dāsa and kammakāra reveal relations of dependence and coercion

The presence of dāsa and kammakāra in early sources demonstrates that some households and institutions depended on labour performed by people with less autonomy than substantial household heads. The terms cover forms of servitude, slavery, hired labour and dependent work whose exact legal conditions varied by text and period. It would be misleading either to erase coercion by translating every dāsa as a generic “servant” or to assume that all such persons occupied one uniform form of chattel slavery. Sharma’s work on lower orders and Chakravarti’s social history both insist on relating status to labour and control over resources rather than discussing ritual rank in isolation (Sharma 1990; Chakravarti 2007). These categories make inequality visible from below.

8.14 Labour status could cut across later varṇa expectations

A key methodological consequence follows from the prominence of dāsa-kammakāra and occupational workers: economic dependence did not need to be expressed through the same categories as Brahmanical ritual classification. A person could be socially subordinate because of labour relations, debt, household dependency or lack of property even when the text did not label that person a Śūdra. Conversely, the abstract assignment of service to Śūdras in normative literature does not identify the status of every worker in the archaeological or Buddhist record. This separation between economic relation and ritual category is crucial for writing a socio-economic history that does not substitute prescription for observation (Sharma 1983; Aktor 2017).

8.15 Gana-sangha government was oligarchic rather than socially egalitarian

Vaishali’s association with the Vajjian confederacy can encourage anachronistic descriptions of a “republic” as if all inhabitants enjoyed equal citizenship. The surviving traditions instead point to assemblies of politically entitled lineages and chiefs. The famous Vajjian conditions in the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta concern collective meetings, established institutions, elders, women, shrines and arahants; they describe norms of political cohesion, not universal suffrage (Walshe 1995). Mishra’s reconstruction of the Vajjian constitution remains historiographically important but uses modern constitutional analogies that must be handled cautiously (Mishra 1962). Figure 30 therefore presents political participation as one axis of hierarchy: collective rule among elites could coexist with household wealth differences, occupational stratification and dependent labour.

Political participation was not the same as social equality

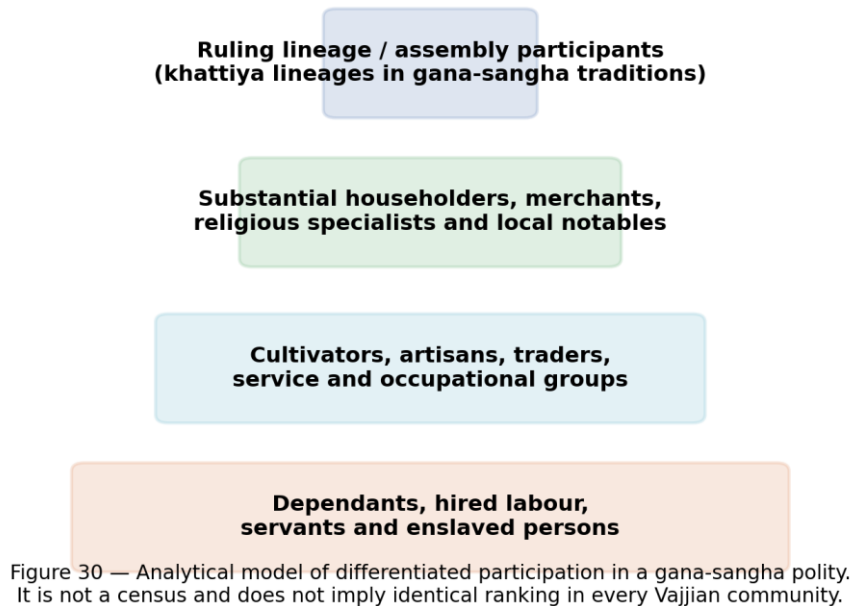


Figure 30 — Differentiated participation in a gana-sangha polity. Collective rule among entitled lineages did not imply universal social equality.

8.16 Lineage rank and economic wealth were related but not identical

Ruling descent could confer access to office and assembly participation, while mercantile or agrarian wealth could create substantial influence outside the political lineage core. A wealthy gahapati or seṭṭhi might command more movable resources than a poorer member of an aristocratic lineage, yet the latter could possess privileges of birth and political participation unavailable to the former. This is exactly why a single hierarchy is insufficient. Early state formation brought several ranking systems into contact: descent, ritual status, control of labour, market wealth and office. Their interaction created opportunities for competition, patronage and alliance, but not necessarily a unified scale on which every person could be placed.

8.17 Gender structured every social category without producing one uniform female status

Women were differentiated by family status, wealth, marital position, age, occupation, enslavement or dependency, and access to religious institutions. Elite women could control resources in exceptional cases; poorer women performed agricultural, domestic, craft and service labour that is much less visible in elite texts. Normative restrictions on marriage, inheritance and sexuality therefore need to be read alongside evidence for female donors, courtesans, nuns and household managers. Gender was not a separate hierarchy added after caste or class; it intersected with them. The same label of high family status could produce different opportunities for men and women, while renunciation could create new forms of female authority within continuing institutional constraints (Collett 2016; Chakravarti 2007).

8.18 Ambapālī shows why social categories must be read case by case

Traditions about Ambapālī of Vesālī portray a woman of wealth, public visibility and control over property who interacts directly with the Buddha and the Licchavis. Her case cannot be made representative

of all women, nor should later labels about courtesans be used to assign her a simple place in a caste ladder. Instead, the narrative demonstrates that urban societies could recognise forms of female economic agency that intersected with sexuality, patronage, civic prestige and elite competition. The example is valuable precisely because it resists a flat model: gender constraint coexisted with forms of wealth and public authority. Chapter 9 examines women in greater detail.

8.19 Renunciation challenged some status claims without abolishing social hierarchy

Early Buddhist doctrine repeatedly questions the idea that spiritual worth is guaranteed by birth. Admission to the saṅgha could create a new institutional identity in which seniority by ordination and discipline mattered. Stories such as that of Upāli, traditionally remembered as a barber connected with the Sakyan princes, dramatise a reversal of worldly precedence when elite men are asked to honour someone ordained before them. Such narratives are powerful critiques of inherited status, but they should not be turned into evidence that caste or class disappeared in Buddhist communities. Monasteries depended on lay economies, retained gendered rules, and operated within societies structured by wealth, family and political power. The evidence therefore shows ideological challenge and institutional re-ranking, not an instant egalitarian social revolution (Chakravarti 1987; Horner 1952).

8.20 Ethical universalism and social practice could coexist in tension

Buddhist texts can relativise birth status by making conduct and insight central to moral and spiritual evaluation. At the same time, the same textual world recognises khattiyas, brāhmaṇas, high and low families, wealthy householders, servants and occupational groups. The coexistence of these registers is historically important. Religious critique did not require authors to deny the social classifications around them; rather, it could redirect the criterion of ultimate worth. Historians should therefore avoid two opposite errors: treating Buddhism as simply reproducing Brahmanical hierarchy, or describing it as having abolished social distinction in practice. The tension between ethical universality and inherited social relations is itself part of the history of early north-eastern India.

8.21 Kula and jāti cannot simply be translated as modern caste

Words translated as “family,” “birth,” “kind,” “lineage” or “caste” changed meaning across genres and centuries. Kula may refer to family or lineage status; jāti can indicate birth or a social category without necessarily denoting a fully formed modern-style endogamous caste. Thapar’s discussion of social terminology during the transition from lineage to state warns against assuming that later meanings were already fixed in the mid-first millennium BCE (Thapar 1999). The safest method is contextual: ask what a term does in a particular passage—does it rank families, regulate marriage, identify occupation, distinguish political descent, or make a doctrinal argument? Translation should follow that function rather than importing the whole later institution into a single ancient word.

8.22 Marginalised labels do not justify back-projecting later untouchability unchanged

Early texts contain labels for people represented as low, impure, despised or socially distant, including caṇḍāla and pukkusa/pukkasa in some traditions. Such evidence is important for the history of exclusion, but it does not by itself prove that the full later institution of untouchability, with all its regional practices and hereditary boundaries, already existed in an identical form. Sharma’s *longue-durée* study of lower orders

demonstrates that social degradation developed through changing ritual, occupational and economic relations over centuries (Sharma 1990). A historically controlled account should record early stigma and exclusion where the sources attest them while refusing to convert resemblance into timeless continuity.

8.23 Hunters, fishers and forest-linked workers complicate agrarian models

Not everyone fitted neatly into an agrarian village or urban craft economy. Texts refer to hunters, fishers and other people whose livelihoods depended on rivers, wetlands, forests and animal resources. Archaeology from the region likewise demonstrates the continuing importance of fish, turtle, molluscs and wild resources discussed in Chapters 3 and 4. Such livelihoods could be economically essential while being represented ambivalently or negatively in some normative traditions. Their presence reminds us that social differentiation also followed ecological niches. Later caste histories sometimes attach particular communities permanently to such occupations, but early evidence should be described at the level it supports: livelihood, occupational naming and social valuation, not assumed unbroken community identity.

8.24 Urban neighbourhoods cannot be labelled by caste from artefacts alone

Archaeological differences within a town—house size, craft debris, luxury goods, drains, wells, streets and waste—can reveal unequal access to resources and specialised activity zones. They cannot normally identify the caste of residents. A quarter containing metalworking debris is evidence for concentrated production, not automatically a “smith caste quarter.” A large residence suggests investment and resources, not a specific varṇa. This caution is essential at sites such as Champa and Vaishali where literary memory is rich enough to tempt retrospective identification. Material inequality and social classification must be connected only where independent evidence allows it (Allchin 1995; Chakrabarti 2009).

8.25 Consumption differences reveal inequality more securely than named status

Variation in fine wares, ornaments, beads, imported materials, storage capacity and residential investment can indicate unequal consumption or access. Yet archaeological wealth is not a direct translation of legal or ritual rank. A prosperous merchant household could possess more expensive objects than a ritual specialist; goods could be gifts, heirlooms, trade stock or institutional property. The strongest archaeological claim is therefore comparative: some households or areas had greater access to resources than others. Linking that inequality to a named social category requires textual, inscriptional or spatial corroboration. This evidentiary discipline prevents artefacts from being used to “prove” a caste hierarchy they cannot name.

8.26 Social mobility existed, but it should not be romanticised

Economic expansion could create new wealth through agriculture, trade and specialised production. Renunciation could confer new religious status. Service at court or participation in political institutions could alter a household’s position. Such possibilities show that social order was not completely frozen. Yet mobility was constrained by birth, lineage privilege, gender, dependency and inherited resources. Stories of individuals who cross status boundaries are therefore evidence that boundaries mattered, not proof that they were irrelevant. A historical account should recognise both movement and constraint, avoiding the twin myths of an entirely fluid society and an already immobile caste system.

8.27 Anga and Champa require local evidence rather than borrowed social templates

Champa's role as an urban and commercial centre makes it plausible that merchants, artisans, labourers, householders and political authorities interacted there in complex ways. Archaeology supports urban investment and craft activity, while Buddhist and Jain traditions place Anga within wider networks of the eastern Ganga valley. What is much harder to recover is the exact local ranking of named social groups. It would be methodologically weak to take a hierarchy reconstructed for Magadha or Kosala and simply relabel it "Anga." Chapter 14 returns to Champa with a stronger economic focus. For the present chapter, Anga demonstrates the need to distinguish region-wide processes from locally proven institutions.

8.28 Nepal-side Mithila is especially vulnerable to retrospective classification

For the early historic Tarai and Nepal-side Mithila, archaeological and textual evidence remains uneven. Later social formations, landholding structures and caste labels are much better documented, but they cannot be carried backward across a millennium or more. Shared religious traditions and cross-border mobility do not prove that every later community category existed with the same name and boundary in the early historic period. This volume therefore treats the Nepal Tarai as part of an interaction zone while keeping the evidentiary frontier visible. Where the data are insufficient, absence of reconstruction is preferable to invented continuity.

8.29 Later caste formations must be studied as historical outcomes

More durable caste formations could emerge through the long interaction of occupational specialisation, hereditary transmission of work, marriage boundaries, ritual ranking, political incorporation, control of land and service obligations. But these processes operated unevenly across regions and centuries. Figure 31 therefore represents caste formation as a possible long-term stabilisation of several social boundaries rather than as a system that appeared fully formed at one date. This approach also prevents later Maithil genealogical, Panji, Śrotriya or other historically documented classifications from being projected into the age of the Vajji confederacy. The later evidence is important precisely because it has its own history.

From social differentiation to later caste formations: a process, not an instant system

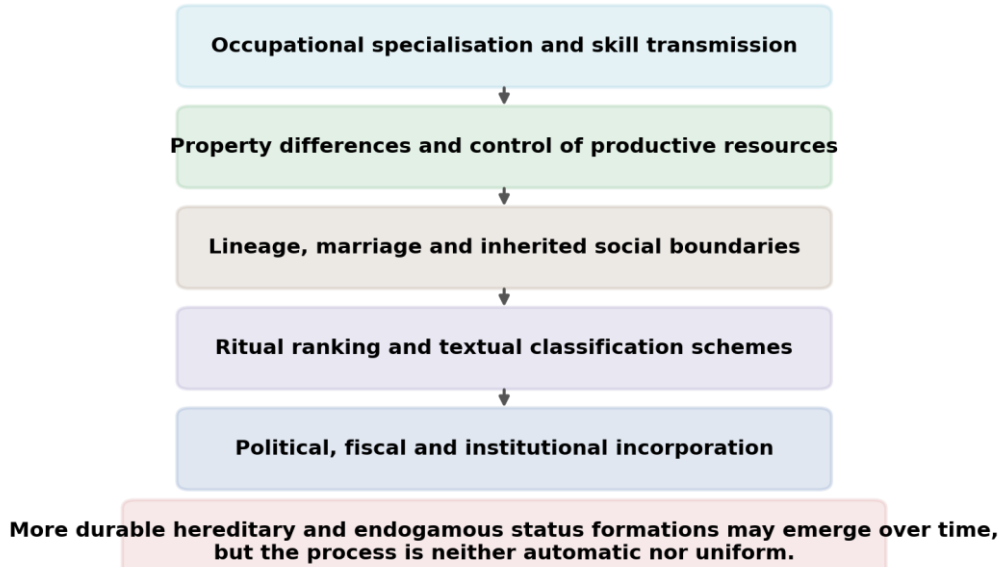


Figure 31 — Long-term pathways that may stabilise social boundaries. This is not a date for a single 'moment of caste formation' and must not project later jātis into the sixth-fifth centuries BCE.

Figure 31 — From social differentiation to later caste formations: a long-term process rather than an instant or uniform system.

8.30 Conclusion: early historic hierarchy was plural, contested and changing

The strongest conclusion is not that early Mithila, Vajji and Anga were “casteless,” nor that they already possessed the complete social architecture familiar from much later periods. The evidence shows stratification through lineage, ritual status, wealth, occupation, political privilege, gender and dependency. Brahmanical varṇa theory was historically influential, but Pāli texts reveal additional empirical categories created by agrarian expansion, urbanisation, trade and household production. Gana-sangha politics could be collective yet oligarchic; Buddhist ethics could challenge birth privilege without dissolving social inequality; occupational groups could be durable without being demonstrably identical to later jātis. Social differentiation should therefore be written as a process. The next chapter turns specifically to women, whose experiences expose particularly clearly how status, labour, family and institutional power intersected.

Table 8.1 — Social categories, evidence and limits of inference

Category / evidence	What it can support	What it cannot establish by itself	Use in this chapter
Varṇa terminology	normative ranking, ritual and legal ideals	complete demographic structure of a settlement	used as ideological classification, not census
Khattiya / ruling lineage	political descent and elite participation in some polities	universal equality within gana-sanghas	used to separate oligarchic participation from citizenship
Gahapati / setṭhi	property, household standing, mercantile or urban wealth	automatic identification as Vaiśya caste	used to reconstruct economic status outside a fourfold template
Occupational labels	work, skill, practical	fully hereditary or	used for artisans,

Category / evidence	What it can support	What it cannot establish by itself	Use in this chapter
	social identification	endogamous jātis	traders, fishers and other specialists
Dāsa / kammakāra	dependence, labour subordination, possible coercion	one uniform legal form of slavery	used to recover labour hierarchy from below
House size and material wealth	unequal access to resources and consumption	named caste, varṇa or genealogy	used only as archaeological evidence of inequality
Later caste/genealogical records	later social boundaries and historical memory	unchanged early historic identity	reserved for later chapters and never retrojected

CHAPTER 9 — WOMEN IN EARLY MITHILA–VAJJI–ANGA

Women in the early historic societies of Mithila, Vajji and Anga cannot be reconstructed as a single, uniform social category. The surviving evidence is uneven and genre-bound: archaeology reveals households, production, consumption and inequality but seldom identifies gender securely; Buddhist and Jain texts preserve named women and institutional debates but are literary and religious compositions; Brahmanical normative texts prescribe marriage, inheritance and conduct rather than recording every local practice. This chapter therefore asks a narrower historical question: what forms of work, dependence, patronage, kinship, public presence and renunciation can be supported by the evidence, and where must inference stop?

9.1 Scope: women were differentiated by more than gender

Gender shaped access to property, labour, marriage, ritual and public institutions, but it did not erase differences of wealth, age, household position, occupation, dependency or lineage rank. An elite woman connected to a ruling family, a prosperous urban patron, a female household manager, a dependent servant, a *gaṇikā*, a lay devotee and a renunciant occupied very different social locations. The safest reconstruction therefore treats “women” as an analytical category that intersects with class, kinship, political status and work rather than as a homogeneous group. This also prevents later ideals of the respectable housewife, later caste-specific marriage rules, or later regional customs from being read backward into the first millennium BCE without evidence (Chakravarti 1987; Thapar 1999).

9.2 The source problem is especially acute for women

Most early sources were produced, transmitted or institutionalised in settings dominated by men. That does not make women invisible, but it affects what is recorded. Normative texts often speak about women when regulating marriage, sexuality, inheritance or household order. Monastic texts speak about women when they become donors, disciples, nuns, relatives of monks, or subjects of disciplinary rules. Narrative texts often select exemplary or exceptional lives. Archaeology usually preserves houses, tools, food residues, ornaments and burials without giving the names or social identities of the people who used them. The result is a record rich in episodes but poor in representative statistics. A responsible social history must therefore distinguish an attested possibility from a typical pattern.

9.3 Regional evidence is uneven: Vesālī is unusually visible

Among the regions considered in this volume, Vesālī/Vaiśālī is unusually prominent in early Buddhist textual memory. The Mahāparinibbāna Sutta places the Buddha repeatedly in the Vajjian country and preserves episodes involving Ambapālī, the Licchavis and rules of Vajjian political conduct. The Vinaya and Aṅguttara traditions also connect Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī with Vesālī. By contrast, the evidence for women specifically in early Anga/Champa and in the wider area later identified with Mithila is thinner and often indirect. This asymmetry must remain visible: better-documented Vesālī can illuminate possibilities within the wider Middle Ganga social world, but it cannot simply stand in for every settlement in Mithila or Anga.

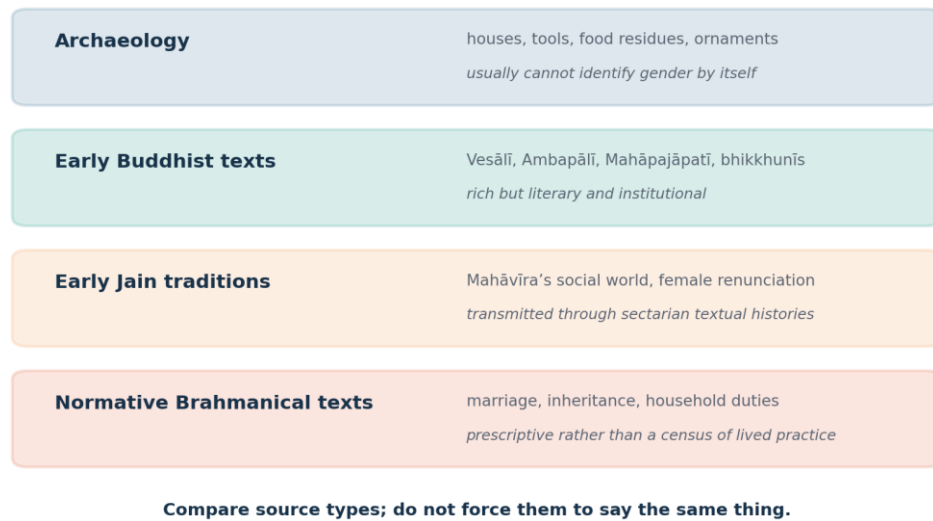


Figure 32 — Evidence windows for reconstructing women's lives in the early historic region. Each source type reveals different aspects and has different limits.

9.4 Household labour is fundamental but archaeologically difficult to gender

Grinding, cooking, water collection, fuel preparation, food storage, textile work, childcare, cleaning and care for the sick were essential to household reproduction. Archaeological evidence for hearths, ovens, grinding stones, storage, spindle whorls, beads and domestic spaces helps reconstruct these activities, but the objects themselves rarely identify the sex of the worker. Textual traditions often associate textile work, food preparation and household management with women, yet those associations should not be turned into an exclusive division of labour without local proof. The strongest inference is therefore that early households depended on intensive reproductive and productive labour, much of which could be gendered in practice, while the precise allocation of tasks varied by household status and circumstance.

9.5 Marriage linked households, property and lineage

Marriage was not merely a private relationship. In agrarian and urban societies it connected families, transferred labour and resources, organised sexuality and reproduction, and could create alliances between lineages. Brahmanical Dharmasūtras preserve competing prescriptions concerning legitimate unions, inheritance and the duties of spouses, but they are prescriptive compositions and cannot be treated as a direct ethnography of Vajji or Anga (Olivelle 1999). Buddhist narratives likewise show marriages, parents, children and affinal relationships but do not provide a single marriage law. The historical conclusion is therefore structural rather than legalistic: marriage was a major institution for organising household continuity, but the forms and rights attached to it were not uniform across all communities.

9.6 Patrilineal ideals did not eliminate women's social leverage

Many normative traditions organise descent and inheritance through male lines and define women relationally as daughters, wives and mothers. Yet relational status could itself carry influence. Marriage could connect politically important families; motherhood could affect succession and household authority; and elite women might occupy significant positions within kin networks even when formal office was male-dominated. Conversely, women without powerful kin or property were more vulnerable to coercion. The

evidence therefore points neither to complete female seclusion nor to generalized equality. It points to social leverage that was often mediated through household, kinship, wealth and reputation, with very different outcomes for women situated differently within the social hierarchy.

9.7 Property rights cannot be reconstructed from one famous case

The evidence for women's control over property is patchy. Later legal categories such as *strīdhana* developed important histories, but they should not be projected wholesale into the early Vajjian period. Narrative evidence can nevertheless show that particular women controlled resources. The Ambapālī episode in DN 16 is especially important because the narrative presents her as controlling a mango grove, arranging transport and a large meal, refusing a lucrative offer from Licchavi youths, and donating the grove to the Buddhist community. This is direct textual evidence for resource control by one prominent woman; it is not a statute defining the property rights of all women in Vesālī.

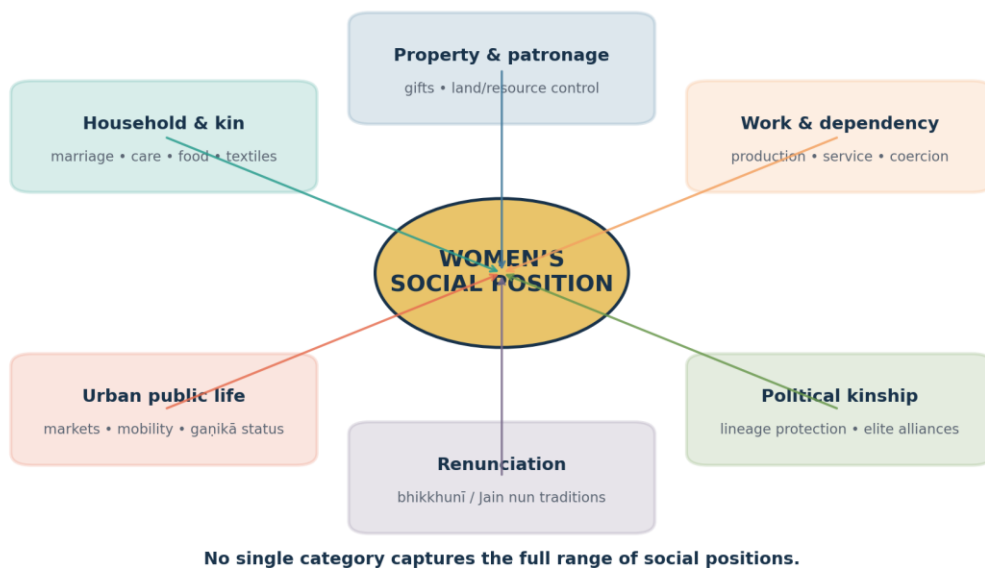


Figure 33 — Women's social positions were formed across intersecting domains rather than by gender alone.

9.8 Ambapālī's public presence challenges a domestic-only model

Ambapālī appears in the Mahāparinibbāna narrative not as a hidden household figure but as a public actor. She travels in carriages, approaches the Buddha in her own grove, negotiates priority over a meal invitation with Licchavi elites, hosts the Saṅgha and donates property. The episode is literary, but the social world it presupposes includes urban women whose status could be publicly recognised and economically consequential. Ambapālī's profession also complicates simplistic moral categories: the same text that labels her a *gaṇikā* portrays her as wealthy, decisive and capable of major religious patronage (DN 16; Walshe 1995).

9.9 Ambapālī's grove shows how patronage could convert wealth into institutional memory

The donation of Ambapālī's mango grove is historically significant at the level of social mechanism. Resource control allowed a private holder to support a renunciant institution; the gift then transformed a personal estate into a remembered religious site. Buddhist texts subsequently locate teachings in Ambapālī's Grove, showing how patronage could reshape the sacred and institutional geography of a city. The episode

should not be romanticised as proof that women generally enjoyed equal control over landed resources. Its value lies precisely in showing a documented route through which one woman's wealth and public standing became durable institutional patronage.

9.10 The *gaṇikā* belonged to the urban economy, not outside society

Older histories often reduce figures such as Ambapālī to moral anecdotes. A socio-economic reading instead asks what the category of *gaṇikā* implies about the city. Such women were associated in literary sources with trained entertainment, sexuality, elite clientele, ornament, mobility and high-value exchange. Their position could combine wealth and visibility with stigma and vulnerability. That combination is historically revealing: urbanisation generated occupations and public roles that did not fit neatly into the idealised household order. Ambapālī therefore belongs to the history of labour, consumption, gender and urban hierarchy as much as to the history of Buddhism.

AMBAPĀLĪ: WHAT THE VESĀLĪ NARRATIVE SUPPORTS



Supports resource control and public patronage in one prominent case — not a general property law for all women.

Figure 34 — Ambapālī and resource control in the Vesālī narrative: from urban status to durable religious patronage.

9.11 Female lay followers formed part of the Buddhist social constituency

Early Buddhist texts recognise both male and female lay followers. The *Āṅguttara Nikāya* can describe a competent female lay follower as part of the fourfold community alongside monks, nuns and male lay followers (AN 4.7). Other passages address ethical conduct, generosity and household responsibilities specifically to women. These texts are normative and pan-regional rather than local censuses, but they demonstrate that Buddhist institutions imagined women not only as relatives of male devotees but as religious participants in their own right. In a city such as Vesālī, where monastic communities depended on lay support, female participation could therefore operate through gifts, meals, property, ritual attendance and sustained patronage.

9.12 Visākhā is a useful comparator, not evidence for Vesālī

The famous laywoman Visākhā is associated above all with Sāvattthī, not Vesālī. Her prominence as a donor and household manager is nevertheless useful comparatively because early Buddhist literature explicitly discusses a woman's competence in work, management of domestic servants, protection of household wealth, generosity and religious knowledge (AN 8.49). The correct use of this material is

comparative: it shows categories through which some early Buddhist communities conceptualised prosperous female householders. It should not be cited as direct proof that women in Mithila, Vajji or Anga possessed identical rights, duties or household structures.

9.13 Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī links household care, textile production and religious giving

MN 142 presents Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī offering cloth that she had herself spun and woven. The narrative also remembers her as the Buddha's maternal aunt and foster mother. Although the scene is set at Kapilavatthu rather than Vesālī, it is useful because the same figure later appears in the Vesālī ordination tradition. The episode joins several domains often separated in modern analysis: women's household and textile labour, kin-based care, personal religious devotion and institutional giving. It also cautions against treating productive work as merely "domestic": spinning and weaving generated objects of exchange and religious value.

9.14 Vesālī is central to the Buddhist memory of women's ordination

The Pāli Vinaya and AN 8.51 narrate Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī's journey with Sakyan women to Vesālī after an earlier request for women to go forth had been refused. At Vesālī, Ānanda intervenes and the narrative culminates in the establishment of a bhikkhunī order under specified conditions. Comparative scholarship shows that different Buddhist textual traditions preserve related but not identical versions of the foundation story (Collett 2013). For regional history, the crucial point is not to harmonise every detail but to recognise that Vesālī became a major remembered setting for the institutionalisation of female renunciation.

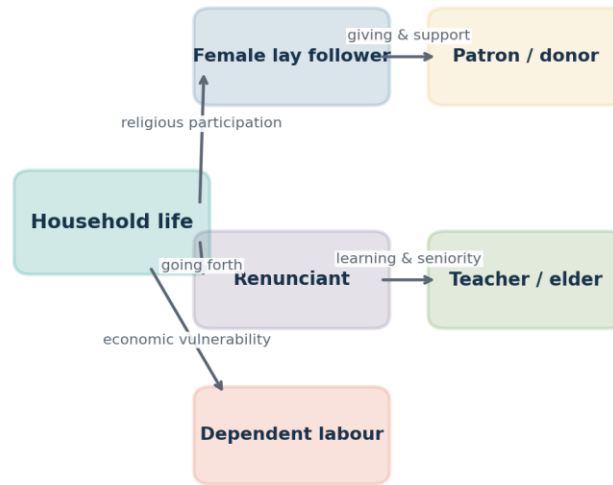
9.15 The foundation story is institutional history and also a contested memory

The ordination narrative should not be read as a stenographic record of one administrative event. Its rules, speeches and chronology were transmitted within monastic institutions that had their own concerns about authority, seniority, sexuality and discipline. Comparative textual studies have demonstrated differences among Pāli, Chinese, Sanskrit and Gāndhārī witnesses (Collett 2013). Yet those differences do not make the tradition historically useless. They show that early Buddhist communities repeatedly had to think about how women could move from household status into an organised renunciant life, and how the resulting female institution related to male monastic authority.

9.16 Renunciation created a socially recognised path outside marriage

Female renunciation was significant because it offered an institutional identity not defined solely by marriage, motherhood or male kin. Nuns could live within a corporate religious community, undertake disciplined training and appear in textual traditions as teachers and accomplished practitioners. This did not remove gender hierarchy. Vinaya traditions impose additional rules and dependencies on nuns, and safety concerns recur in narratives about female mobility. Nevertheless, the existence of an organised female renunciant order widened the range of socially intelligible female lives in the early historic religious landscape (Horner 1952; Collett 2013).

FEMALE RELIGIOUS AND SOCIAL PATHWAYS



Paths expanded social possibilities, but hierarchy, kinship, wealth and vulnerability continued to matter.

Figure 35 — Female religious and social pathways: opportunity and constraint coexisted.

9.17 Institutional subordination and religious competence coexisted

It is misleading to choose between two totalising pictures—either “Buddhism liberated women” or “Buddhism simply reproduced patriarchy.” The evidence supports both institutional constraint and acknowledged female religious competence. Rules could subordinate the nuns’ order to monks, while other texts name accomplished bhikkhunīs, female teachers and wise female disciples. AN 8.53, set near Vesālī, presents Mahāpajāpatī requesting concise teaching for solitary practice; the Buddha responds with criteria for judging authentic Dhamma. The scene assumes a female renunciant capable of independent discipline and doctrinal evaluation even within a gendered institutional order.

9.18 The Therīgāthā preserves women’s religious voices, but transmission must be analysed

The Therīgāthā is exceptional because it preserves verses attributed to early Buddhist women. It should neither be dismissed as fiction nor treated as transparent autobiography. The poems belong to a textual tradition shaped by oral transmission, compilation and later biographical commentary. Modern scholarship therefore distinguishes the verses from much later narrative expansions (Collett 2016). Used carefully, the collection demonstrates that the remembered early Buddhist community included women articulating ageing, grief, desire, renunciation, insight and liberation in the first person. It is evidence for a religious discourse in which women could be represented as subjects of knowledge rather than only objects of regulation.

9.19 Ambapālī’s Therīgāthā verses add another layer, not a simple biography

The Therīgāthā attributes to Ambapālī a sustained meditation on ageing in which former beauty is contrasted with bodily decline (Thig 13.1). This literary voice should not simply be fused with every episode of the DN 16 Ambapālī narrative to create a modern biography. The texts belong to different compositional settings. Read together but not collapsed, they show how the tradition remembered one woman in multiple

registers: urban public figure, donor, later renunciant and poet of impermanence. That multiplicity is historically more valuable than a single harmonised life story because it reveals changing modes of female exemplarity.

9.20 Motherhood and grief appear as social as well as religious experiences

Early Buddhist women's narratives frequently place renunciation against the background of marriage, motherhood, bereavement or domestic distress. Such stories cannot yield statistics about maternal mortality, infant death or widowhood, but they reveal the emotional and social weight attached to kinship. The broader lesson is that religious change did not occur outside family life: renunciation could emerge from experiences embedded in households. Modern analysis should resist turning grief narratives into stereotypes that women were naturally more emotional, just as it should resist reading every renunciation as a modern act of individual emancipation (Collett 2016; Salgado 2013).

9.21 Dependent women remain harder to see than elite patrons

Sources disproportionately preserve women who were exceptional, wealthy, religiously exemplary or connected to powerful households. Female servants, slaves, hired workers and other dependants appear more fragmentarily. This creates a serious archival bias. The presence of *dāsa* and *kammakāra* relations in early sources, discussed in Chapter 8, implies households in which women as well as men could occupy dependent positions. Yet the evidence rarely permits a precise local reconstruction of their numbers, legal status or daily labour. A social history must therefore keep vulnerable and low-status women analytically present even when named biographies are absent.

9.22 Textile and food work connected household labour to the wider economy

Spinning, weaving, food processing and preparation are repeatedly associated with women in normative and narrative sources, while archaeology provides the tools and installations for these activities. The important economic point is that such work was not “non-economic” merely because much of it occurred in households. Cloth, prepared food, stored grain, dairy products and care labour reproduced households and could support markets, gifts and religious institutions. Mahāpajāpati's cloth offering is a particularly clear illustration of productive labour becoming religious wealth. The chapter therefore treats household production as part of the economy rather than as a separate private sphere.

9.23 Women's mobility ranged from constrained to highly public

The sources preserve very different patterns of movement. Ambapālī travels by carriage in the public space around Vesālī; Mahāpajāpati's ordination narrative depicts a difficult journey to Vesālī; nuns' disciplinary rules reveal concern with safe travel and interactions with men; dependent women may have had far less freedom of movement. These differences show why the binary “secluded versus free” is inadequate. Mobility depended on wealth, institution, age, occupation, kin protection and vulnerability. The archaeological landscape of roads, rivers, monasteries and urban markets created opportunities for movement, but social permission and personal security were distributed unequally.

9.24 Vajjian political ethics included a rule concerning women and girls

In DN 16 the Buddha asks whether the Vajjis refrain from coercing and forcing the women and girls of their clans to live with them against their will; continued observance is included among the conditions associated with Vajjian welfare. The passage is important because it places treatment of women within a

discourse about political stability rather than only household morality. But it must be interpreted carefully. A normative prohibition against abduction or coercion does not prove that such acts never occurred. It shows that the tradition represented control over elite or clan women as a politically consequential issue within the Vajjian order (DN 16; Mishra 1962).

9.25 Political kinship could make elite women central to inter-lineage relations

In oligarchic and monarchical settings, marriage among prominent families could affect alliance, succession and conflict. Later Buddhist and Jain narratives contain many genealogical claims concerning Licchavis, Videhans and the family of Mahāvīra. Such genealogies are valuable as political memory but should not be accepted wholesale as contemporary constitutional documentation. What can be stated more securely is that where political authority was organised through ruling lineages, the marriage and protection of women belonging to those lineages could have consequences beyond the household. The Vajjian anti-coercion principle in DN 16 makes best sense within such a world of politically significant kinship.

9.26 Jain traditions preserve important memories of female renunciation

Jainism also developed organised communities of women renunciants. Later Śvetāmbara tradition gives Candanā/Candanabālā a prominent place in stories of Mahāvīra's alms and female discipleship, while later textual and sectarian histories elaborate the roles of nuns in the fourfold Jain community. These traditions are indispensable for the social history of Jain women, but their layers must be dated and separated. A late manuscript image or medieval hagiography cannot be used as direct evidence for a sixth- or fifth-century BCE event. The historically defensible conclusion is that female renunciation became a durable and institutionally important feature of Jain religious life, while the biographies of named early women remain textually mediated (Dundas 2002; Jaini 1991).

9.27 Jain debates show that gender remained a doctrinal and institutional question

Later Digambara and Śvetāmbara disagreements over whether women could attain liberation in a female body demonstrate that gender continued to be debated within Jain traditions. Those disputes are later than Mahāvīra and should not be projected unchanged into his lifetime. Their relevance here is historiographical: they remind us that “Jain views of women” were never a single timeless position. The existence of nuns, laywomen and female exemplars coexisted with debates over body, clothing, authority and salvation. For the early period, the historian should therefore reconstruct institutions and narratives without importing the fully developed positions of later sectarian controversy (Jaini 1991).

9.28 Anga and Champa require a deliberately modest reconstruction

Champa was an important early historic centre, and its urban economy would have depended on women's labour in households, production, service, exchange and reproduction. Yet the surviving evidence does not allow the same named, place-specific reconstruction available for Vesālī. It would therefore be misleading to populate Champa with famous women borrowed from Buddhist stories set elsewhere or to assign later Anga customs to the early city. The chapter uses the broader Middle Ganga evidence to define plausible social processes while marking Anga-specific claims separately. The absence of named women from the surviving record is an archival limitation, not evidence that women were socially unimportant.

9.29 Nepal-side Mithila must not be filled with later custom

For the early historic Tarai and Nepal-side Mithila, archaeological and textual evidence concerning women remains especially uneven. Later Maithil marriage systems, property customs, caste practices and ritual roles are much better documented, but they belong to later historical formations. Their survival in the same broad cultural region does not prove that they existed in identical form in the first millennium BCE. The proper method is to use early archaeology for settlement and material life, early texts for explicitly attested social categories, and later ethnographic or legal evidence only when studying later periods. This protects the Nepal side of the history from retrospective homogenisation.

9.30 Conclusion: agency and constraint must be reconstructed together

The early historic evidence does not support either a timeless picture of female subordination or a celebratory narrative of general emancipation. It reveals women acting within unequal structures as household workers, kin, patrons, public professionals, lay followers and renunciants. Vesālī is particularly important because the same textual landscape preserves political rules concerning women, Ambapālī's conspicuous economic agency and the Buddhist memory of female ordination. These cases demonstrate real possibilities without establishing their universality. The central historical principle is therefore to reconstruct agency and constraint together, always asking which women, in which institution, with what resources, and according to which source.

Table 9.1 — Named women, source settings and limits of inference

Case / category	Source setting	What it supports	What it does not prove
Ambapālī of Vesālī	DN 16; Therīgāthā tradition	Public mobility, substantial resources, patronage, donation of a grove; later renunciant memory	General property law or typical status of all urban women
Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī	Vinaya Kd 20; AN 8.51, 8.53; MN 142	Female renunciation as an institutional problem; textile production and giving; Vesālī as key remembered setting	A single uncontested founding chronology across all Buddhist schools
Vajjian women and girls	DN 16 welfare principles	Normative concern with coercion or abduction as politically consequential	That coercion never occurred, or that all women possessed equal legal autonomy
Visākhā	Āṅguttara Nikāya; Sāvatthī setting	Comparative model of prosperous female household management, generosity and lay participation	Direct evidence for Vesālī, Mithila or Anga
Candanā / Candanabālā	Jain narrative and monastic traditions	Durable Jain memory of female discipleship, almsgiving and renunciation	A fully recoverable contemporary biography or direct evidence for every early Jain woman
Female dependants	Scattered Buddhist/legal references; household	Existence of unequal labour and dependency within	Reliable regional numbers or a complete legal

Case / category	Source setting	What it supports	What it does not prove
	economy	households and institutions	category identical across communities
Women in early Anga / Champa	Indirect regional archaeology and wider textual comparison	Women's necessary participation in household reproduction, labour and urban society	Named local biographies or later Anga customs projected into the early historic period

CHAPTER 10 — AGRICULTURE AND THE RURAL ECONOMY

Agriculture sustained the demographic, urban and institutional transformations discussed in the preceding chapters, but the rural economy cannot be reduced to a single image of the timeless Indian village. In the Middle Ganga plains, cultivation was embedded in floodplain ecology, seasonal rainfall, livestock, household labour, storage, exchange, political extraction and religious patronage. The evidence is uneven. Archaeobotany and excavation can establish crops, food-processing tools and settlement sequences at particular sites; early Buddhist texts illuminate social categories such as gahapati, cultivator and dependent worker; later state and normative texts offer models of land, irrigation and taxation that must not be projected mechanically backward. This chapter therefore reconstructs mechanisms and limits rather than inventing a uniform agrarian system for all of Mithila, Vajji and Anga.

10.1 Scope: the rural economy was historical, not timeless

The phrase “rural economy” covers more than farming. Fields, grazing, livestock, fishing, gathering, fuel, house-building materials, transport, household processing, local exchange and obligations to political or religious institutions all formed part of village and countryside livelihoods. Nor should the village be imagined as an isolated, self-sufficient unit. Chapter 6 showed that early towns depended upon countryside flows of food, fibres, animals and labour, while rural households obtained tools, salt, ornaments and other goods through exchange. The task is therefore to reconstruct a connected agrarian landscape rather than a sealed village economy (Allchin 1995; Sharma 1983).

10.2 Evidence must be matched to the claim

For this region, direct evidence is strongest at excavated sites such as Chirand and at well-studied Middle Ganga comparators such as Senuwar. Archaeobotanical research establishes crop repertoires and long-term diversification, but it does not by itself reveal landownership or tax rates. Pāli literature preserves terms for farmers, cattle-keepers, householders, workers and rulers, yet its narratives are religious compositions rather than agricultural surveys. The Arthaśāstra contains exceptionally detailed agrarian administration, rainfall, irrigation and revenue categories, but its composite date and state-centred perspective make it a comparator for institutional possibilities, not a documentary description of sixth- or fifth-century BCE Vaishali or Champa (Bhattacharya 1978; Olivelle 2013).

10.3 Agrarian intensification had a long prehistory

Early historic agriculture did not begin with the rise of cities. Chapters 2–4 documented long-standing cultivation, animal keeping, fishing and plant processing in the Middle Ganga plains. Chirand and Senuwar show that rice, wheat, barley, pulses and other crops entered diversified farming systems well before the mature early historic horizon. Archaeobotanical synthesis across the Ganga Plain indicates continuity combined with diversification rather than a sudden agricultural invention at the moment of urbanisation (Pokharia et al. 2017). The early historic transformation therefore concerned scale, coordination, surplus, exchange and social differentiation as much as the existence of farming itself.

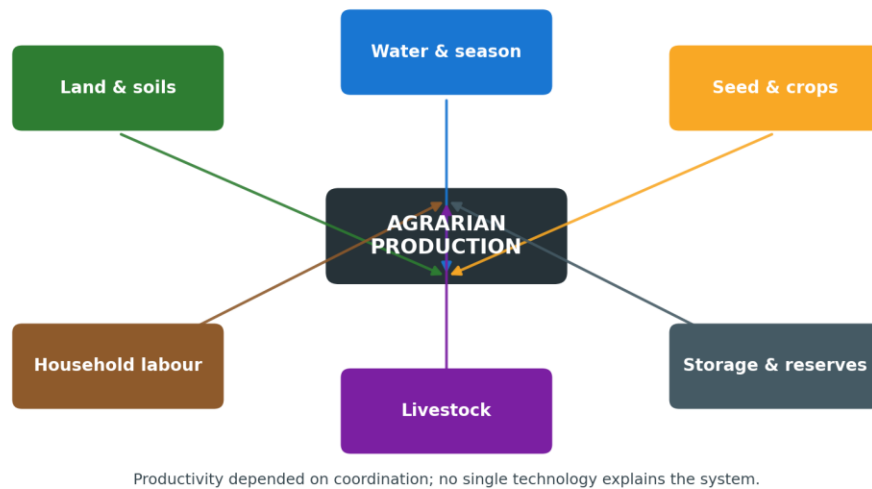
Figure 36 — Early historic agriculture as a coupled system

Figure 36 — Early historic agriculture as a coupled system: land, water, seed, labour, livestock and storage had to work together.

10.4 Rice was central, but the countryside was not a rice monoculture

Rice was exceptionally well suited to humid and seasonally inundated parts of the eastern Gangetic plain, and it appears prominently in the archaeological record. Yet the same record cautions against reducing the agrarian economy to rice alone. Wheat, barley, pulses and, in wider Ganga Plain sequences, millets, oilseeds and other useful plants demonstrate a more diversified crop repertoire. Different soils, elevations and moisture regimes would have favoured different combinations. A diversified system also spread risk: failure of one crop or season did not necessarily destroy the entire household food base (Pokharia et al. 2017; Singh 2004).

10.5 Two agricultural seasons increased both opportunity and labour demand

The coexistence of monsoon and winter crops at sites such as Chirand and Senuwar implies scheduling across more than one agricultural season. This was not simply a matter of sowing twice. Seed selection, field preparation, weeding, harvesting, threshing, drying and storage had to be coordinated with livestock care and domestic work. Double-season cultivation could increase total output and smooth food availability, but it also concentrated labour demands at particular moments. The household economy therefore depended upon temporal organisation as much as upon land area.

10.6 Pulses, oilseeds and minor crops mattered to resilience

Cereals dominate many historical narratives because they are easily linked to taxation and staple consumption, but archaeobotanical evidence reveals a broader agrarian portfolio. Pulses contributed protein and could be fitted into seasonal rotations; oilseeds and fibre crops added food, fuel, craft and exchange value; gathered fruits and wetland resources supplemented cultivation. The appearance and diversification of such crops across Iron Age and early historic contexts in the Ganga Plain is evidence for planned arable systems rather than a subsistence regime organised around one cereal (Pokharia et al. 2017).

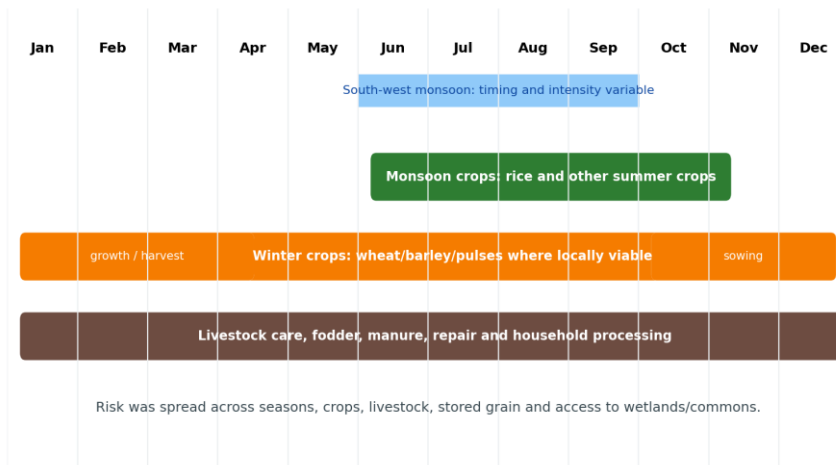
Figure 37 — A schematic annual agrarian calendar for the Middle Ganga plains

Figure 37 — Schematic annual agrarian calendar for the Middle Ganga plains. It shows seasonal coordination, not a fixed calendar for every locality.

10.7 Livestock linked cultivation, transport, food and wealth

Cattle, buffalo, sheep, goats and pigs had multiple economic roles. Bovids could provide traction, manure, milk and transport as well as meat; smaller stock converted vegetation and household waste into usable products and served as mobile stores of value. Archaeozoological evidence from Chirand shows a mixed domestic and wild animal economy, while early texts routinely place cattle-keeping alongside farming. Rural production should therefore be modelled as agro-pastoral rather than as crop cultivation separated from animal management.

10.8 Iron tools enabled some tasks but did not cause agriculture by themselves

Iron axes, sickles, hoes and plough-related implements could improve woodland clearance, harvesting and cultivation, and their wider availability formed part of the technological background to early historic expansion. But the older “iron caused the second urbanisation” model is too mechanical. Farming had existed long before widespread iron; productivity depended equally on seed systems, labour, soil, water, livestock and social organisation. Iron should be treated as one enabling element in a coupled agrarian system, not as a single trigger (Sharma 1983; Thapar 1999; Allchin 1995).

10.9 Floodplains offered fertility and danger together

The north Bihar plain was not a stable agricultural platform. Natural levees, backswamps, abandoned channels, wetlands and younger alluvial surfaces created sharply different field conditions over short distances. Flood deposition could renew soil nutrients or bury crops and settlements; channel migration could improve one locality while damaging another. Chapter 5 showed why this geomorphic dynamism matters archaeologically. For farmers it also meant that land quality was historical: the productive value of a plot depended upon elevation, drainage, sediment and the recent behaviour of rivers.

10.10 Rainfall was fundamental; large irrigation systems must not be invented

The monsoon provided the principal water regime for much of the eastern Gangetic plain, supplemented locally by floodwater, ponds, wells, channels and stored water. The Arthaśāstra devotes detailed attention to rainfall, land types and irrigation works, showing the conceptual importance of water management in later

statecraft (Bhattacharya 1978). That evidence should not be transformed into a claim that Vaishali, Mithila or Anga possessed a uniform state-built canal network in the earlier period. Where local archaeological or inscriptional proof is absent, the responsible formulation is that irrigation and water control were possible at several scales but remain unevenly documented.

10.11 Water management operated at household, community and political scales

Even without monumental canals, agrarian water management could involve field bunds, drainage, use of natural depressions, ponds, wells and maintenance of local channels. Some forms required only household labour; others demanded cooperation among neighbours or intervention by political authorities. The social history of irrigation is therefore not simply a technical question. Access to water could magnify inequality when households differed in labour, livestock, location or political influence. Conversely, collective maintenance could bind a settlement together through shared dependence on infrastructure.

10.12 The Kūṭadanta Sutta links seed, cattle and public order

A striking early Buddhist political-economic narrative appears in DN 5, the Kūṭadanta Sutta. Faced with disorder, the king is advised not merely to punish or levy fresh taxes but to provide food and seed-grain to those engaged in farming and cattle-keeping, capital to traders, and food and wages to government servants. The passage is not a royal budget from historical Magadha, yet it reveals a social imagination in which agrarian inputs, livelihoods, revenue and political stability are explicitly connected (Walshe 1995, DN 5). It is especially valuable because it treats cultivators as economic actors whose productive capacity affects the wider state.

10.13 The household was the basic productive institution, but households were unequal

Agricultural production normally required coordinated household labour across seasons: field work, livestock care, food processing, fuel collection, storage, repair and childcare. The category *gahapati* in Pāli literature could denote the master of a household and, in many contexts, a person controlling substantial resources. It should not be translated automatically as “peasant” or “landlord” in every occurrence. The term is historically useful precisely because it shows that household authority and economic resources could be joined, while the size and wealth of such households varied greatly (Chakravarti 1987).

10.14 Control over land and labour created rural differentiation

Early historic rural society was not economically level. Some households possessed more land, cattle, seed, storage and labour than others. Pāli sources distinguish wealthy householders from dependent workers and frequently mention *dāsa* and *kammakāra* relationships. Such categories do not supply a census, but they demonstrate that cultivation could involve unequal control over people and productive assets. Landless labourers, servants, hired workers, debtors and smaller cultivators must therefore remain visible in the reconstruction even when elite householders dominate named narratives (Sharma 1983; Chakravarti 1987).

10.15 Village leadership linked local society to wider authority

The village was also an administrative and social node. Later sources make village headmen and local officials highly visible, but early evidence is less systematic. It is safer to reconstruct functions than fixed offices: coordination of local obligations, communication with rulers, dispute mediation, organisation of

labour, and collection or transmission of dues all had to occur somehow as territorial states expanded. The degree to which these functions were hereditary, elected, appointed or informal probably varied. A single later administrative template should not be projected across all of Vajji, Anga and Mithila.

10.16 Taxation depended on production but cannot be assigned a universal rate

States and oligarchic polities required resources for officials, warfare, public works, courts and ritual or diplomatic expenditure. Agriculture therefore became an important base for appropriation. Yet the exact incidence of tax in early Mithila–Vajji–Anga cannot be reconstructed by importing the rates prescribed in later legal or statecraft texts. The Arthaśāstra distinguishes countryside revenues and agricultural dues from urban revenues, demonstrating a developed fiscal logic, but the text belongs to a different evidentiary layer (Bhattacharya 1978; Olivelle 2013). For the earlier period, the secure conclusion is that expanding political institutions required regular access to rural surplus, not that one universal percentage applied everywhere.

10.17 Surplus had several claims before it ever reached a market

A harvest did not divide neatly into “subsistence” and “surplus.” Seed for the next season, household food, fodder, payments to workers, social obligations, ritual gifts, taxes or dues, repayment of debts and emergency reserves could all claim shares. Only some produce entered exchange. This is why storage capacity and access to labour mattered so much. A household with the same gross harvest as its neighbour could have a very different economic position if its dependants, debts, livestock needs or political obligations were greater.

Figure 38 — Rural production and the competing claims on surplus

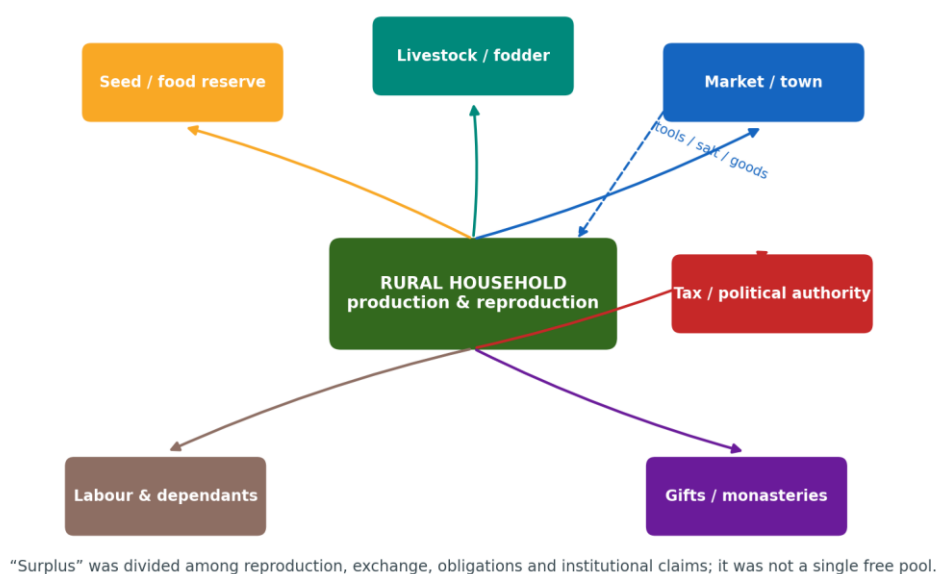


Figure 38 — Rural production and the competing claims on surplus: reproduction, reserves, labour, exchange, taxation and gifts drew on the same harvest.

10.18 Storage turned harvests into year-round security and bargaining power

Archaeological evidence for bins, pits, jars, granaries and processing areas varies by site, and not every storage feature can be tied to a specific social institution. Nonetheless, storage is fundamental to any seasonal cereal economy. It bridged the gap between harvests, preserved seed, buffered bad seasons and made taxation

or trade possible after the moment of harvest. Larger stores could also create power: households or institutions able to retain grain could lend, redistribute, sponsor dependants or survive price shocks more effectively than those living close to immediate consumption.

10.19 Rural and urban economies were mutually dependent

Vaishali and Champa could not have been sustained by urban crafts and commerce alone. Town populations required grain, vegetables, livestock products, fuel, timber and labour from surrounding countryside. In return, rural households gained access to specialised crafts, metal tools, salt, ornaments and larger markets. The *Arthaśāstra*'s distinction between city and countryside revenues and its provisions for agricultural goods entering towns belong to a later administrative text, but they illuminate a structural relationship also visible archaeologically: urbanisation increased the density and regularity of rural–urban flows (Bhattacharya 1978; Allchin 1995).

10.20 Vaishali must be understood with its agrarian hinterland

Excavations at Vaishali document a major early historic settlement sequence, fortification and material culture, but excavation inside an urban mound cannot by itself reconstruct the fields that fed the city (Sinha and Roy 1969). The agricultural history of Vaishali therefore requires a hinterland perspective: nearby villages, seasonal routes, cattle movement, wetlands and grain flows are analytically necessary even where they are archaeologically less visible. The city's political and religious institutions were ultimately supported by productive landscapes beyond its walls.

10.21 Chirand demonstrates long-term agrarian continuity within a riverine economy

Chirand is especially valuable because its long sequence links prehistoric farming to later cultural phases. Its earlier levels already show rice, wheat, barley, pulses, domestic animals, fishing and hunting. The lesson for early historic history is not that every later practice remained unchanged, but that urban-period agriculture rested on a deeply established regional knowledge of crops, animals and riverine resources. Rural transformation could therefore proceed through intensification and reorganisation of existing practices as well as through technological innovation.

10.22 Senuwar is a comparator for agricultural complexity, not a substitute for Mithila

Senuwar, south of the Ganga, provides unusually detailed evidence for crop history, animal use and long-term farming communities (Singh 2004). Its evidence helps identify mechanisms—multi-cropping, crop diversification, household processing, agro-pastoral integration—that are plausible in the wider Middle Ganga world. But Senuwar is not located in Vaishali, Anga or Nepal-side Mithila. Its role in this chapter is comparative: it demonstrates what archaeobotanical evidence can reveal and what a complex farming system could look like, while local claims still require local support.

10.23 Champa and Anga joined agrarian production to riverine exchange

Champa's early historic importance derived partly from its position within the Ganga-linked transport world. Excavations demonstrate a substantial fortified settlement with Northern Black Polished Ware and later occupation, but published archaeological summaries are much stronger on fortification, ceramics and structures than on a complete local agricultural dataset. It is reasonable to infer an agrarian hinterland

necessary to sustain the city, yet the crops, landholding patterns and tax arrangements of that hinterland should not be supplied from later texts as if directly excavated. Anga's rural economy must therefore be written through the conjunction of urban archaeology, regional agriculture and explicitly marked inference.

Figure 39 — Evidence control for the rural economy of Mithila-Vajji-Anga

Claim strength decreases when evidence is farther from the place, date or question being reconstructed.



Figure 39 — Evidence control for the rural economy of Mithila-Vajji-Anga: local archaeology has the strongest place-specific claim; more distant evidence requires stronger qualification.

10.24 Woodland, grazing and commons were part of agrarian production

Cultivation depended on resources outside cultivated plots. Grazing areas sustained cattle; wetlands supplied fish, reeds and fodder; woodland provided fuel, timber, fruits and materials. Expansion of fields could therefore create competition among agriculture, pasture and forest use rather than simply “conquer wilderness.” The Arthaśāstra’s later categories of productive countryside, pasture and protected landscapes remind us that agrarian states had to think about several land uses, but local boundaries and rights in early Mithila-Vajji-Anga remain poorly documented (Olivelle 2013).

10.25 Rural households managed recurrent risk rather than stable averages

Monsoon delay, excessive rain, flood, river migration, crop disease, livestock loss, conflict and insecurity could all disrupt production. The Kūṭadanta Sutta’s concern with unsafe roads, plundered villages and seed support makes clear that political disorder itself could become an agrarian risk. Households responded through crop diversity, livestock, storage, kin support, mobility and access to wetlands or markets. These mechanisms should not be romanticised as perfect resilience; repeated shocks could produce debt, dependence and loss of productive assets.

10.26 Gendered agricultural labour is under-recorded, not absent

Chapter 9 showed how textual archives disproportionately preserve elite, religious or exceptional women. The same bias affects agrarian history. Sowing, transplanting where practised, weeding, harvesting, threshing, winnowing, animal care, food processing, storage and fuel or fodder collection could involve women as well as men, but early sources rarely quantify the division of labour. A responsible social history therefore avoids

both extremes: it does not erase women from agriculture, and it does not project a modern ethnographic task-list unchanged into the first millennium BCE.

10.27 Servitude and hired labour were part of the countryside

Terms such as *dāsa* and *kammakāra* in early Buddhist literature show that dependent and hired labour existed alongside household production. The precise legal meanings varied by context and should not be flattened into a single modern category of “slave” or “wage labourer.” Economically, however, they demonstrate that some households could command labour beyond a narrow nuclear family. This matters for agriculture because land, cattle and seed could only generate output when sufficient labour was available at time-sensitive stages of the farming cycle (Chakravarti 1987; Sharma 1983).

10.28 Monasteries depended on rural surplus even when they did not farm

Buddhist and Jain renunciant institutions were embedded in agrarian economies. Monastics depended upon lay gifts of food, cloth, medicine and residences; donors’ ability to give was ultimately connected to household and market production. Wealthy urban patrons could mediate these flows, but grain and other primary products originated in rural landscapes. This relationship should not be simplified into a universal model of monastery-owned land for the early period. The secure point is institutional dependence on surplus and redistribution, not a claim that every monastery possessed agricultural estates.

10.29 Nepal-side Mithila requires explicit evidentiary restraint

For the early historic Tarai and Nepal-side Mithila, settlement archaeology has expanded, but evidence for specific field systems, household landholding and crop regimes remains uneven. The ecological continuity of the Gangetic foreland makes certain agrarian mechanisms plausible, while political and cultural connections make comparison necessary. Yet later Maithil tenancy, irrigation or caste arrangements cannot be back-projected into antiquity. Where direct archaeobotanical or inscriptional evidence is absent, this volume will state the gap rather than fill it with customary practice documented centuries later.

10.30 Conclusion: the rural economy was a network of production, risk and power

Early historic agriculture in Mithila, Vajji and Anga should be understood as a historically changing system linking crops, animals, water, labour, storage, exchange and political obligation. Its roots extended deep into earlier farming traditions, while urbanisation increased the scale and regularity of surplus flows. Rural households were unequal; *gahapatis*, dependants and workers did not occupy the same economic position. States and religious institutions depended upon countryside production, but the precise forms of taxation, irrigation and landholding varied and are not always locally recoverable. The most defensible reconstruction is therefore neither a self-sufficient village idyll nor a fully bureaucratised agrarian state imposed everywhere at once, but a mosaic of productive landscapes increasingly tied to towns, institutions and political power. Chapter 11 turns to the crafts and technologies that converted rural and urban raw materials into specialised goods.

Table 10.1 — Agricultural evidence, interpretive value and limits

Evidence base	What it can support	What it cannot prove alone
Chirand	Long sequence; rice, wheat, barley, pulses; domestic animals; fishing	Strong for regional farming history; does not by itself establish

Evidence base	What it can support	What it cannot prove alone
	and processing evidence.	Vaishali/Anga land tenure or tax rates.
Senuwar	Detailed crop, animal and farming evidence from Neolithic through later phases.	Excellent Middle Ganga comparator; geographically outside Mithila–Vajji–Anga proper.
Vaishali	Early historic urban sequence, fortification and material culture.	Demonstrates a major consuming/administrative centre; agricultural hinterland must be reconstructed cautiously.
Champa / Anga	Fortified early historic settlement and NBPW-related occupation.	Supports urban-riverine economy; local crop and tenure evidence is less complete in published summaries.
Early Buddhist texts	Farmers, cattle-keepers, gahapatis, dependants, taxes/revenue discourse; DN 5 links seed support to production.	Social and institutional vocabulary; literary/religious genres, not local farm surveys.
Arthaśāstra	Detailed land, rainfall, irrigation, rural revenue and state administration.	Powerful comparative model, but composite/late and not direct evidence for every early regional polity.

CHAPTER 11 — CRAFTS AND TECHNOLOGY

Craft history asks how knowledge, materials, labour and exchange were combined to make useful and valued objects. The archaeological record of Mithila, Vajji and Anga preserves pottery, metal tools, ornaments, beads, terracottas, bone and ivory objects, bricks and other durable remains, but it preserves wood, fibre, leather and many workshop installations much less reliably. The presence of a finished knife, bead or fine pot therefore cannot automatically be converted into proof of a local workshop. Conversely, the absence of textiles or carpentry debris cannot be treated as proof that spinning, weaving or woodworking were unimportant. This chapter reconstructs craft production by matching each claim to the evidence actually available at Chirand, Vaiśālī, Panda, Champa and related Middle Ganga sites, while using better-preserved comparator sites only to clarify technological possibilities rather than to fill local gaps (Sinha and Roy 1969; Verma 1971; Chakrabarti 2009).

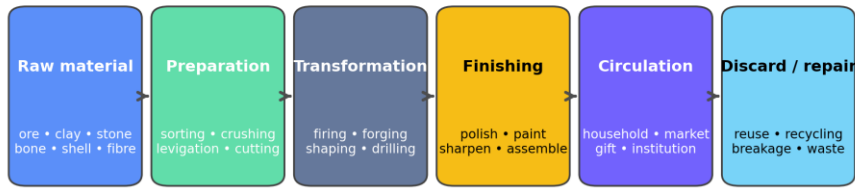
11.1 Technology was social knowledge, not a list of inventions

A technology is a sequence of learned actions: selecting material, preparing it, controlling heat or force, shaping the object, finishing it, maintaining tools and judging quality. These skills were transmitted through observation, apprenticeship and repeated practice. For early historic society, the most defensible questions are therefore not simply when iron, the potter's wheel or glass appeared, but who controlled particular techniques, how raw materials reached settlements, whether production occurred in households or specialist settings, and how finished goods circulated. Archaeology can sometimes recover this operational sequence, but only when production debris and installations survive alongside finished artefacts.

11.2 A finished object does not prove a workshop

This distinction is crucial for the present region. Excavations at Vaiśālī yielded pottery, terracotta and stone ornaments, metal objects and other manufactured goods, while Panda produced iron tools and weapons, semi-precious-stone beads, copper ornaments and ivory objects in different phases. Such finds securely establish use and circulation. Local manufacture becomes a stronger claim only when excavators recover raw material, blanks or unfinished pieces, specialised tools, moulds or crucibles, furnaces, slag, wasters or concentrations of production waste. In their absence, the object may have been made elsewhere and exchanged into the settlement (Sinha and Roy 1969; Archaeological Survey of India 1993–94).

CRAFT TECHNOLOGY IS A SEQUENCE OF DECISIONS, NOT A SINGLE OBJECT



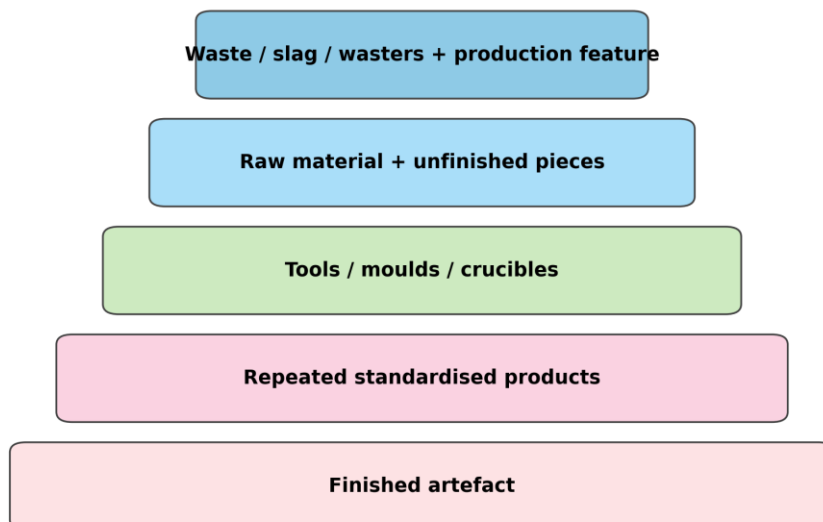
Workshop identification becomes strongest when several stages—raw material, unfinished pieces, tools, furnaces or slag, and waste—occur together.

Figure 40 — The craft production chain: raw material, preparation, transformation, finishing, circulation and repair/discard form a sequence of technological decisions.

11.3 Craft specialisation existed in degrees

Specialisation should not be imagined as a binary contrast between self-sufficient households and factory-like workshops. Some tasks could be seasonal household crafts; others required part-time specialists; still others demanded expensive pyrotechnology, trained drilling or polishing, or access to distant raw materials. Standardised products may suggest routinised skill, but standardisation alone does not reveal whether production was controlled by a state, guild, merchant, household or itinerant artisan. Comparative archaeology across early historic South Asia shows that craft production could be spatially dispersed even when towns created dense markets for specialist goods (Allchin 1995; Chakrabarti 2009).

FROM OBJECT PRESENCE TO WORKSHOP PROOF



Object presence proves use or circulation; workshop proof requires evidence from production stages.

Figure 41 — Evidence for local production becomes stronger when finished objects are joined by tools, raw material, unfinished pieces, waste and production features.

11.4 Pottery was the largest surviving craft archive

Ceramics dominate excavated assemblages because fired clay survives where baskets, wooden vessels and cloth decay. The Middle Ganga sequence includes black-and-red ware, black slipped ware, red and grey wares and, in the early historic horizon, Northern Black Polished Ware. Variation in fabric, firing, surface treatment, wall thickness and vessel form reflects technological choices. Yet a ceramic category is not equivalent to an ethnic group or single production centre. Similar wares could be made at multiple places, exchanged across regions, copied locally or produced to shared standards. The archaeological challenge is to distinguish style circulation from workshop organisation.

11.5 Northern Black Polished Ware reveals skill but not one centralised industry

NBPW required unusually careful clay preparation, forming, surface treatment and firing to create its characteristic fine fabric and lustrous surfaces. Its wide distribution makes it an important marker of intensified interregional interaction, but it should not be treated as the product of one royal industry or as a mechanical index of urban status. At Panda, the NBPW phase was accompanied by black slipped, grey, black and red wares; the assemblage therefore represents a ceramic economy with several production traditions operating together rather than one luxury ware replacing everyday pottery (Archaeological Survey of India 1993–94).

11.6 Pottery manufacture linked countryside resources to urban demand

Potters required clay sources, temper or other inclusions, water, fuel, drying space and firing facilities. Large settlements increased demand for cooking pots, storage jars, serving vessels, lamps, lids, ritual containers and construction ceramics. The resulting industry was therefore tied to the ecology around towns as much as to urban consumers. Even when a kiln has not been excavated, the quantity and diversity of ceramic vessels can indicate sustained production somewhere within the settlement's economic catchment. Where kiln wasters or firing installations are absent, however, the exact place of manufacture should remain open.

11.7 Iron working must be separated into smelting, smithing and use

Iron is often discussed as though every iron artefact records local metallurgy. In fact, ore smelting, bloom consolidation, forging, sharpening and repair are distinct stages that may occur at different places. The strongest evidence for primary smelting includes ore, furnaces and slag; smithing is indicated by hearths, hammer scale, slag and unfinished or repaired objects; finished tools alone establish use. Early iron in the Middle Ganga plain predates the full early historic urban phase at several sites, while Bihar sites including Chirand have iron in Black-and-Red-Ware contexts. This long chronology cautions against an 'iron revolution' in which urban crafts suddenly appear at one date (Chakrabarti 2009).

11.8 Panda shows a diversified iron-tool repertoire without proving local smelting

The NBPW phase at Panda in Samastipur produced iron knives, sickles, daggers and spearheads, together with fine pottery and beads. These objects reveal agricultural, domestic and martial uses of iron and show that iron had become embedded in daily and political economies. But the published summary does not, by

itself, document ore reduction or a smelting furnace at the site. The correct historical statement is therefore that Panda participated in a developed iron-using economy; whether every object was smelted and forged locally remains a separate archaeological question (Archaeological Survey of India 1993–94).

11.9 Copper and copper alloys occupied different technological niches

Copper did not disappear when iron spread. Hooks, earrings, rods, bangles, vessels and coins could exploit copper's malleability, appearance and resistance to corrosion. At Panda, a copper hook occurs in the Chalcolithic phase and copper earrings in a later urban horizon. Vaiśālī also yielded copper objects and ornaments. These finds illustrate technological coexistence: material choice depended on function, cost, social value and available skill. A stronger metal did not automatically replace a more workable or visually valued one.

11.10 Chirand preserves an exceptional tradition of bone and antler working

Chirand is indispensable because its early levels preserve a wide range of bone and antler tools—celts, scrapers, chisels, hammers, needles, points, borers, awls, diggers and arrowheads—as well as ornaments. Verma also reported unfinished implements, demonstrating production rather than mere consumption. This evidence belongs primarily to the Neolithic history treated in earlier chapters, but it establishes a deep regional repertoire of cutting, scraping, drilling, polishing and shaping organic materials. It would be unsafe to assume unchanged artisan lineages into the early historic period; the defensible continuity is technological possibility and long familiarity with animal-derived raw materials (Verma 1971).

11.11 Bone and ivory continued beside metals because materials were functionally different

Bone and ivory could be cut, polished, drilled and carved into points, handles, needles, ornaments, combs and small implements. Their continued use need not be explained simply as a cheap substitute for metal. Lightness, elasticity, colour, availability and suitability for fine carving made organic materials useful in their own right. Panda's later levels yielded ivory objects, while other early historic sites in the broader Ganga system show bone points and carved ivory. As with metal, finished pieces establish use; unfinished blanks and production debris are required before claiming a local ivory workshop.

11.12 Stone beads reveal both skill and long-distance material movement

Carnelian, agate, chalcedony, crystal and other semi-precious stones were transformed through chipping, grinding, drilling, heat treatment in some traditions and polishing. Their geological sources were unevenly distributed, so bead assemblages can signal exchange even when production occurred elsewhere. Vaiśālī and Panda yielded stone beads; their presence links consumers to wider raw-material and craft networks. Ethnoarchaeological studies of Indian beadmaking demonstrate how many specialised stages may lie behind a small finished bead and warn against identifying a workshop without manufacturing waste (Kenoyer, Vidale and Bhan 1991).

11.13 Terracotta beads and ornaments represent a different economy from rare stones

Terracotta beads, ear ornaments, bangles and pendants could be made from locally available clay with lower raw-material costs than carnelian, crystal or glass. Vaiśālī produced numerous terracotta ornaments alongside stone examples. This coexistence suggests differentiated consumption rather than a simple

evolution from cheap to expensive materials. Shape, finish and context mattered as much as raw material. Terracotta also demonstrates how craft categories overlapped: a potter or clay specialist could produce vessels, figurines, discs, toys, beads and architectural ceramics using related but not identical skills.

11.14 Glass was technologically demanding, but beads do not automatically prove glassmaking

Glass production required high-temperature pyrotechnology and control over silica, fluxes and colourants; bead manufacture could then involve winding, drawing, cutting or reheating pre-existing glass. Early historic eastern India participated in expanding glass-bead networks, but the distinction between making glass and making beads from glass is fundamental. A settlement with glass beads may have imported finished beads, imported glass cane or produced beads locally. Production is best demonstrated by rods, tubes, cullet, failed beads, furnaces or characteristic waste. The broader South Asian literature shows why manufacturing technique must be reconstructed from debris and context, not bead presence alone (Kanungo 2004; Kanungo 2021).

11.15 Shell working connected riverine interiors to distant ecological zones

Shell ornaments are valuable because raw material origin can differ sharply from the place of use. Freshwater shell was locally accessible in the riverine plains, while marine conch required longer-distance movement. Bangles, discs and ornaments therefore combined craft skill with exchange. Sawn shell, blanks or large quantities of working waste are stronger evidence for local manufacture than finished bangles. The presence of shell in inland towns belongs to the same history of circulation that moved semi-precious stone, metal and perhaps specialised glass products.

11.16 Textile technology is archaeologically underrepresented

Clothing, cordage, sacks, nets, mats and household textiles were fundamental to daily life, but plant and animal fibres survive poorly in humid alluvial environments. Spindle whorls, loom weights, needles, impressions and occasional mineralised fibres can provide indirect evidence, while texts attest the social importance of cloth and robe donation. The evidentiary rule must remain strict: a textual reference to cloth in early Buddhist society does not prove a specific loom technology at Vaiśālī, and the absence of preserved fabric does not prove that weaving was absent. Textile history therefore requires a combined archaeological and textual method with explicit uncertainty.

11.17 Spinning and weaving could cross household and specialist domains

Fibre preparation and spinning are tasks that can be embedded in household routines, while certain forms of weaving, dyeing or finishing may require dedicated skill and equipment. Production could therefore shift between domestic and specialist settings without leaving a clear architectural boundary. This matters for social history because craft specialisation is not synonymous with male workshop labour. Where the evidence does not identify the workers, gender should not be assigned automatically. Later ethnographic analogies may generate questions, but they cannot identify the gender of early historic spinners or weavers at a particular site.

11.18 Carpentry was essential precisely where archaeology is weakest

Posts, rafters, doors, carts, boats, agricultural implements, furniture, handles and storage structures required woodworking, yet tropical wood usually decays. Post-holes and impressions may preserve the

location of timber architecture while iron nails or clamps survive after the wood disappears. Riverine transport also presupposed boat-building and repair skills, but surviving boats are rare. A material history based only on durable artefacts therefore systematically underestimates carpenters and other workers in perishable media.

11.19 Brick and earthen construction were technologies of organised labour

Early historic settlements increasingly used burnt brick, rammed floors, plaster, drains, wells and other built features alongside timber and earth. Brick production required clay preparation, moulding, drying, fuel, firing and transport; construction required measurement and coordinated labour. At Vaiśālī, burnt-brick structures, floors, fortification and water-management features show sustained investment in built space. Such structures reveal technical organisation, but they do not by themselves tell us whether labour was *corvée*, hired, household-based or controlled by a corporate body (Sinha and Roy 1969).

11.20 Ring-wells and drains show ceramic engineering, but chronology matters

Ring-wells are composed of standardised fired ceramic rings fitted vertically to manage water or soakage in dense settlements. Their manufacture demanded moulding or forming large repeated units and successful firing. Yet ring-wells belong to different dates at different sites. At Panda, four ring-wells are specifically reported in the Kushana horizon, later than the NBPW phase. They must therefore not be backdated simply because ring-wells are broadly associated with early historic urbanism elsewhere (Archaeological Survey of India 1993–94).

11.21 Standardisation does not automatically imply state control

Repeated brick sizes, vessel forms, beads or metal objects can indicate shared conventions, templates, specialist training or market demand. They do not automatically demonstrate a royal department or guild. Production can become standardised through apprenticeship networks, consumer expectation, itinerant artisans or competition among workshops. The same caution applies to NBPW, coins and architectural units. Centralisation is a political-economic claim that requires evidence beyond formal similarity.

11.22 Workshops were workplaces, but not all craft labour occurred in workshops

Archaeologists often search for furnaces, kilns and concentrated waste because these features make production visible. Yet many crafts could occur in courtyards, house fronts, seasonal work areas or temporary shelters. Repair work might be mobile. Pottery could be fired beyond dense habitation because of smoke and fire risk. A town may therefore depend heavily on craft production while preserving only part of its productive landscape inside excavated trenches. Urban excavation must be connected to suburban and rural survey before craft geography can be reconstructed confidently.

11.23 Household production and specialist production were interconnected

Households consumed tools, pots, ornaments and cloth, but they could also produce thread, food-processing equipment, simple clay objects or repaired goods. Specialist artisans depended in turn on household demand, rural raw materials and food supplied by cultivators. This interdependence prevents a sharp analytical division between ‘craft economy’ and ‘rural economy’. Chapter 10 traced surplus from countryside to towns; craft history shows the reverse flow of tools, containers and valued goods back into rural life.

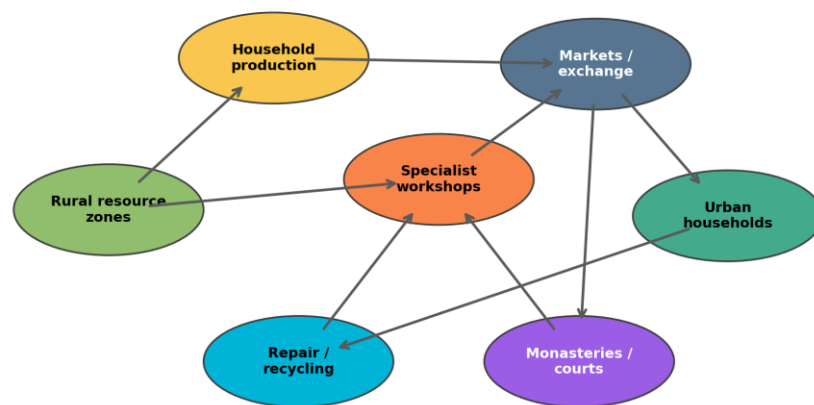
11.24 Gendered craft labour is often hidden by the archive

Craft histories can reproduce textual and archaeological bias by assigning visible tools to men and invisible fibre or household production to women. The evidence rarely supports such certainty. Women certainly participated in household production and textile work in many later South Asian contexts, but a direct early historic attribution requires local evidence. The safer reconstruction recognises that craft labour was organised through households, dependence, apprenticeship and specialist networks while leaving worker identity open where sources are silent.

11.25 Raw materials made crafts regional before finished goods reached markets

No major settlement possessed every needed raw material. Fuel, clay, timber, bone, fibres, stone, ores, shell and colouring agents came from different ecological zones. This distributed geography meant that craft production depended on transport and exchange before a finished object entered a market. River corridors were particularly important in the study region. The Ganga and its tributaries could move bulky materials and finished goods, linking Champa and other eastern centres to wider networks while also connecting north-bank settlements to crossing points and market towns.

CRAFT PRODUCTION AS A DISTRIBUTED REGIONAL NETWORK



Specialisation can be dispersed across households, mobile artisans, workshops and exchange nodes; urban demand does not require every craft to be produced inside the city wall.

Figure 42 — Craft production as a distributed regional network linking resources, households, specialist workshops, markets, urban consumers, institutions and repair/recycling.

11.26 Vaiśālī was a major consumer and craft environment, but workshop claims must remain specific

The Vaiśālī excavations document ceramics, terracottas, ornaments, metal objects, beads and substantial architecture across a long early historic sequence. The diversity is consistent with a large settlement in which specialist production, exchange and repair were important. Yet the published corpus also demonstrates the methodological difference between artefact diversity and manufacturing proof. Unless raw material, unfinished pieces, tools and waste are tied to a specific context, the safest conclusion is that Vaiśālī participated in extensive craft and exchange systems rather than that every recovered object was made inside the city (Sinha and Roy 1969).

11.27 Panda provides unusually useful evidence for technological coexistence

Panda's sequence brings several technologies into one stratigraphic narrative. The Chalcolithic phase included stone implements, a copper hook, bone arrowheads and pottery; the NBPW phase yielded finely prepared ceramics, iron knives, sickles, daggers and spearheads, and semi-precious-stone beads; later levels added brick construction, ring-wells, copper earrings and ivory objects. The sequence demonstrates coexistence and accumulation rather than simple replacement: stone, bone, copper, iron, clay and ivory remained useful in different technical roles (Archaeological Survey of India 1993–94).

11.28 Chirand shows why technological history requires the *longue durée*

Chirand's importance is not that one craft tradition remained unchanged for millennia, but that the site preserves successive technological repertoires across major cultural transitions. Its bone industry, ceramics, stone tools and later metals show repeated adaptation to new materials without erasing older skills immediately. This *longue durée* cautions against narratives in which a single innovation—copper, iron, wheel-made pottery or urban demand—suddenly transforms every productive practice. Technology accumulated, recombined and became socially reorganised over time.

11.29 Champa and Anga belonged to a craft-and-exchange corridor, but production locations remain unevenly known

Excavations at Champa establish a substantial early historic settlement with NBPW and other ceramics, fortification, structural investment and a material assemblage connected to wider exchange. Its position near the Ganga made it well placed to receive raw materials and distribute finished goods. Yet the published archaeological summaries do not justify turning Champa into a universal manufacturing centre for every craft found in Anga. The correct scale of claim is that urban demand, transport connectivity and recovered artefacts make craft production and exchange integral to Champa's economy, while the location and organisation of individual industries require craft-specific evidence (Archaeological Survey of India 1970–76).

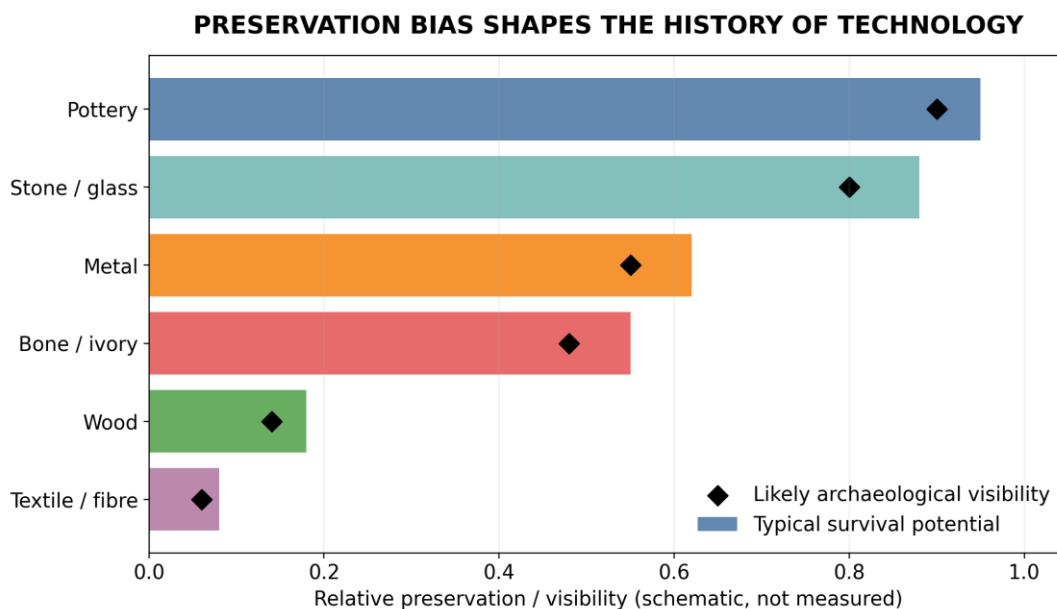


Figure 43 — Preservation bias: pottery and stone are much more visible archaeologically than wood, textiles and fibres. The bars are schematic, not measured values.

11.30 Nepal-side Mithila and conclusion: technological absence may be an archive problem

For early historic Nepal-side Mithila, archaeological publication remains uneven for many categories of workshop evidence. The absence of excavated furnaces, textile installations or bead workshops in a particular published record must therefore be distinguished from the absence of the craft itself. Across Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the strongest conclusion is that early historic technology formed a network of material knowledge linking households, specialists, rural resources, towns, markets and institutions. Pottery and brick survive abundantly; metal, stone, bone and glass survive selectively; wood and textiles are strongly underrepresented. A defensible craft history therefore ranks evidence by production stage and preservation potential, rather than filling silent parts of the record with assumed guilds, fixed artisan castes or state-controlled industries. Chapter 12 follows these objects beyond production into trade, merchants and markets.

Table 11.1 — Craft evidence, what it can establish, and what it cannot establish alone

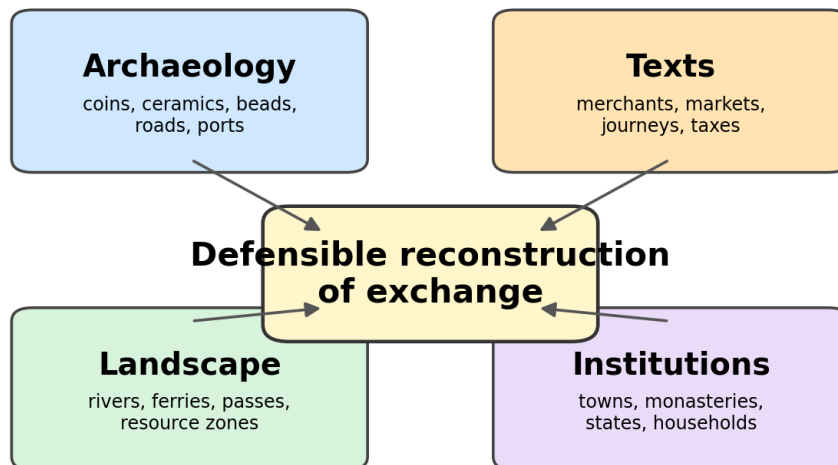
Evidence	Supports	Does not establish by itself
Pottery fabrics, forms, wasters, kilns	forming, firing, consumption; local manufacture where kilns/wasters occur	ethnicity, political identity, or one centralised production centre
Iron tools and weapons	use of iron and functional repertoire	local smelting without ore/furnace/slag; local smithing without smithing debris
Copper objects	continued use of copper/copper alloys	local casting or alloying without moulds, crucibles or waste
Beads of stone or glass	consumption, ornament, exchange and material connectivity	local beadmaking without blanks, drills, rods/tubes, cullet or failed pieces
Bone / ivory objects	use and fine working of organic materials	continuous artisan lineage or local workshop without unfinished pieces/waste
Brick, drains, ring-wells	construction skill, organised labour and water-management technology	a specific labour regime or universal chronology across sites
Text / iconographic reference to cloth or craft	social valuation, terminology and possible practices	a particular archaeological technique or workshop at a named settlement
Absence of wood or textiles	limits of preservation	absence of woodworking, weaving, cordage or baskets

Chapter 12 — Trade, Merchants and Markets

Chapter argument. Trade in early Mithila–Vajji–Āṅga is best reconstructed as a set of overlapping local, regional and long-distance exchanges rather than as one integrated “market economy.” Archaeology establishes movement of materials and objects; early Buddhist and Jain texts reveal categories of merchants, journeys and transactions; rivers and roads supplied the spatial infrastructure; and urban centres such as Vaiśālī and Campā concentrated demand, craft production, finance and redistribution. Each source illuminates a different scale, and none by itself proves traffic volume, prices, merchant institutions or political control.

12.1 Trade must be reconstructed from converging evidence

Commercial history is unusually vulnerable to overstatement because portable objects travel for many reasons. A bead at Vaiśālī may have arrived through exchange, gift, pilgrimage or personal mobility; a punch-marked coin may indicate monetised transaction, savings, tax payment or later deposition. Conversely, written accounts of merchants do not automatically identify excavated marketplaces. The strongest reconstruction therefore combines artefact provenance, distribution, settlement hierarchy, transport geography and texts. This approach follows the material-context emphasis of Allchin et al. (1995), Chakrabarti (2009) and Chakravarti (2001, 2020). It also prevents literary journeys from being converted into maps of measured trade. In this chapter “trade” is used broadly for repeated exchange beyond immediate household reciprocity, while “market” is reserved for institutionalised or recurrent places and occasions of transaction.



No single artefact, text, or place-name is sufficient by itself.

Figure 44 — Trade reconstruction is strongest when archaeology, texts, landscape and institutions converge.

12.2 Exchange was older than cities and broader than formal markets

The preceding chapters showed that stone, shell, copper, beads and specialised ceramics circulated before the full early historic urban horizon. Urbanisation intensified these flows, but did not create exchange from

nothing. Village households exchanged food, labour, livestock, tools and craft products; itinerant traders could link small settlements to larger centres; and urban demand drew surplus and raw materials from rural zones. This layered model is important because the archaeological visibility of a large town should not erase the less visible exchanges that sustained it. Chakravarti's work on early Indian commerce similarly cautions against reducing trade to luxury goods or distant voyages: everyday agrarian and craft commodities mattered at local and regional scales as well (Chakravarti 2020).

12.3 Agrarian surplus and commerce were mutually dependent

Urban merchants and craft specialists depended on food supplied by cultivators, herders, fishers and processors. Rural households in turn needed salt, metal implements, ornaments, selected ceramics and services that were not equally available in every locality. Trade was therefore embedded in the agrarian economy rather than opposed to it. The early Buddhist category *gahapati* could encompass substantial householders whose wealth rested on land, business or both; the *setṭhi* represented another form of urban economic prominence (Liu 2022). These categories should not be forced into modern classes, but they demonstrate that agricultural surplus, household wealth and commerce interacted. The rural–urban relationship was a circulation system, not a one-way extraction of food into towns.

12.4 Rivers were transport corridors, resource zones and risk environments

The Ganga and its tributaries offered lower-friction movement for bulky loads than many overland routes, especially in a floodplain where seasonal channels, marshes and monsoon damage could complicate roads. River transport could move grain, timber, pottery, stone, salt and people, while ferries connected road segments on opposite banks. Yet navigability varied by season and channel. A settlement near a river is therefore not automatically a “port.” The stronger inference is that river proximity increased transport options. For Campā, its location in the Bhagalpur Ganga corridor is central to understanding its commercial potential; for Vaiśālī, connections to Gandak-Ganga routes linked the republican centre with the wider Middle Ganga system.

12.5 Overland roads and caravan travel complemented river movement

Early Indian texts contain repeated images of caravan merchants, difficult roads, forests, river crossings and danger. The term *sārhavāha* is commonly used for a caravan leader, while *vaṇij* or *vāṇija* can denote a trader more generally. These terms indicate differentiated commercial roles, but they should not be treated as a fixed corporate hierarchy in every place. Overland routes were indispensable where rivers did not connect origin and destination directly, and they carried people, pack animals and high-value goods between towns and rural nodes. River and road should therefore be modelled as braided systems: goods could move by boat for one segment, ferry or cart for another, and caravan for a third.

12.6 Vaiśālī was a nodal urban market, not merely a political capital

Excavations at Vaiśālī yielded long sequences of ceramics, terracottas, beads, metal objects, coins and substantial architecture, indicating a large and materially diverse settlement (Sinha and Roy 1969). Such diversity is consistent with consumption, redistribution and specialised production. Buddhist texts also remember wealthy householders, public spaces and institutional patronage around Vesālī. Neither archaeology nor literature gives a recoverable price list or a street-by-street bazaar plan, but together they support the interpretation of Vaiśālī as a major nodal market within the northern Middle Ganga plain. Its

political importance would itself have generated demand from assemblies, visitors, retainers, religious communities and surrounding rural populations.

12.7 Campā joined political centrality to riverine commerce

Campā, capital of Aṅga, occupied a strategic position in the Ganga corridor near modern Bhagalpur. Excavation reports document early historic occupation with NBPW and other ceramic traditions, structural remains and fortification across successive seasons (ASI, Indian Archaeology — A Review, 1970–76). Early Buddhist geographical traditions also remember Campā as a major city among the eastern centres. Later Jātaka narratives associate merchants from Campā with long journeys, including sea-oriented stories. These literary memories are valuable evidence for Campā’s commercial reputation, but they are not direct shipping logs for the sixth century BCE. The secure conclusion is that Campā was a major urban node whose riverine location favoured exchange toward both the central Ganga basin and the east.

12.8 Mithilā, Vaiśālī and Aṅga belonged to overlapping corridors, not one fixed commercial territory

The historical regions named Mithilā/Videha, Vajji and Aṅga changed through time and should not be mapped as immutable economic provinces. Exchange crossed political frontiers. Roads from the north Bihar plain could connect Mithilā and Vaiśālī to the Ganga crossings; eastward river movement could reach the Aṅga-Bhagalpur corridor; southward connections joined Magadha and the uplands. The usefulness of a regional history lies precisely in following these connections without asserting a timeless integrated “Mithila–Vajji–Aṅga market.” Commercial geography was made by routes, seasonal accessibility, political security and demand, and these changed faster than cultural memory often suggests.

12.9 Merchant terminology reveals diversity rather than a single merchant class

Pāli sources distinguish several commercial and household roles. Vaṇij/vāṇija is a broad term for trader; sārthavāha is associated with caravan leadership; seṭṭhi denotes a wealthy urban economic notable; gahapati describes a substantial householder and can overlap with agricultural or commercial wealth. Older scholarship sometimes converted such terms directly into modern categories such as banker, guild president or capitalist. A safer reading follows the contexts in which each term appears. Liu (2022) stresses the importance of gahapati and seṭṭhi as prominent supporters in early Buddhist cities, while Chakravarti (2001, 2020) emphasises the diversity of merchants and market forms. The categories indicate economic stratification, but not one uniform occupational corporation.

12.10 Seṭṭhi wealth could combine finance, trade and civic influence

The seṭṭhi of Buddhist literature is frequently portrayed as a wealthy urban figure able to mobilise resources, lend, donate and interact with rulers or religious institutions. Some seṭṭhis may have been deeply involved in trade; others may have managed wealth through credit, property and household enterprises. Because the texts are narrative and normative, they do not give accounting archives. The historical value lies in the social recognition of concentrated private wealth and its capacity to support institutions. This matters for Vaiśālī and other cities because religious patronage, building, food supply and hospitality required mechanisms for converting commercial or landed resources into public expenditure.

12.11 Retail, periodic markets and itinerant exchange are archaeologically difficult to see

A market can disappear without leaving a monumental structure. Temporary stalls, baskets, cloth awnings and wooden counters preserve poorly; periodic markets may reuse open ground; hawkers and itinerant traders leave even less distinctive evidence. Consequently, the absence of an excavated “marketplace” at a site does not prove the absence of market exchange. Archaeologists instead infer commercial activity from concentrations of weights, coins, seals, storage, imported materials, craft waste, roads and spatial clustering. Even then, inference must remain probabilistic. The most visible archaeological markets are often the ones with durable architecture, which biases historical reconstruction toward large towns.

Markets existed at several scales

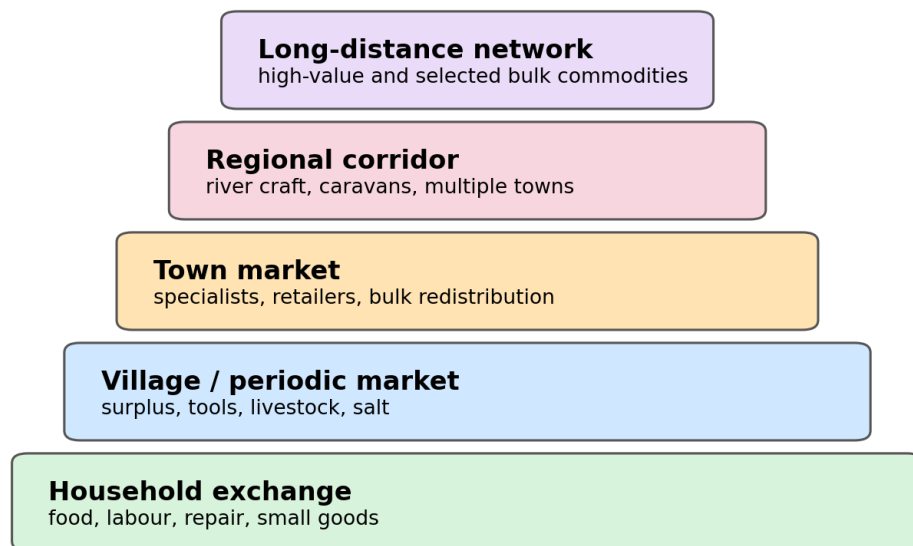


Figure 45 — Markets and exchange operated at several nested scales, from households to long-distance networks.

12.12 Political authorities could tax and regulate exchange without creating it

States and oligarchic polities had incentives to protect routes, control ferries, levy dues and monitor strategic commodities. Later normative texts such as the Arthaśāstra describe elaborate offices for tolls, markets and trade, but their institutional detail should not be projected wholesale onto earlier Vaiśālī or Campā. They are best used comparatively to show the kinds of commercial problems states might seek to manage. Early commerce did not depend on a central state to exist: household exchange, itinerant trade and river traffic could operate across political boundaries. Political control modified transaction costs and security rather than constituting the entire commercial system.

12.13 Everyday commodities mattered more than a luxury-only model allows

Archaeology naturally highlights durable and attractive objects—beads, fine pottery, metals and ornaments. Yet the bulk of everyday exchange probably included commodities that survive poorly or are difficult to trace to origin: grain, pulses, oilseeds, salt, fish products, ghee, timber, fibres, textiles, baskets, fodder and livestock. Chakravarti (2020) explicitly argues against reducing early Indian trade to exotic portable luxuries and restores agrarian and everyday goods to commercial history. For Mithila–Vajji–Anga

this is especially important because floodplain agriculture and river transport could sustain movement of bulky staples even when archaeology records only the containers or coins associated with transactions.

12.14 Salt was a strategic necessity even where its routes are hard to reconstruct

Humans and livestock require salt, yet the alluvial plains did not possess equally distributed salt sources. Salt therefore had to move through exchange networks from production zones or redistribution centres. Direct archaeological identification of salt trade is difficult because the commodity dissolves and ordinary containers are rarely diagnostic. Historical reconstruction must therefore distinguish ecological necessity from specific route claims. We can infer that salt exchange was indispensable; we cannot assign every settlement to a named salt route without evidence.

12.15 Textiles were major commodities but leave a weak archaeological signature

Spindle whorls, needles, impressions and occasional fibre remains attest textile production, while literary sources repeatedly value cloth. Finished textiles, however, decay in humid alluvial settings and can travel without leaving trace. This creates a major imbalance: ceramic trade is archaeologically visible, textile trade often textual. Cotton and other fibres could move as raw material, yarn or finished cloth, and dyeing/finishing might occur at different stages. Because the evidence for specific early textiles of Mithila, Vaiśālī or Aṅga is fragmentary, the chapter avoids assigning later regional textile reputations to the first millennium BCE.

12.16 Beads, stone and metals reveal long-distance material circulation

Carnelian, agate, crystal, glass, copper and other non-local materials are among the clearest indicators that early settlements were connected beyond their immediate resource zones. The crucial question is whether a finished object was imported or made locally from imported raw material. Workshop waste, unfinished pieces, drilling debris and production tools can answer that question where preserved. Without such evidence, distribution proves movement but not its organisational form. The craft networks discussed in Chapter 11 therefore connect directly to commerce: production and trade were successive stages in one material chain.

12.17 NBPW distribution records connectivity but not a single commercial system

Northern Black Polished Ware is widely distributed across early historic northern India and beyond. Its fine fabric and distinctive surface make it useful for relative chronology and inter-site comparison. Some studies interpret its distribution as evidence of trade, and long-distance movement of vessels or technological knowledge is certainly plausible. But NBPW should not be treated as a map of one state-controlled market or as an automatic marker of elite ownership at every site. Vessels could circulate through trade, gifting, mobility or imitation. Its value for this chapter lies in demonstrating wide material connectivity during the urbanising centuries.

12.18 Punch-marked coins expanded transactional possibilities but did not replace non-monetary exchange

Silver and copper punch-marked coins occur across the Middle Ganga world and are closely associated with the early historic urban horizon. Coins made value more divisible, portable and countable and could

facilitate taxation, wages, credit settlement and trade. Yet coin presence does not mean every transaction was monetised. Barter, payments in kind, reciprocal obligations and commodity money could coexist. Hoards may represent savings or crisis deposition rather than ordinary market circulation. Vaiśālī's coin finds therefore demonstrate participation in monetised networks, but they do not provide a measurable “money supply” for the city.

12.19 Weights, measures and standardisation lowered transaction uncertainty

Commerce becomes easier when buyers and sellers share conventions for quantity and value. Archaeological weights, recurring vessel capacities and standardised coin forms can indicate attempts to make transactions comparable. But standardisation can emerge through craft practice and custom as well as state regulation. The absence of preserved weights at a particular site likewise cannot prove that measurement was absent. In a region where grain, metals and other divisible goods circulated, some agreed systems of counting and weighing were necessary; the historical question is how far they were local, regional or politically enforced.

12.20 Credit and debt extended exchange beyond immediate payment

Narrative and normative texts from early India refer to loans, debt, interest, sureties and wealthy financiers. Such practices are plausible in urban and mercantile settings because caravans and bulk trade require capital before sale. Yet local documentation for Vaiśālī and Campā is not an archive of contracts. Credit should therefore be treated as a systemic possibility strongly supported by wider textual evidence, not as a quantified local institution. The *ṣeṭṭhi* is especially relevant because concentrated wealth could finance commercial journeys, household enterprises or religious patronage, linking finance to both trade and public life.

Commercial roles formed networks rather than a single “merchant class”

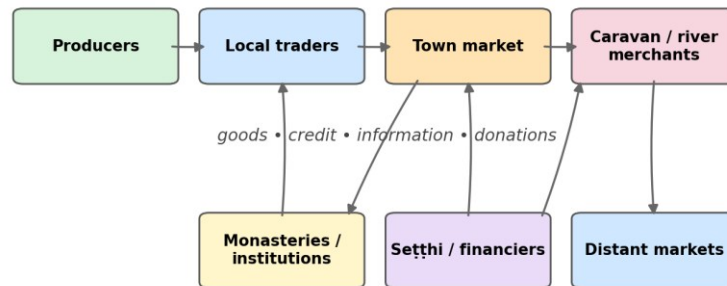


Figure 46 — Commercial roles formed a network of producers, traders, financiers, carriers, markets and institutions rather than one homogeneous merchant class.

12.21 Guild terminology requires chronological discipline

The Sanskrit *śreṇī* and related terms are often translated as “guild,” but corporate organisation varied by craft, place and period. Later inscriptions provide clearer evidence for organised merchant and artisan bodies than the earliest urban phase. Early Buddhist literature contains collective occupational categories and

prominent set this, but this does not justify reconstructing a fully developed guild bureaucracy at every sixth- or fifth-century BCE city. “Guild” is therefore used sparingly here. Where evidence shows collective organisation it should be described specifically; where it does not, merchant networks, craft groups or occupational communities are safer terms.

12.22 Monasteries were consumers, recipients and nodes of mobility

Buddhist monasteries required food, cloth, medicines, building materials and repairs. Donations from merchants and householders linked religious institutions to urban and rural economies. Monasteries also hosted mobile monks and pilgrims, creating information networks that overlapped with commercial routes. Ray’s work on later early historic India demonstrates how strongly monastic and commercial landscapes could intersect, though her Satavahana evidence cannot be simply transferred to Vajji or Aṅga (Ray 1986, 2003). For Vaiśālī, the historically secure point is that religious institutions generated recurring demand and patronage within an already mobile urban society.

12.23 Women participated in exchange as producers, property holders, patrons and consumers

Chapter 9 showed that women’s economic roles are under-recorded when history looks only for formally titled merchants. Textile production, food processing, household provisioning, market purchasing and small-scale exchange could all involve women. Named women such as Ambapālī demonstrate that women could control substantial resources and convert them into religious patronage. This does not establish equal access to commercial authority, but it prevents the merchant economy from being reconstructed as exclusively male. Gender analysis must include both visible patronage and the less visible labour that produced marketable goods.

12.24 Transport depended on labour that elite merchant narratives obscure

Boats, carts, pack animals and caravans required boatmen, drivers, handlers, porters, animal keepers, repair workers and guides. These occupations are essential to commercial history even when texts foreground the wealthy merchant who owns the cargo. River crossings also required ferrymen and local knowledge. A realistic commercial network therefore includes many layers of labour, from cultivators producing surplus to transport workers moving it and retailers distributing it. Their invisibility in literary narratives should not be mistaken for economic insignificance.

12.25 Security, seasonality and transaction costs shaped route choice

Merchants chose routes not only by distance but by navigability, monsoon timing, flood conditions, robbery risk, ferry availability, political boundaries and access to fodder and water. Early texts frequently imagine dangerous journeys, which should be read as evidence that mobility carried real risk even if individual stories are literary. Political peace could lower transaction costs; warfare or river avulsion could redirect traffic. Commercial geography was therefore dynamic. A route on a map is only a corridor of possibility unless the season, transport technology and security conditions are considered.

12.26 Archaeology rarely identifies a “market” from one feature

Market archaeology requires clusters of evidence: access routes, open or built trading spaces, storage, weights, seals, coin concentrations, diverse goods, craft production and repeated occupation. In early Gangetic towns, later rebuilding and dense occupation can erase earlier market surfaces. Open-air periodic

markets are particularly elusive. The correct archaeological question is therefore not “where is the bazaar?” but “what combinations of evidence indicate repeated exchange?” This evidence-chain approach is represented in Figure 44 and is deliberately stricter than identifying every coin-bearing mound as a marketplace.

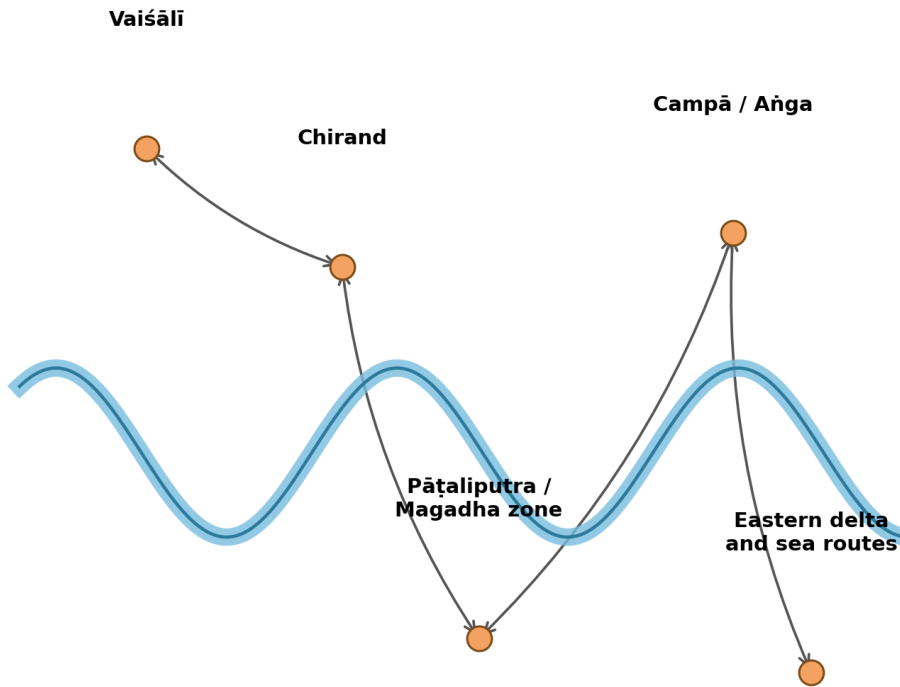
12.27 Oriup and Campā show the importance of the Bhagalpur corridor across long periods

Oriup, east of Campā, preserves earlier settlement evidence including Black-and-Red Ware and later cultural material (ASI 1966–67). Campā developed into a major early historic urban centre nearby. The two sites should not be collapsed into one continuous town, but together they show that the Bhagalpur-Ganga zone attracted settlement and exchange across multiple phases. Access to river transport, fertile alluvium and routes toward mineral and forest zones to the south and east would have made the corridor economically advantageous. The exact traffic volumes remain unknown, but the spatial setting supports repeated regional connectivity.

12.28 Nepal-side Mithila must be treated as a research frontier rather than filled by analogy

The early historic commercial archaeology of Nepal-side Mithila is less densely documented than the better-known sites of north Bihar and the central Ganga plain. Later Janakpur’s religious and market importance cannot be projected backward into the first millennium BCE without evidence. The appropriate method is comparative but explicit: northern routes through the Tarai and Himalayan foothills were possible, and trans-regional movement is historically plausible, but particular markets, merchant communities or commodity flows require archaeological or textual support. Absence of publication is not evidence of absence, yet it also cannot license invention.

Conceptual Ganga-Vajji-Aṅga exchange corridor



Schematic only: arrows indicate possible movement corridors, not measured traffic volumes or fixed political boundaries.

Figure 47 — Conceptual Ganga–Vajji–Aṅga exchange corridor; schematic, not a measured traffic map.

12.29 Eastern routes connected Aṅga to Bengal and eventually maritime worlds, but chronology matters

Campā's eastward position made it an important hinge between the Middle Ganga and the lower Ganga approaches. Later textual traditions remember voyages and merchants moving toward Suvaṇṇabhūmi, while

long-term archaeology demonstrates increasing eastern and maritime connectivity. Such evidence should not be compressed into a single sixth-century BCE “international trade route.” Riverine exchange toward Bengal could precede or differ from later organised maritime networks. Ray (2003) and Chakravarti (2020) show the importance of braided inland and maritime systems, but the chronology of each link must be established separately.

12.30 Conclusion: a networked economy without a timeless unified market

Early Mithila–Vajji–Anga participated in a networked economy generated by agrarian surplus, craft specialisation, mobile merchants, towns, rivers, roads, credit, coinage and institutional demand. Vaiśālī and Campā were major nodes, but their commercial worlds were not identical and their hinterlands shifted. Exchange operated at several scales—from household transactions and periodic rural markets to regional river corridors and selected long-distance journeys. The most important conclusion is methodological: connectivity does not prove political unity, imported goods do not prove local workshops, coins do not prove complete monetisation, and literary voyages do not yield measured trade statistics. Commercial history becomes stronger when each claim is matched to the evidence capable of supporting it.

Table 12.1 — Evidence for trade and the limits of inference

Evidence	What it can support	What it cannot prove alone	Regional relevance
Coins / hoards	Monetised transactions, storage of value, political or commercial circulation	Complete monetisation, prices, or exact transaction frequency	Vaiśālī and wider Middle Ganga networks
NBPW and other ceramics	Chronology, material connectivity, consumption patterns	A single trade organisation or state-controlled market	Vaiśālī, Campā, Chirand and associated sites
Beads / metals / shell	Movement of raw materials or finished goods	Where an object was manufactured without production evidence	Urban and craft sites across the region
Road / river geography	Possible corridors and transport advantages	Actual traffic volume or fixed routes in every season	Gandak–Ganga–Bhagalpur corridors
Buddhist / Jain narratives	Merchant categories, journeys, patronage and social attitudes	Measured trade statistics or exact contemporary route maps	Vesālī, Campā and wider eastern Gangetic world
Excavated storage / weights / seals	Repeated handling, measurement or administration of goods	A formal bazaar unless spatial context supports it	Potential market and institutional contexts

Chapter 13 — Vaishali as an Economic and Social Centre

Chapter argument. Vaiśālī should be understood neither as a literary city of splendour detached from archaeology nor as an excavated mound that can be interpreted without texts. Its historical importance lies in the convergence of a large early historic settlement, political institutions associated with the Licchavis and Vajji, a diversified material economy, regional routes, and unusually rich Buddhist and Jain memories. The evidence does not support a single census-like reconstruction of the city. Instead, it reveals an urban system in which residence, exchange, craft activity, political authority, religious institutions, agricultural provisioning and mobility were interdependent (Sinha and Roy 1969; Mishra 1962; Singh 2008).

13.1 An urban centre must be reconstructed from several evidence streams

The strongest reconstruction begins by keeping source types distinct. Excavation establishes structures, fortification phases, ceramics, coins, beads, terracottas, seals and other material remains. Buddhist and Jain texts preserve named people, institutions, journeys and social ideals, but they were transmitted for religious purposes rather than compiled as municipal surveys. Landscape history explains why routes, water, floodplain resources and agricultural hinterlands mattered. Finally, modern excavation reports and historical works are themselves products of particular scholarly moments. Yogendra Mishra's 1962 synthesis remains valuable for its collection of textual evidence on society, education and commerce, but its claims must be checked against archaeology and against the chronology of the sources it uses (Mishra 1962, 250–255; Sinha and Roy 1969).

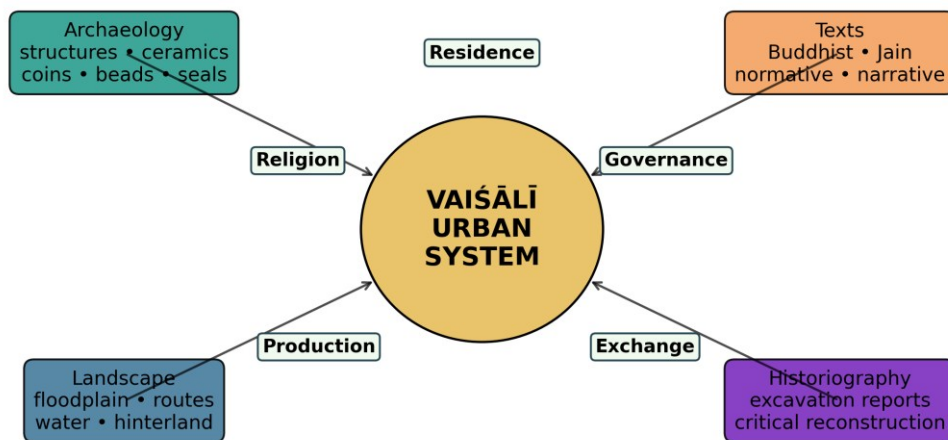


Figure 48 — Vaiśālī must be reconstructed by converging evidence, not by a single source.

13.2 Vaiśālī was a distributed urban landscape rather than a single compact monument

The archaeological site identified with ancient Vaiśālī extends across multiple mounds and localities around Basarh and adjacent areas. The so-called fortified or civic core is only one component of this wider landscape. Excavation and exploration have revealed occupational zones, structural remains and religious complexes distributed across the area rather than concentrated in one surviving “city centre.” This matters

socially: different activities could occupy different sectors, and the archaeological visibility of one mound should not be mistaken for the full extent of urban life. UNESCO's tentative-list description likewise treats the ruins of Vaiśālī and nearby Kolhua as component properties with different archaeological remains and chronologies (Sinha and Roy 1969; UNESCO World Heritage Centre 2010).

13.3 The city is an archaeological palimpsest

Vaiśālī was occupied and reworked over many centuries. Early historic layers associated with NBPW and urban growth were followed by Mauryan monumentalisation and by later Śuṅga, Kuṣāṇa, Gupta and post-Gupta activity in different sectors. Consequently, the most visible ruins today are not necessarily the structures most relevant to the sixth- and fifth-century BCE social economy. A stupa, pillar, monastery or later brick complex can dominate the modern landscape while earlier deposits remain buried below, truncated by later construction or preserved elsewhere. Historical interpretation therefore has to separate the chronology of an object from the prestige of the tradition attached to it (Sinha and Roy 1969; UNESCO World Heritage Centre 2010).

13.4 NBPW belongs to a wider urban transformation, not to a uniquely Vaiśālīan culture

Northern Black Polished Ware is a major chronological and interregional marker in the archaeology of the middle Ganga plain. Its presence at Vaiśālī places the site within the broader early historic urban horizon discussed in Chapter 6. Fine ceramics, however, do not by themselves prove courtly luxury, a specific political constitution or a particular ethnic community. Their significance lies in association with settlement growth, diverse consumption, iron use, coinage, craft products and expanding networks across many sites. Vaiśālī's urbanity must therefore be demonstrated by an assemblage of evidence rather than by the presence of one diagnostic ware (Allchin et al. 1995; Chakrabarti 2009; Singh 2008).

13.5 Fortification records investment and boundary-making, not democratic equality

Ramparts and fortified sectors show collective investment in defence, enclosure and the organisation of space. They may also signal competition among early states and oligarchic polities. Yet fortification cannot tell us who voted, who was excluded from assemblies, or how resources for construction were mobilised. The familiar description of Vaiśālī as a “republic” belongs to a modern vocabulary used to translate ancient gaṇa-saṅgha institutions. Such terminology can be analytically useful only if it does not turn an elite political order into a claim of universal civic equality. The built boundary of the city and the social boundaries of participation are different historical problems (Sinha and Roy 1969; Singh 2008).

13.6 Floodplain geography connected Vaiśālī to movement and exchange

Vaiśālī's location in north Bihar placed it within a riverine and overland landscape linking the middle Ganga with the north. Rivers reduced the cost of moving bulky commodities, while roads and seasonal tracks linked towns, villages, ferry points and political centres. Mishra reconstructed routes from literary references, including connections between Vaiśālī and Rājagṛha and a northern route through settlements associated with Kosala and the Malla country. These route descriptions are useful for demonstrating remembered connectivity, but they cannot be converted into measured traffic volumes or fixed highways. Routes shifted with rivers, political conditions and seasons (Mishra 1962, 254–255; Chakravarti 2020).

13.7 The city depended on an agrarian hinterland

No large early historic settlement could survive from urban craft and trade alone. Grain, pulses, oilseeds, vegetables, fruit, dairy products, livestock, fuel and building materials had to move into the city from surrounding rural landscapes. Chapters 4 and 10 have shown that the middle Ganga economy was agriculturally diversified and strongly adapted to riverine seasonality. Vaiśālī's urban growth therefore presupposes networks of cultivators, herders, fishers, carriers and processors whose names rarely appear in elite narrative sources. The city's apparent wealth was ultimately tied to the productivity and risk management of households beyond the walls or core mounds (Sharma 1983; Singh 2008).

13.8 Urban provisioning was a logistical achievement

Food supply was not merely a background condition. A dense settlement created daily demand for cereals, cooked food, water, fodder, fuel and containers. Seasonal scarcity, flood disruption or route insecurity could quickly become urban problems. Archaeology rarely identifies a municipal grain system directly at Vaiśālī, so later administrative models should not be projected backward. What can be inferred is a recurring flow from rural producers and local markets into households, political establishments and religious communities. Storage facilities, pottery assemblages, transport technologies and market exchange formed parts of this provisioning system even when their institutional coordination cannot be reconstructed in detail (Sharma 1983; Allchin et al. 1995).

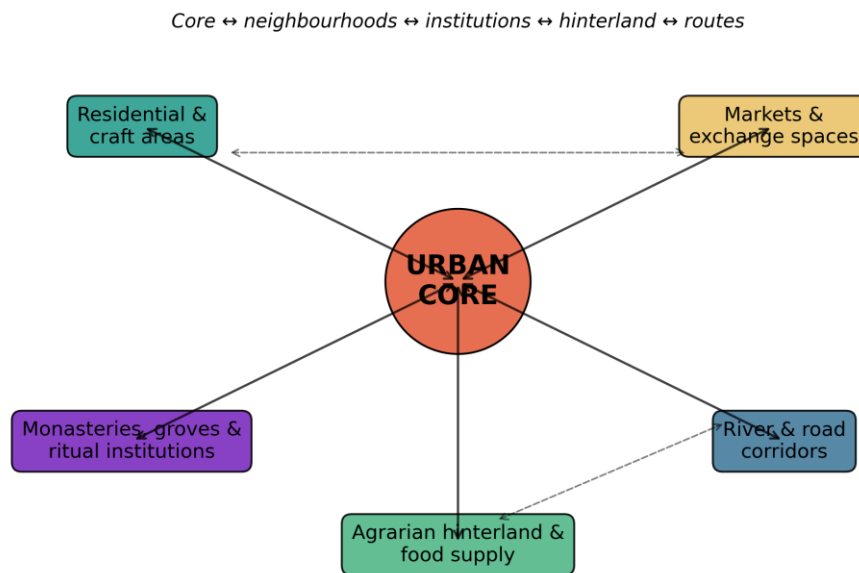


Figure 49 — Vaiśālī as an urban system linking civic core, neighbourhoods, institutions, hinterland and routes.

13.9 Markets linked household exchange to regional commerce

Chapter 12 distinguished household exchange, periodic markets, urban marketplaces and long-distance commercial networks. Vaiśālī likely participated at all these scales, but the archaeological signature of an open market can be slight. The city's material diversity—fine and coarse ceramics, ornaments, metals, beads, coins and other portable goods—is compatible with a vigorous exchange centre, especially when combined with its route position and textual reputation. Yet a concentration of traded objects does not identify the exact location of a bazaar, and literary praise of prosperity is not a price series. Market history has to be reconstructed from converging rather than singular indicators (Sinha and Roy 1969; Mishra 1962, 254–255).

13.10 Craft goods reveal consumption and specialisation, but not every workshop

Vaiśālī's excavated assemblages include categories associated with craft production and urban consumption: ceramics, terracottas, metal objects, beads, ornaments and seals. These finds indicate access to specialised products and to production networks. They do not automatically prove that every object was manufactured within the city. Chapter 11 established the stronger archaeological criteria for a workshop—raw materials, unfinished pieces, wasters, slag, crucibles, tools or production installations. Vaiśālī was certainly a major consumer and redistributor of craft goods; the precise balance between household production, local workshops and imported finished goods must remain object- and context-specific (Sinha and Roy 1969; Kenoyer, Vidale, and Bhan 1991).

13.11 Coins and seals illuminate transactions and administration without defining a modern market economy

Coins increased the portability and divisibility of value, while seals and sealings could participate in administration, ownership, authentication and institutional communication. Vaiśālī's long archaeological sequence has produced both monetary and sealing evidence. Their presence is important for the history of exchange and record-making, but neither category should be interpreted as proof that all transactions were monetised or that a fully bureaucratic municipality existed. Coin, credit, gift, payment in kind and reciprocal obligation could coexist. Seals may belong to different centuries and institutions, so each must be dated before being used to describe the early Vajjian city (Sinha and Roy 1969; Chakravarti 2020).

13.12 Water structures belonged to both practical and ritual landscapes

Tanks, wells and other water features served drinking, washing, craft activity, animals, ritual and institutional needs. The archaeological landscape around Vaiśālī and Kolhua includes tanks and later religious structures, while Buddhist traditions also attach significance to water places and groves. These remains should not be collapsed into a single early “municipal water system,” because their dates and functions vary. Their broader importance is that water management was indispensable in a populous alluvial settlement where monsoon excess and dry-season access posed different problems. Infrastructure was simultaneously technological, social and, in some contexts, sacred (UNESCO World Heritage Centre 2010; Sinha and Roy 1969).

13.13 Political assembly was one institution within a much larger urban society

The Vajjian conditions reported in the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta emphasise frequent assembly, collective meeting, respect for established practices, honour to elders, protection of women, reverence for shrines and support for arahants. These passages are among the most important textual windows onto the political culture associated with the Vajjians. They do not describe the whole population of Vaiśālī as members of one assembly. The city also contained householders, labourers, artisans, women, renunciants, visitors and dependent people whose political standing is not specified. Political history therefore has to be nested within social history rather than allowed to substitute for it (Walshe 1995, DN 16; Singh 2008).

13.14 Licchavi elites were visible because sources were interested in them

Buddhist texts repeatedly portray Licchavi nobles as conspicuous urban actors, sometimes emphasising their dress, vehicles, retinues, competitive prestige and collective action. Mishra used such passages to reconstruct an affluent and martial Licchavi elite and to discuss archery, elephant training, festivals and social

distinctions (Mishra 1962, 250–253). These descriptions are valuable evidence for elite ideals and literary memory, but they should not be treated as a representative sample of the city’s inhabitants. Archaeological inequality is more difficult to assign to named groups. The visibility of Licchavis in texts reflects both their political importance and the interests of the traditions that preserved them.

13.15 “Republic” is a political translation, not a description of social equality

Modern histories often celebrate Vaiśālī as an early republic or even as the world’s first democracy. The underlying evidence for collective political institutions is significant, but the modern labels can obscure oligarchic features and unequal access to power. Gaṇa and saṅgha polities could be organised through lineages or warrior elites while coexisting with servants, cultivators, artisans, merchants, women and other people without equivalent political voice. Volume II therefore uses “republic” only as a conventional shorthand when necessary and prefers the more precise language of Vajjian/Licchavi collective or oligarchic institutions. Social differentiation remains compatible with political deliberation among a restricted body (Singh 2008; Sharma 1983).

13.16 Householders and merchants connected domestic wealth to civic institutions

The Pāli category gahapati refers to a substantial householder and can carry implications of property, household authority and economic resources. Setṭhi and merchant terminology point to other forms of urban wealth and commercial specialisation. Vaiśālī’s social economy would have depended on such households for production, storage, patronage, credit and market demand. But these categories were not identical, and they should not be converted into modern occupational classes. Their importance lies in showing that urban power was not confined to formal political office: household resources could be mobilised through exchange, hospitality, gifts and religious donation (Liu 2022; Chakravarti 2020).

13.17 Ambapālī demonstrates the intersection of gender, property, prestige and patronage

The Mahāparinibbāna Sutta presents Ambapālī as a woman of sufficient status and resources to host the Buddha and his community and to donate her mango grove. The narrative famously contrasts her invitation with that of Licchavi nobles, making her an unusually visible non-Licchavi urban actor (Walshe 1995, DN 16). Her story should not be reduced either to romantic biography or to a claim that all women enjoyed comparable autonomy. It does, however, demonstrate that gendered urban institutions could coexist with significant female control of resources and public religious patronage. The grove itself also reveals how property on the urban edge could be converted into institutional space.

13.18 Women’s economic presence extended beyond exceptional named figures

Ambapālī survives because texts found her memorable; most women involved in the urban economy remain unnamed. Household provisioning, food processing, textile work, childcare, service, small-scale exchange and participation in family property were essential to city life even when archaeology cannot assign these activities by sex with certainty. Chapter 9 showed that early sources provide uneven windows onto female patrons, renunciants, mothers, servants and householders. Vaiśālī should therefore be analysed through both exceptional female agency and the largely invisible labour that sustained households and institutions. Absence of personal names is not evidence for absence from production or exchange (Liu 2022; Horner 1938–1966).

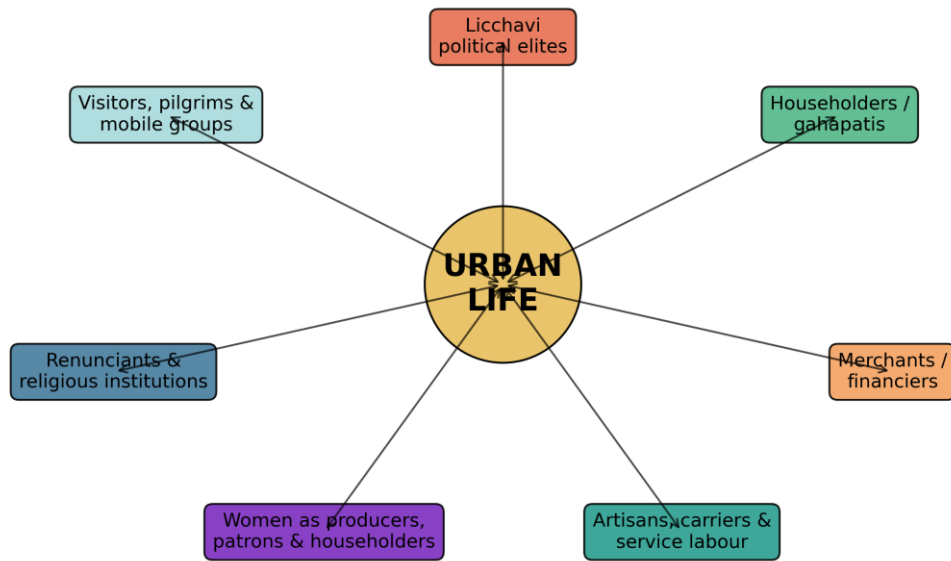


Figure 50 — The city's social economy depended on interacting groups, not a single civic elite.

13.19 Artisans, carriers and service workers formed the hidden infrastructure of urban prosperity

A prosperous city required potters, smiths, builders, carpenters, textile workers, food vendors, animal handlers, boatmen, cart drivers, porters, cleaners and many other workers. Some categories are visible through artefacts or texts; others leave little direct trace. Mishra's survey of Vajjian social conditions noted artisans and occupational groups, but his list was assembled from literary traditions and cannot be treated as an urban census (Mishra 1962, 250–251). The more defensible conclusion is structural: the material complexity of Vaiśālī could not have been produced or maintained without differentiated labour, much of it less visible than the activities of political and religious elites.

13.20 Religious institutions were economic consumers as well as sacred communities

Buddhist establishments required food, cloth, medicines, fuel, building materials, repair work and land or gardens. Donors moved resources from households and commercial fortunes into monastic use. Conversely, monasteries attracted visitors, teachers and pilgrims and could intensify demand around the urban fringe. This does not mean that a monastery functioned like a modern commercial corporation, nor should later epigraphic evidence be retrojected into the Buddha's lifetime. At Vaiśālī, the safest conclusion is that religious communities were embedded in the city's provisioning and patronage networks and therefore belonged to its social economy as well as its sacred history (Walshe 1995; Liu 2022).

13.21 Groves and monasteries show that the city extended beyond dense built-up space

Early Buddhist Vaiśālī is remembered through spaces such as the Mahāvana and Kūṭāgārasālā and through Ambapālī's mango grove. These names point to a city whose social geography included gardens, groves, monastic sites and routes beyond the densely occupied core. Archaeological remains at Kolhua include the later material history of Buddhist institutions in this landscape, with structures ranging from

Mauryan to post-Gupta periods (UNESCO World Heritage Centre 2010). The key urban point is not that every surviving structure dates to the Buddha, but that institutional and ritual spaces became durable parts of a wider Vaiśālī landscape.

13.22 Jain traditions make Vaiśālī part of a plural religious geography

Jain sources and later historical reconstructions connect Mahāvīra with the Vaiśālī–Videha region and preserve debates over Kundagrāma/Kundapura and related localities. Those traditions are crucial to the city’s religious history but require the same chronological discipline as Buddhist narratives. A remembered birthplace or lineage association does not by itself identify a modern village archaeologically. At the social level, however, the coexistence of Buddhist, Jain and Brahmanical actors within the wider region demonstrates that urban life was not organised around one exclusive religious community. Vaiśālī’s importance helped multiple traditions claim and remember it (Mishra 1962; Jaini 1979).

13.23 Education and debate were forms of urban social capital

Mishra assembled literary references to Licchavi education, archery and intellectual activity and argued that the region supported forms of training and learning (Mishra 1962, 253). Early Buddhist and Jain traditions likewise place teachers, renunciants, disputants and learned householders in urban and peri-urban settings. It would be anachronistic to imagine a university system comparable to later Nālandā. The better model is a plural ecology of learning: family training, elite martial education, religious instruction, memorisation, debate and itinerant teaching. Dense settlements increased the audience and patronage available to specialists in knowledge just as they did for artisans and merchants.

13.24 Traditions of epidemic and relief preserve social memory, not epidemiological statistics

The Ratana Sutta tradition associates Vesālī with severe affliction and ritual or religious intervention. Such narratives have often been retold as descriptions of plague, famine and civic crisis. They are important evidence for the remembered vulnerability of a dense settlement and for the social role attributed to religious specialists, but they cannot establish pathogen identity, mortality rates or a precise historical epidemic without independent evidence. The broader social-historical lesson is defensible: urban concentration depended on sanitation, water, food access and collective responses to crisis, and literary communities remembered Vaiśālī as a place where such vulnerability mattered (Khuddakapāṭha tradition; Liu 2022).

13.25 Festivals, display and consumption were part of the urban economy

Mishra’s discussion of Vajjian society cites literary descriptions of festivities, music, dress, ornaments and public display, especially among the Licchavis (Mishra 1962, 252–253). These passages cannot be treated as a calendar of municipal events or as evidence that every inhabitant shared elite consumption. They do, however, illuminate demand for textiles, jewellery, food, transport, musicianship and other services. Public prestige was economically productive: elite competition could sustain specialised makers and performers, while festivals brought people and commodities together. Consumption therefore belonged to the social economy rather than standing outside “serious” production and trade.

13.26 Visitors and pilgrims made population more fluid than a resident census would suggest

Vaiśālī's religious and political prominence drew monks, teachers, messengers, merchants, caravan travellers, delegations and later pilgrims. Such mobile populations consumed food and lodging, used roads and ferries, exchanged information and connected the city to other centres. Buddhist narratives of repeated journeys between Rājagṛha, Pāṭaligāma, Vaiśālī, Malla territories and other places are especially useful for reconstructing a world in which mobility was normal (Walshe 1995, DN 16). The texts do not allow traffic counts, but they show that the city's social composition was periodically enlarged by people who did not belong to its permanent resident population.

13.27 Regional connectivity helped make Vaiśālī important

Urban importance is relational. Vaiśālī occupied a position from which movement could connect the north Bihar plain to the Ganga and to routes toward Magadha, Kosala and the Himalayan foreland. Mishra's reconstruction of road and river connections is one early attempt to synthesise this geography from texts (Mishra 1962, 254–255). Modern economic history should add caution: routes were seasonal, political boundaries changed, and rivers migrated. Even so, the city's position within overlapping corridors helps explain why political assemblies, trade, religious institutions and mobile teachers could all concentrate there. Connectivity was a condition of urban centrality, not merely a consequence of it.

13.28 Kolhua and other satellite localities prevent a core-only history

The archaeological remains at Kolhua include the Aśokan pillar, stupas, a tank, monastic structures, shrines and other features representing a long Buddhist institutional history. UNESCO's tentative-list description dates the principal remains broadly from Mauryan through post-Gupta periods (UNESCO World Heritage Centre 2010). These later remains cannot simply be projected into the early Vajjian city, yet they are essential to understanding how the urban landscape expanded, was monumentalised and became a pilgrimage centre. A core-only model would miss this spatial and chronological transformation. Vaiśālī's history is the history of an urban region, not one fenced archaeological rectangle.

Broad sequence only: excavated sectors differ in chronology and preservation.



- 1** Antecedent settlement — site-specific pre-NBPW horizons
- 2** NBPW / early historic urban growth
- 3** Mauryan monumentalisation
- 4** Śuṅga-Kuṣāṇa reworking
- 5** Gupta and post-Gupta institutional landscape

Later monuments can dominate the visible landscape; earlier urban deposits may remain buried or disturbed.

Figure 51 — Vaiśālī is an archaeological palimpsest: visible monuments and early urban history are not the same layer.

13.29 The Second Buddhist Council belongs to the city's institutional afterlife

Buddhist tradition places the Second Council at Vesālī roughly a century after the Buddha's death, in connection with disputes over monastic practice. Whatever the exact historical reconstruction of the council, the tradition itself shows that Vaiśālī remained a major reference point in Buddhist institutional memory beyond the generation of the Buddha (Horner 1938–1966). This later importance should not be folded backward into the sixth or fifth century BCE without distinction. Instead, it demonstrates continuity of place-significance through changing institutions. The city that had been remembered as a Vajjian political and commercial centre was also reconstituted as a Buddhist institutional landscape.

13.30 Conclusion: centrality was produced by interdependence, not by one institution

Vaiśālī's economic and social centrality emerged from the interaction of a fertile hinterland, transport corridors, diversified craft consumption, markets, household wealth, political assembly, religious institutions, mobile populations and social differentiation. Archaeology confirms a substantial and long-lived urban settlement; texts illuminate actors and institutions that material remains cannot name; each source also has limits. The city was not socially equal because it possessed collective political institutions, nor was it prosperous simply because later texts praised its wealth. Its historical importance is better understood as a networked urban system whose political, economic, religious and domestic spheres continually depended upon one another. This framework prepares the comparison with Aṅga and Campā in Chapter 14.

Table 13.1 — Evidence for Vaiśālī as an economic and social centre, and limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	What it cannot prove alone	Chapter use
Fortifications and structural remains	Urban investment, enclosure, repeated construction	Political equality, universal citizenship, exact population	Urban scale and spatial organisation
NBPW and ceramic assemblages	Chronology, consumption diversity, inter-site comparison	Ethnicity, one market system, local production of every vessel	Early historic urban horizon
Coins, seals and sealings	Transactions, administration, authentication, institutional activity	Complete monetisation or one bureaucracy	Exchange and record-making
Beads, metals, terracottas and ornaments	Access to specialised goods and wider material networks	Local workshop location without production debris	Consumption and craft connectivity
Buddhist and Jain texts	Named actors, journeys, institutions, social and religious memory	Census, exact chronology for every episode, archaeological identification	Social actors and institutional landscape
Route and floodplain geography	Potential corridors, hinterland relations, transport constraints	Measured traffic volumes or permanent roads	Regional centrality
Monasteries, groves, tanks and stupas	Long institutional and ritual history	That all surviving remains belong to the	Urban-region and palimpsest model

Evidence	What it supports	What it cannot prove alone	Chapter use
	across the wider site	Vajjian period	
Modern historiography	Source collection, interpretive debates, history of scholarship	Independent primary proof when based on the same literary traditions	Critical comparison and claim control

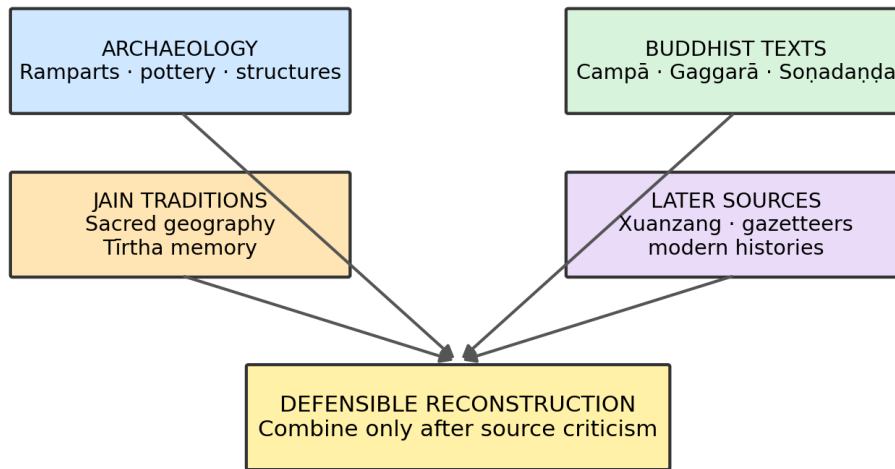
Chapter 14 — Anga and Champa

Chapter argument. Aṅga and its capital Campā must be reconstructed through a controlled combination of archaeology, early Buddhist and Jain textual traditions, river geography, and later historical testimony. Campā was not simply a literary “great city” or a modern place-name attached to Bhagalpur. Excavation near Nathnagar–Champanagar documents a fortified and repeatedly rebuilt settlement with Northern Black Polished Ware, ring-wells, coins, sealings, craft objects and structural remains. Texts add evidence for political incorporation, brahmanical endowment, religious debate, merchants, travellers and remembered long-distance exchange. The strongest history keeps these source types separate before asking where they converge.

14.1 Aṅga is a historical region, not a synonym for the modern Bhagalpur district

Early Sanskrit, Buddhist and Jain traditions use Aṅga as a regional and political name, but its boundaries shifted and cannot be mapped directly onto a modern district. The core association with the lower middle Ganga around Bhagalpur and Munger is strong, while claims about its maximum extent vary by source and period. For socio-economic history, the safer approach is to begin with securely associated places and routes rather than to draw a single timeless frontier. Campā was the principal urban focus of Aṅga in early historic literature, but the lives of cultivators, fishers, artisans and mobile traders extended beyond any capital’s walls. Modern Anga identity and Angika language history belong to later chapters and should not be projected backward as unchanged institutions.

ĀṆGA-CAMPĀ: DISTINCT EVIDENCE STREAMS



No single story, artefact, or modern place-name is sufficient by itself.

Figure 52 — Aṅga–Campā must be reconstructed from distinct evidence streams before they are combined.

14.2 The identification of ancient Campā with the Bhagalpur–Nathnagar landscape rests on converging evidence

The excavated “Champa mounds” lie near Nathnagar and Champanagar, west of central Bhagalpur. Archaeological Survey reports from 1968–69 onward recorded mud fortification, early pottery and later

structural phases in this zone (Indian Archaeology 1968–69: 4; 1970–71: 4–5). The resemblance between ancient and modern place-names is supportive but is not the whole case: the riverine setting, early historic occupation and literary geography strengthen the identification. At the same time, the exact limits of the ancient city remain a research question. A large archaeological landscape cannot be reduced to one mound, one modern neighbourhood, or one sacred enclosure.

14.3 Campā's river setting was an economic asset and an archaeological complication

Campā stood in a landscape shaped by the Ganga and subsidiary watercourses. River access lowered the cost of moving grain, timber, animals, pottery, stone and other bulky goods, and linked the city to both upstream and downstream settlements. Yet the same setting complicates archaeology: channels migrate, banks erode, low areas accumulate sediment and modern occupation obscures earlier surfaces. The city's riverine advantage therefore should not be turned into a claim that every commodity travelled by boat or that a stable ancient harbour has been located. What can be said securely is that Campā occupied an exceptionally favourable position for combining agricultural hinterland, river transport and eastern Ganga communication.

14.4 Fortification indicates collective investment, defence and boundary-making

Exploration and excavation revealed substantial mud ramparts. The 1970–71 season reported a second-phase rampart with a basal width of about fifteen metres and an extant height approaching five metres; later work identified an earlier rampart phase and associated brick and timber features (Indian Archaeology 1970–71: 4–5; 1971–72: 5). Such construction required organised labour and repeated maintenance. Fortification can signal insecurity, political competition, control over access, civic investment or elite authority, but it does not by itself reveal the constitutional form of the city. Nor should an excavated rampart be equated automatically with the walls described in later narrative texts.

CAMPĀ AS A RIVERINE URBAN SYSTEM — CONCEPTUAL, NOT A MEASURED MAP

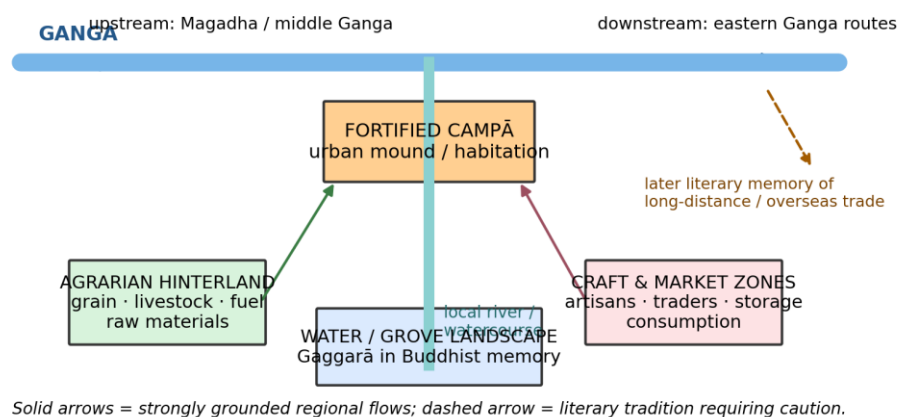


Figure 53 — Campā as a riverine urban system: conceptual relationships among city, Ganga corridor, hinterland and markets.

14.5 Northern Black Polished Ware places Campā within the wider early historic urban horizon

Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW) occurs in Campā's excavated deposits together with black-and-red, black and red wares. Its presence connects the site with the broader material transformation of the middle Ganga plain discussed in Chapter 6. NBPW is useful as a chronological and interregional marker, but it is not a badge of a single ethnic group, dynasty or "urban civilisation." At Campā it is significant because it occurs alongside fortification, ring-wells, structural remains, coins, beads, terracottas and other evidence of intensified occupation. The archaeological case for urbanism emerges from this bundle, not from one pottery type.

14.6 Excavation shows rebuilding rather than a single moment of urban foundation

The Champā excavations identified multiple rampart and construction phases. Work in 1972–73 distinguished structural periods associated with late NBPW, Kushan and Gupta horizons; later seasons exposed additional late-NBPW rooms, halls and drains (Indian Archaeology 1972–73: 6–7; 1975–76: 7–8). These sequences are crucial because literary traditions often imagine cities as if they were founded in a single act. Archaeology instead shows cumulative rebuilding, repair and reuse. The "city of Campā" was therefore a historical process. Its physical form changed even while the name and regional centrality could persist.

14.7 Ring-wells and drains document investment in dense settlement infrastructure

The 1970–71 excavations reported ring-wells within the habitation area, while later work encountered brick drains and substantial structural remains. Ring-wells can serve drainage, waste disposal, water management or other functions depending on context, so their interpretation must be specific rather than formulaic. At Campā their importance lies in demonstrating built investment below the scale of monumental fortification. Dense habitation creates recurring problems of water, refuse and circulation. Infrastructure therefore belongs to social and economic history: it required materials, specialised labour, maintenance and decisions about how space was organised.

14.8 Brick structures show differentiated interior space during the late-NBPW horizon

The 1975–76 season exposed late-NBPW structures comprising multiple rooms and a larger hall with brick-soling floors. Such architecture indicates planned interior spaces and durable construction, but room function cannot be assigned simply from shape. A hall need not be an assembly hall; a room need not be a shop. Artefact associations, access patterns and activity residues are required. The safest interpretation is that Campā contained substantial built environments in which domestic, administrative, commercial or craft functions may have overlapped. This is more informative than forcing every structure into a modern category.

SELECTED EXCAVATED HORIZONS AT CAMPĀ

schematic sequence — not an absolute dating chart

Lower deposits	Black-and-red and other wares
NBPW urban horizon	Mud ramparts · coins · ring-wells
Late NBPW structures	Brick floors · walls · rooms · drain
Kushan-Gupta phases	Successive rebuilding and occupation
Later historic / medieval	Long afterlife; later remains

Excavation shows sequence and rebuilding, not one precise founding date.

Figure 54 — Selected excavated horizons at Campā: sequence and rebuilding rather than a single founding moment.

14.9 Craft evidence reveals a diversified material economy

Excavation yielded terracotta plaques and figurines, stone and semi-precious-stone beads, bone points, iron and copper objects, ivory pieces, toy carts, seals and moulds. These finds reveal a city in which specialised objects circulated and multiple craft traditions were represented. They do not prove that every item was manufactured locally. Chapter 11 established the distinction between object presence and workshop evidence. At Campā that distinction is especially important because a commercial centre could import finished goods while also supporting local specialists. The archaeological question is therefore not “Was Campā a craft city?” but which stages of which production chains can be demonstrated on site.

14.10 Jewellery moulds provide unusually strong evidence for local manufacture

Among Campā’s most informative finds are stone moulds associated with jewellery production. The 1974–75 review noted moulds for ornaments and argued, on the basis of repeated discoveries across phases, that jewellery manufacture continued into the Gupta period (Indian Archaeology 1974–75: 8–9). Moulds move the inference beyond mere consumption because they represent a production tool. Even here, scale remains uncertain: the evidence does not tell us the number of workshops, their ownership, or whether artisans worked independently, for households, or under elite patronage. It does, however, support a durable tradition of skilled manufacture.

14.11 Iron, copper, bone and ivory show technological pluralism rather than a single “metal age”

Campā’s assemblage combines iron tools and weapons, copper objects and coins, bone implements and ivory artefacts. This mixture is typical of complex early historic technology. New materials did not simply replace older ones. Bone and ivory remained valuable for points, ornaments, dice and fine objects; copper retained roles in ornaments, vessels and currency; iron expanded possibilities in tools, construction and weaponry. The social history of technology lies in access to raw materials, skill, repair and market demand.

Material choice depended on cost, function, status and availability, not on a linear ladder from “primitive” to “advanced.”

14.12 Coins and sealings show portable value and administrative communication, not a fully monetised economy

Cast copper coins and terracotta sealings occur in Campā’s excavated contexts. Coins made value more portable and divisible, while sealings could be used in administration, storage, ownership or authentication. Their presence strengthens the picture of an urban centre with transactions and institutional communication. It does not mean that taxes, wages and market exchange were all paid in coin. Grain, labour obligations, gifts, credit and barter could coexist with money. The proportion of monetary to non-monetary exchange cannot be calculated from the survival of coins alone.

14.13 Campā depended on a productive rural hinterland

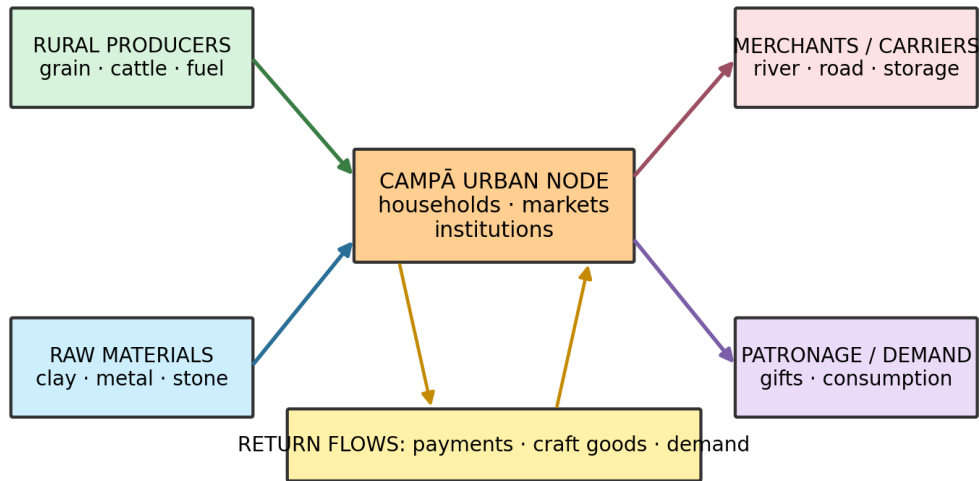
A fortified city of this scale required regular inflows of grain, pulses, oil, vegetables, dairy products, livestock, fodder, firewood, timber and clay. The Ganga plain around Campā offered fertile agricultural land but also flood risk and seasonal variation. Urban demand could encourage specialised production and market-oriented surplus, yet the archaeology does not permit a precise reconstruction of crop acreage, tenancy or prices. The key socio-economic point is interdependence: urban craft specialists and religious communities depended on rural producers, while villages gained access to manufactured goods, markets, credit and political institutions through the city.

14.14 Campā’s market function emerged from location, population and institutional demand

An urban market is not merely a named bazaar. It is a recurring concentration of buyers, sellers, carriers, storage, information and rules. Campā’s position on the Ganga, its fortification, craft assemblage, coins and textual reputation as a major city together make a strong case for substantial exchange activity. Religious visitors and political officials added demand to resident consumption. Periodic rural markets, neighbourhood exchange and larger urban marketplaces could all coexist. The evidence does not allow their exact locations to be mapped inside the ancient city.

CAMPĀ'S ECONOMY: RECIPROCAL FLOWS

goods · labour · value · patronage · information



Interdependence does not imply a fully monetised or centrally administered economy.

Figure 55 — Campā's economy depended on reciprocal flows among rural producers, urban households, merchants, crafts and institutions.

14.15 Buddhist texts preserve a vivid image of Campā as a city of householders, brahmins and visitors

The *Soṇadaṇḍa Sutta* (DN 4) places the Buddha at Campā on the bank of the Gaggārā lotus pond and describes the brahmin *Soṇadaṇḍa* living there on a royal grant from Bimbisāra. Other canonical passages remember the Buddha, *Sāriputta*, *Vaṅḡsa* and lay followers at Campā. These texts are valuable because they situate religious debate inside a socially differentiated urban setting of brahmins, householders, rulers, monks and lay communities. They are not censuses. Named figures survive because the texts had doctrinal and narrative reasons to remember them.

14.16 Literary memories of merchants and *Suvaṇṇabhūmi* should be used as evidence for imagined commercial horizons, not shipping statistics

Later Buddhist narrative traditions associate Campā's merchants with voyages toward *Suvaṇṇabhūmi*. Such stories are often cited to call Campā a maritime port. The geographical possibility of moving down the Ganga toward the sea is real, but a *Jātaka* is not a harbour ledger. The strongest formulation is therefore that eastern Indian literary memory associated Campā with ambitious long-distance trade and waterborne mobility. Direct archaeological proof of a specific Campā-to-Southeast-Asia shipping route in the early historic period is much thinner. The chapter keeps the literary horizon and the material evidence in dialogue without collapsing them.

14.17 The *Soṇadaṇḍa* endowment illuminates political economy after Aṅga's incorporation into Magadha

DN 4 states that *Soṇadaṇḍa* enjoyed Campā as a royal grant from King Bimbisāra, described as productive in grain, water, wood and living resources. Whatever the precise institutional form behind the Pāli description, the passage is important because it links political conquest, revenue assignment, agrarian

resources and brahmanical prestige. A city and its hinterland could be embedded in relationships of royal patronage as well as market exchange. The text should not be treated as a cadastral document, but it offers a rare window into how political control could be expressed economically after the loss of Aṅga's independence.

14.18 Gaggarā's lotus pond represents public landscape, memory and patronage

Buddhist tradition repeatedly locates the Buddha beside the Gaggarā-pokkharāṇī, a lotus pond associated with Queen Gaggarā and a grove of campaka trees. Whether every topographical detail can be matched to a modern waterbody is less important than the urban function implied by the tradition. Tanks and groves could supply water, shade, leisure, gathering space and locations for teachers outside dense habitation. A remembered royal woman as patron also introduces gender into public landscape. The pond is therefore useful socio-cultural evidence, provided literary memory is not mistaken for an excavated plan.

14.19 Campā was a node in the circulation of teachers and ideas

Canonical texts place multiple discourses and monastic episodes at Campā, including the Soṇadaṇḍa and Kandaraka settings and Vinaya material. Such repetition suggests that the city occupied a recognised position within routes of teaching and travel. Religious mobility depended on the same infrastructures as commerce: roads, ferries, food supply, lodging and donor households. Intellectual history is therefore inseparable from economic history. A city able to host large groups of mendicants and audiences needed surplus and social organisation, even though texts naturally emphasise doctrine rather than provisioning.

14.20 Vinaya traditions make Campā part of the institutional geography of the Buddhist Saṅgha

The Vinaya preserves episodes and formal decisions associated with Campā. These traditions show that the city was not merely a place where sermons happened; it also became part of the remembered institutional geography in which questions of monastic procedure were discussed and regulated. The historicity of every narrative detail must be evaluated separately, but the cumulative evidence marks Campā as an important eastern centre in Buddhist memory. Institutional gatherings also had material consequences: visiting monks required food, cloth, medicine and temporary or permanent accommodation.

14.21 Jain traditions add a different sacred map of Campā

Jain traditions connect Campā with Tīrthaṅkara memory, especially Vāsupūjya, and with the itineraries of later teachers. Modern Champapuri remains a major Jain sacred centre. These traditions are essential to the long cultural history of the place, but they have their own textual chronologies and theological purposes. They should not be used mechanically to date excavated layers. What they demonstrate securely is the durability of Campā/Champāpuri as a remembered sacred landscape across communities and centuries.

14.22 The city's prosperity depended on labour that elite texts rarely name

Rampart building, brick manufacture, transport, pottery production, food processing, cleaning, animal care, ferrying, carting and craft work required large amounts of labour. Elite and religious texts tend to preserve kings, brahmins, merchants and teachers more readily than porters, builders or dependent workers. Archaeology partly corrects that imbalance because walls, drains, tools and production debris embody work even when workers' names are lost. A socio-economic history of Campā must therefore treat labour as central rather than as background scenery.

14.23 Women participated in the urban economy even when the evidence names few of them

Women appear most visibly in textual memory as patrons, householders, courtesans, queens or renunciants, while archaeology rarely permits sexing everyday work. Yet the functioning of an early historic city depended on food preparation, textile production, childcare, retail, service, ritual and household management, many of which involved women. Queen Gaggārā's remembered association with a public pond is one unusual example of female patronage. The chapter avoids assigning every spindle whorl or domestic artefact to women, but it also avoids reproducing the textual silence as if women were economically absent.

14.24 Wealth, ritual prestige, political rank and labour status intersected without forming one simple hierarchy

Campā's texts and archaeology reveal several axes of inequality. Soṇadaṇḍa represents brahmanical prestige combined with a royal economic grant; merchants could possess substantial wealth without political sovereignty; rulers and officials controlled resources; artisans possessed specialised skills; dependent labourers had less autonomy. Gender and life stage further shaped access to property and institutions. These dimensions did not necessarily coincide. The city therefore reinforces the argument of Chapter 8: early social differentiation should not be reduced to a fully fixed later caste map.

14.25 Aṅga's incorporation into Magadha changed sovereignty without erasing Campā's urban importance

Political traditions remember rivalry between Aṅga and Magadha and the eventual annexation of Aṅga by Bimbisāra. By the setting of DN 4, Bimbisāra is clearly represented as exercising authority at Campā. Conquest altered fiscal and political relations, but cities do not disappear simply because sovereignty changes. Campā remained important enough to appear among the major cities remembered in Buddhist literature. This continuity is economically plausible: a conqueror had reason to preserve and appropriate a productive city, its revenue, routes and institutions.

14.26 Urban continuity after conquest was compatible with repeated physical transformation

Archaeological phases at Campā extend well beyond the early NBPW horizon into Kushan, Gupta and later periods. This long sequence warns against telling the city's history only through the sixth–fifth centuries BCE. The meaning of “Campā” changed as new buildings, religious communities and political systems appeared. At the same time, reuse of location and infrastructure could preserve regional centrality. Historical continuity here means repeated occupation and memory, not an unchanged urban form or social order.

14.27 Xuanzang's seventh-century description belongs to Campā's later afterlife, not to the Buddha's city

The Chinese pilgrim Xuanzang described the country and capital of Champā many centuries after the early historic period, noting a fertile landscape and Buddhist establishments. His account is valuable for the long history of the region and for showing that the place remained legible as an important centre. It cannot be projected backward to reconstruct the size, monastery count or street plan of Campā in the Buddha's lifetime. The chronological gap is itself historically useful: it demonstrates how sacred and urban geographies were reworked over time.

14.28 Later centres such as Vikramaśīlā belong to the same broad eastern Ganga corridor but not to early Campā's urban system

The Bhagalpur region later contained major institutions such as Vikramaśīlā. Their presence confirms the long strategic importance of the eastern Ganga corridor, but they should not be folded into an “ancient Campā complex” spanning a millennium. Each site has its own chronology, patronage and economic base. Regional history becomes stronger when connections are traced without erasing temporal difference. The river corridor persisted; the institutions occupying it changed.

14.29 Campā's relation to Mithilā was one of connectivity across the Ganga world, not territorial identity

A Jātaka tradition gives a conventional distance between Campā and Mithilā, while later geographical writing often places Mithilā primarily north of the Ganga and Aṅga to the south and east. Such evidence is useful for reconstructing perceived spatial relationships but not for drawing fixed modern-style borders. The two regions participated in overlapping exchange, pilgrimage and political networks. This volume therefore treats Mithilā and Aṅga as connected historical regions, not as interchangeable territories or as parts of a single timeless polity.

14.30 Conclusion: Campā was a fortified river city whose centrality was repeatedly remade

The strongest reconstruction of Campā rests on convergence. Archaeology documents fortification, NBPW occupation, ring-wells, rooms, drains, coins, sealings and specialised craft evidence. Buddhist texts remember a major city of brahmins, householders, rulers, teachers and travellers beside the Gaggara pond; Jain traditions preserve another sacred geography; later pilgrims document the site's continuing religious importance. River location linked Campā to hinterland production and wider routes. None of these sources alone proves the whole city. Together, critically separated and then recombined, they reveal Aṅga's capital as a durable socio-economic node whose political sovereignty, built form and cultural meanings changed over time.

Table 14.1 — Evidence for Aṅga and Campā, and limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Key references
Mud ramparts and structural phases	Fortification, organised construction, rebuilding and dense occupation	Exact political constitution or identity of builders	IAR 1968–69; 1970–71; 1971–72
NBPW and associated pottery	Early historic chronology and interregional material links	A single ethnicity, dynasty or exact foundation date	IAR 1968–69; 1971–72; Singh 2008
Ring-wells, drains, rooms and halls	Investment in urban infrastructure and durable built space	Specific room functions without activity evidence	IAR 1970–71; 1975–76
Jewellery moulds and craft objects	Local production for at least some specialised crafts	Scale, ownership or organisation of all workshops	IAR 1974–75; Prasad 1987
Coins and sealings	Portable value, transactions and	A fully monetised market economy	IAR 1970–71; 1972–73

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Key references
	institutional communication		
DN 4 and other Pāli texts	Campā as major city; Gaggarā landscape; royal grant; religious and social actors	A census, street plan, or exact archaeological dating	Walshe 1995; Malalasekera 1937–38
Jātaka trade narratives	Literary memory of ambitious long-distance commerce	Direct archaeological proof of a specific overseas shipping route	Jātaka traditions; Ray 2003
Jain sacred traditions	Long-term religious memory of Campā/Champāpuri	Date of excavated layers or literal continuity of every narrative detail	Jaini 1979
Xuanzang and later accounts	Later urban/religious afterlife and regional geography	Conditions in the Buddha's lifetime	Beal 1884

Chapter 15 — Early money and monetisation

Chapter argument. Early money in Mithilā, Vajji and Aṅga should be reconstructed as a layered history of measurement, portable value, coin manufacture, circulation, credit and institutional payment rather than as a simple transition from barter to cash. Silver punch-marked and copper coins widened the possibilities of exchange, taxation and saving, but their presence does not prove that all transactions were monetised. This chapter therefore combines numismatic evidence with archaeological context, urban systems, textual vocabulary and fiscal institutions while preserving the limits of each source. A key regional anchor is the Gorho Ghat hoard of fifty-eight silver punch-marked coins from the wider Bhagalpur–Aṅga corridor, set beside the urban monetary evidence of Vaiśālī and Campā.

15.1 Monetisation is not synonymous with the appearance of coins

The history of money begins before a society becomes fully or uniformly monetised. Money can function as a unit of account, a means of payment, a medium of exchange and a store of value, and these functions need not develop together. A silver piece accepted by weight may settle a large payment even where daily food exchange remains in kind. A coin may be used for taxes or merchant settlement while wages are partly paid in grain. Chapter 12 therefore treated punch-marked coins as one component of expanding exchange; this chapter asks the narrower and more difficult question of how far monetary practices penetrated the societies of Mithilā, Vajji and Aṅga. The central methodological rule is that coin finds prove the presence of portable monetary objects, not a universal cash economy. Monetisation must be reconstructed from the density, contexts and social uses of monetary evidence rather than declared from the first occurrence of coinage.

15.2 Before coinage, value could already be measured, transferred and owed

Coinage did not create exchange, debt or valuation from nothing. Agrarian households could reckon obligations in grain, livestock, labour days, metal, cloth or other customary units. Weighed metal could serve as a high-value transferable resource without being stamped as a coin, and standard weights could make such transfers more comparable. Gifts, bridewealth, fines, tribute, wages, loans and commercial credit all require ways of evaluating claims even when settlement is not made in minted currency. For early north India the evidence is uneven, but the analytical point is secure: a transition from “barter” to “money” is too simple. Several media and accounting conventions could coexist. The emergence of punch-marked coinage should therefore be understood as a new technology of standardised portable value inserted into older systems of measurement, obligation and exchange, not as the sudden birth of an economy.

15.3 Five evidence streams are needed to reconstruct early money

No single source can establish the extent of monetisation. Archaeological context tells us where coins, weights and hoards were deposited. Numismatic analysis examines metal, weight, manufacture, punch combinations and wear. Settlement archaeology identifies markets, craft zones, storage, roads and river access that made repeated exchange possible. Texts preserve monetary vocabulary, fines, prices, salaries and fiscal prescriptions, but their date and genre must be controlled. Institutional evidence concerns treasuries, taxation, merchant credit and official checking. Figure 56 formalises this separation. The strongest claim is made only when several streams converge. A coin from a disturbed layer cannot date the layer securely; a word such as *paṇa* in a normative text does not prove that every household used coins; and a hoard reveals accumulation but not the number of market transactions that produced it.

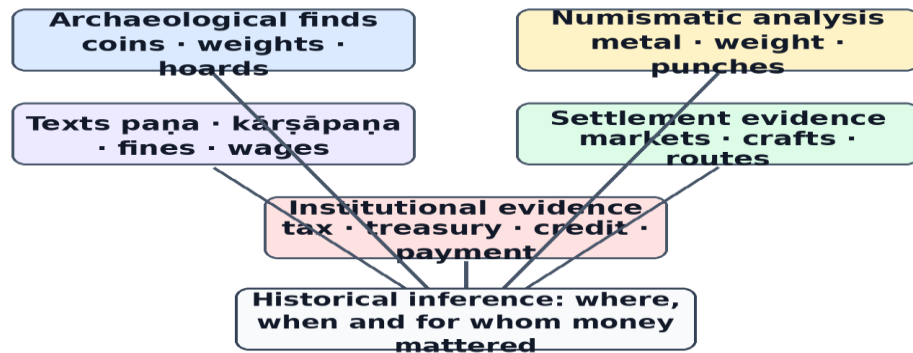
EARLY MONEY: DISTINCT EVIDENCE STREAMS

Figure 56 — Early money and monetisation: distinct evidence streams must be combined before historical inference.

15.4 The beginning of Indian coinage remains a chronological problem, not a single secure date

Punch-marked silver belongs to the formative early historic centuries of northern South Asia, but the exact beginning of the series has long been debated. Older scholarship often placed the first issues as early as the sixth century BCE, while later typological and archaeological studies have refined particular regional sequences and sometimes preferred more cautious chronologies. The safest formulation for this volume is that punch-marked money was established in the middle Ganga world during the later first millennium BCE and expanded substantially before and during the Mauryan period. Individual series must be dated by hoard composition, stratified context, overstriking, metrology and typological sequence rather than by attaching every anonymous punch-marked piece to a named ruler. This caution is especially necessary in Mithilā–Vajji–Aṅga, where many finds entered museums through hoards or chance discoveries rather than controlled excavation.

15.5 Punch-marked silver was manufactured by weight and repeated stamping rather than by a single engraved die

The characteristic technology of early punch-marked silver differs from later two-sided die-struck coinage. A piece of silver was cut or otherwise prepared, adjusted toward a weight standard, and marked with separate punches. The resulting flans can be irregular in outline because conformity of weight mattered more than perfect circularity. Several symbols could be impressed on one face and smaller marks could be added during circulation or checking. Mukherjee and Lee's study of Indian minting technology and the classifications of Allan, Agrawal and Rai, Rajgor, and Gupta and Hardaker show why manufacture itself is historical evidence: it implies access to silver, tools, skilled handling, standards and trusted marks. Figure 57 presents the object as a process from metal supply to manufacture, circulation, checking and eventual loss or hoard deposition.

PUNCH-MARKED SILVER: A MATERIAL PROCESS

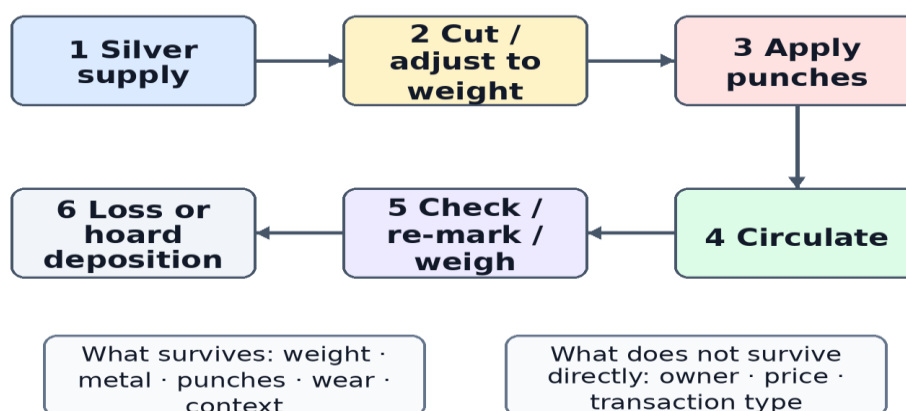


Figure 57 — A punch-marked silver coin as a material process from metal supply to deposition.

15.6 Symbols are evidence of control and classification, but their meanings cannot simply be read as names

Punch-marked coins are usually anepigraphic. Their suns, geometric forms, animals, trees, hills and composite devices do not normally spell out an issuing ruler in the way a later legend can. Numismatists therefore classify series through recurring combinations, punch order, weight, fabric, provenance and hoard association. Some symbols or symbol groups have been linked to political authorities or chronological series with varying degrees of confidence, but a direct equation between a symbol and a named dynasty is not automatically warranted. The history of early money must consequently distinguish secure physical observations from interpretive attribution. A repeated punch may demonstrate a shared monetary convention even when the person or institution that authorised it remains uncertain. This anonymity is itself important: acceptance could depend on standard, recognisable marks and testing practices rather than on a royal portrait or written name.

15.7 Weight standards made pieces comparable, but actual coins vary

The Magadha–Maurya *kārṣāpaṇa* series is commonly associated with a standard around thirty-two rattis, approximately 3.4 grams, and museum specimens frequently cluster near this value. Yet surviving coins do not all weigh exactly the same. Cutting, adjustment, alloy composition, wear, corrosion, clipping and later handling create variation, while earlier or regional series can follow different standards. Metrology is therefore powerful when applied statistically to groups, not when used to force every isolated piece into a predetermined denomination. A standard is a social convention expressed through tolerances. In practice, users could combine recognition of type with weighing and testing. For the historian, the important development is not numerical perfection but the creation of repeatable expectations that allowed strangers, officials and merchants to compare pieces of metal more quickly than if every payment began as an entirely unstandardised bullion transaction.

15.8 Repeated checking marks suggest that trust was maintained during circulation

Some punch-marked coins carry subsidiary or reverse marks interpreted in numismatic literature as later checking, bankers' or control marks. Their precise institutional attribution can be uncertain, but the material

fact of repeated marking is significant. Money does not circulate through state proclamation alone; users must be willing to accept the object. Where intrinsic metal value mattered, weight, touch, visual inspection and additional marks could help sustain confidence. Rechecking also shows that a coin had a biography after manufacture. The same silver piece might pass through many hands, be tested more than once and remain acceptable across political changes. This complicates attempts to derive political boundaries directly from coin distribution. A coin can outlive its issuer, cross a frontier, be revalidated locally or enter a hoard far from its point of manufacture.

15.9 Hoards are records of accumulation and interruption, not frozen samples of ordinary markets

A hoard is one of the richest but most easily misunderstood forms of monetary evidence. It may represent savings, a merchant's working capital, an institutional reserve, ritual deposition, concealed wealth during danger or a stock of metal intended for remelting. The date of burial is later than or equal to the youngest object in the deposit, but older coins may have circulated for decades. Hoard composition is therefore excellent for studying which types could coexist and for constructing relative sequences, yet it does not reveal the frequency of small retail transactions. Large silver hoards may overrepresent high-value storage, while low-value copper used repeatedly in markets is more likely to be lost singly. Chapter 15 consequently treats hoards and stray finds as different archaeological behaviours rather than pooling them into one undifferentiated count of "money."

15.10 The Gorho Ghat hoard provides a concrete monetary anchor for the Āṅga–Bhagalpur zone

In 1917 fifty-eight silver punch-marked coins were found at Gorho Ghat, north of the Ganga in what was then Bhagalpur District. E. H. C. Walsh published a detailed examination of the find in the *Journal of the Bihar and Orissa Research Society* in 1919 and later used it, together with the Patna find, in his 1924 synthesis on Indian punch-marked coins. This is exceptionally useful for the present regional history because it places a substantial body of early silver currency in the wider Bhagalpur–Āṅga landscape rather than relying only on general statements about "Gangetic coinage." The hoard demonstrates that punch-marked silver could be accumulated in this corridor. It does not identify the occupation of the depositor, the source of the silver, the market in which the coins were acquired, or the percentage of local transactions that were monetised.

15.11 Vaiśālī connects monetary finds with a major excavated urban sequence

Vaiśālī is important because coins occur within a broader archaeological record of fortification, ceramics, beads, terracottas, metalwork, seals and dense occupation. Sinha and Roy's excavations, discussed in Chapter 13, place monetary objects inside an urban assemblage rather than treating them as isolated collectibles. This association makes monetised exchange plausible in several settings: market transactions, payments to artisans or carriers, institutional donations, tax collection, savings and merchant settlement. Yet even here the ratio between coin and non-coin exchange cannot be calculated. Perishable commodities and credit leave weaker archaeological traces than metal currency. Vaiśālī therefore shows what coinage looks like when embedded in an urban economy, but it should not be converted into the claim that all residents regularly handled silver *kārṣāṇas* or that rural communities in its hinterland were monetised to the same degree.

15.12 Campā adds copper money and urban administration to the eastern corridor

Chapter 14 noted cast copper coins and sealings from the excavated Campā sequence near Nathnagar–Champanagar. These finds broaden the monetary picture beyond silver punch-marked currency. Copper could support lower-value transactions for which a full silver unit was inconvenient, while cast coinage represents a manufacturing tradition different from punch-marked silver. The coexistence of coins with sealings, craft production, ring-wells, substantial structures and the Ganga route is consistent with repeated commercial and administrative activity. It remains unsafe to identify every copper coin as a state wage payment or every sealing as a tax receipt. What Campā contributes is evidence for diversified instruments of exchange and authentication within a major urban centre. The monetary history of Aṅga is therefore not reducible to a single silver standard or to the Gorho Ghat hoard alone.

15.13 Pāṭaliputra, Vaiśālī, Gorho Ghat and Campā belong to a connected corridor without forming one homogeneous monetary zone

The Ganga and its tributary routes linked political capitals, river crossings, markets and agrarian hinterlands. Punch-marked silver from Patna and Gorho Ghat, urban coin finds at Vaiśālī and copper currency at Campā can therefore be studied as parts of a connected middle and eastern Ganga world. Figure 58 is deliberately conceptual rather than a measured map. Connectivity does not mean identical monetary practice. One centre may have had denser silver circulation, another greater use of copper, and rural zones may have relied more heavily on grain, labour obligations or credit. Political annexation likewise need not immediately standardise every local transaction. The correct historical scale is a network of overlapping monetary practices whose intensity varied by settlement type, transaction size, access to metal and institutional demand.

SELECTED MONETARY EVIDENCE — GANGA CORRIDOR

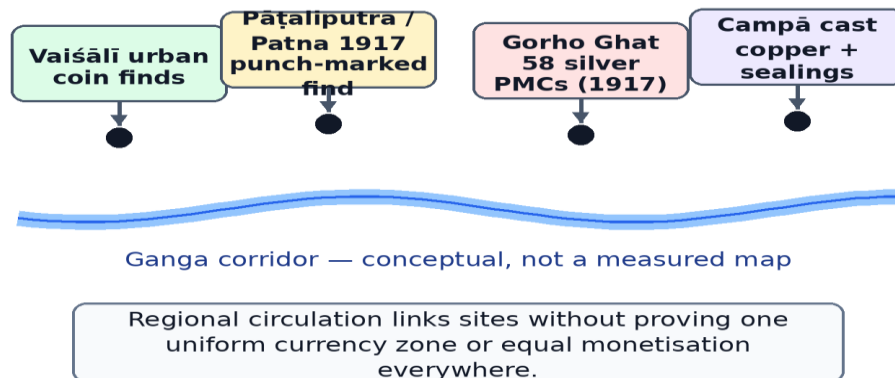


Figure 58 — Selected monetary evidence in the middle and eastern Ganga corridor; conceptual, not a measured map.

15.14 Copper coinage matters because monetisation includes small payments

Histories built only from silver risk mistaking the currency of larger payments for the whole monetary economy. Uninscribed cast copper and punch-marked copper issues are well represented in catalogues of early Indian coinage and occur at many early historic sites. Their lower intrinsic value made copper more suitable for modest transactions, although denomination and purchasing power cannot be reconstructed simply from metal. Copper also corroded differently from silver and could be discarded more readily,

affecting archaeological visibility. A society in which silver circulated among merchants, officials and wealthy households but copper entered local markets would have a broader monetary reach than silver hoards alone suggest. Conversely, a few copper finds do not prove ubiquitous petty cash. The social depth of monetisation must be assessed from context, quantity, wear and association with settlement activity.

15.15 Silver and copper served different scales of value while older media continued beside them

Early monetary systems were plural. Silver could concentrate substantial value in a portable form; copper could facilitate smaller payments; weighed metal remained meaningful; and grain, cloth, livestock, labour and credit continued to settle obligations. This is not evidence of an incomplete transition waiting to become “modern.” It is a functioning mixed economy in which different instruments were suited to different transactions. A farmer might owe produce to a landlord, receive coin for surplus grain in a market and purchase salt on credit from an itinerant trader. A merchant might settle a large account in silver yet pay carriers partly in food. Figure 59 represents monetisation as a spectrum rather than an on/off condition. The historical task is to identify where monetary instruments reduced transaction costs and where social relations continued to organise exchange without coin.

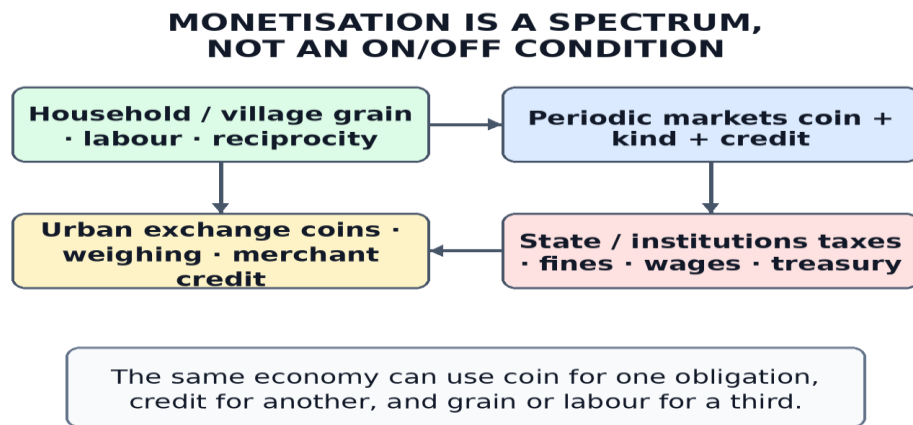


Figure 59 — Monetisation as a spectrum of overlapping practices rather than an on/off condition.

15.16 Weights, measures and coinage belong to the same history of comparability

Money works best when value can be compared. The use of weight standards for silver, measures for grain and recurring denominations for coins all reduce uncertainty between parties who may not know one another personally. Standardisation does not require a single central authority in every case; merchants, guild-like groups, markets and political administrations can all reinforce conventions. Conversely, a royal prescription in a text does not prove perfect compliance in practice. Archaeological weights, when securely contextualised, should therefore be studied together with coins and commercial spaces. The broader transformation is the creation of interoperable measures: a merchant can calculate how much metal, grain or commodity is owed and translate one claim into another. This capacity is a foundation for taxation, wages, credit and larger market networks even when actual payment media remain diverse.

15.17 Terms such as paṇa and kārṣāpaṇa are valuable only when genre and date are controlled

Pāli, Sanskrit and Prakrit sources use monetary terms including kahāpaṇa or kārṣāpaṇa and paṇa, but a textual word is not automatically an excavated coin type. Terms can refer to units of account, conventional values or specific pieces, and their meaning may shift over time. Buddhist narrative and disciplinary literature often preserves prices, donations, fines or monetary comparisons because such values mattered to householders and institutions; later redaction, however, can carry contemporary monetary language into stories set earlier. Normative Sanskrit texts likewise organise elaborate systems of value that may describe ideals rather than observed market practice. Chapter 15 therefore uses textual monetary vocabulary to reconstruct the social intelligibility of money, while archaeology and numismatics establish the material forms in circulation.

15.18 Pāṇini's monetary vocabulary is evidence for conceptualised struck money, not a complete monetary census

Classical grammatical discussions are important because Pāṇini's Aṣṭādhyāyī includes technical vocabulary connected with rūpa and struck or marked objects, a point noted in modern scholarship on the Arthaśāstra and coinage. Such evidence supports the existence of a developed language for monetary and marked value in early northern India. It should not be overextended into a precise map of coin use in Mithilā, Vaiśālī or Campā. The date of a grammatical rule, the geographic range of the linguistic examples and the archaeological date of a particular coin series are separate questions. Linguistic evidence is strongest when it demonstrates that coined or marked value had become conceptually familiar; it is weaker when asked to prove the quantity of money in circulation or the social class of users.

15.19 The Arthaśāstra describes an advanced monetary administration, but the text is composite

The Arthaśāstra contains detailed discussions of treasury, revenue, wages, fines, minting, testing and officials associated with currency. Patrick Olivelle's study of its compositional history emphasises that the work reached its surviving form through layered transmission rather than being a verbatim administrative manual from one moment in the reign of Chandragupta Maurya. Its monetary prescriptions are therefore indispensable evidence for the developed political economy of early India, but they cannot simply be projected backward to the age of Bimbisāra or onto every republican and regional polity. The text is most useful comparatively: it shows the kinds of problems that a monetised state sought to control—metal quality, authorised manufacture, revenue assessment, salaries and fraud. Archaeological contexts must determine where and when such administrative capacities can be inferred in the regions studied here.

15.20 Taxes, fines and wages could accelerate demand for money without eliminating payment in kind

States create monetary demand when obligations are assessed or collected in monetary units. Salaries and fines expressed in paṇas similarly make coin useful to officials, soldiers, litigants and suppliers. Yet early fiscal systems could combine cash and kind. Grain taxes, corvée labour, requisitioned animals and in-kind provisioning remain compatible with a treasury that also receives silver. The degree of fiscal monetisation may vary between cities, frontier zones and agrarian villages. This distinction prevents a common circular argument: coins are found, therefore the state taxed everyone in cash; the state is assumed to tax in cash, therefore the coins must be state fiscal issues. The evidence instead supports a more limited claim that

expanding states and cities created recurring contexts in which portable standardised value was advantageous, strengthening the demand for coin alongside older forms of extraction.

15.21 Merchant exchange and credit could expand monetisation without requiring coin at every stage

Merchants benefit from money because it allows unlike goods to be priced in a common unit, reduces the bulk of carrying commodities for barter and makes accounts easier to settle across distance. But commercial sophistication is not measured by the proportion of transactions paid immediately in coin. Credit can reduce the need to move cash; partnership arrangements can pool capital; advances can finance production; and debts can be netted against later deliveries. Chakravarti's work on early Indian trade stresses the agrarian and everyday material basis of commerce, not only luxury traffic. For the Ganga corridor, the combination of urban centres, river transport, craft production and coinage suggests increasing capacity for monetised settlement, while credit and commodity payments probably remained integral. Money and credit should therefore be analysed as complementary rather than rival institutions.

15.22 Urbanisation and monetisation reinforced one another but neither mechanically caused the other

Early historic urbanism in the Ganga plain is associated with fortifications, NBPW, iron technology, craft specialisation, writing, roads, storage and coinage. Oxford's recent synthesis of early South Asian urbanism likewise treats early coinage as part of the wider transformation of c. 600–300 BCE. The association is strong because towns concentrate strangers, specialised producers, officials and recurring demand, all of which favour standardised exchange. Yet coinage can circulate beyond cities, and urban growth also depends on agrarian surplus, political organisation, transport and labour. A coin does not create a city; a city does not automatically create a coinage. The useful historical question is how monetary instruments helped larger settlements coordinate flows of food, raw materials, taxes, wages and finished goods that could no longer be managed solely through face-to-face reciprocity.

15.23 Rural monetisation was likely uneven and seasonal

The agrarian hinterlands of Mithilā, Vajji and Aṅga supplied cities with grain, oilseeds, animals, fibres, timber, fish and other necessities. Rural producers could encounter money when selling a surplus, paying a tax, hiring labour, visiting a fair, borrowing from a merchant or purchasing salt and manufactured goods. These encounters need not make the entire household budget monetary. Seasonal harvest cycles could produce bursts of market participation followed by months dominated by household production and reciprocal exchange. Archaeology is biased toward durable urban deposits, so the lower visibility of coins in villages must not be interpreted automatically as economic isolation. At the same time, it would be equally unwarranted to project urban coin use uniformly across the countryside. Rural monetisation should be treated as variable by proximity to routes, market frequency, crop surplus, fiscal pressure and social access to exchange.

15.24 Monetary access was socially unequal

Coins are small objects, but their distribution can reflect large inequalities. Wealthy householders, merchants, tax officials and institutions were more likely to handle substantial stores of silver than land-poor cultivators or dependent labourers. Copper and fractional payments could widen access, yet the ability to save money depended on surplus income. Debt could make monetary accounting important even to people

who rarely possessed cash, because obligations might be reckoned in a monetary unit and repaid in produce or labour at agreed valuations. Gender also shaped access through property rights, occupational roles and household control, although individual archaeological coins rarely identify the sex of their users. The social history of monetisation must therefore ask not only whether money existed but who could acquire, save, lend, spend or demand it.

15.25 Religious institutions participated in monetary circuits without becoming ordinary commercial firms

Buddhist and Jain communities developed within the same urban and mercantile environments in which coinage expanded. Texts discuss donations, permissible property, purchases and the handling of valuables, while archaeological religious sites often received gifts from householders, merchants and rulers. Monetary donations could transform private surplus into durable institutional resources and support construction, food, robes, medicines and travel. Yet the economic role of monasteries and renunciant communities followed religious rules and cannot be reduced to profit-seeking commerce. The detailed institutional economy belongs to Chapter 16. Here the point is narrower: the spread of coin and monetised valuation enlarged the range of resources that donors and institutions could mobilise, while religious rules themselves reveal the social presence of money by regulating when and how it could be accepted or used.

15.26 Testing, fraud and counterfeit control reveal the institutional cost of trust

The advantage of metal money is portability; its vulnerability is that metal quality and weight can be manipulated. Ancient monetary administration therefore had to confront clipping, debasement, false metal, unauthorised manufacture and deceptive weighing. Numismatic evidence of variable alloy and textual concern with testing should be read together as signs that trust required work. Officials, money changers, merchants or experienced users could inspect, weigh and test pieces; repeated marks may record stages of such verification in some series. This does not prove a modern central bank or a single empire-wide mint bureaucracy. It demonstrates a more basic institutional principle: a currency becomes useful only when communities possess procedures for distinguishing acceptable from unacceptable payment. The cost of maintaining that confidence is part of the economic history of monetisation.

15.27 Coinage did not require royal portraits, legends or an exclusive state monopoly to carry authority

Later numismatic traditions often announce rulers through portraits and legends, encouraging historians to assume that all coinage should identify a sovereign. Punch-marked money warns against that expectation. Anonymous symbols and standardised weights could command acceptance without naming a king. Some series are plausibly associated with particular polities, and the Magadha–Maurya sequence became exceptionally influential, but issuing authority, validating authority and everyday accepting community are analytically distinct. Merchants can accept old coins after conquest; local authorities can recognise pieces produced elsewhere; and political states can regulate currency that they did not originally manufacture. This flexibility helps explain why monetary circulation can cross political boundaries. It also means that a map of coin finds is not a direct map of sovereignty.

15.28 The expansion of Magadha likely increased monetary integration without erasing regional practices

As Magadha incorporated Aṅga and eventually dominated the middle Ganga plain, larger fiscal, military and administrative networks could favour more widely recognised monetary standards. The extensive Magadha–Maurya punch-marked series is consistent with such integration. But integration should not be imagined as instantaneous replacement of every local form. Older coins remained in circulation, copper issues coexisted with silver, and regional patterns continued. Political consolidation can widen the geographic area in which a coin is accepted while local markets still determine which denominations are convenient. The relationship between empire and currency is therefore reciprocal: states benefit from standardised payments, and widely accepted money can lower the cost of governing distance, but the actual circulation of money depends on merchants, taxpayers, soldiers, producers and institutions repeatedly accepting it.

15.29 Coin counts cannot be converted directly into ancient money supply or per-capita cash use

Archaeological survival is radically selective. Precious metal is hoarded, recovered and remelted; copper corrodes; excavation samples only a fraction of a settlement; old collections may lack find spots; and published reports vary in detail. A site that has yielded many coins may simply have been excavated more extensively than a comparable site. Hoards can inflate regional totals while revealing little about daily turnover. Consequently, it is not possible to calculate a reliable money supply, velocity of circulation or per-capita coin holding for early Mithilā–Vajji–Aṅga from surviving finds. Quantification remains valuable when based on controlled datasets—weights, die or punch groups, stratified counts and hoard composition—but the denominator must be known. This chapter therefore avoids pseudo-statistical claims and uses numbers only where the archaeological or numismatic corpus itself is defined.

15.30 Conclusion: early monetisation was real, consequential and incomplete by design rather than by failure

By the early historic period, the middle and eastern Ganga world possessed durable monetary institutions: silver punch-marked coinage, copper currencies, weight conventions, checking practices, hoarding, textual units of account and state concern with revenue and payment. Vaiśālī and Campā embed coin finds within urban economies, while the Gorho Ghat hoard places substantial punch-marked silver directly in the wider Bhagalpur–Aṅga corridor. These developments made value more portable, divisible and comparable and helped cities, merchants and states coordinate increasingly complex flows. Yet coin did not displace grain, labour, gift, credit or weighed metal. Monetisation spread unevenly across transaction sizes, occupations and settlements. Its significance lies precisely in this mixed system: money enlarged the repertoire of exchange and administration without becoming the sole language of economic life. Chapter 16 examines how Buddhist and Jain institutions operated within this expanding but plural monetary world.

Table 15.1 — Evidence for early money and monetisation, and limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Key references / control
Silver punch-marked coin from stratified context	Coin circulation at a dated settlement horizon; association with urban activity	Exact transaction, owner, issuer or proportion of exchange conducted in cash	Stratigraphy + numismatic classification

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Key references / control
Silver coin hoard	Accumulation; coexistence of types; relative chronology; reserve behaviour	Ordinary retail turnover or identity/occupation of depositor	Walsh 1919; hoard analysis
Gorho Ghat hoard: 58 silver punch-marked coins	Substantial punch-marked silver accumulation in the wider Bhagalpur–Aṅga corridor	Uniform monetisation of Aṅga or a specific market network	Walsh 1919; Walsh 1924
Vaiśālī coins within urban assemblage	Monetary objects embedded in a major early historic city	Cash use by every resident or village in the hinterland	Sinha and Roy 1969
Campā cast copper coins	Lower-value monetary instruments within an eastern Ganga urban sequence	Exact denomination, price level or fiscal function of each coin	IAR evidence reviewed in Chapter 14
Weight standard around 32 rattis / c. 3.4 g for many Magadha–Maurya kārṣāpaṇas	Repeatable expectation for silver valuation and classification	Perfect uniformity of every regional or chronological series	Gupta and Hardaker 2014; museum series
Multiple punches / checking marks	Repeated validation, classification and circulation history	A unique named banker, guild or official for every mark	Allan 1936; Walsh 1924; numismatic studies
Textual paṇa / kārṣāpaṇa vocabulary	Money as a socially intelligible unit of value and payment	Exact archaeological coin type or universal contemporary cash use	Olivelle 2013; genre/date control
Arthaśāstra monetary administration	Developed concepts of treasury, minting, testing, wages, fines and revenue	Direct description of every earlier polity or a single fourth-century-BCE bureaucracy	Olivelle 2013
Urbanism + coins + crafts + routes	Conditions favourable to repeated monetised exchange	Coinage as the sole cause of urbanisation	Allchin et al. 1995; Singh 2008

Chapter 16 — Buddhist and Jain institutional economies

Chapter argument. Buddhist and Jain communities in the early eastern Ganga plain should be understood as institutions that reorganised material dependence rather than escaped the economy. Renunciants limited private possession and ordinary production, yet their food, robes, lodging, medicine, travel, buildings and teaching required durable support relationships. Vaiśālī and Campā provide regional anchors through canonical gift narratives, rains residence, monastic archaeology, a relic stupa containing portable valuables, and the Campā Vinaya chapter on hospitality and valid Saṅgha procedure. Jain evidence adds the fourfold community and rigorous lay–renunciant reciprocity. Comparative inscriptions are used to illuminate institutional possibilities, not to fill regional gaps by assumption; later landed and endowed monasteries are kept chronologically separate from the earlier support economy.

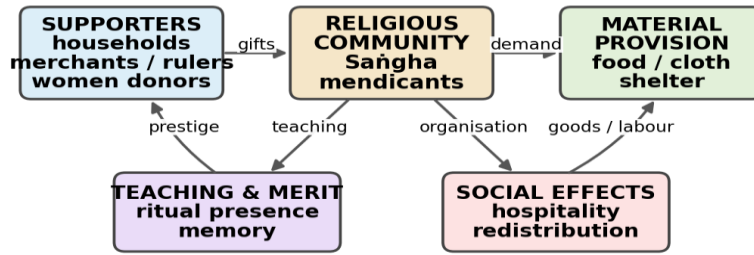
16.1 Institutional economy means organised material dependence, not a claim that religion was “really business”

Buddhist and Jain renunciants defined themselves through restraint, non-possession and withdrawal from ordinary household accumulation, yet renunciation did not abolish material needs. Food, clothing, shelter, medicine, water, travel, maintenance and the care of the sick still had to be supplied. An institutional economy begins where those recurring needs are organised through durable relationships between renunciants, lay supporters, settlements and collective rules. The point is therefore not to reduce religion to commerce. It is to ask how a community that rejected ordinary accumulation could persist across seasons and generations. In the middle and eastern Ganga plain, this question is inseparable from urbanisation, merchant activity, political patronage and household surplus. The economic effect of a monastery or mendicant network could be substantial even when its normative ideal opposed private wealth. Conversely, the presence of donors or valuable gifts does not prove that an institution was profit-seeking. This chapter therefore treats economy as the organisation of resources, obligations, labour and exchange around religious communities.

16.2 Five evidence streams must be kept distinct before they are combined

Institutional economies are unusually vulnerable to source confusion. Buddhist Vinaya texts prescribe rules and narrate cases; Jain disciplinary literature describes ideals of mendicancy and lay support; narrative texts preserve memorable donors, journeys and sacred places; archaeology reveals buildings, stupas, tanks, coins and occupation phases; inscriptions, especially from the early centuries BCE and CE outside the immediate region, identify donors and corporate recipients. Each source answers different questions. A rule against accepting money proves that money-handling was normatively regulated; it does not by itself measure how often money circulated through a monastery. A donated grove in a canonical narrative shows a remembered form of institutional patronage; it is not automatically a deed preserved from the event. An excavated monastery proves built institutional presence in the dated phase of that structure; it does not prove that the Buddha or Mahāvīra occupied that precise masonry. The method of this chapter is therefore convergent but controlled: similarities can reinforce a reconstruction only after chronology and genre have been stated.

Institutional economy: reciprocal flows



Renunciation can reject private accumulation while still producing large economic effects.

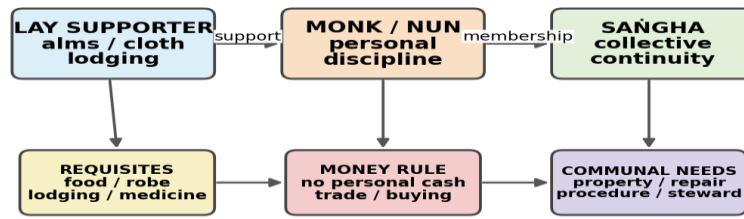
Figure 60 — Religious institutional economy redistributed resources through reciprocal but non-equivalent flows among donors, renunciants, material provision and social value.

16.3 Renunciation increased dependence on society rather than eliminating economic relations

A householder normally meets material needs through ownership, production, wages, kinship claims or market exchange. A renunciant who gives up productive property and regular occupation transfers much of that burden to a support network. This is a profound economic reorganisation. The monk or nun becomes less tied to a household but more dependent on repeated acts of giving, hospitality and institutional provision. That dependence can create a dense field of reciprocal expectations without becoming a commercial contract. Donors receive teaching, ritual association, prestige, moral satisfaction and the religious value of giving; renunciants receive necessities that permit continued practice. In densely settled areas such as Vaiśālī and Campā, a larger population and more diversified economy could make such support easier to sustain. Yet the same logic also operated in villages, where a small group of mendicants might rely on a narrow circle of households. Institutional stability therefore depended not only on doctrine but on the depth, diversity and seasonality of the surrounding social economy.

16.4 The Buddhist “four requisites” reveal the material minimum of monastic life

Buddhist disciplinary literature repeatedly organises permissible support around basic requisites: robe material, alms food, lodging and medicines or medical necessities. These categories are analytically valuable because they expose the material foundation beneath an ascetic ideal. Robes connect the Saṅgha to textile production, cleaning, dyeing and repair. Food connects it to cultivators, cooks, market provisioning and household surplus. Lodging connects it to land, timber, brick, carpentry, drainage and maintenance. Medicine connects it to plants, oils, ghee, containers and specialist knowledge. The categories are normative rather than a complete inventory of actual consumption, but they show that an enduring monastic community necessarily participated in a wider economy of goods and services. The scale of that participation changed with community size and permanence. A few itinerant monks carrying bowls and robes placed a different demand on local resources from a residential complex with cells, water facilities, paths and recurring repairs. Economic history must therefore distinguish the minimal mendicant package from the later built institution.

Buddhist support: restraint and collective provision

Vinaya rules are normative evidence; actual practice requires archaeology and inscriptions.

Figure 61 — Buddhist support combined individual restrictions on money and property with recurring provision for monastic life and collective continuity.

16.5 Daily alms created a dispersed support system rather than a central tax

Alms collection redistributed small portions of household production toward renunciant communities without requiring a central treasury. A meal given by one household, a handful of grain from another or cloth supplied by a patron could together sustain people who did not cultivate fields or run ordinary businesses. This dispersed mechanism reduced dependence on any single donor while embedding the Saṅgha in everyday settlement life. It also made religious institutions sensitive to harvests, prices, famine, political disorder and the density of sympathetic households. A prosperous city could offer many potential donors, but competition among mendicants and the high cost of urban food could matter as well. The Pāli sources often present giving as voluntary and meritorious, yet repeated dependence makes the relationship institutional even when no fixed assessment exists. From an economic perspective, alms transfer consumable surplus; from a social perspective, they create contact between households and renunciants. The same act therefore belongs simultaneously to subsistence, ethics, reputation and religious affiliation.

16.6 Hospitality to travelling monks shows the infrastructure behind mobility

The Campā Khandhaka of the Mahāvagga begins with a resident monk, Kassapagotta, making extensive arrangements for visiting monks: seats, water for washing feet, assistance with bowls and robes, bathing, gruel and food. The narrative is primarily a disciplinary case, not an economic survey, but its incidental details are revealing. Religious mobility required hospitality infrastructure. A travelling monk did not move through empty space; he depended on residences, local knowledge, water, meals and the labour of hosts. Such provisioning could be supplied by other monks, by lay supporters or by both. The passage also assumes that a residence could “grow” and become attractive to incoming monks, which implies organisational continuity beyond a single charismatic teacher. Campā is therefore important not only because sermons are located there but because the Vinaya remembers it as a place where problems of resident communities, visitors and valid collective procedure required regulation. Institutional geography and material hospitality reinforce one another.

16.7 The rains retreat converted seasonal immobility into recurrent local economic relationships

The annual rains residence reduced long-distance movement during the monsoon and concentrated renunciants for an extended period in particular settlements. This seasonal rhythm had economic

consequences. Food had to be supplied repeatedly rather than once; lodging had to remain usable through wet conditions; robes and medicines required storage and distribution; ties with nearby households became more regular. The Mahāparinibbāna Sutta places the Buddha's final rains near Vaiśālī at Beluva and has monks seek residence in the surrounding area among people with whom they had connections. Whatever the narrative's redactional history, the institutional logic is clear: monsoon residence relied on social networks and available shelter. The rains retreat also encouraged the transition from purely itinerant mendicancy toward recurring residence at known groves and compounds. That did not automatically create large monasteries, but it made durable places economically useful. The religious calendar thus structured demand, mobility and the intensity of lay-monastic contact.

16.8 Ambapālī's grove at Vaiśālī represents a remembered transfer of productive urban land into religious use

In the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta, Ambapālī first provides a meal for the Buddha and the community and then gives her mango grove to the Saṅgha headed by the Buddha. The episode should be read as a canonical memory rather than as a surviving land deed, but it captures a crucial institutional transition: support could take the form not only of consumable food but also of access to a durable place. A grove offered shade, assembly space, lodging potential and a recognised address within the urban landscape. The donor was a woman of high public visibility, which also warns against imagining patronage as exclusively male or royal. Economically, the episode distinguishes a one-time consumable gift from an asset whose usefulness could recur. Socially, it binds a prominent urban patron to a religious community. Historiographically, it is safest to say that early Buddhist tradition considered the donation of parks and groves an appropriate and memorable form of support; the precise legal form of property rights must be reconstructed from broader evidence rather than assumed.

16.9 Competition to host a meal at Vaiśālī shows that giving carried prestige as well as cost

The same narrative describes Licchavis encountering Ambapālī after she had secured the next day's meal invitation and offering a very large sum if she would surrender the opportunity. The stated amount belongs to a literary scene and should not be converted into a reliable market price. Its significance is institutional and social: providing for the Buddha and Saṅgha is represented as a scarce honour for which powerful people competed. Giving therefore had a prestige economy. The donor expended resources but acquired public association with a revered community. Such competition could help religious institutions mobilise surplus without taxation or coercion, while also giving elites a language for generosity. It could, however, reproduce inequality because the most conspicuous gifts were easier for wealthy patrons. Small household alms and spectacular elite donations should therefore be distinguished. Both sustained religious life, but they operated at different scales and generated different forms of visibility.

16.10 Vaiśālī's archaeological remains demonstrate long institutional continuity, not a single frozen "Buddha-period monastery"

The archaeological landscape at Kolhua and ancient Vaiśālī contains stupas, monastic remains, a tank, shrines and an Aśokan pillar. UNESCO's description of the Silk Road component notes remains ranging from the Mauryan period through the post-Gupta centuries, while the Archaeological Survey of India records protected Buddhist remains across the Vaiśālī complex. This long sequence is essential. It confirms that the area became a durable Buddhist institutional landscape, but much of the surviving masonry is later

than the lifetime traditionally assigned to the Buddha. A responsible socio-economic reconstruction therefore separates early textual memory from the dates of excavated structures. The later expansion of brick architecture implies accumulated labour, materials, planning and maintenance, while votive monuments imply recurring patronage. These are strong indicators of an institutional economy in the subsequent centuries. They should not be collapsed into the sixth or fifth century BCE simply because the sacred topography links later buildings to earlier narratives.

16.11 The Vaiśālī relic stupa links ritual memory, valuables and monetisation without proving a monastery treasury

The protected relic stupa at Harpur Basant is especially important for connecting Chapter 15's monetary history with religious institutions. The Archaeological Survey of India describes an early inner stupa and reports a relic casket with ashes mixed with earth; associated finds include a punch-marked coin, beads and gold objects. Bihar Tourism likewise notes the coin among excavated contents. These objects show that valuables and monetary material entered a sacred depositional context. They do not demonstrate that the stupa operated a treasury or that coins financed its construction. Deposited objects can be offerings, commemorative inclusions or items incorporated during a particular building phase. The significance lies in coexistence: early monetisation and religious commemoration occupied the same social world. Sacred institutions could attract valuable objects because people assigned value to memorial presence. The economic and ritual meanings of a coin are therefore not mutually exclusive; context determines which inference is justified.

16.12 Campā's Vinaya chapter makes institutional law part of Aṅga's social history

The ninth Khandhaka of the Mahāvagga is explicitly associated with Campā and is concerned with the validity and invalidity of formal acts of the Saṅgha. Its cases discuss quorum, motions, suspension and collective procedure. These are legal-institutional matters rather than market transactions, yet they have economic significance because durable property, residences and shared resources require rules about who can act for a community and under what conditions. An institution without valid procedure cannot reliably admit members, discipline them, settle disputes or manage common responsibilities. Campā thus appears as part of the remembered geography in which Buddhist corporate procedure was articulated. The text does not prove that every rule originated historically at the stated place, but the association itself is evidence that Campā was imagined as a significant monastic centre. This reinforces the city's role, already established in Chapter 14, as a node of political, commercial and religious movement.

16.13 Buddhist prohibitions on gold, silver and trade separate personal renunciation from the monetary world around the Saṅgha

The Pāli Bhikkhu Vibhaṅga's Nissaggiya Pācittiya rules prohibit a monk from accepting gold and silver, engaging in monetary exchange and engaging in buying and selling. The commentary embedded in the disciplinary tradition treats "silver" broadly enough to include forms used in business. These rules are crucial for economic history because they do not describe a society without money; they regulate how renunciants are to relate to a monetised environment. A prohibition is therefore evidence of a boundary, not evidence of economic isolation. The rule also distinguishes the individual monk's conduct from the needs of a continuing community. Later Vinaya traditions and inscriptions show a range of mechanisms by which lay stewards or corporate arrangements could mediate valuable gifts, but those mechanisms vary by school and

period. For the early Ganga plain, the safest conclusion is that personal money-handling was a recognised disciplinary problem precisely because monetary exchange existed around the Saṅgha.

16.14 Corporate property and individual poverty are not contradictory categories

A recurrent error in the history of monasticism is to assume that if monks renounce possessions, a monastery cannot possess durable assets. Buddhist legal literature eventually makes sophisticated distinctions among personal belongings, communal property, residence property and gifts intended for particular purposes. Gregory Schopen's studies of Indian Vinayas and inscriptions demonstrate that Buddhist communities could function as juridical or corporate bodies with property and financial obligations while still regulating individual possession. Not every one of those developed mechanisms can be projected into early Vaiśālī or Campā. The conceptual distinction, however, is indispensable. A monk may own little while living in a building maintained by a community; a community may accept a donated grove while individuals are barred from treating it as private real estate. This separation allowed renunciation and institutional durability to coexist. It also created the need for rules governing use, inheritance, repair, alienation and the intentions of donors.

16.15 Permanent residences transformed religious communities into consumers of construction and maintenance

Once a religious residence became durable, its economy extended beyond food. Brick-making, timber, roofing, plaster, drainage, wells, paths, doors, mats, lamps and cleaning created recurring demand for labour and materials. Archaeological remains at Vaiśālī illustrate this later built dimension particularly clearly, while Campā's long urban sequence provides the broader craft and supply environment in which religious establishments could operate. Construction need not imply wage labour in every case: work could be donated, commanded, contracted or organised through patrons. Nor should every brick foundation near a sacred site be assumed to be monastic. Where identification is secure, however, the built environment reveals resource concentration. Maintenance is especially important because it is less visible than foundation ceremonies but more continuous. A donated building that cannot be repaired quickly becomes unusable. Institutional economy therefore includes mundane expenditure—water control, replacement materials, cleaning and storage—as much as spectacular patronage.

16.16 Monasteries and mendicant communities created demand without functioning like ordinary households

Religious communities consumed goods, but their consumption pattern differed from that of reproductive households. They did not normally aim to accumulate family property, arrange inheritances for children or expand a domestic estate. Instead, expenditure clustered around sustenance, ritual, teaching, hospitality, buildings and care of members. This difference matters because the same merchant, farmer or artisan could interact with a monastery in a way unlike an ordinary customer. A pot might be donated rather than sold; cloth might be given for merit; a meal might be sponsored publicly; construction might combine hired labour and religious gift. The institution therefore sat across market and non-market exchange. It generated demand that could stimulate production, yet the transaction might be framed as *dāna* rather than purchase. Economic analysis must preserve both dimensions. Reducing all gifts to disguised trade ignores religious motivation; treating all gifts as economically irrelevant ignores their effects on production and redistribution.

16.17 Donor diversity prevents a single “merchant Buddhism” model

Merchants were important patrons of Buddhism in many early historic contexts, and the urban settings of Vaiśālī and Campā make commercial participation plausible. Yet canonical narratives, archaeology and inscriptions across India show a wider donor spectrum: rulers, householders, monks, nuns, artisans, officials and women as well as merchants. Ambapālī’s Vaiśālī episode is a regional reminder that prominent female patrons cannot be erased by a merchant-only narrative. The Licchavis represent political elites; ordinary alms imply much smaller household gifts. Later inscriptions from Buddhist sites elsewhere often name donors with varied occupations and statuses. The institutional economy was therefore resilient partly because it could draw on multiple social groups. This diversity also distributed risk: a community dependent only on a court could suffer when dynasties changed, while one dependent only on local alms could struggle during scarcity. Multiple patronage channels allowed religious institutions to survive political and economic fluctuations more effectively.

16.18 Buddhist nuns must be included as economic actors, not treated as an invisible appendage

The history of Buddhist institutions has often been written from male monastic rules and male donor lists. Gregory Schopen has emphasised inscriptional evidence showing Buddhist nuns acting as donors and legal persons in early India. The precise scale and chronology vary by region, and such evidence should not be mechanically transferred to Vaiśālī. Yet Vaiśālī is central to Buddhist traditions about the establishment and presence of the bhikkhunī community, making female institutional history especially relevant. Nuns required food, robes, lodging and medicine, organised teaching and discipline, and interacted with laywomen and laymen. Their material support could therefore generate its own networks. The archaeological identification of specific nunneries is often uncertain, and later architectural interpretations at Kolhua must be dated carefully. The larger conclusion is secure: a socio-economic history that counts only monks and male donors underestimates both the consuming population and the channels through which wealth, merit and authority circulated.

16.19 Merit functioned as a moral account of giving without becoming a literal currency

Dāna linked material transfer to religious consequence. Donors did not simply lose food, cloth or land; they understood giving as ethically productive. This can be described as a “merit economy” only if the metaphor is controlled. Merit was not a coin with a uniform market price, and canonical statements about the fruit of giving are not exchange-rate tables. Nevertheless, belief in religious benefit helps explain why people repeatedly transferred resources to communities that did not return equivalent commodities. The institution converted material support into teaching, ritual association, memorialisation and a moral narrative of generosity. Public monuments and donor inscriptions in later centuries made that association durable by naming givers and intended beneficiaries. In early Vaiśālī, the narrative prestige surrounding Ambapālī and the Licchavis performs a similar literary function. Merit therefore reduced neither to altruism nor to profit; it was a culturally specific way of assigning value to transfers beyond immediate material reciprocity.

16.20 Patronage could reproduce inequality even while redistributing resources

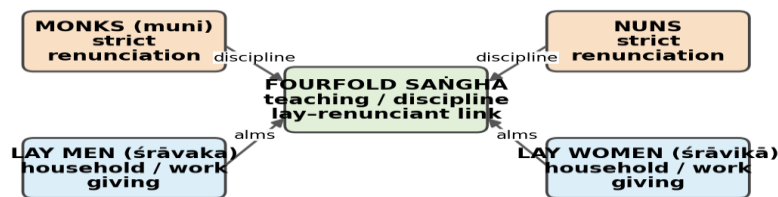
Religious giving moves resources, but redistribution is not automatically egalitarian. A wealthy patron could finance a grove, building or large meal and receive public visibility unavailable to a poor donor. A ruler

could attach political legitimacy to support for a revered community. Merchant donors could strengthen networks of trust and reputation. At the same time, smaller gifts allowed ordinary households to participate in institutional life, and food redistribution supported people outside household production. The result was a layered economy of generosity. Religious institutions could soften some inequalities by feeding residents and travellers while also giving elites new arenas for status. Economic history must therefore avoid two opposite myths: monasteries were neither merely extractive accumulators nor automatically charitable levellers. Their effects depended on the form of the gift, the control of property, the social identity of recipients and the wider distribution of land and income.

16.21 Jain institutional economy begins with the fourfold Saṅgha, not with the monastery alone

Jain tradition conceptualises the community as fourfold: monks, nuns, laymen and laywomen. This is economically significant because the institution is not identical with a residential monastery. Mendicants pursue rigorous non-possession and itinerancy, while householders remain economically active and support renunciants. The fourfold model therefore embeds asceticism inside a broader social body. The laity supplies food, shelter and other permissible necessities; renunciants provide teaching, discipline and a living model of the path. Jain sources preserve highly idealised numbers for Mahāvīra's followers, so those totals should not be treated as demographic statistics. The structural principle is more reliable than the numbers: religious continuity required both renunciant specialists and a lay support base. This arrangement could operate across towns and villages without the same architectural concentration as a large Buddhist monastery. Institutional economy must therefore include networks and recurring relationships, not only buildings and treasuries.

Jain fourfold community and material support



Comparative merchant patronage does not make every early Jain supporter a merchant.

Figure 62 — The Jain fourfold Saṅgha linked monks and nuns practising strict renunciation with laymen and laywomen who remained within household economic life.

16.22 Jain aparigraha and alms discipline created strong limits on direct accumulation

Non-possession is central to Jain mendicant ethics. Monks and nuns are expected to restrict possessions, food acquisition and attachment with a severity that makes ordinary economic self-provision difficult. Disciplinary literature devotes close attention to alms, acceptable food, movement, seasonal residence and the avoidance of harm in everyday acts. These rules are religious disciplines, but they also shape economic interaction. A mendicant dependent on prepared food cannot simply substitute unrestricted purchasing for alms without undermining the renunciant ideal. The burden of production therefore remains with householders. This creates a deliberate asymmetry: the ascetic offers no equivalent commodity in return,

while the lay supporter gains religious instruction and the merit of supporting disciplined renunciation. The economic relationship is thus reciprocal without being a market exchange. Because Jain rules differ across sectarian and chronological traditions, later Śvetāmbara or Digambara practice should not be projected wholesale into the earliest period.

16.23 The Jain lay community connected religious life to agriculture, crafts and commerce

Lay Jains were not required to abandon productive work. Their less absolute vows were designed for household life, allowing participation in property, trade and family obligations under ethical constraints. This made the lay community the principal material interface between mendicants and the economy. S. B. Deo's survey of inscriptions concludes that, across many later sites, trading groups formed an important source of lay support, while other inscriptions also record artisans, officials and women. That comparative pattern helps explain why Jainism could flourish in urban and commercial settings, but it should not be turned into an ethnic or occupational stereotype for early Vaiśālī. The key institutional point is broader: householders could translate market earnings or agrarian surplus into alms, lodging, images, memorials and other religious gifts. Jain renunciation therefore depended on a lay economy it did not itself reproduce through ordinary household labour.

16.24 Jain women occupied both renunciant and donor roles within the institutional economy

The fourfold Saṅgha explicitly includes nuns and laywomen. Jain tradition often remembers very large communities of nuns, although literary totals are not census data. More concrete evidence from early historic Mathurā includes numerous female donors in Jain dedicatory inscriptions, sometimes identified through kinship and sometimes associated with monks or nuns who prompted the donation. Mathurā lies outside Mithilā, Vajji and Aṅga, so it serves here as a comparative control rather than direct regional proof. It demonstrates, however, that women could command or direct resources within early Jain patronage networks. For the regional history, this prevents the support economy from being reconstructed solely through male merchants and male ascetics. Laywomen could mediate household wealth toward religious ends, while nuns constituted a large category of dependent and authoritative renunciants. Gender therefore shaped both access to resources and the institutional channels through which giving acquired religious meaning.

16.25 Mahāvīra's Vaiśālī associations make Vajji central to Jain memory, but biography and archaeology must not be collapsed

Jain traditions associate Mahāvīra with the Vaiśālī–Videha region, including Kundagrāma and Licchavi-linked social networks. These traditions make the area fundamental to Jain sacred history and help explain the enduring Jain significance of modern Vaiśālī. Yet the archaeological problem is difficult. A later temple or pilgrimage site cannot by itself authenticate a precise sixth- or fifth-century BCE biographical location. Nor should traditional dates be treated as archaeometric measurements. The strongest historical conclusion is regional: Jainism's formative memory is deeply embedded in the same eastern Ganga political landscape that generated Vajji and Videha traditions. That memory implies an early support environment of settlements, households and itinerant routes capable of sustaining mendicants. The economic history should therefore reconstruct networks of mobility and lay support while keeping individual biographical claims at the level warranted by their textual transmission.

16.26 Campā belongs to Jain sacred geography as well as Buddhist institutional geography

Jain tradition associates Campā with the Tīrthaṅkara Vāsupūjya and with later Jain pilgrimage, adding a second religious memory to the city already prominent in Buddhist texts. This layered sacred geography is historically important because it shows how the same urban centre could be claimed and revisited by different renunciant traditions. The early date and exact material form of particular Jain establishments at Campā are harder to establish than the Buddhist Vinaya association, so the evidence must remain asymmetrical. The socio-economic implication is nevertheless significant: a prosperous river city could support multiple communities through households, markets, donors and hospitality. Shared urban resources did not require institutional identity. Buddhist monks and Jain mendicants could depend on the same grain-producing hinterland, textile workers and transport routes while maintaining sharply different rules of discipline. Religious pluralism was therefore also a pluralism of support networks operating within a common economic landscape.

16.27 Mathurā's early Jain inscriptions provide comparison for donor organisation, not a template for Vajji and Aṅga

Kankali Tila and other Mathurā material from the early centuries BCE and CE preserve an exceptionally rich Jain donor record. Inscriptions identify lay donors, women, occupational groups, monks, nuns and organised lineages, while votive tablets and images show resources being converted into durable religious objects. This evidence is indispensable for understanding what a mature early historic Jain institutional economy could look like. It is not evidence that the same donor composition or monument form existed at Vaiśālī at the same date. Regional economies, sectarian histories and archaeological survival differ. Comparison is useful when it establishes possibilities—female patronage, merchant support, named monastic lineages, durable gifts—without replacing missing local evidence. The chapter therefore uses Mathurā as a control case: it demonstrates the institutional capacity of Jain communities in early historic India while leaving the exact scale of early Vajji and Aṅga patronage open.

16.28 Buddhist and Jain communities could compete for patronage without forming a zero-sum religious market

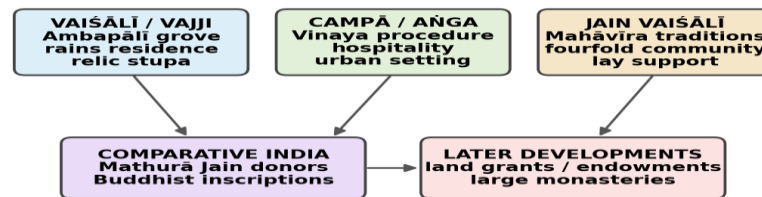
Cities and route corridors often hosted multiple renunciant groups. Competition for meals, lodging, teaching audiences and elite patronage was possible, and polemical texts attest intellectual rivalry. Yet a household could support more than one type of ascetic, and rulers could patronise several traditions across a reign. Religious affiliation was therefore not necessarily an exclusive consumer choice. Different communities offered different disciplinary ideals, ritual relationships and teaching networks, while drawing from overlapping pools of surplus. Competition may have encouraged institutional differentiation and public generosity, but coexistence was equally important. In Vaiśālī and Campā, the presence of multiple traditions should be treated as part of urban social complexity rather than as evidence for a simple winner-and-loser sequence. The wider economy was large enough to contain households, Brahmanical specialists, Buddhist monks, Jain mendicants and other ascetics simultaneously.

16.29 Later land grants, endowed funds and great monasteries reveal a trajectory that must not be retrojected

By the early centuries CE and especially the Gupta and post-Gupta periods, inscriptions from various parts of India document monasteries receiving land, permanent endowments and substantial monetary gifts.

Schopen's work shows that some Buddhist legal traditions developed sophisticated rules for corporate wealth, loans and property; later eastern institutions such as Nālandā became major landed and endowed establishments. Jain communities likewise accumulated temples, endowments and complex patronage networks in later centuries. These developments matter because they reveal what religious institutions could become. They do not prove that the Saṅgha at Vaiśālī in the Buddha narratives already possessed comparable estates or financial portfolios. Historical sequence must be preserved. Early alms, grove gifts, residences and collective procedures created institutional capacities; later political economies expanded some of those capacities dramatically. The direction of development is therefore from documented early support relationships toward more complex property regimes, not backward from medieval wealth to an imagined wealthy monastery in every early city.

Evidence map: regional anchors and comparative controls



Sacred memory, textual rules, archaeology and inscriptions must be dated independently.

Figure 63 — Regional evidence from Vaiśālī and Campā must be distinguished from comparative early Indian evidence and from later endowed monastic systems.

16.30 Conclusion: religious renunciation generated institutions by reorganising rather than escaping material life

Buddhist and Jain communities in the eastern Ganga world were economically consequential because they organised dependence. Renunciants withdrew from ordinary accumulation, but their food, robes, shelter, medicine, travel and teaching required recurrent transfers from households and patrons. Vaiśālī provides unusually rich regional evidence: canonical memories of meals and a grove donation, rains residence, a later monumental Buddhist landscape and a relic stupa containing valuable objects. Campā contributes the Vinaya's detailed concern with hospitality and valid Saṅgha procedure inside an important Āṅga city. Jain tradition adds the fourfold Saṅgha, rigorous non-possession, lay support and deep Vaiśālī associations, while early Mathurā inscriptions provide a comparative view of donor diversity. The combined evidence supports neither a romantic picture of institutions outside the economy nor a reductive picture of monasteries as businesses. Religious institutions were distinctive organisations that converted surplus into subsistence, durable places, teaching, memory and merit. Their growth linked urbanisation, household economies, gender, mobility and patronage, preparing the institutional landscape examined in the next chapter on education, debate and intellectual communities.

Table 16.1 — Evidence for Buddhist and Jain institutional economies, and limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Key references / control
DN 16: Ambapālī	A canonical model of elite	Exact legal deed, date of an	Walshe 1995; genre

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Key references / control
meal and mango-grove gift at Vaiśālī	female patronage; distinction between consumable gift and durable place	excavated building, or market value of the grove	control
DN 16: rains residence at Beluva near Vaiśālī	Seasonal residence and dependence on local social networks	A permanent brick monastery in the Buddha's lifetime	Walshe 1995; archaeological dating
Kolhua / Vaiśālī monastic and stupa remains	Long-lived Buddhist institutional landscape with repeated construction and patronage	That all surviving masonry belongs to the sixth–fifth century BCE	Sinha and Roy 1969; ASI/UNESCO archaeological control
Vaiśālī relic stupa with punch-marked coin and valuables	Intersection of sacred deposition, portable value and early monetisation	A monastery treasury, routine cash budget or precise donor identity	ASI context + numismatic caution
Mahāvagga IX, Campā Khandhaka	Remembered institutional geography; hospitality; formal Saṅgha procedure and corporate governance	That every rule originated historically at Campā or measures local wealth	Horner 1938–1966; Vinaya genre control
Nissaggiya Pācittiya rules on money and trade	Normative boundary against personal money acceptance, monetary transactions and buying/selling	Absence of money around monks or absence of collective property	Vinaya rules + Wijayaratna 1990
Jain fourfold Saṅgha and mendicant discipline	Structural dependence of monks/nuns on laymen/laywomen; organised lay–renunciant reciprocity	Traditional follower totals as census data or a uniform economic occupation for all laity	Jaini 1979; Dundas 2002; Deo 1956
Early Jain donor inscriptions at Mathurā	Comparative proof of female, mercantile, artisan and monastic participation in durable religious giving	The same donor mix or institutional scale in early Vaiśālī or Campā	Lüders 1961; Quintanilla 2007
Later Buddhist/Jain endowments and large monasteries	Long-term trajectory toward landed, endowed and financially complex religious institutions	Equivalent estates or financial mechanisms in fifth-century BCE Vajji/Aṅga	Schopen 2004; strict chronological control
Religious donations generally	Transfer of surplus into subsistence, buildings, memorials and institutional continuity	That donors acted only for profit, only for merit, or that redistribution was egalitarian	Multi-source social analysis

Chapter 17 — Education, debate and intellectual communities

Chapter argument. Education in early Videha, Vajji and Aṅga was not a single “school system” and should not be reconstructed by projecting later universities or medieval scholastic institutions into the first millennium BCE. Knowledge moved through households, teacher–pupil lineages, courts, ritual specialists, renunciant communities, urban audiences and mobile networks. Late Vedic and Upaniṣadic traditions place Videha prominently within a culture of learned patronage and disputation; Buddhist sources make Vaiśālī and Campā part of a wider world of travelling teachers, collective recitation, doctrinal argument and institutional discipline; Jain traditions add another durable network of teachers, mendicants and lay supporters. These sources do not give literacy rates, school enrolments or a census of occupations. Read together and with archaeological control, however, they reveal a plural social infrastructure of learning in which memory, speech, reputation, mobility and patronage were as important as buildings.

17.1 Education is a social relationship before it is a building

For the early historic eastern Ganga plain, “education” must be defined broadly enough to include the organised transmission of texts, ritual competence, ethical discipline, argument, craft knowledge and institutional memory. The surviving evidence rarely identifies a structure whose exclusive function was schooling. A teacher’s household, a royal audience, a grove used by wanderers, a monastic residence, an assembly hall or a ritual setting could all become places of instruction. This does not mean that learning was informal in the sense of being casual. Vedic recitation required exact training; renunciant orders regulated admission, seniority and discipline; philosophical dialogues presupposed recognised standards of competence. The institutional form was often personal and networked rather than architectural.

17.2 Five evidence streams must be separated before they are combined

The history of learning is unusually vulnerable to retrospective idealisation. Late Vedic and Upaniṣadic texts preserve teacher lineages, ritual instruction and famous debates, but their literary form is not a stenographic record of particular court sessions. Buddhist Nikāya and Vinaya materials preserve teaching encounters, recitation and institutional disputes, but they were transmitted and arranged within Buddhist communities. Jain canonical traditions likewise preserve mendicant and lay pedagogies through later redactional histories. Archaeology can locate settlements, monasteries, routes and inscriptions yet normally cannot identify the content of a lesson. Later scholastic institutions provide trajectories, not templates for the earlier period. Historical reconstruction becomes strongest where several streams converge without being collapsed into one another.

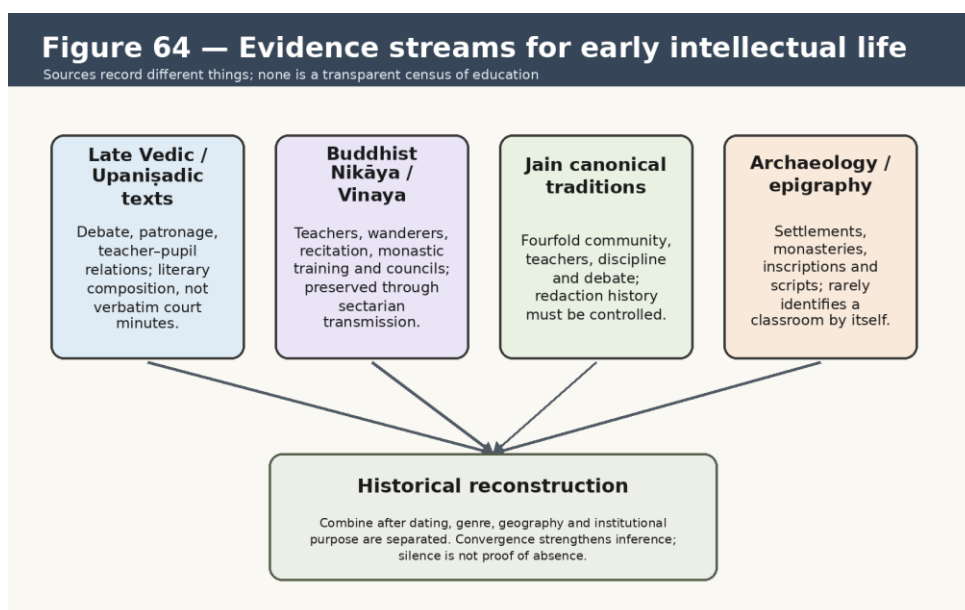


Figure 64 — Early intellectual history requires separate control of textual, institutional and material evidence before synthesis.

17.3 Oral transmission was a technology of precision, not a primitive absence of writing

Vedic learning depended heavily on trained memory, controlled pronunciation and repeated recitation. Oral transmission could preserve complex verbal material with techniques specifically designed to detect error. The teacher therefore carried not merely “information” but an embodied repertoire of sound, sequence and correction. This helps explain why the history of early education cannot be measured by the number of surviving manuscripts. Writing eventually became important across administration, commerce and religious cultures, but oral authority remained powerful even after scripts were in use. The coexistence of orality and literacy is historically more accurate than a simple progression from an “oral age” to a “written age.”

17.4 The teacher–pupil household linked learning to kinship, service and discipline

Brahmanical educational traditions describe students residing with or attaching themselves closely to a teacher. Such arrangements made learning a social relation sustained by food, service, discipline and long-term trust. The household or ācārya-centred tutorial was therefore both pedagogical and economic: someone had to feed the learner, release time from productive labour, and support the teacher. Access depended on status, family resources, recognised eligibility and the willingness of a teacher to accept a pupil. The resulting system could transmit knowledge very intensively while remaining socially selective. It should not be romanticised as universal village schooling.

17.5 Access to formal learning was unequal even when knowledge circulated widely

The presence of celebrated learners from different social locations does not prove equal access. Vedic study was closely associated with varṇa and initiation rules in Brahmanical normative texts; wealth and household position affected who could devote years to study; gender expectations limited many forms of formal training. At the same time, the broader intellectual landscape was more porous than a single

normative scheme suggests. Renunciant communities recruited outside hereditary priestly lineages, urban audiences heard public teachings, and practical skills moved through households and occupations. Early society therefore combined restricted specialist education with wider circulation of stories, ethical teaching, ritual knowledge, techniques and public argument.

17.6 Videha's intellectual importance is first visible as a literary geography of patronage

The Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad repeatedly associates Janaka of Videha with learned inquiry and with Yājñavalkya. This makes Videha one of the most prominent eastern settings in late Vedic philosophical literature. The safest historical inference is not that Mithilā possessed a “university” or a permanent academy with departments, but that the literary tradition regarded the Videha court as a place where patronage, prestige and difficult questioning could meet. Such a representation itself is socially important: it locates intellectual authority partly in a royal arena and shows that reputation could draw teachers and interlocutors across regional networks.

17.7 The Janaka–Yājñavalkya dialogues show patronage and inquiry operating together

In the Bṛhadāraṇyaka, exchanges between Janaka and Yājñavalkya combine questioning with gifts and recognised status. Cattle and other rewards belong to the narrative economy of learned distinction. They should not be treated as a salary scale or evidence for a bureaucratic educational office. They do show that knowledge could generate material patronage and public prestige. The ruler is not merely a passive sponsor: Janaka is represented as asking subtle questions and evaluating answers. This literary model matters for social history because it depicts intellectual life as reciprocal—teachers gain patronage and reputation, while rulers gain association with authoritative knowledge.

17.8 Gargī's participation demonstrates a remembered female intellectual presence without proving general equality

The famous questioning of Yājñavalkya by Gargī Vācakanvī in the Bṛhadāraṇyaka places a learned woman inside a high-status philosophical contest. The passage is strong evidence that the textual tradition could imagine, value and preserve female philosophical agency at the highest level. It is not evidence that women as a class enjoyed the same educational access as men. The proper historical use of Gargī is therefore double: her visibility prevents an all-male reconstruction of intellectual life, while the exceptional character of the episode warns against converting one named figure into a statistic about general female literacy or schooling.

17.9 Maitreyī shows that philosophical instruction could be represented within the household

The Maitreyī–Yājñavalkya dialogue locates profound inquiry within a domestic relationship rather than a public assembly. Its subject is philosophical, but its social setting is equally instructive: property, renunciation, marriage and teaching intersect in a single conversation. Maitreyī is represented not simply as receiving doctrine but as questioning the value of wealth in relation to immortality. The episode broadens the geography of learning from court and grove to household. It also cautions against equating “education” only with institutions visible to archaeology.

17.10 Learned contests could convert intellectual competence into reputation and resources

Debate in early Indian literature is often competitive. A successful teacher gains disciples, honour and patronage; an unsuccessful claimant risks loss of standing. The cattle offered in the Janaka cycle dramatise this connection between knowledge and reward. In Buddhist texts too, reputations precede travelling teachers and attract audiences. The social economy of debate therefore included non-material and material returns: prestige, followers, hospitality, gifts and access to rulers or wealthy householders. These incentives did not make philosophy reducible to economic calculation, but they helped sustain specialists whose time was not devoted entirely to subsistence.

17.11 Intellectual communities were mobile networks rather than territorially sealed schools

Teachers, students, monks, nuns, Brahmans and wanderers moved between courts, towns, villages, groves and monastic residences. Routes that carried merchants and officials also carried arguments, stories, ritual techniques and reputations. The eastern Ganga plain's urban growth increased the density of audiences and patrons without erasing rural or itinerant forms of learning. Videha, Vaiśālī, Campā and Magadha should therefore be treated as nodes in overlapping circuits. A famous teacher could be associated with one court or city while teaching across a much wider landscape.

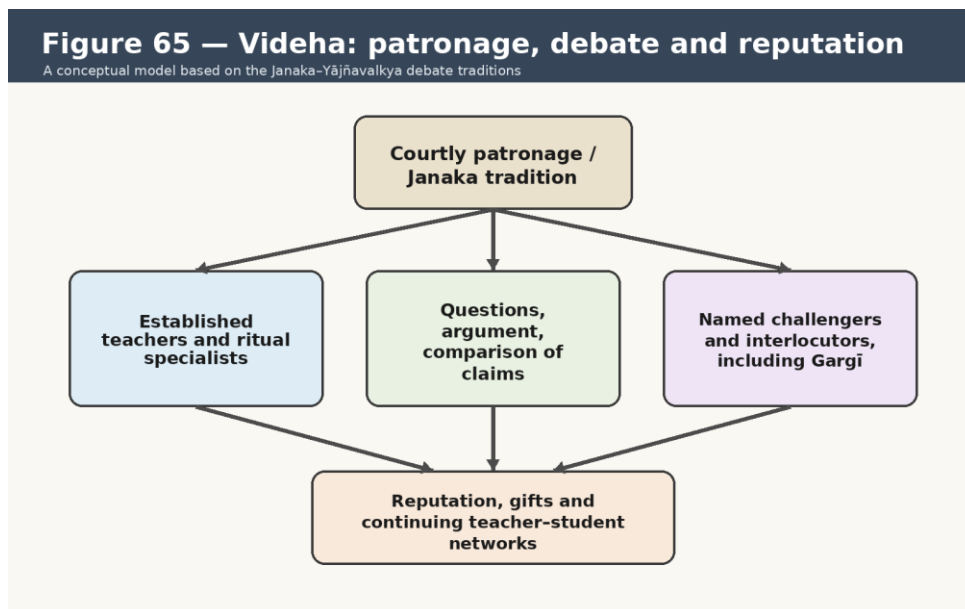


Figure 65 — The Videha debate traditions model intellectual life as an interaction among patronage, established teachers, questioning and reputation.

17.12 Language plurality was an intellectual resource as well as a social boundary

Different knowledge communities operated with different linguistic repertoires. Vedic learning privileged carefully preserved Vedic language and recitational forms. Early Buddhist and Jain traditions remembered teaching in speech accessible beyond Vedic ritual specialists, although the surviving Pāli and Jain Prakrit canons are products of long textual histories rather than tape recordings of the sixth or fifth centuries BCE. Everyday populations spoke changing Middle Indo-Aryan varieties that cannot be mapped neatly onto

modern language boundaries. Linguistic plurality widened audiences in some settings while specialist registers preserved authority in others.

17.13 The history of writing must not be used to erase the history of memory

The Aśokan inscriptions of the third century BCE provide the first large, securely datable corpus of deciphered writing across much of the subcontinent, demonstrating that scripts were by then effective instruments of public communication. Earlier use of writing remains debated and unevenly evidenced. Neither conclusion changes the central role of oral transmission in Vedic and renunciant communities. Even after writing was available, memorisation, recitation and live exposition remained powerful because authority was carried by recognised persons and lineages. Literacy and orality were complementary technologies, not mutually exclusive stages.

17.14 Early literacy was socially consequential without being measurable as a population rate

Inscriptions, seals, marks and administrative practices show growing uses of graphic communication in the early historic period, especially by the Mauryan age and after. Yet surviving evidence cannot yield a credible literacy percentage for Vaiśālī, Campā or Mithilā. Reading and writing may have been concentrated among scribes, officials, merchants, religious specialists and others whose occupations created demand. A society can use writing extensively in administration while large parts of its knowledge remain oral. Claims of universal literacy or universal illiteracy are therefore equally unwarranted.

17.15 Debate was a public technology for comparing teachers and claims

Early Buddhist literature repeatedly depicts conversations among rival teachers, householders and wanderers. Such scenes show an intellectual market in the sociological sense: multiple claimants to authority addressed overlapping audiences and were compared by listeners. The Kutūhalasālā or “debating hall” tradition is especially suggestive because it imagines ascetics, Brahmins and wanderers of different affiliations sitting together and discussing contested doctrines. Whether every such hall was a permanent municipal building cannot be established. The stronger inference is that inter-sectarian discussion was recognisable enough to become a named social setting.

17.16 Campā preserves unusually concrete evidence for a Brahman teacher and student circle

The Soṇadaṇḍa Sutta places the Buddha at Campā beside Gaggara’s lotus pond and presents the Brahman Soṇadaṇḍa as a major local figure. In the textual account he is described as a teacher of mantra knowledge with hundreds of young students. The number should not be read as an enrolment register, but the description is important: Campā is represented not only as a commercial and political centre but also as a place where Brahmanical learning had organised teachers, pupils and status. This gives Aṅga a specific intellectual anchor rather than leaving education as a generic feature of “ancient India.”

17.17 The Soṇadaṇḍa encounter shows learned communities sharing an urban audience

The importance of the Campā episode lies not only in its doctrinal content. Brahmins and householders hear of the Buddha’s arrival; Soṇadaṇḍa weighs the reputational consequences of visiting him; a large audience becomes part of the encounter. The narrative therefore links intellectual authority to urban

communication. News moves, reputations matter, followers compare teachers, and local elites participate. Buddhist and Brahmanical learning appear as overlapping public worlds rather than isolated systems. This does not prove constant harmonious exchange: competition, hierarchy and polemic were part of the same environment.

17.18 The samaṇa-brāhmaṇa landscape multiplied possible careers of knowledge

The eastern Ganga plain hosted ritual specialists, hereditary teachers, household philosophers, Buddhist monks and nuns, Jain mendicants, Ājīvikas and other wanderers remembered in Buddhist and Jain sources. Their doctrines differed radically, but sociologically they shared certain practices: travelling, teaching, attracting disciples, accepting forms of support and disputing rivals. This plurality offered audiences alternatives to lineage-based ritual authority while creating new forms of discipline and hierarchy. Intellectual history must therefore be written as a history of communities, not only as a sequence of abstract philosophical propositions.

17.19 A debating hall is evidence for organised discussion, not automatically for a school building

The term *kutūhalasālā* in Buddhist literature is often translated as a debating hall or hall for public discussion. It signals a recognised social arena where persons of different views could gather. Archaeology, however, cannot normally match a particular excavated hall to a named canonical debate. The category is most useful as evidence for institutionalised discussion: audiences expected teachers to answer questions in front of others, reputations could be tested publicly, and intellectual pluralism had spaces—whether permanent or temporary—in which it became socially visible.

17.20 Buddhist pedagogy used dialogue, repetition, lists and graduated explanation

The early Buddhist discourses are structured for oral teaching. Repeated formulas stabilise memory; numbered lists organise complex doctrine; similes translate abstractions into familiar experience; questions allow a teacher to diagnose an interlocutor's assumptions. This literary organisation reflects pedagogical priorities even when the canonical wording reached its surviving form over time. Instruction was not confined to formal sermons. Monks taught one another, senior members corrected juniors, lay followers asked questions, and travelling teachers adapted explanation to different audiences. Learning was therefore both doctrinal and practical.

17.21 The Saṅgha created a durable learning community through discipline and seniority

Chapter 16 examined the material economy of the Saṅgha; intellectually, the same institution preserved rules, narratives, recitation practices and interpretive authority. Ordination inserted a person into a hierarchy of seniority and obligation. Training required learning conduct as well as doctrine. A monastery or residence could therefore become a place of sustained education without resembling a modern college. The decisive institutional feature was continuity: teachers could die or travel while communal rules, recitation and succession maintained a framework in which new members were trained.

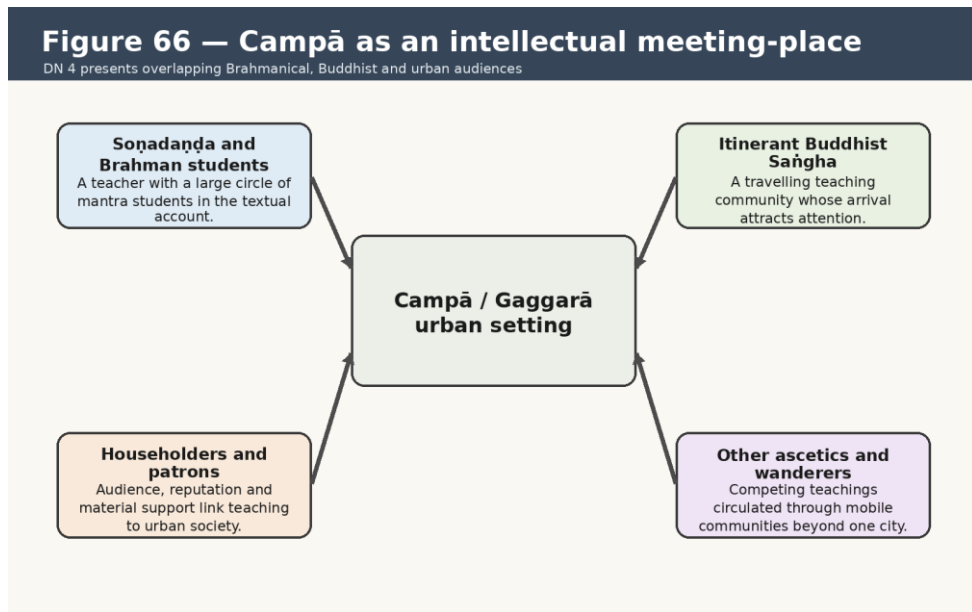


Figure 66 — *Campā’s textual landscape brings Brahman students, an itinerant Buddhist Saṅgha, household audiences and other wandering teachers into one urban field.*

17.22 Collective recitation was both pedagogy and institutional quality control

In oral communities, remembering together can serve as a method of verification. Buddhist traditions about councils emphasise recitation and agreement over doctrine and discipline; Vedic traditions developed their own highly technical recitational safeguards. These are not identical institutions, but they show a shared historical problem: how to preserve authoritative speech when the primary medium is human memory. Correction is social. A learner’s performance is tested against teachers and peers, and communal repetition identifies divergence. The history of education therefore includes practices of quality control long before written examinations became central.

17.23 Vaiśālī’s Second Council tradition reveals deliberation across a regional monastic network

The Vinaya traditions locate a major disciplinary controversy at Vaiśālī roughly a century after the Buddha’s death, centred on disputed practices remembered as the “ten points.” Accounts differ in details and later sectarian narratives should not be harmonised into a single modern transcript. Nevertheless, the convergence of multiple Vinaya traditions makes Vaiśālī an important site in the history of institutional deliberation. Senior monks are imagined travelling, consulting, comparing precedent and reaching decisions. This is intellectual history in a practical register: interpretation of rules, authority of memory and procedure within a translocal community.

17.24 Jain intellectual transmission depended on the fourfold community

Jainism’s fourfold Saṅgha—monks, nuns, laymen and laywomen—created several channels through which doctrine and discipline could circulate. Mendicants required intensive training in conduct, memorised teaching and exposition; lay followers learned vows, narratives and ethical categories while remaining embedded in household economies. Jain canonical traditions were preserved through long processes of recitation, collection and redaction, and different sectarian accounts of those processes must be

distinguished. For the Vaiśālī–Videha region, the safest conclusion is that Jain memory places it within an early, mobile teaching network rather than proving a fixed academy at a particular excavated location.

17.25 Women were teachers, interlocutors, nuns and lay transmitters, but evidence remains uneven

Gargī and Maitreyī prevent late Vedic intellectual history from being written as exclusively male. Buddhist nuns and the verses attributed to early bhikkhunīs preserve another form of female learned identity, while Jain tradition gives nuns a constitutive place in the fourfold community. Laywomen also supported religious teachers and transmitted household practice. Yet the documentary record is asymmetrical, and male institutions generated much of the surviving literature. Named women therefore show real possibilities and roles without justifying a claim that gender ceased to structure access, authority or mobility.

17.26 Practical knowledge moved through apprenticeship even when texts remain silent

A social history of education cannot stop with philosophers and renunciants. Potters, metalworkers, builders, weavers, boatmen, cultivators, traders, accountants and healers all depended on learned techniques. Much of this knowledge was embodied and transmitted through observation, repeated practice and correction within households or occupational groups. Archaeology reveals products and technological sequences more readily than lesson plans. The absence of written manuals for a craft in a particular period therefore does not imply absence of systematic training. Skill transmission was one of the largest educational processes in everyday society.

17.27 Patronage connected intellectual communities to households, markets and political power

Teachers and renunciants required time, food, lodging and social protection. Courts could supply conspicuous gifts; merchants and householders could provide daily support; monastic endowments became more important in later periods. Patronage influenced where teachers could remain, how large a community could become and which reputations travelled. It did not mechanically determine doctrine. Intellectual communities retained internal rules and could criticise patrons. The important point is structural: sustained learning depended on surplus resources generated elsewhere in society, making education part of economic and political history rather than a separate realm.

17.28 Roads, ferries and cities were infrastructure for ideas as well as commodities

Earlier chapters traced riverine and overland movement through Mithilā, Vaiśālī, Campā and the Magadhan corridor. The same routes lowered the cost of intellectual mobility. A teacher's reputation could move with disciples and travellers; a renunciant could follow seasonal circuits; students could seek recognised specialists; patrons could host visiting communities. Urban centres intensified encounters because they concentrated audiences, wealth and lodging, while rural settlements remained essential sources of food and recruits. Intellectual geography was therefore produced by mobility, not simply by the location of famous monuments.

17.29 Later “university” models must not be projected onto early Videha, Vaiśālī or Campā

Nālandā’s great monastic educational complex belongs chiefly to the first millennium CE, many centuries after the early historic settings discussed here; Vikramaśīlā is later still. Taxila was an important ancient centre of teachers and students, but even there scholars caution against treating it as a modern centralised university. For early Videha, Vaiśālī and Campā the evidence supports courts, teacher households, urban debate, travelling renunciants and monastic training—not a campus with a central administration, faculties and enrolment registers. Avoiding the word “university” in this context is not a downgrading of intellectual achievement; it is chronological precision.

17.30 Conclusion: the eastern Ganga plain sustained plural intellectual communities through speech, mobility and institutions

Education in early Mithilā–Videha, Vajji and Aṅga was distributed across several social forms. The Videha debate traditions connect rulers, learned specialists, women interlocutors, gifts and reputation. Campā’s Buddhist narrative world shows Brahman teachers and students sharing an urban field with itinerant renunciants and household audiences. Vaiśālī’s council tradition demonstrates the capacity of a translocal monastic community to gather, argue about rules and preserve institutional memory. Jain communities add another durable teacher–mendicant–lay network. Beneath these named traditions lay the much larger transmission of practical knowledge through households and occupations. The resulting intellectual landscape was neither a single Brahmanical school system nor a chain of ancient universities. It was a networked society of learning in which memory, disciplined speech, mobility, patronage and public argument created enduring communities of knowledge.

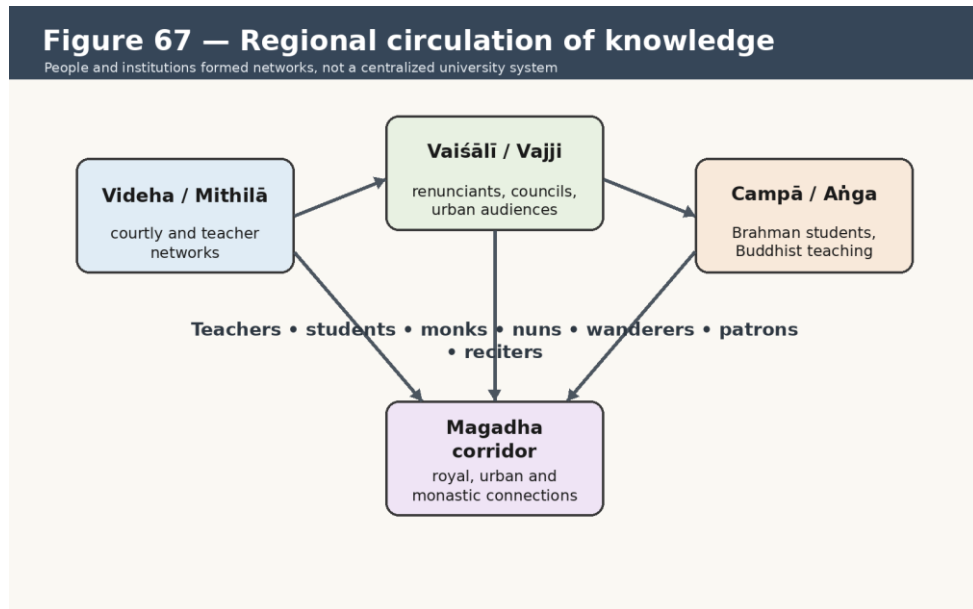


Figure 67 — Knowledge circulated among Videha/Mithilā, Vaiśālī/Vajji, Campā/Aṅga and the Magadhan corridor through mobile people and institutions rather than a centralized university system.

Table 17.1 — Evidence for education, debate and intellectual communities, and limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Key references / control
Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad: Janaka–Yājñavalkya cycles	Videha as a prestigious literary setting for patronage, questioning and learned reputation	A permanent “university,” a transcript of one historical court, or population-wide education	Olivelle; Brereton & Jamison; Scharfe
Gargī and Maitreyī dialogues	Remembered female philosophical agency in courtly and household settings	Gender equality in educational access or female literacy rates	Olivelle; Brereton & Jamison
Vedic recitational traditions	Highly disciplined oral transmission and teacher-dependent training	Absence of writing or universal access to Vedic study	Scharfe; Witzel; Staal
Aśoka and other early inscriptions	Secure large-scale use of writing by the third century BCE and expanding epigraphic communication	A literacy percentage for Vaiśālī, Campā or Mithilā	Salomon; Falk
Soṇadaṇḍa Sutta (Campā)	A textual image of a major Brahman teacher, mantra students and an urban audience in Aṅga	A literal enrolment census or archaeological identification of a school	Walshe; Rhys Davids
Kutūhalasālā traditions	Recognised spaces of inter-sectarian discussion among ascetics, Brahmins and wanderers	That every debating hall was a purpose-built academy	Bodhi; Buddhist Nikāya tradition
Buddhist Vinaya and monastic practice	Training, seniority, recitation, correction and institutional continuity	That early monasteries were modern colleges or economically self-sufficient universities	Horner; Schopen; Wijayaratna
Second Council traditions at Vaiśālī	Translocal deliberation over discipline and authority of remembered rules	A single uncontested chronology of sectarian schism	Prebish; Dutt; Vinaya traditions
Jain canonical and monastic traditions	Teacher–mendicant–lay transmission through the fourfold community	A fixed early academy at Vaiśālī or complete reconstruction of earliest canon formation	Dundas; Jaini; Deo
Craft archaeology and technological sequences	Long-term transmission of practical skills through apprenticeship and repeated practice	The names, curricula or social organisation of individual workshops without additional evidence	Singh; Sharma; archaeological reports

Chapter 18 — Health, medicine and the body

Chapter argument. Health in early Mithilā–Videha, Vajji and Aṅga must be reconstructed from bodily vulnerability, care relationships, urban infrastructure, monastic regulation, specialist healing and the environmental conditions of dense settlement. The chapter does not project classical Āyurveda backward as a fully formed regional system, diagnose ancient populations from modern disease maps, or turn wells and drains into evidence for hospitals. Instead it separates archaeological, Buddhist, Jain, Mauryan inscriptional and later medical-textual evidence, then asks where they genuinely converge.

18.1 Health history begins with bodies under constraint, not with a timeless medical system

A social history of health in early Mithilā–Videha, Vajji and Aṅga must begin from ordinary bodily vulnerability: hunger, fever, digestive illness, wounds, childbirth, ageing, exhaustion, infection and the environmental burdens of dense settlement. The evidence does not permit a regional catalogue of diagnoses in modern biomedical terms, and it does not justify describing every early treatment as “Āyurveda.” What survives is a patchwork. Archaeology records water installations, drains, food remains, tools and settlement conditions; Buddhist and Jain texts preserve rules about illness, medicine and bodily discipline; narratives celebrate healers; and the Mauryan inscriptions speak of royal provision for treatment and medicinal plants. Classical medical compendia systematise knowledge more fully, but their surviving forms are later and layered. The historical task is therefore to reconstruct practices and institutions at the level the evidence can sustain: who cared for the sick, what resources were mobilised, how illness altered rules and work, how ascetic communities understood the body, and how towns attempted to manage water and waste.

18.2 Five evidence streams must remain separate before synthesis

No single source can stand for population health. Excavated wells or drains demonstrate infrastructure, not the prevalence of dysentery or malaria. A Vinaya rule demonstrates that a monastic community recognised a recurring practical problem, but not how every lay household treated the same condition. Jain disciplinary texts illuminate an ascetic ethic in which detachment from the body could be spiritually valued, yet they do not amount to a survey of Jain lay medicine. Aśoka’s edicts are unusually firm third-century-BCE inscriptions, but their administrative language does not automatically identify a local clinic at Vaiśālī or Campā. Finally, the Caraka and Suśruta traditions preserve sophisticated systematic medicine but cannot simply be copied backward into the age of the Buddha or Mahāvīra. The strongest reconstruction comes when independent streams converge: dense towns needed water and disposal; religious communities needed food and medicines for sick members; specialist physicians could acquire high reputation; and by the Mauryan period care and medicinal resources had entered the vocabulary of kingship.

18.3 Archaeology is strongest for environments of health, weakest for named disease

Material evidence is often indirect but indispensable. Floors, drains, wells, ring-wells, soakage arrangements, cooking installations, faunal and botanical remains, latrine-like features, skeletal trauma and residues can illuminate the conditions in which bodies lived. Yet the early historic archaeology of the study region is uneven, and published excavation reports were not designed as modern palaeopathological surveys. Human skeletal samples securely tied to particular urban phases are limited, while ring-wells can serve different functions at different sites. The safe use of archaeology is therefore environmental and

infrastructural. At Vaiśālī and Campā, durable urban installations confirm that households and builders invested in controlling water and wastewater within dense settlements. Such investment is historically relevant to health even where no physician's room or medicine chest can be identified. It also reminds us that the history of medicine is only one part of the history of bodily well-being; water access, food security, shelter and waste disposal may matter more to aggregate health than the most celebrated individual cure.

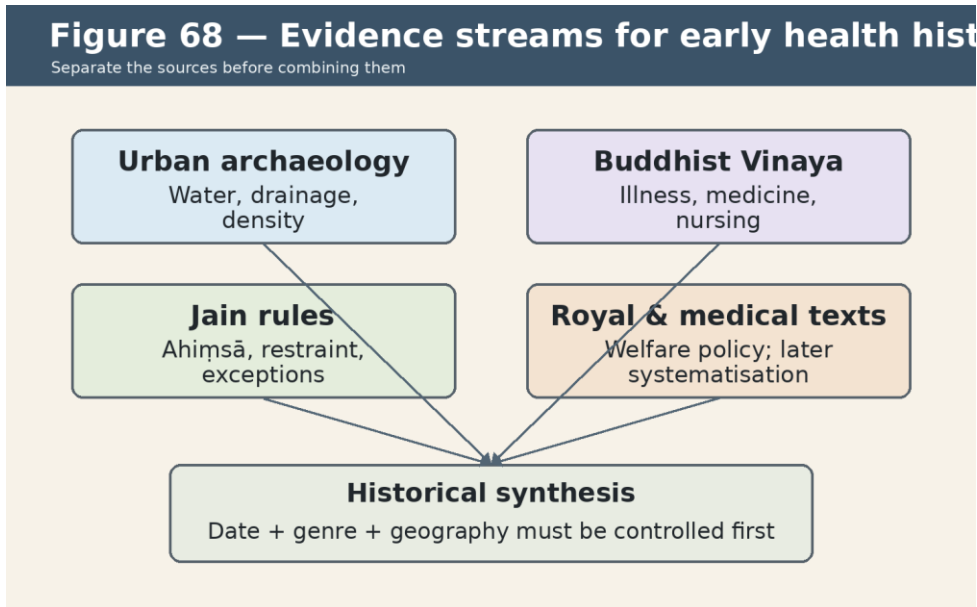


Figure 68 — Early health history requires separate control of archaeological, Buddhist, Jain and medical/royal evidence before synthesis.

18.4 Illness disrupted labour, ritual and mobility and therefore had economic effects

A sick body is also a social and economic event. Illness can remove a cultivator from seasonal work, interrupt a merchant's journey, reduce a craft household's output, require relatives to supply care, and consume stored food or cash. Monastic rules make this especially visible because ordinary discipline had to be modified when bodies failed: travel could be undertaken to obtain medicine, special foods could be allowed, and companions could be assigned to nursing. The same mechanisms must have existed outside monasteries, although direct household records do not survive. This is why health belongs within socio-economic history rather than in a separate history of ideas. Care requires time; medicines require acquisition; prolonged sickness shifts labour to others; specialist healers can charge fees; and urban density concentrates both demand and risk. The effect would not be equal across society. Wealthier households could mobilise servants, stored grain, transport and expert attention more readily than labourers or migrants whose subsistence depended on continuous work.

18.5 The professional healer is visible in literature before we can count physicians

Early Buddhist literature uses the figure of the physician, *vejja*, as a recognisable specialist, and the *Jīvaka* cycle gives unusually detailed narrative form to that profession. *Jīvaka* is associated with the Magadhan court, wealthy merchants and the Buddha's community. The stories portray diagnosis, prognosis, medicines, procedures, payment and professional reputation. They are literary narratives transmitted within monastic collections and cannot be treated as hospital case sheets. Their historical value lies elsewhere: an audience

could understand a world in which trained healers competed, fees mattered, rulers retained expert physicians, merchants sought treatment, and therapeutic skill created social capital. Jīvaka therefore provides a comparative eastern-Gangetic anchor rather than a local census for Mithilā or Aṅga. The narratives also show medicine crossing social institutions. Court, city, guild-like merchant interests and monastery can all make claims on one specialist's time. Health care was thus embedded in patronage and exchange rather than isolated as an autonomous profession.

18.6 Jīvaka's fame should not be converted into proof of a standardised medical curriculum

Later retellings often present Jīvaka as a model graduate of Takṣaśilā and then use his biography to describe a formal ancient medical university. The safer inference is narrower. Buddhist traditions remember advanced training under a renowned teacher and a career based on demonstrable therapeutic competence. Chapter 17 already distinguished teacher-centred learning from anachronistic university models; the same rule applies here. Medical expertise could be transmitted through prolonged apprenticeship, observation and practice without a bureaucratic degree system. The Jīvaka narratives also accumulated legendary features across different Buddhist recensions, including differing parentage and increasingly elaborate cures. Those variations are evidence for the growth of a healer ideal, not reasons to reject the whole tradition. What can be retained is the social type: a physician attached to royal and urban patrons, whose reputation depended on outcomes and whose knowledge was sufficiently specialised to distinguish him from ordinary household care.

18.7 Narrative surgery is evidence for an imagined therapeutic repertoire, not a modern operation report

The Vinaya cycle attributes striking procedures to Jīvaka, including treatment of a wealthy merchant with a severe head condition and the king's anal fistula. Such episodes have often been translated into modern labels such as “neurosurgery,” which is too precise for the evidence. The narratives do indicate that cutting, probing, wound treatment and other invasive procedures were thinkable components of skilled healing. Elsewhere the Vinaya regulates or prohibits certain surgical actions for monks, again showing familiarity with bodily intervention. But literary descriptions must not be converted into modern operative statistics or uncritical claims about technique. Classical Suśruta material gives surgery a much fuller systematic exposition, yet the extant text is layered and later in form. A responsible history therefore distinguishes three levels: early narrative awareness of invasive therapy, monastic regulation of procedures, and later textual systematisation. The sequence is historically significant even when it cannot yield a single date for the “invention” of surgery.

18.8 The Buddhist Medicine Khandhaka preserves a practical pharmacology of monastic need

The Bhesajjakhandhaka, the Medicine Khandhaka of the Pāli Vinaya, records repeated adjustments to illness. Among its best-known allowances are five tonics—ghee, butter, oil, honey and sugar or molasses—permitted to sick monks under storage rules. Other sections discuss medicines derived from roots and other plant parts, salts, preparations, foods and specific treatments. Parallel medicine sections occur in several other Vinaya traditions, which suggests that the management of sickness was not an incidental Theravāda concern. The rules are not a medical textbook organised by anatomy or disease classification. They are institutional law generated by practical questions: may this substance be consumed outside the normal meal time, how

long may it be stored, what may be accepted, and what procedure is permissible? Precisely because the genre is regulatory, it gives unusually concrete evidence that monastic communities repeatedly encountered illness and had to build therapeutic flexibility into ordinary discipline.

18.9 Food and medicine overlapped rather than belonging to sharply separate categories

Early monastic regulation shows that the boundary between nourishment and medicine was porous. Ghee, honey, oils, rice gruel and other preparations could be valued for both caloric and therapeutic reasons. A person weakened by vomiting or digestive illness did not need a modern distinction between “drug” and “diet” before receiving a useful intervention. This overlap matters for the broader study region, where most treatment probably occurred within households using foods, plants, oils, heat, massage, rest and other accessible resources before a specialist was summoned. It also complicates economic interpretation. Medicinal care could draw on ordinary market goods, agricultural products and gifts rather than on a separate pharmaceutical sector. Monastic rules about accepting and storing such substances show how religious institutions converted lay donations into a managed reserve for bodily emergencies. The history of health is therefore connected directly to Chapter 10’s agriculture, Chapter 12’s markets and Chapter 16’s institutional economy.

18.10 Nursing was recognised as skilled moral labour inside the Saṅgha

A famous Vinaya episode describes a monk with dysentery lying neglected in his own excrement and urine. The Buddha and Ānanda wash and move him, after which the community is instructed that monks must care for one another. The passage goes beyond a general moral command: it discusses who should tend a sick monk and what makes a caregiver competent. Suitable medicine, beneficial food, willingness to clean bodily waste, attention to changes in the patient’s condition and supportive speech all appear within the account. The historical importance is institutional. Nursing is represented as labour requiring knowledge, patience and unpleasant physical tasks, not as an automatic extension of affection. Care could fall to teacher, pupil, co-resident or ultimately the Saṅgha. This does not prove the existence of a hospital ward in early Vaiśālī or Campā. It does show that organised religious communities could transform bodily dependency into enforceable collective obligation.

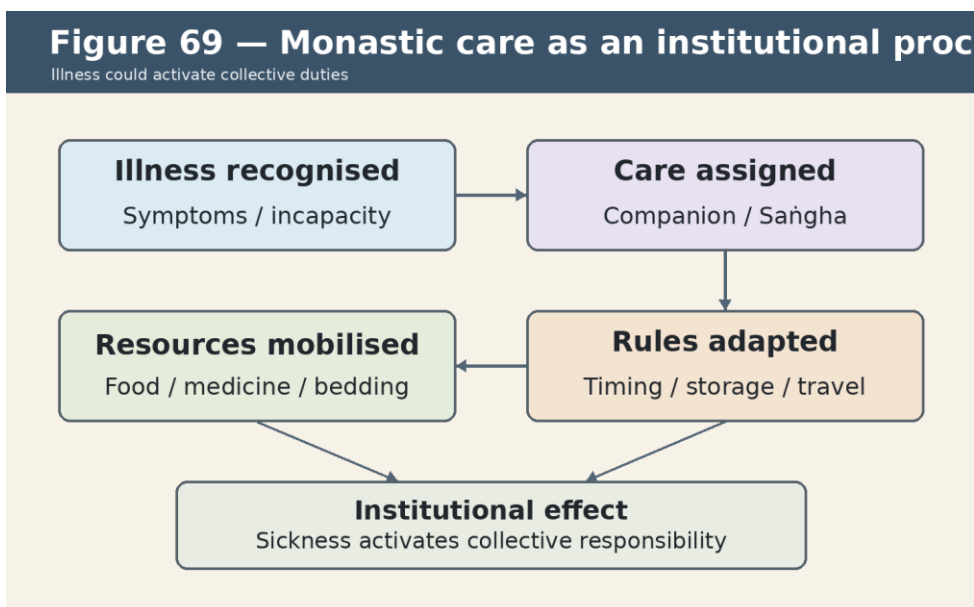


Figure 69 — Buddhist monastic care could turn illness into collective duties of nursing, provisioning and temporary rule adaptation.

18.11 The monastery could redistribute resources toward sickness without becoming a hospital

Once illness activates collective obligation, food, medicine, bedding, water and labour have to be redirected. Buddhist rules allowing travel to seek medicines or suitable provisions show that the care network could extend beyond one residence. Lay donors were crucial because the Saṅgha did not produce all of its own subsistence. A sick monk therefore stood at the centre of a chain joining caregiver, donor, market, medicinal substance and monastic authority. This is an institutional economy of health. Yet it is important not to call every monastery a hospital. Purpose-built infirmaries and more elaborate medical establishments are better documented in later periods and other regions. For the early historic phase, the safest claim is that monasteries possessed rules and social mechanisms for nursing and treatment, and that these mechanisms could make them resilient communities for people who had renounced ordinary household support.

18.12 The body in Buddhist thought was both a site of suffering and an object of practical care

Buddhist teaching repeatedly treats bodily existence as impermanent, vulnerable and incapable of providing lasting security. Contemplations of body parts, illness, ageing and death can weaken attachment to the body. That doctrinal devaluation does not produce indifference to suffering. The Vinaya's medical allowances show a pragmatic middle position: the body is not a possession to be beautified without limit, but it is the material support required for practice. Food, medicine, shelter and nursing are therefore legitimate when they serve recovery and disciplined life. This distinction is historically useful because it prevents a false opposition between "religion" and "medicine." Medical practice did not need to be secular in the modern sense to be empirical and practical. A community could simultaneously interpret illness within a moral-spiritual universe and choose remedies based on observed bodily effects.

18.13 Jain asceticism placed a sharper ethical pressure on bodily treatment

Early Jain monastic literature places exceptional emphasis on *ahiṃsā*, restraint and endurance. Treatment can create ethical problems when obtaining or applying medicine harms living beings, and attachment to bodily comfort can itself be treated as spiritually dangerous. The exemplary ascetic is therefore capable of bearing heat, hunger, disease and injury without making preservation of the body the highest value. Yet the tradition is more complex than a simple prohibition on medicine. Early canonical rules and later discussions preserve circumstances in which sick mendicants may receive food or assistance, and later Śvetāmbara commentarial literature gives much fuller attention to medical procedures. For the period of Vaiśālī and Mahāvīra, the key historical point is the tension itself: a community committed to radical non-violence and detachment still had to decide what kinds of care were compatible with ascetic discipline. This is evidence about the social governance of bodies, even when it does not yield a pharmacopoeia comparable to the Buddhist Vinaya.

18.14 Jain restraint and Buddhist therapeutic flexibility should not be turned into absolute opposites

Comparing traditions can easily produce caricature: "Buddhists treated illness; Jains refused treatment." The sources do not support so simple a division. Buddhist monks were subject to restrictions and were not

licensed to pursue bodily comfort without limit; Jain texts contain exceptions, graded capacities and obligations toward sick companions. Both traditions understood the body as temporary and morally consequential. Both also confronted communities composed of people with different strength, age and health. The contrast is therefore one of emphasis and institutional elaboration. Buddhist Vinaya literature codifies a large body of medicinal allowances relatively early, while early Jain ascetic literature places more weight on endurance and *ahiṃsā*-based restraint; later Jain commentaries negotiate practical medicine much more extensively. In the Vaiśālī–Videha landscape, where Buddhist and Jain communities interacted with the same towns and patrons, these were competing answers to a shared problem rather than isolated civilisations of health.

18.15 Women's health is visible only intermittently and must not be reconstructed from silence

The early sources are overwhelmingly composed and transmitted within male-dominated institutions, so reproductive health, menstruation, childbirth and women's household care are less directly documented than their social importance warrants. Buddhist nunneries had to manage illness and bodily requirements, and wider medical traditions eventually developed substantial material on reproduction, pregnancy and paediatrics. Jain texts also preserve conceptions of embodiment and later embryological reflection. But a detailed local history of childbirth in early Mithilā or Vaiśālī cannot be recovered from these materials without speculation. The correct response to silence is not to erase women. Childbearing, lactation and care of infants necessarily shaped household labour and mortality risk; women also participated as donors, nuns, attendants and transmitters of practical remedies. These are historically secure social roles even when the techniques of a particular midwife remain unknown.

18.16 Childhood and dependency enlarged the household economy of care

Children require food preparation, protection, treatment and supervision long before they can contribute adult labour. Early medical terminology and later systematic traditions recognise childhood as a distinct therapeutic problem, while Jīvaka's name is sometimes connected in later scholarship with the field of child care. None of this allows a regional infant mortality rate to be calculated. The social implication is more basic: health care was embedded in intergenerational households. A prolonged childhood illness tied up adult labour and food; death altered lineage and inheritance expectations; successful care strengthened the continuity of the household. Religious institutions also admitted novices, creating another setting in which dependent younger bodies required discipline and support. The history of medicine therefore intersects with Chapter 7's family history: bodily dependency is one of the reasons households and institutions redistribute resources across age groups.

18.17 Occupational injury belonged to the ordinary health burden of an agrarian-craft society

Agriculture exposed bodies to cuts, falls, animal injuries, heat, waterlogged fields and repetitive strain. Metalworking added burns and sharp tools; building work added heavy loads and falls; river transport added drowning risk; warfare and policing added weapon trauma. Excavated iron knives, sickles, blades, lances and craft tools from early historic sites show the material environment in which such injuries could occur, though an artefact alone does not prove a recorded accident. Treatment of wounds, oils, bandages, cleaning and rest would therefore have been common practical knowledge. Skilled healers became especially valuable when injuries exceeded household competence. Occupational health also had a class dimension: people whose

livelihood depended on manual labour could lose income immediately when injured, while elite households could transfer tasks to servants or dependants. The body thus linked technology and inequality.

18.18 Water management at Vaiśālī belongs to health history without becoming a sanitation myth

Excavations at Vaiśālī revealed substantial architecture together with ring-wells, soakage arrangements and drains in the long early historic sequence. These installations matter because dense settlement requires repeated decisions about obtaining water and removing wastewater. They may reduce some forms of contamination or local waterlogging, but archaeological form does not reveal the microbial quality of water. Nor does a drain prove a civic health department. The safest conclusion is that urban residents invested labour and materials in managing water at household and settlement scale. That investment would have affected convenience, cleanliness, craft production and bodily exposure. It also provides a material counterweight to textual images of prosperous Vaiśālī: the city was not only an arena of assemblies and religious encounters, but a built environment whose inhabitants had to solve mundane problems of water, refuse and crowding.

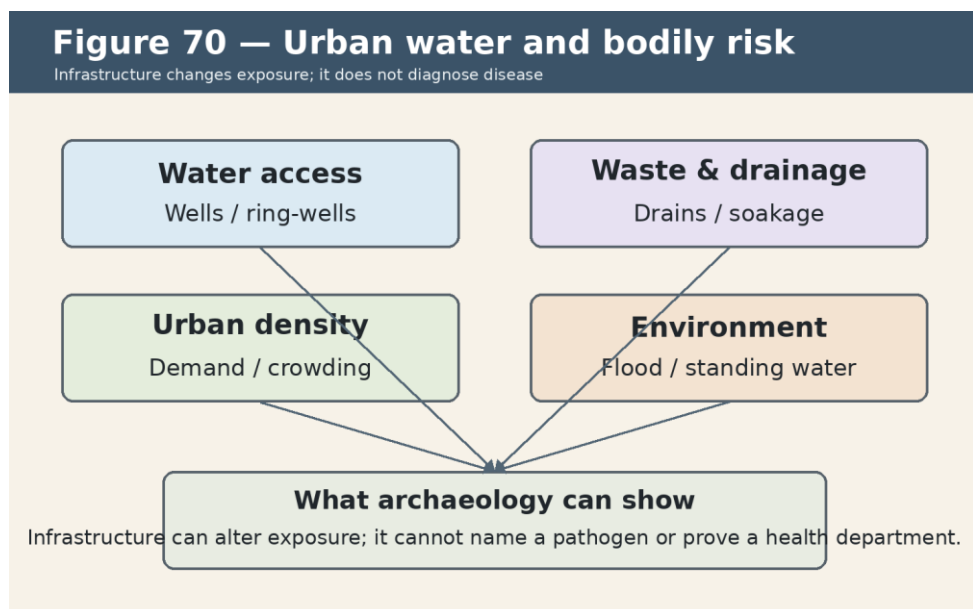


Figure 70 — Urban water and drainage infrastructure can alter bodily exposure without by itself proving disease rates or a formal public-health administration.

18.19 Campā's ring-wells and brick drains show comparable urban pressures in Aṅga

The Campā excavations near Nathnagar recorded ring-wells, brick wells and brick drains in early historic construction phases, including contexts associated with Northern Black Polished Ware and later rebuilding. As in Vaiśālī, these features should be interpreted functionally before ideologically. They document investment in water supply or soakage and in the directed movement of wastewater. Campā's riverine setting did not eliminate the need for local water management; proximity to the Ganga could coexist with seasonal flooding, silt, standing water and the practical difficulty of obtaining convenient clean water inside a dense settlement. The archaeological evidence therefore supports a history of urban bodily infrastructure, not a claim that Campā possessed a modern sanitation system. This distinction is important because the same

town is richly represented in Buddhist literature. Text and archaeology can converge on urban density and institutional complexity without one being used to invent details absent from the other.

18.20 Floodplain ecology created changing health risks that cannot be diagnosed retrospectively

Mithilā, Vajji and much of north Bihar occupy riverine plains shaped by flooding, channel migration, waterlogging and seasonal pools; Campā belongs to a different but still strongly riverine Ganga environment. Such landscapes can influence water-borne disease, vector habitats, nutrition and access to settlements. Yet modern disease geography must not be projected unchanged into antiquity. Malaria, cholera, kala-azar and other historically important diseases have specific pathogen, vector and demographic histories, and ancient texts rarely permit secure identification. What can be reconstructed is exposure structure. Floods may contaminate water and interrupt food supply; drought may concentrate people around fewer water sources; standing water can support insects; heat affects spoilage; and seasonal movement alters contact networks. Health history thus requires environmental mechanisms rather than retrospective diagnosis. Chapter 1's warning that geography is capacity rather than destiny applies equally to disease.

18.21 Famine and epidemic are linked in the later Vaiśālī plague tradition, but the tradition is not a contemporary report

The famous background story attached to the Ratana Sutta describes Vaiśālī suffering scarcity, death and pestilence before the Buddha's intervention. In the Pāli commentarial tradition, crop failure and famine lead to deaths, exposed corpses and an epidemic; supernatural beings are also part of the causal narrative. This is valuable evidence for how later Buddhist tradition imagined urban catastrophe: food shortage, mortality, environmental pollution, political response and religious protection are connected in a single story. But the explanatory background is later than the canonical verses and cannot be treated as a secure eyewitness record of a specific fifth-century-BCE epidemic. The correct historical use is comparative and representational. It demonstrates that Vaiśālī became a remembered setting for collective crisis and that Buddhist narrative could integrate material and supernatural causation. It cannot supply a pathogen name, death toll or exact date.

18.22 Aśoka's second major rock edict marks a new scale of public language about medical welfare

By the third century BCE, Major Rock Edict II states that the king made provision for medical treatment for humans and animals and caused medicinal herbs, roots and fruits to be introduced where lacking; wells and trees along roads form part of the same welfare language. This is firmer chronological evidence than many literary medical narratives because it is an imperial inscription. It shows that healing resources could be represented as an obligation of kingship on a large territorial scale. Yet translation matters: older renderings sometimes speak of "hospitals," while the Prakrit is better understood as arrangements or provision for treatment. The edict therefore does not prove that hospitals stood at Vaiśālī, Campā or every Mauryan town. Its significance is institutional and political: by Aśoka's reign, medical care, medicinal plants, water and route amenities could be gathered into an explicitly royal programme of welfare.

18.23 Medicinal plants connected health to cultivation, trade and ecological knowledge

Aśoka's reference to importing and planting useful medicinal herbs, roots and fruits is important because medicines are material commodities. They must be identified, gathered or cultivated, processed, stored and

transported. The Buddhist Vinaya's lists of plant-derived remedies similarly imply practical botanical knowledge embedded in wider exchange. Forest edges, gardens, market stalls and household stores could all participate in a therapeutic supply chain. Some substances were locally common; others may have travelled with merchants and itinerant specialists. This creates another bridge between health and economic history. A healer's skill depended not only on diagnosis but on access to ingredients, while institutional communities needed donors or funds to acquire them. However, the presence of a plant name in a text does not prove its cultivation in early Mithilā or Angā. Regional archaeobotanical confirmation is required before localising a particular *materia medica*.

18.24 The market for treatment could combine fees, patronage, gifts and charity

Jīvaka stories repeatedly connect healing with payment and patronage. Wealthy patients can promise large rewards; royal command can redirect a physician's services; religious communities receive care through patronage networks. Such narratives reveal several economic models operating simultaneously. A specialist may sell expertise, a ruler may retain or command it, a donor may subsidise care, and a monastery may redistribute donated resources to sick members. Household treatment, meanwhile, may require no monetary payment at all because care is provided by kin. Early health care was therefore not a single "market" in the modern sense. It was a mixed economy of expertise and obligation. This also means access was unequal. Reputation attracts the wealthy and powerful first unless social or religious norms create alternative channels. The Vinaya's collective nursing duty is one such institutional counterweight: care for a sick monk is justified by membership in the community rather than ability to pay.

18.25 Cleanliness, excreta and bodily waste were practical problems before germ theory

The dysentery nursing episode is striking because it does not conceal excrement, urine and the physical labour of washing a patient. Monastic rules elsewhere regulate bathing, water use, latrine behaviour and cleanliness. These practices should not be redescribed as germ theory; their justifications came from comfort, discipline, purity, social decency and observed practical consequences rather than microbiology. Yet behaviour can reduce exposure even when causal theory is different from modern medicine. The same caution applies to urban drains. A society need not know bacteria to discover that standing wastewater, foul smells or contaminated living spaces are undesirable. Health history should therefore separate effective practice from explanatory theory. This avoids two opposite errors: claiming ancient people possessed modern biomedical science, or assuming that without modern theory their practices had no practical health effects.

18.26 Classical Ayurveda is essential comparative evidence but its chronology must remain visible

The Caraka Saṃhitā and Suśruta Saṃhitā are foundational witnesses to systematic Indian medicine, but both are layered works whose surviving redactions belong around the turn of the Common Era and later stages of transmission, even where they preserve older material. They provide elaborate frameworks of diagnosis, physiology, diet, pharmacology, surgery and professional conduct far beyond what the early Vinaya sets out. Their importance for Chapter 18 is therefore comparative and developmental. They demonstrate what Indian medical traditions became capable of systematising and help scholars recognise continuities in substances or therapeutic concerns. They do not license the claim that every doctrine of the classical compendia was already taught in fifth-century-BCE Vaiśālī, Mithilā or Campā. The safest language is that early Buddhist and other evidence preserves antecedent and parallel practices within the broader history from which classical Ayurveda emerged.

18.27 Medical theory and medical practice need not have developed at the same speed

People can accumulate effective remedies and procedural skills before a unified theory explains them. Conversely, a sophisticated textual theory may circulate among specialists without governing every household cure. Early Indian medicine should therefore not be forced into a single evolutionary ladder from “magic” to “science.” Buddhist, Brahmanical and Jain materials combine ritual, moral, dietary, pharmacological and observational responses in different proportions. A spell, a change of food, a plant preparation and a wound dressing can coexist without participants experiencing a contradiction. Systematic doṣa theory becomes central in classical Ayurveda, but the history of treatment cannot be reduced to the history of that theory. For the study region, this means asking practical questions first: what bodily problem is recognised, who responds, what resource is used, and what institution authorises the response? Only then should doctrinal classifications be compared.

18.28 Health inequality followed differences in food, shelter, labour and social support

The surviving texts naturally highlight kings, monks, famous physicians and prosperous urban householders. Most sick people were none of these. A landless worker, enslaved or dependent person, itinerant labourer, widow, poor cultivator or marginal household faced a different capacity to stop work, obtain nourishing food or call a reputed healer. Urban wealth could create both resources and crowding. Monastic membership could provide care unavailable to an isolated individual, but it also imposed discipline and dependence on donors. Gender and age shaped who performed unpaid care and whose illness commanded resources. Although exact mortality and morbidity rates are unavailable, these social mechanisms are historically robust. Health inequality can be reconstructed through access to food, water, rest, skilled attention, transport and supportive institutions even when diagnoses remain unknown. The body therefore becomes one of the clearest places where economic hierarchy is lived rather than merely classified.

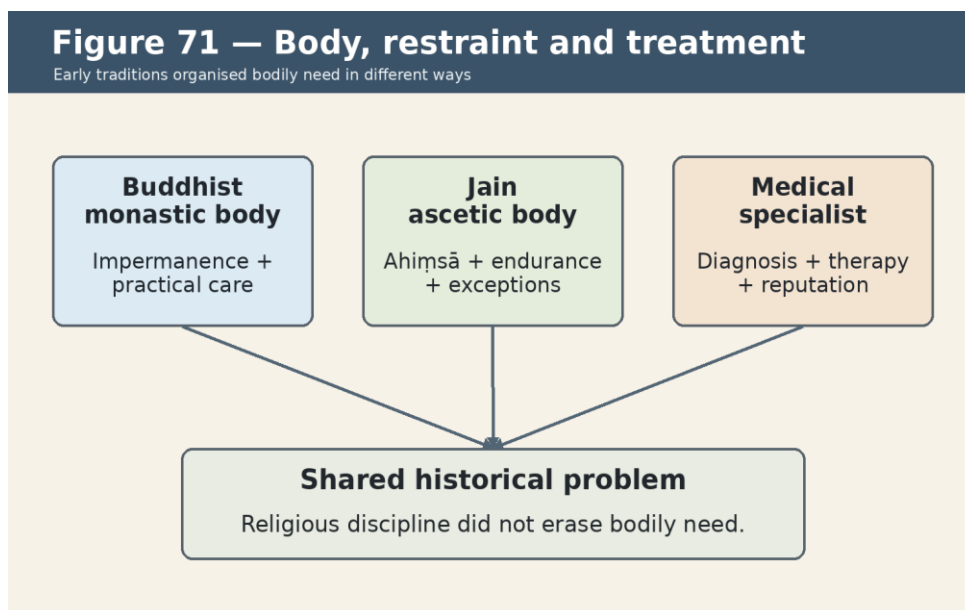


Figure 71 — Early Buddhist, Jain and specialist-medical traditions negotiated bodily suffering through different combinations of restraint, care and treatment.

18.29 The strongest regional conclusions are infrastructural and institutional, not diagnostic

After the evidence is controlled, several conclusions are secure. Vaiśālī and Campā were dense settlements that invested in water and drainage technologies. Buddhist institutions developed explicit rules for medicine, diet and nursing, making sickness a collective organisational problem. Jain ascetic traditions negotiated a more restrictive but not absolutely uniform relationship to bodily treatment. Professional physicians were socially intelligible and could move between court, merchants and religious communities. Mauryan royal ideology publicly claimed responsibility for treatment, medicinal plants and route-side welfare. What remains uncertain is equally important: no ancient disease map can be drawn for Mithilā–Vajji–Āṅga; no population life expectancy can be calculated; no excavated ring-well identifies a hospital; and classical medical doctrines cannot be projected unchanged into earlier centuries. The history becomes stronger, not weaker, when these limits are made explicit.

18.30 Conclusion: health was produced by households, specialists, institutions and environments together

Early health in Mithilā–Videha, Vajji and Āṅga was never the product of medicine alone. Bodies depended on nutrition, water, shelter, work rhythms, household care and environmental conditions. When ordinary care failed, specialists could enter; when household support was renounced, monastic institutions had to create alternative systems of nursing and provision. Buddhist and Jain traditions show different ethical negotiations of the sick and disciplined body, while Aśoka's edict shows medical welfare entering the language of territorial kingship. Archaeology at Vaiśālī and Campā supplies the material ground beneath these texts: dense urban life required built solutions for water and wastewater even when disease itself remains archaeologically invisible. Taken together, the evidence reveals a plural health economy rather than a single medical system. Its history lies in the relationships among vulnerability, care, resources, knowledge and authority. That framework also provides the transition to Part III, where ritual, religious practice and cultural formation will be examined without separating them artificially from the bodies and institutions that sustained them.

Table 18.1 — Evidence for health, medicine and the body, and limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Key references / control
Vaiśālī ring-wells, soakage arrangements and drains	Investment in water/waste management within a dense early historic settlement	Specific pathogens, disease rates, a hospital, or a municipal health department	Sinha & Roy; ASI reviews
Campā ring-wells, brick wells and drains	Urban water and wastewater infrastructure across successive construction phases	That every installation had a hygienic function or that river proximity ensured clean water	ASI 1970–75 reviews
Buddhist Bhesajakkhandhaka	Medicinal allowances, foods, storage rules and repeated institutional response to sickness	Population-wide medical practice or a complete medical theory	Horner; Sik; Zysk

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Key references / control
Vinaya sick-monk nursing episode	Collective obligation, skilled nursing tasks and care relationships inside the Saṅgha	A purpose-built hospital or universal lay access to care	Horner; Fish
Jīvaka narratives	Recognisable specialist physician, reputation, fees, royal and merchant patronage, invasive therapy in narrative	A verbatim case record, modern “neurosurgery,” or a standardised university degree	Horner; Zysk
Early Jain monastic rules	Ascetic valuation of endurance, ahimsā-based constraints and limited accommodations for sickness	Complete rejection of all medicine by all Jains	Deo; Stuart
Aśoka Major Rock Edict II	Third-century-BCE royal provision for human/animal treatment, medicinal plants, wells and trees	Hospitals at every Mauryan town or a specific clinic at Vaiśālī or Campā	Hultzsck
Caraka and Suśruta traditions	Later systematic Indian medicine useful for tracing mature theories and comparison	That all classical doctrines already operated unchanged in fifth-century-BCE eastern India	Meulenbeld; Wujastyk; Zysk
Vaiśālī famine/pestilence background to Ratana Sutta	Later Buddhist memory linking scarcity, mortality, pollution, political response and religious protection	A contemporary epidemiological report, pathogen identification or numerical mortality	Commentarial tradition; use with chronological caution

PART III

RELIGION, RITUAL AND CULTURAL FORMATION

Chapters 19–25

Chapter 19 — From Vedic ritual landscapes to regional religious cultures

Chapter argument. Religious change in early Mithilā–Videha, Vajji and Aṅga was cumulative and plural. Vedic ritual traditions were extended eastward and transformed in the courts of Videha; Buddhist, Jain and other śramaṇa communities then became deeply embedded in the urban and political landscapes of Vaiśālī and Campā; and Mauryan and later monumentality made some sacred memories archaeologically durable. The chapter keeps textual, archaeological and inscriptional layers separate, treats “Greater Magadha” as a debated interpretive model rather than a fixed cultural border, and rejects both a timeless regional religion and a simple replacement sequence.

19.1 Religious history must begin with overlapping practices rather than modern labels

The religious history of early Mithilā–Videha, Vajji and Aṅga cannot be reconstructed by projecting later, neatly bounded communities backward into the first millennium BCE. “Vedic,” “Brahmanical,” “Buddhist” and “Jain” are indispensable analytical terms, but each covers internal variation and long chronological development. Households could maintain rites of kinship, fertility, ancestors, protection and seasonal obligation that elite texts barely describe. Kings could patronise sacrificial specialists while also receiving renunciators and teachers. Merchants and urban householders could donate to more than one religious network. Ascetic communities themselves debated discipline, doctrine and acceptable relations with lay society. The chapter therefore treats religion as a changing field of institutions, practices, patronage and ideas. It asks how ritual authority moved eastward, how Videha became a celebrated courtly setting for Vedic and Upaniṣadic discourse, how Vajji and Aṅga became central to śramaṇa itineraries, and how later monuments materialised memories that were not necessarily monumental at the beginning.

19.2 Four evidence streams have to be controlled before they are combined

The strongest reconstruction separates textual memory, archaeology, early Buddhist and Jain traditions, and later inscriptional or monumental evidence. The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa and Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad are exceptionally important for Videha, but they are literary works with ritual and philosophical agendas, not annals. Archaeology can identify settlement horizons, structures, ceramics, figurines, shrines and later stupas, yet material objects rarely declare the identity of their users. Buddhist and Jain canons preserve dense place traditions for Vaiśālī and Campā, but their redaction histories require caution. Mauryan pillars, stūpa enlargements and inscriptions are firmer material evidence for the third century BCE and after, not automatic proof of an identical monumental landscape in the Buddha’s lifetime. Historical confidence rises when independent streams converge on place, chronology and institution; it falls when a later sacred biography is simply mapped onto an earlier archaeological layer.

19.3 The Śatapatha story of Videgha Māthava is a charter of ritual eastward movement

A famous passage of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa tells how Agni Vaiśvānara moved eastward from the Sarasvatī while Videgha Māthava and the priest Gotama Rāhūgaṇa followed. The fire reaches the Sadānīrā, a river flowing from the northern mountain, and the text remembers a time when Brahmins did not cross because the land beyond had not been “tasted” by Agni. The passage then contrasts that remembered past

with a present in which Brahmins live east of the river and cultivation is established. This is powerful evidence for how Vedic tradition conceptualised the incorporation of an eastern region into its ritual geography. It should not, however, be literalised into a story of forest fires clearing virgin land or a single invading migration. Michael Witzel’s influential reading treats the narrative as a charter of Sanskritisation and ritual orthopraxy. Even without adopting every implication of that model, the text clearly encodes a remembered boundary and its eventual crossing.

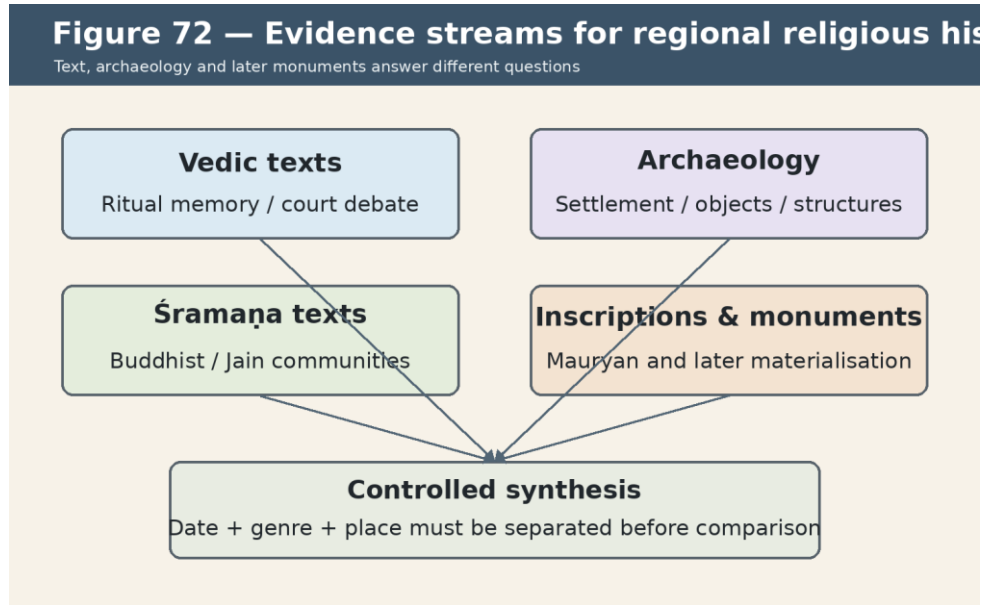


Figure 72 — Regional religious history requires separate control of Vedic texts, archaeology, śramaṇa traditions and later monumental evidence.

19.4 Sadānīrā was a symbolic threshold, but its exact modern identification remains debated

The Śatapatha passage makes the Sadānīrā separate Kosala and Videha, and later scholarship has often identified it with the Gaṇḍak or one of the river systems descending from the Himalayan foothills. Exact identification is less secure than the narrative function. The river marks a transition between an older ritual centre and a region being incorporated into the cultural world of the text. Rivers in such narratives can operate simultaneously as real geographic features, political boundaries and ritual symbols. Because north Bihar’s channels have shifted over long periods, one-to-one modern mapping should be cautious. The more durable conclusion is that the tradition locates Videha east of a significant north–south river threshold and remembers Brahmanical presence there as historically acquired rather than primordial. That is precisely why the passage matters for socio-cultural history: it preserves a memory of cultural change inside Vedic tradition itself.

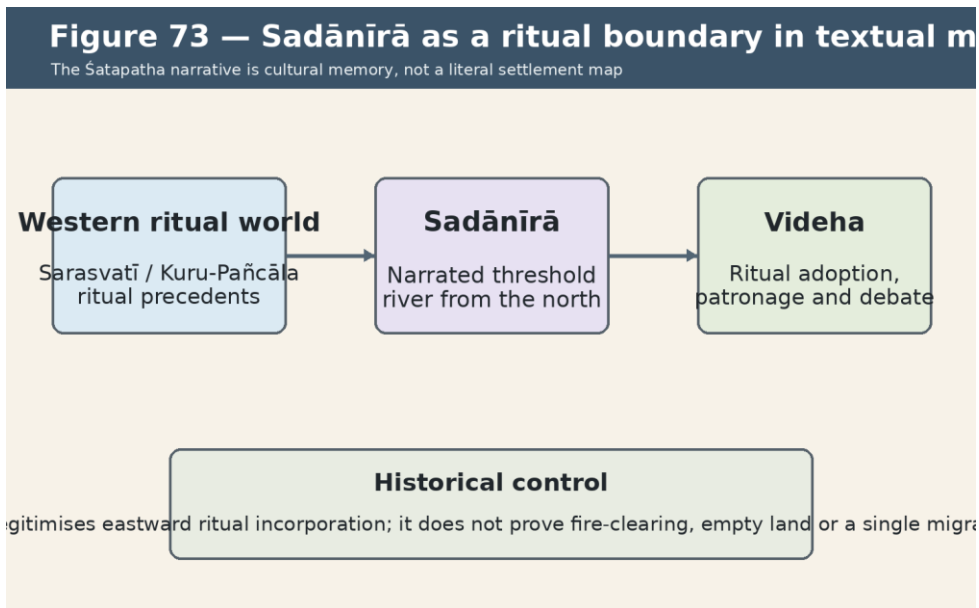


Figure 73 — The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa remembers Sadānīrā as a ritual-cultural threshold; the narrative should not be read as a literal fire-clearing or single-migration map.

19.5 Videha did not remain a peripheral recipient of western ritual authority

The later books of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa reverse the perspective of simple eastward diffusion. Janaka of Videha appears as a major royal patron who questions Yājñavalkya about the Agnihotra and sponsors sacrificial gatherings with substantial gifts. In one celebrated episode a thousand cows are set apart for the most learned ritual specialist, generating a contest of knowledge. These scenes depict Videha as a place where ritual authority is tested and redistributed, not merely imported. Scholars from Kuru-Pañcāla remain important, but the eastern court becomes a prestigious arena in its own right. The transformation is historically significant even if the episodes cannot be dated as court minutes. A region once remembered as outside the full reach of sacrificial orthopraxy is later represented as a centre capable of attracting, rewarding and interrogating leading specialists.

19.6 Sacrificial patronage was an economic and political institution as well as a religious act

Large sacrifices required animals, grain, dairy products, fuel, vessels, specialist labour, hospitality and gifts. The religious prestige of a Janaka therefore rested on material mobilisation as well as doctrinal knowledge. Cattle given to priests were stores of wealth and productive assets; gold attached to horns in Upaniṣadic narrative dramatizes both value and status. Sacrifice also assembled people who might otherwise be dispersed: rulers, ritualists, students, dependants and observers. Such gatherings could reinforce hierarchy, create alliances and circulate knowledge. This does not mean every household participated in elite śrauta ritual or that ritual expenditure dominated the whole economy. It means that royal sacrifice was one institutional mechanism through which surplus, prestige and intellectual competition became linked. In a socio-cultural history, the ritual field must therefore be connected to cattle, food, labour and patronage rather than treated as pure theology.

19.7 Janaka's court is remembered as a place where ritual knowledge opened into philosophical inquiry

The Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad uses the court of Janaka of Videha as a recurring setting for encounters with Yājñavalkya and other learned figures. Questions move beyond correct sacrificial performance toward speech, mind, self, death and ultimate reality. The literary architecture is important: a royal court provides the public stage on which specialists compete, women such as Gārgī intervene in debate, and knowledge can command rewards. The transition from ritual exegesis to speculation should not be described as a sudden rejection of sacrifice. Much Upaniṣadic thinking grows through reinterpretation of ritual categories and through competition over who truly understands them. Videha's place in this literature therefore illustrates transformation within elite religious culture. It also shows why a simple binary—"Vedic west" versus "anti-Vedic east"—can obscure processes in which eastern courts appropriated, reshaped and amplified Vedic traditions.

19.8 The presence of women in elite debate is significant but does not prove general gender equality

Gārgī Vācaknavī is one of the most striking voices in the Bṛhadāraṇyaka's Janaka-cycle debates, while Maitreyī's dialogue with Yājñavalkya explores wealth, immortality and the self in a domestic setting. Their literary presence establishes that the tradition could imagine women as serious participants in philosophical inquiry. It does not establish how many women were educated, which social groups had access to such learning, or whether women could normally claim the same ritual roles as men. The contrast is instructive. Elite texts preserve exceptional female intellectual authority precisely in a social world structured by household, marriage, inheritance and gendered ritual roles. A regional history should neither erase these women nor convert their exceptional visibility into a demographic claim. Their importance lies in demonstrating that the remembered intellectual culture of Videha was more socially complex than a closed male priestly school.

19.9 Archaeology cannot excavate "Vedic religion" from a pot type

Ceramic traditions, iron objects, settlement expansion and fortifications are crucial for reconstructing the material world in which religious change occurred, but no pottery class is inherently Buddhist, Jain or Vedic. The temptation to equate a ware with a people or a doctrine is especially dangerous in the middle Ganga plain, where settlement sequences cross major textual transitions. Northern Black Polished Ware, for example, is associated with early urbanism and wide exchange, not with one creed. Terracotta figurines may reflect household devotion, play, ornament or ritual, depending on context. Fire installations likewise require functional analysis before being called Vedic altars. The archaeology of Mithilā-Vajji and Aṅga therefore contributes most securely by reconstructing population density, urban spaces, craft production, routes and later identifiable monuments. Religious identities enter only when objects, inscriptions, architecture and textual geography converge.

19.10 The rise of śramaṇa movements belongs to the same changing eastern social world

By the middle of the first millennium BCE the eastern Gangetic plain had become a major theatre of renunciant experimentation. Buddhist, Jain, Ājīvika and other teachers criticised or bypassed aspects of sacrificial authority, developed disciplines of wandering and restraint, and competed for lay support. Their emergence is inseparable from new political formations, expanding towns and mobile routes, but no single

economic cause explains their doctrines. Renunciation could reject household status while remaining materially dependent on householders. Debate could oppose Vedic claims while borrowing a shared vocabulary of karma, rebirth, austerity and liberation whose historical development is contested. The important regional point is that Vajji, Magadha and Aṅga are not peripheral in these traditions; they are core landscapes of movement, patronage and doctrinal encounter. Religious pluralisation was therefore built into the social geography of early eastern urbanisation.

19.11 “Greater Magadha” is a useful hypothesis when treated as a model rather than a fixed border

Johannes Bronkhorst has argued that the eastern Gangetic region in which Buddhism and Jainism arose preserved a cultural complex distinct from the Vedic heartland, with ideas and practices that later interacted deeply with Brahmanical traditions. The model has been influential because it takes eastern agency seriously and resists explaining every new idea as a derivative of western Vedic religion. It is also debated. Critics question how sharply the two cultural zones can be separated, how texts should be dated, and whether concepts such as karma and rebirth developed through borrowing, internal Vedic transformation or several intersecting processes. For this volume the model is best used heuristically. It draws attention to regional difference, but it does not erase the Śatapatha’s own evidence for a Vedicised Videha or the Upaniṣadic evidence for intellectual cross-fertilisation. Cultural frontiers were porous, mobile and institutionally specific.

19.12 Vaiśālī became a meeting ground for political assembly and religious mobility

Vaiśālī’s significance in Buddhist and Jain memory rests partly on its political form. The Vajjian and Licchavi environment is represented through assemblies, clan leadership, public deliberation and wealthy urban households. Such a setting created multiple channels of patronage. A teacher did not have to depend on one king; communities could receive support from merchants, courtesans, householders and corporate groups. Buddhist narratives repeatedly place the Buddha among Licchavis and at established meeting places around Vesālī, while Jain traditions connect Mahāvīra closely with the Vaiśālī–Kuṇḍagrāma zone. These textual memories should not be merged uncritically, yet together they make one point securely: the region was imagined as a dense arena of religious mobility and lay interaction. Political plurality and religious plurality need not be causally identical, but they could reinforce a social environment in which competing teachers found audiences.

19.13 Mahāvīra’s Vaiśālī association is central to Jain regional memory

Early Jain traditions associate Mahāvīra with Kuṇḍagrāma or Kuṇḍapura near Vaiśālī and identify him with the Jñātṛka/Nāya clan. Later biographical elaboration adds genealogies, dreams and political relationships, so individual details must be stratified rather than accepted wholesale. The broad regional association, however, is deeply rooted in Jain textual memory. It situates the last Tīrthaṅkara within the same north-Bihari political and urban world that is prominent in Buddhist sources. This does not mean Jainism “began” at one excavated spot that can be securely pointed out today. Sacred topography is often stabilised by later pilgrimage. The historical value lies in the repeated linkage of Mahāvīra, Vaiśālī and the wider Videha–Vajji zone, which makes Jain ascetic networks part of the region’s early socio-cultural history rather than an external addition.

19.14 Jain asceticism reorganised the moral meaning of bodily action

The Jain emphasis on *ahiṃsā*, careful movement, restraint, fasting and vigilance toward living beings gave ordinary actions—eating, walking, drawing water, lighting fires, accepting possessions—a heightened ethical charge. These disciplines were most rigorous for mendicants, while lay followers inhabited graded forms of obligation. In ecological terms, the doctrine made the body’s dependence on other life morally problematic; in social terms, it created a distinctive relationship between ascetics and donors. Renouncers reduced possessions yet required food and temporary shelter from householders. The result was not withdrawal from society but a structured interdependence. Within Vajji and adjacent regions, such networks could move along the same routes and through the same settlements used by merchants, officials and Buddhist mendicants. Religious difference therefore operated through shared infrastructure even when doctrines sharply diverged.

19.15 Buddhist Vaiśālī traditions preserve several distinct institutional memories

Buddhist literature links Vesālī with repeated visits, the Kūṭāgārasālā in the Great Wood, the gift of Ambapālī’s grove, the admission of women to the monastic order in later narrative framing, and controversies that eventually became associated with the Second Council. These events do not belong to one chronological layer, and later redaction can reshape earlier memory. Their cumulative institutional significance is nevertheless substantial. Vaiśālī is remembered not merely as a place where sermons happened but as a site of residence, donation, rule-making and community dispute. Archaeology later adds stupas, monasteries and an Aśokan pillar to this sacred landscape. The safest chronology keeps these layers distinct: early itinerant and rain-retreat traditions; subsequent organisational memory; Mauryan and post-Mauryan monumentality; and still later pilgrimage. Sacred importance was accumulated over time rather than created in a single founding moment.

19.16 Ambapālī’s gift illustrates how religious patronage could cross conventional status boundaries

The Buddhist story of Ambapālī inviting the Buddha and donating her mango grove is historically important whether or not every narrative detail is recoverable as contemporary fact. It depicts a wealthy woman outside the conventional model of a wife acting through a household patriarch as an autonomous patron capable of hospitality and land donation. The story also dramatizes competition for prestige, since Licchavi elites seek the honour of hosting the Buddha. Donation thus becomes a religious, social and political act. A grove can provide space for residence; a meal supports a mobile community; public association with a renowned teacher produces status. Such narratives remind us that early religious economies drew on more varied patrons than kings alone. They also help explain why towns with concentrated wealth and movable property were fertile settings for expanding mendicant institutions.

19.17 Campā in Aṅga was a religious meeting-place embedded in a commercial city

Campā’s early urban importance has already been reconstructed from archaeology, riverine position and textual evidence. Its religious history belongs inside that urban system. The *Dīgha Nikāya*’s *Soṇadaṇḍa Sutta* places the Buddha at Campā and depicts the eminent Brahmin *Soṇadaṇḍa* surrounded by a large following and debating what makes a true Brahmin. The episode is literary, but its social setting is revealing: a prosperous city, recognised Brahmanical status, students or dependants, public reputation and the arrival of a competing teacher. Campā is therefore not simply “Buddhist” because the Buddha visits it, nor simply

“Vedic” because a Brahmin teacher dominates local prestige. The source instead shows religious plurality and argument within an urban centre. Jain traditions also remember Campā and the Aṅga region, reinforcing the conclusion that trade routes and urban concentration supported multiple religious networks.

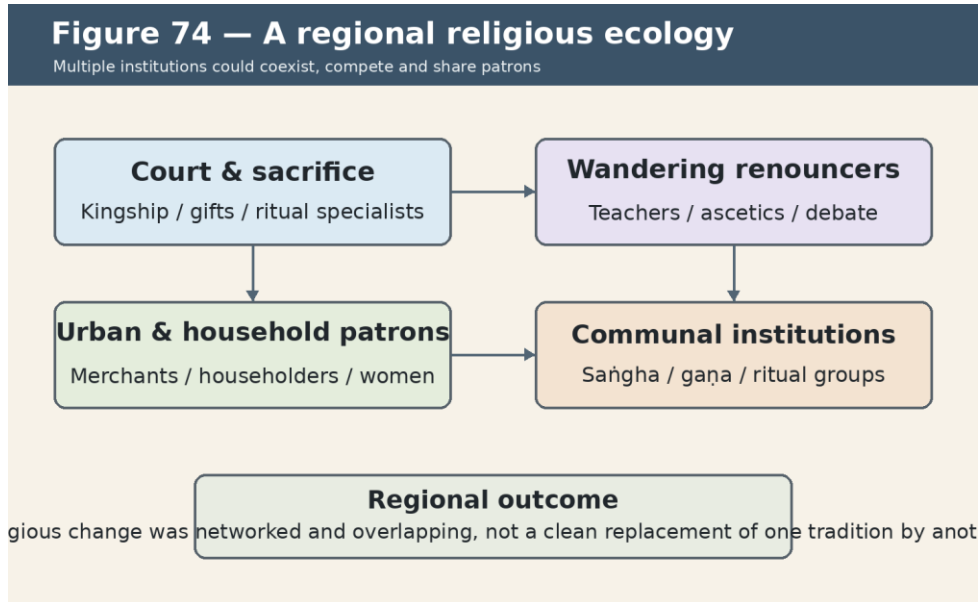


Figure 74 — Courtly ritual, wandering renouncers, urban/household patrons and communal institutions formed an overlapping regional religious ecology.

19.18 Religious debate was a public technology for ranking persons and doctrines

Debate appears repeatedly across the chapter’s evidence: Yājñavalkya among specialists at Janaka’s sacrifice, the Buddha disputing categories of Brahmanhood, Jain teachers defining correct conduct, and monastic communities arguing about discipline. Debate was not modern academic neutrality. Victory could establish authority, attract students, justify gifts and reorder prestige. The right to question and the ability to answer depended on social position, training and audience. Courts, parks, assembly halls, monasteries and household compounds could all become venues. The recurrence of debate across traditions suggests a shared competitive environment even when rules differed. Intellectual history is therefore also social history: doctrines moved through persons whose authority had to be performed, recognised and materially supported.

19.19 The critique of sacrifice did not cause sacrifice to disappear

Buddhist and Jain traditions are often narrated as replacements for Vedic sacrificial religion because they criticised animal killing, hereditary claims or the salvific sufficiency of ritual. Historically, the relationship was more complicated. Brahmanical ritual continued, adapted and interacted with new doctrines; Upaniṣadic speculation had already reinterpreted sacrifice from within Vedic tradition; kings could distribute patronage across competing specialists; and household ritual persisted outside the concerns of monastic texts. Religious change should therefore be described as differentiation, critique and recombination rather than a clean succession. In eastern India especially, the same social world could contain śrauta sacrifice, domestic rites, ascetic fasting, stūpa veneration, gifts to mendicants and local protective cults. The historical question is not “which religion won” at a single date but how institutions gained, lost and transformed particular kinds of authority.

19.20 The archaeological record of early Buddhism begins later than many narrative settings

A major methodological problem is the gap between the lifetime settings of early Buddhist texts and the surviving material record. Archaeologists have identified the great urban centres named in Buddhist narratives, including Vaiśālī, but securely identifiable Buddhist architecture from the pre-Mauryan period is elusive. This does not disprove early Buddhism; wandering mendicants and temporary rain retreats leave weak archaeological signatures. It does mean that a brick monastery or stūpa visible today cannot automatically be dated to the first visit described in a canonical text. The distinction is essential for Vaiśālī. Literary sacred geography may preserve early memory, while excavated monumentality reflects later institutional investment. The development from mobile community to durable complex was itself a major socio-economic transformation: land, bricks, specialised labour, maintenance and donor networks turned remembered places into built religious landscapes.

19.21 The Vaiśālī relic stūpa illustrates cumulative monumentality

Excavation of the Vaiśālī stūpa revealed successive construction phases, with an early earthen core later enlarged and encased. Archaeological interpretation has linked the monument with the Buddhist relic tradition, while later rebuilding demonstrates continuing investment. The important historical point is not that every phase can be assigned to a named event with certainty. It is that sacred memory accumulated material mass. A modest commemorative deposit could become a brick monument, attract additional construction and eventually enter a pilgrimage landscape. Monumentalisation therefore changes the economics of religion. It requires builders, bricks, land, maintenance and the coordination of donors or authorities. In socio-cultural terms, the stūpa is not only a symbol of doctrine; it is evidence that communities could mobilise resources to preserve memory in durable form.

19.22 Aśokan patronage marks a new documentary and monumental scale

The Mauryan period changes the evidentiary landscape because royal inscriptions and pillars create datable public interventions. At Kolhua near Vaiśālī, the Aśokan pillar belongs to a later material layer than the earliest Buddhist narrative traditions, but it demonstrates that the region's sacred significance had entered imperial monumental practice by the third century BCE. Aśoka's broader inscriptions articulate dhamma in ethical and administrative language rather than simply reproducing monastic doctrine. This distinction matters. Imperial support for Buddhist sites and personnel could coexist with a public moral programme addressed to wider populations. The Mauryan moment therefore should not be described as a simple "conversion of the region." It represents a new scale on which kingship, pilgrimage, inscription and memory interacted. The religious landscape became more visible archaeologically precisely because political resources helped monumentalise it.

19.23 Local cults and household religion remain the least visible part of the record

Elite texts and monumental archaeology systematically favour institutions capable of preserving words or durable structures. Most religious life probably occurred elsewhere: household offerings, ancestor rites, fertility practices, protective observances, vows, healing rituals, sacred trees, water places and local deities. Terracotta human and animal figurines from early historic sites are often invoked as evidence for popular religion, but without secure depositional context their meaning is ambiguous. A figurine may be votive, decorative, didactic or a toy. The correct response is not to exclude local religion from history but to mark

the evidentiary asymmetry. The survival of later village cults cannot be projected unchanged into the first millennium BCE; equally, the silence of canonical texts cannot be mistaken for absence. Regional religious culture was broader than the literate institutions that dominate our sources.

19.24 Sacred trees, groves and water bodies connected religion to landscape

Across Buddhist, Jain and broader South Asian traditions, groves, trees, ponds and riverbanks repeatedly serve as places of teaching, retreat, offering and memory. Such sites are socially efficient because they can lie near towns without being absorbed into dense habitation. Ambapālī's grove at Vaiśālī and Gaggara's lotus pond at Campā illustrate how named landscapes become part of religious narrative. The physical environment therefore shaped religious practice without mechanically producing doctrine. Shade, water, seasonal accessibility and distance from noise matter to mendicants; donors can endow a grove more easily than construct a large masonry complex in an early phase. Over time, remembered natural places may acquire shrines and buildings. Religious geography should thus include environmental affordances alongside political borders and urban markets.

19.25 Patronage linked religious authority to unequal distributions of wealth

Renunciant ideals often praised non-possession, yet organised religion depended on surplus held by others. Kings could give cattle and gold; merchants could provide meals and robes; prosperous householders could donate groves; women with independent resources could become patrons; communities could maintain monuments. The relationship was reciprocal but not necessarily commercial. Donors received merit, prestige, teaching or public recognition; mendicants received the material conditions of survival. These exchanges also reveal inequality. The poor could offer small gifts, labour or hospitality, but surviving texts disproportionately remember spectacular donations. A religious economy therefore redistributed some resources while reproducing distinctions of status. The question for regional history is not whether religion was "economic" but how different institutions converted material support into moral and social value.

19.26 Religious mobility depended on roads, ferries, seasons and political security

Teachers and mendicants could move only through material landscapes. The Ganga, Gandak and connected routes linked settlements while also requiring ferries and seasonal judgement. Monsoon rains encouraged more stable residence, making the rains retreat a recurring organisational feature of Buddhist monastic life. Jain mendicant discipline likewise structured movement. Political boundaries could affect safety and patronage, while commercial routes supplied audiences and food. This helps explain why the same urban nodes recur in narratives of merchants, kings and renouncers. Mobility did not make religious life placeless. On the contrary, repeated itineraries created sacred geography: a grove, hall, pond or city became memorable because communities returned to it. Routes were therefore carriers of doctrine, reputation and institutional relationships.

19.27 Language and oral transmission allowed religious communities to cross social boundaries

The region's religious traditions were transmitted for centuries largely through oral performance before surviving manuscript traditions. Vedic schools cultivated highly controlled recitation; Buddhist and Jain communities developed their own mnemonic and communal methods, often using Middle Indo-Aryan linguistic forms rather than restricting teaching to Vedic Sanskrit. Language choice affected audience and

authority. It would be simplistic, however, to describe Sanskrit as “elite” and Prakrit as “popular” in every context. Both could become learned and institutional languages, and multilingual interaction was normal. What matters historically is that different communities created reliable techniques for preserving doctrine without dependence on early monumental writing. The limited inscriptional record before the Mauryan period is therefore not evidence for a silent intellectual culture. Oral institutions were technologies of continuity.

19.28 Religious identities became more durable as institutions acquired places, rules and memories

A mobile teacher can gather followers without leaving a permanent building. A durable religious community requires more: procedures for ordination, discipline, dispute, property use, food, illness, travel, succession and remembrance. Chapters 16–18 showed how Buddhist and Jain institutions organised support and bodily discipline; the present chapter adds sacred geography and public identity. As rules accumulate and places become associated with founders, religious boundaries can harden even while interaction continues. The emergence of stūpas, monasteries, pilgrimage markers and textual canons is therefore not merely an expression of already complete religions. It is part of the process by which communities became reproducible across generations. Institutionalisation turned episodic charisma into durable social forms.

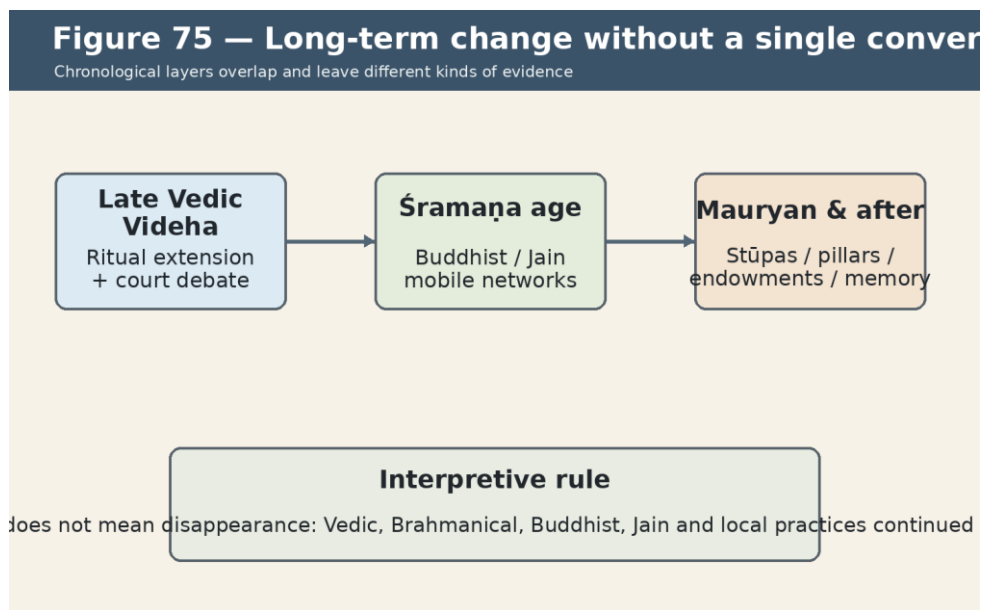


Figure 75 — Late Vedic, śramaṇa and Mauryan/post-Mauryan layers overlap; sequence does not imply disappearance of earlier practices.

19.29 Long-term continuity should not be confused with unchanging tradition

Mithilā and north Bihar later became famous for Brahmanical scholasticism, goddess traditions, Vaiṣṇava devotion, Śaiva practices, Buddhist memories and Jain pilgrimage, while Aṅga acquired its own long religious history. These later formations cannot be projected backward wholesale. The Janaka of the Bṛhadāraṇyaka is not evidence for medieval Maithil Brahman institutions; the Aśokan pillar is not proof of a fifth-century-BCE monastery in its surviving form; a modern Jain birthplace shrine does not settle the archaeology of Kuṇḍagrāma. Continuity is historical only when mechanisms of transmission can be shown. The responsible method is layered: establish the earliest secure witness, follow later additions, and distinguish remembered

antiquity from material continuity. This protects the genuine depth of regional religious history from being weakened by claims the evidence cannot sustain.

19.30 Conclusion: the region became religiously important through interaction, not isolation

The religious importance of Mithilā–Videha, Vajji and Aṅga emerged from repeated interaction among landscapes, courts, towns, householders, ritual specialists and renouncers. The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa remembers Videha as a region incorporated into Vedic ritual geography and later portrays its king as a formidable patron and interlocutor. Upaniṣadic texts turn that courtly world into a theatre of philosophical competition. Vaiśālī and Campā then stand at the centre of Buddhist and Jain itineraries, urban patronage and institutional memory. Archaeology shows the material growth of the towns and, later, the monumentality through which sacred memories became durable. No single “conversion” explains this history. Vedic, Brahmanical, śramaṇa and local practices overlapped, argued, borrowed and competed. The regional religious culture that emerged was therefore plural from an early stage—not because boundaries never mattered, but because boundaries were repeatedly negotiated through patronage, debate, mobility and place.

Table 19.1 — Evidence for religious change and limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Chronological control
Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 1.4.1: Videgha and Māthava and Sadānīrā	Vedic memory of an eastern ritual frontier and later incorporation of Videha	A literal forest-fire migration, empty land, or precise modern river identification	Late Vedic textual tradition; literary charter
Śatapatha / Brhadāranyaka Janaka cycles	Videha as a prestigious arena of sacrifice, gifts, debate and philosophical inquiry	Verbatim court transcripts or a permanent “university”	Layered late Vedic / early Upaniṣadic literature
Early historic settlement archaeology	Urbanisation, craft, routes and the material setting of religious pluralisation	Religious identity from pottery alone	Site-specific stratigraphy
Buddhist Vesālī traditions	Repeated residence, patronage, institutional memory and dispute	That all surviving monuments date to the Buddha’s lifetime	Canonical memory with later redaction
Jain Vaiśālī–Kuṇḍagrāma traditions	Strong regional association of Mahāvīra and early Jain communities	Secure identification of every modern pilgrimage spot with a first-millennium-BCE structure	Canonical and later biographical strata
Soṇadaṇḍa Sutta at Campā	Brahmanical prestige and Buddhist debate within an Aṅga urban setting	A city-wide conversion to Buddhism	Early Buddhist literary setting
Vaiśālī relic stūpa phases	Cumulative Buddhist monumentality and resource investment	Exact dating of every phase to a named canonical event	Excavated structural sequence
Aśokan pillar / Mauryan monumental horizon	Third-century-BCE imperial participation in sacred geography	Identical monumental landscape in the fifth century BCE	Mauryan and later material evidence
Terracottas, trees, ponds and local sacred places	Possible household/local ritual landscapes and environmental settings	A named deity or doctrine without context/inscription	Interpret cautiously by context

Chapter 20 — Buddhism in the social history of Vajji and Videha

Chapter argument. Buddhism became socially durable in Vajji and Videha through overlapping networks of mobility, patronage, political encounter, gendered participation, monastic regulation and sacred memory. Vesālī provides the densest combination of discourse, Vinaya and archaeological evidence; MN 91 provides unusually direct textual evidence for the Buddha's itinerary in Videha and an encounter at Mithilā. The chapter keeps these evidence levels separate, treats council and relic traditions as historically valuable memories rather than automatic transcripts, and avoids projecting later Buddhist monumentality backward into the Buddha's lifetime.

20.1 Social history asks how Buddhism was embedded, not merely where the Buddha travelled

A social history of Buddhism in Vajji and Videha must move beyond an itinerary of famous visits. The important questions concern the people and institutions that made repeated religious interaction possible: ruling lineages, brahmins, householders, women patrons, monks, nuns, servants, cultivators and mobile specialists; the parks and halls in which teaching occurred; the food and property that sustained renunciants; and the political and legal settings in which the Saṅgha negotiated its place. Early Buddhist texts are rich in named encounters, but they are not demographic surveys. They reveal social relations selectively, through narratives shaped by doctrinal and disciplinary purposes. The chapter therefore reconstructs patterns only where several kinds of evidence converge and marks the difference between a textual social scene and an independently verified historical event.

20.2 Four evidence streams must remain separate before synthesis

The reconstruction rests on four distinct bodies of evidence. Early discourses preserve stories of the Buddha in Vesālī, the Vajjian country and Videha, including Mithilā. Vinaya texts preserve institutional memories about rules, residence, gifts, sickness, ordination and later disciplinary disputes. Archaeology at Vaiśālī preserves settlement, stūpa, pillar and monastic remains from multiple periods. Finally, later Buddhist traditions preserve memories of councils, relics and sacred geography. None should be allowed to authenticate the others automatically. A canonical place-name does not date a brick structure; an Aśokan monument does not prove that a specific sermon occurred on that spot; and a later council narrative cannot be treated as a stenographic record. The strongest history emerges from controlled comparison rather than evidentiary fusion.

Buddhism in Vajji & Videha: evidence streams

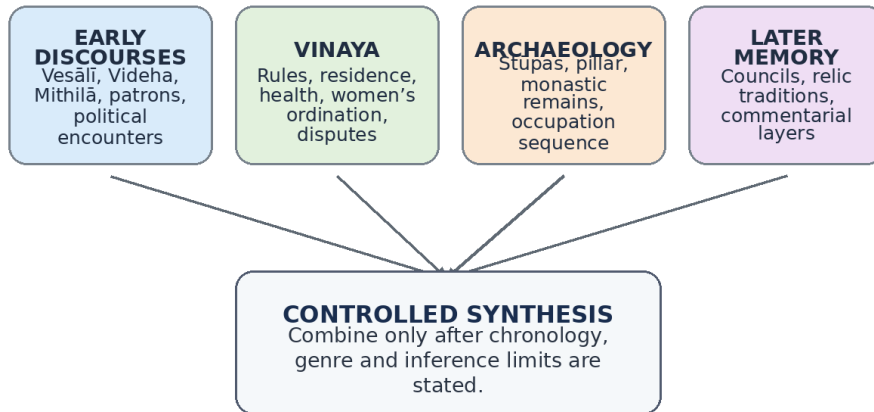


Figure 76 — Buddhist social history requires separate control of discourse, Vinaya, archaeology and later memorial traditions before synthesis.

20.3 Vajji, Videha and Mithilā should not be flattened into modern administrative geography

The labels Vajji, Videha and Mithilā belong to changing historical geographies. Early sources associate Vesālī especially with the Licchavis and the Vajjian political world, while Videha and Mithilā carry older royal and brahmanical memories and also appear in Buddhist itineraries. Historical reconstruction often treats the Videhas as connected with, or included within, the wider Vajjian political formation, but ancient usage is not perfectly uniform. Modern district, state and national boundaries are therefore unsuitable as direct equivalents. For this chapter the terms are used relationally: Vesālī is the principal urban node in the Vajjian evidence; Mithilā is the principal named city in the Videha evidence; and the intervening plains are understood as zones of movement rather than sealed cultural blocks.

20.4 The Brahmāyu Sutta gives unusually direct Buddhist evidence for Videha and Mithilā

Majjhima Nikāya 91 is one of the most important texts for this chapter because it explicitly depicts the Buddha travelling through the country of the Videhas with a large community of monks and eventually reaching Mithilā, where he stays in Makhādeva's mango grove. The narrative centres on Brahmāyu, an aged and eminent brahmin, and his student Uttara. Whatever one concludes about the literary elaboration of the story, its geography is significant: Buddhist memory did not confine the Buddha's teaching career to Magadha, Kosala and Vesālī, but located a substantial encounter in Videha itself. This textual witness is stronger than later Jātaka stories for establishing Buddhist memory of an actual teaching itinerary in Mithilā, though it still cannot be converted into an exact modern route.

20.5 Mithilā appears as a city of brahmins, householders, students and public religious reputation

The social setting of MN 91 is as revealing as its geography. Brahmāyu is represented as a learned brahmin with students, while the arrival of the Buddha draws brahmins and householders of Mithilā to Makhādeva's

mango grove. The text therefore imagines Buddhist teaching entering an already prestigious intellectual and household environment rather than an empty frontier. Reputation travels before the teacher: news of Gotama's standing prompts investigation, discussion and eventually a public audience. Socially, this is a model of religious expansion through communication networks. Buddhism does not appear by replacing brahmins and householders; it enters into argument, observation, hospitality and conversion within their existing social world. The account should not be read as evidence that all Mithilā embraced Buddhism, but it demonstrates the kind of mixed audience early Buddhist authors considered plausible there.

20.6 Brahmāyu's hospitality illustrates how lay conversion and material support could be joined

After his encounter with the Buddha, Brahmāyu is portrayed as taking refuge and inviting the Buddha and the monastic community for a meal. The narrative extends the hospitality across several days, emphasizing sustained provisioning rather than a single symbolic gesture. For social history, the important point is the linkage between doctrinal assent, household resources and the maintenance of a travelling Saṅgha. A large monastic group could not move through Videha without recurrent supplies, lodging opportunities and local intermediaries. The story does not allow the historian to calculate the cost of such support or the actual number of monks present, since large round numbers are common in religious literature. It does, however, preserve a convincing institutional logic: teaching created relationships, and relationships could be expressed materially through food, space and protection.

20.7 The Mithilā narrative is valuable precisely when its limits are stated

MN 91 cannot serve as a census of Buddhist followers in Videha. Its learned brahmin, miraculous bodily signs and highly structured conversion scene belong to a literary composition with apologetic purposes. Nor does a reference to Makhādeva's mango grove identify an excavated monastery. Yet excessive scepticism would waste the text's social information. The narrative presupposes roads, students, interregional news, public assemblies, wealthy households and the possibility that a non-local renunciant teacher could attract an audience in Mithilā. These presuppositions are historically meaningful even when individual details remain unverified. The proper use of the sutta is therefore neither literalism nor dismissal: it is evidence for how early Buddhist communities remembered their social reach into Videha and the kinds of elite and household networks through which that reach was imagined to operate.

20.8 Vesālī was a recurrent Buddhist meeting-place rather than a single-event sacred site

Vesālī occupies a different scale in the Buddhist record. Numerous discourses and Vinaya passages place the Buddha in the Great Wood at the Hall with the Peaked Roof, in or near parks, shrines and settlements around the city. Repetition matters. It suggests that Buddhist memory regarded Vesālī as a regular node of residence, teaching and institutional decision, not merely a station on the final journey. Such recurrence is socially more important than any one sermon. It implies dependable access to food, places of stay, audiences and local supporters. Later archaeology and monumentality make Vesālī's Buddhist association materially visible, but the canonical recurrence itself already points to a deeply embedded relationship between itinerant monasticism and an urban-political centre north of the Ganga.

Two regional nodes of Buddhist social life

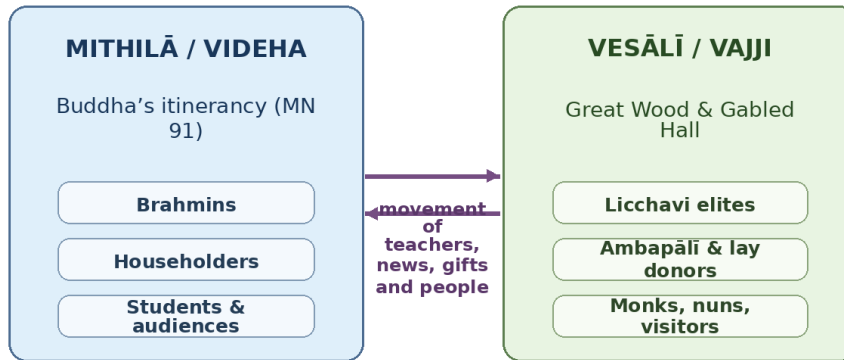


Figure 77 — Mithilā/Videha and Vesālī/Vajji function as distinct but connected regional nodes for teachers, patrons, householders, elites and monastics.

20.9 Vesālī connected Buddhism with interregional diplomatic and intellectual traffic

Dīgha Nikāya 6 begins with the Buddha at Vesālī while brahmin emissaries from Kosala and Magadha are also staying in the city. The passage is important even if the precise business of those emissaries is uncertain. It depicts Vesālī as a place where people connected to other major states could meet, hear news and seek out religious teachers. In social terms, such traffic helps explain how Buddhist reputations and arguments travelled rapidly across political boundaries. A city used by envoys, merchants, brahmins and ruling groups could become a transmission node without being controlled by a single religious institution. Buddhism's spread depended on this broader ecology of mobility. The Saṅgha moved through routes already animated by diplomacy, commerce, kinship and pilgrimage; it did not create interregional connectivity from nothing.

20.10 The Vajjian political order forms part of the Buddhist social setting

The Mahāparinibbāna Sutta preserves a famous discussion in which the Magadhan minister Vassakāra reports Ajātasattu's intention to attack the Vajjis. The Buddha asks whether the Vajjis assemble frequently, act in concord and maintain other conditions of collective strength. The list also values established norms, respect for elders, protection of women, honouring shrines and provision for worthy renouncers. It would be anachronistic to turn this passage into a modern constitutional endorsement of "democracy." Its historical value lies elsewhere: Buddhist political reflection is articulated through features attributed to Vajjian civic life. The text assumes that assemblies, customary law, gendered security, sacred sites and support for renouncers were socially intelligible components of political durability. Buddhism here speaks within the institutional vocabulary of Vajji rather than outside it.

20.11 Buddhist monastic order and Vajjian civic order are compared, but they are not identical institutions

Immediately after the Vajjian discussion, DN 16 develops conditions for the welfare of the monastic community. The literary juxtaposition is striking: frequent assemblies, concord, respect for established

discipline and attention to seniority matter in both collective settings. Yet the Saṅgha was not a miniature Vajjian republic, and the Vajjian confederacy was not a monastic order. The comparison works because both required procedures for sustaining groups whose members had competing interests and dispersed locations. Social history should therefore focus on institutional reasoning rather than constitutional genealogy. Early Buddhists could formulate communal durability using concepts familiar from the political world around them while reworking those concepts for a renunciant community with different aims, membership rules and sanctions.

20.12 Vesālī's shrine landscape shows that Buddhism entered an already sacred city

Canonical references to the Sāranda shrine and other shrines around Vesālī are important because they prevent a false picture of Buddhism arriving in a religious vacuum. The city and its approaches already possessed named sacred places that could serve as landmarks, meeting sites and objects of collective respect. Some Buddhist narratives place teaching at such locations; other passages mention non-Buddhist renunciants active in the Vajjian country. The implication is a plural sacred landscape in which different groups occupied, interpreted and competed around existing social spaces. Later Buddhist monuments transformed parts of that landscape, but early social embedding likely depended as much on shared urban and extra-urban spaces as on purpose-built monasteries. This is why sacred geography must be reconstructed as layered rather than denominationally exclusive.

20.13 Religious competition in Vesālī was social as well as doctrinal

Buddhist texts occasionally mention rival ascetics and teachers supported in or around Vesālī. Such references are polemical and cannot be treated as neutral ethnography, yet they reveal a world in which householders and ruling groups could direct gifts, honour and attention toward multiple renunciant traditions. Competition therefore concerned reputation, patronage, ethical credibility and access to audiences as much as abstract doctrine. The Buddhist Saṅgha had to appear disciplined enough to deserve support while remaining visibly distinct from household luxury. Vinaya complaints about monastics behaving “like householders who enjoy sensual pleasures” make sense in this context: public confidence was a social resource. The rules regulated the boundary between renunciation and the material world on which renunciation depended.

20.14 Ambapālī is indispensable for the social history of Buddhist patronage

The Ambapālī episode in DN 16 presents a woman of high-status urban profession as a major independent patron. She travels in fine carriages, owns or controls a mango grove, invites the Buddha and the Saṅgha to a meal, refuses an enormous offer from Licchavi youths to surrender that privilege, and subsequently donates the grove to the monastic community. The narrative is stylised, but its social structure is unusually rich. Wealth, gender, reputation and religious generosity intersect in a single episode. Ambapālī is neither reduced to a passive devotee nor assimilated to aristocratic lineage. She acts through resources under her control. For the history of Vesālī, this matters because it broadens the patronage base beyond rulers and male household heads and shows Buddhist institutions negotiating support across socially distinctive constituencies.

20.15 The contest between Ambapālī and the Licchavis dramatizes patronage as public status

The Licchavis' attempt to acquire Ambapālī's meal invitation for a vast sum is best read as a narrative of prestige rather than a market price for access to the Buddha. Both sides understand the meal as a public act carrying honour. Ambapālī's refusal, even when the offer is rhetorically expanded to Vesālī and its revenues, reverses expected status hierarchy: a woman outside ruling lineage secures the valued opportunity before elite young men. The story therefore illuminates a social field in which religious patronage could redistribute symbolic capital. Buddhism did not erase rank, but acts of generosity allowed different patrons to compete on a moral stage whose rules were not identical to political precedence. The episode also warns historians not to treat every monetary figure in religious narrative as an economic statistic.

20.16 Donation of a grove converted private or controlled property into institutional space

When Ambapālī donates her mango grove to the Saṅgha headed by the Buddha, the narrative moves from consumption to infrastructure. A meal sustains a community for a day; a grove can support repeated residence, teaching and assembly. This transformation is central to the social history of early Buddhism. Renouncers ideally relinquished household property, yet the corporate community could depend on spaces supplied by lay patrons. Such donations created durable interfaces between monastic and lay worlds without requiring monks to become ordinary proprietors. The precise legal form of early ārāma ownership is difficult to recover from a narrative passage alone, but the institutional principle is clear: lay wealth could be redirected into a setting that supported collective religious life. The resulting space also preserved the donor's name within Buddhist memory.

Ambapālī: patronage, status and monastic space

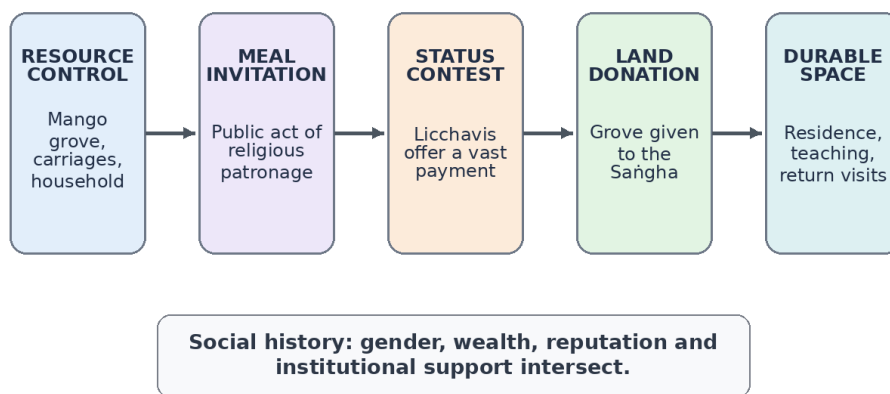


Figure 78 — The Ambapālī narrative links control of resources, meal patronage, status competition, land donation and the creation of durable monastic space.

20.17 The alms economy linked monasteries to households every day

Large donations attract narrative attention, but ordinary food support was more fundamental. Monks and nuns depended on recurring meals, robe cloth, medicines and lodging. In a city such as Vesālī, this created daily contacts between renouncers and householders across differences of wealth and status. The

relationship was reciprocal without being a simple commercial exchange. Donors received teaching, merit, prestige or affiliation; monastics received material support while maintaining rules intended to limit accumulation and transactional dependence. This system could work only where enough households produced or controlled surplus and where movement between settlement and residence was feasible. The social history of Buddhism is therefore inseparable from the agrarian and urban economy surrounding Vesālī and the routes through Videha, even when the texts rarely describe cultivators who stood behind elite gifts.

20.18 Buddhist mobility depended on roads, ferries, villages and remembered stopping-places

The Buddhist record around Vajji is full of movement: between Magadha and Vesālī, through Nāḍikā and other settlements, into the Vajjian countryside, and onward on the final journey. MN 91 similarly imagines movement through Videha to Mithilā. These itineraries should not be converted into a single fixed road map, because river courses, seasonal conditions and textual route conventions complicate reconstruction. Their social meaning is nevertheless strong. Travelling groups required water, food, safe crossings, local knowledge and places where they could be received. Villages and small settlements were therefore as necessary to Buddhist mobility as major cities. The network was hierarchical but continuous: famous urban patrons appear in texts, while innumerable unnamed providers made the journeys possible.

20.19 Seasonal residence changed the rhythm of relations between monks and local society

The rains retreat reduced long-distance movement for part of the year and encouraged repeated residence in particular localities. DN 16 places the Buddha at Beluva near Vesālī during a rains period, while the wider corpus repeatedly associates Vesālī with established places of stay. Seasonal residence mattered socially because it turned episodic encounters into longer relationships. Lay supporters could provide food over weeks or months; monastics could teach repeatedly; disputes and health problems had to be managed within a resident community; and buildings, paths, wells or shelters became more important than they were for a single overnight halt. The development of regular residence did not abolish itinerancy. Early Buddhist institutions combined movement and anchoring, and Vesālī is one of the clearest regional places where both patterns are visible in the textual record.

20.20 Vesālī became a foundational setting in Buddhist narratives about women's ordination

The Gotamī narrative preserved in AN 8.51 and the Vinaya describes Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī travelling with Sakyan women to Vesālī, where the Buddha is staying in the Great Wood. The episode culminates in the establishment of a formal path for women to enter the homeless life. Its historical layers are debated, especially the framing of the eight weighty principles and chronological tensions noted by modern scholars. For social history, however, the location matters. Vesālī is remembered as a place where a major institutional question concerning gender, authority and membership was negotiated. The narrative makes women mobile religious actors rather than merely household donors. It also exposes the asymmetries built into the transmitted institutional order: admission to renunciation did not erase gendered hierarchy.

20.21 The bhikkhunī tradition widens the social map beyond male monastic networks

Once women's renunciation is taken seriously, early Buddhist society can no longer be described through monks and male patrons alone. Nuns required teachers, ordination procedures, residences, food, robes and protection; they interacted with laywomen and laymen and generated their own lines of seniority. The Therīgāthā preserves women's voices associated with grief, poverty, household obligations, bodily ageing and spiritual achievement, though individual poems cannot always be securely localized to Vajji or Videha. The regional significance of Vesālī lies in its role within the founding institutional memory. Historians should neither idealize that memory as evidence of complete gender equality nor dismiss it because of later redaction. It records a struggle over who could legitimately inhabit the renunciant social world.

20.22 Vinaya localization makes Vesālī a laboratory of institutional memory

The Vinaya and its analytical summaries locate several rule-origin stories in Vesālī or its vicinity. These include major narratives concerning sexual conduct, claims of spiritual attainment and other aspects of monastic discipline. It would be hazardous to assume that every rule was literally first formulated at the place named in the redacted text. The pattern is still important. Vesālī functions as a remembered setting where the expanding community encountered problems generated by wealth, reputation, sexuality, residence and relations with householders. In that sense the city becomes a laboratory of institutional memory. The stories explain why rules exist by embedding them in concrete social conflicts. The result is not a municipal archive, but it is a sophisticated record of the kinds of tensions a settled and publicly visible Saṅgha had to regulate.

20.23 Building, health and material rules reveal the practical density of monastic life at Vesālī

Vinaya passages associated with Vesālī discuss building work, water filters, walking paths, bathing or sweating facilities, illness after rich meals and the advice of the physician Jīvaka. Chapter 18 examined these materials as health history; here their institutional implication is more important. A community that needs paths levelled, drains maintained, wells protected and shared equipment regulated is no longer merely a band of solitary wanderers. Material infrastructure creates responsibilities, labour and potential disputes. It also depends on lay resources and specialist knowledge. The texts therefore show how Buddhist ideals of simplicity had to be translated into rules for collective residence. Vesālī's importance lies partly in this mundane density: religious institutions become historically visible when they have to manage space, bodies, objects and public expectations.

20.24 The Vesālī council tradition preserves memory of conflict inside an expanding Saṅgha

Theravāda Vinaya tradition places a major disciplinary settlement at Vesālī roughly a century after the Buddha's final nirvana and associates it with ten disputed practices. Modern scholarship debates the chronology, the relation between different sectarian versions and how closely the narrative corresponds to a single historical "Second Council." It is safest to treat the account as evidence for an early and durable memory of institutional disagreement centred on Vesālī. The disputed practices concern everyday monastic conduct rather than abstract metaphysics. That is socially revealing. As communities expanded across regions, differences in accepted custom, food practice, handling of resources and legal procedure could threaten shared identity. Vesālī thus remained important in Buddhist memory not only as a place of the Buddha but as a place where later Buddhists negotiated the boundaries of discipline.

20.25 The dispute over money exposes the economic problem at the heart of renunciation

Among the practices associated with the Vesālī dispute is acceptance of gold and silver, language that in Vinaya contexts includes money used in commerce. The issue reaches back to a fundamental tension. Monastics were meant to abstain from ordinary buying, selling and accumulation, yet permanent communities required food, cloth, medicine, repairs and transport. The solution was not economic independence but mediated dependence: lay supporters, stewards and institutional rules separated monastics from direct possession while keeping them within a monetising society. The Vesālī tradition therefore belongs as much to economic and social history as to ecclesiastical history. A disagreement over money was also a disagreement over how visible renunciation should remain distinct from household life once the Saṅgha had acquired durable residences and extensive patronage networks.

20.26 Relic claims turned Vajjian political identity into Buddhist civic memory

At the end of DN 16, the Licchavis of Vesālī claim a share of the Buddha's bodily relics and are said to build a stūpa and hold a festival. Whatever the precise historical sequence behind the relic-distribution narrative, it expresses an important transformation. The relationship between the Buddha and Vesālī is no longer sustained only by living visits and meals; it is converted into a claim on sacred remains and public commemoration. Political community and Buddhist memory become intertwined. A relic shrine can anchor festivals, movement, gifts and local prestige across generations. The text therefore points toward a new stage in social embedding: the teacher's mobility ends, but the sacred presence can be localized, monumentalized and reproduced through ritual.

20.27 Archaeology at Vaiśālī demonstrates long Buddhist monumentality, not a one-to-one confirmation of texts

Excavation and conservation at ancient Vaiśālī have revealed stūpa remains, brick structures, occupation deposits and the celebrated Aśokan pillar at Kolhua. Archaeologists have also identified a relic-stūpa sequence traditionally connected with the Licchavis. These remains are indispensable for demonstrating that Vaiśālī became a major locus of Buddhist monumentality. Yet the archaeological sequence spans centuries, and later enlargements or constructions cannot be assigned automatically to events narrated in early texts. The strongest conclusion is cumulative: a city already prominent in Buddhist literary memory was repeatedly marked by Buddhist building and imperial commemoration. The weakest conclusion would be that every named hall, grove or relic episode has been excavated exactly as described. Archaeology confirms durable importance, not narrative literalism.

20.28 Aśokan commemoration transformed remembered places into an imperial Buddhist landscape

The Aśokan pillar at Kolhua belongs to a later political world than the Buddha-era narratives. Its importance is precisely that chronological distance. By the Mauryan period, selected places associated with the Buddha could be monumentalized through an imperial language of pillars, stupas and pilgrimage memory. Such interventions changed how local communities and travellers encountered the past. A remembered Vajjian site became part of a wider subcontinental Buddhist geography. This process should not be projected backward: an Aśokan pillar cannot prove that a fifth-century-BCE audience stood at the same exact spot. But it shows that Vesālī's Buddhist associations had become sufficiently authoritative to attract

durable monumental investment. Social memory had moved from oral and institutional networks into stone and brick.

From itinerancy to durable Buddhist institutions

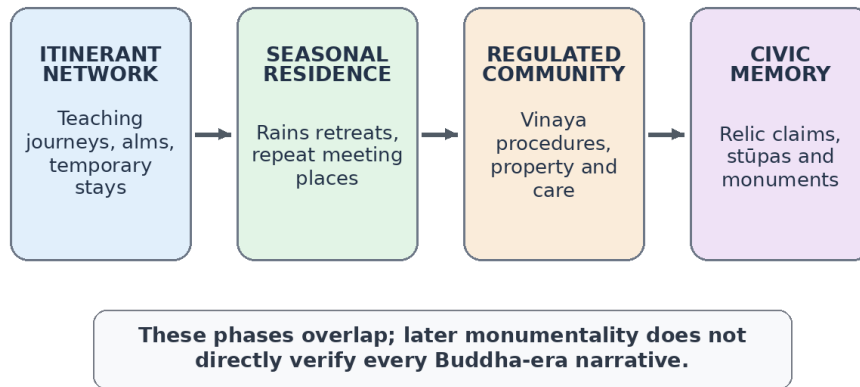


Figure 79 — Buddhist regional embedding developed through overlapping phases of itinerancy, seasonal residence, regulated community life and civic-monumental memory.

20.29 The strongest conclusions differ for Vesālī and Mithilā

The evidence is asymmetrical. For Vesālī, early Buddhist texts are numerous, Vinaya traditions are dense, later council and relic memories are strong, and archaeology preserves major Buddhist monuments. For Mithilā and wider Videha, MN 91 gives unusually explicit textual evidence for a Buddhist itinerary and an encounter with brahmins and householders, but comparable early Buddhist monumental archaeology is much thinner in the present evidentiary record. This difference must not be concealed by regional enthusiasm. It does not mean Buddhism was socially unimportant in Videha; it means the surviving kinds of proof are different. A responsible regional history therefore gives Vesālī a denser institutional reconstruction while treating Mithilā primarily through textual networks, mobility and patronage unless additional securely dated material evidence becomes available.

20.30 Conclusion: Buddhism became regional through relationships, rules, spaces and memory

Buddhism's social history in Vajji and Videha was produced by repeated relationships rather than a single act of conversion. In Videha, the Brahmāyu narrative remembers the Buddha entering Mithilā's brahmin-householder world through travel, reputation, debate and hospitality. In Vesālī, the evidence is more institutionally dense: Vajjian political discourse, elite and non-elite patronage, Ambapālī's donation, seasonal residence, women's ordination memory, Vinaya regulation, disciplinary conflict, relic claims and later monumentality all converge. Together they show how an itinerant renunciant movement could become regionally durable without ceasing to depend on lay society. The central historical process was embedding: people provided food and land; institutions regulated the resulting tensions; sacred places accumulated memory; and later monuments made selected memories materially persistent.

Table 20.1 — Evidence for Buddhism in Vajji and Videha, and limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Chronological control
MN 91, Brahmāyu Sutta	Buddhist memory of travel through Videha, arrival at Mithilā, brahmin and householder audiences, hospitality	Exact route, size of the following, or archaeological identification of Makhādeva's grove	Early Buddhist discourse preserved in Majjhima Nikāya
DN 6 at Vesālī	Vesālī as a meeting-place involving Buddhist teachers and visitors linked to Kosala and Magadha	A formal diplomatic capital or permanent Buddhist institution at the Gabled Hall in the Buddha's lifetime	Early Buddhist discourse tradition
DN 16: Vajjian conditions	Buddhist representation of Vajjian assemblies, norms, elders, women, shrines and renouncers as components of political durability	Modern democracy or direct institutional derivation of the Saṅgha from Vajji	Early Buddhist political-literary memory
DN 16: Ambapālī	Female patronage, control of resources, meal giving, status competition and donation of a grove	Literal market valuation of the meal or a complete account of women's property law	Early Buddhist narrative
AN 8.51 / Vinaya Gotamī narrative	Vesālī as foundational memory for women's admission to formal renunciant life	That every transmitted rule belongs to one historical event or date	Layered canonical institutional tradition
Vinaya rule-origin stories at Vesālī	Institutional problems concerning conduct, reputation, residence, health and material life	That every rule was first formulated exactly where the redacted text says	Layered disciplinary literature
Vesālī ten-points/council tradition	Memory of disciplinary disagreement, including practices involving money and daily conduct	A fully recoverable verbatim Second Council or uncontested chronology	Sectarian Vinaya traditions; later than Buddha-era narratives
DN 16 relic distribution	Licchavi claim to relics and civic commemoration through stūpa and festival	Independent archaeological proof of the precise relic division narrative	Early Buddhist memorial narrative
Vaiśālī archaeology and Aśokan pillar	Long-term Buddhist monumentality, stūpa development, imperial commemoration and monastic occupation	Direct verification of every canonical grove, sermon or Buddha-era building	Archaeological and Mauryan/post-Mauryan layers

Chapter 21 — Jainism and the Vaishali–Videha landscape

Chapter argument. Jainism became socially embedded in the Vaiśālī–Videha landscape through disciplined ascetic mobility, repeated rainy-season residence, lay–monastic reciprocity, women’s and men’s participation, elite interaction and later sacred memory. The evidence is strongest when Jain canonical traditions, Buddhist external references, archaeology and later pilgrimage identifications are kept distinct before synthesis.

21.1 A landscape history must distinguish remembered association from demonstrable institutional presence

Jainism belongs centrally to the early religious history of Vaiśālī and Videha, but the evidence is uneven. Mahāvīra is linked by Jain tradition with Kuṇḍagrāma in the Vaiśālī–Videha zone, and later canonical material remembers repeated rainy-season residence in Vaiśālī, Vāṇijagrāma and Mithilā. Buddhist texts independently know Nigaṇṭha Nātaputta and followers of the Nigaṇṭhas in Vesālī. These strands make the region important, yet they do not justify colouring every early historic structure or settlement as “Jain.” A landscape history therefore asks where teachers, ascetics, householders and patrons interacted, how routes and seasonal residence shaped those interactions, and which claims belong to early textual memory, later sectarian biography, archaeology or modern pilgrimage identification. The result is a layered social geography rather than a single sacred map.

21.2 Four evidence streams must be controlled separately before synthesis

The first stream is Jain canonical and quasi-canonical literature: the older strata of the Ācārāṅga and Sūtrakṛtāṅga, monastic prescriptions, and the biographical and itinerary traditions preserved in the Kalpa Sūtra. The second is external evidence, especially Buddhist references to Nigaṇṭha Nātaputta and to Nigaṇṭha followers at Vesālī. The third is archaeology, which establishes the density, chronology and material character of the Vaiśālī urban landscape but rarely identifies a structure as Jain in the earliest period. The fourth is later Jain memory—commentaries, expanded biographies, pilgrimage identifications and sectarian traditions. Each stream answers a different question. A later sacred biography can preserve an older place association while also elaborating it; a Buddhist conversion story can attest rivalry while caricaturing its opponent; an urban mound can prove occupation without proving sectarian ownership.

Jainism in Vaiśālī-Videha: evidence streams

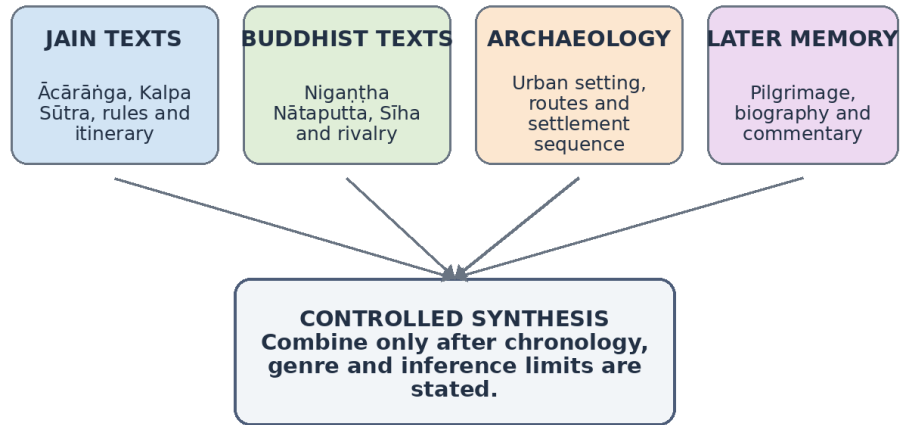


Figure 80 — Jain social history requires Jain texts, Buddhist external evidence, archaeology and later sacred memory to be controlled separately before synthesis.

21.3 The historical Mahāvīra is secure; the exact chronology and biography are not

Modern scholarship treats Mahāvīra as a historical teacher broadly belonging to the same north Indian age as the Buddha, but exact dates differ between Jain traditions and modern reconstructions. The earliest Jain disciplinary material is more useful for the character of ascetic practice than for a complete life story. Detailed accounts of conception, royal splendour, family relationships and miraculous signs belong to later biographical layers and must be read as religious memory rather than court archives. This distinction strengthens rather than weakens the history. A real renunciant movement can attract increasingly elaborate biography as communities seek to explain the authority of their teacher, locate his life in prestigious social networks and mark places with sacred significance. The historian should therefore separate the existence of Mahāvīra and early Nigaṇṭha communities from every detail later attached to his life.

21.4 Kuṇḍagrāma links Mahāvīra to the Vaiśālī-Videha zone, but its exact modern identification remains debated

The Jain biographical tradition places Mahāvīra's birth at Kuṇḍagrāma or Kuṇḍapura and describes his family as belonging to the Jñātṛ or Jñātrika Kṣatriya milieu. Hermann Jacobi, reading Jain and Buddhist place traditions together, argued that Kuṇḍagrāma was probably a modest settlement or suburb in the vicinity of Vaiśālī rather than the capital of a large kingdom. Modern identifications with particular villages near ancient Vaiśālī remain important for pilgrimage and regional memory, but archaeological proof for one exact birthplace is not decisive. The secure historical point is regional: the tradition locates Mahāvīra's natal social world in the eastern Gangetic republican/oligarchic landscape associated with Vaiśālī and Videha. The more precise the modern pin on the map, the more explicit the evidentiary caution must become.

21.5 The Jñātrika setting places renunciation inside an aristocratic and clan-based society

Jain tradition does not imagine Mahāvīra emerging from social isolation. His family is placed among Kṣatriya lineages connected with the Vaiśālī–Videha political world. Such a setting is historically plausible for an age in which aristocratic clans, household wealth, urbanising settlements and itinerant renunciant teachers interacted closely. Yet the language of “prince,” “king” and “republic” in modern retellings can flatten a more complicated hierarchy of clan heads, oligarchic councils and local notables. It is safer to speak of an elite Jñātrika environment and strong regional connections than to reconstruct a modern-style sovereign state around Kuṇḍagrāma. Renunciation acquires social meaning precisely because it is a departure from household status, inheritance, kin obligations and prestige, not because it occurs outside them.

21.6 The Pārśva-following tradition suggests a pre-Mahāvīra ascetic inheritance, but not a fully documented institutional church

A later biographical section of the Ācārāṅga states that Mahāvīra’s parents were followers of Pārśva and of śramaṇa practice. Jain tradition therefore presents Mahāvīra not as inventing renunciation from nothing but as reformulating an inherited path. Modern scholars likewise take seriously the possibility that communities associated with Pārśva preceded Mahāvīra. The evidence, however, does not permit reconstruction of a uniform Pārśva organisation across Videha before Mahāvīra, nor does it justify treating every earlier non-Vedic ascetic as Jain. The important social conclusion is more modest: eastern north India already supported renunciant alternatives and debates about restraint, karma, possession and liberation. Mahāvīra’s movement grew within that competitive field and developed a distinctive discipline and community memory.

21.7 Vaiśālī’s political and urban environment made it a natural arena for competing renunciant communities

Vaiśālī was an important Vajjian-Licchavi centre with assemblies, elite households, markets, parks and routes connecting the Ganga plain. Such conditions created audiences for multiple teachers rather than a monopoly for one tradition. Jain sources preserve kinship narratives linking Mahāvīra’s family to prominent Vaiśālī figures; Buddhist sources portray Licchavi notables moving among teachers and sects. Both bodies of literature are interested in prestige and therefore exaggeration is possible, but together they point toward a socially plural religious environment. A teacher who could attract the attention of military leaders, aristocrats, merchants and householders gained more than donations: he entered public argument about conduct, causation, violence, self-control and liberation. Vaiśālī’s importance to Jain history should thus be understood through social density and repeated interaction, not merely through a birthplace claim.

21.8 The Kalpa Sūtra preserves a powerful regional memory of repeated residence

The Kalpa Sūtra’s itinerary tradition assigns twelve rainy seasons to Vaiśālī and Vāṇijagrāma, six to Mithilā, and three to Campā and Pṛṣṭhacampā, alongside longer residence in Rājagṛha and Nālandā and shorter stays elsewhere. These numbers are among the clearest textual reasons for treating the Vaiśālī–Videha landscape as central to Jain memory. They should not, however, be converted automatically into a year-by-year contemporary diary. The text reached its received form through a long process, and scholars have disagreed over whether the list is strictly chronological apart from its explicit first and last stays. What the list securely expresses is remembered recurrence: the Jain community understood Mahāvīra’s teaching career as repeatedly embedded in these eastern cities and regions.

Mahāvīra's regional rainy-season memory

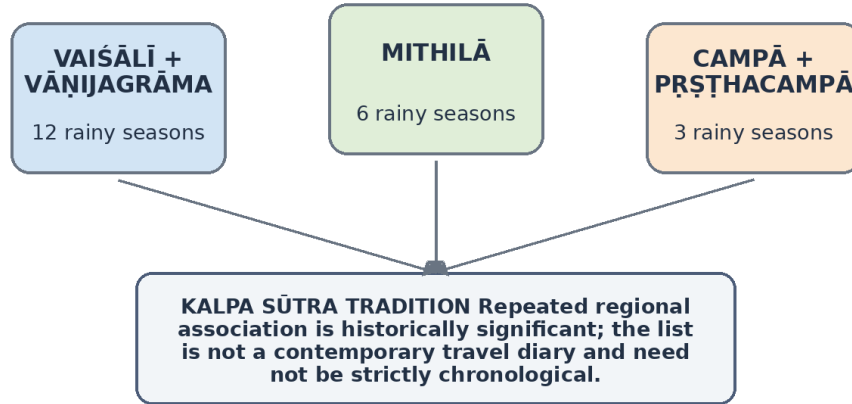


Figure 81 — The Kalpa Sūtra tradition remembers repeated rainy-season residence at Vaiśālī–Vāṇijagrāma, Mithilā and Campā–Prṣṭhacampā; the figures express regional recurrence, not a contemporary travel diary.

21.9 Rainy-season residence changed the social mechanics of an itinerant ascetic movement

A wandering ascetic can encounter many communities briefly; a rainy-season residence creates repetition. Local households learn the practical requirements of feeding ascetics, donors become familiar with teachers, disputes can be heard over time, novices can receive instruction, and lay supporters can form durable relationships with a mendicant group. The monsoon also constrains mobility and increases the ethical problem of harming small forms of life on wet ground, a concern especially resonant with Jain discipline. The social importance of cāturmāsa therefore does not depend on identifying a permanent monastery. Temporary or modest lodging could still generate dense institutional relationships. Repeated residence at Vaiśālī–Vāṇijagrāma in Jain memory helps explain how an ascetic movement could become locally rooted while preserving the ideal of non-possession and mobility.

21.10 Vāṇijagrāma should be treated as a settlement name, not automatic proof of a merchant-dominated Jain economy

The name Vāṇijagrāma has often encouraged association with traders or a commercial quarter, and such an interpretation is plausible within an urbanising Gangetic setting. Yet a toponym alone does not establish the occupational composition of its inhabitants, much less prove that merchants already formed the dominant social base of Jainism. Later Jain history contains strong mercantile traditions, but these should not be projected wholesale into the sixth or fifth centuries BCE. The safer inference is that the Vaiśālī region included settlements tied to movement, exchange and provisioning and that Jain ascetics depended on lay food and shelter within such environments. Economic embeddedness is real; the stereotype of an eternally “merchant religion” is not a substitute for evidence.

21.11 Mithilā belongs to Jain remembered geography independently of later medieval scholastic fame

The six rainy seasons assigned to Mithilā in the Kalpa Sūtra tradition deserve attention because they place Jain activity within the Videha heartland rather than only around Vaiśālī. This early association must be kept separate from the very different medieval and early modern history for which Mithila became famous as a centre of Sanskrit learning and regional Brahmanical institutions. The Jain itinerary does not identify a university, monastery complex or exact urban quarter in Mithilā, nor does archaeology presently permit a direct matching of the textual stay to a specific building. It does, however, preserve a strong claim that the regional capital or cultural centre called Mithilā lay within Mahāvīra's recurring field of activity. Jainism therefore forms part of the *longue durée* of religious plurality in Videha.

21.12 Campā and Pṛṣṭhacampā extend the Jain social horizon eastward into Aṅga

Although this chapter focuses on Vaiśālī and Videha, Campā provides an essential eastern comparison. Jain tradition assigns three rainy seasons to Campā and Pṛṣṭhacampā, while later narratives connect the city with prominent lay and female disciples. Chapter 14 established Campā as a major early historic settlement with craft, exchange and riverine connections. The Jain itinerary fits that broader urban geography without proving that Campā was dominated by Jainism. Its significance lies in the network: Vaiśālī, Mithilā, Rājagṛha–Nālandā and Campā formed part of a wider eastern corridor through which ascetics, patrons, merchants, officials and ideas moved. The social history of Jainism is therefore regional and mobile, crossing political boundaries that later historical writing often treats separately.

21.13 Buddhist references provide an external control on Jain presence at Vesālī

Early Buddhist literature repeatedly refers to Nigaṇṭha Nātaputta, the Buddhist designation for Mahāvīra, and to Nigaṇṭha followers. Such passages are polemical and cannot be read as neutral reports of Jain doctrine, yet they are historically valuable because they arise outside Jain self-description. The Siha episode in the Aṅguttara Nikāya places a prominent Licchavi general at Vesālī as a follower of the Nigaṇṭhas before narrating his shift of allegiance to the Buddha. The conversion motif naturally magnifies Buddhist success, but it presupposes something important: a recognised Nigaṇṭha teacher, elite followers and competition for patronage in the city. External rivalry thus confirms the plural religious setting already suggested by Jain regional memory.

21.14 The Siha narrative reveals competition over prestige, patronage and ethical reputation

In the Buddhist Siha story, religious affiliation is public. Licchavi notables praise the Buddha in an assembly; Siha consults Nigaṇṭha Nātaputta; after his conversion he offers a meal; rival Nigaṇṭhas then challenge the ethical legitimacy of that meal by accusing the Buddhists of accepting meat from an animal killed for them. The details belong to Buddhist narrative and should not be used to reconstruct Jain practice mechanically. Nevertheless, the episode shows how doctrines of action and non-violence could become socially visible through patronage and food. Elite allegiance affected reputation, material support and public debate. Religious competition in Vesālī was therefore not confined to abstract metaphysics: it operated through meals, households, assemblies, rumours and the moral evaluation of everyday acts.

21.15 Inter-sectarian debate sharpened identities without creating sealed communities

Jain, Buddhist, Ājīvika and Brahmanical teachers shared roads, cities, patrons and conceptual problems. They disputed karma, agency, liberation, ascetic severity and the consequences of action, but followers could listen across boundaries and sometimes shift allegiance. Texts written within one tradition routinely portray rivals in simplified terms; this is evidence of competition, not a licence to reproduce the caricature as history. A socially useful model is a crowded religious field: teachers differentiate themselves by discipline and doctrine while depending on many of the same urban and rural households. In Vaiśālī especially, sectarian identity appears as something publicly argued and maintained, not as an isolated community living apart from the wider Vajjian society.

21.16 Jain ascetic mobility transformed ordinary landscapes into ethical terrain

The Ācārāṅga's concern with careful walking, sitting, eating, drinking and handling of the environment turns movement itself into moral practice. Roads, fields, wet ground, water, plants, insects and household thresholds are not neutral background; they are places where injury may occur. An itinerant ascetic therefore experiences the landscape differently from a caravan merchant, soldier or cultivator. This does not mean that early Jain communities possessed modern ecological science, nor that non-violence automatically produced environmental conservation at a societal scale. It means that the discipline trained practitioners to see living beings and bodily movement as ethically charged. In a floodplain region of intense agriculture, seasonal moisture and dense settlement, such attentiveness would have shaped the rhythm and practical difficulty of renunciant life.

21.17 Ahimsā was a demanding discipline before it became a general emblem of Jain identity

Jain texts organise ascetic conduct around avoidance of injury to living beings, extending moral concern far beyond obvious human and animal victims. The early disciplinary emphasis is severe: harm can occur through carelessness, through instruments, through food preparation or through the actions one causes or approves. For social history, the important question is how such an ideal was negotiated between renunciants and householders who cultivated fields, cooked, traded, administered and defended communities. The existence of a radical ascetic norm does not prove that all Jain lay supporters practised it with identical intensity. Instead it created a graded ethical relationship between complete renunciation and household life, a relationship that later Jain tradition systematised in increasingly detailed forms.

21.18 Non-possession increased rather than eliminated the importance of lay support

Aparigraha and monastic restrictions on ownership are sometimes described as withdrawal from economy. Institutionally, they create a different kind of dependence. Ascetics who do not accumulate food, wealth or durable household property must obtain limited necessities from others under strict rules. The moral burden is divided: the renunciant seeks to minimise possession and attachment; the donor produces, stores and transfers the material support that makes renunciation possible. This reciprocal relation helps explain why Jainism could remain intensely ascetic while developing stable lay communities. It also cautions against confusing poverty of the monk with poverty of the movement. A community can possess few objects individually yet be sustained by socially powerful households, repeated hospitality and networks extending across towns and villages.

21.19 The fourfold community made gender and household status part of Jain institutional design

Jain tradition defines the religious community through monks, nuns, laymen and laywomen. The precise historical development of this fourfold model cannot be dated from a single text, and traditional membership numbers are not reliable censuses. Nevertheless, the institutional principle is fundamental: liberation-oriented asceticism did not erase householders; it organised relations between renunciants and lay supporters, and it recognised women on both sides of that boundary. This structure helps explain social durability. Monks and nuns carried discipline and teaching; lay women and men supplied food, shelter, protection and continuity in places where ascetics could not own households. The community was therefore neither only a monastic order nor merely a congregation of householders, but a structured field of unequal yet reciprocal roles.

Fourfold Jain community

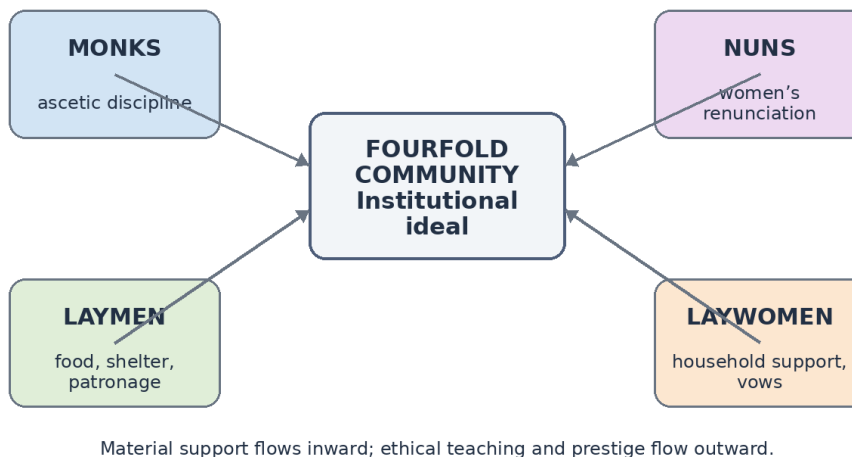


Figure 82 — The fourfold Jain community links monks, nuns, laymen and laywomen through differentiated forms of renunciation, material support and ethical participation.

21.20 Women's renunciation is integral to the regional story, even where biographies are hagiographic

Later Jain narrative gives Candanā or Candanabālā a celebrated position as the first female disciple and leader of Mahāvīra's nuns, linking her story to Campā and to dramatic reversals of status, captivity and generosity. The narrative has accumulated hagiographic detail and cannot be treated as a contemporary biography. Its institutional memory is nevertheless significant: Jain tradition regarded a women's ascetic order as foundational, not incidental. Nuns required food, routes, teachers, lodging arrangements and lay female support, creating gendered networks that conventional political history rarely records. The presence of women in the fourfold community therefore enlarges the map of Jain social history from male teachers and rulers to households, donors, itinerant nuns and women negotiating renunciation within patriarchal society.

21.21 Lay vows adapted ascetic ethics to household life without making householders miniature monks

Later Jain texts articulate graded vows for lay followers, commonly described as lesser or limited vows in contrast with the great vows of mendicants. The fully developed schemes belong to textual histories that extend beyond Mahāvīra's lifetime, so every later detail should not be projected backward. The underlying social problem, however, is already clear: householders could not imitate wandering nudity, total non-possession or the full disciplines of mendicancy while maintaining family and productive life. Jainism endured because ethical participation could be graded. Lay restraint, almsgiving, fasting, truthfulness and limits on violence created forms of commitment compatible with household continuity. The distinction between ascetic and lay discipline was therefore not evidence of failure; it was an institutional solution to the tension between liberation and society.

21.22 Early Jain social history should not be rewritten through the stereotype of the later merchant community

Jains became conspicuous in commerce, banking, craft patronage and urban philanthropy in many later periods and regions. That history is real, but it does not follow that Mahāvīra's earliest supporters in Vaiśālī and Videha were already a socially uniform mercantile bloc. Early texts mention rulers, warriors, householders, urban elites and other groups; the material demands of alms-based asceticism could be met by different kinds of households. The rise of towns and markets certainly created conditions favourable to mobile teachers and patronage networks, yet urbanisation does not equal merchant monopoly. A chronological approach asks when particular occupational profiles become visible in inscriptions and records rather than using medieval or modern Jain prosperity to fill gaps in early history.

21.23 Political kinship traditions are evidence of how Jains remembered patronage, not transparent diplomatic archives

Śvetāmbara narratives connect Mahāvīra through his mother Trīśālā with Ceṭaka of Vaiśālī and extend a web of marriages into neighbouring ruling houses. These traditions have long been used to explain the spread of Jainism through elite kinship. They may preserve real memories of aristocratic connections, but their genealogical precision is difficult to verify externally and some accounts are clearly shaped by later sectarian interests. The safest historical conclusion is that Jain memory placed Mahāvīra within a prestigious eastern Kṣatriya network and regarded political relationships as important to the movement's success. That is different from accepting every marriage, title and alliance literally. Patronage should be reconstructed where independent textual, inscriptional or archaeological control exists, while traditional genealogies remain evidence for remembered legitimacy.

21.24 Jain ethics challenged status at the level of liberation while communities still operated inside stratified society

The Jain path locates bondage and liberation in the moral and karmic condition of living beings rather than in political rank. Renunciation can therefore relativise wealth, lineage and office: a powerful householder may depend spiritually on an ascetic who owns almost nothing. Yet it would be anachronistic to infer that early Jainism abolished social hierarchy or created modern equality. Monastic admission, lay marriage, patronage and everyday occupation still unfolded in societies structured by gender, lineage, slavery or servitude, wealth and emerging status classifications. The historically productive tension lies between

universal moral accountability and unequal social worlds. Jain communities could criticise attachment and violence while simultaneously relying on donors whose resources came from those worlds.

21.25 Canonical language records transmission history, not a verbatim transcript of Mahāvīra's speech

The Śvetāmbara canon is associated with Ardhamāgadhī and related Middle Indo-Aryan literary forms, while tradition describes Mahāvīra's teaching as accessible to broad audiences. The received language of a canon, however, reflects oral preservation, recitation, standardisation and redaction over centuries. It should not be treated as a phonographic record of what was spoken in Kuṇḍagrāma, Vaiśālī or Mithilā. For regional language history this distinction matters. The presence of an eastern Middle Indo-Aryan canonical idiom demonstrates the linguistic environment in which Jain communities transmitted scripture, but it does not allow a simple equation between one canonical language and the vernacular speech of all Videha. Religious mobility likely required accommodation across dialect zones.

21.26 Vaiśālī's archaeology supplies the urban setting but does not yet provide a secure early Jain institutional footprint

Excavations at ancient Vaiśālī document fortification, habitation levels, ceramics, coins, ring-wells, drains and later monumental remains. This material demonstrates the scale and longevity of the settlement within which Jain and Buddhist texts place religious activity. It does not, by itself, identify a fifth-century-BCE Jain monastery or prove that a particular brick structure belonged to Nigaṇṭhas. That absence must also be interpreted cautiously. Early mendicants could use temporary shelters, parks, household hospitality or structures that left no sectarian inscriptions. Archaeology is therefore most powerful here as contextual evidence: it confirms an urban and connected landscape capable of supporting repeated ascetic residence and patronage while restraining the temptation to label ambiguous remains by later religious memory.

21.27 Later pilgrimage landscapes preserve memory while also relocating and monumentalising it

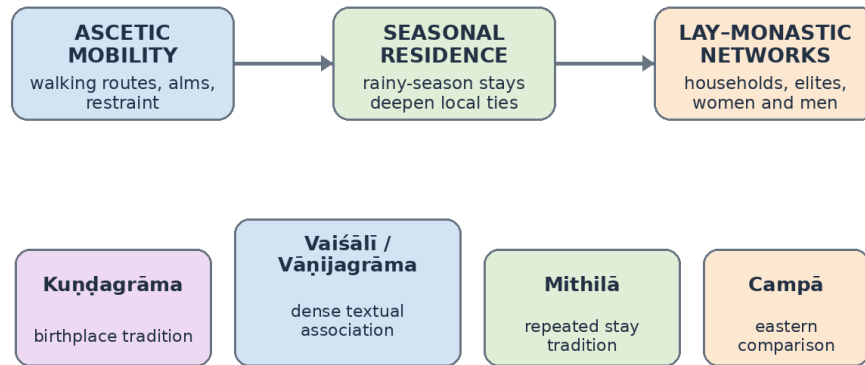
Modern and medieval Jain sacred geography around Vaiśālī identifies places associated with Mahāvīra's birth and life, and pilgrimage has helped keep these associations culturally alive. Pilgrimage, however, is an active historical process. Shrines are rebuilt, routes change, names migrate, rival identifications emerge and communities choose which memories to monumentalise. A present temple can therefore testify strongly to later devotion without proving the exact location of an event centuries earlier. Rather than dismissing pilgrimage as "legend," social history asks when an identification becomes visible, who supports it, how it interacts with archaeology and how it reshapes regional identity. The Vaiśālī–Videha Jain landscape is both ancient memory and continuing historical construction.

21.28 Jainism belongs to the wider eastern Gangetic śramaṇa world, but no single cultural boundary explains everything

Theories of a distinctive eastern "Greater Magadha" have productively drawn attention to the concentration of Buddhist, Jain and other renunciant movements east of the older Vedic heartland. Jain evidence from Vaiśālī, Mithilā, Rājagṛha and Campā fits an eastern zone of intense debate about karma, rebirth, austerity and liberation. Yet such models should remain heuristic. Vedic ritual traditions were also present in Videha, rulers and teachers crossed regional boundaries, and doctrines cannot be assigned mechanically to soil types or political frontiers. The Jain landscape is best understood as an overlapping

network: ascetic mobility connected multiple cities; seasonal residence deepened local relations; household patronage tied renunciants to society; and later memory fixed selected nodes as sacred places.

Vaiśālī-Videha Jain landscape: overlapping layers



Textual geography is uneven: nodes indicate remembered association, not equal archaeological proof.

Figure 83 — The Vaiśālī-Videha Jain landscape is best modelled as overlapping mobility, seasonal residence, lay-monastic networks and remembered regional nodes rather than a single sectarian territory.

21.29 The evidence is strongest for networks and repeated association, weaker for population size and exclusive territory

Several propositions are well supported when the evidence streams are combined cautiously. Mahāvīra and Nigaṇṭha communities were known in the wider eastern Gangetic world; Vaiśālī had a substantial Jain/Nigaṇṭha presence in early religious memory; Mithilā and Campā were recurring nodes in Jain itinerary tradition; lay and ascetic relations were institutionally central; and religious competition crossed elite and household networks. Other claims remain weak: the percentage of Vaiśālī's population that was Jain, the exact location of every stay, the identification of early buildings as Jain, or a continuous line from a specific ancient site to a modern shrine. Stating these limits is not agnosticism. It allows a strong history of institutions and landscapes without manufacturing demographic precision that the sources cannot supply.

21.30 Conclusion: Jainism became regional through disciplined movement, repeated residence, lay support and remembered place

Jainism in the Vaiśālī-Videha landscape was neither a detached philosophy nor a fixed territorial church. Its social presence emerged through the movement of ascetics, the ethical regulation of bodies and possessions, the hospitality of householders, the participation of women and men, seasonal residence and competition with other teachers. Jain canonical memory places Mahāvīra repeatedly at Vaiśālī-Vāṇijagrāma and Mithilā and extends the network eastward to Campā; Buddhist sources independently attest Nigaṇṭha presence and elite interaction at Vesālī. Archaeology supplies the urban context while refusing easy sectarian labels. Later pilgrimage and biography then transformed remembered associations into durable sacred geography. The history is therefore one of layered regional embedding: movement created contact, residence created relationships, community organisation created continuity, and memory created landscape.

Table 21.1 — Evidence for Jainism in the Vaiśālī–Videha landscape, and limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Source control
Ācārāṅga, older disciplinary strata	Early Jain ascetic discipline, non-violence, careful movement and renunciant practice	A complete biography of Mahāvīra or exact regional population	Primary Jain monastic text; redactional layers require control
Ācārāṅga / Kalpa Sūtra biographical traditions	Kuṇḍagrāma–Videha association, family memory and later sacred biography	Literal confirmation of every genealogy, miracle or royal title	Later biographical layers within Śvetāmbara transmission
Kalpa Sūtra rainy-season list	Repeated remembered presence in Vaiśālī–Vāṇijagrāma, Mithilā and Campā	A contemporary year-by-year itinerary or exact lodging sites	Received canonical itinerary tradition; chronology debated
Aṅguttara Nikāya 8.12, Siha	Nigaṇṭha presence at Vesālī and interaction with Licchavi elites	A neutral account of Jain doctrine or demographic Buddhist victory	External Buddhist narrative; explicitly polemical/competitive
Jain Ceṭaka and kinship traditions	Memory of aristocratic connections and political patronage	Externally verified precision of every marriage and title	Sectarian genealogical tradition; corroboration uneven
Candanā/Candanabālā traditions	Importance assigned to women's renunciation and female leadership	A fully recoverable contemporary biography	Later Jain hagiographic and institutional memory
Vaiśālī archaeology	Dense early historic urban context capable of supporting itinerant and resident religious networks	Sectarian ownership of an uninscribed structure or a Jain monastery	Archaeology establishes context; religious attribution requires direct markers
Fourfold-community ideal	Institutional linkage of monks, nuns, laymen and laywomen	Traditional membership numbers as historical census	Community ideal preserved and elaborated across Jain textual history
Modern/medieval pilgrimage identifications	Continuing regional memory and sacred-place formation	Exact ancient topography solely from a present shrine	Useful for reception history; requires archaeological and textual control

Chapter 22 — Śaiva, Śākta and Vaiṣṇava transformations

Chapter argument. Between the late ancient and early medieval centuries, Śaiva, Śākta and Vaiṣṇava traditions became increasingly visible in Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga through image installation, temples, ritual specialists, patronage, sacred water and pilgrimage. The transformation was cumulative rather than a single conversion: Buddhist, Jain, Vedic, household and local practices continued within a poly-religious landscape. Regional claims are therefore tied to inscriptions, sculptures, architecture and securely controlled textual comparison rather than inferred from later sectarian prestige.

22.1 Transformation is a historical process, not a switch from one religion to another

Śaiva, Śākta and Vaiṣṇava traditions became increasingly visible in the religious landscape of eastern India between the late ancient and early medieval centuries, but the process cannot be described as a single conversion from “Vedic religion” to “Hinduism.” Sacrifice, household ritual, local cults, Buddhist and Jain institutions, image worship, temple patronage and ascetic traditions overlapped. New forms acquired monuments, specialists, texts and donors at different speeds. The historian must therefore ask when a deity, ritual or institution becomes visible in a particular evidence stream, who supported it, and whether the surviving material represents a local community, a travelling object, an elite foundation or a later reuse. The central argument of this chapter is that regional religious change occurred through institutional thickening: images, shrines, endowments, ritual experts and sacred places accumulated around older social landscapes rather than replacing them in a single chronological break.

22.2 Four evidence streams must be kept separate before they are combined

The first evidence stream is epigraphy: inscriptions can identify donors, rulers, deities, installations, tanks, temples and occasionally ritual specialists, but survive unevenly. The second is archaeology and art history: sculptures, architectural members, temple foundations and reused images can demonstrate material cult, yet often lack secure excavation context. The third is textual: Purāṇic, Āgamic, Tantric and sectarian literature records sophisticated ritual and theological systems, but the date and place of a manuscript or recension need not equal the date and place of the practices it describes. The fourth is later sacred memory, including living temples, pilgrimage claims and relocated images. Such continuity is historically important but cannot automatically date the beginning of a cult. Only after controlling these streams separately is it legitimate to reconstruct a regional transformation.

Evidence before synthesis

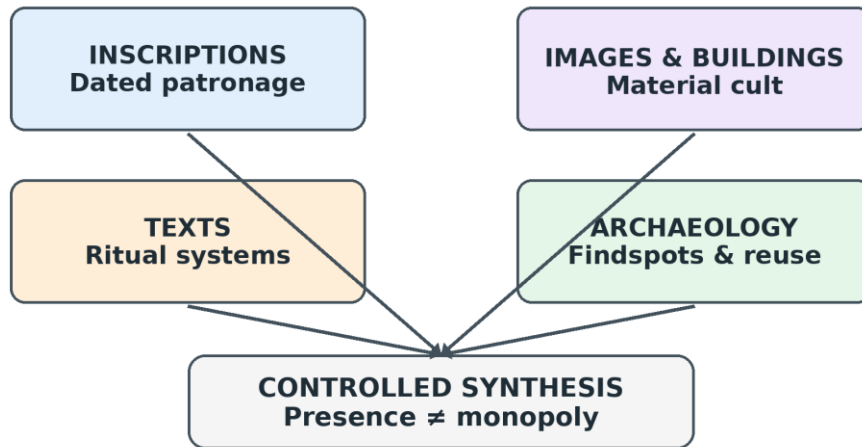


Figure 84 — Evidence for Śaiva, Śākta and Vaiṣṇava transformation must be separated into inscriptional, material, textual and archaeological streams before regional synthesis.

22.3 The Gupta and post-Gupta centuries intensified iconic and temple-centred worship

Across north India, the Gupta and post-Gupta centuries saw increasingly durable forms of deity installation, image patronage and temple building. Viṣṇu, Śiva, Devī and other deities had much earlier textual histories, but their material presence became more archaeologically visible through icons, shrines and inscriptions. This visibility should not be mistaken for the birth of the gods themselves. It marks a change in institutional form: divinity could be made present in consecrated images and fixed sacred buildings that required maintenance, ritual service and social investment. In eastern India the process unfolded unevenly and interacted with powerful Buddhist and Jain establishments. The result was not a uniform Brahmanical landscape but a denser field of religious institutions in which donors could support more than one tradition and sites could accumulate multiple layers of sacred use.

22.4 Śaivism was not one organisation but a family of ritual and theological formations

The label Śaiva covers practices ranging from worship of the liṅga and anthropomorphic forms of Śiva to ascetic, initiatory and Tantric systems. Early medieval inscriptions and textual research show the growing importance of Śaiva teachers, lineages and temple institutions across much of South Asia. Alexis Sanderson's influential formulation of a "Śaiva Age" draws attention to the exceptional reach of Śaiva ritual specialists and scriptures between roughly the fifth and thirteenth centuries. For Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga this macrohistorical model is useful only when tested against local evidence. A regional Śiva image or shrine supports Śaiva presence; it does not prove that a particular initiatory school operated there. The chapter therefore distinguishes broad Śiva worship from specific sectarian systems unless inscriptions or texts provide firmer identification.

22.5 Śaiva institutions connected renunciation, temple ritual and political patronage

Śaiva traditions could speak simultaneously to ascetics, householders and rulers. Renunciant prestige gave some Śaiva specialists an authority distinct from ordinary temple priesthood, while temple cult created regular ritual obligations, public festivals and durable sacred property. Royal and elite patrons could sponsor liṅgas, temples, tanks or teachers as acts of piety and political representation. These relationships were not merely ideological. A shrine required stone or brick, artisans, ritual materials, water, access routes and people responsible for daily service. Patronage could therefore bind religious institutions to agrarian and urban economies. Early medieval Bihar's documented Śaiva topography shows that Śiva worship was distributed across multiple localities rather than confined to one court. For this volume, the important social fact is the multiplication of supported nodes, not a claim that every village or ruler became exclusively Śaiva.

22.6 The liṅga is a ritual object whose history cannot be reduced to a modern symbol

The liṅga became one of the most recognisable material forms of Śiva worship. Historically, however, it should be analysed through installation, ritual use and site context rather than through a single universal explanation. A consecrated liṅga establishes a focus for offerings, bathing, circumambulation and priestly service; a portable or displaced liṅga has a different archaeological history. Multi-faced liṅgas and anthropomorphic Śiva images further show that aniconic and iconic modes were not opposites. When early medieval remains in Bihar or Mithila include liṅgas, they indicate ritual investment in Śiva, but dating must depend on associated architecture, inscription, style or excavation. Living worship around old stones may preserve continuity, may represent revival, or may combine both. The historian must leave these possibilities open where context is weak.

22.7 Śākta history requires distinguishing goddess worship from later formal Śākta systems

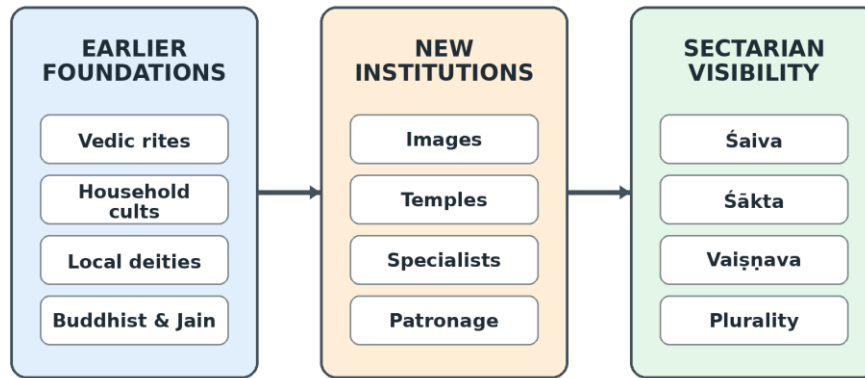
Female divinities appear in Vedic, epic, local and pan-Indian traditions long before the consolidation of formal Śākta theology. The early medieval centuries nevertheless transformed the scale and organisation of goddess worship. Durgā as Mahiṣāsuramardini, Pārvatī/Umā, Cāmuṇḍā, the Mothers and other forms became prominent in sculpture and sectarian texts, while Tantric traditions developed increasingly elaborate understandings of divine power, mantra and ritual. It would be methodologically unsafe to call every ancient female figurine “Śākta” or to infer a mature Tantric system from a single goddess image. The stronger inference is that goddess-centred cults became materially and theologically more visible and interacted with Śaiva, Buddhist and local traditions. Eastern India later became especially important for such interactions, making careful chronology essential.

22.8 The Devīmāhātmya helped articulate a goddess who could absorb multiple divine powers

The Devīmāhātmya, embedded in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa and generally assigned to the early centuries of the first millennium's latter half, presents Devī as a supreme power whose manifestations defeat cosmic threats. Its theological importance lies partly in synthesis: diverse goddess forms are related within a larger conception of one sovereign female divinity. The text does not document worship at a named Mithila or Aṅga site, so it cannot be used as a local gazetteer. It does, however, illuminate the conceptual environment in which images of Durgā, Cāmuṇḍā and allied forms could be understood within expanding goddess

traditions. As sculptures appear across eastern India, textual and material histories can be compared without assuming that one directly caused the other.

Transformation, not replacement



Overlapping practices could coexist for centuries.

Figure 85 — Early-medieval religious transformation is modelled as institutional thickening and overlap, not a single conversion line from earlier ritual to three mutually exclusive sects.

22.9 Goddess images reveal public materialisation, not simply private belief

A stone Maḥiṣāsūramardīnī or Cāmuṇḍā image required an artisan, a patron, a chosen iconographic programme and some intended setting. Even when that setting is lost, the object is evidence of organised material production. Pāla-period Bihar is particularly rich in images of both Buddhist and Brahmanical deities, including fierce and benign goddess forms. Such plurality cautions against assigning entire dynasties or regions a single religious identity. Sculptures also circulated after their original installations collapsed: they were reused in later temples, placed under trees, recovered from ponds or transferred to museums. Their present location therefore cannot be equated automatically with their original cult centre. Provenance, style, inscription and local archaeological context must be considered together.

22.10 Śākta and Śaiva traditions often intersected rather than occupying separate worlds

Many goddess traditions developed in close relation to Śiva. Pārvatī and Umā appear as consort figures; Durgā and Cāmuṇḍā can be integrated into Śaiva mythic and ritual systems; later Tantric corpora create even more complex relations between Śiva and Śakti. This interweaving makes modern denominational boxes misleading when applied too rigidly to early medieval evidence. A temple complex might contain Śiva, goddess, Gaṇeśa and other images; a patron could honour several forms; a ritual specialist might participate in a system that modern catalogues divide between “Śaiva” and “Śākta.” The correct historical question is therefore not which label exclusively owned a site, but how particular divine forms, ritual practices and institutions were assembled at that site over time.

22.11 Vaiṣṇava transformation joined older Viṣṇu traditions to image, temple and avatāra devotion

Viṣṇu's Vedic presence and the growth of Nārāyaṇa, Vāsudeva-Kṛṣṇa and avatāra traditions long predate the early medieval period. What changes visibly in archaeology is the density and institutional setting of Vaiṣṇava images and temples. Four-armed Viṣṇu figures with conch, discus, mace and lotus, images of Varāha or Narasiṃha, and complex stelae with attendants and personified attributes materialise a theological world in durable form. The temple creates recurring service and a public point of access, while royal or elite inscription can attach patronage to a named deity. This does not mean devotion was previously absent; it means the evidence for organised cult becomes more concrete. Eastern Indian sculpture demonstrates that Vaiṣṇava imagery belonged fully to the Pāla-period artistic world alongside Buddhist and Śaiva-Śākta production.

22.12 Aṅga's Mandar Hill provides a rare inscriptional anchor for regional Vaiṣṇava patronage

Mandar Hill in the wider Aṅga-Bhagalpur zone is especially valuable because a seventh-century Later Gupta inscription associated with Ādityasena links royal piety to a Viṣṇu/Narahari installation and to sacred water infrastructure created by the queen. Unlike a free-floating sculpture, an inscriptional record can connect deity, patron and place. The evidence demonstrates a Vaiṣṇava foundation in the Mandar landscape and shows how image installation, kingship and a tank could form part of one sacred project. It does not prove that Mandar was exclusively Vaiṣṇava: the hill accumulated Jain and other Hindu associations as well. Precisely this layered character makes it a strong case study for regional transformation through addition rather than replacement.

22.13 Sacred water, temple patronage and kingship formed a linked social technology

The Mandar evidence also reminds us that religious patronage extended beyond the sanctum. Tanks, wells, approach routes and settlement resources shaped access to sacred sites. A ruler or royal woman who sponsored water infrastructure participated in both piety and public utility, although the balance between these motives cannot be measured from inscriptional praise alone. In a monsoon environment, a tank could support ritual bathing, visitors and local water needs. Temples likewise generated movement of artisans, priests, donors and pilgrims. Religious institutions should therefore be placed inside material landscapes. The social history of Vaiṣṇavism, Śaivism or Śāktism cannot be written only from theology; it must include the built environment that made repeated worship possible.

22.14 Pāla political history does not equal a Buddhist monopoly on religious life

The Pāla rulers are famous for major Buddhist institutions, but the religious landscape of Bihar and Bengal under and around Pāla power was markedly plural. Brahmanical images, temples and grants coexisted with Buddhist monasteries, and regional rulers and elites could support different traditions. Birendra Nath Prasad's archaeological synthesis emphasises poly-religiosity rather than a sequence in which one religion simply replaces another. This matters for Mithila and Aṅga because Pāla-period artistic style is often encountered through both Buddhist and Hindu sculpture. A "Pāla image" is an art-historical and chronological description, not a statement that its deity is Buddhist. The same workshops or artistic conventions could serve patrons with different religious commitments.

22.15 Art-historical style can connect a sculpture to a region and period, but not reconstruct its whole institution

Susan Huntington's study of the Pāla-Sena schools remains fundamental for understanding eastern Indian stone and metal sculpture. Stylistic analysis can identify regional conventions, chronological development and relationships among images, especially when compared with dated works. Yet style alone cannot tell us who worshipped an image, how often, under what economic arrangements or whether the image stood in a large temple, a smaller shrine or another setting. This limitation is particularly important for sculptures reported from villages without controlled excavation. They are real evidence for artistic and cultic production, but their institutional biography may be partly lost. A socio-cultural history must therefore combine art history with settlement archaeology, inscriptions and later documentation without allowing one evidence type to carry conclusions it cannot support.

22.16 Mithila's surviving medieval sculptures show plurality rather than a single sectarian landscape

Published surveys of Mithila's art and archaeological discoveries record images of Viṣṇu, Śiva-Pārvatī, Gaṇeśa, Durgā/Cāmuṇḍā, Sūrya, Buddhist deities and other forms at sites across the region. Many are assigned broadly to Pāla-Sena or later medieval centuries, although individual datings require specialist review. The strongest regional conclusion is not that one cult "won," but that multiple iconographic traditions were materially established. A cluster of images at a site may indicate a temple complex, successive shrines, reuse or collection from the surrounding area; without excavation these alternatives remain open. This plural material record also warns against reading later literary or sectarian prestige backward as exclusive religious dominance.

22.17 Recent recoveries from ponds and fields demonstrate both archaeological richness and loss of context

In north Bihar, old stone images continue to be recovered accidentally during pond cleaning, cultivation and construction. Such finds can greatly expand the known corpus, but accidental discovery usually destroys stratigraphic context. A sculpture identified as Pāla or Karnata-period may still be datable stylistically, yet its original building and associated deposits may be unknown. Modern villagers may begin worship immediately, while museums and archaeologists seek conservation. This contemporary process is itself historically revealing: ancient objects can acquire new sacred biographies. For the present chapter, however, accidental finds are used cautiously—as evidence that early-medieval religious material survives widely, not as proof that the exact recovery spot was an original temple.

22.18 Vaiṣṇava images in Bihar demonstrate sophisticated iconographic production and patronage

Museum collections preserve substantial Pāla-period Vaiṣṇava sculpture from Bihar, including large bronzes and black-stone stelae. The Metropolitan Museum's early ninth-century bronze of Viṣṇu flanked by personified attributes and its later Pāla stone images illustrate the technical and theological sophistication of this production. Such objects imply patrons able to commission costly work and artisans trained in precise iconographic conventions. Their significance is broader than aesthetics: an image structured ritual attention, identified a divine form and helped make sectarian affiliation publicly legible. Yet museum provenance is sometimes only "Bihar," so these objects cannot be assigned specifically to Mithila, Vaiśālī or Aṅga unless

find history permits. They establish a regional artistic environment against which securely local finds can be compared.

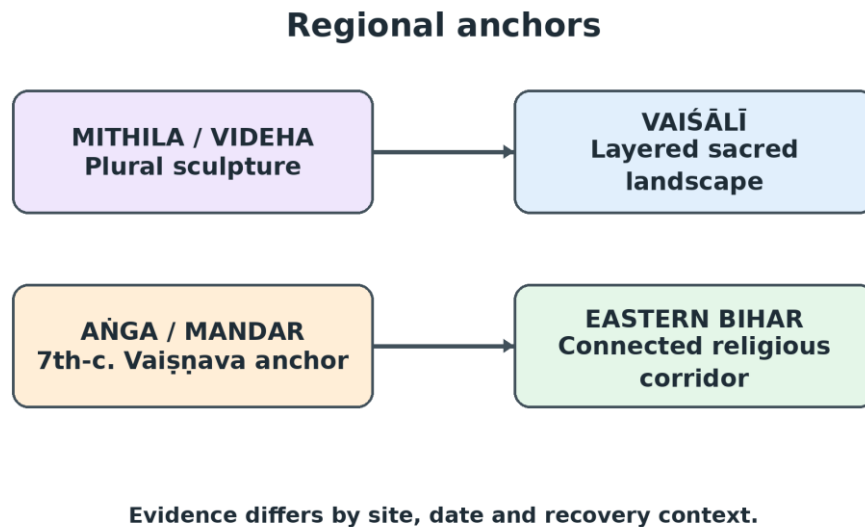


Figure 86 — Selected regional anchors show different evidentiary strengths: Mithila’s sculptural plurality, Vaiśālī’s layered sacred landscape, Aṅga–Mandar’s inscriptional Vaiṣṇava anchor, and the wider eastern Bihar corridor.

22.19 Image installation created durable obligations of care

A consecrated image is not merely a representation. In temple-centred traditions it is bathed, dressed, fed, adorned, awakened, put to rest, carried in procession or approached through vows and offerings according to local and textual prescriptions. This ritual life creates recurring needs for water, flowers, food, lamps, textiles, metal vessels and human labour. Consequently, the spread of image worship also has an economic history. Priests, gardeners, potters, oil suppliers, musicians and donors may become connected to a shrine even when inscriptions preserve only the elite patron. The institution converts episodic gift into repetitive service. This is one reason temple cult could become socially durable: it embedded theology in routines of material provisioning.

22.20 Temple growth changed the spatial organisation of religious life

A monastery, sacrificial ground, household shrine and temple organise space differently. The temple establishes a fixed divine centre with thresholds, circumambulation, restricted and public zones, and often an associated settlement environment. In early medieval eastern India, temple remains are much less uniformly preserved than sculpture, partly because brick structures deteriorate and later rebuilding obscures earlier phases. Where architectural fragments survive, they can reveal the scale and aesthetic programme of patronage. Where only images survive, the original building must not be imagined beyond the evidence. Even so, the wider transformation toward fixed cult places encouraged more regular pilgrimage, seasonal gathering and local identification with a deity or sacred site.

22.21 Sectarian texts and actual village practice operated at different levels

Āgamas, Tantras and Purāṇas can specify complex initiation, mantra, diagram, temple and worship systems. Their sophistication is indispensable for intellectual history, but local practice need not reproduce a text completely. Ritual specialists select, adapt and transmit procedures; householders participate at different

levels; local deities can be identified with wider divine forms without losing distinctive traditions. Conversely, practices poorly represented in surviving texts may have been socially important. The historian should therefore resist two opposite errors: treating normative texts as exact ethnography, or dismissing texts because practice was diverse. The relationship is better understood as a repertoire from which institutions drew authority and technique.

22.22 Tantric transformations linked body, mantra, deity and power in new ritual configurations

Early medieval Tantric traditions, especially Śaiva and Śākta systems, developed powerful ritual technologies centred on initiation, mantra, visualisation, maṇḍala, the ritual body and forms of divine power. Their influence extended well beyond small esoteric groups because ritual specialists could serve rulers and temples, and because Tantric elements entered broader worship. Eastern India later became a major field of interaction among Śaiva, Śākta and Buddhist Tantric traditions. Yet the regional evidence for any specific school in Mithila, Vaiśālī or Aṅga must be demonstrated rather than assumed from eastern India as a whole. The safe conclusion is that these areas participated in a wider cultural zone in which Tantric forms became increasingly influential, while local institutional histories remain unevenly documented.

22.23 Śākta power should not be reduced to a story of “tribal absorption”

Older scholarship often explained goddess traditions through a simple model in which Brahmanical religion absorbed supposedly primitive or tribal mother goddesses. Such models can obscure agency, chronology and the complexity of religious exchange. Local goddesses, village protectors, elite temple goddesses and textual Devī forms may interact without fitting a one-way ladder from “folk” to “high” religion. In Mithila and Aṅga, later goddess centres can preserve local names and ritual features while also participating in Sanskrit myth and Tantric theology. The historical task is to trace specific connections where evidence permits. A regional goddess image with identifiable iconography is one datum; a later pilgrimage tradition is another. Neither should be forced into an evolutionary scheme unsupported by evidence.

22.24 Vaiṣṇava avatāra theology allowed regional landscapes to connect with pan-Indian narratives

The avatāra concept gave Vaiṣṇava traditions a powerful way to locate cosmic narratives in particular places. Narasiṃha, Varāha, Rāma and Kṛṣṇa could be represented in sculpture and associated with local sacred geography. Mandar’s Narahari association is an especially important regional example because inscriptional evidence links the deity with a royal foundation. Other local claims, especially those first documented much later, require separate dating. Pan-Indian narrative does not erase locality; rather, locality can gain wider prestige by being incorporated into a shared mythic world. This process helps explain how pilgrimage networks grow: a hill, tank or temple becomes simultaneously local infrastructure and a point within a larger sacred map.

22.25 Religious patronage was not mechanically determined by dynastic identity

Historians often label rulers “Buddhist,” “Śaiva” or “Vaiṣṇava,” but royal patronage could be broader than personal initiation or devotional preference. A ruler might support Brahmins, monasteries, temples, teachers and public works for different political and religious reasons. Queens, ministers, feudatories, merchants and local elites also acted independently. The Mandar record itself gives a royal woman a visible

role in sacred water patronage. In Pāla-period eastern India, the coexistence of Buddhist and Brahmanical institutions makes dynastic labels especially inadequate as descriptions of society. Religious transformation should therefore be mapped through actual grants, objects and sites rather than inferred automatically from the ruler's conventional identity.

22.26 Gender appears in patronage, goddess theology and ritual participation in different ways

The rise of goddess traditions does not by itself demonstrate increased social power for women. Divine femininity and women's legal or economic position are separate historical questions. Nevertheless, women appear in religious history as patrons, household ritual participants, ascetics and members of pilgrimage communities. Royal women could fund tanks or temples; household women could sustain vows and domestic worship; goddess theology could articulate female divinity in extraordinarily powerful terms. These dimensions intersect but should not be collapsed. A strong Devī cult may coexist with patriarchal social institutions. Conversely, an inscription naming a female donor provides concrete evidence of agency even when theological texts say little about ordinary women.

22.27 Religious specialists became mediators between textual systems and local society

Priests, ascetics, teachers, temple managers and ritual experts translated broad traditions into local institutions. Their work included consecration, daily worship, calendrical rites, teaching, dispute, healing rites, pilgrimage guidance and maintenance of sacred property. Some specialists belonged to hereditary communities; others to initiatory or monastic lineages. Surviving evidence rarely lets us reconstruct the full occupational structure of a single Mithila or Aṅga temple in this period. Nevertheless, the growth of specialised ritual systems implies social roles that could persist beyond individual patrons. Religious transformation therefore involved professional and institutional continuity as much as theological innovation.

22.28 Poly-religiosity is a better model for early medieval Bihar than a zero-sum contest

Archaeological study of Bihar and Bengal between roughly 600 and 1200 CE shows Buddhist, Brahmanical and Jain sites existing in overlapping landscapes. Competition for patronage was real, and some institutions declined while others expanded, but coexistence was common. Images and architectural remains indicate that Śaiva, Śākta and Vaiṣṇava cults did not require the immediate disappearance of Buddhist or Jain practice. Nor were the Brahmanical traditions themselves a single bloc. This model is particularly appropriate to a region already shaped by the earlier Buddhist and Jain histories of Vaiśālī and Aṅga. The early medieval transformation added new densities of temple and image-centred worship to an already plural religious environment.

How traditions became durable

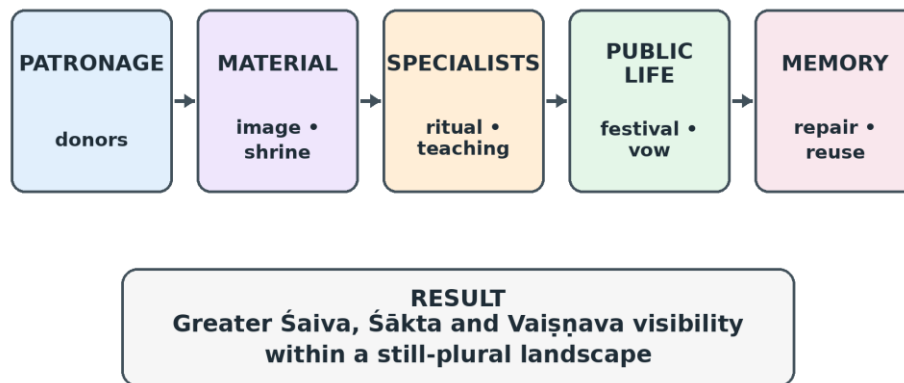


Figure 87 — Sectarian traditions became socially durable through linked processes of patronage, materialisation, ritual specialists, public practice, and the continued repair or reuse of sacred objects and places.

22.29 The evidence is strongest for material and institutional visibility, weaker for population percentages

By combining inscriptions, sculpture, architectural remains and comparative texts, several conclusions are robust. Śiva, Viṣṇu and goddess cults were materially established in early medieval Bihar; Mithila preserves a diverse corpus of Brahmanical imagery; Mandar offers a specific seventh-century Vaiṣṇava patronage anchor; and wider eastern Indian religious life was poly-religious. Much weaker are claims about what percentage of the population followed each sect, whether particular villages were exclusively Śaiva or Vaiṣṇava, or how quickly household belief changed. Archaeology preserves durable objects better than private devotion. The chapter therefore speaks of expanding visibility and institutionalisation rather than demographic conversion.

22.30 Conclusion: Śaiva, Śākta and Vaiṣṇava traditions transformed the region by building durable institutions into an already plural landscape

The major transformation was not the sudden arrival of three fully formed religions. It was the progressive materialisation and institutionalisation of related but distinct traditions through images, temples, sacred water, ritual specialists, texts, patronage and pilgrimage. Śaiva networks linked ascetic authority and temple service; goddess traditions expanded through powerful iconographies and Tantric-theological synthesis; Vaiṣṇava cults connected established Viṣṇu-Nārāyaṇa traditions with temples, avatāra images and regional sacred places such as Mandar. Mithila's sculpture record and the broader archaeology of Bihar show plurality rather than monopoly. The social history that follows from this evidence is therefore one of layered sacred landscapes: older rites, Buddhist and Jain institutions, local cults and new Brahmanical temple formations interacted, competed, borrowed and endured. Chapter 23 can now examine how these accumulated traditions turned rivers, hills, ponds, routes and settlements into a more densely articulated sacred geography.

Table 22.1 — Evidence for Śaiva, Śākta and Vaiṣṇava transformations, and limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Source control
Ādityasena/Mandar Hill inscription, 7th c.	Named royal Vaiṣṇava/Narahari patronage and sacred-water works in the Aṅga-Bhagalpur zone	Exclusive Vaiṣṇava control of Mandar or the beliefs of the whole population	Epigraphic anchor; later sacred layers must be separated
Pāla-period Viṣṇu sculpture from Bihar	Sophisticated Vaiṣṇava iconographic production, costly commissions and wider regional cult	A specific Mithila/Vaiśālī/Aṅga provenance when museum findspot is only “Bihar”	Use dated/provenanced objects where available
Śaiva inscriptions and shrine distribution in early medieval Bihar	Widespread Śiva-oriented patronage and institutional nodes	Presence of one uniform Śaiva sect or identical ritual at every site	Macro-regional topography requires local checking
Mithila sculptures: Viṣṇu, Śiva-Pārvatī, goddess forms and others	Material plurality of Brahmanical cults in the medieval landscape	That every recovery point is an original temple or that one cult dominated the region	Many finds lack controlled excavation context
Devīmāhātmya and later goddess literature	Theological consolidation of Devī and a framework for powerful goddess forms	Direct proof of worship at a named Mithila or Aṅga site	Textual history and local cult history must be correlated, not equated
Śaiva/Śākta Tantric corpora	Initiatory, mantra and ritual systems influential in early medieval religious culture	Automatic presence of a named Tantric school wherever Śiva or Devī images occur	Specific lineages require textual, inscriptional or other local evidence
Archaeology of Bihar–Bengal, c. 600–1200	Poly-religiosity, coexistence and competition among Buddhist, Jain and Brahmanical institutions	A simple replacement sequence or demographic percentages	Site-by-site chronology remains essential
Later living temples, pilgrimage claims and reused ancient images	Continuing sacred memory and new biographies of old objects	The foundation date of a cult without earlier evidence	Continuity, revival and reuse must remain separate possibilities

Chapter 23 — Sacred geography

Chapter argument. Sacred geography in Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga was produced cumulatively through remembered narratives, repeated movement, water and route infrastructure, monuments, patronage and later pilgrimage. The chapter separates textual, archaeological, epigraphic and later devotional evidence so that modern holy places are not projected backward as unchanged ancient sites. It then reconstructs how rivers, groves, ponds, hills, cities and monastic complexes became connected into layered and often poly-religious regional landscapes.

23.1 Sacred geography is made through historical practice, not discovered as a timeless map

Sacred geography is the organisation of space through remembered events, ritual acts, institutions, routes and material markers. A river may be physically ancient while its association with a particular deity, teacher or pilgrimage circuit is much later. A hill can acquire several religious meanings in different centuries, and a pond can function simultaneously as water infrastructure, a ritual bathing place and a landmark in narrative memory. The history of Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga therefore requires a layered method. It is not enough to collect modern holy places and project them backward. Nor should later pilgrimage be dismissed as mere legend. Sacred landscapes are historical achievements: communities select places, return to them, invest in them, argue over them, rebuild them and connect them to wider narratives. The central question is not simply which places were sacred, but when, to whom, through what evidence, and with what social consequences.

23.2 Four evidence streams must be dated separately before a sacred landscape is reconstructed

The first stream is textual: Vedic, Upaniṣadic, Buddhist, Jain, epic and later devotional traditions name regions, rivers, cities, groves, ponds and hills. The second is archaeological and epigraphic: settlement phases, stupas, pillars, temples, sculptures, inscriptions, tanks and monasteries can establish material activity at particular times. The third is ritual practice, which includes bathing, circumambulation, offering, relic veneration, image service, monastic residence and seasonal gathering. The fourth is later pilgrimage memory, preserved in routes, temple traditions, local chronicles, oral accounts and the rebuilding of sacred sites. Each stream answers different questions. A canonical story does not date a surviving wall; a medieval inscription does not prove that the same cult existed there a millennium earlier; a modern pilgrimage centre can be historically important without being archaeologically identical with an ancient capital. Controlled comparison is therefore the governing rule.

Sacred geography: evidence streams

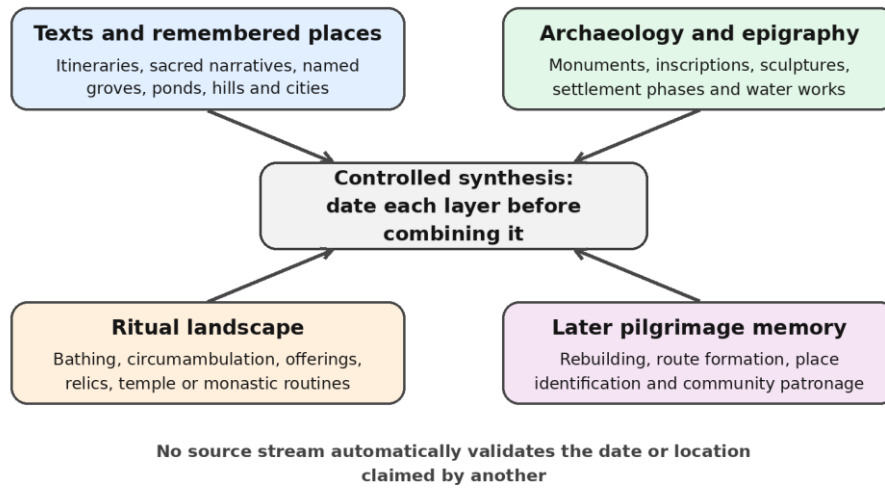


Figure 88 — Sacred geography must be reconstructed from separately dated textual, archaeological-epigraphic, ritual and later pilgrimage evidence before synthesis.

23.3 The Indian category of tīrtha links crossing, place and social movement

The Sanskrit word tīrtha originally carries the sense of a ford or crossing and developed a powerful religious range: a place where ordinary and sacred worlds could be crossed, a destination of pilgrimage, or a site made efficacious through divine, ascetic or ancestral association. Diana Eck has shown how Indian sacred geography is produced by networks of places rather than by one central sanctuary. For this region, the concept is especially useful because rivers, crossings and travel routes recur repeatedly in political, commercial and religious history. Yet the term should not be applied mechanically to every ancient site. Buddhist and Jain landscapes had their own vocabularies and institutions, while many local sacred places were organised around ponds, groves, hills or shrines. The wider historical point is that movement made place meaningful: repetition turned routes and destinations into socially durable maps.

23.4 Rivers created both sacred corridors and unstable historical evidence

The Ganga, Gandak, Kosi and numerous tributaries shaped settlement and mobility, but river sanctity cannot be inferred simply from hydrology. Rivers move, channels avulse, banks erode and ferry points shift. A textual river name may preserve a long cultural memory while the physical channel associated with it changes. Sacred geography must therefore combine philology with geomorphology and historical settlement evidence. At the social level, rivers could be routes for mendicants, pilgrims, merchants and rulers; boundaries between political or cultural zones; sources of water for ritual and daily life; and hazards requiring boats, embankments or seasonal adaptation. Because sacred routes depended on transport and access, a river's religious meaning was also tied to practical infrastructure. The same river could connect a pilgrimage network in one season and obstruct it in another.

23.5 The Ganga formed the southern horizon of Mithila and a major east–west religious corridor

Across many historical descriptions, the Ganga marks the southern edge of Mithila while also linking the region to Magadha, Aṅga and Bengal. This dual role—boundary and corridor—is more useful than

imagining a fixed frontier line. Ferries and riverbank settlements created points where travellers crossed between north Bihar and the southern Gangetic world. Buddhist monastic movement, Jain itinerancy, Brahmanical pilgrimage and later temple networks all benefited from this longitudinal artery. Riverbank sanctity, however, intensified at different places and periods. The Ganga's pan-Indian religious prestige cannot by itself date local ghats or prove the antiquity of a modern bathing site. What can be said securely is that the river provided a durable spatial framework within which sacred routes, economic exchange and political communication repeatedly converged.

23.6 The Sadānīrā/Gandak memory shows how a river could become a cultural boundary in narrative

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa's account of Videgha Māthava crossing the Sadānīrā has long been read as a memory of eastward Vedic expansion and the formation of Videha. The narrative transforms a river into a threshold between differently imagined cultural spaces. It is valuable evidence for how later Vedic tradition conceptualised region-making, but it should not be treated as a cartographic survey or a dated migration report. Identification of the Sadānīrā with the Gandak is widely accepted but does not make every detail of the narrative literal geography. Sacred geography here operates through remembered crossing: a political and ritual world is described as moving across water into a new landscape. The river is therefore both physical and conceptual, and its historical importance lies partly in that capacity to organise memory.

23.7 The Kosi warns against assuming that sacred landscapes remain physically fixed

The Kosi system has repeatedly shifted channels across the north Bihar plain. That history matters for sacred geography because villages, routes, ponds, mounds and shrines can be abandoned, relocated or reidentified after environmental change. A place-name may survive while its relation to a river changes; a temple may be rebuilt on safer ground; an image recovered from a field or channel can enter a new ritual setting. Such processes make continuity difficult to prove but historically interesting. They show that sacred geography is resilient precisely because it can be reconstructed. The problem is methodological: present proximity to a river cannot be used to establish ancient proximity, and an old narrative cannot be geolocated solely from a modern channel. Environmental history therefore protects religious history from false precision.

23.8 Groves were social spaces where mobility could become repeated sacred association

Early Buddhist texts repeatedly place teaching in groves, parks and wooded spaces near cities. Vaiśālī's Mahāvana and Ambapālī's grove are important examples. Such places were neither wilderness nor ordinary urban streets. They offered shade, room for assembly and a degree of separation from dense habitation while remaining close enough to households for food, visitors and patronage. Their sacredness emerged through repeated occupation, teaching, donation and memory rather than from monumental architecture alone. This is important because the earliest religious landscapes may leave weak archaeological signatures. A donated grove can become institutionally significant before brick monasteries appear. The social history of sacred geography must therefore include semi-open landscapes—orchards, groves and parks—that connected renunciant communities to towns without being fully urban or fully rural.

23.9 Ponds and tanks joined ritual efficacy to water management

Ponds are among the most persistent features of sacred landscapes in Mithila and eastern India. They can support bathing, domestic water, irrigation, animals and ritual while also serving as named landmarks around temples or settlements. Their chronological interpretation requires caution because ponds are repeatedly desilted, enlarged, renamed and rebuilt. Yet inscriptions and archaeology sometimes allow firmer dating. The seventh-century Mandar Hill record associated with Queen Koṇadevī is especially valuable because it explicitly commemorates the making of a puṣkariṇī, demonstrating royal female patronage of sacred-water infrastructure. Such evidence shows why water works belong to social as well as religious history: constructing a tank could enhance ritual prestige while providing a durable public resource. Sacred and practical functions were not opposites.

23.10 Campā's Gaggārā lotus pond is a strong example of a named water-place in textual sacred geography

Buddhist Vinaya and discourse traditions repeatedly locate the Buddha at Campā on the bank of the Gaggārā lotus pond. The references establish the pond as a remembered setting for teaching, monastic procedure and interaction with lay followers. They do not prove the exact archaeological location of the pond or the date of any surviving water feature at modern Champā/Nathnagar. Even so, the recurrence is historically important. It shows that urban sacred geography could crystallise around a water landmark rather than only around a monastery or shrine. Campā's wider archaeology—fortification, habitation, craft activity, coins and drainage—places this remembered religious setting inside a substantial urban economy. The sacred pond was therefore imagined within a city of households, markets and movement, not in isolation from ordinary life.

How a place becomes a sacred centre

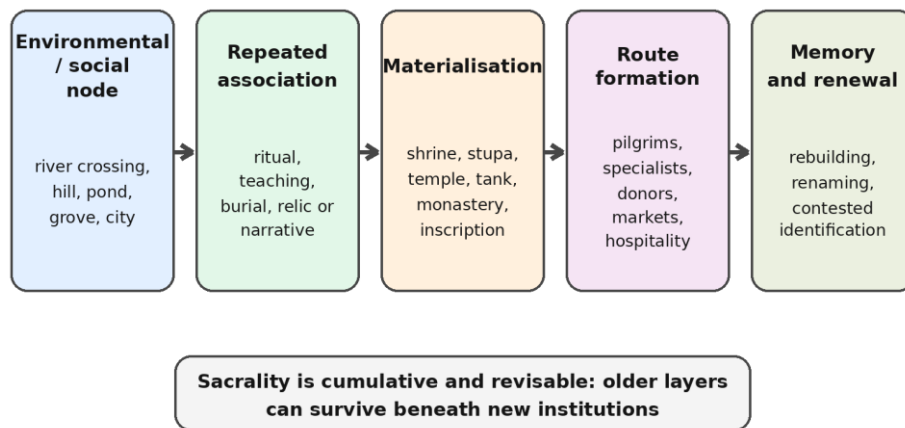


Figure 89 — A sacred centre can emerge through repeated association, materialisation, route formation and renewal; the sequence is cumulative rather than mechanically linear.

23.11 Vaiśālī became sacred through the accumulation of several religious maps rather than one exclusive tradition

Vaiśālī is unusually rich because Buddhist, Jain and later Brahmanical memories overlap with major archaeological remains. Buddhist texts place the Buddha in and around Vesālī, at groves and shrines; Jain

tradition gives the wider Vaiśālī–Videha landscape a central place in the life and itinerancy of Mahāvīra; archaeological work has identified urban remains, a relic stupa, the Aśokan pillar at Kolhua and later monastic structures. These elements do not belong to one moment. Their accumulation is itself the history. A city remembered by several communities could attract repeated investment because earlier prestige made later monumentality meaningful. Poly-religious sacred geography is therefore not a contradiction: different groups could claim, reinterpret and revisit the same regional node while maintaining distinct doctrines and institutions.

23.12 Relic stupas and pillars turned memory into durable spatial markers

The Buddhist relic tradition gives physical place unusual importance because bodily remains and commemorative stupas create fixed centres within a religion also characterised by monastic mobility. At Vaiśālī, the excavated relic stupa and the Mauryan pillar landscape demonstrate the long materialisation of Buddhist memory. The exact relationship between an excavated monument and a canonical event must still be argued, not assumed. Aśokan pillars in particular belong to a third-century BCE imperial programme; they cannot be treated as structures from the Buddha's lifetime. Their significance lies in the later fixing and monumentalising of places already meaningful within Buddhist memory. Once marked, such sites could support pilgrimage, patronage, maintenance and new narratives, producing a feedback loop between memory and material form.

23.13 Jain sacred geography relied heavily on movement, seasonal residence and remembered biography

Jain traditions associated Mahāvīra with Vaiśālī, Videha, Mithilā and Campā, while monastic discipline made routes, rainy-season residence and household support central to religious life. This produces a different spatial logic from a landscape dominated by fixed temples. Repeated residence can sacralise a city or village even when early material remains are difficult to identify. Later Jain pilgrimage then monumentalised selected biographical associations. The historian must distinguish these stages. A modern or medieval shrine at a remembered birthplace or residence is strong evidence for later devotion but not automatically for the precise location of an early event. The continuity that can often be reconstructed most confidently is regional rather than architectural: communities repeatedly returned to the same named zones and made them part of Jain historical identity.

23.14 Mithilā's sacred prestige began in more than one textual tradition

Mithilā and Videha are important in late Vedic and Upaniṣadic literature as settings of royal ritual, philosophical debate and the figure of Janaka. Epic and later devotional traditions add the Sita–Janaka–Rama cycle, creating another powerful map of sacred memory. These traditions need not be collapsed into one chronology to explain their cumulative effect. A region already prestigious as the land of Janaka could later be reinterpreted through Ramayana devotion, while philosophical memory and pilgrimage memory continued side by side. This layering helps explain why the name Mithila carried cultural authority beyond any single archaeological capital. Sacred geography can be attached to a region, courtly memory or narrative landscape even when the exact location of a palace, sacrificial field or episode remains uncertain.

23.15 Janakpur demonstrates the historical re-creation of a sacred city

Richard Burghart's classic study of Janakpur is methodologically important because it separates sacred claims about an ancient city from the historical processes through which Janakpur emerged and re-emerged

as a pilgrimage centre. Ascetics, priests, rulers, landholders and pilgrims participated in identifying and materialising places connected with Janaka and Sita. The present monumental landscape is therefore evidence of powerful historical devotion, not a transparent survival of Bronze or Iron Age urban fabric. This does not diminish Janakpur's significance; it clarifies it. Sacred cities can be rebuilt through memory, land grants, temple patronage, markets and pilgrimage. Their authenticity for devotees operates through a different logic from archaeological identity. A social history must examine both without forcing one to validate the other.

23.16 Ramayana localisation connected Mithila to a transregional narrative world

The Ramayana allowed local places in Mithila to participate in a story known across South and Southeast Asia. Janaka's court, Sita's birth or discovery, the bow, the marriage and related episodes could be localised in particular fields, ponds, shrines and routes. Localisation is historically productive because it attracts patrons and pilgrims while giving communities a place within a larger sacred narrative. Yet every localisation has its own documentary history. Some identifications are old, others become visible only in relatively recent sources. Rather than asking whether all modern sites are literally the exact locations of epic events, historians can ask when an identification appears, who sustains it, how it changes land use and movement, and how it interacts with other religious landscapes. This converts a potentially irresolvable authenticity dispute into a researchable social history.

23.17 Janakpur's ponds and parikrama show how a sacred city is organised through movement

The later pilgrimage landscape of Janakpur is structured not only by temples but by ponds, processional paths and circuits of circumambulation. Sacred water, stopping places and movement among shrines turn the city into a ritual sequence rather than a collection of isolated monuments. Such circuits also create economic rhythms: pilgrims require food, lodging, transport, ritual services and market goods, while institutions maintain buildings and water bodies. The antiquity of each pond or stopping place must be established separately, and present ritual prominence should not be equated with ancient date. Still, the spatial form itself is historically revealing. Parikrama converts geography into repeated embodied practice. Through walking, bathing and narration, participants continually reproduce a regional sacred map.

23.18 Mandar Hill is one of Aṅga's clearest examples of a natural feature becoming a multi-layered sacred centre

Mandar rises conspicuously from the landscape south of Bhagalpur and has accumulated Vaiṣṇava, Jain and later local religious associations. Its physical prominence helps explain why it could become a durable landmark, but topography alone did not make it sacred. The strongest historical anchor is epigraphic: the Later Gupta-period inscriptions associated with Ādityasena's family connect the hill with Narahari/Narasimha devotion and with a commemorated tank. Later narratives and pilgrimage practices added further meanings. Mandar should therefore be treated as a site biography. Different communities did not necessarily use the hill in the same way or at the same time, and later mythic identifications cannot be projected automatically into the seventh century. The value of Mandar lies precisely in the possibility of separating its layers.

23.19 The Mandar tank inscription demonstrates how patronage could bind deity, water and royal memory

The Mandar Hill inscription recording Queen Koṇadevī's construction of a puṣkariṇī is unusually concrete evidence for the social production of sacred space. A tank at the foot of a sacred hill can serve pilgrims, local residents, ritual bathing and the practical water needs of an institution or settlement. The inscription turns that work into public memory by attaching it to royal status and piety. Gender matters here because a queen appears as a named patron rather than as an anonymous participant. The case warns against defining religious patronage only as temple construction. Water management, approach routes, rest facilities and landscape modification can be equally important in making a sacred centre durable. Monumentality often depends on infrastructure that is less visually dramatic but more socially pervasive.

23.20 Mandar's later plurality illustrates how sacred places can be shared without becoming religiously identical

Mandar is claimed within multiple religious narratives. Such plurality should not be forced into a simple sequence in which one religion replaces another. Sacred hills can sustain parallel claims because different groups emphasise different episodes, deities, ascetics or ritual zones. Shared geography does not imply shared theology. At the same time, practical resources—paths, water, markets, lodging and access—can be used by diverse visitors. Early medieval Bihar and Bengal more generally show overlapping Buddhist, Brahmanical and Jain religious centres, as Birendra Nath Prasad's archaeological synthesis emphasises. Mandar offers a regional instance of this wider pattern. The historian should therefore map institutions and practices, not colour an entire hill permanently with one sectarian label.

Selected regional sacred anchors

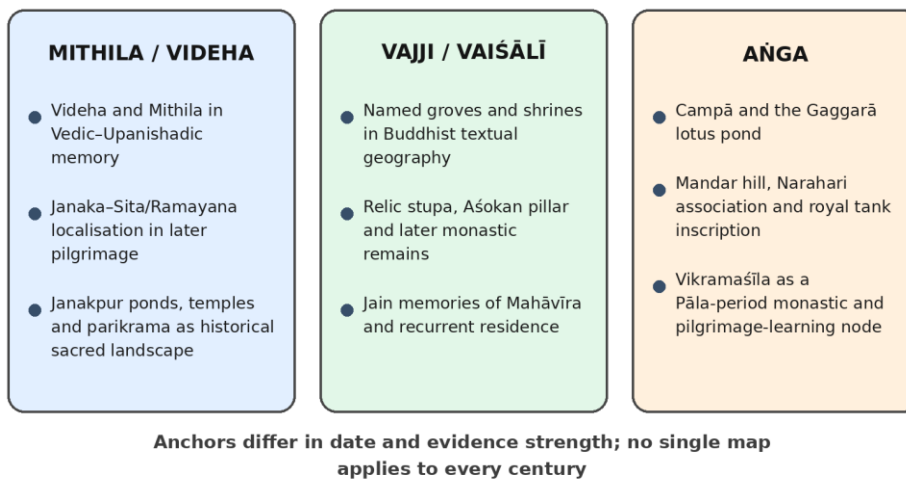


Figure 90 — Selected regional anchors illustrate different kinds of sacred evidence in Mithila–Videha, Vajji–Vaiśālī and Aṅga; their dates and evidentiary strengths are not uniform.

23.21 Vikramaśīla transformed the Aṅga–Bhagalpur Ganga corridor into a major monastic-intellectual sacred node

The excavated remains at Antichak, generally identified with Vikramaśīla, represent a large Pāla-period Buddhist monastic complex in the Bhagalpur region. Its importance belongs to a later chronology than early

Campā, but it demonstrates continuity in the regional value of the Ganga corridor for movement and institutional concentration. A mahāvihāra required land, food, construction materials, teachers, students, ritual spaces and connections to patrons. It was therefore simultaneously an intellectual, religious and economic landscape. Pilgrims and scholars could approach a monumental complex whose spatial order itself communicated institutional authority. Vikramaśīla should not be projected backward into ancient Aṅga, but its later presence shows how the region continued to generate sacred centres through new forms of monastic organisation.

23.22 Pilgrimage routes were social corridors, not lines drawn independently of roads and seasons

Sacred journeys depended on the same material conditions as other travel. Rivers required ferries; monsoon conditions altered roads; forests and political insecurity affected route choice; towns offered food and lodging. A pilgrimage circuit therefore grew where memory and mobility could reinforce one another. Religious centres near commercial routes could benefit from existing traffic, while popular shrines could themselves increase demand for transport and markets. The relationship should not be reduced to the claim that “trade caused pilgrimage” or the reverse. More often, several forms of mobility shared corridors and facilities. This is particularly plausible along the Ganga and in the urban networks linking Vaiśālī, Mithilā, Campā and later Bhagalpur-area institutions. Sacred geography was embedded in transportation geography.

23.23 Pilgrimage created recurring demand for hospitality, food and ritual services

A sacred centre becomes socially consequential when visitors arrive repeatedly. Pilgrims need grain, cooked food, water, fuel, shelter, boats, carts, guides, offerings and sometimes medical assistance. Priests, monks, ascetics and temple servants also require maintenance. Markets near sacred places can therefore respond to religious calendars without becoming purely “religious economies.” Local households may host visitors or sell provisions; artisans may produce lamps, vessels, textiles, images and architectural components; rulers or donors may finance wells and rest facilities. The scale varies enormously and must be demonstrated rather than assumed. Still, the principle is important: sacred geography redistributes demand in space and time. It can make an otherwise modest settlement seasonally significant or sustain specialised services around a major institution.

23.24 Artisans helped convert remembered places into visible sacred landscapes

Stupas, pillars, temples, icons, railings, seals, manuscripts and ritual vessels all require skilled labour. A sacred narrative becomes materially durable only when patrons can mobilise stoneworkers, brickmakers, metalworkers, painters, carpenters and other specialists. The Pāla-Sena sculptural corpus of Bihar and Mithila demonstrates sophisticated regional workshops, while monastic sites required large-scale brick construction. Artisans were not merely executing abstract theology. They translated iconographic and architectural requirements into local materials and styles. Their mobility could also connect sacred centres, spreading technical conventions across regions. Sacred geography was therefore partly a geography of labour. The concentration of religious institutions created demand for skills, while established craft zones made certain kinds of monumentality possible.

23.25 Women appear in sacred geography as patrons, renouncers, pilgrims and remembered figures

Sacred landscapes were not produced by male rulers and priests alone. Ambapālī's grove donation at Vaiśālī is central to Buddhist memory; Jain traditions preserve women's participation in renunciation and lay support; Queen Koṇadevī's Mandar tank inscription gives epigraphic evidence for female royal patronage; Sita/Janaki becomes the defining sacred figure of later Janakpur. These forms of presence are not equivalent. A goddess or epic heroine does not automatically reveal ordinary women's property rights, and hagiographic narratives require source criticism. Nevertheless, the landscape records multiple forms of female agency and representation. Women could finance infrastructure, enter religious communities, support mendicants, participate in pilgrimage and become the focus of regional devotion. Gender is therefore built into the making of sacred place.

23.26 Rulers used sacred landscapes to make authority visible, but religious patronage was not simple propaganda

Pillars, tanks, temples, monasteries and grants could associate rulers with piety, generosity and regional order. Aśokan monumentality at Buddhist sites and Later Gupta patronage at Mandar demonstrate different ways in which political power entered sacred space. Pāla support for great monasteries offers another. Yet rulers patronised institutions for multiple reasons, and individual religious preference cannot be read mechanically from every donation. Sacred patronage could stabilise routes, provide water, cultivate alliances with specialists, enhance dynastic memory or support learning. Communities also had agency: monks, priests and local elites could attract and redirect patronage. Sacred geography was thus produced through negotiation between political resources and institutional interests rather than imposed unilaterally from a court.

23.27 Sacred geography contributed to regional identity without creating immutable cultural borders

Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga each accumulated distinctive sacred associations: Janaka and Sita in Mithila, the Buddha and Mahāvīra at Vaiśālī, Campā's renunciant memories, Mandar's hill traditions and later Vikramaśīla in the Bhagalpur region. These associations could strengthen regional identity because places gave large narratives local coordinates. Yet sacred maps overlapped political borders and changed with dynasties, migrations and routes. Pilgrims routinely crossed regions; texts linked local sites to pan-Indian cosmologies; monasteries recruited beyond their immediate hinterlands. Sacred geography should therefore be understood as a network of centres and corridors, not a wall around a culture. Regional identity emerged from repeated association without requiring isolation.

23.28 Poly-religious landscapes are better understood through shared infrastructure and differentiated meaning

A pond, road, market or hill can serve multiple communities while remaining ritually distinct for each. Vaiśālī, Campā and Mandar all demonstrate forms of layered religious memory. Early medieval Bihar and Bengal provide particularly strong archaeological evidence for Buddhist, Brahmanical and Jain centres in overlapping spatial fields. Competition for patrons was possible, but coexistence and borrowing were also normal. Shared infrastructure should not be mistaken for doctrinal synthesis; different communities could use the same route or town while preserving separate institutions. Conversely, sectarian labels should not

obscure the ordinary services that made religious life possible. A historically adequate map therefore needs two layers at once: differentiated sacred meanings and common material environments.

Sacred landscape and local economy

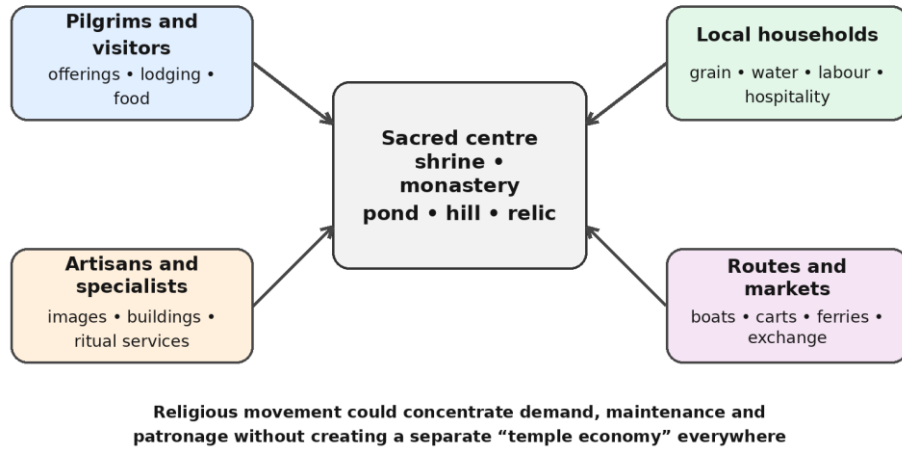


Figure 91 — Sacred centres could concentrate recurring demand for hospitality, household support, specialist labour and transport while remaining embedded in wider local economies.

23.29 Evidence is strongest for named associations and material investment, weaker for exact ancient localisation and uninterrupted continuity

Several conclusions are robust. Texts repeatedly associate particular regional nodes with religious teachers and narratives; archaeology demonstrates major urban and religious investment at Vaiśālī and later Vikramaśīla; Campā's Gaggara pond is a stable element of Buddhist textual memory; Mandar preserves unusually strong epigraphic evidence for royal sacred-water and Vaiṣṇava patronage; later Janakpur became a major materialised landscape of Janaka–Sita devotion. The weakest claims are those that identify a modern shrine, pond or field as the exact location of an undated ancient event solely because local tradition says so. The appropriate response is neither credulity nor dismissal. Later identifications are themselves historical evidence and should be dated, mapped and related to landholding, patronage, pilgrimage and community memory.

23.30 Conclusion: sacred geography was a cumulative social technology of memory, movement and materialisation

Across Mithila, Vajji and Āṅga, sacred geography emerged when narratives and institutions became attached to specific rivers, groves, ponds, hills, cities and routes. Some associations are preserved in early texts; others become visible through inscriptions, archaeology or much later pilgrimage. Their dates differ, but the processes recur. Repeated visitation creates memory; patronage creates durable markers; water and roads make access possible; ritual specialists organise practice; markets and households support visitors; rebuilding renews claims after environmental or political change. Sacred places are therefore neither timeless survivals nor arbitrary inventions. They are cumulative social formations. The next chapter turns from these spatial structures to their temporal counterpart: festivals and calendrical culture, through which communities repeatedly activated sacred places at particular times of year.

Table 23.1 — Evidence for sacred geography, and limits of inference

Evidence / place	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Source control
Videha / Mithilā in Vedic–Upaniṣadic texts	Regional and courtly sacred-intellectual memory	Exact archaeological location of every narrated event	Textual geography; date individual texts and layers
Vaiśālī: relic stupa, Aśokan pillar, monastic remains	Long-term Buddhist materialisation in an already important city	That all remains belong to the Buddha's lifetime	Archaeological and Mauryan/ later monumental layers must be separated
Vaiśālī–Videha Jain traditions	Repeated regional association with Mahāvīra and Jain itinerancy	Exact location/date of every later shrine	Canonical memory plus later pilgrimage history
Campā and Gaggārā lotus pond	Stable Buddhist textual association of a named urban water-place	Exact archaeological identification of the pond	Textual anchor combined cautiously with Campā archaeology
Mandar Hill inscriptions	7th-century royal Vaiṣṇava association and Queen Koṇadevī's tank patronage	Exclusive sectarian control or antiquity of all later myths	Strong epigraphic anchor for one historical layer
Vikramaśīla / Antichak	Large Pāla-period Buddhist monastic landscape in Aṅga–Bhagalpur corridor	Continuity with ancient Campā institutions	Excavated early-medieval institutional anchor
Janakpur pilgrimage landscape	Historically powerful Janaka–Sita localisation, ponds, temples and circuits	Archaeological identity with ancient Mithilā simply from tradition	Study reconstitution, patronage and pilgrimage as historical processes
Sacred rivers, ponds and routes	Material settings for bathing, movement, hospitality and ritual	Automatic sacredness or unchanged ancient channels	Combine environmental history with dated religious evidence

Chapter 24 — Festivals and calendrical culture

Chapter argument. Calendrical culture in Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga developed through the interaction of lunar and solar reckoning, seasonal ecology, monastic discipline, specialist astronomy, household ritual and regional festival practice. The chapter distinguishes durable calendrical structures from the much more difficult question of the antiquity of individual festivals, and treats the ritual year as a social technology that coordinates labour, gendered practice, markets, sacred places and institutional authority.

24.1 Calendars are social infrastructure, not merely systems for naming dates

A calendar coordinates people who otherwise live by different rhythms. Farmers watch rain, soil and crop cycles; ritual specialists calculate lunar days and auspicious combinations; monasteries organise communal observances; households schedule fasts, marriages and ancestor rites; rulers and scribes date grants, taxes and public acts. Festivals gather several of these clocks into a shared moment. The history of calendrical culture in Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga must therefore be written as a history of coordination. It is not enough to list holidays. The important questions are how dates were calculated, who possessed calendrical expertise, which activities were permitted or avoided, how seasonal ecology shaped observance, and how different communities could inhabit the same year differently. A ritual year is a social arrangement superimposed on astronomical and environmental cycles, and that arrangement changes over time.

24.2 Four evidence streams must be kept separate before the ritual year is reconstructed

Calendrical history draws on evidence that differs greatly in date and purpose. Astral and ritual texts define categories such as tithi, pakṣa, month, season and nakṣatra, but they do not automatically describe village practice in Mithila. Buddhist and Jain disciplinary texts preserve lunar observances and rainy-season residence, yet their normative rules require distinction from local behaviour. Inscriptions and dated manuscripts reveal eras, regnal years and the practical use of calculated dates. Pañcāṅgas and almanacs show specialist calendrical knowledge in later periods. Finally, ethnography and oral traditions document annual rites, women's observances, household routines and local festival sequences. Hiroshi Ishii's comparison of Mithila and Nepal is particularly valuable for the recent ritual year, but it cannot by itself prove ancient origins. Historical synthesis begins only after each layer is dated.

Calendrical culture: evidence streams

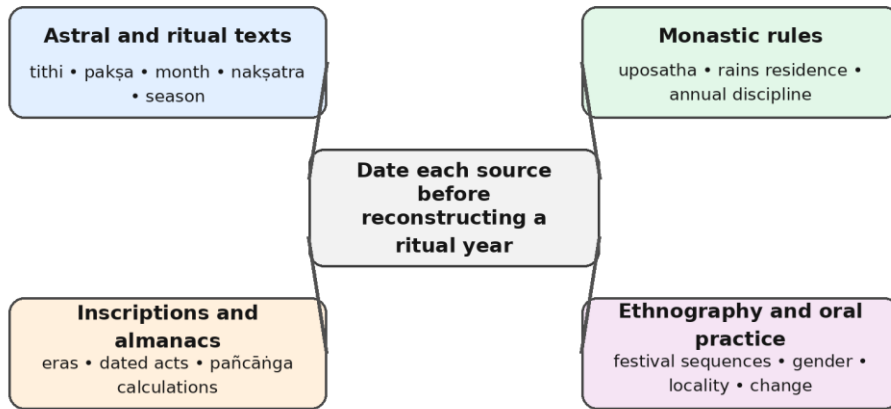


Figure 92 — Calendrical history must separate astral-textual, monastic, epigraphic-almanac and ethnographic evidence before reconstructing a ritual year.

24.3 Early Vedic ritual already required coordination of lunar, solar and seasonal time

Vedic ritual was inseparable from timing. New- and full-moon sacrifices, seasonal rites and soma ceremonies depended on recurring astronomical intervals. The ritual calendar therefore transformed celestial observation into collective scheduling. The relevant point for eastern India is not that a complete later Hindu calendar existed from the beginning, but that the expansion of Vedic ritual culture into Videha carried techniques for distinguishing lunar phases, seasons and appropriate ritual moments. The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa's Videha materials belong to a world in which ritual authority and temporal knowledge were closely connected. Because textual redaction is complex, individual prescriptions cannot simply be mapped onto a specific settlement or century in Mithila. Yet the broader institutional principle is secure: ritual specialists gained authority partly by knowing when an action should occur.

24.4 The lunar fortnight made recurring observance easy to organise across mobile communities

The waxing and waning halves of the lunar month provided a visible and repeatable framework. Full moon and new moon were not arbitrary dates; they could be observed without a written almanac, even if exact ritual reckoning became increasingly technical. The division of the month into tithis allowed more precise placement of rites such as eighths, elevenths, fourteenths and fifteenths. This framework survived across traditions because it was portable. A court, village, monastery or travelling ascetic community could share the same basic lunar sequence while attaching different meanings to particular days. Later Mithila ritual life, as Ishii observed, remained heavily dependent on lunar dates. Continuity of calendrical form, however, does not prove continuity of every festival attached to it; the container can be old while the ritual content changes.

24.5 Lunisolar coordination required correction because lunar months do not equal the solar year

Twelve synodic lunar months fall short of the solar year. A ritual system tied both to lunar phases and to seasons must therefore correct the difference. Indian calendrical traditions developed intercalation so that months and seasonal expectations did not drift indefinitely apart. This is socially important because the same named month had to remain broadly associated with monsoon, harvest or winter conditions if agricultural and ritual cycles were to remain intelligible. Intercalation is evidence of institutional timekeeping: someone had to know when adjustment was required, and communities had to accept the result. It also warns historians against translating traditional dates into modern calendar dates without calculation. The same festival can shift across the Gregorian calendar even while remaining fixed to its lunar rule.

24.6 The Vedāṅga Jyotiṣa represents a major stage in the formalisation of ritual astronomy, but its date is debated

The Vedāṅga Jyotiṣa describes a five-year cycle, lunar months, tithis, nakṣatras, solstitial points and procedures for coordinating ritual time. Its importance lies in making calendrical computation explicit. Scholars have long debated its chronological layers and the astronomical observations behind them, so it should not be assigned casually to a single date and then used as a direct record of Videha. What can be said with confidence is that ritual timing stimulated mathematical and observational astronomy in early India. Later calendrical specialists inherited a conceptual world in which astronomy served social decisions: when to sacrifice, travel, marry, fast, begin a rite or recognise an intercalary month. This relationship between calculation and practice eventually became central to regional pañcāṅga culture.

A lunisolar ritual calendar coordinates several clocks

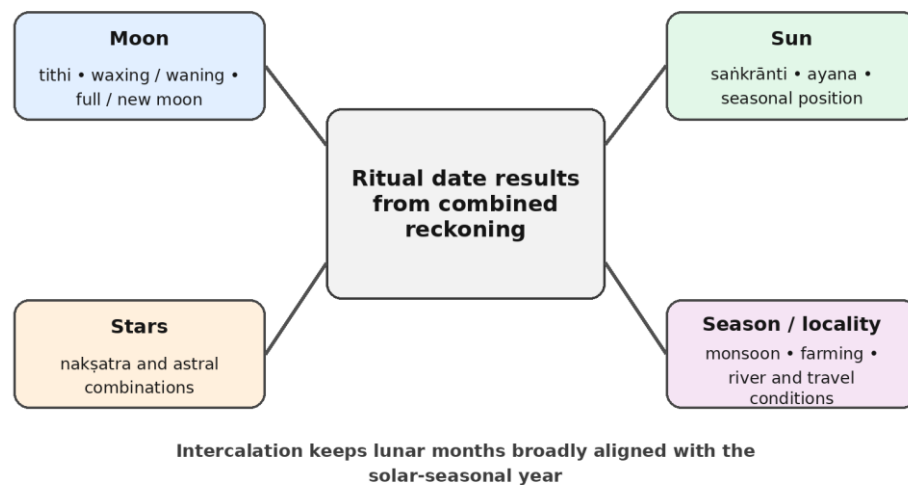


Figure 93 — A lunisolar ritual calendar coordinates lunar phases, solar position, astral reckoning and seasonal-local conditions; intercalation prevents unlimited drift between lunar months and the solar year.

24.7 Seasons were not merely astronomical divisions; they were experienced through monsoon ecology

A seasonal calendar in the middle and eastern Ganga plains had to confront rainfall, flooding, heat, insects, crop labour and road conditions. Ishii's Mithila research is especially useful because it resists a

simplistic idea that the whole monsoon ritual period was either uniformly inauspicious or uniformly dominated by agricultural work. He found that the rainy months contained many annual rites and that their timing intersected with, but did not simply mirror, rice cultivation. The monsoon also heightened danger from snakes and water-related conditions, helping explain why protective rites could cluster seasonally. Calendrical culture thus converts ecological recurrence into symbolic and social form. The relationship is probabilistic, not deterministic: the existence of snakes in the rains does not prove the origin of every serpent rite.

24.8 Buddhist uposatha institutionalised lunar observance as a recurring communal discipline

Buddhist monastic regulation adapted existing Indian lunar observance days. The uposatha became a regular occasion for communal assembly and recitation of the monastic code, especially at the end of the lunar fortnight. The Vinaya tradition even preserves concern that monks should know how to calculate the fortnight correctly. This is important for the history of Vajji and Aṅga because monastic communities at places such as Vaiśālī and Campā did not live outside ordinary time; they participated in a widely intelligible lunar framework while giving it institutional Buddhist form. The calendar created regular accountability. It also connected dispersed monasteries through a shared rhythm without requiring a central bureaucracy to announce every date.

24.9 The rains residence converted climate into an institutional season

The Buddhist vassa or rains residence restricted ordinary monastic wandering during the monsoon and thereby altered relations between monks, donors and settlements. Residence concentrated teaching, maintenance and provisioning in particular places for a defined season. The end of the rains was marked by further communal procedures. This is calendrical culture in a strong institutional sense: ecological conditions, disciplinary rules and social support were synchronised. In regions crossed by swelling rivers and muddy roads, seasonal residence also had practical consequences. Yet the rule should not be reduced to environmental convenience; it carried ethical and communal meanings within the Vinaya. Nor should later festivals attached to the end of rains be projected wholesale into the earliest period. The historical core is the structuring of monastic mobility by season and lunar reckoning.

24.10 Jain rainy-season discipline created a parallel but distinct temporal institution

Jain canonical and disciplinary traditions also organised mendicant movement around the rains. The Kalpa Sūtra and related rules associate Paryuṣaṇā with the monsoon residence and specify temporal limits for settling into the rainy-season stay. Such prescriptions are particularly relevant to the Vaiśālī–Videha landscape because Jain memory repeatedly places Mahāvīra and his community in this wider region. The annual rhythm connected ascetic restraint to lay support: monks and nuns stayed within a limited area, householders provided alms, and teaching became locally concentrated. Buddhist and Jain rains institutions should not be collapsed into one tradition. Their doctrinal meanings and rule systems differed, even though both demonstrate how South Asian renunciant movements turned monsoon seasonality into predictable religious time.

24.11 Calendrical regularity allowed institutions to plan labour, food and hospitality

A festival or observance changes work before the sacred date arrives. Grain must be stored or purchased, lamps and vessels prepared, houses or compounds cleaned, offerings assembled, guests accommodated and ritual specialists engaged. Monastic lunar observances similarly require assembly, recitation and often intensified lay participation. Once dates become predictable, households and markets can anticipate demand. This is one reason calendars are economic instruments as well as religious systems. The effect is not necessarily large enough to create a separate “festival economy” in every settlement, but repeated annual demand can sustain particular crafts, foods and services. Historical analysis should therefore examine preparation time as well as festival day itself.

24.12 Dated inscriptions reveal another calendrical world: the time of rulers, donations and legal memory

Inscriptions commonly locate acts within regnal years, eras, months, lunar fortnights and tithis. Such dating transforms a donation or construction into an event that can be remembered and legally cited. The calendar here is not primarily festive; it is administrative and commemorative. Yet the same calendrical vocabulary links political acts to ritual time, especially when a grant or dedication is made on an auspicious day. In eastern India, changing dynasties introduced or used different eras while local religious calendars continued to operate. Historians must therefore distinguish the epoch used to number years from the system used to identify months and days. A single inscription may combine both. This complexity later becomes highly visible in manuscript colophons and regional almanacs.

24.13 The Lakṣmaṇa Sena era shows that regional year-counting could coexist with wider Indian systems

In later Mithila and Tirhut, the Lakṣmaṇa Sena era became one element of chronological practice. Nineteenth-century calendrical scholarship already noted its use in Tirhut and Mithila alongside Vikrama or Śaka reckoning and also recorded disagreement over its exact epoch. The important historical lesson is not to impose one modern conversion formula on every document without source criticism. Eras are social conventions transmitted by scribes, pandits and almanac makers, and their use can vary by locality and document type. Regional year-counting did not replace the lunar architecture of months, fortnights and tithis. Instead, several chronological layers could coexist: one system named the year, another placed the ritual day, while local custom determined how that date was observed.

24.14 Pañcāṅga specialists mediated between astronomical computation and household decisions

The later pañcāṅga condenses complex astral calculations into a usable annual almanac. The familiar five limbs—tithi, weekday, nakṣatra, yoga and karaṇa—allow specialists to evaluate dates more precisely than simple lunar observation would permit. Judy Pugh’s study of North Indian almanac culture shows that auspiciousness is task-specific: a period avoided for one life-cycle rite may remain perfectly usable for farming, trade or house construction. This is crucial for Mithila. The pañcāṅga should not be imagined as a rigid schedule mechanically controlling everyone. It is a decision technology interpreted by specialists and households. Different families may consult different authorities, and urgent practical work can follow season and necessity even when ritual choices await an auspicious moment.

24.15 Muhūrta culture distributed expertise unevenly across society

Knowing that a marriage, journey or initiation requires an auspicious time is different from being able to calculate that time. Calendrical complexity therefore creates specialist roles. Brahmanical ritual experts, astrologers and learned householders could gain authority through access to texts, calculation and inherited practice. At the same time, everyday calendrical knowledge was widely distributed: people knew major lunar days, seasonal thresholds and festival sequences without performing full astronomical calculation. The social history of time is thus also a history of expertise. Calendrical specialists did not monopolise time itself; they mediated difficult decisions within a temporal language shared by the wider community. This distinction prevents the assumption that every observed festival required elite textual direction.

24.16 Life-cycle rites occupied a different temporal logic from annual festivals

Annual festivals recur because the calendar reaches a specified point. Life-cycle rites depend first on a birth, marriage, death or other event and only then on calendrical selection. The two systems interact when a marriage season is preferred or a particular interval is avoided. Ishii's comparison notes that marriage and coming-of-age rites cluster differently from many monsoon observances, and Pugh similarly emphasises that auspiciousness depends on the task. This matters historically because a dense festival season does not imply that all ritual activity peaked at the same time. Household calendars contain several overlapping sequences: annual festivals, periodic vratas, ancestor observances and event-driven rites. Chapter 25 examines life-cycle and mortuary rituals directly; here the point is that calendrical culture coordinates them without making them identical.

24.17 Women's vratas demonstrate that calendrical culture also organised gendered religious agency

Ethnographic studies of Mithila repeatedly show women observing a large number of vratas linked to particular weekdays, tithis, months and family aims. Ishii found this pattern especially prominent in Mithila. Such observances could involve fasting, storytelling, drawing, bathing, offerings and restrictions on food or movement. They should not be romanticised as automatically empowering, because many articulate ideals of marriage, fertility and family duty. Yet they gave women specialised ritual knowledge, recurring gatherings and forms of religious authorship within domestic and neighbourhood space. Calendrical history must therefore include who remembers dates, prepares ritual materials, teaches songs and stories, and performs the bodily discipline of fasting. The household ritual year is partly built through women's labour.

24.18 Sāmā-Cakevā provides unusually rich ethnographic evidence for a women-centred Maithil festival cycle

Coralynn Davis's long-term research offers one of the best documented examples of a distinctly Maithil annual festival. Sāmā-Cakevā is performed by girls and women during Kārttika and culminates around the full moon. Clay or other figurines, songs, narrative play, brother-sister relations and movement to ponds, rivers or fields are central to the observance. Davis shows that the festival is not merely a fossilised myth: performers interpret gender, family authority and relational obligations through it. Its calendrical placement helps structure a sequence of repeated evening gatherings. Historically, however, the existence of a Purāṇic or Kṛṣṇa-related narrative should not be used to claim an undemonstrated ancient date for the festival in its present form. Ethnography securely documents modern and recent practice; earlier history requires separate evidence.

24.19 Madhushrāvaṇī connects monsoon time, marriage and women’s narrative-ritual practice

Madhushrāvaṇī is another major Maithil example of the way a festival cycle can organise domestic time. Ethnographic descriptions place it in the monsoon month of Śrāvaṇa and associate it especially with newly married women, goddess worship, stories, household art and conjugal well-being. The observance reveals several layers at once: a lunar date, a seasonal setting, marital status, women’s ritual knowledge and the material preparation of aripan and offerings. Its importance to social history lies less in proving remote antiquity than in showing how the calendar classifies participants. Not everyone performs the same rite simply because they share a region. Gender, marriage stage, caste, household tradition and locality determine who participates and how.

24.20 Chhath demonstrates the power of a solar-facing rite embedded within a lunar festival calendar

Chhath is today among the most publicly visible festivals of Bihar and the adjoining Nepal plains. Its central offerings to the setting and rising sun are made at water bodies, while the date is fixed through the lunar month of Kārttika. This combination is a useful reminder that “solar” and “lunar” are not mutually exclusive ritual systems: a lunar calendar can schedule a rite directed to the sun. Modern practice involves fasting, ritual purity, baskets of offerings, household cooperation and large gatherings at ghats. Historical caution is essential. Ancient Indian sun worship is well documented, but that does not establish an unbroken direct line to the present Chhath complex. Ethnographic scholarship explicitly warns against treating the modern regional festival as simply identical with ancient solar cult.

24.21 Moon-oriented and regional rites show that the same celestial body can support highly local meanings

Mithila’s ritual year also contains observances focused on the moon, including regional forms such as Chaurchan. Their significance lies in the localisation of a pan-Indian calendrical object. The moon determines tithi throughout much of South Asian ritual life, but particular narratives, foods, household arrangements and social meanings vary regionally. Claims that a specific modern festival was founded by a named medieval ruler require stronger evidence than later popular accounts alone. A safer historical method is to document the rite securely where evidence is available and then examine older calendrical, astronomical and narrative materials separately. Regional calendrical culture is not less historical because some origin stories remain uncertain; the development of those origin stories is itself part of cultural history.

24.22 Festival cycles often cluster at seasonal transitions rather than being evenly distributed through the year

The annual ritual calendar is not a uniform chain of equally weighted days. Ishii’s analysis of Mithila shows marked seasonal concentrations, including a dense monsoon sequence and major autumnal complexes. Durgā-related observances, Dīpāvalī or Lakṣmī rites, Chhath and Sāmā-Cakevā occupy a relatively compact portion of the post-monsoon calendar, while other rites cluster around spring or the onset of rains. Seasonal concentration allows one festival to prepare social and material conditions for another: cleaned houses, renewed utensils, market purchases, travel and kin visits can overlap. But clustering also intensifies labour, especially for those responsible for food, cleaning and ritual preparation. The calendrical year therefore redistributes workload as well as sacred attention.

One year, overlapping ritual rhythms

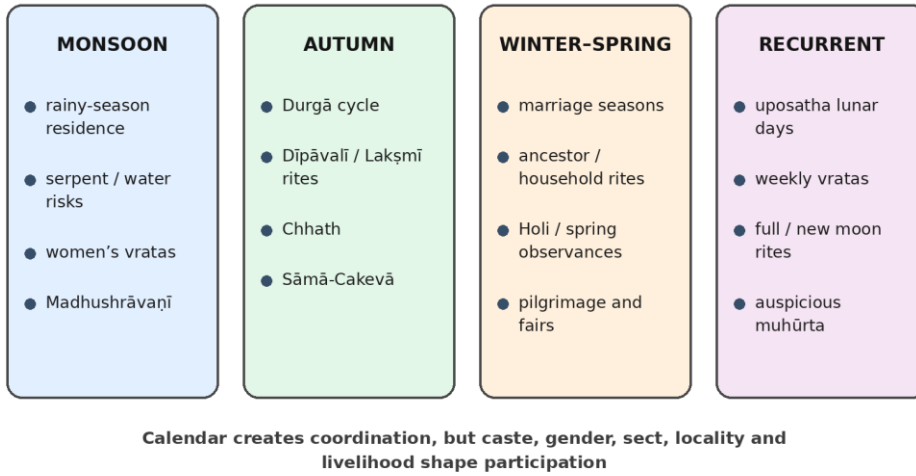


Figure 94 — The ritual year contains overlapping seasonal, sectarian, household and recurrent observance cycles rather than one uniform sequence followed identically by everyone.

24.23 Agricultural season and ritual season intersect, but one cannot be reduced to the other

It is tempting to explain every festival as a disguised agricultural rite. That approach is too simple for Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga. Crop cycles matter greatly: sowing, transplanting, harvest and storage affect household resources and available labour. Yet rituals can occur during agricultural slack periods, during risky monsoon conditions, or for reasons rooted in narrative and sectarian traditions rather than cultivation. Ishii specifically cautioned against treating the four-month monsoon period as identical with the busiest agricultural season. A better model is interaction. Agricultural work shapes what is practicable; ritual calendars provide independent classifications of time; households negotiate between the two. This explains why farming can proceed despite calendrical inauspiciousness that would postpone a marriage or other optional rite.

24.24 Festival time can activate sacred geography by turning ordinary routes and water places into temporary centres

The preceding chapter examined sacred geography as accumulated place. Festivals add periodic intensity to that geography. A pond, riverbank, temple courtyard, village road or market can be ordinary on most days and become a major ritual centre at a calendrically specified moment. Chhath makes this especially visible at ghats; Sāmā-Cakevā ends with movement toward water or fields; fairs and pilgrimage days similarly concentrate visitors along routes that serve everyday transport. The relationship works in both directions. Sacred places attract festivals, while repeated festivals strengthen the sacred reputation of places. Temporary structures, lighting, cleaning and crowd management can leave lasting improvements or disputes over access. Calendrical culture therefore converts space into event.

24.25 Markets respond to predictable festival demand, but ritual consumption is socially differentiated

Annual observances create recurring demand for fruit, grain, sugar, cloth, bamboo baskets, pottery, lamps, pigments, flowers and specialised foods. Artisans and traders can anticipate these cycles because the date is known in advance even when it shifts in the Gregorian calendar. Yet the economic burden of observance is uneven. Wealthier households may display generosity through larger offerings or feasts; poorer households may simplify rites, borrow, cooperate with kin or participate through labour rather than expenditure. Religious calendars can thus make inequality visible without reducing devotion to consumption. Historians should ask who paid, who produced, who cooked, who transported goods and who received gifts. Festival economy is a pattern of temporary intensification embedded in the wider household and market economy.

Festival time reorganises labour and exchange

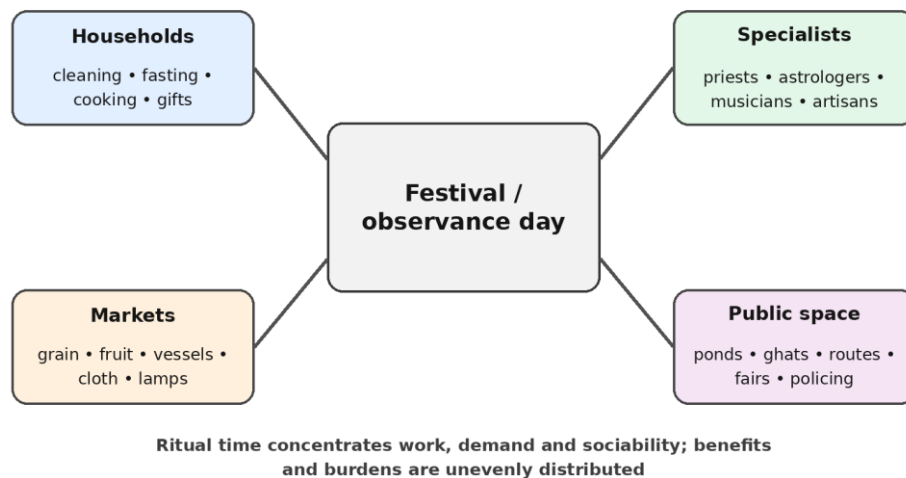


Figure 95 — Festival dates concentrate household labour, specialist services, market demand and use of public space, but the burdens and benefits are socially unequal.

24.26 Calendrical participation varies by caste, sect, gender, age and household tradition

A regional calendar is not a list that every resident follows identically. Ishii's comparative work found that even rites occurring on the same dates could differ substantially in name and performance. Within Mithila, variation is equally important. Some observances are strongly associated with women; some with particular stages of marriage; some with Brahmanical household practice; some are broadly shared across caste communities; Buddhist and Jain institutions follow their own disciplinary cycles. Muslim communities in Mithila and Anga have also long inhabited Islamic lunar time alongside the regional agricultural and civic year. A complete social history therefore treats calendars as overlapping rather than singular. Shared chronology does not erase religious difference, and religious difference does not prevent neighbours from sharing seasonal markets, roads or public spaces.

24.27 The India–Nepal border did not divide the Maithil ritual year into two sealed systems

Mithila extends across the modern India–Nepal frontier, and ritual practice has long crossed that political line through marriage, pilgrimage, markets and kinship. Ishii's fieldwork on both sides of the border showed strong cultural continuity while also identifying differences created by state calendars and wider Nepalese traditions. Nepal's official solar calendar and local lunar ritual dates do not always coincide in the same way as Indian administrative time. This creates an important methodological point: modern national calendars can overlay rather than erase older regional schedules. Janakpur's festivals, marriage circuits and pilgrimage draw participants from both sides, making calendrical culture a transborder social institution even when governments use different official dates and holidays.

24.28 Printed almanacs changed the circulation of calendrical authority without eliminating oral expertise

Manuscript and print culture made astronomical tables and ritual dates reproducible beyond a single teacher–student chain. By the colonial period, regional and North Indian almanacs could circulate widely, allowing households and priests to compare dates and predictions. Print did not automatically standardise everything. Different *pañcāṅgas* could use different parameters or local conventions, and disputes over dates remained possible. The printed calendar nevertheless changed scale: calendrical authority became a commodity that could be purchased annually, annotated and retained. In Mithila, where learned traditions of *vyōtiṣa* and manuscript culture were strong, almanac publication helped connect specialist calculation with a broad reading public. Oral announcement, family memory and priestly consultation continued alongside print.

24.29 Modern state holidays, media and migration have created new layers of calendrical culture

Railways, schools, offices, broadcast media, mobile phones and migration have transformed how festival dates are known and enacted. A date once coordinated mainly through local specialists can now be circulated instantly across continents. Chhath provides a striking example: migration has reproduced the festival in distant cities, where access to water, public permits and work schedules reshape practice. State-sponsored cultural festivals can also reframe local traditions as regional heritage. These developments do not make the rituals inauthentic; they show that calendars are institutional technologies capable of travelling. At the same time, official recognition can privilege some festivals over others. The modern ritual year is therefore shaped by government calendars, media visibility and diaspora organisation as well as inherited lunar rules.

24.30 Conclusion: calendrical culture repeatedly turns cosmic cycles into social coordination

From Vedic ritual timing and early renunciant lunar observances to *pañcāṅga* calculation and the dense modern festival year of Mithila, the central historical process is the conversion of recurrent natural cycles into organised human time. The moon, sun, seasons and monsoon provide observable rhythms; institutions classify them; specialists calculate them; households embody them through fasting, cooking, gifts and travel; markets respond; sacred places fill and empty according to schedule. Continuity lies most securely in calendrical structures—lunar fortnights, seasonal reckoning, recurring observance—while individual festivals must be dated on their own evidence. This distinction prevents both antiquarian exaggeration and the

dismissal of later regional creativity. The next chapter turns from annual recurrence to the temporal thresholds of individual lives: death, ancestors and life-cycle rites.

Table 24.1 — Evidence for festivals and calendrical culture, and limits of inference

Evidence / practice	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Source control
Vedic new/full moon and seasonal rites	Early ritual coordination of lunar and seasonal cycles	A complete later regional festival calendar	Use textual history; do not map every prescription onto ancient Mithila
Vedāṅga Jyotiṣa	Formal lunisolar calculation, tithi/nakṣatra/seasonal reckoning	A secure single date or direct Videha provenance	Treat chronology as debated; use for history of calendrical technique
Buddhist uposatha and vassa	Recurring lunar assembly and monsoon-based monastic season	Identical practice at every monastery or period	Normative Vinaya evidence, compared with regional institutions
Jain rainy-season and Paryuṣaṇā rules	Annual restriction of mobility and concentrated lay-ascetic interaction	Exact antiquity of every later festival custom	Separate canonical discipline from later community practice
Inscriptions and eras	Dated donations, regnal/era chronology, legal memory	Popular observance of the same date	Distinguish year-era from lunar day system
Pañcāṅgas and almanacs	Specialist mediation of tithi, nakṣatra, muhūrta and festival dates	Mechanical control of all economic activity	Compare calculation with task-specific household choices
Ishii's Mithila annual-rite ethnography	Late-20th-century festival sequence, seasonality, women's vratas and regional comparison	Ancient origin of modern rites	Use as ethnographic evidence and compare with earlier sources
Davis on Sāmā-Cakevā	Detailed women-centred Maithil festival practice and interpretation	Unbroken antiquity from Purāṇic narrative	Secure modern/recent history; earlier stages require independent evidence
Modern Chhath practice	Regional solar-facing observance scheduled by lunar date; household/public labour	Direct continuity from ancient sun worship	Distinguish ancient solar cult from historical development of present festival

Chapter 25 — Death, ancestors and life-cycle rites

Chapter argument. Life-cycle rites do not simply preserve an unchanged religious system from antiquity to the present. They convert biological events—conception, birth, maturation, marriage, ageing and death—into socially recognised transitions, and their forms change with household structure, inheritance, gender, ritual authority, religious affiliation and historical period. Mortuary practice is especially revealing because it brings body, kinship, property, memory and sacred geography together. The chapter therefore separates Vedic and domestic ritual texts, Buddhist and Jain traditions, archaeological evidence, and later Mithila practice before asking where continuity, transformation or retrospective invention can actually be demonstrated.

25.1 Life-cycle rites transform biological events into social transitions

Birth and death happen to bodies, but societies decide how those events become publicly intelligible. A newborn may receive a name, food, hair-cutting or initiation at prescribed stages; a marriage reorganises kinship, residence, sexuality and property; death changes a person into a corpse, a remembered ancestor, a relic-bearing saint or an absent legal subject depending on the institution involved. The concept of *saṃskāra* is useful for tracing Brahmanical life-cycle rites, but it should not be treated as a universal description of every community in Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga. Buddhist, Jain, non-elite and local practices followed different ritual logics, while many household actions never entered normative texts. Social history therefore begins not from a fixed list of rites but from the transitions that households and institutions had to manage.

25.2 Six evidence problems make mortuary history unusually difficult

Mortuary evidence is fragmentary for different reasons. Prescriptive texts tell us what specialists thought should be done, not how every household acted. Narrative texts can preserve powerful memories without providing contemporary ethnography. Cremation destroys much of the body and often leaves a weaker archaeological signature than formal burial. Monuments preserve exceptional persons and institutions more readily than ordinary households. Later ritual manuals may systematise practices centuries after their first appearance. Modern ethnography documents living traditions but cannot by itself date their origins. These problems are especially important in a region where rivers shift, settlements have been rebuilt repeatedly, and cremation grounds may lie outside excavated urban cores. The safest method is to date each evidence stream independently and treat convergence as stronger than resemblance alone.

25.3 The classical list of *saṃskāras* is itself a historical construction

Later Dharma and ritual literature presents life as a sequence of purifying and status-making rites, but the number and importance of those rites vary across texts and periods. Prenatal rites, birth ceremonies, naming, first feeding, tonsure, initiation, return from studentship, marriage and funeral are not all equally ancient, equally widespread or equally accessible. Some become markers of twice-born male status; others are household rites in which women play central roles; still others are absent or transformed in Buddhist and Jain settings. Treating the later canonical list as if it were a census of early Videha would erase both chronological development and social inequality. The history of rites must therefore ask when a rite is textually visible, who is authorised to perform it, and what social relationship it creates.

25.4 Rigvedic funerary hymns reveal both cremation and an ancestor-oriented imagination

Rigveda 10.16 addresses Agni as the fire that should prepare the deceased and send him toward the Fathers, while other mortuary hymns refer to the earth, the grave and the world of the ancestors. This already warns against a simple evolutionary story in which burial was first and cremation suddenly replaced it everywhere. Early Indo-Aryan mortuary imagination contained several ways of conceptualising bodily disposal and post-mortem destination. The Fathers are not merely remembered dead; they constitute a morally and ritually significant collectivity to which the deceased can be joined. Yet these hymns belong to a Vedic poetic-ritual corpus and cannot be localised automatically to early Mithila. Their value for this volume lies in defining a ritual vocabulary that later eastern traditions received, altered and embedded in new social landscapes.

25.5 The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa makes the mortuary landscape itself part of ritual order

Book 13 of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa gives detailed instructions concerning the burial place or śmaśāna, its timing, location and construction. The text is especially important for a history of Videha because the Śatapatha tradition is deeply connected with the eastward Vedic world examined in earlier chapters. Even so, a ritual prescription is not an archaeological site plan. Its instructions show learned concern with the proper spatial and temporal separation of the dead, the Fathers and the living. They also show that commemoration could involve a durable place rather than only the moment of cremation. This combination of body disposal, delayed memorialisation and ancestor symbolism helps explain why later mortuary landscapes could accumulate social memory without implying that every household built a monumental tomb.

Evidence streams for life-cycle and mortuary history

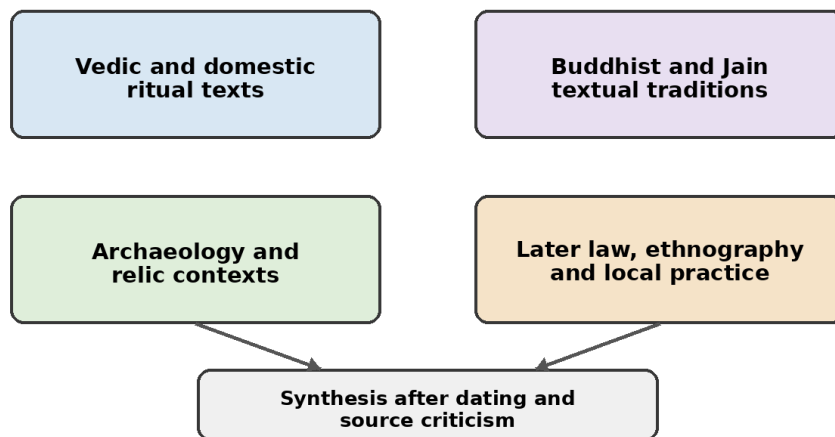


Figure 96 — Life-cycle and mortuary history requires separate textual, archaeological and later-practice evidence streams before historical synthesis.

25.6 Fire transformed the corpse while also reorganising relations among the living

Cremation is a bodily technology, but its social effects extend beyond the pyre. Fuel must be obtained, the body transported, participants assembled, ritual competence mobilised and the remains handled. The role of fire in Vedic funeral ritual marks a transformation from the dangerous or liminal corpse toward an ancestral destination. Later domestic texts elaborate sequences before, during and after cremation. Such elaboration creates work for kin and specialists and imposes temporal obligations on the bereaved. Economic capacity therefore matters: access to fuel, cloth, vessels, transport and ritual services can differentiate mortuary practice even where normative texts describe one ideal sequence. The historical question is not simply whether people cremated their dead, but how disposal was organised, who bore its costs, and what social relationships the rite made visible.

25.7 Bone collection and memorialisation show that cremation does not erase materiality

Cremation may appear to destroy the body, yet many South Asian mortuary systems re-materialise the dead through ash, bone fragments, urns, memorial places or ancestor offerings. Domestic ritual texts describe post-cremation handling of remains, while Buddhist relic traditions make the surviving bodily fragment the centre of monumental cult. Archaeology must therefore look not only for complete skeletons but also for ash deposits, urns, relic caskets, mounds and structured deposits. The meanings of these materials differ sharply: a household bone deposit is not equivalent to a Buddhist relic stupa, and a Vedic burial mound is not automatically a shrine. What they share is a refusal to reduce death to disappearance. The body can continue socially in fragmented, relocated and ritually reclassified forms.

25.8 Mourning and impurity regulate the temporary disorder produced by death

Death interrupts ordinary household routines. Later Dharma literature codifies periods of impurity, restrictions on food and ritual, bathing, shaving and the gradual restoration of normality. These rules are often differentiated by kinship distance, status and circumstance of death. Their social function is not exhausted by ideas of pollution. They define who counts as close kin, who must suspend normal activity, and when a household can re-enter ordinary ritual and economic life. Because the detailed durations in later texts cannot be projected unchanged into early Videha, they are best used to identify a durable problem—how the living manage a period in which the dead person is no longer socially present but has not yet been fully incorporated into ancestral memory.

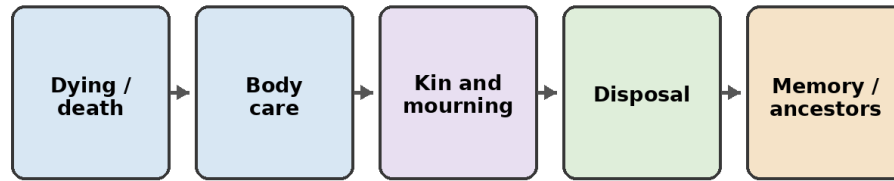
25.9 Ancestors convert genealogy into a continuing moral and ritual relationship

Ancestor rites make the dead relevant to the living through recurring acts of feeding, remembrance and obligation. The Vedic Fathers, later śrāddha traditions and household genealogical memory are not identical institutions, but all connect descent to ritual action. This relationship can stabilise lineage claims because remembered forebears provide a framework for belonging, inheritance and marital boundaries. Yet ancestor systems also exclude: people without recognised descendants, servants, renouncers, migrants or those outside dominant kin structures may be remembered differently or not at all in elite sources. A social history of ancestors must therefore distinguish between normative patrilineal ideals and the wider emotional and practical worlds in which mothers, daughters, affines, teachers and religious communities also sustain memory.

25.10 Śrāddha became a major technology for incorporating the dead among the ancestors

Gṛhya and Dharma traditions systematise offerings to the dead and the Fathers, including rites that move the recently deceased from the unstable condition of preta toward incorporation among the pitṛs. The exact sequence and terminology vary, but the broader structure is historically important: death creates a transitional social status that ritual resolves over time. Offerings of food and water, participation of descendants and the presence of ritual specialists turn memory into repeated practice. This also produces an economy of obligation, because commemorative meals, gifts and specialist services require resources. Later Mithila developed highly elaborated forms of śrāddha, but their documented complexity should not be read back wholesale into the early historic period. What can be traced more safely is the gradual textualisation of ancestor-feeding and kin-based commemoration.

Death as a social process



Property • ritual specialists • gender • status • local ecology

These factors can shape every stage.

Figure 97 — Death unfolds as a social process involving the body, kin, disposal, property, specialists and subsequent memory rather than as a single ritual moment.

25.11 Birth rites demonstrate that life-cycle ritual begins by making a new person socially legible

At the opposite end of life, prenatal and birth rites address vulnerability, fertility, naming and household continuity. Later saṃskāra systems distinguish rites associated with conception, pregnancy, birth and the first days of life. Their prescriptions reveal concerns with descent and the production of legitimate heirs, but they do not describe every birth in society. Women's bodily labour, midwifery and household care are much less visible than male-authored ritual rules. This imbalance matters for Mithila's social history. A lineage can celebrate the arrival of an heir while the physical risk of childbirth is borne by women whose knowledge may circulate orally rather than textually. Birth ritual should therefore be read alongside the history of gender, medicine and household labour developed in earlier chapters.

25.12 Naming, first feeding and hair rites organise childhood as a sequence rather than an undifferentiated stage

Classical domestic ritual texts mark several thresholds after birth: naming, first outing, first solid food and hair cutting among them. These rites matter historically because they create publicly recognisable stages of childhood. They also show that the social person is assembled gradually through kin recognition, diet, bodily modification and household participation. The timing and performance of these rites vary considerably, and later regional custom cannot be assumed for ancient Videha. Nevertheless, the very multiplication of childhood thresholds indicates increasing ritual attention to age and household reproduction. Such rites may also differentiate children by gender, lineage status or access to specialist ritual, reminding us that childhood was never a single uniform social experience.

25.13 Initiation made education, ritual entitlement and male status intersect

Upanayana becomes one of the most consequential Brahmanical rites because it links age with disciplined study and ritual eligibility. Its development is therefore relevant not only to religion but also to Chapter 17's history of education. Later normative systems distinguish eligible varṇa groups and prescribe different ages or details, creating a ritual mechanism for social differentiation. It would be anachronistic to impose the fully elaborated later scheme on early Videha, but the connection between initiation and access to authoritative knowledge is historically significant. In Buddhist and Jain communities, ordination created alternative forms of disciplined status that could cut across household life. Life-cycle history thus intersects with competing institutions of education and renunciation.

25.14 Marriage is both a life-cycle rite and a reorganisation of kinship, property and residence

Marriage occupies a central place in later saṃskāra systems because it joins two individuals while also creating relations between households. Gift exchange, residence, sexual legitimacy, inheritance, ritual partnership and future descent are all implicated. The ritual cannot therefore be separated from the social history of property and gender. Marriage forms also vary historically, and normative typologies should not be confused with statistical reality. In Mithila, later marriage regulation and genealogical institutions became especially elaborate, but those belong to later chapters and cannot be projected into the early historic period. For Chapter 25, the important point is structural: a wedding transforms networks of obligation and creates the descendants who may later perform ancestor rites, linking marriage directly to mortuary continuity.

25.15 Women's positions in life-cycle ritual cannot be reconstructed from male prescriptions alone

Normative texts often organise rites around patrilineal continuity and male ritual agents, yet women are indispensable to reproduction, marriage alliance, mourning and household memory. The Rgvedic funeral corpus is also important because a verse in 10.18 addresses the widow or women beside the dead and directs a return toward the world of the living; it should not be used as simple proof that widow immolation was a universal Vedic funeral requirement. Later widowhood practices, including extreme forms such as sati in some periods and regions, have their own histories. The methodological rule is therefore strict: gendered mortuary practices must be dated independently, and later customs cannot be back-projected into Vedic or early Videha merely because later interpreters sought ancient sanction.

25.16 Death is also a property event because rights and obligations must outlive the deceased

A death can redistribute land, livestock, debts, ritual duties, guardianship and household authority. Normative legal texts discuss inheritance in increasingly elaborate terms, but even before such codification the practical problem is unavoidable: who controls resources when a household member dies? Mortuary rites can legitimise succession by publicly identifying close kin and demonstrating their obligations. Ancestor worship then gives descent a continuing ritual form. This is one reason death rituals can become socially conservative, reinforcing lineage boundaries and ranked access to property. At the same time, widows, daughters, younger sons, dependants and religious institutions may contest or redirect inheritance. The chapter therefore treats property not as an external economic topic but as one of the material mechanisms through which death changes social structure.

25.17 Ritual specialists turn life-cycle knowledge into a form of service and authority

As rites become textually complex, households depend on specialists who know sequences, mantras, calendrical timing and rules of purity. This creates both authority and livelihood. Priests may receive gifts; barbers, potters, washermen, cooks, transporters or other occupational specialists can also become indispensable in later regional ritual systems. Their exact roles vary greatly by period and locality, so a modern service list cannot be projected into early Mithila. The broader historical mechanism is nevertheless clear: life-cycle rites distribute work beyond the immediate family. Ritual knowledge can become hereditary or professionalised, while households demonstrate status by the scale of services they mobilise. This connects mortuary history directly to occupational differentiation and the service economy.

25.18 Buddhist mortuary practice shifted emphasis without eliminating social ritual around death

Early Buddhism rejected the idea that liberation depended on Vedic sacrifice to ancestors, yet Buddhist communities did not become ritually indifferent to death. Texts discuss dying, cremation, relics, memorial monuments and the transfer or dedication of merit. Monastic discipline also had to regulate illness, death and possessions within the Saṅgha. The result is not a simple opposition between “ritual Hinduism” and “non-ritual Buddhism.” Rather, Buddhism reorganised the social meaning of death. The deceased monk, nun, teacher or Buddha could become an object of communal memory, and lay donors could support memorial practices. In regions such as Vajji, where Buddhist institutions were embedded in cities and political communities, death could therefore generate durable public monuments as well as private grief.

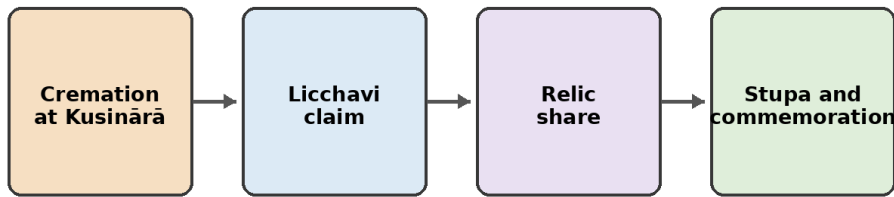
25.19 The Mahāparinibbāna tradition makes cremation, political claim and relic division one connected social drama

Dīgha Nikāya 16 describes the Buddha’s death at Kusinārā, the preparation and cremation of the body, and the subsequent dispute over the relics. The narrative is valuable not because every detail can be treated as a contemporary administrative record, but because it shows how bodily remains could become politically and ritually meaningful. Claimants justify their right to a share through identity and status; a mediator divides the relics; recipients promise monuments and commemorative observance. Death thus becomes a moment when territory, community reputation and sacred memory are renegotiated. For this volume, the most important regional claimant is the Licchavi polity of Vesālī, whose participation links a major Vajjian centre directly to the history of Buddhist relic culture.

25.20 The Licchavi claim to the Buddha's relics gave Vaiśālī a mortuary memory of exceptional durability

The Mahāparinibbāna Sutta states that the Licchavis of Vesālī sought and received a share of the Buddha's remains and built a stupa. This tradition differs sharply from household ancestor rites: the deceased is not incorporated into a lineage of Fathers but materialised as a universally significant teacher whose relics can sanctify a polity. Yet the social mechanism has parallels with ancestor memory. A fragment of the dead body anchors collective identity in place, attracts repeated commemoration and creates obligations of maintenance. Vaiśālī thereby offers unusually strong evidence for the transformation of death into civic sacred geography. The later history of the site demonstrates how a mortuary event can outlive the political community that first claimed the relic.

Vaiśālī: from cremation relic to civic sacred memory



Textual memory and the excavated monument are separate evidence streams.
They converge on Vaiśālī as a major relic centre.

Figure 98 — The Vaiśālī relic tradition links cremation, Licchavi political claim, relic division and monumental commemoration while keeping textual memory and archaeology analytically distinct.

25.21 The excavated Vaiśālī relic stupa gives material evidence independent of the literary narrative

Excavations conducted under the K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute in 1958–1962 uncovered the relic stupa at Vaiśālī and a stone casket containing ashy earth together with small objects. Government and archaeological descriptions identify an early mud core subsequently enlarged and encased. The excavation does not prove every episode of Dīgha Nikāya 16, nor can each object in the casket be securely assigned to the moment of the Buddha's death. Its importance is more disciplined: it demonstrates a long-lived relic monument at the centre named by Buddhist tradition and provides physical evidence for repeated construction and veneration. Text and archaeology therefore converge at the level of place and relic cult while remaining independent in chronology and detail.

25.22 Relic monuments turn the dead into institutions that require labour, patronage and repeated visitation

A stupa is not only a container. Once built, it requires land, construction material, maintenance and social recognition. Visitors bring offerings; institutions organise access; rulers may rebuild or embellish the

monument; artisans reproduce its forms. The deceased person's body can thus enter an economy of memory. Gregory Schopen's work on Buddhist inscriptions and monastic archaeology has shown how closely death, merit, donors and monastic institutions could be connected. Vaiśālī provides an early regional anchor for that larger pattern, while later Buddhist sites in Bihar make it more visible epigraphically. The historical lesson is that mortuary material can reorganise living communities for centuries after the original death.

25.23 Buddhist merit practices broadened remembrance beyond biological descent

Buddhist social life created ways to remember the dead that did not depend exclusively on patrilineal ancestor ritual. Gifts to monasteries, stupa worship and merit-making could be directed toward deceased relatives, teachers or wider communities. This does not mean kinship disappeared; donors frequently acted from family motives. The difference is institutional. Monastic communities offered a durable recipient for gifts, and inscriptions in later periods show monks and nuns themselves participating in memorial and merit practices. The possibility of linking the dead to a religious corporation diversified the social destinations of wealth and memory. In Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga, this helps explain how renunciant institutions could become embedded within household economies rather than remaining outside them.

25.24 Jain traditions made disciplined dying a distinctive ascetic problem, not a general household funeral rule

Jain texts place exceptional emphasis on the ethical management of bodily action and attachment. Sallekhanā—the gradual thinning of passions and, in appropriate circumstances, food at the approach of death—became a recognised ascetic and lay ideal in Jain tradition. It must be handled carefully in social history. It is not a synonym for every Jain death, and modern legal debates over santhara cannot be projected back unchanged onto early Vaiśālī. The practice belongs to a specific ethical framework of non-attachment and karmic discipline. For the region associated in Jain memory with Mahāvīra, its importance lies in showing that religious traditions could construct the good death differently: not primarily as ancestor incorporation or relic production, but as a final discipline of conduct and consciousness.

25.25 Jain household mortuary practice is less visible in early regional evidence than Jain ascetic ideals

The textual prominence of monks, vows and exemplary deaths can create a distorted picture in which ordinary Jain households seem absent. In reality, lay communities had to bury or cremate relatives, mourn, inherit property and sustain social ties like other households. Early evidence for the precise regional forms of these practices is limited. The correct response is not to fill the gap with later custom. Instead, the historian should distinguish the well-attested Jain ethical discourse on dying from the less securely documented household mortuary repertoire of early Vajji and Videha. This distinction parallels the wider method of the volume: institutional visibility is not the same as demographic universality.

25.26 Archaeology rarely permits the religion or community of an ordinary cremation to be identified confidently

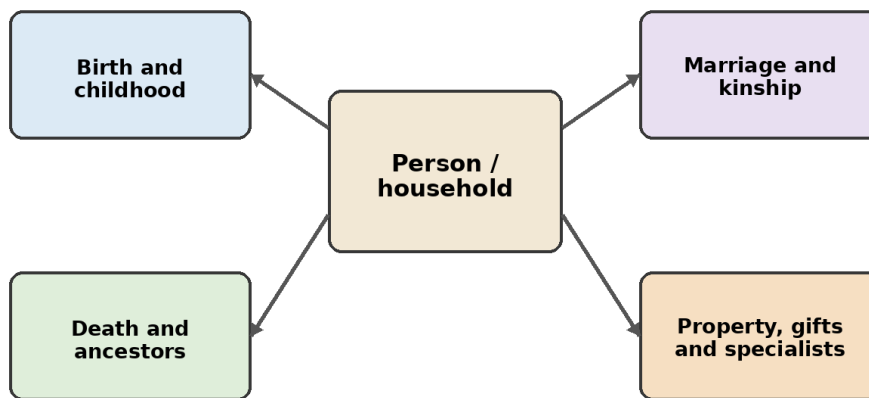
Unlike inscribed relic monuments, ordinary cremation deposits are difficult to assign to a named religious group. Ash, burnt bone, pottery or an isolated burial may show disposal practice, but without inscriptions or distinctive context they do not identify the deceased as Vedic, Buddhist, Jain or adherent of a local tradition. This is especially important at multi-religious urban centres such as Vaiśālī and Campā. Excavation can reveal

settlement density, monuments and material culture while leaving household death nearly invisible. The absence of cemeteries in an excavated sector therefore does not prove absence of mortuary practice. Cremation grounds may lie beyond habitation, river erosion may destroy them, and later construction may erase traces. Archaeological silence must be interpreted as a preservation problem before it becomes a social conclusion.

25.27 Rivers and water connect mortuary practice to ecology, mobility and sacred geography

Water is repeatedly used in purification, offerings and the handling of remains, while rivers can become destinations for ashes or commemorative journeys in later Hindu practice. The Ganga therefore matters to the mortuary history of Aṅga and the wider middle Gangetic region, but chronology is essential. The fact that modern families immerse ashes in a sacred river does not prove that every ancient resident of Campā followed the same procedure. What can be said more securely is that riverine environments shaped access, transport and the possible preservation or dispersal of remains. Water also links death to the sacred geography discussed in Chapter 23: once a riverbank becomes a recognised mortuary or pilgrimage place, repeated ritual use can generate markets, specialist services and collective memory.

Life-cycle rites link persons to social institutions



Related, not uniform: chronology, gender, status and community alter their form.

Figure 99 — Life-cycle rites connect persons and households to childhood, marriage, death, property, specialists and wider kin institutions, but their forms vary by chronology and community.

25.28 Later Mithila developed dense life-cycle ritual systems, but their antiquity must be demonstrated rather than presumed

Later textual, genealogical and ethnographic evidence from Mithila records highly structured marriage, birth, mourning and ancestor practices. Such material is indispensable for the medieval and modern social history of the region, especially when read alongside Pāñji institutions and changing caste formation. It is also dangerous if used as a shortcut to antiquity. A rite recorded in a nineteenth- or twentieth-century Maithil household may preserve older elements, but continuity requires evidence of transmission, not merely similarity to a Sanskrit text. The same rule applies to specialist roles and caste-labelled services. In accordance with this volume's governing method, later social classifications—including Śrottriya as a distinct sub-caste—will not be projected backward into periods where the evidence does not support them.

25.29 Continuity is most persuasive at the level of recurring social problems, not identical ritual scripts

Across two and a half millennia, households repeatedly confronted the same broad transitions: a child had to be incorporated, marriages had to create recognised relationships, deaths had to be managed, property had to pass, and memory had to be sustained. It is reasonable to identify these as durable social problems. It is much harder to prove that the same mantra, sequence, specialist or caste role continued unchanged. Historical continuity therefore exists at several scales. The need to mourn may be continuous while the mourning period changes; ancestor remembrance may persist while its ritual technology is transformed; a sacred place may endure while the institution that controls it changes. This layered approach avoids both extremes—imagining complete rupture at every period and inventing an unbroken timeless tradition.

25.30 Conclusion: death and life-cycle rites reveal how society reproduces itself across generations

Life-cycle rites are among the clearest places where intimate bodily events become public social history. Vedic mortuary texts show cremation, burial memory and the Fathers; domestic ritual literature increasingly orders the transitions of birth, initiation, marriage and death; Buddhism transforms the dead body into relic, merit and monument; Jain traditions articulate a distinctive ethic of disciplined dying; archaeology at Vaiśālī gives material form to one exceptional relic history; later Mithila develops dense regional systems of marriage and ancestor ritual whose chronology must be studied rather than assumed. Across these traditions, death is never only an ending. It redistributes property, activates kinship, creates memory, employs specialists and sometimes produces sacred places. Life-cycle history therefore explains how societies reproduce themselves not only biologically, but institutionally and symbolically across generations.

Table 25.1 — Evidence for death, ancestors and life-cycle rites, and limits of inference

Evidence / practice	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Source control
Rigveda 10.16 and 10.18	Early mortuary language concerning fire, the dead, the Fathers and return of survivors to the living	A uniform funeral practice for all communities of early Mithila	Jamison & Brereton; Rigvedic corpus
Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa XIII.8	Learned concern with burial ground, memorial timing and the relation between dead and Fathers	An excavated map of actual Videhan cemeteries	Eggeling; Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa
Gṛhya/Dharma ritual texts	Increasing codification of saṃskāras, funeral procedure, impurity and śrāddha	Universal performance or unchanged chronology	Oldenberg; Kane; Pandey; Michaels
Mahāparinibbāna tradition	Cremation, relic division, Licchavi claim and memorial stupa at Vesālī	Exact archaeological dating of every narrative episode	Dīgha Nikāya 16; Strong
Vaiśālī relic stupa	Material relic monument, casket and successive building history	Proof that every casket object belongs to the Buddha's original cremation	Sinha & Roy; Bihar/NMA site records

Evidence / practice	What it supports	What it does not prove alone	Source control
Buddhist monastic/epigraphic evidence	Merit, memorialisation and institutional care for the dead beyond biological descent	That all lay funerals followed monastic patterns	Schopen; Buddhist inscriptions
Jain textual traditions	Ethics of dying, renunciation and sallekhanā in Jain religious thought	A universal Jain household funeral custom in early Vaiśālī	Jaini; Dundas; Jacobi
Archaeological absence of burials	Limits created by cremation, site location, erosion and preservation	Absence of mortuary practice	Contextual archaeological method
Later Mithila ethnography and ritual manuals	Detailed regional practice, specialist roles and household memory in documented periods	Automatic continuity back to Vedic or early historic times	Pandey; regional ethnography; source dating

PART IV

EARLY MEDIEVAL AND MEDIEVAL SOCIAL TRANSFORMATION

Chapters 26–35

Chapter 26 — Land Grants and Changing Agrarian Society

Land grants are among the most informative written records for the social and economic history of early medieval eastern India, but they are also among the easiest to overread. A copper-plate charter can describe a village, its boundaries and resources, the dues attached to it, the exemptions granted to a beneficiary, the officials and residents who were notified, and the religious or scholarly purpose of the donation. It does not, by itself, reveal the acreage actually cultivated, the proportion of households affected, the everyday bargaining power of cultivators, or the long-term success of the grant. This chapter therefore treats land grants as legal and fiscal interventions into agrarian society rather than as transparent photographs of village life. For Mithila–Tirabhukti and the Aṅga–Mudgagiri zone, the surviving charters are especially valuable because they can be located within identifiable administrative landscapes and compared across several centuries.

26.1 The problem: land, rights and documentary evidence

Modern language often compresses a land grant into the statement that a king ‘gave a village’. The charters are more precise and more complicated. What could be transferred included claims to revenue, rights over specified resources, immunities from particular royal demands, authority to receive payments from residents, and in some cases judicial or policing privileges. The physical soil, the cultivators’ labour, the king’s fiscal claims and the beneficiary’s rights were not identical things. Historians therefore need to ask what exactly changed hands in each record. The wording of a grant is also formulaic. Repeated phrases are evidence for chancery practice and legal expectations, but their repetition does not prove that every listed privilege was enforced identically in every locality. The method adopted here is to read formula, geography, recipient, revenue terms and local society separately before asking how they combined.

26.2 Copper plates as durable legal instruments

Copper plates were not simply commemorative inscriptions. Their durability, seals, boundary clauses, lists of rights and warnings to future rulers gave them the character of documentary titles. The record could memorialise a royal order, a purchase followed by donation, or a ratified transfer. The Nandapur plate from the Munger district, dated Gupta year 169 (488 CE), shows how procedural this documentary world could be: an official wishing to acquire uncultivated land had to petition, pay the customary price, obtain verification from record-keepers, have the plot measured and bounded, and receive a copper-plate instrument. Such evidence cautions against imagining an abrupt medieval invention of landed documentation. The early medieval charters developed out of older administrative and legal practices while expanding the range and political importance of enduring grants.

LAND GRANTS: DISTINCT EVIDENCE STREAMS

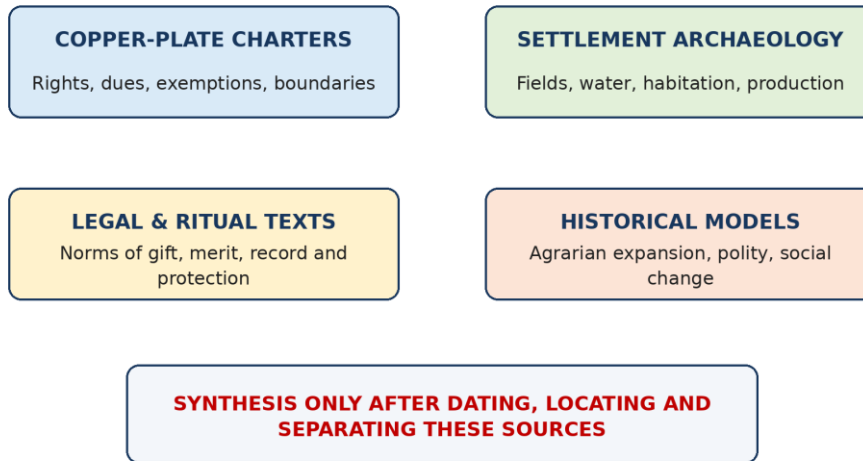


Figure 100 — Land grants: distinct evidence streams

26.3 The Nandapur antecedent in the Munger region

The Nandapur charter is especially useful because its logic differs from a later royal donation of an already constituted village. The applicant sought four kulyavāpas of uncultivated land, paid eight dīnāras at the local customary rate, and intended to donate the land to a Sāmavedic Brahman for the regular performance of the five great sacrifices. Record-keepers checked that the land was revenue-free and that its sale did not injure royal interest. Survey and boundary marking were expressly required. This is evidence for priced land, documentary procedure and the administrative distinction between cultivated holdings and uncultivated land. It is not evidence that all agrarian land was freely alienable in a modern market. Rather, it reveals a controlled transaction in which local custom, public record and royal fiscal interest converged.

26.4 From sale-and-gift procedure to royal śāsana

Across the following centuries, copper-plate charters increasingly present the king or a king-ratified donor as creating a durable śāsana. The change should not be reduced to a simple passage from private property to ‘feudal’ property. The documents show several forms: direct royal donation, requests by petitioner-donors, confirmation of transfers, and grants made from holdings associated with officers or magnates. Sanjukta Datta’s work on Pāla charters has stressed the role of petitioner-donors who could initiate a transfer while royal authority validated it. This is important for social history. A charter was a meeting point between court, intermediary, beneficiary and local residents. Its legal force came from the polity, but its social consequences depended on already inhabited and worked landscapes.

26.5 Tirabhukti as an administrative landscape

Tirabhukti appears repeatedly in inscriptions as an administrative frame for north Bihar. It should not be treated as perfectly coterminous with any modern map of Mithila, yet it is one of the strongest period terms available for locating agrarian administration. Grants refer to subordinate units such as viṣaya, maṇḍala and village localities. These names matter because land was never donated in an abstract cultural region; the charter located rights within a hierarchy of jurisdictions and notified officials and residents. The recurrence of Tirabhukti in records from different dynastic contexts also shows institutional continuity across political

change. At the same time, boundaries and administrative reach changed, and a findspot outside Tīrabhukti does not mean that the donated land lay at the findspot.

26.6 The Pāla charter system

Pāla copper plates from the eighth to twelfth centuries developed a recognisable documentary form: royal genealogy and praise, the place of issue, an address to officials and residents, identification of the granted property, the beneficiary and purpose, specification of fiscal rights and exemptions, a command to inhabitants, and verses demanding future protection of the gift. The large official lists are evidence for the state's imagined administrative reach, but should not be converted mechanically into an organisation chart in which every named office was active in every village. More securely, the lists show that a grant was meant to be communicated across several levels of authority. The charter publicly reclassified claims on a locality and stated who was henceforth entitled to receive specified dues.

26.7 Mudgagiri/Munger as a place of issue

Mudgagiri, identified with Munger, was an important Pāla jaya-skandhāvāra or victorious camp from which charters were issued. Devapāla's Munger plate, dated to his regnal year 33, records the grant of the village Meśikā in Kṛmilā-viṣaya of Śrīnagara-bhukti to a Brahman. A later Nālandā charter of Devapāla was also issued from Mudgagiri and granted five villages for the support of a monastery at Nālandā. These examples demonstrate that the place from which a ruler issued a charter, the findspot of the plate and the location of the donated property could be different. For the history of Aṅga and adjacent zones, Munger's importance lies partly in its function as a political-administrative node connecting royal movement, the Ganga corridor and documentary transactions over land elsewhere.

26.8 The Bhagalpur plate of Nārāyaṇapāla

The Bhagalpur copper plate of Nārāyaṇapāla, regnal year 17, is the chapter's central regional case because its findspot lies in Bhagalpur while the charter was issued from Mudgagiri and concerns property in Tīrabhukti. It records the grant of Makutikā village to a Śiva temple or sacred establishment at Kalaśapeta/Kalāsapota and to an assembly of Pāśupata scholars. The endowment was meant to sustain worship, offerings, charitable feeding, construction, bedding, seats and provision for medicine required by the sick. The record therefore joins agrarian revenue to an institutional economy. It also warns against treating dynastic religious identity as exclusive: a Pāla ruler conventionally styled as a Buddhist sovereign could support a Śaiva establishment through a royal land grant.

BHAGALPUR PLATE: WHAT A GRANT TRANSFERRED

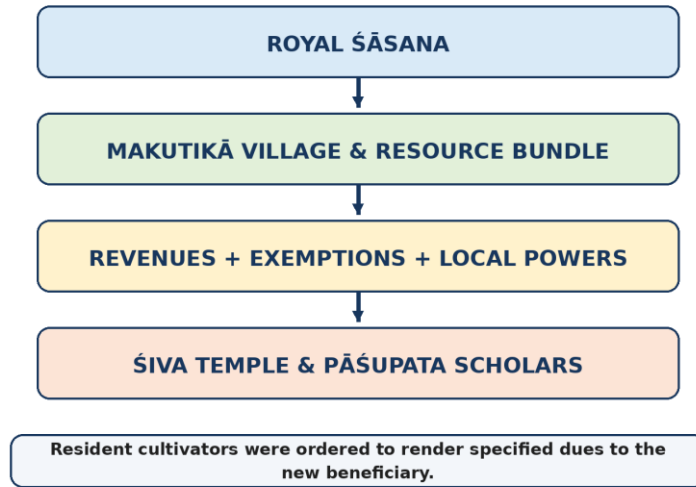


Figure 101 — The Bhagalpur plate: a bundle of agrarian and institutional rights

26.9 A village as a bundle of ecological resources

The Bhagalpur charter does not define Makutikā merely as cropped acreage. Its formula includes boundaries, grass and pasture, flat and raised land, mango and mahua trees, watering places, ditches and saline or otherwise unproductive ground. Similar clauses recur in other Pāla records. Formulaic repetition matters, but the list is still socially revealing: the fiscal object called a ‘village’ encompassed multiple ecological niches and resources. Pasture connected cultivation to cattle; trees yielded food, fodder, oil, timber or other products; water shaped both agriculture and settlement; waste, pits or saline ground could carry future value. Agrarian history must therefore include common-use and non-plough resources rather than treating the countryside as a field of grain alone.

26.10 Bhāga, bhoga, kara and hiraṇya

Pāla charters frequently transfer or redirect dues expressed through terms such as bhāga, bhoga, kara and hiraṇya. Their precise meaning could vary by place and period. Bhāga is commonly associated with a share of produce; kara is a general tax term; bhoga can denote provisions or other dues; hiraṇya points to a monetary or cash-valued component in many interpretations. The safest conclusion is not to assign one immutable modern tax category to each word. What the charters clearly show is a bundle of claims that normally flowed toward political authority and could be reassigned to a beneficiary. The social meaning of the grant therefore lay at least partly in changing the destination and authority of extraction rather than in physically moving land.

26.11 Exemptions and the reach of officials

The same grants that transfer revenue often proclaim relief from specified burdens. A-cāṭa-bhaṭa-praveśa clauses exclude entry by cāṭas and bhaṭas, categories generally connected with state agents or troops. Other formulas concern additional imposts, fines, policing and freedom from ‘all burdens’. These clauses have sometimes been read as the state surrendering sovereignty. That inference is too strong. Exemption itself presupposed a sovereign authority capable of defining what was being exempted and of commanding subordinates to respect the new arrangement. Yet the exemptions could materially alter village experience by

limiting ordinary demands from itinerant officials or military personnel and by strengthening the beneficiary's position within the local field of authority.

26.12 Fines, theft and local coercive authority

Several charters transfer rights connected with fines for specified offences and with the apprehension of thieves. Such clauses complicate any narrow description of grants as 'tax-free land'. Fiscal privilege and coercive jurisdiction could overlap. The beneficiary might gain claims that affected dispute, policing or punishment, while the crown retained the higher framework in which those privileges were authorised. The practical extent of local judicial power cannot be reconstructed from formula alone, but its appearance in charters is evidence that agrarian control involved more than rents. It included the capacity to command, to exclude some officials, and in some circumstances to benefit from or administer penalties.

26.13 Resident cultivators and the change of payee

The Bhagalpur and Bangaon grants both address resident cultivators. The Bangaon plate states that cultivators should deliver the appropriate *bhāga*, *bhoga*, *kara*, *hiraṇya* and related dues at the proper time after becoming obedient to the donee's order. This is among the clearest points at which a royal charter touches everyday agrarian society. The text does not say that cultivators were transferred as chattel, nor does it document the terms of every tenancy. It does show that existing residents were expected to recognise a new fiscal authority. A grant could therefore change the social relation between producing households and the person or institution entitled to claims on their surplus.

26.14 Religious endowments as agrarian institutions

Temples, monasteries and communities of learned specialists depended on material support. Land grants converted flows from agrarian production into worship, teaching, maintenance, food, medicine, construction and hospitality. This did not make religious institutions economically separate from villages; it embedded them in rural production. The Bhagalpur grant is unusually explicit about the uses of the endowment, including care for the sick. Devapāla's Nālandā grant, outside the immediate core but useful comparatively, supported monks, manuscript copying and monastery maintenance through five villages. These cases demonstrate how agrarian surplus could be institutionally channelled into religious and intellectual life.

26.15 Royal religion and plural patronage

Pāla rulers are often described through Buddhist titles and invocations, but their grants do not support a model of sectarian exclusivity. Nārāyaṇapāla's Bhagalpur charter benefits a Śaiva/Pāśupata establishment. The social historian should separate royal self-presentation, personal devotion, political legitimation and actual patterns of endowment. Supporting different institutions could integrate learned communities, ritual centres and local elites into a wider political order. The evidence is more useful for reconstructing networks of patronage than for assigning a whole territory a single religious identity. It also shows that land grants were part of the material history of religious plurality discussed in earlier chapters.

26.16 The Bangaon plate of Vigrahapāla III

The Bangaon copper plate of Vigrahapāla III, regnal year 17, found at Bangaon in present Saharsa district, places Vasukāvartha in Hodreya-*viṣaya* of Tīra-bhukti. It grants a defined share of land to the Brahman Ghaṇṭūkaśarman. The charter again lists the property with boundaries, grass and pasture, trees,

water, pits or saline land, exemptions, policing rights and the revenue bundle of bhāga, bhoga, kara and hiranya. It is particularly important because its regional location brings the legal language of Pāla grants directly into north Bihar. The record also preserves details about learned migration, lineage and settlement that allow agrarian history to be connected with intellectual and social mobility.

26.17 Ghaṇṭūkaśarman and scholarly mobility

Ghaṇṭūkaśarman is described through gotra, pravara, Vedic affiliation and scholarly accomplishments in mīmāṃsā, grammar and reasoning. His family is associated with migration from Kolāñca and residence at Iṭṭāhaka. Such biographical clauses were part of the beneficiary's credentialing and should not be treated as a census of Brahman migration. Nevertheless, they provide concrete evidence that grants could support the relocation or consolidation of learned households and that scholarly reputation was linked to landed endowment. This mobility belongs to the social history of medieval Mithila, but it does not justify projecting later Maithil Brahman sub-caste structures backward into the Pāla period.

26.18 The bhūmicchidra-nyāya formula

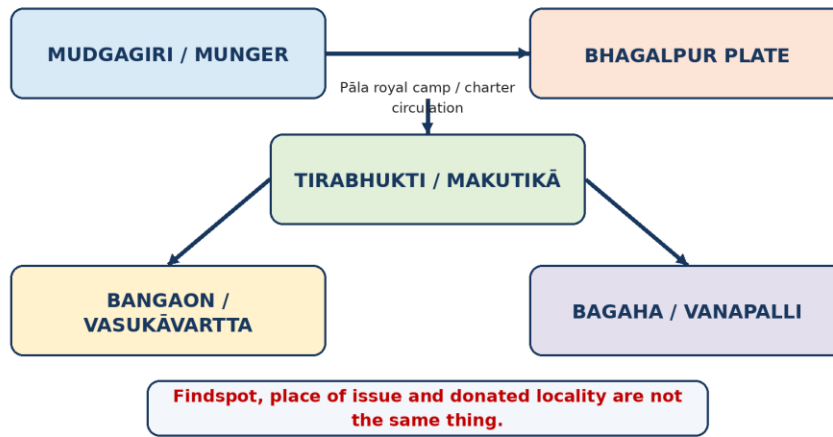
The phrase bhūmicchidra-nyāya appears in Pāla grants and is often translated through the idea of land reclamation or entitlement associated with bringing uncultivated land into use. It has been central to arguments that land grants drove agrarian expansion. The formula is important, but it cannot prove that every granted village was virgin land newly cleared by the beneficiary. The same charter may concern inhabited places with resident cultivators. A safer reading is that reclamation language supplied a legal principle for durable enjoyment and fiscal privilege, while actual local conditions ranged from uncultivated tracts to established settlements. Archaeology and environmental evidence are needed before converting legal formula into a literal history of forest clearance.

26.19 The Bagaha grants and the Gandak zone

Two copper-plate charters found at Bagaha in Champaran and dated 1020 and 1026 CE record grants by Saurāditya of the Malayaketu family. The 1020 charter grants Vanapalli-grāma, located in Vyalisi-viṣaya within Daradgaṇḍakī-maṇḍala, to the Brahman Yaśāditya. The record is important because it shows a non-Pāla ruling house issuing landed endowments within the broader Tirabhukti sphere. Early medieval agrarian change was therefore not the work of one dynasty. Local and sub-regional powers participated in the same documentary culture, using grants to bind religious merit, learned beneficiaries and territorial authority together.

SELECTED REGIONAL LAND-GRANT NODES

schematic — not to scale

*Figure 102 — Selected regional land-grant nodes and documentary connections***26.20 Donor plurality and intermediary power**

Not every grant originated as a king's spontaneous gift. Petitioner-donors, ministers, local magnates and subordinate rulers could initiate or materially enable transfers that the king ratified. The Bangaon record itself contains additional verses concerning Ghaṇṭīśa, a figure connected to the donated tract and to the creation of a śāsana from his own plough-land. Such material warns against a two-actor model of king and peasant. Between court and cultivator stood officials, landed intermediaries, Brahman households, temple or monastic managers and local notables. Their relative power varied, but charters show them participating in the redistribution of fiscal claims and in the documentary definition of rural space.

26.21 Land measurement, boundaries and memory

A grant required the land to be made recognisable. Earlier transactions such as Nandapur specify measurement and durable boundary markers; later charters frequently invoke the property up to its established limits and list attached resources. Boundary making transformed landscape into legal description. Trees, water, paths, embankments, neighbouring plots and settlement names could become part of a durable documentary memory. Because rivers shifted and place names changed, the historian must resist false precision when identifying every medieval locality on a modern map. The important social point is that rights were stabilised through collectively intelligible markers and records, even in dynamic alluvial landscapes.

26.22 Agrarian expansion without a single mechanism

Land grants could accompany agricultural expansion, but expansion had multiple agents. Cultivators cleared and reclaimed land; pastoral and forest-using communities negotiated or lost access; local chiefs and religious institutions sought revenue; rulers encouraged settlement; and existing villages could be reassigned without major new clearance. The Nandapur sale of uncultivated land provides direct evidence for bringing waste into a permanent endowment. By contrast, the Pāla charters' references to resident cultivators demonstrate that some grants reorganised established production. Regional agrarian growth should therefore

be reconstructed as a combination of extension, intensification, reclassification and redistribution rather than as one continuous march of plough agriculture into empty forest.

26.23 Forests, wetlands and the fiction of empty land

Terms translated as waste, uncultivated or non-arable do not mean socially unused. Wetlands, grazing grounds, groves, scrub and seasonal flood zones could support fishing, fodder collection, hunting, craft materials, transport or shifting cultivation. Legal documents are written from the perspective of taxable and grantable resources; they can obscure uses that did not fit that frame. This is especially important in north Bihar's riverine environment and in the forest-upland margins toward Añga and Munger. Agrarian expansion could create new production while also reducing flexible access to commons. The charters rarely allow the historian to identify who lost such access, so this consequence must be posed as a question rather than asserted as a documented outcome in every case.

26.24 Peasant agency and the silence of charters

Cultivators appear in grants primarily as people who are informed, commanded or required to render dues. This is an archival imbalance, not proof that they lacked agency. Farmers could change cropping patterns, resist demands, migrate, negotiate with intermediaries, use kinship and village institutions, or exploit environmental mobility. Those actions are much less likely to be preserved in royal copper plates. The historian must therefore avoid turning the charter's command language into a complete social description. The record establishes an intended legal order; everyday agrarian relations had to make that order workable. Later evidence on village communities and disputes can illuminate possible mechanisms, but it should not be projected backward without period control.

26.25 Women, households and landed production

The surviving charters are overwhelmingly male-centred in their named donors, officials and beneficiaries. That documentary pattern cannot be equated with an exclusively male agrarian economy. Cultivation, animal care, food processing, storage, textile work, collection of fuel and fodder, and household management all depended on women's labour, although royal grants rarely enumerate it. Nor should the absence of women as named recipients in a particular regional sample be generalised into a universal legal incapacity. The chapter therefore treats gender as a structural silence in the charter archive: indispensable to production, but under-recorded in the surviving instruments through which rulers described land and revenue.

26.26 Social classification without retrospective caste projection

Pāla charters can list Brahmins, mahattamas, kuṭumbins and named occupational or social categories among the residents to whom royal orders were announced. Beneficiaries may be described by gotra, pravara and Vedic school. This evidence is valuable for the formation of hierarchy and learned communities, but it does not authorise the projection of later caste taxonomies backward. In particular, the later Maithil category Śrotriya must not be inserted into the Pāla-period record as a fixed Brahmin sub-caste. The charters show historically specific forms of Brahmin status, migration and landed privilege; the later organisation of Maithil Brahmin society belongs to a different evidentiary and chronological problem.

26.27 Land grants and the “Indian feudalism” debate

R. S. Sharma made land grants central to a model of Indian feudalism, emphasising the transfer of fiscal and administrative rights, the growth of intermediaries and changing conditions of peasants. Harbans Mukhia challenged the applicability of European feudal categories to Indian history, while B. D. Chattopadhyaya redirected attention toward regional state formation, settlement, markets and political process. More recent studies, including Ryosuke Furui’s work on eastern India, reconstruct changing land relations without assuming that one label resolves the evidence. For this volume, ‘feudalism’ is therefore treated as a historiographical hypothesis, not a fact built into the sources. Each regional charter is first analysed in its own legal, ecological and social context.

AGRARIAN CHANGE: A CONTROLLED MODEL

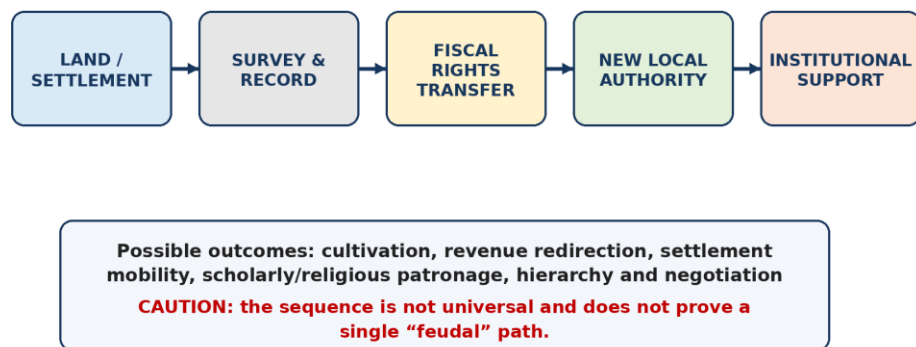


Figure 103 — Agrarian change through land grants: a controlled analytical model

26.28 Grants, money and markets

Land-grant expansion should not automatically be equated with the disappearance of money or markets. The Nandapur transaction itself values uncultivated land in *dīnāras*. Pāla charters use fiscal terms that include *hiranya*, often linked with monetary payment or cash valuation. Religious institutions supported by villages could purchase goods, employ labour and participate in wider exchange. Chapter 15 showed that monetisation was uneven rather than all-or-nothing; the same principle applies here. A society could redirect agrarian revenues through landed endowments while retaining market exchange and monetary practices. The relationship between grants and commerce must be demonstrated regionally, not deduced from a general model of economic decline.

26.29 Mithila–Tirabhukti and Āṅga–Mudgagiri in one documentary zone

The strongest regional lesson comes from reading charters relationally. Mudgagiri/Munger served as a place of issue for Pāla grants; the Bhagalpur plate found in the Āṅga zone concerns a village in Tirabhukti; the Bargaon plate documents a grant within north Bihar; Bagaha records show local rulers making grants along the Gandak side of Tirabhukti. These movements of plates, orders, beneficiaries and revenues cut across the modern habit of treating Mithila, Āṅga and Magadha as sealed compartments. Yet connectivity must not erase difference. The ecology, political history and density of surviving records vary across these zones. A connected documentary field is not the same as a uniform agrarian system.

26.30 Conclusion: from grant to agrarian society

Early medieval land grants changed agrarian society not because a copper plate magically created cultivation, but because documentary authority could redirect revenue, define exemptions, privilege institutions, credential learned beneficiaries and reorder the obligations of residents. The surviving evidence shows both continuity with earlier land-sale procedures and new scales of royal and intermediary endowment. It also reveals the limits of the archive: cultivator voices, women's work, informal access to commons and local negotiation remain only partially visible. The most defensible history therefore moves from document to relationship, not from formula to stereotype. Chapter 27 follows these transformations into the connected spaces of village, market and town, where agrarian surplus, exchange and settlement hierarchy can be examined together.

Table 26.1 — Selected evidence for land grants and agrarian change, with limits of inference

Evidence	What it supports	Limit of inference	Source control
Nandapur plate, Gupta year 169 (488 CE), Munger district	Purchase of uncultivated land at a customary <i>dīnāra</i> price; record-keeper verification; measurement and permanent endowment	Does not show that all land was marketable or that later village grants worked identically	DHARMA Nandapur Plate; N. G. Majumdar
Jivagupta Tirabhukti charter (date/dynastic attribution debated)	Grant of localities with water, trees, pits/barren land and royal dues to a <i>Cāmuṇḍā</i> temple; administrative officers and Tirabhukti geography	Dating and ruler identification are uncertain; formula does not equal observed village practice	D. C. Sircar, "Copper-Plate Grants from Bihar"; Inscriptions of Bihar
Devapāla Munger plate, regnal year 33	Mudgagiri as issuing camp; grant of <i>Meśikā</i> village to a Brahman; Pāla charter form	Donated village lay outside the immediate Munger find/issue locality	DHARMA Munger Plate; Kielhorn; Barnett
Nārāyaṇapāla Bhagalpur plate, regnal year 17	Makutikā village in Tirabhukti granted for a Śiva/Pāśupata establishment; taxes, exemptions, resources and cultivator dues specified	Bhagalpur findspot does not locate Makutikā in Bhagalpur; formula cannot quantify extraction	DHARMA Bhagalpur Plate; Inscriptions of Bihar
Vigrahapāla III Bargaon plate, regnal year 17	Vasukāvartta in Hodreya- <i>viṣaya</i> of Tirabhukti; Brahman beneficiary; resident cultivators to render dues	Does not prove wholesale replacement of local population or a later Maithil caste system	DHARMA Bargaon Plate; Sircar, Epigraphia Indica 29
Saurāditya Bagaha plate, Vikrama 1077 / 1020 CE	Vanapalli in Daradgaṇḍakī- <i>maṇḍala</i> granted to a Brahman by a sub-regional ruler	One grant cannot define all Gandak-zone settlement or polity	Indian Archaeology 1960–61; Sircar, Epigraphia Indica 35
Nālandā plate of Devapāla (comparative control)	Five villages endowed for monastery maintenance, monks and manuscript copying	Outside the core regional focus; used to clarify institutional economy, not to generalise local conditions	DHARMA Nalanda Plate; Hirananda Sastri

Evidence	What it supports	Limit of inference	Source control
Historiographical models	Land grants can illuminate agrarian expansion, intermediaries, state formation and institutional patronage	No single model—especially “feudalism”—should be treated as self-proving	Sharma; Mukhia; Chattopadhyaya; Furui

Chapter 27 — Village, Market and Town

Settlement history is the study of relationships among people, production, exchange, institutions and movement. Early medieval eastern India cannot be reduced either to a landscape of self-sufficient villages or to an unbroken survival of ancient cities. The evidence instead shows differentiated settlements connected by fiscal orders, markets, rivers, roads, courts and religious institutions. For Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga, the documentary record is strongest for villages and administrative geography, while Mudgagiri/Munger and Antichak/Vikramaśīla provide important non-rural anchors. Comparative evidence from the wider Pāla–Sena world helps identify market and merchant forms without pretending that every feature is locally attested. The chapter therefore reconstructs a controlled village–market–town continuum and keeps the limits of inference visible.

27.1 Settlement categories as historical relationships

The words village, market and town appear deceptively simple because modern administration gives each a relatively familiar meaning. Early medieval evidence is less tidy. A grāma could be a revenue-bearing settlement, a cluster of households, a named territorial unit in a grant, or a community whose fields, groves, pasture and water extended well beyond a compact habitation. A market could be a regular haṭṭa, a point of exchange attached to a road or river crossing, or a commercial function operating within a settlement named by some other term. A town might be recognised through political headquarters, dense construction, specialised production, institutional concentration or long-distance connections, even when an inscription does not label it nagara. This chapter therefore treats settlement categories relationally. The central question is not whether a place fits a modern checklist, but how households, cultivators, traders, institutions and officials moved goods, labour, revenue and information among differently scaled nodes.

27.2 The vocabulary: grāma, haṭṭa, pura, nagara and caturaka

Early medieval inscriptions and texts use a vocabulary of settlement whose terms cannot be translated mechanically. Grāma normally points toward a village or rural settlement, yet the economic weight of one grāma could differ sharply from another. Pura and nagara carry urban associations, but literary convention can magnify their splendour. Haṭṭa denotes a market and is especially valuable because it identifies a commercial function rather than only settlement size. Twelfth-century eastern Indian records also attest caturaka, literally associated with a four-way convergence and interpreted as a settlement form intermediate between village and major town. Such evidence is strongest in Bengal and is used here comparatively, not to claim that every named category is directly attested in Mithila or Aṅga. The vocabulary nevertheless demonstrates that early medieval settlement was differentiated. Rural residence, exchange, administration and transport could combine in multiple ways, producing a continuum rather than a binary opposition between isolated village and fully urban city.

27.3 The village was not a self-sufficient cell

Land-grant historiography once encouraged the image of the early medieval village as an increasingly self-contained unit, especially when grants transferred revenue rights to religious beneficiaries and intermediaries. The charters themselves complicate such an image. They refer to payments, shares, cash-related dues, officers, neighbours, roads, watercourses, pasture, trees and boundaries; they assume communication between royal authority, local residents and beneficiaries. A village that paid dues, supplied institutions, obtained metal goods, salt or cloth, and participated in marriage, pilgrimage or seasonal labour was already embedded in

networks beyond its fields. Self-provisioning could remain important without eliminating exchange. Nor did a village require a daily market to be commercially connected: itinerant traders, periodic markets, fairs and nearby nodes could integrate dispersed households into wider circuits. The analytical mistake is to confuse the predominance of agriculture with economic isolation. Rural production formed the base of many networks precisely because towns, courts and monasteries required dependable flows of grain, oil, fibre, animals and labour.

27.4 Villages in the Tīrabhukti charter landscape

The Pāla records discussed in Chapter 26 provide the clearest documentary window onto rural settlement in north Bihar. Tīrabhukti appears as an administrative frame containing viṣayas, smaller units and named grāmas. The Bangaon plate of Vīgrahapāla III, found in present Saharsa district, places granted land within this layered geography and addresses residents who were expected to recognise the transfer. The Bhagalpur plate of Nārāyaṇapāla links a charter found in the Aṅga zone with a grant concerning property in Tīrabhukti. These documents do not give a census of settlement or a map of market frequency, but they reveal a political landscape in which villages were legible to administration. Revenue could be assigned, boundaries remembered, residents notified and obligations redirected. That bureaucratic legibility itself depended on routes of communication. The village was therefore simultaneously a place of production and a node in documentary, fiscal and institutional systems extending well beyond the locality.

27.5 Fields, groves, pasture and water as settlement infrastructure

A village was more than houses surrounded by cropped land. The Bhagalpur and related eastern Indian charters list or imply grassland, pasture, groves, trees, water, raised and low ground, ditches and areas of differing productivity. These resources shaped settlement size, seasonality and exchange. Cattle required grazing and access to water; mahua and mango trees supplied food, fodder, drink, shade and marketable produce; wetlands could sustain fishing and aquatic resources; higher ground mattered in flood-prone country. A settlement with mixed ecological assets could support more varied livelihoods than one dependent on a single crop. Such diversity also generated exchange among households and localities. The language of boundaries, while created for legal security, thus preserves fragments of an economic landscape. It warns against drawing a village as a compact dot on a map. In the alluvial plains of Mithila and the riverine environment of Aṅga, settlement space was a mosaic of habitation, fields, commons, seasonal water and movement corridors.

27.6 Households, kuṭumbins and local notables

Inscriptions frequently address collective categories such as mahattamas, kuṭumbins, cultivators and other residents. These labels should not be translated into fixed modern classes without contextual study, but they show differentiation within rural society. Some households controlled more land, cattle, labour or local influence than others. Certain residents could witness transactions, mediate boundaries or help communicate royal orders. The household remained a critical unit of production, consumption and intergenerational transfer, yet village decisions could involve hierarchies among households. This mattered for markets. Better-resourced cultivators were more able to generate saleable surplus, extend credit, hire labour or transport produce. Poorer households might sell labour, craft output or small quantities of produce under less favourable conditions. The emergence of market exchange therefore did not erase rural hierarchy; it could amplify it. Chapter 28 examines occupational and service communities directly, but settlement history already shows why their location and access to patrons mattered.

27.7 Why markets emerge in agrarian landscapes

Markets become useful when households cannot or do not wish to produce everything they consume and when producers need outlets for surplus. In early medieval eastern India, the relevant goods ranged from grain, oil, pulses, livestock and forest products to salt, cloth, metal implements, pottery and ritual materials. Institutions created concentrated demand, while royal camps and administrative centres required supplies that could not be met by a single estate. Markets also reduced the cost of finding buyers and sellers by concentrating exchange in time and space. Yet the surviving evidence rarely measures transaction volume. A haṭṭa in an inscription proves a recognised market function, not the number of stalls or whether it operated daily. The correct inference is therefore functional: a market linked local production to wider circuits, enabled price comparison, attracted transport and service activity, and gave merchants a point from which to aggregate rural goods or distribute items produced elsewhere.

27.8 The haṭṭa and the problem of periodicity

The term haṭṭa is widely associated with a market in early medieval eastern Indian records. Modern eastern India contains many weekly or twice-weekly haats, but that ethnographic familiarity must not be projected backward automatically. The historical evidence often does not specify frequency. What it does establish is that some commercial places were distinct enough to be named, taxed, endowed or incorporated into merchant activity. Periodic operation would have been well suited to dispersed rural settlement because traders and consumers could converge on fixed days without supporting permanent shops every day, but the hypothesis must be tested case by case. Market periodicity also interacts with agricultural seasonality. Harvest months create surpluses and purchasing power; monsoon conditions alter road access; religious festivals can increase temporary demand. Thus the haṭṭa should be understood less as a miniature modern town than as a flexible institution connecting rural cycles to broader exchange.

27.9 Merchant organisation: a comparative eastern Indian control

The Rajbhita stone inscription of the time of Mahīpāla I, from the wider Pāla world of Bengal, records a vaṇiggrāma, an organised body of merchants, associated with three haṭṭas. Ryosuke Furui has used this evidence to argue against a simple narrative in which merchants disappear with early medieval ruralisation. The case is comparative rather than local to Mithila–Aṅga, but it is highly relevant because the Pāla political sphere crossed Bihar and Bengal. It shows that merchants could be rooted in rural space and organised around multiple market nodes. The term vaṇiggrāma should not be translated literally as proof of a 'merchant village'; it refers to a mercantile collectivity. Its significance lies in institutional organisation. Merchants could coordinate obligations and activity across more than one market. Such evidence suggests that ruralisation and commerce were not mutually exclusive: commercial groups could adapt to landscapes in which exchange was distributed among local centres rather than concentrated only in ancient metropolitan cities.

27.10 Figure 104 and the logic of reciprocal flows

Figure 104 summarises the chapter's basic model. Agricultural villages supplied food, raw materials, animals and labour; markets aggregated some of these goods and redistributed salt, cloth, tools and other necessities; larger towns and institutional nodes concentrated administration, specialised services and demand. The arrows run both ways. Towns did not merely drain villages. They returned manufactured goods, credit, information, religious services, legal authority and opportunities for employment. Markets likewise depended on rural purchasing power while affecting rural production decisions. This reciprocal

model avoids two errors: treating the village as isolated, and treating the town as an autonomous engine disconnected from its hinterland. The intensity of flows changed with harvests, floods, political security and institutional fortunes. A historically useful settlement hierarchy is therefore dynamic. A place could rise when a court, monastery, ferry or route attracted activity and decline when that function shifted elsewhere.

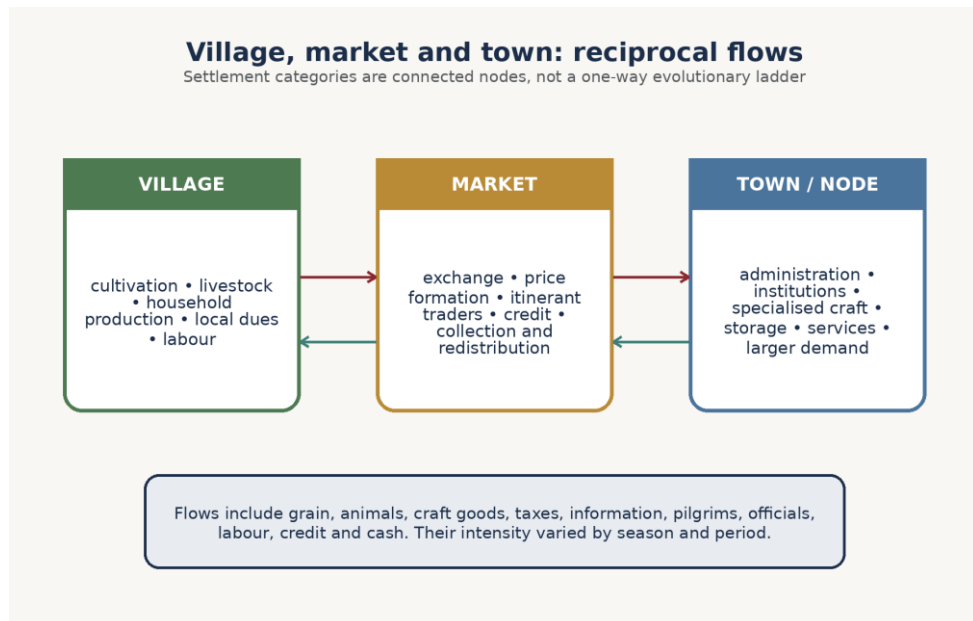


Figure 104 — Village, market and town: reciprocal flows

27.11 Rivers, crossings and the geography of exchange

Mithila, Vajji and Āṅga were structured by major rivers and by the practical difficulty of crossing them. The Ganga offered a longitudinal corridor but also a barrier requiring boats, landing places and seasonal judgement. North Bihar's Gandak, Kosi and other channels linked and divided communities in ways that changed with avulsion and flood. A ferry point could become an exchange node because travellers, carts, officials and merchants converged while waiting to cross. Yet geography does not prove commerce by itself. A river adjacent to a settlement is evidence of transport potential, not of documented trade volume. Historical claims must be tied to itineraries, inscriptions, archaeological distributions or explicit references to routes and markets. The most defensible model is one of opportunity constrained by season, technology and political security. Water transport could lower bulk-transport costs, while changed channels could strand an older landing or redirect movement toward a new node.

27.12 Mudgagiri/Munger as an administrative town

Mudgagiri, identified with Munger, provides the strongest regional example of an early medieval settlement whose importance cannot be reduced to agriculture. Pāla copper plates were issued from a jaya-skandhāvāra at Mudgagiri, and recent inscriptional and sculptural research has reinforced its role as a royal administrative headquarters. A place that hosted the court or a major royal camp generated demand for food, animals, craft goods, scribal work, religious services and transport. Officials and petitioners had reasons to travel there; documents issued there could affect distant villages. This is precisely the kind of nodal function that makes a town historically important even when the archaeological footprint of ordinary housing is incompletely known. Mudgagiri also sat on the Ganga, strengthening its connectivity without allowing us to assume a fixed port infrastructure. Its evidence combines political centrality, religious patronage and regional movement—an urban function created through institutions as much as through commerce.

27.13 The town as a place of documentary power

Early medieval towns often concentrated the personnel who converted political authority into documents. Copper-plate charters required petitions, scribes, engravers, seals, witnesses and channels for communicating the result to local officials and residents. Sanjukta Datta's work on Pāla charters shows that donors and petitioners could play active roles in securing royal ratification. A headquarters such as Mudgagiri therefore participated in a circulation of paper-like information even when the surviving legal instrument was copper. Villages entered the town's field of power through tax assignments and orders; the town depended on villages for the resources that sustained court and administration. This relationship illustrates why settlement history must include institutions. Urbanity was partly an ability to organise transactions at a scale larger than one locality. A royal camp could be mobile in origin yet produce durable urban functions when offices, religious establishments, craft specialists and supply networks clustered around it.

27.14 Antichak/Vikramaśīla as an institutional node

The excavated complex at Antichak in Bhagalpur district, generally identified with Vikramaśīla Mahāvihāra, adds a different kind of large settlement function. Excavations revealed an extensive brick monastery with numerous cells, a central shrine and associated structures. The site demonstrates a concentration of resident and visiting persons requiring food, fuel, cloth, manuscripts, building materials, ritual objects and maintenance. Archaeology cannot by itself reconstruct the exact market system that supplied these needs, and later literary descriptions should not be read as direct account books. Nevertheless, an institution of such scale had a hinterland. Grain and other necessities had to move toward it; people moved for learning, patronage and religious purposes; artisans participated in construction and repair. Vikramaśīla therefore belongs in settlement history not because a monastery automatically equals a town, but because a major institution could generate town-like demand and connectivity in the Aṅga-Bhagalpur landscape.

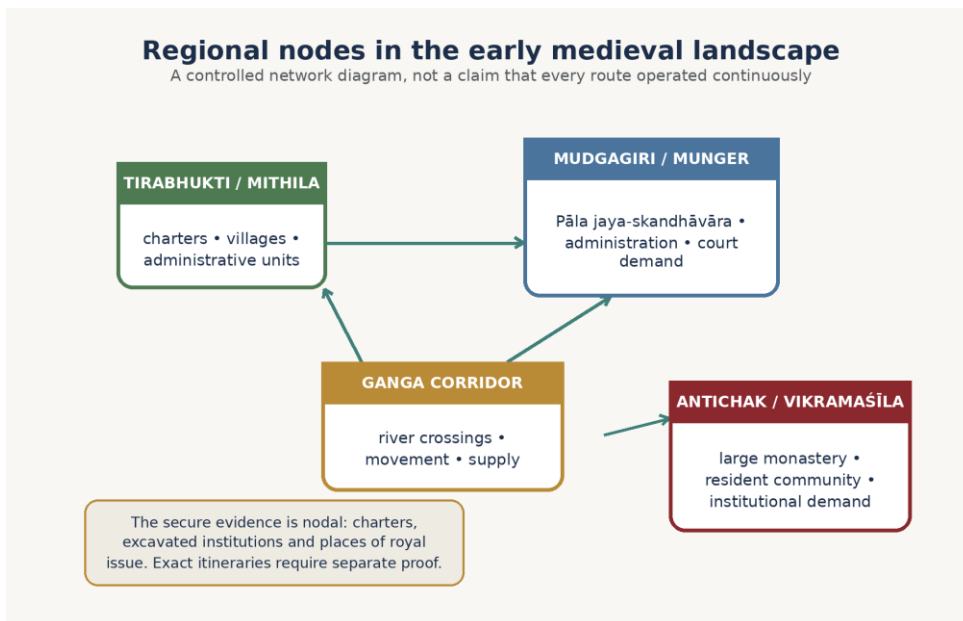


Figure 105 — Regional nodes in the early medieval landscape

27.15 Monasteries, temples and the redistribution of surplus

Religious institutions received land, produce, cash, labour and gifts. Some of that support was consumed locally; some financed construction, ritual, teaching, hospitality and maintenance. The economic effect was redistributive. A monastery or temple could draw agrarian surplus from granted villages and return demand for food processing, transport, craft production and services. It could also attract pilgrims or students whose presence increased exchange. This does not mean every religious centre became an urban centre. Scale, duration, route access and political patronage mattered. Nor should institutional landholding be assumed to impoverish nearby markets; its effects varied. In some contexts, a large endowed institution created regular demand and encouraged specialised production. In others, concentration of rights could burden cultivators or redirect surplus away from alternative uses. The settlement historian must therefore ask what an institution did in its local economy rather than classify it by religious identity alone.

27.16 Tīrabhukti and the problem of a missing urban archaeology

North Bihar's early medieval documentary record is stronger for administrative geography and land grants than for excavated urban sequences. This imbalance matters. It would be easy either to assume that old centres such as Vaiśālī continued unchanged or to infer that towns vanished because the inscriptions emphasise villages. Neither conclusion follows. Ancient urban sites can contract, shift or acquire new functions; new centres can grow without inheriting famous ancient names. Tīrabhukti should therefore be reconstructed as a landscape of villages, administrative loci, religious centres and routes whose exact settlement hierarchy remains partly unknown. The absence of a fully excavated early medieval town in a given district is not positive evidence of an exclusively rural economy. It is an archaeological and research gap. This chapter keeps those gaps visible rather than filling them with retrospective maps of later Darbhanga, Janakpur or other urban centres.

27.17 Small nodes: ferries, crossroads and service concentrations

Between village and major town were many possible intermediate nodes. A ferry landing, crossroads, temple cluster, administrative station or market could accumulate services without becoming a large walled city. Comparative eastern Indian evidence for *caturaka* in the twelfth century is particularly useful because it identifies a settlement form associated with the meeting of roads and standing between ordinary village and major town. Such categories remind us that settlement hierarchy was granular. A blacksmith, oil-presser, potter, money-handler or innkeeper benefited from locations where customers converged. These nodes could be seasonal or modest in population yet economically important. They also made long journeys possible by breaking routes into manageable stages. The strongest claims require direct evidence, but the concept of intermediate nodes prevents a false map containing only countless villages and a few capitals.

27.18 Craft production and the location of specialists

Craft production could occur inside villages, at market nodes or in towns. Potters often needed clay and fuel near consumers; metalworkers needed access to raw metal, charcoal and repair demand; textile production could be household-based yet connected to merchants who supplied inputs or collected cloth. Archaeological craft debris is especially valuable because it can identify production beyond elite texts, but preservation is uneven. A concentration of specialised workshops may signal urban activity, whereas scattered household production can remain thoroughly rural. The same occupation might therefore appear in different settlement contexts. The location of craft specialists depended on market size, patronage, transport costs and social organisation. Chapter 28 examines occupational communities, but the settlement perspective

already reveals a key point: specialisation is not synonymous with urban residence. Markets can connect rural specialists to broader demand, while large institutions can draw craftsmen temporarily for construction and repair.

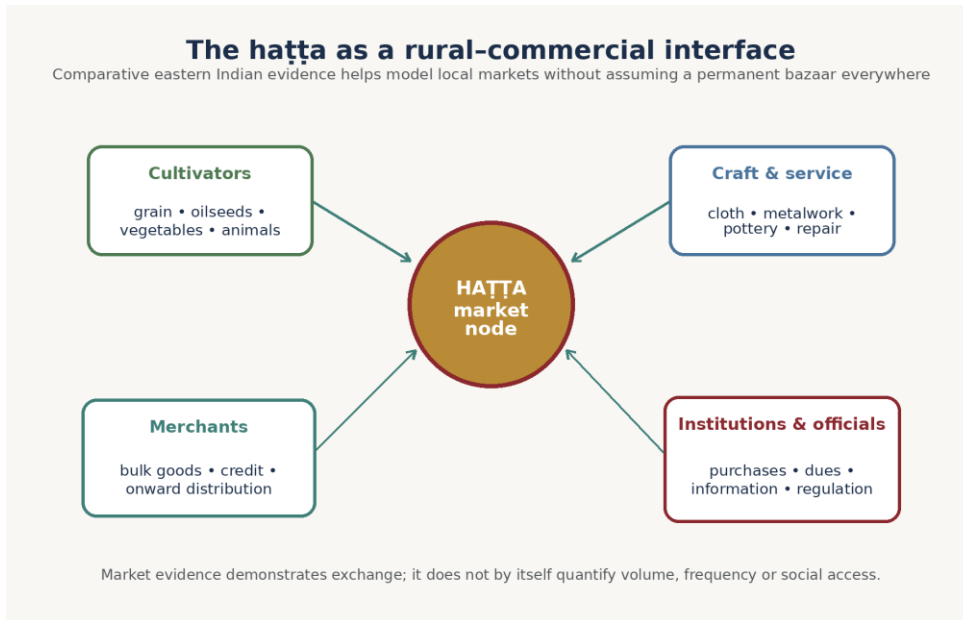


Figure 106 — The haṭṭa as a rural-commercial interface

27.19 Grain, storage and the feeding of non-cultivators

A town or large monastery could not exist without dependable food supply. The relevant historical process is not simply 'surplus extraction' but collection, storage, transport and redistribution. Grain is bulky and vulnerable to moisture, pests and spoilage; moving it requires containers, carts, boats, animals and labour. Oil, ghee, salt and pulses have different storage characteristics. Institutions could receive produce as dues or gifts, while markets allowed producers and intermediaries to convert commodities. Archaeological storage features are rarely sufficient to reconstruct the whole system, and charter formulas do not tell us the quantities delivered. Nonetheless, the existence of substantial non-cultivating populations implies organised provisioning. This is a crucial bridge between village and town. Urban demand gave rural surplus a destination, while failures of harvest, transport or political security could quickly expose the dependence of concentrated populations on their hinterlands.

27.20 Money, credit and transactions

Chapter 15 distinguished monetisation from the mere presence of coins, and the same caution applies here. Early medieval markets could conduct transactions through coin, weighed metal, produce, credit or mixed forms of payment. The relative shares are rarely recoverable. Land-grant records that mention *hiranya* or earlier transactions valued in *dīnāras* show that money-related concepts persisted, but they do not prove that every village purchase was monetised. Merchants could extend credit; institutions could receive produce directly; wages could combine food and cash. John Deyell's work on early medieval north Indian monetary history and the wider debate on 'monetary anaemia' warn against equating a reduced supply of high-value silver coin with the disappearance of exchange. Settlement networks could function through multiple media. The historical question is therefore practical: what forms of value allowed goods and obligations to move between households, markets and larger nodes?

27.21 Taxes, tolls and the fiscal visibility of exchange

Markets and towns attracted political attention because exchange could be taxed or regulated. Early medieval records from different regions refer to levies on trade, market dues, ferries and transit, although the precise fiscal vocabulary and institutional arrangements vary. The Pāla charters of Bihar are more explicit about agrarian dues than about a complete commercial tax system, so one should not import western Indian *mandapikā* structures into Mithila or Aṅga without evidence. Still, the principle is clear: concentrated exchange creates points where authorities can count, police or claim a share. Conversely, grants of exemptions could shift the beneficiary of such revenue. Fiscal visibility can therefore make markets appear disproportionately in inscriptions. A market named in a document was not necessarily the largest commercial place; it was a place relevant to the legal or fiscal transaction being recorded.

27.22 Land grants did not automatically kill markets

The spread of land grants is central to the debate over early medieval urban change. R. S. Sharma linked grants, declining long-distance trade and the growth of landed intermediaries to urban decay. B. D. Chattopadhyaya and later scholarship emphasised regional variation, new forms of trade and the growth of different urban centres. Eastern Indian evidence supports caution toward a single line of decline. Grants could redirect surplus to monasteries and temples that themselves generated demand. Merchant groups could operate in rural markets. Administrative headquarters such as Mudgagiri retained nodal importance. At the same time, some ancient towns undoubtedly contracted and certain long-distance circuits changed. The correct model is transformation with uneven outcomes. Land grants altered control over resources, but their effect on settlement depended on how beneficiaries consumed, invested and redistributed those resources, and on the wider conditions of transport and trade.

27.23 The urban-decay debate and the evidence from eastern India

Sharma's Urban Decay in India remains important because it forced historians to compare archaeological strata, craft production, coinage and trade rather than assume continuous urban prosperity. Its strength is the insistence that towns can decline materially. Its weakness, when applied too broadly, is the risk of making decline the default explanation for every region between the Gupta and Sultanate periods. Chattopadhyaya's work on trade and urban centres instead draws attention to new nodes, settlement forms and processes of urbanisation. Furui's research on Bengal adds a further complication: merchants could reorganise within rural environments, and market activity did not require the survival of an earlier urban elite in unchanged form. For Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga, the evidence favours a plural history—contraction at some old sites, persistence or transformation at others, and the rise of politically or institutionally anchored centres such as Mudgagiri and Vikramaśīla.

27.24 Archaeology: what would demonstrate a town?

Calling a settlement a town should ideally rest on converging evidence. Dense and long-lived construction, streets or drainage, concentrations of craft debris, seals and sealings, storage, fortification, religious monuments, imported goods and a hinterland relationship can all contribute. No single feature is sufficient. A monastery with monumental architecture may be institutionally specialised rather than a general-purpose town; a fort may house a garrison without a broad market; a large pottery scatter may reflect production rather than urban residence. Figure 107 therefore sets out an evidence-control model. Textual labels, archaeology, institutional scale and connectivity should be compared. This approach is particularly necessary in north Bihar, where river movement, sedimentation and modern settlement can obscure

archaeological remains. The absence of excavated streets cannot be filled by the fame of a name in later literature.

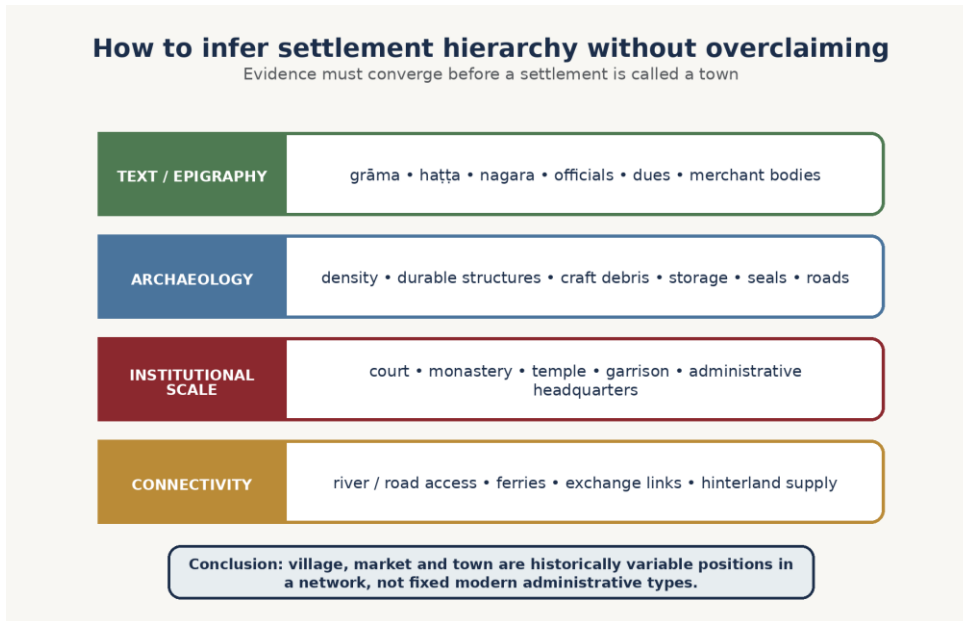


Figure 107 — How to infer settlement hierarchy without overclaiming

27.25 Women and the hidden geography of exchange

Inscriptions naming donors, officials and merchants are heavily male-centred, but household and market economies depended on labour that such texts rarely individualise. Women participated in cultivation, animal care, food processing, spinning, preparation of goods for exchange and management of household stores; the exact division of work varied by community and period. Some women also appear as donors in early and medieval Indian epigraphy, though the regional record is uneven. A settlement history built only from named male office-holders would therefore understate the labour behind marketable surplus. At the same time, one should not romanticise market participation as equal access. Property rights, mobility, household authority and social status shaped who could travel, negotiate prices or control earnings. The invisibility of many women in charters is an archival limitation, not evidence of economic absence.

27.26 Inequality within and between settlements

Settlement hierarchy was also a hierarchy of opportunity. A household close to a market or ferry could sell perishable goods more easily than one separated by difficult seasonal roads. A town resident might have better access to patrons, credit and information but depend on purchased food and rent. Villages located on fertile land or near institutional estates could accumulate resources, while flood-prone or marginal settlements faced greater risk. Political privilege mattered as well: grants could exempt some beneficiaries from dues while leaving producers responsible for payments. Towns could concentrate wealth without eliminating poverty. Markets could widen choice while exposing poorer sellers to debt and adverse prices. The social history of settlement must therefore track who benefited from connectivity and who carried its costs.

27.27 Seasonality, flood and the changing map of access

A road or market route in the alluvial plains was not equally usable throughout the year. Monsoon rain, river floods, waterlogging and channel shifts altered travel times and transport choices. Boats could become more useful when roads deteriorated, yet dangerous currents could make crossings harder. Harvest seasons changed the volume and direction of commodity movement. Dry-season fairs or pilgrimage could temporarily increase traffic at nodes otherwise modest in scale. Settlement hierarchy was therefore partly seasonal. A market's catchment could expand in one season and contract in another; a river landing could migrate; a road could be replaced by a raised embankment or alternative track. Long-term history must allow for this mobility. Static modern maps create a false impression of permanent routes across a dynamic floodplain.

27.28 The village–market–town continuum in Mithila, Vajji and Āṅga

The evidence assembled here supports a continuum model. Tīrabhukti's charters make villages administratively visible; the Ganga and its crossings provided potential corridors; Mudgagiri concentrated royal and documentary functions; Antichak/Vikramaśīla concentrated institutional demand in the Bhagalpur–Āṅga zone; eastern Indian inscriptions show that merchant groups and haṭṭas could operate within broadly rural settings. None of these elements by itself yields a complete regional urban system. Together they demonstrate that settlement functions were differentiated and connected. A village could participate in markets without becoming a town. A market could become a local service centre without acquiring monumental architecture. A politically favoured node could grow rapidly and later contract. The continuum is therefore not a linear evolutionary sequence but a field of changing functions.

27.29 Methodological rules for reconstructing settlement networks

Five rules follow. First, use historical settlement terms as evidence, not as fixed modern categories. Second, distinguish the existence of a market from claims about its frequency or volume. Third, require converging evidence before assigning urban status. Fourth, map routes as period-specific possibilities shaped by rivers, roads, institutions and political security rather than as timeless lines. Fifth, treat famous later towns cautiously when earlier archaeological or documentary continuity is unproven. These rules help prevent both romantic continuity and exaggerated decline. They also make the gaps productive: where evidence is missing, the correct statement is that the settlement hierarchy remains uncertain. A history designed to avoid placeholders must resist filling those uncertainties with confident-sounding but unsupported detail.

27.30 Conclusion: settlements as a network of social dependence

Early medieval society in Mithila, Vajji and Āṅga was predominantly agrarian, but agrarian does not mean isolated. Villages produced food, raw materials and labour; markets concentrated exchange; towns and major institutions organised administration, specialised services and demand. Mudgagiri and Vikramaśīla show two different ways in which non-rural functions could become regionally important. Pāla charters reveal the administrative legibility of villages, while comparative Bengal evidence demonstrates merchant organisation across rural markets. The resulting landscape was neither a continuous chain of flourishing ancient cities nor a closed world of self-sufficient villages. It was a shifting network whose nodes rose and fell with political power, institutional patronage, transport conditions and ecological change. Chapter 28 moves from places to people by examining labour, service and occupational communities within this connected settlement system.

Table 27.1 — Evidence for village, market and town, with limits of inference

Evidence	Regional / comparative example	What it supports	What it does not prove
Land-grant charters	Tirabhukti, Bangaon, Bhagalpur and related Pāla records	Named villages, administrative units, residents, dues, resources and documentary connections	Population size, market frequency or complete settlement hierarchy
Royal headquarters	Mudgagiri/Munger as Pāla jaya-skandhāvāra	Administrative concentration, court demand and supra-local movement	A fixed population total or fully excavated commercial quarter
Large institution	Antichak/Vikramaśīla in Bhagalpur district	Concentrated resident/visitor demand, monumental construction and hinterland provisioning	That a monastery was identical to a general-purpose town or that every supply passed through a formal market
Market terminology	Haṭṭa in early medieval eastern Indian inscriptions	Recognised market function and rural-commercial interfaces	Daily operation, exact trade volume or identical organisation in every region
Merchant organisation	Rajbhita vaṇiggrāma under Mahīpāla I (comparative Bengal evidence)	Merchants could organise across rural market nodes in the wider Pāla world	Direct proof of the same institution in Mithila or Aṅga
Settlement morphology	Archaeology: density, durable structures, craft debris, seals, storage, routes	Convergence of multiple urban functions	Urban status from one monument, one inscription or a famous place-name alone
Rivers and roads	Ganga and north-Bihar river crossings; route potential	Transport opportunities, ferry nodes and seasonal connectivity	Continuous use, fixed channels or quantified commercial traffic without additional evidence
Urban-change debate	Sharma, Chattopadhyaya, Furui and archaeological comparison	Regional transformation, contraction and new nodal forms can coexist	A universal model of either total urban collapse or uninterrupted prosperity

Chapter 28 — Labour, Service and Occupational Communities

Early medieval social history is often reconstructed from landholders, rulers and institutions because they dominate the written record. This chapter reverses the angle of vision. It asks who cultivated fields, carried messages, guarded roads, supervised ferries, made tools, carved images, copied documents, supplied monasteries and performed the countless services that turned rights on copper plates into functioning society. The evidence does not permit a complete occupational census. It does permit a controlled reconstruction of differentiated labour, service and skill—and of the gradual processes through which some livelihoods became more tightly organised as hereditary social groups.

28.1 Labour as a historical problem

Labour is easy to see in the results of production and difficult to see in the surviving texts. Fields were cleared and cultivated, embankments maintained, cattle tended, boats moved, pottery fired, metal repaired, images carved, documents copied and institutions fed. Yet royal charters usually record rights, beneficiaries and officials rather than the names and conditions of the people who performed most of this work. A social history of labour must therefore reconstruct relationships from several kinds of evidence instead of treating a list of occupational labels as a census. For Mithila, Vajji and Āṅga in the early medieval centuries, the best regional controls are Pāla-period charters from Munger and Bhagalpur, the archaeology of Antichak/Vikramaśīla, and material evidence from Mudgagiri. Wider eastern Indian inscriptions help identify possible patterns, but they cannot be imported wholesale into north Bihar.

28.2 Occupation, service, status and caste are not synonyms

A person's work, mode of dependence, social rank and later caste identity need not coincide. Kṣetrakara identifies cultivation more directly than it identifies a bounded caste. Sevaka denotes service but does not by itself tell us whether the service was domestic, military, administrative, temporary or hereditary. Terms such as mahattara and kuṭumbin point to rural standing and household position rather than a single occupation. Conversely, later normative texts may classify communities by inherited status even when earlier records reveal more fluid economic roles. This distinction is essential because early medieval history has often been written backwards from later caste ethnographies. The safer method is chronological: establish what a contemporary record actually names, identify the social relation implied by that term, and only then ask whether later evidence shows increasing heredity or closure.

28.3 Four evidence streams and their limits

Figure 108 separates four evidence streams. Copper-plate charters are strongest for administrative visibility: they list officials, residents, cultivators and groups whose compliance with a grant mattered. Archaeology reveals production without necessarily naming producers. Normative and literary texts preserve social categories, ideals and stereotypes, but they are not demographic surveys. Comparative work on eastern India can illuminate processes such as the gradual systematisation of occupational groups, yet regional timing varied. No single stream is sufficient. An iron object proves metal use, not the caste of the smith; an official title proves an office, not its lifetime tenure; a ranked social list proves a classificatory language, not the exact everyday relations among all people named. Labour history becomes reliable when these evidentiary limits are built into the argument rather than added as a final disclaimer.

28.4 The Bhagalpur plate as a social document

The Bhagalpur plate of Nārāyaṇapāla, issued in year 17, is especially valuable because its notification formula extends far beyond a royal elite. It addresses a long sequence of officers and servants and then turns to residents, describing a social field from Brahmans and leading persons down to Meda, Andhra and Caṇḍāla. The same grant requires resident cultivators to obey the new fiscal arrangement and deliver the appropriate shares and dues. This does not make the plate a complete map of society: the list is formulaic, status-laden and shaped by the legal purpose of transferring a village's revenues. Even so, it demonstrates that the grant was imagined as affecting people who cultivated, administered, policed, transported, served and inhabited the locality. A land grant was therefore also a reordering of obligations.

28.5 The Munger plate and the labour of administration

Devapāla's Munger plate of year 33 contains an equally revealing roster. Alongside high officers appear functionaries connected with punishment, policing, tolls, forts, frontiers, messaging, travel, ferries, animals and local administration. It then addresses residents led by mahattaras and kuṭumbins and extends the social range to groups including Meda, Andhraka and Caṇḍāla. The importance of the passage lies less in translating every title with false precision than in recognising the density of specialised service around royal government. Administrative power depended on labour: messages had to travel, revenue had to be assessed and moved, animals maintained, crossings supervised and coercion organised. The court and the countryside were connected by people performing these functions. Many of them may have been mobile; others were embedded in local society.

28.6 Cultivators and the base of the agrarian economy

The resident kṣetrakaras named in Pāla charters were the people whose cultivation made a revenue grant economically meaningful. They were not necessarily a homogeneous peasantry. Some may have held substantial household plots; others worked smaller holdings or land controlled through superior rights. The charter tells us that cultivators had obligations to render specified dues after a transfer, but it rarely tells us how labour was recruited within the household, whether hired workers were employed, or how harvest risk was shared. Ryosuke Furui's reconstruction of early medieval eastern India stresses increasing differentiation in land relations and the growth of larger holdings above actual cultivators. For the regional history of Mithila and Aṅga, this suggests a stratified agrarian world without allowing us to assign a single tenure status to every kṣetrakara.

28.7 Household labour and invisible cooperation

Much agricultural work took place within households. Ploughing, transplanting, weeding, harvesting, threshing, storage, animal care, fuel collection and food processing demanded coordinated labour across seasons. Charters normally name household heads or collective categories and therefore hide much of the work of women, children, dependants and junior kin. This invisibility should not be mistaken for absence. Agricultural manuals and comparative rural evidence show that successful cultivation required timed cooperation rather than the isolated activity of a male landholder. Household labour also linked production to reproduction: children learned skills, food was processed, tools maintained and animals cared for. The historical household was thus both a social and productive institution. Because the surviving sources distribute recognition unequally, a labour history must distinguish who worked from who appeared in legal documents.

28.8 Mahattaras, kuṭumbins and rural differentiation

Terms such as mahattara and kuṭumbin appear in early medieval eastern Indian records as indicators of rural standing. They should not be flattened into modern equivalents such as landlord, peasant proprietor or village elder in every context. Their importance here is relational. They occupied positions from which they could be notified, witness transactions, mediate boundaries or represent local interests, while poorer cultivators and labourers were less visible. This differentiation affected access to labour. Better-resourced households could command family labour, exchange work with neighbours, hire assistance or extend credit during agricultural bottlenecks. Less secure households might sell labour or accept unfavourable advances. The rural economy therefore contained unequal capacities to mobilise work. Those inequalities are more historically defensible than a simple division between free peasants and serfs.

28.9 Agrarian labour beyond the named cultivator

Actual field work could exceed the labour capacity of the household that held cultivation rights. Peak seasons created demand for additional hands, and larger holdings could only be managed through dependants, wage-like arrangements, share relations, attached labour or combinations of these. The evidence from Pāla north Bihar does not permit a numerical estimate of landless labourers, and the language of later agrarian systems should not be projected backwards. Nevertheless, the gap between legal control over land and the physical work required to cultivate it is historically significant. Where landholding became more stratified, the possibility of separating the manager or superior right-holder from the actual tiller increased. Furui's wider eastern Indian model places agrarian labourers at the lower end of increasingly layered land relations by the later early medieval period.

28.10 Figure 108: reconstructing labour without a false census

Figure 108 summarises the evidentiary method. Charters illuminate people made legible by fiscal and administrative transactions; archaeology illuminates the products and spaces of work; normative texts illuminate ranking and social ideology; comparative history helps identify processes whose regional presence must still be demonstrated. The convergence of these streams allows strong statements about specialised labour and differentiated social relations. It does not justify claims that every occupational group was already a closed caste or that every named status corresponded to one economic function. This distinction matters most for communities at the lower end of textual hierarchies, whose voices are rarely preserved in documents produced for courts, monasteries or Brahman beneficiaries.

Labour history: distinct evidence streams

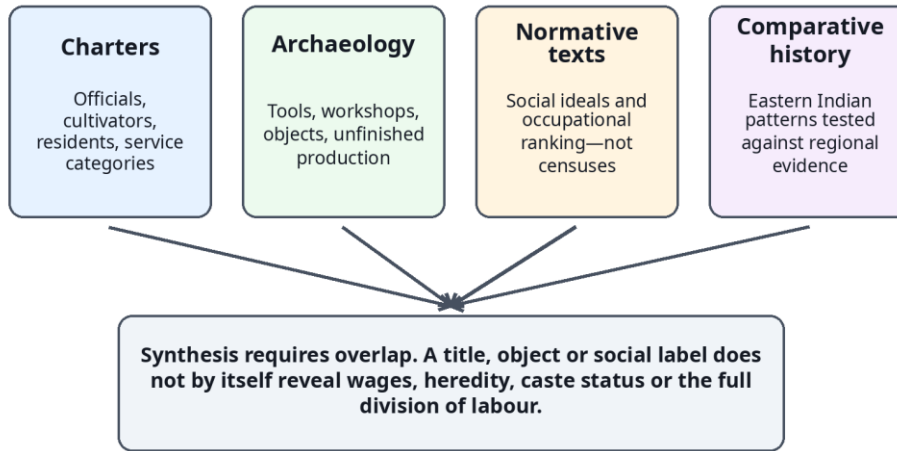


Figure 108 — Labour history: distinct evidence streams

28.11 State service as an occupational world

The official rosters of the Munger and Bhagalpur plates reveal government as a large service complex. Beyond ministers and commanders were officers concerned with accounts, justice, policing, tolls, territorial supervision, forts, messengers, transport and animal resources. Some titles probably represented substantial offices; others may have denoted operational personnel or categories of royal retainers. Together they show that state formation generated work that was not directly agricultural. Administrative labour depended on literacy, numeracy, mobility, record keeping and coercive capacity. Mudgagiri/Munger, a Pāla jayaskandhāvāra, would have concentrated many such services when the royal camp or headquarters was present. The town's significance therefore included a labour market created by government itself—clerks, guards, suppliers, transporters, artisans and attendants serving an administrative centre.

28.12 Cāṭa, bhaṭa and sevaka: coercion and service

Pāla charters repeatedly refer to cāṭas, bhaṭas and sevakas, often in formulas that prohibit their entry into donated villages. The terms have been interpreted in relation to soldiers, police-like retainers and servants, but their precise institutional meanings could vary. The exemption formula is nevertheless revealing. Villagers experienced royal personnel not only as abstract authority but as bodies that could enter settlements, demand supplies, enforce orders or impose burdens. Excluding such entry enhanced the autonomy or privilege of the donee. From the standpoint of labour history, the formula also reminds us that military and service personnel had to be housed, fed and moved. State service redistributed demands onto rural producers even when the surviving charter presents the matter as a legal privilege.

28.13 Ferries, boats, messengers and animal handlers

The Pāla official lists include titles connected with ferries and with elephants, horses, camels, cattle and other animals, as well as messengers and personnel concerned with movement. In the riverine geography of Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga, these were not peripheral occupations. Crossing the Ganga or its tributaries required boats, landing places, skilled handling and local knowledge of currents and seasons. Royal communication depended on relays of people and animals. Armies and courts depended on fodder, stable work and

veterinary knowledge even when the texts do not individualise those workers. Transport labour linked agrarian villages to markets, administrative centres and religious institutions. It also carried risk: flood, channel change and seasonal scarcity could transform the value of local expertise.

28.14 Figure 109: the charter's social field

Figure 109 places the main categories visible in Pāla grants into three analytical zones: administrative service, rural society and ranked social classification. The zones overlap. A local notable might also serve the state; a cultivator might transport produce; a person placed low in normative hierarchy might possess specialised ecological or craft knowledge. The point of the diagram is therefore not to freeze people into boxes but to show how the charter assembled different groups because a grant needed their recognition or obedience. The administrative document makes society visible through its own purpose. Historians must reconstruct the wider life behind that selective visibility.

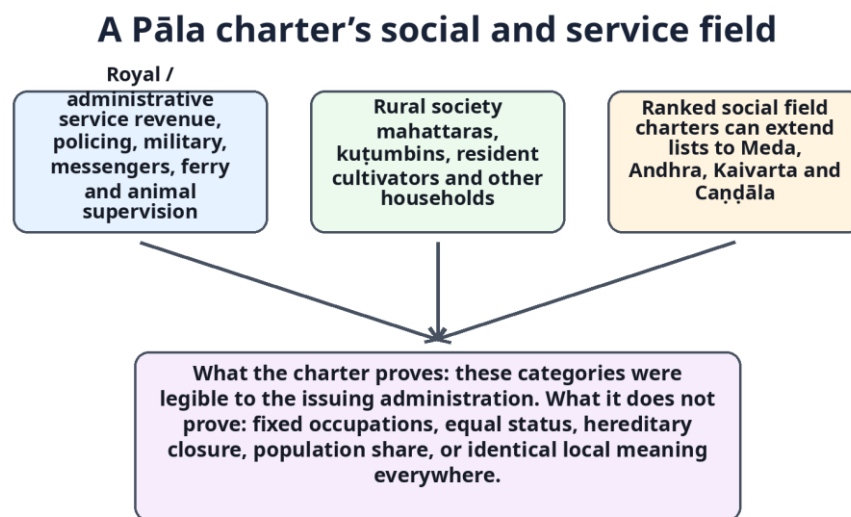


Figure 109 — A Pāla charter's social and service field

28.15 Craft labour at Mudgagiri/Munger

Recent study of Pāla sculptural material from Munger is important for labour history because unfinished sculptures preserve stages of carving and polishing. Such objects demonstrate production, not merely consumption. A finished image in a temple can travel far from its workshop; an unfinished image is stronger evidence for local or nearby working activity. Stone carving required quarry access or imported blocks, transport, specialised tools, design knowledge, roughing out, finishing and often inscription. Mudgagiri's administrative and religious importance created demand for such work. We should not assume one permanent guild or hereditary workshop without direct evidence, but the material record supports skilled śilpakāras operating within a patronage environment where court, temple and urban demand could sustain specialised production.

28.16 Antichak/Vikramaśīla and institutional demand

The excavated complex at Antichak demonstrates the labour demands of a large monastic institution. Brick architecture, drains, cells, shrines, terracotta plaques, pottery, seals and sealings, metal objects, stone

sculpture and bone, shell and ivory objects represent many kinds of work. The monastery required builders during major construction phases and continuing labour for repair, cooking, cleaning, water management, storage and provisioning. Some craft production may have occurred on site; other goods were brought through surrounding markets and villages. Archaeology cannot assign every object to a named community, but it establishes an economy of skilled and unskilled labour around the institution. Vikramaśīla was thus not only a centre of learning and ritual but also a sustained consumer of regional labour.

28.17 Potters and the archaeology of everyday production

Ceramics are among the most abundant archaeological traces of labour because vessels break and are discarded. Pottery at Antichak and other sites points to repeated production for cooking, storage, serving and ritual use. Potters needed clay, water, fuel, forming skills, firing knowledge and access to consumers. Production could be household based, village based or concentrated near larger settlements; the archaeological record rarely tells us the social identity of the potter directly. The historical importance of pottery lies precisely in its ordinariness. Monumental patronage highlights elite art, but daily institutional and household life depended on large quantities of replaceable craft goods. A social history of occupations must therefore place ordinary ceramic labour alongside prestigious stone and bronze work.

28.18 Metalworkers, repair and the economy of tools

Iron tools and fittings, copper objects and bronzes reveal different sectors of metalworking. Agricultural expansion required cutting implements, plough components, knives and repair. Buildings required clamps, hinges, nails and tools. Religious institutions demanded lamps, vessels and images. Military establishments required weapons and equipment. The same smith could serve a mixed local clientele rather than a single specialised market. Metalworking also linked workers to supply chains for ore or scrap, charcoal and fuel. Because finished metal was frequently recycled, archaeology underrepresents the scale of production. The presence of iron and copper objects at Antichak therefore signals technical labour while leaving workshop organisation open. We should distinguish evidence for metal use from evidence for a resident hereditary smith community.

28.19 Stone carvers, image makers and artistic skill

Pāla-period eastern India is famous for stone sculpture, but the social history of the people who made it is less visible than the art itself. Munger's unfinished pieces help recover sequences of manufacture, while wider eastern Indian evidence preserves occasional references to artists and engravers. By the Sena period, the Deopara inscription famously praises Śūlapāṇi as a leading figure among the artists of Varendra; whether the phrase proves a formal guild remains debated. For this volume the safer conclusion is that skilled artistic communities and reputational networks existed, with mobility between patronage centres. Stylistic similarity can suggest shared training or models, but it should not be converted automatically into a named workshop unless material or inscriptional evidence supports that step.

Occupation depended on place and demand

Village / fields	cultivation • herding • fishing • pottery • repair
Market / ferry	transport • brokerage • toll collection • food and craft exchange
Town / court	scribal work • administration • military service • luxury craft
Monastery / temple	building • image making • cooking • supply • maintenance

Figure 110 — Occupation depended on place and demand

28.20 Scribes and engravers as documentary professionals

Copper-plate grants were material products of specialised literacy. A royal decision had to be formulated in Sanskrit, copied, checked, engraved on copper and authenticated with a seal. The Bhagalpur plate names Maṅghadāsa, son of Śubhadāsa and associated with Samataṭa, as its engraver. Such notices are valuable because they reveal named technical specialists and, in some cases, geographic mobility. Sanjukta Datta's work on Pāla copper plates shows that engraving and charter production formed a documentary culture with identifiable practitioners. Scribes and engravers occupied an intermediate world between administration and craft: their work required linguistic training, graphic skill and institutional access. Their visibility contrasts sharply with the anonymity of most cultivators and manual workers.

28.21 Ritual specialists and the labour of institutions

Temples and monasteries created regular work beyond the roles of monks, teachers or Brahman recipients named in grants. Worship required flowers, lamps, food offerings, water, cleaning, music or recitation in some contexts, repair of buildings and management of supplies. The Bhagalpur grant explicitly supports worship, offerings, charitable feeding, construction and care for the sick at a Śaiva-Pāśupata establishment. These purposes imply cooks, suppliers, builders, attendants and medical provisioning even though the workers are not individually named. Institutional endowments thus transformed agricultural revenue into recurring service demand. The economic significance of religious patronage lay partly in this conversion of landed income into labour, materials and maintenance.

28.22 Merchants, brokers and market-facing occupations

Chapter 27 showed that markets linked villages, towns and institutions. Labour history adds the people who made those connections work: merchants, brokers, transporters, weighers, packers, boat operators and petty vendors. Direct evidence for each role in Mithila and Aṅga is uneven, so the Rajbhita inscription from the wider Pāla world remains a comparative control rather than a local template. It records an organised vaṇiggrāma associated with rural markets and demonstrates that commercial specialisation could develop outside large cities. Merchant organisation also created demand for credit, storage, security and information.

The boundary between occupation and social group could therefore harden through repeated cooperation and shared interests, but this was a process rather than an automatic consequence of trade.

28.23 Kaivartas and the danger of a single occupational translation

Some Pāla-period eastern Indian charters include Kaivartas in ranked social lists. The term has long associations with water, fishing, boating and later social identities, yet it should not be given one timeless occupational meaning. Riverine skills were economically important across the Ganga plain, but a label could broaden, change status or acquire political significance over centuries. The later Kaivarta mobilisation in Varendra belongs to a different regional and chronological context and cannot be used to define every earlier Kaivarta in Bihar. The historical value of the term lies in showing that groups associated in later evidence with specialised livelihoods were becoming socially legible. The exact relation between livelihood, status and heredity must be established case by case.

28.24 Meda, Andhra, Caṇḍāla and the rhetoric of social range

The Munger and Bhagalpur charter formulas extend their address lists to communities such as Meda, Andhra or Andhraka and Caṇḍāla. The phraseology communicates comprehensiveness and hierarchy: the king's order reaches from prestigious Brahmins and leading residents to socially subordinated groups. It would be hazardous to assign each label a fixed local occupation. Some may reflect ethnic, regional, occupational or status histories that had already been reinterpreted by Brahmanical classificatory language. What the formula establishes with confidence is unequal social recognition. People placed at the lower end of these lists were part of the inhabited and productive landscape even when elite texts represented them through stigma. Their inclusion in a grant notification is therefore evidence of presence and subordination, not a complete ethnography.

28.25 Women's labour and the documentary silence

Women are dramatically underrepresented in the occupational vocabulary of royal charters, yet rural and institutional economies could not function without their work. Food processing, water collection, animal care, textile production, childcare, transplanting, weeding and post-harvest tasks are among activities that comparative agrarian history consistently identifies as gendered labour, though the precise division varied by place and household. Women also appear as donors and patrons in some eastern Indian records, demonstrating that legal visibility was possible under particular conditions. The methodological rule is to avoid replacing documentary silence with invented detail while refusing to equate silence with inactivity. Where a task is necessary to a documented production process, the historian may identify the labour requirement without pretending to know the exact gender distribution in every locality.

28.26 Burdens, exactions and dependent labour

Land grants frequently describe donated property as exempt from various burdens and from the entry of certain royal personnel. The phrase *parihṛta-sarva-pīḍa*—freed from all burdens—signals that rural communities could be subject to claims beyond ordinary revenue. It does not enumerate those claims, and it should not automatically be translated as a precise system of forced labour. Elsewhere in early medieval India, *viṣṭi* is well attested, but its occurrence and meaning vary by region and period. For Pāla north Bihar the cautious conclusion is that state and service demands could impose labour-like or provisioning burdens on settlements, while the exact balance among compulsory work, supplies, cash dues and customary service

remains uncertain. Exemption formulas reveal the pressure of extraction even when they do not describe every mechanism.

28.27 From repeated livelihood to hereditary occupational group

Ryosuke Furui's regional synthesis argues that early medieval eastern India witnessed increasing organisation of hereditary occupational groups and their later systematisation within a jāti order. Figure 111 presents this as a process rather than a starting assumption. Skills can be transmitted within households because training, tools and contacts are valuable. Repeated service to the same patrons can deepen dependence. Marriage networks and normative classification can then reinforce group boundaries. Yet these stages need not occur everywhere or at the same speed. A potter family might transmit craft skills for generations without belonging to a fully closed regional caste system in an earlier century. The chronology of social closure is therefore as important as the identification of occupation itself.

From work to social group: a historical process

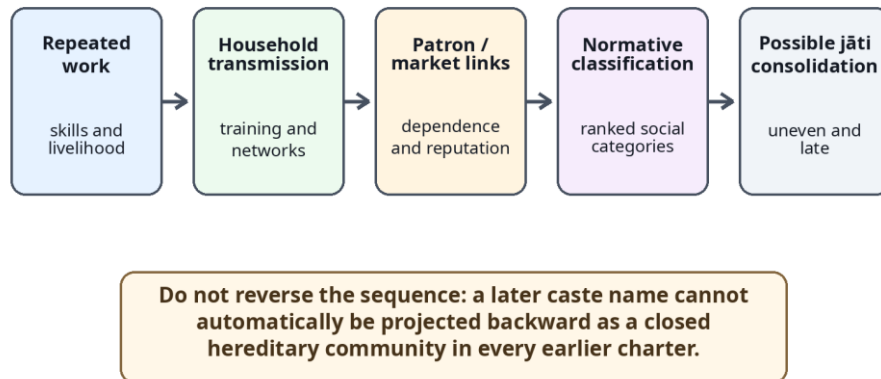


Figure 111 — From work to social group: a historical process

28.28 Regional variation across Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga

The three regional zones did not offer identical labour environments. North Bihar's alluvial and riverine landscape privileged cultivation, cattle, fisheries, ferries and seasonal transport, while its charter record emphasises villages and administrative units. Aṅga's Ganga corridor, Mudgagiri and the large institution at Antichak created stronger archaeological visibility for urban, artisanal and institutional labour. Older centres in the Vajji landscape continued to carry religious and route significance, but early medieval occupational documentation is thinner. These differences are partly historical and partly archival. Where inscriptions survive, officials and rural categories become visible; where excavations are rich, crafts and material work come forward. Regional comparison must therefore distinguish differences in past society from differences in what has been preserved and studied.

28.29 Methodological rules for occupational history

Six rules guide reconstruction. First, do not equate occupation, title, status and caste. Second, treat charter lists as administrative classifications, not censuses. Third, use archaeology to demonstrate production

before assigning producer identity. Fourth, distinguish necessary labour from documented labour: a monastery required cooks and cleaners even if their names are absent, but their precise organisation may remain unknown. Fifth, keep comparative eastern Indian evidence explicitly comparative unless a regional anchor exists. Sixth, date processes of heredity and jāti consolidation rather than projecting later social formations backward. These rules produce a less dramatic but more reliable account. They also recover workers as historical actors without pretending that the sources preserve their voices equally.

28.30 Conclusion: work connected the regional economy

Early medieval Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga were held together not only by kings, grants and institutions but by work. Cultivators produced the agrarian base; transport workers connected river and road; officials converted royal orders into local practice; artisans built, repaired and supplied towns and monasteries; scribes and engravers materialised documentary power; servants and military retainers sustained coercive institutions. Social hierarchy shaped who controlled resources and who remained anonymous. Over time, repeated livelihoods, household transmission, patronage and Brahmanical classification could contribute to more hereditary occupational identities, but the process was uneven. The strongest regional evidence therefore supports a differentiated labour society in motion—not a timeless caste chart. Chapter 29 turns from occupational organisation to the changing relations of household, kinship and social reproduction that sustained these communities.

Table 28.1 — Evidence for labour and occupational communities, with limits of inference

Evidence	What it shows	Historical use	Limit of inference
Bhagalpur plate of Nārāyaṇapāla	Long roster of officials and servants; residents; kṣetrakaras; ranked social range	Administrative visibility of specialised service and cultivators	Not a census; formulaic hierarchy does not define each group's occupation
Munger plate of Devapāla	Officials for tolls, policing, territorial control, movement, ferries and animals; mahattaras and kuṭumbins	Specialised state service and differentiated rural society	Titles do not reveal wages, recruitment or hereditary tenure
Grant exemption formulas	parihṛta-sarva-pīḍa and exclusion of cāṭa-bhaṭa entry	Villages could face burdens and intrusive service demands	Does not by itself prove a specific local system of viṣṭi
Antichak/Vikramaśīla archaeology	Pottery, terracotta, stone, metals, seals, architecture and drains	Large institutional demand for skilled and routine labour	Objects rarely identify the social group of the producer
Unfinished Pāla sculptures at Munger	Visible stages of carving and polishing	Local or nearby skilled stone-working activity	Does not establish one permanent guild or caste workshop
Bhagalpur named engraver Maṅghadāsa	Named specialist associated with charter manufacture	Professional literacy, engraving skill and mobility	One named artisan does not define all scribal organisation
Wider eastern Indian Kaivarta / occupational evidence	Occupational labels and later processes of group consolidation	Comparative model for increasing hereditary organisation	Cannot be projected unchanged into every locality or earlier century
Furui's regional synthesis	Stratified land relations and occupational groups increasingly systematised toward jāti	Long-term process of social differentiation	A model to test regionally, not a substitute for local evidence

Chapter 29 — Social Classification and Its Historical Formation

Social hierarchy in early medieval Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga was real, but its categories were historical rather than timeless. Land, office, ritual authority, occupation, migration, household standing and stigma generated overlapping distinctions. This chapter reconstructs how those distinctions became socially legible and, in some settings, increasingly hereditary. It refuses two opposite shortcuts: treating normative varṇa as a complete census, and projecting later caste lists backward into centuries for which they are not documented. Contemporary charters from Munger and Bhagalpur provide the principal regional anchors; wider eastern Indian evidence supplies comparison; later Maithil genealogy is used only with explicit chronological controls.

29.1 Social classification as a historical problem

Every society classifies people, but the categories used by rulers, ritual specialists, households and later ethnographers are not identical. Early medieval Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga were marked by inequalities of landholding, service, ritual prestige, occupation, dependency and political power. Some of these differences were expressed through Sanskrit terms that later became associated with caste. Others were recorded as offices, household ranks, ethnonyms or local status labels. The task is therefore not to ask when a complete modern-style caste system suddenly appeared. It is to reconstruct how social distinctions became more explicit, more hereditary in some settings, and more closely connected with marriage, land, ritual authority and occupational reproduction. This chapter treats classification as a process. It uses contemporary charters as its strongest regional evidence, normative texts as evidence for ideals, and later genealogical or caste records only after applying a strict chronological filter.

29.2 Varṇa and jāti must be kept analytically distinct

Varṇa supplied a broad normative language of ranked social order. Jāti, in historical usage, could refer to birth, kind, community or more bounded social groups, and its meanings changed across genres and periods. Treating the four-varṇa scheme as a literal census obscures the much denser social vocabulary of inscriptions. Conversely, translating every occupational or regional label as a fully formed caste imports later closure into earlier evidence. The early medieval record contains Brahmins, officials, soldiers, cultivators, rural notables, service personnel and groups placed low in Brahmanical rankings, but these categories operate at different scales. Varṇa is most useful for understanding normative ranking; jāti formation is better approached through evidence of repeated group names, marriage boundaries, inherited occupation, collective rights and durable social reproduction. Those forms do not appear at the same speed everywhere, which is why regional chronology matters.

29.3 Four evidence streams and their limits

Figure 112 separates the evidence into charters, normative texts, material history and later records. Charters are dated transactions and therefore provide the strongest control for categories made administratively visible. Normative texts tell us how learned traditions imagined social order, but prescription does not equal practice. Archaeology reveals unequal settlement, access to goods, specialised production and institutional demand, yet it rarely names the social identity of the people who made or used objects. Later genealogies, caste handbooks and colonial descriptions can document identities that had become important by their own time, but they are dangerous when projected backwards. The chapter therefore asks four

questions of every label: when is it attested, who used it, for what purpose, and what social relation does it actually demonstrate? Only after these questions are answered is comparison across periods legitimate.

29.4 The Munger plate: classification in an administrative act

Devapāla's Munger plate of year 33, issued from Mudgagiri, is unusually informative because its notification moves through a long chain of office-holders and then addresses residents through an explicitly broad social range. The charter names royal and provincial officers concerned with administration, coercion, tolls, forts, transport and animals. It then turns to local society, including Brahmins, mahattaras and kuṭumbins, and extends the formula to Medas, Andhrakas and Caṇḍālas. This is not a neutral ethnographic list. Its purpose is to announce a grant and command compliance. Yet precisely because the grant had to be socially effective, the formula shows categories that the issuing administration considered intelligible. It also shows that political authority imagined the village social field as differentiated rather than homogeneous. What remains uncertain is the population, wealth, occupation and marriage practice of each category named.

29.5 The Bhagalpur plate: hierarchy, service and local society

Nārāyaṇapāla's Bhagalpur plate of year 17, also issued from Mudgagiri and concerning a village in Tīrabhukti, repeats the broad logic while adding a rich roster of officials and servants. It addresses royal personnel, provincial and village officers, transport-related staff, cāṭas, bhaṭas and sevakas, then turns to residents extending from Brahmins through locally prominent categories to Meda, Andhra and Caṇḍāla. The same charter separately instructs resident cultivators to render the assigned revenues to the beneficiary. This produces a layered documentary picture: political office, service, local standing, cultivation and ranked social categories overlap without becoming identical. The plate is particularly valuable for Mithila because the granted village lay in Tīrabhukti. It demonstrates a classificatory language operating within the region, while leaving open how rigidly its categories structured everyday marriage and occupation.

29.6 From Brahman to Caṇḍāla: what the formula does and does not prove

The phraseology stretching from Brahmins toward groups placed at the lower end of the social scale communicates comprehensiveness and hierarchy. It tells the reader that the order binds the whole inhabited community, not only elites. It also reflects a Brahmanical vocabulary in which some groups carried stigma. But a rhetorical range is not a population table. The formula does not tell us what proportion of a village belonged to any category, whether all named groups lived in every granted settlement, or how local people described themselves. Nor does it establish a single occupational definition for Meda, Andhra or Caṇḍāla. The secure inference is narrower and more important: royal documentary practice recognised a graded social field and expected that field to be administratively intelligible. The historian must resist turning that recognition into a finished caste diagram.

29.7 Mahattara and kuṭumbin: status without automatic caste identity

Mahattara and kuṭumbin are among the most useful labels for reconstructing rural differentiation because they point toward social standing without fitting neatly into a varṇa chart. Mahattaras appear as locally important or senior persons; kuṭumbins are substantial householders in many eastern Indian inscriptions. Their authority could derive from land, household resources, participation in boundary knowledge, or local mediation. These positions could become socially reproducible, yet the terms are not equivalent to modern caste names. Their presence reminds us that hierarchy was generated not only by ritual classification but also by agrarian resources and local influence. A family controlling land, cattle, labour and

information could exercise power whether or not a surviving text gives it a fixed jāti label. Social formation therefore involved the interaction of economic position and classificatory language, not the simple application of a pre-existing fourfold schema.

29.8 Cultivator is an economic relation before it is a caste label

The Bhagalpur plate's resident kṣetrakaras matter because they were responsible for producing the revenues transferred by the grant. The word identifies cultivators more securely than it identifies a closed hereditary community. Cultivation rights could coexist with differences in tenancy, household scale, labour dependence and status. Some cultivators may have been substantial householders; others may have worked land under more dependent conditions. Over time, repeated agrarian roles could contribute to inherited social identities, but the charter itself does not prove that all cultivators belonged to one bounded caste. This distinction is essential in a region where later agrarian communities developed strong caste identities. Historical method requires starting from the relation documented in the ninth-century charter and tracing later consolidation forward, rather than using a modern agricultural caste list to interpret an earlier kṣetrakara automatically.

29.9 Offices, professions and social heredity

Administrative titles could become associated with families because literacy, court access and technical knowledge were often transmitted through households and patronage networks. Yet an office is not automatically a caste. The Pāla rosters distinguish ministers, military commanders, record-keepers, revenue and police staff, frontier officials, messengers and transport supervisors. Some of these roles may have drawn repeatedly from particular families or social networks. Others could have been appointments dependent on royal favour. The evidence is strongest when a title recurs across generations in identifiable kin groups; it is weaker when only the occupational designation survives. This is especially important for later identities connected with scribal service. The route from professional literacy to a hereditary corporate community is historically plausible, but its timing must be demonstrated. Early medieval charters reveal a specialised service world; they do not by themselves yield a complete genealogy of later service castes.

29.10 Figure 112: why a caste history needs multiple archives

Figure 112 summarises the chapter's method. A charter can show that a category mattered in an administrative transaction; a normative text can show that learned authors ranked or theorised it; archaeology can show the material inequalities within which people lived; a later genealogy can show that a corporate identity became important at a later date. The strongest historical argument arises where these streams overlap without being collapsed. If a later genealogy supplies a lineage name that never appears in earlier inscriptions, the absence matters. If a charter names a group but later records reorganise it under another label, the change matters. Caste history is therefore not the recovery of an ancient master list. It is the history of how different institutions repeatedly named, ranked, reproduced and contested social boundaries.

Social classification: distinct evidence streams

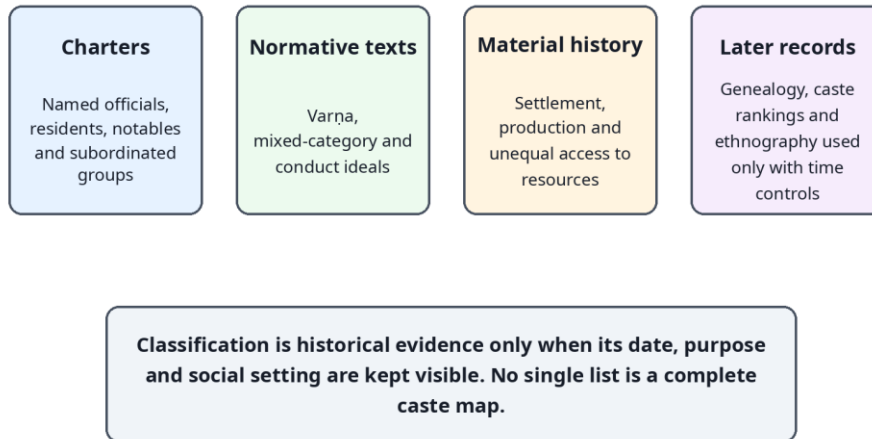


Figure 112 — Social classification: distinct evidence streams

29.11 Agrarian expansion created new contexts for ranking

Chapter 26 showed that land grants altered rights over revenue, resources and settlement. These changes also affected social classification. When new or reorganised agrarian zones were granted to religious beneficiaries, the state had to identify local authorities, cultivators and people liable to obey the transfer. Brahman settlement networks could introduce or strengthen Sanskrit status vocabularies, while local household hierarchies continued to shape actual production. This interaction could generate new forms of ranking. A community that controlled land or mediation might gain recognition; another linked to stigmatised labour could be placed lower in normative schemes. Yet agrarian expansion was not a uniform programme of caste creation. The balance among migrant beneficiaries, established residents, local elites and dependent workers differed by place. Social classification should therefore be read as one dimension of agrarian reorganisation rather than as a separate religious superstructure imposed unchanged on every village.

29.12 Brahman settlement networks and the construction of authority

Ryosuke Furui's work on early medieval Bengal emphasises that Brahman authority itself had a history. Brahmans established networks through migration, land grants, ritual expertise and ties to kingship; their clearer corporate identity was produced through these processes rather than simply present outside history. The same caution is useful for Mithila and Aṅga. Grants to Brahman or religious beneficiaries could create durable centres of learning, ritual and property management. Such centres helped circulate genealogical, gotra and normative vocabularies. But the regional record must decide when particular corporate forms became important. A ninth-century charter identifying Brahmans does not automatically prove the full institutional structure of later Maithil Brahman communities. The historical question is how authority became local, reproducible and connected with land, marriage and political patronage over successive centuries.

29.13 Political service could generate rank as well as income

Service to court and administration offered more than wages or perquisites. It created proximity to rulers, access to records, mobility and opportunities for landholding. Titles such as *rājanaka*, *amātya*, *mahāsāmanta*

or record-office positions expressed different levels of political incorporation. Families able to reproduce such service might convert office into social prestige. At the same time, service categories such as *cāṭa*, *bhaṭa* and *sevaka* could denote much more dependent relationships. The state therefore produced its own hierarchy, intersecting with ritual ranking but not reducible to it. A person of high political office could derive status from command and patronage; a Brahman beneficiary could derive status from ritual and textual authority; a substantial householder could derive it from land and local influence. Early medieval social order was formed where these sources of rank met, reinforced one another or came into tension.

29.14 Religious institutions were also social institutions

Buddhist monasteries, Śaiva establishments, temples and Brahmanical centres organised patronage, labour and access to resources. Their inscriptions classified donors, teachers, beneficiaries and service relationships in institution-specific ways. The Bhagalpur charter, for example, supports a Śaiva establishment while being issued by a Pāla ruler within a wider Buddhist political tradition. This plural institutional world complicates any notion that one religious ideology mechanically produced all social categories. Religious institutions could reinforce hierarchy through rules of eligibility and purity, but they could also create alternative networks based on monastic rank, initiation, donation or learned authority. Social classification was therefore plural. A person could simultaneously occupy a household position, occupational role, ritual category and institutional identity. Later caste boundaries sometimes gathered these dimensions together, but the earlier record often preserves them separately.

29.15 Ethnonyms and origin labels in the charter world

Pāla charters include names such as Gauḍa, Mālava, Khaśa, Hūṇa, Kaṇṇāṭa and Lāṭa among military or service personnel. These labels remind us that royal establishments were mobile and multi-regional. They should not be forced into a caste taxonomy. Some refer most naturally to geographic or ethnic origin; some may have become occupationally stereotyped in particular contexts; some could acquire new social meanings after migration. The key point is that early medieval classification included origin and political service alongside ritual status. A person's social identity could be shaped by where a group was thought to come from as well as by what it did locally. This mobility challenges models in which every community is imagined as immobile within a fixed village hierarchy. Migration was itself one of the forces through which new identities could be formed and later naturalised.

29.16 Meda, Andhra and Caṇḍāla: naming the social margins

Groups placed at the lower end of charter address formulas deserve attention because elite historiography has often rendered them invisible. Their inclusion shows that subordinated communities were part of the productive and governed landscape. Yet the labels are difficult to interpret. Andhra may function as an origin term in some contexts; Meda has different associations across texts; Caṇḍāla carries strong stigma in Brahmanical normative traditions. The charter does not provide occupational biographies. It tells us instead how the issuing authority represented the social range of its subjects. The historian should therefore recover two facts at once: real inequality and uncertain local semantics. Stigma in elite language is evidence of hierarchy, but it cannot substitute for the voices, livelihoods or self-identifications of the people named. Classification from above must be read as power, not simply description.

29.17 Untouchability requires evidence, not retrospective assumption

Brahmanical texts developed increasingly elaborate rules concerning purity, contact and groups regarded as impure. These traditions are indispensable for the history of exclusion, but a textual rule is not proof that every locality enforced the same boundary in the same way. Early medieval inscriptions can demonstrate subordinated social placement; they rarely describe the daily mechanics of avoidance, residential segregation, access to water or commensality in enough detail to reconstruct a uniform regime. Archaeology also seldom identifies caste directly. The safest conclusion is that graded notions of purity and stigma were historically powerful and that some named groups were placed at severe social disadvantage, while the exact practices of exclusion must be documented where possible. This avoids the opposite errors of denying hierarchy because evidence is incomplete and projecting a fully documented nineteenth-century untouchability regime unchanged into the ninth century.

29.18 Household reproduction made inequality durable

Classifications become socially powerful when they are reproduced through households. Land, skills, ritual knowledge, debt, patronage and social reputation can all pass between generations. Marriage links households into wider networks and can either reinforce or cross social boundaries. Early medieval charters rarely record these processes directly for ordinary residents, but the logic of household property is visible in agrarian society, while genealogical claims become increasingly important in later periods. The central point is not that every category was already endogamous. It is that household reproduction supplied a mechanism through which unequal positions could become durable. A locally powerful kuṭumbin family could transmit resources; a craft household could transmit skill; a Brahman lineage could transmit textual and ritual capital; a dependent household could inherit vulnerability. Jāti formation is best understood against this broader history of social reproduction.

29.19 Gender is part of classification even when women are unnamed

Social ranking was reproduced through marriage, inheritance, labour and ritual eligibility, all of which were gendered. Yet royal charters overwhelmingly name male office-holders and beneficiaries, making women less visible than their social importance warrants. Normative texts discuss women extensively but often from the standpoint of male household authority. The historian must therefore distinguish documented rules from actual practice. Marriage restrictions are especially important because later caste systems made endogamy central, but the date at which specific regional marriage circles hardened must be demonstrated. Women's property rights, widowhood, dowry-like transfers and household labour also varied by legal and social context. Chapter 32 examines women, marriage and property directly. Here the methodological point is narrower: any history of caste formation that ignores the gendered reproduction of households misses one of the principal mechanisms through which social boundaries became durable.

29.20 Figure 113: the charter field is not a pyramid

Figure 113 deliberately avoids drawing a caste pyramid. The Munger and Bhagalpur formulas bring together royal service, local standing and a ranked social range in the same administrative act. These domains overlap, but the charter does not tell us that every official occupied a fixed ritual rank above every cultivator, or that each named group formed a closed endogamous unit. A pyramid would therefore create more certainty than the source permits. The diagram instead represents multiple fields of classification whose members were all required to recognise the grant. This is historically significant because it shows that

hierarchy had several institutional bases. A person's position in political service, rural property, ritual status and local community could interact without being reducible to one universal scale.

A Pāla charter addresses a social field—not a census

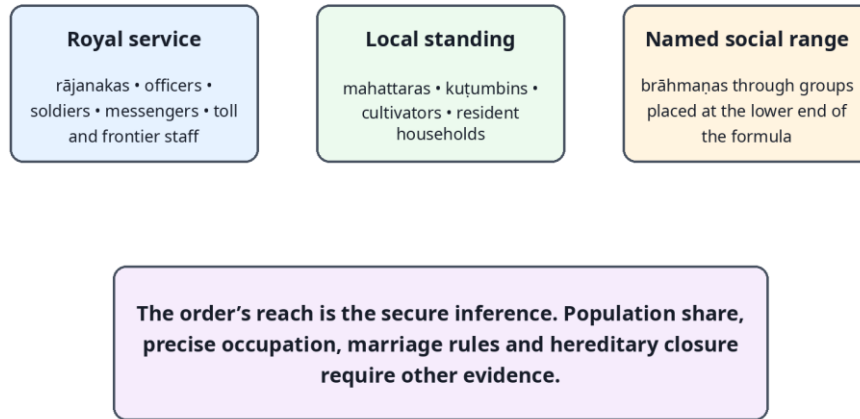


Figure 113 — A Pāla charter addresses a social field, not a census

29.21 Markets and towns complicated village classification

Chapter 27 showed that villages, markets, ferries, towns and institutions formed connected networks. Mobility through those networks could loosen as well as reinforce social boundaries. Merchants dealt across settlements; transport workers crossed jurisdictions; artisans served patrons beyond one village; officials moved with courts and camps; students and monks travelled among religious centres. Such mobility created opportunities for new associations based on profession, patronage and commercial interest. It also created situations in which outsiders had to be classified. Market society therefore did not abolish hierarchy; it produced additional contexts in which social reputation and group identity mattered. The relation between caste and commerce was dynamic. Some occupational communities could become more corporate through repeated exchange networks, while individual mobility could challenge a purely local hierarchy. Early medieval social formation must accommodate both tendencies.

29.22 Mudgagiri and Aṅga: a politically cosmopolitan social setting

Mudgagiri's repeated role as a Pāla jayaskandhāvāra and the large administrative rosters issued from it make the Aṅga–Munger zone especially important for the study of classification. Court, army, transport and documentation brought together people of different geographic origins and service positions. The Munger plate's list of Gauḍa, Mālava, Khaśa, Hūṇa, Kulika, Karṇāṭa and Lāṭa personnel is evidence for this cosmopolitan political environment, regardless of the precise status of each label. Such a setting could generate new dependencies and reputations. It also demonstrates why later caste geography cannot be imagined as a collection of isolated villages. State centres connected local society to wider circuits of recruitment and migration. Aṅga's social history therefore includes both rooted agrarian communities and mobile political-service populations, whose classifications operated on different principles.

29.23 Mithila and the problem of uneven evidence

Tīrabhukti appears in the Bhagalpur charter, giving a direct regional anchor for the ninth century, but the surviving social documentation for Mithila is not as continuous as historians might wish. Later medieval records are much richer for Brahman genealogies, court culture and marriage regulation. The temptation is to bridge the documentary gap by treating later institutions as survivals from remote antiquity. This chapter rejects that method. Where a ninth-century charter names a category, it may be used for the ninth century. Where a fourteenth-century or nineteenth-century source describes a ranked community, it must first be used for its own period. Continuity can then be argued only if intermediate evidence supports it. This chronological discipline is especially important in Mithila, where powerful later traditions of genealogy can easily create the illusion that every later social distinction was already fully formed under the Pālas.

29.24 Regional identity and caste identity are different things

Labels such as Maithila, Gauḍa or Kaṇṇāṭa can refer to regions, cultural affiliations, scholarly identities or political origins, depending on context. A regional adjective may later become attached to a caste community, but the two categories should not be conflated from the start. Migration can convert regional origin into a durable social marker, especially when newcomers reproduce marriage networks and institutions. Conversely, people of different social ranks can share the same regional identity. The emergence of a specifically Maithil Brahman identity in later medieval evidence is therefore a historical development involving territory, genealogy and authority, not proof that every Brahman in ancient Videha belonged to the later corporate community. The same rule applies elsewhere: geography can contribute to social identity, but regional belonging does not by itself establish caste boundaries.

29.25 Brahmanisation and Sanskritisation are processes, not a one-way map

Historians often use terms such as Brahmanisation or Sanskritisation to describe the spread of Brahmanical institutions, practices and status vocabularies. These concepts are useful only if they preserve negotiation. Local rulers sought ritual legitimisation; Brahmins depended on patronage and agrarian support; communities could adopt, reinterpret or resist ranked categories; religious traditions competed and overlapped. Classification therefore emerged through interaction rather than one-sided cultural replacement. A local group might seek higher status by changing ritual practice or genealogy, while elites could redefine local identities within textual schemes. Such processes also produced exclusions. The result was neither total fluidity nor a single unchanged code. It was a historically changing field in which social actors used available languages of rank to secure resources, honour and marriage alliances.

29.26 Mobility, claim-making and the negotiation of rank

Hereditary classification does not eliminate social mobility; it changes the forms through which mobility is pursued. Families can seek new titles, land, patronage, ritual recognition or genealogical narratives. Political upheaval can elevate military or administrative groups; migration can detach a community from an older rank; wealth can support new claims; defeat or dependency can lower status. Early medieval inscriptions preserve some of these processes indirectly through the appearance of new local magnates, subordinate rulers and beneficiaries. Later genealogies often naturalise the achieved position by projecting it backward. A historical approach therefore reads status claims critically. The question is not whether a community's tradition is "true" or "false" in a simple sense, but when a claim appears, what institutions recognised it, and what social interests it served. Rank was real precisely because it had to be repeatedly reproduced and acknowledged.

From social role to more bounded identity: possible pathways

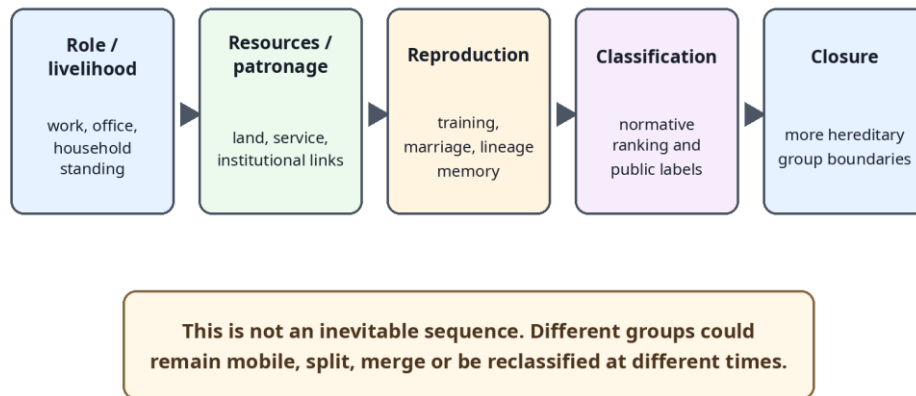


Figure 114 — From social role to more bounded identity: possible pathways

29.27 Dharmashāstra ideal and inscriptional practice

Dharmashāstra literature provides an elaborate language of varṇa, mixed descent, occupation, inheritance and purity. It shaped elite ideas and legal reasoning, but inscriptions show a social world with categories that do not fit neatly into four boxes. The Pāla charters are crowded with offices, household ranks, service groups and regional names. This discrepancy is not evidence that normative texts were irrelevant; rather, it shows that norms worked on a complex social field. Learned authors could reinterpret occupational or regional groups within varṇa-based schemes, while political documents continued to use categories required by administration. The history of caste formation lies partly in the growing effort to connect these two worlds: to systematise diverse social groups through Brahmanical classification while those groups retained distinct economic and regional histories.

29.28 Why later caste lists cannot be projected backward

Late precolonial and colonial observers often present social groups as if each possessed an ancient, bounded and universally recognised place. Such lists are valuable evidence for the period in which they were compiled, but they are not keys that decode every earlier inscription. A modern caste name may descend from an older occupational term, absorb several earlier groups, split from a broader community, or acquire a new ranked meaning. Figure 115 therefore applies a time-depth filter. Contemporary inscriptions receive the greatest weight for their period; near-contemporary normative texts require genre analysis; later genealogies are evidence for later corporate formation; colonial surveys are late snapshots. Backward projection erases change, which is precisely the phenomenon the historian is trying to explain.

Time-depth filter for using social labels

Contemporary inscription	Highest control	What did this administration actually name?
Near-contemporary text	Context required	Ideal, polemic, narrative or social observation?
Later genealogy / ritual record	Retrospective evidence	Useful for later formation; not automatic proof of earlier existence
Colonial / modern caste account	Late snapshot	Do not project its categories unchanged into the medieval past

Figure 115 — Time-depth filter for using social labels

29.29 A specific Mithila caution: do not medievalise later Brahman sub-castes

Mithila's later Brahman genealogical system is unusually rich, but its richness makes chronological caution more necessary, not less. Later ranked labels within Maithil Brahman society must not be inserted into the Pāla or early medieval record unless contemporary evidence supports them. In particular, this volume does not treat Śrottriya as a fixed Maithil Brahman sub-caste in the medieval period. The project's Panji-based chronology places the emergence of Śrottriya as a distinct sub-caste around 1800 CE; earlier uses of śrottriya in Sanskrit can denote Vedic learning or qualification and are not the same corporate category. Chapter 30 examines Brahmanical institutions without retrospective caste projection, and Chapter 31 treats the Panji tradition directly. The present chapter therefore establishes the governing rule: later internal rankings belong first to the period in which they are actually evidenced.

29.30 Conclusion: classification was made, reproduced and revised

The strongest evidence from Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga does not support either a timeless caste order or a society without hierarchy. Pāla charters reveal graded social language, powerful Brahmans, local notables, cultivators, specialised service populations, mobile origin groups and communities placed at the social margins. Agrarian expansion, political office, institutional patronage, household reproduction and normative classification could make some identities more hereditary and more bounded over time. Yet the process was uneven, and later genealogies reorganised earlier social memories. Social classification must therefore be written as history: categories were made visible by institutions, reproduced through resources and marriage, contested by mobility and claim-making, and repeatedly reinterpreted. Chapter 30 now turns specifically to Brahmanical institutions, applying this same chronological discipline so that later Maithil caste structures are not projected backward into periods that did not yet possess them.

Table 29.1 — Evidence for social classification and limits of inference

Evidence	Category / content	Historical use	Limit of inference
----------	--------------------	----------------	--------------------

Evidence	Category / content	Historical use	Limit of inference
Munger plate of Devapāla	Officials; Brahmins; mahattaras; kuṭumbins; Meda, Andhraka and Caṇḍāla range	Administrative recognition of differentiated and ranked society	Not a census or complete map of marriage and occupation
Bhagalpur plate of Nārāyaṇapāla	Royal personnel, service groups, residents and cultivators in Tirabhukti	Direct Mithila-region evidence for layered classification	Formulaic address does not prove fixed hereditary closure
Mahattara / kuṭumbin	Local seniority and substantial household standing	Rural hierarchy outside a simple four-varṇa chart	Should not be translated as modern caste names
Kṣetrakara	Resident cultivator liable to deliver assigned revenue	Agrarian role and fiscal relationship	Occupation does not automatically equal caste
Origin / military labels	Gauḍa, Mālava, Khaśa, Hūṇa, Karṇāṭa, Lāṭa and others	Mobility and multi-regional recruitment	Geographic or service labels are not inherently jātis
Dharmashāstra and Purāṇic classification	Varṇa, purity and mixed-category models	Normative language influencing social ranking	Prescription and polemic are not demographic description
Early medieval eastern Indian comparison	Increasing organisation of landholding and occupational groups	Model for gradual systematisation toward jāti	Must be tested against Mithila–Anga evidence rather than imported wholesale
Later Maithil genealogy and caste accounts	Corporate identities, marriage regulation and ranked internal categories	Essential evidence for later formation	Cannot be projected backward without intermediate evidence

Chapter 30 — Brahmanical Institutions without Retrospective Caste Projection

This chapter reconstructs Brahmanical institutions in medieval Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga through land grants, learned credentials, ritual and juristic expertise, household transmission, migration and patronage. Its governing method is chronological: early-medieval Brahman identities are described in the categories actually attested in their sources, while the later corporate organisation of Maithil Brahmins is reserved for the evidence that documents it. In particular, the Sanskrit qualification śrōtriya is not treated as proof of the later Mithila Śrōtriya sub-caste.

30.1 Institution before caste category

Brahmanical power in medieval Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga cannot be reconstructed by taking a later caste list and moving it backward in time. The early and early-medieval evidence shows institutions: learned households, ritual specialists, teachers, juristic authorities, land grantees, advisers and networks of patronage. These institutions could generate durable status and reproduce privilege across generations, but their documentary form is not identical to the later corporate organisation of Maithil Brahmins. The first task is therefore to identify what an inscription or text actually makes visible. A grant may identify a beneficiary by gotra, pravara, Vedic affiliation and learning; a legal text may define an ideal qualification; a later genealogy may regulate marriage. Each belongs to a different institutional layer. This chapter reconstructs those layers without assuming that they had already fused into the later caste structure.

30.2 What counts as a Brahmanical institution

Institution is used here in a broad but concrete sense: a durable arrangement that organises knowledge, ritual, property, authority or social reproduction. A Brahmanical institution may therefore be a household maintaining a textual tradition, a grant supporting a learned beneficiary, a court using Brahman advisers, a ritual relationship between patron and officiant, or a network that connects teachers and pupils across regions. Temples and endowed settlements could also create institutional roles, but they should not be assumed wherever a Brahman is named. The advantage of this approach is that it shifts attention away from abstract status alone. Prestige became historically effective when it was attached to resources, recognised expertise, students, patrons, land, legal competence or ritual demand. These arrangements can be studied directly even where later sub-caste boundaries are absent from the record.

30.3 Four evidence streams and a chronology firewall

Figure 116 separates charters, learned texts, settlement history and later genealogy. Contemporary charters are the strongest evidence for named beneficiaries, rights and administrative recognition. Learned texts reveal the categories through which ritual and legal authority were theorised, but they do not by themselves prove local implementation. Settlement evidence helps reconstruct the material basis of learned households and religious institutions. Later genealogies are indispensable for later Maithil Brahman organisation, yet they must first be read for the period in which their regulatory machinery can be demonstrated. The governing rule is simple: no later label is allowed to migrate backward unless intermediate evidence supports continuity. This chronological firewall is especially important in Mithila because the later genealogical record is so rich that it can create the illusion of timelessness.

Brahmanical institutions: evidence before caste projection

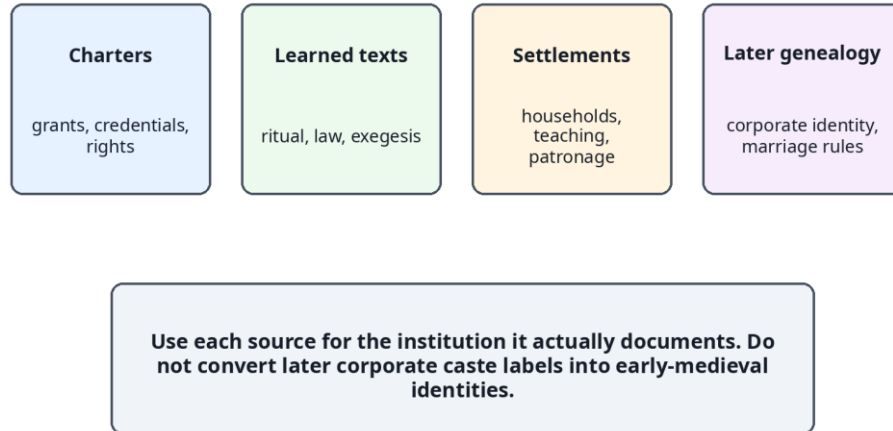


Figure 116 — Brahmanical institutions: evidence before caste projection

30.4 Land grants as institutional documents

Copper-plate grants were not merely transfers of soil. They were instruments that redirected revenue, defined boundaries, publicised authority and established the standing of beneficiaries. When a Brahman received a village or a share of land, the document commonly identified him through learned and genealogical credentials. The grant thus connected royal or elite patronage to a household capable of claiming recognised ritual or scholarly status. Such documents also affected cultivators and local officials because fiscal obligations might be reassigned. Their institutional significance lies in this bundle: property, documentary recognition, social authority and a durable relationship to place. Yet a grant to one Brahman does not prove that every Brahman was a landholder, nor does a cluster of grants demonstrate that an entire region was socially controlled by one homogeneous Brahman corporate body.

30.5 Gotra and pravara as credentials, not later sub-castes

Gotra and pravara are recurring elements in Brahman genealogical and ritual self-description. In inscriptions they can establish lineage eligibility and make a beneficiary legible within a learned Brahmanical framework. Their presence is historically important because it shows that descent and ritual ancestry mattered to recognition. But gotra and pravara should not be converted into later sub-caste categories. Multiple later communities could contain persons of the same gotra, while marriage rules and corporate rankings developed through additional institutions. The epigraphic formula therefore documents one kind of genealogical credential, not the complete social architecture of a later caste. The distinction matters for Mithila, where later Panji records would make genealogy central to marriage regulation. Early-medieval lineage description and later genealogical administration are connected problems, but they are not the same institution.

30.6 Vedic affiliation and textual specialisation

Early-medieval charters often identify Brahman beneficiaries by Vedic school or textual affiliation. Such description points toward institutionalised learning: a person was not merely called Brahman but was located within a tradition of recitation, study and ritual competence. The Nandapur transaction discussed in

Chapter 26, for example, associates a proposed donation with a Sāmavedic Brahman and the performance of the five great sacrifices. The Bangaon record from north Bihar similarly preserves detailed learned credentials for its grantee. These references show that Vedic affiliation could be socially valuable and materially supported. They do not, however, prove the existence of a single territorially bounded Vedic corporation. Textual affiliations could travel with scholars, and learned mobility was one mechanism by which Brahmanical institutions expanded across eastern India.

30.7 Śrottriya: qualification is not the later Mithila sub-caste

The Sanskrit term śrottriya has a long history in normative and legal literature, commonly referring to a Brahman distinguished by Vedic learning or recognised qualification. That semantic history must be separated from the later Maithil Brahman sub-caste called Śrottriya. In this volume the two are never treated as interchangeable. A medieval text praising a śrottriya does not by itself attest the later corporate sub-caste. The project's Panji-based chronology places the emergence of Śrottriya as a distinct Maithil Brahman sub-caste around 1800 CE. Figure 119 makes this chronological firewall explicit. Earlier evidence may illuminate the prestige of Vedic learning; it cannot be used as proof that the later ranked sub-caste already existed. This distinction is fundamental to avoiding retrospective caste projection.

30.8 Devapāla's Munger grant: patronage from an Aṅga-region court

Devapāla's Munger plate, issued from Mudgagiri in regnal year 33, provides a strong Aṅga-region anchor for Brahmanical patronage. As discussed earlier, it records the grant of the village Meśikā in Kṛmilā-ṣaya to a Brahman beneficiary. The important historical point is not simply that a king gave land to a Brahman. The charter embeds the act in a dense administrative world of officials, residents, boundaries, revenue and royal command. Brahmanical privilege therefore operated through state documentation and agrarian institutions. Mudgagiri's position as a Pāla political centre also reminds us that the place of issue, the location of the donated property and the beneficiary's own networks could differ. Brahmanical institutions were connected through royal mobility and documentary circuits, not confined to one village or one modern region.

30.9 The Bangaon grantee: learning made visible

The Bangaon copper plate of Vigrahapāla III is especially valuable because its beneficiary, Ghaṇṭukaśarman, is described through gotra, pravara, Vedic affiliation and accomplishments in Mīmāṃsā, grammar and reasoning. These details are not ornamental. They explain why the recipient could be presented as a worthy beneficiary and show that intellectual reputation had material consequences. The charter also associates his family with migration from Kolāṅca and residence at Iṭṭāhaka, linking learning with mobility. A grant could therefore consolidate a learned household in a new locality while preserving a memory of origin. This is an institutional history of scholarship, patronage and settlement. It is not yet the later Panji system, and it does not justify assigning Ghaṇṭukaśarman to a later Maithil Brahman sub-caste.

How an early-medieval Brahman grantee was credentialed

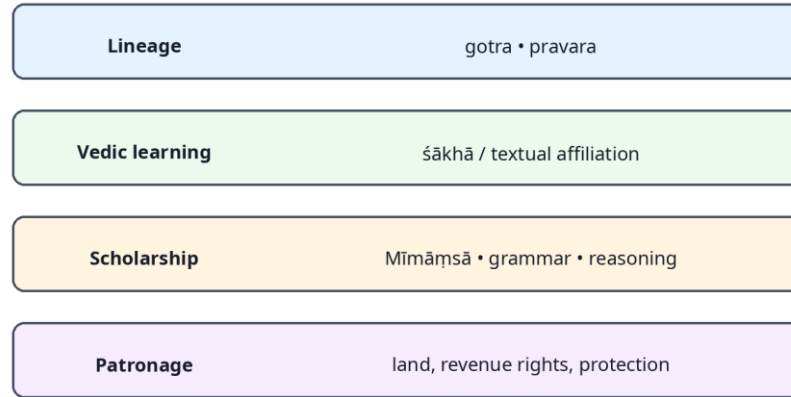


Figure 117 — How an early-medieval Brahman grantee was credentialed

30.10 Mīmāṃsā, grammar and reasoning as social capital

The learned disciplines named in early-medieval records illuminate how Brahmanical authority could be reproduced. Mīmāṃsā trained specialists in the interpretation of Vedic injunction and ritual obligation. Grammar disciplined textual competence and linguistic analysis. Reasoning supplied techniques for argument, classification and adjudication. These were not merely abstract intellectual accomplishments: they could support teaching, ritual expertise, debate, legal interpretation and courtly service. The Bargaon record is therefore significant because it makes a cluster of scholarly qualifications visible within a land-grant context. Yet the institutional implications must be stated carefully. One learned grantee does not prove a formal college at the site. The secure inference is a recognised scholarly profile embedded in networks of patronage and household reproduction.

30.11 The Bhagalpur plate: Brahmins inside a wider social order

Nārāyaṇapāla's Bhagalpur plate is useful for a different reason. Its long notification formula addresses an administratively differentiated population that includes Brahmins but also officers, local notables, cultivators, service groups and communities placed low in elite social ranking. Brahmins therefore appear within a wider governed landscape rather than outside it. Their privilege must be analysed in relation to other social positions and to the fiscal consequences of the grant. This prevents an elite-source bias from turning Brahmanical history into the whole of social history. The same charter that recognises learned or ritual prestige also demonstrates that rural life depended on cultivators, transport, policing, service and subordinated labour. Brahmanical institutions were powerful because they were embedded in these wider social and economic relations.

30.12 Bagaha and the plurality of patrons

The Bagaha charters of Saurāditya show that Brahmanical patronage in the wider Tirabhukti sphere was not monopolised by the Pāla court. A local ruling house could issue grants to Brahmin beneficiaries and participate in the same documentary culture of merit, authority and landed endowment. This matters because institutional expansion was polycentric. Kings, subordinate rulers, ministers and local magnates

could all become patrons. The resulting network was therefore not a single centrally administered Brahmanical organisation. It was a field of relationships in which donors sought legitimacy or merit and learned households gained resources and territorial anchorage. Such plurality also helps explain variation: different localities could support different lineages, textual affiliations and ritual specialists without belonging to a single uniform corporate caste system.

30.13 Śāsana, agrahāra and the problem of settlement labels

Terms such as śāsana and agrahāra are often used for endowed settlements or privileged holdings associated with Brahman beneficiaries, but their meanings vary across inscriptions and regions. Historians should therefore avoid treating every Brahman grant as proof of an identical settlement form. What can be reconstructed more securely are specific rights: fiscal exemptions, revenue assignment, boundary recognition, policing privileges, pasture, water, trees or uncultivated land. These rights could strengthen a learned household and reshape its relation to cultivators and local officials. A settlement might become a node of teaching and ritual, but the institutional content must be demonstrated rather than assumed from the label alone. This source discipline prevents a useful technical term from becoming an all-purpose explanation for Brahmanisation.

30.14 Teaching without inventing a university

Brahmanical learning was reproduced through teachers, pupils, households and itinerant scholars. The evidence rarely allows the historian to map these relations as a modern school system. A grantee described as learned in several disciplines may have taught; a respected household may have attracted pupils; court centres may have concentrated intellectual exchange. But unless a source explicitly identifies a teaching establishment, the safest language is network, household, circle or lineage of learning rather than university. The regional history developed in Chapters 17 and 27 already showed that intellectual life could be highly organised without taking the form of a single campus institution. Brahmanical scholarship should be reconstructed with the same restraint. Its durability lay in repeated transmission, not necessarily monumental educational architecture.

30.15 Ritual service and the political economy of merit

Brahmanical institutions drew resources partly because ritual service converted wealth into religious merit and political legitimacy. Donors could support Vedic rites, daily obligations, commemorative acts or learned beneficiaries whose status made the gift meritorious. The economic history is therefore inseparable from a ritual economy: land and revenue could sustain persons whose expertise was represented as spiritually and socially valuable. This relationship was reciprocal but unequal. Patrons gained legitimation; beneficiaries gained resources and recognition; cultivators might experience a redirection of dues without sharing equally in the resulting prestige. The system should not be romanticised as pure patronage. It was a mechanism by which symbolic authority and material resources reinforced one another.

30.16 Dharmaśāstra and juristic expertise

Brahmanical legal literature provided vocabularies for property, inheritance, ritual status, penance, marriage and royal duty. Its historical force depended on specialists who interpreted and applied these traditions in particular settings. A text such as the Yājñiavalkya Smṛti became especially important in later legal commentary, but the existence of a textual tradition does not mean that every rule governed every village exactly as written. Juristic expertise is best treated as an institutional resource: learned specialists could advise

rulers, resolve disputes, interpret donations or frame social claims. The social history of law therefore requires both texts and evidence of use. This distinction becomes crucial for Mithila, where later scholastic traditions would acquire enormous prestige. Their later density must not be projected unchanged into the Pāla centuries.

30.17 Court and Brahman: alliance without identity

Brahmanical institutions often depended on courts, yet Brahmins and rulers occupied distinct roles. Royal charters praise kings as protectors of dharma and donors to learned beneficiaries, while Brahman specialists could furnish ritual sanction, textual knowledge or legal expertise. This relationship should not be reduced to a simple theory of priests controlling kings, nor to rulers mechanically using religion. Patronage was negotiated. Kings distributed resources but required networks capable of giving those acts moral and cultural meaning. Learned beneficiaries depended on political power for documentary protection yet could possess forms of authority not reducible to office. The tension between royal and Brahman authority remained productive precisely because the two were related but not identical institutions.

30.18 Landed privilege and its limits

Land grants demonstrate that some Brahman beneficiaries acquired substantial rights, but they do not prove equal wealth among all Brahmins. A learned grantee with revenue claims and a village share occupied a very different material position from a landless ritual specialist or itinerant student. Even within endowed households, resources could fragment across generations. Brahmanical history therefore requires attention to class as well as ritual rank. The documentary visibility of wealthy beneficiaries creates a strong survival bias: copper plates preserve successful grants more readily than the lives of ordinary or unsuccessful specialists. Recognising this bias prevents the category Brahman from becoming a false economic unit. Ritual prestige could coexist with varied material circumstances.

Land, learning and authority: an institutional cycle

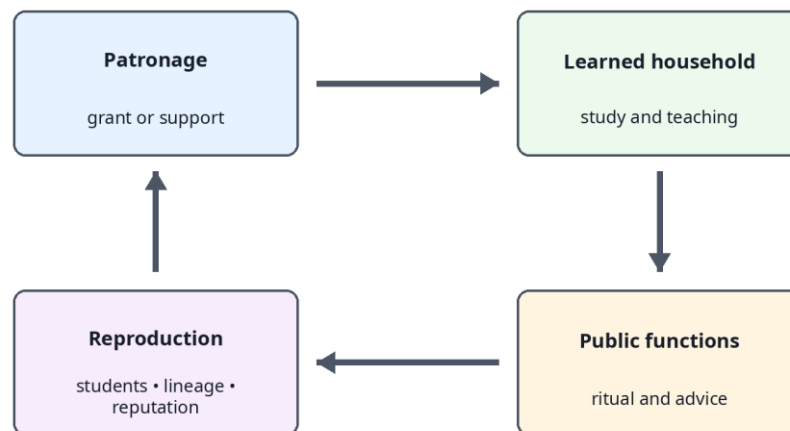


Figure 118 — Land, learning and authority: an institutional cycle

30.19 Migration and the formation of learned networks

The origin clauses of some charters show that learned households could move across regions. The Bangaon grantee's remembered association with Kolāñca is one example of how migration could be built

into Brahman self-representation. Such movement helps explain the spread of textual traditions without requiring a single expansion from one centre. Scholars could travel to courts, settle on granted land, marry within suitable networks, attract pupils and preserve memories of origin. Over generations, migration could become territorial identity. This process is important for the later emergence of specifically Maithil Brahman corporate identity, but the two stages should not be collapsed. A mobile learned household in the eleventh century is not automatically evidence for the later bounded community regulated by Panji genealogy.

30.20 Regional identity and the later category Maithil Brahman

Maithila is an old regional name, but a regional adjective and a corporate caste identity are not the same historical object. Brahmins living in or connected with Mithila in an early period need not already have belonged to the later community defined through shared genealogy and marriage regulation. Anshuman Pandey's reconstruction emphasises the medieval formation of a specifically Maithil Brahman identity through territory, genealogy and authority, especially as Panji regulation became central. This later development should be treated as a transformation of institutions, not as proof that the same corporate body existed unchanged from ancient Videha. Regional residence, learned migration and court patronage provided ingredients; the later corporate identity required additional mechanisms of enumeration, genealogy and endogamy.

30.21 Temple institutions and source restraint

Brahmins could serve temples as ritual specialists, recipients of endowments, administrators or learned personnel, and temple economies became important in many parts of early medieval India. For Mithila and Aṅga, however, the density of surviving temple records varies sharply by place and period. The historian should therefore resist filling documentary gaps with models borrowed wholesale from better-documented regions. Where inscriptions, sculpture or architectural remains show a cultic centre, Brahmanical institutional roles may be investigated. Where such evidence is absent, it is safer to speak of possible rather than demonstrated temple organisation. This caution does not minimise religious life; it protects regional specificity and prevents southern or western Indian temple models from being imposed on eastern India without evidence.

30.22 Learned households as institutions of reproduction

The household was one of the most durable vehicles through which Brahmanical knowledge could be reproduced. Texts, ritual manuals, reputation, property and relationships with patrons could pass between generations. Sons are more visible in many elite genealogies, but the household economy also depended on women's labour, marriage alliances and property arrangements. The learned household therefore joined intellectual and domestic history. It could preserve a Vedic affiliation while adapting to new patrons and places. Yet household continuity should not be mistaken for automatic caste closure. Hereditary learning can exist before a later corporate marriage system is fully documented. The Panji tradition examined in Chapter 31 represents a more explicit institutionalisation of genealogical regulation.

30.23 Women, marriage and the invisible infrastructure of learned status

Epigraphic descriptions of Brahman grantees overwhelmingly foreground male beneficiaries, teachers and ancestors. This creates a documentary imbalance. Learned status nevertheless depended on households whose continuity required marriage, inheritance, domestic labour and the reproduction of ritual routines. Women could also appear as donors or members of elite religious networks in broader South Asian evidence,

though the regional record for this specific chapter is thinner. The methodological lesson is to distinguish absence from insignificance. Male-centred charters tell us who was legally foregrounded in a transaction; they do not provide a complete account of the social labour sustaining the beneficiary household. Chapter 32 examines women, marriage and property directly, using sources better suited to that question.

30.24 Interaction with Buddhist and Jain institutions

Brahmanical institutions did not develop in an empty religious landscape. Chapters 16, 20 and 21 showed that Buddhist and Jain communities also depended on patrons, teachers, property, itinerancy and rules for institutional reproduction. Competition and coexistence could occur within the same political region. A ruler might support different religious establishments; merchants and householders could patronise more than one tradition; scholars could debate rival systems. This plural institutional field is especially important in eastern India, where Pāla political history is closely associated with major Buddhist monasteries even while Brahman land grants continued. The coexistence of these forms warns against describing the region as moving through neatly separated religious ages.

30.25 Local negotiation beneath the royal charter

A royal grant could command, but implementation depended on local society. Boundaries had to be known, cultivators had to redirect dues, officials had to recognise exemptions and neighbouring communities had to accept the beneficiary's rights. Brahmanical privilege was therefore negotiated on the ground even when expressed in authoritative royal language. Conflict is often under-recorded because surviving charters preserve the successful legal form rather than every dispute. The institutional historian should read formulaic commands for the social work they imply. A grant required cooperation, enforcement and memory. Brahmanical institutions became durable not simply because kings issued copper plates, but because local relations reproduced the rights those plates claimed to establish.

30.26 Brahmanisation as negotiation, not replacement

The term Brahmanisation can describe the spread of Brahmanical ritual, textual authority and social categories, but it becomes misleading if imagined as the replacement of passive local cultures. Patrons selected specialists for political reasons; Brahmins adapted to regional cults and economies; local elites could seek new genealogies or ritual forms; competing religious institutions remained active. Institutional expansion was therefore negotiated. Land grants could create new centres of learned authority while existing communities continued their own practices. This negotiated model also explains diversity within Brahmanical life itself. Different households emphasised different textual affiliations, patrons and forms of service. The result was a changing field of institutions rather than a single programme imposed uniformly across Mithila, Vajji and Anga.

30.27 Hierarchy, exclusion and the costs of privilege

Brahmanical institutional history must include the inequalities that made privilege meaningful. Normative traditions ranked social groups; grants could redirect revenue to privileged beneficiaries; purity rules could stigmatise others; access to literacy and court patronage was uneven. The Bhagalpur and Munger notification formulas remind us that Brahmins existed alongside communities placed far lower in elite social language. Yet the exact local mechanics of exclusion cannot be reconstructed from formula alone. The responsible conclusion is double: Brahmanical institutions participated in real structures of hierarchy, but their effects varied by place and must be demonstrated through specific evidence. Avoiding retrospective

caste projection is not a way of softening inequality; it is a way of describing the historically correct form that inequality took.

30.28 From learned status to corporate regulation

Across the medieval period, several mechanisms could make Brahman identity more corporate: repeated grants to particular lineages, territorial settlement, hereditary learning, marriage networks, court recognition and genealogical memory. These processes help explain how a broadly Brahmanical learned status could become increasingly tied to specific regional communities. But the sequence was neither automatic nor complete at one date. Figure 118 therefore presents a cycle of patronage, learning, public function and reproduction rather than a deterministic ladder. The later Panji system added a qualitatively stronger mechanism by recording genealogy and regulating marriage. It is at that point that corporate identity becomes much more visible in Mithila's documentation.

30.29 The bridge to the Panji tradition

This chapter stops at the threshold of the Panji system because genealogy changes the evidentiary problem. Early charters identify beneficiaries through lineage and learning; later Panji records organise a much broader field of descent, village origin, marriage eligibility and internal ranking. Pandey's study reconstructs the emergence of corporate Maithil Brahman identity through this convergence of genealogy, territory and authority in the later medieval period. The next chapter will examine those records directly, including their manuscript history and chronological layers. The transition should not be described as the sudden invention of Brahman identity. Rather, older institutions of lineage, learning and patronage were reorganised within a new apparatus of genealogical regulation.

Chronology firewall: do not collapse different institutions

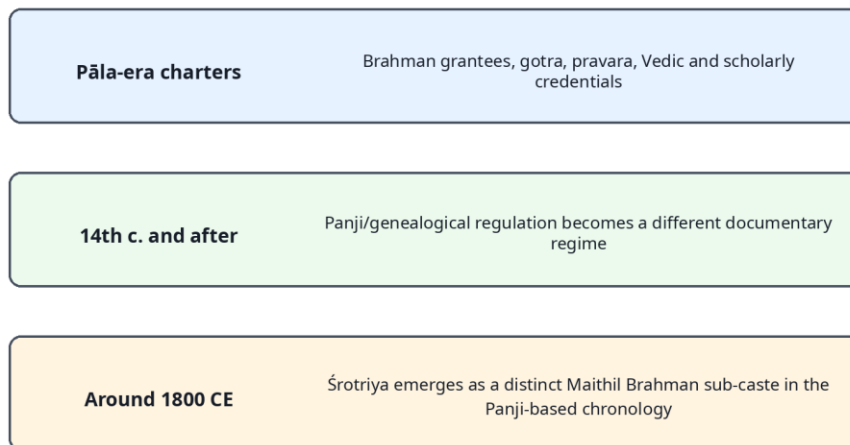


Figure 119 — Chronology firewall: do not collapse different institutions

30.30 Conclusion: institutions first, caste categories later

The Brahmanical history of Mithila, Vajji and Aṅga is best reconstructed through institutions before caste labels. Pāla and related charters document learned beneficiaries, gotra and pravara, Vedic affiliation, migration, land rights and relations with courts and cultivators. Learned texts illuminate ritual and juristic ideals. Households and patronage networks explain how knowledge and privilege could endure. None of this

requires the retroactive insertion of later Maithil Brahman sub-castes into the early-medieval record. The later Panji regime represents another historical stage, and the distinct Śrottriya sub-caste belongs later still in the Panji-based chronology, around 1800 CE. By keeping these layers separate, the region's Brahmanical history becomes more, not less, intelligible: institutions can be seen forming, reproducing and changing through time.

Table 30.1 — Brahmanical institutions: evidence, secure inference and chronological limit

Evidence	What it records	Secure historical inference	Chronological limit
Munger plate of Devapāla	Brahman beneficiary within a documented land grant	Royal patronage linked learned status to agrarian rights	Does not describe all Brahmans or later Maithil sub-castes
Bangaon plate of Vighrahapāla III	Gotra, pravara, Vedic affiliation and learning of Ghaṇṭūkaśarman	Detailed credentialing of a learned household in north Bihar	Not evidence for a formal university or later Panji ranking
Bhagalpur plate of Nārāyaṇapāla	Brahmans named within a much wider social and administrative field	Brahman privilege was embedded in agrarian society	Notification formula is not a caste census
Bagaha charters of Saurāditya	Local ruler grants to Brahman beneficiary in the Tirabhukti sphere	Plural patrons supported Brahmanical institutions	Does not imply one centrally controlled Brahman corporation
Gotra / pravara	Lineage and ritual ancestry	Credential for recognition and marriage-related identity	Not equivalent to a later sub-caste
Vedic śākhā / śrottriya qualification	Textual learning and recognised competence	Prestige of Vedic study	Do not equate śrottriya with later Mithila Śrottriya sub-caste
Dharmashāstra and scholastic texts	Norms of ritual, property, law and status	Languages of juristic and ritual authority	Prescription is not proof of uniform local practice
Panji tradition	Genealogy, territory, marriage regulation and later internal ranking	Documents a different phase of corporate Maithil Brahman organisation	Must not be retrojected into Pāla-era charters

Chapter 31 — The Panji Tradition

The Panji tradition transformed genealogy into an institution of social memory, territorial identity and marriage regulation in Mithila. This chapter treats the Panji neither as an timeless survival nor as a single document created once and thereafter unchanged. It reconstructs a layered archive: a fourteenth-century process of formalisation associated with the Tirhut court; genealogical and territorial categories elaborated through repeated copying; professional interpretation by Panjikars; later rank vocabularies and marriage procedures; and modern preservation, digitisation and search. The method is chronological and source-critical. Surviving manuscripts, later copies, ethnographic descriptions and modern digital collections are used together but never collapsed into one evidentiary moment.

31.1 Genealogy becomes an institution

Genealogy exists in many societies as remembered descent, but the Panji tradition is historically distinctive because descent became a maintained documentary system tied to social decisions. A lineage statement could identify ancestors; a Panji institution could preserve, compare and adjudicate relationships across households. That difference matters. The emergence of a corporate genealogical archive created new forms of expertise, because only persons who knew how to read the record, reconcile variant pedigrees and connect family histories could make the archive socially effective. It also created new forms of dependence on writing. Memory did not disappear, but written pedigrees increasingly structured how memory was verified. The Panji therefore belongs simultaneously to the history of manuscripts, marriage, professional knowledge, territorial identity and social classification.

31.2 What “Panji” means historically

In this chapter Panji refers to the formalised genealogical records and the institutional practices surrounding them, not merely to any family tree. Scholarly descriptions of Pañjī-Prabandha emphasise its role in maintaining ancestry, lineage affiliation and eligibility for marriage within recognised communities. The corpus is internally diverse. Different Panjikars possessed different manuscript sets; later copies could incorporate earlier material; and a pedigree might be transmitted through a succession of exemplars rather than preserved in the hand of its first recorder. Consequently, a statement found in a nineteenth-century manuscript may preserve older genealogical information without making the manuscript itself medieval. Source criticism must therefore distinguish the date claimed for an event, the date of the textual layer, and the physical date of the surviving copy.

31.3 Four evidence streams and a chronology firewall

The Panji cannot be reconstructed from one evidence stream alone. Surviving genealogical manuscripts provide names, relations, mūla traditions and marriage information; political history supplies the setting in which formal regulation became possible; ethnography records Panjika practice and marriage procedures in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries; and modern digital projects preserve images and searchable representations of fragile records. Each stream answers different questions. The strongest reconstruction emerges where two or more streams converge. A later ethnographic custom cannot automatically be assigned to the fourteenth century, and a traditional foundation story cannot substitute for a dated manuscript. The chronology firewall used throughout this volume is especially important here because the Panji system itself was a mechanism through which later social categories were created and stabilised.

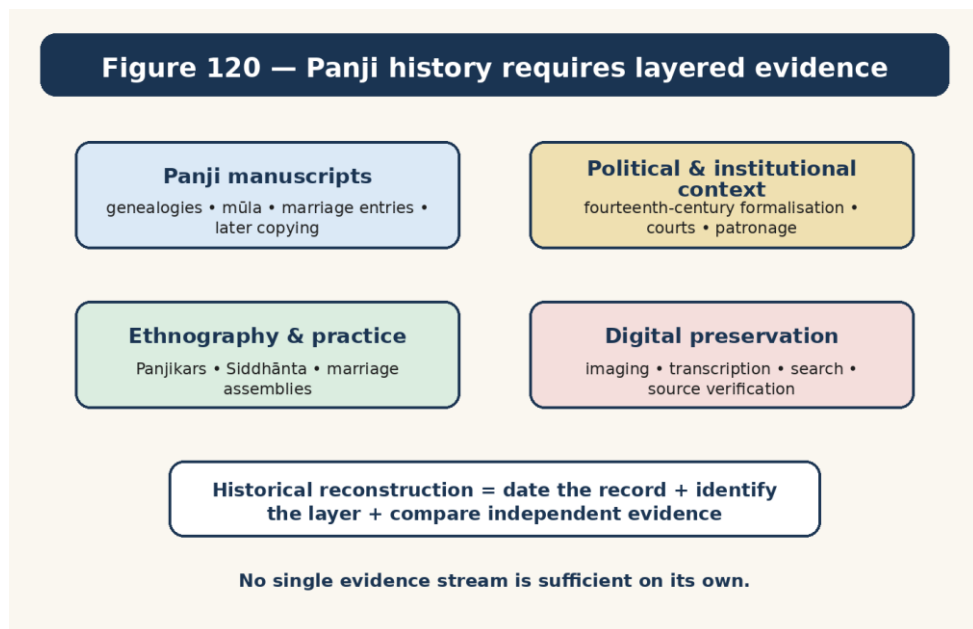


Figure 120 — Panji history requires layered evidence

31.4 Harisimhadeva and fourteenth-century formalisation

Modern scholarship commonly places the formalisation of the Pañji-Prabandha in the fourteenth century and associates it with the Karnata ruler Harisimhadeva of Tirhut. Anshuman Pandey reconstructs this transformation as a state-backed attempt to enumerate Brahmans and organise a corporate Maithil identity through genealogy, territory and authority. Nisha Thakur likewise treats the fourteenth-century Pañji-Prabandha as a major institutional turning point. The safest historical formulation is therefore not that every extant Panji was literally written in a single founding year, but that the fourteenth century saw a decisive formalisation of genealogical regulation under royal authority. The distinction protects the history from a false precision that the surviving manuscript record cannot sustain.

31.5 Enumeration, recognition and corporate identity

A genealogical census or registration system does more than count people. It decides what information makes a person recognisable to an institution. In the Panji tradition, ancestry, lineage and territorial origin became criteria through which membership could be represented and compared. This process helped convert dispersed learned and landholding households into a more explicitly corporate community. The effect was recursive: once the archive defined legitimate relationships, subsequent marriages and claims were interpreted through the archive, which in turn accumulated new information. Genealogy thus became both record and rule. It did not erase local identities, but it created a translocal framework in which families from different villages could locate themselves within a shared documentary order.

31.6 The Panjikar as archivist, interpreter and registrar

The Panjikar was not simply a copyist. The office required command of pedigree relationships, manuscript conventions and the practical rules by which genealogical distance was judged. Ugra Nath Jha's study of Panji and Panjikars shows the institutional importance of professional genealogists, while later accounts describe training, examination and hereditary transmission of expertise in different periods. The social authority of the Panjikar depended on both possession of records and recognised competence in interpreting them. This combination made genealogical knowledge a specialised profession. Because records

could be distributed among families of Panjikars, the archive was never a single central registry in the modern bureaucratic sense; it functioned as a network of manuscript repositories and expert custodians.

31.7 Manuscript materiality and the problem of copies

Panji records were preserved on palm leaf and on indigenous papers, and the transition between writing materials is itself part of their history. FamilySearch's digitised Koilukh collection, for example, preserves Maithil Brahman genealogical records dated mainly from the eighteenth century onward and notes both palm-leaf and paper traditions. Such collections are invaluable, but they also demonstrate why the historian must distinguish physical object from genealogical content. A late copy can transmit an older pedigree; a copied line can introduce an error; a damaged folio can break a chain; and recopying can standardise a name that once had variant spellings. The archive should therefore be read as a manuscript tradition with transmission histories, not as a database whose entries are automatically uniform.

31.8 Mūla: territory encoded in genealogy

One of the Panji tradition's most important social innovations was the linking of descent to territorial memory through mūla. A mūla identifies a lineage through an ancestral point of origin, often expressed through a founding ancestor associated with a place. Pandey's reconstruction emphasises this convergence of genealogy and territory: corporate identity was not only a matter of abstract gotra but was grounded in remembered settlement histories. Mūla therefore allows the historian to study how villages became genealogical reference points, how migration was remembered, and how territorial origin could persist as identity after descendants moved elsewhere. It is not a modern address field; it is a historical category of origin whose meaning depends on the Panji tradition itself.

31.9 Gotra, pravara and mūla are not interchangeable

The genealogical language of Mithila combines categories with different histories. Gotra and pravara belong to much older Brahmanical systems of patrilineal and ritual identification. Mūla, by contrast, is a territorial-genealogical device central to the corporate history reconstructed through the Panjis. A household could therefore share a gotra with many distant families while belonging to a particular mūla that located its remembered founding line. Treating these categories as synonyms erases precisely what the Panji added: a fine-grained mechanism for distinguishing lines within broader ritual descent. The same caution applies to later grades and sub-castes, which should not be projected back into the first moment of registration.

31.10 Marriage regulation and Siddhānta

The Panji achieved its greatest practical force through marriage regulation. Genealogical knowledge was used to determine whether a proposed match fell within prohibited relationships and whether the relevant pedigree claims could be reconciled. In later practice the Panjika's determination was embodied in forms of genealogical certification commonly discussed under the term Siddhānta. The document should be understood as a social decision produced from a record, not as a timeless ritual object. Its authority depended on the recognised genealogy, the competence of the Panjika and the willingness of families to treat the result as binding. Marriage thus became a principal arena in which documentary knowledge shaped everyday social reproduction.

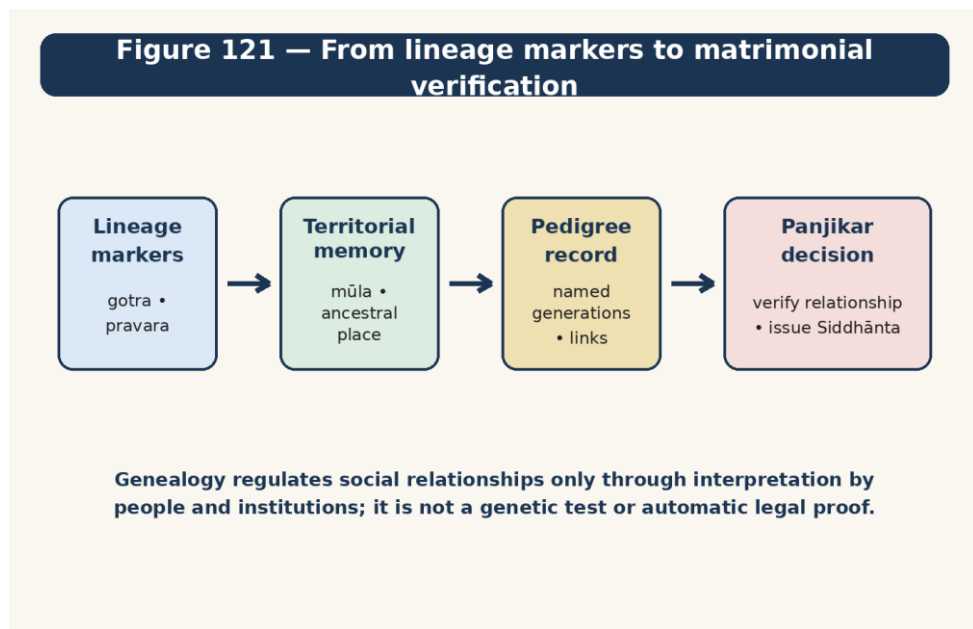


Figure 121 — From lineage markers to matrimonial verification

31.11 Prohibited relationship and the logic of verification

The Panji system is often described as a mechanism for preventing marriage between persons considered too closely related within the regulated community. Historically, however, the important point is institutional rather than biological. The system worked through culturally defined genealogical rules, remembered descent and documentary comparison. It did not measure genetic distance, and its categories cannot be translated directly into modern population genetics. Nor should a historical Siddhānta be treated as a contemporary legal certificate without verification. The Panji is most accurately understood as an indigenous technology of kinship governance: it transformed rules of relationship into a documentary and professional procedure.

31.12 The archive as social memory

A Panji entry does more than connect two names. Repeated pedigrees preserve remembered migrations, marriages, status claims, scholarly reputations and connections between villages. In that sense the corpus is an archive of social memory. Yet memory is selective. Genealogies tend to privilege lines useful to descent and marriage; they can omit people who did not matter to the institutional purpose; and their representation of women is often relational rather than biographical. The historical value of the corpus lies not in pretending that it records all of society equally, but in asking what kinds of memory the institution considered necessary to preserve. What the record omits can be as revealing as what it names.

31.13 Rank, grade and historical change

The Panji tradition did not merely record a pre-existing, eternally fixed hierarchy. Scholarship on medieval Mithila shows that genealogical regulation participated in the formation and differentiation of status. Ranked grades within the Maithil Brahman community changed over time and could acquire increasingly corporate consequences through marriage. The historian must therefore analyse rank terms as dated institutional categories. A label attested in a later manuscript or ethnography cannot automatically be inserted into the fourteenth-century foundation narrative. The Panji is important precisely because it allows

social classification to be studied as a process: categories could be created, reinterpreted, enforced and transformed through successive generations of record keeping.

31.14 Śrotriya: the necessary chronology correction

This volume adopts a specific Panji-based chronological correction: Śrotriya should not be projected as a fixed Maithil Brahman sub-caste into the medieval period. The Sanskrit word śrotriya is much older and could denote a Brahman recognised for Vedic learning or qualification, as Chapter 30 explained. The later Mithila Śrotriya sub-caste is a different historical formation. The Panji evidence used in this project places its emergence as a distinct sub-caste around 1800 CE, after the period of Madhav Singh, rather than in the fourteenth or seventeenth century. This distinction is not semantic pedantry; it prevents a later corporate category from rewriting the social history of earlier centuries.

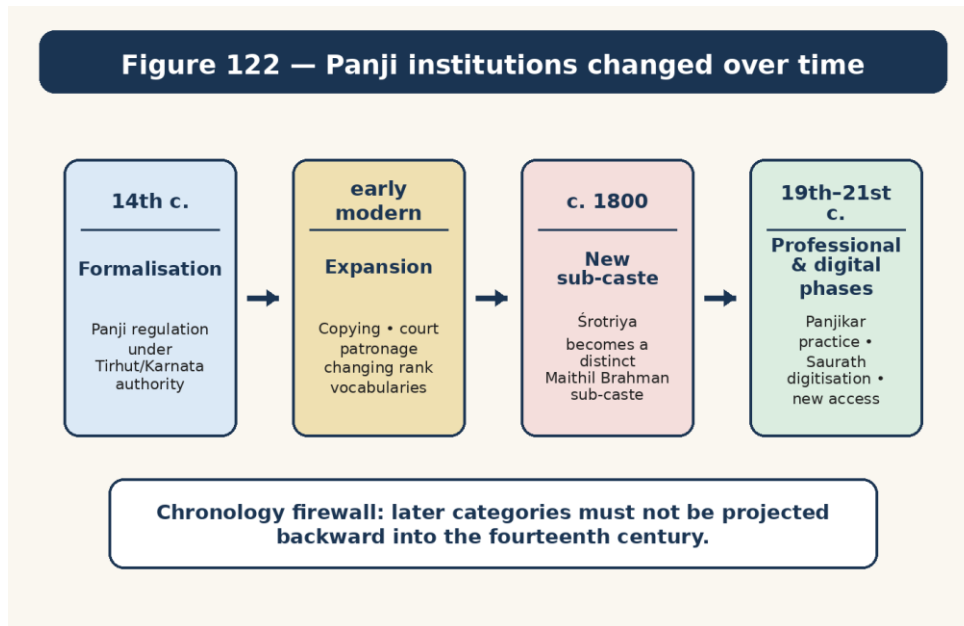


Figure 122 — Panji institutions changed over time

31.15 Women in a patrilineal archive

Panji records are organised predominantly through patrilineal descent, which affects how women appear. A woman may be visible because her marriage connects two pedigrees, because she is identified as a daughter or wife, or because a disputed relationship makes her genealogically significant. Such visibility is not equivalent to a biography. The archive therefore simultaneously preserves crucial evidence for women's marital networks and reproduces a male-centred documentary structure. A gender-sensitive reading should use marriage entries to reconstruct mobility, alliance and household connection while resisting the assumption that women's sparse naming indicates low social importance. Their labour in maintaining households, ritual relationships and kin networks was far greater than the formal genealogical record usually shows.

31.16 Kayastha Panjis and the broader institution

The Panji tradition is not solely a Maithil Brahman phenomenon. Genealogical records were also maintained among Maithili Karna Kayasthas, and Binod Bihari Verma's survey demonstrates the importance of Kayastha Panji manuscripts as a parallel corpus. This broader evidence changes the social interpretation of

the institution. Genealogical regulation in Mithila was part of a wider culture of documentary descent among literate status communities, not only an internal Brahman ritual device. The forms, categories and histories of Brahman and Kayastha Panjis should not be assumed identical, but comparison allows the historian to ask how state service, literacy, marriage and territorial memory produced related archival practices.

31.17 Royal patronage and the politics of genealogy

Genealogical regulation required authority. The fourteenth-century association with the Tirhut court is therefore not incidental. Royal backing could give social force to enumeration, define recognised experts and encourage families to submit to common rules. Later ruling houses inherited and reshaped this institutional environment. The relationship was mutually useful: genealogy gave the court an organised language for recognising elite households, while court patronage gave genealogists status and continuity. Yet the Panji should not be reduced to royal propaganda. Once embedded in marriage practice, it developed a social life that exceeded any single dynasty and could survive political transitions that altered the formal structure of the state.

31.18 From Karnata to Oiniwar and later courts

The fall of Karnata political power did not end the genealogy-based social order. Pandey's study emphasises how succeeding Maithil Brahman ruling houses maintained and extended the machinery through which Brahman identity, territory and authority were organised. This continuity helps explain the Panji's durability: it was not tied exclusively to one founder king but became useful to later courts and communities. At the same time, continuity should not be confused with stasis. Successive regimes could alter patronage, rank, the personnel of genealogical administration and the political meanings attached to learned lineages. The archive therefore records a long institutional history in which the framework endured while its social content changed.

31.19 Panjikars under the Darbhanga Raj order

Later descriptions of Panjikaṛ organisation belong to a different historical phase from fourteenth-century formalisation. Ugra Nath Jha records traditions of professional training and examination associated with the Darbhanga Raj period, showing that genealogical expertise could be institutionalised through court-connected procedures. Such evidence is valuable for the history of the profession, but it must remain in its own chronological layer. It cannot prove that the same examination, hierarchy of offices or documentary routines existed in Harisimhadeva's reign. The contrast itself is instructive: a medieval system of genealogical regulation was repeatedly bureaucratised and professionalised under later political conditions.

31.20 Saurath Sabha and public matrimonial space

Saurath Sabha became one of the most visible public settings in which Panji expertise and marriage negotiation interacted. Families, intermediaries and Panjikars used the gathering to identify possible matches and verify relationships. Yet the antiquity of the Sabha in its later documented form should not be assumed from the antiquity of the Panji system. The institution of a genealogy can precede, outlive or change independently of a particular assembly site. Historically, Saurath is best studied as a later public interface of the Panji order: it spatialised a documentary system by bringing pedigrees, professional verification and matrimonial negotiation into a shared arena.

31.21 Genealogy is not genetic proof or legal title

Modern digitisation makes Panji records easier to search, but accessibility can encourage category mistakes. A historical genealogy is not a DNA test. It does not automatically establish biological paternity, legal inheritance, caste certification or title to property. Its entries were created for historically specific social purposes and require source verification. This distinction is especially important when old records concern living families. The responsible historian treats the Panji as evidence for recorded genealogy and social classification, compares it with other sources, and avoids transforming an archival statement into a modern legal or biological judgment for which the document was never designed.

31.22 Dūṣaṇ records: evidence without inherited stigma

Some Panji traditions include dūṣaṇ or disqualification categories that recorded perceived defects, breaches or status problems relevant to historical marriage regulation. Such records can illuminate the political economy of reputation: communities used documentary memory not only to validate descent but also to sanction conduct and classify families. They are ethically difficult sources. A historical dūṣaṇ entry should never be used to stigmatise a living person, family or village. Its proper use is analytical: to reconstruct what earlier institutions considered disqualifying, how reputational sanctions circulated, and how social power could be exercised through archival classification.

31.23 Migration encoded as remembered origin

Because mūla and pedigree preserve origin narratives, Panji records can help trace migration and settlement. They show how a family's identity could remain attached to an ancestral village after descendants moved, acquired new patronage or established branches elsewhere. This makes the corpus especially useful for the connected history of Mithila across present-day administrative boundaries. Yet migration must be reconstructed cautiously. A genealogical origin is not necessarily the same as the first archaeological settlement of a group, and a remembered founding ancestor may represent the point at which a lineage became institutionally visible rather than its biological beginning. Panji geography is therefore historical social geography, not a substitute for archaeology.

31.24 Mithila across the India–Nepal border

The historical region of Mithila extends across the modern India–Nepal border, whereas the Panji institution predates that boundary. Genealogical and marriage networks therefore provide evidence for social continuities that do not map neatly onto modern states. Families, scholars and marriage partners could move within a cultural region later divided by national administration. At the same time, the historian must not use the Panji to erase political difference. Nepalese and Indian regimes created distinct legal and administrative environments in the modern period. The archive is most valuable for showing how kinship and territorial memory interacted with, crossed and sometimes adapted to changing political boundaries.

31.25 Gaps, variants and contradiction are historical evidence

No large manuscript genealogy is free from gaps. Names can be omitted; spellings vary; generations can be compressed; copies can disagree; a lineage can appear under different territorial labels; and later annotations may coexist with older text. These are not reasons to discard the archive. They are reasons to use manuscript method. Variant readings can reveal how knowledge was transmitted and where institutional interests were strongest. A pedigree supported by independent copies has a different evidentiary weight from an isolated late entry. The mature use of Panji therefore replaces the search for one infallible master list with

comparison among witnesses, attention to handwriting and material date, and explicit statements of uncertainty.

31.26 Cross-verification with inscriptions, chronicles and local records

Genealogical claims become historically stronger when they can be compared with sources created for different purposes. Copper-plate grants may confirm a learned lineage or village; court chronicles can anchor patronage; literary texts can illuminate titles and intellectual networks; revenue records can document later settlement; and local manuscripts can clarify branches omitted from a Panji copy. Cross-verification does not require every name to appear everywhere. Rather, it tests whether the social world implied by the genealogy is compatible with independently dated evidence. This method is especially important for prominent scholarly or ruling families whose later prestige could encourage retrospective elaboration.

31.27 Digitisation as a new phase in Panji history

Digitisation is not external to the history of the Panji; it is the latest transformation of the medium through which genealogical knowledge survives. Photographic imaging reduces handling of fragile palm-leaf and paper manuscripts, creates distributed backups and allows comparison across collections. Search systems can expose patterns that are difficult to see by reading folios sequentially. Yet digitisation also creates new risks: cropped images can detach entries from context, transcription can normalise uncertain readings, and searchable databases can tempt users to treat an index as the source itself. Digital scholarship must therefore preserve links between search results and page images, record provenance and retain uncertainty.

31.28 Custodianship, access and intellectual property

Panjikar families have historically treated their manuscript knowledge as professional capital. Modern researchers have therefore encountered legitimate tensions between public preservation and custodial control. Pandey notes the difficulty of obtaining access to complete Panji sets and acknowledges the digitised records supplied for his research; Videha subsequently placed important Panji material into wider public circulation. This history should be treated with respect for both preservation and provenance. Open access does not erase the labour of custodians, while custodianship cannot substitute for conservation when unique manuscripts are endangered. A sustainable future requires attribution, preservation-quality imaging, ethical access and clear separation between scholarly use and commercial or discriminatory misuse.

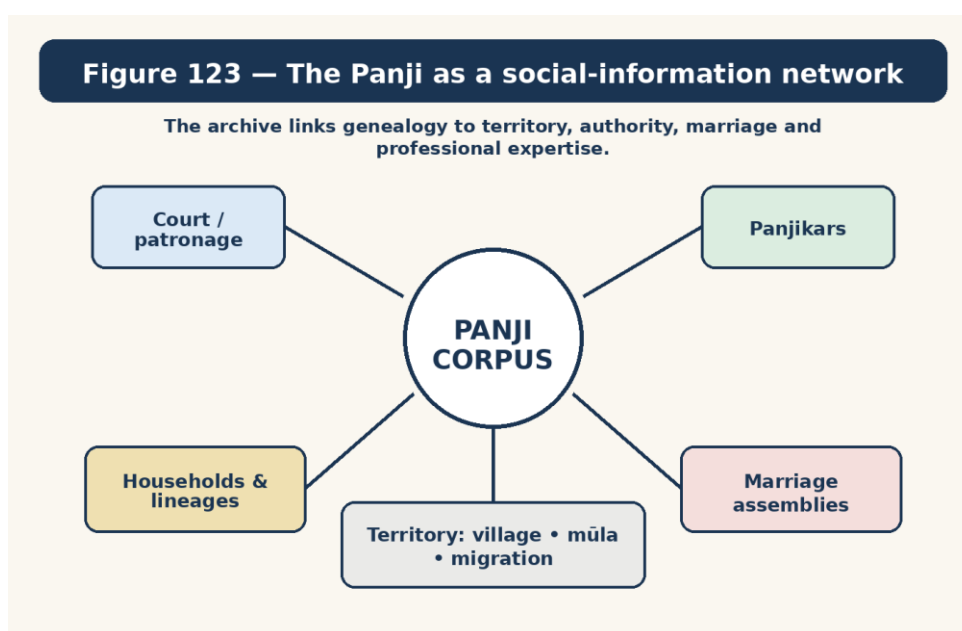


Figure 123 — The Panji as a social-information network

31.29 What historians can and cannot infer

Used critically, the Panji can reconstruct marriage networks, lineage differentiation, territorial memory, professional genealogy, changing status categories and the long interaction between households and courts. It can sometimes help trace scholarly networks and migration. It cannot, by itself, reconstruct the entire population of Mithila, prove genetic relationships, date every remembered ancestor, or demonstrate that a later category existed from the beginning of the system. Nor should absence from one manuscript be treated as proof that a person or line did not exist. The corpus is powerful because it is institutionally structured, and limited for the same reason: it records what the institution needed to know.

31.30 Conclusion: a living archive of social formation

The Panji tradition is one of Mithila's most important archives because it records social formation from within a system that actively shaped the relationships it documented. Its fourteenth-century formalisation linked genealogy, territory and authority; Panjikars transformed manuscripts into decisions; marriage regulation gave the archive everyday force; later courts and assemblies professionalised its use; and successive copies incorporated changing vocabularies of status. That history also demands chronological discipline. Gotra, mūla, rank and later sub-caste labels belong to different layers, and the Śrottriya sub-caste should not be projected before the Panji evidence that supports its emergence around 1800. Read in this way, the Panji is neither mythic antiquity nor a modern database. It is a living manuscript institution whose changes are themselves part of Mithila's social history.

Table 31.1 — Panji evidence: historical use and limit

Evidence	What it can show	What it cannot show by itself
Panji manuscripts	Pedigrees, mūla, relationships, later classifications and manuscript transmission	The physical date of a surviving copy is not automatically the date of every entry it contains.
Fourteenth-century institutional history	Context for formalisation of genealogical regulation under	Does not prove that every later Panjika procedure or

Evidence	What it can show	What it cannot show by itself
	Tirhut/Karnata authority	rank category existed in the founding phase.
Panjikar practice	How records were interpreted, copied, verified and used in marriage decisions	Late ethnographic practice cannot be projected unchanged into medieval centuries.
Saurath and marriage assemblies	Public interaction between genealogy, matchmaking and professional verification	The antiquity of the Panji does not by itself establish the antiquity of every later assembly custom.
Mūla and territorial memory	Remembered origin, lineage branching and migration within Mithila	Not a substitute for archaeology or proof of the earliest biological origin of a group.
Rank and dūṣaṇ categories	Historical mechanisms of status differentiation, sanction and reputation	Must not be used to stigmatise living persons or projected backward without dated evidence.
Śrottriya evidence	Supports a distinct Maithil Brahman sub-caste around 1800 in this project's Panji chronology	Earlier Sanskrit śrottriya denotes learning/qualification and is not proof of the later sub-caste.
Digitised collections	Preservation, comparison, indexing and wider scholarly access	Search results are not substitutes for manuscript images, provenance or expert verification.

Chapter 32 — Women, Marriage and Property in Medieval Mithila

Women's social and economic history in medieval Mithila cannot be reconstructed by taking a single legal rule and treating it as a transparent description of life. The most articulate surviving materials are juristic: Sanskrit digests that classify marriage, gifts, inheritance, maintenance and household obligations. Those texts are indispensable because they preserve categories and arguments used by learned specialists, yet they are normative and selective. Genealogical records illuminate marriage relationships in the communities they document but usually privilege patrilineal continuity. Agrarian records and material history reveal the economy in which households functioned while often leaving women unnamed. Later colonial courts preserve a history of how "Mithila law" was read, but they belong to a much later evidentiary moment. This chapter therefore reconstructs women, marriage and property through a chronology firewall: every claim is tied to the kind and date of its source.

32.1 Women's history as a source problem

The first difficulty is visibility. Medieval archives were not designed to answer modern questions about women's work, autonomy or ownership. A jurist asked which rule applied to a dispute; a genealogist recorded descent and marriage eligibility; a grant recorded title, privilege or revenue; a literary text pursued aesthetic, devotional or political purposes. Women appear differently in each genre, and silence has different meanings. An unnamed cultivator's wife in an agrarian record is not evidence that women did no agricultural work. A detailed rule on a widow's succession is not evidence that every widow successfully exercised the right contemplated by the jurist. Historical reconstruction must therefore distinguish presence in the archive from presence in society. The chapter uses explicit statements where available and cautious structural inference where direct testimony is absent.

32.2 Normative rule is not observed practice

Dharmaśāstra and the regional nibandha tradition organise conduct into legal and ritual categories. Their value is greatest when they are read as arguments about legitimate order rather than as a statistical description of actual behaviour. A rule may respond to a contested practice; a prohibition may reveal anxiety precisely because the prohibited act occurred; a ranked list of marriage forms may preserve an inherited scholastic classification rather than a map of locally common weddings. Conversely, customary behaviour could operate without leaving an equally elaborate textual theory. The proper historical question is therefore twofold: what kinds of claims did learned authorities recognise, and what independent evidence indicates how households actually arranged marriage, property and support? Keeping those questions separate prevents both romanticisation and over-legalisation of medieval social life.

32.3 The chronological frame: Karnata, Oiniwar and later medieval Mithila

The chapter's central frame runs from the Karnata political order into the Oiniwar period and later medieval legal-literary culture. These centuries produced major Mithila-based juristic works and saw the consolidation of manuscript, scholastic and genealogical institutions. The political transitions did not create one uniform family regime. Courtly centres, learned Brahmanical households, landed groups, artisans, service communities and agrarian labouring populations possessed unequal resources and left unequal archives. Regional boundaries also shifted. "Mithila" in a legal school, a genealogical archive or a political narrative is therefore not automatically identical with every settlement in the wider north-Bihar and Nepal-Tarai cultural

zone. The chapter uses the regional label carefully and marks community-specific evidence whenever its scope is narrower than the geographic region.

32.4 Mithila's legal-digest tradition

Caṇḍeśvara Ṭhakkura, active in the early fourteenth-century political-intellectual world of Tirhut, systematised legal and household subjects in the Ratnākara corpus. The Vivādaratnākara became especially important for partition, inheritance and dispute, while related works addressed domestic and ritual obligations. Later Mithila scholarship, including Vācaspati Mīśra's Vivādacintāmaṇi, continued an intensive regional tradition of digesting earlier authorities and resolving competing rules. These texts allow us to see sophisticated argument about marriage, women's property, heirs, maintenance and household claims. Their authority, however, is an intellectual-historical fact, not proof that every social group followed each formulation in identical fashion. The safest use is to reconstruct a learned legal vocabulary and then compare it with genealogical, economic and later reception evidence.

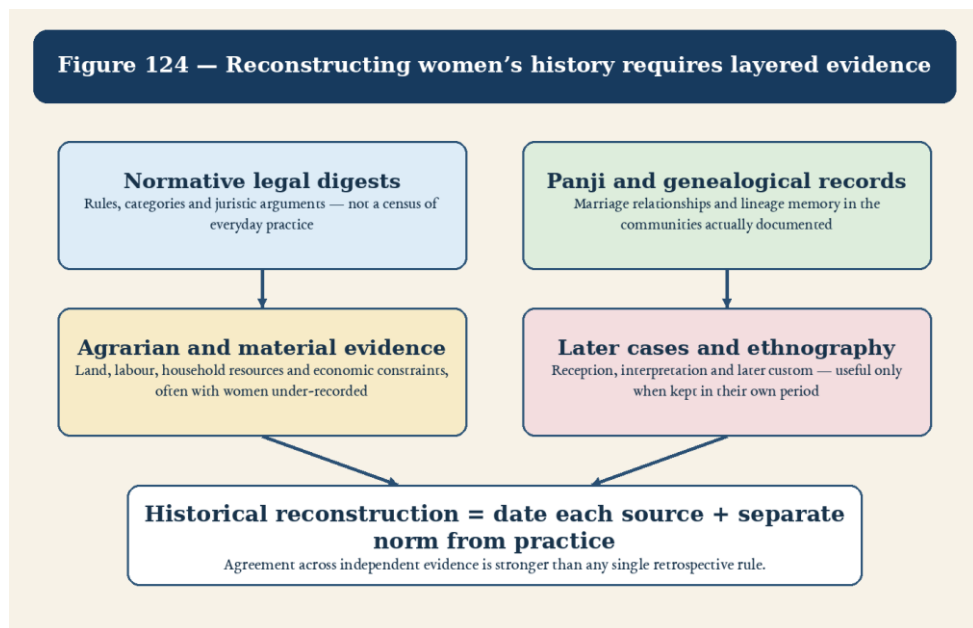


Figure 124 — Reconstructing women's history requires layered evidence

32.5 Marriage as household formation and kin alliance

Marriage joined persons, households and kin networks. In an agrarian society, the alliance had economic consequences even when the surviving text framed it in ritual language. It could affect residence, transfers of gifts, claims to support, obligations between affines, the placement of children in lines of succession and the practical availability of labour. For elite and genealogically recorded groups, marriage could also carry consequences for pedigree and social standing. None of these functions reduces marriage to a property transaction. Rather, marriage was a social institution in which ritual status, kinship, household economy and gendered expectations intersected. The sources must therefore be read across domains: a juristic category describes lawful form; a Panji relationship documents a connection; an inheritance rule identifies potential successors; and household economy determines what the right could mean materially.

32.6 Normative forms of marriage

Medieval Mithila jurists inherited the wider Dharmaśāstra classification of marriage forms and discussed their relative approval, conditions and consequences. Such taxonomies mattered because later inheritance arguments could distinguish between marriages placed in approved and disapproved categories. But the classification is not a frequency table. It tells us how jurists sorted possible unions, not how many marriages of each type occurred in a village or century. Nor should modern labels such as “love marriage” or “arranged marriage” be imposed mechanically on categories constructed for different ritual and legal questions. Historically, the classification is strongest evidence for the conceptual grammar within which learned disputation operated. Social practice must be sought through other traces, especially kinship records, local custom and the economic circumstances of households.

32.7 Guardianship, consent and the danger of simple binaries

Texts discussing who may give a bride, the suitability of spouses and the circumstances under which a woman might act outside the expected sequence of guardianship reveal a field of regulated choices. They should not be compressed into the binary claim that medieval women either “had consent” or “had no consent.” Juristic reasoning often distinguishes authority to perform a legally or ritually effective act from the lived negotiation through which a marriage was arranged. Household seniority, kin strategy, age, widowhood, property and local custom could all alter practical bargaining power. The sources rarely preserve the woman’s own speech in a form that allows confident reconstruction of negotiation. A responsible history therefore describes the formal framework, records explicit exceptions, and avoids converting silence about personal preference into proof of either complete autonomy or complete absence of agency.

32.8 Marriage gifts and the category of *strīdhana*

One of the clearest ways women enter the legal archive is through *strīdhana*, a technical category of women’s property. Later printed translation of the *Vivādacintāmaṇi* enumerates a cluster of gifts connected with marriage and close kin, including gifts associated with the nuptial ceremony and bridal movement as well as gifts from father, mother and brother. The important historical point is not merely the list. Jurists treated some assets as capable of being classified separately from an undifferentiated household estate, and they debated who could succeed to those assets. At the same time, “*strīdhana*” should not be used as a synonym for everything a woman possessed, used or helped produce. Technical classification, actual control and household access were related but distinct questions.

32.9 The sixfold gift language and what it can show

The familiar sixfold formulation preserved in the Mithila legal tradition places several kinds of gifts around the marriage process and the natal family. It demonstrates that juristic thought recognised multiple channels by which resources might be assigned to a woman and that the source of an asset could matter legally. It does not reveal the average monetary value of such gifts, whether a particular household could afford them, or how readily a woman could convert a formally recognised asset into independent economic power. Gift language also spans objects of very different scale, from ornaments and movable valuables to resources whose later legal treatment could become more complicated. The historian should therefore use the list as a map of recognised acquisition channels and not as a quantitative description of medieval marriage expenditure.

32.10 Property as a bundle of rights

“Property” is too blunt a word unless the underlying powers are separated. Possession, use, income, management, alienation, security for debt and succession after death need not belong to the same person in the same degree. A widow might enjoy or manage an asset without having an unrestricted power to alienate its corpus; a gift might be classified as a woman’s separate property yet still become the subject of kin claims after her death; household resources could be used collectively without becoming strīdhana. This bundle-of-rights approach helps reconcile apparently conflicting sources. A text that recognises a woman as heir does not automatically answer how property was managed in daily life, while evidence of male household management does not by itself erase a legally differentiated female claim. The categories must be kept analytically distinct.

Figure 125 — Property is a bundle of distinct rights			
Property source	Possession / use	Power to transfer	Succession after death
Marriage gifts	may be separately held	depends on category / rule	specified kin or marital line
Inherited assets	may carry use or title	not always identical to use	depends on property and heirs
Household resources	often shared in practice	family or title constraints	not automatically strīdhana
Maintenance claim	economic support right	usually not ownership of corpus	ends or changes by rule/context
Analytical rule: never treat “property” as one undifferentiated legal power.			

Figure 125 — Property is a bundle of distinct rights

32.11 Movable and immovable property

Later judicial readings of Mithila authorities repeatedly encountered distinctions between movable and immovable assets, especially when discussing women’s inheritance and the scope of powers attached to property. These later decisions are not medieval evidence in themselves, but their difficulty is historically instructive: the received textual tradition did not reduce women’s property to one simple formula. In a medieval household, movables such as jewellery, utensils, textiles, livestock or cash-like valuables could circulate differently from rights in land or houses. Land, moreover, was embedded in agrarian obligations, lineage claims and revenue structures. The historian should therefore avoid transferring a conclusion about one asset class to all property. Where a medieval digest expressly distinguishes categories, that distinction is primary; where only later courts articulate it, the point belongs to reception history unless earlier textual support can be demonstrated.

32.12 Inherited property is not automatically strīdhana

A second essential distinction is between acquisition by inheritance and acquisition within the technical categories of women’s separate property. Different schools and authors classified inherited assets differently, and later courts struggled with the consequences of those classifications. For social history, the secure

proposition is narrower: women could appear in chains of succession, but the legal character and powers attached to the inherited asset had to be determined from the relevant rule, property type and kin situation. It is therefore misleading to say either that “women did not inherit” or that “all inherited property became absolute female property” across medieval Mithila. Both statements erase the juristic distinctions preserved by the sources. The chapter instead follows the route of each claim: acquisition, enjoyment or management, alienation where discussed, and succession after the woman’s death.

32.13 Widowhood, succession and management

Widowhood changed a woman’s position within both kinship and property relations. Juristic texts had to decide who represented the deceased man’s line, who maintained dependants and who succeeded when sons or other heirs were absent. The very elaboration of such questions shows that widowhood was not legally invisible. Yet a formal place in succession could coexist with practical dependence on male relatives, pressure over residence, or restrictions on dealing with particular assets. Conversely, the existence of household hierarchy should not be converted into an assumption that every widow was economically dispossessed. The evidence supports a differentiated history in which age, children, property class, separation or jointness of the household, natal support and local authority all mattered. Where later courts quote Mithila authorities, they show how these problems were subsequently interpreted, not a photograph of medieval widowhood.

32.14 Daughters in succession

Daughters also appear within the legal architecture of succession, but position and priority can depend on the specific source and circumstances. Later Anglo-Hindu adjudication of Mithila law debated distinctions among unmarried and married daughters and the consequences of widowhood or issue. That debate confirms the survival of a regionally identified jurisprudential tradition, while also warning us not to import nineteenth- and twentieth-century judicial formulations unchanged into earlier centuries. For the medieval period, the safer conclusion is that daughterhood was a recognised relationship capable of carrying inheritance significance within juristic reasoning. The practical value of that claim depended on the estate available, competing heirs, the woman’s household position and enforceability. Genealogies can sometimes establish relationships but rarely disclose the full economic content of a daughter’s claim.

32.15 Natal kin after marriage

Marriage did not erase the natal family. The very classification of gifts from father, mother or brother presupposes continuing economic ties across the marital transition. Natal relatives could remain sources of support, ritual connection and property transmission; in moments of widowhood or dispute those ties could become especially important. At the same time, the degree of continuing connection varied by distance, resources, rank and local custom. A legal list of permissible or recognised gifts should not be transformed into an assumption of equal natal support for all women. Poor households faced different constraints from landed or court-connected families. The social-history value of the legal category lies in proving that natal and marital kin were not mutually exclusive spheres. Women stood at the junction of both networks, though not necessarily with equal power within either.

32.16 Maintenance as an economic claim

Maintenance deserves separate treatment because subsistence rights are economically significant even when they do not amount to title over the underlying property. Juristic traditions discuss obligations to support wives, widows and other dependants within household and kin structures. Such claims could shape

access to food, clothing, residence and the income needed for daily life. For many households, maintenance may have mattered more immediately than an abstract question of alienable ownership. Yet formal entitlement is only one side of the history. Enforcement depended on assets, household cooperation and local power. The chapter therefore treats maintenance as a distinct component of women's economic position: neither trivial because it is not full ownership, nor equivalent to ownership because it may give no general power to sell or permanently transfer the property from which support is drawn.

32.17 Additional marriage, supersession and compensation categories

Dharmaśāstra-derived literature also discusses the circumstances and consequences of a husband taking another wife, sometimes framing compensation or property assigned to the existing wife through technical categories. The presence of such rules is valuable evidence that jurists contemplated conflict inside polygynous household arrangements and attempted to regulate economic consequences. It is not a warrant to describe polygyny as universal, nor to assume that every woman received the compensation contemplated by the text. Frequency cannot be calculated from a prescriptive rule. What can be said is that marriage hierarchy created recognised legal problems concerning support, gifts and household status. These rules make visible a dimension of women's economic vulnerability while simultaneously showing that juristic reasoning did not treat the displaced wife as having no claim whatsoever.

32.18 Debt, pledge and household boundaries

Property disputes often sharpened at the boundary between household need and individual claim. Assets could be sold, pledged or used to meet obligations, and later interpreters of Mithila texts repeatedly asked whether a husband or other relative could dispose of property associated with a woman. The medieval materials need to be read with exact attention to the property category and the reason for the transaction. Emergency support, ritual duty, ordinary debt and voluntary alienation were not necessarily treated alike. For social history, the larger lesson is that household economy was not a frictionless common pool. Jurists drew boundaries precisely because resources could be contested. A woman's formally differentiated asset might nevertheless be vulnerable to household pressure, while household property used by a woman did not automatically become her separate property. The distinction between legal title and economic dependence remains crucial.

32.19 Succession after a woman's death

The destination of property after a woman's death is one of the best tests of whether a category was legally differentiated. Mithila jurists and later readers distinguish succession according to the source and legal character of the woman's property and, in some formulations, according to the recognised form of marriage. Children, husband, natal relatives and other heirs can therefore enter different sequences. This complexity matters historically because it contradicts any model in which marriage simply transfers all of a woman's resources permanently into the husband's undifferentiated estate. It also contradicts the opposite model in which every asset remains wholly detached from marital kin. The sources describe intersecting channels of transmission. To reconstruct them responsibly, each statement must specify the kind of property, the relevant kin configuration and the date of the authority being used.

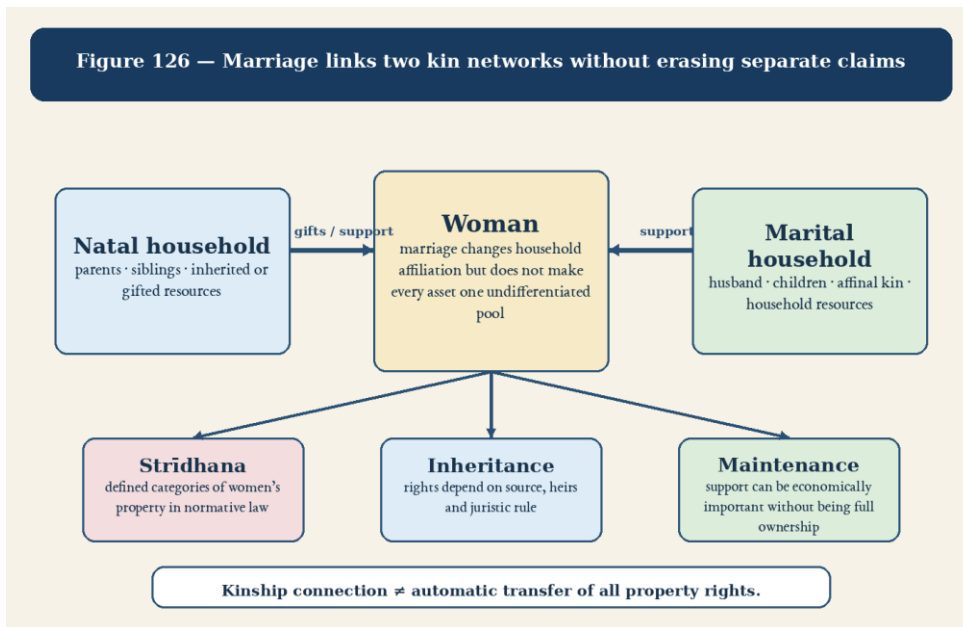


Figure 126 — Marriage links two kin networks without erasing separate property claims

32.20 Marriage regulation and the Panji tradition

The Panji tradition discussed in Chapter 31 adds a different kind of evidence. Its genealogical logic could make marriage a documented relation between lineages and could place specialised knowledge in the hands of Panjikars. That evidence is especially useful for the communities whose pedigrees were actually maintained. It must also be periodised. The medieval institutionalisation of genealogy cannot be used to project every later marriage rank or sub-caste label backward into the fourteenth or fifteenth century. In particular, this project retains its Panji-based chronological conclusion that Śrōtriya emerges as a distinct Maithil Brahmin sub-caste around 1800 CE; it is not treated here as a fixed medieval category. Genealogical continuity and later social classification are therefore analysed as related but historically non-identical processes.

32.21 Panji evidence is community-specific

A further limit follows from the archive's social distribution. Panji materials are rich for particular genealogically organised groups, but they do not provide a complete register of every woman, marriage or household in medieval Mithila. Using them as if they represented the entire regional population would privilege communities that produced and preserved written pedigrees over those whose kinship histories were maintained orally or in other documentary forms. The same caution applies to legal digests produced by learned elites. The chapter therefore uses Panji evidence to illuminate mechanisms of recorded alliance, prohibited proximity, lineage memory and later classification within its documented social field. It does not make the absence of a community from a Panji manuscript evidence of social absence, nor does it treat one group's marriage procedures as a regional universal.

32.22 Women's visibility in patrilineal records

Patrilineal genealogy creates a paradox. Marriage makes women indispensable to the reproduction and connection of lineages, yet records organised around male descent may abbreviate women's identities. A daughter may be significant because her marriage links two pedigrees while the archive preserves less information about her own economic life than about male ancestors. This archival asymmetry should itself be treated as evidence of what the institution was designed to remember. It is not proof that women lacked

social importance. Nor is every later expansion of female names evidence for an earlier practice. Where manuscripts provide women's names, marital links or kin affiliations, those details should be retained exactly. Where they do not, the historian must resist filling the silence with invented biographies or presumed property arrangements.

32.23 Household labour and the agrarian economy

Agrarian society depended on household labour, but written legal and revenue sources rarely enumerate every task by gender. Women's work could include processing grain, tending animals, managing food stores, textile production, water and fuel work, childcare, ritual preparation, market-related handling of goods and, in many environments, direct participation in cultivation. The precise combination varied by ecology, class and household organisation. Because the medieval Mithila archive does not provide a comprehensive labour census, the chapter does not assign a universal task list to all women. Instead it makes a structural point: property rights operated inside a productive household economy, and economic contribution cannot be measured solely by whose name appeared in title documents. Labour history therefore broadens the meaning of material participation without converting plausible regional patterns into unsupported individual claims.

32.24 Elite texts and non-elite custom

The social reach of Sanskrit legal scholarship was uneven. A learned digest could influence adjudication, elite household conduct and later legal interpretation while coexisting with local custom among cultivators, artisans, pastoralists, forest-edge communities and service groups. Custom itself was not static or isolated from elite norms; interaction moved in both directions, and disputes could bring local practice into dialogue with textual authority. The evidentiary problem is that non-elite women are often least visible in the surviving learned corpus. A history that quotes only jurists therefore risks turning the archive of one stratum into the society of an entire region. This chapter uses the legal tradition for what it demonstrably supplies—categories, debates and claimed norms—and marks the wider social field as more diverse wherever direct local evidence is insufficient.

32.25 Rank, resources and marriage choice

Marriage strategy was shaped by resources as well as ideals. Landed households could use marriage to consolidate alliances, preserve status or connect networks of learning and office. Households with fewer resources confronted different constraints involving distance, gifts, labour, maintenance and the availability of suitable partners. Genealogical regulation could narrow the eligible field for some communities, while local custom organised marriage differently elsewhere. Consequently, “medieval Mithila marriage” cannot be represented by a single elite ceremonial model. Even within one normative tradition, jurists discuss exceptions and competing conditions. Social rank matters not because it creates perfectly sealed worlds, but because it changes what options are materially feasible. A useful reconstruction therefore places marriage rules alongside property distribution, household economy and the uneven documentary visibility of different groups.

32.26 Widowhood was not a single economic condition

The word “widow” identifies marital status but does not by itself describe an economic position. A widow with minor children, movable property and strong natal support occupied a different situation from a childless widow dependent on affinal kin; a woman connected to landed property faced different issues from one in a labouring household with few transferable assets. Juristic texts differentiate heirs and property

categories, while later courts expose how disputed the practical consequences could become. Ritual prescriptions may also have shaped status without determining the whole material economy. The chapter therefore rejects both a uniformly helpless widow and an anachronistically autonomous property-holder as universal types. Medieval evidence supports multiple possible positions structured by kin, assets, household form, age, children and the enforceability of claims.

32.27 Colonial “Mithila law” as reception history

Nineteenth- and early twentieth-century courts repeatedly cited texts such as the *Vivādacintāmaṇi* and *Vivādaratnākara* when deciding inheritance and women’s property disputes among parties treated as governed by the Mithila school. One Calcutta decision described the *Vivādacintāmaṇi* as an authority of the highest standing in that school; later Patna decisions continued to debate daughters, widows and *strīdhana* through regionally identified doctrine. These cases matter because they preserve quotations, textual hierarchies and the history of legal reception. They do not prove that the judicial rule announced in 1885 or 1928 had operated unchanged in a fourteenth-century village. Colonial adjudication selected, translated and systematised Sanskrit authorities within a new institutional setting. It must therefore be placed after, not merged with, the medieval evidence.

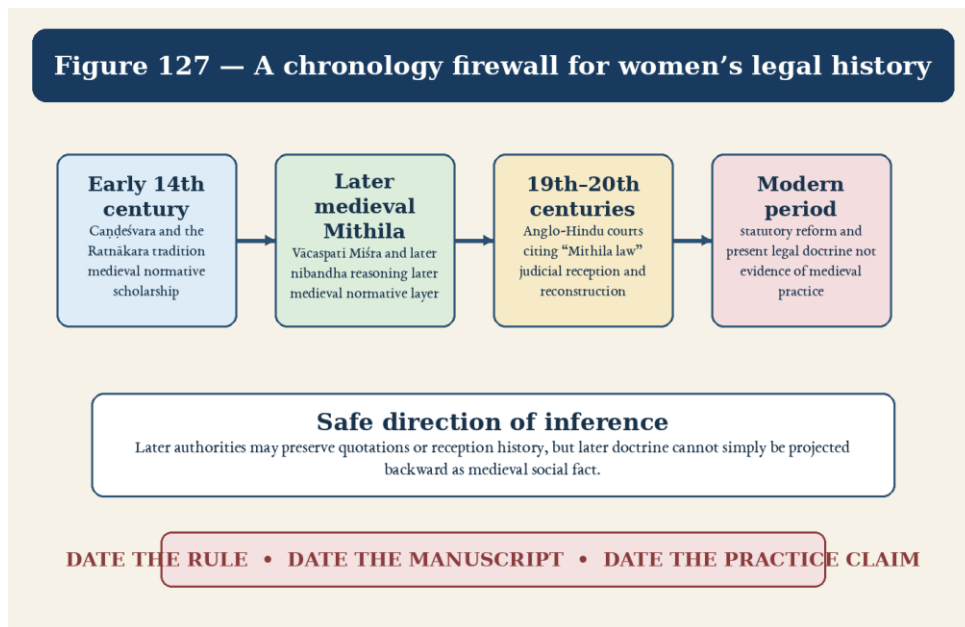


Figure 127 — A chronology firewall for women’s legal history

32.28 Modern statutes are not medieval evidence

Modern statutory reforms profoundly changed inheritance and gendered property rights in South Asia. They are essential for legal history, but they cannot be used to describe medieval practice backward. The same applies to modern judicial concepts, registration systems, constitutional equality and contemporary categories of marital property. A historian may compare periods, but comparison requires a visible break between them. This chapter therefore stops short of turning present law into a measure of what a medieval woman “really owned.” Instead, it asks what the medieval sources meant by the categories they used, how later courts received those categories, and where modern law created a different legal framework. The chronology firewall is especially important because familiar modern words—owner, heir, widow, daughter, gift—can conceal major changes in the bundle of rights attached to them.

32.29 What can and cannot be inferred securely

Several conclusions are secure. Medieval Mithila possessed an advanced juristic tradition that treated marriage, women's property, succession and maintenance as distinct legal problems. Women could be recognised through multiple channels of acquisition and inheritance; marriage connected rather than simply erased natal and marital kin relations; and property claims varied by source, asset and heir configuration. Genealogical institutions add evidence for marriage regulation in the communities they record. Less secure are claims about frequency: how common each marriage form was, how often women successfully enforced a right, the average value of gifts, or the exact division of labour in every social stratum. Those questions require evidence the surviving archive does not supply uniformly. The chapter therefore prefers bounded conclusions to a false completeness built from retrospective generalisation.

32.30 Conclusion: gender, kinship and economy as connected histories

Women's history in medieval Mithila emerges most clearly when legal categories are connected to kinship and economy without being mistaken for either. Marriage created alliances and household obligations; gifts and inheritance opened differentiated property channels; maintenance could matter without conferring full ownership; widowhood and daughterhood carried legal significance that varied by context; and genealogical institutions recorded some marriage networks while leaving large parts of society outside their documentary frame. The central methodological result is equally important: later "Mithila law," modern caste classifications and current statutes must not be projected backward. By dating each source and separating norm, practice, reception and reform, it becomes possible to recover a more precise history—one in which women are neither absent from property relations nor imagined as possessing a uniform modern-style legal status across all medieval households.

Table 32.1 — Women, marriage and property: evidence, secure use and limit

Evidence	What it can show	Secure historical use	Limit of inference
Vivādaratnākara	Juristic reasoning on partition, inheritance and dispute	Reconstruct early-14th-century learned legal categories and arguments	Does not measure frequency or compliance in all households
Vivādacintāmaṇi	Later Mithila doctrine on women's property, heirs and related disputes	Trace later-medieval regional jurisprudence and textual interpretation	Later printed translations and court use must be dated separately
Other nibandha / household texts	Marriage, domestic duties, ritual and household regulation	Recover the normative vocabulary linking marriage and household order	Elite learned prescription is not a complete social survey
Panji / genealogical manuscripts	Recorded descent and marriage connections in documented communities	Study lineage memory, alliance and marriage regulation with manuscript dating	Not a census of all communities; women may be abbreviated in patrilineal records
Agrarian / land documentation	Title, revenue, grants, settlement and resource structures	Place household property within the regional political economy	Often under-records women's labour and informal access to resources
Later colonial court decisions	How courts ranked and interpreted texts called "Mithila law"	Study reception history and recover quoted doctrinal debates	A 19th- or 20th-century ruling is not direct evidence of medieval practice
Material /	Production,	Test what formal claims could	Usually cannot identify

Evidence	What it can show	Secure historical use	Limit of inference
household economy	consumption, movable goods and labour constraints	mean in everyday economic life	an individual woman's legal title without documents
Modern statutory law	Later transformation of inheritance and gendered rights	Mark change over time and prevent anachronism	Must never be projected backward as medieval law

Chapter 33 — Karnata and Oiniwar-Period Social Economy

The Karnata and Oiniwar centuries are often narrated through rulers, invasions and genealogies, yet their historical significance also lies in the institutions that converted land, labour, knowledge and movement into durable social power. The Karnata kingdom, conventionally dated from Nanyadeva's establishment of power in 1097 to the Tughluq conquest of 1324, was centred on Simraungadh and linked the middle Gangetic plain to the Himalayan foothills. The Oiniwar order that followed operated through smaller, shifting centres and changing relations with stronger neighbouring powers. A socio-economic history must therefore distinguish political command from the underlying systems that sustained it. Agrarian production remained fundamental; villages, market places, artisans, scribes, religious establishments and learned households connected local resources to courts and regional routes. This chapter reads inscriptions, juristic and literary texts, genealogical materials, archaeology and later historiography together, while refusing to turn prescriptive texts into demographic statistics or later caste labels into medieval facts.

33.1 Two dynastic phases, not two sealed economies

Karnata and Oiniwar rule should not be imagined as two self-contained economic systems. A dynasty could change rapidly while fields, irrigation habits, village boundaries, kinship obligations, market routines and craft knowledge continued. Conversely, continuity at village level did not mean political stasis: the destination of revenue, the composition of courts, the scale of fortification and the geography of patronage could alter significantly. The most useful comparison therefore separates layers. At the top were rulers, military retainers, ministers and fiscal claims. Beneath them were landed rights, cultivating households and service relationships. Alongside these stood market exchange, routes toward Nepal and Bengal, religious establishments and scholarly networks. The 1324 conquest is consequently treated below as a major political rupture whose economic effects must be demonstrated sector by sector rather than assumed. This layered method also prevents later Oiniwar institutions from being projected backward into the full Karnata period.

33.2 The source base and its asymmetries

The evidence is uneven. Inscriptions can identify rulers, donors, officials, religious foundations and particular grants, but they illuminate exceptional recorded transactions more readily than ordinary cultivation. Jyotirīśvara's *Varṇaratnākara* provides an extraordinarily rich lexicon of social types, occupations, spaces, commodities and cultural practices, yet its literary form warns against reading every list as a census. Caṇḍeśvara Ṭhakkura's legal and political digests reveal categories through which learned elites thought about property, kingship, taxation, offices and disputes. Genealogies preserve remembered relations among selected groups but are not a universal population register. Archaeology at Simraungadh and associated sites supplies evidence of urban form, art production and material culture. Fifteenth-century works associated with the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura illuminate documentary and courtly practices in the Oiniwar world. Each source therefore answers a different question, and secure reconstruction depends on agreement across unlike evidence.

33.3 A Himalayan–Gangetic regional economy

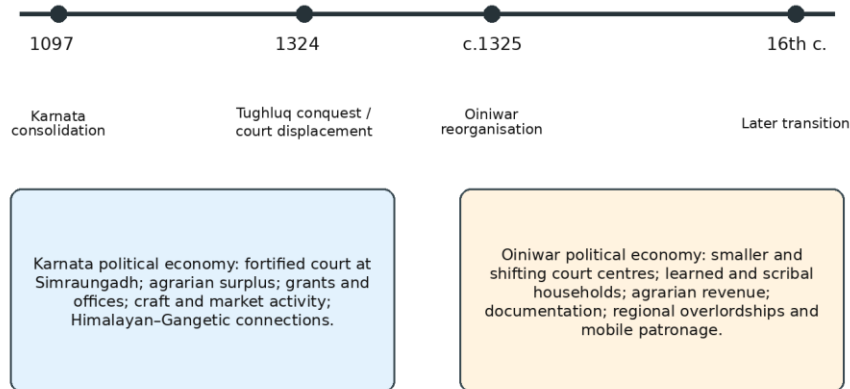
Mithila's economy was shaped by location. The plains between the Himalayan piedmont and the Ganges combined fertile alluvium with rivers whose shifting channels could enrich fields, obstruct movement and destroy settlements. The northern route system connected the plains with Nepal's valleys and passes;

eastward connections led toward Bengal; southward movement reached the Ganges and the wider commercial world of Bihar. Political boundaries did not seal these corridors. People, animals, salt, metals, textiles, manuscripts, ritual specialists and information could move across them at different scales. Simraungadh's position near the modern India–Nepal border makes sense within this geography: it was not a peripheral fortress in national terms that did not yet exist, but a node in a trans-Himalayan and Gangetic landscape. The same geography later allowed Oiniwar courts and learned households to survive through dispersed connections even when political authority became more fragmented.

33.4 Karnata state formation and Simraungadh

The inscriptional date associated with Nanyadeva's establishment of power in 1097 anchors the beginning of Karnata rule more securely than many narrative traditions. Simraungadh became the principal fortified centre of the dynasty. Fortification itself is economic evidence: walls, gates, reservoirs, roads, temples and court buildings required organised labour, materials and recurring provisioning. A capital concentrated consumers who did not produce all of their own food—rulers, soldiers, priests, scribes, artisans, visitors and dependants—and therefore drew surplus from a wider hinterland. Excavated and documented sculpture from the Simraungadh region also points to workshops and patronage connected with broader Pala-Sena artistic currents. Yet the capital should not be equated with the whole economy. Its capacity to function depended on networks of villages, local officials, routes and producers extending well beyond the fortifications.

Karnata to Oiniwar: periodisation without assuming economic rupture



Analytical rule: dynastic change can alter political extraction and patronage while villages, routes, skills and institutions persist.

Figure 128 — Karnata to Oiniwar: political periodisation and economic continuity

33.5 Agriculture as the fiscal foundation

Agriculture was the basic source of reproducible surplus. Medieval textual descriptions of Mithila repeatedly assume a countryside of cultivated fields, cattle, grain, fruit, ponds and village production. The state's interest in land was consequently not abstract territorial possession but access to recurring agrarian resources. Harvest shares, dues, service obligations and rights assigned through grants could support courts and institutions without requiring all produce to be physically transported to a central treasury. The ecological regime demanded flexibility: floods, silt deposition and channel migration could alter productivity over short distances, while the dense river network created both risk and opportunity. A realistic political

economy must therefore avoid imagining uniform yields or a single tax rate across the region. What can be stated securely is that control over agrarian claims—who could demand, remit, receive or transfer them—was central to both royal authority and local social power.

33.6 Land grants and layered rights

A medieval grant did not necessarily transfer modern absolute ownership. Charters and legal texts could distinguish cultivated land, waste, water, trees, fiscal dues and jurisdictional privileges, while existing cultivators might continue working the soil after a superior right changed hands. The useful question is therefore which rights were transferred: revenue, possession, exemption, adjudicatory privilege, access to produce or some combination. Grants to Brahmanas and religious establishments could create durable local interests and tie scholarly or ritual service to agrarian resources. They could also encourage settlement and reclamation, though such effects must be established case by case. Because many surviving grants record privileged transactions, they over-represent recipients capable of preserving documents. They nonetheless show the mechanism by which political power became embedded in local society: royal favour could be translated into recurrent claims on land and labour.

33.7 Cultivators, tenants and the production of surplus

The archive is much less articulate about ordinary cultivators than about kings and learned recipients, but no landed order functioned without them. Peasant households supplied grain, maintained cattle, processed produce and absorbed ecological shocks. Depending on locality and tenure, they might owe shares, fixed dues, labour or payments in kind and cash. C. P. N. Sinha's reconstruction of Karnata social and economic life drew attention to literary evidence for unequal relations between producing households and those claiming surplus. Such evidence should be used to identify hierarchy, not to invent precise rates of exploitation. Cultivators were also not a homogeneous class: access to plough animals, family labour, irrigable or high land, market connections and local protection could differentiate households substantially. The village economy was thus a field of negotiation among producers, superior claimants, service groups and officials rather than a simple two-class structure.

33.8 Floodplain ecology and economic resilience

The Kosi, Kamla, Bagmati, Gandak systems and their tributaries made northern Mithila unusually dynamic. Medieval people lacked modern embankment regimes, but they possessed local knowledge of raised settlement sites, seasonal routes, ponds, channels and crop timing. Floods could destroy standing crops and houses while also renewing soils and creating fisheries and grazing zones. The political economy therefore had to accommodate uncertainty. A revenue demand that ignored local ecological variation could undermine its own base, whereas flexible assessment, remission or dispersed storage could make extraction more sustainable. Direct documentation for such administrative responses is incomplete, so the chapter does not claim a uniform Karnata or Oiniwar flood policy. Instead, ecology is treated as a structural constraint explaining why settlement, market access and household reserves mattered as much as nominal sovereignty.

33.9 Village, market and town as connected scales

The categories 'village', 'market' and 'town' were not isolated boxes. A large village could host periodic exchange, specialised artisans and religious establishments; a market could serve several villages without becoming a permanent urban centre; a capital such as Simraungadh depended on supplies assembled through smaller nodes. Jyotirīśvara's descriptive vocabulary is valuable precisely because it presents a socially

differentiated world of streets, shops, occupations, entertainments and goods alongside rural life. Exchange linked grain producers with oil pressers, potters, metalworkers, cloth makers, transporters and merchants. Periodic markets reduced the need for continuous urban residence and fit a floodplain landscape in which movement could be seasonal. Under the Oiniwars, the importance of multiple smaller court locations reinforces the likelihood that political consumption was distributed across a network rather than concentrated permanently in one metropolis.

33.10 Craft production and specialised labour

Courtly and religious consumption stimulated specialised work. Stone carving, metalwork, carpentry, pottery, textiles, manuscript preparation, construction and ornament production are visible directly or indirectly in the material and textual record. Simraungadh sculpture demonstrates that skilled artistic production participated in interregional styles while remaining locally embedded. Craft specialists could work for patrons without being permanently attached to a single court; some skills were mobile, and commissions could draw artisans between centres. Everyday craft production was even broader, serving agricultural households with tools, vessels, clothing and building materials. The surviving prestige objects must therefore not define the whole craft economy. They are best understood as the upper end of a larger occupational spectrum in which subsistence, market demand, temple requirements and elite patronage overlapped.

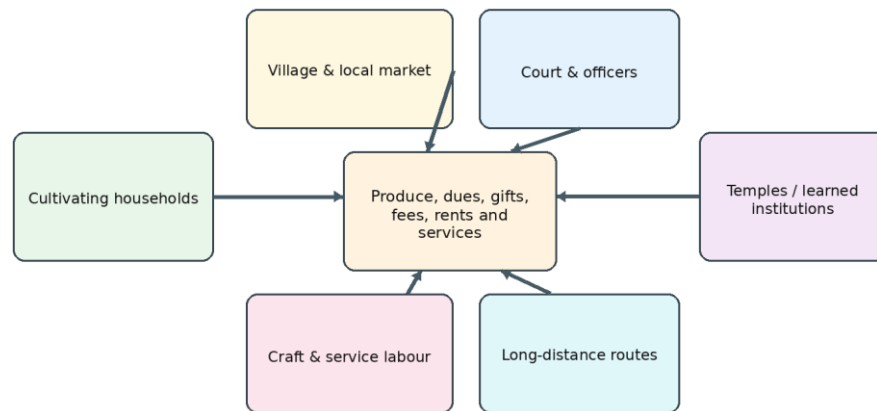
33.11 Trade routes, tolls and cross-border exchange

The Karnata capital's northern position placed it close to routes between the Gangetic plain and Nepal. Later political and literary evidence likewise shows Mithila embedded among Nepal, Bengal, Jaunpur and the Delhi sphere. Long-distance commerce did not displace local exchange; it added higher-value goods and opportunities for tolls, brokerage, transport and credit. Salt from Himalayan or trans-Himalayan circuits, metal, horses, textiles and luxury goods could move through regional networks, while grain and bulky produce generally travelled shorter distances unless price differentials justified transport. Evidence is insufficient to quantify trade volumes. Nevertheless, repeated political interest in routes and frontier centres indicates that connectivity itself was a resource. Control of passage, market dues and secure transit could generate income while also making courts dependent on wider geopolitical stability.

33.12 Money, payments in kind and the limits of monetisation claims

Coins circulated in the wider north Indian economy, but the presence of money does not imply that every tax, wage or transaction was monetised. Agrarian dues could be collected in produce; services could be remunerated through assignments, shares, customary perquisites or gifts; market transactions could use coin selectively. Political change also brought different monetary zones into contact. For social history the key issue is plural payment. Households and institutions could combine grain, labour, land rights, cash and ceremonial gifts. This plurality gave resilience where coin supply was thin but also made obligations difficult to compare. Because the surviving evidence does not support a continuous price series for medieval Mithila, claims about inflation or total monetisation would be speculative. The chapter therefore treats money as one instrument inside a mixed economy rather than as a measure of economic modernity.

Agrarian surplus circulated through several institutions



The figure is a flow model, not a claim that every payment passed through a single treasury.

Figure 129 — Agrarian surplus circulated through courts, markets, services and learned institutions

33.13 Religious and learned institutions as economic actors

Temples, monasteries and learned households consumed resources, employed specialists and redistributed patronage. A grant could sustain ritual, teaching, manuscript work, maintenance of buildings or hospitality. The Naulagarh inscriptional evidence associated with the Karnata world also complicates any image of a single religious economy by preserving traces of Buddhist institutional presence alongside Brahmanical patronage. Intellectual centres required food, housing and material support just as courts did. Their economic importance lay not only in landholding but in creating demand for scribes, students, ritual goods, books and travel. At the same time, religious prestige could legitimate donors and help stabilise claims to local authority. It is therefore misleading to separate ‘culture’ from ‘economy’: patronage converted agrarian surplus into institutions whose symbolic capital could strengthen political and social relationships.

33.14 Administrative labour: ministers, scribes and record specialists

Government required literate labour. Inscriptions name ministers and officials; legal digests presume adjudication and record; grants themselves required drafting, authentication and preservation. Kayastha and other scribal lineages appear in the documentary landscape, but the terminology must be read historically rather than forced into later fixed caste taxonomies. The career of Śrīdharadāsa, known from inscriptional and literary contexts, illustrates how a skilled official could connect courts and regions. Administrative expertise was portable capital: knowledge of formulae, account keeping, correspondence and precedent could survive dynastic change better than a particular ruler’s household. Such specialists formed an important bridge between abstract sovereignty and the practical extraction or allocation of resources. Their work made land claims legible and helped convert oral agreements into documents capable of outliving the immediate transaction.

33.15 Nanyadeva’s court: patronage as economic concentration

Nanyadeva is remembered not only as a conqueror but as a patron and intellectual participant, including in musical scholarship. Courtly learning was financed activity. Musicians, teachers, scribes, ritual specialists and performers needed maintenance, while prestige objects and ceremonies mobilised artisans and suppliers.

Patronage could attract skilled people to a court and give the dynasty cultural authority beyond military success. The economic significance of such patronage is not that culture formed a separate luxury sector, but that it concentrated surplus into human capital and reputation. A court that rewarded learning could create networks whose members later served other rulers. This helps explain why intellectual traditions in Mithila survived political disruptions. Yet patronage was selective: its visibility in texts reflects elite priorities and cannot be taken as evidence that prosperity was evenly distributed among rural producers.

33.16 Jyotirīśvara's Varṇaratnākara as an economic archive

The Varṇaratnākara, associated with the Karnata-period milieu, is one of the richest sources for reconstructing the texture of social life. Its catalogues evoke towns, markets, occupations, foodstuffs, ornaments, entertainments, religious specialists, courtesans, travellers and many forms of material culture. For economic history its value lies in range: it demonstrates a vocabulary capable of distinguishing numerous kinds of work and consumption. But genre matters. A literary thesaurus arranges the world rhetorically; it does not report numbers employed in each occupation or the market share of a commodity. The safest use is relational. If a text distinguishes many service and craft roles, historians can infer occupational specialisation; if it names diverse goods and spaces, they can infer differentiated consumption and exchange. Quantification, however, requires evidence the text was never designed to provide.

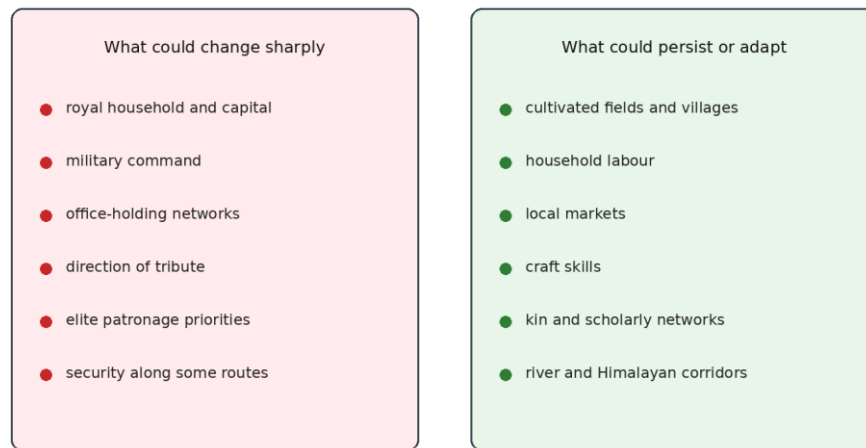
33.17 Harisimhadeva, genealogy and regulated alliance

Tradition associates Harisimhadeva's reign with the formalisation or strengthening of genealogical regulation later embodied in the Panji system. Chapter 31 treated that tradition critically: surviving manuscripts and later accounts must be dated, and institutional development may have occurred in stages. Economically, regulated marriage among selected lineages could shape alliance, property strategy, professional reputation and access to patronage. Genealogical expertise itself became specialised service. Yet this cannot justify projecting all later social rankings backward into the early fourteenth century. In particular, the distinct Śrotiṛya sub-caste classification adopted in this project is dated from Panji evidence to around 1800 CE, not to the Karnata court. Medieval records may preserve learned lineages and status distinctions without proving the existence of the later sub-caste as a fixed category.

33.18 The conquest of 1324: a political rupture with uneven economic effects

Ghiyasuddin Tughluq's campaign ended the Karnata court at Simraungadh and displaced Harisimhadeva toward Nepal. For political history this is a clear rupture. For social economy, the consequences were differentiated. A royal establishment could be dispersed; officers could lose assignments; military demands and routes could shift; elite patrons could relocate. Yet cultivated fields, village communities, craft knowledge and local kinship networks did not vanish automatically. Some disruption was likely around military movement and the abandoned court, but a claim of region-wide economic collapse would require evidence not presently available. The correct model is selective destruction and reorientation within a resilient agrarian landscape. This distinction also clarifies why new political arrangements could emerge relatively quickly: successor rulers inherited not empty territory but functioning productive and social infrastructures.

1324: separating political rupture from socio-economic continuity



Historical reconstruction requires evidence for each layer; “conquest” is not a synonym for total economic collapse.

Figure 130 — The 1324 rupture: separating political change from socio-economic persistence

33.19 Continuity under new overlords

After the Karnata collapse, Mithila’s rulers operated in a world where Delhi, Bengal, Jaunpur and Nepal could exert varying degrees of pressure or opportunity. Political autonomy was therefore negotiated rather than absolute. Tribute, military service, recognition and alliance could redirect part of the surplus outward while leaving much local administration in place. Such arrangements were common in premodern South Asia because central powers often found it cheaper to work through local intermediaries than to administer every village directly. The resulting economy had several levels of claim: cultivators produced; local holders and officials collected or managed; a regional court supported its household and dependants; and an overlord could demand acknowledgement or tribute. This layering helps explain why literary culture could flourish in modest courts that were politically subordinate yet socially influential.

33.20 Oiniwar polity and the scale of court power

The Oiniwars did not reproduce Simraungadh’s large fortified capital. Their political centres shifted among places remembered as Oini, Sugauna, Devakuli, Gajarathpura and other court locations. Pankaj Jha’s study of the fifteenth-century literary world emphasises the relatively small scale and contingent autonomy of these north Bihar chieftaincies. Economically, a smaller court could still be significant locally. It concentrated revenue, consumed agricultural produce, commissioned texts and rituals, supported officials and formed alliances. But its fiscal reach may have been more negotiated and spatially dispersed than that of an idealised centralised kingdom. The movement of court centres also redistributed demand: villages near a residence could gain patrons and suppliers, while old centres could decline. Court mobility should therefore be read as a feature of regional political economy, not simply as evidence of administrative weakness.

33.21 Shifting capitals and distributed fiscal geography

A moving or multiple court changes the geography of extraction and consumption. Instead of one permanent urban concentration, authority travels with the ruler, household, officers and ritual apparatus. Supplies may be assembled from nearby estates and villages; temporary markets and service clusters can expand around the court; routes between residences gain importance. Oiniwar political geography therefore

suggests a network of nodes rather than a single dominant city. This does not mean taxes were improvised at every move. Documentary claims, hereditary rights and local intermediaries could maintain continuity while the court relocated. The economic effect was to bind several localities into circuits of hospitality, provisioning and patronage. It also reduced the historian's ability to identify one archaeological 'capital' whose material record would stand for the whole dynasty.

33.22 Learned households and the political economy of scholarship

Mithila's reputation as a centre of Sanskrit learning in the fourteenth to sixteenth centuries rested on material support. Scholars required households, students, manuscripts, food and time removed from full-time agricultural labour. Land assignments, gifts, court employment, ritual fees and teaching networks could supply these resources. Learning in turn generated political value: jurists advised rulers, scribes prepared documents, teachers enhanced a patron's reputation and scholastic lineages attracted students from outside the region. Knowledge was therefore both cultural capital and a form of skilled labour. The Oiniwar court's modest territorial scale did not prevent it from participating in much larger intellectual networks. Indeed, portable expertise allowed a learned household to remain influential even when a particular patron declined. This institutional resilience is one reason political fragmentation should not be equated with cultural or economic stagnation.

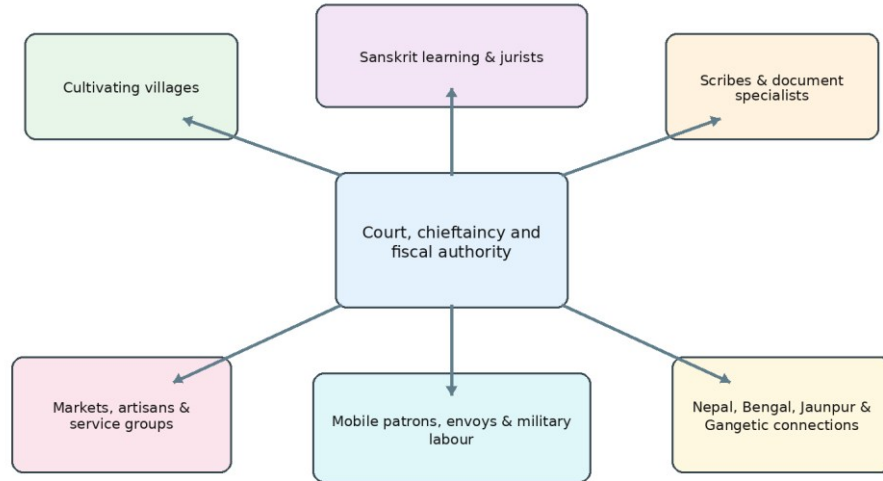
33.23 Caṇḍeśvara and the fiscal imagination of kingship

Caṇḍeśvara Ṭhakkura's Rājanīratnākara belongs to the early fourteenth-century Mithila intellectual world and systematises political categories drawn from earlier Sanskrit traditions. As a normative treatise it cannot be used as an administrative manual proving that every rule was implemented. It nevertheless reveals what a learned minister-jurist considered essential to kingship: revenue, officers, protection, punishment, territory, war, counsel and legitimate transfer of authority. Read alongside his legal digests, the work demonstrates a sophisticated conceptual separation of fiscal and judicial problems. This matters economically because extraction required legitimacy and procedure as well as force. The treatise's afterlife also shows how regional political actors could appropriate older imperial vocabularies even when ruling much smaller territories. Political imagination could be larger than the material scale of a court.

33.24 Document culture and the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura

The project distinguishes the earlier Mahākavi Vidyāpati from the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura associated with Oiniwar and neighbouring courts and with Sanskrit and Avahatṭa works such as Likhanāvalī, Puruṣaparīkṣā and Kīrtilatā. For Chapter 33, Likhanāvalī is especially important because a manual of letters and documents reveals the social demand for formal written communication. Petitions, orders, grants, acknowledgements and private letters required recognised forms, scribal skill and institutional memory. Pankaj Jha has shown that such writing practices were part of a broader fifteenth-century political culture rather than mere literary ornament. Economically, documentation reduced ambiguity in obligations and allowed claims to travel across space and time. It also created specialised labour and gave literate households leverage in courts and disputes.

Oiniwar-era court society as a distributed network



"Distributed" describes multiple interacting centres and households; it does not imply absence of hierarchy.

Figure 131 — Oiniwar-era court society as a distributed social-economic network

33.25 Service communities and occupational interdependence

Agrarian surplus supported a wide field of service labour: artisans, transporters, ritual specialists, domestic workers, performers, guards, messengers, scribes and many other occupations. Some services were exchanged through markets; others were embedded in patronage, customary dues or household dependency. The temptation to translate each medieval occupational term directly into a later caste is especially dangerous. Occupation, lineage, status and endogamy could overlap without being identical, and their relationship changed over centuries. The evidence from literary lists and legal categories is strongest for demonstrating occupational differentiation and hierarchy. It is weaker for proving the exact social boundaries of every group. A social-economic history should therefore ask what work was performed, who paid or maintained the worker, and how portable the skill was before assigning a later community label.

33.26 Women and household production

Chapter 32 showed that women's legal visibility is only one part of their economic history. In the Karnata and Oiniwar countryside, household production depended on labour that texts often leave unnamed: processing grain, managing food stores, textile work, tending animals, collecting fuel, assisting cultivation, caring for children and maintaining ritual and domestic spaces. Elite households added management of servants, gifts and movable property. Marriage linked households and could redirect resources through dowry-like transfers, *strīdhana*, maintenance and inheritance claims, but the surviving prescriptive texts cannot tell us how frequently each rule was applied across social strata. The important economic conclusion is structural: the agrarian household was not a male individual producer. It was a cooperative and hierarchical unit whose reproduction depended heavily on women's paid and unpaid work, even where formal documents foreground male holders.

33.27 Mobility, military labour and migration

Political competition generated movement. Soldiers, retainers, messengers, scribes, scholars and artisans could follow patrons; merchants and transporters followed opportunity; displaced elites crossed into Nepal after military defeat. Such mobility moved more than people. It carried languages, legal forms, artistic styles,

religious practices and credit relationships. The Karnata dynasty's own origin traditions place it within wider movements of military elites, while the post-1324 displacement of Harisimhadeva illustrates the reverse process. Later Oiniwar politics also unfolded amid shifting relations with neighbouring sultanates. Mobility therefore belongs inside economic history because skills and patronage were transferable assets. At the same time, migration should not be exaggerated into mass demographic replacement without evidence. Most agrarian production depended on populations that remained tied to local land and water regimes even as elites circulated.

33.28 Regional powers and the circulation of surplus

Mithila's economy was never insulated from larger states. Karnata rulers negotiated with Senas, Kalachuris and powers in Nepal; later chieftains confronted Delhi, Bengal and Jaunpur. Warfare could destroy assets, but political connection also opened markets and patronage. A ruler recognised by a larger power might retain local revenues after tribute; a scholar could seek service beyond Mithila; merchants could exploit routes protected by changing authorities. The fifteenth-century world described by later Vidyapati Thakkura's political literature makes sense in this multi-centred environment. Regional surplus thus circulated outward through tribute, military expenditure and trade while external goods, coin, styles and ideas circulated inward. The balance varied over time, and the evidence does not permit a single estimate of 'drain' or prosperity. What is clear is that political economy operated across scales larger than the local dynasty.

33.29 Status formation without retrospective caste projection

Land, office, learning, ritual authority and marriage regulation could generate durable status differences. Medieval Mithila unquestionably contained hierarchy and named social groups. The methodological problem is not whether hierarchy existed but how its categories changed. Later genealogies and colonial ethnographies often present classifications as timeless, whereas earlier inscriptions and texts may use different vocabularies or attach different meanings to the same word. This chapter therefore follows the governing rule established in Chapters 29–31: no modern or early-modern sub-caste will be projected backward without period evidence. The Śrottriya case is decisive. Panji-based evidence used in this project dates its emergence as a distinct sub-caste to around 1800 CE. Karnata or Oiniwar learned elites can be described as Brahmanas, jurists, scholars or holders where sources support those terms, but not retrospectively as members of that later fixed sub-caste.

33.30 Conclusion: prosperity, dynastic change and institutional continuity

Royal patronage, rich literary description, monumental remains and active scholarship can tempt historians to label an entire period prosperous. Such a judgement requires caution. Courtly abundance may coexist with heavy peasant burdens; an urban centre may flourish while flood-affected districts struggle; elite texts may celebrate gifts precisely because resources were concentrated. Conversely, political fragmentation does not prove economic decline if cultivation, markets and skilled labour continue. The evidence supports a picture of productive agrarian foundations, occupational differentiation, regional trade and substantial patronage under both Karnata and Oiniwar orders. It does not support a numerical estimate of regional income or a uniform standard of living. Prosperity is therefore treated as distributional and sectoral: who controlled surplus, who consumed it, and which institutions were able to reproduce themselves across political change.

The Karnata and Oiniwar centuries reveal a political economy in which land remained fundamental but never acted alone. Agrarian surplus moved through villages, offices, courts, religious establishments, learned households, markets and long-distance routes. Simraungadh represented one powerful concentration of that system; its fall in 1324 altered the political centre without erasing the productive landscape. Oiniwar rule reorganised authority around smaller and shifting courts, while documentary expertise, Sanskrit learning, genealogical practice and regional mobility supplied forms of continuity. The later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura's documentary and political works belong to this fifteenth-century world and must remain distinct from the earlier Mahākavi Vidyāpati. Likewise, later caste formations must not be made medieval by repetition. The central historical lesson is institutional: dynasties command attention because their names survive, but social economies endure through the households, skills, documents, land rights and routes that make rule possible.

Table 33.1 — Karnata and Oiniwar social economy: evidence, use and limit

Evidence	Primary period / context	Secure use	Limit
Karnata inscriptions and grants	12th–early 14th c.	Identify rulers, officials, donors, institutions and recorded rights	Recorded grants over-represent privileged transactions and recipients
Simraungadh archaeology and sculpture	Karnata capital and wider artistic zone	Reconstruct fortified consumption, skilled production and material connections	Capital evidence cannot represent every village economy
Jyotirīśvara, Varṇaratnākara	Late Karnata milieu	Recover vocabulary of occupations, goods, spaces and consumption	Literary classification is not a census or price series
Caṇḍeśvara's legal and political digests	Early 14th c.	Study learned concepts of property, revenue, office and governance	Normative categories do not prove universal administrative practice
Panji and genealogical materials	Developing medieval tradition with later manuscripts	Trace selected marriage, lineage and professional networks when dated	Not a universal population register; later categories require independent dating
Later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura's works	15th-century Oiniwar / neighbouring courts	Study documentary practice, political language, mobility and courtly networks	Literary-political works require genre control and must not be assigned to the earlier Mahākavi
Regional chronicles and later histories	Post-medieval witnesses to earlier traditions	Recover remembered political sequences and compare source traditions	Late testimony can compress chronology and project later institutions backward
Environmental and settlement evidence	Long-duration floodplain economy	Explain constraints on agriculture, routes, storage and settlement resilience	Does not by itself establish a particular tax or social rule

Chapter 34 — Islam, Migration and New Social Worlds

Islam entered the social history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga through more than conquest. From the thirteenth century onward, the region stood inside a widening field of movement linking Delhi and the middle Ganga plain, Lakhnauti and Bengal, Jaunpur, Bihar, Anga and the routes toward Nepal. Armies and governors mattered, but so did merchants, transporters, scribes, scholars, Sufis, artisans, soldiers seeking employment, refugees and households that moved with patrons or opportunity. Their presence created new institutions and new forms of language, consumption and association without making every locality identical. The history of these encounters therefore has to be reconstructed as a history of mobility and settlement rather than as a simple sequence of invasions. The chapter also keeps four processes analytically distinct: conquest, migration, durable settlement and religious change. A victorious army does not by itself prove large-scale migration; a migrant population does not by itself prove conversion among older inhabitants; and later demographic patterns cannot be projected backward without evidence. Persian chronicles, Arabic and Persian inscriptions, Sufi letters and discourses, Sanskrit and Avahatṭa literature, archaeology, genealogy and later regional histories each preserve different slices of this past. Read together and critically, they reveal a medieval society in which religious difference existed alongside political bargaining, service, exchange, shared routes and multilingual communication.

34.1 Islam as a social history, not an invasion label

The conventional phrase ‘Muslim invasion’ can identify episodes of warfare but is too narrow to explain social change. Political armies were composed of people with different origins and functions; after campaigns, some individuals departed, some entered garrisons or service, and others were followed by administrators, scholars, traders and religious specialists. At the same time, older residents continued to cultivate land, manage villages, worship, trade and serve local courts. Islam therefore appeared in the region through institutions and persons whose relations to state power varied greatly. A qazi, a mounted soldier, a Sufi teacher, a merchant and a Persian-trained scribe did not represent a single social type. Nor did Muslim communities remain socially homogeneous after settlement. The correct historical question is not when an abstract ‘Islam’ arrived, but how particular people, practices and institutions acquired local presence. This approach also prevents political chronology from swallowing social chronology: the dates of conquest provide anchors, while the density and character of everyday interaction must be established separately.

34.2 Source control: chronicles, inscriptions, literature and memory

The evidence is uneven and socially selective. Sultanate chronicles privilege rulers, campaigns, rebellions and elite appointments. Arabic and Persian inscriptions are often more securely dated and can establish the presence of mosques, tombs, patrons, builders and officials, but their survival is accidental and geographically uneven. Sufi maktubat and malfuzat illuminate teaching networks, disciples and ethical worlds, yet they are not censuses of Muslim settlement. Sanskrit and Avahatṭa texts composed in Mithila can preserve political vocabulary, descriptions of outsiders, documentary forms and memories of conflict, but literary genre shapes what they say. Later genealogies and local histories may preserve earlier traditions while also reorganising them through later social categories. No single class of evidence can sustain a demographic narrative. The method used here is cumulative: a claim becomes stronger when independent evidence—dated inscription, contemporary or near-contemporary text, material remain and regionally plausible route—converges, and weaker when it depends only on a much later story.

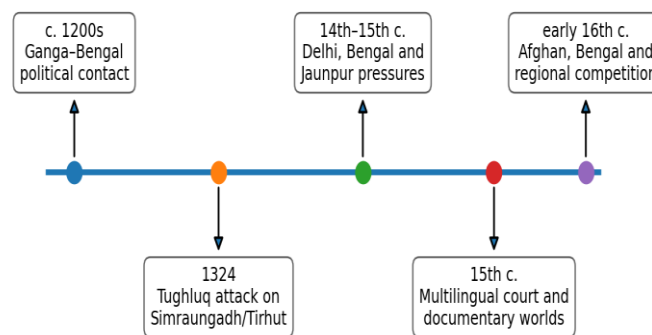
34.3 Before 1324: a connected frontier already in formation

The Tughluq attack on Simraungadh in 1324 was a major political rupture, but it was not the beginning of all contact between Mithila and Muslim-ruled territories. By the thirteenth century, Turkish and Persianate states were established across much of the Gangetic plain and Bengal. Routes joining Bihar, Lakhnauti, the Ganga crossings and north Bihar carried military information, merchants, messengers and officials. Political pressure from neighbouring regimes could be episodic rather than continuous, and frontier zones could shift without permanent occupation. The very existence of a Karnata court in a region surrounded by expanding Sultanate power created diplomatic and military contact before direct conquest. Evidence for particular settlements in Mithila before 1324 must nevertheless be treated case by case. The broader connection is historically secure; the size and permanence of every local Muslim presence are not. This distinction matters because later narratives sometimes convert repeated border contact into anachronistic claims of uniform rule.

34.4 The 1324 Tughluq attack: political rupture, not demographic zero point

Ghiyasuddin Tughluq's 1324 campaign against Simraungadh ended the Karnata court and forced Harisimhadeva northward. Persian and regional traditions differ in narrative detail, but the political consequence is clear: the fortified centre ceased to function as the dynastic capital. For social history, the event should be disaggregated. A campaign could destroy or appropriate stores, disrupt routes, displace retainers and redirect tribute. It could also bring soldiers, camp followers, officials and intermediaries into new landscapes. Yet even a successful conquest did not empty the countryside or automatically replace its population. Village cultivation, kinship and local exchange could survive while political command changed. Nor does the presence of a Sultanate army prove the immediate creation of large Muslim settlements throughout Tirhut. The event is best treated as an accelerator of mobility and political connection, one that widened the channels through which later service, settlement and cultural contact operated.

Mithila and the wider north-eastern Gangetic world, c. 1200-1550



Political interventions changed courts and routes; social change accumulated through repeated mobility, settlement and exchange.

Figure 132 — Political contact and social change, c. 1200–1550

34.5 Tirhut between Delhi, Bengal and Jaunpur

After the Karnata collapse, Tirhut lay among several centres of power whose reach fluctuated. Delhi's Tughluqs claimed authority; Bengal sultans repeatedly influenced Bihar; the Sharqi kingdom of Jaunpur became a major fifteenth-century power; and local Oiniwar rulers retained or recovered varying degrees of autonomy. Political maps that colour an entire region as permanently belonging to one state conceal this instability. For inhabitants, overlapping claims could mean tribute to one power at one moment, alliance with another at the next, and substantial local autonomy in between. Such a setting favoured intermediaries who could negotiate languages, legal conventions and political expectations. It also encouraged movement of military specialists, envoys and scribes across boundaries that were political rather than modern territorial borders. Social change followed these repeated contacts more than any single line of conquest.

34.6 Military mobility and the social life of garrisons

Armies were mobile labour systems. Cavalrymen, foot soldiers, armourers, farriers, suppliers, cooks, transport workers, clerks and camp merchants moved with campaigns. Where military presence became recurrent, some of these people could remain in service under provincial or local authorities, marry, acquire property or develop supply relations with nearby markets. Garrisons therefore mattered socially even when they were small. Their demand for grain, fodder, animals, metalwork, cloth and transport linked military power to rural producers and artisans. At the same time, the archaeological or textual visibility of a fort should not be converted into an estimate of population without evidence. The key transformation was the creation of recurring service corridors: military employment became one route by which people from Persianate and Islamicate networks entered north Bihar, while local men could also seek employment in larger armies. Movement was two-way, not simply an influx from outside.

34.7 Administrators, qazis and fiscal intermediaries

Sultanate expansion depended on literate administration as well as force. Revenue assessment, orders, petitions, judicial decisions and correspondence required trained personnel. Persian became increasingly important in political and documentary worlds across north India, while Arabic retained high prestige in religious and legal learning. In frontier and tributary regions, officials often depended on local intermediaries who knew land, kinship, routes and customary obligations. This produced a social field in which political authority was translated through collaboration. A Persian document did not mean that the countryside had become Persian-speaking; rather, it indicates an administrative register with specialised users. Likewise, the existence of a qazi establishes an Islamic legal office but not the disappearance of other forums of dispute settlement. Multiple normative and documentary systems could coexist, each serving different communities or types of claim.

34.8 Migration was socially differentiated

Migration should not be treated as a single stream. Some movement was elite and temporary: ambassadors, officers and scholars followed courts. Some was occupational: horse dealers, merchants, artisans, scribes and soldiers followed demand. Some was devotional: Sufis and students travelled between teachers, hospices and centres of learning. Some was coerced or crisis-driven: war and dynastic collapse displaced retainers and households. Still other movement involved local people leaving Mithila for Bengal, Jaunpur, Bihar or Nepal. These migrants differed in resources and in their ability to preserve networks across distance. A high-ranking officer could travel with dependants and patronage; a transporter or craft worker might attach himself to a market or military route; a displaced cultivator left far fewer records. The archive

therefore magnifies mobile elites while under-recording ordinary circulation. Social history must compensate by distinguishing visibility from numerical importance.

Migration and circulation around medieval Tirhut/Mithila

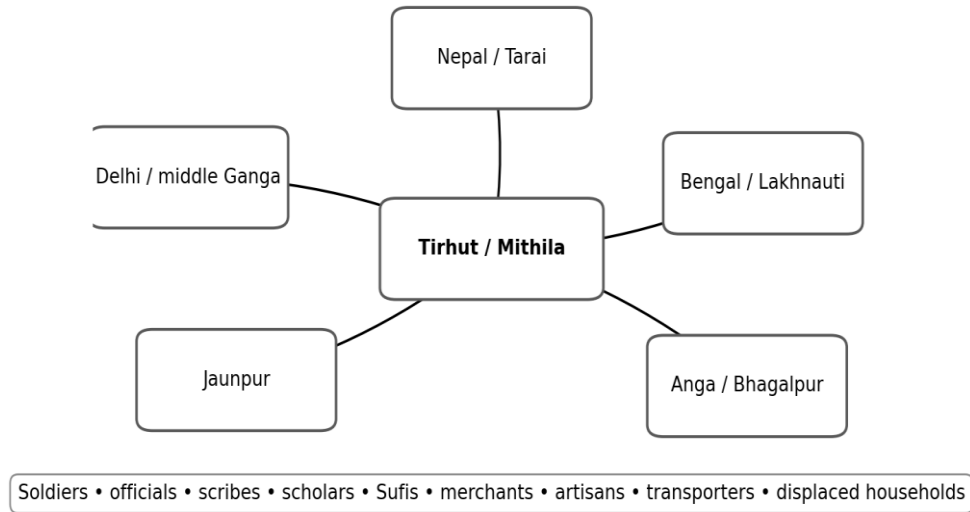


Figure 133 — Bidirectional migration and circulation around medieval Tirhut/Mithila

34.9 Markets, merchants and the Ganga–Bengal corridor

Commercial movement linked Mithila to the Ganga and to eastern markets regardless of dynastic allegiance. Grain, salt, cloth, livestock, metals, horses and specialised goods travelled through combinations of river, road and periodic market. Anga and the Bhagalpur–Munger zone connected the middle and lower Ganga worlds, while crossings toward Hajipur and other north-Bihar routes linked Tirhut to wider circuits. Muslim merchants were part of these networks, but commerce should not be assigned a single religious identity: Hindu, Jain and Muslim traders, transporters and brokers could use the same routes and market infrastructure. Commercial contact created practical multilingualism and repeated face-to-face interaction. It also carried objects, measures, fashions and credit practices beyond the political centres where chronicles concentrate attention. The result was not cultural uniformity but increasing familiarity across social boundaries.

34.10 Sufi mobility and the geography of discipleship

Sufi networks offer a different map from political conquest. Teachers travelled, disciples visited, letters circulated, and lodges or hospices connected local religious life to wider spiritual lineages. The fourteenth-century career of Sharafuddin Ahmad Yahya Maneri in Bihar is particularly important for understanding the eastern Gangetic environment, even though Bihar Sharif and Maner are not themselves Mithila. His Hundred Letters and associated traditions show a Persianate Islamic learned and devotional world rooted in Bihar and connected to patrons, disciples and other centres. Such evidence makes the presence of mobile religious networks near Mithila historically plausible and helps explain how Islam could spread through teaching and association independently of direct state policy. It does not, however, license the assignment of every later shrine or conversion story to the fourteenth century. Each local tradition requires its own dating.

34.11 Bihar's Sufi centres and Mithila: proximity without conflation

The major documented Sufi centres of medieval Bihar demonstrate a dense religious landscape south of the Ganga and along important routes. Their influence could reach northward through disciples, correspondence, pilgrimage and patronage. Yet regional proximity must not be confused with direct evidence for institutional branches in every part of Mithila. A careful history therefore uses Maneri and other Bihar Sufis as evidence for the wider social world in which Tirhut participated, while reserving claims about particular Mithila shrines for locally dated sources. This is especially important because later hagiography often telescopes centuries and links prestigious saints to places in ways that enhance local sanctity. Hagiographic memory is historically valuable—it reveals how communities understood belonging—but it must be separated from the chronology of initial settlement.

34.12 Mosques, tombs and inscriptions: material anchors with survival bias

Arabic and Persian inscriptions are among the strongest chronological anchors for Muslim institutions in Bihar. A dated foundation or funerary inscription can identify a patron, office, ruler, building and religious vocabulary at a particular place. Qeyamuddin Ahmad's corpus demonstrates the variety of such evidence across Bihar under Tughluq, Sharqi, Bengal Sultanate, Afghan and Mughal regimes. For north Bihar, however, survival and publication are uneven. Floods, rebuilding, reuse of stone, changing settlement and inadequate documentation have erased much. Absence of a known inscription therefore cannot prove absence of a community, just as one surviving inscription cannot establish the size of a settlement. Material evidence is best read as a minimum: it proves that a particular institution or person existed where and when the object says, while demographic conclusions require additional evidence.

34.13 Towns and route junctions as zones of intensified encounter

Contact was rarely distributed evenly across the countryside. Administrative centres, ferries, forts, pilgrimage sites, large markets and route junctions concentrated strangers and specialists. A village away from major routes might experience political change mainly through taxation or occasional troop passage; a market town could host merchants, scribes, soldiers, preachers and travellers from several linguistic and religious communities. This unevenness helps explain why cultural borrowing can appear strongly in elite or urban texts while many rural practices remain locally continuous. It also cautions against using the history of one town to represent the whole region. Social worlds overlapped at nodes and then diffused selectively through marriage, employment, patronage and commerce.

34.14 Multilingualism: Persian, Arabic, Sanskrit, Maithili and Avahaṭṭa

The new political environment increased the practical value of multilingual competence. Persian functioned as a major language of power and documentation in Sultanate states; Arabic remained central to Islamic scripture, law and scholarship; Sanskrit continued to dominate learned Brahmanical disciplines in Mithila; and Maithili and related vernacular registers carried everyday and literary communication. Avahaṭṭa and other literary registers could mediate between high and vernacular forms. These languages did not occupy sealed communities. Pankaj Jha's study of fifteenth-century Mithila demonstrates a literary world shaped by interaction among diverse political-cultural traditions. Borrowed terms, comparable administrative genres and shared ethical concerns show contact without requiring that one language simply replaced another. Multilingualism was a social skill and a record of mobility.

34.15 Documentary labour and the translation of authority

Documents connected people who did not share the same oral language or legal tradition. Orders, letters, petitions, grants and acknowledgements had to be drafted in recognised forms, carried, read and interpreted. This created demand for scribes and intermediaries able to move between local knowledge and wider political conventions. The later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura's *Likhanāvalī* is crucial precisely because it belongs to a fifteenth-century world in which documentary genres had become sophisticated instruments of political and social action. The work is Sanskrit, but its documentary imagination existed alongside Persian epistolary and administrative traditions. Similarity should not be reduced to direct copying without proof; the stronger point is that north Indian courts were converging on the need for portable written forms. Such practices helped migrants and local elites negotiate property, service and patronage across political boundaries.

34.16 The later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura in a Persianate-connected world

This project keeps the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura distinct from the earlier Mahākavi Vidyāpati. The fifteenth-century author associated with Oiniwar and neighbouring courts wrote in Sanskrit and Avahatṭa within a political world already transformed by more than two centuries of Indo-Persian state formation. His *Kīrtilatā* and other works refer to rulers, warfare, political conduct and social types in ways that make sense only inside this connected environment. Pankaj Jha has shown that the author's literary universe was neither culturally isolated nor reducible to Persian influence. It was polycentric and multilingual, capable of appropriating, translating and criticising forms of authority from several traditions. For social history this is evidence that elite intellectuals in Mithila understood and operated within a wider north Indian political ecology.

Channels through which new social worlds formed

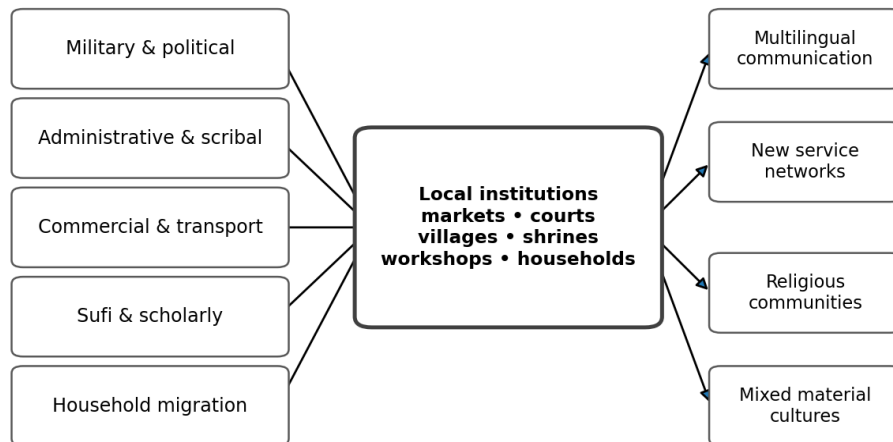


Figure 134 — Channels through which new social worlds formed

34.17 *Kīrtilatā*: political contact seen through literary genre

Kīrtilatā is valuable because it records a world of conflict, kingship, travel and political aspiration, but it remains a crafted literary text. Its descriptions of Turks or Sultanate power cannot be read as a statistical account of Muslim society. Literary contrast can sharpen identities for narrative purposes, while praise of a patron can organise events around heroic legitimacy. The text becomes most useful when read alongside

political chronology and documentary evidence. It shows that Muslim rulers and Persianate power were not remote abstractions for fifteenth-century Mithila's courtly imagination. At the same time, its very sophistication demonstrates interaction: an author could represent competing political worlds using a repertoire intelligible to audiences already familiar with them. The source therefore reveals cultural proximity more securely than demographic proportion.

34.18 Local rulers and Sultanate powers: negotiation as normal politics

Relations between Oiniwar rulers and larger Sultanate states were not permanently hostile or permanently subordinate. Tribute, conflict, alliance, recognition and tactical accommodation could succeed one another quickly. A local ruler might resist one expedition while seeking legitimacy or security through another power. This was ordinary medieval politics, not evidence of immutable religious blocs. The social consequence of such negotiation was to keep channels of contact open. Envoys crossed frontiers, gifts circulated, officers changed patrons and military service connected households to distant courts. Political competition could intensify religious rhetoric, but practical governance often required cooperation across religious lines. The historian must therefore separate the ideological language of chronicles from the mixed personnel and negotiated arrangements that made rule workable.

34.19 Conflict and accommodation were simultaneous possibilities

Episodes of violence are indispensable to the history of the period, yet they should not become a total explanation. Raids, sieges and punitive expeditions damaged settlements and created fear; taxation and military extraction could be coercive; sacred sites could be affected by conflict. At the same time, the same political order could employ local landholders, revenue intermediaries, craftsmen and scholars whose religious identities differed from those of ruling elites. Markets reopened after campaigns because all parties required supplies and revenue. Accommodation did not erase inequality or violence, and conflict did not prevent cooperation. Both processes could occur in the same generation. A social history that recognises this simultaneity is better able to explain how durable mixed institutions emerged despite recurrent warfare.

34.20 Conversion: evidence, mechanisms and limits

Religious conversion is the area most vulnerable to retrospective simplification. A political conquest does not demonstrate mass conversion, and a later Muslim-majority village does not prove when or how its ancestors changed affiliation. Conversion could occur through conviction, Sufi teaching, marriage, patronage, occupational networks, household choice or gradual reorientation of ritual practice; the relative importance of these mechanisms varied by place and period. Richard Eaton's work on Bengal is valuable for showing that Islamisation can be connected to long-term agrarian and social processes rather than explained by force alone. Mithila, however, was not Bengal's eastern delta, and Bengal's model cannot be transferred mechanically. For medieval Mithila the surviving evidence supports the existence and growth of Muslim communities more securely than it supports precise conversion rates. Claims about mass coercion or a single conversion mechanism therefore exceed the evidence.

34.21 Household formation, marriage and local rootedness

Migration becomes settlement when people establish durable social reproduction: households, marriage ties, property, neighbourhoods, burial places and institutions. These processes are much less visible than royal campaigns, but they are essential to explaining the persistence of Muslim communities in Bihar and north Bihar. Newcomers could marry within migrant networks or form local alliances; descendants born in

the region no longer fit a simple opposition between ‘foreign’ and ‘indigenous’. Over generations, language, food, dress and occupational practice could become locally specific while religious institutions retained wider connections. The social history of Islam in Mithila is therefore also a history of becoming local. This process did not require cultural sameness. Distinct religious identities could be reproduced within a shared regional economy and vernacular environment.

34.22 Artisans, service groups and occupational neighbourhoods

Courts, military establishments, mosques, shrines and growing markets required specialised labour. Builders, masons, metalworkers, textile producers, leather workers, cooks, grooms, musicians, barbers, boatmen and many other service providers could work for patrons of different religions. Some crafts may have attracted migrants with particular skills, while others remained dominated by established local communities. Occupational proximity created everyday exchange below the level of theological debate. It also complicates later caste narratives: a medieval occupation cannot automatically be equated with a modern caste name or assumed to have had the same boundaries. Muslim occupational communities likewise developed internal distinctions over time. The secure historical point is interdependence: new institutions added demand to an already differentiated labour economy.

34.23 Food, dress and material culture as slow histories of contact

Material culture often changes through borrowing that texts barely notice. New ingredients, cooking methods, tailoring styles, weapons, horse equipment, architectural forms, metal vessels and luxury goods could travel with merchants, soldiers and courts. Persianate elite fashion influenced much of north India, but local climate, agriculture and craft traditions transformed imported forms. It would be misleading to label every later food or garment of north Bihar as ‘Muslim’ or ‘Hindu’ in origin; many items passed through multiple communities before becoming regional. The historical value lies in tracing channels of circulation rather than claiming pure cultural ownership. Archaeology, art history, vocabulary and later culinary traditions can suggest such exchange, but exact medieval dating requires caution. Material hybridity is usually cumulative and difficult to attach to one conquest.

34.24 Shrines, sacred geographies and shared social space

Religious communities maintained doctrinal distinctions, yet sacred landscapes could still overlap socially. Roads to shrines were also market routes; fairs attracted vendors and transporters; saints’ reputations could spread beyond formal discipleship. In many parts of South Asia, later evidence records participation across religious boundaries at particular shrines, but such practices must not automatically be projected into the fourteenth or fifteenth century. The medieval evidence for Mithila is thinner than for some neighbouring regions. What can be stated more securely is that Sufi institutions created new sacred nodes within a landscape already dense with Brahmanical, Buddhist and Jain memories. These nodes participated in the same economy of travel, gift, hospitality and reputation. Religious difference thus produced new places of assembly without making the region a single syncretic culture.

34.25 Muslim society was internally differentiated

The word ‘Muslim’ conceals distinctions of lineage, occupation, wealth, learning, legal status and regional origin. Sultanate elites of Turkish, Afghan, Persian or other backgrounds did not represent all Muslims. Sayyids, learned families, Sufis, soldiers, artisans, converts and rural households could possess very different resources and social claims. Over time, locally born Muslim communities developed hierarchies of their own,

some later expressed through ashraf and occupational status vocabularies. These later classifications should not be projected unchanged into the early medieval period. The same chronological discipline applied elsewhere in this volume therefore applies here: social categories must be dated. Internal Muslim differentiation is historically important because it shaped marriage, patronage and access to office, and because it prevents the false image of two uniform communities confronting one another across a fixed boundary.

34.26 Nepal and the Tarai: bidirectional movement across the northern frontier

The fall of Simraungadh demonstrates dramatically that movement between Mithila and Nepal could accompany political crisis, but migration across the northern frontier was a longer process. Courts, marriage alliances, pilgrimage, trade, scholarship and seasonal movement connected the plains and the Kathmandu Valley. Muslim political expansion in the Gangetic plain added new reasons for mobility without creating a sealed Hindu refuge to the north. Merchants and service personnel could move in either direction, and political refugees from one conflict could become actors in another court. The Tarai's ecology and routes conditioned the scale and seasonality of movement. Because modern international borders did not exist, it is misleading to describe this circulation in present-day immigration terms. It belonged to a regional social world whose political jurisdictions changed more rapidly than many kinship and commercial connections.

34.27 Women, migration and the archive of silence

Medieval sources name far more male rulers, saints, officials and scholars than women, but migration was rarely an exclusively male process. Military and administrative households included dependants; merchants and artisans formed families; elite marriages linked courts; displacement affected women as well as men. Women also transmitted language, food practice, ritual and kinship connections inside households, making them central to the localisation of migrant communities. Yet this work is difficult to document because chronicles rarely record ordinary women and inscriptions tend to privilege patrons. The appropriate response is neither to omit women nor to invent details. Household formation can be inferred as a necessary condition of durable community reproduction, while the specific legal and economic positions of women require evidence of the kind discussed in Chapter 32. The archive's silence is itself a historical fact about whose mobility institutions chose to record.

34.28 Memory, legend and later communal narratives

Later histories of medieval conflict were written in societies with their own religious and political concerns. Local legends may convert an uncertain skirmish into a civilisational battle, assign a shrine to a famous saint, or make a later social division appear ancient. Colonial historiography also encouraged periodisations that treated 'Hindu' and 'Muslim' rule as homogeneous blocks. Such narratives cannot simply be discarded, because they reveal how communities remembered the past, but they require source criticism. Dates, offices, place-names and genealogical sequences should be checked against inscriptions and contemporary texts where possible. The chapter's purpose is not to minimise conflict but to prevent memory from substituting for chronology. Social worlds are especially vulnerable to distortion when later identities are projected backward.

Evidence firewall: four processes that must not be collapsed into one

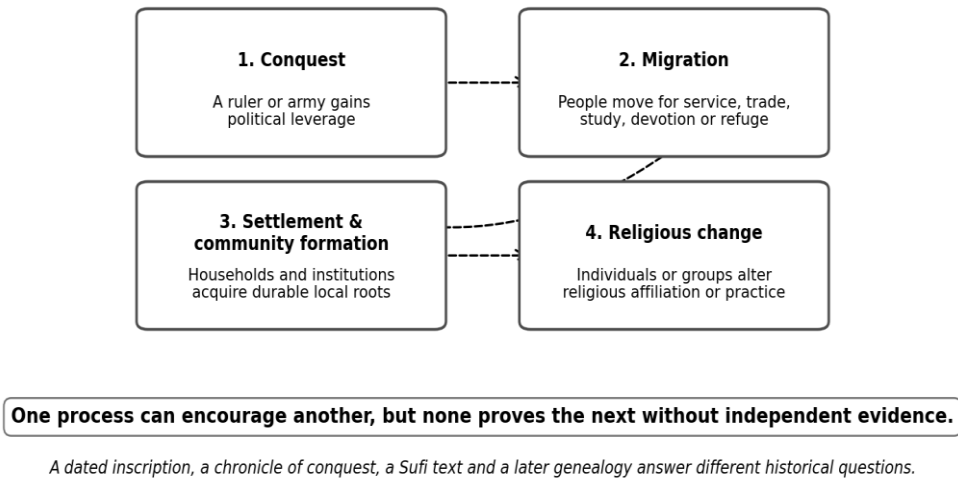


Figure 135 — Evidence firewall: conquest, migration, settlement and religious change

34.29 What can be inferred securely

Several conclusions are robust. From the thirteenth century onward, Mithila and its neighbouring zones were increasingly connected to Muslim-ruled political and commercial networks. The 1324 Tughluq campaign ended Karnata rule at Simraungadh and intensified political reorientation. Through the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, Tirhut interacted repeatedly with Delhi, Bengal, Jaunpur and the wider Bihar region. Muslim soldiers, officials, merchants, scholars and religious specialists formed part of these networks, while Sufi institutions in Bihar demonstrate a substantial devotional landscape close to Mithila. Multilingual and documentary interaction is visible in the fifteenth-century intellectual world associated with the later Vidyāpati Thakkura. What cannot yet be measured securely is the size of Muslim populations in particular medieval Mithila localities, the rate of conversion, or the precise date at which many later communities first settled. Those questions require local evidence rather than inference from political maps.

34.30 Conclusion: new social worlds without a single frontier

Islamic presence in medieval Mithila, Vajji and Anga developed through repeated connections rather than one advancing frontier. Conquest opened and redirected political channels, but social worlds were built by people who travelled for service, trade, learning, devotion, marriage and refuge. Their institutions became local through households, markets, documents, shrines and occupational relationships. At the same time, older Sanskrit, vernacular, agrarian and ritual structures remained powerful. The result was neither an untouched pre-Islamic society nor a wholesale cultural replacement. It was a layered region in which political sovereignty, religious affiliation, language and everyday economic cooperation could cut across one another. Recognising those layers makes the history more precise and also prepares the ground for Chapter 35, where Persianate cultural forms can be studied directly without assuming that all Muslim social history was Persianate or that all Persianate influence required Muslim political rule.

The social transformation traced here depended on circulation. Sultanate armies and claims of sovereignty altered the political horizon, but the deeper historical change lay in the multiplication of routes linking courts, markets, shrines, documentary offices and households. Muslim communities in and around Mithila emerged from several streams and acquired local roots over generations. Their histories intersected

with Sanskrit learning, vernacular literary production, agrarian institutions and the regional economies of Bihar, Bengal, Anga and Nepal. The chapter therefore rejects both a conquest-only narrative and an undifferentiated harmony narrative. Conflict, hierarchy, accommodation and borrowing all belonged to the same connected world. Most importantly, conquest, migration, settlement and conversion remain separate evidentiary questions. That distinction allows the medieval record to speak without forcing later demographic or communal categories upon it.

Table 34.1 — Islam, migration and new social worlds: evidence, use and limit

Evidence	What it can establish securely	Best historical use	Limit / caution
Sultanate chronicles and campaign narratives	Named rulers, campaigns, rebellions, political claims and some offices	Anchor political chronology and routes of military intervention	Court-centred; victory claims do not measure settlement or conversion
Arabic and Persian inscriptions	Dated patrons, buildings, tombs, mosques, officials and titlature	Locate specific Muslim institutions and persons in time and place	Survival is uneven; one inscription cannot represent a population
Sufi letters, discourses and hagiography	Teachers, disciples, doctrine, patronage and devotional networks	Reconstruct religious mobility and social connections	Hagiographic layers can be late; not a census of communities
Sanskrit / Avahatṭa texts of Mithila	Political vocabulary, literary representations, documentary genres, elite perceptions	Study multilingual interaction and courtly knowledge	Genre and patronage shape representation; demographic inference is unsafe
Genealogies and later local histories	Remembered lineages, settlement traditions and political sequences	Compare memories with dated evidence and trace later identity formation	Can telescope chronology and project later categories backward
Architecture, archaeology and settlement evidence	Material presence, building practice, route nodes and consumption	Test textual claims and identify durable institutions	Dating may be broad; absence of remains does not prove absence of people
Later demographic and ethnographic records	Distribution of communities in later centuries	Frame questions about continuity that can be tested backward	Cannot by themselves establish medieval origins, dates or conversion mechanisms

Chapter 35 — Persianate Culture and Mithila–Anga

Persianate culture reached Mithila and Anga through administration, courts, Sufi networks, inscriptions, books, routes and material practices rather than through one uniform process. This chapter reconstructs that field without treating “Persianate” as an ethnic identity, without equating it with Islam as a whole, and without assuming that elite documentary change automatically transformed village speech or social life.

35.1 Defining “Persianate” without ethnic or religious conflation

“Persianate” is most useful here as a historical category for a transregional field of language, literary canons, bureaucratic technique, courtly ethics, political imagery, Sufi writing, architecture and social distinction that circulated far beyond Iran. It does not mean that the people participating in that field were ethnically Persian, nor that Persianate culture was identical with Islam. Turkic, Afghan, Indian, Iranian and other elites could share Persian political and literary forms; non-Muslim scribes and scholars could also learn them; and communities using Persianate administrative forms could continue to speak Maithili, eastern Indo-Aryan vernaculars, Sanskrit, Arabic or other languages in different settings. The category therefore describes circulation and prestige rather than biological descent or a single religious community.

35.2 Source control: what a cultural history can and cannot prove

The evidence is strongest where institutions left durable traces: inscriptions, coins, dated buildings, Persian chronicles, Sufi letters, Sanskrit and Avahatṭa works, manuals of writing, and later manuscript traditions. Each source illuminates a different social scale. A Persian inscription on a mosque securely dates a patron and a building, but it does not measure the language of surrounding villages. A court text may reveal etiquette and political ideals without representing household practice. A Sufi letter can show an intellectual network but not the demographic size of its audience. This chapter therefore distinguishes documented participation in Persianate forms from claims of wholesale cultural replacement.

35.3 Bihar inside the Persian cosmopolis

From the thirteenth century, Bihar became part of the wide zone in which Persian served as a major language of administration, historical writing and learned exchange under Sultanate regimes. This location mattered because the region lay between Delhi and the middle Ganga plain to the west, Bengal to the east, and the Himalayan routes of Mithila and Nepal to the north. Political control shifted among Delhi, Bengal, Jaunpur and local rulers, yet the prestige of Persian documentary and courtly forms could outlast particular dynasties. Bihar’s Persianate history was therefore not a straight line from one capital. It was produced by overlapping centres, mobile personnel and repeated acts of adaptation.

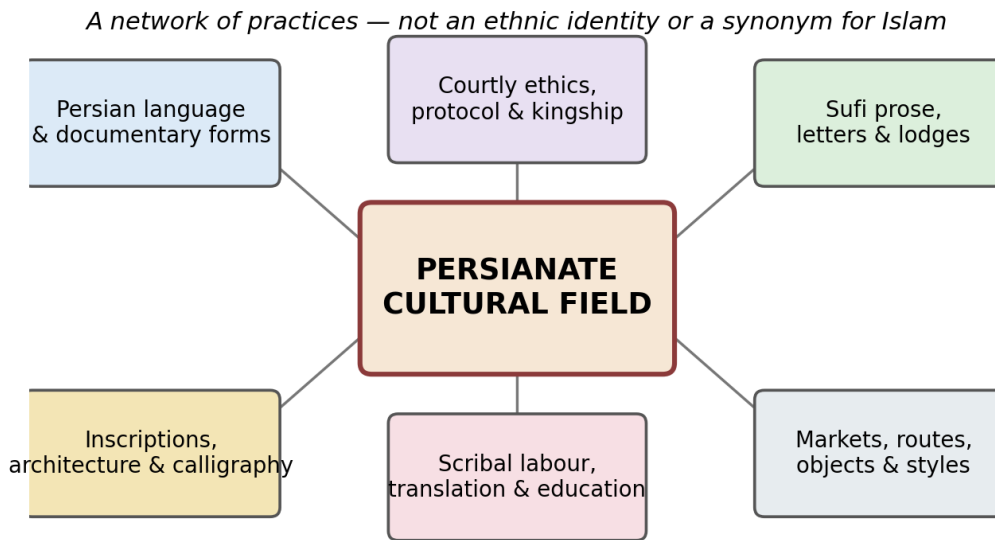


Figure 136 — Persianate culture as a network rather than an ethnicity

35.4 Persian as an administrative technology

Persian's importance in medieval Bihar lay partly in its capacity to standardise political communication across linguistic regions. Orders, revenue correspondence, petitions, appointment letters, diplomatic messages and other records depended on recognised formulae and trained scribes. This did not imply that all local administration was conducted in Persian at every level. Oral mediation, local scripts and vernacular record keeping remained necessary, especially where rulers governed through existing landed and village institutions. Persian functioned most clearly in the higher documentary zones of states and courts, where it connected provincial officials to wider Sultanate conventions.

35.5 Tirhut/Mithila at the edge of several Persianate courts

Tirhut was rarely an imperial centre, but that peripheral position did not make it culturally isolated. Oiniwar rulers and neighbouring chieftains operated within the reach of Delhi, Bengal and especially the Sharqi kingdom of Jaunpur. Tribute, military pressure, recognition, diplomacy and political refuge created channels through which scribes, envoys, texts and political vocabulary travelled. The later Vidyapati Ṭhakkura's world illustrates this condition particularly well: a small Mithila court could remain grounded in Sanskrit learning while being acutely aware of the political styles and urban worlds of Persianate North India. Peripheral courts could therefore be active nodes rather than passive recipients.

35.6 Anga and the eastern Persianate corridor

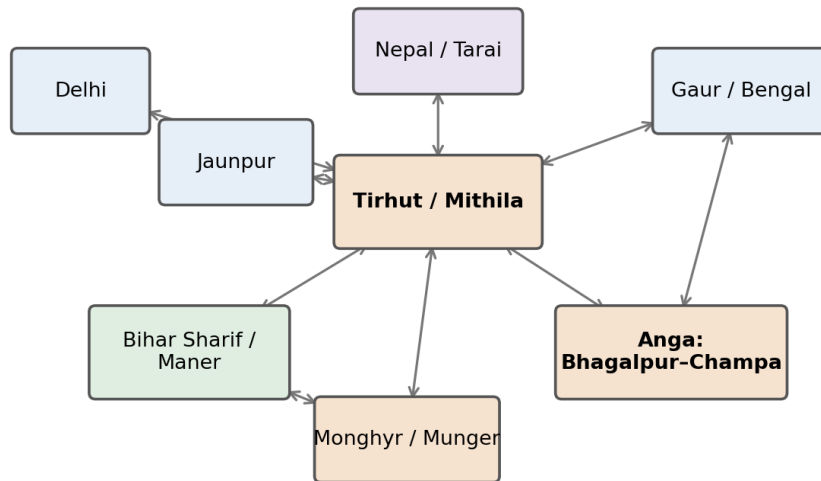
The Anga zone was differently positioned. Bhagalpur–Champa, Kahalgaon and the routes toward Monghyr/Munger lay close to Bengal's political and commercial sphere. Pre-Mughal inscriptions from Champanagar and Bhagalpur record mosque foundations under Bengal sultans, demonstrating the presence of officials, patrons and monumental forms tied to that eastern courtly world. Such inscriptions do not justify describing all of Anga as culturally Persianised, but they provide unusually firm local anchors. They show that the Persianate frontier was not merely an abstract influence from distant capitals: it was materialised in named officers, dated structures, scripts and institutional foundations.

35.7 Courts, offices and the social economy of scribal labour

Persianate culture depended on people who could write, calculate, translate, remember formulae and move between patrons. Courts required secretaries, accountants, revenue specialists, copyists, messengers and interpreters; military establishments generated further paperwork; religious institutions produced endowment and correspondence traditions. Literacy therefore had an occupational economy. Training in prestigious documentary forms could create mobility across courts without dissolving older learned identities. The later expansion of Persian-literate service groups in North India had medieval foundations in these dispersed networks of skilled labour. Mithila's own traditions of scholastic and documentary expertise participated in this wider transformation on selective terms.

35.8 Inshā', letter writing and the craft of political language

The Persianate world treated formal correspondence as a learned art. Inshā' encompassed models of letters, petitions and documents whose vocabulary, salutations and structure encoded hierarchy. The importance of such technique is visible beyond Persian-language texts themselves. A ruler or scholar who needed to correspond across political boundaries had to understand how authority was phrased and how rank was signalled. Documentary competence therefore became a form of political literacy. In Mithila, this is especially significant because Sanskrit intellectual production did not simply retreat before Persian; it could respond by systematising its own documentary knowledge in ways shaped by a multilingual political environment.



Political allegiance changed; cultural and documentary circulation crossed dynastic borders.

Figure 137 — Mithila–Anga inside regional Persianate circulation

35.9 Likhanāvalī and the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura's documentary world

This project distinguishes the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura from the earlier Mahākavi Vidyāpati. The later author's Likhanāvalī, a Sanskrit manual concerned with letters and documents, is central to understanding fifteenth-century Mithila's encounter with Persianate documentary culture. Modern scholarship has shown that his political and epistolary works were created in an environment where Persian models of statecraft and writing were familiar. The text should not be reduced to a Sanskrit translation of Persian practice; its categories draw on Sanskrit learned traditions. Its historical value lies in the entanglement: a Mithila

intellectual recast inherited knowledge for a world in which multiple documentary cosmopolitanisms coexisted.

35.10 Kīrtilatā and the urban imagination of the “city of the Turks”

Kīrtilatā offers a different kind of evidence. Its political narrative places Mithila princes in contact with the Sharqi sphere and evokes urban life beyond the local court. The work is literary and rhetorical, so individual scenes cannot be treated as neutral ethnography. Yet its very intelligibility presupposes familiarity with a social world in which Persianate cities, military power, merchants and courtly audiences were part of Mithila’s political horizon. The text helps recover perception: Persianate urbanity was neither wholly alien nor identical with Mithila. It was a neighbouring field of power with which local elites negotiated, observed and sometimes emulated.

35.11 Justice, kingship and portable political ethics

One of the most influential Persianate political ideals was the linking of sovereignty to justice. In Persian political literature, a ruler’s legitimacy depended on maintaining order, protecting cultivation and ensuring a flow of revenue that in turn sustained the state. Comparable emphases appear in several Indian traditions, and historians must avoid claiming exclusive origin for every shared idea. The important point is that by the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries concepts of just rule circulated across linguistic boundaries with new intensity. Mithila’s political thinkers encountered an environment in which Sanskrit nīti, dharmasāstra and Persianate advice literature could address overlapping problems of authority, conduct, taxation and social order.

35.12 Titles, protocol and the performance of rank

Persianate court culture made hierarchy visible through titles, seating, robes, audience procedure, honorifics, seals and styles of address. Such forms mattered because political relationships were often negotiated between unequal but semi-autonomous rulers. A local chief might preserve internal authority while acknowledging a larger sultan through tribute or titulature. The adoption of a title or diplomatic formula therefore cannot be read mechanically as total cultural submission. It could be a strategic language of recognition. In border regions like Mithila, where autonomy was repeatedly bargained rather than absolutely possessed, protocol became a practical instrument for surviving among stronger neighbours.

35.13 Persian vocabulary and vernacular contact

Language contact leaves traces unevenly. Persian administrative, military, commercial and courtly terms entered many North Indian vernaculars, but borrowing rarely replaced their grammatical structure. Mithila and Anga participated in this larger pattern through multilingual contact, especially in towns, courts, markets and official transactions. The chronology of individual loanwords requires philological care; later Maithili or regional usage cannot automatically be projected into the fifteenth century. Still, the historical setting explains why vocabulary associated with office, documents, clothing, food, urban life and material culture could circulate without requiring speakers to abandon their local languages.

35.14 Multilingual intermediaries and translation as everyday governance

States operating across linguistic regions depended on intermediaries. A Persian order might be explained orally in a vernacular, converted into a local account, or implemented through officials whose practical competence was multilingual rather than literary. Sanskrit scholars, Maithili-speaking landed groups, Persian-

trained clerks, merchants and religious specialists could therefore meet inside the same administrative process without sharing one cultural identity. Translation was not only a literary act; it was an everyday technology of rule. This layered communication helps explain how Persianate forms could penetrate selected institutions while village speech, customary practice and regional textual traditions remained resilient.

Documentary contact can be deep even when everyday speech remains multilingual.

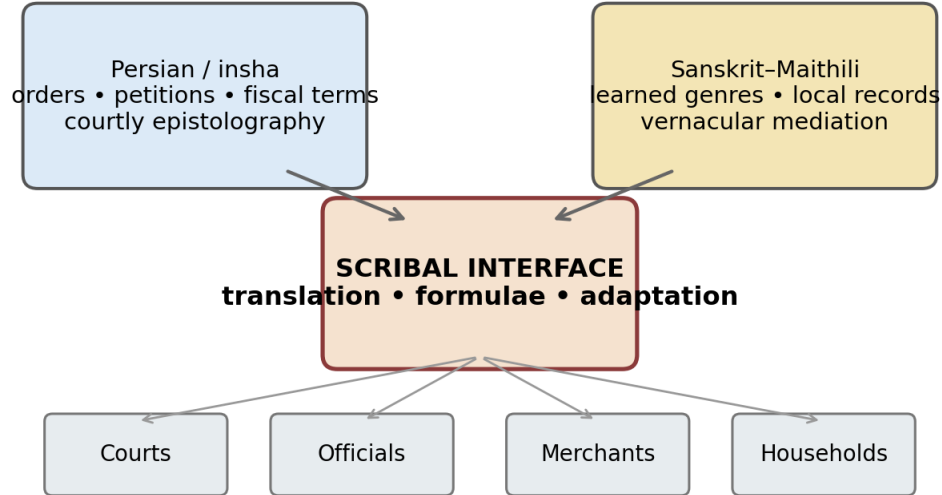


Figure 138 — The documentary interface between Persianate and Sanskrit-Maithili worlds

35.15 Sharafuddin Maneri and Persian Sufi prose in Bihar

The fourteenth-century Sufi Sharafuddin Ahmad Maneri provides some of the strongest evidence for Persian as a language of religious thought in Bihar. His letters, preserved in major collections and studied in modern translations, connect Bihar to a transregional Sufi intellectual world. The prose is important not because it proves Persian was widely spoken, but because it shows that Bihar contained audiences capable of participating in sophisticated Persian religious correspondence. Sufi Persian operated alongside Arabic scriptural learning and local languages of teaching and devotion. This layered linguistic practice is characteristic of the Persianate sphere: cosmopolitan textual prestige could coexist with vernacular religious communication.

35.16 Khanqahs, discipleship and the circulation of people

A Sufi lodge was not simply a building. It gathered teachers, disciples, visitors, petitioners, donors and travellers, and it could connect local concerns with distant intellectual lineages. Bihar's Sufi centres therefore helped move ideas, reputations and texts along routes that also carried merchants and officials. Their influence on Mithila and Anga should be reconstructed from documented links rather than assumed from proximity, but proximity mattered: pilgrimage and discipleship did not stop at political borders. Khanqahs formed one institutional layer through which Persian literary and ethical vocabulary could circulate beyond formal government.

35.17 Arabic-Persian inscriptions as dated cultural anchors

The corpus of Arabic and Persian inscriptions from Bihar is indispensable because it converts broad cultural claims into dated local evidence. Foundation records identify patrons, officials, rulers, religious buildings and calligraphic conventions. In many cases Arabic carries Qur'anic or devotional formulae while

Persian appears in historical or poetic portions, revealing functional bilingualism within the same inscriptional culture. The distribution is uneven, reflecting both historical concentration and survival. Even so, these stones anchor Persianate culture materially: they record people who commissioned, carved, read and recognised a shared epigraphic language of authority.

35.18 Champanagar–Bhagalpur: Bengal Sultanate inscriptions in Anga

Anga offers a particularly concrete case. A Champanagar inscription records a mosque foundation in 1367 during the reign of Sikandar Shah of Bengal, and another record from the same broad urban zone dates a mosque to 1491 under Muzaffar Shah. Other fifteenth- and early sixteenth-century records from Bhagalpur likewise connect local building activity with Bengal Sultanate officers and titlature. These records demonstrate recurring eastern political links across more than a single campaign. They also show that calligraphy, patronage and religious architecture were embedded in an administrative landscape that reached into the old Anga region.

35.19 Architecture, calligraphy and the social life of surfaces

Persianate material culture was communicated through buildings as well as books. Mosques, tombs, gateways and other structures organised space and displayed inscriptions, geometric pattern, vegetal ornament and calligraphic prestige. Local builders necessarily worked with available stone, brick, timber and artisanal traditions, so regional monuments should not be imagined as imported replicas. Architecture is best understood as collaborative production. The Persianate element lay in institutional forms, inscriptions, patronage and aesthetic vocabularies that local craftsmen translated into regional materials and techniques. Such buildings made transregional culture visible to people who might never read a Persian manuscript.

35.20 Coins, names and sovereignty in circulation

Coins carried political language farther than many manuscripts because they travelled through taxation, markets and payment. Sultanate coinage used Arabic and Persian titlature to declare sovereignty and religious legitimacy, while weight standards and mint practice tied local economies to larger political systems. Coin circulation in Bihar and eastern India therefore belongs to the material history of Persianate rule. A coin found in a region does not prove direct administrative control at the moment of deposition, but clusters and mint histories can illuminate commercial and political connections. Numismatic evidence is strongest when read alongside inscriptions and textual chronology.

35.21 Dress, food and objects: slow cultural histories

Courtly prestige can influence dress, cuisine, weaponry, horse equipment, furniture and decorative objects, but these are among the hardest changes to date precisely in Mithila. Texts often describe elite consumption selectively; surviving objects may lack secure provenance; later practices are easily projected backward. The safest approach is to identify channels rather than invent inventories. Courts, garrisons, merchant routes and Sufi institutions created repeated opportunities for borrowing. Material forms could become locally naturalised without users understanding them as foreign. Persianate culture at this level was often a slow history of selection and recombination rather than a sudden package of imported customs.

35.22 Roads, rivers and manuscript circulation

Books and letters moved along the same broad infrastructure as people and goods. The Ganga corridor linked Bihar westward and eastward; tributaries, ferries and overland routes connected the river to Mithila,

Anga and Nepal. Manuscripts could travel with scholars, officials, merchants or disciples, while court correspondence moved through organised messenger systems. The circulation of texts therefore depended on ordinary transport and political security. A cultural map centred only on capitals misses the routes that made cosmopolitanism possible. Mithila and Anga were connected because rivers and roads repeatedly brought their local institutions into contact with larger documentary and commercial worlds.

35.23 Education and the reproduction of Persianate competence

Persianate institutions reproduced themselves through training. Secretaries learned composition and formulae; religious scholars studied Arabic and Persian texts; aspiring courtiers acquired etiquette, poetry and moral literature. The density of such education in medieval Mithila is difficult to quantify, and later Mughal-era evidence should not be projected backward wholesale. Yet the existence of Persian writing, inscriptions and Sufi correspondence in Bihar, together with documentary engagement in fifteenth-century Mithila, presupposes teaching networks. Literacy was therefore not merely an individual accomplishment; it depended on teachers, exemplars, copying practices, paper, patronage and communities that valued the skill.

35.24 Non-Muslim participation in Persianate institutions

Persianate culture was never confined to Muslims. Across North India, Hindu scribal and learned groups increasingly acquired Persian because it opened access to service, patronage and intellectual exchange. For the fifteenth-century Mithila case, the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura is more revealing than later Mughal examples because his Sanskrit works show engagement with a neighbouring Persianate political culture from within an Indic learned tradition. Participation did not require conversion or abandonment of Sanskrit. It could produce bilingual or conceptual competence in which different canons were selectively compared, translated and redeployed.

35.25 Women and the archival imbalance

The documentary archive of Persianate culture disproportionately names male rulers, saints, officials, scholars and patrons. That imbalance cannot be converted into an assumption that women were absent from the social processes described here. Court households, migrant families, artisanal production, property transmission, hospitality and religious patronage all involved women, but the surviving record often makes them visible only indirectly. Later evidence from elite households cannot automatically fill medieval gaps. A responsible social history therefore records the silence itself: Persianate institutions were reproduced through households as well as offices, yet the documentary forms that survive privilege male public actors.

35.26 Rural reach: influence was uneven

The existence of Persianate courts and inscriptions does not imply uniform penetration into rural society. Most cultivators encountered states through revenue demands, local intermediaries, markets, policing and occasional military movement rather than through Persian literary education. Village religious and linguistic life could remain overwhelmingly local even when superior officials used Persian documentation. This unevenness is historically important. Cosmopolitan culture often concentrated in courts, towns, route centres, learned institutions and service networks, while its effects in villages arrived indirectly through fiscal vocabulary, objects, patronage patterns and the movement of people.

35.27 Anga between Bengal and Bihar: political geography matters

The eastern districts repeatedly moved within the orbit of Bengal sultans as well as Bihar-based powers. Inscriptions from Champanagar and Bhagalpur, and records associated with Monghyr/Munger, indicate that the old Anga region could be integrated into political networks different from those shaping northern Mithila at the same moment. Treating Mithila and Anga as one undifferentiated medieval unit would therefore obscure the evidence. Their histories were connected but not identical: Mithila's fifteenth-century courts negotiated heavily with Jaunpur and neighbouring powers, while Anga's eastern towns often reveal stronger Bengal-facing institutional signatures.

35.28 Nepal and the Tarai as a northern interface

Mithila's Persianate connections also need a northern dimension. Political refugees, scholars, merchants and court personnel moved between the plains and Nepal, as earlier chapters have shown. Persian was not the dominant cultural language of medieval Nepal, yet the Tarai linked Nepalese polities to a North Indian world increasingly shaped by Persianate diplomacy and commerce. Transmission across this frontier was therefore selective. Sanskrit, Newar, Maithili and other traditions remained powerful, while political information, goods and people carried knowledge of Sultanate institutions northward. The borderland should be seen as an interface, not a line separating sealed cultural zones.

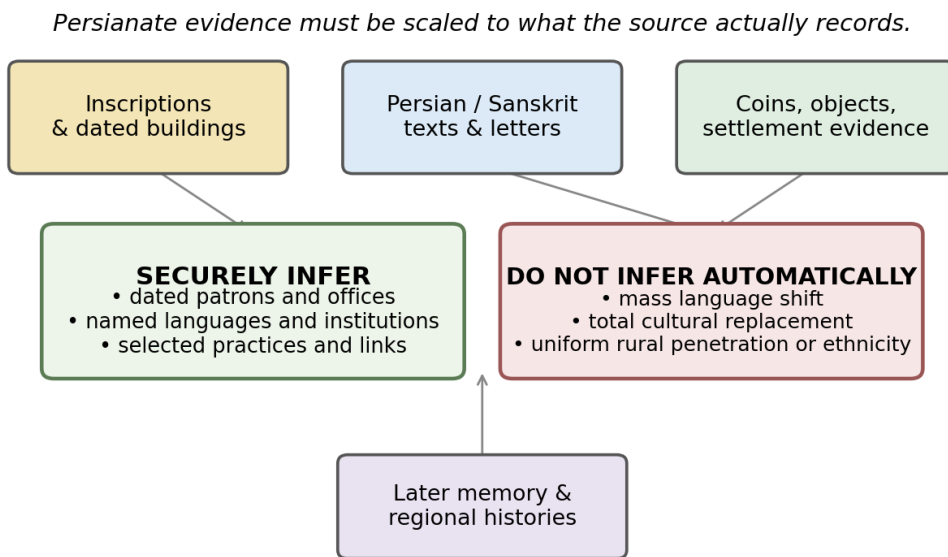


Figure 139 — Evidence firewall for reconstructing Persianate culture

35.29 Evidence firewall: entanglement without civilisational binaries

The strongest interpretation is neither a story of untouched “Hindu Mithila” nor one of complete “Islamic Persianisation.” Both frames turn complex social history into retrospective civilisational blocs. The evidence instead shows entanglement: Persianate administrative and literary practices gained prestige; Sufi Persian flourished in Bihar; Bengal Sultanate inscriptions appeared in Anga; Mithila intellectuals responded to neighbouring political cultures; and local languages, Sanskrit learning, ritual systems and village institutions remained active. Different forms of culture could coexist within the same person or institution. Historical explanation must therefore identify specific channels of borrowing and specific limits to them.

35.30 Conclusion: a connected cultural field before Mughal standardisation

By the early sixteenth century, Mithila and Anga already participated in a Persianate cultural field, but not in identical ways and not at equal social depth. Persian functioned as a language of administration, high correspondence, historical writing and Sufi thought in Bihar. Courtly concepts and documentary techniques travelled through Delhi, Jaunpur and Bengal; inscriptions gave those connections material form in Anga; and fifteenth-century Mithila scholarship demonstrates selective intellectual engagement. None of this requires imagining a single process of cultural replacement.

The importance of the period lies precisely in its plurality. Persianate forms became part of the region's repertoire before the much stronger Mughal standardisation of Persian administration considered later in this volume. Sanskrit, Maithili, Avahatṭa, Arabic and vernacular practices continued to occupy their own domains while overlapping through scribal labour, diplomacy, markets and religious networks. Chapter 36 therefore turns from this connected cosmopolitan field to the wider question of languages before modern standardisation.

Table 35.1 — Persianate culture and Mithila–Anga: evidence, use and limit

Evidence	What it can establish securely	Best historical use	Limit / caution
Arabic–Persian inscriptions	Dated patrons, rulers, officials, buildings, scripts and titulature	Anchor Persianate institutions in specific places such as Bihar Sharif, Champanagar and Bhagalpur	Survival is selective; one monument cannot measure language or population
Persian chronicles and court texts	Political claims, campaigns, offices, diplomatic vocabulary and ideals of sovereignty	Reconstruct the political field linking Delhi, Jaunpur, Bengal and Bihar	Court-centred and rhetorical; weak for everyday rural life
Sufi letters and malfūz traditions	Persian religious prose, named disciples, correspondence and intellectual networks	Trace learned and devotional circulation, especially around Sharafuddin Maneri	Audience size and vernacular reception are difficult to quantify
Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura's works	Fifteenth-century Mithila awareness of neighbouring courtly and documentary worlds	Study selective intellectual entanglement across Sanskrit, Avahatṭa and Persianate political culture	Literary and normative texts are not transparent social description
Coins and material culture	Sovereignty, titulature, mints, circulation and selected aesthetic conventions	Connect political economy to the material spread of Sultanate forms	Find spots may reflect trade or later deposition rather than direct control
Architecture and calligraphy	Institutional patronage, local craft translation and visible cultural forms	Study how transregional forms were materialised in regional settings	Buildings are often restored, relocated or unevenly preserved
Later histories and memory	Persistence of Persianate vocabulary, genealogies and retrospective regional interpretation	Track long afterlives and identify leads to earlier sources	Must not be projected backward without independent medieval evidence

PART V

**LANGUAGE, LITERATURE AND
KNOWLEDGE AS SOCIAL HISTORY**

Chapters 36–43

Chapter 36 — Languages Before Modern Standardisation

Before grammars, censuses, school systems, print institutions and modern language movements imposed sharper names and norms, the Mithila–Vajji–Anga region was multilingual in a more fluid sense. People spoke local vernaculars, learned Sanskrit for specific intellectual and ritual purposes, encountered Prakrit, Apabhramśa and Avahaṭṭa as literary categories and inherited registers, and later moved through political worlds in which Persian and Arabic also mattered. The task is therefore not to search for a single moment when one modern language suddenly “began,” but to reconstruct how speech, writing, genre, script, mobility and institutional prestige interacted across centuries.

36.1 The problem: language history before fixed language borders

Modern maps encourage the eye to imagine languages as territories separated by lines. That model is useful for administration and contemporary language policy, but it is hazardous when projected into the medieval past. Speech normally changed by degree across neighbouring villages and market zones. A traveller moving from western Vajji country through central Mithila toward Anga could encounter shifts in pronunciation, vocabulary and morphology without crossing a point where one complete linguistic system ended and another began. Written culture added a second layer: the language of a manuscript could differ sharply from the speech of its patron, scribe or audience. A source-critical history therefore treats “Maithili,” “Bajjika,” “Angika,” “Sanskrit,” “Avahaṭṭa” and “Persian” as historically situated labels and registers rather than timeless boxes. The question is not which modern community possessed a medieval district, but which linguistic resources were available to particular speakers, writers and institutions at particular times.

36.2 Sources: surviving writing is not a transcript of ordinary speech

The archive is structurally unequal. Inscriptions survive because stone and copper endure; scholastic manuscripts survive because institutions copied them; courtly poems survive because patrons valued them. Everyday conversation, women’s domestic speech, children’s language, bargaining in weekly markets and the speech of mobile labourers were rarely written down. Historical linguistics can infer older phonology and morphology by comparing later forms, but inference is not direct recording. Literary texts also stylise language according to metre, genre and learned convention. For this reason the chapter uses several evidence streams together: dated or datable inscriptions, manuscripts, literary works, grammars compiled much later, comparative Indo-Aryan linguistics, script history, and regional historical context. Where these streams agree, reconstruction is stronger. Where only a later label is available, the chapter states the limitation instead of turning a retrospective classification into a medieval fact.

36.3 Sanskrit as a persistent high register, not the speech of an entire population

Sanskrit remained central to learned life across Mithila for many centuries. Philosophical debate, ritual manuals, legal reasoning, scholastic commentary, royal praise and portions of documentary practice all used Sanskrit because it connected local intellectuals to transregional traditions. This durability can easily be misunderstood. Sanskrit prestige does not prove that cultivators, artisans or market populations used Sanskrit as their everyday language. Nor does the appearance of Sanskrit in a charter erase local speech. The more plausible social model is functional multilingualism: specialists mastered Sanskrit to differing degrees while vernaculars continued in households, fields, markets and oral performance. Mithila’s reputation for scholastic learning made this layered arrangement especially visible, but it was part of a wider South Asian

pattern in which a cosmopolitan written language coexisted with regional speech. The distinction between register and mother tongue is essential to every later section of this chapter.

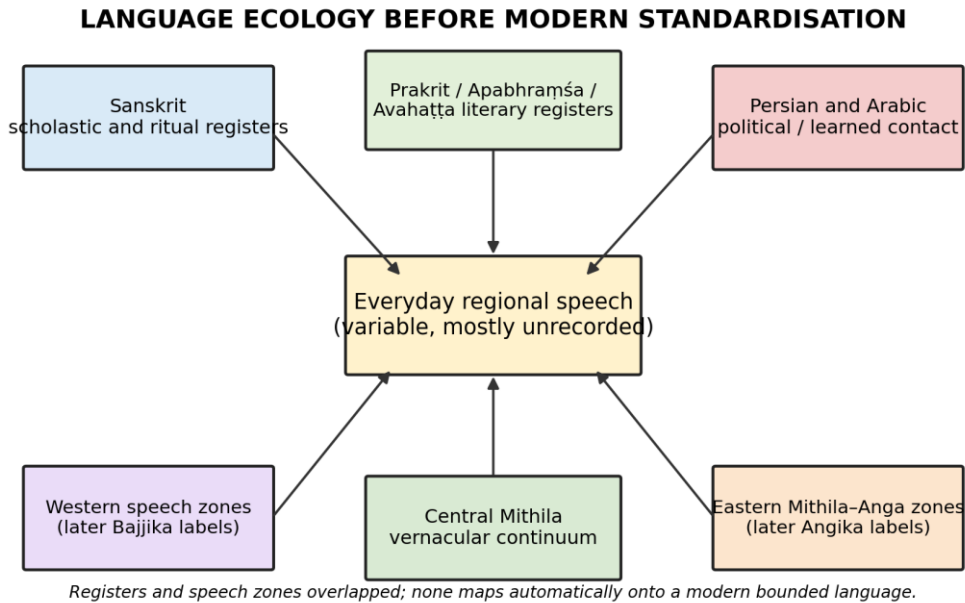


Figure 140 — Language ecology before modern standardisation

36.4 From Old to Middle Indo-Aryan: descent is not a straight written chain

Maithili belongs to the Indo-Aryan family, and comparative work traces major features of eastern New Indo-Aryan through developments from Old and Middle Indo-Aryan. Yet the historical path should not be pictured as one book-language mechanically turning into another. “Prakrit” itself names several literary and grammatical traditions as well as Middle Indo-Aryan speech phenomena. Spoken varieties changed continuously while written conventions could remain conservative. Sound change, reduction of inflection, growth of analytic constructions and new verbal patterns accumulated over long periods and at different rates. Subhadra Jha’s *Formation of the Maithili Language* remains a foundational diachronic synthesis, while later linguistics cautions against treating every modern form as derivable through a single Sanskritic line. Contact with neighbouring Indo-Aryan varieties and non-Indo-Aryan substrates also formed part of the regional history. Genealogy is therefore necessary, but genealogy alone is not a social history of language.

36.5 Prakrit as literary memory and analytical category

Prakrit traditions mattered to eastern India through literature, drama, grammar and inherited ideas about the relation between refined and regional speech. A Sanskrit drama could allocate different Prakrits to characters according to genre conventions, but that allocation is not a sociolinguistic census. Grammarians classified speech according to learned systems that may preserve real regional features while also regularising them. The category “Māgadhi,” for example, has an important place in descriptions of eastern Middle Indo-Aryan, yet it cannot simply be equated with every vernacular historically spoken across the later territories of Bihar and Bengal. For Mithila–Vajji–Anga, Prakrit evidence is most useful when it helps explain a broad eastern Indo-Aryan development or a textual convention. It is least reliable when a literary language-name is transformed into a precise political map. This distinction prevents philological classification from becoming retrospective territorial history.

36.6 Apabhraṃśa and Avahaṭṭa: transitional written worlds

Apabhraṃśa and Avahaṭṭa occupy a difficult but productive position between learned Middle Indo-Aryan traditions and the increasingly visible regional vernacular literatures of the later medieval period. The terms can refer to literary registers rather than to one uniform spoken language. Their forms vary by author, region and manuscript transmission. In eastern India, Avahaṭṭa became particularly important for poetry that stood close to emergent vernaculars while retaining supra-local literary conventions. The safest interpretation is therefore layered: Avahaṭṭa can preserve evidence for linguistic change and regional vocabulary, but an Avahaṭṭa poem is not a phonographic recording of a village conversation. In the Mithila tradition, its importance becomes especially clear in the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura's courtly works, which belong to a different historical context from the earlier Maithili Padāvalī tradition recognised by this volume.

36.7 The local vernacular existed before it became easy to see in manuscripts

A written vernacular does not appear at the same moment as the speech from which it draws. By definition, the households and settlements of north Bihar and adjoining Nepal had local Indo-Aryan speech communities before those varieties became abundant in surviving manuscripts. The earliest written evidence is therefore a terminus for visibility, not a birth certificate. Comparative morphology and phonology also imply long development before the first substantial prose or poetry that modern scholars call Maithili. This principle is especially important because manuscript survival is accidental. A single lost collection can shift the apparent beginning of a literary tradition by centuries. Historians should therefore distinguish three dates: the period in which linguistic features were probably present in speech, the date of the earliest surviving text displaying them, and the later date when a modern scholarly name was applied consistently. Collapsing these dates creates false precision.

36.8 Early Maithili as a cluster of features rather than a modern standard

When early vernacular material is identified as Maithili, the term should mean that a significant cluster of phonological, morphological, syntactic and lexical features aligns with the historical development of Maithili. It should not imply conformity to a twentieth- or twenty-first-century spelling standard. Medieval scribes varied; manuscripts were recopied; orthography could reflect Sanskrit habits or local graphic practice; and authors could mix registers within one work. Early Maithili therefore needs to be recognised through converging linguistic evidence rather than by the presence of one modern shibboleth. This approach also allows internal variation to remain visible. The future standard language was selected from a larger field of regional speech. Some forms later became marked as dialectal, rustic, eastern or western only after standardisation created a stronger centre against which variation could be measured.

36.9 Varṇa-ratnākara: a major early vernacular prose witness

Jyotiśvara's Varṇa-ratnākara, conventionally placed in the early fourteenth century, is one of the strongest surviving witnesses for an early Maithili prose tradition. Its importance lies not in supplying a complete grammar of contemporary speech but in showing that an extensive vernacular descriptive prose could sustain lists, social scenes, places, occupations, sensory detail and rhetorical catalogues. The surviving manuscript history also reminds us that texts travelled: the work came to modern scholarly attention through manuscript searching connected with Nepal and Bengal, demonstrating the wider circulation of Mithila's textual culture. Because the text is highly crafted, its vocabulary is richer and more stylised than ordinary conversation would have been. Even so, it materially shifts the evidentiary balance. Vernacular prose was not merely an oral substrate beneath Sanskrit; it could itself become a sophisticated written medium.

36.10 What Varṇa-ratnākara can tell us—and what it cannot

The work is a linguistic source precisely because it is a literary source, but the two uses must not be confused. Its lexical density can illuminate semantic fields, urban and courtly vocabulary, occupational terminology and descriptive conventions. Its grammatical forms can be compared with later Maithili. Yet a lexical item in the text does not prove equal use across all villages or social groups. Nor can manuscript spelling be assumed to reproduce pronunciation mechanically. The text's social descriptions are rhetorical compositions, not questionnaires. The strongest historical use is therefore triangulation: linguistic forms are compared with other early eastern Indo-Aryan evidence, later Maithili, and the institutional context of the Karnata-era court. The result is a robust witness to vernacularisation without an exaggerated claim that one manuscript fixes every boundary or social register of fourteenth-century Mithila.

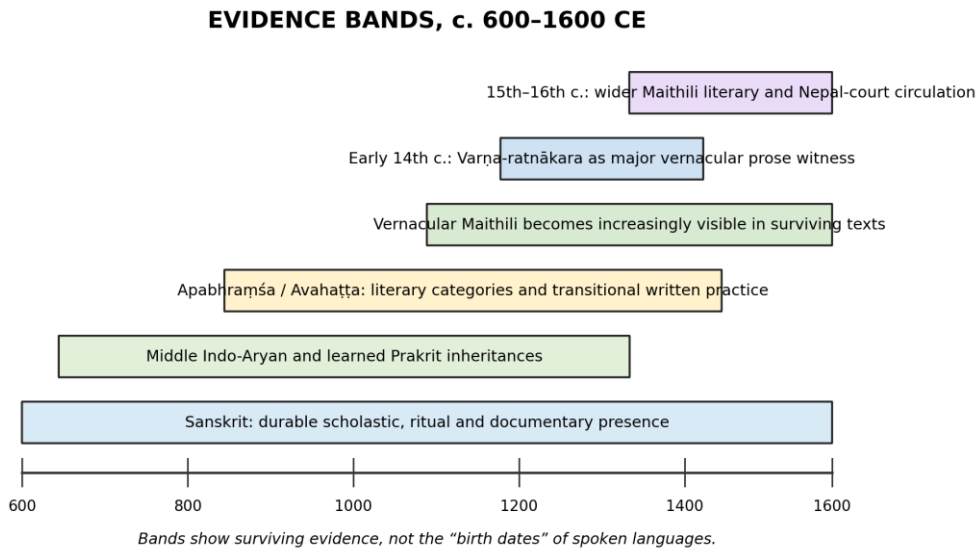


Figure 141 — Evidence bands for vernacular formation, c. 600–1600 CE

36.11 The project's two-Vidyāpati chronology and linguistic periodisation

This volume maintains its adopted distinction between Mahākavi Vidyāpati, treated here as the pre-Jyotirīśvara Maithili Padāvalī poet, and the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura associated with the Oiniwar court and Sanskrit/Avahaṭṭa works such as Kīrtilatā, Kīrtipatākā, Puruṣaparīkṣā, Gorakṣavijaya and Likhanāvalī. The distinction matters linguistically because otherwise texts belonging to different registers and historical contexts are collapsed into one authorial biography. Under the adopted framework, the earlier Padāvalī witnesses a Maithili poetic register before Jyotirīśvara, whereas the later Ṭhakkura demonstrates the continued coexistence of Sanskrit, Avahaṭṭa and vernacular resources in the fifteenth-century courtly world. Chapter 38 treats the two contexts directly. Here the methodological point is narrower: a history of language must date texts and registers before using them to construct a linear literary genealogy.

36.12 Multilingual courts: choice of language followed function

A medieval court was not linguistically uniform. Praise, ritual, legal reasoning, correspondence, account keeping, entertainment and oral negotiation could call for different linguistic resources. Sanskrit carried immense learned authority; vernaculars reached audiences and performed regional identity; Avahaṭṭa offered a flexible literary medium; and, after the expansion of Sultanate political networks, Persian increasingly mattered in diplomacy and administration beyond or alongside local practices. The presence of several

languages in one court is therefore not evidence of confusion. It is evidence of specialisation. A ruler's household might patronise a Sanskrit scholar and a vernacular performer while envoys dealt with Persianate courts through scribes and interpreters. This functional distribution explains why literary history built around only one language misses much of the actual social infrastructure of writing.

36.13 Script is not language

One of the most persistent historical errors is to identify a language with one script. Maithili has a strong historical association with Tirhuta/Mithilākṣara, but language and graphic system are analytically different. A Maithili text may be copied in more than one script; Sanskrit may also appear in Tirhuta; and the use of Nāgarī or another script does not automatically change the language of the words. Script choice can reflect scribal training, manuscript genre, patronage, availability of type, administrative practice or later editorial intervention. Chapter 39 examines Tirhuta and scribal culture in detail. For the present chapter, the rule is simple: orthography is evidence about writing, not a direct territorial label for speech. This distinction becomes even more important in the early modern and colonial periods, when script politics contributed to modern language identities.

36.14 Manuscript copying creates linguistic layers

A medieval text may survive only in a manuscript copied centuries later. Copyists can modernise spelling, substitute familiar words, regularise morphology, misunderstand older forms or silently mix their own conventions with those of the exemplar. Conversely, learned scribes can preserve archaic spellings after pronunciation has changed. Philology therefore distinguishes the date of composition from the date and place of a surviving copy. For early Maithili, this principle is indispensable. A fifteenth- or seventeenth-century manuscript of an older composition is evidence both for the earlier work and for the later transmission history, but not in identical ways. Variant readings across copies can sometimes reveal the movement of a text between regions. They can also warn against treating an editor's normalised printed text as if it were the exact medieval manuscript surface.

36.15 Western Mithila and Vajji: gradients later named Bajjika

The western portion of the wider Mithila–Vajji zone participated in a speech continuum shaped by contact toward the Gandak, north Bihar and adjoining eastern Uttar Pradesh. Modern Bajjika naming is valuable for describing contemporary and recent historical speech communities, and Chapter 42 studies that history directly. For the medieval period, however, the evidence does not justify drawing a sharp Bajjika–Maithili frontier on a modern district map. Features could diffuse through marriage networks, fairs, river crossings and market towns. Local identity and linguistic practice need not coincide exactly. The correct historical formulation is therefore that western vernacular zones displayed patterns that later classifications describe as Bajjika and related varieties, while remaining connected to central Mithila through continuous social interaction. This preserves linguistic difference without inventing a medieval language border for which no contemporary survey exists.

36.16 Eastern Mithila and Anga: gradients later named Angika

The eastern side of the region was equally connected and equally variable. Speech in the old Anga–Bhagalpur–Munger zone interacted with central Mithila, Magadhan varieties and the languages of Bengal. Modern Angika naming identifies a real linguistic and cultural field, which Chapter 41 treats on its own terms. But medieval evidence again favours a continuum over a hard line. Rivers and trade routes brought

eastern settlements into repeated contact with Bengal, while political and religious networks connected them westward and northward. A form that appears “eastern” in later classification may therefore reflect long contact rather than a neatly bounded ancestral language. Separating contemporary recognition from medieval reconstruction protects both: Angika need not be denied in order to avoid projecting its present boundary backward.

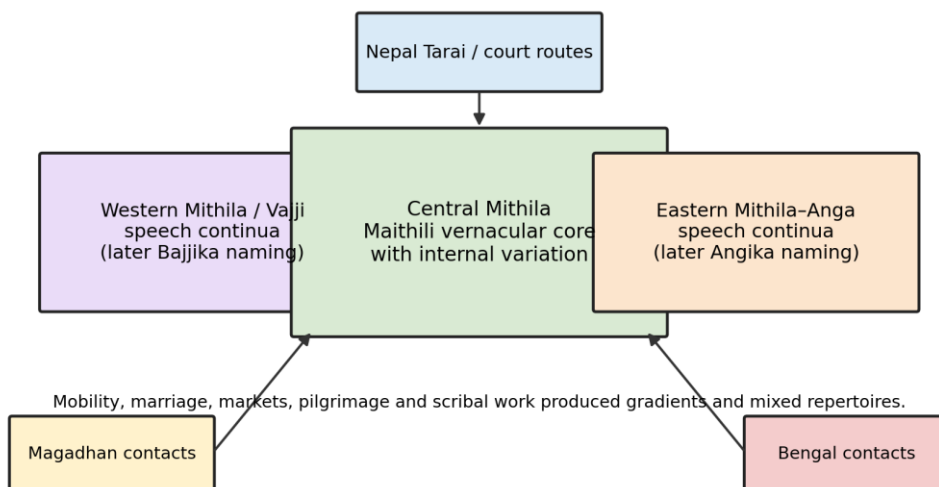
36.17 Central Mithila: prestige does not mean uniform speech

Darbhangā and the central Mithila heartland later became particularly important in the codification and prestige economy of Maithili. That later history can create the illusion that a single central speech norm governed the whole region from the beginning. Medieval social geography was more plural. Courts, scholarly centres, agrarian settlements and pilgrimage sites formed nodes, not a uniform linguistic surface. Even within areas later treated as the Maithili core, pronunciation and lexicon could vary by locality, occupation, status, gender and mobility. A prestige literary variety can spread without erasing local speech. The emergence of a recognised written Maithili therefore needs to be separated from the much later production of a standard norm in grammar, print and education. The same language can possess a literary centre while remaining internally diverse.

36.18 Nepal Tarai and Kathmandu Valley: language moved with people and patronage

Mithila’s linguistic history cannot stop at the modern India–Nepal boundary. The Karnata political world itself straddled the plains below the Himalayan foothills, and later movements of rulers, scholars, performers and manuscripts carried Maithili northward. Medieval and early modern Nepal preserves substantial evidence for Maithili literary use, especially in court and performance settings under later dynasties. This does not mean that Maithili replaced Newar, Nepali or other local languages. It entered a multilingual courtly ecology in which languages could be selected by genre and patronage. Manuscripts preserved in Nepal are therefore doubly important: they document Maithili’s wider literary reach and they show that archives survive outside the political territory in which a work originated. The borderland was a corridor, not a linguistic wall.

REGIONAL CONTINUUM, NOT MEDIEVAL HARD BORDERS



Modern language names remain useful, but must not be converted into fixed medieval frontiers.

*Figure 142 — Regional speech continuum without hard medieval language borders***36.19 Persian and Arabic contact: lexical borrowing follows institutions unevenly**

Chapter 35 traced Persianate culture as a transregional field. Linguistically, that field created opportunities for Persian and Arabic vocabulary to enter regional speech through administration, military organisation, trade, dress, material culture and religious institutions. Borrowing, however, must be dated item by item wherever possible. A Persian-derived word common in modern Maithili cannot automatically be assigned to the fourteenth century. Some loans may be early; others spread under Mughal or colonial regimes. Borrowing also does not imply grammatical replacement. The basic structure of Maithili remained Indo-Aryan while its lexicon continued to absorb words from many sources. Towns, courts and market networks probably experienced such contact earlier and more densely than isolated rural settlements. Linguistic influence therefore had a social geography.

36.20 Administrative multilingualism and the work of intermediaries

Government depends on communication across levels. A Persian order from a superior court had to be understood by local officials; a revenue demand had to reach cultivators; petitions and disputes often moved upward from people who did not command the language of the highest office. This created work for scribes, translators, accountants and oral intermediaries. Sanskrit documentary habits, vernacular explanation and Persianate formulae could therefore coexist within one administrative chain. The resulting archive is deceptive because the language that survives on the most durable document may represent only the top layer of a multilingual transaction. Social history must reconstruct the missing translations beneath it. The same insight applies to land grants discussed in Chapter 26: a formal text addressed in a learned register still presupposed oral communication with resident cultivators.

36.21 Markets, pilgrimage and seasonal mobility as engines of convergence

Language contact did not require royal policy. Weekly markets, river ferries, pilgrimage routes, marriage journeys, cattle movement, craft circulation and seasonal labour brought speakers from adjacent zones into recurrent contact. Repeated low-level contact can diffuse pronunciations and words without producing a literary record. This is one reason dialect continua are historically plausible even when manuscripts are sparse. The Ganga corridor connected Anga with Bihar and Bengal; north–south routes linked central Mithila with the Tarai; rivers both separated and connected settlement clusters. Market speech may have encouraged accommodation, code-switching and the use of widely intelligible forms. Such practices are almost invisible in elite texts, but they are necessary to explain why linguistic features rarely stop at political frontiers.

36.22 Oral genres preserve language differently from manuscripts

Songs, ritual formulae, tales, proverbs, wedding genres and performance traditions can preserve archaic words and structures, yet oral transmission also changes continuously. A song recorded in the nineteenth or twentieth century may contain old material, but its current wording cannot simply be dated to the supposed origin of the tradition. Performance adapts to audience and memory. The historical value of oral material therefore lies in patterns: recurrent vocabulary, formulaic structures, genre-specific registers and comparison across versions. Chapter 40 examines oral culture in depth. For Chapter 36, oral tradition provides a necessary corrective to manuscript bias. It reminds us that literary history captures only part of the language environment and that communities without abundant manuscripts still possessed complex verbal arts.

36.23 Gender and the hidden sociolinguistic archive

Formal manuscripts disproportionately record male authors, scribes and patrons, but household language was reproduced through women as well as men. Marriage moved women between villages and sometimes across speech zones, creating channels for lexical and phonological exchange that political histories rarely see. Women's songs and ritual speech could maintain distinctive registers; domestic labour connected generations; elite women could also participate in patronage and manuscript culture, although the archive names them less often. Because direct medieval evidence is sparse, the chapter does not invent a separate female dialect. The secure conclusion is methodological: a language history built only from named male authors cannot represent the whole speech community. Gendered mobility and oral transmission must remain part of the explanatory model even where exact forms cannot be recovered.

36.24 Social rank, occupation and repertoire

Linguistic competence was unequally distributed. A Sanskrit scholar, merchant, soldier, village headman, artisan, mendicant and cultivator could share a local vernacular while possessing very different additional repertoires. Some learned men commanded multiple written languages; others relied on oral specialists. Occupational groups that travelled—traders, performers, religious mendicants, messengers and soldiers—were especially likely to develop accommodation strategies across dialect zones. Social rank could influence access to literacy without determining the language of everyday life. The result was not a simple hierarchy in which one caste spoke Sanskrit and another spoke Maithili. Rather, registers overlapped unevenly, and individuals could move among them according to context. This repertoire model is more historically plausible than assigning one language to one social category.

36.25 Place names and personal names: useful but dangerous evidence

Inscriptions and manuscripts preserve place names and personal names that can reveal phonological adaptation, regional vocabulary and the coexistence of naming traditions. Yet names are conservative and mobile. A Sanskritised place name in a charter may differ from local pronunciation; a Persian chronicle may transliterate the same settlement differently; a scribe may use an inherited official form long after speech has changed. Personal names travel with religion, patronage and fashion. Onomastic evidence is therefore strongest when several dated examples show a pattern. A single spelling should not be used to reconstruct an entire local phonology. Historical geography benefits from names, but language history must distinguish the language of a name's recorded form from the language spoken around the named place.

36.26 The history of the name “Maithili”

Language names are themselves historical evidence. “Maithili” derives its force from the regional name Mithila and ultimately became the standard modern designation of the language. Earlier sources, however, may use regional, literary or generic labels differently, and external observers later used forms such as Tirhutiya/Tirhutia. The absence of the modern name in an early text does not prove the absence of the language; conversely, the appearance of a regional label does not guarantee that it had the same technical linguistic meaning as today. Colonial philology, especially Grierson's grammar and Linguistic Survey, greatly sharpened the classificatory visibility of Maithili in modern scholarship. That achievement must be recognised without mistaking nineteenth-century taxonomy for medieval self-description.

36.27 Colonial grammars are indispensable evidence—and late evidence

George A. Grierson's nineteenth- and early twentieth-century work documented Maithili grammar, vocabulary, scripts and regional variation with extraordinary detail. The Linguistic Survey of India created a comparative record that remains fundamental. But these works belong to a period already shaped by colonial administration, print, schooling and new ideas of language classification. They are therefore excellent sources for reconstructing recent forms and for comparative back-projection where historical linguistics permits it, but they cannot directly describe a fourteenth-century village. Grierson's categories also participated in the modern process by which languages and dialects were named, bounded and ranked. A critical history uses his data while historicising his classificatory framework.

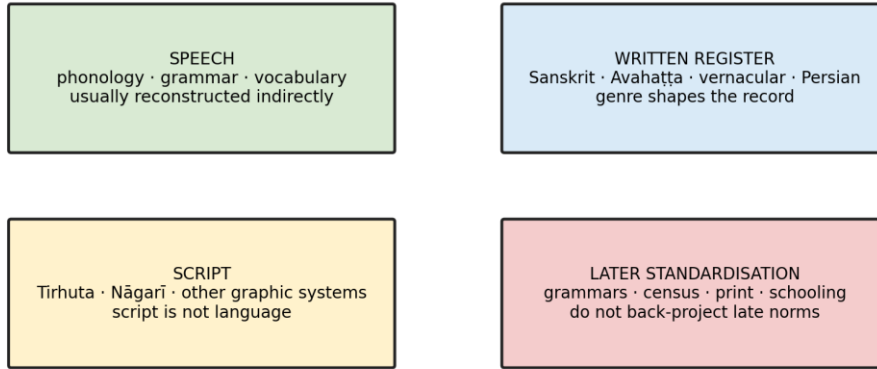
36.28 Standardisation changes the meaning of “variation”

Before a powerful standard exists, variation is simply part of ordinary linguistic life. Once grammars, dictionaries, examinations, newspapers and schools privilege selected forms, alternatives can be reclassified as dialectal, incorrect, rustic or regional. This social transformation belongs mainly to later chapters, but it explains why modern intuition is a poor guide to medieval language. A form now considered non-standard may preserve an old feature; a prestigious modern form may have spread relatively recently. Standardisation also fixes spelling more strongly and links language identity to institutions. Chapter 36 therefore ends before that process becomes dominant. Its purpose is to recover the open field from which later standard Maithili, modern Angika and Bajjika identities, and neighbouring language norms emerged.

36.29 Evidence firewall: speech, register, script and standard must stay separate

Four analytical categories must not be collapsed. Speech is the changing everyday linguistic system used by communities. A written register is a socially selected form shaped by genre and institution. Script is the graphic technology used to represent a language. A standard is a later normative selection backed by grammars, print, education or administration. One language can use several scripts; one script can write several languages; one speaker can command several registers; a standard can emerge long after the speech it codifies. Most historical errors in this field come from substituting one category for another—for example, treating Tirhuta script as proof of one spoken boundary, or using a Sanskrit manuscript to infer Sanskrit household speech. The evidence firewall protects against such substitutions.

EVIDENCE FIREWALL FOR PRE-STANDARDISATION LANGUAGE HISTORY



Secure reconstruction requires agreement across these evidence classes, not substitution of one for another.

Figure 143 — Evidence firewall: speech, written register, script and later standardisation

36.30 Conclusion: a multilingual region before standard language regimes

Before modern standardisation, Mithila–Vajji–Anga was neither linguistically formless nor neatly partitioned into the language territories familiar today. It possessed structured repertoires: durable Sanskrit learning, Middle Indo-Aryan inheritances, Apabhraṃśa and Avahatṭa literary practices, increasingly visible Maithili vernacular writing, western and eastern speech continua, oral genres, and growing contact with Persianate institutions. Nepal was part of this circulation, not an external afterthought. The strongest history is therefore one of vernacularisation within multilingual continuity. Languages developed through speech communities and contact long before grammars fixed their boundaries. Chapter 37 can now examine the more specific question of how a literary Maithili tradition was formed, while Chapters 41 and 42 will return separately to the eastern Angika and western Bajjika zones without projecting modern boundaries backward.

Table 36.1 — Languages before modern standardisation: evidence, secure use and limit

Evidence	What it can establish securely	Best historical use	Limit / caution
Dated inscriptions and charters	Recorded language, script, names, titles and formulae at a specific time	Anchor documentary registers and onomastic forms	Formal language may differ from local speech
Manuscripts	Vocabulary, grammar, genre and scribal practice in surviving copies	Trace written vernacularisation and textual circulation	Copy date may be later than composition; scribes can alter forms
Varṇa-ratnākara and other literary texts	Substantial early vernacular forms and lexical fields	Demonstrate capacity of vernacular prose/literature	Literary style is not a transcript of everyday speech
Comparative historical linguistics	Regular correspondences and probable earlier forms	Reconstruct long-term phonological and morphological development	Reconstruction is inferential, not a dated recording
Later grammars and surveys	Detailed modern/recent grammar, vocabulary and regional variation	Provide comparative baseline and evidence for standardisation	Colonial or modern categories cannot be back-projected

Evidence	What it can establish securely	Best historical use	Limit / caution
			unchanged
Oral genres recorded later	Formulae, lexicon, performance registers and variant traditions	Recover non-manuscript dimensions of language history	Current wording cannot automatically be dated to the tradition's origin
Script evidence	Graphic conventions, scribal training and manuscript networks	Study Tīrhuta/Nāgarī and other writing practices	Script does not equal language or spoken territory

Chapter 37 — Formation of Literary Maithili

Literary Maithili did not emerge at one instant when an anonymous spoken dialect suddenly became a written language. It formed through a long interaction among regional speech, oral performance, Sanskrit learning, Prakrit–Aṣṭaśāṣa–Avahatṭa inheritances, courts, scribal households, manuscript technologies and cross-border circulation. The surviving archive is uneven: some genres are visible because manuscripts survived, others because later editors collected them, and still others lived primarily in performance. This chapter therefore reconstructs a process of vernacularisation rather than a mythical birth date. It also follows the volume’s adopted two-Vidyāpati framework: the pre-Jyotirīśvara Mahākavi Vidyāpati of the Maithili padāvalī tradition is kept distinct from the later fifteenth-century Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura associated with the Oiniwar court and Sanskrit/Avahatṭa works.

37.1 Formation, not “birth”: what a literary language requires

A spoken language can exist for centuries without leaving an archive that modern literary historians can readily see. “Formation of literary Maithili” therefore means the growth of repeatable conventions for composition, performance, copying, attribution and reception in a regional vernacular. It requires more than isolated vernacular words in Sanskrit documents. A literary language becomes historically visible when extended texts use it deliberately, audiences recognise recurring genres, scribes can reproduce it, and later writers treat earlier compositions as models. None of these developments needs to happen simultaneously. Prose may become writable before a stable dramatic convention; song may circulate orally before manuscripts record it; courtly prestige may rise after popular performance has already flourished. The historical problem is thus to identify converging evidence. Literary Maithili emerged through accumulation: vernacular grammar supplied the medium, oral culture supplied memorable forms, learned traditions supplied techniques of classification and poetics, and social institutions supplied occasions for preservation.

37.2 Vernacularisation within, not against, the Sanskrit cosmopolis

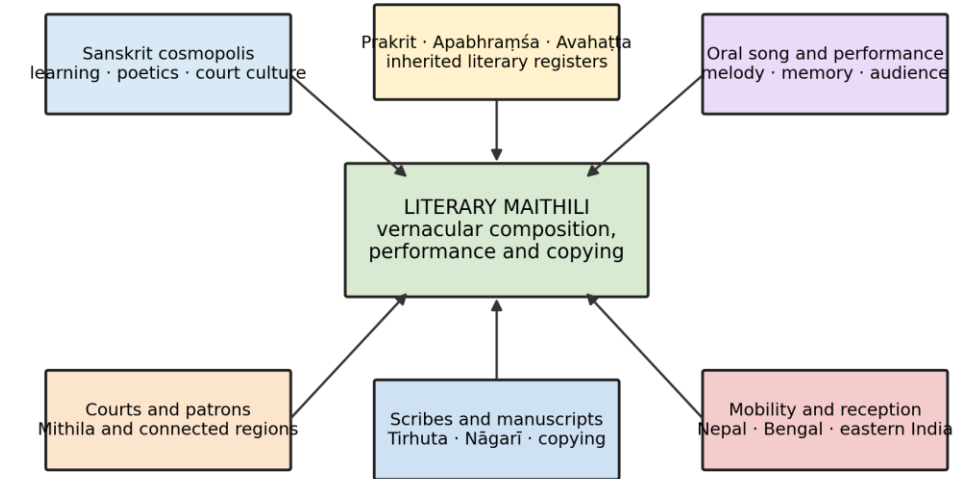
The rise of Maithili writing did not require the disappearance of Sanskrit. Sanskrit remained a major language of philosophy, ritual, law, scholarship and elite literary production across Mithila. Vernacularisation is better understood relationally: writers increasingly used a language of place for domains in which Sanskrit had long possessed transregional authority, while continuing to learn and deploy Sanskrit where appropriate. Sheldon Pollock’s wider model of a South Asian “vernacular millennium” is useful precisely because it emphasises coexistence rather than instantaneous replacement. In Mithila, Sanskrit expertise could strengthen vernacular writing by providing rhetorical categories, learned vocabulary, metrics and models of textual organisation. A writer could be highly Sanskritic in education yet choose Maithili for descriptive prose, song or stage dialogue. Literary Maithili was therefore not an anti-Sanskrit movement. It was a new allocation of linguistic functions within a multilingual cultural system.

37.3 Prakrit, Aṣṭaśāṣa and Avahatṭa as inherited literary resources

Between classical Sanskrit and the increasingly visible regional vernaculars lay a long history of Middle Indo-Aryan literary practice. Prakrit, Aṣṭaśāṣa and Avahatṭa were not merely defective stages on a ladder leading inevitably to modern languages. They were cultivated registers with their own conventions. Their metres, vocabulary, narrative habits and grammatical possibilities provided writers with models for composing outside Sanskrit. For the history of Maithili, this matters in two ways. Linguistically, some forms illuminate continuities between Middle and New Indo-Aryan. Literarily, they show that prestigious non-

Sanskrit writing was already normal before Maithili acquired a more distinct written profile. Avahaṭṭa remained available even after vernacular Maithili was capable of sustained composition; the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura's courtly works are an important reminder of this coexistence. Formation therefore involved selection among neighbouring registers, not a clean succession in which one language died when another appeared.

FORMATION OF LITERARY MAITHILI: AN ECOLOGY, NOT A SINGLE BIRTH DATE



Literary formation occurs when speech becomes reproducible across genres, institutions, performances and manuscripts.

Figure 144 — Formation of literary Maithili as an interacting cultural ecology

37.4 Oral literature before manuscript visibility

The manuscript archive systematically underrepresents oral performance. Work songs, wedding songs, ritual songs, narrative recitation, praise, satire, riddling and seasonal performance could develop sophisticated conventions without being copied into durable codices. When literary Maithili becomes visible in substantial written texts, it enters a world where vernacular verbal art already existed. Formulaic repetition, refrain, parallelism, dialogue and strongly patterned imagery are especially compatible with oral transmission. Later recordings cannot simply be dated back to the Middle Ages, yet the existence of mature performance systems helps explain how lyric and dramatic genres could expand quickly once written witnesses survive. Literary history must therefore resist a documentary illusion: the earliest surviving manuscript is not necessarily the earliest composition, and the earliest composition is not necessarily the earliest vernacular art. Manuscripts are evidence of preservation; performance may have supplied the deeper reservoir.

37.5 Performance as an engine of literary stabilisation

Performance does more than transmit a text; it can stabilise it. A song repeatedly sung at a court, shrine, marriage or seasonal gathering develops expected rhythms, refrains and thematic sequences. A drama creates recurring relations among dialogue, song, gesture and role. These expectations become a form of literary grammar. Performers may also preserve compositions across generations when manuscripts are lost, while manuscripts can later freeze one version of a previously variable performance tradition. For Maithili, this reciprocal relation between voice and writing is central. The growth of padāvalī, devotional song and dramatic traditions cannot be reconstructed solely from silent page-text. Melody, audience and occasion affected what was memorable and therefore what entered the canon. Literary Maithili became durable partly

because it could move between manuscript and mouth: written enough to be copied, flexible enough to be performed.

37.6 Script did not create the language, but scribal technology mattered

Tirhuta/Mithilākṣara later became a powerful marker of Maithili manuscript culture, while Nāgarī and other scripts also participated in transmission. Script, however, must not be confused with language. Maithili could be written in more than one script, and the same script could carry Sanskrit or other languages. The important historical point is institutional: a vernacular becomes easier to preserve when scribes have stable graphic conventions for representing its sounds, inflections and common words. Copying also creates networks of correction, commentary, ownership and inheritance. Manuscripts turn transient performance into transportable objects. Yet every copy introduces another historical layer: spelling may be normalised, forms altered, and marginal notes incorporated. Literary formation therefore includes the growth of a scribal ecology, but textual criticism must still distinguish composition from surviving copy.

37.7 Courts were accelerators, not solitary creators

Royal and aristocratic courts supplied patronage, audiences, scribes and occasions for literary display. The Karnata and Oiniwar worlds are therefore important to Maithili literary history. But court-centred narratives become misleading when they imply that literature was created from above. Courts recruited talent from learned households, temples, villages and itinerant networks; they also adopted genres already meaningful beyond the palace. The vernacular could serve courtly description, entertainment, devotion and public representation precisely because audiences already understood it. Patronage increased the resources available for composition and copying, while political disruption could redirect scholars and performers into new regions, including Nepal. A balanced account treats the court as a node where many social currents met. Literary Maithili was not the private invention of one dynasty: it became more visible when regional institutions chose to preserve and reward forms rooted in a broader speech community.

37.8 Learned households and the reproduction of competence

Mithila's dense traditions of Sanskrit learning helped create households in which textual competence could be transmitted across generations. Such households did not necessarily specialise in vernacular writing, but they supplied skills essential to it: grammar, metrics, poetics, manuscript preparation, legal and ritual vocabulary, and familiarity with multiple literary registers. Vernacular authorship could therefore emerge from scholars who possessed transregional learning yet chose a regional medium for particular purposes. This helps explain the technical confidence of early substantial Maithili texts. Their vernacularity need not imply distance from scholastic culture. At the same time, literary Maithili could move beyond learned households through performance and popular reception. The social formation of literature thus linked unequal institutions: elite literacy and broad vernacular intelligibility did not cancel one another; they interacted.

37.9 When vernacular grammar becomes a literary resource

A language becomes literary not by abandoning everyday grammar but by exploiting it deliberately. Honorific distinctions, pronouns, verbal endings, postpositions, particles and local idioms can create shades of intimacy, command, irony and social distance that are difficult to reproduce in a different language. Literary Maithili's strength lay partly in this proximity to regional speech. Writers could model conversation, desire, rebuke, devotion and observation with grammatical resources familiar to audiences. Yet literary language is never identical to casual speech. Composition selects, regularises and heightens forms; scribes and

performers may further reshape them. The result is a recognisable literary register built from the vernacular without becoming a phonographic transcript of one village dialect. The formation of literature therefore involves stylisation: local grammar acquires aesthetic and social functions that make it reproducible beyond the immediate speech event.

37.10 Varṇa-ratnākara as a major prose witness

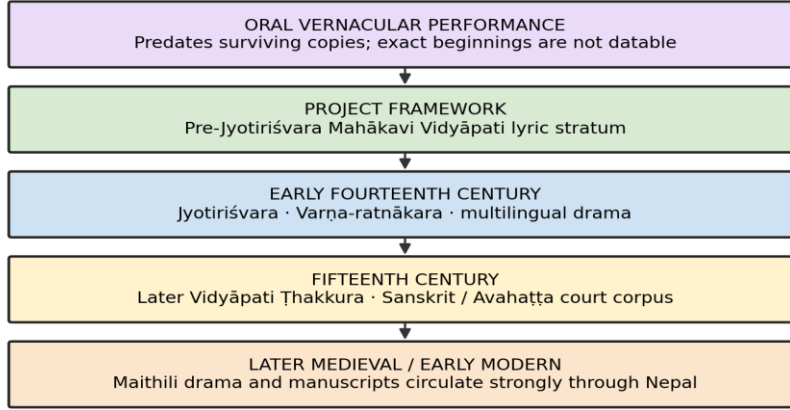
Jyotirīśvara's *Varṇa-ratnākara*, conventionally placed in the early fourteenth century and preserved through later manuscript transmission, is one of the central witnesses for early literary Maithili. Its importance is not that it proves a language was suddenly born in Jyotirīśvara's lifetime. Rather, sustained vernacular prose demonstrates that Maithili could organise extensive description, classification and lexical abundance. The work ranges across social types, environments, activities and aestheticised scenes, making it invaluable not only for literary history but also for the vocabulary of material and social life. The 1940 edition by Suniti Kumar Chatterji and Babua Misra made this evidence widely accessible to modern scholarship. Because the work is highly stylised and encyclopedic, it should not be treated as a transcript of ordinary conversation. Its achievement is different: it shows a vernacular functioning confidently as an instrument of elaborate prose composition.

37.11 Description itself becomes a literary claim

The encyclopedic impulse of *Varṇa-ratnākara* is significant for vernacularisation. To name plants, objects, professions, bodies, emotions, places, performances and social situations in a regional language is to demonstrate that the vernacular can order the world. The literary force lies not merely in vocabulary lists but in the capacity to arrange perception. A cosmopolitan language does not monopolise refined description once a vernacular can sustain dense semantic fields of its own. This does not make the text "realist" in a modern novelistic sense; lists and set descriptions obey rhetorical conventions. Yet the work expands the imaginable domain of Maithili prose. It turns local lexical richness into a literary technology. That achievement becomes one foundation for later prose, drama and song, even when later authors choose very different genres.

37.12 Jyotirīśvara's dramaturgical multilinguality

Jyotirīśvara is also associated with *Dhūrtasamāgama*, a dramatic work in which Sanskrit, Prakrit and vernacular song coexist. Modern summaries of the play differ in how they label particular passages, which itself warns against forcing medieval multilingual texts into one-language categories. What matters historically is the dramaturgical principle: different registers could share a stage and perform different social or aesthetic functions. Maithili's literary growth therefore occurred inside multilingual composition, not only in monolingual books. Theatre made code choice audible. A song in a regional vernacular could create immediacy or musical pleasure while learned speech retained other roles. This mixed practice is evidence of literary confidence: the vernacular did not need to expel Sanskrit or Prakrit in order to become aesthetically consequential.

SELECTED EVIDENCE HORIZONS FOR LITERARY FORMATION

These are evidence horizons, not “birth dates” of speech, authorship or genre.

Figure 145 — Selected evidence horizons for literary formation, c. 1200–1700

37.13 Genre specialisation made the vernacular larger

No single early text can define the whole literary language. Descriptive prose, lyric song, drama, narrative, devotional composition and practical writing each recruit different vocabularies and syntactic patterns. Literary Maithili expanded as more genres became possible. Prose required connective structure and extensive naming; lyric demanded compression, voice and musicality; drama required interaction among characters and registers. Once multiple genres exist, writers can borrow techniques across them and audiences can recognise a broader literary field. This is a more useful criterion of formation than the search for a first sentence. The language becomes “larger” not because its grammar changes overnight but because the social range of things that can be done with it increases.

37.14 The pre-Jyotirīśvara Mahākavi Vidyāpati in this volume’s framework

This volume follows the project’s adopted distinction between two historical Vidyāpatīs. Mahākavi Vidyāpati is treated here as the pre-Jyotirīśvara poet of the Maithili padāvalī tradition, distinct from the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura of the fifteenth-century Oiniwar milieu. Chapter 38 examines the historiographical case in detail; Chapter 37 uses the distinction only to prevent two corpora from being collapsed. Within this framework, the lyric tradition demonstrates that literary Maithili cannot be narrated as beginning with Jyotirīśvara’s prose. Song and prose represent different evidence streams, and the survival history of songs is especially vulnerable to later copying, anthology-making and attributional conflation. The methodological consequence is important: chronology must be argued by corpus, manuscript and attribution, not inferred from a famous name treated as a single biographical container.

37.15 Padāvalī: literature designed for voice

The Maithili padāvalī tradition shows how a literary corpus can be structured by song rather than book architecture. Short lyric units, recurring emotional situations, refrains, musical associations and remembered authorial signatures make poems portable across performers and regions. Such portability encourages both survival and variation. A lyric may outlive the manuscript that first recorded it; conversely, a later anthology may assign a traditional song to a prestigious poet. Literary history therefore needs both aesthetic reading and textual criticism. Padāvalī also demonstrates a key stage in Maithili’s formation: the vernacular could carry

highly compressed emotional and theological meanings while remaining singable. This fusion of literary craft and performance greatly expanded the audience of Maithili beyond readers of scholastic prose.

37.16 Gendered voices, devotion and erotic language

Many eastern Indian lyric traditions speak through gendered personae—especially female voices of longing, complaint, separation or desire. These voices should not be read mechanically as autobiographical statements by the historical author. They are literary positions shaped by *rasa*, devotional interpretation, dramatic role and performance convention. In Maithili, such lyricism helped make intimate vernacular grammar aesthetically powerful. Terms of address, diminutives, bodily imagery and conversational syntax could carry theological as well as erotic meanings. Later religious reception often intensified this double valence. The result is a literature in which social voice and devotional imagination intersect. Literary formation therefore included the ability to turn locally intelligible speech forms into sophisticated personae, not simply the ability to record events.

37.17 Attribution is part of the archive, not a transparent fact

A named signature in a song, an attribution in a late manuscript and an author named by a modern editor are three different kinds of evidence. *Padāvalī* traditions are particularly susceptible to accretion because memorable poets attract later compositions. Manuscripts can also preserve variant names, omit signatures or regularise them. The safest canon therefore has layers of confidence rather than an all-or-nothing boundary. Some works may be strongly attributable; others may belong to a school, performance lineage or later imitative corpus. This principle is essential to the two-Vidyāpati problem but extends far beyond it. Literary Maithili formed through communities of use, and communities often preserve prestige by attaching texts to exemplary names. Historical criticism should respect the tradition while still testing attribution.

37.18 The later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura: multilingual court literature, kept separate

The later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura belongs to a fifteenth-century political and learned world and is associated in this project with Sanskrit and Avahaṭṭa works such as *Likhanāvalī*, *Kīrtilatā*, *Kīrtipatākā*, *Puruṣaparīkṣā* and related courtly compositions. Pankaj Jha’s study of fifteenth-century Vidyāpati demonstrates the value of reading this corpus in a multilingual political environment rather than reducing it to modern language nationalism. For Chapter 37, the crucial point is functional multilinguality. A single courtly milieu could value Sanskrit treatise, Avahaṭṭa narrative and regional vernacular performance simultaneously. Literary Maithili therefore did not become mature by forcing every intellectual genre into Maithili. Its formation is visible precisely in the widening ecology of choices. The two-Vidyāpati distinction prevents the Maithili lyric corpus from being used uncritically to date or interpret the later Ṭhakkura’s historical works, and vice versa.

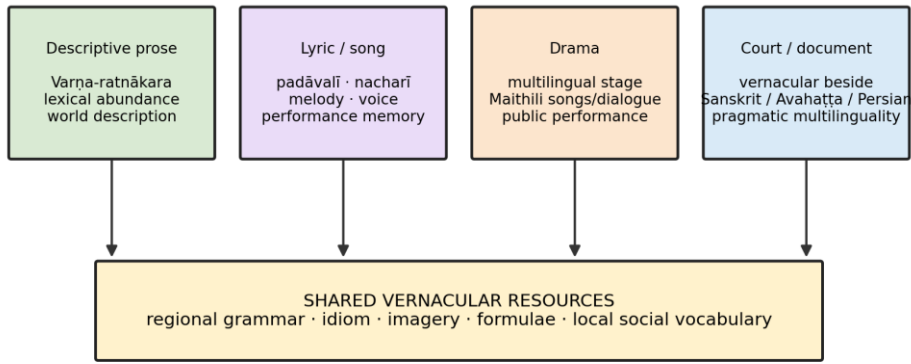
37.19 Avahaṭṭa was a literary choice, not “failed Maithili”

Older histories sometimes describe transitional registers teleologically, as if Avahaṭṭa were only an imperfect form waiting to become a modern language. That approach obscures authorial choice. In the fifteenth century, a writer could select Avahaṭṭa because it carried particular literary prestige, narrative conventions or transregional intelligibility. Its use alongside Sanskrit and vernacular forms shows a repertoire, not confusion. For the history of Maithili, this helps define literary formation negatively as well as positively: Maithili was becoming a recognised literary option, but it was not the only non-Sanskrit option. Genre, audience and patronage still shaped linguistic selection. The existence of competing registers is evidence of a sophisticated literary market rather than an immature language.

37.20 Sanskrit remained a coexisting language of high knowledge

Even after Maithili acquired powerful literary forms, Sanskrit retained deep institutional authority in Mithila. Nyāya, ritual, jurisprudence, scholastic debate and many forms of kāvyā continued in Sanskrit. This continuity matters because modern nationalist narratives often imagine literary progress as a zero-sum shift from Sanskrit to vernacular. The historical record suggests layering instead. A scholar might write or teach in Sanskrit while hearing, speaking, composing or patronising Maithili in other settings. Sanskrit technical vocabularies also entered vernacular texts selectively. Literary Maithili grew in a bilingual or multilingual learned environment, and its distinctiveness was sharpened by that relation. The vernacular did not have to reproduce every Sanskrit function in order to possess an autonomous literature.

GENRE AND REGISTER: LITERARY MAITHILI GREW BY SPECIALISATION



No single genre “created” Maithili literature. Different genres made different parts of the vernacular writable and memorable.

Figure 146 — Genre and register in the expansion of literary Maithili

37.21 Persianate contact enlarged the multilingual field

From the thirteenth century onward, Persian and Arabic entered the political, administrative and learned environment of North India with increasing force. As Chapter 35 showed, “Persianate” should not be treated as a synonym for one religion or ethnicity. For Maithili literary history, the main consequence is a broader multilingual field. Courtly actors, scribes and travellers encountered Persian administrative vocabularies and narrative cultures while Sanskrit and regional vernaculars continued. The fifteenth-century world studied by Pankaj Jha is especially important because literary and documentary practices crossed political-cultural boundaries. Borrowed words are only one trace of contact; new genres of record, diplomacy and historical representation also matter. Literary Maithili developed in this connected environment rather than inside a sealed regional container.

37.22 Nepal as archive, audience and second centre of circulation

The political and cultural relationship between Mithila and Nepal gave Maithili an unusually important trans-Himalayan afterlife. Manuscripts in Nepal preserve texts that might otherwise have disappeared, while migration of scholars and performers carried genres into the Kathmandu Valley. Basudev Lal Das points to the significance of Maithili manuscripts in Nepalese repositories, and theatre historians note the strong role of Maithili in the Malla-period dramatic world. Nepal should therefore not be treated merely as an external “influence” on an Indian language. It became part of the archival geography of Maithili itself. This cross-

border circulation also complicates modern national narratives: works copied or performed in present-day Nepal may belong to a literary history whose social field long predated the India–Nepal border.

37.23 Malla courts and the prestige of Maithili drama

In the Kathmandu Valley, Maithili became an important literary and theatrical language under Malla patronage, particularly in the early modern period. Carol C. Davis’s history of Nepalese theatre synthesises scholarship showing that Maithili-speaking scholars and poets influenced court culture and that Maithili became a major medium of dramatic production. The precise dating and language composition of individual plays must be checked work by work, but the larger pattern is secure: a regional language from Mithila acquired high prestige beyond Mithila itself. This circulation is an important test of literary formation. A language that can be adopted by distant courts for drama has moved beyond purely local writing. At the same time, Nepalese production could reshape the language through local performance conditions and contact with Newari and other traditions. Reception was creative, not passive.

37.24 Kīrtanīyā drama and the expansion of the stage tradition

Maithili literary histories commonly treat kīrtanīyā drama as a major vernacular dramatic tradition. Works associated with authors such as Umāpati Upādhyāya show the continuing importance of songs, Sanskrit frames and vernacular theatrical expression. The Maithili Akademi edition of Umāpati’s Pārijātaḥaraṇa offers a concrete textual witness for studying this mixed dramaturgy. Dating individual authors and recensions requires caution, but the genre’s historical significance is clear: Maithili was capable of sustained theatrical organisation, not merely isolated songs inserted into Sanskrit drama. Kīrtanīyā performance also linked literary text to music, ritual and communal spectatorship. Through such traditions, the language acquired a stage canon whose social reach differed from both scholastic prose and private lyric.

37.25 Music, rāga and the memory of texts

A song text detached from melody is only part of the historical object. Rāga indications, performance lineages and recurring melodic frames can help stabilise lyric corpora, although musical practice itself changes over time. The connection to music also explains why some poems travel far beyond the political region where they were composed. A memorable melody can carry language into new courts, religious communities and households, while performers adapt pronunciation and vocabulary. This produces a paradox for textual history: wide circulation increases survival but also increases variation. Literary Maithili’s formation was strengthened by musical portability, yet the same portability makes the recovery of an “original” wording difficult. Editors therefore need to compare manuscript, oral and musical evidence rather than privilege one automatically.

37.26 Eastern circulation: Bengal, Assam and shared lyric worlds

Maithili lyric forms circulated through wider eastern Indian devotional and courtly networks. Later traditions in Bengal and Assam interacted with Maithili songs, while literary idioms such as Brajabuli drew prestige from an imagined or stylised Maithili-like language. These processes should not be represented as simple one-way “influence.” Songs, metres, devotional themes and authorial names moved through multilingual communities, often being adapted to new phonologies and audiences. The result can make attribution difficult: a text preserved in a Bengali or Assamese environment may reflect copying, translation, imitation or genuine transmission from Mithila. This wider reception nevertheless confirms Maithili’s

literary prestige. A language becomes regionally consequential when others choose to emulate or preserve its forms.

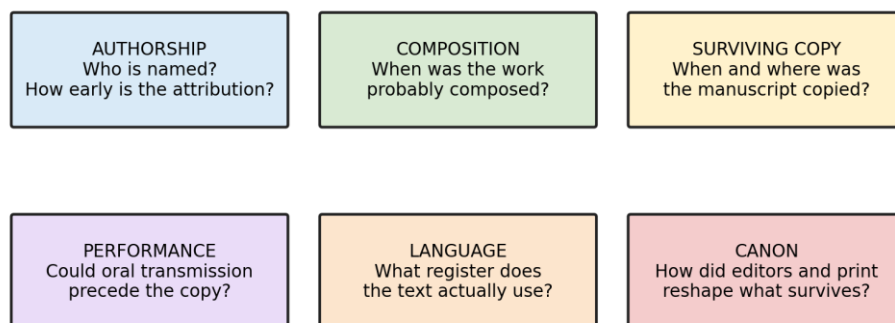
37.27 Canon formation accelerated under print and philology

The medieval archive did not organise itself into the canon familiar today. Nineteenth- and twentieth-century editors, antiquarians and linguists collected manuscripts, printed texts, classified scripts and assigned linguistic labels. George A. Grierson's 1881–82 introduction to Maithili, with grammar, chrestomathy and vocabulary, was foundational in making the language legible to modern comparative philology. Later histories by Jayakānta Mīśra and Radhakrishna Choudhary systematised literary periods and genres. This scholarship recovered enormous amounts of material, but it also created modern categories. “Early Maithili,” “medieval Maithili,” and author-centred canons are partly products of editorial decisions. A source-critical literary history must therefore study not only medieval composition but also the modern history of recovery. What survives in print is not a neutral mirror of what once circulated.

37.28 What counts as literary Maithili? an evidence firewall

Five questions should be kept separate. First, who is the author or attributed author? Second, when was the work composed? Third, when and where was the surviving manuscript copied? Fourth, what language or register does the text actually display? Fifth, how and when was it performed or canonised? Conflating these questions generates many chronological errors. A seventeenth-century copy can preserve a fourteenth-century text; a fifteenth-century author can write in Avahaṭṭa rather than Maithili; an orally transmitted song can be older than its first manuscript; a modern editor can standardise spelling. The evidence firewall does not make certainty impossible. It simply requires each claim to rest on the appropriate evidence class. This is especially important where celebrated names attract heterogeneous corpora.

EVIDENCE FIREWALL FOR EARLY MAITHILI LITERARY HISTORY



Strong claims require convergence across attribution, dating, manuscript, language and performance evidence.

Figure 147 — Evidence firewall for early Maithili literary history

37.29 A formation model: archive × performance × institutions × mobility

The formation of literary Maithili can be summarised as the interaction of four systems. Archive means texts that could be copied, stored and compared. Performance means songs and dramas that created

audiences and memory. Institutions mean courts, learned households, shrines and patronage networks that supplied resources and prestige. Mobility means the movement of people and texts among Mithila, Nepal, Bengal, Anga and other connected regions. None of the four alone is sufficient. A manuscript without readers may disappear; performance without recording may leave little datable evidence; patronage without a speech community cannot create vernacular intelligibility; local literature without mobility may remain regionally invisible. Literary Maithili became durable because these systems reinforced one another across centuries.

37.30 Conclusion: literary Maithili as a connected vernacular tradition

Literary Maithili emerged through vernacularisation inside a multilingual world. It drew on regional speech and oral performance, learned from Sanskrit and Middle Indo-Aryan literary traditions, gained visibility in works such as *Varṇa-ratnākara*, flourished in lyric and dramatic forms, and travelled through manuscript and performance networks into Nepal and wider eastern India. The process was cumulative rather than linear: Sanskrit remained strong, *Avahaṭṭa* remained available, and Persianate contact added another cosmopolitan layer. This chapter has also kept the volume's two-Vidyāpati framework intact rather than merging the pre-Jyotirīśvara Mahākavi's Maithili padāvalī corpus with the later fifteenth-century Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura's courtly Sanskrit/*Avahaṭṭa* works. Chapter 38 can now examine that distinction directly. For the broader social history, the essential point is already clear: Maithili became a literary language when communities could repeatedly compose, perform, preserve and recognise a regional vernacular across multiple genres and political spaces.

Table 37.1 — Formation of literary Maithili: major evidence and interpretive limits

Witness / evidence	Contribution	Secure use	Main caution
<i>Varṇa-ratnākara</i>	Early sustained prose; rich descriptive vocabulary	Shows elaborate Maithili prose	Stylised prose is not everyday speech
Jyotirīśvara's drama	Multilingual stage with vernacular functions	Shows Sanskrit, Prakrit and vernacular coexistence	Check language allocation in each recension
Mahākavi Vidyāpati padāvalī — project framework	Early lyric and performance stratum	Shows authority of vernacular song	Attribution and manuscript dating need testing
Later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura	Fifteenth-century multilingual court corpus	Shows literary choice in Oiniwar culture	Do not merge with the Mahākavi lyric corpus
Nepal manuscripts / Malla drama	Cross-border preservation and theatrical prestige	Shows Maithili beyond Mithila	Many surviving copies are later than composition
Umāpati, Pārijātaharaṇa	Textual witness to Maithili drama	Useful for genre, song and stage language	Dating and recension history require caution
Grierson and later philology	Modern recovery, classification and print access	Documents canon formation	Modern taxonomy cannot be back-projected
Oral song traditions	Performance structures and remembered lyric	Shows non-manuscript continuity	Present wording cannot be dated automatically

Chapter 38 — The Two Vidyāpatīs and Two Historical Contexts

The name Vidyāpati stands at the centre of Maithili literary memory, but a name is not a chronology. This chapter follows the governing position adopted for this volume: it distinguishes an earlier Mahākavi Vidyāpati, treated as the pre-Jyotirīśvara poet of the Maithili Padāvalī tradition, from the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura associated with the Oiniwar-period courtly and learned world and with Sanskrit and Avahaṭṭa works such as Kīrtilatā, Kīrtipatākā, Puruṣaparīkṣā, Gorakṣavijaya and Likhanāvalī. Because most modern scholarship combines these corpora within a single fifteenth-century biography, the distinction used here must be argued methodologically rather than asserted as consensus. The task is therefore to keep composition, manuscript transmission, patronage, language, genre and later reception separate, and to ask where the evidence genuinely converges.

38.1 The historiographical problem: one celebrated name, several archives

Literary history often begins with the author-name printed on a modern title page and works backward. That method is hazardous for premodern South Asia, where texts circulated in manuscripts, anthologies, performance lineages and scribal copies long before modern critical editions. “Vidyāpati” can therefore function simultaneously as a historical personal name, an authorial signature, a prestige attribution, a lineage of reception and a later canonical umbrella. The central problem is not whether tradition is valuable; it is how to disaggregate the kinds of evidence that tradition carries. A lyric transmitted in a Nepalese anthology, a Sanskrit legal treatise with a courtly frame, and an Avahaṭṭa political narrative do not become coeval merely because later scholarship places them under one name.

38.2 The project’s adopted two-Vidyāpati framework

This volume adopts a two-profile model. The first profile is Mahākavi Vidyāpati, placed before Jyotirīśvara and associated primarily with Maithili Padāvalī lyric. The second is the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura, situated in the fifteenth-century political and scholastic environment of Mithila and associated with the Oiniwar court, Sanskrit learning and Avahaṭṭa political writing. This is an interpretive position of the present project, not a claim that standard scholarship has already settled the matter in this way. The value of the model lies in the discipline it imposes: each corpus must earn its chronology through its own linguistic, codicological, historical and intertextual evidence rather than through inherited authorial aggregation.

38.3 Conventional scholarship and why it must be represented fairly

Most twentieth- and twenty-first-century scholarship treats Vidyāpati Ṭhākura as a single multilingual intellectual active broadly in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. Subhadra Jha’s edition of the songs, Radhakrishna Choudhary’s historical synthesis, the Sahitya Akademi tradition, Christopher Diamond’s manuscript study and Pankaj Jha’s political-literary history all work, with different emphases, within a single-author frame. A source-critical alternative must acknowledge that fact. The argument for separation cannot rest on ignoring conventional scholarship; it must explain why certain chronological, generic or transmission problems remain visible even after the single-author model is granted its strongest evidence.

38.4 A hierarchy of evidence

For this chapter, evidence is ranked rather than merely accumulated. Dated inscriptions, colophons and documentary formulas have the strongest chronological force when their authenticity and reading are secure. Explicit patronage references and identifiable political events provide a second layer. Linguistic register and genre can distinguish literary worlds but rarely date a text by themselves. Manuscript provenance gives a terminus for the surviving witness, not automatically for original composition. Bhaṇitā signatures and later attributions are important but must be tested against anthology history. Oral continuity and cultural memory are indispensable for reception history, yet they are least suited to precise absolute dating without corroboration.

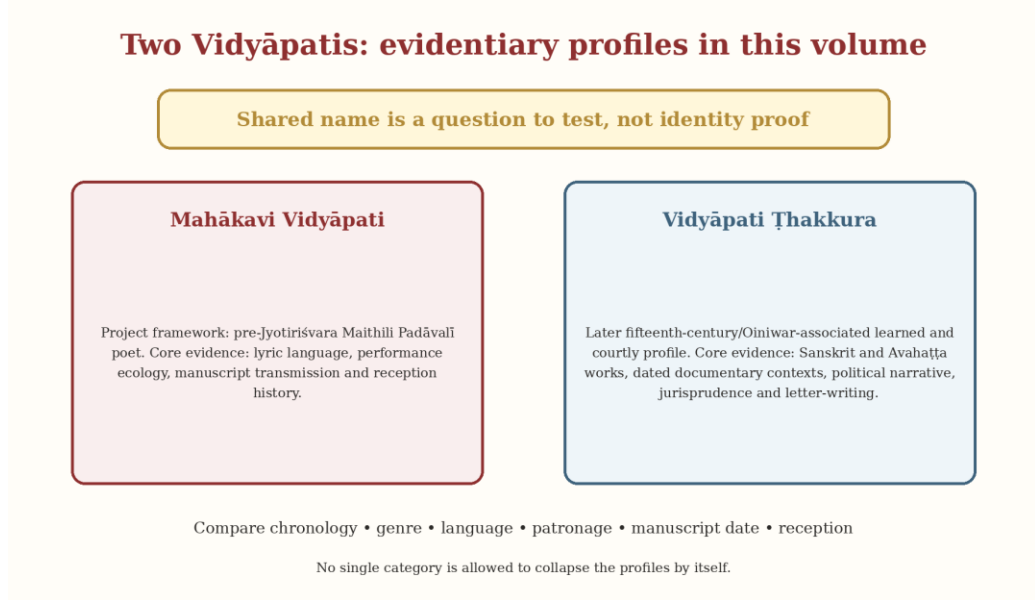


Figure 148 — *Two Vidyāpatīs: evidentiary profiles in this volume*

38.5 Mahākavi Vidyāpati: the earlier lyric profile in this volume

Within the adopted framework, Mahākavi Vidyāpati belongs to an earlier Maithilī lyric horizon, prior to Jyotirīśvara. The defining evidence is not a court list but a poetic ecology: compact padas, musicality, voice, erotic-devotional intensity, recurring emotional situations and a language adapted to performance and memorisation. The profile is therefore reconstructed through lyric form, the history of song transmission and the internal life of the Maithilī vernacular. The absence of a bureaucratic documentary frame is itself significant. This profile should not be forced into the later Oiniwar political sequence merely because the same prestigious name appears in subsequent literary history.

38.6 “Pre-Jyotirīśvara” as a chronological claim that requires discipline

To call Mahākavi Vidyāpati pre-Jyotirīśvara is stronger than calling the songs “old.” It places the lyric horizon before the early-fourteenth-century textual world associated with Jyotirīśvara and Varṇa-ratnākara. Such a claim must therefore remain tied to the project’s specific reading of Panji, literary and manuscript evidence. It should not be converted into invented birth and death dates. Where no secure dated witness exists, the responsible language is relative chronology: earlier than, later than, contemporary with, or transmitted after. The chapter consequently refuses to fill chronological gaps with rounded dates that merely look authoritative.

38.7 Padāvalī as a performance corpus rather than a single authored book

A padāvalī is not necessarily a book designed once and preserved unchanged. It is a corpus of songs that may circulate independently, be recombined by singers and scribes, acquire rāga labels, shift sequence and enter anthologies alongside other poets. The historical object is therefore plural. One must distinguish an individual pada, a local repertory, a manuscript collection, a later printed Padāvalī and the modern idea of a fixed authorial oeuvre. This matters directly to the two-Vidyāpati problem because the apparent unity of a printed collection may be a product of editorial history rather than a transparent mirror of the earliest compositional moment.

38.8 The Nepal manuscript tradition and what it can actually prove

The Nepal manuscript tradition is crucial because it preserves an early and influential corpus of songs attributed to Vidyāpati. Subhadra Jha’s twentieth-century scholarship treated the Nepal manuscript as a major textual witness, and later manuscript studies have emphasised its importance for tracing anthology history. Yet a manuscript date and a composition date are not identical. The witness proves that a body of songs, with particular attributions and textual forms, existed by the time of that copy. It does not by itself tell us how many generations of oral or written transmission preceded it, nor whether every attributed pada entered the corpus at the same time.

38.9 Bhaṇitā, signature and the danger of circular attribution

The poet-name inside a lyric is important evidence, but it is not infallible. In South Asian devotional and courtly traditions, famous signatures could be imitated, preserved formulaically, added by scribes or transferred through oral memory. A modern editor who selects all verses bearing “Vidyāpati” and then uses the resulting collection to prove a single author risks circular reasoning. The better procedure is comparative: examine linguistic form, metre, thematic clusters, manuscript distribution, variant readings and the age of each witness. Attribution becomes stronger when several independent indicators converge; it becomes weaker when a signature is the only link.

Chronology without forced conflation

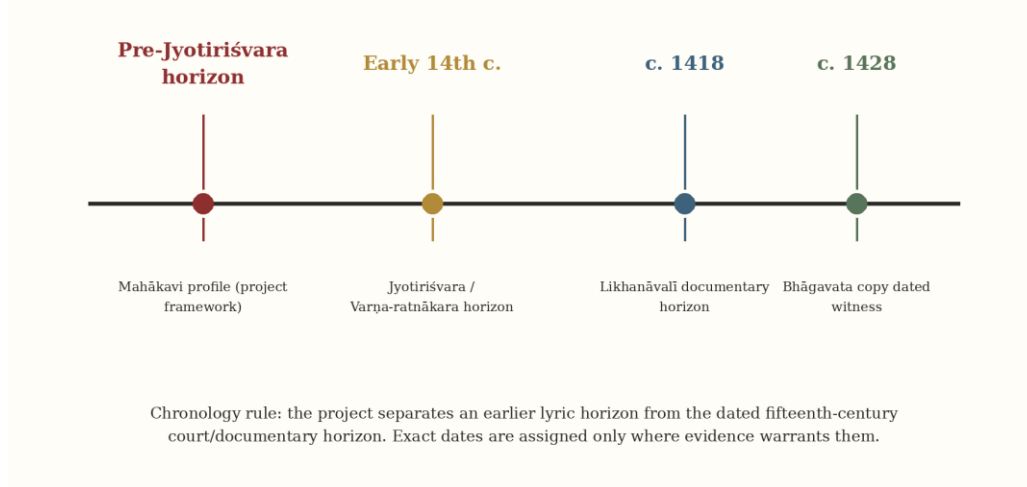


Figure 149 — Chronology without forced conflation

38.10 Lyric language and the problem of later normalisation

Manuscripts and printed editions can normalise spelling, morphology and vocabulary. A song copied centuries after its composition may therefore look linguistically younger than its core, while an editor seeking archaism may produce the opposite effect. The language of the Padāvalī must be studied at the level of variant witnesses, not only from modern standardised editions. This is particularly important for an earlier Mahākavi hypothesis. If the argument depends on linguistic archaism, it must identify forms that survive across independent witnesses and distinguish them from scribal convention, metre-driven variation, later Brajabuli adaptation and editorial regularisation.

38.11 Erotic, devotional and domestic voices as a distinct literary world

The lyric corpus attributed to Mahākavi Vidyāpati moves through longing, separation, union, jealousy, persuasion, seasonal change and devotional transvaluation. Its dramatic energy often depends on female personae, messengers and intimate dialogue. This world is socially dense but institutionally light: it evokes bodies, houses, roads, seasons, ornaments, ritual occasions and emotional codes rather than the machinery of courts, charters and legal procedure. Genre alone cannot prove different authorship, but the contrast establishes a historical question. If two corpora inhabit sharply different social worlds, their unity should be demonstrated, not merely presumed.

38.12 Reception in Bengal, Assam and Nepal is not evidence of original date

The immense eastern Indian afterlife of the songs is one reason the name Vidyāpati became larger than any single manuscript. Bengal developed Brajabuli lyric under Vidyāpati's influence; Assamese and Nepalese performance cultures also received Maithili forms. Reception, however, can telescope time. A fifteenth- or sixteenth-century community may preserve, transform or newly attribute older material. Conversely, a later imitation may look archaic because it deliberately adopts a prestigious style. The geographical spread of a corpus therefore proves literary authority and mobility, but chronology must still be established through independent anchors.

38.13 Transition to the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura profile

The later profile is different in evidentiary character. Here the archive becomes unusually documentary: named rulers, political conflict, learned Sanskrit genres, administrative correspondence, moral instruction and Avahaṭṭa political narrative. Pankaj Jha's work demonstrates how much fifteenth-century social and political history can be extracted from Likhanāvalī, Puruṣaparīkṣā and Kīrtilatā when they are read in their courtly context. This is precisely why the profile should be analysed on its own terms. It possesses chronological anchors and institutional textures that do not need to be borrowed from the lyric corpus.

38.14 Oiniwar Mithila as the later historical setting

The later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura is placed within the fragmented but intellectually vibrant political landscape of fifteenth-century Mithila, where local rulers negotiated with neighbouring powers, especially the Sharqi world of Jaunpur, and where Sanskrit scholastic authority coexisted with vernacular and Persianate currents. Court patronage created occasions for praise, political biography, legal reasoning, ritual compilation and documentary instruction. This environment is not a mere backdrop: it explains why one learned writer might move among Sanskrit, Avahaṭṭa and practical documentary genres. The later profile is therefore tied to institutions as much as to literary style.

38.15 Kīrtilatā: Avahaṭṭa political biography and connected worlds

Kīrtilatā is central to the later profile because its language and politics belong to a connected North Indian world. Modern scholarship describes it as an Avahaṭṭa or Apabhraṃśa-register political biography concerned with the fortunes of Kīrttiśiṃha and with the wider power field in which Mithila operated. Its vocabulary includes Sanskritic and Persianate elements; its political imagination moves beyond a sealed regional culture. In this volume, Kīrtilatā therefore belongs to Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura's fifteenth-century corpus. It should not be used automatically to date the earlier Maithili lyric profile unless an independent textual bridge is demonstrated.

38.16 Kīrtipatākā and the limits of surviving evidence

Kīrtipatākā is also associated with the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura tradition, but its textual history demands caution. Premodern works often survive incompletely, in late copies, or through editorial reconstruction. A title known from literary histories may have a weaker manuscript basis than a dated documentary text. The methodological point is larger than this single work: corpora should not be treated as equally secure simply because modern bibliographies list them side by side. Each text requires its own stemma of witnesses, dates, citations and editorial interventions.

38.17 Puruṣaparīkṣā: Sanskrit political ethics and social hierarchy

Puruṣaparīkṣā belongs to the Sanskrit learned world of the later profile. Pankaj Jha reads it as a work of political ethics and masculinity that uses narrative to educate and entertain while embedding ideas of statecraft, gender and hierarchy. Its intellectual genealogy reaches into classical Sanskrit traditions even as its concerns are made contemporary. The work therefore provides evidence for the social imagination of fifteenth-century elite culture in Mithila. It is methodologically distinct from the Padāvalī: similarities of moral vocabulary or devotional reference cannot erase differences of genre, audience, institutional function and transmission.

38.18 Likhanāvalī: writing, administration and the c. 1418 horizon

Likhanāvalī is one of the strongest chronological anchors for the later profile. The exemplary documents in the work are dated in Lakṣmaṇa Era 299, corresponding approximately to 1418 CE, and scholarship places the text in the milieu of Purāditya and the period of political displacement associated with Śivasīṃha's fall. The work models official and private letters, transactions and social communications. This gives the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura a concrete documentary horizon. The strength of this anchor also clarifies the central problem: it dates Likhanāvalī and its context securely; it does not automatically date every lyric later attributed to the same name.

Composition, manuscript and reception are different dates

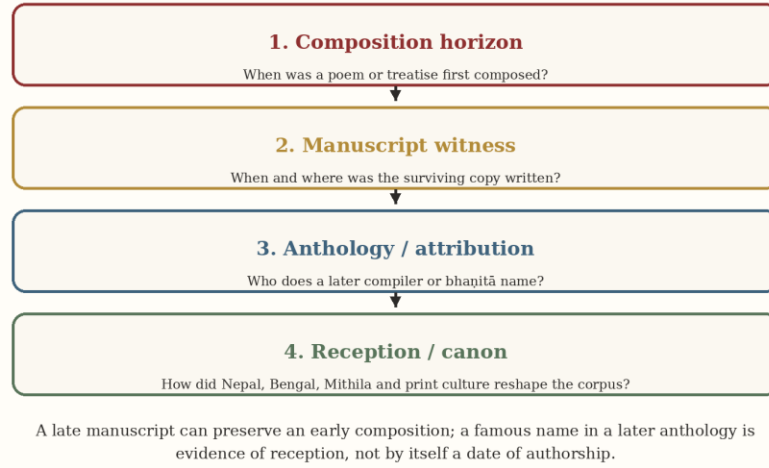


Figure 150 — Composition, manuscript and reception are different dates

38.19 The 1428 Bhāgavata copy as a material chronological witness

An important later chronological anchor is the manuscript copy of the Bhāgavata associated with Vidyāpati and dated to Lakṣmaṇa Era 309, approximately 1428 CE. Older chronological studies, including Muhammad Shahidullah's analysis, used this kind of dated material to reconstruct the life of the conventional single Vidyāpati. Within the two-profile model, the evidence is retained but assigned more narrowly: it establishes the activity of the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura profile in the fifteenth century. It should not be made to pull an undated lyric corpus forward in time without an explicit chain of evidence connecting the two.

38.20 Gorakṣavijaya and the problem of multilingual dramatic attribution

Gorakṣavijaya, associated in this project with the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura, reminds us that dramatic and performative texts can themselves be multilingual and unstable in transmission. A play may contain Sanskrit framing, vernacular songs, stage-language conventions and later interpolations. Its attribution must therefore be tested through manuscripts and performance history rather than genre labels alone. The existence of vernacular elements in a later courtly drama cannot be used as a shortcut to merge it with the earlier Padāvalī poet. Multilingual competence is historically plausible for the later profile, but plausibility is not identity proof.

38.21 One person can write in many languages—but that is not the whole argument

The strongest objection to separating the corpora is straightforward: multilingual authorship was normal in premodern India. A Sanskrit scholar could compose Avahaṭṭa narrative and Maithili song; language difference therefore cannot by itself prove two authors. This chapter accepts that objection. The two-Vidyāpati model does not rest on language alone. It rests on a bundle of questions: relative chronology, genre ecology, manuscript transmission, political anchoring, patterns of attribution and the gap between performance archive and courtly documentary archive. Only the cumulative pattern can sustain separation; no individual linguistic feature is sufficient.

38.22 Nor does genre difference alone prove two authors

A prolific author can write love lyrics, political praise, legal manuals and devotional works. Genre diversity is therefore evidence of range, not automatically of multiplicity. The historical question is whether the genres share demonstrable chronological bridges. Do securely dated manuscripts cross-reference one another? Do early witnesses attribute both corpora to the same person? Do patrons, family relations or colophons connect them? Do lexical and metrical fingerprints remain stable enough across languages to matter? By asking these questions, the two-profile framework becomes testable. Without such tests, separation would be no more rigorous than conflation.

38.23 Namesakes, titles and prestige attribution in learned cultures

“Vidyāpati” itself carries semantic prestige: lord or master of knowledge. Premodern learned cultures frequently contain repeated personal names, honorifics, lineage names and titles. A later scholar may bear the same name as an earlier poet without deception or confusion in his own time; conflation can arise only when later catalogues compress distinct archives. Conversely, an honorific can become attached to a famous individual and make genuine continuity more likely. The name therefore has evidentiary value, but its weight must be calibrated against dates, genealogy and manuscript provenance. Onomastic identity is a clue, not a verdict.

38.24 Why later canon formation encourages conflation

Print culture prefers stable authors and collected works. Editors, academies and literary histories have understandable reasons to gather dispersed texts under a celebrated name: readers gain a coherent oeuvre, regional literature gains a representative genius, and manuscripts become easier to catalogue. But the resulting author can be more unified than the premodern archive ever was. The same process is visible across world literatures where anonymous, pseudonymous and composite traditions later crystallise around major names. The task of critical history is not to dismantle cultural reverence; it is to distinguish the history of the canon from the history of composition.

38.25 The two biographies as different social histories

If separated, the two Vidyāpati profiles illuminate different phases of Mithila’s cultural history. Mahākavi Vidyāpati represents the deep vernacularisation of lyric and performance: speech becoming song, song becoming portable literary memory, and intimate voices becoming transregional cultural capital. Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura represents a later world of courtly negotiation, Sanskrit intellectual authority, Avahatṭa political narrative, administrative writing and contact with Persianate state forms. The distinction therefore has consequences beyond literary biography. It allows two different social formations to remain historically visible instead of being compressed into the life of a single exceptional polymath.

38.26 The implications for Jyotirīśvara and early Maithili chronology

The adopted chronology also changes the position of Jyotirīśvara. In a conventional single-Vidyāpati narrative, Jyotirīśvara appears as an important predecessor to a fourteenth/fifteenth-century Vidyāpati. In this project, the earlier Mahākavi Vidyāpati precedes Jyotirīśvara, making the Padāvalī horizon part of the deeper prehistory of literary Maithili. Varṇa-ratnākara then becomes not the beginning of the language but an early surviving prose monument within an already developing vernacular world. This is a major historiographical consequence and therefore requires especially careful source separation, not rhetorical certainty.

38.27 The implications for Maithili literary periodisation

Periodisation built around a single “Age of Vidyāpati” risks absorbing too much. The two-profile model encourages a more granular sequence: an earlier lyric/performance horizon; the early-fourteenth-century prose and dramatic world of Jyotirīśvara; a fifteenth-century courtly and scholastic horizon associated with Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura; and later manuscript, devotional and theatrical expansions across Nepal and eastern India. Such periodisation better accommodates discontinuity. It also allows literary forms to overlap without forcing them into a linear ladder from primitive vernacular to mature literature.

38.28 An attribution firewall for this volume

Future chapters will apply an explicit firewall. A work will not be assigned to Mahākavi Vidyāpati merely because it is in Maithili, nor to Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura merely because a modern edition prints his name. Attribution should specify the evidence category: early manuscript, later manuscript, *bhaṇitā*, colophon, external citation, court reference, linguistic comparison or modern editorial tradition. Where the evidence is mixed, the text will be described as “attributed to” rather than silently absorbed. This protects both profiles from accumulating works by inertia and makes later correction possible if stronger manuscript evidence appears.

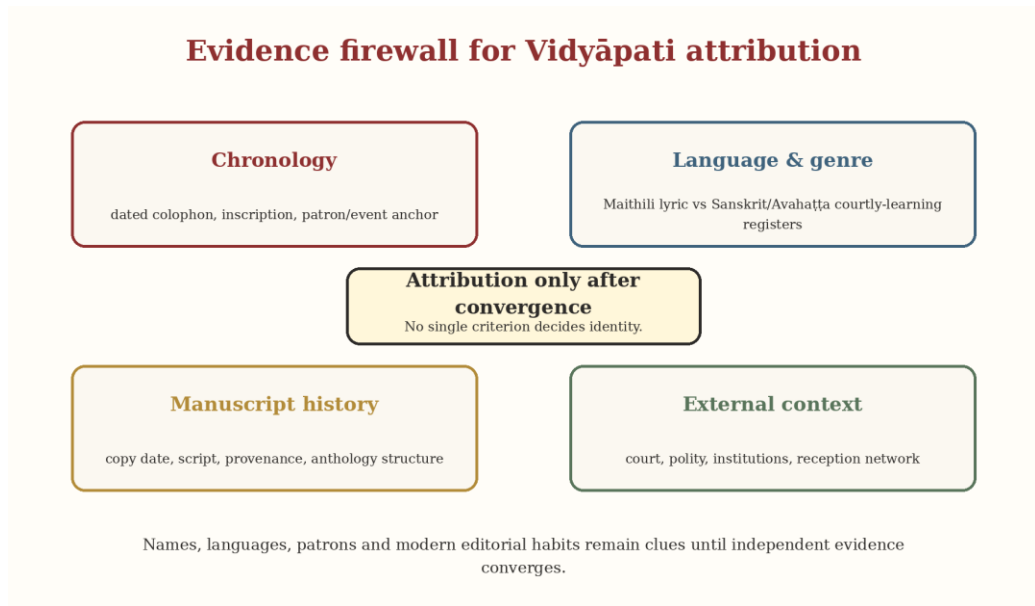


Figure 151 — Evidence firewall for Vidyāpati attribution

38.29 What evidence could falsify or revise the two-profile model?

A historical model should identify what could prove it wrong. A securely dated early manuscript that unambiguously links the Padāvalī poet with the later courtly genealogy would strongly weaken the separation. Conversely, an early witness explicitly distinguishing two Vidyāpatīs would strengthen it. A demonstrable chain of self-citation across securely dated works would also matter. So would palaeographic or codicological evidence that moves key lyric witnesses earlier or later. The project’s position is therefore provisional in the scholarly sense: adopted consistently because it best fits the present internal framework, but open to revision by superior primary evidence.

38.30 Conclusion: preserve difference until evidence justifies identity

The safest principle is asymmetrical: similarity should invite comparison, but identity should require convergence. This volume therefore preserves two Vidyāpatīs because doing so prevents the dated fifteenth-century documentary archive from colonising an earlier lyric chronology by assumption. Mahākavi Vidyāpati remains the pre-Jyotirīśvara Maithili Padāvalī poet in the project’s framework; Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura remains the later Oiniwar-associated Sanskrit/Avahatṭa intellectual and courtly writer. Conventional single-author scholarship is recorded and engaged rather than erased. The resulting history is less tidy than a single heroic biography, but it is more transparent about what each category of evidence can and cannot prove.

Table 38.1 — Two Vidyāpati profiles: evidence domains and cautions

Evidence domain	Mahākavi Vidyāpati — project profile	Later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura — project profile	Main caution
Relative chronology	Pre-Jyotirīśvara lyric horizon	Fifteenth-century/Oiniwar-associated horizon	Do not invent exact dates where only relative chronology is available
Core corpus	Maithili Padāvalī lyric tradition	Kīrtilatā, Kīrtipatākā, Puruṣaparīkṣā, Likhanāvalī, Gorakṣavijaya and related learned works	Modern collected editions may over-unify transmission
Primary registers	Maithili lyric and performance language	Sanskrit and Avahatṭa, with multilingual courtly context	Language difference alone cannot prove different authors
Social setting	Performance, song, intimate and devotional lyric worlds	Court, administration, political ethics, scholastic and documentary worlds	Genre difference alone cannot prove different authors
Manuscript evidence	Anthologies and lyric witnesses, including Nepal transmission	Dated/documentary and learned manuscript contexts	Copy date is not automatically composition date
Chronological anchors	Project’s relative pre-Jyotirīśvara placement	c. 1418 Likhanāvalī horizon; c. 1428 Bhāgavata copy witness	Anchors date specific evidence, not every attributed work
Reception history	Wide eastern circulation; later Brajabulī and devotional prestige	Historical and scholarly consolidation into a polymath court-author profile	Reception can create retrospective unity
Attribution rule	Require convergence beyond name or bhaṇitā	Require convergence beyond modern bibliographic assignment	Use “attributed to” where evidence remains mixed

Chapter 39 — Tirhuta/Mithilakshar and Scribal Culture

Tirhuta, also called Mithilakshar and historically “Maithili” script in some descriptions, belongs to the eastern Brahmi-derived family of writing systems. Yet the social history of the script cannot be reduced to an alphabet chart. Its significance lies in the manuscript worlds that connected Sanskrit and Maithili learning, household archives, teachers and pupils, legal and ritual texts, lyric anthologies, Nepalese repositories, correspondence and later movements of print and digital revival. This chapter therefore separates palaeographic ancestry from a fixed script identity, script from language, composition from surviving copy, and manuscript culture from modern claims about a single community. The aim is to reconstruct Tirhuta as a changing technology of knowledge and social memory.

39.1 Script history requires palaeography, not retrospective naming

Writing systems change gradually. Later observers often attach a familiar name to every earlier regional hand that resembles it, but palaeography works more cautiously. Tirhuta belongs to an eastern line of Brahmi-derived scripts associated with Kuṭṭila and Gauḍī developments, and it is closely related to Bengali-Assamese, Newar and Odia traditions. The Unicode Standard describes these related scripts as differentiated branches rather than identical forms extending unchanged into antiquity. For social history this distinction matters: an early eastern inscription can illuminate ancestry without proving that contemporaries understood its hand as the same scribal system later called Tirhuta or Mithilakshar. The historical question is therefore when a recognisable regional convention became stable enough to support recurring scribal practices, not how far backward a modern name can be projected.

39.2 Tirhuta, Mithilakshar and “Maithili script” are overlapping names

The script has circulated under several names. “Tirhuta” refers to the Tirhut/Mithila region; “Mithilakshar” literally marks the letters of Mithila; and “Maithili script” has also appeared in scholarship and encoding discussions. The 2006 Unicode roadmap request explicitly noted that all three names were historically attested and used interchangeably, while later standardisation adopted “Tirhuta” as the formal script name. The multiplicity of names should not be mistaken for multiple unrelated scripts. At the same time, nomenclature carries politics: naming a script after a language emphasises linguistic ownership, while naming it after a region can accommodate its use for Sanskrit and other learned purposes. This volume therefore uses Tirhuta/Mithilakshar as paired historical designations.

39.3 Script and language must be kept separate

A script is a graphic technology, not a language. Tirhuta has been used for Maithili, but manuscript traditions also used it for Sanskrit. Conversely, Maithili has been written in more than one script, including Devanagari, Kaithi and Newar hands in different places and periods. Confusing script with language creates false conclusions: a Sanskrit manuscript in Tirhuta does not become Maithili literature, and a Maithili text copied in Devanagari does not lose its linguistic identity. Scribal culture is therefore best analysed through a matrix of language, script, genre, material and institutional setting. Such a matrix also helps explain why a regional script could remain socially meaningful even while multilingual scholars moved between Sanskrit and vernacular registers.

39.4 From Gauḍī-related ancestry to a differentiated medieval hand

The Unicode core specification places Tirhuta within the Gauḍī-derived eastern family and states that differentiation from related scripts was established by the fourteenth century. This is a safer chronological threshold for a distinct scribal identity than claims that every much earlier eastern form is already Tirhuta in its later shape. Letterforms do not change simultaneously, and scribes can retain archaic habits or adopt features from neighbouring traditions. Boundaries between scripts are therefore historical gradients. By the medieval period, however, a recognisable regional hand could support sustained scholarly and religious manuscript production in Mithila. The emergence of such a convention reflects networks of training: scribes learned not isolated characters but repertoires of ligatures, abbreviations, page architecture and correction practices.

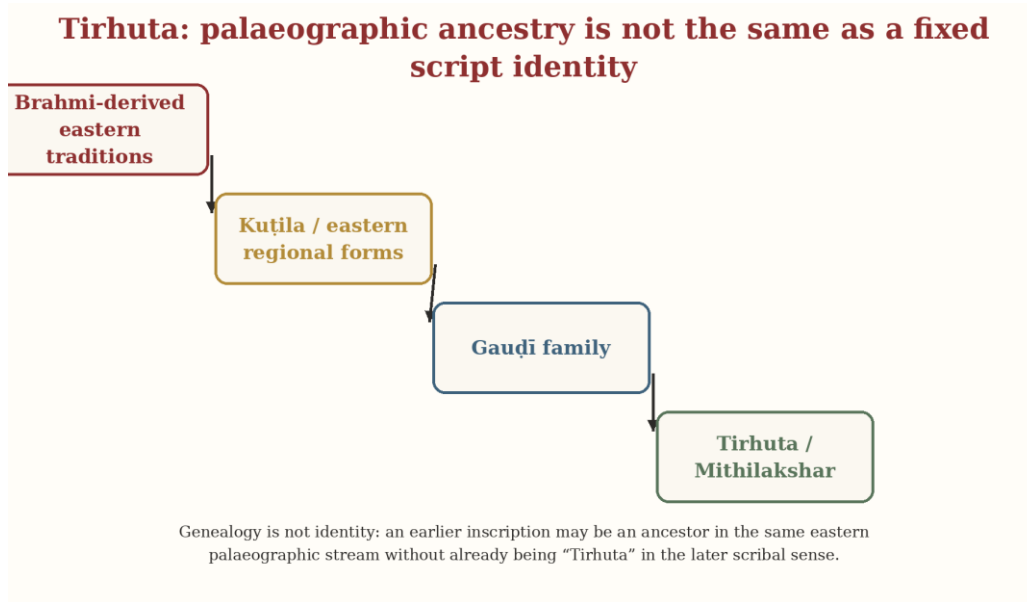


Figure 152 — *Tirhuta: palaeographic ancestry is not the same as a fixed script identity*

39.5 A manuscript is an artefact, not merely a container of words

To read scribal culture historically, the manuscript must be treated as a physical object. Palm leaf and paper impose different constraints on line length, folio shape, binding, margins and repair. Ink density, ruling, foliation, worm damage, replacement leaves and later bindings can preserve a biography of use. A modern transcription strips away most of this evidence. Two printed editions may present the same passage identically even if their manuscripts were separated by centuries, copied in different regions and corrected by different hands. Codicology therefore complements textual criticism: the scholar asks what the object was made from, how quires or leaves were organised, where the scribe placed headings, how corrections were inserted, and what later readers added.

39.6 The scribe as a historical actor

Premodern scribes were not neutral copying machines. They selected exemplars, resolved illegible forms, regularised spelling, omitted or repeated passages, inserted glosses and sometimes identified patrons, teachers or dates in colophons. Their choices can preserve dialectal features or erase them. A copying error may expose the visual similarity of two letterforms; a correction may reveal that a second reader checked the text. Scribal agency is especially important for Maithili literary history because many works survive only through later witnesses. The scribe stands between composition and the surviving artefact. Instead of treating variation as

corruption alone, historical analysis can ask what forms of literacy, memory and pedagogy produced the variation.

39.7 Patronage, commission and the household archive

Manuscripts entered social life through commissions, gifts, inheritance and institutional copying. A patron might finance a religious text, a legal digest, a ritual manual or a literary work for study and prestige. Households could preserve genealogical, legal and ceremonial records alongside scholastic manuscripts. The continued association of Tirhuta with ceremonial correspondence, including marriage-related letters in some communities, shows how script could mark a social occasion even after everyday writing shifted elsewhere. Yet such later specialised use must not be projected backward as proof that medieval Tirhuta belonged exclusively to one caste or ritual group. The archive visible today is shaped by survival: durable elite collections are more likely to be preserved than the writing practices of poorer or less institutionalised users.

39.8 Scholastic culture: copying as study

In centres of Sanskrit learning, copying could be a form of education. A manuscript of logic, grammar, ritual, philosophy or law was not merely stored; it was read aloud, explained, annotated and recopied. Marginal notes and interlinear additions can therefore register pedagogical encounters. Mithila's intellectual history, including Navya-Nyāya and Dharmaśāstra traditions, depended on such manuscript labour. Tirhuta's importance here lies not in an exclusive script-language bond but in its role within a regional scholarly ecology. The same learned person could read Sanskrit in Tirhuta, compose or perform Maithili, and encounter Devanagari or other eastern scripts. Multiscript competence was an asset rather than an anomaly.

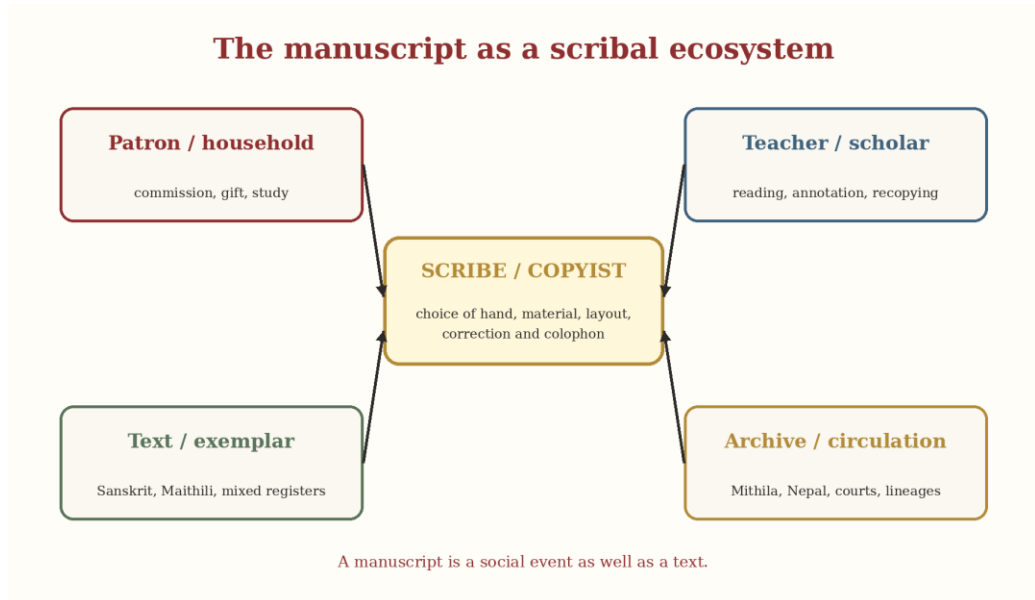


Figure 153 — *The manuscript as a scribal ecosystem*

39.9 Colophons: valuable anchors with limits

Colophons can record the completion of copying, the scribe, patron, place, teacher, owner or date. They are among the strongest internal anchors for manuscript history, but they must be interpreted precisely. A dated colophon normally dates the copy in which it appears, not automatically the original composition. A scribe may reproduce an older colophon from the exemplar or add a new one. Calendrical conversion can introduce additional uncertainty. Chapter 38 used this rule for Vidyāpati attribution; the same firewall

applies here. Script history gains when palaeography, material features and colophon information converge. When they conflict, the conflict is evidence requiring explanation, not an inconvenience to be harmonised away.

39.10 Letterforms, ligatures and scribal hands

Palaeographic comparison examines more than isolated alphabet samples. Useful features include the treatment of vowel signs, conjunct consonants, headline behaviour, terminal strokes, numeral forms, punctuation, spacing and the relative proportions of letters. Individual scribes develop habits, while workshops and teaching lineages can produce families of hands. A script chart necessarily idealises this variation. Historical Tirhuta manuscripts therefore should not be judged by whether every character matches a modern font. Digital standardisation encodes characters, whereas manuscripts display glyph variation. The distinction between character and glyph is essential when old forms are mapped into Unicode or when a palaeographer decides whether an unusual shape is a distinct sign, a ligature or simply a scribal variant.

39.11 Numerals, accounting signs and everyday literacy

The social life of a script extends beyond literary pages. North Indian accounting signs and number forms circulated across several scripts, including traditions associated with Tirhuta. Such shared signs remind us that scribal boundaries were permeable. Merchants, administrators and household accountants could use repertoires different from those of a scholastic manuscript. Everyday writing is often underrepresented because ephemeral papers were discarded. The surviving literary canon therefore cannot by itself measure the full social range of literacy. Where accounting or legal documents survive, they should be studied alongside formal manuscripts to reconstruct the interaction between learned and practical hands.

39.12 Correction, omission and the archaeology of copying

Corrections reveal how manuscripts were made. A scribe may strike through a word, place a replacement above the line, insert omitted material in a margin or mark the place where a later leaf should be read. Repeated lines can result from the eye returning to the wrong occurrence of a similar phrase; omissions can occur when it jumps forward. Such errors are not random noise. They help textual critics infer relationships among copies and help historians see the mechanics of reading. In a lyric anthology, missing stanzas or irregular rhyme may suggest scribal omission; in a legal text, a marginal supplement may signal active comparison with another exemplar. Manuscript variation is therefore evidence of circulation.

39.13 The Nepal repositories and the preservation of Maithili materials

Nepal is indispensable to the history of Maithili manuscripts. Political, dynastic and cultural contacts carried texts, performers and scribal practices across the Himalayan foothill corridor. Important Maithili dramatic and lyric materials survive in Nepalese collections, sometimes in scripts or hands related to Mithila's own traditions. The so-called Nepal Manuscript of Vidyapati songs, for example, is written in the Maithili/Tirhuta script and has served as a major witness for twentieth-century editors. Its importance is precisely that of a manuscript witness: it provides a chronological and textual waypoint, not an automatic date for the composition of every poem it contains. Preservation geography must be distinguished from composition geography.

39.14 Manuscript anthologies and the problem of attribution

An anthology brings together texts that may have originated at different times and places. The compiler's decisions shape what later readers understand as a corpus. A name in a bhaṇitā or heading is evidence, but the manuscript context must be assessed: was the label written by the main scribe, a later hand or an editor? Did the exemplar already contain it? Are other poets represented? Chapter 38's two-Vidyāpati model makes these questions especially important. Tirhuta manuscripts can preserve early lyric traditions while still being later copies. Script alone cannot decide authorship. The proper unit of analysis is the complete witness: hand, material, sequence, attribution, variants and later annotations.

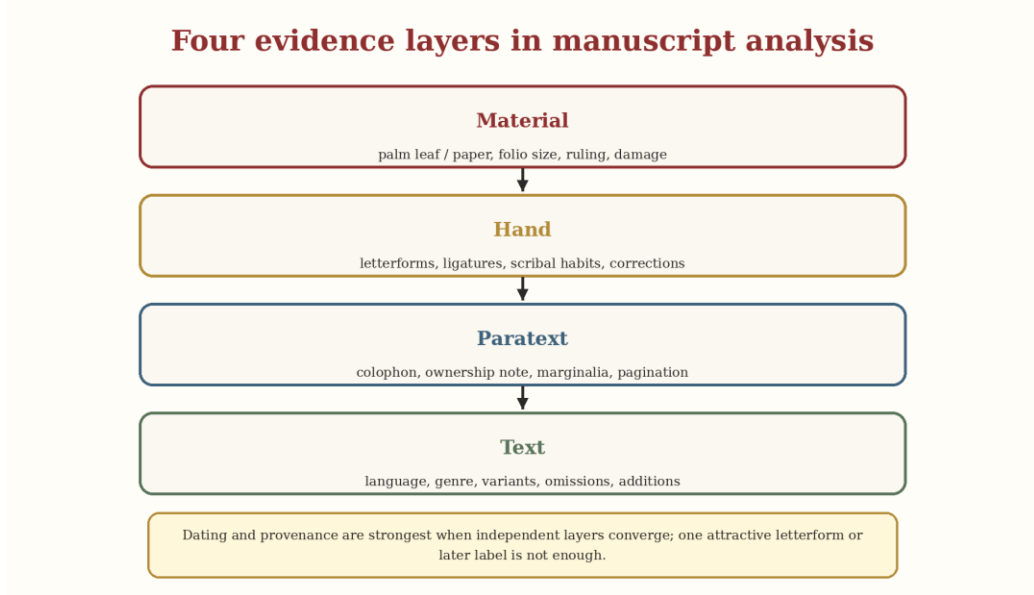


Figure 154 — Four evidence layers in manuscript analysis

39.15 Tirhuta and the legal-documentary world

Mithila's manuscript culture included legal, ritual and administrative genres, not just poetry. Learned digests, letters, genealogical materials and practical documents created recurrent demand for trained writing. The later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura's Likhanaṁālī belongs to a documentary imagination in which formula, address, social relation and written authority matter. Even when particular surviving copies use another script, the broader culture of formal writing helps explain why regional scribal expertise was socially valuable. Written documents could stabilise memory, encode hierarchy and travel beyond the immediate speaker. Yet documentary authority should not be romanticised: access to trained scribes and archives was uneven, and oral testimony continued to coexist with written forms.

39.16 Tirhuta and Panji: connection without total identification

The Panji tradition discussed in Chapter 31 depended on genealogical recording and specialist custodianship, and Tirhuta has been associated with such manuscript practices. But the two institutions should not be collapsed. Panji is a genre and archival-social institution; Tirhuta is a script. Genealogies can be recopied in other scripts, and Tirhuta was used for many texts unrelated to Panji. The methodological value of separating them is chronological as well as social. A later Panji manuscript may preserve older genealogical claims, while its handwriting reflects the date of copying. Likewise, later classifications within Panji cannot be pushed backward merely because the manuscript is written in a traditional script.

39.17 Sanskrit in Tirhuta: regionality without vernacularity

A Sanskrit text written in Tirhuta demonstrates how cosmopolitan language and regional script could coexist. This pairing complicates the common modern assumption that one language naturally belongs to one script. Sanskrit scholars in Mithila could participate in a pan-Indian intellectual language while using a regionally characteristic hand. The manuscript thereby carried two scales of identity at once: transregional Sanskrit learning and local scribal formation. This is important for the social history of knowledge. Regionalisation did not require abandoning Sanskrit; rather, local institutions could domesticate a cosmopolitan language through their own graphic practices, teaching lineages and archives.

39.18 Maithili in Tirhuta: vernacular text and visual region

When Maithili is written in Tirhuta, language and regional script reinforce one another, but even here the relationship is historical rather than timeless. Literary Maithili developed through oral, performative and manuscript channels; some witnesses use Tirhuta, others other scripts. A Tirhuta manuscript can nevertheless create a strong visual sense of regional belonging because readers recognise both the language and the graphic tradition. This visual identity became especially significant when print increasingly favoured Devanagari. The older script could then be remembered not merely as a tool but as a symbol of the manuscript age and of a distinctive Maithili public past.

39.19 Scribal multilingualism and mixed textual environments

Manuscripts often inhabit multilingual environments. A Sanskrit verse may accompany a Maithili explanation; a vernacular dramatic text may contain Sanskrit formulae; a title, colophon or ownership note may use a different register from the main body. Script does not necessarily change when language changes. Such mixed environments are crucial evidence against rigid modern language boundaries. They show readers moving across registers according to function. A scribe trained in Tirhuta could therefore mediate between scholastic Sanskrit, vernacular literary forms and practical notation. The manuscript page becomes a site where linguistic hierarchy and everyday multilingual competence meet.

39.20 From palm leaf to paper: material transition and scribal possibilities

The spread of paper did not instantly abolish palm-leaf manuscript culture, but it altered the economics and physical possibilities of copying. Paper could permit different page proportions, denser writing, easier binding and new patterns of annotation. Material transitions may also change which genres are copied and how often. A text recopied onto paper can survive after earlier palm-leaf exemplars disappear, making the later medium appear falsely original. Social historians should therefore resist equating the age of the surviving material with the age of the work. The sequence of media is part of transmission history.

39.21 Archives, loss and the survival bias of literary history

What survives is not a random sample of what once existed. Manuscripts preserved in royal, monastic, scholarly or landed households have a better chance of reaching libraries than ephemeral notes or the papers of marginal groups. Climate, insects, flooding, political upheaval, sale and neglect further filter the archive. Tirhuta's surviving corpus may therefore overrepresent learned and ritual traditions. Claims about who "used" the script must be framed as claims about attested use, not total historical use. The absence of manuscripts from a community can mean non-use, but it can also mean non-preservation. A source-critical history makes this survival bias visible.

39.22 Print did not simply replace manuscripts overnight

The arrival of print transformed reproduction, but manuscript and print coexisted for long periods. Printed books lowered the cost of producing identical copies and favoured scripts for which type, compositors and markets were available. Manuscripts remained useful for ritual, private correspondence, local archives and texts outside commercial demand. In Maithili, the eventual dominance of Devanagari in print changed the balance between graphic traditions. The shift should not be narrated as technological inevitability alone. Font availability, printing infrastructure, education, language politics and the economics of readership all influenced which script became convenient for publishers.

39.23 Devanagari and the remaking of modern Maithili print

Mithilesh Kumar Jha notes that early modern Maithili periodicals increasingly used Devanagari and points to the absence of adequate Mithilakshar type, familiarity with Nagari among scholars and the wider Nagari movement as possible factors. Recent scholarship further argues that the transition from manuscript to print reshaped the social image of Maithili itself. The point for this chapter is not to treat Devanagari as foreign or Tirhuta as a frozen essence. Rather, script choice became part of modern institution-building. A language could expand its print readership through one script while losing routine competence in another. The social cost was a growing distance between modern readers and older manuscript archives.

39.24 Metal type, fonts and the problem of graphic standardisation

Movable type requires decisions that manuscript writing can postpone. A punchcutter or font designer must define a finite inventory of characters and ligatures, regularise proportions and decide how conjuncts will be produced. Manuscript Tirhuta contains variation that does not map neatly onto a single typeface. Early type and later digital fonts therefore represent acts of interpretation. They make the script reproducible but also select particular glyph norms. The historical manuscript should never be judged as “incorrect” because it differs from a modern font. Standardisation is a new layer in the script’s history.

39.25 Unicode: characters, not a digital facsimile of every manuscript hand

Tirhuta was encoded in Unicode 7.0 in 2014 and occupies the block U+11480–U+114DF. Encoding is crucial because it allows text to be stored as interoperable characters rather than image fragments or private font hacks. Yet Unicode does not preserve every historical glyph. It encodes an abstract character repertoire and rendering rules; fonts supply visual forms. Scholars digitising manuscripts must therefore distinguish transcription from facsimile. A Unicode transcription can make a text searchable and comparable, while page images preserve the precise ductus, spacing, damage and scribal variants. The strongest digital edition links both.

39.26 Revitalisation and the new social life of Tirhuta

Unicode encoding, fonts, keyboards, teaching material and public signage have given Tirhuta a new technological environment. Government committees and literary organisations have supported preservation and instruction, while enthusiasts use the script in digital communication. Revival, however, is not simple restoration. Modern learners often encounter a standardised font before seeing manuscripts; digital input methods may favour forms different from historical handwriting. The revived script therefore enters a new social world. This does not diminish authenticity. It demonstrates that scripts survive by changing functions—from manuscript technology to heritage marker, educational subject and digital writing system.

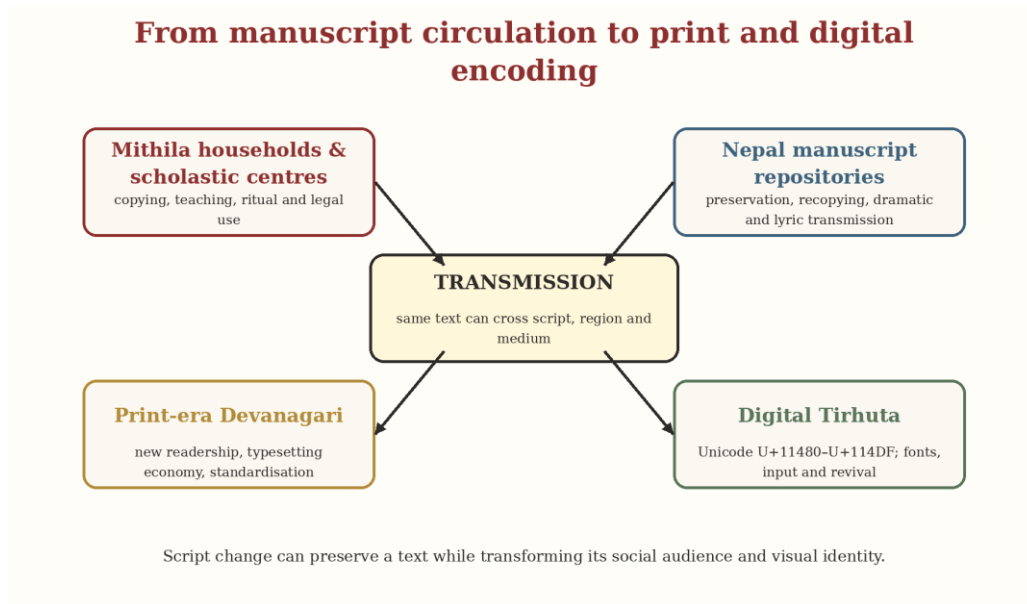


Figure 155 — From manuscript circulation to print and digital encoding

39.27 Accessibility to the manuscript archive

A script can become culturally prestigious at the same moment that fewer people can read it. This creates an archival bottleneck: large bodies of regional history may remain effectively closed to speakers of the language whose past they record. Preservation must therefore include cataloguing, high-resolution imaging, palaeographic training, transliteration and searchable transcription. Devanagari editions can widen access, but they should retain links to the Tirhuta witness so that editorial choices are auditable. Accessibility also means metadata: date, provenance, material, dimensions, folio sequence and scribal notes should accompany digital images rather than being stripped away.

39.28 A source-critical workflow for Tirhuta manuscripts

This volume adopts a simple workflow. First identify the physical witness and repository. Second describe material, foliation, hand and script without assuming a composition date. Third transcribe the text while recording uncertain readings. Fourth distinguish main text from marginalia, colophon and later additions. Fifth compare parallel witnesses where available. Sixth assign dates only to the specific evidence that supports them. Seventh separate script history from claims about language, caste or authorship. This workflow turns the manuscript from an illustration into a historical source and prevents prestige narratives from outrunning the evidence.

39.29 What Tirhuta can and cannot prove about social identity

A Tirhuta manuscript can demonstrate that a scribe or copying milieu knew the script. It can sometimes connect a text to a place, patron, teacher or archive. It cannot, by itself, prove the caste of every reader, the mother tongue of the scribe, the original language of an exemplar or the age of the underlying composition. Modern claims that the script inherently belongs to one social group are especially risky because the surviving archive is selective and because print-era politics changed the social distribution of literacy. Script is evidence of practice, not an automatic identity certificate.

39.30 Conclusion: scribal culture as a history of transmission

Tirhuta/Mithilakshar is best understood not as a relic but as a long history of transmission. Its palaeographic ancestry links Mithila to the broader eastern Indian script world; its medieval differentiation supported regional scholarly and literary copying; its manuscripts carried Sanskrit and Maithili across households, courts, schools and Nepalese repositories; its decline in routine print use widened the gap between modern readers and older archives; and digital encoding has created new possibilities of access and revival. The central historical lesson is that script, language, text and community move at different speeds. A source-critical history preserves those differences while showing how scribes repeatedly connected them.

Table 39.1 — Evidence domains for Tirhuta/Mithilakshar and scribal history

Evidence domain	What it can establish	What it cannot establish alone	Preferred control
Palaeography	Relative development of letterforms and scribal hands	A precise date or fixed script-name for every earlier ancestor	Compare dated witnesses and related eastern scripts
Material / codicology	Support, folio structure, repairs, binding and use history	Date of original composition	Combine with colophon, palaeography and provenance
Colophon	Often the copy date, scribe, patron, place or ownership	Automatic date of the work itself	Check whether colophon is original, copied or later
Language + script	Which language is written in which graphic system in a witness	One-to-one identity between language and script	Record language and script separately
Anthology / attribution	How a manuscript compiler or scribe labels a text	Certain original authorship	Compare hands, sequence, parallel witnesses and external evidence
Regional provenance	Where a witness was copied, owned or preserved when documented	Where the text was first composed	Separate preservation geography from composition geography
Print conversion	Changing readership, type economy and modern standardisation	Disappearance of manuscript use at the same moment	Track manuscript-print coexistence
Unicode / digital text	Interoperable character encoding and searchable transcription	Facsimile of every historical glyph or page feature	Link encoded transcription to manuscript images

Chapter 40 — Oral Culture

Oral culture is not the unwritten residue left after “literature” has been removed. It is a social system of memory, performance, argument, pleasure and transmission in which words are inseparable from voice, occasion, audience, gesture and place. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, songs, tales, proverbs, ritual speech, narrative chants, joking, lament, praise and epic performance have carried historical experience across households and communities that were only unevenly represented in manuscripts and formal chronicles. Yet oral evidence requires chronological discipline. A song recorded in the nineteenth or twentieth century may contain older language or motifs, but its present form cannot simply be projected into the medieval period. This chapter therefore reconstructs oral culture through a hierarchy of dated witnesses, ethnography and performance analysis, while treating continuity as a question to be demonstrated rather than assumed.

40.1 Oral culture as a historical archive

Oral culture preserves information differently from a charter, inscription or manuscript. Its archive exists in people, repertoires and repeated social occasions. A tale survives because someone knows when to tell it; a marriage song survives because a sequence of ritual acts calls it forth; a ballad survives because performers and audiences continue to value the hero, melody or social claim embodied in it. The result is both durable and flexible. Themes may remain stable while wording changes; episodes may migrate between genres; a performance may answer a new political situation with old narrative material. For social history this mobility is an advantage, because it gives access to values and conflicts often absent from official records. It is also a warning: oral memory is not a sound recording of the past. The historian must ask which layer of a performance is actually dated and which is an inference.

40.2 Evidence hierarchy: performance, recording and earlier reference

This volume distinguishes at least four evidentiary layers. The first is the living or recently observed performance itself. The second is a dated recording, transcription, ethnography or printed collection. The third is an earlier reference that names a genre, performer, tale, shrine or song. The fourth is historical inference about origins or continuity. These layers do not carry equal chronological force. George A. Grierson’s nineteenth-century transcription of Raja Salhesh is firm evidence that the narrative was circulating then; it is not, by itself, a dated medieval manuscript of the same wording. Coralynn V. Davis’s ethnography of Maithil women’s tales gives exceptionally rich evidence for late-twentieth- and early-twenty-first-century storytelling practice, but the antiquity of individual motifs must be established independently. A responsible oral history keeps these layers visible.

40.3 Orality and literacy were not opposing worlds

Premodern societies were rarely either “oral” or “literate.” A Sanskrit or Maithili manuscript could be read aloud, memorised, paraphrased and retold; a song learned by ear could later be copied into an anthology; a performer might know both written and unwritten versions. Chapter 39 showed that manuscripts were social objects used in teaching, ritual and performance. Oral culture occupied the same ecology. Recitation allowed written knowledge to reach people who did not read the script, while scribal copying could stabilise material that had previously circulated more fluidly. The two media therefore interacted continuously. The useful historical question is not whether a community possessed writing but which activities required writing, which depended upon memory and performance, and where the two met.

40.4 The performance event is part of the text

A transcript captures words but usually reduces the event that gave those words meaning. Who sang first? Who was allowed to answer? Was the performance public, domestic, ritual, competitive or comic? Did listeners interrupt, correct or request an episode? Were instruments, dance, gesture, costume or offerings involved? Such features can alter meaning without changing a line of text. Ruth Finnegan’s work on oral poetry emphasises that performance is constitutive rather than decorative, and the same principle is vital in Mithila–Vajji–Anga. A departure song at a wedding, a shrine narrative, a joking exchange at a women’s gathering and a staged Salhesh performance may all be “oral texts,” but they occupy different social spaces and create different kinds of authority.

ORAL TRADITION AS A CHAIN OF EVENTS



Historical claim must match the dated stage of evidence

A modern performance may preserve older material, but it does not by itself date every word, motif or social category.

Figure 156 — Oral tradition as a chain of evidentiary events

40.5 Women’s storytelling and domestic counter-archives

Women’s oral traditions are especially important because domestic life is thinly documented in formal political sources. Coralynn V. Davis’s study on the Nepal–India border shows Maithil women using folktales to think through fortune, marriage, kinship, suffering, virtue, household hierarchy and female solidarity. The tales are not simple mirrors of society. They reorganise experience through fantasy, irony and moral reversal, sometimes giving speech or agency to characters who lack power in everyday arrangements. This makes women’s storytelling a counter-archive of social relations. It should not be romanticised as automatically resistant, since tales may also reproduce hierarchy and normative expectations. Their historical value lies in the range of positions they make narratable.

40.6 Birth songs, blessing and the social arrival of a child

Birth repertoires such as sohar-type songs turn a biological event into a recognised social arrival. They may bless mother and child, invoke divine or epic precedents, joke about relatives, express hopes for prosperity, and place the newborn within gendered and kinship expectations. The form is widely distributed across north India, so similarity alone cannot establish a uniquely Maithili origin. What matters for regional history is the local language, named kin relations, melodic practice, household setting and ritual sequence in which a particular song is performed. Collections such as Makhan Jha’s survey of Mithila folklore preserve

examples of birth and other ceremonial songs, but their publication date must not be confused with the date of composition of every item.

40.7 Marriage songs as a social commentary on alliance

Marriage concentrates many of the themes explored in Chapters 31 and 32: lineage, alliance, property, distance, gender and household transfer. Oral performance makes those structures audible. Wedding songs can praise bride and groom while simultaneously mocking affines, lamenting separation, criticising the groom's party or dramatising the vulnerability of a daughter leaving her natal home. Because the songs belong to particular ritual moments, the same wedding may contain mutually contradictory voices—auspicious blessing beside sharp satire, obedience beside complaint. This polyphony is historically valuable. It shows that normative marriage ideology did not exhaust the emotional and argumentative life of marriage. But present-day song texts cannot simply be used as literal evidence for medieval marriage rules without earlier corroboration.

40.8 Departure, samdaun and the geography of emotion

Departure songs often convert geography into emotion. The bride's movement from natal to marital household is imagined through roads, rivers, vehicles, thresholds and distances; relatives are remembered by the spaces they occupy. In Mithila, the broad category often described as samdaun is associated with farewell and separation, but local terminology and repertoire vary. Such songs can help historians understand the social meaning of patrilocal marriage and the affective importance of the natal home. They can also register transformations in transport and migration when new objects or destinations enter the verse. A song therefore has more than one historical layer: an older structure of feeling may absorb newer vocabulary and circumstances.

40.9 Agricultural seasonality and work rhythms

Oral culture was tied to the agricultural calendar as much as to life-cycle ritual. Sowing, transplanting, harvesting, cattle care, monsoon waiting and seasonal leisure created different opportunities for collective singing and narrative. Work songs can coordinate bodily rhythm, relieve monotony, encode practical knowledge or turn labour relations into humour and complaint. Their survival is uneven because mechanisation, migration and changing labour organisation alter the contexts that once sustained them. For the historian, disappearance is itself evidence: a genre may contract not because people have forgotten "tradition" in the abstract but because the social occasion that produced repeated performance has changed.

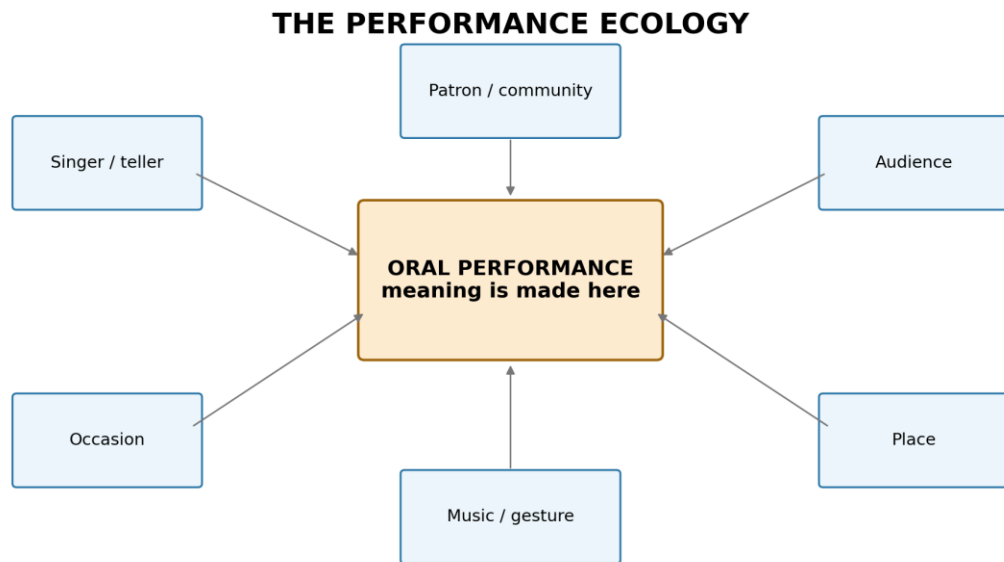


Figure 157 — The performance ecology

40.10 Festivals and ritual repertoires

Festival traditions such as Sama-Chakeva, Madhushravani and other seasonal observances of the Mithila region combine objects, movement, song, narrative and gendered participation. Their contemporary forms are important evidence for how community is enacted through repeated performance. They also illustrate why folklore should not be reduced to text. Clay figures, baskets, courtyards, ponds, processions and food may be as necessary to the event as the words sung. Historical reconstruction must separate the documented age of a festival name or ritual prescription from the age of particular songs now attached to it. Later standardisation, school programmes, tourism and state-sponsored festivals can also reshape repertoire.

40.11 Tale cycles, wit and the Gonu Jha problem

Gonu Jha tales are among the best-known humorous narratives associated with Mithila. The protagonist defeats greed, pedantry or authority through wit, trickery and verbal reversal. Yet the popularity of a named tale-cycle creates a dating trap. A modern collection may gather stories that had circulated anonymously, under different trickster names, or in neighbouring languages. The historical Gonu Jha, if recoverable, is therefore not automatically the author or origin of every tale attributed to him. The more defensible approach treats “Gonu Jha” as a powerful regional narrative magnet: a name under which comic social intelligence has been collected, localised and continually renewed.

40.12 Raja Salhesh and the politics of remembered dignity

The Raja Salhesh tradition is a major example of oral culture carrying community history and dignity. Grierson printed a version in the nineteenth century, and later documentation records Salhesh in song, theatre, painting and shrine practice among Dusadh communities in Bihar and Nepal. The tradition remembers a hero who overcomes rivals and commands supernatural as well as political power. Modern interpreters have rightly highlighted its significance for Dalit cultural assertion. Historical care is still necessary: the nineteenth-century transcription is an early documented witness, not proof that every present episode existed in precisely that form centuries earlier. What can be shown securely is a long, socially embedded tradition whose meanings have continued to change.

40.13 Lorik: pastoral epic across regional boundaries

The Lorik cycle demonstrates that oral epics ignore modern linguistic borders. Grierson's study of the "Birth of Lorik" described a long heroic legend widely sung among Ahir/Yadav pastoral communities in Bihar and adjoining parts of north India. Versions circulate across Bhojpuri, eastern Hindi and Bihari-language zones, and the hero's geography shifts with performers. For this volume the point is not to claim Lorik as the exclusive possession of Mithila, Vajji or Anga, but to recognise the region as part of a wider pastoral performance network. Cattle, mobility, martial honour, romance and clan memory give the epic its social force. Variation between versions is evidence of circulation, not corruption of a single lost original.

40.14 Sita, Janak and the localisation of epic memory

Mithila's identification with Sita and Janak allows Ramayana narratives to be localised with unusual intensity. Weddings, women's songs, pilgrimage speech, temple narratives and place legends can bring Sita into domestic and regional space rather than leaving her only in a Sanskrit or written epic. Oral retelling may emphasise daughterhood, marriage, separation, maternal grief or relations between affinal households in ways different from elite textual priorities. Such versions should be read as interpretive traditions, not as defective copies of a canonical Ramayana. At the same time, the presence of an epic motif in a modern song does not prove that the song itself is ancient; canonical stories are continuously re-vernacularised.

40.15 Puranic and devotional narrative in everyday speech

Rama, Krishna, Shiva, local goddesses, saints and sacred places enter oral culture through stories that circulate far beyond formal recitation. A household explanation of a fast, a shrine origin story, a child's tale and a festival song may all rework Puranic narrative. This process connects Sanskritic, vernacular and local religious worlds without requiring a simple model of "high" culture descending into "folk" culture. Local performers select, reinterpret and sometimes contradict textual precedents. The history of religion therefore includes not only which scriptures were copied but how narratives were remembered, shortened, moralised and attached to particular ponds, trees, shrines and villages.

40.16 Ballad, epic, chant, tale and proverb are different genres

The label "folklore" can conceal important formal differences. A long heroic gatha depends on episodic memory and performance stamina; a proverb works by compression; a folktale depends on plot and teller-audience interaction; a ritual chant may be effective because its formula is repeated correctly; a wedding song may be inseparable from a specific act. Historical interpretation should therefore begin with genre. The same motif can mean different things in different forms. A king in a comic tale is not evidence of kingship in the same sense as a king named in a praise ballad, and neither is equivalent to an inscription. Genre is not merely literary classification; it determines how memory is stored and what kinds of truth a community expects from the performance.

40.17 Performers, specialists and unequal cultural labour

Oral repertoires are sustained by people whose labour is often poorly represented in written archives: singers, drummers, dancers, ritual specialists, genealogists, mendicants, storytellers and performers attached to particular communities. Some performances are open and collective; others require specialist training or hereditary knowledge. Patronage may come from households, landlords, shrines, fairs, caste associations or modern cultural institutions. This social organisation matters because it shapes what survives. A repertoire

without patrons or apprentices may disappear even when older people remember it. Conversely, a tradition can expand when a community invests in public performance as a marker of identity or dignity.

40.18 Music, rhythm, gesture and embodied memory

Words are only one storage system in oral tradition. Melody cues the next line; drum patterns organise entrances; gesture marks character and emotion; dance sequences carry narrative; repeated bodily action fixes ritual order. These forms of embodied memory can preserve structure even when verbal wording changes. They also make transcription inadequate as a complete record. A nineteenth-century collector who wrote down the “text” of a song may have captured something valuable while losing tempo, tune, audience response and performance space. Modern audio-visual documentation can recover more of the event, but it too frames the performance through microphone, camera, editing and the knowledge that recording is taking place.

40.19 Fairs, shrines and markets as transmission nodes

Households are not the only centres of oral circulation. Weekly markets, seasonal fairs, pilgrimage centres and shrines assemble people who normally live apart. Performers can encounter new audiences, learn episodes from other singers, sell printed booklets or recordings, and attach regional heroes to new locations. Salhesh shrines illustrate how narrative, ritual and material representation reinforce one another. Such sites help explain why oral traditions can spread over large areas without central institutions. They also complicate the idea of a pure village tradition: mobility, exchange and performance competition have long been part of rural cultural life.

40.20 Marriage migration as a route of cultural transfer

Patrilocal marriage moves not only women but repertoires. A bride may carry songs, tales, ritual knowledge, pronunciation and foodways from her natal village into a new household, while later visits renew connections in both directions. Across generations this process creates overlapping oral maps that do not correspond neatly to administrative districts. It also helps explain why neighbouring varieties of Maithili, Bajjika, Angika, Bhojpuri and Nepali can share motifs while retaining local forms. Because women’s mobility was structured by marriage, some cultural transmission that looks “anonymous” in the archive was in fact carried through highly specific kinship routes.

ROUTES OF ORAL CIRCULATION

Household & courtyard	life-cycle songs, tales, ritual speech
Village & neighbourhood	work, worship, recreation, specialist performance
Fair, shrine & market	mobile audiences, ballads, devotional repertoires
Marriage migration	songs and tales cross household and locality
India–Nepal corridor	Janakpur–Terai–north Bihar circulation
Print, radio & digital media	new reach; new fixing and remixing of performance

Figure 158 — Routes of oral circulation

40.21 The India–Nepal Mithila corridor

Janakpur, the Nepal Terai and north Bihar form a particularly important field for oral circulation. Political boundaries did not eliminate marriage, pilgrimage, trade or linguistic contact across the frontier. Ram Dayal Rakesh’s work on Nepalese folk culture and Coralynn Davis’s ethnography both show Maithil cultural practice spanning the India–Nepal border. The historian should therefore avoid treating Nepalese Maithil material as external evidence or Indian material as automatically representative of Nepal. Cross-border comparison is most useful when locality, date and performer are retained rather than dissolved into an undifferentiated “Mithila tradition.”

40.22 Vajji and western Mithila: corridors rather than hard borders

The western part of the larger Mithila–Vajji zone has long interacted with the middle Ganga plain. Oral speech forms and repertoires grade across territory rather than stopping at a linguistic line. Later labels such as Bajjika are analytically useful for modern language history, but Chapter 36’s warning against backward projection applies here: a present-day language name should not be assumed to define the social boundaries of every earlier performance. For oral history the better unit may be the route—market, river crossing, pilgrimage path, marriage network or seasonal labour circuit—through which singers and stories moved.

40.23 Anga and the eastern zone

Anga and the Bhagalpur–Munger region connect the study area toward Bengal, the Santhal Parganas and the middle Ganga. Angika-speaking communities possess their own song, proverb and narrative repertoires, while broader Bihari and eastern Indian traditions cross the same space. A history centred only on Darbhanga or north-central Mithila would therefore miss eastern circulation. Yet evidence remains uneven: many local repertoires are better documented in twentieth-century folklore collections than in earlier archives. The correct response is not to invent an unbroken ancient genealogy but to record the documented layers and identify where earlier evidence is still needed.

40.24 Multilingual performance and code-switching

Performers may shift language or register according to character, audience, refrain, prestige or melody. A devotional line can preserve Sanskrit vocabulary; a comic passage may intensify local speech; a market performer may accommodate listeners from a neighbouring language zone. Oral multilingualism thus differs from modern standard-language ideology. It also cautions against assigning a performance to a single “language” solely from an edited printed text. Collectors often normalise spelling or translate unfamiliar words, masking the code-switching of the event. For the history of Maithili, Angika and Bajjika, recordings and careful field transcription are especially valuable because they preserve variation that print may smooth away.

40.25 Oral transmission and literary Maithili

Literary Maithili did not develop outside oral performance. Songs, drama, recitation and memorised verse connected written composition to listeners. The Padavali tradition associated in this volume with the earlier Mahakavi Vidyapati is a particularly important case: lyric survives through performance as well as manuscripts, and later singers could reshape pronunciation, sequence and attribution. Oral circulation therefore helps explain literary longevity, but it cannot by itself solve authorship or chronology. The two-Vidyapati distinction adopted in Chapter 38 must continue to rest on a combined assessment of textual, manuscript, linguistic and historical evidence rather than on the prestige of a name in later song tradition.

40.26 Collectors and the making of “folklore”

Colonial and early modern collectors preserved material that might otherwise be lost, but collection itself transforms oral culture. A collector chooses whom to ask, which performance to stop and write down, how to spell dialect forms, whether to translate, and what to classify as a “song,” “legend” or “superstition.” Grierson’s Maithili chrestomathy is invaluable precisely because it records language and oral material at a dated historical moment. It also reflects nineteenth-century categories and social descriptions that require critical reading. Later folklorists likewise selected and edited. The printed archive must therefore be studied as a history of documentation as well as a repository of performances.

40.27 Print, radio, cassette and digital remediation

Once oral material enters print or electronic media, it does not cease to be oral. Instead, performance acquires new feedback loops. Printed songbooks can standardise lyrics that singers later memorise; radio creates regional stars; cassette culture accelerates circulation; video platforms make local performances globally searchable and encourage shortened or visually spectacular forms. A “traditional” performance today may therefore contain layers learned from recordings rather than solely from face-to-face transmission. This remediation should be documented, not treated as contamination. Media history is now part of oral history because it changes who can perform, who can listen and which version becomes widely recognised.

40.28 Gender, caste and the politics of audibility

Oral culture can make marginalised experience audible, but archives do not preserve all voices equally. Women’s domestic stories may be inaccessible to male collectors; low-status performers may be described without being named; elite patrons may receive credit for performances produced by others. The Salhesh tradition shows how a community can use folklore to articulate dignity and historical presence, while Davis’s work demonstrates how women’s storytelling engages household power. These examples warn against a single “folk voice.” Oral culture is internally stratified. The historian must ask who had the right to perform

publicly, who controlled ritual spaces, who was recorded, whose language editors corrected, and whose versions later became canonical.

40.29 A source-critical workflow for oral traditions

This volume uses a reproducible workflow. First identify the performance or recorded witness: performer, place, date, language, occasion and collector. Second describe the genre and performance conditions before extracting historical claims. Third compare multiple versions to separate stable structures from local or recent additions. Fourth search for earlier dated references in manuscripts, print, administrative records, ethnography, shrine evidence or inscriptions. Fifth distinguish the date of documentation from the proposed date of origin. Sixth preserve disagreements rather than harmonising every variant. Finally, where continuity cannot be demonstrated, say so. This method makes oral evidence stronger, not weaker, because it prevents historical value from depending on claims of impossible verbatim antiquity.

EVIDENCE FIREWALL FOR ORAL HISTORY

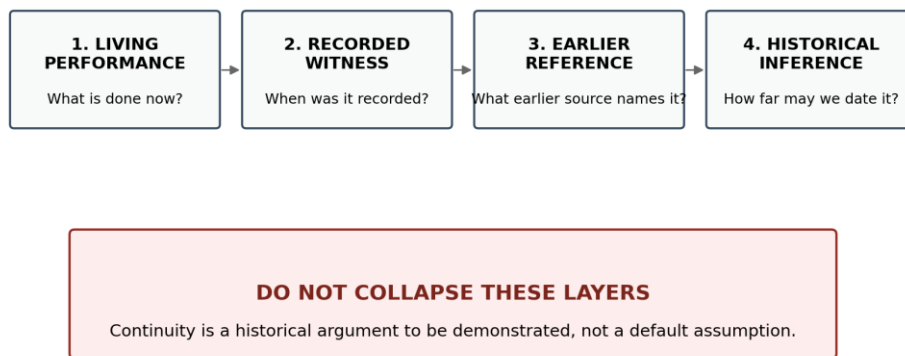


Figure 159 — Evidence firewall for oral history

40.30 Conclusion: a history carried by voices

The oral cultures of Mithila, Vajji and Anga reveal social worlds that political chronology alone cannot recover. They preserve household argument, women's experience, pastoral heroism, community dignity, ritual obligation, humour, devotion, migration and regional memory. Their forms travel through marriage, markets, fairs, shrines, manuscripts, print and digital media; in every movement they may change. Historical method must therefore hold two truths together: oral traditions can preserve deep cultural structures, and every actual performance belongs to a specific present. By dating witnesses carefully and treating variation as evidence, oral culture becomes neither timeless folklore nor unreliable anecdote, but a disciplined archive of social history.

Table 40.1 — Evidence domains for oral-culture history

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Observed or recorded performance	Who performed what, where, when, for whom, and under which social conditions	Does not by itself establish the antiquity of every word, motif or institution

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Dated transcription or folklore collection	A terminus by which a version or genre was documented	Collector selection, normalisation and loss of sound, gesture or context
Earlier textual or archival reference	Earlier existence of a name, genre, performer, shrine or motif	Reference may not describe the same version known today
Material and ritual setting	Shrines, objects, instruments, performance spaces and recurrent occasions	Material continuity does not guarantee unchanged narrative content
Variant comparison	Stable structures, mobile episodes, local additions and transmission routes	Shared motifs can arise through borrowing; similarity is not a date
Ethnography and oral history interview	Social meanings, performer biographies, memory of change and transmission	Retrospective memory is situated and must be cross-checked

Chapter 41 — Angika and the Eastern Linguistic-Cultural Zone

Angika belongs to the eastern edge of the historical field studied in this volume, but the word itself cannot be allowed to do the work of history. Ancient Anga, medieval eastern vernaculars, colonial descriptions of Chhika-Chhiki, and the modern literary-linguistic identity called Angika are related objects of inquiry, not automatically identical ones. This chapter therefore studies an eastern linguistic-cultural zone centred on the Bhagalpur–Champa and Munger corridors and extending through graded contact toward Purnia, the Santal Parganas, Bengal and the wider Ganga valley. Its method is deliberately double: it takes present Angika identity seriously while refusing to project present labels unchanged into periods for which the evidence uses other names.

41.1 Why an eastern linguistic-cultural zone is a better starting point

Language maps are useful summaries, but they easily turn gradual transitions into hard borders. The eastern part of the Mithila–Anga field has never been organised by speech alone. Rivers, ferries, market towns, pilgrimage routes, marriage networks, military corridors, seasonal labour and administrative centres connected communities whose repertoires overlapped without being identical. The term “zone” therefore does not deny linguistic difference; it asks how difference was produced and maintained inside a field of repeated contact. Bhagalpur, Munger, the Kosi–Purnia corridor and the Santal Parganas occupy different positions in that field. A history of Angika must explain both internal coherence and permeability. It should be able to describe why speakers recognise a distinctive regional speech while also showing why its features intersect with Maithili, Magahi, Bengali, Santali and other neighbouring languages. This approach also prevents the modern political boundary of a district or state from becoming an imaginary medieval linguistic frontier.

41.2 Ancient Anga and modern Angika: the naming problem

The resemblance between the ancient regional name Anga and the modern name Angika is historically important, but resemblance is not proof of uninterrupted linguistic identity. Ancient texts can establish the existence, reputation and political geography of Anga; archaeology can recover settlements, trade and material culture; neither source automatically tells us the structure of the everyday speech spoken there centuries later. New Indo-Aryan languages emerged through long transformations from Middle Indo-Aryan and regional vernacular fields, not through the simple survival of a mahajanapada label. The responsible question is therefore not “Was the language of ancient Anga already Angika?” but “What chains of evidence connect later eastern speech forms to earlier populations, routes and cultural regions?” The distinction matters because regional pride is strengthened, not weakened, when continuity is demonstrated through dated evidence rather than asserted from a name alone. This chapter consequently treats ancient Anga as historical context and modern Angika as a later linguistic identity whose earlier genealogy must be reconstructed stage by stage.

41.3 Eastern Indo-Aryan as a continuum of related innovations

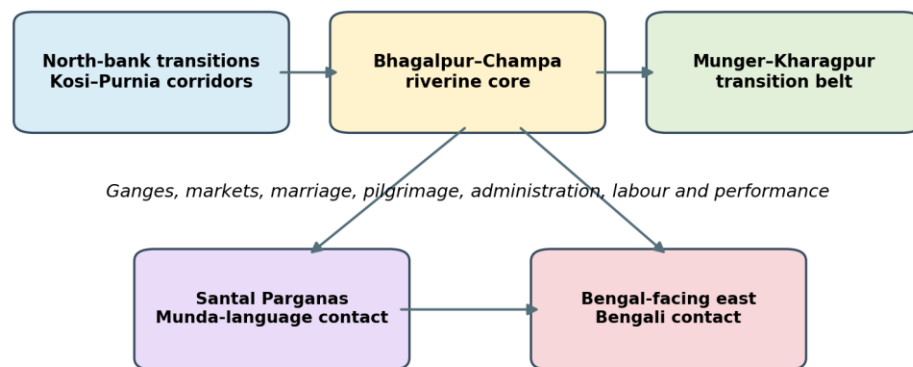
Angika is part of the eastern Indo-Aryan world in which related languages share inherited structures as well as features produced through contact. Genealogical relationship does not require identical classification by every scholar. The speech varieties of Bihar and adjoining eastern India developed within overlapping historical networks, and several boundaries are better understood as bundles of features than as single lines.

Pronouns, case markers, verb agreement, honorific distinctions, vowel qualities and lexical choices may each have their own geography. A speaker can therefore sound recognisably eastern-Bihari while using a feature shared with Maithili in one domain and with Magahi or Bengali in another. This is normal linguistic history, not evidence of corruption or impurity. The older philological habit of ranking varieties by “purity” is especially misleading in a trade and migration zone. The historical task is to identify which features are inherited, which are areal, which are borrowed, and which became emblematic only after modern literary standardisation.

41.4 The Ganges: boundary, highway and linguistic hinge

Colonial descriptions often used the Ganges as a convenient linguistic divider, particularly when contrasting north-bank Maithili with speech to the south. Yet the same river was a transport highway that connected rather than merely separated communities. Bhagalpur’s position on the Ganges made it a node where boat traffic, pilgrimage, grain, textiles, officials, soldiers and migrants could circulate. Linguistic boundaries near such a river are therefore likely to be asymmetric: some features may align strongly with a bank, while vocabulary and performance traditions cross by ferry, trade and marriage. The old Munger district evidence is revealing precisely because it records Chhika-Chhiki in a south-Gangetic tract while also describing Magahi farther west and Santali in adjoining areas. The river should thus be treated as a hinge. It can reinforce a regional contrast through settlement history and administrative geography while simultaneously enabling the social contacts through which speech repertoires change.

Angika and the eastern linguistic-cultural zone



Analytical point: the zone is a network of graded transitions, not a language line on a map.

Figure 160 — Angika and the eastern linguistic-cultural zone

41.5 Grierson’s Chhika-Chhiki: a dated description, not a timeless essence

The Linguistic Survey of India is indispensable because it records speech under identifiable late-nineteenth- and early-twentieth-century conditions. Grierson used the label Chhika-Chhiki for a variety associated with the Bhagalpur–Munger side of the Maithili field and printed specimens and grammatical observations. The label is valuable evidence for what he heard, collected and classified; it is not a medieval autonym and should not be projected backward. Nor should every modern Angika variety be reduced to one survey specimen. Survey categories reflect sampling, the questions asked, the informants selected and the classificatory architecture of their time. Even so, Grierson’s record establishes an important historical

baseline: the eastern/southern variety was recognised as distinct enough to describe separately while being placed by him within Maithili. Modern discussions of Angika cannot responsibly ignore this baseline, but neither are they compelled to reproduce Grierson's hierarchy unchanged.

41.6 What “southern Maithili” meant in the survey tradition

When an older survey calls Chhika-Chhiki a southern variety of Maithili, the phrase must be read as a classificatory judgement made within a broader Bihari survey, not as a statement that later linguistic identities did not or could not emerge. Grierson distinguished Standard, Western, Eastern and other Maithili varieties, and his arrangement was simultaneously geographic and structural. The term “southern” also covered a contact-rich environment unlike the Darbhanga-centred literary norm that later became especially visible in print. A dialect label can therefore encode two facts at once: linguistic relationship and sociolinguistic inequality. Varieties may be closely related yet differ sharply in literary institutions, prestige, orthographic practice and self-identification. For this volume, Grierson's classification is historical evidence of one scholarly model. It is neither suppressed to favour modern separatism nor treated as an eternal verdict that invalidates later Angika literary and political self-definition.

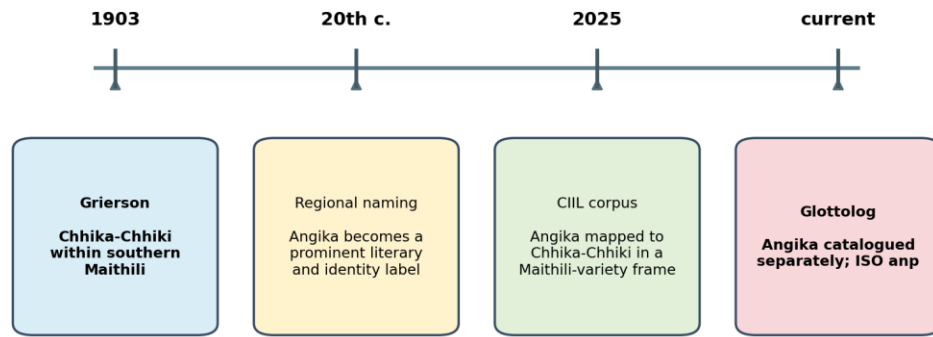
41.7 The modern name Angika and the making of a literary identity

During the twentieth century, Angika became increasingly prominent as a name used in regional literary production, grammar writing, dictionaries, periodicals, cultural organisations and campaigns for recognition. This transformation matters historically because standard languages are not discovered fully formed; they are built through repeated acts of naming, codifying, teaching and publishing. Regional scholars produced histories of Angika literature, grammatical descriptions and collections of folklore, thereby creating an archive in which speakers could recognise a shared written tradition beyond local village speech. Such institution-building does not make the language “artificial.” It demonstrates how a speech community converts everyday linguistic practice into a consciously named public language. At the same time, the modern success of the name should not be used to rename every earlier eastern text without philological demonstration. The emergence of Angika as a literary identity is itself a major historical development and should be dated rather than projected backward.

41.8 Classification today: two legitimate descriptive frames coexist

Contemporary reference works illustrate why this history should not be forced into a single classificatory slogan. A 2025 Central Institute of Indian Languages publication, while describing Maithili varieties, maps modern Angika to Grierson's Chhika-Chhiki and treats it within a Maithili varietal framework. Glottolog, by contrast, catalogues Angika as a separate spoken language with ISO 639-3 code *anp*. These are not interchangeable institutional decisions. One foregrounds continuity within a Maithili dialect complex; the other provides a distinct language entry for cross-linguistic cataloguing. Neither classification by itself settles social identity, literary history or the exact location of every speech boundary. The productive historical question is how and why different frameworks became plausible. This chapter therefore records both. Where a source says Chhika-Chhiki or southern Maithili, that wording is retained; where modern speakers and institutions say Angika, that identity is likewise retained.

Classification is historical: labels change with institutions



No single classificatory label should be projected backward as if it were timeless.

Figure 161 — Classification is historical: labels change with institutions

41.9 Phonology as regional evidence, not a badge of purity

Descriptions of Angika often emphasise characteristic vowel qualities and word-final vocalic effects, including features already noticed in colonial accounts of Chhika-Chhiki. Such observations are useful when supported by recorded speech, but they should be analysed as distributions rather than slogans. A sound feature can have a strong core area and still fade gradually toward neighbouring speech. It may vary by age, settlement, caste, gender, education, mobility or style. Modern orthographic proposals that introduce special signs for locally salient vowels reveal something else: once a speech variety enters deliberate standardisation, writers must decide which phonetic distinctions deserve graphic representation. Those decisions can sharpen a contrast that everyday bilingual speakers manage more fluidly. For historical reconstruction, phonology is strongest when multiple dated recordings or transcriptions can be compared. A single eye-catching pronunciation cannot establish the boundaries or antiquity of an entire language.

41.10 Grammar: shared structures and locally weighted choices

Angika grammar participates in a broader eastern Indo-Aryan typological field while displaying locally favoured forms. Pronoun systems, genitive constructions, copular and auxiliary patterns, honorificity and verb morphology are especially useful for comparison because they are less easily borrowed wholesale than isolated vocabulary. Yet even grammar changes through contact and levelling. The correct unit of analysis is therefore a bundle of constructions across speakers and places, not a short list of emblematic words. Modern descriptive materials show that Angika writers are actively codifying grammar for schooling and print; such codification provides valuable contemporary evidence but should not be mistaken for a direct photograph of medieval usage. A historical grammar of the eastern zone would ideally compare Grierson's specimens, later regional grammars and present-day corpora, marking which forms persist, which have receded and which have been promoted as standard.

41.11 Lexicon as an archive of contact

Vocabulary is often the most visible record of cultural contact. The eastern zone has interacted with Sanskritic learning, Persianate administration, Urdu and Hindi public spheres, Bengali commerce and print,

Santali and other Munda-speaking communities, and the technical vocabularies of modern schooling and migration. Borrowing does not imply language replacement. Loanwords may cluster in administration, religion, craft, market exchange or urban life while basic household vocabulary remains comparatively stable. Words also travel through songs and marriage rather than through formal institutions. For Angika history, lexical layers should be dated whenever possible by texts, glossaries, recordings or occupational archives. Apparent similarity with a neighbouring language may represent common inheritance, parallel innovation or borrowing; each possibility requires testing. The eastern zone is especially valuable because it allows historians to connect vocabulary with concrete routes of interaction instead of treating words as detached evidence.

41.12 Bhagalpur–Champa as a riverine linguistic node

Bhagalpur and the older Champa landscape sit at the centre of the eastern zone's historical imagination. Their importance is not that an ancient city can be assigned a modern language by fiat, but that long-lived settlement, trade and religious activity created repeated opportunities for multilingual interaction. Urban and peri-urban centres draw people from villages, market networks, river traffic and administrative jurisdictions. They also generate new registers: bargaining, clerical prose, religious performance, schooling and later journalism. A speech variety associated with Bhagalpur can therefore develop urban recognisability without erasing internal rural diversity. The Bihula–Bishahari narrative and Manjusha painting further show how a regional story can link language, ritual, craft and place. The linguistic history of Bhagalpur is consequently best written beside its economic and cultural history, not as a detached list of grammatical traits.

41.13 Munger and Kharagpur: a transition belt in the records

Historical descriptions of the Munger region are particularly instructive because they refuse the simplicity of a single-language district. The eastern portion and Kharagpur country were described with Chhika-Chhiki forms closely resembling Bhagalpur speech, while Magahi was reported farther west; Santali also appeared in parts of the wider district. Such records demonstrate why administrative borders cannot be equated with linguistic borders. Munger was a transition belt in which different speech systems were geographically patterned but socially adjacent. This pattern also offers a caution for modern maps: when a contemporary label is extended over an entire district, it may hide older local contrasts. The historical method should therefore work below district scale whenever sources permit, using thana, village, route and market-level evidence. Transitional areas are not peripheral noise. They are often where the mechanisms of linguistic change become most visible.

41.14 Kosi–Purnia and the north-eastern transitions

North-eastward, the linguistic landscape becomes even more layered. Kosi movement, floodplain resettlement, market migration and routes toward Purnia, north Bengal and the Nepal Terai complicate any simple extension of a Bhagalpur-centred norm. Modern labels such as Angika, Surjapuri, Maithili, Bengali and Hindi organise this space differently depending on the institution and the speaker. Historical sources likewise shift in terminology. Rather than forcing the whole corridor into one category, this volume treats it as a transition zone whose speech communities have long negotiated multiple centres of prestige. The same household may interact with one language in ritual, another in school, another in administration and a local variety in everyday life. Such functional multilingualism is historically normal. Mapping it requires attention to movement, not only birthplace.

41.15 Santal Parganas and Munda-language contact

The south-eastern edge of the Angika field meets one of eastern India's major Munda-language regions. This contact must be approached without assuming that every shared word is borrowed or that one community passively receives another's speech. Markets, agricultural labour, forest products, tenancy, mission education, administration and migration created recurrent bilingual encounters. Dipankar Dasgupta's study of Ghatoali and Mal-Paharia, and later classifications that recognise an Angika connection in the region, remind us that small local varieties may preserve especially complex histories of contact. Such settings can produce lexical transfer, phonological accommodation and code-switching while maintaining distinct ethnic identities. For social history, the key point is that Angika's eastern zone was never exclusively Indo-Aryan in its cultural ecology. Munda-speaking communities were participants in the making of regional markets, performance worlds and everyday multilingualism.

41.16 Contact with Bengali: adjacency without automatic derivation

The eastern reach of the zone opens toward Bengal, and some Angika features have often been compared with Bengali pronunciation or vocabulary. Geographic adjacency makes contact unsurprising, especially through Bhagalpur's trade, rail and river connections and through movement toward Malda and other Bengal-facing districts. Yet similarity must not be converted into a simplistic origin story. Angika and Bengali are related Indo-Aryan languages with both inherited commonalities and later areal convergence. A feature shared by them may be old, borrowed, or independently developed. Historical proof requires chronology. Bengali print culture and education also influenced eastern Bihar in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, creating new lexical and literary contacts that are much easier to document than medieval phonological borrowing. The safest account distinguishes genetic relationship from contact-induced convergence and assigns dates only where the evidence permits.

41.17 Contact with Magahi: the western and south-western gradient

Toward the west and south-west, Angika speech meets Magahi varieties across a broad gradient rather than a wall. The older Munger descriptions already show this adjacency. Shared agrarian vocabulary, similar sociolinguistic pressures and mobility through the middle Ganga plain create conditions for convergence. At the same time, speakers may use particular grammatical or phonological forms to index local identity precisely because neighbouring speech is so intelligible. Such boundary marking is a social process: difference becomes salient where interaction is frequent. A historical comparison of Angika and Magahi should therefore combine structural linguistics with settlement and mobility history. It should also resist a common error in nationalist language histories—the assumption that mutual intelligibility proves dialect status or, conversely, that strong identity proves remote genetic distance. These are different questions.

41.18 The Maithili linkage: genealogy, literary prestige and contested identity

The Angika–Maithili relationship is central because it is simultaneously linguistic, historical and political. Grierson's survey placed Chhika-Chhiki inside Maithili; modern CIIL work can still employ a comparable varietal mapping. Angika literary institutions, however, have developed a strong separate name and public identity. These facts can coexist. Genealogical closeness does not dictate how communities must organise literature, education or cultural recognition, just as political self-identification does not erase structural comparison. The historical task is to document when particular labels became dominant, what varieties they covered, and which institutions promoted them. This volume therefore avoids both polemical shortcuts: it does not call modern Angika merely “misnamed Maithili,” and it does not rewrite every older Chhika-Chhiki

or southern-Maithili description as if scholars had always recognised a separate Angika language. The tension itself belongs to history.

41.19 Persian, Urdu and Hindi layers in the public sphere

The eastern zone's linguistic ecology also includes supraregional administrative and literary languages. Persian shaped official and elite documentary culture in earlier periods; Urdu and Hindi became important in urban, educational and print domains under later regimes. These languages supplied vocabulary but also registers of politeness, bureaucracy, law, poetry and public debate. The effects were uneven: a village song, a court petition and a railway-station conversation could display different proportions of borrowed vocabulary. Modern Hindi schooling created another layer by encouraging speakers to move between local speech and a standard language with wider institutional reach. Such diglossic or multilingual competence should not be interpreted as the disappearance of Angika. It shows how local identity can persist inside a hierarchy of domains. For historians, the changing public languages of Bhagalpur and Munger are essential to understanding why local speech was sometimes under-recorded even when widely used.

41.20 Scripts: Kaithi, Devanagari and the problem of “Anga Lipi”

Modern Angika is commonly written in Devanagari, while regional writing historically also interacted with Kaithi and other eastern scripts. Claims for a continuous ancient “Anga Lipi” require much greater caution. The Lalitavistara's famous list of script names can show that a tradition remembered a script associated with Anga; it does not by itself prove that a specific surviving signary was the direct ancestor of a modern Angika writing system, still less that the same script remained continuously in use for two millennia. Script history requires dated inscriptions, manuscripts, palaeographic comparison and demonstrable transmission. This distinction is important because scripts are powerful identity symbols and therefore especially vulnerable to retrospective continuity claims. Angika's cultural history does not depend on an unbroken proprietary script lineage. Its documented modern writing and print traditions are historically substantial on their own.

41.21 Oral literature as a major archive of the eastern zone

Angika's richest historical archive is not confined to grammar books or modern print. Songs, riddles, proverbs, seasonal repertoires, heroic tales and ritual narratives preserve social vocabulary and regional aesthetics that formal administrative sources rarely record. As argued in Chapter 40, oral materials must be dated at the level of the observed or recorded version. Their importance lies not in proving that every stanza is ancient but in revealing what communities chose to remember, repeat and adapt. Folk literature also travels easily across linguistic borders. A tale may be performed in locally Angika speech, retold in Hindi, or share motifs with Bengali and Maithili traditions. Variation is therefore evidence of circulation rather than a defect. Collecting multiple versions from different places can reveal which episodes are stable, which are local and which appear to have entered through recent media.

41.22 Bihula–Bishahari and Manjusha: language, ritual and visual narrative

The Bihula–Bishahari tradition gives the eastern zone an unusually visible intersection of oral narrative, ritual performance and visual art. Bihar Museum and Government of India craft documentation identify Manjusha painting with Bhagalpur and the Bihula–Bishahari story. The tradition is important linguistically because a narrative does not circulate only through pictures: songs, invocations, explanations, festival speech and artisan vocabulary accompany the material object. Rajiva Kumar Sinha and Om Prakash Pandey's study

likewise treats Manjusha as a route into regional folklore, trade and history. Yet the chronology of the present art form and the chronology of every narrative motif must be kept separate. Modern institutional descriptions sometimes assign very ancient dates; those claims require independent evidence. What can be stated securely is that Manjusha is a documented cultural emblem of the Bhagalpur/Anga region and a living vehicle for Angika-associated oral culture.

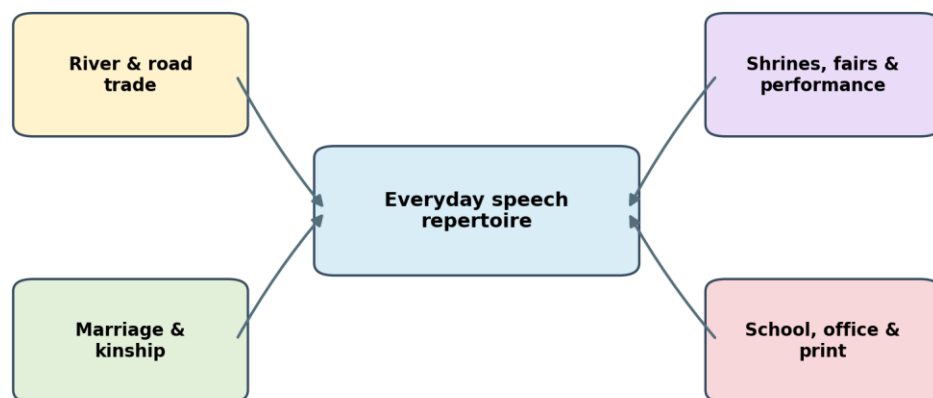
41.23 Women, ritual memory and the household transmission of speech

Women's ritual and domestic repertoires are indispensable to Angika social history. Marriage songs, birth songs, snake-goddess observances, laments, teasing songs and household tales transmit forms of speech that may be underrepresented in male-authored print. Patrilocal marriage can also move linguistic features: a bride carries pronunciation, vocabulary and songs between natal and marital settlements, while children learn from several generations of women. Such transmission helps explain why speech boundaries may be porous even where regional identities are strong. The household archive is difficult to date, so field recordings and older folklore collections must be compared carefully. Gender also shapes prestige: a form dismissed as "rustic" in formal writing may remain central to ritual authority. The eastern linguistic-cultural zone cannot therefore be reconstructed from public literary institutions alone.

41.24 Markets, river trade and occupational multilingualism

Market exchange produces a practical kind of multilingualism. Boatmen, grain dealers, artisans, cultivators, traders, transport workers and itinerant specialists need not abandon their home speech to communicate across a region. Instead they develop receptive competence, mixed registers and occupational vocabulary. Bhagalpur's riverine and later rail connections amplified these interactions. Trade terms can move rapidly because they are repeated in transactions, while household grammar remains more stable. The same process operates in fairs and pilgrimage markets, where ritual objects, songs and stories circulate alongside commodities. A linguistic history that ignores commerce will therefore misread borrowing as accidental. The eastern zone's vocabulary and code-switching patterns are partly the sediment of ordinary economic cooperation across communities.

How speech features circulate across the eastern zone



Borrowing, code-switching and convergence are normal products of repeated social contact.

Figure 162 — Social channels of linguistic circulation

41.25 Migration, towns and the widening Angika public

Modern migration has expanded Angika beyond its older territorial core. Education, government service, industrial employment and metropolitan labour create communities in which local speech becomes a portable marker of home. Migration changes language in two directions. Speakers acquire Hindi, Bengali, English or other urban languages, but digital communication also allows them to maintain Angika across distance. In the home region, return migrants bring new vocabulary and styles. This process helps explain why modern Angika can become more consciously named at the same time that individual repertoires become more multilingual. The sociolinguistic unit is no longer a bounded village alone; it includes WhatsApp groups, associations, literary networks and families divided across cities. Historical comparison should therefore distinguish territorial spread from speaker mobility.

41.26 Print, radio and digital codification

Every new medium changes what counts as a standard form. Print requires spelling choices; radio privileges intelligible broadcast pronunciation; keyboards and search systems favour encoded characters and consistent orthography. Angika grammars and online writing communities have proposed ways to represent locally salient vowels and pronunciations within Devanagari. These projects are historically significant even when writers disagree about the best system. Standardisation selects among variants and can create new expectations of correctness. It can also increase accessibility by making teaching material, dictionaries and searchable text possible. The resulting written norm should not be mistaken for a direct continuation of one medieval spelling tradition. It is a modern technological and institutional achievement built on older speech.

41.27 Modern Angika literature and institutions as historical evidence

The twentieth-century expansion of Angika literature provides a dated archive of identity formation. Bibliographic records in Bihar list works such as Abhaykant Chaudhary and Naresh Pandey Chakor's 1977 history of Angika literature, while later writers and organisations produced poetry, fiction, criticism, grammar and journalism. Dr. Amarendra's 1998 prose history is another marker of a self-conscious literary field. Such works matter not only for their content but because their publication demonstrates networks of authors, publishers, readers and cultural organisations. They allow historians to ask when Angika became a durable printed label, which genres were cultivated, and how literary language related to local speech. Claims within regional literary histories still require source criticism, especially when they assign very early texts to Angika, but the existence of the modern literary movement is itself firmly documentable.

41.28 Census, recognition and the politics of naming

Official language categories are never neutral mirrors of speech. A census form, school rule or language schedule may encourage speakers to choose among labels that do not match the fine-grained variety used at home. Conversely, campaigns for recognition can make a previously local name more visible and more widely adopted. Historical statistics must therefore be read together with classification instructions and political context. A rise or fall in the number of people reported under a language name may reflect relabelling as well as demographic change. This is especially important in Bihar, where Hindi, Maithili, Magahi, Bhojpuri, Angika and Bajjika have interacted within changing administrative and literary hierarchies. The historian should separate three questions: what people spoke, what they called it, and what the state allowed them to record. Those answers may differ.

41.29 A source-critical workflow for Angika history

This volume uses a reproducible hierarchy. First, identify the source’s date, place, speaker or author, and its own language label. Second, separate direct linguistic evidence—recordings, specimens, grammars and texts—from retrospective regional claims. Third, map the evidence at the smallest available geographic scale rather than assigning whole districts automatically. Fourth, distinguish genealogical classification from modern identity and official recognition. Fifth, test claims of antiquity through continuous dated witnesses; a shared place-name or script-name is not sufficient. Sixth, compare neighbouring languages to distinguish inheritance from contact. Finally, keep oral, visual and material culture in the analysis without converting them into linguistic proof they cannot provide. This workflow permits a rich history of Angika while reducing the risk of both erasure and retrospective invention.

Evidence firewall: Anga is not automatically Angika

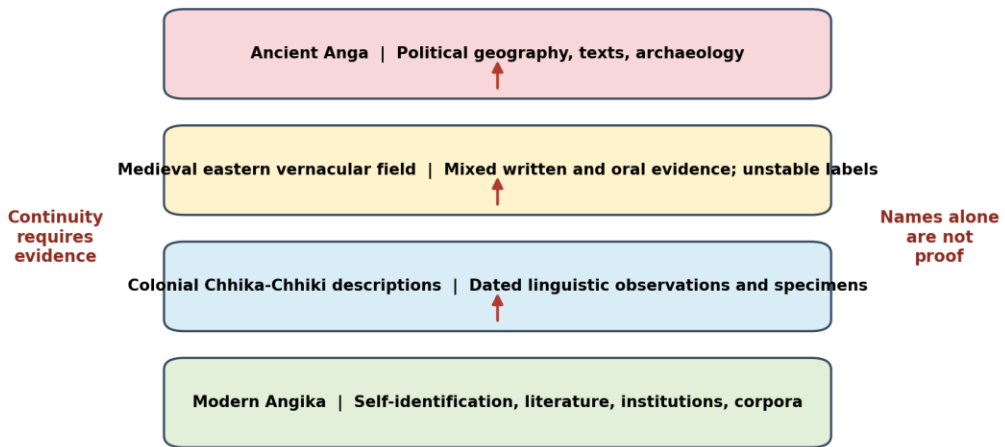


Figure 163 — Evidence firewall: Anga is not automatically Angika

41.30 Conclusion: Angika as language, history and eastern regional field

Angika is best understood through the interaction of three histories. One is linguistic: an eastern Indo-Aryan speech complex with strong historical connections to the varieties that Grierson grouped under Maithili and with sustained contact with Magahi, Bengali and Munda languages. The second is regional: the Bhagalpur–Champa, Munger, Kosi and Santal Parganas corridors formed an eastern cultural field shaped by rivers, markets, ritual and migration. The third is institutional: modern writers, grammarians, organisations and catalogues made Angika a durable public name and literary identity. These histories overlap but are not identical. Keeping them separate allows the volume to acknowledge both the older Chhika-Chhiki/southern-Maithili classification and the modern separate Angika identity without forcing either one backward across all periods. The result is a more precise history of eastern Mithila–Anga: connected, multilingual and continually remade.

Table 41.1 — Evidence domains for Angika and the eastern linguistic-cultural zone

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Dated linguistic survey or specimen	Forms, distribution and classification used at a known historical moment	Survey labels reflect sampling and scholarly frameworks; they are not timeless autonyms

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Modern corpus, grammar or recording	Present speech structure, variation and current naming practices	Cannot by itself establish medieval or ancient usage
Comparative linguistic features	Degrees of structural relationship and possible contact zones	Shared forms may reflect inheritance, borrowing or convergence; chronology must be tested
Regional literary institutions	When Angika became a durable public, printed and pedagogical identity	Modern literary naming cannot automatically reclassify older texts
Oral narrative and performance	Living repertoires, local vocabulary, social memory and transmission routes	The recorded version has a date; every motif need not be ancient
Material/visual culture such as Manjusha	Documented links among place, ritual, craft and narrative practice	Art history is cultural evidence, not direct proof of a language's antiquity
Ancient Anga texts and archaeology	Political geography, settlement and regional historical context	A regional name does not establish the structure or name of a later vernacular
Administrative/census categories	Official recognition and how speakers were counted or labelled	Reported numbers and labels can change through classification policy as well as demography

Chapter 42 — Bajjika and Western Mithila

Bajjika occupies the western side of the linguistic-cultural field examined in this volume, especially the Muzaffarpur–Vaishali–Sitamarhi–Sheohar belt and its continuation into Nepal’s Madhesh. Yet its history cannot be written by beginning with a modern label and simply pushing that label backward. Ancient Vajji/Vr̥ji, medieval western Mithila, Grierson’s Western Maithili, twentieth-century Bajjika literary self-identification, and Nepal’s present census category are connected but not identical objects. This chapter therefore combines historical linguistics, sociolinguistics, census evidence, regional literary history and the social history of mobility. It takes Bajjika identity seriously while distinguishing between the date of a name, the age of a speech feature, the geography of a repertoire and the institutional moment at which a language becomes visible in print, education, statistics or digital media.

42.1 Why western Mithila requires a contact-zone model

The western Mithila plain is not a linguistic island. Muzaffarpur and Vaishali face Bhojpuri-speaking districts to the west, Magahi and Hindi-dominant administrative spaces to the south, central Maithili varieties to the east and north-east, and Nepal’s Madhesh across an international border that is recent compared with the older circulation of people. Speech features therefore travel through marriage, weekly markets, pilgrimage, labour migration, schooling and media. A contact-zone model makes it possible to describe a recognizable Bajjika core without turning every isogloss into a political boundary. It also explains why researchers report internal varieties influenced by Maithili, Bhojpuri or Magahi. The important historical question is not whether contact exists—it plainly does—but which features appear old, which diffuse more recently, and which become socially emblematic only after writers and language activists begin to name them as Bajjika.

42.2 Vajji/Vr̥ji and Bajjika: resemblance is not a chronology

The modern name Bajjika is often linked in public memory to the ancient Vajji or Vr̥ji confederacy centred in the wider Vaishali region. The association has obvious regional power, but historical method requires caution. Ancient Buddhist, Jain and Brahmanical materials can establish Vajji as a political and cultural formation; archaeology can illuminate settlement and exchange around Vaishali. Neither source alone yields a grammar of the everyday speech of the republican age. Between ancient Middle Indo-Aryan stages and modern Bajjika lie many centuries of linguistic change. The name may preserve, revive or reinterpret regional memory, but that possibility must not be converted into automatic proof that a single language called Bajjika existed unchanged from the first millennium BCE. This chapter therefore treats Vajji as historical context and Bajjika as a modern linguistic identity whose deeper genealogy must be reconstructed feature by feature.

42.3 The geography of the modern speech community

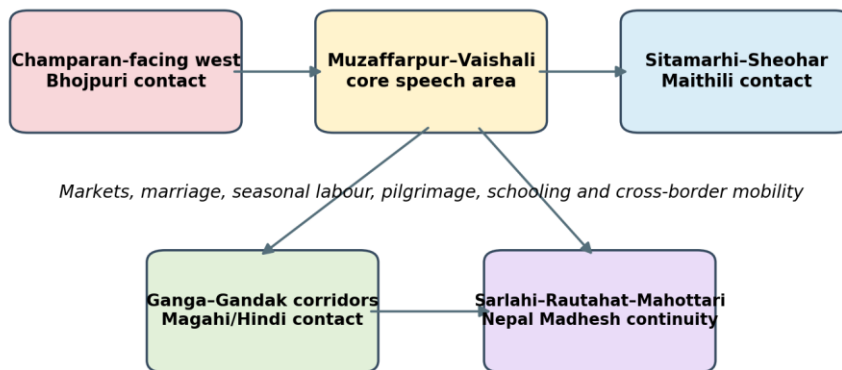
Modern descriptions usually place the Bajjika core in north-central Bihar, especially Vaishali and Muzaffarpur, with substantial use in Sitamarhi, Sheohar, Samastipur and adjoining areas and with transition toward the Champaran districts. Kashyap’s sociolinguistic work describes a broader Bajjikanchal and identifies Vaishali–Muzaffarpur as a central or standard area within the modern speech community. Such maps should be read as contemporary ethnolinguistic descriptions, not as medieval territorial charters. They are valuable because they identify where speakers, authors and activists recognize Bajjika today and because

they reveal border zones where neighbouring languages exert strong influence. For historical reconstruction, district names are therefore coordinates for collecting evidence rather than timeless language compartments.

42.4 Grierson and the category “Western Maithili”

The Linguistic Survey of India is indispensable because it provides dated speech specimens and an explicit classificatory framework from the colonial period. Grierson treated western varieties around north Muzaffarpur within the Maithili field and used the label Western Maithili. A 2025 Central Institute of Indian Languages publication likewise correlates modern Bajjika with Grierson’s Western Maithili while mapping several other modern regional names to older survey varieties. This continuity of classification is historically significant, but it does not settle every modern identity question. Colonial surveys classified repertoires according to the comparative categories available to their compilers; later communities may reorganize those categories through literature, schooling, census practice and political self-description. The survey is strongest when used as a dated linguistic snapshot, not as a permanent constitutional ruling on whether Bajjika must forever be called a dialect or a language.

Bajjika and the western Mithila contact zone



A graded contact field explains both distinctiveness and overlap better than a single hard boundary.

Figure 164 — Bajjika and the western Mithila contact zone

42.5 From dialect label to public language name

The twentieth century brought a different kind of evidence: grammars, dictionaries, periodicals, literary gatherings and organizations using Bajjika as a primary name. Awadheshwar Arun, R. N. Sharma, Surendra Mohan Prasad and other scholars participated in the codification of vocabulary and grammar, while Bajjika writers expanded prose, poetry, drama and translation. Codification matters historically because a named language becomes easier to teach, edit, publish, archive and mobilize around. It also changes how speakers hear variation: features previously treated as local speech can become markers of a broader literary community. This is not merely a political afterthought to linguistic structure. Standardization itself is a social process that selects forms, creates norms and defines audiences. The rise of Bajjika as a durable public label is therefore part of the language’s history, even where scholars continue to disagree about its taxonomic relation to Maithili.

42.6 Structural evidence: why Bajjika deserves direct description

A language history cannot be reduced to competing names. Detailed grammatical description shows why Bajjika must be studied on its own terms. Kashyap's work on verb agreement documents a complex system in which agreement can encode person, honorific degree, spatial distance and, under restrictions, gender, and can index more than one participant. Such data demonstrate that the variety is not adequately described by a vague claim that it is simply 'mixed' speech. Direct structural work permits comparison with Maithili, Bhojpuri and Magahi while also identifying patterns that deserve specific analysis within Bajjika. The correct comparative question is therefore not 'Is it really X or Y?' but 'Which innovations, retentions and contact-induced features occur, where, and with what social distribution?' That shift from label dispute to describable structure is one of the most productive developments in recent Bajjika scholarship.

42.7 Honour, distance and social grammar

The unusually rich agreement system described for Bajjika also reveals how grammar can encode social relations. Honorific distinctions and deictic distance are not decorative additions to a neutral linguistic core; they organize choices speakers make about respect, intimacy, hierarchy and reference. For social history, this matters because linguistic structure preserves conventions of interaction that can be compared across generations and neighbouring languages. Yet contemporary patterns cannot simply be projected unchanged into medieval society. The safest use of modern grammar is comparative: it identifies domains—honorification, participant indexing, deixis—in which older texts, early recordings or survey specimens may be checked for continuity or change. Social grammar is therefore evidence about a living system and a guide for historical questions, not a time machine.

42.8 Internal variation is part of the language, not noise

Modern Bajjika scholarship commonly distinguishes a central Vaishali–Muzaffarpur variety from forms influenced by Maithili, Bhojpuri and Magahi near the edges of the speech area. Nepal-based surveys similarly describe eastern, central and western Bajjika zones shaped by neighbouring Maithili and Bhojpuri. These patterns show why a single 'pure' form should not be treated as the only authentic Bajjika. Contact varieties are historical records of mobility and adjacency. At the same time, influence labels must be used carefully: they summarize distributions rather than proving that every feature came from one direction. A rigorous dialect history requires dated recordings, age-graded speakers, lexical and morphosyntactic comparison, and geographic sampling. Variation, properly documented, allows us to reconstruct pathways of diffusion rather than merely to rank speakers by distance from a chosen standard.

42.9 Contact with Bhojpuri on the western edge

The western side of Bajjika meets Bhojpuri across a broad transition belt rather than a single line. Recent work on structural change reports present-tense and auxiliary forms in some Bajjika speech that are not attested in the older comparison used by the researcher and interprets them as relatively recent diffusion from Bhojpuri. Whether every proposed pathway survives future testing, the method is important: current variation is compared with earlier evidence to distinguish inherited structure from newer contact-induced change. This is precisely the kind of chronological reasoning needed for the western Mithila zone. Bhojpuri contact should neither be denied for identity reasons nor exaggerated into the claim that Bajjika is merely eastern Bhojpuri. It is a channel of change within a multilingual frontier.

42.10 Contact with central Maithili to the east

Eastward, Bajjika overlaps structurally and historically with varieties classified as Maithili. The 2025 CIIL corpus project explicitly places Bajjika in correspondence with Grierson's Western Maithili, and Glottolog's current genealogical tree lists Bajjika under Maithili even while an ISO 639-3 code *vjk* is associated with the Bajjika entry. These facts illustrate rather than eliminate the classificatory complexity. Shared inheritance and long contact can make boundaries fuzzy, while literary standardization makes them socially sharper. For this volume, the important point is that Western Mithila contained a continuum with internal centres, not a homogeneous speech block. Modern Bajjika identity and the historical Maithili comparative frame can both be documented without pretending that they are the same type of evidence.

Bajjika classification: the label changes with the institution

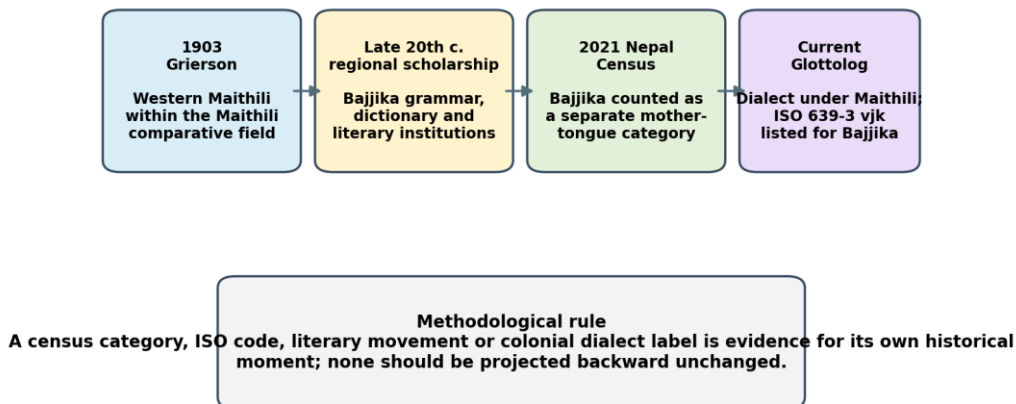


Figure 165 — Bajjika classification: the label changes with the institution

42.11 Contact with Magahi and urban Hindi

Southern routes through Hajipur, the Ganga crossings and the Patna metropolitan sphere expose Bajjika speakers to Magahi and to regional and standardized Hindi. Administrative employment, higher education, print, broadcast media and migration have strengthened Hindi as a public-domain language for many speakers. This does not imply replacement of home speech. Instead, repertoires become layered: Bajjika may dominate intimacy and neighbourhood interaction while Hindi is selected for school, formal writing or wider mobility. Code-switching and lexical borrowing are therefore expected. Historical analysis should ask when such domain specialization intensified and which institutions drove it, especially the expansion of mass schooling and electronic media. The result is a multilingual hierarchy rather than a simple sequence in which one language mechanically displaces another.

42.12 Kaithi, Devanagari and the problem of script identity

Speech and script histories must be separated. Western Bihar and Mithila participated in several scribal traditions, including Kaithi in administrative and mercantile contexts and Devanagari in increasingly broad print and educational use. Modern Bajjika publication is overwhelmingly associated with Devanagari, but that does not mean the modern literary standard can be projected directly onto every older Kaithi document from the region. Script tells us about scribal practice, office, literacy networks and genre; language must still

be identified from the text itself. A future manuscript survey of western Mithila should therefore catalogue script, date, place, genre and linguistic features independently. Only then can the history of Bajjika writing be reconstructed without equating a regional script with a single language.

42.13 Oral culture as a major transmission domain

Like the wider Mithila–Vajji–Anga region, western Mithila preserves large repertoires of songs, tales, proverbs, ritual speech and performance. Oral forms are especially important where formal schooling and print historically privileged other languages. They preserve vocabulary, phonology, idiom and social registers that may be underrepresented in administrative documents. Yet the evidentiary rule established in Chapter 40 applies fully here: a song recorded in the twentieth or twenty-first century is a dated performance, not automatically an unchanged medieval text. Variation among performances is itself meaningful because it shows how communities reshape inheritance. Systematic audio archiving with speaker age, locality, gender, performance setting and date would provide an exceptional resource for future Bajjika historical linguistics.

42.14 Women’s domestic speech and invisible archives

Domestic and life-cycle genres often preserve speech forms that formal archives miss. Wedding songs, birth rituals, teasing songs, laments, work songs and women’s narratives circulate through kinship networks and can carry linguistic features across villages when marriage is exogamous. In western Mithila this movement is especially important because marriage networks connect communities across the Bajjika–Maithili–Bhojpuri transition zones and across the India–Nepal border. Such genres are therefore sources for both language and social history, provided that researchers record who performs them and where the performer learned them. The archive of women’s speech should not be treated merely as folklore supplement; it is part of the evidence for how language is reproduced across generations.

42.15 Vaishali and Muzaffarpur as modern cultural centres

Vaishali carries immense ancient prestige, while Muzaffarpur has long served as an educational, commercial and print centre. Their importance to modern Bajjika identity arises from this layered regional centrality, but the layers must not be collapsed. Ancient Vaishali belongs to the history of Vajji and early urbanism; modern Vaishali district and Muzaffarpur belong to contemporary linguistic geography and institution-building. The same place can anchor multiple historical narratives without proving that all of them are continuous in the same way. For Bajjika, the two centres matter because modern scholarship often treats their speech as central or standard and because literary and organizational networks have used them as reference points for broader Bajjikanchal identity.

42.16 Bihar census categories and the problem of counting

India’s census tables record mother tongues through a classification system in which many reported varieties are grouped under larger language headings. The 2011 Bihar C-16 tables are therefore essential evidence for official language statistics, but they do not yield a straightforward Bajjika total comparable to Nepal’s separate Bajjika count. This is a crucial methodological point. Absence of a simple line item does not prove absence of speakers; nor can activist estimates be substituted for census data without explaining their method. A responsible demographic history should distinguish raw self-reported mother tongues, census aggregation rules, linguistic estimates and political claims. Counting is an institutional act, and changes in classification can alter apparent speaker totals even when everyday speech changes more slowly.

42.17 Nepal 2021: Bajjika as a separate census mother tongue

Nepal provides a different administrative picture. The National Population and Housing Census 2021 lists Bajjika separately and records 1,133,764 mother-tongue speakers, or 3.89 percent of the national population. The census language report shows that 99.4 percent of these speakers are in Madhesh Province. These are unusually valuable contemporary data because they document both self-identification and geographic concentration through an official state instrument. They should not, however, be read backward as proof that earlier censuses or historical populations used the same label in the same way. The rise from the 2011 Bajjika count also reflects, at least potentially, changing self-reporting and classification as well as demographic growth. Census history must therefore be read institutionally as well as numerically.

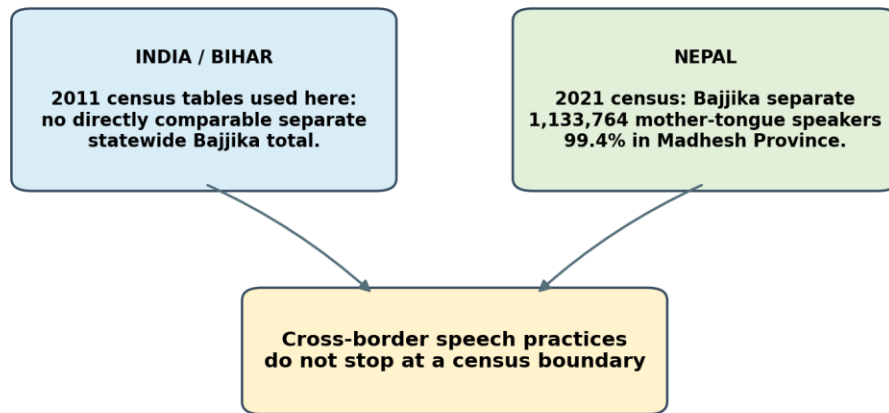
42.18 Rautahat, Sarlahi and Mahottari in the cross-border continuum

Nepal-based linguistic surveys identify major Bajjika use in Rautahat and Sarlahi and extend the eastern transition toward Mahottari. This geography continues the speech continuum north of Bihar without implying uniformity on either side. The international border intersects older routes of marriage, markets, pilgrimage and seasonal movement. Speakers may therefore share forms across the boundary while being educated under different national curricula and exposed to different official languages. Nepal's Nepali-medium state institutions and Bihar's Hindi-dominant public sphere create different patterns of bilingualism around related local speech. Cross-border comparison is consequently one of the best laboratories for separating inherited Bajjika structure from newer state-driven contact effects.

42.19 The India–Nepal border as a sociolinguistic experiment

Because the border divides a related speech area between two national systems, it allows unusually precise questions. Which lexical items diverge because of Hindi versus Nepali schooling? Which honorific or verbal forms remain shared despite state separation? Which scripts, spellings and literary norms converge through digital media? Which local markets preserve older cross-border patterns? Such questions require matched village studies rather than broad claims. The border should therefore be treated as a sociolinguistic experiment produced by history: one speech continuum exposed to different bureaucratic, educational and media ecologies. This approach can illuminate both resilience and change without turning linguistic similarity into a nationalist argument about territory.

One speech continuum, different state classification systems



Administrative categories shape statistics; they do not create the linguistic ecology.

Figure 166 — One speech continuum, different state classification systems

42.20 Literature and the making of a reading public

A language becomes socially different when writers can assume a reading public. Bajjika literary organizations, dictionaries, grammars and creative works helped create that public by making orthography, vocabulary and genre choices visible and repeatable. Modern literature also gives scholars a dated corpus against which spoken variation can be compared. Yet literary standardization inevitably selects. A printed form may privilege Vaishali–Muzaffarpur usage, simplify local variants or adopt Sanskritic and Hindi-derived vocabulary for wider readability. The literary language must therefore be studied as a historical construction rather than mistaken for a transparent transcription of all Bajjika speech. Its achievement is precisely that it turns a variable repertoire into a durable medium of public expression.

42.21 Dictionaries and grammar as institutions of memory

Works such as Bajjika grammars and the Bharati Bajjika Hindi Kosh do more than list forms. They establish headwords, preferred spellings, paradigms and examples; in doing so they preserve lexical memory and influence future usage. Lexicography is therefore an institutional stage in the history of the language. It also provides evidence for what scholars at a particular moment considered representative Bajjika. Historical linguists can compare such works with field recordings and older survey materials to detect change. The risk is circularity: once a dictionary becomes authoritative, later writers may adopt its choices, making them appear older or more widespread than they originally were. Dating the codification process is therefore essential.

42.22 Education, literacy and the mother-tongue question

The debate over mother-tongue education in Bihar is especially sharp in regions where official and literary categories do not align neatly with home speech. Children may arrive at school using Bajjika while textbooks and classroom interaction privilege standard Hindi or standard Maithili. Educational policy therefore becomes part of language history by influencing literacy, vocabulary and prestige. The relevant historical question is not simply which language ‘belongs’ to a district, but what linguistic distance children experience

between home and school and how teachers manage that distance. Locally grounded primers, oral-to-written transition materials and multilingual pedagogy can be discussed without requiring a final taxonomic verdict on the language-versus-dialect question.

42.23 Religion does not map neatly onto language

Western Mithila contains Hindu, Muslim and other communities whose everyday repertoires overlap while also showing community-specific vocabulary and registers. Nepal surveys have noted Muslim-community varieties within the Bajjika field; similar differentiation deserves careful study in Bihar. Persian-Arabic vocabulary may enter through Urdu and religious practice, while Sanskritic vocabulary may be reinforced through ritual, schooling or print. These layers should not be mistaken for separate ethnic languages unless speakers and structural evidence support such a conclusion. Religious identity, caste, occupation and locality intersect with speech, but none provides a one-to-one linguistic boundary. The chapter therefore treats community registers as part of the internal sociolinguistic ecology of Bajjika.

42.24 Migration, remittances and the expanding repertoire

Labour migration to Patna, Delhi, Punjab, metropolitan India, the Gulf and other destinations changes Bajjika repertoires through prolonged contact with Hindi, Urdu, Punjabi, English and other languages. Return migrants bring vocabulary, discourse styles and media habits into village speech. Mobile phones intensify this process by allowing daily contact with home while exposing speakers to national and transnational media. Migration can therefore produce both convergence and renewed local identity: speakers may use more Hindi-derived forms in some contexts while valuing Bajjika more strongly as a marker of home. A future historical corpus should record migration history alongside age and locality, because linguistic change increasingly follows mobility networks rather than simple geographic distance.

42.25 Digital media and the new visibility of Bajjika

Digital publication lowers the cost of creating a public language domain. Social media posts, video channels, digital magazines, songs, comedy and messaging make Bajjika visible outside the institutions of print and formal education. The result is rapid orthographic experimentation and a vast new spoken archive. For researchers, this abundance is both opportunity and problem. Digital material is date-stamped and often geolocatable only imperfectly; speakers may stylize language for humour or identity; platform algorithms reward certain registers. Preservation therefore requires metadata and ethical archiving. Even so, the digital turn is historically significant because it gives Bajjika speakers a space in which naming and usage can reinforce each other at unprecedented scale.

42.26 Why “mixed language” is usually an inadequate explanation

Bajjika is sometimes casually described as a mixture of Maithili and Bhojpuri. Such a formula may capture the listener’s perception of overlapping features but is linguistically too crude. All Indo-Aryan languages share inherited material, and neighbouring varieties also borrow from one another. To call one variety ‘mixed’ without specifying which features were inherited, innovated or borrowed replaces analysis with impression. Kashyap’s grammatical work and later contact studies show that Bajjika has describable internal systems and identifiable pathways of diffusion. The better model is a historically layered language variety within an Eastern Indo-Aryan continuum, shaped by both inheritance and contact. That formulation leaves room for modern autonomous identity without denying deep relations to Maithili and neighbouring languages.

42.27 Language versus dialect: a question with several answers

The language/dialect distinction can refer to genealogy, mutual intelligibility, standardized literature, political recognition, speaker identity or administrative coding; these criteria need not produce the same answer. Bajjika illustrates the problem vividly. Grierson and the 2025 CIIIL framework connect it to Western Maithili; Glottolog places Bajjika under Maithili while recording the Bajjika ISO code vjk; Nepal's census counts it separately; Bajjika authors and speakers may assert an autonomous language identity. These are not necessarily contradictions because they answer different institutional questions. A historical volume should record each classification with its date and purpose rather than forcing all evidence into a single timeless label.

42.28 What would a stronger historical corpus require?

The next major advance in Bajjika history requires a diachronic corpus. It should combine Grierson-era specimens, dated early print, grammars and dictionaries, newspapers, private letters where available, oral recordings from different generations, and contemporary digital speech. Every item should carry locality, date, genre, speaker or author information and, where relevant, script. Comparable corpora should be built for central Maithili, Bhojpuri and Magahi so that apparent Bajjika innovations can be tested against neighbouring evidence. India–Nepal paired sites would be especially valuable. Such a corpus would move the debate from assertion to measurable chronology: which forms appear when, where and in which social domains.

42.29 Evidence hierarchy for writing Bajjika history

The safest workflow begins with dated linguistic evidence: survey specimens, manuscripts whose language can actually be identified, printed texts, recordings and corpora. Next come sociolinguistic sources that document speaker identity, domain use and institutional status. Census data establish official categories and reported populations for a particular year. Regional memory, ancient place names and literary tradition provide crucial historical context but cannot alone establish a modern linguistic form in antiquity. Finally, present-day grammar can guide questions about earlier stages but should not be treated as direct medieval evidence. This hierarchy does not privilege one community's preferred label; it privileges chronological transparency.

Evidence firewall: Vajji is not automatically Bajjika

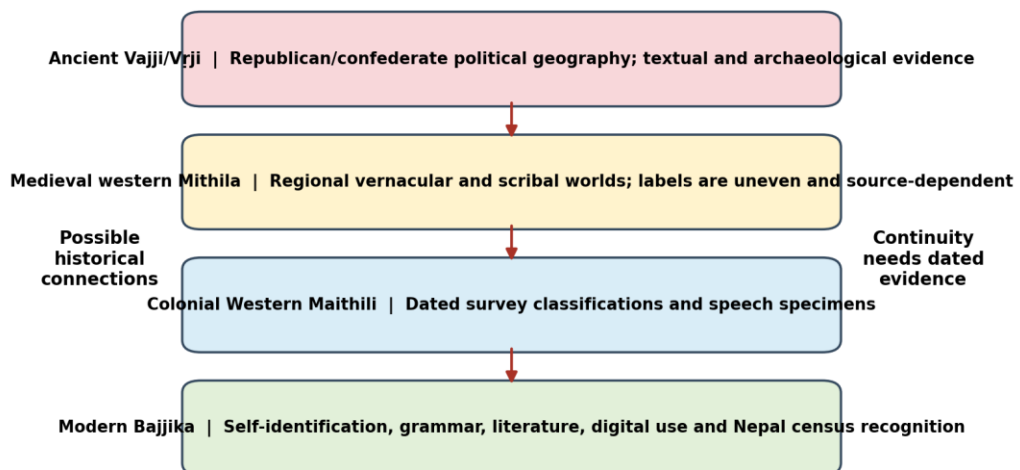


Figure 167 — Evidence firewall: Vajji is not automatically Bajjika

42.30 Conclusion: Bajjika as western Mithila's historical speech field

Bajjika can be understood most accurately when three histories are held together without being collapsed. The first is genealogical and areal: western Mithila belongs to an Eastern Indo-Aryan continuum with deep connections to Maithili and sustained contact with Bhojpuri, Magahi and Hindi. The second is regional: Vaishali, Muzaffarpur, Sitamarhi, Sheohar and the adjoining Madhesh districts form a social field linked by markets, kinship, migration and ritual. The third is institutional: modern grammars, dictionaries, literature, ISO coding and especially Nepal's census recognition have made Bajjika increasingly visible as a named language. The result is neither an unchanged survival from ancient Vajji nor a mere modern invention. It is a historically layered speech community whose present identity has both inherited linguistic depth and modern institutional form.

Table 42.1 — Evidence domains for Bajjika and western Mithila

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Ancient Vajji/Vrji texts and archaeology	Political geography, settlement, institutions and regional context	Cannot by itself establish the grammar or modern name Bajjika
Grierson-era survey specimens	Dated Western Maithili forms, distribution and colonial classification	A 1903 classification is not a timeless verdict on present identity
Modern grammar and corpus studies	Bajjika structure, agreement, variation and current speech patterns	Present structure cannot automatically be projected into medieval periods
Literature, dictionaries and organizations	The institutional history of Bajjika standardization and public naming	Codified forms may select one variety from a wider continuum
India census tables	Official language counting and aggregation rules in a specific census	No directly comparable separate Bajjika total should be invented from grouped categories
Nepal 2021 census	Separate Bajjika mother-tongue count and provincial distribution	Counts reflect self-reporting and state categories of that census year
Oral and digital recordings	Living speech, genre, variation, code-switching and transmission	Every recorded form has a date; oral survival does not prove unchanged antiquity
Comparative contact evidence	Possible diffusion from Maithili, Bhojpuri, Magahi, Hindi or Nepali	Borrowing must be demonstrated feature by feature and chronologically

Chapter 43 — Sanskrit Learning and Scholastic Institutions

Sanskrit learning is one of the strongest documented strands in the intellectual history of medieval Mithila, but its institutions have often been described with anachronistic vocabulary. This chapter reconstructs the learned world through teachers, pupils, manuscripts, commentaries, courts, debates and mobility. It gives special attention to Gaṅgeśa and Navya-Nyāya while keeping jurisprudence, Mīmāṃsā, grammar and other disciplines in view. It also separates dated evidence from later heritage memory, so that the historical importance of Mithila’s scholastic culture does not depend on calling it a modern-style university.

43.1 Why “institution” must be defined historically

The phrase “scholastic institution” can mislead if it evokes a modern university with a charter, permanent campus, salaried departments and centralized admissions. Sanskrit learning in medieval Mithila was institutionally real, but its durable units were usually different: teacher-households, circles of pupils, manuscript collections, lineages of commentary, courts that rewarded learning, assemblies of experts and reputations that drew students across regions. The historical task is therefore to identify recurring practices and relationships rather than to search for a single building called a university. A text that names a teacher, patron or place; a manuscript copied for study; a sequence of commentaries; and evidence of pupils travelling to a renowned master can together reveal an institution even when no campus archive survives. Conversely, later claims about a continuous “Mithila University” must be tested rather than repeated. This chapter uses “institution” in this distributed sense.

43.2 Sanskrit as a scholastic language inside a multilingual society

Sanskrit did not monopolize speech in Mithila, Vajji or Anga. It functioned as a prestigious language of śāstric argument, ritual learning, legal digests, philosophy, theology and much courtly writing, while everyday communication and large parts of literary performance operated through Maithili and related regional speech forms. Avahatṭa and other literary registers, and later Persian documentary culture, further complicated the ecology. The distinction matters because the social power of Sanskrit depended precisely on this multilingual setting. Students had to acquire a technical register whose vocabulary and syntactic habits were learned, rehearsed and transmitted. A scholastic institution therefore taught more than doctrines: it trained readers to inhabit a specialized language of reasoning. Chapter 36 established the broader pre-standardization ecology; here the focus is on the social mechanisms that reproduced one especially influential learned register within it.

43.3 Earlier precedents: Vācaspati Miśra, Udayana and the problem of local memory

Mithila’s later reputation did not emerge from nothing. Vācaspati Miśra and Udayana stand within the long history of Nyāya, Mīmāṃsā, Vedānta and related Sanskrit argumentation, and later regional memory strongly associates major teachers and sites with Mithila. Yet textual attribution, biographical tradition and the identification of a modern village site are different forms of evidence. The safest historical method begins from datable works and manuscript traditions, then asks how firmly a locality can be connected to them. Vācaspati’s breadth across philosophical systems demonstrates the permeability of disciplinary boundaries;

Udayana's works show the sophistication of Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika argument before Gaṅgeśa. These predecessors are indispensable to the intellectual genealogy of the region, but archaeological or topographical claims about exact “academies” require independent corroboration. The point is continuity of learned problems and methods, not an invented unbroken campus history.

43.4 The teacher-household as a durable educational form

A renowned teacher could create an institutional centre without founding a college in the modern sense. Pupils lived near or with a teacher, copied or memorized texts, listened to exposition, rehearsed objections and replies, and learned how a technical expression was to be deployed. Reputation attracted new pupils; successful pupils carried the method elsewhere; manuscripts and remembered lessons stabilized a curriculum. Such arrangements were economically dependent on household resources, gifts, landed support, court patronage or the contributions of pupils and their families. They were also vulnerable: the death or migration of a teacher could shift an intellectual centre rapidly. This helps explain why medieval scholastic geography is better drawn as a network of nodes than as a map of permanent universities. The institutional ecology depended on people, texts, patronage and travel acting together.

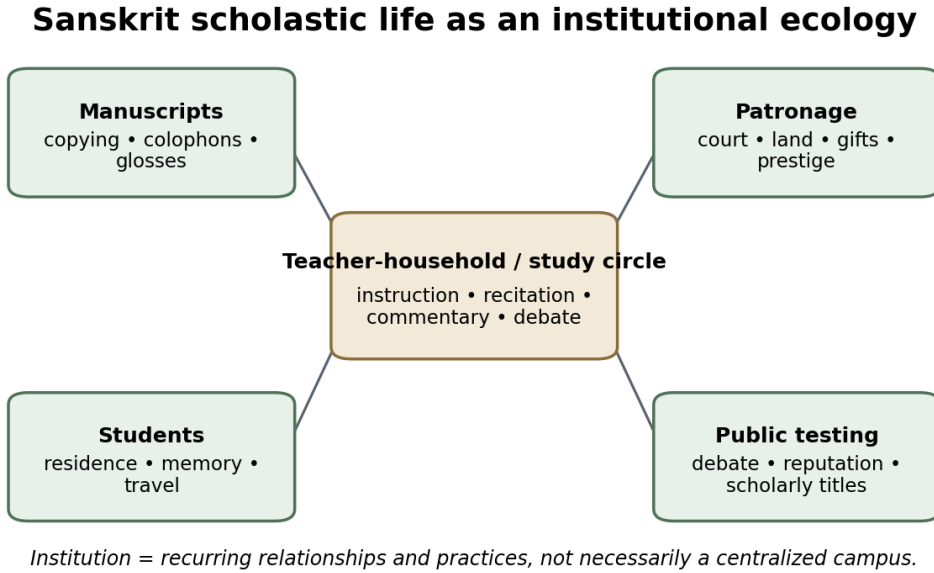


Figure 168 — Sanskrit scholastic life as a distributed institutional ecology

43.5 Gaṅgeśa and the reorganization of Nyāya

Gaṅgeśa, active in Mithila in the first half of the fourteenth century, transformed the scale and style of Sanskrit analytical philosophy through the *Tattvacintāmaṇi*. Modern historians commonly identify the work as the foundational text of Navya-Nyāya, “new” Nyāya, not because earlier Nyāya disappeared but because the techniques of definition, qualification and relational analysis acquired a new precision and became a common intellectual technology. The work is organized around four accepted means of knowledge: perception, inference, comparison and testimony. That architecture made it teachable as a sequence of problems while also inviting commentary at multiple levels. Institutional history is visible here in textual form. A difficult base text produces teachers, glosses, competing readings, abridgements and specialist reputations; the curriculum grows because the text is hard enough to require mediation. Gaṅgeśa’s importance thus lies both in philosophical innovation and in creating an exceptionally productive object of study.

43.6 The four pramāṇa books as a pedagogical architecture

The fourfold organization of Tattvacintāmaṇi around pratyakṣa, anumāna, upamāna and śabda gave teachers a modular but interconnected curriculum. Perception required analysis of cognition, error and conceptualization; inference demanded precise accounts of pervasion, reason and fallacy; comparison raised questions about similarity and recognition; testimony opened onto language, sentence meaning and authority. A pupil who mastered these books did not simply memorize conclusions. The pedagogical ideal was the ability to reconstruct an opponent's position, identify the exact locus of disagreement, formulate a definition that avoided over- and under-extension, and answer counterexamples. Such training explains why Navya-Nyāya techniques later entered jurisprudence, grammar and other śāstric domains. The curriculum was portable because it was encoded in textual problems and methods rather than tied to a single building.

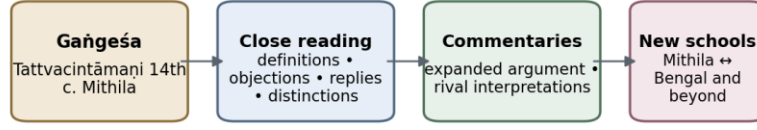
43.7 Technical language as an intellectual technology

Navya-Nyāya's most consequential institutional achievement was a language for making relations explicit. Expressions specifying qualifier, qualificand, locus, delimitor and the mode of a relation allowed scholars to analyze ambiguity with extraordinary granularity. This was not "logic" in the narrow modern classroom sense. It was a disciplined meta-language that could be borrowed by jurists, grammarians and philosophers working on very different objects. Learning that language required sustained apprenticeship because an apparently small change in a compound or relational phrase could alter an argument. Once mastered, however, it enabled communication across teacher lineages. The technical register therefore acted like intellectual infrastructure: it made complex problems comparable, compressible and transmissible. Its diffusion is one of the clearest signs that a scholastic institution can outlive the locality where a method was first developed.

43.8 Commentary as curriculum, research and credential

Commentary was not secondary writing added after the "real" philosophy. In Sanskrit scholastic life, a commentary could be the classroom, laboratory and public demonstration of competence at once. To explain Gaṅgeśa, a scholar had to identify inherited readings, decide where an objection began and ended, reconstruct suppressed reasoning, and show why a preferred formulation survived rival interpretations. Subcommentaries could then turn a single sentence into a new field of dispute. The result was cumulative without being merely repetitive. A pupil's mastery was visible in the ability to enter this chain and make a defensible intervention. The vast post-Gaṅgeśa literature therefore records institutional activity: who was reading whom, which problems had become canonical, and where technical innovations were being recognized. A commentary lineage is thus also a social lineage, although the two should never be assumed to coincide perfectly.

Tattvacintāmaṇi as a scholastic commentary engine



The institution survives through textual operations: teaching a base text, writing on it, contesting it, and transmitting technical vocabulary.

A commentary tradition is therefore simultaneously a literary archive, a curriculum and a network of teachers.

Figure 169 — *Tattvacintāmaṇi as a scholastic commentary engine*

43.9 Manuscripts were working instruments, not passive containers

A scholastic manuscript was handled, corrected, recited, excerpted and compared. Marginal notes, interlinear glosses, colophons and changes of hand can reveal use over time. The physical manuscript therefore belongs inside the history of teaching, not merely in a library appendix. Copying could be pedagogical: writing a difficult text fixed its sequence in memory and forced decisions about segmentation. Manuscript scarcity also shaped pedagogy because a teacher might control access to a small number of exemplars. At the same time, famous stories that Mithila teachers categorically prohibited students from taking copies of logical works away must be treated cautiously. They may preserve a memory of restricted access or local prestige, but they require contemporary corroboration before being used as institutional rules. The secure point is simpler: control of texts mattered because texts were expensive, laborious and intellectually powerful.

43.10 Patronage: courtly support without reducing scholarship to propaganda

Courts mattered to Sanskrit learning because rulers and landed elites could reward scholars, sponsor copying, provide residence, commission digests and attach prestige to debate. Oiniwar-period Mithila offers especially important evidence for interaction between courtly and scholastic worlds. Yet patronage did not make every philosophical argument a piece of royal propaganda. A work on inference or sentence meaning could participate in a centuries-old technical conversation whose standards were set by other scholars. The court's role was often to stabilize the conditions under which such work could be pursued and publicly recognized. Patronage also created inequalities: some lineages gained visibility because their texts were copied and preserved, while others left faint traces. Institutional history must therefore follow both intellectual content and the material conditions that allowed particular forms of scholarship to survive.

43.11 Debate and disputation as public tests of learning

Nyāya had long theorized forms of debate, and medieval scholastic reputation continued to depend on the ability to defend propositions before qualified opponents. Public disputation transformed knowledge into a social event. A teacher's fame could grow through successful argument; a pupil could acquire status by demonstrating control over technical distinctions; courts and assemblies could become stages on which intellectual authority was negotiated. Yet later anecdotes often exaggerate debates into spectacular contests with absolute winners and losers. The historical core is more modest and more significant: a culture of

objection and reply made learning accountable to an expert audience. It also trained scholars to anticipate criticism in writing, which helps explain the nested pūrvapakṣa-siddhānta structure of so many texts. Debate was therefore both pedagogy and quality control.

43.12 Examination traditions: evidence, memory and caution

Regional histories frequently describe śālākā-parīkṣā and other demanding examinations in which a student had to explain a randomly selected portion of a text. Such accounts are plausible within a manuscript-centered scholastic culture and appear in important histories of Indian logic. But the exact dates, procedures and institutional reach of these examinations are not equally well documented. They should therefore be presented as a layered tradition: later scholarly histories may preserve genuine practices, yet each named examination needs chronological anchoring before it can be assigned to every century of medieval Mithila. The broader institutional point does not depend on the most dramatic version of the story. Advanced learning required recognized demonstrations of competence, whether through debate, exposition, teaching, authorship or formal testing. Credentialing existed socially even when its bureaucratic form is uncertain.

43.13 Mīmāṃsā and the hermeneutics of authoritative language

Mīmāṃsā was crucial to the wider learned ecology because it provided sophisticated theories of injunction, sentence meaning, textual authority and action. Gaṅgeśa himself was remembered as a teacher of both Nyāya and Mīmāṃsā, and later intellectual history repeatedly shows movement of concepts across these disciplinary boundaries. For a region whose ritual, legal and philosophical cultures depended heavily on interpreting authoritative Sanskrit texts, hermeneutics was not an isolated specialty. It trained scholars to ask how words generate knowledge, how apparently conflicting passages can be reconciled, and what follows from a prescribed act. These questions entered Dharmaśāstra and later Navya-Nyāya discussions. Institutional specialization therefore coexisted with methodological exchange. A teacher might be famous for Nyāya while expecting pupils to understand Mīmāṃsā distinctions that made the Nyāya argument intelligible.

43.14 Dharmaśāstra and the regional production of jurisprudence

Medieval Mithila was not only a centre of abstract logic. Sanskrit jurisprudence developed regional schools whose arguments about ownership, inheritance and authority interacted with Navya-Nyāya methods. Christopher Fleming's reconstruction of Maithila and Gauḍa jurisprudence shows that these were historically situated intellectual formations rather than timeless "Hindu law" codes. The Maithila/Miśra school developed positions that could differ sharply from other Sanskrit jurisprudential traditions. This is institutional evidence because legal reasoning required communities of readers capable of recognizing a school's vocabulary and authorities. Digests and commentaries connected scholarship to social practice without becoming simple transcripts of everyday custom. They show experts trying to organize normative questions through a shared technical tradition. Chapter 32 treated women, marriage and property from a social-historical angle; here the emphasis is the learned machinery that produced such jurisprudential arguments.

43.15 Candeśvara and the work of compilation

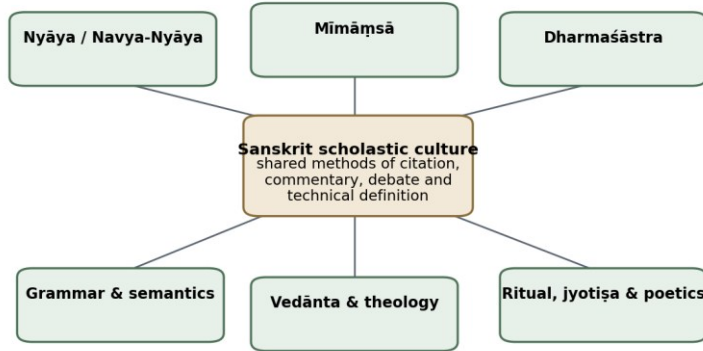
Candeśvara's Sanskrit digests belong to the wider history of Mithila's juristic and political learning. Compilation should not be dismissed as derivative. To build a digest, a scholar had to select authorities, order

topics, reconcile contradictions and decide which inherited rules mattered to a new political environment. Such works reveal the institutional need for usable knowledge: courts, learned households and ritual specialists required texts that could navigate a large śāstric archive. They also show why the distinction between composition and application matters. A digest can tell us what an expert considered authoritative or debatable; it does not automatically tell us how every village dispute was resolved. The compiler stands at the junction of library, classroom and court, making the digest a particularly revealing institutional genre.

43.16 Grammar, semantics and the discipline of exact reading

Nyāya and Mīmāṃsā arguments constantly touched grammar and semantics because philosophical disputes often turned on what a sentence could mean, how reference worked, or whether a property was expressed directly or by implication. The scholastic institution therefore depended on grammatical competence even when grammar was not the teacher's principal specialization. Sanskrit's dense commentarial prose rewarded exact parsing: compounds had to be segmented correctly, case relations recognized and technical terms distinguished from ordinary usage. This linguistic discipline also helps explain the later productivity of Navya-Nyāya as a meta-language. The classroom was training habits of reading as much as transmitting doctrines. Such habits were portable into poetics, jurisprudence, ritual exegesis and theology.

The scholastic field: disciplines overlapped rather than standing in isolation



A scholar could move across disciplines; institutional history should not mistake modern departmental boundaries for medieval ones.

Figure 170 — Overlapping disciplines in the Sanskrit scholastic field

43.17 Ritual, jyotiṣa and practical learned expertise

Not all Sanskrit expertise took the form of philosophical commentary. Ritual specialists, calendar makers, astrologers and scholars of jyotiṣa operated within learned economies that connected textual competence to recurring social needs. Determining ritual times, interpreting calendrical cycles, preparing horoscopes or adjudicating ritual procedure could give a scholar a public role beyond the advanced philosophical circle. The surviving evidence is uneven, and later professional categories should not be projected backward unchanged. Nevertheless, the broader point is secure: Sanskrit learning was sustained because it linked multiple kinds of specialized knowledge to households, temples, courts and life-cycle practices. The scholastic world was therefore socially embedded even when its most celebrated texts appear abstract.

43.18 Access, hierarchy and the danger of retrospective caste projection

Advanced Sanskrit learning was shaped by social hierarchy, especially by gender, lineage, ritual status and access to patrons or teacher households. But the categories used to describe that hierarchy must be period-

specific. In particular, this project does not project “Śrotiya” backward as a fixed medieval Maithil Brahmin sub-caste; the Panji-based chronology adopted in this volume places its emergence as a distinct sub-caste around 1800 CE. Medieval scholarly titles, ritual reputations and lineages therefore cannot simply be translated into later sub-caste labels. The same caution applies to assumptions that every person called paṇḍita, miśra or upādhyāya occupied an identical social position. Institutional history should reconstruct access from contemporary evidence rather than making a later social taxonomy do medieval work.

43.19 Women and the limits of the scholastic archive

The surviving Sanskrit scholastic archive is overwhelmingly male-authored and male-genealogized. That fact is evidence about preservation and institutional access, but it should not be inflated into proof that women possessed no learned agency. Women could participate in elite households, ritual economies, patronage and vernacular knowledge transmission even when advanced śāstric authorship remained difficult to document. The correct historical response is neither to invent female philosophers to fill a gap nor to treat archival silence as total social absence. Instead, the chapter marks the asymmetry and asks where other evidence might survive: donor records, manuscript ownership notes, household correspondence, vernacular narratives or later family histories. The gendered shape of the archive is itself an institutional fact.

43.20 Knowledge villages, scholarly households and spatial clustering

Mithila’s intellectual geography is often narrated through villages associated with famous paṇḍitas. Some associations may rest on strong genealogical or textual evidence; others survive mainly through local memory, place names or commemorative sites. Spatial clustering is historically plausible because pupils benefit when several teachers, manuscript owners and debating partners live within travelling distance. Marriage and kinship could further stabilize scholarly lineages. Yet a modern memorial mound or “dih” should not be treated as self-authenticating proof of a medieval academy. The strongest map is layered: one symbol for sites securely named in manuscripts or dated texts, another for early historical testimony, and another for later memory. Such a map would reveal an intellectual landscape without pretending that all points carry equal evidentiary weight.

43.21 Oiniwar Mithila and the density of learned culture

The fourteenth to sixteenth centuries stand out because political, literary and philosophical evidence converges on Mithila as a dense centre of Sanskrit learning. Pankaj Jha’s study of the fifteenth-century literary world emphasizes the vibrancy of this milieu, while histories of Navya-Nyāya document major teachers and commentary traditions. Court patronage, local scholarly households and regional mobility reinforced one another. The resulting culture was not purely Sanskritic: Maithili literary production, Avahaṭṭa, ritual performance and growing interaction with Persianate political forms coexisted with śāstric work. This is precisely why “Sanskrit learning” should be understood as one powerful institutional strand in a multilingual society rather than as a total description of culture.

43.22 The later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura inside the scholastic-courtly world

Within this project’s governing two-Vidyāpati framework, the fifteenth-century Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura belongs to the Oiniwar-associated world of Sanskrit and Avahaṭṭa composition, documentary practice and courtly knowledge. Works conventionally associated with this later figure, including Kīrtilatā, Kīrtipatākā, Puruṣaparīkṣā, Gorakṣavijaya and Likhanāvalī, are therefore discussed as evidence for a learned environment in which Sanskrit expertise interacted with political ethics, scribal practice and vernacularizing literary forms.

This profile must not be conflated with the earlier Mahākavi Vidyāpati of the Maithili Padāvalī tradition adopted elsewhere in this volume. The distinction is methodologically important in Chapter 43 because otherwise the history of scholastic institutions would be made to rest on a composite biography rather than separately analyzed historical contexts.

43.23 Pakṣadhara and the mature commentary culture

Pakṣadhara Miśra, also known in the Navya-Nyāya tradition as Jayadeva, represents the mature phase of Mithila's post-Gaṅgeśa commentary culture. His work on *Tattvacintāmaṇi* became a major point of reference, and later histories connect his teaching reputation with students from Bengal. The significance is not biographical celebrity alone. A scholar becomes institutionally important when later authors must position themselves relative to his readings. Commentary creates a chain of intellectual obligation: a pupil may reject a teacher's argument yet still transmit the framework in which the disagreement makes sense. That mechanism explains how a local teaching centre can generate a transregional school.

43.24 Student mobility between Mithila and Bengal

By the late medieval period, the history of Navya-Nyāya cannot be written within one region. Traditions of scholars travelling from Bengal to study with Mithila teachers, followed by the growth of Navadvīpa as a major centre of logic, indicate a powerful east-Indian corridor of intellectual mobility. The exact biographies of individual students require source criticism, especially when later narratives supply dramatic details. But the larger shift is well supported by the literary history of the school: texts, technical vocabulary and problems associated with Mithila became central to Bengal's scholastic institutions. Mobility did not simply transfer a finished package. Students and later commentators transformed what they learned, creating new centres of authority.

43.25 Raghunātha Śīromaṇi and the problem of heroic biographies

Raghunātha Śīromaṇi's later fame makes him a magnet for stories about precocious intelligence, arduous travel and intellectual victory. Such narratives are culturally valuable because they show what later communities admired in a scholar: memory, wit, disciplined reasoning and success in debate. But heroic biography is not the same as a contemporary register. Historians should separate securely datable works and teacher-commentary relationships from anecdotes whose earliest textual witnesses may be much later. Doing so does not diminish Raghunātha's importance. It clarifies the mechanism by which institutional memory turns scholarship into exemplary life stories. The legends themselves become evidence for the social prestige of logic.

43.26 From Mithila to Navadvīpa: relocation, not disappearance

Older histories sometimes describe a "decline" of Nyāya in Mithila as Navadvīpa rose. The language of decline can obscure what actually moved. A major centre of innovation and commentary became increasingly associated with Bengal, but Sanskrit learning in Mithila did not vanish. Jurisprudence, ritual studies, grammar, philosophy and later scholastic traditions continued. Intellectual geography is dynamic: one discipline can shift its leading commentarial centre while teacher households and manuscript cultures remain active elsewhere. The more accurate model is redistribution. Methods developed in Mithila became part of a larger eastern Indian scholastic world and were elaborated in new settings.

43.27 Nepal and the preservation-circulation interface

The Nepal connection matters to scholastic history in at least two ways. First, political and literary networks linked Mithila and the Nepal Valley during the medieval period, creating routes along which scholars, patrons and texts could move. Second, Nepalese manuscript collections have preserved materials crucial to the history of Sanskrit and Maithili literature. Preservation geography, however, must not be mistaken for composition geography: a manuscript found in Nepal may copy a work composed elsewhere, and a Mithila text may survive only because it travelled. Chapter 39 established this distinction for scripts and manuscripts; the same evidence rule governs scholastic institutions.

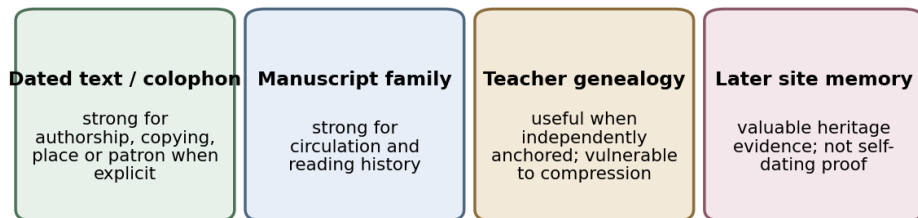
43.28 Anga and Vajji in the wider Sanskrit knowledge network

The documentation for Sanskrit scholastic institutions is densest for Mithila proper, especially in the Nyāya and jurisprudential traditions. Anga and the Vajji zone participated in the same wider Gangetic networks through pilgrimage, courts, monasteries, markets and routes of manuscript circulation, but the evidence should not be made artificially symmetrical. A responsible regional history states where the archive is strong and where it is thin. Bhagalpur-Champa, Vaishali and other centres have long intellectual histories, yet Chapter 43 does not invent a parallel Navya-Nyāya academy merely to balance the map. Instead, it asks how Sanskrit texts and specialists travelled across the broader region and where future manuscript or epigraphic work could refine that picture.

43.29 An evidence hierarchy for reconstructing a school

A strong reconstruction begins with dated or datable texts, manuscripts, colophons and explicit teacher-pupil references. Next come contemporaneous or near-contemporaneous court records, inscriptions and cross-references in other authors. Later scholastic histories and genealogies are valuable when their claims can be checked against this earlier evidence. Local heritage memory, commemorative sites and oral traditions are important for the history of remembrance but should not silently supply dates that the earlier archive lacks. The same hierarchy applies to institutional practices: a named examination, prohibition or academy should be dated from evidence, not from the antiquity of the tradition that now tells its story.

Evidence firewall for reconstructing scholastic institutions



Best reconstruction = convergence among independent evidence types.

Tradition may guide research, but it should not silently replace dated evidence.

Figure 171 — Evidence firewall for reconstructing scholastic institutions

43.30 Conclusion: a distributed institution of precision

Mithila's Sanskrit scholastic achievement is best understood as a distributed institution of precision. Its strength lay not in a single university bureaucracy but in the durable interaction of teachers, pupils, manuscripts, commentaries, patrons, debates and mobile reputations. Gaṅgeśa's *Tattvacintāmaṇi* became a curricular engine because it generated problems that demanded teaching and produced further writing. Navya-Nyāya methods crossed into jurisprudence and other disciplines; courtly and household support gave scholars material footholds; travel linked Mithila with Bengal and Nepal; and later memory converted famous lineages into regional heritage. This model explains both resilience and change. A centre could move without the tradition disappearing, and a text could become more institutionally powerful as it travelled farther from its place of composition. The history of learning is therefore a history of relations sustained across generations.

Table 43.1 — Evidence domains for Sanskrit learning and scholastic institutions

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Dated texts and colophons	Authorship, copying, patrons, places and chronology when explicit	A surviving copy may be later than composition; silence is not proof of absence
Commentaries and subcommentaries	Curriculum, problems considered canonical, intellectual succession	Textual dependence does not always equal direct teacher–pupil contact
Teacher–pupil references	Mobility, pedagogy and scholarly networks	Later genealogies may compress or idealize relationships
Court records and patronage	Material support, commissions, public status of scholars	Patronage does not determine every argument in a technical work
Manuscript materiality	Use, correction, copying, ownership and circulation	Preservation place is not automatically composition place
Debate and examination traditions	Norms of public competence and credentialing	Named procedures require independent chronological anchoring
Local sites and heritage memory	History of remembrance; clues for field research	A memorial site cannot date itself or prove a medieval academy
Cross-regional textual reception	Movement from Mithila to Bengal, Nepal and beyond	Reception history must not erase regional transformation

PART VI

MATERIAL CULTURE AND THE ARTS

Chapters 44–51

Chapter 44 — Architecture and Settlement

Architecture in Mithila, Vajji and Anga survives unevenly. Massive brick ramparts, stupas, monasteries, rock-cut shrines and temple fragments are visible; timber houses, thatch, fences, workshops and periodic markets are far less so. This chapter therefore joins architecture to settlement archaeology. It asks how water, rivers, routes, fortification, religious institutions, craft production and political authority organized built space, and it keeps excavated sequence separate from legendary or retrospective identification. The result is a social history of built landscapes rather than a catalogue of monuments.

44.1 Architecture as social history, not a catalogue of monuments

Architecture records labour, resources, political authority, religious practice and everyday habits in material form. Yet the surviving record of Mithila, Vajji and Anga is uneven. Monumental brickwork, fortifications and religious structures are more likely to survive than timber houses, thatched roofs, fences or temporary market sheds. A history based only on standing monuments would therefore exaggerate the architectural weight of elites and institutions. This chapter treats architecture together with settlement: where people lived, how water and routes shaped habitation, how defensive works reorganized space, how monasteries and temples concentrated resources, and how ordinary building materials disappeared through rebuilding and floodplain erosion. The central method is archaeological rather than typological. A plan, wall, mound, tank or sculptural fragment is interpreted first in its excavated or documented context. Later tradition may preserve valuable memory, but a legendary name does not automatically establish the original function or date of a structure.

44.2 The alluvial plain as an architectural environment

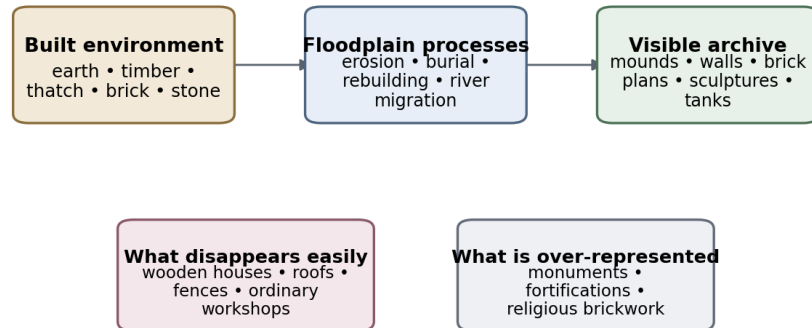
North Bihar and the adjoining Tarai are difficult landscapes for durable settlement. Rivers migrate, floodplains accrete and erode, high water tables complicate excavation, and brick can be robbed repeatedly for later construction. These processes affect both how people built and what archaeologists can recover. Raised habitation, embankment-like edges, drainage, tanks and the selection of relatively stable ground were practical responses to water risk. At the same time, rivers were not simply hazards. They supplied transport corridors, fisheries, silted agricultural land and connections to markets. The architectural history of the region therefore cannot be separated from hydrology. A settlement that appears isolated on a modern road map may originally have been oriented toward a river channel that later shifted. Conversely, a large mound beside a present river cannot be assumed to have had the same relationship to water in antiquity. Reconstructing settlement requires geomorphology as well as masonry.

44.3 Preservation bias: earth, timber and thatch versus brick and stone

The everyday built environment was probably dominated for long periods by materials that survive poorly. Earth walls can slump into indistinct layers; timber posts leave only stains or post-holes; bamboo and thatch usually vanish; floors may be renewed until earlier surfaces are difficult to isolate. Fired brick, stone thresholds, terracotta plaques and substantial ramparts survive more visibly and therefore attract disproportionate historical attention. This preservation bias is especially severe in wet alluvial conditions. It means that absence of a stone house is not evidence for architectural poverty, and the survival of a temple wall is not proof that religious buildings occupied most of the built landscape. Archaeological interpretation must work from traces of surfaces, hearths, drains, storage, craft debris and spatial organization as well as

from walls. Figure 172 summarizes this filter: what survives most clearly is not necessarily what most people inhabited most of the time.

Architecture survives through a preservation filter



Settlement history must reconstruct the missing everyday fabric, not equate survival with original importance.

Figure 172 — Architecture survives through a preservation filter

44.4 Settlement archaeology and the problem of historical names

Ancient and medieval place-names often outlive the physical arrangements to which they once referred, while modern villages may preserve, relocate or reinvent older names. The problem is acute in famous landscapes such as Mithila and Vaishali, where literary and religious memory is exceptionally strong. Historical geography therefore requires several steps: identify the archaeological mound or structural complex; establish its occupational sequence; compare inscriptions, coins and datable artefacts; and only then evaluate textual or traditional names. The procedure protects the history from circular reasoning. A place is not dated because a story names it, and a story is not proved ancient because a modern mound carries the same name. This does not diminish local tradition. On the contrary, it makes tradition itself a historical source whose chronology can be studied. The distinction becomes essential at sites associated with palaces, assemblies, royal capitals or epic figures, where later commemoration can easily be mistaken for excavation.

44.5 Vaishali as a long-lived settlement landscape

Vaishali provides one of the clearest examples of a settlement whose archaeological life extends across many political and religious phases. Excavations and protected remains include fortification, stupas, monasteries and foundations, while artefacts range across early historic and later periods. The importance of this evidence lies less in assigning every structure to a famous event than in demonstrating repeated occupation and spatial investment. Defensive works were repaired; religious monuments accumulated; water and circulation routes helped sustain habitation; later communities reused earlier spaces. Such continuity complicates any attempt to draw a single “plan of ancient Vaishali.” What archaeology reveals is a palimpsest. The settlement was not frozen in the republican age, and later Gupta, post-Gupta and medieval activity must be allowed its own history. This long duration also explains why structural remains from different centuries can stand close together without belonging to one architectural programme.

44.6 Raja Vishal ka Garh: fortification before political identification

The mound known as Raja Vishal ka Garh is frequently connected in popular description with an ancient assembly. Archaeologically, the more secure observation concerns fortification. Recent excavation across its ramparts, as summarized by the Archaeological Survey of India, has identified multiple defence-wall phases assigned to the Śuṅga, Kuṣāṇa and early Gupta periods, while finds from the broader site extend from the early historic era into much later centuries. This is substantial evidence for a defended and repeatedly used enclosure. It is not, by itself, proof of the precise constitutional function of every enclosed structure. The distinction is important. Fortification tells us about labour mobilization, boundary-making and investment in protected space; political texts may suggest forms of assembly; but the two evidence streams must converge before a specific building can be named an assembly hall. Architectural history is strongest when it resists the temptation to turn a secure wall into an insecure institution.

44.7 Stupas, monasteries and the making of sacred settlement

Buddhist monuments around Vaishali show how sacred architecture could reorganize settlement space. A relic stupa drew memory, pilgrimage and maintenance to a fixed point; monasteries required cells, water, storage, access and support from surrounding producers. Such complexes were not architecturally isolated from the economy. Construction demanded brick-making, transport and specialized labour; continued occupation required food and repair; pilgrimage created routes and periodic concentrations of people. Over time, sacred sites could survive even when surrounding settlement patterns changed. Their visibility today can therefore distort the ancient balance between religious and domestic architecture. The appropriate question is not merely where the stupa stood, but what network allowed it to function. Religious building becomes social history when connected to donors, craftsmen, agricultural surplus, roads, river crossings and the practical routines of residents and visitors.

44.8 Balirajgarh: a fortified site and the value of construction sequence

Balirajgarh in Madhubani district is one of the region's most important fortified archaeological sites. The Archaeological Survey of India's 1962–63 excavation is especially useful because it documented construction rather than relying on the site's traditional name. High groundwater prevented excavators from reaching natural soil, but sections through the defence wall revealed a mud-brick core with brick encasement and several phases of reinforcement and repair. The wall was battered rather than vertical, a practical choice for a massive earthen-brick defence. This sequence demonstrates sustained investment in fortification and changing engineering responses. It does not settle every question about the settlement's identity or political status. Proposals equating Balirajgarh with an ancient capital remain hypotheses to be tested against chronology, material culture and regional settlement patterns. Its strongest contribution to this chapter is architectural: earth and fired brick were combined to create large defensive works on the alluvial plain.

44.9 Fortification as labour, authority and risk management

A rampart is not simply a military object. Building and maintaining a large wall requires organized labour, access to earth or brick, planning of gates and drainage, and decisions about what space is worth enclosing. Fortification can therefore indicate political concentration even when the name of the ruling authority is uncertain. It also reflects risk: warfare, raiding, control of trade, prestige competition or the need to manage movement through gateways. In flood-prone country, raised defensive works could interact with drainage and topography, although such hydraulic functions must be demonstrated site by site rather than assumed. Comparing Balirajgarh, Vaishali and Simraongarh shows why one label cannot explain all walls. Their dates,

materials and settlement contexts differ. The meaningful comparison concerns construction sequence, enclosed area, gate organization and relation to occupation, not a generic category of “fort.”

44.10 Village architecture: the largest missing archive

Most people did not live inside monumental complexes. They lived in villages and dispersed settlements whose architecture was frequently rebuilt with perishable materials. The ordinary house compound may have included sleeping rooms, kitchens, cattle spaces, grain storage, courtyards, fences and work areas whose archaeological signatures are subtle. Seasonal repair could erase earlier wall lines while preserving the continuity of a household plot. Because such remains are less spectacular, they are often underrepresented in published architectural histories. Ethnographic observation of later Mithila compounds can suggest questions—about courtyards, gendered work spaces, thresholds or cattle—but it cannot be projected unchanged into the medieval period. Archaeology must establish each feature independently. The most responsible reconstruction therefore accepts uncertainty: the monumental record is detailed, while the domestic record is fragmentary, even though domestic architecture formed the numerical majority of the built environment.

Settlement as a connected ecological system

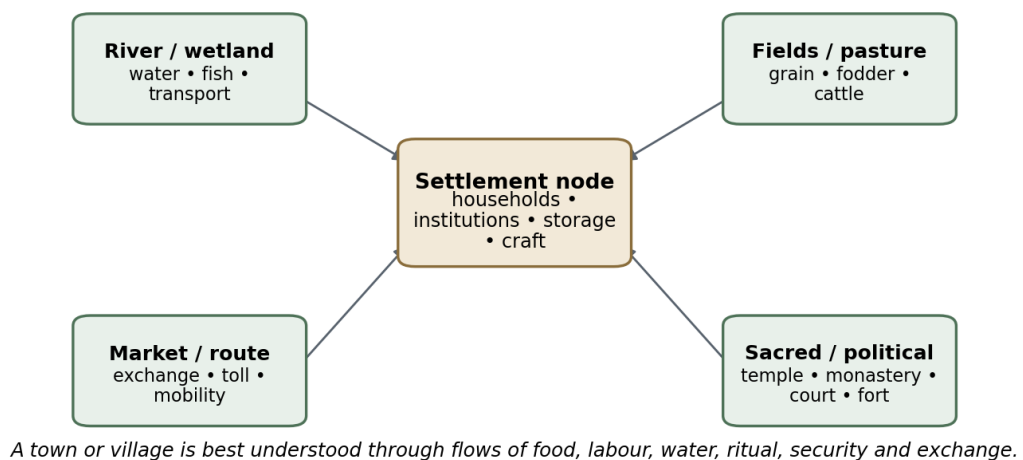


Figure 173 — Settlement as a connected ecological system

44.11 Brick economies and standardization without uniformity

Fired brick is one of the most persistent architectural materials of the middle and lower Ganga plains. Its use implies clay extraction, moulding, fuel, firing, transport and skilled laying, and therefore links buildings to an economy of production. Brick dimensions can contribute to chronology when measured in secure contexts, but they should not be used mechanically: reused bricks, local variation and repairs complicate typological dating. Large religious and defensive projects could stimulate production on a scale far beyond household building. At the same time, brick architecture was not uniform. Mud mortar, lime plaster, terracotta facing and stone architectural members could be combined differently according to function and period. The social question is therefore not whether a society “knew brick,” but who could mobilize enough labour and fuel to use it extensively, and how the resulting structures were maintained or cannibalized by later settlements.

44.12 Anga's riverine and rocky architectural zone

The eastern zone of Anga differs materially from the flatter northern plains. Around Bhagalpur and Kahalgaon, the Ganga interacts with rocky outcrops and hills, creating architectural possibilities not available everywhere in Mithila. The Archaeological Survey of India records a monolithic rock-cut shrine in Bhagalpur district, tentatively placed no later than the ninth century, as well as rock sculptures and cave features in the wider district. Such remains demonstrate that regional architecture was not exclusively brick-built. Stone could be carved in situ where geology permitted, while the river connected these sites to wider routes. This variation cautions against imagining a single "Mithila style" extending mechanically across Mithila, Vajji and Anga. Material culture follows geology as well as political history. A social history of architecture must therefore compare subregions before synthesizing them.

44.13 Vikramshila: a planned monastic complex in Anga

The excavated remains at Vikramshila near Antichak provide the clearest large-scale architectural plan in the Anga zone. The Archaeological Survey of India describes a square monastery with 208 cells arranged around a courtyard and a central cruciform stupa; excavation also revealed gateways, votive structures and a building interpreted as a library. This plan is important because it spatially organizes a resident scholarly community. Cells, circulation, worship and teaching were integrated within a single complex, while the surrounding landscape supplied food, water, labour and transport. The monument therefore joins architectural and intellectual history: Chapter 17 treated learned communities, while this chapter asks how architecture made such communities physically possible. Vikramshila also warns against treating institutions as disembodied texts. Manuscripts, teachers and ritual required walls, roofs, storage, pathways and continual maintenance.

44.14 The central stupa and the choreography of movement

The cruciform stupa at Vikramshila structured movement as well as vision. Its central position within the monastic square made it an architectural focus from multiple directions. Circumambulatory paths, projecting chambers and terracotta decoration transformed religious practice into patterned movement through built space. Such architecture did not merely contain ritual; it choreographed it. The relationship between cell and stupa also created a daily spatial rhythm between residence and devotion. Similar questions should be asked of other religious sites even when plans are less complete: where did worshippers enter, what route did they follow, what could they see, and which spaces were restricted? Architecture becomes historically meaningful when plan is translated into action. The spatial discipline of a monastery differed from that of a market, fort or household, and those differences reveal distinct forms of community.

44.15 Terracotta as architecture, image and social archive

Terracotta plaques at Vikramshila remind us that architectural surfaces can preserve social imagery. Decorative programmes may include religious figures, animals, hunting scenes and other motifs that bring elite, devotional and everyday themes into the same visual field. Terracotta is especially important in brick-building regions because it allows moulded or carved surface articulation without requiring abundant building stone. Yet a plaque is not a photograph of ordinary life. Its scenes are selected, stylized and placed within a religious architectural programme. Their value lies in the conjunction of material, imagery and location. Clay, firing and attachment techniques belong to craft history; iconography belongs to religious and artistic history; placement on a stupa belongs to architectural history. Treating these together avoids separating "art" from the built environment that gave it meaning.

44.16 Temple architecture and the danger of survivor typologies

Temples in the region survive in radically different states: standing buildings, rebuilt shrines, isolated stone images, architectural fragments and remembered sacred places. A modern temple may occupy an old sacred site while incorporating little or none of the earlier fabric. Conversely, a medieval image may have been moved from its original building. Typological study of śikhara, doorway, moulding or plan can be useful, but only when the surviving element is securely contextualized. Vijayakanta Mishra's survey of Mithila art and architecture collected many regional examples and remains valuable as a descriptive starting point, yet archaeological dating and fabric analysis must control historical claims. The chapter therefore treats temples as layered sites. Ritual continuity, architectural continuity and sculptural continuity may coincide, but they are not the same thing.

44.17 Stone sculpture without standing temples

The abundance of stone religious sculpture in parts of Bihar and Mithila does not imply that equally numerous stone temples once stood intact. Images could be housed in brick shrines, transferred during rebuilding, recovered from fields or tanks, or reused in later structures. This distinction is essential because art history often preserves objects more successfully than architecture. A sculpture's style may provide a relative date, but its present shrine may be much later. The architectural historian must therefore record provenance carefully: excavated location, reported findspot, current location and any evidence of reuse. The same rule applies to doorjambs, pillars and carved blocks. Spolia can reveal the existence of earlier building traditions while simultaneously obscuring their original plans. Material survival is a chain of movements, not a frozen site inventory.

44.18 Water architecture: tanks, ponds, wells and settlement durability

Water structures are among the most socially consequential forms of architecture in the region. Tanks and ponds supplied drinking water, livestock, ritual needs, fisheries, bathing and sometimes construction material from excavated clay. Their embankments also reorganized neighbourhood space. In a monsoon climate, the challenge was not simply obtaining water but storing, draining and separating uses. Archaeological attention to tanks can reveal settlement planning that monumental surveys miss. At Vikramshila, water was integrated with the monastic complex; at other settlements, ponds became anchors of habitation and sacred geography. Later maintenance can preserve a water body while transforming its banks, so present form cannot be assumed ancient. Nevertheless, the persistence of water features makes them important clues for long-term settlement stability. A history of architecture that excludes ponds and drains would omit some of the most heavily used constructed spaces.

44.19 Roads, river crossings and the architecture of movement

Settlements depend on movement. Gates, ghats, ferries, raised paths and market streets connect architecture to regional exchange. On the Ganga and its tributaries, river crossings could be more important than land roads; seasonal changes in water level altered routes and landing places. The archaeological signature of a road is often faint compared with a wall, yet the orientation of gates, mounds and religious sites can suggest circulation patterns. Historical texts and later route surveys may help, but route continuity must be tested rather than presumed. Figure 173 treats settlement as a node within flows of water, food, labour, ritual and exchange. This network approach prevents the architectural plan from being read as a self-contained object. A monastery without supply routes, a market without access, or a fort without controlled movement is only half explained.

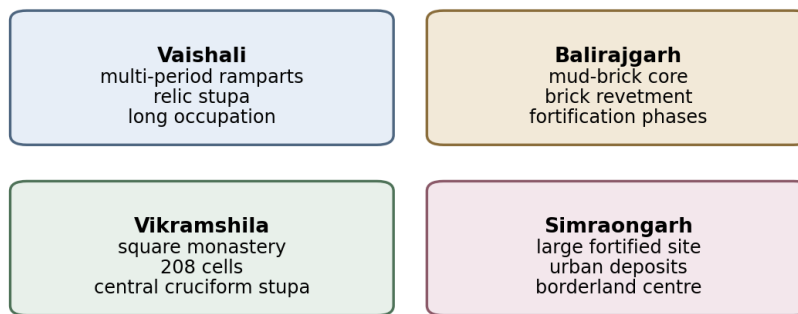
44.20 Markets and periodic public space

Not all important spaces were permanently monumental. Weekly markets, fairs and festival grounds could concentrate thousands of people while leaving limited architectural residue. Temporary stalls, bamboo structures and open grounds are archaeologically elusive, yet they were central to exchange and public culture. Their locations were shaped by route intersections, river crossings, shrines and administrative centres. Later chapters will treat fairs and markets directly, but here the architectural point is methodological: permanence is not equivalent to social importance. Periodic public space challenges a monument-centred history because its infrastructure may consist of paths, shade, water access and customary plot arrangements rather than walls. When a settlement is reconstructed, open space must therefore be treated as positive evidence, not as an empty remainder between buildings.

44.21 Simraongarh: fortified urbanism in the India–Nepal borderland

Simraongarh in the Nepali Tarai is indispensable to the medieval architectural history of Mithila. Archaeological investigations by the Department of Archaeology of Nepal and an Italian mission documented a large fortified urban site through surface survey, stratigraphic sections, ceramics and scientific sampling. The work is especially valuable because the investigators emphasized that chronology remained open to revision rather than forcing all deposits into a single dynastic narrative. Simraongarh's scale, defensive works and dense archaeological landscape nevertheless demonstrate substantial urban investment in the borderland associated with Karnata power. Its position also makes a wider point: political and architectural history cannot be divided neatly by the modern India–Nepal boundary. Materials, artisans, courtly practices and religious networks moved across the Tarai long before the present frontier.

Four archaeological windows on architecture and settlement



Do not force one settlement type onto the whole region.

Compare what was defended, how movement was organized, and which activities were spatially concentrated.

Excavated plan, chronology and function must be evaluated separately at each site.

Figure 174 — Four archaeological windows on architecture and settlement

44.22 Simraongarh chronology and the discipline of uncertainty

A famous capital attracts precise stories, but archaeology often produces ranges, phases and unresolved sequences. The Simraongarh investigations explicitly noted disturbance, re-excavation and the preliminary nature of early radiocarbon and ceramic evidence. That caution should be retained. Dynastic history can provide a chronological frame for Karnata rule; archaeological layers can date occupation and rebuilding; neither should be made to say more than it can support. The appropriate question is how the fortified urban

landscape developed through time, which sectors were occupied, how the ramparts changed, and how the settlement related to surrounding routes and rural production. This discipline of uncertainty is a strength, not a weakness. It keeps future excavation capable of changing the narrative rather than forcing new evidence into an inherited story.

44.23 Courts, palaces and the problem of architectural attribution

Courtly centres must have included residences, audience spaces, storage, service quarters and defensive or ceremonial boundaries, yet palaces are often among the most confidently named and least securely demonstrated structures in later local tradition. A mound called a *rājā's* palace may indeed preserve elite occupation, but the identification requires excavation or documentary convergence. Timber superstructures and repeated rebuilding further complicate recovery. Rather than inventing palace plans, social history can proceed from firmer evidence: concentration of prestige goods, unusually substantial foundations, defensive placement, inscriptions, or texts that securely name a courtly location. The later Vidyāpati Thakkura's documentary and courtly world, discussed in Chapters 35 and 38, presupposes material settings of administration and patronage, but those texts do not automatically identify surviving walls. Literary court and excavated palace must remain separate until evidence joins them.

44.24 Karnata and Oiniwar settlement without dynastic determinism

The Karnata and Oiniwar periods altered political centres, patronage networks and learned institutions, but settlement change cannot be inferred mechanically from changes of dynasty. Villages continued across political ruptures; markets could grow for ecological or commercial reasons; religious sites could outlast their patrons. Chapter 33 reconstructed social economy from multiple evidence streams, and the same principle applies here. Architecture should be tied to dated building episodes and settlement phases, not assigned to a dynasty merely because the dates overlap. Simraongarh provides strong material evidence for a major Karnata-associated urban centre; elsewhere the record may be thinner. Oiniwar courtly culture can be studied through texts and patronage, but precise architectural attribution remains a separate question. This protects the volume from converting political chronology into an architectural template.

44.25 Sacred clusters and settlement nucleation

Temples, monasteries, shrines, tanks and pilgrimage routes can attract settlement around them, but the direction of causation varies. A shrine may be founded at an existing settlement, or settlement may intensify around an established sacred centre. Sacred clusters also accumulate chronologically: an old image, a rebuilt temple, a new pavilion and a modern road may coexist in one precinct. The historian must disentangle these layers. In Mithila, where sacred geography is dense and living traditions are strong, the temptation to treat a present cluster as a single ancient complex is particularly risky. Architectural survey should therefore document fabric, repairs, inscriptions, reused pieces and local narratives separately. The result is richer than a simple date because it reveals how communities continually remake sacred space.

44.26 Craft production and the built environment

Architecture depends on craft sectors that often leave their own settlement signatures. Brick kilns, lime preparation, carpentry, metalworking, pottery and terracotta production require fuel, water, raw material and work space. Large building projects can concentrate artisans temporarily or create durable craft quarters. Conversely, craft production may occur at settlement edges because of smoke, fire risk or access to clay. Archaeological waste—wasters, slag, kiln debris, unfinished pieces—can therefore be as informative as

finished monuments. The artistic surfaces of Vikramshila presuppose a technical infrastructure of clay preparation, moulding and firing; fortified walls presuppose mass earthmoving and brick supply. Material culture becomes social history when these invisible labour systems are restored to the narrative.

44.27 Housing, gender and household work: what architecture can and cannot show

Domestic space structured cooking, childcare, storage, craft, animal care and privacy, all of which had gendered dimensions. Yet the archaeological record rarely labels a room “women’s space” or “men’s space.” Functional interpretation must therefore proceed from installations, artefact concentrations, access patterns and comparative evidence rather than stereotype. Later ethnographic house forms can generate hypotheses about courtyards or secluded zones, but they cannot be projected unchanged into early or medieval periods. This is particularly important in a region where modern social classification has often been read backward. Architecture may reveal differential access and work areas, but social identity must be independently established. The chapter therefore uses domestic space to ask questions rather than to manufacture certainty.

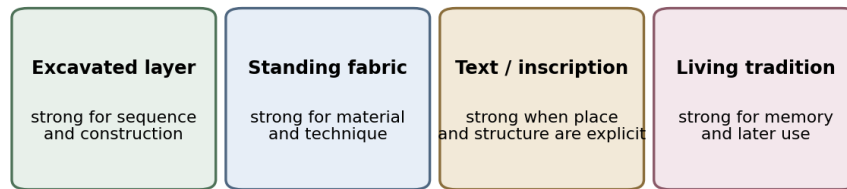
44.28 Settlement hierarchy: hamlet, village, market, monastery, town and capital

Historical landscapes contain settlements of different scales and functions. A large fortified site should not make surrounding villages disappear from analysis, and a monastery may function as a major economic node without being a city in the same sense as a political capital. Settlement hierarchy can be reconstructed through site size, density, craft specialization, imported goods, fortification, institutional architecture and route position. The categories are analytical, not rigid. A village can acquire a market; a shrine can generate a town; a political centre can shrink while remaining sacred. Figure 174 compares four sites precisely to resist a single model. Vaishali, Balirajgarh, Vikramshila and Simraongarh preserve different combinations of defence, residence, ritual and institutional planning. Their differences are historically productive.

44.29 Archaeological method: survey before reconstruction

Future research on Mithila–Vajji–Anga architecture will benefit most from systematic landscape survey tied to excavation, remote sensing, ceramic study, archaeobotany and geomorphology. The region contains many mounds and reused architectural fragments whose relationships remain poorly understood. Mapping site distributions can clarify route corridors and settlement hierarchies before spectacular identifications are proposed. Scientific dating should be prioritized where secure samples exist; brick and ceramic typologies should remain anchored to stratigraphy; oral history should be recorded as evidence of memory and site use. The key methodological principle is convergence. Figure 175 formalizes the evidence firewall used throughout this volume: excavated sequence, standing fabric, texts or inscriptions, and living tradition must be distinguished before they are combined. This approach leaves room for discovery and protects the narrative against inherited certainty.

Evidence firewall for architectural history



Best identification = convergence among independent evidence types.

A traditional name may guide excavation, but it cannot by itself date a wall, palace, assembly hall or temple.

Figure 175 — Evidence firewall for architectural history

44.30 Conclusion: built landscapes as changing social systems

Architecture and settlement in Mithila, Vajji and Anga were products of ecology, labour, authority, religious practice and exchange. The alluvial plains favoured continual rebuilding and erased much domestic fabric; fortified sites such as Vaishali and Balirajgarh reveal large investments in protected space; Vikramshila demonstrates how a planned monastic complex organized residence, worship and learning; Simraongarh places medieval urbanism across the modern India–Nepal border; the Bhagalpur zone adds rock-cut and stone traditions to a predominantly brick-built history. No single architectural style or settlement type defines the region. What unites the evidence is adaptation: to rivers, materials, routes, institutions and changing political economies. The most reliable history therefore begins from construction sequence and spatial function, then connects them to social life. It does not begin from a famous name and search for walls to fit it.

Table 44.1 — Evidence domains for architecture and settlement

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Stratified excavation	Construction sequence, rebuilding, occupation and abandonment	Limited exposure may not represent the whole settlement
Ramparts and walls	Material, engineering, enclosed space and labour investment	Function and political attribution require separate evidence
Brick dimensions and masonry	Technical practice and relative chronology when stratified	Reuse and local variation can mislead typological dating
Domestic traces	Floors, hearths, storage, posts and activity areas	Perishable construction is easily erased or under-excavated
Religious complexes	Spatial organization of ritual, residence and patronage	Monument survival can exaggerate religious share of built space
Water structures	Storage, drainage, ritual use and neighbourhood organization	Present form may reflect repeated later repair
Routes, gates and ghats	Movement, market access and controlled circulation	River migration can shift original relationships
Texts and inscriptions	Names, patrons, functions and dates when explicit	A literary place-name does not identify a surviving wall by itself

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Local tradition	Memory, sacred continuity and clues for field research	Tradition is not self-dating archaeological proof
Regional survey	Settlement hierarchy, clustering and route corridors	Surface visibility varies with cultivation and geomorphology

Chapter 45 — Dress, Textiles and Ornament

Dress history in Mithila, Vajji and Anga survives through an unequal archive. Cloth normally decays, while stone beads, shell bangles, terracotta ornaments, production tools, sculpture and words endure. This chapter therefore reconstructs clothing and adornment by triangulating archaeology, art and text, with a chronology firewall against projecting later fashions or the modern reputation of Bhagalpur silk backward into periods for which continuity has not been demonstrated.

45.1 Dress as material culture and social history

Dress is not a decorative appendix to social history. Cloth, jewellery, hairstyles and bodily adornment connect production, gender, labour, status, ritual, climate and exchange. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, however, the archive is radically uneven: textiles themselves rarely survive in the humid alluvial environment, while beads, bangles, shell, terracotta and stone images survive far more readily. A historically responsible chapter must therefore resist reconstructing a complete costume from a single sculpture or a later ethnographic custom. The task is to combine archaeological small finds, images, texts and evidence for production while keeping the date and social setting of each source visible.

45.2 The preservation problem: cloth disappears, ornament survives

Most garments were made from organic fibres that decay quickly unless preserved in exceptional conditions. Their absence from excavated deposits does not mean that textile production was unimportant; it means that the evidentiary burden shifts to tools, impressions, textual vocabulary and visual representation. Jewellery has the opposite bias. Stone beads, shell bangles, terracotta pendants and metal objects can survive for centuries, making adornment appear more archaeologically prominent than cloth. The resulting archive must be read as a preservation filter, not a direct inventory of what people valued or wore in proportion to surviving objects.



The archive is richest where the original costume is most incomplete.

Figure 176 — Dress survives through an unequal archaeological filter

45.3 Fibres, fabrics and the danger of naming local production

South Asian texts and later material studies identify cotton, silk and wool among major textile fibres, and the early-fourteenth-century Varna-ratnakara names a wide range of fabrics and fine stuffs. Yet a named cloth

in a Mithila text does not prove that its fibre was grown, spun, woven and finished locally. Some fabrics could have been imported as finished goods; others could have arrived as yarn or raw material. The safest reconstruction therefore distinguishes fibre vocabulary from production geography. Local production must be established from tools, occupational evidence, workshop traces, fiscal records or repeated documentary references rather than from a literary list alone.

45.4 Spinning as the archaeological doorway into textile production

At Vaishali and related excavated contexts, spindle whorls and other small objects are especially valuable because they point to textile production without requiring the cloth itself to survive. A spindle whorl indicates spinning activity, but it does not by itself identify the fibre, the gender of the spinner, the scale of production or whether the work served a household or market. These distinctions matter. Spinning could be dispersed through households even where weaving was more specialized, and archaeological tools can move between contexts through reuse or dumping. The evidence is therefore strongest for the presence of fibre-processing activity, weaker for the organization of the labour that produced it.

45.5 Vaishali: beads, bangles and the archaeology of adornment

Excavation reports from Vaishali provide unusually concrete evidence for personal adornment. Finds include bangles and beads made from terracotta and several stones, shell or conch objects, ear ornaments, pendants and related small finds. Such materials demonstrate that adornment was not dependent on precious metal. They also show a spectrum of production in which inexpensive moulded or fired objects could coexist with semi-precious stones and more costly materials. The archaeological record thus cautions against equating jewellery with elite wealth alone. Adornment could be socially widespread even when materials, workmanship and quantity varied sharply.

45.6 Bead materials and exchange networks

Crystal, agate, carnelian, amethyst and other stone beads reported from Vaishali make adornment relevant to trade history. Some raw materials had to move across substantial distances before being shaped or worn. A bead therefore has two histories: the social history of the body and the economic history of material circulation. Yet provenance must not be guessed from colour or stone name alone. Without compositional analysis and production debris, archaeology may not show where a bead was drilled or polished. The secure conclusion is that ornament connected Vaishali to wider material networks, not that every finished object was produced at the site.

45.7 Shell and conch: riverine plains linked to wider ecologies

Shell bangles and conch objects are important because their raw material is not generated by the inland alluvial plain in the same manner as clay. Their presence therefore points toward exchange and specialized working. Shell may have carried ritual meanings as well as decorative value, but not every fragment can be assigned a ritual function. The same material could be shaped into ornaments, containers, ritual objects or other implements. Where shell jewellery occurs with stone and terracotta adornment, the assemblage reveals a material hierarchy more complex than a simple division between precious and non-precious objects.

45.8 Terracotta ornament and the economics of imitation

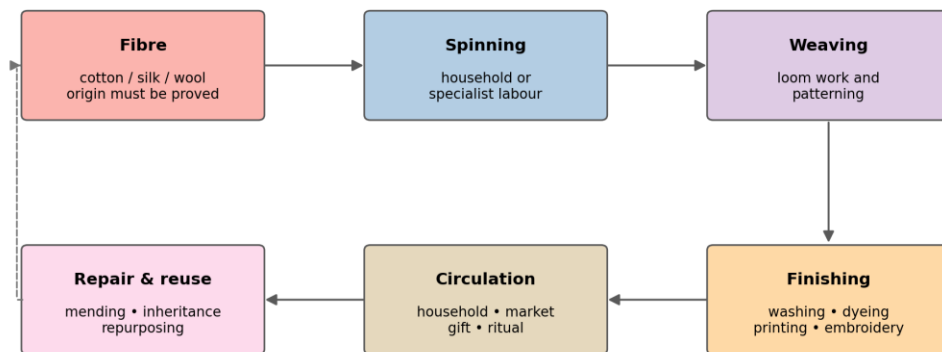
Terracotta could reproduce the visual effect of more costly materials at a fraction of their material cost. Earrings, beads, bangles and pendants in fired clay show how ornament could be multiplied through

moulding and local manufacture. This does not mean terracotta was merely a poor substitute. Colour, surface treatment, shape and symbolic form could give clay objects their own aesthetic value. The larger historical point is that fashion and bodily display were not restricted to metal-rich elites. Technologies of replication allowed visual styles to circulate more broadly than precious materials themselves.

45.9 Metals and precious materials: wealth, ritual and preservation bias

Gold, silver, copper alloys and gemstones occupy a disproportionate place in literary descriptions and museum collections because they were valuable, durable and often preserved as ritual deposits or curated objects. Their survival can exaggerate elite visibility. Metal ornaments could be melted, recast, stolen or inherited, so archaeological absence may reflect recycling rather than poverty. Conversely, the presence of a precious object at a sacred site may record donation rather than ordinary dress. The chapter therefore treats precious ornament as evidence of wealth and ritual economies only when find context supports that interpretation.

Textiles were processes, not only finished garments



Archaeology may preserve only one or two stages of this life cycle.

Figure 177 — Textiles as a production, circulation and reuse cycle

45.10 Terracotta figurines: dress seen through stylized bodies

Terracotta figurines from Vaishali include figures with applied jewellery, heavy earrings, breast chains, hip chains and elaborate head treatment. Such images are a valuable visual archive, but they are not photographs. Figurines may embody religious, auspicious, erotic or conventional types, and artisans could exaggerate ornaments that needed to remain legible at small scale. The correct use of the evidence is comparative: repeated forms can reveal what kinds of bodily adornment were visually intelligible, while excavation context and chronology help constrain the interpretation. They cannot establish how frequently a particular ornament was worn in everyday life.

45.11 Gupta and post-Gupta sculpture: drape, body and convention

Stone sculpture from eastern India between the Gupta and Pala phases shows a changing visual vocabulary of draped cloth, girdles, scarves and jewellery. Works from Bihar and adjoining eastern regions help situate Mithila-Vajji-Anga within a broader artistic field. Yet divine and courtly images often idealize the body and costume. Transparent or clinging drapery can be an artistic convention rather than a literal record

of fabric technology. Art history is most useful here when it identifies regional and chronological conventions, then tests them against texts and archaeological objects instead of reading sculpture as direct ethnography.

45.12 Pala-Sena sculpture as a visual archive of textiles and ornament

The Pala-Sena schools of eastern Indian sculpture provide abundant evidence for how artists represented lower garments, scarves, belts, necklaces, armlets, anklets and elaborate headdresses. Shahanara Hussain's study of Pala material culture and Susan Huntington's corpus of sculpture show that Bihar formed a major part of this artistic world. The evidence is particularly strong for visual combinations: a long lower garment held by a girdle, scarves looped around the body, and layered jewellery. The limitation is equally important. Many surviving images are deities or bodhisattvas, so sacred iconography and idealized splendour may outweigh ordinary practice.

45.13 Draped garments and stitched garments should not be treated as opposites

Older costume histories sometimes narrate Indian dress as a simple transition from unstitched drapery to stitched garments. The evidence is more complicated. Draped lower garments, scarves, belts and stitched upper garments could coexist, and their social meanings changed by region, occupation and political contact. A sculpted dhoti-like lower garment does not demonstrate the absence of tailored clothing elsewhere in the same society. Conversely, a textual word that resembles a tunic cannot establish universal adoption. The historical question is one of repertoires and combinations, not a single evolutionary sequence.

45.14 Girdles, belts and the architecture of dress

Belts and girdles appear repeatedly in visual representations because they organize draped cloth and create a visible boundary at the waist. They could also become ornament in their own right through clasps, beads and pendants. In sculpture, however, the line between functional fastening and jewellery is often deliberately blurred. A richly carved girdle may belong to the iconographic language of abundance. Archaeological finds of metal fittings would provide a different class of evidence, but such objects are rarely as contextually clear as sculpted examples. Functional interpretation must therefore remain cautious.

45.15 Jewellery by body zone: a system rather than isolated objects

Necklaces, ear ornaments, armlets, bangles, waist chains and anklets form a system of bodily display. Texts from medieval Mithila and sculpture from eastern India use several of these zones repeatedly, but the same body map can carry different social meanings. An anklet might mark beauty, gender, ritual condition or elite display in one source and simply appear as an artistic convention in another. The strongest reconstruction therefore maps ornament by body zone while resisting the temptation to assign a fixed caste, marital or religious meaning across centuries.

45.16 Gender and adornment: evidence before stereotype

Women are often more heavily associated with jewellery in later ethnography and literary convention, but archaeological and sculptural evidence also shows richly adorned male figures. Deities, bodhisattvas, rulers, attendants and performers may all wear substantial ornament. This matters because modern gender expectations can distort the reading of older images. The archive should first establish who is represented, in what context and with what object; only then should gendered meaning be inferred. The same caution

applies to widowhood, marriage markers and ritual restrictions: later normative practices must not be projected backward without period evidence.

45.17 Courtly splendour and the problem of elite over-representation

Courts generated texts, monuments and luxury objects, so elite dress is much easier to recover than the clothing of cultivators, craft workers or servants. Varna-ratnakara's city and courtly descriptions preserve vocabulary of fine cloth and expensive goods precisely because such things belonged to a literary world of urban abundance and distinction. This makes the text valuable for consumption history but incomplete as a survey of society. Elite wardrobes can demonstrate access to variety, imported goods and specialist finishing; they cannot be used as the normal costume of the region as a whole.

45.18 Varna-ratnakara as a lexical archive of cloth and consumption

Jyotirishvara's early-fourteenth-century Varna-ratnakara is indispensable because it names many fabrics, fine stuffs and categories of urban material culture. The text brings together literary convention and observed social vocabulary, including textiles, ornaments, luxury goods and occupations. Some fabric terms remain difficult to identify precisely, and the work often arranges words for rhetorical usefulness rather than economic statistics. Its greatest value is therefore lexical: it demonstrates the existence of a differentiated vocabulary of cloth and consumption in the learned Maithili world. It does not by itself reveal production quantities, prices or the exact geographical origin of every fabric.

Three archives must correct one another

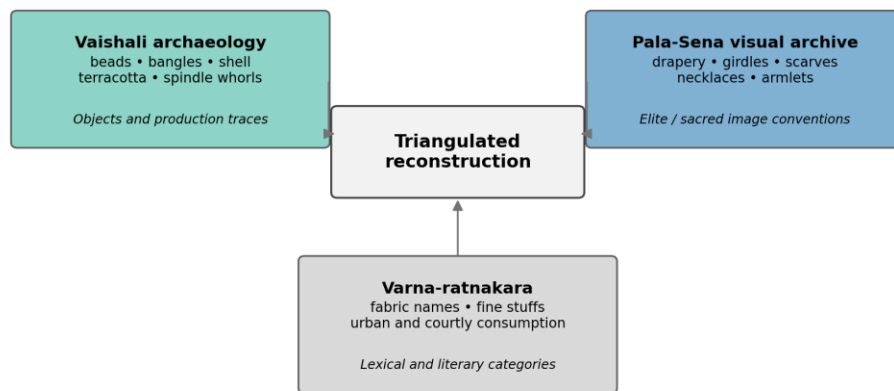


Figure 178 — Three archives for reconstructing dress and ornament

45.19 Local, imported and named fabrics: categories are not provenance maps

Medieval textile vocabularies often distinguish cloths by place-name, quality, weave, material or social association. Such names can outlive the original production centre, just as modern commodity names often travel. A fabric described as foreign or regional may have been copied locally; a "country" cloth may include imported yarn. Consequently, the linguistic category of a textile must not be converted automatically into a trade route. Provenance requires corroboration from merchant records, fiscal documents, production tools or chemical analysis. The distinction is especially important in a borderland connected to Bengal, the middle Ganga plain and Nepal.

45.20 Dyeing, finishing and the invisibility of colour

Colour was central to dress but is one of the least stable features in the archaeological record. Texts can preserve colour vocabulary and references to dyeing, while sculpture can preserve patterned carving but rarely the original colour of cloth. Even when pigment survives on an image, it need not reproduce textile colour. Dyeing, washing, calendaring, printing and embroidery therefore belong to a largely invisible finishing economy. Their historical reconstruction depends more heavily on textual and comparative craft evidence than on surviving garments. This is another reason to avoid presenting monochrome stone sculpture as if it represented monochrome clothing.

45.21 Labour organization: household skill, specialists and markets

Textile production can be divided into fibre preparation, spinning, weaving, dyeing, finishing, tailoring, washing and trade, but historical societies did not necessarily assign each stage to a separate hereditary group. Some tasks may have been household labour; others required specialists or market concentration. The material record at Vaishali confirms at least some spinning-related activity, while medieval lexical sources suggest differentiated cloth production and consumption. The exact organization of labour remains less secure. A responsible social history therefore reconstructs processes first and named communities only where sources actually identify them.

45.22 Anga and silk: a chronology firewall for Bhagalpur

Modern Bhagalpur is famous for silk, and early modern evidence documents silk and textile commerce in Bihar. That later prominence is important, but it cannot be projected automatically into the ancient or medieval Anga landscape. Pala-period sculpture, riverine trade and a later silk industry do not by themselves create an unbroken local weaving genealogy. Chapter 82 addresses Bhagalpur silk as a documented modern and post-independence economy. In the present chapter, Anga's earlier textile history is reconstructed only from evidence securely dated to the period under discussion. The rule is simple: continuity is a conclusion to be demonstrated, not a premise supplied by modern reputation.

45.23 Textile exchange across the Ganga, Bengal and Nepal corridors

The region's river systems and overland routes connected Mithila and Anga to Bengal, the middle Ganga valley and Nepal. Fine cloth could travel easily relative to its value, making textiles well suited to long-distance exchange. Literary references to varied fabrics are consistent with such connectivity, but the direction and volume of specific flows are often unknown for the medieval period. Trade history must therefore combine cloth vocabulary with broader evidence from markets, political routes and later commercial records, while keeping the chronological gap visible. The existence of exchange networks is secure; the itinerary of every named cloth is not.

45.24 Climate, season and layered clothing

The humid monsoon climate of the plains encourages light and washable clothing for much of the year, while winter conditions and travel toward the Himalayan foothills create demand for warmer layers. Varnaratnakara's seasonal descriptions remind us that clothing was not static across the calendar. Yet climate cannot name garments. It can explain why layered, draped or easily laundered cloth might be practical, but only texts and images can indicate historically specific forms. Seasonal reasoning is therefore contextual rather than identificatory: it helps explain choices already attested by evidence, not invent clothing that the archive has not shown.

45.25 Ritual dress and sacred images

Dress can mark ritual state through clean cloth, colour, garlands, sacred threads, monastic robes or special ornaments, but the evidence varies by religious tradition and period. Sacred images often exaggerate ideal costume because adornment itself is devotional. A deity covered with jewellery is not evidence that human worshippers dressed identically. Conversely, monastic ideals of simplicity do not mean that monasteries were isolated from textile economies: robes had to be produced, donated, washed and replaced. Ritual dress thus links religious institutions to household and market production while remaining distinct from everyday costume.

45.26 Marriage, gift and the circulation of ornament

Jewellery and cloth are particularly suited to life-cycle exchange because they combine value, portability and bodily visibility. Medieval normative and literary sources show that marriage was an important arena of property transfer, but the exact composition of gifts varied by status and time. It is safer to treat textiles and ornaments as movable wealth that could circulate through marriage, inheritance and ritual than to impose a later standardized dowry inventory on the medieval period. The same object could be adornment, savings, family memory and transferable property at once.

45.27 Children, workers and the people missing from costume history

Most costume histories are reconstructed from elite art, normative literature and preserved valuables. Children, agricultural labourers, boatmen, craft workers and poor households are therefore under-represented. Their clothing may have been simpler, more frequently repaired and less likely to enter texts or collections. Terracotta ornaments and inexpensive beads help correct that bias by showing that adornment could exist outside precious-metal economies. Even so, absence of evidence remains substantial. A complete social history must make missing populations visible as an evidentiary problem rather than filling the gap with modern rural costume.

45.28 Repair, reuse and the long life of cloth

Textiles are unusually recyclable. A garment can be patched, cut down, passed to another person, converted into household cloth, used as wrapping or finally reduced to fibre and waste. This long use-life reduces the amount of discarded textile likely to enter archaeological deposits. Jewellery is similarly mobile: metal can be melted and stones reset. Material culture therefore has biographies rather than single moments of use. Reuse also complicates dating, because an old bead may be deposited in a much later context. Archaeological association and wear patterns are crucial for distinguishing production date from final deposition.

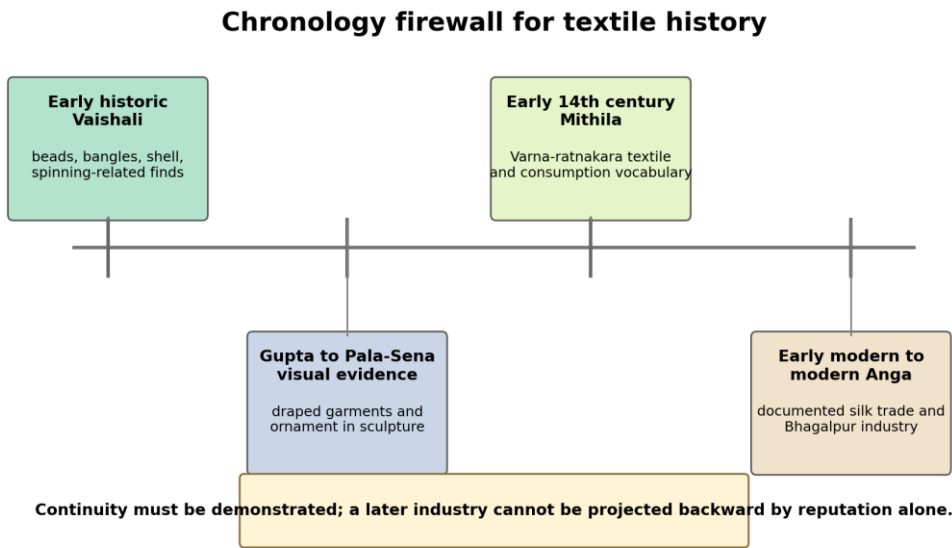


Figure 179 — Chronology firewall for textile history

45.29 Method: triangulating object, image and word

No single source can reconstruct the dress history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga. Archaeology supplies materials and production traces but rarely complete garments. Sculpture and terracotta show how cloth and ornament were visualized but are shaped by iconography. Varna-ratnakara and other texts preserve terminology but select for literary and elite worlds. Later trade records document textile economies but cannot be pushed backward automatically. The strongest method is triangulation: a claim gains confidence when different archives converge at a compatible date. Where they diverge, the disagreement should remain visible rather than being solved by preference.

45.30 Conclusion: clothing as a mobile archive of society

Dress, textiles and ornament reveal a society in motion. Fibres moved through spinning and weaving; fabrics moved through households, markets, courts and ritual exchange; beads and shell linked bodies to wider material networks; texts transformed cloth into social vocabulary; sculpture transformed it into visual convention. Vaishali provides durable evidence for adornment and spinning-related activity, Pala-Sena art supplies a rich but elite and sacred visual archive, and Varna-ratnakara records a differentiated textile world in medieval Mithila. Taken together, these sources show variety without requiring false continuity. The history is strongest when each object, image and word remains anchored to its own time.

Table 45.1 — Evidence domains for dress, textiles and ornament

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Vaishali small finds	Beads, bangles, shell, terracotta ornaments and spinning-related activity	Rarely preserves the complete garment or identifies the wearer
Terracotta figurines	Visible jewellery zones, hairstyles and stylized bodily display	Miniature conventions and ritual or auspicious types may exaggerate features
Gupta / Pala-Sena sculpture	Drapery, scarves, girdles, jewellery combinations and elite visual conventions	Sacred and idealized images are not direct records of everyday dress

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Varna-ratnakara	Fabric vocabulary, fine stuffs, consumption categories and urban material language	Literary lists do not prove local production, quantities or universal use
Medieval social-history texts	Courtly consumption, gifts, status and occupational context	Elite and normative viewpoints over-represented
Early modern textile trade	Later circulation of silk and cotton through Bihar and Bengal	Too late to prove medieval continuity without intermediate evidence
Modern Bhagalpur silk	Documented regional industry and identity	Must not be projected backward into ancient Anga or the Pala period

Chapter 46 — Food History of Mithila, Vajji and Anga

46.1 Food history is an evidence problem before it is a cuisine story

A history of food in Mithila, Vajji and Anga cannot begin by copying a modern recipe list backward into antiquity. Food is unusually vulnerable to historical distortion because cooked dishes disappear almost completely, while modern regional cuisines are vivid and familiar. The reliable sequence is the reverse: begin with charred plant remains, animal bones, fish and shell, grinding stones, hearths, ovens and vessels; then add dated texts, inscriptions and institutional records; only after that use later ethnography to test possible continuities. This chapter therefore distinguishes ingredients from dishes, production from consumption, and memory from dated evidence. A grain recovered from an archaeological layer proves cultivation or use more securely than it proves a named recipe; a medieval food-name proves vocabulary and social practice more securely than it proves an unchanged dish across centuries.

46.2 The alluvial ecology behind the regional food system

The food history of the region was shaped by an alluvial landscape of monsoon rainfall, rivers, flood basins, ponds, wetlands and fertile but mobile soils. Such an environment favoured rice but never supported rice alone. Winter cultivation, pulses, oilseeds, livestock, fish, molluscs, fruits and collected plants broadened the subsistence base and reduced dependence on a single harvest. Floods could replenish soils and aquatic resources, yet they could also destroy standing crops, grain stores and transport routes. Food security therefore depended on seasonal diversity, storage, social exchange and access to different ecological niches. The contrast between north Bihar's flood-prone plains, the Ganga corridor and the eastern Anga zone helps explain why household diets combined field agriculture with riverine and wetland resources rather than forming a narrowly cereal economy.

46.3 Chirand as a regional comparator, not a substitute for Mithila

Chirand lies in north Bihar on the Ganga and is one of the richest regional archaeological comparators for prehistoric food history, but it must not be treated as if it were a direct excavation of every part of Mithila, Vajji or Anga. Its Neolithic deposits nevertheless demonstrate the range of resources available in the broader middle-Ganga environment. Archaeological and zoological studies report rice, wheat, barley, pulses and field pea, together with domesticated cattle, buffalo, sheep, goat and pig and a wide spectrum of wild and aquatic fauna. Fish, turtle and molluscan remains matter especially because they show that wetlands and rivers were active food-producing zones. Chirand therefore supplies a model of mixed subsistence against which evidence from sites within the book's core regions can be compared, with geographical distance always stated rather than concealed.

46.4 Rice: central crop, contested beginnings

Rice is indispensable to the food history of the middle Ganga plain, yet its earliest chronology remains debated. Archaeobotanical research has recovered early rice from several Ganga-plain sites, but scholars continue to distinguish between wild collection, cultivation and fully domesticated rice. The debate is important methodologically: the presence of rice grains or phytoliths is not automatically equivalent to settled paddy agriculture, and very early dates require secure stratigraphy and morphological evidence. By the later Neolithic, Chalcolithic and early historic phases, however, the importance of rice within the regional crop system is much more secure. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the safest historical conclusion is therefore not

that a single timeless rice cuisine existed from the first appearance of rice, but that wet-rice cultivation became one of the durable agricultural foundations from which many later food traditions could develop.

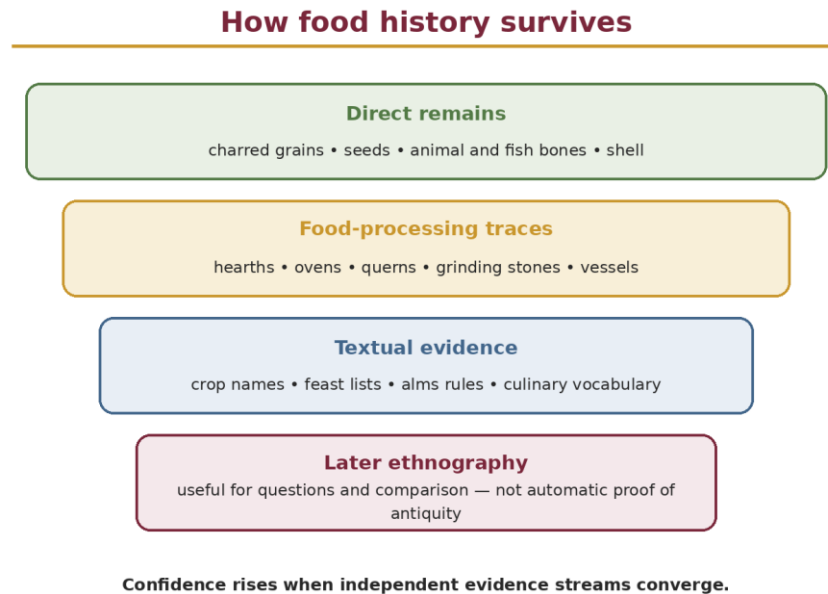


Figure 180 — How food history survives: an evidence hierarchy

46.5 Crop diversification and the two-season advantage

Archaeobotanical work across the Ganga plain shows that rice coexisted with barley, wheat, millets, pulses and oil-bearing crops. The significance is not merely dietary variety. A combination of monsoon and winter crops spreads labour and risk across the year and links food history directly to agricultural scheduling. At sites such as Chirand and Senuwar, rice was complemented by winter cereals and pulses; broader Ganga-plain datasets add mung bean, field pea, lentil and several millets. This diversification complicates any picture of an exclusively rice-eating population. It also suggests differentiated preparations: whole grains, ground flour, boiled pulses, parched cereals and mixed dishes would have demanded different processing tools and fuel regimes, even where the exact recipes are archaeologically unrecoverable.

46.6 Pulses, oilseeds and the hidden architecture of everyday meals

Pulses and oilseeds are less visually spectacular than monuments, but they are central to nutritional and economic history. Archaeobotanical assemblages from the Ganga plain include mung, lentil, peas, sesame and mustard among other taxa. Pulses complement cereal diets with protein; oilseeds provide cooking fat, condiments and marketable produce. Their presence also changes how we imagine rural labour because threshing, drying, storage and grinding varied by crop. Later regional food systems make extensive use of pulses and mustard oil, but the historical argument must move in stages: archaeological occurrence demonstrates ancient or early use of ingredients, while continuity of particular preparations must be shown through dated textual or ethnographic evidence rather than assumed from present practice.

46.7 Fish, rivers and wetlands as food-producing landscapes

Fish is often treated as a cultural preference, but archaeology first reveals it as an ecological opportunity. Chirand has yielded fish remains, and the riverine geography of the Ganga plain created repeated access to

fish, turtles, molluscs and other aquatic resources. Such foods could be caught seasonally, consumed locally, dried or otherwise preserved, although preservation methods are difficult to reconstruct without direct evidence. The importance of aquatic resources would have varied by household, religious discipline, social status and proximity to water. The evidence therefore supports a long history of fishing and aquatic consumption in the wider region without licensing the claim that every community, caste or religious institution shared the same diet.

46.8 Cattle, buffalo, sheep, goat and pig: animals beyond a simple meat/no-meat binary

Faunal remains from regional sites show domesticated cattle, buffalo, sheep, goat and pig alongside wild species. Bones can demonstrate the presence and sometimes the butchery of animals, but animal economies were multifunctional. Cattle and buffalo supplied traction, manure and milk as well as potential meat; sheep and goats supplied milk, hair or fibre as well as flesh; pigs had a different economic niche. Religious and normative traditions increasingly shaped what kinds of animal consumption were valorised, restricted or condemned, but archaeological deposits remind us that practice was neither uniform nor reducible to later vegetarian/non-vegetarian identities. A social history must therefore ask who controlled animals, which products were extracted during an animal's lifetime, and under what circumstances slaughter occurred.

46.9 Wild animals, hunting and the shrinking visibility of foraging

Neolithic and Chalcolithic assemblages in Bihar include deer and other wild animals in addition to domestic stock. Hunting and gathering did not vanish at the moment agriculture appeared. Wild meat, fruits, greens and wetland foods could supplement cultivated staples, especially in seasons of shortage or among communities with specialised ecological knowledge. Over time, expanding cultivation, settlement, political control over forests and changing ritual norms could alter access to wild resources. Because later elite texts often privilege cultivated food and courtly or ritual cuisines, archaeological faunal evidence is especially important for recovering the older mixed economies that textual sources may understate.

46.10 Hearths, ovens, querns and pottery: reconstructing cooking without recipes

Cooking technologies preserve a different history from ingredients. Hearths and ovens demonstrate controlled heat; querns, mullers and grinding stones reveal the transformation of cereals and pulses; pottery shapes suggest boiling, storage, serving and transport. At Chirand, reports of hearths and ovens have encouraged interpretations of roasting and communal feeding, though such functional readings should remain tied to context rather than treated as certain recipes. Ceramic form, soot and residue can narrow possibilities, but a pot is not a named dish. The strongest reconstruction therefore moves from action to cuisine cautiously: pounding, grinding, boiling, roasting, frying and fermentation are technical processes whose combination into specific regional foods requires additional evidence.

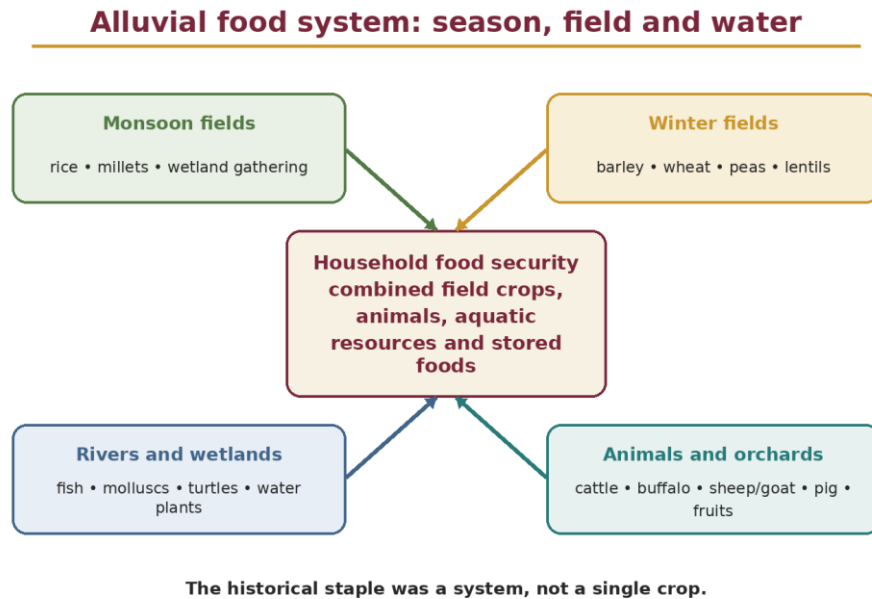


Figure 181 — Alluvial food system: season, field and water

46.11 Early historic towns and the problem of feeding non-farmers

The growth of Vaishali and other early historic centres changed food history by separating many consumers from direct cultivation. Officials, artisans, merchants, monks, travellers and urban households depended on grain moving from rural producers into markets, institutions and domestic stores. Urbanisation therefore increased the importance of transport, measurement, storage and exchange. Archaeology can document settlement size, storage-related vessels and market connectivity more readily than daily menus, but the economic implication is clear: feeding towns required recurring surplus and distribution networks. Food became a commodity as well as a subsistence good.

46.12 Vaishali: market, hospitality and institutional consumption

Vaishali's importance in Buddhist and Jain traditions makes it one of the best places to observe how food crossed household, market and religious boundaries. Narrative sources repeatedly present donors providing meals, groves or hospitality to religious communities, while archaeology confirms a substantial settlement and long occupation. These narratives should not be mined as literal menus, yet they demonstrate that cooked food, alms and hospitality carried social and religious meaning. A meal could convert agricultural surplus into merit, prestige and alliance. The city therefore belongs in food history not because one can reconstruct a single "Vaishali cuisine," but because it reveals the institutional circulation of food among householders, merchants, elites and renunciants.

46.13 Buddhist alms and the difference between monastic rules and regional cuisine

Buddhist monastic literature regulates the receipt, timing and acceptability of food, but such rules describe institutional discipline rather than the complete cuisine of Vajji or Anga. Monks depended on lay producers and donors, so the alms economy connected religious institutions to local agriculture and markets. Rules concerning meal times, stored food or prohibited forms of acquisition illuminate the social

organisation of eating more securely than they identify a regional recipe. At large monasteries such as Vikramshila in the Anga zone, collective feeding must have required substantial provisioning, but the excavated architecture does not by itself reveal a detailed menu. The historical point is scale, dependence and redistribution, not culinary invention.

46.14 Jain discipline and food as an ethical problem

Jain traditions associated with Vaishali and the wider region place exceptional emphasis on non-violence, restraint and the ethical consequences of taking life. These disciplines affected which foods could be accepted, how food was obtained and the moral status of eating. Yet monastic prescriptions should not be projected onto all lay households or treated as a census of local practice. Their value for food history lies in showing that diet had become an explicit field of ethical reflection: choices about plants, animals, preparation and timing could express religious identity. The coexistence of such disciplines with archaeological evidence for diverse animal use also illustrates why normative and material sources must remain analytically distinct.

46.15 Milk, curd and ghee: products of a mixed agro-pastoral economy

Cattle and buffalo economies make dairy historically plausible long before particular regional combinations appear in texts. Milk can be consumed fresh or transformed into curd, butter and ghee, extending shelf life and concentrating value. Dairying also links food to gendered and household labour, animal ownership and market exchange. By the early fourteenth century, Jyotirisvara's *Varna-ratnakara* gives much firmer regional evidence for curd and cream in feast description. This is the point at which a historian can move from the general economic possibility of dairying to specific medieval Mithila food vocabulary.

46.16 Sugar, jaggery and sweetness

Sweetness in historical diets came from several sources, including fruits and processed sugarcane. Sugarcane has a long history in northern and eastern India, but the scale and technology of processing varied. Boiling cane juice into jaggery, producing more refined sugar, and using sweeteners in ceremonial foods required fuel, vessels and specialised labour. Medieval feast vocabulary and later market records show that sweets became socially important, but the survival of a modern sweet cannot establish its medieval form. The safer historical method is to trace sweetening agents, processing technologies and named preparations separately.

46.17 Fruit, gardens and seasonal abundance

The alluvial plains supported orchards and garden produce as well as field crops. Mango, jujube and other fruits occur in textual, archaeobotanical or later historical evidence, while Buddhist narratives famously make groves in the Vaishali region part of landscapes of donation and hospitality. Fruit could be eaten fresh, dried, pickled or transformed, though exact techniques must be dated separately. Gardens were also status-bearing spaces: access to cultivated fruit linked food to landholding, urban leisure and religious patronage.

46.18 Salt, spices and the geography of things not grown locally

Food history also includes ingredients that had to travel. Inland north Bihar did not produce every salt, spice or aromatic substance consumed there. Trade therefore entered the kitchen through small but high-impact commodities whose weight was modest relative to value. Jyotirisvara's discussion of betel, areca and aromatics in medieval Mithila illustrates this wider circulation. The presence of non-local flavouring agents

reveals market integration, but historians should distinguish a named imported ingredient from evidence that it was common in every household.

From landscape to meal: a social chain

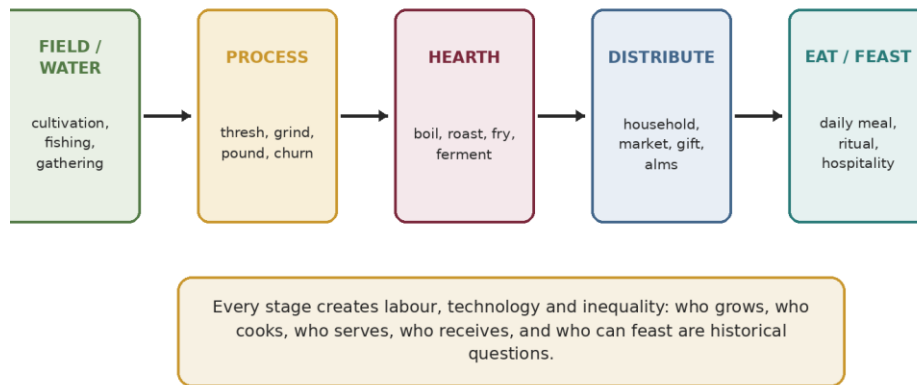


Figure 182 — From landscape to meal: a social chain

46.19 Flattened and parched rice: when a grain becomes a named food

The Varna-ratnakara is particularly important because it moves the evidence from generic rice cultivation to named forms of processed rice. Jyotirisvara mentions chura or flattened/parched rice and farhi or fried/parched rice among a wider culinary vocabulary. Such foods are technically significant because processing changes portability, shelf life, texture and the amount of cooking required at the point of consumption. They are also socially significant because processed grain can serve travellers, guests and feast settings differently from freshly boiled rice. This is firmer evidence for medieval Mithila food history than any attempt to infer an identical dish directly from prehistoric rice remains.

46.20 Chura with curd: a medieval textual anchor and a continuity question

One of the most striking passages associated with Jyotirisvara describes fine chura served with abundant curd and cream. The combination is recognisable in later Mithila food culture, making it tempting to speak of unbroken continuity. The safer conclusion is more precise: the text anchors a rice-and-curd combination in early-fourteenth-century Mithila, while later evidence documents its persistence and elaboration. Continuity across the centuries is plausible where intervening evidence exists, but the medieval text should not be stretched backward into early historic Vajji or prehistoric north Bihar without proof.

46.21 Feast lists as social documents

Jyotirisvara's culinary lists include multiple prepared foods and sweets rather than a single subsistence meal. A feast list is therefore evidence of classification, abundance and social display. It may exaggerate variety for literary effect, but that very excess is historically informative: elite and ceremonial eating valued multiplicity, sequencing and the ability to mobilise specialised ingredients. Feast descriptions also illuminate servants, cooks, vessels, hospitality and status. They should not be treated as statistically representative of

peasant diets, yet they show what a medieval author expected readers or listeners to recognise as desirable food.

46.22 Betel after the meal: consumption beyond nutrition

Betel leaf, areca nut, lime and aromatics belong to food history even though they are not staple nourishment. Varna-ratnakara devotes attention to betel and its qualities, and references to paan as mouth-freshening or social consumption show how eating extended into etiquette, hospitality and bodily presentation. Because areca and some aromatics were traded over distance, the betel complex also connected Mithila to wider commercial circuits. Its social role reminds us that cuisine is not only calories: taste, fragrance, sociability and gift exchange are historical practices.

46.23 Food labour: growing is only the first stage

Every meal required invisible work after harvest: threshing, husking, pounding, grinding, winnowing, washing, churning, cutting, fermenting, cooking and cleaning. Much of this labour was organised within households and was frequently gendered, though the exact division varied by class, community and period. Large households, courts, monasteries and feast settings could employ specialised cooks and servants. Food history therefore belongs to labour history. The technologies of hand-pounding rice, grinding grain or churning curd determine daily time expenditure as surely as the crops themselves determine calories.

46.24 Storage, scarcity and the politics of the granary

Surplus mattered only if it could survive. Grain storage protected households against the gap between harvests, supported seed retention and allowed rulers, landlords, temples or monasteries to command reserves. Storage vessels, pits and granary-like facilities are therefore part of food history even when no meal remains. In flood-prone Mithila, storage location and protection from moisture were especially important. Control over stored grain could also create hierarchy: households with reserves were better able to survive crop failure, lend grain, feed dependants or sell into high-price markets.

46.25 Flood, drought and seasonal hunger

The same rivers that sustained rice, fish and transport could destroy fields and homes. Food history must therefore include bad years, not only feast descriptions. Flood, channel migration, drought, crop disease and political disruption could reduce harvests or interrupt markets. Households responded through crop diversity, stored grain, fishing, gathered foods, livestock sales, borrowing, migration and patronage networks. These strategies are difficult to recover evenly before the colonial period, but the ecological logic is durable and should frame interpretation of the region's agrarian resilience.

46.26 Anga, Champa and Vikramshila: provisioning an eastern corridor

Anga's position along the Ganga and routes toward Bengal made food supply part of a wider exchange economy. Urban Champa and, later, the great monastic establishment at Vikramshila required flows of grain, fuel, dairy, vegetables and other provisions from surrounding producers. Archaeology at Vikramshila demonstrates the scale of the residential institution, but not a secure item-by-item menu. The correct historical inference is therefore institutional demand: hundreds of resident or visiting consumers would have tied the monastery to villages, markets, donations and transport networks in the Bhagalpur-Anga zone.

46.27 Vegetarian and non-vegetarian histories cannot be reduced to a single regional rule

The sources document both plant-rich agricultural systems and the exploitation of animals and aquatic resources. Religious prescriptions, caste practices, household wealth, occupation and ecology created different food regimes. It is therefore misleading to describe ancient or medieval Mithila, Vajji and Anga as uniformly vegetarian or uniformly meat-eating. Archaeology records what some people consumed or deposited; normative texts record what authors prescribed; literary texts record what was imaginable or prestigious. Their overlap is historically meaningful, but none of them alone represents the entire population.

46.28 Regional cuisine identities are historical formations

Modern labels such as Maithil cuisine or Angika cuisine organise living repertoires of dishes, festival foods and tastes. They are important evidence for modern identity, but they should not be treated as fixed containers extending unchanged into antiquity. Some ingredients and techniques have deep histories; some named preparations are textually anchored in the medieval period; others may be early modern or modern innovations. Food identity is therefore layered. The historian's task is to date each layer wherever possible rather than choose between the equally misleading claims that everything is ancient or everything is recent.

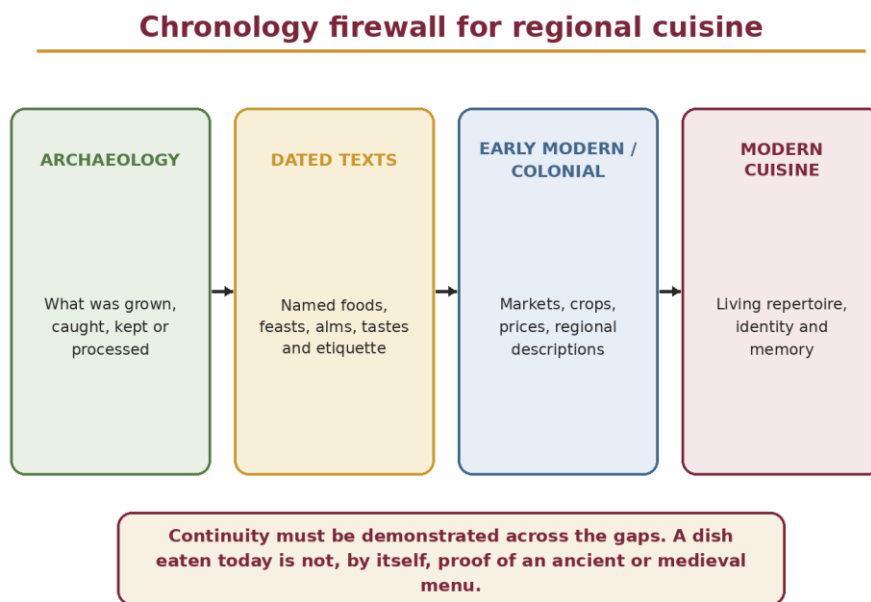


Figure 183 — Chronology firewall for regional cuisine

46.29 Method: from ingredient to dish, and from dish to identity

A rigorous food history proceeds through several distinct questions. First, what plants and animals were available and used? Second, what processing and cooking techniques are materially visible? Third, when do texts begin to name particular foods or combinations? Fourth, how were meals distributed through households, markets, monasteries, courts and ritual events? Fifth, when do later communities begin to describe these practices as markers of a regional cuisine? Keeping these questions separate prevents both archaeological minimalism and culinary romanticism. It also allows genuine continuities—such as the medieval textual anchoring of chura and curd—to stand out more clearly because they are not buried beneath unsupported claims.

46.30 Conclusion: food as an archive of ecology, labour and memory

The food history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga is a history of adaptation to an alluvial world. Rice became central without eliminating winter cereals, pulses, oilseeds, fish, livestock, fruits and gathered resources. Towns and monasteries transformed surplus into markets, alms and institutional provisioning. Medieval Mithila's Varna-ratnakara provides a rare lexical window into processed rice, curd, cream, sweets, betel and feast culture, allowing some culinary practices to be dated with unusual confidence. Yet the strongest conclusion is methodological as much as culinary: modern cuisine preserves real historical memory, but that memory must be tested against dated evidence. When archaeology, text and later practice converge, the region's food traditions become not a timeless menu but a layered record of ecology, labour, exchange, ritual and identity.

Table 46.1 — Evidence domains for the food history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Archaeobotanical remains	Cultivated and gathered plants; crop diversity; sometimes processing	Preservation and recovery are uneven; a grain does not identify a recipe
Faunal and aquatic remains	Animals, fish, shell and patterns of exploitation	Species presence does not automatically identify who ate it or under what rules
Hearths, ovens, querns and pottery	Processing, heat, storage and serving technologies	Function may be ambiguous; vessels rarely preserve named dishes
Early historic religious texts	Alms, hospitality, ethical rules and institutional eating	Normative or narrative sources are not population-wide menus
Varna-ratnakara	Early-fourteenth-century Mithila food names, feast vocabulary, chura-curd and betel culture	Literary abundance may over-represent elite or ceremonial consumption
Monastic and urban archaeology	Scale of collective provisioning and dependence on rural surplus	Architecture demonstrates demand more securely than a specific menu
Later ethnography and modern cuisine	Living techniques, identities and possible continuities	Cannot be projected backward without intervening evidence

Chapter 47 — Mithila Painting Before and Beyond the Modern Art Market

47.1 Why the pre-market history is difficult to write

Mithila painting presents a paradox for the social historian. The practice is repeatedly described as old, yet its most durable and datable corpus is overwhelmingly modern because the older media were intentionally temporary. Floor diagrams were renewed, mud-plastered walls were resurfaced, pigments faded, houses were rebuilt, and floods, earthquakes and poverty repeatedly altered domestic architecture. The result is a severe survival bias. A responsible history therefore cannot begin with the modern paper painting and simply project its forms backward. It must distinguish surviving objects, dated photographs, textual or ritual evidence, later recollection and present practice, and then ask where those independent lines of evidence genuinely converge.

47.2 Painting was embedded in domestic space before it became a portable object

Before the paper market, much of the documented painting tradition belonged to the house rather than to an autonomous object called a work of art. Images were made on earthen floors, plastered walls, thresholds, domestic shrines and the nuptial chamber. Their location mattered because the painted surface helped constitute a ritual setting. The same image moved to paper could preserve motifs and line habits while changing its social function: a wall participated in a wedding; a sheet could be stored, signed, priced, transported and exhibited. The historian must therefore treat surface, location and occasion as part of the work, not as detachable background.

Figure 184 — Evidence chronology: from domestic surface

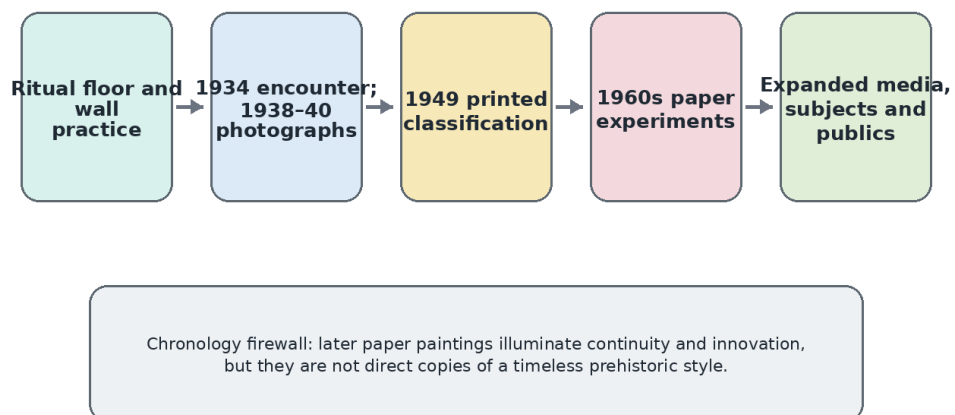


Figure 184 — Evidence chronology: from domestic surface to portable art

47.3 Arian: temporary geometry and the problem of preservation

Arian designs are among the clearest examples of why material survival cannot be equated with historical importance. Made on floors with rice paste and, in some practices, additional colour, they marked auspicious and ritually activated spaces for vows, festivals, household worship and life-cycle ceremonies. Their very purpose often required renewal rather than permanent conservation. Consequently, the absence of an old arian object in a museum does not prove the absence of the practice, while a modern drawing of an arian does not by itself establish the age of every motif. The strongest method combines dated documentation of practice with careful comparison of recurring design grammars.

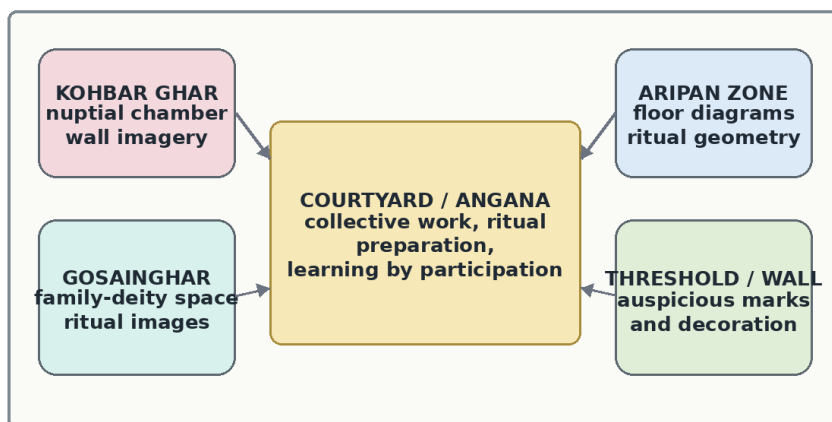
47.4 Kohbar painting and the nuptial chamber

The kohbar ghar, or nuptial chamber, became the best-known architectural setting for Mithila wall painting because marriage rituals concentrated painted imagery, women's ceremonial authority and fertility symbolism in one interior space. Lotus, bamboo, aquatic creatures, divine figures and auspicious signs could be combined in highly structured compositions. Yet the term kohbar should not be reduced to a market genre. Before portability, the image belonged to a sequence of wedding acts, songs, kin relations and controlled access to the room. Its historical meaning therefore includes who painted, who entered, who interpreted the motifs, and when the painting was renewed or covered.

47.5 The gosainghar and the wider domestic sacred environment

Painting also belonged to the gosainghar or household deity space and to other ritual surfaces inside the residential compound. This wider distribution matters because it prevents the history of Mithila painting from being reduced to marriage alone. Domestic visual culture linked lineage deities, calendrical worship, women's ritual work and the material maintenance of the home. It also blurred categories that museums later separated into painting, drawing, floor art and decoration. For historical reconstruction, a wall image in a shrine and a paper sheet bearing similar motifs are related, but they are not functionally identical. The transfer from place-bound efficacy to portable display is itself a historical event.

Domestic ritual painting as a spatial system



Analytical schematic, not a reconstruction of one excavated or universally standard house plan.

Figure 185 — Domestic ritual painting as a spatial system

47.6 Materials: mud plaster, rice paste, soot, vegetal colour and the archive that vanished

The older domestic media encouraged loss. Earthen walls required replastering; rice paste was vulnerable to abrasion, insects and water; soot, mineral and vegetal colours weathered differently; roofs and walls were periodically rebuilt. These materials make the household a recurring workshop in which restoration and re-creation were normal. Permanence was not necessarily the aim. This helps explain why the twentieth-century paper archive is so much denser than the earlier material record. It also cautions against equating the start of collecting with the start of painting. What becomes historically visible at a particular moment may reflect a change in medium, documentation or institutional attention rather than a sudden cultural invention.

47.7 Women's collective labour was also skilled artistic labour

Early observers often described household painting as ordinary women's work. That formulation risks hiding expertise inside domestic routine. William Archer's own account, despite his restrictive conclusions, recorded cooperative work in which experienced women directed composition while younger women learned by watching and assisting. Painting therefore involved differentiated skill, memory, judgement and pedagogy. The fact that it occurred within marriage preparation or household ritual does not make it aesthetically automatic. Social history should recover the collective conditions of production without erasing individual ability. The later appearance of named professional artists did not create skill from nothing; it changed the institutions through which skill was recognized.

47.8 Apprenticeship without an academy

The domestic transmission of painting knowledge did not require a formal art school. Girls and younger women could learn by preparing surfaces and tools, observing senior painters, repeating motifs, assisting with colour and participating in ritual occasions. Such apprenticeship was episodic, kin-based and embodied. It transmitted not only visual forms but also knowledge of when a design was appropriate, which part of the house it belonged to, what ritual sequence surrounded it and which songs or narratives accompanied the occasion. Once painting moved onto paper and into training centres, instruction could become more regular and explicit. The contrast reveals institutional change without implying that pre-market learning was unsystematic.

47.9 Caste idioms are evidence, not prisons

Twentieth-century descriptions often sorted Mithila painting into caste-linked styles, especially contrasting colour-filled Brahmin paintings with line-dominant Kayastha work. Such patterns are historically useful because social networks, marriage circles and women's household training could reinforce shared conventions. But caste labels become misleading when treated as rigid aesthetic laws. Archer's photographs already show individual variation within the categories he emphasized. Later artists crossed, combined and transformed stylistic conventions. A social history should therefore ask how caste organized access, patronage, seclusion, labour time and recognition, while leaving room for household difference, individual experimentation and historical change.

47.10 Lower-caste painting and the archive of omission

The early English-language archive disproportionately documented upper-caste households. Archer acknowledged that other communities painted, yet his published selection concentrated on Brahmin and Kayastha work. That imbalance shaped later definitions of what counted as authentic Mithila painting.

When Dalit and other non-elite artists entered the paper market more visibly, their subjects and techniques were sometimes treated as deviations rather than as evidence that the earlier archive had been socially selective. The historian must therefore read absence critically. A sparse record of a community's painting may reflect unequal access to photographers, collectors, patrons and institutions, not the absence of visual practice.

47.11 Individual invention existed inside ritual repertoires

Ritual repetition does not eliminate invention. A painter can work within an inherited vocabulary while varying scale, placement, rhythm, humour, density and narrative detail. This point matters because older classifications of "folk" or "ritual" art often treated individual authorship as irrelevant or even impossible. Yet historical photographs show differences between painters working in similar social contexts. Later named artists make the pattern clearer, but they should not be used to imagine that individuality began only with the art market. The stronger conclusion is that portability, signatures, exhibitions and sales made individual authorship easier for institutions to see, record and reward.

47.12 Secular motifs were present before the paper market

The pre-market domestic repertoire was not confined to timeless sacred symbols. Among the photographs discussed from Archer's late-1930s and early-1940s documentation is a nuptial-chamber wall that included a railway scene above religious imagery. The example is historically important because it demonstrates that painters could incorporate technologies and experiences of contemporary life before commercialization on paper. Ritual context and observation of modernity were therefore not mutually exclusive. This weakens any model in which the 1960s market suddenly introduced creativity or secular subject matter. What the market changed most dramatically was portability, audience, economic value and the range of incentives for sustained narrative experimentation.

47.13 The 1934 Bihar-Nepal earthquake and an accidental colonial encounter

William G. Archer first encountered Mithila wall paintings while inspecting earthquake damage in 1934. Broken and fallen outer walls exposed interior painted surfaces that were normally embedded in private domestic space. The event is a reminder that discovery is a category of the observer, not the origin of the practice. The paintings were not discovered by the households that made and used them; they became newly visible to a colonial official whose administrative duties gave him access after a disaster. The earthquake therefore belongs to the history of documentation and external reception, not to the beginning of Mithila painting itself.

47.14 The photographic archive of 1938–1940

Archer did not create a substantial photographic record during the immediate earthquake relief. Later, while travelling widely in Bihar, he photographed more than 150 painted walls in Mithila between 1938 and 1940. Those images are among the most important near-direct records of domestic painting before the paper market. They preserve compositions that the physical walls could not preserve and allow later scholars to test claims about continuity and change. At the same time, the archive is selective: access depended on caste, household permission, gender segregation, route and the observer's own interests. Photographs are therefore invaluable evidence, but not a neutral census of all painting in Mithila.

47.15 Archer's 1949 "Maithil Painting" and the power to classify

Archer's article "Maithil Painting," published in *Marg* in 1949, introduced the paintings to a much wider English-language art public. He treated them as ritual art and strongly emphasized caste-based stylistic categories. His praise of their visual power coexisted with assumptions that ritual repetition and women's domestic lives restricted creativity. That contradiction became influential because classification determines what later viewers expect to find. Once Mithila painting was framed as a stable caste-bound ritual tradition, individual variation, lower-caste work and secular imagery could appear secondary. Chapter 47 therefore treats Archer both as a crucial recorder and as a historically situated interpreter whose categories require scrutiny.

47.16 What the early colonial archive could not hear

The problem was not only what Archer photographed but whose explanations he could obtain. Upper-caste women often lived under forms of seclusion that limited direct interaction with an unrelated European male official. Men could provide names of household heads, dates and broad identifications, but they did not necessarily possess women's detailed ritual knowledge of the nuptial chamber. Later ethnography has shown that women's ceremonial worlds were partly autonomous within the household. This means that the visual archive and the interpretive archive are unevenly matched. A rigorous history must therefore distinguish what the photograph shows from what male intermediaries reported and from meanings later documented among women practitioners themselves.

47.17 Post-Independence fragility before commercialization

By the 1950s, visitors seeking the spectacular wall paintings described by Archer sometimes found fewer painted surfaces than expected. Poverty, changing domestic interiors, printed calendars and other visual media altered the household environment. This apparent decline should not be converted into a simple story of disappearance, because ritual practices could persist unevenly and older painted walls were never meant to survive indefinitely. Still, the evidence indicates that the tradition faced material pressure before the paper programme. The later shift to paper was therefore not merely an art-market innovation; it emerged at a moment when economic crisis, changing houses and state handicraft policy were already reshaping the conditions of domestic painting.

47.18 The drought of the mid-1960s created a new economic context

A severe drought and food crisis in north Bihar during the mid-1960s formed the immediate background to the government-supported attempt to turn painting into supplementary income. The initiative is historically important because it linked disaster relief, development policy, women's labour and cultural preservation. It did not invent the iconography, but it altered the material support and economic purpose of painting. The same woman could now transform knowledge learned for a wall or ritual floor into a portable sheet with a buyer elsewhere. That shift created new possibilities, but it also exposed artists to selection by officials, dealers, tourists and institutions whose preferences could influence what was produced and valued.

47.19 Bhaskar Kulkarni, Pupul Jayakar and the paper experiment

Pupul Jayakar, working within India's handicrafts-development institutions, encouraged an intervention in which the artist Bhaskar Kulkarni brought handmade paper to Madhubani and asked women known for wall painting to experiment with portable work. By 1967–1968, paper paintings were being produced and sold through handicraft channels. This episode should be understood as a medium transition, not as the birth

of Mithila painting. The imagery, line discipline and ritual knowledge preceded the intervention; paper altered durability, scale, transport, pricing and the possibility of repeated production for strangers. Chapter 48 examines the twentieth-century cultural economy in greater detail; here the episode marks the boundary between domestic surface and portable object.

47.20 A change of medium changes the social life of the image

When a painted image leaves the wall for paper, several things happen at once. It becomes durable enough to archive, light enough to transport, discrete enough to count and price, and flat enough to display in exhibitions or private collections. The work can acquire a signature and provenance independent of the house in which its motifs were learned. At the same time, ritual efficacy may become optional rather than central: a kohbar motif can be painted without a wedding taking place. This does not mean that paper destroys tradition. It means that the image acquires additional lives—commodity, artwork, document, gift, political statement and family income source—alongside ritual continuity.

Portability changes the social life of an image

	Wall / floor	Paper	Gallery / museum / new media
Duration	temporary / renewed	storable / sellable	collectable / reproducible
Authorship	often collective or unnamed	increasingly named	individual careers foregrounded
Audience	household / ritual participants	buyers and wider publics	institutions, critics, transnational viewers
Subject range	ritual + domestic + occasional secular	ritual motifs + narrative expansion	autobiography, politics, ecology, memory
Value regime	auspicious efficacy / social obligation	income + recognition	art market + archive + cultural politics

Figure 186 — What changes when a ritual image becomes portable?

47.21 Naming the artist changes the archive

The paper market made it much easier to attach a woman's name to a specific object. That shift transformed art history. Named careers could be followed, compared and exhibited; innovation could be attributed to individuals; awards and commissions could create public reputations. Yet this new visibility can distort the past if historians assume that unnamed domestic work lacked authorship. Collective or household production followed a different social logic of attribution. The rise of named artists therefore reveals a transformation in the archive as much as in artistic practice. It also allows the historian to recover life histories that were largely unavailable in the male-mediated documentation of the 1930s and 1940s.

47.22 Paper opened narrative space as well as economic space

Portable painting encouraged artists to extend established visual languages into new narrative sequences. Religious stories remained important, but artists increasingly depicted autobiography, migration, illness,

social conflict, environmental concerns, village change and national or global events. This expansion should not be described as a simple movement from tradition to modernity. Secular observation already existed in older wall painting, while ritual subjects remained alive after commercialization. What changed was the capacity to make extended, collectible series for audiences beyond the household. Artists could use the visual authority of inherited motifs while reorganizing them to address experiences that the ritual wall had not been expected to record at length.

47.23 Income, household power and the limits of empowerment

The market created real income opportunities, especially for women in a region with limited access to paid employment, but economic agency was uneven. Earnings could increase a painter's status and bargaining power while still being controlled or appropriated within the household. Access to buyers, paper, training, travel and institutions also varied sharply. A history that celebrates empowerment without examining these mediations repeats the development rhetoric of the market itself. Conversely, describing commercialization only as exploitation ignores the ways artists used new income and public reputation. The relevant question is not whether the market liberated or corrupted the tradition, but how benefits and constraints were distributed by gender, caste, class and institutional access.

47.24 Dalit and non-elite artists changed the visual field

As paper painting spread beyond the initially favoured upper-caste households, Dalit and other non-elite artists brought subjects, line habits and social experiences that had been underrepresented in the earlier archive. Some works foregrounded labour, local heroes, community ritual and histories of discrimination. Their participation demonstrates why "Mithila painting" cannot be reduced to a single ritual style or social group. It also exposes the long shadow of early classification: institutions that had learned to equate authenticity with Brahmin and Kayastha conventions could undervalue painters whose work expanded the field. The history of style is therefore inseparable from the politics of recognition.

47.25 Mithila in Nepal: a connected but not identical history

The cultural region of Mithila crosses the India–Nepal border, and related ritual painting practices are found in the eastern and central Terai, especially around Janakpur. Marriage networks, pilgrimage, language and shared ritual repertoires connect the two sides, but institutional histories differ. Nepal-based women's organisations and development projects created their own pathways from domestic painting to commercial and public art. It is therefore more accurate to speak of connected histories than of a single uniform market trajectory. Cross-border comparison is valuable precisely because similar visual traditions responded differently to state institutions, tourism, urbanisation, women's organisations and local economies.

47.26 Beyond the "folk art" versus "modern art" binary

Mithila painting has repeatedly been classified as folk art, ritual art, handicraft, popular painting, tourist art or contemporary art. Each label highlights something but can also restrict what viewers are prepared to see. A ritual image can be formally inventive; a commercially produced paper can carry serious political argument; a painter without academy training can develop an individual oeuvre; and a museum object can remain tied to domestic memory. Recent scholarship therefore challenges the rigid opposition between anonymous tradition and individual modern art. The historical task is to trace the institutions that produced these categories and the consequences they had for price, prestige, collecting, criticism and the artists' own self-understanding.

47.27 Museum preservation solves one problem and creates another

Portable painting solved the problem of ephemerality by making works collectable, but museum preservation can detach images from the ritual spaces that once structured their use. A sheet can retain a kohbar motif while losing the room, songs, marriage sequence and collective labour that gave the motif one layer of meaning. Conversely, the museum can preserve an artist's name, date, pigments and provenance far better than a mud wall ever could. The correct response is not to reject collecting but to preserve context with the object. Photographs, oral histories, architectural description and documentation of use allow museums and archives to record both the image and the social world from which it emerged.

47.28 Painting became an archive of social and political experience

Once painters could produce portable series over many years, Mithila painting became a medium of historical narration in its own right. Artists depicted personal illness, journeys, violence, ecological campaigns, political events and changing gender relations. These works are not transparent photographs of society, but they are first-person visual arguments made by people whose voices were often poorly represented in administrative archives. Their value lies precisely in the combination of inherited visual language and contemporary testimony. The shift also demonstrates why the phrase “beyond the modern art market” matters: market circulation enabled visibility, but the paintings cannot be reduced to commodities because they became repositories of memory, critique and self-representation.

Evidence firewall for Mithila painting history

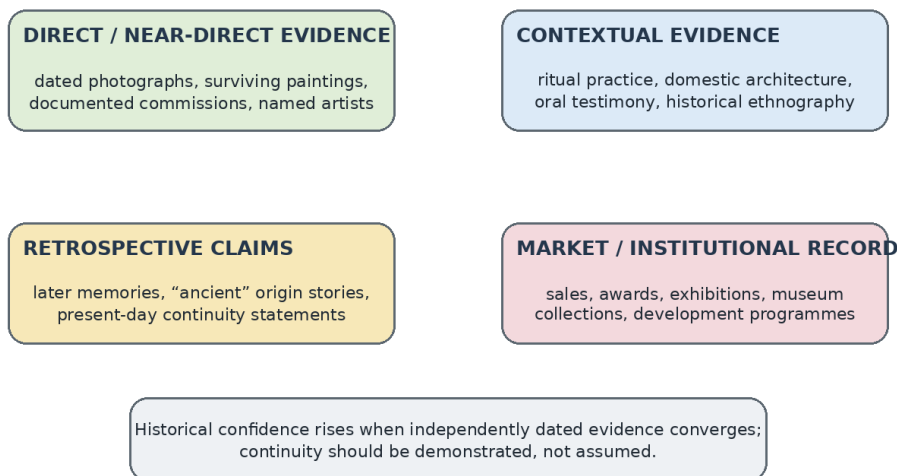


Figure 187 — Evidence firewall for the history of Mithila painting

47.29 Chronology firewall and method: read images together with institutions

The first error is to claim that every modern motif or stylistic label is ancient because the tradition itself is old. The second is to treat the 1934 photographs or the 1960s paper programme as the beginning of Mithila painting because that is when the archive becomes dense. Both positions confuse visibility with origin. The safer chronology distinguishes documented domestic ritual practice, colonial photographic recording, post-Independence handicraft intervention, individual artistic careers and contemporary institutional life. Continuity is strongest where independently dated evidence links these stages; where a gap remains, the

chapter states the gap rather than filling it with an origin legend. A social history of Mithila painting cannot be written from iconography alone. The same lotus or bamboo motif can function differently on a nuptial wall, on a sheet commissioned by a handicraft official, in a museum collection or in a contemporary political narrative. Historical meaning therefore requires attention to medium, maker, patron, location, audience, price, ritual occasion and mode of preservation. Photographs and paintings should be read beside household ethnography, institutional records, artist biographies and market history. This method protects the visual object from being treated either as a timeless ethnographic specimen or as an autonomous aesthetic form without social context.

47.30 Conclusion: continuity survives through transformation

Mithila painting did not move in a straight line from ancient ritual to modern commodity. Its history is better understood as a series of overlapping transformations. Domestic wall and floor practices created repertoires of image, skill and ritual authority; colonial photography made a selective portion visible; post-Independence development policy made the image portable and economically productive; named artists expanded subject matter and public voice; museums and global circulation created new archives and new hierarchies. Across these changes, continuity was neither rigid nor fictitious. It survived because artists repeatedly reworked inherited forms for new surfaces, audiences and purposes. Chapter 48 takes up the cultural economy that grew from this transformation in greater detail.

Table 47.1 — Evidence domains for the history of Mithila painting

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Main limitation
Surviving wall/floor practice	Ritual location, technique, contemporary use, spatial relationships	Most examples are recent; surfaces are repeatedly renewed
1938–1940 Archer photographs	Pre-paper compositions, household locations, selected caste/household contexts	Selective access; women’s own explanations are incompletely recorded
Published classifications	How outsiders and institutions defined “ritual,” “folk,” caste style and art	Classification may reproduce observer bias and shape later collecting
Paper paintings and named oeuvres	Individual careers, subject expansion, signatures, portable chronology	Market incentives alter medium, scale, audience and value
Oral history and ethnography	Artist memory, ritual knowledge, gendered practice, pedagogy	Retrospective memory must be dated and cross-checked
Museum/market records	Provenance, exhibitions, prices, institutional recognition	Collection history can detach the image from domestic context

Chapter 48 — Mithila Painting and the Twentieth-Century Cultural Economy

48.1 The twentieth-century cultural economy is a second history, not the origin of the art

Mithila painting entered a new historical regime in the twentieth century. The domestic ritual practice discussed in Chapter 47 did not suddenly begin when administrators, craft officials, collectors or museums noticed it. What changed was the social life of the image. A painted wall or floor was tied to a house, ceremony and cycle of renewal; a sheet of paper could be counted, priced, signed, packed, retailed, exhibited, collected and archived. This chapter therefore studies cultural economy rather than origins. It asks how institutions, markets, biographies and new media changed who could paint, who could earn, what counted as a work, how artistic reputation was produced and how a regional women's practice came to circulate in national and international art worlds.

48.2 The 1934 earthquake created visibility through destruction

The Bihar–Nepal earthquake of 1934 is a crucial event in the modern archive because damaged houses exposed painted interior walls that were normally difficult for an outsider to see. W. G. Archer, then serving in the region, encountered the paintings during inspections connected with the disaster. The earthquake should not be narrated as the birth of Mithila painting. Its historical importance lies elsewhere: it disrupted domestic architecture and created an accidental window through which a colonial official could see and later document an art practice embedded in women's interior spaces. A cultural economy begins partly with such acts of visibility, because documentation can detach a practice from its local context and present it to new audiences who possess different categories of value.

48.3 Archer's photographs and 1949 article helped create a metropolitan art object

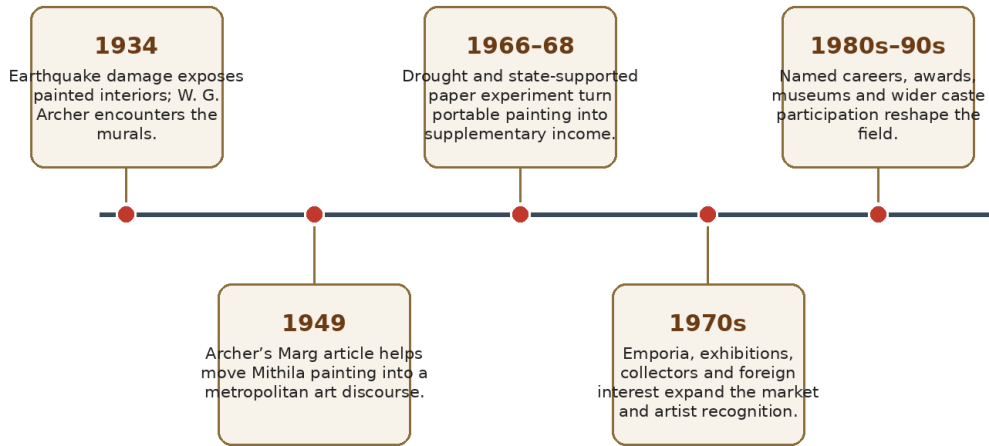
Archer's later photographs and his 1949 *Marg* article, "Maithil Painting," gave the wall paintings a durable place in English-language art writing. Reproduction in photographs and print did more than preserve motifs. It selected certain houses, social groups, images and interpretations for circulation. Metropolitan readers could now compare, classify and admire works without participating in the rituals that had produced them. Archer's categories—especially his emphasis on Brahmin and Kayastha styles and his interpretive interest in sexuality and tantric symbolism—were influential but not neutral. The twentieth-century cultural economy was therefore shaped from the beginning by a gatekeeping problem: the people who documented and published the art could affect which practitioners and meanings became visible to the wider world.

48.4 Independence changed the institutional setting of craft and rural art

After independence, the Indian state treated handicrafts and village industries as fields in which cultural preservation, employment and national identity could reinforce one another. This policy environment mattered for Mithila painting. Domestic art could now be approached not merely as ethnographic curiosity but as a potential source of rural income and as evidence of a distinctive regional heritage within the nation. Yet craft policy also brought administrative categories: objects needed to be portable, collectable, saleable and legible to buyers. The emerging cultural economy therefore linked welfare and aesthetics. Government-

supported institutions could provide materials and market access while simultaneously encouraging artists to translate household practices into products that could move through exhibitions, emporia and urban retail networks.

Twentieth-century transformation



Method: dates mark changes in documentation, institutions and markets; they do not mark the "birth" of the older ritual practice.

Figure 188 — Twentieth-century transformation: from documentation to cultural economy

48.5 The drought of 1966–68 turned cultural policy into an economic intervention

Accounts of the modern paper-painting movement repeatedly place the severe north Bihar drought of the later 1960s at the centre of the transition. Crop failure and rural distress created urgency for supplementary employment. The All India Handicrafts Board and associated officials supported experiments in which women were encouraged to reproduce or adapt wall and floor imagery on handmade paper. The purpose was practical as well as cultural: paper painting could generate cash without requiring women to leave the household for wage labour elsewhere. The intervention should not be romanticised. Drought made the experiment possible partly because economic vulnerability made new income sources necessary. Cultural entrepreneurship thus emerged from the intersection of artistic knowledge, state policy and agrarian crisis.

48.6 Pupul Jayakar, Bhaskar Kulkarni and the institutional memory of the “paper experiment”

Later accounts commonly associate the government-supported transition with Pupul Jayakar's handicrafts-development network and with Bhaskar Kulkarni, who worked with artists in the Madhubani area and encouraged painting on paper. The details of institutional responsibility vary across recollections, so the safest historical formulation is to treat the change as a coordinated state-and-intermediary experiment rather than the invention of a single individual. The crucial shift was material and economic: handmade sheets, pigments suited to portable work, collection arrangements and access to external buyers created a chain that did not previously exist at the same scale. The intervention did not simply transfer motifs; it created a new infrastructure in which a household skill could become a commodity and an artist could become a named producer.

48.7 Paper was not a neutral support: it was an economic technology

Changing the surface from wall to paper altered size, durability, transport and ownership. A wall painting belonged to a building and could disappear when plaster was renewed. A paper work could be folded or rolled, moved to Delhi, stored in a warehouse, sold in an emporium, carried abroad and later accessioned by a museum. This portability converted ephemeral labour into an object that could accumulate provenance and price. Paper also encouraged standard dimensions and repeatable production schedules, making batches easier to purchase and distribute. At the same time, it liberated painters from the architectural limits of the kohbar room. New themes, narrative series and individual experiments could now exist independently of a specific wedding or household shrine.

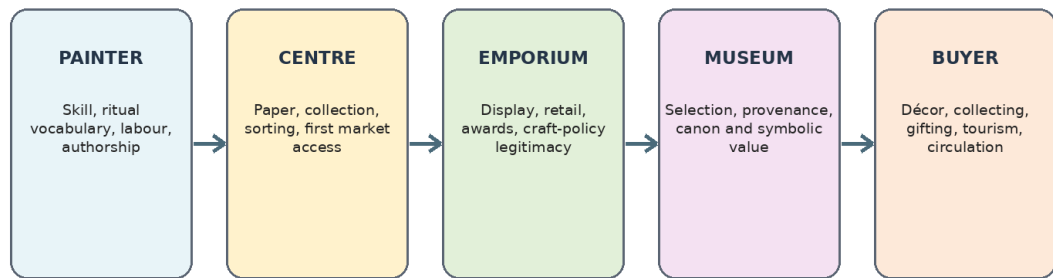
48.8 Price made labour visible but also measurable in new ways

Once paintings entered markets, labour acquired a monetary form. Time spent drawing, filling colour, preparing paper and repeating borders could be compared with the price offered by an intermediary or buyer. This could make women's skilled work newly visible inside the household, particularly where cash income had previously depended mainly on male-controlled agriculture or migration. Yet price could also simplify artistic labour. Buyers could favour particular sizes, dense compositions or recognisable motifs because they sold well. A cultural economy therefore introduced a new negotiation between ritual competence, aesthetic ambition and market demand. The same transformation that enabled income also created incentives to accelerate production, repeat successful subjects and tailor works to external expectations.

48.9 Signatures and biographies created the modern category of the "Mithila artist"

The portable work made individual authorship easier to record. A wall painting might be remembered locally as the work of women from a household or kin group; a sheet could carry a name, be bought directly from a painter, appear in a catalogue and later be linked to other works by the same hand. Biographies then became part of value. Buyers and museums wanted to know who had painted a work, where she lived, which social group she came from and how her style differed from others. This process helped produce internationally recognised careers, but it also changed the archive by privileging painters whose names and works entered collecting circuits. Unknown or locally valued practitioners could remain invisible even when their artistic labour was equally skilled.

The portable-painting value chain



Money, reputation and information can travel back toward the painter, but not evenly. Intermediaries can widen access while also controlling selection, price and visibility.

Figure 189 — The portable-painting value chain

48.10 Jagdamba Devi and Sita Devi demonstrate how state recognition changed artistic status

The rise of named careers can be traced through public honours. Jagdamba Devi of Madhubani was awarded the Padma Shri in 1975, and Sita Devi, identified in the 1981 Gazette as a painter from Madhubani, also received the Padma Shri. Such honours mattered beyond personal prestige. They signalled that an activity previously associated with women's household ritual could be recognised by the state as nationally significant art. Awards affected cultural economy by increasing visibility, attracting visitors and buyers, and helping distinguish particular artists from a wider field of producers. At the same time, award systems inevitably select a small number of representatives. The fame of a few artists should therefore be read as evidence of institutional legitimization, not as a complete measure of artistic importance within Mithila.

48.11 Ganga Devi shows how the paper medium supported autobiography

Ganga Devi became one of the most important examples of an artist whose portable work expanded beyond ritual subjects into sustained personal narrative. Her paintings retained the disciplined line, pattern and visual vocabulary associated with Mithila while accommodating journeys, public events and episodes from her own life. Accounts of her work on illness and medical treatment are especially important because they demonstrate that a form often marketed as “traditional” could become autobiographical without ceasing to be recognisably Mithila painting. The economic market and the artistic archive intersected here: a durable series could be collected, published and studied as the work of an individual over time. Modernity entered not by erasing tradition but by allowing inherited visual language to narrate new experience.

48.12 Mahasundari Devi, Godawari Dutta and other recognised painters widened the field of authorship

The twentieth-century art world did not produce a single representative woman artist. Painters including Mahasundari Devi, Godawari Dutta, Baua Devi and others developed identifiable bodies of work, taught younger artists and participated in exhibitions and public institutions. Their careers reveal how the cultural

economy multiplied forms of expertise. A painter could be a ritual specialist, wage earner, teacher, exhibitor and cultural representative at the same time. The growth of named careers also complicated the old idea that “folk art” was anonymous and collectively repeated. Individuality had existed within domestic traditions, but the modern market made it easier to document stylistic choice, long-term experimentation and the relation between biography and subject matter.

48.13 “Caste styles” became both descriptive shorthand and market packaging

Early scholarship and the first market frequently classified paintings as Brahmin, Kayastha or, later, Dalit styles. These labels corresponded to some real differences in domestic practice, preferred motifs, line treatment, colour and social access. Yet the market could harden flexible tendencies into fixed brands. A buyer might expect dense colour from one category and fine line from another, encouraging artists to perform an identity that matched metropolitan expectations. Later scholarship has challenged the assumption that artistic practice was ever confined to only two upper-caste groups. The cultural economy must therefore be analysed as a field in which social classification could be reproduced, contested and commercialised. Style labels are historical evidence, but they are not timeless rules governing every painter.

48.14 Dalit participation changed both the market and the story of Mithila painting

By the later twentieth century, artists from Dalit communities became increasingly visible in portable painting. Godna-inspired line systems, local deities, Raja Salhesh traditions, labouring life and other subjects entered markets that had initially foregrounded Brahmin and Kayastha women. This expansion was economically important because it widened access to painting income, but it was also historiographically important. It exposed the narrowness of an archive that had equated “Mithila painting” with upper-caste ritual art. The work of artists such as Jamuna Devi, and later the nationally recognised Shanti Devi and Shivan Paswan, demonstrates that innovation could arise from artists who were previously marginal to the institutions that selected and marketed the art.

48.15 Local collection centres linked village production to distant buyers

The market required institutions between the painter and the final purchaser. British Museum records for paintings made in Madhubani between 1965 and 1972 include works associated with the Alok Hastkala Kendra, while acquisition notes for other examples record purchase through the Bihar State Emporium in Delhi. Such documentation reveals a chain: paintings could be produced in villages, gathered locally, moved through state-linked retail infrastructure and then acquired by urban or foreign buyers. These centres solved practical problems of transport and market access, but they also exercised selection. Which paintings were collected, which artists were represented, and what price was paid were decisions with long-term consequences for reputation and income.

48.16 The Bihar State Emporium converted regional art into a reproducible retail category

An emporium does more than sell objects. It organises them by region, craft and price, presenting the nation as a collection of recognisable cultural products. Mithila paintings in the Bihar State Emporium could therefore be encountered by buyers who had never visited Madhubani or participated in Maithil ritual life. Retail transformed context: a kohbar-derived image could hang beside textiles, metalwork or other state-labelled crafts. This widened demand and helped stabilise “Madhubani painting” as a category familiar to

Indian urban consumers. Yet emporium presentation could also flatten differences among villages, artists and ritual contexts. The cultural economy gained scale partly by simplifying the story told about what was being sold.

48.17 National awards transformed household painters into public cultural figures

Government awards, craft competitions and invitations to demonstrate painting created public careers that had no exact equivalent in the older domestic system. Recognition could bring cash prizes, commissions, travel and a stronger bargaining position with buyers. It could also make an artist into a symbolic representative of Bihar or of Indian folk art. The award system thus converted artistic distinction into institutional capital. Because recognition was scarce, however, it could produce hierarchy among painters. A handful of award-winning names might command attention while many others remained suppliers in a low-price craft market. The historian should therefore read awards both as evidence of achievement and as mechanisms through which states help construct artistic canons.

48.18 Museums turned commodities into heritage and art-historical evidence

When a painting enters a museum, its economic life does not end; its symbolic value changes. Accession numbers, dates, artist names, materials and provenance become durable metadata. British Museum holdings from the late 1960s and early 1970s preserve handmade-paper works and record how some reached Delhi emporia or local centres before entering collections. Museums can protect works from dispersal and make individual careers studyable, but selection creates another filter. Objects that museums acquire may be treated as representative long after the market conditions that produced them have changed. Museum history is therefore part of the cultural economy: institutional preservation shapes what future scholars are able to know.

Figure 190 — How cultural value was produced

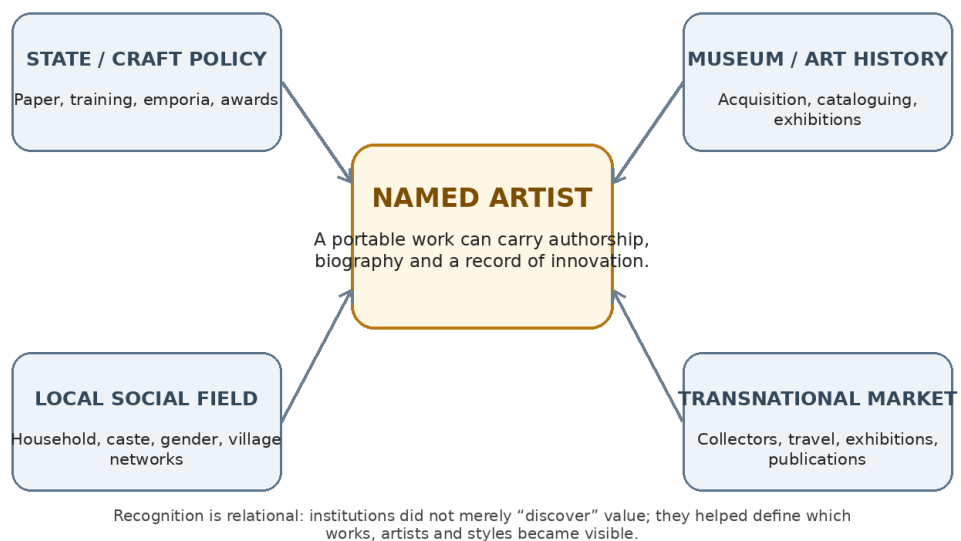


Figure 190 — How cultural value was produced

48.19 The 1970s created a transnational field of collectors, exhibitions and publications

Recent scholarship describes the 1970s as a decisive phase in the globalization of Mithila painting. Western interest in Indian spirituality, craft and countercultural aesthetics created audiences beyond the government emporium. Paintings travelled through collectors, scholars, museums and exhibitions, while books reproduced works for readers who might never see the originals. Transnational circulation increased prices and prestige for some artists and encouraged new subjects tailored to wider audiences. It also created interpretive risks: foreign viewers could reduce complex domestic imagery to exotic sexuality, tantric symbolism or timeless village spirituality. International success therefore expanded the cultural economy while increasing the importance of contextual scholarship.

48.20 Exhibitions changed how paintings were compared and judged

A ritual wall is encountered in a house; an exhibition places many portable works side by side under labels. This arrangement invites comparison among artists, styles, social groups and periods. The 1978 exhibition of Mithila paintings organised by Raymond Owens at the University of Texas, discussed in recent scholarship, is an example of how the art entered museum-style presentation in the United States. Exhibitions could give artists visibility and provide cultural context, but curatorial decisions also framed interpretation. Titles, wall texts and selection could reinforce the categories of “folk,” “women’s art,” “ritual,” or “contemporary.” The cultural economy therefore included not only sale but the production of meaning in exhibition space.

48.21 The “folk art” label opened markets while limiting artistic mobility

Classification as folk or handicraft helped Mithila painting enter state craft programmes, emporia and specialist collections. Yet those same labels could restrict how works were evaluated. A painting by a named artist might be admired for authenticity or ethnographic value rather than composition, intellectual argument or personal experimentation. When an artist changed subject matter, critics could accuse her of losing tradition even though modern painters in other categories were expected to innovate. This asymmetry is central to the cultural economy. Market success depended partly on appearing recognisably traditional, while individual careers often depended on extending the tradition. Painters therefore negotiated a narrow space between recognisability and invention.

48.22 Income could alter household bargaining without eliminating gender inequality

Cash earnings from painting gave some women resources that were visibly linked to their own skill. Income could help meet food costs, schooling, medical expenses, dowry obligations or house construction and could strengthen a painter’s standing within the family. Yet earning money did not automatically transfer full control over that money. Male relatives could negotiate with buyers, travel to markets or manage bank accounts; domestic labour still had to be performed; and access to paper, training and contacts remained uneven. The strongest historical claim is therefore not that commercialization “liberated” Maithil women, but that it created a new economic resource whose effects depended on household structure, caste, class, age and access to institutions.

48.23 Commercialization could widen agency and narrow artistic choices at the same time

Artists gained new opportunities because buyers wanted paintings, but the market communicated preferences back to the village. Certain deities, wedding images, fish, peacocks, trees and dense decorative borders became instantly recognisable as “Madhubani.” Repetition could provide dependable income, yet it could also encourage standardisation. Some observers criticised buyer-driven production for weakening ritual knowledge or colour practices. Such criticism should itself be historicised: tradition was never motionless, and market demand did not erase artists’ intelligence. The key analytical point is that commercialization introduced a new source of constraint alongside older ritual, familial and caste expectations. Modern painters worked within several systems of obligation at once.

48.24 Men entered a field long represented as women’s art

The paper market created incentives for men to paint, organise production, teach or mediate sales. This shift unsettled the popular image of Mithila painting as exclusively women’s creativity. Male participation should not be treated simply as decline, because men could develop significant artistic careers and contribute to new themes. It did, however, alter labour competition and the gendered meaning of the practice. A household art that women had transmitted as part of ritual competence could become an income-producing occupation attractive to anyone with access to training and buyers. The twentieth-century cultural economy therefore changed not only the medium and market but the gender composition of the artistic field.

48.25 New subjects converted painting into a record of contemporary life

Portable works made it possible to paint events that had no fixed place in the older ritual repertoire. Artists depicted village disputes, travel, medical treatment, environmental campaigns, political themes and changing gender relations. A 1977 murder near Harinagar was later recorded in a substantial series of drawings by Krishnanand Jha, while Ganga Devi used painting to narrate personal experience. These works demonstrate that Mithila painting became a historical medium, not merely a decorative survival. The ability to preserve and sell narrative series encouraged painters to treat contemporary experience as worthy of visual record. Cultural economy and social history thus converged: the market created durable objects through which artists could document their own time.

48.26 Authenticity became a contested economic resource

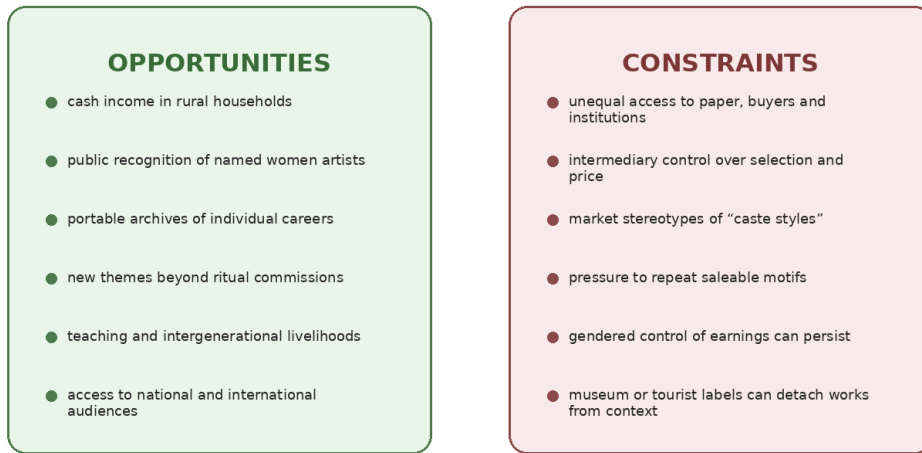
As demand increased, claims of authenticity acquired monetary value. Buyers could prefer natural pigments, traditional motifs, particular villages or artists associated with established lineages. Dealers and institutions sometimes used caste, gender or ritual biography as markers of authenticity. Yet authenticity is not a simple survival from the past; it is also a modern argument about value. A paper painting made for sale can be deeply rooted in inherited practice, while a wall painting made for a tourist demonstration can itself be shaped by market expectation. The historian must therefore ask who invokes authenticity, for what audience and with what economic effect. Tradition became one of the currencies through which twentieth-century Mithila art was priced and legitimised.

48.27 The market produced new inequalities inside the painting economy

Not every painter benefited equally from rising demand. Artists with access to government officers, local centres, urban dealers, English-speaking scholars or international collectors could gain visibility that neighbours lacked. Awards and museum acquisitions could raise one career rapidly. Conversely, anonymous

production, low-price tourist work and subcontracted painting could remain poorly paid even while the art form's reputation grew. These inequalities caution against treating aggregate commercial success as proof of prosperity for all practitioners. The twentieth-century cultural economy had a star system at one end and routine craft labour at the other, with many intermediate forms of production. Understanding this range is essential to any social history of the art.

Opportunities and constraints



The market could widen agency and narrow choices at the same time. "Commercialization" is therefore a relationship to analyse, not a single verdict.

Figure 191 — Cultural economy: opportunities and constraints

48.28 Transnational recognition changed local aspirations

Foreign exhibitions and collectors did not operate only outside Mithila; news of international recognition returned to villages and affected how families imagined artistic careers. Travel, museum display and publication could transform a painter into a local model of success. Younger artists could learn that visual skill might produce income and mobility beyond agriculture or domestic labour. At the same time, external demand could reshape subject matter and scale. The cultural economy therefore functioned as a feedback loop: local practice supplied the market, the market created prestige, and prestige altered local decisions about who should learn to paint. This feedback helped turn a crisis-era employment experiment into a durable artistic sector.

48.29 Method: separate artistic change, market change and social change

Three different histories are often collapsed into one. Artistic change concerns line, colour, composition, subject and medium. Market change concerns price, portability, retail networks, buyers and institutions. Social change concerns gender, caste, household income, mobility and status. They interact, but none can be inferred automatically from another. A new pigment does not prove empowerment; an award does not prove high income; a high sale price does not prove that the artist received most of it. This chapter therefore treats the twentieth-century cultural economy as a network of relationships rather than a triumphalist story of "folk art becoming famous." Evidence must specify whether it concerns objects, institutions, money, reputation or lived social consequences.

48.30 Conclusion: the cultural economy made Mithila painting durable, mobile and politically legible

The twentieth century changed Mithila painting by creating infrastructures through which images, names and money could travel. Colonial documentation made selected domestic paintings visible; post-independence craft policy linked heritage with rural employment; the drought-era paper experiment created portable commodities; emporia and local centres distributed them; awards, museums and exhibitions produced prestige; and transnational collectors expanded the field. These processes gave many artists new income and unprecedented authorship, while also generating stereotypes, inequalities and pressure to satisfy buyers. The most important transformation was therefore not a simple passage from tradition to market. It was the creation of a cultural economy in which ritual knowledge, individual creativity, social identity and institutional value became permanently entangled.

Table 48.1 — Evidence domains for the twentieth-century cultural economy of Mithila painting

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Archer photographs and 1949 article	Early external documentation, selected households, metropolitan framing	Selective archive shaped by colonial access and interpretation
Government/craft-policy accounts	Drought-era intervention, paper supply, employment rationale, institutional support	Later recollections may simplify who initiated specific steps
Emporium and museum provenance	Movement through local centres, Bihar State Emporium, collections and dates	Preserves market survivors, not the full range of production
Awards and official gazettes	Public recognition and national legitimization of named artists	Honours represent selective institutional recognition, not income data
Artist biographies and monographs	Individual careers, innovation, travel, illness, narrative series	Famous artists are better documented than ordinary producers
Village ethnography and oral testimony	Household income, gender, caste, training and intermediary relations	Often local and time-specific; cannot stand for all Mithila
Exhibition and transnational records	Foreign reception, curatorial framing, collector networks	External taste can overrepresent particular themes and styles

Chapter 49 — Music, Song and Performance

49.1 Performance history requires an event, a repertoire and a social setting

Music becomes historical evidence only when it is attached to a dateable setting: who performed, for whom, on what occasion, in what language, and through what medium. A song-text without a performance context is not the same thing as a sounded event; a living performance is not by itself proof that the same melody, instrumentation or social meaning existed centuries earlier. This chapter therefore treats music, song and performance as connected but separately testable histories across Mithila, Vajji and Anga.

49.2 Sound is unusually vulnerable evidence

Buildings, manuscripts and metal objects may survive for centuries; sound disappears as it is made. Before recording technologies, historians must work through notation, literary description, iconography, surviving instruments, ritual prescriptions, named repertoires and later oral transmission. Each medium preserves something different. A manuscript can preserve words or musical signs but not a singer's timbre; a sculpture can show an instrument but not the tune; an oral rendition can preserve a practice while also accumulating later changes.

49.3 Pan-Indian music theory is a framework, not a regional transcript

The Natya-sastra, Dattilam and later Sanskrit musicological traditions provide indispensable concepts for rhythm, melody, performance and aesthetic response, but they cannot be treated as direct descriptions of village practice in Mithila or Anga. Their value is comparative and conceptual. Regional history begins where a text, manuscript, inscription, named patron, repertoire or securely located performance connects those wider traditions to the eastern Gangetic world.

49.4 Nanyadeva provides rare early evidence linking Mithila to written musicology

A particularly important bridge appears around the early twelfth century in the work associated with King Nanyadeva. The Sarasvati-hrdyalankara or Bharata-bhasya tradition attributed to him preserves substantial musicological discussion, and D. R. Widdess has shown that the Panika song examples transmit melody and tala information of exceptional value for the history of early Indian music. This evidence demonstrates learned musical activity connected with the Karnata courtly sphere; it does not prove that all inhabitants of Mithila followed the same repertory or theory.

Figure 192 — Evidence ladder for music and performance history

Strong claims require evidence appropriate to the date and performance context

Live / recorded performance

Direct evidence for a documented performance, not automatically for its antiquity

Named collections and field recordings

Evidence for repertoire, singers, occasions and variants at the time of collection

Texts, notation and manuscripts

Evidence for musical concepts, song-texts and elite/learned practice; performance must still be inferred

Images, instruments and material traces

Evidence for objects, bodily practice and representation; sound itself is not preserved

Retrospective memory

Useful for continuity claims only when checked against earlier layers

Figure 192 — Evidence ladder for music and performance history

49.5 Simraongarh was a node of patronage, but court evidence must not swallow social history

The Karnata political centre at Simraongarh created conditions in which scholarship, ritual, court ceremony and musical expertise could meet. Courtly sponsorship matters because it supported specialists and textual production, yet a royal musicological work is evidence first for a learned milieu. The social history of music also has to recover household, agricultural, devotional, itinerant and festival performance that usually left thinner written traces.

49.6 Medieval literary vocabulary records a world in which performance was socially visible

Jyotirisvara and later Maithili literary traditions contain descriptions of urban life, occupations, festive scenes, song and dramatic entertainment. Such texts show that performers and performance were recognizable components of social space. Their catalogues are literary constructions, however, and cannot be converted mechanically into census lists. The safest inference is that musical and theatrical labour formed part of the visible economy of courts, towns, ritual gatherings and public entertainment.

49.7 The project separates Mahakavi Vidyapati's Padavali from the later Vidyapati Thakkura

This volume follows its adopted two-Vidyapati framework. The core Maithili Padavali song tradition is assigned here to Mahakavi Vidyapati, placed before Jyotirisvara, while the later Vidyapati Thakkura belongs to the Oiniwar-associated Sanskrit and Avahatta documentary and courtly world. Because most modern scholarship instead combines these corpora under one fifteenth-century author, every use of conventional Vidyapati scholarship in this chapter is treated as evidence for reception, manuscripts and performance history rather than as a concession on authorship chronology.

49.8 A song tradition can outlive, reshape and even obscure authorship

Once lyrics circulate in performance, singers may shorten verses, alter wording, change melody, combine stanzas, attach a familiar bhanita, or adapt a song to a new ritual moment. The long afterlife of Vidyapati songs across Mithila and eastern India therefore has two historical dimensions: the earlier composition-history proposed by this project and the later, independently documentable history of circulation. Oral popularity is evidence for reception, not a secure method for assigning the date of composition.

49.9 Life-cycle songs organize music around social transition

Ethnographic classification of Maithili folksong repeatedly emphasizes birth, initiation, marriage and departure. These are not merely themes; they are timed social acts. The song announces who may speak, joke, bless, lament or instruct at a particular stage of a rite. Because different songs belong to different moments, the sequence of performance can reveal household hierarchy, gendered authority, kinship tension and the emotional management of transition more clearly than a decontextualized lyric collection.

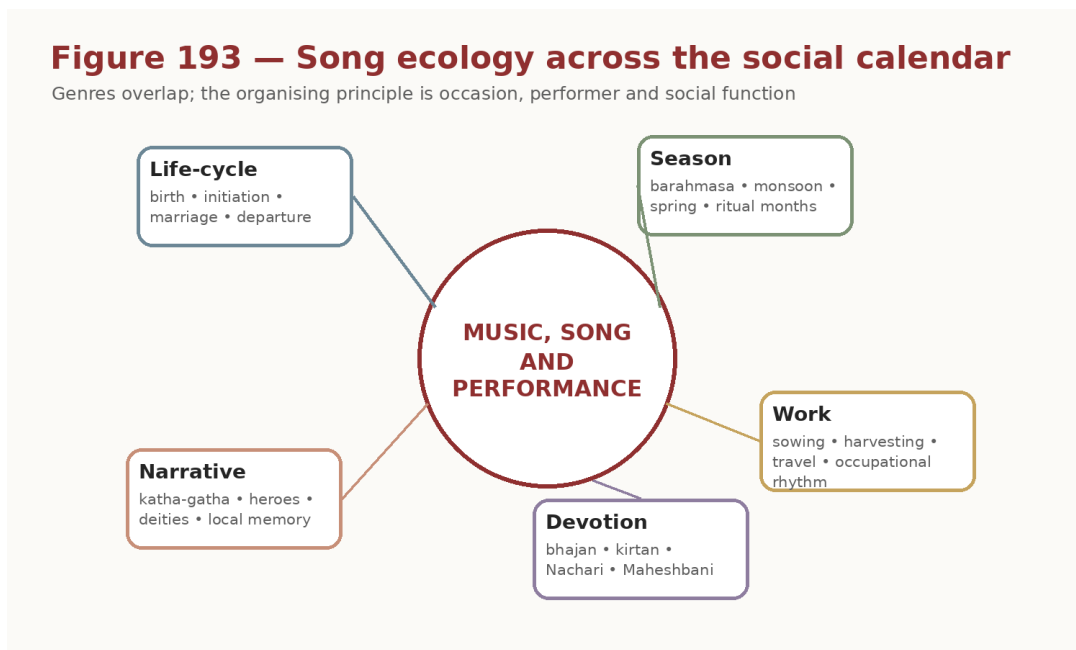


Figure 193 — Song ecology across the social calendar

49.10 Marriage creates one of the densest performance sequences

Wedding repertoires stretch across preparation, auspicious opening, negotiations, ritual actions, teasing, the reception of the groom, departure and later return. IGNCA documentation notes the movement from Suhag songs toward Samdaun or farewell songs within a larger chain of named ritual genres. Historical analysis should therefore study wedding music as a sequence of performances rather than as a single genre, and should distinguish current documentation from claims that every named form is medieval in exactly its present shape.

49.11 Women are central custodians of much domestic repertoire

A large proportion of documented Maithili life-cycle singing is performed by women in spaces where formal literary archives historically recorded little. This makes women's performance a major archive of emotion, social commentary, ritual expertise and intergenerational instruction. It also creates a

methodological problem: twentieth- and twenty-first-century field documentation may preserve old structures, but the date of a song's present wording must be established separately from the antiquity of the rite.

49.12 Seasonal song turns the calendar into a musical structure

Barahmasa and related month-sequence traditions connect climate, separation, agricultural expectation and bodily feeling. Other songs cluster around monsoon, spring and named festivals. The important historical point is not that a single melody persisted unchanged, but that seasonal time repeatedly organized performance. In a floodplain and monsoon economy, the calendar was audible: rain, sowing, travel constraints, heat and absence became recurring frameworks through which social experience was sung.

49.13 Work songs join rhythm to labour without making labour picturesque

Songs associated with sowing, harvesting, winnowing, travel or other repetitive work can coordinate movement, relieve monotony, communicate practical knowledge and permit social commentary. The category should not be romanticized as proof of an undifferentiated village community. Work was divided by gender, age, occupation and property relations; therefore the right question is which workers sang, during which tasks, and whether performance expressed solidarity, instruction, complaint or hierarchy.

49.14 Devotional repertoires create overlapping sacred publics

Documented Maithili classifications include bhajan, kirtan, morning songs, family-deity songs, Bhagavati songs, Nachari and Maheshbani, among other forms. These labels show a dense relation between devotion and performance, but they also warn against treating "religious music" as one homogeneous field. Some performances are household-based, some congregational, some tied to pilgrimage or festival, and some shaped by professional or semi-professional performers.

49.15 Shaiva, Shakta and Vaishnava song traditions share a region without becoming identical

Mithila's sacred soundscape includes Shiva-Parvati narratives, goddess traditions, Krishna-centred lyric and family-deity repertoires. Shared melodies or performance spaces can encourage borrowing, while theological and ritual distinctions remain meaningful. The historical task is to trace movement among repertoires rather than assume either complete separation or complete syncretism. A genre name, deity and melody may each have a different history.

49.16 Muslim participation belongs inside the regional history of song

Regional documentation records Muslim Maithils participating in Maithili-language expressive culture, including forms associated with marriage and mourning. Such evidence is important because it prevents the musical history of Mithila from being reduced to one religious community. At the same time, the specific repertoire, social setting and date must be documented case by case; shared language does not erase differences in ritual obligation or devotional meaning.

49.17 Narrative song turns memory into performance

Katha-gatha traditions, heroic narratives and deity stories are performed rather than simply recited. Melody, repetition, gesture, dialogue and audience response determine how the story works socially. Salhesh, Lorik and related regional narratives therefore belong simultaneously to oral history, music and theatre. Their

present popularity can be documented securely; claims about the antiquity of particular episodes or melodies require earlier textual or material anchors.

49.18 Anga's Bihula-Bishahari complex joins song, ritual, theatre and image

In the Bhagalpur-Champanagar zone, the Bihula-Bishahari narrative is embedded in an annual ritual complex that includes songs, procession, worship, folk theatre and Manjusha objects or images. Modern documentation identifies the gatha and songs with the Angika-speaking region. The performance complex is historically valuable precisely because its media reinforce one another. Yet the date of the present festival form, the story's literary parallels and the antiquity of individual songs must remain separate questions.

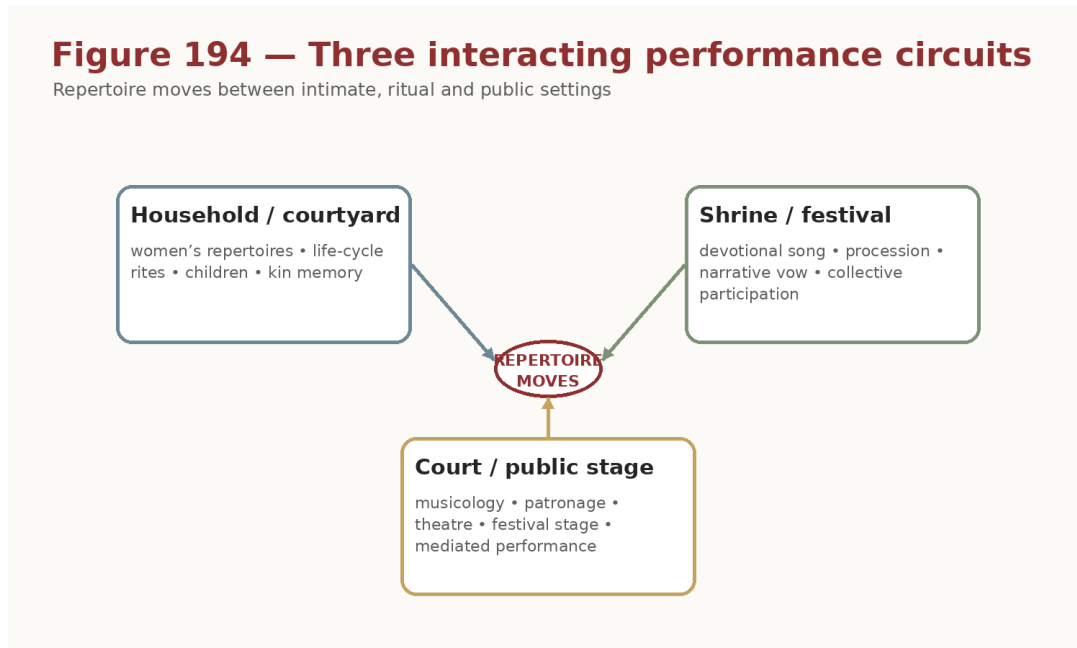


Figure 194 — Three interacting performance circuits

49.19 Public performance creates temporary social space

A courtyard, shrine forecourt, village path, mela ground or urban stage becomes a different social environment while performance is underway. Audiences assemble, performers acquire temporary authority, donations circulate, traders benefit from crowds and local prestige is displayed. Music is therefore part of public culture and local economy as well as aesthetic expression. The same repertoire can change meaning when moved from a household rite to an amplified festival stage.

49.20 Instruments must be dated as carefully as songs

Historical references to drums, cymbals, strings or wind instruments should not be collapsed into the exact modern ensemble familiar from contemporary performances. Instrument names can shift, construction changes, and harmonium or electronic amplification belong to later technological histories. Iconography and texts can establish categories of sound production, while museum objects, photographs and recordings are needed to reconstruct specific modern instrument forms and combinations.

49.21 Rhythm links voice, body and collective coordination

Performance is not only melody and words. Clapping, percussion, walking, circular movement, dance steps and repeated refrains can coordinate bodies and signal transitions. Nanyadeva's notated material is especially valuable because it provides an early written window on relations between tala and melody, while later folk performance reveals other rhythmic systems through observation and recording. These bodies of evidence should be compared, not assumed to be identical.

49.22 Professional and semi-professional performers complicate the folk/classical divide

Regional performance has involved household singers, ritual specialists, mendicants, storytellers, theatre troupes, court musicians and later radio or stage artists. Their repertoires can cross the categories "folk," "devotional," "classical" and "popular." Those labels are often products of collectors, institutions and modern cultural policy. Social history should instead follow training, payment, patronage, mobility and audience.

49.23 India-Nepal circulation helped repertoires travel without fixing a single centre

Mithila's cultural geography crosses the modern India-Nepal border. Courts, pilgrimage, marriage, scholarship and migration connected the plains of north Bihar with the Tarai and Kathmandu Valley. Songs and dramatic forms could therefore move through people rather than through a single institutional channel. A repertoire documented in Nepal may preserve important evidence for Maithili circulation, but location of a surviving manuscript or performance does not automatically establish its place of composition.

49.24 Song and theatre meet at a porous boundary

Many performances alternate speech, lyric, gesture and instrumental accompaniment. Kirtaniya drama and other regional theatre traditions make the boundary between "song" and "play" especially porous. Chapter 50 examines dramatic cultures directly; the point here is methodological: a sung text may be part of a larger staged event, and extracting it as a poem can erase performer roles, entrances, audience interaction and musical timing.

49.25 Print created stable song collections while performance continued to vary

Printed anthologies made it easier to preserve, teach and circulate lyrics in standardized sequences. They also encouraged readers to imagine a definitive text where singers might know several variants. The growth of printed Vidyapati collections and Maithili song books therefore changed authority: editors, publishers and literary institutions increasingly shared with performers the power to decide what counted as an authentic song.

49.26 Recording, radio and amplification created a new performance history

The arrival of gramophone recording, radio, cassette, loudspeaker, film, television and digital media changed duration, voice production, audience size and circulation. A song that once depended on presence could become repeatable and commercially distributable. Amplification also reorganized festival soundscapes, allowing small ensembles to dominate large public spaces. These changes must be dated as modern transformations rather than projected into earlier performance practice.

49.27 Migration turns regional song into portable memory

Labour migration, education and urban settlement carry Maithili and Angika repertoires beyond the region. Songs performed in Delhi, Kolkata, Mumbai, the Gulf or diaspora communities can become markers of home, marriage network and language identity. Migration may preserve older pieces because they acquire nostalgic value, but it can also accelerate hybridization through new instruments, languages and performance formats.

Figure 195 — The Bihula-Bishahari performance complex in Anga

A ritual narrative can join song, theatre, procession, image and place without proving a single ancient origin date

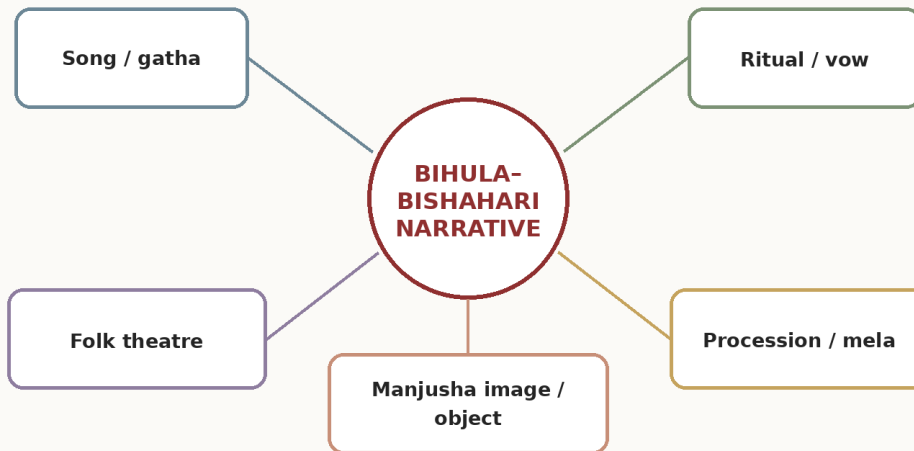


Figure 195 — The Bihula-Bishahari performance complex in Anga

49.28 Festivals and cultural institutions can preserve and repackage at the same time

State festivals, academies, competitions, university departments and cultural organizations provide stages, honoraria and documentation that can sustain performers. They also select which genres represent the region publicly. A domestic women's song, a devotional narrative or an Angika folk drama may be shortened, costumed or amplified for the stage. Preservation therefore always has an institutional history and should not be mistaken for neutral transmission.

49.29 Method: separate composition, repertoire, performance and recording dates

Four dates may coexist in one song history. The underlying composition may be old; a named repertoire may be documented later; a particular performance may occur on a known date; and the surviving audio or video may be later still. Claims about continuity become stronger when several layers converge. When they do not, the historian should state the gap rather than fill it with cultural memory or modern popularity.

49.30 Conclusion: performance is a social infrastructure of memory

Across Mithila, Vajji and Anga, music links household transitions, seasonal time, labour, devotion, heroic narrative, festival assembly and public culture. Its history is neither a straight line from "ancient tradition" nor a sequence of isolated genres. It is a history of people repeatedly remaking repertoires in new settings. The

most durable continuity lies not in an unchanged melody but in the regional capacity to make social knowledge, emotion and collective memory audible through performance.

Table 49.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing music, song and performance

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Musicological manuscripts and notation	Named concepts, melodic/rhythmic structures, learned practice, textual transmission	Usually strongest for elite/learned settings; does not reproduce actual historical sound
Literary song texts and anthologies	Lyrics, genre names, authorship claims, editorial canon and textual variants	Text may be separated from original melody, performer and occasion
Ritual and ethnographic documentation	Occasion, performers, sequence, social function, gendered and household practice	Date of observation is secure; antiquity of the observed form is a separate question
Iconography and surviving instruments	Instrument types, gesture, performance posture and material technologies	Representation may be symbolic; objects and names change over time
Audio, radio, film and video	Actual voice, tune, tempo, instrumentation, style and audience response at a known moment	Modern media can alter performance and cannot prove earlier sound without corroboration
Festival and institutional archives	Patronage, public staging, awards, programmes, repertoire selection and cultural policy	Institutions reshape what they document and present
Oral memory and performer testimony	Transmission routes, local attribution, learning histories and meanings given by performers	Memory is historically valuable but not a substitute for independent dating
Cross-regional comparison	Movement among Mithila, Anga, Bengal, Nepal and other eastern performance zones	Similarity alone does not establish origin, direction of borrowing or chronology

Chapter 50 — Theatre and Dramatic Cultures

50.1 Theatre is an event before it is a text

The history of theatre cannot be written from playbooks alone. A dramatic text preserves possible speech, songs, roles and sequences, but performance also requires bodies, voice, movement, music, costume, a place, an audience and a social occasion. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga the archive is therefore uneven: some periods preserve manuscripts but no witnessed staging; others preserve living performance with uncertain antiquity; still others leave only literary references to actors or entertainment. This chapter uses a layered method. A play may establish a dramatic repertoire without proving exactly how it was staged. A modern performance may preserve an older narrative without being an unchanged medieval survival. The object of study is the changing institution of performance itself.

50.2 Dramatic evidence survives in unequal layers

Archaeology rarely preserves a temporary stage, painted backdrop or performer's garment. Manuscripts may survive because they entered libraries, while popular scripts, memorized parts and inexpensive booklets disappear. Court records privilege patrons; literary histories privilege authors; ethnography may record only the late life of a tradition. The archive therefore systematically overrepresents durable and elite materials. A responsible history combines play texts, manuscript colophons, stage directions, courtly and religious contexts, references to performers, printed ephemera, and where available recorded performances. Absence of a surviving script is not proof that theatre did not occur, and possession of a script is not proof of a continuous troupe. The evidentiary asymmetry is itself part of the social history.

50.3 The Nāṭyaśāstra provides concepts, not a local transcript

Bharata's Nāṭyaśāstra remains indispensable for the language of rasa, gesture, costume, music, character type and theatrical convention. Yet it is a pan-Indian normative treatise with a long and complex textual history, not an ethnographic description of medieval Mithila. Later dramatists could inherit, adapt or selectively cite its conventions while performing in different spaces and for different audiences. Terms such as nāṇḁ, sūtradhāra, nāṭī, abhinaya and āhārya can therefore illuminate dramatic structure, but they should not be used to reconstruct an imaginary permanent Sanskrit theatre building in every regional centre. Regional evidence begins where texts, manuscripts, patrons, linguistic choices or performance records anchor those concepts to a historically located practice.

50.4 Jyotirīśvara's Dhūrtasamāgama is a crucial early dramatic witness

Dhūrtasamāgama, associated with Jyotirīśvara Ṭhākura and the Karnata courtly world of early fourteenth-century Mithila, is the most important early surviving dramatic witness for the region. Modern manuscript scholarship describes it as a satirical prahasana that combines Sanskrit and Prakrit dramatic material with Maithili songs and survives in manuscript traditions extending into Nepal. Its value is double. As literature it represents comic social types, dispute, desire, mendicancy and urban encounter; as theatre it demonstrates that learned dramaturgy and vernacular song could coexist in one dramatic architecture. What it does not give us is a filmed performance or complete production dossier. The historian must distinguish the text's performative design from the exact circumstances of any particular staging.

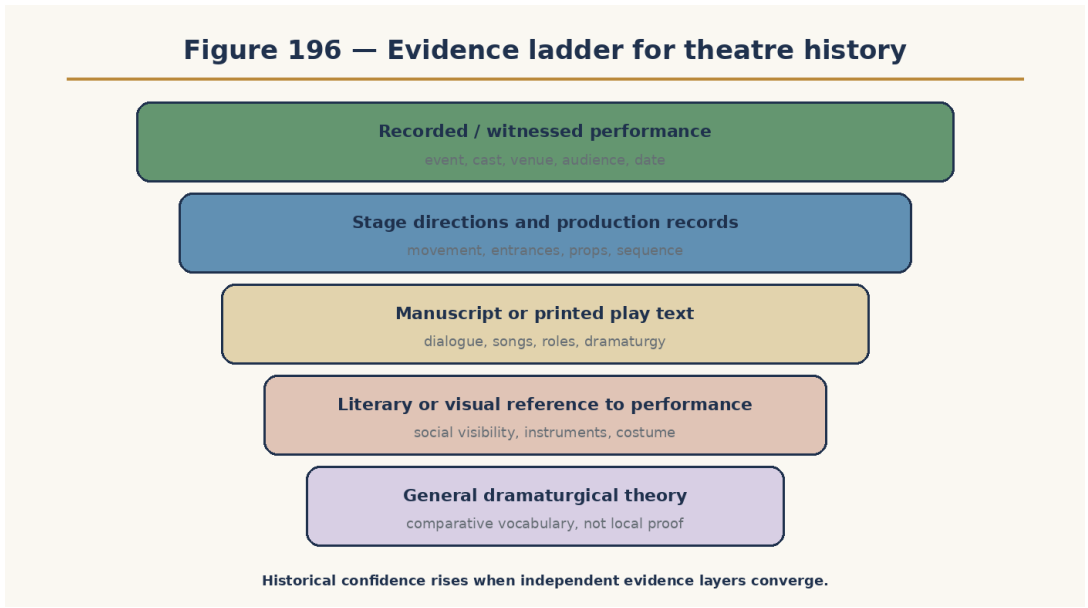


Figure 196 — Evidence ladder for theatre history

50.5 Comedy makes social difference audible

Prahasana works through contrast. Different characters can be marked by speech register, occupation, bodily conduct, moral pretension or social vulnerability. In a multilingual region, linguistic contrast can become theatrical material: Sanskrit may carry learned authority, Prakrit may mark conventional dramatic roles, and vernacular song may create immediacy or local recognition. This does not yield a simple language-to-caste dictionary, because dramatic language is stylized and genre-bound. It does, however, reveal that audiences were expected to recognize differences in register and social persona. Theatre therefore belongs to language history as well as literary history: it stages hierarchy, mimicry and negotiation rather than merely describing them.

50.6 A courtly text is not only court propaganda

Royal patronage matters because courts could support poets, musicians, ritual specialists and manuscript production. Yet the social world represented in comedy extends beyond kings and scholars. Servants, mendicants, brokers, women, performers and urban figures enter the dramatic field precisely because theatre converts social difference into interaction. The court may have financed or received a work without exhausting its meanings. Conversely, the presence of ordinary characters in a play does not prove that ordinary people attended a particular court performance. Patronage, representation and audience must therefore be kept separate. This distinction prevents both an elite-only history of theatre and an equally unsupported claim that every court drama was popular public theatre.

50.7 The project assigns Gorakṣavijaya to the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura

This volume maintains its adopted two-Vidyāpati framework. Gorakṣavijaya belongs here to the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura associated with the Oiniwar courtly and Sanskrit-Avahaṭṭa intellectual world, not to the earlier Mahākavi Vidyāpati of the Maithili Padāvalī. The play is especially important because its Sanskrit and Prakrit frame is interwoven with Maithili songs in a narrative of Gorakhnātha and Matsyendranātha. Modern scholarship commonly attributes the work to a single fifteenth-century Vidyāpati, while some

scholarship has questioned the authorship of the fully realized play. This volume states its own attribution rule explicitly rather than turning it into a claim of universal scholarly consensus.

50.8 Gorakṣavijaya shows a stronger vernacular dramatic presence

Compared with a predominantly classical-language dramatic frame, Gorakṣavijaya gives the vernacular song sequence a larger narrative burden. Songs do not merely decorate a story; they help move it, characterize religious conflict and organize performance. That feature is central to the later Kīrtaniyā dramatic tradition, where music, recitation, dialogue and gesture form one event. The manuscript itself still cannot tell us whether every performance used the same melodies, tempo, cast or choreography. It does show that the boundary between “play” and “song performance” was structurally porous. This is one reason Chapter 49 and the present chapter overlap: music is not accompaniment added after drama, but one of the means by which dramatic action becomes public.

50.9 Kīrtaniyā drama is a performance system, not merely a genre label

Kīrtaniyā nāṭaka is best understood as an institutional arrangement joining devotional narrative, sung verse, dialogue, gesture, musicians and a troupe. Literary histories often identify professional or semi-professional Kīrtaniyā performers and connect the tradition with Maithili devotional drama. The social implications are significant. Performance required training, memory, musical coordination, travel, patronage or payment, and access to occasions at which a troupe could gather an audience. Such labour complicates the familiar division between “classical” court art and anonymous “folk” expression. A troupe may serve a noble household on one occasion and a broader public gathering on another; the same story can move between prestige and popular settings.

50.10 Umāpati Upādhyāya’s Pārijātaharaṇa became a key dramatic text

Umāpati Upādhyāya’s Pārijātaharaṇa is central to the history of Maithili dramatic writing. George A. Grierson edited and translated the work in 1917, and later Maithili editions kept it within the regional literary canon. Its Kṛṣṇa narrative, frame conventions and substantial Maithili song material make it especially useful for understanding the relation between Sanskritic dramaturgy and vernacular performance. The text has long been associated with Kīrtaniyā presentation, but the date of a composition, the date of a surviving manuscript and the date of a documented performance are not interchangeable. The safest historical claim is that the work became an important dramatic repertoire and that later performance traditions treated it as performable devotional theatre.

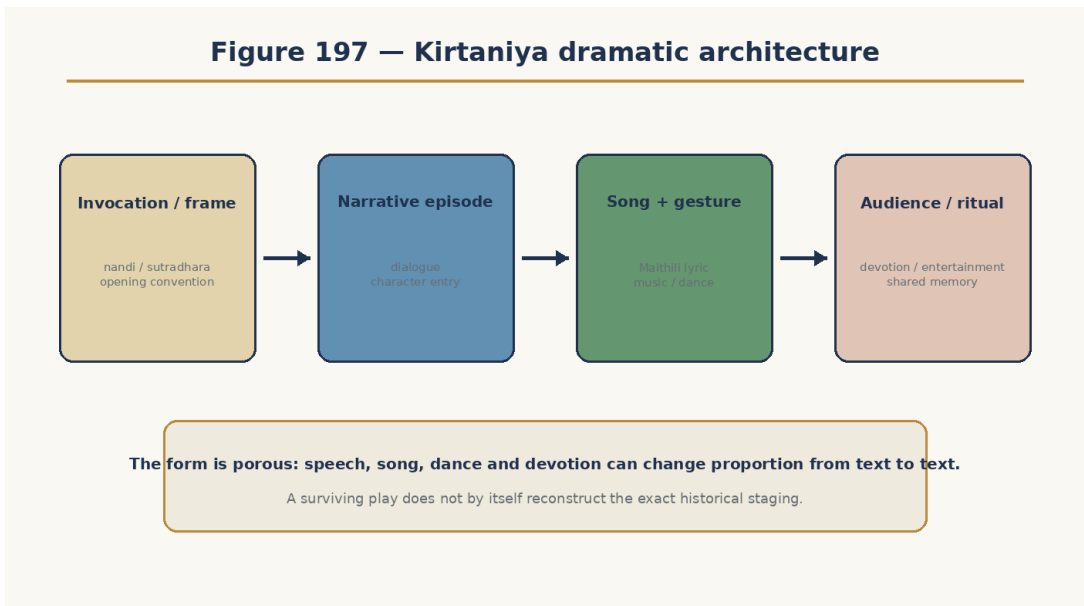


Figure 197 — Kirtaniya dramatic architecture

50.11 Dramatic structure can survive even when staging changes

A nāndī, introductory frame, character entrance or repeated song cue can remain legible across centuries even when the performance environment changes. A manuscript copied for reading may preserve instructions created for staging; a printed edition may stabilize words while living performers continue to alter delivery. Theatre history therefore needs two chronologies: the history of the dramatic structure and the history of its realizations. The distinction is especially useful for Pārijātaḥaraṇa and related repertoire, where the surviving text preserves classical conventions but modern recollection of Kīrtaniyā performance may emphasize song, devotional affect and troupe practice. Neither chronology should be allowed to erase the other.

50.12 Performance spaces were flexible and socially differentiated

The region does not require a permanent proscenium building in order to possess a theatrical culture. Court halls, temple or shrine precincts, courtyards, festival grounds, temporary platforms and open public spaces can all host dramatic events. Each setting changes audience composition and authority. Court performance can foreground patronage and etiquette; ritual performance can embed theatre in worship; a fair can create a mixed temporary public; a courtyard can intensify proximity between performer and spectator. Because direct architectural evidence for specific medieval performances is scarce, these spatial categories should be treated as historically plausible types only when connected to texts or later documentation. Chapter 51 examines fairs and public culture more directly.

50.13 Costume and props are evidence only when they are actually attested

Dramatic texts can mention ornaments, weapons, ascetic marks, crowns, veils or distinctive costume, while sculpture and painting can provide a wider visual vocabulary. Yet a pictured deity is not automatically a theatre costume manual. The āhārya dimension of performance must be reconstructed by triangulating textual stage cues, object history, regional dress evidence and later performance documentation. This is particularly important for mythological theatre, where modern costumes may draw on calendar art, cinema

and manufactured materials unavailable to earlier performers. The historical task is not to make the past look theatrically complete; it is to identify what can be dated and to leave the rest open.

50.14 Gesture turns speech into embodied social action

Entrances, glances, movement, dance and comic bodily exaggeration are not secondary to dialogue. They determine status, desire, fear, authority and ridicule in the moment of performance. Classical dramaturgy offers a rich vocabulary for embodied expression, but regional practice can simplify, recombine or vernacularize gesture. A song may be acted, a dialogue may be rhythmically delivered, and devotional movement may shift the event toward *kīrtana*. This embodied dimension helps explain why the written archive always understates theatre: the page records only a fraction of what spectators experienced. Where no choreography survives, the historian should analyze the functions implied by the text rather than invent precise gestures.

50.15 The Nepalmandala archive is central to Maithili theatre history

The movement of manuscripts, scholars and courtly practices across the plains-Himalayan corridor made Nepalmandala one of the major archives of Maithili dramatic culture. Surviving manuscripts in Nepal preserve works whose composition or earlier circulation belonged to Mithila, while Malla courts themselves became productive centres of Maithili dramatic writing. This is not a marginal afterlife of a “pure” tradition located elsewhere. It is a connected history in which languages, scripts, patrons and stage conventions were reassembled in new political settings. The archive therefore prevents a modern national border from being projected backward onto the history of Maithili performance.

50.16 Bhaktapur developed a substantial Maithili court-stage tradition

Ramawatar Yadav’s study of medieval Maithili stagecraft in the Nepalmandala identifies Bhaktapur as a major school of dramatic production. The seventeenth-century Malla court generated numerous plays in Maithili, alongside Newari and other literary activity. Stage directions, multilingual manuscripts and named royal authors provide unusually dense evidence for theatre as an institutional court practice. The significance extends beyond royal authorship. A play presupposes scribes, singers, actors, musicians, rehearsals, costumes and audiences, even when the archive names the king more clearly than those workers. Reading the court archive socially therefore means recovering the hidden production system behind the celebrated author.

50.17 Jagajyoti Malla marks an important linguistic transition on the Nepal stage

Modern scholarship on Nepalese drama identifies Jagajyoti Malla of Bhaktapur as an important early seventeenth-century patron-author in the shift toward Maithili as a court dramatic language. Works attributed to him include Maithili plays such as *Muditakuvalayāśva-nāṭaka* and *Haragaurīvivāha-nāṭaka*. The larger importance is not a list of titles but the linguistic ecology of performance: Maithili could function as a prestige dramatic medium in a Newar-speaking court. Such use demonstrates cultural circulation rather than ethnic replacement. A court can stage a language because of literary prestige, performer networks, repertoire or political-cultural connection without making that language the everyday speech of the entire population.

50.18 Jagatprakāśa Malla shows how Maithili and Newari dramatic creativity could coexist

Jagatprakāśa Malla’s seventeenth-century oeuvre is especially revealing because he wrote in both Maithili and Newari. Recent scholarship emphasizes that Maithili had an established courtly dramatic role even as

Newari literary creativity expanded. This bilingual productivity dissolves a false choice between “local” and “imported” culture. Performance traditions can overlap: a court may inherit one prestigious dramatic language, cultivate another as mother tongue, and draw music or ritual from still wider networks. The theatre history of Nepalmandala is therefore a history of multilingual competence and selective patronage, not a sequence in which one language simply replaces another.

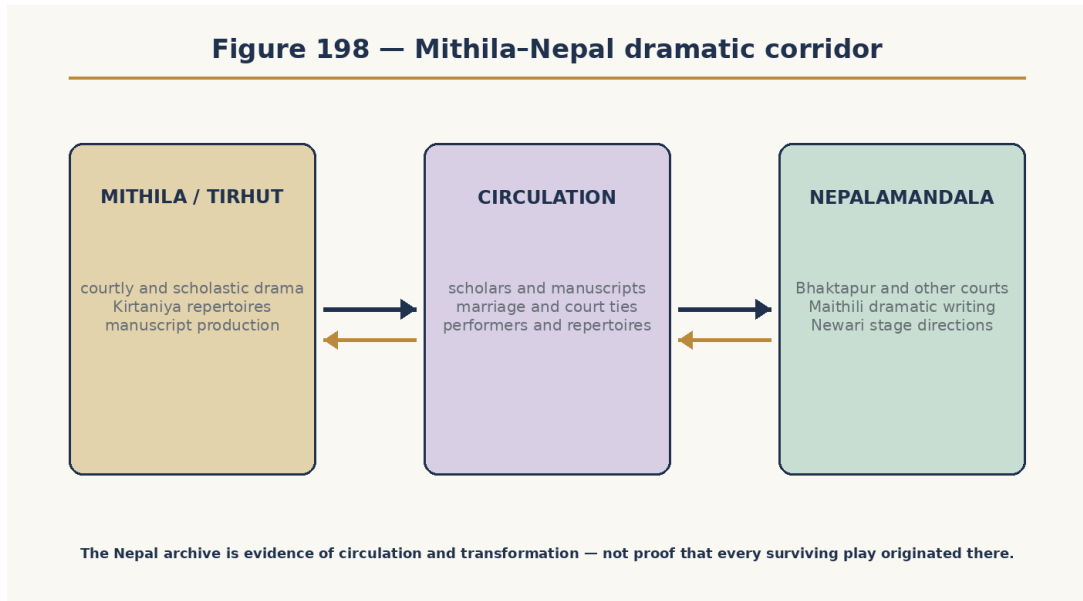


Figure 198 — Mithila-Nepal dramatic corridor

50.19 Royal authorship hides collective theatrical labour

When a king’s name survives on a play, the archive can make theatre look like solitary literary composition. Actual staging requires far more people. Musicians keep time; singers carry lyrics; actors memorize and improvise; dressers and craftsmen prepare appearance; scribes copy or prompt; attendants manage space and objects; patrons finance the event. Some roles may be hereditary or professional, others temporary. The absence of names for these workers is not evidence of their absence. Theatre history must therefore distinguish authorship from production. This is also a social-history correction: artistic prestige often rises upward toward a patron while labour disappears downward into anonymity.

50.20 Manuscript stage directions are small but powerful evidence

A brief instruction such as “enters,” “sings,” “dances” or a note identifying a character can reveal how a text imagined action. In Nepalese manuscripts, stage directions may appear in a language different from the main dialogue or songs, documenting the practical multilingualism of production. Their evidentiary value is high because they point beyond reading toward enacted sequence. Yet even stage directions can be copied conventionally from earlier models. They should be assessed alongside the manuscript’s date, scribal context and local dramatic corpus. The most persuasive reconstruction emerges when formal directions, song structure and a known theatrical environment support one another.

50.21 Gender on the stage cannot be reconstructed from character lists alone

Plays contain queens, heroines, attendants, goddesses, ascetics and female comic figures, but the sex or social identity of historical performers is often not recorded. A female role does not prove a female actor, and a male-dominated manuscript archive cannot prove that women never participated in performance.

Household song traditions show women's major role in regional performance culture, but that evidence cannot simply be transferred onto court theatre. The correct method is to separate character gender, performer gender and audience gender, and to state uncertainty where the record is silent. This prevents later assumptions about respectability or troupe custom from becoming invented medieval facts.

50.22 The sacred and the comic frequently occupy the same performance ecology

Devotional theatre is not necessarily solemn, and comedy is not necessarily secular. Kṛṣṇa narratives can include teasing and rivalry; Śaiva or Nāth narratives can stage temptation and bodily humour; prahasana can criticize religious pretension while remaining embedded in a religiously literate world. Kīrtaniyā performance especially demonstrates how worship, entertainment and social assembly can converge. This hybridity matters for audience history. People may attend for devotion, music, spectacle, patronage, sociability or laughter at the same event. Modern genre labels that separate "religious ritual" from "theatre" too sharply can therefore obscure the actual historical institution.

50.23 Anga's Bihula–Bishahari complex belongs to dramatic history as well as ritual history

In the Bhagalpur–Champanagar cultural zone, Bihula–Bishahari performance combines narrative, song, ritual sequence, costume, image and public assembly. Contemporary scholarship and regional documentation describe a folk-theatre dimension within the larger Manasā/Bishahari ritual complex. Its present form should not be projected unchanged into ancient Anga, but its documented modern ecology is historically significant. It shows how dramatic action can remain attached to shrine, festival and narrative memory rather than separating into a ticketed theatre building. The tradition also demonstrates the permeability among Chapters 47–50: image-making, song, ritual object and theatre can participate in one seasonal complex.

50.24 Narrative theatre creates temporary publics

A performance gathers people who may not otherwise share one institutional space. Spectators respond, donate, joke, move, remember and sometimes interrupt. Vendors, musicians, ritual specialists and patrons create an economy around the event. Temporary public formation is especially important in fairs and festival settings, where theatre is one attraction among exchange, worship and sociability. The stage thus becomes an economic and political space as well as an artistic one. This is the bridge to Chapter 51: public culture is produced not merely by the existence of a market or fairground but by recurring practices that make strangers into an audience for a limited time.

50.25 Print changed drama from an event-memory into a reproducible object

Manuscripts can circulate, but print multiplies identical or near-identical copies, creates title pages, prices, advertisements and new reading publics. A play can now be bought by someone who never sees it performed. Print also changes authority: editors establish a text, literary histories classify it, and schools or associations can revive it from the page. In colonial Mithila this process helped create modern drama while also recasting older Kīrtaniyā and classical models. The printed play therefore belongs simultaneously to theatre history and book history. Its survival may reflect the economics of a press more than the popularity of a stage production.

50.26 The late nineteenth century produced both revival and formal experimentation

Literary historians often place Jīvan Jhā and other late nineteenth-century writers near the beginning of modern Maithili drama, while figures such as Candā Jhā reworked older dramatic and Sanskrit conventions. The period should not be narrated as a clean break from “traditional” to “modern.” Revival, reform, print, new urban audiences and changing notions of literary authorship coexist. A drama can imitate older frames while addressing current social concerns; another can adopt act divisions and prose dialogue yet retain songs. Modernity here is a rearrangement of media and institutions rather than the instant disappearance of Kīrtaniyā performance.

50.27 Brij Bihari Lal Mandal’s Mithilā Nāṭak exposes an excluded print public

Pranav Prakash’s recent study of Brj Bihārī Lāl Maṇḍal’s Mithilā Nāṭak is important because it changes who appears in the history of Maithili theatre. One thousand copies were printed by Krishna Press in Bhagalpur on 2 February 1901. Mandal identified himself with a cowherd caste background, and the chapbook combined social satire, songs, multilingual print conventions and references to performers. Its later neglect demonstrates how canon formation can erase inexpensive and socially marginal print. The example is methodologically decisive: theatrical history cannot be reconstructed only from authors who entered elite literary histories.

50.28 Modern theatre inherits several pasts at once

Twentieth- and twenty-first-century Maithili theatre can draw simultaneously on Sanskrit dramaturgy, Kīrtaniyā song-drama, colonial print, social-reform plays, folk narratives, proscenium technique, radio, film and contemporary festival circuits. A modern director may revive an old title while radically altering duration, casting, music and scenography. Such performance is neither “inauthentic” nor proof of unchanged continuity. It is historical reuse. The same principle applies to staged Vidyāpati, Salhesh, Bihula or mythological narratives: what matters is identifying which layer is inherited, which is reconstructed, and which belongs to present theatrical practice.

50.29 Method: separate text, manuscript, staging, repertoire and memory

Five dates may coexist in a single theatre history. A story can be ancient; a play may be composed centuries later; the surviving manuscript may be later still; a documented staging may belong to another period; and present performers may remember an additional lineage. Historians create false continuity when they collapse these dates. This chapter therefore applies an evidence firewall: text establishes dramatic design, manuscript establishes a witness, stage directions suggest intended action, performance records establish an event, and oral memory establishes remembered continuity. Strong historical claims require more than one layer whenever possible.

50.30 Conclusion: dramatic culture is an infrastructure of social imagination

Across Mithila, Vajji and Anga, theatre has joined language, music, devotion, satire, patronage, craft and public assembly. Its history runs through learned prahasana, vernacular song-drama, Nepalmandala court production, ritual narrative, printed chapbooks and modern stages without becoming a single unbroken form. The durable continuity is not a fixed script or costume but the repeated social act of turning story into embodied encounter before an audience. By keeping evidence layers distinct, we can recognize long regional creativity without inventing timeless institutions. Theatre thus belongs at the centre of socio-cultural history:

it makes hierarchy visible, allows critique to be voiced, creates temporary publics and converts memory into shared action.

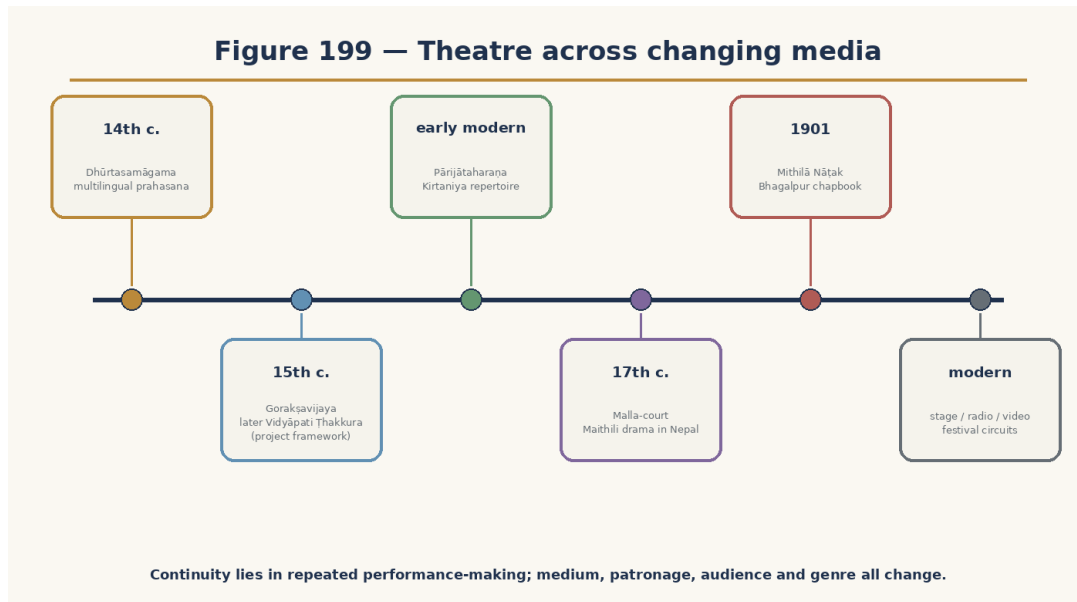


Figure 199 — Theatre across changing media

Table 50.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing theatre and dramatic cultures

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Play text	roles, dialogue, songs, dramatic sequence	does not prove an actual staging
Manuscript witness	date/location of copying, scribal and script history	may be centuries later than composition
Stage directions	entrances, song/dance cues, practical sequence	can be conventional or copied
Court / patron record	institutional support, named authors, political setting	underrecords performers and labour
Visual / material evidence	costume vocabulary, instruments, spatial possibilities	not automatically theatrical
Printed play / chapbook	print run, price, readership, canon formation	reading and performance are different histories
Recorded / witnessed performance	event, cast, venue, audience, embodied practice	cannot be projected backward unchanged

Chapter 51 — Fairs, Markets and Public Culture

51.1 Periodic exchange created a different kind of public space

A weekly haat, an annual mela and an everyday bazaar were not interchangeable institutions. Their calendars, catchment areas and social expectations differed. A haat concentrated ordinary exchange on one or two days and linked surrounding villages to itinerant traders, cultivators and petty retailers. A mela usually gathered a much larger and more heterogeneous public around a ritual date, shrine, river crossing, seasonal need or established custom. Permanent bazaars provided continuity between these periodic concentrations. The social history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga therefore requires attention to time as well as place: the same field, ghat or roadside could be ordinary space for most of the year and become a dense temporary town when a fair opened.

51.2 Markets were also theatres of information

Exchange moved more than grain, cloth, cattle or utensils. Market days brought together people who lived in different villages, worked in different occupations and possessed different news. Prices, crop conditions, marriage prospects, legal disputes, employment, political rumours, pilgrimage routes and performances could circulate through the same gathering. Anand A. Yang's study of Gangetic Bihar is especially valuable because it treats the bazaar as a social and political institution rather than as a neutral container for buying and selling. This chapter follows that insight while keeping the regional histories of Mithila, Vajji and Anga distinct. A market was simultaneously an economic node, a communication node and a public stage.

51.3 The archive overrepresents spectacular fairs

Large fairs generated administrative reports, travel accounts, police arrangements, sanitary records, photographs and later tourism publicity. Small village gatherings often left only a name in a settlement report or census schedule. This imbalance can distort historical reconstruction. Yang's reading of twentieth-century Bihar census material shows that the overwhelming majority of melas were small "fairlets" drawing mainly from nearby villages even though famous events such as Sonepur dominated public memory. The ordinary history of public culture therefore lies as much in modest periodic gatherings as in celebrated mega-events. Scale must be established from evidence rather than inferred from fame.

51.4 Archaeology can identify exchange without identifying a mela

Coins, weights, roads, river landings, storage areas, concentrations of craft debris and imported ceramics can show that exchange occurred. They do not automatically reveal the calendar or social form of that exchange. Ancient Vaishali and other early urban sites in the wider region certainly participated in networks of circulation, but a concentration of commerce is not proof of a named annual fair. Likewise, a pilgrimage tradition recorded in literature cannot by itself demonstrate a livestock market of later historical form. For early periods the safest method is to reconstruct places and circuits of exchange first, and to reserve the word mela for contexts in which periodic assembly is actually supported by textual or later documentary evidence.

Figure 200 — Evidence ladder for fairs and markets

No single source establishes the whole history of a periodic public.

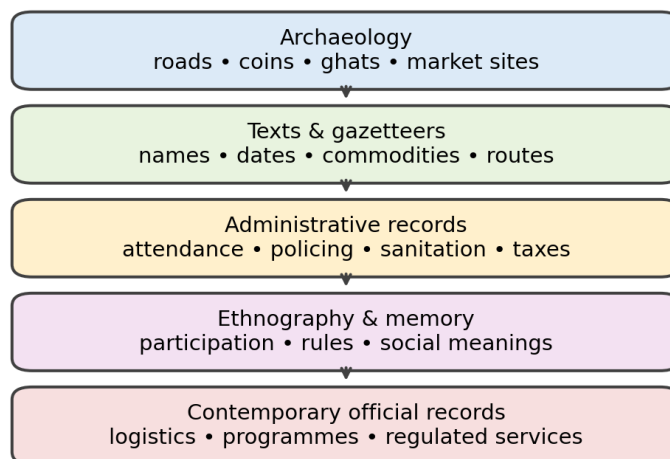


Figure 200 — Evidence ladder for fairs and markets

51.5 River crossings made exchange visible

The Ganga, Gandak, Kosi and their tributaries were not only geographical boundaries. Ghats, ferries and confluences concentrated movement. A river crossing gathered boatmen, pilgrims, traders, porters, animals, tax collectors and vendors at predictable points. Such places could acquire shrines, rest houses and bazaars precisely because people already had to pause there. The confluence at Sonapur and the Ganga crossing at Sultanganj are later, well-documented examples of this relationship between sacred geography and circulation. The wider principle is older: transport infrastructure and ritual geography often reinforced one another, producing public spaces whose economic importance cannot be reduced to either trade or religion alone.

51.6 Weekly haats were the low-threshold infrastructure of rural exchange

The weekly or twice-weekly haat connected cultivators and households to wider circuits without requiring a journey to a town. Grain, vegetables, fish, livestock, fuel, cloth, tools and small manufactured goods could be exchanged in quantities suited to ordinary rural budgets. Petty traders moved between haats, linking one marketing area to another. These gatherings also provided services that were difficult to sustain every day in a small village. Colonial surveys described and counted such markets because they mattered to revenue, transport, policing and prices, but their importance was not created by colonial documentation. The records instead reveal an existing countryside structured by recurring points of exchange.

51.7 Annual melas enlarged the catchment area

A mela could draw people beyond the ordinary marketing radius of a weekly haat. The combination of ritual timing, entertainment and unusual goods made a longer journey worthwhile. Sellers could offer animals, textiles, ornaments, books, religious objects, tools or luxury goods unavailable in small local markets. Performers and service providers followed the crowd. The annual rhythm also allowed households to plan purchases that could not be made from weekly income. In this sense, the mela interrupted the ordinary trade cycle and temporarily raised the market order of its site. The extraordinary character of the gathering was

therefore produced by concentration: more people, more goods, more information and more spectacle in a limited period.

51.8 Sonapur joined pilgrimage, livestock and long-distance trade

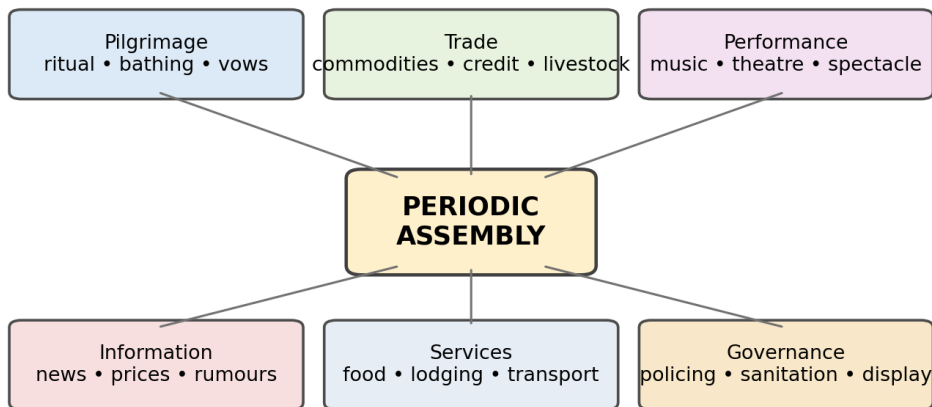
Sonapur, at the Ganga-Gandak confluence, provides the clearest Bihar example of a fair whose religious and commercial functions became inseparable. The Kartik Purnima pilgrimage to Harihar Kshetra brought a large public together, while livestock exchange made the event important to agrarian and transport economies. Nineteenth-century descriptions analysed by Yang show separate market areas, rows of stalls and specialized livestock sections, with goods arriving from distant production centres. Modern Bihar tourism continues to present Sonapur as both pilgrimage and fair. The chronology of particular claims about its ancient origin must remain cautious, but its documented colonial and modern history securely demonstrates how ritual gathering could sustain a very large temporary commercial city.

51.9 Livestock fairs were tied to the agricultural calendar

Animals were productive capital. Bullocks ploughed fields and transported crops; cows and buffaloes supplied milk; horses and elephants served transport, prestige and military needs in different periods. A livestock fair therefore linked public culture to the material requirements of agriculture. Yang notes that the timing of major cattle fairs corresponded to seasonal demand and that animals purchased at Sonapur entered wider circuits extending into Bengal. The fairground was also an arena of inspection, bargaining, credit and display. Decorative presentation and riding trials could be entertainment for spectators, but they were also commercial technologies for making an animal's quality visible to prospective buyers.

51.10 The fair converted shopping into spectacle

A fair distinguished itself from routine commerce by making abundance visible. Rows of stalls, unusual animals, novelty goods, performers, food sellers and temporary amusements turned exchange into a sensory event. Nineteenth-century descriptions of Sonapur emphasize the breadth of commodities and the organization of specialized bazaars. The point is not merely that “everything” was available, but that people encountered goods from outside their normal consumption world. Such encounters could reshape taste and aspiration. The mela therefore participated in cultural change by bringing distant styles, objects and practices into a shared public arena where they could be compared, admired, purchased or rejected.

Figure 201 — How a mela creates a temporary public*Figure 201 — How a mela creates a temporary public*

51.11 Small fairs mattered because they were local

Famous fairs connected regions; small fairs connected neighbours. Their modest scale could make them more socially embedded than a spectacular pilgrimage centre. A village fair might coincide with a local deity's festival, a seasonal rite or a small cattle market and draw the same cluster of villages year after year. Because travel costs were low, women, children and poorer households could participate more readily than in a distant long-duration journey, although access still varied by custom and social position. Repetition created familiarity: sellers learned where customers would gather, performers knew where patronage existed, and households incorporated the event into an annual calendar of purchases, visits and obligations.

51.12 Saurath Sabha was a public assembly rather than an ordinary market

The Saurath Sabha in Madhubani is best analysed as a specialized public institution of matrimonial negotiation, not simply as a "marriage fair." Modern field research documents an annual gathering in which Maithil Brahmin families, genealogists and intermediaries meet in a defined assembly space. Exchange here concerns information, lineage verification, status, alliance and negotiation rather than the sale of goods. The Sabha therefore broadens the meaning of public culture: a periodic gathering can organize social reproduction as effectively as a haat organizes commodity exchange. Claims about its precise medieval foundation are repeated in later tradition and should be distinguished from the securely documented modern institution.

51.13 Panji knowledge became public procedure at Saurath

Chapter 31 examined the Panji tradition as a genealogical institution. At Saurath, genealogical knowledge enters a public procedure. Panjikars or genealogical specialists help determine whether proposed marriages satisfy rules of lineage and prohibited relationship. The gathering thus depends on documents, memory, specialist authority and face-to-face negotiation. This is not evidence that every medieval Panji practice occurred in the modern Sabha form. It shows instead how genealogical institutions could be spatialized in a later public assembly. The history of the Sabha must therefore keep two chronologies separate: the history of

Panji recordkeeping and the history of the particular annual gathering through which such expertise came to be publicly exercised.

51.14 Public assembly did not mean equal access

A crowded gathering can create contact without creating equality. Markets and fairs were structured by gender, caste, class, occupation, credit and spatial custom. Sellers with capital could command larger stalls; landholders and officials could exercise regulatory power; itinerant vendors might occupy marginal spaces. Saurath Sabha is a particularly clear reminder that participation rules could be gendered and community-specific even when negotiation took place in an open grove. A social history of public culture must therefore ask who was visible, who spoke, who handled money, who performed, who provided labour and who remained absent from the surviving record. “Public” describes a mode of assembly, not universal citizenship.

51.15 Sultanganj shows how pilgrimage can build a temporary service economy

In the Anga region, the Shravani Mela at Sultanganj demonstrates the economic consequences of concentrated pilgrimage. Pilgrims gather at the Ganga, collect water and begin the journey toward Deoghar. The modern event requires ghats, shelters, food and ritual-supply vendors, transport, sanitation, medical facilities, policing and crowd management. Bhagalpur district’s official Shravani Mela arrangements list health camps, parking, accommodation, control rooms and even regulated rates for food and puja materials. These contemporary records should not be projected unchanged into earlier centuries, but they clearly show how a ritual route can generate a recurring temporary urban economy around movement rather than around permanent settlement alone.

51.16 Pilgrimage corridors redistribute commerce along a route

A pilgrimage economy does not end at the main shrine. Water points, rest places, ferry crossings, roadside markets and temporary camps distribute demand over an extended corridor. Vendors choose locations according to pedestrian flow, transport access and the rhythm of the journey. The Sultanganj-Deoghar route makes this especially visible, but the principle applies more broadly to river and shrine networks across Mithila, Vajji and Anga. Public culture is therefore linear as well as nodal. Songs, slogans, dress, ritual objects and food circulate with pilgrims, while local residents adjust services to predictable seasonal traffic. The route becomes a temporary cultural geography renewed each year.

51.17 Anga’s Bihula-Bishahari cycle links ritual gathering to local commerce

The Bihula-Bishahari complex discussed in Chapters 47, 49 and 50 also belongs to the history of fairs and public culture. In the Bhagalpur-Champanagar zone, ritual observance, Manjusha imagery, narrative performance, procession, offerings and temporary vending can converge around festival time. The commercial dimension should not be mistaken for the origin or essence of the rite. Rather, recurring public worship creates demand for images, materials, food, transport and performance labour. Artisans and performers gain a seasonal market because a ritual public assembles. This is another example of the reciprocal relationship between cultural practice and local economy: neither can be reconstructed adequately while treating the other as background.

51.18 Janakpur turns festival into a cross-border public

Janakpur’s Vivah Panchami is a contemporary example of Mithila’s public culture operating across the India-Nepal border. Nepal Tourism Board describes a week-long festival with wedding reenactments,

processions, music, dance and visitors from nearby Indian cities as well as Nepal. The Janaki Temple precinct and surrounding bazaars become part of a large ritual and commercial environment. The present form is shaped by modern transport, municipal organization and tourism promotion, and it should not be treated as a direct survival of an unchanged ancient festival. Its significance lies in showing how a shared narrative tradition can organize cross-border movement, performance, shopping and civic identity in the modern Mithila region.

Figure 202 — Four public-culture nodes in the connected region

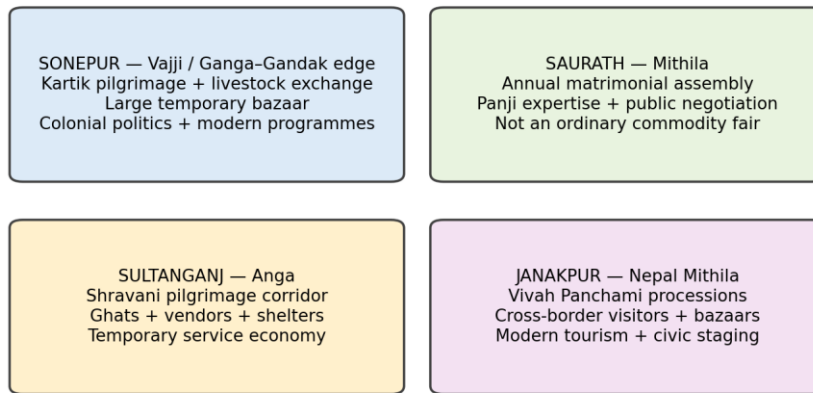


Figure 202 — Four public-culture nodes in the connected region

51.19 Bazaars around pilgrimage centres sell identity as well as goods

Religious objects, printed images, textiles, local foods, toys, paintings and souvenirs allow visitors to carry away material signs of a pilgrimage or region. Janakpur's contemporary bazaars, for example, sit beside temples, ponds and Mithila-art institutions. The commodity can therefore function simultaneously as useful object, ritual aid and marker of place. Similar dynamics operate at fairs throughout the region. This process does not reduce religion to commerce. It shows that material culture mediates memory. A purchased image or locally distinctive object can extend the festival beyond its duration by entering a household, a migrant home or a gift network.

51.20 Fair calendars coordinated sacred and economic time

Periodic gatherings were synchronized with lunar dates, agricultural seasons, marriage seasons or pilgrimage months. This coordination gave traders a predictable calendar and allowed households to combine ritual obligation with practical exchange. Sonepur's Kartik timing, Sultanganj's Shravani cycle, Saurath's marriage-season assembly and Janakpur's Vivah Panchami illustrate different temporal logics. A fair calendar could also link several markets in sequence, allowing livestock dealers, itinerant merchants or performers to move from one gathering to another. Time itself became infrastructure: the date told participants when a temporary market would exist and where dispersed populations could be expected to converge.

51.21 Roads, ferries and railways enlarged fair catchments

Transport technology altered who could attend and what could be sold. River transport and ferries supported older circuits; metalled roads and railways reduced travel time, increased freight capacity and

connected periodic gatherings to distant suppliers. Railway access could transform a local pilgrimage into a regional event without changing its ritual calendar. It also allowed perishable foods, printed matter and manufactured goods to enter in larger quantities. The growth of transport should therefore be analysed as a change in the geography of public culture, not only as an economic modernization story. A mela's crowd and commodity range were partly functions of the networks that delivered people and goods to the site.

51.22 Colonial enumeration made fairs legible to the state

District gazetteers, settlement reports, police files and censuses counted fairs because large gatherings mattered to taxation, disease control, transport, livestock supply and public order. This documentary attention is invaluable to historians, but it was never neutral. Classification converted diverse local events into administrative categories such as fair, market, cattle fair or pilgrimage. Attendance estimates could be rough, and an official interest in sanitation or policing might overshadow participants' own meanings. The archive therefore provides both evidence and a history of state perception. A fair becomes visible twice: once as lived gathering and again as an object of administrative knowledge.

51.23 Sanitation and policing turned the temporary crowd into a governance problem

Large gatherings create concentrated needs for water, waste disposal, medical care, traffic control and security. Colonial authorities increasingly watched fairs through the lenses of epidemic disease, gambling, tax collection, communal tension and political mobilization. Modern district administrations continue the logistical function through control rooms, health camps, parking plans, shelters and rate regulation. The continuity is institutional rather than ideological: the reasons and technologies of governance have changed. The important social fact is that a temporary public can become large enough to require a temporary state apparatus alongside its temporary market.

51.24 Sonepur became a political stage because it already had a crowd

The political history of Sonepur demonstrates that mass gatherings could be repurposed without ceasing to be religious or commercial. Yang documents political meetings at the fair in the nineteenth century, the formation of the Bihar Provincial Congress Committee there in 1908, and Kisan Sabha organizing efforts in the early twentieth century. Political actors chose Sonepur because the fair had already solved the difficult problem of assembling people from a wide area. The crowd was not created by politics; politics entered an existing public. This distinction matters because it shows how cultural and economic institutions supplied infrastructure for later mass mobilization.

51.25 The bazaar could carry nationalism, rumour and resistance

Twentieth-century rural markets in Bihar became sites where nationalist messages, boycotts, speeches and rumours circulated through pre-existing exchange networks. Yang's reconstruction of Noncooperation shows why the bazaar was especially powerful: people came for ordinary economic reasons and encountered political communication within the same space. Markets therefore linked local grievances to wider movements without requiring a permanent party office in every village. Yet the same density of communication could also intensify conflict, misinformation or communal tension. Public culture has no automatic political direction. The market amplifies interaction; what circulates through it depends on historical circumstances and competing actors.

51.26 Entertainment was an economic sector of the fair

Musicians, theatre troupes, storytellers, acrobats, circus performers, toy sellers and food vendors could depend on the concentration of spectators created by a mela. The previous chapters treated song and theatre as cultural forms; the fair reveals their labour and patronage structures. Performance requires a paying or donating public, and a fair supplies one. Conversely, entertainment increases the attractiveness and duration of the fair. Modern Sonapur publicity openly combines livestock, shopping, rides, exhibitions and cultural programmes. The relationship is reciprocal: commerce finances spectacle, while spectacle expands commerce. Public culture is therefore an economy of attention as well as an economy of goods.

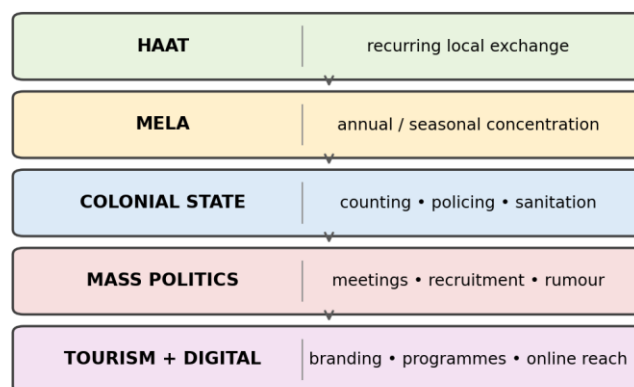
51.27 State exhibitions changed the meaning of the mela

In the twentieth and twenty-first centuries, fairs increasingly became platforms for departments, cooperatives, development agencies, tourism bodies and cultural institutions. Government stalls could display agricultural technology, health campaigns, handicrafts or welfare programmes. This added a pedagogic layer to the older marketplace. The state no longer appeared only as police, tax collector or sanitary authority; it also presented itself as exhibitor and service provider. Such interventions could preserve and promote local crafts, but they could also select which practices represented the region publicly. The fair thus became one of the places where “heritage” was curated for citizens and visitors.

51.28 Tourism can preserve scale while changing purpose

Modern tourism promotion stabilizes dates, branding and visual identity, and it can draw visitors who have no direct ritual or commercial obligation to attend. Sonapur is promoted as a cultural spectacle; Janakpur’s Vivah Panchami is presented as a major heritage experience; festival programmes circulate online before the crowd arrives. Tourism can sustain hotels, transport, guides, food sellers and artisans, but it can also shift emphasis toward photogenic performance and standardized representation. Historical analysis should therefore distinguish continuity of venue or calendar from continuity of social purpose. The same fair name can survive while the balance among pilgrimage, trade, entertainment and tourism changes substantially.

Figure 203 — From periodic exchange to mass public culture



Layers accumulate; the purpose of a site can change without the name disappearing.

Figure 203 — From periodic exchange to mass public culture

51.29 Method: reconstruct the public from converging evidence

No single source is sufficient for fair history. Gazetteers may list dates and commodities but speak in an administrative voice. Travel accounts can describe spectacle while exaggerating novelty. Census schedules provide scale but flatten local meaning. Oral histories preserve participant memory but often telescope chronology. Photographs show spatial arrangement without explaining transaction rules. Modern websites document present organization rather than origins. The strongest reconstruction emerges when these sources converge. This chapter therefore separates event date, source date, claimed origin and documented practice. It also treats famous cases as examples rather than templates for every local gathering.

51.30 Conclusion: Part VI ends with material culture in motion

Architecture, dress, food, painting, music and theatre become fully social when people gather around them. Fairs, markets and public assemblies bring the material and performative themes of Part VI into motion: buildings become temporary stalls and stages; textiles become commodities and costumes; food becomes festival consumption; painting becomes portable object; music and theatre find audiences; pilgrimage produces routes and crowds. Across Mithila, Vajji and Anga, periodic public culture connected village to town, shrine to bazaar, household to region and region to wider networks. Its history is therefore not an appendix to economic history. It is the history of how exchange, sociability, performance and power became publicly visible at recurring times and places.

Table 51.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing fairs, markets and public culture

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Archaeology and landscape	routes, ghats, market sites, exchange intensity	rarely establishes a named periodic fair
Gazetteers and settlement records	dates, commodities, attendance, transport, named fairs and haats	administrative categories and uneven estimates
Fair and market statistics	scale, frequency, spatial catchment	counts flatten local meaning and participation
Travel accounts and visual records	layout, spectacle, goods, crowd experience	selective viewpoint and possible exaggeration
Ethnography and oral history	participation rules, memory, specialist roles, lived meanings	present memory can telescope chronology
Political and police records	mobilization, surveillance, conflict, regulation	overrepresents disorder and state concerns
Contemporary official sources	current logistics, programmes, services and tourism framing	cannot establish ancient or medieval origins

PART VII

EARLY MODERN AND COLONIAL ECONOMIC TRANSFORMATIONS

Chapters 52–64

Chapter 52 — Mughal-Period Land, Revenue and Agrarian Society

Mughal rule did not replace the agrarian society of Mithila, Vajji and Anga with a single uniform land system. It superimposed imperial fiscal claims, assignments and administrative categories upon village production, regional chieftaincies, hereditary local offices and ecologies shaped by the Ganga, Gandak, Kosi and their tributaries. The most useful contemporary source, Abu'l-Fazl's *A'in-i Akbari*, gives unusually detailed fiscal statistics for the Bihar subah, including the sarkars of Tirhut, Hajipur and Munger. Yet those figures record assessed revenue and administrative knowledge; they do not by themselves tell us what every cultivator paid, what every zamindar retained, or how much was actually collected in a flood-prone year. This chapter therefore reconstructs Mughal agrarian society through a layered method: official statistics, regional revenue documents, the history of Bihar's zamindars and chieftains, agrarian ecology, and later gazetteer summaries are used together but never treated as interchangeable archives.

52.1 Land revenue is a social relation before it is a statistic

The Mughal state's agrarian income depended on the crop produced by cultivators, but the path from field to treasury passed through multiple claims. Irfan Habib's central warning remains essential: the Mughal land revenue was neither a modern property tax nor simply a landlord's rent. It was a state claim upon agricultural produce, expressed through assessment, rates, measurement, crop estimates and cash equivalents. In regional society this claim interacted with the rights of zamindars, village headmen, hereditary record-keepers and cultivators. To study revenue is therefore to study power, labour and negotiation: who could demand, who could record, who could resist, who advanced cash, and who bore the risk when crops failed.

52.2 The subah–sarkar framework made the region fiscally legible

Under Akbar, Bihar was represented as a subah divided into sarkars, and the connected historical region of this volume cut across several of them. Tirhut organized much of north Bihar; Hajipur controlled a strategically important Ganga–Gandak zone; and Munger incorporated much of the eastern country connected with Anga, including Bhagalpur in the *A'in's* mahal list. These were imperial administrative frames, not timeless cultural borders. Mithila did not cease to exist because Tirhut appeared in Mughal accounts, and Anga's older cultural geography was not identical with Sarkar Munger. The fiscal map must therefore be read as one historical layer among several.

52.3 The *A'in-i Akbari* is an administrative archive, not a census

Abu'l-Fazl's compilation is exceptionally valuable because it records measured land, mahals, assessed revenue and military obligations for many localities. It also describes Bihar's rivers, crops and agricultural abundance. But its precision can create false confidence. A revenue figure is a fiscal claim recorded for administrative purposes; it is not an enumeration of every household, every field or every transfer of grain. Measurement coverage varied, local categories were translated into imperial formats, and the relationship between assessed revenue (*jama*) and realized collection (*hasil*) could be substantial. The *A'in* should be used quantitatively, but with the discipline appropriate to an official fiscal document.

Mughal fiscal geography: administrative scale is not land ownership

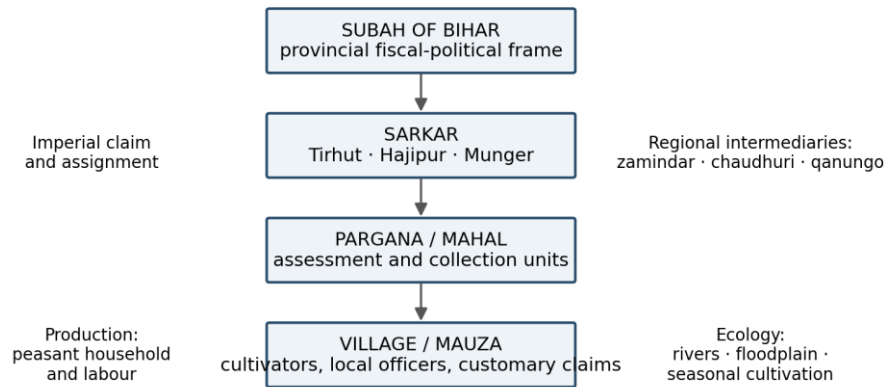


Figure 204 — Fiscal geography from subah to village

52.4 Tirhut appears as a large, internally differentiated fiscal unit

In the A'in's Bihar section, Sarkar Tirhut contains seventy-four mahals. It is assigned 266,464 bighas and 2 biswas of measured land and an assessed revenue of 19,179,777½ dams. The same entry records cavalry and infantry obligations, reminding us that fiscal capacity and military service belonged to the same imperial grammar. The seventy-four mahals matter more than a single total: they show that 'Tirhut' was not administered as one undifferentiated estate. It was a mosaic of assessment units whose local histories, cultivation intensity, waterways and intermediaries could differ sharply.

52.5 Hajipur demonstrates the fiscal importance of the river junction

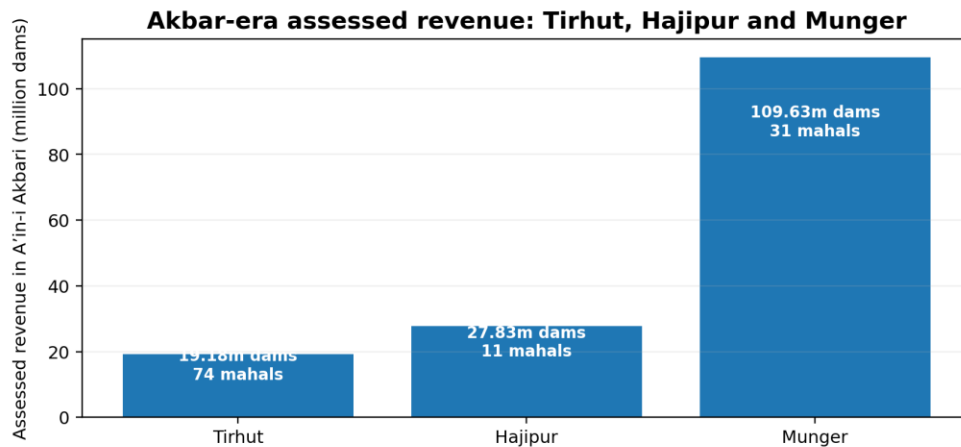
Sarkar Hajipur is listed with eleven mahals, 436,952 bighas and 15 biswas of measured land, and assessed revenue of 27,831,030 dams. The number is larger than Tirhut's recorded assessment even though Tirhut contains many more mahals, a warning against using the count of administrative units as a proxy for productive capacity. Hajipur's position near the Gandak–Ganga junction linked agrarian collection to ferries, routes and commercial movement. Revenue geography was therefore also transport geography: a highly productive riverine zone could be valuable not only because of crops but because it concentrated movement, markets and administrative access.

52.6 Munger connects Anga to a major eastern revenue-military zone

The A'in lists Sarkar Munger with thirty-one mahals and assessed revenue of 109,625,981½ dams; the mahal list includes Bhagalpur and other eastern localities. Modern Munger district history preserves the same broad fiscal profile and notes the sarkar's cavalry and infantry obligations. The scale of the recorded demand is striking, but it should not be converted directly into a measure of peasant welfare or actual annual realization. For this volume, its importance is geographical: the Mughal fiscal history of Anga cannot be reconstructed from Bhagalpur alone. It belongs to a wider Munger-centred administrative and military landscape stretching along the Ganga.

52.7 A 1582 Tirhut–Hajipur assessment offers a second statistical window

The 1907 Darbhanga district gazetteer, drawing on earlier revenue history, states that Todar Mal's 1582 assessment covered 817,370 acres in the sarkars of Hajipur and Tirhut and fixed revenue at Rs 11,63,020. The combined A'in figures, converted at forty dams to the rupee, yield a broadly comparable but not identical magnitude. The difference is analytically useful. Fiscal compilations produced at different dates and through different procedures should not be forced into artificial agreement. Later gazetteers can preserve earlier assessments, but they also translate them into colonial units and administrative concerns. Convergence is evidence; discrepancy is evidence too.



Note: figures are assessed fiscal statistics, not proof of actual collection or equal measurement coverage. 40 dams ≈ 1 Akbar-shahi rupee.

Figure 205 — Akbar-era fiscal profiles of Tirhut, Hajipur and Munger

52.8 Measurement was a technology of rule, not a neutral act

To measure land was to classify cultivation, define assessable area and make local production comparable across administrative units. Yet an alluvial region challenged any ideal of fixed cadastral space. Rivers shifted channels, chars emerged and disappeared, fields flooded, and cultivation moved between low and high ground. The bigha itself was a historical measure whose local value could vary; the A'in's attempt to standardize measures did not erase every regional practice. Measurement should therefore be studied as a state technology applied to a moving landscape, not as a modern survey grid perfectly laid over stable plots.

52.9 Jama and hasil must never be collapsed

Jama was the assessed or sanctioned revenue demand; hasil was what was actually realized. A high jama could indicate fiscal expectations, rich cultivation or administrative optimism, but without collection records it does not prove that the treasury received the full amount. Arrears, remissions, crop failure, local resistance, military disorder and the bargaining power of zamindars could all widen the distance between assessment and realization. This distinction is especially important when comparing Tirhut, Hajipur and Munger. The chapter therefore uses A'in totals as indicators of the fiscal value assigned to regions, not as audited receipts.

52.10 Mughal revenue was a claim on the crop, not modern ownership of soil

European observers often described the Mughal emperor as owner of all land, but this language can obscure the layered character of agrarian rights. Habib emphasizes that the state claim functioned as a tax on agricultural produce and could coexist with cultivator possession, zamindari claims and village-level

customary rights. The existence of a state demand did not erase other rights in land, nor did a zamindar's revenue role make him equivalent to a nineteenth-century Permanent Settlement landlord. The categories of Chapter 55 must not be imported into Chapter 52.

52.11 The peasant household remained the productive centre of the system

Imperial statistics begin with the state, but agricultural production began with households that supplied seed, labour, tools, draught power and everyday risk-bearing. Family labour could be supplemented by hired workers, dependants or service groups. Cultivators decided how much land could be sown, which crops to combine and how to respond to flood, drought, cattle loss or debt. A revenue schedule could influence these decisions, but it could not mechanically determine them. The productive household therefore forms the lowest indispensable scale of analysis beneath every imperial revenue total.

52.12 Village officers translated fields into fiscal records

The Mughal countryside depended on local knowledge. Headmen, patwaris, qanungos, chaudhurs and other intermediaries connected cultivation to accounts, remissions, collections and the authentication of rights. Their functions varied by place and period, but the principle is clear: the imperial state could not inspect every field directly. It governed through people who knew village boundaries, crop histories, customary shares and local families. Such officers could mediate between cultivators and higher authority, but they could also use their informational advantage to consolidate influence.

52.13 Zamindars were political intermediaries, not merely rent collectors

The Mughal term zamindar covered a range of local power-holders, from relatively modest revenue claimants to substantial chiefs with armed followers, forts and territorial authority. Tahir Hussain Ansari's study of Bihar shows how Mughal consolidation depended on negotiation, confirmation and conflict with such chieftains. Their rights could include a share of agrarian surplus, policing or military responsibilities, hereditary status and local patronage. Calling all of them 'landlords' compresses several functions into one modern category and conceals the political character of agrarian extraction.

52.14 The Darbhanga house became one regional node within Mughal fiscal politics

The history of the Darbhanga Raj belongs partly to the Mughal period but should not be read backward from its later colonial scale. Regional traditions and documents associate Mahesh Thakur and his successors with the consolidation of revenue authority in Tirhut under Mughal rule. Ansari reconstructs the house's relationships with imperial and provincial officials, including the role of Gopal Thakur during the Akbar-period survey and settlement. The significant historical point is not that a later great estate already existed in finished form, but that a lineage of learned and revenue intermediaries accumulated recognized fiscal functions over time.

52.15 Qabuliyat, arrears and share transfers reveal the contractual side of revenue

A seventeenth-century dispute discussed by Ansari records a qabuliyat for Tirhut and arrears apportioned among share-holders. When some holders could not meet their portion of the government demand, shares in chaudhuri and qanungo rights were transferred in connection with payment of the outstanding sum. This kind of evidence opens a different window from the A'in. Instead of a top-down total, we see obligation

divided among named holders, arrears producing pressure, and fiscal rights becoming transferable assets. Mughal agrarian society was therefore also a world of contracts, guarantees, debt and negotiated shares.

Agrarian surplus moved through overlapping claims

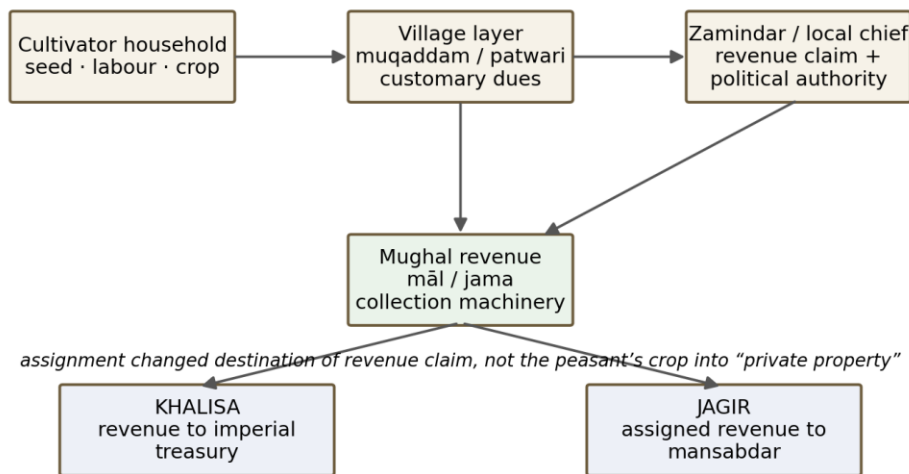


Figure 206 — Overlapping claims on agrarian surplus

52.16 Khalisa and jagir changed the destination of revenue claims

A large part of the Mughal revenue base was assigned in jagir to mansabdars, while khalisa lands supplied the imperial treasury more directly. This distinction affected who collected or benefited from assessed revenue, but it did not transform the underlying crop into the assignee's private freehold. Jagirdars held assignments whose location could change; they had incentives to secure collection within the terms of office. The political economy of assignment could therefore shape local pressure even when village cultivation continued under older routines.

52.17 Bihar's rice economy was recognized in the Mughal description itself

Abu'l-Fazl's description of the Bihar subah states that agriculture flourished to a high degree and singles out rice for both quality and quantity. This is particularly important for Mithila and the low-lying Gangetic plains, where water abundance could sustain intensive paddy cultivation but also expose crops to flood and channel change. Rice should not be treated as the only crop, yet it anchors the relationship between ecology and revenue: a state seeking agrarian surplus had to adapt its demand to a landscape where water created both fertility and risk.

52.18 Pulses, sugarcane and betel diversified the agrarian base

The same Bihar description mentions khesari, abundant sugarcane and high-quality Maghi betel leaf. These details prevent a monocrop picture of the province. Pulses mattered to subsistence and soil-use cycles; sugarcane was a high-value crop requiring labour and processing; betel linked specialized cultivation to market demand. General Mughal sources also show oilseeds and other commercial crops across north India. The agrarian economy of the connected region therefore combined staple production with crops that moved through wider markets and could attract stronger fiscal interest.

52.19 Commercialization did not begin with colonial indigo

Later chapters will examine indigo, opium and colonial commodity regimes, but it would be equally misleading to imagine a purely subsistence Mughal countryside. The state preferred revenue-rich crops; sugarcane, oilseeds, poppy and other marketable products circulated alongside grain. Cash assessment itself increased the importance of markets because cultivators and intermediaries needed monetary resources to meet obligations denominated in money. Commercialization was therefore already present, though its institutions and coercive mechanisms differed from the nineteenth-century indigo and opium systems.

52.20 Seasonal cropping made revenue dependent on ecological timing

Agriculture followed kharif and rabi cycles, and wetter tracts could sustain multiple crops where water and labour permitted. The fiscal year had to interact with harvest time. A demand poorly synchronized with production could intensify borrowing or force sale at unfavourable moments. Flood, drought and river erosion could alter the cultivable base between assessments. The history of revenue is therefore also a history of calendars: sowing, transplanting, harvesting, collection and remittance did not occur simultaneously, and the gap between them shaped rural vulnerability.

52.21 Expansion of cultivation changed the frontier between field and waste

Mughal-period economic growth in Bihar included expansion of cultivation into areas previously classified as waste, scrub or forest. But ‘waste’ is an administrative category, not proof of empty land. Grazing, fishing, fuel collection, shifting cultivation and seasonal use could occupy spaces not recorded as regularly ploughed fields. Bringing new land under assessment could increase state revenue while narrowing access to common resources. Agrarian expansion therefore redistributed ecological rights as well as enlarging the measured crop area.

52.22 Labour relations extended beyond the category of cultivator

Fields depended on ploughmen, cattle keepers, artisans who repaired tools, transport workers, boatmen, processors of cane and oilseeds, and service communities attached to villages and markets. Some were paid in cash, some in grain, some through customary shares or access to land. The Mughal revenue archive rarely records this labour world in proportion to its importance. A social history of agrarian revenue must therefore reconstruct the workers who made assessed production possible but appear only indirectly in fiscal documents.

52.23 Monetized obligations made credit structurally important

Where revenue was expressed or collected in cash, cultivators and intermediaries needed liquidity before, during and after harvest. Advances, merchant credit, grain loans and arrears therefore belonged to the fiscal system even when surviving documents are fragmentary. The seventeenth-century Tirhut share dispute demonstrates how unpaid government dues could reorder rights among local holders. Debt was not simply a private household problem; it could become a mechanism through which fiscal authority, office and property-like claims were redistributed.

52.24 Revenue pressure and agrarian prosperity could coexist

High fiscal value does not automatically mean misery, and abundant agriculture does not mean light taxation. Mughal agrarian regions could display both substantial production and strong extraction. The relevant question is distribution: how much surplus remained with cultivators after seed, subsistence, local

claims and state revenue; how collection varied by season; and what bargaining resources different groups possessed. This is why aggregate revenue statistics cannot substitute for social history. Prosperity at the level of a sarkar and insecurity at the level of a household are not mutually exclusive.

52.25 Coercion and negotiation were both built into collection

Revenue collection had coercive backing, but the state also depended on cooperation. Zamindars could resist; cultivators could flee or reduce cultivation; local officers could delay, conceal or renegotiate assessments; imperial authorities could remit or reschedule demands. The relationship was therefore neither a free contract nor unmediated force. It was a field of unequal negotiation in which the capacity to mobilize armed followers, local knowledge, credit or imperial patronage could materially alter outcomes.

52.26 Munger's fiscal weight was tied to its strategic geography

Munger was not simply an agricultural hinterland. Its fort, Ganga position and role in eastern military movement linked revenue to strategic control. The A'in's very large assessed revenue and troop obligations should be read together. Bhagalpur and other Anga localities within Sarkar Munger contributed to a fiscal-military corridor connecting Bihar with Bengal. In this setting, agrarian surplus supported more than a treasury: it sustained garrisons, officials, transport and the circulation of armed power along the river.

52.27 Tirhut and Anga faced different ecological combinations inside one imperial province

The connected region should not be flattened into a single 'Bihar agriculture'. North Bihar's floodplains, Gandak and Kosi systems, and dense wet-rice ecologies differed from the Ganga-edge and upland combinations visible farther east around Munger and Bhagalpur. These differences affected crop mix, transport, settlement stability and the cost of measurement. Mughal categories standardized administration across space, but ecological diversity limited how uniform agrarian practice could become.

52.28 The Nepal Tarai was connected to the agrarian zone without being Mughal fiscal territory

The northern cultural and economic world of Mithila crossed the political frontier toward the Tarai/Madhesh, but Mughal Bihar's revenue statistics cannot simply be extended into territories under Nepalese polities. People, cattle, grain, forest products and religious networks crossed boundaries more easily than fiscal sovereignty did. This distinction matters for the India–Nepal scope of the volume: interaction zones can be continuous while political economies remain different. Chapter 65 returns to the borderland economy with the appropriate Nepal-side evidence.

52.29 Method: keep imperial statistics, regional documents and colonial reconstructions in separate columns

A sound reconstruction uses the A'in for late-sixteenth-century fiscal geography; qabuliyat, farmans and regional histories for negotiated rights and obligations; general Mughal agrarian scholarship for analytical categories; and colonial gazetteers only as later summaries that sometimes preserve earlier figures. No source is allowed to silently borrow the authority of another. The famous 1582 Tirhut–Hajipur assessment, for example, is valuable precisely because its later gazetteer transmission can be compared with the A'in rather than substituted for it.

Evidence firewall: do not collapse four different archives



Historical inference is strongest when fiscal statistics, regional documents, agrarian ecology and later summaries converge.

A later archive may preserve an earlier number, but it also carries the categories and purposes of its own period.

Figure 207 — Evidence firewall for Mughal agrarian reconstruction

52.30 Conclusion: Mughal agrarian society was a layered fiscal ecology

Across Tirhut, Hajipur and Munger, the Mughal state made countryside legible through sarkars, mahals, measurement, assessed revenue and recorded obligations. Beneath that grid remained cultivator households, seasonal crops, flood risk, village officers, zamindars, credit relations, local rights and ecological differences. The resulting order was neither a timeless village system nor a preview of the Permanent Settlement. It was a specifically early modern configuration in which imperial extraction depended on local intermediaries and productive landscapes that could never be reduced entirely to the numbers written in a revenue table.

Table 52.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing Mughal land, revenue and agrarian society

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
A'in-i Akbari	sarkars, mahals, measured land, assessed revenue, crops, administrative geography	jama is not identical with actual collection; measurement coverage varies
Qabuliyat, farman, revenue disputes	named obligations, shares, arrears, confirmation of offices and rights	survival is selective and often centred on elites
Regional zamindar/chief histories	political brokerage, hereditary claims, conflict and imperial negotiation	later lineage histories can project continuity backward
Agrarian ecology	crop possibilities, flood risk, transport, seasonal constraints	environment alone cannot establish fiscal institutions
Colonial gazetteers	later summaries of earlier assessments and local administrative memory	translate the past into colonial units and categories
Modern economic history	jama/hasil, zamindar, jagir, surplus distribution, quantitative comparison	general models require regional testing

Chapter 53 — Trade between Bengal, Bihar, Nepal and the Gangetic World

Trade connected the socio-economic worlds of Mithila, Vajji and Anga to regions far beyond their political boundaries. The Ganga formed the principal east–west trunk between the upper Gangetic plain and Bengal; Patna developed as a major inland entrepôt; Munger and Bhagalpur lay on the eastern river corridor; Hajipur and Tirhut fed northward routes toward Nepal; and Kathmandu connected plains commerce with Himalayan and Tibetan exchange. These links were already visible before European companies became major actors, then intensified and changed as English and Dutch merchants entered Bihar’s commodity markets. The evidence, however, is uneven. A late-sixteenth-century traveller, a seventeenth-century factory letter, a 1790s diplomatic mission and Buchanan-Hamilton’s early-nineteenth-century trade account cannot be collapsed into one timeless picture. This chapter therefore reconstructs circulation through securely dated layers: routes, transport, merchants, credit, commodities and market nodes are compared across sources while each observation remains tied to its own period.

53.1 Trade is a network of movements, not a line between two capitals

The commercial history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga cannot be reduced to a single Patna–Bengal route or to a modern India–Nepal border crossing. Early modern exchange worked through overlapping scales: weekly rural markets gathered produce; river landings concentrated bulky cargo; towns provided storage, credit and brokerage; long-distance merchants linked those towns to Bengal, the upper Gangetic plain and the Himalayan world. A commodity could therefore change carriers, forms and destinations several times before reaching a final consumer. The useful unit of analysis is the network—nodes, seasonal routes, intermediaries and transaction costs—not a straight line drawn between political centres.

53.2 The Ganga was the principal east–west transport trunk

For heavy and bulky goods the Ganga offered a transport corridor of exceptional importance. It connected the upper Gangetic cities with Patna and continued east through Munger, Bhagalpur, Rajmahal and the Bengal river system toward Kasimbazar and Hugli. River movement did not eliminate land transport; rather, carts, pack animals, ferries and local feeder routes delivered goods to and from navigable water. The river also changed seasonally. Current, channel depth, monsoon floods and shoals affected speed, boat size and the places where cargo had to be shifted. Trade geography was therefore hydraulic as well as political.

53.3 Ralph Fitch’s journey shows an already integrated late-sixteenth-century corridor

Ralph Fitch’s 1585–86 journey is valuable because it predates the mature European company factory system. Travelling east from Agra, he moved with a large boat convoy carrying commodities down the Yamuna and Ganga, passed Allahabad, Banaras and Patna, and continued into Bengal. His itinerary demonstrates that Patna was already embedded in a long-distance river world before English or Dutch corporate commerce became important there. Fitch should not be read as a complete trade survey, but his route provides a securely dated witness to continuous movement between the Mughal heartland, Bihar and Bengal.

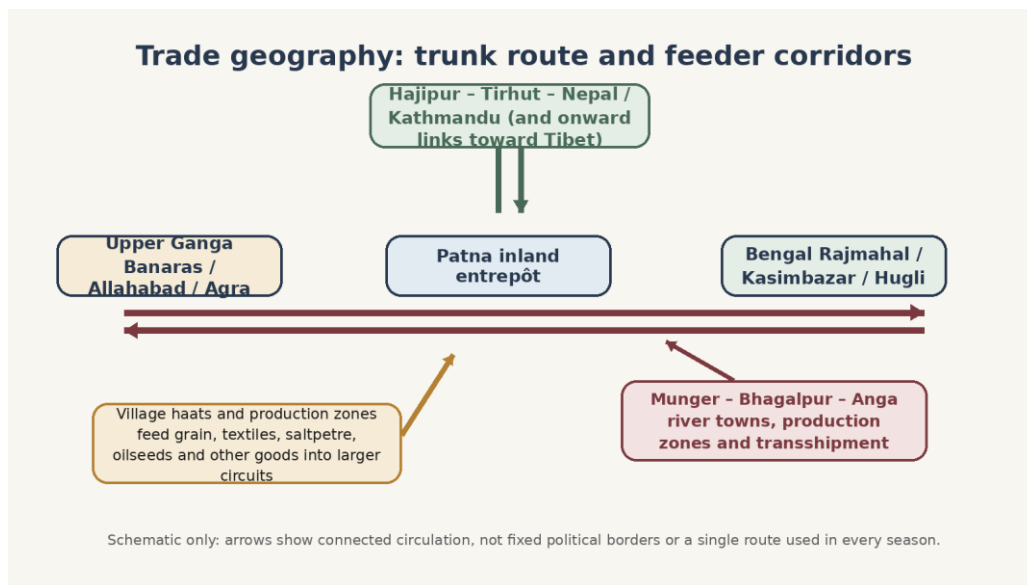


Figure 208 — Trade geography: trunk route and feeder corridors

53.4 Seventeenth-century Patna became an entrepôt rather than merely a producing town

By the seventeenth century Patna's commercial importance rested on its ability to collect, finance, store and redistribute goods from several directions. Peter Mundy's 1632 mission to Patna was itself a commercial experiment: the English sought a market for quicksilver and vermillion and hoped to reinvest the proceeds in saleable Indian goods. Later English and Dutch establishments increasingly focused on commodities procured in Bihar, especially saltpetre, while Patna also handled textiles, opium, grain and other products. Its significance therefore lay in brokerage and through-traffic as much as in manufacture within the city.

53.5 Patna's hinterland extended far beyond the modern district boundary

An entrepôt gathers the output of a wider production zone. Cotton weaving, grain supply, saltpetre manufacture and other activities were distributed through villages and smaller towns whose goods entered Patna through merchants, brokers and periodic markets. The city's accounts consequently mix local production with goods assembled from farther away. This is methodologically important: a commodity recorded at Patna is not automatically a Patna product. The distinction between place of production, place of purchase, place of refinement, place of storage and place of export must be preserved whenever the sources permit it.

53.6 The downstream route tied Bihar to Bengal's inland and maritime economy

The eastward river route ran through the Ganga corridor toward Rajmahal, Kasimbazar and Hugli, with Munger and Bhagalpur lying directly on the connected waterway. Ahmad Raza Khan's source-based reconstruction of seventeenth-century Bihar emphasizes the Patna-Hugli river route and the movement of loaded boats through eastern Bihar. Once cargo reached Bengal's commercial centres, it could be redistributed within the delta or linked to maritime trade. Bihar's inland economy was thus connected to the Bay of Bengal without being a coastal economy itself.

53.7 The upstream route connected Patna to Banaras, Allahabad, Agra and wider north India

Westward and upstream movement was equally important. Patna's merchants and goods were connected by river and road to Banaras, Allahabad and Agra, and through those centres to larger north Indian commercial fields. Khan reconstructs a frequently used Patna–Agra land route through Sasaram, Banaras and Allahabad. The point is not that every merchant followed one prescribed itinerary. Multiple land and river options existed, and merchants chose among them according to season, security, tolls, cargo and market opportunity.

53.8 Northward feeders linked Hajipur and Tirhut to Nepal

Patna's northern commercial field depended on crossings of the Ganga and on routes through Hajipur and the north Bihar plain. Seventeenth-century reconstructions describe a Patna–Hajipur–north Bihar route continuing toward the Himalayan foothills and Nepal. This axis mattered to Mithila because Tirhut was not commercially isolated behind its rivers: its markets and road-ferry combinations formed part of the approach to Nepal. The exact path could vary, but the structural relationship is clear—Patna's east–west river trunk was intersected by a north–south corridor through the Mithila-Vajji zone.

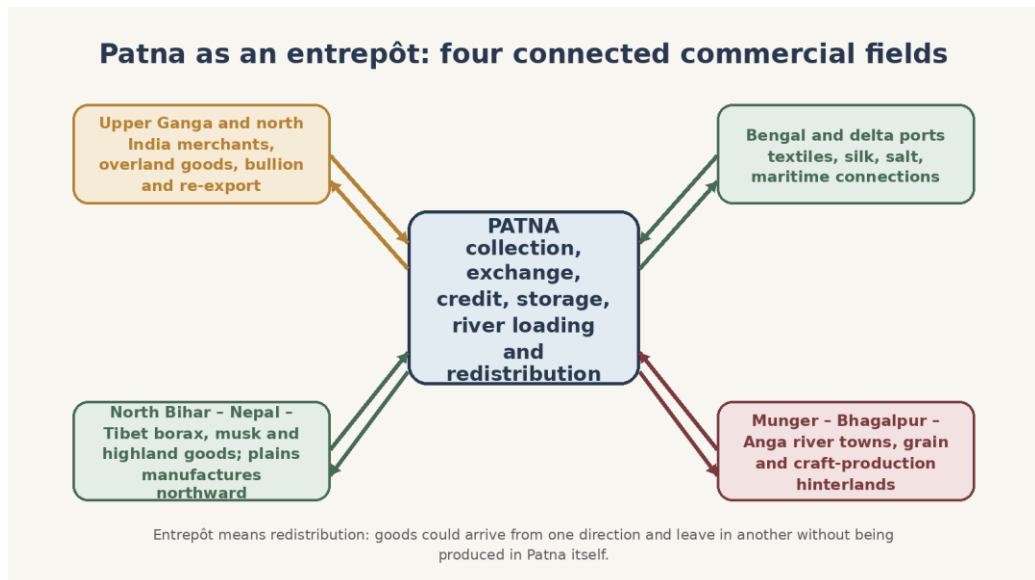


Figure 209 — Patna as an entrepôt

53.9 Nepal evidence must be dated independently from Bihar evidence

The India–Nepal dimension requires a stricter chronology than is often used in regional histories. William Kirkpatrick's late-eighteenth-century mission and Francis Buchanan-Hamilton's early-nineteenth-century account provide detailed information on roads, merchants and commodities moving between the low country, Kathmandu and Tibet. These sources are indispensable, but they belong to their own dates. They can demonstrate the mature structure of a corridor and help identify durable geographical constraints; they cannot by themselves prove that every commodity or volume recorded around 1800 existed in the same proportions in 1650.

53.10 Buchanan-Hamilton identifies Patna as the principal mart for low-country trade with Kathmandu

Buchanan-Hamilton's account is unusually explicit: the route by which he entered Kathmandu was, in his description, the one most frequented by merchants from the low country, especially those trading with Patna, which he called the principal mart for that commerce. This statement belongs to the early nineteenth century, yet it confirms the continued importance of the Patna–Nepal commercial relationship after the Mughal period. Used carefully, it strengthens the interpretation of Patna as a north–south redistribution centre while leaving seventeenth-century quantities to seventeenth-century evidence.

53.11 Nepal and Tibet supplied distinctive high-value goods to the plains

Buchanan-Hamilton records a varied Kathmandu trade in which Tibetan and Himalayan goods included borax, musk, woollen cloth, animal products, medicinal substances and bullion. Some of these goods moved onward to Patna and the low country. Seventeenth-century Bihar evidence independently records borax procurement at Patna and later references to Nepalese borax entering Tirhut. The overlap is significant because it links a commodity named in Bihar commercial records to a Himalayan supply zone, while still requiring caution about changes in route, scale and political control across time.

53.12 Plains manufactures and consumption goods moved northward through the same corridor

The flow was not one-way. Buchanan-Hamilton lists Indian cotton cloths, metal utensils, spices, betel, tobacco and other manufactured or consumption goods entering Nepal from the low country, many of them ultimately traded onward. This reciprocal movement helps explain why a plains entrepôt mattered to Himalayan commerce: Patna was not simply a buyer of northern products but a redistribution point for Indian and imported goods. The trade depended on differences in ecological production, craft specialization and demand across plains, hills and Tibetan plateau.

53.13 Anga's river towns formed part of the corridor rather than a separate eastern economy

Munger, Bhagalpur and the Anga zone lay on the Ganga route between Patna and Bengal. Boats carrying goods east or west therefore passed through an inhabited production landscape rather than an empty transit space. Later trade evidence shows Bhagalpur supplying grain to Patna, while the region also possessed important craft and textile traditions examined elsewhere in this volume. The correct model is a chain of nodes: Anga could produce, consume, transship and redirect goods while remaining tied to larger Bihar–Bengal circuits.

53.14 River transport required transshipment, boat knowledge and labour

The phrase “carried down the Ganges” can conceal the work involved. Different reaches required different craft, pilots and loading practices; shallow water or changing channels could force cargo to be transferred. Boatmen, porters, warehouse workers, ferrymen and river pilots were therefore essential commercial labourers. Their skills converted a river into infrastructure. The social history of trade must include this workforce, even though merchant and company archives usually record them less fully than goods, prices and contracts.

53.15 Roads, sarais and ferries made overland commerce possible

Land routes were supported by ferries, market towns and sarais where merchants could rest, guard goods and obtain supplies. Peter Mundy's description of a Patna sarai used by merchants from distant regions illustrates the cosmopolitan infrastructure of the city. Mughal roads did not function like modern highways: surfaces, security and maintenance varied, and rivers could interrupt a route. Nevertheless, the repeated presence of caravan lodging and commercial halts shows that overland movement was institutionalized rather than improvised anew for every journey.

53.16 Merchants came from many communities and political jurisdictions

Patna's commercial world included local merchants and brokers, Persians and Central Asians, Armenians, merchants from Bengal, and, increasingly, agents of European companies. No single group controlled all commodities or routes. Different merchants specialized in distinct circuits and used partnerships, kin networks, brokers and credit to reduce risk. The presence of foreign merchants should not obscure the larger indigenous commercial structure on which they depended. European companies entered an existing market system; they did not create Patna's long-distance commerce from nothing.

53.17 Credit, money changing and coinage connected distant transactions

Long-distance trade required more than transport. Merchants needed advances, accounting, reliable money, mechanisms for remittance and people able to judge coins and creditworthiness. Patna's commercial growth therefore strengthened bankers, brokers and money changers as well as commodity merchants. Mughal silver currency facilitated exchange across regions, while imported bullion could enter Indian monetary circuits through mints and money markets. Credit reduced the need to move specie with every shipment, but it also concentrated power in merchant and financial networks whose surviving records are uneven.

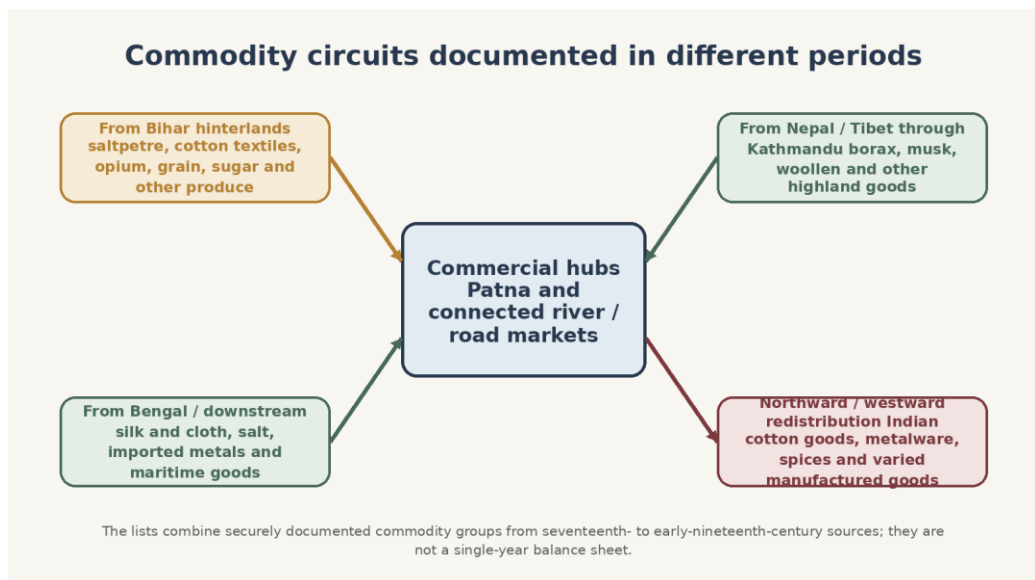


Figure 210 — Commodity circuits documented in different periods

53.18 Saltpetre linked village production to global demand

Saltpetre became one of Bihar's most internationally significant seventeenth-century exports. It was produced and refined in a regional industry, collected through Patna and nearby centres, and purchased in

large quantities by Dutch and English traders for shipment eastward and overseas. Its history demonstrates how a substance produced from local soils and labour could enter military economies far beyond India. It also shows why a trade history must move across scales: village extraction and refining, merchant procurement, river transport, company contracts and maritime export were parts of one commodity chain.

53.19 Textiles connected Bihar production with Bengal silk and wider Asian markets

Patna was known for cotton goods, while Bengal supplied raw silk and finished textiles to wider commercial networks. Early English ventures in Patna sought cloth, and merchants from multiple regions came to purchase textile products. The textile trade should not be reduced to a European export story. Cloth circulated within India, moved toward Persia and Central Asia through merchant networks, and entered Himalayan markets. Bengal and Bihar were therefore complementary and competing production-commercial regions whose textile circuits overlapped in Patna.

53.20 Opium was already commercial before the Company monopoly

Opium later became inseparable from East India Company monopoly, but its commercial history in Bihar is older. Seventeenth- and eighteenth-century accounts place opium among the commodities handled at Patna, and eighteenth-century merchants traded it through Asian circuits. Chapter 57 examines the colonial commodity network in detail. Here the important point is chronological: Company monopoly reorganized an existing commercial crop and trade rather than inventing opium commerce *ex nihilo*.

53.21 Grain, sugar, oilseeds and salt made ordinary provisioning part of long-distance trade

High-value exports attract attention because European records describe them in detail, but ordinary food and provisioning goods were equally important to regional integration. Grain could move between surplus and deficit districts; sugar and oilseeds entered urban and interregional markets; salt moved inland from supply zones and was redistributed. Later Buchanan estimates for Patna show large two-way flows of staples, confirming that an entrepôt did not merely export luxury or strategic commodities. Food commerce linked peasant production to cities and made transport conditions immediately relevant to subsistence.

53.22 Metals and imported manufactured goods reveal Patna's redistributive function

Copper, lead, zinc, tin and manufactured wares entered Patna from different directions and could then be sent onward to other markets, including northward routes. European traders also tried to sell quicksilver, broadcloth, lead and vermillion in the city. Such transactions demonstrate the difference between production and trade. Patna's importance lay partly in its ability to match goods produced elsewhere with buyers in another region. A commercial centre could therefore prosper through circulation even when it did not manufacture every item in its warehouses.

53.23 European companies were commercial actors before they became territorial rulers

The English and Dutch established factories and procurement systems in Bihar during the seventeenth century, but their political sovereignty came later. In Chapter 53 they must be treated first as merchants with special corporate privileges, capital and overseas shipping connections. They competed with Indian and

Armenian merchants, depended on brokers and producers, and negotiated with Mughal and provincial authorities. Chapter 54 begins when commercial presence becomes entangled with territorial expansion and the remaking of agrarian power. Keeping that boundary clear prevents the entire seventeenth century from being narrated backward from Plassey and Diwani.

53.24 Bengal's early-modern boom increased the value of the Bihar connection

Research on Bengal's seventeenth- and eighteenth-century economy emphasizes agricultural expansion, textile production, urban growth and maritime trade. Bihar's position on the western approaches to Bengal gave it a complementary role: goods, bullion, merchants and information moved between the delta and the upper Gangetic plain through Bihar's river corridor. Patna and Anga therefore belonged to the economic geography of Bengal's expansion without being absorbed into a single homogeneous "Bengal economy." Regional specialization and transit were precisely what made interregional trade profitable.

53.25 Political boundaries and cultural regions overlapped but did not coincide with trade zones

Mughal subah boundaries, the older cultural geographies of Mithila and Anga, the Nepalese polities north of the plains and the commercial reach of Bengal were different spatial systems. Merchants routinely crossed from one into another. Customs points and political authority mattered, but they did not turn each jurisdiction into a closed economy. For this volume, trade is one of the clearest demonstrations that connected history must be mapped with several boundaries at once: fiscal, cultural, ecological and commercial.

53.26 Tolls, customs, brokerage and security shaped the cost of movement

Transport costs were not only the price of boats or carts. Merchants faced customs dues, ferry charges, market fees, brokerage, storage costs and the expense of protecting goods. Political disorder could increase risk premiums or redirect traffic; secure routes and predictable duties could attract it. These transaction costs explain why entrepôts and established routes acquired persistence. A merchant might accept a longer journey if it offered reliable credit, safe lodging, known tolls and a large market at the end.

53.27 Monsoon, flood and low-water seasons reorganized commercial geography

The same rivers that enabled bulk transport could also disrupt it. Floods altered channels and damaged roads; low water constrained boat drafts; monsoon currents changed travel time and risk. North Bihar's floodplain conditions were particularly important for the approach to Tirhut and Nepal. Trade therefore had a calendar. Seasonal variation influenced when grain, saltpetre, textiles or Himalayan goods could move efficiently, and it created demand for storage so merchants could wait for a better river or market season.

53.28 The eighteenth century changed the political setting without destroying the network

Mughal imperial authority weakened, Bengal's nawabi regime acquired greater autonomy, European companies expanded their commercial power and Patna's political context changed. Yet the basic value of the Ganga corridor and the northward connection to Nepal persisted. Kumkum Chatterjee's study of Bihar between 1733 and 1820 shows merchant activity adapting to political transition rather than simply collapsing. This continuity is important for the transition to Chapters 54–57: colonial economic

transformation worked through older commercial nodes, merchant groups and commodity chains even as it altered their terms.

53.29 Method: each source must remain inside its own chronological box

Trade history is especially vulnerable to retrospective projection because routes often persist and later surveys are much more detailed than earlier evidence. The proper method is comparative but not conflationary. Fitch and Mundy establish late-sixteenth- and early-seventeenth-century movement; company and regional records document seventeenth- and eighteenth-century commodities and institutions; Kirkpatrick-era evidence illuminates late-eighteenth-century Nepal relations; Buchanan-Hamilton gives detailed early-nineteenth-century routes and commodity lists. Later precision may suggest questions for earlier periods, but it does not automatically answer them.

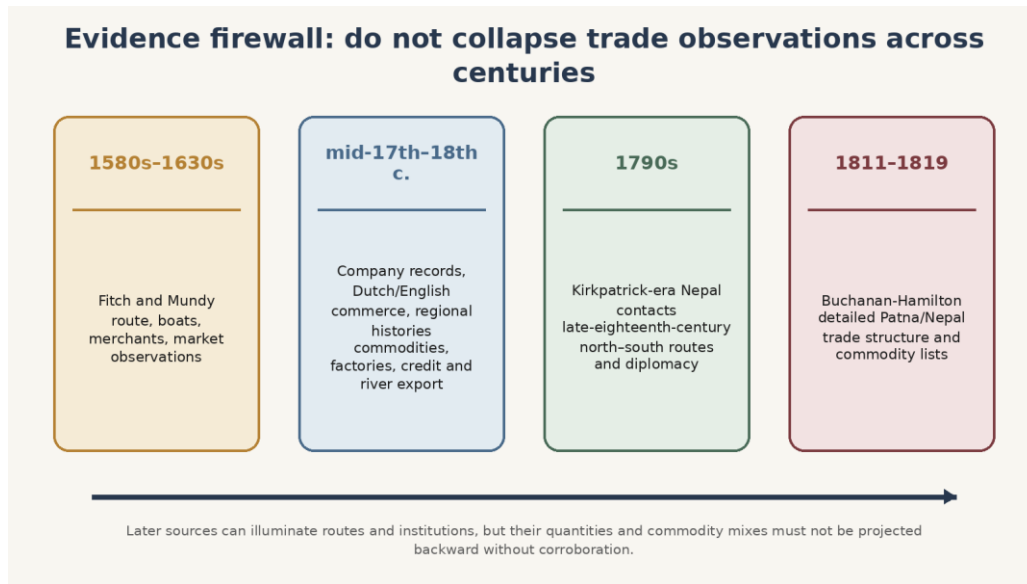


Figure 211 — Evidence firewall for reconstructing interregional trade

53.30 Conclusion: the connected region functioned through circulation

Between Bengal, Bihar, the upper Gangetic plain and Nepal, the economy of Mithila, Vajji and Anga was shaped by circulation as much as by production. The Ganga served as an east–west trunk; Hajipur and Tirhut fed northward routes; Munger and Bhagalpur anchored the Anga stretch; Patna concentrated storage, credit, brokerage and redistribution. Goods moved in both directions, and merchants of many communities operated across political boundaries. The resulting commercial world was neither a closed regional economy nor a colonial creation. It was an early-modern network later reworked—rather than invented—by Company expansion.

Table 53.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing interregional trade

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limit
Travel narratives: Fitch, Mundy, Tavernier, Bernier	dated routes, merchants, transport, selected commodities and market observations	selective outsider observations; not systematic trade statistics
Company and merchant records	factories, purchases, prices, advances, saltpetre/textile/opium procurement, river export	corporate interests overrepresent commodities profitable to the companies
Regional route reconstructions and sarai evidence	road and river corridors, halts, ferries, transshipment and commercial infrastructure	routes could vary by season, security and political conditions
Kirkpatrick and Buchanan-Hamilton on Nepal	late-18th/early-19th-century Patna–Kathmandu links and commodity directions	later evidence cannot automatically prove 17th-century volumes or identical commodity mixes
Later district trade estimates	mature entrepôt structure, hinterland supply and two-way staple movement	useful for continuity questions, not a substitute for earlier evidence

Chapter 54 — East India Company Expansion and the Remaking of Agrarian Relations

Between the military victories of the East India Company in the 1750s and 1760s and the Permanent Settlement of 1793 lay nearly three decades of experimentation. The decisive change was not that a wholly new agrarian order appeared overnight after Plassey or Buxar. Rather, a commercial corporation acquired political leverage, then fiscal sovereignty, and gradually inserted its own supervisors, councils, collectors, auctions, revenue farmers, courts and accounting practices into an older Mughal–Nawabi system of zamindars, amils, qanungos, patwaris and village producers. Bihar is especially revealing because the transition can be seen through Shitab Rai's revenue administration, the Patna Revenue Council, early experiments in Tirhut, the Rajmahal–Bhagalpur supervisory system and the uneven fiscal geography of Monghyr. This chapter follows that transition from 1757 to the eve of the Permanent Settlement. It therefore stops short of treating the 1793 settlement itself in detail; that belongs to Chapter 55.

54.1 Company expansion was a sequence, not a single conquest

The remaking of agrarian relations began before the Company directly collected land revenue. Plassey in 1757 enlarged Company influence at the Bengal court, but it did not transfer the countryside into a British administrative system. The Battle of Buxar in 1764 was more consequential for Bihar because Company forces defeated a coalition that included Mir Qasim, Shuja-ud-Daula of Awadh and the Mughal emperor Shah Alam II. Even then, military victory had to be converted into fiscal authority, administrative routines and enforceable claims over local intermediaries. The agrarian transition was therefore cumulative: war altered sovereignty; treaties redistributed rights; revenue institutions changed more slowly.

54.2 Buxar made Bihar central to the Company's territorial state

Buxar linked Bihar's political history directly to the making of Company rule. Mir Qasim had earlier shifted his capital to Monghyr and attempted to strengthen nawabi authority against Company interference. His defeat removed a major regional challenge. The settlement that followed brought the Company into a new relationship with the Mughal emperor and the Bengal nawab. From this point Bihar was not merely a corridor for Company trade or military movement. Its land revenue became part of the fiscal foundation of a territorial regime whose military and commercial ambitions increasingly depended on collections from the countryside.

54.3 The Diwani grant of 1765 changed the legal claim to revenue

On 12 August 1765 Shah Alam II granted the Company the Diwani of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. Diwani signified the right and responsibility to administer the revenues. The grant did not instantly create a European bureaucracy in every pargana. It gave the Company a superior fiscal title while much of the existing machinery remained Indian. This distinction matters. A sanad could transfer sovereignty over revenue without replacing the personnel, village records, customary claims and negotiation through which revenue was actually realised. Agrarian change therefore began as an overlay: a new claimant to surplus stood above older layers of administration.

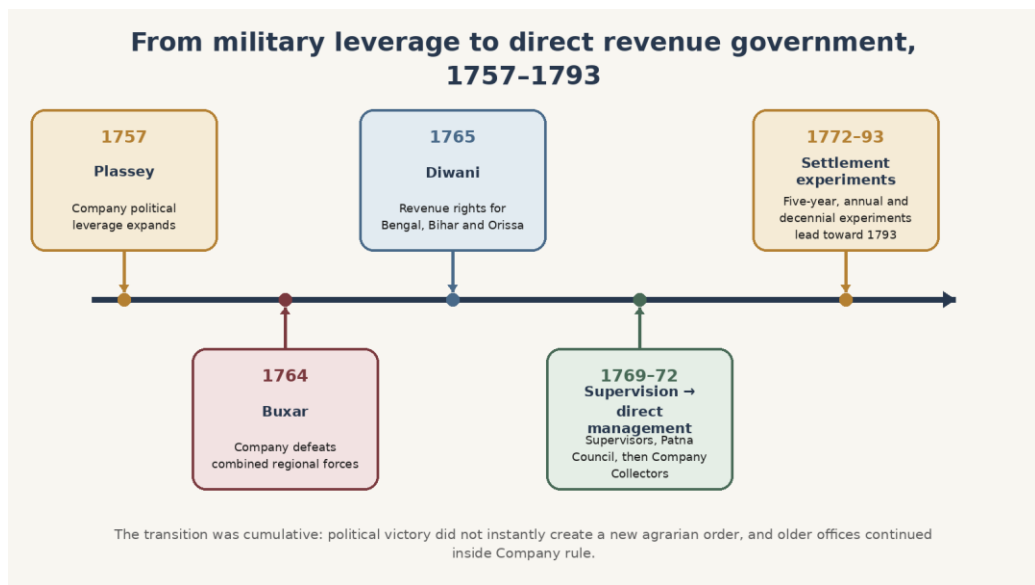


Figure 212 — From military leverage to direct revenue government, 1757–1793

54.4 “Dual government” describes divided responsibility but can conceal continuity

The years 1765–1772 are often described as a “Dual Government,” with the Company controlling revenue while the nawab retained the nizamat or civil and criminal administration. The phrase captures an important division of formal responsibility, yet newer scholarship warns against imagining two neatly separate machines. Company authority worked through Mughal–Nawabi offices and Indian fiscal agents, while those agents adjusted to Company supervision. Abdul Majed Khan’s study of Muhammad Reza Khan emphasizes continuity and overlap. For Bihar, the role of Shitab Rai similarly shows that the Company initially depended on established expertise rather than governing the countryside through a fully European hierarchy.

54.5 Shitab Rai embodied continuity in Bihar’s early Company revenue system

After the Diwani, Raja Shitab Rai remained a crucial figure in Bihar’s revenue administration under Company supervision. His position illustrates the early logic of indirect control: the Company wanted the fiscal benefits of sovereignty without immediately constructing a costly district bureaucracy. Existing officers knew pargana accounts, landed families, cesses, arrears and local bargaining conventions. Yet this arrangement also created ambiguity about responsibility. Company officials increasingly demanded higher, more regular remittances while local officers remained the visible face of collection. Complaints of corruption or oppression could therefore be directed downward even when the fiscal pressure originated at a higher level.

54.6 Revenue became inseparable from the Company’s fiscal-military needs

The Company was simultaneously merchant, army employer and territorial revenue claimant. Land revenue could finance troops, administration and the purchase of export goods. This altered the political economy of collection. Under an Indian court, revenue also sustained armies and elites, but the Company’s corporate accounts linked territorial surplus to commercial remittance and shareholder expectations in a distinctive way. Contemporary debates repeatedly returned to the expected “surplus” of Bengal and Bihar.

The pressure to know, assess and regularise the countryside was therefore not merely an administrative preference; it was tied to the financial architecture of Company expansion.

54.7 Commercial privilege and fiscal sovereignty reinforced each other

The Company had entered eastern India as a trading corporation. Once it obtained Diwani authority, its commercial and territorial roles became intertwined. Control of customs disputes, saltpetre and opium procurement, advances to producers and the financing of Company investments interacted with land-revenue flows. The precise impact varied by commodity and district, but the structural point is clear: the same institution that claimed public revenue also possessed powerful private and corporate commercial interests. This dual position affected bargaining with merchants, zamindars and officials and helped transform the balance of power within regional markets.

54.8 The 1769 supervisors marked a first attempt to see inside the districts

By 1769 the Company had become dissatisfied with indirect fiscal management and appointed European “Supervisors.” Their mandate was broader than simply checking cash receipts. They were to investigate the history and productive capacity of districts, existing demands on cultivators, collection practices, commerce and justice. In practice they remained dependent on interpreters, Indian clerks and local revenue knowledge. Yet the office signalled a new administrative ambition: to turn the countryside into an object of systematic information. Surveying revenue relations became a technique of rule even before the Company possessed the staff to control them directly.

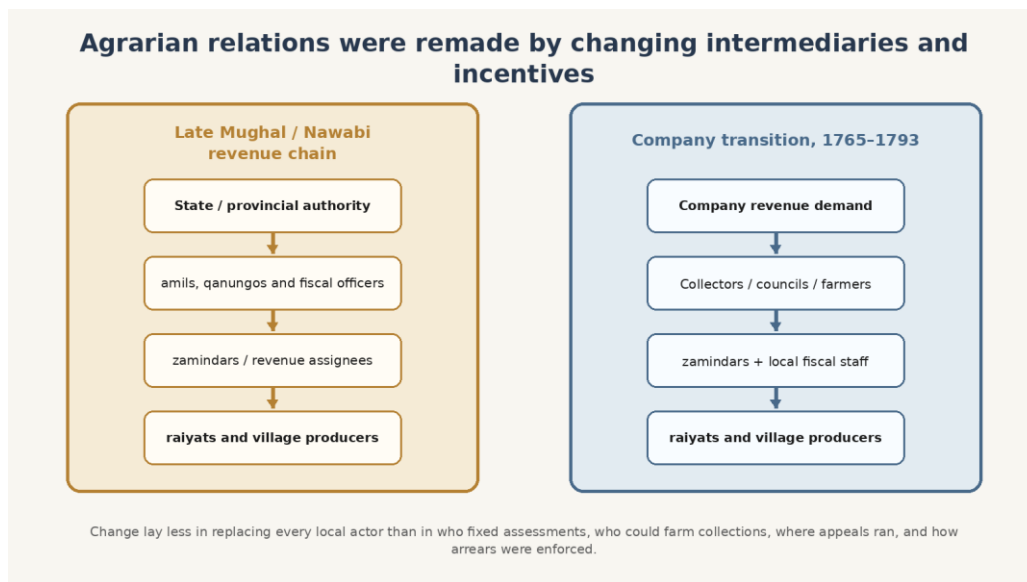


Figure 213 — Agrarian mediation before and during the Company transition

54.9 The Patna Revenue Council brought Bihar under a new supervisory centre

In 1770 a Revenue Council was established at Patna for Bihar. This was a significant institutional step because it created a provincial node through which Company servants could supervise the older revenue machinery. The council did not eliminate dependence on Indian agents, but it concentrated correspondence and review. Patna’s older role as administrative and commercial centre now acquired a specifically colonial fiscal function. The shift also helps explain why later district histories of Tirhut, Saran and other parts of north Bihar repeatedly refer to orders and supervision emanating from Patna during the transitional years.

54.10 Tirhut reveals how experimental the early district system was

The administrative history preserved for Tirhut is unusually revealing. European supervision appeared after 1769; in 1771 a European Collector was appointed in Tirhut, but the experiment did not last. In 1772 control shifted again under the Provincial Council at Patna and the new five-year revenue settlement. Later annual settlements also proved unstable, and direct European collectorship was restored in 1782. Such reversals show that the Company did not arrive with a finished district system. It tested competing arrangements because it did not yet know how to convert nominal assessments into reliable revenue without destroying the local structures on which collection depended.

54.11 Bhagalpur shows both information failure and fiscal leakage

The Bhagalpur–Rajmahal corridor followed a different sequence. An English Supervisor based at Rajmahal was appointed at the end of 1769. Later district records state that when the Company assumed direct revenue management in 1772, substantial sums from Bhagalpur, Colgong and Chhai were found to have been unaccounted for over preceding years. Whatever the exact mechanisms, the episode demonstrates why Company officials increasingly equated better knowledge with higher revenue security. It also shows the weakness of treating the 1765 Diwani as equivalent to effective local control: legal entitlement and actual remittance could be far apart.

54.12 Monghyr and Anga exposed the limits of paper sovereignty

The Mughal sarkar of Monghyr covered a large and uneven territory, including areas where Company control was weak and some zamindars remained difficult to subordinate. Later revenue analysis described portions as refractory or imperfectly explored. This should not be read as evidence of an empty administrative space; rather, it indicates that claims made in imperial revenue lists exceeded the practical reach of successive states. Company expansion in the Anga zone therefore required negotiation, coercion and new information. A uniform fiscal policy encountered riverine lowlands, forest-edge tracts, zamindari strongholds and shifting jurisdictional boundaries.

54.13 The famine of 1770 was a severe test of the transitional regime

The famine of 1770 belongs to the fuller history of scarcity in Chapter 58, but it cannot be omitted from the remaking of agrarian relations. Contemporary and later district records from Bihar describe crop failure, distress, ruined zamindars and impoverished raiyats. The crisis exposed the dangers of rigid revenue expectations when agricultural output collapsed. It also sharpened debates over responsibility: who should remit, reduce or enforce collections, and who possessed reliable information about local conditions? The famine did not by itself create later revenue policy, but it revealed the human and fiscal costs of governing through imperfect knowledge and competing authorities.

54.14 In 1772 the Company decided to “stand forth as Diwan”

Orders from the Court of Directors instructed the Bengal government to take the entire care and management of revenue into Company hands. Warren Hastings implemented the change in 1772. The revenue headquarters were shifted toward Calcutta, supervisors were redesignated as Collectors, and a Committee of Circuit travelled through districts to make settlements. This was a major constitutional and administrative step. The Company ceased pretending that Indian deputies alone were responsible for fiscal outcomes and made its own servants visibly accountable for revenue management, even though those servants still depended heavily on Indian record-keepers and intermediaries.

54.15 The Committee of Circuit turned assessment into a travelling inquiry

The Committee of Circuit was designed to inspect districts and settle their revenues on the spot. Its work combined inquiry, negotiation and fiscal ambition. Officials sought to discover the “real” resources of estates and parganas, but the information available to them came through interested parties: zamindars, amils, bankers, farmers, clerks and cultivators. The result was not a neutral measurement of agricultural capacity. It was a contest over knowledge. Every estimate of assets and cultivation could affect who obtained a farm, what assessment was imposed and which claims were recognised.

54.16 The quinquennial settlement changed the incentives of collection

The five-year settlement of 1772–1777 frequently awarded revenue farms to the highest bidders. In theory competition would reveal the true fiscal capacity of an estate and secure a predictable payment to government. In practice speculative bids could exceed what cultivation and rents could sustain. Some old zamindars retained their areas by bidding; others were displaced by revenue farmers or agents backed by commercial capital. When a farmer’s contractual obligation was fixed at an unrealistic level, the incentive was to extract quickly from subordinate landholders and raiyats or to default and abandon the farm.

54.17 Zamindars were neither simply abolished nor already modern landlords

The transitional decades are easily distorted by later legal categories. Zamindars before 1793 possessed important hereditary, fiscal and political claims, but the Company had not yet defined them as the kind of proprietary landlords created by the Permanent Settlement. Under the 1772 experiment, some were bypassed in favour of revenue farmers; others acted as farmers themselves; dispossessed zamindars could receive allowances. Their position was therefore unstable. The crucial question was not whether they were “owners” in a modern sense, but what bundle of collection rights, local authority and hereditary claims the state would recognise.

54.18 Raiyats faced changing collectors more quickly than changing cultivation

For cultivators, the most immediate changes were often not new crops or technologies but new layers of demand and uncertainty. A raiyat might encounter the same village headmen and patwari while the person entitled to collect above them changed from a zamindar to a revenue farmer or khas manager. Short leases encouraged some intermediaries to prioritise immediate extraction over long-term cultivation. At the same time, cultivators were not passive. They could conceal assets, move, negotiate, resist illegal cesses, appeal to officials or exploit rivalry among collectors. Agrarian relations remained a field of bargaining, though the Company increasingly sought to discipline that bargaining through written engagements.

54.19 Indian fiscal expertise remained indispensable

The language of “direct” Company management can mislead if it suggests that European Collectors themselves knew every field, rent roll and customary due. Qanungos preserved fiscal precedents and local records; patwaris maintained village accounts; amils and diwans understood collection routines; bankers advanced funds and transmitted remittances. European officials depended on these actors to translate both language and institutions. The transition therefore produced hybrid administration. Colonial power lay increasingly in appointment, review, coercion and audit, while much everyday knowledge continued to be generated by Indian personnel.

54.20 Arrears linked fiscal pressure to credit and coercion

Revenue was due on a schedule even when harvests, prices and local collection were uncertain. This made arrears a central problem. Zamindars and farmers borrowed to meet instalments; bankers and moneyed intermediaries became important in the fiscal chain; failure could lead to removal, confinement, khas management or reassignment. At lower levels, attempts to recover arrears could be passed onto raiyats through enhanced rents and cesses. The Company thus transformed agrarian relations partly by making punctual remittance to a distant treasury a dominant test of administrative success.

54.21 The failure of the five-year experiment led to shorter settlements

The quinquennial settlement produced defaults, complaints and administrative criticism. When it expired, the Company moved toward annual or short-term settlements, sometimes with zamindars and sometimes with farmers. Tirhut's later administrative history records annual settlements from the late 1770s into the 1780s. Shorter terms reduced the government's exposure to a bad long contract but created another problem: uncertainty for those managing estates. The search for reliable revenue thus oscillated between flexibility and stability, with no consensus yet on the correct duration or on the proper person with whom government should settle.

54.22 Tirhut's restored collectorship in 1782 shows continuing uncertainty

The restoration of a European Collector in Tirhut in 1782, with François Grand among the early office-holders, demonstrates that the Company was still redesigning its administrative map well after the 1772 reforms. The Collector had to determine assessments, enforce payments and work through local intermediaries across a large and ecologically varied region. Difficulties of realisation remained significant. The episode matters because later colonial districts can look retrospectively inevitable; in the 1780s they were experimental institutions whose authority, staffing and territorial reach were still being negotiated.

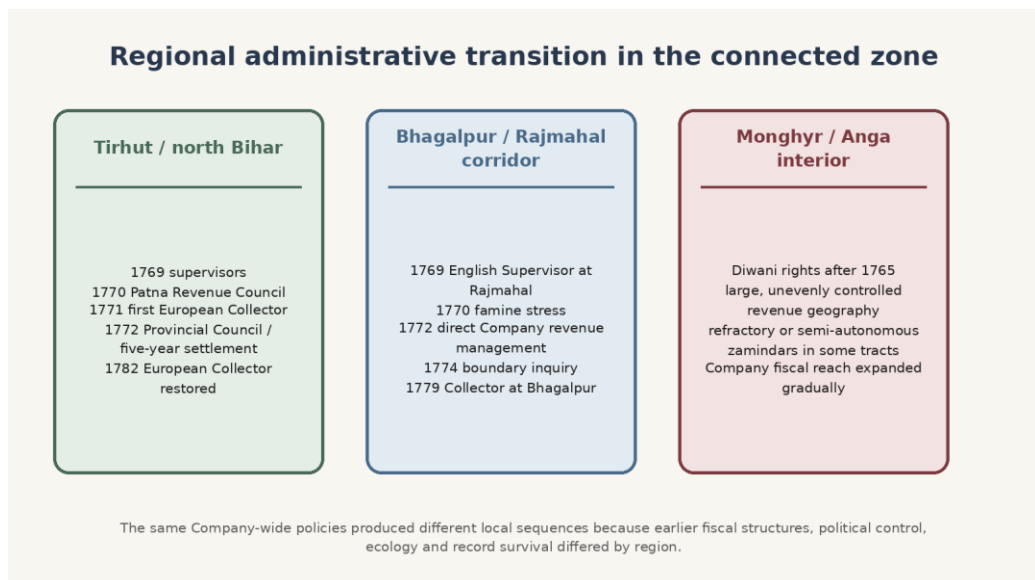


Figure 214 — Regional administrative transition in Tirhut, Bhagalpur–Rajmahal and Monghyr

54.23 Bhagalpur's collectorate linked fiscal administration to frontier governance

Bhagalpur's early Company administration developed at the meeting point of Ganga commerce, settled agrarian zones and hill-frontier politics. A separate collectorate emerged during the late 1770s, with Augustus

Cleveland becoming a prominent Collector from 1779. His later reputation is associated especially with relations with hill communities, but for agrarian history the important point is institutional: revenue, policing, frontier negotiation and district knowledge were becoming concentrated in the Collector's office. The colonial district was not merely a tax jurisdiction; it was becoming an integrated territorial apparatus.

54.24 Revenue experiments altered local political competition

Auctions and short settlements created openings for men with cash, credit and official connections to compete with hereditary landed families. Some bidders were substantial merchants or banians; others were agents acting behind nominal farmers. Old zamindars in turn used kinship, armed followings, petitions and local influence to defend their positions. Company revenue policy therefore redistributed opportunities within rural elites even before 1793. The result was not simply the rise of one new class, but intensified competition among hereditary landholders, revenue entrepreneurs, bankers, officials and village-level controllers.

54.25 Revenue administration and justice became increasingly entangled

The Company's fiscal authority generated disputes over possession, rent, arrears, cesses and succession. During the transitional period the boundary between revenue and judicial business was unstable. Supervisors and Collectors handled complaints while provincial councils and newly reorganised courts altered channels of appeal. This mattered socially because the forum in which a dispute was heard could shape whose records and testimony were decisive. The Company's attempt to separate and regularise judicial functions was therefore also part of agrarian transformation: land relations became progressively more textual, litigable and reviewable by colonial institutions.

54.26 The production of records was itself a form of agrarian intervention

The new regime demanded histories of districts, lists of estates, accounts of produce, customary cesses, rent rolls, boundaries and arrears. These records were not merely descriptive. Once entered into a Collector's register or settlement paper, a claim could acquire new administrative weight. Conversely, rights that were customary but poorly documented could become vulnerable. The Company's growing archive therefore helped transform fluid relationships into categories legible to government. Later colonial surveys would intensify this process, but its roots are visible in the supervisory and settlement experiments of the 1760s–1780s.

54.27 Territorial revenue financed an expanding colonial political economy

Land revenue did not remain inside the district from which it was collected. It entered a wider Company system that supported civil establishments, armies, debt service and commercial investments. This changed the scale at which agrarian surplus was mobilised. Bihar's cultivators and landed intermediaries were connected through the treasury to military campaigns and export procurement far beyond Bihar. The relationship between village production and imperial finance thus became more direct, even though the actual path of money still passed through many intermediaries and often depended on merchant credit.

54.28 By the 1780s the problem was no longer whether to rule, but how

The experiments since 1765 convinced Company officials that they could not simply collect revenue through inherited arrangements without defining their own administrative principles. Yet they disagreed sharply about the solution. Should revenue be farmed competitively? Should hereditary zamindars be

preferred? How should productive capacity be estimated? What term would encourage improvement without sacrificing state income? Debates involving officials such as Philip Francis, John Shore and later Cornwallis turned local difficulties into theories of property and political economy. The countryside of Bengal and Bihar became the testing ground for a colonial doctrine of agrarian governance.

54.29 The decennial settlement was an endpoint of experimentation, not yet the Permanent Settlement

By the late 1780s Company policy moved toward longer settlements and greater reliance on zamindars. The Decennial Settlement beginning in 1789 represented an attempt to stabilise assessments and landed authority after two decades of short-term changes. It became the immediate institutional bridge to the Permanent Settlement of 1793. Yet the two should not be collapsed. At the moment of decennial settlement the permanence of the arrangement was still a policy question. Chapter 55 therefore begins where this chapter ends: with the conversion of a decade-long settlement into a perpetual one and the new legal architecture of landed property.

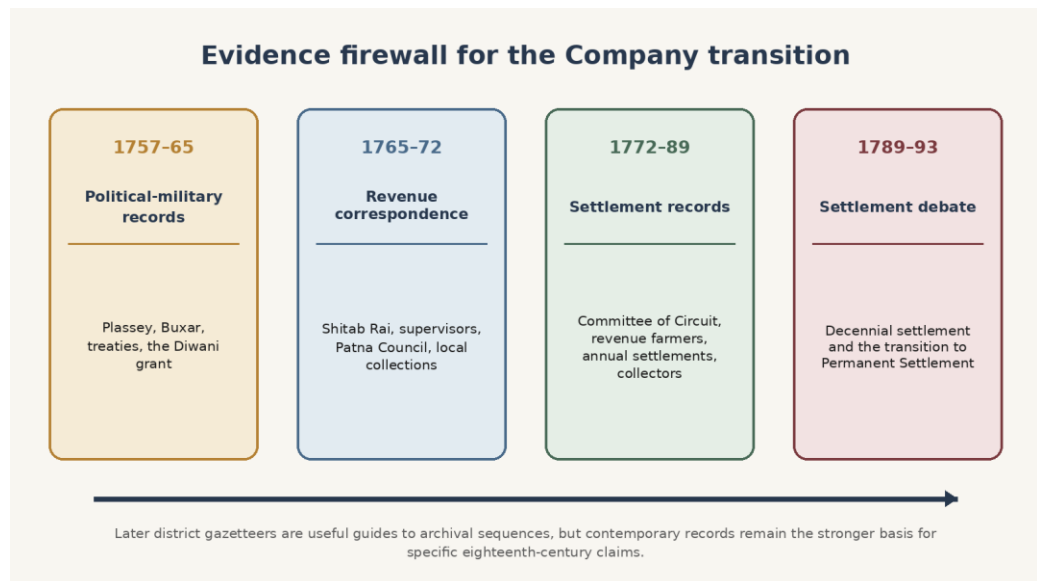


Figure 215 — Evidence firewall for the Company transition

54.30 Conclusion: Company rule remade agrarian relations through institutions before it fixed property law

Between 1757 and 1793 the East India Company transformed from a privileged merchant into the principal territorial revenue authority of Bengal and Bihar. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga this transition appeared through Patna's revenue councils, Tirhut's shifting collectorates, Rajmahal–Bhagalpur supervision, the uneven fiscal geography of Monghyr, revenue farms, annual settlements, expanding archives and new channels of appeal. Much older personnel and practice survived, but they operated under changing incentives and a new sovereign claimant. The Permanent Settlement did not create colonial agrarian relations from nothing; it attempted to freeze and legalise a field already profoundly reorganised by three decades of fiscal experiment.

Table 54.1 — Administrative phases in the remaking of agrarian relations, 1757–1793

Phase	Administrative arrangement	Agrarian significance
-------	----------------------------	-----------------------

Phase	Administrative arrangement	Agrarian significance
1757–1765	Company political and military leverage without general Diwani	older revenue institutions continue; Company influence expands before direct fiscal sovereignty
1765–1769	Diwani with revenue collection largely through Indian officers	new sovereign claimant overlays existing zamindars, amils, qanungos and village records
1769–1772	European Supervisors; Patna Revenue Council; early district experiments	systematic information gathering and closer Company oversight enter the countryside
1772–1777	Company “stands forth as Diwan”; Committee of Circuit; quinquennial revenue farming	competitive farms and written engagements destabilise some hereditary intermediaries and intensify short-term extraction incentives
1777–1789	annual / short settlements; changing councils and collectors	continued experimentation with zamindars, farmers, khas management and district offices
1789–1793	Decennial Settlement and debate over permanence	attempt to stabilise landed authority and assessment; immediate bridge to Chapter 55’s Permanent Settlement

Chapter 55 — Permanent Settlement and Landed Society

The Permanent Settlement of 1793 converted the experimental decennial settlement of Bengal and Bihar into a perpetual state demand upon designated zamindars, independent talukdars and other proprietors. Its importance lay not simply in fixing revenue, but in reworking the legal language of landed authority. A hereditary revenue-collecting right was increasingly treated as proprietary property, while punctual payment to the colonial state became the condition of security. Yet the settlement did not define every right below the zamindar. Raiyats, under-tenure holders, village officials, service tenures, rent-free grants and customary users continued to inhabit a layered agrarian field that subsequent regulations, courts and tenancy statutes tried to order. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga the effects were regionally uneven: Tirhut entered a large permanent settlement in 1793, Bhagalpur was only partially settled at that date, and Monghyr contained a mixture of estate forms and difficult fiscal geographies. This chapter therefore studies the Permanent Settlement as the beginning of a new landed society, not as a one-day replacement of all older agrarian relations.

55.1 From decennial experiment to perpetual settlement

The decennial settlement of 1790–91 was initially framed as a ten-year arrangement. Cornwallis and his colleagues then chose to make the assessed demand perpetual in 1793. The change mattered because future agricultural expansion and rental growth would accrue chiefly below the state's fixed demand. In return, the Company expected secure landed property and predictable revenue to encourage improvement. The settlement therefore joined fiscal calculation to a political theory of property. It was less an isolated regulation than the culmination of the experiments traced in Chapter 54.

55.2 What Regulation I of 1793 actually fixed

Regulation I of 1793 declared the public assessment on settled estates fixed in perpetuity. It did not freeze the actual produce of the land, the number of cultivators, the rent collected from each raiyat, or the internal structure of every estate. The distinction between public jama and estate income is fundamental. A permanently fixed state demand could coexist with changing cultivation, prices, rents and subordinate tenures. Much later agrarian conflict arose precisely within that widening space between fixed public revenue and variable private rental income.

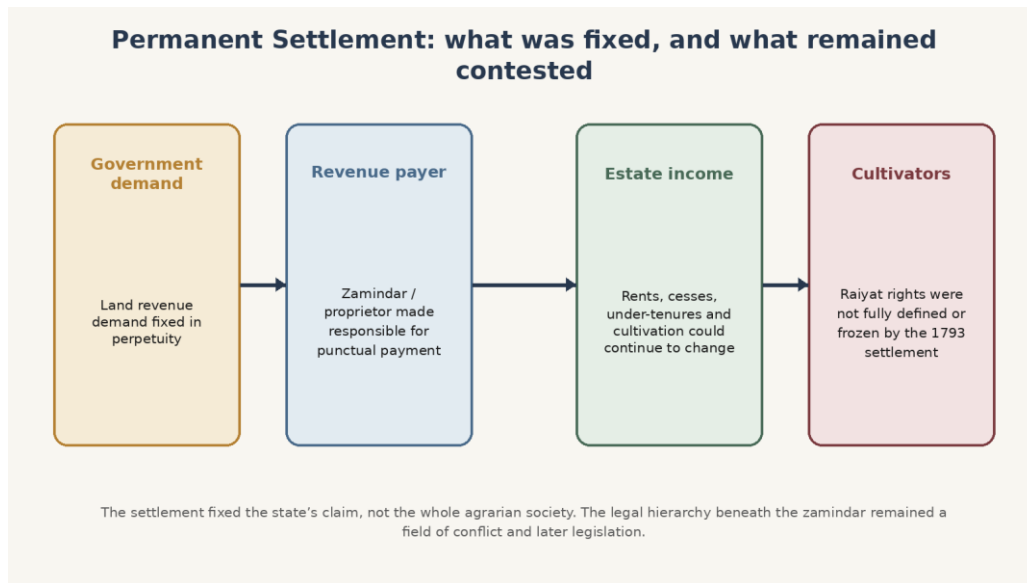


Figure 216 — Permanent Settlement: what was fixed, and what remained contested

55.3 Zamindar as proprietor: a colonial legal translation

Colonial law increasingly described the zamindar as proprietor. This was not merely a neutral translation of an unchanged Mughal category. Earlier zamindari authority had combined revenue collection, local political influence, hereditary claims, jurisdictional habits and negotiated relations with superior power. The Permanent Settlement selected and hardened one aspect—responsibility for the assessed revenue—and linked it to a stronger language of transferable property. The result was a legal simplification of a socially complex office.

55.4 Property rights were tied to revenue responsibility

The new proprietary language came with a hard condition: the estate stood as security for the government demand. Failure to pay arrears could expose all or part of the estate to public sale. Property therefore became more alienable but also more vulnerable to fiscal default. The same arrangement that promised hereditary security also created a mechanism through which old families could lose estates and purchasers could acquire them. Stability and dispossession were built into the same legal architecture.

55.5 The state demand was fixed, rural rents were not

Because the state demand was fixed, an estate that expanded cultivation or raised rents could retain more of the increase. This incentive lay at the heart of the official theory of improvement. Yet the state did not guarantee that gains would come from investment rather than rent enhancement, new cesses, closer measurement or pressure on tenants. The settlement thus created a structural incentive to increase net rental income without specifying a single path by which landlords should do so.

55.6 Raiyats were not made simple tenants by a single clause

Raiyats were essential cultivators and revenue-producing subjects, but the Permanent Settlement did not settle their rights with the same clarity given to the state's claim against proprietors. Existing customs, rent rates, occupancy practices and written pattas continued to matter. Later regulations and nineteenth-century

rent legislation repeatedly returned to questions of occupancy, enhancement, eviction and receipts. Those later laws are evidence that 1793 left the landlord–cultivator relationship incompletely defined.

55.7 Custom, contract and coercion beneath the settlement

Below formal regulations lay village practice. Rent could be shaped by crop, soil, irrigation, flood risk, market access, customary service and local bargaining. Zamindars acted through amlas, tahsildars and other agents; raiyats could resist, conceal, litigate, migrate or negotiate. The Permanent Settlement altered the framework within which these relations operated, but it did not abolish the social power embedded in local knowledge, credit and control over records.

55.8 Revenue sale made property conditional on punctuality

Revenue-sale procedure gave the government a powerful enforcement mechanism. Later statutes refined the precise rules, but the principle was already central: an estate in arrears could be sold and the purchaser could obtain a new legal position under the fixed assessment. The sale regime turned punctual fiscal payment into a recurring discipline on proprietors. It also encouraged litigation over shares, encumbrances and subordinate interests, making the courthouse part of rural political economy.

55.9 Estate transfer created a market in fiscal rights

Permanent settlement made landed interests more legible as transferable assets. Estates and shares could pass through inheritance, partition, private transfer, court decree or revenue sale. Buyers might include older landed families, merchants, officials or creditors. This did not create a perfectly liquid market in land, but it widened the circumstances in which revenue-paying rights could circulate beyond inherited political lineages. Landed society became increasingly intertwined with money, debt and legal title.

55.10 The settlement did not abolish intermediaries

The image of a state, a zamindar and a mass of tenants is too simple. Existing talukdars, tenure-holders, village headmen, service grantees and rent-free interests did not vanish. New under-tenures also appeared. The agrarian order became vertically layered, with multiple claims to rent and multiple levels of responsibility. Later Bihar land-reform legislation would still describe an intricate hierarchy of intermediaries, showing how durable this layered structure became.

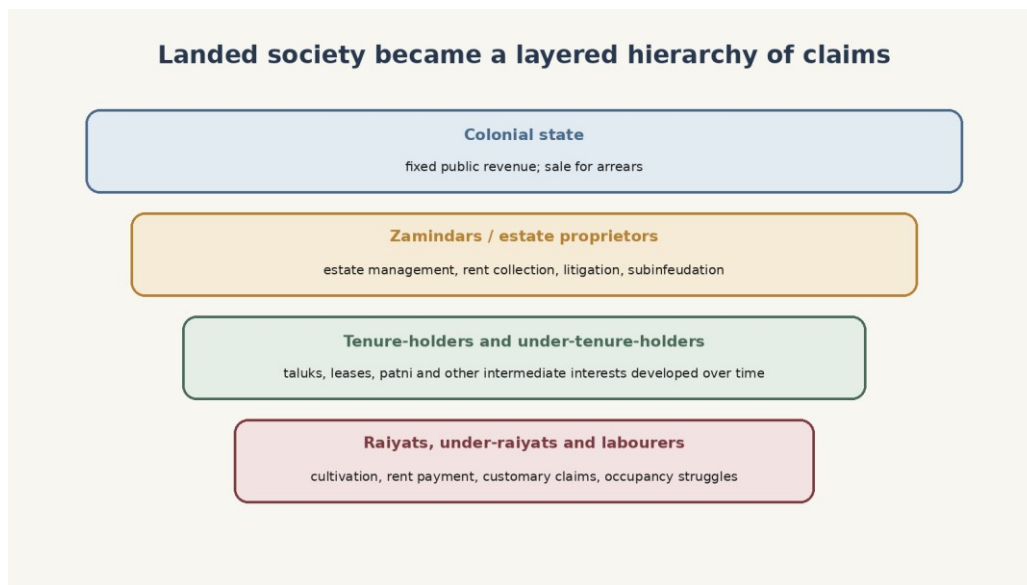


Figure 217 — Layered hierarchy of landed claims under permanent settlement

55.11 Subinfeudation and the growth of layered tenures

Subinfeudation allowed estate proprietors to create subordinate rent-receiving interests, sometimes for fixed payments and long terms. Such arrangements could mobilise capital, delegate management and shift risk downward. They could also separate the person ultimately liable for government revenue from those who actually supervised cultivation or collected rent. The result was not uniform absenteeism but a spectrum of estate-management forms, from direct control to multiple tiers of intermediaries.

55.12 Patni tenure belongs to the later evolution of the system

Patni taluks are important but chronologically later than 1793. Regulation VIII of 1819 recognized and regulated such perpetual under-tenures, reflecting practices that had developed under the freedom of proprietors to lease their lands. The patni system illustrates how the Permanent Settlement generated institutional consequences over time. It should therefore be treated as an evolution within the permanently settled order, not as a tenure fully specified in the original 1793 settlement.

55.13 Inheritance and partition multiplied landed interests

Inheritance could fragment estates or shares, while family strategies could also preserve large domains through impartibility claims, trusts or managerial arrangements. Regulation XI of 1793 dealt with inheritance to revenue-paying land according to applicable personal law, but actual succession could produce litigation and partition. In Tirhut especially, later records show a dramatic multiplication of revenue-paying estates through partitions and resumptions. A fixed revenue regime did not mean a fixed map of ownership.

55.14 Tirhut entered the settlement as a large but incomplete fiscal landscape

The Tirhut settlement illustrates both scale and incompleteness. Gazetteer evidence records a substantial area assessed at the decennial settlement and made permanent in 1793, while large areas remained outside the original assessment and were later brought onto the revenue roll through resumption proceedings. The apparent neatness of a permanent settlement therefore concealed an unfinished fiscal geography. Subsequent surveys, partitions and resumptions continued to remake the landed map.

55.15 Darbhanga Raj: political authority narrowed into zamindari property

The Darbhanga Raj demonstrates how permanent settlement could narrow an older regional authority into a colonial category of landed property. Later legal records concerning the Raj show that not all jagir villages were included in the settlement and that the family's older rights could be reduced to specified dues in excluded tracts. The surviving estate remained formidable, but its relationship to government was increasingly that of a large revenue-paying zamindari rather than an autonomous territorial principality.

55.16 Revenue-free and disputed lands remained a major frontier

Revenue-free grants, jagirs, lakhraj lands and other exemptions posed a basic problem: what land properly belonged within the taxable estate? The 1793 regulatory framework was accompanied by rules concerning revenue-free lands, but disputes endured. Claims to old grants required proof; invalid or unsupported exemptions could later be resumed and assessed. The permanently settled landscape was therefore bounded by a continuing documentary struggle over what counted as valid exemption.

55.17 Resumption proceedings altered the settled map

Nineteenth-century resumption proceedings altered the fiscal map without overturning the principle of permanent assessment. Lands judged improperly exempt could be assessed and brought into the revenue system, often at later dates. In north Bihar such proceedings added very large areas and revenue to the roll. This is a reminder that "Permanent Settlement" referred to the permanence of an assessment once validly fixed, not to a guarantee that every parcel had already been identified and settled in 1793.

55.18 Bhagalpur shows why 1793 was not locally simultaneous

Bhagalpur is a particularly useful corrective to textbook generalization. District evidence indicates that only a modest revenue total was permanently settled there in 1793 and that much larger sums were permanently settled in subsequent decades. The eastern zone therefore entered the regime through a more extended chronology. Anga's social history cannot be reconstructed by assuming that every estate in the Bhagalpur region acquired its permanent status on the same day as major Tirhut estates.

55.19 Monghyr and Anga retained mixed tenurial geographies

Monghyr likewise contained diverse landed formations. Older zamindaris, service-linked holdings, difficult frontier tracts and imperfectly assessed areas complicate any picture of a uniform proprietary countryside. The Permanent Settlement supplied a legal-fiscal framework, but the degree to which it mapped directly onto village-level authority varied. Regional political history and local tenure remained necessary to understand who actually controlled rent, labour and access to land.

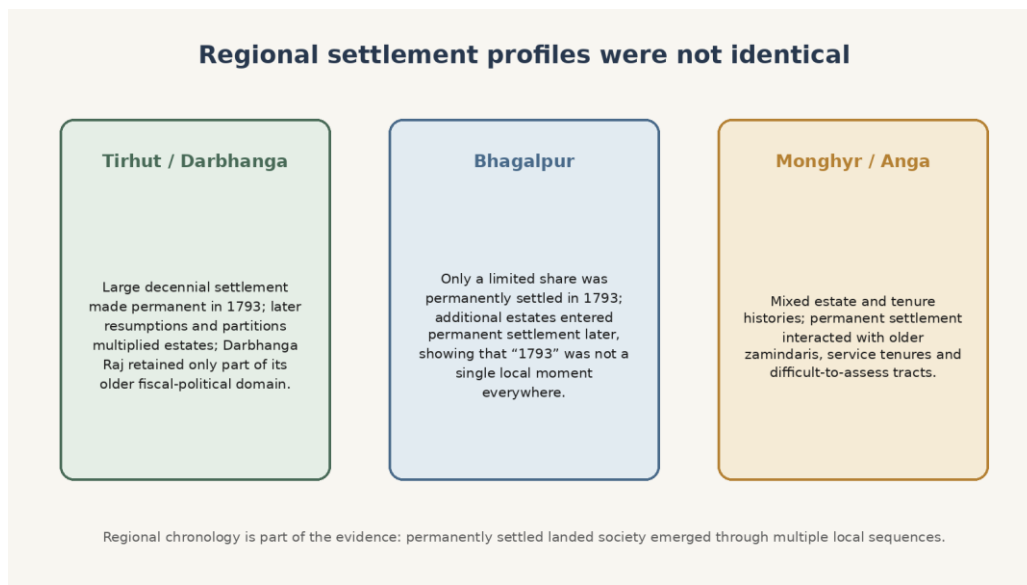


Figure 218 — Regional settlement profiles in Tirhut/Darbhanga, Bhagalpur and Monghyr/Anga

55.20 Service tenures complicate a simple landlord–tenant model

Service tenures are especially important in the Anga–Monghyr–Bhagalpur zone. Ghatwali and related holdings could combine land with obligations of policing, guarding passes or maintaining routes. Later legal disputes often turned on whether such lands were included in a permanently settled zamindari or independently resumable. These cases show that agrarian property could carry public or quasi-public obligations and cannot always be reduced to a simple private landlord–tenant relationship.

55.21 Landed elites diversified their strategies

Landed elites responded to the new regime through management, leasing, borrowing, litigation, purchase and political alliance. Some consolidated large estates; others lost shares to arrears or debt. Merchants and moneyed groups could enter the landed sphere, while established families could use credit and legal expertise to survive. Permanent settlement thus linked rural hierarchy to expanding legal and financial networks rather than isolating the countryside from commercial society.

55.22 Courts and documentation became instruments of landed power

Written title, account books, rent rolls, receipts, decrees and registration became increasingly important resources. Estate offices accumulated paper; courts demanded documentary proof; collectors maintained registers. Those who controlled records gained strategic advantages in disputes over rent, tenure and inheritance. The archive was therefore not merely a neutral source for historians. It was itself one of the technologies through which colonial landed power was made and contested.

55.23 Rent enhancement became the central unresolved question

With the public revenue fixed, disputes over rent became the central distributive conflict of the system. Landlords sought to capture agricultural and market growth; cultivators defended customary or contractual rates. The law struggled to distinguish legitimate enhancement from arbitrary exaction. The Bengal Rent Act of 1859 and later Bihar tenancy legislation addressed problems that had accumulated under permanent settlement, including occupancy rights, pattas, enhancement and eviction.

55.24 Cash rents, produce rents and ecological variation

Not all rents were cash rents, and ecological diversity mattered. Produce-sharing arrangements survived in many places, particularly for less secure tenants or particular crops and localities. Flood-prone plains, riverine chars, wet rice zones and market-oriented tracts generated different bargaining conditions. A permanently fixed state demand sat above an agrarian economy whose rents could be expressed in money, produce or mixed obligations and whose risks remained highly local.

55.25 Peasant differentiation persisted beneath zamindari society

Rural society was differentiated among substantial raiyats, small holders, under-raiyats, sharecroppers, labourers and service groups. The Permanent Settlement did not create these differences from nothing, nor did it erase them. By placing a legally strengthened rent-receiving layer above cultivators, however, it reshaped the channels through which surplus was claimed. Later surveys reveal both occupancy rights among many raiyats and continuing insecurity among others.

55.26 Women, inheritance and landed property

Women could inherit, manage or litigate over revenue-paying property under applicable personal laws, but formal title did not erase gendered constraints on possession and management. Regulation XI of 1793 recognized inheritance questions rather than establishing a gender-neutral property regime. Widows and female estate-holders appear in later litigation, often through guardians, managers or courts. Their presence demonstrates that landed society cannot be described solely through male zamindars, even though patriarchal institutions remained powerful.

55.27 Famine, flood and arrears tested the fixed-demand principle

A fixed government demand shifted weather and production risk downward. Flood, drought, crop failure or price disruption did not automatically reduce the state's claim. Proprietors facing arrears might borrow, squeeze collections, sell assets or risk revenue sale; cultivators could face rent pressure at precisely the moment production fell. Yet remission and administrative discretion did not vanish entirely. The key structural point is that permanence reduced the routine possibility of reassessing the state demand according to annual output.

55.28 Later rent law reveals what 1793 left unresolved

The Bengal Rent Act of 1859, later revenue-sale law and the Bihar Tenancy Act of 1885 should be read as evidence of unresolved tensions within permanently settled society. They progressively defined occupancy, enhancement, receipts, under-tenures and sale protections. These statutes did not merely add detail to a complete 1793 design. They were attempts to govern conflicts that the original settlement had left to custom, contract, landlord power and judicial interpretation.

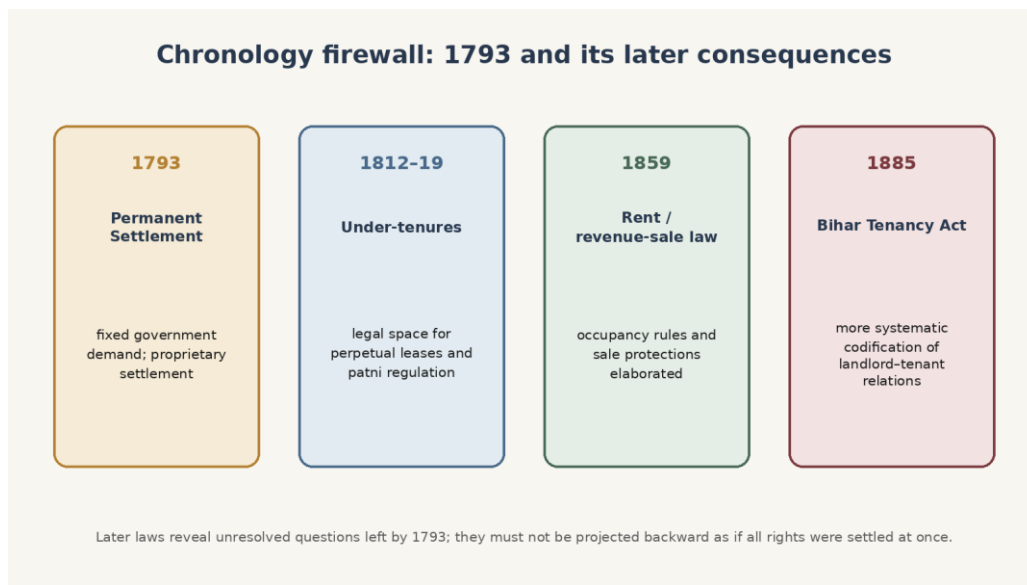


Figure 219 — Chronology firewall: 1793 and later consequences

55.29 Long-term consequences without monocausal explanation

Permanent settlement had major consequences, but it should not be made a single cause of every later agrarian inequality. Ecology, population, commodity markets, credit, caste and community organization, estate-management choices, colonial courts, transport and political change all mattered. The settlement created a durable fiscal-property framework within which these forces operated. Its historical importance lies in the way it structured incentives and legal claims over generations, not in a mechanically uniform effect everywhere.

55.30 Conclusion: a fixed state demand created a changing landed society

The Permanent Settlement fixed the colonial state's revenue claim while leaving landed society itself dynamic. Zamindars gained stronger proprietary recognition but faced sale for default. Estates fragmented, transferred and generated under-tenures. Raiyats retained and contested customary claims that later law had to define more explicitly. Tirhut, Darbhanga, Bhagalpur and Monghyr followed different local paths into the same broad regime. The result was not a frozen countryside but a changing hierarchy of property, rent, credit, documentation and cultivation. Chapter 56 turns from this landed framework to one of its most consequential commercial pressures: indigo and contract agriculture.

Table 55.1 — Institutions and longer consequences of permanently settled landed society

Institution / rule	Immediate function	Longer agrarian consequence
Permanent Settlement, 1793	Fix public revenue demand with recognized proprietors	stronger transferable estate property but continued conflict over subordinate rights
Revenue sale principle	Enforce punctual payment through sale for arrears	estate transfer and greater connection between land, debt and auction
Under-tenures	Allow proprietors to lease and delegate rent collection	layered intermediary interests and separation of ownership from direct management
Inheritance / partition	Transmit revenue-paying property under applicable law	fragmentation of shares and multiplication of estates

Institution / rule	Immediate function	Longer agrarian consequence
Rent legislation, 1859 onward	Regulate pattas, occupancy, enhancement and eviction	partial legal definition of raiyat rights left unresolved in 1793
Bihar Tenancy Act, 1885	Systematize landlord–tenant categories and occupancy rules	mature legal architecture of permanently settled agrarian society

Chapter 56 — Indigo and Commercial Agriculture

Indigo was one of the clearest ways in which colonial commercial agriculture entered the agrarian society created under permanent settlement. The crop linked cultivators and labourers in Bihar to European capital, Calcutta agency houses, factory processing, long-distance transport and volatile international dye markets. Yet the system was not uniform. Indigo could be grown directly on factory-controlled land, by tenants under advance-and-contract arrangements, or by independent cultivators. North Bihar—especially Tirhut, Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Saran and Champaran—became the principal European indigo zone during the nineteenth century, while Bhagalpur and Monghyr also supported significant production. This chapter therefore treats indigo as both a crop and an agrarian institution: it altered land use, credit, labour, rents, contracts and the distribution of risk. It also traces the technological and market crisis created by synthetic indigo after 1897 and the distinct Champaran conflict that culminated in the 1917 inquiry and the Champaran Agrarian Act of 1918.

56.1 Indigo as commodity, dye and agrarian institution

Indigofera plants produced a dye whose value depended on far more than acreage. The crop had to be cut at the correct stage, processed rapidly in vats, oxidized, settled, boiled or pressed and dried into cakes of marketable quality. The commodity therefore joined field cultivation to factory manufacture. A bad crop, delayed cutting, weak fermentation or falling London prices could affect the entire chain. For cultivators the relevant question was different: what land, labour and credit had to be diverted from food production in order to satisfy the factory. Indigo is best understood as a combined agricultural-industrial institution.

56.2 European indigo expansion in eastern India

European-supervised indigo manufacture expanded in eastern India from the late eighteenth century, drawing on export demand, Calcutta commercial finance and the Company state. Early concentration lay in Bengal, but Bihar became increasingly important during the nineteenth century. The chronology should not be simplified into a single founding date for the region. Factories appeared at different times, often through local leases, partnerships and estate connections. By the mid-nineteenth century North Bihar had become a major field for European planting enterprise.

56.3 Capital, agency houses and seasonal finance

Indigo was capital intensive because planters had to finance land rights, vats, buildings, cattle, seed, staff, transport and advances months before sale. Calcutta agency houses and other creditors supplied much of this working capital. The plantation was therefore simultaneously a debtor to commercial finance and a creditor to rural society. Advances to cultivators allowed sowing to begin but also created obligations that could roll from season to season. Credit made the crop possible while also redistributing bargaining power.

56.4 Permanent settlement and access to landed rights

The permanently settled countryside gave European planters opportunities to acquire leases, mortgage interests and other tenurial rights from zamindars and intermediate holders. They did not normally replace the landed hierarchy; they entered it. In some places a factory's economic leverage derived less from ownership of every field than from rights over villages, leases or debts owed by local proprietors. This fusion of commercial capital with layered land rights helps explain why an apparently private crop contract could carry coercive force.

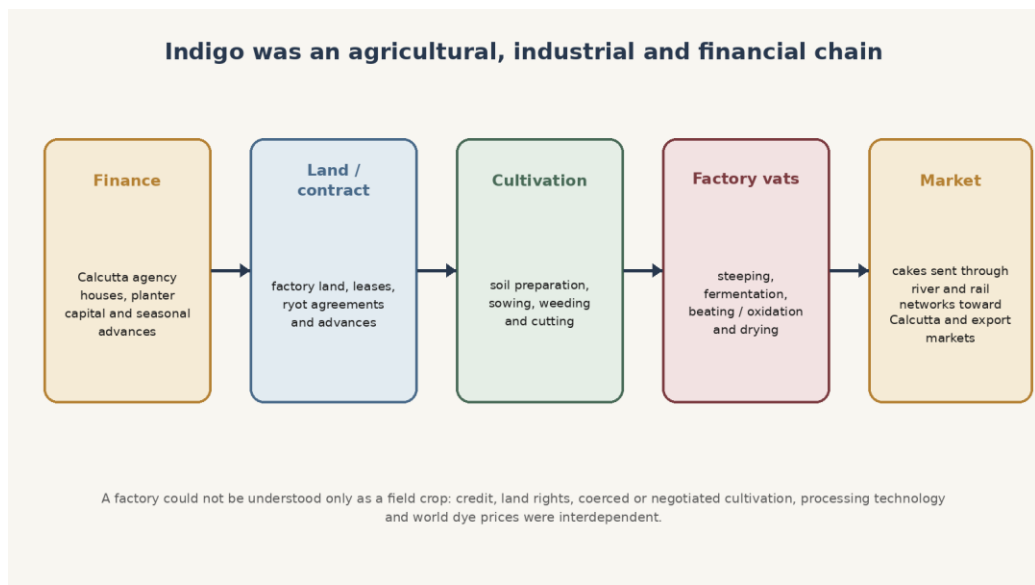


Figure 220 — Indigo as an agricultural, industrial and financial chain

56.5 North Bihar becomes a major plantation zone

By the second half of the nineteenth century the principal European indigo tracts of Bihar lay in Muzaffarpur and Darbhanga within the Tirhut division, and in Saran and Champaran. Scholarship on plantation science describes Bihar as the refuge and later centre of an industry that had contracted in Bengal after the Indigo Revolt. North Bihar's alluvial plains, dense cultivation and extensive tenurial networks gave planters a large cultivator base, but they also ensured that indigo competed directly with peasant food and fodder requirements.

56.6 Floodplains, soils and the geography of the crop

Indigo favoured well-prepared loamy soils and required careful timing in relation to rainfall and moisture. North Bihar's floodplains could be agriculturally productive but environmentally unstable: rivers shifted, drainage varied and annual inundation affected both estate boundaries and crop choices. Indigo therefore did not simply occupy "waste" land. Its profitability depended on selecting suitable upland or better-drained plots, which often were also valuable to cultivators for other crops. Environmental suitability became an agrarian bargaining issue.

56.7 Three broad systems of cultivation

Colonial Bihar sources distinguish several broad methods. Under *nij* or *zerat* cultivation the factory cultivated land under its own control using hired or attached labour. Under *assamiwar* or *ryoti* arrangements tenant cultivators sowed indigo under agreements, often linked to advances and to a factory's tenurial influence. Under *khuski*, cultivators outside the factory's tenurial domain contracted more independently to supply indigo. These categories overlapped in practice, but they reveal different distributions of land control, labour obligation and production risk.

56.8 *Nij* or *zerat* cultivation: direct factory farming

Direct cultivation placed the tasks of ploughing, sowing, weeding and harvesting under the factory's management. It required land, cattle and labour on a scale that could be expensive, but it also gave the planter

greater control over timing and agricultural technique. Darbhanga's early-twentieth-century record is particularly important: the Imperial Gazetteer noted that in the Samastipur subdivision a very large share of the indigo area was cultivated directly by factories. That local pattern should not be generalized to all Bihar.

56.9 Assamiwar or ryoti cultivation: contracts with tenants

Assamiwar or ryoti cultivation shifted much of field labour and crop risk to tenants. A cultivator accepted an advance or agreement and was required to sow designated land. The factory supplied seed or specified practices and later received the crop for processing. Because many planters also held leases or other superior interests over the villages concerned, the contract could be reinforced through rent, tenure and local authority. The legal form of agreement therefore cannot by itself establish how voluntary cultivation was in practice.

56.10 Khuski cultivation and more independent contracting

Khuski cultivation involved contracts with cultivators who were not tenants of the factory. Sources from Champaran describe such agreements as more voluntary because the planter lacked the same tenurial hold over the cultivator. Factories might have to offer better prices or seed and advances to attract the crop. Precisely for that reason, planters often considered khuski less advantageous than arrangements embedded in landlord-tenant relations. The distinction illustrates how commercial agriculture depended upon agrarian power, not just crop profitability.

56.11 Tinkathia was a Champaran-specific contractual regime

Tinkathia should be used with geographical precision. In Champaran it referred to the obligation, under indigo agreements, to devote three kathas out of a bigha—three-twentieths of the holding—to indigo, generally on selected land. Other proportions and arrangements also existed, and other Bihar districts employed different cultivation systems. The later fame of tinkathia through the Champaran movement has sometimes caused it to be projected over the whole indigo economy. This chapter treats it as one regional contract regime.

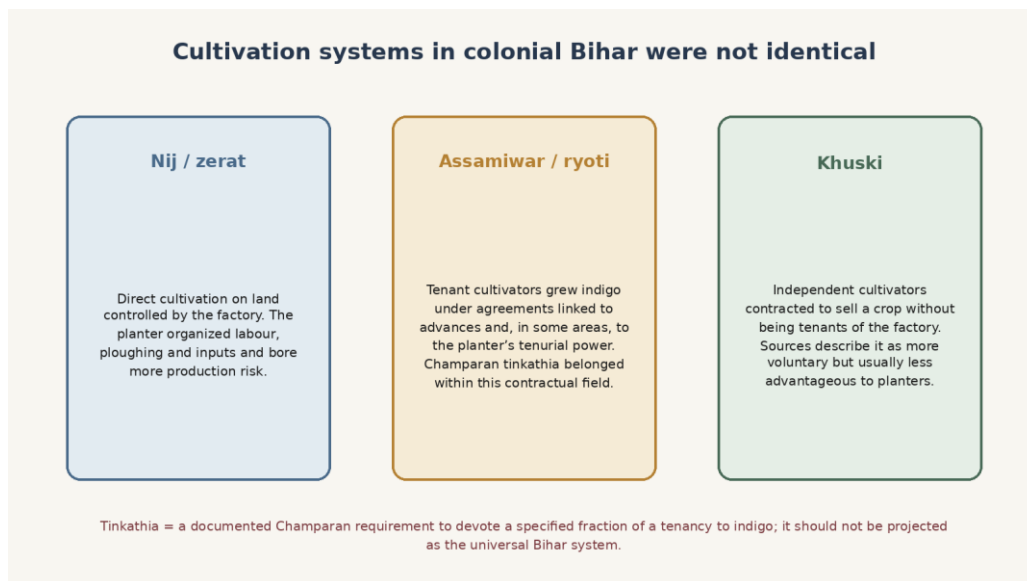


Figure 221 — Cultivation systems in colonial Bihar

56.12 Advances could bind cultivation to debt

Advances reduced the cultivator's need for cash before sowing but could also bind future production. Accounts might carry balances forward, and disputes arose over rates, deductions, measurement and the price paid for the plant. In a subsistence-sensitive rural economy, a cash advance could be attractive in one season and restrictive in the next. The economic issue was therefore not simply whether money changed hands, but whether the cultivator could realistically refuse renewal, change crop or clear the account on fair terms.

56.13 Contract and coercion existed on a spectrum

Indigo relations ranged from genuinely bargained cultivation to severe coercion. Planter servants, village intermediaries, rent claims, control of leased estates, police access and local influence could all affect a cultivator's capacity to refuse. The 1860 Indigo Commission documented violent and coercive practices in Bengal, while later Bihar records show a different but still unequal plantation structure. It is methodologically safer to identify the specific mechanism—debt, tenure, intimidation, illegal cesses or contractual condition—than to treat every indigo agreement as identical.

56.14 Indigo competed with food crops and household priorities

For cultivators the opportunity cost of indigo was central. Land placed under the dye crop could otherwise produce rice, maize, pulses, oilseeds, tobacco or fodder. Timing also mattered: ploughs, cattle and household labour had to be available when the factory required them. Even when indigo generated cash, the cultivator might regard the payment as inadequate compensation for lost food production, soil preparation or risk. The plantation economy therefore converted a global commodity demand into a local contest over household crop priorities.

56.15 Labour, ploughs and the hidden costs of plantation production

Factories depended on labour well beyond the contracted field. Ploughmen, cattle tenders, cutters, cartmen, vat workers, mechanics, watchmen and clerks connected village agriculture with factory manufacture. Direct-cultivation estates had especially large labour requirements. Some costs were visible as wages; others were embedded in tenant obligations, customary services or pressure on local transport and cattle. A complete history of indigo must therefore include the labour regime around the factory rather than counting only acres sown.

56.16 From green plant to blue cake: factory processing

Once cut, indigo had to reach the factory quickly. Plant material was submerged in steeping vats, where fermentation released the dye precursor. The liquor moved to beating vats and was oxidized so that blue indigo precipitated. The sediment was collected, heated or boiled, pressed and dried into cakes. This manufacturing stage explains the characteristic masonry vats and factory complexes found across old indigo tracts. It also explains why agricultural experimentation and chemical knowledge became increasingly important when international competition intensified.

56.17 River transport, railways and the Calcutta market

Finished indigo cakes moved through a transport hierarchy of carts, river landings, roads and later railways. The Ganga system connected Bihar's inland factories to Patna and Calcutta, while local rivers and roads linked Tirhut, Bhagalpur and Monghyr production zones to the trunk network. Rail expansion

reduced some transport constraints but did not eliminate dependence on seasonal roads and waterways. Commercial agriculture was therefore inseparable from the wider transport transformation already traced in Chapters 53–54.

56.18 Tirhut and Muzaffarpur: a dense factory landscape

Tirhut's nineteenth-century landscape contained numerous factories and outworks, with Muzaffarpur emerging as a major centre of the European planting community. Factory locations followed access to cultivable land, water and transport rather than a single administrative grid. European residence, club life and planter associations created a distinct social world, but production still rested on surrounding Indian villages. The factory compound should therefore be read as a node embedded within a much larger agrarian economy.

56.19 Darbhanga and Samastipur: direct cultivation as a distinctive feature

Darbhanga provides unusually useful evidence for change over time. The Imperial Gazetteer reported that the fall in natural-indigo prices caused factories to abandon or sharply reduce cultivation. In 1903–04 the district still had roughly 34,000 acres under indigo, concentrated especially in Samastipur, while the number of factories was already falling. It also noted the exceptionally high share of direct factory cultivation in Samastipur. These details show that decline did not produce an immediate or uniform disappearance.

56.20 Champaran: planter tenures and agrarian power

Champaran differed because European planters often combined factory enterprise with extensive tenurial rights held from large estates such as Bettiah. This embedded the crop contract within landlord-tenant relations. Assamiwar cultivation and tinkathia became particularly important there, and the transition away from natural indigo after synthetic dye appeared generated new disputes over rents and compensation. The 1917 crisis therefore arose from a long agrarian history, not merely from Gandhi's arrival or from a sudden isolated abuse.

56.21 Bhagalpur: indigo within a diversified commercial economy

Bhagalpur's commercial economy was diversified among grain exports, silk, oilseeds and other manufactures, yet indigo remained significant in the late nineteenth century. The Imperial Gazetteer described it as a principal manufacture and gave an annual output on the order of 125 tons in the period it summarized. This Anga-zone evidence is important because it prevents the history of indigo from being reduced entirely to North Bihar. The crop occupied different proportions of local agriculture but participated in the same export commodity network.

56.22 Monghyr and the Begusarai factory cluster

Monghyr likewise had an important indigo sector. Hunter's 1877 account, repeated in the district gazetteer, estimated about 10,000 acres under indigo and an output of roughly 4,000 maunds, with a concentration of factories in the Begusarai subdivision, including Manjhaul, Begusarai, Bhagwanpur, Begamsarai and Daulatpur. The later administrative geography should not obscure this historical connection: the Begusarai tract then belonged to Monghyr and formed part of the wider Anga-Bihar commercial corridor.

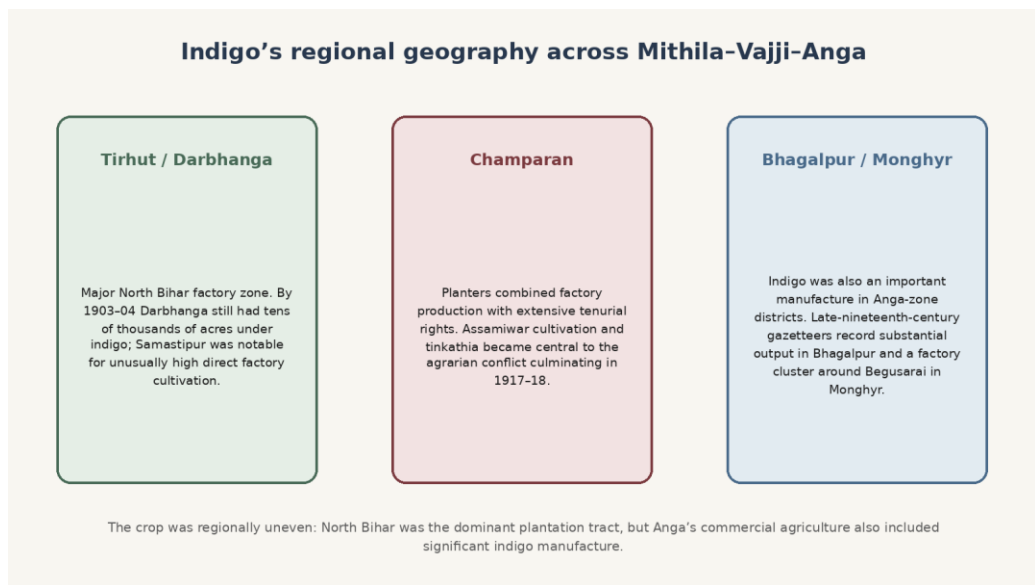


Figure 222 — Regional indigo profiles across Mithila-Vajji-Anga

56.23 Planters, zamindars and layered landed interests

Planters often obtained leases, mortgages or other rights from zamindars and estate managers who themselves needed cash. This relationship could be cooperative, competitive or litigious. A planter might strengthen a landlord through finance while simultaneously gaining control over village rents or crop conditions. The resulting agrarian hierarchy cannot be represented as a simple opposition between European factory and Indian village. Zamindars, tenure-holders, managers, moneylenders, village headmen and raiyats all occupied positions within the commercial chain.

56.24 Petitions, litigation and everyday peasant resistance

Cultivators did not wait for spectacular rebellion to resist. Petitions to magistrates, refusal to sow, disputes over measurements, litigation, evasion, delayed performance and collective village action appear throughout the documentary record. The imbalance of power made such tactics risky, but they demonstrate continuous negotiation. Commercial agriculture was therefore produced through conflict as well as contract. The archival visibility of a major inquiry should not erase the quieter practices through which cultivators tried to limit obligations or improve terms.

56.25 The Indigo Revolt in Bengal and the re-centering of production in Bihar

The Indigo Revolt of 1859–60 was centred in Bengal rather than Bihar, and that distinction matters. The Indigo Commission of 1860 exposed the deep conflicts within Bengal's contract system. In subsequent decades much European indigo enterprise was re-centred in Bihar, where plantations expanded in Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, Saran and Champaran. This shift did not mean that Bengal's institutional history simply moved west unchanged. Bihar planters adapted to local land tenures, floodplain ecology and labour relations.

56.26 Plantation science and attempts to improve natural indigo

Late-nineteenth-century planters responded to competition by treating indigo increasingly as a scientific crop and chemical product. Experiments addressed seed selection, soil preparation, manures, fermentation,

oxidation and the extraction of a larger proportion of indigotin from the plant. Colonial agricultural scientists examined plantation methods, while planters established experimental routines of their own. Such activity shows that decline was not passive: plantation capital tried to use agronomy and chemistry to defend natural indigo against changing world prices.

56.27 Synthetic indigo after 1897 transformed the market

The decisive market shock came from synthetic indigo, commercially produced in Germany from the late 1890s. It offered a purer and increasingly cheaper dye whose quality could be standardized. Natural-indigo prices fell sharply, and acreage contracted across India. By the eve of the First World War Bihar remained the principal surviving European-managed natural-indigo region, but on a much reduced scale. The crisis changed rural bargaining because planters tried to escape or monetize old indigo obligations as the crop itself lost profitability.

56.28 Contraction, substitution and regional adaptation

Decline took different forms. Some factories closed; some reduced acreage; some shifted toward direct cultivation, sugarcane or other crops; and some sought payments or rent adjustments in exchange for releasing tenants from indigo obligations. Darbhanga's recorded contraction after 1900 illustrates the process quantitatively, while Champaran shows how substitution could generate new agrarian grievances. Commercial agriculture therefore did not move neatly from "indigo" to "no indigo." Land, leases, factory property and contractual legacies survived the crop's market decline.

56.29 Champaran 1917–1918: from crop compulsion to statutory abolition

Champaran in 1917 brought these accumulated tensions into an official inquiry. Gandhi and local advocates collected tenant statements; the government appointed the Champaran Agrarian Committee, which recommended abolition of tinkathia. The Champaran Agrarian Act of 1918 made conditions requiring a tenant to set aside land for a particular crop void and regulated related disputes. This was not simply a moral verdict on indigo as a plant. It was a statutory intervention into the coercive use of tenancy contracts to compel commercial cropping.

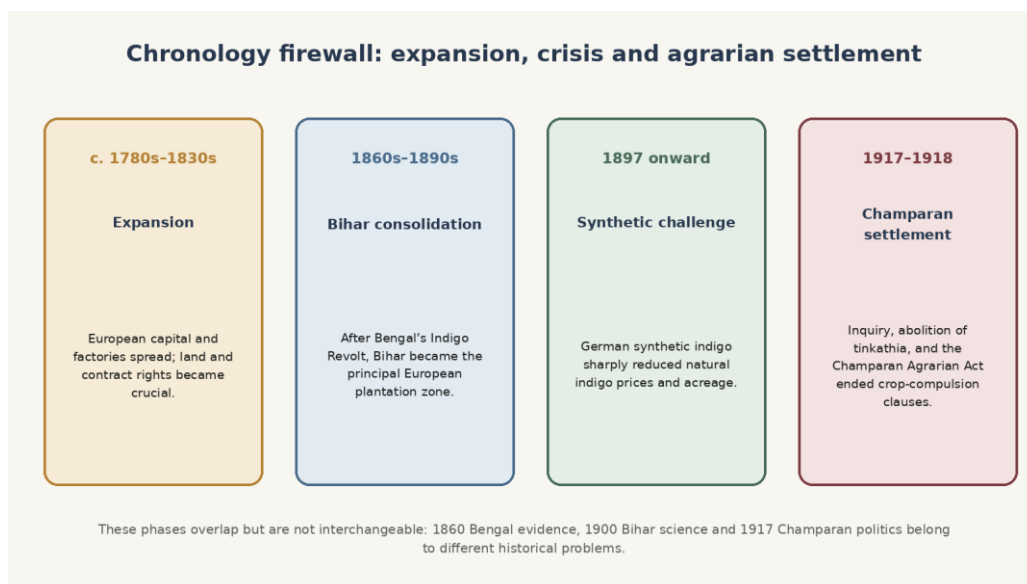


Figure 223 — Chronology firewall for colonial indigo

56.30 Conclusion: commercial agriculture redistributed risk and power

Indigo reveals how colonial commercial agriculture redistributed risk. Planters and financiers sought control over a crop whose price was set in distant markets; cultivators supplied land, labour and ecological risk; factories converted plant into exportable dye; and the colonial legal order gave contracts and landed rights new enforceability. Regional arrangements differed across Tirhut, Darbhanga, Champaran, Bhagalpur and Monghyr, while synthetic dye eventually transformed the entire economic logic. Chapter 57 follows another commodity network in which the colonial state itself played an even more direct role: opium.

Table 56.1 — Cultivation systems and distribution of agrarian risk

System / institution	Who controlled land or crop?	Main distribution of risk / power
Nij / zerat cultivation	Factory directly controlled cultivated land and operations	greater planter control; factory bore more cultivation and labour costs
Assamiwar / ryoti cultivation	Tenant grew indigo under factory agreement	cultivator supplied land and family labour; planter influence strengthened by advances and tenure
Khuski cultivation	Independent cultivator contracted to supply crop	more bargaining distance from factory tenurial power; planters often had to offer better terms
Tinkathia in Champaran	Specified fraction of tenant holding reserved for indigo	crop compulsion embedded in tenancy agreement; not a universal Bihar system
Factory processing	Planter controlled vats, manufacture and grading	quality and industrial risk concentrated at factory stage
Synthetic indigo after 1897	World dye market shifted toward chemical manufacture	natural indigo prices and acreage fell; planter–tenant bargains were renegotiated

Chapter 57 — Opium and Other Commodity Networks

Opium turned Bihar into one of the most tightly regulated commodity landscapes of the British Empire. Yet the poppy was never the whole economy. Cultivators in Mithila, Vajji and Anga also produced grain, oilseeds, tobacco, sugarcane and indigo; specialist workers made and refined saltpetre; Bhagalpur sustained silk and tasar manufacture; lac and other forest-linked products moved through eastern markets. The historical problem is therefore not to isolate opium as an exotic drug crop, but to understand how a state monopoly operated inside a much broader field of private, licensed, illicit and subsistence exchange. This chapter follows the opium chain from advance to field, collection, Patna processing, Calcutta auction and Asian export, while comparing it with other commodity networks whose labour regimes, transport needs and degrees of state control were different. It also maintains a strict source hierarchy: cultivation records do not equal export statistics, factory output does not measure total local production, and late gazetteers must not be projected backward without period evidence.

57.1 Opium as a commodity system rather than a single crop

Opium joined agriculture to manufacturing, finance, transport and overseas commerce. A cultivator grew poppy, but the commodity recognized by the colonial state was the processed drug delivered, tested, mixed, packed and eventually sold through official channels. The difference matters because each stage redistributed control. The crop demanded irrigated and carefully prepared winter land; the agency system supplied advances and fixed delivery obligations; factory officers standardized quality; river transport moved chests eastward; and Calcutta auctions converted a Bihar-grown product into imperial revenue. The commodity chain therefore connected village households in the Gangetic plain to merchants and consumers far beyond India. It also created opportunities for leakage, bargaining and evasion at every link.

57.2 Patna had an opium economy before Company monopoly

Patna was already a major opium market before the East India Company became the dominant political power in Bengal and Bihar. Eighteenth-century evidence describes merchant syndicates and competing European companies purchasing the drug in and around Patna. The Company did not invent opium cultivation; it progressively subordinated an older commercial system. This distinction is essential for regional history. Precolonial merchants, money advances and long-distance trade created an infrastructure that the Company inherited and transformed. After political conquest, the Company increasingly used fiscal authority to control purchase and export. The resulting monopoly was therefore a reorganization of an existing commodity economy rather than the sudden appearance of a new crop.

57.3 From political conquest to commercial monopoly

Company victories at Plassey and Buxar and the acquisition of the Diwani changed the balance of power behind commodity contracts. By the mid-1760s the Company could combine commercial privilege with territorial revenue authority. Patna became especially important because it sat inside the principal Bihar production zone and on the Ganga route to Calcutta. The Company's opium profits were increasingly tied to its Patna establishment, while Dutch, French and other competitors lost room to operate. This was not yet the mature nineteenth-century agency system, but it created the political conditions in which a territorial government could attempt to regulate cultivation, purchase, processing and export as parts of a single monopoly.

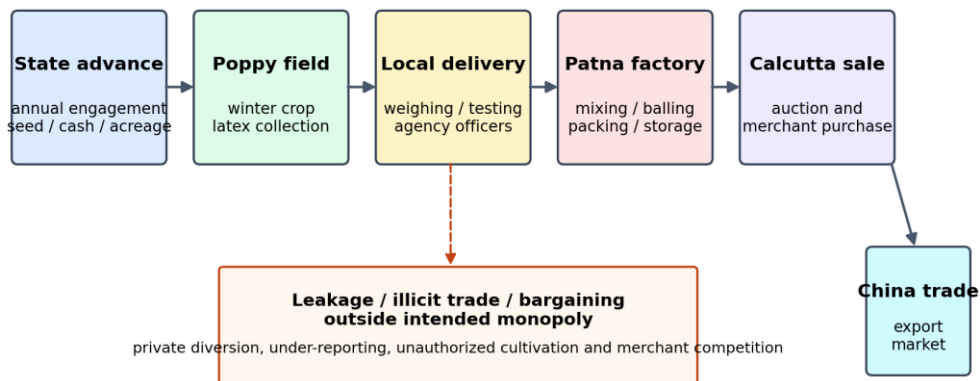
57.4 The 1773 contract regime concentrated control

In 1773 Warren Hastings reorganized the trade by placing the opium monopoly under contract. Contractors received privileged access to procurement while cultivators and local dealers faced a shrinking legal market outside the official channel. The system relied on Indian commercial intermediaries and therefore did not eliminate indigenous capital. It changed the institutional location from which that capital could operate. Complaints of irregularity, coercion and declining quality accompanied the contract years. The state's objective was fiscal as much as commercial: it wanted a predictable stream of monopoly profit without bearing every operational cost directly.

57.5 From public contracts to the agency system, 1785–1799

In 1785 the Company experimented with auctioning the opium contract to the highest bidder. Revenue and quality problems persisted. By 1797 the contract system was abandoned, and in 1799 the Company formalized an agency system under covenanted servants. Patna and Benares became the two great centres of “Bengal” opium administration. Under the new arrangement the state moved closer to cultivators through advances, measured acreage, authorized cultivation and compulsory delivery of contracted produce at fixed rates. This did not produce complete control, but it marked the institutional form that defined nineteenth-century Bihar opium.

Figure 224 analytical field: the Bihar opium commodity chain



Analytical point: cultivation, manufacture, transport and overseas sale were institutionally distinct stages.

Figure 224 — The Bihar opium commodity chain

57.6 Annual advances tied cultivation to a state purchasing system

Under the mature Bihar agency system cultivators entered annual engagements to grow poppy on specified land. Government advances helped finance seed, irrigation and household needs before harvest, but the advance also tied the crop to official delivery. The arrangement should not be described simply as free purchase in an open market. The state was simultaneously regulator and buyer. Official descriptions stressed that cultivators could choose whether to engage, whereas critical testimony and later scholarship emphasize the unequal bargaining power created by debt, local officials and the absence of a legal competing buyer. Both dimensions belong in the analysis: formal voluntarism existed inside a monopolized market.

57.7 Poppy was agronomically demanding

Poppy competed for some of the best winter land. It required fine tillage, careful moisture management and repeated labour. Once the capsule matured, cultivators made shallow incisions and collected the latex over successive rounds. Yield therefore depended on household labour, irrigation, weather and skill as much as acreage. The crop's labour intensity helps explain why advances alone could not guarantee production. A household had to weigh the expected payment against food crops, tobacco, oilseeds and other rabi alternatives. In flood-prone north Bihar, the suitability of a tract also varied sharply with drainage and soil texture.

57.8 Measurement, testing and deductions made the contract concrete

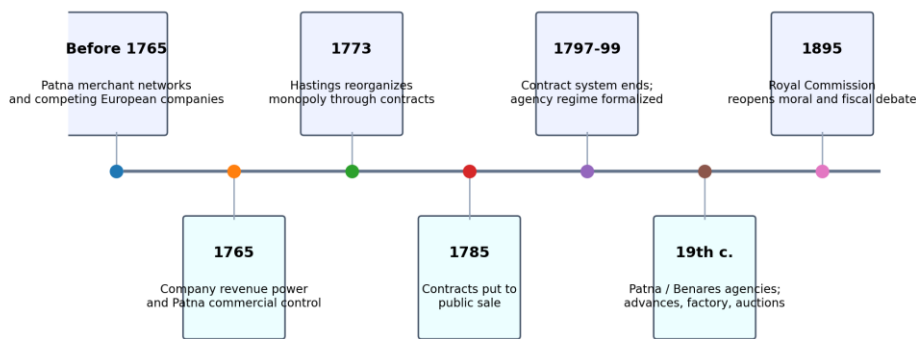
The state monopoly became real through mundane practices: measuring contracted land, recording cultivators, weighing raw opium, testing consistency and purity, and calculating payments or deductions. These procedures turned a biological crop into an auditable fiscal commodity. They also created points of dispute. Cultivators could challenge measurement or quality deductions; officials worried about adulteration and diversion; local intermediaries mediated information between village and agency. The archival record is therefore rich in administrative detail but must be read critically. A regulation proves what officials wanted to happen, not necessarily what happened in every village.

57.9 Village intermediaries remained indispensable

Even a highly centralized monopoly depended on local knowledge. Headmen, money handlers, measurers, clerks, peons and other intermediaries helped identify cultivators, distribute advances, record acreage and assemble produce. Such actors could facilitate the system, extract side payments, shield cultivators or intensify pressure. The opium state was therefore not a direct line from Calcutta to the peasant. It was a layered local administration whose effectiveness varied by district and season. This helps explain why the same formal regulations could generate different practical outcomes in Tirhut, Shahabad, Saran or the eastern edge of the Bihar agency.

57.10 The monopoly chronology must not be flattened

The terms "Company opium" or "Patna opium" can conceal major institutional change. Merchant competition before territorial conquest, the 1770s contract regime, the 1785 auction experiment, the agency system after 1797–99, and the late nineteenth-century bureaucracy were not the same structure. Later evidence—especially the Royal Commission on Opium—describes a mature administrative system with decades of accumulated rules. It is valuable for understanding how the monopoly worked in the 1890s, but it cannot simply be read backward into 1773. A chronology firewall is therefore necessary throughout this chapter.

Figure 225 analytical field: chronology of Company control over Bihar opium

Chronology firewall: later nineteenth-century agency practice should not be backdated to the 1770s contract regime.

Figure 225 — Chronology of Company control over Bihar opium

57.11 Muzaffarpur and southern Tirhut formed an important poppy tract

Late nineteenth-century district evidence places opium among Muzaffarpur's major commercial crops and manufactures. The high southern tract, including the Hajipur side of the district and areas south of the Burhi Gandak, was especially associated with opium, indigo and tobacco. This spatial pattern is significant because it shows that cash crops clustered according to soil and drainage rather than administrative boundaries alone. It also places the Vajji-Hajipur zone inside the commercial agriculture of the middle Ganga plain. The evidence is strongest for the later nineteenth century; earlier acreage should not be inferred from later prominence without supporting records.

57.12 Opium shared land with indigo and tobacco rather than replacing them

Muzaffarpur is a useful reminder that colonial cash cropping was plural. District accounts list indigo, saltpetre, opium and tobacco together among important manufactures or crops. These commodities imposed different calendars and labour demands. Indigo was tied to factory processing and planter contracts; opium to a state purchasing monopoly; tobacco to a more private market; saltpetre to specialist extraction and licensed refining. A cultivator or village economy could therefore interact with several commercial systems at once. The history of commercialization is better understood as a portfolio of overlapping obligations and opportunities than as a sequence in which one crop completely displaced another.

57.13 Darbhanga shows the unevenness of poppy cultivation

Poppy did not occupy every part of Mithila at the same intensity. Evidence submitted to the Royal Commission on Opium in the 1890s records very uneven cultivation and even the absence of poppy on some large government-managed Darbhanga estates. Such testimony does not prove that the district as a whole had no opium economy; it does show that official monopoly territory and actual crop geography were different things. Flood risk, soils, irrigation, local crop preferences and estate policy all shaped adoption. Darbhanga should therefore be treated as an internally differentiated agrarian region rather than automatically grouped with the more intensively documented Muzaffarpur-Hajipur tracts.

57.14 The eastern edge of the opium belt reached toward Bhagalpur

Imperial gazetteer descriptions of the nineteenth-century opium system placed the eastern limit of successful poppy cultivation around Bhagalpur. That statement is useful as a broad geographical marker, not as proof that Bhagalpur resembled the core Bihar agency districts in acreage or dependence. Anga's commercial profile was more diversified. Bhagalpur district evidence gives greater prominence to indigo, silk and tasar, grain, oilseeds, tobacco, saltpetre and river trade. The region therefore connected to the opium world without being reducible to it.

57.15 Patna and Gulzarbagh converted raw opium into a standardized export product

The Patna factory at Gulzarbagh was one of the most visible institutional centres of the monopoly. Nineteenth-century drawings and descriptions show examining, mixing, balling, stacking and storage as distinct operations. Raw opium arrived in labelled containers, was checked for consistency and purity, mixed into standardized mass, formed into balls or cakes, dried and packed for transport. The factory's importance lay precisely in standardization: village produce varied, whereas auction buyers expected a recognizable "Patna" or Bengal opium product. Industrial discipline therefore linked the agrarian monopoly to the export market.

57.16 Factory labour was part of the commodity history

The factory was not an abstract state machine. It depended on large numbers of workers who examined, mixed, handled, shaped, dried, packed and moved the drug. Sherwill's mid-nineteenth-century images of the Patna factory are valuable because they make visible the human labour hidden inside revenue statistics. They also remind us that the opium economy created urban and peri-urban employment distinct from poppy cultivation. Porters, clerks, inspectors, boat crews and warehouse workers formed a labour chain between field and auction. Their wages and work discipline belong to the social history of the commodity.

57.17 The Ganga was an industrial transport corridor

Patna's location on the Ganga allowed processed opium to move east toward Calcutta. Transport required boats, crews, contracts, secure storage and timing. Research on boatmen in early colonial eastern India shows that monopoly commodities such as opium and saltpetre drew the state deeply into disputes over transport contracts. Delays, diversion of boats and labour conflict could disrupt a trade that official accounts often represent as smooth. River transport was therefore not merely a final logistical step. It was a field of bargaining in which boatmen, contractors, merchants and state officers negotiated the movement of high-value cargo.

57.18 Calcutta auctions separated production from overseas marketing

Once opium reached Calcutta, the Company sold chests through auction rather than itself carrying every shipment to China. This separated the territorial monopoly in cultivation and manufacture from the merchant networks that handled overseas trade. Auction revenue was central to the fiscal importance of the system, but auction figures cannot be used as a direct measure of conditions in a particular Bihar district. They record standardized chests entering the export market after multiple stages of collection and processing. The distinction between cultivation statistics and sale statistics is one of the most important methodological controls in opium history.

57.19 China made Bihar opium part of an imperial financial circuit

Bihar-grown opium became crucial to the Company's Asian balance of trade because sales to merchants involved in the China trade generated large revenues and helped finance the purchase of Chinese goods. The commodity thus linked cultivators who may never have travelled beyond their district to Canton, coastal shipping and imperial finance. Yet the profits realized at auction or overseas were not the cultivator's price. The chain was designed so that the state captured the difference between controlled procurement and competitive export sale. This gap between producer payment and monopoly realization was fundamental to the political economy of the system.

57.20 Malwa opium exposed the limits of monopoly

The Company's Bengal or Patna opium faced competition from Malwa opium grown in western and central India. Merchants moved Malwa opium through routes that did not depend on the Patna-Benares agency structure, and much of it reached the China trade despite Company attempts to regulate or tax it. The competition demonstrates that monopoly was a territorial project, not a complete control of the subcontinent's drug economy. Smuggling, legal ambiguity and merchant adaptation forced the Company to modify policy. For Bihar history, Malwa matters because external competition affected the price, scale and strategic value of Patna opium even when the rival drug was grown far away.

Figure 226 analytical field: regional commodity mosaic



The regions participated in overlapping markets, but no single commodity defined the whole Mithila-Vajji-Anga economy.

Figure 226 — Regional commodity mosaic across Mithila, Vajji and Anga

57.21 Illicit cultivation and diversion were built into monopoly politics

No monopoly of this scale could eliminate unauthorized cultivation or diversion. Cultivators could conceal acreage, adulterate deliveries, sell outside official channels or cooperate with private traders. Officials interpreted such practices as leakage and criminality; historians have also asked whether they represented bargaining or resistance against monopoly prices. The evidence does not support a single answer. Some diversion was commercial opportunism, some reflected local survival strategies, and some was organized merchant competition. The key point is that the existence of illicit trade reveals the gap between regulatory design and rural practice.

57.22 Opium revenue generated a moral economy as well as a fiscal one

By the late nineteenth century the opium system had become the subject of intense moral and political controversy. Missionaries, anti-opium activists, officials, merchants and Indian witnesses debated medical use, consumption, coercion and the legitimacy of a government profiting from the drug. The Royal Commission on Opium of 1895 assembled a massive record but was itself part of imperial politics. Its evidence must therefore be used both for the facts witnesses supplied and for the categories through which the state framed the controversy. Revenue, morality and agrarian practice were inseparable by this stage.

57.23 Saltpetre was a companion monopoly commodity with a different labour base

Saltpetre connected Bihar to imperial warfare and commerce long before the nineteenth century. Under Company rule it was often administered alongside opium because both were high-value products requiring procurement, quality control and transport to Calcutta. Yet its production ecology was different. Specialist workers collected nitrate-rich earth and processed crude saltpetre; refiners then purified it. The commodity therefore depended less on dedicating prime fields to a state crop and more on skilled extraction and refining. Treating opium and saltpetre together reveals how the Company applied monopoly principles to very different forms of rural production.

57.24 Muzaffarpur saltpetre linked specialist producers to licensed refiners

Late nineteenth-century Muzaffarpur accounts describe saltpetre refining as an important manufacture and refer to large numbers of licences. They also distinguish the refiners who purchased crude material from Nuniya or related specialist producer communities. This layered organization matters socially. The value added at refining did not necessarily return to those who gathered and processed nitrate earth at the first stage. The commodity network therefore reproduced occupational hierarchy as well as commercial profit. It also overlapped geographically with opium, indigo and tobacco, giving southern Tirhut one of the most diversified cash-commodity landscapes in the study region.

57.25 Bhagalpur's commodity economy was exceptionally diversified

Bhagalpur's nineteenth-century rail and river statistics show a commercial field in which grain, pulses, oilseeds, indigo, saltpetre, tobacco, silk goods, lac and other products moved simultaneously. The district's economy cannot be reconstructed from one celebrated commodity. Its Ganga location connected agricultural surplus and artisanal production to Patna, Calcutta and eastern river ports, while northward trade linked it indirectly to Nepal. This diversified profile is one reason to resist making opium the master narrative of colonial Anga. Opium belonged to the wider Gangetic system, but local prosperity and vulnerability depended on a changing basket of goods.

57.26 Silk and tasar linked Anga's craft labour to long-distance trade

Bhagalpur's silk and tasar traditions created a commodity chain different again from opium. Sericulture and the collection of cocoons fed reeling, spinning and weaving, while merchants connected cloth and yarn to wider markets. Colonial accounts sometimes described the industry as declining or changing under competition, but they also show its persistence as a recognizable regional manufacture. Silk depended on specialized artisanal knowledge and household labour rather than a state crop monopoly. Its inclusion in this chapter allows a comparison between coercive or highly regulated commodity systems and industries whose control lay more heavily with merchants, weavers and local producers.

57.27 Tobacco, sugar and oilseeds broadened commercial agriculture

Tobacco was prominent in parts of Muzaffarpur and other Bihar districts and entered private market channels rather than the opium monopoly. Sugarcane and jaggery connected village processing with town and river markets. Oilseeds moved in large bulk through Bhagalpur and other Gangetic centres. These commodities show that commercialization did not automatically mean export to Europe or China. Much exchange was regional or interregional within South Asia. The colonial economy therefore contained several scales at once: imperial monopoly, overseas export, Indian long-distance trade and local market circulation.

57.28 Lac, dyes and forest-linked products crossed the agrarian frontier

Lac and other forest-linked products complicate the division between “agricultural” and “non-agricultural” commodities. In the Bhagalpur-Santal interface, collection, cultivation, processing and trade connected forest users, cultivators, artisans and merchants. Lac could enter dye and resin markets that were themselves transformed by industrial substitutes. The commodity demonstrates that Anga’s economic region extended beyond ploughed fields into woodland and upland zones. A socio-economic history that follows only land-revenue records would miss these connections.

57.29 Transport, credit and bazaar institutions connected otherwise different commodities

Opium, saltpetre, grain, silk and tobacco had different production systems, but they shared infrastructure. Boats, carts, river ghats, railways, warehouses, bazars, money advances and merchant credit connected producers to larger markets. Patna, Hajipur, Muzaffarpur, Monghyr and Bhagalpur acted as nodes rather than isolated towns. The expansion of railways in the later nineteenth century changed the relative importance of river routes but did not erase older trading practices immediately. Commodity history is therefore also the history of transport labour, market institutions and credit relationships that allowed goods with very different regulatory regimes to circulate through the same regional spaces.

Figure 227 analytical field: evidence firewall for colonial commodity history

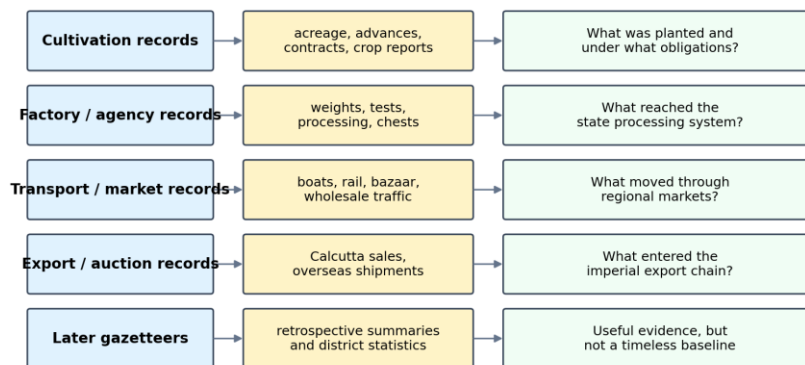


Figure 227 — Evidence firewall for colonial commodity history

57.30 Conclusion: monopoly and market coexisted in the same countryside

Opium made the colonial state unusually visible in Bihar’s countryside because it regulated cultivation, advanced money, purchased the crop, processed the drug and controlled legal sale. But the same villages and market towns were simultaneously embedded in less monopolized networks of saltpetre, tobacco, sugar,

grain, oilseeds, silk, lac and indigo. The resulting economy was neither a free market nor a single command system. It was a layered field in which state monopoly, landlord power, private trade, household subsistence, specialized craft labour and illicit exchange coexisted. Mithila, Vajji and Anga participated differently within that field: southern Tirhut and Hajipur were important cash-crop zones, Patna was the great processing and commercial node, and Bhagalpur-Anga maintained a more diversified riverine and artisanal economy. The next chapter turns from commodities themselves to the transport revolution that altered the cost and geography of moving them: roads, steam navigation and railways.

Table 57.1 — Commodity systems and their different forms of control

Commodity / network	Regional evidence	Institutional / chronology caution
Opium	Muzaffarpur-Hajipur poppy tracts; Patna agency/factory; eastern limit toward Bhagalpur	State monopoly, advances and fixed delivery; factory/auction data are not district acreage data.
Saltpetre	Muzaffarpur, Saran, Patna-Bihar trade; also Bhagalpur commerce	Specialist extraction and refining; distinct from dedicating fields to a monopoly crop.
Tobacco	Strong in parts of Muzaffarpur and other Gangetic districts	Private commercial crop; should not be folded into the opium agency system.
Silk / tasar	Bhagalpur-Anga artisanal and merchant networks	Craft/sericulture chain; later decline narratives do not erase earlier persistence.
Grain / oilseeds	Bhagalpur river and rail traffic; regional market surplus	Bulk trade statistics are dated snapshots, not permanent crop shares.
Sugar / jaggery	North Bihar and Gangetic market circuits	Village and regional processing preceded later factory sugar industry.
Lac / dyes	Bhagalpur-Santal interface and eastern market networks	Forest-linked production crosses the agrarian/non-agrarian boundary.

Chapter 58 — Famines, Scarcity and Food Security

Scarcity has repeatedly exposed the relationship between ecology, markets, household resources and public authority in Mithila, Vajji and Anga. A failed monsoon or damaged rice crop could begin a crisis, but famine emerged only when households lost effective access to food: grain prices rose faster than wages, cattle and tools were sold, seed was eaten, credit contracted, employment failed, or transport could not move food from surplus to deficit areas. The same region therefore experienced radically different outcomes in 1770, 1873–74 and 1896–97. In 1769–70 severe drought interacted with Company revenue extraction, grain procurement, weak relief and epidemic disease to produce catastrophic mortality in Bihar. In 1873–74, by contrast, the colonial government imported enormous quantities of rice, created depots, organized transport and inspected villages on a scale unprecedented in the province; mortality was correspondingly much lower, though the operation was criticized as excessively expensive. The famine of 1896–97 showed a third pattern: formal famine codes and improved communications existed, yet distress was sharply uneven, with Darbhanga requiring very large relief operations while parts of north Monghyr escaped crop failure but still suffered high prices among the landless poor. This chapter therefore treats famine not as an event label but as a social process. It reconstructs scarcity through harvests, prices, wages, entitlements, migration, relief and mortality, and it keeps contemporary evidence separate from later administrative memory. The history of food security is the history of how these layers were connected—and of how public policy sometimes broke, and sometimes failed to break, the chain.

58.1 Famine is a social process, not simply a failed harvest

Rainfall failure is an environmental shock; famine is a social outcome. A district can harvest less grain without experiencing mass starvation if households possess stocks, wages, livestock, credit, kin support or access to imported food. Conversely, even a moderate regional shortfall can become dangerous when prices rise rapidly and people who depend on daily earnings lose purchasing power. This distinction is essential in the flood-prone and river-connected landscapes of Mithila, Vajji and Anga. Wet rice agriculture was vulnerable to both drought and destructive inundation, but rivers also moved grain, supported fisheries and connected deficit zones to markets. The chapter therefore uses “scarcity” for serious stress in food availability or access, and reserves “famine” for crises involving widespread destitution, exceptional relief or excess mortality. That vocabulary prevents every poor harvest from being retroactively labelled a famine and makes comparison possible across very different administrative regimes.

58.2 Food security had four linked dimensions: harvest, market, household and state

The historical evidence becomes clearer when divided into four layers. The first is production: rainfall, floods, crop area and harvest outturn. The second is exchange: local prices, imports, exports, grain dealers, transport and market integration. The third is household entitlement: wages, rents, debt, livestock, seed, employment and the capacity to claim food through market or social relations. The fourth is public action: revenue suspension, grain procurement, depots, charitable relief, public works, medical care and later famine-code administration. A collapse at one layer did not automatically produce collapse at the next. Grain could exist in a province while the poor could not buy it; relief could be announced but arrive too late; transport could reduce prices in a market town while remote villages remained exposed. A source-critical famine history therefore asks at which layer the evidence is speaking.

58.3 The regional ecology produced both abundance and recurrent risk

Mithila's alluvial plains, the Gandak and Kosi systems, the Ganga corridor through Vajji and the riverine tracts of Anga generated fertile agriculture but also recurrent uncertainty. Winter rice depended on the timing and distribution of rain; low-lying lands could be flooded while neighbouring high ground suffered moisture stress. In north Bihar, rivers changed channels and damaged communications precisely when grain movement became urgent. South of the Ganga and in the eastern districts, local soil and crop mixtures differed, so the same monsoon did not generate identical outcomes. Colonial reports often described "Bihar" as one relief field, yet district experience could diverge sharply. This environmental diversity is why a regional chapter must resist both climatic determinism and administrative averages. Food security depended on the interaction between local ecology and the ability to move food, labour and credit across it.

58.4 Grain prices were often a more immediate danger to the poor than aggregate shortage

For landless labourers, artisans, servants and marginal cultivators, the decisive signal of scarcity was not a crop percentage but the price of the next meal. A household that purchased most of its food was exposed when rice or other staples rose faster than wages. Cultivators could also become buyers after exhausting stocks, losing a crop, paying rent or selling grain under debt pressure. Price therefore translated harvest shocks into unequal social consequences. Colonial officials increasingly monitored prices because sharp increases could reveal distress before mortality became visible. Yet price statistics themselves require caution: quotations from a town market did not automatically describe remote villages, and a fall in price after imported grain reached a depot did not prove that every household possessed cash to buy it. Market integration mattered, but entitlement determined who benefited.

58.5 The 1768–69 drought created a deteriorating subsistence base before the catastrophe of 1770

Contemporary Company records describe unusually severe drought in Bengal and Bihar during 1769, after earlier crop weakness had already raised concern. Bihar was repeatedly singled out as especially affected. The sequence matters. Scarcity did not begin suddenly in January 1770; households entered the worst months after harvest failures, rising prices and reduced reserves had already weakened them. Grain procurement for armies and official establishments added demand to stressed markets. Company servants and private traders were accused of monopoly and speculative practices, although the scale of such activity varied and should not be treated as the sole cause. The famine emerged from the conjunction of drought, market stress, revenue pressure and limited administrative capacity. Climate was necessary to explain the shock, but not sufficient to explain the mortality that followed.

From harvest shock to famine: a social process

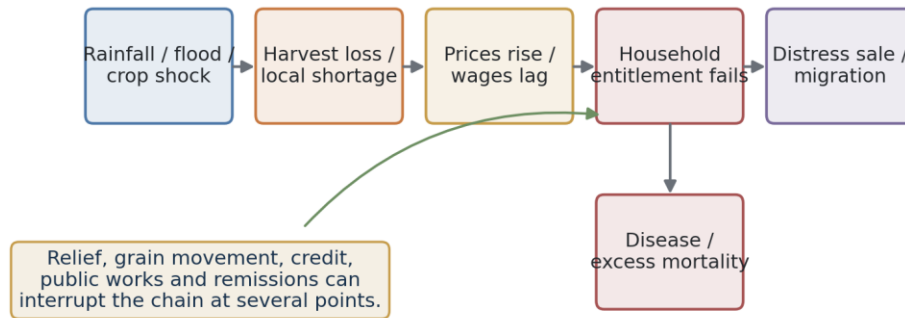


Figure 228 — From harvest shock to famine: a social process

58.6 Patna provides unusually vivid contemporary evidence for the famine of 1770

Patna's surviving correspondence makes the crisis visible at street level. In January 1770, the Bihar supervisor reported that roughly fifty to sixty people had been dying daily of hunger in the city for several days. By late April, reports described still more extreme mortality and rapid depopulation in the interior. Officials also confronted thousands of beggars, abandoned children and the problem of disposing of bodies. These observations should not be mechanically extrapolated to calculate a provincial death toll, but they demonstrate that famine was not an abstract shortage in the revenue books. The urban centre drew destitute migrants from surrounding countryside, making mortality visible where grain, officials and charitable resources were concentrated. Patna thus shows both the magnitude of distress and the limits of using city observations to represent every rural locality.

58.7 Tirhut, Darbhanga and the eastern districts were not peripheral to the 1770 disaster

Later district histories and contemporary references indicate severe effects beyond Patna, including in Tirhut/Darbhanga, Bhagalpur and Purnea. The famine left a long administrative memory of abandoned cultivation, weakened revenue-paying households and delayed reclamation in parts of north Bihar. Yet retrospective claims—such as fractions of population lost—must be treated as estimates rather than census facts. What is secure is the structural pattern: mortality, migration and the sale or consumption of productive assets reduced the capacity to cultivate the next season. The consequences therefore continued after rains returned. Fields without labour, households without cattle, and villages without seed could not recover immediately. The 1770 famine was simultaneously a demographic, agrarian and fiscal crisis.

58.8 Revenue pressure deepened vulnerability even when remissions were discussed

The Company's recent acquisition of the Diwani meant that famine unfolded inside an administration strongly oriented toward revenue realization. Officials debated reductions, collection in kind, cultivation incentives and temporary concessions for coarse grains. Some reports warned that pressing revenue in a

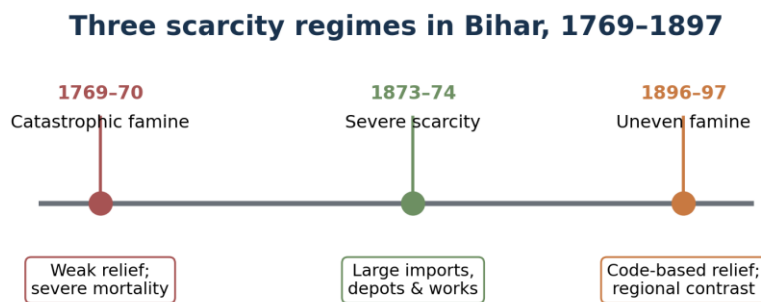
devastated countryside would destroy future collections as well as cultivators. Nevertheless, later reconstructions show that revenue demand remained remarkably persistent. The important analytical point is not that every official pursued identical policy, but that relief and revenue were institutionally entangled. A remission could preserve seed and livestock; continued collections could force sales at precisely the moment when prices were most adverse. Fiscal policy therefore formed part of food-security history because it shaped household command over grain, not merely state income.

58.9 Grain procurement and market intervention were limited and often contradictory in 1770

The Company ordered grain stocks for troops and attempted to discourage monopolization, while some officials distributed rice or encouraged cultivation of drought-tolerant grains. Yet the scale and coordination of relief remained small relative to the crisis. Military procurement could also compete with civilian demand. Transport was slow, information fragmentary and public responsibility for subsistence had not yet been organized into the later famine-relief machinery. This institutional weakness distinguishes 1770 from 1873–74. The state possessed fiscal and coercive reach, but not a comparable apparatus for village inspection, mass grain import, depot management and standardized relief works. That mismatch—strong revenue extraction alongside weak subsistence protection—is one of the central features of the early Company famine regime.

58.10 Mortality in 1770 was produced by hunger, disease and social dislocation together

Famine deaths are rarely separable into neat categories of “starvation” and “disease.” Undernutrition weakened resistance to infection; migration crowded towns and roads; contaminated water and the accumulation of corpses increased sanitary risk; smallpox and other disease could circulate through already weakened populations. Contemporary reports from Patna explicitly feared pestilence in addition to hunger. The most defensible interpretation is therefore one of combined crisis mortality. This also cautions against reading later famine returns as direct measures of caloric deprivation. Mortality followed a chain in which food access, disease environment, mobility and relief all interacted. The distinction is important for comparative history: 1873–74 could avoid large-scale mortality not simply because more grain existed, but because transport, relief and administrative surveillance prevented destitution from progressing as far down this chain.



Comparison is analytical, not a single mortality scale: sources, administration and transport capacity changed radically.

Figure 229 — Three scarcity regimes in Bihar, 1769–1897

58.11 The famine reshaped land, labour and settlement after the rains returned

Recovery required more than a good harvest. Households had lost cattle, implements, seed, jewellery and credit; labour had migrated or died; cultivated land had fallen out of use. Later descriptions of north Bihar linked stretches of uncultivated land to the long aftermath of the 1770 famine as well as to oppressive revenue practices. Such retrospective statements cannot map every abandoned field, but they capture a real mechanism. Famine destroyed productive capital at household scale. Reclamation therefore depended on renewed labour supply, cattle ownership, credit and security of tenure. The agrarian history of scarcity must include this slow recovery because the social cost of famine persisted long after market prices normalized.

58.12 Golghar symbolizes the administrative memory of scarcity more than an effective famine system

The great granary at Bankipur, later known as Golghar, was completed in 1786 in the context of repeated official concern about provisioning and famine. Its architectural presence has made it a powerful symbol of the 1770 catastrophe. Yet the structure did not become the foundation of a comprehensive grain-security regime, and later accounts note practical limitations in its use. Its historical significance is therefore institutional and mnemonic. The state had learned that military and urban provisioning required stored grain, but storage alone could not solve the problems of harvest intelligence, rural purchasing power, transport, village relief and disease. Golghar reminds us that food security is a system rather than a building.

58.13 Between 1770 and 1873 the colonial state accumulated information and transport capacity

The century after 1770 transformed the administrative environment in which scarcity was managed. District officials produced increasingly regular reports on crops and prices; roads and river transport improved; railways began to alter the speed and scale at which grain could move; statistical gazetteers and revenue surveys described local production. Charitable relief and public works also became more institutionalized. None of this eliminated famine. Market integration could expose districts to external demand, and official information could be inaccurate or late. But by 1873 the government possessed logistical tools that had scarcely existed in 1770. The contrast between the two crises therefore reveals institutional change as clearly as climatic variation.

58.14 The 1873–74 Bihar scarcity began with failure of the rice crop in north Bihar

The crisis of 1873–74 followed deficient rainfall and serious failure of the main rice crop across parts of Bihar and adjoining Bengal. Tirhut was among the most threatened districts. Contemporary officials feared that millions might require assistance for months. The danger was heightened by the geography of north Bihar: the Ganga separated the principal import routes from districts such as Tirhut, while local roads and river crossings could slow distribution. Unlike 1770, however, the impending crisis was recognized early enough for large-scale preparation. The problem became one of moving grain into the threatened zone before household reserves and purchasing power collapsed.

58.15 Early warning transformed the 1873–74 response

By the autumn of 1873 government correspondence already treated Bihar as a major relief problem. Crop reports, market prices, district estimates and tours by senior officials were used to calculate likely requirements. These estimates were imperfect and often revised, but the administrative objective had

changed: officials attempted to act before mass mortality. Sir Richard Temple was sent through the affected districts to assess transport and relief needs, while local committees and district officers gathered information at finer scales. The innovation was not merely statistical. Early warning justified procurement, transport works and depot construction before famine conditions reached their worst. This preventive orientation marks one of the clearest differences from 1770.

58.16 Massive grain import made 1873–74 a logistics experiment

The government purchased and imported hundreds of thousands of tons of rice, much of it from Burma, to create a reserve against anticipated scarcity. The exact totals vary by accounting category, but the operation was extraordinary by nineteenth-century standards. Grain had to be shipped to Bengal, moved upriver or by rail, crossed the Ganga and then distributed through depots toward threatened districts. Importing food did not automatically feed the poor; it first had to alter local availability and prices or be issued through relief. The 1873–74 operation therefore demonstrated that famine policy depended on transport engineering, storage, contracting and district administration as much as on charitable intent.

58.17 The temporary line toward Darbhanga turned relief into infrastructure

Tirhut's transport difficulty produced one of the most striking legacies of the famine response. A temporary railway from the Ganga toward Darbhanga was built with exceptional speed to carry relief supplies into north Bihar. Contemporary railway reporting described a line of roughly fifty-three miles opened after only about fifty-three days of work and capable of moving large quantities of grain. The emergency line later formed part of the Tirhut railway system. This episode illustrates how famine relief could generate durable infrastructure. Yet it should not be romanticized: railways did not by themselves guarantee household entitlement to food. Their immediate importance was to reduce the cost and delay of moving grain into a threatened district.

58.18 Depots and village inspection tried to connect imported grain to local need

The government established grain depots and organized systematic inspection of villages to identify distress. The aim was to avoid waiting until starving migrants appeared at district headquarters. Village-level inspection could distinguish people able to work from those requiring gratuitous support and could reveal places where market prices or local stocks were most dangerous. Such classification later became central to famine-code administration. It also created new problems: officials had to decide who qualified, how frequently villages should be visited, and whether relief tests excluded the proud, immobile or socially marginalized. Administrative visibility expanded, but it did not become neutral.

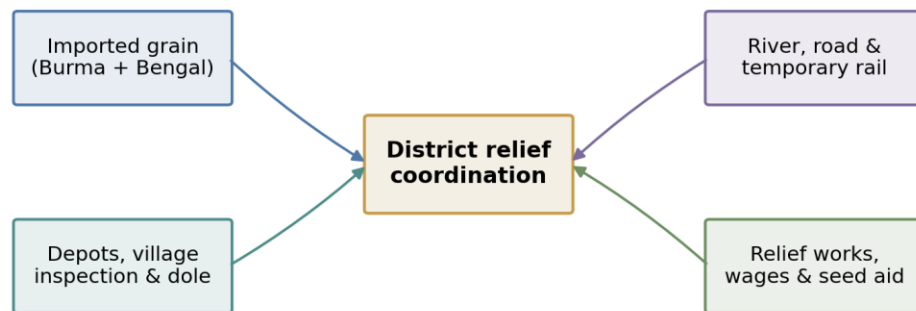
58.19 Relief works converted public spending into both food access and infrastructure

Able-bodied recipients were commonly directed toward public works—roads, embankments, transport lines and earthwork—while wages or rations were intended to preserve purchasing power. The principle linked relief to labour, partly from a fear that unconditional assistance would create dependency. In practice, the labour test had to be softened when people were too weak, socially unused to manual work, or unable to reach worksites. Food could also be issued instead of cash when prices rose so high that wages no longer purchased an adequate ration. The 1873–74 experience thus exposed a persistent famine-policy dilemma: how to provide enough assistance to prevent destitution while satisfying official demands for economy, discipline and proof of need.

58.20 Gratuitous relief remained essential for those who could not work

Children, older people, the sick, nursing mothers and others unable to perform labour could not be protected by public works alone. Gratuitous relief, charitable kitchens and local assistance therefore formed a second pillar of the response. Darbhanga reports from later famines show how large such categories could become. The division between “workers” and “dependants” became a bureaucratic tool, but real households were more complex: the wage of one worker might support several non-workers, while illness could move a person rapidly from one category to another. Effective food security required relief rules flexible enough to reflect household dependency rather than treating every recipient as an isolated adult labourer.

1873–74 Bihar relief architecture



Key shift: famine relief became a logistics problem as well as a charitable or revenue question.

Figure 230 — Relief architecture in the Bihar scarcity of 1873–74

58.21 The low mortality of 1873–74 became both a policy success and a political controversy

Large-scale relief prevented the Bihar scarcity of 1873–74 from reproducing the mortality of 1770. Contemporary and later assessments generally regard the operation as unusually successful in saving lives. Yet success produced criticism because the government imported more grain than ultimately proved necessary and spent heavily on relief and transport. The surplus was interpreted by fiscal critics as evidence of extravagance rather than as insurance against uncertainty. That controversy mattered far beyond Bihar. It shaped the political climate in which later officials, including Temple himself, emphasized economy, task standards and stricter relief in other famines. The lesson drawn from Bihar was therefore contested: one reading celebrated prevention; another warned against the cost of acting too generously before exact need could be known.

58.22 Relief policy after 1874 increasingly sought rules, thresholds and codes

The repeated famines of the 1870s pushed the colonial state toward standardized famine administration. The Indian Famine Commission of 1880 recommended systematic monitoring, relief works, gratuitous relief for the incapable, and administrative preparation before crisis. Provincial famine codes later translated these principles into stages of scarcity and famine, price and crop indicators, wage or ration scales, and duties for district officers. Codes did not guarantee humane outcomes; rules could be interpreted restrictively, and the nutritional adequacy of relief wages became deeply contested. Still, the code system marked a transition from improvisation toward a formal claim that famine prevention was an administrative responsibility.

58.23 Famine codes changed what the state measured

Once scarcity management became codified, officials required information that could trigger action. Crop forecasts, rainfall reports, grain prices, wages, migration, cattle sales and employment conditions acquired new bureaucratic significance. Numbers were intended to make distress legible, but they could also conceal it. A district average might mask a devastated tract; reported wages might not account for irregular employment; market prices might not measure access among people without cash. The history of famine codes is therefore also a history of statistical power. Indicators made earlier intervention possible, yet they could narrow official perception to what was countable.

58.24 The famine of 1896–97 revealed sharp regional inequality within Bihar

The 1896–97 crisis demonstrates why district-level evidence matters. Darbhanga experienced major distress and very large relief operations after crop failure. Gazetteer accounts record hundreds of thousands on relief at the peak and substantial grain imports, while emphasizing relatively low mortality during much of the emergency. By contrast, census and gazetteer evidence for north Monghyr states that the crop was comparatively good and the district escaped formal famine, although landless poor people still suffered from high prices caused by scarcity elsewhere. The same regional market could therefore transmit price stress into a district without transmitting the original harvest failure. “Famine area” and “food-insecure household” were not identical categories.

58.25 Darbhanga in 1897 shows the mature colonial relief apparatus at scale

By 1897 the Darbhanga administration could mobilize relief works, gratuitous assistance and imported grain on a scale that would have been impossible in 1770. Gazetteer summaries report a peak relief population exceeding two hundred thousand and large grain imports. The exact totals are less important than the institutional transformation they represent. Relief was now budgeted, classified and reported in standardized units. Officials could also connect emergency works to longer-term infrastructure. Irrigation channels in parts of Madhubani were constructed during the famine and later helped protect winter rice in subsequent monsoon failure. Famine policy could therefore leave durable water-management as well as transport legacies.

58.26 Market integration could protect consumers and also transmit scarcity

Railways and steam transport reduced the isolation of local markets. Grain could move more quickly into a deficit district, limiting extreme price divergence and making large relief imports practical. But integrated markets also transmitted demand and price movements across regions. North Monghyr’s experience in 1896–97 is instructive: a relatively good crop did not fully insulate landless consumers from high prices generated by famine elsewhere. Market integration should therefore not be equated with automatic food security. It expanded the geographical scale on which grain could circulate, while household purchasing power still determined access.

58.27 Household coping strategies reveal the hidden cost of scarcity

Before appearing on a relief roll, households usually exhausted private strategies. They reduced meal size and variety, borrowed grain or money, postponed rent, sold livestock and jewellery, mortgaged land, sent members to seek work, gathered wild foods or withdrew children from school and productive apprenticeships. Some of these actions preserved life but damaged future livelihoods. Selling a plough animal or consuming seed grain converted a short harvest shock into a multi-year recovery problem. Because official

records often capture people only after they sought relief, these household costs are easy to underestimate. Food-security history must therefore reconstruct what people sacrificed before becoming administratively visible.

58.28 Famine burden was unequal by class, gender, age and occupation

Scarcity did not affect a village uniformly. Landless labourers and artisans dependent on daily purchases were usually exposed early to price inflation. Small cultivators could lose both crop and credit. Women often absorbed reductions in household consumption and could face increased care burdens when disease spread; widows and people outside strong kin networks were especially vulnerable to exclusion from private support. Children were threatened by both undernutrition and epidemic disease. Caste and occupational position influenced access to employers, landlords, charitable networks and village resources. Colonial relief categories recognized some of these differences only imperfectly. A social history of famine therefore cannot be reduced to aggregate mortality or district grain balances.

58.29 Disease, sanitation and public health were inseparable from food relief

As in 1770, mortality during later scarcity could arise through epidemics intensified by undernutrition, migration and poor sanitation. Relief camps and works concentrated populations; water sources could become contaminated; weakened people were more susceptible to infection. By the late nineteenth century famine administration increasingly incorporated medical inspection, camp sanitation and attention to water supply, although practice varied. This broadened the meaning of food security. Saving lives required more than supplying calories. It required preventing the secondary disease environment that turns hunger into mass mortality. The comparison across the three scarcity regimes therefore points toward a combined model of nutrition, public health and mobility.

Evidence firewall for famine and food-security history



Do not infer famine directly from drought, or mortality directly from grain shortage.

Regional comparison requires dated evidence at each layer; later gazetteers can preserve memory but cannot replace contemporary records.

Figure 231 — Evidence firewall for famine and food-security history

58.30 Conclusion: food security depended on institutions that could interrupt the chain from shock to destitution

The famine history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga is not a simple progression from bad government to good administration. The record is more uneven. In 1770 a severe climatic shock struck a countryside already exposed to revenue pressure and weak relief capacity, producing catastrophic mortality and long agrarian after-effects. In 1873–74 early warning, large imports, transport investment, depots and relief prevented comparable mortality, but the expense generated a fiscal backlash that influenced later policy. In 1896–97 a mature code-based apparatus coexisted with sharp regional and social inequalities: Darbhanga required massive intervention, while parts of Monghyr escaped crop failure yet still transmitted high prices to the

poor. The durable lesson is institutional rather than climatic. Famine becomes avoidable when information, transport, purchasing power, relief and public health act quickly enough to stop households from selling the assets on which their next harvest depends.

Table 58.1 — Major scarcity episodes and what they reveal about food security

Episode / region	What the evidence shows	Interpretive caution
1769–70: Bihar	Drought, crop failure, price escalation, severe Patna mortality, depopulation and weak relief.	Provincial death totals are estimates; city mortality cannot be extrapolated mechanically.
1873–74: Tirhut / north Bihar	Early warning, mass grain import, depots, village inspection, public works and temporary railway construction.	Large procurement does not equal grain consumed; surplus stocks were part of preventive insurance.
1896–97: Darbhanga	Large relief works and gratuitous relief, substantial grain imports, comparatively low mortality during much of the crisis.	Administrative relief units measure service delivered, not unique persons or caloric adequacy.
1896–97: north Monghyr	Relatively good crop; formal famine largely avoided, but landless poor faced high prices transmitted from elsewhere.	Absence of crop failure does not mean absence of household food insecurity.
Long-run lesson	Transport, market access, household entitlement, relief and public health jointly shaped outcomes.	Do not infer famine directly from drought, or mortality directly from grain shortage.

Chapter 59 — Colonial Surveys and the Invention of Social Categories

Colonial surveys created an extraordinarily dense archive for the social history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga, but the archive must be read as a history of classification as well as a description of society. From Buchanan-Hamilton's early district inquiries to the censuses, Risley's ethnography, Grierson's linguistic survey and the gazetteers, officials progressively standardized names, boundaries and comparative tables. The central method of this chapter is chronological: a colonial category is evidence first for the date and administrative purpose in which it appears. It cannot be projected backward without independent period evidence.

59.1 Colonial knowledge became an instrument of administration

Colonial rule generated an expanding demand to describe the people it taxed, policed, recruited, litigated with and governed. The resulting surveys were never neutral inventories. Their headings reflected administrative problems: landholding, occupation, religion, language, "tribe," "caste," custom and rank. Yet it is equally misleading to treat every category as a pure colonial fabrication. Officials worked with locally supplied names, inherited textual vocabularies, previous revenue records and the testimony of intermediaries. The historical problem is therefore to reconstruct a process of translation. Social identities existed before the census, but the survey and census increasingly required them to be written into standardized boxes, compared across districts and made legible to provincial government. The documentary archive is invaluable precisely because it records this encounter between lived social description and bureaucratic classification.

59.2 The Company survey preceded the decennial census by decades

Long before all-India decennial enumeration, the East India Company commissioned district surveys to learn the economic and social character of its territories. The sequence associated with Francis Buchanan-Hamilton in eastern India between 1807 and 1814 covered Purnea, Bhagalpur, Bihar and Patna, Shahabad and neighbouring districts. His questionnaires ranged far beyond revenue. They recorded cultivation, manufactures, markets, prices, diseases, religious establishments, learned specialists, languages and divisions among the population. The form was encyclopaedic because the Company still lacked a settled statistical apparatus. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, these early reports are therefore a baseline for the early nineteenth century, not a transparent survival of medieval society. Their strength is descriptive breadth; their weakness is the mixture of direct observation, local testimony, estimation and authorial judgement.

59.3 Buchanan-Hamilton's method joined observation to local testimony

Buchanan-Hamilton travelled, questioned officials and residents, inspected institutions and compiled numerical returns, but he could not personally verify every statement in large districts. His accounts make visible the people who supplied information even when they are not always named: revenue servants, landholders, merchants, religious specialists, cultivators, artisans, physicians and interpreters. A social category in his report should therefore be read as a negotiated entry produced through a chain of communication. The same label might carry different meanings in different localities, while a local term might be translated into an English administrative vocabulary that made it appear more uniform than it was. This is why the reports are best used comparatively, alongside settlement papers, genealogical records, vernacular materials and later gazetteers, rather than mined for isolated timeless statements about communities.

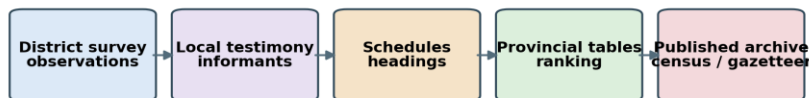
59.4 Early surveys mixed social, occupational and religious classifications

The early district accounts did not yet possess the rigid appearance of later census tables. Descriptions could move between occupation, lineage, sect, locality, status, religion and customary practice without forcing each person into a single analytical axis. That fluidity is important evidence. It reminds us that later census columns were not merely recording a pre-existing universal taxonomy. A cultivator might also be described through a caste name, a tenancy relation, a sectarian affiliation and a regional label; a learned specialist could be located simultaneously in a scholastic institution and a kin network. Historians should preserve those overlaps. Reducing an early survey entry to one modern identity category can erase exactly the ambiguity that makes the source useful for tracing how social classifications changed during the nineteenth century.

59.5 Revenue knowledge and social knowledge were intertwined

Survey categories gained administrative weight because they were linked to fiscal and legal questions. Officials wanted to know who held land, who cultivated it, what services were customary, which groups migrated, which occupations supported particular markets and how local authority operated. Land and revenue classification therefore shaped social description even when the report's chapter title concerned "the people." In Permanent Settlement districts, the distinction among proprietors, tenure-holders, tenants and labourers could be as consequential as caste terminology. Conversely, officials sometimes interpreted agrarian relations through assumptions about community or hereditary occupation. The archive must be read in both directions. Social labels could influence administrative reasoning, while administrative forms could make some dimensions of social life more visible than others.

Colonial classification was a chain of translation, not a direct photograph of society



Names could be selected, merged, split, standardized, ranked or reinterpreted at each stage.

Figure 232 — From local description to administrative category: the colonial classification chain

59.6 Hunter's Statistical Account made the district a comparative statistical unit

By the 1870s the government possessed a denser archive of revenue returns, censuses, police reports, road and trade information and district correspondence. W. W. Hunter's Statistical Account of Bengal assembled this material into volumes organized by district. Tirhut and Champaran appeared in Volume XIII; Patna and neighbouring districts were treated in other volumes. These accounts combined geography, population, agriculture, landholding, trade, institutions and administrative statistics. Their importance lies less in any single number than in the new comparative form: districts could now be tabulated against one another. The method encouraged standard headings and recurring variables, making society increasingly visible as a set of measurable attributes. At the same time, local complexity was compressed to fit the provincial statistical template.

59.7 The 1872 enumeration was a major experiment rather than a fully standardized modern census

The census taken across the Bengal Presidency in 1872 marked a new scale of population enumeration. Its reports discussed the accuracy of returns and the problems of supervision, showing that the operation itself was understood as experimental. For Bihar districts, surviving census publications and divisional statements provide population counts and classifications that can be compared with Hunter's statistical compilations. But "1872" should not be treated as if it had the uniform procedures of a later national census. Dates, forms and administrative arrangements varied across British India, and enumerators depended heavily on district machinery. The value of the exercise is therefore double: it produced new quantitative evidence, and it reveals the practical difficulties involved when government attempted to translate millions of households into a centralized statistical language.

59.8 Enumeration was mediated by local clerks, household informants and officials

A census schedule did not fill itself. Enumerators had to ask questions, interpret answers, choose spellings, resolve synonyms and assign entries to printed headings. Household informants could answer strategically or according to local usage; clerks might regularize unfamiliar names; district officers could merge small categories or separate large ones when compiling tables. Social knowledge was thus co-produced, although the state controlled the final classificatory architecture and publication. Recognizing local participation does not remove the asymmetry of colonial power. It explains why the archive can contain both indigenous vocabularies and bureaucratic distortions at the same time. The historian's task is to reconstruct the chain from answer to schedule to table instead of assuming that the published category was the only identity available to the person enumerated.

59.9 The 1881 census regularized decennial enumeration

The 1881 census brought a more systematic and synchronized framework to British Indian population statistics. The Bengal report included major sections on caste, birthplace and language, occupations, instruction and illiteracy. Repeated census-taking created comparability across decades, but it also increased pressure for stable definitions. A category that changed name or boundaries created a statistical discontinuity, so officials increasingly documented classification rules. This administrative need could encourage the appearance of sharper social boundaries than everyday life displayed. The gain for historical research is substantial: recurring tables make it possible to study demographic structure, literacy, occupation and migration. The cost is that the repeated form can tempt readers to mistake the state's need for commensurability for evidence that every social category was fixed and universally agreed.

59.10 A printed table made fluid answers appear mutually exclusive

Tabulation is an intellectual act. When thousands of written answers are aggregated, variant spellings and local subdivisions must be assigned to headings, while ambiguous cases are resolved so that column totals add correctly. The printed page then hides much of that editorial labour. This is especially important for caste, tribe, language and occupation. A table can make a category look bounded because every row has a line and every number occupies one cell. Yet the original social world may have contained overlapping affiliations, status disputes and multilingual households. Statistical exactness at the final stage should therefore not be confused with ontological exactness. The numbers may precisely reproduce the rules of compilation while those rules themselves simplify social reality.

From district survey to standardized enumeration and classification

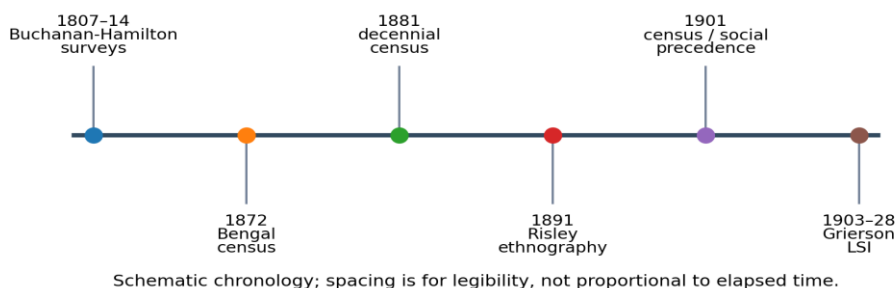


Figure 233 — Major stages in the nineteenth-century classificatory archive

59.11 Caste names in colonial records were situated claims, not medieval fossils

When a census or gazetteer records a caste name, the safest first conclusion is that the name was used or recognized in that administrative setting at that date. More ambitious historical claims require earlier evidence. Some designations had long histories; others changed scope, acquired new prestige, split into subgroups or were standardized only in the nineteenth century. The colonial archive is exceptionally rich for studying these transformations because officials repeatedly asked about rank, marriage, occupation and custom. It becomes misleading only when its categories are projected backward without chronological control. The present volume therefore treats a colonial caste label as evidence for colonial social history unless inscriptions, dated genealogies, manuscripts, Panji material or other earlier records independently establish an older chronology.

59.12 Occupation and caste were related but never interchangeable

Colonial officials often searched for correspondences between caste and hereditary occupation, partly because such correspondences promised an intelligible social system. District evidence repeatedly complicated that assumption. Cultivators could belong to many named communities; service groups could combine agriculture with specialized work; merchants and artisans moved between occupations; landholding altered status; migration created new labour combinations. Census occupational tables therefore answer different questions from caste tables. They are strongest when used to reconstruct the distribution of work at a particular time, not when used to infer an unchanging occupational essence for a community. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, this distinction is especially important in a nineteenth century transformed by indigo, opium, railways, urban services, migration and expanding clerical employment.

59.13 Religious classification also required administrative boundaries

Religious enumeration appears simpler than caste classification only when later categories are taken for granted. Census officers had to decide how to count sects, reform movements, local devotional identities and people whose practice crossed neat textual boundaries. Gazetteers often described popular worship, pilgrimage and local cults in ethnographic detail, while census tables reduced religion to a smaller set of aggregate headings. Both source types are useful, but for different purposes. The table measures the administrative population assigned to a category; the descriptive chapter records a selective account of practice. Neither should be substituted for the other. Ritual participation, sectarian affiliation and census religion were related dimensions of social life, not necessarily identical ones.

59.14 Language classification converted multilingual practice into named languages

The same methodological problem appears in language statistics. Households could use one speech form at home, another in markets, a different literary language and yet another language in school or administration. Census forms nevertheless required a countable answer. Officials had to decide whether a local name denoted a separate language, a dialect or a synonym. The resulting tables are essential for studying the history of language naming, but they do not map speech mechanically. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, later distinctions among Maithili, Angika, Bajjika, Hindi/Hindustani and other administrative language labels must be interpreted through the wording and classification rules of each source. Modern political or constitutional language categories cannot be read backward into every colonial table.

59.15 Hunter's accounts linked population categories to economy and administration

One advantage of the Statistical Account over isolated census tables is that it places population categories beside agriculture, markets, education, transport, land revenue and public institutions. This permits a genuinely socio-economic reading. A group's numerical presence can be examined alongside the district economy in which people lived, without assuming that the group itself explains the economic pattern. Hunter's compilations also preserve the administrative state of knowledge in the 1870s: what officials thought worth measuring, which earlier reports they trusted and how they summarized local conditions. Used critically, the volumes are therefore sources for both regional history and the history of colonial knowledge. Their authority must be disaggregated claim by claim rather than either accepted wholesale or dismissed wholesale.

59.16 The district gazetteer became a durable administrative archive

Early twentieth-century district gazetteers consolidated decades of surveys, settlement reports, censuses and departmental statistics into compact reference volumes. Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Monghyr and Bhagalpur gazetteers contain chapters on physical geography, history, population, agriculture, industry, communications, education, health and administration. They are especially valuable for tracing institutional change because compilers frequently summarized earlier conditions before describing the present. Yet the gazetteer is a retrospective synthesis, not a contemporary source for every period it mentions. Where it recounts eighteenth- or early nineteenth-century society, the underlying source must be identified whenever possible. For its own early twentieth-century administrative world, by contrast, it is primary evidence of what the government officially knew and how it organized that knowledge.

59.17 Gazetteers intertwined ethnography with practical governance

The gazetteer's social descriptions sat beside roads, ferries, schools, police stations and land systems because colonial administration treated knowledge as practical infrastructure. A district officer needed a portable account of terrain, population, customary institutions and economic resources. Ethnographic paragraphs therefore acquired an official afterlife: later administrators could repeat classifications first assembled by earlier surveyors. Repetition could harden a tentative observation into an apparent fact, especially when citations were omitted. Historians should track this textual genealogy. If the same statement appears in a 1907 gazetteer and an 1870s statistical account, it may represent one inherited observation rather than two independent confirmations. Administrative continuity is itself historically important, but it must not be mistaken for independent evidence.

59.18 Risley's ethnographic programme sought a more systematic taxonomy

Herbert Hope Risley's *Tribes and Castes of Bengal*, published in the early 1890s, represented a more ambitious attempt to systematize social classification. The work combined an ethnographic glossary with anthropometric data and drew on district information, questionnaires and local reports. Risley treated caste not merely as a list of names but as a structure to be classified and compared. That programme deeply influenced later discussions because it connected administrative enumeration to a theory of social hierarchy and physical type. For modern historical use, its rich descriptive material must be separated from its theoretical apparatus. Kin terms, customs and local names can preserve evidence unavailable elsewhere, while racial and anthropometric interpretations belong to a now-discredited framework and cannot be treated as biological explanations of social history.

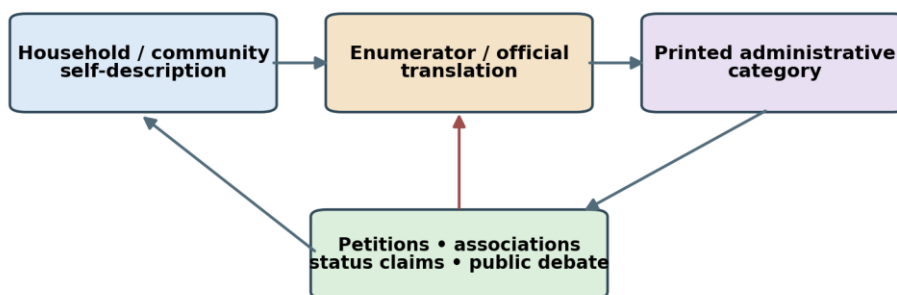
59.19 Anthropometry attempted to turn social hierarchy into bodily measurement

The anthropometric component of Risley's work measured physical traits and sought correlations between bodily indices, race and caste rank. Such reasoning reflects late nineteenth-century racial science rather than a valid biological account of Indian social structure. Its historical significance lies in what the state and learned institutions attempted to measure, the procedures they devised and the authority numerical measurement claimed. The presence of a decimal or index gave a speculative racial theory the appearance of precision. For this volume, anthropometric tables are therefore evidence about colonial knowledge-making, not evidence that caste groups possessed fixed racial essences. This distinction also protects regional social history from a false move in which administrative categories, social rank and biological ancestry are collapsed into one supposedly objective hierarchy.

59.20 Social precedence made ranking itself a field of inquiry

Risley and census officials also experimented with arranging caste groups by "social precedence." Such ranking required criteria and local testimony: who accepted food or water from whom, which groups claimed particular ritual status, how Brahmanical opinion was reported, and how competing claims were reconciled. The exercise did not simply discover a single ladder waiting to be written down. Rank could vary by locality, context and informant, and communities could contest official placement. The methodological lesson is not that hierarchy was unreal; hierarchy powerfully shaped social relations. It is that the published order was an administrative synthesis of multiple, sometimes conflicting status practices. The hierarchy in a census report is therefore itself a historical event in the politics of classification.

Classification could feed back into social action



Administrative categories could become consequential without being identical to lived identity.

*Figure 234 — Classification as a feedback loop between society and the state***59.21 Local intermediaries were indispensable to ethnographic classification**

District officers lacked the linguistic range, local genealogical knowledge and everyday access needed to classify populations unaided. They relied on subordinate officials, schoolmen, pandits, maulvis, zamindari staff, community spokesmen and other informants. These intermediaries brought their own intellectual frameworks and social interests to the process. A classification could therefore contain genuine local knowledge while also privileging the perspectives of literate and institutionally connected groups. The archive rarely represents every social stratum equally. The most marginalized could be described by others rather than speaking through their own texts. Recognizing this asymmetry helps explain why administrative ethnography must be compared with petitions, court records, oral traditions and vernacular publications when reconstructing self-description.

59.22 Communities could use the classificatory state strategically

Once census and ethnographic categories acquired public authority, communities had incentives to influence them. Petitions, memorials, genealogies and claims to revised rank formed part of a wider nineteenth- and early twentieth-century politics of representation. A community could emphasize a preferred name, origin narrative, occupation or ritual practice in order to seek recognition. Such activity should not be dismissed as mere fabrication. It shows that classification had consequences and that people understood the state's categories as a resource to be negotiated. At the same time, a successful administrative label could feed back into later self-understanding. The direction of influence therefore ran both ways: society shaped the census, and repeated census categories could reshape social politics.

59.23 Classification fed back through schools, courts, associations and print

The census was not isolated from other colonial institutions. School textbooks, legal decisions, recruitment practices, municipal representation, newspapers and caste or regional associations could repeat classifications first made authoritative in official publications. A label thereby moved from a schedule into public debate. This feedback is one reason colonial categories mattered even when they simplified lived reality. The effect was not uniform. Some labels remained administrative conveniences; others became organizing terms for associations and political claims. The historian should therefore ask what happened after classification: Was the term used in petitions? Did it appear in print? Did officials employ it in recruitment or policy? Did local writers accept, reject or redefine it? Only this second stage reveals whether a category became socially consequential.

59.24 Grierson's Linguistic Survey created a different classificatory map

George A. Grierson's Linguistic Survey of India, published in multiple volumes from 1903 onward after long preparatory work, classified speech through linguistic comparison rather than caste rank. Volume V, Part II treated the eastern Indo-Aryan "Bihari" and Oriya languages and supplied specimens. The survey is fundamental for the history of Maithili and neighbouring speech forms because it documented grammatical and lexical evidence on a scale not previously assembled by the state. Yet its map too was analytical. Decisions about language versus dialect, boundaries and nomenclature reflected comparative philology, administrative data and the available specimens. The survey should be read as a major scholarly achievement and as a historically situated act of classification, not as a timeless map of immutable linguistic borders.

59.25 Linguistic boundaries rarely coincided with district boundaries

Administrative districts were designed for government, while speech continua followed settlement, migration, rivers, markets and kin networks. Gazetteers themselves sometimes noted linguistic transitions within a district. North and south of the Ganga could show different dominant speech patterns; border tracts could mix forms that later maps assign to separate named languages. This mismatch is methodologically productive. It prevents the history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga from being reduced to modern district lines or to one-to-one language territories. Language data should be located at the smallest scale the source permits and compared across time. A later district majority cannot prove the speech of every village, and a linguistic label recorded in 1901 cannot by itself define a medieval cultural frontier.

59.26 Maithili, Angika and Bajjika require source-specific naming discipline

The present volume treats Maithili, Angika and Bajjika through historically controlled evidence rather than forcing every earlier source into current terminology. Colonial records may use “Bihari,” “Maithili,” “Tirhuti,” local dialect names, Hindi/Hindustani or other labels according to the period and classifier. The correct procedure is to report the source’s terminology, identify the speech area or linguistic features where possible, and then explain how that usage relates to later nomenclature. This protects regional history from two opposite errors: erasing distinct linguistic traditions under an overly broad administrative label, or projecting today’s standardized boundaries into a period when naming conventions and written standards were different. The history of a language name is part of social history, not an obstacle to it.

59.27 Self-description and administrative category must remain analytically separate

A census entry is strongest evidence for how the state recorded a person or household; it is not automatically a complete statement of how that person understood identity. Self-description can be recovered more directly from petitions, letters, associations, inscriptions, genealogies, literary texts, community histories and oral testimony, though each has its own limits. The most reliable reconstruction compares the two domains. Agreement between self-naming and administration can show institutional consolidation; disagreement can reveal translation, resistance or competing vocabularies. This distinction is especially important when later political identities are at stake. Historical analysis gains precision when it asks “who used this name, in what document, for what purpose, and at what date?” rather than assuming that one label has always meant the same thing.

Chronology firewall: do not project later labels backward

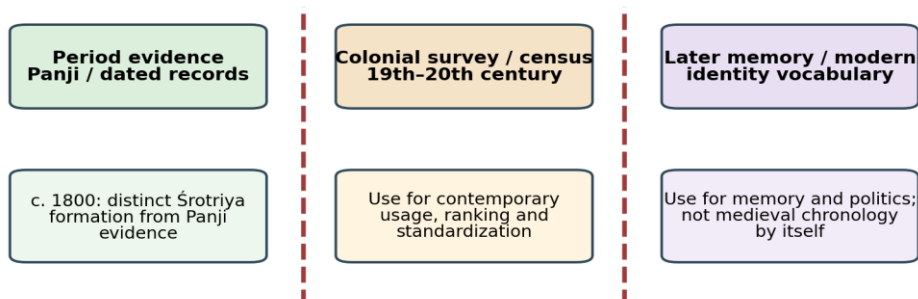


Figure 235 — Evidence firewall against retrospective social classification

59.28 Colonial classifications are evidence with defined limits

Used carefully, surveys and censuses can establish a great deal: the categories administrators employed; approximate population structures; the distribution of reported occupations; literacy and schooling; language naming; migration and birthplace; institutional locations; and contemporary arguments about status. They are much weaker for proving deep antiquity, biological ancestry, fixed cultural essences or a single consensual hierarchy. Gazetteer statements about origins often repeat tradition or earlier scholarship and require independent corroboration. Census numbers can be compared across decades only after checking changes in definitions and boundaries. These source limits are not reasons to abandon colonial statistics. They are the conditions that make the statistics historically meaningful rather than deceptively exact.

59.29 Śrottriya chronology is protected by a specific Panji-based firewall

This project applies a governing chronological correction to the category Śrottriya. It does not project Śrottriya as a fixed Maithil Brahmin sub-caste into the medieval period. The adopted Panji and Śākhā-pustak chronology places the emergence of Śrottriya as a distinct sub-caste around c. 1800. Nineteenth- and early twentieth-century surveys, censuses, ethnographies or gazetteers can therefore document colonial-era usage, status claims and administrative classification, but they cannot be carried backward as proof of a medieval sub-caste. If a colonial source uses the term, the statement is dated to that source. Earlier social organization must be reconstructed from earlier evidence. This firewall exemplifies the wider method of the volume: later administrative clarity must never substitute for period evidence.

59.30 Conclusion: categories were historical processes as well as historical data

Colonial surveys did not encounter a society without names, ranks, languages or communities, but they changed the scale, form and consequences of naming. Buchanan-Hamilton's broad district inquiries, Hunter's statistical compilations, the 1872 and 1881 censuses, Risley's ethnographic and anthropometric programme, Grierson's linguistic survey and the district gazetteers progressively turned local descriptions into comparable administrative knowledge. The process involved officials and local informants, standardization and contestation, observation and theory. Its archive is indispensable for the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries if each category is kept attached to its date, compiler and purpose. The safest historical question is therefore not "what was this community really?" in an abstract sense, but "how was it described, by whom, under which institutional rules, and how did that description change social action?"

Table 59.1 — Colonial classification sources: evidentiary value and limits

Source / institution	What it can establish	Main interpretive caution
Buchanan-Hamilton district surveys, 1807–14	Early nineteenth-century local descriptions of land, work, institutions, language and social names.	Breadth is exceptional, but observation, local testimony and estimation are mixed; do not project entries backward.
Hunter statistical accounts and district gazetteers	Administrative synthesis of population, economy, institutions and earlier reports at district scale.	Repeated statements may derive from one earlier source; later synthesis is not independent proof for earlier periods.
1872 and 1881 censuses	Enumerated population, reported caste/religion/language, occupation, birthplace and literacy under stated rules.	Definitions, boundaries and compilation changed; final tables hide translation and aggregation decisions.
Risley ethnography	Contemporary social names,	Anthropometric racial explanations

Source / institution	What it can establish	Main interpretive caution
and anthropometry	customs, status claims and the history of colonial racial/ethnographic theory.	are obsolete; ranked administrative syntheses are not timeless social ladders.
Grierson linguistic survey	Comparative linguistic evidence, specimens and historical naming of eastern Indo-Aryan speech forms.	Language/dialect boundaries are analytical and need not coincide with district or modern political boundaries.
Panji, petitions and self-authored materials	Period-specific self-description, genealogy, claims and internal naming practices.	Each source has its own institutional bias; use dated evidence to test rather than merely repeat colonial categories.

Chapter 60 — Education under Colonialism

Colonial education transformed the institutional ecology of Mithila, Vajji and Anga by linking schools, examinations and credentials to a growing public and professional labour market. The change was cumulative rather than substitutive. Sanskrit *ṭols*, vernacular schools, *maktabs*, *madrasas* and household learning persisted while government schools, aided institutions, colleges and university examinations expanded. This chapter traces that layered transition from the early nineteenth-century surveys to Patna University in 1917, with special attention to language, access, patronage, gender and the economic value of credentials.

60.1 Colonial education was a layered institutional transition

Education under colonialism did not begin with an empty landscape and did not proceed as a single replacement of “traditional” learning by English schools. Mithila, Vajji and Anga already contained Sanskrit scholarly institutions, elementary schools, *maktabs*, *madrasas*, household teaching and occupational transmission. The colonial period added new layers: government schools, inspection, grants-in-aid, prescribed curricula, public examinations, colleges and eventually a regional university. Older institutions adapted unevenly rather than disappearing at once. A socio-economic history therefore asks how access, language, credentials, patronage and employment changed. The decisive transformation was not simply the arrival of English; it was the growth of an educational bureaucracy that increasingly linked recognized schooling to examinations, certificates and salaried occupations.

60.2 Indigenous learning remained visible in early nineteenth-century surveys

Before the education department acquired dense statistical returns, district surveys and later William Adam’s inquiries recorded a diverse field of local instruction. Elementary teaching could take place in modest premises with small groups, flexible calendars and locally supported teachers. Sanskrit learning depended on scholarly lineages and patronage; Muslim education ranged from Qur’anic instruction to advanced Arabic and Persian learning. These institutions differed greatly in curriculum, duration and social reach, so they should not be collapsed into one “indigenous system.” Their historical importance is that colonial schooling developed in relation to an existing educational ecology. Some institutions continued outside state recognition, some accepted aid, some changed curriculum, and others lost relative importance as public employment increasingly rewarded new forms of literacy and certification.

60.3 *Ṭols*, *pāṭhśālās*, *maktabs* and *madrasas* served different educational purposes

The labels used in colonial reports describe institutions with distinct functions. Sanskrit *ṭols* could sustain advanced textual study in grammar, logic, law or philosophy and were closely connected to learned reputations and patronage. *Pāṭhśālās* generally served elementary or practical literacy and numeracy in local settings, though curriculum varied. *Maktabs* provided elementary Muslim instruction and *madrasas* could support more advanced Arabic or Persian learning. Household tutors and religious specialists added further channels. These forms did not constitute a single ladder leading to a common examination. Colonial administration increasingly judged them against standardized categories of primary, middle, secondary and collegiate education. The shift in institutional vocabulary itself marks a transformation: learning came to be measured by grades, inspected schools, prescribed subjects and progression toward formal credentials.

60.4 William Adam's reports of 1835–38 are crucial evidence and require caution

William Adam submitted reports on vernacular education in Bengal and Behar in 1835, 1836 and 1838, with the third report including substantial discussion of Bihar. His inquiries remain among the most important early attempts to describe local educational institutions before later departmental standardization. They document teachers, schools, subjects, languages and the uneven social distribution of instruction. Yet Adam's figures are not a modern census of schooling. His evidence combined surveys, samples, official material and estimation, and the category "school" itself did not always correspond to later departmental definitions. The reports are therefore best used to reconstruct forms and relative patterns rather than to manufacture false precision. Their greatest value is to show that vernacular and learned education already had institutional depth when the colonial government began debating a more interventionist policy.

60.5 School attendance, literacy and learned expertise were different measures

Colonial statistics gradually generated counts of schools, pupils, literate persons and examined candidates, but these measures should not be treated as interchangeable. A person could acquire reading, accounting or religious knowledge outside a recognized school; intermittent attendance could produce practical literacy without completion; advanced Sanskrit or Arabic learning did not always fit departmental categories; and census literacy depended on the question and standard used. Conversely, enrolment did not guarantee sustained attendance or mastery. The history of education therefore requires an evidence firewall similar to that used for famine and census classification: institutional counts establish the scale of recognized schooling, examination results measure one form of certified attainment, and census literacy measures a separate administrative category. None alone captures the full distribution of knowledge.

Education under colonialism was a layered ecology, not a simple replacement

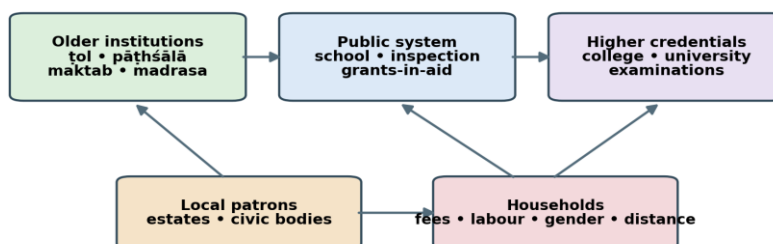


Figure 236 — The layered educational ecology under colonialism

60.6 The Anglicist–Orientalist controversy concerned patronage, language and educational purpose

The famous early nineteenth-century debate over education was not simply a quarrel about whether Indians should learn English. It concerned the use of limited public funds, the status of Sanskrit and Arabic learning, the language through which European knowledge should be taught and the intended social audience of state-supported education. Existing institutions of oriental learning already received public patronage, while advocates of English sought to redirect resources toward European literature and science. These policy arguments mattered for Bihar because government institutions and grants operated within the same Bengal Presidency framework. They also altered the employment value of languages. Persian had long been important in administration; English increasingly became a route to higher government and

professional opportunity, even while vernacular literacy remained indispensable for mass schooling and local communication.

60.7 Macaulay's Minute of 1835 gave ideological force to English higher education

Thomas Babington Macaulay's Minute of 2 February 1835 argued for using public educational funds to promote European learning through English rather than sustaining the existing pattern of state-supported Sanskrit and Arabic instruction. Governor-General William Bentinck's decision in March endorsed the new direction. The policy's practical effects were gradual and mediated by existing institutions, finances and local demand. It did not instantly turn village schooling into English-medium education. Its strongest long-run effect was at the upper end of the educational hierarchy, where English increasingly became the language associated with advanced secular curriculum, university examinations and government employment. The distinction between higher English education and vernacular elementary education became a recurring feature of the colonial system.

60.8 Patna School shows that vernacular instruction remained part of early policy

Macaulay's collected educational minutes include a specific 1835 discussion of the Patna School. He approved providing a competent moonshee for vernacular instruction and proposed use of the monitorial or Lancastrian method if one teacher could not directly teach all pupils. This local evidence complicates any claim that the 1835 settlement simply abolished vernacular education. Even within the Anglicist policy environment, administrators distinguished the language and method appropriate to different levels and institutions. Patna thus offers an early example of the hybrid colonial school: English-oriented policy at the top, vernacular teaching within the institution, and imported pedagogical techniques designed to expand instruction cheaply. The combination anticipated later efforts to standardize classrooms while containing per-pupil expenditure.

60.9 Changing official languages altered the economic value of education

Educational demand was shaped by labour markets. As English expanded in higher administration and law, knowledge of English could provide access to clerical, teaching and professional occupations. At the same time, the replacement of Persian in many official functions weakened one established route to state employment, although Persian and Urdu continued in cultural, legal and educational settings. Families therefore faced practical decisions about which languages and curricula justified fees, travel and lost household labour. This helps explain why educational change was socially uneven. A curriculum gained value not only because of intellectual content but because government offices, courts, railways, schools and later professions rewarded particular credentials. Colonial education thus created a new relationship between language learning and salaried work without eliminating older forms of scholarship.

60.10 Wood's Despatch of 1854 supplied the blueprint for a graded system

Despatch No. 49 of 19 July 1854, commonly known as Wood's Despatch, set out a broad programme for expanding education in India. It called for provincial education departments, universities, teacher training, continued government institutions, new middle schools, greater attention to vernacular and indigenous elementary schools, grants-in-aid and support for female education. English was associated with higher branches, while vernacular languages were to serve lower levels and wider access. The significance of the

Despatch for Mithila, Vajji and Anga lies in institutional architecture. Education increasingly became a regular department of government with inspectors, budgets, returns and recognized school grades. Local initiatives could be drawn into this structure through aid, while remaining subject to curricular and inspection rules.

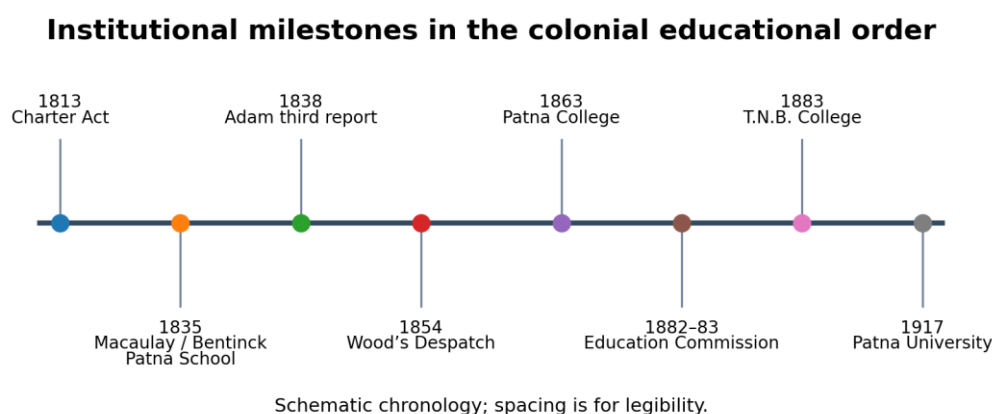


Figure 237 — Educational policy and institutional milestones, 1813–1917

60.11 The Department of Public Instruction made schooling measurable and inspectable

After the mid-century reforms, Directors and Inspectors of Public Instruction helped convert education into a recurring administrative routine. Schools were classified, inspected and reported; enrolment, attendance, expenditure, teacher qualifications and examination performance entered annual returns. This created an archive far denser than the earlier descriptive surveys. It also changed institutions themselves. A school seeking recognition or aid had incentives to maintain registers, follow prescribed curricula and present pupils for examinations. Educational statistics therefore record both reality and policy effects: the state measured schools, and schools adapted to what the state measured. For historians, departmental reports can reconstruct institutional growth, but unrecognized teaching must be sought elsewhere because it could fall outside the official statistical field.

60.12 Grants-in-aid connected private initiative to public standards

The grant-in-aid system allowed government funds to support schools managed by municipalities, missions, associations, landed patrons or other private bodies. It expanded capacity without requiring the state to own every institution. The arrangement also became a mechanism of regulation. Eligibility could depend on inspection, accounts, attendance, curriculum and examination results. Financial responsibility was therefore shared, but administrative standards increasingly came from the education department. In Bihar this structure was important because regional educational growth depended heavily on local philanthropy and institutional initiative. The resulting system was neither fully state-run nor purely private. It was a negotiated public-private order in which money, recognition and examination rules bound diverse schools to a common bureaucratic framework.

60.13 Vernacular primary schooling and English higher schooling formed an unequal ladder

The graded colonial system formally recognized vernacular elementary education as the route for the wider population while English acquired increasing importance at higher stages. In principle this could extend basic learning without requiring English for every child. In practice, the ladder was unequal. Advancement toward secondary school, entrance examinations and college often required resources that poorer rural households lacked, and English competence became a gate to the most prestigious credentials. The structure therefore widened education while also producing new forms of stratification. A village child could enter a recognized primary school yet remain far from the institutional pathway that led to college. The social history of education must consequently examine transitions between levels, not simply total enrolment.

60.14 Curriculum and examination reorganized educational time

Recognized schools increasingly worked through timetables, graded classes, prescribed textbooks and examinations. These practices altered the rhythm of learning. Older institutions could organize teaching around mastery of texts, seasonal attendance or individualized progression; departmental schools required a more standardized calendar and comparable attainment. Examinations also created strong incentives to teach toward defined syllabi. This could support curricular consistency and mobility between institutions, but it could narrow what counted as educational success. The new temporal discipline mattered economically as well. Regular attendance conflicted with agricultural cycles, household work and artisanal labour, especially for poorer children. Thus the classroom timetable was not a minor administrative detail: it redistributed children's time between household production and certified learning.

60.15 Teacher training sought to standardize pedagogy

Wood's Despatch and later educational policy emphasized training institutions for teachers. Normal schools and training classes attempted to produce instructors familiar with graded curricula, classroom management and monitorial methods. District gazetteers from the early twentieth century record specialized training schools for primary teachers in parts of the region; Monghyr, for example, had third-grade training schools for gurus. The expansion of trained teaching did not eliminate locally learned pedagogy, and many schools continued to employ teachers without formal professional credentials. But the idea of the "trained teacher" created a new occupational standard. Teaching gradually became more closely linked to certification, salary scales and departmental supervision, strengthening the connection between education and a modern public-service labour market.

60.16 District schools expanded access unevenly across space

Educational opportunity depended heavily on geography. A district headquarters or important town could sustain a high school, hostel or specialized institution that was impossible in many villages. Roads and later railways reduced some travel barriers, but distance still imposed costs on rural households. Flood-prone tracts of north Bihar added seasonal mobility problems, while dispersed settlement affected school catchments. District Boards and local bodies became important to primary and middle schooling precisely because location was a local fiscal and administrative problem. The resulting map of education was therefore nodal rather than uniform: towns such as Patna, Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Monghyr and Bhagalpur accumulated institutions earlier and more densely than many rural interiors.

60.17 Patna College institutionalized higher education in Bihar from 1863

The institutional genealogy of Patna College reaches back to Patna High School, founded in 1835, and to mid-century attempts to establish collegiate instruction. The present college dates its establishment to 1863 and describes itself as Bihar's oldest institution of higher education. Its importance extends beyond institutional chronology. A durable government college in Patna reduced, though did not remove, dependence on Calcutta for advanced study and created a regional centre for the education of teachers, administrators, lawyers and other professionals. Because admission to collegiate education required prior schooling and examination success, the college also sat at the top of a selective ladder. Its growth made the inequalities of secondary preparation more consequential: access to a college mattered only for those able to reach the threshold.

60.18 Calcutta University made affiliation and examination central to higher education

The university system created after the 1854 Despatch was initially strongly affiliating and examining. Colleges across Bengal and Bihar prepared students for standardized university examinations, while the university supplied credentials recognized across a wide territory. This arrangement promoted a common academic framework but concentrated authority over curriculum and certification. Regional colleges therefore belonged to a network whose institutional centre lay outside Bihar. The examination system shaped school curricula downward because secondary institutions prepared candidates for entrance requirements. It also created a portable credential useful in government and professional employment. The colonial educational order consequently linked a local classroom in Bihar to a presidency-wide hierarchy of examinations, textbooks and degrees.

60.19 T.N.B. College in Bhagalpur strengthened higher education in Anga from 1883

T.N.B. College, Bhagalpur, traces its foundation to 1883. Its establishment gave the Anga region a major centre of higher learning and illustrates the importance of Indian philanthropy in expanding collegiate education. The college developed within the Calcutta University affiliation system and initially served students who otherwise faced longer journeys for advanced study. Bhagalpur's role as a district and commercial centre, and later its railway connections, gave the institution a wider hinterland. The college demonstrates that colonial educational growth cannot be narrated solely through government policy. Local donors, landed elites and civic ambitions created institutions that then entered the public system through affiliation, examinations and recognition. The result was a mixed institutional economy in which private initiative produced public educational infrastructure.

60.20 Darbhanga Raj patronage connected landed wealth to educational modernization

The Darbhanga Raj became an important patron of new educational institutions in Mithila during the late nineteenth century. Studies of the Maharaja period describe support for an Anglo-vernacular school, free or subsidized vernacular schools and attention to Sanskrit, English and female education. Such patronage did more than imitate government. It allowed a landed estate to convert wealth and public prestige into institutions, scholarships and educational access. At the same time, patronage could reinforce the centrality of elite centres and depended on the priorities of the donor. The Darbhanga case therefore belongs to a wider

pattern in which colonial policy created recognized educational forms while Indian landed and urban patrons supplied resources that helped those forms spread regionally.

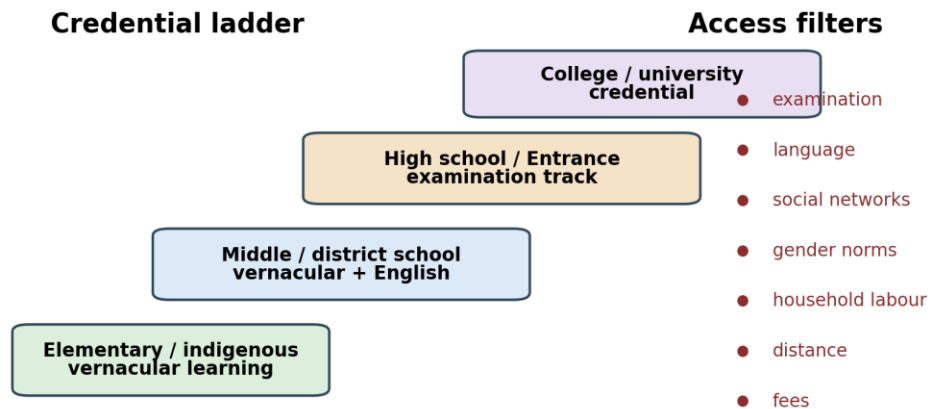


Figure 238 — The colonial credential ladder and its access filters

60.21 Sanskrit learning persisted and was reconfigured rather than simply extinguished

Mithila's Sanskrit scholarly traditions did not disappear when English colleges expanded. Tols and learned lineages continued to train students, preserve manuscripts and sustain disciplines such as grammar, law, logic and philosophy. Colonial educational policy changed their environment by redirecting prestige, employment and public funding toward new institutions, yet traditional learning could also receive patronage from estates, communities and sometimes government-recognized arrangements. The key historical change was pluralization of credential systems. Scholarly reputation within a Sanskrit network remained meaningful, while school and university certificates acquired increasing value in public employment. Some families therefore combined forms of learning or directed different children toward different educational routes. Continuity and transformation coexisted.

60.22 Muslim educational institutions also adapted to changing linguistic and occupational incentives

Maktabas, Qur'anic schools and advanced Arabic or Persian institutions continued across the region, but the changing language of administration altered their economic environment. Persian retained literary and legal importance even after losing much of its former official role; Urdu/Hindustani, Arabic and English served different institutional purposes. Early twentieth-century district evidence from Monghyr, for example, records aided maktabas, Qur'anic schools, a madrasa and numerous private Arabic or Persian institutions alongside government-recognized schools. This coexistence is methodologically important. "Muslim education" cannot be reduced to one institution or one response to colonial policy. Families negotiated among religious study, vernacular literacy, Persianate learning and the new credential economy according to locality, resources and occupational goals.

60.23 Girls' schooling expanded slowly and exposed the gendered limits of the system

Official policy increasingly endorsed female education, but implementation lagged far behind male schooling. Household concerns about respectability, distance, mixed institutions, age, domestic labour and

marriage could restrict attendance even when a school existed. District gazetteers record small girls' schools and zenana teaching schemes, and they often comment on the slow pace of expansion. The regional imbalance remained severe into the twentieth century. Patna University's own institutional history notes that in 1917 there was not a single girl student in Bihar's colleges and no separate institution of higher education for women in the province. This stark evidence shows that the growth of schools and colleges cannot be equated with gender-neutral access. The colonial credential economy was created long before women could enter it on equal terms.

60.24 Caste, class and community shaped educational opportunity without determining it mechanically

School access depended on household resources, social networks, local prejudice and the distribution of institutions. Elite and prosperous families were better placed to finance prolonged education, hostel residence and English study. Marginalized communities could face economic exclusion and discriminatory practice, while some reformers and public bodies created scholarships or special initiatives. These inequalities should not be converted into a timeless claim that any community was naturally "educated" or "uneducated." Colonial statistics record changing participation under specific institutional conditions. Education itself could become a resource for social mobility and collective organization, so patterns shifted over time. The historical question is how barriers operated, which policies reduced or reinforced them, and how communities responded to the opportunities created by recognized schooling.

60.25 Fees, distance and household labour were practical barriers to attendance

The cost of schooling was larger than the stated fee. Books, clothing, travel, lodging and the value of a child's labour all entered household decisions. Agricultural families needed labour seasonally; artisan households could depend on children's participation in production; poorer urban families required wage contributions. A school located several miles away imposed additional time and safety costs, especially for girls. Fee exemptions, scholarships and local schools could reduce these burdens but not eliminate them. This economic perspective explains why supply-side measures such as opening a school did not automatically produce universal attendance. Education competed with other household claims on time and cash. The unequal ability to absorb those costs helped reproduce class differences inside an expanding educational system.

60.26 Language governance in Mithila and Anga did not simply mirror speech at home

The language of schooling was an institutional choice shaped by textbooks, teacher supply, examination requirements and administrative classification. Local speech in Mithila and Anga did not necessarily coincide with the "vernacular" label used by education officials. A child could speak Maithili or another regional form at home while learning through a standardized school language and later English. Grierson's linguistic work demonstrated the distinctiveness and internal diversity of the eastern Indo-Aryan speech area, but educational administration often operated with broader written categories. This mismatch mattered for comprehension, literacy and cultural authority. It also influenced the later public politics of language. The history of Maithili, Angika and Bajjika in education must therefore distinguish spoken repertoire, literary tradition, official school language and university subject status.

60.27 Education created new clerical and professional labour markets

The expansion of courts, revenue offices, municipalities, railways, schools and commercial firms created demand for literate employees. Secondary and collegiate education supplied clerks, teachers and candidates for professional training, while examinations helped employers screen applicants. This labour-market connection gave families a concrete reason to invest in schooling. It also created credential inflation: once certificates became common for particular posts, informal literacy alone lost competitive value. The educational system therefore changed the social meaning of knowledge. Learning was still pursued for religion, scholarship and personal cultivation, but recognized schooling increasingly carried an exchange value in the salaried economy. This was one of the most durable socio-economic effects of colonial education.

Regional institutions were tied into a wider examination and credential network

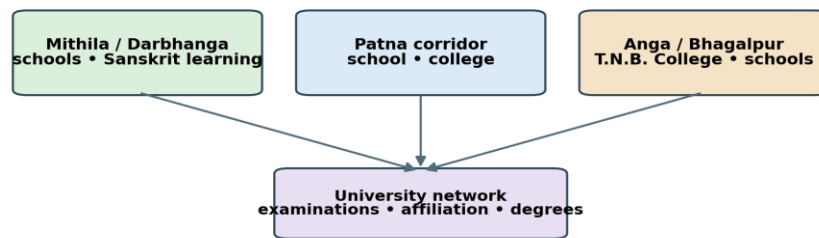


Figure 239 — Regional educational nodes within the wider examination network

60.28 Schools and colleges helped create new publics and associations

Educational institutions gathered students from different localities, exposed them to common curricula and linked them through alumni, debating societies, newspapers and professional networks. These settings contributed to the formation of a new public sphere in which regional interests, social reform and politics could be discussed. The process was not confined to English education: vernacular print and local associations were equally important. Colleges in Patna and Bhagalpur and educational patronage in Darbhanga helped create concentrations of literate actors who participated in civic and political life. This chapter stops short of the detailed history of print culture, which belongs to Chapter 61, but the institutional connection is essential: schools produced readers, writers, teachers and organizers who enlarged the audience for print and public argument.

60.29 Patna University in 1917 marked a regional consolidation of higher education

The establishment of Patna University in 1917 gave Bihar its own university structure after decades in which its colleges operated within the Calcutta-centered system. Initially the new university inherited the affiliating and examining logic characteristic of Indian universities, but its creation was institutionally significant. It brought the regulation of colleges, examinations and degrees closer to Bihar's educational network and symbolized a regional claim to intellectual infrastructure. The university's own history also preserves evidence of the limitations of the moment: women were absent from Bihar's colleges in 1917, and hostel residence could still encounter caste-based anxieties among male students. Institutional consolidation therefore did not mean social democratization. It created a platform whose expansion and contestation would continue in the twentieth century.

60.30 Conclusion: colonial education expanded credentials without erasing older knowledge

Between the early nineteenth century and 1917, education in Mithila, Vajji and Anga changed from a plural field of locally sustained institutions into a more densely interconnected system of indigenous learning, government schools, aided institutions, district boards, colleges and university examinations. Adam's reports reveal the pre-existing vernacular ecology; the 1835 policy turn privileged English at higher levels; Wood's Despatch supplied an administrative blueprint; later commissions strengthened inspection, grants and local responsibility; Patna College, T.N.B. College and Darbhanga patronage regionalized higher and secondary education; and Patna University consolidated the credential network. The transformation widened access but remained sharply unequal by gender, class, locality and social position. Its lasting innovation was the power of recognized credentials, not the disappearance of older intellectual traditions.

Table 60.1 — Evidence for colonial education: what each source can and cannot establish

Source / institution	What it can establish	Main interpretive caution
Adam's reports, 1835–38	Forms, languages, teachers and distribution of vernacular and learned education before mature departmental statistics.	Survey and estimation methods differ from later school censuses; “school” and “literacy” are not fixed categories.
Macaulay/Bentinck policy, 1835	Shift of state patronage toward English and European learning at higher levels; local evidence such as Patna School.	Do not infer an immediate abolition of vernacular or older institutions.
Wood's Despatch, 1854	Blueprint for education departments, universities, teacher training, grants-in-aid, vernacular elementary and English higher instruction.	Policy design is not proof of uniform implementation across districts.
Education Commission, 1882–83	All-India review of primary and secondary education, indigenous schools, grants, teachers, girls' education and administration.	Provincial and local conditions varied; recommendations must be separated from achieved results.
Patna College / T.N.B. College / Darbhanga patronage	Regional institutionalization of secondary and collegiate education and mixed government-private finance.	Institutional founding dates do not measure the social reach of higher education.
District gazetteers and Patna University history	Early twentieth-century school types, teacher training, female education, recognized/unrecognized institutions and regional consolidation.	Administrative recognition omits some informal teaching; institutional narratives may be retrospective.

Chapter 61 — Print Culture

Print culture changed the social life of texts in Mithila, Vajji and Anga by making arguments, reports, literary works and linguistic claims reproducible across distance. It did not erase manuscript or oral transmission. Instead, presses, lithography, schools, postal systems, railways, journals and associations created a denser communication environment in which English, Hindi, Urdu, Maithili and Sanskrit occupied overlapping but unequal positions. This chapter follows that transformation from the nineteenth-century press regime to the early twentieth-century Maithili periodical world, with particular attention to script technology, multilingual readership, regulation, circulation and the making of regional publics.

61.1 Print culture was an institutional ecology, not a single technological event

Print entered Mithila, Vajji and Anga through a layered ecology of presses, paper, type, lithography, editors, schools, postal routes, railways, booksellers and readers. It is therefore misleading to describe colonial print as a simple moment when manuscripts were replaced by books. The social effects of print depended on who could finance publication, which scripts could be set economically, where presses were located, how copies travelled, and which institutions taught people to read them. Calcutta remained a crucial publishing centre for much of eastern India, while Patna, Bhagalpur, Darbhanga and other towns gradually developed their own printing and journalistic capacities. Print expanded the reproducibility of texts and the speed with which arguments could circulate, but the new medium remained embedded in older practices of recitation, copying, commentary and collective reading. For this reason, the chapter treats print as an additional infrastructure of social communication rather than as a technological rupture.

61.2 Manuscript, oral and printed transmission continued to coexist

The persistence of manuscript culture is especially important in Mithila. Sanskrit scholasticism, Panji records, ritual manuals, genealogical materials, songs and literary texts had long circulated through handwritten copies, memorisation and performance. Printed editions could stabilize one version and multiply it, but they did not automatically supersede manuscript authority. A scholar might teach from a handwritten text while consulting a printed edition; a family might preserve a genealogical manuscript while reading printed journals; songs printed in periodicals could continue to circulate primarily through performance. Print therefore altered the scale of reproduction without eliminating the social situations in which texts acquired meaning. This coexistence also warns against using first print dates as dates of composition. A work printed in the nineteenth or twentieth century may preserve material considerably older than its edition, while the editorial choices of the printer may themselves be modern. The history of print must consequently keep composition, manuscript transmission, oral circulation and publication analytically distinct.

61.3 Calcutta functioned as an external publishing metropolis for Bihar and Mithila

For much of the nineteenth century, the most developed printing infrastructure available to writers and organisations in Bihar lay outside the region, above all in Calcutta. The Bengal Presidency connected North Bihar and Anga administratively and commercially to the metropolis, and books or newspapers intended for readers in Bihar could be composed, financed or edited locally yet printed in Calcutta. This spatial separation matters. A publication's imprint may identify the place of printing rather than the social geography of its authors or readership. The example of Bihar Bandhu is instructive: histories of Hindi journalism place its

beginning in Calcutta in 1872 and its press in Patna from 1874. Such trajectories show that regional print cultures often developed through metropolitan facilities before acquiring local presses. The movement of proofs, manuscripts and finished copies between Calcutta and Bihar also linked literary production to postal and transport systems. Print geography therefore cannot be reduced to the location named on a title page.

61.4 Government, missionary and commercial printing created different textual markets

Colonial printing did not have a single sponsor. Government presses produced regulations, reports, forms, gazetteers, educational materials and statistical publications. Missionary presses elsewhere in the Bengal sphere demonstrated the value of printing for religious translation, literacy and schooling. Commercial printers responded to demand for textbooks, almanacs, religious books, literary works, newspapers, invitations and administrative stationery. These sectors overlapped but operated under different incentives. Government printing favoured standard forms and archival reproducibility; missionary printing linked text to pedagogy and proselytisation; commercial presses depended on paying markets, patrons and subscriptions. Local landed patrons and associations could subsidise publications that would not survive on sales alone. The resulting print field was therefore heterogeneous. A district report, a Maithili magazine, a Hindi newspaper, an Urdu lithographed tract and a Sanskrit edition might share paper and distribution networks while serving very different audiences. Reconstructing print culture requires following these distinct institutions rather than treating every printed object as evidence of the same readership.

61.5 Type, script and cost were social constraints on what could be printed

Movable type made repeatable composition possible, but every script required fonts, matrices, compositors and conventions of spelling. Where a usable typeface was unavailable or expensive, publication could be delayed, shifted to another script, or produced through lithography. These technical constraints had cultural effects. They could privilege scripts already supported by large printing markets and educational institutions. In North India, the growing infrastructure of Devanagari interacted with Hindi and Sanskrit printing, while Perso-Arabic scripts benefited from lithographic practices suited to calligraphic forms. Mithilakshar or Tirhuta possessed deep manuscript prestige in Mithila but entered a print environment in which ready type and trained compositors were far less available. The later predominance of Devanagari in Maithili print must therefore be explained through printing economics, schooling and institutional networks as well as literary choice. Script change was not a simple referendum on cultural value.

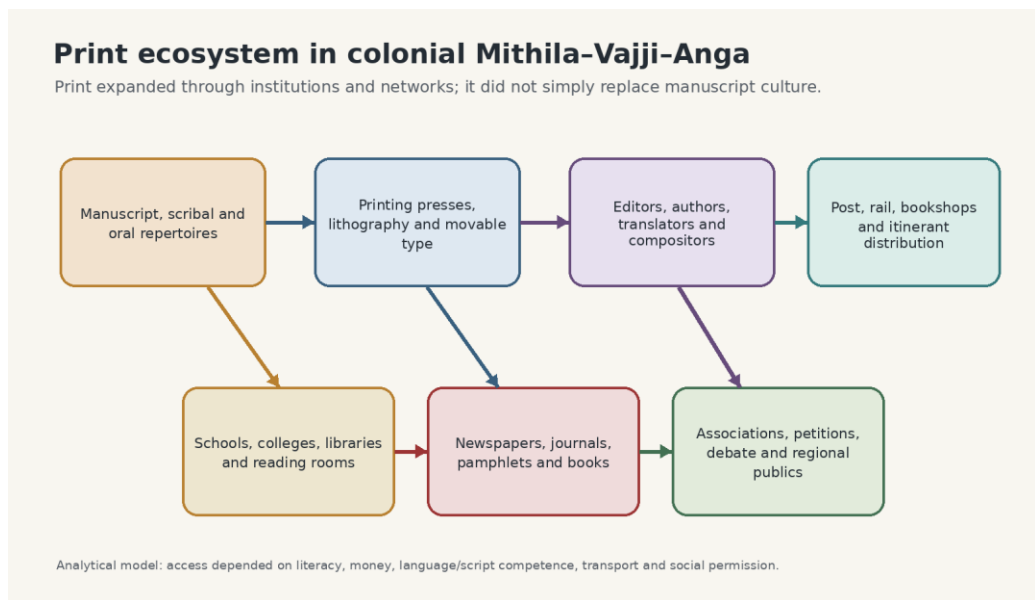


Figure 240 — Print ecosystem in colonial Mithila-Vajji-Anga

61.6 Lithography helped preserve manuscript-like visual forms in Urdu and Persian print

Lithography, which reproduced writing from a prepared surface rather than requiring every character to be assembled from movable type, was particularly important for languages written in Perso-Arabic scripts. It allowed calligraphic styles familiar from manuscripts to enter print with fewer typographic compromises. In Bihar, where Urdu and Persian remained important languages of learned, legal and public communication during the nineteenth century, this technology helped sustain a print culture that did not visually resemble Nagari typography. The technological diversity of colonial print therefore paralleled linguistic diversity. Newspapers, official notices, poetry and religious texts could move through different production systems even within the same town. This matters for archival survival: lithographed works may be catalogued differently from typographic books, while cheap ephemera often disappeared. A history based only on surviving bound books risks underestimating the density of short-lived pamphlets, announcements, calendars and newspapers that once circulated.

61.7 Patna's early Urdu press shows that print history in Bihar was multilingual from the start

Regional histories commonly identify Patna Harkara, associated with Sah Abu Torab and dated to 1855, as one of the earliest newspapers published from Patna, and they record Akhbar-e-Bihar in 1856. The surviving documentation for these early titles is uneven, so their exact chronology should not be made to carry more weight than the evidence permits. Their larger significance is clearer: Urdu was central to Bihar's early newspaper world. That fact complicates narratives that begin regional print history with Hindi or English alone. The transition from Persian in administration, the continuing cultural reach of Urdu, and the emergence of Hindi public writing produced overlapping rather than sequential spheres. Readers could encounter more than one language, and writers often moved among linguistic registers. The multilingual character of the press is therefore a starting condition of colonial Bihar's print culture, not a later complication.

61.8 The Press and Registration of Books Act of 1867 made print more legible to the state

The Press and Registration of Books Act of 1867 required formal information about printers, publishers and places of printing and created mechanisms for preserving copies of publications. Its administrative logic is central to the archive historians now use. By compelling declarations and imprint information, the law made printed production more traceable than much manuscript circulation had been. The same visibility that aids historical research also served regulation. A printed statement could be connected to a responsible printer or publisher, and the state could count, classify and monitor the expanding press. The act therefore illustrates the double character of colonial information systems: they preserved evidence while increasing administrative oversight. Lists of presses and publications should be read as records produced within this regulatory environment, not as neutral inventories of everything people read. Unregistered, ephemeral or privately circulated material remains much harder to recover.

61.9 Bihar Bandhu linked Hindi journalism to a growing regional public

Bihar Bandhu, founded in 1872 and associated with Balakrishna Bhatt and Keshavram Bhatt, is a major landmark in the growth of Hindi journalism connected with Bihar. Accounts of the paper note that it began publication in Calcutta and that its press moved to Patna in 1874. This movement captures a wider transition from dependence on metropolitan printing to a more locally rooted newspaper infrastructure. Bihar Bandhu also participated in debates over the language of courts and public administration, demonstrating that a newspaper could become an instrument for linguistic advocacy as well as news. Yet the paper's Hindi identity should not be projected onto the whole population. Newspaper readership remained concentrated among literate groups, and the language of print could differ from everyday speech in Mithila, Vajji and Anga. Its importance lies in the creation of a repeatable public forum through which language claims, reforms and regional interests could be articulated and circulated.

61.10 The Bihar Herald added an English-language public to the regional press

The Bihar Herald, founded in Patna by Guru Prasad Sen in 1875, became an important English-language newspaper in Bihar. English papers served several overlapping publics: officials, lawyers, teachers, students, professionals and politically active readers who used English to address the colonial state or communicate beyond a single vernacular constituency. The existence of an English regional press did not make it socially detached from local questions. English newspapers could argue for administrative reform, public works, representation or provincial interests precisely because English gave access to officials and wider imperial networks. The coexistence of English with Hindi and Urdu journalism also created asymmetries. A claim framed in English could circulate through a different administrative and professional audience from the same claim framed in a vernacular. Print culture therefore multiplied publics rather than creating one unified public sphere.

61.11 The Vernacular Press Act of 1878 exposed the political inequality between languages

The Vernacular Press Act of 1878 subjected Indian-language newspapers to coercive powers not imposed in the same form on the English-language press. Whatever its varying local enforcement, the law made linguistic medium itself politically consequential. A newspaper's language could determine its legal vulnerability. This asymmetry is essential for understanding regional print. Vernacular journalism was not simply a cheaper or more accessible counterpart to English journalism; it operated under a distinct regulatory

threat at a moment when criticism of colonial policies was expanding. The act was repealed in 1882, but its short life demonstrated the colonial state's capacity to discriminate among printed publics. In a multilingual province, censorship therefore interacted with language politics. Editors had to consider not only what they said but the legal environment attached to the language in which they said it.

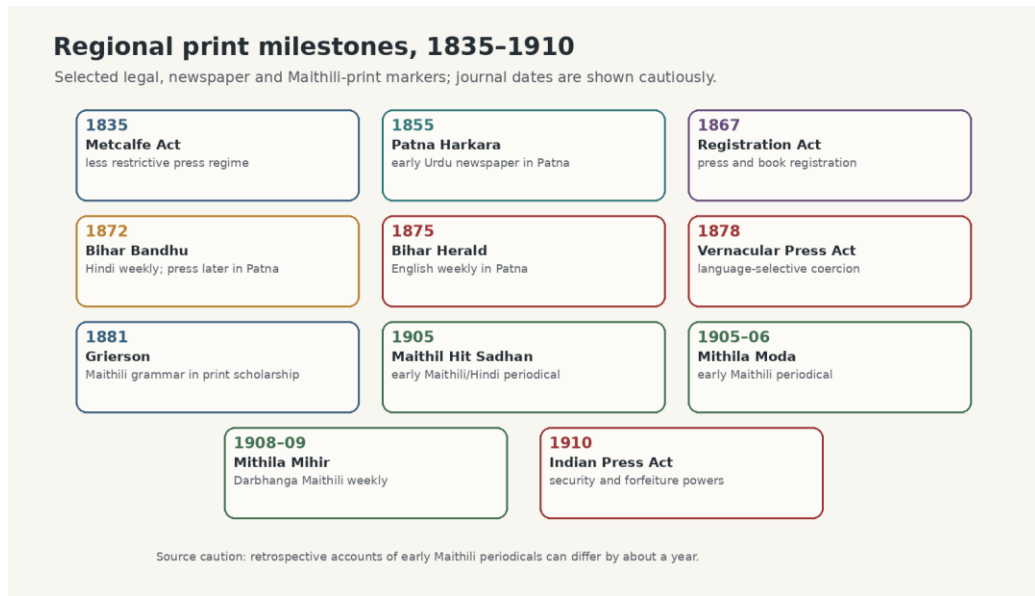


Figure 241 — Selected milestones in the regional print environment, 1835–1910

61.12 Repeal in 1882 did not end surveillance of printers and newspapers

The repeal of the Vernacular Press Act under Lord Ripon in 1882 removed one notorious form of language-specific control, but it did not create an unregulated press. Registration requirements, criminal law, sedition provisions and later press legislation remained available to the colonial state. Printing presses were visible businesses with named proprietors, addresses and equipment. Newspapers depended on postal carriage and could be watched through official translation and intelligence systems. The history of print freedom must therefore be written as a changing balance of permissions, liabilities and enforcement rather than as a simple alternation between censorship and liberty. This regulatory background shaped regional journalism even when a particular paper was not prosecuted. The possibility of seizure, security demands or criminal proceedings affected investment and editorial risk, especially for small publications with little capital.

61.13 Grierson's 1881 Maithili grammar turned linguistic description into a reproducible scholarly object

George A. Grierson's *An Introduction to the Maithili Language of North Bihar*, first published through the Asiatic Society in 1881, is an important moment in the print history of Maithili. Its significance is not that Maithili suddenly became a language because it was described in print; the language and its literary traditions long predated the publication. Rather, grammar, chrestomathy and vocabulary made a particular description of Maithili reproducible within colonial and scholarly networks. Printed linguistic works could be cited, reviewed, taught from and incorporated into later surveys. They helped stabilize spellings and labels while also subjecting living speech to classificatory frameworks. This chapter therefore treats Grierson's book simultaneously as evidence about Maithili and as an intervention in the history of its public representation. Print gave linguistic description durability and institutional reach beyond the immediate field encounter.

61.14 Textbooks and examinations gave printed norms institutional force

The educational system examined in Chapter 60 created recurring demand for printed textbooks, readers, grammars, dictionaries and examination guides. Once a school adopted a text, its vocabulary, spelling and grammatical categories reached pupils through repeated classroom use. University and school examinations intensified this standardising effect because students were rewarded for reproducing recognized forms. The print market for education could therefore influence language even where the medium of instruction did not match household speech. In Mithila and Anga, Hindi, Urdu, English and Sanskrit all participated in this institutional economy. Maithili's limited position in formal schooling meant that its early modern print sphere developed heavily through literary journals, associations and privately supported publications rather than through a large compulsory textbook market. This difference helps explain why the social history of Maithili print cannot be inferred from literacy statistics alone.

61.15 Hindi–Urdu competition intersected with, but did not absorb, Maithili and Angika speech worlds

Late nineteenth-century North Indian print was shaped by widening Hindi–Urdu competition over script, vocabulary, schooling and official use. Bihar participated strongly in these debates, yet the binary did not map neatly onto everyday language. Large populations in Mithila and Anga spoke Maithili, Angika and other regional varieties while reading or being schooled in standardized Hindi or Urdu. Print could therefore widen the distance between spoken repertoires and public written languages. It could also create new opportunities: readers who mastered Nagari or Perso-Arabic script could participate in wider literary markets beyond their district. A regional history must keep both processes visible. The rise of Hindi print did not prove that Maithili lacked independent linguistic history, and the presence of Maithili speech did not mean that every Maithili speaker demanded Maithili as the language of print. Language choice was conditioned by education, market size, employment, script availability and political strategy.

61.16 Early twentieth-century Maithili journals created a new literary-public infrastructure

The opening years of the twentieth century saw a cluster of Maithili periodicals that provided writers with recurring publication rather than occasional book form. Modern scholarship commonly lists Maithil Hit Sadhan, Mithila Moda and Mithila Mihir among the foundational journals of this phase. They carried poetry, prose, social commentary and linguistic discussion, helping connect authors and readers scattered across different towns. Their importance lay partly in periodicity. A journal could sustain an argument across issues, publish responses, create reputations and train readers to expect regular new writing. It also made literary activity visible as a collective enterprise. The periodicals were not confined to a single linguistic purism; several carried Hindi alongside Maithili, and Mithila Moda also used Sanskrit. The modern Maithili public sphere therefore emerged through multilingual print practices rather than through immediate monolingual standardization.

61.17 Early Maithili periodical dates should be presented with source-aware precision

Secondary sources do not agree perfectly on the first year of every early Maithili periodical. Maithil Hit Sadhan is commonly dated 1905; Mithila Moda appears as 1905 or 1906; and Mithila Mihir is variously given as 1908 or 1909. The later Darbhanga district gazetteer explicitly states that Mithila Mihir had been a popular weekly since 1908, while other histories round or date its launch differently. The correct historical response is

not to conceal the discrepancy but to state it. For chronological analysis, the important fact is the cluster itself: by the first decade of the twentieth century, regular Maithili-oriented periodicals existed and were creating a durable print public. Figure 241 therefore uses ranges where the literature is inconsistent. This practice prevents false precision from becoming a new historical claim.

61.18 Bilingual and trilingual journals reveal readers with overlapping literacies

The coexistence of Maithili, Hindi and sometimes Sanskrit within the same periodical is evidence against imagining sharply bounded readerships. Editors could assume that at least part of their audience crossed language registers, and a single issue could address literary, reformist and scholarly constituencies differently. Bilingual publication also expanded the potential subscription base and enabled a Maithili-oriented journal to intervene in the wider Hindi public sphere. At the same time, multilingualism could reproduce hierarchy if one language was reserved for prestigious genres or formal argument. The page itself became a site where linguistic relationships were negotiated. For historians, this means that counting titles by a single language category may obscure how publications actually functioned. A journal labelled Maithili could contain substantial Hindi material; a Hindi newspaper could report on Maithili-speaking districts; English papers could relay local political claims. Print culture was multilingual in use even when catalogues require one language label.

61.19 Devanagari's rise in Maithili print was technological and institutional as well as ideological

Mithilesh Kumar Jha has emphasized that modern Maithili writers increasingly adopted Devanagari as print expanded, while Mithilakshar or Tirhuta retained historical and symbolic importance. Three practical conditions are especially relevant: modern Tirhuta type was not readily available; Sanskrit scholars in Mithila were already familiar with Devanagari; and wider Nagari promotion supplied fonts, printers and institutional support. These factors did not erase Tirhuta manuscripts, nor did they prove that Devanagari was historically native to every Maithili textual practice. They show how a script with stronger industrial infrastructure can acquire dominance in print. The history is therefore one of media ecology. Manuscript prestige and typographic convenience could point in different directions, and writers had to choose between them when they wanted reproducible, affordable circulation.

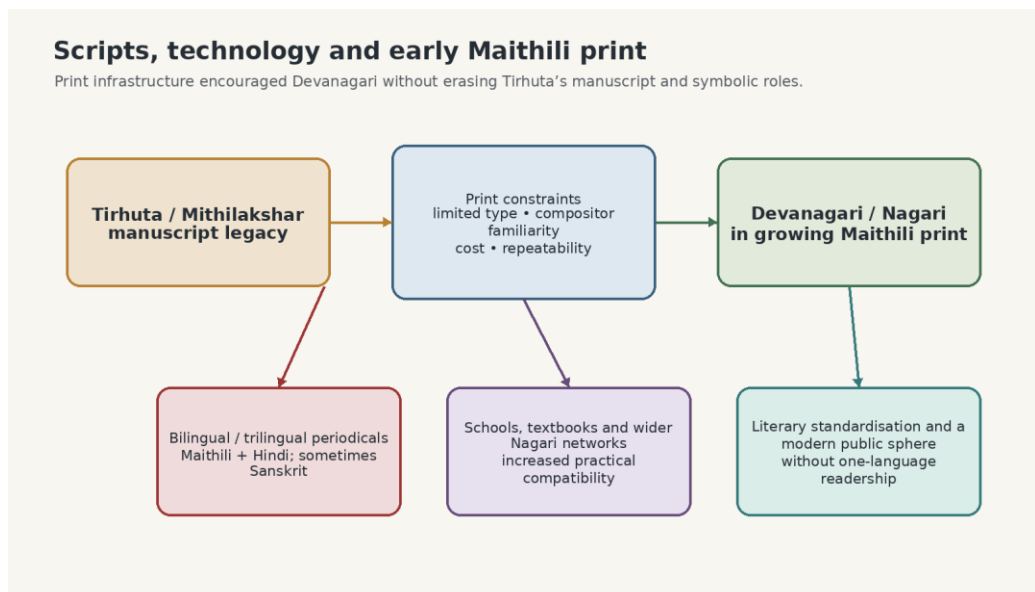


Figure 242 — Script and language choices in early modern Maithili print

61.20 Mithila Mihir connected Darbhanga patronage to a long-lived Maithili periodical

The Darbhanga district gazetteer attributes the establishment of the weekly Mithila Mihir to the efforts of the Maharajadhiraj of Darbhanga and describes it as an important opportunity for old and new writers. This patronage illustrates how landed wealth could be converted into cultural infrastructure. A periodical required presses, editors, paper, distribution and the ability to survive uneven subscription income. Patronage could stabilize those costs long enough for a readership to form. Mithila Mihir also became a forum in which rural life, social change, literature and language politics could be represented over decades. Its history therefore links the landed society discussed in Chapter 55 to the cultural modernization of the twentieth century. Patronage did not make the journal merely an elite instrument; the more significant question is how the resource base of an elite institution enabled a wider and eventually more diverse field of contributors and readers.

61.21 Bhagalpur and the Anga region participated in print through education, commerce and communication networks

Anga's print history cannot be reduced to newspapers printed inside Bhagalpur alone. The city was already a major educational and commercial node, and its readers were connected by rail and post to Calcutta, Patna and other publishing centres. Books and newspapers could therefore become locally important without being locally manufactured. The same distinction applies to Monghyr, where district evidence records a dramatic growth of postal communication. In 1906–07 the Monghyr district received more than 2.6 million postal articles, including over 110,000 newspapers. Such figures do not identify individual readers or prove that every paper was read locally, but they demonstrate the physical scale of printed circulation reaching the eastern Bihar corridor. Print culture in Anga was consequently a network phenomenon: production, transport and consumption could occur in different places.

61.22 Post and rail changed the economics and temporality of periodical circulation

A periodical differs from a book partly because delay can destroy its value. News, advertisements, examination notices and political commentary depend on regular delivery. The expansion of postal offices, railway connections and cheaper paper therefore mattered to print culture as much as the press itself. District statistics from Monghyr show how quickly postal volume expanded by the early twentieth century, including a large newspaper component. Railways also connected printing centres to market towns and district headquarters, while postal subscriptions allowed journals to reach readers beyond retail bookshops. These networks reduced the importance of physical proximity to a press. A Maithili reader could subscribe to a journal printed elsewhere; a lawyer in Darbhanga could read a Calcutta English paper; a trader in Bhagalpur could receive commercial news from Patna or Bengal. Print helped synchronize dispersed readers because transport infrastructures made recurring delivery possible.

61.23 Reading rooms, libraries and collective reading widened the social life of a single copy

Circulation figures cannot be equated with readership. One copy of a newspaper might be read by several people in a school, hostel, library, office, tea shop or association. Literate readers could also read aloud to

others. Collective reading was especially significant where household subscriptions were expensive or literacy uneven. Later district gazetteers repeatedly mention public libraries, information centres and reading facilities, evidence of a durable institutional pattern that had roots in the colonial period. These spaces transformed print into conversation. A newspaper article could become the subject of debate, a petition or a meeting without every participant possessing a copy. Historians should therefore resist two opposite errors: assuming that low sales meant negligible influence, and assuming that every circulation number represented a unique reader. The relevant unit is often a reading network rather than an individual subscriber.

61.24 Women entered print culture unevenly as readers, subjects and authors

The gender inequality described for colonial education shaped print as well. Lower female literacy reduced direct access to newspapers and books, while domestic labour, seclusion practices and limited schooling constrained participation in public reading spaces. Yet women were not absent from print culture. Reform debates frequently made female education, marriage and household conduct subjects of publication, and literate women gradually appeared as readers and writers. Printed religious texts, songs, domestic manuals and literary works could enter households even where women did not participate in formal associations. Oral reading also mediated access. Because surviving newspapers were largely edited and written by men, the archive overrepresents male voices. A responsible social history distinguishes between women as objects of reform discourse and women as producers or interpreters of print. The two categories should not be collapsed.

61.25 Caste and class shaped access to print without making readership socially fixed

Printing reduced the cost of reproducing a text compared with hand copying, but it did not eliminate inequality. Schooling, disposable income, leisure, language competence and proximity to distribution all influenced who could read regularly. Educated upper and middle groups were therefore disproportionately represented among editors, correspondents, subscribers and association leaders. Caste networks could finance journals, circulate marriage or genealogical information, and mobilise reform. At the same time, expanding schools, cheap newspapers and collective reading could bring print to groups previously underrepresented in manuscript scholarship. The social composition of readership changed over time. The key methodological point is that a printed claim made by an elite association cannot automatically be treated as the voice of an entire caste, language community or region. Print makes claims visible; it does not by itself prove representativeness.

61.26 Newspapers and journals helped associations turn local grievances into regional claims

Associational life and print reinforced one another. Meetings generated resolutions, reports and petitions; newspapers publicised them; readers responded; and subsequent meetings could cite the published discussion as evidence of wider support. This feedback loop was important in campaigns over language, education, employment and provincial administration. Bihar's English and Hindi newspapers participated in arguments for a distinct provincial identity separate from Bengal, while Maithili journals increasingly articulated cultural and linguistic claims centred on Mithila. Print did not create these interests from nothing, but it gave them repeatable wording and wider geographic reach. A slogan or resolution could travel beyond the town in which it was first formulated. In this sense, print converted local organisation into a networked public claim.

61.27 Printed descriptions helped redefine “Mithila” as a modern public region

The meaning and spatial extent of Mithila had never depended on one administrative boundary, and colonial districts did not map perfectly onto older cultural geographies. Print nevertheless gave writers new tools for arguing about the region. Historical essays, literary histories, journals, maps, genealogical discussions and language advocacy could repeatedly name “Mithila,” identify its cultural features and debate its borders. This recurrent naming helped produce a modern regional public that was connected but not identical to older ritual or political concepts of Videha and Tirhut. The process was contested: different authors emphasised language, caste networks, sacred geography, political administration or literary inheritance. Print amplified those disagreements rather than resolving them. The historian should therefore treat printed regionalism as evidence of active boundary-making, not as proof that one timeless territorial definition had always existed.

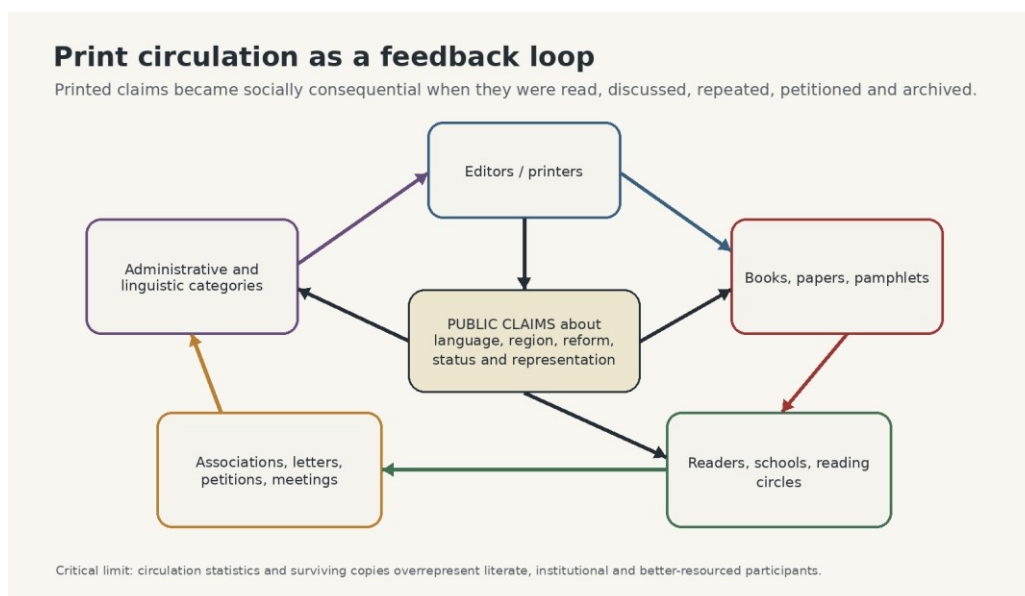


Figure 243 — Print circulation as a feedback loop

61.28 The Indian Press Act of 1910 restored stronger coercive powers at a nationalist moment

By the opening decade of the twentieth century, print had become central to nationalist organisation across India. The Indian Press Act of 1910 gave governments strong powers to demand securities and forfeit publications or printing property in cases judged seditious. For small regional presses, financial penalties were particularly consequential because a security demand could threaten survival even without a long criminal trial. The law belongs in a chapter on print culture because censorship acted through the material economy of printing: presses, deposits, copies and equipment. It also reminds us that the growth of newspapers and associations was never merely a story of expanding freedom. The same infrastructure that enabled rapid political communication made editors and printers identifiable targets of regulation.

61.29 The print archive is rich precisely because it is selective

Printed sources are often easier to date and attribute than oral traditions or anonymous manuscripts, yet survival is highly unequal. Government reports and gazetteers were systematically preserved; expensive books entered libraries; newspapers and cheap pamphlets were discarded, damaged or lost. Publications with long institutional support are far more likely to survive than unsuccessful experiments. Catalogues also privilege

named authors and formal titles, whereas advertisements, handbills and subscription notices may reveal everyday print economics more directly. The historian must therefore read absence cautiously. A missing newspaper run does not prove that the paper lacked influence, while a well-preserved official report may overstate the administrative viewpoint simply because the archive retained it. Table 61.1 separates what different print sources can establish from what they cannot.

61.30 Conclusion: print multiplied publics while preserving unequal access

Colonial print transformed Mithila, Vajji and Anga by multiplying the speed, reproducibility and geographic reach of written communication. It linked local writers to metropolitan presses, schools to textbooks, associations to newspapers, and readers to postal and railway networks. Yet print did not produce one homogeneous public. English, Hindi, Urdu, Maithili and Sanskrit occupied different institutional niches; Tirhuta, Devanagari and Perso-Arabic scripts interacted with distinct technologies; and access remained structured by education, gender, class, caste, geography and capital. The early Maithili journals of the twentieth century are especially important because they show a literary language building a modern public sphere through multilingual and technologically constrained choices. The central historical shift was therefore not from silence to print, or from manuscript to modernity, but from relatively bounded textual networks to a denser field in which printed arguments could be reproduced, contested, archived and turned into regional social claims.

Table 61.1 — Evidence for colonial print culture: what each source can and cannot establish

Source / evidence	What it can establish	Main interpretive caution
Printed books and imprints	Date, printer/publisher, place of printing, editions and textual framing.	Place of printing is not necessarily the social origin of author or readership; surviving books favour durable and better-funded publications.
Newspapers and periodicals	Recurring debates, advertisements, contributors, language/script choices, association activity and changing public vocabulary.	Runs are often incomplete; circulation may be unknown; editorials do not automatically represent all readers.
Press-registration and legal records	Named printers/publishers, press locations, declared titles, securities, prosecutions and state regulation.	Records reflect what the state required or investigated and may omit informal or ephemeral circulation.
District gazetteers and postal statistics	Local press institutions, libraries, newspaper reading, postal volume and communication infrastructure.	Administrative descriptions are selective; postal counts do not identify unique readers or content.
School textbooks, grammars and dictionaries	Institutionalized spellings, categories, curricula, language hierarchies and standardizing practices.	Prescribed norms do not prove identical household speech or actual classroom use.
Association reports, petitions and letters	Organized language, regional and reform claims; named participants; circulation of arguments.	Association leadership can overrepresent educated, caste or class elites.
Surviving Maithili journals	Literary networks, bilingual/trilingual practice,	Start dates and issue runs can be inconsistent across

Source / evidence	What it can establish	Main interpretive caution
	script choice, regional discourse and authorship.	retrospective sources; survival is uneven.

Chapter 62 — Railways, Roads and Changing Markets

Railways reorganized the economic geography of Mithila, Vajji and Anga without erasing rivers, roads, ferries or animal transport. South of the Ganga, the East Indian Railway reached major Anga towns in the early 1860s; north of the river, the Tirhut network expanded from famine-relief construction in the 1870s into a branching metre-gauge system. Stations and junctions changed market hierarchy, roads increasingly became railway feeders, and new links drew frontier trade toward railheads. At the same time, flood ecology, river crossings, gauge breaks and the continuing need for carts preserved substantial friction. This chapter reconstructs that layered transport economy and treats market integration as an uneven historical process rather than an automatic result of railway mileage.

62.1 Transport change was a reordering of networks

Colonial transport history in Mithila, Vajji and Anga cannot be reduced to a sequence in which railways arrived and older routes vanished. Before rail construction, the Ganga and its tributaries, ferries, seasonal roads, carts, pack animals and foot traffic already connected village production to market towns and longer-distance commerce. Railways entered this existing geography and altered the relative cost, speed and reliability of particular routes. They encouraged some towns to become junctions or collection centres, reduced the commercial advantage of certain older road and river markets, and made feeder roads more valuable. Yet much traffic still had to reach a station by cart, cross a river by ferry, or continue toward Nepal over roads and tracks. The historical question is therefore not whether rail replaced road and river, but how several transport systems were recombined into a new hierarchy of accessibility.

62.2 Rivers remained economic infrastructure

The Ganga had long carried grain, salt, textiles, timber and passengers through Anga and the wider middle Gangetic plain. District gazetteers continued to describe river traffic even after railway expansion, because bulk goods and settlements away from the track still depended on water. Bhagalpur's official account noted both the long-standing importance of the Ganga route and the persistence of steamer traffic, even as railway competition reduced some forms of boat movement. Ferries were equally important where railway lines reached opposite banks but no bridge connected them. River transport thus survived not as a residual of a premodern economy but as one component of a multimodal system. Seasonal depth, channel migration, flood behaviour and the location of ghats shaped costs in ways that railway mileage alone cannot reveal.

62.3 Anga entered the railway era earlier than much of north Bihar

The eastern and southern part of the study region acquired major railway connections relatively early. The East Indian Railway reached Bhagalpur in the early 1860s and was extended to Monghyr in February 1862. This chronology mattered because it tied important Ganga towns to the Calcutta-oriented railway system before the Tirhut network north of the river was built. It also created uneven regional experiences of "railway modernity": places along the East Indian Railway encountered station-centred commerce, railway employment and regular train schedules decades before some flood-prone parts of northern Mithila. Such unevenness cautions against treating colonial transport as a single regional event. Different subregions entered the new network through different companies, gauges, junctions and river crossings.

62.4 Jamalpur created an industrial railway node

Jamalpur shows that railway infrastructure could create more than a transport stop. The East Indian Railway's locomotive workshops were established there in 1862, and the town's subsequent growth was closely tied to railway employment. The Monghyr gazetteer described the workshops as the district's largest industrial concern and recorded workmen's trains carrying employees from surrounding directions. Coal and other supplies moved into the district partly to serve this industrial complex. The railway therefore changed labour markets, commuting patterns and urban demand as well as freight movement. Jamalpur was not simply a place through which commodities passed: it became a production and repair centre whose wages, housing needs and supply requirements generated a new local economy. Chapter 63 returns to the labour implications of such transport-linked employment.

62.5 The Tirhut Railway began in famine and scarcity policy

North Bihar's railway chronology was closely connected with scarcity management. Construction of the Tirhut line began in 1874 as a provincial project during a period of famine relief, and the Dalsing Sarai–Samastipur–Darbhanga section opened in November 1875. The origin is historically significant because it joined two colonial objectives that were often presented together: immediate employment during distress and permanent infrastructure for the future movement of grain and people. A famine-relief railway, however, should not be interpreted as proof that transport alone could prevent famine. Access to food depended on prices, wages, purchasing power, local distribution and entitlement as well as physical carriage. The line's long-term importance came from its later incorporation into an expanding commercial network.

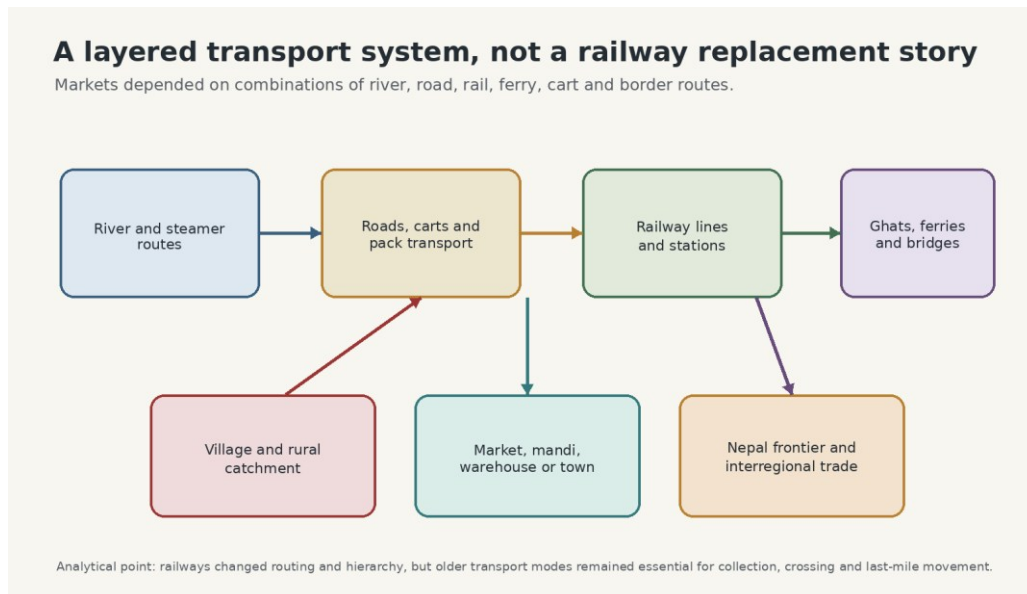


Figure 244 — A layered transport system: river, road, rail, ferry and frontier routes

62.6 Samastipur became a junction because networks intersected there

The opening of the Tirhut Railway gave Samastipur a new role as an operational and commercial junction. The extension to Muzaffarpur in 1877 and later branches increased the number of routes converging there. By the early twentieth century the Bengal and North-Western Railway also maintained a locomotive workshop at Samastipur employing about a thousand hands according to the Darbhanga gazetteer. Junction status concentrated railway staff, repair functions, warehousing, passenger movement and wholesale exchange. This did not mean that nearby rural markets ceased to matter. Rather, the station

became a point at which local carts and feeder routes met long-distance rail movement, allowing traders to assemble or redistribute larger consignments.

62.7 Railway expansion followed a branching rather than a single-line logic

After the first Tirhut section, new links progressively connected Muzaffarpur, Jhanjharpur, Hajipur and other points. The network's historical importance lay in branching. A main line alone could lower costs only for places near its stations; branches widened the catchment area and changed which roads functioned as feeders. Extensions in the 1880s and later connected market towns that had previously relied more heavily on river crossings or long cart journeys. The result was not uniform accessibility. Villages remained unequally distant from stations, and flood-season roads could still be impassable. Railway maps therefore need to be read together with road and hydrological evidence rather than as self-sufficient measures of economic integration.

62.8 Gauge and company boundaries shaped practical connectivity

Colonial railway systems were built under different companies and administrative arrangements, and connections were not frictionless. The Tirhut system was metre gauge, while the East Indian Railway used broad gauge. Freight or passengers moving between systems could face transshipment, ferry crossings or schedule changes. The Bengal and North-Western Railway began working the Tirhut system in 1890, creating a more integrated operating network north of the Ganga, but the river remained a major break in through movement. For economic history, “connected by railway” is therefore too simple a category. A line could exist on both sides of a river without providing wagon-through movement, and the time or cost of transfer could preserve advantages for older routes.

62.9 Ghats and ferries were railway infrastructure too

The railway age increased rather than eliminated the importance of certain ghats. At points where no railway bridge crossed the Ganga, ferries and steamers connected systems on opposite banks. The Monghyr gazetteer described the link between the Bengal and North-Western Railway at Simaria Ghat and the East Indian Railway at Mokameh Ghat, while Bhagalpur's network similarly used river crossings to connect lines north and south of the Ganga. Such arrangements created bottlenecks but also concentrated commercial activity around landing places. A transport history that counts only route miles misses these transfer spaces. Ghats were logistical nodes where wagons, boats, passengers, carts, porters and merchants interacted.

62.10 Roads were increasingly designed as railway feeders

Railway expansion did not make road construction obsolete. The Darbhanga gazetteer explicitly described road extension as a means of providing feeders to the railway. Roads radiated from Darbhanga, subdivisional headquarters and stations such as Sakri, Jhanjharpur and Nirmali toward markets and the Nepal frontier. This feeder logic altered the purpose of road spending: a road could become valuable because it shortened the cart journey to a station rather than because it carried traffic for the entire interregional route. In higher and better-drained country, roads could support year-round traffic; in low-lying tracts, seasonal inundation sharply reduced reliability. The railway thus created new incentives for road investment while exposing old inequalities in terrain and drainage.

62.11 Flood-prone Mithila made all-weather roads expensive

The central and south-eastern portions of Darbhanga district were described as poorly served by good communications because annual flooding made embankment, bridging and drainage expensive. Roads that appeared on official maps could be difficult or impossible to use during the rains. Some projects required substantial private or landed support: the Darbhanga–Jaynagar road, for example, was bridged throughout at the expense of the Darbhanga Raj. This contrast between mapped mileage and seasonal usability is crucial. Market access depended not simply on whether a road existed but on surface, elevation, bridge provision, maintenance and flood conditions. Railway embankments could offer a more dependable trunk route while leaving last-mile access vulnerable.

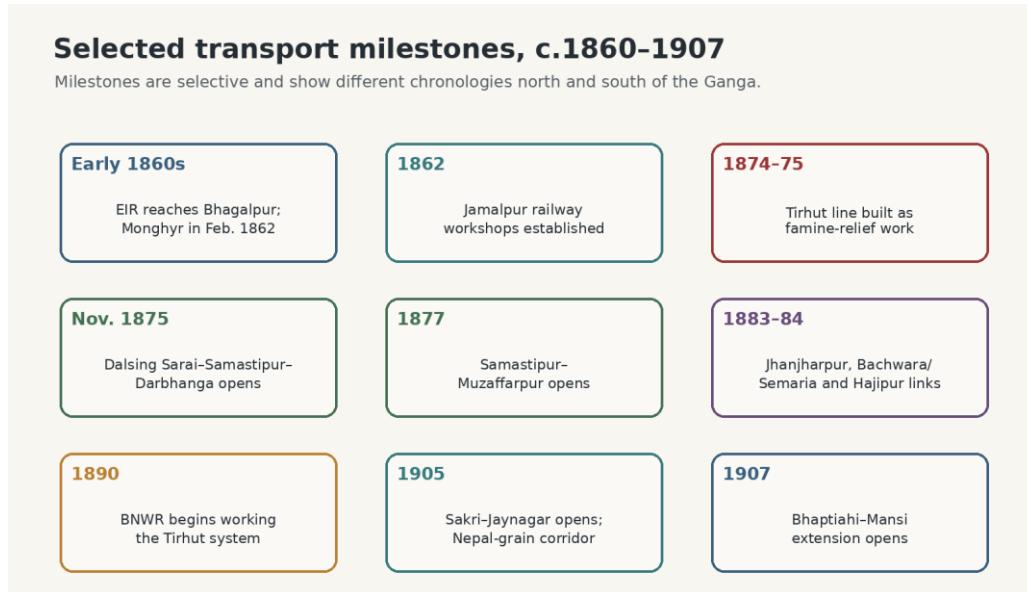


Figure 245 — Selected transport milestones in Mithila–Vajji–Anga, c.1860–1907

62.12 Bullock carts remained the indispensable last mile

District accounts continued to describe bullock carts as common conveyances for goods and passengers. Their persistence explains how railways could expand without directly reaching most villages. Grain, oilseeds, tobacco, hides and other commodities were collected from rural production zones and carried to stations or larger markets by cart; imported salt, kerosene, cloth and other goods moved outward in the reverse direction. Cartage costs therefore remained part of railway-era prices. The economic radius of a station depended on how far traders could profitably move goods over local roads. Where roads were poor or flooded, the effective railway catchment narrowed. Railway and cart transport were complements as often as competitors.

62.13 Sakri–Jaynagar linked rail expansion to the Nepal frontier

The Sakri–Jaynagar line, opened in 1905, is a particularly clear example of transport reaching toward the India–Nepal borderland. The Darbhanga gazetteer noted that much of its earthwork had been completed during famine-relief operations in 1897 and that the line opened a tract previously remote from railway access. Passing through Madhubani and toward Jaynagar, it tapped grain supplies moving from Nepal and connected frontier trade more directly with the railway network. Yet the border itself was not converted into a rail-only corridor. Goods from Nepal still reached railheads by carts, pack bullocks, coolies and local roads. The line shortened one segment of the journey while leaving the cross-border economy multimodal.

62.14 Nepal trade reveals the limits of railway determinism

Darbhanga's official trade description stated that most commerce with neighbouring Indian districts had become rail-borne, while trade with Nepal continued to use carts, pack animals and human carriers. Grain, oilseeds and timber moved southward; piece-goods, salt and kerosene moved toward Nepal. This mixed system is analytically valuable because it shows how railway influence could extend beyond the track. A frontier trader might still use animal transport for the mountain or Tarai segment but choose a railway-linked town as the wholesale destination. Rail access therefore reshaped prices and market orientation without physically penetrating every part of the route. Transport technologies operated in sequence rather than in isolation.

62.15 Market towns gained or lost relative position

New transport routes changed the hierarchy among markets. The Darbhanga gazetteer observed that Rusera, once the largest market in the southern part of the district, had lost much of its importance after the opening of the railway, although it remained flourishing. This wording is important: decline was relative, not disappearance. Markets situated favourably near stations, junctions or feeder-road intersections could attract wholesale activity, while older centres might lose part of their hinterland. The result was a redistribution of commercial centrality. Similar processes affected road markets where a parallel railway diverted through traffic. The railway did not “create markets” from nothing; it altered the geography within which existing markets competed.

62.16 Darbhanga, Madhubani and Samastipur became stronger collection centres

By the early twentieth century Darbhanga, Madhubani and Samastipur were identified among the principal trade centres of the district. Their importance rested on a combination of population, administrative functions, roads and railway links. Stations enabled merchants to assemble consignments for export and to receive imported goods in larger volumes. Madhubani's growing connection to the Sakri–Jaynagar corridor also strengthened its relation to northern and Nepal-bound trade. Samastipur's junction and workshop functions added an industrial dimension. These examples show why transport history must be written at the scale of nodes as well as lines: a route becomes economically consequential through the places where goods are stored, financed, weighed, transferred and sold.

62.17 Commodity geography became more tightly linked to transport geography

The Darbhanga gazetteer listed exports such as rice, gram, pulses, linseed, mustard seed, tobacco, hides and ghee, and imports including salt, kerosene, coal, gunny bags and European cotton goods. In Monghyr, coal traffic was connected to the Jamalpur workshops, while agricultural produce moved through railway market towns such as Barhiya, Lakhisarai and Sheikhpura. Railways did not determine what a region produced, but they changed the feasible distance over which bulky or time-sensitive goods could be marketed. Commodity flows therefore need to be reconstructed alongside station location, freight handling and road access. A single district could simultaneously export and import grain depending on season, quality and market conditions.

62.18 Railway stations became commercial institutions

A station was more than a platform. It concentrated booking, weighing, loading, storage, cart stands, labour and information about prices and destinations. Traders adjusted procurement to train schedules and

freight rates; nearby land could acquire new commercial value; shops and lodging clustered around passenger movement. Official gazetteers often name stations when describing markets precisely because station access had become part of a town's economic identity. At the same time, station-centred evidence can exaggerate railway influence by making recorded traffic more visible than informal local exchange. The historian should distinguish what passed through official freight accounts from what continued to move through weekly markets, village credit networks and unrecorded cart traffic.

62.19 Railways intensified urban and industrial labour demand

Transport infrastructure generated employment directly through construction, track maintenance, stations, workshops and clerical services. Jamalpur and Samastipur demonstrate the scale such employment could reach. Railway labour also produced secondary demand for food, housing, fuel, repair services and retailing. Workmen's trains at Jamalpur show that labour catchments could extend beyond walking distance and that commuting itself became part of the transport economy. These effects complicate any account focused only on freight. A railway line changed local labour markets even when the surrounding countryside remained overwhelmingly agrarian. The next chapter will examine migration and mobility more fully, but transport-linked employment already reveals how infrastructure reorganized household strategies.

62.20 Fairs and pilgrimage traffic adapted to stations and roads

The regions' fairs, sacred centres and periodic markets predated the railway, yet improved transport changed the scale and timing of attendance. Stations and feeder roads could make pilgrimage sites accessible to visitors from a wider radius, while carts and ferries still handled the final segment where no rail connection existed. Passenger traffic brought vendors, lodging providers and carriers into the same seasonal economy. The effect was not a simple commercialization of religion; fairs had long combined ritual and exchange. Railways altered the spatial reach of those exchanges and could concentrate activity around particular arrival points. This continuity with Chapter 51 is important: colonial transport transformed public culture partly by changing how people reached already established places of congregation.

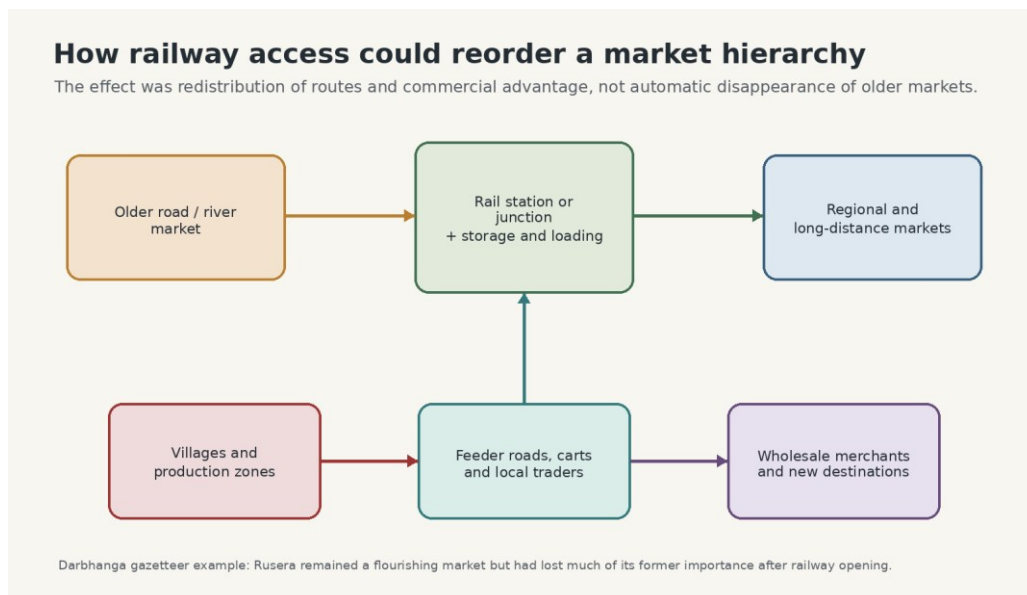


Figure 246 — How railway access could reorder market hierarchy

62.21 Famine relief and market integration were related but not identical

Colonial officials often justified transport investment by arguing that railways and roads could move grain into scarcity areas. The Tirhut Railway's famine-relief origins and the Sakri–Jaynagar earthworks illustrate that connection directly. Better transport could reduce the physical isolation of a deficit locality and allow supplies to move more rapidly. But famine was never only a transport problem. If wages collapsed or food prices rose beyond household purchasing power, grain could be present in a connected market while vulnerable people still starved. Transport therefore altered one constraint within a larger political economy of entitlement, relief, prices and employment. This distinction preserves the lessons of Chapter 58 while explaining why colonial administrations nevertheless treated communications as a central anti-famine instrument.

62.22 Price convergence offers one measure of market integration

Economic historians have used district price series to test whether railway expansion reduced price differences across space. John Hurd's classic study linked the growth of the network to expanding markets, while later work by Tahir Andrabi and Michael Kuehlwein found that railways contributed to price convergence but did not account for the whole decline in dispersion. Their result is useful for this region because it resists a technological monocause. Mithila, Vajji and Anga already possessed riverine, road and merchant networks before railway construction. Railways lowered some transport costs and increased speed, but pre-existing trade, harvest conditions, information flows, storage and local institutions also influenced prices. Market integration was cumulative and uneven rather than born at the moment a station opened.

62.23 National estimates should not be projected mechanically onto the region

Recent quantitative studies of colonial Indian railways estimate substantial aggregate effects on trade, welfare or long-run growth. Such findings establish that railways mattered at the scale of British India, but they do not replace regional reconstruction. A national average cannot tell us whether a flooded road near Jhanjharpur was usable, whether a merchant at Jaynagar relied on pack transport from Nepal, or whether an older market lost trade to a nearby station. The regional evidence shows multiple mechanisms operating simultaneously: lower trunk transport costs, new junctions, feeder-road investment, industrial employment and changes in market hierarchy. Quantitative national research is most useful here as a framework to test against local primary sources, not as a substitute for them.

62.24 River crossings remained costly points of friction

Before major bridges, crossing the Ganga often required unloading, ferrying and reloading passengers or goods. Where different gauges or companies met, transfer could add further delay. These frictions explain why railway maps can overstate effective integration. A straight line on a map may conceal hours of waiting at a ghat, seasonal uncertainty, handling charges or damage to cargo. Conversely, a well-organized steamer connection could make a seemingly discontinuous route commercially viable. The economic importance of Mokameh–Simaria and other ferry connections lay precisely in their capacity to link otherwise separate railway systems. Transport cost must therefore be understood as a chain of operations rather than the mileage of a single mode.

62.25 Roads parallel to railways could lose through traffic

The Monghyr gazetteer recorded that the Tirhut road running through important markets such as Lakhminia, Ballia, Begusarai and Teghra had lost much of its importance because the railway ran parallel to

it. This is the road equivalent of Rusera's relative loss of market centrality. When rail offered cheaper or faster long-distance carriage, a road could shift from trunk-route status to local or feeder use. Such changes affected inns, cart operators, roadside markets and settlements that had depended on through traffic. Yet the road still mattered for access between stations and villages. Railway competition therefore changed road function more often than it eliminated roads outright.

62.26 Infrastructure could reorganize land values and settlement

Stations, workshops, bridges and improved roads created new focal points for shops, storage and housing. Although district gazetteers do not provide a complete series of land values around every station, the concentration of trade and employment at junctions implies a redistribution of locational advantage. A plot near a station or feeder-road intersection could acquire commercial uses unavailable to equally fertile land farther from transport. Conversely, settlements bypassed by a new line might lose part of their service economy. These processes were gradual and conditioned by ownership, municipal institutions and flood risk. The important point is that transport infrastructure changed the economic meaning of location within the same agrarian landscape.

62.27 Railway embankments also became hydrological structures

In floodplains, a raised railway or road embankment was not environmentally neutral. The Monghyr gazetteer's discussion of the 1904 floods noted how the railway and the Tirhut road could obstruct or pond floodwater even while the railway itself remained intact. Bridges, culverts and drainage openings therefore mattered as much as the embankment's height. Similar engineering dilemmas were inherent in low-lying Mithila, where communications had to cross shifting channels and seasonal inundation. Infrastructure could improve market access in ordinary conditions while altering the path or duration of floodwater during exceptional events. This dual role links transport history directly to the ecological history developed earlier in the volume.

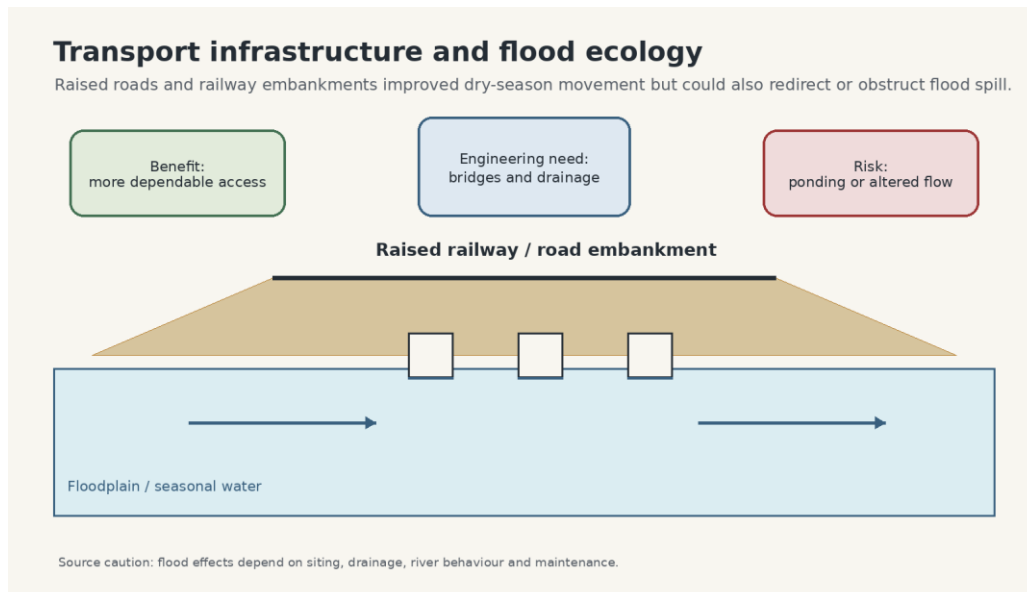


Figure 247 — Transport infrastructure and flood ecology

62.28 Infrastructure produced winners and losers

Transport investment distributed benefits unevenly. Merchants near new stations, railway employees, cart operators on feeder routes and consumers of imported goods could gain from lower costs or new demand. Older road markets, ferry points bypassed by new alignments, and service providers tied to former routes could lose traffic. Landholders could benefit from better access to commercial crops, but the same integration might expose cultivators to wider price fluctuations or strengthen creditor control over marketed surplus. No single social group experienced the railway in one way. The distributional question is essential because aggregate increases in trade do not tell us who captured the gains from reduced transport costs.

62.29 The official archive measures infrastructure better than everyday mobility

Railway administration reports, district gazetteers and District Board accounts are unusually good at recording route miles, opening dates, stations, bridges and major market centres. They are less complete for informal paths, seasonal detours, small ferries, women's local travel, unpaid carrying work and the daily decisions by which households reached a market. Freight returns reveal recorded consignments but not necessarily village exchange or smuggling across a border. Official sources also tend to describe infrastructure from the perspective of administrative utility and revenue. A careful reconstruction therefore combines engineering and railway records with trade descriptions, price series, maps and local evidence, while treating each source as a partial view of movement.

62.30 Conclusion: faster connections created a new but uneven market geography

By the early twentieth century, Mithila, Vajji and Anga had been drawn into a denser transport system in which railway lines connected major towns and junctions, roads increasingly acted as feeders, ferries linked networks across the Ganga, and carts or pack transport still carried the last or frontier segment. The result was substantial market reorientation: Samastipur and Jamalpur gained transport-linked functions, Madhubani and Jaynagar became more closely tied to rail-mediated trade, and some older markets or roads lost relative importance. Yet the region remained shaped by flood ecology, river crossings, gauge changes and unequal all-weather access. Colonial transport accelerated exchange without homogenizing space. It also made movement of labour easier, setting up the next chapter's examination of migration, seasonal work and longer-distance mobility.

Table 62.1 — Evidence for transport and market change: strengths and limits

Source / evidence	What it can establish	Main interpretive caution
Railway administration reports and opening records	Line ownership, gauge, station and section opening dates, working arrangements and route mileage.	Administrative dates establish formal operation, not the intensity or social distribution of use.
District gazetteer communication chapters	Roads, stations, ferries, markets, local traffic, flood constraints and official assessments of accessibility.	Descriptions privilege administratively visible routes and may understate informal paths and seasonal mobility.
Trade and station freight returns	Recorded commodities, tonnage, origins/destinations and growth of rail-borne traffic.	Official freight omits informal exchange and may not reveal who captured commercial gains.
District Board road accounts	Road mileage, metalling, bridges, maintenance and	Mapped mileage is not equivalent to all-weather

Source / evidence	What it can establish	Main interpretive caution
	feeder-road priorities.	usability, especially in flood-prone tracts.
Market and fair descriptions	Relative importance of towns, periodic markets, commodity specialisation and changes after new links.	Qualitative terms such as flourishing or declining do not provide a complete price or turnover series.
Price series	Spatial convergence or divergence and response to harvest or transport shocks.	Prices reflect storage, information, harvests and institutions as well as transport costs.
Maps, flood reports and engineering evidence	Alignment, ghats, embankments, bridges, drainage openings and relationships to floodplains.	A mapped line cannot by itself show seasonal passability or local hydrological consequences.
Local histories and oral evidence	Remembered routes, station neighbourhoods, occupations, market shifts and everyday travel practices.	Retrospective memory requires dating control and comparison with contemporary records.

Chapter 63 — Labour Migration

Labour migration became one of the most consequential connections between the agrarian households of Mithila, Vajji and Anga and the expanding colonial economy. Yet there was no single migrant stream. Seasonal workers, circular urban migrants, railway and workshop labourers, plantation recruits, women moving within family labour strategies, and indentured emigrants faced different destinations and different degrees of freedom. Railways lowered travel frictions, but recruitment networks and labour law often determined whether movement remained reversible. This chapter reconstructs those differentiated circuits while keeping census categories, household strategies and coercive labour regimes analytically distinct.

63.1 Labour migration was several mobilities, not one exodus

Colonial labour migration from Mithila, Vajji and Anga took several forms that must be kept analytically separate. Some cultivators and labourers left for a few weeks or months during slack agricultural seasons; others worked repeatedly in Calcutta, Howrah or railway centres while maintaining a village household; some moved with families to plantation zones; and a much smaller share entered overseas indenture. Census tables tend to flatten these movements because they record birthplace or residence at a particular date, not the full sequence of departure, return and repetition. A history of labour migration therefore has to reconstruct circuits rather than assume that every person enumerated outside a home district had permanently left it. The key question is not simply how many moved, but what kind of labour relation, distance, recruitment mechanism and probability of return defined each movement.

63.2 Agrarian pressure made mobility a household strategy

The agrarian economy created recurring incentives to seek cash earnings outside the village. Small holdings, unequal access to land, rent demands, indebtedness, crop failure and limited local non-farm employment could make wage work elsewhere attractive even when a household remained committed to cultivation. Migration did not necessarily express rejection of agriculture; it could help sustain it. Earnings from outside work could meet rent or debt obligations, finance marriages and rituals, purchase grain, replace lost cattle, or support cultivation during a difficult season. Anand A. Yang's study of Bihar migration usefully emphasizes the decision-making of rural households rather than depicting peasants as mechanically expelled from the countryside. For the present region, this perspective is especially important because recurrent flood and rainfall risk combined with dense agrarian settlement to make income diversification rational even where land remained socially central.

63.3 Flood, scarcity and the agricultural calendar shaped departure

Seasonality mattered. Flood-prone parts of north Bihar could lose crops or local employment during destructive inundation, while a failed monsoon or poor harvest reduced the demand for agricultural labour and household food stocks. Conversely, peak sowing, transplanting and harvesting seasons increased the value of returning home. This rhythm made temporary migration compatible with cultivation: departure could occur when village labour demand was low and return when family fields or local employers required workers. The railway network described in Chapter 62 reduced travel time but did not erase the agricultural calendar. Instead it could make repeated movement more feasible. Because district-level sources are better at recording catastrophic scarcity than ordinary annual circulation, routine seasonal migration is probably less visible in the archive than famine- or crisis-linked movement.

63.4 Land, debt and social hierarchy shaped who could migrate

Migration was not equally available or equally necessary to all. Households with little or insecure land were more exposed to wage fluctuations and food shortfalls, yet the poorest could also lack the money, contacts or physical security needed for a long journey. Better-connected cultivators might finance a temporary move and use earnings to strengthen a rural position. Caste and community networks could influence access to recruiters, lodging, credit and jobs, but they should not be treated as timeless occupational destinies. The same network could facilitate mobility in one generation and constrain it in another. Colonial observers often described labour supply through caste stereotypes; a social history must instead ask how property, debt, household composition, local wages, transport access and interpersonal connections interacted in particular places.

63.5 Long-distance wage mobility predated the railway

Railways accelerated labour migration, but they did not create it from nothing. River transport, roads, pilgrim routes, military service, artisanal travel and seasonal agricultural work had long moved people through the Gangetic world. Early colonial recruitment for indigo, public works and urban service also used pre-rail networks. The nineteenth-century transformation lay in scale, speed and regularity: steam navigation and railways connected recruiting districts to metropolitan and plantation labour markets more predictably, while employers developed specialised intermediaries to mobilise labour. Treating the railway as a single causal break would therefore repeat the same technological determinism rejected in Chapter 62. The more defensible claim is that new transport infrastructure widened the radius within which older practices of temporary mobility could be reorganised.

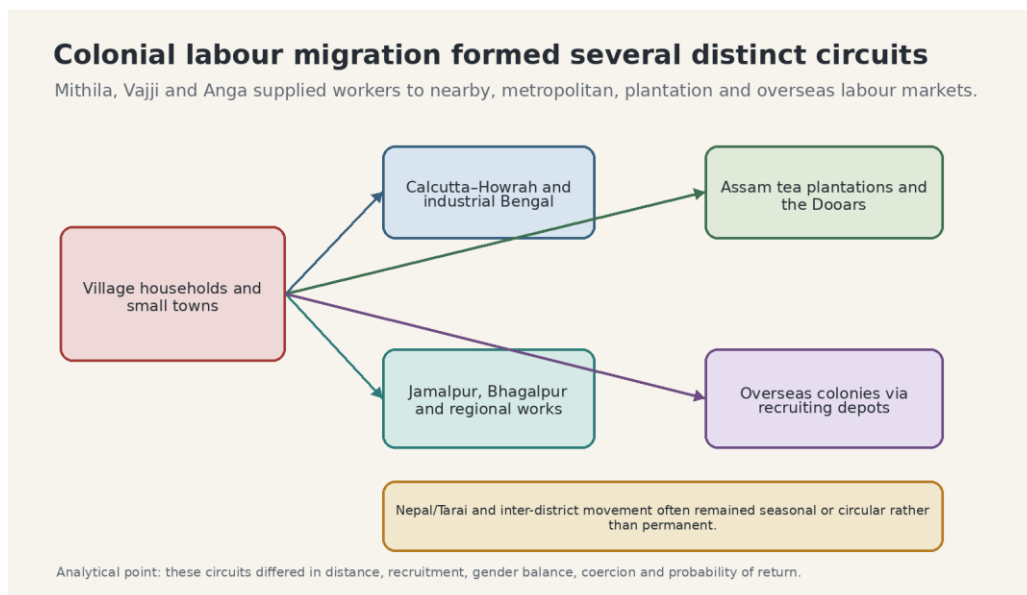


Figure 248 — Major labour-migration circuits from Mithila, Vajji and Anga

63.6 Railways lowered the friction of repeated movement

By the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, railways made some labour circuits cheaper, faster and more repeatable. A worker from Tirhut or Anga could reach major junctions, Calcutta-oriented lines or feeder routes with less dependence on long foot marches and river stages. Research on railways and migration in colonial India shows that transport expansion interacted with pre-existing labour demand and migration networks rather than operating in isolation. This matters for interpretation: a line opening did not

automatically produce migration from every village it touched, but once a destination had jobs and migrant contacts, the railway could strengthen chain migration and shorten return cycles. Stations consequently became social as well as commercial nodes—places where recruiters, experienced migrants, first-time travellers and news about wages converged.

63.7 Calcutta–Howrah was the largest metropolitan pole to the east

Calcutta and Howrah drew labour from a wide hinterland that included Bihar. The metropolis concentrated docks, construction, transport services, municipal work, workshops, domestic service and factory employment, while the adjoining industrial belt contained large jute mills and engineering establishments. Census accounts of Calcutta repeatedly noted the importance of migrants from Bihar and the United Provinces. For the study region, Muzaffarpur and other north-Bihar districts formed part of this wider supply zone, though the intensity of migration varied sharply by district and community. The metropolis should therefore be treated as a destination system rather than a single occupation: migrants might move between casual carrying, dock work, mill labour, services and construction according to contacts and demand.

63.8 Jute and factory labour depended on migrant supply

Industrial eastern India relied heavily on workers who were not born in the mill towns where they worked. Studies of factory labour supply show the importance of migrants from Bihar, the United Provinces, Chota Nagpur and Orissa in the making of the eastern industrial workforce. Recruitment did not usually operate through an impersonal labour exchange. Jobbers, sardars, foremen and experienced workers connected village origins to particular mills or departments. This helped employers obtain labour but also gave intermediaries influence over hiring, advances, discipline and accommodation. A migrant's employment prospects could therefore depend as much on a social connection as on the published wage. The resulting labour force remained mobile: workers could change employers, return home seasonally or follow a jobber elsewhere.

63.9 Urban labour included much more than factory work

Factory employment is disproportionately visible because mills generated records, commissions and labour histories. Yet a large share of migrant labour was casual or service work: portering, carting, railway loading, dock labour, building, municipal work, hawking, domestic service and small workshops. These occupations often had fluctuating demand and weak documentation. They also allowed migrants to combine jobs or enter the city without immediately joining a formal factory. This breadth helps explain why birthplace statistics cannot be translated directly into an industrial workforce. Metropolitan migration was a labour ecology in which workers shifted among tasks, employers and neighbourhoods, and where earnings depended on daily hiring, contacts and physical health as much as on a stable contract.

63.10 Jobbers and sardars converted social networks into labour-market institutions

Labour contractors and intermediaries were central to colonial migration. Tirthankar Roy's comparative work on sardars, jobbers and kanganies shows that employers repeatedly relied on brokers who could recruit, supervise and retain workers using relationships that the firm itself did not possess. In eastern India, the jobber or sardar might draw on village, kin or caste ties, provide an advance or information, and then exercise influence at the workplace. Such intermediation reduced employers' search costs but could create

dependency, deductions and favouritism. It also gave workers a channel through which to bargain or move collectively. Social networks were therefore neither purely protective nor purely coercive; they were labour-market institutions whose effects depended on the power of the intermediary and the worker's ability to exit.

63.11 Circular migrants often remained members of rural households

Many migrants did not establish an independent urban household. They retained claims, obligations and identities in the village, sent money or goods home, and returned for agricultural work, festivals, marriage negotiations or illness. This two-ended life explains why contemporary observers sometimes misread recurrent absence as instability or 'absenteeism'. From the household's perspective, repeated movement could be a deliberate allocation of labour across places. The city provided cash; the village provided land access, family care, food security and a place of return. Circularity also meant that urban labour markets could expand without equivalent permanent urbanisation. This pattern has deep historical significance for Bihar because later twentieth-century migration continued to rely on similar multi-local household arrangements, even though destinations changed.

63.12 Village connections lowered risk for new migrants

A first journey was risky because wages, lodging, employers and routes were uncertain. Earlier migrants could reduce that uncertainty by arranging a job, sharing a room, advancing travel money or explaining how to navigate stations and contractors. Once such links formed, migration could become self-reinforcing: one worker's departure created information for relatives and neighbours, and a destination acquired a recognisable origin cluster. Colonial sources sometimes described these clusters as evidence of caste preference, but chain migration offers a more dynamic explanation. Networks emerged through previous movement and could cross caste boundaries where employers or recruiters found it useful. They should be reconstructed historically rather than treated as fixed cultural traits.

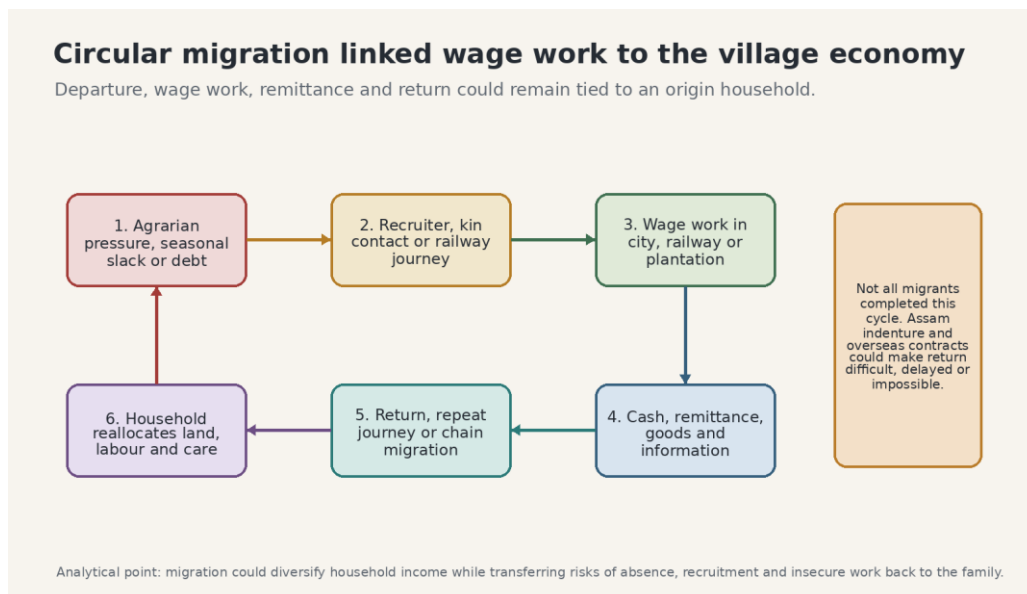


Figure 249 — Circular migration as a household economic cycle

63.13 Remittances transferred urban earnings into the agrarian economy

The economic meaning of migration cannot be measured only at the destination. Money and goods sent or carried home could pay rents and debts, smooth consumption after a crop loss, finance ceremonies,

purchase livestock or tools, and alter bargaining within the household. Formal postal remittance data capture only part of this flow because migrants also carried cash personally or entrusted it to acquaintances. Remittances could reduce vulnerability, but they also exposed families to irregular payment, theft, illness or sudden unemployment at the destination. A household that depended on a migrant wage therefore linked its welfare to distant labour-market conditions. Migration diversified income while simultaneously widening the geography of risk.

63.14 Absence redistributed work inside the household

When an adult man left seasonally, the labour he had performed did not disappear. Women, older people, children, hired workers or relatives might take on cultivation, livestock care, marketing and negotiations with landlords or creditors. In some households migration could strengthen women's day-to-day responsibility without necessarily increasing their formal control over property or migration decisions. The social cost of mobility was therefore partly borne by those who stayed. This is one reason to treat migration as a household process rather than an individual wage choice. The destination wage depended on unpaid and under-recorded work at the origin that maintained land, children and social obligations until the migrant returned.

63.15 Women's migration cannot be read from birthplace data alone

Colonial censuses recorded very high levels of female movement associated with marriage, so a woman enumerated outside her district of birth cannot automatically be classified as a labour migrant. At the same time, women did migrate for work, especially where employers recruited families or demanded female labour. Samita Sen has shown how debates over women's migration exposed conflicts among patriarchal household claims, recruiters, planters and the colonial state. For this region, a particularly revealing contemporary distinction treated migration from Darbhanga to Bhagalpur as relatively permanent because wives also moved. The example demonstrates both the importance of women's movement and the danger of using sex ratios or birthplace tables without understanding the social form of migration.

63.16 Assam tea created a distinct long-distance labour regime

Assam's tea industry expanded through imported migrant labour recruited from outside the province. Jayeeta Sharma and Rana P. Behal both emphasize that the plantation workforce was not simply a local labour market: migrant workers were recruited on contracts into an industry dominated by European planters and oriented toward export. The distance of the gardens from recruiting districts, the cost of transport and employers' desire to retain workers encouraged forms of labour control much stronger than those typical of casual urban employment. For migrants from Bihar and neighbouring regions, Assam therefore represented a qualitatively different circuit from seasonal work in Calcutta or nearby districts. Movement to the tea garden could involve a household relocation and a far higher barrier to return.

63.17 Professional recruiters and sardars competed to control plantation recruitment

Plantation recruitment passed through changing systems of contractors, *arkatis* and *sardars*. Abuses by professional recruiters produced repeated official enquiries and attempts at regulation. Planters and officials later promoted *sardari* recruitment as an alternative that supposedly relied on kin, village and community trust. Samita Sen's work shows that this contrast was partly ideological: *sardars* were presented as non-market intermediaries even though they also served plantation labour demand and could wield substantial power. The important historical point is not to label one system 'free' and the other 'coercive', but to examine who

supplied information, advances and transport, how consent was obtained, and whether the worker could realistically reverse the decision.

63.18 Tea plantations recruited families because women's labour mattered

A distinctive feature of Assam plantation migration was the importance of family recruitment. Tea cultivation required female as well as male labour, and planters had an interest in a settled workforce that could reproduce itself. This made women's recruitment economically significant and politically controversial. Family migration could give women paid work unavailable in many origin villages, but it also placed them within a tightly controlled plantation settlement. The presence of wives and children increased the probability that migration would become long-term or permanent, while also making the costs of desertion or return more complex. Plantation demography must therefore be understood through the combined history of labour demand, household formation and gender regulation.

63.19 The Assam system combined contract with coercive enforcement

The Assam labour regime was sustained by special legislation and by workplace practices that sharply constrained exit. Behal and Prabhu Mohapatra describe an indenture system in which economic and physical coercion were integral to plantation labour control, while the colonial state repeatedly accommodated planter interests. The 1906 Assam Labour Enquiry Committee documented recruitment practices, transport, conditions and worker complaints in unusually detailed form. Such records make Assam migration highly visible compared with ordinary seasonal labour, but that visibility should not be mistaken for representativeness. It reflects the fact that the state treated plantation labour as a special regulatory problem. The appropriate comparison is therefore one of labour regimes, not simply migrant numbers.

63.20 Regulation of women's recruitment exposed competing claims to consent

The Assam Labour and Emigration Act VI of 1901 re-established a tighter regulatory framework and placed special constraints on women's recruitment. The legal debate did not simply protect autonomous female choice. As Sen demonstrates, the state often deferred to household and marital claims, treating a husband's or family's authority as relevant to whether a woman could migrate. Thus a measure presented as protection could also restrict women's capacity to decide independently. The episode is central to labour history because it shows that colonial definitions of 'free migration' were gendered. Freedom of contract for employers, patriarchal authority in the household and women's own labour choices did not coincide.

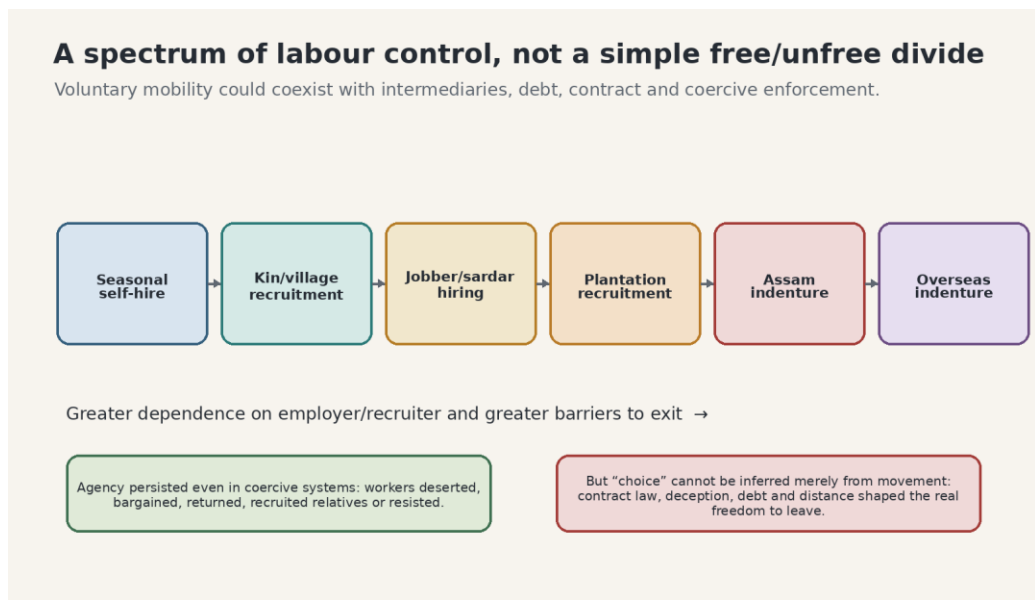


Figure 250 — Labour mobility along a spectrum of control

63.21 Proximity made the Dooars different from distant Assam

Plantation labour markets were not identical. Evidence collected in the Assam labour enquiries noted that some workers regarded the Dooars as more attractive because return was easier. This comparative preference reveals how distance and exit shaped labour choice. A worker might accept plantation wages while avoiding the stronger isolation associated with far eastern Assam. Transport improvements could therefore alter not only the volume of migration but the relative attractiveness of destinations. Where a migrant could return at will, household circularity remained possible; where travel, contract and employer control raised the cost of exit, migration more readily became a form of labour settlement.

63.22 Overseas indenture formed a separate and uneven stream

Bihar contributed labour to the nineteenth-century overseas indenture system that supplied Mauritius, British Guiana, Trinidad, Fiji and other colonies after the abolition of slavery. Yet participation was highly uneven across districts, and the study region should not be treated as if every locality supplied migrants at the same rate as the best-known recruiting zones of western Bihar and eastern Uttar Pradesh. Muzaffarpur and Darbhanga do appear in studies of overseas recruitment, but the evidence requires district- and period-specific checking. Overseas indenture is therefore included here as one edge of the migration system rather than as the dominant form of labour mobility in Mithila, Vajji and Anga. Its importance lies also in the recruiting institutions and Calcutta depots that connected inland Bihar to an imperial labour market.

63.23 Calcutta could be destination, transit point and recruiting gateway

The same transport corridor could serve several kinds of migrant. Calcutta was a workplace for industrial and casual labour, but it was also a port and administrative centre through which migrants could be processed for more distant destinations. This layered role complicates simple origin-destination maps. A person counted in Calcutta might be a settled resident, a temporary worker, a railway-connected traveller or someone awaiting onward recruitment. The city consequently linked internal and overseas labour markets. That connection also allowed recruiting practices, rumours and political criticism to circulate back into Bihar through returning workers, newspapers, reform associations and official enquiries.

63.24 Anga contained important receiving as well as sending labour centres

Labour migration was not only outward from the study region. Jamalpur's railway workshops, Bhagalpur's urban economy and other transport or administrative centres drew workers from surrounding countryside and from farther away. Chapter 62 showed how the railway created concentrated employment at Jamalpur; this chapter adds the labour-market implication. Industrial and railway nodes could convert a district into both a source and a destination of migrants. Such two-way movement is obscured when Bihar is narrated only as a region of out-migration. Anga's urban and railway centres demonstrate that labour mobility reorganised population within the region as well as linking it to Calcutta and Assam.

63.25 Inter-district migration linked Mithila, Vajji and Anga

Movement between neighbouring districts could be as socially significant as migration to a distant metropolis. Census and administrative discussions record flows across district boundaries created by marriage, cultivation, service and wage labour. The Darbhanga–Bhagalpur example discussed by Sen is especially useful because officials inferred a more permanent form of movement where wives accompanied men. Inter-district migration could follow river routes, railway connections, estates and labour demand without producing the documentary trail associated with plantations. It should therefore be considered part of the same regional labour history, while keeping labour migration distinct from marriage and ordinary residential mobility wherever the sources permit.

63.26 The Nepal–Tirhut borderland sustained mobility that censuses could misclassify

The India–Nepal frontier did not function as a sealed national border in the colonial period. Markets, pilgrimage, kinship, cultivation, livestock movement and seasonal labour crossed the Tarai and north-Bihar boundary. Because political jurisdictions and census procedures differed, short-distance cross-border movement can appear statistically less visible than migration to Calcutta or Assam. The borderland also offered alternative labour and land opportunities that did not necessarily require a formal recruiter. For the history of Mithila, this mobility should be treated as part of a connected regional economy rather than as an anomalous 'international' movement projected backward from later nation-state categories.

63.27 Colonial censuses measured migration imperfectly

Census migration tables are indispensable but conceptually limited. Birthplace, current residence and administrative district do not reveal why a person moved, how long the move lasted, whether the person had already returned several times, or whether the move was for marriage, service, cultivation or wage labour. District boundaries could also change, creating apparent movement without a comparable social journey. The most mobile seasonal workers might be missed depending on census timing. For this reason, census totals should be triangulated with district gazetteers, railway evidence, labour enquiries, factory records and qualitative accounts. The objective is not to discard enumeration, but to avoid turning an administrative snapshot into a complete biography of movement.

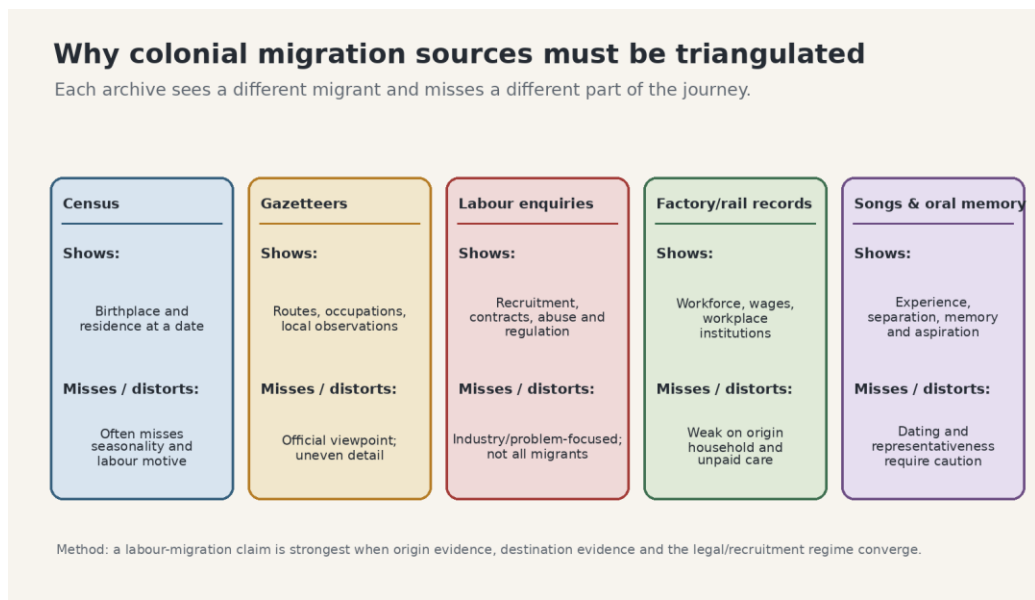


Figure 251 — Source triangulation for colonial labour migration

63.28 Community networks mattered without determining migration destinies

Employers and colonial ethnographers frequently described particular communities as naturally suited to certain kinds of labour. Such language could harden fluid recruitment patterns into stereotypes. A more historical approach sees community concentration at a workplace as potentially produced by chain migration: once an employer trusted a sardar or a group had established lodging and contacts, subsequent recruitment from the same locality became cheaper. This process could look like a fixed ethnic or caste preference even though it arose from institutional path dependence. The lesson parallels Chapter 59: administrative and employer categories are evidence about classification practices, not timeless descriptions of social capacity.

63.29 Migration circulated language, songs, politics and experience

Workers did not carry only labour power. Return migrants brought stories about wages, cities, employers, railways, political agitation and distant social worlds. Separation, hardship and longing entered vernacular song traditions; urban residence could expose migrants to newspapers, unions, religious associations and nationalist politics. These cultural effects are difficult to quantify but essential to the socio-cultural history of migration. A village with repeated migrants could become connected to Calcutta or Assam through correspondence, remittances, recruitment chains and shared memory even when most residents never travelled. Labour migration therefore altered the information geography of Mithila, Vajji and Anga as well as their household economies.

63.30 Conclusion: colonial mobility was an unequal system of household adaptation and labour control

Colonial labour migration from Mithila, Vajji and Anga cannot be reduced either to helpless displacement or to unrestricted market choice. Rural households used mobility to diversify income, preserve cultivation and respond to seasonal or ecological risk. Railways and recruiters expanded the range of possible destinations. Yet the power to move and the power to return were unequally distributed. Urban jobbers mediated hiring; plantation contracts and special law constrained exit; women's mobility was shaped by both

labour demand and patriarchal regulation; and overseas indenture carried migrants into a still more distant contractual world. The most accurate synthesis is therefore one of differentiated mobility: agency operated within structures of land inequality, household obligation, transport cost, recruitment intermediation and colonial labour discipline.

Table 63.1 — Evidence for colonial labour migration: strengths and limits

Source / evidence	What it can establish	Main interpretive caution
Census birthplace / residence tables	District-to-district and province-to-province stocks at a census date; sex composition; broad spatial patterns	Do not reveal labour motive, duration or repeated seasonal movement; marriage migration is especially important for women
District gazetteers and settlement reports	Local observations on occupations, communications, scarcity, recruiting districts and movement	Official and uneven; often describe conspicuous migration better than routine circulation
Assam Labour Enquiry and emigration records	Recruitment channels, contracts, transport, abuses, regulation and plantation labour conditions	Over-represent regulated plantation migration relative to ordinary wage mobility
Factory, railway and municipal records	Workforce demand, workshops, occupations, wages, hiring institutions and labour intermediaries	Usually weak on origin households, remittances and return journeys
Postal / remittance evidence	Movement of cash and communication between migrants and households	Formal channels capture only part of the transfers; hand-carried cash is invisible
Newspapers, petitions and association records	Public controversies over recruitment, labour rights, women's migration and colonial regulation	Elite and literate voices are disproportionately preserved
Songs, letters, memoirs and oral traditions	Separation, aspiration, exploitation, return, gendered experience and migrant memory	Dating, authorship and representativeness require careful source criticism
Destination-side district and industrial histories	Reception, neighbourhoods, labour-market clustering and chain migration	Can obscure the agrarian and household logic that produced departure

Chapter 64 — Women and Colonial Modernity

Colonial modernity altered women's lives in Mithila, Vajji and Anga through schools, law, print, medicine, labour markets, migration and nationalist politics, but the changes were profoundly unequal. Female literacy remained low even as girls' education became an explicit field of policy; statutes changed the legal treatment of widow remarriage, consent and child marriage without ensuring uniform social compliance; hospitals and trained female personnel expanded without displacing household medicine; and political mobilisation made women publicly visible while leaving the economic weight of unpaid labour poorly recorded. This chapter reconstructs those layered transformations while treating the silences of the colonial archive as part of the history itself.

64.1 Colonial modernity was uneven, layered and contested

Women in Mithila, Vajji and Anga encountered colonial modernity not as a single transition from an old social order to a new one, but through overlapping institutions that moved at different speeds. Schools could expand while female literacy remained very low; statutes could alter legal possibilities while marriage practice changed slowly; hospitals and lady doctors could appear without displacing household medicine or dais; and nationalist mobilisation could draw women into public action without dissolving domestic obligations. The concept of modernity is therefore useful only when broken into specific processes—education, print, law, medicine, labour markets, transport, associational life and political participation. Each process was filtered through locality, class, caste, religious community, household wealth and age. The history is consequently one of selective access and negotiated change rather than a uniform story of either emancipation or decline.

64.2 The archive itself produces a gendered field of visibility

Colonial records describe women most clearly when the state had an administrative reason to count or regulate them. Census tables record literacy, marital status and some occupations; education reports count pupils and schools; medical reports count patients and trained personnel; courts preserve disputes; labour enquiries become detailed when recruitment or coercion drew official concern. Yet unpaid agricultural work, household production, child care, food processing, informal credit, ritual knowledge and oral teaching often remain faintly recorded. This imbalance matters because a literal reading of official statistics can make economically active women appear 'dependent' and culturally productive women appear absent. The chapter therefore treats archival silence as a problem of source formation. Administrative evidence is indispensable, but it must be read alongside district observation, law, print, labour history, family practice and the indirect traces preserved in oral and material culture.

64.3 Household labour was an economic institution, not a private residue

The household was one of the principal sites through which the regional economy reproduced itself. Women processed grain, prepared food, managed fuel and water, cared for children and the sick, stored seed and household goods, maintained clothing, participated in livestock care and, in many social groups, worked directly in cultivation or post-harvest activity. Such work could be essential to the viability of small farms even when it generated no separately recorded wage. Colonial economic categories tended to privilege market employment and taxable production, thereby understating the labour required to maintain workers, migrants and cultivators. The expansion of railways, cash crops and wage migration did not make this household economy disappear. On the contrary, when men migrated or spent longer periods away, the

allocation of farm supervision, care and consumption management within the household could become still more important.

64.4 Women's agrarian work varied sharply by class, caste and locality

There was no single female agrarian role across the alluvial plains, flood-prone tracts, towns and eastern districts. Elite or prosperous households could treat seclusion from field labour as a marker of status, while poorer cultivators and labouring households could not withdraw women from productive work in the same way. Tasks were also segmented by local custom, crop, season and access to land. Census occupational returns cannot simply be used to rank communities by 'female participation' because enumerators often classified married women through the occupation of a male household head or treated subsistence tasks as domestic. The more defensible approach is to combine occupation tables with settlement reports, labour studies and the material requirements of cultivation. Female economic activity was structured by hierarchy, but it was not reducible to a single community rule.

64.5 Seclusion and purdah were social practices with unequal reach

Colonial observers often used purdah as a shorthand explanation for female illiteracy, limited medical access or restricted mobility. That language can obscure the fact that seclusion varied by wealth, locality, religion, status aspiration and life stage. For households able to sustain it, control over women's movement could become a sign of respectability. For labouring households whose survival required women's field, market or service work, comparable seclusion was materially difficult. Elite norms could nevertheless influence wider ideas of honour and marriage even when everyday practice differed. Historians should therefore avoid describing whole districts or communities as uniformly secluded. Purdah mattered both as lived constraint and as an administrative category through which officials explained problems of schooling and medicine, but its operation had to be negotiated in particular households.

64.6 Colonial institutions often entered through the language of respectable domesticity

Girls' education, female medical aid and reformist print frequently justified new institutions by promising to improve the household rather than to dissolve it. A literate girl might be presented as a better mother; female medical personnel as necessary because respectable women could not consult male doctors; domestic science as education suited to women's future roles. This language could make institutional innovation socially acceptable while also limiting the horizon of what counted as appropriate female knowledge. The tension is central to colonial modernity: education and professionalisation opened real capacities, yet they were often framed through revised domestic ideals. Women themselves could use the skills acquired under these terms for purposes that exceeded official or familial expectations—reading, correspondence, teaching, public work and political organisation.

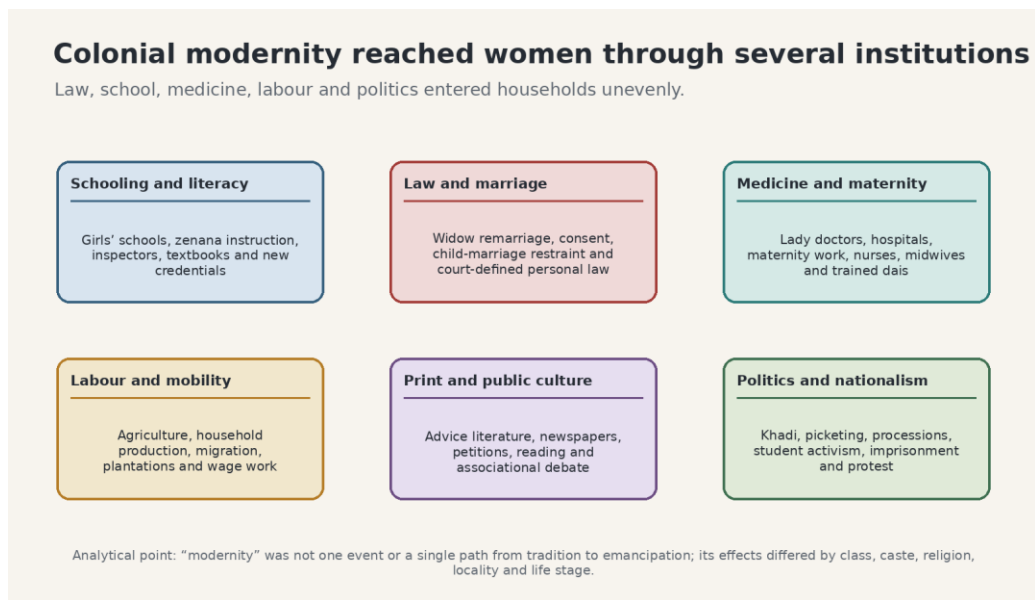


Figure 252 — Institutional domains through which colonial modernity affected women

64.7 Female education expanded from a very narrow base

The educational transformation described in Chapter 60 was strongly gendered. Government schools, mission initiatives, private teaching, zenana instruction and later girls' schools created more points of entry, but access remained much narrower for girls than for boys. Distance to school, the availability of female teachers, fears about mixed schooling, marriage age, household labour needs and the perceived usefulness of formal education all shaped attendance. Expansion therefore cannot be measured only by counting institutions. A district might gain schools while large rural areas remained beyond practical reach. The historical significance of the new system lies in the creation of a durable institutional claim that girls were educable subjects of public policy, even though implementation was slow and socially selective.

64.8 Zenana instruction shows how schooling adapted to seclusion

Where families resisted sending girls to public schools, zenana education and home-based instruction offered an intermediate form. Such arrangements reveal negotiation rather than a simple opposition between 'tradition' and 'modern education'. Instruction could be brought inside socially protected domestic space, often through female teachers or supervised arrangements. The model had obvious limitations: it was harder to standardise, inspect and expand than ordinary schooling, and it often reached households with sufficient resources or institutional contact. Yet its existence demonstrates that demand for literacy could grow before families accepted the spatial routines of a public classroom. In north Bihar and other parts of the province, official discussion of female education repeatedly treated the problem of access as inseparable from household norms governing respectable mobility.

64.9 The 1904–1915 education records show an increasingly specific female policy

Bihar State Archives preserves a revealing sequence of colonial education proceedings. A 1904 file concerned the expansion of female education through model primary and high schools for girls, zenana education, and the use of schoolmasters' wives as mistresses. In 1911, administrative responsibility for model girls' primary schools was shifted toward inspectresses of girls' schools. In 1914 officials discussed special

primary schools for Muhammadan girls, and in 1915 the province framed rules for advisory committees and a curriculum for girls' primary and middle schools. These records do not prove rapid mass enrolment. They show something different: female education had become a distinct administrative problem with specialised personnel, curricula and institutional devices rather than a marginal add-on to boys' schooling.

64.10 Girls' curricula could widen literacy while reproducing gender difference

Separate curricular planning often combined reading, writing and arithmetic with subjects defined as suitable preparation for domestic and maternal roles. This was not unique to Bihar and Orissa; it formed part of a wider colonial and reformist debate about what educated womanhood should mean. The result was double-sided. Girls gained access to literacy and formal schooling, but the educational system could simultaneously naturalise a gendered division of knowledge. The proper historical question is therefore not whether girls' curricula were simply progressive or conservative. It is how institutional schooling created new competencies and credentials while embedding them in a language of social respectability, domestic efficiency and differentiated futures for boys and girls.

64.11 Census literacy figures show growth and a persistent gulf

The censuses of 1921 and 1931 make the gender gap impossible to miss. The all-India 1931 review reported an increase in the absolute number of literate females in Bihar and Orissa between the two censuses, but the province still stood among the regions with a very large disparity between male and female literacy. Absolute totals must be used cautiously because the provincial unit was much larger than Mithila, Vajji and Anga and because definitions of literacy and age group matter. Even so, the broad conclusion is secure: late-colonial institutional growth did not produce anything approaching equal literacy. Urban access, household wealth and community-specific educational infrastructure mattered greatly, while the rural majority remained poorly served.

64.12 The 1919 Primary Education Act changed the language of state responsibility

The Bihar and Orissa Primary Education Act of 1919 provided a statutory framework for extending primary education through local authorities. Its significance for girls lies less in an assumption of immediate compulsory attendance than in the inclusion of both boys and girls within an expanding field of public educational responsibility. Local implementation depended on finance, notification, schools, teachers and parental cooperation. The law therefore widened the administrative horizon without erasing the constraints identified in provincial education reports. It also illustrates a recurring pattern in this chapter: legislation could create a new institutional possibility long before that possibility became an everyday reality for most women or girls.

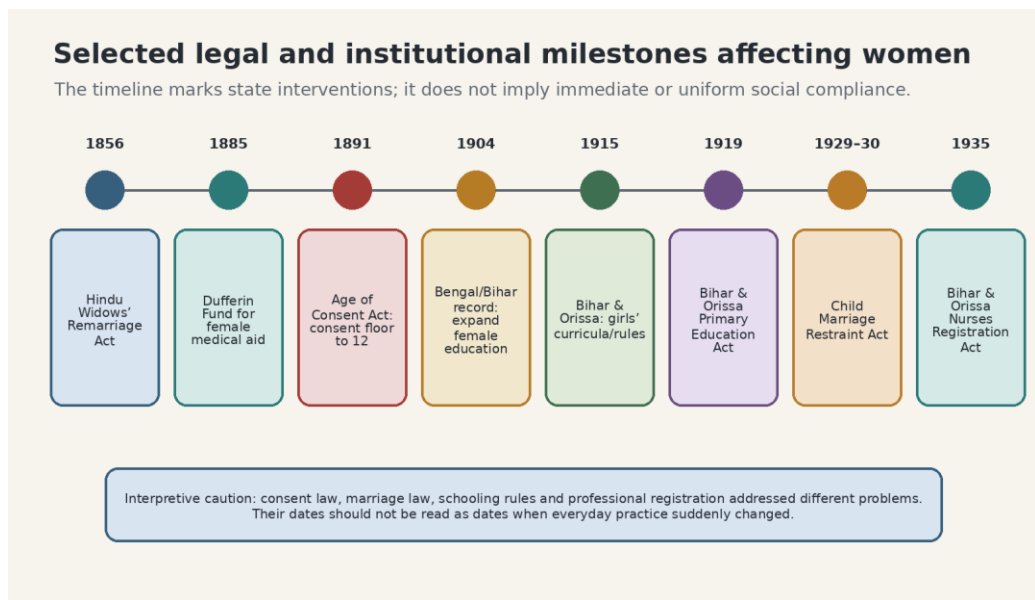


Figure 253 — Selected legal and institutional milestones affecting women, 1856–1935

64.13 Print created new female readerships without making reading universally public

The print culture examined in Chapter 61 intersected with women's lives through textbooks, religious literature, household manuals, reform tracts, newspapers and correspondence. Reading did not require a woman to become a public author. A literate household member could read aloud; printed texts could circulate through family and neighbourhood networks; women could participate in textual culture through listening, memorisation and dictated letters. Advice literature often addressed women as managers of domestic morality, hygiene and child-rearing, thereby turning the household into a field of reform. Such texts are evidence of prescriptive ideals rather than transparent descriptions of actual behaviour. Their importance lies in the growing assumption that domestic life itself could be reorganised through print.

64.14 Script change affected access but did not erase older literacy worlds

The increasing dominance of Devanagari in printed Maithili and Hindi changed the material conditions of reading for women as it did for men, but manuscript cultures did not vanish at the moment print expanded. Tirhuta/Mithilakshar continued in genealogical, ritual, scribal and symbolic contexts, while Devanagari benefited from growing school and printing infrastructure. The gendered history of this transition is difficult to quantify because women's informal and domestic literacy is poorly documented. It would be unsafe to assume that the script preferred by printed institutions exactly matched every household practice. The most defensible conclusion is that colonial schooling and print progressively privileged scripts that were cheaper and easier to reproduce within modern institutions, thereby reshaping the opportunities through which new readers—women included—encountered written Maithili and related vernaculars.

64.15 Consent law and marriage law addressed different legal questions

The Age of Consent Act of 1891 is frequently misdescribed as a law that raised the legal age of marriage. It did not. It amended criminal law so that sexual intercourse with a girl below twelve was treated as rape regardless of marital status, raising the relevant threshold from ten to twelve. Child marriage could therefore remain legally valid even while consummation below the consent threshold became punishable. This

distinction is essential because colonial debate often conflated marriage, puberty, sexual consent and bodily harm. For the regional history of women, the act is evidence of a new willingness by the colonial state to intervene in an intimate sphere, but it should not be read as proof that early marriage disappeared or that girls acquired general marital autonomy.

64.16 The 1856 widow-remarriage law altered legal capacity more than social practice

The Hindu Widows' Remarriage Act of 1856 removed legal obstacles to the remarriage of Hindu widows who chose it, but legislation did not make widow remarriage socially acceptable in every group. Regional practice varied substantially. Some communities permitted or normalised forms of remarriage; others attached severe stigma to it, especially among status-conscious upper groups. The act itself also linked remarriage to consequences for certain property interests in the deceased husband's estate, reminding us that reform legislation could both enable and condition a new legal choice. A history of colonial modernity should therefore distinguish legal validity from social feasibility. A widow's actual options depended on age, kin support, children, property, caste or community rules and local marriage markets as much as on the text of a statute.

64.17 The Child Marriage Restraint Act created a marriage-age rule but enforcement remained difficult

The Child Marriage Restraint Act of 1929, which came into force in 1930, marked a further shift by directly restraining marriages below prescribed ages—fourteen for girls and eighteen for boys under the original law. Its passage followed decades of debate in which Indian reformers, women's organisations and legislators played central roles. The act did not automatically end child marriage. Registration was incomplete, proof of age could be uncertain, and enforcement depended on complaints and local administrative capacity. Census discussion in the early 1930s itself showed how persistent early marriage remained in Bihar and Orissa. The law is therefore best understood as part of a changing normative and legal field rather than as a clean chronological boundary between 'child marriage' and 'modern marriage'.

64.18 Marriage age, widowhood and education were structurally connected

Schooling, marriage timing and widowhood cannot be analysed as separate social questions. Early marriage could shorten a girl's period of attendance or prevent entry into school altogether; widowhood at a young age could radically alter residence, labour and dependence; and the perceived need to protect marriageability could shape parental decisions about mobility and co-education. Conversely, the expansion of girls' schools and new educated occupations created constituencies for later marriage and continued study, at least among families able to make use of them. The interaction was recursive rather than linear. Education could influence marriage expectations, while marriage practices determined who remained in education long enough to benefit from it.

64.19 Colonial courts made family relations legible through legal categories

Property, maintenance, guardianship, marriage validity and inheritance entered colonial courts through codified statutes, case law and interpretations of personal law. Litigation created a rich archive, but it must be handled carefully. Court disputes disproportionately represent households with something worth contesting and people able to pursue legal remedies. Judicial categories can also make flexible social practices appear more fixed than they were outside litigation. For women, however, the courts could become real arenas in

which claims over maintenance, property or marital status were asserted. Colonial modernity thus expanded the documentary and procedural forms through which family conflict could be articulated, even while access to those procedures remained unequal.

64.20 Female medical aid responded partly to the politics of access

Colonial medical institutions repeatedly confronted the fact that many women—especially in households observing seclusion—were reluctant or unable to consult male doctors. The late nineteenth-century movement for female medical aid, associated nationally with the Dufferin Fund established in 1885, sought women doctors, hospitals, nurses and training facilities. This was at once a health intervention and a social accommodation: the institution adapted to gendered restrictions on contact in order to extend biomedical care. The resulting system was unevenly distributed and far more accessible in towns than in much of the countryside. Nevertheless, it created new professional roles for women and a new administrative category of 'female medical aid' that provincial governments increasingly reported and funded.

64.21 Lady doctors and women's hospitals did not solve rural access

By the late colonial period, Bihar government reports could point to lady doctors attached to major institutions, grants from the provincial Dufferin Fund committee, and maternity or child-welfare centres. Such evidence demonstrates institutional growth, not universal coverage. The distance between a village and a hospital, transport cost, seclusion, trust, the availability of female staff and the urgency of illness all influenced actual use. Rural women continued to depend heavily on household remedies, local practitioners and dais. The social history of medicine is therefore not a story in which scientific institutions simply replaced 'traditional' care. It is a history of plural options structured by geography, money, gender norms and the expanding regulatory power of the state.

64.22 Dais became objects of training, classification and regulation

Childbirth made the experienced dai one of the most important female health practitioners in everyday life, yet official medicine often described dais through a deficit model—untrained, unhygienic or in need of supervision. Training schemes and maternity programmes attempted to change practice without being able to dispense with the local birth attendant. The Bihar and Orissa Nurses Registration Act of 1935 formalised this regulatory trajectory by creating categories for nurses, health visitors, midwives, trained dais and dais, and by establishing registration and training mechanisms. The statute is significant because it shows the state translating an existing female occupation into a graded professional hierarchy. That process could improve training and accountability, but it also relocated authority from community recognition toward certificates, councils and official standards.

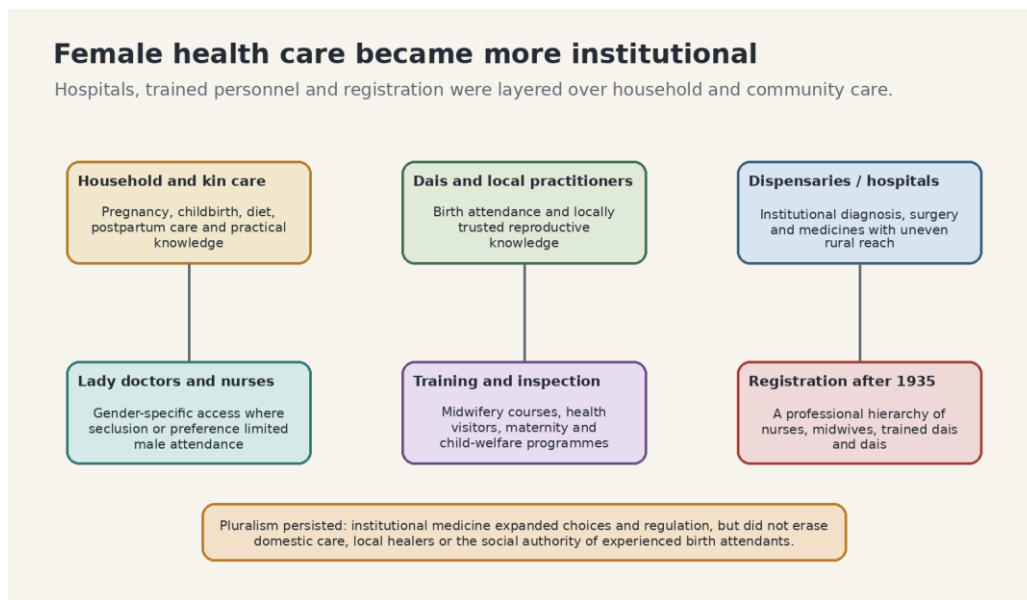


Figure 254 — Layered medicalisation of female health and childbirth

64.23 Maternal and child welfare made reproduction a field of public policy

Late-colonial maternity and child-welfare initiatives widened the medical gaze from treatment of acute illness to pregnancy, childbirth, infant care, nutrition and hygiene. Health visitors, midwifery centres and child-welfare centres embodied a new claim that maternal practices were matters of public administration. Such programmes could provide valuable care, but their language also placed women's bodies at the intersection of demographic concern, medical expertise and domestic reform. The effect was not merely medical. Ideas about cleanliness, breastfeeding, infant care and household management circulated through clinics, pamphlets and instruction, linking the welfare state in embryo to the reform of everyday domestic behaviour.

64.24 Migration redistributed women's labour inside and beyond the household

Chapter 63 showed that male-dominated circular migration could leave women with greater responsibility for cultivation, consumption management, debt relations, children and elderly dependants. This did not automatically translate into greater authority over land or cash, because remittances, property rights and senior kin could constrain decision-making. At the same time, women also migrated—as wives, domestic workers, agricultural labourers, plantation workers and members of recruited families. Colonial census categories complicate the picture because marriage migration and labour migration are often difficult to separate. The gendered history of mobility must therefore include both women who moved and women whose workload and responsibilities changed because others moved.

64.25 Wage labour did not exhaust women's economic activity

Factories, plantations, railway-connected markets and urban service work created visible forms of female wage labour, but most women in the region remained connected to agrarian and household economies. Paid employment should therefore not be treated as the sole marker of 'economic participation' or modernity. A woman producing food, managing livestock, processing crops, making household goods, assisting a family trade or maintaining a migrant household might contribute substantially to income and subsistence without appearing as an independent worker in official statistics. The conceptual error of equating wages with work

reproduces the bias of the colonial archive. A fuller economic history measures the organisation of labour, not only the existence of a pay packet.

64.26 Scarcity and famine had gendered household consequences

The famine and scarcity regimes discussed in Chapter 58 were experienced through household allocation. When grain prices rose or employment failed, women often managed the immediate arithmetic of food, fuel and care. Distress could force the sale of ornaments or household assets, increase dependence on credit, alter marriage arrangements, encourage migration or push women into more precarious forms of labour. Relief records rarely capture these intra-household negotiations in detail. Yet the gendered consequences of crisis are essential to understanding colonial welfare: a ration, wage or relief work test was received by a household whose members did not necessarily bear deprivation equally. The history of women under colonialism therefore belongs inside economic history, not in a separate social appendix.

64.27 Nationalism converted selected domestic practices into public politics

The Gandhian movements after 1919 created new routes through which women could participate without first entering conventional party office. Spinning, khadi, boycott, fundraising, picketing and processions linked household practices to anti-colonial mobilisation. This repertoire was powerful precisely because it revalued activities already associated with women while allowing them to acquire public meaning. Yet participation remained uneven. Families differed in their willingness to permit public activism, and women with education, organisational connections or politically engaged kin often had advantages. Nationalism could widen the legitimate sphere of female action while still praising sacrifice, domestic virtue and moral authority in distinctly gendered terms.

64.28 By 1942 women and girl students were visible political actors in the region

The Quit India upsurge makes the change in public visibility especially clear. Bihar political records and later histories describe women and girl students joining processions, picketing institutions, carrying flags and courting arrest. In Darbhanga, student processions included women; in Monghyr, girl students took part in demonstrations and flag-hoisting actions; elsewhere in the province women organised marches and public meetings. These episodes should not be used to imply that all women had entered politics. Their importance lies in the legitimacy of female public action having expanded far beyond the narrow social reform circles of the nineteenth century. Political participation became another arena in which colonial authority, family respectability and women's own claims to citizenship were negotiated.

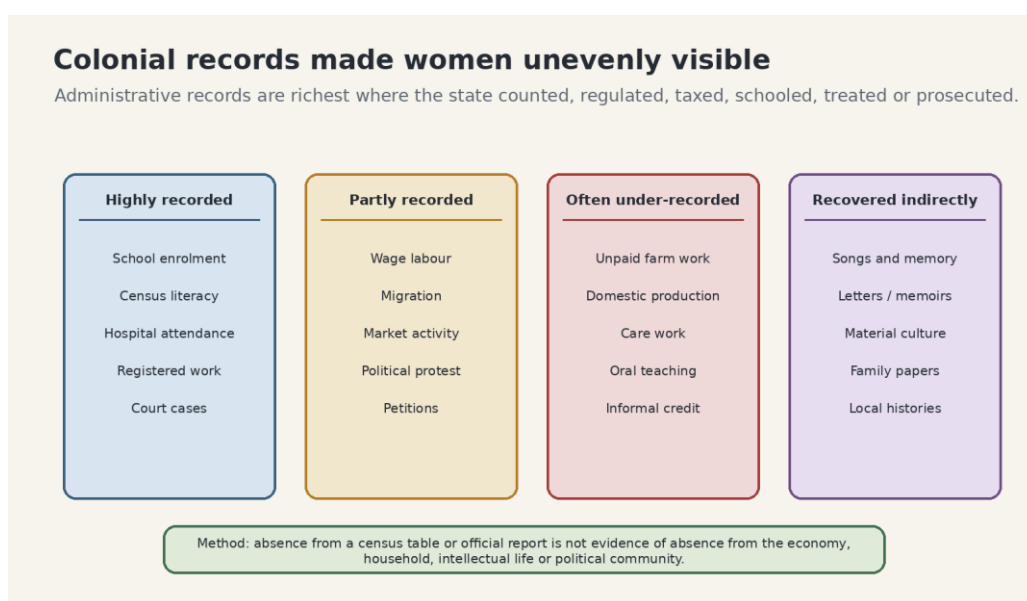


Figure 255 — Gendered visibility in the colonial archive

64.29 Nepal Mithila provides a necessary limit to the colonial category

The northern cultural region crossed a frontier into Nepal, which was not governed as a British colony. Educational, legal and medical changes in British India could nevertheless influence border markets, elite networks, print circulation, pilgrimage and migration. It would therefore be misleading either to treat Nepal Mithila as outside the story or to label its institutions 'colonial' in the same sense as Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Monghyr or Bhagalpur. The comparison is analytically useful because it separates direct colonial administration from wider regional modernity. Chapter 70 examines language, education and cultural institutions in Nepal on their own political terms; here the point is simply that the India–Nepal interaction zone transmitted ideas and people across unequal state regimes.

64.30 Conclusion: colonial modernity expanded options while reorganising constraints

For women in Mithila, Vajji and Anga, colonial modernity created new institutions, legal categories and public roles without producing a single trajectory of liberation. Girls' schooling expanded but remained deeply unequal; law altered the formal treatment of widow remarriage, consent and child marriage while social enforcement stayed uneven; medical institutions created new female professions but rural care remained plural; labour migration redistributed household work; print reformulated domestic ideals; and nationalism opened visible forms of public action. The central transformation was therefore not the disappearance of household, caste, community or patriarchy. It was the multiplication of arenas in which these structures could be negotiated—school, court, clinic, newspaper, labour market and political street. Women's history becomes clearest when those arenas are studied together and when the silences of the colonial archive are treated as evidence about power rather than as evidence of inactivity.

Table 64.1 — Evidence for women and colonial modernity: strengths and limits

Source / evidence	What it can establish	Main interpretive caution
Census reports	Literacy, marital status, age structure, selected occupations, migration and sex ratios	Administrative definitions may undercount unpaid work and cannot reveal household bargaining or

Source / evidence	What it can establish	Main interpretive caution
		motives
Education proceedings and school reports	Girls' schools, enrolment, curricula, inspectresses, teacher policy and institutional expansion	School presence does not equal attendance; official categories privilege formal instruction
Statutes, court cases and legal reports	Formal rules on widow remarriage, consent, marriage age, maintenance, guardianship and professional registration	Legal possibility or prohibition does not measure social acceptance, enforcement or accessibility
Medical and public-health reports	Hospitals, lady doctors, maternity centres, nurses, midwives, trained dais and patient institutions	Urban and institutional care is over-represented; household and local therapeutic practice is harder to see
District gazetteers and settlement records	Local labour, seclusion, schooling, markets, migration, agrarian conditions and public institutions	Official observation can generalise elite norms and freeze fluid social practice into district descriptions
Labour and migration enquiries	Women's wage work, plantation recruitment, family migration, coercion and labour regulation	Problem-focused enquiries over-represent regulated or controversial labour circuits
Newspapers, reform tracts and advice literature	Debates over education, domesticity, marriage, hygiene, nationalism and respectable womanhood	Prescriptive texts reveal ideals and controversies more directly than everyday compliance
Political files, memoirs, letters, songs and oral histories	Protest, public participation, household experience, memory, aspiration and under-recorded work	Survival, dating, authorship and representativeness require close source criticism

PART VIII

NEPAL MITHILA / MADHESH AS A SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC REGION

Chapters 65–73

Chapter 65 — The Historical India–Nepal Borderland Economy

The India–Nepal boundary across Mithila and the wider eastern Tarai/Madhesh did not create two self-contained economies. It cut across an older lowland–foothill–valley system in which cultivators, pastoralists, merchants, pilgrims, craftsmen, revenue farmers, carriers and state agents moved through linked markets and seasonal routes. From the late eighteenth century onward, Gorkha consolidation, Company expansion, the Anglo–Gorkha War, boundary demarcation, customs administration and railway construction altered the terms of movement without abolishing the economic continuities of the plains. This chapter therefore treats the border as an institution embedded in a corridor: politically real, fiscally consequential and increasingly surveyed, yet continually crossed by commodities, labour, credit, kinship and pilgrimage.

65.1 A borderland economy existed before a fixed international line

The historical economy joining north Bihar to the Nepal Tarai and the Himalayan interior was older than the modern boundary. River systems, alluvial plains, forest belts and foothill passes produced a north–south gradient of exchange. Grain, livestock, cloth and manufactured goods moved toward the hills; forest products and highland commodities moved toward low-country markets. Political jurisdictions changed repeatedly, but the commercial logic of short-haul movement from village to hat, hat to customs point, and customs point to a long-distance route remained durable. The term borderland is therefore more accurate than frontier only if it does not imply political vagueness. States claimed revenue and sovereignty here, yet their lines intersected economic fields whose scale was set by ecology, transport cost and social networks as much as by jurisdiction.

65.2 Mithila, Tarai and Madhesh are overlapping historical frames, not synonyms

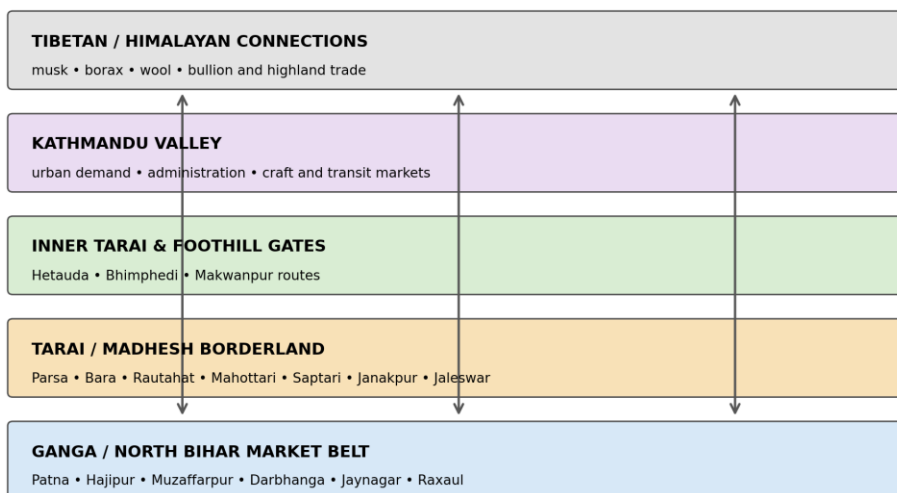
The lowlands north of the present Bihar boundary have been described by different names in different periods. Tarai often referred to the low, forested or malarial belt south of the hills; Madhesh could denote plains country more broadly; Mithila referred to a historical-cultural region whose linguistic and ritual connections crossed the later international boundary. Modern Madhesh Province is a contemporary federal unit and must not be projected backward as though it were the administrative container of eighteenth- or nineteenth-century evidence. In this chapter, place names such as Mahottari, Saptari, Rautahat, Bara and Parsa are used when sources permit, while Mithila/Madhesh is retained as the larger social-economic frame. This prevents both nationalist partition of a connected history and an opposite error in which political borders are treated as unreal.

65.3 The corridor linked the Ganga plain, Tarai markets, foothill gates and Kathmandu

By the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries, travelers described routes that joined the Company's low-country territory to the Tarai, Hetauda and Bhimphedi before the difficult ascent toward the Kathmandu Valley. Buchanan-Hamilton identified Patna as the principal low-country mart for the commerce he observed, while Kirkpatrick's earlier mission recorded the practical geography of passes, rivers and staging places. These accounts are selective and often written from diplomatic or military viewpoints, but their route descriptions reveal an economy made of linked zones rather than a single road. A merchant

could depend on river ferries, pack animals, forest halts, customs posts and hill porters within one journey. The corridor's economic geography therefore changed gradually as one transport layer was added to another.

Figure 256 — The India-Nepal borderland economy as connected zones



Schematic, not to scale. The political boundary mattered, but it cut across older ecological and commercial corridors.

Figure 256 — The India-Nepal borderland economy as connected zones

65.4 Patna's importance came from aggregation, finance and connection to wider markets

Patna's role in the Nepal trade was not simply that of the nearest large city. It was a major Gangetic commercial centre able to aggregate imported and local goods, connect merchants to eastern Indian and overseas commodity chains, and provide money, credit and specialized wares. Buchanan-Hamilton's account describes goods moving from the low country to Nepal and onward toward Tibet, while highland products descended toward Patna. The city therefore functioned as an entrepôt within a much larger network. For Mithila and the eastern Tarai this matters because intermediate towns did not need to rival Patna in size to participate in the same system. Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, border hats and later railheads acted as collection, redistribution and transfer points between local production and long-distance commerce.

65.5 Commodity flows were reciprocal but not symmetrical

The route carried different bundles in different directions. Buchanan-Hamilton lists low-country supplies such as buffaloes, goats, cotton cloth, European manufactures, metal wares, spices, betel products, tobacco and other consumer goods moving northward, while musk, borax, mineral and animal products, highland textiles or fibers and other commodities moved south. The exact mix varied by period, route and political condition. Reciprocity therefore did not imply an equal balance of trade or equal bargaining power. It meant that the border economy was sustained by complementary ecological zones. Plains agriculture, urban demand, hill transport and trans-Himalayan exchange were connected through successive markets, each taking a margin and each exposed to seasonal interruption.

65.6 Parsa-Makwanpur was a strategic commercial gate as well as a military route

The route through Parsa toward Hetauda and Makwanpur illustrates how commerce and strategy overlapped. Buchanan-Hamilton described segments that could carry laden cattle and, with improvement,

carts; he also noted forest conditions, unhealthy seasons and duties collected at staging points. Hetauda offered accommodation to merchants before the harder ascent through Bhimpheedi. The same terrain interested military observers because whoever controlled the passes controlled access toward Kathmandu. This dual character helps explain why road improvement could be politically sensitive. A road that lowered transport costs for trade also altered the strategic permeability of the state. Economic infrastructure in the borderland was therefore never purely economic.

65.7 Eastern Tarai districts formed a fiscal-commercial belt within Gorkha administration

For the eastern plains, Buchanan-Hamilton described Saptari and Mahottari alongside the wider set of lowland jurisdictions connected with Rautahat, Bara and Parsa. His evidence shows forts, market places, land-rent collection, sayar or market duties, and golas or customs houses. These were not accidental appendages to a hill kingdom. The Tarai generated grain, pasture, timber and customs income while also providing routes linking the low country to the hills. At the same time, the administrative map was unstable: jurisdictions could be rearranged, revenue farms reassigned and customs points moved. The economic region should therefore be reconstructed from functions—collection, storage, market exchange and transit—rather than assuming that every named district had fixed borders identical to later maps.

65.8 Janakpur was already a pilgrimage place embedded in a market landscape

Buchanan-Hamilton described Janakpur as a place of pilgrimage within the Saptari–Mahottari administrative zone and recorded ten market places in that broader district. The combination matters. Pilgrimage generated episodic concentrations of consumers, animals, food sellers, ritual suppliers and transport workers; nearby market and customs institutions connected those gatherings to everyday trade. Janakpur's later urban growth belongs to Chapter 66, but its earlier economic function cannot be reduced to religion alone. Sacred mobility was one of the recurring mechanisms through which commodities and information crossed the political boundary. Pilgrims did not travel outside the economy: they hired carriers, bought food, exchanged coin, purchased ritual goods and created seasonal demand.

65.9 Golas and hats were institutions that made movement taxable

The gola in early nineteenth-century accounts was at once a customs point, mart and administrative node. Buchanan-Hamilton observed that such customs houses could shift location and were increasingly placed near frontiers. This mobility is important: it shows a state trying to intercept flows whose routes were older and more flexible than the administrative grid. Hats performed a complementary role at shorter range, bringing cultivators, traders and consumers into periodic exchange. Together, hats and golas converted movement into assessable revenue. They also created opportunities for evasion, bargaining and monopoly. A boundary mattered economically when officials could force trade through a taxable point; where geography allowed many paths, enforcement remained incomplete.

65.10 Early nineteenth-century revenue data show customs were a major fiscal interest

Buchanan-Hamilton's c.1809 snapshot for Saptari and Mahottari reports land rent of 68,957 rupees, customs at golas of 29,833 rupees, market duties of 12,985 rupees, and additional receipts from pasture, timber cutting, timber boats and other dues. The figures must be treated as administrative claims from one documentary moment rather than a complete national account. Even so, they demonstrate that customs and

market taxation were not marginal beside agriculture. Trade, forest extraction and transport were embedded in the fiscal structure. The same source notes that frontier disputes interrupted commerce and threatened the profits of a customs farmer, directly linking territorial uncertainty to revenue risk.

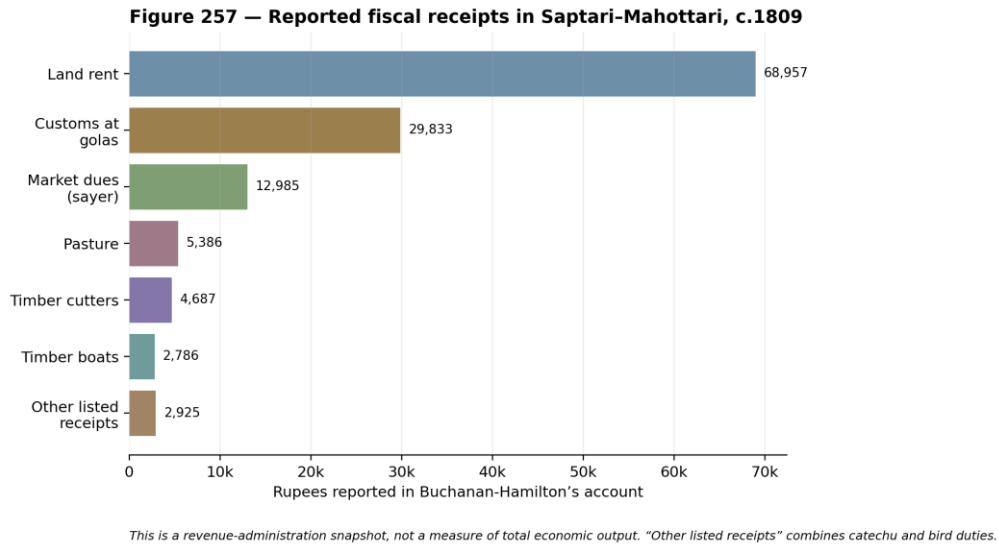


Figure 257 — Reported fiscal receipts in Saptari-Mahottari, c.1809

65.11 Revenue farming joined state authority to private risk-taking

Customs and market dues were often farmed. A contractor paid or promised the state a fixed amount and then attempted to recover more from actual collections. This arrangement gave the state predictable revenue while shifting collection risk to intermediaries, but it could encourage aggressive extraction or attempts to monopolize trade. Buchanan-Hamilton's description of a customs farmer affected by frontier disruption captures the political economy of the system: profit depended on keeping goods within taxable channels. Merchants, meanwhile, had incentives to negotiate, reroute or conceal consignments. The border economy thus involved a three-cornered relationship among state, revenue intermediary and mobile trader rather than a simple state-versus-smuggler opposition.

65.12 Forest, timber and pasture linked ecology directly to fiscal revenue

The Tarai's forests were not merely obstacles between plains and hills. They supplied timber, grazing, catechu, wildlife products and land that could eventually be reclaimed for cultivation. Hamilton's revenue categories include charges on timber cutters, boats carrying timber and buffalo pasture. The economic value of the forest therefore came from both extraction and controlled access. Yet forest density and malaria also raised transport and settlement costs. States could have reasons to preserve forest as a defensive belt, exploit it for revenue, or clear it for cultivation, and these objectives could conflict. Later railway and road construction would intensify extraction, but the fiscal significance of forest resources was already visible before mechanized transport.

65.13 The Sugauli settlement transformed the territorial grammar of the economy

The Anglo-Gorkha War of 1814–16 emerged partly from disputes over land, tribute and jurisdiction on a frontier where older political claims overlapped. The Sugauli Treaty attempted to replace that ambiguity with a more legible territorial settlement. For the eastern and central lowlands, this meant that economic

activities previously embedded in overlapping claims were increasingly divided by a surveyed international boundary. The line did not stop cultivation or trade, but it changed who could tax them and where disputes were adjudicated. Bernardo Michael's work is especially useful here: the making of a linear border was not simply the discovery of a natural divide; it was a state-making project imposed on older, discontinuous territorial practices.

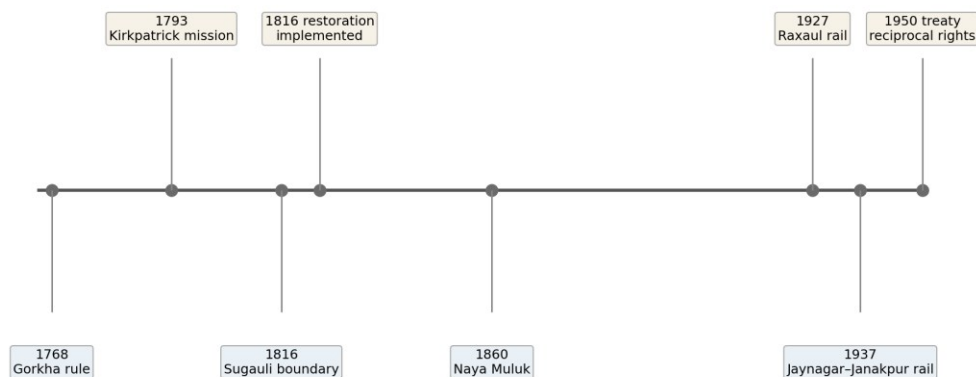
65.14 The 1816 restoration shows that the first treaty map did not settle the border once for all

The territorial settlement was modified within months. A supplementary arrangement restored much of the central and eastern Tarai between the Kosi and Rapti to Nepal, subject to boundary settlement and exceptions. This rapid revision warns against treating 1816 as a single instantaneous border event. Commissioners still had to identify lines on the ground, reconcile villages and property claims, and manage the mismatch between maps and lived agrarian space. For traders and cultivators, the practical question was not only which sovereign claimed a tract, but which collector appeared, which customs point operated and whether older access rights continued. Border-making was therefore a process with economic consequences, not a date alone.

65.15 The 1860 restoration belongs to the wider history of the border, though west of Mithila

After Nepal aided the British during the uprising of 1857, additional Tarai territory in the west was restored in 1860, later known as Naya Muluk. This lay outside the core Mithila–Madhesh focus of this chapter, yet it matters comparatively because it confirms that the Nepal–India boundary remained the product of treaty revision and political bargaining. It also contributed to later understandings of a long, traversable frontier between the two states. The eastern borderland should not be explained from western events, but the all-Nepal chronology helps distinguish local continuities from changes in the interstate framework.

Figure 258 — From negotiated frontier to transport-linked international boundary



Dates mark institutional turning points; everyday movement, cultivation and exchange did not reset suddenly at treaty dates.

Figure 258 — From negotiated frontier to transport-linked international boundary

65.16 Boundary surveys made territory more legible while leaving social geographies connected

Nineteenth-century demarcation introduced pillars, surveyed lines and a bureaucratic archive of boundary disputes. This strengthened the state's ability to distinguish jurisdictions, but it did not make the social geography on each side distinct. Villages remained tied by marriage, shared markets, religious institutions, grazing and labor movement. The historical lesson is not that the border was fictitious; it is that territorial legibility and social integration increased at the same time. A better surveyed line could coexist with dense crossing because the economy depended on controlled passage rather than absolute closure.

65.17 Rana rule sought revenue and security through the Tarai market system

Under Rana rule, the Tarai remained a major source of land, forest and customs revenue. The Government of Nepal's History of Nepal Customs emphasizes the long practice of establishing markets and trade points in the plains in order to channel commerce and strengthen state control. Revenue collection, security and commercial policy were intertwined. The state could encourage particular marts, restrict routes, farm duties or reserve resources. This did not create a perfectly centralized customs regime: local officials and contractors remained crucial, and the long border made enforcement uneven. Still, the persistence of customs institutions shows that the Tarai was central to the fiscal relationship between Nepal and British India.

65.18 Settlement and cultivation expanded through cross-border labor and tenancy networks

Agricultural expansion in the Tarai depended heavily on people able to clear land, manage wet cultivation and survive or seasonally avoid disease environments. Migration from adjoining districts of northern India became one component of this process, alongside long-established Tarai communities and movements from the hills. The resulting agrarian world was transborder in social composition even when land revenue was collected by the Nepal state. Chapter 67 examines tenure in detail; here the economic point is that labor supply and cultivation knowledge crossed the boundary more readily than sovereign rights to land. The border could define the treasury receiving rent without defining the origin of every cultivator or trader.

65.19 Malaria and seasonality were transport institutions as much as health conditions

The forested Tarai acquired a reputation for dangerous warm-season disease. Early travelers repeatedly tied route choice and timing to the unhealthy season, and some administrative or commercial movements concentrated in cooler months. Disease therefore structured transaction costs. It influenced when merchants travelled, where they halted, which populations could remain year-round and how rapidly roads or settlements expanded. The historical border economy was seasonal not simply because rivers rose and crops ripened, but because health risks changed the effective accessibility of the lowlands. Later malaria control would transform settlement patterns dramatically, but before that transformation disease itself acted as a gatekeeper.

65.20 Grain and livestock trade tied household subsistence to cross-border prices

Rice and other grains were among the most consequential commodities because they connected peasant production to urban, military and hill demand. Loaded cattle moving toward the foothills carried grain; livestock themselves were traded; shortages on one side could draw supplies from the other when routes and

policy permitted. The importance of this exchange should not be exaggerated into a single integrated price market for every locality. Transport costs, river conditions, customs and scarcity could produce large local differences. Yet the possibility of cross-border movement affected expectations, merchant storage and the geography of surplus. Border trade was therefore part of food security as well as commerce.

65.21 Salt, cloth, metal goods and consumer wares reveal the border's everyday economy

Prestige goods and trans-Himalayan commodities attract attention in travel accounts, but everyday imports were equally important. Salt, cotton cloth, iron and metal utensils, tobacco, spices and other household goods moved through the same commercial channels. Their circulation linked rural consumers to production systems far beyond the borderland. Tax policy could make these goods profitable targets for customs collection or evasion. The economic meaning of the border was often felt in the price of ordinary necessities rather than in diplomatic events. This is why customs history and household history cannot be separated.

65.22 Pilgrimage economies repeatedly converted mobility into exchange

Janakpur, Jaleswar and other sacred sites attracted travelers whose movement overlapped with fairs and markets. Pilgrimage generated demand for lodging, food, animals, ritual objects, cloth and transport. It also connected religious institutions across the boundary and helped sustain routes even when political relations fluctuated. The distinction between pilgrim and trader was not always absolute: a traveler could carry goods, remit money or combine devotion with commerce. Sacred geography thus supplied a durable infrastructure of movement that states could tax but rarely monopolize.

65.23 Railways on the Indian side concentrated older flows at new gateways

The spread of railways across Bihar did not invent India–Nepal trade, but it changed the cost and direction of access to it. Railheads made some border points more attractive because goods arriving from Calcutta, Patna or other markets could be transferred there to carts, pack animals or later cross-border rail. Raxaul and Jaynagar became increasingly important precisely because they connected the older border economy to a much larger railway network. This process created winners and losers among markets. A hat bypassed by a new transfer route could decline, while a station town could gain warehouses, brokers, carriers and customs activity.

65.24 The Raxaul–Amlekhganj railway made one corridor mechanically continuous

Nepal's first railway service opened between Raxaul and Amlekhganj in 1927. The line did not reach Kathmandu, but it transformed the southern segment of the capital's main lowland approach by replacing part of the cart and pack-animal journey with narrow-gauge rail. Amlekhganj then linked onward through road and hill transport. The significance of the railway was therefore nodal rather than national: it magnified Raxaul–Birgunj as a gateway, lowered costs on a specific corridor and increased the importance of customs and transshipment facilities at the boundary. Other routes continued to rely on traditional transport.

65.25 The Jaynagar–Janakpur–Bijalpura railway strengthened the Mithila–Madhesh corridor

A second cross-border railway began service in 1937 from Jaynagar in India through Janakpur toward Bijalpura, according to Nepal's Department of Railways. Its geography was different from the Raxaul route. Rather than primarily serving access toward Kathmandu, it tied the Janakpur region directly to the north Bihar railway system. For agricultural produce, passengers, pilgrims and market goods, the line reduced dependence on slower road transfer along this corridor. It also gave the international boundary a new transport form: people could cross it by train while remaining within a regional social world whose language, kinship and religious networks long predated the railway.

Figure 259 — Transport layers that reorganised the border economy, c.1800–1950

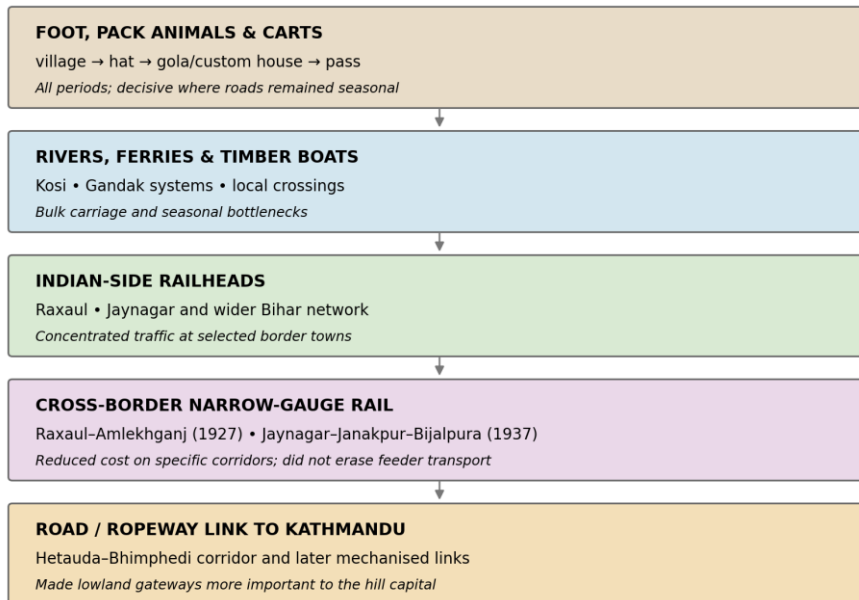


Figure 259 — Transport layers that reorganised the border economy, c.1800–1950

65.26 Transport modernisation layered new systems over old ones

Railway history can tempt a narrative of abrupt modernization, but the border economy remained intermodal. Trains delivered goods to points where carts, porters, pack animals, ferries and local roads completed the journey. Even a mechanically continuous line depended on feeder transport from villages and markets beyond the track. Rivers continued to interrupt roads; monsoon conditions continued to alter schedules; hill gradients still required transshipment. The economic effect of rail therefore came through recombination. It shortened some segments, enlarged market catchments and concentrated brokerage at transfer points while leaving much of the final movement labor-intensive.

65.27 Credit, brokerage and unauthorized trade shaped the cost of crossing

Long-distance trade required more than physical transport. Merchants needed working capital, price information, trustworthy carriers and agents who could settle accounts across jurisdictions. Surviving sources illuminate these arrangements unevenly, so it is safer to speak of merchant and brokerage networks than to assume a single standardized financial system. Regulation added another layer. Where duties, monopolies or prohibitions created a price difference across the line, traders had incentives to avoid official routes.

Unauthorized trade was therefore produced by regulation rather than by an absence of state. Officials responded by moving posts, licensing routes and policing commodities; merchants responded by negotiating, rerouting or concealing consignments. Border commerce oscillated between facilitation and control.

65.28 Labour mobility tied wages in one jurisdiction to households in another

Porters, railway workers, carters, agricultural laborers, craftsmen and petty traders crossed the border in search of work or in the course of transport. Some movement was seasonal and circular rather than permanent. These flows linked wages earned in one jurisdiction to consumption, debt repayment and landholding in another. Colonial and state records often captured such movement poorly because short-distance crossings could leave little documentary trace. The borderland economy was therefore more integrated at household level than official migration statistics may suggest. Later chapters will examine remittances and migration in their own right, but their historical roots belong to the transport and market system reconstructed here.

65.29 The 1950 treaty formalised reciprocal privileges within an older field of movement

The India–Nepal Treaty of Peace and Friendship of 31 July 1950 gave nationals of each country reciprocal privileges concerning residence, property, trade and commerce, movement and similar matters. It is misleading to say that this treaty created cross-border mobility from nothing. Markets, pilgrimage, labor movement and kinship had crossed the frontier for generations. The treaty instead supplied a new interstate framework after the end of British rule in India. It transformed the legal context while leaving the social geography of the borderland unusually permeable. Later trade and transit treaties would regulate goods more specifically, but 1950 remains a major institutional hinge between colonial and postcolonial border economies.

65.30 Conclusion: the border was an economic institution inside a larger regional system

From the late eighteenth century to 1950, the India–Nepal boundary across Mithila and Madhesh became more clearly demarcated, more fiscally organized and more closely tied to rail and road networks. Yet its economic history is not a transition from no border to border, or from isolation to connection. The region was already connected; state-making changed the terms on which connection operated. A sound history must therefore separate travel accounts, revenue records, treaties and transport archives while asking what crossed, by which route, under which tax rule and in which season. Patna and north Bihar markets, Tarai hats and golas, Janakpur pilgrimage, forest and agrarian resources, foothill gates and Kathmandu demand formed a layered system. The enduring pattern was managed permeability: states sought revenue and security from movement while households, merchants and pilgrims repeatedly found reasons to cross the line.

Table 65.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing the historical India–Nepal borderland economy

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Kirkpatrick and Buchanan-Hamilton	routes, market nodes, commodities, customs points, environmental constraints	outsider accounts; selective moments and uneven local knowledge
Revenue and customs records	land rent, sayer, customs farming, taxable forest and transport activities	records what states tried to tax, not the whole economy
Treaties and boundary records	formal sovereignty, cessions, restorations and legal jurisdiction	do not by themselves show everyday crossing or local enforcement

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Gazetteers and transport records	roads, railways, stations, ferries, market hierarchy and infrastructure	often privilege administratively visible routes and formal traffic
Land-tenure and economic histories	settlement, taxation, labour obligations and state fiscal strategy	later synthesis must be checked against period-specific evidence
Pilgrimage and local cultural evidence	recurring mobility, sacred markets and cross-border social ties	rarely quantifies volume, value or direction of trade

Chapter 66 — Janakpur as Religious, Commercial and Urban Centre

Janakpur's historical importance cannot be reduced either to a sacred narrative or to a modern municipal chronology. The documented city emerged through the interaction of pilgrimage, temple institutions, ponds and ritual routes, cross-border exchange with north Bihar, transport infrastructure, administrative concentration and later urban growth. This chapter therefore treats Janakpur as a living urban system whose religious, commercial and civic functions repeatedly reinforced one another. It also separates epic and devotional identifications from claims that can be dated through administrative, archaeological, railway, census and modern urban evidence.

66.1 The historical method begins by separating sacred identification from urban chronology

Janakpur is identified in Hindu tradition with Mithila, King Janaka and Sita, and that identification has shaped pilgrimage, patronage and local memory for centuries. Yet an urban history cannot simply convert an epic setting into a continuously documented city. The strongest method is to distinguish several evidentiary layers: literary and devotional geography; archaeological or architectural remains; early modern and nineteenth-century pilgrimage institutions; twentieth-century transport and municipal records; and contemporary demographic and planning evidence. The city's historical significance is not diminished by this distinction. On the contrary, it becomes possible to explain how sacred memory itself became a durable economic and spatial force.

66.2 Janakpur's sacred geography created a framework for later urban concentration

Temples, shrines, ritual paths and ponds formed a spatial grammar within which settlement and commerce could concentrate. A pilgrim did not visit an abstract "Janakpur"; movement occurred among particular shrines, bathing places, monastic establishments, markets and lodging points. Such repeated circulation gave specific sites economic value and encouraged services to cluster around them. The result was an urban form in which sacred geography and commercial geography overlapped without being identical. This is a central feature of Janakpur's development: ritual destinations generated movement, movement supported exchange, and exchange helped sustain the physical institutions through which sacred identity was reproduced.

66.3 Early modern traditions point to a renewed sacred centre, but exact dates require caution

Later archaeological and heritage accounts associate the re-establishment of Janakpur as a prominent sacred centre with ascetic figures and the recovery or installation of images connected with Sita worship. These traditions are important evidence for the making of the modern pilgrimage complex, but they do not provide a continuous municipal history from antiquity. They should be used to explain institutional memory and the growth of cultic centres, not to assign precise dates to every pond, shrine or neighbourhood. The same caution applies to statements that a given modern structure occupies the exact site of an epic event: such claims belong to living religious geography unless independently supported by archaeological evidence.

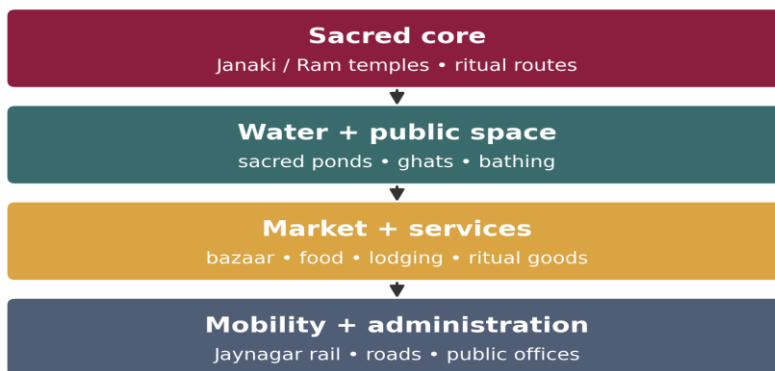
66.4 Religious institutions were also landholding and service institutions

Temples, monasteries, mahants and endowed establishments could organize more than worship. They required land, maintenance, food provisioning, ritual specialists, servants, pilgrims' accommodation and relations with rulers or donors. In a pilgrimage town these functions generated durable demand for grain, fuel, flowers, cloth, metalware, construction work and transport. Religious endowment thus had an economic multiplier effect even when surviving accounts do not permit precise estimates. The city's social history should consequently include priests and ascetics alongside cultivators, artisans, traders, carriers and household service workers whose livelihoods were linked to the sacred economy.

66.5 The urban core was produced by the interaction of sacred, water, market and mobility systems

Janakpur's city centre is best understood as a layered system rather than a single temple town. Monumental shrines supplied focal points; ponds and ghats supplied ritual and public space; bazaars supplied everyday and festival exchange; and roads and, later, railways connected these spaces to a much larger India–Nepal region. Administrative offices and educational institutions added new reasons to travel to the city. Each layer could expand or change without eliminating the others. This helps explain why Janakpur remained recognizably a pilgrimage centre while also becoming a district headquarters, market town and later a major urban centre of the Nepal Tarai.

Janakpur: four interacting urban layers



Urban centrality came from interaction among these layers, not from one institution alone.

Figure 260 — Janakpur as an interacting sacred, water, market and mobility system

66.6 The present Janaki Mandir is a monument of cross-border patronage, but its published construction dates conflict

The Janaki Mandir became the most visually dominant monument of modern Janakpur through patronage associated with the royal house of Tikamgarh in central India. Current public sources do not agree on a single construction date: some official tourism material gives an earlier nineteenth-century date, while other Nepal government and tourism material places completion around 1910, and archaeological descriptions often use the early twentieth century. The safest historical conclusion is therefore that the present monumental temple belongs to the late nineteenth–early twentieth-century phase of Janakpur's sacred expansion. The disagreement itself is worth recording because uncritical repetition of a single date creates false precision.

66.7 Architecture converted devotional patronage into an urban landmark

Whatever the exact construction chronology, the Janaki Mandir's scale and hybrid architectural vocabulary made it a civic as well as sacred landmark. UNESCO's Tentative List description emphasizes a distinctive mixture of classical and neo-classical forms and notes the continuing pilgrimage function of the complex. Monumentality changes urban behaviour: it organizes approach routes, concentrates vendors and lodging, attracts donations and ceremonial investment, and supplies a visual identity reproduced in photographs, guidebooks, municipal branding and regional memory. In Janakpur, temple architecture thus participated directly in the making of urban centrality.

66.8 The history of the Ram temple complex must also be freed from repeated chronological errors

Popular accounts often describe the Ram temple as an older component of Janakpur's sacred core, but some widely circulated attributions combine dates and patrons that do not fit securely together. Because such claims are frequently copied from secondary tourism descriptions, this chapter does not use them as fixed chronological anchors. What can be stated more securely is that the Ram and Janaki complexes became mutually reinforcing sacred nodes within the modern city, especially during festivals associated with Rama and Sita. This distinction between institutional importance and uncertain construction chronology prevents heritage repetition from being mistaken for archival proof.

66.9 Ponds are not decorative survivals; they are religious and urban infrastructure

Janakpur's ponds—among them Ganga Sagar and Dhanush Sagar—serve ritual, social, hydrological and spatial functions. Pilgrims bathe at sacred waters, festival crowds assemble around ghats, neighbourhoods orient themselves to water bodies, and ponds can absorb runoff and moderate local heat. Modern studies of Janakpur show why the conventional label “city of ponds” has practical historical meaning: the water network is embedded in the urban fabric. At the same time, claims about an exact ancient total such as seventy-two ponds belong to heritage tradition unless tied to a dated inventory. Historical analysis should distinguish sacred enumeration from mapped modern counts.

66.10 The city's ritual calendar repeatedly transformed sacred space into market space

Vivah Panchami, Ram Navami, Janaki Navami, Chhath and other observances produce seasonal surges in movement. Pilgrims need transport, food, water, lodging, ritual materials and local guidance; processions require streets, crowd management and temporary commercial space; and temple institutions mobilize donations and hospitality. A festival economy is therefore not a secondary effect added to religion from outside. It is one of the mechanisms through which a pilgrimage centre sustains an urban service sector. The scale varies by festival and year, so isolated visitor estimates should not be treated as timeless averages.

Milestones in the making of modern Janakpur



Figure 261 — Selected documented milestones in the making of modern Janakpur

66.11 Vivah Panchami makes the India–Nepal cultural relationship economically visible

The ceremonial memory of the marriage of Sita and Rama creates a particularly strong cross-border pilgrimage connection. Visitors from India and Nepal converge on Janakpur, linking religious sentiment to buses, trains, hotels, food stalls, flower sellers, cloth merchants and ritual specialists. The festival's importance also demonstrates why an international boundary does not divide the cultural region into sealed economies. Instead, the border organizes routes and formalities through which an older Mithila-wide sacred geography continues to operate. The resulting demand is episodic, but its expectation influences year-round investment in accommodation, transport and retail.

66.12 Pilgrimage demand supported a dense ecology of small urban livelihoods

The sacred economy depended heavily on small-scale and household enterprise. Tea stalls, sweet shops, flower and garland sellers, vendors of images and ritual objects, rickshaw and cart operators, porters, guides, cooks, washermen, barbers and lodging houses could all derive income from pilgrim traffic. These activities are often poorly documented because official records favour registered firms, taxes and large institutions. Yet they are essential for explaining why religious centrality could support urbanisation even before large industry. Janakpur's commercial history therefore requires attention to petty trade and service work as well as to formal bazaars.

66.13 Bazaars connected pilgrimage consumption to the agrarian hinterland

Festival and everyday demand had to be supplied from surrounding villages and cross-border markets. Grain, vegetables, milk, ghee, fuel, livestock products, cloth and craft goods entered the city through rural traders and transporters. Janakpur consequently functioned as a place where the agrarian economy of Dhanusha and adjoining districts met consumers whose numbers fluctuated with administrative schedules, market days and festivals. This relationship also worked in reverse: urban demand influenced production choices and offered rural households opportunities for vending, transport and wage work. The city and countryside were economically interdependent rather than separate sectors.

66.14 North Bihar remained part of Janakpur's commercial catchment

The proximity of the international boundary and the cultural continuity of Mithila made north Bihar a natural component of Janakpur's market world. Jaynagar and other Indian-side nodes connected the city to wider railway and wholesale systems, while pilgrims and traders crossed in both directions. Price differences, currency, customs rules and transport costs could change the composition of trade, but they did not erase the underlying corridor. This is why the urban history of Janakpur cannot be written solely within Nepal's administrative boundaries: the commercial hinterland was transborder even when political jurisdiction was not.

66.15 The 1937 railway altered the scale and regularity of Janakpur's connections

Nepal's Department of Railways dates the opening of the Jaynagar–Janakpur–Bijalpura service to 1937. The line joined Janakpur directly to an Indian railhead and therefore reduced the friction of moving people and goods across part of the borderland corridor. Its economic effect was not simply faster travel. Rail service concentrated activity around stations, made festival journeys easier for larger numbers, created railway employment, linked local markets to broader commodity circuits and changed the relative importance of routes. The railway supplemented rather than instantly displaced carts, walking, road vehicles and other local transport.

66.16 Railway history also reveals the shift from resource extraction to passenger and pilgrimage mobility

Accounts of the Janakpur railway emphasize its association with timber and freight in its early phase, followed by an increasingly important passenger role. That transition illustrates a broader urban process: infrastructure built for one economic purpose can be appropriated by households, pilgrims and petty traders for another. Once regular passenger movement became established, the railway helped make Janakpur more accessible as a religious and commercial centre. This effect was strongest because the line crossed an international boundary but operated within a region of dense linguistic, kinship and devotional connections.

66.17 Road transport widened the city's hinterland beyond the railway corridor

Railways privilege fixed stations; roads distribute access more diffusely. As road and bus networks expanded, Janakpur's market and administrative functions reached settlements not located on the narrow-gauge line. Road transport also connected the city to the East–West Highway system and to other Tarai towns, while local routes linked villages to schools, hospitals, courts and wholesale markets. The combined rail-road system reinforced Janakpur's centrality: the railway offered a powerful India-facing axis, while roads thickened connections within Nepal. Urban growth therefore came from intermodality rather than from a single technological substitution.

66.18 Administrative concentration created non-pilgrimage demand for urban services

Janakpur's role as the headquarters of Dhanusha district and as a centre of government offices brought a different kind of circulation. Petitioners, litigants, students, teachers, officials and people seeking health or documentation services travelled for reasons that did not depend on the festival calendar. This produced more regular demand for stationery, rented rooms, food, transport and professional services. Administrative centrality thus reduced the seasonality of an economy otherwise strongly influenced by pilgrimage. It also

encouraged the growth of educated occupations and institutions whose public language and social networks linked Janakpur to wider debates about Madhesh, Maithili and citizenship.

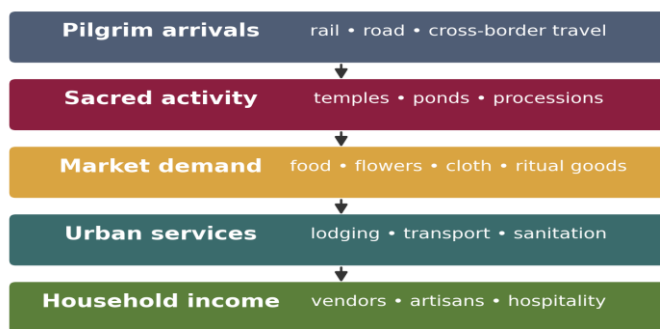
66.19 Janakpur was already recognized as an urban place in the 1952/54 census era

National urbanisation studies list Janakpur among the ten urban places included in Nepal's 1952/54 population census. This is an important administrative marker because it shows that the city's urban status was not a recent by-product of federal restructuring. The classification reflected a combination of population, bazaar functions, services and administrative importance. Later census definitions of "sahar" explicitly referred to institutions such as schools, judicial and administrative offices, markets, communications and industry. Such criteria help explain how Janakpur's sacred-commercial centre was translated into the categories of a modern urban state.

66.20 Municipalisation formalised responsibilities that pilgrimage growth had already made visible

A government-era study of solid-waste management states that Janakpur Municipality was established in 1962. Municipal status mattered because dense settlement and festival peaks generated collective problems that temple or bazaar institutions could not solve alone: roads, drainage, waste collection, public health, market regulation and land-use disputes required civic administration. The municipality did not create the city, but it institutionalised a new layer of urban governance. The later expansion of municipal boundaries means that population totals across decades are not automatically comparable; administrative reclassification can produce apparent growth in addition to demographic growth.

How pilgrimage becomes an urban economy



Income can reinforce pilgrimage infrastructure; crowds also raise conservation and municipal-service costs.

Figure 262 — The pilgrimage-to-urban-economy circulation

66.21 Post-1950 urban growth strengthened education, health and professional services

As Janakpur's administrative role expanded, schools, colleges, clinics, hospitals, banks, legal services and other institutions increased the city's attraction for the surrounding region. These services generated commuter and residential growth and supported a more diversified middle class. Education also reinforced Janakpur's position in Maithili intellectual life by concentrating teachers, students, writers and organisations within an accessible regional centre. The resulting city was neither merely "traditional" nor simply "modern":

sacred institutions, vernacular cultural production and professional services developed in the same urban space and often served overlapping populations.

66.22 Language and print helped turn urban centrality into regional cultural leadership

Janakpur's significance within Nepal Mithila has been strengthened by Maithili publishing, literary associations, education, broadcasting and public events. A city becomes a cultural centre not only because writers live there but because printers, schools, meeting halls, bookshops, journalists and audiences create recurring circuits of production and reception. These institutions also link the Nepal side of Mithila to Darbhanga, Madhubani and other north Bihar centres. The urban public sphere therefore extends beyond municipal boundaries, just as the pilgrimage economy does.

66.23 Women participated in the city's economy through both visible and under-recorded work

Religious tourism and urban service economies created employment and enterprise for women in food preparation, lodging, petty retail, craft production, domestic service and later formal occupations. Much of this labour is difficult to recover from older administrative sources because household work and informal vending were rarely enumerated with precision. Modern Janakpur's cultural economy, including Mithila painting and related craft initiatives, made some forms of women's production more publicly visible. A gendered urban history must therefore combine formal employment evidence with attention to household and artisanal economies.

66.24 Mithila painting became part of Janakpur's urban cultural economy without originating as a city art

The commercial visibility of Mithila painting in Janakpur illustrates how a rural and domestic visual tradition can enter urban institutions, tourism and markets. Workshops, development initiatives, galleries, shops and visitor demand created new channels through which painted forms circulated as paper works, souvenirs and commissioned objects. The city did not invent the tradition, and marketable "Janakpur art" should not be treated as identical with all Mithila painting. Nevertheless, Janakpur became an important node where cultural production, women's livelihoods, tourism and regional identity interacted.

66.25 Religious tourism produces both income and urban-management costs

Modern research on pilgrimage tourism in Janakpur identifies economic benefits alongside pressure on sanitation, accommodation, roads, traffic management and the physical environment. This dual effect is historically important. Large temporary populations create demand that supports commerce, but they also increase waste, water use and congestion beyond ordinary daily levels. The city therefore bears costs in order to sustain the very mobility from which parts of its economy benefit. Evaluating pilgrimage only by visitor numbers or spending misses this municipal dimension.

66.26 Heritage status turns conservation into an economic and governance question

Nepal placed the Ram Janaki Temple on UNESCO's World Heritage Tentative List in 2008. Tentative-list status does not make the site a World Heritage property, but it increases the importance of documentation, conservation planning and stakeholder coordination. UNESCO's more recent management

work in Janakpurdham explicitly frames the challenge as balancing heritage conservation, tourism and community needs. This is precisely the urban-history problem visible across the twentieth and twenty-first centuries: living sacred sites must accommodate worship, commerce, traffic and municipal infrastructure without losing the material and spatial qualities that attract pilgrims in the first place.

66.27 Pond loss shows the environmental cost of unplanned urban concentration

Recent mapping demonstrates a striking redistribution of Janakpur's ponds. One study records fifty-two ponds in the urban core in 1992 but only twenty-eight in 2022, while pond numbers increased in the rural fringe, partly through commercial fishery. The aggregate citywide count therefore conceals heritage loss at the centre. Filling or encroaching on old ponds removes not only ritual places but also drainage, groundwater-recharge, cooling and public-space functions. Urban history here becomes environmental history: the infrastructures that once helped organise settlement are vulnerable to the land values generated by the city's own success.

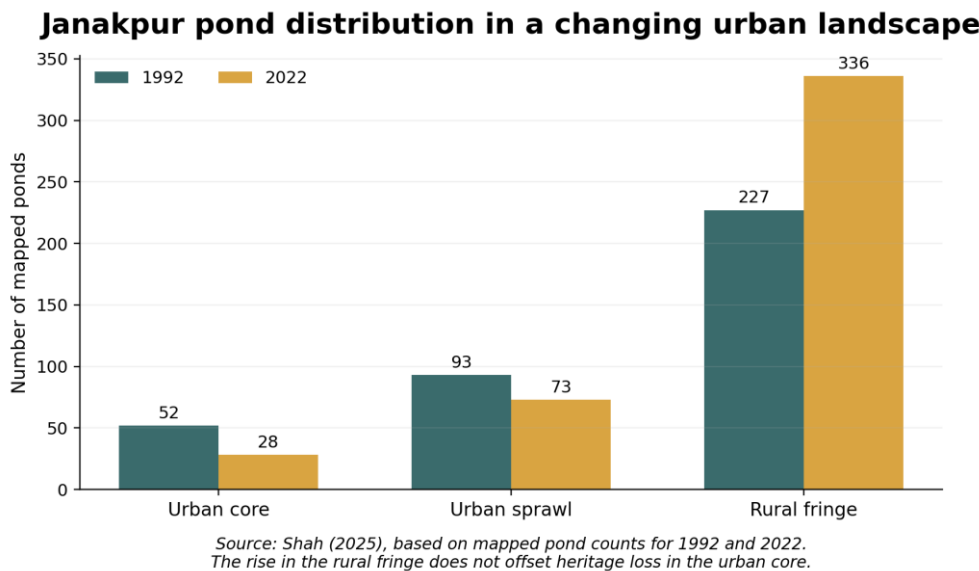


Figure 263 — Pond counts across Janakpur's urban core, sprawl and rural fringe, 1992 and 2022

66.28 The pond-city problem also exposes conflicts among religious, municipal and private claims

Ponds can fall under different ownership, guthi, community or institutional arrangements, and the land around them is valuable. Urban expansion therefore creates disputes over encroachment, road widening, buildings, wastewater and rehabilitation. Modern planning studies describe a tension between physical beautification and the ecological functioning of water systems. A paved ghat may improve access for ritual use while a blocked inlet or polluted catchment undermines the pond as hydrological infrastructure. Conservation requires treating the water body, its drainage and its social users as one system rather than restoring only its visible edge.

66.29 Population growth must be interpreted with changing municipal boundaries in mind

National Statistics Office analysis reports Janakpurdham at 194,556 people in the 2021 census, while earlier municipal sources give lower totals for differently bounded units. Such figures demonstrate substantial urban scale, but they should not be read as a simple continuous series unless boundary changes are standardised. Expansion from municipality to sub-metropolitan jurisdiction can add previously rural wards as well as capture genuine demographic growth. For historical comparison, the safest approach is to use population numbers alongside maps of the relevant administrative area and indicators of built-up expansion, service concentration and land-use change.

66.30 Conclusion: Janakpur's religious, commercial and urban histories are mutually constitutive

Janakpurdham's role as the capital of Madhesh Province gives the city additional administrative, political and symbolic weight. This function has increased demand for offices, housing, transport, media and public space, but it rests on an older geography of pilgrimage, markets, education and cross-border movement. Provincial capital status should therefore be interpreted as a new layer of centrality rather than as the origin of the city's regional importance. The long history explains why Janakpur could become a political centre: it already possessed cultural recognition, transport links and institutional density across a broad Nepal–India hinterland. Janakpur became a major city because sacred significance, economic exchange and civic institutions repeatedly reinforced one another. Pilgrimage concentrated people; ponds and temples structured public space; bazaars converted mobility into livelihoods; rail and road links enlarged the catchment; administrative and educational institutions reduced seasonality; and municipal government attempted to manage the resulting density. The same process generated new problems of congestion, waste, heritage conservation and pond loss. Janakpur is therefore best understood neither as an ancient city unchanged through time nor as a modern town that happens to contain temples. It is a historically layered urban centre in which religion, commerce, environment and governance have continuously remade one another.

Table 66.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing Janakpur as religious, commercial and urban centre

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Pilgrimage and heritage traditions	sacred geography, ritual circuits, institutional memory, living significance	cannot by themselves date an urban settlement or prove exact epic-site identification
Temple and archaeological documentation	monuments, architectural phases, heritage status, potential archaeological areas	published construction dates can conflict; many areas remain unexcavated
Railway and transport records	dated connectivity, station corridors, movement of passengers and goods	do not measure informal walking, cart, bus or household-scale mobility
Census and municipal records	urban classification, population, administrative boundaries, service responsibilities	boundary changes can make raw population series non-comparable
Tourism and market studies	visitor behaviour, expenditure, livelihoods, seasonal pressure on services	usually recent and sample-based; cannot be projected backward mechanically
Pond and land-use mapping	environmental services, urban expansion, mapped loss or redistribution of water bodies	modern remote-sensing periods do not establish ancient pond numbers or origins

Chapter 67 — Land, Tenancy and Agrarian Society in the Nepal Tarai

Agrarian society in the Nepal Tarai was created through the interaction of ecology, conquest, revenue policy, land reclamation, migration, tenancy and local intermediaries. The region cannot be described accurately by importing the Permanent Settlement model from British India or by treating terms such as raikar, birta, jagir and jimidari as interchangeable forms of landlord ownership. This chapter reconstructs the layered land regime of the Tarai, with particular attention to Saptari, Siraha, Dhanusha–Mahottari and the wider eastern plains, and follows its transformation from late-eighteenth-century revenue experiments through the land-reform legislation of the 1950s and 1960s.

67.1 Land history requires separating tenure, taxation and cultivation

A single field could carry several distinct relationships at once: the state might claim land revenue; a grantee might receive that revenue under birta or another assignment; a village intermediary might collect dues; and an actual cultivator might hold occupancy, tenancy or customary claims. Colonial and later administrative vocabulary often tempts historians to collapse these layers into a simple opposition between landlord and peasant. Nepal's records require greater precision. Tenure describes the legal or fiscal basis of a claim; taxation describes obligations to the state or assignee; cultivation describes who actually worked the soil. Agrarian class emerged from the interaction of all three, not from a label alone.

67.2 The Tarai was an agrarian zone shaped by water, forest and disease as much as by law

The plains south of the Chure were highly productive but environmentally uneven. River migration, seasonal inundation, wetlands, sal forest and malaria affected where permanent cultivation could expand and how easily officials could measure holdings. Eastern districts such as Saptari and Mahottari contained old cultivated zones as well as forest, scrub and waste lands that states sought to bring under assessment. Reclamation was therefore both an ecological process and a fiscal project. A plot became economically valuable to the state only when settlement, labour, drainage and cropping could convert it into a dependable stream of revenue.

67.3 Gorkha expansion incorporated Saptari and Mahottari into a wider revenue state

After the political unification of Nepal, the eastern Tarai became important not only for grain but also for cash revenue. Mahesh Chandra Regmi's reconstruction of the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries shows Saptari and Mahottari repeatedly appearing in revenue orders, contracts and fiscal experiments. Their proximity to the Gangetic market world gave the state access to cultivators, merchants and revenue contractors from both sides of the later international boundary. Integration into the Gorkha state thus did not sever older north–south economic connections; it placed them inside a new fiscal hierarchy centred on Kathmandu.

67.4 Raikar was the principal taxable framework, not a synonym for peasant ownership in the modern sense

Raikar land was land on which revenue was due to the state and entered in its fiscal records. Over time registered holders acquired stronger transferable and inheritable claims, but the historical meaning of raikar changed with survey, registration and legislation. It is misleading either to call all raikar “state-owned” in a modern public-property sense or to project twentieth-century freehold concepts backward. For cultivators, the practical question was who was registered, who paid the assessment, who could transfer a holding, and whether another person stood between the cultivator and the revenue office. These answers varied by period and locality.

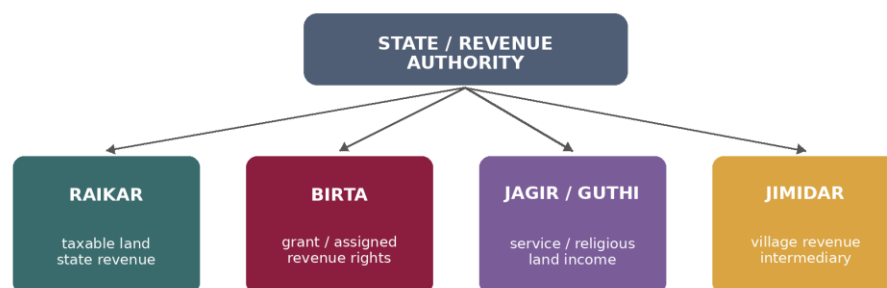
67.5 Birta redirected state revenue and sometimes strengthened private landed power

Birta grants transferred land, revenue or fiscal privileges to individuals and institutions under varying conditions. Some grants approached private ownership; others primarily assigned the revenue that the state would otherwise have collected. In the Tarai, birta could create an absentee beneficiary whose income ultimately depended on cultivators. The social effect therefore depended on the class of grant, the rights of registered landholders beneath it and the rents or extractions actually imposed. Regmi’s work is especially valuable because it shows that “birta” was not one uniform estate type. The 1959 abolition legislation would later have to confront precisely this diversity.

67.6 Jagir and guthi linked land revenue to service and religious institutions

Jagir assigned land revenue or land income in lieu of salaries and official service, while guthi endowed religious, charitable and social functions. Both demonstrate why land cannot be read only through the category of private ownership. Revenue from Tarai land could support soldiers, administrators, temples or ritual institutions far from the village that produced it. These assignments created claims on agrarian surplus without necessarily giving the beneficiary the same bundle of property rights as a modern owner. They also connected village production to state service and sacred institutions, making agrarian history part of administrative and religious history.

Land rights and fiscal channels in the Nepal Tarai



Cultivators could face overlapping claims for tax, rent, debt and labour.

Tenure labels describe legal-fiscal relations, not fixed social classes.

Figure 264 — Land rights and fiscal channels in the Nepal Tarai

67.7 Ijara revenue farming could place district collections in the hands of contractors

Early nineteenth-century records show Saptari and Mahottari revenue being assigned through ijara arrangements, under which contractors undertook to deliver an agreed sum to the government and collected revenue within the contracted area. The Hodgson papers preserve summaries of Tarai revenue contracts from the 1830s and 1840s, while Regmi documents still earlier examples. Revenue farming gave the state predictable receipts but created incentives for contractors to maximise collections. It was not identical with permanent proprietary landlordism: the contract concerned fiscal collection for a term, even though successful contractors could acquire substantial local power and wealth.

67.8 The 1793 Saptari–Mahottari order linked reclamation to graduated assessment

A royal order of 1793, reconstructed by Regmi, classified cultivable forest and scrub in Saptari and Mahottari by quality and offered a staged tax schedule during reclamation. Newly opened land was initially assessed lightly, with the burden rising as cultivation became established; after the stipulated period, measurement and more regular crop-based assessment followed. The policy reveals a state actively trying to turn frontier land into taxable agriculture. It also shows that “waste” was an administrative category: forests and scrub might already support grazing, gathering or shifting uses even when officials regarded them as land awaiting settled cultivation.

67.9 Land grades translated ecological variation into fiscal categories

Tarai assessment commonly distinguished grades such as abal, doyam, sim and chahar, terms that ranked land by productivity and situation. Such categories were practical tools for taxation, but they also created incentives for dispute over classification. Water access, soil, flood risk and cropping possibilities could change, while an official grade tended to stabilise a fiscal expectation. Revenue administration therefore converted complex environmental qualities into standardized categories. Historians should use the grades as evidence of state assessment, not as timeless agronomic facts applicable to every locality bearing the same label.

67.10 Agricultural expansion depended on settlers as well as official orders

No reclamation policy could succeed without households willing to clear, drain, plough and remain on the land. Nepal’s rulers encouraged settlement from existing Tarai communities, the hills and adjoining districts of India at different moments. The open economic geography of the plains made such recruitment possible. Migrants did not enter empty land: indigenous and long-settled communities already held fields, forests and village institutions. Expansion could therefore create new cultivation while also redistributing power over older common resources. The history of settlement must include both state incentives and the local social costs of frontier-making.

67.11 Malaria and forest delayed dense settlement in some zones while protecting other land uses

Before twentieth-century malaria control, disease risk shaped seasonal movement and discouraged many hill-origin households from permanent residence in parts of the Tarai. Forest also provided timber, fuel, grazing and hunting revenue. The state thus faced competing incentives: retain forest income or clear land for agriculture and land tax. In the eastern Tarai, where older settled tracts were extensive, the balance

differed from the inner Tarai and western forest zones. A regional history should therefore avoid presenting all Madhesh as one uniform frontier. Saptari–Mahottari agrarian systems developed through older cultivation as well as later reclamation.

67.12 Mouja-level jimidars became central to eastern Tarai administration in the nineteenth century

By the early Rana period, and especially from the 1850s, the government increasingly relied on jimidars at the mouja or village level in the eastern Tarai. Their responsibilities included collecting land and related taxes, encouraging reclamation and settlement, maintaining local records and discharging specified police or administrative functions. They operated between cultivators and district revenue offices. The institution solved a practical problem for a state with limited village-level bureaucracy, but it also concentrated information, credit and coercive leverage in local hands. This combination made jimidars important figures in agrarian stratification.

67.13 Revenue collection and settlement promotion gave intermediaries opportunities to accumulate land

Jimidars were not simply clerks. Regulations compensated them through commissions and, in some periods, assignments of jirayat land linked to the revenue under their jurisdiction. They were also positioned to know which holdings were vacant, in arrears or available for transfer. When they acted as lenders to cultivators, fiscal and credit power could reinforce one another. Regmi records legal efforts to limit encroachment on ordinary landholders, which itself suggests that expansion of intermediary holdings was a recurring concern. Formal office therefore helped create a landed elite even without granting proprietary title over every field in a village.

67.14 The 1861 eastern Tarai regulations formalised a revenue system built around local intermediaries

Regulations promulgated in 1861 specified duties, emoluments and constraints for eastern Tarai revenue administration. They belong to the broader Rana attempt to increase predictable revenue after 1846 while promoting cultivation. Their importance lies less in a single rule than in institutionalisation: village intermediaries, records, land grades and district offices were tied together more systematically. The rules also help distinguish legal design from practice. Prohibitions against unauthorised appropriation did not guarantee that powerful functionaries refrained from it, just as formal obligations to assist settlement did not ensure that all cultivators received credit or protection.

Selected agrarian milestones in the eastern Tarai

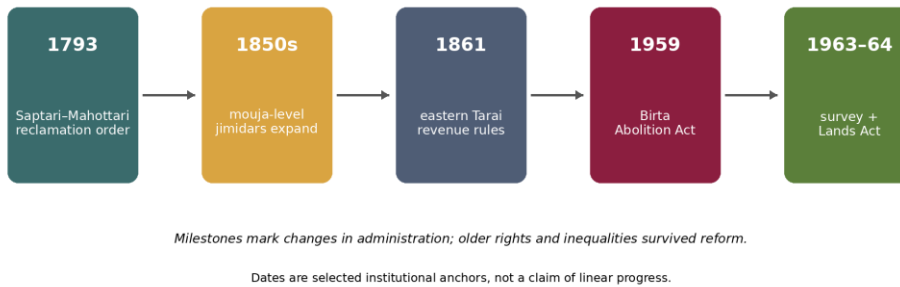


Figure 265 — Selected agrarian milestones in the eastern Tarai, 1793–1964

67.15 Nepal Tarai jimidari was not the Permanent Settlement zamindari of Bihar and Bengal

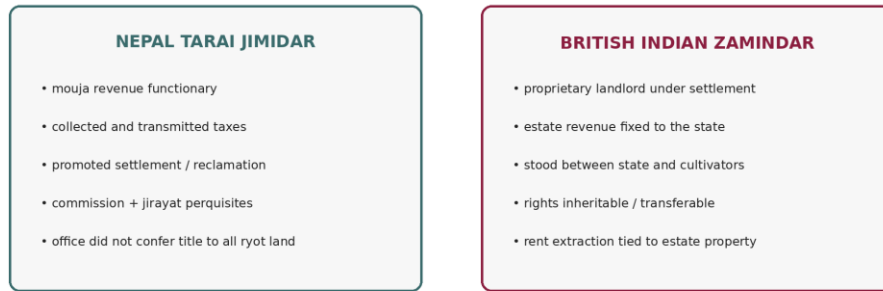
The linguistic resemblance between jimidar or zamindar can mislead comparison. Under the Permanent Settlement in Bengal and Bihar, zamindars were recognised as proprietary landlords responsible for a fixed state revenue demand on estates. Regmi emphasizes that the Nepal Tarai government generally allotted taxable land to individual holders and used jimidars as revenue functionaries rather than granting them ownership of all land within their jurisdiction. Jimidars could become substantial landholders through jirayat, purchase, mortgage or influence, but their office itself was not equivalent to a permanently settled estate. Comparative history must preserve this legal difference.

67.16 Jirayat and commission payments converted public office into an economic resource

A jimidar's compensation could include a percentage of collections and cultivated or waste land assigned as jirayat. In the eastern Tarai, nineteenth-century rules linked the value of such assignments to the tax assessment under the jimidar's jurisdiction. This arrangement rewarded effective collection but also blurred public and private interest. Increasing the cultivated area could enlarge the revenue base and the intermediary's own resources at the same time. The resulting incentive structure helps explain why reclamation, migration and landlord formation proceeded together rather than as separate processes.

Nepal Tarai jimidari and British Indian zamindari

similar local power, different legal foundations



Do not translate institutional resemblance into legal identity.

Figure 266 — Nepal Tarai jimidari and British Indian zamindari were not the same legal institution

67.17 Patwaris, registers and measurement made agrarian rights increasingly documentary

Village and district revenue administration depended on records of holdings, assessment, payment and transfer. Patwaris and other record-keepers gave documentary form to rights that might also be grounded in occupation, inheritance and community recognition. Registration could strengthen a cultivator's claim, but it could also privilege the person whose name entered the record over an unrecorded actual tiller. This tension became more important as land became saleable and mortgageable. Twentieth-century cadastral survey and reform would intensify the documentary character of ownership and tenancy rather than beginning it from nothing.

67.18 Actual cultivators occupied positions ranging from secure holders to tenants-at-will

The category "peasant" conceals substantial differentiation. Some households held registered raikar land directly and paid state revenue; some cultivated under birta or other grants; some rented additional plots; others depended almost entirely on tenancy or wage labour. Security also varied. An occupancy relationship recognised by local custom could be stronger than a short-term lease but weaker than registered ownership. Agrarian society therefore contained smallholders, mixed owner-tenants, sharecroppers, labourers and landlords in changing proportions. Household strategies often combined several positions at once, especially where subdivision reduced the area inherited by each generation.

67.19 Rent could be fixed in cash, grain or a share of output

Tenancy contracts in the Tarai included cash and produce rents as well as sharecropping arrangements such as adhiya. The form of rent allocated price and harvest risk differently between landholder and cultivator. A fixed cash rent could become onerous after crop failure, while share rent transferred part of production risk but allowed the landlord to claim a large portion of a good harvest. Legal ceilings on rent introduced in the 1950s and 1960s were attempts to regulate these relationships. Their existence shows that tenancy was not marginal to the agrarian economy; it was a central mechanism for matching concentrated land rights with households needing access to fields.

67.20 Debt connected tenancy to moneylending and land transfer

Agricultural households needed credit for seed, cattle, food during the lean season, ceremonies and tax payments. Where formal rural credit was weak, landlords, merchants and revenue intermediaries could also act as lenders. Debt might be repaid from crops, labour or land. Mortgage and distress sale therefore became channels through which smallholders lost control of fields even when formal tenure rules protected ownership. This mechanism is crucial for understanding land concentration: not all inequality originated in royal grants or administrative privilege. Market dependence and household shocks could reproduce it from below.

67.21 Agrarian hierarchy intersected with caste, ethnicity and migration without being reducible to them

Land distribution in the Tarai became entangled with social hierarchy. Privileged officials and grantees frequently came from groups close to state power, while cultivators included Madhesi caste communities, Dalits, Adivasi and indigenous groups, Muslims, hill migrants and settlers from adjoining India. Yet no single community occupied one invariant economic position across the plains. Some local elites accumulated land; some high-status families were smallholders; and landlessness cut across identities unevenly. The safest historical approach is to analyse who controlled land, labour, credit and office in each locality rather than infer class automatically from caste or ethnicity.

67.22 Women's agrarian labour was more visible in production than in land records

Women participated in transplanting, weeding, harvesting, livestock care, food processing and household reproduction, but land registration and official agrarian records overwhelmingly privileged male household heads. Inheritance rules, marriage residence and unequal access to documentation further limited women's recorded ownership. A revenue archive can therefore give the false impression that agriculture was primarily a male activity. The gap between labour contribution and titled control matters for tenancy as well: women in land-poor households often bore the work and food-security consequences of insecure contracts without appearing as the contracting tenant.

67.23 The India–Nepal border made land a cross-border economic resource

The Tarai's agrarian economy was linked to north Bihar through labour, cattle, seed, grain markets, credit and kinship. Families could cultivate or own plots near the border while maintaining commercial and social relations on the other side. This connectivity helped settlement and market integration but complicated state efforts to define taxable subjects and alien landholders. Restrictions on land purchase by foreigners changed over time, and enforcement varied. Cross-border movement should therefore be treated as a structural feature of Madhesh agrarian history, not as an exception produced only by the modern open-border regime.

67.24 Irrigation and drainage changed the value of land as much as legal status did

Paddy cultivation depended on reliable water control. Canals, embankments, ponds and local channels could raise yields and convert a marginal plot into valuable rice land, while flood or river migration could reverse that gain. Investment in irrigation was therefore inseparable from tenure security: tenants with short or uncertain contracts had weaker incentives to finance long-lived improvements, while landlords might underinvest if rent extraction did not depend on productivity. This relationship between property rights and

water management remains important in modern Tarai research and helps explain why agrarian reform cannot be assessed only by counting redistributed hectares.

67.25 Rana-era landlordism combined old grants, new offices and expanding markets

Between 1846 and 1951 the Rana state strengthened elite access to land through birta, jagir and other assignments while also expanding revenue administration and reclamation. In the Tarai, rising market opportunities in grain, timber and later commercial crops increased the value of land. Absentee ownership became significant because officials and elites could draw rent from plains holdings while residing elsewhere. Yet local intermediaries and cultivators remained indispensable to actual production. The result was a layered agrarian order: central elites, district officials, jimidars, village notables, moneylenders, registered landholders, tenants and labourers were linked through overlapping claims on the same agricultural surplus.

67.26 Agrarian reform began before 1964 and should be read as a sequence

Political change after 1951 produced repeated attempts to regulate unequal land relations. A Land Reform Commission was appointed in 1952. Measures in the 1950s sought to limit rents, protect tenants, curb extra levies and weaken privileged tenure. The 1959 Birta Abolition Act was especially important because it attacked a major intermediary grant system, though its treatment of different classes of birta was not identical. Reform was therefore not one sudden act in 1964. It was a decade-long struggle over who would be recognised as owner, tenant and revenue payer after the fall of the Rana regime.

67.27 The 1959 Birta Abolition Act ended a privileged tenure but did not automatically equalise landholding

Birta abolition transferred or converted rights according to the legal class of the grant and brought formerly privileged land into the ordinary revenue framework. The measure weakened a historic basis of tax-free or revenue-assigned landed power, but it did not by itself guarantee land to the person actually cultivating every plot. Registered holders, birta beneficiaries and tenants could possess different claims. Contemporary debate therefore centred on whether reform should simply tax former birta land or transfer ownership downward. The legislation mixed approaches, illustrating the political difficulty of converting a layered tenure system into a single ownership register.

67.28 Survey and measurement made the coming land reform administratively possible

The Survey and Measurement legislation of the early 1960s provided for cadastral mapping and more systematic land records. Land reform required precisely this infrastructure: ceilings could not be enforced unless the state could identify holdings, while tenancy protection depended on knowing who actually cultivated land. Survey was therefore a political technology as well as a technical one. It could expose large holdings, but it could also exclude people whose occupancy was not recorded at the decisive moment. The later prevalence of informal tenancy reflects in part this tension between lived cultivation and documentary recognition.

67.29 The 1964 Lands Act imposed ceilings and formalised tenancy, but implementation reshaped its effects

At commencement, the 1964 Lands Act allowed a landowner family in the Tarai and inner Tarai up to twenty-five bighas of agricultural land plus three bighas for homestead purposes, while a tenant family could cultivate up to four bighas as tenant. Later amendments reduced the owner ceilings, so current statutory numbers must not be projected backward. The Act also sought tenant registration, rent regulation and acquisition of surplus land. Redistribution was limited, but recent research using Dhanusha records argues that the reform still weakened large-landlord authority and encouraged longer-term divestment toward middle peasants. Formal “failure” therefore did not mean historical insignificance.

Original 1964 Lands Act ceilings for the Tarai

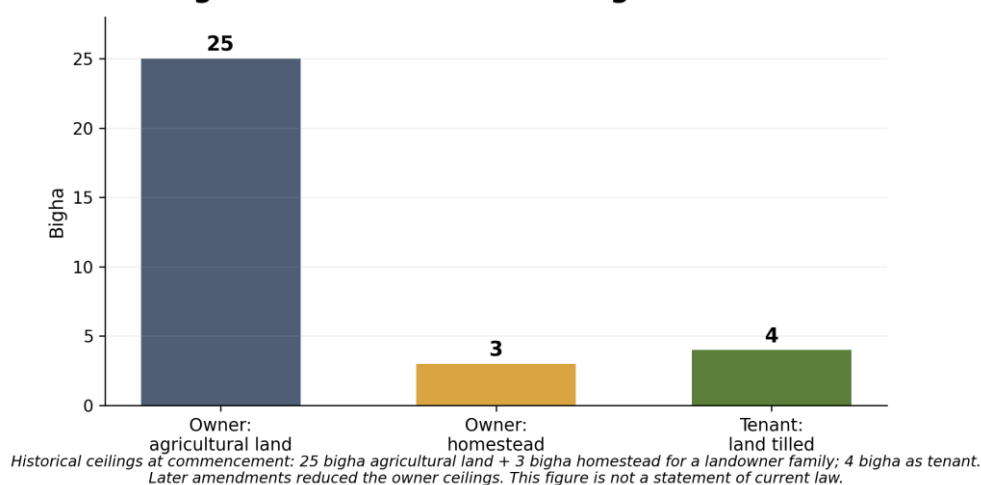


Figure 267 — Original 1964 Lands Act ceilings for the Tarai

67.30 Conclusion: Tarai agrarian society was produced by state-making, ecology and unequal access to documentation

The Nepal Tarai’s agrarian structure cannot be explained by a timeless feudal label or by copying the Bengal zamindari model. It emerged through a specific history of taxable raikar, grants such as birta and jagir, guthi endowments, ijara revenue farming, mouja reclamation, jimidar intermediaries, tenancy, debt and migration. Ecological conditions determined where cultivation could expand; records determined whose claims the state recognised; markets changed the value of land; and reform altered the political meaning of landlordship without erasing inequality. In Madhesh, land history is therefore simultaneously environmental history, fiscal history, class history and the history of the modern state.

Table 67.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing land, tenancy and agrarian society in the Nepal Tarai

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Royal orders and revenue regulations	dated tax rates, reclamation rules, ijara contracts, jimidar duties and official land grades	state prescriptions do not prove uniform implementation in every village
Land registers, cadastral surveys and transfer records	registered holders, parcel boundaries, assessment, documented transfers and tenancy claims	registration may omit actual cultivators, women and informal tenants
Tenure and grant records	raikar, birta, jagir, guthi and other legal-fiscal relationships	the same tenure label could contain different bundles of rights by period and grant class

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Household, oral and local agrarian histories	tenancy practice, debt, eviction, labour relations and the social meaning of reform	memory is retrospective and locality-specific; it requires triangulation
Statutes and reform rules	formal ceilings, tenancy rights, abolition measures and administrative procedure	law on the books does not establish enforcement or distributional outcome
Agricultural censuses and land statistics	holding-size distributions, registered tenancy and long-term structural change	categories and coverage change; informal tenancy can remain invisible

Chapter 68 — Forest Clearance, Malaria Control and Demographic Transformation

The demographic transformation of the Nepal Tarai after the 1950s was not the simple replacement of an empty jungle by settlers. The plains already contained towns, cultivated belts, forests, grazing grounds, pilgrimage routes and long-established Madhesi, Tharu and other communities. What changed rapidly was the relationship among disease ecology, forest access, state resettlement, spontaneous migration, roads, land law and agricultural expansion. This chapter reconstructs those linked processes, with particular attention to the eastern and central Tarai and to the Mithila/Madhesh districts, while using Chitwan and other Inner-Tarai projects only where they illuminate national policy rather than as substitutes for the regional history of Dhanusha, Mahottari, Sarlahi, Siraha and Saptari.

68.1 Demographic transformation must be reconstructed as a chain of linked processes, not a single malaria story

Malaria control altered the cost and risk of permanent residence in lowland Nepal, but it did not by itself determine who migrated, where forest was cleared, or who gained land. Hill land pressure, state revenue goals, resettlement schemes, transport, cadastral administration, local labour demand, cross-border kinship and the availability of cultivable land all mattered. The analytical task is therefore to connect public health with political economy while refusing a monocausal narrative. In some districts disease control preceded rapid in-migration; in others dense cultivation and established Madhesi settlement already existed. The appropriate unit is a differentiated Tarai landscape rather than an imagined uniform frontier.

68.2 The pre-eradication Tarai was a mosaic of cultivated plains, forest belts, grasslands and settlements

The older stereotype of the Tarai as an uninhabited forest obscures substantial regional variation. Southern belts near the Indian boundary contained long-established villages, bazaars and paddy cultivation, while forest and grassland were more extensive toward the Chure and in malarial or poorly drained tracts. Revenue records discussed in Chapter 67 show that eighteenth- and nineteenth-century governments were already classifying, taxing and reclaiming land in Saptari and Mahottari. Forest was therefore not simply “waste.” It supplied timber, fuel, fodder, game, grazing, shifting access to fields and fiscal possibilities, and its clearance redistributed those resources.

68.3 Malaria shaped settlement ecology but did not exclude all lowland populations

Before mid-twentieth-century control, malaria constrained permanent residence most strongly in forest-fringe and Inner-Tarai environments. Seasonal schedules, house location and movement between lowlands and nearby uplands could reduce exposure. At the same time, populations with long residence in malarial zones developed cultural practices and, in some Tharu groups, measurable biological protection against severe malaria morbidity. Later genetic research on Tharu populations is useful for demonstrating adaptation, but it should not be converted into a claim that all Tharus were immune or that no other communities inhabited the Tarai.

68.4 Existing Madhesi and Tharu communities were actors in landscape making, not obstacles to later development

Cultivators, graziers, fishers, forest users, traders and local revenue intermediaries had already converted, maintained and circulated through lowland environments before national malaria campaigns. Their knowledge of water, soils, seasonal disease and forest resources was an economic asset. Post-1950 development discourse often described forested lowlands as land awaiting reclamation, which made long-standing customary uses less visible in official planning. A social history must therefore treat resettlement as entry into inhabited and governed landscapes, even when population density was low in particular tracts.

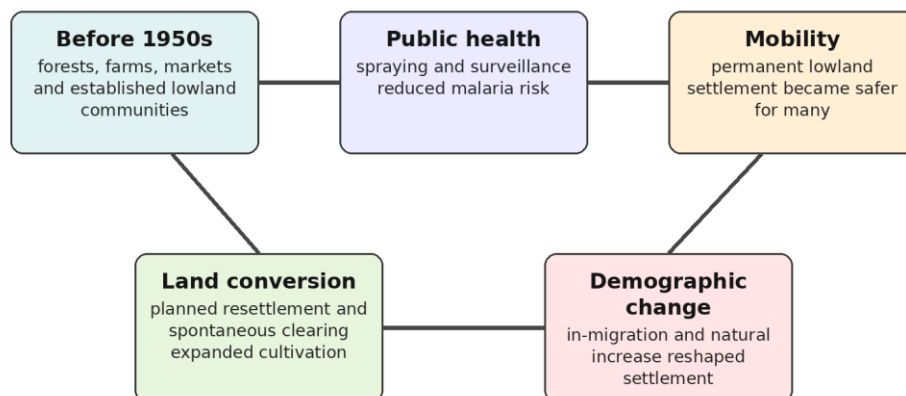
68.5 Nepal's organised malaria-control effort began in 1954

The World Health Organization's later programme reviews date the first large national attempt to control malaria to the Insect-Borne Disease Control programme begun in 1954 with United States assistance. Early work combined spraying with epidemiological and entomological investigation. The aim was initially control, especially in southern lowlands where transmission imposed heavy mortality and discouraged settlement. This distinction matters because retrospective accounts often call the entire 1950s campaign "eradication." The institutional goal of nationwide eradication was adopted later, in 1958.

68.6 The National Malaria Eradication Programme of 1958 turned disease control into a state-wide development instrument

In 1958 Nepal launched the National Malaria Eradication Programme as a vertical national public-health programme. Indoor residual spraying, surveillance, diagnosis, treatment and vector studies were combined in an effort to interrupt transmission within a defined period. The programme later failed to achieve complete eradication and reverted formally to control in 1978. Yet its historical effect was still profound: large areas previously regarded by many hill-origin households as dangerous for permanent residence became substantially safer. Public health thereby changed the economic geography of land without itself deciding how that land would be distributed.

Figure 268 — From malaria control to demographic change



Malaria control was an enabling condition, not a complete explanation of migration or forest loss.

Figure 268 — Malaria control changed a landscape already inhabited and used

68.7 DDT and residual spraying were technologies of settlement as well as technologies of health

Residual insecticide spraying reduced contact between malaria vectors and people inside houses. In policy terms this meant that a disease-control technology could alter land values, migration decisions and the feasibility of permanent settlement. The benefit was greatest in heavily malarial forest-fringe and Inner-Tarai zones, though the degree and timing of success differed geographically. Later environmental concerns about DDT should not be projected backward as if officials in the 1950s were choosing among today's alternatives; nor should the public-health achievement be used to erase the ecological costs of development that followed.

68.8 Malaria control reduced one barrier to migration while roads, land and institutions reduced others

Households decide to migrate through bundles of constraints and opportunities. Safer residence mattered, but so did access to land, transport to markets, government promises of allotments, relatives already settled, opportunities for wage labour and the difficulty of sustaining families on fragmented hill holdings. In the Tarai, these forces reinforced one another. A newly sprayed settlement was more attractive when roads, wells, schools and administrative offices followed; a road corridor became more valuable when households could live there year-round. This cumulative interaction explains why population change accelerated rather than merely tracking annual malaria incidence.

68.9 Forest nationalisation in 1957 altered incentives at the same moment that lowland accessibility was increasing

The Private Forest Nationalization Act of 1957 sought to bring forests under state control and curb private appropriation, but later forestry reviews describe an unintended period of accelerated cutting and conversion in some places. Owners and users faced uncertainty over claims, while the state lacked personnel to police vast forest areas. This institutional transition overlapped with malaria control and rising demand for agricultural land. It is therefore misleading to attribute post-1957 forest loss to migration alone: forest law, administrative capacity, market demand and settlement policy also changed the incentives surrounding trees and cleared land.

68.10 The 1961 Forest Act represented an attempt to govern a rapidly changing frontier

As pressure on accessible Tarai forests intensified, the Forest Act of 1961 strengthened classification and regulation of forest use. The state simultaneously wanted timber revenue, agricultural expansion, resettlement and conservation—objectives that could conflict on the same tract of land. Forest administration therefore became a central institution in demographic transformation. A settlement could be legal under a government programme, tolerated as an encroachment, disputed by forestry officials, or regularised later. These categories affected who received title and whose earlier use was rendered informal.

68.11 Planned resettlement and spontaneous settlement were distinct processes

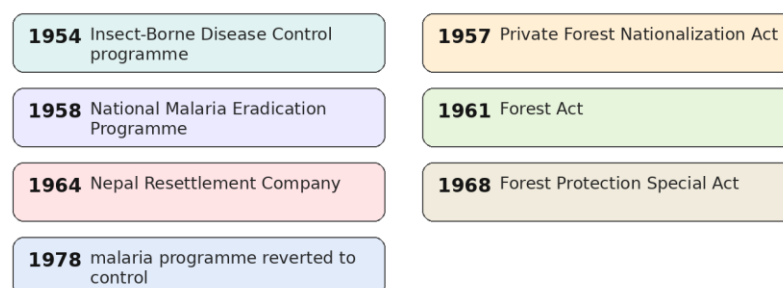
Government resettlement projects surveyed land, selected households, allotted plots and sometimes provided roads or social services. Spontaneous migrants cleared or occupied land without the same administrative sequence, though later regularisation could blur the distinction. FAO compilations of Nepalese forestry literature attribute large areas of 1960s and 1970s forest conversion to both organised

settlement and unauthorised encroachment. This dual process is essential to understanding why official programmes could be modest in scale while demographic change and forest loss were much larger.

68.12 The Rapti Valley is evidence for a national mechanism, not a substitute for Mithila/Madhesh history

The Rapti Valley Development Project in Chitwan became the most dramatic example of malaria control followed by resettlement and rapid population growth. It demonstrated that disease reduction, land distribution and infrastructure could transform an Inner-Tarai valley within a generation. But Chitwan's ecological setting, indigenous population and project institutions were not identical to the eastern plains. It is used here comparatively: it reveals the mechanism that national planners sought to reproduce, while the social history of Dhanusha, Mahottari, Sarlahi, Siraha and Saptari must still be reconstructed from their own land, forest and population records.

Figure 269 — Selected institutional milestones, 1954–1978



Dates identify institutions and statutes; effects unfolded unevenly across districts and years.

Figure 269 — Selected institutional milestones, 1954–1978

68.13 The Nepal Resettlement Company institutionalised planned movement after 1964

The Nepal Resettlement Company was established in 1964, and later a Resettlement Department expanded the state's role in organising migration. Programme objectives included bringing supposedly underused land into cultivation, easing population pressure in the hills, relocating forest encroachers and distributing land affected by reform. Projects were geographically uneven. In the Madhesh belt, official records identify sites including Nawalpur in Sarlahi and later departmental projects at Murtia in Sarlahi and Sindhureghari in Rautahat. Such schemes inserted state selection and land allocation into local demographic change.

68.14 Resettlement policy was also a politics of territory and citizenship

Moving households changes more than population density. It changes the language, caste and ethnic composition of local institutions; creates new claims on land, forests and representation; and reshapes how the state imagines a border region. Recent scholarship on Madhesi and Tharu politics emphasises that

resettlement became part of later disputes over territorial belonging and access to state power. These political consequences should be analysed without assuming that every migrant received state sponsorship or that resettlement programmes were designed solely against existing communities. Planned, market-led and family-chain migration overlapped.

68.15 Hill-to-Tarai migration accelerated after malaria risk fell, but cross-border migration remained part of the demographic field

The Tarai had long been connected to north Bihar and Uttar Pradesh through marriage, cultivation, trade and labour. Post-1950 demographic change therefore combined internal migration from Nepal's hills with movement across the international boundary and with natural increase among established residents. Census categories such as birthplace and citizenship capture only parts of this mobility. The India–Nepal border remained open for ordinary social and economic movement, so demographic reconstruction must avoid turning every change in local population composition into a one-directional state resettlement story.

68.16 Eastern and central Madhesh did not receive migrants into socially empty space

By the 1950s districts such as Saptari, Siraha, Dhanusha and Mahottari already contained dense agricultural settlements and market networks in large parts of their southern plains. The most dramatic opportunities for forest clearance often lay northward toward remaining forest and Chure margins rather than across the entire district. Sarlahi and Rautahat similarly combined long-settled cultivation with forested tracts. This internal geography explains why later migrants could settle beside older villages and why land conflict was often concentrated around forest edges, public land and newly surveyed plots.

68.17 Forest clearance converted ecological capital into private fields, state revenue and marketable timber

A standing forest could produce multiple flows of value: timber sales, fuelwood, grazing, leaf litter, wildlife and watershed services. Clearance changed that bundle into agricultural land, tax receipts, settlement plots and timber available for construction or sale. These gains and losses were distributed unevenly. A household receiving a farm might gain long-term security, while forest-dependent users lost access and the state gained cultivated revenue. Development accounting that recorded only new cropland therefore understated the transfer of ecological resources involved in “reclamation.”

68.18 Historical estimates of forest loss vary because the sources measure different things

Government reports, forest inventories, aerial photography, Landsat interpretation and later retrospective estimates produce different totals for Tarai deforestation. FAO's historical compilations report ranges rather than a single unquestionable number; for 1964–1972 alone, cited estimates vary markedly. The safest approach is to use consistent series for comparison and to state their geographic scope. Figure 270 therefore uses one FAO-compiled eastern-Tarai land-use series, showing direction and scale of change without claiming that it measures every forest conversion in Madhesh.

68.19 In the eastern Tarai, cropland expanded as the recorded forest share contracted

The FAO historical compilation gives a particularly clear eastern series: forest land fell from 40.5 percent of the recorded area in 1963/64 to 28.1 percent in 1978/79, while cropland rose from 51.1 to 64.3 percent. These figures cover a broad eastern zone rather than only Mithila districts, but they demonstrate the regional direction of change during the period of malaria control, resettlement and road expansion. They should be read as land-use evidence, not as a direct count of migrants or a proof that all converted forest became equally productive farmland.

68.20 Spontaneous encroachment was large enough to frustrate planned forest policy

Later forestry assessments estimated that spontaneous settlement accounted for tens of thousands of hectares of forest conversion during the 1960s and early 1970s. Encroachment reflected both land hunger and a practical calculation: clearing could establish possession on land whose administrative status was uncertain, especially where enforcement was weak. Periodic regularisation then created expectations that occupation might eventually become title. The state's simultaneous commitment to settlement and forest protection made enforcement politically difficult and produced recurring conflicts among settlers, forestry officials and earlier users.

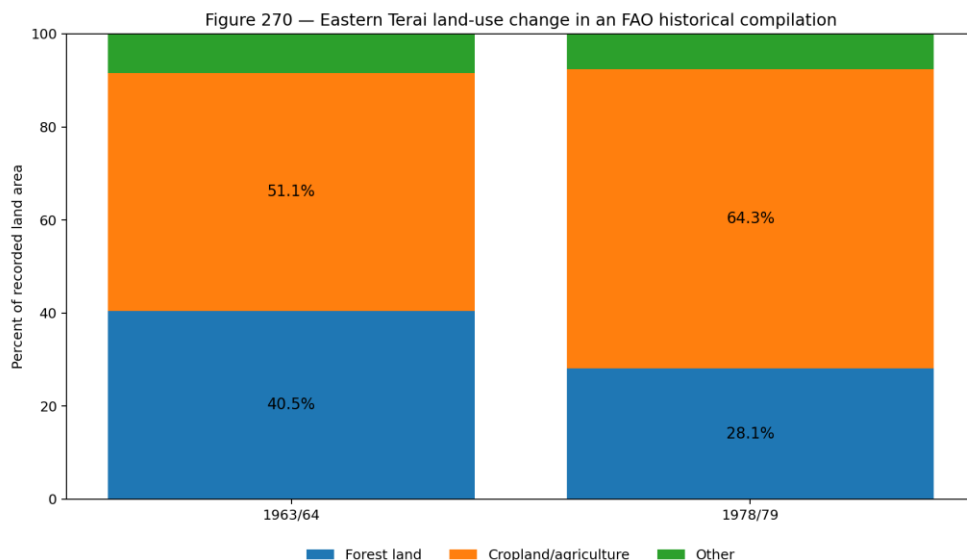


Figure 270 — Eastern Terai land-use change, 1963/64–1978/79

68.21 The 1968 Forest Protection Special Act signalled a shift from encouraging clearance to policing its consequences

By the late 1960s the government had become increasingly concerned that forest conversion was outrunning planned settlement. The Forest Protection Special Act of 1968 strengthened powers available to forest officials. Its passage illustrates a recurring policy contradiction: the same state that had promoted agricultural settlement now sought to protect remaining forests from the cumulative effects of legal allotment and illegal encroachment. Later critiques argued that coercive protection often alienated local users without solving the underlying demand for land and forest products.

68.22 Malaria did not disappear uniformly, and residual transmission remained important in Madhesh

The language of “eradication” can conceal persistence. Nepal did not eliminate malaria nationwide in the 1960s; the national programme returned formally to control in 1978. Programme records from the late 1970s still recorded substantial malaria incidence in central Madhesh districts including Sarlahi, Mahottari and Dhanusha. This persistence matters historically because demographic transformation did not wait for zero transmission. Households responded to a large reduction in risk, while health services continued to confront local outbreaks and changing vector ecologies.

68.23 Demographic redistribution is visible in the official census series

Nepal’s official retrospective census analysis shows the Tarai’s share of national population rising from 28.9 percent in 1952/54 to 30.7 percent in 1961 and 33.9 percent in 1971. Over the same interval the mountain-and-hill share declined. These proportions do not by themselves separate in-migration from natural increase, boundary definitions or urban growth, but they establish a national redistribution toward the plains. The transformation continued in later decades, eventually making the Tarai Nepal’s most populous ecological region.

68.24 Population growth changed settlement morphology as well as aggregate numbers

New households produced new village extensions, roadside bazaars, irrigation demand, schools and administrative service centres. Linear settlement along roads increased, while forest-edge hamlets could become permanent cadastral villages. Existing towns such as Janakpur gained larger rural hinterlands and more intensive flows of grain, labour and pilgrims. Demographic transformation was therefore spatial: it altered the distance between settlements, the density of roads and markets, and the proportion of land devoted to cultivation.

68.25 Land reform and malaria control interacted by making lowland land both accessible and politically contested

The 1964 Lands Act set ceilings and formalised tenancy at the same moment that migration and resettlement increased demand for Tarai land. In principle, ceiling-surplus land could support redistribution; in practice, administrative capacity, evasion, family partition and local power constrained the amount available. Migrants who could purchase land entered a different social position from households dependent on resettlement allotments or forest occupation. Public health thus opened a demographic possibility whose class consequences were mediated by land markets and land reform.

68.26 Women experienced demographic transformation through labour, health and household reorganisation

Migration decisions were often recorded under a male household head, yet women supplied crucial labour in transplanting, weeding, harvesting, livestock care, food processing and the reproduction of new settlements. Reduced malaria risk changed maternal and child health conditions, but frontier settlement could also place women far from natal kin, health facilities and secure water sources. Census categories that treat marriage migration separately from economic migration can obscure women’s role in creating agricultural settlements. Gender must therefore be integrated into demographic history rather than added as a residual category.

68.27 Indigenous and long-established lowland communities bore unequal costs of the new demographic order

Where resettlement expanded into forest and grassland used by Tharu and other long-established communities, new cadastral boundaries and population pressure could reduce customary access to grazing, fishing, fuel and common land. Market integration also created opportunities, including wage labour and higher land values, so dispossession was not mechanically uniform. The central historical point is that malaria control redistributed the relative advantage of ecological knowledge: skills that had made lowland residence possible before spraying no longer constituted the same barrier to outside settlement.

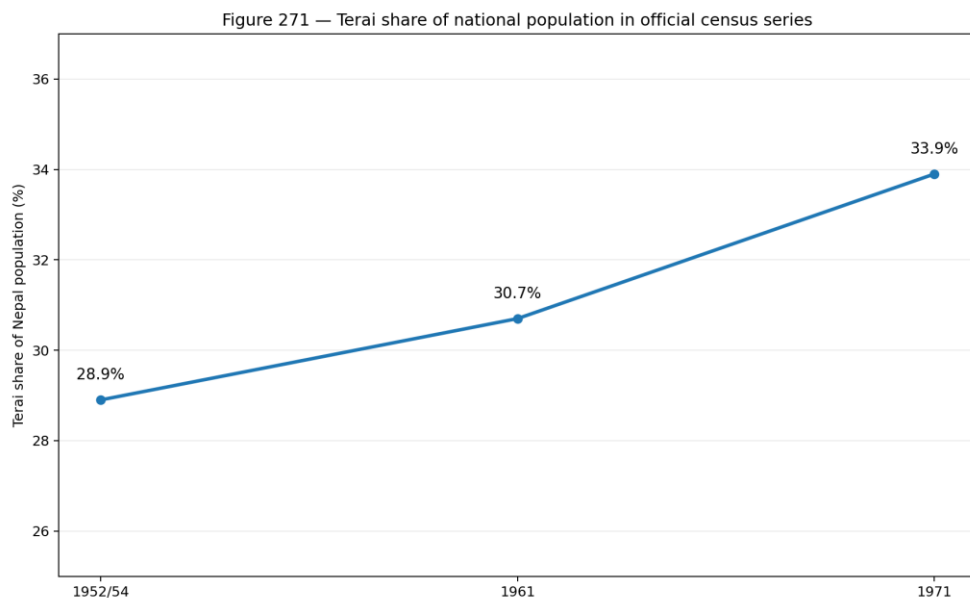


Figure 271 — Terai share of Nepal's national population, 1952/54–1971

68.28 Forest loss produced second-order environmental changes that fed back into agrarian society

Removing forest altered runoff, erosion, groundwater recharge, wildlife habitat and the availability of fuelwood and fodder. On the Chure margin, road building and cultivation could intensify sediment movement into the plains. As forests retreated, households travelled farther for wood or substituted crop residues and purchased fuels. These environmental effects did not halt demographic growth, but they changed the cost of maintaining farms and settlements. The history of forest clearance is therefore also a history of new ecological constraints created by development itself.

68.29 The transformation created new conservation politics as remaining forests became scarcer

By the 1970s and 1980s the policy question was no longer how to open an apparently abundant forest frontier but how to govern a shrinking resource amid continued population pressure. Protected areas, stricter forest regulation and later community-forestry debates emerged from this reversal. In the Tarai, the high commercial value of sal and easy access to Indian markets gave forest policy a revenue dimension absent from many hill forests. Conservation therefore intersected with local livelihood rights, timber politics and border enforcement.

68.30 Conclusion: malaria control changed the demographic possibility of Madhesh, while institutions decided much of its social outcome

The decisive mid-twentieth-century change was a reduction in the disease barrier that had limited permanent settlement in many forested lowland zones. What followed—migration, forest clearance, resettlement, land conflict, cropland expansion and population redistribution—was shaped by forest laws, land reform, roads, markets, state capacity and older regional societies. The result was not the creation of population where none existed, but a new demographic balance within Nepal and a denser, more agriculturally transformed Madhesh/Tarai. This distinction protects both the public-health history of malaria control and the longer history of the people who inhabited the plains before it.

Table 68.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing forest clearance, malaria control and demographic transformation

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Malaria programme records	programme dates, spraying, surveillance, incidence and institutional change	programme success was geographically uneven and “eradication” did not mean zero transmission
Forest inventories and land-use series	forest area, cropland conversion, encroachment and broad spatial trends	estimates vary by method, date and geographic boundary
Population censuses	regional population shares, birthplace, settlement and demographic redistribution	cannot by themselves separate natural increase, temporary mobility and all cross-border movement
Resettlement records	planned project sites, allotted families, land distributed and programme objectives	exclude many spontaneous settlers and may under-record local customary users
Land and forest legislation	formal rules governing ownership, ceilings, forests and enforcement	statutory rules do not prove consistent implementation
Local histories, ethnography and oral evidence	older settlement, livelihood, customary forest use and social consequences	local evidence is essential but may not be statistically representative

Chapter 69 — Migration and Settlement

Migration and settlement transformed the Nepal Tarai/Madhesh after the middle of the twentieth century, but neither process began in an empty landscape. The plains already contained long-established villages, market towns, pilgrimage centres, cultivated tracts, forests and grazing zones linked across the India–Nepal border. What changed after the 1950s was the scale, direction and institutional framing of movement. Malaria control reduced one environmental barrier; roads and markets lowered transport costs; land policy and resettlement programmes created new opportunities; and population pressure in the hills encouraged movement toward the lowlands. At the same time, cross-border marriage, labour and commerce continued older patterns that cannot be reduced to immigration in the modern political sense.

69.1 Migration and settlement are related processes, but they are not the same

Migration records movement from one place to another; settlement concerns the establishment of residence, cultivation, property claims and social institutions. A household could migrate temporarily without settling, settle after repeated seasonal movements, or maintain homes and fields on more than one side of a district or international boundary. Keeping these categories separate is essential because census, land and resettlement records capture different parts of the same social process.

69.2 The Tarai/Madhesh was inhabited long before post-1950 resettlement

Older cultivated belts of Saptari, Siraha, Dhanusha, Mahottari and the border plains contradict any description of the region as a vacant frontier. Madhesi caste communities, Muslims, Tharus and other lowland populations formed villages, markets and agrarian relations before national development programmes. Forested and malarial zones existed beside settled landscapes rather than replacing them everywhere.

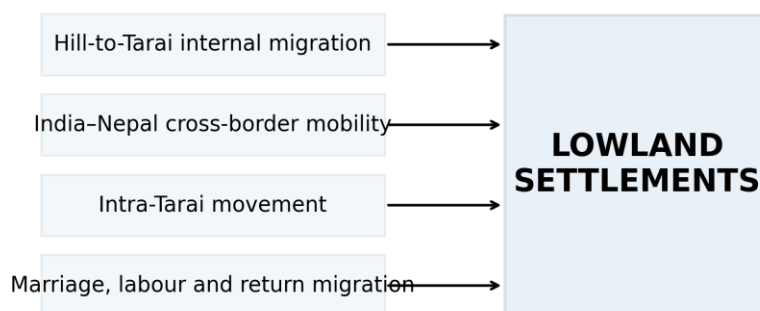
69.3 Cross-border mobility with north Bihar preceded the modern development state

Marriage, pilgrimage, livestock movement, seasonal labour, trade and cultivation connected Nepal's plains with north Bihar across a politically bounded but socially permeable frontier. Such movement often followed kinship and market networks rather than administrative programmes. Birthplace statistics therefore need to be read alongside the long history of a borderland in which daily economic life crossed the international line.

69.4 The 1950s altered the opportunity structure of lowland residence

Malaria control, road construction and the political opening after the Rana regime reduced several barriers to permanent lowland residence. These changes did not create migration mechanically, but they changed the relative costs of moving. Landless or land-poor hill households could now consider settlement in places that had previously carried greater disease risk and weaker transport connections.

Migration and settlement channels in Tarai/Madhesh



Several channels could overlap within one household or village.

Figure 272 — Migration and settlement channels in Tarai/Madhesh

69.5 State planners treated population redistribution as an economic-development instrument

Early development planning linked resettlement to three goals: reducing pressure on hill land, increasing cultivated area and agricultural output, and strengthening settlement in strategically important lowland zones. Official documents also presented resettlement as relief for landless households, flood victims, returning migrants and ex-servicemen. These objectives made population movement part of national development policy rather than a purely private household decision.

69.6 The Rapti Valley demonstrated a mechanism but not a universal regional pattern

The Rapti Valley Development Project in Chitwan became the best-known example of disease control followed by forest clearance, planned settlement and rapid population growth. Its chronology is important because it showed what state-supported lowland colonisation could do. It should not, however, be projected mechanically onto eastern Mithila/Madhesh, where extensive southern tracts were already densely cultivated and socially organised.

69.7 The Nepal Resettlement Company institutionalised planned settlement in the 1960s

Government advice in 1960 led to the creation of the Nepal Resettlement Company in 1963. Its mandate was to organise legal settlement, especially for landless hill farmers, and to combine land distribution with agricultural advice and credit. By 1973 official project documentation reported about 5,600 families settled on roughly 7,000 hectares, a visible but limited part of the wider migration stream.

69.8 A Resettlement Department expanded the administrative machinery after 1968

The creation of a Resettlement Department in 1968 separated policy and field administration only imperfectly. In practice the department became involved not only in planned schemes but also in disaster relief and the regularisation or relocation of people already occupying forest land. This blurred the boundary

between settlement planning and the management of settlement that had occurred without prior state permission.

69.9 Planned resettlement was far smaller than spontaneous movement

World Bank project appraisal material from the early 1970s estimated that only a small minority of migrant families entering the Tarai had been settled through the formal Nepal Resettlement Company schemes. Most movement occurred outside those schemes through family networks, land purchase, tenancy, forest-edge occupation or other self-directed strategies. Official project files are therefore a poor proxy for the total volume of settlement.

Planned resettlement and spontaneous settlement

PLANNED	SPONTANEOUS
• surveyed plots • selected households • formal allotment • credit / advice • administrative records	• self-directed movement • forest-edge occupation • kin / market networks • land purchase or clearing • often weakly recorded

Official projects were visible in archives; spontaneous settlement was numerically larger.

Figure 273 — Planned resettlement and spontaneous settlement were different systems

69.10 Eastern Tarai settlement did not follow the same land-availability pattern as western projects

Formal schemes operated in districts such as Jhapa as well as in western Nepal, but land availability differed sharply across the Tarai. In the eastern and central Madhesh, long-cultivated districts offered less scope for large blocks of planned allotment than forested frontier areas farther west. Migration there more often entered existing villages, market towns and land markets rather than newly surveyed colonies.

69.11 In Saptari, Siraha, Dhanusha and Mahottari, settlement often meant insertion into an existing agrarian society

Newcomers encountered established tenants, landowners, village functionaries, traders and religious institutions. Acquiring land could mean purchase, tenancy, subdivision of an existing holding or settlement on forest margins rather than an original grant from the state. This produced social interaction and competition within an already stratified agrarian order.

69.12 Rural-to-rural movement remained central even as towns grew

Much post-1950 migration into the Tarai was directed toward agricultural land rather than factories or large cities. Households moved to cultivate paddy, maize, wheat and cash crops, to work as tenants or

labourers, or to combine farming with petty trade. Urbanisation mattered, but it was layered onto a predominantly rural migration system.

69.13 Roads and market centres reorganised the geography of settlement

Highways, feeder roads and railheads changed which villages could sell grain, obtain inputs and reach administrative services. New roadside bazaars attracted shops, repair services, transport workers and schools, while older market centres expanded their hinterlands. Settlement therefore became increasingly linear along transport corridors as well as clustered around cultivable land.

69.14 Land markets translated migration into durable settlement

A migrant family became socially rooted when it secured a house plot, field, tenancy or long-term occupation. Rising demand increased land values and encouraged subdivision. Families with cash, salaried employment or trading income could purchase plots, while poorer cultivators often entered as tenants, labourers or occupants of marginal land. Migration thus altered class relations as well as population counts.

69.15 Forest encroachment was a settlement strategy as well as a forestry problem

Official forestry sources recorded substantial lowland forest loss through spontaneous occupation and agricultural clearing. For a land-poor household, forest-edge settlement could offer access to cultivable land outside expensive village markets. For the state, the same action appeared as illegal encroachment. The terminology therefore reflects competing claims over land rather than a neutral description of behaviour.

69.16 International migration cannot be inferred from Madhesi language or appearance

Colonial and post-colonial administrations often struggled to distinguish long-established Tarai residents from recent migrants from India. Maithili, Bhojpuri, Awadhi, Urdu and Hindi crossed the border, as did caste names and kin networks. A person's language, dress or surname was therefore not reliable evidence of foreign birth. Historical analysis must distinguish documented birthplace or migration from assumptions about identity.

69.17 The foreign-born population was concentrated in the Tarai, but it remained a minority nationally

Population scholarship using the 1961 census estimated Nepal's foreign-born population at about 337,620, or roughly 3.6 percent of the national population; the great majority were India-born and concentrated in the Tarai. This is significant for borderland history but cannot be converted into a claim that Madhesi society as a whole was immigrant. Long-established lowland populations and recent cross-border migrants were analytically distinct.

69.18 Citizenship rules turned migration history into access to land and public life

After 1951, citizenship documentation became increasingly important for land registration, government employment, political participation and other legal rights. In a border region with old cross-border kinship, weak documentation and substantial mobility, procedures could create uncertainty for people whose

residence was locally unquestioned. The politics of citizenship thus became entangled with debates over migration and national integration.

69.19 Marriage migration makes women's mobility look different from men's

Census birthplace data record many women as migrants because marriage moved them from natal to marital households. This pattern can obscure labour migration and make female mobility appear predominantly dependent even when women also worked in agriculture, markets and household enterprises. A gendered reading must distinguish marriage migration, household resettlement and independent economic movement.

69.20 Male-dominated labour migration and family settlement produced different demographic signatures

Temporary male labour movement could leave the household's main residence unchanged, while land-based resettlement more often moved spouses and children together. Over time family reunification transformed temporary destinations into permanent villages and neighbourhoods. Census sex ratios, school enrolment and household composition can therefore help identify whether a migration stream was primarily labour circulation or durable settlement.

69.21 Language geography changed through mixture rather than simple replacement

Post-1950 lowland migration increased the presence of Nepali-speaking hill-origin communities in many Tarai towns and settlement zones. Yet Maithili remained deeply rooted in the eastern and central Madhesh, while Bhojpuri, Tharu, Urdu and other languages continued in their regional domains. Schools and administration expanded Nepali without erasing the multilingual structure of the plains.

69.22 Market towns converted migration into occupational diversification

Janakpur, Birgunj, Biratnagar and smaller district centres drew traders, transport workers, teachers, clerks, artisans and service workers as well as cultivators. Migrants could move from agriculture into wage or salaried employment after settlement, while village households maintained commercial links with towns. The result was a regional labour market extending beyond agriculture.

69.23 Seasonal and circular migration continued alongside permanent settlement

Even as more households settled permanently in the Tarai, seasonal movement to Indian towns, farms and industries continued. Some families combined a Tarai farm with temporary wage work elsewhere; others maintained kin-based circuits across the border. Permanent residence therefore did not end mobility. Settlement often became the stable base from which further migration occurred.

69.24 Remittances and multi-local households helped finance land acquisition

Income earned in towns, India or foreign military service could be converted into house construction, livestock and land. Such investment linked outward migration to inward settlement. A household might therefore appear simultaneously as an out-migrant household in labour statistics and as an expanding landholder in a Tarai village.

69.25 State schemes also resettled disaster victims, ex-servicemen and other targeted groups

Official resettlement policy was not limited to generic hill peasants. Flood victims, returning migrants, landless families and former servicemen could receive priority in particular schemes. These categories show that settlement policy served welfare, security and agricultural objectives at the same time, and that the social composition of planned colonies could differ from surrounding villages.

69.26 Increasing demand reduced the amount of land available per settler

Historical resettlement summaries report a decline in the average plot size available to participating households as easily allocable land became scarcer. This is an important measure of frontier closure: migration did not move into an unlimited reserve. By the late 1970s and early 1980s, programme emphasis shifted westward partly because accessible eastern Tarai land had become more constrained.

69.27 The 1971 and 1981 censuses show the Tarai becoming Nepal's principal internal-migration destination

Official retrospective migration analysis identifies the Mountain and Hill as net-losing ecological zones and the Tarai as the principal net gainer. For 1981 it reports net losses of about 0.26 million from the Mountain and 0.42 million from the Hill, balanced by a Tarai gain of about 0.69 million. These figures confirm the direction of redistribution without identifying the legal or ethnic status of each migrant.

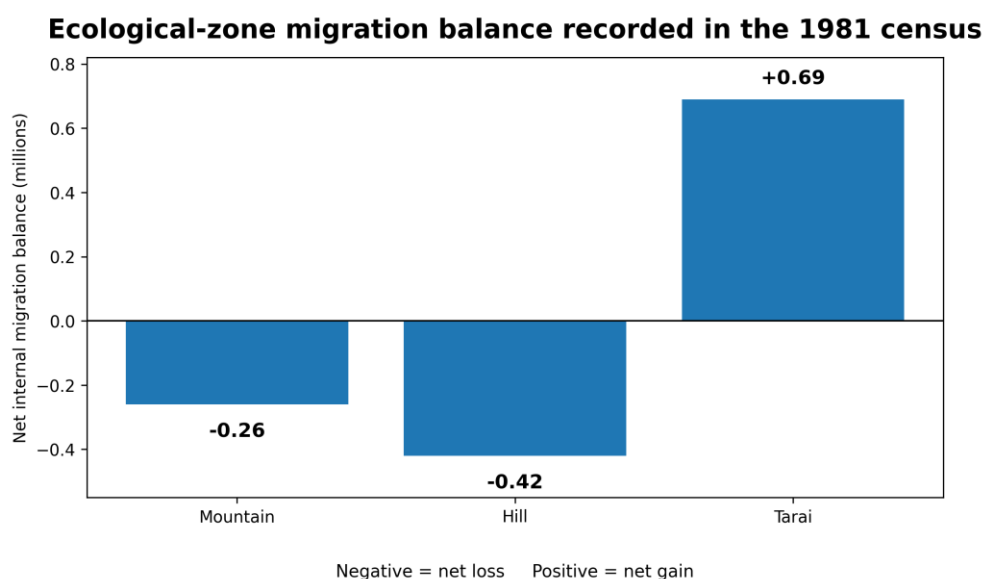


Figure 274 — Net internal migration balance by ecological zone, 1981

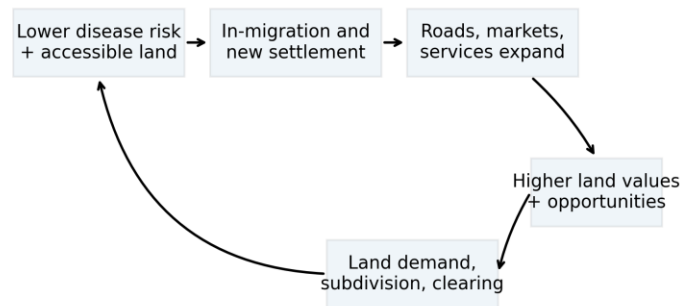
69.28 Migration accelerated lowland population growth but did not account for all of it

Between 1971 and 1981 the Tarai's population grew rapidly through both natural increase and migration. Census analysis attributes part, not all, of that growth to net internal movement. High fertility, declining mortality and the age structure of migrant households also mattered. Demographic transformation therefore cannot be reduced to a single migration rate.

69.29 The political meaning of resettlement remains contested

Development agencies described resettlement in terms of land pressure, agricultural production, disaster relief and national planning. Later Madhesi and Indigenous scholarship has emphasised unequal access to land, cultural change, citizenship and the possibility that state-sponsored movement altered local political power. These interpretations need not be collapsed into one motive: state objectives and community experiences could differ sharply.

Settlement pressure became a self-reinforcing lowland process



Forest policy, land scarcity, citizenship rules and local resistance constrained the cycle.

Figure 275 — Settlement pressure became a self-reinforcing lowland process

69.30 Conclusion: settlement created a new social geography without erasing the older borderland

Post-1950 Tarai/Madhesh society was remade through multiple streams: long-standing cross-border mobility, state-sponsored resettlement, spontaneous hill-to-lowland migration, intra-Tarai movement, marriage, labour circulation and urban growth. The outcome was not a replacement of one population by another but a more densely settled, internally differentiated and politically contested lowland. The older India–Nepal borderland economy persisted inside this new demographic geography, even as citizenship, land law, roads and state institutions gave settlement new legal and political meanings.

Table 69.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing migration and settlement

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Population censuses	birthplace, previous residence, ecological-zone flows, sex composition and broad migration direction	definitions and district boundaries change; birthplace does not reveal motive, citizenship or ethnic identity
Resettlement-company and department records	planned schemes, family allotments, target groups, hectares distributed and administrative objectives	formal programmes captured only a minority of total settlement
Land, cadastral and tenancy records	purchase, allotment, tenancy, subdivision and the conversion of migration into durable property claims	poor households and informal occupants can be under-recorded
Forest and encroachment records	settlement on forest margins, clearance, regularisation and changing pressure on land	administrative labels such as “encroacher” reflect state tenure categories, not neutral social descriptions

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
District and market records	roadside growth, bazaars, schools, transport links and changing settlement hierarchy	coverage is uneven and usually stronger for administrative centres than villages
Oral/community histories	kin networks, displacement, local memory, gendered movement and the social meaning of settlement	retrospective memory requires dating control and comparison with contemporary records

Chapter 70 — Language, Education and Cultural Institutions in Nepal

Language, education and cultural institutions in Nepal Mithila/Madhesh have never formed a single hierarchy. Maithili has long been a language of household life, ritual, literature, performance and cross-border communication, while Sanskrit, Nepali, Hindi, Urdu, Bhojpuri, Bajjika and English have occupied different institutional niches at different times. The modern state expanded schools, examinations, universities, academies and broadcasting, but it also attached unequal prestige and administrative power to languages. The historical problem is therefore not whether Maithili survived, but how institutions distributed literacy, credentials, public visibility and cultural authority among languages. This chapter treats language policy, schooling and cultural organisation together because each changed the social value of the others.

70.1 Linguistic plurality in the Nepal Tarai predates the modern school system

The eastern and central Tarai/Madhesh were multilingual before mass schooling. Maithili dominated large parts of Saptari, Siraha, Dhanusha and Mahottari, but speech communities interacted with Bhojpuri, Bajjika, Urdu, Nepali, Sanskrit and Hindi through markets, courts, pilgrimage, marriage and religious instruction. A language could be dominant in the household and village while another carried administrative, scholastic or commercial prestige. The expansion of modern education therefore entered an already layered linguistic ecology rather than creating one from nothing.

70.2 Census language categories measure state classification as well as speech

The 1952/54 census reported 918,211 persons under ‘Maithili and dialects’; the 1961 count was 1,130,402 and the 1971 count 1,327,242. Later censuses recorded 2.192 million Maithili mother-tongue speakers in 1991, 2.798 million in 2001, 3.093 million in 2011 and 3.222 million in 2021. These figures establish the large demographic base of Maithili, but they are not a simple time series of language shift. Census categories, dialect boundaries, enumerator practice and the treatment of Hindi, Bajjika and related speech changed over time.

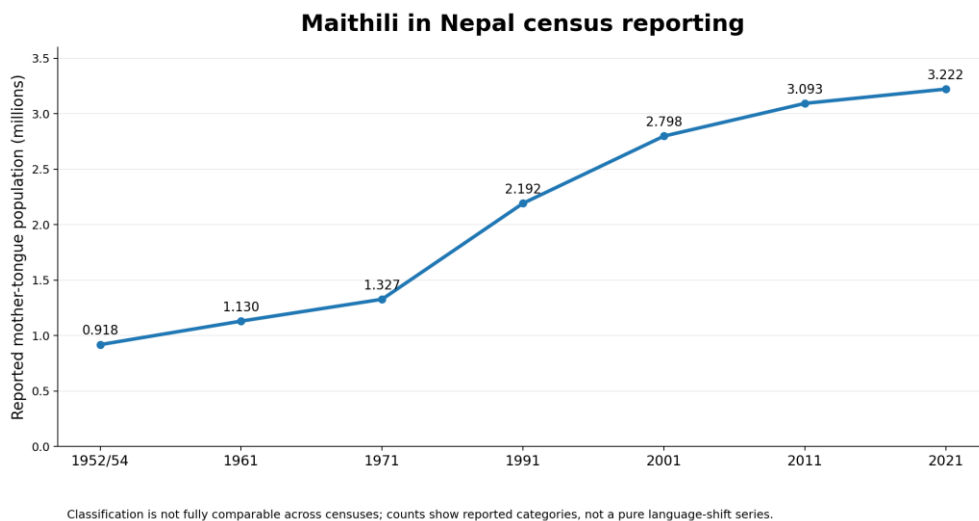


Figure 276 — Reported Maithili mother-tongue population in Nepal censuses, 1952/54–2021

70.3 Before mass education, learning moved through family, pathshala, monastery, mosque and apprenticeship

Literacy and learning were historically distributed through institutions smaller than the modern school. Sanskrit pathshalas trained limited groups in grammar, ritual and scholastic texts; makhtabs and mosque-based instruction supported Islamic literacy; temple establishments preserved liturgical and genealogical knowledge; merchant and scribal families taught account keeping; and women transmitted songs, ritual vocabularies, painting conventions and household knowledge outside formal curricula. These systems were unequal in access, yet they remind us that cultural reproduction cannot be measured only by school enrolment.

70.4 Rana-era education was narrow, and access to state-recognised schooling remained highly unequal

The Rana state did not create universal public education. Elite schools and a small number of language pathshalas expanded selectively, while most rural households relied on local or informal learning. Nepali gained importance as the language associated with the central state, and English became a route into elite administration. In the Tarai, this left a gap between the language of everyday life and the languages rewarded by formal institutions. That gap became more consequential once certificates and examinations began to govern public employment.

70.5 The political opening after 1951 converted education into a national development project

After the end of Rana rule, education expanded rapidly in both aspiration and institutional reach. New schools, teacher training, curricula and national planning were expected to create citizens as well as skilled workers. For Nepal Mithila/Madhesh, this expansion offered unprecedented access to schooling, but it also raised a fundamental language question: whether a Maithili-speaking child would enter literacy through the familiar language of home or through Nepali, the language tied to state-wide administration and national integration.

70.6 The 1956 National Education Planning Commission placed Nepali at the centre of national schooling

The National Education Planning Commission report of 1956 treated a common national language as an instrument of integration and recommended Nepali as the principal medium of instruction. Mother-tongue use, where acknowledged, was framed mainly as a bridge toward Nepali rather than as an equal long-term institutional medium. This approach had lasting consequences because school expansion linked educational success to command of Nepali. For Maithili-speaking communities, learning Nepali could increase mobility while simultaneously narrowing the institutional space available to Maithili.

70.7 The 1957 attempt to prescribe Nepali as school medium exposed regional resistance

Language policy did not move from Kathmandu into the plains without contest. Scholarship on Nepal's language politics records that the K. I. Singh government in 1957 prescribed Nepali as the medium of school education and encountered resistance, including in the Tarai. Political instability limited the directive's

durable implementation, but the episode is important because it shows that educational language was already understood as a question of citizenship and regional dignity, not merely classroom technique.

70.8 The 1962 Constitution elevated Nepali within a more centralised national order

The Panchayat-era constitution declared Nepali in Devanagari the national language. This constitutional hierarchy reinforced the association between Nepali, administration and national belonging. Other languages continued to thrive in homes, markets, literature, song and ritual, but they did not possess comparable state authority. In education, the result was a strong incentive for families to acquire Nepali even when their everyday linguistic world was Maithili. Language competence increasingly became a form of institutional capital.

70.9 Panchayat language policy strengthened a monolingual national ideal without eliminating multilingual practice

The Panchayat state is often summarised by the slogan of one language, one dress and one country. Its institutions privileged Nepali in administration, schooling and national media, but actual society remained multilingual. Teachers translated informally, pupils discussed lessons in familiar languages, markets operated through mixed repertoires, and Maithili literary and ritual life continued. The historical effect was therefore not the disappearance of Maithili but a widening separation between the language of everyday cultural reproduction and the language most rewarded by state credentials.

70.10 The National Education System Plan deepened curricular centralisation

The National Education System Plan of the early 1970s standardised curricula, examinations, school organisation and teacher preparation across Nepal. Centralisation made educational provision more legible to the state, but it also made language choice less locally negotiable. A common curriculum could expand access and comparability while reducing space for regional history, local literature and mother-tongue pedagogy. In Nepal Mithila/Madhesh, the institutional gain of more schooling therefore coexisted with the cultural cost of a narrower official linguistic repertoire.

70.11 Ramswarup Ramsagar Multiple Campus made Janakpur a durable centre of higher education

Ramswarup Ramsagar Multiple Campus was established in Janakpur in 1957 and later became a constituent campus of Tribhuvan University. Its importance was larger than its course list. It enabled students from the eastern and central Tarai to pursue higher education without relocating permanently to Kathmandu or India, created a local teaching profession, supported libraries and debating societies, and helped make Janakpur a regional intellectual centre. Higher education also produced a bilingual and often multilingual public whose academic credentials were largely Nepali- or English-mediated while social life remained strongly Maithili.

70.12 Tribhuvan University connected regional campuses to a national credential system

The establishment of Tribhuvan University in 1959 created a national framework for higher education, examinations and academic disciplines. Affiliated and constituent campuses brought Janakpur and other Tarai centres into that system. This integration expanded social mobility but also reinforced linguistic

hierarchies because many high-status disciplines operated through Nepali and English. Maithili could be studied, written and researched, yet the language of institutional advancement often differed from the language of cultural belonging. That duality became characteristic of educated Madhesh society.

Language and education policy: key institutional turns

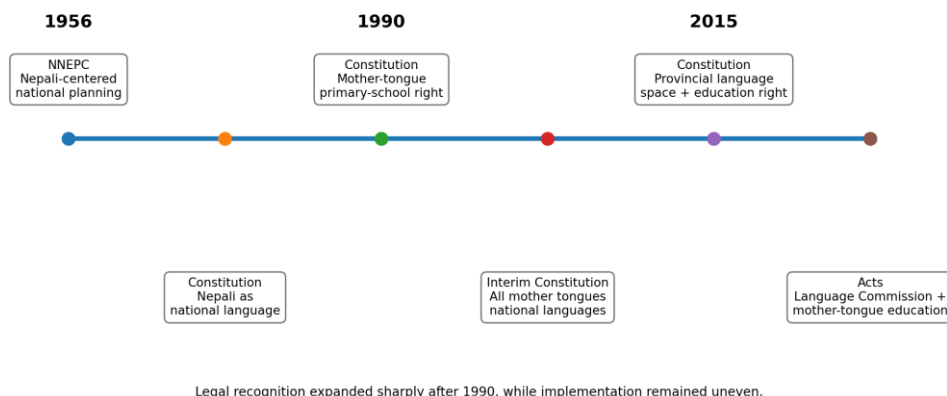


Figure 277 — Major language-and-education policy turns in Nepal, 1956–2018

70.13 Sanskrit learning persisted alongside modern secular education

Modern schools did not simply replace Sanskrit institutions. Pathshalas, religious schools and private teachers continued to transmit grammar, ritual and classical texts, while Sanskrit remained important to temple culture and certain scholarly lineages in Mithila. Nepal later created a dedicated Sanskrit university in 1986, institutionalising Sanskrit at university level. For Nepal Mithila/Madhesh, this produced a three-level knowledge environment in which Sanskrit carried classical authority, Nepali and English carried much modern credential power, and Maithili remained central to regional cultural communication.

70.14 The Nepal Academy created a national institution for language, literature and culture in 1957

The Nepal Academy traces its establishment to 1957 as a state-supported body for literature, art and scholarship. Its later remit explicitly includes the languages, literatures, cultures, social sciences and philosophy of Nepal. National academies can broaden recognition by commissioning dictionaries, histories, editions and research, but they also select what enters the national canon. The institutional history of Maithili in Nepal must therefore be read through both inclusion and scale: recognition by a central academy does not by itself guarantee equivalent publishing, staffing or educational use across languages.

70.15 Cultural institutions include periodicals, theatre, radio, festivals and associations as well as academies

A narrow institutional history would miss the organisations that actually sustained Maithili public culture. Literary periodicals, dramatic groups, festival committees, temple trusts, libraries, student unions, women's art organisations and local associations created audiences and trained writers, performers and organisers. Radio and later television and digital platforms added new circuits. These institutions often worked across the India–Nepal border, drawing on books, performers and intellectual networks from Bihar while producing specifically Nepali forms of Maithili public life.

70.16 Maithili print in Nepal developed within a Devanagari-dominant technological environment

Maithili possessed older manuscript traditions in Tirhuta/Mithilakshar, but twentieth-century publishing in Nepal increasingly relied on Devanagari because printing, type availability, schooling and state administration were organised around it. This shift should not be misread as proof that Tirhuta lacked cultural value. Script choice was partly institutional and technological. Devanagari lowered printing costs and connected Maithili to school and newspaper infrastructures, while Tirhuta survived in manuscripts, ritual memory, specialist learning and later revival efforts.

70.17 Census simplification during the Panchayat decades makes linguistic decline difficult to interpret

The number of language labels reported in Nepal's censuses contracted sharply during the Panchayat period and expanded again after 1990. Part of this pattern reflects classification rules and political visibility rather than biological or cultural disappearance of speech communities. Historical analysis should therefore avoid reading every census change as spontaneous language assimilation. For Maithili, Bhojpur, Bajjika and Hindi especially, overlapping labels and changing enumeration practice affected what the state counted. Language statistics are evidence about administration as well as about speakers.

70.18 The 1990 Constitution marked a constitutional turn toward linguistic recognition

The Constitution of the Kingdom of Nepal, 1990 retained Nepali in Devanagari as the national and official language, but it also recognised other mother tongues as national languages. It guaranteed communities the right to preserve and promote their language, script and culture and allowed communities to run schools providing primary education in the mother tongue. The shift was significant because cultural rights became constitutional claims. Yet the burden of establishing and operating schools largely remained on communities, so formal recognition did not automatically produce a Maithili-medium public-school system.

70.19 The 1994 language-policy recommendations broadened the agenda from recognition to planning

The National Languages Policy Recommendation Commission of the 1990s proposed a more systematic approach to Nepal's linguistic diversity: documentation, dictionaries, orthographies, textbooks, mother-tongue education and institutional research. Its importance lay in treating minority and regional languages as objects of public planning rather than private survival. Implementation remained uneven, but the report helped shift the policy vocabulary from tolerance toward preservation and development. For Maithili, the challenge was no longer only legal recognition but the institutional capacity to create teachers, materials and sustained domains of use.

70.20 The 2007 Interim Constitution made multilingual citizenship more explicit

The Interim Constitution declared all mother tongues spoken in Nepal to be national languages, retained Nepali in Devanagari as the official language, and protected the use of mother tongues in local bodies subject to official translation. It also recognised the right of communities to basic education in their mother tongue and to preserve language, script, culture and heritage. These provisions were a major symbolic break with the monolingual Panchayat ideal. Their practical effect, however, depended on curricula, teacher supply, local budgets and school-level decisions.

Institutional ecology of language, learning and culture

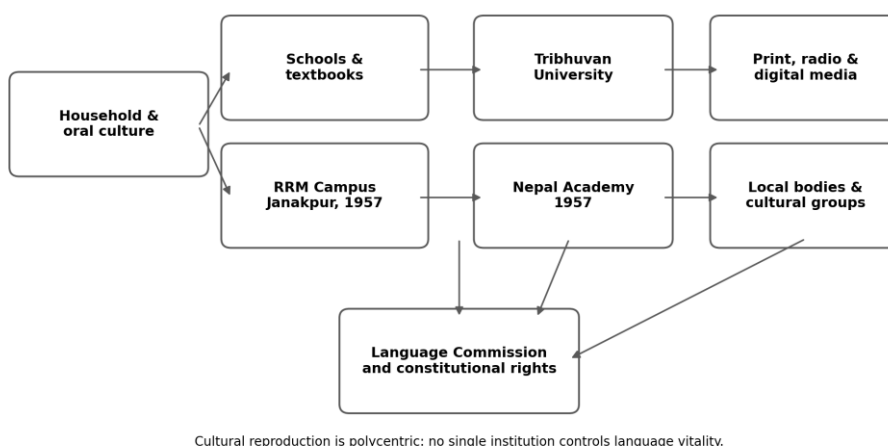


Figure 278 — Institutional ecology of language, learning and culture in Nepal

70.21 The 2015 Constitution widened the legal space for provincial and mother-tongue institutions

The Constitution of Nepal, 2015 states that all mother tongues are languages of the nation. Nepali in Devanagari remains the federal official language, while provinces may by law designate one or more additional languages spoken by a majority within the province for official use. Article 31 protects the right of communities to education in their mother tongue and to establish educational institutions; Article 32 protects language, script, culture and heritage. This framework transformed language policy from a single national hierarchy into a potentially federal negotiation.

70.22 The Language Commission institutionalised research and recommendation after federalisation

Article 287 of the 2015 Constitution required a Language Commission, and the Language Commission Act of 2017 defined its statutory basis. The commission studies Nepal's languages, recommends criteria for official-language recognition, documents linguistic resources and advises on development. This is historically important because language expertise acquired a dedicated constitutional institution. For Madhesh, commission recommendations provide evidence for the public weight of Maithili, Bhojpuri, Bajjika and other languages, but recommendations and enacted provincial practice must be kept analytically distinct.

70.23 The 2018 education law translated constitutional language rights into a clearer statutory framework

The Compulsory and Free Education Act defines mother-tongue education and provides for education through a community's mother tongue, including the possibility of schools or educational institutions established for that purpose. It also recognises mother-tongue-based multilingual education. This moved policy beyond a purely symbolic right. Yet statutes do not produce classrooms on their own. A school still requires teachers who can teach subject content, suitable textbooks, assessment arrangements, administrative support and parental confidence in the educational value of the chosen medium.

70.24 The implementation gap is now better documented than the absence of policy

UNESCO, UNICEF and Nepal-based research consistently identify a gap between multilingual policy and classroom practice. Obstacles include shortages of trained teachers, limited reading materials, mixed-language classrooms, weak local planning, insufficient funding and uncertainty over assessment. These constraints matter in Maithili-speaking areas because a language can be demographically large yet still lack full institutional depth across mathematics, science, administration and teacher training. Speaker numbers alone do not determine the strength of an educational medium.

70.25 English-medium expansion has created a new hierarchy alongside the older Nepali–Maithili tension

Since the 1990s and especially in the twenty-first century, English has expanded as a language of private schooling, higher education, migration aspiration and perceived economic mobility. Public schools have also adopted English-medium programmes in some areas to compete for enrolment. Maithili-speaking parents may therefore face a three-way decision: cultural familiarity in Maithili, national institutional access through Nepali, and imagined global opportunity through English. This is not simply language abandonment; it is a response to unequal labour-market rewards attached to different educational codes.

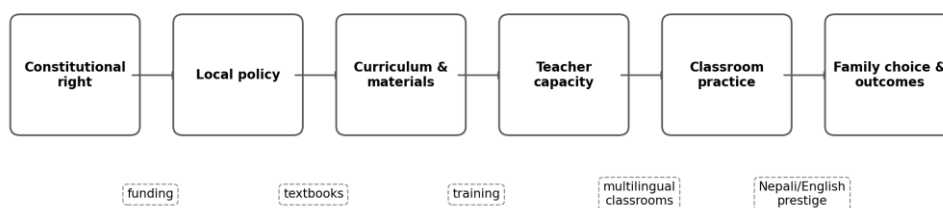
70.26 Teaching Maithili as a subject is institutionally different from using it as a medium

A curriculum may include Maithili language and literature while mathematics, science and social studies remain in Nepali or English. The distinction is crucial. Subject teaching preserves literacy and literary knowledge, but medium-of-instruction status builds technical vocabulary, teacher competence and everyday academic use. Nepal has developed mother-tongue curricular materials in several languages including Maithili, yet implementation varies widely. Historical claims about ‘Maithili education’ should therefore specify whether Maithili is a subject, a classroom support language or the principal medium.

70.27 The 2021 census confirms Maithili’s national scale while also revealing a multilingual society

The 2021 census reported 3,222,389 Maithili mother-tongue speakers, about 11.05 percent of Nepal’s population, making Maithili the country’s second-largest reported mother tongue after Nepali. The same census records large Bhojpuri, Tharu, Bajjika, Avadhi and Urdu populations, among many others. Maithili’s demographic strength gives it unusual institutional potential among Nepal’s non-Nepali languages, but scale does not remove the need for local planning because Madhesh classrooms and municipalities are themselves multilingual rather than linguistically uniform.

From language right to classroom practice



Recognition is necessary but not sufficient: implementation depends on institutions, resources and incentives.

Figure 279 — From constitutional language right to classroom practice

70.28 Madhesh Province demonstrates why federal language policy cannot be reduced to one regional language

Official provincial data show Maithili as the largest language in Madhesh Province, alongside very large Bhojpuri and Bajjika populations and substantial Nepali, Tharu and Urdu use. The Language Commission has recommended Maithili, Bhojpuri and Bajjika for provincial official use, with other languages relevant in specific domains. Such recommendations recognise demographic reality, but federalism requires legislation, administrative capacity, translation and staffing. A multilingual province therefore faces the harder task of building institutions that recognise several languages without simply replacing one hierarchy with another.

70.29 Cultural life remains polycentric across Janakpur, Kathmandu, local governments and transborder networks

No single academy or university defines Maithili culture in Nepal. Janakpur's campuses, publishers, temples, festivals, art organisations and media form one centre; Kathmandu-based universities, academies and national broadcasters form another; municipalities and schools constitute a third; and cross-border intellectual exchange with Bihar remains a fourth. Digital publishing has added a fifth. This polycentric structure can be resilient because cultural production does not depend on one institution, but it can also fragment resources and create uneven standards, archives and opportunities.

70.30 Conclusion: language vitality depends on institutional depth, not constitutional recognition alone

The history of language and education in Nepal is a movement from strong central privileging of Nepali toward constitutional multilingualism, but the institutional transition is incomplete. Maithili has demographic strength, a deep literary and oral tradition, a regional urban centre in Janakpur, higher-education institutions and increasing legal recognition. Yet educational medium, teacher preparation, publishing, administration and labour-market incentives remain uneven. Cultural citizenship is strongest when household transmission, schools, universities, media, archives, local government and creative institutions reinforce one another rather than operate as isolated domains.

Table 70.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing language, education and cultural institutions

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
-----------------	-----------------------	----------------------

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Population censuses	reported mother tongue, second language, regional distribution and long-run changes in classification	categories and enumeration practice change; mother tongue does not measure literacy, medium of instruction or competence
Constitutions and statutes	formal hierarchy of languages, education rights, provincial powers and institutional mandates	legal recognition does not demonstrate implementation, budgets or everyday use
Education plans and curricula	medium-of-instruction policy, centralisation, teacher training, textbook production and reform objectives	plans may state intentions not achieved in classrooms; local practice can diverge sharply
School and university records	institutional expansion, courses, enrolment, campus formation, credential pathways and local academic centres	records privilege formal education and understate household, oral and informal knowledge
Academy, Language Commission and cultural bodies	research programmes, language documentation, recommendations, publications and cultural recognition	central institutions can include a language symbolically without providing equivalent resources or domains
Ethnography, media and community evidence	actual language choice, translation, cultural associations, family strategies, festivals and informal multilingual practice	local evidence is selective and cannot automatically establish national prevalence

Chapter 71 — Gender, Citizenship and Household Economy in Madhesh

Gender, citizenship and household economy meet most visibly where formal rights encounter everyday dependence. In Nepal Mithila/Madhesh, women's economic position has been shaped not only by wages and land but also by marriage, migration, unpaid care, civil-registration documents, inheritance practice, access to schooling and the ability to move between household, market and public office. The open India–Nepal border adds another layer because cross-border marriages and kinship networks can make citizenship rules unusually consequential for mothers and children. This chapter therefore treats citizenship as an economic institution as well as a legal status, while distinguishing constitutional rights, statutory pathways and their uneven implementation in households and local administrations.

71.1 The household is an economic institution, not merely a private sphere

Most production and welfare in Madhesh pass through households before they appear in markets or state statistics. Cooking, care, fuel and water collection, livestock tending, crop processing, small trade, savings, remittances and decisions over schooling are organised through kinship and gender. A household can pool resources while distributing authority unequally. For that reason, rising household income does not automatically establish women's control over assets, nor does female employment necessarily remove unpaid obligations. The historical unit of analysis must therefore include both market income and the allocation of work, property and decision-making inside the family.

71.2 Women's agricultural work has often been economically indispensable but statistically obscured

Women have long participated in transplanting, weeding, harvesting, fodder collection, livestock care, seed management, post-harvest processing and household food production. Yet the visibility of this work depends on statistical definition. Modern labour-force standards count work for pay or profit differently from production for a household's own final use. A woman may therefore perform many hours of economically necessary farm work while being classified outside the labour force. This distinction is particularly important in rural Madhesh, where family farming and own-use production remain major components of livelihood.

71.3 Unpaid care constrains time, mobility and the kinds of paid work women can accept

Child care, elder care, cooking, cleaning and other domestic services are productive activities even when no wage is attached to them. Contemporary Nepal-wide evidence shows that women carry a disproportionate share of these responsibilities, and household duties are a major reason women give for not seeking paid work. In Madhesh the constraint can be intensified by large households, limited care services, transport conditions and norms around women's mobility. The result is not simply lower employment; it is concentration in home-based, flexible, seasonal or family work that can be combined with care.

71.4 Marriage links property, residence and labour across households

Marriage in much of the region has historically been virilocal, moving a bride toward the husband's household while preserving strong natal-family ties. This movement reallocates labour as well as residence. A

newly married woman may enter agricultural work, domestic production and elder care without acquiring equivalent control over land or income. Marriage also changes the documentary chain connecting birth registration, citizenship, land records, bank accounts and children's documentation. Cross-border marriages between Nepal and India add a further legal dimension because kinship geography and citizenship geography do not coincide.

71.5 Census migration data show why women's mobility cannot be read as labour migration alone

In Madhesh Province, the 2021 census records a far lower share of women than men living in the same local level in which they were born. Much of this sex difference reflects marriage-related movement rather than independent labour migration. Treating all female mobility as economic migration would therefore misread the evidence. At the same time, marriage migration can have major economic consequences because it shifts women between landholding systems, labour markets and documentation regimes. The relevant question is not only why a woman moved, but what rights and resources became available after the move.

71.6 Citizenship documents function as economic infrastructure

A citizenship certificate is evidence of political membership, but in practice it can also be a gateway to other documents and transactions. Land registration, formal employment, banking, passports, voter registration, social protection and the documentation of children may depend directly or indirectly on civil-status records. Administrative difficulty in obtaining citizenship therefore has material consequences for household welfare. This is why citizenship controversies in Madhesh cannot be separated from economic history: documentation affects who can convert family membership and residence into legally recognised claims.

71.7 The 1990 constitutional regime still privileged paternal transmission

The 1990 Constitution represented a democratic break in many respects, but its citizenship-by-descent provision was framed through the father. This mattered throughout Nepal and was particularly visible in borderland families because marriages across the India–Nepal boundary were common and socially ordinary. A legal rule centred on paternal citizenship could convert gender into unequal capacity to secure nationality for children. The problem was not that women ceased to be citizens after marriage; it was that mothers and fathers were not positioned symmetrically as transmitters of citizenship status.

71.8 The 2007 Interim Constitution introduced 'father or mother' language but retained differentiated routes

The Interim Constitution of 2007 stated that a person born to a Nepali father or mother could qualify as a citizen by descent. That was a major normative change from the 1990 formulation. Yet the same constitutional framework also treated children of Nepali women married to foreign citizens through a distinct naturalisation route under specified conditions. The change therefore expanded maternal recognition without fully eliminating gendered differentiation. It also illustrates why constitutional slogans and actual citizenship pathways must be read together rather than treated as identical.

71.9 The 2015 Constitution combines an equal-lineage right with citizenship clauses that remain gender-conditioned

Article 38 guarantees women equal lineage rights without gender discrimination. Article 11, however, sets out detailed citizenship rules whose operation depends on parental citizenship, place of birth, residence and the identity or nationality of the father in certain cases. A child born in Nepal to a Nepali mother whose father cannot be identified may obtain citizenship by descent, but that status can change if the father is later established as foreign. The constitutional structure therefore contains both a strong equality principle and specific gender-conditioned pathways.

71.10 Foreign spouses are not treated symmetrically

Nepal's citizenship law provides a route to naturalised citizenship for a foreign woman married to a Nepali citizen, subject to statutory procedure. It does not provide an equivalent automatic spousal route for a foreign man married to a Nepali woman. In Madhesh, where cross-border marriage with Indian families is historically common, this asymmetry can shape household planning and the legal position of children. The issue should not be reduced to a single slogan: marriage, residence, the child's place of birth, parental nationality and proof of foreign citizenship all affect the applicable route.

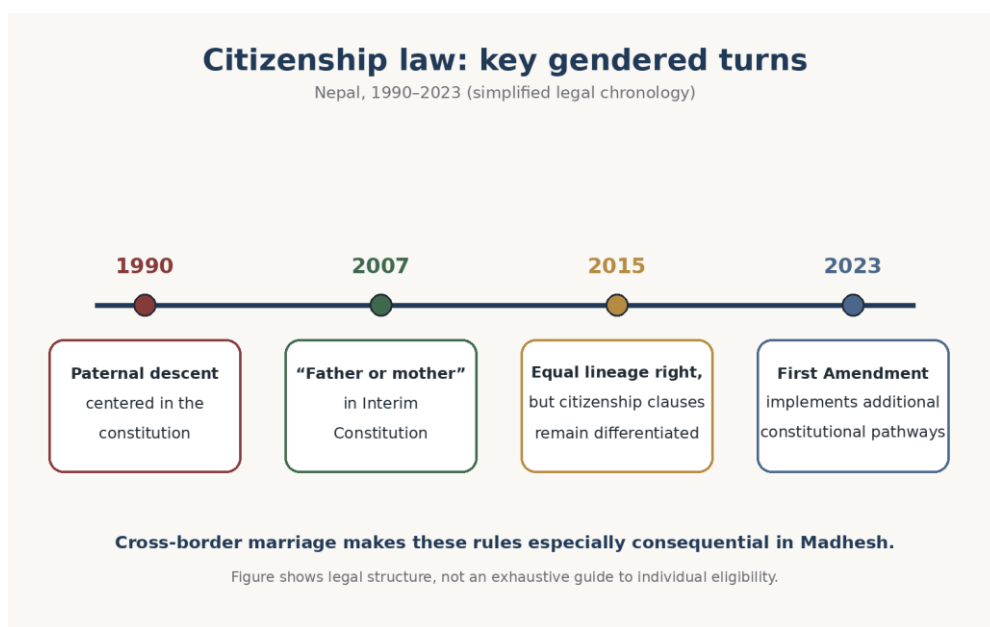


Figure 280 — Citizenship law: key gendered turns in Nepal, 1990–2023

71.11 The 2023 First Amendment addressed long-pending implementation gaps but did not erase every gender controversy

The Nepal Citizenship (First Amendment) Act, certified in 2023, implemented additional constitutional pathways after years of political dispute and enabled citizenship for categories that had remained blocked by the absence of implementing legislation. It was therefore significant for many families whose legal status had been unresolved. At the same time, the amended framework did not make every maternal and paternal route identical. For historical analysis, 2023 is best understood as an important institutional settlement within an ongoing debate over equality, documentation and borderland citizenship.

71.12 Administrative proof can become as important as formal entitlement

Even where law recognises a route to citizenship, applicants may need birth records, parental certificates, marriage documentation, residence evidence, declarations or local recommendations. Poor, rural and less-literate households are less able to absorb repeated travel, documentary correction and administrative delay. Women can be particularly exposed when their records are split between natal and marital homes or when a husband is absent through migration. The difference between a right on paper and a usable right therefore often lies in the documentary chain and the discretion of offices that verify it.

71.13 Equal inheritance rights changed the legal baseline of household property

Nepal's legal order has moved substantially toward equal inheritance and lineage rights for daughters. The Interim Constitution explicitly recognised equal rights of sons and daughters in ancestral property, and the 2015 Constitution guarantees women equal lineage rights. The National Civil Code further embeds contemporary rules of succession and family property. These changes matter because land and houses are both productive assets and sources of collateral, security and bargaining power. Yet legal equality does not by itself establish equal ownership if family transfer practices, registration costs or social expectations continue to favour men.

71.14 Agricultural land ownership remains a key test of substantive equality

The National Sample Census of Agriculture 2021/22 was designed to measure women's ownership rights in agricultural land as well as participation in farming. At national level, the official agricultural-census programme reported women's ownership in agricultural land at 34.4 percent under the relevant indicator framework, while also warning that unregistered long-term arrangements can be missed. The gap between women's agricultural labour and their documented ownership matters directly for credit, compensation, inheritance and the capacity to make independent production decisions.

71.15 Female household headship is rising, but headship is not the same as control of wealth

The 2021 census reports that 21.7 percent of households in Madhesh Province were female-headed, up sharply from 2011 but still below the national proportion. Female headship can result from widowhood, divorce, male labour migration or independent residence. It may increase women's responsibility for budgeting and farming, but it does not necessarily mean greater assets or bargaining power. A household can be female-headed because a husband is abroad while important land, migration and investment decisions remain jointly or externally controlled. Headship is therefore a demographic indicator, not a direct measure of autonomy.

71.16 Male out-migration can increase both women's authority and their workload

Labour migration removes workers from farms and households while bringing remittances into them. Wives and mothers may take over crop management, purchases, schooling decisions and dealings with local offices. At the same time, they may absorb work previously performed by men while continuing domestic and care responsibilities. Research on Nepal shows both patterns: remittances can reduce labour supply through an income effect, while male absence can also push women into farming and outside activities. The household impact depends on land, income, kin support and the duration and destination of migration.

71.17 Remittances create liquidity but not automatically equal financial power

Remittance income can pay debts, finance education, improve housing, purchase land or fund small businesses. Who decides these uses depends on household organisation. Women who receive transfers directly may exercise greater day-to-day control, while major investments can remain subject to absent husbands, senior relatives or jointly negotiated expectations. Formal banking and mobile finance can widen independent access only when identity documents, phones, literacy and proximity to financial services are available. Remittances should therefore be treated as a change in the household resource envelope rather than proof of women's empowerment.

71.18 The household economy under migration is a bundle of simultaneous gains and pressures

A migrant household may experience higher cash income, a shortage of labour, altered authority and heavier care burdens at the same time. These effects can move in opposite directions. A woman may gain control over daily expenditure while losing leisure; she may become the de facto farm manager without becoming the registered landowner; or she may leave paid work because remittances ease immediate financial pressure. The important analytical point is that migration does not have one gender effect. Its consequences depend on assets, documentation, social support and local labour demand.

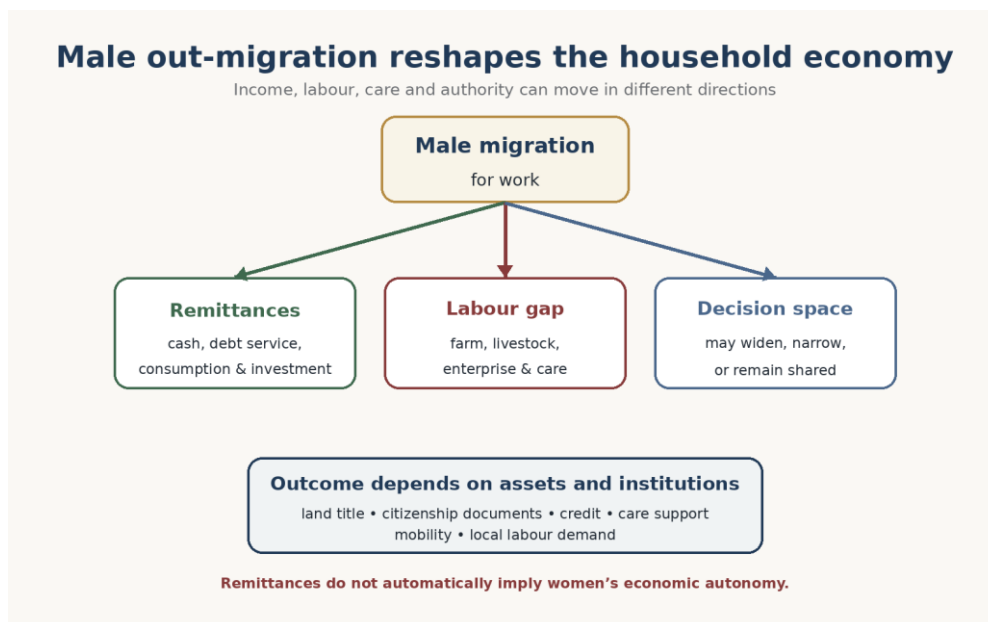


Figure 281 — Male out-migration and the household economy

71.19 Madhesh shows a large working-age labour-force participation gap

The 2021 population census reports labour-force participation among people aged 15–64 at 76.9 percent for men and 52.9 percent for women in Madhesh Province, a gap of 24 percentage points—the largest provincial gap in that age group in the census thematic analysis. This is a powerful indicator of unequal connection to recognised economic activity, but it must be interpreted alongside the definition of labour force. Own-use production and unpaid household services can remain economically important without appearing in the same way as employment for pay or profit.

71.20 Labour statistics changed when subsistence production was separated from employment

Nepal adopted the newer international labour-statistics standard in the 2017/18 Labour Force Survey. Under this approach, subsistence production for own final use is not counted as employment in the same manner as work for pay or profit. Earlier approaches could produce much higher estimates of women's participation because family farming was counted differently. The change improves conceptual clarity but can be misunderstood as evidence that women suddenly stopped working. Historical comparison therefore requires attention to measurement rules as well as social change.

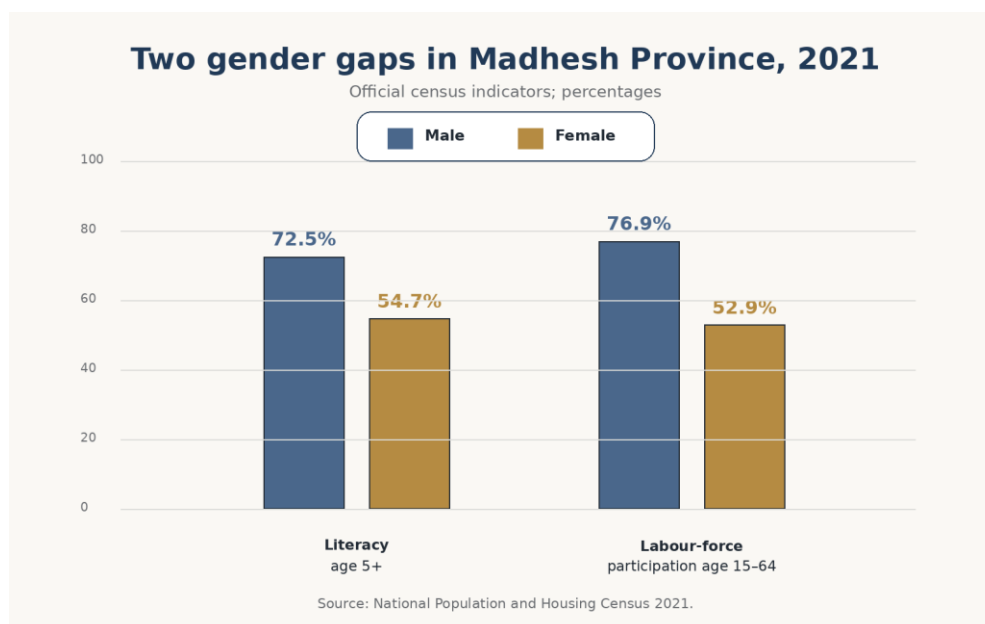


Figure 282 — Two gender gaps in Madhesh Province, 2021

71.21 Education remains one of the strongest constraints on women's economic options in Madhesh

The 2021 census reports literacy among people aged five and above in Madhesh Province at 72.5 percent for males and 54.7 percent for females. This gap affects much more than reading: it shapes access to forms, banking, smartphones, migration paperwork, technical training and formal employment. The educational disadvantage is also cumulative because early marriage and domestic responsibility can interrupt secondary schooling. Improvements in girls' education therefore have household-economic effects that extend into health decisions, documentation, enterprise and participation in local government.

71.22 Early marriage compresses the transition from schooling to adult household responsibility

The 2021 Madhesh census report shows a lower median age at first marriage for women than men and a substantial share of women marrying before eighteen. These are cohort records, not a statement that every recorded marriage complied with current law. Economically, early marriage can shorten schooling, advance childbearing and increase unpaid care at precisely the age when skills and labour-market experience would otherwise accumulate. The effect is not uniform, but the timing of marriage is a major bridge between gender demography and household economy.

71.23 Reproductive health rights are also economic rights

The 2015 Constitution recognises safe motherhood and reproductive health as women's rights, and the Safe Motherhood and Reproductive Health Rights Act of 2018 guarantees access to information, services, maternal care and specified reproductive choices. These rights affect household economy through survival, health expenditure, labour capacity and the ability to plan births. A right can still be limited by distance, service quality, cost, transport or family decision-making. In Madhesh, reproductive-health institutions therefore belong within economic history as well as medical history.

71.24 Domestic violence can include economic abuse and directly weaken livelihood security

Nepal's Domestic Violence Act defines domestic violence broadly enough to include economic as well as physical, mental and sexual harm. Economic abuse can involve denial of money, obstruction of work, control of earnings or exclusion from household resources. Such practices reduce women's ability to leave unsafe situations, finance children's needs or invest in productive activity. The law creates complaint and protection mechanisms, including roles for police, the National Women Commission and local levels, but the usability of those mechanisms depends on awareness, proximity, confidentiality and social support.

71.25 Home-based work and small enterprise can expand income while reproducing informality

Food processing, tailoring, livestock products, petty retail, craft production and other small enterprises can be compatible with care obligations and limits on mobility. This makes them important routes into income generation for women. But home-based flexibility can also mean low capital, weak market information, no employment protection and dependence on family labour. Access to credit is most useful when paired with market access, skills and control over earnings. Microenterprise should therefore be analysed as a livelihood strategy, not automatically equated with economic independence.

71.26 Mobility norms and transport conditions shape women's access to work

A job can exist and still be practically inaccessible if travel is considered unsafe, socially unacceptable or too time-consuming alongside care work. Contemporary research on women's labour-force participation in Nepal finds that household roles, job characteristics and social expectations interact rather than operating as a single cultural barrier. In the Tarai/Madhesh, settlement form, heat, road safety, public transport and expectations around interaction outside the family can all affect the radius within which women seek work. Transport policy is therefore also gendered labour-market policy.

71.27 Federal local-government quotas created a new institutional route into public authority

The post-2015 federal system guarantees substantial women's representation in local bodies. Each ward elects two women among its four ward members, one specifically a Dalit woman, and party nominations for paired mayor/deputy or chair/deputy positions are subject to gender requirements when both are fielded. This institutional design brought very large numbers of women into local government after 2017. Numeric representation does not guarantee equal influence, but it changes who gains administrative experience, public visibility and access to decisions over local budgets and services.

71.28 Dalit, Muslim, Madhesi and poor women encounter different combinations of disadvantage

‘Women of Madhesh’ are not a homogeneous social category. Caste, class, religion, language, landholding, literacy, disability and citizenship documentation shape access to resources in different ways. The reserved Dalit-woman ward seat recognises one dimension of this intersection explicitly. Muslim women may face distinct educational or mobility contexts; landless Dalit women have different economic constraints from women in wealthy landed families. Analysis that attributes every inequality to a single regional culture reproduces the very simplification that social history should avoid.

71.29 Local government can connect citizenship documents to everyday welfare

Federalism has moved many services closer to households: civil registration, recommendations, social-protection administration, local roads, schools and some protection services now involve municipalities and rural municipalities. This can reduce distance to the state, but it can also relocate discretion rather than eliminate it. Women with weak documentation, limited literacy or restricted mobility may still need intermediaries. The most important institutional question is whether local government links identity, property, welfare and participation into a usable chain rather than requiring families to navigate each office separately.

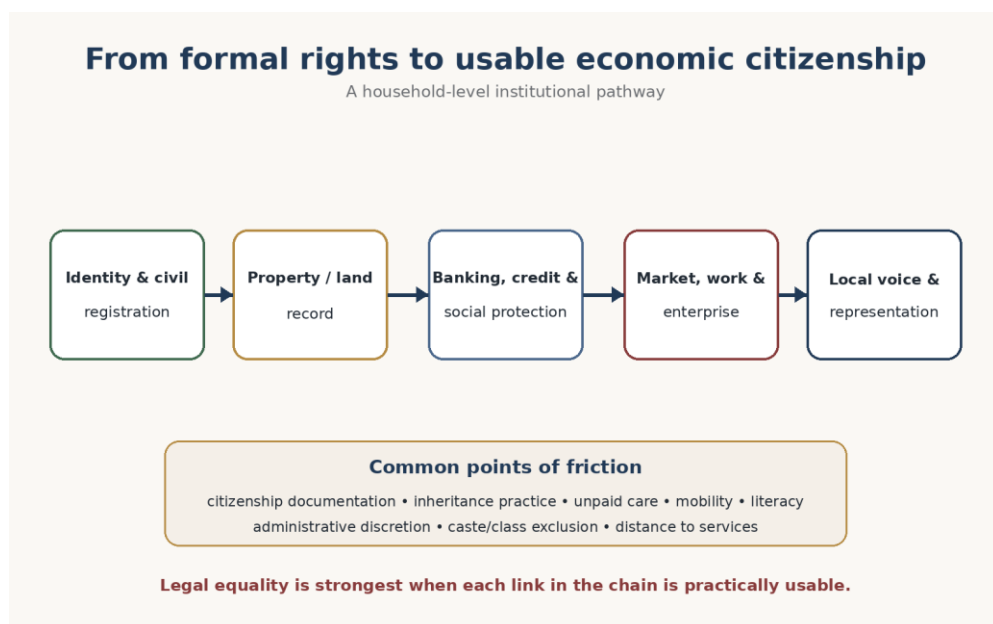


Figure 283 — From formal rights to usable economic citizenship

71.30 Conclusion: economic citizenship requires rights, documents, assets, time and voice

Gender equality in Madhesh cannot be measured by one indicator. Constitutional lineage rights matter, but so do the procedures for citizenship. Equal inheritance matters, but so does who appears on the land record. Remittances matter, but so do unpaid care and control over expenditure. Local-government quotas matter, but so does substantive influence. The household economy becomes more equal when women can combine legal identity, education, health, property, financial access, mobility, paid work and public representation. Economic citizenship is therefore best understood as a chain of mutually reinforcing capabilities rather than a single legal status.

Table 71.1 — Evidence domains for gender, citizenship and household economy

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Constitutions, citizenship statutes and civil code	formal rules on descent, naturalisation, equal lineage, inheritance, family status and documentation	formal entitlement does not show administrative implementation or household bargaining
Population census 2021	female headship, literacy, marriage, migration by place of birth and labour-force participation at provincial scale	categories describe current Madhesh Province and cannot be projected backward; labour definitions exclude some own-use production
Labour-force and social-norm research	paid work, unpaid family work, care constraints, job preferences and effects of male migration	samples and definitions vary; Nepal-wide findings may not describe every Madhesh community
Agricultural census 2021/22	women's participation in agriculture and documented ownership rights in agricultural land	unregistered or informal long-term land arrangements can be missed
Election law and local-government records	reserved seats, candidate requirements and institutional routes for women and Dalit women into local office	numeric representation does not establish substantive influence or control of budgets
Qualitative, ethnographic and household studies	decision-making, remittance use, marriage practices, mobility, informal work and documentation barriers	local findings are context-specific and should not be generalised to all caste, class or religious groups

Chapter 72 — Janakpur Art, Crafts and Cultural Economy

Janakpur's cultural economy is not simply a market for paintings. It joins ritual practice, women's domestic knowledge, portable art, craft production, pilgrimage, tourism, institutional development, public murals, training, galleries, collectors and digital circulation. The same motif can move from a wedding wall to handmade paper, from a household threshold to a textile, ceramic object or urban mural, and from a devotional setting to a tourist purchase. Such movement changes scale, materials, authorship and price, but it does not automatically sever the work from Mithila's ritual and social worlds. This chapter therefore treats art and craft as economic activities embedded in living cultural institutions rather than as detached commodities.

72.1 Cultural economy means more than the sale price of an object

A cultural economy includes the labour that creates an object, the knowledge that makes it intelligible, the institutions that certify and circulate it, and the places and events that attract buyers. In Janakpur, painting is connected to festivals, marriage, pilgrimage, women's organisations, local shops, hotels, museums, training programmes and public-space design. The economic value of Mithila art therefore depends on a network. A painting sold to a visitor carries not only pigment and paper but also stories about Janakpur, Sita, household ritual, women's skill and regional identity. That symbolic value can generate income, but it also creates arguments about authenticity and ownership.

72.2 The oldest economic foundation is unpaid domestic cultural labour

Mithila painting in Nepal developed from practices that were not originally organised for sale. Women decorated mud walls, floors, thresholds and courtyards for weddings, festivals and auspicious household rites. Arian floor designs, wall images and kohbar-associated forms were part of ritual preparation and social reproduction. They required time, materials and skill even when no money changed hands. Commercial art later drew from this reservoir of domestic expertise. The history of Janakpur painting must therefore begin with women's unpaid cultural labour rather than with the first gallery exhibition.

72.3 Ritual images create value by making places socially and cosmologically usable

A decorated wedding chamber, threshold or courtyard does not function like a commodity painting. Its value lies in consecrating space, marking a rite of passage, inviting auspiciousness and making kinship events visible. Fish, birds, lotus, bamboo, elephants, the sun and moon, deities and geometric borders can operate as signs whose meanings depend on context. When these motifs move to paper or cloth, some ritual functions are reduced while visual identity remains. Cultural-economy analysis must therefore distinguish ritual use-value from exchange-value without assuming that the two are mutually exclusive.

72.4 Mithila art is internally diverse rather than a single timeless style

Market labels often compress a diverse region into one visual brand. Historically, media, motifs and line traditions varied by locality, caste, household and ritual purpose. Scholarship on Mithila painting has also shown the importance of godna-inspired work and the expansion of recognition beyond elite-caste traditions. In Janakpur, collective institutions brought women of different social backgrounds into shared production spaces. The result was not the disappearance of difference but a new arena in which individual styles could become visible to buyers, curators and other artists.

72.5 Portable media transformed the economic possibilities of ephemeral wall art

Wall and floor paintings are tied to place and often disappear through weathering, replastering or the end of a ritual cycle. Portable surfaces allow an image to travel. The transfer of Janakpur designs to paper therefore changed the economic geography of the art: work made near Janakpur could be exhibited in Kathmandu, sold to visitors, exported or collected abroad. Portability also encouraged signatures, repeat production, storage and price comparison. These are not merely technical changes; they alter how artistic labour becomes measurable and marketable.

72.6 The 1989 women's art project was an institutional turning point, not the origin of the tradition

Claire Burkert's documentation of village wall painting led to the formation of a women's art project in Janakpur in 1989. A small group of women experimented with adapting their existing visual knowledge to saleable formats. The significance of 1989 lies in institutionalisation: a domestic and ritual repertoire entered a sustained organisational setting devoted to income generation, training and public circulation. It would be historically wrong to date Mithila art itself to 1989; what began then was a particular modern organisational and market phase.

72.7 Lokta paper, brushes and acrylic paint helped crystallise a recognisable Janakpur market form

Early experiments tested surfaces and pigments that could retain something of the texture and spontaneity of wall painting while surviving transport and handling. Handmade Nepali lokta paper offered a rough surface, and acrylic paint proved practical for durable colour. Brushes replaced some of the sticks, fingers and homemade applicators used in domestic settings. These material decisions created a hybrid product: visibly connected to Mithila house painting yet suited to galleries and buyers. The medium itself thus joined two regional economies—the Mithila visual tradition and Nepal’s handmade-paper craft sector.

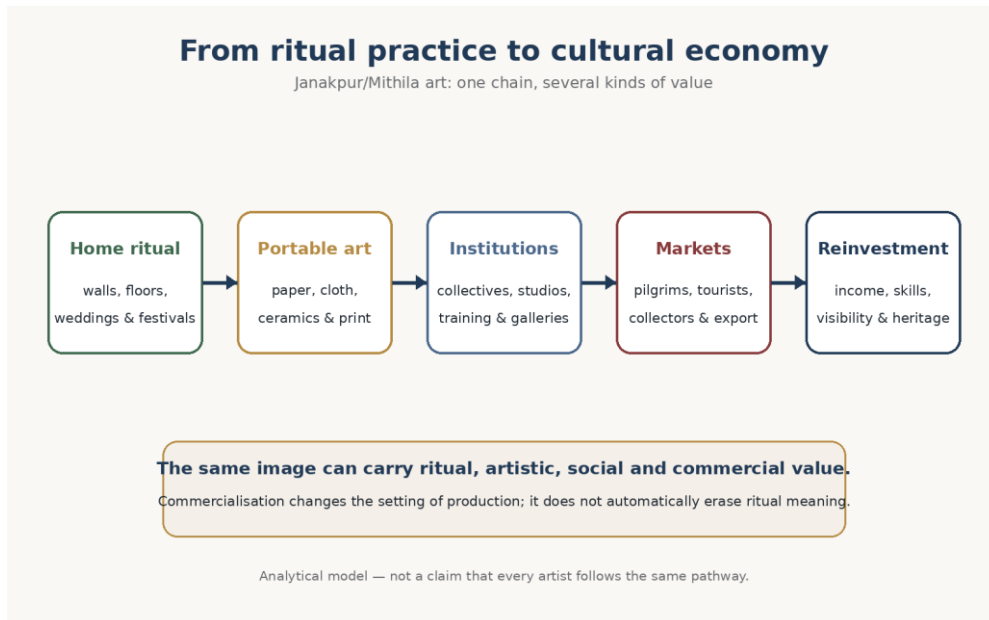


Figure 284 — From ritual practice to cultural economy

72.8 The first Kathmandu exhibition in 1990 connected village artists to a national art public

The first exhibition of the Janakpur women’s works on paper was held at the American Library in Kathmandu in 1990, just after the democratic movement. Exhibition changed the audience. Paintings were no longer seen only by kin, neighbours or ritual participants but by urban visitors, cultural institutions and potential patrons. The event also helped make individual artists legible within Nepal’s national art world. Recognition outside Janakpur became a form of cultural capital that could later support sales, travel, commissions and international exhibition.

72.9 Registration and a permanent centre converted a project into an institution

The Janakpur Women’s Development Center emerged from the earlier art project and was registered in the early 1990s; a purpose-built centre followed at Kuwa near Janakpur. The institution mattered economically because it concentrated production, training, storage, sales and management. It also created a workplace where women could meet outside the household and develop organisational skills. A cultural product thus supported a new social infrastructure: women were not only painters but members of an institution that had to manage orders, materials, quality, accounts and relations with buyers.

72.10 Collective work changed women's social worlds as well as their incomes

The centre's importance cannot be measured only by wages or export sales. For women who had limited mobility or formal education, travelling from villages to a shared workplace created new networks across caste and locality. Training expanded beyond painting to literacy, management, health, gender awareness and business skills. Economic empowerment therefore operated through several channels: earnings, confidence, public recognition, organisational experience and the ability to identify oneself as an artist. Research nevertheless cautions against treating craft income as an automatic cure for wider patriarchal constraints.

72.11 Commercialisation strengthened individual authorship

Domestic ritual arts are often collective, anonymous or attributed to households rather than named individuals. Paper painting and gallery circulation encouraged signatures and distinctive personal repertoires. Viewers began to recognise particular artists by composition, subject matter and line. Individual authorship could increase bargaining power and reputation, but it also changed the social meaning of production. A work now had a creator whose name could travel with it, making attribution itself part of economic value.

72.12 New subjects made contemporary life part of the Janakpur visual archive

Commercial and institutional settings did not freeze artists into mythological subjects. Janakpur painters have represented buses, bicycles, brick factories, roads, machinery, health campaigns, voting, gender inequality and other scenes of contemporary life. The shift is important because it demonstrates artistic agency. Tradition became a visual language through which artists commented on changing society. Contemporary subject matter also widened the market: a painting could be devotional, narrative, humorous, political or autobiographical while retaining Mithila compositional conventions.

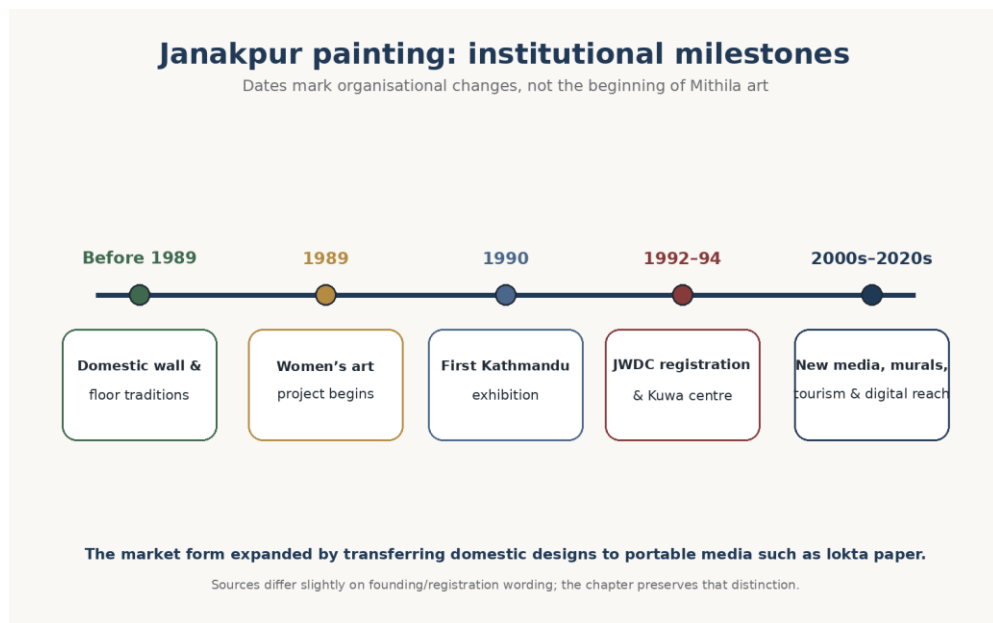


Figure 285 — Janakpur painting: institutional milestones

72.13 Craft diversification reduced dependence on a single product

The cultural economy around Janakpur expanded beyond paintings on paper. Women's organisations and craft centres developed ceramics, papier-mâché, mirrors, textiles, embroidery, screen-printed cloth, stationery, bags and decorative household objects. Diversification matters because tourist demand is uneven

and paintings vary greatly in price and size. Smaller objects can reach buyers who do not purchase framed art. At the same time, moving motifs onto many surfaces can turn a local aesthetic into a broader design system.

72.14 Ceramics and papier-mâché translate two-dimensional motifs into objects of daily use

When fish, birds, flowers or geometric borders appear on cups, plates, candle stands or papier-mâché forms, Mithila art enters domestic consumption in a new way. The object can be used, displayed or gifted. This creates collaboration between painting and other craft skills, and it changes production planning because shape, firing, breakage, packing and transport matter alongside drawing. Such diversification is economically useful but should not be confused with continuity of ritual function; a decorated mug and a wedding-wall painting occupy very different cultural contexts.

72.15 Textiles, sewing and screen printing connect art to repeatable production

Textile and screen-print work can reproduce motifs in larger quantities than unique paintings. Cushion covers, tablecloths, clothing, bags and printed household textiles expand the consumer base and allow coordinated product lines. Repeatability can stabilise sales, yet it also introduces questions about design ownership and the division of labour between designer, printer and sewer. The cultural economy thus moves from the single authored artwork toward workshop production, where value is created collectively.

72.16 Every craft object passes through a production chain

The visible artist is only one participant in the final price. Paper, paint, cloth, clay, firing, stitching, framing, storage, transport, retail space, commissions, packaging and marketing all create costs. Institutions can reduce some costs by pooling materials and negotiating orders, but they also require administration. Understanding the chain helps explain why the price paid by a final buyer is not identical to the artist's income. It also shows why direct sales at centres, fairs or studios can have different economic effects from sales through distant intermediaries.

72.17 Galleries, exporters and collectors expand markets while reshaping taste

External intermediaries make it possible for Janakpur art to circulate internationally, but they also influence what is selected. Buyers may prefer particular colours, sizes, themes or notions of 'traditional' appearance. Coralynn Davis has shown the tension created when consumers value Janakpur art partly because they imagine its producers as traditional village women, even as successful artists become more mobile, educated and professionally self-aware. Market expansion can therefore reward an image of authenticity that artists themselves are already transforming.

72.18 Pilgrimage turns Janakpur's sacred geography into a market for cultural goods

Janaki Mandir, Ram Mandir, Vivah Mandap, sacred ponds and pilgrimage routes bring visitors who also consume food, lodging, transport and souvenirs. Mithila art participates in this wider pilgrimage economy. A visitor may buy a painting of Sita and Rama because the image is aesthetically attractive, because it recalls Janakpur, or because it carries devotional meaning. The same purchase can thus be souvenir, artwork and religious memory. Cultural goods help extend visitor spending beyond temple offerings and transport into artisan livelihoods.

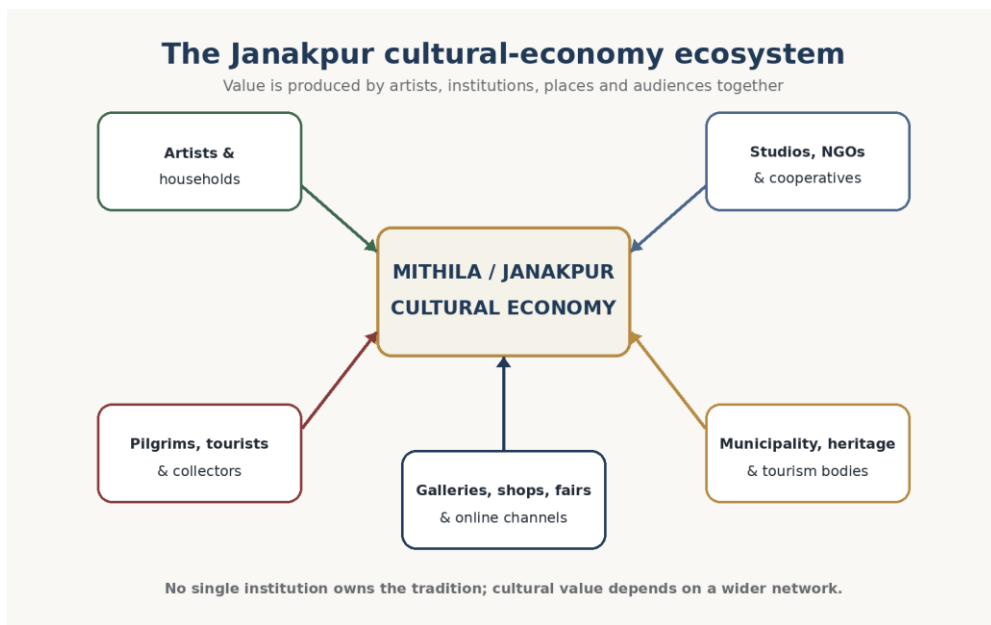


Figure 286 — The Janakpur cultural-economy ecosystem

72.19 Festivals create seasonal peaks in cultural demand

Vivah Panchami, Chhath, Holi and other festivals intensify Janakpur's public culture. Processions, temporary decoration, music, clothing, food, photography and souvenir sales create short periods of concentrated demand. Artists and craft sellers benefit from footfall, but seasonal markets are volatile. Weather, transport disruption, political events or public-health crises can reduce visitors sharply. For that reason, a resilient cultural economy needs year-round markets as well as festival peaks.

72.20 Public murals turn art into urban infrastructure and branding

Painting on public walls, streets and heritage precincts changes the scale of Mithila art. The work no longer leaves Janakpur as a portable object; it becomes part of the city's visual identity. Murals can guide visitors, beautify neglected surfaces and provide paid commissions. They also convert women artists into visible makers of public space. This is economically significant because cultural branding can influence tourism, local pride and the perceived distinctiveness of the city.

72.21 Post-COVID tourism recovery used Mithila art as both employment and destination-making

In 2021, a tourism-recovery initiative supported women artists to paint key cultural sites in Janakpur, including areas around the Ram-Janaki complex and Ganga Sagar. UNDP later highlighted this work as an example of short-term income linked to longer-term tourism recovery. The intervention is revealing because it treated art simultaneously as labour-market support, public communication and place branding. It also demonstrates how development programmes increasingly see living heritage as an economic asset rather than as decoration alone.

72.22 Recent training programmes broaden the social base of cultural production

Contemporary programmes in Madhesh have used Mithila art training for women, girls and persons with disabilities, combining artistic skill with themes of gender equality and inclusion. UNDP-supported training completed in 2024 involved twenty-five participants in an advanced programme. Such initiatives do not prove permanent employment for every trainee, but they show how craft training is being used as an entry point into livelihood and social-inclusion policy. The cultural economy thereby becomes connected to development goals beyond tourism.

72.23 Knowledge transmission is now both familial and institutional

Mithila visual knowledge was historically passed through households and ritual participation. Today transmission also occurs through workshops, NGOs, art centres, schools, exhibitions and online tutorials. Institutional teaching can document techniques that might otherwise disappear as mud houses and ritual settings change. Yet formalisation can also standardise what was once locally variable. Preservation therefore requires attention to process, vocabulary and context, not merely reproduction of familiar motifs.

72.24 Ritual value and market value can coexist without being identical

A buyer may judge a painting by originality, size, finish, artist reputation or provenance. A household may value a wall design because it is ritually appropriate for a wedding or festival. These systems of value intersect but do not coincide. Market success can support ritual knowledge by rewarding skilled artists, while a purely decorative market can detach motifs from their meanings. The important historical question is not whether commercialisation is good or bad, but which parts of the tradition are strengthened, altered or neglected by particular markets.

72.25 The authenticity paradox can punish artists for successful modernisation

Consumers of folk art often want evidence that an object is ‘traditional’. Yet professional artists must innovate, negotiate prices, use new media, travel and respond to buyers. Success can therefore undermine the very image of timelessness that the market once rewarded. This is the paradox identified in scholarship on Janakpur art: development organisations seek to empower women, while some consumers value the objects because they imagine the makers as socially unchanged. A fair cultural economy must allow artists to modernise without losing legitimacy.

72.26 Attribution and copying are economic questions as well as artistic ones

Distinctive Mithila motifs circulate widely on printed goods, signage and digital images. Reproduction can promote regional culture, but it can also separate designs from named creators. For individual artists, signatures, provenance, cataloguing and direct sales help preserve attribution. The issue is different from claiming private ownership over an entire shared tradition. Cultural policy must therefore distinguish communal heritage from the rights and reputations attached to particular contemporary works.

72.27 Digital circulation expands audiences but weakens control over reproduction

Online galleries, social media and digital photographs allow Janakpur art to reach buyers far beyond Nepal. Artists and institutions can publicise exhibitions, take commissions and maintain contact with collectors. At the same time, images can be copied instantly and used without payment or attribution. Digital

visibility therefore creates a new trade-off: it lowers the cost of reaching audiences while increasing the difficulty of controlling reproduction. Future cultural-economy strategies will need digital literacy as much as painting skill.

72.28 Heritage management now links the temple complex to sustainable cultural tourism

The Ram-Janaki Temple complex has been on Nepal's UNESCO World Heritage Tentative List since 2008. In 2025–26 UNESCO, Nepal's Department of Archaeology, Janakpurdham municipality and local stakeholders began developing an integrated management framework intended to balance conservation, tourism and community needs. This matters for artists because heritage management shapes visitor routes, public space, signage, festivals and the kinds of cultural products that tourists encounter. A temple-management plan can therefore influence the wider craft economy even when it does not directly regulate artists.

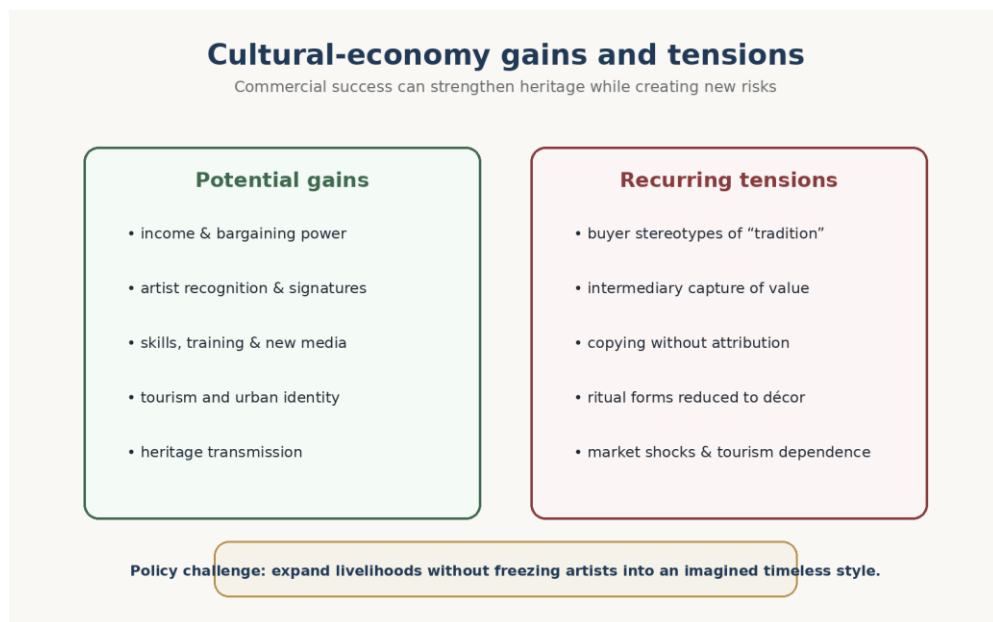


Figure 287 — Cultural-economy gains and tensions

72.29 Sustainability requires living communities, not only marketable motifs

The strongest cultural economy is one in which artists can earn, ritual practices remain meaningful, younger people can learn, and the urban environment still contains places where the tradition makes sense. Loss of mud architecture, shrinking ritual time, cheap printed imitations, market shocks and heritage degradation can all weaken the ecosystem. Sustainable policy should therefore support artists, archives, training, public commissions, direct sales and the conservation of Janakpur's living cultural landscape rather than reducing Mithila identity to a decorative brand.

72.30 Conclusion: Janakpur's art economy is a living heritage system

Janakpur demonstrates how cultural production can move from household walls to paper, ceramics, textiles, galleries, murals and global circulation without following a single linear path. Women's institutions were central to this transformation because they linked inherited skill to income, collective organisation and public recognition. Yet commercial success also introduced new inequalities and authenticity pressures. The

history of Janakpur art is therefore best understood as a negotiation among ritual, authorship, livelihood, tourism, heritage and market power. Cultural economy is strongest when artists participate in defining the value of the culture they produce.

Table 72.1 — Evidence domains for Janakpur art, crafts and cultural economy

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Household and ritual practice	motifs, ritual settings, gendered transmission, wall/floor media and local meanings	often poorly documented historically; surviving commercial art cannot substitute for lost household contexts
JWDC archives and artist accounts	1989 project formation, adaptation to paper, exhibitions, organisational work and individual artistic careers	institutional histories may foreground successful participants and cannot represent every artist in the region
Art-history and anthropology	authorship, caste/style variation, market labels, authenticity debates and changing subject matter	interpretive frameworks can overgeneralise from limited communities or buyer networks
Tourism and development programmes	public murals, training, cultural tourism, festival promotion and livelihood interventions	project outputs do not prove durable income or region-wide employment effects
Heritage-management records	Janakpur's temple setting, visitor economy and institutional efforts to balance conservation with tourism	heritage-site policy addresses only part of the broader living cultural landscape
Markets, galleries and digital circulation	portable-media sales, collector networks, online visibility and intermediary roles	prices, margins and artist earnings are often private, irregular or unavailable for systematic comparison

Chapter 73 — Border Markets, Remittances and Informal Exchange

The India–Nepal border economy of Madhesh is neither wholly formal nor wholly informal. It is a layered system in which kinship travel, weekly markets, petty retail, commercial customs trade, labour mobility, remittance transfers, currency exchange and digital payments coexist. A person may cross the border legally without immigration formalities while the goods carried remain subject to customs rules. A household may receive a bank remittance from the Gulf, hand-carried earnings from India and commodities bought in a Bihar market during the same month. This chapter therefore separates movement of people, goods and money before asking how they interact. It also treats unrecorded exchange as an empirical category rather than automatically equating it with criminal trafficking.

73.1 Border markets are institutions of a connected region

The Madhesh–Bihar border is lined not by one market but by overlapping market systems. Village haats, municipal bazaars, wholesale depots, railway stations, bus stands, customs yards and household shops connect producers and consumers on both sides. Their importance comes from repetition: the same families, carriers and traders meet across seasons, festivals and crop cycles. Market information therefore travels through social relations as well as posted prices. This continuity helps explain why border exchange can survive changes in tariff schedules, transport technology and administrative rules.

73.2 An open border for people is not a customs-free border for goods

The 1950 India–Nepal relationship permits unusually easy reciprocal movement and residence, but customs law still governs commercial goods. This distinction is essential. A farmer visiting relatives, a pilgrim travelling to Janakpur, a wage worker going to Bihar and a truck importing manufactured goods do not occupy the same legal category. Everyday speech often compresses these movements into the idea of an ‘open border’. Economic history must instead ask what is moving, in what quantity, under which documentation and through which institutional channel.

73.3 Household geography routinely crosses the political boundary

Marriage, ritual obligations, medical visits, education, employment and shopping can all connect a Madhesh household to nearby places in Bihar. The border may be international in law while daily geography remains local in travel time. This produces a distinctive household economy: expenditure decisions can include prices in two currencies, relatives in two states and services on two sides. Cross-border mobility is therefore not reducible to trade. It is part of social reproduction, and that social infrastructure in turn lowers the information costs of market exchange.

73.4 Weekly haats and small bazaars remain basic price-discovery institutions

Weekly markets aggregate dispersed rural demand. Farmers bring vegetables, grain, livestock and other produce; traders bring cloth, utensils, packaged foods, tools and consumer goods. Because many participants buy and sell in small quantities, these markets can operate below the scale captured by national trade statistics. Their significance lies in access: a household does not need a wholesale licence or truck to compare prices across the border. The haat links subsistence, petty commodity production and cash consumption within a single recurring institution.

73.5 Border pairs operate at different scales rather than forming one hierarchy

Birgunj–Raxaul is a major freight corridor, while Gaur–Bairgania, Malangwa–Sonbarsa, Jaleshwar–Bhitthamore and the Janakpur–Jayanagar axis serve different combinations of regional trade, passenger movement and local exchange. Small crossings may be economically central to nearby villages even when their recorded customs value is modest. Conversely, a large customs point can handle national imports that have little connection to local production. A regional history must therefore distinguish corridor scale from local livelihood importance.

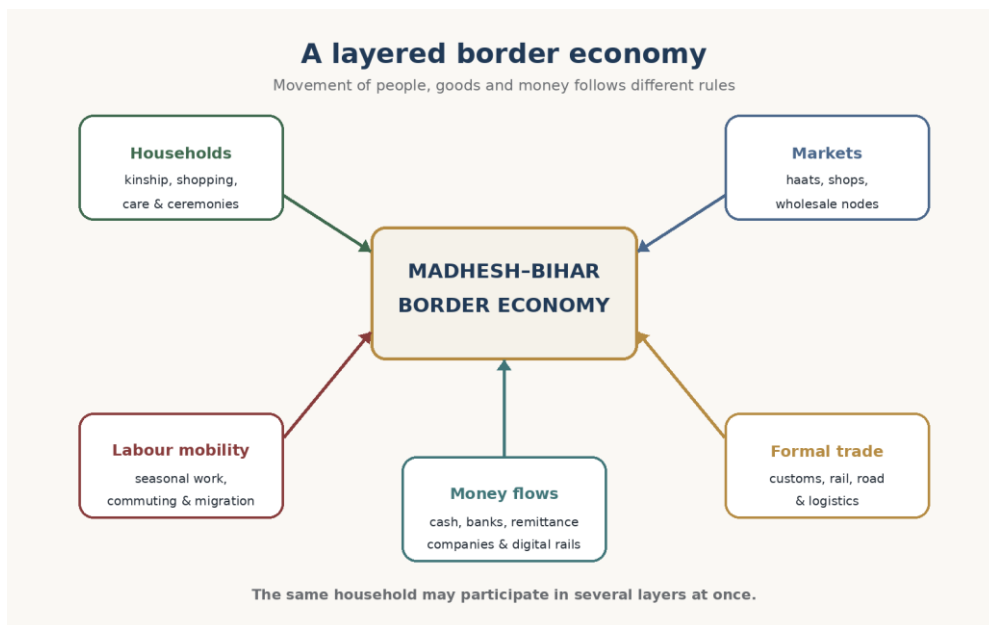


Figure 288 — A layered Madhesh–Bihar border economy

73.6 Commodity geography follows price, season, regulation and transport

The direction of exchange is not permanent. Food grains, vegetables, fruit, livestock, fertiliser, fuel, medicines, textiles, household goods and construction materials respond differently to harvests, taxes, subsidies, shortages and road conditions. A commodity may move formally in truckloads while the same item is also carried in small quantities by shoppers or petty traders. For this reason, a list of ‘goods traded across the border’ is less useful than identifying the price and regulatory conditions that make a particular route attractive at a particular time.

73.7 Petty exchange occupies a zone between household provisioning and commercial trade

A household buying a few items for consumption differs from a trader repeatedly carrying goods for resale, yet the boundary between them can be difficult to observe. Small-scale sellers may combine farming, wage labour and trade. Carriers may transport goods for several households. Such activity is economically important because it lowers entry costs for people with little capital. It is also difficult to measure because transactions are fragmented, often cash-based and may never appear in customs or business-registration records.

73.8 Informal trade is not analytically identical to contraband

Research on India–Nepal informal trade has used ‘informal’ to cover several phenomena: extra-formal petty trade, undeclared commercial exchange, tariff avoidance, trade deflection and, at the criminal extreme, prohibited goods. These should not be merged. The influential 2000–01 border survey by Nisha Taneja and Sanjib Pohit explicitly excluded high-value contraband such as narcotics and arms. Its estimates therefore describe unrecorded commodity trade, not the entire illegal economy. This distinction is necessary for both historical interpretation and policy analysis.

73.9 Historical estimates demonstrate scale but also measurement uncertainty

The 2000–01 Taneja–Pohit surveys produced large but differing estimates depending on which side of the border supplied the information. India-to-Nepal informal trade was estimated at roughly US\$180–211 million, while Nepal-to-India estimates ranged roughly US\$157–228 million. Those figures are valuable as a historical benchmark, but they are not a current estimate for Madhesh and should not be projected forward. Their variation itself is evidence: informal flows are difficult to measure even with intensive field surveys.

73.10 Trust networks substitute for some formal contracts

Repeated exchange creates reputation. Traders may extend short-term credit, share information about inspections, arrange transport or settle accounts through known intermediaries. Kinship, locality, language and long acquaintance can reduce the need for written contracts. This does not mean informal markets are risk-free. Trust can exclude outsiders, concentrate brokerage power and fail during shocks. Yet these networks help explain why informal channels persist even when formal trade is legally available: institutions are judged by cost, speed, predictability and enforceability, not simply by legal status.

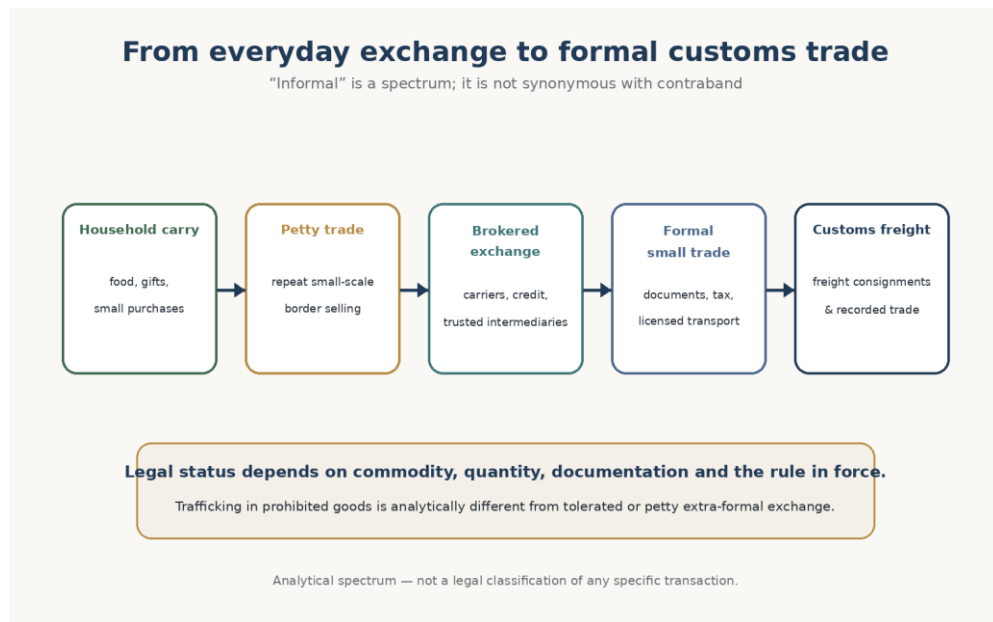


Figure 289 — From everyday exchange to formal customs trade

73.11 Carriers and brokers are part of the border's labour economy

Porters, rickshaw pullers, drivers, small transporters, loaders, commission agents, money changers and brokers convert a political line into an economic corridor. Their work is often omitted from commodity statistics because they sell services rather than goods. At busy crossings, these occupations create dense chains of small earnings. At minor crossings, one person may combine transport, brokerage and retail. Border-market analysis therefore has to include service labour, not merely the value of merchandise crossing customs.

73.12 Women participate through provisioning, petty trade and financial management

Women's border-market activity is often undercounted because it can appear as household shopping, unpaid family work or small-scale vending rather than registered enterprise. Yet women may decide where food, clothing, medicines and ritual goods are purchased, manage remittance-funded household budgets, sell

agricultural products and participate in local markets. Mobility restrictions, safety concerns, documentation and control over cash can affect their ability to trade independently. The gendered border economy is therefore visible not only in employment statistics but in who controls purchasing and remittance use.

73.13 Currency circulation is an everyday institution of the border

Indian and Nepali rupees meet constantly in border transactions. Shops and households need practical ways to compare prices, hold cash and make change. Nepal's exchange-rate system gives this everyday arithmetic a formal anchor. The Nepali rupee has been pegged to the Indian rupee since 1960, with the present level of 1 INR = 1.60 NPR maintained since February 1993. The peg lowers exchange-rate uncertainty for a region where trade, travel and labour mobility are deeply tied to India.

73.14 The peg stabilises conversion but does not remove transaction costs

A fixed rate does not make every cross-border payment frictionless. Availability of denominations, bank access, identification requirements, transfer fees, cash-handling risk and differences between official and street practice still matter. Nor does the peg eliminate inflation differences or policy shocks. Its chief borderland effect is predictability: households and traders know the official conversion relationship between the two currencies. That predictability supports frequent low-value transactions and helps integrate prices, while Nepal's wider monetary policy remains constrained by the relationship to the Indian rupee.

73.15 India has long been both a labour destination and a remittance corridor

Migration to India differs from labour migration to Gulf countries and Malaysia because the open border allows movement without the labour-permit trail that structures most overseas employment. Nepalis work in Indian cities, farms, factories, security services, domestic work and other occupations, often circulating repeatedly rather than migrating once. Nepal Rastra Bank research has long noted that much of the money earned in India is carried home by workers or transmitted through relatives and friends, so it can be missing from balance-of-payments remittance data.

73.16 National remittance growth changed the household economy of Madhesh

From the 2000s onward, migration to the Gulf, Malaysia and other destinations expanded dramatically. Nationally, remittances rose from a small share of GDP around 2000 to roughly a quarter or more of the economy in later decades; the World Bank reports personal remittances at about 26 percent of GDP in 2024. Madhesh households participate in this wider migration system while also retaining India-linked mobility. The result is a mixed remittance geography in which formal overseas transfers and less-recorded India earnings coexist.

73.17 Dhanusha provides unusually useful local evidence on remittance channels

A Nepal Rastra Bank case study of Dhanusha District published in 2012 found that 84 percent of surveyed migrant-sending households reported formal remittance channels, while 14 percent reported hundi and 4 percent friends or travellers. These responses should not be treated as a national or permanently fixed distribution, and they need not be mutually exclusive. Their importance is local and historical: even in a border district, formal finance had become dominant for surveyed households while informal channels remained significant.

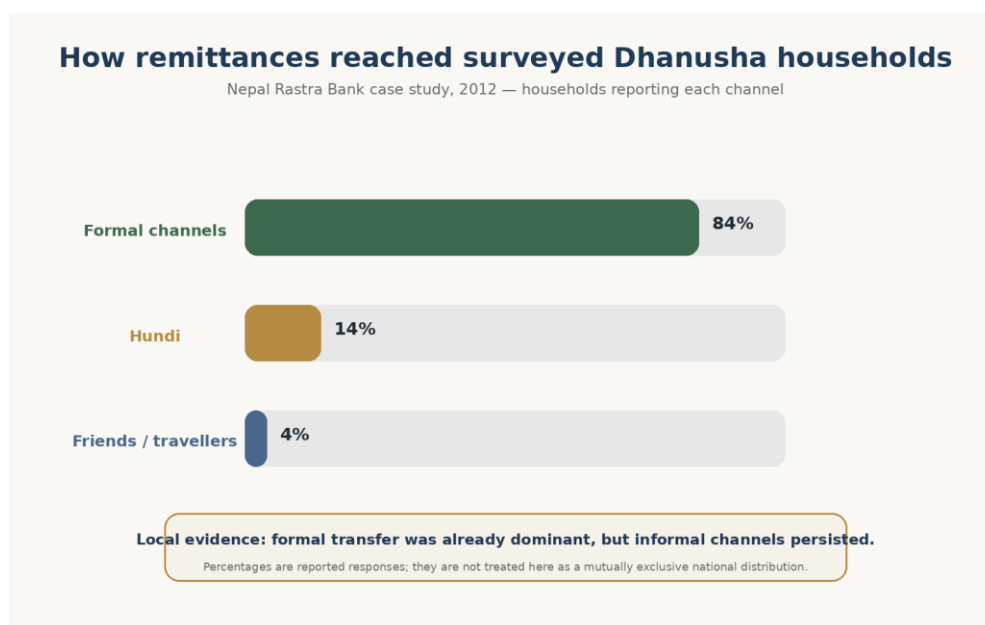


Figure 290 — Remittance channels reported in the Dhanusha case study, 2012

73.18 Migration itself can begin with informal debt

The same Dhanusha study showed that the benefits of remittance income could be preceded by expensive borrowing. Many migrant households financed migration costs through loans, often from informal lenders, and the study reported interest rates reaching as high as 40 percent per year in some cases. This reverses a simple story in which remittances automatically create capital. A household may first incur debt, then use foreign earnings to service that debt before remittances become available for consumption, land, education or savings.

73.19 Remittance expenditure connects migration to local markets and land

The Dhanusha evidence found higher consumption among migrant-sending households and substantial spending on food, weddings and land purchase. Such expenditure distributes remittance effects beyond recipient families. Shopkeepers, caterers, transporters, builders, land sellers and service providers receive secondary demand. Remittances can therefore stimulate local market activity even when they are not invested in a factory or formal business. At the same time, strong demand for land and ceremonial expenditure can raise prices without necessarily increasing local productivity.

73.20 Cash carried by migrants is economically real even when statistically invisible

A worker returning from Bihar with cash in a pocket has generated a cross-border income transfer even if no remittance company records it. The same applies when money is sent with a trusted relative. Such transfers are difficult to distinguish from travel cash in administrative data. For Madhesh, where the India corridor is exceptionally accessible, this means household income can be more internationally connected than formal remittance statistics imply. Statistical invisibility should therefore be treated as a measurement problem, not evidence that the flow does not exist.

73.21 Hundi is a financial channel, not a synonym for all informal exchange

Hundi relies on brokers or settlement networks rather than a conventional bank transfer. It can be attractive because of speed, reach, documentation barriers or exchange-rate incentives, but it also carries regulatory, fraud and money-laundering risks. Its existence should not cause every cash transfer or petty border purchase to be labelled hundi. The border economy contains multiple informalities—goods, labour, credit and money—and each has its own institutional logic. Precise terminology prevents moral categories from replacing economic analysis.

73.22 Formal remittance infrastructure expanded through banks and licensed companies

Nepal Rastra Bank regulates banks, remittance companies, money changers and payment-system operators. Expansion of branches, agents, mobile banking and licensed remittance networks has made formal transfers accessible in many places that once depended on cash couriers. Formalisation offers records, consumer protection and integration with savings accounts. Yet access is uneven, and customers still compare fees, distance, identification requirements and speed. The coexistence of formal and informal channels is therefore partly a competition between institutional costs.

73.23 Remittances and imports form a powerful consumption–trade loop

Remittance income raises household purchasing power. In an economy with limited domestic manufacturing, part of that demand falls on imported food, fuel, clothing, electronics, machinery and construction materials, many supplied through India. National research has therefore found a close relationship between remittance growth and Nepal's trade deficit. In Madhesh the mechanism is especially visible because markets are physically close to Bihar. Remittances can reduce household poverty while simultaneously increasing demand for cross-border goods; the two outcomes are not contradictory.

73.24 Border disruptions reveal how much ordinary life depends on exchange

When cross-border movement is sharply restricted, the effects extend beyond large importers. The 2015–16 disruption and the movement restrictions associated with the COVID-19 pandemic exposed dependence on fuel, medicines, food, daily labour and family mobility. Prices, availability and transport routes changed quickly. Such episodes show why households maintain multiple channels and relationships. Informal exchange can act as a resilience mechanism when formal systems fail, but scarcity can also increase risk, brokerage rents and opportunities for exploitation.

73.25 Informality can provide resilience while shifting risk downward

Small traders can respond rapidly to shortages because they need little infrastructure. A carrier can change routes more easily than a freight company. But flexibility often means that legal and economic risk is borne by individuals with the least protection. Confiscation, theft, injury, harassment or sudden rule changes can destroy a petty trader's working capital. Informal exchange should therefore be evaluated through both functions: it can provide livelihood and market continuity, while also transferring risk away from formal institutions and onto households and workers.

73.26 Customs reform seeks to lower the advantage of extra-formal channels

Governments have repeatedly tried to make formal trade faster and more predictable through customs reform, integrated check posts, dry ports, rail links, electronic documentation and bilateral agreements to

control unauthorized trade. The logic is institutional: if formal clearance becomes cheaper, quicker and more reliable, traders have less incentive to avoid it. The revised India–Nepal Treaty of Transit signed in 2023 widened route and modal arrangements. Such reforms matter most when infrastructure and procedures work together rather than merely adding new checkpoints.

73.27 Roads, railways and check posts change the hierarchy of border markets

Transport infrastructure concentrates some flows while bypassing others. The Jayanagar–Kurtha–Bijalpura railway gives Dhanusha a passenger and goods corridor different from purely road-based crossings. Birgunj’s integrated freight infrastructure serves a national market far beyond Parsa. Smaller markets may lose wholesale traffic yet retain retail and social functions. The result is not simple centralisation: high-volume formal trade can concentrate at major nodes while petty exchange continues along many local crossings. Market hierarchy is therefore shaped by transport mode as much as distance.

73.28 Digital payments are creating a new formal layer of border exchange

Cross-border payment infrastructure changed rapidly in the 2020s. From February 2024, Indian UPI users could make merchant QR payments through Nepal’s Fonepay network; Nepal Rastra Bank reported 134,701 such transactions worth NPR 321.67 million by mid-July 2024. In June 2026 India and Nepal launched a UPI–NPI person-to-person remittance mechanism. These systems can reduce cash handling and create transaction records, but they do not eliminate the continuing roles of cash, bank transfers, money changers and trusted intermediaries.

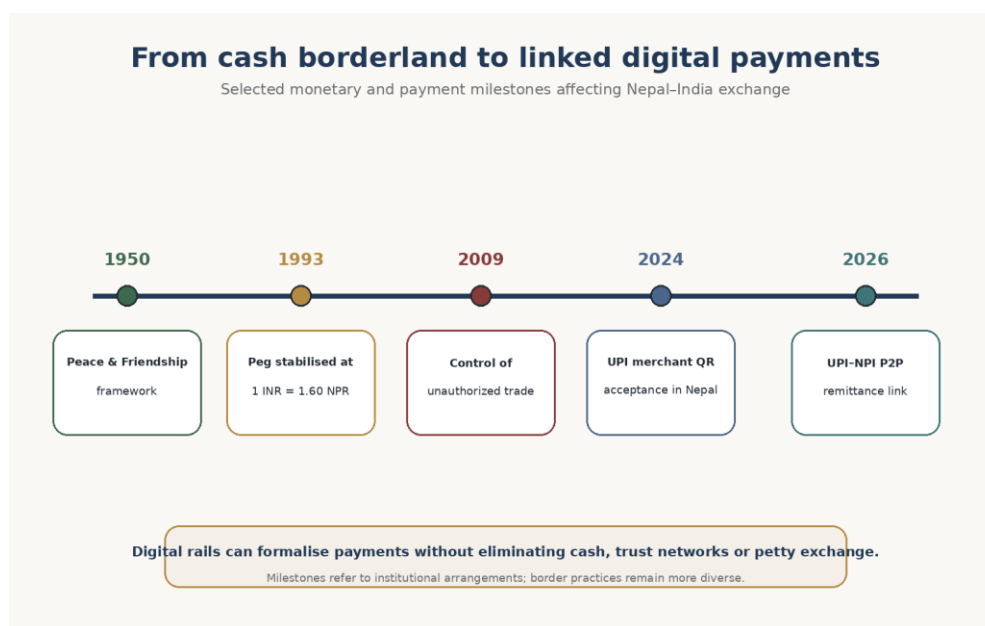


Figure 291 — Selected monetary and payment milestones in Nepal–India exchange

73.29 Data systems see formal flows much better than borderland practice

Customs records capture declared goods; payment systems capture formal transfers; censuses capture selected migration categories. None can fully observe petty exchange, hand-carried remittances, short-duration work or household shopping. The old informal-trade surveys are therefore valuable, but their figures cannot be treated as current. Likewise, national remittance totals understate some India-linked

earnings. Good historical method uses several evidence domains and states their blind spots instead of producing a single apparently precise number for an economy that is partly designed to escape measurement.

73.30 Conclusion: the border economy is a portfolio of institutions

Madhesh households do not choose once between ‘formal’ and ‘informal’. They assemble a portfolio: local haats, Bihar markets, customs channels, wage migration, cash, bank accounts, remittance companies, credit networks and now cross-border digital payments. Which channel is used depends on commodity, value, distance, trust, documentation, risk and urgency. The durability of the border economy lies in this institutional diversity. Its policy challenge is not to erase everyday mobility but to make lawful trade and money transfer sufficiently accessible that households can retain flexibility without bearing unnecessary risk.

Table 73.1 — Evidence domains for border markets, remittances and informal exchange

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal limitation
Customs, trade treaties and transit agreements	formal routes, declared goods, tariff institutions, customs points and transport arrangements	does not measure petty undeclared trade, household shopping or most hand-carried goods
Border-market and informal-trade surveys	trader networks, commodities, institutional costs, route choice and approximate unrecorded trade	estimates are survey- and period-specific; 2000–01 values cannot be treated as current volumes
NRB remittance and payment studies	formal remittance channels, local household use, exchange-rate regime and digital-payment formalisation	India earnings may be under-recorded when cash is hand-carried or sent through relatives and friends
Population census and migration studies	absence abroad, migration reasons, destination patterns and household geography	open-border and short-duration India migration is harder to capture than permit-based overseas migration
Ethnographic and qualitative border research	kinship, trust, brokerage, petty trade, women’s activity and everyday crossing practices	local findings cannot automatically be generalised to every border point or commodity
Banking and digital-payment records	licensed remittance networks, QR/P2P transaction counts and traceable formal financial flows	captures only participating users and cannot show the full cash or informal economy

PART IX

POST-1947 / POST-1950 DEVELOPMENT

Chapters 74–86

Chapter 74 — Independence, Land Reform and Agrarian Change in Bihar

Independence did not reset Bihar's countryside to a blank slate. The new constitutional state inherited the Permanent Settlement, great estates, occupancy raiyats, under-raiyats, sharecroppers, agricultural labourers, moneylending networks, fragmented plots and flood-prone ecologies formed over the colonial period. What changed after 1947 was the political legitimacy of that order and the institutional capacity to alter it. Bihar became one of the earliest laboratories of postcolonial land reform, but 'land reform' was never one measure. It included protection of homesteads, abolition of rent-collecting intermediaries, constitutional change, preparation of revenue records, voluntary Bhoodan transfers, consolidation of fragmented holdings and, eventually, statutory ceilings. These interventions reshaped the relation between state, landlord and cultivator without eliminating inequality. This chapter reconstructs that transition as an institutional history. Chapter 75 examines the abolition of zamindari and its uneven consequences in greater depth; Chapters 76–83 will turn to production, river projects, credit, cooperatives and specialised regional economies.

74.1 Independence opened an agrarian reconstruction problem, not an instant solution

The transfer of political power in 1947 created an expectation that the social relationships underpinning colonial revenue extraction would also be transformed. Congress programmes before independence had repeatedly attacked intermediary landlordism and promised greater security to cultivators. Yet the state that inherited these promises also inherited the records, courts, administrative categories and property claims of the colonial regime. Agrarian reconstruction therefore began as a contest over how far political independence would alter legally entrenched interests in land. The central issue was not merely who owned a field in everyday speech, but how several layers of rights—proprietary, tenure-holding, raiyati, under-raiyati, mortgage, lease and service claims—would be translated into the law of the new republic.

74.2 The late-colonial agrarian hierarchy survived into the first years of freedom

In Permanent Settlement districts a cultivator could stand beneath several layers of rent-receiving authority. At the top were proprietors and tenure-holders; below them were raiyats with varying degrees of occupancy protection; beneath or alongside them were under-raiyats, sharecroppers and labourers whose claims were often weaker or less visible in formal records. Great estates were not merely fiscal abstractions. They maintained cutcheries, staff, litigation systems, lease arrangements and local patronage networks. Land reform therefore required the postcolonial state to replace an administrative system as well as a legal title. This complexity helps explain why the end of intermediary interests did not automatically produce a simple landscape of owner-cultivators.

74.3 North Bihar and Mithila entered independence with a particularly dense estate legacy

The Darbhanga Raj and other large landed interests made north Bihar one of the clearest examples of bureaucratically managed landlordism surviving into the twentieth century. Estate administration coexisted with numerous village-level rights and obligations. In the alluvial districts of Mithila, dense settlement, recurrent river movement and long histories of tenancy produced a countryside where possession, rent liability and recorded title could diverge. Abolishing the superior intermediary therefore mattered greatly, but

its effects depended on what happened to khas land, under-tenancies, village commons and the record of actual cultivation. The region's history cannot be reduced to a contest between one zamindar and one raiyat.

74.4 Vajji and Anga shared Bihar's reform laws but not identical agrarian structures

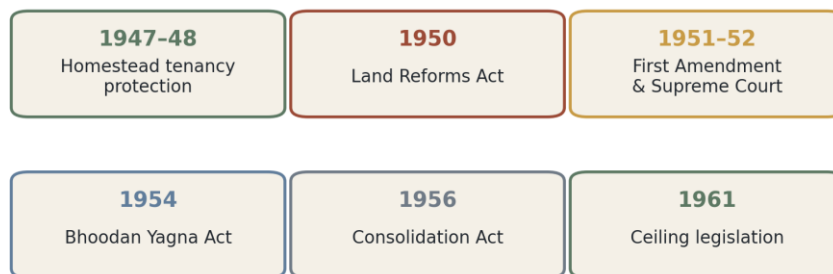
The Vaishali–Muzaffarpur zone combined dense rural settlement, commercial crops, market access and tenancy, while Anga around Bhagalpur and Munger linked agrarian production to river trade, urban demand, silk and other non-farm activities. Ecological and commercial differences affected how reform was experienced. A statute drafted at Patna applied across the state, but the value of a homestead right, the burden of fragmented holdings, the significance of market proximity and the persistence of landlord influence varied locally. The regional history of land reform must therefore distinguish a common legal framework from uneven social and ecological settings.

74.5 Homestead security was already a reform issue before formal zamindari abolition

The Bihar Privileged Persons Homestead Tenancy Act, 1947, received assent in January 1948 and came into force in February. Its purpose was narrower than redistribution of agricultural land but socially important: it sought to provide greater security to specified rural occupants of homestead land, including labourers and artisans whose residence could depend on a landlord's consent. The measure illustrates a broader principle. Agrarian power operated through control of the house-site as well as the cultivated field. A labouring household could be economically dependent even when its wage or share contract was not formally tied to residence. Protecting the homestead therefore formed an early component of land reform.

From Independence to a Multi-Instrument Reform Regime

Bihar, 1947–1961



A sequence of related legal instruments—not a single abolition event.

Figure 292 — From Independence to a multi-instrument reform regime, 1947–1961

74.6 Abolition politics began before the Constitution came fully into operation

Bihar's first abolition legislation emerged amid the last years of colonial rule and the transition to independence. The Bihar Abolition of Zamindaris Act, 1948, and related attempts to manage estates were challenged and reconsidered even before a durable legal framework had been established. Opposition came not only through legislative debate but through litigation and the strategic reorganisation of estate interests. The episode demonstrates that zamindari abolition was not an administrative order executed after

independence; it was a prolonged political and constitutional struggle over compensation, public purpose, legislative competence and the meaning of property.

74.7 The 1950 Land Reforms Act replaced an earlier, legally vulnerable route

The earlier abolition measure was repealed in January 1950 while a more comprehensive Land Reforms Bill moved through the legislature. The Bihar Land Reforms Act, 1950, eventually became the foundational statute. Its long title was deliberately broad: it provided for the transfer to the State of the interests of proprietors and tenure-holders and of related mortgagees and lessees, including interests in trees, forests, fisheries, jalkars, ferries, hats, bazaars, mines and minerals. Land reform was thus conceived as a transfer of a bundle of territorial and revenue rights, not merely the cancellation of one rent receipt.

74.8 The 1950 Act aimed to remove intermediaries between cultivator and state

The core institutional change was vesting. Through notification, an estate or tenure could pass to the State, terminating the intermediary's superior interest and transferring many associated rights. The postcolonial government thereby sought to become the direct public authority above raiyats instead of collecting revenue through a hierarchy of private intermediaries. This was an enormous change in legal sovereignty over land. Yet it did not mean that every cultivator became an owner or that all former landlords became landless. The statute itself contained provisions for the retention of specified homesteads, buildings and agricultural land in khas possession.

74.9 Constitutional litigation made Bihar land reform a national constitutional question

Major proprietors challenged the Act in the Patna High Court, where the legislation was held unconstitutional in March 1951 on an equality ground even though several other objections were rejected. The dispute helped turn agrarian reform into one of the first great constitutional conflicts of the Republic. Parliament's Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951 inserted Articles 31A and 31B to protect specified categories of estate-acquisition legislation and laws placed in the Ninth Schedule from certain fundamental-right challenges. Bihar's agrarian transition therefore shaped constitutional development at the national level as well as land administration within the state.

74.10 The Supreme Court settlement of 1952 cleared the way for wider implementation

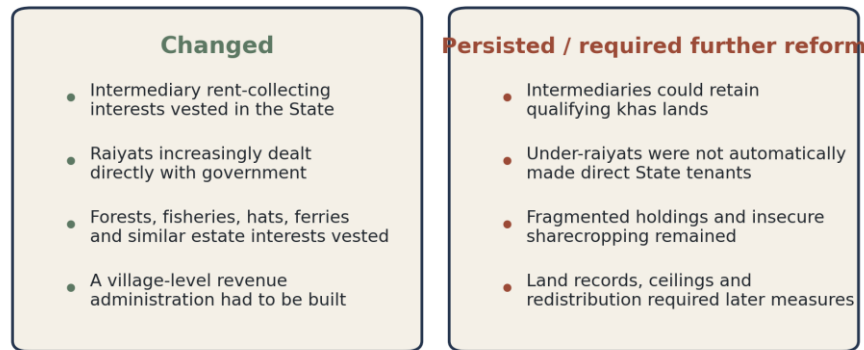
In *State of Bihar v. Kameshwar Singh*, decided in 1952, the Supreme Court upheld the Bihar Land Reforms Act in substance while invalidating particular provisions. The judgment described the common objective of Bihar, Uttar Pradesh and Madhya Pradesh legislation as eliminating zamindari and other proprietary intermediaries so that raiyats and occupants could be brought into a more direct relation with government. The decision did not itself redistribute every acre, but it removed a central constitutional obstacle. From this point, implementation depended increasingly on notifications, revenue administration, records, compensation proceedings and village-level control of possession.

74.11 Vesting was a process extending through the mid-1950s, not one statewide moment

The 1961 Census of India review of land tenures records why abolition progressed slowly at first. The original procedure required separate notifications and administrative action; later amendments enabled

broader area notifications. The report notes that intermediary interests in eight districts, comprising about half the state's area and population, were taken over by area notification on 26 January 1955, and interests in the remaining districts were taken over on 1 January 1956, apart from residual legal difficulties. This chronology cautions against assigning a single day to the social end of zamindari. Legal vesting itself unfolded in stages.

What the 1950 Land Reforms Act Changed — and What It Did Not



Abolition of intermediaries transformed legal sovereignty over land without equalising landholding.

Figure 293 — What the 1950 Land Reforms Act changed — and what persisted

74.12 The state became a rent-receiving authority but inherited old tenancy categories

After vesting, principal raiyats came into direct relation with the State, yet their underlying rights and rent liabilities did not automatically become uniform. The land-tenure review prepared for the 1961 Census stressed that fixed-rate, occupancy and non-occupancy raiyats continued on terms derived from existing tenancy law. The new state therefore replaced an intermediary at the apex without immediately rewriting every relationship below the raiyat. This continuity is central to understanding post-independence Bihar: abolition of superior proprietary interests and reform of cultivators' tenures were related but distinct tasks.

74.13 Khas possession created a major zone of continuity

Sections 5–7 of the Bihar Land Reforms Act permitted intermediaries to retain specified homesteads, buildings and agricultural or horticultural lands in qualifying khas possession, usually as tenants or occupancy raiyats under the State. The meaning and proof of khas possession consequently became crucial. Land previously controlled by an estate could survive abolition in a different legal form if the former intermediary established the required possession. This provision helps explain how members of old landed classes could lose rent-collecting sovereignty yet retain substantial agricultural property and local influence. Chapter 75 examines these post-abolition continuities in detail.

74.14 Under-raiyats and sharecroppers were not automatically converted into direct state tenants

The statutory removal of zamindars did not eliminate the distinction between raiyats and those cultivating beneath them. The 1961 land-tenure report explicitly noted that under-raiyats did not automatically enter direct relation with the State; their rights continued under tenancy legislation. In

practice, sharecropping could remain concealed because recording it exposed both cultivator and landholder to legal and fiscal consequences. This gap between superior-tenure reform and actual-cultivator security became one of Bihar's longest-running agrarian problems. Later tenancy amendments sought to address parts of it, but the issue cannot be backdated as solved in 1950.

74.15 Land records became the infrastructure on which reform depended

Once the State acquired intermediary interests, it needed to know who should pay rent, who occupied which plot, where an under-raiyat cultivated and which lands had vested. The Census land-tenure review identified the absence of reliable, up-to-date records and of revenue machinery below district level as major obstacles. Field Bujharat enquiries begun in 1954 sought to prepare revenue rolls and record raiyats without waiting for a complete cadastral resurvey. This was more than clerical work. In a system where legal benefits depended on proof of status and possession, record preparation distributed practical power.

74.16 Flood displacement required region-specific land-restoration law

North Bihar's river ecology created agrarian problems that ordinary tenancy reform could not solve. The Kosi Area (Restoration of Lands to Raiyats) Act, 1951 addressed lands from which raiyats had been ejected, or which had been sold for rent arrears or treated as abandoned, during 1939–1950 when cultivators were absent because of Kosi floods. The statute reveals the limits of treating land rights as static parcels. River movement could separate a cultivator from a recorded holding without ending the social claim to it. Post-independence agrarian policy in Mithila therefore had to confront hydrology as well as landlordism.

74.17 Bhoodan introduced voluntary redistribution alongside compulsory legislation

Vinoba Bhave's Bhoodan movement proposed a different route to agrarian change: voluntary gifts of land for settlement with the landless. Bihar became one of the major arenas of the movement. Its moral vocabulary differed from compulsory acquisition, yet it arose from the same post-independence recognition that concentrated land control and landlessness threatened social stability. Bhoodan also exposed a practical problem shared by statutory reform: a promise of land was not equivalent to a cultivable, legally transferable plot placed in secure possession. Donated land had to be verified, accepted, recorded and settled with beneficiaries.

74.18 The Bihar Bhoodan Yagna Act, 1954 converted a movement into a legal institution

The Bihar Bhoodan Yagna Act, 1954 created a statutory framework for accepting donations and settling valid land with landless persons or, through later amendments, specified collective bodies. The Act excluded categories such as public pathways, tanks, certain common lands, service tenures, notified forest land and mineral-bearing land from ordinary donation. These exclusions are historically significant because they show the difference between moral declaration and administratively transferable property. Bhoodan's achievement and limitations must therefore be measured in valid settlement and possession, not only in acres publicly promised.

From Statute to Village Outcome: the Implementation Chain



Legal change had to pass through records, administration and actual possession.

Figure 294 — From statute to village outcome: the implementation chain

74.19 Consolidation addressed fragmentation rather than landlordism

The Bihar Consolidation of Holdings and Prevention of Fragmentation Act, 1956 attacked a different obstacle to agrarian efficiency: scattered parcels. A raiyat might possess several small plots separated by other holdings, water channels, paths and land of different quality. Consolidation sought to rearrange parcels into more compact chaks and prevent further fragmentation. The reform belonged to the same agrarian-policy family as zamindari abolition but solved a different problem. It assumed that a cultivator's legal right could be made economically more useful by changing spatial configuration even when the total entitlement remained broadly comparable.

74.20 Consolidation was especially complicated in floodplains and waterlogged landscapes

A geometric ideal of compact holdings could conflict with environmental realities. Fields in north Bihar varied in elevation, flood frequency, soil, access to irrigation and proximity to homestead. Riverine action could alter boundaries; prolonged waterlogging could make apparently contiguous land economically inferior. Later versions of consolidation law explicitly recognised classes of land unsuitable for straightforward consolidation, including areas subject to fluvial action, intensive erosion or prolonged waterlogging. The agrarian history of Mithila therefore warns against equating spatial compactness with equal productive value.

Table 74.1 — Major agrarian-reform instruments in Bihar, 1947–1961

Measure	Principal objective	Historical limit / caution
Privileged Persons Homestead Tenancy Act, 1947	security of specified rural homestead tenants	protected residence, not broad redistribution of agricultural land
Bihar Land Reforms Act, 1950	vesting of intermediary interests in the State	khas lands and under-raiyati required separate treatment
Constitutional settlement, 1951–52	protect estate-acquisition reform from key constitutional challenges	constitutional validity did not itself implement village-level reform

Measure	Principal objective	Historical limit / caution
Bihar Bhoodan Yagna Act, 1954	legalise donation and settlement of valid Bhoodan land	pledged acreage had to be transferable, recorded and placed in possession
Consolidation Act, 1956	rearrange fragmented holdings into more compact units	productive equality depended on soil, water, location and flood risk
Ceiling Act, 1961	limit concentration and acquire surplus land	implementation depended on classification, exemptions, records and later amendments

74.21 Ceiling legislation extended reform from intermediary rights to concentration of holdings

National planning policy increasingly treated ceilings on agricultural holdings as a necessary complement to abolition. Bihar's Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) Act, 1961 provided for ceilings, restrictions on subletting, resumption in specified circumstances, acquisition of surplus land and related rights of under-raiyats. This marked a conceptual shift. The 1950 Act primarily transferred intermediary interests; the ceiling regime asked how much agricultural land a landholder could retain. Because implementation, exemptions, family definitions, classification and later amendments mattered greatly, ceiling reform became a continuing process rather than a once-for-all redistribution.

74.22 Homestead rights mattered to landless labourers even when agricultural redistribution was limited

For the rural poor, secure residence could be as immediately important as ownership of a field. Agricultural labourers and artisans often depended on village landholders for house-sites, access paths, ponds, grazing and employment. The homestead tenancy regime therefore addressed one dimension of vulnerability that zamindari abolition did not automatically cure. A household with no cultivable land might still gain meaningful protection against arbitrary eviction from its dwelling site. Conversely, homestead security without access to productive land did not remove wage dependence. Post-independence agrarian reform operated through such partial gains.

74.23 Caste and class shaped who could convert formal rights into effective rights

Land in Bihar was both an economic asset and a basis of social authority. Dominant landed groups possessed greater access to lawyers, revenue officials, credit, documents and political networks. Poor raiyats, under-raiyats, Dalits and agricultural labourers often faced higher costs in asserting claims or contesting records. Reform therefore changed the field of struggle without making participants equal. Litigation, mutation proceedings, possession disputes and the classification of land could reproduce social hierarchy inside a formally egalitarian legal order. This is one reason why the distributive outcome of Bihar's reforms diverged from their legislative ambition.

74.24 Women's agrarian rights changed more slowly than the legal vocabulary of reform suggested

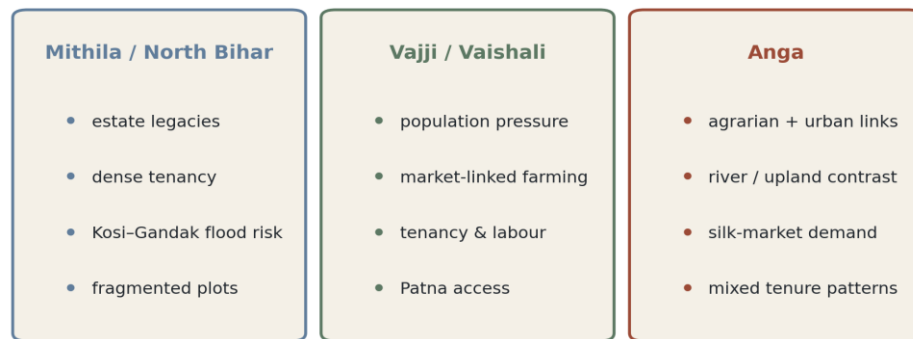
Most land-reform statutes were framed around categories such as proprietor, raiyat, under-raiyat, family and landholder rather than around women's actual labour contribution. Women planted, weeded, harvested, processed grain, cared for livestock and managed household subsistence, but these tasks did not necessarily

translate into recorded title. The Hindu Succession Act, 1956 altered inheritance law for many women, yet its original treatment of agricultural land interacted with state tenancy law and did not erase patrilineal practice. For widows, daughters and women in landless households, the agrarian transition therefore remained mediated by family, caste and the quality of land records.

74.25 Community development and cooperatives widened the meaning of agrarian reform

By the mid-1950s agrarian policy was no longer confined to property legislation. Community Development blocks, cooperative institutions, extension services, seed distribution, minor irrigation and local works sought to raise productivity and administrative reach. These programmes are analytically distinct from redistribution: a cooperative cannot substitute for secure tenancy, and an extension worker cannot by himself change land concentration. Yet they altered the environment in which land rights acquired value. A small holding with irrigation, credit and market access could support a household differently from the same acreage without infrastructure. Later chapters treat these institutions in their own right.

Shared Reform Laws, Uneven Regional Contexts



Common statutes met different ecologies, markets and local power structures.

Figure 295 — Shared reform laws, uneven regional contexts

74.26 Irrigation and river development determined whether legal land rights translated into production

Mithila and the wider north Bihar plain demonstrate that secure title alone could not control floods, drainage or drought. Kosi and Gandak projects, embankments, canals and local irrigation works changed the productive possibilities and risks of land. In some places irrigation increased the value of holdings; elsewhere embankments redistributed flood and waterlogging hazards. Post-independence agrarian change must therefore be read through both law and hydraulic infrastructure. Chapter 77 examines the Kosi, Gandak and major river-development projects, while Chapter 78 treats floods as social and economic history rather than as external natural shocks.

74.27 Rural credit and indebtedness preserved dependence outside the formal landlord relationship

Removing an intermediary did not supply a cultivator with seed, cattle, consumption credit or emergency cash. Moneylenders, traders, landlords and better-off peasants could continue to provide credit on terms

linked to crop sales, labour or informal security. Cooperative credit and later banking expansion sought to weaken this dependence, but access remained uneven. The agrarian reform question therefore extended beyond title to the financing of cultivation. A raiyat legally secure against an old zamindar could still be economically constrained by debt, crop failure or the need to borrow before harvest. Chapter 79 develops this credit history.

74.28 Electoral democracy transformed agrarian conflict into a struggle over the state itself

Universal adult franchise, party competition, peasant organisations and elected institutions altered the political setting in which land disputes were pursued. Landholders could convert social standing into electoral influence, while tenants and labourers could organise around rent, wages, possession and redistribution. The state was no longer only a distant revenue collector; it became an arena in which competing agrarian groups sought favourable law, enforcement and patronage. This democratisation did not automatically favour the landless, but it changed the mechanisms of rural power and made agrarian policy central to Bihar's post-independence political economy.

74.29 Mithila, Vajji and Anga experienced one reform regime through different local ecologies and markets

The legal sequence from homestead protection to intermediary abolition, Bhoodan, consolidation and ceilings applied across Bihar, but local outcomes differed. Mithila's dense tenancy and flood-prone fragmentation, the Vaishali zone's market connections and population pressure, and Anga's combination of agriculture with riverine, urban and artisanal economies created distinct incentives and constraints. Land of equal recorded area could have very different value depending on drainage, irrigation, road access, distance to market and cropping pattern. Regional comparison therefore prevents Bihar-wide legislation from being mistaken for a uniform agrarian history.

74.30 Land reform was an unfinished institutional transition

By the early 1960s Bihar had assembled most of the principal instruments associated with the first generation of Indian land reform: intermediary abolition, homestead protection, Bhoodan settlement, consolidation and ceiling legislation. Their cumulative effect was substantial because the legal sovereignty of great estates had been broken and the State had assumed direct agrarian responsibilities. Yet the transition remained incomplete. Retained khas land, weakly recorded under-tenancy, fragmented holdings, litigation, poor records, administrative capacity, caste power, landlessness and ecological risk continued to shape village life. Post-independence agrarian change was therefore neither failure nor completed revolution. It was a reorganisation of institutions whose uneven consequences became the starting point for the next phase of Bihar's rural history.

Chapter 75 — Abolition of Zamindari and Its Uneven Consequences

The abolition of zamindari in Bihar was a genuine constitutional and agrarian rupture, but it was not a social revolution completed by a single statute. The Bihar Land Reforms Act, 1950 transferred intermediary interests to the State and ended the proprietary right of zamindars and tenure-holders to stand between the government and the raiyat. Yet the same law also defined property that outgoing intermediaries could retain, while tenancy, labour, credit, caste authority and political influence continued to operate below and around the abolished revenue hierarchy. The historical problem is therefore not whether zamindari was abolished—it was—but how far abolition redistributed effective control over rural resources.

For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the consequences were especially uneven because the same legal regime encountered different estate structures, ecological conditions, tenancy patterns and market connections. The vast Raj Darbhanga exemplified the bureaucratic great estate; elsewhere, village-scale landlords and tenure-holders exercised power through smaller but locally dense networks. Flood-prone north Bihar, riverine and market-oriented Anga, and the densely settled Tirhut–Vajji plain converted legal change into different combinations of direct state tenancy, retained landlord cultivation, concealed tenancy, landlessness and new forms of rural politics. This chapter treats abolition as both accomplishment and unfinished transition.

75.1 Abolition must be measured against the intermediary system it actually destroyed

Under the Permanent Settlement and the layered tenures that developed beneath it, revenue and rent passed through proprietors, tenure-holders and sub-tenure interests before reaching cultivators. The 1950 Act attacked that legal chain directly. Estates and tenures vested in the State, and the State acquired the superior interests that had permitted intermediaries to collect rents and exercise estate rights over fisheries, forests, ferries, hats, bazaars and related resources. This was more than a change of terminology: the State replaced the zamindar as the superior rent-receiving authority. But abolition did not erase every private right derived from land, because raiyati rights, under-raiyati interests and specified retained properties continued under other legal categories.

75.2 The achievement of abolition was real even when later reforms remained incomplete

It is misleading to describe Bihar after 1950 as though zamindari legally survived intact. The proprietary intermediary estate ceased to be the constitutional basis of agrarian administration. Rent collection, estate records, public-resource rights and the relationship between the State and raiyats were reorganised around vesting. National assessments of Indian land reform have generally treated abolition of intermediaries as the most successfully legislated component of the first generation of reform. Bihar's difficulty lay less in failure to enact abolition than in the distance between abolition and a broader redistribution of land, security and bargaining power.

75.3 The constitutional battle made Bihar central to the national history of land reform

The challenge brought by Maharajadhiraja Kameshwar Singh of Darbhanga and other proprietors turned Bihar's land reform into a major constitutional contest. The litigation raised questions about property,

compensation and legislative authority at precisely the moment when the new republic was trying to dismantle inherited landed privileges. The Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951 inserted Articles 31A and 31B and placed the Bihar Land Reforms Act in the Ninth Schedule. The Supreme Court's 1952 decision therefore belonged to a national redefinition of the constitutional space available for agrarian reform, not merely to a dispute between one state government and one great estate.

75.4 Vesting transferred superior rights, not every form of possession

The most important distinction for understanding post-abolition Bihar is between vesting of intermediary interests and the continued possession of specified land by former intermediaries. Section 4 transferred estates and tenures to the State. Sections 5, 6 and 7 then specified categories that could be retained under new tenurial relationships. Former proprietors could therefore cease to be zamindars in law while remaining substantial landholders in fact. This distinction explains why the institutional victory of abolition could coexist with large inequalities of operational holdings and with the continued local prominence of former landlord families.

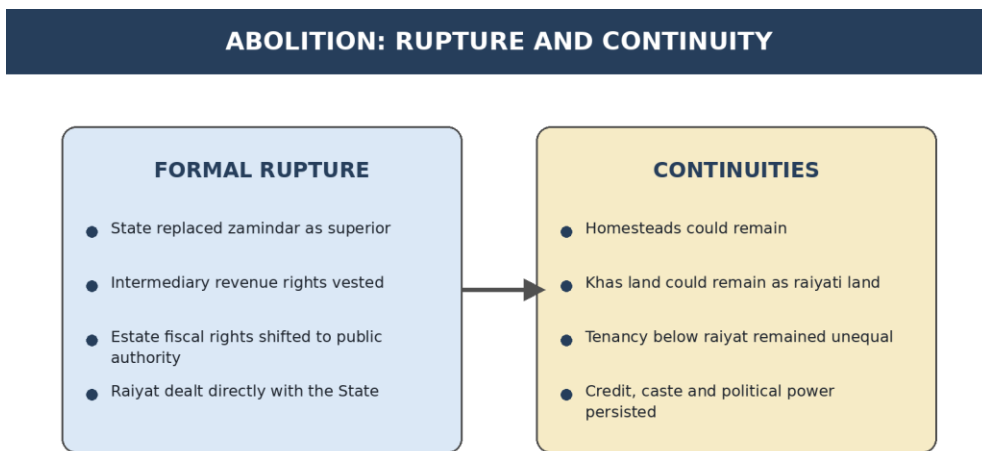


Figure 296 — What abolition removed — and what it did not

75.5 Compensation transformed rather than simply destroyed landed wealth

The Act provided compensation for acquired intermediary interests according to statutory rules. Compensation was politically important because abolition was framed as state acquisition, not as unregulated seizure. For some former landlords, the loss of rent-receiving rights reduced a recurrent source of income and administrative authority; for others, compensation, retained lands, urban property, businesses, education and political connections offered routes into a different elite economy. The result varied by estate size, indebtedness, diversification and family strategy. Compensation should therefore be analysed as one element in the conversion of landed power, not as proof either that landlords were unaffected or that they were fully dispossessed.

75.6 Homestead retention preserved an important material base

Section 5 deemed homesteads in the possession of intermediaries to be settled with them after vesting, generally as tenants under the State. This provision protected residences, compounds and associated property rather than turning landlord households into the landless. Large estate houses could remain centres of

prestige, kinship, patronage and political networking even when the estate's revenue jurisdiction had ended. In north Bihar, where great landed families had long combined residential, ritual and administrative functions, the survival of these material centres helped social influence outlast the legal category of zamindar.

75.7 Khas agricultural land was the most consequential retention channel

Section 6 allowed specified agricultural and horticultural land in the khas possession of an intermediary at vesting to be treated as settled by the State with that intermediary as a raiyat possessing occupancy rights, subject to rent. In legal design this separated the abolished superior estate from land claimed as directly possessed or cultivated. In social practice the boundary between landlord khas land and land worked by tenants could be contentious. Because a field classified as khas might remain with the former intermediary while a field recognised as tenant-held followed a different path, records and proof of possession became central to the distributive outcome of abolition.

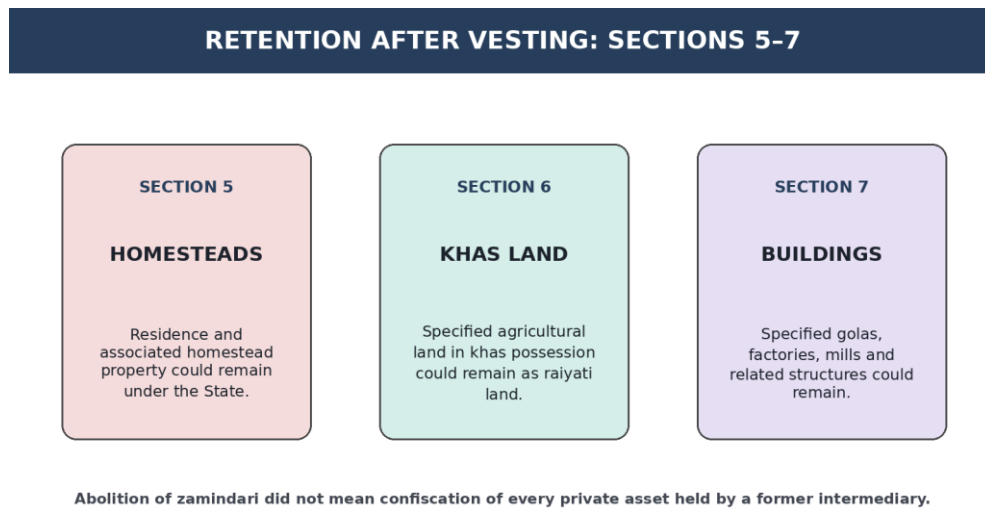


Figure 297 — Lawful retention channels after vesting

75.8 Pre-vesting struggles over bakasht and private land acquired new importance

The late colonial decades had already seen conflict over bakasht, private and landlord-cultivated land in Bihar. Peasant movements understood that land recorded or treated as landlord possession could become crucial under any future reform. Zamindars likewise had incentives to clarify, expand or defend claims to direct possession. Abolition therefore arrived after years of conflict over the very categories that would decide what could be retained. This history cautions against treating the 1950 Act as a clean starting point: its village-level effects depended partly on earlier contests over records, rent receipts, occupancy and the classification of particular plots.

75.9 Commercial and estate buildings could also survive under new tenure

Section 7 protected specified golas, factories, mills and associated structures that met statutory conditions. The provision recognised that an intermediary might own productive or commercial property distinct from the abolished estate function. In areas linked to grain trade, processing, storage, river transport or rail markets, such retained assets could support a transition from rent-receiving landlordism toward commerce or capitalist cultivation. Anga's market and transport connections made this possibility

particularly relevant, but the principle applied more widely: abolition restructured the legal basis of landed wealth without necessarily severing every link between old landed families and the regional economy.

75.10 Raiyats gained a direct relationship with the State

For occupancy raiyats, the end of the superior intermediary was a major change. The State now stood above the raiyat rather than a private estate proprietor. This could reduce the scope for arbitrary estate cesses, private rent-collection machinery and the extra-economic authority associated with a landlord's cutchery. Yet a direct legal relationship did not guarantee administrative simplicity. Rent fixation, record correction, mutation, classification and disputes moved into a state revenue apparatus that was itself unevenly staffed and dependent on inherited records. The quality of the reform therefore depended on whether cultivators could make the new public system recognise their existing rights.

75.11 Under-raiyats and sharecroppers occupied a more precarious layer

Abolition was strongest at the top of the tenorial pyramid: it removed the intermediary between State and raiyat. It was less automatically transformative for people cultivating below the raiyat as under-raiyats, bataidars or oral sharecroppers. Their claims depended on tenancy law, proof, local practice and later amendments rather than simply on the vesting of zamindari. Where tenancy was concealed or deliberately kept oral, cultivators could remain economically dependent without acquiring secure recorded rights. The persistence of this lower tenancy layer became one of the central reasons why abolition alone could not solve Bihar's agrarian inequality.

75.12 Concealed tenancy converted a legal weakness into a bargaining advantage for stronger landholders

Landlords and substantial raiyats had reasons to avoid formal tenancy arrangements if recorded tenancy might strengthen a cultivator's claims. Oral sharecropping and seasonal arrangements could therefore expand the gap between the cultivator visible in law and the cultivator working the field. This problem was not unique to former zamindars; post-abolition rural elites included substantial raiyats and better-off peasants as well. The consequence was that the legal removal of one class of intermediary could be followed by the reproduction of dependence through contracts that were less visible to the state than the old zamindari estate itself.

75.13 Eviction and possession disputes clustered around the transition

Whenever reform ties rights to possession on a particular date, control of possession and its documentation becomes politically charged. Disputes over whether land was truly in an intermediary's khas possession, whether a tenant had been removed, or whether a lease represented genuine cultivation rather than an effort to defeat reform could reach collectors and courts. The Act itself provided procedures for inquiry when possession was disputed. The abundance of later amendments and litigation shows that abolition was not a single administrative event but a prolonged process in which the categories of the statute had to be applied field by field and estate by estate.

75.14 Estate bureaucracy disappeared unevenly into the state bureaucracy

Great estates had maintained managers, rent collectors, accountants, record rooms and local agents. When proprietary interests vested, the State inherited not merely a legal right but the task of administering millions of relationships previously mediated through private estates. Circle-level revenue administration,

land-reform officials and district collectors became central to the new order. The transition could reduce private coercive power while also producing delays, record gaps and new opportunities for brokerage. Peasants who had once negotiated with estate staff increasingly had to navigate public offices whose procedures were formal but not necessarily accessible to people with little literacy, money or political connection.

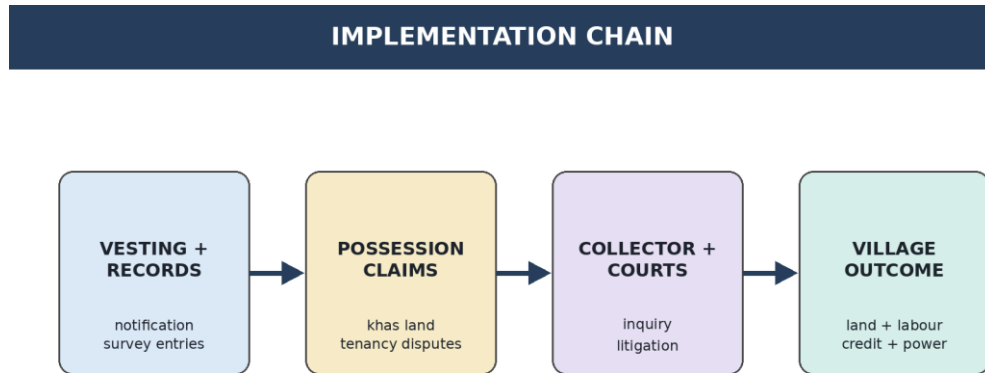


Figure 298 — Why legal abolition produced uneven village outcomes

75.15 Raj Darbhanga shows both the scale of rupture and the durability of elite networks

The Raj Darbhanga was among the great bureaucratically managed landed estates of northern India. Zamindari abolition ended the institutional form through which it had collected rents across a vast area. Yet scholarship on the estate stresses that the political and social influence associated with the ‘Raj interest’ did not disappear immediately with vesting. Family standing, property outside the acquired estate, retained land, educational and cultural patronage, business interests and political ties could sustain influence after the formal estate had ceased to exist. Darbhanga therefore demonstrates why legal abolition and social de-elitisation are analytically different processes.

75.16 Former landlords could re-enter rural society as large raiyats rather than zamindars

Where substantial agricultural land was lawfully retained, a former intermediary might lose superior rent-receiving status yet remain a large cultivating proprietor under the State. This was a profound legal demotion but not necessarily an economic collapse. The household could hire labour, lease land informally, invest in pumps or cattle, lend money and compete in elections. Over time, the rural hierarchy could therefore be reorganised around ownership and operational control rather than around the abolished estate title. The phrase ‘landlord without zamindari’ captures this transformation more accurately than the claim that abolition either changed nothing or destroyed every landlord class.

75.17 Political democracy gave old and new rural elites additional arenas of power

Universal adult franchise expanded peasant political weight, but it also made control over votes, credit, local institutions and party networks valuable resources. Former zamindar families, substantial raiyats and emerging middle-peasant groups could all adapt to electoral politics. In Bihar, agrarian power increasingly intersected with caste mobilisation, party competition and control of local government rather than operating solely through rent collection. Abolition thus helped open rural politics while simultaneously encouraging landed elites to convert social and economic capital into democratic influence. The result was competitive transformation, not a simple replacement of elites by the rural poor.

75.18 Caste hierarchy and landholding remained closely connected

In much of Bihar, landholding had long overlapped strongly with caste hierarchy, though never perfectly. Abolition removed an estate right but did not redistribute social status in equal measure. Upper-caste landed groups retained important assets in many localities, while some cultivating middle castes expanded their holdings and political influence. Dalit and other land-poor households remained disproportionately dependent on agricultural labour and insecure residence. The post-abolition order therefore shifted the composition of rural dominance over time without severing the connection between land, caste, labour control and political authority.

75.19 Agricultural labourers received little land merely because zamindari ended

The landless labourer was not the direct statutory beneficiary of intermediary abolition in the same way that a raiyat gained release from a superior landlord. Unless separate land was distributed, a labouring household could remain landless after vesting. Its employer might change from a zamindar to a large raiyat or substantial peasant, but wage dependence persisted. Homestead legislation, Bhoodan, ceiling laws and later programmes were required precisely because abolition did not itself create agricultural holdings for every labourer. The persistence of landlessness is therefore not evidence that abolition was fictitious; it identifies the boundary of what abolition was designed to accomplish.

75.20 Women's agrarian position changed indirectly and unevenly

The principal statutes of abolition were written around estates, intermediaries, raiyats, possession and family property rather than around women's labour in fields and households. Women could benefit when a household's tenancy became more secure, but ownership and recorded rights commonly remained concentrated in male names. Widows and female heirs could hold property, yet inheritance practice, patrilocal marriage, documentation and bargaining power shaped whether formal rights became effective control. The abolition of zamindari therefore altered the institutional setting of women's agrarian lives without automatically correcting gendered inequalities in title, wages or decision-making.

Table 75.1 — Formal effects of zamindari abolition and the principal limits that remained

Formal change	Immediate institutional effect	Uneven consequence / remaining problem
Vesting of intermediary interests	State replaced zamindar as superior rent-receiving authority	Did not itself redistribute all privately possessed agricultural land

Formal change	Immediate institutional effect	Uneven consequence / remaining problem
Retention under Sections 5–7	Homesteads, specified khas land and certain buildings could remain with former intermediaries under new tenure	Some ex-zamindars remained substantial landholders or commercial proprietors
Direct State–raiyyat relationship	Occupancy raiyyats no longer stood beneath a zamindari intermediary	Under-raiyyats and oral sharecroppers required separate protection and proof
Transfer of estate resources	Many hats, ferries, fisheries, forests and other estate interests vested in the State	Public control still depended on administration, leasing and local access
Compensation	Converted acquisition into a constitutionally managed transfer	Could support elite economic adaptation; payments and valuation were administratively complex
Later ceilings and Bhoodan	Targeted concentration and landlessness beyond intermediary abolition	Demonstrated that abolition was not equivalent to comprehensive redistribution

75.21 Public control over hats, ferries, fisheries and forests changed local political economy

Vesting extended beyond cultivated fields. Estate interests in hats, bazaars, ferries, fisheries, forests and other sairati resources were among the rights transferred to the State, subject to the detailed provisions and later amendments of the Act. For village and market society this mattered because these resources generated fees, access rights and patronage. Removing them from the private estate could weaken a landlord's local fiscal authority and create public revenue. Yet the practical distribution of access depended on how the State leased, managed or regulated those resources. Public ownership did not by itself guarantee equal local access.

75.22 Land records became a central technology of post-zamindari power

Abolition made accurate records more, not less, important. Once the State replaced the intermediary, it needed to identify raiyyats, rents, retained khas land, public land and disputed tenancies. Old survey records could be outdated, while floods, river shifts, subdivision and informal transfers continually changed the landscape. In north Bihar this administrative problem was intensified by dynamic rivers and fragmented holdings. A household with a receipt, survey entry or political ally could be better positioned than a cultivator relying on oral memory. Record-of-rights administration therefore became one of the principal institutions through which the gains and limits of abolition were experienced.

75.23 Litigation and repeated amendment show that abolition was a process, not a date

The 1950 Act was amended repeatedly as government confronted disputes over trusts, compensation, possession, mines, hats, melas and other categories. Courts interpreted the statute, and administrative practice evolved around those decisions. This legal history matters because rural change did not occur everywhere on the day the Act was passed. Estates vested through notifications, claims had to be resolved, compensation rolls prepared and retained lands settled. The temporal gap between legislation and settled administration created space for uncertainty, strategic behaviour and local conflict. 'Abolition' should therefore be dated as a sequence of implementation rather than a single midnight transformation.

75.24 The later ceiling programme exposed the distributive limit of abolition

If abolition had already equalised landholding, ceiling legislation would have been unnecessary. The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) Act, 1961 addressed a different problem: concentration of land even where no zamindari intermediary remained. Its existence demonstrates the conceptual separation between abolishing a legal estate and redistributing privately held agricultural land. The slow and contested ceiling process in later decades also reveals how difficult it was to move from structural reform at the top of the tenure system to plot-level redistribution among rural households.

75.25 Bhoodan similarly reflected the unresolved demand for land

The Bhoodan movement and Bihar's 1954 Bhoodan Yagna legislation sought donated land for redistribution to the landless. Whatever the uneven quality, encumbrances or distributability of donated plots, the movement's scale of aspiration reflected a social fact: millions of rural people still lacked adequate land after zamindari abolition. Bhoodan therefore belonged to the afterlife of abolition. It did not duplicate the 1950 Act; it attempted, through voluntary transfer and statutory administration, to address the landlessness that abolition of intermediary interests had left unresolved.

75.26 Production did not automatically rise when rent-receiving intermediaries disappeared

Land reform was expected not only to advance social justice but also to improve agricultural incentives. A cultivator freed from arbitrary landlord exactions might have stronger reasons to invest. Yet production depended on irrigation, flood control, credit, seed, livestock, roads and reliable markets as well as on tenure. In Mithila and Vajji, recurrent flood and drainage problems could overwhelm gains from legal security. In Anga, market access created different opportunities. The productivity effect of abolition was therefore mediated by infrastructure and ecology; the statute changed the institutional environment but did not itself supply the material inputs of agricultural growth.

75.27 Credit dependence reproduced hierarchy beyond the rent relationship

A cultivator who no longer paid rent to a zamindar might still borrow from a substantial landholder, trader or moneylender for seed, food, ceremonies or emergencies. Credit could be tied to crop sale, labour service or informal tenancy. These interlocking markets allowed rural power to persist without the formal legal privileges of zamindari. The post-abolition hierarchy was consequently more difficult to identify from land titles alone: economic dependence could flow through debt, wage employment and market brokerage even when the old estate cutchery had vanished.

75.28 Mithila and Vajji reveal how floodplain ecology shaped the reform's consequences

North Bihar's alluvial plain combined high population density with rivers that shifted channels, deposited silt, breached embankments and left waterlogged tracts. Holdings were often fragmented across soils and elevations with different risk. In such settings, formal ownership of several small plots did not guarantee a secure livelihood, while access to higher land, drainage, commons, credit and seasonal migration remained crucial. The social value of land reform therefore varied with micro-ecology. A legal gain could be substantial yet economically fragile if the household's fields lay in chronically inundated or erosion-prone locations.

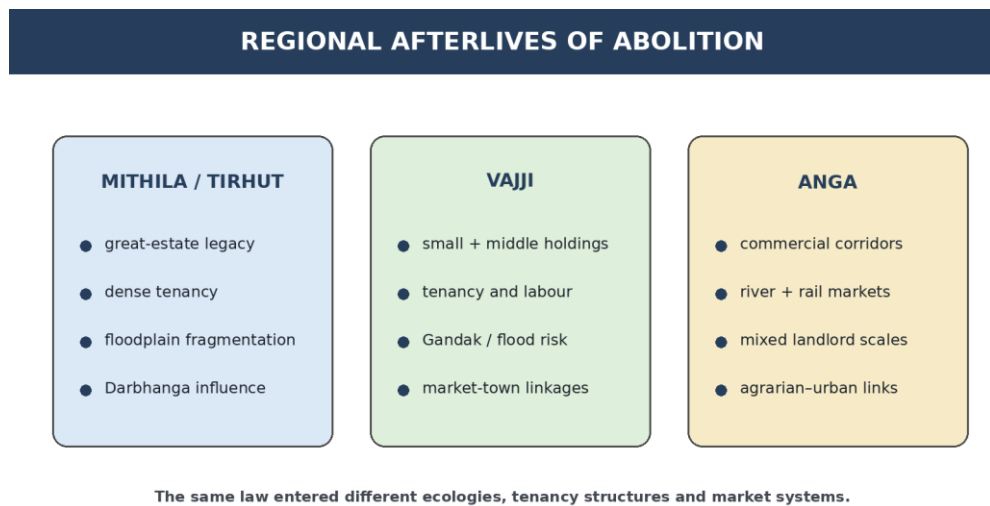


Figure 299 — One abolition law, different regional afterlives

75.29 Anga illustrates a different route from landed authority toward market-linked power

Bhagalpur and Munger were tied strongly to the Ganga corridor, railways, towns, grain movement, commercial agriculture and non-agricultural employment. In this setting, the decline of zamindari could coexist with the continued importance of families able to combine land with trade, transport, processing, professional employment or urban property. Agrarian hierarchy thus interacted more visibly with a broader commercial economy. The consequence was not necessarily greater equality, but a different configuration of rural and urban capital from the great-estate landscape associated with parts of Mithila.

75.30 The historical verdict is a partial structural rupture with a long distributive afterlife

Zamindari abolition in Bihar should be credited with what it accomplished: it dismantled the legally entrenched intermediary estate, brought the State into direct relation with raiyats and transferred important estate rights into public authority. It should not be credited with what it did not accomplish: universal tenant security, redistribution to the landless, gender equality, updated records, cheap credit or the dissolution of caste and political hierarchy. Those unfinished tasks generated the subsequent history of ceilings, Bhoodan, tenancy reform, homestead rights, consolidation, land-record modernisation and agrarian mobilisation. The uneven consequences of abolition were therefore not an exception to reform; they were the starting conditions of the next reform cycle.

Chapter 76 — Agriculture after Independence

After independence, agriculture in Bihar changed through a layered sequence of land reform, irrigation, scientific crop improvement, groundwater development, credit expansion, mechanisation, road building and market integration. None of these transformations occurred evenly. The first decades remained dominated by monsoon risk and low yields; the Green Revolution raised wheat production more clearly than rice or maize; large river projects and tube wells extended irrigation but did not solve drainage and flood vulnerability; and small, fragmented holdings limited the income that even higher yields could generate. The history is therefore neither one of simple stagnation nor one of a uniform technological breakthrough.

For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the decisive variables were regional ecology and access. North Bihar's Himalayan rivers produced both fertile alluvium and recurrent flood/waterlogging hazards. The Gandak–Ganga corridor supported intensive cultivation linked to growing urban markets. Anga's Ganga-side districts combined foodgrains, horticulture and market connections with an important agricultural research centre at Sabour. This chapter follows production and technology across these settings while leaving the institutional history of Kosi and Gandak river-development projects to Chapter 77 and rural credit/cooperatives to Chapters 79–80.

76.1 Independence inherited a low-productivity, labour-absorbing agriculture

Agriculture entered independence carrying the weight of population pressure, small holdings, insecure tenancy, weak irrigation and limited non-farm employment. Land reform altered the legal structure of rural property, but it did not by itself supply water, improved seed, fertiliser, credit, storage or roads. In the alluvial districts of Mithila, Vajji and Anga, fertile soils coexisted with seasonal excess and scarcity of water. The post-1947 agricultural problem was therefore not simply to cultivate more land; it was to raise output from an already densely used countryside while reducing vulnerability to floods, drought, fragmented holdings and volatile markets.

76.2 Land reform changed tenure more quickly than agronomy

Abolition of intermediaries and later ceiling, consolidation and tenancy measures changed who stood between cultivator and State, yet the everyday technology of cultivation changed more slowly. Many farms continued to depend on family labour, bullocks, local seed, monsoon rainfall and informal credit. The productivity effects of land reform were consequently indirect: greater security could strengthen incentives to improve land, but only where farmers also had access to water, inputs and working capital. This distinction explains why the institutional reforms of Chapters 74 and 75 are necessary background but cannot substitute for a separate history of production after independence.

76.3 Early planning made food self-sufficiency and irrigation central objectives

The first generations of development planning treated foodgrain supply as a national strategic problem. Bihar's plans linked higher agricultural output with irrigation, community development, cooperatives, seed improvement, fertiliser use and agricultural extension. By the Third Plan, the state's own diagnosis was stark: inadequate irrigation left production unusually dependent on the timing and distribution of rainfall. Planning thus shifted agriculture from a largely revenue-administered sector toward a field of public investment, scientific research and block-level administration. The results, however, depended on whether programmes could reach millions of small and fragmented holdings.

76.4 North Bihar's monsoon dependence defined the initial production problem

North Bihar did not suffer from a simple absence of water. Its agricultural difficulty was the seasonal mismatch between abundant monsoon flows and inadequate control over their timing, drainage and storage. Paddy needed reliable moisture at critical stages, while winter crops required residual moisture or irrigation after the rains. A good monsoon could therefore produce both high output and damaging inundation in neighbouring tracts. Mithila and Vajji illustrate why irrigation history cannot be written only as canal construction: drainage, embankments, shallow groundwater, local channels and the ability to plant a second crop were equally important.

76.5 Flood and drought were opposite expressions of an incomplete water-control system

The same agricultural economy could encounter flood, waterlogging and local drought within a short distance. Himalayan rivers repeatedly damaged crops and deposited sand or silt, while fields outside effective command areas could face moisture stress after the monsoon withdrew. State policy responded through Kosi and Gandak works, embankments, canals, tube wells and later command-area development, but none created uniform water control. The historical consequence was high inter-annual variability: farmers made decisions not only about expected yield but about the probability that a crop could be planted, harvested and transported at all. Chapter 77 examines the great river projects in detail.

76.6 The exhaustion of easy area expansion shifted attention toward yield

By the 1970s most land suitable for cultivation in Bihar was already in use, and multiple cropping rather than reclamation offered the larger remaining margin for growth. The 1977 Eastern States Foodgrain Review estimated about 8.7 million hectares cultivated in undivided Bihar and roughly 11.3 million hectares of cropped area after multiple cropping. That diagnosis mattered: output growth increasingly required higher yield per hectare and more intensive use of the same land. Groundwater, short-duration varieties and a stronger rabi season therefore became central to agricultural transformation, particularly where holdings were too small for extensive expansion.

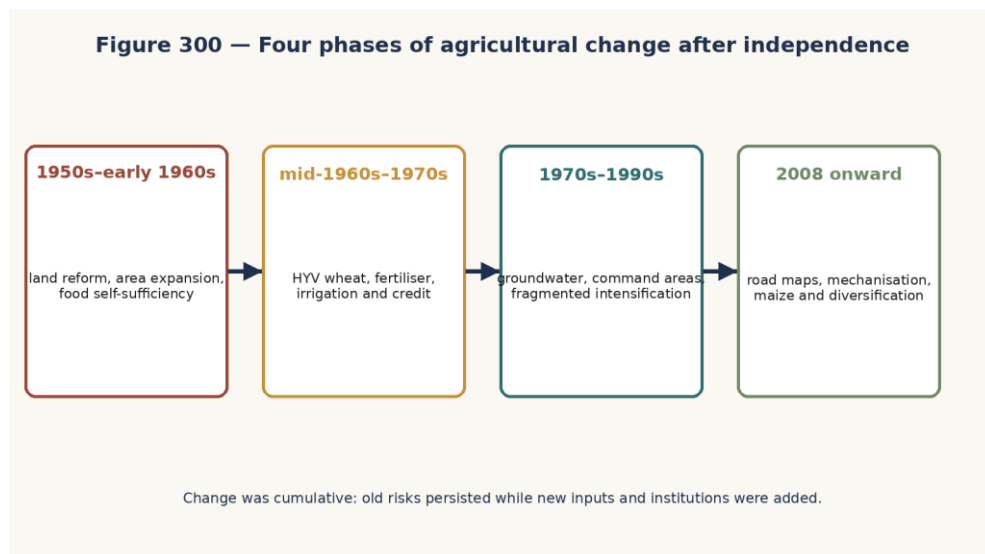


Figure 300 — Four phases of agricultural change after independence

76.7 The Green Revolution entered Bihar unevenly rather than as a single statewide event

High-yielding varieties were not self-executing technologies. Their benefits depended on controlled water, fertiliser, plant protection, credit and timely access to seed. Regions with assured irrigation could adopt input-responsive wheat more rapidly, while flood-prone or poorly drained paddy areas faced different constraints. Bihar consequently experienced a partial and spatially uneven Green Revolution. The state participated in the national technological shift after the mid-1960s, but it did not reproduce the rapid, broad transformation associated with Punjab and Haryana. The correct comparison is therefore between crops, seasons and local water regimes inside Bihar, not between a “modern” northwest and an undifferentiated “backward” east.

76.8 Wheat was the clearest early beneficiary of the new technology

Contemporary evidence identifies wheat as the crop in which Bihar’s post-mid-1960s technological change was most visible. The World Bank’s 1977 review found sustained increases in wheat area, yield and output, in contrast to the stagnant trend it observed for rice and maize over the same broad period. Wheat fitted the emerging rabi strategy: short-duration improved varieties, irrigation from wells or canals, fertiliser and access to markets could transform land that had formerly carried a less intensive winter crop or remained fallow. The gains were real, but their distribution followed access to water, capital and land.

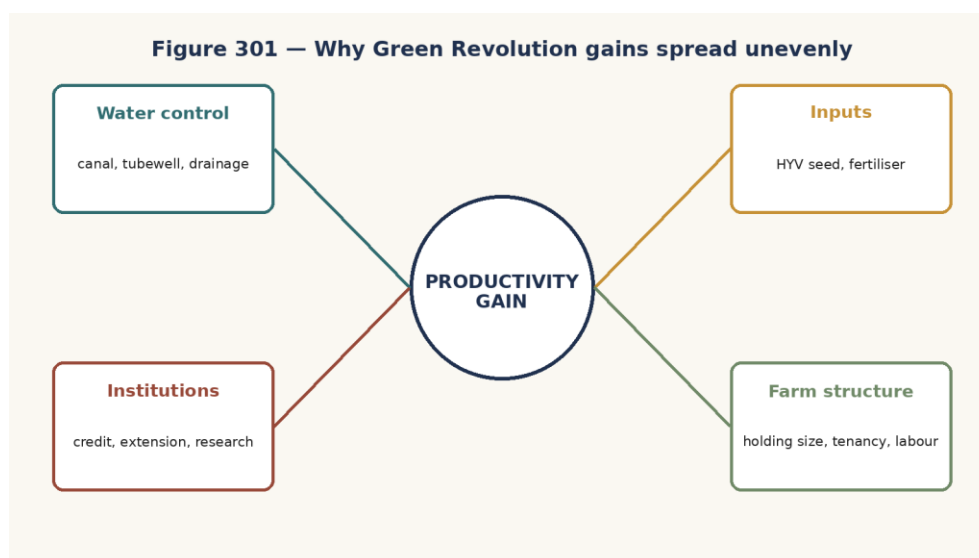


Figure 301 — Why Green Revolution gains spread unevenly

76.9 Rice remained dominant but was harder to intensify uniformly

Rice occupied a much larger ecological range than wheat and depended heavily on monsoon behaviour. Improved seed and fertiliser could raise yields, but standing water, drainage, transplanting schedules and flood timing made outcomes highly local. This helps explain why early post-Green-Revolution reviews could record rising wheat while rice productivity remained trendless at the state level. Later decades brought improved varieties, irrigation, mechanised operations and techniques such as System of Rice Intensification, yet rice retained substantial year-to-year volatility. In north Bihar especially, the central agronomic question was not merely how much water a field received but whether water arrived, remained and drained at the right times.

76.10 Maize linked subsistence, fodder and later commercial demand

Maize remained one of Bihar's three major cereals, especially important in north and eastern districts. In the earlier post-independence decades its acreage and yield did not display the same sustained rise as wheat, reflecting variable moisture control and the mixed purposes for which the crop was grown. Over time, however, improved hybrids, winter maize, better market integration and feed demand created new commercial possibilities. This later transformation should not be projected backward: maize moved through several technological and market regimes, from household food and fodder toward a crop increasingly connected to traders, feed mills and inter-state markets.

76.11 Pulses and coarse grains often lost ground as cereal intensification advanced

Technological change altered cropping patterns as well as yields. When irrigation, price incentives and improved seed favoured rice and wheat, pulses and some coarse grains could lose area even if they remained vital to diets and soil fertility. The 1977 foodgrain review already noted declines in several minor crops alongside wheat expansion. This was not simply “progress” from inferior to superior crops: it could narrow crop diversity, increase purchased-input dependence and reduce local pulse availability. Later policy attempts to revive pulses and oilseeds therefore addressed a structural consequence of cereal-centred intensification rather than a new problem.

76.12 Sugarcane persisted as a localised commercial crop rather than a universal alternative

Sugarcane had long linked parts of north Bihar to mills, crushers and specialised marketing chains. After independence its expansion depended on mill capacity, cane prices, transport, water and the reliability of procurement. Where factories weakened or closed, farmers faced a crop whose long duration and high working-capital requirement could become liabilities. Sugarcane thus demonstrates the importance of processing institutions: commercial agriculture cannot be reconstructed from acreage alone. In the Mithila–Vajji belt, cereal production, local cane, vegetables and livestock often coexisted within the same household economy rather than replacing one another in a simple sequence.

76.13 Jute contracted in relative importance but retained an eastern and northern geography

Jute had been an important monsoon cash crop in the wetter eastern and northeastern plains. Post-independence changes in packaging, prices, processing geography and competition from foodgrains reduced its relative weight. Contemporary state-level assessments noted declining jute area even when yields sometimes improved enough to cushion output. The crop's trajectory underlines a wider point: agricultural modernisation did not mean that every commercial crop expanded. Farmers continually reallocated land among food, fibre and cash crops according to expected return, labour demand, flood risk and market access.

76.14 Potatoes, vegetables and horticulture widened the meaning of intensification

The most important post-independence changes were not confined to staple grains. Potatoes, vegetables, fruits and other high-value crops offered higher returns per unit of land, especially near towns, roads and irrigation. The 1977 review already identified a rise in potato acreage from the mid-1960s even while yields remained unstable. In later decades, cold storage, improved roads, urban demand and specialised

horticultural programmes deepened this shift. For smallholders, diversification could increase cash income, but it also raised exposure to price crashes, perishability and costly inputs. Intensification therefore became as much a marketing problem as an agronomic one.

76.15 Groundwater transformed the rabi season more quietly than the great canals

Tube wells, shallow wells and pump sets allowed farmers to obtain water on a schedule more closely tied to crop need than distant canal rotations. This was especially important for wheat, vegetables and summer crops. Bihar's groundwater resources were substantial, but access was shaped by well cost, electricity or diesel, land fragmentation and the local market for purchased water. Small farmers often depended on group wells or water sellers rather than owning irrigation equipment. The spread of groundwater therefore created a new rural relation alongside older tenancy: control over pumps and energy could become a source of bargaining power in its own right.

76.16 Major canals expanded potential, but command-area performance remained uneven

Kosi, Gandak, Sone and other irrigation systems created large nominal command areas, and command-area development from the 1970s sought to improve field channels, water distribution and on-farm management. Yet the gap between irrigation potential created and water effectively delivered could be wide. Head–tail differences, siltation, maintenance, drainage and local control affected actual use. In north Bihar, canal irrigation could not be evaluated separately from flood embankments and drainage congestion. Large projects mattered enormously, but their agrarian effects were mediated by village-level hydraulics and farm-level capacity to make use of water.

76.17 Drainage was as important as irrigation in Mithila and Vajji

A field that receives irrigation but cannot drain excess monsoon water is not securely irrigated in any meaningful agronomic sense. Waterlogging delayed sowing of rabi crops, damaged standing paddy and reduced the value of otherwise fertile land. State command-area programmes often gave more institutional attention to delivering water than to removing it, while farmers in low-lying tracts experienced both problems simultaneously. This drainage deficit is central to the agricultural history of Darbhanga, Madhubani, Samastipur, Muzaffarpur and adjoining floodplains. It also explains why local pumps, channels and raised field boundaries could matter as much as spectacular barrages.

76.18 Small holdings and fragmentation limited the scale of private investment

The first Agricultural Census, 1970–71, documented a highly fragmented agrarian structure. The 1977 World Bank review reported an average operational holding of about 1.5 hectares in undivided Bihar and only about 1 hectare in Darbhanga Division; nearly two-thirds of holdings statewide were below one hectare. Fragmentation raised the cost of field channels, machinery use and well development, and complicated consolidation. It also meant that technologies profitable per hectare could still generate too little total household income on very small farms. Productivity policy therefore confronted a distribution problem that purely technical packages could not solve.

Table 76.1 — Phases of agricultural change and their principal limits

Period / transition	Principal change	agricultural	Main historical limit
---------------------	------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Period / transition	Principal agricultural change	Main historical limit
1950s–early 1960s	land reform, community development, area expansion and irrigation planning	monsoon dependence; weak water control; low input use
mid-1960s–1970s	HYV technology, especially wheat; fertiliser; pumps and institutional credit	uneven irrigation; tenancy; small holdings; weak distribution systems
1970s–1990s	groundwater, command-area development, extension and selective mechanisation	flood/drainage problems; fragmentation; weak maintenance and rural infrastructure
1990s–2000s	market integration, private pumps, migration-linked farm finance and diversification	price risk; underinvestment; Bihar–Jharkhand statistical break after 2000
2008 onward	Agriculture Road Maps, certified seed, mechanisation, SRI/zero tillage, maize and horticulture	climate risk, tiny holdings, energy cost, groundwater and market volatility

76.19 Tenancy and sharecropping shaped who could risk new technology

A cultivator's willingness to invest depended on the security and duration of access to land. Where sharecropping or informal tenancy remained concealed, tenants could hesitate to make improvements whose benefits would accrue beyond the season or strengthen the owner's claim to higher rent. The 1977 review found leasing and share tenancy widespread in Bihar. New seed and fertiliser could still be adopted on rented land, but irrigation structures, land levelling and soil improvement required longer horizons. The technological history of agriculture is therefore inseparable from the tenurial history developed in Chapters 74 and 75.

76.20 Credit and input distribution were binding constraints on technological adoption

Improved seed, fertiliser, pesticides, pumps and machinery all required cash before harvest. Cooperatives, commercial banks, land development banks and later rural banking networks expanded institutional credit, but informal lenders and trader advances remained important. Contemporary reviews repeatedly identified weak credit institutions and poor input distribution as constraints on Bihar's agriculture. Delayed fertiliser or seed delivery could make a recommended package useless for a crop whose sowing window was short. The effectiveness of public agricultural policy therefore depended on logistics: the right input had to reach the right village before the biological season had passed.

76.21 Agricultural extension and research became permanent parts of the rural state

Post-independence agriculture created new professional actors in the countryside: extension workers, block officials, plant-protection staff, irrigation engineers, seed agencies and agricultural scientists. Their task was to translate research into farm practice and to carry farm problems back into research. The system often performed unevenly, and the 1977 review was sharply critical of the weakness of extension–research linkages. Yet the institutional transformation itself was durable. Farming decisions increasingly took place within a field of demonstrations, recommended varieties, subsidised inputs, credit schemes and official statistics, even when farmers adapted or rejected the advice.

76.22 Pusa and Sabour anchored two important agricultural knowledge geographies

Rajendra Agricultural University at Pusa, established in 1970, became a major centre for agricultural education, research and extension in north Bihar. Sabour in Bhagalpur carried an older agricultural-college tradition into the post-independence era: postgraduate agricultural education expanded there from the 1950s, the college became affiliated with Rajendra Agricultural University in 1970, and Bihar Agricultural University was established at Sabour in 2010. These institutions matter to regional history because they connected laboratory, field station and farm across different agro-ecological zones, rather than because scientific knowledge flowed automatically or uniformly into villages.

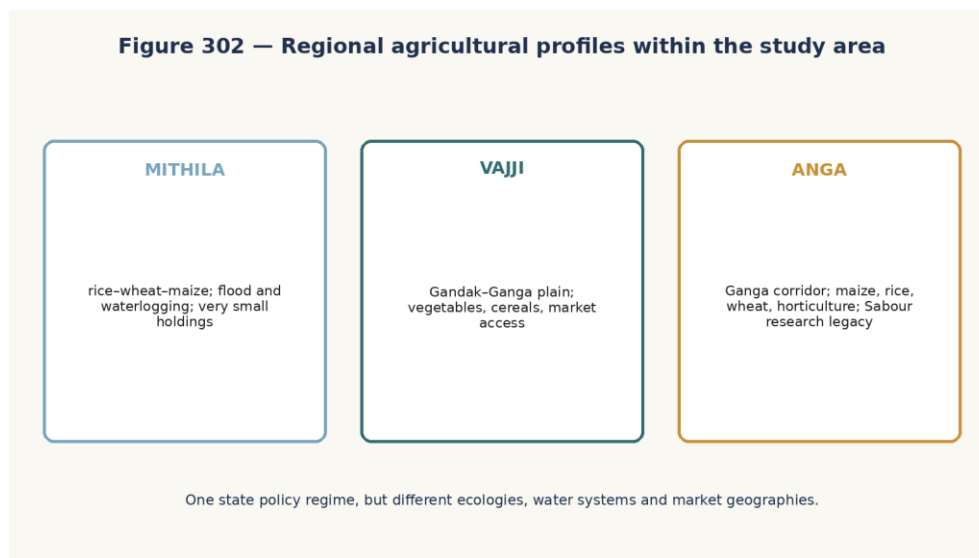


Figure 302 — Regional agricultural profiles within the study area

76.23 Mechanisation was selective, scale-sensitive and often service-based

Tractors, threshers, pump sets, power tillers, harvesters and later specialised machines reduced the time required for particular operations. On small fragmented holdings, however, ownership was often less rational than hiring. Custom-service markets therefore became central: a farmer could purchase ploughing, pumping or threshing without owning the machine. Mechanisation also altered labour demand unevenly—reducing peak demand for some tasks while enabling more timely sowing and multiple cropping that created work elsewhere. Its social effect cannot be inferred from machine counts alone; ownership, rental markets, fuel prices and the seasonal availability of migrant labour all mattered.

76.24 Migration became part of the farm labour strategy rather than agriculture's opposite

Seasonal and long-distance migration increasingly supplemented farm income in regions where tiny holdings could not support households year-round. Remittances helped finance consumption, ceremonies, education and sometimes pumps, livestock or farm inputs. At the same time, male out-migration shifted responsibility for crop supervision and livestock toward women, older people and hired workers. Agriculture and migration thus became mutually sustaining rather than mutually exclusive. A household could remain socially and economically tied to land while deriving a growing share of cash income from outside the village. This pattern later became one of the defining features of rural north Bihar.

76.25 Women’s agricultural labour remained structurally important and statistically obscured

Women contributed to transplanting, weeding, harvesting, post-harvest processing, livestock care, seed selection and household food production, yet official categories often recorded them as non-workers or marginal workers when labour was unpaid within the family. Mechanisation could reduce some forms of drudgery but also displace female wage work in specific operations. Male migration sometimes expanded women’s managerial responsibility without transferring formal land titles or access to institutional credit. The post-independence agricultural household must therefore be analysed as a gendered labour system, not as a farm managed by an abstract male “cultivator.”

76.26 River projects altered agricultural possibilities without abolishing ecological risk

The Kosi and Gandak projects, embankment systems and associated canals changed the spatial distribution of flood protection and irrigation. They enabled more intensive cultivation in some command areas, but also altered drainage, sediment movement and the geography of risk. The agricultural outcome depended on whether a locality lay inside or outside embankments, near a functioning distributary, at the head or tail of a canal, or in a waterlogged depression. Chapter 77 treats these projects as institutions and landscapes in their own right; here their significance is that post-independence agricultural change was inseparable from a massive re-engineering of rivers.

76.27 The creation of Jharkhand in 2000 introduced a major statistical break

Long-run Bihar agricultural series require geographic caution. Before November 2000, official Bihar statistics included the plateau and mineral districts that became Jharkhand; after bifurcation, Bihar referred to the smaller predominantly Gangetic state. Apparent jumps in crop shares, irrigation ratios, forest area or average holdings can therefore reflect boundary change rather than agricultural transformation. For the present study, the problem is manageable because Mithila, Vajji and Anga largely remained within Bihar, but state-level aggregates before and after 2000 should never be spliced mechanically without adjusting for geography.

76.28 The Agriculture Road Maps after 2008 marked a renewed phase of state activism

Bihar’s first Agriculture Road Map, launched in 2008, placed certified seed, farm mechanisation, bio-farming and improved cultivation techniques within a coordinated state strategy. A second road map for 2012–17 broadened the goals to food and nutrition security, farmer income, employment, women’s participation and natural-resource conservation. This policy phase differed from the early Green Revolution because it treated agriculture as a wider value chain involving horticulture, livestock, fisheries, machinery, skills and markets. It also reflected the post-bifurcation state’s attempt to make agricultural growth a central development strategy.

76.29 Recent gains reveal diversification as well as persistent cereal dependence

Recent Bihar economic surveys record substantial growth in rice, wheat and maize alongside vegetables, fruits and specialised crops, and they credit irrigation expansion, improved seed, mechanisation and techniques such as SRI and zero tillage for part of the improvement. Yet cereals still occupy the overwhelming majority of gross cropped area, and a large share of rice land remains exposed to rainfall

variability. The result is a more productive and diversified agriculture that remains vulnerable to floods, drought, heat, groundwater cost, fragmented holdings and price shocks. Modernisation reduced some risks while creating new dependencies on purchased inputs, energy and markets.

76.30 The regional verdict is one agricultural transition with three distinct trajectories

Mithila, Vajji and Anga experienced common state policies but different combinations of ecology and market access. Mithila's dense smallholding agriculture remained strongly conditioned by Himalayan rivers, waterlogging and migration while adopting wheat, maize, vegetables, pumps and improved rice. Vajji's Gandak–Ganga location linked intensive cereals and horticulture to Muzaffarpur, Hajipur and Patna markets. Anga combined Ganga-side agriculture with maize, rice, wheat, horticulture and the research legacy of Sabour, while Bhagalpur–Munger transport corridors strengthened commercial links. Post-independence agriculture is therefore best understood as uneven intensification rather than a single Green Revolution or a story of unchanging stagnation.

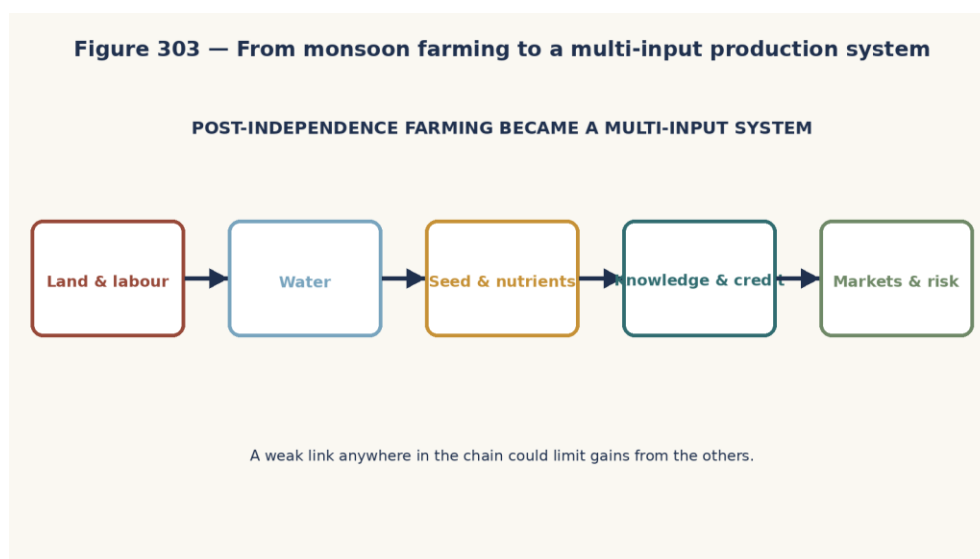


Figure 303 — From monsoon farming to a multi-input production system

Chapter 77 — Kosi, Gandak and Major River-Development Projects

Post-independence river development in north Bihar was built around a difficult hydraulic fact: Mithila and Vajji possessed abundant water, yet the timing, sediment load and mobility of Himalayan rivers made that abundance dangerous as well as productive. The Kosi and Gandak projects therefore combined flood-control structures, diversion barrages, embankments, canals, roads, bridges, hydroelectric components and cross-border agreements with Nepal. They were not simply irrigation schemes, and they were not storage-dam projects in the usual sense. Their history is best read as an attempt to create a managed river landscape within an alluvial plain that continually changes channel, bed level and drainage relations.

The projects produced real gains: protected tracts, new irrigation possibilities, transport links, power generation and a permanent hydraulic administration. They also produced second-generation problems - displacement, incomplete rehabilitation, waterlogging, canal inefficiency, siltation, embankment maintenance and the redistribution rather than elimination of flood risk. These contradictions are central to the socio-economic history of Mithila, Vajji and the adjoining Gangetic plain. Chapter 78 examines floods themselves as social and economic events; the present chapter concentrates on the institutions and infrastructures created to manage rivers after independence.

77.1 River development became a central project of the postcolonial state

Independence inherited a long history of embankments, canals and flood inquiries, but the new state enlarged the scale and ambition of intervention. Large multipurpose projects promised to convert damaging monsoon flows into irrigation, power and planned development. In north Bihar this hydraulic vision was inseparable from national food policy, rural employment and the political expectation that scientific engineering could reduce chronic insecurity. The Kosi and Gandak projects were consequently presented not as isolated civil works but as development systems. Their construction required finance, land acquisition, labour, roads, rail access, cross-border diplomacy and administrative organisations capable of operating structures long after the ceremonial moment of inauguration.

77.2 North Bihar's problem was excess, scarcity and sediment at the same time

A single vocabulary of 'water shortage' cannot describe the region. Monsoon months could bring destructive discharge, bank erosion and waterlogging, while the dry season could leave crops without timely irrigation. Himalayan rivers also carried heavy sediment loads that altered channels, raised beds and blocked drainage. River development therefore had to solve several problems simultaneously: route floodwater, protect settlements, divert water into canals, maintain drainage and preserve enough hydraulic flexibility for a mobile river system. This explains why projects that created impressive irrigation potential could still coexist with flood damage or waterlogged fields. The engineering system and the floodplain ecology operated on different temporal scales.

77.3 The Kosi's shifting course made it the emblematic river-control problem

Before the project, the Kosi had migrated markedly across the north Bihar plain over historical time, leaving abandoned channels, chauras and belts of sediment. Such movement was not random in a simple sense; it reflected a very high sediment load, low gradients after the river left the Himalayan foothills and repeated channel instability. By the early 1950s the Kosi had become a national symbol of the perceived need

for decisive river control. The proposed solution did not attempt to impound the entire Himalayan flow behind a large storage dam. Instead it combined embankment confinement with a barrage near Hanumannagar/Bhimnagar and canal headworks designed to divert water for irrigation.

77.4 The 1953 scheme and the 1954 India-Nepal agreement created the Kosi project framework

India approved the main Kosi scheme in 1953, and on 25 April 1954 India and Nepal signed the agreement that made the transboundary works legally possible. The agreement explicitly described a barrage and headworks upstream of Hanumannagar, afflux and flood banks, canals, protective works and hydroelectric generation. Because major structures and construction access lay in Nepal, the project could not be implemented as a purely domestic Bihar scheme. Land acquisition, compensation, quarrying, roads, communications and the use of water and power all required bilateral rules. The project thus made diplomacy and river engineering parts of the same institutional history.

77.5 The Kosi agreement was also a land, compensation and communications agreement

The treaty provisions show how much physical infrastructure depends on social and territorial arrangements. Nepal was to acquire land required for project works, while India was to bear compensation under agreed procedures. The agreement addressed cultivated land, forests, villages, houses and other immovable property, and it authorised project roads, tramways, railways and communications needed for construction and maintenance. These clauses matter because a barrage cannot be separated historically from the land corridors, quarries, labour camps and access networks that make it possible. They also reveal why questions of sovereignty and compensation later became central to debate over the project in Nepal.

77.6 Embankment construction preceded completion of the Kosi barrage

Field works began in the mid-1950s, with embankments receiving early priority because the immediate political promise was flood protection. Contemporary government accounts reported that the principal embankments were substantially completed by 1959, before the barrage itself became operational. Embankments narrowed the zone within which the river was expected to move and protected extensive tracts outside them. Yet they also created a new spatial distinction between protected land, land lying within the embanked corridor and areas whose drainage now depended on sluices and crossings. The project therefore changed the geography of risk even before the irrigation network had matured.

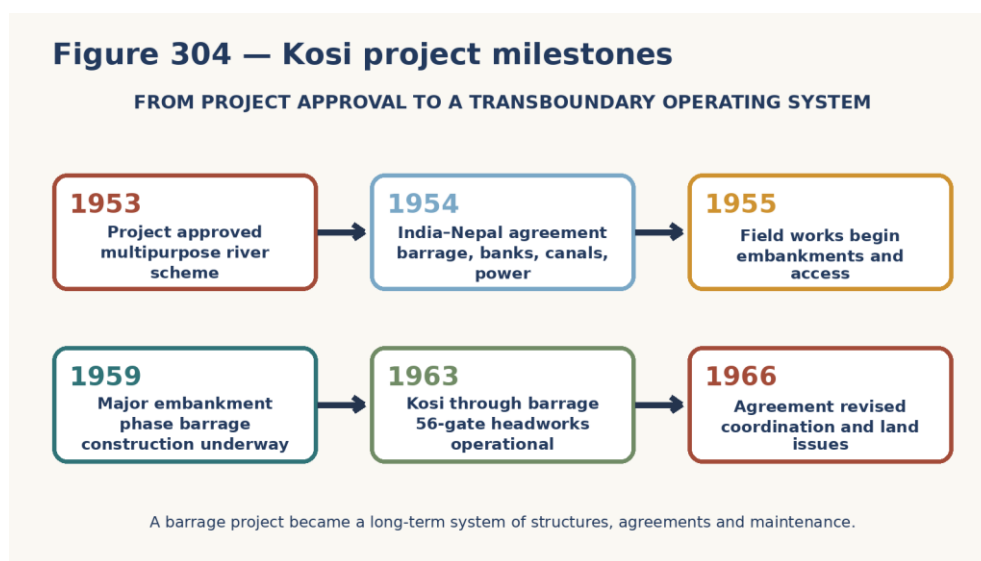


Figure 304 — Kosi project milestones

77.7 The 1963 Kosi barrage created the controlling headworks of the project

The barrage near Bhimnagar/Hanumannagar is a diversion and regulating structure, not a high storage dam. Parliamentary review recorded a length of about 3,770 feet and 56 gates; the river was diverted through the completed barrage in March 1963. The headworks raised and regulated water levels sufficiently to feed canals and provided a road crossing as part of the project complex. Its completion was a major engineering achievement, but it did not freeze the entire Kosi basin into a fixed hydrological condition. Upstream sediment, embankment behaviour, gate operation, downstream channel change and maintenance remained continuous management problems.

77.8 The Eastern Kosi Canal turned flood-control infrastructure into an irrigation system

The Eastern Kosi Main Canal and its branches were intended to carry barrage water into a large command on the east side of the river. This converted the project from a defensive flood intervention into a productive agricultural infrastructure. Canals created the possibility of more reliable kharif water and expanded rabi cultivation where distribution systems worked effectively. Yet irrigation benefit depended on much more than water at the canal head: distributaries, field channels, drainage, rotation schedules and maintenance determined what reached farms. The later history of command-area development demonstrates that ‘potential created’ at project level and ‘irrigation utilised’ in fields are not the same measure.

77.9 The Western Kosi Canal reveals the long gestation of major irrigation works

The western canal component had been envisaged within the wider Kosi scheme but advanced much more slowly. Central Water Commission project compilations list the Western Kosi Canal as approved in 1961 and still an ongoing major project decades later, serving districts including Madhubani, Darbhanga and Samastipur. This long implementation history is important for understanding state capacity. River projects are often remembered through the date of a barrage, but distribution networks may require generations of excavation, land acquisition, cross-drainage works, lining, rehabilitation and redesign. The social effects therefore unfold gradually rather than on a single completion date.

77.10 Hydropower and transport were integral, not ornamental, components

The Kosi project included a hydroelectric station associated with the canal system, and the bilateral agreement gave Nepal a defined interest in project power. Roads, construction railways and the barrage bridge also altered mobility around the border region. These functions show why the project was called multipurpose: it linked water control to energy and communications. Their significance extended beyond direct project revenue. A road bridge across a previously difficult river crossing reduced travel friction; project roads connected work sites to markets; and electricity symbolised the developmental ambition of harnessing a river rather than merely defending against it.

77.11 Flood protection was real, but it was spatially selective

Embankments reduced routine inundation across many protected tracts and enabled more settled cultivation and infrastructure investment behind them. This benefit should not be denied merely because later failures occurred. At the same time, flood protection was not uniform. Villages inside or intercepted by embankments faced very different conditions from villages outside; drainage from protected areas could be impeded when river levels were high; and a breach could concentrate damage along new paths. The correct historical question is therefore not whether embankments ‘worked’ or ‘failed’ in the abstract, but how they redistributed frequency, depth, duration and location of flooding across different social groups.

77.12 Displacement and rehabilitation were built into the Kosi project’s social history

Land acquisition, embankment alignments and the confinement of villages within the river corridor displaced or reorganised settlement. Rehabilitation became sufficiently important that the 1966 revised agreement explicitly included rehabilitation of displaced population among matters for bilateral coordination. Government records and later field-based studies show that compensation and resettlement were uneven and that some households maintained links with original villages or returned to land within the embanked zone. These experiences complicate celebratory project narratives. The same structure could protect one group while imposing relocation, difficult access or recurrent inundation on another, making distributional analysis essential to any assessment of project benefit.

77.13 The 1966 revised Kosi agreement institutionalised a second phase of bilateral governance

Nepal sought revision of the original terms as political circumstances changed, and a new agreement was signed on 19 December 1966. It superseded the 1954 instrument while retaining the project’s basic purposes. The revision refined arrangements concerning land, property, communications, operation and consultation and provided for joint mechanisms dealing with common project questions. Historically, the revision demonstrates that a transboundary infrastructure cannot be governed by engineering design alone. Sovereignty, compensation, local effects and changing national expectations remain active after construction begins. The legal framework itself therefore became part of the project’s adaptive history.

77.14 Confining a sediment-rich river created long-term bed and drainage questions

The Kosi carries large sediment loads from a steep Himalayan catchment into a low-gradient alluvial plain. When a mobile river is confined between embankments, sediment behaviour becomes a central maintenance issue. Deposition can alter bed levels, shift flow toward banks and increase pressure on

protective works; outside the embankments, tributaries and local drainage channels still need routes into or across the main river system. Engineering cannot abolish sediment. It can only redirect its effects through dredging, spurs, sluices, cross-drainage works, embankment strengthening and continual monitoring. This is why post-construction maintenance is as historically important as original construction.

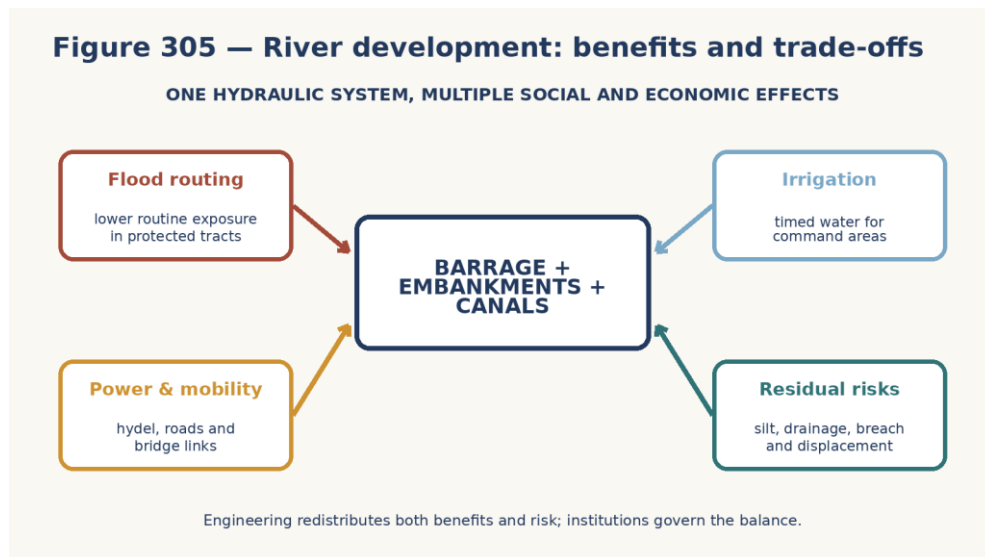


Figure 305 — River development: benefits and trade-offs

77.15 The 2008 Kusaha breach exposed the difference between a structure and a managed system

On 18 August 2008 the Kosi breached its eastern embankment at Kusaha in Nepal, upstream of the barrage, and flowed into an older channel belt across Nepal and Bihar. The disaster is often described as proof that the entire Kosi project was misconceived, but analytically it makes a more precise point: an embankment system is only as reliable as inspection, maintenance, erosion control and emergency response along its vulnerable reaches. The breach occurred outside the barrage itself. It therefore demonstrated that focusing only on the monumental headworks can obscure the thousands of metres of less visible protective infrastructure on which the system depends.

77.16 Post-2008 recovery widened river management from construction toward resilience

The Kosi disaster generated reconstruction programmes, embankment repair and renewed attention to asset management, flood forecasting and institutional coordination. Bihar's Flood Management Improvement Support Centre expanded the use of satellite inundation mapping, hydrological information and barrage status reporting, while later planning addressed sediment and embankment management more systematically. This represents an important historical shift. The first generation of river development emphasised creating structures; the later generation increasingly emphasised data, maintenance, emergency preparedness and the condition of existing assets. The change does not eliminate engineering, but it changes the meaning of engineering from one-time construction to continuous risk management.

77.17 The Gandak project addressed a different but related north Bihar hydraulic geography

The Gandak enters the plains near the Himalayan foothills and flows along the western side of the north Bihar region before joining the Ganga. Older canal works already existed near Tribeni, but post-independence planners proposed a much larger barrage-and-canal system capable of supplying Bihar, Uttar Pradesh and Nepal. Compared with the Kosi, the Gandak project was more strongly organised around irrigation distribution from the outset, although flood training and bank protection also formed part of the works. Its command extended deeply into the agricultural economy of Champaran and the Vajji corridor toward Muzaffarpur and Vaishali.

77.18 The 1959 Gandak agreement made irrigation and power explicitly transboundary

India and Nepal signed the Gandak Irrigation and Power Project agreement on 4 December 1959. It authorised a barrage near the existing Tribeni headworks, canal regulators, canals, communications, river-training works and associated power development. The agreement provided for irrigation systems serving Nepal as well as Indian commands and set out responsibilities for land acquisition, compensation, operation and maintenance. In 1964 the agreement was amended, notably strengthening the wording protecting Nepal's right to withdraw water within the valley and deleting the earlier pro-rata shortage clause. As with Kosi, the treaty record shows that water allocation and sovereignty evolved together with construction.

77.19 The Valmikinagar barrage became the headworks of a very large canal network

The Gandak barrage at Valmikinagar/Bhainsalotan was constructed in 1968-69. From the barrage, major canal systems carry water toward Bihar, Uttar Pradesh and Nepal. Bihar State Hydroelectric Power Corporation records that the Eastern Gandak Canal project began in 1960 and that its main canal system was completed in 1975. These dates illustrate a recurrent feature of river development: the barrage may be completed years before the distribution network reaches full extent. Canal excavation, cross-drainage structures and branch systems transform the project into a territorial network whose performance varies from head reach to tail reach.

77.20 The Eastern Gandak or Tirhut canal system directly reshaped the Vajji-region agricultural economy

The Eastern Gandak command includes large parts of West and East Champaran, Muzaffarpur, Vaishali and adjoining districts, linking the barrage to the historic Vajji corridor. A long main canal and branching distribution system brought surface irrigation into areas previously dependent on monsoon rainfall, local channels and wells. The system supported rice-wheat intensification and later horticulture where water delivery was reliable. Yet its social reach depended on distributary location, outlet management and the position of farms within the command. Canal geography therefore created new distinctions between head, middle and tail users even while expanding the overall water supply.

77.21 The western and Nepal canal systems made Gandak a multi-jurisdictional water network

The 1959 agreement provided for western and eastern canal arrangements in Nepal alongside the large Indian systems. Water therefore crossed not only district boundaries but national and state jurisdictions. This meant that gate operation, seasonal requirements and maintenance could not be treated as purely local engineering matters. The 1964 amendment to Nepal's riparian-rights clause is especially revealing: it recognised that future Nepalese water use could not be frozen by a project schedule designed at one historical moment. The Gandak system thus illustrates the general principle that transboundary irrigation requires rules capable of accommodating changing demand as well as fixed infrastructure.

77.22 Hydropower at Valmikinagar added an energy relationship to irrigation cooperation

The Eastern Gandak Canal hydroelectric project at Valmikinagar uses a canal fall rather than a large storage reservoir. The commissioned station has an installed capacity of 15 MW in three 5 MW units, and project arrangements include supply of power to Nepal. The scale is modest compared with large Himalayan hydropower proposals, but its historical significance lies in coupling irrigation releases with electricity generation. Water that passes through a canal system can therefore produce several services in sequence. This multipurpose logic was central to twentieth-century river-development planning, even though the relative economic value of irrigation, flood protection and power differed across projects and periods.

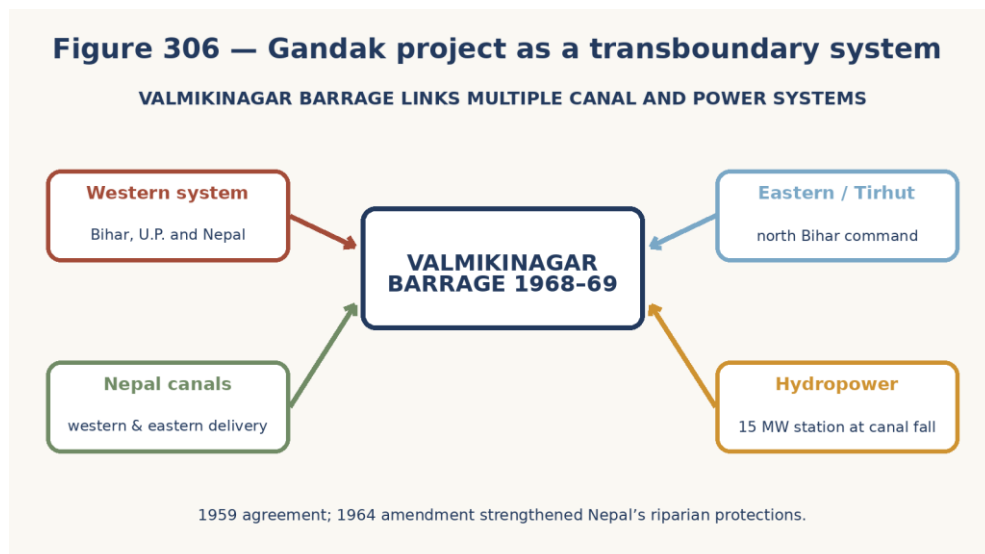


Figure 306 — Gandak project as a transboundary system

77.23 Irrigation potential and irrigation actually used diverged in both major systems

Project documents routinely distinguish command area, irrigation potential created and irrigation potential utilised. The distinction is essential. A canal can be excavated yet deliver poorly because of siltation, damaged gates, missing field channels, unauthorised cuts, weak rotation management or inadequate drainage. Central Water Commission compilations show long gaps between planned potential and realised use for several Bihar schemes, particularly projects with long gestation such as the Western Kosi Canal. This is not merely an accounting problem. It determines whether public capital becomes higher crop output, and it shifts attention from spectacular headworks toward ordinary distributaries, outlets and maintenance staff.

77.24 Waterlogging became a major second-generation cost of canal irrigation

Remote-sensing analysis of Bihar's irrigation commands for 2002-03 found the largest surface-waterlogged area in the Gandak command - about 212,000 hectares - followed by roughly 116,000 hectares in the Eastern Kosi irrigation scheme. The study linked waterlogging to excessive or poorly matched irrigation supplies, seepage from canals, impeded drainage, landform and accumulated rain or floodwater. These findings are crucial because they overturn the assumption that more canal water is always beneficial. In a low-gradient floodplain, irrigation must be designed together with drainage; otherwise a system created to relieve drought risk can reduce cultivable time by keeping the water table too high.

Table 77.1 — Major river-development systems and their second-generation lessons

Project / system	Core works and chronology	Principal historical lesson
Kosi Project	1954 agreement; embankments; Bhimnagar barrage operational 1963; revised agreement 1966; eastern and western canal systems	Flood protection and irrigation expanded, but displacement, silt, maintenance and breach risk made operation a permanent task.
Western Kosi Canal	Approved 1961; long construction and modernisation history serving Madhubani-Darbhanga-Samastipur command	A completed barrage does not imply a completed distribution system; field delivery can lag for decades.
Gandak Project	1959 agreement, amended 1964; Valmikinagar barrage 1968-69; Eastern Gandak main system completed 1975	Large irrigation gains coexist with tail-end delivery, seepage, drainage and waterlogging problems.
Bagmati / Kamla / Lalbakeya	Major/medium barrages, embankments and later transboundary river-training works	Floodplain management is a network of basin-specific works, not only two iconic barrages.
Kosi-Mechi link	Existing Eastern Kosi canal remodelling plus extension; under construction in 2026	Contemporary policy still relies on adapting older hydraulic infrastructure rather than starting from a blank slate.

77.25 Command-area development represented a shift from supply creation to water-use efficiency

From the 1970s onward, Command Area Development programmes attempted to close the gap between main-canal potential and farm-level use. Field channels, land levelling, drainage, rotational water distribution and later participatory management were intended to make the hydraulic system function beyond the outlet. Bihar continues to operate separate command-area agencies for Gandak and Kosi. This institutional layer is historically significant because it acknowledges that a barrage and main canal are only the first stage of irrigation. The productivity of public water depends on thousands of small on-farm and distributary decisions that large-project planning had initially tended to treat as secondary.

77.26 Bagmati, Kamla and Lalbakeya works broadened the river-development portfolio beyond the two great barrages

North Bihar's post-independence water history was not confined to Kosi and Gandak. Bagmati, Kamla and Lalbakeya systems received embankments, barrages, canals or river-training works of different scales, while smaller schemes addressed local drainage and irrigation. Central Water Commission compilations list

the Bagmati project as a major scheme approved in 1970, and India-Nepal cooperation has also supported river-training works on Kamla, Bagmati and Lalbakeya. These projects matter because they show a move from one or two iconic multipurpose schemes toward a network of basin-specific interventions. Their performance still depends on cross-drainage, maintenance and coordination with local floodplain processes.

77.27 Bilateral committees became part of the hydraulic infrastructure

By the twenty-first century, India and Nepal managed shared river questions through standing mechanisms including the Joint Committee on Kosi and Gandak Projects, the Joint Committee on Inundation and Flood Management and the Joint Committee on Water Resources. Such committees are not visible like barrages, but they are infrastructure in an institutional sense. They organise inspection, maintenance, inundation concerns, repairs and proposals that cross the international boundary. Their existence reflects a fundamental lesson of the Kosi and Gandak histories: where rivers and project assets cross borders, technical reliability depends on recurrent diplomatic cooperation rather than on a treaty signed once and left unchanged.

77.28 The Kosi-Mechi link extends the old canal system rather than replacing it

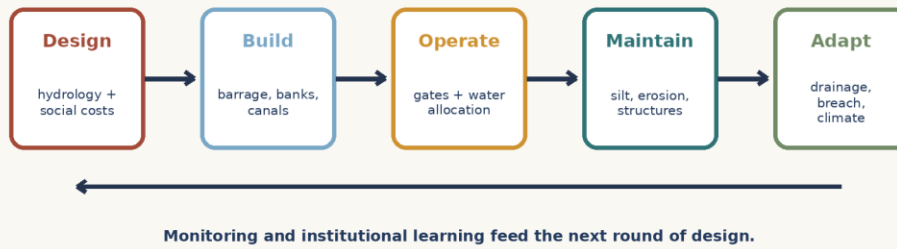
A contemporary phase of river development seeks to remodel and extend the Eastern Kosi Main Canal toward the Mechi/Mahananda basin. In March 2025 the Union government approved inclusion of the Kosi-Mechi intra-state link under PMKSY-AIBP. The current design combines remodelling of the first 41.30 km of the existing canal with an extension that brings the total link length to about 117.5 km and targets additional kharif irrigation in Araria, Purnea, Kishanganj and Katihar. By July 2026 official reporting still described the project as under construction, with completion targeted for March 2029. It should therefore be treated as an ongoing project, not a realised historical benefit.

77.29 Proposed high-dam solutions remain distinct from the barrage projects already built

India and Nepal have repeatedly discussed larger storage possibilities in the Kosi basin, including the Sapta Kosi High Dam multipurpose concept and related diversion studies. A Joint Project Office has worked on investigations since the early 2000s, but official statements continue to describe the high-dam proposal as a subject of study and bilateral dialogue. It must not be conflated with the existing Bhimnagar barrage. The distinction matters historically and technically: a storage dam would alter seasonal flows and energy generation on a different scale, while the existing project primarily confines the river and diverts water at a barrage. Proposed infrastructure should not be written into history as completed infrastructure.

77.30 The long-term lesson is adaptive management of a mobile river landscape

Kosi and Gandak demonstrate both the capacity and the limits of post-independence hydraulic development. Barrages, embankments and canals changed agriculture, mobility and state presence; they also created permanent obligations for maintenance, drainage, rehabilitation and cross-border coordination. The most defensible historical verdict is therefore neither technological triumphalism nor a claim that all intervention was futile. Fixed structures can produce major benefits in a mobile alluvial environment, but only when institutions repeatedly adjust to sediment, land use, social claims and changing risk. The history of river development is consequently a history of continuing governance, not a completed engineering episode.

Figure 307 — Adaptive river-management cycle**RIVER INFRASTRUCTURE REQUIRES REPEATED MANAGEMENT**

The historical lesson: build once, manage continuously.

Figure 307 — From construction to adaptive river management

Chapter 78 — Floods as Social and Economic History

Floods in Mithila, Vajji and Anga are not merely episodes of excess water. They are recurring social and economic processes in which rainfall, river morphology, embankments, drainage, settlement location, landholding, caste, gender, transport, public administration and household assets interact. The same depth of inundation can fertilise one field, destroy another crop, isolate a school, erode a homestead, interrupt a market road or push a land-poor household into debt. A socio-economic history must therefore ask not only where water spread but who was exposed, what was lost, who could recover, and how repeated floods altered livelihoods and institutions over time.

North Bihar's flood history is also plural. Himalayan tributaries can rise early; Burhi Gandak and other systems may peak later; the Ganga can become a high master drain and slow the evacuation of local water; embankments may breach; drainage congestion may prolong inundation; and the Ganga corridor in Anga can experience high stages, erosion and backwater effects even when the northern tributaries behave differently. This chapter therefore treats major post-independence flood years as historically distinct events, while also examining the quieter annual accumulation of crop loss, debt, migration, interrupted schooling, public expenditure and adaptive knowledge.

78.1 Floods are produced by water, exposure and vulnerability together

Hydrology determines where and how water moves, but disaster losses are socially distributed. A pucca house on raised ground, a thatched dwelling beside an embankment, a tenant's standing paddy crop and a trader's stock in a market town do not face identical risks. Land title, savings, livestock ownership, caste location, access to boats, roads, credit, health care and public relief shape what happens after inundation begins. This distinction helps explain why flood mortality, displacement and indebtedness can remain concentrated even when engineering works reduce average water levels in some protected tracts. Flood history must therefore combine river records with evidence on households, labour, markets and institutions.

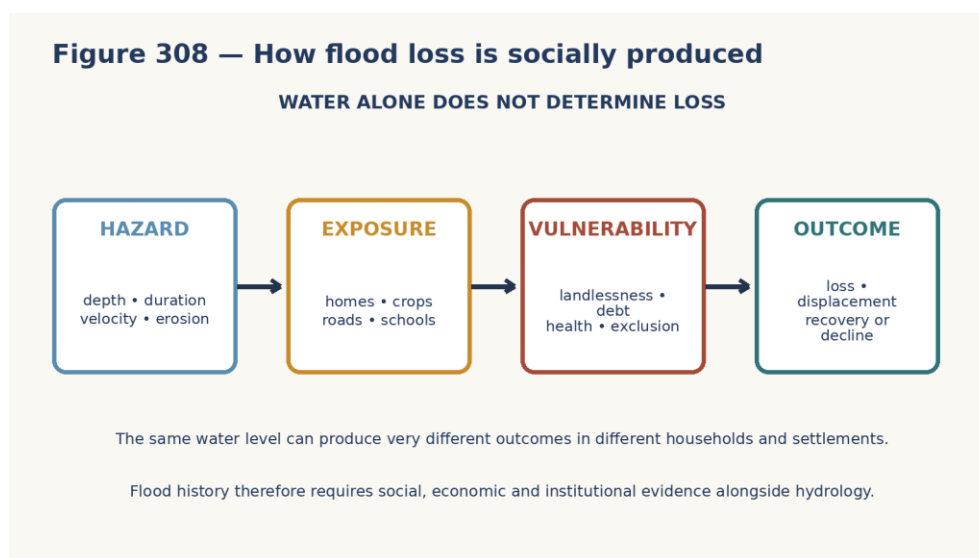


Figure 308 — How a flood becomes a social and economic disaster

78.2 Bihar's flood geography is exceptionally extensive but measurement depends on method

Government descriptions have long classified about 68,800 square kilometres, roughly 73 per cent of Bihar's geographical area, as historically flood affected or flood prone. A newer Central Water Commission satellite-based assessment for 1986–2022 identifies about 2.914 million hectares actually affected by observed inundation over its study framework. These are not contradictory numbers: one is a broad historical hazard category, while the other is derived from a particular remote-sensing method and period. The difference is itself historically important because changing measurement technologies alter how the state sees flood exposure, prioritises districts and allocates management resources.

78.3 Himalayan catchments make north Bihar a transboundary floodplain

Most major north-Bihar rivers receive water and sediment from catchments extending into Nepal and the Himalaya. Heavy rainfall far north of the political boundary can therefore raise water levels in Mithila and Vajji even when local rainfall is moderate. The flat alluvial plain then slows drainage and encourages channel migration, overbank spreading and waterlogging. Flood governance is consequently transboundary in hydrological fact even where relief and compensation remain organised by Indian administrative boundaries. Forecasting rainfall and river stages in Nepal, maintaining barrages and embankments, and transmitting warnings downstream have become parts of everyday economic security for villages, market centres and transport corridors.

78.4 Flood timing changes through the monsoon season

Bihar's Flood Management Information System notes a recurring seasonal sequence: Bagmati, Kosi and Kamla systems can produce early floods in May and June; Burhi Gandak commonly becomes more important by mid-July; and by September a high Ganga can make drainage more difficult by raising the receiving water level of the master river. This sequence matters economically. Early inundation may affect transplanting and seedbeds, mid-season floods can destroy standing paddy or isolate labour markets, and late water can delay harvesting and rabi preparation. Households may therefore experience several distinct flood shocks in one monsoon without a single record-breaking discharge.

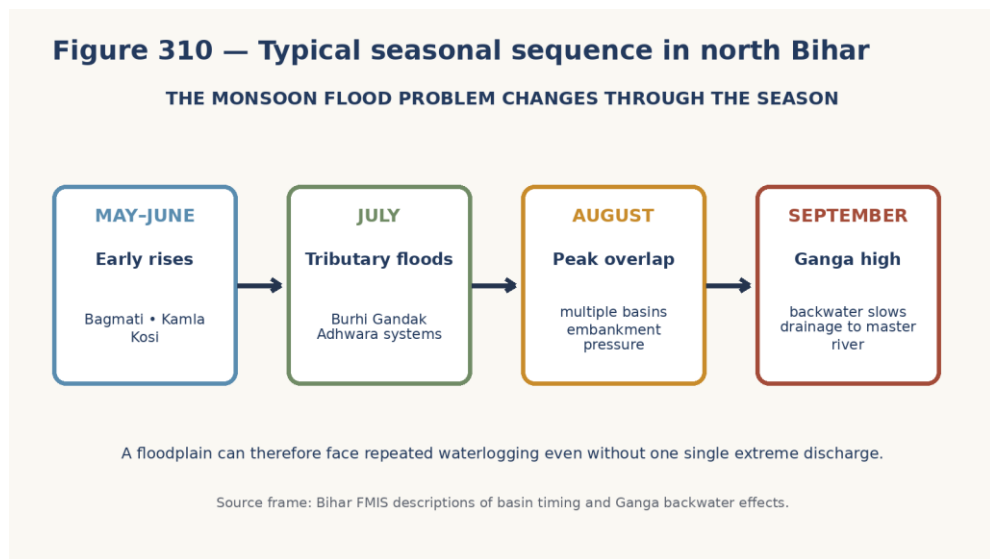


Figure 310 — Typical seasonal sequence in north Bihar

78.5 Inundation, breach, erosion and waterlogging are different hazards

The word ‘flood’ can conceal several mechanisms. Overbank inundation may rise and recede gradually. An embankment breach can send deep, fast water into settlements accustomed to apparent protection. Riverbank erosion can remove land permanently rather than temporarily wet it. Drainage congestion can keep low-lying fields submerged after river levels begin to fall. Flash floods from smaller Himalayan catchments create another pattern. The economic consequences differ: erosion threatens title and settlement continuity; waterlogging reduces cropping intensity; a sudden breach produces acute evacuation needs; and predictable seasonal spreading may sometimes be incorporated into cropping, fishing or grazing strategies.

78.6 Sediment can be both an agricultural resource and a destructive burden

Alluvial rivers carry silt that historically renewed soils, raised fields and supported riverine agriculture. Yet sediment is not automatically beneficial. Coarse sand deposited after a breach can bury fertile topsoil and render fields difficult to cultivate for years, while fine silt may be welcomed. Embankments can alter where sediment settles, raising riverbeds or trapping water on the protected side. The economic meaning of sediment therefore depends on grain size, depth, timing and land use. Local debates over embankment openings or cuts cannot be understood without recognising this double character: the same river material may be valued as fertility in one place and experienced as land loss in another.

78.7 Post-independence flood policy inherited an engineering-centred vision

The early decades after independence treated barrages, embankments and canals as central instruments for controlling rivers and promoting development. Chapter 77 examined this infrastructure directly. Social history adds another layer: the expansion of protected areas encouraged denser settlement, road building and intensified cultivation behind embankments, while maintenance failures or breaches could then produce especially severe losses. This does not mean that engineering created every flood problem. Rather, infrastructure changed exposure. Once households, schools, markets and crops came to rely on structures, the consequences of overtopping, drainage failure or breach became part of the region’s political economy.

78.8 The 1987 flood became a benchmark in public memory and official statistics

The 1987 flood remains one of the largest post-independence benchmarks for Bihar. The Flood Hazard Atlas retrospective series records about 4.2 million hectares and 24.5 million people affected in that year. Later flood reports repeatedly use 1987 high-flood levels as comparison points at gauges such as Jhanjharpur and Bhagalpur. Its importance therefore lies not only in immediate losses but in the way it became a reference year for engineering design, administrative memory and household recollection. When later gauges approached or surpassed 1987 levels, the comparison communicated risk to officials and residents more effectively than an abstract discharge number.

78.9 The long flood season of 1998 showed the cost of repeated pressure

In 1998 rainfall and high discharges placed prolonged pressure on embankments across Burhi Gandak, Bagmati, Adhwara and Kosi systems. Bihar's flood-history records report 381 deaths, substantial crop damage and repeated emergency flood-fighting works. The historical significance is the duration of exposure. A long season multiplies costs even without one spectacular breach: labour is diverted to protection works, roads remain unreliable, fodder deteriorates, diseases spread, school attendance falls and farmers lose opportunities to replant. Repeated smaller shocks can therefore rival a single catastrophic event in cumulative household impact.

78.10 The 2004 flood was a tributary-basin catastrophe even with a relatively low Ganga

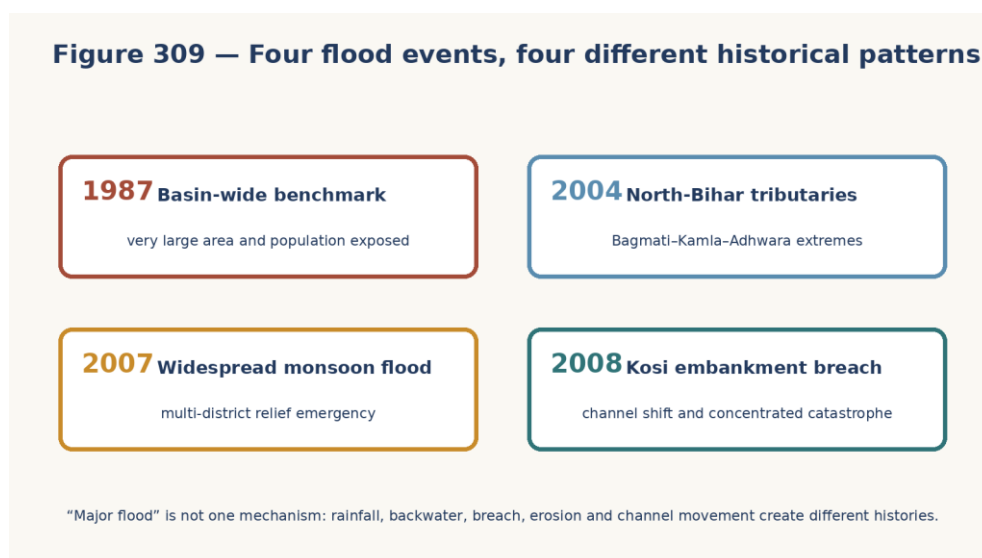
The 2004 flood demonstrates that a low master river does not guarantee safety. Heavy rainfall in Himalayan catchments drove Bagmati, Burhi Gandak, Kamla-Balan, Bhutahi-Balan and the Adhwara group to exceptional levels; the official flood history notes that Bagmati at Dubbadhar exceeded its previous high by about 1.18 metres. Vast parts of north Bihar were inundated through multiple embankment breaches. FMISC records roughly 23,490 square kilometres badly affected and 885 deaths in the broader official loss series. The event shows why Mithila's flood history cannot be reduced to the Kosi alone.

78.11 The 2007 flood revealed the scale of a multi-district relief emergency

The 2007 monsoon again produced widespread flooding in north Bihar. The National Institute of Disaster Management's case study estimated about 19 million people affected across 20 districts and roughly 450 deaths, with damage on the order of ten billion rupees. The response mobilised evacuation, camps, food distribution and aerial relief, but post-event assessment also identified weaknesses in standard operating procedures, sanitation, rehabilitation and social security. Flood relief thus became a test of administrative capacity beyond engineering departments. The episode helped strengthen the later shift toward disaster-management planning, dedicated response forces and pre-positioned shelters and boats.

78.12 The 2008 Kosi breach was a different kind of disaster

On 18 August 2008 the eastern Kosi afflux embankment failed near Kusaha in Nepal, allowing the river to move into an older channel belt and inundate large parts of Supaul, Madhepura, Saharsa, Araria and Purnia. World Bank recovery documents describe about 3.3 million people affected, roughly one million evacuated, around 460,000 people temporarily sheltered in 360 relief camps, and more than 500 deaths. Unlike ordinary overbank flooding, this event combined embankment failure, channel avulsion, deep sediment deposition and destruction of roads and bridges. Its recovery therefore required rebuilding settlements and connectivity, not merely distributing short-term relief.

Figure 309 — Four flood events, four different historical patterns*Figure 309 — Four flood events, four different historical patterns*

78.13 The Ganga makes Anga's flood history distinct from the northern tributaries

Anga's Bhagalpur–Munger corridor experiences the Ganga as both trunk river and receiving channel. Bihar flood records note that Bhagalpur's Ganga gauge exceeded the 1978 high-water record in 2003, while the 2011 season again brought exceptionally high Ganga levels after decades of comparison with the 1987 benchmark. Here flood history includes riverbank erosion, diara settlement, sand deposition, ferry and bridge disruption, and the interaction of Ganga stages with tributary drainage. Bhagalpur's repeated appearance in district flood-frequency tables also cautions against treating flood vulnerability as exclusively a north-of-Ganga phenomenon.

Table 78.1 — Selected post-independence flood events and what they reveal

Event	Defensible evidence used here	Historical significance
1987	Flood Hazard Atlas retrospective series: about 4.2 million ha and 24.5 million people affected.	Benchmark year for later gauge comparisons and public memory.
1998	FMISC records 381 deaths plus major crop and public-property losses during a prolonged season.	Shows cumulative cost of repeated pressure without one single iconic breach.
2004	About 23,490 sq km badly affected; extreme Bagmati/Kamla/Adhwara levels; FMISC loss series reports 885 deaths.	Tributary-basin catastrophe even though the Kosi remained broadly normal.
2007	NIDM estimated about 19 million people affected in 20 districts and roughly 450 deaths.	Large multi-district relief emergency that exposed institutional gaps.
2008 Kosi	World Bank: about 3.3 million affected; around 1 million evacuated; more than 500 deaths.	Embankment breach and channel shift required reconstruction of settlements and connectivity.

78.14 Floods reorder the agricultural calendar

Agricultural loss depends as much on timing as on depth. Floodwater arriving before transplanting can delay the kharif season but leave time for re-sowing. Water arriving after significant expenditure on seed,

fertiliser and labour can destroy sunk investment. Prolonged inundation may prevent a second crop by delaying land preparation into the rabi season. Farmers respond through crop choice, staggered sowing, short-duration varieties, raised seed storage, livestock mobility and diversification into wage work. These practices are not evidence that floods are harmless; they are adaptations developed because flood risk is recurrent and household survival cannot wait for complete hydraulic control.

78.15 Crop loss rapidly becomes a credit problem

A destroyed crop removes both expected food and expected cash. Small and marginal cultivators may then borrow for consumption, seed, livestock replacement and house repair at the same time. Formal crop credit can be difficult to restructure quickly where land records are disputed or tenancy is informal. Moneylenders, traders, relatives and self-help groups therefore become part of the post-flood financial landscape. Repeated floods can convert a temporary shock into chronic debt, especially when the next planting season begins before compensation arrives. The economic history of flooding is consequently also a history of interest, collateral, delayed repayment and household decisions over which assets can be sold.

78.16 Livestock losses affect food, traction, savings and women's work

Cattle, buffaloes, goats and poultry are not simply agricultural inputs. They are mobile savings, sources of milk and manure, and in many households central to women's daily work and income. Floods create fodder shortages, animal disease, drowning risk and the need to evacuate animals separately from people. Relief planning increasingly recognises livestock shelters and fodder, but older accounts often recorded human casualties more systematically than animal losses. When a household loses livestock, recovery may take longer than rebuilding a wall because breeding stock and milk income cannot be instantly replaced. This is especially significant for land-poor households whose principal productive asset may be an animal rather than acreage.

78.17 Fisheries and wetlands complicate the language of pure loss

Seasonal water also creates economic opportunities. Floodplain wetlands, chauris, ponds and temporary connections between rivers and lowlands support fisheries, aquatic plants and grazing. Fishers and boatmen may gain work even while cultivators lose crops. Yet benefits are unequally distributed because access to ponds, capture fisheries and landing sites may be controlled by leases, caste occupations or local power. Pollution, prolonged stagnant water and sudden embankment drainage can also damage fisheries. A balanced history therefore recognises flood-dependent livelihoods without romanticising inundation: the same flood can expand fish habitat while destroying houses and food stocks.

78.18 Riverbank erosion turns a temporary hazard into a land-rights crisis

Inundation normally leaves a parcel identifiable when water recedes; erosion may remove the parcel itself. Along the Ganga, Kosi and other shifting rivers, households can lose homesteads and fields to bank retreat and later confront uncertain claims when land re-emerges as chars or diaras. Survey maps, revenue records and physical channels may no longer coincide. Compensation regimes are generally designed more easily for damaged crops or houses than for continuously shifting land. Erosion therefore creates a special form of displacement in which citizenship, residence and land rights remain stable on paper while the physical geography that supported them disappears.

78.19 Settlement form reflects accumulated flood knowledge

Villages across the region historically adapted through raised house plinths, clustered settlement on natural levees or mounds, elevated grain storage, boats, bamboo platforms and knowledge of evacuation routes. Modern roads and embankments can themselves become temporary high ground. Such practices are often labelled ‘traditional resilience,’ but they are costly and unevenly available. A household with resources can raise a pucca plinth or rebuild in brick; a landless family may occupy the lowest available ground. Settlement history thus records both environmental knowledge and inequality in the capacity to act on that knowledge.

78.20 Roads, bridges and markets transmit flood shocks beyond the inundated village

A washed-out culvert can isolate villages whose houses remain dry. Milk, vegetables and fish lose value rapidly when transport fails, while food, kerosene and medicine become more expensive in cut-off markets. Traders shift routes, ferries regain importance and wage workers lose days of employment. The 2008 Kosi recovery therefore treated connectivity as livelihood reconstruction: later World Bank completion evidence reported restored roads and bridges benefiting about 1.3 million people and helping around 110,000 farmers regain market access. Infrastructure recovery is economic recovery because rural production depends on movement as much as on fields.

78.21 Schools and health facilities become both casualties and emergency infrastructure

Floodwater interrupts schooling through damaged buildings, inaccessible roads and the use of schools as shelters. Children may lose books, uniforms and examination time even when the building survives. Health systems face contaminated drinking water, diarrhoeal disease, snakebite, skin infections, maternal-care disruptions and difficulties moving patients. Relief camps concentrate populations in ways that make sanitation and privacy central concerns. The social cost of a flood therefore continues after water falls: missed schooling and untreated illness can reduce household income and human capital long after crop-loss statistics have been finalised.

78.22 Caste and class shape exposure before the river rises

Socially marginalised households are often more likely to occupy erosion-prone banks, embankment interiors, low-lying commons or insecure tenancy because safer land carries higher prices and stronger claims. Research on Bihar’s flood vulnerability consistently finds that social disadvantage and physical exposure overlap. This does not mean every Dalit or landless household occupies the same hazard zone, but it does mean flood losses can reproduce existing hierarchy. Limited savings, informal work, weaker documentation and dependence on local patrons can slow access to compensation and reconstruction. Environmental justice is therefore not an optional perspective on flooding; it is part of explaining why similar hazards yield unequal recovery.

78.23 Gender changes the meaning of evacuation and recovery

Male out-migration is common in many flood-prone districts, leaving women, children and older people to manage livestock, food stocks, care work and evacuation during the monsoon. Relief camps may create problems of privacy, sanitation and safety that are not visible in household counts. Women may lose poultry, stored grain, kitchen gardens and home-based work that damage assessments undervalue because they are not

formally recorded as wage income. At the same time women's self-help groups and neighbourhood networks can become crucial channels for savings, information and relief. Flood recovery is therefore partly a reorganisation of unpaid and community labour.

78.24 Migration is both a response to floods and a source of resilience

Repeated crop failure and seasonal isolation can increase temporary migration toward Punjab, Delhi, Kolkata, industrial centres and nearer towns. Remittances then finance house repair, seed and consumption during later floods. Migration can therefore reduce immediate income vulnerability while creating new care burdens for those who remain. A catastrophic flood may also generate distress migration by exhausting local employment. The direction of causation is consequently circular: pre-existing migration changes household capacity to survive a flood, and flood losses alter subsequent migration decisions. The long flood history of Mithila and Kosi regions is inseparable from this wider labour geography.

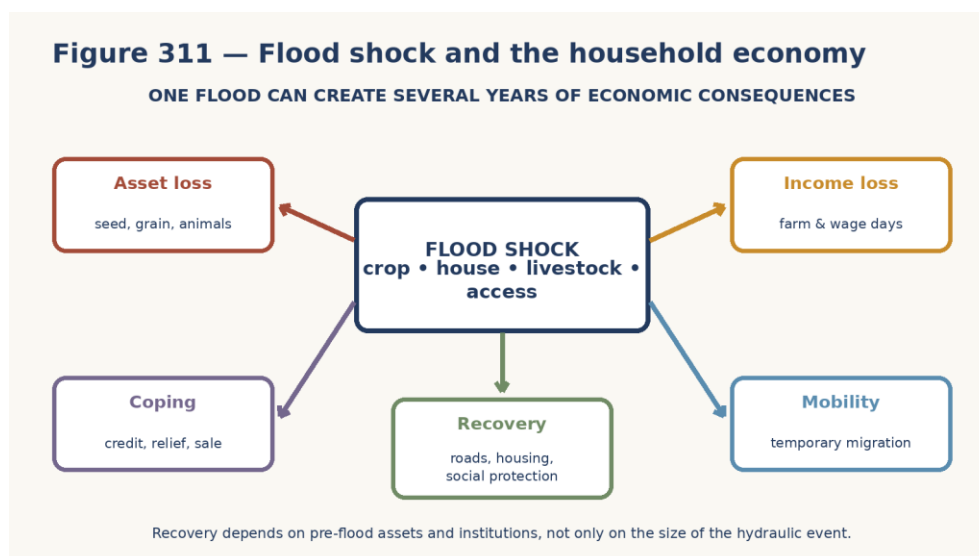


Figure 311 — Flood shock and the household economy

78.25 Relief is an economic institution, not only humanitarian assistance

Gratuitous relief, food packets, community kitchens, tarpaulins, cash transfers, livestock assistance and public works influence who must sell assets after a flood. Timely relief can prevent distress borrowing and preserve seed or animals for the next season. Delayed or poorly targeted relief can deepen inequality. Bihar's 2007 and 2017 responses show the growing institutionalisation of camps, boats, response forces and community kitchens. Yet entitlement remains dependent on enumeration, identity documents and access to officials. The social history of relief therefore includes queues, lists, local mediation and the political visibility of affected settlements.

78.26 Recovery requires rebuilding networks as well as houses

The 2008 Kosi reconstruction experience helped shift policy from replacing individual assets toward restoring systems. Owner-driven housing reconstruction was combined with roads, bridges, livelihoods, flood-management capacity and emergency response. Later project reporting linked restored connectivity to schools, health centres and market access, demonstrating that a house cannot function as a recovered household if roads, irrigation channels or public services remain broken. This systems perspective is especially

important in the alluvial plain, where one damaged bridge or drainage channel can affect many villages whose physical dwellings escaped direct inundation.

78.27 Embankments are also sites of local politics and contested risk

Flood reports occasionally record deliberate cuts or local interventions in embankments. Such acts cannot be reduced to irrational sabotage. Residents may seek to release trapped water, protect one settlement at the expense of another, or allow sediment-bearing water onto fields. At the same time an unauthorised cut can create severe danger downstream. Embankments therefore redistribute risk and create political questions over whose land is protected, whose drainage is blocked and who has authority to intervene during an emergency. The social history of flood control includes these conflicts over gates, closures, spurs and emergency breaches as well as the formal engineering record.

78.28 Flood information became a new form of public infrastructure

From the late 2000s Bihar invested in a dedicated Flood Management Information System and later Flood Management Improvement Support Centre. Satellite inundation mapping, telemetry, river gauges, Nepal hydrometeorological information, rainfall forecasts and web bulletins increasingly allow officials and the public to see flood extent and river status in near real time. This informational infrastructure changes economic decisions: district administrations can pre-position boats, farmers can move livestock, traders can alter routes and households can evacuate earlier. Forecasting does not eliminate loss, but lead time converts information into a protective asset.

78.29 New flood maps require careful comparison with older statistics

The historical category of 68,800 square kilometres flood prone remains widely used in Bihar planning, while the Central Water Commission's 2024 remote-sensing assessment reports about 2.914 million hectares affected by floods in Bihar over 1986–2022 under its satellite methodology. The Flood Hazard Atlas adds spatial frequency by showing which areas were repeatedly inundated across observed years. These products answer different questions. A historian should not treat the smallest modern mapped extent as proof that older estimates were wrong, nor treat the older hazard zone as if every hectare floods annually. Measurement history is part of flood history because definitions guide budgets, design standards and public perceptions of risk.

78.30 The durable policy problem is living with floods without normalising avoidable loss

Mithila, Vajji and Anga will remain riverine societies. Climate variability, Himalayan sediment, dense settlement and the geometry of the Ganga plain make complete elimination of flooding unrealistic. The historical lesson is instead to distinguish beneficial seasonal water from destructive exposure and to reduce preventable loss through drainage, maintained embankments, floodplain-compatible land use, resilient roads and housing, early warning, health preparedness, social protection, secure land records and rapid livelihood recovery. Floods become disasters when institutions and households cannot absorb the shock. The region's future therefore depends as much on reducing social vulnerability as on controlling river discharge.

Chapter 79 — Rural Credit, Indebtedness and Banking

Rural credit after independence was one of the central institutions through which agrarian change was either enabled or constrained. A cultivator needed working capital before harvest but received income only after harvest; a landless household needed food, medicine or migration expenses without possessing conventional collateral; a dairy producer needed small recurring advances; and a flood-affected family often needed several kinds of credit at the same time. Credit therefore cannot be studied only as banking history. It is also a history of risk, landholding, caste, gender, markets, migration and the timing of household cash flow.

Across Mithila, Vajji and Anga the long post-1947 transition was not a simple replacement of the moneylender by the bank. Cooperatives, commercial banks, Regional Rural Banks, Primary Agricultural Credit Societies, Self-Help Groups, microfinance institutions, traders, commission agents, employers, relatives and informal lenders coexisted and often financed the same household. The historical question is thus not whether formal credit expanded—it did—but who could use it, for what purpose, at what cost, with what documentation and repayment calendar, and what happened when crops, prices, health or floods disrupted repayment.

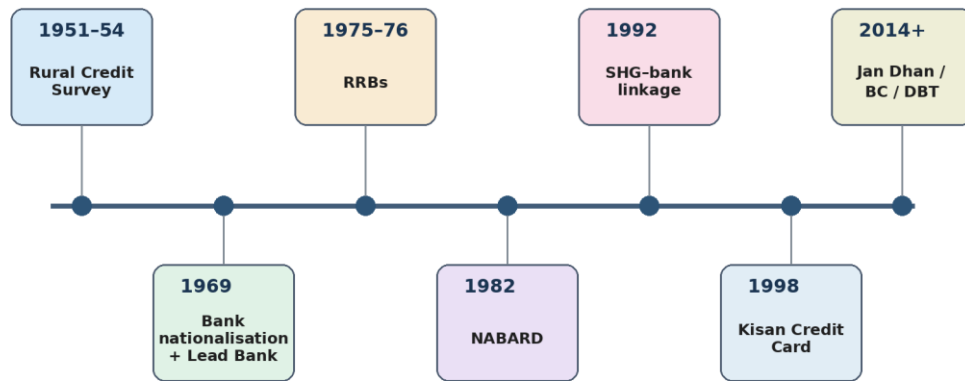
79.1 Independence inherited a countryside already structured by debt

Post-independence rural Bihar inherited longstanding relations of advance, mortgage, produce-linked lending and personal obligation. Colonial surveys had repeatedly recorded cultivators borrowing for cultivation as well as for food, ceremonies, litigation, rent and emergencies. Abolition of zamindari altered the legal structure of landed power, but it did not remove seasonal cash shortages. The basic agricultural asymmetry remained: expenditure on seed, labour, irrigation and consumption was required before sale proceeds arrived. Debt was therefore built into the annual rhythm of many rural households rather than being an exceptional sign of improvidence.

79.2 The All-India Rural Credit Survey reframed rural finance as a development problem

The Reserve Bank's All-India Rural Credit Survey of 1951–52 became a foundational post-independence diagnosis. It concluded that cooperative and institutional sources were too weak relative to private lenders and recommended a much larger state-supported cooperative role, including state partnership and integration of credit with marketing. Its wider significance was conceptual: rural credit was no longer treated as a private contract alone. It became part of planned development, agricultural productivity and the state's responsibility to build institutions capable of lending beyond wealthy landowners.

Rural credit: institutional milestones after independence



The sequence widened formal access, but did not abolish informal credit or repayment risk.

Figure 312 — Institutional milestones in rural credit after independence

79.3 Cooperative credit created a village-to-state institutional ladder

The short-term cooperative system developed as a tiered structure: Primary Agricultural Credit Societies at village level, District Central Cooperative Banks at district level, and a State Cooperative Bank at the apex. In principle, the arrangement combined local knowledge with pooled resources and refinance. PACS could know the cultivator and the cropping cycle better than a distant commercial bank. Yet their performance depended on membership, governance, recovery, accounting, political influence and the strength of the district and state-level institutions above them. Formal design did not guarantee equal access.

79.4 Informal lenders survived because they solved problems formal institutions often did not

Moneylenders, traders, grain dealers, employers, shopkeepers and relatives continued to matter even as institutional credit expanded. Their loans could be disbursed immediately, without land records, passbooks, guarantors or scheduled branch visits. They could also be bundled with input supply, crop purchase or labour relations. The price of that flexibility could be high interest, tied sales, opaque accounts or unequal bargaining power. The persistence of informal lending therefore reflected both exploitation and a service gap in formal finance.

79.5 Consumption and production credit were intertwined in real household budgets

Official lending schemes often separated productive loans from consumption borrowing. Rural households rarely lived inside that distinction. A crop loan could free other cash for food; a medical loan could prevent the forced sale of a pump or animal; money borrowed for a wedding could reduce the funds available for the next sowing season. The analytical unit must therefore be the household balance sheet. Whether a loan strengthened or weakened production depended on the entire sequence of income, expenditure and shocks.

79.6 Land records and collateral shaped the social reach of formal credit

Owner-cultivators with documented titles were usually easier for banks to assess than tenants, sharecroppers, oral lessees or cultivators on disputed land. This mattered especially in areas where cadastral records were outdated, plots were fragmented or inheritance had not been formally mutated. The poorer the borrower's documentary position, the more valuable became guarantors, group liability or informal reputation. Credit exclusion was thus partly a land-record problem, not simply a shortage of bank branches.

79.7 Floods turned agricultural credit into emergency finance

In flood-prone Mithila and parts of Vajji, the same household could lose a standing crop, stored grain, livestock fodder and access to roads in a single season. A scheduled crop loan assumed a harvest; a flood could remove both the repayment source and the next season's working capital. Borrowing then shifted from planned input finance to survival, repair and re-sowing. Repeated shocks could convert short-term debt into chronic indebtedness even when the original loan had been economically rational.

79.8 Bank nationalisation in 1969 changed the geography of formal finance

The nationalisation of fourteen major banks in 1969 marked a decisive expansion of developmental banking. Reserve Bank histories show that rural branches were only 17.6 per cent of commercial-bank branches in 1969 but 58.2 per cent by 1990; the population per bank office fell nationally from about 65,000 to about 14,000. This transformed physical access to deposits and loans. Yet branch presence was only the first step: sanction practices, collateral, staff incentives and knowledge of local agriculture still determined actual use.

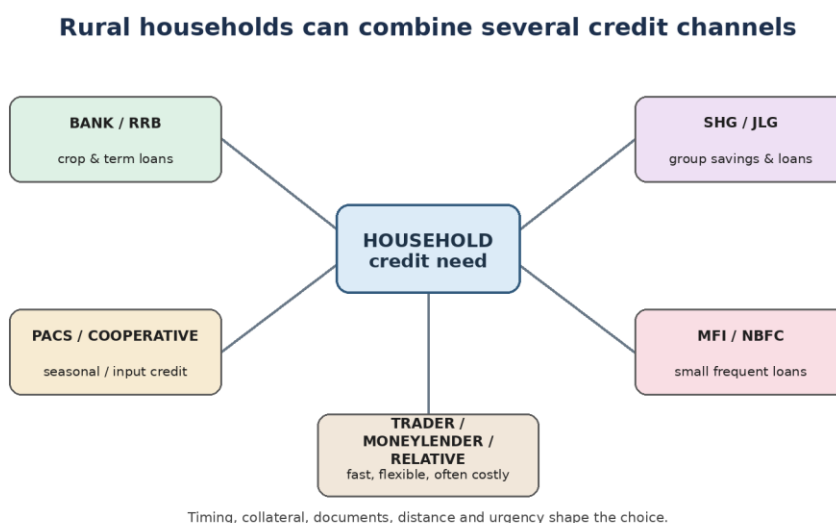


Figure 313 — Formal and informal borrowing channels can coexist within one household

79.9 The Lead Bank Scheme made districts units of credit planning

Introduced after nationalisation, the Lead Bank Scheme assigned banks responsibility for surveying district credit needs and coordinating branch expansion and lending. This brought finance into district development planning and encouraged banking in previously unbanked centres. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga the significance was practical: credit planning could now be discussed alongside irrigation, roads, agriculture, small industry and poverty programmes. But district targets could not by themselves ensure that credit reached the weakest households.

79.10 Priority-sector policy redirected bank portfolios toward agriculture

During the 1970s the priority-sector framework formalised the expectation that commercial banks lend to agriculture and other neglected sectors. Reserve Bank data show the agricultural share of bank credit rising sharply from the pre-nationalisation level. Directed credit changed bankers' responsibilities: small farmers, weaker sections and rural enterprises became explicit policy constituencies. It also created new problems of target fulfilment, loan appraisal, recovery and political pressure, which became recurring features of rural banking.

79.11 Regional Rural Banks were designed to combine local knowledge with bank resources

Regional Rural Banks were created from 1975 and placed on a statutory footing by the Regional Rural Banks Act, 1976. Their mandate was to serve small and marginal farmers, agricultural labourers, artisans and small entrepreneurs. The institutional idea was a hybrid: the local feel of a cooperative with the professionalism and resource base of a commercial bank. RRBs became especially important in eastern India, where the challenge was not only lending volume but the cost of serving dispersed, low-value rural accounts.

79.12 NABARD reorganised the apex architecture of rural finance in 1982

The establishment of the National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development in 1982 transferred major agricultural-credit and refinance functions from the Reserve Bank and the Agricultural Refinance and Development Corporation into a specialised institution. NABARD's role extended beyond refinance to supervision, institution-building, credit planning and later support for Self-Help Groups, rural infrastructure and cooperative reform. The shift made rural finance a distinct policy field with its own apex institution.

79.13 Subsidised anti-poverty credit linked banks to development programmes

From the late 1970s and 1980s, programmes such as the Integrated Rural Development Programme connected bank loans with government subsidies for livestock, small trade, irrigation assets and self-employment. These schemes expanded the social ambition of credit but often faced weak asset selection, poor aftercare, fragmented responsibility and repayment problems. A loan for a cow or pump was productive only if fodder, veterinary care, water, electricity, market access and household labour were available. Credit could not substitute for missing infrastructure.

79.14 Debt relief became a recurring political response to agrarian distress

Large-scale debt-relief programmes reflected the political reality that agricultural repayment could collapse after price shocks, droughts, floods or accumulated arrears. The Agricultural and Rural Debt Relief Scheme of 1990 was a national landmark. Later waivers revived the same debate: relief could restore damaged household balance sheets, but repeated expectations of waiver could complicate repayment discipline and bank incentives. For historical analysis, debt relief should be read both as social protection and as evidence of limits in the underlying credit-production system.

79.15 Liberalisation changed rural banking without ending developmental obligations

The banking reforms of the 1990s emphasised prudential norms, profitability, asset quality and competition. Rural banks and cooperatives had to operate under stronger financial discipline, while priority-sector obligations continued. In some places branch rationalisation and stricter appraisal made marginal

borrowers fear renewed exclusion; in others better-managed institutions increased reliability. The post-1991 story is therefore not withdrawal of the state but a rebalancing between financial viability and social banking.

Table 79.1 — Major post-independence rural-credit institutions and their historical significance

Milestone	Institution / programme	Historical significance
1951–54	All-India Rural Credit Survey	Recast rural indebtedness as a development and institutional problem; strengthened the case for state-supported cooperatives.
1969	Bank nationalisation + Lead Bank Scheme	Rapid branch expansion and district credit planning widened the geography of commercial banking.
1975–76	Regional Rural Banks	Created a specialised institution for small farmers, labourers, artisans and rural enterprise.
1982	NABARD	Created a dedicated apex institution for refinance, supervision, credit planning and rural financial development.
1992	SHG–Bank Linkage Programme	Made savings groups, especially women’s groups, a bridge to collateral-light formal credit.
1998	Kisan Credit Card	Adapted crop finance toward a revolving cultivation limit rather than repeated single-purpose applications.
2007 onward	JEEViKA in Bihar	Scaled women’s SHGs and federations as platforms for savings, bank linkage, insurance and livelihoods.
2014 onward	Jan Dhan, BCs and DBT	Expanded basic accounts and last-mile banking; shifted access problems toward usage, service quality and credit depth.

79.16 The Kisan Credit Card adapted formal credit to the crop cycle

Introduced in 1998, the Kisan Credit Card sought to replace repeated, transaction-by-transaction crop-loan applications with a revolving limit linked to cultivation needs. The design recognised that farmers require repeated access during a season, not a single fixed-purpose loan. KCC improved convenience for eligible cultivators, but its reach remained affected by land records, tenancy status, bank assessment and scale of operation. The instrument was better suited to documented cultivators than to invisible tenants or landless workers.

79.17 Self-Help Group–bank linkage opened a different route to formal finance

NABARD’s Self-Help Group–Bank Linkage Programme, begun in 1992, used group savings, peer knowledge and collective repayment to connect borrowers who lacked conventional collateral with banks. The important innovation was institutional rather than merely financial: a small group created its own savings history, internal lending rules and records before borrowing externally. This helped convert social relationships into a form of creditworthiness while lowering the bank’s transaction cost of servicing many small borrowers.

79.18 JEEViKA made women's group finance central to Bihar's rural-credit landscape

From 2007 the Bihar Rural Livelihoods Project, widely known as JEEViKA, expanded women's Self-Help Groups and federations as platforms for savings, bank linkage, insurance and livelihoods. World Bank project documents reported that by the mid-2010s more than 1.8 million households had been mobilised into nearly 149,000 SHGs in the then project area, with large volumes of institutional credit leveraged from public-sector and regional rural banks. The broader historical change was that poor rural women became organised financial clients rather than merely dependants in a male borrower's household.

79.19 Group credit could weaken the local monopoly of informal lenders

Research on JEEViKA's phased rollout found that greater SHG access shifted a portion of household borrowing away from high-interest informal sources and increased competition in village credit markets. This is important because the impact of institutional finance is not limited to the borrowers who take formal loans. A credible alternative can also affect the interest rates and bargaining power of remaining informal lenders. Formal and informal markets interact rather than occupying sealed compartments.

79.20 Microfinance widened access but introduced new risks of multiple borrowing

Alongside SHGs, specialised microfinance institutions and later NBFC-MFIs expanded small, frequent, often group-based loans. Their doorstep model reduced travel and paperwork and could serve women with little collateral. Yet fast expansion created risks of overlapping loans, repayment schedules that did not match seasonal incomes, and pressure when several lenders operated in the same village. The social value of microcredit therefore depends on responsible lending, transparent pricing and a realistic view of household cash flow.

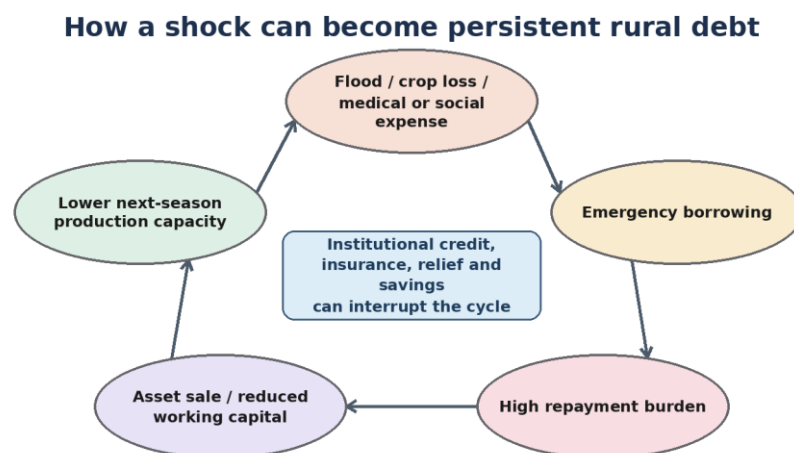


Figure 314 — How a temporary shock can become persistent indebtedness

79.21 Bihar's cooperative system remained important but financially uneven

PACS continued to be central to crop credit, input distribution, procurement and local cooperative activity, but their capacity varied greatly. NABARD's reviews of the short-term cooperative credit structure

repeatedly identified weak capital, recovery, accounting and governance in parts of the system. Bihar participated in national cooperative-revival programmes, including recapitalisation and computerisation efforts. The persistence of reform packages shows that proximity to the village is an advantage only when local institutions are financially and administratively sound.

79.22 Credit-deposit ratios reveal a persistent regional-development question

Bank deposits mobilised in a poor state do not automatically return as local loans. Bihar's economic surveys and banking reviews have repeatedly highlighted a relatively low credit-deposit ratio and sharper weakness in rural credit penetration. The ratio is not a perfect welfare measure—capital legitimately moves across district and state borders—but a persistently low figure can signal weak bankable investment, cautious lending, poor project preparation or inadequate demand translation. It is therefore both a banking statistic and a development indicator.

79.23 Business correspondents and digital banking changed the meaning of distance

From the 2000s, branchless banking through business correspondents, biometric authentication, mobile networks and digital payments reduced the need for every transaction to occur inside a bank branch. The Pradhan Mantri Jan-Dhan Yojana from 2014 accelerated basic account opening, while direct benefit transfers increased the importance of accounts for welfare receipts. In rural Bihar, access increasingly became a question of the quality of the last-mile agent, connectivity, cash availability and digital literacy rather than branch distance alone.

79.24 Formal inclusion does not eliminate documentation and tenancy barriers

An account is not the same as an adequate production loan. Tenant farmers, sharecroppers, migrants without updated documents, women without land in their own names and households with disputed inheritance can remain under-served even when they possess bank accounts. Joint Liability Groups, SHGs, cash-flow-based assessment and alternative data can reduce this gap, but institutional caution remains strongest precisely where household assets are weakest. Financial inclusion must therefore be measured by usable credit, not only by account ownership.

79.25 Informal collateral is often social rather than legal

Outside formal banks, a loan may be secured by crop sale commitments, jewellery, livestock, labour promises, social reputation, a relative's guarantee or the lender's knowledge of expected remittances. These arrangements can mobilise credit quickly but may also lock borrowers into unequal exchange. A trader who advances cash before harvest can later influence the sale price; a lender holding jewellery has strong recovery leverage. Rural indebtedness is therefore embedded in markets and social relations, not only interest-rate arithmetic.

79.26 Migration and remittances can substitute for credit—and also improve creditworthiness

Out-migration from north Bihar and Anga created cash flows that altered village finance. Remittances could finance cultivation, repay old debt, fund house repair after floods or provide the margin needed for a bank loan. Regular remittance income could also make a household appear safer to lenders. Yet migration itself often required an advance for transport, recruitment, rent or food before the first wage. Credit and

migration therefore formed a two-way relationship: debt could finance mobility, and mobility could later service debt.

79.27 The same debt can be productive, protective or destructive depending on timing

A loan for fertiliser may raise output; the same-sized loan taken after a flood may merely replace food stocks; a medical loan may preserve the worker whose labour sustains the farm. Classifying the first as productive and the others as unproductive misses their economic interdependence. What matters is whether borrowing stabilises future earning capacity or triggers asset loss and repeated refinancing. Rural credit history must therefore follow debt over time rather than judge it only by the stated purpose at sanction.

79.28 Credit risk is distributed unequally across caste, class and gender

Larger cultivators can offer collateral, absorb a failed season and wait for better crop prices. Smallholders and tenants have less margin for error; landless households may rely on consumption loans and wage advances. Women often gain access through SHGs but remain less likely to hold titled land that can support an individual agricultural loan. Dalit and other marginalised households may also face weaker bargaining power in informal markets. The cost of credit is thus inseparable from the distribution of assets and social power.

79.29 Regional credit ecologies reflect different production and risk patterns

Mithila's flood exposure and high migration make recovery loans, crop working capital and remittance-linked finance especially important. Vajji's dense road-market network, vegetables, dairy and peri-urban trade create frequent short-cycle credit needs and opportunities for enterprise lending. Anga combines Ganga-side agriculture, livestock, fisheries, maize, pulses and market-linked activity. These are broad tendencies rather than fixed zones, but they explain why a single statewide credit target cannot fully represent local demand.

Rural credit needs differ across Mithila, Vajji and Anga



Regional ecology changes credit demand; household class and land tenure determine who can use formal channels.

Figure 315 — Different regional production systems generate different credit needs

79.30 The long-run achievement is wider choice; the unresolved problem is secure, appropriate credit

Since independence, rural Bihar has moved from a credit landscape dominated by private lenders toward a dense institutional ecology of cooperatives, public-sector banks, RRBs, NABARD-supported programmes, SHGs, microfinance, business correspondents and digital accounts. That transformation is substantial. Yet indebtedness persists because credit institutions cannot remove low incomes, fragmented land, volatile prices, illness, floods or insecure tenure. The central historical gain is that more households possess alternatives; the central policy challenge is to make those alternatives timely, affordable and matched to real rural cash flows.

Chapter 80 — Cooperatives and Rural Institutions

Cooperation after independence was not a single movement and not merely a branch of rural credit. It was a recurring institutional answer to a basic problem of small-scale production: cultivators, milk producers, fishers, artisans and rural women often operated individually but needed pooled access to finance, storage, inputs, water, procurement, processing, transport and markets. A cooperative promised to aggregate many small economic actors without converting them into wage workers under one private owner. Its ideal vocabulary was thrift, self-help, mutual aid and democratic membership; its practical history was shaped equally by state law, bureaucracy, elections, local hierarchy, working capital and the ability to deliver a service at the moment members actually needed it.

In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, this history acquired distinct regional forms. Primary Agricultural Credit Societies became visible not only through crop loans but through fertiliser, procurement, storage and public-service delivery. Dairy societies linked village producers with district milk unions and the Bihar State Milk Co-operative Federation. Fishermen's societies became entangled with the legal settlement of jalkars. Water Users' Associations represented a different, non-credit form of collective management. Since the 2000s, Self-Help Groups, Village Organisations, Cluster-Level Federations and Farmer Producer Organisations have widened the institutional repertoire beyond the classical cooperative society. This chapter therefore studies rural institutions as mechanisms for aggregation, bargaining and service delivery, while leaving the detailed commodity histories of silk, makhana, fish and dairy to Chapters 82–83.

80.1 Independence inherited a legally mature but socially uneven cooperative field

Bihar did not begin its cooperative history in 1947. The Bihar Co-operative Societies Act of 1935 consolidated an earlier legal tradition rooted in the Co-operative Societies Act of 1912 and explicitly defined cooperation around thrift, self-help and mutual aid. Existing societies could continue under the new statute, while the Registrar acquired extensive powers over registration, audit, by-laws, management and liquidation. Independence therefore inherited both organisations and a regulatory philosophy. The postcolonial state expanded this machinery because cooperative organisation appeared capable of combining developmental planning with local participation. Yet legal existence did not guarantee effective membership. Landownership, literacy, caste status, access to officials and the capacity to contribute share capital all influenced who could use the institution effectively.

80.2 The 1959 Rules translated cooperative ideals into routines of membership, accounts and audit

The Bihar Co-operative Societies Rules, 1959 gave operational form to the 1935 Act. Cooperative life depended on mundane procedures: member registers, share contributions, meetings, loan applications, account books, audit, committee elections and returns to the Registrar. These routines mattered historically because a cooperative is not sustained by moral vocabulary alone. It requires records that identify members, rules that define voting and liability, and accounts that permit outside finance. The same apparatus could protect members from arbitrary management, but it could also make a village society dependent on clerks, inspectors and accountants. Institutional capacity thus rested on the ability to convert local trust into documentary form.

Institutional milestones in Bihar's cooperative and member-based rural organisations

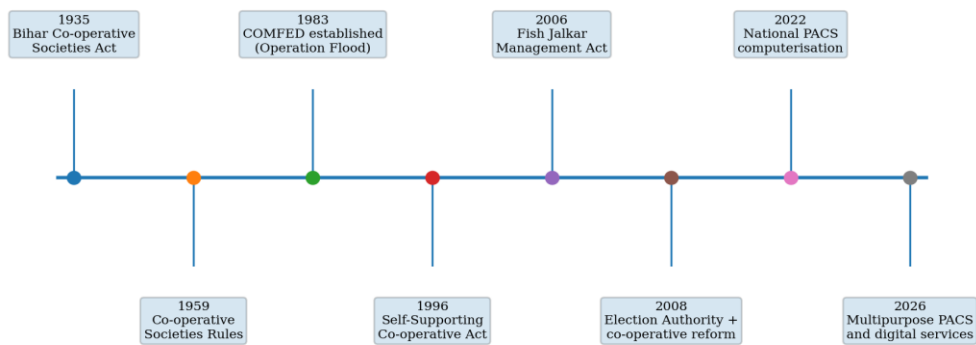


Figure 316 — Institutional milestones in cooperative and member-based rural organisation

80.3 PACS became the most widespread cooperative interface in the countryside

Primary Agricultural Credit Societies occupied the base of the short-term cooperative credit structure described in Chapter 79, but their significance extended beyond lending. A PACS could become the first formal collective institution through which a cultivator encountered credit, fertiliser, seed, procurement, storage or a government programme. Because its membership and operating area were local, it potentially possessed knowledge that a distant bank branch lacked: who actually cultivated a plot, whose crop had failed, which household owned a pump, and who habitually repaid after harvest. The institutional advantage was proximity. The institutional risk was that proximity could also reproduce village faction, patronage and exclusion.

80.4 The three-tier structure solved a problem of scale but created a problem of coordination

The classical short-term structure linked PACS to District Central Cooperative Banks and the State Cooperative Bank. Local societies aggregated members; district banks pooled liquidity and supervised a wider area; the apex bank connected the system to larger financial markets and refinance. This layering allowed a small village institution to participate in a statewide financial network without surrendering all local knowledge. Yet failure at one tier could transmit downward. Weak recovery at PACS level affected the district bank; delayed refinance or accounting mismatches constrained local lending; poor audit obscured the real position of the system. Federation therefore created capacity and interdependence at the same time.

80.5 State partnership strengthened cooperatives but also blurred the boundary between member body and government agency

Post-independence policy rarely treated cooperatives as entirely private associations. Governments supplied share capital, refinance, subsidies, staff, statutory supervision and programme responsibilities. This support was often indispensable in poor rural regions where member capital alone could not finance warehouses, milk plants or large seasonal procurement operations. But the closer a society moved toward implementing state schemes, the harder it became to distinguish member priorities from administrative targets. A PACS chairman might simultaneously represent cultivators, manage a financial institution and

execute public procurement. Cooperation in Bihar therefore developed as a hybrid: neither a department nor an autonomous firm, but an organisation continuously negotiating between the two.

80.6 Cooperative democracy depends on regular elections, not merely one-member-one-vote rules

Formal democratic principles can coexist with long periods of managerial continuity if elections are delayed, membership rolls are disputed or local elites control information. Bihar's 2008 reforms created a State Election Authority and inserted a statutory mechanism for conducting elections to notified cooperative bodies. The reform reflected a wider recognition that the legitimacy of grass-roots institutions depends on transparent electoral rolls, predictable election cycles and an authority that is separate from the incumbent management. Electoral procedure cannot by itself create equality, but it reduces one route through which a temporary committee can become a permanent local power centre.

80.7 Membership is an economic resource because it can carry rights to services, votes and institutional information

A cooperative share is usually small in monetary terms, yet membership can confer substantial practical rights: eligibility for a loan, access to a procurement centre, voting in a managing committee election, entitlement to information, or participation in collective marketing. Exclusion from membership may therefore matter more than the nominal value of the share. Women, tenants, migrants, landless workers and members of historically subordinated communities may face different barriers depending on the society's purpose and by-laws. The 2008 cooperative amendments explicitly recognised the question of inclusion by permitting support toward membership fees and minimum share capital for women and members of Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and Backward Classes in specified classes of societies.

80.8 Procurement transformed many PACS from lenders into seasonal market institutions

When PACS participate in paddy or wheat procurement at minimum support prices, they enter the commodity market as agents of aggregation. The society must register farmers, verify quantities, maintain records, arrange weighing and temporary storage, coordinate milling or onward movement and ensure payment. This function can reduce the distance between a small cultivator and the public procurement system. It also creates new operational risks: insufficient working capital, delayed lifting, moisture disputes, inadequate godowns and congestion during a short harvest window. Bihar's e-procurement architecture makes the contemporary scale visible; cooperative procurement centres now form a major part of the state's seasonal purchasing network.

80.9 Storage is the physical infrastructure behind institutional bargaining power

A farmer who must sell immediately after harvest has little ability to wait for price improvement. Cooperative storage can therefore alter bargaining conditions even when the cooperative does not itself trade the crop. Godowns also support procurement, seed and fertiliser distribution and emergency grain management. Recent official reporting from Bihar records thousands of PACS godowns and a storage capacity measured in millions of tonnes. The historical point is not simply that warehouses were built. Storage converts time into an economic option: it allows grain to remain locally controlled for longer and gives an institution the possibility of synchronising sale, transport and credit instead of accepting the first available buyer.

80.10 Input distribution made the cooperative calendar follow the agricultural season

Fertiliser, seed and pesticides are required before output exists. A society that distributes inputs therefore operates on a different temporal logic from one that merely receives crops after harvest. It needs advance stock, transport, cash or credit lines and reliable information on seasonal demand. Shortages at sowing time cannot be repaired by supplies delivered months later. PACS involvement in fertiliser distribution and the conversion of many societies into PM Kisan Samriddhi Kendras illustrate the growing expectation that a local cooperative should serve as an integrated agricultural-service point. The institutional measure of success is thus timeliness as much as annual turnover.

80.11 Custom-hiring and machinery services address the indivisibility of modern farm equipment

A small cultivator may need a tractor, thresher, harvester, pump or other machine for only a few hours or days each season. Individual ownership is uneconomic, while private rental markets can become expensive at peak demand. Cooperative or PACS-based custom-hiring centres pool the fixed cost and sell access in smaller units of time. This is a classic cooperative problem: an asset is too large for the average member but useful when shared. Such centres work only when scheduling, maintenance, operator availability and fuel are managed professionally. The machine itself is therefore less important than the institution that allocates scarce peak-season time among competing users.

80.12 The multipurpose PACS model marks a deliberate shift away from a single credit identity

By the 2020s national and state policy increasingly treated PACS as platforms capable of performing many rural services. Model by-laws opened more than two dozen fields of activity, and the national computerisation programme sought to standardise accounts and link PACS digitally with cooperative banks. In March 2026 official reporting listed 8,463 PACS in Bihar; 7,617 were engaged in two or more services and 6,234 in three or more. Thousands were functioning as Common Service Centres or fertiliser outlets, while smaller numbers operated as Bank Mitras, fair-price shops or other service points. The direction of change is clear: the PACS is being reimagined as a local institutional hub rather than a narrow crop-credit office.

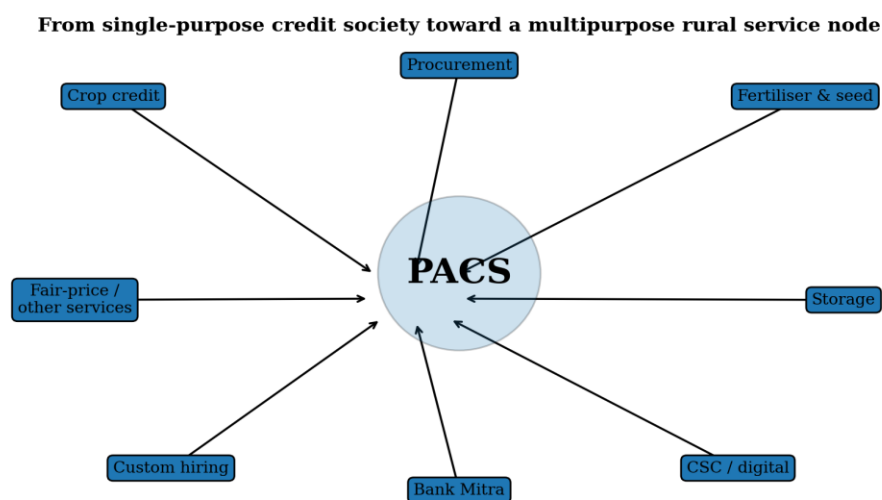


Figure 317 — The PACS as a multipurpose rural service hub

80.13 Computerisation changes accountability only when digital records correspond to real transactions

The national PACS computerisation project, approved in 2022, aims to move functional societies onto a common ERP platform linked through District Central Cooperative Banks and State Cooperative Banks. Digital ledgers can speed reconciliation, reduce duplicate data entry, improve audit trails and make loan or inventory information easier to retrieve. Bihar became one of the largest participating states, with more than four thousand PACS onboarded by 2025–26. Yet digitisation is not self-executing. Legacy records must be cleaned, staff trained, connectivity maintained and physical stock reconciled with electronic entries. A transparent database is valuable only when it faithfully records the village economy it claims to represent.

80.14 The self-supporting cooperative route reflected a recurring demand for greater autonomy

The Bihar Self-Supporting Cooperative Societies Act, 1996 created a parallel legal route for cooperatives seeking stronger member control and less routine state dependence. Its emergence reflected a national debate over whether heavy official supervision had weakened cooperative responsibility by allowing societies to expect rescue, supersession or administrative direction. The self-supporting model emphasised voluntary formation, member finance and internal governance. In practice, autonomy and support form a continuum rather than an absolute choice. Poor producers may need public infrastructure and credit while still requiring protection from excessive administrative control.

80.15 Dairy cooperation demonstrated how a perishable product can support a strong federated institution

Milk is produced daily, spoils quickly and is costly for individual smallholders to market in distant towns. These properties make aggregation especially valuable. Bihar State Milk Co-operative Federation, established in 1983 as the state implementing agency for Operation Flood, linked village-level producers to milk unions, chilling and processing plants, quality testing, transport and the Sudha marketing network. The institutional achievement lay in converting many tiny, repeated transactions into a reliable supply chain. The Mithila Milk Union, formed in 1987 with headquarters at Samastipur, and the Vaishali-Patliputra and Barauni unions illustrate how the federated model adapted to regional production zones. Detailed dairy production trends belong to Chapter 83; here the importance is organisational scale.

80.16 Dairy societies also altered the social geography of cash income within households

Unlike an annual grain sale, milk can generate small but frequent payments. Regular collection points therefore create a stream of cash that may be especially valuable to households with little land. Where women perform much of the work of feeding, milking and caring for animals, the location of membership and payment becomes a question of intra-household power as well as farm economics. Women's dairy cooperatives and women's membership initiatives can strengthen control over income, but formal membership does not automatically redistribute labour or decision-making. Cooperative analysis must therefore examine who performs the work, whose name appears on the membership register and who receives the payment.

80.17 Fishermen's cooperatives became intertwined with rights over water bodies

In Bihar, fishery cooperation is not only a marketing arrangement; it is also connected to access to jalkars—tanks, ponds, channels, chauras, ox-bow lakes and other water bodies under state management. The Bihar Fish Jalkar Management Act, 2006 defined fishermen's cooperative societies and established procedures through which jalkars could be settled with societies and, through them, with members. The law sought to connect resource access with traditional fishing livelihoods, production and employment. This gives the cooperative a quasi-tenurial role: it can mediate between a public water resource and individual fishing households. Audit, elections and membership integrity therefore directly affect access to livelihood assets.

80.18 Fishery cooperation reveals how ecological commons can generate internal distribution conflicts

A water body cannot always be divided into neat private plots. Its productivity depends on stocking, water depth, embankments, capture rules and protection against encroachment or pollution. Cooperative control can reduce destructive competition, but it also raises questions over which member receives which jalkar, how reserve deposits are allocated, and whether stronger members monopolise the best waters. The Jalkar legislation requires records, settlement procedures and member-level allocation precisely because collective rights do not abolish conflict. They relocate conflict inside an institution where transparent rules become essential.

80.19 Water Users' Associations represent cooperation without the legal form of a credit cooperative

Irrigation creates another collective-action problem. Water moves through a shared canal system; upstream use affects downstream availability; maintenance of a village channel benefits many farms at once. The Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997 recognised Water Users' Associations formed by beneficiaries for operation, maintenance and utilisation of canal water. Participatory irrigation management later placed greater emphasis on local scheduling, maintenance and system planning. WUAs show why this chapter must extend beyond registered cooperatives: rural institutions can perform cooperative functions—rule-making, cost sharing, monitoring and conflict resolution—even when their statutory form is different.

80.20 Collective institutions are most necessary where individual property rights cannot solve the coordination problem

Credit, milk collection, fisheries and irrigation appear different, but each contains an indivisibility or interdependence. A bank cannot cheaply assess thousands of tiny borrowers without local information; a milk plant requires a minimum volume; a jalkar cannot be physically divided without affecting the ecosystem; a canal cannot deliver equitably without coordinated scheduling. Cooperation is therefore not simply an ideology of togetherness. It is an institutional technology for reducing transaction costs where atomised exchange performs badly. The durability of a particular organisation depends on whether it actually solves that coordination problem more cheaply and fairly than available alternatives.

Table 80.1 — Major rural collective institutions and the coordination problem each addresses

Institution	Primary members / asset	Core coordination problem
PACS	Cultivators / local share capital	Credit, procurement, inputs, storage and local service delivery

Institution	Primary members / asset	Core coordination problem
Dairy society	Milk producers / daily milk flow	Aggregation, testing, chilling, processing and marketing of a perishable product
Fishermen's cooperative	Traditional fishing members / jalkar access	Collective rights over water bodies, stocking, allocation and sale
Water Users' Association	Canal beneficiaries / shared water	Scheduling, maintenance and upstream–downstream coordination
SHG–VO–CLF	Rural women / savings and social capital	Small savings, bank linkage, collective services and programme access
FPO / producer group	Small producers / marketed surplus	Input purchase, grading, scale, logistics and bargaining with buyers

80.21 JEEViKA created a new federated rural institution outside the classical cooperative statute

From 2007 onward, Bihar's JEEViKA programme organised rural women into Self-Help Groups, which were federated into Village Organisations and Cluster-Level Federations. This architecture resembles cooperation in its principles of pooled savings, elected representatives, collective decision-making and higher-level federation, but it developed under the rural livelihoods mission rather than the old cooperative legal structure. Its importance extends beyond microcredit. Village Organisations and federations have become platforms for food security, livelihoods, producer groups, insurance, public-service access and collective negotiation. In institutional history, JEEViKA marks a major shift from male-dominated land-linked organisations toward mass women's membership.

80.22 SHG federations solve a scale problem similar to cooperative federations but begin from savings rather than a commodity

A small Self-Help Group can know its members intimately but cannot by itself bargain with a commercial bank, train hundreds of women or manage large procurement. A Village Organisation aggregates groups; a Cluster-Level Federation aggregates the village organisations. This nested design parallels the logic of PACS-DCCB-State Cooperative Bank and village dairy society–milk union–COMFED structures. The starting asset is different—regular savings and social solidarity rather than crop credit or milk—but the institutional solution is similar: preserve local information at the base while pooling capacity at higher levels. Figure 318 makes this structural resemblance explicit.

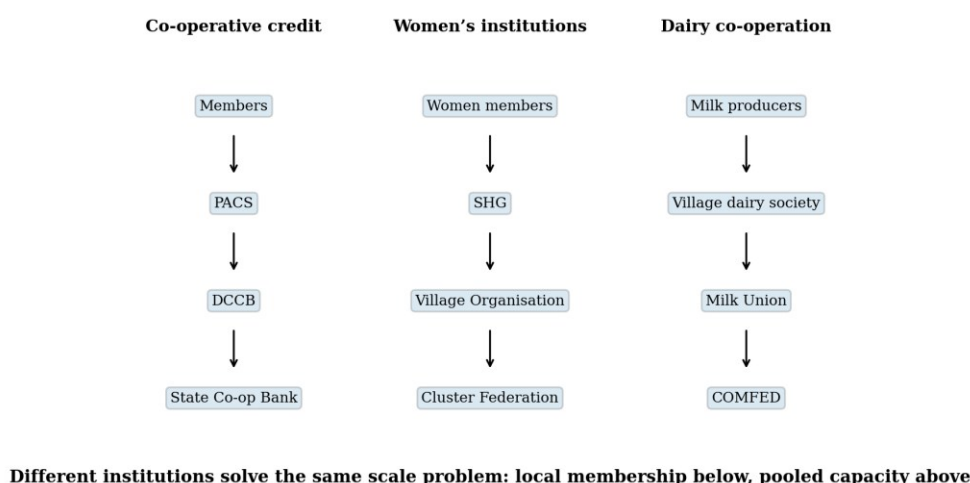


Figure 318 — Federated institutions preserve local knowledge while pooling capacity at higher levels

80.23 Producer groups and FPOs extend collective action into markets without requiring every organisation to be a cooperative

Farmer Producer Organisations and producer companies have expanded as mechanisms for aggregating produce, inputs, technology and bargaining power. NABARD-supported FPOs in Bihar numbered in the hundreds by the mid-2020s and included more than a hundred thousand shareholder-members. Their legal forms vary, and many are producer companies rather than cooperative societies. Historically, however, they address the same weakness that animated earlier marketing cooperatives: the individual small producer sells too little to influence price, meet large-buyer standards or justify specialised storage and transport. FPOs therefore belong to the broader history of collective rural institutions even when they sit outside the cooperative statute.

80.24 Marketing institutions succeed when they control quality, logistics and information—not merely when they aggregate volume

Collective sale can improve bargaining power only if buyers trust quantity and quality and if the organisation can deliver on time. Grading, moisture testing, packaging, weighing, storage and transport are therefore institutional functions, not technical details. A weak society may aggregate members yet still lose to a private trader who pays immediately, accepts mixed quality and arranges transport from the farm gate. The strongest rural institutions compete by combining collective scale with low transaction costs. Their benchmark is not the legal ideal of cooperation but the practical alternative available to the member on the same day.

80.25 Cooperative failure often begins as a governance problem before it becomes a balance-sheet problem

Poor recovery, missing stock, fictitious membership, delayed audit or excessive administrative costs eventually appear in financial statements, but their origins may lie in governance. If members do not receive accounts, committees are not elected regularly, managers face no credible sanction, or a dominant faction controls access to services, the society ceases to function as a member organisation. Conversely, strict audit without member participation can produce formal compliance but little local legitimacy. Sustainable

cooperation requires both vertical accountability to regulators and banks and horizontal accountability to the membership.

80.26 Political capture is possible precisely because rural institutions distribute valuable opportunities

A PACS can influence procurement, credit recommendations, fertiliser access, storage and contracts; a fishery society can mediate access to jalkars; a milk society can control collection routes; an SHG federation can channel programme benefits. These functions make rural institutions arenas of politics. Capture should therefore not be treated as an accidental corruption of an otherwise apolitical economic body. It is a structural risk wherever membership confers scarce benefits. Transparent rolls, public accounts, competitive elections, rotation of office and independent audit are mechanisms for managing that risk, not peripheral administrative formalities.

80.27 Disaster-prone regions reveal the value of institutions that remain present between crises

Flood relief is most effective when an organisation already knows households, assets and local routes before water rises. PACS, dairy collection societies, SHGs and village organisations can provide such pre-existing networks in flood-prone Mithila and parts of Vajji. They may help identify affected members, reorganise repayment, restore livestock services, distribute inputs or coordinate collective claims. Their value lies less in replacing specialised disaster agencies than in supplying local information and social infrastructure. A temporary relief committee disappears; a functioning member institution can carry memory across repeated floods.

80.28 Regional ecology shaped which institutions became economically central

Mithila's recurrent flood and waterlogging risk favoured institutions capable of combining recovery finance, procurement, dairy, fisheries and women's group networks. Vajji's dense settlement, vegetable production, dairy activity and proximity to expanding urban markets increased the value of frequent collection, cold-chain links, short-cycle enterprise credit and marketing groups. Anga's silk and artisan economy, riverine agriculture, fisheries and connections to Bhagalpur created a different mixture of producer organisation and market intermediation. The same statutory form could therefore perform different functions across the three regions.

MITHILA	VAJJI	ANGA
Flood recovery	Dense market links	Silk/artisan groups
PACS procurement	Vegetable/dairy groups	PACS procurement
Dairy societies	PACS & storage	FPOs & marketing
Fish/jalkar groups	SHG enterprise	Dairy/fish institutions
SHG federations	Peri-urban services	Transport-linked trade

Institutional form is shared; ecological risk, commodities and market geography shape local use

Figure 319 — Regional ecology shaped the practical uses of rural institutions

80.29 The contemporary rural institution is increasingly a platform that connects citizens to several systems at once

A twenty-first-century PACS may combine crop credit with procurement, fertiliser, storage, Common Service Centre functions and banking correspondence. An SHG federation may connect savings, bank credit, insurance, livelihoods, nutrition and public entitlements. Digitalisation intensifies this platform logic by making identity, accounts, payments and programme databases interoperable. The gain is convenience and scale; the risk is institutional overload. A society asked to do everything may do nothing well unless staffing, capital, training and governance grow with its responsibilities.

80.30 The long-run history is a movement from isolated societies toward overlapping institutional ecosystems

Since independence, cooperation in Bihar has moved through several layers: inherited statutory cooperatives, state-supported credit federations, commodity-specific organisations, self-supporting legal forms, elected governance reforms, women's federations, producer organisations and digitally networked multipurpose PACS. No single model displaced the others. Rural households may belong simultaneously to a PACS, an SHG, a dairy society, a fishery cooperative or an FPO while also using private traders and banks. The central historical achievement is therefore not the victory of cooperation over markets, but the multiplication of institutions through which small producers can pool scale and negotiate with markets and the state. The unresolved question remains whether these bodies are genuinely accountable to members while retaining enough professional capacity to deliver complex services.

Chapter 81 — Industrialisation and Its Limits

Industrialisation after independence did not bypass Mithila, Vajji and Anga completely, but it arrived unevenly. Large public investments created striking nodes such as Barauni, railway engineering continued at Jamalpur, sugar factories tied cane-growing tracts to processing, and industrial estates appeared around Darbhanga, Hajipur, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur and other towns. Yet these nodes did not combine into a dense manufacturing belt. The central historical problem is therefore not an absence of industry, but the limited capacity of industrial activity to transform employment, settlement, supply chains and regional income on the scale seen in India's more industrialised states.

This chapter treats industry broadly enough to include large factories, agro-processing, power and fertiliser complexes, industrial estates and micro, small and medium enterprises, while keeping analytical distinctions clear. Construction is part of the secondary sector but is not the same as manufacturing; a refinery can be capital-intensive without employing a mass workforce; and thousands of tiny establishments can sustain livelihoods without generating the productivity effects of a thick factory ecosystem. These distinctions are essential for explaining both Bihar's recurring industrial ambitions and their limits.

81.1 Independence inherited a province with deep internal industrial inequality

At independence, undivided Bihar contained some of India's most important mineral and heavy-industrial centres, but these were concentrated largely in the Chhotanagpur plateau and adjoining southern districts. The alluvial north and much of eastern Bihar remained primarily agrarian, with processing industries, railway workshops, tobacco, sugar, handloom and smaller urban enterprises rather than comparable concentrations of steel, coal and engineering. This internal geography mattered because later state averages could conceal two very different economies. For the regions considered in this volume, the relevant starting point was not an industrial blank slate, but a comparatively thin factory base attached to agriculture, transport and a few strategic public installations.

81.2 Planned development strengthened heavy-industry centres without automatically creating northern linkages

The Second Five Year Plan and the public-sector strategy of the 1950s and 1960s favoured basic and heavy industries whose location was shaped by minerals, energy, railways and existing engineering capacity. In undivided Bihar this reinforced the southern industrial concentration. North Bihar benefited from national investment in transport, power, irrigation and selected plants, but it did not receive an equivalent web of large manufacturing units and suppliers. The result was an archipelago rather than a corridor: individual installations could be technologically modern while surrounding districts remained dominated by farming, trade, administration and small production. Industrial policy therefore increased output without necessarily generating wide regional spillovers.

81.3 Freight equalisation became a powerful explanation, but not a sufficient one

Bihar's political economy later treated the national freight-equalisation regime, introduced in the early 1950s for key bulk commodities, as a major historical grievance because it reduced the locational advantage of proximity to minerals. That argument captures an important distributional issue, especially for downstream metal industries. Yet it cannot by itself explain the weak industrialisation of the northern plains, where other constraints were already significant: sparse power supply, repeated flood disruption, low urban purchasing

power, limited industrial finance, weak supplier networks and the absence of mineral-based agglomerations. The most persuasive interpretation is cumulative rather than monocausal: national policy interacted with a difficult regional production environment.

81.4 Industrialisation was repeatedly attempted through nodes, estates and public infrastructure

The post-independence state did not simply wait for private capital. It created industrial estates, allocated serviced plots, established public plants, extended electricity and used development finance to encourage factories. In the study region, the spatial logic was visible at Barauni, Hajipur, Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, Bhagalpur, Munger and later BIADA growth centres. Such planning solved part of the coordination problem by concentrating roads, power connections and land in designated sites. But an estate becomes an industrial ecosystem only when firms survive, suppliers emerge, markets deepen and skilled workers accumulate. Many sites therefore reveal both the ambition of industrial planning and the difficulty of converting allocated land into durable manufacturing density.

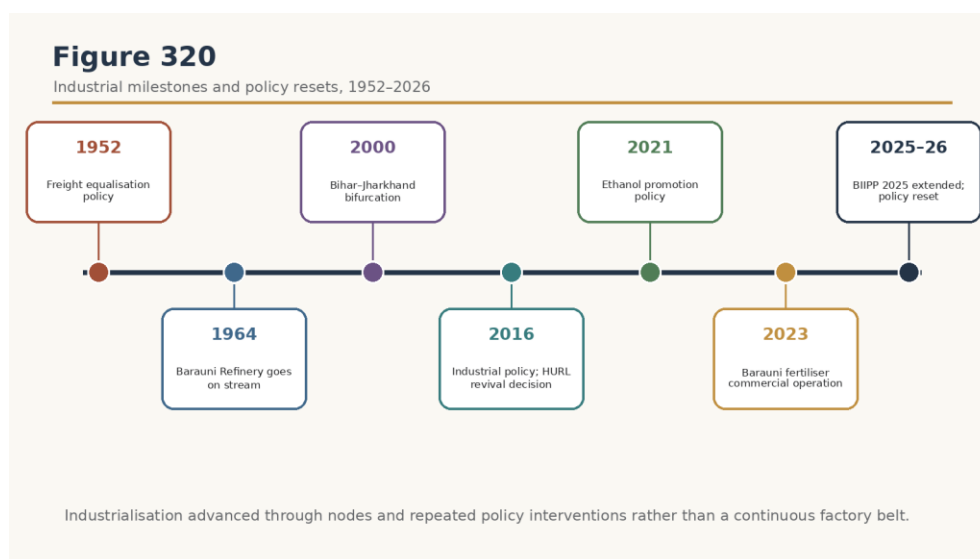


Figure 320 — Industrial milestones and policy resets, 1952-2026

81.5 Barauni became the clearest example of a strategic industrial node in the northern Gangetic plain

Barauni's importance rested on a rare combination of national transport links, public investment and large continuous-process industries. The refinery went on stream in 1964 and was later expanded and technologically upgraded; thermal generation developed nearby; a fertiliser complex linked industrial chemistry to the agricultural economy; and rail and highway connections supported inward movement of crude, coal, equipment and workers and outward distribution of fuels and fertiliser. This concentration gave Begusarai a different industrial profile from most neighbouring districts. At the same time, Barauni illustrates a recurring limit: a powerful node can coexist with a relatively thin network of locally owned intermediate and downstream manufacturers.

81.6 The refinery demonstrated the economic reach of a capital-intensive plant

A refinery transforms more than crude oil. It creates demand for maintenance, contracting, transport, storage, safety services, technical labour and housing; it also anchors pipelines and product-distribution

networks that reach far beyond the district. Barauni began with a modest crude-processing capacity and expanded over successive revamps to a much larger operation. Yet refinery employment does not grow in proportion to throughput because refining is capital- and technology-intensive. Its regional effect therefore depends on linkages—petrochemicals, fabrication, logistics, services and supplier capabilities—rather than headcount inside the refinery gate. Where those linkages remain shallow, a large plant raises industrial output more than it transforms the occupational structure.

81.7 Power generation was necessary for industry, but generating stations did not guarantee reliable industrial electricity

The Barauni Thermal Power Station began operating units in the 1960s and was later rebuilt with newer capacity, while the Muzaffarpur/Kanti station became another important power asset. The history of these plants must be separated from the history of supply quality experienced by firms. Generation, transmission, distribution, fuel availability and commercial losses are different links in the electricity chain. For decades Bihar's enterprises frequently treated outages, voltage variation and dependence on captive diesel generation as production costs. The later strengthening of the grid and additions to generating capacity improved conditions, but the older electricity constraint helps explain why many firms stayed small and why power-intensive manufacturing found the region difficult.

81.8 Fertiliser connected industrial revival directly to the agrarian economy

The Barauni fertiliser site embodies both industrial decline and revival. The older public-sector complex became sick and closed, leaving land, infrastructure and industrial memory without productive use. A new national joint venture, Hindustan Urvarak & Rasayan Limited, was formed in 2016 to revive Barauni alongside other eastern fertiliser sites. The new gas-based plant was commissioned in October 2022 and entered commercial operation in April 2023 with annual urea capacity of 1.27 million tonnes. This revival shows the value of brownfield sites: existing land, transport, utilities and workforce traditions can lower some barriers even when the earlier technology and corporate structure have failed.

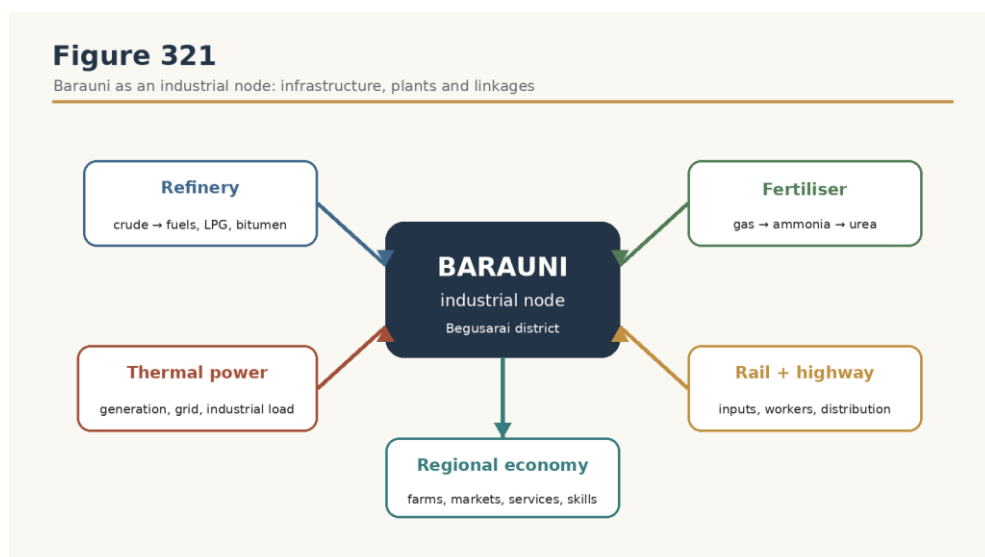


Figure 321 — Barauni as an industrial node: infrastructure, plants and linkages

81.9 Jamalpur preserved an engineering tradition that long pre-dated independence

The railway workshop at Jamalpur in Munger district, established in the nineteenth century, remained after independence an unusual concentration of mechanical skills, repair capacity and railway employment in eastern Bihar. Its significance was institutional as much as industrial. Workshops create apprenticeships, technical routines, machine-tool experience and a stable wage economy that can influence surrounding towns for generations. But railway production is vertically organised within a national system; local supplier development is not automatic. Jamalpur therefore represents another form of industrial island—technically sophisticated and socially important, yet only partially embedded in a wider regional manufacturing cluster.

81.10 Sugar was the most important bridge between cultivation and factory production in the northern plains

Sugar mills converted a bulky, perishable crop into a factory product and therefore tied industrial viability to a defined cane hinterland. Their seasonal crushing cycle generated transport, wage work, repair activity and market demand, while cane payments connected factory finance directly to village liquidity. In Mithila and the wider north-Bihar cane belt, mills at places such as Riga, Hasanpur, Raiyam, Sakri and Motipur became local economic landmarks even when individual plants later closed or changed ownership. Sugar demonstrates why agro-industry can matter disproportionately in an agrarian region: a factory's raw material is produced by thousands of cultivators, so industrial failure is transmitted immediately into cropping decisions and rural incomes.

81.11 The decline of many sugar mills exposed the fragility of agro-industrial coordination

By the early 2000s Bihar had many installed sugar factories but a large share were closed. Ageing machinery, low recovery, weak working capital, cane arrears, management failures and competition over cane supplies interacted with the high fixed cost of keeping a mill viable. When a mill closes, farmers shift toward other crops, transport contractors disappear and skilled seasonal workers migrate; restarting the plant later requires rebuilding a supply zone as well as repairing machinery. The renewed state effort in the mid-2020s to modernise sugar, link it to ethanol, co-generation and compressed biogas, and reopen selected closed mills is therefore an attempt to reconstruct an entire agro-industrial ecosystem rather than merely restart old boilers.

81.12 Food processing offered the most natural route from agricultural surplus to manufacturing

Rice mills, flour mills, edible-oil units, fruit and vegetable processing, maize-based industries, cold-chain facilities and packaging plants fit the resource base of Bihar better than mineral-intensive industry. Their advantages are clear: raw material can be sourced locally and value addition can occur closer to producers. Their limitations are equally clear. Farm output is seasonal, quality varies, cold storage is uneven, working capital is required before products are sold, and fragmented procurement raises transaction costs. State-wide data in the 2024–25 Economic Survey show food processing as the largest group among operational incentivised industrial units, underscoring both the opportunity and the fact that Bihar's contemporary industrialisation remains closely tied to agriculture.

81.13 Small and unincorporated enterprises carried much more employment than the factory sector

A narrow focus on registered factories understates non-agricultural work in Bihar. Repair shops, grain processing, metalwork, furniture, printing, garments, brick making, food preparation and countless proprietary enterprises absorb labour in both towns and villages. Recent surveys show a very large unincorporated enterprise economy, especially in rural areas. This is economically important but should not be confused with factory industrialisation. Small establishments often have little fixed capital, low productivity, limited formal credit and weak access to technology. The historical challenge has been to help viable firms cross thresholds of scale, quality control, registration and market reach rather than assume that enterprise numbers alone indicate structural transformation.

81.14 Industrial estates attempted to reduce the fixed costs of becoming a formal manufacturer

The logic of an industrial estate is collective infrastructure. A firm should not have to acquire a large isolated plot and independently build an approach road, drainage, electricity connection and security arrangements. BIADA's network now includes industrial areas and estates in Begusarai/Barauni, Munger/Jamalpur, Bhagalpur, Darbhanga, Madhubani, Samastipur, Hajipur/Vaishali, Muzaffarpur and Sitamarhi, among many others. The geography confirms that industrial policy has spread far beyond Patna. Yet occupancy, production and employment matter more than the number of notified sites. Estates succeed when infrastructure is maintained, land is used productively and firms have access to suppliers, labour and markets.

81.15 Land is abundant in aggregate but scarce in the form industry actually needs

Industrial land must be contiguous, legally clear, elevated or drained, connected to roads and power, and located where workers and freight can move efficiently. These requirements are demanding in densely settled alluvial districts where small holdings, homestead land, wetlands and flood channels create a complex mosaic. Acquisition can therefore be costly even when agricultural land values appear low in state-wide comparisons. The contemporary turn toward land banks, plug-and-play sheds and large planned acquisition programmes reflects recognition that land is not a passive input. It is infrastructure. Poorly located cheap land can impose higher lifetime costs than expensive land with reliable connectivity and services.

81.16 Finance constrained both the birth and survival of industrial firms

Industrial investment requires long-term capital for land and machinery and short-term working capital for wages, inventories and receivables. Bihar's historically low credit-deposit ratio, discussed in Chapter 79, mattered to industry because local savings were not automatically recycled into local enterprise lending. Small firms also lacked collateral, audited accounts and technical capacity to prepare bankable projects. State financial corporations, subsidies and later credit-guarantee programmes addressed parts of this gap, but weak recovery and industrial sickness could make lenders more cautious. A persistent financing loop emerged: small scale produced weak balance sheets, weak balance sheets restricted credit, and restricted credit prevented the investment needed to escape small scale.

Industrial form	Typical anchor	Potential strength	Recurring limit
-----------------	----------------	--------------------	-----------------

Industrial form	Typical anchor	Potential strength	Recurring limit
Large public plant	Barauni refinery / fertiliser / power	Capital, technology, national networks	High capital intensity; weak local supplier depth
Agro-industry	Sugar, rice, food processing	Local raw material and rural linkages	Seasonality, working capital, farm coordination
Rail engineering	Jamalpur workshop	Skilled labour and institutional continuity	Vertically organised; limited local spillovers
Industrial estate	BIADA sites	Shared land and infrastructure	Occupancy and cluster depth vary
MSME / unincorporated	Repair, processing, fabrication, consumer goods	Employment and adaptability	Low scale, technology and formal finance
New bio-industry	Ethanol, CBG, integrated sugar complexes	Links agriculture to national energy markets	Policy, feedstock, water and price dependence

Table 81.1 — Industrial forms, strengths and recurring limits

81.17 Industrial sickness was a process, not a single moment of closure

A factory usually becomes sick gradually. Capacity utilisation falls; maintenance is postponed; suppliers demand cash; wages or statutory dues are delayed; banks stop fresh lending; skilled employees leave; and the market shifts to competitors with newer technology. Public discussions often reduce this trajectory to management failure or policy neglect, but the historical record shows multiple interacting causes. In Bihar, power costs, transport delays, obsolete plant, working-capital shortages and weak demand could combine with poor governance. Once a unit closed, physical deterioration and legal disputes made revival progressively more expensive. The history of closed sugar and fertiliser sites demonstrates why prevention and timely restructuring are often more effective than revival after long dormancy.

81.18 Flood risk imposed an industrial cost that conventional location theory often underestimates

Floods damage more than buildings. They interrupt worker travel, block feeder roads, delay raw materials, spoil inventories and make delivery dates uncertain. Even a factory built on raised land can lose production when surrounding transport and settlements are inundated. In flood-prone Mithila and parts of the Vajji region, firms therefore face a form of logistics insurance cost: higher stocks, alternative routes, drainage investment and contingency planning. The same ecology can create industrial opportunities in boats, pumps, food processing and reconstruction materials, but recurrent disruption discourages tightly scheduled manufacturing unless infrastructure is designed for resilience. Industrial history must therefore be read alongside the flood history of Chapter 78.

81.19 Transport improvement reduced isolation, but connectivity has to be measured in travel time and reliability

Railways gave several regional towns early access to long-distance markets, and post-independence roads, bridges and national highways gradually reduced travel times. Yet north Bihar's river system made bridge scarcity historically important. A factory may be geographically close to a market but economically distant if freight must detour to a bridge, queue at a crossing or lose hours during monsoon disruption. Later bridge construction and four-laning improved the investment environment, while logistics parks and warehousing

created new possibilities. These gains help explain why recent industrial policy can attract projects that were less feasible decades earlier. Connectivity, however, remains only one element of a production ecosystem and cannot substitute for finance, skills and demand.

81.20 Labour migration was both evidence of weak industrial absorption and a source of industrial capability

Large-scale out-migration from Bihar is often treated solely as a symptom of industrial failure. It was also an adaptive household strategy and a mechanism through which workers acquired construction, factory, electrical, welding, transport and service skills outside the state. Remittances supported consumption and small investment at home. The paradox is that an economy can export labour while importing manufactured goods because local firms lack the scale or infrastructure to employ the same workers competitively. Return migration, especially during shocks, revealed a reservoir of practical skills. Industrial policy that ignores this mobile workforce misses one of Bihar's most important human-capital resources.

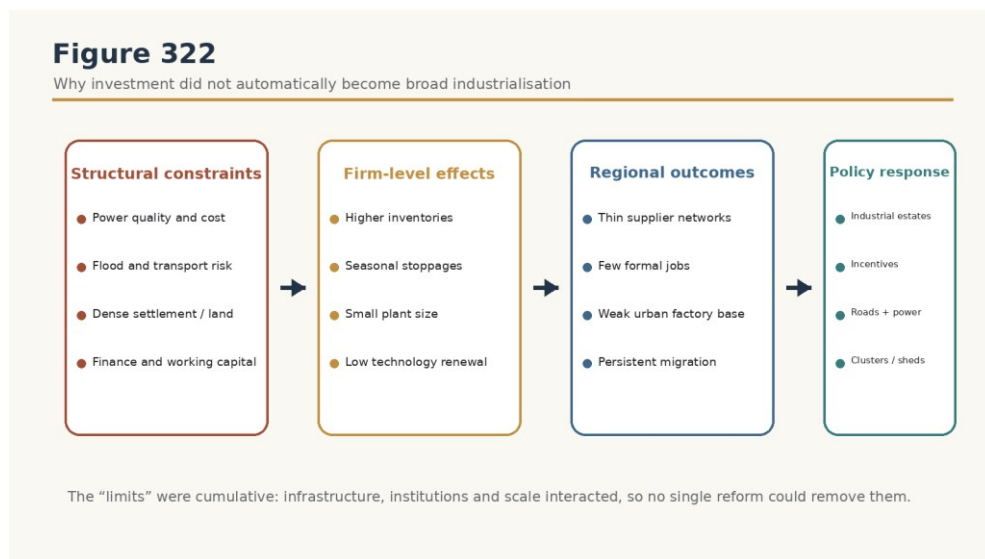


Figure 322 — Why investment did not automatically become broad industrialisation

81.21 Urban growth did not become manufacturing-led urbanisation

Many towns in Mithila, Vajji and Anga expanded through administration, education, health services, trade, transport, construction and residential growth rather than through mass factory employment. This produced urbanisation without the classic industrial-city pattern of a large plant surrounded by worker housing and supplier districts. The distinction matters because service-led towns generate different land markets, commuting patterns and class structures. They can support consumption and entrepreneurship, but they may not create the export earnings or productivity gains associated with manufacturing clusters. Industrialisation therefore remained one strand within a broader process of urban growth rather than its dominant engine.

81.22 The 2000 bifurcation sharply changed the statistical and institutional meaning of ‘Bihar industry’

The creation of Jharkhand in November 2000 transferred most of the old state's mineral belt and many heavy industrial centres to the new state. The residual Bihar consequently began the twenty-first century with a much smaller manufacturing and mining base relative to population. Planning documents from the

first post-bifurcation decade explicitly recognised this structural break; manufacturing accounted for only about seven per cent of GSDP in the mid-2000s. Bifurcation did not create northern Bihar's industrial weakness, which was much older, but it removed the southern industrial counterweight that had previously raised undivided Bihar's aggregate industrial profile.

81.23 Post-bifurcation strategy necessarily shifted toward Bihar's own comparative advantages

Without the old mineral-industrial belt, policy placed greater emphasis on food processing, agro-based industries, textiles and leather, small manufacturing, tourism, information technology and services. This was not merely a second-best strategy. A densely populated agricultural state has strong potential for processing, packaging, logistics and consumer-goods production if firms can reach sufficient scale. The challenge was that these activities depend less on a single ore deposit or public steel plant and more on thousands of coordinated improvements: roads, power, cold chains, standards, entrepreneurship, land, finance and market access. Post-2000 industrialisation therefore required a broader institutional base than the older model of locating one large public factory.

81.24 The mid-2000s marked an infrastructure and regulatory reset, not an instant industrial take-off

Improved roads, higher public investment, changes in law and order, single-window systems and new industrial policies altered business expectations after the mid-2000s. Investment proposals increased, industrial estates were reorganised and private projects became more visible. But proposals are not production, and sanction is not employment. The long gestation of factories, land constraints and the need for reliable suppliers meant that the manufacturing structure changed slowly. The period is best understood as a reset of enabling conditions. It lowered some transaction costs and made later growth possible without erasing the accumulated disadvantages of earlier decades.

81.25 The 2016 industrial policy formalised a shift toward incentives, priority sectors and facilitation

The Bihar Industrial Investment Promotion Policy, 2016 combined fiscal incentives with a wider definition of industrial activity and priority sectors. Interest support, tax-related incentives, employment and skill subsidies, land-related relief and single-window approvals were intended to reduce the cost gap faced by investors. Such policies can influence location at the margin, especially when competing states offer similar packages. Their deeper significance lies in recognising that industrialisation requires administrative coordination across departments. Yet incentives cannot make an unviable project viable forever; durable firms still depend on productivity, demand, infrastructure and competent management once the subsidy period ends.

81.26 Ethanol policy linked industrial growth to maize, sugar and the national fuel transition

Bihar's 2021 ethanol production promotion policy created a new agro-industrial pathway by aligning state incentives with India's ethanol-blending programme. The policy broadened interest beyond traditional molasses-based distilleries toward grain-based production, making maize and other feedstocks relevant to industrial investment. By September 2024 the state Economic Survey reported twelve operating ethanol units. The importance for the regions of this volume lies in the possibility of converting bulky agricultural

output into a standardised industrial commodity close to production zones. The risks are equally real: feedstock competition, water demand, price policy and transport economics determine whether plants create stable local value chains.

81.27 Revival of old sites and creation of new industrial land became parallel strategies

The revived Barauni fertiliser plant shows one route: reuse an established industrial location with transport, utilities and institutional memory. BIADA's expanding land bank, plug-and-play sheds and new growth centres represent another route: create fresh sites designed for contemporary investors. By 2026 the state was also authorising large financing for land acquisition and infrastructure and extending the Bihar Industrial Investment Promotion Package, 2025 while preparing a new policy cycle. These measures indicate a shift from merely offering tax incentives toward solving land and infrastructure bottlenecks directly. Their historical test will be whether they produce functioning clusters rather than a larger inventory of industrial plots.

81.28 The recent manufacturing picture shows progress but also the persistence of the central limit

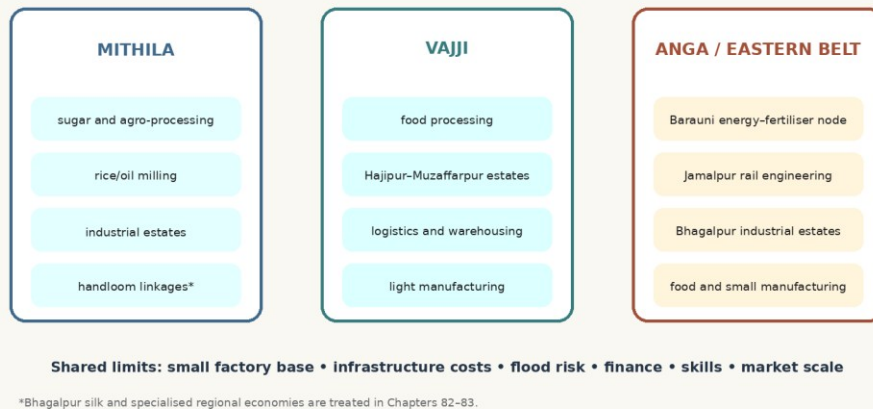
Bihar's 2024–25 Economic Survey estimated the secondary sector at 21.5 per cent of GSVA in 2023–24, but manufacturing itself at only about 7.6 per cent; construction accounted for a larger share. Factory investment and output had risen, and food processing and ethanol showed new activity. At the national level, however, the 2024–25 Economic Survey still identified Bihar as having exceptionally few factories per person among large states. These two facts can coexist. Industrial revival may be real in particular sectors and years while the underlying factory density remains low. The appropriate historical judgement is therefore neither stagnation nor transformation, but uneven catch-up from a very thin base.

81.29 Regional industrialisation took different forms because ecology, transport and inherited institutions differed

Mithila's industrial possibilities were closely tied to agriculture, sugar, food processing, handloom and dispersed estates constrained by flood risk. The Vajji zone benefited from proximity to Patna, Hajipur and Muzaffarpur industrial estates, dense markets, road connections and food-processing potential. In the eastern belt, Barauni's energy–fertiliser complex, Jamalpur's railway engineering tradition and Bhagalpur's urban-industrial base created stronger fixed industrial anchors. These are tendencies rather than rigid boundaries. The important point is that a single Bihar-wide industrial narrative obscures regional combinations of resource, infrastructure and historical institution. Bhagalpur silk, a distinctive case of textile production and commercial organisation, is therefore examined separately in Chapter 82.

Figure 323

Regional industrial forms within the Mithila-Vajji-Anga frame

*Figure 323 — Regional industrial forms within the Mithila-Vajji-Anga frame*

81.30 The long-run limit was the failure to achieve cumulative industrial density

Industrialisation becomes self-reinforcing when firms buy from one another, workers can move between employers, specialised repair and logistics services become profitable, banks understand local sectors, and towns supply housing and skills. Mithila, Vajji and Anga repeatedly acquired parts of this system without achieving comparable density across the whole region. Public plants, sugar mills, railway workshops, estates, MSMEs and new agro-industries each mattered; none should be dismissed as failure. The historical limit was their weak cumulative linkage. The contemporary policy challenge is therefore not simply to attract more individual factories, but to make investment, infrastructure, skills and regional markets interact strongly enough that one successful firm increases the probability of the next.

Chapter 82 — Bhagalpur Silk and Anga's Textile Economy

Bhagalpur silk is often presented as a single celebrated product, but historically it has been a dispersed textile economy: cocoon and yarn supply, reeling and spinning, dyeing, warping, household weaving, finishing, merchant finance, cooperative organisation and long-distance marketing. The centre of gravity lies in Bhagalpur and neighbouring Banka, within the wider Anga region, yet the value chain reaches into Jharkhand, other silk-producing states, metropolitan markets and export channels. This geography explains both the endurance of the craft and its vulnerability. A strong weaving tradition can survive even when local raw-silk production is modest, provided merchants, institutions and transport reconnect the stages of production.

The chapter therefore treats 'Bhagalpur silk' not merely as a cultural label but as a socio-economic system. It follows the historical record from the early nineteenth-century survey of Francis Buchanan through cooperative and state support, the Weavers' Service Centre, the rise of powerlooms, the Geographical Indication, the Bhagalpur–Banka Mega Handloom Cluster and contemporary design, testing and sericulture infrastructure. The central argument is that resilience has come from flexible household production and accumulated skill, while the recurrent limits have been raw-material dependence, working-capital asymmetry, uneven common facilities, imitation, volatile orders and weak bargaining at the producer end of the chain.

82.1 Anga's textile economy was a production network rather than a single urban industry

Bhagalpur's fame can obscure the wider geography that made its textiles possible. Weaving households were concentrated in neighbourhoods and villages across Bhagalpur town and district, while Banka contributed reeling, spinning and weaving tied to forest-based tussar ecology. Traders connected these clusters to Patna, Kolkata and national markets; yarn and cocoons could arrive from Jharkhand and other silk regions; and finished fabrics moved outward through wholesalers, exhibitions, exporters and later online retail. Such a network behaves differently from a factory. Capital equipment is distributed among households, production expands or contracts with orders, and the boundary between household, workshop and commercial enterprise is porous. This decentralisation reduced the fixed cost of survival but also shifted inventory and income risk toward weavers and small intermediaries.

82.2 Buchanan's 1810–11 survey confirms that silk belonged to a documented early commercial economy

The statistical survey undertaken by Francis Buchanan in 1810–11 included an entire book on the state of arts and commerce in Bhagalpur, and later official accounts explicitly remember his description of the district's tussar economy. The value of this evidence is methodological. It establishes that silk, spinning, weaving and trade were not twentieth-century inventions created by branding campaigns; they were already part of a diversified regional economy at the opening of the colonial nineteenth century. At the same time, antiquity should not be romanticised into continuity without change. Markets, fibres, loom technology, merchant organisation and political institutions all changed repeatedly. What endured was a local capacity to transform silk and mixed yarns into saleable cloth through specialised skill.

82.3 Tussar and mulberry created different raw-material geographies

Bhagalpur weaving draws on several silk types rather than a single local fibre. The Weavers' Service Centre records production of tussar and union fabrics with mulberry silk, eri, cotton, noil and related yarns. Central Silk Board data also show why the distinction between weaving centre and raw-silk-producing state matters: Bihar's recorded raw-silk output has been small compared with neighbouring Jharkhand, historically one of the major tussar-producing regions. The 2000 state bifurcation therefore did not destroy Bhagalpur weaving, but it made an already inter-regional input chain more visible. The economic question for a weaver is less where the cocoon was reared than whether the required yarn, quality and count arrive at a workable price and on time.

82.4 Reeling and spinning converted biological variation into usable textile material

Wild and semi-domesticated silks are not uniform industrial inputs. Cocoons vary by species, season and quality; reeling and spinning determine whether the fibre becomes fine reeled yarn, ghichha, katia, matka or other textured material. In Banka's Katoria belt, the Bihar Directorate of Handloom and Sericulture specifically notes women's traditional role in thigh reeling of tussar. This stage is economically significant because apparent 'waste' or broken fibre can become a valued aesthetic input rather than a loss. The characteristic irregular texture of many Bhagalpur fabrics is thus the outcome of labour, classification and technique. Improvements in reeling machines can raise productivity, but mechanisation must be judged by yarn quality, women's earnings and who owns the equipment, not by machine counts alone.

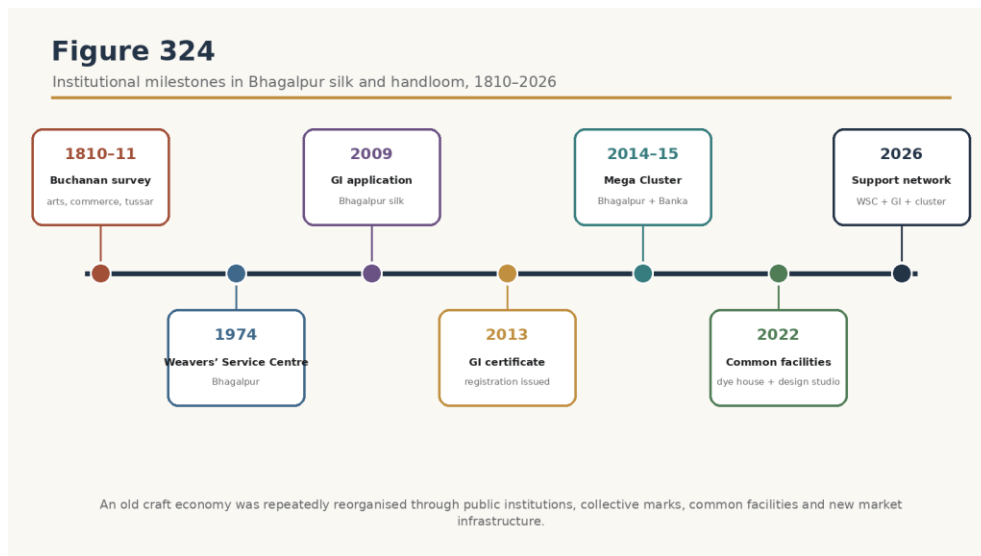


Figure 324 — Institutional milestones in Bhagalpur silk and handloom, 1810–2026

82.5 Household weaving depended on accumulated embodied skill

Handloom productivity cannot be measured only by loom speed. A skilled weaver controls tension, yarn breakage, selvedge, treadle sequence, pattern repeat and the visual balance of irregular silk. Government cluster descriptions of Nathnagar, Champanagar and Hussainabad emphasise pit looms, fly shuttles, multiple treadles and improvised dobby arrangements used to create texture. Such capabilities are learned through practice and often transmitted within families and neighbourhoods. They are therefore a form of human capital embedded in community life. When a loom falls silent because orders disappear, the loss is not

merely a day's output; prolonged inactivity can weaken the intergenerational reproduction of technique and encourage younger workers to seek more predictable occupations elsewhere.

82.6 Women's labour was central even when the public image of the craft centred on the male weaver

Textile production includes more than the person seated at the loom. Reeling, spinning, winding, bobbin preparation, sorting, finishing and household management frequently draw on women's labour. The Katoria cluster documentation is unusually explicit in identifying a large population of women engaged in traditional tussar reeling. This matters for social history because income may be distributed across household tasks that remain statistically under-recorded. Technology can either improve or displace such work. A reeling machine that raises output and reduces physical strain may strengthen women's earnings if access is individual or collective; the same machine can concentrate control if it is monopolised by a trader or contractor. Gender therefore belongs inside the analysis of productivity and institutional design.

82.7 Product diversity was a survival strategy

Bhagalpur's textile economy was never restricted to the ceremonial silk sari. Official cluster descriptions list silk chadars, dress materials, dupattas, home furnishings, tussar fabrics, cotton cloth, dhoti, lungi and gamchha, while government weaver databases record combinations such as tussar with dupion, muga with ghichha, and noil-matka constructions. Product diversity spreads risk across consumers and seasons. Furnishings and dress materials can use wider widths and different textures; saris require other design and finishing decisions; coarse cotton goods serve lower-price markets. This adaptive range helps explain the cluster's longevity. It also means that 'Bhagalpur silk' functions simultaneously as a place-name, a reputation and a family of techniques rather than one standardised commodity.

82.8 Banka linked forest ecology to the urban weaving economy

Banka's importance lies in the ecological and labour stages that complement Bhagalpur's urban commercial functions. Katoria, Dumrama and neighbouring areas sit close to forest landscapes suitable for tussar food plants and cocoon rearing, and the state has developed a Tassar Pilot Project Centre at Katoria with seed-storage buildings and a cocoon bank. The district's handloom clusters also produce tussar saris and dress materials. This is a classic rural–urban production relationship: biological production and primary fibre preparation occur closer to the resource base, while design, finishing, trade and branding become denser toward Bhagalpur. The chain therefore distributes income across distinct landscapes, but it also transmits shocks—poor cocoon harvests or yarn-price changes can move rapidly from forest village to city loom.

82.9 Bhagalpur itself contained several specialised weaving neighbourhoods

Government cluster records distinguish Nathnagar, Champanagar, Hussainabad, Kharik and other pockets rather than treating the city as a homogeneous production zone. Nathnagar has long combined silk and cotton weaving; Champanagar shows a strong mix of dress material, furnishings and saris; Hussainabad is associated with textured silk and matka; Kharik combines handloom and powerloom production. These micro-geographies matter because design practice, loom width, yarn preference, trader networks and community organisation differ from one pocket to another. Development schemes that operate only at district level can therefore miss the actual scale at which knowledge and orders circulate. The effective industrial unit is often the neighbourhood cluster.

Cluster / locality	Characteristic products	Technical form	Recurring vulnerability
Nathnagar, Bhagalpur	Silk + cotton; chadar, tussar fabrics, dhoti/lungi/gamchha	Pit looms; fly shuttle; multi-treadle texture	Order variability and working capital
Champanagar, Bhagalpur	Silk dress material, furnishings, saris	Frame and pit looms; 4–6 treadles	Design renewal and market access
Hussainabad / Kharik	Matka and mixed silk; cotton; handloom + powerloom	Textured structures; some dobby/powerloom coexistence	Technology segmentation and price competition
Pirpainti / Kahalgaon	Weaver groups, reeling and marketed silk products	Household / group production	Credit, yarn and buyer linkage
Katoria / Dumrama, Banka	Tussar yarn, ghichha/katia, silk saris and dress material	Traditional + mechanised reeling; pit looms	Cocoon ecology, machine access and women's earnings

Table 82.1 — Selected Bhagalpur–Banka textile clusters: products, technical forms and recurring vulnerabilities

82.10 Merchant and master-weaver intermediation solved real problems while creating bargaining asymmetry

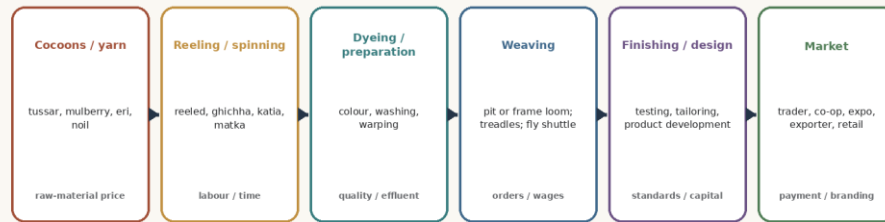
A dispersed producer needs someone to aggregate orders, buy yarn, advance working capital, coordinate colours and dimensions, inspect cloth and connect production with distant buyers. Traders and master weavers have historically performed these functions. Their role cannot be reduced to exploitation, because without intermediation many household looms would have no route to market. Yet the relationship is structurally unequal when the intermediary owns the yarn, controls the order book and can delay payment while the household contributes labour and equipment. The central policy problem is therefore not to eliminate intermediaries but to increase transparency and alternatives—cooperatives, producer groups, direct marketing, digital sales and institutional procurement—so that producers have more than one channel through which to realise value.

82.11 Working capital was the hidden constraint behind many weaving decisions

Silk yarn is expensive relative to the cash reserves of a weaving household. A producer who must buy raw material before receiving payment for finished cloth carries inventory risk for the duration of weaving and marketing. Credit terms therefore influence what can be produced, not merely how much. Weaver credit schemes, yarn supply arrangements and cooperative purchasing try to reduce this constraint, while traders often provide advances in exchange for control over output. When formal finance is slow or collateral requirements are high, the commercial advance becomes attractive even if it lowers bargaining power. The textile economy thus links directly to the rural-credit history discussed in Chapter 79.

Figure 325

The Bhagalpur silk value chain: where value is created and where risk enters



Bhagalpur's strength lies in specialised transformation and weaving; much raw silk can originate outside the district or outside Bihar.

Yarn price, dyeing, credit, order flow or branding problems at any stage can reduce the weaver's realised wage.

Figure 325 — The Bhagalpur silk value chain: where value is created and where risk enters

82.12 Dyeing and pre-loom preparation were common-facility problems

Colour is one of the most visible features of a textile, but consistent dyeing requires water, chemicals, process control, drainage and testing. Individual household units cannot always justify the capital needed for reliable dyeing and effluent management. The Bhagalpur Mega Handloom Cluster therefore treated a common dye house as infrastructure rather than as an optional decorative service. By March 2023 the official status report recorded the Katoria dye house as functional. Common facilities can improve colour reproducibility and environmental management, yet they succeed only when scheduling, pricing, maintenance and transport are convenient enough that small producers actually use them.

82.13 Colonial market integration expanded opportunity and exposure at the same time

During the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries Bhagalpur became progressively tied to wider commercial circuits through river routes, road and rail connections and the dominance of Kolkata as an eastern Indian mercantile centre. Wider markets increased the potential scale of silk sales, but also exposed local producers to imported cloth, changing fashion and merchant price power. Handloom survival was therefore not evidence of isolation from industrial capitalism; it was a form of adaptation within it. Producers shifted fibre combinations, widths and products in response to demand. The later coexistence of handlooms and powerlooms continued this pattern: technological competition did not automatically erase skilled hand production, but it changed which segments of the market could support it.

82.14 Swadeshi and khadi gave textile production a political meaning beyond price

The wider Bhagalpur–Banka region participated in the Swadeshi and nationalist movements, including boycotts of foreign cloth and later khadi and charkha activity. District historical records note the circulation of Swadeshi ideas and the participation of the area in Non-Cooperation and Civil Disobedience. For textile producers, nationalism could temporarily align cultural value with market demand by making hand-spun and hand-woven cloth a political statement. Yet the post-independence craft economy could not live on

symbolism alone. Once nationalist mobilisation became state policy and consumer choice, questions of quality, design, price and regular income returned to the centre.

82.15 Cooperatives attempted to turn dispersed producers into collective market actors

Primary weavers' cooperative societies and the Bhagalpur Regional Handloom Weavers Co-operative Union became important vehicles for yarn supply, credit, cluster interventions and representation. The later GI application itself was filed by the regional cooperative union and other local institutional applicants, demonstrating how collective organisation entered the legal protection of the product name. Cooperative performance has never been uniform: societies can suffer from weak management, political capture or irregular orders. Nevertheless, the cooperative form addresses a structural need that remains constant—the household weaver requires institutions capable of purchasing, processing and marketing at a scale larger than one loom.

82.16 The Weavers' Service Centre institutionalised technical support from 1974

The Government of India established the Weavers' Service Centre at Bhagalpur in 1974 to support Bihar's handloom sector. Its functions include design and product development, skill upgradation, testing of colours and yarn, analysis of blended materials, market linkage and participation in expos. The Centre's continuing presence is historically important because it represents a different model from subsidy alone. Technical institutions can help a cluster respond to new fibres, fashion preferences and quality requirements without requiring every household to employ its own designer or laboratory. Their impact, however, depends on whether services reach small producers and whether new designs translate into repeat orders and higher realised wages.

82.17 The 2000 Bihar–Jharkhand bifurcation made the raw-material dependence of Bhagalpur more visible

Tussar ecology does not respect state boundaries. The Weavers' Service Centre notes that major tussar cultivation areas once within Bihar are now in Jharkhand, while reeling, spinning and weaving remain widely practised in Bihar. Central Silk Board production data reinforce the point: Bihar's measured raw-silk output is modest relative to Jharkhand's. After bifurcation, the supply chain became administratively inter-state even where commercial relationships were old. This raised the importance of transport, market information and reliable yarn trading. Bhagalpur's competitive advantage consequently lies less in self-sufficiency in cocoons than in the accumulated ability to process and weave diverse silk inputs into distinctive fabrics.

82.18 Powerlooms introduced a different cost structure rather than a simple replacement technology

Powerlooms can produce repeatable fabrics faster and at lower labour cost for many constructions, and the Bihar government's electricity-support policy recognises a substantial powerloom sector, including activity in Bhagalpur and Banka. Handlooms compete poorly when buyers value only price and uniformity. Their economic space is stronger where texture, irregular yarn, small batches, custom colours, complex manual intervention and provenance matter. The coexistence of both technologies in clusters such as Kharik demonstrates segmentation rather than complete substitution. Policy should therefore avoid assuming that every loom should move toward the same technology. Productivity must be matched to product strategy.

Figure 326

A connected Anga textile geography: Bhagalpur city clusters and Banka's tussar belt

*Figure 326 — A connected Anga textile geography: Bhagalpur city clusters and Banka's tussar belt*

82.19 Geographical Indication registration converted regional reputation into a legal collective asset

The Geographical Indications Registry records 'Bhagalpur Silk Fabrics & Sarees' under application number 180, filed on 15 July 2009. The certificate was issued in January 2013, and the registration is currently renewed through 14 July 2029. A GI does not certify that every silk item sold with the city's name is authentic, nor does it automatically raise producer income. Its significance is that the place-linked reputation becomes a legally recognised collective intellectual-property asset. It can support branding, traceability and action against misuse, but only when authorised users, buyers and enforcement institutions understand and use the system.

82.20 The authorised-user register reveals a living social geography of the GI

The GI record lists individual weavers as well as cooperatives, self-help groups and handloom organisations from places such as Pirpainti, Jagdishpur and other parts of Bhagalpur district. Many individual names reflect the long participation of Ansari weaving families, while organisational entries show the growing role of SHGs and producer collectives. This register is more than administrative paperwork: it demonstrates that regional identity is carried by identifiable producers. At the same time, authorised-user registration must continue to expand if the GI is to represent the breadth of the cluster rather than a limited subset of it.

82.21 The Mega Handloom Cluster shifted policy toward shared infrastructure and cluster scale

Bhagalpur was announced as a Mega Handloom Cluster in 2014–15 with jurisdiction covering Bhagalpur and Banka. The project framework included block-level clusters, dyeing, design and product development, marketing, credit and other common interventions. This represented a shift from supporting isolated beneficiaries toward strengthening an ecosystem. The logic is economically sound: a dispersed handloom economy needs facilities that no single household can finance efficiently. The implementation challenge is equally clear. Common assets create value only when operating institutions, technicians, maintenance budgets and producer access survive after construction.

82.22 By 2022 the cluster's dye house and design studio had become operational

The official Mega Handloom Cluster status as of 31 March 2023 recorded the Katoria dye house as functional from May 2022 and the Design Studio and Product Development Centre under the Bhagalpur Regional Handloom Co-operative Union as functional from August 2022. It also recorded completion of the ten block-level cluster development plans, subject to some utilisation-certificate issues. These dates matter because they separate announced infrastructure from functioning infrastructure. Historical evaluation should ask what happened after commissioning: utilisation, number of producers served, product launches, repeat orders and income effects are more meaningful than the existence of a building or machine.

82.23 Testing and quality infrastructure became more important as markets widened

The Weavers' Service Centre provides facilities for testing colour, yarn count and strength and for analysing blends and union fabrics. The newer Design Studio and Product Development Centre similarly lists textile-testing equipment. Such facilities respond to a structural change in the market. A local customer may accept variation through personal trust; an institutional buyer, exporter or fashion label needs specifications, colour fastness and reproducibility. Quality infrastructure therefore converts craft knowledge into a language that distant markets can verify. The risk is that standards become a barrier if testing is costly or bureaucratic. Successful cluster institutions translate standards into accessible services rather than merely enforcing them.

82.24 Exhibitions and direct marketing reduced—but did not eliminate—dependence on wholesale channels

Central and state handloom agencies regularly sponsor weavers, cooperatives, SHGs and producer companies at expos and Dilli Haat-type marketing events. Participant lists include organisations from Bhagalpur, Kahalgaon, Kharik, Puraini and Banka. These events matter because they expose producers directly to consumer preferences and allow a higher share of the retail price to remain in the producing organisation. Digital commerce potentially extends the same logic, but photographing products, maintaining inventory, handling returns and ensuring prompt dispatch require new capabilities. Direct marketing is therefore not the absence of intermediation; it replaces one form of intermediation with logistics, branding and platform work.

82.25 Branding created value only when authenticity could be distinguished from imitation

The commercial success of the Bhagalpur name creates an incentive for sellers elsewhere to use it loosely. This is a common paradox of regional craft reputation: the stronger the name, the greater the reward from imitation. GI registration, authorised-user systems and product labelling can reduce this problem, but legal protection is not self-enforcing. Consumers need recognisable marks, retailers need supply-chain documentation, and producer organisations need the capacity to challenge misuse. Quality signalling also matters within the region because 'Bhagalpur silk' covers multiple fibres and constructions. Honest labelling of tussar, mulberry, eri, noil and union fabrics can strengthen rather than weaken the collective brand.

82.26 Design innovation helped traditional technique enter new markets

Bhagalpur's clusters have repeatedly adapted from saris and chadars toward dress materials, stoles, furnishings and contemporary fashion fabrics. Government descriptions of Champanagar and other clusters

already show a significant share of home furnishings and dress materials alongside saris. This diversification is not a departure from tradition; it is one of the ways tradition survives. The durable asset is the ability to manipulate yarn and weave structure, not any single nineteenth-century product form. Design studios and collaboration with designers can translate that capability into current colour palettes, widths and end uses while retaining the tactile qualities that distinguish handwoven silk from mass-produced cloth.

82.27 New state infrastructure sought to connect production, administration and display

The Bihar Directorate of Handloom and Sericulture has constructed a Handloom and Resham Building at Zero Mile, Bhagalpur, designed to house central and state textile offices and to provide exhibition and sales space, including an emporium with planned stalls. In Banka, the Tassar Pilot Project Centre at Katoria adds seed storage and cocoon-bank infrastructure. Together these investments recognise that a mature textile economy needs administrative services, raw-material institutions and market presentation. Their usefulness should be measured by producer access and throughput, not architecture. A common building becomes economically meaningful when it shortens the distance between artisan, scheme, testing service, buyer and market.

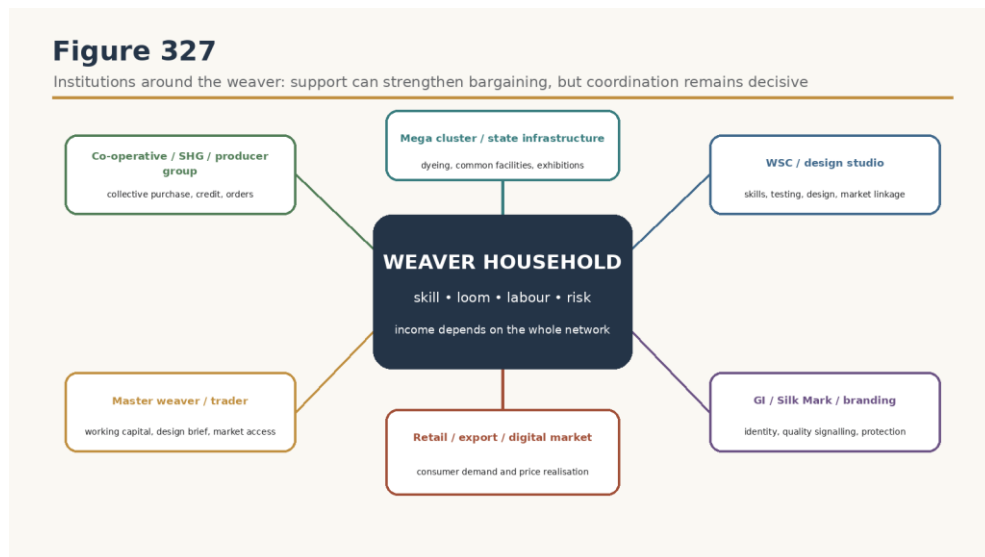


Figure 327 — Institutions around the weaver: support can strengthen bargaining, but coordination remains decisive

82.28 Mechanised reeling programmes illustrate the tension between productivity and livelihood distribution

Bhagalpur district's ODOP documentation lists Buniyaad-type tussar reeling machines distributed across several blocks, with the largest numbers in Jagdishpur and Pirpanti and additional machines in Nathnagar, Kahalgaon, Shahkund, Goradih and Bhagalpur Sadar. Mechanised reeling can improve consistency and reduce drudgery, especially compared with traditional thigh reeling. But the social effect depends on ownership and workflow. If women reelers control or collectively access machines, productivity gains can raise earnings; if raw material and machines are controlled elsewhere, labour may be displaced or converted into lower-paid piece work. Technology policy therefore needs distributional metrics alongside output metrics.

82.29 The sector's resilience came from flexible specialisation, but that same flexibility concealed insecurity

Household looms can stop when orders fall and restart when demand returns. Families can combine weaving with petty trade, agriculture, wage labour or migration. Traders can shift between silk types and product lines without rebuilding a large factory. These features make the cluster resilient in the sense of survival. Yet they can also conceal underemployment: a loom that operates only intermittently remains part of the cluster but does not provide a stable annual income. The crucial distinction is between the survival of a craft reputation and the security of the people who reproduce it. A healthy textile economy must achieve both.

82.30 Bhagalpur silk demonstrates how heritage becomes economic only through institutions

The long history of Bhagalpur silk cannot by itself guarantee future livelihoods. Heritage supplies reputation, inherited technique and a narrative that consumers value. Economic durability requires something more concrete: reliable yarn, accessible finance, common dyeing and testing, technical support, functioning cooperatives or producer groups, enforceable branding, contemporary design and multiple market channels. The region has accumulated many of these institutions—WSC, GI, cluster facilities, SHGs, cooperatives, sericulture infrastructure and exhibitions—but their coordination remains uneven. The central lesson is therefore similar to Chapter 81's account of industrialisation: isolated assets matter less than cumulative linkages. In Anga's textile economy, the most valuable 'factory' is the network connecting household skill to raw material, common services and markets.

Chapter 83 — Makhana, Fish, Dairy and Specialised Regional Economies

Makhana, fish and milk appear to belong to different sectors, yet in Mithila, Vajji and Anga they share a common economic logic. They are intensive in management rather than land alone, depend on fragile biological cycles, and derive value from infrastructure that links scattered households to markets. Makhana is rooted in ponds, *chaurs* and shallow-water fields; inland fisheries use many of the same aquatic landscapes; dairying converts fodder, crop residues and household labour into a perishable daily product. Each can provide income where conventional cereal farming is constrained by small holdings, floods, waterlogging or the need for year-round cash. Their histories therefore reveal how regional ecology became an economic asset rather than merely an obstacle.

The post-independence transformation of these activities was institutional as much as technical. Makhana acquired a research centre, improved varieties, processing machinery and a Geographical Indication. Fisheries moved from local capture and pond use toward hatcheries, managed aquaculture, stocking, cold-chain support and large public programmes. Cooperative dairying linked village societies to milk unions, processing plants and the *Sudha* brand after COMFED was established in 1983. Around these three major systems sit other specialised economies—*Shahi litchi* in the Vajji–Muzaffarpur belt, Bhagalpuri *Zardalu* and *Katarni* in Anga, water chestnut and high-value horticulture in wetland districts. The central theme is diversification through place-specific knowledge, followed by a continuing struggle over processing, storage, collective organisation, ecological risk and producer bargaining power.

83.1 Specialised regional economies convert ecological difference into economic value

The plains of Mithila, Vajji and Anga are not agriculturally uniform. Flood basins, *chaurs*, oxbow lakes, village ponds, higher alluvial fields, riverine tracts and peri-urban milk sheds create different combinations of risk and opportunity. A cereal-centred history tends to treat these differences as deviations from the norm. A regional economic history instead asks how households learned to use them. Makhana rewards command over shallow-water ecology and labour-intensive processing; fish can turn ponds and seasonal wetlands into productive assets; dairy yields repeated sales even where cultivated acreage is small. *Litchi* and mango depend on specialised orchards, harvesting windows and rapid marketing. These activities are therefore not marginal appendages to agriculture. They are mechanisms by which households diversify income, distribute labour through the year and exploit ecological niches that would be poorly described by cropped-area statistics alone.

83.2 Wetlands are productive landscapes, not empty land awaiting drainage

North Bihar's floodplain contains ponds, *chaurs*, *mauns* and seasonally inundated depressions whose economic uses shift with depth, season and tenure. Such spaces can support fish, makhana, water chestnut, fodder, aquatic plants and post-water crops. Their productivity is easily underestimated because the same parcel may change function within a year and because many benefits are mediated by customary access rather than conventional field ownership. Post-independence development often valued drainage and embankment, yet specialised wetland economies reveal another pathway: managing water rather than eliminating it. The key constraint is institutional. Water depth, inlet and outlet control, stocking rights,

harvesting schedules and access to common or leased water bodies determine who can use the resource. Wetland history is consequently both environmental history and property history.

83.3 Makhana's cultural prestige rests on a demanding labour economy

Makhana is closely associated with Mithila's foodways, ritual use and regional identity, but the marketable white pop is the endpoint of a difficult production sequence. Cultivation requires seed selection, establishment in water, removal or control of competing vegetation, collection of mature seeds from the pond or field, washing and drying, repeated roasting or tempering, cracking and popping, grading and storage. The work historically demanded specialised knowledge and intense physical effort. The cultural familiarity of makhana can therefore conceal the labour embodied in every kilogram. Regional economic analysis must distinguish seed production from popped product and must also distinguish cultivation income from the margins earned in roasting, popping, grading, packaging and retail. Value is created at several stages, and the producer who bears biological risk does not automatically capture the largest share.

83.4 Traditional pond cultivation linked expertise to particular communities and labour teams

Deep-water makhana cultivation historically relied on workers able to operate in ponds for long periods and to recover seed from beneath the water. Harvest, drying and popping were organised through household and hired labour, with skill transmitted through practice. This created an economy in which expertise could be concentrated even when ownership of water bodies was elsewhere. Lease terms, advances from traders and dependence on processors could shape the division of returns. The system was therefore neither a simple peasant crop nor a conventional wage industry. It combined access to water, specialised labour, merchant finance and processing knowledge. Modern policy has tried to reduce drudgery and broaden cultivation, but the older organisation remains important for understanding why improvements in yield do not automatically translate into proportional gains for the most labour-intensive stages.

83.5 The main distributive question is where the makhana value chain captures its margin

Raw seed is bulky and requires careful post-harvest treatment, while popped makhana is a high-value, lightweight food that can be graded, flavoured, packaged and branded. This transformation creates a wide space between farm-gate and retail value. Small cultivators who need immediate cash or lack dry storage may sell seed early; processors with working capital can hold stocks, organise popping and wait for favourable markets. Branding and export add further margins but also require quality consistency, food-safety compliance, packaging and logistics. The result is a classic specialised-crop problem: productivity policy can raise physical output while bargaining and storage continue to determine household income. Producer groups, mechanisation, credit and local processing matter because they alter the producer's position within the chain, not merely because they raise production.

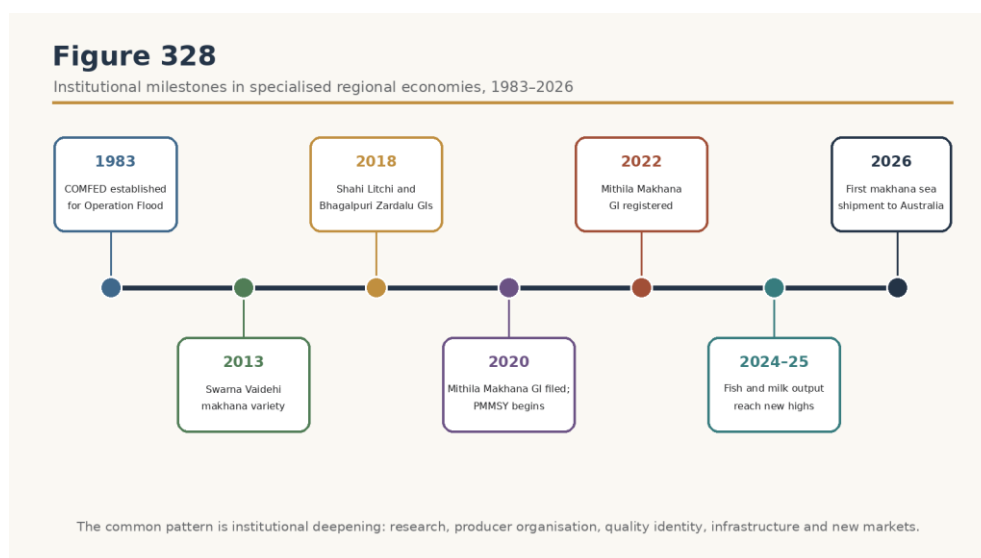


Figure 328 — Institutional milestones in specialised regional economies, 1983–2026

83.6 Darbhanga's makhana research institution changed the technological horizon

Public research gave the crop an institutional base that few regional aquatic foods possessed. The Makhana Research Centre at Darbhanga operated under the ICAR Research Complex for Eastern Region and has subsequently been identified by ICAR as the National Research Centre for Makhana. Its work has addressed varietal improvement, cultivation systems, integrated makhana-fish models, post-harvest machinery and value-added products. A 2025 parliamentary reply described a centre equipped for research and innovation and credited it with high-yield varieties, water-efficient systems, makhana-cum-fish farming and a family of machines for washing, grading, roasting and popping. This research trajectory is historically significant because it shifts makhana from inherited local practice toward a crop with formal breeding, engineering and extension support without eliminating the importance of local skill.

83.7 Swarna Vaidehi helped move makhana from pond dependence toward field-system cultivation

ICAR's Swarna Vaidehi was developed as a high-yielding makhana variety and became important not only because of yield but because it could be used in shallow-water and field-based systems. ICAR reported that local cultivars often produced substantially less than Swarna Vaidehi and demonstrated cultivation at roughly 30 centimetres of water depth. The shallower system changes the economics of labour and land. Farmers can manage water more easily, mechanisation becomes more plausible, and a rabi crop such as wheat, pulses, fodder or vegetables can follow makhana where drainage permits. Field cultivation does not make pond systems obsolete; rather, it broadens the crop's ecological range. The innovation is best understood as a change in the annual land-use calendar, converting a specialised aquatic crop into one component of a more intensive farming system.

83.8 Mechanising roasting and popping targets drudgery, health and quality variation

The most celebrated makhana innovation may be a seed variety, but processing technology is equally important. Traditional popping exposes workers to intense heat and requires repeated judgement about

roasting, tempering and striking the seed. ICAR has developed and commercialised machines for washing, grading, primary roasting, popping and grading popped makhana. Mechanisation can reduce heat exposure, raise throughput and standardise quality; it can also shift who controls the high-value processing stage. If machines are accessible only to larger firms, the technology may concentrate margins. If common facilities, producer companies or local enterprises can use them, mechanisation can strengthen rural processing. The economic test is therefore not whether machinery exists, but whether its ownership, financing and scale fit the dispersed producer structure of Mithila's makhana belt.

83.9 The 2022 Mithila Makhana GI turned a regional name into a legally protected collective asset

The Geographical Indications Registry records the filing of Mithila Makhana on 14 August 2020 and registration on 16 August 2022, with the registration currently valid to 13 August 2030. The registered proprietor is the Mithilanchal Makhana Utpadak Sangh, facilitated by Bihar Agricultural University. The GI matters because regional reputation had long circulated without a formal mechanism to distinguish authorised origin and collective ownership. Legal registration can support branding, traceability and premium-market strategies, but it is not self-executing. Producers must understand authorised-user systems, quality expectations and the costs of packaging and compliance. A GI can protect a name while leaving farm-gate bargaining unchanged. Its historical significance lies in creating an institutional framework within which producer organisation and market differentiation can be built.

83.10 Makhana production forms an eastern and northern Bihar belt with a strong Mithila core

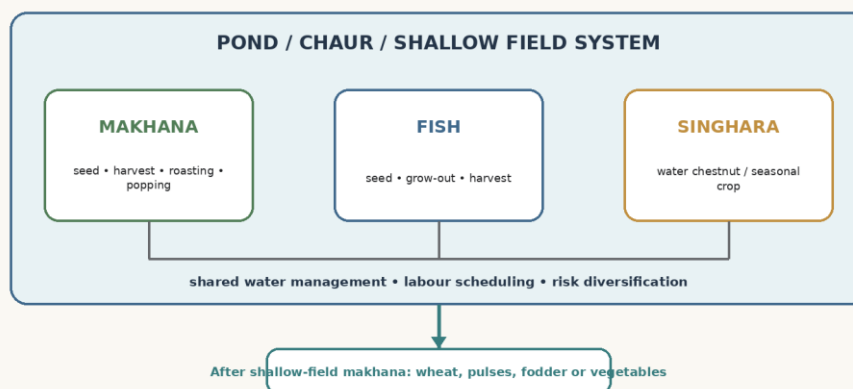
ICAR has documented commercial makhana cultivation in Darbhanga, Madhubani, Sitamarhi, Saharsa, Supaul, Araria, Kishanganj, Purnea and Katihar, showing that the production geography extends from the Mithila heartland into the Kosi and northeastern districts. APEDA's market intelligence, drawing on Bihar horticulture data for 2021–22, similarly shows large concentrations in Purnea and Katihar alongside Darbhanga, Madhubani, Saharsa, Supaul and neighbouring districts. This wider belt is important for terminology: 'Mithila Makhana' is a regional identity and GI, while the economic production system spans several present-day administrative districts. The crop links wetlands, markets and labour across those boundaries. Historical regional analysis should therefore avoid treating a district line as the edge of an ecological economy.

83.11 The August 2026 sea shipment to Australia marks a new export-logistics threshold

On 8 August 2026, APEDA facilitated the first commercial sea shipment of GI-tagged Mithila Makhana from Bihar to Australia. The 18-metric-tonne consignment was sourced from Darbhanga growers and, according to the official release, generated returns about 18 per cent above the prevailing market price. The event matters less as a single shipment than as proof that a premium but lightweight regional product can move through a longer, lower-cost logistics chain when quality, aggregation, documentation and buyers are aligned. Earlier export efforts had already reached markets such as the United States and the Gulf. Sea freight widens the scale at which makhana can compete internationally. It also increases the importance of consistent grading, moisture control, packaging, traceability and producer aggregation, because export failure is costly when shipments are large.

Figure 329

Mithila wetland economy: makhana, fish and water chestnut can share one managed landscape

*Figure 329 — Mithila wetland economy: makhana, fish and water chestnut can share one managed landscape*

83.12 Fish is the natural companion economy of a floodplain rich in ponds, rivers and seasonal water

The same water-rich geography that supports makhana also sustains a large inland fish economy. Households obtain fish through managed ponds, leased wetlands, rivers, floodplain depressions and increasingly intensive aquaculture. Fish contributes food, cash income and employment across seed production, pond preparation, feeding, guarding, harvest, transport and retail. Unlike cereals, fish can exploit waterlogged areas that are difficult to crop conventionally. Unlike makhana, however, the product is highly perishable and must move quickly or remain alive through the marketing chain. Fisheries therefore expose the infrastructure dimension of diversification: quality seed, feed, water management, veterinary or diagnostic support, ice, transport and market facilities are as important as the water body itself.

83.13 Capture fisheries and culture fisheries rest on different institutions

River and floodplain capture fisheries depend on access to moving or seasonally connected water, natural recruitment and collective rules about gears and seasons. Pond aquaculture and culture-based wetland fisheries depend more heavily on stocking, feed, ownership or lease security, controlled harvest and protection against poaching. The distinction matters for policy. A hatchery programme can transform a stocked pond but does not solve access conflicts in a common wetland. Conversely, cooperative rights over a maun will not raise output if the group lacks suitable seed sizes, species composition or harvest planning. In Bihar, fishers' cooperative societies have often been used to organise access to public water bodies, making fisheries a field where social organisation and ecological management are inseparable.

83.14 Fish seed is a strategic input because output growth begins before the pond is stocked

Aquaculture expansion depends on an upstream economy of brood fish, hatcheries, spawn, fry and fingerlings. Poor seed quality or unsuitable size can waste an entire production cycle. Public programmes have therefore invested in hatcheries, brood banks and rearing infrastructure as well as ponds. In 2026 the Union Department of Fisheries reported approvals in Bihar that included 35 fin-fish hatcheries and one brood bank under PMMSY-related development. ICAR institutions have also supported hatcheries and

stock enhancement in the state. These interventions illustrate a broader principle: specialised rural economies need reliable intermediate inputs. The farmer may own water and labour, but productivity still depends on a biological supply chain whose failure can occur before cultivation begins.

83.15 Bihar's inland fish output nearly doubled over a decade

Official figures show the scale of the fisheries transformation. Bihar reported 4.79 lakh metric tonnes of fish production in 2014–15 and 8.73 lakh metric tonnes in 2023–24, an increase of about 82 per cent. A later official series placed 2024–25 production provisionally at 9.5976 lakh tonnes and ranked Bihar fourth among the leading inland-fish-producing states. Darbhanga district alone rose from 64.22 thousand tonnes in 2020–21 to 88.28 thousand tonnes in 2024–25 in that series. These numbers do not imply uniform prosperity: feed costs, seed quality, disease, lease arrangements and market prices still vary widely. They do show that inland fisheries moved from a supplementary activity toward a major component of Bihar's agricultural and food economy.

83.16 Integrated makhana-fish-water-chestnut systems diversify the same unit of water

ICAR demonstrations in Darbhanga integrated makhana with fish and water chestnut rather than treating the pond as a single-crop space. The logic is risk diversification and fuller use of water, nutrients and labour. Fish can create an additional revenue stream during a makhana cycle, while water chestnut or a following field crop can extend production into another season. The agronomy requires careful management: species choice, stocking density, water depth and harvesting schedules must not damage the makhana crop. But the economic principle is powerful. A household exposed to price or yield variation in one component can obtain income from another. Integrated systems therefore turn wetland ecology into a portfolio rather than a single commodity and provide a regional counterpart to mixed crop-livestock farming on dry land.

83.17 Fisher cooperatives can solve access problems but can also reproduce local inequalities

Collective institutions are especially important where water bodies are public, common or periodically leased. A fisheries cooperative can aggregate members, negotiate access, organise stocking and harvest, and distribute benefits. It can also become a gatekeeper if membership is weakly governed or if influential intermediaries capture leases and marketing. The Bihar experience therefore cannot be reduced to a simple claim that cooperatives are either successful or failed. Their economic effect depends on transparent membership, enforceable rights, access to seed and credit, technical support and the capacity to market fish collectively. This echoes Chapter 80's wider argument: the legal form of cooperation matters less than whether the institution improves the bargaining position and productive capability of actual producers.

83.18 Floods, drought and water quality make aquatic diversification climate-sensitive

Water is both the resource and the principal risk. Extreme floods can wash out stocked fish, alter water chemistry, damage pond embankments and interrupt makhana harvest. Drought or delayed monsoon can reduce the depth and duration needed by aquatic crops. High temperatures can worsen dissolved-oxygen stress in ponds, while contaminated inflows can affect fish health and food safety. Climate resilience in these economies therefore requires more than crop insurance. It includes pond design, water control, drainage,

seed timing, species choice, embankment repair, disease surveillance and diversification across components. The field-system method of makhana and integrated fish farming can reduce some risks, but they also require capital and management. Climate change strengthens the case for technical extension and collective water governance.

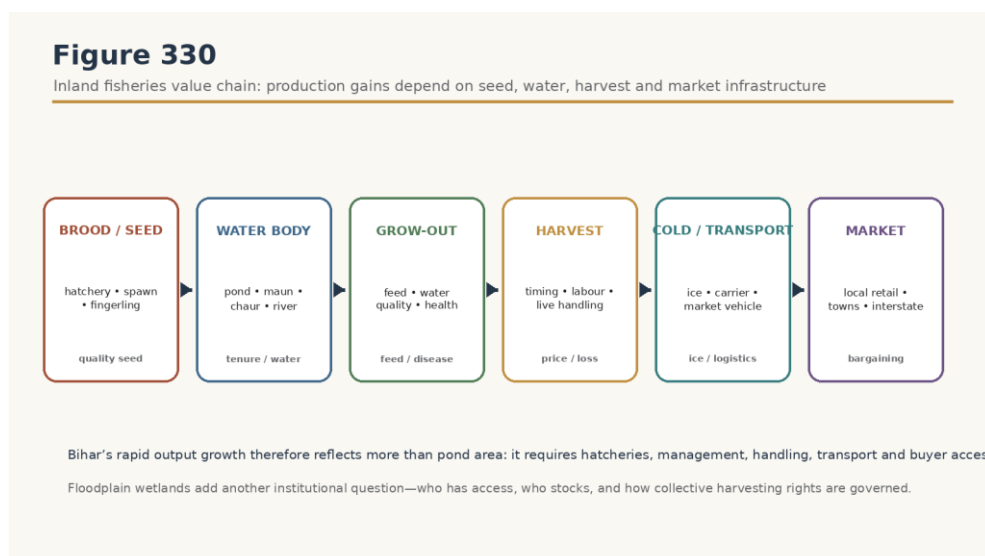


Figure 330 — Inland fisheries value chain: production gains depend on seed, water, harvest and market infrastructure

83.19 Cold-chain and market logistics determine how much of the fish gain reaches producers

Fish loses value rapidly after harvest unless it is sold alive, chilled or processed. The public fisheries programmes that finance ponds also include ice plants, cold storage, live-fish carriers, wholesale and retail markets, mobile outlets and transport vehicles for this reason. Bihar reported exporting 38.38 thousand metric tonnes of fish to other states in 2023–24, evidence that the sector increasingly participates in inter-regional trade rather than only local consumption. Yet the producer may remain dependent on buyers who control ice, vehicles and urban market stalls. As with makhana storage, infrastructure has a distributive dimension. When producer groups can access cold and transport services, they gain time and choice; when they cannot, perishability strengthens the trader's bargaining position.

83.20 Dairying converts crop residues and household care into a recurring cash product

Cattle and buffalo have long been integrated into rural household economies as sources of milk, manure, draught power in earlier periods and asset security. Post-independence mechanisation reduced some draught functions, but milk became more commercially important as towns expanded and collection networks improved. Dairying is attractive to smallholders because it does not require a large contiguous holding and because feed can include cultivated fodder, crop residues and purchased concentrates. It is also demanding: animals require daily feeding, watering, cleaning and health care regardless of milk price. The resulting income is therefore inseparable from household labour, much of it performed by women. Cooperative collection transformed this old mixed-farming activity by creating a regular route from village milk to distant consumers.

Economy	Ecological base	Marketed output	Recurring bottleneck	Institutional linkage
---------	-----------------	-----------------	----------------------	-----------------------

Economy	Ecological base	Marketed output	Recurring bottleneck	Institutional linkage
Makhana	Ponds, chauras, shallow-water fields	Seed, popped makhana, processed snacks	Water control, popping, storage, price	NRCM, GI, producer groups, processors
Inland fish	Ponds, rivers, mauns, floodplain wetlands	Fresh/live fish, seed, fingerlings	Seed quality, feed, lease, disease, cold chain	Fishers' cooperatives, hatcheries, PMMSY
Dairy	Village livestock + fodder/crop-residue base	Milk, curd, ghee, paneer, sweets	Fodder, animal health, daily collection	DCS, milk unions, COMFED/Sudha
Shahi litchi	Vajji-Muzaffarpur orchard belt	Fresh fruit, premium GI market	Very short shelf life, weather, logistics	Grower groups, GI, pack/market linkage
Zardalu / Katarni	Bhagalpur-Anga specialised fields/orchards	GI mango and aromatic rice	Grading, identity, market aggregation	Producer associations, GI, BAU/APEDA support

Table 83.1 — Selected specialised regional economies: ecological base, marketed output, recurring bottleneck and institutional linkage

83.21 COMFED's establishment in 1983 embedded Bihar in the Operation Flood cooperative model

The Bihar State Milk Co-operative Federation, COMFED, was established in 1983 as the state implementing agency for Operation Flood. Its institutional architecture follows the familiar cooperative dairy chain: village dairy cooperative societies aggregate and test milk; district or regional milk unions chill and process it; the federation markets milk and products under the Sudha brand. This system addresses the central difficulty of milk—it is produced in very small daily quantities by dispersed households but must be cooled, transported and sold quickly. By pooling milk, the cooperative network can connect a household with one or two milch animals to an industrial processing and retail system. Its success depends on payment reliability, quality testing, route density and producer trust as much as on plant capacity.

83.22 Mithila, Tirhut, Kosi and Bhagalpur are represented within COMFED's regional union structure

COMFED's current governance records include the Mithila Milk Producers' Cooperative Union at Samastipur, Tirhut at Muzaffarpur, Koshi at Saharsa and a milk-union representation associated with Bhagalpur, alongside other Bihar unions. This geography matters because milk procurement must be organised around routes and chilling time rather than historical-region boundaries alone. Samastipur and Muzaffarpur connect dense northern milk sheds to major urban markets; the Kosi union extends collection into a flood-prone zone where livestock can be a critical portable asset; Bhagalpur links the Anga economy to the same statewide brand. Regional unions therefore translate local production into a network economy while retaining geographically specific procurement systems.

83.23 Dairy cooperatives can strengthen women's income role even when formal membership remains uneven

Milking, fodder cutting, stall feeding, dung handling, calf care and much routine animal work are frequently carried out within the household, often by women. When milk is sold every morning or evening, dairying can create a more regular cash flow than seasonal crops. Whether this strengthens women's control

over income depends on whose name appears in the society, bank account or payment record. Women's dairy cooperative societies and self-help-group linkages can make the relationship more explicit, but household norms remain decisive. The social history of dairying is therefore not exhausted by litres procured. It concerns the conversion of unpaid care labour into marketed output, the allocation of payments, and the possibility that collective organisation can give producers—especially women producers—greater visibility in rural economic institutions.

83.24 Animal productivity depends on a service system beyond the milk collection point

A cooperative can purchase milk, but it cannot by itself keep an animal healthy or productive. COMFED identifies cattle feed, artificial insemination, vaccination, deworming and improved fodder seed as core technical inputs to its producer support system. These services reduce the gap between simply owning livestock and operating a viable dairy enterprise. Disease, infertility, poor nutrition and fodder scarcity can erase the advantage of a favourable milk price. The economic history of dairy development must therefore include veterinary and breeding infrastructure, feed markets and extension. In flood years, fodder access becomes particularly difficult in northern Bihar; in dry months, green fodder shortages raise purchased-feed costs. Milk procurement and animal-resource policy are consequently two sides of the same system.

83.25 Bihar's milk production rose strongly during the same decade as fisheries

The Union government reported Bihar milk production increasing from 7.77 million tonnes in 2014–15 to 12.85 million tonnes in 2023–24. Bihar's Dairy, Fisheries and Animal Resources Department reports a similar present level and has set a target of 15.99 million tonnes by 2028, alongside an expansion of processing capacity. The production rise reflects a broad livestock economy, not COMFED alone; substantial quantities are still consumed at home or sold through private and informal channels. Nevertheless, organised procurement becomes more important as urban demand, food safety requirements and product diversification grow. The contrast with fish is useful: both sectors expanded rapidly, but milk requires collection every day throughout the year, making route density and chilling infrastructure particularly central to commercialisation.

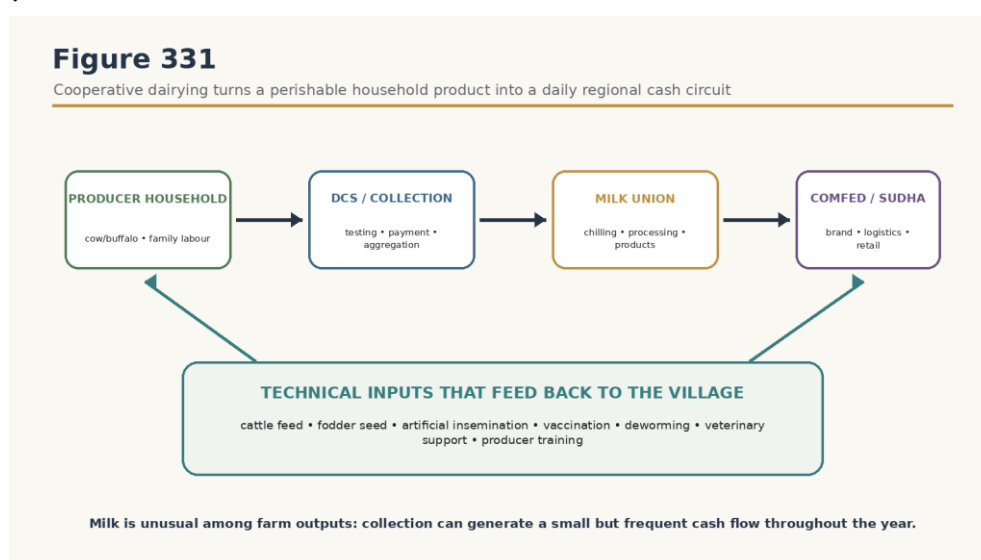


Figure 331 — Cooperative dairying turns a perishable household product into a daily regional cash circuit

83.26 Value-added dairy products reduce perishability but require scale, quality control and cold chain

Pasteurised liquid milk is only one outlet for a dairy network. COMFED markets curd, ghee, lassi, buttermilk, butter, paneer, sweets, ice cream and long-shelf-life products, allowing the federation to balance seasonal milk flows and reach different consumer segments. Processing can extend shelf life and increase value per litre, but it also demands plant investment, food-safety systems, packaging and reliable refrigeration. The state has continued to invest in dairy processing through national and state programmes, including projects under the National Programme for Dairy Development and infrastructure funds. The producer benefits when processing expands stable procurement rather than merely downstream margins. As in makhana and fish, value addition is economically inclusive only when the upstream supplier remains connected to the gain.

83.27 Shahi Litchi and Bhagalpuri Zardalu show that specialised regional economies also grow on trees

Wetland and livestock systems are not the only place-specific economies in the three regions. The GI Registry records Shahi Litchi of Bihar, associated with the Muzaffarpur belt, and Bhagalpuri Zardalu, associated with Bhagalpur, as registered agricultural GIs; both registrations were renewed in 2026 and are currently valid to 2036. These orchard products rely on terroir, cultivar identity and extremely time-sensitive harvesting. Litchi's short shelf life makes pre-cooling, packaging and rapid transport decisive, while mango marketing depends on grading, maturity and buyer networks. Their GIs perform a role similar to Mithila Makhana's: they convert reputation into a collective legal identity. Yet the same warning applies—GI status cannot substitute for post-harvest infrastructure, grower organisation or access to premium markets.

83.28 Katarni rice, water chestnut and high-value horticulture widen the geography of specialisation

Anga's Katarni rice, registered as a GI, demonstrates that even a staple grain can become a specialised regional product when aroma, variety and locality create a differentiated market. In Mithila and adjoining wetland districts, water chestnut can be integrated with makhana and fish; around towns and transport corridors, vegetables, fruit and other perishables support intensive smallholder production. Such activities have different ecologies but share a common commercial problem: they earn a premium only when identity or freshness survives the journey to market. Storage, aggregation, grading, packaging and transport therefore determine whether place-specific quality is monetised. Diversification succeeds not by multiplying crops mechanically but by matching biological advantage with an appropriate post-harvest system.

83.29 Specialisation can raise income while also concentrating ecological and market risk

A high-value crop or animal enterprise can outperform cereals per unit of land, yet specialisation creates new vulnerabilities. Makhana depends on water depth, processing and price; fish can suffer mortality, escape or feed-price shocks; dairy households face disease, fodder costs and continuous labour; litchi and mango are exposed to weather during flowering and harvest and to rapid post-harvest loss. High returns may therefore coexist with high variance. Household resilience often comes from combining enterprises rather than choosing one winner. Makhana with fish, dairy with fodder and crops, orchard income with annual farming, or a mix of local and migrant earnings can spread risk. The regional lesson is diversification within

specialisation: specialised value chains are strongest when households are not forced to stake their entire livelihood on a single biological cycle.

83.30 The durable advantage of the region lies in linking ecology, knowledge and producer institutions

Mithila, Vajji and Anga possess no single specialised economy that can substitute for broad development. Their advantage is a portfolio of ecological and cultural capabilities: makhana expertise in wetland landscapes, inland fish production, dense dairy households, litchi in the Vajji–Muzaffarpur zone, distinctive mango and rice in Anga, and a growing ability to use GIs, cooperatives, research institutions and export systems. The historical movement since independence has been from locally bounded skill toward increasingly formal value chains. The unresolved task is distributive. Research, branding and infrastructure must reduce drudgery, ecological risk and market dependence at the producer end, not simply raise downstream turnover. When local knowledge is connected to reliable institutions, specialised regional economies can become one of the strongest foundations of smallholder resilience and rural non-farm enterprise in the three regions.

Chapter 84 — Education after Independence

Education after independence changed the social geography of Mithila, Vajji and Anga more deeply than the simple multiplication of schools and colleges suggests. In 1947 the region inherited a sharply stratified system: old district schools, a limited college network, Sanskrit and traditional centres of learning, missionary or denominational institutions in some towns, and a vast rural population for whom distance, poverty, gender norms, caste hierarchy and the need for household labour could make sustained schooling difficult. The post-colonial state therefore faced two tasks at once: to extend formal institutions across a densely settled countryside and to turn nominal access into durable participation.

The history is not a straight line from illiteracy to schooling. Every stage of expansion exposed a new bottleneck. More primary schools increased entry, but weak learning could block later progress. Secondary expansion made distance and adolescent mobility more important. College growth reduced the need to leave the region for a basic degree, yet specialised study and employment continued to pull students toward Patna, Delhi, Kolkata, Kathmandu and other centres. By the 2020s Bihar possessed a mass school system and one of India's largest higher-education enrolments, while questions of teacher deployment, learning quality, college density, examination reliability and the value of credentials remained central. Across the Nepal border, Janakpurdham and other Madhesh centres participated in a parallel expansion after Nepal's political opening of the 1950s, making education another institution through which the cultural region was connected but administratively divided.

84.1 Education became the main institutional route from inherited status toward public opportunity

Land reform, electoral democracy, reservation, migration and the growth of salaried employment all increased the value of schooling. A certificate could not erase social hierarchy, but it could open entry to government service, teaching, banking, railways, technical work and later the private service economy. Families therefore began to treat education as an investment whose return might arrive outside the village and even outside the region. This altered household budgets, marriage expectations, migration decisions and the prestige attached to occupations. The crucial historical shift was not that learning suddenly became valued—Mithila and Anga had long traditions of scholarship—but that mass credentials became increasingly necessary for access to modern institutions.

84.2 The early post-independence system remained overwhelmingly unequal in geography and social reach

Older colleges and secondary schools were concentrated in towns such as Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga and Bhagalpur, while many villages depended on primary schools with limited buildings, teachers and progression routes. Rural children faced direct costs for books and clothing as well as the opportunity cost of labour. Girls confronted additional constraints of safety, domestic work and early marriage; poorer and historically excluded communities often entered formal schooling later and with less family experience of navigating examinations or bureaucratic procedures. Expansion therefore had to overcome a geography of distance and a social geography of unequal educational capital.

84.3 Constitutional democracy changed the language of education from privilege toward public obligation

The Constitution placed education within a framework of equality, protective discrimination and state responsibility, even though universal elementary schooling took decades to approach. Successive national policies, state plans and centrally sponsored schemes enlarged the administrative machinery of schooling. The long transition culminated in the Right of Children to Free and Compulsory Education Act, 2009, which transformed elementary education into a statutory entitlement for children aged six to fourteen. In historical terms, this mattered because the failure to provide a nearby functioning school could increasingly be framed as a failure of public obligation rather than merely a household misfortune.

84.4 School expansion moved the educational frontier from district towns into ordinary settlements

Primary and middle schools spread widely through the countryside during the second half of the twentieth century, followed more unevenly by secondary and higher-secondary institutions. Expansion was especially consequential in flood-prone and poorly connected tracts, where a few kilometres could represent a major seasonal barrier. New schools shortened daily travel and created local teaching employment, but they also exposed problems of thin staffing, multi-grade classrooms, building maintenance and the difficulty of providing laboratories, libraries and subject teachers at higher levels. Access and institutional capacity therefore grew together but not always at the same pace.

Post-independence education: selected institutional milestones

Mithila, Vajji/Tirhut, Anga and cross-border Mithila in Nepal

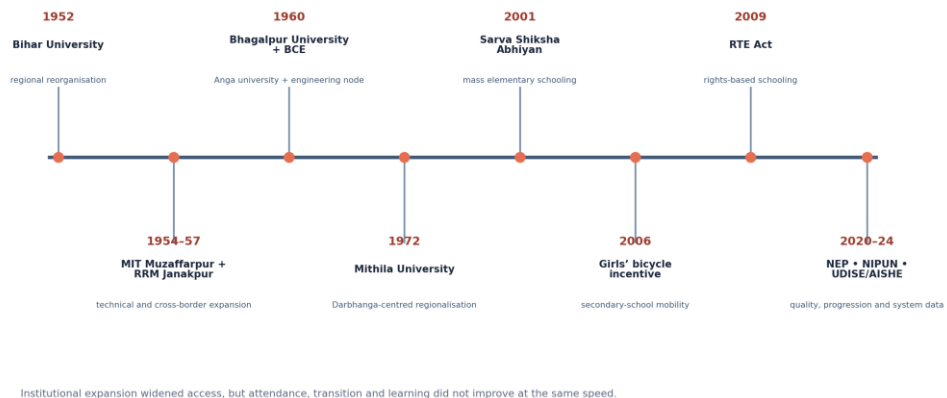


Figure 332 — Post-independence education: institutional milestones from regional university building to mass school systems

84.5 Literacy rose substantially, but boundaries and demographic change make simple long-run comparisons hazardous

Census evidence shows clear improvement over the post-independence decades, yet the old undivided Bihar series and the post-2000 Bihar series are not directly identical territorial units. The 1981 Census Atlas recorded literacy in undivided Bihar rising from 23.35 per cent in 1971 to 30.25 per cent in 1981, while also showing large district differences. By 2011 the present state had advanced markedly, but regional gaps by sex, rural residence and district remained visible. The historical point is less a single percentage than the persistence of unequal rates of conversion from school availability into actual literacy.

84.6 Female education became one of the clearest measures of post-independence social change

For many households the question was not simply whether a daughter should learn to read, but how long she could remain in school, whether she could travel safely after puberty, and whether secondary education would be recognised as socially and economically valuable. The expansion of girls' schools, co-education, scholarships, uniforms, hostels and later direct incentives gradually changed these calculations. Female education also had intergenerational effects: mothers with schooling were better placed to navigate health services, school bureaucracy and children's homework. Yet participation could still fall at transitions where distance, examination failure or marriage pressures intensified.

84.7 Bihar's bicycle programme attacked a concrete secondary-school barrier: mobility

The Mukhyamantri Balika Cycle Yojana, introduced in the mid-2000s, became emblematic because it targeted a mundane but decisive constraint. A secondary school could exist and still be effectively inaccessible if a girl had to walk several kilometres through unsafe or socially restrictive space. Cash support for a bicycle enlarged the feasible daily radius of schooling and publicly normalised the sight of adolescent girls travelling to class. Later versions and related incentives broadened the policy environment. The scheme's historical importance lies in recognising that educational participation depends on transport, autonomy and gendered use of public space as much as on classroom supply.

84.8 School meals, uniforms, textbooks and scholarships converted welfare policy into attendance infrastructure

Mid-day meals and related entitlements lowered the effective cost of schooling and made the school a site of nutrition as well as instruction. Uniform and textbook support reduced visible expenditure at entry, while scholarships and conditional incentives tried to sustain attendance. These programmes were especially important for households facing seasonal insecurity or many school-age children. At the same time, the quality of implementation depended on kitchens, procurement, local monitoring and timely transfers. The school thus became a dense welfare institution whose educational function could not be separated from food, clothing, sanitation and social protection.

84.9 First-generation learners transformed the classroom but also revealed the limits of inherited pedagogy

Mass schooling brought children into classrooms whose parents might have little experience of formal education. Such students could not rely on family familiarity with homework routines, examination language, application forms or private tutoring. A system designed around the tacit support of educated households could therefore reproduce inequality even after enrolment became widespread. Remedial teaching, community engagement and clear foundational instruction became crucial. The social achievement of first-generation entry should not be confused with equal learning conditions; inclusion changed who sat in the classroom faster than it changed all the assumptions under which the classroom operated.

84.10 Language policy remained a practical question of comprehension as well as a political question of identity

Children in the region may grow up speaking Maithili, Angika, Bajjika, Urdu, Hindi or overlapping local registers, while the formal language of textbooks and examinations has often been standard Hindi, with English becoming increasingly important at later stages. In Nepal-side Mithila, Nepali has held the central state role while Maithili remains a major language of home, literature and regional identity. Early education is strongest when children can connect school language to the language they already understand, but administrative standardisation, textbook supply and teacher preparation make multilingual practice difficult. The issue is therefore not resolved by symbolic recognition alone.

84.11 Teacher availability is an aggregate statistic; teacher deployment determines the classroom reality

A state can increase its total number of teachers while individual schools remain understaffed in particular subjects or grades. Rural secondary schools need mathematics, science and language teachers in combinations that cannot be captured by a single statewide pupil-teacher ratio. Appointment cycles, transfers, training and local vacancies shape everyday educational quality. The growth of contract and locally recruited teachers in Bihar during the mass-expansion era increased staffing capacity but also produced long debates over qualifications, pay parity, professional development and accountability. Teacher policy became one of the central political economies of public education.

84.12 Learning quality emerged as a separate policy problem once enrolment became normal

The older administrative measure of success—opening a school and registering pupils—became insufficient when assessments showed that children could advance through grades without secure reading or arithmetic. This distinction between schooling and learning changed the agenda. Foundational skills became a prerequisite for every later stage because a child who cannot read fluently by the middle primary years must then learn new subjects through a medium that remains difficult. The contemporary focus on foundational literacy and numeracy is therefore not a departure from access policy but the next stage of the same historical project.

84.13 Sarva Shiksha Abhiyan and the RTE era completed the transition toward a mass elementary system

From 2001 onward Sarva Shiksha Abhiyan accelerated school infrastructure, teacher recruitment, enrolment drives and planning based on district-level data. The RTE framework later codified norms for access and school functioning. In Bihar, where the school-age population was enormous and many settlements were poor, the scale of this administrative exercise was itself historically significant. By the 2020s the state's challenge was no longer the absence of a mass system; it was the governance of a system containing tens of millions of pupils and hundreds of thousands of teachers.

84.14 Secondary education became the decisive transition because costs and academic specialisation rise together

Primary schooling can often be provided close to home with one teacher handling several subjects, but secondary schooling requires laboratories, subject specialists, larger peer groups and more formal

examinations. Distance also tends to increase because every village cannot sustain a full secondary institution. Adolescence adds gendered safety concerns and pressure to work or marry. The transition from class VIII to IX and from X to XI therefore became a major filtering point. Policies that improve elementary enrolment without expanding reliable secondary capacity can merely move exclusion upward in the educational ladder.

84.15 Private schooling grew around reliability, English exposure and examination advantage

The expansion of private schools in towns and villages reflected both aspiration and dissatisfaction with public provision. Low-fee schools competed on attendance, discipline and English-medium branding, while more expensive institutions marketed facilities and examination outcomes. The result was not a simple public-private divide: many households combined government entitlements with private tuition, changed schools over a child's career, or paid for coaching while remaining enrolled in public institutions. Private growth widened choice for some families but also converted household income into differential access to smaller classes, English practice and test preparation.

The education ladder: each expansion creates the next bottleneck

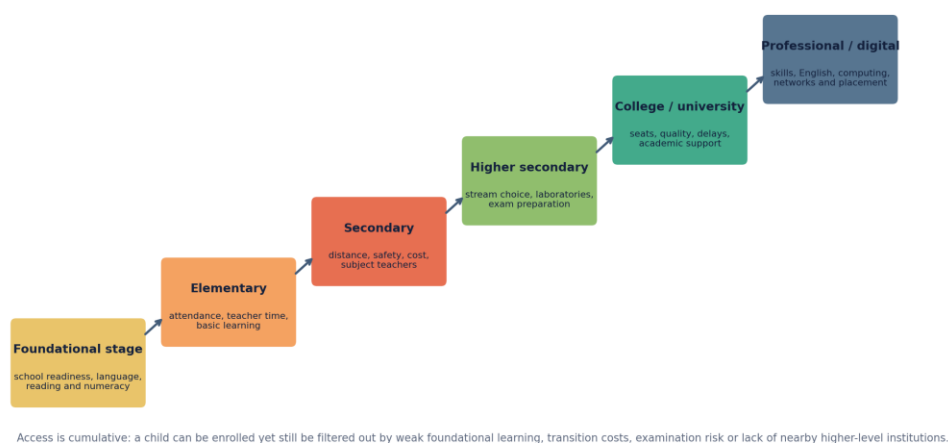


Figure 333 — The education ladder: expansion at one stage reveals the next barrier to progression

84.16 Higher education was regionalised through repeated reorganisation of Bihar's university geography

The post-independence decades deliberately multiplied university centres outside Patna. The University of Bihar separated from Patna University in 1952 and later developed its Muzaffarpur base; the 1960 reorganisation created Bihar University at Muzaffarpur and Bhagalpur University for the eastern region. A further regional demand produced Mithila University at Darbhanga in 1972 from colleges previously attached to Bihar and Bhagalpur universities. These changes reduced administrative distance and strengthened regional academic identities, although they also created large affiliating systems whose examination and college-supervision burdens could become difficult to manage.

84.17 Lalit Narayan Mithila University made Darbhanga a modern university centre for the wider Mithila plain

Mithila University was established in 1972 after committees considered the socio-economic case for a separate university at Darbhanga. It drew colleges from Darbhanga and Kosi divisions and later became Lalit Narayan Mithila University. The university's location in the former Darbhanga Raj complex gave modern higher education a striking spatial continuity with older elite institutions while changing its social purpose. Constituent and affiliated colleges carried undergraduate education into district towns, and postgraduate departments created a regional academic labour market. Subsequent university bifurcations show how rapidly enrolment and territorial responsibility expanded.

84.18 Darbhanga's Sanskrit university preserved a specialised learned tradition within a modern statutory form

Kameshwar Singh Darbhanga Sanskrit University represents a distinctive post-independence institutional choice: rather than abandoning Sanskrit learning as pre-modern, the state incorporated it into a university structure with degrees, departments, affiliated institutions and public administration. Its existence reflects Mithila's long scholarly reputation while also raising the modern problem of how classical learning relates to employment, contemporary research and vernacular intellectual life. The institution belongs to the history of education precisely because it shows that modernisation did not require a single disciplinary or linguistic model.

84.19 Bhagalpur University consolidated Anga as an independent higher-education region

Established in 1960 and later renamed Tilka Manjhi Bhagalpur University, the university gave Anga a major affiliating and postgraduate centre. Bhagalpur's role as a commercial, silk and administrative city provided a different setting from Darbhanga or Muzaffarpur, and the university served colleges spread across the eastern districts before later territorial reorganisations. Its history demonstrates a recurring pattern: regional universities were expected simultaneously to teach, conduct research, regulate colleges, hold examinations and absorb rapid enrolment growth. These functions expanded faster than administrative capacity in many periods.

84.20 Technical education created a parallel map of mobility beside the general universities

Muzaffarpur Institute of Technology began in 1954 as a civil engineering college and later added mechanical, electrical and other disciplines. Bhagalpur College of Engineering followed in 1960, while Darbhanga College of Engineering was re-established in its present form in 2008. These institutions mattered not only for engineering manpower but for the social imagination of technical education as a route to national labour markets. Entrance examinations also made them part of an increasingly competitive system in which students compared local institutions with engineering colleges elsewhere and invested heavily in preparation.

84.21 The twenty-first century added specialised national and sectoral institutions rather than relying only on the old affiliating model

The regional map broadened through institutions with narrower mandates and different governance forms. Mahatma Gandhi Central University at Motihari became functional in 2016, and IIIT Bhagalpur began its first academic session in 2017 before moving into a permanent campus. Sabour's agricultural university, technical colleges, medical and pharmacy institutions, and specialised national institutes at Hajipur and elsewhere diversified post-school options. This shift matters because a modern education system is no longer organised around a single arts-science college ladder; it contains professional, technological, agricultural, health and research pathways with distinct entrance and accreditation systems.

Institution or indicator	Date / period	Recorded fact	Historical significance
Bihar University / BRABU, Muzaffarpur	1952; Muzaffarpur base from 1960	Regional university centre for north Bihar	Reduced dependence on Patna; later bifurcations followed enrolment growth
MIT Muzaffarpur	1954	Early post-independence government engineering institute	Linked technical education to industrial-development policy
RRM Campus, Janakpurdham	1957	Tribhuvan University constituent campus; humanities, science, management and education	Major Nepal-side Mithila higher-education anchor
T.M. Bhagalpur University + BCE	1960	University and government engineering institute in Bhagalpur	Consolidated Anga as higher-education and technical node
Lalit Narayan Mithila University	1972	Separate university headquartered at Darbhanga	Regionalisation of colleges across the Mithila plain
Bihar school system	2024–25	94,339 schools; 21.13 million enrolment; 707,516 teachers	Mass access achieved at enormous administrative scale
Bihar higher education	2023–24	27.6 lakh enrolment; female enrolment slightly above male	Mass higher education, but thin college density and high institutional load

Table 84.1 — Selected institutional anchors and contemporary scale indicators in the post-independence education system

84.22 Janakpurdham became a major Nepal-side education centre within the wider Mithila cultural region

Ramswarup Ramsagar Multiple Campus was established at Janakpurdham in 1957 and later became a constituent campus of Tribhuvan University. Its original objective was to produce trained manpower in humanities, management, science and education for Nepal's Terai, and by the 2020s it offered a broad range of bachelor's and master's programmes, including Maithili. The campus demonstrates that post-1950 educational expansion in Mithila cannot be narrated solely through Bihar. Political borders divided systems of funding, curriculum and certification, while family, language and cultural networks continued to cross the border.

84.23 Maithili's place in higher learning remained stronger than its place as a universal school medium

Maithili developed university departments, research, literary study and degree-level teaching on both sides of the border, but mass schooling generally operated through the official languages and administrative curricula of the respective states. This produced a layered linguistic life: a child could speak Maithili at home, study largely through Hindi in Bihar or Nepali in Nepal, encounter English as a gatekeeping language in higher education, and return to Maithili for literature or cultural expression. Educational history therefore has to distinguish recognition, subject teaching and actual medium of instruction rather than treating them as the same phenomenon.

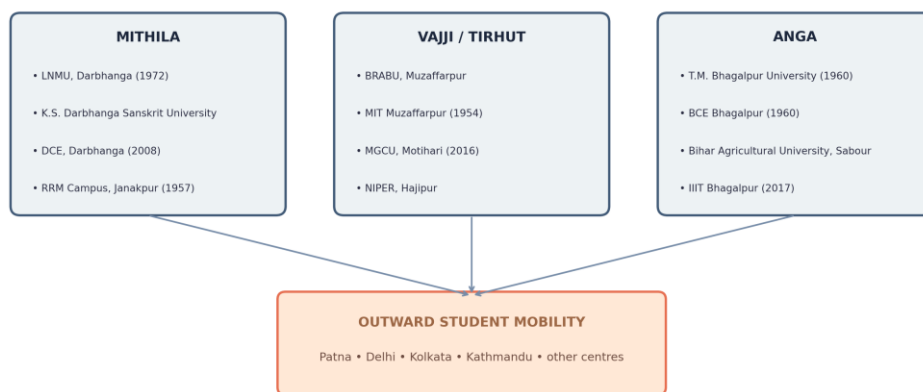
84.24 Higher-education massification produced a striking gender reversal in enrolment without erasing inequality

AISHE 2023–24 estimates Bihar's total higher-education enrolment at about 27.6 lakh, placing it among the largest state systems in India. Female enrolment, about 14.0 lakh, was slightly above male enrolment at about 13.6 lakh. This is historically remarkable in a state where female literacy and secondary participation had long lagged. Yet aggregate parity does not tell us whether women and men enter the same disciplines, institutions or labour-market pathways, nor whether rural women can attend distant campuses. The statistic marks a major transition while leaving important questions of quality, field of study and employment open.

84.25 Bihar's low college density reveals why mass enrolment can coexist with crowded institutions and outward migration

AISHE 2023–24 reports 1,261 colleges in Bihar, equivalent to only about eight colleges per lakh population aged eighteen to twenty-three, compared with an all-India figure of thirty-two. Responding Bihar colleges averaged about 1,884 students, far above the national average of 670. These numbers help explain a persistent paradox. Higher education is no longer socially exceptional, yet the institutional network remains thin relative to the size of the youth population. Large enrolments are concentrated into fewer colleges, and students seeking specialised or highly selective options continue to look beyond the region.

Regional higher-education geography after independence



Regional institutions reduced distance to ordinary degree study, but specialised higher education continued to generate outward mobility.

Figure 334 — Regional higher-education geography: local centres reduced distance but did not end outward student mobility

84.26 The 2000 Bihar–Jharkhand bifurcation changed the state’s institutional map and encouraged a new round of rebuilding

When Jharkhand became a separate state in 2000, Bihar lost many institutions located in the southern industrial and mineral belt as well as a large share of the old state’s technical infrastructure. The effect on education was not simply numerical; it sharpened the political demand for new engineering, management, medical and research institutions within the truncated state. The subsequent creation or expansion of specialised institutions can be understood partly as a response to this altered geography. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the question became whether regional towns could secure high-quality institutions rather than sending ambitious students to Patna or outside Bihar.

84.27 Digital education widened access to material while exposing the household infrastructure behind learning

Internet connectivity, smartphones, online forms, digital libraries and platforms such as DIKSHA altered the everyday mechanics of education. The COVID-19 school closures made the digital divide especially visible: a lesson delivered online still required a device, electricity, data, quiet space and an adult or older sibling able to help a young child. Digitalisation also transformed university administration through online admissions, examinations, degree services and academic repositories. The long-term effect is therefore double. Information can travel farther and more cheaply, but household inequalities in devices, bandwidth and digital confidence can reproduce older educational differences in a new form.

84.28 NEP 2020 and NIPUN Bharat shifted the centre of reform toward foundational learning, flexibility and system redesign

The National Education Policy 2020 reorganised the conceptual structure of schooling around a 5+3+3+4 design, emphasised early childhood education, multilingual learning, vocational exposure and more flexible higher education. NIPUN Bharat, launched in 2021, made foundational literacy and numeracy a national mission. For Bihar’s huge elementary system, this focus is historically consequential because it treats reading and arithmetic in the first years as infrastructure for the entire education ladder. The challenge is implementation at scale: teacher support, appropriate language materials, continuous assessment and classroom time matter more than policy vocabulary alone.

84.29 By 2024–25 Bihar had a school system of immense scale, making quality and distribution the central governance questions

UDISE+ 2024–25 records 94,339 schools in Bihar with about 21.13 million enrolments and 707,516 teachers. The overall pupil-teacher ratio was about thirty; stage-specific ratios reported to Parliament were twenty-six at primary, nineteen at upper primary, twenty-six at secondary and twenty-seven at higher secondary. The same dataset recorded 1,865 single-teacher schools. These figures show both achievement and constraint. A mass network exists, teacher numbers have grown, and the number of single-teacher schools has fallen from the previous year, yet staffing has to be judged school by school and subject by subject rather than by statewide averages alone.

Bihar education in the mid-2020s: scale is no longer the only question

The historical problem has shifted from “is there a school?” toward transition, teacher deployment, learning, college density, institutional quality and the conversion of credentials into opportunity.

AISHE 2023-24 reports 1,261 colleges in Bihar and an average enrolment of 1,884 per responding college, indicating a system that is comparatively thin in college density and heavy in institutional load.

Figure 335 — Bihar education in the mid-2020s: a large system whose next frontier is progression, learning and institutional quality

84.30 Education became the region’s most powerful engine of mobility, but credentials alone cannot substitute for institutional quality

Across eight decades, schooling moved from a limited and socially narrow network toward a mass expectation. Girls on bicycles, first-generation college students, engineering aspirants, university teachers, migrant graduates and digitally connected schoolchildren all belong to the same historical transformation. Education loosened the relationship between birthplace and occupation, yet it also intensified competition for examinations and salaried work. The enduring issue for Mithila, Vajji and Anga is therefore not whether education matters; families have answered that decisively. It is whether schools and colleges can convert years of attendance into secure knowledge, intellectual confidence, useful skills and research capacity without requiring every ambitious student to leave the region. The post-independence achievement is mass aspiration. The unfinished task is to match that aspiration with institutions of consistently high quality on both sides of the India–Nepal border.

Chapter 85 — Health and Public-Health Transformation

Health after independence changed the social history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga through a slow but profound transfer of risk from the household toward public institutions. In the middle of the twentieth century, a fever, obstructed labour, snakebite, kala-azar infection or childhood diarrhoea could still become a family catastrophe because diagnosis, transport, blood, trained personnel and medicines were distant or unaffordable. By the mid-2020s, the region possessed a layered network of sub-centres, primary and community facilities, ambulances, medical colleges, vaccination systems, disease-surveillance programmes and publicly financed health schemes. The transformation was real, but it was never uniform. Distance, flood, caste, gender, household income, staffing and the difference between a building and a functioning service continued to shape who received care in time.

The history is therefore not simply one of more hospitals. It is the history of public-health capacity: surveillance, vaccination, maternal and child health, nutrition, vector control, clean water, health workers, emergency referral, medical education, insurance and the growing management of chronic disease. It also includes repeated moments when the system's limits became visible—endemic kala-azar, the 2019 acute encephalitis crisis around Muzaffarpur, recurrent floods, COVID-19, and continuing shortages in specialist care. The region's health transition must be read as an unfinished institutional achievement in which mortality fell substantially while preventable illness, malnutrition, anaemia and uneven quality remained major social facts.

85.1 Health became a public institution rather than only a household responsibility

Independence expanded the political meaning of health. Illness had long been managed through households, local practitioners, charitable facilities, vaidyas, hakims, midwives and a thin colonial medical service. The post-1947 state increasingly accepted responsibility for vaccination, disease control, maternity care, rural dispensaries, hospitals and medical education. This did not displace older therapeutic worlds; families continued to combine home treatment, pharmacy purchase, private doctors and public hospitals. What changed was the expectation that government should prevent epidemics, maintain a referral network and provide essential care irrespective of a patient's capacity to pay. That expectation became one of the most important measures by which rural citizens judged the developmental state.

85.2 The inherited health geography was sparse, urban-centred and difficult to reach

At independence the region contained important hospitals and medical institutions, but vast rural populations lived far from reliable clinical care. Roads were weak, monsoon rivers interrupted movement, telephones were rare and motor transport was limited. A facility located in Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur or Bhagalpur could be regionally important while remaining practically inaccessible to a labouring woman in a flood-prone village. The initial public-health problem was therefore geographical as much as medical. Expansion of dispensaries, primary health centres and sub-centres attempted to bring the state closer to the village, yet a nominal facility could still lack staff, medicines, electricity, laboratory support or transport. The distinction between infrastructure on paper and usable care would remain central for the next eight decades.

85.3 Darbhanga Medical College linked a pre-independence institutional legacy to the post-independence public system

Darbhangha Medical College, formally established as a medical college in 1946, became one of the most consequential tertiary institutions for north Bihar. Its hospital served not only Darbhanga city but a wide catchment extending across Mithila and adjoining districts. Postgraduate teaching, specialist departments and referral functions gave the region a medical centre outside Patna and trained generations of doctors who later staffed public and private institutions across Bihar and beyond. The college also demonstrates an important continuity: post-independence health expansion often built upon institutions created through earlier princely, municipal or philanthropic initiatives. The modern public system was new in scale and entitlement, but it did not begin from an institutional vacuum.

85.4 The primary-health-centre model tried to convert territorial administration into preventive care

Post-independence planning imagined a graded rural system in which the sub-centre would provide the most local contact, the primary health centre would supply basic medical care and public-health functions, and the community or referral hospital would manage more complex cases. This territorial logic was well suited to a densely settled agrarian region, but implementation was difficult. Population growth repeatedly outran facility norms; vacancies weakened continuity; and flood-prone settlements could remain seasonally isolated even when a facility existed within the prescribed radius. Yet the PHC network created a permanent administrative skeleton for vaccination, antenatal care, tuberculosis treatment, vector control, family planning and disease reporting. Later reforms worked largely by strengthening or repurposing this inherited network rather than replacing it.

Health transformation: institutions, outreach and public-health capacity

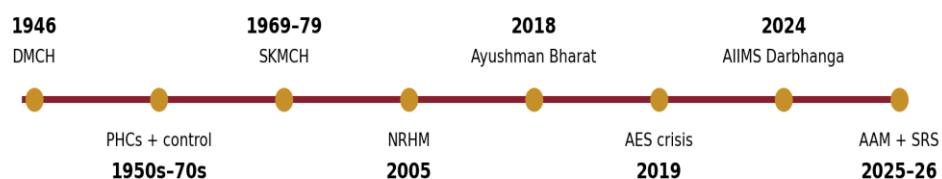


Figure 336 — Post-independence health transformation: institutional milestones from medical-college consolidation to comprehensive primary care

85.5 Disease-control programmes made surveillance and prevention visible forms of state activity

Malaria control, smallpox eradication, tuberculosis programmes, leprosy control and later vector-borne-disease initiatives brought a new repertoire of public health into villages: spraying, blood examination, case detection, drug distribution, reporting registers and campaign-based mobilisation. Their effectiveness varied, but they changed the relationship between disease and administration. A cluster of fever cases could become a reportable event rather than merely a private misfortune. This was especially important in riverine and

humid districts where vectors, stagnant water and seasonal migration shaped transmission. Over time, vertical disease programmes were increasingly connected to the broader National Health Mission and district surveillance machinery, creating a more integrated, if still uneven, system of epidemiological attention.

85.6 Vaccination transformed childhood survival through repeated contact rather than one dramatic intervention

Smallpox eradication and the later expansion of the Universal Immunisation Programme changed childhood risk by making vaccination an expected part of early life. Polio campaigns were especially visible because repeated booth rounds, house visits and social mobilisation reached settlements that routine services often missed. By NFHS-5, about 71 per cent of Bihar children aged twelve to twenty-three months were recorded as fully vaccinated against the basic antigens, and the overwhelming majority of vaccinations were obtained from public facilities. The historical importance of immunisation lies not only in disease prevention but in administrative reach: it required cold chains, beneficiary lists, frontline workers, transport, local persuasion and repeated household contact. These systems later supported other maternal and child-health interventions.

85.7 Kala-azar made north Bihar a laboratory of long-duration vector-borne-disease control

Visceral leishmaniasis, locally feared as kala-azar, was deeply associated with poverty, fragile housing and the ecology of the Gangetic plain. Bihar carried a disproportionate share of India's burden for decades, and many endemic districts lay within Mithila and Vajji. Control required more than clinical treatment: case search, rapid diagnosis, effective drugs, indoor residual spraying, post-kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis follow-up and block-level surveillance all mattered. The elimination programme's operational benchmark—reducing annual incidence below one case per ten thousand population at block level—shows how public health gradually moved from treating individual patients to monitoring geographically defined transmission. The sharp decline in cases by the 2020s is a major regional achievement, but sustained surveillance remains essential because elimination of a public-health problem is not the same as biological eradication.

85.8 Tuberculosis and leprosy reveal why long-course treatment depends on institutions that can retain patients

Tuberculosis and leprosy differ epidemiologically from acute outbreaks because treatment extends over months and interruption can cause relapse, disability or drug resistance. Their history therefore highlights the importance of follow-up. Public programmes progressively shifted from sanatorium or specialist-centred models toward district microscopy, standardised multidrug treatment, directly observed therapy, contact tracing and community-based distribution. Dense settlement, labour migration and poverty complicated retention in care, especially when patients moved between village, town and metropolitan work sites. Stigma also delayed diagnosis. The public-health achievement was not merely the availability of effective drugs but the creation of systems able to identify, record and repeatedly reach patients across time.

85.9 Water, sanitation and housing remained health interventions even when administered outside the health department

A large share of preventable disease in the region has always been produced beyond the clinic. Flood water, contaminated hand pumps, unsafe storage, open drains, overcrowding and inadequate sanitation increase exposure to diarrhoeal disease, enteric infections, skin disease and vector breeding. Programmes for

rural drinking water, toilets, drainage and housing thus belong within health history even when implemented by other departments. Their effects are cumulative and difficult to dramatise: a functioning hand pump, raised platform, household toilet or safe water source may prevent illness without generating a medical record. The social gradient is equally important, because households with less secure land and poorer housing are more exposed to environmental risk.

85.10 Maternal health moved childbirth from a largely domestic event toward institutional care

The most visible change in women's health was the movement of childbirth into health facilities. Antenatal registration, tetanus protection, iron and folic acid, risk screening, skilled attendance and emergency referral gradually became standard programme expectations. NFHS-5 recorded 76.2 per cent of Bihar births as institutional, with 56.9 per cent occurring in public facilities; 79 per cent of births were attended by skilled health personnel. These figures represent a profound shift from the early post-independence period, but they do not make delivery automatically safe. Caesarean capacity, anaesthesia, blood, newborn resuscitation and rapid referral remain decisive when routine labour becomes an emergency. Maternal survival therefore depends on the quality and connectedness of the entire referral chain, not only on institutional entry.

85.11 ASHA, Janani Suraksha Yojana and ambulance services changed the mechanics of reaching care

The National Rural Health Mission, launched in 2005, altered the everyday interface between households and the health system. Accredited Social Health Activists became local guides for pregnancy registration, immunisation, family planning, newborn follow-up and referral. Janani Suraksha Yojana used cash incentives to accelerate institutional delivery, while emergency transport reduced one of the oldest barriers in dispersed rural settlements: the absence of a vehicle at the moment of crisis. These reforms did not solve staff shortages or specialist gaps, but they converted health access from a passive model—where the patient had to find the system—toward a more active model in which workers identified beneficiaries, encouraged attendance and linked households to facilities.

85.12 Infant and maternal mortality fell dramatically, but the remaining deaths became harder tests of quality

Long-run mortality decline is one of the clearest measures of post-independence change. Bihar's infant mortality rate fell from 61 deaths per thousand live births in 2005 to about 23 in the 2024 SRS series. Maternal mortality also declined over the longer run: the state was estimated at 312 maternal deaths per lakh live births in 2004–06, compared with 96 in the 2022–24 SRS bulletin. Such improvements reflect fertility change, vaccination, institutional delivery, antibiotics, nutrition programmes, transport and broader social development. Yet lower mortality changes the nature of the task. The deaths that remain are increasingly concentrated among premature newborns, complicated pregnancies, severe infections and socially disadvantaged families—cases that require reliable quality, rapid referral and specialist capacity rather than only basic contact.

Referral pyramid: access depends on both local reach and upward referral capacity

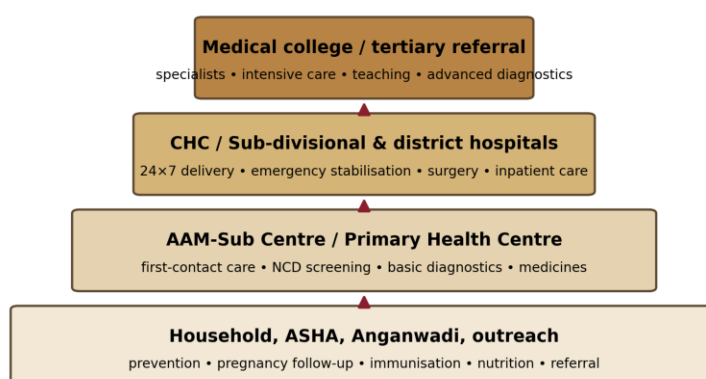


Figure 337 — The referral pyramid: local access succeeds only when each level can move patients safely to the next

85.13 Nutrition remained the largest bridge between household economy and clinical health

Child growth and women's anaemia show why medical expansion cannot by itself complete the health transition. NFHS-5 recorded 42.9 per cent of Bihar children under five as stunted, 22.9 per cent as wasted and 41 per cent as underweight. Anaemia affected about 69.4 per cent of children aged six to fifty-nine months and 63.5 per cent of women aged fifteen to forty-nine. These are not merely dietary statistics. They reflect maternal nutrition, infection, sanitation, birth spacing, women's workload, poverty, food diversity and the quality of infant feeding. Anganwadi services, school meals, iron supplementation and maternal programmes therefore form part of the health system's social infrastructure even when delivered through separate administrative channels.

85.14 Fertility decline transformed reproductive health, but family planning remained socially negotiated

Bihar moved from very high fertility toward smaller family norms more slowly than many Indian states. The transition emerged through rising female education, later marriage, urban exposure, migration, child survival and expanded contraceptive services rather than through a single policy. Family planning remained shaped by gender because women disproportionately bore the burden of permanent and temporary contraception. Public-health programmes increasingly emphasised spacing methods, counselling and informed choice, but local practice often continued to treat reproduction as a family decision embedded in kinship and son preference. The social history of fertility is therefore inseparable from women's autonomy, schooling and the perceived security of surviving children.

85.15 S.K. Medical College and Hospital made Muzaffarpur a major Vajji-region referral centre

Sri Krishna Medical College developed from the late 1960s and was taken over by the Bihar government in 1979. Its location at Muzaffarpur gave the wider Vajji and Tirhut belt a major teaching and referral hospital outside Patna. Like other medical colleges, its significance extends beyond formal bed numbers: it concentrates paediatrics, surgery, diagnostics, teaching and specialist expertise that ordinary PHCs cannot provide. The dependence of large rural populations on a few such centres also exposes a structural weakness.

When outbreaks or seasonal disease surges occur, referral hospitals can become crowded rapidly. The health geography of north Bihar has therefore long combined broad primary coverage with heavy tertiary concentration in a small number of cities.

85.16 The 2019 Muzaffarpur AES crisis exposed the interaction of disease, nutrition, poverty and referral capacity

The surge of acute encephalitis syndrome among children in and around Muzaffarpur in June 2019 became a national public-health crisis. Central and state teams were deployed, paediatric specialists were sent to strengthen clinical care, and a one-hundred-bed paediatric intensive-care unit was planned at SKMCH. Official reviews emphasised early recognition of hypoglycaemia, rapid transfer to a PHC and nutrition-related preventive measures. The episode mattered historically because it showed that a modern health system can still fail at the junction between household recognition, first contact, ambulance movement and intensive care. It also demonstrated the value of surveillance and rapid multidisciplinary response. AES became not simply a disease episode but a test of whether the referral system could act before a child reached critical condition.

85.17 Bhagalpur's medical institutions anchored tertiary care for Anga and the eastern districts

Bhagalpur developed a parallel tertiary-care role for Anga and adjacent eastern districts through its medical college and large teaching hospital. Patients from Bhagalpur, Banka and neighbouring areas often move through a ladder of private practitioners, district facilities and the medical-college hospital depending on severity and affordability. This urban concentration reflects the economics of specialist medicine: intensive care, blood banks, surgery, imaging and postgraduate departments require a scale that cannot be replicated in every block. The consequence is a persistent relationship between health and transport. A bridge, road or ambulance route can affect survival as directly as a new ward when the decisive treatment is concentrated in Bhagalpur city.

85.18 Medical education became part of health-system capacity rather than a separate academic sector

A medical college produces two public goods at once: it treats patients and trains the future workforce. Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur and Bhagalpur therefore became health-system anchors partly because teaching hospitals accumulate specialists, laboratories and clinical volume. Expansion of nursing, paramedical and technical education has been equally important, since modern hospitals depend on teams rather than doctors alone. Bihar's recurring workforce shortages demonstrate that buildings cannot substitute for trained people. Recruitment, postgraduate seats, rural posting, faculty retention and the migration of health professionals all influence whether new infrastructure translates into functioning services. Medical education thus belongs at the centre of regional social and economic history.

85.19 The National Health Mission strengthened the front line by combining programmes around districts

The National Rural Health Mission and its later National Health Mission framework changed governance as much as service delivery. District health plans, flexible financing, ASHA workers, facility upgrades, maternal and child-health initiatives, mobile support, free diagnostics and programme monitoring were brought into a more coherent architecture. This mattered in a state where vertical schemes had often

operated as separate administrative silos. The mission model did not eliminate fragmentation, but it gave district administrations tools to connect village outreach with facility services. Its deeper legacy is the normalisation of measurable service indicators: institutional deliveries, immunisation, antenatal care, disease notification and facility performance became routinely monitored quantities rather than occasional survey findings.

85.20 Ayushman Arogya Mandirs broadened the concept of primary care beyond mothers and infectious disease

The Health and Wellness Centre programme, now operating under the Ayushman Arogya Mandir name, sought to transform sub-centres and PHCs into sites of comprehensive primary care. The change is conceptually important. Earlier rural health programmes were often dominated by reproductive health, immunisation and communicable disease; the newer model adds hypertension and diabetes screening, common cancers, mental health, elderly care, palliative services, oral health and expanded essential medicines. By 2025 national review data showed extensive operationalisation in Bihar, though coverage figures cannot by themselves measure service depth. The historical shift is from episodic programme contact toward continuity of care across the life course.

85.21 Public and private medicine formed an interdependent mixed system rather than two separate worlds

Patients routinely combine public and private care. A family may obtain vaccination and antenatal registration from the public system, purchase medicines from a private pharmacy, consult a local private practitioner for fever and seek surgery at a government medical college when costs become prohibitive. Private nursing homes and diagnostic centres expanded rapidly in district towns, especially where households valued shorter waiting times or specialist availability. This mixed system increases choice but also produces financial risk and variable quality. The public sector remains indispensable as the provider of mass vaccination, epidemic control, free or subsidised inpatient care and the final referral option for households that cannot sustain private expenditure.

85.22 Financial protection became a new health-policy objective as medical technology became more expensive

The expansion of surgery, intensive care, imaging and pharmaceuticals improved the possibilities of treatment while increasing the financial consequences of severe illness. Publicly financed insurance and assurance schemes, including Ayushman Bharat–Pradhan Mantri Jan Arogya Yojana and Bihar’s complementary arrangements, attempted to reduce catastrophic hospital expenditure for eligible households. Their importance lies in recognising that access has two dimensions: a hospital may be geographically reachable yet financially inaccessible. Insurance, however, cannot replace primary care, public hospitals or regulation. If treatment capacity is absent locally, a card does not create an anaesthetist, blood bank or ICU bed. Financial protection works best when embedded in a functioning service network.

Table 85.1 — Selected indicators and institutional anchors in the post-independence health transformation

Indicator or institution	Date / period	Recorded fact	Historical significance
Darbhanga Medical College	1946 onward	Major north-Bihar teaching and referral institution	Anchored specialist care and medical education in Mithila

Indicator or institution	Date / period	Recorded fact	Historical significance
SKMCH, Muzaffarpur	1969–79 onward	Medical college and referral hospital; state takeover in 1979	Created a Vajji/Tirhut tertiary-care node
Bihar institutional births	NFHS-5, 2019–20	76.2%; 56.9% in public facilities	Shows the shift of childbirth from home toward facilities
Bihar full basic vaccination	NFHS-5, 2019–20	71.0% of children age 12–23 months	Demonstrates mass reach of routine public-health systems
Bihar infant mortality	SRS 2005 → 2024	61 → about 23 per 1,000 live births	Long-run child-survival gain
Bihar maternal mortality	SRS 2004–06 → 2022–24	312 → 96 per 100,000 live births	Major improvement, but emergency obstetric quality remains decisive

85.23 Non-communicable disease added a second health transition on top of unfinished infectious-disease control

By the twenty-first century hypertension, diabetes, heart disease, stroke, cancer and chronic respiratory illness had become increasingly visible alongside tuberculosis, vector-borne disease and maternal-child risks. NFHS-5 biomarker measurements showed that elevated blood pressure and high blood sugar were already substantial among Bihar adults. This epidemiological transition is additive rather than substitutive: a poor household can face anaemia and diabetes, or tuberculosis and hypertension, at the same time. Chronic disease requires repeated measurement, adherence to medication and years of follow-up, placing new demands on primary care. A system designed around vaccination days and acute episodes must therefore evolve toward continuity and records that follow the patient over time.

The epidemiological transition is additive, not substitutive



Mithila-Vajji-Anga carries old infectious and nutritional risks while adding chronic disease and ageing.



Figure 338 — The epidemiological transition is additive: infectious, nutritional and chronic burdens coexist

85.24 Mental health, disability and ageing expanded the meaning of health beyond survival

As mortality falls and life expectancy rises, health systems confront conditions that may not kill quickly but shape years of life. Depression, anxiety, substance dependence, dementia, disability after stroke, chronic pain and the long-term needs of older people require forms of care that are less visible than an emergency ward. Families in Mithila, Vajji and Anga have traditionally carried much of this burden privately, often with women providing unpaid care. District mental-health programmes, rehabilitation services and community-based screening remain thin relative to need. The post-independence health transition is therefore incomplete if judged only by mortality: it must also be measured by whether people can live with chronic illness without preventable disability, stigma or financial ruin.

85.25 Floods and climate variability repeatedly convert environmental geography into a public-health emergency

North Bihar's flood ecology creates predictable health shocks: contaminated water, interrupted roads, displaced households, snakebite, diarrhoeal disease, skin infections and disruption of routine medication. Relief camps must therefore function as temporary public-health systems, with safe water, sanitation, maternal services, vaccination continuity and disease surveillance. Climate variability can also alter vector habitats and the seasonal timing of disease. The region's health infrastructure must consequently be resilient rather than merely permanent. A well-equipped facility that becomes inaccessible during inundation is not fully functional from the patient's perspective. Boats, raised roads, mobile teams, pre-positioned medicines and interoperable referral plans are part of health capacity in a floodplain society.

85.26 Nepal-side Mithila shows the same tension between expanding access and uneven service quality

Across the border, Janakpurdham and the wider Madhesh Province form part of the same social and mobility field. Patients, health workers and families cross the India–Nepal border for consultation, medicine, diagnostics and specialist care. Nepal's 2022 Demographic and Health Survey showed significant gains in maternal and child health but also lower vaccination performance in Madhesh than the national average: about 68 per cent of children aged twelve to twenty-three months were fully vaccinated against the basic antigens, while 42 per cent met the full national schedule. These gaps reflect poverty, mobility, settlement density and local service conditions rather than cultural isolation. Cross-border health therefore belongs to the connected history of the region, especially for referral, outbreaks and reproductive care.

85.27 COVID-19 exposed both the fragility and the adaptive capacity of the regional health system

The pandemic disrupted outpatient care, transport, livelihoods, vaccination schedules and routine maternal services while creating sudden demand for testing, oxygen, isolation beds and intensive care. The return of migrant workers made the crisis especially visible in Bihar's villages and railway corridors. Institutions adapted through quarantine centres, laboratory expansion, oxygen infrastructure, teleconsultation and large-scale vaccination, but the crisis also revealed shortages of critical-care personnel and the dependence of families on informal networks for medicines and beds. COVID-19 belongs in the longer history of public health because it accelerated investment in laboratories, oxygen and surveillance while demonstrating that preparedness must be maintained between emergencies rather than improvised after transmission accelerates.

85.28 AIIMS Darbhanga represents a new attempt to redistribute advanced medicine within Bihar

The foundation stone for AIIMS Darbhanga was laid in November 2024 after years of debate over location and land. The approved project, costing more than Rs 1,260 crore, is designed to include a 750-bed hospital, medical and nursing education and multiple super-specialty departments. Its historical significance lies less in the announcement itself than in the geography it seeks to alter. North Bihar has long sent complex cases to Patna, Delhi, Varanasi or private metropolitan centres. A functioning AIIMS at Darbhanga could reduce that outward referral burden, support specialist training and create a new research hub. The decisive test, however, will be completion, staffing, integration with DMCH and the strength of feeder referral systems from district and block facilities.

85.29 By the mid-2020s Bihar combined major mortality gains with persistent deficits in nutrition, quality and specialist access

The outcome picture is mixed but historically unmistakable. Infant mortality in Bihar has fallen to roughly one-third of its mid-2000s level, and the 2022–24 SRS estimate places maternal mortality at 96 per lakh live births. NFHS-5 records mass institutional delivery and substantially expanded vaccination. At the same time, more than two-fifths of young children were stunted and anaemia affected nearly seven in ten children aged six to fifty-nine months. These contrasts explain why the next phase cannot be measured mainly by opening facilities. Quality of childbirth care, newborn intensive care, nutrition, reliable diagnostics, medicines, chronic-disease follow-up and equitable specialist referral now determine whether infrastructure produces health.

Mid-2020s health landscape: measurable gains, persistent structural gaps

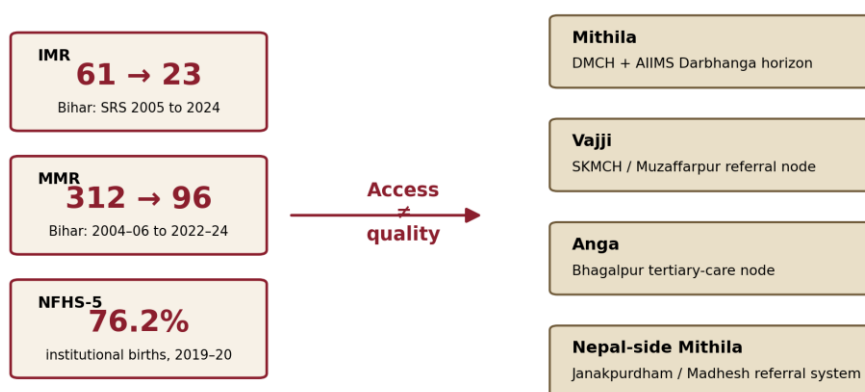


Figure 339 — Mid-2020s health landscape: major mortality gains alongside continuing quality, nutrition and referral gaps

85.30 Public health became one of the region's deepest post-independence transformations, but it remains a work in progress

Across eight decades, Mithila, Vajji and Anga moved from a thin, urban-centred medical geography toward a mass system capable of vaccination, institutional delivery, disease surveillance, ambulance referral and specialist teaching hospitals. The gains are visible in mortality decline and in the routine expectation that

pregnancy, immunisation and serious illness should connect a household to public institutions. Yet the unfinished agenda is equally visible in anaemia, malnutrition, workforce gaps, chronic disease, flood vulnerability and unequal access to advanced care. Health history therefore resists both triumphalism and pessimism. The system is far stronger than the one inherited at independence, but its next achievements depend less on the number of buildings than on whether every level functions reliably as part of a connected continuum of care.

Chapter 86 — Roads, Railways, Electricity and Communications

Roads, railways, electricity and communications altered the social geography of Mithila, Vajji and Anga after independence by changing what distance meant. The region had always been densely settled and commercially active, but rivers, seasonal flooding, weak all-weather roads, fragmented rail gauges, limited electric supply and slow communication made movement costly and uncertain. A village might be physically close to a town yet effectively distant during the monsoon; a district might lie on a railway map yet remain poorly linked across the Ganga or Kosi; an electrified town could coexist with villages where lighting, irrigation pumping or radio communication remained intermittent. Post-1947 infrastructure history is therefore a history of reducing effective distance rather than merely adding kilometres of road, track, wire and fibre.

The transformation occurred in overlapping waves. Major bridges created new north–south corridors; rural roads connected habitations to markets, schools and hospitals; gauge conversion and electrification reorganised rail mobility; household electrification turned electricity from an urban privilege into a mass utility; and telephony moved from scarce landlines to mobile and broadband networks. By the mid-2020s these systems had become interdependent. Roads carried maintenance crews and fibre; electricity powered mobile towers and data centres; phones coordinated buses, migration and emergency care; digital payments changed roadside commerce; and railway reservation became a networked service. Yet the old regional problem did not disappear. Flood damage, bridge congestion, weak maintenance, uneven feeder quality and the digital divide continued to determine whether formal connectivity became reliable everyday access.

86.1 Infrastructure changed the region by compressing effective distance

The most useful measure of infrastructure is not the number of projects but the reduction of uncertainty. Before dependable bridges and all-weather roads, households planned journeys around ferries, river stages, weather and daylight. Before widespread telephony, a delayed train, medical emergency or market-price change could not be communicated quickly. Before reliable electricity, a connection did not necessarily mean useful hours of supply. Post-independence development gradually converted these uncertainties into scheduled movement, powered production and near-instant information. The result was a reorganisation of regional hierarchy: towns with rail junctions, bridgeheads, substations and telecom concentration gained new centrality, while villages entered wider labour, commodity and educational circuits without ceasing to be rural.

86.2 Independence inherited a strong rail skeleton but a weak road-and-bridge web

The colonial railway had already tied Darbhanga, Samastipur, Muzaffarpur, Barauni, Kiul, Jamalpur and Bhagalpur into larger commercial circuits. But north Bihar retained extensive metre-gauge lines, road surfaces were often poor, and the great rivers separated corridors that looked close on a map. Passenger movement therefore depended heavily on rail, ferries and a few road axes. The post-independence state inherited not an infrastructural vacuum but an uneven system in which rail served trunk movement while the last mile remained difficult. Much of the later history consists of filling that gap: building cross-river links, converting gauge, strengthening roads and bringing electricity and communications to the settlement level.

86.3 Rivers were not empty spaces between regions; they were active barriers that structured markets

The Ganga, Kosi, Gandak and their tributaries created fertile plains and transport routes, but they also imposed crossing costs. Ferry points became commercial nodes; bridgeheads later inherited some of that importance. A river crossing could determine which wholesale market a farmer used, which hospital a patient reached, or whether a migrant travelled through Patna, Barauni, Katihar or another junction. Floods could cut approach roads even when a bridge itself remained intact. Infrastructure policy therefore had to address whole corridors rather than isolated structures. The recurring need for new approaches, bypasses and parallel bridges shows that a bridge's historical significance depends on the network on both sides.

86.4 Rajendra Setu in 1959 created the first permanent Ganga crossing within Bihar

When the rail-cum-road bridge at Hathidah–Mokama was opened on 1 May 1959, it became Bihar's first bridge across the Ganga linking the northern and southern parts of the state. For Mithila and the upper Ganga plain this was a major structural change. Barauni and Begusarai gained stronger access toward Mokama, Kiul and the south-Bihar trunk system, while rail and road movement no longer depended entirely on ferries or distant crossings. The bridge also demonstrates the longevity problem of infrastructure: a strategic asset can remain indispensable for decades, accumulate traffic beyond its original design environment, and eventually require parallel capacity. The six-lane Aunta–Simaria bridge inaugurated in 2025 beside the ageing Rajendra Setu represents that second-generation response.

Post-independence connectivity: bridges, grids and digital networks compress distance

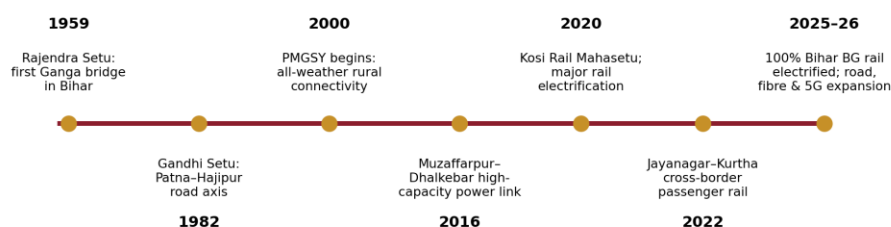


Figure 340 — Post-independence connectivity: major bridge, road, rail, power and digital milestones

86.5 Mahatma Gandhi Setu made Hajipur a gateway between Patna and the north

The opening of Mahatma Gandhi Setu in 1982 connected Patna directly with Hajipur by road and transformed the travel geography of Vajji and much of north Bihar. Muzaffarpur, Sitamarhi, Samastipur and other northern districts gained a dominant road approach to the capital. The bridge's later congestion and structural rehabilitation are equally important historically. A successful infrastructure project can generate so much traffic that its own success becomes a capacity problem. The long restoration of Gandhi Setu and plans for additional Ganga crossings illustrate a transition from the era of creating a first permanent link to the era of managing metropolitan-scale volumes and redundancy.

86.6 Anga's Ganga crossings reduced its dependence on long detours

For Anga, the Vikramshila Setu at Bhagalpur in the early 2000s and the Munger rail-cum-road corridor altered access to the north bank. The Munger road approach inaugurated in 2022 was officially expected to reduce travel time sharply toward Khagaria, Saharsa, Begusarai and Samastipur. These changes connected the silk, grain and service economies of Bhagalpur–Munger more directly with north-Bihar markets. They also shifted local traffic pressure toward bridge approaches and urban bypasses. The historical lesson is the same as at Hajipur: a large river bridge is not merely a crossing but a device that redistributes routes, land values, bus services, logistics and the location of roadside commerce.

86.7 Rural roads were the decisive last-mile infrastructure of the late twentieth and early twenty-first centuries

Large bridges attract attention, but the social impact of connectivity often depended on minor roads. A paved village road reduced the cost of taking milk to a collection point, reaching a secondary school, transporting a woman in labour, moving fish before spoilage or commuting to a nearby town. Bihar's own rural-works programmes expanded this network before 2000, but the Pradhan Mantri Gram Sadak Yojana, launched in December 2000, created a national framework for all-weather connectivity to eligible rural habitations. By the mid-2020s the policy focus had increasingly shifted from first connection to upgrading routes that link markets, educational centres, health facilities and other services.

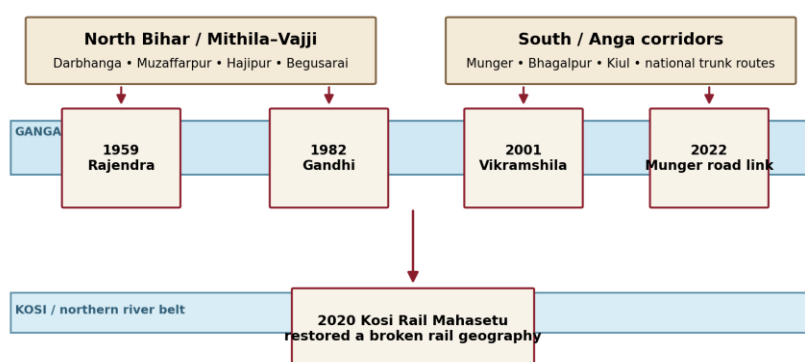
86.8 PMGSY changed the meaning of a connected village from seasonal access to all-weather mobility

PMGSY's institutional significance lay in standardisation, monitoring and the idea that an eligible habitation should receive a dependable all-weather road rather than an occasional fair-weather track. Nationally the programme connected more than 1.6 lakh habitations under its first phase; in Bihar it continued to add and upgrade hundreds of kilometres annually even after the main first-connectivity phase had largely matured. Ministry of Rural Development data for 2025–26 recorded 749 km completed in Bihar, with further balance works continuing into 2026–27. For flood-prone districts, however, durability depends on drainage, raised approaches, bridge design and maintenance as much as on initial surfacing.

86.9 Roads could also intensify ecological and settlement pressures

Connectivity is not an unqualified good in every spatial form. Raised roads can obstruct local drainage if culverts are inadequate; embankments can redirect water; ribbon development can narrow carriageways and increase accident risk; and road expansion can consume agricultural land. In the Kosi and Gandak plains, the engineering of water and the engineering of roads cannot be separated. A road that remains dry while adjoining settlements are waterlogged may shift rather than solve risk. Infrastructure history therefore includes the unintended environmental consequences of linear structures and the recurring public expenditure required to repair flood-damaged surfaces and approaches.

River barriers became network junctions when bridges linked road and rail systems



A bridge changes more than travel time: it reorganises markets, migration, emergency access and regional hierarchy.

Figure 341 — River crossings as network switches: bridges reorganised markets, migration and emergency access

86.10 The national-highway era shifted from two-lane improvement toward corridors and bypasses

From the 2000s onward, widening, four-laning, bypasses and access-controlled corridors increasingly shaped Bihar's road policy. The shift matters because through-traffic and local traffic impose different demands. A highway passing through a dense bazaar can stimulate commerce while also producing chronic congestion and accidents. Bypasses and greenfield corridors attempt to separate these functions. In June 2026 the Union government approved four-laning of the 143.529-km Khagaria–Purnea section of NH-31 and NH-231, including a Purnea bypass, explicitly to address geometric deficiencies and congestion. Such projects increasingly connect Anga and adjoining eastern Bihar to a faster freight and passenger grid.

86.11 The railway remained the principal long-distance mobility system for ordinary households

Despite road growth, rail retained exceptional importance because migration, pilgrimage, education and trade linked the region to Delhi, Kolkata, Mumbai, Punjab, Assam and other distant labour markets. Railway stations became places of departure, remittance and return. In a region with high out-migration, train frequency, reservation access and direct services carried social consequences far beyond transport statistics. The railway also moved bulk goods more efficiently than roads and provided mobility during periods when fuel prices or highway congestion made buses and trucks costly. The persistence of crowded trains is evidence not of infrastructural irrelevance but of rail's continuing centrality to the household economy.

86.12 Metre gauge shaped north-Bihar mobility long after independence

North Bihar's extensive metre-gauge inheritance produced a distinctive railway geography. Gauge breaks could require transfers and limited interoperability with the national broad-gauge system. Successive gauge-conversion projects gradually removed this constraint, but the process took decades and temporarily disrupted familiar local services. The conversion of the Jayanagar–Darbhanga–Narkatiaganj and Sakri–Nirmali–Saharsa–Forbesganj systems was especially significant for Mithila. Gauge conversion was therefore more than a technical standardisation: it reinserted previously peripheral routes into national rolling-stock, freight and long-distance passenger networks.

86.13 The Kosi Rail Mahasetu repaired an eighty-six-year rupture in the regional map

A railway link between Nirmali and Bhaptiahi/Saraigarh existed in the nineteenth century but was destroyed after the 1934 earthquake and floods. The 1.9-km Kosi Rail Mahasetu, dedicated in September 2020, restored a cross-Kosi connection after eighty-six years. Its importance lies in what had been missing: generations on opposite sides of the river had adapted to a broken railway geography, using long detours and alternative markets. Reconnection shortened routes and strengthened links among Supaul, Saharsa, Araria and the broader Mithila–Kosi belt. It also demonstrates how disaster can cast a very long infrastructural shadow when a major river changes course and engineering priorities shift.

86.14 Doubling and multi-tracking marked the transition from network extension to capacity expansion

Once basic routes existed and gauge conversion advanced, congestion on single-line sections became a new constraint. Doubling permits more trains, improves timetable flexibility and reduces the cascading delays created when opposing trains must wait for crossings. By 2026 the Ministry of Railways listed the 38-km Samastipur–Darbhanga doubling among recently completed Bihar projects. This corridor is crucial to Mithila because Darbhanga and Jayanagar depend on Samastipur for connection to wider trunk routes. The project typifies a mature-network problem: the historical task is no longer only to reach a place, but to move more passengers and freight through it reliably.

86.15 Railway electrification removed diesel dependence from the existing broad-gauge network

Rail electrification accelerated dramatically after 2014. In September 2020 the electrification of Muzaffarpur–Sitamarhi, Samastipur–Darbhanga–Jayanagar, Samastipur–Khagaria and Bhagalpur–Shivnarayanpur sections was inaugurated with the Kosi bridge programme. By 2025–26 official railway data recorded Bihar’s entire existing broad-gauge network as electrified. Electrification lowered diesel use and enabled higher-performance traction, but its regional value also depends on power quality, line capacity, signalling and station infrastructure. It illustrates the increasingly tight coupling of transport history and electricity history: the railway itself became a major electrical network.

86.16 The railway investment pipeline remained large even after electrification

Electrification did not mean completion of the railway agenda. As of 1 April 2026, the Ministry of Railways reported 59 projects falling fully or partly in Bihar—new lines, gauge conversion and doubling—covering more than 5,000 km in aggregate. Such state-level totals include projects outside the Mithila–Vajji–Anga core, but they show the scale of continuing capacity building. For the region, the important projects are those that reduce bottlenecks at Samastipur, Barauni, Hajipur, Kiul, Bhagalpur and cross-river approaches. The next phase of railway development is therefore less visible than the first bridge or first line: it consists of second tracks, stronger bridges, signalling and station redevelopment.

86.17 Jayanagar–Kurtha restored a cross-border passenger railway to Janakpur

The 34-km Jayanagar–Kurtha section, flagged off on 2 April 2022 by the prime ministers of India and Nepal, became Nepal’s first broad-gauge passenger railway. It is the first phase of the Jayanagar–Bijalpura–Bardibas project and directly links Madhubani district with the Janakpur area. This is not simply an international railway in diplomatic terms. The border cuts across a long-standing Mithila social field of

kinship, pilgrimage, trade and language. Restoring rail passenger movement therefore reconnected everyday geographies that had outlived earlier narrow-gauge services and political boundaries. The line also gives Janakpur a direct rail interface with India's broad-gauge network.

86.18 Cross-border infrastructure made Mithila part of an India–Nepal corridor rather than a terminal frontier

Roads, rail and electricity increasingly treat the border as a managed crossing rather than an infrastructural end point. The Jayanagar rail link, Terai road improvements and border customs facilities complement older local crossings. The same principle applies to power: high-voltage interconnection allows electricity to move according to seasonal availability and market arrangements. For border districts, this changes the economic meaning of proximity to Nepal. Transport companies, traders, pilgrims, students and households can operate within a wider corridor, even as customs, security and differences in regulation continue to shape movement.

86.19 Electricity expansion was slower than transport expansion because a wire was not the same as reliable supply

In the early post-independence decades, electricity concentrated in towns, railway installations, irrigation schemes and industrial nodes. Village electrification statistics could count a settlement as electrified even when most households lacked connections or supply was intermittent. This distinction is central to social history. A road could usually be used whenever it was passable, but electricity depended on generation, transmission, distribution, transformer capacity, billing and maintenance simultaneously. For much of late twentieth-century Bihar, shortages and outages limited the productive effect of nominal electrification and encouraged diesel generators and private pumps.

86.20 Power-sector restructuring separated generation, transmission and distribution functions

The institutional architecture of Bihar's electricity system changed as the old vertically integrated state electricity board was restructured into specialised companies. This reflected a national shift toward clearer accounting, separate transmission and distribution management and regulatory oversight. For consumers in Mithila, Vajji and Anga, institutional restructuring was less visible than wires or transformers, but it mattered because feeder investment, metering, loss reduction and power procurement became distinct managerial tasks. The deeper history is a change from scarcity administration toward network management: how to purchase enough power, carry it through the grid, meter consumption and maintain financially viable distribution.

86.21 Household electrification became a mass programme in the late 2010s

The Saubhagya programme converted household connection into an explicit national objective. Official data record 3,259,041 Bihar households electrified from October 2017 to March 2022 under Saubhagya and related additional-household measures. This scale changed domestic life: lighting extended study and work hours; fans altered summer comfort; phones could be charged at home; televisions and appliances expanded; and households entered formal billing relationships. Yet connection did not eliminate inequality. The quality of internal wiring, appliance ownership, prepaid balance, feeder reliability and the ability to pay still influenced how much benefit a household obtained from the grid.

86.22 The contemporary electricity problem is capacity, reliability and distribution quality

By the mid-2020s Bihar's power system faced loads unimaginable in the era of village electrification campaigns. Central Electricity Authority planning for 2024–25 anticipated peak demand on the order of 8 GW. The Revamped Distribution Sector Scheme therefore focuses on substations, transformers, conductors, feeder segregation, automation and smart metering rather than first-time connection alone. As of March 2026, Bihar had a sanctioned RDSS outlay of about ₹12,581 crore, including roughly ₹2,021 crore for smart metering and ₹10,559 crore for distribution infrastructure. The historical benchmark has shifted from whether electricity reaches a settlement to whether the network can carry rising demand with acceptable voltage, losses and outage duration.

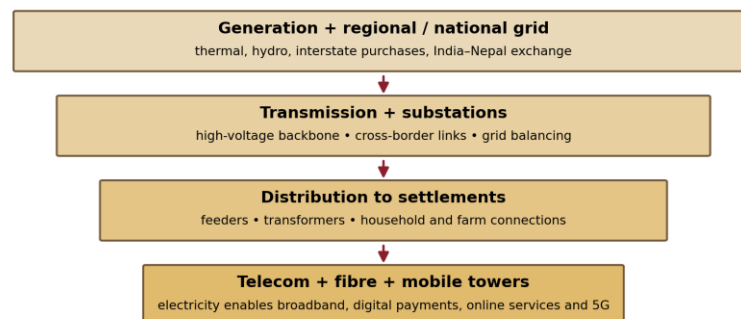
86.23 Electricity transformed agriculture but also bound farming to energy policy

Electric pumps changed irrigation possibilities where groundwater was accessible, reducing dependence on monsoon timing and manual lifting. Rural electrification could therefore support the wheat, maize, vegetable and dairy intensification discussed in earlier chapters. But agricultural electricity also creates demand peaks, requires feeder capacity and can influence groundwater extraction. Where supply is unreliable, farmers retain diesel pumps or face crop risk; where electricity is cheap and plentiful, over-pumping can become an ecological problem. The power system thus connects agrarian history to questions of water, subsidy and climate resilience.

86.24 Muzaffarpur–Dhalkebar made the Mithila–Vajji region part of a cross-border power grid

The high-capacity Muzaffarpur–Dhalkebar transmission interconnection was inaugurated in February 2016 and became a major India–Nepal electricity corridor. It supplemented older lower-voltage cross-border links from Bihar and Uttar Pradesh. Later power planning added further high-capacity connections, while the direction of trade became increasingly capable of changing with Nepal's hydropower output and seasonal conditions. This infrastructure gives the north-Bihar grid a significance beyond state boundaries. Electricity history in Mithila and Vajji is therefore also a history of regional energy integration: substations and transmission corridors link household supply to a cross-border market.

From electrification to digital infrastructure: one network increasingly supports another



The historical shift is from “connection” as a binary achievement to reliability, capacity, affordability and data quality.

Figure 342 — Electricity, telecom and fibre form an increasingly interdependent infrastructure stack

Table 86.1 — Selected thresholds in the post-independence infrastructure transformation

Infrastructure	Date / period	Recorded threshold	Regional meaning
Rajendra Setu	1959	First Ganga bridge in Bihar	Created permanent north-south road/rail crossing near Barauni-Mokama
Mahatma Gandhi Setu	1982	Patna-Hajipur road bridge	Made Hajipur the principal road gateway for Vajji and north Bihar
Kosi Rail Mahasetu	2020	1.9-km bridge restored broken cross-Kosi rail geography	Reconnected routes interrupted since the 1934 disaster
Jayanagar-Kurtha rail	2022	34-km first broad-gauge passenger rail in Nepal	Reconnected Madhubani-Janakpur within a cross-border Mithila corridor
Bihar broad-gauge rail	2025–26	Entire existing BG network electrified	Shift from diesel traction toward an electric rail system
Saubhagya / related	2017–22	3,259,041 Bihar households electrified	Household electricity became mass infrastructure
BharatNet	Oct. 2024	8,340 Bihar gram panchayats connected	Fibre backbone extended toward rural institutions and households
RDSS, Bihar	Mar. 2026	₹12,581 crore sanctioned outlay	Policy focus moves to reliability, loss reduction and smart metering

86.25 Communications first modernised through post, telegraph, radio and scarce telephones

For the first decades after independence, communication remained materially slow. Letters and money orders were central to migrant households; radio carried national news and agricultural information; telegraph served urgent institutional messages; and landline telephones were concentrated in offices, railway stations, hospitals, businesses and a small number of homes. The post office was consequently more than a mail facility. It linked remittances, savings, government notices and family correspondence. This communications regime suited a world in which travel and information were both relatively slow, and where the arrival of a letter could still organise a journey or financial decision.

86.26 STD booths and public telephones were a transitional communications revolution

Before mobile phones became universal, STD/ISD booths and public-call offices dramatically reduced the cost of real-time communication. A migrant worker in Delhi or Punjab could call a family in Madhubani or Bhagalpur without requiring a household landline; traders could confirm prices; students could contact relatives; and emergencies could be coordinated more quickly. The public telephone created shared access

before personal telephony. Its rapid rise and equally rapid disappearance after mobile diffusion make it a distinctive infrastructural phase—important not because it lasted long, but because it taught millions of households to organise economic and family life around immediate voice communication.

86.27 Mobile telephony detached communication from fixed places

The spread of mobile phones in the 2000s changed rural connectivity as profoundly as all-weather roads. Communication no longer depended on reaching a post office or booth. Farmers could call traders, migrants could coordinate remittances, drivers could announce delays, and families could respond to medical emergencies. Cheap handsets and competitive tariffs expanded access faster than the earlier landline network. Mobile coverage also created new inequalities: signal strength varied by village and building, electricity was needed to charge devices, and women's access to phones could be mediated by household control. Even so, personal telephony fundamentally altered the social meaning of separation.

86.28 Internet access turned the communications network into an economic and administrative platform

Smartphones and mobile broadband moved communications beyond voice into messaging, video, digital payments, e-commerce, online forms and education. TRAI data for September 2024 recorded roughly 48.37 million rural and 25.90 million urban internet subscribers in the Bihar telecom service area; because telecom service areas do not correspond perfectly to post-2000 state boundaries, these figures should be read as network indicators rather than a simple state population ratio. By 2025–26, 4G and 5G infrastructure had expanded rapidly across Bihar. The practical result was a new layer of connectivity in which bank accounts, railway tickets, government benefits and market information increasingly depended on data access.

86.29 BharatNet and fibre pushed broadband infrastructure toward the gram panchayat

Mobile towers alone cannot carry every digital service efficiently. BharatNet seeks to extend optical fibre and high-speed connectivity to gram panchayats and villages, providing a backbone that can support schools, health centres, offices, businesses and household broadband. Government data showed 8,340 gram panchayats connected in Bihar by October 2024. By the end of 2025, official national data also recorded a major rise in Bihar's 4G/5G base-transceiver stations. The digital divide therefore increasingly concerns not only coverage but bandwidth, device quality, affordability, electricity, digital literacy and whether public institutions actually use the network effectively.

86.30 The infrastructure revolution is unfinished because reliability and resilience now matter more than first connection

By the mid-2020s a household in Mithila, Vajji or Anga could be linked simultaneously to a paved road, electrified railway, household grid, mobile network and digital payment system. That combination would have been extraordinary in 1950. Yet integration creates new dependencies. A flood can cut a road and fibre route; a transformer failure can disable mobile charging and pumps; bridge congestion can delay freight; weak data networks can block digital transactions; and maintenance backlogs can erode expensive assets. The post-independence achievement is therefore best understood as a shift from isolation toward networked life. The next historical challenge is to make those networks redundant, resilient, affordable and dependable under the environmental pressures of the Gangetic and Kosi plains.

Regional connectivity by the mid-2020s: four linked but unequal infrastructure zones

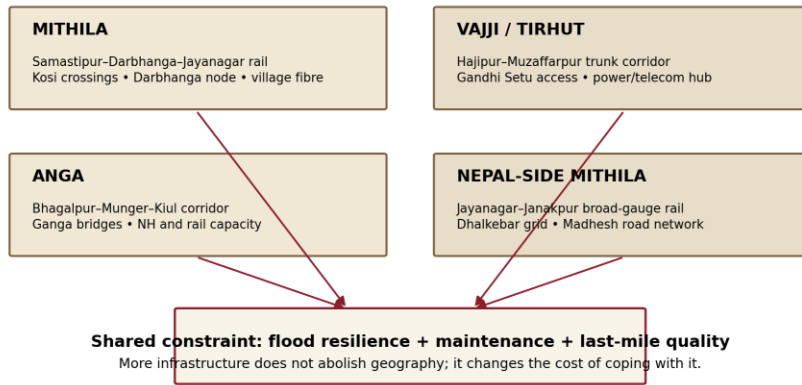


Figure 343 — Mid-2020s connectivity zones across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Mithila

PART X

CASTE, CLASS, GENDER AND SOCIAL CHANGE

Chapters 87–96

Chapter 87 — Historical Formation of Caste Relations

Caste relations in Mithila, Vajji and Anga were neither an unchanged survival from an ancient textual order nor a purely modern political invention. They were historical institutions repeatedly remade through marriage rules, genealogy, settlement, landholding, tenancy, labour, religious service, literacy, state employment, colonial enumeration, law, education and electoral representation. The same caste name could therefore occupy different economic positions in different districts or even in neighbouring villages, while families within a single caste could diverge sharply in property, education and political influence. A history of caste must reconstruct these changing relations instead of treating ranked labels as sufficient explanation.

This chapter provides that *longue-durée* framework for PART X. It does not replace the focused histories that follow: Dalit experience is treated in Chapter 88; Adivasi and forest-connected populations in Chapter 89; Muslims in Chapter 90; gendered household relations in Chapters 91–93; education and mobility in Chapter 94; reservation and new middle classes in Chapter 95; and rural elites and changing landed power in Chapter 96. Here the task is narrower but foundational: to show how caste became attached to kinship, work, land and state categories, how those attachments changed, and why modern democratic caste identities cannot simply be projected backward into medieval society.

87.1 Caste relations must be reconstructed historically, not assumed as a timeless social essence

The most important methodological rule is to distinguish persistence from immobility. Endogamy, inherited occupation, ranked commensality and ideas of purity could be durable, but the groups participating in these relations changed their names, boundaries, internal divisions, property positions and political strategies. A caste that appears in a colonial census as a single line in a table may have contained regional sections and status differences that mattered more locally than the census label. Conversely, separate local names could later be aggregated for political or administrative purposes. Social history therefore begins with dated evidence: inscriptions and texts for specific periods, genealogical manuscripts where their provenance is known, revenue records for land and tenancy, censuses for the classificatory practices of the colonial state, and post-independence legal and survey categories for the modern state. The aim is not to deny caste's historical depth but to explain the institutions through which it acquired particular forms.

87.2 Varna and jati are related vocabularies but not interchangeable social maps

Normative Sanskrit texts offered the four-varna scheme as a language of social order, but lived society was organised through many jatis, lineages, occupational groups, territorial identities and sectarian affiliations. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, political authority, landholding, ritual standing and occupational specialisation did not line up in a single four-part grid. Kayastha and Karana service groups are an obvious example: their administrative roles were historically important even though textual attempts to place them within varna schemes varied. Cultivating communities could gain local dominance without acquiring the ritual status claimed by older elite groups. Fishing, boating, artisanal and service communities were shaped by riverine ecology and market demand as well as by inherited status. Using varna as if it were a census of the population therefore obscures precisely the historical relationships that require explanation.

87.3 Early and medieval evidence is uneven, so later caste maps cannot be projected backward without proof

The evidence for social classification before the early modern period is fragmentary and genre-specific. Land grants may name Brahmins, officials, cultivators or service groups; legal and ritual texts prescribe idealised conduct; literary works deploy social stereotypes; genealogies preserve selected descent lines; and archaeology usually reveals material differentiation rather than named castes. None of these sources authorises a direct transfer of nineteenth- or twentieth-century caste lists into earlier centuries. A community's later claim to antiquity may be culturally important without proving that its modern boundaries existed unchanged at the claimed date. This is especially important in a region with successive political centres, migrations across the Gangetic plain and Nepal Tarai, and changing languages of status. The correct historical question is not 'when did caste begin?' in the abstract, but when particular relations—endogamy, ranked service, hereditary office, exclusion from resources or corporate genealogy—became visible in recoverable evidence.

Caste relations changed as kinship, property, classification and political representation changed

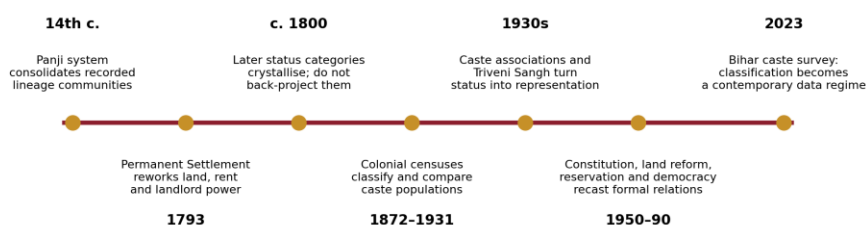


Figure 344 — Caste relations changed as kinship, property, classification and representation changed

87.4 Settlement, specialised work and control over resources created local hierarchies long before modern administration

Agrarian settlement produced interdependence as well as hierarchy. Cultivation required ploughing, cattle care, irrigation, harvesting, storage, transport, tool making, pottery, leather work and market exchange. Riverine settlements required ferrying, fishing and boat work; towns required scribes, traders and craft specialists; temples and courts supported ritual and clerical personnel. When these functions became associated with hereditary communities, occupation reinforced social boundaries, but the relationship was never perfectly fixed. Households shifted work, combined cultivation with specialised service and migrated to new markets. Local hierarchy was strongest when ritual claims were backed by control over land, credit, office or the right to demand labour. It weakened when alternative employers, markets, schools or migration allowed dependent households to bargain outside the village. Caste relations were therefore embedded in political economy from the beginning, not suspended above it.

87.5 Genealogy and marriage became unusually visible institutions in Mithila

Mithila offers exceptionally rich evidence because genealogical regulation became institutionalised among important literate communities. Marriage was not only a domestic alliance; it linked lineages, villages, scholarly reputation, property and status. Panjikars preserved genealogical information and marriage eligibility could depend on proving acceptable descent distance. Such institutions transformed memory into

an administrative technology of kinship. They also reveal how a community could be made through record keeping: the archive did not merely describe a pre-existing group but helped stabilise its boundaries. Marriage circles, mula affiliations, settlement histories and genealogical authority therefore belong to the history of caste formation. They must still be used critically, because genealogies are selective records produced for particular social purposes rather than complete censuses of everyone inhabiting Mithila.

87.6 Panji prabandha helped consolidate corporate identities among Maithil Brahmins and Karna Kayasthas

Research on Maithil Brahmin genealogies shows how registered lineages, territorial affiliation and rules of marriage were woven into a corporate Maithil identity. Karna Kayastha traditions likewise preserved Panji material concerned with lineages, original villages and subsequent places of residence. In both cases, the existence of genealogical archives demonstrates the role of scribal institutions in making descent socially actionable. Yet the systems should not be read as proof that every later internal rank or sub-caste existed in the same form from the beginning. What can be established more securely is a durable practice of recording lineages and regulating marriage among these communities, together with a wider regional culture in which scholarship, administration, court service and landed patronage could reinforce status. The Panjis are therefore strongest as evidence for the historical construction of corporate identities, not as warrants for an unchanging hierarchy.

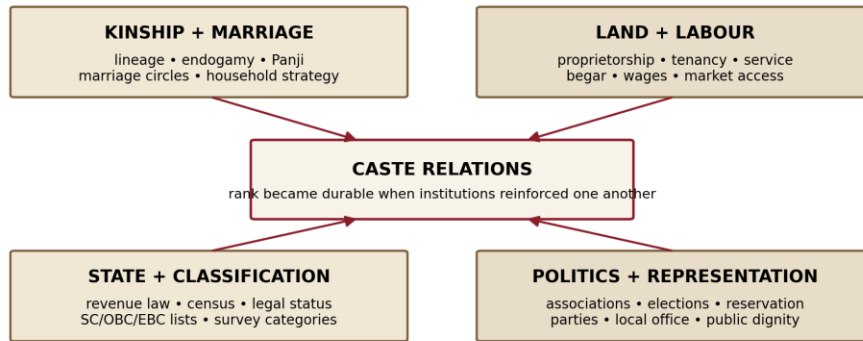
87.7 The later Śrotiya category must not be projected backward as a fixed medieval Maithil Brahmin sub-caste

This volume adopts a specific source-critical caution. The existence of medieval and early-modern Maithil Brahmin genealogy does not justify treating Śrotiya/Srotiya as a timeless, already fixed sub-caste throughout that earlier period. The later status category is treated here as a historical crystallisation associated with the late eighteenth to around 1800 and thereafter, not as an automatic label for medieval actors. This distinction matters because backward projection converts a later ordering into an ancient essence and then uses that essence to explain the very process that produced it. Medieval individuals should therefore be identified by the categories actually supported by contemporary or securely dated genealogical evidence. Later social gradations can be discussed in their proper period, when changes in patronage, learning, marriage ranking and regional elite culture made them socially consequential.

87.8 Scribal, clerical and courtly service complicated any simple ritual hierarchy

Karna Kayasthas and other literate service groups demonstrate that access to writing and administration could generate authority that did not fit neatly into ritual models. Revenue accounting, correspondence, judicial paperwork and estate management required specialised literacy. Under regional courts, Mughal and successor administrations, zamindari estates and colonial offices, these skills could become hereditary family assets. Service connections produced salaries, land grants, urban residence and educational opportunities that differentiated households within and across castes. The same was true, in different forms, for pandits, priests and scholars whose intellectual capital linked them to courts and patrons. Caste rank therefore interacted with what might be called institutional capital: knowledge of scripts, law, accounts, ritual or bureaucracy. Modern educational mobility later widened access to these resources, but its effects were shaped by this older unequal distribution of literacy and office.

Four institutional mechanisms repeatedly remade caste relations



No single dimension—ritual, property, occupation or politics—explains caste power by itself.

Figure 345 — Four institutional mechanisms repeatedly remade caste relations

87.9 Cultivating communities converted agrarian skill and demographic weight into changing forms of local power

Ahir/Yadav, Koeri/Kushwaha, Kurmi and numerous other cultivating communities occupied heterogeneous positions across Bihar. Some households were substantial raiyats or tenants with cattle, marketable surpluses and strong village networks; others held little land or combined cultivation with wage work. Their importance cannot be reduced to a single ritual rank. Intensive vegetable cultivation, dairy cattle, grain production and access to tenancy could create forms of economic competence that became increasingly valuable as markets expanded. In the late nineteenth and twentieth centuries, prosperous sections invested in education, caste associations and status claims, while demographic strength became politically important under representative institutions. The resulting rise of 'backward caste' politics was not a sudden discovery of identities that had been socially dormant. It was the political reorganisation of communities whose agrarian roles and local solidarities had long existed but whose access to state office had been much more limited.

87.10 River, craft and service economies produced caste relations different from those of plough agriculture

The floodplains of Mithila and Vajji and the Ganga corridor of Anga supported communities associated with fishing, ferrying, boating, basketry, pottery, metal work, weaving, barbering, washing, oil pressing and many other services. Colonial administrators often treated such occupations as caste identifiers, but work and identity were not perfectly congruent. A household might cultivate part of the year, migrate seasonally, fish during floods or enter urban wage labour. Market integration could increase the value of a specialised skill while also weakening hereditary patronage. Railways and bridges reduced some ferry-based livelihoods; industrial cloth affected weaving; modern transport changed carting and animal services. These transformations show why caste history must include technological and ecological change. An occupational label that looked permanent in an ethnographic table could be living through rapid economic reorganisation on the ground.

87.11 Land ownership and caste rank overlapped strongly in many places, but they were never identical

North Bihar's agrarian history shows a pronounced concentration of land and rent-receiving rights among socially advantaged groups, yet village-level studies caution against treating every member of an 'upper' caste as a landlord or every member of a 'backward' caste as landless. There were poor households within prestigious groups, substantial tenants and proprietors among cultivating castes, and large differences among Scheduled Caste and Extremely Backward Caste households. What made land central was its multiplier effect. Ownership or secure tenancy supported food security, credit, cattle, education, litigation and the ability to hire labour; landlessness increased dependence on employers and patrons. Caste hierarchy became materially durable where access to land, irrigation, common resources and local office followed caste boundaries. When these resources shifted, the social balance could shift as well, even if marriage boundaries remained.

87.12 The Permanent Settlement of 1793 reworked caste through a new property and rent regime

The Permanent Settlement did not invent social hierarchy, but it changed the legal environment in which hierarchy operated. Zamindars were recognised as revenue-responsible proprietors, while layers of tenure-holders, raiyats, under-raiyats and labourers developed beneath them. In north Bihar, large estates and intermediary rights could connect elite status to rent extraction and judicial influence. The structure was not simply 'upper caste landlord versus lower caste peasant': estate ownership, tenancy and sub-tenancy were internally differentiated, and commercialisation created new opportunities for moneylenders and substantial cultivators. Even so, the system gave property and legal leverage to a narrow set of actors and often made the village poor vulnerable to rent enhancement, eviction and indebtedness. Caste relations were thereby channelled through the colonial law of property and tenancy, making agrarian class indispensable to understanding social rank.

87.13 Large estates such as Darbhanga Raj magnified the relationship between status, bureaucracy and agrarian dependence

The Darbhanga Raj became one of the most important landed institutions of colonial north Bihar. Its significance for caste history lies not simply in the identity of its ruling family but in the bureaucratic ecosystem of estate management: revenue offices, agents, legal specialists, village intermediaries, tenants and labourers. Such estates linked rural hierarchy to urban centres of education, patronage and politics. They could sponsor Sanskrit learning, religious institutions and public works while simultaneously depending on rent extraction from a highly stratified countryside. This duality is important. Elite cultural patronage and agrarian inequality were not separate histories; they were financed through overlapping systems of land and service. After independence, zamindari abolition dismantled the legal core of estate power, but networks of education, property, profession and local prestige did not disappear overnight.

87.14 Vajji and the Tirhut market zone combined dense tenancy with commercial and political mobility

The Muzaffarpur–Vaishali–Hajipur zone linked fertile agriculture to market towns, transport routes and, in adjoining Tirhut, plantation and cash-crop histories. Such settings produced a more mobile social field than the image of a self-contained caste village suggests. Tenants sold produce, borrowed money, travelled to bazaars and interacted with officials and lawyers. Migration and military or urban employment

introduced alternative sources of income. Caste still structured marriage and local status, but market participation could differentiate households within the same community. The growth of district boards, schools and electoral institutions created additional arenas in which numerically significant cultivating groups could organise. Vajji's later prominence in backward-caste politics should therefore be understood against this longer history of agrarian density, market access and expanding public institutions.

87.15 Anga's Gangetic corridor produced a distinct mixture of agrarian, artisanal and urban caste relations

Bhagalpur and Munger connected river transport, silk and textile production, agriculture, trade, military-administrative institutions and later railways. Nineteenth-century descriptions of Bhagalpur already recorded a socially diverse population in which large cultivating communities coexisted with artisans, traders, boatmen, labouring groups and urban service castes. The point is not to reproduce colonial rankings, many of which carried ethnographic prejudice, but to recover the economic heterogeneity behind them. In Anga, caste relations were shaped by the possibility of combining village agriculture with town-based craft, transport and wage work. Industrial and railway employment later expanded those alternatives. The region thus illustrates how urbanisation and commodity production could loosen some forms of village dependence while preserving marriage boundaries and unequal access to capital.

87.16 Labour obligations made caste hierarchy tangible in everyday time and bodily service

Hierarchy was experienced not only through abstract rank but through claims on labour. Begar or unpaid service, attached agricultural labour, hereditary village duties and expectations of deference could convert caste subordination into control over another household's time. The severity and form of such obligations varied greatly, and they should not be homogenised into a single 'jajmani system'. Some services involved customary payments in grain or access to plots; others were coercive; many changed with cash wages and labour migration. What matters historically is the bargaining structure. When a household lacked land, credit and alternative employment, refusal was costly. When roads, cities, military service, plantations or migration opened new labour markets, the ability of patrons to enforce hereditary service could weaken. The detailed histories of Dalit labour and resistance belong to Chapter 88, but the broader formation of caste relations cannot be understood without this labour dimension.

87.17 Colonial censuses transformed caste by making names, numbers and ranked categories administratively comparable

From the late nineteenth century, census operations required officials to convert locally variable identities into tabulated categories. This process did not create caste out of nothing, but it privileged standardised names and encouraged communities to petition for preferred classifications. Ethnographic surveys and district gazetteers added descriptions of origin, occupation, marriage and rank, often filtered through colonial theories of race and social evolution. The resulting archive is invaluable and hazardous at the same time. It provides population and occupational evidence unavailable elsewhere, yet it can make fluid or disputed identities look settled. The 1931 Bihar and Orissa census became especially consequential because later backward-class policy frequently used its demographic world as a reference point. Historians must therefore read census categories as evidence of both society and state classification.

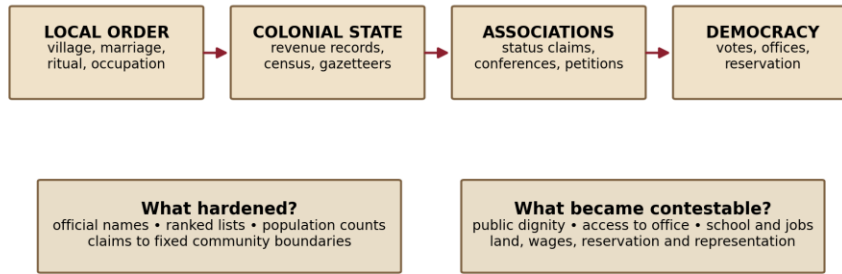
Table 87.1 — Historical layers through which caste relations were institutionalised

Historical layer	Key institution	How caste relations changed	Source caution
Medieval / early modern	genealogy, marriage, court and service	corporate lineages and marriage boundaries became recorded and enforceable	do not project later sub-caste ranks backward
c. 1793–1850	Permanent Settlement and estate administration	property and rent rights strengthened some elite networks and dependencies	caste and class overlap but are not identical
1872–1931	census, gazetteer and ethnographic classification	local identities were standardised, counted and compared across districts	colonial categories reflect administrative theories as well as society
c. 1900–47	associations, petitions and peasant politics	status claims became organised demands for education, jobs and representation	organisations often represented upwardly mobile sections first
1950–78	Constitution, land reform and adult franchise	formal inequality lost legal legitimacy; local dominance became electorally contestable	legal change was faster than redistribution of assets
1978–90s	BC/EBC reservation and Mandal politics	administrative backwardness categories became major political identities	large categories contain substantial internal inequality
2022–23	state caste-based survey	all-caste population data again became an official planning and representation resource	population share does not itself measure wealth or power

87.18 Caste associations converted local status disputes into province-wide programmes

Print, rail travel, urban meetings and expanding education allowed caste organisations to operate beyond the village. Associations sponsored hostels, scholarships, genealogies, histories, conferences and campaigns for preferred names or higher social status. Some promoted sacred-thread wearing or Kshatriya claims; others concentrated on education and government employment. These movements are sometimes described simply as Sanskritisation, but their institutional importance was broader. They created executive committees, membership rolls, newspapers and fundraising networks that trained communities in modern associational politics. They also shifted the audience for status claims: recognition was sought not only from neighbouring castes but from census officials, political parties and the provincial state. Caste thus became simultaneously more 'modern' in organisation and more explicit as a public identity.

From ranked locality to enumerated and represented categories



Modern caste politics did not simply preserve an old order; it transformed the arenas in which caste mattered.

Figure 346 — From ranked locality to enumerated and represented categories

87.19 The Triveni Sangh marked a decisive transition from status reform to political representation

In the early 1930s, Yadav, Kurmi and Koeri/Kushwaha activists in Bihar created the Triveni Sangh, building on earlier cooperation and caste-association networks. Its importance exceeded its limited electoral success. The Sangh articulated the idea that numerically large cultivating communities required independent representation against a political order dominated by established elites. It campaigned against social humiliation and begar and demanded access to government employment. The movement also revealed the difficulties of coalition: the allied castes were internally unequal and did not always agree on leadership or rank. Congress co-option and competing peasant organisations further limited the Sangh. Yet the institutional innovation endured. It demonstrated that caste solidarity could be recast as a language of backward-class politics rather than as a claim to a higher position within an inherited ritual hierarchy.

87.20 Peasant movements show that caste and class overlapped without becoming the same thing

The Bihar Provincial Kisan Sabha and other agrarian movements mobilised tenants and cultivators against landlord power, rent and insecurity. Their social composition crossed caste boundaries, and some prominent leaders came from communities that also included major landlords. This contradiction is historically instructive. Class position could divide a caste, while caste ties could divide a class. A substantial tenant might share an anti-zamindar interest with poorer cultivators but still employ landless labourers from subordinated communities. Conversely, elite leaders could oppose landlords from their own caste. The relationship between caste and class was therefore contingent rather than mechanical. Part X requires both categories because rural power operated through their intersection: property shaped dependence, while caste shaped marriage, honour, networks and access to institutions. Later electoral coalitions would repeatedly reorganise these cross-cutting interests.

87.21 Independence changed the legal constitution of caste more quickly than everyday relations

The Constitution of India established equality before law, prohibited discrimination on specified grounds and abolished untouchability. Zamindari abolition and tenancy reform attacked the legal foundations of landlordism. Universal adult franchise made every adult voter formally equal in electoral weight. These were profound institutional breaks. Yet law did not instantly redistribute land, education, social respect or control over village institutions. Older elites retained professional networks and property, while subordinated groups faced continuing barriers in schools, temples, wells, employment and housing in many localities. The historical significance of 1950 therefore lies in the creation of new legal and political resources through which hierarchy could be challenged. Caste relations moved from an order partly sanctioned by custom and inherited authority into a constitutional arena where discrimination could be contested and representation claimed.

87.22 Land reform weakened zamindari but produced uneven changes in caste power

Abolition removed intermediary rent-receiving rights, yet the redistribution of actual cultivated land was much less sweeping. Ceiling laws, tenancy protection and homestead rights changed some relations, while evasion, litigation and administrative weakness limited others. In many parts of Bihar, substantial cultivating castes gained relative strength as landlord authority receded and agricultural markets expanded. This did not automatically benefit landless Scheduled Caste or Extremely Backward Caste households to the same degree. The result was not a simple transfer from 'upper' to 'lower' castes but a more complex differentiation: some middle peasant groups became local employers and political brokers; older elite families shifted toward professions and urban property; and agricultural labour remained highly unequal. The caste-class map was being redrawn rather than erased.

87.23 Education, migration and state employment multiplied routes of mobility after the 1950s

School expansion, colleges, railways, public employment and migration to eastern and northern Indian cities reduced the village's monopoly over opportunity. A salary from the army, railway, school system or government office could support land purchase and children's education; migrant remittances could free households from local creditors; urban residence could weaken some rules of commensality while preserving endogamy. These gains were uneven because families entered the new economy with different levels of literacy, land and social networks. Communities with older traditions of schooling or clerical service were initially advantaged, while first-generation learners faced higher costs. Over time, however, education and migration created new middle strata within OBC, EBC, Scheduled Caste and minority communities. Caste remained important, but the assets through which caste power operated expanded beyond land.

87.24 Bihar's 1978 reservation formula made internal differentiation within the backward classes a state principle

The reservation measures associated with Chief Minister Karpoori Thakur in 1978 were historically significant because they recognised that the 'backward classes' were not a socially uniform bloc. Bihar's policy distinguished more backward groups from other backward groups and included separate provisions for women and economically weaker sections in the state framework of the time. Whatever later revisions in percentages and legal form, the conceptual move endured: social justice policy required classification within

the backward population, not merely a binary division between 'forward' and 'backward'. This state taxonomy interacted with older caste identities but did not simply reproduce them. Communities now had incentives to demonstrate educational and social disadvantage, while political organisations competed over the distribution of reserved opportunities.

87.25 The Mandal Commission shifted caste politics toward measured disadvantage and representation

The Second Backward Classes Commission, chaired by B. P. Mandal, submitted its report in 1980 after using social, educational and economic indicators to identify Other Backward Classes. Its recommendation of 27 per cent reservation in central services for OBCs was implemented by the Union government in 1990, generating a major reorganisation of north Indian politics. Bihar was especially important because backward-caste mobilisation already had a long institutional history. Mandal did not introduce caste into politics; it changed the stakes by connecting caste classification to representation in the modern state. The language of public debate increasingly concerned share, access and historical exclusion rather than only ritual honour. The later constitutional and judicial history of reservation belongs to Chapter 95, but its effect on caste formation is already clear: administrative categories became powerful collective identities.

87.26 Lower-caste political ascendancy transformed public authority but did not make hierarchy disappear

From the late 1980s and especially the 1990s, Bihar saw a dramatic expansion of political representation by groups earlier marginal to high office. Scholars have described this as a 'silent revolution' or lower-caste empowerment. In villages, the symbolic effect could be as important as policy: older expectations of automatic deference were challenged, police stations and block offices became contested arenas, and political speech emphasised dignity. Yet political representation did not eliminate inequality within the newly empowered categories. Some groups benefited more than others; local dominance could shift from older landholding elites to prosperous middle-peasant castes; and landless households could remain dependent. Democratic caste politics therefore needs to be read as a redistribution of voice and state access, not as the disappearance of class or intra-caste inequality.

87.27 The rise of an Extremely Backward Class category made visible the limits of a single backward-caste narrative

Bihar's distinction between Backward Classes and Extremely Backward Classes reflects a long-standing problem: communities grouped together for administrative purposes often differ sharply in landholding, literacy, numbers and political organisation. Many EBC communities historically depended on small cultivation, artisanal or service work and had less capacity to build province-wide associations than the larger Yadav, Kurmi or Koeri/Kushwaha networks. As OBC politics gained power, EBC claims increasingly stressed under-representation within the broader backward coalition. This history warns against treating 'lower caste' as a homogeneous social actor. Caste democratisation has repeatedly created new questions of internal distribution, leading to sub-quotas, revised lists and competing claims to disadvantage. These dynamics are central to Chapters 94–96, but they originate in the unequal social formation traced here.

87.28 The 2022–23 Bihar caste-based survey shows how contemporary caste is also a data regime

Bihar's state caste-based survey counted 130.7 million people and reported broad shares of 27.1286 per cent Backward Class, 36.0148 per cent Extremely Backward Class, 19.6518 per cent Scheduled Caste, 1.6824 per cent Scheduled Tribe and 15.5224 per cent General/other reported categories. These figures do not describe the historical population of Mithila, Vajji or Anga at earlier dates, and they should not be used for backward projection. Their significance for this chapter is institutional: after decades in which independent India did not publish a full all-caste census comparable to 1931, the Bihar state again made caste numerically visible across the whole population. Enumeration can support welfare analysis and representation claims, but numbers do not directly measure wealth, local dominance or discrimination. A demographic share is one layer of social structure, not its explanation.

87.29 Nepal-side Mithila shares cross-border kinship but developed under a different state history of caste classification

Mithila extends into Nepal's Madhesh, where marriage, pilgrimage, language and market networks cross the international border. Yet the legal history of caste differs. Nepal's Muluki Ain of 1854 encoded a state hierarchy that grouped peoples through categories of purity, commensality and legal status; later legal reform and the constitutional order rejected caste discrimination and developed a different official vocabulary of caste and ethnicity. The 2021 Nepal census records Madhesh as highly plural, with Yadav, Muslim, Teli, Tharu, Koiri/Kushwaha, Chamar/Ram and many other categories among its population. These categories cannot be mechanically matched to Bihar's BC/EBC/SC framework. Cross-border families may recognise related jati identities while encountering different reservation, citizenship and administrative regimes on the two sides. The region is therefore socially connected but institutionally non-identical.

Regional emphases in the formation of caste relations

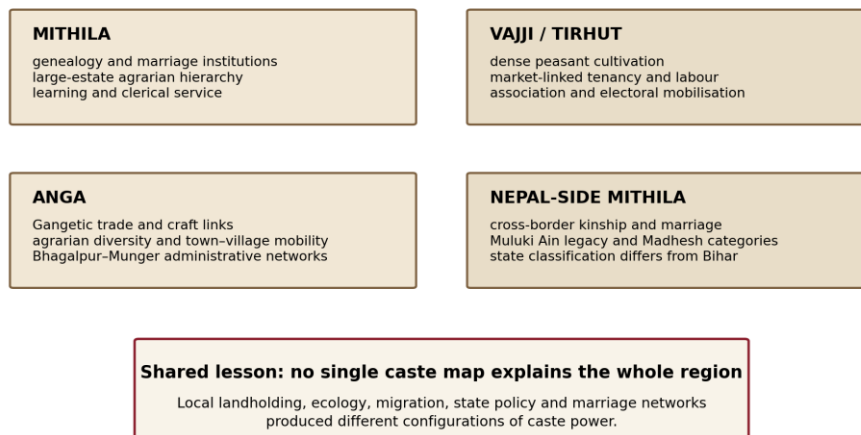


Figure 347 — Regional emphases in caste formation across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Mithila

87.30 Caste history is the history of changing relationships among kinship, property, work and the state

Across the long duration, caste relations in Mithila, Vajji and Anga were repeatedly reconstructed. Genealogical institutions stabilised some marriage communities; land and labour made rank materially consequential; colonial censuses turned local identities into enumerable categories; associations and peasant movements made them political; constitutional equality delegitimised inherited exclusion; reservation and surveys converted disadvantage and representation into administrative questions; and migration, education and markets produced new inequalities within old names. The result is neither the disappearance of caste nor the survival of an unchanged ancient system. It is a layered modern formation in which old boundaries, new assets and state categories interact. That framework is necessary for the chapters that follow, which examine Dalit histories, Adivasi and forest-connected populations, Muslims, gender, education, reservation, class formation and the changing rural elite in much greater depth.

Chapter 88 — Dalit Histories

Dalit history in Mithila, Vajji and Anga cannot be written as a footnote to the history of caste. It is a history of labour performed and appropriated, land possessed or denied, neighbourhoods segregated or opened, schools entered late and then used strategically, migration that loosened some village dependencies while creating new urban vulnerabilities, and public cultures through which communities named dignity in their own idioms. The constitutional category “Scheduled Caste” and the political-social term “Dalit” overlap but are not identical. The former is a legal list whose boundaries are defined by constitutional orders; the latter is a language of historical oppression, assertion and solidarity whose use has varied across communities and periods. This chapter therefore keeps legal classification and social self-description analytically distinct.

The archive is uneven. Revenue records, censuses, district gazetteers and police or welfare files usually describe Dalit communities through the eyes of officials, landlords, reformers or administrators. They often reduce people to occupation, “custom” or deficit. Oral traditions, songs, village memories, association records, local political histories and post-independence ethnography reveal agency that such documents miss. The task is not to romanticise subaltern testimony or to reject official statistics; it is to read different archives against one another. That method is especially important in a region where Musahar, Ravidas/Chamar, Dusadh/Paswan, Dhobi/Rajak, Dom, Pasi, Chaupal, Nat, Rajwar and other Scheduled-Caste communities followed different demographic, occupational and political trajectories.

88.1 Dalit history requires a vocabulary that separates legal category, historical stigma and political identity

The word “Dalit” is useful when it identifies histories of untouchability, exclusion and organised assertion, but it should not be treated as an ancient census category. Colonial officials used shifting labels such as “depressed classes” and later Scheduled Castes; the Government of India (Scheduled Castes) Order of 1936 and the Constitution (Scheduled Castes) Order of 1950 helped make enumeration and entitlement depend on named lists. After independence, reservation, scholarships, reserved constituencies and protective law operated through Scheduled-Caste status. Political movements, however, increasingly used the language of Dalit dignity, Ambedkarite rights and social equality. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, some communities adopted that language more visibly than others, and older local names, caste associations and religious idioms continued alongside it. A historical account must therefore ask which vocabulary was in use, by whom, and for what purpose.

88.2 The communities grouped as Scheduled Castes were never a single social or economic bloc

Census 2011 tables for Bihar enumerate many distinct Scheduled-Caste communities and show large differences in population, rurality, literacy, occupational structure and work participation. The largest numerical communities are not necessarily the most deprived on every indicator, while smaller groups can face extreme occupational stigma or geographic isolation. Ravidas/Chamar households may combine agricultural labour with leather work, construction, trade and public employment; Dusadh/Paswan histories include agrarian labour but also military, watch-and-ward, migration and political mobility; Musahar histories are marked especially strongly by landlessness and casual agricultural labour; Dom and sanitation-associated communities encountered forms of stigma tied to death work or municipal cleaning. These

differences matter because a policy or movement effective for one community cannot be assumed to represent all Dalit experience.

88.3 Landlessness converted social exclusion into material dependence

The most persistent structure linking caste and class was unequal command over land. In colonial north Bihar, large estates, occupancy rights, under-raiyati and village hierarchies created layered agrarian dependence. Dalit households with little or no cultivable land had weak bargaining power not only in the labour market but also over housing, fodder, fuel, grazing, ponds and emergency credit. Post-independence abolition of zamindari altered the legal hierarchy but did not automatically transfer enough land to labouring households. Field studies from north Bihar repeatedly find the deepest deprivation among households that possess neither cultivable land nor secure homestead plots. For such families, land reform was not an abstract question of acreage: a small residential plot could determine whether a household could resist eviction, access a road, build a durable house, obtain an electricity connection or remain dependent on a patron for permission to live.

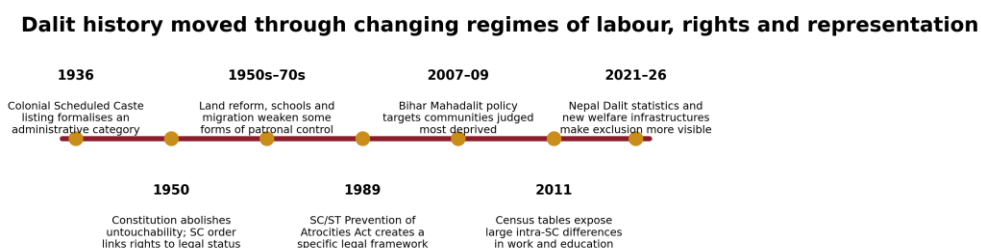


Figure 348 — Major institutional thresholds in modern Dalit history

88.4 Musahar histories expose the long connection between stigma, landlessness and labour servitude

Musahar history is especially important in the floodplains of Mithila and adjoining north Bihar. Colonial descriptions often sensationalised food practices and represented Musahars as a fixed “primitive” type, obscuring the political economy that made them vulnerable. Modern scholarship instead draws attention to the loss or absence of land, residence on the margins of estates or villages, indebtedness, attached labour and the conversion of ecological skill into poorly rewarded work. Ethnographic research describes agricultural labour, earthwork, migration and casual construction as central livelihoods, with women participating heavily in field labour. The history is not one of unchanging passivity: wage disputes, land occupations, schooling, migration, political organisation and cultural assertion repeatedly altered the terms on which Musahar households dealt with employers and officials. Their history therefore reveals both structural depth and significant change.

88.5 Ravidas/Chamar histories show how occupational stigma persisted even as occupations diversified

Communities recorded in official lists under Chamar, Mochi and Ravidas variants formed a large part of Bihar’s Scheduled-Caste population. Leather work became a powerful source of ritual stigma in caste society, but it never exhausted the economic history of these communities. Many households in the Mithila-Vajji-Anga belt were agricultural labourers, sharecroppers, artisans or migrants; later generations entered construction, transport, petty trade, education and government service. Ravidas devotional traditions and the public use of the name Ravidas offered languages of dignity distinct from colonial occupational

stereotypes. The key historical movement is therefore not a simple “escape” from a traditional occupation. It is the weakening of an imposed equivalence between caste identity and hereditary work, accompanied by new claims to schooling, land, wages, worship, public office and self-naming.

88.6 Dusadh/Paswan trajectories demonstrate that Dalit mobility could develop through security work, migration and politics as well as land

Dusadh communities, widely known in modern public life by the surname Paswan, followed a trajectory that cannot be reduced to agricultural labour alone. Historical sources associate sections of the community with village watch duties, armed service, guarding, transport and cultivation as well as wage work. Such occupational diversity created routes into military service, railways, towns and state employment earlier for some households than for more land-bound labouring groups. In the late twentieth century, the Paswan name also became prominent in electoral politics and public employment. That visibility should not be mistaken for uniform prosperity: rural Dusadh households could remain poor and land-poor even while the community acquired greater political representation. The trajectory is historically significant precisely because it shows how numerical strength, migration networks, state employment and political organisation could transform collective bargaining without eliminating class differentiation within a Dalit caste.

88.7 Dom, sanitation-linked and death-work histories reveal some of the harshest forms of spatial and occupational exclusion

Dom and related communities were often associated in official and local records with cremation work, bamboo work, drumming, scavenging or other tasks classified as polluting. Municipal expansion could reproduce rather than dissolve caste hierarchy when sanitation work remained socially stigmatised and poorly protected. In towns, workers essential to waste removal and cremation could remain segregated in housing and excluded from the status enjoyed by other municipal employees. The history of sanitation therefore belongs within labour history, not only social custom. Mechanisation, protective legislation, municipal regularisation, schooling and alternative employment changed the occupational field, but hereditary expectations survived in everyday discrimination. Where manual cleaning or hazardous waste work persisted, the contradiction between indispensable public service and low social status became especially visible.

88.8 Smaller Scheduled-Caste communities make the internal diversity of Dalit history impossible to ignore

Dhobi/Rajak, Pasi, Chaupal, Nat, Rajwar, Turi, Bantar and other communities appear in Bihar’s Scheduled-Caste tables with very different settlement patterns and occupational histories. Some were closely tied to washing, toddy-related work, performance, bamboo craft, transport or agrarian labour; others moved between village service and independent wage labour. Modern occupations have diversified substantially, yet inherited stereotypes can survive after the economic basis that produced them has weakened. A regional history must therefore avoid using Musahar deprivation or Paswan political visibility as a shorthand for every Dalit group. The most reliable unit of analysis is often the intersection of community, locality, landholding, gender and generation rather than the Scheduled-Caste category by itself.

88.9 The Dalit tola was a social institution of segregation as well as a platform for collective action

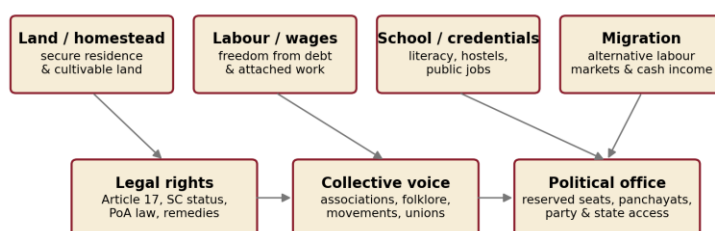
Village space encoded hierarchy. Dalit hamlets were frequently situated on settlement edges, near low-lying land, roads, cremation grounds or fields, and access to wells, ponds, temples, schools and markets could

reproduce social distance. Physical separation increased the cost of public services: a school might be technically “in the village” but far from the tola; drainage or raised roads might end before the poorest settlement; flood protection could privilege the core habitation. Yet spatial concentration also created collective life. Tolas became sites of kinship support, wage discussion, festival performance, political mobilisation and welfare delivery. Post-independence schemes that used tola-level workers or community halls implicitly recognised that the geography of exclusion had to be addressed at the settlement scale.

88.10 Debt and attached labour made refusal costly even when formal bondage was illegal

Bonded labour was sustained by more than a written contract. Small advances for food, illness, marriage or funerals could bind a labourer to a creditor-employer when alternative credit was unavailable. The obligation might be enforced through social pressure, control of housing or threats to future employment. Gyan Prakash’s work on labour servitude in Bihar shows how debt, caste and patronage could be represented as custom even when they contained coercive power. Similar mechanisms appear in north-Bihar ethnography, although forms varied by locality. Cash wages, migration, rural employment programmes and institutional credit weakened some forms of attachment, but debt did not disappear; it shifted toward contractors, shop credit, microfinance or migration advances. The historical question is therefore not whether “bondage ended” on a single date, but how a household’s ability to refuse work changed.

Dalit household history: constraints and routes of bargaining power



These routes combined differently by locality, caste community, gender and generation.

Figure 349 — Household constraints and routes of bargaining power

88.11 Dalit women bore the combined weight of caste, class and gendered labour

Women’s work made poor households viable while remaining especially under-recorded. Dalit women commonly combined agricultural wage labour with fuel and fodder collection, childcare, livestock care, water carrying and domestic production; some also entered brick kilns, construction, vending or paid domestic work. Their bargaining position could be weakened simultaneously by landlessness, wage discrimination, sexual vulnerability and responsibility for household reproduction when men migrated. Histories of caste violence likewise cannot be understood without gender, because attacks on women’s bodies could be used to discipline households and communities. Yet women were also central to schooling decisions, savings groups, nutrition programmes, local elections and wage negotiations. Chapter 92 treats women’s paid and unpaid labour comparatively across society; here the point is narrower: Dalit history becomes distorted if women appear only as dependants of male labourers.

88.12 Floods and embankments reproduced inequality because environmental exposure followed land and settlement inequality

The Kosi and other north-Bihar rivers did not affect all households in the same way. Families without secure land were more likely to occupy embankments, marginal plots or repeatedly inundated sites, while better-connected households could possess safer land, livestock, storage or transport. Studies of villages inside and outside embankments report very high landlessness among Musahar households and show how sharecropping, relief access and compensation can disadvantage cultivators without formal title. Floods also disrupt schooling, wage work and documents needed for welfare claims. Environmental history therefore intersects directly with Dalit history: the same household may face caste discrimination in labour, insecure residence in a hazard zone and weak recognition in compensation systems. Mukul Sharma's work on Dina-Bhadri further shows how ecological risk itself has entered Dalit cultural assertion.

88.13 Commons, ponds and river margins were resources over which citizenship was negotiated

For land-poor households, common land, ponds, riverbanks, grazing space and harvested residues could be essential economic resources. Exclusion from a pond or common path was therefore more than symbolic untouchability; it affected nutrition, livestock, fishing, fuel and mobility. Struggles over gair-majarua land, ceiling-surplus land, homestead plots and public commons became recurring forms of Dalit mobilisation in north Bihar. Musahar performances of Dina-Bhadri have been used in precisely such campaigns, linking memory to claims over land and natural resources. These conflicts show why the history of rights must include material access. The ability to draw water, cross a field path, build on a residential plot or use a pond could be as consequential as formal recognition in law.

88.14 Colonial ethnography made Dalit communities legible to the state while often reproducing elite prejudice

District gazetteers, settlement reports and censuses created a durable archive of caste names, occupations and supposed "customs." These records can help reconstruct settlement geography and labour patterns, but they frequently converted prejudice into description. Food habits, cleanliness, bodily appearance or alleged criminality were sometimes treated as inherent communal attributes rather than outcomes of poverty, exclusion or administrative policing. Once such characterisations entered official print, later writers repeated them. Dalit historiography therefore has to read colonial records symptomatically: not only for what they say about a community, but for what the state wanted to classify and control. The changing names in Scheduled-Caste lists also demonstrate that official taxonomy is historical rather than timeless.

88.15 Anti-untouchability reform challenged public exclusion but reached villages unevenly

The late colonial and early postcolonial periods saw campaigns for access to wells, schools, roads and temples, alongside broader nationalist and social-reform attacks on untouchability. Their local effects were uneven. Symbolic inclusion could advance faster than land redistribution or wage equality; a school might formally admit Dalit children while seating, teacher attitudes or peer discrimination continued to mark difference. Conversely, in some villages routine economic interaction changed before ideological language did. The history of anti-untouchability must therefore be measured through institutions of everyday life rather than by declarations alone. Access to the village centre, tea shops, public transport, panchayat buildings and common water became practical indicators of changing status.

88.16 The move from “Depressed Classes” to Scheduled Castes transformed stigma into a basis of enforceable entitlement

Colonial schedules of disadvantaged castes were administrative devices, but the constitutional order after 1950 attached them to a new rights framework. Article 17 abolished untouchability; equality provisions, political reservation and public-employment and educational reservation converted membership in a Scheduled Caste into a claim on the state rather than merely a census description. This was a profound inversion. A category historically associated with exclusion became the legal basis for remedies and representation. Yet access depended on documentation, schooling, information and administrative capacity, which were unevenly distributed. Communities with stronger networks could often use new institutions earlier than households living in remote, flood-prone or segregated settlements.

88.17 The 1989 Prevention of Atrocities Act recognised that ordinary equality law had not eliminated caste violence

The Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes (Prevention of Atrocities) Act, enacted in 1989 and brought into force in 1990, created specific offences, special-court provisions and later strengthened victim and witness rights. Its historical importance lies in the state’s recognition that violence against Scheduled Castes could be structured by caste power rather than treated as a series of socially neutral crimes. In agrarian settings, disputes over wages, land, pathways, water, honour or political office could escalate because local dominance was being contested. The existence of a protective law did not guarantee reporting or conviction, but it altered the language through which violence could be named and challenged. Bihar’s SC/ST Welfare Department continues to treat prevention-of-atrocities administration as a core responsibility.

88.18 Zamindari abolition weakened an old hierarchy without giving most Dalit labourers an agrarian asset base

The end of zamindari removed intermediaries and changed rural authority, but its distributive effects depended on who held recognised tenancy, who could document claims, and how ceilings and surplus-land rules were implemented. Middle and substantial cultivating castes often gained more from agrarian restructuring than households whose principal asset was labour. For many Dalit families, the crucial unresolved issue remained access to a homestead plot or a small piece of cultivable land. This helps explain why post-zamindari rural conflict did not simply disappear: authority shifted from older estate structures toward new combinations of landholding, party organisation, contractors and panchayat power. Dalit labourers could gain political voice while remaining economically dependent on local employers.

88.19 Homestead land became a minimum threshold between residence by permission and residence by right

A secure house site can be historically more transformative than its small acreage suggests. Families living on another person’s land may avoid wage disputes, political opposition or legal complaints because eviction threatens the entire household. A titled or recognised homestead allows investment in a pucca dwelling, sanitation, electricity, livestock, a kitchen garden and documents tied to address. Bihar’s recurring policies on homestead land for landless households therefore belong within the history of citizenship. Where implementation lagged, Dalit settlements continued to negotiate residence through customary tolerance, encroachment or collective occupation. The distinction between “landless” and “homesteadless” is crucial because a household may own no farm land yet still acquire a more secure social position through residential tenure.

88.20 Schooling changed Dalit history when attendance became a bridge to institutions beyond the village

The expansion of primary schools, scholarships, hostels, midday meals, uniforms, bicycles and residential educational institutions reduced some barriers to entry, but first-generation schooling imposed high costs on poor households. Children's labour had economic value; discrimination could make attendance humiliating; secondary schools were farther away; and documentation or private tuition favoured better-off families. Even modest literacy, however, changed interaction with the state. A household could read a notice, complete a form, challenge a wage calculation or seek employment beyond manual labour. Bihar's welfare administration and Mahadalit programmes increasingly linked education to community workers, hostels and incentives. Educational mobility remains unequal across Scheduled-Caste communities, which is why Census 2011 educational tables are more informative when disaggregated by caste and sex than when read only as an SC average.

88.21 Migration weakened some village monopolies of labour while transferring workers into new regimes of precarity

Out-migration to Punjab, Haryana, Delhi, Kolkata, Mumbai and other labour markets widened the option set for land-poor households. A worker who could leave after a wage dispute was harder to discipline through hereditary service or village credit. Remittances financed food, houses, ceremonies, schooling and consumer goods, and migration networks created information channels independent of local patrons. Yet caste did not become irrelevant. Migrants often entered the least secure sectors—construction, loading, brick kilns, sanitation, domestic work or seasonal agriculture—where contracts, housing and social protection were weak. Migration thus transformed dependency more than it abolished it. The shift from a named village patron to an anonymous contractor could increase cash earnings while leaving occupational risk high.

88.22 Public employment programmes placed the state directly inside the village wage bargain

Rural public works altered labour relations by creating an employer, wage schedule and work entitlement outside the landlord-labourer dyad. Earlier relief works and later MGNREGA offered especially important potential to households with little land. In practice, registration, work allocation, measurement, delayed payment and local control could reproduce inequality, and ethnographic studies report that poor Musahar workers did not always receive the full benefits promised. Even so, the institutional principle mattered: a labourer could claim work as a citizen rather than request it as a favour. When combined with migration and rising agricultural wages, this weakened the social legitimacy of unpaid service and low customary payments.

88.23 Dina-Bhadri folklore turned memory into a political resource for Musahar communities

The stories of the brothers Dina and Bhadri circulate widely across north Bihar and the Nepal Tarai. In Musahar performance traditions, they appear as powerful protectors of poor labourers and figures who confront exploitation. Mukul Sharma documents how these stories, songs, idols, flags and performances have been mobilised in struggles over wages, land, commons and environmental justice in Madhubani, Darbhanga, Saharsa, Muzaffarpur and Samastipur. Their significance for history is methodological as well as cultural. An archive centred only on courts and censuses would miss the way subordinated communities store memory in performance. The modern political use of folklore does not prove every element of a legend as factual history; it shows how communities make the past usable in contemporary claims.

From inherited stigma to public assertion: several routes, not one sequence

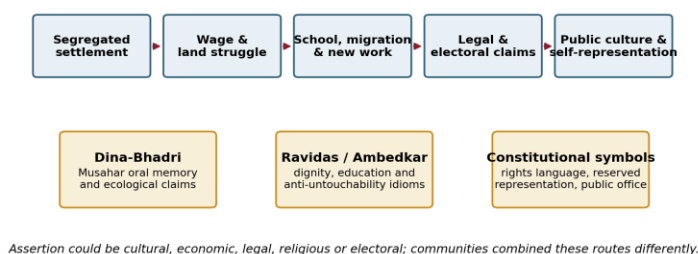


Figure 350 — Multiple routes from inherited stigma to public assertion

88.24 Ravidas and Ambedkar became public idioms through which dignity could be detached from inherited occupation

Public statues, commemorations, songs, reading circles and caste associations expanded a vocabulary of dignity beyond village patronage. Ravidas offered a devotional idiom of equality with deep resonance among communities historically associated with leather work, while B. R. Ambedkar supplied a constitutional, educational and explicitly anti-caste language. Their symbols could coexist with local deities and kinship traditions rather than replace them. The spread of portraits, anniversaries and blue flags in rural and small-town Bihar is therefore part of social history: public space itself became an arena in which formerly subordinated groups claimed authorship of political memory. Such cultural visibility sometimes preceded material equality, but it changed the terms of deference and aspiration.

88.25 Reserved political representation opened offices that had once been structurally inaccessible

Reserved constituencies in legislatures and reserved seats in local government changed who could formally occupy public office. Panchayat reservation was especially consequential because it placed Dalit representatives inside institutions that allocate roads, housing lists, certificates, public works and welfare. Office did not automatically equal autonomy: representatives could face bureaucratic dependence, party discipline, local elite pressure or proxy control. Nevertheless, the symbolic and practical change was substantial. A hamlet that had previously approached the state through a landlord or caste notable could increasingly do so through elected representatives, ward members, teachers, community workers or party activists of its own social background.

88.26 Dalit political visibility grew unevenly because communities possessed different demographic and organisational resources

The rise of Dalit leaders in Bihar broadened representation but did not dissolve internal hierarchy within the Scheduled-Caste category. Numerically large and organisationally networked communities could translate votes into party bargaining more effectively than very small or intensely landless groups. The public prominence of Paswan politics is the clearest example: it expanded Dalit presence in state and national politics while simultaneously making differences within the SC population more visible. Later policy debates increasingly asked whether benefits of reservation and welfare were reaching the most deprived communities. Chapter 95 examines reservation and new middle classes directly; the historical point here is that representation generated a second-order politics over the distribution of representation itself.

88.27 The Mahadalit policy phase made intra-Dalit deprivation an explicit object of Bihar state policy

From the late 2000s Bihar created a State Mahadalit Commission and the Bihar Mahadalit Vikas Mission to target communities judged especially deprived in educational, economic, social and political terms. The composition of the policy category changed over time, illustrating that “Mahadalit” is a state programme category rather than an ancient social identity. Schemes have included community workers, skill development, residential or educational support, community halls, monitoring registers and links to wider welfare programmes. The historical significance lies in the move from treating Scheduled Castes as a single welfare bloc toward recognising internal differences. It also created new intermediaries—such as Vikas Mitras—through whom the state entered Dalit settlements at a finer local scale.

88.28 Census data illuminate structural inequality only when read together with local histories

The 2011 Census provides caste-specific tables for population, work, education, age and migration across Bihar’s districts, including Madhubani, Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Vaishali, Samastipur, Bhagalpur and Banka. These data establish that the Scheduled-Caste population is internally heterogeneous and heavily rural, and that communities differ in agricultural-labour dependence and educational attainment. They cannot, however, show the quality of a school, the insecurity of a house site, discrimination at a tea stall, a contractor’s wage deduction or the meaning of a folk hero. Quantitative and qualitative sources answer different questions. A rigorous Dalit history uses census data to prevent anecdotal generalisation and field history to prevent administrative categories from becoming the whole story.

88.29 Nepal-side Mithila shares Dalit communities and cultural networks but developed under a different legal history

Across the border in Madhesh, Musahar, Chamar/Harijan/Ram, Dusadh/Paswan/Pasi, Dom, Tatma/Tatwa, Khatwe, Dhobi and other Dalit communities participate in the same wider plains economy of agriculture, migration, markets and marriage networks, yet Nepal’s political and legal history is distinct. The 1854 Muluki Ain encoded a state hierarchy different from British-Indian classification, and democratic and constitutional reforms later dismantled legal caste discrimination through another institutional path. Nepal’s 2021 census now publishes dedicated Dalit statistics and caste/ethnicity reports, making the internal diversity of Madheshi Dalits visible. Cross-border kinship does not erase differences in citizenship, land law, welfare entitlement or political representation; those differences are themselves part of regional social history.

Regional emphases in Dalit histories

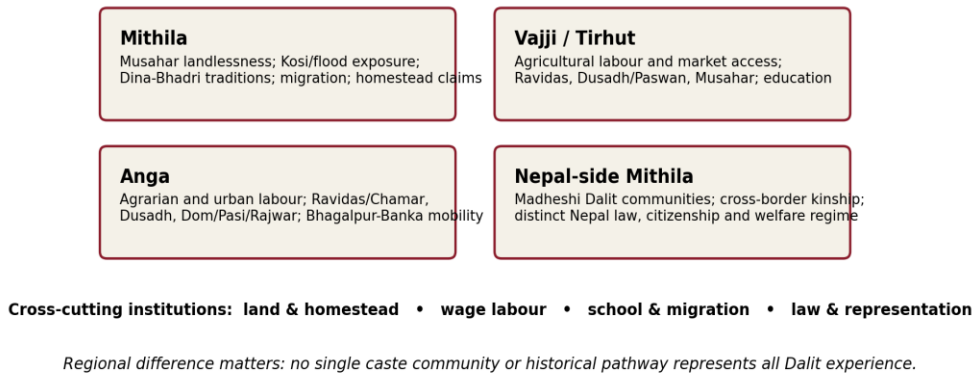


Figure 351 — Regional emphases in Dalit histories across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Mithila

88.30 Dalit history is the history of changing capacity to refuse, claim and represent

Across Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the most revealing measure of change is not whether caste “survived” or “disappeared,” but whether subordinated households gained the capacity to refuse unpaid labour, bargain over wages, remain securely housed, send children to school, migrate without a patron’s permission, enter public institutions, report violence, obtain documents, hold office and narrate their own past. These capacities expanded unevenly. Landlessness and occupational stigma remain powerful constraints, while education, migration, law, welfare and politics have created new routes of mobility. Dalit communities did not travel one common path from oppression to emancipation. Their histories are plural, and the regional record becomes clearer when those differences are preserved rather than compressed into a single story of caste.

Table 88.1 — Historical arenas of Dalit exclusion and change

Historical arena	Mechanism of exclusion	Major route of change	Source caution
Land and residence	Landlessness, insecure tola sites, eviction dependence	Homestead title, surplus/common land claims, housing schemes	Ownership records miss customary access and informal occupation
Labour	Debt, begari, low customary wages, hereditary expectations	Migration, public works, cash wages, unions and legal remedies	Occupations differed sharply by caste community and locality
Public space	Segregated settlement and restricted access to common institutions	Schools, roads, transport, panchayats, anti-untouchability enforcement	Formal access can coexist with everyday discrimination
Education	First-generation costs, distance, discrimination, child labour	Scholarships, hostels, meals, residential schools, credentials	Enrollment alone does not measure completion or learning quality

Historical arena	Mechanism of exclusion	Major route of change	Source caution
Violence and law	Local dominance and retaliation over wages, land or office	Article 17, civil-rights law, 1989 PoA Act, victim-rights provisions	Reporting, investigation and conviction require separate evidence
Culture	Elite archives and occupational stereotypes silence community memory	Dina-Bhadri, Ravidas, Ambedkar, commemorations and local performance	Cultural memory is evidence of self-representation, not a literal chronicle
Politics	Dependence on intermediaries for access to state institutions	Reserved seats, local office, parties, caste associations	Representation is uneven within the Scheduled-Caste category
Welfare state	Single-category programmes can miss the most deprived groups	Targeted SC/Mahadalit schemes, community workers, monitoring	Policy categories change over time and should not be projected backward

Chapter 89 — Adivasi and Forest-Connected Populations Where Regionally Relevant

Adivasi history enters a history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga unevenly. The plains core of Mithila and Vajji cannot be represented as a continuous forest-tribal zone, while the eastern and south-eastern borderlands of Anga have long been connected to Santal, Paharia and other Adivasi histories through settlement, labour, forest margins, colonial administration and the former Bhagalpur-Santal Parganas geography. Modern district boundaries further complicate the picture: communities, markets and kin networks cross Bihar-Jharkhand and India-Nepal borders that were drawn after many of the relevant social relations had formed.

This chapter therefore uses three distinctions throughout. First, Scheduled Tribe is a constitutional and state-specific legal category, not a timeless ethnographic label. Second, forest-connected livelihood does not by itself establish Scheduled-Tribe identity; many non-ST households also depend on commons, grazing, fuelwood, bamboo, river margins and seasonal forest labour. Third, “Adivasi” is a political-historical vocabulary whose meaning can overlap with, but is not identical to, official schedules. The task is to recover the regionally relevant histories without projecting a single tribal frontier across all of Mithila, Vajji and Anga.

89.1 Regional relevance must be demonstrated rather than assumed

The demographic and historical weight of Scheduled-Tribe communities varies sharply across the study area. In the central Mithila-Vajji plains, ST populations are generally small and dispersed. In the eastern districts and the Bihar-Jharkhand borderlands, however, Adivasi histories become much more visible. Bhagalpur and Banka are especially important because the nineteenth-century Bhagalpur district once extended into areas later separated as the Santal Parganas, while Purnia and Katihar formed part of a wider eastern frontier of migration, cultivation and labour. A regional history should therefore use a graded map of relevance: strong where settlement and institutions make Adivasi experience structurally important, and restrained where the evidence shows only small or recent populations.

89.2 Scheduled Tribe is a constitutional category with a specific legal history

The Constitution of India did not simply rename an ancient social block. Scheduled Tribes are communities specified through constitutional orders for particular states and union territories, with later amendments altering names and coverage. Bihar’s current notified list includes Santal, Munda, Oraon, Mal Paharia, Sauria Paharia, Kharia, Kharwar, Ho, Gond, Asur, Birhor and numerous other communities. The list is legally decisive for reservation and welfare eligibility, but historical writing must still ask where each community lived, how it arrived or expanded, which languages and institutions it maintained, and how colonial and postcolonial administrations classified it.

89.3 Bihar’s Scheduled-Tribe population is significant at state scale but highly concentrated geographically

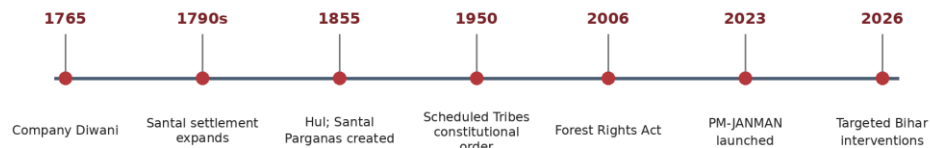
Census 2011 recorded 1,336,573 Scheduled-Tribe persons in Bihar, about 1.3 per cent of the state population. The aggregate conceals major spatial concentration. West Champaran and the southern or south-eastern districts contain large shares, while eastern districts such as Purnia, Katihar, Bhagalpur and Banka also contain historically important communities. In the Mithila-Vajji core, district shares are much smaller. This pattern is methodologically important: statewide percentages cannot be used to infer village-

level presence, and a low regional share does not erase locally dense settlements. District and subdistrict tables must therefore be read alongside settlement histories.

89.4 The Anga-eastern Bihar borderland is the principal Adivasi zone within this volume's core geography

Bhagalpur and Banka connect the Gangetic plain to the Rajmahal and Chotanagpur-facing uplands. Their social history cannot be separated cleanly from the adjoining Santal Parganas simply because the latter now lie in Jharkhand. The official history of Bhagalpur records that Santal Pargana was carved out as a separate district in 1855-56; Banka, created from Bhagalpur in 1991, retains the same borderland orientation. This is the clearest place within the volume where Adivasi settlement, forest-edge cultivation, colonial frontier policy and modern ST welfare belong inside the main narrative rather than in a marginal note.

From frontier administration to rights-based policy



Thresholds changed the legal and administrative setting; they did not erase local inequalities in land, labour or access.

Figure 352 — Institutional thresholds in Adivasi and forest-rights history

89.5 Bhagalpur's older administrative geography linked the plains directly to the Santal frontier

Before the mid-nineteenth-century territorial reorganisation, Bhagalpur administration covered a much larger south-eastern tract. The Santal Parganas were created after the 1855 uprising, and even the new arrangement retained administrative ties with Bhagalpur for a time. This older geography matters because colonial policing, revenue, markets, jails, roads and officials connected the hill and forest frontier to Bhagalpur town. Historical actors moved through these networks long before the Bihar-Jharkhand boundary of 2000. Anga's social history therefore includes a frontier relationship as well as a riverine and urban one.

89.6 Santal settlement expanded through a frontier economy of clearing, cultivation and rent

Official and colonial accounts describe Santal migration into the Rajmahal-Santal Parganas zone from the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries. Landholders and officials valued Santal cultivators for clearing and extending cultivation, but the same process exposed settlers to rent claims, debt, merchant credit and administrative coercion. The frontier was therefore not an empty forest transformed by isolated pioneers. It was a political economy in which cultivators, hill communities, zamindars, moneylenders, police and state officers competed over land, labour and revenue. Those relations shaped the borderland adjoining Bhagalpur and Banka.

89.7 The Santal Hul of 1855 was a crisis of land, debt, administration and sovereignty

The Hul led by Sidhu, Kanhu, Chand and Bhairav cannot be reduced to spontaneous “tribal unrest.” Grievances centred on moneylenders, rent, police and the corruption or remoteness of colonial authority. Thousands assembled at Bhognadih in June 1855, and the rebellion spread across a zone administratively linked to Bhagalpur and neighbouring districts. Its suppression was violent, but its institutional consequence was equally important: Act XXXVII of 1855 created a special non-regulation arrangement for the Santal Parganas. The episode demonstrates how Adivasi political action could force the colonial state to redraw territorial and legal arrangements.

89.8 Adivasi political history includes institutions of village authority, not only rebellion

Santal village organisation historically included offices such as manjhi and other community functionaries, while different Adivasi peoples maintained distinct councils, ritual authorities and kinship institutions. Colonial officials often described these arrangements as survivals outside the state, but in practice village authority interacted continuously with landlords, police, courts, markets and revenue institutions. The historical question is therefore not whether Adivasi communities were “inside” or “outside” state society. It is how layered authorities negotiated disputes, marriage, land, ritual, labour and collective responsibility under changing regimes.

89.9 Paharia histories warn against treating all hill and forest peoples as one population

The Rajmahal hills and adjoining tracts were also associated with Mal Paharia, Sauria Paharia and other Paharia communities whose histories differed from those of Santal cultivators. Colonial policy alternated between military coercion, allowances, indirect supervision and schemes of “pacification.” Later Santal expansion changed the demographic and agrarian balance of the hills. For a history centred on Mithila-Vajji-Anga, the key point is comparative: the eastern frontier contained multiple communities with distinct languages, settlement systems and political histories, not a single “tribe” occupying a uniform ecological niche.

89.10 Banka makes the forest-borderland connection visible inside present-day Bihar

Banka’s eastern and southern boundaries meet Jharkhand, and its official district history explicitly connects the district to the history of old Bhagalpur and the formation of the Santal Parganas after 1855. Contemporary welfare programmes also identify Banka as a district with PVTG-targeted interventions. The district therefore illustrates continuity across a major administrative rupture: older mobility and settlement routes survive even though the modern state boundary separates Bihar from Jharkhand. Development, schooling, markets and labour migration continue to operate across that boundary.

Regional relevance is uneven**ANGA / EASTERN BORDERLAND**

Bhagalpur-Banka and the old Bhagalpur-Santal Parganas connection; Santal and PVTG histories are structurally important.

PURNIA-KATIHAR / EASTERN NORTH BIHAR

Smaller but visible ST populations shaped by migration, agrarian labour, frontier settlement and later welfare institutions.

MITHILA / VAJJI CORE

ST populations are generally smaller and more dispersed; analysis must avoid projecting forest-frontier histories across the whole plains region.

NEPAL-SIDE MITHILA / MADHESH

Use Nepal's caste/ethnicity and Adivasi-Janajati categories on their own terms; do not substitute India's Scheduled-Tribe schedule.

Principle: legal category, historical ecology and regional demography must be demonstrated separately.

Figure 353 — Uneven regional relevance across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and the eastern borderlands

89.11 Purnia and Katihar belong to a different eastern frontier of mobility and agrarian labour

Purnia and Katihar sit between north Bihar, Bengal and the north-eastern corridor. Their Scheduled-Tribe populations are smaller than those of Bihar's principal tribal districts but historically meaningful. Migration, estate agriculture, railway construction, floodplain cultivation and labour circulation created mixed settlements in which Santal, Oraon, Munda and other communities could appear far from older homelands. Such mobility makes "tribal area" a poor substitute for household and migration history. A person enumerated in Katihar may belong to a community whose wider institutional network crosses several states.

89.12 The Mithila-Vajji core requires restraint because forest history and Adivasi history are not synonymous

Madhubani, Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Vaishali and nearby districts contain Scheduled-Tribe residents, but their social history is not organised around a continuous tribal forest frontier. Plains households of many castes historically used groves, riverbanks, grazing land, reeds, bamboo and fuelwood. Treating every forest-connected livelihood as "tribal" would erase both Adivasi specificity and the multi-caste ecology of the plains. In this core zone, the stronger questions are migration, scattered settlement, labour-market incorporation, educational access and the visibility or invisibility of small ST populations within institutions designed around larger caste blocs.

89.13 Forest-connected livelihoods form an economic relation, not a legal identity

Fuelwood, leaf litter, bamboo, fodder, grazing, fruits, fibres, lac, medicinal plants and seasonal forest labour can contribute to household reproduction without determining caste or tribe. Similarly, a legally recognised Scheduled-Tribe household may earn mainly from wage labour, migration, salaried employment or cultivation rather than forest produce. Historical analysis therefore needs two separate variables: resource dependence and legal-community identity. Their overlap can be important, especially in upland and border districts, but it must be shown empirically rather than assumed from stereotypes.

89.14 Colonial revenue expansion converted ecological margins into taxable property

The late eighteenth- and nineteenth-century expansion of settled cultivation altered access to forest, grazing and shifting-use landscapes across eastern India. Revenue states preferred measurable fields, rent-paying tenants and bounded estates; local practices often depended on seasonal movement, shared use and flexible claims. The resulting friction did not affect every community in the same way. Groups with weak documentary title or limited access to courts faced particular risks. In the Bhagalpur-Santal borderland, agrarian expansion, debt and administrative change became part of the same historical process.

89.15 Colonial ethnography created durable community labels while flattening internal diversity

Gazetteers, censuses and ethnographic surveys provide indispensable information on settlement, language and occupation, yet they also translated fluid identities into ranked and bounded categories. Officials frequently described communities through racial typologies, civilisational hierarchies or assumptions about “primitive” custom. Those texts must be read against the grain. A census name can document state recognition without proving timeless self-identification; an occupational description can show administrative perception without proving that every household practised that occupation.

89.16 Language and ritual institutions preserved community continuity across migration

Migration did not necessarily dissolve Adivasi identity. Santal language and ritual practice, community festivals, clan rules, village authority and collective performance could travel with settlements and be renewed in new environments. At the same time, multilingualism expanded through contact with Hindi, Angika, Maithili, Bengali, Urdu and market languages. Language shift therefore should not be treated automatically as “assimilation.” Households could maintain ritual and kin institutions while using regional languages in schools, markets and administration.

89.17 Women’s labour linked household subsistence, agriculture, commons and migration

Adivasi and forest-connected women’s work is under-recorded when statistics privilege the principal male occupation. Women could combine agricultural labour, weeding, harvesting, livestock care, collection of fuel or leaves, household processing, market sale and seasonal migration. Their access to land, forest produce and public programmes could differ from men’s because documentation, mobility, safety and household authority were gendered. Any account of changing livelihood therefore has to ask who actually collected, cultivated, sold, migrated and controlled income.

89.18 Markets could widen choice while deepening dependence on traders and credit

Forest produce, livestock, grain, labour and craft goods connected villages to weekly markets and larger trading centres. Market access could raise the value of produce and enable cash income, yet asymmetries in weighing, credit, transport and information could shift gains to intermediaries. Debt also linked consumption shocks to future labour. The historical pattern resembles other agrarian relationships in Bihar

but with additional dependence on remoteness and resource access. Roads and mobile connectivity change these bargaining conditions without automatically eliminating them.

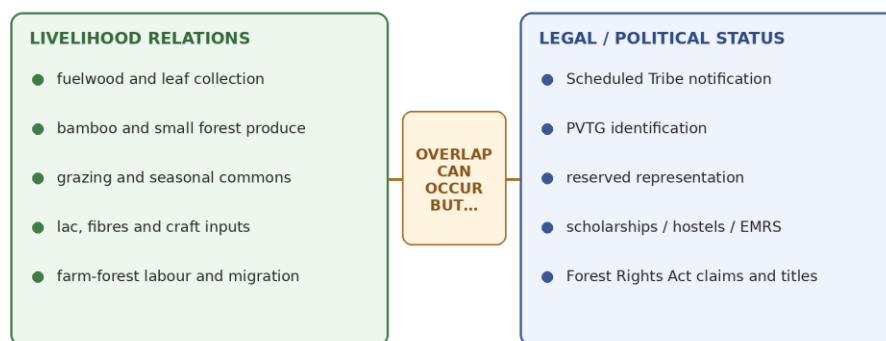
89.19 Education transformed the institutional horizon but distance remained a structural cost

Census 2011 recorded ST literacy in Bihar below the state average, with a marked gender gap. Schools may be formally open yet difficult to use when settlements are distant, transport is weak, instruction is in an unfamiliar language or first-generation learners lack support. Scholarships, hostels and residential schools therefore matter not only as welfare transfers but as institutions that reduce distance. Their effects, however, depend on staffing, safety, continuity between school stages and the ability of families to absorb the opportunity cost of children's work.

89.20 Migration created new livelihoods and new forms of vulnerability

Scheduled-Tribe migration tables show that Bihar's Adivasi population is not territorially static. Men and women move for marriage, work, education and family reasons, while seasonal labour creates additional circulation that census residence may only partly capture. Migration can loosen dependence on a single landlord, trader or forest edge, but it can also move workers into construction, brick kilns, domestic work or informal urban employment with weak social protection. The relevant historical shift is from constrained local choice to a wider but still unequal labour geography.

Forest-connected livelihood is not the same thing as Scheduled-Tribe identity



Historical method: identify who used resources, under what tenure, and under which legal category in the specific period.

Figure 354 — Distinguishing forest-connected livelihood from Scheduled-Tribe legal status

89.21 The Forest Rights Act created a rights framework whose Bihar implementation has been limited

The Scheduled Tribes and Other Traditional Forest Dwellers (Recognition of Forest Rights) Act, 2006 sought to correct historical injustice by recognising individual and community forest rights under specified conditions. Ministry of Tribal Affairs monitoring reported that Bihar had received 8,022 claims and distributed only 121 titles by 31 January 2025, with no community titles recorded in that return. These figures should not be read as proof that only 121 households had legitimate historical connections to forest land. They show instead the narrow administrative outcome of a claims process shaped by evidence, institutional capacity, eligibility rules and local implementation.

89.22 PVTG policy makes extreme deprivation a separate administrative object

India identifies a subset of Particularly Vulnerable Tribal Groups for specially targeted interventions. The Bihar-Jharkhand historical list includes Asur, Birhor, Birjia, Hill Kharia, Korwa, Mal Paharia, Parhaiya, Sauria Paharia and Savar. Because the historical notification predates the creation of Jharkhand, current programme geography must be checked district by district rather than inferred from the old combined list. PVTG policy is therefore best understood as a contemporary administrative response to severe demographic, educational and livelihood disadvantage, not as a timeless anthropological hierarchy among Adivasi peoples.

89.23 PM-JANMAN shows that contemporary tribal policy now operates through household-level infrastructure

By 30 June 2026, Union government reporting on PM-JANMAN in Bihar listed interventions in Banka, Bhagalpur, Katihar, Purnia, Madhepura, Supaul and several other districts. The reported components included sanctioned housing, drinking-water village saturation, hostels and anganwadi centres. Bhagalpur alone had 336 PMAY-G houses sanctioned in the district table, while Banka, Katihar, Purnia and other eastern districts also appeared. The historical significance is the shift from broad “tribal development” rhetoric toward household and settlement infrastructure that can be geographically monitored.

89.24 Education policy increasingly combines scholarships, hostels and residential institutions

Contemporary policy includes pre-matric and post-matric scholarships, hostels and Eklavya Model Residential Schools. Bihar’s functional EMRS institutions reported by the Ministry of Tribal Affairs are concentrated outside the central Mithila-Vajji core, reflecting the geography of larger ST populations. For students from smaller dispersed populations, ordinary district schools, hostels and scholarship administration may therefore matter more than a dedicated tribal school. The institutional problem is one of scale: programmes designed for concentrated populations do not always fit scattered households.

89.25 Political representation converted demographic classification into public office

Scheduled-Tribe reservation in legislatures and local bodies links population classification to representation. Where ST populations are small, reserved constituencies may be geographically distant, and local panchayat reservation can become the more immediate arena of office-holding. Representation does not mechanically transfer economic power, but it changes the public legitimacy of claim-making. A community member can approach the state not only as a beneficiary but as an elected representative, party worker, teacher, welfare intermediary or rights activist.

89.26 Identity claims and demands for ST inclusion reveal that official lists are politically consequential

Because Scheduled-Tribe status carries constitutional entitlements, demands for inclusion or modification are politically charged. Government procedure requires proposals to move through the state government, the Registrar General of India, the National Commission for Scheduled Tribes and Parliament. Such claims should not be treated either as self-evident proof of “tribal origin” or as mere opportunism. They are modern struggles over historical recognition, disadvantage and access to state institutions, and they often mobilise ethnography, genealogy, occupation and regional memory as evidence.

89.27 Cultural continuity is produced through public performance as well as household practice

Festivals, songs, dance, oral narratives, community associations and language publications create public forms of Adivasi identity beyond the village. Migration can intensify such practices because urban or dispersed communities organise associations to reproduce festivals and mutual support. At the same time, state-sponsored cultural display can detach performance from land and livelihood questions. Historical writing should therefore connect cultural visibility to the material institutions that sustain communities rather than presenting performance as a self-contained “tribal culture.”

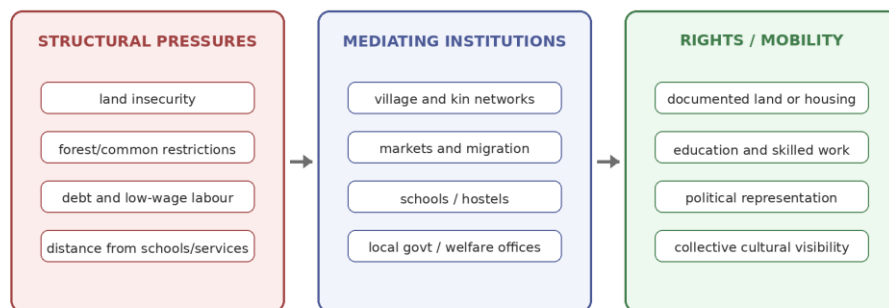
89.28 Development can reduce isolation while increasing pressure on land and resources

Roads, electrification, mobile networks, schools and markets can lower the cost of health care, education and migration. They can also raise land values, accelerate extraction, intensify commercial agriculture and make previously remote resources easier for outsiders to reach. The same road may therefore expand opportunity and dispossession risk. The outcome depends on title, bargaining power, collective organisation and the terms under which infrastructure is built. This dual effect is especially important in border districts where forest-edge villages are integrated rapidly into larger markets.

89.29 Nepal-side Mithila requires a different legal vocabulary of caste, ethnicity and Adivasi Janajati

The Nepal census and constitutional order do not reproduce India’s state-wise Scheduled-Tribe schedule. Nepal uses caste/ethnicity classifications and a separate policy vocabulary of Adivasi Janajati. Madhesh Province contains a complex plains population and is connected to Bihar through marriage, labour and markets, but the distribution of Janajati communities varies across the Tarai; Tharu populations, for example, are especially important farther west as well as in parts of the plains. A connected history must therefore compare institutions without treating “ST” and “Janajati” as interchangeable legal categories.

From marginal location to public claim-making



Change is contingent: programmes create institutional openings, but outcomes depend on land, documentation, distance, gender and local

Figure 355 — Institutional pathways from marginal location to public claim-making

89.30 Adivasi history in this volume is a history of borderlands, mobility, rights and uneven visibility

The central conclusion is deliberately regional. Mithila and Vajji should not be retrospectively imagined as tribal forest societies, while Anga's eastern and south-eastern borderlands cannot be understood without Adivasi histories. The old Bhagalpur-Santal Parganas connection, Santal settlement and the Hul, Paharia histories, eastern Bihar migration, modern ST classification, limited forest-rights implementation and recent PVTG infrastructure programmes all belong to one long transformation. The strongest continuity is not isolation but negotiation: over land, debt, labour, language, schools, markets, welfare documentation and political voice. Forest-connected livelihoods remain important, but they must be analysed independently from legal community status. That distinction makes it possible to recognise both Adivasi specificity and the multi-community ecology of the wider region.

Table 89.1 — Regional arenas of Adivasi and forest-connected history

Arena	Historical significance	Principal evidence	Interpretive caution
Bhagalpur-Banka	Old Bhagalpur-Santal frontier; settlement, Hul, borderland mobility	District histories, gazetteers, Census ST tables	Modern Bihar-Jharkhand boundary is later than many social networks
Purnia-Katihar	Migration, agrarian labour and eastern corridor settlement	Census district tables, migration tables, welfare records	Do not infer one origin or occupation for all ST households
Mithila-Vajji core	Small/dispersed ST populations; forest-connected livelihoods among many communities	Census, district handbooks, local studies	Forest dependence is not equivalent to ST identity
Forest rights	Claims to individual/community rights under FRA 2006	MoTA FRA monthly progress reports	Administrative titles are not a complete measure of historical use
PVTG policy	Targeted housing, water, hostels, anganwadis and livelihood support	PM-JANMAN / MoTA reporting	Historical Bihar-Jharkhand PVTG list requires current geographic checking
Education and migration	Mobility beyond village and forest-edge economies	Census literacy/migration; scholarships and hostels	Access and completion differ by gender, distance and documentation
Nepal-side Mithila	Cross-border comparison of caste/ethnicity and Janajati categories	Nepal census and indigenous-nationality institutions	Indian ST and Nepal Janajati are not interchangeable legal categories

Chapter 90 — Muslims of Mithila and Anga

The Muslim history of Mithila and Anga cannot be reduced to rulers, demographic percentages or moments of communal conflict. Muslim households entered the region's social fabric through many routes: military and administrative service, scholarly and Sufi networks, agrarian settlement, artisanal production, trade, transport, migration and ordinary neighbourhood life. By the colonial period, Muslims were present across villages, qasbas and cities in sharply different class positions—from landholders and professionals to cultivators, tenants, weavers, petty traders and labourers. Their languages also varied. Local speech could be Maithili, Angika, Bajjika or other regional vernaculars, while Urdu carried literary, educational and public associations and Persian had earlier served administrative and scholarly worlds.

This chapter therefore asks how Muslim social life changed rather than treating “the Muslims” as a single actor. It follows the interaction of religion with land, occupation, biradari, class, gender, education, language and political institutions. It also keeps India and Nepal analytically distinct: the open border connects families and markets, but citizenship, census categories, minority policy and language regimes belong to different states. Episodes of violence—including 1946 in Bihar and 1989 in Bhagalpur—must be confronted directly, yet they cannot be allowed to erase the much longer history of everyday interdependence and shared regional life.

90.1 Muslim presence developed through several routes, not one “arrival” event

Islamic political power reached Bihar through the expansion of north Indian sultanates, while eastern India was also connected to Bengal, riverine commerce and itinerant scholarly and devotional networks. These processes did not transform Mithila or Anga at a single moment. Political authority, tribute, military stations, market towns and rural settlement changed at different speeds. Conversion likewise cannot be inferred from a ruler's religion. Local Muslim populations were made over generations through settlement, marriage, occupational networks, patronage and religious institutions. A connected history therefore separates political incorporation from demographic and social change.

90.2 Sultanate and Bengal-facing frontiers produced layered rather than uniform political authority

Mithila's northern plains and Anga's eastern corridors sat near shifting boundaries among Delhi-centred regimes, Bengal polities and local landed powers. Muslim officers, soldiers, scribes, merchants and religious specialists could be present even where direct state control was intermittent. Local chiefs and revenue intermediaries often survived political transitions. This layered sovereignty matters because later community narratives sometimes convert dynastic change into a simple story of replacement. The social record instead suggests accommodation, competition and administrative recombination across existing agrarian institutions.

90.3 Mughal-era revenue and road networks strengthened qasbas and service groups

Early modern imperial administration expanded revenue assessment, military movement, postal roads and market integration across Bihar and Bengal. Qasbas and district towns became sites where landholders, merchants, artisans, scribes and religious establishments interacted. Muslim service groups were part of these worlds, but so were non-Muslim accountants, bankers, cultivators and intermediaries. The importance of Mughal rule for Muslim social history therefore lies less in an assumed communal bloc than in the growth of

institutions—revenue offices, courts, market centres and patronage networks—that offered specific families routes into property, learning and public authority.

90.4 Persian created an administrative and intellectual bridge across religious communities

For centuries Persian served as a major language of administration and elite literary culture in north India. Muslim scribes and scholars participated prominently, but Persian literacy was not confined to Muslims: Kayastha and other Hindu service groups also learned it for employment and documentation. Farmans, petitions, revenue papers, genealogies and literary texts therefore formed a shared documentary world. When colonial policy displaced Persian from official courts in 1837, it altered employment incentives and the ecology of education. The later prominence of Urdu and Hindi politics should not be projected backward onto this earlier Persianate order.

90.5 Mosques, shrines and scholarly lineages anchored local moral geographies

Religious life was organised through institutions of different scale. Congregational mosques structured Friday worship; neighbourhood mosques and maktabs connected ritual to everyday learning; shrines associated with saints or pirs could attract visitors from more than one community; and ulama maintained chains of study extending beyond the region. These networks linked villages to qasbas and larger centres such as Patna, Bihar Sharif, Bengal and north Indian seminaries. Their local authority varied greatly. A shrine-centred devotional world, a reformist mosque committee and a madrasa-based scholarly network could coexist in the same district without representing identical forms of Islam.

Muslim social history: institutions, languages and ruptures

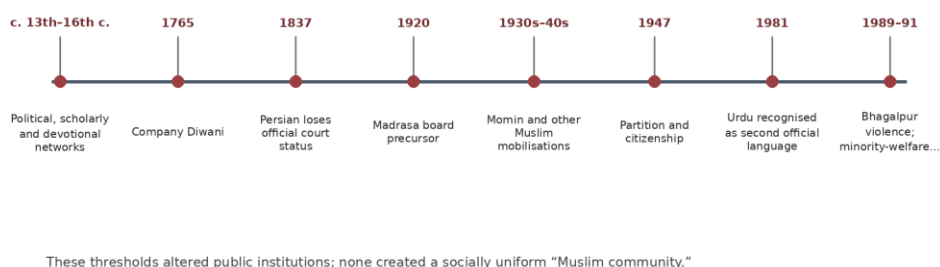


Figure 356 — Institutional thresholds in the Muslim social history of Mithila and Anga

90.6 Most Muslim households in the region were embedded in agrarian society

The social history of Muslims in Mithila and Anga is fundamentally rural. Muslim cultivators, tenants, sharecroppers, labourers, cattle keepers and petty traders lived within the same flood, irrigation, rent and credit systems as neighbouring Hindu households. Landholding varied sharply by locality and biradari; no religious label predicts whether a household owned substantial land or depended on wages. In flood-prone north Bihar, seasonal insecurity, indebtedness and migration cut across community boundaries while still being mediated by local power. Agrarian reform after independence therefore affected Muslim households according to tenure and class rather than through religion alone.

90.7 Occupational biradaris tied Muslim history to craft and service economies

Muslim society included occupationally identified groups whose livelihoods connected villages to urban and regional markets: weavers, dyers, butchers, barbers, oil pressers, metal workers, transport workers, small traders and others. Occupational labels could function as biradari identities, but they were never perfect descriptions of current work. Industrial decline, education and migration moved later generations into new jobs while older names persisted. The historical task is to reconstruct how hereditary reputation, skill transmission, marriage networks and market change interacted—not to freeze communities into colonial occupational stereotypes.

90.8 Bhagalpur’s textile economy made Muslim artisan history central to Anga

Bhagalpur’s weaving and silk economy depended on a chain of reelers, dyers, loom workers, traders, financiers and transporters. Muslim Ansari/Momin weaving households formed an important part of this urban-industrial landscape alongside Hindu weavers and other occupational groups. Handloom skill gave families specialised cultural capital, but it also exposed them to yarn prices, merchant credit, powerloom competition and demand shocks. The 1989 violence had especially severe consequences in neighbourhoods and villages where Muslim livelihoods were concentrated in weaving and petty trade. Economic history and communal history therefore intersect directly in Anga.

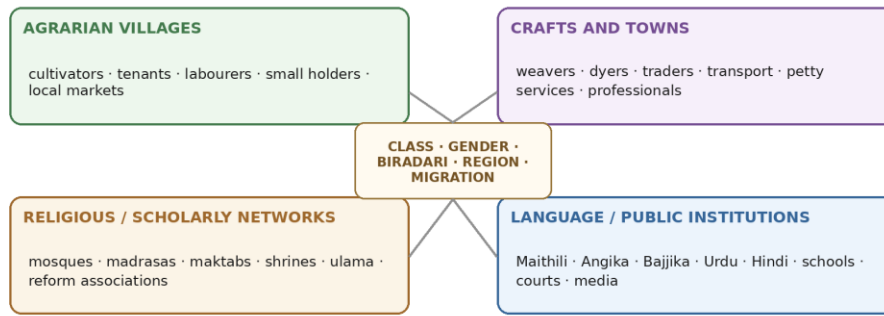
90.9 Towns produced Muslim middle classes as well as urban poverty

Darbhangha, Madhubani, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur and smaller qasbas contained lawyers, teachers, doctors, officials, traders, journalists and religious scholars alongside artisans, porters, domestic workers and informal labourers. Colonial education and postcolonial state employment expanded some middle-class pathways, while land loss, insecure work and neighbourhood segregation constrained others. Urban Muslim history is thus a history of class differentiation. The presence of a university-trained professional family in one mohalla and a loom-dependent household in another should not be averaged into a single “minority condition.”

90.10 Markets and migration connected Muslim households to Calcutta, Bengal, Assam, Nepal and later metropolitan India

Eastern Bihar’s river, railway and labour corridors produced long-distance mobility. Traders and artisans moved toward Bengal; workers sought employment in plantations, construction, industry and services; students travelled for religious and secular education; and marriage networks crossed district and, in the northern plains, international borders. Migration could raise household income and weaken dependence on local patrons, but it could also produce precarious urban work and long family separation. In the late twentieth and twenty-first centuries Gulf migration and large Indian cities added new destinations, reshaping housing, education and consumption without dissolving local attachments.

Four intersecting social worlds



Method: reconstruct households and institutions before generalising from religious identity.

Figure 357 — Four intersecting Muslim social worlds

90.11 Internal status distinctions existed, but they changed across time and place

North Indian Muslim social life has often been described through *ashraf*, *ajlaf* and *arzal* categories or through named *biradaris*. Such vocabularies are useful only when treated historically. Genealogical prestige, occupation, marriage rules, land and education could create status distinctions, yet the boundaries were contested and not identical in every locality. Colonial ethnography sometimes hardened ranked descriptions into apparently fixed “castes.” Modern *Pasmanda* politics has in turn re-read these inequalities through the language of social justice and representation. The correct method is to follow specific *biradaris* and institutions rather than assume one hierarchy governs all Muslims.

90.12 Momin and Ansari mobilisation challenged elite claims to speak for all Muslims

Weaver-based Momin organising became a major current in Bihar’s interwar Muslim politics. It questioned the social dominance of elite Muslim leadership and foregrounded artisans, labouring groups and material inequality. Papiya Ghosh and Mohammad Sajjad show that Bihar Muslim politics before Partition cannot be reduced to the Muslim League: the Momin Conference, nationalist Muslims, religious organisations and local factions pursued different strategies. This plural politics is particularly relevant to Bhagalpur and other weaving centres, where occupational identity could become a basis for public organisation as well as marriage and craft.

90.13 Language practice was multilingual even where Urdu carried strong public symbolism

Many Muslim households in Mithila and Anga used the same regional speech continua as their neighbours—Maithili, Angika, Bajjika and local Hindi varieties—while Urdu served literary, educational, journalistic or formal functions for many families. The Census of India’s linguistic studies note precisely this overlap: locally spoken Urdu in Bihar bears strong influence from regional languages, while standard Urdu is used in formal contexts. Language identity therefore cannot be inferred mechanically from religion. A household may speak Maithili at home, read Urdu, use Hindi in school and conduct migration work in yet another language.

90.14 Colonial census categories made religion statistically visible while concealing social variation

From the late nineteenth century, census operations counted religious affiliation systematically and encouraged comparison among districts. These tables are indispensable for mapping broad population patterns, but they say little about occupation, class, sect, language or household history. The same percentage can describe very different social formations: concentrated town neighbourhoods, dispersed agrarian villages or mixed craft settlements. Census categories also encouraged public actors to treat numerical strength as political capital. Modern demographic arguments therefore descend partly from the administrative technologies that made religious populations measurable.

90.15 District variation is a core fact of Muslim social geography

Census 2011—the most recent completed Indian decennial census with district religion tables used here—recorded Muslims as 22.39 per cent of Darbhanga, 18.25 per cent of Madhubani, 15.53 per cent of Muzaffarpur, 9.56 per cent of Vaishali, 17.68 per cent of Bhagalpur and 12.33 per cent of Banka. These figures reveal neither a uniformly “Muslim” zone nor a marginal presence everywhere. They also caution against making Seemanchal, with much higher Muslim shares, stand in for Mithila or Anga. Regional history must work at district, block, town and village scales.

Selected district Muslim population shares — Census 2011

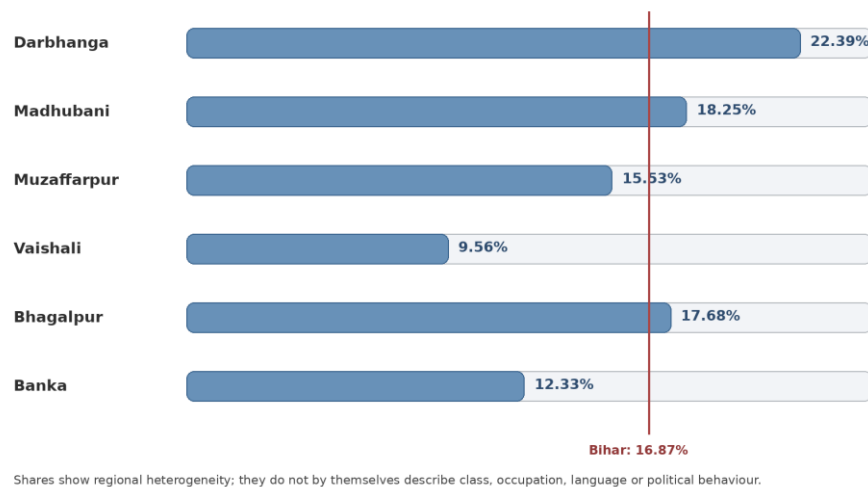


Figure 358 — Selected district Muslim population shares in Census 2011

Table 90.1 — Selected district Muslim population shares, Census 2011

Region / district	Muslim population	Share of district	Historical reading
Mithila — Darbhanga	881,476	22.39%	Large rural and urban presence; strong qasba, educational and Urdu networks
Mithila — Madhubani	818,912	18.25%	Dispersed agrarian and market-town populations within a Maithili-speaking region
Vajji — Muzaffarpur	745,546	15.53%	Agrarian, commercial and urban-professional worlds around a major regional city
Vajji — Vaishali	333,980	9.56%	Smaller district share but long-settled village and market communities

Region / district	Muslim population	Share of district	Historical reading
Anga — Bhagalpur	537,018	17.68%	Urban, agrarian, trading and weaving histories; major 1989 rupture
Anga — Banka	250,925	12.33%	Rural and small-town populations in an eastern/southern borderland

90.16 Maktabas and madrasas formed one part of a wider educational ecology

Religious schooling ranged from informal Qur’anic instruction to structured madrasas with advanced Arabic, Persian or Urdu curricula. These institutions existed alongside government schools, vernacular schools, missionary schools, colleges and later universities. Families mixed pathways: a child might receive elementary religious instruction while pursuing secular schooling, or a madrasa graduate might enter university through recognised examinations. The binary between “madrasa education” and “modern education” therefore obscures institutional overlap. What mattered historically was access, recognition, curriculum, language and the ability to move from one educational stage to another.

90.17 The Bihar State Madrasa Education Board institutionalised recognition and equivalence

The Bihar State Madrasa Education Board traces its institutional history to 1920 and was established under the Bihar State Madrasa Education Board Act of 1981. Its present system recognises Wastania, Fauquania and Moulvi levels alongside state school equivalents and combines religious subjects with NCERT/SCERT-linked general education. This state framework did not erase autonomous madrasas or informal learning, but it created a route through which examination certificates, curriculum and public recognition could be standardised. In regional social history, that matters because credential recognition affects higher education and employment as much as religious learning.

90.18 Women’s history must be reconstructed through work, education, property and mobility

Muslim women’s lives cannot be represented by debates over seclusion alone. Rural women participated in crop processing, livestock care, household manufacture and wage work; artisan households depended on female labour that could be hidden inside “family production”; urban women entered teaching, health work, government service and professional education in growing numbers. Marriage, inheritance, dowry, maintenance and access to natal property shaped economic security. School expansion, bicycles and transport, hostels, migration remittances and women-focused welfare altered mobility unevenly. Chapter 90 records these institutions without pre-empting the fuller gender history that follows in Part X.

90.19 Sect and reform mattered, but local Muslim life cannot be mapped into one doctrinal grid

Sunni majorities, Shia communities, Sufi-oriented practices and reform currents associated with Deoband, Bareilvi, Ahl-i Hadith and other networks all appeared in Bihar. Yet doctrinal labels did not automatically determine occupation, party preference or neighbourhood alliances. A family could support a shrine, send a child to a reformist madrasa and participate in shared village practices without experiencing those acts as contradictory. Historical analysis should therefore document institutions—mosque committees, madrasas, imambaras, shrines, associations—rather than assign entire districts to theological camps.

90.20 Muslim participation in anti-colonial politics was internally diverse

Bihar's Muslims participated in Congress politics, Khilafat-era mobilisation, peasant and labour movements, religious organisations, Momin politics and the Muslim League in different proportions and periods. The province is especially important because significant Muslim actors opposed the Two-Nation theory or advocated composite nationalism even as support for Pakistan grew elsewhere and among other constituencies. This political diversity mirrors social diversity: landed elites, urban professionals, artisans and religious scholars did not possess identical interests. Any narrative that treats Partition as the inevitable expression of a unified Bihar Muslim will therefore misread the archival record.

90.21 The Momin Conference and Imarat-i-Shariah represent different forms of Muslim public organisation

The Momin Conference articulated artisan and lower-status Muslim interests and contested elite representation; the Imarat-i-Shariah built a religious-legal and organisational network centred in Bihar that also participated in debates over community, nationalism and social order. Their coexistence demonstrates that "Muslim politics" operated through occupational, religious and nationalist institutions at once. Local activists could move among these arenas. Organisational history also explains why Bihar produced strong Muslim public networks without those networks always converging on the Muslim League's programme.

90.22 The violence of 1946 and Partition created fear, migration and a new minority condition

Communal violence in Bihar in 1946 forms an essential background to Partition. Muslim families experienced killing, displacement and insecurity; some subsequently migrated to Pakistan, including East Pakistan, while many more remained. Partition transformed those who stayed from members of a large colonial provincial community into citizens of a secular republic in which they were a religious minority. Property, employment, family separation and the suspicion attached to transnational kin could become immediate problems. Yet continuity was equally important: villages, crafts, mosques, markets and political networks survived, and citizenship was rebuilt through ordinary local institutions.

90.23 Post-1947 recovery was shaped by land reform, schooling, public employment and electoral citizenship

Independence did not create one economic trajectory for Muslims. Zamindari abolition affected Muslim landlords as landlords; tenants and labourers confronted the same limited redistribution that shaped rural Bihar more generally. Public schools and universities opened new routes, but unequal literacy and urban access influenced who could enter salaried work. Universal adult franchise made Muslim votes and candidates relevant to party organisation at every level. The result was a gradual shift from colonial elite representation toward mass democratic bargaining, though local leadership could still be monopolised by better educated or wealthier families.

90.24 Urdu's recognition as Bihar's second official language institutionalised a long political struggle

The Bihar Official Language Act of 1950 established Hindi in Devanagari script for state purposes. Bihar Act II of 1981 added a provision allowing Urdu to be used as a second official language, and subsequent notifications extended that recognition across districts. The change carried symbolic and material significance: it legitimised Urdu petitions, public communication, teaching and cultural institutions within

the state. But Urdu policy should not be equated with Muslim demography. Many Muslims spoke regional languages as mother tongues, while Urdu literary culture also extended beyond religious boundaries. Language recognition was therefore a minority-rights achievement within a multilingual social reality.

90.25 The Bhagalpur violence of 1989 was a major rupture in Anga's social history

Communal violence in Bhagalpur in October–November 1989 affected the city and surrounding villages on a scale that made it one of independent India's most consequential episodes of Hindu-Muslim violence. Official and later rights inquiries documented failures of protection, large-scale loss, displacement and the need for relief and rehabilitation. Muslim weaving and trading localities were among the affected social worlds. The historical consequence cannot be measured only in deaths or destroyed property: fear altered neighbourhood settlement, credit relations, schooling, marriage decisions and political trust. At the same time, the event should not be allowed to define all of Bhagalpur's longer Hindu-Muslim history.

90.26 Everyday interdependence persisted through markets, labour, neighbourhoods and shared regional culture

Most social interaction was not organised as communal confrontation. Farmers rented land across religious lines; artisans depended on merchants and customers of several communities; neighbourhoods shared wells, roads and public schools; festivals altered market rhythms for everyone; and local speech, foodways and performance traditions crossed formal religious boundaries. Conflict could expose how fragile such ties were, but their restoration after violence also depended on everyday institutions—workplaces, panchayats, schools, transport and civic associations. A social history centred only on riots would therefore mistake exceptional breakdown for the ordinary structure of regional life.

90.27 Democratic politics turned population distribution into representation without producing one Muslim vote

Post-independence elections made numerical concentration important, and scholarship on Bihar has shown that Muslim candidates and party strategies were shaped by constituency geography. Yet class, caste/biradari, party organisation, local leadership and broader coalitions continually fragmented any notion of a fixed communal vote. Pasmanda mobilisation after the 1990s further challenged elite representational claims and linked Muslim politics to backward-class and social-justice agendas. Electoral cohesion and internal contestation could therefore increase simultaneously. The meaningful unit of analysis is the coalition, not an assumed community command.

90.28 Minority-welfare institutions added an administrative layer to education and livelihoods

Bihar created a separate Minority Welfare Department in 1991. Over time its institutional field expanded to scholarships, hostels and residential schools, women-focused assistance, entrepreneurship and finance, Urdu-related institutions, waqf boards and district minority welfare offices. The Talimi Markaz programme, initiated in 2008–09 for out-of-school children from minority Muslim communities, exemplified an attempt to reach educational exclusion at neighbourhood level. Current residential-school initiatives in districts including Darbhanga and Muzaffarpur show a further shift toward state-run schooling. Programme existence, however, must be distinguished from effective access and outcomes.

90.29 Nepal-side Mithila belongs to the same social corridor but a different constitutional and census order

Muslim communities in Nepal's Madhesh are connected to north Bihar through marriage, trade, study, pilgrimage and labour mobility. Nepal's 2021 census recorded Islam at 13.28 per cent of Madhesh Province, far above the national share of 5.09 per cent. Yet these figures belong to Nepal's own federal, citizenship and minority framework; they should not be folded into Bihar's district categories. Cross-border families may share Maithili and other plains languages, but documentation, schooling, political representation and religious administration are governed by different states. Connected history therefore requires comparison without administrative conflation.

90.30 Muslim history in Mithila and Anga is a history of rootedness, difference and institutional change

Across centuries, Muslim social life became locally rooted through cultivation, weaving, trade, scholarship, neighbourhoods, shrines, mosques, schools and political institutions. The most important analytical finding is heterogeneity. Muslims could be landlords or labourers, artisans or professionals, Urdu literary activists or primarily Maithili/Angika speakers, reformists or shrine-oriented devotees, migrants or deeply sedentary villagers. Colonial classification, Partition, language politics, democratic representation, welfare policy and episodes of violence changed the terms under which these differences were negotiated. Writing this history as part of Mithila and Anga restores Muslims to the region's ordinary social fabric rather than treating them as an external appendage or a community visible only in crisis.

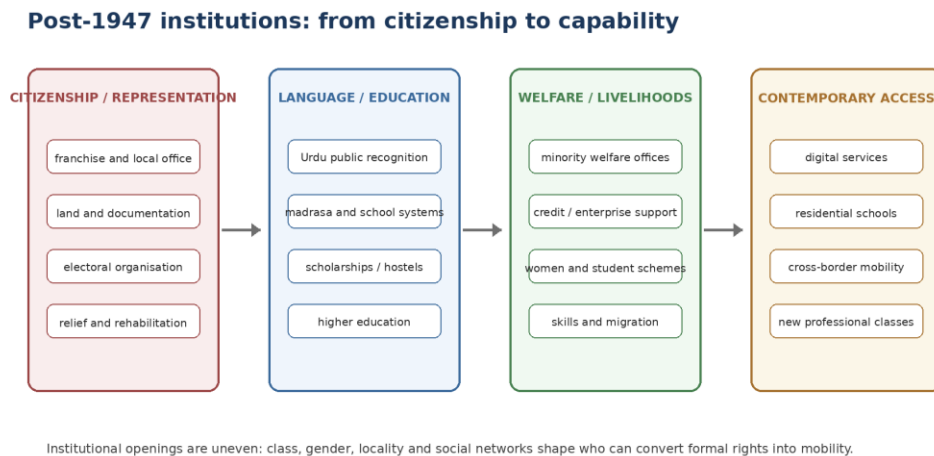


Figure 359 — Post-1947 institutional pathways from citizenship to capability

Chapter 91 — Gender and the Household Economy

A household is an economic institution before it is a statistical unit. It combines income, food, land, housing, care, credit, consumption, schooling, health expenditure, social obligations and protection against risk. Gender enters each of these domains through unequal claims on time, mobility, property, cash and authority. The relevant history is therefore not a story in which a self-contained ‘family’ slowly gives way to markets. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, households became progressively more entangled with wage migration, banks, ration systems, schools, health services, self-help groups, digital transfers and consumer markets while kinship continued to organise residence, obligation and legitimacy.

This chapter analyses the household as a field of provisioning and bargaining. It does not duplicate Chapter 92, which measures women’s paid and unpaid labour in detail, or Chapter 93, which treats marriage, dowry, inheritance and family structure directly. Instead it asks who holds resources, who converts them into daily welfare, how shocks are distributed, how male migration changes managerial responsibility, and how public programmes alter the boundary between household and state. Survey indicators such as ‘female headship,’ joint ownership or participation in decisions are useful but incomplete: they record particular dimensions of authority and cannot by themselves tell us who controls assets, whose consumption is postponed, or who performs the work that keeps the household functioning.

91.1 The household must be treated as an economic institution rather than a private residual

Economic history often begins with land, wages and markets and then treats the household as the place where those resources are consumed. That sequence misses a central fact: the household itself organizes production and reproduction. It decides whether grain is stored or sold, whether a child remains in school, whether a sick member is taken to a clinic, whether livestock is retained, whether debt is repaid, and which social obligations are honoured. In rural north Bihar these decisions historically linked fields, cattle sheds, kitchens, ponds, markets and kin networks. In towns they linked salaried income, petty trade, rent, education and consumption. Gender structured who performed these coordinating tasks and whose preferences carried weight. The household economy is therefore not merely the sum of individual earnings; it is a system for converting resources into survival, status and future capability.

91.2 Household membership is not the same as equal membership in household resources

Census and survey categories count persons who normally live and eat together, but co-residence does not imply equal access. Children, daughters-in-law, widows, elderly parents, migrant members and persons with disabilities occupy different positions in the same household. Control may also be split: one person may own land, another manage cultivation, a third hold cash, and a fourth decide food preparation and care. Such divisions can be cooperative without being equal. The analytical mistake is to infer welfare from aggregate household income alone. A household with rising remittances can still contain unequal nutrition, education, leisure and mobility. Gender history therefore requires attention to intra-household allocation as well as household-level poverty, and to the fact that age, caste, class and marital position mediate gender rather than operating separately from it.

91.3 Agrarian households historically joined productive and reproductive work in the same social unit

In farming households the boundary between ‘economic’ and ‘domestic’ work was especially porous. Seed selection, transplanting support, post-harvest processing, animal care, fuel and fodder collection, food storage and preparation were coordinated with ploughing, irrigation, harvesting and marketing. Some tasks were publicly recognized as cultivation; others were naturalized as household duty even when they directly sustained farm output. This organization made the household resilient because labour could be shifted among members across seasons, but it also concealed unequal claims on rest and cash. Small and marginal holdings intensified this overlap: households combined own cultivation, tenancy, wage labour, livestock, petty trade and migration. Gendered household management was therefore not peripheral to agrarian history; it was one of the mechanisms through which fragmented assets and seasonal income were made viable.

91.4 Food management converted uncertain income into everyday security

The management of grain, pulses, oil, vegetables, milk and fuel was historically a form of household finance conducted partly in kind. Decisions about how much paddy or wheat to retain, when to sell, whether to buy on credit, how to stretch stocks through the lean season and how to feed guests or ritual gatherings determined both nutrition and solvency. Women commonly carried much of this provisioning knowledge even when men controlled the sale of crops or large purchases. Floods, crop failure and price spikes exposed the importance of these routines. The expansion of the Public Distribution System and later the National Food Security Act changed the household budget by converting a portion of staple consumption into a public entitlement. Yet ration access did not eliminate the labour of cooking, queuing, storage, dietary balancing and coping with shortages.

91.5 Livestock, kitchen gardens and small assets often formed a gendered buffer economy

Cows, goats, poultry, kitchen plots, stored grain, jewellery and small savings could function as buffers when cash income failed. Their scale was modest, but their liquidity and divisibility mattered. A household might sell a goat for medical expenditure, use milk for child nutrition, or draw on women’s savings for school fees. Such assets also reveal why formal title and practical control must be distinguished. An animal may be described as belonging to the household while its daily care and product management fall to a woman; jewellery may be symbolically associated with a woman while disposal is constrained by family claims. The post-independence spread of dairy cooperatives, veterinary services, self-help groups and microcredit increased the institutional value of these small assets without automatically equalising control over them.

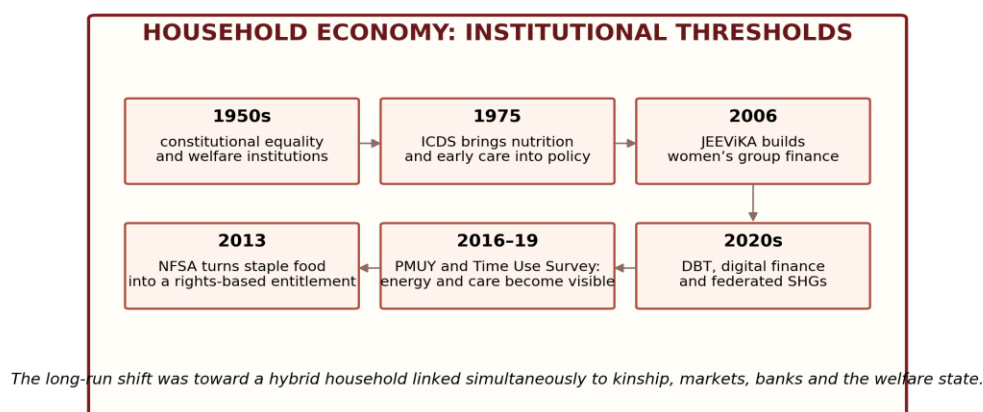


Figure 360 — Institutional thresholds reshaping the household economy, 1950s–2020s

91.6 Public policy progressively entered tasks once treated as exclusively household responsibilities

Post-independence welfare policy altered the household economy by socializing parts of nutrition, care and risk. The Integrated Child Development Services programme, launched in 1975, created an institutional interface for early childhood nutrition, health and pre-school care. School meals reduced part of the food cost of education. Public health programmes shifted immunization, antenatal care and disease control toward community institutions. The National Food Security Act of 2013 formalized food entitlements, while pensions and other transfers placed cash directly into household budgets. None of these programmes abolished household responsibility. Instead they created hybrid arrangements in which women often became the persons who translated public services into household welfare—collecting rations, attending anganwadi sessions, maintaining documents, accompanying children and elderly persons, and reconciling programme schedules with domestic work.

91.7 Water and fuel linked gendered household labour to ecology and infrastructure

Before piped water, reliable electricity and clean cooking fuel, everyday provisioning depended heavily on environmental access. Fetching water, collecting dung cakes, crop residues or firewood, tending cooking fires and managing smoke were not merely domestic routines; they tied household time to wells, hand pumps, commons, floodwater, monsoon season and fuel markets. The burden varied sharply by settlement, caste and class because access to private wells, enclosed courtyards, purchased fuel and transport was unequal. Electrification and improved roads reduced some transaction costs, while piped-water and sanitation programmes changed the geography of daily tasks. The transition was uneven, however, and infrastructure does not translate automatically into time savings when supply is unreliable, refills are costly or social norms continue to assign new technologies to the same person who carried the older burden.

91.8 Clean-cooking transitions changed technology faster than the social ownership of cooking

Pradhan Mantri Ujjwala Yojana, introduced in 2016, sought to extend LPG to rural and deprived households that had relied on biomass fuels. In the household economy this represented more than a fuel substitution: LPG can reduce smoke exposure, shorten some stages of cooking and lessen dependence on

gathered fuel. But connection, regular use and refill affordability are different thresholds. Households may combine LPG with wood, dung or crop residue according to price, season and dish. The gendered meaning of the transition is therefore conditional. A cleaner stove may improve health and convenience while leaving responsibility for meals unchanged. The historical significance lies in the movement of cooking energy from largely locally gathered biomass toward a cash-priced, cylinder-based supply chain tied to identity documents, bank accounts and subsidy systems.

91.9 Care is infrastructure produced inside households as well as by public institutions

Children, elderly persons, the chronically ill and temporarily injured household members require feeding, washing, supervision, emotional support and accompaniment to services. Much of this activity has no market price, yet without it other household members could not study, migrate or work. The Time Use Survey 2019 made this invisible infrastructure more legible. It placed Bihar among states where women aged 15–59 spent more than the all-India average time on unpaid domestic services and more than the all-India average on unpaid caregiving. These comparisons do not explain every district or household, but they demonstrate that care cannot be treated as leisure or non-economic inactivity. It is a major claim on time and one of the channels through which household shocks are absorbed.

91.10 Household decision-making is multidimensional rather than a single index of empowerment

Who decides on a woman's health care, major household purchases or visits to relatives captures one important dimension of authority, but not the whole of household power. NFHS-5 for Bihar reported that 86.5 per cent of currently married women participated alone or jointly in all three of these decisions, up from 75.2 per cent in NFHS-4. The improvement is significant, yet the indicator should not be read as proof of equal bargaining power. A woman may participate in routine decisions while lacking independent income, land title or freedom to make high-cost decisions; conversely, a woman managing an absent migrant's household may exercise substantial day-to-day authority without being recorded as owner or household head. Good history therefore treats survey indicators as specific observations rather than total measures of autonomy.

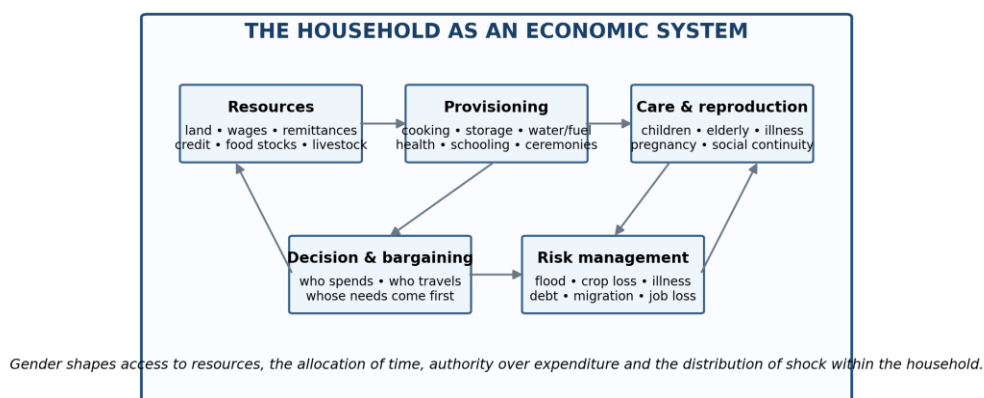


Figure 361 — The household as an economic system of resources, provisioning, care, bargaining and risk

91.11 Household headship measures administrative representation more readily than substantive power

The category ‘head of household’ is convenient for censuses and ration cards, but it is historically loaded. In many patrilineal settings an adult man may be named head even when a woman manages expenditure and care, while female headship may arise from widowhood, separation, migration or explicit recognition of a woman’s authority. These situations have different economic meanings. Female-headed households can face disadvantage if headship reflects the loss of an earner, but they can also display greater decision-making autonomy. The same caution applies to the Nepal-side Madhesh. Nepal’s 2021 census reported female-headed households at 21.7 per cent in Madhesh, the lowest provincial share, compared with 31.5 per cent nationally. This is evidence about recorded headship, not a direct measure of women’s economic contribution.

91.12 Life-cycle position redistributes authority within the same gender

Gender does not produce a single household position. An unmarried daughter, newly married daughter-in-law, mother of young children, senior mother-in-law, widow and elderly woman may have very different claims on mobility, expenditure and household labour. Authority can increase with age and motherhood even when formal ownership does not. The household economy therefore has an internal life cycle: younger women may carry heavier routine work under supervision, middle-generation women coordinate children’s education and health, and senior women may control food stores, ritual expenditure or the allocation of tasks. Widowhood can either increase control or expose vulnerability depending on property, sons, pensions and residence. These distinctions matter because broad statistics on ‘women’ average over positions that are socially and economically unlike one another.

91.13 Male migration separated earning from day-to-day household management

Long-distance labour migration from north and eastern Bihar made geographical separation a normal feature of many households. When men worked in Calcutta, Assam, Delhi, Punjab, Mumbai, Gujarat or later Gulf labour markets, wives and older relatives often assumed greater responsibility for cultivation, schooling, health care, debt and local dealings. This did not necessarily produce formal female headship or ownership. It created what may be called delegated management: authority expanded because someone had to make decisions in the migrant’s absence, but major asset sales, marriage expenditure or land transactions might still require consultation. Migration therefore changed gender relations through practical responsibility before it changed legal title. Its effects also varied with remittance regularity, communication technology, local support networks and the duration of absence.

91.14 Remittances converted distant labour into local household budgets and new forms of uncertainty

Remittances can stabilize consumption, finance housing, pay school fees, repay debt and fund health care, but they arrive through relationships that are themselves uncertain. A delayed wage, job loss, illness at destination or transport shutdown can suddenly expose the household. The receiver must therefore budget not only income but volatility. Women who handle remittances may gain familiarity with banks, mobile payments and market prices, yet the migrant may continue to specify how money is used. The spread of phones reduced the informational distance between migrant and household, making frequent consultation easier; digital transfer reduced the physical movement of cash. These technologies can strengthen both

women's management and remote oversight. The key historical change is that a household's economy increasingly operated across several places at once.

91.15 Floods and displacement expose the household as the first institution of disaster response

In the Kosi, Kamla, Bagmati, Gandak and Ganga plains, flood history repeatedly reorganized domestic economies. Grain stores, livestock, documents, cooking arrangements, menstrual hygiene, child care and access to drinking water become immediate household problems when settlements are inundated or evacuated. Women's responsibility for food and care can intensify precisely when the physical means of providing them disappear. Landowners, tenants, the landless and urban households face different exposure because elevation, house materials, savings and access to transport differ. Public relief changes the distribution of risk, but household networks remain the first line of shelter and borrowing. Disaster history is therefore also gender history: shocks reveal which resources are portable, whose mobility is constrained and whose labour substitutes for failed infrastructure.

91.16 Food insecurity is often managed by changing quality, quantity and timing before it appears as total shortage

Households rarely move directly from adequate consumption to complete hunger. They first substitute cheaper foods, reduce dietary diversity, postpone purchases, borrow grain, purchase on credit, dilute milk, skip preferred foods or protect children at the expense of adults. Such strategies are difficult to observe in aggregate grain availability statistics. Gender matters because persons responsible for meals perform the practical work of adjustment and may also absorb part of the sacrifice. Public distribution reduces exposure to cereal-price shocks, but nutrition depends on pulses, vegetables, fats, milk and animal-source foods whose prices remain market-linked. JEEViKA's health and nutrition initiatives recognized this connection by using women's groups to influence household practices as well as service access. The household economy is thus a nutritional allocation system, not simply a cash budget.

91.17 Self-help groups transformed private saving and borrowing into a collective household interface

The expansion of JEEViKA from 2006 created one of the most consequential institutional changes in Bihar's household economy. Women's self-help groups pool savings, provide internal loans, link members to banks and federate into village organizations and cluster-level bodies. By September 2025, JEEViKA reported more than 1.40 crore households mobilized into about 11.40 lakh rural SHGs, alongside 73,515 village organizations and 1,684 cluster-level federations. The significance is not only the volume of credit. A woman who previously approached kin, landlords, moneylenders or shopkeepers for emergency finance could now approach a membership-based institution in which she had a recognized account and meeting role. This shifted part of household risk management from private dependence toward collective finance.

91.18 Group finance can change bargaining by changing the timing and source of liquidity

Emergency borrowing is most unequal when money is needed immediately. Illness, school admission, a funeral, crop input or migration fare can force a household to accept expensive or socially dependent credit. SHG savings and bank linkage alter this bargaining environment by providing another source of liquidity. World Bank evaluations of JEEViKA have examined empowerment through mobility, household decision-

making and collective action as well as income. The effects are not uniform: debt can still be stressful, women may borrow for household rather than personal use, and men may influence the use of loans. Yet the institutional innovation matters because credit is attached to women's membership, records and peer governance. Household finance becomes a site of public identity rather than a transaction hidden entirely within kinship or patronage.

91.19 Bank accounts and mobile phones create access channels whose control must still be investigated

NFHS-5 reported that 76.7 per cent of Bihar women aged 15–49 had a bank or savings account that they themselves used, a dramatic rise from 26.4 per cent in NFHS-4. It also reported that 51.4 per cent had a mobile phone they themselves used. These indicators document a major institutional shift: women increasingly possess direct interfaces with money and information. But access is not identical to effective control. Account balances may be small; biometric authentication can require travel; phones may be shared in practice; digital literacy and fraud risk matter. JEEVIKA's Bank Sakhi model addresses some of these last-mile frictions by placing women business correspondents inside rural communities. The household economy is consequently becoming more individualized in its financial channels even where spending decisions remain collective.

91.20 Direct transfers and entitlement databases changed the household–state relationship

Rations, pensions, scholarships, maternity benefits, housing assistance and other schemes increasingly depend on named beneficiaries, bank accounts, identity documents and digital records. This architecture changes the household economy in two ways. First, resources can be assigned to a specific person rather than handed to an undifferentiated household. Second, access requires documentary labour: keeping cards active, correcting names, linking accounts, travelling to service points and resolving failed transactions. Women may gain stronger claims when benefits are registered in their names, but they may also acquire additional administrative work. Digitalization therefore does not simply 'empower' or 'exclude'; it redistributes the practical tasks through which entitlement becomes usable. The history of household welfare increasingly includes databases, authentication and financial intermediaries alongside kin and local officials.

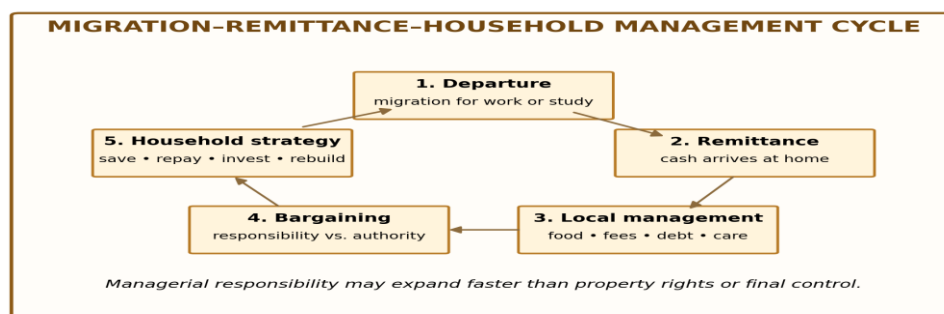


Figure 362 — Migration, remittances and the redistribution of household management

91.21 Public provisioning partially externalized care while often relying on women as the interface

Anganwadi workers, ASHAs, school meal systems and public health outreach reduced the amount of care that had to be organized entirely within the household. They also created a dense layer of female

frontline workers whose labour linked households to the state. From the household perspective, this can save money and improve access to nutrition, vaccination, antenatal care and early childhood services. Yet the household still coordinates attendance, documents, transport and follow-up. Public provisioning therefore changes the form of care rather than removing it. It is especially important for poorer households because buying equivalent services privately would absorb a larger share of income. The historical transformation lies in the emergence of shared responsibility across household, community worker and public programme.

91.22 Housing quality and domestic technology reshape the cost of maintaining everyday life

A pucca roof, separate kitchen, electricity, fan, water point, toilet, refrigerator, pressure cooker, sewing machine, two-wheeler or smartphone can each alter household time and risk. Such assets are often counted as indicators of wealth, but they are also technologies of domestic organization. Refrigeration changes food storage; a motorcycle changes access to markets and hospitals; electric lighting extends study time; a toilet changes privacy and night-time mobility. Their gender effects depend on who controls access and who performs the associated work. The post-1990s consumer transition thus changed household economies not only by increasing expenditure but by altering the infrastructure through which care, food and mobility were managed.

91.23 Ownership indicators show legal and documentary change without settling questions of control

NFHS-5 reported that 55.3 per cent of Bihar women aged 15–49 owned a house and/or land alone or jointly with others. Joint title can strengthen documentation and potential claims, especially where housing schemes register women as beneficiaries. Yet the indicator combines very different assets and forms of ownership. A woman jointly named on a house may have more residential security but little authority over agricultural land; a woman may possess legal title while cultivation and sale remain controlled by others. Property is therefore both an asset and a bargaining resource whose effectiveness depends on knowledge, documentation, social support and enforceability. Chapter 93 treats inheritance directly; the point here is narrower: household economic power cannot be inferred from ownership percentages without asking what the named asset enables in practice.

91.24 Caste and class determine how much household work can be shifted onto markets or other workers

Affluent households can purchase cooked food, domestic help, transport, tutoring, private health care, packaged fuel and labour-saving appliances. Poorer households must substitute their own time. Caste historically shaped who could perform paid domestic service, leather work, sanitation, water carrying and other stigmatized tasks, while landlessness increased dependence on labour markets and employers. Gender therefore interacts with class through the capacity to outsource. A middle-class woman may face strong domestic expectations but possess appliances and paid assistance; a landless woman may combine household provisioning with wage work and long journeys for fuel or water. This is why a single measure of ‘women’s work burden’ cannot explain household economies across Mithila, Vajji and Anga. The composition of the burden matters as much as its duration.

Table 91.1 — Institutions reshaping household resources and gendered bargaining

Institution / channel	Household resource	Potential change	Persistent asymmetry
-----------------------	--------------------	------------------	----------------------

Institution / channel	Household resource	Potential change	Persistent asymmetry
PDS / NFSA	subsidised staple food	reduces exposure to cereal-price shocks	diet quality and collection work remain household tasks
ICDS / Anganwadi	nutrition, early-childhood and maternal services	partly externalises care and improves service access	women still coordinate attendance, documents and follow-up
Migration / remittance	cash earned outside locality	funds consumption, housing, schooling and debt repayment	managerial responsibility may rise without ownership
JEEViKA SHGs	savings, credit, bank linkage and collective organisation	creates women-centred liquidity and institutional identity	loans may still be controlled or used for household obligations
Bank account / phone	individual financial and information interface	enables direct transfer, communication and transaction	access does not guarantee balance, privacy or final spending control
LPG / domestic infrastructure	cleaner cooking and reduced collection dependence	can reduce smoke and transaction time	refill cost and gendered cooking responsibility persist
Housing / titled assets	residential security and collateral potential	can strengthen documented claims and bargaining	joint title may not equal control over sale or agricultural assets

91.25 Religious community does not produce one household economy

Muslim, Hindu, Dalit, Adivasi and other households participate in different kinship and ritual traditions, but household economies are also stratified internally by land, occupation, education, migration and location. A Muslim weaving household in Bhagalpur, a Muslim cultivating household in Darbhanga and a salaried urban household do not share one economic pattern simply because they share a religious identification. The same caution applies to caste categories. Gender norms may influence seclusion, mobility or ritual responsibility, but material resources determine how those norms are practiced. Social history should therefore resist treating community culture as a substitute for household economics. Comparative analysis works best when it asks how similar constraints—food, care, debt, schooling, migration—are managed within different institutional and cultural settings.

91.26 Mithila households are strongly shaped by flood risk, migration and mixed subsistence portfolios

In Mithila, seasonal water regimes and a long history of out-migration made household diversification especially important. Cultivation could be combined with cattle, fish, makhana or other wetland products, wage labour, teaching, clerical work and remittances. Women's management linked these income streams to food storage, children's schooling, ritual expenditure and emergency care. Recurrent floods rewarded households able to spread risk across places and assets, while the landless often depended more heavily on migration and public transfers. Dense kin networks could provide shelter, loans and labour, but they also carried obligations. The characteristic household economy was therefore neither purely agrarian nor purely migrant: it was a portfolio system in which local subsistence and distant income were continually reconciled.

91.27 Vajji's household economy increasingly reflects peri-urban markets and institutional finance

Muzaffarpur, Vaishali and adjoining corridors combine intensive agriculture with dairy, vegetables, fruit, transport, services, education and commuting. Better road connectivity and proximity to markets allow households to convert small production surpluses into cash more frequently than in isolated subsistence settings. This increases women's interaction with producer groups, self-help groups, banks, schools and health institutions, even where household authority remains gendered. The expansion of JEEViKA institutions is especially relevant because routine savings and credit can be integrated with farm and non-farm household strategies. Peri-urbanization also raises expenditure on education, transport, rent, health and consumer goods. Household budgeting therefore becomes more cash-dependent and market-sensitive even when residence remains rural.

91.28 Anga combines craft, urban and agrarian household economies

Bhagalpur and Banka show how household economic organization changes where crafts, towns and agriculture overlap. Silk weaving and related work can be organized through household space, tying production schedules to cooking, care and domestic routines. Urban employment and petty trade create cash flows different from seasonal farming, while surrounding rural households combine cultivation, livestock, migration and town-linked services. The result is not a simple transition from 'traditional household production' to factory work. Rather, household and market repeatedly interpenetrate: rooms become workshops, family members share tasks, traders supply inputs, and earnings are pooled or divided according to gender and generation. This mixed economy makes Anga a useful counterpoint to explanations that equate modernization with the separation of home and workplace.

91.29 Nepal-side Madhesh shares kinship corridors but operates under a distinct household and welfare regime

Cross-border marriage, trade, study and labour mobility connect Nepal-side Mithila to north Bihar, but household statistics and public institutions must be read within Nepal's constitutional and administrative framework. The 2021 National Population and Housing Census recorded female-headed households at 21.7 per cent in Madhesh, the lowest provincial share, while national female headship was 31.5 per cent. Migration is also gendered: Nepal's census analysis shows marriage as a major reason for women's internal migration and economic migration as a major reason for men's movement. These patterns can generate households in which formal headship, physical presence and economic contribution do not coincide. Cross-border comparison is therefore most useful when it separates shared kinship practices from different state systems of citizenship, welfare, land and migration.

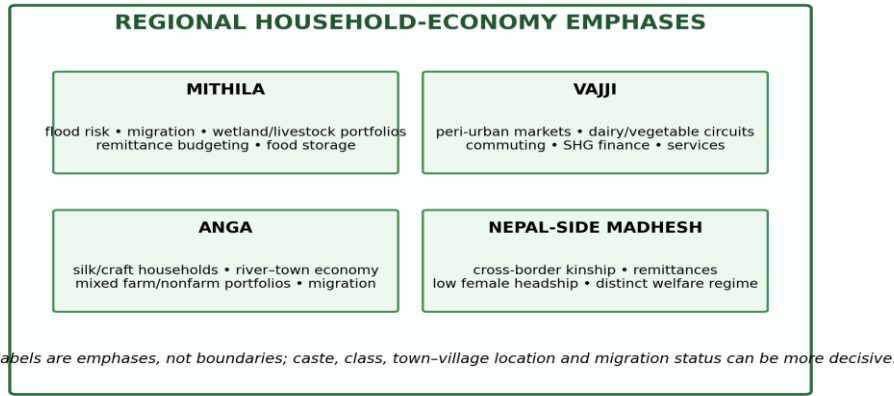


Figure 363 — Regional household-economy emphases across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Madhesh

91.30 The modern household economy is a hybrid of kinship, market, migration and the state

Across the twentieth and early twenty-first centuries, the household did not disappear as development expanded. It became more institutionally connected. Food came from own production, markets and rations; care from relatives, anganwadis, ASHAs and clinics; finance from savings, remittances, SHGs and banks; information from kin, television and smartphones; risk protection from assets, social networks, insurance and public relief. Gender relations changed because these new channels altered who could obtain money, information and services. Yet the core asymmetry remained visible: the person who coordinates household welfare may not own the assets that make welfare possible, and managerial responsibility can expand faster than recognized authority. The history of gender and the household economy is therefore a history of changing interfaces rather than a simple march from dependence to autonomy.

Chapter 92 — Women’s Paid and Unpaid Labour

Women’s labour is one of the clearest cases in which economic reality exceeds the boundaries of ordinary employment statistics. A woman may transplant paddy, tend cattle, sort makhana, assist a family loom, cook for a work gang, collect water and fuel, care for children and an elderly parent, keep household accounts and participate in a self-help group—all within the same week. Some of those activities generate wages or sales. Some produce goods for household use. Some support a family enterprise without an individual payment. Others reproduce the labour force itself by feeding, cleaning, nursing and caring. A history that counts only the first category systematically understates women’s contribution.

This chapter therefore treats paid and unpaid work as connected parts of one labour system. It does not repeat Chapter 91’s analysis of the household as an economic institution, nor Chapter 93’s forthcoming analysis of marriage, dowry, inheritance and family structure. Its narrower question is how women’s work has been organised, measured, rewarded and rendered visible across Mithila, Vajji and Anga, with comparison to Nepal-side Madhesh. The argument is not that all unpaid work is oppression or that all paid work produces autonomy. Rather, remuneration, time control, productivity, social protection, asset ownership and bargaining power must be examined together.

92.1 “Work” and “employment” are not the same historical category

Labour statistics require boundaries: who is counted as employed, what reference period is used, whether production is for the market or for own use, and whether assistance to a family enterprise qualifies as economic activity. Women’s activities often sit exactly at these boundaries. A man hired to thresh grain for cash is easily classified as a worker; a woman threshing the household’s own grain, feeding labourers and storing seed may appear partly as a producer and partly as a non-worker depending on the survey concept. The first task of women’s labour history is therefore conceptual: classification is evidence, but it is not the economy itself.

92.2 Colonial and early postcolonial enumeration repeatedly struggled with women’s subsidiary work

Censuses and occupational surveys attempted to distinguish principal occupations, dependants, earners and workers, but household-based production made female activity difficult to fit into a single occupation. Enumerators could record a cultivator’s wife as economically inactive even when she weeded fields, processed grain and tended livestock. Later censuses improved worker definitions and distinguished main and marginal workers, yet seasonal and subsidiary activities remained sensitive to questioning and social expectations about what counted as “real work.” Long-run comparisons must therefore read changes in classification alongside changes in actual employment.

92.3 Agrarian labour made women indispensable while keeping tasks sharply gendered

Across the rice-growing plains, women have participated heavily in transplanting, weeding, harvesting support, gleaning, threshing, winnowing, drying and storing grain, while ploughing and some machinery-intensive tasks were more often male-coded. The exact division varied by caste, landholding, technology and locality. Landless women were more likely to sell agricultural labour; women in cultivating households could work intensively on family fields without a separate wage. Mechanisation could remove some drudgery while

also eliminating tasks through which poorer women earned cash. Agrarian “modernisation” therefore changed both workload and bargaining position.

92.4 Caste and class shaped whether women’s work was performed for wages, family production or status

The same task can carry different social meanings depending on who performs it and under what relation. Dalit and land-poor women have historically had greater exposure to agricultural wage labour, construction and other physically demanding paid work because household survival required cash earnings. In some landholding or status-conscious households, norms of seclusion could restrict women’s market work while leaving extensive domestic, livestock and post-harvest labour untouched. Muslim, Hindu and other households also varied internally by class, biradari, education and locality. Female labour-force participation is therefore never a simple proxy for gender equality.

92.5 Post-harvest processing connected field production to the domestic economy

Cleaning, drying, husking, grinding, sorting, seed preservation, fodder preparation and food storage often occurred near or inside the dwelling. These activities transformed crops into consumable, saleable or reusable products and determined losses, quality and food security. Because they were spatially domestic and frequently unpaid, they were easily described as “housework” even when they added economic value. Commercial mills, mechanical threshers, packaged foods and market purchases have shifted portions of this labour outside the household, but the transition is uneven and can replace women’s labour with purchased services without necessarily reducing women’s responsibility for provisioning.

Women’s work: changing statistical and policy visibility

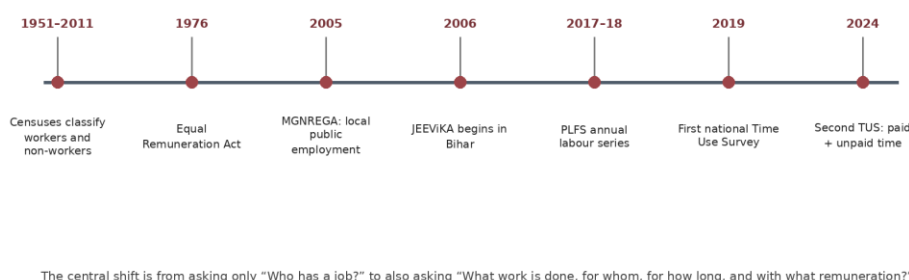


Figure 364 — Statistical and policy thresholds in the visibility of women’s work

92.6 Livestock work shows why “farm” and “care” cannot be separated neatly

Feeding cattle and goats, cutting fodder, cleaning sheds, collecting dung, milking, processing milk and caring for sick animals combine routine labour with asset management. In many households women perform much of the daily work even when men control sale proceeds or formal ownership. Dairy cooperatives and milk collection centres can convert household labour into regular cash flow, but the distribution of that income depends on who holds the account, travels to the collection point and makes expenditure decisions. Livestock is therefore both productive work and a household buffer economy.

92.7 Makhana, fisheries and wetland economies contain hidden stages of women's labour

Specialised wetland economies are often narrated through the male tasks most visible in ponds, markets or wholesale trade. Yet women may sort, grade, clean, roast, package, preserve, vend or keep accounts for makhana and fish-related household enterprises. The intensity varies by community and production system, and claims should not be universalised. What matters historically is that value chains extend into domestic space. When processing technology, producer groups or branded marketing expand, tasks once performed as unpaid family assistance may become wage work, self-employment or organised enterprise—without automatically redistributing care responsibilities.

92.8 Bhagalpur silk and other home-based industries blur the line between workshop and household

Weaving, reeling, winding, dye preparation, finishing, embroidery and piecework can be organised through household space and kin labour. A loom or sewing machine inside the dwelling collapses the spatial distinction between “workplace” and “home.” Women may contribute to production in short intervals around cooking and care, making hours difficult to recall and remuneration difficult to assign when payment is made to the household or male contractor. The same problem appears in tailoring, incense rolling, food processing, handicrafts and other dispersed production. Home-based work is productive precisely because it mobilises domestic time and space.

92.9 Urbanisation expanded women's informal employment faster than formal labour protections

Towns and peri-urban corridors created work in domestic service, vending, food preparation, tailoring, beauty services, retail assistance, private schooling, health support, small workshops and construction. These jobs range from autonomous self-employment to highly dependent casual labour. Domestic workers are especially difficult to regulate because the workplace is another household; vendors and home workers may lack contracts; construction labour can be seasonal and mediated by contractors. Urban employment can widen cash income and mobility while still leaving women responsible for unpaid work before and after the paid workday.

92.10 Brick kilns, construction and migrant labour reveal the household basis of supposedly individual wages

Seasonal migration to brick kilns, construction sites and other labour destinations often involves couples or families rather than isolated workers. Advances may be paid to a household unit, piece rates may depend on combined family output, and children's care and cooking must be organised at the worksite. Women's contribution can therefore disappear behind a male wage receipt even when production depends on joint labour. Conversely, when men migrate alone, women at origin absorb farm management, childcare, eldercare, financial administration and crisis response. Migration redistributes labour geographically; it does not remove unpaid work.

The visibility spectrum of women's work

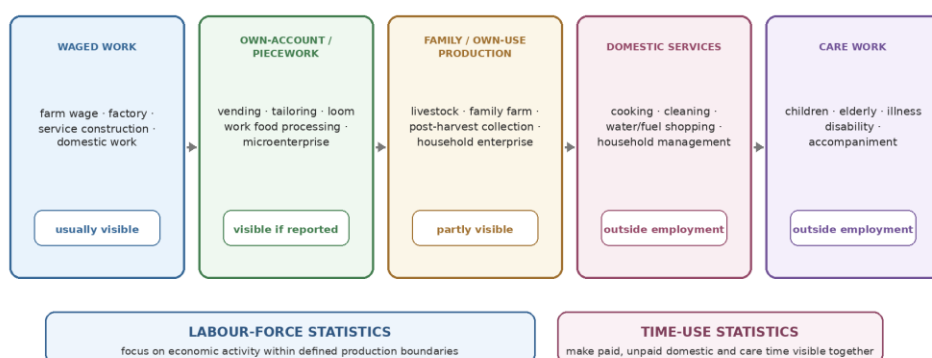


Figure 365 — The visibility spectrum of women's paid and unpaid work

92.11 Unpaid family work is economic production even when no individual wage is recorded

A contributing family worker may assist a farm, shop, loom, dairy activity or other household enterprise without receiving a separate salary. The absence of an individual payment does not mean the activity lacks economic value; it means the remuneration is pooled, deferred or embedded in household claims. This status can offer flexibility and family continuity, but it can also weaken an individual woman's control over income, pension eligibility, credit history and proof of employment. Labour history must therefore distinguish "unpaid" family production from unpaid domestic and care services: both lack direct wages, but they occupy different production boundaries.

92.12 Time-use surveys make visible work that labour-force surveys are not designed to count as employment

India's Time Use Surveys of 2019 and 2024 record a 24-hour diary of employment, own-use production, unpaid domestic services, unpaid caregiving, learning, social participation, leisure and self-care. This does not replace the Periodic Labour Force Survey. The two instruments answer different questions. PLFS estimates labour-force status over specified reference periods using economic-activity definitions; TUS asks how time was actually spent on a reference day. Together they expose the architecture of a workday: market work can rise or fall while cooking, cleaning, water collection and care remain indispensable.

92.13 Bihar's 2024 time-use profile shows a stark gender reversal between employment and unpaid domestic work

For persons aged six and above in Bihar, the 2024 Time Use Survey reported participation in employment and related activities for 54.7 per cent of males but only 10.6 per cent of females on the reference day. The pattern reversed for unpaid domestic services: 25.8 per cent of males and 76.7 per cent of females participated. Unpaid caregiving involved 18.6 per cent of males and 37.0 per cent of females. Among participants, women also spent much longer on unpaid domestic services—334 minutes compared with 95 minutes for men—and longer on care, 151 minutes compared with 91. These are time-use measures, not annual employment rates.

92.14 PLFS shows a larger female workforce than the one-day employment measure, but Bihar still trails the national female WPR

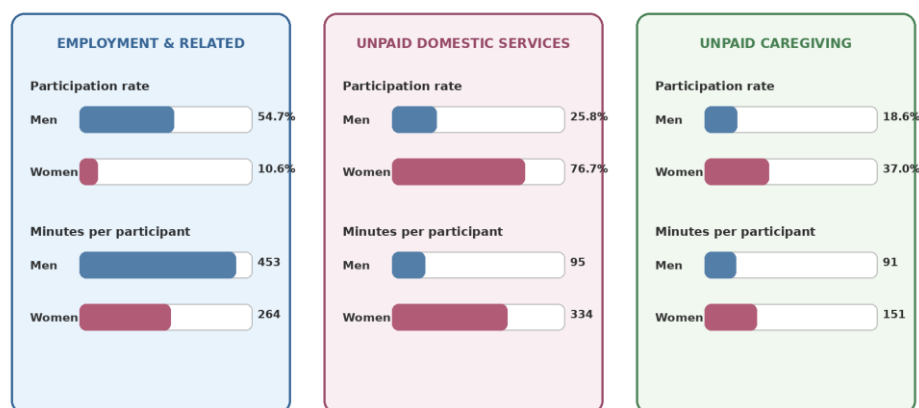
The PLFS 2023–24 estimated Bihar’s worker-population ratio for persons aged fifteen and above in usual status at 73.1 per cent for men and 30.1 per cent for women. Female WPR was 31.7 per cent in rural Bihar and 15.1 per cent in urban Bihar, compared with an all-India female WPR of 40.3 per cent. These figures are not directly comparable with TUS reference-day participation because age groups, reference periods and concepts differ. Their value lies in combination: labour-force surveys describe employment attachment, while time-use data reveal the unpaid workload surrounding that employment.

92.15 A low employment rate can coexist with an extremely long workday

The statistical paradox is only apparent. A woman classified outside the labour force may still spend hours cooking, cleaning, collecting water, caring for children or elderly relatives, managing household consumption and producing goods for own use. A woman who is employed may then add these tasks to wage work, creating a double or multiple burden. Conversely, a rise in female labour-force participation can reflect distress-driven work, low-paid self-employment or unpaid family production as well as expanding opportunity. No single rate can establish empowerment without information on earnings, hours, work conditions and control over resources.

Bihar, Time Use Survey 2024: three different work clocks

Persons aged 6+; rural + urban. Participation is a 24-hour reference-day measure.



Interpretation: low employment participation does not imply low total work. Domestic and care activity occupies a separate statistical domain and is far more female-intensive.

Figure 366 — Bihar Time Use Survey 2024: three work clocks by gender

Table 92.1 — Two measurement systems and what they reveal about women’s work

Indicator / source	Men	Women	What the measure means
TUS 2024 Bihar: employment participation, age 6+	54.7%	10.6%	Did employment-related activity during the 24-hour reference day
TUS 2024 Bihar: unpaid domestic participation, age 6+	25.8%	76.7%	Did unpaid domestic services for household members during the reference day
TUS 2024 Bihar: unpaid caregiving participation, age 6+	18.6%	37.0%	Did unpaid caregiving for household members during the reference day
PLFS 2023–24 Bihar: WPR, age 15+	73.1%	30.1%	Was employed in usual status (principal + subsidiary) over the survey reference framework

Indicator / source	Men	Women	What the measure means
PLFS 2023–24 Bihar: rural WPR, age 15+	74.2%	31.7%	Rural worker-population ratio in usual status
PLFS 2023–24 Bihar: urban WPR, age 15+	63.1%	15.1%	Urban worker-population ratio in usual status

Note: TUS and PLFS figures are not directly comparable because they use different age bases, reference periods and activity concepts. Their juxtaposition is analytical, not arithmetic.

92.16 MGNREGA created an unusually important local wage-work entitlement for rural women

The Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, enacted in 2005, guaranteed rural households access to specified public works and required that at least one-third of beneficiaries be women. Its significance for women extends beyond total person-days. Work is legally local, wage schedules do not prescribe a lower female rate, job cards can recognise adult household members, and bank or post-office payments create an individual financial interface. Yet access depends on work availability, worksite distance, childcare, task design, timely payment and control over the account. MGNREGA can therefore raise bargaining power without eliminating the unpaid workload that begins when the workday ends.

92.17 JEEViKA shifted some women from invisible household workers toward collective economic actors

Beginning in Bihar in 2006 and later scaling statewide, JEEViKA organised women into self-help groups and federations connected to savings, bank credit, livelihood support and public programmes. The institution matters because economic participation is not only about an occupation; it is also about the ability to travel, handle money, negotiate with banks, attend meetings and act collectively. Women entered farm producer activities, livestock services, food enterprises, stitching, retail and other livelihood interventions. But the label “entrepreneur” should not conceal low returns, debt risk or continued unpaid care. Collective organisation changes the conditions of work; it does not automatically make every activity remunerative.

92.18 Frontline public services created a large zone between salaried employment and unpaid care

Anganwadi workers and helpers, Accredited Social Health Activists, school meal cooks, community mobilisers, livestock sakhi workers and other local functionaries perform tasks that are essential to nutrition, health, schooling and rural programmes. Many are women and many are paid through honoraria, incentives or scheme-specific remuneration rather than regular civil-service salaries. Their work transfers portions of care and social reproduction from households into public systems, yet the employment relationship can remain insecure. The history of women’s paid work must therefore include these quasi-public occupations rather than treating “formal” and “informal” as the only two categories.

92.19 Education has expanded aspirations faster than the supply of accessible regular jobs

Girls’ schooling and women’s higher education have expanded substantially since independence, creating expectations of teaching, health, clerical, professional and government employment. But the transition from education to work is constrained by job scarcity, examination cycles, commuting safety, marriage timing, care responsibilities and norms concerning acceptable workplaces. The especially low urban female WPR in Bihar in PLFS 2023–24 points to this transition problem: cities contain education and services, yet women’s

employment is not automatically absorbed. The issue is not simply “willingness to work” but the fit between jobs, mobility, wages and household obligations.

92.20 Bank accounts and digital payments can make earnings legible without guaranteeing control

Direct benefit transfers, MGNREGA payments, self-help-group banking and widespread account ownership have increased the number of women who interact with formal finance. Digital payments can reduce cash leakage and create transaction records, but an account in a woman’s name is not identical to autonomous control of income. Phones may be shared, passwords known to relatives, and earnings immediately absorbed into household expenditure. Conversely, even pooled income can strengthen a woman’s position if she controls day-to-day budgeting. Financialisation therefore changes the infrastructure around work; its gender effects depend on social control and household bargaining.

92.21 Landlessness and caste hierarchy shape exposure to the harshest forms of paid labour

Women from land-poor Scheduled Caste and other marginalised households have often had less room to withdraw from wage labour when jobs are arduous, poorly paid or socially stigmatised. Agricultural casual work, brick making, construction, cleaning and domestic service can therefore show relatively high female participation precisely where economic vulnerability is greatest. This is why a simple rise in participation cannot be read as social progress. The relevant questions are whether wages rise, whether discrimination and harassment fall, whether work is safer, and whether workers gain alternative livelihoods and social protection.

92.22 Muslim women’s labour is distorted when home-based and family work is mistaken for inactivity

In Muslim households of Mithila and Anga, women’s economic roles vary widely by class, locality and biradari. Agriculture, livestock, tailoring, embroidery, weaving assistance, food work, petty trade, teaching, health services and self-help-group enterprises all occur, while mobility norms can push some income-generating activity into household space. Labour statistics that rely on self-identification can miss piecework or family assistance when respondents describe the primary role as “housewife.” The correct historical method is neither to presume seclusion nor to deny gendered mobility constraints, but to reconstruct specific labour processes.

92.23 Women’s labour changes across the life course rather than following one stable participation rate

Adolescent girls may combine schooling with sibling care and household chores. Newly married women can face increased domestic responsibility and reduced mobility. Mothers of young children confront intense care demands, while older women may return to farm, livestock, vending or grandchild care after younger children grow. Widowhood can force rapid entry into paid work or make property access decisive. Cross-sectional statistics average these transitions into one female rate. A life-course history reveals that the same woman can move repeatedly among schooling, paid work, family production, care and job search.

92.24 Reproductive health and labour conditions are economically linked

Pregnancy, childbirth, breastfeeding, menstruation, anaemia, chronic illness and reproductive health affect the capacity to perform strenuous work and the costs of absence. In formal employment, maternity

protections and leave can partially socialise these costs; in casual agriculture, home-based work or self-employment, income may stop when work stops. Public health, childcare and nutrition services therefore influence labour supply even when they are not labelled “employment policy.” Conversely, long hours of paid work combined with domestic work can reduce rest, nutrition and healthcare use. Reproductive labour is not an external demographic variable; it is part of the labour economy.

92.25 Male out-migration can increase women’s managerial work without converting responsibility into rights

Large-scale migration from Bihar often leaves women managing cultivation, livestock, school decisions, health care, debt, remittance use and relationships with local officials. This feminisation of management may expand practical authority and public mobility. Yet land titles, tenancy contracts, irrigation membership or inheritance claims can remain male, limiting the institutional recognition of women who actually run farms and households. Remittance dependence can also make decision-making vulnerable to irregular transfers. Migration therefore creates a recurring gap between responsibility and formal control.

Regional mosaics of women’s paid and unpaid labour

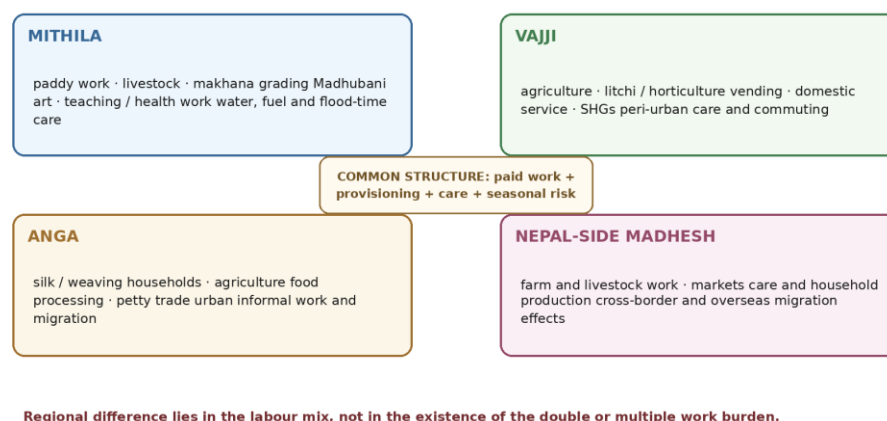


Figure 367 — Regional mosaics of women’s paid and unpaid labour across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Madhesh

92.26 Floods and climate stress expand unpaid work at the same time that they destroy paid workdays

Floods, waterlogging, heat, crop loss and damaged roads alter women’s time before they appear in income statistics. Water sources become distant or contaminated; cooking and fuel arrangements change; children remain home; illness increases; livestock need rescue or fodder; relief must be collected; and damaged houses require cleaning. At the same time agricultural wage days, vending and home production may collapse. The result is a double shock: market income falls while unpaid labour rises. Climate adaptation that ignores care, water, sanitation and safe transport therefore underestimates the labour required for recovery.

92.27 Mechanisation is gendered because machines replace particular tasks rather than “labour” in general

Combine harvesters, threshers, mills, pumps, fodder cutters, refrigerators, LPG, piped water and washing technologies alter different segments of women’s work. A thresher may remove paid post-harvest days for labourers while reducing drudgery for cultivator households. Piped water can save time without creating a

wage job. A sewing machine can raise home-based productivity but intensify piece-rate expectations. Technology should therefore be evaluated task by task: who previously performed the task, who owns the machine, whether time is actually freed, and what women can do with the saved time.

92.28 Equal-pay law does not eliminate gendered occupational segregation or informal bargaining

India's Equal Remuneration Act of 1976 established a legal principle against sex discrimination in remuneration for the same or similar work; wage-equality provisions are now carried within the Code on Wages framework. Yet most women in the study region work in settings where wage outcomes depend on casual hiring, piece rates, task segregation, contractors and local bargaining. Employers can classify men and women into different tasks rather than openly pay different rates for identical work. Effective equality therefore requires transparent task valuation, organisation, complaint mechanisms and alternative employment—not legal text alone.

92.29 Nepal-side Madhesh shows a comparable gap between women's work and labour-market incorporation

The Nepal Labour Force Survey 2017/18 estimated labour-force participation in Madhesh Province at 56.7 per cent for men and 25.9 per cent for women, with female unemployment also substantially higher than male unemployment. These figures belong to Nepal's own statistical system and should not be merged with Bihar data, but they illuminate a shared cross-border structure: agriculture, household production, migration and care create large volumes of women's work that do not all become stable employment. Cross-border marriage and male overseas migration can further redistribute labour toward women remaining in origin households.

92.30 A complete labour history must measure time, remuneration, control and social protection together

Women's economic contribution in Mithila, Vajji and Anga cannot be captured by asking only whether they are "working." The relevant historical dimensions are the amount of time devoted to different activities; whether the activity is paid, unpaid family production, own-use production, domestic service or care; the level and regularity of earnings; control over income and productive assets; exposure to risk and harassment; and access to pensions, maternity protection, insurance, childcare and collective organisation. The central transition since independence is not a linear movement from unpaid housework to paid employment. It is a reorganisation of multiple forms of labour whose boundaries remain gendered.

Chapter 93 — Marriage, Dowry, Inheritance and Changing Family Structures

Marriage is one of the institutions through which social hierarchy becomes household economy. It determines where people live, how labour is pooled, which kin are obligated to whom, how property moves across generations, and how status is displayed or contested. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, marriage has been reshaped by genealogy, caste and religious rules, landholding, education, migration, salaried employment, law, consumer markets and digital communication. None of these forces has replaced the others; they operate together.

This chapter follows those changes without collapsing distinct institutions into one narrative. Dowry is separated from women's own property and from Muslim mahr; statutory inheritance rights are separated from effective possession; civil marriage is separated from the social acceptance of partner choice; and residential household form is separated from the wider network of property and care. The result is a history of changing family relations rather than a catalogue of customs.

93.1 Marriage is an economic and political institution as well as a kinship relation

Marriage in Mithila, Vajji and Anga has historically connected households rather than only individuals. It redistributes labour, residence, land expectations, ceremonial obligations, credit, prestige and care. A marriage can link villages and towns, create durable obligations between affinal kin, reorganise women's access to natal and marital resources, and alter the labour available to a farm, shop or migrant household. The economic consequences therefore continue long after the wedding. At the same time, the institution is not uniform. Caste, class, religion, landholding, education, occupation and migration shape who marries whom, at what age, with what transfer of resources, and under what post-marital residence. A social history must consequently resist two reductions: marriage cannot be treated as a timeless "custom," and it cannot be understood only through statute. Its history lies in the interaction between rules, bargaining, household assets, social reputation and individual preference.

93.2 Historical family forms cannot be reconstructed by projecting the present backward

The archive of marriage is uneven. Genealogies illuminate selected communities; legal texts prescribe rather than describe; court cases over inheritance reveal disputes rather than ordinary settlements; censuses impose administrative categories; and oral memories often idealise an earlier age. The vocabulary of "joint family," "nuclear family," "dowry," "arranged marriage" and "love marriage" can therefore conceal more than it reveals when used as fixed historical types. Households split and recombined, widows and married daughters moved between residences, migrant men maintained families across distances, and property could remain jointly controlled after residential separation. Even patrilocality, a strong regional norm, did not erase a woman's continuing economic relationship with her natal kin. The chapter therefore treats family form as a set of changing relations—residence, property, labour, care and authority—rather than a single household shape.

93.3 Genealogy made marriage regulation unusually visible in parts of Mithila

Among Maithil Brahmins and Karna Kayasthas, genealogical traditions made lineage verification an unusually explicit part of matrimonial organisation. Panji records and specialist genealogists helped families

establish permissible relationships, while assemblies associated with Saurath became a public arena in which matrimonial negotiation, reputation and genealogy intersected. These institutions should not be generalised to every caste or religious community in Mithila, still less to Vajji or Anga as a whole. Their historical importance is different: they show how marriage could be governed by documentary knowledge and corporate memory, not simply by household preference. Modern schooling, salaried employment, urban residence, migration and digital matchmaking have weakened some older procedures, but genealogy has not become irrelevant. Instead, verification, partner search and negotiation have moved into a hybrid world combining older kin knowledge with phones, travel, education credentials and new ideas of compatibility.

93.4 Marriage markets linked caste status to education, occupation and geography

The characteristics valued in a spouse changed with the political economy. Land, lineage and ritual standing remained important in many settings, but colonial and postcolonial education created new status markers: matriculation, university degrees, government employment, professional credentials and migration destinations. Roads and railways widened the spatial field of potential matches, while urbanisation brought families into new social networks. This did not simply produce “free choice.” It changed the variables over which families bargained. A secure government job could raise the perceived status of a groom; education could increase a woman’s bargaining position yet also narrow the set of partners regarded as educationally suitable; migration could expand household income while creating uncertainty about residence and care. The regional marriage market therefore became simultaneously more extensive and more stratified, with caste boundaries, class aspirations and geographic mobility continually interacting.

93.5 Colonial courts and codification turned household disputes into legal categories

Under colonial rule, disputes over widowhood, stridhan, adoption, succession and marital status increasingly passed through courts that classified regional schools of personal law and treated texts and precedents as evidence. The Mithila school of Hindu law acquired a juridical form within this system, even though everyday family arrangements were more varied than reported cases suggest. Colonial adjudication did not invent family property, but it changed the arena in which disputes were argued and recorded. The result is a paradox for historians: court records preserve valuable evidence about women’s property and kinship claims, yet they disproportionately represent conflict and the legal language available to litigants. The post-independence codification of Hindu marriage and succession, and the continued operation of distinct Muslim personal-law rules, built on and altered this inherited legal landscape rather than beginning from a blank slate.

93.6 Age at marriage changed through schooling, labour markets, health policy and law

Age at marriage is a useful indicator because it sits at the intersection of education, fertility, household strategy and social norms. Early marriage was historically widespread in many parts of Bihar, but its prevalence has not been static. Girls’ schooling, secondary-school access, urban employment aspirations, transport, public campaigns and changing expectations about the costs of marriage have all affected timing. Law matters too, but legal prohibition alone cannot explain change. Families may delay marriage because a daughter is studying; because a suitable match has not been found; because migration alters the local marriage

market; or because wedding costs require saving. Conversely, poverty, insecurity and fears about reputation or safety can encourage earlier marriage. The trend therefore reflects a social field rather than a single cause.

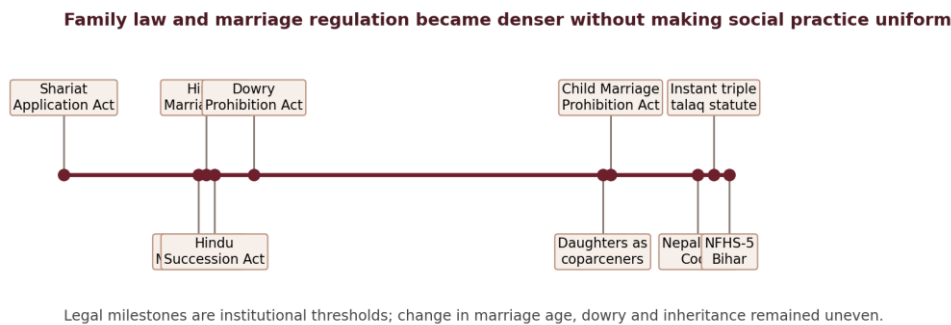


Figure 368 — Legal and demographic thresholds in the transformation of marriage and family life

93.7 Post-independence family law expanded the state's role in marriage without creating one uniform regime

Independent India created a denser statutory framework around marriage. The Special Marriage Act, 1954 provided a civil route for marriage and divorce. The Hindu Marriage Act, 1955 codified conditions of marriage and introduced statutory grounds for judicial separation and divorce for those within its scope. Muslim marriage, divorce and succession continued to be shaped by Muslim personal law, alongside later statutes and judicial decisions. The Dowry Prohibition Act, 1961 criminalised giving, taking and demanding dowry as defined by the Act. The Prohibition of Child Marriage Act, 2006 strengthened remedies and offences concerning child marriage. These laws do not merge family systems into one code. Instead, they create overlapping legal arenas in which religion, civil marriage, criminal prohibition, property and welfare law interact. Their social effect depends on registration, documentation, access to courts, policing, family support and the willingness of individuals to assert rights.

93.8 Bihar's child-marriage indicator has declined, but the rural burden remains high

The National Family Health Survey offers a comparable recent measure: the share of Bihar women aged twenty to twenty-four who reported marriage before eighteen fell from 42.5 per cent in NFHS-4 (2015–16) to 40.8 per cent in NFHS-5 (2019–21). The NFHS-5 split was sharply uneven—43.4 per cent in rural Bihar and 27.9 per cent in urban Bihar. These percentages should not be read as timeless regional culture. They describe cohorts of young women and reflect differences in schooling, wealth, settlement, transport, migration and local opportunity. Nor do they reveal the quality of marriage, household bargaining or legal awareness. Their historical value is narrower but important: early marriage remained a major social reality in Bihar even after decades of legislation, while the urban-rural gap shows why aggregate state averages can conceal very different family transitions.

93.9 Education can delay marriage and simultaneously intensify status matching

Schooling changes marriage in more than one direction. Remaining in secondary school makes very early marriage harder to reconcile with attendance and examinations, and higher education can create new aspirations for work or urban life. At the same time, educational expansion can intensify expectations that spouses should be matched by degree, occupation or earning potential. Families may search farther afield for a partner considered educationally compatible, increasing travel and information costs. In some groups, the

premium placed on a highly educated or securely employed groom can also become entangled with dowry expectations. Thus education is not a simple solvent of hierarchy. It increases individual capabilities and can delay marriage, but it may also become a new axis of matrimonial ranking. The social effect depends on whether women's education translates into employment, income, property claims and voice after marriage.

93.10 Dowry has changed form with the monetisation of status and consumption

Marriage transfers in the region have never consisted of a single institution. Gifts to a daughter, jewellery treated as her property, ceremonial exchange between families, household goods, cash, vehicles, land and coercive demands can coexist while carrying very different meanings. The modern expansion of cash income, consumer durables, salaried employment and credit has changed the scale and composition of transfers. A refrigerator, motorcycle or bank transfer belongs to a different material economy from earlier grain, cloth or ornaments, even when both are described locally through the language of marriage gifts. The critical historical distinction is between voluntary transfers and demands backed by the threat of withholding marriage, mistreatment or social humiliation. Treating every gift as dowry obscures women's property; treating coercive demands as "custom" obscures power. The monetisation of marriage therefore requires analytical separation of transfer, ownership and coercion.

93.11 The Dowry Prohibition Act changed the legal meaning of demand more than it changed the marriage economy overnight

The Dowry Prohibition Act, 1961 made the giving or taking of dowry punishable and separately penalised demands. Its importance is undeniable: a marriage payment could no longer be defended merely as ordinary social practice when it met the statutory definition of dowry. Yet law entered a field in which transactions were often negotiated privately, described as gifts, or spread across engagement, wedding and post-marital exchanges. Enforcement therefore depended on evidence, complaint, family support and the classification of a transfer after conflict had already emerged. Subsequent criminal-law and domestic-violence provisions created additional remedies for cruelty and abuse. The historical lesson is that prohibition and persistence can coexist. Statute alters the bargaining environment and supplies language for resistance, but household debt, status competition and unequal bargaining power can reproduce costly marriage payments in new forms.

93.12 Secure employment can become a matrimonial asset and a source of price-like bargaining

In a labour market marked by unemployment and informality, a secure salary is not only income; it is an insurance asset. Government service, banking, teaching, engineering, medicine and other stable occupations can therefore carry disproportionate weight in marriage negotiations. This helps explain why dowry cannot be reduced to "traditional greed." The practice can be reproduced by modern employment scarcity itself, when families treat a groom's salary, pension prospects, posting or migration status as a scarce credential. The same process can affect women differently. A woman's education may raise household aspirations for the status of her spouse even when her own labour-force participation remains constrained after marriage. The resulting marriage market links the political economy of jobs to household transfers, making employment reform and gender equality relevant to the history of dowry.

93.13 Wedding expenditure connects ritual prestige to credit and indebtedness

The economic burden of marriage extends beyond dowry. Feasts, tents, transport, jewellery, clothing, photography, music, venue rental, gifts and hospitality form a substantial local service economy. For wealthier households this spending may signal prosperity and consolidate networks; for poorer households it can require years of savings, asset sales, borrowing or migrant earnings. The social pressure to stage a “respectable” wedding can therefore transmit inequality across generations. Chapter 79 traced the wider history of rural credit; marriage is one of the life-cycle events through which credit becomes household history. The expansion of formal banking has not eliminated informal borrowing because wedding payments are time-sensitive and reputation-laden. A family may prefer debt to the perceived social cost of reducing a ceremony. Marriage expenditure thus reveals how consumption, honour and finance interact.

93.14 Stridhan, gifts and dowry must be separated analytically because ownership matters

A daughter’s jewellery, cash or movable property may function as a personal resource, a ceremonial gift, a contribution to the new household, or a transfer effectively controlled by others. Legal categories such as stridhan and statutory dowry do not map perfectly onto everyday vocabulary. The crucial question for economic history is control: who can sell the asset, pledge it, use it during crisis, or reclaim it after separation? A gold ornament held by the woman herself can provide emergency liquidity. The same ornament placed in a family locker controlled by others may not operate as her asset at all. Historical narratives that count only the value transferred at marriage miss this distinction. Women’s economic security depends less on the gross scale of marriage transfers than on legally and practically enforceable ownership over land, money, jewellery, housing and income.

93.15 Marriage transfers have often substituted symbolically for daughters’ natal property claims

In patrilineal and patrilocal settings, families may describe marriage expenditure as the daughter’s “share,” even where the law grants inheritance rights separately. This social accounting has powerful consequences. If a married daughter is expected to refrain from claiming land because her wedding was expensive, the family converts a one-time transfer into an argument against a durable property right. The two are not economically equivalent. Land can appreciate, generate rent, provide collateral, anchor residence and confer bargaining power across a lifetime. Wedding goods depreciate or may be controlled by the marital household. The contrast helps explain why formal equality in inheritance can coexist with low rates of land title in women’s names. The barrier is not simply ignorance of law; it can be a moral economy in which daughters are encouraged to preserve brotherly relations by treating property claims as socially disruptive.

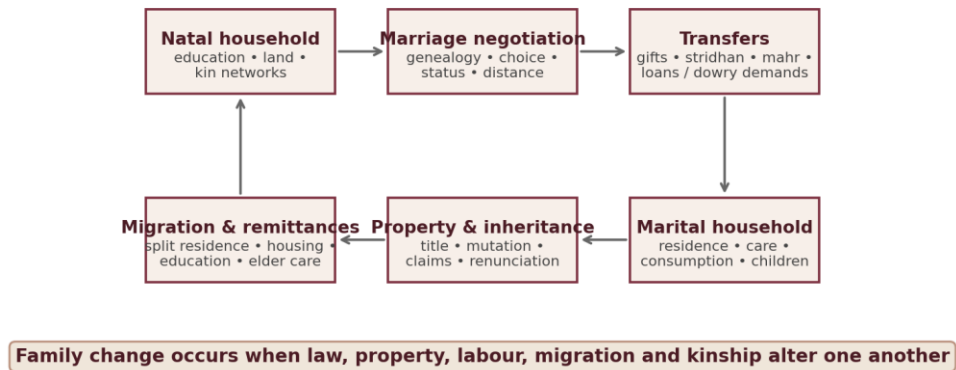


Figure 369 — Marriage connects natal household, transfers, residence, inheritance and migration

93.16 The Hindu Succession Act of 1956 and its 2005 amendment changed different layers of women’s property rights

The Hindu Succession Act, 1956 codified intestate succession and made a Hindu woman’s property her absolute property under section 14, a major break with older forms of limited estate. Yet the Mitakshara coparcenary remained gendered. The Hindu Succession (Amendment) Act, 2005 substituted section 6 so that a daughter of a coparcener becomes a coparcener by birth in her own right, with rights and liabilities comparable to a son. For the Mithila region this national reform must be understood against the older regional legal history in which daughters and widows could inherit in specified circumstances without enjoying a modern, equal coparcenary position. The 2005 change therefore should not be described merely as “giving daughters inheritance.” It altered the structure of joint-family property rights at birth.

93.17 Property law becomes social change only when rights are recorded, claimed and retained

A statutory entitlement does not automatically produce possession. Agricultural land may remain recorded in an ancestor’s name; mutation may be delayed; oral partitions may precede formal documentation; a daughter may execute a release deed; or brothers may cultivate land while compensating sisters informally. Litigation is costly, and asserting a claim can be interpreted as rejecting natal-family solidarity. Conversely, migration and rising land values can make formal title more important than in earlier periods. The practical history of inheritance therefore lies in land records, registration offices, court files and family negotiation as much as in legislation. The growing use of bank accounts, digital records and formal property transactions may make ownership more visible, but visibility does not guarantee equal control. Women’s inheritance is best measured through title, possession, income and decision-making together.

Table 93.1 — Legal and institutional thresholds affecting marriage, property and family formation

Instrument period	/	Primary domain	Historical significance	Analytical caution
1937 Application Act	Shariat	Muslim personal law	Clarified application of Muslim personal law to specified family matters	Do not equate mahr with dowry or assume uniform practice

Instrument / period	Primary domain	Historical significance	Analytical caution
1954–56 marriage and succession codes	Civil/Hindu marriage and inheritance	Expanded statutory regulation of marriage, divorce and intestate succession	Codification did not automatically equalise household bargaining
1961 Dowry Prohibition Act	Marriage transfers	Made dowry giving, taking and demand punishable within the statutory definition	Gifts, women's property and coercive demands must be distinguished
2005 Hindu Succession amendment	Coparcenary property	Made daughters coparceners by birth under amended section 6	Title, mutation, possession and family pressure still shape effective rights
2006 Child Marriage Act	Marriage age and remedies	Strengthened prohibition, offences and remedies concerning child marriage	Prevalence depends on schooling, poverty, security and local opportunity as well as law
2017 Nepal Civil Code	Marriage and partition	Marriage age 20; sons and daughters included as equal partition heirs	Cross-border kinship operates under distinct state legal systems

93.18 Muslim marriage and inheritance require a separate analytical vocabulary

Muslim family history in Mithila and Anga cannot be fitted into a Hindu dowry-and-coparcenary template. Mahr is a marital obligation owed to the bride and is conceptually distinct from dowry demanded from her natal family. Muslim personal law provides defined inheritance shares to female as well as male heirs, although the exact shares depend on the configuration of surviving relatives. The Muslim Personal Law (Shariat) Application Act, 1937 reinforced the application of Muslim personal law to specified family matters, while later legislation and judicial decisions changed particular aspects of divorce and maintenance. Social practice may still produce unequal control over assets, and marriage expenditures can include dowry-like demands despite the different legal vocabulary. Historical analysis must therefore keep doctrinal categories distinct while investigating how class, occupation, land and local custom affect women's actual economic security.

93.19 Civil marriage created a legal route outside community ceremony without making social boundaries disappear

The Special Marriage Act, 1954 provides a civil form of marriage and regulates registration, divorce and related consequences. It is important for couples seeking a legally recognised marriage without relying on a religious ceremony, including some inter-caste and inter-religious couples. Yet the existence of a civil route does not dissolve social constraints. Notice procedures, documentation, family opposition, housing dependence and threats to safety can make formal choice costly. In smaller towns and rural areas, a couple's future often remains embedded in kin and neighbourhood networks even after registration. Civil marriage should therefore be read historically as an expansion of legal capacity rather than proof of individualisation. It widens the repertoire of family formation while leaving the social price of crossing caste, religious or status boundaries highly unequal.

93.20 Partner choice has expanded, but “arranged” and “love” marriage are increasingly mixed forms

Phones, colleges, coaching centres, workplaces, migration and social media create spaces in which young adults can know potential partners outside a family-arranged encounter. At the same time, many relationships seek retrospective family approval, while family-arranged matches increasingly involve direct conversation, photographs, online profiles and meetings between the prospective spouses. The old binary between arranged and love marriage therefore fits the contemporary region poorly. What matters is the distribution of veto and choice: who can initiate a match, refuse one, delay marriage, or convert a relationship into a publicly recognised union? Caste and religion remain important constraints, but educational and urban networks increase the opportunities for boundary-crossing. Conflict around such marriages reveals precisely how household authority is changing rather than simply disappearing.

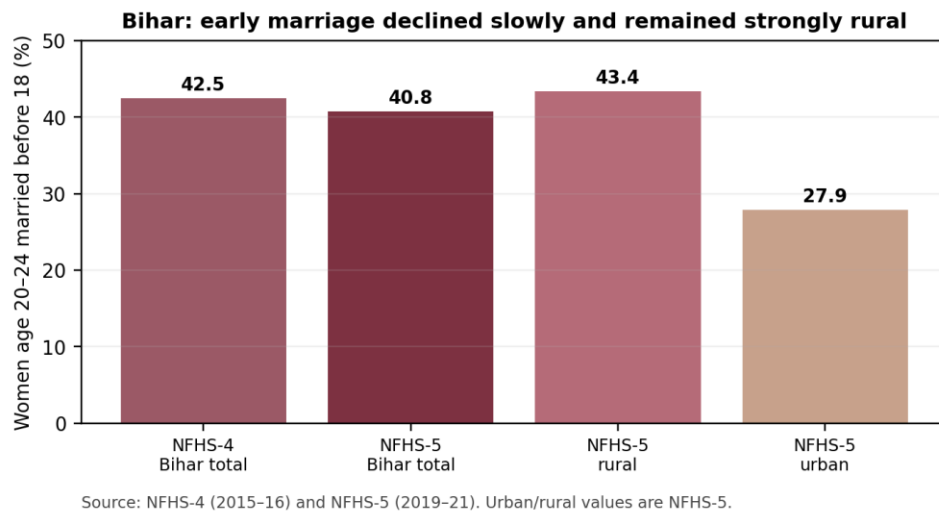


Figure 370 — Bihar child-marriage indicator: change and the NFHS-5 urban–rural divide

93.21 Widowhood, separation and divorce reveal family forms hidden by the ideal of lifelong marriage

Household history is distorted when only intact marriages are counted. Widows, deserted spouses, separated couples and divorced women have always existed, though their legal recognition and social visibility have changed. Post-independence marriage law provided formal routes to judicial separation and divorce for communities within statutory schemes, while personal-law and criminal-law remedies evolved in parallel. Economic consequences remain central. A woman leaving a marriage may lose access to residence, land, children’s support networks or unpaid labour from the marital household; a widow may become the effective head of a farm or remittance household without acquiring uncontested title. The increasing visibility of single-person and female-headed households does not necessarily indicate social isolation. Many remain embedded in extended kin networks that supply care, credit and dispute mediation.

93.22 Male migration creates split families rather than automatically producing nuclear families

Migration from north and eastern Bihar has long separated residence from household membership. A husband may work in Delhi, Punjab, Mumbai or the Gulf while his wife and children remain with his parents in the village; alternatively, the couple may establish an urban household while retaining land and

ritual obligations in the place of origin. These arrangements can increase a woman's day-to-day authority over schooling, health care and consumption while leaving major property decisions with absent men or senior kin. Remittances can finance weddings, housing and education, but migration also creates care burdens and long periods of conjugal separation. The result is not a simple transition from joint to nuclear family. It is a multi-local household whose economic unity is sustained by money transfers, phone calls, visits, land and obligations across distance.

93.23 Remittances alter marriage timing, housing and the geography of spouse search

Migration income can postpone marriage while a man establishes himself at destination, or accelerate it once a stable earning stream is demonstrated. A migrant job may widen the spatial radius of marriage search and raise the perceived economic value of a groom. Remittances also transform the material setting of family life: concrete houses, separate kitchens, private rooms, education spending and consumer goods can enable young couples to negotiate greater privacy even within an extended compound. Yet destination uncertainty can work in the opposite direction. Seasonal or precarious migration may increase reliance on the village joint family because grandparents provide childcare and land-based security. Migration therefore reshapes marriage not through a single “modernising” effect but by changing income, risk, residence and the bargaining power of generations.

93.24 Joint and nuclear families are not sequential stages of development

Demographic and sociological discussion often treats the joint family as traditional and the nuclear family as modern. The historical record suggests a more complex cycle. A newly married couple may live with parents, later establish a separate kitchen, return during illness or unemployment, and eventually receive ageing parents into their household. Brothers can partition land but continue to cooperate in cultivation or ceremonies. Urban migrants can live nuclearly at destination while remaining part of a joint property and ritual unit in the village. Household size is thus a snapshot of a life-course process. Changes in fertility, life expectancy, migration and housing have altered the frequency of different arrangements, but intergenerational dependence remains strong. The relevant question is not whether the joint family has “survived”; it is which resources are pooled, which decisions are shared, and where care is performed.

93.25 Elder care keeps intergenerational property and residence tightly connected

Longer life expectancy and out-migration have made elder care a central but under-measured dimension of family structure. Parents may transfer land to sons while expecting residence and support, or retain title as insurance against neglect. Daughters increasingly contribute cash, medical coordination and emotional care, especially when education and transport allow frequent contact, even though patrilocal residence may place everyday caregiving on daughters-in-law. Pension schemes and public health services can reduce dependence on children but rarely replace family care. These arrangements affect inheritance bargaining: property is not only a productive asset but a mechanism through which older people negotiate security. The family economy of ageing therefore links Chapters 91–93 directly to the history of land, migration and public welfare.

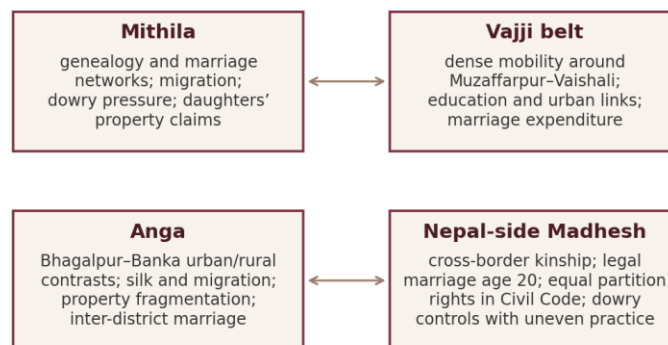
93.26 Married daughters remain part of natal-family economies despite patrilocal residence

Patrilocality can make a married daughter appear to have exited her natal household, but actual economic relations are more durable. Daughters may receive support during childbirth, illness or marital crisis; contribute to parents' medical expenses; host younger siblings studying in towns; participate in inheritance negotiations; and maintain ritual obligations across generations. Mobile phones and cheaper transport have intensified this continuing relationship. The key historical change is not the disappearance of patrilocality but a widening capacity for married women to sustain direct communication and financial exchange with natal kin. This has implications for property. A daughter with her own income, bank account or formal title can engage with her natal family as an economic actor rather than solely as a recipient of gifts. Such ties complicate any model in which marriage permanently transfers a woman from one bounded household to another.

93.27 Nepal-side Mithila combines cross-border kinship with a distinct legal family regime

Families across the India–Nepal border have long formed marriages through linguistic, caste, religious and commercial networks that pre-date the modern boundary. Yet the legal regimes on the two sides are not identical. Nepal's National Civil Code, 2017 sets twenty as the minimum age for marriage and recognises husband, wife, father, mother, son and daughter as partition heirs, with equal shares among heirs under its partition chapter. Nepal's Social Practices (Reform) Act also regulates tilak and dowry-like demands and seeks to limit competitive expenditure. These provisions matter in Madhesh, including the Janakpur-centred cultural zone, but law operates within the same cross-border pressures of status, education, migration and ceremonial display found on the Indian side. Cross-border marriage therefore joins a shared cultural field to two different documentary and legal systems.

One region, several marriage and family regimes



Education, roads, phones and migration widen choice, but kinship and property still structure the feasible set.

Figure 371 — Regional mosaics of marriage and family change across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Madhesh

93.28 Digital matchmaking changes information costs more than it abolishes kinship

Mobile phones, messaging applications, social media and matrimonial websites have sharply reduced the cost of obtaining photographs, educational details, employment claims and family contacts. Migrant

households can participate in negotiations from distant cities or countries, and prospective spouses can communicate directly before marriage. At the same time, digital tools can reproduce older filters by caste, sub-group, language, locality, occupation and income. They may even intensify screening by making more information searchable. Fraud, exaggerated employment claims and privacy risks create new problems that older face-to-face networks handled differently. Digital matchmaking is therefore a technological transformation of the marriage market, not its de-socialisation. Kinship remains important, but it is increasingly mediated by databases, phones and documents rather than only by local intermediaries.

93.29 Weddings have become a significant cultural and service economy

The contemporary wedding mobilises caterers, tent houses, decorators, photographers, video editors, bands, DJs, beauty services, vehicle hire, jewellers, clothing retailers, sweet shops and event venues. This service chain creates local employment and links villages to nearby towns. Its growth reflects electrification, roads, digital media and rising consumer aspiration as much as ritual continuity. At the same time, wedding spectacle can create powerful imitation effects: a ceremony becomes a public ranking event whose images circulate through phones and social media. The economic history of marriage therefore includes both livelihoods and burdens. What sustains a photographer or caterer can also push a low-income family into debt. The policy challenge is not to erase celebration but to reduce coercive transfers and status competition while preserving women's ownership and household financial security.

93.30 Family transformation is best understood as a rebalancing of rights, residence and obligation

Across Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the family has neither remained unchanged nor dissolved into isolated individuals. Marriage is occurring within a denser legal framework; girls' schooling has expanded; migration has made households multi-local; daughters possess stronger statutory property rights; digital communication has widened partner search; and divorce, separation and widow-headed households are more institutionally visible. Yet caste endogamy, patrilocal residence, dowry pressure, unequal property control and dependence on kin care remain powerful. The decisive historical shift is therefore not from "traditional" to "modern" family. It is from one configuration of rights and obligations to another, with different institutions changing at different speeds. Law can alter entitlement, education can alter aspiration, and migration can alter residence, but durable equality requires these changes to converge in ownership, income, safety and voice.

Chapter 94 — Education and Social Mobility

Education changes social history when learning and credentials alter who can enter occupations, migrate, speak to the state, postpone marriage, claim professional authority or imagine a life outside inherited work. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, this process has been neither linear nor equal. The region contains old traditions of Sanskrit, Persian, Urdu and vernacular learning, nineteenth-century colleges, post-independence universities, mass government schooling, welfare hostels, scholarship systems and a contemporary digital education market. Each widened access for some groups while also creating new thresholds of language, examination, finance, information and geography.

This chapter therefore asks not whether education expanded—that question was treated institutionally in Chapter 84—but how expansion was converted into mobility. The unit of analysis is the transition: from village to school, primary to secondary, secondary to college, degree to examination, credential to occupation, and one generation's first educational foothold to the next generation's accumulated advantage. Caste, gender, class, religion, locality, disability and migration shape every transition. Education can weaken inherited hierarchy, but it can also translate pre-existing resources into new forms of credentialled distinction.

94.1 Education is a mobility institution, not an automatic equaliser

Schooling matters socially because it can convert time spent learning into literacy, certification, occupational eligibility and symbolic status. Yet the conversion is conditional. A child needs a school within reach, a household able to release labour time, teachers and materials that produce learning, progression through examinations, and a labour market that values the resulting credential. Families with land, salaried employment, educated relatives or urban residence can support each transition more easily than households dependent on seasonal labour. Education thus opens routes out of inherited occupations while simultaneously rewarding accumulated family resources. Social mobility is best understood as the changing probability that a child can cross these thresholds, not merely as the number of schools built.

94.2 Older learning systems were socially significant but narrow in reach

Before modern mass schooling, the region supported multiple learning institutions: Sanskrit tols and scholastic lineages, Persian and Arabic instruction, maktabas and madrasas, pathshalas, guru–disciple transmission, scribal training and practical apprenticeship in crafts and commerce. These institutions produced real intellectual and occupational mobility within particular social worlds, but they did not constitute universal schooling. Access often depended on gender, community, patronage, family occupation and the capacity to sustain a learner outside immediate production. Their history matters because colonial and modern institutions did not arrive in an educational vacuum; they reorganised older hierarchies of literacy, language and scholarly authority.

94.3 Colonial schooling made examinations convertible into new employment

The colonial state enlarged the value of standardised literacy by tying schooling to clerical work, teaching, law, revenue administration and the professions. English, Persian-to-English administrative transition, vernacular schooling and university examinations created a new hierarchy of credentials. A matriculation certificate or college degree could move a young man from agrarian or service dependence toward salaried work, but the costs of preparation, travel and residence kept access selective. Families that could invest in schooling began to accumulate a new kind of capital: familiarity with examinations, bureaucratic language

and urban networks. This helped create regional educated strata whose authority rested increasingly on credentials as well as land, caste or lineage.

94.4 Regional colleges reduced the geographical cost of higher learning

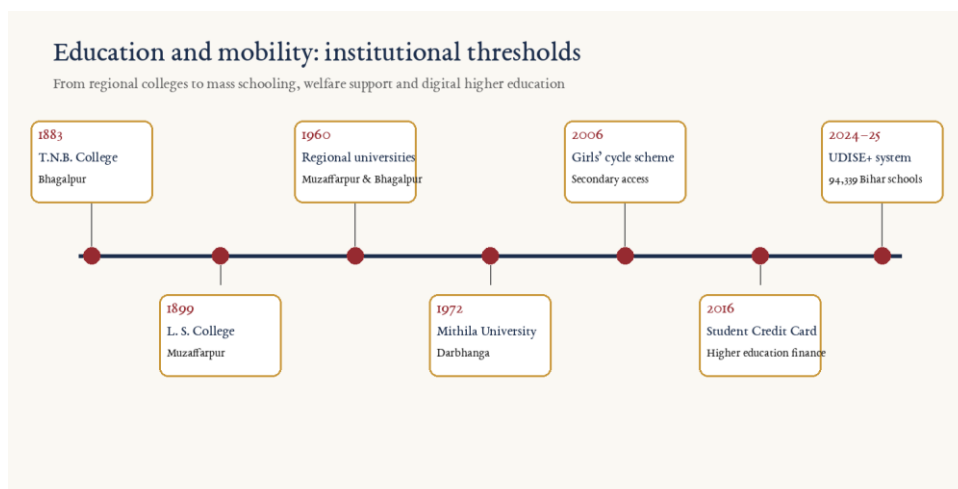
The founding of T.N.B. College in Bhagalpur in 1883 and Langa Singh College in Muzaffarpur in 1899 illustrates an important social transition. Higher education no longer required every aspirant from eastern or north Bihar to relocate to Calcutta or another distant centre. Local colleges created hostels, libraries, debating societies, professional aspirations and political networks. Their students were still socially selective, but the existence of a regional institution lowered transport and residence costs and enabled families to imagine college as reachable. The location of an institution therefore has a distributional effect: a college changes the radius within which a household can convert a child's schooling into a degree.

94.5 Post-independence universities regionalised credentials on a much larger scale

The post-independence university map deepened this process. Bihar University's Muzaffarpur base, Bhagalpur University from 1960, the Sanskrit university at Darbhanga, and Mithila University from 1972 created regional systems of affiliated colleges and postgraduate departments. The significance was not only institutional. Teacher employment expanded, degrees became available closer to home, women could study without long-distance migration in greater numbers, and smaller towns acquired educated service economies. At the same time, uneven calendars, examination delays, staffing shortages and variable college quality meant that proximity did not guarantee timely or equally valued credentials.

94.6 The first generation pays costs that later educated generations inherit as advantages

For a first-generation learner, schooling includes hidden work: understanding forms, certificates, admissions, subject choice, hostel rules, examination patterns, scholarship portals and the vocabulary of institutions. An educated parent or elder sibling can supply this information almost invisibly. Where nobody in the household has crossed the threshold before, mistakes are more costly and aspirations may be based on incomplete information. Over time, a family can accumulate what may be called educational infrastructure inside the household—books, study space, expectations, contacts, confidence with officials and knowledge of competitive pathways. Intergenerational mobility therefore tends to compound once an initial foothold is established.



*Figure 372 — Education and mobility: institutional thresholds from regional colleges to the UDISE+ era***94.7 Mass schooling moved the mobility question from access to progression**

Once primary schooling becomes widespread, inequality shifts upward. The decisive questions become whether children remain through upper primary and secondary school, whether they learn enough to pass board examinations, and whether they can afford the next transition. A village may have near-universal enrolment while still showing sharp differences in attendance, tutoring, repetition, dropout and secondary completion. For mobility analysis, each stage is a filter. The child who leaves after primary school is counted as having accessed education but may gain little credential advantage in a labour market where secondary and higher qualifications increasingly set the threshold.

94.8 Census evidence shows that educational attainment remains socially differentiated

The 2011 Census provides district-level educational attainment as well as separate tables for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes. These data show why literacy alone is an incomplete measure of mobility. The relevant hierarchy runs from non-literacy through primary, middle, matriculation, higher secondary, technical qualifications and graduation. Social groups can converge at elementary access while remaining far apart at graduation. The same is true by sex. Historical disadvantage therefore appears as a cumulative thinning of representation at successive levels, not as a single gap that disappears once a school is opened.

94.9 Girls' education changed the timing and bargaining structure of the life course

The expansion of girls' schooling is one of the most consequential mobility shifts in post-independence Bihar. Secondary and higher education can delay marriage, enlarge the pool of occupations considered respectable for women, increase familiarity with institutions and create a stronger fallback position within the household. The effect is not simply individual earnings. An educated daughter can influence sibling schooling, health care, documentation and future children's education. Yet gains remain conditional on safety, transport, sanitation, social permission and the availability of jobs compatible with family expectations. Education may raise aspirations faster than local labour markets create acceptable employment.

94.10 Bicycles, uniforms, meals and residential schooling attack the non-fee cost of education

The price of schooling is not identical to tuition. Distance, transport, clothing, meals, safety, books and the loss of household labour can all determine attendance. Bihar's cycle and uniform schemes, school meals and residential programmes became important because they targeted these everyday constraints. The Mukhyamantri Balika Cycle Yojana, initiated in 2006 for girls entering Class IX, became especially significant as a mobility intervention: it changed the practical radius within which a secondary school could be reached and gave adolescent girls a visible claim to public space. Later extensions and direct-benefit systems institutionalised this approach.

94.11 Welfare hostels convert distant institutions into usable opportunities

A college seat is of limited value if a student cannot afford to live near the institution. Hostels run for Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes, Backward Classes and Extremely Backward Classes therefore form part of the mobility infrastructure. They reduce rent and food costs, create peer networks and make urban

institutions reachable from villages. Residential schools play a similar role earlier in the educational ladder. Their importance is greatest where settlement is remote, transport is uncertain or the household cannot provide a stable study environment. Quality of accommodation, staffing and safety, however, determines whether the formal entitlement produces real educational gain.

94.12 Scholarships matter because liquidity constraints arrive at predictable educational transitions

Examination fees, admission charges, books, travel, devices and hostel deposits often arrive as lump-sum costs even when annual schooling is nominally inexpensive. Post-matric scholarships and merit incentives for SC, ST, BC, EBC, minority and other students can therefore prevent a temporary shortage of cash from becoming permanent dropout. Bihar's welfare departments now administer multiple scholarship, merit, hostel and pre-examination support schemes. These programmes do more than subsidise education: they recognise that historically excluded groups face a different cost structure when they attempt to enter institutions designed around households with more stable cash flow and administrative familiarity.

94.13 Social mobility through education is shaped by caste without being reducible to caste

Caste matters through several pathways: historical literacy and landholding, settlement pattern, occupation, discrimination, network access, school composition and the ability to finance long preparation. Scheduled Castes and Extremely Backward Classes have often entered higher levels later and with fewer inherited educational resources. Yet there is substantial variation within every administrative category. The point is not to treat caste as destiny but to recognise path dependence. When one generation enters teaching, government service, engineering, medicine or administration, the next generation inherits information and expectations that can accelerate mobility. Education thus changes caste relations partly by creating internal class differentiation within caste groups.

94.14 Reservation makes credentials convertible into representation, but it does not create the credential

Reservation in public employment and higher education can alter the return to schooling for historically excluded communities by opening positions that would otherwise reproduce older monopolies. But reservation operates after earlier educational filters. A student must still reach the qualifying examination, complete the required degree and navigate recruitment. This is why scholarships, hostels, school quality and coaching support matter alongside reservation. Chapter 95 examines reservation and new middle classes directly; the present point is narrower: educational mobility depends on a chain in which affirmative action changes the conversion of credentials into positions but cannot by itself repair every inequality in credential formation.

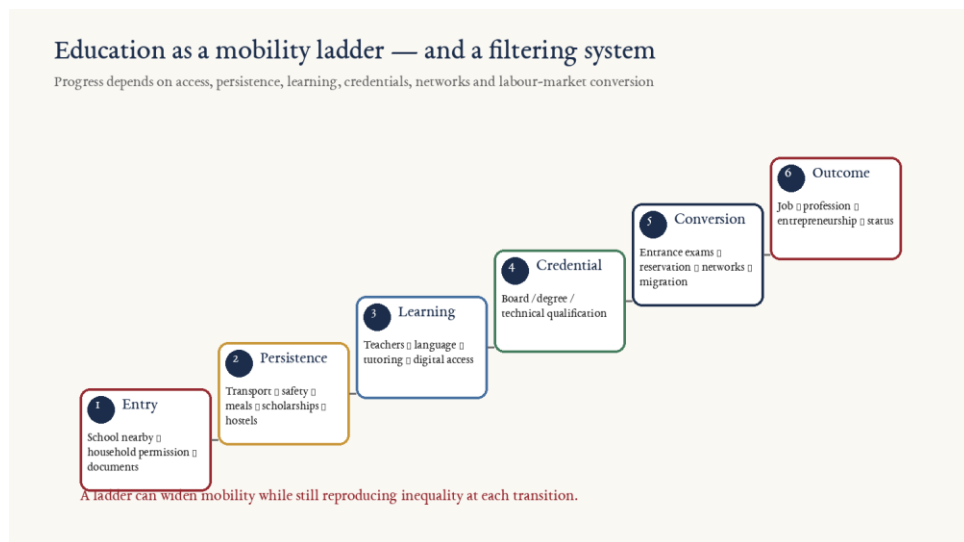


Figure 373 — Education as a mobility ladder and a filtering system

94.15 Competitive examinations created a parallel education economy

As government service, engineering, medicine, banking and other salaried occupations became highly competitive, preparation shifted partly outside formal colleges. Coaching centres, test series, guidebooks, private tutors, hostels and online platforms formed a parallel education economy. Students from Mithila, Vajji and Anga travel to Patna, Delhi, Kota and other centres, or purchase digital courses while remaining at home. This can widen access to specialised preparation, but it also creates a new inequality: families able to finance repeated years of coaching can sustain the examination gamble longer than households requiring an immediate income.

94.16 Degree expansion can produce mobility and credential inflation at the same time

When secondary and university participation grows faster than the supply of stable salaried work, the value of a basic credential changes. A degree that once marked a small educated elite can become the minimum entry condition for a job previously filled by matriculates. Families respond by seeking postgraduate, technical or competitive qualifications. This is not evidence that education has ceased to matter. Rather, the positional value of education shifts upward. Mobility becomes dependent on field of study, institution, examination success, English and digital skills, internships and social networks, not on the possession of a degree alone.

94.17 Bihar's higher-education GER shows that the transition beyond school remains selective

AISHE 2022–23 provisional data place Bihar's higher-education gross enrolment ratio for ages eighteen to twenty-three at 16.9 per cent, below the national level. The male GER was 16.1 and the female GER 17.8, showing that female participation at this stage can exceed male participation even while overall access remains restricted. The Scheduled Caste total GER was 15.8. These figures should not be read as direct measures of mobility, but they identify the bottleneck: a large school-age population enters a higher-education system in which participation remains far from universal.

94.18 The meaning of a mobility programme depends on which barrier it removes

Policies that all appear under the heading “education” intervene at different points. A bicycle addresses distance; a hostel addresses residence; a scholarship addresses liquidity; a credit scheme addresses larger financing needs; reservation changes access to seats or jobs; coaching support addresses examination preparation. Treating these interventions as substitutes produces weak policy analysis. They are complements in a chain. A student may need several of them sequentially, and failure at one stage can nullify success at another. The social history of educational mobility is therefore a history of bundled supports as much as of school construction.

Table 94.1 — Educational mobility mechanisms and the constraints they address

Mechanism	Mobility gain	Persistent constraint	Regional relevance
Transport / cycle support	Extends feasible secondary-school radius	Safety, road quality, attendance	Especially important in dispersed rural settlements and flood-prone areas
Scholarship / hostel	Reduces cash and residence barriers	Administrative delay, quality of hostel, information	Critical for first-generation SC/ST/BC/EBC and low-income students
Local college / university	Lowers migration and residence cost	Quality, subject range, exam delays	Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur and Bhagalpur as regional education nodes
Credit / coaching support	Finances expensive higher or competitive pathways	Debt risk, exam uncertainty, unequal preparation time	Links regional students to all-India professional and recruitment markets

94.19 Learning quality determines whether years of schooling become usable capability

School completion can rise while foundational learning remains uneven. If children advance without secure reading, arithmetic and comprehension, later curricula become progressively harder and private tutoring becomes more valuable. Learning inequality then reproduces class inequality inside formally universal schooling. Teacher availability, multigrade classrooms, language of instruction, attendance and assessment practice all matter. UDISE+ 2024–25 records Bihar’s enormous school system—94,339 schools, more than 21.1 million enrolments and over 707,000 teachers—but scale itself does not measure what students learn. Mobility depends on the quality of the educational experience within that system.

94.20 Private schooling and tutoring can widen choice while stratifying peer groups

Households that distrust government-school quality may purchase private schooling even at considerable sacrifice. Others combine government school with private tuition. This market can create experimentation and parental choice, but it also sorts children by income, language aspiration and locality. A low-fee private school is not necessarily high quality, and a government school is not necessarily low quality; the more important historical change is that education has become a major field of household consumption. Spending on school fees, tutoring, transport, devices and coaching increasingly signals both aspiration and the unequal capacity to protect a child from institutional weakness.

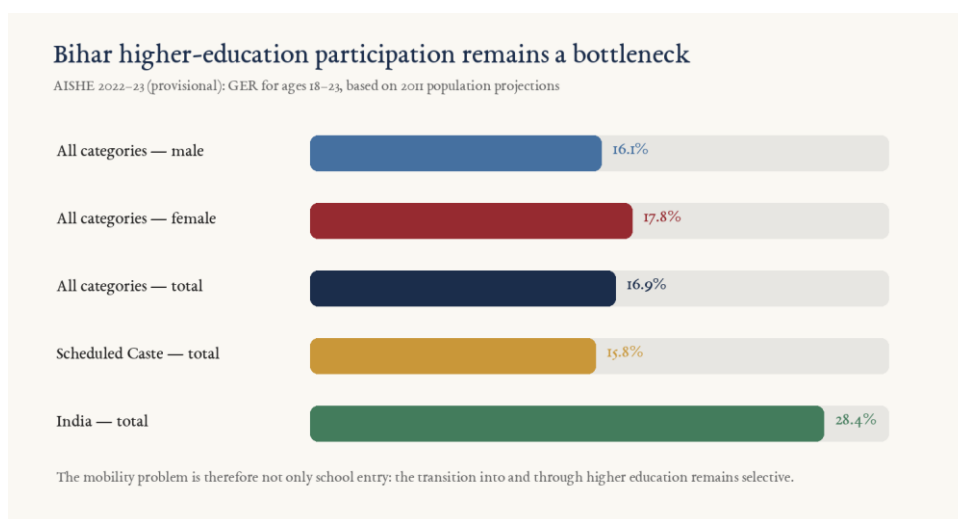


Figure 374 — Bihar higher-education GER and the continuing transition bottleneck

94.21 Language is both a learning medium and a mobility gate

Children enter school with Maithili, Angika, Bajjika, Urdu, Hindi and other linguistic repertoires, while textbooks, examinations and higher education increasingly privilege standard Hindi and English. Early comprehension can suffer when the classroom treats the child's home language as an error rather than a resource. At later stages the hierarchy reverses: English competence can become an advantage in professional education, private employment and digital knowledge. Social mobility therefore involves linguistic translation. Families with educated members can supply that translation privately; first-generation learners depend more heavily on the school to bridge home language, examination language and occupational language.

94.22 English and digital fluency became new forms of educational capital

Computer access, smartphones, online forms, searchable information and English-language interfaces have changed what it means to be “educated.” A student may possess a degree yet remain disadvantaged if unable to navigate online recruitment, digital payments, document uploads or professional communication. Conversely, inexpensive smartphones and video instruction can bring specialised teaching into villages that lack local faculty. The digital turn thus reduces some geographic barriers while intensifying inequalities in device quality, connectivity, quiet study space and the ability to judge information. Digital fluency increasingly sits between credential and opportunity.

94.23 The Bihar Student Credit Card addresses a financing barrier that scholarships cannot fully cover

The Bihar Student Credit Card scheme, launched on 2 October 2016, was designed for students who had completed Class XII but could not finance higher education. Its importance lies in the size and timing of the cost it addresses: professional and university study may require fees and living expenses beyond the reach of ordinary scholarships. Credit can prevent household liquidity from deciding educational destiny, but it also introduces questions of course quality, institutional recognition, completion and repayment. Educational finance expands mobility most effectively when students can distinguish a valuable credential from an expensive but weak one.

94.24 Civil-service incentives and pre-examination training recognise the cost of long preparation

Competitive recruitment can require years of study after graduation with no guarantee of success. Welfare departments in Bihar operate pre-examination training, civil-service incentive and related support schemes for SC, ST, BC and EBC candidates. Such programmes recognise a structural problem: the poorest graduate may have the credential to compete but not the ability to remain outside paid work while preparing. By subsidising the waiting period, the state intervenes in the time dimension of inequality. The effect can be especially important for first-generation graduates whose households cannot finance repeated attempts.

94.25 Educational migration creates multi-sited households and new regional networks

Students move from villages to district towns, from district towns to Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur or Bhagalpur, and onward to Patna, Delhi, Kota, Bengaluru and other centres. This migration is distinct from labour migration but often connected to it. A migrant worker may finance a child's hostel; an older sibling in Delhi may provide accommodation; a student may remain in the city after graduation. Education thereby reorganises family geography. It also creates alumni and coaching networks through which information about courses, examinations and employment circulates back to the village.

94.26 Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur and Bhagalpur function as different kinds of regional education nodes

Darbhanga concentrates university, Sanskrit, medical and general higher-education traditions serving Mithila; Muzaffarpur combines an old college tradition with a large affiliating university and access to the wider north-Bihar corridor; Bhagalpur anchors Anga through T.N.B. College, Tilka Manjhi Bhagalpur University and newer technical and specialised institutions. Their role is not identical, but each reduces the distance between rural households and advanced education. The social consequence is visible in rental markets, hostels, bookshops, coaching centres, transport, student politics and the growth of educated service occupations around the campus economy.

94.27 Nepal-side Mithila adds a cross-border dimension to educational mobility

Janakpurdham and other Madhesh towns have their own schools and campuses, but the open India–Nepal border and shared linguistic and kin networks also support educational movement across the boundary. Families may compare institutions, fees, subject availability and professional routes on both sides. Indian cities become destinations for medical, technical, university and competitive preparation; Nepali institutions can likewise serve border populations. This circulation should not be romanticised as frictionless—citizenship, recognition of qualifications, language and professional regulation matter—but it shows that the educational geography of Mithila is not contained by one national school system.

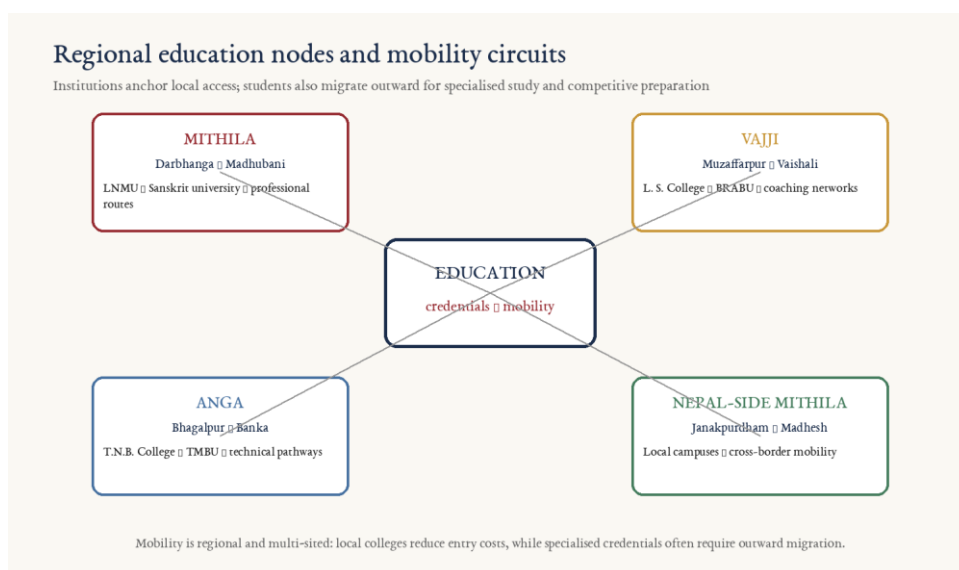


Figure 375 — Regional education nodes and mobility circuits across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Nepal-side Madhesh

94.28 Education changes household authority before it changes occupation

A student who can read official notices, fill online forms, interpret medical prescriptions, operate a bank account or communicate with officials may acquire authority within the household even before securing a job. Young women's education can alter decisions about marriage, fertility and children's schooling; an educated son or daughter may manage remittances and land records for migrant parents. These small shifts matter historically because they redistribute competence. Education's social effect is therefore broader than wages: it changes who speaks for the household and who can translate between local life and bureaucratic institutions.

94.29 Mobility gains coexist with new exclusions based on quality, field and network

The democratisation of enrolment does not eliminate hierarchy; it changes its form. When more students hold degrees, employers may sort by institution, marks, English, technical skill, internship, caste and professional network. Students from weak schools can enter college yet remain disadvantaged in competitive examinations. Women can surpass men in higher-education participation ratios while facing narrower employment options. Scheduled-Caste participation can improve while concentration in less remunerative fields persists. The appropriate conclusion is not that education fails, but that mobility policy must follow the student through the entire chain from learning to labour-market conversion.

94.30 Education transformed the social imagination of the region even where mobility remained incomplete

Across Mithila, Vajji and Anga, education has become one of the principal languages through which families describe a better future. Land-poor households invest in examinations; daughters travel farther to school; welfare hostels support first-generation students; regional universities anchor towns; migrants finance coaching; smartphones carry lectures into villages; and degrees circulate through marriage and status markets as well as employment. The result is neither meritocracy nor simple reproduction. Education has genuinely widened who can aspire to salaried, professional and public roles, while unequal learning, finance, language,

geography and labour markets continue to filter those aspirations. Social mobility is therefore best understood as an unfinished institutional achievement.

Chapter 95 — Reservation, Affirmative Action and New Middle Classes

Reservation became one of the principal institutions through which the democratic state attempted to alter inherited inequalities in education, public employment and representation. In Bihar this history is unusually layered. Scheduled-Caste and Scheduled-Tribe safeguards intersected with backward-class commissions, the Karpoori Thakur formula, Mandal politics, a statutory division between Extremely Backward Classes and Backward Classes, women's and other horizontal reservations, local-government quotas, welfare hostels, scholarships, examination support and, later, an Economically Weaker Sections quota. Across the border, Nepal developed a different but comparable inclusion system in which Madhesi representation became part of civil-service and federal-democratic reform.

This chapter is not a legal digest and does not assume that a reserved seat automatically produces equality. Its historical question is how affirmative action changed pathways into education, bureaucracy, teaching, policing, technical employment, elected local office and professional life, and how these pathways helped create new salaried, credentialled and politically connected middle strata among communities previously weakly represented in state institutions. It also asks who remained outside these gains, why intra-category inequality became a recurring political question, and how the shrinking relative weight of secure public employment changed the meaning of reservation itself.

95.1 The Constitution transformed exclusion into a question of public representation

The Constitution abolished untouchability and prohibited discrimination while also permitting special measures for historically disadvantaged groups. Article 16(4) allowed reservation in public employment for backward classes not adequately represented in state services; the First Amendment of 1951 inserted Article 15(4), enabling special provisions for socially and educationally backward classes as well as Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes. The resulting framework did not erase caste from public life. It moved caste into a new institutional language of backwardness, representation, equality and state responsibility. In Bihar, where access to education and administration had long been socially concentrated, these provisions created a constitutional route through which groups could demand a share in the modern state.

95.2 Scheduled-Caste and Scheduled-Tribe reservation opened early channels into the postcolonial state

The earliest reservation architecture after independence concentrated on Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes. Its effects were uneven but historically important: government service, teacher recruitment, technical education and public institutions became possible sites of first-generation mobility. A reserved vacancy did not remove poor schooling, landlessness or discrimination, and many rural households remained too far from the credential threshold to compete. Yet the presence of even a small cohort of teachers, clerks, police personnel and other public employees altered village status relations because salaries, pensions, bureaucratic literacy and urban connections could accumulate across a generation. This is one foundation of the later Dalit middle class discussed here.

95.3 Bihar's backward-class question preceded the national Mandal moment

Backward-class mobilisation in Bihar did not begin in 1990. The state had already experienced non-Brahman and backward-caste organisation, socialist politics and repeated arguments over administrative representation. The Mungeri Lal Commission, appointed in 1970 and reporting in 1976, classified a large set of backward communities and distinguished a more disadvantaged segment. This distinction was historically consequential because it challenged the idea that all backward classes had equal access to political organisation, land, education or state employment. It prepared the ground for a sub-categorised reservation formula before the Union government implemented the Mandal Commission recommendations.

95.4 The Karpoori formula institutionalised unequal backwardness within the backward classes

In 1978 the Karpoori Thakur government introduced a graded reservation formula rather than treating the backward classes as a single bloc. The best-known formulation allocated 12 per cent to the most or extremely backward segment, 8 per cent to other backward classes, 3 per cent to women and 3 per cent to economically weaker persons outside the main backward categories. The precise administrative labels evolved later, but the principle endured: numerical and political strength within a broad “backward” category could itself produce unequal access to reservation benefits. Bihar's later separation of EBC and BC quotas owes much to this institutional imagination.

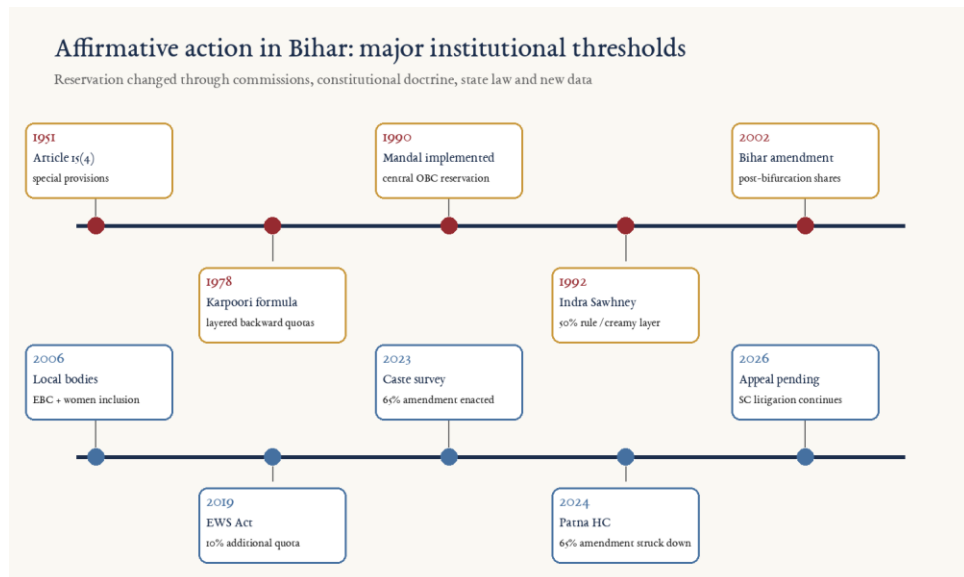


Figure 376 — Major institutional thresholds in Bihar's affirmative-action history

95.5 Mandal converted a regional struggle into a national restructuring of representation

The Second Backward Classes Commission under B. P. Mandal submitted its report in 1980 and recommended 27 per cent reservation for Other Backward Classes in central services. Implementation in 1990 reorganised political competition across north India. In Bihar, however, Mandal interacted with an already mature politics of backward representation. The effect was therefore not simply to create an OBC category but to intensify competition within it: large agrarian castes, smaller service and artisan communities, and extremely backward groups did not possess the same educational capital or organisational networks. Reservation became both an instrument of mobility and a field of intra-backward politics.

95.6 Indra Sawhney made the creamy layer and the 50 per cent rule central to quota administration

The Supreme Court's 1992 Indra Sawhney judgment upheld OBC reservation while requiring exclusion of the socially advanced "creamy layer" among OBCs and treating 50 per cent as the normal outer limit for reservation under Articles 15(4) and 16(4), subject to exceptional circumstances. This judicial framework shaped Bihar's later reservation debates. It also made documentation more important: caste certificates, non-creamy-layer certificates, income evidence and recruitment rosters became part of everyday mobility. The bureaucratic ability to prove eligibility thus became a new form of social capital, especially for first-generation applicants navigating complex state procedures.

95.7 The Bihar reservation statute created a durable post-Mandal category structure

The Bihar Reservation of Vacancies in Posts and Services Act, 1991, as modified after the state's bifurcation, established a 50 per cent vertical framework comprising 16 per cent Scheduled Castes, 1 per cent Scheduled Tribes, 18 per cent Extremely Backward Classes, 12 per cent Backward Classes and 3 per cent Women of Backward Classes. The 2002 amendment reflected the reduced Scheduled-Tribe share after Jharkhand's creation while raising Scheduled-Caste and EBC shares. This architecture mattered beyond percentages: it formally separated EBC from BC and thereby gave administrative reality to a distinction long central to Bihar's politics.

95.8 Reservation benefits candidates only after they cross earlier educational filters

A quota operates at admission or recruitment, not at every stage that produces an eligible candidate. A rural student must first complete school, obtain documents, pay for travel or coaching, learn the relevant examination language and remain available for a long recruitment cycle. This is why Chapters 84 and 94 are indispensable to the history of reservation. Scholarships, hostels, residential schools, pre-examination training and direct benefit transfers do not replace reservation; they help applicants reach the point at which reservation can matter. The emergence of new middle strata is therefore produced by a chain of institutions rather than a single roster.



Figure 377 — From affirmative action to new middle-class formation

95.9 Public employment created distinctive forms of security and authority

The social power of reservation was magnified by the character of public employment. A government salary was regular; many posts carried pension rights or other retirement benefits; employment generated access to banks, housing, urban residence, information and formal documents. In villages, a teacher, clerk, police employee, railway worker or lower-level officer could become a broker between relatives and bureaucratic institutions. This did not automatically create wealth, but it often created stability. For historically excluded families, the difference between irregular agricultural labour and a salaried public post could be large enough to alter children's schooling, marriage negotiations and residential aspirations within one generation.

95.10 The “new middle class” is plural and should not be reduced to government officers

Affirmative action helped generate several overlapping middle strata: salaried employees, school and college teachers, nurses and technicians, local representatives, lawyers, welfare intermediaries, contractors, students preparing for competitive examinations and households whose first secure job financed the next generation's private education. Some possess property; others are credential-rich but asset-poor. Some remain closely tied to village agriculture; others live in district towns or migrate to metropolitan labour markets. Treating all of them as one middle class obscures important differences in income, job security, caste network and cultural capital. The more precise historical claim is that reservation widened entry into institutions from which new class trajectories could develop.

95.11 EBC sub-categorisation aimed to prevent stronger backward groups from monopolising access

Bihar's separate EBC quota embodies a political diagnosis: backwardness is internally stratified. Communities with little land, low literacy, scattered settlement or weak organisational networks may be disadvantaged even within an OBC reservation system. A separate EBC category can therefore be understood as an attempt to distribute access across unequal backward groups rather than only between “forward” and “backward” society. At the same time, sub-categorisation creates its own boundary disputes because inclusion in a list can influence education, recruitment and political identity. The state's caste schedules are thus not neutral descriptions; they are institutions that help organise social competition.

95.12 Creamy-layer rules reveal the tension between group disadvantage and intra-group accumulation

Once reservation produces stable salaried households, a difficult question follows: should descendants of the most advanced beneficiaries remain eligible on the same terms as first-generation applicants from poorer households within the same category? The OBC creamy-layer rule is one response, using income and status criteria to exclude advanced sections from specified reservation benefits. In practice the rule also creates administrative complexity and recurring disputes over certificates, parental occupation and eligibility dates. Historically, the very existence of the creamy-layer debate shows that affirmative action can create internal differentiation inside beneficiary groups and that social justice policy must confront both inter-group and intra-group inequality.

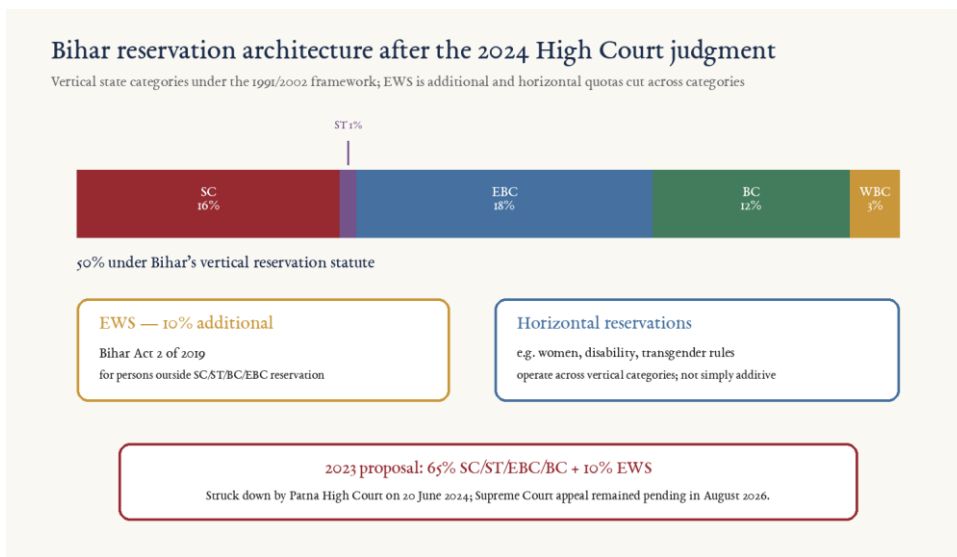


Figure 378 — Bihar's reservation architecture after the 2024 High Court judgment

Table 95.1 — Major affirmative-action instruments and their social effects

Instrument	Primary gateway	Potential mobility effect	Historical limitation
SC/ST reservation	education and public employment	first-generation salaried and professional entry	earlier schooling and land inequality remain
BC/EBC reservation	state education and recruitment	widens backward-class representation; EBC sub-category broadens reach	unequal access within categories; documentation burdens
Scholarships / hostels / coaching	pre-selection pipeline	helps candidates reach qualifying thresholds	coverage and quality vary
Local-body reservation	panchayat and municipal representation	leadership experience, political networks, public visibility	office does not guarantee control over resources
EWS reservation	education and public employment	adds an income/asset-based route outside caste-reserved groups	does not address caste-based disadvantage
Horizontal reservation	cuts across vertical categories	widens representation of women, disability and other groups	interaction with vertical rosters can be complex
Nepal inclusive civil service	public employment	Madhesi, women, Dalit and Janajati access to the state	different legal categories; not directly comparable to Bihar

95.13 Local-government reservation changed the geography of political apprenticeship

Reservation in panchayats and municipalities created a different kind of mobility from a salaried job. It brought representatives from Scheduled Castes, backward classes and women into institutions that allocate local development resources, certify needs and mediate with the bureaucracy. Bihar's local-government framework reserves seats for SC/ST in relation to population and provides backward-class reservation subject to statutory limits; women's reservation became especially extensive. The result was a new arena of political apprenticeship in which persons without old landed or party dynasties could acquire public visibility. Yet formal office and effective power are not identical, and proxy control, bureaucratic dependence and local hierarchy remain recurrent constraints.

95.14 Women's horizontal reservation intersects with caste reservation rather than sitting outside it

Horizontal reservations are designed to cut across vertical categories. A woman may simultaneously belong to SC, ST, EBC, BC, EWS or open-merit categories, and roster design must allocate the horizontal benefit without treating these identities as mutually exclusive. Bihar has used substantial horizontal reservation for women in state recruitment and local government; a 2025 state order clarified the 35 per cent horizontal reservation in direct appointments for women residents of Bihar. The social effect is important for new middle-class formation because secure female employment can alter household bargaining, marriage timing, investment in daughters and the gender composition of public offices.

95.15 Scholarships, hostels and pre-examination programmes expand the meaning of affirmative action

Reservation is often discussed as a seat or vacancy, but Bihar's welfare departments operate a wider infrastructure of post-matric scholarships, BC/EBC and SC/ST hostels, residential institutions, merit incentives and pre-examination training. These programmes target the supply side of representation by lowering the cost of remaining in education and competitive preparation. Their historical significance lies in enabling first-generation students to spend time on credential accumulation rather than immediate wage work. Where implementation is weak, however, the formal existence of a quota may coexist with low applicant preparedness. The most effective affirmative-action system is therefore an ecosystem rather than a single percentage.

95.16 The private sector limits the reach of the classic reservation model

The constitutional and statutory reservation systems discussed here primarily govern public employment and specified educational institutions; they do not generally impose caste-based quotas across private employment. As Bihar's labour market shifted toward private schools, hospitals, retail, construction, small services, platforms and migration-based work, the share of life chances directly allocated through public rosters became limited. This changes the political economy of reservation. A public job may become more valuable precisely because it is scarce, while a growing number of educated applicants must convert credentials in labour markets where formal reservation does not operate. New middle-class formation therefore increasingly combines state-enabled education with non-state employment.

95.17 Reservation can create information networks that extend beyond the direct beneficiary

The first government employee or university entrant in a family often becomes an information node. Relatives learn how to obtain caste and income certificates, where to apply for scholarships, how recruitment calendars work, what subjects are useful and which cities provide coaching or hostels. Such knowledge can diffuse through caste associations, village networks and alumni groups. Over time, the advantage created by one successful entry can become cumulative. This is one reason reservation's effect cannot be measured only by the income of the individual beneficiary: institutional literacy itself can become an intergenerational asset that reshapes the opportunity set of a wider kin network.

95.18 Reservation also changes marriage markets and status languages

A secure government or professional position can raise a household's standing within its caste network and beyond it. In marriage negotiations, salaried employment may command high demand, sometimes intensifying dowry rather than weakening it. Educational and occupational status can also create new forms of distinction within communities previously represented as socially homogeneous. Terms such as "officer family," "teacher family," "service family" or "educated household" begin to supplement older land- and lineage-based status. Reservation can therefore weaken some inherited monopolies while generating new hierarchies of credential, salary and bureaucratic connection inside beneficiary communities.

95.19 The Mahadalit policy phase made intra-SC inequality a central Bihar question

From the late 2000s Bihar's Mahadalit policy framework targeted Scheduled-Caste communities identified by the state as especially deprived through specialised welfare programmes. This was not simply

another vertical reservation percentage; it reflected the argument that benefits reaching the Scheduled-Caste category as a whole were unevenly distributed. The policy shifted attention toward landlessness, housing, education, community infrastructure and access to schemes among the most marginalised Dalit groups. It also generated political debate over classification, inclusion and whether welfare targeting should coexist with or lead toward sub-classification in reservation. The historical point is that a broad constitutional category increasingly had to confront internal social differentiation.

95.20 The 2024 Davinder Singh judgment reopened the legal space for SC sub-classification

In *State of Punjab v. Davinder Singh*, a seven-judge Supreme Court bench in 2024 held that states may sub-classify Scheduled Castes for the purpose of distributing reservation benefits, provided the classification satisfies constitutional requirements and is grounded in relevant evidence. The decision overturned the earlier bar associated with *E. V. Chinnaiah*. It did not automatically create a Bihar sub-quota, and different judicial opinions raised separate questions about the creamy layer. For Bihar, however, the judgment is historically significant because it provides a constitutional framework within which longstanding debates over unequal benefit within the Scheduled-Caste category may be reformulated.

95.21 EWS added an economic route outside the traditional caste-reservation categories

The 103rd Constitutional Amendment created a new basis for affirmative action: up to 10 per cent reservation for Economically Weaker Sections outside the groups covered by existing SC, ST and backward-class reservation. Bihar enacted its EWS reservation law in 2019 for state posts, services and admissions. The Supreme Court upheld the constitutional amendment in *Janhit Abhiyan*. EWS does not replace caste-based affirmative action; it operates on a different rationale and is additional to existing reservations. Its introduction nevertheless altered public debate by making economic disadvantage an explicit reservation criterion at constitutional scale and by expanding the social groups that engage with quota administration.

95.22 Bihar's 2023 caste survey supplied new data but also sharpened the representation dispute

The Bihar caste-based survey released in 2023 reported EBCs at about 36.01 per cent of the population, BCs at 27.12 per cent, Scheduled Castes at 19.65 per cent and Scheduled Tribes at 1.68 per cent. The survey's importance lay not only in these shares but in the state's attempt to connect demographic and socio-economic evidence to affirmative-action policy. Supporters viewed the data as a basis for recalibrating representation; critics argued that population proportion alone could not determine reservation under Articles 15(4) and 16(4). The survey thus transformed caste data from an abstract demand into a concrete policy instrument and a constitutional controversy.

95.23 The 2023 Bihar amendments attempted to raise SC/ST/EBC/BC reservation to 65 per cent

Following the caste survey, Bihar amended its reservation laws in November 2023. The new distribution raised Scheduled-Caste reservation to 20 per cent, Scheduled-Tribe reservation to 2 per cent, EBC reservation to 25 per cent and BC reservation to 18 per cent, for a total of 65 per cent, while the separate 10 per cent EWS framework continued. The state justified the change through the scale of social and educational

backwardness and under-representation. The legislation represented the most ambitious attempt since Mandal to align Bihar's reservation structure more closely with newly measured social composition.

95.24 The Patna High Court struck down the 65 per cent amendment in June 2024

On 20 June 2024 the Patna High Court invalidated the 2023 employment and educational-reservation amendments. The court held that the enhancement beyond the 50 per cent ceiling was unconstitutional on the record before it and criticised reliance on population proportion rather than a sufficient analysis of adequate representation. The judgment returned Bihar's legal framework to the pre-amendment position unless and until higher judicial review changes that result. The dispute is important historically because it demonstrates the continuing tension between demographic claims for proportional representation and the constitutional doctrine of adequate representation under Articles 15 and 16.

95.25 As of August 2026, the 65 per cent dispute remained unresolved in the Supreme Court

Bihar appealed the High Court judgment to the Supreme Court. The Supreme Court declined interim relief in July 2024, so the High Court's ruling was not stayed. The connected appeals continued to appear in Supreme Court cause lists in 2026, and public reporting in August 2026 still described the state's appeal as pending. A contemporary history must therefore avoid presenting the 65 per cent scheme as either currently operative or finally extinguished. Its legal status is an unresolved appellate dispute, and the older statutory architecture remains the safer description of the operative vertical framework pending a contrary final order.

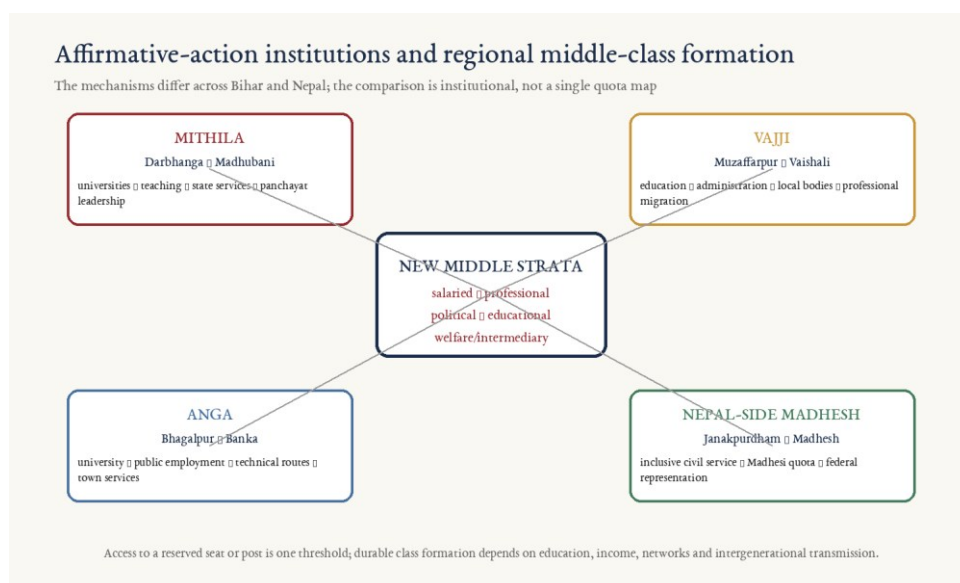


Figure 379 — Regional affirmative-action institutions and new middle-class formation

95.26 Nepal-side Madhesh followed a different inclusion path after 2007

The Nepal comparison is essential because Madhesh is part of the wider Mithila interaction zone but operates under a different constitutional system. The 2007 amendment to Nepal's civil-service framework reserved 45 per cent of vacancies filled by open competition for inclusive categories; within that reserved pool, the distribution included women, Adivasi/Janajati, Madhesi, Dalit, persons with disabilities and backward areas. Madhesi received 22 per cent of the reserved pool. This arrangement cannot be translated

mechanically into Bihar's caste categories, but it similarly sought to alter the social composition of the state bureaucracy. For families in Janakpurdham and Madhesh, public-service inclusion became another route into credentialled middle-class status.

95.27 Federalisation expanded the political meaning of inclusion in Madhesh

Nepal's 2015 Constitution strengthened the language of proportional inclusion and federal representation. In Madhesh, inclusion therefore operates not only through civil-service recruitment but through provincial institutions, electoral representation and debates over citizenship, language and state identity. A Madhesi middle class has grown through education, public administration, professions, migration and cross-border commerce as well as affirmative-action channels. The comparison with Bihar is useful precisely because it reveals that "reservation" is not one universal mechanism: different political systems combine quotas, representation, federalism and social classification in different ways while confronting a common problem of historically unequal access to the state.

95.28 New middle classes can challenge old landed power without eliminating class inequality

A teacher from an EBC family, a Dalit police employee, a BC engineer, a woman panchayat representative or a Madhesi civil servant may acquire resources and authority that earlier depended more heavily on land, lineage or established urban networks. This can diversify local leadership and weaken the monopoly of older elites. Yet middle-class ascent also produces new inequalities within historically disadvantaged communities. Secure employees may buy land, move to towns, send children to private schools and develop networks unavailable to casual labourers of the same caste. Reservation therefore redistributes opportunity while also creating internal class differentiation that later politics must address.

95.29 The future of affirmative action depends increasingly on educational quality and the structure of work

The number of applicants with certificates and degrees has expanded much faster than the supply of secure public posts. At the same time, automation, contractualisation, outsourcing and private-sector growth reduce the share of employment directly governed by classic reservation rosters. This does not make affirmative action irrelevant; it changes the complementary policies required. Better school learning, affordable higher education, anti-discrimination enforcement, transparent recruitment, apprenticeships, credit and private-sector opportunity become more important if the gains of reservation are to extend beyond a limited salaried layer. The central challenge is to convert representation into broad capability rather than a narrow competition for scarce state posts.

95.30 Reservation changed the social composition of aspiration even where equality remains unfinished

Across Mithila, Vajji and Anga, reservation and allied affirmative action altered who could plausibly imagine becoming a teacher, police officer, engineer, clerk, university student, local representative or administrator. The result is visible in new middle strata whose authority rests on salaries, credentials, state literacy and networks rather than only inherited land or ritual status. Yet the system remains filtered by unequal schooling, documentation, gender, geography, vacancy scarcity and intra-category advantage. The most accurate historical conclusion is therefore double: affirmative action has been a real engine of social

mobility and democratic representation, and its benefits have never been evenly distributed. The politics of reservation persists because both propositions are true at once.

Chapter 96 — Rural Elites, Political Economy and Changing Landed Power

Rural power in Mithila, Vajji and Anga has never been reducible to acreage alone. Before independence, large estates, subordinate tenures, rent collection, credit, caste standing and access to officials could be concentrated in the same hands. After independence the legal architecture changed radically: intermediary interests were abolished, Bhoodan sought voluntary redistribution, ceiling legislation authorised acquisition of surplus land, electoral democracy widened political competition, and later panchayat reservation opened local office to groups formerly excluded from formal authority. Yet power did not simply disappear with zamindari. It was converted. Families and groups that could combine land with schooling, political office, cooperative control, contracts, market brokerage, salaried employment, remittances and command over land records often remained influential even when holdings were fragmented.

This chapter therefore studies rural elites as changing coalitions of resources rather than as a fixed caste or landlord category. It asks how older landed families adapted; how cultivating and backward-caste leaders rose; how labour migration altered dependence; why tiny operational holdings coexist with intense struggles over homestead and roadside land; how panchayats, PACS, procurement, welfare schemes and construction contracts created new forms of brokerage; and why the current digitisation and resurvey of land records may redistribute informational power without automatically settling social conflict. The Nepal-side Mithila comparison shows a related but distinct trajectory under the Lands Act of 1964 and subsequent federalisation.

96.1 Rural elite power must be analysed as a bundle of resources, not as landownership alone

Land provides food, rent, collateral, residence, prestige and a claim to locality, but its political value depends on institutions around it. A five-acre cultivator with irrigation, a tractor, cooperative office, party links and educated children may exercise more influence than a larger but indebted owner with no organisational position. Conversely, a family with little cultivated land may become locally powerful through government employment, contracting, transport, school management or real-estate brokerage. The historical task is therefore to trace how land interacts with credit, labour, office, knowledge and networks. This approach also prevents caste from being treated as a substitute for class: caste identities shape access and alliance, but property and institutional position vary sharply within every large social category.

96.2 The colonial agrarian order concentrated revenue authority and social power in layered intermediaries

Under permanent-settlement and tenancy arrangements, rural hierarchy was built through several layers: zamindars or estate holders, tenure-holders, occupancy raiyats, under-raiyats, sharecroppers, labourers and service groups. The exact composition varied across north Bihar and eastern districts, and many estates were geographically dispersed. What mattered politically was that revenue collection, rent disputes, local policing influence, patronage and credit could converge around landed intermediaries. Such authority was never absolute—peasants litigated, withheld rent, migrated and organised—but it gave estate institutions a reach that exceeded ownership of the soil. Independence-era land reform targeted this intermediary structure because democratic citizenship was difficult to reconcile with private rent-collecting jurisdictions of quasi-public power.

96.3 Darbhanga Raj exemplifies the scale of estate power without representing all of Mithila

The Darbhanga Raj is the most visible estate in the modern history of Mithila, but it should not be used as a template for every village. Its significance lay in the combination of wide landed interests, revenue administration, urban property, religious patronage, education and political connection. Around and beneath such large structures existed innumerable smaller landlords, substantial raiyats, village headmen and cultivating households. When zamindari was abolished, the great estate order lost its formal intermediary function, but cultural capital, urban assets, education and networks could outlast the revenue system. The history of landed power is therefore partly a history of institutional conversion: from rent-collecting authority to property, professions, politics, philanthropy or business.

96.4 The Bihar Land Reforms Act of 1950 attacked intermediary rights rather than all private landed inequality

The Bihar Land Reforms Act, 1950 transferred to the state the interests of proprietors and tenure-holders, including associated rights in forests, fisheries, ferries, hats and bazaars. This was a constitutional transformation because the state displaced the intermediary between itself and the cultivating raiyat. But abolition of zamindari did not mean equal distribution of all agricultural land. Raiyati holdings, permissible retained land and many locally embedded property relations continued. Some former intermediary families retained substantial private assets; some tenants gained greater security; and some rural inequalities persisted through ownership, tenancy and credit. The correct historical claim is therefore that the legal basis of landlordism was altered decisively while class differentiation in the countryside survived in new forms.

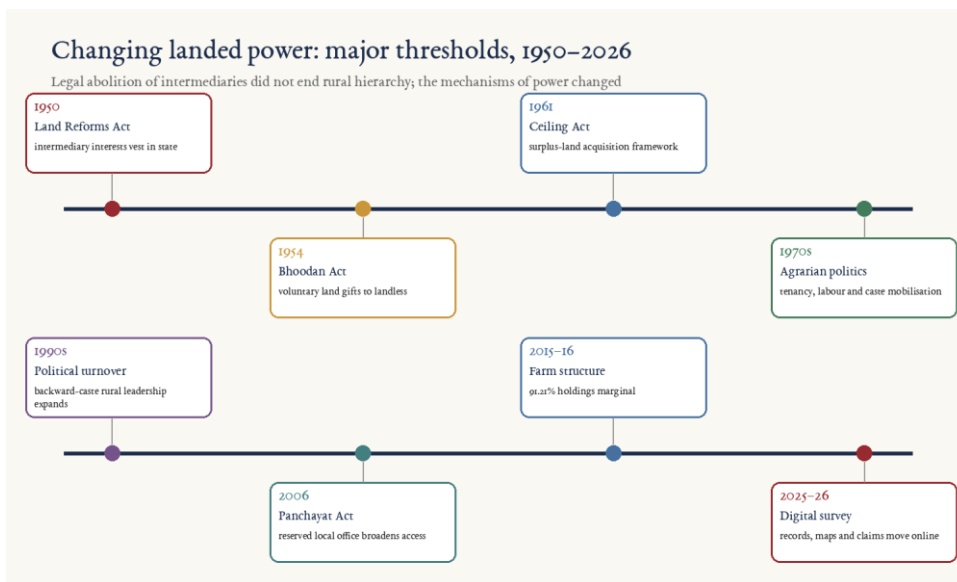


Figure 380 — Major thresholds in the transformation of landed power, 1950–2026

96.5 Abolition weakened estate jurisdiction but often left local social capital intact

The disappearance of intermediary rent collection removed a major institutional foundation of old landed authority. Yet local dominance could survive through control of the best land, irrigation, threshing space, credit, schools, religious institutions, litigation knowledge or links with police and revenue offices. Families also diversified into towns, professions and electoral politics. This continuity should not be

romanticised as an unbroken “feudal” order, because the mechanisms were different and increasingly contestable. Adult franchise, party competition, reservations and schooling created rival centres of authority. Still, the ability to translate inherited assets into new institutional forms helps explain why formal land reform did not produce an immediate social revolution in every village.

96.6 Bhoodan made landlessness a public moral question but exposed the difficulty of converting donation into secure possession

The Bihar Bhoodan Yagna Act of 1954 created a legal structure for receiving donated land and settling it with landless persons, village communities, gram panchayats or cooperative societies. Bihar became central to the Bhoodan movement. Its moral language was radical: land was treated as a social resource rather than an unrestricted private possession. Implementation, however, depended on whether donated parcels were cultivable, free from dispute, correctly recorded and physically available. The gap between donation, confirmation, mutation and possession became a recurring problem. Bhoodan therefore illuminates a larger rule of agrarian reform: a paper entitlement changes power only when records, boundaries, possession and local administrative enforcement converge.

96.7 Ceiling legislation targeted concentration, but evasion, litigation and family partition limited redistribution

The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) Act, 1961 authorised ceilings and state acquisition of surplus land. In principle it created a second redistributive stage after zamindari abolition. In practice, ceiling programmes across India faced transfers within families, benami arrangements, classification disputes, exemptions, delayed proceedings and litigation. Bihar was no exception. The political effect nevertheless mattered: the legitimacy of very large private agricultural holdings was weakened, and ownership was increasingly discussed in terms of statutory ceilings and distributive justice. Over generations, inheritance and sale also fragmented holdings independently of ceiling acquisition, creating a countryside dominated numerically by very small operational units.

96.8 Tenancy and sharecropping remained central because ownership and cultivation did not coincide

A landowner may lease out a parcel; a cultivator may operate owned and leased land together; and sharecropping arrangements may remain oral to avoid legal or social consequences. Bihar’s agrarian history therefore cannot be reconstructed from ownership records alone. Bataidars and other tenants often depended on landlords not merely for land but for seeds, credit, fodder, irrigation or emergency support. At the same time, migration and rising rural wages could strengthen tenants’ bargaining positions or make leasing attractive to households whose members moved out of agriculture. The relationship between landlord and tenant consequently changed from a relatively encompassing dependence toward more negotiable, market-linked arrangements in many areas, though insecurity and informality persisted.

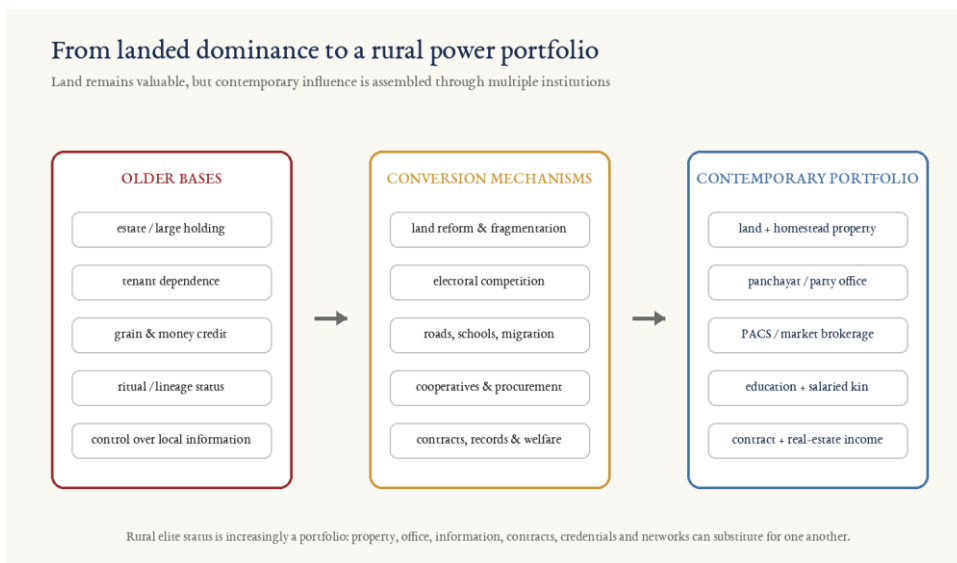


Figure 381 — From landed dominance to a rural power portfolio

96.9 Caste and agrarian class overlap historically but can never be treated as identical

Certain castes were disproportionately represented among large owners in particular districts, while others were more concentrated among tenants, artisans or labourers. Yet no large caste was economically homogeneous. Wealthy and land-poor households could coexist within the same caste, and changing markets or politics could lift some lineages faster than others. Post-independence mobility further disrupted any fixed mapping between ritual rank and property. The rise of prosperous cultivators from backward-caste communities is one example; the persistence of land-poor households within politically influential castes is another. A social history of rural elites must therefore ask who controls which resource in a specific time and place rather than infer economic position from caste labels alone.

96.10 Cultivating elites expanded where ownership, marketable surplus and political organisation converged

The decline of old intermediary power created room for substantial peasant proprietors and commercially oriented cultivators. Across north Bihar, Yadav, Koeri/Kushwaha, Kurmi and other cultivating groups became increasingly visible in local markets, cooperatives and politics, though their regional weight varied. Their rise did not require replication of the old zamindari system. It rested instead on direct cultivation, livestock, vegetable or cash-crop marketing, transport, education and electoral mobilisation. This produced a new kind of rural elite whose legitimacy could be framed through productive agriculture and numerical democratic strength rather than inherited intermediary title. Yet larger cultivators could also become employers, lessors and local creditors, reproducing class hierarchy within a different social coalition.

96.11 Bihar's uneven agricultural intensification limited the emergence of a uniform capitalist-farmer class

Unlike the most intensively irrigated Green Revolution regions, Bihar experienced uneven access to assured water, power, roads, procurement and input systems. Flood-prone north Bihar faced a distinct ecology of risk, while eastern districts combined paddy agriculture with horticulture, silk, fisheries and non-farm activity. Where tubewells, pumps, tractors and market access spread, better-capitalised cultivators could

gain scale advantages. But tiny parcels, seasonal flooding and price uncertainty constrained accumulation. As a result, rural elites often diversified outside farming rather than becoming specialised capitalist farmers. Land remained a security asset while profits, salaries or remittances increasingly came from other sectors.

96.12 Mechanisation changed labour relations even where average holdings remained tiny

Tractors, threshers, pump sets and later harvest machinery reduced dependence on particular forms of attached labour and created service markets that crossed farm boundaries. Ownership of a machine could itself become a source of rural power: a tractor owner served dozens of smallholders, controlled timing during peak seasons and earned cash income independent of own acreage. Custom-hiring weakened the need for every farm to own equipment, but it also created intermediary entrepreneurs. Mechanisation therefore did not simply substitute capital for labour. It reorganised the rural service economy, changed bargaining over work and enabled households with small landholdings but larger capital resources to become influential agricultural service providers.

96.13 Out-migration weakened some forms of labour dependence while generating new inequalities

Long-distance migration to Punjab, Delhi, Mumbai, Gujarat, the Gulf and other destinations became a structural feature of household economies in Mithila, Vajji and Anga. When young workers could leave, local employers faced a labour force less completely tied to village patrons. Remittances enabled some labouring and small-farmer households to repair houses, lease land, purchase livestock, educate children or refuse the worst employment conditions. But migration also produced differentiation: households with stable external earnings accumulated faster than those dependent on casual work. Landed elites adapted as well, leasing out land, mechanising operations or investing outside agriculture. Migration thus redistributed bargaining power without eliminating rural class divisions.

96.14 Credit moved from landlord-moneylender dependence toward a mixed ecology of banks, PACS, SHGs and informal finance

Earlier rural dominance often combined landownership with moneylending. Institutional banking, cooperative credit, Kisan Credit Cards, self-help groups and microfinance diluted that monopoly, but did not eliminate informal borrowing. Better-connected households can still mediate documents, guarantees, input purchases or repayment schedules. Control over a cooperative society or a reputation as a reliable broker may therefore replace direct moneylending as a source of influence. The new credit hierarchy is less personal than the old patron-credit relation but more bureaucratically demanding. Literacy, digital access, bank accounts and documentary competence become assets through which rural elites can help—or selectively gatekeep—other households' access to formal finance.

Table 96.1 — Forms of rural power and their historical conversion

Resource	Older mechanism	Contemporary conversion	Distributional risk
Land / tenancy	rent, lease, labour dependence	leasing, mechanisation, land-value gains	tenant insecurity; disputed possession
Water / inputs	private wells, seed and fodder patronage	pump services, dealer networks, custom hiring	timing and price gatekeeping

Resource	Older mechanism	Contemporary conversion	Distributional risk
Credit / cooperative	moneylending and crop advances	bank linkage, PACS, SHG/FPO mediation	documentary exclusion; elite capture
Local office	estate influence and informal headship	panchayat, party and elected representation	dynastic/proxy control; patronage
State spending	personal access to officials	contracts, roads, housing and welfare brokerage	commission networks; selective access
Education / migration	literacy concentrated among older elites	salaried kin, coaching, remittance capital	new class gaps within the same caste
Records / property	private knowledge of boundaries and papers	online mutation, maps, survey, land conversion	digital/documentary asymmetry; litigation

96.15 Cooperatives and procurement created new gatekeeping positions around the state-market interface

PACS and related institutions can aggregate credit, fertiliser, paddy procurement, storage and other services. In principle they reduce dependence on private intermediaries. In practice, their importance makes office-holding, membership information and procedural knowledge politically valuable. A cooperative president or local organiser may influence who knows procurement dates, whose documentation is complete, and which disputes reach officials quickly. This does not mean cooperatives are inherently captured; many broaden access substantially. The historical point is that rural elite power increasingly operates at the boundary between state schemes and markets. The broker of an institution can become as important as the owner of a large field.

96.16 Panchayat democracy redistributed formal office and multiplied centres of rural authority

Regular panchayat elections, devolution and the Bihar Panchayat Raj Act, 2006 expanded the political field below the assembly constituency. Reservations for Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes, backward classes and women enabled households outside older dominant groups to hold formal office. This altered who could sign documents, convene meetings, negotiate with block officials and claim public legitimacy. Yet elected office exists within unequal local economies. Some representatives depend on politically experienced relatives or contractors; others build autonomous networks over successive terms. Panchayati raj therefore neither destroyed rural elites nor merely reproduced them. It changed the rules through which elite status is acquired, contested and renewed.

96.17 Welfare delivery and construction contracts created a contractor-broker layer

Roads, school buildings, housing schemes, toilets, drainage, electrification, flood works and other public programmes channel substantial resources through rural and small-town institutions. The ability to understand tenders, mobilise labour, arrange materials, maintain vehicles and negotiate with officials can create a contractor class whose wealth does not originate in agriculture. Such actors often invest earnings in land and houses, converting public-work income into durable local assets. Conversely, landed families may enter contracting to diversify. The resulting rural elite is therefore partly a product of the developmental

state: authority flows through knowledge of budgets, beneficiary lists, contractors, engineers and administrative schedules as much as through crop ownership.

96.18 Roads, electricity and mobile communication reduced the monopoly of the village gatekeeper

When information, transport and electricity were scarce, a household controlling a vehicle, telephone, market contact or diesel pump possessed disproportionate power. Road expansion, mobile phones, digital payments and wider electrification lowered many such entry barriers. Farmers can compare prices, workers can contact recruiters, and beneficiaries can receive transfers directly into bank accounts. Yet new gatekeeping problems appear: smartphones, passwords, OTPs, online forms and e-KYC create advantages for digitally fluent intermediaries. Infrastructure thus changes the technology of dependence. It often makes villagers less dependent on a single patron while creating new service niches for agents who command digital and bureaucratic systems.

96.19 Contemporary Bihar is a countryside of tiny operational holdings rather than a landscape dominated numerically by large farms

Agriculture Census 2015–16 reported about 16.4 million operational holdings in Bihar. Marginal holdings below one hectare accounted for 91.21 per cent, and small holdings between one and two hectares another 5.75 per cent. The average operational holding was only about 0.39 hectare. Large holdings of ten hectares or more were a tiny fraction by number. These figures do not prove that land power has vanished: land quality, location, irrigation, homestead property and multiple parcels matter greatly. But they establish the structural context. Rural elite power today cannot be explained by imagining a countryside still organised mainly around a small number of giant operational farms.

96.20 Small holdings by number can coexist with significant inequality in land area and non-land assets

The same 2015–16 data show why counting holdings alone is insufficient. Marginal holdings formed more than nine-tenths of all holdings but operated a smaller share of total area, while semi-medium and medium holdings were rare by number yet controlled disproportionately larger area per household. Moreover, farm statistics exclude many dimensions of wealth: urban plots, roadside commercial land, tractors, shops, cold-storage shares, transport businesses, salaried income and financial assets. A household with one hectare beside a highway may possess a more valuable asset than a larger flood-prone parcel. Rural class analysis must therefore move from hectares alone to the composition, location and convertibility of assets.



Figure 382 — Bihar operational holdings by number and operated area, Agriculture Census 2015-16

96.21 Homestead land can matter more socially than cultivated acreage for the land-poor

For landless and near-landless households, a secure house site changes bargaining power because residence is no longer contingent on a patron's permission. Bihar's land administration explicitly treats homestead provision to families without a house site as a policy objective. The political significance of such land is easily underestimated because parcels are small. A homestead can support a durable dwelling, livestock, a shop, a toilet, electricity connection, address documents and intergenerational security. Conversely, disputes over gairmazarua land, settlement papers and possession can become intense because the social value of a few decimals of residential land is far greater than its area suggests.

96.22 Peri-urbanisation and road corridors converted agricultural location into speculative value

Around Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur and expanding smaller towns, roads, bypasses, institutions and housing demand changed the meaning of rural property. Land close to highways or urban edges may be subdivided into residential or commercial plots, producing windfall gains unrelated to farm productivity. This creates new alliances among landowners, brokers, surveyors, deed writers, builders and local politicians. It also creates conflict over conversion, access roads, inheritance shares and compensation. The rural elite of the peri-urban fringe is therefore increasingly a property-market actor. Land remains central, but its value derives from expected urbanisation rather than rent from tenants or surplus from crops.

96.23 Remittance capital is frequently converted into houses, land, education and local status

Migration earnings often enter the village economy through construction, land purchase, debt repayment and schooling. A migrant household may buy a small plot not because farming is highly profitable but because land is a store of value, a marker of belonging and collateral for future plans. Brick houses and education similarly signal a shift from agrarian dependence toward diversified class position. This process can produce new rural elites with little resemblance to old landlords: their capital originates in construction

work, factories, transport, overseas employment or salaried migration. Yet the conversion of remittances into scarce land can also raise prices and make acquisition harder for households without migrant income.

96.24 Education and public employment allow authority to survive even after land fragmentation

As holdings divide among heirs, families can preserve or increase status by investing in education. Teachers, engineers, police personnel, clerks, doctors and other salaried workers bring cash income, pensions and bureaucratic knowledge into the rural household. Their influence may exceed that of relatives who retain more farmland. Public employment can also finance tractors, houses or land purchase, reconnecting non-farm income to property. This helps explain why the decline of large farms does not imply the disappearance of elite continuity: some lineages successfully converted landed advantage into educational capital, while new first-generation salaried families used affirmative action and schooling to enter local middle and elite strata.

96.25 Land records themselves are a field of power because rights must be legible to the state

Mutation entries, jamabandi records, cadastral maps, rent receipts, inheritance documents and survey boundaries determine whether a claim can be enforced, sold, mortgaged or defended. Historically, households with literacy and access to revenue offices possessed an advantage in navigating these records. Disputes often arise not only over who cultivated a parcel but over whose name appears in which register and whether possession matches the paper trail. This makes the revenue bureaucracy central to rural political economy. The person who understands forms, maps and appeal procedures can exercise power even without owning much land, while a poor claimant with valid possession may remain vulnerable if documentation is defective.

96.26 Bihar's ongoing special survey and digital land systems may redistribute informational power

The Revenue and Land Reforms Department now provides online mutation, rent payment, jamabandi access, Bhu-Manchitra, Bhu-Naksha, e-Mapi, digital record archives and special-survey services. In 2025 the state also signed an agreement with BHASHINI to assist transliteration of old Kaithi-script land records, explicitly because survey staff and raiyats faced difficulty deciphering them. Digitisation can reduce dependence on physical intermediaries and make records easier to inspect. But it also creates new disputes when old textual records, maps, possession and family histories do not align. The reform therefore shifts informational power toward searchable records while making digital literacy, objection procedures and archival interpretation newly important.

96.27 Mithila combines estate memory, extreme fragmentation, flood ecology and remittance-based diversification

In Darbhanga and Madhubani, the cultural memory of great estates coexists with a contemporary landscape of fragmented holdings and dense settlement. Recurrent floods and waterlogging make acreage an unreliable proxy for agricultural value, while education and out-migration have long provided alternative routes to status. Rural influence may therefore combine a few productive parcels, homestead property, salaried relatives, school or temple connections, panchayat office and knowledge of revenue records. In the Kosi belt, ecological risk further encourages diversification. The regional pattern is not the survival of one old landlord class but repeated conversion between land, learning, migration and political brokerage.

96.28 Vajji's rural political economy is strongly shaped by markets, horticulture and peri-urban land values

Muzaffarpur and Vaishali link intensive cultivation and horticulture to major roads and the Patna–Muzaffarpur urban corridor. Litchi, vegetables, dairy, transport and wholesale markets can generate rural influence without very large holdings. Cooperative and panchayat institutions matter because producers depend on credit, inputs, roads and public procurement, while peri-urban expansion raises the value of roadside and residential land. Political entrepreneurs may therefore emerge from cultivation, trade, contracting or transport and then invest in land. The older distinction between “landlord” and “merchant” becomes less useful as rural elites assemble mixed portfolios of property, market access and office.

96.29 Anga combines agrarian assets with the pull of Bhagalpur's urban, silk and service economy

Bhagalpur and Banka illustrate another hybrid. Agricultural land and horticulture remain important, but Bhagalpur's urban economy, silk networks, education, transport and services create non-farm routes to accumulation. Rural households can connect to town-based employment and commerce while retaining village property. Along improved transport corridors, land conversion and real-estate expectations strengthen this linkage. The result is an elite formation in which cultivated land, urban plots, commercial activity, political networks and migration earnings intersect. Anga therefore shows especially clearly why post-zamindari rural power cannot be understood within the village boundary alone.

96.30 Nepal-side Madhesh confirms that land reform transforms elites more often than it abolishes hierarchy

Nepal's Lands Act of 1964 imposed ownership ceilings, sought to secure tenancy rights and attacked intermediary arrangements; in the Terai the reform directly addressed concentration of land and landlord-tenant relations. Yet subsequent fragmentation, migration, urbanisation and federal politics created new combinations of property and office rather than a classless countryside. In Madhesh, land remains economically and symbolically important, but municipal expansion, foreign employment, education, cooperatives and provincial/local politics increasingly shape status. The comparison reinforces the central conclusion of this chapter: in both Bihar and Nepal-side Mithila, landed power has been constrained and dispersed, but rural hierarchy persists through portfolios that combine property with institutions, information and mobility.

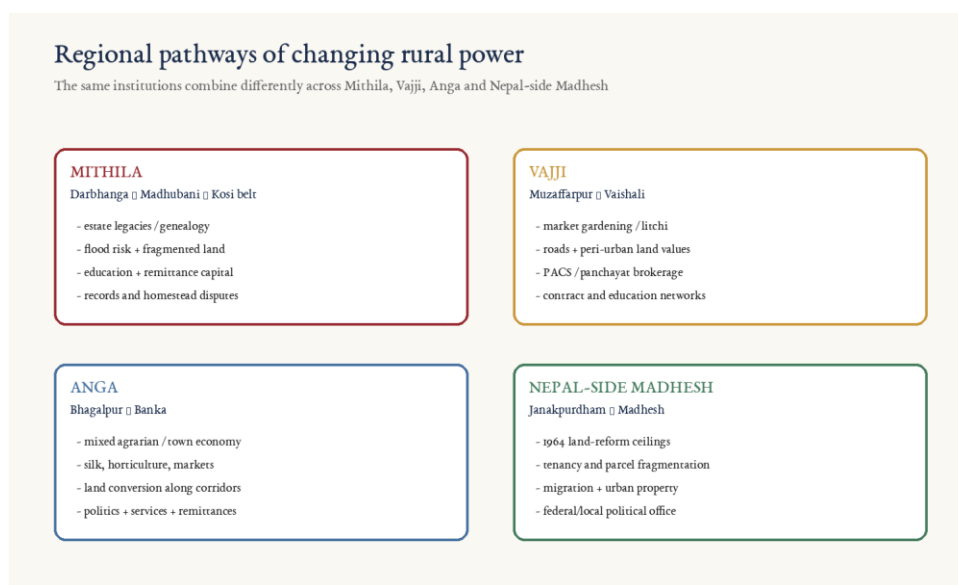


Figure 383 — Regional pathways of changing rural power

GAJENDRA THAKUR

PART XI

**MIGRATION, URBANISATION AND
DIASPORA**

Chapters 97–106

Chapter 97 — The *Longue Durée* of Migration

Migration is not a late disturbance imposed on a formerly immobile society. Across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and the adjoining Nepal plains, mobility has repeatedly connected household survival, scholarship, pilgrimage, military and administrative service, trade, marriage, cultivation and wage labour. What changed over the *longue durée* was not the existence of movement but its scale, duration, destinations, transport technologies, labour regimes and relationship to household reproduction. The same village could generate a scholar travelling to a court, a bride moving through a marriage network, a boatman following a river market, a seasonal labourer entering a harvest circuit and, much later, a construction worker cycling between a Bihar village and a metropolitan worksite. These movements cannot be collapsed into one category, yet together they make migration a central social institution rather than an appendix to regional history.

This opening chapter of PART XI therefore establishes the historical grammar of migration before later chapters examine particular destination systems: Kolkata, Delhi and Mumbai, Punjab and Haryana, the Nepal–India corridor, Gulf migration, remittances, urbanisation, informal economies and diaspora institutions. The argument is deliberately cautious. Ancient and medieval evidence often records routes, travellers, traders, monks, scholars and marriage alliances rather than statistically measurable migrant populations; colonial and modern censuses, by contrast, classify place of birth, last residence and reason for movement. A responsible *longue-durée* history must use each type of evidence for what it can actually show, without projecting the categories of the 2011 Census backwards into periods that organised mobility differently.

97.1 Migration must be treated as a recurrent social institution, not as an exceptional crisis

The language of ‘migration crisis’ is useful for moments of acute disruption, but it can obscure the ordinary and repeated movement on which many households have long depended. In agrarian societies with small holdings, seasonal labour demand, ecological volatility and uneven access to markets, mobility can function as insurance, income diversification and social strategy. It may be short-range or long-distance, temporary or semi-permanent, individual or household-based. In the study region, migration has repeatedly linked rural livelihoods to external labour markets without necessarily dissolving the village household. That combination—geographical movement with continuing claims on land, kinship, ritual membership and inheritance—helps explain why circular migration became so durable. Migrants often leave because they remain embedded in households, not because they have severed them. The relevant historical unit is therefore the circulation linking source, destination and return, rather than a one-way passage from ‘village’ to ‘city’.

97.2 A *longue-durée* history requires a vocabulary broader than the modern census category of migrant

Mobility includes many movements that modern statistics classify differently or miss altogether. Marriage creates large female movements; pilgrimage and education can be repeated or temporary; pastoral, fishing and boat-based work can follow seasonal ecologies; soldiers, scribes and students may circulate through institutions; wage labourers may spend most of a year away yet retain their permanent household in the village. Census of India migration tables classify people by birthplace or last residence and distinguish reasons such as work, business, education, marriage and movement with the household. Those categories are indispensable for modern analysis, but they should not be mistaken for timeless social facts. Historical reconstruction must distinguish circulation, relocation, recruitment, exile, marriage migration, colonisation

of new land, frontier settlement and occupational travel while still asking how each changed household economies and regional connections.

97.3 River corridors made mobility structural long before railways

The Ganga, Gandak, Kosi and their tributary systems were not merely environmental barriers. They were also transport corridors connecting settlement clusters, ferries, pilgrimage sites, grain markets and craft exchange. Champa's early commercial importance and Vaishali's location within a dense north Gangetic world are reminders that mobility preceded modern roads. Yet river travel was seasonal, risky and unevenly distributed. Floods could open and close channels, alter ferry points and force settlement movement. Boats moved goods and people, while footpaths connected river landings to villages and markets. Such mobility was normally embedded in trade, ritual and agrarian schedules rather than recorded as a distinct 'migration sector'. The historical significance lies in the repeated production of routes and service communities whose knowledge of crossings, boats, roads and market calendars reduced the social cost of movement for others.

A longue durée of mobility: widening scales, persistent circulation

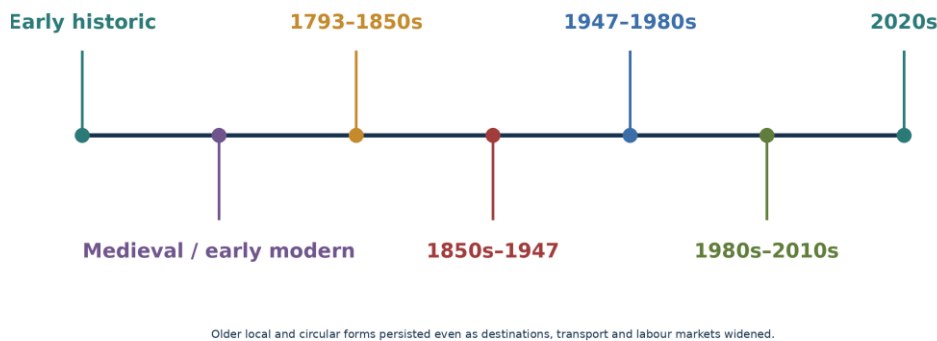


Figure 384 — Migration regimes widened in scale while older forms of mobility persisted

97.4 Early historic towns and religious institutions created circuits of travel without implying mass labour migration

The second urbanisation associated with the middle Gangetic plain brought cities, monasteries, courts and commercial nodes into closer interaction. Buddhist and Jain traditions preserve narratives of teachers, merchants, monks, rulers and householders travelling among places such as Vaishali, Rajagriha, Champa and the wider Gangetic network. These sources demonstrate mobility, but not the scale of modern wage migration. Their value is different: they show that institutional life depended on routes, lodging, patronage and information flows. Monastic circuits, merchant journeys and political travel created social geographies larger than a single settlement. The distinction matters because a longue-durée account should identify continuities in connectivity without claiming an unchanged migrant labour system from antiquity to the present.

97.5 Scholarly, scribal and ritual mobility linked Mithila to courts and centres of learning

Mithila's intellectual history also required movement. Scholars travelled for debate, patronage, teaching and court service; scribes and administrators carried documentary skills across jurisdictions; ritual specialists moved through marriage and patronage networks. Such journeys could generate durable diasporic niches

without resembling later industrial labour migration. They also produced a recurring social pattern: specialised knowledge became portable capital. A household with education, manuscript learning or clerical skill could convert cultural resources into mobility, while the migrant's reputation could raise the status of kin at home. Later educational migration would transform the institutions and destinations but retain this basic relationship between skill formation and movement. The history of migration is therefore also a history of unequal capacities to move.

97.6 The India–Nepal plains formed a borderland mobility zone before and after the modern international boundary

The social geography of Mithila crosses the present India–Nepal boundary. Kinship, pilgrimage, cultivation, market exchange and seasonal labour long connected settlements on both sides. The 1950 India–Nepal Treaty of Peace and Friendship later gave a formal postcolonial framework to reciprocal movement; government statements continue to describe the border as open and thickly populated. But the treaty did not create the underlying cultural and economic geography. For households in the Janakpur–Terai and north Bihar borderlands, crossing the boundary could be shorter and socially easier than travelling to a distant city within the same state. At the same time, the open border makes statistical measurement difficult because many crossings require no passport or labour approval. Modern administrative data therefore understate a form of mobility that is central to everyday borderland life.

97.7 Agrarian seasonality made temporary absence compatible with continued village membership

Agriculture generates peaks and troughs of labour demand. Sowing, transplanting and harvesting can require concentrated work, while other months leave underemployed labour. Households can respond by combining cultivation at home with wage work elsewhere. This is one foundation of circular migration: the migrant does not necessarily abandon agriculture but rearranges the household labour calendar. Land-poor households have stronger incentives to seek outside earnings, yet even cultivating households may migrate to finance inputs, repay debt or accumulate cash for marriage and construction. Seasonal mobility can therefore coexist with strong attachment to land. The apparent paradox of the 'peasant worker'—rural proprietor, tenant or labourer at home and wage worker at destination—is better understood as a household strategy than as an incomplete transition from agriculture to industry.

97.8 Flood, river change, scarcity and disease accelerated movement but should not be reduced to single-cause explanations

The Kosi belt, north Bihar floodplains and parts of the eastern Ganga corridor repeatedly experienced floods, river-course shifts, crop loss and disease environments. Such shocks could force temporary displacement, destroy assets or intensify the need for cash earnings elsewhere. Yet environmental pressure rarely acts alone. The ability to migrate depends on transport, credit, social networks, recruitment and destination demand; the poorest may be trapped rather than mobile. Likewise, repeated flooding can produce both out-migration and return because families maintain land and kinship claims in hazardous places. Environmental history therefore enters migration history through its interaction with property, labour markets and infrastructure, not through a deterministic claim that flood automatically causes migration.

97.9 Colonial revenue and tenancy regimes widened the economic pressures behind mobility

The Permanent Settlement and subsequent agrarian institutions did not invent migration, but they changed the distribution of rent, debt, security and market risk. Colonial records and later district gazetteers describe dense agrarian populations, small holdings, tenancy and labour dependence across parts of north and eastern Bihar. Grierson's Bihar Peasant Life documented the intricate economic world of late nineteenth-century rural Bihar, while later scholarship has shown how peasants combined village production with work outside. Mobility became one response to an agrarian economy in which cash obligations and unequal property relations could not always be met from local cultivation. The important point is not that every migrant was 'pushed' by the same cause, but that colonial property and revenue regimes increased the value of external cash income.

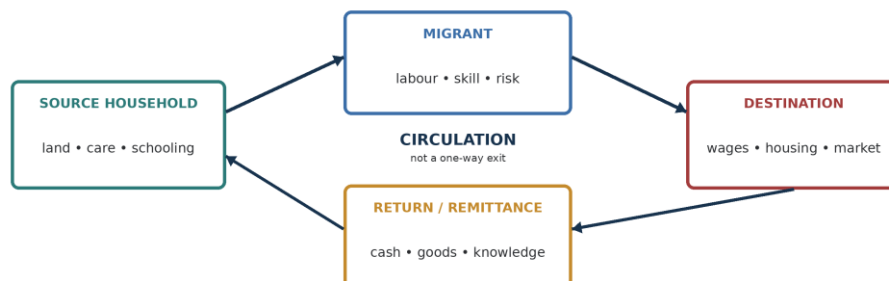
97.10 Railways transformed the radius, regularity and social organisation of migration

The nineteenth- and early twentieth-century railway network altered migration more decisively than any earlier transport change. It shortened travel time, reduced some costs, enabled repeat journeys and connected villages through feeder roads and stations to Calcutta, Assam, industrial Bengal and later wider destinations. Railways did not simply cause migration; they interacted with labour demand and recruitment networks. Once migrants established a foothold at destination, return journeys carried information about wages, lodging and employers back to the village. Route knowledge became collective property. This path dependence explains why particular villages and districts became associated with particular trades or destinations. The railway carriage thus became part of a social infrastructure linking the source household to an external labour market.

97.11 Calcutta became a major colonial and postcolonial destination, but its specific migration system belongs to the next chapter

Calcutta's docks, markets, transport services, mills, construction sites and informal economies drew labour from Bihar over a long period. Research on migrant workers in Kolkata continues to identify streams from districts such as Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur and Banka. Cultural memory in Mithila likewise preserves the absent husband travelling to Calcutta as a recurrent figure. Chapter 98 examines this relationship in detail. Here the wider significance is that Calcutta demonstrated how an external metropolis could become functionally integrated into village reproduction hundreds of kilometres away. Migration became repeatable because stations, jobbers, relatives, caste and village networks lowered the uncertainty of arrival. A destination could therefore become 'near' socially even when it remained distant geographically.

Migration as a household circulation system



Income, care, risk and social reproduction are redistributed across source, migrant and destination.

Figure 385 — Circular migration links source household, migrant, destination and return

97.12 Plantation, mine and industrial recruitment introduced more coercive and contract-bound migration regimes

Colonial labour mobility also included forms very different from relatively autonomous circulation. Assam tea plantations, mines and overseas indenture relied on recruitment systems that could bind workers through contracts, advances, penal sanctions or recruiter control. Migrants from the wider Bihar–Chotanagpur region entered these systems, though regional origins and community composition varied sharply. Women’s recruitment became a site of colonial regulation and patriarchal claims over household labour. Samita Sen’s work shows why women cannot be treated simply as passive dependants of male migrants: some moved through plantation, mine and city labour markets under harsh and gendered conditions. The history of migration must therefore hold together opportunity, coercion and constrained choice rather than assume that movement itself signified freedom.

97.13 Gender divided migration streams but did not divide mobility into ‘male work’ and ‘female immobility’

Modern migration statistics often show a strongly male pattern for labour migration from Bihar, while women’s moves are heavily classified under marriage. That statistical contrast is real but incomplete. Male circulation can intensify women’s agricultural work, care responsibilities, debt management and dealings with local institutions at the source. Women also migrate for work, education, household movement and escape from difficult domestic circumstances, although many forms are under-recorded or folded into family categories. Colonial evidence likewise complicates the image of the stationary rural woman. A gendered *longue durée* therefore asks not only who moved, but who absorbed the work created by absence, who controlled remittances, and how migration altered bargaining power within households.

97.14 Marriage migration is quantitatively large but analytically different from labour circulation

Marriage is one of the largest recorded reasons for female migration in Indian census data. In Mithila and adjoining regions, marriage networks historically connected villages across wide territories and, in the Nepal borderland, across the international boundary. Such movement can be permanent in residence yet retain dense ties to natal households. It affects property claims, care flows, ritual exchange and the geography of kinship. Because census tables aggregate all migration reasons, analysts must avoid using total migrant counts as a proxy for labour out-migration. A district can simultaneously record extensive female marriage migration and extensive male work migration, two processes with different causes and social consequences. The distinction is essential to any historically serious reading of migration statistics.

97.15 By the early twentieth century migration had become a normal component of many village economies

Anand A. Yang’s classic study of internal migration showed that peasant mobility in India was not an aberration produced only by modern industrialisation. By the late colonial period, temporary labour migration, return and rural attachment could coexist over long periods. This pattern matters for Bihar because it undermines a linear model in which a rural worker leaves agriculture, becomes permanently urban and eventually ceases to belong to the village. Instead, migrants often maintained land, houses and family

obligations in the source area while working elsewhere. This circular form would prove remarkably durable after independence even as destinations changed.

97.16 Independence and Partition changed political boundaries without ending older labour geographies

The end of colonial rule restructured administration, citizenship and industrial geography, but it did not erase the networks that linked Bihar to Bengal, Assam and other labour markets. The partition of Bengal's wider economic space and later the creation of new states altered routes and institutions, while the India–Nepal border acquired the special legal framework of the 1950 treaty. Postcolonial development policy also created new public-sector and industrial destinations. Yet household migration decisions remained tied to wage differentials, land constraints, education and network effects. Continuity and change are therefore both visible: the state changed, the destinations diversified, but circular migration remained compatible with rural residence and property claims.

97.17 The Green Revolution created a major seasonal agricultural corridor to Punjab and Haryana

From the late 1960s and especially in subsequent decades, rising agricultural labour demand in Punjab and Haryana generated a major destination for workers from Bihar and eastern Uttar Pradesh. Harvest and transplantation cycles could be matched with source-area agricultural calendars, while rail connectivity and contractor networks made repeated movement easier. This stream differed from factory migration because the destination itself was rural, yet wages were tied to a more capitalised agricultural economy. Chapter 100 examines this corridor in detail. In the *longue durée*, its importance lies in showing how migration adapted to uneven agricultural development within India: rural-to-rural mobility could be as significant as rural-to-urban movement.

97.18 From the 1980s onward national destinations multiplied rather than replacing older ones

Delhi–NCR, Mumbai, Gujarat, Rajasthan and other urban-industrial regions became increasingly important alongside Kolkata and Punjab. Construction, small manufacturing, transport, security work, vending, hospitality and services expanded the occupational range of migrants. The growth of these destinations did not produce a single national labour market with equal conditions. Migrants entered through kin and village networks, contractors and subcontracting chains, often with limited formal housing or social protection. Diversification reduced dependence on one destination but also spread households across multiple precarious labour regimes. Chapter 99 follows the major metropolitan circuits in detail.

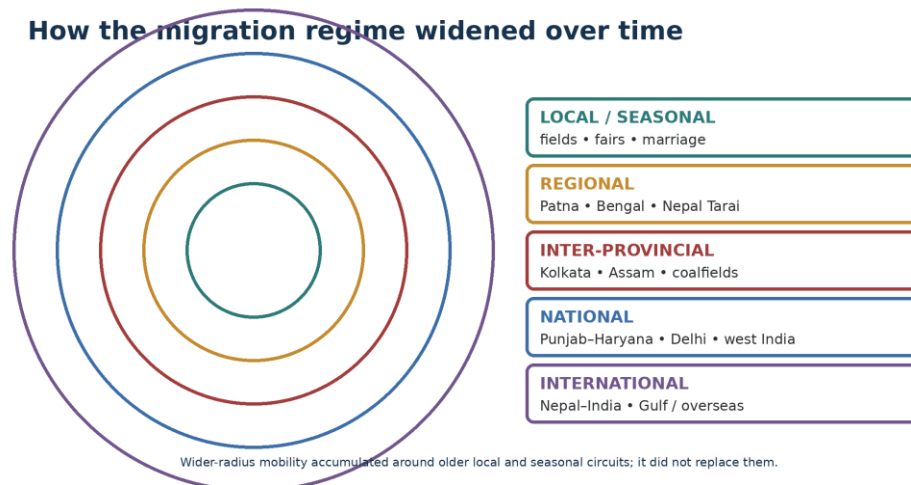


Figure 386 — Local, regional, national and international mobility accumulated rather than replacing one another

97.19 Education migration created a second geography of mobility that increasingly overlaps with labour migration

Students from Mithila, Vajji and Anga have long travelled for advanced learning, but the late twentieth and twenty-first centuries produced a massified educational migration. Coaching centres, universities, technical institutes and professional colleges in Patna, Delhi, Kota and other cities became destinations in their own right. Educational migration differs from manual labour circulation in class composition, gender balance and expected returns, yet household financing often depends on the same remittance and credit systems. Successful education can convert migration into occupational mobility; failed examinations or weak labour markets can instead generate prolonged dependence on family support. The history of migration must therefore include the movement of students as a major route through which regional inequality is reproduced or challenged.

97.20 Overseas labour migration widened the horizon beyond India while remaining household-centred

From the late twentieth century, Gulf labour markets and other overseas destinations entered the migration repertoire of some households from Bihar and the wider region. International migration requires passports, recruitment, higher upfront costs and greater legal distance than most internal movement. It can therefore produce larger remittances but also higher debt and recruitment risk. Chapter 102 treats Gulf migration directly. In the *longue durée*, overseas work represents an extension—not a replacement—of the household strategy already visible in internal circulation: members diversify income spatially while continuing to finance houses, land, education, health and ceremonies at home.

97.21 The Nepal–India corridor combines international movement with the social familiarity of a local borderland

The open India–Nepal border produces a distinctive migration regime. The 1950 treaty provides reciprocal privileges concerning movement and economic participation, and the border can be crossed without the visa regime that governs most international migration. Nepal's Labour Migration Report 2024 notes that more than 0.74 million Nepalis were in India in the 2021 census and emphasises the long history and low cost of the India corridor. For the Mithila–Madhesh borderland, everyday movement includes work, study, marriage, health care, trade and pilgrimage. Because much of it is undocumented administratively,

national statistics cannot fully represent its intensity. The border is therefore simultaneously an international boundary and a lived social corridor.

97.22 Circular migration produces a household stretched across two or more locations

The strongest contemporary research on rural Bihar describes migration as long-duration yet circular. Amrita Datta's analysis of the 2016 Institute for Human Development Bihar Household Survey found that 18.8 per cent of individuals in the sample were migrants and nearly two-thirds of households had at least one migrant member; most working-age male migrants moved for work, and many were away for much of the year. Such households are neither simply rural nor urban. Their income, care, consumption and investment are distributed across locations. The village home remains the site of reproduction, ageing parents, children, land and social membership; the destination supplies wages but may provide insecure housing and weak welfare access. This split geography is one of the defining institutions of modern Bihar's political economy.

97.23 Migration is stratified by caste, class, landholding, education and networks

The capacity to migrate is unequal. Poorer labouring households may enter shorter-term and more precarious work because they lack money to search, train or wait for better jobs. Better-resourced households can finance longer-distance journeys, education, business or professional migration and can sustain family members at destination. Datta's research shows that social hierarchy at origin can reappear at destination: Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes, poorer backward classes and labouring households are disproportionately represented in precarious streams. Migration therefore does not automatically generate social mobility. It can reproduce hierarchy through different occupations, housing conditions and exposure to risk even while raising cash income.

97.24 Remittances reshape consumption, housing and education but do not by themselves remove structural dependence on migration

Remittances can stabilise food consumption, repay debt, finance health care, support children's schooling, build brick houses and pay for marriage. They may also fund farm inputs or small businesses. Yet the development effect depends on wage levels, migration costs and the availability of productive opportunities at home. Where local labour markets remain weak, a better house may coexist with continued dependence on outside wages. Longitudinal research in Bihar therefore treats migration not merely as an emergency escape but as an increasingly integral source of household income. Chapter 103 examines remittance-led transformation directly; the present chapter establishes why remittances became structurally important over time.

97.25 The costs of migration are partly transferred to those who remain

A migrant's wage is visible, but the labour that sustains migration is often less visible. Women, older people and other household members may take on cultivation, livestock care, child care, elder care, administrative work and debt management during prolonged male absence. Emotional strain, interrupted schooling, health emergencies and the uncertainty of remittance flows also shape source households. Conversely, migration can increase women's control over everyday decisions or expose them to new burdens without greater authority. The social history of migration must therefore value unpaid reproductive work as part of the migration economy rather than treating the migrant worker as an isolated individual.

97.26 Networks, jobbers, contractors and prior migrants turned mobility into path-dependent chains

Migrants rarely enter anonymous labour markets alone. A relative, neighbour, caste fellow, village intermediary, recruiter or contractor can provide the first address, job lead, rail route, advance and introduction. Such networks lower search costs and risk, but they can also lock migrants into occupations controlled by the same intermediary chain. Over generations, source villages develop destination specialisations: one cluster may supply porters or rickshaw workers to Kolkata, another construction labour to Delhi, another harvest workers to Punjab. Network effects explain why migration geography persists even when wage differences alone would predict broader dispersal. They also explain the speed with which information about new destinations can travel through a village.

Regional migration geographies within the study area



Different subregions entered different destination chains; kinship, rail routes, contractors and prior migrants repeatedly created path dependence.

Figure 387 — Subregions entered different destination chains through path-dependent networks

97.27 Transport, mobile phones, banking and identity systems changed the technology of circulation

Railways made repeat migration possible on a new scale; buses and roads widened access to stations and cities; mobile phones reduced the cost of maintaining family ties and searching for work. Bank accounts and digital transfers made remittances faster, while Aadhaar-linked and mobile systems created new forms of identification and welfare portability. These technologies did not abolish precarity. A worker can own a smartphone and still depend on a contractor, sleep at a worksite or lack portable ration access. Yet the informational geography of migration has changed profoundly: destination wages, train schedules, emergencies and household decisions can now be negotiated in near real time across hundreds or thousands of kilometres.

97.28 The 2020 lockdown exposed the scale of circular migration by abruptly breaking its transport and employment infrastructure

COVID-19 did not create migrant labour; it made an existing system impossible to ignore. When the national lockdown halted work and transport, millions of workers were stranded away from their source households. By late May 2020, Indian Railways reported that nearly 80 per cent of passengers carried on Shramik Special trains were travelling to Uttar Pradesh and Bihar. In a 2021 Supreme Court proceeding, Bihar reported that about 1.9 million returning migrant labourers had been registered and skill-mapped on arrival. The Garib Kalyan Rojgar Abhiyaan was launched from Khagaria in June 2020 in districts receiving

large numbers of returnees. The episode revealed how dependent both destination economies and source households were on a circulation system that public policy had often treated as temporary and informal.

97.29 Modern data demonstrate migration's scale but still undercount circularity and open-border movement

Census 2011 provides detailed Bihar tables by last residence, duration, reason, age, sex and economic activity, including district-level data for Madhubani, Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Vaishali, Samastipur, Bhagalpur, Banka and other study districts. These data make migration measurable in ways impossible for earlier periods. Yet the decennial census is poorly suited to repeated circular movement by people who remain members of rural households, and it cannot fully capture undocumented India–Nepal crossings. Survey research therefore complements census data. The IHD Bihar survey's finding that nearly two-thirds of sampled rural households contained a migrant member illustrates how deeply circulation can penetrate household life even when standard residence-based statistics appear less dramatic.

97.30 The *longue durée* is a history of changing migration regimes, not an unchanging 'Bihari migrant' type

Across the centuries, mobility moved through different institutional regimes: river and market circuits; scholarly and service travel; agrarian seasonality; colonial recruitment and rail migration; postcolonial agricultural and industrial labour; national construction and service work; educational mobility; India–Nepal circulation; and international migration. Each regime had distinct gender relations, risks, contracts and destination geographies. What persists is the repeated use of mobility to bridge uneven resources between places. The analytical task for the chapters that follow is therefore not to explain why an allegedly rooted society suddenly began to migrate, but to trace how older practices of circulation were reorganised by colonialism, transport, labour demand, development inequality, borders and globalisation. Migration became one of the principal social infrastructures connecting Mithila, Vajji and Anga to the wider subcontinent and world.

Table 97.1 — Migration regimes across the *longue durée*

Period	Dominant forms	Key infrastructure / institutions	Historical significance
Early historic–early medieval	River, market, pilgrimage, monastic and court travel	Road/river knowledge, ferries, patronage	Connectivity more visible than migrant counts
Medieval–early modern	Scholar, scribe, soldier, ritual and marriage mobility	Courts, lineages, patronage networks	Portable knowledge and kinship capital
c. 1793–1850s	Seasonal agrarian and service movement	Revenue pressure, tenancy, market cash	Mobility embedded in agrarian reproduction
c. 1850s–1947	Rail migration, Calcutta, plantations, mines, recruitment	Railways, jobbers, contracts	Circular labour plus coercive regimes
1947–1980s	Industrial centres; Punjab–Haryana seasonal work	National labour demand, rail networks	Rural-to-rural and rural-to-urban streams
1980s–2010s	Metros, construction, services, education, Gulf	Contractors, phones, finance, education	Multi-destination household strategies
2020s	Long-duration circular migration with digital coordination	Mobile communication, banking, identity systems	High connectivity, persistent precarity and weak portability

Chapter 98 — Calcutta/Kolkata and Mithila–Anga Migration

Calcutta was one of the first great external cities to become woven into the ordinary reproduction of households in Mithila, Vajji and Anga. The connection did not arise from one recruitment drive or one industry. It accumulated through river traffic, the East India Company capital, railways, jute mills, docks, warehouses, carts and rickshaws, construction, domestic and hotel service, petty trade, clerical work and later professional employment. A worker could be physically hundreds of kilometres from home while remaining economically and socially embedded in a village through remittances, return journeys, marriage obligations, land, debt and kinship.

The result was a distinctive bi-local social formation. Calcutta could function as an urban labour market, a training ground, a political arena and a source of cash without necessarily becoming the migrant's permanent home. This chapter reconstructs that layered corridor while avoiding two simplifications: not every north-Indian worker in Calcutta came from the present study districts, and not every migrant from Mithila or Anga entered the jute mills. The evidence is strongest when city labour histories, railway history, census migration tables, district gazetteers and oral-life histories are read together.

98.1 Calcutta became an extension of village economies before it became a permanent destination for many migrants

For households in north and east Bihar, the importance of Calcutta lay not only in settlement but in repeatability. A city becomes part of a rural economy when routes are known, employers or contractors are identifiable, lodging can be arranged through prior migrants, and wages can be carried or remitted home. These conditions emerged unevenly from the nineteenth century onward. Some men stayed for years; others returned for harvests, marriages or illness; still others shifted between occupations within the metropolitan region. The analytical unit is therefore the corridor linking home and destination rather than the city alone. This perspective also explains why migration could remain socially conservative in some respects—supporting land, marriage and household obligations at home—while simultaneously exposing migrants to industrial discipline, urban politics, new skills and wider social networks.

98.2 The colonial capital created labour demand well beyond the factory gate

Long before the mature jute industry, Calcutta required builders, boatmen, porters, servants, carters, artisans and suppliers. Company rule concentrated administration, commerce and shipping in the city, and the expanding port connected the Hooghly to global trade. Labour history therefore cannot begin with the mill whistle. Migrants entered a spectrum ranging from regulated port work to household service and highly casual carrying. Early colonial attempts to classify and regulate “coolies” and servants themselves reveal how important mobile labour had become to the city's growth. For migrants from Bihar, such work offered cash employment alongside older circuits of military, service and commercial mobility. Yet recruitment was never geographically uniform, and retrospective labels such as “Bihari labour” can conceal differences of district, language, caste, religion, skill and occupational niche.

98.3 Jute industrialisation transformed the scale of the eastward labour corridor

The explosive growth of jute mills along the Hooghly from the later nineteenth century changed the magnitude and regularity of migration. Mills clustered outside the central city where land, river access and transport favoured large factories. Their demand for labour could not be met solely from nearby Bengali villages, and employers increasingly drew on workers from Bihar, the United Provinces, Orissa and farther

south. By 1916 the Indian Industrial Commission reported that about 90 per cent of labour in the Calcutta jute mills was “imported”, mainly from northern India. This did not make the workforce homogeneous. Skill, shift, department, religion, gender and recruiting network shaped workers’ positions. But the industrial belt gave the Bihar–Calcutta corridor a mass, durable institutional base.

98.4 Railways converted a difficult journey into a reproducible migration route

Transport history is central to labour history. The Tirhut State Railway opened in November 1875, linking Mokamah on the Ganga with Darbhanga and Muzaffarpur districts and later extending through north Bihar. A ferry across the Ganga connected the system with the East Indian Railway. The route remained inconvenient by later standards, especially before permanent Ganga bridges and gauge integration, but it drastically altered the time, predictability and social organisation of travel. The railway did not create migration from nothing; river and road movement were older. It did, however, make departure easier to repeat, lowered the informational cost of returning, and allowed kin- and village-based chains to expand. Bhagalpur and Munger, already on major east–west river and rail corridors, were differently positioned but likewise connected to the metropolitan east.

98.5 Recruitment moved from contractor dependence toward kin, village and occupational chains

Employers and labour intermediaries mattered, but migrants were not passive cargo delivered by sardars. Studies of Calcutta labour show that many workers found jobs through relatives, co-villagers and acquaintances already established in the city. Recruitment intermediaries could be foremen, contractors, jobbers, cart chowdhuries or skilled mistris; the same term might denote authority, technical skill or recruiting capacity in different sectors. Once a destination network matured, migrants could bypass formal recruiting mechanisms. This reduced uncertainty for employers and workers alike. It also reproduced social segmentation: a newcomer entered the city through people he knew, and those people were often from the same locality, caste, religious community or occupation. Labour markets therefore remained metropolitan in scale but intensely local in their channels of entry.

98.6 “Up-country” and “Hindustani” were urban categories, not precise social identities

In Bengal’s industrial and urban vocabulary, north-Indian migrants were frequently grouped as “up-country” or “Hindustani”. These labels were meaningful because they marked language, regional origin and outsider status, but they can mislead historical reconstruction if treated as exact identities. A Darbhanga Muslim dockworker, a Bhojpuri-speaking jute worker, a Bhagalpur labourer, a north-Bihar cartman and a skilled mason from eastern Uttar Pradesh could all be absorbed into one metropolitan category. For the history of Mithila and Anga, the task is to recover finer geographies wherever sources permit. District-specific evidence is uneven, which is itself historically significant: employers and colonial administrators often cared more about labour supply and discipline than about the cultural distinctions that mattered in migrants’ home regions.

98.7 Mithila’s connection was especially visible in labour streams from Darbhanga and neighbouring districts

Darbhangha appears repeatedly in the documentary record of Calcutta labour. The most striking late-colonial example is the port, where research on the 1940s identifies a large Muslim dock-labour stream from Darbhanga district among workers employed through stevedores. More broadly, north-Bihar districts supplied workers to mills, transport, domestic service and casual urban occupations. This did not imply that

every village participated equally. Migration intensity depended on land, debt, flood exposure, caste and religious networks, prior contacts, railway access and the availability of work nearer home. Yet once a village had reliable links to Calcutta, the city could become part of its livelihood repertoire across generations, even when individual migrants changed jobs or moved between industrial suburbs and the central city.

98.8 Anga's eastward mobility used a different geography but entered the same metropolitan economy

Bhagalpur, Banka and the wider Anga zone were closer to the east–west Ganga corridor and the East Indian Railway system than much of north Bihar. Their migration history therefore cannot simply be copied from the Tirhut route. Workers and traders could move east through Bhagalpur–Munger connections toward the Bengal metropolis, while silk, agricultural produce and commercial networks created additional reasons for travel. Modern census tables confirm continuing migration links between Bihar and West Bengal, but they do not by themselves reconstruct nineteenth- and early-twentieth-century district origins. A cautious history therefore combines transport geography with occupational evidence and avoids inventing a single “Anga stream” where the archives are thin. The metropolitan labour market was shared; the routes and social networks feeding it could differ substantially.

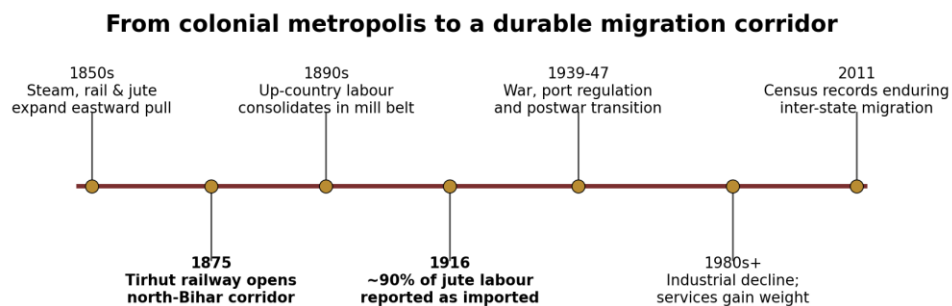


Figure 388 — Calcutta/Kolkata became a durable migration system through successive transport and labour regimes

98.9 The jute mill was a workplace embedded in a much larger metropolitan labour market

Jute mills are central to the story but should not be isolated from neighbouring employment. Workers moved between mills, warehouses, construction, transport and casual work, especially when layoffs, strikes or seasonal fluctuations interrupted factory earnings. Research on women and labour in colonial Bengal notes that migrants from Bihar and Orissa also entered tank digging, brick making, palki bearing, punkha pulling and general coolie work. Rickshaw pullers and carters were frequently recruited through trusted north-Indian intermediaries, while other migrants entered through personal networks. The jute worker was therefore often also an urban poor worker with alternative or supplementary occupations. This flexibility helped households manage unstable wages, but it also weakened the boundary between “industrial worker” and “casual labourer”.

98.10 The “peasant-worker” relationship explains why long urban careers could coexist with strong rural attachment

Many migrants retained land rights, household authority, marriage obligations and a future claim to village residence even after years in Calcutta. Urban employment could finance cultivation, debt repayment, house repair or ceremonies at home. Conversely, the village could provide food, care, status and retirement when city work failed. This circularity is why labour historians describe migrant workers as “unsettled

settlers” or emphasize the paradox of the peasant-worker. Permanent urban residence was only one possible outcome. The migrant might be settled enough to know the mill, union, landlord and neighbourhood, yet unsettled enough to keep his principal social horizon in Bihar. Such dual attachment was not a temporary stage on an inevitable path to urban assimilation; it could persist across generations.

98.11 The port created a distinctive Darbhanga-linked labour regime

Calcutta’s docklands—Kidderpore, Mominpore, Watgunge, Garden Reach and Metiabruz—formed a dense world of docks, warehouses, workshops, coal depots and worker settlements. By 1947 the Port Trust itself employed roughly twenty-two thousand workers, while contractors and stevedores employed another fifteen thousand dockers. Historical research identifies a substantial Muslim workforce, including the great majority of stevedore dockers drawn from Darbhanga district, alongside East Bengali mariners. This is unusually specific evidence connecting a core Mithila district to a major metropolitan occupation. It also shows that migration was structured by religion and labour niche as well as region. The dock corridor deserves separate attention from the jute belt even though workers, neighbourhoods and political organisations often overlapped.

98.12 World War II transformed port labour from extreme casualty toward stronger regulation

Between 1939 and 1945 Calcutta became a major military port for the Allied war in Asia. The enormous wartime demand for cargo handling exposed the inefficiencies and insecurity of contractor-based casual labour. Defence units, rationing, retention payments, uniforms, transport privileges and more systematic state supervision altered expectations about what dock employment could provide. These measures did not abolish exploitation, and they were shaped by wartime coercion as much as welfare. Yet they helped prepare the transition toward postwar regulation and the Dock Workers (Regulation of Employment) Act of 1948. For migrants, this mattered because the destination ceased to be only a place of piece-rate casual work; parts of the urban labour market became more formally regulated, making long urban careers possible for some households.

98.13 Construction, carrying and transport absorbed migrants who never entered factories

The city’s physical expansion continuously required workers who carried goods, pulled vehicles, handled building materials, dug, repaired and transported. Such jobs were easier to enter than skilled mill departments but often more insecure. Carting and rickshaw networks could be organised through men from the same home districts; masonry allowed some workers to acquire a transferable skill and later become mistris; construction connected Calcutta experience to later migration to other Indian cities. These occupations are important precisely because they escape factory-centred statistics. A household might remember “Calcutta work” without preserving an industry name. The migrant’s urban career could move through several low-capital occupations before stabilising, and each transition enlarged the network available to later migrants from the same locality.

98.14 Domestic service reveals how Partition changed the gender and regional composition of urban labour

Domestic service had long employed poor male migrants from Bihar, Orissa and the United Provinces. After Partition, large numbers of refugee women from East Pakistan entered Calcutta’s household-service market, often accepting extremely low wages or bed-and-board arrangements. Research on post-Partition domestic workers argues that this new supply gradually displaced many male migrants from neighbouring

states from jobs they had historically occupied. The episode demonstrates that migration corridors are altered not only by conditions at the origin but by shocks at the destination. A political border change hundreds of kilometres east of Bihar could reshape the employment prospects of a male migrant from north Bihar. It also reminds us that the history of “Bihari labour” must include jobs that declined as well as jobs that expanded.

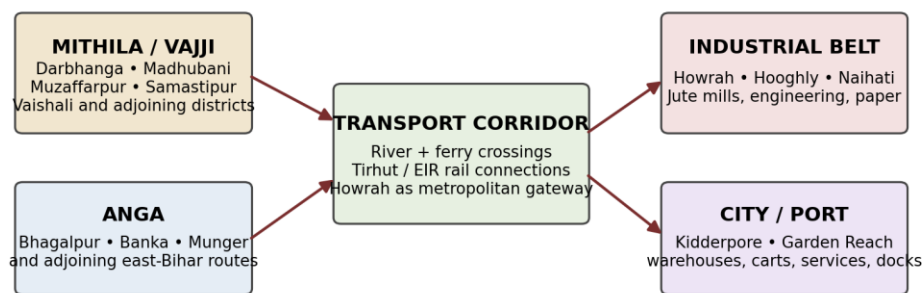
98.15 Housing made the migrant’s city socially segmented and often precarious

Mill lines, private bastis, shared rooms, religious or regional clusters and employer-linked accommodation structured everyday life. Housing near mills and docks could be overcrowded, poorly ventilated and exposed to disease, but proximity to work and co-villagers reduced the cost of urban survival. New arrivals learned where to sleep, cook, borrow, worship and seek employment through prior migrants. This created neighbourhood continuities even when individual jobs were unstable. The city was therefore not experienced as a single metropolitan space. A worker’s Calcutta might consist of one railway terminal, a particular basti, a mill gate, a tea stall, a remittance channel and the route home. These micro-geographies gave migration its durability by converting an intimidating metropolis into a familiar sequence of places.

98.16 Caste, religion and locality shaped networks without completely determining occupation

Migrants often relied on people from the same caste, biradari, village or religious community, especially for first lodging and job information. Such networks could concentrate communities in particular occupations or neighbourhoods. Yet urban labour also forced interaction across origin groups, and workers could change sectors as opportunity required. A Darbhanga-origin Muslim docker, for example, might share regional connections with other north-Bihar migrants while occupying a religiously and occupationally specific network in the docklands. Jute mills similarly combined workers from multiple linguistic and regional backgrounds under one industrial regime. The resulting social world was neither a caste-free proletariat nor a simple transplantation of village hierarchy. Urban class formation and inherited identities reshaped one another.

Mithila-Anga to Calcutta/Kolkata: a schematic migration corridor



Schematic, not to scale: routes changed with bridges, gauges, ferries and destination sectors.

Figure 389 — The Mithila–Anga to Calcutta/Kolkata corridor joined distinct source routes to multiple destination zones

98.17 Wages linked the metropolis to land, debt and household reproduction in Bihar

The economic meaning of migration cannot be measured only by the migrant’s consumption in the city. Cash earnings could be sent or carried home to pay rent or debt, finance cultivation, repair houses, buy livestock, support children’s schooling or meet ceremonial expenses. Even small remittances mattered where rural cash income was scarce. At the same time, remittances could reinforce unequal rural structures if the poorest households spent them mainly on survival while better-off households converted urban earnings into

land, education or business. Calcutta therefore redistributed resources back into village society without necessarily erasing hierarchy. The corridor joined two economies: urban employers gained a flexible labour supply, while rural households gained access to cash at the cost of separation, insecurity and dependence on distant labour markets.

98.18 Migration transferred large amounts of unpaid work to those who remained at home

When men circulated to Calcutta, household members who stayed in Bihar absorbed cultivation management, livestock care, food provisioning, child care, elder care, debt negotiation and social obligations. Women often carried the largest increase in responsibility while lacking equivalent authority over land or income. Older parents and brothers could also manage property for absent migrants. This redistribution of labour is easy to miss because urban wage records count only the worker in Calcutta. The corridor's real productivity depended on two sites of work: paid labour at the destination and unpaid reproductive and agrarian labour at the origin. Return visits temporarily reunited these tasks but did not eliminate the asymmetry. The social history of migration must therefore include the household that made migration possible.

98.19 Migrant networks were also political networks

Industrial Calcutta exposed migrants to trade unions, strikes, nationalist politics, communist organisation, religious associations and neighbourhood mobilisation. Workers could carry political vocabulary and organisational experience back to their villages, although the direction of influence was never one-way. Dockworkers and mill workers participated in labour militancy, and late-colonial Calcutta witnessed large strikes in which class demands became visible at metropolitan scale. Yet political organisations competed for migrant constituencies along class, religious and regional lines. The worker was not politically remade simply by entering a factory. Rather, urban collective action intersected with rural loyalties and identities. The corridor thus transmitted not only wages and recruits but also rumours, political arguments, union experience and new expectations of employers and the state.

98.20 Partition reorganised Calcutta without severing the Bihar corridor

Partition in 1947 transformed Bengal's geography, displaced millions and disrupted the supply chains of the jute industry by placing much raw-jute cultivation in East Pakistan while most mills remained in India. It also changed labour markets through refugee settlement and communal violence. Yet the older north-Indian migration corridor did not disappear. Bihar remained within the same national labour market as West Bengal, railway links persisted, and industrial suburbs continued to require workers. What changed was the competitive and political environment in which migrants operated. Some occupational niches contracted; others became formalised; new refugee populations entered low-wage urban work; and postcolonial labour law altered employment relations. Continuity in movement therefore coexisted with a profound transformation of destination society.

98.21 Post-independence industrial suburbs sustained bi-local careers for another generation

In the decades after independence, jute, engineering, paper and other industries around Calcutta and Howrah still supported long working lives for north-Indian migrants. Oral-life histories show men who spent decades in industrial suburbs while maintaining strong rural-home connections and eventually returning to their villages. Such careers complicate the opposition between permanent settlement and seasonal migration. A worker could acquire a skill, union status and urban familiarity yet still plan retirement in Bihar. Family

members might join temporarily or remain at home. The persistence of this arrangement depended on relatively durable industrial employment, affordable migrant neighbourhoods and frequent travel. It was this institutional ecology—not merely personal attachment—that sustained the bi-local system.

98.22 Deindustrialisation weakened the old mill-centred corridor without ending migration to Kolkata

From the late twentieth century, closures and stagnation in large textile, engineering and paper industries eroded the employment base that had supported long industrial careers. Labour historians describe this as a breakdown of the older dual-settlement structure for many Hindustani workers. Younger migrants increasingly faced casual construction, transport, vending, repair, hospitality and other service-sector work rather than the same mill or factory that had employed fathers or uncles. The destination therefore changed character. Kolkata remained familiar and accessible, but its relative advantage declined as Delhi, Mumbai, Punjab, Haryana and later western and southern cities offered alternative labour markets. Migration did not cease; it diversified, and Kolkata became one node within a wider national portfolio.

98.23 Informal services preserved the corridor after factory employment weakened

Rickshaw pulling, vending, loading, small workshops, hotel work, security, construction and other service occupations require less fixed industrial capital than mills and can survive major changes in the urban economy. They also reproduce many older features of migrant labour: long hours, weak contracts, shared accommodation, recruitment through acquaintances and frequent movement between jobs. For some migrants these sectors offered entrepreneurial pathways; for others they meant deeper precarity. The key continuity was network knowledge. A household that had sent workers to Calcutta for generations possessed information about stations, neighbourhoods, employers and intermediaries that retained value even when the original mill disappeared. Social infrastructure can outlive industrial infrastructure.

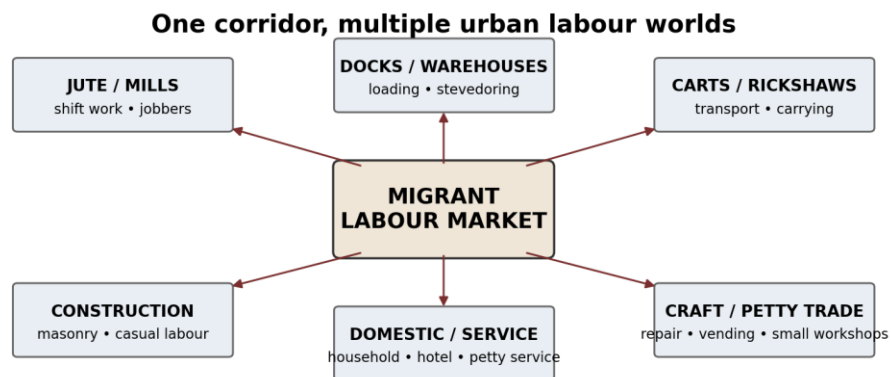


Figure 390 — The Calcutta/Kolkata corridor connected migrants to several overlapping labour worlds

98.24 Education and white-collar work created a smaller but socially important Kolkata stream

Kolkata was not only a labouring-class destination. Universities, colleges, hospitals, government offices, publishing, law, commerce and professional networks attracted students and educated migrants from Bihar. This stream was numerically smaller than mass manual migration but disproportionately important for middle-class formation and cultural exchange. It also operated through different institutions: admission, examination, professional certification, hostels, kin sponsorship and office recruitment rather than sardars or mill gates. Over time, education migration could lead to permanent urban settlement more readily than

circular manual labour. Yet the same household might participate in both worlds, with one member in manual work and another pursuing study or clerical employment. Kolkata therefore linked class differentiation at the origin to differentiated migration trajectories.

98.25 The metropolis could reproduce regional culture even while encouraging linguistic adaptation

Migrants carried Maithili, Hindi, Urdu and other speech forms into a Bengali-speaking metropolis. Workplace communication, schooling and urban administration encouraged multilingual adaptation, while lodgings, associations, religious institutions and kin networks sustained home languages. Cultural continuity did not require isolation. Migrants could learn Bengali for work and neighbourhood life while maintaining Maithili or other languages in family and regional networks. The city thus became a site where regional identities were reorganised outside their home territory. This is one reason destination-based associations, festivals, literary circles and informal gatherings mattered: they provided social recognition in an environment where official or employer categories might reduce diverse migrants to “Hindustani” or “Bihari”.

98.26 Kolkata’s relative importance declined as India’s migration geography widened

The corridor’s long history should not be mistaken for unchanging dominance. In the colonial period Calcutta combined unusual scale, proximity and industrial demand. After independence, new routes expanded rapidly: Green Revolution agriculture in Punjab and Haryana, construction and services in Delhi, industrial and informal work in Mumbai and Gujarat, and later southern and overseas destinations. Improved long-distance trains, highways, telephones and mobile communication made a multi-destination strategy easier. Households could compare wages, contractors and risks across cities. Kolkata therefore shifted from being a near-default eastern metropolis for some networks to one option among several. Chapter 99 examines Delhi and Mumbai, while Chapter 100 turns to Punjab and Haryana.

98.27 Census data capture enduring inter-state migration but not the full history of circulation

Census 2011 migration tables for West Bengal record migrants by previous residence, duration, reason, age, sex and economic characteristics, including the Kolkata Urban Agglomeration. These data confirm the continuing presence of Bihar-origin migrants in the state and metropolitan region. Yet a census taken at one residence cannot fully measure workers who circulate seasonally, maintain dual households or happen to be enumerated at home. Nor can a contemporary district table reconstruct the exact source geography of a worker recorded as “Bihar” in an older mill report. The best method is triangulation: census tables for scale and composition, labour histories for workplace structure, transport history for route formation, and oral or household evidence for circulation.

98.28 Return was part of the corridor, not evidence that migration had failed

Many migrants returned to Bihar after injury, retirement, factory closure, family need or accumulation of enough savings to re-establish themselves at home. A returnee could bring cash, tools, skills, political experience, urban habits and contacts. Others returned with little savings after years of precarious work. Either outcome demonstrates that the corridor had a life cycle. Departure and return were not opposites; both were built into a bi-local strategy. A worker might spend most of adulthood in Calcutta and still regard village residence as the expected end point. This orientation shaped investment decisions: housing and land at

home could receive priority over better urban accommodation. It also helps explain why migrants tolerated difficult city conditions that would appear irrational if permanent settlement were assumed to be the goal.

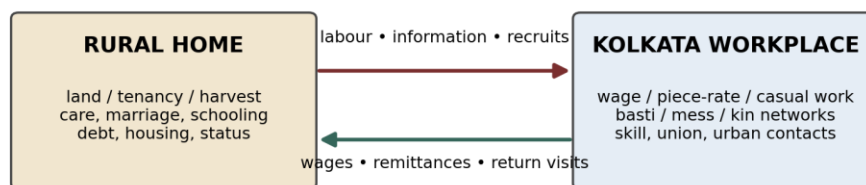
98.29 The durable social infrastructure of migration outlived individual industries

What made the Calcutta corridor historically powerful was accumulated knowledge. Villages learned which trains to take, where to find co-villagers, which employers hired newcomers, how to borrow for a ticket, how to send money, how to manage police or hospital encounters, and when to return for agricultural or family obligations. Each migrant reduced the uncertainty faced by the next. Such knowledge is a form of infrastructure even though it does not appear on engineering maps. When industries declined, part of this social infrastructure could be redirected toward construction, services or entirely new destinations. The history of Kolkata migration therefore demonstrates path dependence: an old route can continue because networks retain value after the economic conditions that created them have changed.

98.30 Calcutta/Kolkata was the prototype of a metropolitan migration system, not the endpoint of regional mobility

For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, Calcutta/Kolkata was historically important because it showed how a distant city could become socially near. Railways and ferries reduced travel costs; mills and docks generated mass demand; contractors and kin networks organised entry; bastis and occupational clusters made urban survival possible; wages returned to village households; and repeated journeys converted migration into an institution. The corridor also exposed its own limits—casualty, dangerous work, poor housing, family separation, communal tension and vulnerability to industrial decline. Its history provides the template against which later metropolitan systems can be compared. Chapter 99 therefore turns to Delhi and Mumbai, where post-independence construction, services, industry and professional mobility reorganised the geography of migration beyond the older eastern metropolis.

Bi-locality: the village and the metropolis reproduced one another



The relationship could last for decades even when jobs, industries and individual workers changed.

Figure 391 — Bi-locality linked Kolkata work to rural reproduction over repeated migration cycles

Table 98.1 — Labour worlds in the Calcutta/Kolkata migration system

Labour world	Main period	Entry mechanism	Historical significance
Jute mills / industrial suburbs	late 19th–20th c.	shift work, jobbers, mill lines	mass imported labour; long bi-local careers
Docks / warehouses	late 19th–20th c.	contractors, stevedores, casual gangs	Darbhangha-linked Muslim dock stream documented in 1940s
Carrying / carts / rickshaws	19th–20th c.	chowdhuries, agents, kin networks	low-entry-cost urban work; high insecurity

Labour world	Main period	Entry mechanism	Historical significance
Construction / masonry	19th c.–present	contractors, skill apprenticeship	portable skills; bridge to later metropolitan migration
Domestic / personal service	colonial–postcolonial	household recruitment, lodging	male north-Indian niche reshaped after Partition
Petty trade / service / repair	20th c.–present	kin finance, neighbourhood networks	absorbed labour as large industry weakened
Education / clerical / professional	20th c.–present	schools, colleges, offices, credentials	smaller stream with higher settlement and mobility potential

Chapter 99 — Delhi, Mumbai and Post-Independence Mobility

After independence, migration from Mithila, Vajji and Anga ceased to be organised mainly around a small number of older eastern corridors. Calcutta/Kolkata remained important, but Delhi and Mumbai entered household migration strategies with growing force. The two metropolitan systems were not interchangeable. Delhi was closer by rail, located within the broad Hindi linguistic zone and increasingly surrounded by a National Capital Region of construction sites, workshops, warehouses and service jobs. Mumbai was farther away, more expensive to inhabit and embedded in a different linguistic and industrial history, yet its manufacturing, construction, transport, hospitality and informal-service economy created durable opportunities for migrants willing to bear higher entry and housing costs.

The central historical change was therefore a widening of the mobility map. Households that had once depended on one destination could now compare wages, recruitment chains, travel time, housing, risk and the availability of relatives or co-villagers across several cities. This chapter follows that post-independence diversification without treating every migrant as a permanent settler or every movement as an escape from agriculture. Metropolitan work often remained part of a bi-local household economy in which earnings, care, land, debt, schooling and social obligations were distributed across source and destination. The following chapters will separately examine Punjab and Haryana, Nepal–India circulation, the Gulf, remittances, urbanisation and diaspora institutions.

99.1 Post-independence migration widened the metropolitan map rather than replacing older corridors

For much of the colonial period, Calcutta and the eastern industrial belt had occupied a privileged place in the migration geography of north and east Bihar. Independence did not abruptly dissolve that connection. Instead, Delhi and Mumbai were added to a growing portfolio of destinations. Improved long-distance rail services, the expansion of public works, construction, industrial estates and urban services, and the multiplication of village-to-city information networks made repeated travel to western and northern metros more feasible. The historical significance of this change lies in diversification. A household could send one member to Kolkata, another to Delhi, and later a younger relative to Mumbai, Surat or another city. Migration therefore became less a single corridor than a distributed risk strategy. The same village could contain several destination histories, and the preferred city could change between generations as sectors rose, declined or became harder to enter.

99.2 Delhi's expansion after 1947 created an unusually large and varied demand for labour

Delhi's transformation after Partition combined state building, refugee resettlement, road and housing construction, commercial growth and the enlargement of central-government institutions. These processes created demand not only for skilled public employment but also for masons, helpers, loaders, drivers, vendors, domestic workers, guards, workshop labour and a wide range of petty services. Migrants from Bihar entered this economy through very different doors. Some arrived with educational credentials and sought clerical or professional work; many more entered through construction and informal employment where recruitment depended on contractors and known contacts. The city's importance to Mithila, Vajji and Anga therefore cannot be reconstructed from government employment alone. The national capital generated an occupational ladder whose lower rungs were often insecure but whose very scale made Delhi a reproducible destination for households with little urban capital.

99.3 Rail accessibility and the broad Hindi environment lowered some barriers to entry into Delhi

Distance is not merely geographical; it is measured in fares, travel time, information and the possibility of returning during emergencies. Delhi's rail connection with major Bihar junctions gave it an advantage over more distant western destinations. The broad intelligibility of Hindi also reduced one form of initial uncertainty, although migrants still encountered class-coded speech, bureaucratic language and urban discrimination. A new arrival could more easily ask for directions, negotiate with contractors or search for work than in a city where an unfamiliar language dominated public life. This did not make migration safe. It made Delhi comparatively legible. Once a few men from a village or kin group had established a foothold, the rail corridor and linguistic familiarity could turn one exploratory move into a chain of repeat migration.

99.4 Delhi gradually became a regional labour market extending far beyond the municipal core

By the late twentieth century, "Delhi migration" increasingly meant movement into a polycentric National Capital Region. Noida and Ghaziabad to the east, Faridabad to the south and Gurugram to the southwest created new industrial, construction, warehousing and service zones. For migrants, the relevant geography was therefore not the administrative border of the National Capital Territory but the network of worksites, rented rooms, labour chowks and transport connections across NCR. This expansion altered recruitment. A worker could lose a job at one site yet remain within the same regional labour market, or shift from construction to a factory, warehouse, delivery job or guard agency. It also increased commuting burdens and housing insecurity. The metropolis became larger as an employment system than as a civic community in which migrants could claim stable residence.

99.5 Construction became a major gateway occupation because it required large workforces and tolerated rapid turnover

Construction has repeatedly absorbed migrants with limited formal credentials because work can be divided among skilled masons, carpenters, electricians and machine operators, semi-skilled helpers and large numbers of casual labourers. Delhi's expansion, infrastructure projects and the 1982 Asian Games construction cycle are part of this history, but the mechanism continued through later NCR growth. Entry was often mediated by contractors, relatives and village contacts who could place a newcomer quickly. The same mechanism could produce vulnerability: delayed wages, unsafe worksites, arbitrary dismissal and dependence on labour intermediaries. Skills could nevertheless accumulate across projects. A helper might become a mason or specialist, and a successful worker could later recruit others from home. Thus construction was simultaneously a low-threshold labour market and a site where skill, brokerage and small-contracting careers could emerge.

99.6 Workshops, small manufacturing and repair economies provided a second Delhi pathway

The post-independence capital also developed dense clusters of small manufacturing, fabrication, plastics, garments, food processing, vehicle repair and other workshop activities. Such units rarely appeared in migration narratives as dramatically as large construction projects, yet they offered year-round employment and opportunities to learn practical skills. Recruitment often took place through personal recommendation rather than open advertisement. For workers from Mithila, Vajji and Anga, this could reduce the cost of urban entry but also tie mobility to narrow occupational networks. Informal manufacturing blurred the line between "industrial worker" and "casual migrant": a worker might remain for years in the same trade without

obtaining a formal contract, provident-fund coverage or stable housing. The persistence of this employment form is central to understanding why metropolitan mobility could be long-term without becoming secure.

99.7 Transport, security, retail and hospitality widened the range of migrant urban work

As Delhi's economy became increasingly service-oriented, migrants entered driving, loading, parking, guarding, cleaning, restaurants, hotels, street vending, retail assistance and logistics. These jobs differed sharply in status and remuneration but shared one feature: the city required labour at hours and locations that formal residential planning did not accommodate. Guards slept at worksites; restaurant workers shared crowded rooms; vendors depended on public space; drivers organised life around vehicles and depots. Urban service employment therefore connected labour mobility to the politics of housing, policing and access to streets. It also created routes for younger migrants who did not identify with agricultural labour or factory work. The expansion of services changed the social image of migration even when insecurity remained.

99.8 Students and educated workers formed a smaller but highly consequential Delhi stream

Delhi's universities, coaching markets, central examinations, hospitals, media institutions and government offices attracted students and credentialed workers from the study region. Their numbers were smaller than the mass of manual and service workers, but their social effects could be disproportionate. A student hostel or rented room could become the first stable urban address for a family; examination success could transform remittance capacity and marriage prospects; alumni and caste/community associations could create information networks that later helped others. Educational migration also widened regional aspirations. Delhi came to signify not only wage work but access to institutions perceived as national rather than provincial. This stream linked Chapter 94's history of education and mobility with the migration system examined here.

Post-independence widening of migration

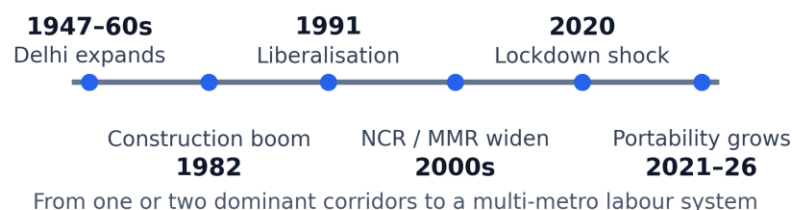


Figure 392 — Post-independence migration widened from older corridors into a multi-metropolitan system

99.9 Mumbai entered the regional migration portfolio through a different historical economy

Mumbai had long been one of India's major industrial and port cities, but its relationship with Bihar's eastern and northern districts differed from Calcutta's older labour corridor. Post-independence migrants encountered a city shaped by textiles, docks, engineering, transport, construction, film-related services, markets and a vast informal economy. The journey was longer and the cost of residence higher than in many northern destinations. These barriers meant that Mumbai migration often required stronger prior contacts. Once established, however, destination networks could become durable and intergenerational. The historical point is not that Mumbai replaced Delhi or Kolkata, but that it offered a distinct combination of higher

urban wages, expensive reproduction costs and a wide occupational spectrum. Households compared those trade-offs when deciding whether Mumbai was worth the distance.

99.10 The decline of the old textile-mill order did not end Mumbai's demand for migrant labour

Mumbai's celebrated textile industry entered a long crisis in the late twentieth century, and mill employment no longer structured the city as it once had. Yet deindustrialisation did not imply a labour-free metropolis. Construction, small manufacturing, transport, markets, restaurants, security, cleaning, repair, logistics and numerous forms of subcontracted service work expanded or persisted. For migrants this mattered because destination histories could survive the decline of the sector that had first attracted them. A kin network initially organised around factory or dock work could redirect newcomers toward construction or services. Migration systems therefore possess institutional memory: lodging arrangements, recruiters, travel knowledge and trust can outlive particular industries.

99.11 Real-estate construction made Mumbai's growth dependent on workers who could rarely afford formal housing

The contradiction between building the city and being unable to inhabit its formal housing market is especially sharp in Mumbai. Migrant construction workers often lived on worksites, in temporary shelters or in peripheral rental arrangements far from employment. High land values and redevelopment intensified the importance of shared rooms, commuting and informal settlements. The cost of urban reproduction shaped household strategy. Some migrants kept spouses and children in Bihar because family housing in Mumbai was unaffordable; others accepted long commutes to maintain a family residence. Wage comparisons between Delhi and Mumbai therefore require attention to rent, transport and food. A nominally higher wage could yield a similar or smaller remittance after metropolitan costs.

99.12 Security, hospitality, transport and logistics created durable Mumbai service niches

Like Delhi, Mumbai's post-industrial economy relied on large numbers of guards, cleaners, hotel and restaurant workers, loaders, drivers and logistics workers. These jobs were often organised through agencies or subcontractors, making the legal employer difficult to identify from the worker's perspective. Migrants could remain continuously employed while changing establishments many times. Uniforms, identity cards and fixed shifts might create the appearance of formality without the full bundle of formal employment rights. For households in Mithila, Vajji and Anga, such jobs could nevertheless be attractive because they offered predictable monthly earnings compared with casual agricultural work. The social meaning of "service sector" must therefore include low-paid maintenance and protection work, not only offices and finance.

99.13 Mumbai's linguistic and cultural environment made adaptation more visible than in Delhi

Migrants from Bihar entered Mumbai through Hindi and other north-Indian speech networks but encountered a city where Marathi had strong public and political significance and where multilingualism was part of everyday labour. Language could become both a practical skill and a marker of outsider status. Workers learned enough Marathi for transport, policing, customers or landlords while maintaining Maithili, Angika, Bajjika, Urdu or Hindi within family and migrant networks. This layered language use complicates narratives of assimilation. Migrants could become competent urban residents without abandoning source-region languages, and their children could acquire a different linguistic repertoire from parents who remained bi-local.

99.14 Housing costs made Mumbai networks especially important at the moment of arrival

A first job is only one element of migration. The newcomer also needs a place to sleep, knowledge of transport, food on credit, introductions to employers and protection against immediate fraud. Mumbai's expensive housing magnified the value of a relative, co-villager or trusted intermediary who could provide temporary accommodation. Shared rooms were therefore not merely evidence of poverty; they were migration infrastructure. Their social composition could reproduce caste, religion or locality ties, because people trusted those they knew and because job referrals followed the same lines. Yet urban proximity also created new solidarities across those boundaries. The room, worksite and train compartment were spaces in which inherited identities and practical cooperation coexisted.

99.15 Metropolitan migration remained strongly gendered even as women's mobility became more visible

Labour circulation from rural Bihar to Delhi and Mumbai was historically male-dominated in many low-income corridors, especially where men lived in dormitory-like arrangements and families remained at home. This produced the household effects analysed in Chapters 91 and 92: women carried additional farming, care, budgeting and social obligations while remittance income arrived from the city. Women were never absent from migration. They moved for marriage, family reunification, education, domestic work, services and professional employment, and their independent labour mobility became more visible over time. Official migration categories, however, often record women primarily under marriage or family reasons and can obscure economic activity after movement. A gendered history must therefore distinguish the recorded reason for migration from the work actually performed at destination.

99.16 Delhi and Mumbai produced different settlement patterns but a common condition of partial urban membership

Delhi's peripheral colonies, rented rooms and worksite settlements differed from Mumbai's dense chawls, slums, site housing and distant suburbs, yet both cities allowed long-term residence without guaranteeing stable civic incorporation. Migrants could possess voter identification in the village, ration entitlements linked to the home household and social obligations that required frequent return. At destination they might lack secure rental contracts, local documentation, affordable schooling or access to neighbourhood institutions. The result was not simply "temporary migration." Many workers lived for years in a city while remaining institutionally divided between two places. This partial membership is one of the defining features of post-independence internal migration.

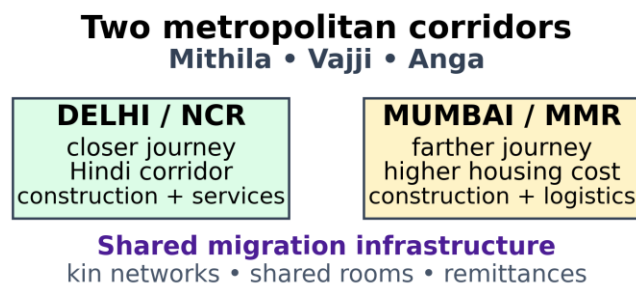


Figure 393 — Delhi/NCR and Mumbai/MMR became distinct but connected metropolitan migration systems

99.17 Migration networks reduced uncertainty but could also trap workers in narrow occupational channels

Kinship, village and neighbourhood networks are rational responses to an uncertain labour market. A trusted contact can verify an employer, arrange travel and provide lodging. Over time, however, a network can become an occupational funnel. If the first migrants from a locality enter guarding, masonry, food service or a workshop trade, later migrants may be channelled into the same sector even when they possess different abilities. Contractors can gain power because they control access to both jobs and accommodation. The network therefore has a dual historical role: it lowers migration costs and reproduces segmentation. Mobility within the city often depends on acquiring contacts beyond the original circle, learning new skills or obtaining credentials that allow a worker to exit the first job niche.

99.18 Remittances made metropolitan wages meaningful by connecting them to village budgets

The economic importance of Delhi or Mumbai cannot be measured only by the number of migrants residing there. Earnings were repeatedly converted into food purchases, debt repayment, school fees, medical care, house construction, ceremonies, land leases, agricultural inputs and the financing of another migration journey. Bank transfers and mobile payments later accelerated a process once managed through money orders, trusted travellers or cash carried home. Remittance use varied by class. Poor households often used earnings for immediate subsistence and debt, while better-positioned families could invest in education, property or enterprise. The same city wage therefore produced unequal long-term effects. Migration could reduce vulnerability without necessarily generating upward class mobility.

99.19 Return visits kept migrants embedded in agrarian and kinship institutions

Festival calendars, marriages, funerals, crop operations, local disputes and elections pulled migrants back toward the source region. Return was not a residual event after the “real” urban career; it was part of the migration system itself. A worker could spend most of the year in Delhi and still participate in decisions about land, schooling or panchayat politics at home. Regular return also refreshed recruitment chains: migrants carried information about wages and vacancies, and prospective workers travelled back with them. This circulation helps explain why long metropolitan residence did not always produce permanent family relocation. The village remained a social-security institution and a place of identity even when a growing share of household cash came from the city.

99.20 Caste, religion and regional identity travelled to the city but did not remain unchanged there

Migrants used familiar identities to organise trust, lodging, food and mutual assistance. Caste and religious networks could help locate employers or mediate disputes, and regional associations created ritual and cultural spaces. Yet cities also compelled collaboration across inherited boundaries. Workers shared transport, worksites and rented rooms with people they might not have interacted with closely in the village. Occupational hierarchies could cut across caste rank, and urban anonymity could enable choices that were harder at home. Metropolitan migration therefore neither dissolved caste nor merely reproduced it. It changed the arenas in which status was negotiated, while remittances could feed back into village prestige, marriage negotiations and political influence.

99.21 Migration could generate skill and status mobility, but the ladder was uneven

Some migrants accumulated technical skill, learned to negotiate contractors, acquired licences, moved into supervisory work or became small subcontractors, shopkeepers and transport operators. Others remained in casual labour for decades. The difference often reflected more than individual effort. Education, health, initial savings, social contacts, documentation and the stability of the destination sector shaped whether experience could be converted into advancement. A worker who repeatedly lost earnings to illness, rent or wage theft had little capacity to invest in skill. The “new middle classes” discussed in Chapter 95 therefore intersected with migration: salaried employment and educational mobility could make Delhi or Mumbai a platform for class formation, while low-wage migrants sustained the same cities without receiving comparable security.

99.22 Liberalisation after 1991 enlarged service and construction opportunities while deepening subcontracting

The economic reforms of the 1990s coincided with rapid metropolitan restructuring. Private construction, commercial real estate, logistics, retail and service employment expanded, while older forms of stable industrial work weakened in many sectors. For migrants, this produced both opportunity and fragmentation. More jobs could be available, yet employment was increasingly mediated by contractors, agencies and short-term arrangements. The workplace became easier to enter but harder to convert into durable social protection. Delhi/NCR’s office, retail and infrastructure boom and Mumbai/MMR’s redevelopment and service economy drew workers into sectors that were dynamic without necessarily being formal. The post-1991 migration regime must therefore be understood as mass urban incorporation through flexible labour rather than straightforward formalisation.

99.23 NCR and MMR made “the city” into a moving target

Urban expansion shifted employment outward. A migrant arriving for “Delhi” might work in Noida, Gurugram or Ghaziabad; someone going to “Mumbai” could live or work far from the historic island city. This spatial restructuring changed household calculations. Long commutes raised transport costs, and job switching could require moving residence even within the same metropolitan region. Peripheral worksites sometimes reduced rent but increased isolation from hospitals, schools and established migrant associations. The older model of a destination as one compact city therefore became less useful. Migration increasingly operated across metropolitan regions whose administrative boundaries did not match workers’ daily lives.

Metropolitan migration as a household cycle

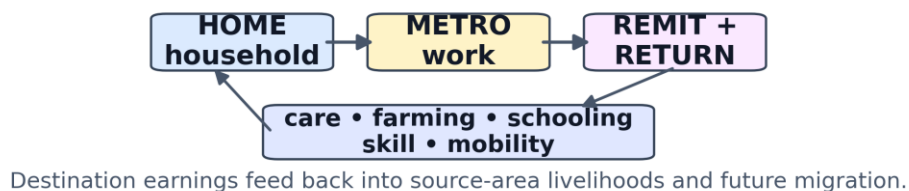


Figure 394 — Metropolitan migration remained a circular household process rather than a one-way move

99.24 Census data reveal migration at scale but understate circulation and multi-local lives

The 2011 Census migration tables classify migrants by place of birth or last residence, duration, sex and reason for movement. They are indispensable for locating migration within India's population structure, but they are less suited to capturing repeated short trips, circular labour or workers who retain a strong home base. A person may be economically dependent on Delhi while still being enumerated in Bihar, or may report one principal reason for moving when work, family and education are intertwined. For this reason, Census data should be read alongside household surveys and field studies. The history of migration is larger than the stock of people counted as migrants at a particular moment.

99.25 Rural Bihar studies show why household surveys remain essential to metropolitan history

The Institute for Human Development's study of rural labour migration from Bihar, based on a census of 6,433 households in villages of Purnia, Madhubani and Gopalganj and a more detailed survey of a sub-sample, demonstrated the value of studying migration from the source household. Such research reveals who leaves, who stays, how costs are financed and how remittances alter local labour markets. It also shows that destination choice is embedded in village-level networks. Although the study districts cannot stand for all of Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the method is important: metropolitan history becomes more accurate when the city is analysed together with the rural households that reproduce its labour force.

99.26 Delhi and Mumbai became emblematic destinations for low-income inter-state migration in the post-COVID evidence base

A post-COVID KNOMAD/World Bank survey of low-income workers in Delhi and Mumbai found that roughly three-fourths of the inter-state migrant respondents came from Bihar and Uttar Pradesh. This should not be misread as a population share for either metropolis: the survey covered a defined low-income sample, not all residents. Its value lies elsewhere. It confirms how central the Bihar–UP labour reservoir remained to the functioning of two very different metropolitan economies and how similar vulnerabilities—low bargaining power, weak social protection and costly housing—could appear across both. The finding fits the longer history traced in this chapter while requiring careful limits on generalisation.

99.27 The 2020 lockdown exposed the hidden infrastructure of metropolitan labour mobility

When workplaces and transport shut during the COVID-19 lockdown, the migrant worker suddenly became visible as a central urban actor. Construction, manufacturing, transport, hospitality and informal services depended on workers who often lacked savings, secure housing or locally portable welfare. The crisis produced mass attempts to return home and revealed how quickly a metropolitan livelihood could collapse when the connection between job, shelter and food was broken. ILO assessments emphasised the disproportionate exposure of informal workers. For households in Bihar, the shock was both urban and rural: remittances stopped while returning workers required food, quarantine, care and new employment. The event did not create migrant precarity; it made an older structure impossible to ignore.

99.28 Remigration after the lockdown demonstrated the structural pull of metropolitan labour markets

Return during crisis did not imply a permanent reversal of migration. Many workers later remigrated because source villages could not absorb the same labour at comparable cash incomes. Networks reactivated,

employers recalled known workers and households rebuilt interrupted earnings strategies. Some migrants changed destination or sector, showing that mobility had become adaptive rather than tied to one city. The COVID episode therefore belongs within a longer migration history as an extreme rupture that revealed both vulnerability and resilience. It also accelerated debates over portable food entitlements, worker registration and destination-state responsibilities.

Portable rights: progress without full urban security

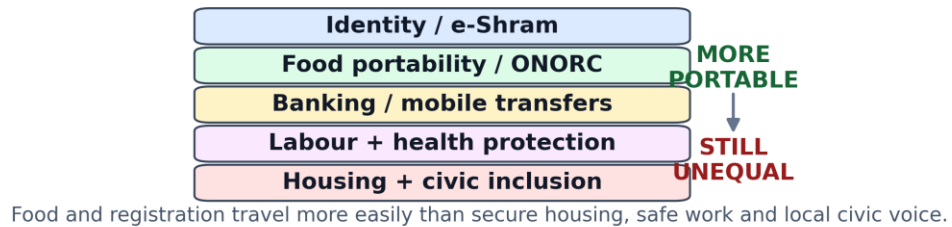


Figure 395 — Portability has improved faster than full urban citizenship for migrant workers

99.29 Portability reforms reduce some migration penalties but do not eliminate destination vulnerability

One Nation One Ration Card allows eligible households to draw foodgrains through portability without surrendering the home-state ration card, addressing one of the most obvious problems faced by mobile families. The e-Shram portal, launched in 2021, created a national database for unorganised workers including migrant workers; by 14 July 2026, the Ministry of Labour and Employment reported more than 31.78 crore registrations. These are important institutional changes, but registration and portability are not equivalent to secure employment. Rental housing, occupational safety, wage enforcement, childcare, schooling, health access and local civic voice remain uneven. The post-independence history of metropolitan migration has therefore entered a new phase in which mobility is increasingly recognised administratively even while full destination citizenship remains incomplete.

99.30 Delhi and Mumbai transformed mobility by making migration multi-destination, multi-sector and recurrent

The importance of Delhi and Mumbai in the social history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga lies not in a claim that every district sent equal numbers to both cities. It lies in the widening of household possibilities after independence. Delhi/NCR offered relative proximity, Hindi-language accessibility and an enormous construction-service labour market. Mumbai/MMR offered a more distant and costly but equally diversified metropolitan economy. Both depended on networks, shared housing and remittance circuits; both could enable skill and class mobility; both also exposed workers to informality and partial urban membership. Together they made migration less dependent on the older Kolkata corridor and prepared the ground for the even wider destination system examined in the following chapters, beginning with Punjab and Haryana's seasonal agricultural labour market.

Table 99.1 — Contrasting the Delhi/NCR and Mumbai/MMR migration systems

Dimension	Delhi / NCR	Mumbai / MMR	Household implication
Distance and language	Shorter rail corridor; broad Hindi environment	Longer journey; multilingual Marathi-Hindi environment	Different entry costs and adaptation burdens

Dimension	Delhi / NCR	Mumbai / MMR	Household implication
Major low-entry sectors	Construction, workshops, transport, security, retail, hospitality	Construction, manufacturing/services, transport, security, hospitality, logistics	Networks channel first jobs and skill pathways
Urban form	Polycentric NCR across multiple states	Dense MMR with high land and commuting costs	Administrative borders do not match daily labour markets
Housing	Peripheral rentals, worksite rooms, informal colonies	Shared rooms, worksites, informal settlements, distant suburbs	Family co-residence depends heavily on rent and commute
Network role	Village and kin chains lower search costs	Contacts especially important because entry and housing are costly	Trust reduces risk but can reproduce occupational segmentation
Long-term effect	Education, services and NCR expansion diversify careers	Sectoral change redirects networks after industrial decline	Migration systems outlive individual jobs and industries
Crisis and portability	COVID exposed dependence on mobile labour; portability reforms matter	Same vulnerability despite different urban regime	Food and registration are more portable than housing and labour rights

Chapter 100 — Punjab, Haryana and Seasonal Agricultural Labour

The migration of agricultural labour from Bihar to Punjab and Haryana is one of the clearest examples of how India's uneven regional development created a labour market across distant rural worlds. The corridor did not arise because rural people suddenly abandoned agriculture for the city. It grew because the Green Revolution intensified farming in north-western India at the same time that large parts of eastern India continued to contain small holdings, irregular employment and lower cash wages. Workers from Mithila, Vajji and Anga could therefore move from one agrarian economy to another, work during a narrow peak season, and return with earnings that mattered far beyond the number of days spent at the destination.

The history is not a simple story of a fixed stream from “Bihar” to “Punjab.” Different districts entered at different times; workers moved through kin, village and contractor networks; some combined Punjab with Delhi, Rajasthan or other destinations; and the labour demand itself changed as combines, direct-seeded rice and mechanical transplanters spread. Haryana shared much of the rice-wheat ecology but had its own crop patterns, mechanisation levels and urban-industrial alternatives. Chapter 100 therefore treats seasonal agricultural migration as an evolving institution: a system made by crop calendars, wage differentials, railways, recruitment networks, class relations, state regulation, water stress, mechanisation and household strategies at both ends of the journey.

100.1 The Green Revolution created a new rural-to-rural migration corridor

The initial Green Revolution in Punjab and Haryana centred on irrigation, high-yielding wheat, fertiliser, procurement and rapid adoption of machinery. As the new technology raised cropping intensity, it also altered the seasonal demand for labour. The crucial point for migration history is that productivity growth did not eliminate manual work evenly across the agricultural calendar. Certain operations could be mechanised rapidly, while others remained highly labour intensive and had to be completed within short windows. This created a destination that was rural but offered cash wages higher than those available in many source villages of Bihar. By the 1970s and 1980s, repeated migration to the north-west was becoming a recognisable livelihood strategy. The resulting corridor joined regions at very different points in India's agrarian transformation: capital-intensive, procurement-oriented agriculture at the destination and labour-surplus, fragmented, less reliably irrigated agriculture at the source. Seasonal movement was the mechanism that allowed those two structures to fit together.

100.2 The expansion of paddy made transplanting the decisive labour bottleneck

Wheat was central to the first phase of agricultural intensification, but the later spread of paddy transformed the demand for migrant labour. Transplanting requires a large workforce to uproot seedlings and place them quickly in prepared fields. Because the operation must be finished within a limited agronomic window, labour demand becomes highly concentrated. Punjab's paddy area expanded dramatically from the 1970s onward, and Haryana also developed a large rice-wheat system in its irrigated districts. The labour problem was therefore not simply how many workers agriculture used over a year, but whether enough workers could be mobilised during a few critical weeks. Migrant groups from Bihar became especially valuable because they could travel in gangs and undertake transplanting on piece-rate contracts. The expansion of paddy thus converted seasonal mobility from an optional supplement into part of the operating logic of the north-western rice economy.

100.3 Eastern Bihar supplied workers because the wage gap intersected with underemployment

Migration was pulled by higher destination wages, but it was also enabled by the structure of the source economy. In many villages of Mithila, Vajji and Anga, small and fragmented holdings could not absorb household labour throughout the year. Floods, uncertain irrigation, limited non-farm work and weak local labour demand created long periods in which the marginal return to remaining at home was low. Historical village studies in Bihar show that migration became a major force in weakening landlord control over local labour markets and raising reservation wages. The Punjab-Haryana corridor therefore cannot be understood as evidence that migrants had no attachment to agriculture. Many were themselves cultivators, sharecroppers or agricultural labourers. They moved because a few weeks of high-intensity work elsewhere could generate cash for food, debt repayment, schooling, health care, housing repair, farm inputs and social obligations at home.

100.4 Railways turned a distant opportunity into a repeatable journey

The north-west was far from north and east Bihar, but rail transport made repeated movement possible at a cost that could be recovered from a short season of work. Major junctions in the study region connected outward through long-distance routes toward Delhi and onward to Punjab and Haryana. Over time, familiarity with particular trains, stations and interchange points became part of migration knowledge. Travel was often crowded and difficult, especially during peak recruitment periods, yet the existence of a regular rail corridor reduced the uncertainty of distance. A first migrant might depend on an experienced relative; later journeys could be undertaken with a group from the same village or neighbouring settlements. Railways therefore acted not merely as infrastructure but as an institution of labour circulation. They allowed labour demand in a distant paddy field to be translated into an actionable opportunity in a Bihar village.

100.5 Recruitment shifted from contractors toward dense village and kin networks

Early accounts of inter-state agricultural labour often emphasised contractors, intermediaries and advances. These actors remained important, especially for assembling groups quickly, but recruitment became more socially embedded as the corridor matured. A worker who had already spent a season in Ludhiana, Sangrur, Patiala, Karnal or another destination could tell relatives which farmer paid reliably, where to sleep, which train to take and what rate was being offered. Such information reduced search costs for both worker and employer. Farmers also learned to contact trusted gang leaders directly. Mature networks could therefore bypass formal labour contractors while still reproducing hierarchy inside the work gang. The network was a form of social capital, but not an egalitarian one: newcomers often entered through people who controlled information, transport and bargaining with farmers.

100.6 Paddy transplanting gangs converted labour time into a piece-rate contract

A distinctive feature of the corridor was the prevalence of group and piece-rate work. Instead of paying each worker only a daily wage, farmers could contract a gang to transplant a specified acreage for an agreed amount. This suited the urgency of paddy because it gave workers an incentive to finish quickly and gave farmers a clearer cost for the operation. It also shifted some supervision from the farmer to the group itself. The apparent autonomy of piece-rate work should not be romanticised: long hours in flooded fields, heat

exposure, poor accommodation and bargaining over acreage or field conditions could make the work punishing. Yet the group contract could strengthen migrant bargaining when labour was scarce. The seasonal labour market therefore combined market competition, social networks and work-gang discipline rather than fitting neatly into the categories of either free daily wage labour or traditional attached labour.

Punjab-Haryana seasonal agricultural labour corridor

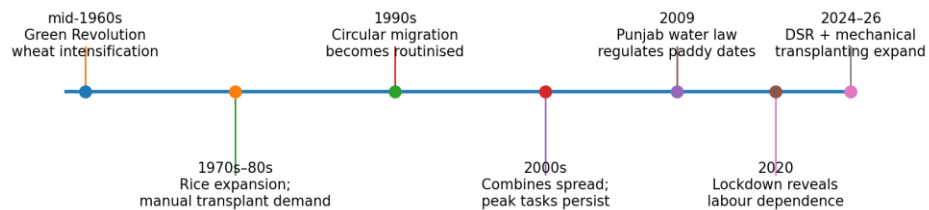


Figure 396 — The Punjab-Haryana corridor evolved with the rice-wheat system, labour scarcity and mechanisation

100.7 Wheat harvesting once absorbed migrants but mechanisation changed it earlier than transplanting

Harvesting and threshing of wheat were formerly major labour-intensive operations, and migrant workers participated in them across northern India. Combine harvesters, however, spread rapidly because they could cut, thresh and clean grain within a narrow window. Their adoption reduced the amount of manual labour required for wheat much earlier than the complete mechanisation of paddy transplanting. This altered the seasonal calendar of migration. Workers who had once moved for a longer sequence of farm tasks increasingly had to combine shorter agricultural peaks with construction, loading, factory work or other casual employment. The history of the corridor is therefore partly a history of task-specific mechanisation: some jobs disappeared or contracted, others remained labour bottlenecks, and migrants adapted by changing destinations and occupations.

100.8 Haryana formed a parallel but distinct destination system

Punjab dominates the public image of Bihar-to-north-west agricultural migration, but Haryana also attracted migrant labour into rice, wheat, sugarcane, vegetables, dairying and related work. Its labour markets were shaped by proximity to Delhi, a high level of farm mechanisation, major irrigated districts and the growth of non-farm employment around the National Capital Region. These conditions meant that agricultural migration could be more readily combined with construction or service work than in some parts of Punjab. Research on rice cultivation also indicates that Haryana's transplanting labour requirement was already relatively mechanised compared with many Indian states. The destination system therefore shared the basic wage-gap and crop-calendar logic of Punjab while offering a different mix of farm and non-farm options. Treating the two states as identical would hide the ways in which migrants adjusted to different regional economies.

100.9 Basmati, vegetables, sugarcane and dairying widened the work portfolio

The migrant agricultural worker was not employed only in ordinary paddy and wheat. Basmati cultivation, vegetable production, fodder cutting, sugarcane operations, dairy-related work, loading, cleaning grain and farm maintenance could extend employment beyond the most famous transplanting season. The exact combination varied by district and farm. Some workers built annual relationships with a particular farmer and returned for multiple operations; others moved between farms or into nearby towns once the

peak task ended. This diversification mattered because migration costs are easier to justify when travel can generate more than a few weeks of income. It also blurred the boundary between “agricultural migrant” and “casual worker,” since the same person might transplant paddy, load grain, work in a rice mill and take a construction job within one migration spell.

100.10 Source and destination crop calendars made circularity economically possible

Seasonal migration depends on timing. A household could release a worker only if the destination peak did not fully coincide with indispensable tasks at home, or if other household members could cover those tasks. Migrants from Bihar often organised journeys around the agricultural and festival calendars of both regions. Paddy transplanting in Punjab and Haryana became especially compatible with a broader pattern in which workers spent other months in the source village, in construction markets such as Delhi, or in other destinations. This synchronisation made the corridor circular rather than permanent. Workers did not have to choose once and for all between agriculture at home and migration. They could remain members of a rural household while selling labour in several geographically separated markets across the year.

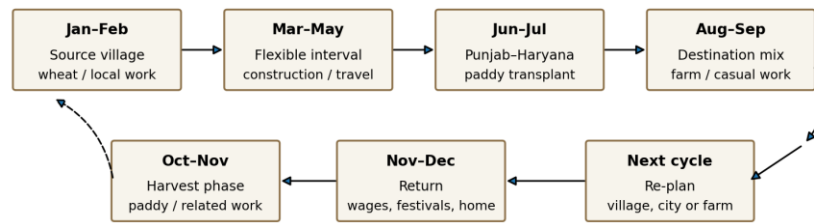
100.11 Circular migrants could remain socially rooted in the village for decades

Repeated absence does not necessarily produce permanent settlement. Many migrants returned for marriages, funerals, festivals, elections, land disputes, house construction and crop operations. Their household membership, ration arrangements, land claims and social obligations often remained centred in the source village even after years of repeated migration. This pattern complicates census categories based on usual residence or last residence because a worker can be economically dependent on two places without treating either as a simple temporary stop. The Punjab-Haryana corridor is therefore best understood as a multi-local livelihood system. The destination supplied wages; the village supplied family reproduction, land, social identity and a place of long-term security. Migration joined these institutions rather than replacing one with the other.

100.12 Wage differentials mattered, but reliability and duration mattered too

Workers did not compare only nominal daily wage rates. They also considered how many days of work were likely to be available, whether payment would be made on time, whether food or accommodation was provided, and whether a trusted employer would rehire them. A destination with a high wage but only a few uncertain days could be less attractive than one with a predictable transplanting contract. The historical strength of Punjab lay partly in the concentration of labour demand: farmers needed many workers at the same time and could not easily postpone the operation. That urgency increased migrant bargaining power during shortages. Yet when the season ended, the same workers could face a sharp decline in demand. Seasonal migration therefore combined moments of strong bargaining power with periods of extreme insecurity.

A circular labour calendar rather than a one-way move



Exact timing varies by crop, rainfall, contracts and alternative jobs; recurrence is the defining feature.

Figure 397 — Seasonal agricultural migration fitted into a recurrent multi-destination labour calendar

100.13 Destination class relations were shaped by both local labour and migrants

Migrant workers entered rural societies that already contained landowners, tenants, local agricultural labourers and entrenched caste relations. Employers sometimes used migrants because they were seen as more mobile, more willing to accept piece rates or less embedded in local political conflicts. Local workers, in turn, could gain bargaining power if they had alternative employment or if migrant arrivals fell. The two labour forces were not simply competitors: in some seasons they worked alongside one another, while in others employers could use one group to discipline the other. The 2020 labour shortage revealed these tensions clearly when some village panchayats attempted to fix transplantation rates and restrict labour mobility. Seasonal migration thus affected class relations inside Punjab and Haryana as well as the source villages of Bihar.

100.14 Caste travelled through recruitment networks but was reworked by the labour camp

Many migrants came from land-poor and historically subordinated caste groups, but the destination did not reproduce the source village social order in exactly the same form. Work gangs were often organised through kinship, locality and caste familiarity because trust mattered for travel and payment. At the same time, shared work, crowded accommodation and dependence on common employers could create practical solidarities that cut across some source distinctions. Destination farmers also classified workers through broad labels such as “Bihari,” compressing diverse regional, linguistic and caste identities into an outsider category. Migration therefore both carried caste and transformed its everyday operation. A labour camp was not caste-free, but it was a different social space from the village from which workers came.

100.15 Housing and everyday reproduction were hidden costs of agricultural migration

A seasonal wage must be evaluated against the cost of surviving at the destination. Migrants might sleep in temporary rooms, farm buildings, sheds or improvised accommodation near fields. Cooking arrangements, water, sanitation, bathing and protection from heat or rain were often minimal. Such conditions kept employers’ labour costs low because much of the cost of reproducing the worker was shifted to the migrant household and the worker’s own endurance. They also reinforced the temporary character of migration: a place suitable for a group of male workers during transplanting was rarely a place in which a family could establish a secure long-term life. The corridor’s profitability for agriculture therefore depended partly on a social arrangement in which the source village continued to bear much of the cost of family care and long-term reproduction.

100.16 Remittances connected north-western farm productivity to eastern village budgets

The cash earned in Punjab and Haryana circulated back into the source region. Even relatively small savings could matter where local cash employment was irregular. Migrant earnings financed consumption, debt repayment, medical care, schooling, ceremonies, house repair and sometimes investment in pumps, livestock or small businesses. The effect was not uniformly transformative: migration could also be required simply to maintain subsistence, and repeated travel imposed physical and social costs. Yet longitudinal studies of rural Bihar show that out-migration altered local labour markets and weakened older forms of dependence. The destination's agricultural surplus therefore had consequences far beyond the north-west. Through migrant wages, part of that surplus entered village economies in Mithila, Vajji and Anga and changed bargaining power there.

100.17 The corridor was strongly gendered even when women did not travel

Seasonal agricultural migration from Bihar to Punjab and Haryana was historically dominated by men. That does not make it a male-only history. When men left, women in source households often assumed greater responsibility for cultivation, livestock, fuel and water collection, care work, financial management and negotiation with local institutions. Remittances could increase household resources, but absence could also intensify workloads and uncertainty. Women's own migration was more visible in some family and non-farm streams than in the classic male transplanting gang. The gendered division of migration therefore redistributed labour within the household: paid work moved outward while a larger share of farm management and social reproduction could remain with women at home.

100.18 Mechanisation first displaced some tasks and then reorganised the labour corridor

It is misleading to describe mechanisation as a single event that ended migrant labour. Tractors had already transformed ploughing; combines reduced manual harvesting and threshing; pumps changed irrigation; and later machines targeted nursery preparation and transplanting. Each technology affected a different task and therefore a different segment of labour demand. The result was a gradual reorganisation of migration rather than a sudden disappearance. Workers adapted by shortening or lengthening stays, adding non-farm work, changing destinations and concentrating on tasks that remained difficult to mechanise. Farmers likewise chose technology partly in response to wage rates and labour availability. Migration and mechanisation were therefore mutually shaping: labour scarcity encouraged machines, while machines altered the opportunities that migrants sought.

100.19 Combine harvesting sharply reduced the old wheat-harvest labour peak

The spread of combine harvesters is one of the clearest examples of labour displacement in the corridor. A machine that could harvest and thresh rapidly reduced the need for large gangs of manual cutters and threshers. This was especially important in wheat, where timely harvesting matters and mechanisation could be integrated with large, relatively level fields. The reduction in harvest demand encouraged migrants to rely more heavily on paddy transplanting or to move into nearby non-farm employment. It also contributed to residue-management problems, because combines left straw patterns that farmers then had to clear before the next crop. Thus a labour-saving technology altered not only employment but also the ecological and temporal organisation of the rice-wheat system.

100.20 Paddy transplanting remained the labour bottleneck because it was harder to mechanise well

Conventional paddy transplanting persisted as a major manual operation long after many other tasks had mechanised. The work requires nursery preparation, field puddling, coordinated transplanting and careful timing. Machines existed, but adoption depended on mat-type nurseries, field preparation, machine availability, operator skill and the economics of custom hiring. This is why Punjab's own agricultural policy continued to identify rice transplanting as an area where suitable mechanisation lagged behind other operations. In effect, one stubbornly labour-intensive task sustained an interstate migration corridor even inside one of India's most mechanised agricultural regions. The persistence of manual transplanting demonstrates that the relationship between technology and labour is specific to the operation, not to a simple label such as "modern agriculture."

Mechanisation changes the task mix, not simply "migration versus no migration"

	Paddy transplant	Wheat harvest	Paddy harvest	Other work
Earlier	Historically very labour intensive	Earlier manual cutting & threshing	Manual + combine coexisted	Basmati, vegetables, loading, dairying
Shift	DSR / transplanters reduce peak demand	Combines sharply reduce labour need	Combines dominate many operations	Still labour-demanding and less mechanised

Figure 398 — Mechanisation reduced some farm tasks earlier than the paddy-transplanting labour bottleneck

100.21 State regulation of paddy dates concentrated labour demand even further

Punjab's effort to conserve groundwater introduced legally regulated dates for paddy nursery sowing and transplantation. By delaying transplantation toward the monsoon, the state sought to reduce early-season pumping. A side effect was to compress the transplanting window across large areas. When many farmers must begin within a similar period, labour demand becomes more synchronised and the value of a mobile workforce rises. Farmers complained of shortages and rising rates when migrant arrivals were delayed, while workers could sometimes bargain more strongly during the peak. Water policy thus became labour-market policy indirectly. The transplanting calendar shows how an environmental regulation can reshape migration by changing the timing rather than the total area of work.

100.22 MGNREGA and changing source wages altered the bargaining context without ending migration

Public employment under MGNREGA was often blamed in destination debates for creating a shortage of migrant labour. The historical evidence is more complicated. Migration to Punjab persisted because the destination could still offer concentrated cash earnings, while implementation of rural employment programmes in Bihar varied greatly across place and year. What changed more broadly was the worker's outside option. Rising rural wages, public works, construction employment and alternative destinations reduced the ability of any one agricultural corridor to command labour on unchanged terms. Migrants could compare Punjab with Delhi, Rajasthan, Gujarat or work closer to home. The result was diversification and greater sensitivity to wage differences rather than a simple retreat from migration.

100.23 Destination diversification turned Punjab into one node in a wider migration portfolio

By the 1990s and 2000s, many households no longer relied on one fixed destination. A worker might spend part of the year in Delhi construction, travel to Punjab for paddy transplanting, return home for festivals and then take another casual job elsewhere. Others shifted permanently toward metropolitan labour markets as farm seasons shortened. This diversification reduced the monopoly of the Punjab corridor while preserving its importance during high-wage peak operations. It also changed recruitment: workers could arrive from another destination rather than directly from the village. Chapter 100 therefore belongs after the Delhi-Mumbai chapter not because agricultural migration came later, but because by the contemporary period the circuits had become interlinked. Rural-to-rural and rural-to-urban migration increasingly formed one mobility system.

100.24 The 2020 lockdown exposed how dependent Punjab's paddy system remained on migrant labour

The COVID-19 lockdown abruptly interrupted inter-state mobility just before the paddy season. Workers who had returned to Bihar or were stranded elsewhere could not travel normally, and Punjab confronted a shortage of transplanting labour. Research on the 2020 season records sharp increases in local wage demands and emergency efforts by farmers and the state to secure workers. The crisis made visible a dependency that normal seasons had concealed: a highly mechanised agricultural economy still relied on mobile human labour for a crucial operation. The episode was therefore a natural experiment in the labour system. When migration stopped, the cost and timing of paddy establishment changed immediately.

100.25 The lockdown temporarily strengthened local labour bargaining and triggered conflicts over wage control

In some Punjab villages, local panchayats and groups of large farmers responded to labour scarcity by announcing transplantation rates or attempting to prevent workers from moving to higher-paying villages. Such measures reveal the class politics beneath the language of “labour shortage.” Farmers sought to control cultivation costs; workers used scarcity to demand higher piece rates; and migrant workers, where available, became strategically valuable. The episode also demonstrated why labour mobility matters for bargaining power. A worker who can move between villages or states is harder to discipline through a locally fixed wage. Attempts to restrict that movement were therefore attempts to recreate a more controlled labour market during crisis.

100.26 Direct-seeded rice gained urgency because it could bypass the transplanting bottleneck

Direct-seeded rice places seed directly in the field rather than transplanting seedlings from a nursery. The method can save labour and water under appropriate conditions, although it creates new agronomic challenges, especially weed management and crop establishment. DSR existed before 2020, but the lockdown gave it unusual visibility because farmers needed a way to establish paddy with fewer workers. Punjab and Haryana both promoted the technique, and agricultural research institutions studied its constraints and suitability. DSR therefore illustrates a broader pattern: labour scarcity can accelerate the adoption of a technology whose original justification also includes water conservation and lower cultivation costs. The migration question became inseparable from the ecological crisis of groundwater-dependent rice.

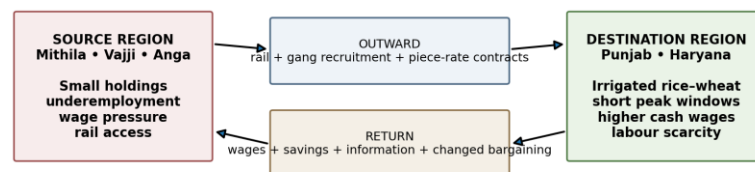
100.27 Mechanical transplanting converts labour demand into machinery, nursery and service demand

Machine transplanting does not eliminate labour so much as reorganise it. Farmers need mat-type nurseries, access to a transplanter, trained operators, field preparation and timely service. Punjab Agricultural University has continued to develop nursery seeders and remote-controlled or improved transplanting systems, while custom hiring allows one machine to serve many farms. By 2026, PAU extension programmes were still presenting mechanical transplanting as a response to labour scarcity and rising cultivation costs. This contemporary evidence shows that the historical corridor has entered a new phase. Migrant hand labour remains relevant, but the alternative is increasingly a service economy of machines, operators and nurseries rather than a simple substitution by one farm-owned machine.

100.28 Water scarcity and labour scarcity now push agricultural change in the same direction

Punjab and Haryana's rice-wheat system faces a double pressure. Groundwater depletion creates a need for water-saving crop establishment, while rising wages and uncertain migrant supply create a need for labour-saving techniques. DSR and some forms of mechanical transplanting address both pressures, although not always with equal success on every field. The technological transition is therefore being driven by environmental limits as well as labour-market change. This matters historically because the original Green Revolution expanded the corridor through irrigation-intensive paddy; the contemporary sustainability crisis is now encouraging technologies that may reduce the very peak labour demand that the corridor helped satisfy. Migration is thus embedded in the full ecological cycle of the rice-wheat economy.

The corridor connected unequal agrarian regions through repeated seasonal circuits



Over time: destination diversification + mechanisation + portability make the circuit more flexible, but peak labour demand persists.

Figure 399 — Unequal agrarian regions were connected by repeated outward and return circuits

100.29 Mithila, Vajji and Anga entered the corridor through different local histories

The source region should not be homogenised. North-eastern and north-central Bihar districts developed strong seasonal migration traditions through land scarcity, flood risk, weak local non-farm employment and established rail networks. Parts of Anga combined agricultural migration with older industrial and urban routes. Vajji's proximity to major rail and road corridors facilitated multi-destination mobility, while districts of Mithila developed dense village chains that linked workers to Punjab, Haryana and Delhi. The proportions changed over time as education, construction migration, overseas migration and local employment expanded. The correct regional history is therefore not that every district sent the same workers to the same crops, but that households inserted the Punjab-Haryana season into different pre-existing portfolios of mobility.

100.30 Seasonal agricultural migration connected India's agrarian inequalities and then helped transform them

The Punjab-Haryana corridor is historically important because it connected two agrarian transformations that are often studied separately. North-western productivity growth created high-value seasonal labour demand; eastern underemployment supplied mobile workers; migrant wages altered village labour markets in Bihar; mechanisation reduced some destination tasks; alternative migration routes changed worker bargaining; and environmental policy reshaped the timing of paddy. Over several decades, the corridor therefore changed both ends of the journey. It helped sustain the rice-wheat system during its expansion, while also contributing to the erosion of older labour dependence in source villages. Its contemporary future is likely to be smaller in some tasks, more mechanised and more integrated with non-farm migration, but the underlying historical lesson remains: labour mobility is one of the mechanisms through which unequal regional development is made to function—and through which that inequality is gradually contested and transformed.

Table 100.1 — Phases in the Punjab–Haryana seasonal agricultural labour corridor

Phase	Destination agriculture	Migrant labour role	Main transformation
1960s–70s	Green Revolution wheat; early rice expansion	Harvesting, threshing, field labour	Higher destination wages create corridor
1980s–90s	Rice-wheat intensification	Paddy transplant gangs; harvest work	Village/kin networks routinise circular migration
2000s–2010s	High mechanisation; regulated paddy calendar	Transplant peak remains important	Combines shrink harvest work; destinations diversify
2020 lockdown	Mobility suddenly interrupted	Severe transplant shortage	Local wages rise; DSR/mechanisation accelerate
2020s	Water- and labour-saving transition	Manual work coexists with machine services	DSR, transplanters and custom hiring reshape demand
Long-term effect	North-west farm surplus linked to eastern labour supply	Cash earnings return to source villages	Migration alters class bargaining at both ends

Chapter 101 — Nepal–India Circular Migration

The India–Nepal border is international in law but unusually permeable in everyday social life. In the Mithila–Madhesh and Anga-facing borderlands, households have long treated the line not only as a frontier of two states but also as a corridor linking labour markets, marriage fields, pilgrimages, schools, hospitals, bazaars and transport nodes. Chapter 101 therefore uses circular migration in a deliberately broad sense: repeated movement in which a person or household remains materially and socially connected to more than one locality, and in which return is built into the migration strategy even when individual spells become long.

The 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship did not create these cross-border ties from nothing. It institutionalised an older geography shaped by the nineteenth-century boundary, shared languages, kinship and commercial routes. Article 7 is especially important because it committed the two governments, on a reciprocal basis, to grant nationals of the other country privileges concerning residence, ownership of property, participation in trade and commerce, movement and related matters. In practice the relationship has always been more complex than treaty text alone: national laws differ, documentation requirements vary by activity, and mobility becomes more regulated when it intersects with formal employment, banking, vehicles, customs or travel to third countries.

101.1 The border divided sovereignty without severing a social region

The Sugauli settlement of 1816 fixed a political boundary across a landscape whose markets, pilgrimage routes, caste networks and marriage relations did not end at the new line. In the eastern and central Tarai, movement between today's Nepal and Bihar continued through local fairs, seasonal farm work, cattle and grain trade, religious journeys and household visits. This historical background matters because later migration did not begin with an isolated economic 'push' from Nepal or a single 'pull' from India. It developed inside a borderland in which people already possessed route knowledge, linguistic competence and kin contacts on both sides. The resulting mobility could be extremely local—a few kilometres to a market or field—or extend from the border to Patna, Kolkata, Delhi and other Indian destinations. The political boundary therefore reorganised jurisdiction more decisively than it reorganised everyday social geography.

101.2 The 1950 Treaty gave reciprocal mobility a durable interstate framework

The Treaty of Peace and Friendship signed in July 1950 became the central legal reference for the modern open-border relationship. Its provisions on reciprocal treatment of nationals helped sustain a system in which Nepali and Indian citizens could cross for work and residence without the visa regime that usually defines international labour migration. The treaty has also been politically contested in Nepal, where critics have questioned asymmetry and sovereignty, but its mobility effects remained deeply embedded in everyday practice. For migration history, the crucial point is institutional durability: families could plan repeated movement without the recruitment visas, exit permits and destination contracts that characterise Nepal's later Gulf and Malaysian labour corridors. This lowered the monetary cost of migration and made short, experimental or emergency trips possible, while also making the true scale of migration difficult to count.

101.3 Open-border migration is systematically undercounted

Administrative statistics capture only part of this corridor. Nepal's foreign-employment permit system is designed primarily for labour migration to destinations that require formal approval; it does not enumerate every person who walks, cycles, buses or trains into India through the open border. Indian administrative systems likewise do not generate a complete register of Nepali citizens working in informal jobs. The Nepal

Labour Migration Report 2024 therefore treats the Nepal–India corridor separately from permit-based foreign employment. Census questions on absent household members provide another window, but they miss commuters and many migrants whose household definitions or timing differ from the census reference period. Any precise total should consequently be treated with caution. The historical importance of the corridor is clearer than any single headcount.

101.4 Circularity is produced by low travel costs and the possibility of return

Open-border mobility permits migrants to leave with limited capital, test a destination, return for agricultural work or family obligations, and depart again when needed. This differs from migration to the Gulf, where recruitment fees, contracts, passports and air travel create a higher threshold and often a more rigid migration spell. India can therefore function as a ‘low-entry-cost’ labour market for Nepali households and, in the eastern borderlands, Nepal can similarly absorb Indian workers in agriculture, construction, transport, petty trade and services. Circularity is not evidence that migration is marginal. Repetition can make absence a durable feature of household life even when no single trip is permanent.

101.5 Madhesh and north Bihar form a particularly dense field of everyday mobility

The cultural geography of Mithila crosses the international boundary. Maithili and related speech forms, shared ritual practices, marriage connections and religious centres such as Janakpur create a social infrastructure for movement that is qualitatively different from migration between culturally distant regions. Border towns such as Jayanagar, Raxaul and Jogbani are not simply gates through which migrants pass; they are employment and exchange centres in their own right. Bus stands, railheads, markets, clinics, schools, money changers, warehouses and transport services all convert mobility into local livelihoods. The borderland economy therefore includes migrants, commuters and the workers who make migration possible.

101.6 Marriage mobility cannot be separated from labour mobility

Cross-border marriage has long linked households in the Nepal Tarai and Bihar. Such marriages create visiting circuits, inheritance and care obligations, children’s educational choices, temporary residence and information channels for work. They also complicate the notion of a single ‘source’ and ‘destination’: a woman may move after marriage while brothers, cousins or sons circulate for employment in the opposite direction. Kinship can lower job-search costs because relatives provide lodging, introductions and emergency support, but dependence on kin can also reproduce unequal gender and generational power. For social history, marriage is therefore not a separate cultural topic appended to economic migration; it is one of the institutions through which labour circulation becomes possible.

Nepal-India circular migration: institutions and disruptions

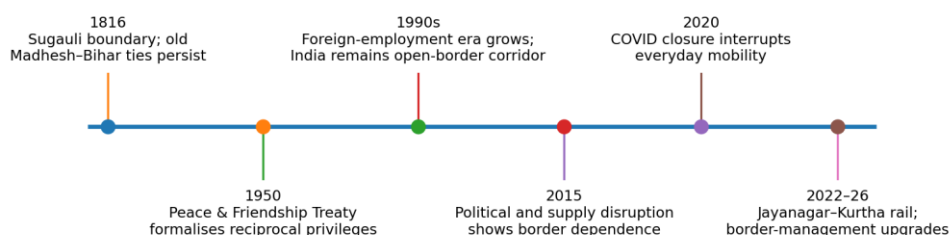


Figure 400 — Nepal–India circular migration has combined durable openness with periodic disruption and denser border management

101.7 Agricultural labour crosses the border in both directions

The image of Nepal–India migration as exclusively Nepalis going south obscures smaller but important reverse flows. Border agriculture creates seasonal demand for transplanting, harvesting, sugarcane work, livestock care and other tasks that can attract labour from nearby districts on the opposite side. Wage differences, harvest timing and local labour scarcity matter more than nationality alone. In some locations, Indian workers enter Nepal for agricultural or construction employment while Nepali workers use India as a larger and more diversified labour market. Circular migration is therefore best understood as a regional labour system whose dominant direction varies by occupation, season and locality.

101.8 Indian cities became extensions of borderland livelihood portfolios

For many Nepali migrants, India offered a hierarchy of destinations rather than one labour market. Nearby Bihar and Uttar Pradesh towns could provide construction, transport, hotel or service work; larger cities offered security work, domestic service, hospitality, factories, shops and informal vending. Routes learned through military recruitment, pilgrimage and trade later supported civilian migration. The low institutional barrier to entry allowed migrants to switch jobs and destinations more easily than in tied-contract systems, but it also meant that employment could remain informal, weakly documented and outside portable social protection. The advantage of flexibility was therefore paired with exposure to wage theft, unsafe housing, occupational injury and uncertain access to welfare.

101.9 The corridor is stratified by class, caste, gender and locality

Open borders do not create equal mobility. A household with land, education, relatives in a city and money for travel can use migration strategically, while a land-poor household may accept short-notice, low-paid work because it has few alternatives. Dalit and marginalised communities can be concentrated in physically demanding or insecure occupations; educated migrants may enter clerical, security, teaching, health or business roles. Men historically dominate many labour streams to India, but women's migration appears in marriage, domestic work, caregiving, trade and family relocation. The social meaning of mobility therefore depends on who moves, who remains, who controls earnings and which forms of work are publicly recognised.

101.10 Seasonal migration redistributes labour across two agricultural calendars

In agrarian households, departure is constrained by the source crop calendar. Workers can migrate when local demand is low and return for sowing, transplanting, harvesting, festivals or flood recovery. The border's low crossing cost makes this fine-grained timing possible. Circular migration may therefore support small farming rather than replace it: migrant earnings buy seed, fertiliser, food or irrigation while household members maintain land at home. But migration can also accelerate withdrawal from agriculture when returns are chronically low. The same repeated journey can preserve a farm in one generation and finance exit from farming in the next.

101.11 Daily and weekly commuting blur the boundary between migration and mobility

In densely settled border districts, movement may not involve a change of residence at all. Traders, transport workers, students, patients, shoppers, artisans and casual labourers can cross for a day or a few days and return home. Such mobility is economically significant but is easily missed by migration statistics built around usual residence. It also explains why sudden border restrictions have effects far beyond long-distance migrant workers. A closed crossing can disrupt medicine purchases, school attendance, hospital visits, retail supply, agricultural marketing and the earnings of rickshaw drivers, porters and shopkeepers within hours.

101.12 Health and education are major cross-border mobility systems

Border households often choose institutions pragmatically rather than nationally. A clinic, hospital, coaching centre, school or college across the border may be closer, cheaper, linguistically familiar or better connected than a domestic alternative. Indian cities such as Patna and border-adjacent Bihar towns have long drawn Nepali patients and students; Nepali towns likewise serve Indian border residents for particular services and commerce. Educational and medical journeys generate secondary markets in lodging, transport, pharmacies, food and remittance transfers. They also create long-term mobility: a student may become a worker, and a patient's accompanying relative may establish contacts later used for employment.

Circular migration is a household system, not a one-way move

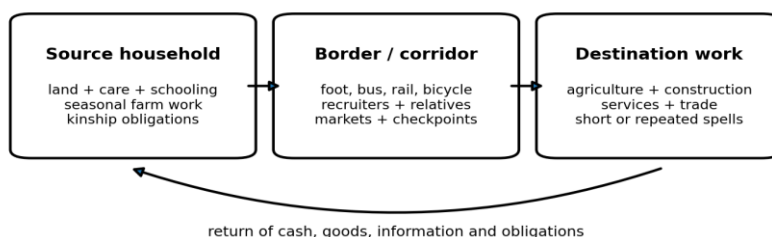


Figure 401 — Circular migration works through repeated exchanges among household, corridor and destination

101.13 Border towns convert circulation into urban growth

Raxaul–Birgunj, Jayanagar–Janakpur and Jogbani–Biratnagar illustrate different combinations of trade, transport, industry, pilgrimage and passenger movement. Their economies depend not only on customs-cleared cargo but also on the continuous presence of mobile people. Hotels, eateries, warehouses, vehicle repair, money exchange, freight handling, retail and real estate all grow around circulation. This gives border urbanisation a distinctive form: settlement expands because the town is simultaneously a market, a terminal, a checkpoint and a social meeting place. Chapter 106 examines urbanisation in greater detail; here the point is that migration and border-city growth are mutually reinforcing.

101.14 Jayanagar–Janakpur is both a cultural and a transport corridor

The Jayanagar–Janakpur route has unusually deep symbolic resonance because it joins the Indian and Nepali parts of Mithila and serves Janakpur's religious importance. The historic narrow-gauge railway and its later reconstruction into the modern cross-border passenger line made a familiar social corridor more legible as infrastructure. Passenger services on the Jayanagar–Kurtha section began in 2022, reducing dependence on road travel for many users and reconnecting settlements along the alignment. Rail does not replace open-

border foot and road mobility; it adds capacity and predictability to an existing movement system and can widen the radius within which daily or short-term circulation is practical.

101.15 Birgunj–Raxaul links migration to Nepal’s principal trade artery

The Birgunj–Raxaul corridor is dominated in public discussion by freight, customs and Nepal’s access to Indian ports, but the same infrastructure also shapes human mobility. Transport workers, loaders, customs intermediaries, traders, mechanics, hotel workers and informal vendors depend on the continuous movement of goods and people. The Integrated Check Post and the dry-port railway formalise cargo circulation while ordinary citizens continue to use the open border for personal movement. This juxtaposition—highly regulated goods alongside relatively free citizen mobility—is one of the defining institutional features of the Nepal–India border.

101.16 Biratnagar–Jogbani connects the eastern Madhesh to the Anga-facing labour market

Biratnagar’s industrial and commercial history gives the Jogbani crossing a different profile from pilgrimage-centred Janakpur or freight-dominant Birgunj. Factories, wholesale trade, education, transport and services have drawn labour from the surrounding Nepali districts and from nearby Indian areas, while the Indian rail and road network opens onward routes toward Purnia, Katihar, Bhagalpur and metropolitan destinations. The corridor demonstrates why ‘Nepal–India migration’ should not be imagined only as Kathmandu-to-Delhi movement. Eastern border circuits connect medium-sized towns and rural districts in dense, repeated patterns.

101.17 Remittances from India are often smaller, more frequent and less visible

Because migrants can return by road or rail and may carry cash or goods personally, transfers from India do not always pass through formal remittance companies. This can make the corridor look less important in financial statistics than destinations where wages are sent through banks or licensed remittance firms. For households, however, even modest repeated transfers can finance food, school fees, medical costs, ceremonies, debt repayment and farm inputs. Remittance history must therefore distinguish between national foreign-exchange accounting and the everyday household economy of circulation.

101.18 Migration reorganises care and authority within households

Repeated male absence can increase women’s responsibility for farming, budgeting, children’s schooling and elder care without necessarily giving them equal control over land or migration income. When women themselves migrate or relocate through marriage, care obligations can be redistributed across mothers, daughters-in-law, grandparents and siblings on both sides of the border. Mobile phones and digital transfers allow migrants to participate in decisions at a distance, but they do not remove the physical burden of everyday work. Circular migration therefore changes household governance even when the migrant repeatedly returns.

101.19 Identity remains layered rather than erased by movement

A circular migrant may simultaneously identify with a village, caste or community, the broader Mithila/Madhesh cultural region, and a Nepali or Indian citizenship. Work in India does not automatically produce assimilation, nor does an open border eliminate national distinction. Political crises can make citizenship suddenly salient through document checks, public rhetoric or access to state benefits. At other

moments, language, kinship and familiarity may matter more in daily interactions. The borderland is therefore not ‘borderless’; it is a place where different boundaries become more or less important depending on the institution encountered.

101.20 Security management and open mobility coexist uneasily

Both governments treat the open border as a valued people-to-people institution and as a space requiring security coordination. Border District Coordination Committees, security-force meetings, pillar maintenance and the India–Nepal Joint Working Group on Border Management attempt to manage crime, trafficking and infrastructure without converting the frontier into a conventional visa border. The 2025 Home Secretary-level talks and border-management meetings continued this dual approach. For migrants, the result is a frontier that can feel socially open but institutionally denser around major crossings, vehicles, cargo and sensitive periods.

An open border supports several mobility regimes at once

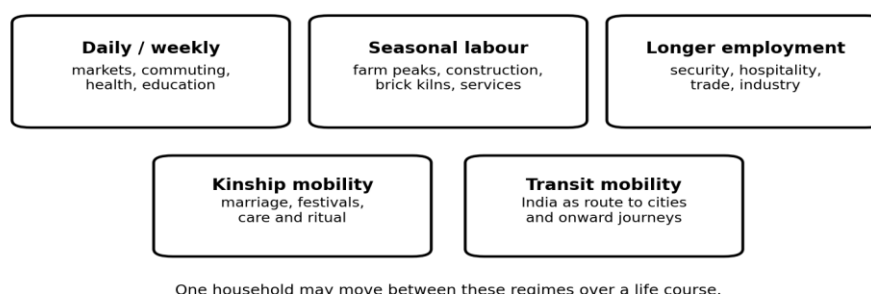


Figure 402 — The open border supports multiple mobility regimes rather than a single migration stream

101.21 Trafficking must be distinguished from ordinary migration

The openness that lowers the cost of voluntary movement can also be exploited by traffickers. Women, children and workers recruited through deception may cross along the same roads used by families, traders and commuters. Conflating all informal mobility with trafficking would criminalise ordinary border life, but ignoring coercion because the border is culturally familiar is equally dangerous. Effective protection requires attention to recruitment, consent, age, debt and destination conditions rather than nationality alone. Civil-society interception and referral systems at major crossings grew partly in response to this problem.

101.22 The 2015 crisis demonstrated how political disputes reach household economies

The disruptions at the India–Nepal border during the constitutional crisis of 2015 affected fuel, medicines, transport and commodity supply in Nepal and became a major political rupture in bilateral perceptions. Whatever the competing interpretations of responsibility, the episode demonstrated the material power of border infrastructure. When traffic slows at key crossings, the effects are transmitted rapidly to prices, transport employment, factory operations and household provisioning. For circular migrants, mobility depends not only on the formal right to cross but also on functioning roads, fuel, buses and a politically workable border regime.

101.23 COVID-19 temporarily transformed an open border into a hard barrier

The pandemic was the most dramatic interruption of ordinary cross-border mobility in recent decades. Border closures, quarantine rules and transport shutdowns stranded workers and forced governments to organise controlled crossings and returns. Migrants who had treated the frontier as routinely passable suddenly confronted queues, testing, documentation and uncertainty. The episode exposed how much household strategy rested on the assumption of reversibility: one could leave for work because one could normally come home. It also showed the public-health difficulty of governing a socially integrated border through emergency territorial controls.

101.24 The post-pandemic reopening restored circulation but not the old policy environment

After restrictions eased, mobility revived, yet border governance retained greater attention to health preparedness, identification, trafficking and security coordination. Infrastructure projects also accelerated the formalisation of major gateways through Integrated Check Posts, improved roads and railway links. This does not mean the border is closing. Rather, everyday citizen mobility is increasingly embedded within a thicker infrastructure of state presence. The coexistence of openness and institutionalisation is likely to define the next phase of the corridor.

101.25 Digital communication has reduced the social cost of circular absence

Cheap mobile calls, messaging applications and digital payments make it easier for migrants to maintain daily contact with households, compare wages, organise travel and send money. Information that once moved through returning migrants can now circulate instantly through village networks. This can weaken the monopoly of labour intermediaries, although digital exclusion and misinformation create new vulnerabilities. The effect is not to make place irrelevant: migrants still depend on physical lodging, transport and social trust. Digital connectivity instead makes a multi-local household easier to coordinate.

101.26 Circular migration can be a stepping stone to longer-distance migration

India can serve as a first destination where young workers learn to live away from home, acquire Hindi or occupational skills, save money and build confidence before considering the Gulf, Malaysia or other destinations. Conversely, workers returning from overseas may choose India for shorter or lower-cost employment spells when family needs require more frequent return. Migration systems therefore interact over the life course. Chapter 102 examines Gulf migration separately, but the two corridors should not be treated as mutually exclusive alternatives.

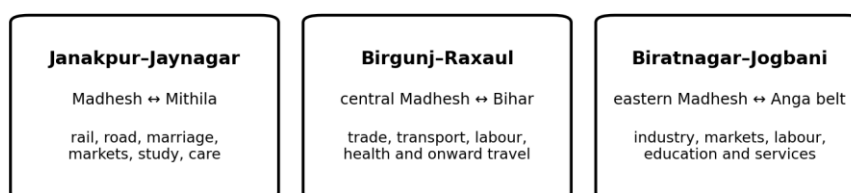
101.27 Regional inequality keeps the corridor economically relevant

As long as wages, job density, public services and market access differ sharply across nearby regions, open-border mobility will remain attractive. Development on one side does not automatically reduce migration; improved roads and education can initially increase it by lowering travel costs and raising aspirations. The key question is whether migrants gain enough bargaining power, skills and social protection to convert mobility into durable improvement. A corridor can simultaneously reduce short-term poverty and reproduce dependence on insecure work.

101.28 The three principal eastern corridors express different regional histories

Jayanagar–Janakpur is anchored strongly in Mithila kinship, pilgrimage and passenger mobility; Birgunj–Raxaul combines central Madhesh movement with Nepal’s major freight gateway; Biratnagar–Jogbani links an industrial-commercial city to the north-eastern Bihar and Anga-facing transport network. These differences matter for occupational structure, gender composition, daily commuting and the role of transport infrastructure. Smaller village crossings add another layer that is less visible statistically but essential to local livelihoods. The eastern borderland is therefore a network of corridors rather than one route.

Eastern Nepal–Bihar borderland: major everyday corridors



Smaller crossings and village paths make mobility more dispersed than these headline gateways suggest.

Figure 403 — Eastern Nepal–Bihar circulation is organised through several distinct border corridors

101.29 Better governance should preserve low-cost mobility while reducing vulnerability

The policy challenge is not simply to choose between an ‘open’ and ‘closed’ border. Workers need accessible identity documentation, wage protection, emergency assistance, safe transport, anti-trafficking safeguards and portability of entitlements without converting ordinary local movement into an expensive visa process. Bilateral coordination on border infrastructure, disaster response and security already provides institutional channels that could also improve migrant welfare. Better data are equally important: open-border migration should be measured through household surveys, time-use and corridor studies rather than inferred only from permits.

101.30 The Nepal–India corridor is a durable social institution of the Mithila–Madhesh world

The *longue durée* of cross-border movement reveals a form of migration that does not fit neatly into the categories of internal or international mobility. Sovereignty matters, but so do kinship, language, road distance and the possibility of repeated return. For households across Mithila, Madhesh and the Anga-facing eastern frontier, the open border has functioned as labour market, marriage field, service corridor and safety valve. Its historical significance lies precisely in this multiplicity. Circular migration is not a temporary residue awaiting permanent settlement; it is an adaptive institution that continually changes with infrastructure, state policy, labour demand and household strategy.

Table 101.1 — Major forms of Nepal–India circular mobility in the eastern borderland

Mobility form	Typical duration	Main institutions	Principal vulnerability
Daily/weekly commuting	hours to days	markets, schools, clinics, transport	sudden crossing restrictions; weak statistical visibility
Seasonal labour	weeks to	farm labour,	wage insecurity, housing,

Mobility form	Typical duration	Main institutions	Principal vulnerability
	months	construction, services, kin networks	injury, recruitment abuse
Longer employment in India	months to years with return	security, hospitality, trade, industry	informality and limited portable protection
Marriage/kinship circulation	life-course repeated visits	family, ritual, caregiving, inheritance	gendered dependence and documentation gaps
Study/health mobility	single visit to multi-year	schools, colleges, hospitals, coaching	costs, transport disruption, residence documentation
Trade/transport-linked work	daily to continuous	ICPs, dry ports, railheads, bazaars	policy shocks, congestion, border closures

Chapter 102 — Gulf Migration

Gulf migration extended the mobility repertoire of Mithila, Vajji and Anga beyond the internal corridors described in Chapters 97–101. From the oil-boom decades onward, employment in Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait, Oman and Bahrain offered a different combination of distance, earnings, risk and household strategy. The journey demanded passports, visas, contracts, recruitment payments and air travel rather than the railway ticket and village contact that often organised internal migration. Because the initial cost was higher and the legal distance greater, overseas work could generate larger cash remittances but also heavier debt, stronger dependence on intermediaries and sharper consequences when a contract failed.

The history must be written with care because official data illuminate only part of the corridor. India's emigration-clearance system records workers in categories that require clearance; it does not count every Indian employed in the Gulf. This distinction is crucial for Bihar. Ministry of External Affairs data show 89,127 emigration clearances for Bihar in 2025, the highest annual figure in the 2016–2025 series, but the number is not a census of all Bihari migrants abroad. District-level data likewise reveal striking differences inside the study region while capturing only the regulated ECR segment. The chapter therefore combines administrative evidence with a household-history approach and gives parallel attention to Nepal's much more remittance-dependent overseas labour system.

102.1 The oil boom opened a new labour frontier

The modern Gulf corridor grew out of the rapid expansion of oil revenues, construction and urban infrastructure from the 1970s. Gulf states required large numbers of workers faster than their citizen populations could supply them, and South Asia became one of the principal labour reservoirs. Early recruitment from India was strongest in states with maritime links and established overseas networks, but the market gradually reached inland districts through contractors, kin chains and recruiting agencies. For households in Bihar, the Gulf did not immediately replace Kolkata, Delhi, Punjab or other destinations. It entered a portfolio of possibilities. Workers compared expected wage, recruitment cost, duration, skill requirement and ability to return. The decisive historical change was that an agricultural or small-town household in the Ganga–Kosi–Gandak plains could now connect its income strategy to an oil-funded labour market thousands of kilometres away.

102.2 Internal migration provided much of the social infrastructure for overseas mobility

Many Gulf migrants did not begin their working lives with international migration. Prior spells in Delhi, Mumbai, Punjab, Haryana or Kolkata taught workers how to live away from home, navigate contractors, share rented accommodation, save cash and send money to families. These experiences reduced the psychological and practical distance of overseas work. Skilled trades could also be acquired through internal construction and industrial employment before being monetised abroad. The relationship operated in both directions: a Gulf returnee might later prefer Delhi or another Indian city when family obligations required frequent visits, while a younger relative could use an older migrant's knowledge to attempt an overseas contract. Gulf migration should therefore be understood as one layer in a wider mobility system, not as a self-contained departure from the region's earlier migration history.

102.3 Overseas work raised the entry cost of migration

A worker travelling within India can often leave with modest cash, a phone number and a train ticket. Gulf employment normally requires a passport, medical examination, visa, employment contract, insurance, transport and some form of recruitment or placement process. Even where official charges are regulated, households may incur expenses for travel, documentation, training, brokerage, informal commissions and periods without income before departure. The result is a different household calculation. Migration may begin with savings accumulated from earlier work, a loan from relatives, borrowing against crops or jewellery, or credit from a local lender. The first months abroad can therefore be devoted less to accumulation than to repayment. Higher entry cost helps explain both the attraction of repeat migration—because knowledge and networks reduce later costs—and the severe consequences of fraudulent recruitment or early job loss.

102.4 Recruitment chains connect village information to foreign employers

The Gulf labour market is mediated by a chain of institutions and people. At one end is the foreign employer or project; at the other is the worker's household. Between them may stand registered recruiting agents, sub-agents or informal brokers, medical centres, passport and documentation services, transport providers and relatives already abroad. The legal system recognises some of these actors and not others. Informal sub-agency can make recruitment accessible in remote villages because the intermediary speaks the local language and is socially known, but it can also blur responsibility when wages, occupation or destination differ from what was promised. Recruitment networks therefore combine trust and vulnerability. The same village chain that lowers search costs for a successful worker can reproduce misinformation if contracts are poorly understood or if labour demand changes suddenly.

102.5 The Emigration Act of 1983 created a protective regulatory architecture

India's Emigration Act, 1983 placed overseas contractual employment within a statutory system supervised by the Protector General of Emigrants and Protector of Emigrants offices. The central objective was not to prohibit mobility but to regulate recruitment and protect workers against exploitative terms, fraudulent agents and unsafe conditions. Recruitment for covered categories is supposed to proceed through registered agents, permitted foreign employers or approved channels, with documentary scrutiny and emigration clearance where required. For Bihar and Jharkhand, a Protector of Emigrants office in Patna became part of this institutional geography. The Act is historically significant because Gulf migration created risks that ordinary internal-migration law could not address: a worker could be outside Indian jurisdiction, dependent on a foreign employer and unable to return without substantial expense.

102.6 ECR and non-ECR status make official statistics selective

The emigration-clearance system does not enumerate every Indian who takes a Gulf job. Workers holding passports in the Emigration Check Required category and travelling for employment to notified countries require clearance; many educated, professional or otherwise exempt workers do not. Administrative totals therefore represent a regulated segment that is especially relevant to lower-skilled and vulnerable labour, not the whole diaspora. This selectivity is analytically useful if it is made explicit. A rise in ECR clearances can show growing regulated worker movement, but it cannot by itself measure total migration or the complete occupational composition of Indians in the Gulf. District comparisons must be read in the same way. The counts are strong evidence of recruitment geography among workers needing clearance, not a population register of everyone from a district employed overseas.

Gulf migration: expansion, regulation, shock and rebound

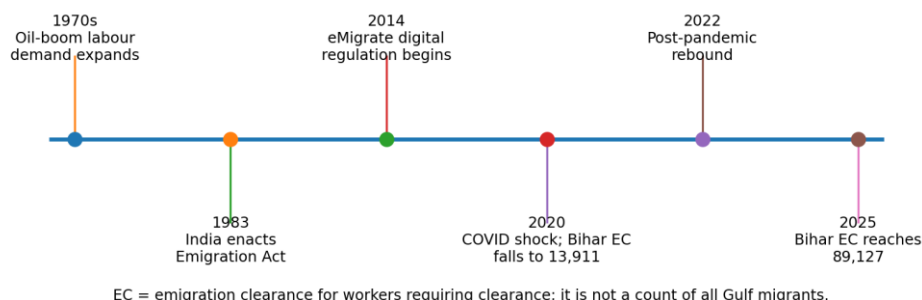


Figure 404 — Gulf migration expanded, became more regulated, suffered a pandemic shock and then rebounded

102.7 eMigrate shifted regulation from paper files toward a digital system

The introduction of the eMigrate system in the 2010s sought to integrate workers, recruiting agents, foreign employers, contracts, emigration clearance and grievance procedures on a digital platform. In principle, digitisation reduces the space for forged demand letters and invisible intermediaries by making registered actors and employment processes more traceable. It also creates a new administrative archive through which state and district patterns can be studied. Yet digital regulation does not eliminate informal recruitment. A worker may still encounter the formal system only after a village broker has organised the opportunity. Access to smartphones, literacy, language and confidence in official portals also varies. The historical transition is therefore from paper-centred oversight to a hybrid system in which digital verification coexists with face-to-face brokerage and household trust.

102.8 Bihar became one of India's principal ECR source states

The recent emigration-clearance series demonstrates Bihar's importance in the regulated overseas labour market. The state recorded 76,518 clearances in 2016, fell to 55,423 in 2019 and then collapsed to 13,911 in the pandemic year 2020. Recovery was rapid: 24,526 in 2021, 60,945 in 2022, 67,547 in 2023, 72,523 in 2024 and 89,127 in 2025. This trajectory should not be interpreted as the beginning of Gulf migration in the 2010s; rather, it measures the recent phase of a much older corridor. It does show that overseas recruitment rebounded strongly after the pandemic and that Bihar remains a major supplier of workers in categories requiring emigration clearance. The rebound also confirms that internal migration did not exhaust the region's demand for external employment.

102.9 The study region contains several different overseas-recruitment geographies

MEA district data for 2025 reveal strong variation within Mithila, Vajji and Anga. Madhubani recorded 4,693 clearances, Muzaffarpur 3,147, Darbhanga 3,066, Sitamarhi 2,503 and Purnia 2,309. Supaul recorded 1,404, while Samastipur and Vaishali were below 700; Bhagalpur and Banka were lower still in this ECR series. These differences do not map perfectly onto total migration, wealth or population because exempt passport holders are outside the count. They nevertheless show that Gulf recruitment networks are not evenly distributed. A district may develop self-reinforcing chains as returnees introduce relatives, agents learn where workers can be recruited, and households observe visible outcomes such as houses, schooling or debt repayment. Other districts may remain more oriented toward Indian metropolitan or agricultural destinations.

102.10 The Gulf is not one destination market

Saudi Arabia, the UAE, Qatar, Kuwait, Oman and Bahrain differ in sectoral demand, recruitment procedures, wages, housing markets and labour reforms. Workers from the same Bihar district may therefore enter very different employment regimes. National ECR data illustrate changing destination weights. In 2025 the UAE accounted for 200,686 clearances, Saudi Arabia 136,812, Kuwait 47,087, Oman 29,158, Qatar 21,907 and Bahrain 6,827. The UAE's rise in the clearance series is especially striking compared with earlier years when Saudi Arabia dominated. These national figures cannot be assigned directly to Mithila or Anga, but they show why 'Gulf migration' should not be written as a single Saudi-centred story. Household networks adapt as projects, visa systems and recruitment demand shift among destination states.

102.11 Construction created the classic mass-migration occupation

Large construction projects were among the most visible engines of South Asian labour demand: roads, airports, towers, industrial zones, housing and event infrastructure required masons, carpenters, electricians, plumbers, steel fixers, machine operators, helpers and supervisors. Construction suited migrant recruitment because projects could absorb large workforces for defined periods. For source households, however, project-based employment also created instability. A worker could experience intense overtime during one phase and uncertainty at contract renewal. Occupational hierarchy mattered greatly. A helper recruited without certified skills had less bargaining power than an electrician or experienced operator. Over time, therefore, the possibility of Gulf migration encouraged some households to invest in vocational skills, certificates and work experience in Indian cities before attempting an overseas contract.

102.12 Services, logistics and maintenance widened the occupational field

The Gulf labour market expanded beyond construction. Hotels, restaurants, cleaning companies, retail, transport, warehouses, security, facility management, workshops and building maintenance created a broad service economy dependent on foreign labour. This diversification matters for Mithila–Vajji–Anga because migration could continue even when one construction cycle weakened. Workers also moved between occupations over repeated contracts: a first job as a helper might be followed by driving, machine operation, storekeeping or supervisory work if skills, language and documentation improved. At the same time, service jobs could be highly segmented by nationality, employer and gender. The migration corridor therefore produced not a single 'Gulf worker' class but an occupational ladder whose rungs were shaped by education, practical skill, English or Arabic competence, social networks and the ability to finance job search.

102.13 Skill certification can convert mobility into a wage ladder

The economic return to Gulf migration depends strongly on the kind of labour a worker sells. Welding, electrical work, air-conditioning repair, plumbing, driving, fabrication, equipment operation and other certified trades can command higher wages than general labour. Yet skill is not simply an individual attribute. It is produced by institutions: ITIs, private training centres, apprenticeships, Indian urban labour markets and workplace learning abroad. Households capable of financing training before migration may therefore enter the corridor on better terms. Return migrants can also transmit skills informally to younger relatives. The long-term regional significance lies in this possibility of cumulative mobility: repeated migration can move a household from unskilled to semi-skilled work, from debt-financed departure to savings-financed departure, and eventually from wage labour toward small enterprise or contracting.

102.14 Contract duration makes return part of the system

Unlike permanent immigration regimes, much Gulf labour migration is structured through renewable or time-bounded employment contracts. The worker's legal right to remain is closely tied to employment, so settlement expectations differ from those of classic overseas diasporas. Families frequently remain in the source village or town, and workers return on leave or after contracts before deciding whether to migrate again. This produces a transnational household rather than a fully relocated family. The house, land, parents, spouse, children and rituals remain anchored in Bihar or Nepal while earnings are generated abroad. Circularity also creates a distinctive life course: several overseas spells may alternate with months at home, internal migration, unemployment, farming, construction work or attempts at self-employment. The migration history therefore belongs equally to the source household and the destination workplace.

The Gulf corridor is a recruitment-work-remittance-return circuit

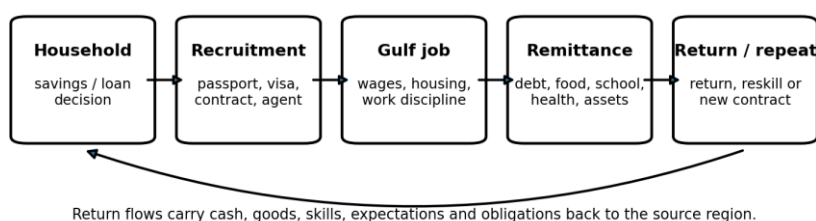


Figure 405 — Gulf migration operates as a recruitment, work, remittance and return circuit

102.15 Recruitment debt can turn a high-wage destination into a period of constrained choice

A nominal Gulf wage may look attractive when converted into rupees, but the first economic question is how much it cost to secure the job. Loans for recruitment, documents, medical tests, travel or informal commissions can absorb months of earnings. Debt changes bargaining power: a worker who must make repayments may tolerate poor conditions longer, avoid complaining, or accept overtime because return without savings would leave the household worse off. Conversely, a low-cost recruitment channel arranged through a trusted employer, relative or registered agent can dramatically improve the same wage's household value. Migration cost is therefore not a peripheral detail. It is one of the mechanisms through which inequality enters overseas labour. Families with savings and information can choose more carefully; poorer households may borrow at higher cost and carry greater risk.

102.16 Remittances first stabilise consumption before they create assets

The most visible products of Gulf earnings are sometimes concrete houses, motorcycles or land purchases, but household remittances usually perform more basic functions first. They buy food, meet medical expenses, finance school fees, repay migration debt, support elderly parents, fund marriages and smooth income during floods or crop failure. Only after these obligations are met can a household accumulate assets. This ordering matters historically. Migration should not be judged only by whether it creates a business. Consumption smoothing is itself a major economic effect in a region where local income can be seasonal and insecure. Remittances reduce the need for distress borrowing and can protect children's schooling when the household encounters a shock. The apparent 'consumption' of migration income may therefore contain substantial long-term investment in health, education and social reproduction.

102.17 Houses are financial, social and emotional records of migration

Across migrant-sending regions, house construction is one of the most durable signatures of overseas work. A pucca house can improve sanitation, storage, privacy and flood resilience while also signalling that migration produced a visible return. Construction often proceeds in stages as remittances arrive, so the building becomes a physical record of repeated contracts. Yet housing can also absorb capital that might otherwise support enterprise or savings. The decision cannot be reduced to economic irrationality. A house secures status, accommodates extended family, supports marriage negotiations and gives a worker abroad a tangible project linking sacrifice overseas to belonging at home. In Mithila and adjacent regions, where land and homestead carry deep social meaning, remittance-financed construction reinforces the paradox of migration: the worker travels farther away in order to invest more heavily in the home locality.

102.18 Education converts remittances into intergenerational mobility only when institutions work

Gulf earnings can finance private tuition, better schools, college fees, coaching, digital devices and migration-related training for the next generation. This creates a possible shift from manual overseas labour to salaried, technical or professional employment. But money alone does not guarantee mobility. School quality, language skills, caste and gender barriers, examination competition and the scarcity of local professional jobs continue to matter. Some children of migrants may themselves enter overseas work because the household now possesses migration knowledge and networks; others may use remittances to avoid the manual occupations of their parents. The Gulf corridor therefore can reproduce migration across generations or help end it. Which path dominates depends on how household resources interact with the educational and employment structures analysed in earlier chapters.

102.19 Male-dominated labour migration reorganises women's work and authority at home

Many lower- and semi-skilled Gulf streams from Bihar have been strongly male dominated. When men leave for long contracts, women may assume greater responsibility for budgeting, farming decisions, children's schooling, health care, elder care and dealings with local institutions. Yet increased responsibility does not automatically produce equal control over assets or remittances. Decisions may remain shared with absent husbands or senior male relatives, and the burden of unpaid care can increase. Communication technology has changed this arrangement by allowing daily contact, digital transfers and remote participation in household decisions. Gulf migration therefore modifies the gendered household economy described in Chapters 91–93: it can expand women's operational authority while simultaneously intensifying care work and the emotional labour of maintaining a family across distance.

102.20 Migration reshapes status but also creates new forms of comparison

Overseas employment can alter village status because foreign earnings, consumer goods and house construction are highly visible. A household previously dependent on seasonal farm labour may become a creditor, educate children privately or participate in ceremonies at a new level. But status competition can also raise expenditure. Migration-financed weddings, housing and consumption may establish new local expectations that other families attempt to match through borrowing or migration of their own. Successful migration thus creates both demonstration and pressure effects. Returnees may be admired for overseas experience but also judged by whether they brought back sufficient savings. The social meaning of migration is therefore relational: households compare outcomes with neighbours, relatives and earlier migrants, and

these comparisons help decide whether the next young worker sees the Gulf as opportunity, obligation or risk.

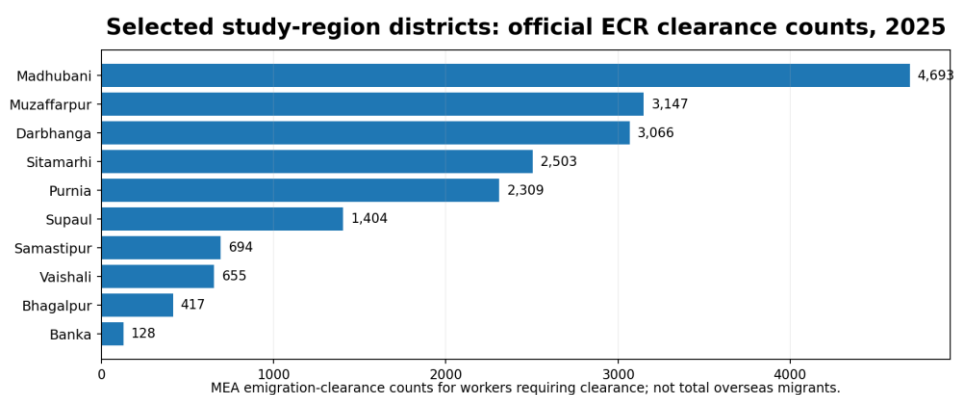


Figure 406 — Official 2025 ECR clearance counts vary sharply across selected study-region districts

102.21 The employment relationship concentrates risk at the destination

Once abroad, a worker's daily life is shaped by the employment contract, accommodation, transport, occupational safety, wage payment and access to complaint mechanisms. Destination-country labour reforms have changed important rules over time, but protections and enforcement remain uneven across countries, sectors and employers. Workers can face delayed wages, contract substitution, excessive hours, poor housing, injury or disputes over exit and transfer. The risk is magnified when a migrant has borrowed heavily or cannot understand the contract language. At the same time, millions of contracts are completed without crisis, which is why migration persists and networks deepen. A balanced history must hold both realities together: the Gulf corridor produces meaningful earnings for many households while placing workers in a legal and social environment where employer practices and regulatory enforcement strongly condition the value of migration.

102.22 India built insurance, missions and grievance channels around vulnerable migration

The protective system extends beyond emigration clearance. The Pravasi Bharatiya Bima Yojana, first introduced in 2003 and revised several times, provides mandatory insurance for covered emigrant workers; the 2017 scheme includes accidental death or permanent disability cover of Rs 10 lakh along with specified medical, repatriation, family and legal benefits. Indian missions and posts handle labour grievances, emergency assistance and repatriation, while eMigrate and worker-resource systems provide complaint and information channels. These institutions emerged because individual households cannot negotiate alone with foreign employers or legal systems. Their effectiveness depends on awareness, documentation and the willingness of workers to use formal channels. Protection therefore begins before departure: verifying the recruiter, reading the contract and keeping copies of documents can be as important as assistance after a dispute occurs.

102.23 Crisis years reveal how dependent the corridor is on aviation and state coordination

The 1990–91 Gulf crisis, later regional conflicts and the COVID-19 pandemic exposed the vulnerability of a labour system built on cross-border transport and employment-linked residence. The 2020 shock was especially visible in the Bihar clearance series, which fell to 13,911. Flights stopped, projects slowed, workers

lost jobs or became stranded, and governments faced large-scale repatriation and quarantine challenges. The subsequent rebound shows that the underlying wage and employment gap remained powerful. Crisis history also changes household behaviour. Returnees may keep larger emergency savings, diversify destinations or prefer employers with stronger reputations. Governments expand databases and evacuation planning. A migration corridor is therefore shaped not only by normal labour demand but by rare shocks that reveal which institutions can protect workers when the usual chain of employer, recruiter, airline and remittance channel breaks down.

102.24 Death, injury and repatriation make migration a family risk-management problem

The gravest costs of overseas work are borne when a worker dies, is permanently injured or becomes medically unfit. Families then confront not only grief but unpaid wages, documentation, insurance claims and the logistics of returning a body or an incapacitated worker. Mandatory insurance and mission certification were designed partly for this reason. Yet formal coverage works best when the employment and insurance record is valid and accessible. Irregular recruitment, missing contracts or undocumented payments can make claims harder. Household risk management therefore begins with paperwork that may appear bureaucratic at departure but becomes crucial in crisis. The possibility of catastrophic loss also explains why migrant households maintain dense communication networks abroad: co-workers and village contacts can become emergency representatives who inform families, reach an embassy or collect documents when a worker cannot act for himself.

102.25 Return is an economic transition, not the end of migration

A worker returning after several years faces a new problem: converting accumulated cash and experience into a livelihood that can survive without the foreign wage. Some purchase land, build houses, open shops, buy vehicles, invest in machinery or join contracting networks. Others find that savings are too small, local demand too weak or family expenses too high, and therefore seek another overseas contract. Skills acquired abroad may not be formally recognised at home, while wages for the same trade can be far lower. Return migration is thus a transition with several possible outcomes: settlement, entrepreneurship, internal migration, re-emigration or periods of unemployment. The repeated-contract pattern common to Gulf migration reflects this structural gap between what a worker can earn abroad and what local economies can absorb on return.

102.26 Repeat migration converts individual experience into a household migration asset

The second or third overseas trip is rarely identical to the first. A worker knows the airport, contract process, destination prices, employer practices and realistic wage levels. He may have contacts who can identify better jobs or bypass an unreliable broker. The household may no longer need high-cost borrowing because earlier remittances financed the next departure. Migration knowledge becomes a form of capital that can also be shared with brothers, cousins and neighbours. This cumulative mechanism explains why recruitment can become geographically clustered even when neighbouring districts face similar poverty. Once a village has several successful migrants, uncertainty falls and the local migration network thickens. Conversely, a cluster of failed or fraudulent contracts can temporarily damage a destination's reputation. Overseas migration geography is therefore path dependent: past outcomes shape future flows.

102.27 Mithila's Gulf corridor is strongest where dense village networks meet outward-migration traditions

The high clearance counts in Madhubani and Darbhanga fit a broader history of outward mobility from Mithila. Flood risk, fragmented holdings, limited local industry and long-established internal migration created households accustomed to spatially diversified income. Gulf migration added a higher-cost, potentially higher-return option. Sitamarhi and Supaul show that the corridor also penetrated border and flood-prone districts, although at different scales. The important historical point is not that Gulf work became universal. Rather, specific villages and kin networks developed repeated links to recruiters and destinations. A worker from a high-migration village could depart with far more practical information than a worker from a nearby village with no overseas chain. This uneven network geography helps explain why district totals differ and why migration often persists after the original economic trigger changes.

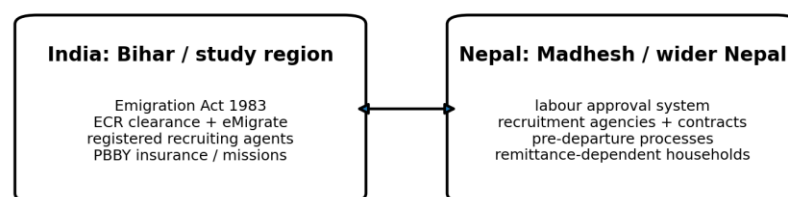
102.28 Vajji and Anga entered the Gulf system through different migration portfolios

Muzaffarpur's comparatively high 2025 clearance count shows that the Gulf corridor also became important in the Vajji zone, alongside Delhi, Punjab and other Indian destinations. Vaishali's lower ECR count warns against assuming a uniform regional pattern. In Anga, Bhagalpur and Banka show smaller clearance totals in the same administrative series, while Purnia and the wider north-eastern belt record larger flows. These differences reflect established destination traditions, occupational networks, transport, religious and kin connections, recruiter reach and the availability of alternative internal migration. Gulf migration therefore overlays rather than erases older regional specialisations. A district with a strong Kolkata or Delhi history can still send workers overseas, but the social density of that overseas chain may remain lower than in districts where returnees and recruiters have operated for decades.

102.29 Nepal's Madhesh connects the same cultural region to a much larger overseas-labour economy

Across the border, Nepal developed an overseas migration system of far greater macroeconomic weight. Labour approvals, recruiting agencies and pre-departure regulation structure movement to the Gulf and Malaysia, while remittances have become central to household consumption and the national balance of payments. World Bank reporting for 2026 notes that 77.3 percent of Nepali migrant workers were based in the Middle East and that Saudi Arabia, Qatar and the UAE alone generated a major share of remittance inflows. Madhesh participates in this national system while retaining intense everyday connections with Bihar. A household may therefore compare India's open-border labour market with the higher-cost but potentially higher-wage Gulf route. The two systems interact through skills, recruitment information, airports, banking and kinship rather than existing as separate worlds.

Two regulatory systems, one Gulf labour market



Common destinations: UAE, Saudi Arabia, Qatar, Kuwait, Oman and Bahrain — but the scale and household dependence differ.

Figure 407 — Bihar and Nepal reach overlapping Gulf labour markets through different regulatory systems

102.30 Gulf migration transformed the household economy without dissolving attachment to home

The deepest historical effect of Gulf migration lies in the way it stretched the household across national borders while keeping its social centre in Mithila, Vajji, Anga or Madhesh. Earnings were generated in distant labour markets but spent on food, education, health, housing, land, ceremonies and debt in the source region. Recruitment chains linked villages to foreign employers; digital transfers linked wages to household budgets; return migrants carried skills and expectations back; repeated migration converted experience into network capital. The corridor also exposed workers to debt, contract risk, injury and geopolitical shock. Gulf migration must therefore be understood neither as a simple success story nor as pure exploitation. It is a historically specific system through which households manage regional inequality by exporting labour while attempting to convert distant earnings into security and mobility at home.

Table 102.1 — The Gulf migration cycle: institutions, household decisions and recurrent risks

Stage	Household / worker task	Formal safeguard	Persistent risk
Job search	Compare wage, occupation and destination	Registered recruiting agent / verified employer	Informal broker, false promise
Pre-departure	Passport, visa, medical, contract, finance	eMigrate / clearance where required / insurance	High cost, debt, document misunderstanding
Employment	Work, save, communicate, remit	Contract, destination labour law, Indian mission	Wage delay, injury, poor housing, contract change
Remittance	Debt repayment, consumption, education, assets	Banks and regulated transfer channels	Household dependence, weak savings
Return	Recover, invest, reskill or seek new contract	Insurance / repatriation support in covered cases	Skill mismatch, savings depletion
Repeat migration	Use experience and networks to improve next move	Digital records and verified channels	Path dependence on brokers and destination demand

Chapter 103 — Remittances and Household Transformation

Migration changes a household only when earnings are converted into transfers, decisions and assets. A remittance is therefore more than money crossing distance. It is the mechanism by which labour performed in Kolkata, Delhi, Mumbai, Punjab, the Nepal–India corridor or the Gulf enters the food budget, school fees, medical treatment, debt ledger, house, field, marriage account and savings decisions of a household in Mithila, Vajji, Anga or Madhesh. The transfer can be monthly or irregular, formal or hand-carried, small or transformative. Its meaning depends on who sends it, who receives it, which obligation is paid first and what would have happened without it.

The evidence also demands caution. Bihar’s strongest nationally comparable household-remittance evidence still includes older NSS rounds, while village studies provide richer mechanisms but are not representative of an entire region. Nepal offers more recent nationally representative evidence through the Nepal Living Standards Survey 2022/23. These sources are not interchangeable. Used together, however, they show a common pattern: remittances often stabilise everyday consumption first, while education, health, debt repayment, housing, land, savings and small investment compete for the remainder. Household transformation is therefore incremental, uneven and deeply shaped by class, gender and migration cost.

103.1 Remittances turn individual mobility into a household economic institution

A migrant’s wage becomes historically significant at origin through the amount actually transferred and the claims organised around it. Households can treat migration as a portfolio strategy: one member earns elsewhere while others maintain land, children, elderly relatives and local social membership. Remittances allow this spatial division of labour to persist. They can smooth consumption in lean agricultural months, finance emergency care and reduce dependence on local moneylenders, but they can also become the income stream against which new debt or consumption is planned. The key unit of analysis is therefore not the migrant alone but the household balance sheet connecting destination earnings, transfer costs, origin expenditure and future obligations.

103.2 Gross earnings, remitted money and household gain are three different quantities

A worker may earn a high nominal wage yet remit little after recruitment debt, rent, food, transport, deductions or periods without work. Conversely, a worker with modest earnings can remit a large share when employer-provided housing and meals keep destination costs low. Household analysis should therefore separate gross earnings, disposable earnings, amount remitted and the real value received at origin. Exchange-rate movements and transfer fees matter for international migration; travel costs and cash-carrying risk matter for internal circulation. This distinction prevents a common error in migration history: treating destination wages as if they entered the origin household intact.

103.3 Internal and international remittances belong to the same household portfolio but have different rhythms

Transfers from Delhi or Punjab may be smaller and more frequent, hand-carried during return visits or sent digitally at low domestic cost. Gulf transfers can be larger but may be shaped by monthly payrolls, foreign-exchange conversion and international transfer systems. India–Nepal remittances occupy another

position because open-border mobility permits cash carrying and frequent return while formal cross-border channels have expanded. Households often combine these sources over a life course. A son may first work in Delhi, later migrate to the Gulf and eventually return to local self-employment. The history of remittances is therefore a history of changing channels and scales rather than a single overseas flow.

103.4 Older Bihar data show that remittances were already a major component of recipient household expenditure

Analysis of the NSS 64th Round for 2007–08 found that about one-fifth of Bihar households received remittances and that remittances accounted for roughly 42 per cent of expenditure among recipient households. These figures are historical benchmarks, not current estimates. Their significance lies in demonstrating that migration income was not a marginal supplement even before the major post-2010 expansion of digital payments and overseas recruitment. For many recipient households, a large share of everyday reproduction was already financed from outside the village economy. Later studies of rural Bihar similarly show remittances becoming an important share of migrant-household income.

103.5 Remittance dependence can be greatest among households with the least room for error

The same NSS-based analysis found that remittances constituted a larger share of total expenditure among the poorest recipient quintile than among middle and richer groups, even though richer households could receive larger absolute amounts. This distinction between amount and dependence is crucial. A small transfer can be transformative where local income is extremely low, while a much larger transfer may represent a smaller share of a wealthy household's budget. Poverty analysis should therefore ask both who receives remittances and how much the household depends on them. Migration can reduce immediate deprivation while leaving the household exposed to any interruption in the migrant's employment.

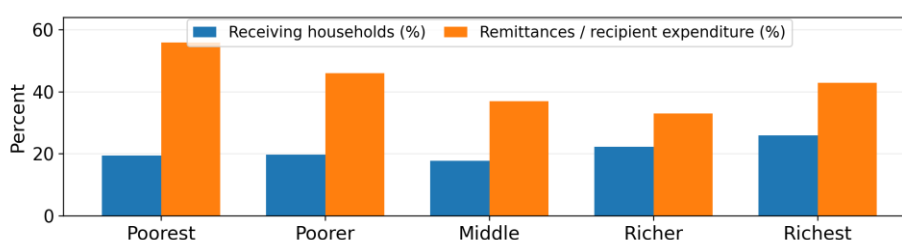


Figure 408 — Bihar, 2007–08: the reach and budget importance of remittances varied across consumption quintiles

103.6 Food and routine consumption are not ‘unproductive’ uses when migration functions as social protection

In Bihar's 2007–08 remittance evidence, food was the dominant first reported use. Such expenditure is sometimes contrasted unfavourably with business investment, but that framing misunderstands low-income household economics. Stabilising food consumption can prevent distress borrowing, asset sales, school withdrawal and undernutrition. It can also allow agricultural output or local wages to be used for other purposes. Consumption smoothing is therefore an investment in household survival and resilience even when it does not create a visible asset. The right policy question is not why poor households spend

remittances on food, but whether they gain enough surplus after essential consumption to expand future options.

103.7 Health expenditure converts remittances into protection against catastrophic shocks

Medical costs are often irregular and difficult to insure. Bihar household evidence identified health care as an important second and third use of remittances, while recent Nepal analysis links remittances from abroad with higher health spending and improved subjective adequacy. A migrant can therefore function as the household's emergency liquidity provider. This has a double effect: treatment that would otherwise be postponed becomes possible, but dependence on one earner can intensify if chronic illness raises recurring expenditure. Health gains should be measured not only through spending but through whether remittance income reduces distress borrowing, asset sales and interrupted care.

103.8 Education is one of the clearest pathways from migration income to intergenerational change

Remittances can finance school fees, uniforms, books, coaching, transport, digital devices and higher education away from the village. Bihar studies regularly identify education among major secondary uses, and Nepal's 2022/23 evidence shows a positive association between remittances from abroad and education expenditure. Yet the effect is not automatic. Migrant absence can also transfer supervision burdens to the remaining parent, and expensive private schooling can become a recurring obligation that makes continued migration necessary. The household may therefore use migration to escape one labour-market constraint while investing children in credentials intended to avoid the migrant's own occupation.

103.9 Housing is simultaneously shelter, flood adaptation, savings and visible social status

House construction and repair are conspicuous remittance uses across rural Bihar. In flood-prone areas, a stronger or raised house can be a practical adaptation rather than luxury consumption. Housing also stores savings in a form that is locally legible and can support marriage negotiations, rental activity or home-based enterprise. The social visibility of a remittance-built house creates demonstration effects: neighbours can see that migration produced a durable result. This can strengthen migration aspirations even when the underlying financial return is modest. The house is therefore both an asset and a public narrative about successful mobility.

103.10 Land purchase can deepen local rootedness rather than preparing permanent exit

Some migrant households use remittances to buy land, repay land debt or finance irrigation and inputs. Exploratory Mithilanchal research found land purchase among important uses of overseas remittances. This complicates the assumption that migration necessarily de-agrarianises the household. A migrant may work abroad precisely to protect or enlarge an agricultural base that cannot itself generate enough cash. At the same time, migration can reduce the household labour available for cultivation and increase reliance on hired workers. The result is a hybrid economy in which external wages finance the continued social value of land even as farming becomes less central to cash income.

103.11 Debt repayment is often the first investment because migration itself was debt-financed

Recruitment, travel, passports, medical examinations and job search can be financed through loans. In such cases, the first remittances do not represent free income; they retire liabilities created by the migration process. Nepal's recent survey evidence places loan repayment among the leading uses of remittances, and village studies in Bihar document expensive informal borrowing for overseas departure. High initial debt can delay improvements in food, education or housing and can reduce the migrant's ability to leave an exploitative job. Lower recruitment cost therefore raises the developmental value of the same wage by shortening the period before remittances become net household gain.

103.12 Durables change everyday labour and status even when they do not yield monetary returns

Fans, refrigerators, motorcycles, phones, pumps, televisions and other durable goods can be dismissed as consumption, yet they alter time use, mobility, communication and domestic comfort. A motorcycle can connect a household to schools, clinics and markets; a phone allows migrants to coordinate remittances and care; a pump can support agriculture. Durables can also become status goods whose purchase is driven by comparison with other migrant households. The analytical task is therefore to distinguish function, aspiration and competitive consumption rather than placing all durable expenditure in one category.

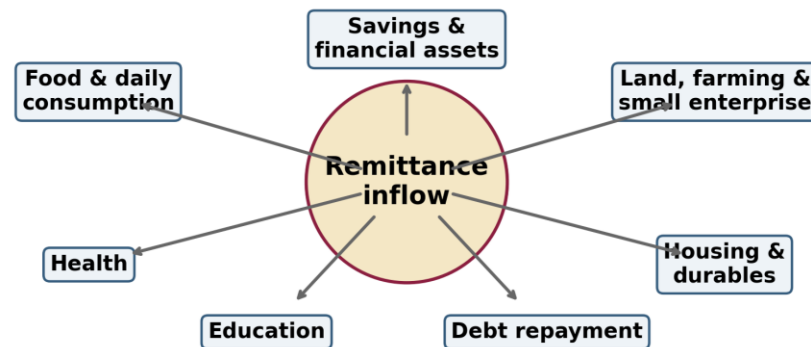


Figure 409 — One remittance inflow is allocated across competing household needs, liabilities and assets

103.13 Savings matter because they convert an uncertain wage stream into household autonomy

A household that can retain part of each remittance as savings gains the ability to absorb job loss, pay for return travel or finance a future opportunity without immediate borrowing. Formal bank accounts can also create a transaction history useful for credit and insurance. Yet low-income households may save indirectly through jewellery, livestock, grain, land or construction because these assets are familiar and locally accessible. Financial inclusion should therefore expand choice rather than assume that every productive saving must appear as a bank deposit. The deeper objective is to reduce the household's dependence on expensive emergency finance.

103.14 Transfer channels redistribute power inside the household

Cash carried home by the migrant, money sent to a father or brother, a transfer deposited into the wife's account and a payment made directly to a school create different control structures. The technology of

remittance is therefore socially consequential. Digital transfers can make money faster and safer, but account ownership, phone access and PIN control determine who can actually use it. A nominal recipient may still have little authority over major spending. Household studies must distinguish the person whose name receives the transfer from the person who decides its allocation.

103.15 Digitalisation has lowered transfer friction while making financial literacy more important

India's domestic payment infrastructure and the growing digitalisation of cross-border remittances reduce the time between wage payment and household receipt. Mobile banking can help migrants send small amounts according to immediate need rather than wait for a physical return. It can also create records that improve transparency. At the same time, fraud, mistaken transfers, shared phones and weak digital literacy create new risks. The history of remittances has therefore moved from envelopes, money orders and hand-carried cash toward an increasingly real-time financial relationship. This technological change supports the multi-local household because distance no longer implies delayed information or delayed money.

103.16 Women's increased financial responsibility does not automatically equal empowerment

Male outmigration can leave women managing food budgets, schooling, health care, agriculture and debt repayment. This practical authority may expand confidence and public interaction with banks or officials. Yet exploratory research in Mithilanchal found that remittances did not necessarily give women greater control over major financial decisions. In-laws, absent husbands and established property relations can constrain decision-making. The correct historical formulation is therefore conditional: migration can create new responsibilities and bargaining opportunities, but its gender effect depends on asset ownership, household structure, duration of absence, communication and local norms.

103.17 Migration can increase unpaid care even while raising cash income

When a working-age adult leaves, the labour previously supplied to children, elderly relatives, farming, errands and social obligations must be redistributed. Women, grandparents and older children often absorb that work. Remittances can purchase substitutes such as hired farm labour, transport, tutoring or private health care, but many forms of care cannot be fully bought. Household welfare can therefore improve financially while time poverty worsens for those who remain. A complete remittance history must place cash and unpaid labour on the same analytical page.

103.18 Children experience both investment gains and the costs of parental absence

Migration can finance better schooling, nutrition and health while reducing daily contact with a parent. Communication technology has narrowed this emotional distance but cannot eliminate it. Outcomes differ according to who migrates, who provides care, the child's age and the regularity of return. The household may become more education-oriented because remittances make fees affordable, yet adolescents may also be asked to take on farm work or sibling care. Treating every migrant household as either 'better off' or 'broken' erases this coexistence of material gain and relational strain.

103.19 Marriage expenditure links remittances to status, obligation and future debt

Migration income can finance weddings and marriage-related transfers that would otherwise require borrowing or asset sales. At the same time, the visible earnings of a migrant can reshape expectations about wedding scale and dowry. Research on rural Bihar has connected migration, consumption aspirations and marriage expenditure, reminding us that household transformation occurs inside local status systems. Remittances can therefore reduce one debt while generating a new obligation. Whether marriage spending is experienced as security, status or burden depends on gender, class and family strategy.

103.20 Remittances can change household composition by enabling members to live apart longer

Regular transfers make it possible for a household to function across several places without formally splitting. A migrant can remain a member of the origin household while spending most of the year elsewhere; students may join him in a city; elderly parents may remain in the village; a spouse may alternate between locations. This multi-locality challenges residence-based statistics. It also changes decisions about housing, schooling and care. Household transformation therefore includes the geography of membership, not only expenditure. A family can become more spatially dispersed while remaining economically more integrated.

103.21 Male outmigration reorganises agricultural labour rather than simply causing farm abandonment

When men migrate, women, older relatives and hired workers can take over cultivation tasks. Remittances may finance seed, fertiliser, machinery or wage labour, allowing the household to keep land under cultivation with less family labour. In some cases, land is leased out because the opportunity cost of supervision becomes too high. Studies of the Middle Ganga Plain show that remittance use in agriculture varies by landholding, migration type and household characteristics. The outcome is therefore not a simple shift from farming to non-farming but a reallocation of labour, capital and risk between the farm and external labour markets.

103.22 Migration can raise local wage pressure by removing workers from the village labour pool

Large-scale outmigration reduces the supply of labour available for local peak-season tasks. Employers may respond through higher wages, labour-saving machinery, altered crop choices or recruitment from poorer nearby areas. This is a general-equilibrium effect that reaches non-migrant households as well. The remittance economy is therefore not confined to recipients. It can change the bargaining position of workers who stay, even while migrant households use remittances to hire labour. Such effects vary sharply by season and locality and should be studied through village labour calendars rather than annual averages alone.

103.23 Remittance spending creates local demand multipliers even when it is not invested in a formal enterprise

House construction pays masons, carpenters and material suppliers; school spending supports transport, tutoring and private education; health spending supports pharmacies and clinics; consumption supports shops and transport. Part of the remittance therefore circulates through the local service economy. Leakage occurs when goods are imported from outside the region, but the first-round spending can still support

employment. This is why the simple division between ‘consumption’ and ‘productive investment’ is analytically weak. The more useful question is how much value, labour demand and capability a particular expenditure creates locally.

103.24 Migration networks can widen inequality even while remittances reduce poverty

Households with money for recruitment, education or travel and with relatives already established at destination can access better jobs at lower risk. Poorer households may enter through high-cost contractors and remit less after debt. Over time, successful migration can finance the next generation’s education or a second migrant, creating cumulative advantage. Yet remittances can also lift low-income households above acute poverty and provide insurance unavailable locally. Poverty reduction and inequality can therefore move in different directions. The distributional question is not whether remittances are ‘good’ or ‘bad’ but who can enter which migration corridor on what terms.

103.25 Remittances function as private insurance against floods, crop failure and sudden income loss

The study region is exposed to recurrent floods, crop variability and health shocks. A migrant earning in a labour market whose risks are not perfectly correlated with the village can diversify household income. This is one reason migration can be resilient even when the migrant’s wage is modest. The insurance is imperfect: a Gulf downturn, a pandemic or a metropolitan lockdown can strike many migrants simultaneously. Households with savings and multiple earners are better able to absorb such correlated shocks. Remittance-based resilience is therefore strongest when migration income complements rather than replaces all local livelihood sources.

103.26 Nepal demonstrates how a remittance economy can transform living standards at national scale

The Nepal Living Standards Survey 2022/23 shows the extraordinary reach of remittance income. About three-quarters of households received remittances, and the average amount per recipient household had risen dramatically in nominal terms since the first survey in 1995/96. World Bank analysis links remittances with poverty reduction, higher non-food consumption and greater spending on education and health. This national evidence is especially relevant to Madhesh, but provincial differences matter because destination patterns differ. Nepal shows both the power and the vulnerability of a development model in which household welfare is tightly connected to employment abroad.

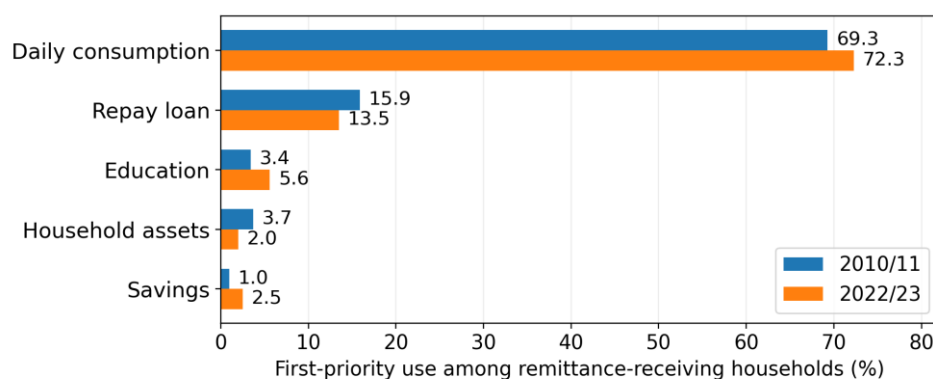


Figure 410 — Nepal: first-priority use of remittances remained consumption-led between 2010/11 and 2022/23

103.27 Madhesh illustrates why the destination of the migrant shapes the size of the transfer

Recent Nepal labour-migration analysis notes that Madhesh receives lower average remittance amounts than several other provinces, in part because a larger share of its migrants work in India rather than higher-wage destinations. This is a crucial borderland insight. Two households can both be classified as remittance-receiving while one receives frequent low-cost transfers from India and another receives larger but costlier Gulf remittances. Province-level household outcomes therefore depend on the destination portfolio, not merely the prevalence of migration. The open India–Nepal corridor and the Gulf system produce different remittance rhythms inside the same Madhesh economy.

103.28 A remittance-dependent economy can improve households without generating enough local jobs

Nepal's experience makes the paradox clear, and Bihar presents it at a different scale. Migration earnings can raise consumption, education and housing while local productive employment remains weak. If most new demand is met by imported or externally produced goods, the multiplier into local production is limited. If educated children must also migrate to realise their credentials, migration can reproduce itself across generations. Household development and regional structural transformation are therefore related but not identical. The existence of better houses and higher consumption does not prove that the local economy has created equivalent wage opportunities.

103.29 Policy should maximise household choice rather than prescribe a single 'productive' use of remittances

Governments cannot reasonably require poor households to invest transfers in businesses while essential food, health or debt needs remain unmet. Better policy lowers the costs around the remittance: safe recruitment, portable social protection, cheap transfer channels, accessible bank accounts, reliable insurance, financial counselling and credible opportunities for saving or enterprise. Public investment in roads, electricity, schools, health systems and local markets determines whether private remittances can become productive without extraordinary household risk. The developmental value of a rupee sent home depends partly on the institutions into which it arrives.

103.30 Remittances transform the household most durably when they expand future options

The strongest measure of remittance success is not a single house, purchase or annual transfer but whether the household becomes less vulnerable and more capable of choosing among livelihoods. Food security, debt reduction, education, health, savings and productive assets can widen that choice; high recruitment debt, care burdens and weak local employment can narrow it again. Across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh, remittances have become a central mechanism linking external labour markets to local social change. The next chapter turns from the household to the settlement system: how migration, remittance-funded construction, commuting and service growth reshape urbanisation itself.

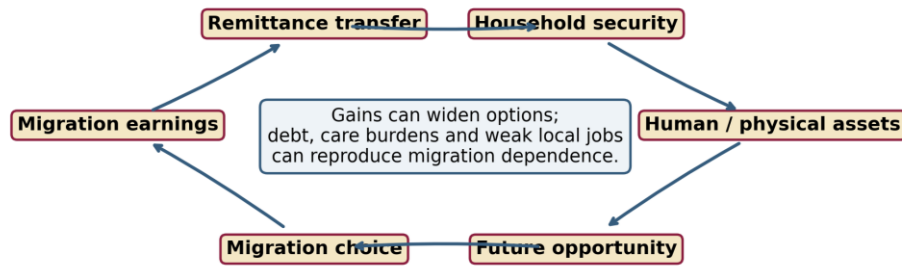


Figure 411 — Remittances can widen household options yet also reproduce migration dependence

Table 103.1 — Remittances transform several household domains at once

Domain	Potential household gain	Potential constraint or trade-off
Consumption	Food security and smoother spending across lean periods	Dependence rises if local income sources weaken
Health	Faster treatment and less distress asset sale	Chronic costs can absorb most transfers
Education	Schooling, coaching, devices and higher education	Recurring fees can make continued migration necessary
Debt & savings	Lower interest burden and greater emergency capacity	Recruitment debt can consume early remittances
Housing & land	Shelter, flood resilience, social security and asset formation	Can lock savings into illiquid assets or status competition
Gender & care	New financial responsibilities and possible bargaining space	Unpaid work and care burdens can intensify
Local economy	Demand for construction, services, shops and hired labour	Imports and weak local production can limit multipliers

Chapter 104 — Urbanisation

Urbanisation in Mithila, Vajji and Anga is not adequately described by the growth of a few municipal populations. It is a transformation of the settlement system: villages acquire markets, schools, clinics, banks, transport stands and non-farm employment; district headquarters extend into peri-urban fringes; railway and highway corridors generate ribbon development; remittance-funded houses alter land use; and people commute daily between places that remain administratively ‘rural’ and places legally designated ‘urban’. The historical question is therefore how functions, densities, infrastructures and social relations become urban, not simply how many persons reside inside a municipal boundary.

Measurement requires unusual caution in 2026. India’s last completed population census remains the 2011 Census; Census 2027 is under way in phases, but population enumeration for most of India is scheduled for February 2027. Accordingly, this chapter uses 2011 as the last nationally comparable Indian demographic baseline and treats later municipal notifications, infrastructure programmes and visible built-up expansion as evidence of institutional change rather than as substitutes for a new census urbanisation rate. Nepal provides a more recent 2021 census, but there too administrative municipality status and morphology-based urban classification produce very different pictures, especially in Madhesh.

104.1 Urbanisation is a change in the settlement system, not merely migration to a city

Urban growth can occur through natural increase, rural-to-urban migration, reclassification of settlements, expansion of municipal boundaries and the conversion of agricultural land at the urban edge. Conversely, many migrants from the study region move to Delhi, Kolkata or the Gulf without increasing the population of a local town. A regional history must therefore separate three processes: urban population growth, the spread of urban functions, and outward migration. Their interaction explains why a region can remain statistically weakly urbanised while its villages become deeply tied to urban labour, consumption, finance and communications.

104.2 Bihar’s measured urban share remained exceptionally low through the 2011 Census

Official state finance analysis based on Census 2011 records Bihar’s urban population at 11.76 million, or 11.29 per cent of the state population, compared with 31.16 per cent for India. The contrast matters because it shaped fiscal capacity, infrastructure provision and the scale of municipal institutions. Low urban share did not mean absence of towns; rather, a very large rural population surrounded a dispersed hierarchy of small and medium urban centres. Mithila, Vajji and Anga therefore developed through many service towns and district headquarters instead of a single overwhelmingly dominant metropolitan concentration within the region.

104.3 The legal definition of a town influences the historical record

The Census of India distinguishes statutory towns—places governed by a municipality, corporation, cantonment board or similar notified body—from census towns that meet demographic and occupational criteria without necessarily possessing urban government. In 2011 a census town required at least 5,000 inhabitants, density of at least 400 persons per square kilometre and at least 75 per cent of male main workers in non-agricultural pursuits. This distinction is crucial in Bihar because economic urbanisation can precede

administrative conversion. A settlement may function as a market-and-service centre while still being governed through rural institutions.

104.4 Bihar's urban population multiplied faster than its urban share

Between 1961 and 2011 Bihar's urban population rose from about 2.58 million to 11.76 million, while the share classified as urban increased much more slowly, from 7.41 to 11.29 per cent. The apparent paradox reflects rapid growth of the total population and the persistence of dense rural settlement. It also warns against reading percentage urbanisation as the sole indicator of transformation. Even a small increase in share can represent millions of additional urban residents, major expansion of built-up land and a much larger demand for water, drainage, roads, housing, education, health care and waste management.

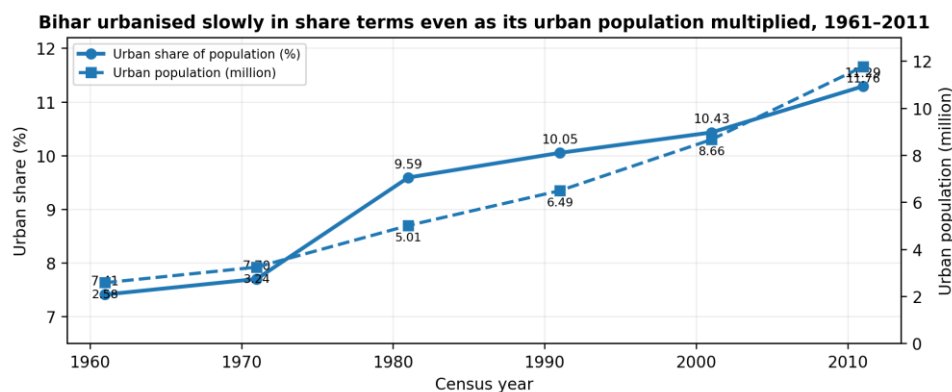


Figure 412 — Bihar's urban population expanded strongly from 1961 to 2011 while the urban share rose slowly

104.5 The regional pattern is polycentric rather than metropolitan

Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur and Purnia perform high-order administrative, educational, medical and commercial functions, but they coexist with a dense layer of smaller centres such as Madhubani, Sitamarhi, Saharsa, Katihar, Hajipur and numerous subdivisional or market towns. Across the Nepal border, Janakpurdham and other Madhesh municipalities form linked but institutionally separate nodes. Households often use several centres for different purposes: a nearby bazaar for daily trade, a district town for administration and hospital care, and a larger city for university education, specialised medicine or wholesale commerce. Urbanisation is therefore a network of overlapping catchments.

104.6 District headquarters became durable engines of town growth

Colonial and postcolonial administration concentrated courts, offices, schools, hospitals, police, record rooms and professional services in district headquarters. These functions created stable salaried demand that was less seasonal than agriculture. Around them grew legal practice, printing, lodging, transport, retail and private education. After independence, the expansion of state departments, colleges, banks and welfare administration deepened this effect. The resulting towns were not simply market settlements enlarged by population; they were administrative service economies whose influence extended far into rural hinterlands. This pattern remains especially visible in Darbhanga, Madhubani, Sitamarhi, Muzaffarpur, Purnia and Bhagalpur.

104.7 Railways created linear urban systems before highways did

Railway junctions and stations reorganised older market geographies by concentrating passengers, goods handling, warehouses, hotels and transport services. Junction towns could grow rapidly even where their

surrounding agricultural base was modest, while older centres bypassed by major routes might lose relative importance. In north Bihar, rail also connected flood-prone districts to Kolkata and later to metropolitan labour markets across India. In Anga, the eastern rail corridor strengthened connections among Bhagalpur, Katihar and Bengal. The railway station therefore became both an urban node and a migration institution, linking local settlement growth to distant labour markets.

104.8 Roads and motor transport widened the urban field beyond the railway station

Post-independence road expansion redistributed activity toward bus stands, highway crossings, petrol pumps, repair workshops, warehouses, private schools and roadside retail. Motorcycles and shared passenger vehicles allowed people to live farther from town centres while using urban services daily. This mobility encouraged ribbon development along arterial roads and blurred the old distinction between compact town and agricultural countryside. The new edge is often functionally urban before drainage, street design or municipal regulation catches up. Such corridor urbanisation is a defining feature of contemporary Mithila, Vajji and Anga because settlement density is already high and land parcels are fragmented.

104.9 Wholesale markets connect rural production to urban accumulation

Rice, maize, vegetables, fruit, fish, makhana, livestock products, textiles and construction materials move through networks of mandis, warehouses, traders and transporters. Urban centres accumulate value not only through factories but through aggregation, grading, credit, storage and distribution. This helps explain why a town can grow without a large formal industrial sector. Merchant capital, commission agents, transport firms and retail chains can generate considerable urban employment while remaining closely dependent on rural production. The boundary between ‘agrarian’ and ‘urban’ economy is therefore porous: the town often organises the circulation through which rural goods become market commodities.

104.10 Bhagalpur shows how an old production city can combine industry, trade and services

Bhagalpur’s silk tradition gives it a distinctive production identity within Anga, but the city’s historical role is broader: administration, higher education, wholesale trade, transport and specialised services reinforce manufacturing. Such diversification matters because single-sector urban narratives understate how households combine occupations. A weaving household may also depend on retail, education, transport or salaried work; traders may finance production; students and patients create demand unrelated to silk. The city’s resilience therefore lies in the interaction between inherited craft clusters and modern service functions rather than in the survival of one industry unchanged.

104.11 Darbhanga’s urban role rests on institutions as much as population

Darbhanga’s significance within Mithila is tied to a concentration of educational institutions, health care, administration, transport and cultural organisations. These functions draw daily and temporary populations well beyond those counted as usual residents. Students, patients, litigants, government employees, traders and visitors enlarge the city’s effective population and support rental housing, food services, pharmacies, coaching, transport and retail. This distinction between resident population and functional population is essential in regional urban history. A city’s influence is measured partly by the number of people who must use it even when they do not permanently migrate there.

104.12 Muzaffarpur links the Vajji zone to larger commodity and service circuits

Muzaffarpur occupies a strategic position between north Bihar's agrarian districts and the Patna–Ganga corridor. Its wholesale markets, transport, education, health services and administrative role create an urban economy whose catchment reaches well beyond municipal limits. The city also illustrates how regional centres become staging points in longer migration journeys. Workers and students may first move from village to Muzaffarpur, then onward to Patna, Delhi or elsewhere. Urbanisation and migration are thus sequential as well as simultaneous: the regional city can be both destination and transit node in a household's mobility history.

104.13 Smaller towns matter because they reduce the distance to urban services

A focus on the largest cities misses the everyday geography of schooling, banking, medicine, agricultural inputs, courts, government certificates and consumer markets. Small towns and expanding market settlements lower the time and cash cost of accessing these functions. Their importance is especially great for women, elderly people and low-income households whose mobility is more constrained. The historical spread of secondary schools, clinics, bank branches and block- or subdivision-level offices therefore urbanises social life even without dramatic skyline change. Polycentric development can be read as the multiplication of reachable service centres across a densely settled region.

The study region is better understood as a polycentric urban network than as one dominant metropolis

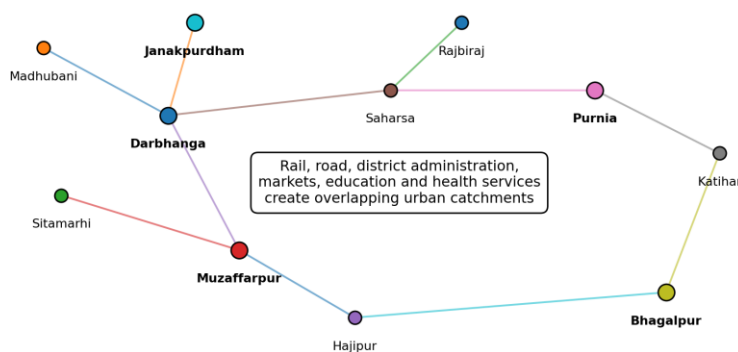


Figure 413 — A schematic polycentric network of major and secondary urban nodes across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and adjoining Madhesh

104.14 Census towns reveal economic change before municipal government catches up

When a formerly rural settlement crosses the census thresholds for population, density and non-agricultural male employment, it becomes statistically urban even if local governance remains rural. Such places expose a recurrent institutional lag. Shops, workshops, commuting and rental housing may increase before roads, drains, solid-waste systems or building regulation are designed for urban density. The lag matters for historical interpretation because administrative maps can understate the spread of urban livelihoods. It also produces governance problems: citizens may experience urban land prices and congestion while depending on institutions designed for village-scale settlement.

104.15 Municipal reclassification can create an abrupt statistical jump without an equally abrupt social change

The opposite problem occurs when government enlarges or upgrades municipalities. Large populations may become legally urban overnight even though settlement form, occupation and infrastructure change only gradually. Administrative urbanisation is politically important—it changes representation, taxation, planning powers and access to urban programmes—but it is not identical to morphological urbanisation. Comparisons over time must therefore ask whether growth reflects people moving, settlements densifying, boundaries changing or legal status being altered. Without that decomposition, a sudden rise in ‘urban population’ can be mistaken for a sudden transformation that actually unfolded over decades.

104.16 Peri-urbanisation converts agricultural land into a mixed economy

At town edges, land rarely changes directly from field to fully serviced urban block. Intermediate uses appear: brick kilns, warehouses, marriage halls, schools, clinics, workshops, transport yards, rental rooms and partially built housing colonies. Agriculture may continue between them. These mixed landscapes create new rents and employment but also raise land conflict, drainage obstruction and speculative holding. Households with roadside or edge land can gain windfall wealth; tenants and landless workers do not. Peri-urbanisation is therefore a class process as well as a spatial one, redistributing the value created by public roads and expanding markets.

104.17 Remittance-funded housing is one of the principal bridges between migration and urban form

Chapter 103 showed that migrant earnings are frequently converted into housing. When this occurs near roads, bazaars or district towns, private remittances become a force of urban expansion. Multi-storey houses, boundary walls, shops at the street edge and rental rooms increase built density even when the migrant works hundreds or thousands of kilometres away. The paradox is important: outmigration can produce local urbanisation. A household may lose a working-age resident yet add permanent built capital at origin. Settlement growth can therefore be financed by wages earned in Delhi, Punjab, Kolkata, the Gulf or Nepal–India circulation.

104.18 Rental housing creates an urban population that property records often fail to describe

Students, hospital attendants, small traders, construction workers, teachers, government staff and recent migrants often enter towns through rental rooms rather than ownership. Rental markets allow urban functions to expand without immediate household land purchase, but low-cost rentals can be crowded and poorly serviced. They also reshape neighbourhood social composition by bringing together people from different districts, castes and linguistic backgrounds. The growth of coaching, private education and health services has strengthened this temporary-resident economy. Urban history must therefore include tenants and circulators, not only property owners and permanent municipal households.

104.19 Education has become an urban industry as well as a public service

Colleges, universities, coaching centres, hostels, private schools and examination preparation generate large secondary economies. They support transport, food, photocopying, digital services, stationery, rent and part-time work. Families may keep a village home while maintaining a student room in town, creating multi-local household expenditure. This process is particularly important where public-sector employment and

competitive examinations carry high status. Education-driven urbanisation also reinforces migration: credentials obtained in Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur, Purnia or Patna may be used in labour markets far beyond Bihar or Nepal.

104.20 Health care produces powerful central-place effects

Specialised doctors, diagnostic laboratories, pharmacies and hospitals cluster because they require equipment, professional networks and a large patient base. Rural households therefore travel to towns for services unavailable locally, sometimes staying for days. The resulting health economy supports ambulances, hotels, food vendors, medicine wholesalers and rental accommodation. Medical centrality can expand even where industrial employment is limited. Yet unequal access persists: the cost of transport and private treatment can exclude poorer households. Urban service growth thus produces both wider availability and new forms of market dependence, linking health outcomes to mobility and household cash flow.

104.21 Informal employment is not residual to urbanisation; it is one of its main operating systems

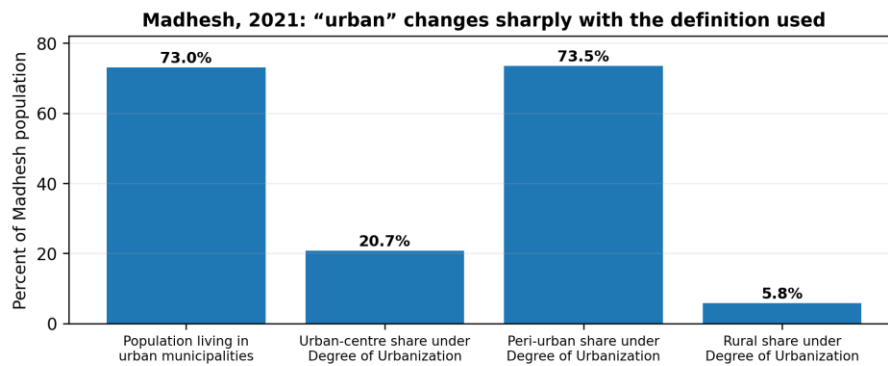
Street vending, rickshaws, e-rickshaws, repair, construction, domestic work, loading, small workshops, food stalls and home-based production absorb large numbers of workers. These activities provide low-entry employment but often lack secure contracts, social protection or stable workspace. Their spatial needs—pavements, curb space, market edges, transport stands—frequently conflict with formal traffic and beautification projects. The next chapter examines informal economies directly; here the key point is structural. A city cannot be understood only through registered firms and government offices when much of its daily circulation depends on informal labour.

104.22 Urban land converts public investment into private gains unevenly

A new road, bridge, station, university or hospital can sharply raise nearby land values. Owners capture part of this increase through sale, subdivision, rent or commercial conversion, while non-owners face higher housing costs. This mechanism helps create new urban elites whose wealth is tied less to agricultural productivity than to location. In former rural fringes, the same family may shift from farming to real-estate brokerage, transport or construction. Urbanisation therefore changes class formation: land remains important, but its value increasingly derives from anticipated non-agricultural use and infrastructure connectivity.

104.23 Madhesh demonstrates why administrative ‘urban’ population cannot be read as built-up city population

Nepal’s 2021 Madhesh census report states that about 73 per cent of the provincial population lived in urban municipalities. Yet the national thematic report using the Degree of Urbanization method classifies only 20.7 per cent of Madhesh residents in urban centres, 73.5 per cent in peri-urban clusters and 5.8 per cent in rural areas. These figures are not contradictory; they use different units and questions. The contrast is analytically valuable because large municipalities can contain extensive rural or semi-rural settlement. Madhesh is therefore highly municipalised administratively while much of its population remains peri-urban in settlement form.



The two classifications answer different questions: municipal status is administrative; Degree of Urbanization is settlement-form based.

Figure 414 — Madhesh, 2021: administrative municipal status and settlement-form urbanisation produce very different readings

104.24 Janakpurdham’s growth combines pilgrimage, administration, education and border connectivity

Janakpurdham is not only a provincial and municipal centre but a major religious destination whose visitor economy supports hotels, transport, retail and ritual services. Its urban role also reflects administration, education, health care and connection with the India–Nepal borderland. Nepal’s 2021 census recorded 194,556 people in Janakpurdham Sub-Metropolitan City, up from 162,172 in 2011. The city shows how cultural centrality and modern service functions can reinforce one another. Pilgrimage does not stand outside the urban economy; it helps finance transport, hospitality, commerce and public-space investment.

104.25 The open India–Nepal border produces transnational urban catchments

Residents of Madhesh and adjoining Bihar cross the border for trade, kinship, education, health care, pilgrimage and onward transport. This creates functional urban regions that do not align neatly with national administrative boundaries. A household may use a Nepali municipality for one service and an Indian town for another, depending on distance, price, documentation and transport. Border markets therefore operate as paired or overlapping central places. The historical region remains economically connected even while planning, taxation, currency and municipal law are divided between two states. Urbanisation must be analysed at both national and cross-border scales.

104.26 Flood risk shapes urban form across the north Bihar plain

Urban expansion on a flood-prone alluvial plain must negotiate embankments, drainage channels, raised roads, waterlogging and seasonal river behaviour. Filling low-lying land can protect an individual plot while displacing water onto neighbouring areas. Roads and unplanned construction can interrupt historic drainage routes. Flood resilience is consequently a collective urban-infrastructure problem, not merely a household adaptation. Remittance-funded raised houses may reduce private vulnerability, but without drainage planning they cannot solve neighbourhood-scale waterlogging. The urban history of Mithila and Vajji is inseparable from hydrology because the conversion of open land changes how water moves.

104.27 Water, drainage and waste reveal the infrastructure gap created by rapid edge growth

Population density can increase faster than piped water, sewerage, drains and solid-waste collection. Wells and septic systems that functioned at village density become problematic when plots are subdivided and roads are paved. Open drains may carry both storm water and wastewater; garbage accumulates where collection boundaries lag behind settlement expansion. These are not merely technical failures but symptoms of institutional transition. A place becomes urban in daily density and consumption before governance acquires adequate revenue, staff and engineering systems. The resulting infrastructure deficit is one of the central costs of dispersed, incremental urbanisation.

104.28 Digital connectivity allows urban functions to spread without complete spatial concentration

Mobile phones, digital payments, online forms, e-commerce and platform work reduce the need to travel for some transactions while increasing the importance of connectivity and delivery networks. Rural residents can access banking, government services or retail platforms from villages, yet physical towns remain necessary for hospitals, higher education, courts, warehousing and specialised labour. Digitalisation therefore does not abolish urban hierarchy; it reorganises it. Some functions decentralise to phones and local agents, while others concentrate further in regional centres. The urban–rural relationship becomes more networked rather than disappearing.

104.29 Planning should recognise functional regions rather than stop at municipal borders

Commuting, drainage basins, transport routes, waste flows and land markets routinely cross municipal boundaries. A road improvement in one jurisdiction may trigger construction in another; a town's workers may live in surrounding panchayats; floodwater does not respect ward limits. Effective planning therefore requires metropolitan or regional coordination even where no formal metropolitan authority exists. For the study region, polycentric planning would connect large and small towns with their rural catchments rather than assuming that all development should be concentrated in a few cities. The objective is not maximal urbanisation but accessible services, safe infrastructure and productive local networks.

104.30 Urbanisation is the spatial expression of the wider social transformation traced in PART XI

Migration, remittances and urbanisation form a single historical system. Workers leave villages because local labour markets are limited; earnings return as consumption and construction; roads and services expand; land converts; commuting increases; small towns grow; and new educational or commercial opportunities generate further mobility. This cycle explains why urban change can advance even when permanent rural-to-city migration is modest. Across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh, the most important transformation is the thickening of connections among settlements. Chapter 105 turns to the labour and commerce that keep this network functioning: informal economies and street commerce.

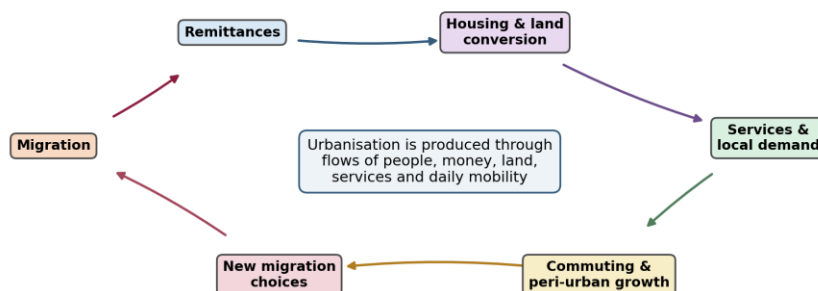
Migration and remittances can urbanise rural space without requiring permanent city migration

Figure 415 — Migration and remittances feed back into housing, services, peri-urban growth and future mobility

Table 104.1 — Urbanisation is produced by several distinct but interacting processes

Process	What changes on the ground	Why the distinction matters
Population growth	More residents within an existing town	Can occur without boundary change or major migration
Reclassification	A village becomes a census/statutory town or municipality expands	Can create a statistical jump without sudden morphological change
Peri-urbanisation	Mixed housing, commerce, institutions and agriculture spread at the edge	Creates land, drainage and governance conflicts before full urban servicing
Functional urbanisation	Villagers commute to urban jobs and services	Urban influence exceeds municipal population and boundaries
Migration/remittance urbanisation	External earnings finance houses, shops, land conversion and services	Outmigration can produce more built-up development at origin
Corridor urbanisation	Road/rail nodes attract warehouses, repair, retail and housing	Produces linear or polycentric growth rather than one compact city

Chapter 105 — Informal Economies and Street Commerce

The streets, station approaches, haats, bus stands, hospital gates, school corridors, neighbourhood crossings and peri-urban roads of Mithila, Vajji and Anga sustain a dense economy that conventional city histories often understate. Street vending is only its most visible layer. The wider informal economy includes own-account retail, food preparation, repair, transport services, loading, recycling, home-based production, petty contracting, domestic services and tiny workshops whose transactions may be legal and socially indispensable even when the enterprise is unincorporated, weakly registered or outside standard employment protections. Informality therefore describes an institutional condition, not a moral category.

This chapter follows the historical movement from periodic markets and mobile petty trade to contemporary urban and peri-urban commerce. It treats public space, credit, transport, migration, household labour and municipal regulation as parts of one system. Current statistics are used cautiously: a self-employed worker is not necessarily a street vendor, an unincorporated enterprise is not necessarily unregistered, and informal employment can exist inside a formally registered enterprise. These distinctions are essential if the region's everyday economy is to be reconstructed without collapsing different forms of work into a single residual category.

105.1 Informality is an institutional relationship, not a synonym for illegality

An enterprise may be lawful yet small, unincorporated, family-run and only partly registered; a worker may hold an informal job inside a formal establishment; and a street vendor may possess a certificate while still lacking stable social protection. Conversely, an activity can violate a specific zoning, licensing or traffic rule without making the worker's livelihood intrinsically criminal. Historical analysis should therefore separate legal status, registration, employment protection, tax treatment, premises and access to public space. The category "informal" is useful only when the institutional dimension being described is made explicit.

105.2 Periodic haats form the deep historical infrastructure beneath modern street commerce

Before permanent retail streets became dense, periodic haats coordinated exchange among cultivators, craft producers, livestock sellers, fishers, itinerant traders and consumers. Their periodicity reduced the cost of maintaining a permanent shop while concentrating demand on known days. Many present market corridors preserve this logic even when the settlement is legally urban: weekly peaks, festival surges and agricultural seasons continue to shape trading hours and product mixes. The historical continuity lies less in an unchanged marketplace than in the recurring institutional solution of assembling dispersed producers and buyers at predictable nodes.

105.3 Street commerce converts footfall into a productive asset

For a small vendor the decisive input is often not a building but access to moving people. Railway stations, bus stands, schools, hospitals, courts, temples, administrative offices and wholesale markets generate predictable flows of passengers, attendants and workers. A tea stall or fruit cart locates itself where this demand becomes dense enough to support rapid turnover. This helps explain repeated conflict over pavements and station approaches: the same space simultaneously serves movement, safety, drainage, access

and livelihood. Urban design that recognises only circulation misses the economic value created by proximity to footfall.

105.4 Low fixed costs make petty trade an entry point for migrants and households with little capital

A permanent shop requires rent, deposit, fittings, inventory and often documentation. A mobile cart, basket, mat, temporary stall or shared counter can begin with far less capital and can adapt location and stock to changing demand. Such flexibility is especially important for recent migrants, women combining paid work with household responsibilities, older workers, and families recovering from crop loss or debt. Entry is easier, however, than accumulation. Low barriers also create intense competition, narrow margins and frequent business turnover, so livelihood security cannot be inferred merely from the ability to start trading.

105.5 The informal urban economy is a network connecting production, transport, vending and consumption

A vegetable vendor depends on cultivators, aggregators, wholesale markets, transporters, storage, credit and waste disposal; a street-food seller depends on grain, fuel, utensils, water and daily provisioning; a repair worker depends on spare-part networks and customer mobility. The visible point of sale is therefore the final node of a longer value chain. Some links are formal and others informal, and a single commodity can move repeatedly across that boundary. Analysing the network rather than the vendor alone shows why transport disruption, wholesale prices, floods, policing or digital payment systems can alter earnings far from the place where the final transaction occurs.

Urban informal commerce is a network, not a single occupation

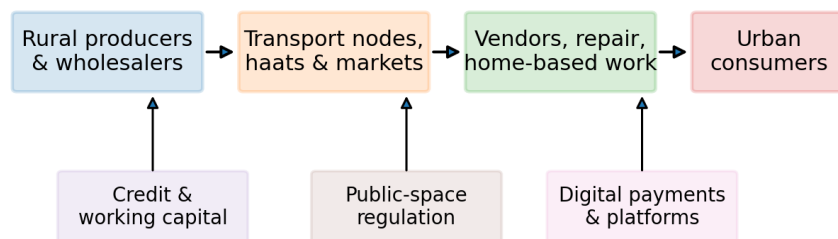


Figure 416 — Urban informal commerce links producers, transport nodes, vendors, consumers, credit, regulation and digital systems

105.6 Fresh food vending shortens the distance between wholesale supply and household consumption

Vegetables, fruit, fish, milk products and prepared food are time-sensitive commodities. Street and neighbourhood vendors provide frequent small-quantity purchasing close to homes and workplaces, reducing the need for consumers to travel to a central market. In the flood-prone and transport-variable environments of north Bihar and the Nepal Tarai, this distributed retail system also adjusts quickly to supply shocks. Yet perishability exposes vendors to losses when rain, heat, traffic restriction or sudden eviction interrupts sales. The same flexibility that makes fresh-food vending efficient also transfers much of the risk to the smallest trader.

105.7 Informal transport services are both livelihoods and market-making infrastructure

Cycle-rickshaws, e-rickshaws, shared autos, handcarts, loaders and small goods vehicles connect residential lanes, villages, stations, markets and hospitals. Their economic role exceeds passenger movement: they enlarge the catchment of small shops, enable workers to commute, carry market purchases and permit vendors to replenish stock in small batches. Informal transport is therefore complementary to commerce. Regulation focused solely on congestion can miss this productive function, while completely unmanaged stopping and parking can impose serious costs on pedestrians and public transport. The historical problem is coordination, not simply elimination.

105.8 Repair and maintenance economies extend the life of household assets

Cobbling, tailoring, bicycle repair, mobile-phone repair, electrical work, welding, utensil repair and small mechanical services convert skill and proximity into income with limited premises. In lower-income households, repair competes economically with replacement and can keep bicycles, fans, pumps, phones and clothing in use for years. These occupations also demonstrate why informality cannot be reduced to retail. Much of the street economy sells labour, knowledge and rapid response rather than goods. As consumer durables spread, new repair specialisations emerge, even while mass-produced low-cost goods can undermine older crafts.

105.9 Home-based work blurs the boundary between household and enterprise

Food processing, stitching, embroidery, packaging, incense preparation, small-scale craft production and other activities can be organised from rooms or courtyards that also serve domestic functions. The household thereby saves rent but absorbs business risks into residential life. Women's labour is especially liable to become statistically invisible when production is combined with cooking, care or unpaid family work. Home-based work may feed street retail through subcontractors or family members who sell outside. The production site and selling site are thus often different nodes of one household enterprise.

105.10 Caste and inherited occupation matter historically, but the contemporary economy cannot be mapped mechanically onto caste

Many service and craft occupations have histories of hereditary transmission, social ranking and community specialisation. Yet migration, education, technological change, commodity markets and new forms of self-employment continually reorganise who performs particular work. A modern vending cluster may contain members of many castes and religions, while a historically specialised occupation may survive through wage labour or entrepreneurship outside the originating community. The appropriate method is to document particular occupational histories and barriers rather than assume a timeless one-to-one correspondence between caste name and economic function.

105.11 Gender shapes location, hours, commodity choice and exposure to risk

Women's informal work is often selected around care responsibilities, norms of mobility, access to capital and safety. Home-based production, food vending and neighbourhood retail may allow work close to the household, but proximity can also limit access to higher-footfall sites and longer trading hours. Lack of toilets, lighting, childcare and secure storage imposes gendered costs in public markets. Women may additionally appear as unpaid helpers in family enterprises even when their labour is essential to

procurement, preparation, accounts or sales. Gender analysis must therefore measure control over income as well as participation.

105.12 Bihar's urban labour market shows why self-employment is central to the regional urban economy

The Periodic Labour Force Survey 2023–24 reported that 53.3 per cent of urban male workers in Bihar in usual status were self-employed, compared with 29.1 per cent in regular wage or salaried work and 17.6 per cent in casual labour. These figures do not measure street vendors; self-employment includes a much wider range of occupations and enterprises. Their value is contextual. They show that urbanisation in Bihar cannot be narrated as a transition from agriculture directly into stable salaried employment. Own-account work and household enterprise remain central mechanisms through which urban livelihoods are organised.

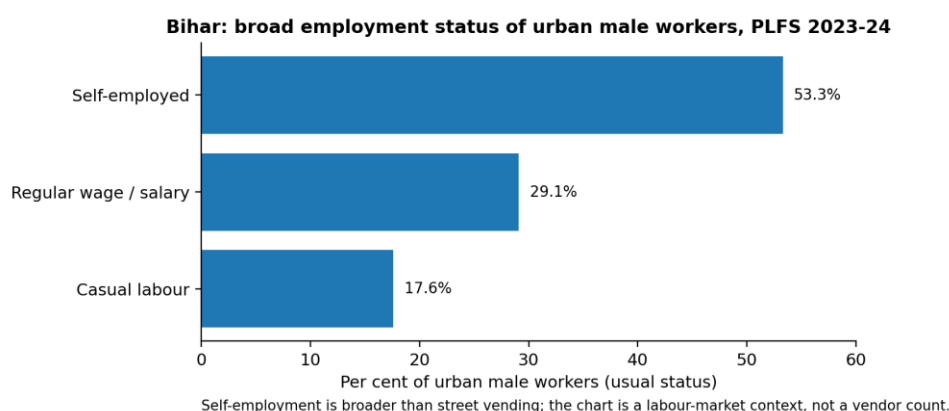


Figure 417 — Bihar, PLFS 2023–24: self-employment accounted for more than half of urban male workers in usual status

105.13 The unincorporated sector is large enough to be a structural component of India's economy

The Annual Survey of Unincorporated Sector Enterprises 2025 estimated 7.92 crore unincorporated non-agricultural establishments and 12.81 crore workers across manufacturing, trade and other services in India. Trade alone accounted for about 2.42 crore establishments. National figures cannot be transferred mechanically to Mithila, Vajji and Anga, but they establish the scale of the institutional world within which the region's petty commerce operates. Small unincorporated establishments are not statistical noise around a formal core; they are a major form of production, trade and service organisation.

105.14 Working capital turns over quickly, making access to small loans disproportionately important

A petty trader may buy stock in the morning and repay a wholesaler or lender after the day's sales. The absolute amount of capital can be small while its daily availability is decisive. Without savings or bank credit, vendors historically rely on wholesalers, relatives, rotating savings, moneylenders or advance arrangements that can embed costly dependency. Formal microcredit can lower financing costs, but repayment schedules that ignore seasonality or weather shocks may create new stress. The relevant question is therefore not only whether credit exists, but whether its timing, transaction cost and flexibility fit the cash cycle of the enterprise.

105.15 The Street Vendors Act 2014 recast vending as a livelihood that must be regulated through representation and survey

India's Street Vendors (Protection of Livelihood and Regulation of Street Vending) Act, 2014 created a framework in which identification, Certificates of Vending, Town Vending Committees and vending plans are central instruments. The law does not abolish regulation; it seeks to combine livelihood protection with management of public space. Surveys are meant to prevent arbitrary exclusion by making the vendor population legible to urban government. Implementation nevertheless depends on state rules, local surveys, committee functioning and the actual design of vending zones. A protective statute can therefore coexist with uneven everyday security.

105.16 Public-space regulation produces conflict because different legitimate uses overlap

A pavement is simultaneously a pedestrian route, an access strip for shops and residences, a location for utility infrastructure and, in many places, a market. Roads must carry traffic but station forecourts and bus stands also generate the customers on whom vendors depend. Fire access, sanitation and disability access impose non-negotiable spatial requirements. The policy challenge is therefore to allocate space transparently and at realistic locations. A vending zone with no footfall can formally regularise a trader while economically destroying the business; unregulated occupation of a narrow path can equally exclude pedestrians.

105.17 Eviction risk changes investment behaviour even when day-to-day earnings appear adequate

A vendor who expects removal may avoid durable carts, improved storage, shade or hygienic equipment because these investments could be lost. Insecure tenure also encourages minimal inventory and dependence on mobile assets. The result is a productivity trap generated by uncertainty rather than lack of effort. Predictable regulation can therefore improve both livelihoods and streetscape by giving traders an incentive to invest in cleaner, safer and more durable facilities. Security need not mean permanent private possession of public land; it can mean clear rules, renewable permissions, due process and designated operating times.

105.18 Municipal fees and documentation can formalise a relationship without converting a microenterprise into a large firm

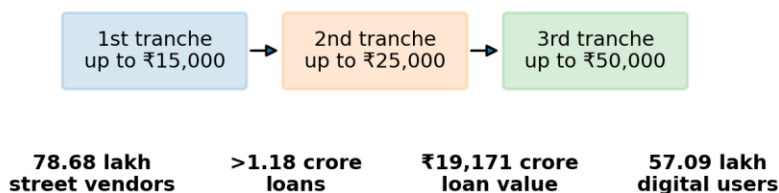
Formalisation is not an all-or-nothing transformation. A vendor may obtain identification, a vending certificate, a bank account, digital payment history, food-safety training or social-protection enrolment while remaining a one-person business. This incremental path matters because the costs of full commercial premises, complex taxation or accounting may be disproportionate to turnover. Effective policy creates a ladder of compliance suited to enterprise scale. It also recognises that the purpose of registration is not merely revenue collection but access to rights, finance, public services and enforceable responsibilities.

105.19 PM SVANidhi made formal working-capital credit a large-scale street-vendor policy instrument

Launched in 2020 and restructured in 2025, PM SVANidhi provides collateral-free progressive working-capital loans to eligible street vendors, with current tranches up to ₹15,000, ₹25,000 and ₹50,000. By 27 August 2026 the Government of India reported 78.68 lakh vendors accessing more than 1.18 crore loans worth ₹19,171 crore. The historical significance lies not only in the volume of credit but in the attempt to

connect vending to formal banking, digital transaction histories, social-protection linkages and local-government identification. Scheme participation, however, should not be equated with the total vendor population.

PM SVANidhi: progressive working-capital ladder and national reach



National cumulative figures reported 27 August 2026; scheme lending extended to March 2030.

Figure 418 — PM SVANidhi combines a progressive loan ladder with financial and digital inclusion

105.20 Digital payments reduce cash friction but do not automatically remove informality

QR codes and mobile payments allow very small traders to receive exact amounts, reduce the need for change and build transaction records that can support access to credit. They also create new dependencies on phones, connectivity, account access, fraud prevention and platform rules. A digitally paid transaction may still occur in an unincorporated enterprise with no employment protection. Digitalisation therefore changes the infrastructure of informality rather than simply abolishing it. Its strongest benefits appear when payment access is combined with financial literacy, grievance mechanisms and affordable working capital.

105.21 Migrant and seasonal vendors make the urban economy responsive to agricultural and festival calendars

A worker may cultivate during part of the year and vend, transport or perform casual urban services during another. Others move between towns according to fairs, pilgrimage seasons, marriage periods, harvests or construction cycles. This circulation allows households to diversify income without permanent relocation. It also makes vendor surveys difficult because a population counted on one date may omit seasonal traders. Policy frameworks that assume every livelihood is permanently attached to one municipality risk excluding precisely those workers whose economic strategy depends on mobility.

105.22 Street food connects livelihood, public health and cultural economy

Tea, snacks, sweets, cooked meals and regionally specific foods create low-cost eating infrastructure for students, passengers, workers, patients' attendants and shoppers. Street food also carries local culinary repertoires into urban public space. Because food is consumed immediately, water quality, handwashing, waste, storage, temperature and contamination are serious public-health concerns. The appropriate historical and policy response is not to romanticise or prohibit the sector, but to combine training, water, waste facilities and proportionate inspection with livelihood security. Food safety improves most effectively when vendors can invest in stable equipment and clean operating sites.

105.23 Waste picking and recycling reveal an environmental service hidden inside precarious work

Collectors, sorters, scrap dealers and itinerant buyers recover paper, metal, plastics, glass and reusable goods from the urban waste stream. Their earnings depend on volatile material prices and access to collection points, while occupational exposure can be severe. Yet the activity reduces the volume reaching dumps and returns materials to production. Municipal waste systems that displace informal recyclers without integrating their knowledge can lose both livelihoods and recovery capacity. A just transition requires safer handling, protective equipment, recognised collection arrangements and routes into more secure recycling enterprises.

105.24 Credit, regulation and digitalisation can reinforce one another when formalisation is designed as a ladder

A survey or certificate can establish identity; identity can open access to a bank loan; digital transactions can create a financial history; social-protection enrolment can reduce the household impact of illness or accident; training can improve food safety or business practice. The sequence is cumulative when each step lowers risk rather than merely adding paperwork. The reverse is also possible: documentation barriers can exclude mobile vendors, debt can outpace earnings, and digital fraud can undermine trust. Institutional design therefore matters more than the abstract goal of “formalisation”.

105.25 Floods, heat and monsoon rain are direct business risks for street economies

The region’s climate turns weather into a daily balance-sheet variable. Heavy rain reduces footfall, damages stock and makes unpaved or poorly drained market sites unusable. Floods interrupt wholesale supply and transport, while extreme heat threatens workers standing for long hours without shade or drinking water and can spoil food rapidly. Because many vendors hold little insurance and thin savings, several lost trading days can trigger debt. Urban resilience planning should therefore include covered market space, drainage, water, heat protection, safe storage and emergency livelihood support rather than treating vendors as external to infrastructure policy.

105.26 Education and health clusters generate specialised informal economies around institutions

Universities, colleges, coaching centres, hospitals and courts create demand for photocopying, stationery, food, lodging, transport, document assistance and low-cost retail. Such clusters demonstrate how formal institutions generate surrounding informal employment. Their workers are not economically separate from the institutions; they help make attendance affordable and practical. Hospital attendants need cheap meals and temporary accommodation; students need printing and transport; litigants need copying and document services. Planning institutional campuses without recognising these complementary markets often pushes necessary services into unsafe or congested spaces.

105.27 Janakpur and Birgunj place Madhesh’s informal commerce within both urban and cross-border circuits

The Nepal Tarai’s major cities combine local retail with pilgrimage, transport, wholesale distribution and India–Nepal border exchange. The World Bank’s 2024–25 Informal Sector Enterprise Survey included both Janakpur and Birgunj among eight surveyed cities, allowing the informal business environment of Madhesh

to enter a comparative national frame. Border proximity can expand markets and supply choices while also exposing traders to currency, customs, transport and regulatory differences. Informal commerce should therefore be analysed as part of a transnational interaction zone rather than solely within municipal boundaries.

105.28 Nepal demonstrates the scale of informal employment and the diversity of informal business premises

Nepal's Labour Force Survey 2017/18 estimated that 84.6 per cent of employment was informal, including informal jobs both inside and outside informal-sector enterprises. A newer World Bank survey of 2,535 informal businesses in eight cities found a heterogeneous geography: 42.0 per cent of sampled firms operated from permanent non-household premises, 23.6 per cent from households, 13.3 per cent from temporary stalls or stands, and 21.2 per cent from non-fixed premises including hawkers. The sample is not a national population estimate, but it shows that urban informality ranges from visible street trade to fixed and home-based enterprise.

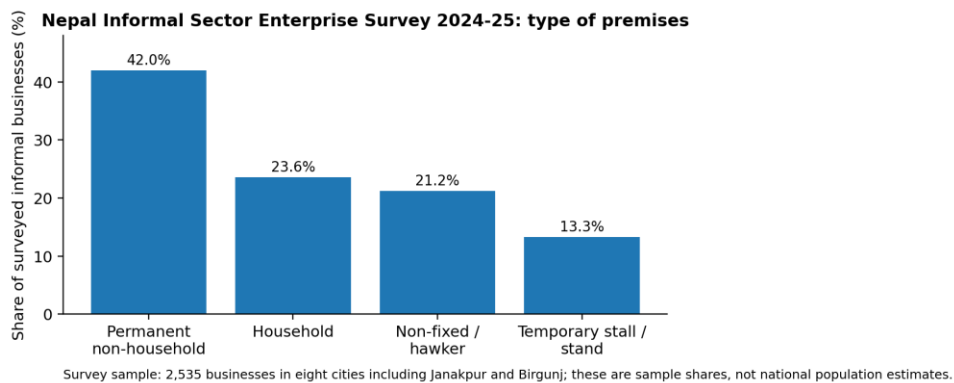


Figure 419 — Nepal's 2024–25 informal-enterprise survey shows fixed, household, temporary and non-fixed premises

105.29 Better policy treats vendors as economic actors while protecting mobility, safety and public access

The strongest regulatory approach begins with an accurate survey, representative Town Vending Committees where applicable, transparent allocation rules, realistic vending locations, sanitation, storage, water, lighting and grievance procedures. It also preserves pedestrian movement, emergency access and disability rights. Credit and digital tools work best when they supplement rather than substitute for spatial governance. The objective is not a street without vendors or a street without rules, but an urban commons in which livelihood, circulation and public health are negotiated through institutions that are predictable enough for both traders and other users.

105.30 Informal commerce is the everyday operating system of regional urbanisation

Chapter 104 described a polycentric and peri-urban settlement system. This chapter shows how that system functions at ground level. Informal traders distribute food, connect wholesale markets to neighbourhoods, repair household assets, move passengers, recycle materials and create services around stations, schools, hospitals and pilgrimage sites. Their flexibility absorbs migrants and household labour, while their insecurity reveals gaps in urban planning, credit and social protection. The long-term transition is therefore unlikely to be a simple disappearance of informality. More plausibly, activities will move unevenly

along ladders of registration, protection, productivity and spatial security while retaining microenterprise forms.

Table 105.1 — Informal economies combine flexibility with specific institutional vulnerabilities

Economic form	Why it persists	Principal vulnerability
Street and mobile vending	Low fixed cost; access to footfall; rapid turnover	Eviction, weather, congestion rules, weak storage
Periodic haats and market stalls	Concentrated demand without permanent premises	Seasonality, drainage, sanitation, market fees
Home-based production	Combines residence and enterprise; saves rent	Hidden labour, limited scale, household risk
Repair and petty services	Skill-intensive; extends asset life; local demand	Low capital, irregular demand, weak protection
Informal transport and loading	Last-mile mobility for people and goods	Road risk, regulation, fuel/vehicle costs
Food vending	Affordable meals at high-footfall sites	Food safety, water, waste, heat and perishability
Waste recovery and recycling	Material recovery and low-entry employment	Health exposure, price volatility, insecure access

Chapter 106 — Diaspora Cultural Institutions

Migration does not automatically create a diaspora community. People may share an origin yet remain dispersed across workplaces, neighbourhoods, languages, classes and generations. A cultural institution is one of the mechanisms that converts this dispersion into a recurring public: an association, literary circle, festival committee, religious or welfare group, arts collective, publication, digital forum, student network or community centre that gives regular form to belonging. For migrants from Mithila, Vajji and Anga, and for Maithili-speaking populations moving within Nepal and across the India–Nepal border, such institutions have repeatedly carried language, ritual, literature, performance and mutual aid into places where these practices were no longer sustained by the density of the home locality.

The history is therefore more than a list of organisations. Institutions alter culture while preserving it. A festival moved from village or town to Delhi, Kolkata, Bengaluru, Kathmandu, the Gulf or North America must be rescheduled around work calendars, rented venues and municipal rules; songs are shortened for stage programmes; food is cooked for large heterogeneous audiences; children may understand but not speak the ancestral language; and digital media may become more important than a permanent building. This chapter examines those transformations as part of the migration system traced in Chapters 97–105.

106.1 Diaspora begins as dispersion; institutions create the recurring public that makes diaspora durable

A migrant population can remain socially fragmented for years. What turns common origin into collective life is repetition: the same families meet again for a festival, a literary evening, a condolence fund, a student welcome, a language class or a relief appeal. Repetition creates expectations; expectations create committees, membership lists, accounts, venues and calendars. At that point memory becomes institutional. This distinction matters historically because the existence of migrants in a city does not prove the existence of an organised diaspora. The historian must identify the mechanisms by which networks acquired names, rules, officers, publications, property, bank accounts, digital archives or recognised annual programmes.

106.2 Kolkata, industrial towns and Delhi formed important institutional environments for twentieth-century Maithil mobility

Long-distance movement to Calcutta/Kolkata, railway and industrial centres, and later Delhi brought migrants into dense associational worlds already populated by linguistic, caste, occupational and regional organisations. Maithili cultural bodies documented in Kolkata, Jamshedpur and Delhi show that migration generated not only individual adaptation but collective infrastructure. The Sahitya Akademi's directories of literary associations list Mithila Sanskritik Parishad in Kolkata and Jamshedpur and Akhil Bharatiya Mithila Sangh in New Delhi among Maithili organisations. These locations matter because they connect the geography of cultural institution-building with the labour and educational migrations examined earlier in PART XI.

106.3 The association occupies a middle level between household intimacy and state recognition

Households transmit speech, food, kinship etiquette and ritual memory, while states classify language through schools, censuses, academies and official recognition. Diaspora associations operate between these levels. They can aggregate many households into a public large enough to rent an auditorium, invite writers, publish a souvenir, petition authorities or sponsor classes. They also translate official categories back into

everyday life: a constitutional recognition of Maithili becomes meaningful in a migrant city only if speakers can encounter books, performances, teachers and other speakers. The association is therefore a meso-level institution linking private cultural reproduction to public visibility.

106.4 Vidyapati Parva became a portable public form through which Maithili cultural identity could be staged away from home

Modern Vidyapati Parva celebrations developed in the twentieth-century Maithili movement and became especially important among Maithils living outside Mithila because a commemorative event could combine literature, song, drama, speeches and community assembly in a single portable format. Mithilesh Kumar Jha traces the first modern Vidyapati Parva at Laheriasarai in 1929 and its later expansion as a cultural platform. In this volume's governing method, however, the cultural label 'Vidyapati' does not license conflation: the Maithili Padāvalī poet Mahākavi Vidyāpati and the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura associated with Oiniwar-court Sanskrit and Avahatṭa works remain historically distinct. Diaspora commemoration is itself evidence of later cultural memory, not proof that all works or traditions attached to the name belong to one author.

106.5 Souvenirs, newsletters and literary sessions turn an annual gathering into a textual institution

A festival vanishes when the stage is dismantled unless it leaves records. Smārikās, newsletters, programme booklets, membership directories, proceedings and later websites extend an event through time. They circulate poems and essays, document office-bearers, record donors and sponsors, and create an archive from which later organisers can reconstruct institutional history. An Indian embassy notice for the planned Vishwa Maithili Sammelan of 2020 described the souvenir of Akhil Bharatiya Mithila Sangh as a valued literary and cultural component and identified the organisation's ambition to bring dispersed Maithils onto one platform. Such documentary residues are also crucial sources for historians because voluntary associations often leave fewer records in state archives than formal institutions do.

Diaspora institutions emerge when repeated social practices become durable organisation



Figure 420 — Repeated migrant gatherings become durable institutions through organisation, calendars, records and translocal feedback

106.6 Language maintenance is the most difficult form of cultural reproduction because passive recognition can survive after active speech declines

First-generation migrants may speak Maithili daily among relatives while using Hindi, Nepali, Bengali, English or another destination language at work. Their children often receive a different linguistic ecology: the ancestral language is heard at home but schooling, media and friendship operate elsewhere. An institution can intervene through children's classes, storytelling, theatre, reading groups, competitions and bilingual publications. The challenge is to avoid treating symbolic pride as equivalent to language transmission. A child can enjoy Mithila painting, Chhath or a stage song without acquiring literacy or conversational

confidence in Maithili. Durable linguistic institutions therefore require curricula, teachers, age-appropriate materials and repeated use rather than a single annual language day.

106.7 Diaspora institutions can reproduce social hierarchy unless membership and cultural representation are deliberately broadened

Regional associations often begin through the networks of those with enough education, money and time to organise them. Historically this can produce over-representation of particular castes, professions or elite families, even when the declared cultural constituency is much wider. Scholarship on the Maithili movement has repeatedly noted tensions between universal claims made in the name of Maithili or Mithila and the narrower social composition of some organisations. Diaspora conditions can either reproduce or loosen these boundaries. Open membership, transparent elections, women and youth leadership, representation from varied districts and social groups, and programming beyond elite literary forms all affect whether an institution becomes a broad cultural public or merely a club of already-connected migrants.

106.8 Women often perform the everyday labour of cultural continuity even where formal office remains male-dominated

Institutional histories written from office-bearer lists can miss the labour that makes events possible. Women frequently organise food, ritual materials, children's rehearsals, hospitality, clothing, song repertoires and informal teaching across households. These tasks may be treated as domestic assistance rather than cultural governance, even though without them many festivals and family-centred programmes would collapse. A fuller history therefore distinguishes visible office from cultural labour. Where women become presidents, treasurers, teachers, artists or programme curators, the institutional repertoire can also change: children's education, health, gendered safety and professional mentoring may gain weight alongside ceremonial events.

106.9 Youth programmes determine whether an association becomes intergenerational or remains a first-generation memory society

Second-generation participation cannot be secured merely by asking young people to perform a song chosen by elders. Their relationship to heritage is formed under different conditions: mixed-language friendships, digital media, school schedules, professional mobility and often weak literacy in Maithili. Effective institutions give younger members responsibility for media, sports, volunteering, debates, design, language teaching and event planning rather than limiting them to symbolic performance. The new Maithil Association of America, for example, presents youth education through a 'Gurukul' programme as a central organisational goal. Whether such programmes produce sustained language and cultural competence is an empirical question, but their prominence shows the growing institutional recognition of intergenerational transmission as a problem to be organised.

106.10 Kinship remains a recruitment channel, but a cultural association cannot be reduced to an enlarged kin group

Migration networks often begin through relatives and acquaintances from the same village or district. These ties supply trust, accommodation and the first audience for a festival. Yet an institution that remains wholly kin-based has limited capacity to represent a dispersed linguistic region. Urban and overseas associations must bridge unfamiliar families, different local speech forms and divergent social backgrounds. This bridging function is one reason membership lists, public invitations and elected committees matter:

they create a rule-governed social field beyond personal obligation. At the same time, marriage, funerals and household crises continue to pull the formal association back toward kin-like functions of mutual assistance.

106.11 A shared ritual calendar converts scattered households into a community of synchronized time

Migration disrupts the calendrical density of the home region. Work shifts, school terms and venue availability may prevent observance at the customary hour or in the customary place. Associations solve this by creating public dates: Holi Milan, Chhath gathering, Sama-Chakeva, Jitiyā-related programmes, Janaki observances, literary anniversaries, picnics or New Year events may be held on the nearest weekend. Such rescheduling is not simply cultural loss. It reveals institutional adaptation. The ritual is reorganised so that a dispersed labour force can meet, children can participate and a public venue can be secured. The resulting calendar becomes a powerful marker of group continuity.

106.12 Chhath demonstrates how a household and riverbank ritual can become public diaspora infrastructure

Chhath is especially suited to showing the institutional work hidden inside cultural continuity. Away from familiar ponds and river ghats, organisers must locate safe water, negotiate access, arrange lighting and sanitation, coordinate offerings and crowd movement, and explain the practice to local authorities and neighbours. The ritual thereby produces a temporary civic institution. In North America, the Association of Nepali Teraian in America records Chhath celebrations organised with a Hindu temple in Ohio, bringing hundreds of devotees together. The event is broader than Maithili identity alone, but that is precisely the point: diaspora institutions frequently preserve regional practices through alliances with larger religious or South Asian infrastructures.

The portable cultural repertoire carried by diaspora institutions



Figure 421 — Diaspora institutions carry a portable repertoire of language, ritual, performance, food, art and intergenerational teaching

106.13 Mithila painting travels unusually well because a portable visual form can become exhibition, workshop, commodity and lesson

Visual art does not require every participant to share the same level of language competence. A painting workshop can include children, mixed-language spouses and non-Maithil audiences while still transmitting motifs, techniques and stories associated with Mithila. Diaspora institutions therefore use art for both internal teaching and external representation. ANTA's documented activities include Mithila art exhibitions and online training sessions, while newer cultural organisations advertise workshops and exhibitions as

community programming. Yet the portability of the form also creates curatorial responsibilities: institutions should distinguish living artists and diverse regional practices from a flattened decorative stereotype marketed simply as 'Madhubani art'.

106.14 Music, theatre and recitation convert language into embodied performance even when everyday speech is weakening

Stage performance is a central diaspora technology because it can compress a large repertoire into an evening. Songs, short plays, comic sketches, recitation and dance make language audible in public and provide roles for different ages. Rehearsal itself is often more important than the final programme: participants learn pronunciation, lyrics, gestures and stories over several weeks. At the same time, stage selection can create a narrow canon. The most frequently performed songs and iconic cultural figures become disproportionately visible, while work songs, Muslim repertoires, Dalit performance traditions, local dramatic forms or less familiar Anga and Vajji materials may disappear from the migrant stage. Institutional curation therefore shapes what later generations imagine the region's culture to be.

106.15 Food creates low-threshold participation and can preserve regional difference without requiring formal cultural expertise

Community meals, festival foods and cooking demonstrations draw people who may not attend a literary seminar. Recipes transmit vocabulary, seasonal memory, caste and household histories, agricultural products and techniques of hospitality. In diaspora settings ingredients may be substituted, preparation industrialised for large numbers, or dietary rules renegotiated. These changes are historically informative rather than signs of inauthenticity. Food is also a fundraising tool: ticketed meals and stalls can finance programmes while giving women, caterers and small entrepreneurs institutional visibility. The cultural economy described here therefore intersects directly with the informal and small-business economies of Chapter 105.

106.16 A permanent bhavan or community centre transforms an association's capacity by reducing dependence on borrowed space

Most migrant organisations begin in homes, school halls, temples, public parks or rented auditoria. Permanent space changes what can be done: libraries can remain assembled, classes can meet weekly, archives can be stored, visiting artists can be hosted and meetings need not be rebuilt from scratch. The aspiration itself is historically significant. A 2020 notice concerning Akhil Bharatiya Mithila Sangh listed construction of a 'Pravasi Maithil Bhavan' in Delhi among its objectives. Whether a proposed building is completed must be verified separately, but the proposal shows how diaspora organisation can move from periodic event management toward an ambition for durable cultural infrastructure.

106.17 Mutual aid turns cultural membership into social protection

Associations frequently acquire welfare functions because migrants face illness, bereavement, job loss, unfamiliar bureaucracy and emergency travel without the full support network available at home. A membership group can raise funds, provide blood donors, locate doctors, arrange funeral support, help newcomers find accommodation or connect students with mentors. These activities deepen loyalty because the institution becomes useful outside festival time. They also broaden the meaning of culture: belonging is sustained not only by symbols but by practical reciprocity. For historians, welfare records can reveal the material vulnerabilities of migrant life that ceremonial programmes tend to conceal.

106.18 Disaster relief and philanthropy create a reverse flow from destination to homeland

Diaspora institutions often become rapid fundraising nodes when floods, earthquakes, epidemics or local emergencies strike the origin region. The direction of dependence is therefore not simply from village to city. Migrants pool money, professional expertise and contacts and send resources back, while relief work gives institutional form to emotional attachment. Nepal Maithil Samaj, constituted in Kathmandu in 1991, was reported to have organised relief for flood-affected families in Sarlahi and Rautahat in 1993 as part of a wider programme of cultural and social work. Contemporary organisations similarly combine cultural events with scholarships, health initiatives and disaster assistance. Philanthropy can strengthen translocal solidarity, though its effectiveness depends on transparent accounting and reliable local partners.

106.19 Professional networks extend cultural association into education, employment and mentorship

As the migrant population becomes more occupationally diverse, associations often add career talks, student guidance, scholarship information, technology groups and professional directories. This shift can appear less 'cultural' than song or ritual, but it is central to institutional reproduction. Young adults are more likely to remain engaged when the association also helps them navigate education and work. Professional success can in turn supply donors, organisers and technical capacity. The risk is class bifurcation: an institution dominated by highly educated professionals may become less accessible to service workers, temporary labourers or recent migrants. A healthy diaspora public therefore balances networking with inclusion.

106.20 Gulf migration produces a more temporary and regulation-sensitive associational ecology than permanent-settlement destinations

The Gulf migration system described in Chapter 102 is dominated by time-limited labour residence, employer-linked visas and frequent worker turnover. These conditions make permanent community institutions harder to sustain than in destinations where families settle for decades and children grow up locally. Cultural organisation may therefore rely more heavily on rotating committees, apartment or camp gatherings, rented halls, religious facilities, messaging groups and events timed to leave schedules. Workers who return home after a few years can nevertheless carry organisational experience, savings and new networks back to Mithila and Anga. The institutional form is thus episodic but not necessarily weak: portability may be its adaptation to a temporary labour regime.

106.21 Digital communication changed the scale of diaspora organisation by making locality optional for many institutional functions

Email lists, websites, Facebook groups, messaging applications, livestreams and video platforms allow an association to coordinate across multiple cities and countries without a single headquarters. A lecture in Delhi can be watched in California; a Maithili poem can circulate through Gulf worker groups; a fundraising appeal can reach donors in hours; and a child can join an online art or language session without living near a community centre. Antarrashtriya Maithili Parishad's online history explicitly framed the internet as a way to reach geographically dispersed Maithils, while contemporary North American organisations use webinars and digital publications as routine infrastructure. Digitalisation therefore reduces the cost of transnational coordination but also changes who controls visibility.

106.22 Digital abundance does not equal an archive; preservation requires stable metadata, ownership and migration plans

Diaspora institutions now produce photographs, posters, livestreams, PDFs, spreadsheets, social-media posts and messaging-group records at a scale earlier committees could not imagine. Yet these materials are fragile. Accounts disappear, platforms close, passwords are lost and file names cease to make sense after office-bearers change. An institutional archive requires deliberate selection, dates, captions, creator information, permissions and redundant storage in formats that can be migrated. This is particularly important for minority-language history because voluntary organisations may be the only repositories of recordings, local publications and biographies. Digital preservation is therefore not a technical afterthought; it is part of cultural succession.

A diaspora cultural institution is a transnational circuit, not a one-way transplant

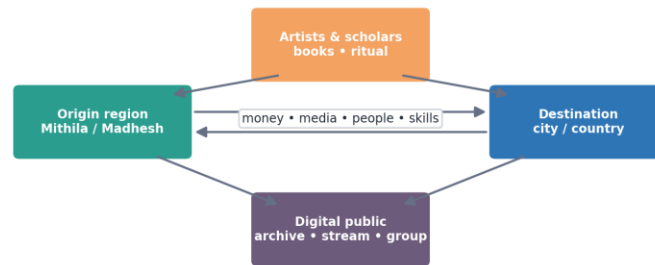


Figure 422 — Origin region, destination, artists and digital publics form a multidirectional transnational cultural circuit

106.23 India–Nepal mobility produces a diaspora field that is transnational without always being overseas

The open border and dense kin, educational, religious and commercial connections between north Bihar and Madhesh create a special institutional geography. A Maithili organisation in Kathmandu can represent migrants from the Tarai within Nepal; a conference in Ranchi or Delhi can include delegates from Nepal; artists and writers may circulate through Janakpur, Darbhanga and metropolitan destinations without treating the border as the primary cultural boundary. This does not erase citizenship or different state language regimes. Rather, it means that diaspora institutions often operate across multiple political jurisdictions while drawing on a cultural field that predates them. The historian must therefore track both transnational networks and the distinct legal contexts in which each organisation functions.

106.24 Kathmandu shows how internal migration can generate diaspora-style cultural institutions within the same state

The Kathmandu Valley has long hosted Maithili-speaking populations, but late twentieth-century associations reveal a modern form of organised internal diaspora. A European Bulletin of Himalayan Research report noted Akhil Nepal Maithili Sahitya Parishad, founded in 1966, and Nepal Maithil Samaj, constituted in Kathmandu in August 1991, among a much wider network of Maithili bodies in Nepal. The Samaj organised cultural programmes, relief work and links with organisations in Nepal and India. The case is analytically important because diaspora should not be defined solely by crossing an international border. Cultural distance from the home linguistic region, minority status in the destination and the need for organised reproduction can arise through internal migration as well.

106.25 ANTA demonstrates how a broader Madheshi/Teraian umbrella can house Maithili culture within a multilingual diaspora institution

The Association of Nepali Teraian in America was registered in Texas in 2005 to promote the identity, linguistic and cultural heritage of Nepali Teraians in North America. Its institutional language is deliberately broader than Maithili alone. The association's Trivani publication presents Maithili, Bhojpuri and Awadhi as major languages of the Terai, while its programme history includes Mithila art, Vidyapati-related events, Chhath, webinars and community service. This layered identity is significant. Diaspora institutions do not always reproduce the exact linguistic boundaries of the homeland; they may build larger coalitions that are strategically useful in a destination society while retaining subregional cultural forms inside them.

106.26 Newer specialised organisations show a shift toward family programming, digital visibility and metropolitan networks

Contemporary institution-building continues in destinations created by newer professional and technology migration. The Maithil Association of America describes its mission in terms of uniting the U.S.-based Maithil diaspora, cultural events and youth education. In Bengaluru, Karnataka Mithila Sanskritik Parishad is registered under a 2019–20 number and presents itself as a cultural organisation for Maithils in Karnataka, with Holi and Mithila festivals among its activities. Such examples should not be treated as evidence that all migrants participate in formal associations. They do show that the institutional repertoire has expanded: a website, online registration, youth programme, fitness activity or professional network can now sit alongside the older model of literary conference and commemorative festival.

106.27 Antarrashtriya Maithili Parishad illustrates the attempt to coordinate local associations across India, Nepal and migrant locations

Founded in 1993, Antarrashtriya Maithili Parishad was conceived as a coordinating platform rather than a single-city club. Its current institutional history describes work across India and Nepal, international Maithili conferences and affiliated organisations, and explicitly identifies migrant Maithils as part of its field. The model responds to a recurrent problem of diaspora organisation: local groups are good at sustaining neighbourhood events but weak at articulating common positions, sharing resources or maintaining cross-border continuity. Federative institutions can solve this by linking nodes. They also create another layer of governance, however, and must negotiate representation among regions, generations and organisations with unequal resources.

106.28 Cultural institutions often become political actors, but cultural representation and political mandate should not be treated as identical

Language recognition, education policy, statehood demands, transport links, flood policy and heritage protection have all entered the agendas of organisations speaking in the name of Mithila or Maithili. Migration can intensify such advocacy because metropolitan access gives diaspora leaders proximity to ministries, media and national institutions. Yet a cultural association's ability to organise a successful festival does not automatically confer a democratic mandate to represent every person from the region. Historians should therefore distinguish cultural performance, lobbying, electoral politics and social-service work rather than collapsing them into a single 'community voice'. Internal disagreement is evidence of a living public, not necessarily institutional failure.

106.29 Governance, finance and succession determine whether a diaspora institution survives beyond its founding generation

Voluntary associations are vulnerable to founder dependence. A charismatic organiser can mobilise donations and contacts, but the institution may weaken when that person retires or moves. Durable organisations distribute authority through constitutions, elections, audited accounts, committees, youth roles and accessible records. They also need a succession pathway through which participants become volunteers, volunteers become organisers, and organisers transmit passwords, archives, vendor contacts and programme knowledge to successors. Transparency is culturally productive because trust expands the pool of contributors. Succession is equally important: without it, an association may preserve heritage for one generation while failing to reproduce the institution that made preservation possible.

Institutional continuity requires a succession chain, not only successful annual events

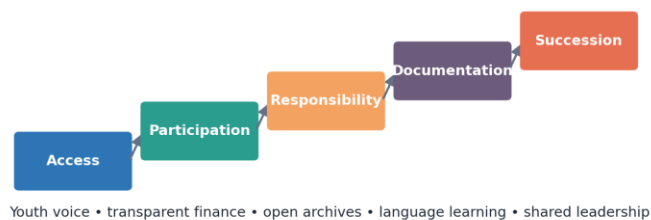


Figure 423 — Institutional continuity depends on access, participation, responsibility, documentation and succession

106.30 Diaspora cultural institutions make migration socially reversible even when geographic return does not occur

PART XI began with the *longue durée* of migration and followed workers and families through Kolkata, Delhi, Mumbai, Punjab, Haryana, Nepal and the Gulf; remittances then transformed households, while urbanisation and informal commerce reshaped destination and source regions. Diaspora institutions complete this system by creating a cultural route back without requiring permanent physical return. A migrant can contribute to a flood appeal, read a Maithili publication, teach a child a song, host an artist, join a digital seminar or organise Chhath thousands of kilometres from the ancestral locality. The culture that returns is never identical to what left: it has been selected, staged, translated and institutionalised. That transformation is not a deviation from migration history. It is one of migration's most important social products.

Table 106.1 — Diaspora cultural institutions combine different functions, records and vulnerabilities

Institutional form	Typical function	Evidence for historians	Typical vulnerability
Literary / language association	Readings, publishing, classes, conferences	Texts, minutes, programmes, member lists	Elite capture; weak youth transmission
Festival / ritual committee	Calendar, venue, ritual logistics, public gathering	Posters, permits, photographs, accounts	Event-only continuity; narrow repertoire
Arts / performance collective	Music, theatre, painting, workshops	Recordings, scripts, catalogues, artist lists	Canon narrowing; decorative stereotyping
Welfare / mutual-aid network	Emergency support, blood donation, newcomer help	Fund ledgers, appeals, case records	Opaque finance; dependence on a few donors

Institutional form	Typical function	Evidence for historians	Typical vulnerability
Professional / student network	Mentoring, scholarships, careers, orientation	Directories, webinars, scholarship records	Class bias; exclusion of precarious workers
Community centre / bhavan	Library, classes, meetings, archive, hosting	Property records, schedules, catalogues	High fixed cost; governance conflict
Digital network	Coordination, streaming, fundraising, archives	Websites, posts, videos, mailing lists	Platform loss; weak metadata; misinformation
Federation / transnational council	Links local bodies; advocacy; conferences	Constitutions, delegate lists, resolutions	Representation disputes; bureaucratisation

PART XII

CULTURAL MODERNITY AND MASS MEDIA

Chapters 107–116

Chapter 107 — Maithili Print and Literary Institutions

Print did not create Maithili literature. It changed the material conditions under which literature could be copied, standardised, debated, sold, archived and made visible to readers who were not gathered in the same court, school, household or manuscript circle. That distinction is essential for a socio-cultural-economic history. The transition from manuscript to print was not a clean replacement of one technology by another, and the modern literary public was not produced by presses alone. Editors, patrons, subscription networks, literary associations, schools, universities, academies, prizes, libraries, bookshops, distributors and later digital platforms all helped determine which texts circulated, which spellings became normal, which genres acquired prestige and which writers entered the historical record.

The modern Maithili field also developed across more than one political geography. Darbhanga, Madhubani and Patna were important, but so were Varanasi, Jaipur, Kolkata, Delhi and other cities in which mobile Maithils created print networks. Nepal supplied its own institutional centres in Janakpur, the Madhesh towns and Kathmandu. The result was a cross-border literary system in which a magazine, book, award, conference or digital archive could acquire meaning far beyond its place of publication. This chapter therefore studies print and literary institutions as social infrastructure: organisations and technologies that convert writing into a recurring public, while also producing exclusions, hierarchies and disputes over language, script, region and canon.

107.1 Print reorganised literary authority; it did not mark the beginning of Maithili literature

Maithili had long textual, oral and performative traditions before movable-type printing became significant to its modern public life. Manuscripts could circulate through learned lineages, courts, religious institutions, family collections and copying networks; songs and dramatic repertoires travelled by performance rather than by the printed page. Print altered this ecology by multiplying identical or near-identical copies, lowering the marginal cost of reproduction after typesetting, and making title pages, editors, publication places and dates more regular forms of bibliographic identity. A printed edition could therefore stabilise a text for one readership while simultaneously displacing manuscript variants. Historians should treat the printed book as a new layer of evidence, not as an automatically superior witness to an older work. The social power of print lies in scale, repeatability and public visibility, not in an intrinsic guarantee of textual authenticity.

107.2 Manuscript, oral and print cultures overlapped for generations

The persistence of manuscripts matters because many Maithili works entered print through a chain of handwritten copies. Editors selected exemplars, regularised spellings, supplied punctuation, divided continuous text into modern paragraphs and sometimes silently repaired passages. Oral materials underwent an additional transformation when songs, tales or performance texts were fixed on paper. The printed object may therefore preserve a tradition while also recording the editorial assumptions of its own moment. For institutional history, this means that libraries, private collections and manuscript custodians are part of the history of print: presses depended on materials gathered before print. Modern digitisation repeats the same relationship in another form, because scanned or transcribed digital texts often inherit the choices of an earlier printed edition rather than returning to the manuscript base.

107.3 Colonial-era printing altered the economics of literary reproduction

Printing required capital, type, paper, compositors, proof-readers and access to presses. For a language with a smaller commercial market, these requirements made patronage and institutional subsidy unusually important. A writer might be able to compose without an organisation, but serial publication, book distribution and reprinting demanded durable material support. The geography of presses also mattered. Maithili publication could occur outside the core speech region because suitable presses, educated networks and subscribers existed in cities connected by employment, pilgrimage and study. This helps explain why the modern Maithili public cannot be mapped simply by locating presses inside present-day Mithila. Print followed mobility, and mobility helped create the reading public that justified further print.

107.4 The early twentieth-century periodical created a new rhythm of public argument

A book can consolidate an argument; a periodical can make argument recurrent. Regular issues created deadlines, correspondence, reviews, debates, serialised essays and expectations of reply. In the early twentieth century, Maithili periodicals became especially important because they joined writers and readers dispersed across different towns. Later histories identify Maithil Hit Sadhan at Jaipur in 1905 and place other important early journals in Varanasi and Darbhanga. Exact launch dates sometimes differ by a year across retrospective bibliographies, so issue-level verification should govern precise chronology. The larger pattern is clearer: a periodical network emerged in which language reform, literature, social practice, history and regional identity could be discussed repeatedly rather than through isolated books.

107.5 Jaipur and Varanasi show that the Maithili print public was spatially dispersed from the outset

Maithil Hit Sadhan's appearance in Jaipur and the early publication associated with Mithila Moda in Varanasi are historically significant precisely because they were not confined to Darbhanga. Educated Maithils working or studying beyond the region carried linguistic concerns with them and could mobilise printing resources where they lived. These publications also warn against treating a periodical as a simple expression of a territorially bounded 'home' society. Its contributors, subscribers and financial supporters could be distributed across railway and administrative networks. Extralocal publication helped transform regional identity into an associational identity: readers could imagine themselves as members of a Maithili literary public even when their everyday work took place far from their ancestral locality.

107.6 Mithila Mihir became a major arena in which literature and regional imagination interacted

Mithila Mihir, first published from Darbhanga in 1909, became one of the most consequential Maithili periodicals of the twentieth century. Its importance was not limited to creative literature. It carried historical, social, political and cultural discussion and helped make 'Mithila' an object of sustained public argument. Recent scholarship has shown that the periodical participated in the making of a modern regional imagination and could simultaneously reflect elite patronage and provide a forum broad enough for debate. Such a journal should therefore be read on several levels: as a container of literary texts, as a record of editorial selection, as an institution supported by particular patronage, and as evidence of the social questions that educated readers considered discussable at a given moment.

107.7 Periodicals changed literary form by rewarding seriality, brevity and response

The magazine page encouraged forms different from the manuscript treatise or the separately printed book. Short stories, poems, reviews, polemics, letters, instalments and topical essays could be read within a shared issue and answered in a later one. This compressed the time between composition and reception. An editor could invite a debate, a reviewer could shape a book's reputation, and a serialised work could build an audience before appearing as a volume. Periodicals also created archives of ordinary literary life: advertisements, subscription notices, obituaries, meeting reports and editorial corrections often reveal networks that canonical books omit. The historian of literature therefore needs the complete issue, not merely anthologised creative pieces extracted from it.

Selected milestones in the modern Maithili print and literary-institutional public

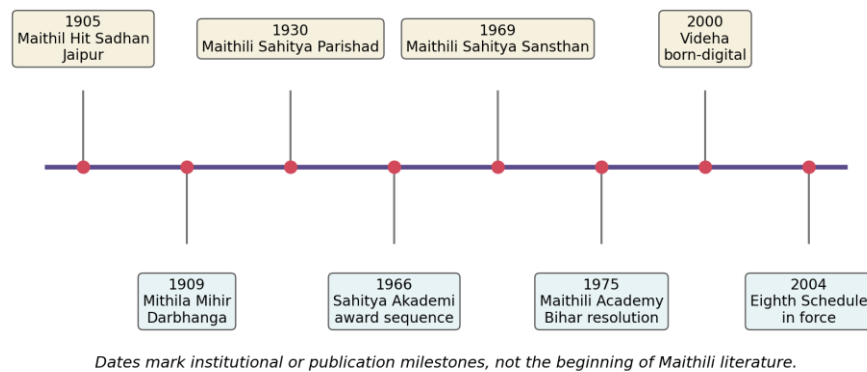


Figure 424 — Selected milestones in the modern Maithili print and literary-institutional public.

107.8 Editors became institutional actors and not merely intermediaries

An editor decides what enters an issue, what is rejected, what is shortened, what language is normalised and what controversy receives space. In a small-language print field, those decisions can have long consequences because later anthologies and histories often inherit the periodical's selections. Editorial labour also includes soliciting contributions, collecting subscriptions, correcting proofs, maintaining correspondence and negotiating with printers. The editor thus joins writer, patron and publisher as a producer of literary value. A history that lists authors but omits editors misses the mechanism by which scattered writing becomes a visible movement or 'generation'. Editorial archives, where they survive, are consequently among the richest sources for reconstructing networks, exclusions and the economics of literary publication.

107.9 Subscribers, letters and notices made the reading public partially visible

Print history is not complete when the printer and editor are known. Subscription lists, letters to the editor, agents, bookseller notices and donation appeals show how publication was financed and how readers were imagined. A journal with subscribers in multiple cities demonstrates a network more directly than a later claim that it was 'widely read'. Complaints about delayed delivery reveal postal dependence; appeals for renewal reveal financial fragility; notices about missing issues reveal the practical difficulty of maintaining a serial archive. Such evidence also permits a more social history of reading, although caution is necessary: subscribers are not identical with readers, one copy may circulate through many hands, and poorer or female readers may be underrepresented in formal lists.

107.10 Literary associations converted periodic enthusiasm into organisational continuity

A magazine can disappear when an editor runs out of money or energy. An association can distribute responsibility across officers, committees, members and recurring meetings. Modern Maithili literary institutions used this associational form to organise conferences, publications, commemorations, lectures, prizes and campaigns. Their constitutions and minutes are therefore evidence of how cultural work was governed. They also show that literary identity required routine administration: membership fees, accounts, venues, printing contracts and correspondence. Associational continuity was never guaranteed, but the form made it possible for an institution to survive changes in individual leadership and to claim representation beyond one editorial household.

107.11 The Maithili Sahitya Parishad made publication an explicit institutional programme

The Maithili Sahitya Parishad, established in April 1930, is a particularly clear example of the movement from diffuse print activity to a formal literary programme. Scholarship on interwar Darbhanga notes that one of its stated aims was to publish works in Maithili; *Mithila Darshan*, issued in 1931, served as an early institutional publication. The Parishad is important not because it was the sole literary organisation but because it linked language, regional historical knowledge and organised publication. It also belonged to a wider South Asian age of language associations in which literary societies sought to define a public through publishing, collecting and standardising. Such bodies helped transform 'literature' from the aggregate of individual works into a field with institutional memory.

107.12 Presses, libraries and collections formed the less visible infrastructure behind literary movements

Writers and journals are visible because they leave titles. Press workers, binders, librarians, cataloguers and private collectors are often less visible, yet their work determines survival. A text that was widely discussed but badly archived may become historically marginal; a smaller publication preserved in a library may later become central to scholarship. Regional collections in Darbhanga, Patna, Kolkata and elsewhere, together with national bibliographic projects, have therefore shaped the recoverable Maithili canon. The Sahitya Akademi's bibliographic programmes are significant in this respect because they place Maithili publications within a multilingual national record. Bibliography is not neutral clerical work: choices about inclusion, title form, script and date affect what later researchers can find.

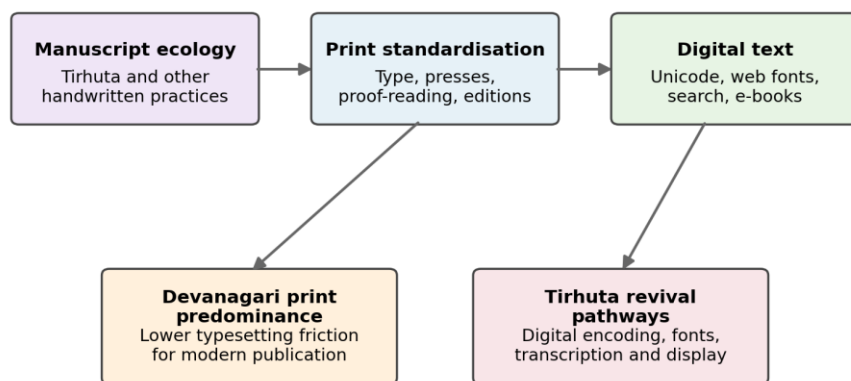
107.13 Script choice became a technological and institutional question in the age of print

Maithili's historical association with Tirhuta did not automatically determine the script of modern mass printing. Type availability, compositor training, printing cost, schooling and interregional legibility all influenced script choice. Devanagari became dominant in modern Maithili print partly because it could draw on a much larger North Indian printing and educational infrastructure. This did not erase Tirhuta from cultural memory or manuscript practice, but it changed the relationship between script and public access. Script debates should therefore not be reduced to a contest between authenticity and decline. They involve technologies, institutions and readerships. Later digital encoding would reopen some possibilities for Tirhuta, but the historical print shift had already shaped generations of literacy.

107.14 Devanagari print predominance reduced some production barriers while creating new norms

Once a language is routinely typeset in a widely supported script, printers can reuse type, fonts and technical knowledge. This lowers friction and helps small publishers. It also creates a standardising pressure: spellings that fit school grammars, dictionaries and editorial conventions become easier to reproduce than locally variable forms. Modern Maithili print consequently developed norms that were neither simply inherited from manuscripts nor imposed by one decree. They emerged through repeated editorial practice, pedagogy and publication. The same process could marginalise alternative spellings and scripts. A social history of standardisation must therefore ask who could read the chosen norm, who learned it at school, and whose speech forms were treated as 'incorrect' or merely regional.

Script choice became an institutional and technological question



No stage simply replaces the previous one: manuscript, print and digital practices continue to overlap.

Figure 425 — Manuscript, print and digital script ecologies overlap rather than simply replacing one another.

107.15 Universities and formal education created a second institutional circuit around print

When Maithili became a subject of university teaching and research, books acquired new uses as syllabi, reference works, dissertations and examination texts. Academic departments created demand for literary histories, grammars, edited texts and criticism, while university-trained scholars contributed to journals and literary associations. A 2012 parliamentary answer, drawing on UGC and Bihar government information, listed Maithili teaching at several Bihar universities including L. N. Mithila University, Patna University, Tilka Manjhi Bhagalpur University, B. R. Ambedkar Bihar University, Kameshwar Singh Darbhanga Sanskrit University and B. N. Mandal University. The institutional effect extends beyond enrolment figures: university recognition helps turn a literary field into an object of credentialed research and library acquisition.

107.16 The Sahitya Akademi connected Maithili to a national multilingual literary system

The Sahitya Akademi's award list begins its Maithili sequence in 1966. The significance of this institutional circuit is larger than the annual prize. The Akademi publishes Maithili books, sponsors

programmes, supports translation and maintains bibliographic and library infrastructures across recognised languages. Such mechanisms insert Maithili works into national comparison without requiring them to pass through Hindi or English as the sole literary gateway. Translation awards are especially important because they institutionalise movement in both directions: Maithili readers encounter works from other languages, and translation can make Maithili writing available elsewhere. National recognition therefore functions through recurring material practices - publishing, meetings, prizes, catalogues and archives - rather than through symbolic status alone.

107.17 Awards help construct a canon, but the award list is not the history of literature

A prize sequence is a powerful historical source because it records institutional judgements, genre labels and changing visibility. It can also distort if treated as a complete canon. Award eligibility depends on publication, timing, rules and jury processes; excellent writing may appear in magazines, self-published volumes or genres that receive less attention. Repeated awards to established publication networks can reinforce existing visibility. Conversely, a prize can rescue a book from limited circulation and create reprints, reviews and translations. The proper historical question is therefore not whether awards identify the 'best' literature, but how an award changes circulation, reputation and the resources available to writers and publishers.

107.18 Maithili Sahitya Sansthan demonstrates the role of research journals in institutional memory

Maithili Sahitya Sansthan states that it was established in Patna in 1969 for research on Mithila's cultural heritage, history and tradition. Its journal Mithila Bharati published five issues between 1969 and 1977, later resumed publication in 2014, and developed a bilingual research profile. This history illustrates a form of literary institution different from the general magazine. A research journal builds continuity through citation, documentation, edited sources and sustained argument. Its interruptions are equally revealing: specialist publishing depends on funding, editors and institutional labour that may be difficult to maintain for decades. Revival after a long break shows how institutional names and archives can reconnect generations even when publication is discontinuous.

107.19 Bihar's Maithili Academy shows both the possibilities and fragility of state-supported literary infrastructure

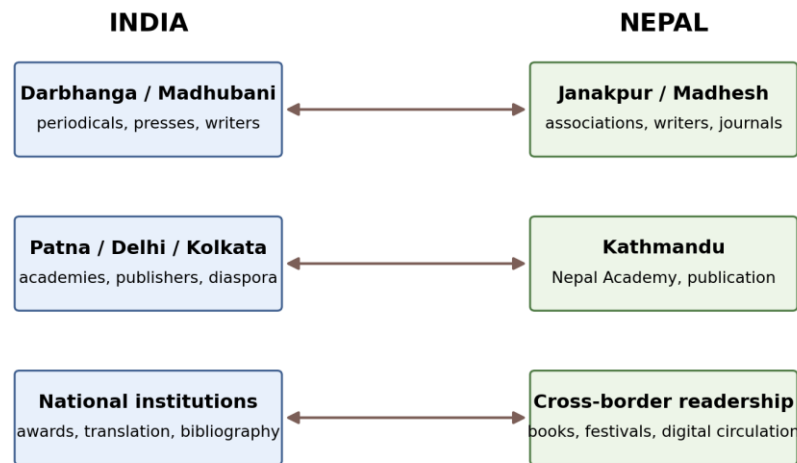
Bihar established a Maithili Academy through a government resolution dated 11 March 1975 as a society intended to preserve and promote Maithili language and literature. Its publications became part of the modern scholarly and literary record; government book lists include Academy titles such as Govind Jha's Uccatara Maithili Vyakaran. State support can enable grammars, editions and research that a commercial publisher might consider unprofitable. Yet dependence on administrative continuity creates another vulnerability. In a judgment dated 30 January 2026, the Patna High Court recorded counsel's submission that the Academy was no longer in existence, while contemporary reporting described public efforts to save or revive it. Institutional history is therefore not a one-way story of expansion: capacities can be created, weakened and lost.

107.20 Eighth Schedule inclusion changed constitutional status but did not automatically solve the material problems of publishing

The Constitution (Ninety-second Amendment) Act, 2003 added Maithili to the Eighth Schedule with effect from 7 January 2004. Constitutional recognition has major symbolic and administrative importance. It strengthens claims for language use, examinations, translation and public cultural support. But a constitutional entry does not itself print books, pay editors, train proof-readers, maintain libraries or create readers. The post-2004 history therefore needs two measures at once: formal status and practical infrastructure. A language may gain constitutional recognition while its small presses remain financially weak, school use uneven or public academies unstable. The gap between recognition and institutional capacity is itself a central fact of cultural modernity.

107.21 Nepal is a co-constitutive part of the modern Maithili literary field, not an external appendix

The India-Nepal border does not coincide with the Maithili speech area. Janakpur and other Madhesh towns have their own writers, associations, journals and performance institutions, while Kathmandu provides national-level publishing and academic infrastructures. Historical studies of Nepal's Maithili organisations identify the Akhil Nepal Maithili Sahitya Parishad in Kathmandu from 1966 and later Maithili Sahitya Parishad bodies and cultural organisations in Janakpur, Rajbiraj, Biratnagar and other towns. The institutional histories are not identical to Bihar's, because Nepal's state language policies and political transformations differ. Yet books, writers and cultural programmes cross the border. The correct unit of analysis is therefore a connected literary zone inside two states rather than a single national story duplicated on each side.



Maithili literary modernity is a cross-border field, not two sealed national histories.

Figure 426 — The modern Maithili literary field operates through linked institutional nodes in India and Nepal.

107.22 Nepal Academy demonstrates how a multilingual national institution can sustain Maithili publication

Nepal Academy's mandate covers Nepal's languages, literatures, culture, social sciences and philosophy, and its contemporary programmes include publication in languages other than Nepali. In March 2025 the

Academy announced an annual Maithili literary magazine, Aangna, then in its eleventh year and issued as a Maithili short-story special number. This is important evidence of institutional continuity: a national academy can provide editorial legitimacy, production support and archival visibility to a language journal even when commercial demand alone would be insufficient. At the same time, the Academy's multilingual structure means Maithili competes and collaborates within a broader national ecology of languages. The institutional question is therefore not merely whether Maithili is 'recognised', but how regularly resources are converted into books, journals, research and public programmes.

107.23 Janakpur and Madhesh associations connect literary publication with performance and civic culture

In Janakpur and other Madhesh centres, literary institutions often overlap with theatre, festival organisation, youth associations and cultural service. Such overlap matters because the reading public is not isolated from performance. A play may circulate as a printed script, be staged by a cultural body, reviewed in a journal and later archived digitally. A literary meeting may coincide with Vidyapati commemoration or a language campaign. This ecology makes institutional boundaries porous: one association can be publisher, organiser, patron and archive. For historians, the consequence is methodological. Records of literary life may survive in programme booklets, invitations, posters, photographs and local newspapers rather than in formal annual reports. These ephemeral sources deserve collection before they disappear.

107.24 Kolkata, Delhi and other migrant centres became secondary nodes of Maithili publication and association

Migration created readers outside the region and institutions followed them. Kolkata's long connection with Maithili periodicals and Delhi's later associations show how metropolitan centres could function as secondary literary capitals. These cities offered presses, universities, government employment, booksellers and audiences assembled from multiple districts. Diaspora associations, discussed in Chapter 106, could sponsor souvenirs, journals and commemorative volumes that preserved writing otherwise unlikely to appear in commercial book form. Yet metropolitan publication could also alter the language of address: editors sometimes wrote for readers accustomed to Hindi, Bengali or English environments, and bilingual paratexts became useful. The literary public was therefore expanded by migration while simultaneously being reshaped by it.

107.25 Small presses and author-financed books widened access to publication but weakened distribution and metadata

A small-language literary system often depends on publishers operating with limited capital, short print runs and informal distribution. This lowers the threshold for experimentation: poetry, criticism, local history and drama can reach print without needing a mass market. The cost is discoverability. A book may have no durable distributor, ISBN, library deposit, catalogue record or second edition. Author-financed publication can further blur the line between publisher and printer. These conditions do not make the literature less important; they make bibliographic reconstruction harder. A future history of Maithili publishing therefore requires systematic collection of title pages, colophons, catalogues and physical copies before family libraries disperse and local presses close.

107.26 The economics of print influenced genre, length, format and frequency

Paper cost, page count, type composition and expected sales shape literary form in practical ways. A periodical may prefer shorter contributions because it must fit a fixed signature; a small publisher may choose poetry because a thin volume is cheaper than a long novel; a journal may become irregular when postage rises or subscriptions lapse. Subsidised institutions can support large grammars, collected works and critical editions that would be difficult to recover through sales. Conversely, a commercially successful textbook or popular narrative may subsidise riskier titles. Literary history usually records genres as aesthetic categories, but their material history also belongs to the economics of publishing. Format is therefore evidence of the market and institutional environment in which a work was made.

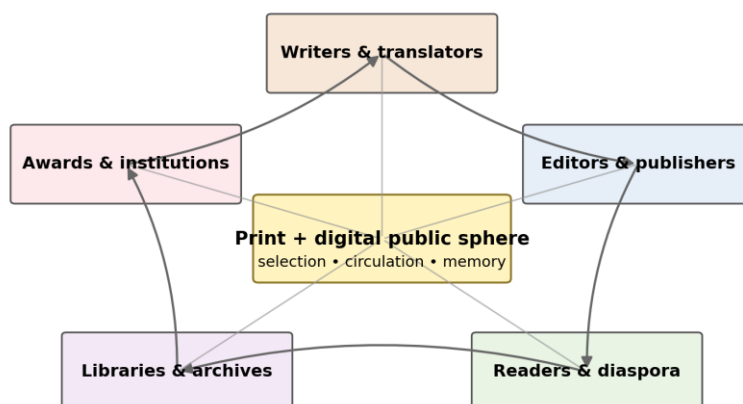
107.27 Women writers and alternative publics require a history broader than male editors and formal academies

The archive of literary institutions can reproduce the inequalities of the institutions themselves. Early committees, editorial boards and subscriber lists often overrepresent educated men with access to salaried employment, travel and public meeting spaces. Women nevertheless participated as writers, readers, performers, teachers and organisers, and their visibility increased as education expanded and new journals and institutions created entry points. Later award histories and contemporary publication show women writing across fiction, memoir, criticism and poetry. A gendered institutional history should therefore ask not merely when women first appeared in print, but who controlled editorial access, whether women had autonomous platforms, how household labour affected literary work and whether archives preserve correspondence and periodicals created by women.

107.28 Born-digital publication changed scarcity, periodicity and the geography of the Maithili literary public

The web reduced several costs that had constrained small-language periodicals: there was no need to print every copy, international readers could access an issue immediately, and archives could remain available without warehouse space. Videha, which began digital work in 2000 and developed into a fortnightly Maithili e-journal, is an important example of this transformation. Its model links serial publication with a cumulative web archive, making literary material searchable and available to readers outside India and Nepal. Digital publication also changes editorial tempo: corrections can be uploaded, audio and video can accompany text, and older material can be reorganised into thematic archives. The digital journal is therefore not simply a paper magazine displayed on a screen; it is a different publication infrastructure.

Literary institutions create a feedback system rather than a one-way chain



Digital publication accelerates the loop but also increases the need for metadata, preservation and authentication.

Figure 427 — Print and digital literary institutions form a feedback system of production, circulation and memory.

107.29 Digital abundance creates new problems of preservation, authenticity and access

A printed issue can survive for a century in a library even if the publisher disappears. A website can vanish when hosting expires, software breaks or a domain is lost. Digital preservation therefore requires deliberate redundancy: stable file names, backups, mirrored repositories, metadata, open formats and periodic migration. Searchability can also create false confidence. A text copied without provenance may circulate more widely than a carefully edited edition, and search engines privilege what is indexed rather than what is historically representative. Accessibility adds another institutional responsibility: Unicode text, language tags, alt text, transcripts and reflowable pages determine whether disabled readers and future software can use an archive. Digital modernity increases circulation, but it does not abolish curatorial labour.

107.30 Maithili literary modernity is best understood as an infrastructure of recurring institutions

Across the twentieth and early twenty-first centuries, Maithili print culture developed through repeated interaction among writers, editors, presses, associations, universities, academies, prizes, libraries, cross-border organisations and digital platforms. No single institution created the field, and none can permanently secure it. Periodicals can end; academies can weaken; technologies can become obsolete; readerships can move. Continuity comes from overlap. A work abandoned by one publisher may survive in a library, be reissued by an academy, translated through a national institution and later digitised by an online archive. This redundancy is the deepest institutional strength of the literary system. It also explains why preservation policy must treat books, periodicals, organisational records and digital files as one connected cultural infrastructure rather than as separate domains.

Table 107.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing Maithili print and literary institutions

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal historical use	Main limitation
Periodical issues	Editors, dates, serial debates, advertisements, reader correspondence	Reconstructing public argument and networks	Survival is often incomplete; reprints can hide issue-level variation
Books and	Publisher, press, place, edition, script, price and	Material history of publication and	Title-page data may be inconsistent in small-press

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal historical use	Main limitation
colophons	paratext	standardisation	publishing
Association records	Membership, officers, aims, meetings, accounts and publication programmes	Institutional continuity, patronage and governance	Archives often remain private or fragmentary
Library and bibliography records	Holdings, catalogues, edition histories and discoverability	Tracing survival and canon formation	Catalogues reflect collection policy and may omit ephemera
Awards and academy catalogues	Institutional recognition, genres, translations and subsidised publication	Mapping canonisation and national/state literary circuits	Awarded works cannot stand for the whole literary field
Digital archives and websites	Current issues, searchable texts, audio-video, metadata and global access	Studying born-digital publication and preservation practice	Websites can change or disappear; provenance must be checked
Oral/editorial testimony	Publishing labour, distribution, selection and unpublished context	Recovering processes absent from formal records	Memory requires corroboration and careful dating

Chapter 108 — Angika Print and Literary Institutions

Angika literary modernity cannot be reconstructed by starting from a list of organisations and projecting their categories backward. The speech forms now grouped under the name Angika long preceded the institutions that printed, classified and taught them. Modern print changed something different: it created repeatable editions, editorial norms, periodical rhythms, bibliographies, institutional offices and archives through which a regional literary field could recognise itself and argue about its boundaries.

That field developed under unequal conditions. Angika has a vigorous corpus of poetry, drama, fiction, folklore, grammar, lexicography and criticism, yet its publishing market has generally been smaller and less securely institutionalised than those of major scheduled languages. Bhagalpur became the principal modern node, but Banka, Munger, the wider Anga region, the Santhal Pargana belt, Patna, metropolitan migrant centres and later the internet all contributed. The history is therefore best read as an ecology of editors, small presses, associations, universities, academies, newspapers, performers, collectors and digital volunteers rather than as a single institutional lineage.

108.1 The history of modern Angika print is not the beginning of Angika language or expressive culture

A rigorous history must distinguish linguistic antiquity, regional memory and modern publication. Oral songs, narrative cycles, ritual repertoires, proverbs and local speech obviously existed before modern Angika books and journals. At the same time, claims that a particular ancient or early-medieval text is straightforwardly 'Angika' require period-specific linguistic argument rather than geographical association with ancient Anga alone. Print history offers firmer chronological ground because editions, title pages, publishers, issue numbers and institutional records can often be dated. This chapter therefore begins with verifiable modern publishing and institutional evidence while treating older attributions as a separate philological problem.

108.2 Naming and classification became part of print politics

Modern Angika has circulated under several labels, including Angika, Anga, Bhagalpuri and the Chhika-Chhiki terminology associated with linguistic description. A printed title fixes a name more sharply than ordinary speech does. Grammars, dictionaries, literary histories and journal mastheads therefore became instruments of classification as well as vehicles of content. Once editors selected 'Angika' as a publication label, they helped create a common literary address across local varieties. This did not erase internal variation, but it made debate about spelling, vocabulary and regional inclusion more explicit. The archive must consequently record not only what a text says but what language name its own title page uses.

108.3 Oral literature entered print through collection, selection and transcription

A large share of Angika's documented cultural wealth comes from songs, tales, sayings and performance traditions. When collectors transcribed wedding songs, seasonal songs, narrative cycles or local lore, they converted event-based performance into a portable text. That conversion preserved material that might otherwise have remained locally bounded, but it also changed it. Performance cues could disappear; variant lines might be regularised; pronunciation had to be represented through an orthography; and an editor could choose one version from several. Printed folklore should therefore be treated as both evidence of oral culture and evidence of the collector's historical moment.

108.4 Bihar Rashtrabhasha Parishad publications provided an early state-supported platform for Angika study

An important milestone was the Bihar Rashtrabhasha Parishad's publication of Maheshwari Singh Mahesh's *Angika Bhasha aur Sahitya* in 1959. The significance of such a volume lies not only in its contents. A public institution devoted to language and literature was giving Angika a durable bibliographic form within Bihar's post-independence cultural infrastructure. Later institutional publications collecting Angika songs and other materials similarly helped move locally transmitted repertoires into libraries and research catalogues. State publication did not settle questions of linguistic status, but it enlarged the archive on which subsequent scholarship could work.

108.5 Folklore collections created a bridge between household memory and literary history

Collections of *sanskar* songs, *lok-gathas* and tales are especially important in a region where women's performance, caste-specific repertoires and village ritual often left fewer conventional written records than elite literary production. A song printed in a collection can preserve vocabulary, kinship terms, ritual sequence and social ideals; a narrative can reveal routes of circulation across Anga, Mithila, Bengal and the Santhal Parganas. Yet collections should not be used as timeless ethnography. The date and place of collection, identity of performers, editorial interventions and later reprints all matter. Literary institutions become historically valuable when they preserve those layers rather than presenting every item as an undated survival.

108.6 The 1960s and 1970s widened the possibilities for separately published Angika books

Accounts of the modern Angika movement associate the early 1960s with a new phase of deliberate book publication and language activism, including the work of Naresh Pandey Chakor and other writers. The precise claim that any one title was the 'first modern Angika book' should be tested against surviving catalogues and copies, because firstness is often repeated more readily than it is bibliographically demonstrated. What is clear is the broader transition: plays, poems, grammatical works, collections and research increasingly appeared with Angika named as the language of composition, creating a corpus that could be reviewed, taught and cited.

108.7 Ang Madhuri made periodicity itself into an institution

The archive of Ang Madhuri identifies January 1971 as year 1, issue 2, which places the first issue in December 1970. Edited for decades by Naresh Pandey Chakor, the monthly became one of the most persistent institutions in the Angika literary public. Continuity matters because a serial can do what an isolated book cannot: return to debates, publish new writers, print letters and notices, review books, announce meetings and create expectations of the next issue. Its long run also provides historians with a longitudinal record of vocabulary, genres, contributors, organisations and changing priorities.

108.8 A periodical does not merely reflect a canon; it helps manufacture one

Editors choose which poems, stories, essays and reviews deserve space. Repeated publication turns some writers into familiar names, while special issues can elevate a genre, historical figure or regional theme. Ang Madhuri and other Angika periodicals therefore need to be studied issue by issue, not simply cited as evidence that a magazine existed. Tables of contents, contributor locations, editorial notes, advertisements,

obituaries and review sections can reveal how a literary network was assembled. The absence of a writer from one magazine is not proof of literary insignificance, but patterns across multiple serials can show how institutional visibility accumulated.

Selected milestones in modern Angika print and literary institutions

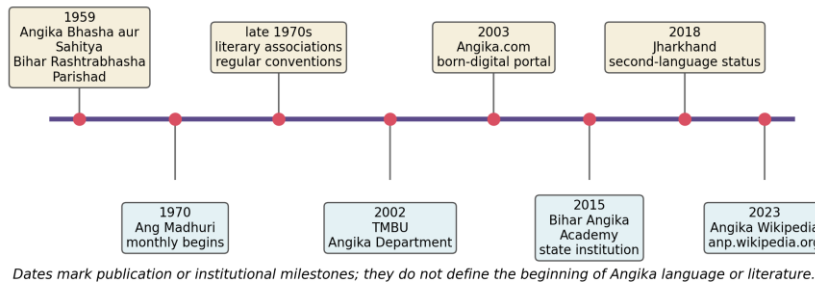


Figure 428 — Selected milestones in modern Angika print and literary institutions.

108.9 Angika periodical culture was plural rather than monopolised by one magazine

Literary surveys and community archives record titles such as *Angika*, *Aangi*, *Uttarangi*, *Champa*, *Angikanchal*, *Ang Tarangini*, *Ang Dhatri* and others alongside *Ang Madhuri*. Their runs were uneven and surviving sets are incomplete. That incompleteness is itself historically significant: small-language journals often depended on one editor, a small subscription base, voluntary distribution and fragile storage. A serious bibliography should therefore avoid assuming continuous publication from a masthead alone. Each surviving issue should be dated and described, with gaps left visible. Digitisation projects can then distinguish an actual missing issue from an issue that simply has not yet been scanned.

108.10 Orthography became a practical editorial technology

Angika publication in Devanagari required editors to decide how local phonology, vowel quality, morphology and colloquial forms would be represented with typefaces and later digital fonts designed for wider Hindi usage. Grammars and orthographic manuals attempted to regularise choices, but living literary practice remained diverse. Standardisation can lower the cost of teaching, typesetting and searching; excessive regularisation can also erase dialectal evidence. For historical editions, the best practice is therefore double: preserve original spelling in facsimile or diplomatic transcription while providing normalised metadata that allows readers to find related forms.

108.11 Newspaper columns connected Angika literary prose to a larger mass-reading public

From the late twentieth century onward, regional newspapers intermittently carried *Angika* columns, features and language pages. Literary surveys remember initiatives in papers such as *Prabhat Khabar* and *Dainik Jagran*, while more recent regional journalism has again experimented with *Angika* columns and reports. Newspaper space matters because it reaches readers who may never subscribe to a literary journal. It also encourages topical prose, reportage, humour and short commentary. But newspaper history is especially vulnerable to retrospective error; exact column titles, dates and frequency should be verified against issue archives rather than reconstructed from memory alone.

108.12 Literary associations transformed publication into recurring collective activity

The Angika literary field has been sustained by associations that convene conferences, poetry readings, commemorations, book releases and campaigns. The Akhil Bharatiya Angika Sahitya Kala Manch, whose anniversary history places its origins in the later 1970s, became one such durable network. Angika Sansad and other publishing or cultural bodies appear repeatedly in book imprints and author bibliographies. Their importance is material: an association can share printing costs, create an audience for a new title, bestow honours, circulate books outside ordinary shops and connect writers across districts. Event programmes and membership records are therefore part of print history, not peripheral ephemera.

108.13 Bhagalpur became the principal institutional node, but the literary geography was wider

Bhagalpur's presses, university, editors, newspapers and cultural organisations gave it exceptional weight in modern Angika life. Yet a Bhagalpur-centred history can become misleading if it turns the city into the whole language region. Banka, Munger, Sultanganj, Khagaria and other Bihar centres contributed writers and organisations, while the Santhal Pargana districts of present-day Jharkhand formed another important zone of speech and cultural exchange. Patna mattered for state institutions and publishing; Delhi, Mumbai and other migrant cities provided readers and activists. The literary field is therefore better mapped as a network of nodes with unequal density.

108.14 Small presses and author-financed publication widened the corpus while making preservation difficult

Many Angika books appeared through small publishers, literary bodies or direct author subsidy. This model makes possible works that a commercial publisher would reject as too specialised: a local history, a grammar, a thin poetry collection, a play, a dictionary or a study of folk culture. It also produces bibliographic vulnerability. Short print runs disappear quickly; ISBNs may be absent; publisher addresses change; deposit copies may never reach major libraries. A future Angika union catalogue should record cover images, title pages, colophons, edition statements and holding libraries so that a title's existence does not depend on one private collection.

108.15 Genre expansion was a sign of institutional maturation

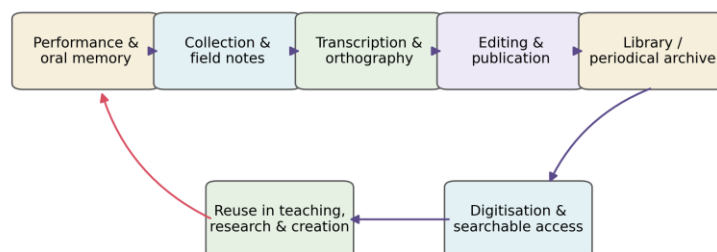
By the late twentieth century, Angika publication was no longer confined to collections of songs or occasional poetry. Bibliographies record drama, short fiction, novels, children's literature, literary criticism, prosody, grammar, lexicography, folklore studies and histories of language and literature. This widening of genre matters because each form demands different infrastructure. A dictionary needs sustained compilation; a research history needs citations and libraries; drama requires interaction with performance; children's books depend on pedagogy and illustration. The range of genres therefore reveals the diversification of institutions behind the texts as much as the creativity of individual authors.

108.16 Literary history and journalism history became self-conscious Angika genres

Works described as histories of Angika literature and of Angika journalism mark a further institutional stage: the field begins to document its own development. Such histories are indispensable starting points because they preserve names, titles and organisational memory that may survive nowhere else. They also

require source criticism. Movement histories can privilege activists known to the author, conflate publication with composition, or repeat claims of priority without examining earlier copies. The strongest future historiography will combine these insider records with library catalogues, surviving issues, government documents, university files, private papers and oral interviews.

From oral repertory to durable literary record



Each stage can preserve evidence, but each can also regularise, select or omit it; issue-level and edition-level provenance therefore matters.

Figure 429 — Oral repertory, print and digital archives form a chain of preservation and transformation.

108.17 Tilka Manjhi Bhagalpur University gave Angika a durable higher-education address

Contemporary reporting dates the establishment of the university's Angika department to 10 June 2002. Whatever administrative disputes surrounded its early status, the institutional fact is now clear: Tilka Manjhi Bhagalpur University lists a University Department of Angika within its Faculty of Humanities, and its 2025 examination programmes include Angika in the master's curriculum. This changes the literary economy. Texts become prescribed reading, theses create demand for bibliographies, students learn research method, and authors can be discussed within a recurring academic calendar. A university department also generates records—syllabi, examination papers, dissertations, seminar programmes—that future historians can use.

108.18 Higher education converts literary production into curriculum, research and credential

Once a language is taught at postgraduate level, a new cycle begins. Literary histories are read comparatively; grammars become teaching tools; editions need reliable texts; dissertations investigate individual authors, genres or folklore; and graduates carry institutional knowledge into schools, media and cultural organisations. The cycle is not automatically self-sustaining. Small enrolments, limited posts, uncertain undergraduate pathways and weak library budgets can constrain it. The historical importance of the TMBU department therefore lies both in what it institutionalised and in the visible fragility of sustaining specialised language education within a public university.

108.19 The Bihar Angika Academy created a state-level cultural institution in 2015

Bihar created an Angika Academy in 2015 for the development and promotion of the language. Education Department notifications from 2018 show the academy functioning as an identifiable administrative body, with an acting president-cum-director arrangement, and contemporary reports record its search for an independent office. The academy's establishment mattered symbolically because Angika now had a named state institution parallel in form to other language academies. Its historical effectiveness,

however, must be judged by publications, grants, research, dictionaries, events, staffing and archival deposits rather than by the act of creation alone.

108.20 Institutional recognition without staffing can produce a hollow shell

The weakness of Bihar's language academies is a reminder that legal creation and cultural capacity are different things. A 2026 report on the state's academies described the Angika Academy as having only one staff member against fifteen sanctioned posts and judged its contribution severely constrained. That snapshot should not be treated as a timeless verdict; staffing can change. It does show why historians need administrative evidence alongside celebratory accounts. An academy with no editors, librarians, accounts staff or programme officers cannot easily sustain publications, fellowships or cataloguing. Cultural institutions require recurring budgets and personnel, not only inaugural announcements.

108.21 Jharkhand's recognition of Angika as a second state language widened the administrative geography of the literary field

Jharkhand's multilingual policy has included Angika among the state's second official or second state languages, with accounts tracing the inclusion of Angika, Magahi, Bhojpuri and Maithili to 2018. This is significant for Angika because the speech area and literary networks cross the Bihar-Jharkhand boundary, especially toward the Santhal Parganas. State recognition can create openings for cultural programming, education and public communication, but it does not automatically generate a publishing market. The historical question is therefore not simply whether a language appears in a notification, but whether recognition produces teachers, books, libraries, competitions, broadcasting and administrative use.

108.22 Constitutional status and literary value must not be conflated

Angika is not currently included in the Eighth Schedule of the Constitution of India, and its inclusion remains an object of organised advocacy. The absence has institutional consequences because scheduled-language status affects some national cultural and competitive frameworks. It does not provide a measure of literary worth, age or linguistic distinctiveness. A historical account should therefore separate three questions that activists may understandably join: what the linguistic evidence shows, what institutions exist, and what constitutional recognition has been granted. Literature can be vigorous before recognition; recognition can also remain weakly implemented without a durable publishing and educational infrastructure.

108.23 Print, radio and performance formed a mixed-media Angika public

Angika writers have often moved between page, microphone and stage. Plays published in book form could be performed; poets heard on radio could later appear in journals; folk performers supplied material to collectors; public literary meetings generated newspaper reports. This mixed-media circulation is important because print was never the only modernising medium. Chapter 109 examines broadcasting in detail, but for literary history the key point is that publication gave performance a citable afterlife while radio and stage supplied audiences that small print runs alone could not reach. The boundary between literary institution and media institution was therefore porous.

Angika literary institutional ecology

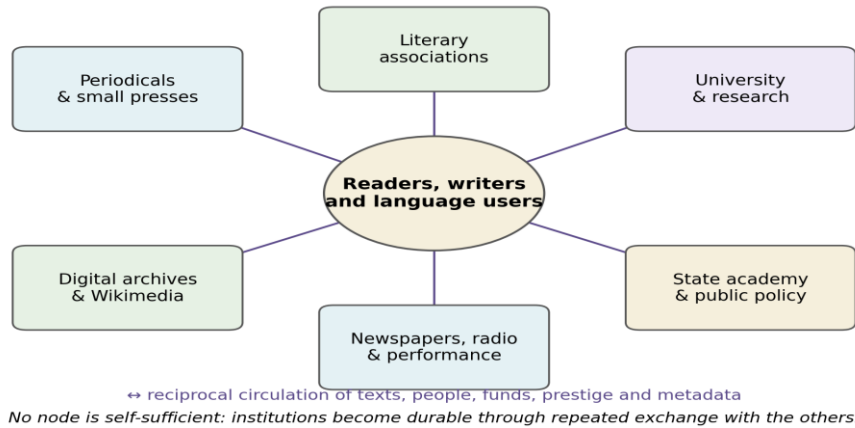


Figure 430 — Angika literary institutions operate as a reciprocal ecology rather than a single hierarchy.

108.24 Women writers and performers are easier to undercount than to prove absent

A print archive dominated by male editors, association office-bearers and formally published authors can obscure women's contribution. Women's songs may enter collections without full performer metadata; household writing may remain unpublished; contributors may appear only intermittently in journals; and cultural labour around festivals can be administratively invisible. The remedy is not to invent representation but to expand the evidence base. Contributor indexes by gender where knowable, oral-history interviews, school and college magazines, women's organisations, correspondence and performer credits can reveal participation that a conventional author bibliography misses. The same method applies to caste and occupational groups poorly represented in formal committees.

108.25 Migration created a secondary distribution system for Angika books and organisations

As Chapter 106 showed for diaspora institutions generally, migrants do not leave language behind when they leave the region. Angika activists and writers have organised in Delhi, Mumbai and other cities, carrying journals and books into new networks. Metropolitan residence can help publication by providing access to larger presses, book fairs, universities and national advocacy, while return journeys bring titles back into local circulation. Migration also changes subject matter: urban work, separation, transport and regional identity become literary themes. A full publication history should therefore record where a book was printed, where the author lived and where copies circulated; those three geographies need not coincide.

108.26 Angika.com, operating since 2003, created a born-digital literary infrastructure

Angika.com describes itself as a volunteer, non-commercial project operating since 2003. Its historical importance lies in the range of functions gathered in one digital environment: literature, author profiles, dictionaries, grammar, periodical collections, media references and later specialised sub-sites for books and magazines. A web portal lowers the cost of global distribution and can rescue material from physical scarcity. It also creates a new editorial power: search rankings, page categories, digitisation choices and metadata

determine what becomes visible. The digital editor thus performs many of the same canonical functions as the print editor, but at greater scale and speed.

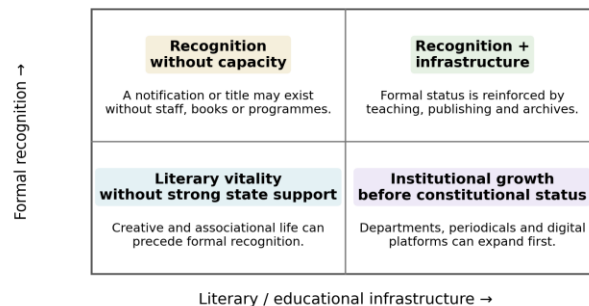
108.27 Digitised periodicals make serial history searchable, but scans require archival discipline

The online Ang Madhuri collection demonstrates the scholarly value of issue-level digitisation. A historian can verify year and issue numbering, compare mastheads, trace contributors and identify publication gaps without depending on a single physical holding. The next step is preservation-grade metadata: scan source, completeness, page order, missing covers, publication date, editor, place, rights status and checksum. Searchable OCR can assist discovery, but Angika spelling variation and Devanagari recognition errors mean OCR should not replace page images. The best digital archive keeps the facsimile as evidence and treats machine-readable text as a navigational layer.

108.28 Angika Wikipedia in 2023 marked a new stage of distributed digital authorship

Wikimedia records show that the Angika-language Wikipedia at anp.wikipedia.org was launched in March 2023 after community and Language Committee processes. Unlike a journal, Wikipedia has no fixed issue and no single editor; articles are revised continuously by distributed contributors. That model changes literary infrastructure in three ways. It gives the language a standardised digital code environment, creates reusable encyclopaedic prose, and forces contributors to negotiate spelling, terminology and verifiability in public. It does not replace books, scholarship or literary magazines, but it expands the domains in which Angika can function as a written language.

Recognition and infrastructure are different historical dimensions



The matrix is conceptual, not a scorecard. Literary value should never be inferred from constitutional status alone.

Figure 431 — Formal recognition and literary infrastructure should be analysed as separate dimensions.

108.29 The next institutional priority is not another claim of priority but a verifiable union catalogue

Angika literary history contains many claims about the first book, first journal, first grammar or earliest writer. Some will prove correct; others may change when private collections are opened or overlooked issues are found. The most productive infrastructure would therefore be a union catalogue rather than a monument to firstness. Each record should include author, title, language label, genre, publisher, place, year, edition, pagination, cover and title-page images, holding institution, digital copy if lawful, and notes on

variant spellings. Periodicals need issue-level records. Such a catalogue would turn scattered memory into evidence and make future literary history corrigible rather than declarative.

108.30 Angika literary modernity is an institutional history of persistence under constrained scale

The modern Angika field has been built through repeated acts of persistence: collecting songs, financing thin books, sustaining journals, forming associations, teaching postgraduate students, campaigning for public institutions, writing newspaper columns, digitising old issues and building new online platforms. No single milestone completes that process. The 1959 institutional publication, *Ang Madhuri*'s long serial life, the Bhagalpur university department, the Bihar academy, Jharkhand recognition, web archives and Angika Wikipedia each solve different problems and leave others open. Their connected history shows that a literary language becomes durable not through recognition alone but through recurring systems of production, circulation, teaching, criticism and preservation.

Table 108.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing Angika print and literary institutions

Evidence	Establishes	Historical use	Main limitation
Books / colophons	Edition, imprint, date	Build a verified bibliography	Reprints may hide chronology
Periodicals	Issue, editor, contributors	Trace debates and networks	Runs are often incomplete
Associations	Officers, events, imprints	Reconstruct collective activity	Anniversary memory can simplify change
University records	Courses, exams, theses	Measure academic growth	Formal status may differ from teaching
Government records	Academy, appointments, budget	Date formal state action	Creation does not prove capacity
Media archives	Columns, reviews, broadcasts	Link literary and mass publics	Preservation is uneven
Digital archives	Metadata, scans, search	Preserve and discover scarce material	Link rot, OCR and provenance problems
Oral / private records	Editorial memory, ephemera	Recover hidden networks	Memory needs corroboration

Chapter 109 — Radio and Broadcasting

Radio changed the scale and temporality of public culture in Mithila, Vajji and Anga. Print required a physical copy and a reader; broadcasting could carry a voice, song, agricultural advisory, drama, news bulletin or political speech across many households at once. Yet the existence of a transmitter did not create a single regional public. Reception depended on signal strength, electricity or batteries, receiver ownership, listening time, language choice, gendered control of household space and the station's editorial decisions. Radio therefore belongs to social and economic history as much as to media history: it reorganised cultural labour, created new professions, altered the circulation of music and speech, and made the state audibly present in everyday life.

The regional story is also transborder and technologically layered. Akashvani stations at Patna, Bhagalpur and Darbhanga formed different nodes in the Indian public-service system, while Radio Nepal and the later explosion of FM stations created another broadcasting ecology across Madhesh and Kathmandu. Maithili, Angika, Bajjika, Hindi, Nepali, Urdu, Sanskrit, Santhali and other languages shared frequencies and institutional space rather than occupying sealed territories. Medium wave, FM, cassette recording, satellite distribution, mobile streaming and on-demand audio did not simply replace one another. They accumulated. This chapter therefore reconstructs broadcasting as an institutional chain linking language politics, public service, cultural performance, labour, technology, listening practices and preservation.

109.1 Radio made simultaneity a new social resource

A printed page can travel slowly and be reread; radio's distinctive power is that many separated listeners can hear the same scheduled event at approximately the same time. This simultaneity mattered for morning news, weather, agricultural advice, devotional music, festival coverage and emergency communication. It also created ritualised listening habits around programme schedules. In a region where mobility, flood disruption and uneven literacy shaped access to information, the spoken broadcast could cross some barriers that print could not. But simultaneity should not be confused with equality. Reception varied by distance from the transmitter, quality of the set, atmospheric conditions and whether a household could control the time and place of listening.

109.2 Broadcasting entered a landscape already structured by oral performance and print

Radio did not invent the song, story, debate, sermon or drama. It selected existing forms and reworked them for a timed, microphone-centred medium. A wedding song performed for women in a courtyard became different when compressed into a studio slot; a stage play became a sound drama when scenery had to be translated into dialogue, narration and effects. Print and radio also fed each other. Authors wrote scripts, periodicals announced programmes, songs heard on air were later printed or recorded, and radio performers acquired reputations that affected live performance markets. Broadcasting therefore expanded an older cultural ecology instead of forming a separate world.

109.3 Akashvani Patna supplied an early post-independence regional platform

All India Radio's Patna station, commissioned in 1948 according to AIR technical records, became an important post-independence broadcasting centre for Bihar. Before dedicated stations existed at Bhagalpur and Darbhanga, Patna necessarily carried much of the burden of representing Bihar's linguistic and cultural diversity. The resulting hierarchy was both technical and editorial: regional languages competed for finite

airtime within a state-centred schedule. Later demands for more Maithili broadcasting and for a Darbhanga station reveal that listeners did not regard “regional service” as culturally neutral. The location of the studio, the language of continuity announcements and the proportion of locally originated programmes all affected whether audiences experienced radio as their own.

109.4 Akashvani Bhagalpur created a durable broadcast node for Anga

The AIR Compendium records the Bhagalpur medium-wave station as commissioned on 5 March 1967. Its importance was greater than the date or transmitter power alone suggests. A station in Bhagalpur provided a recurring institutional address for artists, writers, musicians, announcers and producers from the Anga region. It created auditions, fees, scripts, recording sessions and programme schedules through which local cultural forms entered an official archive. A 2026 parliamentary reply described Akashvani Bhagalpur as operating a 20 kW MW transmitter and a 100 W FM transmitter, with more than twelve hours of original programming within a daily schedule of over seventeen hours and broadcasts including Angika.

109.5 The Darbhanga station emerged from both technical planning and language politics

A parliamentary record states that the Darbhanga 10 kW MW transmitter was commissioned on 2 February 1976. The station’s history should also be read against earlier agitation for greater Maithili representation on radio. Demands during the 1950s and 1960s linked broadcasting to recognition: a local station promised not only clearer reception but more control over language, repertoire and cultural personnel. A dedicated Mithila-region station therefore represented an institutional gain even though it remained part of a centralised public-service structure. Later campaigns for more Maithili airtime demonstrate that gaining a transmitter did not settle the question of linguistic proportion or editorial autonomy.

109.6 Signal coverage made geography measurable but never culturally exact

Medium-wave service areas are defined by transmitter power, frequency, terrain, interference and time of day, not by cultural boundaries. Darbhanga’s signal could reach beyond a district; Bhagalpur’s could cross administrative borders; listeners in the Nepal Tarai could hear Indian stations, while Radio Nepal and local Nepali FM signals crossed southward. This technical permeability matters historically. Mithila, Anga and Madhesh were never sealed broadcasting zones. At the same time, a coverage map is only potential audibility. It cannot show who actually listened, which language they preferred, whether women or children controlled the receiver, or whether a programme was trusted. Broadcasting geography must therefore combine engineering records with reception evidence.

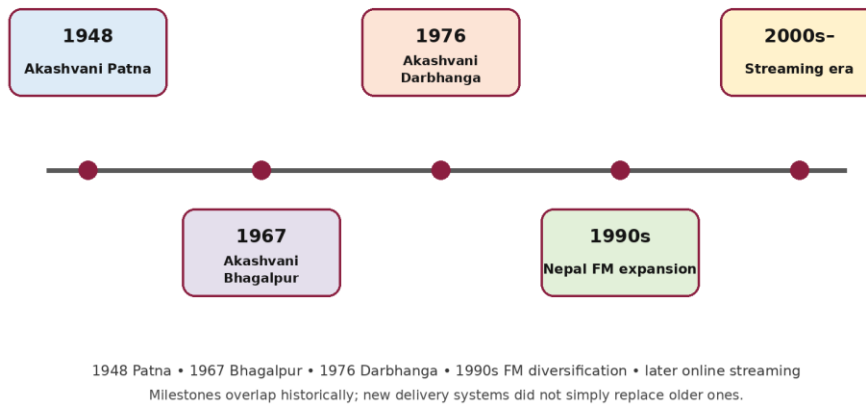
Radio and broadcasting: selected institutional milestones

Figure 432 — Selected institutional milestones in regional radio and broadcasting.

109.7 Language scheduling turned airtime into an allocative institution

Every multilingual station has to divide a finite day. The resulting schedule is a form of cultural allocation. Minutes assigned to Maithili, Angika, Hindi, Urdu, Sanskrit, Santhali or other languages reveal institutional priorities, but raw duration does not tell the whole story. Prime listening hours differ from marginal hours; original production differs from relayed content; news has a different public authority from music; and a weekly literary programme cannot be equated with a daily bulletin. Historians should therefore reconstruct not simply whether a language “was broadcast” but when, how often, in what genres, with what production resources and under what label.

109.8 The microphone helped standardise speech while preserving audible variation

Print standardisation works through spelling and grammar; radio standardisation works through pronunciation, vocabulary, pace and announcer selection. Studio norms can privilege educated or metropolitan varieties, especially in news and formal talks. Yet radio is also unusually good at preserving variation because the voice carries accent, intonation and code-switching that writing may suppress. Maithili and Angika broadcasts could therefore pull in opposite directions at once: formal announcer speech could strengthen a prestige norm, while interviews, songs and field recordings could make local varieties audible. The archive of sound is consequently essential for linguistic history, not merely an illustration of written sources.

109.9 Radio drama created a distinctive literary labour market

Broadcast drama converted writers into scriptwriters and stage actors into microphone performers. The medium rewarded concise scenes, recognisable voices, acoustic cues and dialogue that could carry setting without visual scenery. Stations commissioned or accepted scripts, auditioned artists, paid fees and repeated successful forms. In both Maithili and Angika, this created a cultural economy adjacent to print but not reducible to it. Biographical records of Angika writers, for example, preserve evidence of numerous radio plays produced from Bhagalpur. Such claims are strongest when they can be matched with station logs, scripts, payment records or recordings; memory alone should not be used to manufacture precise broadcast counts.

109.10 Music broadcasting altered the relation between household repertoire and public canon

Songs previously embedded in ritual, work, season or locality could become “folk music” once selected for broadcast. Studio duration, accompaniment and audition standards changed performance. Radio also created repeat exposure: a singer or tune could become recognisable across districts, and the station could transform particular voices into regional celebrities. This process was not simply preservation. Selection inevitably canonised some repertoires and neglected others. Women’s ritual songs, caste- or occupation-specific performance and minority-language forms could be simultaneously documented and decontextualised. A social history of radio music must therefore ask who performed, who selected, how the item was labelled and what happened when a lived repertoire became programme content.

109.11 Farm and rural programmes made broadcasting part of the development state

Post-independence public radio treated rural listeners as a special audience. Agricultural extension, weather information, crop practices, animal care, health and cooperative advice placed the microphone within the developmental apparatus. Such programmes are valuable evidence of state priorities, but they should not be read as proof of adoption. The distance between advice and practice depended on landholding, irrigation, credit, literacy, gender and local ecological conditions. In flood-prone north Bihar, for example, the utility of a general crop message could vary sharply by river regime and season. Listener letters, farm surveys and local extension records are therefore necessary to evaluate how developmental broadcasting entered everyday decision-making.

109.12 Women’s programmes reveal both inclusion and paternalism

Dedicated women’s slots created opportunities for female announcers, singers, writers and experts, and could circulate information about health, education, law and household economics. Yet the very category “women’s programme” often assumed that women’s primary social location was domestic. Broadcasting could therefore expand voice while reproducing a narrow model of appropriate subject matter. The historical question is not whether women were present on air but what forms of authority they were allowed to exercise. Comparing programme scripts, performer rosters and listener correspondence can show when women appeared as artists, citizens, workers, farmers and political subjects rather than only as mothers or homemakers.

109.13 Children and youth broadcasting created new pedagogic publics

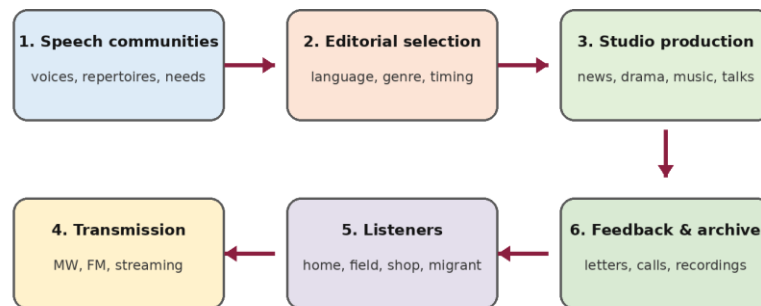
Radio could reach children beyond the classroom through stories, quizzes, songs, educational talks and school broadcasts. In regions with uneven school infrastructure, such programmes carried an egalitarian promise. Their effect nevertheless depended on access to receivers and on scheduling around school and labour. Youth programmes also created an entry route into broadcasting for new voices and modern music. As cassette, FM and later mobile audio expanded, young listeners gained more control over what and when they heard. This shift from a fixed schedule to selectable audio is one of the most important transformations in the social history of listening.

109.14 News bulletins gave language recognition a special political weight

A literary song in a language and a news bulletin in that language do not have the same institutional meaning. News places a language inside the routine vocabulary of government, elections, economy, disaster

and international affairs. That is why demands for Maithili news acquired symbolic importance. In Nepal, Radio Nepal gradually expanded multilingual news beyond Nepali and English. Current Radio Nepal materials list Maithili among its bulletin languages. Secondary accounts disagree on the exact start year of Maithili news, with dates around the early 1990s; this discrepancy should be resolved from Radio Nepal's own archival logs rather than repeated as settled fact.

How a radio public is produced



Each stage can include, translate, standardise or exclude.

Figure 433 — Broadcasting as an institutional chain from speech community to archive.

109.15 Radio Nepal created a second public-service axis for the Maithili region

Radio Nepal, established in 1951, developed from a small short-wave service into a national broadcaster using medium wave, FM and later satellite and online distribution. For Maithili-speaking populations in Nepal, this mattered because public broadcasting located Maithili within the national multilingual order rather than treating it only as a cross-border cultural language. Provincial and regional transmission further altered the relationship between Kathmandu and Madhesh. The same listener could potentially hear Radio Nepal, Indian Akashvani stations and later local FM. This competitive and overlapping environment is crucial: language publics were shaped by multiple states and markets at once.

109.16 Nepal's FM opening broke the monopoly of a single broadcasting institution

Nepal's 1990s communication reforms opened FM broadcasting to actors beyond the state. Radio Sagarmatha, on air in 1997 after a long licensing struggle, became South Asia's best-known early independent community-radio example. Its importance for this regional history is indirect but structural: once independent and community FM became viable, local-language broadcasting could be produced closer to listeners. Madhesh towns subsequently developed dense FM ecologies in which Maithili appeared in news, phone-ins, music, education and civic programming. The centre of gravity moved from a few national transmitters toward many local studios, even though ownership, finance and political influence remained uneven.

109.17 Janakpur and neighbouring FM stations localised Maithili public speech

Local FM in Dhanusha, Mahottari, Siraha and adjoining districts changed the scale at which Maithili broadcasting could operate. A station did not need to represent an entire nation or state; it could discuss municipal services, schools, roads, health posts, local elections, markets and cultural events in the language of

nearby listeners. Development organisations also used multi-station networks for Maithili educational programmes. The “Appan Shikshya” project, for example, was distributed through six FM stations in the region beginning in 2017. Such networks demonstrate that local radio became both a civic forum and a delivery infrastructure for NGOs and public-interest campaigns.

109.18 Call-ins changed listeners from an imagined audience into audible participants

The telephone transformed radio’s social structure. Listeners could request songs, answer quizzes, report local problems, debate presenters or speak in mixed and informal registers. This interaction challenged the one-way model of broadcasting and exposed differences between formal studio language and everyday speech. A 2010 study of Maithili FM programmes in Nepal, for example, examined English code-mixing in telephone-based broadcasts and listener attitudes. Call-in radio is therefore a rich source for the study of linguistic change, aspiration and youth culture, although ethical and archival problems arise because participant consent and long-term preservation were rarely designed for later historical research.

109.19 Commercial FM reorganised attention around advertising and measurable audiences

Private FM depends more directly on advertising, sponsorship and market segmentation than classic public-service radio. This changes programming incentives. Shorter speech, popular music, branded contests, traffic-style updates and advertiser-friendly dayparts can displace slower literary forms. At the same time, commercial competition may create airtime for local language because advertisers want access to local consumers. Language visibility therefore need not arise from cultural policy alone; it can also be produced by market logic. The resulting public is different from the subscriber public of print and the citizen public imagined by state broadcasting: it is simultaneously a listener community and an audience commodity.

109.20 Community radio linked broadcasting to participation and local accountability

The community-radio ideal treats listeners not merely as consumers but as participants who can shape content, report problems and produce programmes. Nepal became a major South Asian laboratory for this model after the late 1990s. In practice, the category “community” covers diverse ownership and funding arrangements, and local stations can be vulnerable to party influence, donor priorities or financial crisis. Yet the model is historically significant because it shifted the normative question from “what should the broadcaster tell the public?” to “who gets to speak through the station?” This distinction is especially important in multilingual Madhesh, where language choice is inseparable from representation.

Three overlapping radio ecologies



These systems coexist; language publics move across institutions and technologies.

Figure 434 — Public-service, local FM/community and digital-audio ecologies overlap rather than replace one another.

109.21 Disaster and flood broadcasting reveal radio's infrastructural value

Mithila and north Bihar are repeatedly affected by flood, while Nepal's Tarai faces related river and monsoon risks. During disruption, radio can remain useful when roads fail and print distribution stops, particularly if receivers are battery powered. Emergency value, however, depends on local specificity. River level, embankment breach, evacuation route and relief-centre information must reach the correct population quickly and in understandable language. Public and community broadcasters therefore function as part of disaster infrastructure, not merely cultural institutions. Historical study should compare emergency schedules and warnings with actual disaster chronologies to determine when radio reduced uncertainty and when communication systems failed.

109.22 Migration expanded radio audiences beyond the territorial reach of transmitters

Migrants carried listening habits with them. In Kolkata, Delhi, Punjab, the Gulf or Kathmandu, a Maithili- or Angika-speaking migrant might seek regional songs and news as a form of continuity with home. Before internet streaming, this depended on shortwave, cassettes, recorded programmes or occasional signal reach. Online radio radically changed the equation because a station located in Darbhanga, Bhagalpur or Nepal could be heard globally. The diaspora audience is therefore not an accidental extension of local broadcasting; it alters the imagined public of the station. Programme producers can now address listeners who are culturally local but geographically distant.

109.23 Streaming converts a scheduled broadcast into a platform service

Akashvani stations that once depended on terrestrial reach are now also available through internet streaming and official apps. A 2021 parliamentary reply explicitly noted online availability for Akashvani Darbhanga, while the current Akashvani live-radio directory lists Bihar stations for internet listening. Radio Nepal likewise distributes content online. Streaming does more than expand range. It changes measurement, discoverability and device use; a listener may use headphones on a phone rather than a family radio set. Yet a live stream still preserves the old schedule. The deeper transformation comes when programmes are archived as selectable audio, allowing listening to detach from broadcast time.

109.24 Podcasts and social platforms blur the boundary between radio and recorded audio

Once a programme can be uploaded, clipped, shared and replayed, “radio” becomes partly a production tradition rather than a transmission technology. Interviews, literary readings and discussions may circulate through YouTube, podcast feeds or social media without an FM or MW transmitter. This lowers entry barriers and helps small language communities create audio publics without a broadcast licence. It also fragments preservation: files may sit on private accounts, platforms may remove content, and metadata may be inconsistent. Future historians will therefore need to archive digital audio systematically rather than assuming that online abundance guarantees survival.

109.25 Broadcasting created paid and semi-professional cultural labour

Stations required announcers, producers, engineers, translators, scriptwriters, musicians, actors, news readers and casual artists. For regional languages, these jobs and fees mattered because literary and performance work often had weak commercial markets. An audition grade or recurring programme could provide income, reputation and institutional validation. But radio labour was hierarchical. Permanent technical and administrative staff, contract workers and occasional artists had different security and bargaining power. Gender, caste, class, language and urban access could shape who reached the studio. Broadcasting history should therefore include payrolls, contracts, audition files and artist rosters alongside famous programmes.

109.26 The archive is both unusually rich and dangerously fragile

Radio can preserve the actual voice of a writer or singer, making it one of the most powerful media for cultural history. Yet broadcast archives are vulnerable to tape reuse, format obsolescence, poor cataloguing, institutional moves and rights restrictions. A surviving recording may lack date, performer or programme metadata; a script may survive when the audio does not. Conversely, private cassette collections may preserve broadcasts absent from station archives. A serious regional project should digitise recordings with checksums and retain programme logs, scripts, contracts and descriptive metadata. Audio without provenance is evocative but historically weaker than a well-documented recording.

Evidence for a social history of broadcasting

Evidence	What it records	Historical question
Technical records	frequency, power, coverage	what could be heard where
Schedules & logs	language, genre, duration	institutional priorities
Scripts & recordings	actual words and performance	content and style
Artist files	auditions, fees, contracts	labour and cultural gatekeeping
Listener evidence	letters, calls, surveys, memory	reception and social use
Digital metadata	streams, uploads, timestamps	new circulation and preservation

No single archive can reconstruct broadcasting: signal history, institutional history and listening history must be combined.

Figure 435 — Evidence layers required for a social history of broadcasting.**109.27 Listener memory is evidence, but it must be anchored to schedules and recordings**

People often remember a familiar announcer, a signature tune, a weekly drama or the communal act of gathering around a radio. Such memory is indispensable for reconstructing the social use of broadcasting. It reveals where the set stood, who controlled tuning, which programmes interrupted work and how voices were emotionally received. Memory is less reliable for exact dates, frequencies or programme titles decades later. Oral-history interviews should therefore be cross-checked against printed schedules, station logs and surviving audio. The goal is not to discredit memory but to use it for the questions it answers best: experience, meaning and routine.

109.28 Comparative history must separate public service, community service and language advocacy

A Maithili programme on Akashvani, a Maithili bulletin on Radio Nepal, a Janakpur commercial FM phone-in and a volunteer digital podcast may all use the same language while operating under different institutional logics. Public-service broadcasting balances statutory or governmental mandates; commercial FM competes for advertising and attention; community radio claims participatory legitimacy; activist media may prioritise language recognition. Treating them as one undifferentiated “Maithili media” hides the economics and governance that shape content. The same distinction applies to Angika, whose broadcast presence is tied especially to Bhagalpur’s station and regional cultural networks.

109.29 A regional broadcasting archive should be organised around programmes, not celebrities alone

Celebrity histories are easy to write because prominent singers, announcers and writers leave biographies. Institutional history requires a different archive. Each programme should ideally have station, date, time, language, genre, producer, participants, script identifier, recording identifier, rights status and technical format. Repeated programme series should be catalogued as runs, not isolated objects. Such a database would make it possible to measure gender representation, language allocation, genre change and the movement of artists between print, stage, radio and later television. It would also allow competing claims about “first broadcasts” or programme longevity to be verified rather than inherited.

109.30 Broadcasting modernity is a history of changing access to voice

Across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh, the deepest historical significance of radio lies in who could become audible beyond face-to-face space. Public broadcasting enlarged the scale of language and performance; dedicated regional stations created institutional addresses; FM multiplied local producers; call-ins made listeners audible; streaming detached reception from territory; and digital archives made some broadcasts replayable across generations. None of these shifts eliminated hierarchy. Editorial selection, transmitter geography, licensing, finance, language prestige and platform control continually redistributed voice. Broadcasting modernity is therefore best understood not as a march from old technology to new, but as a changing political economy of audibility.

Table 109.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing radio and broadcasting history

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal historical use	Main limitation
-----------------	-----------------------	--------------------------	-----------------

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal historical use	Main limitation
Transmitter and engineering records	Frequency, power, commissioning, coverage	Reconstruct technical reach and institutional expansion	Potential coverage is not actual listening
Programme schedules and logs	Language, time, genre, duration, relay/origination	Measure editorial allocation and change over time	Surviving runs may be incomplete
Scripts and recordings	Words, voice, music, performance, production style	Analyse content, pronunciation and genre	Audio may lack metadata or rights clearance
Artist and personnel files	Auditions, fees, roles, contracts, employment	Study cultural labour and gatekeeping	Access is often restricted; casual artists underdocumented
Listener letters, calls and surveys	Reception, requests, complaints, audience profile	Recover social use and perceived relevance	Self-selected evidence can overrepresent active listeners
Oral histories	Domestic listening, memory, emotion, routine	Reconstruct lived experience of radio	Exact dates and titles require corroboration
Digital streams and platform metadata	Online availability, timestamps, circulation routes	Trace post-territorial and on-demand audio publics	Platforms change or delete files; metrics are proprietary

Chapter 110 — Cinema, Video and Recorded Performance

Cinema and recorded performance transformed regional culture in a different way from radio. Broadcasting organised a schedule around a transmitter; moving images and recordings created objects that could be replayed, copied, sold, carried across borders and watched outside the moment of performance. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the history therefore cannot be reduced to a list of feature films. It includes cinema halls, itinerant screenings, film songs, studio recordings, cassettes, VHS, VCD and DVD circulation, filmed theatre and dance, wedding and ritual video, television-derived video, documentary practice, festival circuits, mobile-phone viewing, YouTube channels and digital archives. These media altered performance itself because artists increasingly performed for cameras as well as for physically present audiences.

The region also exposes a recurring paradox of small-language media. Maithili possesses a long literary and performance tradition and a transborder speech community, yet its feature-film sector has remained intermittent; Angika film production has been still more weakly institutionalised. At the same time, audio-visual culture in both language zones is abundant when one counts songs, stage recordings, devotional video, comedy, interviews, documentaries and online performance. The historical problem is therefore not cultural scarcity but the uneven conversion of cultural production into a stable industrial system of finance, distribution, exhibition, rights management and preservation. This chapter reconstructs that wider moving-image economy and treats preservation failure as part of the history itself.

110.1 The moving image altered the relation between performance and presence

A live performance is tied to a particular time, place and audience. Film and video separate the act of performance from the moment of reception. A song, drama or ritual can be replayed years later, watched in another city or country, excerpted, copied and placed beside unrelated material. This creates a new kind of cultural memory but also changes what performers do. Gesture becomes framed by a camera; duration is cut by editing; sound can be recorded separately; subtitles can create new audiences. For regional cultural history, the decisive shift is therefore not simply from “traditional” to “modern” entertainment. It is from situated performance to reproducible performance, with all the new possibilities of circulation, ownership and reinterpretation that reproducibility creates.

110.2 Cinema halls connected regional audiences to national and global screen cultures before local film industries matured

Mithila, Vajji and Anga were never isolated from Indian cinema simply because they produced relatively few films in Maithili or Angika. Town halls and later permanent cinemas brought Hindi, Bengali, Bhojpuri and other films into local viewing cultures. Songs, fashions, romantic conventions, star images and narrative formulas circulated through these screenings. Local filmmakers therefore entered a market already dominated by better-capitalised industries. A Maithili film did not compete only with another Maithili film; it competed for screens, publicity and leisure time against nationally distributed products. This asymmetry helps explain why a language can possess a large speaker population yet fail to develop a vertically integrated film industry. Exhibition infrastructure can exist without being controlled by local-language producers.

110.3 Early Maithili cinema has to be reconstructed from contradictory dates and incomplete surviving material

The first Maithili feature is usually identified as *Kanyadan*, directed by Phani Majumdar and based on Harimohan Jha's novel. Yet the chronology itself illustrates the archival problem. Film databases commonly date the film to 1965, while later historical accounts describe production during the 1960s and public release in 1971. Contemporary discussion also notes the difficulty of locating a surviving print. Rather than forcing these traces into a single neat date, the historian should distinguish production, certification, first screening and wider release whenever evidence permits. The uncertainty is not trivial: it shows how poorly small-language cinema was catalogued compared with major industries. A chronology should record competing claims and the sources that support them.

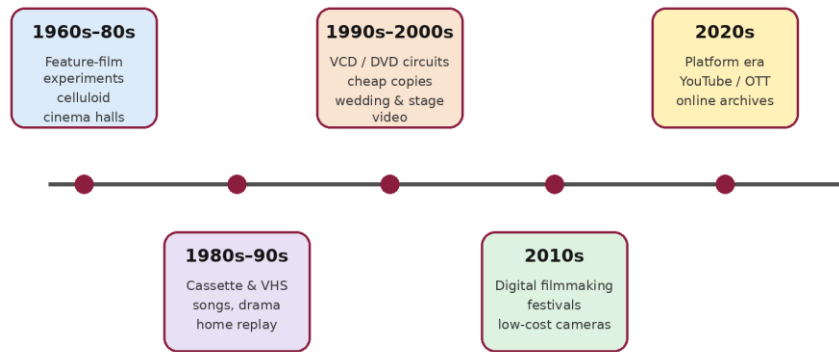
110.4 *Kanyadan* linked literary prestige to cinema but also exposed the multilingual reality of screen production

Kanyadan was not created from an isolated cinematic script; it drew on a canonical Maithili novel and involved writers working across linguistic spheres. Historical accounts identify Phanishwar Nath Renu with the film's dialogue, and the narrative itself turned language difference within marriage into a central dramatic device. This matters because "Maithili cinema" was never culturally pure in the sense of being sealed from Hindi or Bengali professional networks. Directors, technicians, actors, financiers and distributors moved through larger industries. Regional cinema was built through such connections, even when language activists later judged a film by the proportion or quality of Maithili spoken on screen. The tension between linguistic authenticity and production pragmatism became a durable feature of small-language filmmaking.

110.5 *Mamta Gabay Geet* demonstrates how production delay can become part of film history

The project remembered as *Mamta Gabay Geet* began much earlier under another title and encountered prolonged production difficulties before release. Accounts differ on details, but agree that its making overlapped with the earliest phase of Maithili feature-film production and that its eventual release came much later. Such cases warn against treating release lists as transparent measures of creative activity. Financing failure, laboratory costs, distribution obstacles and delayed completion can hide years of labour behind a single release date. They also affect generational memory: a film conceived in one technological and musical era may reach audiences in another. For regional cinema, unfinished and delayed films should therefore be catalogued alongside completed releases whenever production evidence survives.

Moving-image and recorded-performance ecology



Formats accumulated rather than replacing one another; the same performance could circulate live, on disc and online.

Figure 436 — Moving-image and recorded-performance formats accumulated rather than simply replacing one another.

110.6 Film songs often travelled farther than the films that contained them

In small film industries the soundtrack can outlive the feature. Songs circulate on radio, cassette, compact disc, memory card and online video even when the original film print becomes inaccessible. This creates a peculiar archival imbalance: melodies and performer names may remain familiar while plot, cinematography and editing disappear from public memory. The phenomenon is especially important in Maithili, where song traditions already had strong independent circulation through wedding, devotional and seasonal repertoires. Film music could borrow from these traditions and then return to them in mediated form. A history of cinema based only on surviving films would therefore miss a large part of the medium's cultural effect. Sound recordings, song booklets and broadcast logs are essential parallel archives.

110.7 The sparse feature-film list reflects an industrial problem more than a lack of stories

Historical surveys repeatedly describe Maithili feature production as intermittent. Titles such as *Jai Baba Vaidyanath*, *Sasta Jingi Mahag Senur*, *Kakhan Harab Dukh Mor* and others recur in retrospective accounts, but there was no continuous annual pipeline comparable to stronger regional industries. The limiting factors included capital, theatrical access, publicity, professional crews, recovery of investment and competition from Hindi and Bhojpuri cinema. These constraints help explain why literary abundance did not automatically become a film industry. Stories, playwrights, actors and musicians were available; the missing element was often the durable institutional chain that turns cultural resources into regularly financed, distributed and preserved films.

110.8 Angika cinema remained even more weakly institutionalised than Angika print and radio

Angika developed literary associations, magazines, stage traditions and a meaningful presence around Akashvani Bhagalpur, but feature-film production remained marginal. Popular summaries identify *Khagaria Wali Bhauji*, released in the 2000s, as an early Angika feature, yet the underlying documentation is thin compared with major language cinemas. This scarcity of reliable production files itself deserves emphasis. The absence of a large feature-film industry does not mean Angika lacked moving-image culture. Songs,

comic sketches, devotional recordings, stage documentation, local news video and later platform channels created a substantial audiovisual field without stable theatrical cinema. Angika history therefore particularly demonstrates why “cinema history” and “screen culture history” should not be treated as synonyms.

110.9 Cassette culture created a low-cost bridge between oral performance and mass reproduction

Before cheap digital video, the audio cassette had already changed the economics of regional performance. Small studios could record songs, comic dialogues, religious recitation and dramatic material at costs far below feature-film production. Cassettes moved through market stalls, bus routes, fairs, wedding networks and migrant travel. They could make a local singer regionally recognisable without a film contract or state broadcaster. The cassette also altered repertoire length and sequencing because a performance had to fit the duration and commercial logic of sides and tracks. Although primarily an audio medium, cassette culture prepared the social and commercial networks that later carried VCD and DVD video. It trained audiences to purchase reproducible regional-language performance as a commodity.

110.10 VHS brought recording and replay into households, institutions and performance groups

Analogue video reduced the distance between a live event and a screen document. Weddings, stage plays, dance programmes, political meetings and religious performances could be recorded and replayed without the expense of celluloid. Video libraries and private collections created local archives, although usually without professional cataloguing. The camera also began to influence events themselves: participants performed toward the lens, organisers repeated moments for recording, and edited wedding videos created narrative versions of ceremonies. For theatre and folk performance, VHS could preserve staging, costume and gesture that audio alone could not capture. Yet videotape is materially fragile and playback machines are disappearing, so this apparently recent past is now at serious preservation risk.

110.11 VCD and DVD made moving images cheap enough for dense informal circulation

The optical-disc era was especially important in regions where formal theatrical distribution was weak. VCDs could be duplicated cheaply, sold beside music cassettes and played on televisions or inexpensive disc players. Stage performances, devotional programmes, comedy, dance and low-budget films all benefited from this infrastructure. The same economics also encouraged uncontrolled copying and weak rights documentation. A disc might circulate without reliable production credits or release metadata, while different copies carried altered menus or compressed video. For historians the VCD/DVD period is therefore both rich and difficult: vast quantities were produced, but systematic catalogues are rare. Recovering private and shop inventories before discs physically deteriorate should be an archival priority.

110.12 Recorded theatre is a separate historical form, not merely evidence of theatre

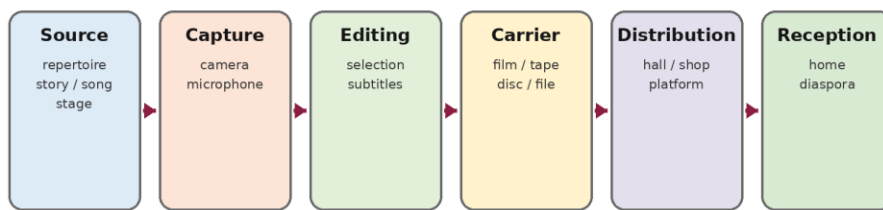
When a stage play is filmed from a fixed camera, it appears to be simple documentation. In fact, the recording creates a new object with its own framing, sound balance, duration and audience. Multi-camera editing can transform the experience even more dramatically by replacing the spectator’s freedom to look anywhere on stage with the editor’s selection of close-ups and cuts. Maithili and Angika theatre histories should therefore preserve both theatrical information and recording information: venue, performance date,

cast, director and script on one side; camera operator, recording format, edit date and release carrier on the other. Conflating the two erases the mediation through which later generations encounter the performance.

110.13 Folk performance changed when performers began to address the camera as a second audience

Songs, dance, narrative recitation and festival performance often moved onto video without becoming “films” in an industrial sense. The presence of a camera nevertheless changed staging. Performers could face the lens, compress long sequences, repeat favoured passages or add introductions for viewers who were not physically present. Producers might select visually striking costumes or locations for video sale. These adaptations do not make the performance inauthentic; they reveal how living traditions respond to new media. The historical task is to identify the conditions of recording rather than assume that a video transparently reproduces an older form. A filmed performance documents both the tradition and the media moment in which it was captured.

From performance to moving-image public



Every stage can alter language, duration, performance style, ownership and historical meaning.

Figure 437 — From source repertoire to moving-image reception: the production and circulation chain.

110.14 Wedding video became one of the largest vernacular moving-image practices

Commercial wedding videography created a vast but largely private audiovisual record of social change. Dress, ritual sequence, music, food display, domestic architecture, gendered participation, migration wealth and changing expectations of spectacle are visible across decades of family recordings. Unlike feature films, these videos were not made for a mass anonymous audience, yet their aggregate historical value is enormous. They also reveal technological diffusion: black-and-white or early colour video, bulky cameras, VCD editing, digital effects, drone shots and smartphone clips mark changing consumption patterns. Ethical access is essential because these are private records, but with consent they can become powerful sources for household and cultural history.

110.15 Video production created a new local service economy

Camera operators, editors, sound-system providers, duplication shops, photographers, title designers and event organisers formed a decentralised media economy around towns and markets. Many workers entered without formal film-school training and learned through apprenticeships or equipment shops. Their businesses connected weddings, schools, political campaigns, religious events and cultural organisations. This

labour history is easy to miss because workers were often credited inconsistently or not at all. Yet local video economies widened access to recording long before smartphones. Oral histories with studio owners and technicians can reconstruct equipment prices, customer demand, editing practices and the transition from analogue tape to computer-based non-linear editing.

110.16 Television expanded screen habits even when it did not produce a stable regional-language film sector

Television increased familiarity with serial narrative, music video, news imagery and televised performance. Doordarshan and Nepal Television also created opportunities for regional artists within broader schedules, while cable and satellite television multiplied Hindi and other-language competition. The effect on local production was double. Audiences acquired higher expectations about image and sound, but small producers faced stronger competition from professionally packaged content. Television also trained performers and technicians who later worked in independent video. For cultural history, television should therefore be studied not only through its own programmes but as an institution that reshaped the visual grammar and labour pool of later Maithili and Angika screen production.

110.17 Digital cameras reduced production cost but did not solve distribution

The transition from film stock and analogue tape to digital cameras lowered the cost of shooting, reviewing and editing footage. Independent filmmakers could work with smaller crews and fewer laboratory expenses. This helped enable a new generation of Maithili features and documentaries. Yet cheaper production did not automatically create screens, publicity or revenue. A completed digital film could still struggle to secure theatrical bookings or recover costs. This distinction is crucial: democratisation of production technology and democratisation of distribution are different processes. The history of recent regional cinema is full of technically feasible projects that remained commercially precarious because exhibition and discovery continued to be controlled elsewhere.

110.18 Mithila Makhaan marked national institutional recognition for contemporary Maithili cinema

Nitin Chandra's Mithila Makhaan became an important point in contemporary Maithili film history when it received the National Film Award for Best Maithili Film at the 63rd National Film Awards for 2015. The award demonstrated that a small-language production could achieve national recognition even without a large commercial distribution system. Yet subsequent discussion by the filmmakers and press also highlighted the continuing difficulty of obtaining wide theatrical or platform access. The case therefore captures the central contradiction of regional cinema: symbolic recognition can be high while market infrastructure remains weak. Awards may validate artistic work, but they do not by themselves create a sustainable production cycle.

110.19 Gamak Ghar demonstrated another route: festival circulation and place-centred independent cinema

Achal Mishra's Gamak Ghar became widely discussed for an aesthetic very different from formula-driven regional commercial cinema. Its attention to a family house, time, memory and changing domestic life showed that Maithili screen culture could engage international festival and art-cinema publics without abandoning regional specificity. Festival circulation is economically and institutionally distinct from mass theatrical distribution: it depends on programmers, subtitles, screeners, critics and networked cultural

institutions. For historians, this means recent Maithili cinema cannot be measured only by box-office runs in Bihar. Festivals and curated screenings have become alternative infrastructures through which a small-language film acquires visibility, reviews and archival traces.

110.20 National awards created an intermittent institutional record of Maithili film production

The National Film Awards provide one of the few central institutional series in which Maithili-language features can be traced across time. Mithila Makhaan received the Maithili-language award for 2015, and Samanantar received Best Maithili Film in the awards for 2021. Such recognition does not represent the full field, because submission rules, juries and annual production affect what appears. Still, award lists create dates, producer and director credits and preserved administrative documentation that can help stabilise a filmography otherwise scattered across publicity material and personal memory. For small cinemas, bureaucratic records can unexpectedly become important archival anchors.

110.21 Nepal’s Maithili film history developed within a bilingual and multilingual national screen environment

Maithili cinema in Nepal cannot be treated as an extension of Bihar alone. Reporting from Nepal identifies *Dahej* as an early locally produced Maithili film and describes later projects centred on Janakpur and Madhesh. Nepali-language films have also used Maithili settings, characters and dialogue, while some productions have been dubbed or issued in Maithili versions. This creates a spectrum rather than a simple binary between “Maithili film” and “Nepali film”. Questions of cast, dialogue percentage, production location, financing and intended audience all matter. A transborder filmography should therefore record language versions and production contexts rather than classify only by nationality.

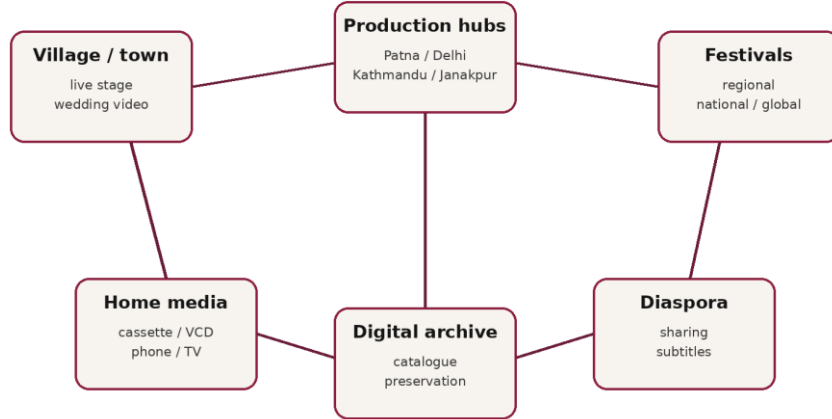
110.22 The Janakpur festival circuit is becoming an institution of recognition and encounter

In June 2024 Janakpur hosted a two-day Maithili International Film Festival organised with municipal and local communication-sector participation, with multiple Maithili films screened. The importance of such festivals lies not only in prizes or premieres. They create a temporary infrastructure where filmmakers, audiences, critics and institutions can see works that commercial halls may not sustain. Festivals also produce catalogues, posters, photographs, jury records and press coverage—materials that later become historical sources. If repeated and properly archived, a festival can help turn scattered production into a self-conscious cinema field by creating regular occasions for comparison, criticism and professional networking.

110.23 India–Nepal circulation complicates national ownership of Maithili screen culture

Actors, stories, dialects and audiences move across the international border more easily than film policy does. A Maithili film produced in India may find viewers in Nepal; a Nepali production may use Maithili dialogue and performers from Madhesh; festival screenings can connect the two sectors. The cultural region is therefore wider than either state’s subsidy, censorship or distribution system. This asymmetry matters because legal and commercial frameworks remain national even when the speech community is transborder. A comprehensive archive should record country of production, shooting locations, cast origins, language versions and distribution territories separately instead of forcing every work into a single national box.

Screen circuits linking Mithila, Anga, Madhesh and diaspora



Circulation is multi-directional: films and performances move through halls, discs, festivals, phones and archives.

Figure 439 — Screen circuits linking local performance, production hubs, festivals, home media, digital archives and diaspora.

110.24 YouTube changed the scale of regional moving-image publication

Online video removed the need to manufacture a physical carrier or obtain a cinema screen before reaching an audience. Songs, interviews, theatre, documentaries, lectures, comedy and devotional performance could be uploaded directly and shared through messaging networks. This dramatically expanded the visible volume of Maithili and Angika audiovisual production. It also changed metrics: views, subscribers and comments became public indicators of circulation, though they are imperfect and platform-dependent. The major historical danger is to mistake visibility for preservation. Channels can disappear, accounts can be hacked, files can be recompressed and metadata can be edited. A durable archive requires local copies and stable descriptive records independent of the platform.

110.25 Mobile phones turned audiences into producers and distributors

The smartphone condensed camera, recorder, editor, screen and distribution channel into one device. Events that once required a videographer can now be recorded by dozens of participants, producing multiple viewpoints but also enormous redundancy. Short vertical video further changes performance duration and framing. Young performers may compose for clips rather than full programmes; political or cultural moments can circulate within minutes. For historians this creates a new abundance problem. The key task is no longer simply obtaining a recording but establishing provenance, date, creator, consent and whether the clip is original or re-uploaded. Digital literacy therefore becomes an archival method.

110.26 Documentary practice widened the subjects considered worthy of moving-image history

Feature cinema usually requires concentrated finance and narrative planning. Documentary video can record writers, craftspeople, theatre rehearsals, oral histories, festivals, manuscripts, villages, floods, migration and changing urban space at much lower cost. Regional e-journals, cultural organisations, individual researchers and community groups increasingly use video for such documentation. The result is historically significant because subjects previously left outside commercial cinema can enter the moving-image record. But documentary value depends on method. A labelled interview with date, place, interviewer and rights

information is far more useful than an unidentified clip. Documentary production and archival description should therefore be planned together.

110.27 Videha's audio-video archiving illustrates the convergence of journal, performance archive and digital publication

Videha, established as a Maithili fortnightly e-journal, developed dedicated audio and video archival strands alongside its text and book collections. Its public pages describe audio-video archives and the digitisation or online placement of cultural material; later Videha projects have extended this practice through recorded discussion, documentary and drama. This is institutionally significant because the archive is not merely a repository created after publication. Audio-visual preservation became part of an ongoing editorial system. The model demonstrates how a literary periodical can evolve into a multimedia cultural institution, linking serial publication, documentation, accessibility and long-term retrieval. It also shows why born-digital archives need explicit file management and metadata policies as their scale grows.

110.28 Preservation failure has already shaped what can be written about early regional cinema

Reports on Maithili film history repeatedly note the difficulty of locating early prints. Film stock is chemically fragile, and small producers rarely possessed archival vaults. Video created new risks rather than solving the old ones: magnetic tape decays, optical discs fail, hard drives are lost and online platforms remove files. The consequence is historiographical inequality. A major-language film may survive in institutional collections while a small-language film remains known chiefly through songs, posters, memories or press notices. Preservation is therefore not a technical afterthought; it determines which cultural works can later enter history. Recovery campaigns should search private producers, laboratories, cinemas, collectors and families before surviving originals disappear.

Preservation risk across moving-image formats

Carrier	Typical risk	Needed action	What may be lost
35 mm / 16 mm film	physical decay	specialist cold storage	original image & sound
VHS / analogue video	binder decay, machine scarcity	digitise with provenance	local stage & domestic video
VCD / DVD	disc failure, scratches	Image + checksums	mass low-cost circulation
Hard drives / cards	bit rot, loss, obsolete media	redundant verified copies	born-digital masters
Online platforms	deletion, account loss, recompression	local preservation copy	public access, not custody

Online availability is not archival preservation: custody, metadata and fixity must be maintained separately.

Figure 438 — Preservation risks and required actions across moving-image carriers.

110.29 A rigorous moving-image archive requires preservation masters, access copies and metadata

Digitisation should not be confused with uploading. A sustainable archive preserves the best available source in a stable master format, creates smaller access copies for public use, records checksums to detect corruption and stores redundant copies in separate locations. Metadata should include title variants,

language, year, production company, director, cast, crew, source carrier, digitisation date, rights status and provenance. For stage and ritual video, performance date and recording date must both be recorded. Subtitles and transcripts should be preserved as separate files when possible. These practices make later migration between technologies possible without repeatedly recompressing the only surviving copy.

110.30 Screen modernity is best understood as an ecology of formats, institutions and publics

The regional history from celluloid to phones is not a simple sequence in which new media kill old media. Cinema halls continue while films circulate online; cassettes survive in private collections while their songs move to YouTube; stage plays remain live while recordings extend their reach; festival screenings coexist with home viewing. The central historical change is the multiplication of routes by which performance can become reproducible and mobile. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, feature-film scarcity therefore should not obscure audiovisual abundance. The decisive questions are who can finance production, who controls distribution, which language is audible and visible, how audiences encounter works, and whether the resulting record survives long enough to become cultural memory.

Table 110.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing cinema, video and recorded performance

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Principal historical use	Main limitation
Film prints / digital masters	image, sound, editing, performance	Analyse the audiovisual work itself	Survival and access may be poor
Censor / award / festival records	dates, credits, submissions, screenings	Stabilise filmographies and institutional recognition	Do not prove wide public circulation
Posters, song books, advertisements	release claims, cast, music, venues	Reconstruct publicity and exhibition	Promotional dates may differ from actual release
Cassettes, VHS, VCD and DVD	vernacular circulation and recorded performance	Recover low-cost media economies	Metadata and rights often incomplete
Cinema-hall and distributor records	bookings, territories, runs, receipts	Study market access and exhibition	Records rarely survive systematically
Oral histories	production obstacles, reception, labour	Recover experience absent from formal archives	Dates and claims require corroboration
Platform metadata and channel archives	uploads, circulation, comments, versions	Trace born-digital publics and diaspora reach	Platforms can alter or delete evidence
Private family/event video	ritual, dress, household consumption	Study social change outside commercial cinema	Privacy and consent constrain access

Chapter 111 — Newspapers and Public Debate

Newspapers created a distinctive arena of public life because they turned events, arguments and institutional claims into serial, datable objects that could circulate beyond a meeting, court, market or village. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, however, the newspaper cannot be separated neatly from the literary magazine. Early Maithili periodicals carried essays, letters, language debates, social reform, institutional proceedings and current affairs beside poetry and fiction. Hindi, Urdu, Bengali, Nepali and English newspapers also shaped the region's public sphere, often reaching far larger readerships than Maithili or Angika publications. The history of newspapers is therefore multilingual and institutional: it concerns printers, patrons, editors, correspondents, distributors, advertisers, readers, associations and archives as much as individual articles.

This chapter treats the press neither as a transparent record of society nor as a simple vehicle of modernisation. Newspapers select; their readerships are socially uneven; advertising and patronage affect survival; editors establish thresholds of relevance; and political or social movements attempt to make themselves visible through print. Yet precisely because newspapers are selective, they provide unusually rich evidence for the history of public argument. Editorials, correspondence columns, reports, subscription appeals, obituaries, advertisements, election news and corrections reveal what institutions considered debatable and which groups could gain a printed voice. The task is to reconstruct both the debate and the conditions under which that debate entered print.

111.1 A newspaper is an institution of selection before it is a record of events

Every issue is the result of decisions about what counts as news, which language to use, whose statement is credible, how much space an item deserves and whether it should appear as report, editorial, advertisement or letter. These categories matter historically. A flood report written from a district headquarters is different from a village letter describing relief failure; an association resolution is different from an editor's endorsement of it. Researchers should therefore record genre, placement and authorship rather than extracting sentences as free-standing facts. The newspaper becomes most valuable when read simultaneously as evidence about an event and evidence about the institution that framed the event.

111.2 The regional public sphere was multilingual from the beginning

Maithili-speaking readers did not receive public information only through Maithili. Hindi and Urdu newspapers were deeply embedded in Bihar's political and administrative life, Bengali print was influential in eastern networks, and English newspapers carried colonial and later national institutions. On the Nepal side, Nepali remained central to state and commercial journalism even in Maithili-majority districts. This multilingual ecology helps explain a persistent paradox: a language may have a vigorous literary tradition while its daily-news sector remains small. Reading practices cross linguistic boundaries more easily than language movements sometimes acknowledge. Any history based only on Maithili titles would therefore understate the actual information environment of Mithila and Madhesh.

111.3 Early Maithili journalism grew through periodicals before a durable daily-news industry existed

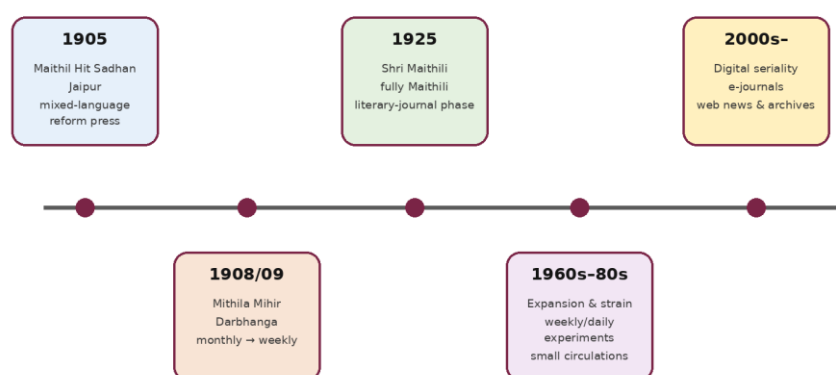
Histories of Maithili journalism commonly begin with Maithil Hit Sadhan in Jaipur in 1905 and Mithila Moda or Mithila Mod in Varanasi soon afterward. These publications emerged partly outside Mithila itself, showing how migrant intellectual networks helped create a language public. Their mixture of language advocacy, reform, literature and community information differs from the later metropolitan daily newspaper

model. The important transition was seriality: readers expected another issue, editors could answer previous arguments, and associations could build continuity across meetings. Even small circulations could therefore create an enduring discursive network if issues were copied, shared, cited and discussed collectively.

111.4 Mithila Mihir became the most consequential early forum because it linked serial print to organised politics and culture

Mithila Mihir is usually dated to 1909, though some bibliographies give 1908; surviving runs and later histories also divide its career into changing phases. It began as a monthly in Darbhanga and became a weekly, later reappearing from Patna. Research on the paper shows its close relationship with the Darbhanga Raj and the Maithil Mahasabha, as well as its role in debates over language, education, social hierarchy, regional identity and eventually the demand for a Mithila state. That history is important precisely because the paper was not neutral. Patronage gave it longevity and authority while also shaping the social interests it foregrounded. Its pages must be read as both a public forum and a structured elite institution.

Selected milestones in Maithili newspaper and periodical culture



Dates vary in some bibliographies; surviving runs and registration records should be used to stabilise chronology.

Figure 441 — Selected milestones in Maithili newspaper and periodical culture.

111.5 The early press made language standardisation a public controversy rather than a purely grammatical exercise

Print required decisions about spelling, script, vocabulary, prose style and the acceptable relation between literary and spoken forms. Editors and contributors debated whether modern prose should imitate learned registers, incorporate colloquial speech or develop conventions suited to journalism. Such choices affected who could read comfortably and who was represented as a legitimate speaker. Newspapers therefore participated in language-making. Standardisation was not merely the work of grammarians; it was enacted issue after issue through headlines, corrections, translated terms and editorial practice. Later debates over Devanagari, Tirhuta, Hindi influence and technical vocabulary continued this process in new media.

111.6 A fully Maithili periodical public emerged gradually, not all at once

Shri Maithili, published from Darbhanga in the mid-1920s, is frequently described in histories of journalism as the first periodical conducted fully in Maithili. The importance of that claim lies less in priority than in what it signals: earlier magazines often moved across Maithili, Hindi and Sanskrit, whereas a fully Maithili periodical asserted that the language could sustain the complete editorial apparatus of a modern publication. Subsequent journals multiplied literary genres and critical prose. Newspapers and literary

magazines remained intertwined, but the existence of an all-Maithili serial strengthened the idea that public argument need not pass through Hindi to acquire seriousness.

111.7 Periodicity changed the tempo of debate

A monthly can sustain long essays and reflective controversy; a weekly can respond to events while still carrying literary material; a daily demands a faster reporting network, regular distribution and a larger advertising or subscription base. Maithili journalism repeatedly experimented with these tempos. Periodical histories identify *Swadesha* as a Maithili daily experiment in the 1960s and record *Mithila Mihir*'s conversion from weekly to daily publication for part of the 1980s. Such episodes matter even when they were not commercially durable. They expose the infrastructural threshold separating a language public from a daily-news industry: correspondents, presses, transport, cash flow and dependable demand have to operate every day rather than occasionally.

111.8 Small circulation did not mean no influence, but it imposed severe institutional limits

Paul Brass, using official Press in India data and contemporary Maithili sources, noted the recurring problem of low subscription. In 1969 *Mithila Mihir* was reported with a circulation of 1,578 and *Vaidehi* with 1,100, while Hindi and Urdu publications also competed for readers inside the region. Such numbers should not be treated as exact measures of influence: one copy may be read by a household, library, hostel or group. Nevertheless, low paid circulation constrains revenue, newsroom size and distribution. It also creates dependence on patrons, institutions and volunteer labour. The financial history of the press is therefore part of language politics, not a separate commercial footnote.

111.9 Registration records provide a second archive of newspaper history

India's newspaper-registration system offers evidence independent of literary memory. Current Press Registrar General records preserve, for example, a 1968 registration for the Maithili weekly *Mithila Vani* in Darbhanga and a 1970 registration for the Maithili monthly *Sona Maati* in Patna. Later records include *Samadiya Mithila* as a Maithili daily registered in 2010 and *Mithila Mirror* as a Maithili monthly registered from Delhi in 2018. Registration does not prove continuous publication or actual circulation, but it stabilises title, place, language, periodicity, owner and date. These administrative records should be cross-checked against surviving issues before a publication history is declared complete.

111.10 The press converted association life into a reproducible public record

Conference resolutions, literary meetings, caste associations, student organisations, cultural societies and language campaigns gained a second life when printed. A meeting attended by a few hundred people could be reported, summarised and debated across several issues. Conversely, newspaper controversy could generate meetings and petitions. This circular relationship between print and association was especially important in Mithila, where literary and social organisations often lacked continuous state support. Newspapers created institutional memory by recording office-bearers, speeches, anniversaries and disputes. They also reveal exclusions: if a group appears only in notices and never as an editorial voice, its formal presence should not be mistaken for equal participation.

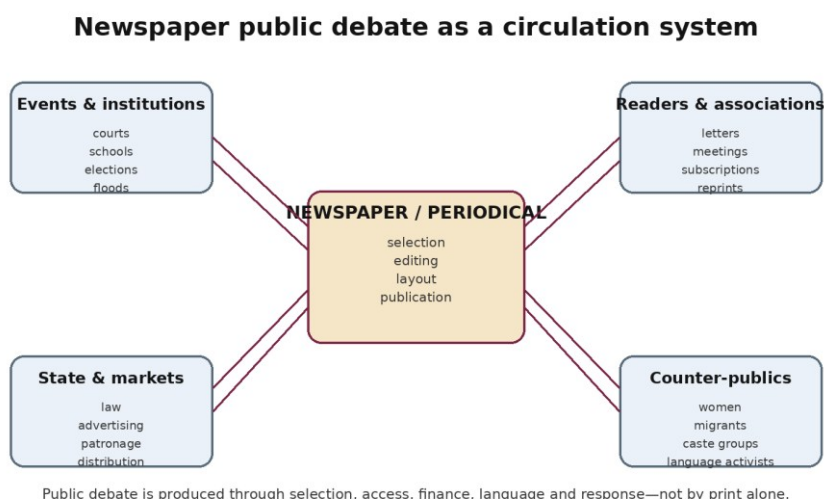


Figure 440 — Newspaper public debate as a circulation system.

111.11 Language recognition campaigns turned editorial pages into constitutional pedagogy

The long campaigns for Maithili recognition required readers to understand questions of census classification, university policy, public examinations, broadcasting and constitutional schedules. Periodicals translated these technical matters into public argument. Editorials and association reports could explain why recognition mattered, report deputations and criticise delay. The eventual inclusion of Maithili in the Eighth Schedule did not eliminate the press's role; it shifted debate toward implementation, education, employment and institutional funding. Newspaper archives are therefore crucial for distinguishing legal milestones from the slower social process by which recognition acquires practical meaning.

111.12 The Mithila-state debate illustrates how newspapers can construct a territorial public

Research on Mithila Mihir shows that the demand for a separate Mithila was not simply announced in print; newspapers helped define the historical, linguistic and economic arguments through which a territory was imagined. Maps, historical narratives, language claims and reports from associations could make distant districts appear part of one political conversation. At the same time, counter-arguments and competing provincial identities circulated through Hindi and national newspapers. The press therefore did not merely reflect a pre-existing regional consciousness. It participated in its production, while also revealing the limits of consensus when caste, class, language practice and administrative interests diverged.

111.13 Public debate was socially unequal because access to print was socially unequal

Early editorial networks were disproportionately drawn from educated and institutionally connected groups. Devanand Kamat's study of Mithila Mihir shows how Brahmin and Karn-Kayastha concerns were strongly represented in its association-linked public sphere. This does not make the archive unusable; it makes social position part of the evidence. Historians should ask which castes, occupations, rural groups and religious communities appear as authors, which appear only as subjects, and which are nearly absent. Letters, vernacular advertisements and local reports can sometimes recover voices not represented in editorials. A democratic history of the press requires studying silence as carefully as printed speech.

111.14 Women entered the public sphere through authorship, editing, correspondence and the subjects newspapers chose to debate

Women's visibility in regional newspapers increased unevenly. Literary pages often provided earlier openings for women writers than political reporting did, while debates over girls' education, marriage, inheritance, dowry and employment could speak about women without giving them editorial authority. The relevant historical question is therefore not whether women were "present" but how. Authored columns, signed letters, women's organisations, photographs, advertisements and obituaries should be distinguished from paternalistic reform discourse. Later education and employment expanded the pool of women journalists and readers, but newsroom hierarchy and safety continued to shape participation. Gender analysis must examine both content and institutional labour.

111.15 Muslim publics and Urdu–Hindi–Maithili interaction prevent a single-language account of regional journalism

Mithila and Anga contained substantial Muslim populations whose reading and political networks included Urdu as well as Hindi and regional languages. News about education, religious institutions, elections, communal tension, migration and local administration could move between newspapers with different linguistic constituencies. Treating Urdu as external to regional history would reproduce the very language boundaries that newspapers crossed in everyday practice. Comparative reading of the same event across Urdu, Hindi and Maithili publications can reveal differences in vocabulary, source selection and assumed audience. Such comparison is especially important for sensitive episodes, where a single newspaper may amplify the perspective of its own constituency.

111.16 Anga's newspaper history developed mainly through Hindi-dominant district journalism alongside Angika cultural assertion

Bhagalpur and the wider Anga zone developed a substantial newspaper-reading public, but the daily-news economy has been dominated by Hindi and, historically, other larger print languages rather than by a stable Angika daily press. Angika writers and activists therefore used literary magazines, columns, supplements, small publications and later web portals to create language-specific space within a broader journalistic ecology. This differs from simply saying that Angika lacked journalism. The more accurate formulation is that Angika public argument often travelled through media whose primary institutional language was Hindi. That asymmetry influenced spelling, genre, visibility and the ability to sustain specialist reporting.

111.17 District correspondents made small towns and villages legible to metropolitan and state publics

The regional correspondent is one of the most important but least archived figures in newspaper history. From blocks and district towns, correspondents supplied reports on roads, crime, schools, floods, prices, elections, festivals and administrative disputes. Their work connected local grievances to Patna, Delhi, Kolkata or Kathmandu newsrooms. Yet correspondents often worked with limited resources and depended heavily on local officials, police, politicians and social networks for information. A report's dateline should therefore be treated as evidence of a reporting node, not proof of comprehensive observation. Oral histories of correspondents and surviving notebooks would significantly deepen the history of regional public life.

From event to historical evidence: a newspaper verification chain



Corroborate dates, editions, ownership, language, quoted voices and later corrections before treating a report as fact.

A newspaper is both evidence about an event and evidence about the institution that framed the event.

Figure 442 — From event to historical evidence: a newspaper verification chain.

111.18 Flood reporting transformed recurrent disaster into a political question of infrastructure and relief

Kosi, Kamla, Bagmati, Gandak and other river systems repeatedly generated news about embankments, breaches, displacement, crop loss, relief and transport disruption. Newspapers gave such events dates and administrative actors, enabling comparison between official claims and local experience. Over time, recurring disaster reporting could shift the frame from “natural calamity” toward questions of embankment policy, compensation, corruption, resettlement and long-term vulnerability. The strongest historical method compares newspapers with rainfall and river data, government relief records, engineering reports and oral testimony. Sensational photographs can document suffering while still obscuring the policy history that made particular populations vulnerable.

111.19 Migration changed both newspaper distribution and the geography of correspondence

Migrants carried newspapers outward and sent news, money and arguments back. Periodicals published from Jaipur, Varanasi, Ajmer, Kolkata, Delhi and other migrant centres demonstrate that “regional” journalism need not be produced inside the region. Migration also created new subjects: railway journeys, employment, hostels, labour conditions, diaspora associations and remittances. A paper could become a bridge between a village household and an urban association. In the digital era this function accelerated, but it did not begin with social media. Postal subscriptions and collective reading had already created a dispersed public in which distance from Mithila or Anga could intensify rather than dissolve cultural engagement.

111.20 Advertising is a hidden archive of consumption, aspiration and institutional finance

Advertisements reveal what newspapers expected readers to buy and which businesses considered those readers economically valuable. Notices for schools, coaching, medicines, jewellery, printing presses, books, transport, matrimonial services, land and public tenders can be mined for histories of consumption and aspiration. Advertising also subsidises journalism. Small-language papers with weak advertising markets face a structural disadvantage even if they have committed readers. Patronage may then enter through institutions,

political actors or wealthy individuals. To reconstruct editorial independence, historians should examine ownership and revenue alongside content. The absence of advertising can be as revealing as its presence.

111.21 Letters to the editor transformed readership into visible argument

A newspaper becomes a public forum most clearly when readers answer it. Letters correct facts, challenge editorials, report local conditions, praise writers and continue disputes from earlier issues. They are not unfiltered public opinion: editors choose which letters to print and may shorten them. Nevertheless, correspondence columns reveal argumentative conventions and the geography of readership through addresses and place names. They also permit longitudinal study. A debate that lasts six months can be reconstructed as a sequence of claims and replies rather than summarised from one famous editorial. Digitisation should therefore preserve complete issues, not only selected articles.

111.22 Elections expanded demand for local news but also intensified the need to separate reporting from political publicity

Election periods increase the volume of speeches, advertisements, candidate profiles and claims about caste arithmetic, development and identity. Local newspapers can provide evidence unavailable in national coverage because they follow constituency-level alliances and grievances. Yet election journalism is also vulnerable to sponsored content, partisan sourcing and strategic leaks. Historical reconstruction should distinguish signed advertisement, party press release, reported speech and independently verified news. Comparative reading across competing papers is especially valuable. The press does not simply report political mobilisation; it becomes one of the arenas in which candidates and social blocs attempt to define what the election is “about.”

111.23 Janakpur developed a distinct Madhesh-centred newspaper public within Nepal’s national media system

Janakpurdham’s press operates in a different constitutional and political environment from Bihar while sharing a transborder cultural zone. Janakpur Today, established in the early 1990s and still maintaining print and e-paper circulation, illustrates the emergence of a Madhesh-centred daily capable of reporting local and national affairs from outside Kathmandu. Its principal publication language is Nepali, but the surrounding media ecology includes Maithili journalism, radio and web publication. The significance lies in the decentralisation of news production. Madhesh becomes not merely a place reported from the capital but a site from which national politics is interpreted.

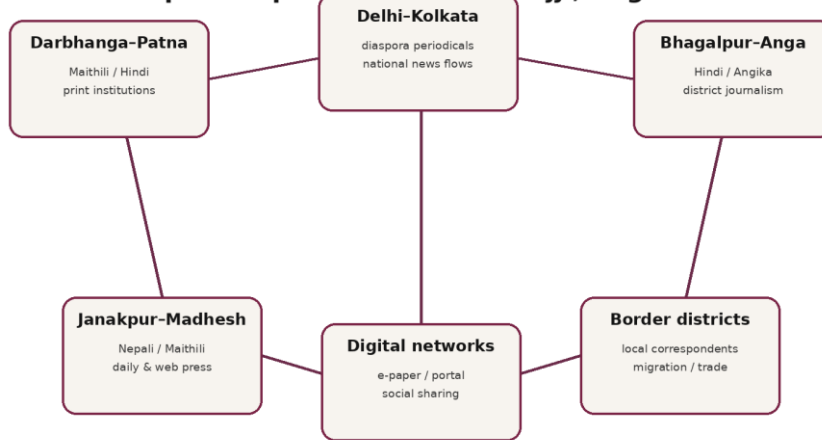
111.24 Press freedom in Nepal is part of the region’s newspaper history, not an external constitutional topic

Nepal’s 2015 Constitution protects freedom of opinion and expression and includes a specific right to communication, with safeguards against censorship and arbitrary closure subject to lawful restrictions. These provisions shape the institutional space in which Madhesh journalists work. Formal rights, however, do not by themselves measure safety or editorial independence. Ownership pressure, violence, litigation, party influence and economic precarity can affect what is publishable. The murder of Janakpur Today media owner Arun Singhaniya in 2010, widely documented by press-freedom organisations and later court reporting, underscores that regional journalism can involve physical risk. A history of public debate must include the conditions under which speech is produced.

111.25 Digital portals reduced publication costs and dissolved the old boundary between newspaper, broadcaster and archive

A contemporary news organisation may publish a print edition, PDF e-paper, website, video, social posts and live streams under one name. Mithila Jagaran and other Janakpur-based sites illustrate this convergence, while Maithili and Angika web portals can publish without owning a rotary press or distribution fleet. The result is a larger volume of local-language content and faster transborder circulation. It also weakens older definitions of a “newspaper.” A digital portal may update continuously and carry video, yet still perform the editorial functions of news selection and public comment. Historians should catalogue platform, update time and version because online articles can change after first publication.

Transborder public sphere of Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh



News crosses political borders through languages, correspondents, reprints, migrants and digital circulation.

Figure 443 — Transborder public sphere of Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh.

111.26 Videha demonstrates how a serial literary e-journal can also become an enduring public-debate archive

Videha, established as a Maithili e-journal in 2000 and now published fortnightly with ISSN 2229-547X, belongs institutionally to literary and cultural journalism rather than the conventional daily press. Yet its long serial run, editorials, criticism, discussions, archives and later audio-video and research components show how digital publication expands the meaning of periodical public culture. The important historical feature is continuity: a born-digital periodical can preserve debates, writers and source material without relying on print distribution. At the same time, web preservation creates its own responsibilities—stable URLs, backups, metadata, accessible design and migration away from obsolete formats.

111.27 India’s newspaper-registration regime itself changed in the digital era

For most of the period covered by this volume, newspapers in India were governed by the colonial-era Press and Registration of Books Act, 1867, with the Registrar of Newspapers for India established in 1956. The Press and Registration of Periodicals Act, 2023 came into force on 1 March 2024, repealed the old statute for periodical registration and renamed the office as the Press Registrar General of India. The new system uses online registration through the Press Sewa Portal. This administrative shift is historically important because the state archive of newspaper existence is itself becoming digital. Future researchers will need to preserve registry snapshots as well as newspaper copies.

111.28 Circulation statistics must be read as administrative returns, not complete measures of readership

Press in India reports remain indispensable because they classify publications by language, periodicity and circulation. Yet the figures reflect annual statements and reporting practices, not every act of reading. The 2021–22 report’s Maithili circulation table records only a small number of reporting publications in low-circulation categories. That should not be converted into a claim that only those titles existed or that only the reported number of people read Maithili. Digital readership, shared copies, unreported titles and irregular publications complicate measurement. The correct use of circulation data is comparative and institutional: it shows the scale of formal returns and the economic fragility of the registered print sector.

111.29 Newspaper preservation requires complete issues, provenance and version control

Clipping collections are useful but dangerous because they remove mastheads, advertisements, page context and neighbouring stories. A proper newspaper archive preserves the complete issue when possible and records title, date, edition, page, language, printer, publisher, place and source copy. For brittle paper, high-resolution digitisation should accompany conservation rather than replace it. Born-digital news requires capture of PDFs or web pages with timestamps, because pages may later be edited or removed. Optical character recognition improves search but must not silently replace page images, especially for complex scripts and degraded print. Historical citation should always permit a future researcher to reconstruct the edition consulted.

111.30 Public debate is best reconstructed as a contested network of print, institutions and readers

Across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh, newspapers did not create one unified public sphere. They created overlapping publics divided by language, caste, religion, class, gender, geography and political allegiance. Their significance lies precisely in the possibility of interaction: an editorial could provoke a letter, a meeting could generate a resolution, a report could trigger official response, a reprint could carry an argument across a border, and a digital archive could make an old controversy newly accessible. The historian’s task is therefore not to treat “the press” as a single actor but to map these chains of production and response. Newspapers become most revealing when their disagreements, silences, finances and survival are studied together.

Table 111.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing newspapers and public debate

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Best historical use	Principal limitation
Complete newspaper issues	date, layout, editorial priorities, advertisements	Reconstruct one edition as a whole public object	Survival may be fragmentary
Editorials and signed columns	institutional argument and named opinion	Trace language, regional and political debates	May represent elite editorial networks
Letters to the editor	reader response, geography of participation	Follow debate across multiple issues	Editors select and may shorten letters
Registration and annual-return records	title, owner, language, periodicity, circulation returns	Stabilise institutional chronology	Registration does not prove continuous publication

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Best historical use	Principal limitation
Advertisements and notices	markets, schools, services, consumption	Study financing and everyday aspirations	Paid content is not neutral evidence
District reports and datelines	local events, administrative claims, correspondents	Reconstruct local political and social history	Often dependent on official or partisan sources
Press-freedom and court records	risk, censorship, violence, legal disputes	Study conditions of journalistic production	Usually document exceptional conflict
Web archives and e-papers	born-digital editions, updates, multimedia links	Trace digital transformation and diaspora circulation	Pages can change or disappear without version capture

Chapter 112 — Sahitya Akademi, Academies and Institutional Canon Formation

Literary institutions do more than honour books after they have been written. They create recurring procedures through which manuscripts become editions, editions become eligible books, books become award candidates, authors become representatives of a language, and selected works enter libraries, syllabi, translation circuits and public memory. In that sense an academy is not merely a building or a committee. It is a mechanism for allocating attention. The effect can be constructive: preservation, publication, translation, grants, seminars and recognition can sustain a language whose commercial book market is limited. But the same mechanism is necessarily selective. Every list of awardees, prescribed texts, invited speakers or funded publications also leaves other writers, genres, regions and forms outside the frame.

For Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh, canon formation therefore has to be studied institutionally rather than treated as a self-evident ranking of literary merit. Sahitya Akademi, the Bihar Maithili Academy, universities, examining bodies, Nepal Academy, literary associations, journals, publishers and digital archives operate at different scales and under different rules. Their decisions overlap but are not identical. Maithili is especially revealing because Sahitya Akademi began giving its annual award in the language in 1966, long before Maithili entered the Eighth Schedule of the Constitution of India in 2004. Literary recognition, constitutional recognition and administrative support thus followed different chronologies. This chapter reconstructs those chronologies while asking a larger question: how does institutional recognition turn a changing literary field into a teachable, prizeable and apparently stable canon?

112.1 An institution does not discover a canon; it produces one through repeated acts of selection

A canon often appears retrospectively as a list of authors and works whose importance is assumed to be natural. Historically, however, durable importance is reinforced through material repetition. A book is reprinted, reviewed, taught, translated, commemorated, purchased by libraries, cited in histories and placed on examination lists. Institutions organise these repetitions. Their choices need not be conspiratorial to have consequences: limited budgets, eligibility windows, available experts, publication access and inherited reputations are enough to concentrate attention. Canon formation is therefore best understood as cumulative selection. A single award may not transform a writer's position, but an award followed by translation, syllabus inclusion, a seminar and a centenary volume can create an institutional density around that writer. The historian should reconstruct that density rather than treating later fame as proof that the work was always universally central.

112.2 Canon, archive, curriculum and award are related but analytically distinct

Four institutional objects are often confused. An archive attempts to preserve what survives; a canon privileges what is considered exemplary or important; a curriculum reduces a field to material that can be taught within time and examination constraints; an award selects a particular work under a particular set of rules. A text may be archival without being canonical, canonical without being frequently taught, taught without ever winning a prize, or prize-winning and later little read. This distinction is crucial for Maithili because manuscript repositories, literary histories, university syllabi and award lists often have different centres of gravity. When historians use one list as a proxy for the whole literary field, they convert an

institutional decision into a false measure of total cultural value. Multiple institutional lists should instead be compared as evidence of different kinds of recognition.

112.3 Sahitya Akademi was designed as an autonomous national literary institution rather than a ministry department

Sahitya Akademi was established in 1954 as India's National Academy of Letters and registered as a society in January 1956. Its official constitutional language emphasised the development of Indian letters, the setting of literary standards, coordination across languages and cultural dialogue. The institutional form matters: government support gave the Akademi resources and national reach, while formal autonomy was intended to separate literary judgement from direct departmental administration. In practice, autonomy is never absolute; nominations, boards, juries, budgets and public controversy still shape institutional legitimacy. For regional-language history, however, the Akademi created something unprecedented in scale: recurring national programmes, publications, translations, seminars, a multilingual library and awards that could place a Maithili book within the same institutional architecture as works in much larger literary markets.

112.4 Maithili's Sahitya Akademi award history begins in 1966, before constitutional scheduling

The official Akademi award list identifies Maithili as an award language from 1966. This is a major chronological fact because Maithili did not enter the Eighth Schedule of the Constitution of India until the Ninety-second Amendment came into force in 2004. The two recognitions should not be collapsed. Sahitya Akademi's literary recognition created a national prize and advisory structure for Maithili within the republic's literary sphere; Eighth Schedule inclusion later altered constitutional and administrative status. The thirty-eight-year interval shows that literary institutionalisation can precede constitutional language policy. It also explains why award history is not merely an appendix to the language movement: the annual national recognition of Maithili books helped normalise the idea that Maithili possessed a modern literary field with its own authors, genres, criticism and evaluative community.

112.5 The first Maithili award is a starting point for an institutional series, not a declaration of a single founding text

The 1966 Maithili award went to Yashodhar Jha for Mithila-Baibhav, described by the Akademi as a philosophical treatise. Later awards include poetry, novels, short stories, epics, memoirs, autobiography, essays and criticism. The significance of the first award therefore lies less in making one work the origin of modern Maithili than in opening a recurring national series. Once a language has an annual award category, every year generates questions of eligibility, comparison, genre and representation. The list becomes a public chronology against which later readers measure literary development. Yet it remains an institutional chronology, not a complete history of the language's best writing. Works outside the eligibility period, unpublished manuscripts, popular genres and marginal publishers can remain invisible even while being socially important.

Institutional milestones do not occur in one constitutional sequence

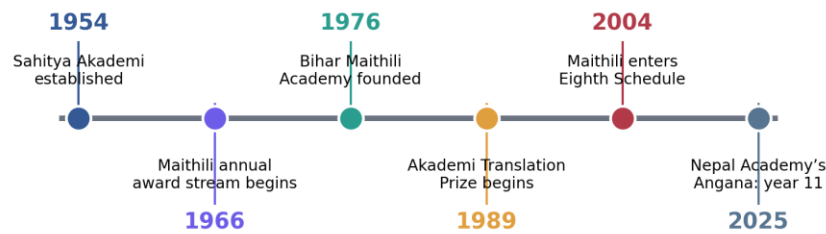


Figure 444 — Selected institutional milestones in Maithili literary recognition and support.

112.6 Language advisory boards are agenda-setting bodies as well as consultative mechanisms

Sahitya Akademi maintains language advisory boards for its recognised languages; the current Maithili board is constituted for 2023–2027. Such boards do not simply choose awardees. They provide advice for programmes, publications and literary activity, helping decide which authors, anniversaries, genres and themes receive organised attention. This is a subtle but powerful form of canon formation because a seminar or publication can precede later classroom and critical recognition. Board composition also matters. Members bring different regions, institutions, generations and literary commitments into the national organisation. A responsible history should therefore record board terms and programme decisions where the evidence survives, while avoiding the assumption that any board perfectly represents the full social or aesthetic diversity of Maithili writing.

112.7 Jury procedures turn literary judgement into a documented institutional process

An annual award appears as one author and one title, but the visible result is the endpoint of a longer procedure involving eligible publication dates, recommendations, preliminary consideration and a language-specific jury. The Akademi's published rules are historically valuable because they make selection partly reconstructable. They show that awards are not timeless rankings of all books ever written; they concern books published within defined periods and evaluated through a procedure. This protects the historian from anachronism. It also reveals how availability influences recognition: a book must be published, identifiable and accessible enough to enter the process. Small print runs, weak distribution or deficient bibliographic metadata can therefore become indirect barriers to canonisation even when no explicit exclusion exists.

112.8 The award list demonstrates genre plurality but also creates a powerful retrospective narrative

The Maithili award sequence is not confined to poetry or fiction. The official list includes criticism, philosophical writing, reminiscence, autobiography, memoir, essays and other prose alongside novels, stories and verse. This plurality matters because institutional canon formation does not simply rank authors within one genre; it helps decide what counts as literary merit across genres. At the same time, the chronological list

encourages retrospective periodisation. Readers may infer that each winning title represents the best or most characteristic work of its year. That inference is stronger than the evidence permits. An award is better read as a documented act of recognition within an eligible field, useful for mapping institutional taste but insufficient as a substitute for close reading, sales history, readership evidence or broader bibliographic reconstruction.

112.9 Gaps and absences in an award sequence are evidence, not empty space

Not every year in the early Maithili award chronology has an award entry. Such gaps should not be filled by assumption. They can arise from procedural, publication or evaluative conditions and may require annual reports or archival files to explain. More generally, absence from a prize list does not demonstrate absence of literary production. This methodological point is especially important for smaller-language print economies, where books can appear in fragile editions, circulate locally or fall out of bibliographic systems. Canon history therefore needs two parallel datasets: what institutions selected and what the wider publication field contained. Only by comparing the two can historians ask whether particular genres, regions, social groups or publishing networks were repeatedly underrepresented.

112.10 Translation prizes create a second canon by deciding which works cross language boundaries

Sahitya Akademi instituted its annual Translation Prize in 1989 for translations in its recognised languages. Translation changes canon formation because it is a double selection. A source work has already acquired enough value to be translated, and a target-language translator and publisher must then make it available to another readership. The Maithili translation-prize list includes works translated from Bengali, Nepali, English, Hindi, Urdu, Gujarati and other languages, demonstrating that Maithili participates in a multilingual Indian and South Asian literary system rather than a closed regional sphere. Translation awards also confer visibility on translators, whose labour is often hidden in ordinary literary histories. For social history, this circulation matters because it changes what Maithili readers can encounter and what comparative vocabularies become available to critics and writers.

112.11 Translation direction is itself an index of institutional power

Counting translations without recording direction can conceal asymmetry. A language may receive many translations from nationally prestigious literatures while relatively few of its own works are translated outward. The two movements have different institutional consequences. Inward translation expands the target language's repertoire and demonstrates its capacity to carry world and Indian literatures. Outward translation determines how far its writers enter national or international comparison. Publishers, translators, grant programmes and intermediary languages all affect these flows. For Maithili, translation through Hindi or English can enlarge readership but may also mediate how a work is framed. A rigorous canon history should therefore record source language, target language, translator, publisher, edition and later retranslation rather than citing "translation" as a single undifferentiated achievement.

112.12 Akademi publication programmes can stabilise texts beyond the life of an award

Awards attract attention, but publication creates durable objects. Sahitya Akademi's national programme includes original works, translations, histories, monographs, anthologies, bibliographies, dictionaries and other reference publications across its recognised languages. These formats institutionalise literature

differently. An anthology selects; a history periodises; a monograph interprets; a dictionary standardises; a bibliography defines what can be found. Such books often travel through public and university libraries even when commercial circulation is modest. Their influence can therefore outlast the publicity cycle of an award. The historian should examine Akademi publication catalogues as a separate canon-forming archive and ask which writers are repeatedly edited, translated or contextualised, which genres receive reference treatment, and how premodern material is dated and attributed in modern editions.

Institutional canon formation is a feedback circuit, not a one-time verdict

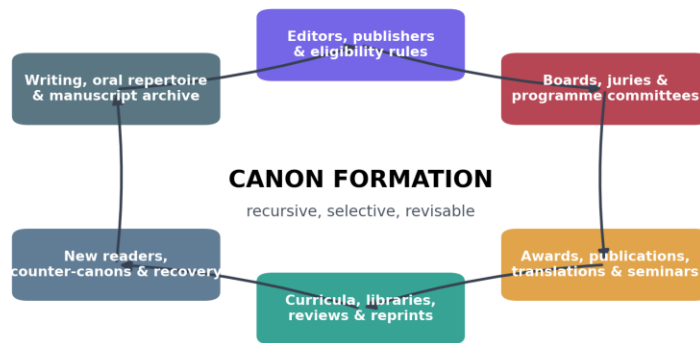


Figure 445 — Literary canon formation as a recurring institutional feedback circuit.

112.13 Seminars, centenaries and commemorative programmes manufacture literary memory in public time

Institutional memory is calendrical. Birth centenaries, anniversaries, memorial lectures, festivals and “meet the author” programmes turn writers into recurring public occasions. These events create papers, recordings, programme booklets, photographs and sometimes edited volumes. They can renew attention to a neglected figure or reinforce an already established reputation. Their chronology should be treated as evidence of when a writer mattered institutionally, not merely as ceremonial ephemera. A centenary also has a simplifying tendency: complex intellectual networks may be reorganised around a single name. For Mithila’s literary history, commemorative programmes are therefore useful when read alongside contemporaneous criticism, archival publication records and alternative traditions that may not possess an easily commemorated authorial figure.

112.14 Libraries and bibliographies create the infrastructure of citation

A work cannot remain canonical if later readers cannot locate it. Sahitya Akademi’s multilingual library, university libraries, academy collections and private repositories therefore participate in canon formation through preservation and cataloguing. Bibliographic identity—author, title, edition, publisher, year, language and subject headings—determines whether a text can be retrieved and cited. Poor metadata can make a significant work effectively invisible. Conversely, inclusion in a national catalogue can give a small-print book a second institutional life. Digitisation improves access but also introduces version problems: a scan may omit covers or advertisements, a transcription may silently modernise spelling, and a reprint may not disclose its exemplar. Canon history thus depends on bibliographic criticism as much as on aesthetic judgement.

112.15 Yuva and Bal Sahitya programmes divide the literary field by generation and readership

National literary institutions increasingly recognise that one annual main award cannot represent the full ecology of writing. Yuva Puraskar and Bal Sahitya Puraskar create distinct pathways for younger writers and children's literature within the same multilingual framework. Their importance is not only promotional. They change the age at which an author may acquire national institutional visibility and give children's publishing a status that adult-oriented literary histories often deny. Yet category creation can also compartmentalise: a writer identified first as "young" or "children's" may be read through that label longer than the work itself warrants. The historian should therefore track subsequent careers and reclassification rather than treating each prize category as a permanent literary identity.

112.16 Bhasha Samman exposes the boundary between recognised and non-recognised language fields

Sahitya Akademi instituted Bhasha Samman in 1996 partly to acknowledge writers, scholars, editors, collectors, performers and translators working in languages outside its twenty-four recognised-language structure, and also to honour major work on classical and medieval literature. The programme is particularly revealing for this volume because Mithila, Vajji and Anga are multilingual zones. Maithili has a dedicated Akademi award and advisory-board pathway; Angika and Bajjika do not occupy identical positions in the current twenty-four-language structure. This institutional asymmetry should not be mistaken for a linguistic judgement. It affects access to recurring prizes, boards and publication programmes and therefore shapes visibility. Comparative literary history must distinguish institutional recognition from the existence, vitality or historical depth of a language community.

112.17 The Bihar Maithili Academy created a state-level publishing and language-planning apparatus in 1976

The Maithili Academy in Bihar was established in 1976 for the development, conservation and promotion of Maithili language, literature and cultural tradition. Contemporary legal and parliamentary records confirm its state-supported institutional status. Its creation altered the material infrastructure of Maithili writing because a state academy could commission and publish works that a purely commercial press might avoid: grammars, dictionaries, edited texts, research, literary history and specialist writing with limited markets. It could also sustain periodicals, lectures and cultural programmes. This is a different form of canon power from a national prize. The academy could shape the corpus itself by bringing works into print, not merely evaluate books after publication.

112.18 Dictionaries, grammars and edited texts are canon-forming publications even when they are not "creative literature"

Language academies often have their deepest long-term influence through reference and editorial projects. A dictionary fixes headwords and citation forms; a grammar legitimises particular structures as standard; an edited text chooses among manuscripts; a collected edition determines what belongs to an author's corpus. These are acts of scholarly infrastructure, but they also shape literary interpretation. The Bihar Maithili Academy's publication record includes linguistic and edited-text projects that became reference points for scholars and students. Such works should be examined for editorial principles, source manuscripts, orthographic policy and revision history. A modern academy edition can become so

authoritative that its editorial decisions are later mistaken for the original text. Critical use requires keeping the edition and the historical work conceptually separate.

112.19 Curriculum adoption multiplies the influence of academy publications

A publication acquires a different social life when it enters a university syllabus. A 2017 report on the Bihar Maithili Academy stated that dozens of its books were then used in university curricula, illustrating how state publishing and higher education can reinforce one another. Syllabus adoption guarantees repeated purchase, classroom interpretation, examination questions and secondary notes. It can also stabilise a particular edition because teachers and students need a common text. This is why curriculum history belongs inside canon history. The relevant evidence is not only the title of the prescribed work but the exact edition, years of prescription, course level and examination system. Without those details, later scholars may mistake temporary pedagogical convenience for enduring consensus.

112.20 Institutional decline is also a chapter in canon history

Canon-forming institutions are vulnerable to budgets, appointments, vacancies, administrative restructuring and political priority. Reports in late 2025 and early 2026 described the Bihar Maithili Academy as inactive or locked and prompted public demands for revival. Such reports should be verified against official administrative records as they become available, but they already illustrate a larger historical point: an academy's existence on paper does not guarantee continuous institutional capacity. When staffing and publication slow, manuscripts remain unpublished, backlists become difficult to obtain, journals lapse and archival custody becomes uncertain. Institutional decline can therefore narrow a language's future canon by interrupting the very processes through which works are edited, preserved and circulated. Periods of inactivity deserve documentation as carefully as periods of award-giving or expansion.

A literary canon is produced by overlapping institutions with different powers



Figure 446 — Overlapping institutional layers that shape literary visibility.

112.21 Universities convert literary reputation into teachable sequence

Departments of Maithili and related programmes in universities across Bihar have long been important to the reproduction of literary knowledge. A 2012 parliamentary answer listed teaching of Maithili at several universities, including L. N. Mithila University, Patna University, Tilka Manjhi Bhagalpur University, B. R. A. Bihar University, Kameshwar Singh Darbhanga Sanskrit University and B. N. Mandal University. University institutionalisation matters because it creates posts, courses, dissertations, seminars, examination boards and textbook demand. It also requires historical segmentation: ancient, medieval, modern; poetry, drama, fiction, criticism; language and linguistics. These pedagogical divisions may become so familiar that

they appear natural, even when they originated in administrative course design. Syllabus history can therefore reveal when particular periodisations and author hierarchies became normal.

112.22 A syllabus creates a teachable canon by reducing abundance

No course can teach an entire literature. Selection is unavoidable, and the practical constraints are powerful: semester length, examination format, availability of affordable editions, teacher expertise and the need to represent genres or periods. The result is a teachable canon that may differ from the critical or popular canon. Frequently prescribed works accumulate commentaries, guides and research because generations of students encounter them; rarely prescribed works may become harder to find. This feedback can be mistaken for independent scholarly consensus. Historians should therefore compare syllabi across institutions and decades rather than citing one current list. Changes—especially the admission of women writers, Dalit voices, contemporary genres or digital texts—can reveal shifts in institutional definitions of literary significance.

112.23 Examinations and textbook markets give canon formation an economic dimension

Once a text is prescribed, a small economy forms around it: editions, guides, summaries, question banks, coaching notes and reprints. This can keep a work continuously available even when general readership is limited. The economic effect is especially important in regional-language publishing, where predictable student demand may subsidise books that would otherwise be commercially risky. At the same time, examination-oriented abridgement can flatten literary complexity. Extracts replace whole books, paraphrase replaces textual scholarship and errors are recopied across inexpensive guides. Canon history therefore needs publishing history. The question is not only why a text was chosen but what material form students actually read and which publishers captured the demand generated by institutional prescription.

112.24 Literary associations and journals can create counter-canons outside official academies

Official academies never monopolise literary value. Voluntary associations, writers' groups, little magazines, e-journals, conferences and private prizes can recognise work that national or state bodies overlook. Their smaller scale may permit experimentation, new genres, younger writers or ideological dissent; their weakness is often fragile financing and archival discontinuity. For Maithili, the long history of associational publication described in Chapter 107 means that canon formation has always been distributed. A writer may first acquire reputation through a journal, then enter an association's conference circuit, later be prescribed by a university and only eventually receive an academy award. Reconstructing that sequence prevents the national award from being treated as the beginning of literary value rather than one stage in a longer recognition process.

112.25 Women's representation must be measured across institutions, not inferred from a few prominent awardees

The Maithili Sahitya Akademi list includes women recipients across fiction, memoir, autobiography and other genres, but the presence of prominent awardees does not by itself establish equal access to the literary field. Representation should be reconstructed at several stages: publication, reviewing, nominations, advisory-board membership, jury service, invitations, anthology inclusion, syllabus prescription and archival preservation. Each stage can have a different gender balance. Household labour, mobility, access to

publishers and professional networks may influence who reaches the point of institutional eligibility. The historical question is therefore not whether an institution has ever honoured women writers, but how the pipeline of recognition changed over time and whether certain genres became gendered gateways into or out of the canon.

112.26 Caste, class, region and professional networks shape visibility without mechanically determining literary judgement

Institutional criticism becomes weak when it assumes either perfect neutrality or total capture by social networks. Literary judgement is real, but it occurs within a field structured by access. Authors differ in education, proximity to publishers, travel capacity, knowledge of submission procedures, professional networks and ability to maintain long writing careers. Regional concentration can matter when meetings and archives are located in particular cities. Caste and class may shape these resources, but their influence must be demonstrated through evidence rather than presumed from identity labels. The strongest method combines prosopography of boards and awardees with publication history, correspondence, jury rules and close reading. This allows institutional inequality to be studied without reducing every literary decision to social background.

112.27 India and Nepal constitute one Maithili literary field but two national institutional systems

Maithili literature crosses the India–Nepal border, but institutions do not. Indian writers encounter Sahitya Akademi, Bihar academies, Indian universities and constitutional language policy; writers in Nepal operate within Nepal’s constitutional, academic and publishing institutions, including Nepal Academy and the institutional life of Janakpur and Kathmandu. Books, writers and ideas nevertheless move across the border, creating a shared field of criticism, festivals, performance and digital circulation. A transborder literary history must therefore maintain two scales at once: national institutional histories and regional literary interaction. Treating Nepal simply as an extension of Bihar obscures its distinct state structures; treating the border as a hard cultural division obscures the shared Maithili language public.

One language field operates across two national institutional systems

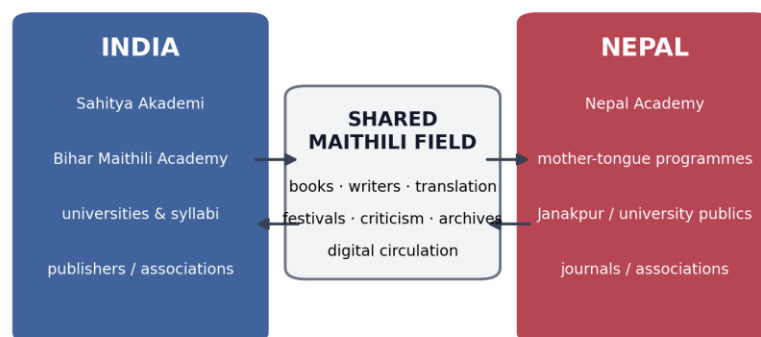


Figure 447 — Maithili literary institutions across India and Nepal: one language field, two national systems.

112.28 Nepal Academy's Maithili publishing demonstrates institutional continuity through mother-tongue programmes

Nepal Academy provides a useful example of how a national institution can support Maithili within a multilingual state. In March 2025 the Academy announced a Maithili annual literary journal, *Angana*, as an eleventh-year publication under its mother-tongue, dictionary and grammar department. The issue was presented as a Maithili short-story special number. The details matter: a recurring journal creates an editorial board, submission cycle, genre focus, archive and institutional address for writers. It also demonstrates that canon formation in Maithili is not exhausted by Indian award lists. Nepalese institutional publications can elevate different authors, themes and linguistic registers, and cross-border reading can then feed those selections back into the wider Maithili field.

112.29 Digital archives can democratise canon access while reproducing older institutional errors

Digitisation changes the economics of canon survival. A scarce academy book, discontinued periodical or conference paper can become searchable and globally accessible once scanned or transcribed. Digital journals can keep complete runs online without the storage costs of print. Yet digital abundance does not automatically correct inherited canon bias. Search engines privilege well-described files; scans reproduce the edition chosen for digitisation; metadata can copy incorrect dates or authorship; and a frequently reposted error can appear more authoritative than a rare primary source. This is particularly important for disputed attributions and layered literary traditions. The two-Vidyapati framework adopted in this volume, for example, requires source-controlled attribution rather than the automatic merging of historically distinct authorial corpora simply because later catalogues use the same name.

112.30 Institutional canon formation should be reconstructed as a layered, revisable history of attention

The central conclusion is methodological. Awards, academies, universities, journals, publishers, libraries and digital platforms do not merely preserve a pre-existing literary hierarchy. They create pathways through which some works are repeatedly made visible. Those pathways can produce genuine scholarship, translation and preservation, but they can also narrow the field through inherited categories, missing archives and uneven access. A socio-cultural-economic history should therefore ask four questions of every canonical claim: who selected, under what rule, from which available corpus, and with what subsequent material consequences? When those questions are answered, the canon becomes historically intelligible without being either worshipped or dismissed. Its authority can be respected as accumulated judgement while remaining open to correction by newly recovered texts, better dating, alternative social histories and wider archives.

Table 112.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing institutional canon formation

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Best historical use	Principal limitation
Award lists and rules	selected title, year, genre, eligibility and procedure	Map formal recognition over time	Selection is not the whole publication field
Advisory-board and jury records	participants, terms, recommendations and institutional procedure	Reconstruct who organised literary attention	Internal deliberations may not survive publicly

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Best historical use	Principal limitation
Academy publication catalogues	editions, dictionaries, anthologies, translations and backlists	Trace how institutions create and stabilise texts	Catalogue presence does not measure readership
University syllabi and examinations	prescribed editions, periods, genres and recurring authors	Reconstruct the teachable canon and its change	Practical course constraints shape selection
Seminar, festival and centenary records	invited writers, themes, commemoration and networks	Date public institutional memory	Event visibility may favour already established figures
Library catalogues and accession data	survival, availability, edition history and classification	Measure material accessibility to later readers	Cataloguing errors can reproduce bad attribution
Publishers, journals and association archives	early reputation, reviews, subscriptions and counter-cans	Recover recognition before or outside academies	Private archives are often fragmentary
Digital repositories and web archives	searchability, scans, born-digital publication and new circulation	Track contemporary access and archival recovery	Versions and metadata may be unstable or copied

Chapter 113 — Women Writers and Alternative Literary Publics

Women's writing cannot be reconstructed by beginning with prize lists and then working backward. In Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh, women participated in literary culture through a much wider range of forms: household storytelling, songs attached to marriage and ritual, letters, diaries, memoir, school and association writing, periodicals, fiction, translation, performance, painting-linked narrative, radio and recorded speech, and now digital publication. Some of these forms were signed and published; others circulated collectively or survived only because someone later recorded them. A social history of literary modernity must therefore ask not only which women became authors in the formal sense, but which channels allowed women's words, narratives and interpretations to acquire an audience.

The phrase 'alternative literary publics' is used here for spaces of circulation that coexist with, precede, challenge or bypass the most prestigious institutions of literature. They include women-only storytelling settings, little magazines, local associations, children's literature, translation networks, public readings, diaspora groups and digital archives. These are not automatically emancipatory spaces, and 'women writers' are not a single social bloc: caste, class, religion, education, rural or urban location, language repertoire and national citizenship all shape access. The task is to reconstruct changing infrastructures of voice without reducing women either to victims of exclusion or to symbolic exceptions whose visibility is mistaken for equality.

113.1 Women's literary history begins before the category of the published woman author

The modern bibliographic category 'woman writer' is useful but historically narrow. A woman who composed or transformed a wedding song, narrated a folktale to a circle of women and children, kept a household diary, wrote letters for a kin network, or supplied material to an editor participated in literary production even when her words did not appear under her own name on a title page. In gendered settings where mobility and schooling were uneven, the separation between author, performer, transmitter and audience could be especially porous. The historian should therefore treat authorship as a spectrum of attributed creative agency rather than a binary distinction between 'writer' and 'non-writer'. This wider frame makes visible the cultural labour through which women preserved vocabulary, narrative structures, ritual knowledge and social criticism long before print institutions gave some of them durable signatures.

113.2 Archival absence is produced by institutions as much as by silence

If a literary archive preserves printed books more reliably than oral performance, private papers or ephemeral journals, it will systematically exaggerate the visibility of those groups that had easiest access to presses, money, education and institutional networks. Women's under-representation in catalogues can therefore reflect both unequal production conditions and unequal preservation. Anonymous or collectively transmitted texts pose another problem: later collectors may record the words but not the teller, occasion, audience or sequence of transmission. A rigorous recovery project must distinguish 'no evidence survives' from 'women did not produce'. It should also preserve uncertainty about attribution rather than assigning a famous name to an otherwise unattributed composition. Gender history becomes stronger, not weaker, when the archive's silences are treated as historical facts requiring explanation.

113.3 Household storytelling formed a counter-public without becoming a separate society

Ethnographic research in the Nepal–India Maithil borderland shows that women have long told stories in women- and children-centred settings even where norms constrained women’s movement and public speech. These gatherings created audiences, recurrent repertoires and opportunities for reinterpretation. Coralynn V. Davis’s work demonstrates that tales can carry commentary on patrilineal households, moral obligation, fortune, suffering and women’s relationships while remaining recognisable as traditional narratives. Calling such settings a counter-public does not mean they were politically homogeneous or detached from the wider social order. Mothers-in-law and daughters-in-law, women of different castes and economic positions, and women with unequal authority could occupy the same narrative world differently. Their significance lies in providing a recurrent space in which social experience could be narrated, tested and remembered.

113.4 Song traditions preserve women’s voices but require performance-sensitive reading

Marriage songs, samdaun, birth songs, festival repertoires and other women-led performances are often mined for ‘content’ as if lyrics alone were the historical object. That approach loses the gendered social form. Who was permitted to sing, who could improvise, who listened, whether men were absent or present, and how emotion was licensed by ritual occasion all affect meaning. A lament sung at a daughter’s departure can articulate grief, household hierarchy and natal-home memory in ways that ordinary conversation may not allow. At the same time, a surviving recording from the twentieth or twenty-first century cannot be projected unchanged into earlier centuries. The historian must record performance date, place, singers, collector and variants. Women’s oral literature is evidence of creative social thought precisely when its living variability is preserved rather than flattened into a timeless folk text.

113.5 Expanding female education changed the routes by which oral competence became print authorship

Schooling did not create women’s expressive culture, but literacy widened the media through which it could circulate. Women who could read periodicals, correspond with editors, keep notebooks, enter colleges, teach, translate and use libraries gained access to a public infrastructure that differed from household performance. This transition was uneven by caste, class and locality, and it did not simply replace oral forms. Many writers moved between spoken Maithili, Hindi or Nepali education, formal prose and inherited story or song repertoires. The result was a layered modernity: oral memory supplied idiom and social experience, while print supplied durability, named authorship and wider circulation. The most useful historical question is therefore not when ‘women began writing’ but when different groups of women gained sustained access to particular technologies of textual publicity.

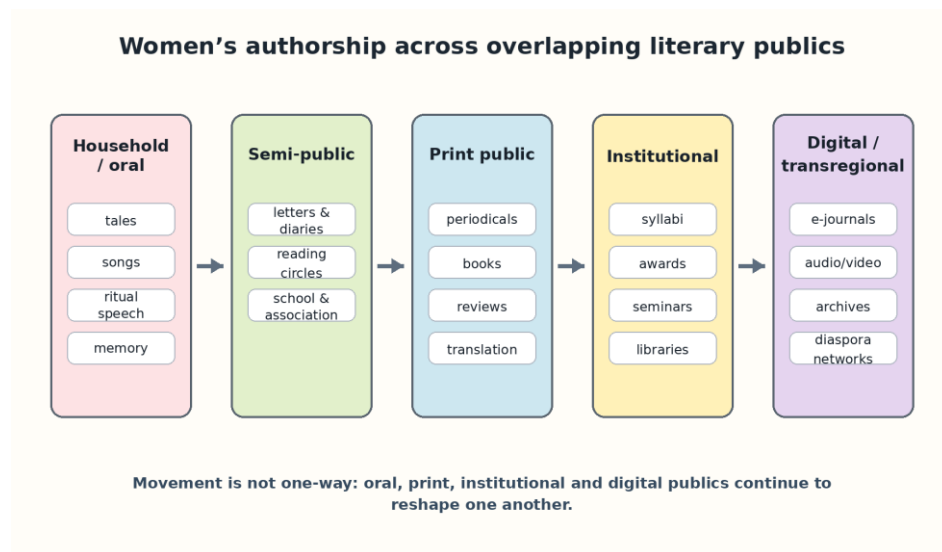


Figure 448 — Women's authorship across overlapping literary publics.

113.6 Early bibliographies of women's prose reveal both a tradition and a verification problem

Histories and research on modern Maithili record women associated with religious exposition, travel, domestic knowledge, research and other prose forms before the recent expansion of women's fiction. Such lists are valuable leads, but they also expose a basic bibliographic weakness: small editions, variant spellings, incomplete catalogues and privately circulated books can make dates, editions and even titles difficult to stabilise. A responsible women's literary history must therefore build from title pages, colophons, library records, surviving copies and periodical advertisements wherever possible. Repeating a secondary list without locating the underlying text risks turning recovery into another layer of error. The correct response to scarcity is not scepticism about women's authorship, but more exacting provenance work.

113.7 Periodicals created a bridge between private literacy and durable public authorship

Journals and newspapers lowered the threshold for entry into print because a writer did not need the capital or manuscript length required for a book. A poem, short story, memoir fragment, review or letter could appear within a shared issue, sometimes under initials or a pseudonym. Periodicals also created serial relationships: an author might first appear in a correspondence column, later publish fiction, and eventually be reviewed or anthologised. For women whose time and mobility were constrained by household responsibilities, such shorter forms could be especially important. Yet periodical history must not assume that publication meant equal editorial power. Editorial boards, selection networks and distribution remained structured fields. Contributor indexes by gender, genre, place and frequency are needed before claims about inclusion can be made.

113.8 The short story became a particularly flexible form for representing social change

The short story's scale makes it suited to periodical publication and to concentrated representation of family conflict, education, marriage, migration, generational change and women's work. It can enter a domestic scene without requiring the panoramic architecture of a novel, and it can preserve speech registers

that formal essays often suppress. The prominence of women in recent Maithili short-story recognition should therefore be read in relation to media infrastructure as well as literary choice. Collections such as Bina Thakur's *Parineeta*, recognised by Sahitya Akademi in 2018, show how the short story can move from serial or dispersed circulation into a formally canonised book. The historical task is to recover the earlier issue-level publication history behind such collections whenever possible.

113.9 The novel made the household available for extended social analysis

Novels offered women writers a large narrative space in which household authority, marriage, education, memory and historical change could be connected across generations. This did not make the novel intrinsically feminist: women authors could reproduce conservative structures, and male authors could produce powerful critiques of gender hierarchy. Authorship and political tendency must remain separate questions. What changed was representational capacity. A novel could follow how restrictions were reproduced through kinship, property, reputation, ritual and emotional obligation rather than present 'women's problem' as a single event. Women's entry into the Maithili novel therefore matters not because it guaranteed one ideology, but because it diversified who could construct long-form social worlds in the language.

113.10 Autobiography and memoir convert lived constraint into first-person historical evidence

Autobiographical writing alters the archive because the woman narrator becomes an interpreter of her own sequence of life rather than only a character in someone else's account. Shefalika Verma's *Kist-Kist Jeewan*, which received the Sahitya Akademi Award in 2012, is institutionally important in this respect: the award list classifies it as autobiography. Such works should be read as crafted narratives, not transparent transcripts of experience. Memory selects, rearranges and addresses an imagined readership. Precisely for that reason, autobiography is valuable for the history of literary publics: it shows what kinds of personal experience an author believed could be made public, in what language, and under what genre label.

113.11 Lily Ray's 1982 award marks an early institutional milestone without marking a beginning

The Sahitya Akademi's official Maithili sequence records Lily Ray's *Marichika*, a novel, as the 1982 award. This is a major milestone in formal recognition of a woman writing in Maithili, but it must not be described as the origin of women's literature. Award history measures one institution's annual selections from eligible books; it does not count unpublished writing, periodical production, oral authorship or books that never entered the award process. Ray's place is historically valuable because it demonstrates that by the early 1980s a woman-authored Maithili novel could achieve national literary recognition. The decades that separate this milestone from later women awardees should be investigated as a structure of publication and selection rather than narrated as empty time.

113.12 Usha Kiran Khan demonstrates how bilingual authorship can connect regional and wider literary publics

Usha Kiran Khan wrote across Maithili and Hindi, and Sahitya Akademi's Maithili award list records *Bhamati* as the 2010 award-winning novel. Bilingual authorship complicates a language-bounded literary history. A writer's reputation, publishing opportunities, readership and translation circulation may be built across more than one language even when an individual book belongs clearly to Maithili. *Bhamati* also

illustrates how women's writing can intervene in intellectual history by re-centering a woman located beside a celebrated male scholar. The important methodological point is not to reduce Khan to 'a woman writing about women', but to see bilingual mobility as part of the infrastructure through which a Maithili author could enter multiple literary publics.

113.13 Asha Mishra and Bina Thakur show continuity across different genres of recognition

The official award sequence records Asha Mishra's novel *Uchat* in 2014 and Bina Thakur's short-story collection *Parineeta* in 2018. Read together with Lily Ray, Usha Kiran Khan and Shefalika Verma, these awards show women receiving national recognition across novel, autobiography and short story rather than in one designated 'women's genre'. That genre plurality matters. It argues against treating women's literature as a thematic annex to the main history. At the same time, five visible milestones across several decades do not establish numerical parity. The correct conclusion is that institutional recognition broadened and recurred, while the scale and social composition of the larger field still require bibliographic counting.

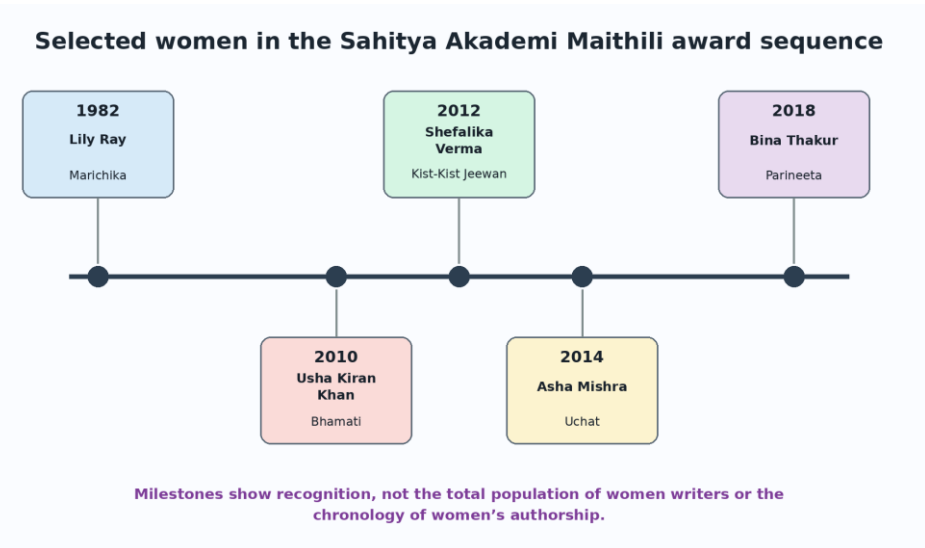


Figure 449 — Selected women in the Sahitya Akademi Maithili award sequence.

113.14 Award lists reveal canonisation but cannot measure the full literary field

A prize list is clean data: year, title, genre and author can be tabulated. That clarity can tempt historians to let the list stand for the field itself. It should instead be paired with denominator evidence: how many eligible books by women were published, in which genres, by which presses, from which locations and with what review coverage? Without that denominator, one cannot distinguish scarcity of publication from scarcity of selection. Awards also recognise books, whereas women's alternative publics often operate through forms that never become books. The strongest historical use of the award sequence is therefore as a timeline of formal canonisation against which a much wider archive of women's production can be compared.

113.15 The 2015 'Maithili Short Stories by women writers' programme made a collective identity publicly legible

Sahitya Akademi's 2015–16 annual report records an Asmita programme titled 'Maithili Short Stories by women writers' held at Bhagalpur on 29 November 2015. The event is significant because institutional programming created a collective public category rather than recognising only one award-winning individual.

Readings, discussion and audience interaction turn literature into an event and generate a different kind of archive: invitations, programmes, photographs, recordings and reports. Such programmes can widen visibility, but they can also temporarily segregate women's writing into a special slot. Historical evaluation should therefore ask what followed: whether participants entered general programmes, publications, advisory roles and curricula, and whether the category 'women writers' expanded or confined their institutional presence.

113.16 Women's presence as selectors, conveners and discussants changes literary institutions from within

Authorship is only one position in the literary field. Editors, advisory-board members, jurors, teachers, translators, organisers and critics shape which texts receive attention. Sahitya Akademi's current Maithili Advisory Board for 2023–2027 includes women such as Bina Thakur and Neeta Jha, while earlier programme records show Bina Thakur serving as convener and chairing literary sessions. These roles matter because canon formation is partly an infrastructure of agenda-setting. Yet descriptive representation should not be treated as proof of equal power. Meeting minutes, programme selection, publication commissions and jury composition are needed to understand how institutional participation translated into decisions.

113.17 Children's literature created another route into authorship and intergenerational public culture

Children's literature sits between household storytelling, school reading and formal publication. Sahitya Akademi's 2013 symposium on Children's Literature in Maithili included women in both leadership and presentation roles, including Bina Thakur, Shanti Suman and Aruna Jha. This field is historically important because it converts oral rhymes, tales, riddles and moral narratives into printed or performable forms for new readers. Women's participation here should not be dismissed as an extension of maternal work; it can involve linguistic experimentation, pedagogy, editing and literary criticism. At the same time, the association of women with children's genres can become a gendered channel if it limits access to other forms. Genre distribution by gender therefore remains an important quantitative question.

113.18 Translation gives women access to literary mobility beyond original-language authorship

Translation is a second mode of authorship in multilingual South Asia. Sahitya Akademi's Maithili Translation Prize sequence includes women translators in recent years, including the late Shikha Goyal for the 2021 prize and Menaka Mallik for 2023. Translation can bring new genres, women-authored source texts and unfamiliar social worlds into Maithili, while translation out of Maithili can expand a woman writer's readership beyond the language. A complete history must therefore record direction: who translates whom, from which language, into which language, and through which publisher. Counting only original creative writing would miss a significant part of women's labour in sustaining multilingual literary exchange.

113.19 Bilingual and multilingual women writers unsettle the idea of a sealed Maithili canon

Many educated writers in Mithila and Madhesh live across language systems: Maithili may be the language of home and creative expression, while Hindi, Nepali or English structures schooling, employment, publishing or national visibility. A writer can therefore move between languages by genre or audience. This creates opportunities but also classification problems. National literary histories may claim the writer under

the language of the most visible publication, while Maithili readers may understand the same career differently. Bibliography should record language by work rather than assign a single immutable language identity to the author. Such work-level cataloguing is particularly important for women whose mobility into wider publishing markets may otherwise make their Maithili production less visible.

113.20 India and Nepal share a Maithili literary field but not one institutional public sphere

Writers, books, performances and family networks cross the India–Nepal border, but awards, university systems, academies, media regulation and state language policies remain nationally organised. A Maithili woman in Madhesh therefore encounters a different institutional pathway from a writer in Bihar even when their spoken and literary language is mutually connected. Nepal Academy’s continuing publication of the Maithili annual *Angana*, documented as entering its eleventh year in 2025, shows one state-supported route for Maithili literary circulation in Nepal. Issue-level analysis is still needed to measure women’s authorship, editorial participation and genre distribution within such journals. The border must therefore be treated as an institutional division inside a connected language zone, not as a boundary of culture.

One Maithili language field, multiple gatekeeping systems

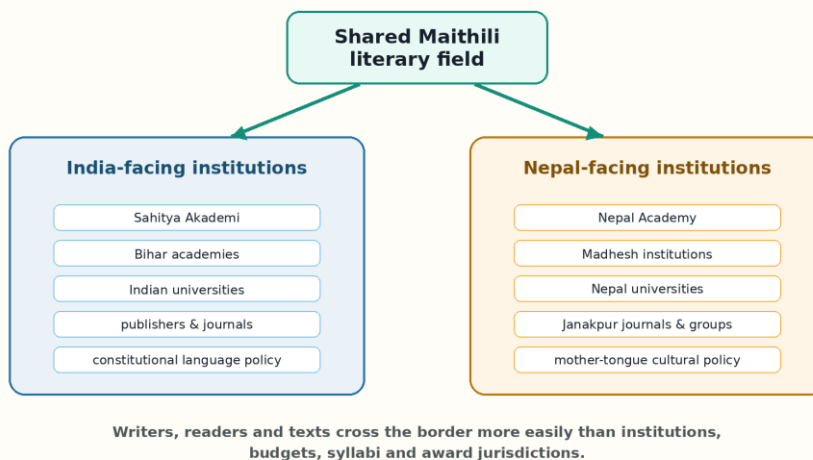


Figure 450 — One Maithili language field, multiple institutional gatekeeping systems.

113.21 Janakpur-area women’s oral tales demonstrate that alternative publics can carry social critique

Davis’s research around Janakpur is especially valuable because it records not only tales but women’s interpretations of them. Storytelling emerges as a practice through which women reason about household power, moral responsibility, vulnerability and solidarity. These narratives do not need to resemble manifestos in order to be politically meaningful. Their critique often works through plot, irony, supernatural reversal, suffering, reward and the reorganisation of family relations. Because stories change with teller and context, the archive must preserve multiple versions instead of seeking one authoritative text. This is an important correction to print-centred canon formation: variation can be evidence of active authorship rather than corruption of an original.

113.22 The Janakpur Women's Development Center shows how narrative can move between tale, song and image

The Janakpur Women's Development Center, initiated in 1989 and later institutionalised as a women's organisation, is primarily known for visual art rather than literary publication. Yet its documented working culture demonstrates why the borders of an alternative literary public are porous. Women sang songs, told stories and painted scenes drawn from Maithil tales while also addressing contemporary subjects such as health, voting and family planning. Narrative migrated from oral performance to paper image, exhibition and explanatory text. This does not make painting identical to literature, but it shows a shared narrative ecology in which women who had limited access to formal print could create public, attributed cultural work. The case is especially important for understanding non-literate or newly literate authorship without treating literacy as the sole measure of intellectual agency.

113.23 'Women writers' is not a socially homogeneous category

Gender does not cancel caste, class, religion, rural–urban inequality or differences in education. Women from households with books, salaried employment and urban connections have different opportunities from agricultural labourers, domestic workers or women whose mobility is heavily restricted. Muslim, Dalit, backward-caste, upper-caste and other women may enter literary institutions through different networks and face different costs of public visibility. A canon that simply adds a few women to an existing list can therefore remain socially narrow. Historical reconstruction should record social location when evidence permits, but without reducing literary meaning to biography or turning caste identification into speculation. Intersectional analysis requires better metadata, not stereotype.

113.24 Women's writing expands the archive of household, labour and emotional history without being reducible to those themes

Because formal archives often record property, administration and public institutions more fully than intimate life, women's fiction and memoir can be unusually rich sources for marriage negotiation, domestic labour, care, education, widowhood, migration, sexuality, intergenerational conflict and the emotional economy of kinship. Yet it is a mistake to treat women writers as ethnographic informants whose task is merely to document 'women's issues'. They write satire, philosophy, history, romance, criticism, children's literature and experimental fiction as well. The social historian should use gendered experience as one dimension of literary interpretation while preserving aesthetic form, genre and intellectual ambition.

113.25 Women readers are part of literary history even when they never publish

A literary public requires readers, listeners and discussants, not only authors. Female literacy, girls' schooling, college attendance, libraries, teaching employment and reading groups expanded the potential audience for Maithili books and periodicals. Women readers influence what is reprinted, discussed, borrowed, gifted and taught. They can also sustain texts through oral recitation or recommend them across kin networks. Reader history is difficult because circulation figures rarely identify gender and private reading leaves little trace. Evidence can nevertheless be assembled from library registers, school syllabi, correspondence, memoirs, book-club records, social-media groups and publisher testimony. Without reader history, the expansion of women's literary public remains visible only at its production end.

113.26 Digital media reduce geographic barriers while creating new forms of platform dependence

Blogs, e-journals, social media, messaging groups, audio readings and video events allow a writer in a small town, village or diaspora setting to reach readers without controlling a press or bookstore network. For women whose mobility or household schedules constrain travel, asynchronous digital publication can widen access. It can also expose writers to harassment, rapid decontextualisation, unauthorised copying and platform disappearance. Digital abundance is therefore not the same as durable preservation. A serious literary archive should capture publication date, authorial version, platform, file format and stable copy rather than rely on a share link. Chapter 114 examines Videha and digital literary culture directly; here the key point is that digital media have altered the gendered cost of entering a public while creating new vulnerabilities.

113.27 The 2025 Maithil Women’s Oral Tales Digital Archive turns an alternative public into a preservable research corpus

Coralynn Davis’s Maithil Women’s Oral Tales Digital Archive, publicly described in 2025 as a growing archive intended for Maithil communities, educators and researchers, represents a significant new stage in the history of women’s narrative preservation. Oral storytelling that once depended on repeated face-to-face transmission can now be catalogued and accessed across distance. Digitisation, however, changes the object. A recorded tale acquires metadata, a fixed file, an archival title and an audience far beyond the original setting. Researchers should preserve the circumstances of telling and consent alongside the recording so that the digital object does not erase the social relation that produced it. Archiving women’s voices is most valuable when it preserves context as well as content.

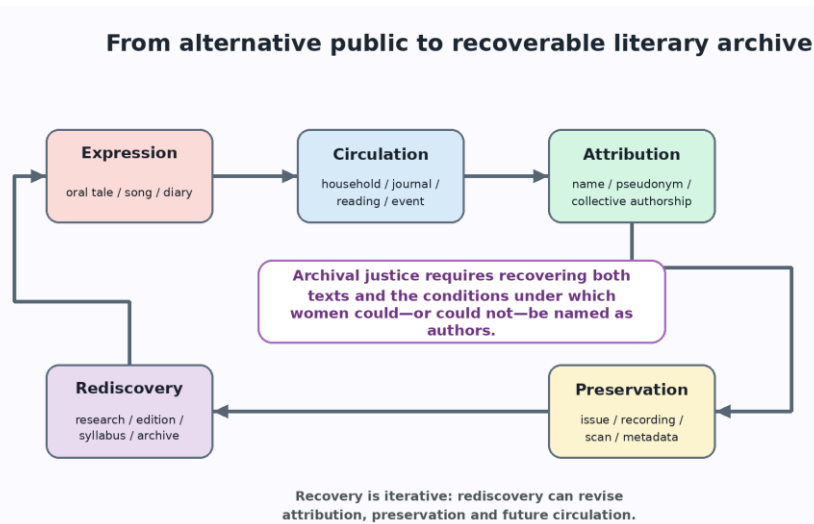


Figure 451 — From alternative public to recoverable literary archive.

113.28 Attribution and metadata are central tasks of feminist literary recovery

A scan without author, date, issue, place and provenance can save words while losing history. Women’s writing is especially vulnerable when texts appeared under initials, marital names, pseudonyms, collective signatures or no signature at all. Name changes after marriage can fragment catalogues into apparently separate authors. A recovery bibliography should therefore create authority records that preserve name variants without assuming identity when evidence is uncertain. Oral recordings require teller, collector, place,

date, language variety and performance context; periodicals require issue and page; digital items require version and capture date. These practices are not clerical additions to interpretation. They determine whether women can be found, counted and cited by future scholars.

113.29 Quantitative analysis should measure access across the whole publication ecology

A future empirical history can move beyond anecdote by counting women's participation across multiple denominators: share of books by genre and decade, periodical contributions, editorial positions, translations, awards, anthology representation, university syllabi, public programmes and digital archives. The same author should not be counted as a new participant each time she appears, and gender should not be inferred from names where uncertain. Geography also matters: Darbhanga, Patna, Bhagalpur, Delhi, Kolkata, Janakpur, Kathmandu and diaspora centres may show different patterns. Such measurement will not replace close reading, but it can reveal whether visible success represents broad change or a small number of repeatedly recognised careers.

113.30 Alternative literary publics reshape the canon by changing what can survive and who can be heard

The history traced here is not a simple movement from silence to speech. Women spoke, sang, narrated and interpreted within constrained worlds long before institutions recorded them adequately. Modern education and print widened named authorship; periodicals and associations created intermediate publics; prizes and academies canonised some books; translation and bilingual writing expanded reach; Janakpur's narrative-art networks demonstrated alternative routes to public expression; and digital archives now make once-ephemeral forms recoverable. Each expansion also created new gatekeepers. The durable conclusion is methodological: women's literary history must join canon history to the history of media, social location, readership and preservation. Only then can the field recognise both celebrated authors and the less visible narrative labour from which literary culture has continually been made.

Table 113.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing women writers and alternative literary publics

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Best historical use	Principal limitation
Oral recordings / field notes	teller, repertoire, performance context, variants	Recover women's narrative agency outside print	Recording date does not prove antiquity of a form
Diaries, letters and notebooks	first-person experience, reading and correspondence networks	Reconstruct private-to-public textual pathways	Survival is selective and often family-controlled
Periodicals and little magazines	contributors, pseudonyms, serial publication, editor networks	Measure entry into print publics over time	Runs may be incomplete; initials complicate attribution
Books, colophons and catalogues	author, title, edition, publisher, place and genre	Build verified women-author bibliographies	Small/private editions may evade catalogues
Awards, juries and programmes	formal recognition, institutional participation, public events	Map canonisation and agenda-setting	Awards have no denominator for total eligible production
Translation records	source/target language, translator, direction of circulation	Track multilingual mobility and literary brokerage	Translation visibility may exceed original-language visibility
Syllabi and library records	prescription, borrowing, teaching and availability	Reconstruct women as readers and canonised authors	Reader gender is rarely recorded consistently

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Best historical use	Principal limitation
Digital archives / platforms	version, date, multimedia form, transregional reach	Preserve ephemeral and oral/digital publics	Links disappear; platform metrics are unstable

Chapter 114 — Videha and Digital Literary Culture

Videha is useful to social and cultural history not simply because it publishes Maithili literature online, but because its development exposes the infrastructures required to make a small-language literary public durable on the web. A digital journal must repeatedly solve problems that print can hide inside established institutions: how writers submit work, how issues acquire dates and sequence, how old material remains findable, how scripts render across devices, how audio and images are preserved, how readers learn that a new issue exists, how mobile users navigate, how disabled readers gain access, and how a publication survives changes in hosting, browsers and platforms. The history of Videha is therefore also a history of digital maintenance, editorial labour and vernacular technological adaptation.

This chapter treats Videha as a case study rather than as a self-validating success narrative. Many claims about firsts, totals and institutional milestones originate in Videha's own pages, announcements and retrospectives; they are valuable primary sources for institutional self-understanding but should be independently corroborated when priority matters. The strongest evidence lies where different traces converge: dated issue pages, serial announcements, archived copies, bibliographic records, repository histories and surviving tools. This source-critical approach also clarifies an apparent chronological ambiguity. The present site identifies Videha as 'Since 2000'; a retrospective describes the venture beginning in 2000, an extant web presence from 5 July 2004, and a numbered fortnightly issue sequence beginning on 1 January 2008. These dates describe different phases of one born-digital institution rather than requiring a single artificial founding date.

114.1 Digital literary culture is an infrastructure of circulation, not merely literature placed on a screen

Calling a journal digital can describe nothing more than delivery format, but the more historically significant change occurs when publication, discovery, discussion, preservation and reuse are reorganised around networked media. A poem on a webpage is still a poem; what changes is the architecture around it. It can be linked from an issue index, found through a search engine, announced to a mailing list, copied into a thematic archive, transliterated, read aloud by software, quoted in a digital classroom and accessed simultaneously from Mithila, Delhi, Kathmandu or a diaspora household. These affordances are not automatic consequences of the internet. Each depends on editorial choices, stable links, encoding, metadata and maintenance. Digital literary history should therefore study the interfaces and workflows that make circulation possible alongside the texts themselves.

114.2 Videha's chronology demonstrates why born-digital institutions often have more than one legitimate beginning

Videha's own retrospective separates three moments that should not be collapsed. It recalls an experimental beginning in 2000 using an early internet appliance; identifies surviving material posted on 5 July 2004; and describes the first numbered fortnightly issue, designed to incorporate earlier posts, as appearing on 1 January 2008. The current masthead continues to use 'Since 2000'. For a print journal, the first numbered issue might normally supply the publication date. For a web-born project, however, experimentation, surviving public presence and stable seriality can begin at different times. Historians should record all three and state what each date means. This layered chronology is methodologically preferable to forcing web history into a print-era model of one inaugural issue.

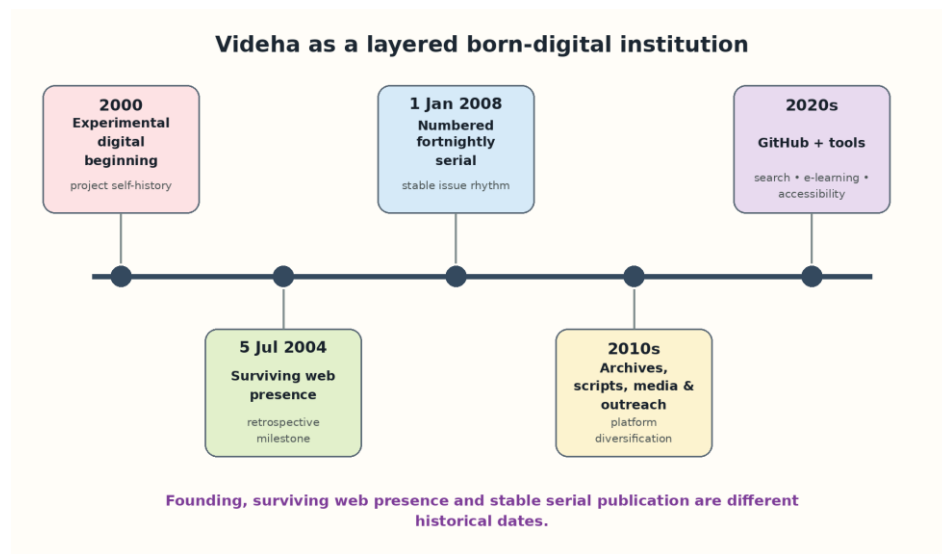


Figure 452 — Videha as a layered born-digital institution.

114.3 The fortnightly rhythm turned a website into a temporal institution

Videha's current publication statement says that issues appear twice monthly, on the first and fifteenth. Regular serial rhythm matters because it creates expectations for contributors and readers. A website that changes unpredictably is an online collection; a numbered journal with recurrent publication dates creates a calendar, backlog, anticipation and memory. Google Groups announcements document the continuation of this rhythm across hundreds of issues, including issue 258 in 2018, 328 in 2021, 349 in 2022 and later issues in the 2020s. The numbering itself is historical metadata: it permits gaps to be identified and issue sequences to be reconstructed. Yet issue number should never substitute for preservation. A perfect sequence on a live homepage is fragile if the underlying files cannot be independently recovered.

114.4 Email submission lowered geographic barriers while retaining a recognisable editorial gate

The journal's public instructions invite writers and collectors to send original material electronically together with biographical information and images. This workflow reduced the importance of physical proximity to a press or editorial office. A contributor could participate from outside Mithila without postal delay, and diaspora writers could enter the same issue as local contributors. At the same time, digital submission did not eliminate gatekeeping. Someone still had to receive files, identify authors, assess originality, normalise formatting, place items within sections and publish them under a date. The social significance of the e-journal therefore lies partly in redistributing the costs of access while leaving editorial responsibility intact. For historical reconstruction, retained submission metadata and editorial correspondence would be especially valuable because public pages show the outcome of selection but not the full pathway to publication.

114.5 Sectioned navigation created multiple publics inside one periodical

Videha's website does not present every contribution as an undifferentiated stream. Pages for prose, verse, women's writing, books, investigation, children's material, audio-video, e-learning and other thematic areas create routes through the archive. Such segmentation has two effects. It helps readers with specific interests avoid the friction of scanning complete issues, and it also produces institutional categories: a recurring 'women's corner' or children's space can become a public of its own, with expectations about contributors

and genres. Digital navigation therefore participates in canon formation. What is given a permanent tab becomes easier to revisit than material buried in an old issue. Historians should treat menus, indexes and category pages as paratexts that organise literary value, not as neutral web furniture.

114.6 Accumulated issues become a research corpus only when archival structure is added

A long-running periodical generates quantity automatically, but quantity is not the same as a usable archive. Videha's old-issue pages, thematic collections and repeated archival projects convert serial accumulation into a form that can be searched, downloaded or reorganised. The distinction matters. A scholar asking when a writer first appeared, how a debate evolved, or which genres expanded over time needs issue dates, stable titles and cross-issue retrieval. A stack of isolated webpages offers less historical leverage. Archive building is therefore a second editorial act performed on already published material. It changes the status of the journal from a sequence of present-tense issues into a longitudinal record of language, literature, criticism and cultural debate.

114.7 Static HTML has preservation advantages as well as aesthetic limitations

Much of Videha's older web architecture relies on comparatively simple HTML pages. Such pages may appear visually dated beside contemporary content-management systems, but simple files can have important durability advantages: they are inspectable, copyable, linkable and can often survive migrations with fewer dependencies on databases or proprietary plugins. The weakness is that large static sites accumulate duplicated navigation, inconsistent legacy markup and broken links unless they are audited systematically. The historical lesson is not that old web design should be romanticised. It is that preservation value and interface fashion are separate variables. For a vernacular archive with decades of content, a boring file that still renders may be more valuable than a sophisticated platform whose database disappears when hosting changes.

114.8 Search changes the archive from a shelf model into a retrieval system

Once a digital literary archive becomes large, browsing alone reproduces the limits of a physical shelf. Search boxes, filters and indexes alter the reader's relationship to the corpus because the unit of access becomes a name, phrase, issue, script or topic rather than a predetermined sequence. Videha's recent development of site-wide search, specialised corpus search and structured tools illustrates this transition. Retrieval infrastructure can also expose forgotten writers by making older pages discoverable without prior knowledge of their location. Yet search introduces its own hierarchy. What is not indexed, what is encoded badly, or what appears only inside an image may effectively disappear. Digital canon formation therefore occurs partly through indexing quality, not only through editorial selection.

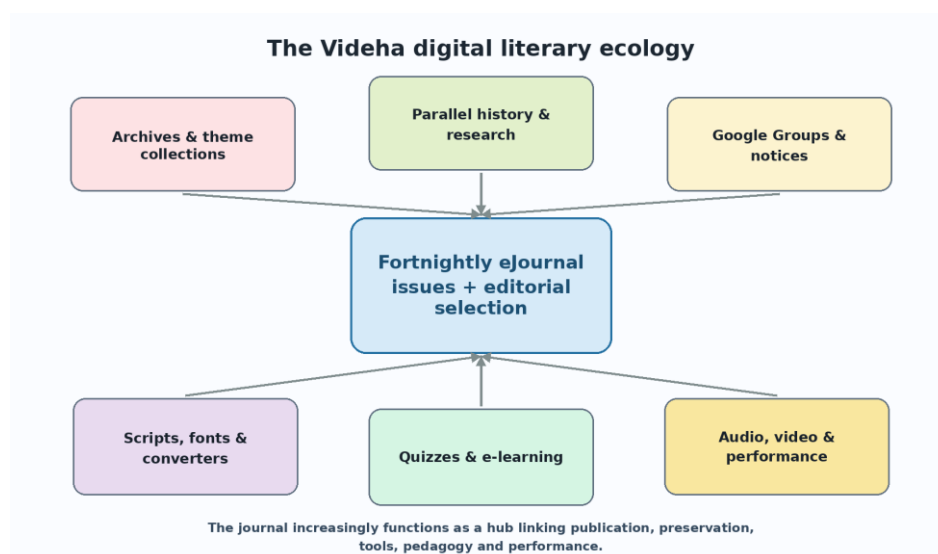


Figure 453 — The Videha digital literary ecology.

114.9 Script plurality makes digital Maithili a problem of representation as well as content

Maithili literary history is unusually sensitive to script. Devanagari dominates much modern publishing, but Tirhuta remains a major historical script, while Kaithi and other scripts appear in manuscript and archival contexts. Videha's projects have repeatedly treated script conversion, fonts and alternate-script archives as part of literary infrastructure. This broadens digital access because a text can be encountered in the script appropriate to a reader, manuscript tradition or research purpose. It also creates scholarly risk: transliteration can make visually different texts seem equivalent even when orthographic distinctions, punctuation or scribal features matter. A responsible digital edition should preserve the source representation, the conversion rules and the transformed output rather than overwrite one with another.

114.10 Unicode changed the scale on which Tirhuta could participate in ordinary digital text

The encoding of Tirhuta in Unicode 7.0 in 2014 was not simply a typographic event. Unicode assigns characters stable code points that can travel across files, operating systems, websites and databases independently of one proprietary font mapping. For literary culture, this makes searching, copying, indexing and long-term exchange more feasible than image-only or legacy-font publication. Yet Unicode does not solve everything. Fonts must implement the script correctly; keyboards must make input practical; normalisation and rendering need testing; and older documents may remain trapped in non-standard encodings. Videha's attention to fonts, keyboards and converters belongs to this post-encoding phase: cultural recognition becomes usable infrastructure only when readers and editors can actually type, display and transform the script.

114.11 Fonts, keyboards and converters are literary institutions when a language lacks commercial infrastructure

In a globally dominant language, writers can often take keyboards, spell-checkers, fonts and conversion utilities for granted because commercial software supplies them. In a smaller language, the absence of such tools becomes a barrier to composition and publication. Videha's technical pages link literary work with font

access, Tirhuta input, script conversion, transliteration and other utilities. These tools may look peripheral to a journal, but historically they expand who can produce a digital text and which scripts can be represented without specialist desktop-publishing software. The boundary between literary institution and technical workshop therefore becomes porous. A converter that allows a manuscript transcription to enter searchable Unicode can have as much archival consequence as a conventional critical essay.

114.12 Transliteration should be treated as an access layer, not as a replacement for textual provenance

Multi-script conversion is valuable because readers have unequal script competence. A Devanagari reader can gain access to Tirhuta material; a Roman transliteration can support international scholarship; phonetic or other representations can assist language learning. The danger comes when a derivative form becomes detached from its source. Automated conversion can regularise distinctions, mishandle ambiguous characters or conceal uncertainty in a damaged manuscript. Videha's multi-script ambitions are historically significant precisely because they raise this editorial problem at scale. Good digital practice requires reversible transformation where possible: retain the source image or source text, identify the conversion system, version the output and allow researchers to inspect differences. Accessibility and philological fidelity need not be enemies if provenance is preserved.

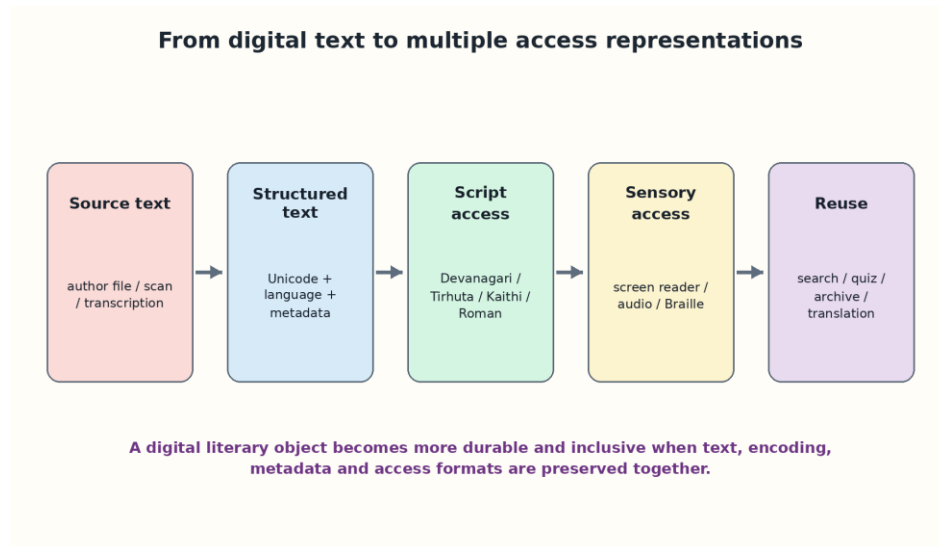


Figure 454 — From digital text to multiple access representations.

114.13 The Parallel History project turns serial publishing into cumulative scholarly argument

Videha's 'Parallel History of Mithila & Maithili Literature' represents a shift from publishing discrete contributions toward building a long-form interpretive framework across many linked pages. Digital form suits such a project because it can grow incrementally, cross-link authors and topics, attach corrections, and coexist with primary materials elsewhere on the site. The term 'parallel' also signals a historiographical position: literary history should recover neglected writers, alternative chronologies and institutional exclusions rather than merely repeat an inherited canon. Whether every revision is accepted by later scholarship is a separate question. What matters for digital cultural history is that the website becomes both publication venue and evolving research environment, blurring the print distinction between journal article, reference work and archive.

114.14 Theme-based archives can challenge canons, but they also create new editorial power

When a general periodical reorganises earlier material into author archives, special issues or thematic collections, it increases the visibility of selected subjects. Such projects can recover writers who were scattered across decades of issues and make otherwise obscure debates legible as a body of work. Videha explicitly reserves the editorial right to create web archives and theme-based archives from its published material. This is a powerful form of secondary canonisation: the archive says, in effect, that these dispersed items should now be read together. Historians should therefore document who defined the theme, what was included, what remained outside, and whether later corrections altered the collection. Digital recovery is never purely mechanical; selection re-enters at the level of aggregation.

114.15 Women's, children's and performance sections show how digital modularity can widen a literary public

Permanent or recurrent sections reduce the need for every genre or constituency to compete for identical space within a single linear issue. Videha's women-focused, children's and audio-visual areas demonstrate how one editorial umbrella can host partially distinct publics. Digital modularity also makes multimedia expansion easier: a text page can link to audio, video, images or quizzes without waiting for a special print supplement. This does not guarantee equal representation. A section can become marginal if its link is hard to find or if editorial resources are uneven. The historical question is therefore empirical: how often were such sections updated, who contributed, how prominently were they linked, and whether participation widened over time. The web creates capacity for plurality; institutions determine how that capacity is used.

114.16 Google Groups extends an issue beyond the website into a durable announcement record

Issue publication requires discovery. Videha's Google Group provides an external channel through which new issues, projects and calls are announced. The archive of those messages has historical value beyond notification because it records dates, issue numbers, changes in contact information and the vocabulary with which the journal presents itself to readers. It can also preserve evidence when the main site is reorganised. At the same time, a third-party platform is not a guaranteed archive: service policies, account control and export formats can change. The best use of such a channel is therefore supplementary. Announcement records should be periodically exported or captured so that they remain evidence even if the platform ceases to provide public access.

114.17 Mirrors and parallel platforms increase resilience only when their relationships are documented

Videha material has circulated through the primary domain, WordPress pages, Google-hosted archives, GitHub Pages, Google Groups, book platforms and external archival services. This multiplicity can protect against a single point of failure, but it can also create confusion about which copy is authoritative. A reader may encounter an old contact address, an outdated navigation menu or a stale issue on a mirror. Preservation therefore requires more than duplication. Each copy needs a role: canonical live site, historical mirror, code repository, immutable issue export, public announcement record or preservation snapshot. Clear version and date metadata let redundancy become resilience rather than contradiction. Born-digital institutions should preserve the genealogy of their own platforms just as print historians preserve edition statements.

114.18 GitHub Pages introduces versionable infrastructure into vernacular publishing

Recent Videha projects use GitHub-hosted pages for quizzes, research tools and searchable resources. Static Git repositories bring a different preservation logic from ordinary web hosting. Files can be versioned, changes can be compared, and a functioning site can often be reconstructed from the repository without a proprietary content-management database. For a cultural project maintained by a small team, this lowers some infrastructure risks and makes code itself part of the archive. The limitation is that Git is not automatically a preservation institution: repositories can be deleted, oversized binary files are awkward, and external data dependencies may vanish. The historical record should therefore capture tagged releases or periodic exports alongside the live repository.

114.19 E-learning quizzes transform an archive from a reading collection into an interactive pedagogical layer

Videha's quiz projects use browser-based questions, instant feedback and sectioned navigation to convert books, literary history, art, philosophy and other materials into active study environments. This represents a different mode of digital literary culture from conventional online publication. The reader becomes a learner whose interaction produces progression, scoring and repeated retrieval. Such tools can extend Maithili into domains of competitive examination, structured self-study and classroom supplementation. They also raise methodological questions. A quiz reduces complex texts to answerable units, and erroneous source extraction can be repeated at scale. High-quality e-learning therefore requires traceable sources, careful distinction between fact and interpretation, and preservation of the underlying text so that assessment never replaces reading.

114.20 Searchable dictionaries, thesauri and Panji tools turn textual heritage into structured data

Digital humanities begins when texts are not only displayed but reorganised into entities, relations and queries. Videha-associated tools for vocabulary, thesauri, Panji search and multilingual retrieval illustrate this transition. A user can ask for a word, gotra, village, person or script form and receive structured matches rather than manually scan a book. This is powerful because hidden relationships become computationally visible. It is also dangerous if data cleaning is opaque. OCR errors, duplicated entries, uncertain names or inferred relations can acquire false authority once placed in a searchable interface. The scholarly requirement is explicit provenance: every structured record should remain traceable to a source page, manuscript, dictionary entry or editorial transformation.

114.21 Audio, video and recorded performance enlarge the archive beyond what print literary history normally preserves

Videha's audio-video and performance initiatives recognise that Maithili culture is not exhausted by written literature. Drama, recitation, discussion, song, documentary and oral explanation retain voice, gesture and timing that a transcript cannot reproduce. Networked publication also allows performance to travel beyond the locality in which it occurred. Yet audiovisual abundance creates preservation problems faster than text because files are larger, codecs change and platform-hosted videos may disappear. A sustainable media archive requires local masters, descriptive metadata, rights information, transcripts where possible, and derivatives for low-bandwidth access. The central historical gain is substantial: future

researchers can study not only what was said but how language sounded, how performance styles changed and how audiences were addressed.

114.22 Offline browser tools show that digital modernity need not mean permanent cloud dependence

Some recent Videha utilities are explicitly designed to process PDFs, images or text locally in the browser rather than upload user files to a server. This design is significant in a region where bandwidth, privacy and device capacity can vary widely. Offline-capable tools reduce recurring hosting costs and can continue functioning after a webpage has been saved locally, provided required libraries are bundled. They also shift responsibility to the user's device, which may struggle with very large files. The broader historical point is that vernacular digital infrastructure can develop through lightweight, client-side tools rather than imitate large commercial cloud platforms. Technical modesty can be a form of institutional autonomy when it reduces dependence on paid services and protects unpublished cultural material from unnecessary transfer.

114.23 Accessibility turns digital publication into a continuing editorial obligation

Digital access is often praised because a webpage can theoretically reach anyone with an internet connection, but disability can reproduce exclusion unless pages are structured for keyboard navigation, screen readers, zoom, captions and adequate contrast. Videha's current site states that its contents are periodically checked for accessibility issues. The wider benchmark has also changed: WCAG 2.2 became a W3C Recommendation in 2023 and added requirements concerning focus visibility, target size and other interactions. For a literary archive, accessibility includes more than compliance labels. Images need meaningful alternative text, audio needs transcripts or captions where feasible, language tags should identify Maithili and English correctly, and headings must communicate document structure. Accessibility work becomes part of textual preservation because an inaccessible archive is only partially public.

114.24 Mobile reading and low-bandwidth conditions shape what counts as usable literary design

A large share of contemporary readers encounter the web through phones rather than desktop computers. This changes the practical meaning of a literary page. Long navigation rows, fixed-width tables, very large images and tiny tap targets may be manageable on a monitor but unusable on a small screen. High-resolution scans can preserve detail while also imposing data costs. Videha's digital expansion therefore has to balance archival richness with responsive design, compression, lazy loading and simple fallbacks. The historical record should not treat interface revision as superficial redesign. Each change in mobile compatibility alters who can participate, especially readers whose only networked device is a phone. Usability is part of the social geography of digital literature.

114.25 Rights statements determine whether digital preservation can become legitimate reuse

Videha's site distinguishes author copyright from the editor's stated rights to create web archives, theme-based archives, translations, transliterations and print or electronic derivatives of material published in the journal. Such statements are crucial because digital preservation and reuse often require copying. A file that may be read online but cannot legally be migrated, mirrored or transformed can become technically preservable yet institutionally fragile. At the same time, broad reuse rights should be recorded transparently so contributors understand how their work may circulate. Future archival practice would benefit from item-

level rights metadata, particularly when photographs, manuscripts, recordings or third-party materials are involved. Rights are therefore not an afterthought to digital culture; they are part of its preservation architecture.

114.26 A live website is not a preservation system

Library and archival guidance on born-digital material repeatedly distinguishes current access from long-term preservation. Websites change, domains expire, file formats become obsolete and hosting accounts can be lost. The survival of Videha over many years should not encourage complacency; it makes systematic preservation more urgent because the accumulated corpus is now large and historically valuable. A robust strategy would maintain independently recoverable copies of HTML, media and structured data; preserve metadata and checksums; capture web snapshots or WARC files; document fonts and scripts; and store copies in more than one administrative environment. Periodic recovery tests matter as much as backups. An archive is not proven by having copies; it is proven when those copies can reconstruct the cultural object after the primary system fails.

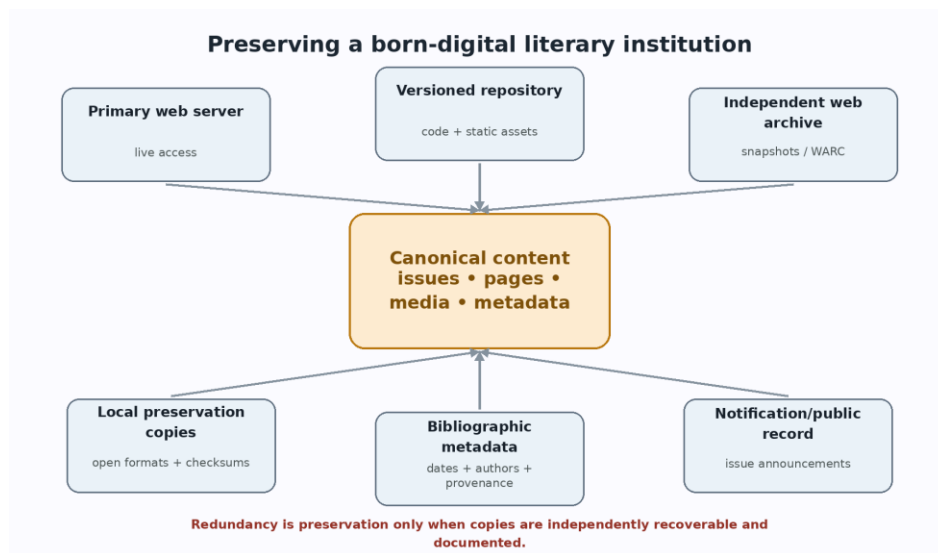


Figure 455 — Preserving a born-digital literary institution.

114.27 Link rot and platform dependence are forms of archival loss even when the text survives

Digital literature is relational. A page may survive while its external audio, embedded video, font, stylesheet or referenced document disappears. Earlier Videha pages already reveal the changing ecology of hosting services and archive locations. Link rot therefore needs to be treated as a first-class preservation problem. Automated link checking can identify failures, but repair requires editorial judgment: should a dead link point to an archived snapshot, a replacement edition, or remain visibly broken as evidence of the historical web? Silent replacement can erase provenance. The best practice is to record the original destination and the repair date. Digital preservation should preserve relationships among objects, not merely isolated files.

114.28 Audience metrics are useful evidence but poor measures of literary value

Web servers, video platforms and social networks can count visits, views, downloads and clicks, producing quantities that print journals rarely possessed. Such metrics can reveal geography, device use or

sudden interest in a topic, but they should not be confused with quality or durable influence. A specialised Tirhuta transcription may receive fewer visits than a popular quiz while having greater long-term research value. Bots and search crawlers can also inflate traffic. A social history of digital literature should therefore combine metrics with qualitative evidence: citations, classroom use, republication, correspondence, translation, community testimony and archival reuse. The digital medium makes attention more measurable, not necessarily more meaningful.

114.29 Videha increasingly functions as a networked cultural institution rather than a journal alone

The accumulated system now links fortnightly issues with author archives, historical research, script technology, dictionaries and search, Panji resources, quizzes, children's materials, audiovisual collections, book publication, public announcements and external repositories. This expansion changes institutional identity. A journal primarily selects and serialises texts; a networked cultural institution also builds tools through which texts can be discovered, transformed, taught and preserved. Such breadth creates resilience because readers can enter through many routes, but it also increases maintenance burden and the risk of uneven quality. The appropriate historical description is therefore neither 'website' nor 'magazine' alone. Videha exemplifies a vernacular digital institution assembled incrementally from publishing, archiving and technical practices.

114.30 The durable achievement of digital literary culture is continuous maintenance rather than technological novelty

The history of Videha shows why digital culture should not be narrated as a sequence of fashionable technologies. Individual platforms age quickly; the harder achievement is maintaining continuity while migrating content, repairing links, adding scripts, updating navigation, creating new access formats and preserving old ones. The same institutional labour that once kept a fortnightly issue schedule now supports archives, tools, e-learning and accessibility. Future historians will judge this culture not by whether every interface looked modern in its own moment, but by whether texts, dates, authorship, provenance and relationships remained recoverable. Digital literary modernity is therefore a practice of stewardship. Its central resource is not the newest software but the capacity to keep a language's cultural record readable, searchable, attributable and open to new forms of use.

Table 114.1 — Evidence domains for reconstructing Videha and born-digital literary culture

Evidence domain	What it can establish	Best historical use	Principal limitation
Dated issue pages	issue number, publication date, contents, contributors	Reconstruct serial chronology and editorial selection	Live pages may be overwritten or incompletely archived
Issue-announcement records	publication timing, changing URLs, contact details, self-description	Cross-check issue sequence and institutional continuity	Third-party platforms may disappear or alter visibility
Web archives / snapshots	earlier layout, links, text and platform state	Reconstruct site evolution and deleted content	Dynamic or external resources may not capture fully
Repositories / source files	version history, code, structured data, technical dependencies	Study tools and reproducibility of digital infrastructure	Repository history may not equal public publication history
Fonts / converters / script tools	encoding assumptions, transformation rules, supported scripts	Study technological conditions of multilingual access	Automated conversion can hide textual uncertainty
Audio / video masters	voice, performance, event, production context	Extend literary history beyond print text	Large files and rights complicate preservation
Metadata / catalogues	author, title, date, genre, provenance, rights	Make large archives searchable and attributable	Bad metadata can reproduce errors at scale
Accessibility audits	keyboard, headings, alt text, contrast, captions, reflow	Measure who can actually use the archive	Compliance tests do not capture every lived access need

Chapter 115 — Digital Archives and Cultural Preservation

Digital preservation changes the scale at which the social and cultural history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga can be reconstructed. Manuscripts dispersed among families, institutional records, fragile newspapers, cassette recordings, photographs, field notes, performance video and born-digital literary material can now be copied and connected without physically gathering every original in one repository. But the possibility of copying also creates a dangerous illusion: a scan on a website is not automatically an archive, and a file on a hard disk is not automatically preserved.

This chapter therefore treats digital preservation as an institutional process joining conservation, selection, description, technical integrity, rights, access and long-term stewardship. It uses official archival initiatives in India and Nepal as comparative evidence while keeping the regional problem in view: the materials needed for Mithila–Vajji–Anga history are scattered across public institutions, private collections, religious establishments, periodicals, performance communities and transborder networks. The durable objective is not merely to digitise more objects, but to make their provenance, relationships and future intelligibility survive changes of software, storage and institutions.

115.1 Digitisation and digital preservation answer different historical problems

Digitisation creates a digital representation of an analogue object; preservation keeps a trustworthy representation usable across time. A manuscript photographed once may become easier to consult immediately, yet the photographs can still be lost through disk failure, account closure, corrupted files, obsolete formats or missing metadata. Preservation therefore begins where one-time scanning ends. The National Mission for Manuscripts has long joined documentation and conservation to digitisation, while the National Archives of India's mass-digitisation programme explicitly couples online access with preservation of physical and digitised records. The distinction is essential for regional archives because copying without stewardship can multiply files while leaving cultural evidence just as vulnerable.

115.2 The physical original remains evidence after a digital surrogate is created

High-resolution imaging can reduce handling and widen access, but it cannot make the source object historically irrelevant. Paper, palm leaf, ink, binding, watermarks, marginalia, sequence, repairs and damage patterns carry evidence that may not be captured adequately in a derivative image. Audio tape and film likewise retain physical information about recording technology and editing. A responsible programme therefore links the digital surrogate to the identity and location of the source and records the conditions of capture. Digitisation should reduce unnecessary handling while preserving the possibility of returning to the original when material questions require it.

115.3 Selection is the first act of canon formation in a digital archive

No institution can digitise everything at once. Decisions about which manuscript bundle, newspaper title, author archive, photograph set or performance recording receives attention determine what later researchers can discover easily. Selection may favour celebrated writers, visually attractive objects, well-connected owners or material that is technically easy to scan. Such convenience can reproduce older exclusions. A regional preservation policy should therefore document its selection criteria and deliberately

include fragile, vernacular, women's, Dalit, occupational, local-periodical and everyday-life materials alongside prestigious literary and religious collections.

A preservation chain is more than scanning

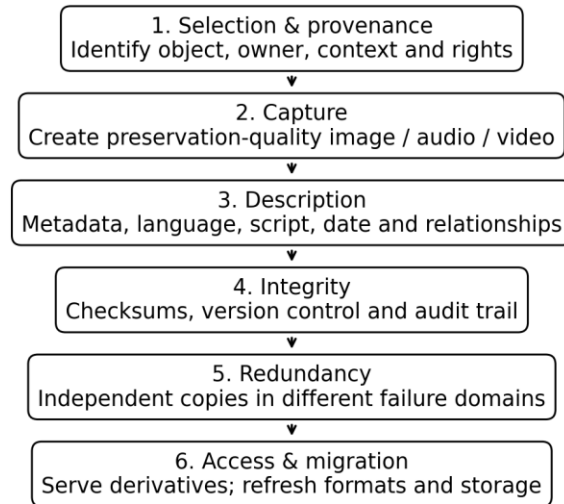


Figure 456 — Preservation as a chain of responsibilities.

115.4 Provenance is the bridge between a file and a historical source

A filename such as image001.jpg conveys almost nothing about historical meaning. Provenance records who created or held the source, where it came from, who digitised it, when and under what conditions, and what changes were made afterward. This information makes a digital object citable and auditable. For family-held Panji materials, private letters, unpublished notebooks or recordings supplied by performers, provenance can be more important than elaborate cataloguing because it preserves the chain through which the evidence entered the archive. Without it, later users may possess pixels while losing context.

115.5 Metadata should describe relationships as well as individual objects

Regional cultural sources rarely exist as isolated units. A folio belongs to a manuscript; a manuscript may belong to a copied textual tradition; an issue belongs to a periodical run; a song recording belongs to a performance occasion; a photograph may depict a person identified elsewhere in correspondence. Metadata that records only title, date and file type misses these relationships. Digital preservation becomes historically powerful when collections expose links among person, place, language, script, genre, institution, event, edition and related object. Such relational description also allows one archive to connect meaningfully with another without physically merging ownership.

115.6 Language and script metadata are indispensable in the Mithila–Vajji–Anga region

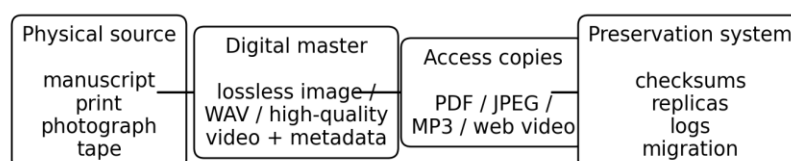
Search systems designed around one dominant language can make a multilingual archive effectively invisible. Maithili may occur in Tirhuta, Devanagari and historical scripts; Sanskrit, Persian, Hindi, Urdu, Bengali, Nepali, Angika and Bajjika may coexist in a single regional collection. Catalogue records should therefore separate language from script and retain original-script titles alongside normalised or transliterated

access forms. This avoids treating a change of script as a change of language and supports search by readers with unequal script competence.

115.7 Preservation masters and access copies should have different functions

A preservation master is created for durability and future reprocessing, while an access derivative is optimised for delivery. A large lossless image may be unsuitable for a mobile reader but valuable for future scholarship; a compressed JPEG or PDF can be convenient for everyday use but should not become the only surviving copy. The same principle applies to audio and video. Keeping master and derivative roles explicit allows an institution to regenerate access files when web standards change without repeatedly rescanning fragile originals.

Master-derivative architecture for cultural collections



Access derivatives can be regenerated; preservation masters and metadata must remain controlled.

Figure 457 — Preservation masters and access derivatives serve different functions.

115.8 Checksums convert silent corruption into detectable change

Digital files can alter without obvious visual warning. Storage errors, failed transfers or accidental overwriting may corrupt data while leaving directory listings intact. A cryptographic checksum functions as a compact fingerprint calculated from file content. Recomputing it later can show whether the file has changed. Checksums do not prevent damage, but they make integrity testable. For small institutions, this is one of the highest-value preservation practices because it requires little infrastructure yet transforms trust from assumption into something that can be audited.

115.9 Redundant copies must be independent enough to survive the same disaster

Keeping three copies on one computer is not meaningful redundancy. Fire, theft, ransomware, electrical damage or administrative deletion can remove them together. Preservation systems therefore spread copies across different storage devices, accounts or locations and test them periodically. A practical regional strategy may combine an institutional server, an offline copy and a geographically separate repository or trusted preservation service. The design should assume that any single storage location can fail.

115.10 Format choice is a long-term historical decision

File formats differ in openness, documentation, compression and dependence on proprietary software. Preservation practice generally favours well-documented, widely implemented formats and retains enough technical metadata to support later migration. Yet no list of preferred formats is permanent. The deeper principle is to monitor technological change and preserve the ability to convert without losing significant properties. A TIFF image, WAV recording or standards-based text file is useful because it keeps more recoverable information than a heavily compressed or proprietary derivative, not because any format can guarantee immortality.

115.11 File naming is not metadata, but bad file naming can destroy order

Meaningful identifiers help humans and systems keep related files together, but long descriptive filenames are fragile substitutes for catalogues. A good preservation identifier should be stable, unique and independent of changing titles or interpretations. Folder and filename conventions then support, rather than replace, structured metadata. This matters especially when digitisation is distributed among volunteers or multiple centres: inconsistent naming can separate pages from manuscripts or recordings from their descriptions before they ever enter a repository.

115.12 Web archives preserve relationships that ordinary file downloads miss

A website is an assemblage of pages, stylesheets, images, scripts, fonts, audio, video links and external references. Saving only visible text can destroy navigation, chronology and contextual relationships. Web archiving therefore requires capture strategies that preserve linked resources and record crawl dates and limitations. For long-running regional journals and cultural projects, periodic whole-site capture is valuable because a future historian may need to reconstruct not only what a page said but how readers reached it, what sections existed and which external services the site depended on.

115.13 Born-digital records require preservation before they appear old

Email, word-processing files, spreadsheets, digital photographs, source code, database exports and social-media posts can disappear faster than paper because they depend on accounts, devices and software. Their archival value is often recognised only after platforms have changed. Editors, researchers and cultural organisations should therefore schedule exports and deposits during active use rather than waiting for institutional closure. The history of twenty-first-century Maithili and Angika culture will be unusually incomplete if born-digital working records are treated as disposable.

115.14 Version history can itself be evidence

A digital text may be corrected repeatedly without leaving the visible traces that handwritten revisions leave on paper. Version control, dated snapshots and changelogs can recover part of this history. For scholarly editions, websites, dictionaries and databases, preserving successive states allows researchers to distinguish correction from silent rewriting and to study how knowledge infrastructures evolved. Git-based repositories are especially useful for text and code because they store changes as an intelligible sequence rather than as unrelated copies.

115.15 Databases must preserve exportable data, not only a functioning interface

A searchable website can fail even when its underlying data remain valuable. Proprietary database systems, abandoned plugins or expired hosting can make records inaccessible. Preservation therefore requires regular exports in documented, portable forms together with schema documentation explaining fields and relationships. A Panji search tool, bibliographic catalogue or historical-place database should be preservable independently of the particular web interface through which users currently query it.

115.16 OCR expands discovery but should never erase uncertainty

Optical character recognition can turn page images into searchable text, making large periodical and book collections vastly easier to investigate. Yet OCR accuracy varies with typeface, paper quality, language and script. Historical Tirhuta, damaged Devanagari or mixed-language pages may produce serious errors. The responsible model keeps the page image as evidence, stores OCR as a derived layer and allows corrections without pretending that machine transcription is identical to the source. Searchability and fidelity should reinforce rather than replace one another.

115.17 Handwritten-text recognition is promising but corpus-dependent

Machine learning can increasingly recognise handwriting when sufficient training data exist, but minority scripts and local hands are poorly served by generic models. Regional projects can contribute by creating carefully transcribed training sets linked to images and by documenting confidence. Such work has value beyond automation: aligned image–transcription corpora become scholarly resources in their own right. The danger is to publish uncertain automated readings as authoritative text.

115.18 Audiovisual preservation has a shorter technological horizon than paper conservation

Cassettes, VHS tapes, optical discs and early digital video combine chemical decay with hardware obsolescence. Playback equipment disappears, while each use may damage fragile media. Priority digitisation should therefore identify at-risk recordings before more stable paper sources simply because audiovisual rescue can be time-sensitive. Preservation-quality capture should retain the original signal as fully as feasible, while smaller files serve streaming users. Performer, event, date, location and consent metadata are as important as technical format.

115.19 Oral-history preservation requires consent to travel with the recording

An interview is not ethically complete when only the audio file survives. Future users need to know what the speaker agreed could be preserved, quoted, published or restricted. Consent may distinguish public access from research-only access, impose time limits or require anonymisation. These conditions should be stored with the recording so that later migrations do not sever ethical obligations from the media. Community trust is itself preservation infrastructure.

115.20 Rights uncertainty can produce a digital dark archive

Institutions often possess material they can preserve but cannot confidently publish. Copyright, donor restrictions, privacy and culturally sensitive content may require tiered access rather than either unrestricted release or no digitisation. Preservation copies can be maintained securely while rights are investigated, with metadata exposed where appropriate. The important distinction is between preservation authority and

publication authority: uncertainty about public display should not automatically justify allowing a fragile source to decay.

115.21 Traditional knowledge may require community governance rather than maximal openness

Open access is valuable but not universally appropriate. Ritual knowledge, genealogical records, sacred images or community-specific materials may have customary restrictions not captured by ordinary copyright law. Ethical digital preservation therefore needs consultation about description, audience and reuse. A repository can preserve material while applying culturally informed access controls. The goal is durable stewardship, not extraction of every source into an unrestricted global database.

115.22 National-scale infrastructures show the value of federated discovery

India's National Digital Library and cultural portals demonstrate a model in which resources remain distributed among institutions while users search through a common discovery layer. This is especially relevant to Mithila–Vajji–Anga, where sources are divided among state archives, university libraries, private collections and institutions in both India and Nepal. A federated regional catalogue may be more realistic than attempting to centralise every digital object. Shared identifiers and metadata standards can make dispersed custody compatible with unified discovery.

A distributed archive needs shared standards, not a single owner

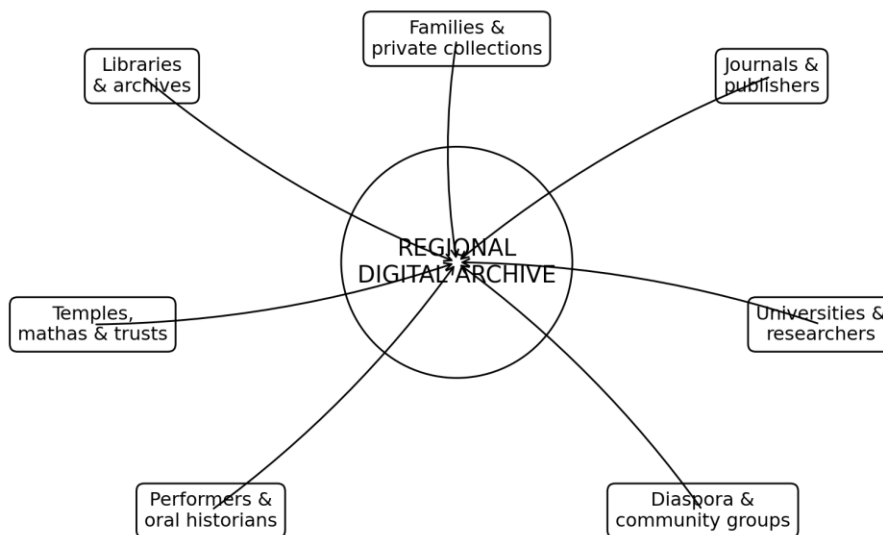


Figure 458 — A distributed regional archive depends on shared standards.

115.23 The National Archives of India illustrates preservation at mass scale

The National Archives of India states that its mass digitisation programme, begun in 2021, serves both online access through Abhilekh-Patal and preservation of physical and digitised holdings. By April 2026 it reported more than 204 million digitised pages uploaded. The scale is far beyond any regional volunteer archive, but the underlying lesson is transferable: digitisation must be tied to repository systems, metadata, quality control and continuing institutional responsibility.

115.24 Nepal's National Archives digital repository creates a transborder preservation opportunity

Nepal's National Archives, established in 1967, now operates a digital repository presenting archival publications, books and reports. For Mithila history this matters because the cultural region crosses the modern border and many relevant sources are preserved in Kathmandu and other Nepalese institutions. Cross-border discovery standards, reciprocal cataloguing and stable citations can allow scholars to reconstruct connected histories without assuming that one national repository contains the whole record.

115.25 Disaster planning must include floods, humidity and infrastructure failure

Preservation planning in the Gangetic and Tarai environment cannot be copied mechanically from temperate-climate institutions. Flooding, monsoon humidity, insects, unstable electricity, heat and transport disruption affect both originals and digital storage. Digitisation can reduce risk by creating off-site copies, but scanners, servers and backup media are themselves vulnerable. Disaster plans should therefore combine physical conservation, environmental controls where feasible, offline backups and geographically separated replicas.

115.26 Small institutions need preservation routines that survive staff turnover

Complex systems that only one technically skilled person understands are fragile institutions. Documentation should explain directory structure, passwords and custody rules, backup schedules, checksum procedures, metadata fields, renewal dates and restoration steps. Tasks should be simple enough to be repeated by successors. For a small journal, family archive or cultural association, institutional memory may be a greater risk than storage capacity. Preservation succeeds when routine work can continue after the original digitiser leaves.

115.27 Community digitisation can enlarge the archive if quality controls remain visible

Portable cameras and smartphones allow families and local organisations to contribute material that a central archive could never collect systematically. The resulting diversity is valuable, but image quality, cropping, sequence and description vary. Community programmes should therefore publish minimum capture guidelines and preserve information about who supplied each object. A lower-quality image with strong provenance can still be historically valuable, while an excellent image with unknown origin may be difficult to use responsibly.

115.28 Digital preservation should produce citations stable enough for scholarship

Researchers need persistent identifiers, clear collection titles, item-level metadata and access dates so that evidence can be checked later. A URL alone is weak when web structures change. Where formal persistent-identifier systems are unavailable, institutions can still maintain stable item IDs and redirect old addresses. Citation design is not cosmetic: it connects preservation to reproducible historical argument.

115.29 Preservation metrics should measure recoverability, not merely upload totals

Page counts and terabytes are easy to publicise, but they do not reveal whether files are described, fixity-checked, replicated, rights-cleared or recoverable after a failure. Better metrics include the proportion of objects with complete metadata, successful restore tests, checksum verification rates, independent copy counts and unresolved rights status. The purpose of measurement should be to expose risk, not to reward the fastest accumulation of scans.

Six questions for preservation readiness

Capture Can we reproduce the object?	Context Do we know what it is?	Integrity Can we detect change?	Redundancy Can one failure destroy it?	Rights May it be preserved/served?	Access Can future users find and read it?
---	-----------------------------------	------------------------------------	---	---------------------------------------	--

Failure at any layer can turn a digitised collection into an inaccessible or untrustworthy one.

Figure 459 — Six questions for testing preservation readiness.

115.30 A durable regional archive is a federation of responsibilities

No single website, university, government programme or private collector can preserve the entire cultural record of Mithila, Vajji and Anga. The realistic model is a federation: owners retain custody where appropriate; repositories provide durable storage; scholars improve description; communities govern sensitive knowledge; technologists maintain formats and integrity; and public interfaces make permitted material discoverable. Digital preservation succeeds when these responsibilities are explicit enough to survive technological and generational change.

Table 115.1 — Evidence and preservation requirements for major digital-archive domains

Evidence domain	Preservation master	Essential metadata	Primary risk
Manuscripts & rare print	Lossless page images + source retained	Collection, item, folio/page, language, script, owner, capture	Missing provenance; incomplete sequence
Newspapers & periodicals	Lossless images/PDF master + OCR derivative	Title, issue, date, page, editor/publisher, place	OCR error; missing issues; brittle web copies
Photographs	High-resolution lossless image	Photographer, subject, place, date, original format, rights	Unidentified subjects; lossy recompression

Evidence domain	Preservation master	Essential metadata	Primary risk
Audio	Preservation-quality WAV or equivalent	Performer/speaker, event, date, place, recorder, consent	Carrier decay; hardware obsolescence
Video	High-quality preservation file + original carrier where possible	Event, participants, date, place, technical source, rights	Codec/container obsolescence; compression loss
Websites & born-digital texts	Periodic captures + native files + version history	URL/repository, creator, dates, dependencies, rights	Link rot; platform closure; silent overwriting
Databases & tools	Documented data export + schema + source code where possible	Field definitions, identifiers, relations, software/version	Interface survives while data become non-portable

Chapter 116 — Unicode, Tirhuta and Technological Recognition

The technological history of Maithili cannot be reduced to the arrival of computers or the spread of mobile phones. For a language with a historic script, the decisive question is whether text can be represented as text rather than merely displayed as pictures of letters. Tirhuta, also called Mithilakshara and Maithili script, illustrates the difference. Before standard encoding, users could design attractive fonts and produce print or PDF pages, yet the underlying data often depended on private mappings to Latin, Devanagari or other code positions. Such material could look correct on one machine while remaining unsearchable, unexchangeable and fragile. Unicode recognition changed the conditions of possibility by assigning stable identities to Tirhuta characters, but it did not automatically create fonts, keyboards, literacy, software support or archives.

This chapter therefore treats Unicode encoding as one stage in a longer chain of technological recognition. The official Unicode block for Tirhuta occupies U+11480–U+114DF, and the script entered the Unicode Standard in Version 7.0 in 2014. The mature encoding proposal prepared by Anshuman Pandey documented both the script’s historical independence and contemporary digital use, including periodical production in Tirhuta and the limitations of legacy encodings. The proposal itself is a valuable historical document because it records a moment when a regional writing tradition had already entered desktop publishing but had not yet obtained interoperable plain-text representation. The history after encoding is equally important: fonts, shaping engines, keyboards, web standards, converters, teaching and preservation determine whether encoded characters become a living digital medium.

116.1 Script, language and technology are different historical categories

A language, a script and a technical encoding are related but not identical. Maithili can be written in Devanagari or Tirhuta; Tirhuta can be studied as a script even when many contemporary Maithili readers use Devanagari; and Unicode can encode a script without determining which script a community should prefer. Confusing these levels creates false narratives in which technological recognition is treated as linguistic recognition or in which script revival is assumed to require rejection of another script. A more precise history asks what each layer enables. Constitutional or educational recognition affects institutions; script practice affects literacy and cultural memory; character encoding affects digital interchange. Their timelines overlap but do not coincide.

116.2 Tirhuta as a writing tradition of Mithila

Tirhuta belongs to the historical graphic culture of Mithila and carries associations with manuscripts, genealogical records, ritual documents, scholarship and literary transmission. Its historical importance is therefore larger than the number of people who type it daily. Scripts store visual habits and conventions: letter forms, conjuncts, punctuation, numerals, scribal abbreviations and relationships between handwriting and print. Digital revival that preserves only an alphabet chart but ignores these practices risks converting a writing tradition into a decorative emblem. Conversely, a usable encoding allows the script to move beyond symbolism into searchable editions, correspondence, teaching materials and born-digital composition.

116.3 Devanagari dominance and the problem of technological substitution

The twentieth-century expansion of Devanagari for Maithili created a large modern reading public and simplified access to printing systems already built for Hindi and other languages. Technologically, however, this success could make Tirhuta invisible because software vendors tend to support scripts in proportion to existing demand. The result is a feedback loop: readers use the script that devices support, and companies interpret that use as proof that unsupported scripts are unnecessary. Unicode breaks only part of this loop by giving Tirhuta a standard identity. Practical parity still requires fonts, keyboards and applications.

116.4 Early digitisation through legacy fonts

Before Unicode encoding, users developed Tirhuta computer fonts by assigning Tirhuta glyphs to code positions intended for other characters. This was a common strategy for minority scripts in early desktop publishing because it allowed documents to be composed and printed without waiting for international standards. The visual achievement was real: books, periodicals and PDFs could appear in Tirhuta. Yet the method tied meaning to a particular font file. Remove the font, paste the text elsewhere or index it with a search engine, and the apparent Tirhuta could turn into unrelated Latin or Devanagari characters. Digitisation had occurred at the image layer without full semantic interoperability.

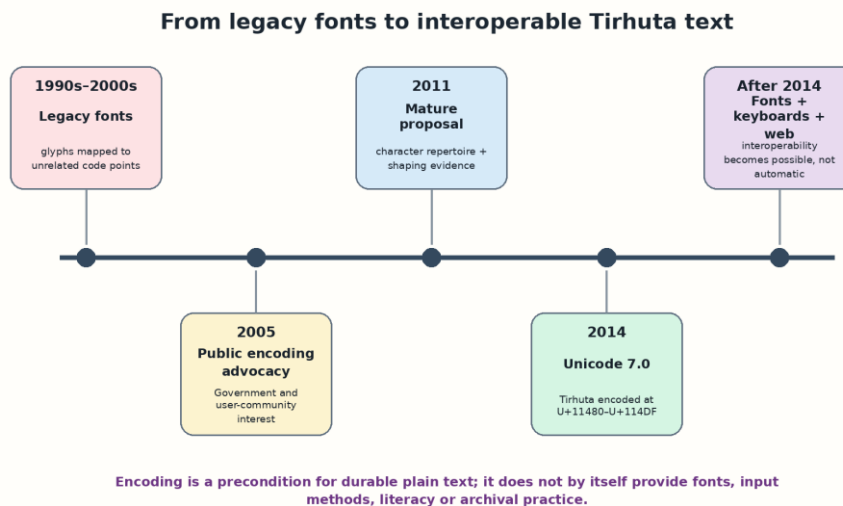


Figure 460 — From legacy fonts to interoperable Tirhuta text.

116.5 The hidden cost of visually correct but semantically wrong text

A legacy-font document may be typographically beautiful while remaining computationally misleading. Copying a word can produce nonsense; alphabetical sorting follows the substituted code points; screen readers pronounce the wrong characters; search cannot find expected words; and archives cannot reliably identify the script. The problem becomes acute during migration because a future curator may possess the document but not the exact font or mapping table. Unicode's central historical contribution is therefore not aesthetic. It separates abstract character identity from the visual glyph chosen to display it, allowing the same text to survive changes in fonts and platforms.

116.6 Governmental and community interest in standard encoding

The path to encoding combined user-community pressure, scholarly documentation and institutional interest. The 2011 Tirhuta proposal records that India's 2004 scheduling of Maithili renewed attention to its

traditional script and notes a 2005 presentation to the Unicode Technical Committee by Om Vikas of the Government of India's Department of Information Technology. Such episodes matter because international standards do not arise automatically from cultural antiquity. Someone must document the repertoire, establish usage, resolve naming and encoding questions, and carry the proposal through technical review. Standardisation is thus a form of cultural labour as well as engineering.

116.7 The Unicode proposal as historical documentation

An encoding proposal is unusually rich evidence for historians of technology. It must show how a script behaves, not merely what letters look like. The Tirhuta proposal documents vowels, consonants, signs, digits, conjunct behavior, similarities and differences with neighboring scripts, and examples of contemporary use. It also records the technological problem that motivated encoding: legacy fonts could display Tirhuta but could not provide stable plain-text representation. For cultural history, this makes the proposal a bridge source linking manuscripts and traditional orthography to desktop publishing and international character standards.

116.8 Why Tirhuta could not simply be unified with Bengali

Visual resemblance does not justify treating two scripts as one encoding. The Tirhuta proposal specifically argued against unification with Bengali even though several forms look similar. Characters that resemble one another can behave differently in vowel combinations, conjuncts and orthographic sequences. Unicode encoding must represent character identity and text behavior, not merely graphic appearance. This principle is culturally important because careless unification can erase distinctions that users themselves consider meaningful. Technical classification therefore participates in the recognition of a script as an independent system.

116.9 Character repertoire, orthography and conjunct behavior

A workable encoding requires decisions about the core repertoire and the behavior of combining signs. Tirhuta, like other Brahmic scripts, cannot be represented adequately by listing isolated alphabet forms. Vowels may be independent or dependent; consonants combine; virama-mediated sequences create conjuncts; and marks interact spatially with base letters. Font shaping then converts these character sequences into appropriate glyph arrangements. This separation between encoded sequence and rendered form is what makes multiple typefaces possible without changing the underlying text. It also explains why a font can contain all nominal characters yet still render real Maithili poorly if shaping rules are incomplete.

116.10 Unicode 7.0 and the 2014 encoding milestone

Tirhuta entered the Unicode Standard with Version 7.0 in 2014, a release that added twenty-two scripts and substantially expanded the standard. For Maithili digital history, 2014 is a major interoperability date rather than a date of script invention or revival. The script had centuries of history and decades of modern advocacy before encoding. What changed was that software could now identify Tirhuta characters by internationally stable code points. This enabled standards-conforming fonts, text exchange, databases and web content to treat Tirhuta as text in its own right.

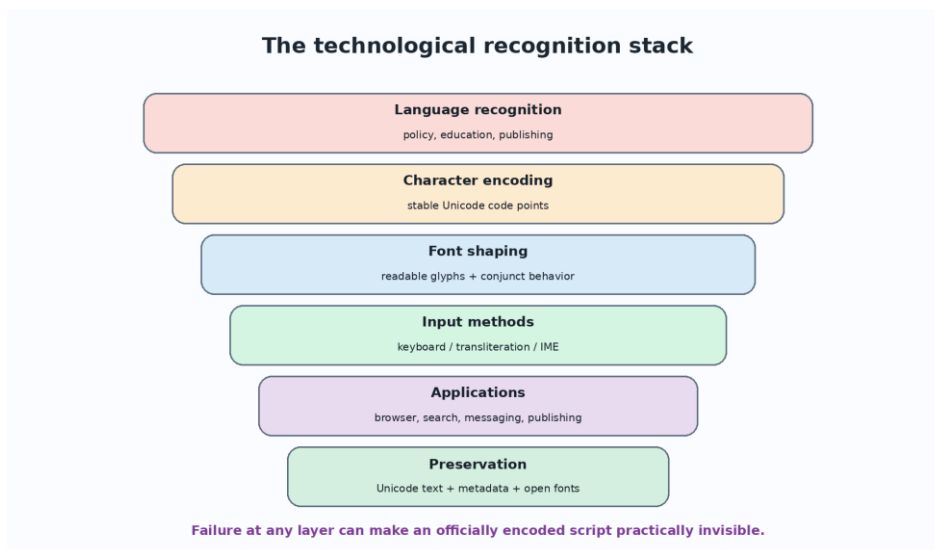


Figure 461 — The technological recognition stack.

116.11 The Tirhuta block U+11480–U+114DF

The Unicode Tirhuta block spans U+11480 through U+114DF in the Supplementary Multilingual Plane. The chart includes letters, vowel signs, marks and Tirhuta digits. Code-point ranges are not merely technical trivia: they make it possible to validate data, detect script usage, create keyboard mappings and construct archival search tools. Because Tirhuta lies outside the Basic Multilingual Plane, older software designed around sixteen-bit assumptions sometimes created additional implementation problems. Modern Unicode-aware systems normally handle supplementary-plane characters correctly, but legacy software can still expose the historical layers of the computing environment.

116.12 Encoding is not the same as a font

Unicode assigns characters; fonts draw them. This distinction is one of the most important practical lessons of script technology. A device may store perfectly valid Tirhuta text and still show blank rectangles if no suitable font is available. Conversely, a legacy font may display Tirhuta-shaped glyphs while storing the wrong characters. Sustainable support therefore requires both correct encoding and quality fonts. Testing must include common words, conjuncts, vowel signs, punctuation and mixed-script contexts rather than only isolated alphabet charts.

116.13 Open fonts and the importance of shaping quality

Openly distributable fonts reduce one of the largest barriers to script use. A font that can be embedded in websites, EPUBs and documents allows readers to see Tirhuta without manually installing proprietary software. Yet font availability is not enough: shaping quality, vertical metrics, line spacing and rendering consistency across browsers matter. The emergence of Unicode Tirhuta fonts, including the Noto family, converts encoding into visible access. For preservation, font licensing is also significant because an archive should be able to retain the typeface needed to reproduce a document without depending on an inaccessible commercial license.

116.14 Keyboards and input methods as cultural infrastructure

Typing is where many encoded scripts encounter their next bottleneck. Users need mappings that are learnable on desktop and mobile devices, and different communities may prefer phonetic transliteration, InScript-like layouts or traditional character positions. A keyboard is not culturally neutral: it determines which signs are easy to produce and can encourage simplified spelling if difficult sequences are buried. Good input systems therefore need documentation, visible layouts and testing by fluent users. Training materials should teach both the script and the digital method of entering it.

116.15 Mobile typing and the politics of practical availability

For many younger users, the phone rather than the desktop is the primary writing device. A script that works only through a specialist computer keyboard remains technologically marginal even after Unicode encoding. Mobile operating systems, third-party keyboards, messaging applications and browser fonts determine whether Tirhuta can participate in everyday communication. Practical recognition occurs when a reader can receive a Tirhuta message, reply to it, search it and paste it into another application without corruption. Mobile support is therefore a social-history issue because it determines whether the script enters routine interpersonal use or remains confined to ceremonial and scholarly contexts.

116.16 Conversion between Devanagari and Tirhuta

Automatic conversion between Devanagari Maithili and Tirhuta can dramatically enlarge the available corpus because contemporary Maithili publishing is predominantly Devanagari. The task, however, is transliteration between writing systems, not translation between languages. A reliable converter must map signs and conjunct behavior while respecting Maithili orthography. It should preserve punctuation and numerals deliberately and mark cases that require human review. Conversion tools are most useful when they produce genuine Unicode Tirhuta rather than another private font encoding.

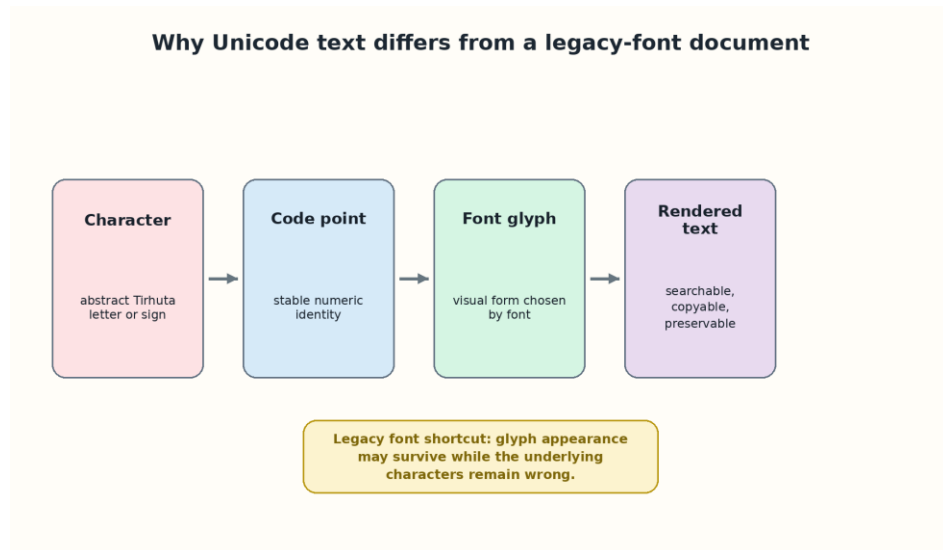


Figure 462 — Why Unicode text differs from a legacy-font document.

116.17 Conversion errors as philological errors

Conversion can create a false appearance of certainty. Historical spellings, manuscript abbreviations, variant conjuncts and ambiguous modern input may not have one mechanically obvious equivalent. If a converter silently normalises every form, it can destroy evidence that matters to philology. Scholarly

workflows should therefore preserve the source text, record the conversion method and distinguish automatic output from human-verified transcription. A reversible pipeline is preferable: researchers should be able to trace a Tirhuta digital form back to the source sequence that generated it.

116.18 Search, indexing and machine-readable Tirhuta

Once Tirhuta is represented as genuine Unicode text, it becomes available to ordinary computational operations: searching, indexing, frequency counting, concordance building and corpus comparison. These capabilities change research questions. A scholar can locate recurring names across genealogical material, compare orthographic forms, or build teaching dictionaries from a corpus. Yet search quality depends on consistent encoding and normalisation. Visually identical sequences can sometimes be represented differently, so archival systems need explicit data-cleaning rules rather than assuming that what looks the same on screen is always the same underlying text.

116.19 Web publishing and browser interoperability

Web publication tests the entire technological stack at once. The HTML must declare Unicode correctly; the page must use a font with Tirhuta coverage; the browser and shaping engine must support the script; and fallback behavior must not replace characters with empty boxes. Search engines must also crawl supplementary-plane characters without corruption. Web fonts can solve part of the distribution problem, but a durable page should remain meaningful even if the original stylesheet disappears. Separating textual content from presentation is therefore both a web-standard principle and a preservation strategy.

116.20 EPUB, PDF and the difference between reflowable and fixed representation

Fixed-layout PDF was crucial in the pre-Unicode and transitional period because it could preserve the intended visual appearance of a Tirhuta page. Its weakness is that text may be image-only or encoded incorrectly underneath. Reflowable EPUB and semantic HTML demand cleaner Unicode text but provide better resizing, search and accessibility. Preservation should not force a choice between appearance and semantics. For historically significant works, the best package may include a faithful page image or PDF together with verified Unicode transcription and metadata linking the representations.

116.21 OCR and handwritten-text recognition

OCR for Tirhuta remains more difficult than typing already transcribed text because printed and handwritten sources vary widely in letter forms, ligatures, ink quality and page condition. General OCR engines are usually trained on larger scripts and languages, so minority-script recognition requires curated training data and human correction. Handwritten-text recognition is harder still. A responsible archive should report confidence and preserve page images alongside machine transcription. Incorrect OCR presented without provenance can turn technological convenience into a new source of textual corruption.

116.22 Tirhuta in education and script revitalisation

Script revitalisation depends on learners, not only standards. Unicode makes it possible to create interactive primers, typing exercises, searchable readers and digital flashcards in genuine Tirhuta. These tools can connect palaeographic learning with contemporary communication: the learner moves from recognizing manuscript forms to typing messages and reading web text. Education also supplies the feedback needed to

improve fonts and keyboards. If technological development remains separated from teaching, engineers may solve abstract problems while users still lack a practical path into the script.

116.23 Digital archives, Panji materials and manuscript description

Digital archives can use Tirhuta encoding to describe and transcribe manuscript and genealogical material without flattening every source into Devanagari. Panji-related records are particularly instructive because names, place forms, abbreviations and scribal conventions can be historically significant. A digital edition should distinguish the manuscript image, diplomatic transcription, normalised reading and translation or transliteration. Unicode enables these layers to coexist, but metadata must record which layer a user is viewing. The script therefore becomes part of archival provenance rather than an ornamental overlay.

116.24 Videha and user-driven script technology

Videha's script work belongs within this wider user-driven history of digital adaptation. Long before universal device support could be assumed, small-language publishers had to assemble fonts, PDFs, conversion practices and web pages themselves. Later Unicode fonts, browser tools and script-conversion utilities made it possible to move toward interoperable text. The historical importance of such initiatives lies in their experimental role: users identify what formal standards still fail to make easy and build local bridges between cultural demand and general-purpose software. These projects should be documented with version histories and sample outputs so future researchers can reconstruct technological change.

116.25 Accessibility and script fallback

Accessibility introduces another dimension to script support. Screen readers may recognise Unicode code points yet lack a high-quality Tirhuta voice; operating systems may fall back to a font with poor shaping; and users with low vision depend on scalable text rather than image-only pages. A robust publication should therefore offer semantic headings, selectable text, sufficient contrast and alternative representations where speech technology is weak. Accessibility does not mean replacing Tirhuta with Devanagari. It means designing a pathway in which the historic script remains available while users can also access equivalent content through other representations when needed.

116.26 Unicode normalisation, data hygiene and preservation

Digital preservation requires stable character sequences. Unicode normalisation, duplicate encodings, invisible characters and accidental mixing of legacy data can create files that render acceptably but behave inconsistently. Archives should validate script ranges, retain source copies, calculate checksums and record conversion histories. Text normalization should be applied cautiously because a mechanically 'cleaner' sequence may erase distinctions in historical sources. Data hygiene is thus not cosmetic correction; it is the documentation of how a digital text came to have its present form.

116.27 Names, catalogues and bibliographic interoperability

Catalogues must be able to store Tirhuta titles and names while also supporting readers who search in Devanagari or Roman transliteration. The solution is not to choose one representation as authentic and discard the others. A bibliographic record can preserve the title in the script of the item, supply transliteration, and include normalized access points for discovery. Such parallel metadata is especially important for cross-border scholarship in India and Nepal and for global library systems. Unicode makes the original-script field technically possible; cataloguing policy determines whether institutions actually use it.

116.28 Technological recognition, prestige and symbolic politics

The arrival of a script in Unicode often acquires symbolic meaning beyond software engineering. Communities may read encoding as international recognition of historical identity, while governments can cite it as evidence of cultural support. This symbolism is understandable but should not obscure uneven material realities. A script can be internationally encoded while remaining absent from school computers, public forms and ordinary phone keyboards. Technological recognition is therefore both real and incomplete. Its historical significance lies in opening a standardised space that institutions and users must still populate.

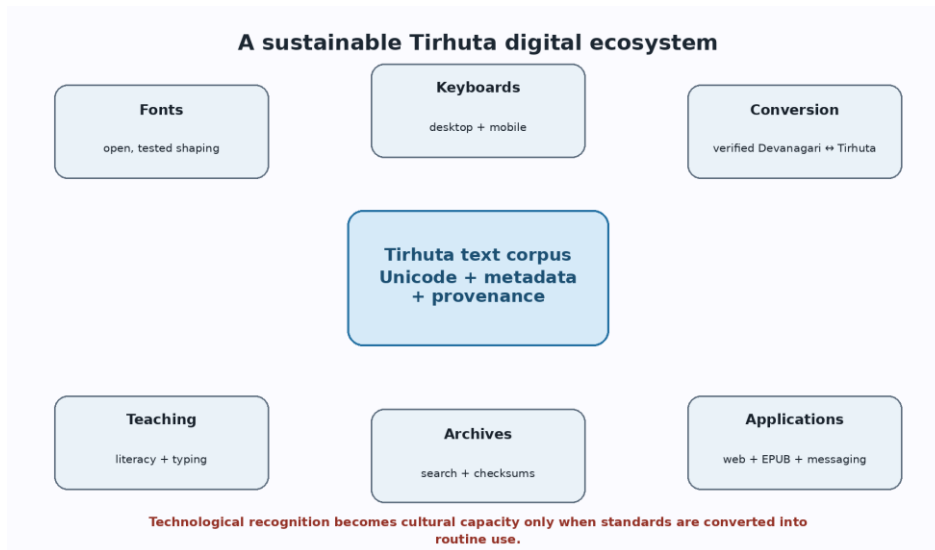


Figure 463 — A sustainable Tirhuta digital ecosystem.

116.29 What remains incomplete after Unicode

Several tasks remain after encoding: broad mobile input support, mature OCR, tested open fonts, searchable corpora, teaching materials, archival standards and sustained software maintenance. Minority-script tools can disappear when a single developer stops updating them or when a hosting service closes. Durable infrastructure requires open specifications, downloadable source data and more than one maintainer. It also requires documentation for users who inherit the system later. A project that works only because its creator remembers undocumented steps has not yet become a stable institution.

116.30 From encoded script to sustainable digital culture

Tirhuta's digital history shows how cultural preservation and technical standards intersect. Legacy fonts proved that users would adapt available technology even before formal support existed. Unicode 7.0 supplied stable character identities; fonts and keyboards converted those identities into readable and writable text; converters and archives expanded the corpus; and education can turn technical possibility into renewed literacy. The next stage is not simply more software. It is the creation of a sustainable ecosystem in which Tirhuta text can be authored, exchanged, searched, taught, cited and preserved without dependence on one machine, one proprietary mapping or one generation of specialists.

Table 116.1 — From technological recognition to durable Tīrhuta access

Layer	What provides recognition	What can still fail	Preservation response
Unicode encoding	stable character identity	no font or shaping support	store valid Unicode + versioned text
Font	visible glyphs and conjuncts	missing glyphs / bad metrics	archive open font + license
Keyboard / IME	practical text entry	desktop-only or hard-to-learn layout	document mappings; support mobile
Converter	rapid corpus expansion	silent transliteration errors	retain source; log conversion; review
Web application	publication and discovery	browser/font dependencies	semantic HTML + downloadable data
OCR / HTR	machine transcription of scans	high error on rare fonts/handwriting	retain images + confidence + corrections
Catalogue metadata	original-script discovery	one-script-only access points	store Tīrhuta + Devanagari + transliteration
Archive	long-term cultural memory	single-server loss / undocumented formats	checksums, replicas, provenance, open formats

PART XIII

THE CONTEMPORARY ECONOMY

Chapters 117–131

Chapter 117 — Demographic Structure and Population Change

PART XIII begins with demography because the contemporary economy of Mithila, Vajji and Anga is built on population structure: the number of people, their age distribution, household organisation, sex composition, education, mobility and settlement pattern. High population density can intensify pressure on agricultural land and public services, but it can also create deep labour markets, dense commercial networks and large consumer demand. A young population may offer a demographic dividend only when education, health and productive employment expand at comparable speed. Migration may remove workers from local labour markets while simultaneously sustaining households through remittances. Demography therefore belongs inside economic history rather than in a statistical appendix.

The central methodological difficulty is geographical. Modern censuses enumerate states, provinces, districts, sub-districts, municipalities, villages and households; they do not enumerate a single administrative unit called ‘Mithila–Vajji–Anga’. The historical-cultural regions overlap present-day Bihar and Nepal and have changed in meaning and boundary over time. This chapter consequently works with layered evidence rather than pretending that a fixed modern boundary can be projected backwards. For India, the last completed population census remains Census 2011 while Census 2027 is under way with a reference date of 1 March 2027. For Nepal, the 2021 census provides a more recent complete enumeration. Surveys such as NFHS add fertility, health and household indicators, but they are samples, not substitutes for a census.

117.1 Demography as the first infrastructure of the contemporary economy

Population is both a stock and a set of relationships. The number of residents determines the scale of food demand, housing, transport, schooling and health care, but economic consequences depend on composition. Ten million children create a different demand profile from ten million working-age adults; a district with large out-migration can have a high registered population but a thinner resident labour force during peak construction seasons; a village with many older adults and children may depend on earnings generated hundreds of kilometres away. Contemporary economic analysis must therefore move from headcounts to age, gender, household, work and migration structures. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, dense agrarian settlement, recurrent migration and uneven urban growth make this relational approach especially important.

117.2 A region without a single census boundary

Mithila, Vajji and Anga are historical-cultural regions, not current census districts. Any demographic total for them is therefore constructed by the historian. Modern district boundaries cut across older political and linguistic geographies, while district reorganisation changes the units between censuses. A serious reconstruction must state which districts or sub-districts are included, for what date, and why. Language maps add another layer because Maithili, Bajjika and Angika speech zones do not coincide perfectly with administrative lines. Nepal adds a separate national statistical system with provinces, districts and municipalities. The correct method is to overlay these sources and keep uncertainty visible, not to manufacture one timeless demographic polygon.

117.3 The Indian census baseline and the long gap after 2011

India's 2011 Census remains the last completed decennial population census available for Bihar as a whole. Its Primary Census Abstract provides population, sex, age-group, Scheduled Caste and Scheduled Tribe, work and rural–urban indicators down to district, sub-district, town and village levels. For the present chapter, this remains the firm base for spatial comparison inside the Indian side of the study region. Later surveys and administrative records can update selected dimensions, but they use different sampling frames and definitions. The long interval after 2011 is itself historically significant: policy has had to operate for more than a decade using projections, enrolment records, electoral rolls, health surveys and scheme databases in place of a new complete enumeration.

117.4 Census 2027 and the problem of an unfinished present

As of September 2026, India is preparing and conducting Census 2027 rather than publishing a completed post-2011 population census. The official reference date for most of India is 1 March 2027, and the exercise is being conducted digitally with a self-enumeration option; caste enumeration is also scheduled for the population-enumeration phase. This creates an unusual documentary moment. Scholars can describe the organisation and questions of the new census, but they cannot treat future 2027 results as already known. Any 'current population' for Bihar or its districts before those results must therefore be labelled as a projection or administrative estimate. This distinction prevents false precision and protects the chronology of evidence.

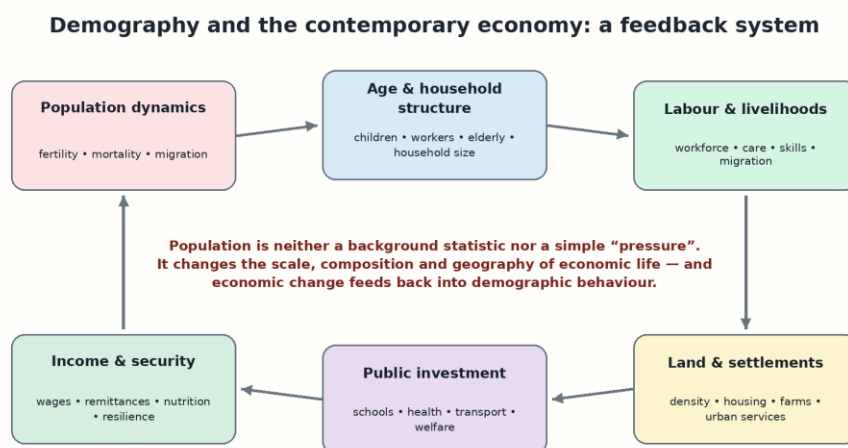


Figure 464 — Demography and the contemporary economy: a feedback system.

117.5 Nepal's 2021 census and the cross-border demographic field

Nepal offers a contrasting statistical chronology because its National Population and Housing Census 2021 has already produced detailed provincial and district results. Madhesh Province recorded 6,114,600 people in 2021, an annual average growth rate of 1.19 percent over the preceding decade, and a density of 633 persons per square kilometre. The province's age structure was still young: 33.2 percent of residents were aged fourteen or below, 57.7 percent were 15–59, and 9.1 percent were 60 or above. These figures illuminate the northern cross-border demographic field, but Madhesh Province should not be treated as identical with historical Mithila. Its eight districts contain Maithili, Bajjika, Bhojpuri and other linguistic populations and have their own administrative history.

117.6 Long-run population growth in Bihar

Bihar's 2011 population was about 104.1 million. Between 2001 and 2011 it grew by roughly 25.1 percent, substantially faster than India as a whole during that decade. Earlier census series show that this high growth emerged from the interaction of declining mortality with fertility that fell later and more slowly than in many southern and western states. The result was not simply 'too many people' but large successive cohorts entering school, marriage, labour markets and migration networks. In the districts of north Bihar and the eastern Gangetic plain, population growth intensified subdivision of holdings and demand for non-farm work. Long-run demographic growth therefore helps explain why migration, educational competition and the search for salaried employment became central features of household strategy.

117.7 Density, land pressure and the settlement mosaic

Bihar's population density reached 1,106 persons per square kilometre in 2011, among the highest levels for a major Indian state. Density is especially consequential in the alluvial plains, where settlements, roads, fields, embankments, ponds and market centres are packed into a landscape repeatedly reorganised by rivers. High density does not mechanically imply poverty: fertile land, proximity to markets and dense social networks can support intensive agriculture and commerce. The problem arises when population growth outpaces productivity, infrastructure and the creation of non-farm employment. Land fragmentation, homestead congestion and conflict over commons then become demographic-economic questions. Density must therefore be read together with land quality, flood risk, tenure and access to transport rather than used as a stand-alone indicator.

117.8 Rurality, towns and incompatible definitions of urbanisation

The language of 'urbanisation' requires unusual care in cross-border comparison. Bihar's 2011 census urban share was only 11.3 percent under Indian census definitions, reflecting the predominance of village settlement and a relatively small network of statutory and census towns. Nepal's 2021 report states that 73 percent of Madhesh Province's population lived in urban municipalities, but Nepal's municipal classification expanded administratively and is not equivalent to India's census-urban definition or to continuous built-up settlement. A municipality may contain extensive rural landscapes. The useful historical question is therefore not which side is 'more urban' from these percentages. It is how settlement functions are changing: market access, commuting, educational institutions, real-estate conversion, road-front growth and municipal service obligations.

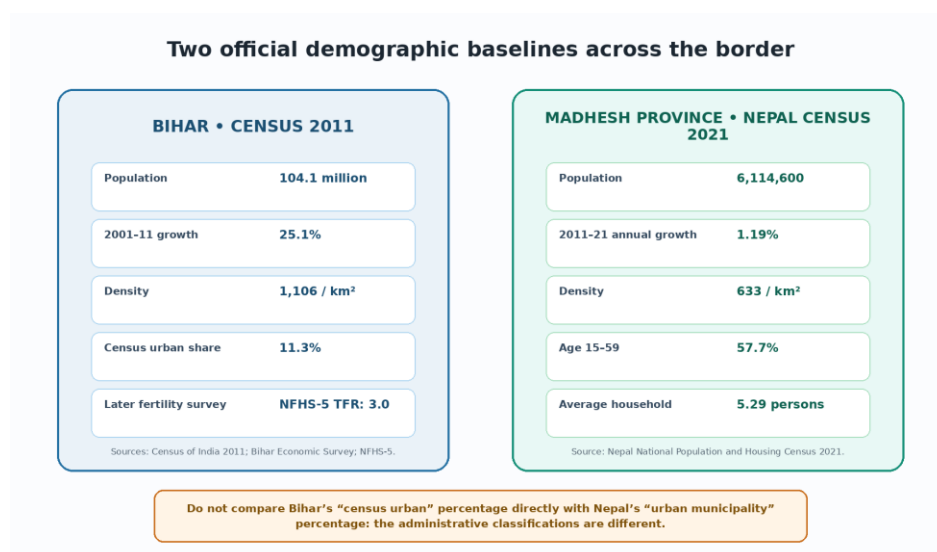


Figure 465 — Two official demographic baselines across the border; categories are not directly interchangeable.

117.9 Fertility transition and the changing size of birth cohorts

Fertility is one of the most important moving variables in the region's demographic transition. NFHS-5 for Bihar, conducted in 2019–21, estimated a total fertility rate of about 3.0 children per woman, lower than earlier rounds but still above the replacement level. The survey also showed a clear urban–rural difference, with fertility lower in urban areas. Declining fertility eventually reduces the relative size of child cohorts, but its economic effects arrive with delay: schools may face changing enrolment patterns first, labour-force growth changes later, and population ageing follows decades after that. District and social-group differences matter greatly, so a state average should not be projected mechanically onto Mithila, Vajji or Anga subregions.

117.10 Age structure and the demographic dividend question

A young age structure can create a temporary demographic dividend when the share of working-age people rises relative to dependants. Madhesh Province in 2021, with 57.7 percent of its population aged 15–59 and one-third under fifteen, illustrates both opportunity and obligation. The younger cohorts represent future workers, but they first require nutrition, schooling, health care and skills. In Bihar, successive large youth cohorts have entered labour markets that cannot be understood only within state boundaries because migration is a major employment mechanism. A demographic dividend is therefore not automatic. Without productive jobs, education and health, the same age structure can produce underemployment, delayed household formation, competitive examinations as a mass social phenomenon, and intensified migration.

117.11 Household size, domestic economies and intergenerational support

Households translate population structure into everyday economic behaviour. Nepal's Madhesh Province had an average household size of 5.29 in 2021, down from 5.80 in 2011, indicating gradual change even within a region associated with large family households. On the Indian side, household size varies by caste, class, migration status, urban residence and life-cycle stage. The apparent joint family may operate as a multi-local economic unit: some members remain in the village, others work in Delhi, Punjab, Gujarat, the Gulf or Kathmandu, and money and care move between sites. Census household definitions capture co-residence at one moment; economic history must also reconstruct these distributed family systems. Falling household size can therefore coexist with strong kin-based transfers and obligations.

117.12 Sex composition, gender and the limits of a single ratio

Sex ratios are often treated as a single measure of gender relations, but demographic interpretation requires several ratios: total population, children, sex at birth, age-specific survival and migrant populations. Male-selective labour migration can raise the female share among those actually present in a village even when other forms of gender inequality remain severe. Conversely, female migration associated with marriage can alter district residence patterns without representing labour mobility. Gendered demography must therefore connect enumeration with work, property, education, marriage and care. The economic importance of women's unpaid agricultural and household labour is especially easy to undercount when census categories privilege a single 'main' activity. Population composition is thus partly a statistical question about how work and residence are defined.

117.13 Children, schooling and the future labour force

Large child cohorts create immediate demands for schools, teachers, vaccination, nutrition and safe transport. Their future economic effect depends on whether schooling produces literacy, numeracy and transferable skills rather than only enrolment. In Bihar, educational expansion after the 2000s brought many more children, including girls and historically excluded groups, into formal schooling. Yet differences in school quality, completion and access to higher education continue to shape migration and occupation. Demography makes these differences cumulative: a weak school system does not fail only one cohort; it alters the productivity and earnings of that cohort for decades. Conversely, improvements in girls' education can influence fertility, age at marriage, labour participation and the health of the next generation.

117.14 Mortality decline, health transition and survival

The twentieth-century decline of mortality transformed the population long before fertility reached low levels. Expanded vaccination, antibiotics, safer childbirth, public-health campaigns and improved food access increased survival, although gains were uneven and periodic epidemics, floods and poverty continued to produce vulnerability. The contemporary phase is marked by a double burden: infectious disease and maternal-child risks persist while non-communicable diseases become more important as people survive to older ages. Economic consequences include changing health expenditure, care needs and work capacity. Mortality decline also changes household expectations: families can invest differently when child survival is more secure, while longer adult survival creates a growing need for income security and chronic-disease care.

117.15 Marriage patterns and the timing of family formation

Marriage remains a central demographic institution because it structures household formation, fertility, residence and many transfers between families. NFHS-5 showed that early marriage had declined in Bihar but remained significant, especially in rural areas. The timing of marriage interacts with girls' education and fertility: later marriage generally shortens exposure to early childbearing and can increase the possibility of continued study or employment. Yet marriage migration also complicates population data because women frequently change residence across villages and districts. In borderland regions, marriage networks can cross linguistic and national boundaries, linking households economically even where labour and citizenship regimes differ. Demographic history must therefore treat marriage as mobility as well as family formation.

117.16 Literacy, education and demographic capability

Literacy and years of schooling are demographic capabilities because they change how people use health services, migrate, enter occupations and interact with the state. NFHS-5 continued to show a substantial

gender gap in Bihar: literacy among women aged 15–49 was markedly below that among men, and internet use displayed an even wider divide. These differences affect who can access digital recruitment, banking, welfare applications and information. Education also changes the geography of aspiration. Students move to Darbhanga, Patna, Bhagalpur, Delhi, Kota or other educational centres; successful graduates may not return immediately. The resulting demographic circulation links the region to national labour markets and can simultaneously produce local skill shortages and remittance income.

117.17 Caste and social composition: evidence and caution

Caste is indispensable to the social demography of Bihar, but the available datasets must be kept distinct. Census 2011 systematically enumerated Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes but did not publish a full caste census for all communities. Bihar's later caste-based survey belongs to a different administrative and methodological context, while Census 2027 is scheduled to include caste enumeration in its population phase. Historical analysis should therefore avoid merging these sources as if they were one continuous series. The key economic point is that caste shapes landholding, occupation, education, migration networks and access to public goods. Population shares matter, but the distribution of assets and opportunities within and between groups matters more than numerical weight alone.

117.18 Religion and demographic plurality

The study region contains Hindu, Muslim, Buddhist, Jain, Christian and other religious histories, though contemporary population shares vary sharply by district and locality. Religious demography becomes economically relevant through settlement concentration, occupational networks, educational institutions, charitable organisations, marriage patterns and migration. It is also politically sensitive. Census categories record self-reported affiliation at a specific date; they do not measure belief, practice or social influence. For a regional history, the safest method is to use official counts where necessary while resisting the temptation to turn demographic plurality into a deterministic political narrative. Markets, schools, transport corridors and labour migration routinely cross religious boundaries even when public debate emphasises difference.

117.19 Language demography across Mithila, Vajji and Anga

Language demography is particularly important because the project's regions are partly defined through linguistic history. Census of India language tables show strong Maithili reporting across north Bihar districts, while Angika is associated with the eastern Bhagalpur–Banka–Munger zone and Bajjika with the west/north-western field, though census classification and self-reporting complicate neat maps. Nepal's 2021 language analysis reported Maithili as the largest mother tongue in Madhesh Province at 41.7 percent, while Bajjika also had a major presence and was overwhelmingly concentrated in the province. Language counts should not be mistaken for fixed ethnic boundaries. Schooling, migration, census nomenclature, multilingual households and political recognition all influence what people report as a mother tongue.

117.20 Internal migration as a structural population process

Migration is not an exceptional response to crisis; it is a structural component of the region's population economy. Census 2011 migration tables capture place of birth and previous residence, while labour surveys and field studies reveal the importance of seasonal and circular migration that can be missed by residence-based enumeration. Workers from Bihar move to Punjab and Haryana agriculture, metropolitan construction, factories, services and transport across India. Better-connected households may send students, professionals and public-sector employees. Out-migration changes the age and sex composition of origin

villages, affects wage bargaining and creates new consumption patterns. Population ‘loss’ through migration may therefore coexist with economic gain through remittances and skills, although the costs of family separation can be substantial.

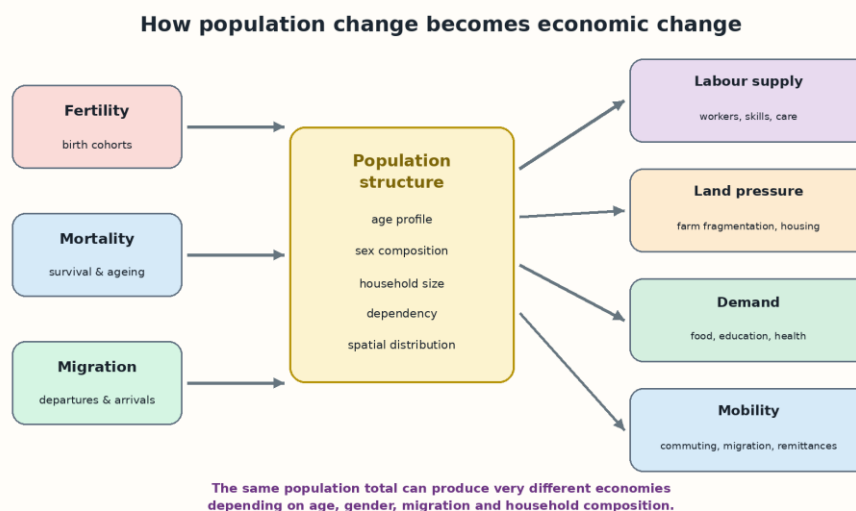


Figure 466 — How fertility, mortality and migration become economic change through population structure.

117.21 Male-selective migration and the reorganisation of households

Migration from rural Bihar has historically been disproportionately male, especially in manual and seasonal work. This can transfer day-to-day farm management, elder care, child education and dealings with local institutions to women who remain at home. Such ‘feminisation’ of responsibility does not automatically mean greater control over land or household income: remittance decisions and property rights may remain male-dominated. Demographically, male absence also distorts simple resident sex ratios and labour-force measures. For economic history, the household must be analysed as a unit spread across places, with labour supplied in one region and reproduction, care and part of consumption located in another. This multi-locality is one of the defining social forms of the contemporary eastern Gangetic economy.

117.22 Nepal, overseas labour and transnational household strategies

On the Nepal side, foreign labour migration adds another scale of demographic absence. Large numbers of Nepali workers have sought employment in the Gulf, Malaysia, India and other destinations, and Madhesh households participate in these circuits alongside internal migration to Kathmandu and other urban centres. Census categories for ‘absent population’ and household-headship help show how migration reshapes residence. The economic impact depends on destination, recruitment cost, contract conditions and the use of earnings. Overseas migration can finance housing, education and debt repayment while also exposing workers to injury, wage theft and prolonged separation. Cross-border regional history must therefore connect population data with labour regimes that lie far beyond Mithila itself.

117.23 Remittances, consumption and demographic dependence

Remittances convert demographic mobility into local purchasing power. They support food consumption, education, health care, house construction, ceremonies, debt service and sometimes land purchase or small enterprise. This can sustain villages whose resident employment base appears weak. At the same time, dependence on remittances can make households vulnerable to recessions, border closures,

recruitment shocks or illness at the destination. The COVID-19 return migration of 2020 demonstrated how quickly a labour-exporting region can experience a sudden reversal of population flows. Remittances should therefore be treated as part of household income architecture, not as a separate financial topic. Their demographic counterpart is the absence, return and circulation of working-age members.

117.24 District towns, corridors and emerging settlement concentration

Population concentration increasingly follows roads, district headquarters, educational centres and market corridors rather than only traditional town boundaries. Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur, Janakpur and numerous smaller municipalities function as nodes for health care, higher education, wholesale trade, transport, administration and real estate. Growth frequently appears as ribbon development, peri-urban subdivision and conversion of agricultural land rather than a compact metropolitan form. Such settlement change can be missed if analysis relies only on a binary rural/urban variable. The contemporary economy requires a functional geography of commuting, market access and service catchments. Demographic concentration around transport nodes also changes land values and the social composition of nearby villages.

117.25 Floods, erosion and environmentally induced mobility

Floods and river erosion produce mobility that does not fit neatly into the categories of permanent migration. The Kosi, Bagmati, Kamla, Gandak and Ganga systems can destroy crops, homes and roads, force temporary evacuation, erode land and shift channels. Some households return after water recedes; others relocate to embankments, roadside land, towns or distant labour markets. Repeated displacement can turn seasonal coping into long-term migration. Demographic evidence must therefore be read alongside disaster records and local histories. A village's population decline may reflect erosion or administrative reclassification rather than ordinary economic migration. Environmental mobility is especially important for understanding why households diversify livelihoods across several locations.

117.26 Work participation and the difference between population and labour force

A large working-age population is not the same as a large employed population. Census work categories, labour-force surveys and household descriptions differ in reference periods and in how they classify unpaid family work, seasonal agriculture and women's activities. Bihar has historically recorded relatively low work participation, especially for women, even though women contribute extensively to agriculture, livestock, household production and care. The contemporary economy must therefore distinguish labour availability from measured employment. Youth unemployment, underemployment and exam preparation can coexist with labour shortages in particular manual occupations when migration and aspiration redirect workers. Demographic structure sets the potential labour supply; institutions, wages, skills and social norms determine how much of that potential becomes recorded work.

117.27 Dependency, care work and population ageing

Dependency ratios usually compare children and older people with the working-age population, but real dependency is mediated by income, health and care arrangements. A working-age adult without employment may depend economically on migrants or pensions, while an older person may continue farming or manage family assets. As fertility falls, child dependency can decline, creating fiscal space for better education per child. Later, ageing raises the need for chronic-health care, pensions and accessible housing. Madhesh

Province's 2021 share of people aged 60 and above was 9.1 percent, already large enough to make ageing visible even in a young population. Planning for the demographic dividend and for ageing must occur simultaneously because infrastructure built today will serve tomorrow's older cohorts.

117.28 Projections, administrative estimates and the danger of false precision

Population projections are necessary when censuses are widely spaced, but they are not new enumerations. The Government of India's state projections for 2011–2036 estimate future population using assumptions about fertility, mortality and migration. Administrative systems produce other counts: school enrolments, ration cards, health registries, electoral rolls, mobile connections and welfare databases. Each serves a purpose and each has coverage rules that differ from usual-resident census concepts. Combining them without methodological discipline can generate spurious precision. Until Census 2027 results are released, a responsible account should give exact 2011 census numbers where appropriate, use later survey indicators for specific processes, and label projected totals explicitly as projections.

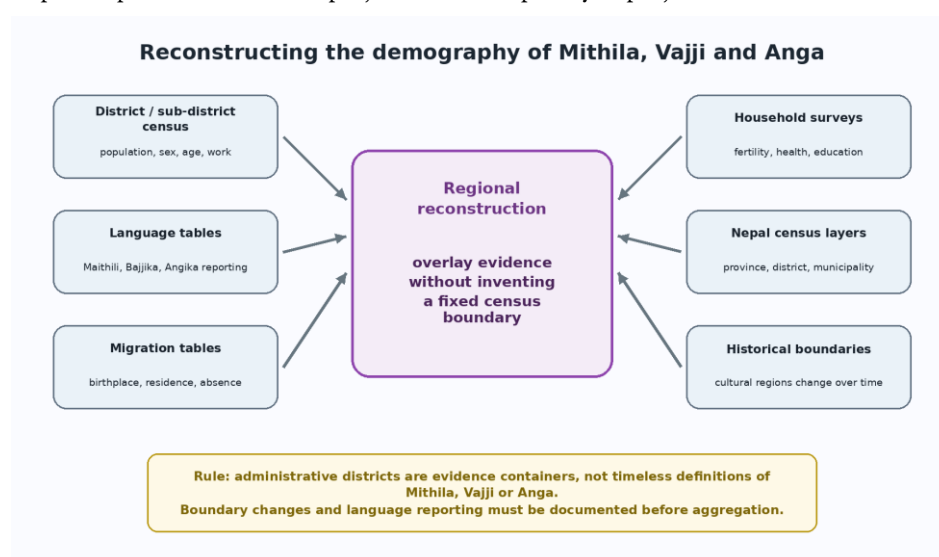


Figure 467 — Reconstructing regional demography without inventing a fixed census boundary.

117.29 What demographic structure means for economic planning

Demographic structure affects nearly every policy field in Part XIII. Agriculture must absorb or release labour as holdings fragment; manufacturing and services need jobs for young cohorts; transport investment changes commuting and migration; urban policy must anticipate settlement growth outside old municipal cores; health systems must handle both maternal-child care and chronic disease; schools must adjust to changing cohort size; and social protection must reach migrants and older adults. Cross-border differences in census timing further complicate planning for the cultural region. The practical lesson is to design institutions for mobility and change rather than for a static village population. Portability of benefits, interoperable records and regional transport become demographic policies as much as administrative reforms.

117.30 From population pressure to population capability

The phrase 'population pressure' captures only one side of the region's demographic history. Dense settlement and rapid twentieth-century growth did intensify competition for land, education and formal jobs. Yet people are also the carriers of skills, networks, cultural knowledge, enterprise and remittance

connections. The economic question is whether institutions convert population into capability. Fertility decline, better survival, expanded schooling and wider mobility are already changing household strategies. The next chapters will show how agriculture, labour, industry, services and infrastructure respond to this changing population base. Demography therefore opens PART XIII not as a warning about numbers, but as the historical architecture within which the contemporary economy operates.

Table 117.1 — Evidence architecture for demographic reconstruction

Evidence source	Reference date / period	What it establishes	Main caution
Census of India 2011	1 March 2011	complete population baseline to village/town level	last completed Indian census; boundaries must be harmonised
Census 2027 operations	2026–27	new digital census framework and forthcoming enumeration	results are not yet available in 2026
NFHS-5 Bihar	2019–21	fertility, health, marriage, education, internet use	sample survey; not a district-complete census
Population projections	2011–2036	modelled state totals and age-sex structure	assumption-dependent; not observed counts
Nepal NPHC 2021	25 Nov 2021	complete province/district/municipality demography	Nepal categories are not identical to Indian categories
Language census tables	2011 India / 2021 Nepal	self-reported mother tongue distribution	reporting categories and identities can change
Migration tables / absent population	census-specific	residence, birthplace, absence and mobility patterns	seasonal/circular migration can be under-recorded
Administrative records	continuous	service users, enrolments, beneficiaries, voters	designed for administration, not population enumeration

Chapter 118 — Agriculture in the Twenty-First Century

Agriculture remains the largest spatial system of the contemporary economy of Mithila, Vajji and Anga even where its share of measured income has fallen. Fields, orchards, ponds, wetlands, livestock, irrigation channels, farm roads, wholesale markets and seasonal labour networks organize rural life and connect villages to towns. The twenty-first-century agricultural question is therefore not whether the region is becoming ‘less agricultural’ in a simple sense, but how farming is being recomposed under small holdings, migration, mechanisation, rising input costs, changing diets, expanding roads and markets, and recurrent climate shocks. A household may cultivate rice and wheat, lease additional land, sell milk, send a member to Delhi or the Gulf, hire a combine, and market vegetables through a trader. Such a household is simultaneously agricultural, migrant, service-using and market-dependent.

The regional frame requires the same caution established in Chapter 117. Mithila, Vajji and Anga are historical-cultural regions rather than current statistical units. Agriculture must be reconstructed from district, block, crop, irrigation, livestock and market evidence rather than from a fabricated single regional total. Bihar’s official agricultural statistics provide the main Indian baseline; Nepal’s agricultural statistics are needed for the Madhesh side of the transborder economy. The Fourth Agriculture Roadmap of Bihar, launched for 2023–28, places sustainability, soil health, water conservation, climate resilience, organic inputs, horticulture and allied activities within a single policy framework. This chapter uses that framework critically: policy targets show intended direction, while farm structure and risk determine what is feasible on the ground.

118.1 Agriculture as the spatial base of the contemporary economy

Agriculture remains economically important not only through crop value but through the land, labour and infrastructure it organizes. Rural settlements are embedded in agricultural seasons: transplanting and harvesting shape labour demand; irrigation determines electricity and diesel use; crop sales generate transport and credit flows; and agricultural income supports construction, schooling and consumption. Even a household whose largest cash income comes from migration may retain land as food security, social insurance and a productive asset. This helps explain why declining agricultural shares in state output do not automatically imply the disappearance of farming. The contemporary transformation is better described as diversification around agriculture. Crop production is increasingly linked to machinery hiring, input retail, transport, warehousing, dairy collection, fish seed, cold storage, mobile payments and rural construction. The relevant economic unit is therefore a farm-linked livelihood system rather than the isolated plot.

118.2 A regional farm economy without a single statistical boundary

No single official table gives ‘agriculture of Mithila–Vajji–Anga’. Modern statistics are organized by state, province, district and crop reporting unit, whereas the historical regions cross these administrative boundaries. North Bihar itself contains sharp contrasts between flood-prone alluvial plains, better-drained uplands, diara lands, chauris and peri-urban horticultural belts; the eastern Anga districts connect to different market corridors and moisture regimes. On the Nepal side, Madhesh Province lies in the Terai and shares crops, labour and markets with adjoining Bihar, but its administrative and statistical categories differ. Regional reconstruction must therefore combine district crop data, irrigation records, agricultural censuses, horticulture statistics, livestock and fisheries data, and local ecological history. The aim is not a false regional total but an analytically defensible mosaic showing how different farm economies are connected.

118.3 Small holdings, fragmentation and the scale problem

The small size of operational holdings is one of the most durable constraints on Bihar agriculture. The 2015–16 Agriculture Census baseline reported an average holding of about 0.39 hectare in Bihar, with marginal holdings overwhelmingly dominant. That figure must be kept dated: it is a structural benchmark, not a claim about 2026. Continued inheritance and subdivision can fragment land into multiple parcels, increasing travel time, boundary loss and transaction costs. Small farms are not inherently unproductive; intensive vegetable, dairy or seed systems can generate high output per hectare. The problem is that very small, scattered plots make irrigation investment, mechanisation, crop rotation, storage and formal marketing harder to coordinate. The economic challenge is thus one of scale without dispossession: machinery services, producer groups, shared irrigation, leasing arrangements, aggregation and better logistics can create operational scale while preserving smallholder ownership.

118.4 Ownership, tenancy and the operational holding

Agricultural statistics distinguish ownership from the operational holding: the relevant production unit is land actually managed as one farm business, including leased land. This distinction matters in a region where oral tenancy, sharecropping and seasonal leasing can be important but imperfectly recorded. Owners who migrate may lease land to relatives or cultivators; land-poor households may assemble viable cultivated areas through rental. Legal insecurity and the informality of contracts can, however, discourage long-term soil improvement, tree planting or irrigation investment. Women may inherit or nominally own land while management decisions remain elsewhere in the household. Agriculture Census 2021–22 instructions explicitly seek information on tenancy, including oral tenancy, because actual cultivation cannot be understood from land title alone. A contemporary history of farming must therefore analyse the gap between cadastral ownership, operational control and labour contribution.

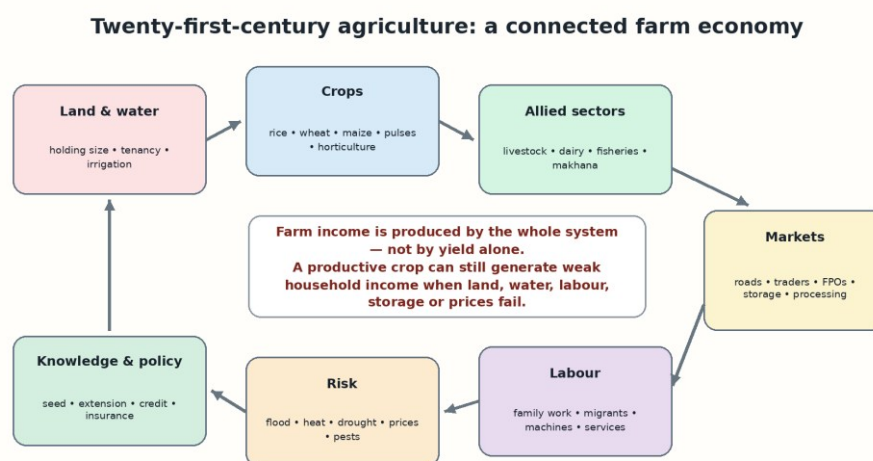


Figure 468 — Twenty-first-century agriculture as a connected farm economy.

118.5 Rice and wheat: persistence of the cereal core

Rice and wheat continue to anchor food-grain farming across much of the region. The rice crop is highly differentiated: lowlands exposed to flood and submergence require different varieties and calendars from better-drained fields; irrigation determines whether transplanting can proceed when the monsoon is late. Wheat follows rice in many rabi rotations but faces late sowing, heat at grain filling and the cost of irrigation.

The rice–wheat system provides household food security and a familiar technical package, yet its dominance can narrow crop diversity and intensify pressure on soil nutrients and groundwater where irrigation is pump-based. Productivity gains depend not only on seed but on timely operations, drainage, water control and mechanisation. Conservation practices such as zero tillage can reduce turnaround time between rice and wheat and help farmers sow wheat earlier after a delayed rice harvest.

118.6 Maize and the reorganisation of seasonal farming

Maize has become one of the most dynamic crops in the eastern Gangetic plains because it can fit multiple seasons and serve food, feed and industrial markets. In Bihar, winter and spring maize often benefit from irrigation and relatively favourable growing conditions, while hybrid seed and commercial procurement have encouraged specialization in selected belts. Maize changes the farm calendar: it can compete with wheat in rabi or occupy spring windows, generates demand for drying and storage, and links farmers more directly to feed mills and distant commodity markets. Yet market dependence introduces price and moisture-quality risks. High seed and fertilizer costs can magnify losses when prices fall or storms damage standing crops. The crop therefore illustrates the broader transition from subsistence-plus-surplus farming toward input-intensive commercial production whose profitability depends on logistics and market information as much as biological yield.

118.7 Pulses, oilseeds and millets in diversification strategies

Pulses, oilseeds and millets are often described as diversification crops, but their economic role is more specific. Pulses can use residual soil moisture after rice, improve household protein supply and reduce nitrogen requirements through biological fixation. Mustard and other oilseeds provide a rabi cash crop where irrigation is limited. Millets tolerate heat and moisture stress better than many cereals, but expanding them requires consumer demand, seed systems, processing and procurement rather than agronomic promotion alone. Rice fallows are an important opportunity: where drainage and residual moisture permit, short-duration pulses or oilseeds can add a second crop without heavy irrigation. Diversification succeeds when it reduces whole-farm risk and improves returns to labour, not merely when acreage shifts from one crop category to another.

118.8 Sugarcane, jute and other commercial crops

Commercial crops connect particular subregions to specialized processing and trade. Sugarcane remains important in western and north-western Bihar linkages, where mill location, payment cycles and transport distance determine farm incentives. Jute belongs to the humid eastern and north-eastern plains and ties cultivation to retting water, fibre quality and mills beyond the immediate farm area. Tobacco, spices, seed production and other niche crops appear in localized pockets. Such crops can generate higher cash income than staple cereals but also create dependence on buyers, grading standards and processing infrastructure. Their history shows why agricultural geography cannot be reduced to soil and rainfall: a crop survives where an institutional chain — seed, labour, transport, processor, credit and market — remains viable. When one link weakens, farmers can switch rapidly even if the land remains agronomically suitable.

118.9 Makhana, ponds and the wetland economy of Mithila

Makhana is one of the clearest examples of a culturally distinctive agricultural economy in Mithila. It is produced in ponds and wetland environments and requires specialized knowledge of seed, water, harvesting and popping. The value chain extends beyond cultivators to fishers, labourers, processors, traders, graders

and branded retail. Development schemes have sought to improve varieties, expand cultivation and raise processing efficiency, while the geographical identity of ‘Mithila Makhana’ has strengthened product recognition. Yet commercialization also raises questions about access to ponds, lease terms, wetland ecology and distribution of value between growers and processors. Makhana demonstrates that agriculture in the region includes aquatic production systems that conventional field-crop statistics can understate. Preserving wetlands as productive ecosystems can support both biodiversity and rural livelihoods when water rights and pollution are managed carefully.

118.10 Horticulture: litchi, mango, banana and vegetables

Horticulture creates some of the region’s highest-value uses of small plots. The Muzaffarpur–Vajji belt is nationally associated with litchi; mango, banana, vegetables, spices, flowers and nurseries are important in different districts across the wider region. Horticulture can generate high returns per hectare and intensive employment, making it attractive where holdings are small. Its risks are equally concentrated: fruit has narrow harvest windows, quality deteriorates quickly, and gluts can collapse farm-gate prices. Litchi is vulnerable to heat and moisture stress at critical stages; vegetables require frequent irrigation and pest management. Cold chain, grading, packaging and fast transport therefore become part of cultivation itself. A farmer located near an all-weather road, collection point or urban market can face a completely different economic opportunity from another farmer with similar soil but weak logistics.

Agricultural mosaic across Mithila, Vajji and Anga

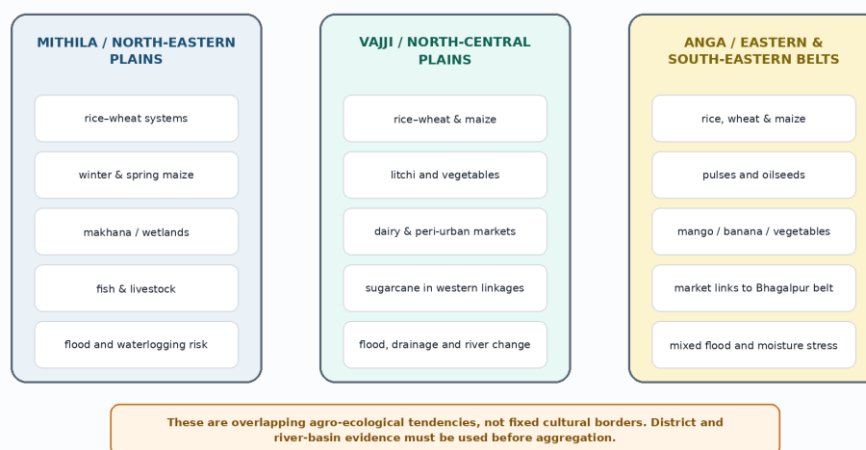


Figure 469 — Agricultural mosaic across Mithila, Vajji and Anga; tendencies overlap and are not fixed borders.

118.11 Livestock, dairy, poultry and fisheries as farm income

Allied activities often stabilize farm households when crop income is seasonal or uncertain. Cattle and buffalo convert crop residues into milk and manure; goats and poultry offer smaller, divisible assets; ponds and floodplain waters support fish production; and integrated systems can recycle nutrients across crop, livestock and fish components. Dairy provides frequent cash flow rather than one or two annual harvest payments, which can be especially valuable for household expenses. Fisheries and aquaculture are important in a water-rich region but require seed, feed, pond management and market access. Livestock also shifts labour toward year-round care, much of it undertaken by women. The economic significance of allied sectors lies in portfolio effects: they spread risk across products with different calendars and price patterns. For smallholders, this may matter more than maximizing yield of a single crop.

118.12 Irrigation: canals, tubewells and uneven water control

Water control is the central technological divide in eastern Indian agriculture. Canals, public irrigation, shallow tubewells, private pumps, ponds and groundwater all contribute, but access is uneven by location, energy supply, plot fragmentation and aquifer conditions. Official ICAR profiles have long emphasized Bihar's large cultivated area and the importance of assured irrigation, while also noting major zones of rainfed rice and drainage problems. Pump irrigation gives farmers timing flexibility but raises energy costs and can intensify groundwater pressure where extraction exceeds recharge. Canal systems can cover large areas but depend on maintenance and equitable distribution to tail-end users. Micro-irrigation is valuable for horticulture and water-saving crops, yet it is not a substitute for drainage in waterlogged plains. The region's water problem is therefore not simply scarcity: it is the ability to deliver or remove water at the correct time.

118.13 Flood agriculture, waterlogging and the economy of excess water

North Bihar agriculture repeatedly confronts the paradox of having too much water and too little controllable irrigation. Embankment breaches, river migration, flash floods and prolonged waterlogging can destroy kharif crops, delay rabi sowing and deposit sand or silt unevenly. In chauras and lowlands, however, seasonal water can also support fisheries, makhana and wetland crops. Resilience depends on treating flood as a recurring production condition rather than an exceptional disaster. Short-duration and submergence-tolerant rice, community drainage, raised seed storage, post-flood contingency crops and timely access to seed can reduce losses. ICAR demonstrations in flood-prone Bihar have shown that rapid post-flood planting of maize and vegetables can restore income after damaged rice. Such interventions work only when roads, seed supply, credit and local extension function immediately after the flood.

118.14 Drought, heat and the other side of water insecurity

The opposite hazard — drought and extreme heat — is increasingly important even in a region known for floods. Monsoon breaks can delay transplanting, raise pumping costs and reduce groundwater recharge. Heat waves damage workers and livestock as well as crops; unusually high temperatures during wheat grain filling can reduce yield even when irrigation is available. South-eastern and better-drained tracts can experience moisture stress while another district is flooded. Climate adaptation must therefore be location-specific. Early or direct seeding, drought-tolerant varieties, mulching, farm ponds, supplemental irrigation and adjusted sowing dates can reduce exposure. The central principle is flexibility: farmers need varieties and crop calendars that can respond to uncertain rainfall rather than a single 'normal monsoon' package.

118.15 Soil health, fertilizers and nutrient imbalance

Soil fertility is frequently discussed as a fertilizer problem, but long-run soil health includes organic carbon, micronutrients, salinity or alkalinity, drainage and biological activity. ICAR assessments of Bihar have identified deficiencies of sulphur, boron and zinc in addition to the familiar nitrogen-phosphorus-potassium balance. Repeated cereal cultivation and residue removal can reduce organic matter, while excessive or poorly timed nitrogen lowers nutrient-use efficiency. Soil testing is useful only when farmers can obtain and trust appropriate inputs. Green manures, farmyard manure, compost, crop residues, legumes and biofertilizers can complement mineral fertilizer rather than being treated as ideological alternatives. Recent soil-health campaigns in Bihar emphasize balanced application and green manuring precisely because input efficiency has become an income as well as environmental issue.

118.16 Seed systems, crop varieties and technological choice

Seed is a small physical input with large consequences for timing, yield and risk. Hybrid maize illustrates a commercial seed system in which farmers purchase new seed frequently; self-pollinated rice and wheat allow different combinations of farm-saved and certified seed. Flood-tolerant, drought-tolerant, short-duration and heat-adapted varieties can reduce climate exposure, but adoption depends on local performance and availability at sowing time. Public agricultural universities, ICAR institutes, seed corporations and private firms therefore shape the technological frontier together. Variety replacement is not automatically progress: a variety that yields more under controlled irrigation may be inferior in flood-prone or low-input fields. Farmers select not only yield potential but maturity, straw, taste, market demand and risk. Effective extension treats this local evaluation as evidence rather than resistance to science.

118.17 Mechanisation on small farms

Mechanisation has expanded through tractors, power tillers, threshers, pumps, reapers, transplanters and combine harvesters, but the smallholding structure means ownership is often less important than service markets. A farmer with half a hectare may rationally hire a tractor or harvester for a few hours rather than purchase machinery. Custom-hiring therefore creates a rural service economy and allows machines to achieve scale across many small farms. Mechanisation can address peak-season labour shortages and improve timeliness, yet large machines may be unsuitable for tiny, irregular or waterlogged plots. It can also redistribute employment away from manual harvesting and threshing. The policy question is not ‘more machines’ in the abstract, but the fit among plot geometry, labour costs, equipment size, repair networks, credit and rental markets.

118.18 Migration, labour scarcity and the changing farm household

Migration has changed the labour organization of agriculture. When working-age men spend months outside the village, households may reduce labour-intensive crops, hire workers, lease land out, rely more on machines, or shift management to women and older family members. Remittances can finance pumps, livestock, farm improvements and machinery services, but they can also reduce dependence on crop income and make timely labour difficult to mobilize. Seasonal return migration around sowing or harvest demonstrates that migration and farming are not mutually exclusive occupations. The farm household has become multilocal: decisions about land in Bihar or Madhesh may depend on wages earned in Delhi, Punjab, Mumbai, Kathmandu or overseas. This linkage makes labour migration part of agricultural political economy rather than a separate urban story.

118.19 Women’s agricultural work and measurement gaps

Women perform transplanting, weeding, harvesting, livestock care, post-harvest processing and household food production, yet labour statistics and land records often understate their agricultural role. Male migration can increase women’s day-to-day management responsibilities without automatically transferring title, credit access or control over sale proceeds. Mechanisation may reduce some physically demanding tasks while concentrating others in male-operated machinery services. Self-help groups, dairy cooperatives, producer organizations and extension programmes can widen access to finance and markets, but participation is not equivalent to decision-making power. A gender-sensitive agricultural history must ask who owns the land, who works it, who makes crop decisions, who receives payments and who absorbs unpaid care work. These are distinct variables, and a single category such as ‘female cultivator’ cannot capture them all.

118.20 Credit, debt and the timing of farm expenditure

Farm expenditure is highly seasonal: seed, fertilizer, labour, irrigation and machinery must often be paid before harvest income arrives. Credit therefore shapes both technology adoption and bargaining power at sale. Formal crop loans and Kisan Credit Cards can reduce reliance on high-cost borrowing, but eligibility, land records, tenancy and banking access affect who can use them. Informal credit from traders, input dealers, relatives and landlords remains economically important because it can be immediate and flexible, though it may tie borrowers to particular buyers or prices. Crop insurance aims to pool weather risk but faces difficult questions of enrolment, assessment, basis risk and claims timing. The key measure of agricultural finance is not only the volume of loans but whether credit arrives when farm operations require it and whether repayment schedules match uncertain agricultural cash flow.

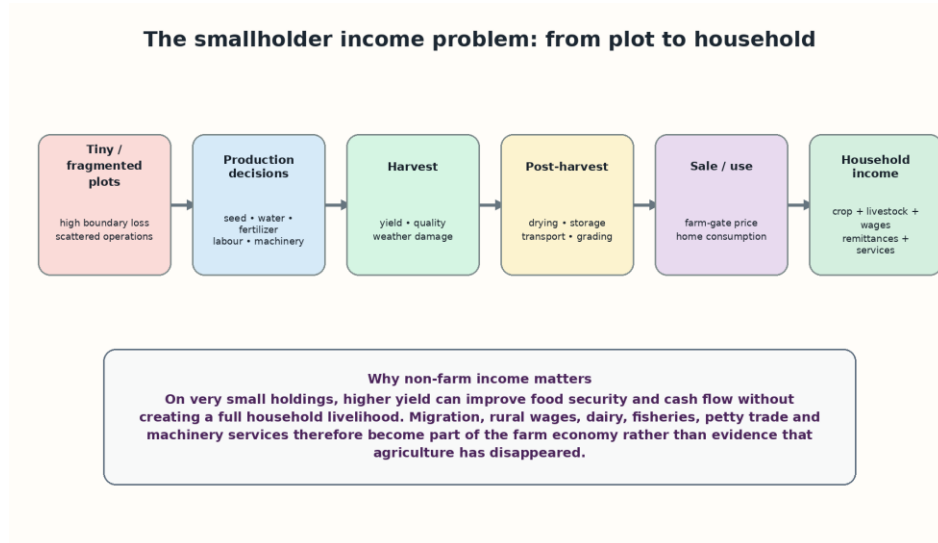


Figure 470 — The smallholder income problem: the economic chain from fragmented plot to household livelihood.

118.21 Procurement, minimum support prices and local market reality

Minimum support prices and procurement shape expectations even where farmers do not sell directly to a procurement agency. Paddy and wheat procurement can provide a floor in areas with functioning purchase centres, but actual access depends on registration, quality standards, transport, timing and local capacity. Many small farmers sell soon after harvest because they need cash or lack storage, making the immediate village price more relevant than an announced national support price. Maize, vegetables, fruit and makhana operate through different market chains with much less direct public procurement. Evaluating price policy therefore requires crop-specific evidence. The critical distinction is between a declared price, an administratively accessible procurement price, and the farm-gate price actually received after quality deductions and transport costs.

118.22 Traders, mandis and price formation

Agricultural markets are networks rather than single places. Village assemblers, commission agents, wholesale markets, processors, millers, retailers and distant buyers all perform aggregation and information functions, while also possessing unequal bargaining power. Better roads and mobile phones have widened farmers' price information and market options, yet perishability and small sale lots can still force local transactions. Bihar's historical reforms to regulated agricultural markets changed the institutional landscape,

but private trade did not eliminate the need for grading, dispute resolution, transparent weights and market infrastructure. Digital platforms can publish prices, but physical logistics decide whether a farmer can act on that information. The practical market question is how far a crop can travel, in what condition, at what cost, and with how much delay before payment.

118.23 Storage, cold chains and post-harvest loss

Post-harvest infrastructure determines how much biological production becomes sellable value. Grain requires drying, cleaning and safe storage; maize quality depends on moisture control; fruit and vegetables need rapid cooling and transport; milk requires collection and chilling; fish needs ice and cold handling. When storage is weak, farmers may sell into a glut immediately after harvest and buy food back later at higher prices. Cold storage has long been important for potatoes and is increasingly relevant to diversified horticulture, but refrigeration is crop-specific and energy-intensive. Small pack houses, crates, grading lines, warehouse receipts and village-level drying can sometimes generate larger returns than expensive centralized infrastructure. The correct metric is reduction in loss and improvement in farmer price realization per unit of investment.

118.24 Farmer Producer Organisations and collective scale

Farmer Producer Organisations and similar collective institutions attempt to solve the scale problem without consolidating ownership. By aggregating input purchases, produce, grading, machinery use or marketing, an FPO can lower transaction costs and negotiate with larger buyers. In principle this is particularly relevant in Bihar because individual holdings are small. In practice, institutional quality matters: membership must be active, accounts transparent, professional management affordable and business activity tied to real crops and markets. An organization created only to receive a scheme may not survive. Successful collective scale can also emerge through dairy cooperatives, irrigation groups, self-help groups and informal machinery networks. The broader lesson is that smallholder agriculture requires meso-level institutions between the household and the distant market.

118.25 Organic farming, certification and the Ganga organic corridor

Organic and low-chemical agriculture has gained policy visibility through Bihar's organic corridor and the Fourth Agriculture Roadmap. The state's programme has promoted clusters, certification, local organic inputs, vermicompost, green manuring and producer organizations, including along the Ganga corridor. The economic test is demanding. Farmers may face transition costs or lower yields before soil systems stabilize; certification and segregation add administrative work; and a premium exists only if consumers trust the label and supply chains preserve identity. On the other hand, reduced dependence on purchased inputs, better soil structure and niche branding can improve resilience. Organic policy should therefore be assessed as a value-chain project — inputs, production, certification, aggregation, branding and market — rather than as a simple ban on fertilizer or pesticide.

118.26 Climate-resilient agriculture and the Fourth Agriculture Roadmap

Bihar's Fourth Agriculture Roadmap for 2023–28 formalizes a shift from yield-centred policy toward sustainability, climate resilience, water management, soil health, horticulture, allied sectors and value chains. Climate-resilient agriculture programmes had already expanded through KVKs and research institutions, testing practices such as direct seeding, zero tillage, diversified rotations and improved water management. By 2026, ICAR outreach in flood-prone north Bihar continued to emphasize balanced fertilizer use, green

manuring, integrated farming and soil restoration. The significance of these programmes is institutional as well as technical: they connect agricultural universities, ICAR institutes, ATMA, KVKs and village-level demonstration. Their success must be measured by adoption, profitability and reduced variability across bad years, not by the number of trainings alone.

118.27 Digital agriculture, advisories and the datafied farm

Agriculture is increasingly datafied through land records, farmer registration, weather forecasts, satellite imagery, digital payments, input portals, crop insurance and mobile advisories. These systems can reduce information delays and target support, but they also create exclusion risks when names, plots or tenancy do not match official databases. A tenant cultivating land under an oral arrangement may be visible to neighbours but invisible to a benefit portal. Weather advisories are useful only when they are localized enough to change a farmer's decision and delivered in a language and format that can be acted upon. Drones and remote sensing can improve crop monitoring and input application in some contexts, yet digital agriculture does not replace agronomy, drainage or roads. Technology adds value when it solves a defined farm problem rather than when digitisation itself is treated as the outcome.

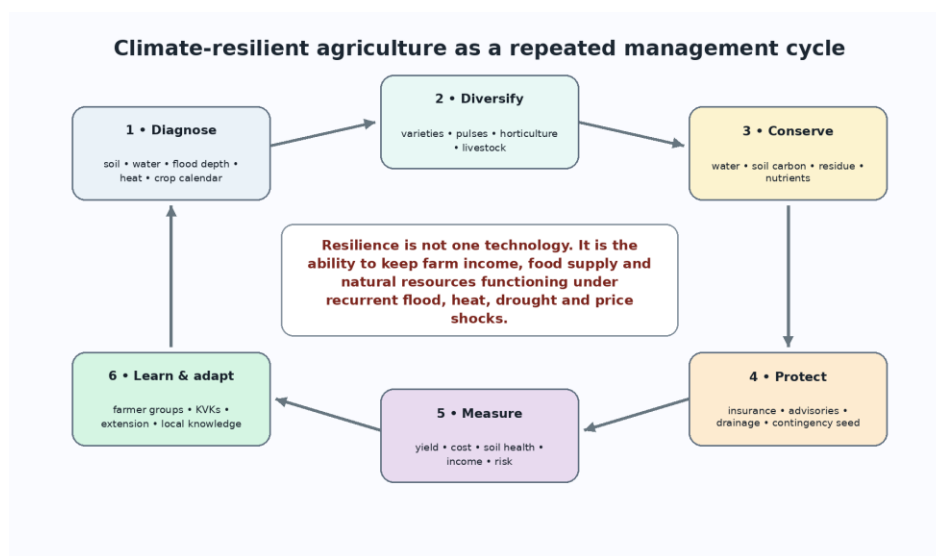


Figure 471 — Climate-resilient agriculture as a repeated cycle of diagnosis, diversification, conservation, protection and learning.

118.28 Madhesh agriculture and the cross-border production zone

Madhesh Province forms the Nepal-side agricultural continuation of the Gangetic–Terai plain. Official Nepal agricultural profiles identify rice, wheat, mustard, sunflower, sugarcane, lentil and vegetables among its major crops. The province's dense settlement, flat terrain and border connectivity create strong links with Indian input, labour and commodity markets, even though regulation, currency, procurement and statistical systems differ. Cross-border kinship can facilitate labour and knowledge flows; border restrictions or price differentials can redirect trade rapidly. Irrigation, groundwater, fertilizer availability and monsoon variability are shared ecological concerns. Comparative analysis should therefore avoid assuming that identical crops imply identical farm institutions. The value of the cross-border perspective lies precisely in observing how similar agro-ecology produces different outcomes under different policy and market arrangements.

118.29 From yield growth to farm-income resilience

The classic agricultural objective was to raise yield per hectare. That remains essential where productivity gaps are large, but farm welfare depends on a wider equation: yield multiplied by price, minus purchased inputs, hired labour, irrigation, machinery, rent, interest and post-harvest costs, adjusted for crop failure risk. A high-yield crop can generate weak net income when input prices rise or sale prices fall. Smallholders also care about cash-flow timing, food retention and labour demands. Resilience therefore requires measuring variability across years and the whole household portfolio. Crop diversification, livestock, migration income, savings, insurance and social protection can reduce the probability that one failed monsoon or one market crash becomes a household crisis. The contemporary benchmark is not maximum output in a normal year but sustainable income across uncertain years.

118.30 Agriculture as a multi-sector rural economy

Agriculture in Mithila, Vajji and Anga is becoming more, not less, interconnected with the rest of the economy. Farming now depends on rural roads, electricity, digital networks, migration, financial services, education, machinery repair, cold chains and processing. At the same time, land and water remain foundational assets and cultural anchors. The most plausible development path is therefore neither a return to self-contained peasant farming nor rapid abandonment of agriculture. It is a diversified rural economy in which fewer workers may cultivate more efficiently, smallholders obtain scale through services and institutions, high-value crops and allied sectors expand, and non-farm income stabilizes households. Chapter 119 turns to the structural constraint beneath this transition: land fragmentation and its consequences for rural livelihoods.

Table 118.1 — Evidence architecture for contemporary agricultural analysis

Evidence / institution	What it reveals	Economic use	Main caution
Agriculture Census	holding size, operational class, tenancy	farm structure and fragmentation	latest complete comparable rounds may lag current conditions
Crop statistics	area, production, yield by crop	cropping pattern and productivity	district aggregates hide intra-district ecology
Irrigation records	source and area irrigated	water-control capacity	‘irrigated’ does not guarantee timely water
Horticulture / livestock / fisheries data	high-value and allied production	diversification and cash flow	often collected in separate administrative systems
Market / procurement data	arrivals, purchases, prices	price realization and market access	formal markets may omit village-level trade
Household and labour surveys	income sources, work, migration	farm–nonfarm livelihood portfolio	sample estimates differ from census concepts
Climate / hydrology data	rainfall, flood, heat, groundwater	risk and adaptation planning	hazard exposure varies sharply by locality
Farmer field evidence	costs, practices, local constraints	tests whether policy works in practice	not automatically representative of the region

Chapter 119 — Land Fragmentation and Rural Livelihoods

Land fragmentation is one of the central structural facts of the contemporary rural economy of Mithila, Vajji and Anga. Yet the phrase is often used too loosely. A household may own very little land but hold it in one compact parcel; another may operate a somewhat larger area scattered across several plots. These conditions create different costs and opportunities. This chapter therefore separates four concepts: ownership, operational holding, parcel fragmentation and livelihood dependence on land. Only after those distinctions are made can the relationship between land and poverty, migration, mechanisation, tenancy, women's rights, land records and rural enterprise be analysed clearly.

The Indian side of the region must be read against Bihar's unusually small farm structure. The Agriculture Census 2015–16 recorded 91.21 percent of operational holdings in Bihar below one hectare and another 5.75 percent between one and two hectares; the average operated area was 0.39 hectare. These are dated structural baselines, not 2026 measurements, because the next agricultural census does not yet provide an equally complete public state-level replacement. They nonetheless show why rural livelihoods cannot be understood through crop income alone. The land base is typically too small to support a household without livestock, wage work, migration, public employment, self-employment or transfers.

On the Nepal side, the National Sample Census of Agriculture 2021/22 provides a more recent direct measure of parcel fragmentation. Madhesh Province reported 738,340 holdings divided into 2,174,798 parcels, an average of 2.9 parcels per holding; Saptari averaged 3.3 parcels, and Siraha and Dhanusha 3.4 each. The cross-border comparison is valuable because it demonstrates that fragmentation is not simply an artefact of one state's land administration. It is produced by long-term inheritance, demographic pressure, land markets, settlement history and the social value of retaining claims to land across the Gangetic–Terai plain.

119.1 Land as asset, livelihood and social claim

Land is simultaneously a productive input, a store of wealth, a residence base, an inheritance, a source of creditworthiness and a claim to village membership. A plot that produces little annual cash may still be retained because it provides food, fodder, housing space, social status or an option to return after migration. This makes rural land markets different from markets in ordinary commodities. The household rarely asks only whether a parcel earns the highest financial return. It also asks what would be lost by selling it. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, where migration is widespread and family branches may live in several cities or countries, even a small ancestral holding can anchor ritual obligations, kinship rights and future residence. Economic analysis must therefore distinguish low current productivity from low total value to the household. The persistence of tiny holdings is not proof that households misunderstand farm economics; it often reflects the multiple functions that land performs.

119.2 Small holdings and fragmented holdings are different problems

Farm size measures the total area operated by a household or enterprise; fragmentation measures how that area is divided into separate parcels. A 0.6-hectare farm in one compact block may be easier to irrigate, mechanise and supervise than a 0.9-hectare farm split into five narrow plots several kilometres apart. Fragmentation also has several dimensions: number of parcels, average parcel size, distance between parcels, shape and boundary complexity, and whether parcels have secure access to roads and water. These dimensions affect costs differently. A scattered holding raises travel time, supervision cost and machinery

movement; an irregular narrow plot can reduce effective cultivable area; a landlocked parcel can generate access disputes. The policy implication is important: increasing farm size is not the only route to efficiency. Better parcel layout, shared irrigation, custom machinery and group marketing can reduce fragmentation costs without requiring households to surrender ownership.

119.3 Bihar's small-farm baseline: the 2015–16 Agriculture Census

The Agriculture Census 2015–16 remains the most complete comparable structural baseline for Bihar. It counted about 14.97 million marginal operational holdings below one hectare, 91.21 percent of all holdings in the state. Small holdings of one to two hectares added another 5.75 percent, making holdings below two hectares about 97 percent of the total. The average operated area was 0.39 hectare, far below the all-India average of 1.08 hectare reported for that round. These figures describe operational holdings, not necessarily legal ownership parcels, and they must not be projected forward as if they were measured in 2026. Their importance lies in the structural constraint they reveal: even successful yield growth on a few tenths of a hectare cannot normally provide the entire cash requirement of a contemporary household. Rural development must therefore combine farm productivity with non-farm work, collective services, social protection and mobility.

119.4 Inheritance, subdivision and the multiplication of parcels

Partition through inheritance is a major long-run mechanism of fragmentation. When several heirs receive shares of a household's land, division may occur not once but across each quality category so that every branch receives some irrigated land, some upland and some land near the settlement. A holding can therefore split into multiple strips even when total acreage changes little. Repeated division over generations multiplies this pattern. The logic is socially intelligible: physical division makes inheritance visible and may be seen as fairer than giving one heir a compact block of superior land. But the cumulative economic effect can be high boundary loss, duplicated paths, disputes over irrigation, and plots too small for some machinery. Consolidation seeks to reverse this spatial scattering, yet it touches inheritance rights and local valuations. Successful reorganisation therefore requires trusted measurement and adjudication, not only an engineering map.

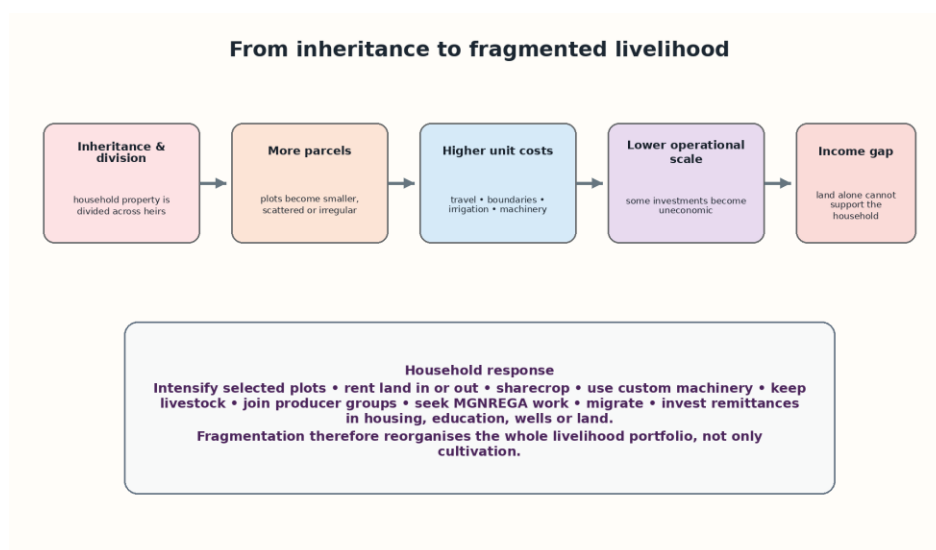


Figure 472 — From inheritance and parcel multiplication to a diversified household livelihood response.

119.5 Landlessness, caste and unequal agrarian starting points

Average farm size conceals unequal access to land. Landless labourers, near-landless households and households with only a homestead face a different livelihood problem from marginal owner-cultivators. Historical caste hierarchy, tenancy arrangements, land reform outcomes, Bhoodan distribution, ceiling-surplus implementation and local land markets have all shaped who owns cultivable land and who supplies labour. The contemporary rural economy cannot be described adequately by the category ‘farmer’ when some households derive most income from wages and merely cultivate a kitchen plot, while others own several parcels but lease them out. Caste remains relevant where it correlates with land access, labour contracts, credit networks or settlement segregation, but it should not be used as a substitute for direct evidence on assets and occupation. A rigorous account therefore links land class, tenancy, labour, gender and social group rather than assuming that one automatically determines the others.

119.6 Homestead land and the minimum geography of security

For the poorest household, secure homestead land can be more immediately transformative than a tiny agricultural allotment. A house plot provides physical security, an address, space for sanitation, kitchen gardens, livestock, storage and small enterprise; it can also reduce dependence on a landlord for residence. Bihar’s Revenue and Land Reforms Department explicitly includes provision of homestead land to households without it among its functions. The economic significance extends beyond shelter. A secure homestead can support poultry, tailoring, food processing, retail or digital service work that is impossible in insecure accommodation. It also changes bargaining power: eviction risk is lower and migration can be chosen with a home base to return to. Land policy therefore needs a dual lens—cultivable land for production and homestead rights for basic livelihood security. Treating all land redistribution as if only field acreage matters misses this distinction.

119.7 Tenancy, sharecropping and the invisible cultivator

Tenancy allows land to move operationally without changing ownership. In a region of tiny holdings and migration, this flexibility can be efficient: an elderly household or migrant family may lease out land, while an active cultivator can assemble a larger operated area by renting in several plots. Yet much tenancy remains oral or socially mediated. The cultivator who actually bears production risk may therefore be absent from formal land records and sometimes from schemes tied to ownership documentation. Sharecropping adds another layer because output and cost are divided according to local contracts that vary by crop, irrigation and bargaining power. The historical term *bataidari* covers diverse arrangements and should not be treated as one fixed contract. Policy faces a tension: stronger documentation can improve tenant security and access to benefits, but owners may fear that formal leases weaken future control. Secure, time-bound leasing systems can reduce this fear while making the operational farm more visible.

119.8 Parcel shape, distance and the transaction costs of farming

Fragmentation creates costs that are easy to overlook because they do not always appear in cash accounts. Time spent walking or moving equipment between fields is labour. Boundaries and paths remove cultivable area. Separate plots require repeated guarding, bund repair and water management. A farmer may need to transport seed, fertilizer and harvest several times rather than once. Irregular geometry can prevent efficient turning by tractors or harvesters, and narrow access may exclude larger machines altogether. The cost rises when plots differ in soil, flood exposure or irrigation, because each requires a separate management decision.

Some diversity can reduce risk—for example, one low plot may retain moisture when an upland plot dries—but extreme scattering usually raises coordination cost. The relevant economic measure is therefore not simply yield per hectare; it is net household return after the extra labour, movement and transaction costs generated by the parcel pattern.

119.9 Fragmentation, irrigation and drainage

Water management makes parcel structure especially consequential in the floodplains. A tubewell located beside one parcel may not serve another without pipes, pumping agreements or passage rights. Canal outlets distribute water spatially, so scattered plots can receive unequal access. Drainage is even more collective: one farmer cannot remove water from a low field if neighbouring embankments or blocked channels prevent outflow. Fragmentation may therefore turn water from a private input into a coordination problem. Where farmers share pumps or construct field channels collectively, the operational disadvantage can be reduced. In flood-prone areas, land classification must also recognise seasonal hydrology: a plot valuable for winter cultivation may be submerged during the monsoon, while wetlands support fisheries or makhana rather than conventional crops. A cadastral map shows boundaries, but productive water governance requires mapping flows across those boundaries.

119.10 Mechanisation when farms are tiny and plots are scattered

Mechanisation does not require every farmer to own machinery. On very small farms, private ownership of tractors, planters, threshers or harvesters can be uneconomic because fixed costs are spread over too few hectares. The more viable model is a rural service economy in which machinery owners, custom hiring centres, tool banks or producer institutions sell operations by the hour or acre. JEEViKA and other programmes have used custom hiring and village tool-bank models to provide mechanisation services to small farmers. Fragmentation still matters because travel between parcels and turning space reduce machine efficiency, but service provision changes the threshold at which mechanisation becomes accessible. This is a key distinction for contemporary rural transformation: operational scale can be created through markets and institutions even when ownership remains highly dispersed. Mechanisation may then release labour for non-farm work or compensate for seasonal labour shortages associated with migration.

119.11 Crop choice, intensification and the economics of small plots

Small plots can support high value per hectare when households shift from bulk cereals toward vegetables, flowers, nurseries, fruits, seed production, makhana, dairy-linked fodder or intensive mixed systems. But intensification is not an automatic solution to fragmentation. High-value crops often require reliable irrigation, frequent labour, rapid transport, storage, quality control and stronger market links. A small farmer near Muzaffarpur or a district town may exploit urban demand in ways unavailable to a similarly sized farmer behind a poor road or in a flood-isolated village. Crop choice therefore reflects location as much as acreage. Fragmentation can even encourage differentiated use—one plot for household grain, another for vegetables, another for fodder—but this diversification is beneficial only if coordination costs remain manageable. The policy focus should shift from ‘small farm equals low productivity’ to the conditions under which small farms can achieve high net value and stable market access.

119.12 Livestock, fisheries and common resources beyond the field

Rural livelihoods extend beyond cultivated parcels. Cattle, buffalo, goats and poultry convert crop residues, purchased feed and household labour into milk, meat, manure and savings. Fisheries use ponds,

wetlands and seasonal water bodies that may be individually owned, leased or managed through groups. Makhana production similarly links aquatic space, processing and labour rather than conventional field acreage. Common grazing, village ponds, river channels and embankments can therefore matter greatly to households with little cropland. The decline, enclosure or contested leasing of common resources can hurt land-poor households even when private land records remain unchanged. A land-fragmentation chapter must consequently include resource access outside titled fields. The economic unit is the livelihood landscape: homestead, field, pond, common, road, market and migration route. Focusing exclusively on hectares owned underestimates how rural households assemble income from multiple ecological niches.

119.13 Agricultural wage labour and the incomplete farm livelihood

For many households, agricultural wage work is more important than income from their own land. Marginal owners may cultivate their plots and then work on larger farms, construction sites or public works. Landless households may depend almost entirely on wages while keeping livestock or a homestead garden. Wage rates, days of employment and seasonality therefore shape the value of land indirectly: when local wages rise, households may leave low-return plots fallow, lease them out or adopt labour-saving machinery. When employment is scarce, even a tiny plot becomes a critical food-security buffer. This interaction means that ‘farm household’ and ‘labour household’ are overlapping categories. Rural class positions can change within a year as people move between self-cultivation, hired farm work, construction and migration. Economic history should follow labour allocation across activities rather than assigning each household a single permanent occupation.

119.14 Migration as a complement to land rather than an exit from it

Migration is often described as evidence that people are abandoning agriculture, but in eastern India and the Terai it frequently operates as a complement to landholding. Migrants may leave precisely because their plot is too small to provide cash income, while the remaining household continues cultivation for food and retains land as security. Seasonal migration can finance seed, fertilizer, irrigation, weddings, education or house construction. Long-distance migrants may send money while older parents or women manage the farm. Some land is leased out during absence and brought back into self-cultivation after return. Thus migration can preserve small ownership rather than dissolve it. The household becomes multi-local: production remains in the village, earnings arrive from a city or another country, and investment decisions connect both. Chapter 120 examines this migration-dependent economy in detail; here the key point is that fragmentation helps explain why migration and land retention coexist.

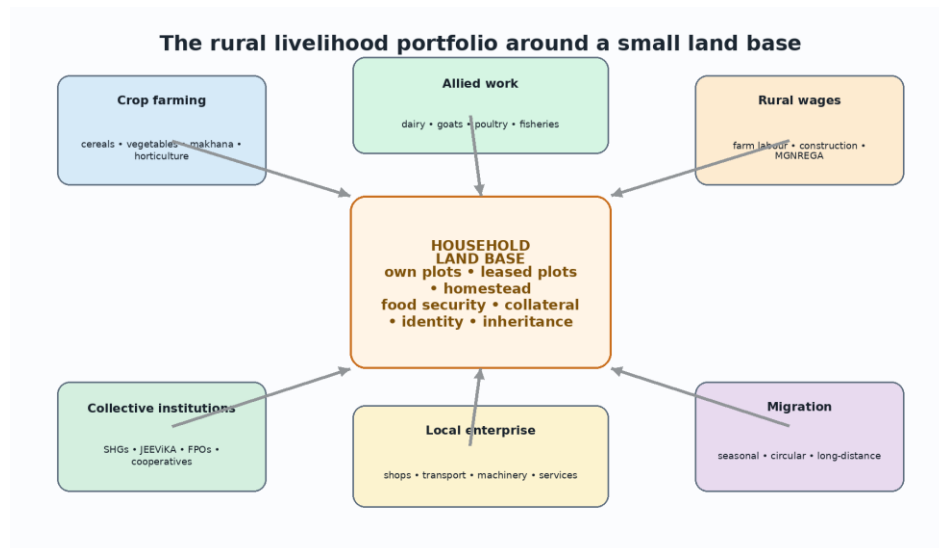


Figure 473 — The rural livelihood portfolio built around a small land base.

119.15 Remittances, land purchase, housing and intergenerational strategy

Remittances alter the rural land economy even when they are not invested directly in farming. Households may purchase a small plot, build a brick house, deepen a well, pay school fees, finance health care or reduce debt. Land purchases can be motivated by prestige and security as much as by expected crop profit, which can raise land prices beyond what agricultural returns alone justify. Roadside and peri-urban plots acquire speculative value when households anticipate future conversion. Remittances can also reduce distress sales during a bad harvest, allowing fragmented ownership to persist. Conversely, migrants with stable urban livelihoods may lease out agricultural land because the opportunity cost of returning to cultivate is high. The result is not a simple transition from agriculture to non-agriculture but a reshuffling of ownership, operation and income across space. To understand this, surveys need to record who owns, who cultivates, who pays costs, who receives output and where household earnings originate.

119.16 Women's land rights, work and the feminisation of management

Women's agricultural responsibility often increases when men migrate, yet management does not automatically produce ownership rights. Women may supervise sowing, hire labour, manage livestock, repay group loans and negotiate with input dealers while title remains in the name of husbands or older male relatives. This mismatch affects bargaining power, inheritance, access to formal credit and recognition as a farmer. Bina Agarwal's work on gender and land rights remains fundamental because land ownership can strengthen women's fallback position within households and communities. JEEViKA and women-led producer organisations create an additional route to economic agency by organizing women around savings, credit, production and marketing even when individual land titles do not change. The analytical challenge is to measure both rights and work: who owns the parcel, who decides its use, who contributes labour, and who controls the income generated from it.

119.17 Youth aspirations and the declining labour attachment to cultivation

Young rural residents increasingly compare cultivation with schooling, salaried work, driving, construction, retail, digital services and migration. Tiny fragmented plots rarely offer an income trajectory that matches these aspirations, especially when farming involves high physical effort and price risk. Yet complete exit is constrained by weak urban job security and the insurance value of village land. Many young

people therefore maintain claims to agricultural property while reducing direct labour on it. This can increase leasing, custom-service demand and reliance on older household members. It can also slow investment when heirs cannot agree on parcel use or are absent during mutation and survey processes. The generational question is not simply whether youth ‘like farming’; it is whether rural institutions allow land to be operated efficiently when ownership is dispersed among people pursuing different occupations. Flexible leasing, clear records and professional farm services become more important as households diversify.

119.18 MGNREGA as a rural income floor and labour-market institution

MGNREGA is one of the institutions that separates basic livelihood security from land ownership. In Bihar during 2023–24, official Ministry of Rural Development reporting recorded about 48.23 lakh households working under the programme, with women accounting for 54.27 percent of person-days and an average of 45.78 days of employment per participating household. These figures vary year to year and do not measure all rural employment, but they show the scale at which public works enter household labour portfolios. For marginal and landless families, MGNREGA income can smooth the agricultural lean season, reduce immediate distress borrowing and create assets such as water conservation or land-development works. It can also influence private farm wage bargaining. The scheme is therefore both social protection and a labour-market institution. Its livelihood effect depends on timely work availability, wage payment, local project selection and whether created assets improve productive resources.

119.19 JEEViKA, self-help groups and collective livelihood capacity

JEEViKA illustrates how collective institutions can partially compensate for weak individual asset bases. The Bihar Rural Livelihoods Promotion Society organizes poor rural women into self-help groups, village organizations and higher federations that support savings, bank linkage, livelihood investment, social protection and producer activity. By 2024–25 the programme continued to publish statewide annual and quarterly progress reports, reflecting its institutionalization beyond a time-limited project. Earlier World Bank reporting documented mobilisation at a scale of more than twelve million rural women by 2020. The economic significance for fragmented-land households lies in collective capacity: a woman with a tiny plot may still access credit, community extension, livestock programmes, aggregation or an enterprise platform through the group. Collective organization does not erase unequal land distribution, but it can reduce the penalty of operating below the scale at which formal finance and markets usually become accessible.

119.20 FPOs, custom hiring and operational scale without land concentration

Farmer Producer Organisations, cooperatives, producer groups and custom-hiring centres create scale in different ways. An FPO may aggregate output and negotiate with buyers; a cooperative can pool milk or inputs; a machinery service can spread fixed capital costs over many farms; an irrigation group can coordinate water. None of these requires legal consolidation of ownership. This matters in Mithila, Vajji and Anga because compulsory concentration of land would be socially disruptive and politically unrealistic. The more practical objective is to reduce the economic disadvantages of small fragmented holdings while preserving household property rights. Institutional design must nevertheless be scrutinized: producer organizations can fail when professional management is weak, working capital is insufficient or benefits are captured by larger members. Scale is useful only if small producers actually receive lower costs, better prices, reduced risk or access to services they could not obtain alone.

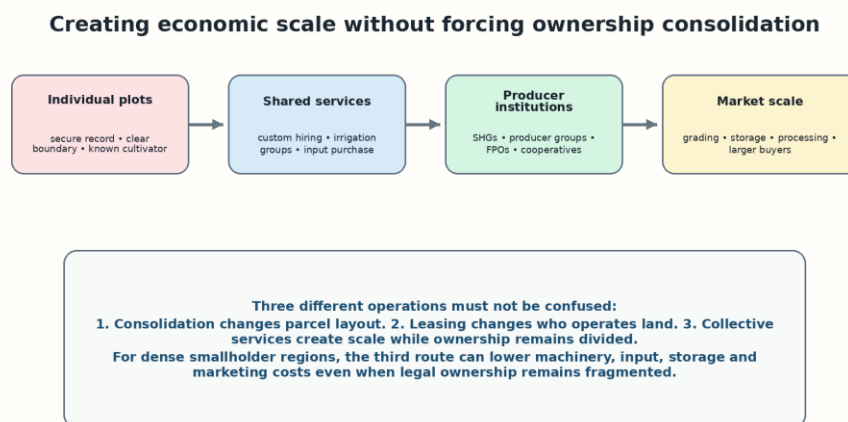


Figure 474 — Creating economic scale through shared services and producer institutions without forcing ownership consolidation.

119.21 Debt, mortgage, distress leasing and the liquidity problem

Small landholders face a recurrent liquidity mismatch. Cultivation costs arrive before harvest, while household needs such as food, health care, school fees and ceremonies occur throughout the year. Formal crop loans may be inaccessible to tenants or households with disputed records; informal credit can therefore remain important. Land may be mortgaged, crops pre-sold, jewellery pledged or future labour committed. Distress leasing and distress sale should be distinguished: leasing can be a reversible way to obtain income or reduce cultivation burden, whereas sale permanently changes the asset position. High land values near roads and towns can make sale tempting even when the parcel provides long-term security. A livelihood-centred policy must therefore improve access to affordable credit and insurance without encouraging households to over-borrow against land. Debt data should always be read together with asset ownership, tenancy and the timing of income.

119.22 Mutation, title, possession and the everyday land dispute

A rural land right is experienced through several administrative layers: deed, inheritance, mutation, jamabandi, cadastral or revised map, possession and sometimes court or revenue orders. These layers can disagree. A registered transfer may not be mutated promptly; an old map may not reflect a changed river or road; inheritance may remain informally divided without updated records; possession may be disputed despite documentary title. Such mismatches impose economic costs because they delay sale, mortgage, compensation, scheme access and investment. They also consume time in revenue offices and litigation. Bihar's land administration has increasingly moved mutation, rent payment, maps, correction and case status online, but digitisation exposes old inconsistencies as well as solving access problems. The correct historical interpretation is therefore not that digital systems suddenly create disputes; they often make inherited documentary contradictions more visible and actionable.

119.23 Special survey, digitisation and the new land-record infrastructure

Bihar's Special Survey and Settlement programme seeks to create updated digitised records of rights and parcel maps using modern survey techniques. Official guidance describes the objective as integrated, online maintenance of land information based on current parcel circumstances. The Revenue Maha-Abhiyan of 16

August to 20 September 2025 focused specifically on correcting land-record errors and bringing omitted jamabandis online. These initiatives are economically important because reliable records can reduce transaction costs and support mutation, credit, compensation and investment. Yet a survey is a process of evidence and adjudication, not merely measurement. Disputed inheritance, informal transfers, tenancy and possession claims require procedures through which people can submit documents, object and obtain correction. Accessibility also matters for migrants and elderly landholders who may not be physically present. The quality of the new record will depend on whether technical precision is matched by fair and usable dispute resolution.

119.24 Consolidation of holdings: economic logic and social limits

Consolidation of holdings attempts to exchange scattered parcels for fewer, more compact blocks of equivalent value. Bihar has a statutory framework in the Bihar Consolidation of Holdings and Prevention of Fragmentation Act, 1956, and the Revenue and Land Reforms Department continues to identify prevention of cultivable-land fragmentation as an official objective. The economic rationale is clear: compact fields can reduce boundaries, travel time and water-management costs. The social implementation is harder. Land parcels differ in soil, road access, irrigation, flood exposure and future conversion value, so equal area is not equal value. People may also attach lineage or residential significance to particular plots. Consolidation therefore requires transparent valuation, mapping and appeal. It should be treated as one instrument among several; operational pooling, leasing and shared services may achieve many efficiency gains with less disruption where full parcel reallocation is contested.

119.25 Conversion, roads, towns and the rising non-farm value of land

Agricultural land increasingly competes with housing, roads, warehouses, schools, brick kilns, markets and urban expansion. A tiny roadside parcel can therefore have a market value far above its capitalized farm income. This changes household behaviour: land may be kept idle in expectation of conversion, subdivided into residential plots or sold to finance education and migration. New highways and district-town growth can transform land values rapidly, generating gains for owners but displacement pressure for tenants and landless labourers. Conversion also fragments agricultural space physically, complicating irrigation and machinery movement even when remaining holdings are legally intact. Contemporary land policy must therefore connect rural planning with transport and urban policy. The question is not how to freeze every field in agricultural use, but how to manage transition, infrastructure corridors, compensation and settlement so that land-value change does not simply convert agrarian inequality into urban-peripheral inequality.

119.26 Flood, erosion and the instability of the physical parcel

In riverine areas, the parcel itself can move, shrink or disappear. Flood erosion may cut away titled land, while deposition creates chars and new alluvial surfaces whose legal status and possession are contested. Embankments can protect one zone while altering waterlogging elsewhere. Repeated flood damage may reduce investment in orchards, wells or permanent structures even when ownership is secure on paper. Land records based on old surveys therefore encounter a physical landscape that rivers continuously rewrite. For households in the Kosi, Gandak, Bagmati and Ganga systems, land insecurity can be environmental as well as legal. Disaster compensation, resettlement and updated mapping need to recognise this. The livelihood response often includes migration, livestock mobility, crop-calendar adjustment and diversification into non-farm work. Fragmentation in such settings is not solely the outcome of inheritance; it can also be produced by geomorphology and infrastructure.

119.27 Madhesh Province and the cross-border fragmentation comparison

Nepal's National Sample Census of Agriculture 2021/22 provides unusually direct cross-border evidence on parcel fragmentation. Madhesh Province reported 738,340 holdings and 2,174,798 parcels, averaging 2.9 parcels per holding. Within the Maithili-speaking eastern part of the province, Saptari averaged 3.3 parcels per holding, while Siraha and Dhanusha each averaged 3.4. These figures cannot be mechanically compared with Bihar's operational-holding averages because the statistical concepts and census years differ. Their value is comparative: they confirm that multiple parcels are a major structural feature on the Nepal side as well. Between the 2011/12 and 2021/22 Nepal agricultural censuses, Madhesh's average parcel count declined from 3.3 to 2.9, showing that fragmentation can change through land markets, household restructuring and measurement. Cross-border economic history should therefore compare processes, not merely numbers.

119.28 Measuring rural livelihoods: from land record to household portfolio

No single source can measure rural livelihood structure. Land records establish legal or revenue claims but usually do not show current income. Agriculture censuses measure holdings and parcels but are periodic. Household surveys capture work, migration, debt and consumption but rely on samples and definitions. MGNREGA records show public-work participation; JEEViKA data show group membership and programme activity; bank and SHG data illuminate credit; migration surveys reveal multi-local households; remote sensing can observe land use but not ownership. The most reliable method is triangulation. A village or district profile should ask: how much land is owned, how much is operated, how many parcels exist, who cultivates them, what other work household members do, what income arrives from migration, and which institutions reduce risk? Table 119.1 sets out this evidence architecture. Without this portfolio approach, land statistics are easily mistaken for livelihood statistics.

119.29 Policy: secure rights, flexible operation and collective scale

Policy should pursue three goals simultaneously: secure rights, flexible operation and collective scale. Secure rights require updated maps, accessible mutation, inheritance recording, fair adjudication and protection of homestead claims. Flexible operation requires legally intelligible leasing so that land can move to active cultivators without owners fearing permanent loss. Collective scale requires machinery services, irrigation groups, SHGs, FPOs, storage, processing and market aggregation. Consolidation can be valuable where local agreement and valuation make it feasible, but it should not be treated as the only solution to fragmentation. Women, tenants and migrants must be visible in the institutions built around land. The benchmark of success is not a map with fewer polygons; it is whether households can invest, cultivate efficiently, obtain credit and services, and combine farm and non-farm income without losing basic asset security.

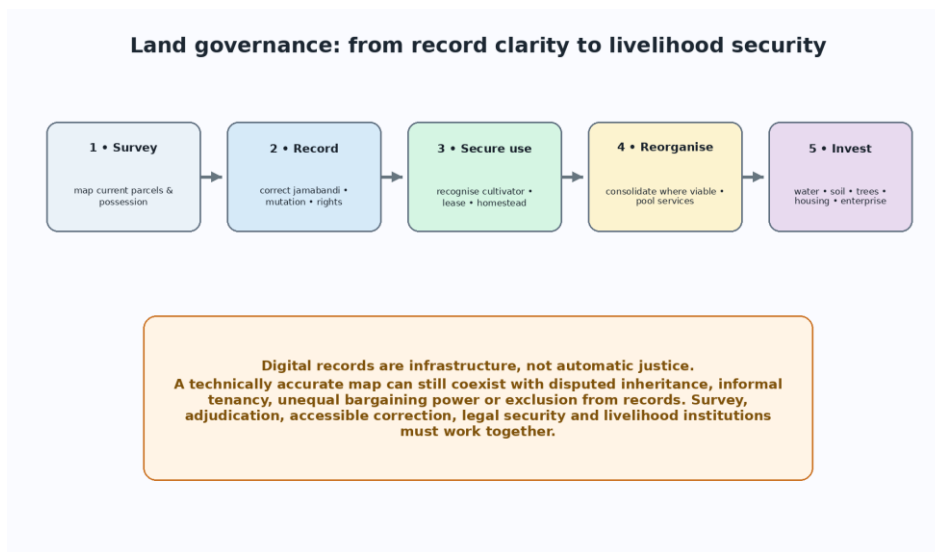


Figure 475 — Land governance sequence from survey and record clarity to secure use, reorganisation and investment.

119.30 From fragmented land to migration-dependent economies

Land fragmentation explains why the contemporary rural economy is simultaneously agrarian and migration-dependent. Tiny parcels retain immense social and security value but rarely generate enough cash income on their own. Households respond by constructing spatially distributed livelihood systems: crops in the village, wages in a nearby town, construction work in another state, a migrant salary abroad, SHG credit, MGNREGA during lean months, livestock managed by women, and remittances invested back into land, housing or education. This is not a temporary anomaly waiting for either full industrialization or a return to larger farms. It is a durable form of economic organisation created by dense population, inherited property, uneven employment and mobility. Chapter 120 therefore turns from land structure to the next mechanism in the sequence: migration-dependent economies and the circulation of labour, remittances, risk and aspiration across regions.

Table 119.1 — Evidence architecture for land fragmentation and rural livelihoods

Evidence source	What it measures	Best historical use	Main limitation
Agriculture Census	operational holdings and size classes	long-run farm-structure baseline	not the same as legal ownership or parcel geometry
Cadastral / special survey records	parcel boundary, area, recorded rights	fragmentation, mutation and spatial history	record and possession can diverge
Household surveys	work, income, debt, migration, assets	livelihood portfolio and vulnerability	sample concepts vary by survey
Tenancy / field evidence	actual cultivator and contract	operational scale and sharecropping	oral contracts are under-recorded
MGNREGA records	public-work demand and person-days	income floor and labour-market role	does not measure all wage work
JEEViKA / SHG records	collective finance and livelihood activity	institutional scale for poor households	programme participation is not a census
Market / land transaction data	sale, lease and conversion pressures	land-value change and peri-urban transition	registered values may differ from actual prices
Nepal Agriculture Census	holdings and parcel counts	cross-border fragmentation comparison	definitions and reference years differ from India

Chapter 120 — Migration-dependent Economies

Migration-dependent economies are economies in which household reproduction, local consumption, labour markets and investment are materially shaped by earnings generated outside the place of origin. This is more specific than saying that a region has many migrants. In large parts of Mithila, Vajji and Anga, migration has become a recurring institution linking villages and small towns to distant labour markets while families, land claims and social obligations remain anchored at home. The result is not simple depopulation. It is a multi-local economy in which labour circulates, money and information return, and household decisions are made across two or more places.

The evidence must be handled historically. Bihar's 2019–20 Economic Survey described the state as labour-surplus and noted long-standing migration to other Indian states and foreign countries. Earlier NSS and longitudinal village surveys recorded extensive out-migration and remittance receipt, but their numerical estimates belong to their own survey years and should not be presented as current 2026 rates. More recent administrative systems such as e-Shram and One Nation One Ration Card improve visibility and portability for mobile workers, but they are not direct substitutes for a migration census. On the Nepal side, the 2021 population census and the 2022/23 Living Standards Survey provide newer benchmarks for absence abroad and remittance dependence in Madhesh Province.

This chapter therefore focuses on the economic architecture of mobility: why workers leave, how corridors are organized, who remains behind, how destination wages influence origin labour markets, how skills and enterprises circulate, and how risks are distributed. Chapter 121 examines remittance use, consumption and housing in greater detail. Keeping the two questions separate prevents a common analytical error: treating every consequence of migration as a consequence of remittance spending alone.

120.1 Migration dependence as an economic system

A migration-dependent economy is defined by repeated linkages between the origin and destination rather than by the migrant's permanent relocation. A worker may spend most of the year in Delhi, Punjab, Gujarat, Maharashtra or a southern industrial centre while remaining economically embedded in a household in Madhubani, Darbhanga, Sitamarhi, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur or another district of the wider region. Land is still cultivated, children remain in local schools, older parents depend on the household, and major ceremonies or investments are organized at home. Earnings from outside therefore enter an already diversified livelihood portfolio. The household does not choose between 'agriculture' and 'migration'; it combines them. This multi-locality also changes the meaning of residence statistics. A village may appear densely inhabited even when a large share of working-age men is absent for long stretches, because migration is circular and family residence is retained. Figure 476 represents this circulation of labour, income, information and risk.

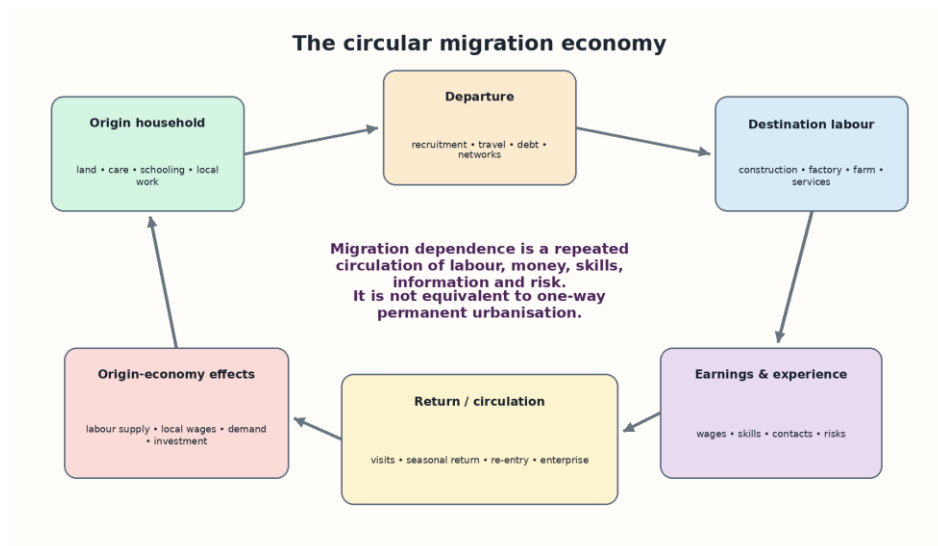


Figure 476 — Circular migration as a repeated origin–destination system of labour, earnings, experience and return.

120.2 Historical depth: from colonial labour circuits to contemporary mobility

Long-distance labour movement from Bihar and the eastern Gangetic plain predates contemporary liberalisation. Colonial transport networks, plantations, mines, ports, military recruitment and urban construction created older routes of mobility, while indenture connected the wider Bhojpuri–Maithili belt to overseas labour systems. After Independence, industrial centres, the Green Revolution in north-west India, mining and construction expanded the destination geography. By the late twentieth century, rural Bihar studies were already describing migration as a central livelihood strategy rather than an exceptional response to famine or crisis. The contemporary system is therefore historically layered: old routes to Kolkata and Punjab coexist with newer corridors to Delhi NCR, Gujarat, Maharashtra, Kerala, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and foreign labour markets. Historical continuity matters because networks are inherited. A village's present destination pattern often reflects contacts built by earlier generations, even when the sector of employment has changed.

120.3 Why migration persists despite economic growth

Migration persists not because the origin economy is static, but because economic growth has not eliminated the wage and employment gap between Bihar and major destination regions. Improved roads, electrification, schooling and communication can actually increase migration by lowering travel and information costs. Agricultural holdings remain small; rural non-farm work has expanded but often cannot absorb the full working-age population at sufficiently high or stable wages. Young workers compare a portfolio of options: local farm work, construction nearby, a small shop, public works, or distant employment. The rational choice may still involve mobility even when living conditions at the destination are difficult. Migration also becomes self-reinforcing when earlier migrants provide job leads, lodging, travel advice and emergency credit. Thus 'development' and migration need not move in opposite directions. At intermediate stages of structural transformation, better connectivity and aspirations can increase mobility before local labour demand catches up.

120.4 Seasonal, circular and long-duration migration

Seasonal, circular and long-duration migration create different economic relationships. Seasonal workers leave for a harvest, brick-making season, construction cycle or other predictable period and return to participate in local agriculture. Circular migrants repeatedly move between origin and destination, sometimes with the same employer, contractor or city. Long-duration migrants may remain away for years but retain strong household and property ties. Permanent family migration is another category and often has different effects on village labour supply and remittances. Surveys that ask only whether a person changed usual residence can therefore miss much of Bihar's mobility. The Institute for Human Development's longitudinal work in rural Bihar emphasises high and increasing mobility that is not fully captured by conventional sources. For economic history, duration and recurrence matter because they determine who performs farm work, how often earnings are transferred, whether skills return, and whether the migrant eventually invests or settles elsewhere.

120.5 Mithila as a major source zone

Mithila has long been one of Bihar's most migration-intensive subregions. Detailed rural studies have reported very high male out-migration in districts such as Madhubani, where outside earnings became woven into the local non-farm economy. The pattern is linked to dense population, small holdings, recurrent floods and waterlogging, limited large-scale industry and strong transport connections to major labour markets. But Mithila is not a single migration regime. Border districts, railway-connected towns, flood-prone belts and better-connected market centres generate different destinations and durations. Skilled migrants, students and professionals also coexist with casual construction workers and factory labour. A historical account should therefore avoid reducing 'Mithila migration' to distress labour. The same village may send masons, security guards, drivers, factory workers, teachers and Gulf workers, each with different entry costs, earnings and protection. What unifies them is the household's reliance on spatial diversification of work.

120.6 Vajji and the Muzaffarpur–Vaishali labour economy

The Vajji–Muzaffarpur belt combines intense rural mobility with a comparatively dense network of market towns, educational institutions, horticulture and transport activity. This creates both outward migration and short-distance commuting. Workers can move from villages into Muzaffarpur, Hajipur or Patna for construction, transport and services while others enter interstate corridors. Litchi, vegetable, dairy and trading economies provide seasonal local employment but cannot fully absorb the labour force. The region's proximity to major highways and rail lines lowers the transaction cost of departure and return. This matters analytically: migration dependence may remain high even where local commercial activity is substantial, because local and external labour markets complement one another. A household can maintain a small farm or business while one member works elsewhere. The economic question is therefore not whether migration substitutes for local development, but how the two are combined and whether external earnings deepen local productive capacity.

120.7 Anga and eastern Bihar migration corridors

Anga and the eastern Bihar districts participate in a somewhat different set of labour corridors shaped by railways, the Ganga, Bhagalpur's commercial history, nearby Jharkhand industries and links toward West Bengal and the national urban system. Silk, weaving, agriculture, trade and small manufacturing provide locally rooted work but coexist with substantial outward mobility. Eastern districts also contain areas of chronic poverty where migration is used to smooth seasonal employment gaps. The corridor structure can

include nearby movement to Jharkhand and West Bengal as well as long-distance migration to Delhi, western India and southern states. The diversity of Anga again warns against a single push-factor explanation. Workers leave because of wage differentials, employment regularity, sectoral skills, network availability and household strategy. Returnees can carry back industrial work habits, contacts and technical skills that influence local workshops, transport enterprises and construction practices.

120.8 Networks, kinship and cumulative migration

Migration networks reduce uncertainty. A first migrant from a village faces high search costs: finding an employer, room, transport route and trustworthy contact. Once a corridor is established, relatives and neighbours can follow with lower risk. Employers also benefit because trusted workers recruit others from the same origin. This produces cumulative migration: past migration changes the probability of future migration. Networks can be protective, providing accommodation, job information and emergency assistance, but they can also channel workers into low-wage occupational niches. Caste, kinship, village and regional ties frequently structure these networks. The result is a segmented labour market in which certain villages become associated with particular destinations or trades. Such network effects explain why two neighbouring settlements with similar landholding and poverty can show very different migration intensity. They also explain the persistence of corridors after the original economic condition that created them has changed.

120.9 Recruitment intermediaries and labour contractors

Intermediaries range from relatives and experienced migrants to labour sardars, contractors, placement agents and formal recruiters. Their role increases when the job is distant, short-term or difficult to verify. An intermediary can solve real coordination problems by assembling a crew, arranging transport and linking workers to employers. At the same time, information asymmetry creates opportunities for deductions, debt, deception and wage withholding. The economics of recruitment is therefore part of migration dependence. A worker's gross destination wage is not the same as the net gain to the household after travel, food, lodging, commissions, unpaid waiting time and debt service. International migration raises the entry cost further through passports, medical checks, visas and recruitment fees. Policy must distinguish useful intermediation from coercive or opaque contracting. Better job information, written terms and grievance channels can reduce the rent captured between origin workers and destination employers.

120.10 Construction as a core destination sector

Construction is one of the most important destination sectors because it can absorb large numbers of workers with varied skill levels and because projects are geographically dispersed. Migrants from Bihar work as helpers, masons, bar-benders, carpenters, painters, electricians and machine operators. Skill ladders can raise earnings, but employment remains project-based and often mediated by contractors. Construction also produces circularity: workers return when projects finish, during agricultural seasons or for family obligations, then join another site. Origin villages therefore acquire specialised construction skills that can later be used locally. The sector's risks are equally important—falls, injuries, heat, unsafe accommodation and irregular payment. Bihar's migrant-worker welfare mechanisms, including accident assistance, acknowledge that the costs of labour mobility do not end at the state boundary. A migration-dependent economy exports labour but retains responsibility for households affected by injury or death.

120.11 Manufacturing, workshops and industrial labour

Manufacturing migration differs from construction because factory employment can offer longer spells, regular shifts and opportunities for task-specific learning. Workers from Bihar are found in textiles, garments, food processing, engineering, ceramics, plastics and numerous small industrial units across western and southern India. Entry may occur through contractor labour rather than direct employment, limiting job security even when work is continuous. Factory experience can nevertheless build skills in machine operation, quality control, maintenance and production discipline. The development question is whether these skills circulate back. Some return migrants establish repair shops, fabrication units or trading businesses; others find that local demand and credit are too weak to use what they learned. Skill certification and recognition could improve portability between employers and make migration less dependent on personal networks. The origin economy gains more when the migrant's acquired capability is transferable rather than locked to one contractor or workplace.

120.12 Agricultural labour migration and changing destinations

Agricultural migration from Bihar has historically been associated with north-west India, especially during the Green Revolution period, when Punjab and Haryana demanded seasonal labour for transplanting, harvesting and other operations. Mechanisation and changing labour markets have altered but not eliminated these routes. Agricultural migrants may now combine farm seasons with construction or urban service work, illustrating the fluid boundary between rural and urban labour. The significance for the origin region is twofold. First, departure during local peak seasons can raise local wages or accelerate mechanisation. Second, workers bring back knowledge of crops, machinery and labour practices observed elsewhere. Destination agriculture also changes its own technology in response to migrant labour supply. Thus migration is not a one-direction transfer of labour; it links two production systems whose wage levels, crop calendars and mechanisation decisions respond to each other.

120.13 Logistics, security and the urban service economy

Urban service economies have broadened the occupational profile of migration. Security work, driving, delivery, warehousing, restaurants, domestic services, retail, sanitation and informal logistics employ workers with different levels of education and mobility. These jobs are often invisible in older narratives that equate Bihari migration with farm or construction labour. Digital platforms have added new forms of dispatch-based work, although formal platform registration does not necessarily guarantee social security. Service work can also make destination residence more individualised: a driver or guard may remain in a city for longer periods than a seasonal harvest worker. The household effect depends on wage regularity, accommodation cost and the worker's ability to transfer earnings home. As the service sector expands nationally, migration corridors become more occupationally diverse even if the origin district's basic push factors remain similar.

120.14 International labour and the Gulf connection

International labour is a distinct but connected tier of the migration economy. Gulf employment has become important for parts of Bihar and the Nepal Terai because wage differentials can be much larger than in domestic migration, but so are recruitment costs and contractual risks. Chapter 102 examined Gulf migration in detail; here the emphasis is economic integration. A household may sequence migration: a worker first gains construction experience in an Indian city, then uses networks and savings to seek overseas employment. International migration can therefore sit at the upper end of a mobility ladder rather than exist as a separate system. The destination choice affects household risk because foreign jobs are more document-

intensive and abrupt return can be expensive. The origin economy's dependence is consequently not only on wage flows but on visa regimes, foreign labour demand, exchange rates and recruitment governance beyond Bihar's direct control.

120.15 India–Nepal border mobility and Madhesh

The India–Nepal border creates a special form of mobility in the Mithila–Madhesh zone. The open border allows labour, trade and family movement that is less bureaucratically visible than migration through airports or formal recruitment channels. At the same time, Nepal's 2021 census shows that 21.8 percent of Madhesh Province households had at least one member living abroad; Dhanusha alone recorded more than seventy-three thousand absent persons abroad, overwhelmingly male. Nepal's 2022/23 Living Standards Survey further shows that remittances constitute a substantial share of recipient-household income in Madhesh. These figures should not be mapped directly onto Indian districts because definitions differ, but they reveal a shared cross-border political economy of absent labour and household anchoring. Border mobility also includes shorter trips for markets, services and employment within India or Nepal, much of which standard international-migration statistics cannot capture well.

120.16 Transport infrastructure and the compression of distance

Transport infrastructure changes migration by changing its frequency. Railways historically made long-distance labour migration possible at mass scale; highways, buses and affordable telecommunications have further compressed distance. A worker can now coordinate travel, send digital payments, compare job information and return home more often than earlier generations could. This encourages circulation rather than permanent relocation. Better roads inside Bihar also connect villages to railway stations, district towns and recruitment points. Transport therefore has an ambiguous relationship with local development: it improves market access at home while simultaneously making departure easier. The correct historical interpretation is not that infrastructure 'causes' migration, but that it expands the feasible choice set. Figure 478 distinguishes nearby commuting, seasonal corridors, interstate urban work, international migration and return as overlapping tiers rather than a single linear path.

Migration corridors differ by distance, duration and entry cost

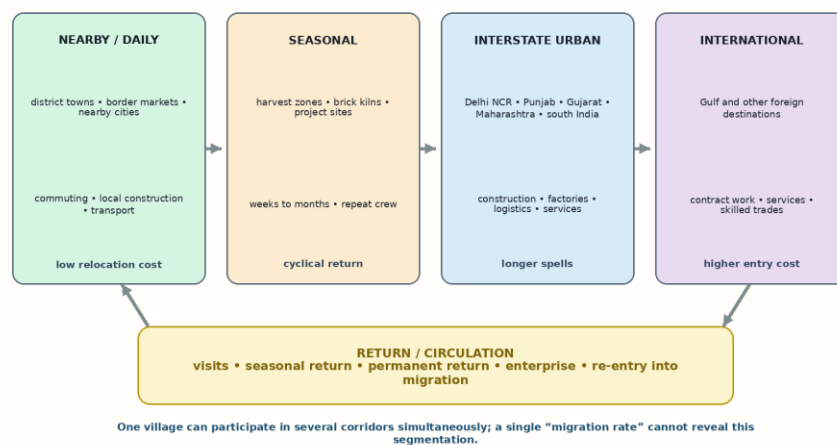


Figure 478 — Migration corridors segmented by distance, duration, skill and entry cost rather than one undifferentiated flow.

120.17 The household division of labour after migration

When one or more working-age adults migrate, the household reallocates labour. Older parents may supervise land; spouses manage cultivation, livestock, schooling and financial transactions; hired labour or machinery replaces absent workers at peak seasons. This reallocation determines whether migration complements or weakens farming. A household with sufficient remittance income may continue cultivating for food security despite low profitability, while another may rent land out because labour supervision is difficult. Migration can also change decision authority. The absent earner may control large expenditures by phone, yet the resident spouse gains daily responsibility for production and consumption. The economic unit is therefore stretched across space. Surveys that interview only the resident ‘head’ or only the migrant can miss this distributed decision-making. Figure 477 represents the household budget as a portfolio combining local and external income sources.

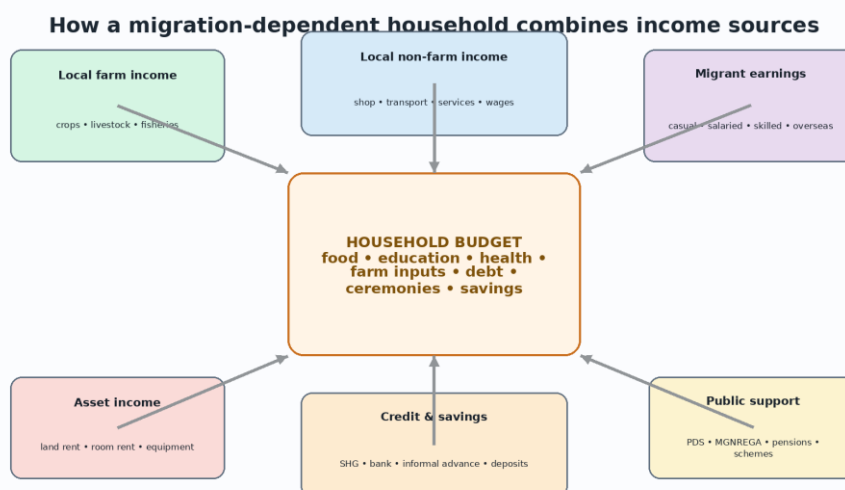


Figure 477 — A migration-dependent household budget combines migrant earnings with farm, non-farm, public-support, credit and asset income.

120.18 Women’s work, care and the hidden subsidy to migration

Women’s unpaid and underpaid work is one of the hidden foundations of male migration. When men leave, women often assume additional responsibility for farming, livestock, elder care, children’s education, banking and public-service interactions. This can expand managerial autonomy but also intensify work burdens without changing formal land titles or access to machinery. The term ‘feminisation of agriculture’ is therefore incomplete unless it distinguishes labour, decision-making and ownership. Migration is economically viable partly because care and household reproduction remain at the origin. If that work were fully priced, the apparent return to migration would look different. Women also migrate in their own right for domestic, factory, service, professional and international employment, although male-dominated migration remains especially visible in many parts of Bihar and Madhesh. Gender analysis must therefore include both women as migrants and women whose labour sustains migrant households.

120.19 Migration and village wage formation

High out-migration can affect village wages by reducing the number of workers available for local casual labour, especially during peak agricultural seasons. The effect is not automatic because local labour demand can also be weak, and return migrants may increase labour supply temporarily. Nevertheless, destination wages become part of the reservation-wage calculation at the origin: a worker who can earn more elsewhere may refuse very low local rates. Employers respond through higher wages, labour-saving machinery, altered crop choices or recruitment from poorer nearby areas. Migration therefore transmits labour-market information across space. It can raise bargaining power without formal unionisation, but it can also weaken collective organisation when the workforce is dispersed across destinations. The local wage effect is strongest when migration is accessible to poorer households rather than limited to those who can finance high entry costs.

120.20 Labour scarcity, mechanisation and farm adjustment

Migration and mechanisation interact. In a region of tiny holdings, machinery adoption is often constrained by scale, yet labour scarcity during transplanting, harvesting or threshing can make custom-hiring services attractive. Chapter 119 showed how fragmented holdings can use shared services to create operational scale. Out-migration adds a labour-market reason for the same institutional change. Households invest in pumps, threshers, small tractors or hired machine services partly because family labour is absent or local wages have risen. Mechanisation may then reduce future seasonal labour demand, altering migration schedules again. This feedback means migration should not be analysed as an external ‘loss’ of labour from agriculture. It is one of the forces reshaping the technology and organisation of farming at the origin.

120.21 Return migration, skill circulation and enterprise

Return migration can transfer more than savings. Workers bring skills, language competence, contacts, knowledge of markets and expectations about work organisation. Research on rural Bihar has found former migrants among local non-farm entrepreneurs, suggesting that migration can seed enterprise. Yet return is not automatically entrepreneurial. A mason may lack capital to become a contractor; a factory worker may find no local industrial cluster in which to use machine skills. Productive return therefore depends on credit, electricity, transport, demand, business registration and local institutions. Policies that treat returnees merely as beneficiaries of short training courses miss the accumulated experience they already possess. A better approach is skills recognition plus enterprise support and market linkage. Return also has a life-cycle dimension: some circular migrants come back permanently when destination work becomes physically unsustainable, creating a need for less strenuous local livelihoods.

120.22 Migration and the rise of the rural non-farm economy

Migration stimulates the rural non-farm economy through several channels. Households with outside earners demand groceries, transport, mobile services, private tutoring, health care, building materials and financial services. Returnees may open shops, repair units or transport businesses. Construction at the origin creates work for masons and suppliers. The World Bank’s research on Bihar’s non-farm economy highlighted both remittances and return-migrant skills as drivers of local enterprise in high-migration districts. But demand-led non-farm growth can remain dependent on continued external earnings if enterprises merely distribute imported goods rather than build local production. The developmental question is therefore whether migration-generated demand becomes a platform for local value creation. Chapter 121 examines

consumption and housing more closely; here the key point is that migration changes the sectoral composition of village economies even when migrants themselves work hundreds of kilometres away.

120.23 Financing migration: savings, advances and debt

Migration has an entry cost. Domestic workers may need train fare, food, tools, deposits and enough cash to survive until the first wage payment. Contractors sometimes advance money, binding the worker to a crew. International migration can require much larger payments for documents, medical tests and recruitment. Households finance these costs from savings, relatives, SHGs, banks, employers or informal lenders. Debt can convert a voluntary search for better wages into constrained mobility if the worker cannot leave a bad job before repaying the advance. The rate of return on migration must therefore be calculated net of financing cost and risk. Access to low-cost formal credit, transparent recruitment and rapid digital payments can improve the worker's bargaining position. Conversely, easy credit without reliable job information can finance migration into exploitative arrangements. Migration finance is thus a labour-market institution, not merely a household cash-flow problem.

120.24 Risk: wage theft, accidents, illness and abrupt return

The risks of migration are concentrated on workers while benefits are shared more widely. Wage theft, delayed payment, injury, heat stress, unsafe lodging, illness, harassment and sudden project closure can erase months of expected gain. A family at the origin may have little information about the employer or even the exact worksite. Death or disability can create both an emotional catastrophe and a severe income shock. Bihar's Labour Resources and Migrant Workers Welfare Department explicitly operates social-security measures for migrant and unorganised workers, including accident assistance. The existence of such schemes is itself evidence that migration is institutionally recognised as a durable economic condition. Effective protection, however, depends on awareness, documentation, accessible claims and coordination between origin and destination authorities. Risk reduction raises the net economic return to migration without requiring mobility to stop.

120.25 Portability of social protection

A worker who crosses a state boundary should not lose food security or disappear from welfare systems. India's e-Shram portal is designed as a national database of unorganised workers including migrants, while One Nation One Ration Card enables NFSA beneficiaries to obtain foodgrains through portability across the country. The Occupational Safety, Health and Working Conditions framework also contains specific provisions for inter-state migrant workers and portability of certain benefits. These systems move social policy from residence-bound welfare toward worker portability. The remaining problem is interoperability and actual use: registration does not guarantee that a worker can enforce a wage claim, obtain treatment or access every state benefit at the destination. Figure 479 therefore presents portability as a chain—identify, port benefits, protect work, assist mobility and support return—rather than as a single database solution.

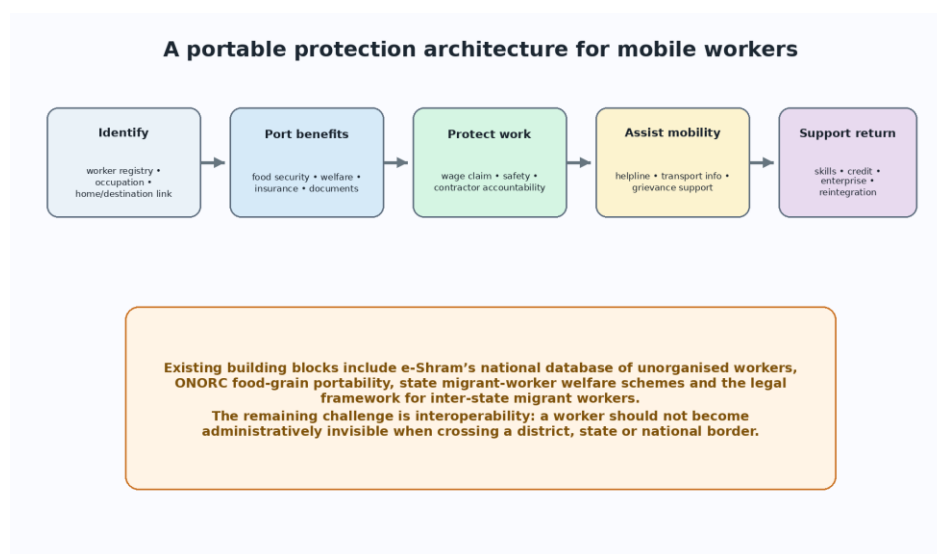


Figure 479 — Portable protection for mobile workers requires linked identification, benefits, workplace protection, mobility assistance and return support.

120.26 COVID-19 as a stress test of the migration system

The COVID-19 lockdown exposed the dependence of both destination cities and origin villages on migrant circulation. The sudden closure of workplaces and transport stranded workers, interrupted earnings and triggered large-scale return to Bihar. Origin households lost cash income just as returnees needed food and work; destination economies simultaneously discovered how essential migrant labour was to construction, manufacturing and services. Government responses, including emergency rural employment and food measures, demonstrated the need for portable social protection and worker databases. Research in rural Bihar after the pandemic found severe livelihood disruption, with migrant and casual labour among the most affected sources. The lesson is not that migration itself was the problem. The crisis revealed how a system built on mobility lacked adequate protection when mobility was abruptly suspended. Future resilience requires support that works in normal circulation and during shocks.

120.27 Why migration is difficult to measure

Migration is notoriously difficult to measure because administrative categories are tied to residence while workers move repeatedly. Census migration tables capture changes in usual residence but may miss short-duration circular migrants. Labour-force surveys are better at current work status but may not record the full household migration cycle. e-Shram records registered unorganised workers, not a complete flow of departures and returns. Railway passenger data show movement but not purpose. Remittance statistics mix transfers from different origins and channels. Village surveys can capture circularity in detail but cover limited places. Nepal's census provides strong data on absent members abroad, yet open-border movement to India can still be difficult to classify. Table 120.1 therefore treats migration history as a triangulation problem. Claims about 'how many migrants' should always specify source, reference period, residence definition and whether the measure concerns persons, households, trips or absences.

120.28 Floods, climate variability and mobility

Floods and climate variability interact with migration but should not be used as a single-cause explanation. North Bihar's recurrent floods and waterlogging can destroy crops, delay agricultural work and reduce local employment, making migration an important risk-diversification strategy. Yet many migrants

leave from areas that are not the most flood-prone, and established migration networks can persist in good agricultural years. Climate stress operates through livelihoods: crop loss, erosion, indebtedness, heat and changing work calendars alter the relative return to staying or leaving. Migration can increase resilience when outside income diversifies household risk, but it can also expose workers to heat and unsafe conditions at destinations. The policy goal is therefore not to label migrants as ‘climate refugees’ without evidence, but to understand how environmental shocks interact with land structure, labour demand, infrastructure and networks.

120.29 Dependency or development? Interpreting migration without caricature

Migration is sometimes described as evidence of regional failure and sometimes celebrated as development through remittances. Both views are incomplete. Distress is real when workers accept dangerous jobs because local options are poor; agency is also real when households use mobility to pursue higher wages, education or enterprise. An economy becomes problematically dependent when migration is effectively compulsory for basic household reproduction and when origin institutions fail to convert external earnings and skills into wider local opportunity. Conversely, eliminating migration is neither feasible nor desirable in an integrated national economy. The more useful benchmark is choice: can a worker migrate safely for a good job, return without losing rights, or remain locally without facing destitution? Dependency should therefore be assessed through the quality of alternatives and the distribution of migration’s costs and gains, not through mobility rates alone.

120.30 Policy agenda: make mobility safer while expanding local choice

Policy for Mithila, Vajji and Anga should pursue a dual strategy. First, make mobility safer and more productive through reliable job information, skills recognition, transparent recruitment, portable food and welfare benefits, accident and health protection, grievance systems, affordable transport and better migration data. Second, expand the option to stay through agricultural productivity, local manufacturing, agro-processing, education, health, construction, urban services and small-enterprise finance. These are complements, not substitutes. Migration networks can connect local firms to wider markets; returnees can become entrepreneurs; portable protection can reduce the cost of taking better jobs. The objective is to shift from survival migration toward mobility with bargaining power. The next chapter examines the most visible financial consequence of this system—how remittances reshape consumption, housing, savings and social differentiation at the origin.

Table 120.1 — Evidence architecture for studying migration-dependent economies

Evidence source	What it captures	Best use	Key limitation
Population Census / migration tables	usual-residence change and migration characteristics	long-run origin/destination structure	misses much short-term circular mobility
NSS / household migration surveys	out-migrants, remittances, reasons and duration	comparable dated household evidence	older rounds cannot be presented as current rates
Longitudinal village surveys	repeat mobility, household strategy and destination work	mechanisms and change over time	limited geographic coverage
e-Shram	registered unorganised workers including migrants	portability and administrative visibility	registration is not a flow census
ONORC / PDS portability	food-grain use away from home state	evidence of welfare portability in practice	covers NFSA transactions, not all migrants
Labour-department claims	accidents, welfare applications and grievances	risk and protection failures	only events entering the scheme are visible
Rail / bus / transport evidence	volume and seasonality of movement	corridor and shock analysis	purpose of journey is often unknown
Nepal NPHC 2021 / NLSS IV	absent members abroad, migration and remittance dependence	cross-border Madhesh comparison	definitions differ from Indian sources

Chapter 121 — Remittances, Consumption and Housing

Chapter 120 examined migration as a labour-market system. This chapter turns to what happens after earnings move back toward the household. Remittances are neither a single-purpose transfer nor a transparent measure of prosperity. A payment received from Delhi, Punjab, Gujarat, Maharashtra, the Gulf or another destination may be used in the same month for grain, school fees, medicine, a loan instalment and bricks. The analytical task is therefore to reconstruct allocation over time rather than force every rupee into a rigid consumption-versus-investment category.

The evidence for Mithila, Vajji and Anga is uneven. Longitudinal research in rural Bihar repeatedly found remittances central to migrant-household budgets, with food consumption, debt clearance, health and education preceding or accompanying asset creation. The Household Consumption Expenditure Survey 2023–24 provides a much newer Bihar consumption baseline—average monthly per-capita consumption expenditure of Rs 3,670 in rural Bihar and Rs 5,080 in urban Bihar—but it is not a remittance-use survey and should not be read as one. On the Nepal side, the Nepal Living Standards Survey IV 2022/23 provides a stronger direct remittance benchmark: 79.1 per cent of Madhesh households received remittances, while national tabulations show daily consumption as the dominant reported use. These figures are dated survey results, not permanent characteristics.

Housing deserves separate treatment because it is simultaneously shelter, durable asset, social signal, collateral-like wealth and a source of local demand. Migration-financed construction can improve safety and amenities, but it can also lock cash into a low-liquidity asset, intensify land-price competition or produce large houses with few working-age residents. The chapter therefore examines consumption smoothing, debt, education, health, savings, durables, ceremonies, land and housing as parts of one household portfolio, then asks how those choices affect inequality and the local economy.

121.1 Remittances as a household financial institution

A remittance is best understood as a recurring financial institution connecting a migrant's labour income to a household whose members, land, debts and obligations remain elsewhere. Its significance depends not only on annual value but on reliability. A smaller transfer arriving every month can stabilise food purchases and school payments more effectively than a larger irregular transfer. Households also distinguish earmarked payments from general support: money may be sent specifically for a medical procedure, a daughter's admission fee, a roof repair or repayment of recruitment debt. In migrant households, budgeting therefore becomes spatially divided. The earner faces rent, food and transport costs at destination before money is transferred, while the origin household allocates what remains. Historical analysis must capture both budgets. Treating gross migrant wages as money available to the village overstates the resource flow and hides transfer costs, destination living costs and periods of unemployment.

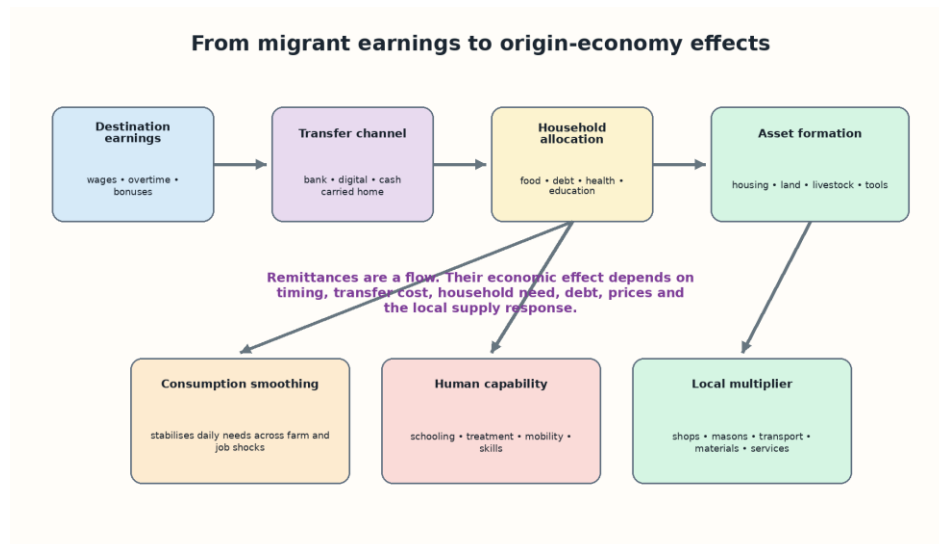


Figure 480 — Remittance transmission from destination earnings through transfer and household allocation to welfare, assets and local multipliers.

121.2 Measurement: amount, frequency and sender

Measurement requires at least five variables: who sends, how much, how often, by which channel and for what purpose. Household surveys may record transfers received during the previous year, but circular migrants can also carry cash during visits, purchase goods directly, pay school or hospital bills remotely, or finance construction through a contractor without transferring money to another household member. These flows are easily missed. In-kind transfers—clothing, phones, appliances or building materials—also matter. The receiving unit is equally important: a joint household may pool earnings from several migrants, while brothers living in separate kitchens may support the same parents. Remittance estimates are therefore sensitive to the definition of household and reference period. For historical comparison, the safest approach is to preserve each survey’s original definitions and use repeated qualitative evidence to explain how transfer practices changed with banking, mobile connectivity and digital payment systems.

121.3 Dated evidence from rural Bihar

Rural Bihar’s longitudinal evidence shows why dated field surveys remain valuable. IHD research for 2009–10 reported substantial remittances among migrant households in surveyed districts, with Madhubani among the study locations. Earlier and later rounds showed migration deepening across decades and remittances becoming integral to household reproduction. The studies consistently found food consumption prominent, followed by debt repayment, health, education and then asset creation. These findings should not be converted into a 2026 rupee estimate: wages, prices, destinations and transfer technologies have changed. Their value is structural. They demonstrate that migrant earnings did not simply bypass rural households; they financed everyday consumption and gradual improvements in living standards. They also reveal differentiation: better-off households often had migrants in higher-paying occupations and could retain a larger share for savings or assets, while poorer households used more of the transfer to meet immediate needs and repay costly debt.

121.4 Madhesh Province in the Nepal Living Standards Survey IV

Nepal’s NLSS IV offers a newer benchmark for the cross-border northern part of the regional economy. In 2022/23, 79.1 per cent of households in Madhesh Province were reported as receiving remittances, with

an average amount of NRs 103,200 among recipient households and average per-capita remittance of NRs 21,446. These figures include remittances from different sources and are not limited to Maithili-speaking households. They nevertheless show how deeply transfer income is embedded in Madhesh household budgets. Nationally, the same survey reported 76.8 per cent of households receiving remittances and identified daily consumption as the dominant stated use. The comparison with Bihar must therefore be conceptual rather than numerical: survey definitions, currencies, labour corridors and political borders differ. What is common is the household strategy of combining local livelihoods with earnings generated elsewhere.

121.5 Consumption smoothing and food security

The first economic role of remittances is often consumption smoothing. Agricultural income is seasonal, casual work is irregular and health or flood shocks can abruptly raise expenditure. A recurring transfer allows households to maintain grain purchases, cooking fuel, clothing, transport and other necessities when local income falls. Calling this ‘mere consumption’ is analytically misleading. Stable food consumption can protect nutrition, prevent distress borrowing and reduce the need to sell livestock or grain at unfavourable prices. It can also allow children to remain in school instead of entering paid work. The 2023–24 HCES places Bihar’s average monthly per-capita consumption expenditure at Rs 3,670 in rural areas and Rs 5,080 in urban areas, but these are state-wide consumption levels, not remittance effects. To estimate the remittance contribution, households with and without migrants must be compared while controlling for land, caste, education and other sources of income.

121.6 Debt repayment before visible accumulation

Debt repayment often comes before visible investment because migration itself can be debt-financed. Travel, recruitment fees, advances to contractors, rent deposits and the cost of surviving before the first wage payment may be borrowed. Origin households may also carry older consumption, medical or ceremonial debt. A transfer used to clear high-interest borrowing can improve net wealth even though no new physical asset appears. It can free pledged jewellery, prevent land mortgage, restore access to formal credit and reduce recurring interest payments. This is particularly important when analysing poor households, for whom debt clearance may be the rational first use of a successful migration spell. Conversely, if migration earnings are repeatedly absorbed by recruitment debt or emergency borrowing, a household can remain migration-dependent without accumulating assets. Remittance analysis should therefore report liabilities alongside receipts; otherwise the same transfer may look equally beneficial for two households whose balance sheets are very different.

121.7 Health expenditure and shock protection

Health expenditure is a major channel through which remittances convert earnings into capability. Migrant households may use transfers for medicines, diagnostics, private consultations, transport to district hospitals or treatment in larger cities. Such spending can be lumpy and difficult to observe in a short survey reference period. It can also blur the boundary between consumption and investment: restoring a worker’s health preserves future earning capacity, while timely maternal or child care affects long-term outcomes. Migration itself creates additional health risks, including accidents, heat exposure and occupational disease at destination. In some households, origin-side medical costs rise because older parents or spouses remain behind. The economic effect therefore depends on whether remittance income improves access to care faster than migration creates new health burdens. A complete account should pair household expenditure data with insurance coverage, public health access and evidence on migrant occupational risk.

121.8 Education as household investment

Education is one of the most consistent aspirational uses of migrant earnings. Transfers can finance fees, uniforms, books, transport, tutoring, digital devices and study outside the village. This expenditure has a dual logic. Parents may seek social mobility for children precisely so that they do not enter the same insecure manual migration corridor, while older students may use education to access higher-paying migration themselves. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the education economy also links to Chapter 122's subject—coaching migration—because remittance-financed schooling can itself create a new form of mobility toward Patna, Kota, Delhi or other centres. The distributional effect is uneven: households receiving larger or more regular remittances can sustain private schooling and coaching through several years, whereas poorer households may use transfers only to prevent interruption of basic education. Educational expenditure should therefore be analysed by duration and level, not simply whether 'education' appears as a spending category.

121.9 Ceremonies, kinship and social obligations

Ceremonies, festivals and kinship obligations are economically significant uses of migrant income. Weddings, funerals, ritual observances and seasonal festivals concentrate expenditure and often determine the timing of a migrant's return visit. Such spending is sometimes dismissed as unproductive, but it performs social functions: it maintains reciprocal networks, signals continuing membership in the village and can redistribute income to caterers, musicians, artisans, transporters and local retailers. At the same time, competitive ceremonial expenditure can generate debt and intensify status pressure, particularly when migration raises the visible consumption standard of some households. A historical approach should therefore avoid moralising categories. The relevant questions are how much is spent, whether it is debt-financed, who supplies the goods and services, and whether obligations become more expensive as migrant earnings and social expectations rise.

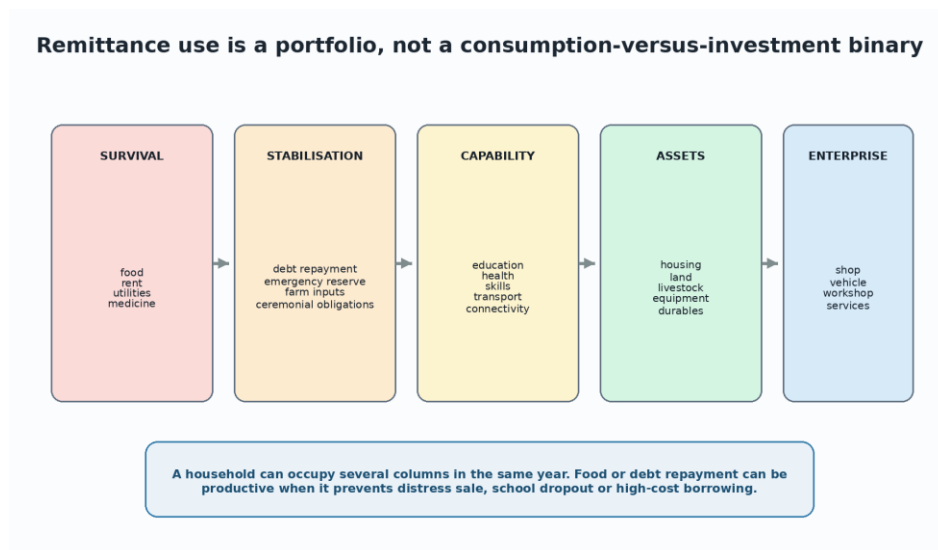


Figure 481 — Remittance use as a household portfolio spanning survival, stabilisation, capability, assets and enterprise.

121.10 Savings, bank accounts and liquidity

Savings are the hinge between current consumption and future resilience. Remittances may be held in cash, bank deposits, post-office accounts, self-help groups, gold or other liquid and semi-liquid forms. Formal financial inclusion has expanded the range of transfer and saving channels, but an account does not

guarantee meaningful accumulation. Irregular earnings and frequent emergencies can keep balances low even when transfers are formally received through banks. The migration household also faces a geographic liquidity problem: money may be needed quickly at either origin or destination. Digital banking and instant transfers reduce the need to hold large sums with intermediaries, but they introduce risks of fraud, account access problems and dependence on phone connectivity. The analytical question is whether remittances create precautionary buffers large enough to absorb a failed crop, illness or interrupted migration spell without new high-cost borrowing.

121.11 Durable goods and domestic comfort

Durable goods are a visible but heterogeneous use of migrant earnings. Bicycles, motorcycles, fans, televisions, refrigerators, pumps, furniture and phones can improve household welfare while also supporting production or mobility. A motorcycle may be both a consumption good and a transport asset; a refrigerator may enable a shop; a pump can serve irrigation; a smartphone is simultaneously communication, banking, education and entertainment infrastructure. The growth of durable ownership can therefore change village demand and retail geography. Dealers, repair shops, fuel sellers and transport services expand around this purchasing power. But durable acquisition also depreciates and may be credit-financed. Household wealth analysis should distinguish between durable stocks, productive equipment, land and financial assets rather than treating all non-food spending as a single category.

121.12 Mobile phones, connectivity and financial transfer

Mobile connectivity transformed remittance practice by shortening the distance between earning and spending decisions. Earlier migrants often remitted through money orders, informal couriers or cash carried during return visits. Bank expansion, mobile phones, Aadhaar-linked services in India, digital wallets and interoperable payment systems increasingly permit frequent smaller transfers and real-time communication about household needs. This changes household governance: a migrant can pay a bill, send emergency money or monitor construction from far away. It may also alter bargaining power, because the sender can control the timing and purpose of transfers more closely. Digital channels reduce some transaction costs while producing new forms of exclusion for households with weak literacy, poor connectivity or account problems. The history of remittances is therefore partly a history of communication and payments infrastructure, not only of migration volume.

121.13 Farm inputs and mixed livelihood portfolios

Remittances often sustain agriculture rather than replace it. Migrant earnings can purchase seed, fertiliser, irrigation, pesticides, rented machinery or hired labour, allowing a household to maintain cultivation despite the absence of working-age members. They can finance livestock, fish ponds or horticulture that diversify income. Yet the relationship can also run the other way: if reliable transfers reduce the need to cultivate low-return plots, land may be leased out or cropped less intensively. Labour scarcity can accelerate mechanisation or increase dependence on hired workers. The effect varies by land size, gender and local labour markets. A small landholding household may use migration to preserve farming as a food-security base, while a larger household may invest in commercial crops. Remittance-financed agriculture should therefore be measured through changes in input use, tenancy and cropping decisions rather than assumed from expenditure labels alone.

121.14 Livestock, tools and small productive assets

Livestock, tools and small productive assets occupy an intermediate zone between household security and enterprise. A cow or buffalo can generate milk while also storing value; a sewing machine can supplement women's income; a cart, e-rickshaw or small vehicle can create transport earnings; construction tools can raise a return migrant's wage. These assets are often more accessible than formal business investment because they can be acquired incrementally and used within familiar occupations. Their success, however, depends on markets, maintenance and labour availability. A remittance-financed animal can become a liability if fodder costs rise or veterinary care is unavailable. Productive-asset analysis therefore needs follow-up: purchase is not the same as sustained return. Historical evidence is strongest when a household survey records both the acquisition and the income stream generated by the asset over subsequent years.

121.15 Enterprise formation and its limits

Migration is frequently credited with creating village entrepreneurship, but the transition from worker to entrepreneur is selective. Returnees may open shops, workshops, transport services, building-material businesses, restaurants or small processing units using savings, skills and contacts acquired away. Yet enterprise survival requires demand, working capital, reliable electricity, market access and the ability to absorb losses. Many migrant households rationally prefer housing or land because these assets are familiar and socially secure, even if their financial return is lower. The local economy may also be too small to support many identical shops. Policy should therefore not assume that every remittance recipient ought to become an entrepreneur. A better strategy combines optional enterprise support with infrastructure, producer organisations, credit and market linkages, allowing households to choose among savings, assets and business according to risk tolerance.

121.16 Land purchase and land-price effects

Land purchase is a powerful but constrained form of remittance investment. Agricultural land carries economic, social and security value; homestead land determines where a family can build; roadside plots can support shops or rental housing. Migrant earnings can help households redeem mortgaged land or buy small parcels, but rising demand can also push prices beyond the reach of non-migrant households. Because transactions are infrequent, land effects are difficult to capture in annual expenditure surveys. Record quality, inheritance disputes and fragmented plots further complicate valuation. In flood-prone zones, elevation and access can matter as much as acreage. The distributional consequence may therefore be sharper than aggregate remittance data suggest: households with an early migration advantage can convert earnings into appreciating land, while later or poorer migrants face higher entry prices. Land should be analysed as a long-term wealth channel rather than ordinary consumption.

121.17 Why housing becomes a preferred asset

Housing becomes a preferred remittance asset because it solves several problems at once. It improves shelter, can protect goods from weather, provides privacy to expanding households, signals economic progress and creates a durable claim in the place of origin. A house is also easier for relatives to supervise than a distant business. Construction can be incremental: a roof is replaced one year, an additional room built later, then plastering, flooring, a toilet or a second storey. This pattern matches irregular migration earnings better than a single large investment. Yet housing is illiquid. A household may possess a substantial concrete structure while lacking cash for education, health or enterprise. For economic history, housing should

therefore be treated as both welfare improvement and balance-sheet transformation, with attention to construction sequence, financing source and occupancy.

121.18 Repair, extension and incremental construction

Incremental construction is especially important in rural and small-town settings. Households rarely move directly from a weak dwelling to a finished multi-storey concrete house in one transaction. Remittances may first fund post-flood repair, replacement of thatch, brick boundary walls or a secure room for stored grain and documents. Later transfers can add a kitchen, veranda, staircase or room for a newly married son. This staged process is easy to miss when surveys classify only the current wall and roof material. Oral history, dated photographs, building receipts and interviews with masons can reconstruct the sequence. Incrementality also spreads the local multiplier over years, generating repeated demand for labour, bricks, sand, cement, steel, carpentry and transport. The resulting construction economy can become one of the most visible ways migration income enters origin settlements.

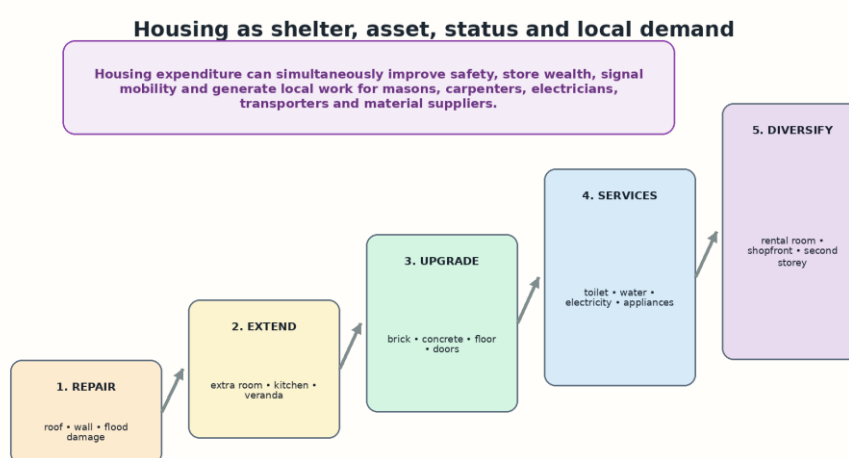


Figure 482 — Incremental housing transformation from repair to service upgrades and diversified use.

121.19 Pucca construction and material transitions

The spread of pucca materials is often read as a simple indicator of prosperity, but the transition is more complex. Brick, reinforced concrete, cement plaster, tiles, metal doors and glazed windows respond to aspirations for durability, flood resistance, security and status. Material choice is also shaped by local soil, transport costs, building regulation and the availability of skilled masons. In some areas, houses are raised on higher plinths or designed around waterlogging risk. Concrete construction can reduce routine maintenance yet increase heat stress if ventilation is poor. It also embeds carbon-intensive materials and may displace vernacular building knowledge. Remittance-financed housing change should therefore be assessed not only by whether a dwelling is ‘pucca’ but by safety, thermal comfort, flood resilience, usable space and lifetime maintenance cost.

121.20 Water, sanitation, electricity and appliances

Housing improvement increasingly includes services and appliances rather than walls alone. Toilets, piped or pumped water, electricity connections, fans, inverters, refrigerators, televisions and digital devices change domestic labour and everyday comfort. Public programmes may finance part of this transition while

remittances pay for complementary works: a toilet subsidy is more useful when a household can afford water storage, drainage and maintenance; an electricity connection becomes transformative when wiring and appliances are affordable. This interaction makes attribution difficult. A house may improve through a combination of PMAY support, sanitation schemes, savings, loans and migrant earnings. The correct historical question is therefore how public transfers and private remittances combine, not which single programme ‘caused’ the dwelling upgrade.

121.21 Housing as status and migrant biography

A remittance-financed house can function as a migrant biography. Architectural features, decorative choices, gates, tiles or upper floors materialise a story of work performed elsewhere and success brought home. This symbolic function matters because migration is socially evaluated through visible outcomes. A worker who endured years of precarious labour may seek a durable house as proof that absence produced something lasting. Such expectations can motivate saving but also create pressure for overbuilding or debt. Status competition is not unique to migrant households, yet migration can intensify it by widening differences within a village and exposing workers to urban consumption standards. Researchers should therefore combine expenditure data with questions about aspiration, reputation and family strategy. Housing is an economic asset whose meaning is socially produced.

121.22 Empty houses and the paradox of absence

One of the paradoxes of migration economies is the emergence of improved houses with few residents. Working-age adults may spend most of the year away, children may study in towns and older parents may occupy a large structure built for a family imagined to reunite later. Some houses remain locked except during festivals. This does not make the investment irrational: the building can secure inheritance claims, provide retirement shelter or accommodate future marriages. But it complicates the welfare interpretation of housing stock. Floor area may rise while daily social life becomes thinner, and maintenance can burden those left behind. In border and diaspora settings, an origin house may also serve as a symbolic anchor despite limited occupancy. Housing statistics should therefore be read alongside household composition and absence data rather than as a standalone measure of living standards.

121.23 Construction multipliers in village and small-town economies

Construction creates a local multiplier that distinguishes housing from many imported consumer goods. Spending on a house supports masons, helpers, carpenters, electricians, plumbers, welders, painters, truck operators and retailers of brick, cement, sand, steel, tiles and fittings. Some inputs are produced locally; others leak out through regional supply chains. The multiplier is strongest when labour and materials are sourced nearby and when skilled workers can capture higher wages. Large remittance flows can therefore stimulate a specialised building economy in market towns. They can also raise construction wages and material prices, affecting households without migrants. To evaluate the net effect, researchers need local price series and business evidence rather than household spending alone. Housing investment can expand origin employment while simultaneously making construction more expensive for poorer residents.

121.24 Gendered control over remittance use

Control over remittance use is gendered. Male migration often leaves women managing daily budgets, farming, children’s education and care of older relatives, which can expand responsibility without necessarily expanding formal ownership. A husband may retain strategic control over large purchases through phone

communication, while a wife decides routine consumption. In other households, women migrants remit directly and reshape household bargaining in different ways. Housing provides a revealing test: who chooses the design, whose name is on the land or dwelling, and who controls rental income? Women's increased management during male absence can strengthen practical authority, yet customary property rules may limit long-term asset claims. A gender-sensitive account must therefore distinguish day-to-day financial management, decision authority and legal ownership rather than treating 'the household' as a single actor.

121.25 Caste, class and unequal ability to convert migration into assets

Migration can reduce poverty while widening asset inequality because households enter mobility from unequal starting points. Those with education, networks or borrowing capacity may reach better-paid destinations, remit more regularly and invest in land or durable housing. Poorer households may migrate under greater debt, accept lower wages and use most transfers for subsistence. Caste and class shape access to contractors, skills, secure jobs, land and credit, so equal migration incidence does not imply equal returns. Remittance-funded housing can make these differences highly visible through streetscapes of concrete houses beside fragile dwellings. The proper comparison is not migrant versus non-migrant alone; it is among migration corridors, occupations, social groups and starting assets. Distributional analysis should ask who converts mobility into appreciating wealth and who remains dependent on repeated low-return migration merely to sustain current consumption.

121.26 Consumption inequality and local price effects

Large remittance inflows can alter local consumption patterns and prices. Demand may rise for packaged foods, private education, health care, transport, construction materials, land and rental housing. Retailers respond by expanding stock and services, creating employment and tax bases in small towns. But where supply is inelastic—especially land, skilled construction labour or certain services—prices can rise for everyone. Non-recipient households may experience a relative loss even if nominal village income increases. Consumption inequality can therefore widen alongside poverty reduction. The Bihar HCES 2023–24 provides a state-wide benchmark for consumption inequality, reporting Gini coefficients of 0.191 in rural Bihar and 0.232 in urban Bihar for monthly per-capita consumption expenditure. These are not remittance-specific measures, but they provide context for analysing how migration-linked purchasing power sits within broader consumption distribution.

121.27 Public housing schemes and private remittance finance

Public housing schemes and private remittance finance often operate together. PMAY-G and earlier rural housing programmes can provide a core subsidy or sanctioned dwelling, while households add rooms, better materials, gates, wiring or finishes using savings and migrant earnings. Conversely, some remittance-rich households may not qualify for targeted housing support but still depend on public roads, electrification, sanitation and drainage that make private construction valuable. This interaction warns against attributing visible housing change to either the state or migration alone. Administrative records can establish sanctioned and completed scheme houses; household interviews can identify top-up finance and later extensions. The combined perspective also reveals exclusion: households lacking clear land title, documentation or co-financing capacity may remain in poor housing even when relatives migrate.

121.28 Crisis periods: return migration and household buffers

Crisis periods test whether remittance-dependent households possess real buffers. During destination shutdowns, illness, deportation or transport disruption, transfers can stop just when origin income is also weak. The COVID-19 return-migration shock demonstrated this vulnerability across Bihar: households faced lost wages, travel costs and sudden increases in the number of people consuming food at home. Those with savings, grain stocks, livestock, supportive kin or formal entitlements were better placed to absorb the interruption. Houses themselves did not automatically provide liquidity. Crisis analysis therefore distinguishes asset wealth from cash resilience. A household with a concrete house and no emergency savings may be more financially fragile than appearances suggest. Diversified livelihoods, portable welfare and accessible credit reduce the risk that one failed migration spell reverses years of accumulation.

121.29 Better evidence for remittance-led change

Better evidence requires linking data sets that are usually separated. Migration surveys record destination and remittance receipt; consumption surveys record expenditure; housing censuses record dwelling materials; bank data record transfers; administrative systems record scheme benefits. None alone can establish causation. A strong regional research design would follow the same households over time, recording migrants, transfer frequency, debt, food and non-food consumption, education and health expenditure, savings, land transactions, construction stages and ownership. Settlement-level modules should track wages, material prices, rental markets and new businesses. Photographic and GIS evidence can document housing expansion, while qualitative interviews explain bargaining and aspiration. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, such a panel should be stratified across flood-prone northern districts, Vajji market belts, Anga districts and Madhesh Province so regional contrasts are not lost in state or national averages.

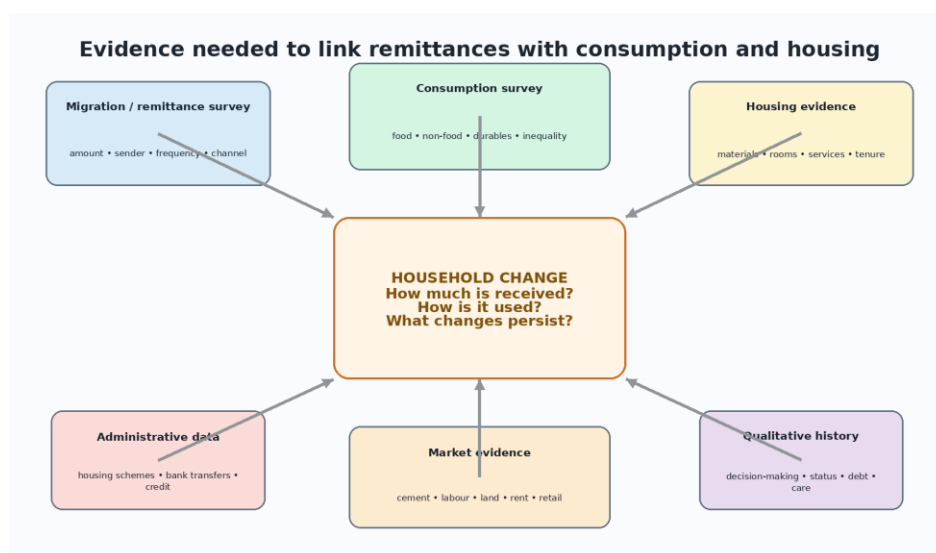


Figure 483 — Triangulating remittance, consumption and housing change requires several complementary evidence systems.

121.30 From dependence to household resilience

The developmental objective is not to force households to convert every remittance into a business. Consumption, debt clearance, education, health and safe housing are legitimate gains. The more useful question is whether remittances expand choice and resilience over time. A resilient household can meet basic needs, absorb shocks without catastrophic debt, educate children, maintain adequate housing and decide

whether migration remains worthwhile. Public policy can increase that return by lowering transfer costs, protecting migrant wages, improving schools and health services, ensuring secure land records, expanding safe housing and providing savings and credit instruments suited to irregular incomes. When local infrastructure and services improve, remittance spending generates stronger local multipliers instead of leaking immediately outward. Chapter 121 therefore closes the migration sequence by showing how outside earnings become everyday welfare and durable assets; Chapter 122 turns to the education economy and the new mobility generated by coaching and credential competition.

Table 121.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing remittances, consumption and housing

Evidence source	What it measures	Historical use	Main caution
Migration / remittance survey	sender, amount, frequency, destination	direct transfer dependence	reference period and informal transfers
HCES / consumption survey	food and non-food expenditure	living-standard context and inequality	does not identify remittance causation by itself
Longitudinal village panel	same households across rounds	sequence from migration to assets	limited settlement coverage
Housing census / survey	materials, rooms, tenure, amenities	physical dwelling transformation	current stock hides financing sequence
Bank / digital-transfer evidence	formal transfer channels	financialisation and transaction costs	cash and in-kind flows may be missed
Building permits / material markets	construction activity and input demand	local multiplier and price effects	rural informal building often unrecorded
PMAY / scheme records	sanctioned and completed public housing	state-remittance interaction	private additions need household evidence
NLSS IV 2022/23	remittance receipt, use, housing, consumption	Madhesh cross-border benchmark	definitions differ from Indian surveys
Oral history / photographs	decision-making and construction sequence	status, gender and aspiration	requires careful sampling and dating

Chapter 122 — Education Economy and Coaching Migration

Chapter 121 followed migration earnings back into household consumption and housing. Chapter 122 examines a different outward flow: money and young people moving toward schools, colleges, coaching centres and examination hubs. Education is both a social good and a market. Families buy tuition, transport, books, digital access, accommodation and repeated examination attempts; towns earn income from classrooms, hostels, messes, printing, rentals and mobility; and students convert time and money into credentials whose labour-market value is uncertain. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, this education economy links villages and district towns with Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur and other centres, with Patna as a major Bihar-wide hub, and with national destinations such as Kota, Delhi NCR and Varanasi. On the Nepal side, Janakpur and other Madhesh towns connect to Kathmandu, provincial campuses, Indian institutions and overseas higher education.

The structural pressure behind this movement is visible in dated official data. AISHE 2021–22 recorded Bihar's higher-education gross enrolment ratio at 17.1 per cent, compared with 28.4 per cent for India. That gap does not prove that every student migrates, but it helps explain why access to specialised institutions remains uneven and why families treat mobility as part of an educational strategy. At school level, UDISE+ and ASER show a much larger institutional base but continuing differences in transition, learning and school resources. These datasets measure distinct things and should not be collapsed into one ranking of educational quality.

Coaching is especially difficult to measure. Bihar has had the Bihar Coaching Institute (Control and Regulation) Act since 2010; Patna now maintains an official coaching-registration portal; and the Union Ministry of Education issued model Guidelines for Regulation of Coaching Centers in January 2024. Yet administrative registration is not a complete census of students, fees or turnover. Contemporary press reports describing Patna as one of India's largest coaching hubs are useful evidence of scale and perception, but their market estimates must be treated as reported estimates rather than official counts. This chapter therefore combines official education data, regulation, household finance, migration evidence and market observation while keeping their evidentiary status explicit.

122.1 Education as a household investment

For households, education expenditure is rarely a single annual fee. It is a sequence of decisions extending from uniforms, books and transport to private tuition, examination forms, digital subscriptions, coaching fees, hostel deposits and relocation. Families may finance these costs from current income, remittances, crop sales, savings, informal borrowing or formal credit. The expected return is also multidimensional: literacy and capability, social status, eligibility for public employment, entry into a profession, and the possibility of upward mobility beyond agriculture or casual labour. This makes education an investment, but not one with a guaranteed financial yield. A failed entrance attempt or an incomplete degree can leave the household with debt and lost time even when some learning has occurred. The economic history of education must therefore study expenditure, opportunity cost and risk together. In migration-dependent households, remittances from one sibling or parent may finance another member's education, linking Chapter 120's labour migration and Chapter 121's remittance flows directly to the education market. The result is an intergenerational portfolio: one migrant's earnings may pay for another household member's attempt to escape the same labour segment.

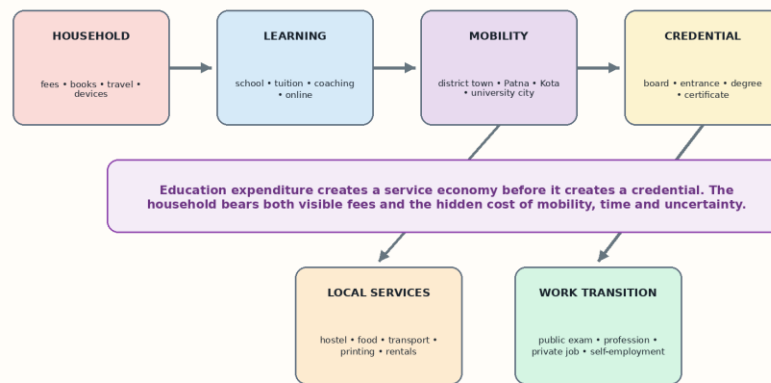
The education economy: from household spending to labour-market transition

Figure 484 — The education economy links household expenditure, learning services, mobility, credentials, local service demand and labour-market transition.

122.2 Schooling, tuition and the shadow education market

Private tuition is often described as an optional supplement to school, but in many competitive settings it becomes an expected second layer of schooling. The 'shadow education' concept is useful because tutoring expands alongside formal education while depending on the curriculum and examinations produced by that formal system. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the market ranges from a teacher tutoring a few neighbourhood pupils to organised batches, subject-specific centres, examination coaching and national online platforms. These forms have different cost structures and regulatory visibility. Local tuition can reduce travel and allow girls or younger students to remain close to home; large coaching centres can offer specialised faculty, testing systems and peer competition. The existence of tuition does not by itself prove school failure. Households may buy it for acceleration, competitive advantage or reassurance even when schools function adequately. Conversely, where school attendance, teacher availability or learning outcomes are weak, tutoring can become compensatory. Historical analysis therefore asks why tuition is purchased, who can afford it, how much time it absorbs, and whether it widens or narrows differences in learning and examination performance.

122.3 Learning gaps and demand for supplementation

ASER's recurring rural assessments are important because they separate school enrolment from foundational learning. The 2024 round again documents substantial state-level variation in reading and arithmetic, while UDISE+ records the formal school system's enrolment, institutions, teachers and transition indicators. Neither dataset is a direct measure of coaching demand, yet together they illuminate the conditions under which families may seek supplementation. A child can be enrolled but still require help with foundational skills; a high-performing child may seek coaching because entrance examinations reward speed and specialised problem solving not taught in the same form at school. Demand also grows around language transitions, especially when a child moves between Maithili, Angika, Hindi, English or Nepali-medium environments. Coaching centres then sell not only subject knowledge but confidence in the examination's linguistic and procedural conventions. This is why the education economy cannot be inferred from enrolment alone. The key relationship is between what institutions teach, what examinations reward, what households perceive as missing, and what private providers claim they can supply.

122.4 The transition from school to competitive examination

The economic importance of coaching rises sharply at transition points. Class X and XII board examinations, university admission, engineering and medical entrances, teacher recruitment, banking, railways, staff selection and state civil-service examinations all convert educational aspiration into episodic demand for specialised preparation. Each examination has a calendar, syllabus, application fee, test-centre geography and probability of success. Those parameters create markets. A new entrance format can rapidly shift demand from subject tuition to mock tests, reasoning classes or computer-based test practice. Delayed recruitment cycles can extend a student's stay in coaching and defer labour-market entry. When several examinations use overlapping syllabi, coaching centres can package preparation across them; when patterns diverge, students purchase multiple courses. This market is therefore partly produced by the architecture of assessment. The National Education Policy's stated aspiration to reduce excessive dependence on coaching is relevant, but as long as scarce seats and jobs are allocated through high-stakes ranking, families have an incentive to buy any preparation they believe improves relative performance.

122.5 Higher-education access and Bihar's GER gap

Higher education is a second structural driver of mobility. AISHE 2021–22 recorded Bihar's higher-education GER at 17.1 per cent, against an all-India GER of 28.4 per cent. The same survey shows that Bihar's participation had improved over preceding years, so the picture is not static decline; it is one of expansion from a comparatively low base. Institution density, subject availability, faculty, laboratory capacity and perceived quality matter alongside GER. A district may have colleges but not the professional or postgraduate course a student wants. Such mismatch turns higher education into a migration decision. Students move within Bihar toward universities and specialised colleges, to neighbouring states, and farther afield. The Bihar Student Credit Card was designed partly against this access gap by financing recognised higher education inside or outside Bihar. The economic effect is double-edged: credit can expand opportunity, but when study occurs elsewhere, a substantial share of educational spending—fees, rent, food and transport—also leaves the home district. Local institution-building can therefore be viewed as both social policy and regional economic policy.

122.6 District towns as intermediate education markets

District headquarters and larger towns form the middle layer between village schooling and metropolitan coaching. Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Samastipur, Saharsa, Begusarai, Bhagalpur and other centres combine colleges, schools, subject tuition, competitive-exam preparation, bookshops, photocopy services, hostels and transport nodes. Their importance is often missed when discussion jumps directly from 'village' to Patna or Kota. For many families, district-town mobility is a lower-cost compromise: the student can commute daily or return home frequently, parents can monitor accommodation, and fees may be lower than in a national hub. The district market also allows teachers from schools and colleges to participate in evening tuition, generating a secondary instructional labour market. Yet scale can be limited for highly specialised examinations, and students may still migrate onward after Class XII or after a first unsuccessful attempt. A regional education economy should therefore be mapped as a hierarchy of connected service centres rather than a simple opposition between local schooling and distant coaching.

122.7 Patna as a regional coaching metropolis

Patna occupies a distinctive position because it combines the functions of state capital, university city, administrative centre and coaching market. The current Patna Coaching Registration Portal, managed by the

district administration and education authorities, is direct evidence that coaching has become large enough to require a dedicated registration and compliance mechanism. Around the classroom is a dense service economy: hostels, paying-guest rooms, messes, libraries, stationery, photocopying, digital test centres, buses, e-rickshaws and rental housing. Contemporary press reporting in 2026 described Patna as a very large coaching hub and circulated estimates exceeding a thousand institutes and roughly two lakh incoming students annually. Those numbers should not be treated as an official census, but they capture the city's perceived scale. Patna's rise also reflects a localisation trend: families that once regarded Kota or Delhi as necessary may now choose a Bihar-based centre when faculty, online content and testing infrastructure are available closer to home. This does not eliminate outward migration; it changes the threshold at which households decide that distant relocation is worth the added cost.

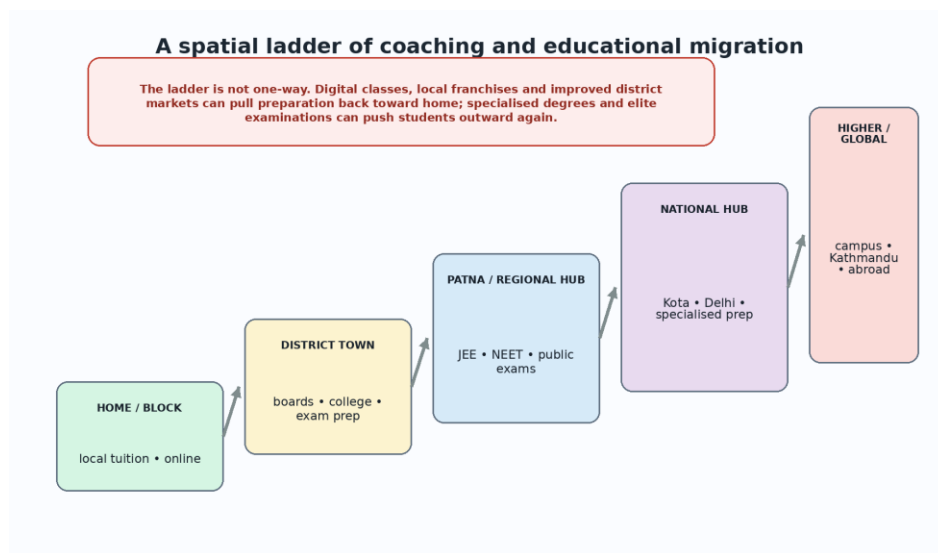


Figure 485 — Coaching and educational migration operate through a spatial ladder from home and district towns to regional, national and global study hubs.

122.8 Kota, Delhi and outward coaching migration

Kota became the emblem of India's residential coaching economy because examination preparation, hostel accommodation and city services grew into a single specialised ecosystem. Students from Bihar have long formed part of that inter-state flow. Yet the model has become more fluid. Reporting from 2024–26 describes falling Kota enrolment, rising concern over student welfare, stronger local coaching markets and the expansion of online or hybrid instruction. This does not mean Kota has ceased to matter. It means educational migration is increasingly a portfolio choice among home-based digital preparation, district coaching, Patna, Kota, Delhi NCR and other specialised centres. Families compare fees, faculty reputation, test results, safety, peer environment and the cost of living. A student may also move between modes—online in Class XI, Patna after Class XII, then Kota or Delhi for a repeat attempt. The correct historical unit is therefore the student's pathway, not the reputation of one city. Changes in platform technology and faculty mobility can redraw that pathway rapidly without changing the underlying scarcity of elite seats.

122.9 Engineering and medical entrance preparation

Engineering and medical entrances represent the most capital-intensive segment of the coaching market because preparation commonly begins before Class XII and can extend through repeat years. JEE and NEET require subject depth, test speed and sustained practice; the national ranking scale encourages students to compare themselves with a much larger peer group than their school cohort. Coaching providers respond

with long-term classroom programmes, crash courses, test series, residential packages and online batches. Households respond with early investment in science tuition, English-medium schooling or relocation. The economic risk is concentrated because the number of serious aspirants is much larger than the number of highly valued seats. Selection can transform a household's expectations, while non-selection may lead to a second attempt, a change of degree or a less preferred private institution. Public policy therefore needs both good preparation resources and credible alternatives. Free mock tests, better school science teaching, counselling on course options and transparent information on institutions can reduce the extent to which one entrance result becomes a binary judgement on years of expenditure.

122.10 Government-job examination economies

A different but equally important coaching economy surrounds government employment. BPSC, SSC, railways, banking, police, teaching and other recruitment examinations attract graduates and sometimes older candidates whose objective is not admission to education but entry into salaried work. Preparation can continue alongside college, after graduation or during periods of unemployment. The market therefore overlaps with Chapter 120's migration economy and Chapter 123's coming discussion of health only indirectly; more immediately, it links education spending with delayed labour-market entry. Coaching centres sell general studies, reasoning, mathematics, language, current affairs, test series and interview preparation. Libraries and reading rooms sell quiet study space by the month. When recruitment calendars are delayed or examinations are cancelled and repeated, household costs rise even without a change in coaching fees. The economic history of competitive examinations should thus include administrative reliability. Exam governance affects rental demand, coaching duration, youth labour supply and household expectations. A predictable calendar has economic value because it limits the period during which candidates must finance full-time preparation.

122.11 Repeat attempts, waiting time and sunk cost

Repeat attempts are a major hidden cost of the education economy. A fee receipt records the price of a course but not the value of a year spent preparing instead of working, apprenticing or completing another qualification. For a household with limited cash income, the repeat year may require continued remittances from a migrant parent, sale of assets or reduced spending on siblings. The candidate also accumulates emotional sunk cost: after investing one or two years, changing direction can feel like admitting failure even when another pathway would yield a better expected return. Coaching businesses can profit from this persistence, especially where success advertising foregrounds top ranks but does not show the full denominator of enrolled students. Good counselling should therefore include probability, alternative courses, age limits, attempt limits and labour-market options. Economically, the relevant metric is not simply 'cost per year' but expected lifetime cost across attempts. A regional evidence system that tracked repeaters separately would reveal how much youth time is absorbed by credential competition.

122.12 Hostels, paying guests and rental markets

Residential coaching turns education into a housing market. Hostels and paying-guest accommodation cluster near institutes, often in converted houses or purpose-built buildings. Students demand small rooms, shared sanitation, Wi-Fi, study tables, electricity backup and proximity to classes. Landlords respond to academic calendars rather than ordinary family tenancy cycles. Security deposits, advance rent and brokerage add to the upfront cost of migration. In periods of rapid expansion, neighbourhood rents and land values can rise; in downturns, vacancy can damage households that borrowed to construct student accommodation. Kota's recent experience shows the vulnerability of a city economy concentrated in one educational model.

Patna and district towns are more diversified, but local clusters can still depend heavily on student demand. Housing regulation, fire safety, occupancy standards and grievance mechanisms thus belong to education policy as well as urban policy. For women students, secure and supervised accommodation may determine whether a family permits migration at all.

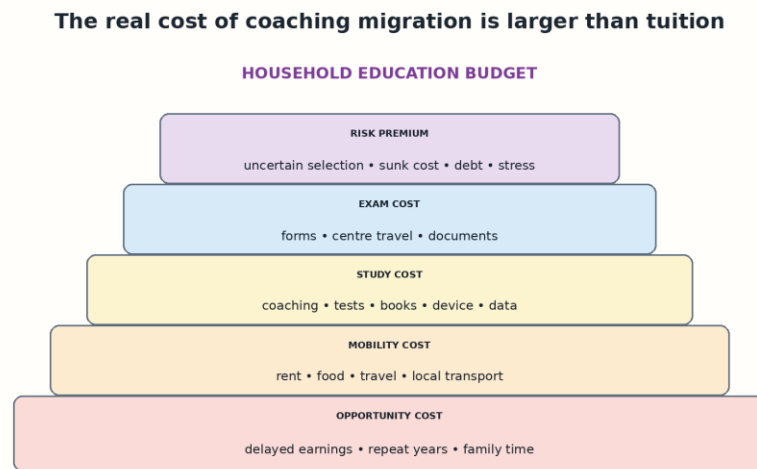


Figure 486 — The true household cost of coaching migration includes mobility, exam, opportunity and risk costs in addition to tuition.

122.13 Food, transport, printing and the coaching multiplier

The coaching multiplier extends far beyond rent. A student buys meals or mess subscriptions, snacks, drinking water, local transport, stationery, photocopies, printed notes, books, mobile data, laundry, medicines and occasional travel home. Coaching centres purchase commercial space, advertising, printing, software, security, cleaning and equipment. Teachers and support staff spend wages locally. These flows explain why education hubs can support dense small-business ecosystems even when they produce no physical commodity. The multiplier is strongest when services are locally supplied; it leaks outward when national chains, online platforms or distant landlords capture a larger share. Digitalisation can therefore redistribute rather than simply reduce the education economy. A recorded lecture purchased from a national platform may save hostel rent but redirect fee income away from the district; a local test centre using national content may retain some service spending. The regional question is which parts of the education value chain can be supplied competitively within Mithila, Vajji and Anga without sacrificing educational quality.

122.14 Gender, mobility and the geography of safety

Educational mobility is gendered because the same distance carries different perceived risks and social constraints. Families may be willing to send sons to a distant hostel while requiring daughters to commute, live with relatives or choose a closer college. Safe transport, women-only accommodation, lighting, sanitation, grievance systems and credible institutional supervision therefore change the effective supply of education for women. This means a new college or coaching centre can have a larger impact than its enrolment capacity suggests if it reduces the mobility barrier faced by female students. Bihar's recent rise in female higher-education participation should be interpreted alongside these spatial conditions, not only as a change in aspiration. Digital classes can widen access for students unable to migrate, but home-based study may also reproduce unequal domestic workloads or limited privacy. A gender-sensitive education economy

asks who controls travel, devices, study time and money. It also measures dropout or course choice after marriage and family responsibilities rather than assuming admission itself equals sustained access.

122.15 Caste, class and unequal ability to buy preparation

Class and caste inequalities enter the coaching market through purchasing power, school quality, social networks and information. A wealthy household can buy early tutoring, English-medium schooling, multiple attempts, private accommodation and travel to several entrance tests. A low-income household may rely on free online material, shared books, local tuition and a single attempt. Scholarships and reservations can alter the expected return to preparation, but they do not remove the upfront cost of study. Social networks also matter: families with graduates or public employees may know which examinations to target, how to fill forms and which institutions are credible. First-generation learners face higher information costs and may be more vulnerable to misleading advertising. The result is not a simple story in which coaching always reproduces inequality. Low-cost group tuition, public libraries, scholarships and digital resources can democratise preparation. The distributional question is which layer of the market students can reach and whether public support arrives before families incur high-cost debt or abandon study.

122.16 Scholarships and the Bihar Student Credit Card

The Bihar Student Credit Card is one of the state's most important attempts to relax the financing constraint on higher education. The scheme, launched in 2016, was designed for Bihar residents who had passed Class XII and entered recognised higher-education courses, including institutions outside the state. The original guideline provided state support up to a four-lakh-rupee education-loan limit, and the current MNSSBY system continues to operate a dedicated application, verification and disbursement architecture. Credit is economically different from a scholarship because it shifts payment across time rather than eliminating cost. Its value therefore depends on course quality, completion and later earnings. Verification of institutions is crucial where the education market contains weak or misleading providers. For regional analysis, BSCC data could reveal which districts send students outward, which courses attract borrowing and whether financed students return. Public finance can reduce liquidity barriers, but it cannot by itself solve low-quality institutions or a weak labour-market return on credentials.

122.17 Digital coaching and the partial return home

Online coaching altered the geography of preparation. Recorded lectures, live classes, digital test series and messaging groups allow a student in a village or small town to access faculty once concentrated in Kota, Delhi or Patna. The pandemic accelerated this infrastructure, but the longer-term significance lies in hybridisation: students may learn content online while using a local library, doubt centre or test series. This can reduce migration costs and permit students—especially women or lower-income candidates—to remain at home longer. Yet digital coaching is not costless. It requires a reliable device, electricity, data, quiet study space and the ability to manage attention without a residential peer environment. Platform subscriptions may also produce lock-in, and large online classes can make individual feedback difficult. The likely future is therefore not 'online replaces coaching cities' but a layered market in which digital content, local mentors and periodic physical testing are combined. This creates opportunities for district towns to retain more education spending while importing specialised teaching virtually.

122.18 Smartphones, data and platform dependence

Smartphones have become part of the education capital stock of households. A device used for video lectures, PDFs, forms, admit cards, payment and test practice is no longer merely a consumer durable. The same device, however, can be shared among siblings, constrained by data cost, damaged, or unavailable during parental work. Network quality and electricity determine whether digital access is usable for long live classes. Platform design also matters for accessibility: captions, playback speed, low-bandwidth downloads, screen-reader compatibility and multilingual interfaces can decide who benefits. In a multilingual region, students may study concepts in Maithili or Angika explanation, read Hindi notes and sit an English or Hindi examination. Digital platforms can bridge these language layers more cheaply than printed courses, but only if content exists. Public digital education policy should therefore be evaluated not by app availability alone but by actual household access, device ownership, usage patterns and learning support. The economic burden includes replacement devices and recurring connectivity, which should be counted alongside fees and books.

122.19 Teachers, star faculty and instructional labour markets

Coaching produces its own labour market for teachers. Reputation can attach to individual faculty rather than institutions, especially in mathematics, physics, chemistry, biology, reasoning and current affairs. Successful teachers may move between cities, establish independent brands, join national platforms or negotiate revenue-sharing arrangements. This 'star faculty' system raises wages for scarce instructional talent but can also destabilise institutes when teachers leave with student followings. Below the star level is a much larger workforce of junior faculty, doubt-solvers, content writers, test setters, counsellors, office staff and digital production workers. Some combine coaching with school or college teaching; others depend entirely on private education. The regional economic opportunity is therefore not only to keep students at home but to create credible instructional careers locally. Teacher quality, however, is difficult for families to observe before purchase. Demonstration classes, transparent qualifications and audited result claims can reduce information asymmetry more effectively than celebrity advertising alone.

122.20 Advertising, rankings and information asymmetry

Advertising is central to the coaching business because the product is a probability: no provider can guarantee selection in a genuinely competitive examination. Institutes therefore market past ranks, faculty names, scholarship tests and claims about selection ratios. The most important denominator—the number of students from whom successful ranks emerged—may be unclear. High-performing students can also receive scholarships, so headline results do not necessarily measure the experience of the median fee-paying student. This is a classic information-asymmetry problem. Families need comparable data on fees, refund terms, batch size, faculty continuity, attendance, result definitions and grievance procedures. Consumer-protection rules against misleading advertisements are therefore part of education regulation. A historical archive of coaching advertisements would itself be valuable evidence, showing how aspiration, professions and claims of merit changed over time. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, local-language advertising and social-media testimonials deserve preservation because they document how the education market represents mobility to first-generation aspirants.

122.21 Regulation under the Bihar Coaching Act

Bihar recognised the regulatory problem early through the Bihar Coaching Institute (Control and Regulation) Act, 2010. The Act created a legal basis for registration and control of coaching institutions

rather than leaving them entirely within ordinary commercial regulation. Patna's current online registration portal makes this regulatory architecture visible in practice: institutes submit ownership, address, staff and infrastructure information, and the portal links registration with compliance. The existence of law does not prove complete coverage or enforcement. Small tutors, informal batches and rapidly changing online providers may sit partly outside conventional premises-based registration. Regulation must also avoid raising compliance costs so high that only large chains survive. The appropriate goal is a minimum floor of transparency, safety and accountability: identifiable management, basic infrastructure, truthful advertising, clear fees, records, grievance procedures and inspection where necessary. Because coaching spans education, commerce, housing and youth welfare, effective enforcement requires coordination across departments rather than a single licensing form.

122.22 The 2024 national coaching guidelines

The Union Ministry of Education's January 2024 Guidelines for Regulation of Coaching Centers provide a national model for states and union territories. They address registration, fees, infrastructure, conduct, records, complaints, penalties and student well-being. The guidelines explicitly recognise that unregulated coaching has become a national policy problem and cite existing state frameworks, including Bihar's 2010 Act. Their significance for the regional economy is that regulation is moving from a narrow question of business registration toward the quality of the student experience. Transparent fee and refund rules reduce household financial risk; infrastructure requirements affect the capital cost of centres; counselling provisions add a welfare function; and restrictions on misleading claims can change marketing. Since education is on the concurrent list, implementation depends on state legal and administrative action. Historical assessment should therefore distinguish the existence of model guidelines from actual local compliance. The policy trajectory is clear, but enforcement outcomes require district-level evidence.

122.23 Student welfare, stress and counselling

Student welfare is economically relevant because extreme stress can destroy the very human capital households are trying to build. Residential coaching concentrates adolescents and young adults in competitive environments away from family support. The national guidelines encourage counselling, psychological support, realistic career guidance and peer interaction; the Ministry's later student mental-health resources continue this direction. Welfare should not be reduced to crisis response. Predictable timetables, reasonable batch hours, sleep, nutrition, exercise, access to healthcare, safe accommodation and respectful teaching all affect learning productivity. Parents also need realistic information about selection probabilities and alternatives. A student who changes course after informed counselling has not necessarily 'wasted' prior education. By contrast, a system that treats one exam as the only honourable outcome can prolong costly repeat cycles. Measuring education quality should therefore include completion, well-being and pathway flexibility, not only ranks. This is especially important for first-generation families for whom the financial stakes of residential coaching are high and the social meaning of failure can be severe.

122.24 Universities, colleges and the local education economy

Universities and colleges anchor a different education economy from coaching centres. They employ teachers and staff, rent housing, purchase goods, draw students into transport and retail markets, organise conferences and create demand for printing, laboratories, libraries and cultural services. A university town also produces less visible benefits: alumni networks, professional services, bookstores, student politics, artistic activity and a market for skilled landlords and food providers. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, institutions in Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur and neighbouring centres are therefore regional economic assets even

when their direct budgets are modest relative to state expenditure. Their ability to retain students depends on course range and perceived quality. Expansion that merely multiplies affiliated seats without faculty, laboratories or reliable examinations can fail to reduce outward migration. The policy objective should be to deepen selected regional campuses so that students can obtain credible postgraduate, technical and professional education closer to home while preserving mobility for specialised study that genuinely requires a larger centre.

122.25 Madhesh Province and higher-education access

Madhesh Province provides a useful cross-border comparison because educational mobility operates within a different federal and university system but faces similar spatial inequalities. Nepal's University Grants Commission report for 2023/24 records substantial enrolment in Madhesh across Tribhuvan University and other university systems, yet Bagmati remains the dominant concentration of higher-education enrolment. This geography encourages movement toward Kathmandu and other centres for specialised courses. Madhesh towns, including Janakpur, also host campuses, schools, technical institutions, private tuition and entrance preparation, creating local education-service economies. The India–Nepal border widens the choice set: students may consider recognised institutions in either country depending on course, cost, language and professional regulation. Cross-border educational history should therefore not assume that national borders define educational markets neatly. Families in a culturally continuous region may compare travel time and institutional reputation more strongly than national location, while visa, NOC, equivalence and professional licensing rules still shape the final decision.

122.26 Private tuition and education spending in Nepal

Nepal Living Standards Survey IV 2022/23 shows why private tuition must be treated as a measurable household expense rather than an anecdotal practice. The survey's education module records tuition, admission and examination charges, uniforms, books, transportation, private tuition and snacks. Nationally, average per-capita educational expenditure was much higher in institutional private schools than in community government schools; private tuition appeared as a separate expenditure category across school types. These are Nepal-wide averages, not Madhesh-specific coaching fees, but the instrument itself demonstrates how household surveys can capture the shadow education market. The same approach would improve Bihar research, where private tutoring is often discussed without consistent household expenditure data. For cross-border comparison, definitions matter: a small local tutor and a residential entrance-coaching package are both 'private supplementary education' but operate at radically different scales. Future Madhesh-specific analysis should therefore separate routine subject tuition, bridge courses, entrance coaching and residential migration.

122.27 Cross-border and overseas study migration

Educational migration from Madhesh extends beyond Kathmandu. Nepal's Ministry of Education and Sports operates a No Objection Certificate system for citizens going abroad for higher study, including study in India; medical study abroad also requires the relevant eligibility process. The NOC is therefore an administrative trace of outward education demand, although it does not by itself show completion, return or long-term migration. For families in Madhesh, India can be both a nearby education market and a foreign jurisdiction requiring documentation. At the same time, students from the Indian side may enter Nepalese medical or other institutions subject to admission and professional rules. Overseas destinations farther afield turn education into a foreign-exchange and migration decision, with consultancy fees, language tests and documentation creating additional service markets. The educational-economy chain thus extends from a

village tutor to global student mobility. Each step raises the financial stake and increases the importance of verified institutional information.

122.28 Education, credentials and labour-market mismatch

A credential has economic value only through the opportunities to which it provides access. When degree supply grows faster than suitable employment, students may respond by purchasing more credentials: postgraduate degrees, computer certificates, teacher eligibility, civil-service coaching or repeated entrance preparation. This can create a credential treadmill in which education expenditure rises without a proportionate increase in productivity or earnings. The correct response is not to devalue education but to connect it more closely to labour-market information, apprenticeships, professional standards and local enterprise. Universities should publish completion and placement data carefully, while government recruitment should be predictable enough that graduates can plan. Coaching centres should not be allowed to imply that every candidate is one course away from a secure job. For PART XIII, the key economic question is whether the education system expands the set of viable livelihoods within the region or simply prepares young people to leave. Mobility can be beneficial, but a healthy regional economy should also generate skilled work that makes return or local retention plausible.

122.29 Building a regional education-economy evidence system

A serious regional education-economy evidence system would link datasets that are currently separate. UDISE+ can describe schools; ASER can illuminate foundational learning; AISHE can map higher education; coaching-registration records can identify formal providers; scholarship and Student Credit Card systems can trace public financing; examination bodies can supply applications and results; household surveys can record private tuition and migration; and urban data can measure hostel rents, transport and local business. The missing unit is the student pathway. A longitudinal panel should record schooling history, tutoring, examination attempts, migration episodes, expenditure, debt, digital access, course completion and employment. Gender, caste, income and location must be retained so averages do not conceal exclusion. On the Nepal side, UGC, CEHRD, NLSS and NOC data can be linked conceptually even where microdata cannot be merged directly. Such a system would allow policy to distinguish three problems that are often conflated: inadequate local educational capacity, excessive household cost, and weak labour-market returns.

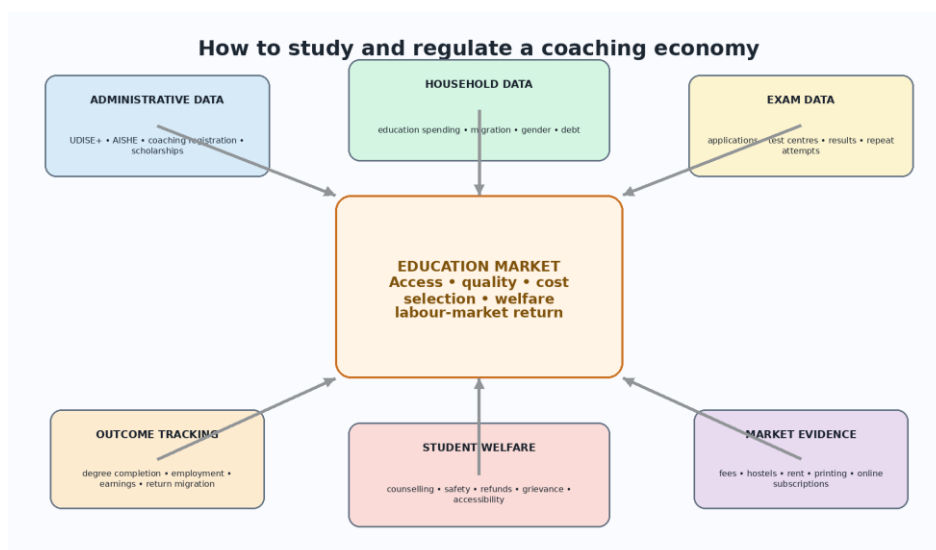


Figure 487 — Studying and regulating the coaching economy requires administrative, household, examination, market, welfare and outcome evidence.

122.30 From coaching migration to a stronger local education ecosystem

The goal is not to abolish coaching or educational migration. Specialised teaching, peer competition and mobility can create genuine opportunities. The problem arises when households must migrate for services that could be delivered locally at comparable quality, when fees and results are opaque, or when a single high-stakes examination monopolises youth time. A stronger local ecosystem would combine better schools, credible district colleges, selected regional centres of excellence, public libraries and test facilities, regulated coaching, safe hostels, multilingual digital content, scholarships and credit, and transparent career information. Hybrid teaching allows scarce faculty to reach more towns without requiring every student to relocate. Reliable examinations reduce repeat-year costs. Stronger universities retain some spending and skilled employment locally. Chapter 122 therefore shows that education is already a major service economy within Mithila, Vajji and Anga; the policy choice is whether that economy remains mainly an extraction of household savings into distant markets or becomes a more balanced system of local capability, selective mobility and credible transition into work.

Table 122.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing the education economy and coaching migration

Evidence source	What it establishes	Economic use	Main limitation
UDISE+ school data	schools, enrolment, teachers, transitions	size and structure of formal school system	does not measure private coaching expenditure
ASER household assessment	foundational reading and arithmetic	context for supplementary-learning demand	rural sample; not an institute census
AISHE 2021–22	higher-education enrolment and GER	access gap and institution geography	latest published GER baseline is dated
Coaching registration records	formal centres and compliance information	market mapping and regulation	informal tutors and online providers may be missed
Exam-board / recruiting data	applications, centres, results, attempts	demand cycles and selection probability	definitions vary across examinations
Student Credit Card / scholarships	publicly supported education finance	credit constraint and outward study	financing does not prove course quality or completion
Household expenditure survey	fees, tuition, transport, devices, debt	true household education cost	causal link to outcomes needs panel data
Hostel / rental market evidence	student housing and local service demand	education multiplier in towns	informal rentals may be unrecorded
UGC Nepal / NLSS / NOC	Madhesh enrolment, education spending, outward study	cross-border comparison and migration	systems use different definitions and reference periods
Longitudinal student panel	pathway from school to coaching to work	return on educational investment	expensive and currently scarce

Chapter 123 — Health Economy

Chapter 123 treats health as an economy without reducing it to a market. Illness and care redistribute time, money and labour across households, public facilities, private clinics, pharmacies, diagnostic centres, transport providers, insurers, medical colleges and governments. A district hospital is simultaneously a welfare institution, a large workplace, a purchaser of goods and services, and a node in a wider referral geography. A village pharmacy may be the quickest point of access but also a source of unrecorded expenditure and treatment without full diagnosis. A medical college can retain skilled employment in a regional city, while a household facing a serious illness may sell assets, borrow, postpone schooling or send a patient to Patna, Delhi or Kathmandu. The health economy of Mithila, Vajji and Anga therefore has to be reconstructed from care pathways, finance, workforce, transport and household-risk evidence together.

The evidence is dated and uneven. Bihar's NFHS-5 fieldwork was conducted in 2019–20 and recorded 76.2 per cent institutional births, with 56.9 per cent of births in public facilities; it also reported average out-of-pocket expenditure of Rs 2,848 per delivery in a public facility. These indicators are useful historical baselines, not 2026 point estimates. At the national level, India's National Health Accounts for 2021–22 estimated household out-of-pocket expenditure at 39.4 per cent of total health expenditure, down from earlier levels as government expenditure increased. Nepal's National Health Accounts for 2019/20 still recorded household out-of-pocket payment at 54.2 per cent of current health expenditure. The figures cannot be directly mapped onto Mithila, Vajji, Anga or Madhesh without subregional data, but they show why financial protection remains central to any history of the contemporary health economy.

The chapter also distinguishes infrastructure from effective access. Bihar's current public-health planning operates through the National Health Mission, Indian Public Health Standards, Ayushman Arogya Mandirs, referral transport, disease programmes and a network of district, sub-district and primary facilities. Yet a building, sanctioned post or registered hospital does not prove that medicines, diagnostics, specialists or respectful care were available when a patient arrived. On the Nepal side, constitutional commitments to basic health services, provincial and local responsibilities, and expanding hospital systems coexist with household payments and substantial mobility for specialist care. The proper unit of analysis is therefore the pathway from illness to decision, first contact, referral, treatment, payment and recovery—not a simple count of facilities.

123.1 Health as welfare, market and productive infrastructure

Health has a double economic character. Better health protects survival and dignity, but it also preserves labour time, school attendance, household care capacity and future earnings. Conversely, the treatment of illness generates employment and commercial demand. Hospitals buy food, linen, oxygen, equipment, software, security and maintenance; visitors rent rooms, use transport and purchase meals; doctors and technicians create residential demand in towns. None of this means that more illness is economically desirable. It means that health institutions shape local economies while their social objective remains to prevent avoidable disease and protect households from catastrophic loss. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, where household livelihoods often combine farming, migration earnings and informal work, a serious health shock can destabilise several income streams at once. The health economy must therefore be evaluated by both the services it produces and the risk it removes.

The health economy: care, finance and local livelihoods

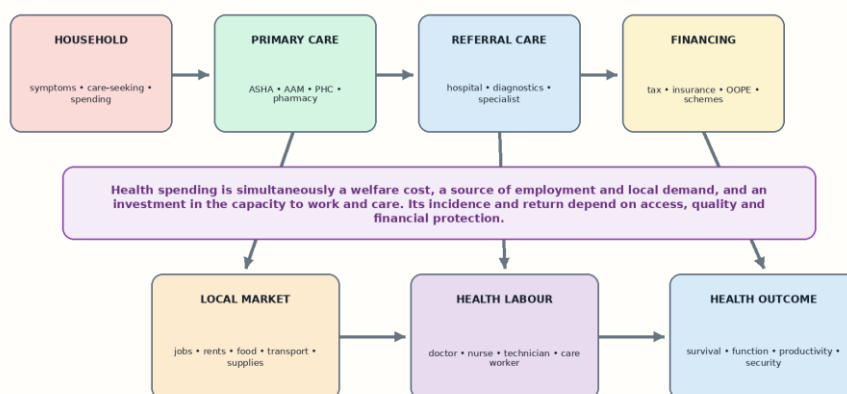


Figure 488 — The health economy circulates household resources through care, financing, local markets, health labour and productive health outcomes.

123.2 The household as the first health institution

Most episodes of illness begin outside a formal facility. Families observe symptoms, consult relatives, reuse previous prescriptions, visit a medicine shop, call a known practitioner or delay treatment while deciding whether the condition justifies travel and expense. Women frequently provide unpaid nursing, nutrition, bathing, medicine management and accompaniment. These decisions constitute a household health economy before any hospital bill appears. Distance to care, cash on hand, control over household resources, prior experience, perceived provider quality and the expected loss of a day's wage all influence the first step. Household-level data are therefore indispensable. Facility statistics can count consultations, but they cannot by themselves reveal untreated illness, delayed care, caregiver burden or money borrowed before a patient reaches the register.

123.3 Public primary care and Ayushman Arogya Mandirs

The expansion of comprehensive primary care through Health and Wellness Centres, now Ayushman Arogya Mandirs, seeks to move screening, essential drugs and first-contact management closer to households. In economic terms, effective primary care can lower transport costs, reduce unnecessary specialist visits, detect hypertension or diabetes before costly complications, and stabilise medicine demand. But the benefit depends on reliable staffing, opening hours, drug availability, referral links and public trust. A nearby facility that repeatedly lacks medicines may shift the true cost back to private pharmacies and diagnostic centres. For regional history, the useful evidence is not simply the number of centres upgraded but the bundle of services actually delivered and the extent to which care moved closer to villages and small towns.

123.4 ASHA, ANM and the community health workforce

Bihar's ASHA workers, ANMs, Community Health Officers and other frontline staff connect households to immunisation, antenatal care, institutional delivery, tuberculosis follow-up, family planning and increasingly non-communicable disease screening. Their work has an economic dimension often hidden by the word 'volunteer' or by programme-based incentives. They spend time, travel, maintain records, mobilise beneficiaries and mediate between bureaucratic rules and family circumstances. Incentive design influences which tasks are prioritised and how predictable earnings are. On the Nepal side, Female

Community Health Volunteers have played analogous bridging roles. A complete health-economy account must therefore include community health labour, much of it performed by women, rather than counting only salaried doctors and hospital staff.

123.5 PHCs, CHCs and the economics of first referral

Primary Health Centres and Community Health Centres are meant to resolve common conditions and serve as referral steps before district or tertiary hospitals. Their economic performance is shaped by staffing, diagnostics, ambulance availability, drug stocks and the credibility of referral. When a centre cannot provide a test or specialist, the household may pay twice: first for the failed visit and again for travel and consultation elsewhere. Bypassing can then become rational even when it overloads higher-level hospitals. IPHS standards are useful benchmarks because they define expected service capacity, but compliance scores and sanctioned infrastructure must be separated from observed patient experience. The history of referral is therefore also a history of transaction costs, uncertainty and trust.

123.6 District hospitals as regional economic anchors

District hospitals are among the largest stable public institutions in many regional towns. Beyond inpatient and outpatient care, they create demand for nurses, technicians, sanitation workers, cooks, drivers, security staff, suppliers and rented accommodation. They also anchor blood services, emergency care, maternal services and referrals from surrounding blocks. Their economic reach is visible in the ecosystem of pharmacies, tea shops, diagnostic centres, lodges and transport around hospital gates. Yet congestion can impose costs: long queues, repeated visits and informal expenditure transfer time from patients and caregivers to the health system. Measuring a district hospital only by beds therefore misses its wider role as both public infrastructure and an urban labour-market node.

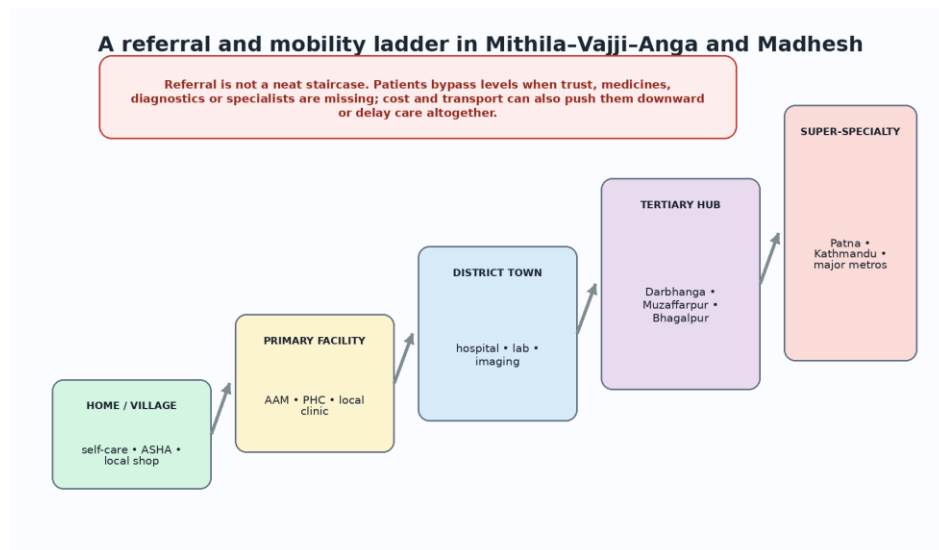


Figure 489 — Health access operates through a referral and mobility ladder, with bypassing when lower levels lack trusted services or diagnostics.

123.7 Medical colleges and tertiary-care hubs

Tertiary institutions such as Darbhanga Medical College, Sri Krishna Medical College in Muzaffarpur and Jawaharlal Nehru Medical College in Bhagalpur anchor specialist-care economies within the three regions, while Patna remains a major super-specialty destination. Medical colleges combine treatment with education, residency, laboratories, procurement and research. Their presence can retain skilled workers and

support specialist private practice in the surrounding city. At the same time, referral to distant tertiary care can generate large travel and lodging costs for rural households. The expansion or upgrading of medical colleges should therefore be evaluated not only by sanctioned seats or construction expenditure but by whether specialist capacity becomes more geographically distributed and whether referral journeys shorten.

123.8 Private clinics, nursing homes and hospital markets

Private provision ranges from solo clinics and maternity homes to multispecialty hospitals. It can add capacity, flexible hours, specialist access and diagnostic speed where public systems are constrained. It can also fragment records, expose households to variable pricing and create incentives for unnecessary tests or procedures when payment is fee-for-service. NFHS-5's Bihar data show an especially large public-private difference in caesarean delivery: among births in facilities, the reported caesarean share was far higher in private than public facilities. That difference should prompt investigation rather than an automatic conclusion of either overuse or underuse, because case mix, referral and quality also matter. Regulation requires reliable clinical-establishment data, price transparency and outcome monitoring.

123.9 Pharmacies and medicine retail

Medicine shops are among the most spatially accessible parts of the health economy. They reduce search costs and supply both prescriptions and self-medication, but the boundary between dispensing and diagnosis can blur where formal clinicians are scarce. Pharmaceutical expenditure is also a major component of household out-of-pocket spending in South Asia. Generic-drug initiatives and free-drug programmes attempt to reduce this burden, yet stock-outs can push patients back to retail markets. The distribution chain—from wholesaler to district town to neighbourhood shop—therefore matters as much as manufacturing. For rural households, the effective price of a medicine includes the chance that it is locally available, the travel needed to find it and whether a diagnostic test or follow-up visit is required to obtain it.

123.10 Diagnostics, imaging and laboratory economies

Diagnostics have become a distinct urban and semi-urban service economy. Pathology laboratories, ultrasound, X-ray, CT and other imaging reduce uncertainty and enable modern clinical decision-making, but they also add cost and create referral relationships between providers and centres. Where public facilities lack working equipment or reagents, households may be sent outside for tests even when the consultation itself is nominally free. The density of laboratories around district hospitals is therefore evidence of both service expansion and possible gaps inside public institutions. Quality assurance matters because a cheap but inaccurate test can generate further expenditure and clinical harm. Regional research should map who owns diagnostic capacity, where it is located, what is accredited and how prices vary across the referral ladder.

123.11 Maternal care and childbirth expenditure

Maternal care provides one of the clearest examples of how public spending and household spending interact. Bihar's NFHS-5 (2019–20) recorded 76.2 per cent institutional births and 56.9 per cent of births in public facilities, while average reported out-of-pocket expenditure per delivery in a public facility was Rs 2,848. The improvement in institutional delivery over NFHS-4 reflects the long reach of maternal-health programmes, but public delivery is not costless to households: medicines bought outside, transport, food, diagnostics and informal payments may still occur. Janani Suraksha Yojana, referral transport and free maternity entitlements should therefore be analysed as a package intended to reduce both clinical risk and the financial threshold for seeking institutional care.

123.12 Child health, immunisation and nutrition services

Child health and nutrition connect the health economy to schools, anganwadi centres, immunisation sessions and household food systems. Vaccination is a public service whose economic return appears later through avoided illness, disability and caregiver time. Nutrition interventions intersect with ICDS, maternal care, anaemia control and food security rather than belonging to the health department alone. In areas affected by poverty and recurrent flooding, repeated infection and poor diets can reinforce each other. Economic analysis should therefore track the cost of prevention as well as treatment. A rupee spent on cold-chain reliability, growth monitoring or early treatment does not look like hospital revenue, but it can avert much larger household and public costs downstream.

123.13 Tuberculosis, infectious disease and programme economies

Tuberculosis, kala-azar, malaria and other infectious diseases create programme-specific economies of screening, diagnostics, medicines, surveillance and field work. Bihar's current NHM planning continues to fund disease-control programmes while also integrating many services into primary care. Public procurement can lower unit costs when it works, but stock management and adherence support remain critical. Disease programmes also reveal the importance of data: a notified case enters a treatment and reporting pathway, while an undiagnosed or privately treated case may be invisible to public statistics. For historians of the contemporary economy, the decline of one disease or rise of another changes labour demand, diagnostic markets and the geography of public-health expenditure.

123.14 Floods, vector-borne disease and seasonal demand

The floodplains of north Bihar and the lowlands of Madhesh produce seasonal health risks that are inseparable from infrastructure. Floods contaminate water, disrupt routine treatment, damage facilities, isolate villages and increase demand for diarrhoeal disease, skin infection and vector control. Heat waves and changing rainfall patterns add further stress. Health spending during a disaster therefore includes boats, mobile teams, chlorine, temporary shelters, cold-chain protection, ambulance rerouting and replacement of lost medicines. These are not exceptional add-ons to the economy; in hazard-prone districts they are recurring preparedness costs. Climate-resilient health systems need elevated or protected infrastructure, redundant supply routes and continuity plans for people dependent on dialysis, insulin or other regular treatment.

123.15 Snakebite, emergency medicine and time-critical access

Snakebite illustrates the economics of time-critical rural emergency care. The clinical value of antivenom depends on a chain that includes recognition, transport, facility readiness, trained staff and supportive care. A household can lose crucial hours moving from an informal provider to a centre without antivenom and then to a higher hospital. The financial cost of each stage is secondary to the mortality risk, but it still shapes behaviour. Bihar's NHM planning now explicitly includes prevention, control and management of snakebite, reflecting growing policy attention. A regional strategy must map bite incidence, antivenom stocks, ambulance travel times and referral capacity rather than assuming that nominal district-level availability translates into village-level security.

123.16 Non-communicable disease and chronic-care markets

As infectious-disease mortality falls and populations age, hypertension, diabetes, cardiovascular disease, cancer and chronic respiratory conditions generate repeated rather than one-time expenditure. Chronic care

changes the geography of demand: patients need regular medicines, laboratory monitoring and periodic specialist review close enough to sustain adherence. The Ayushman Arogya Mandir model aims to expand screening and follow-up at primary level, while private laboratories and pharmacies also grow with chronic disease. The economic danger is cumulative small spending that never appears as a single catastrophic hospital bill but steadily absorbs household income. Effective NCD care therefore depends on continuity, affordable medicines and records that follow the patient across levels of care.

123.17 Ageing, disability and long-term care

Ageing creates demand for geriatric medicine, rehabilitation, hearing and vision services, assistive devices and long-term help with daily living. Much of this work remains unpaid within families, disproportionately performed by women or by relatives who withdraw from paid employment. Migration can intensify the problem when adult children live far away, while remittances may finance paid attendants or private treatment. Disability likewise has both medical and economic dimensions: inaccessible transport or workplaces can convert an impairment into exclusion from earnings. Health-economy analysis must therefore include social care, rehabilitation and accessibility rather than ending at the hospital discharge gate.

123.18 Mental health and the hidden care economy

Mental health is a large but poorly measured component of the regional care economy. Treatment may involve psychiatry, counselling, medicines, school support, workplace accommodation and long periods of unpaid family supervision. Stigma and shortages of specialists can delay formal care, producing an apparent low demand that should not be mistaken for low need. Student stress, migration separation, indebtedness, disaster and chronic illness all have mental-health dimensions. The National Mental Health Programme and district-level services provide an institutional frame, but workforce and access remain uneven. Economic measurement should include lost work and caregiver time as well as direct treatment expenditure; otherwise mental illness remains statistically cheap only because much of its cost is hidden in households.

123.19 Health shocks, debt and asset erosion

A health shock can transform a household balance sheet quickly. Direct costs include consultation, tests, medicines and procedures; indirect costs include wage loss, caregiver time, transport and food; longer-term costs include disability, interrupted schooling and reduced migration earnings. Households may finance these costs from savings, remittances, borrowing, sale of livestock or land, or postponed consumption. National Health Accounts show declining out-of-pocket shares in India, but the risk of catastrophic spending remains concentrated among households requiring hospitalisation or long-term medicines. A regional history of poverty therefore cannot separate health from debt. It should ask not only how much households spend, but what they give up or borrow to make the payment.

The household cost of illness extends beyond the hospital bill

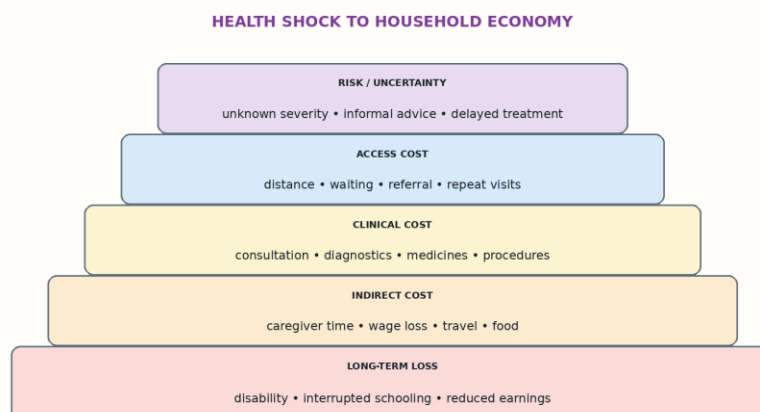


Figure 490 — A health shock imposes indirect, access and long-term household costs in addition to the visible clinical bill.

123.20 Insurance, PM-JAY and public purchasing

Publicly financed insurance and purchasing seek to separate access to hospital care from immediate household cash. Ayushman Bharat PM-JAY and related state arrangements purchase eligible inpatient packages from empanelled public and private hospitals, creating a new flow of claims, audits and reimbursement. Economically, this can expand effective demand and reduce catastrophic bills; administratively, it can also generate incentives for coding, patient selection or unnecessary admission if oversight is weak. Insurance is therefore not equivalent to universal access. Patients still need nearby empanelled capacity, accurate eligibility, transport and post-discharge medicines. Claims data are valuable evidence because they reveal treated conditions and provider geography, but they exclude services outside covered packages and people who never reach an empanelled hospital.

123.21 Transport, referral and medical travel

Transport converts nominal service availability into actual access. Ambulances, private vehicles, trains, buses and hired cars connect villages to district hospitals and tertiary centres. The true cost of referral includes accompanying relatives, lodging, meals and lost wages. A patient who travels from Saharsa or Madhubani to Darbhanga or Patna, or from a Madhesh district to Janakpur or Kathmandu, participates in a medical-mobility economy extending beyond the hospital itself. Better roads can reduce travel time, but congestion and river crossings still matter. The health sector therefore has a direct stake in Chapter 124's transport infrastructure: connectivity changes the effective radius of every hospital and the commercial catchment of every diagnostic centre.

123.22 Cross-border care between north Bihar and Madhesh

The India–Nepal border is porous to family, trade and health mobility. Residents of Madhesh may seek diagnostics, medicines or specialist consultation in north Bihar, while Indian patients may use facilities or pharmacies across the border depending on proximity, price and trust. Janakpur functions as a provincial health centre, but Kathmandu remains important for advanced care; on the Indian side Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Patna and other cities form a hierarchy of destinations. These flows are difficult to count because many crossings do not appear in formal medical-travel statistics. Research should therefore combine

hospital address records, pharmacy markets, transport routes and household interviews while respecting differences in insurance eligibility and national regulatory systems.

123.23 Medical education as a regional labour market

Medical education is part of the health economy because it produces both services and careers. Government and private medical, nursing, paramedical and allied-health institutions charge fees, employ faculty, rent accommodation to students and create clinical training demand. Expansion can reduce regional shortages only if graduates enter and remain in needed locations. Bihar has used contractual and service-linked policies to address rural staffing, while medical colleges in Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur and Bhagalpur anchor local professional labour markets. The economic question is not simply the number of seats but the full pipeline from admission to training quality, internship, specialist education, recruitment and retention.

123.24 Nurses, technicians and the migration of health workers

Health workers themselves are mobile. Nurses and technicians may move from village to district town, from Bihar or Nepal to metropolitan hospitals, or overseas for higher wages. Migration can raise household income and generate remittances, but it can also remove experienced staff from facilities that trained them. Policy therefore faces a retention problem similar to other skilled sectors but with direct effects on patient safety. Salary, housing, schooling for children, workload, promotion, professional respect and continuing education all influence whether a worker accepts a rural post. Vacancy statistics capture only one part of this labour market; absenteeism, temporary contracts and multi-job practice also shape effective availability.

123.25 Procurement, medicines and supply-chain infrastructure

A modern health system is a procurement and logistics network. Vaccines require cold chains; hospitals need oxygen, reagents, surgical supplies, linen, food and maintenance; pharmacies depend on wholesalers and reliable transport. Centralised procurement can reduce prices and improve standardisation, but delays or inaccurate demand forecasts create stock-outs. Public tenders and NHM programme implementation plans therefore reveal an economic layer often invisible in clinical histories. Local firms can benefit from contracts, yet quality control and transparent purchasing are essential because defective supplies create health as well as fiscal costs. Inventory systems, warehouse location and last-mile distribution should be treated as core health infrastructure.

123.26 Telemedicine, eSanjeevani and digital health

Telemedicine changes the cost of distance without abolishing the need for physical care. eSanjeevani links patients or primary facilities to remote clinicians, and Bihar's recent NHM planning has included connectivity for hundreds of facilities. The economic benefit is largest for follow-up, triage and advice that can safely be delivered without travel; complex emergencies and examinations still require in-person care. Digital health also includes ABHA-linked records, electronic claims, laboratory systems and surveillance. These systems can reduce duplication and improve continuity, but they create new costs for devices, bandwidth, training, cybersecurity and consent. A digital consultation is therefore not free merely because the video call has no fare attached.

123.27 Informal providers, trust and regulatory gaps

Informal or semi-formal providers persist because they are nearby, available after hours, willing to offer credit and embedded in local trust networks. Their economic advantage is low transaction cost; their clinical

risk is variable training, inappropriate antibiotics, delayed referral or weak record keeping. Simply prohibiting them without replacing access can drive care further underground. Regulation must distinguish between dangerous practice, legitimate pharmacy functions, trained community roles and the reality of provider scarcity. Public primary care becomes the strongest regulator when it offers a credible alternative. Researchers should avoid classifying every unregistered practitioner identically and instead document training, services, referral behaviour and patient reasons for choosing them.

123.28 Gender, caste, class and unequal access

Health access is socially unequal even when a facility is geographically close. Women may need permission or accompaniment; poorer households may postpone diagnostics; caste discrimination can affect treatment experience; migrants and border residents may lack documents; people with disabilities encounter inaccessible transport and buildings. Private care can buy speed but not necessarily quality, while public care can be financially protective but costly in waiting time. These inequalities are economic because they determine who bears the time cost of queues, who can travel for a second opinion and whose illness interrupts paid work. Equity analysis therefore needs disaggregation by sex, caste, class, location, disability and household structure rather than a single district average.

123.29 Measuring quality, cost and financial protection

No single dataset measures the health economy adequately. NFHS and DHS capture household and maternal-child indicators; HMIS records service contacts; IPHS and facility assessments measure infrastructure and readiness; National Health Accounts track financing; insurance claims show purchased hospital episodes; budgets and tenders reveal public inputs; labour registries and councils show parts of the workforce. Each has blind spots. The crucial historical discipline is to date every indicator and avoid treating an administrative count as an outcome. A newly built facility is not the same as a staffed facility; a consultation is not the same as effective treatment; insurance coverage is not the same as financial protection; and lower out-of-pocket share nationally does not prove equal progress in every district.

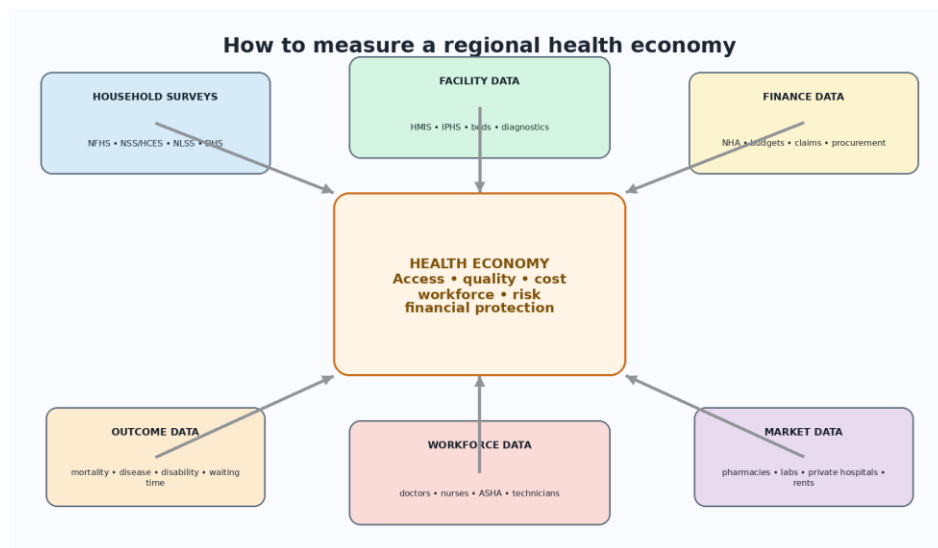


Figure 491 — Measuring a regional health economy requires household, facility, finance, market, workforce and outcome evidence together.

123.30 From treatment economy to health security

The long-term objective of the health economy should be health security rather than maximum medical consumption. A secure system prevents disease, detects risk early, resolves common problems close to home, refers quickly when necessary and protects households from financial ruin. It also sustains a skilled workforce, reliable medicine supply, emergency transport and resilient facilities during floods or heat. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the economic dividend would appear in fewer days of work and school lost, lower forced borrowing, shorter referral journeys and stronger regional employment in care and allied services. The transition from a treatment economy to health security is therefore both a social-policy project and a strategy of regional economic development.

Table 123.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing the health economy

Evidence source	What it establishes	Economic use	Main limitation
NFHS-5 / Nepal DHS	care use, maternal-child health, insurance indicators	household access and outcome baseline	survey rounds are dated and not annual
HMIS / routine programme data	service contacts and programme activity	facility demand and geographic trends	quality depends on reporting completeness
IPHS / facility assessments	infrastructure, readiness and standards	capacity and investment gap	readiness does not prove effective treatment
National Health Accounts	government, insurance and OOPS flows	financial protection and financing structure	not a district-level household budget
PM-JAY / insurance claims	covered hospital episodes and providers	public purchasing and referral geography	excludes uncovered care and non-users
Budgets / NHM PIPs / tenders	planned public inputs and procurement	state demand for labour, drugs and systems	allocation or approval is not expenditure or outcome
Clinical establishment records	registered private facilities	market structure and regulation	informal and unregistered providers may be missed
Pharmacy / diagnostic mapping	medicine and testing access	local health-market density	ownership, quality and prices may be opaque
Workforce registries / HR data	doctors, nurses and cadres	labour supply and vacancy analysis	headcount differs from attendance and full-time availability
Household expenditure / debt data	direct and indirect health burden	catastrophic spending and coping	rare events need large or longitudinal samples
Patient travel / referral records	origin-destination care flows	medical mobility and transport cost	cross-border and self-referral flows are often incomplete

Chapter 124 — Roads, Highways, Airports and Connectivity

Chapter 124 treats transport connectivity as productive infrastructure because it changes the economic meaning of distance. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the decisive obstacles are not only kilometres between settlements but rivers, floodplains, weak approach roads, congestion, interrupted public transport and the mismatch between trunk corridors and the first or last mile. A bridge over the Kosi or Ganga can therefore alter a far larger market geography than its own length suggests. An airport can shrink inter-city time dramatically while leaving remote passengers with a long road journey to the terminal. The proper historical question is not how much concrete was laid, but which journeys became reliably shorter, safer and cheaper, for whom, and with what effects on markets, migration, health, education, tourism and investment.

The chapter uses dated infrastructure milestones rather than treating all announced projects as completed assets. The 8.15-km Aunta–Simaria project on NH-31, including a 1.86-km six-lane Ganga bridge, was inaugurated on 22 August 2025 and officially described as removing more than 100 km of heavy-vehicle detour between parts of North and South Bihar. By contrast, the 13.3-km Bheja–Bakaur Kosi bridge was still described by the Ministry of Road Transport and Highways in December 2025 as being in the final stage of completion, with completion scheduled for financial year 2026–27 and an expected 44-km reduction in travel distance. These cases demonstrate why economic history must distinguish inauguration, construction progress, opening to traffic and full network functionality.

Air connectivity has also changed rapidly but unevenly. Civil flights from Darbhanga began under the Regional Connectivity Scheme in 2020, while a much larger new civil enclave was founded in October 2024 and remained under operationalisation work in 2026. Purnea's interim civil enclave terminal was inaugurated on 15 September 2025 and the first commercial flight was flagged off the same day, placing Seemanchal on the scheduled aviation map. Across the border, Janakpur Airport's new terminal was inaugurated in December 2020 and serves the religious, commercial and family-mobility economy of Madhesh and Mithila. These airports form a regional network only when surface access, schedules, fares, baggage systems, weather reliability and onward connections work together.

124.1 Connectivity as economic infrastructure

Transport becomes economic infrastructure when it enlarges the set of feasible transactions. A farmer can sell perishable produce farther away, a student can commute rather than migrate, a patient can reach a referral hospital within the therapeutic window, and a small manufacturer can receive inputs on a predictable schedule. These effects are produced by networks rather than isolated assets. A high-standard national highway may have limited local value if feeder roads become impassable during rain, while a modest bridge can transform daily life if it replaces a ferry or a long seasonal detour. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, connectivity therefore has to be read as a chain linking village roads, market towns, trunk highways, river crossings, border points, bus systems, airports and logistics services. The economic return depends on continuity, maintenance, safety and affordability. This perspective also guards against a common statistical error: kilometres added to a road inventory are not equivalent to journeys made shorter. Effective connectivity is a reduction in the generalized cost of movement—time, money, uncertainty, physical effort and risk—across the journeys that households and firms actually need to make.

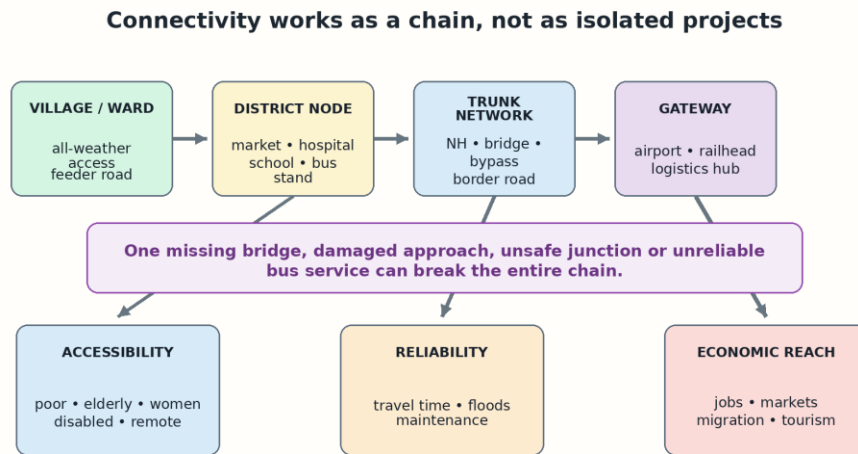


Figure 492 — Effective connectivity is a chain linking the first mile, district nodes, trunk corridors and gateways; reliability and accessibility determine the economic reach of the network.

124.2 Rivers, floodplains and the geography of detours

The region's transport geography has been shaped by water. The Ganga, Kosi, Gandak, Kamla, Bagmati and their shifting channels create fertile plains but also divide markets, interrupt roads and concentrate traffic onto a limited number of reliable crossings. Embankments can function as roads in some places yet also channel movement toward distant bridges. During floods, the shortest mapped route may cease to be the fastest or safest route, and freight operators price that uncertainty into transport charges. This is why bridge projects have unusually large economic effects in North Bihar and Madhesh. A crossing does more than connect two banks: it changes which mandi, hospital, airport, university or wholesale market lies within a practical day's journey. Historical comparisons should therefore reconstruct pre-bridge and post-bridge travel time, seasonal closure, vehicle restrictions and detour distance. The same logic applies to approach roads; a major bridge whose approaches remain congested or flood-prone cannot deliver its full network value. Riverine geography makes connectivity a problem of nodes and bottlenecks rather than a simple density of roads.

124.3 Village roads and the first-mile economy

The first mile determines whether national infrastructure reaches rural households. Village and rural roads connect settlements to panchayat headquarters, schools, primary health facilities, local markets and bus pickup points. Their economic significance is often largest for short, frequent journeys that never appear in national freight statistics: milk collection, vegetable transport, daily wage work, school attendance, women's mobility and access to banking or government services. All-weather surfacing matters, but drainage, culverts, shoulder condition and routine maintenance matter just as much in a monsoon environment. The quality of a feeder road also affects the type of vehicle that can operate: a paved but narrow or broken road may support motorcycles and autos while remaining unsuitable for milk tankers, ambulances or small trucks. Rural connectivity programmes should therefore be evaluated through actual service availability and seasonal travel time, not only whether a habitation is nominally 'connected.' In a region of dense settlement, the cumulative productivity gain from millions of short journeys can rival the visible benefit of a major expressway, because first-mile reliability determines who can use the larger network at all.

124.4 District roads, state highways and market towns

District roads and state highways perform the middle function between village access and national corridors. They connect block towns, industrial estates, district hospitals, railheads, universities and wholesale markets. Their economic role is especially visible where commercial activity has expanded faster than carriageway capacity. A road that was adequate for bicycles, buses and occasional trucks may become congested when e-rickshaws, tractors, school vehicles, construction trucks and private cars all compete for the same space. Widening is one response, but junction design, parking control, bypasses, bus bays and enforcement can matter more in built-up areas. Bihar's Road Construction Department explicitly frames its network strategy around linking districts to the state capital with higher-standard roads and reducing travel time, but regional economic analysis must look beyond Patna-centric access. Darbhanga–Madhubani, Muzaffarpur–Sitamarhi, Saharsa–Supaul, Bhagalpur–Munger and multiple cross-border town pairs generate their own daily travel systems. The quality of these intermediate links determines whether trunk highways produce dispersed development or merely speed through local economies without integrating them.

124.5 NH-27 as the east–west spine of North Bihar

NH-27 is one of the most important east–west spines for North Bihar, carrying long-distance passenger and freight traffic while linking a chain of regional centres and connecting onward toward the Northeast. Its economic significance lies in network position: feeder corridors from Mithila, Kosi and Seemanchal districts meet it, and many journeys to airports, wholesale markets and border roads depend on it. Yet a trunk corridor can also create uneven development. Interchanges and service roads attract warehouses, fuel stations, hotels, repair shops and land conversion, while settlements bypassed by access-control or median design may lose roadside trade. Congestion at urban approaches can erase the time gained on open highway segments. The correct unit of analysis is therefore door-to-door time, not cruising speed on the best section. For agriculture, NH-27 enlarges the practical market radius for maize, makhana, vegetables, fish and dairy when feeder roads, cold storage and loading facilities are present. For migrant households, it supports bus and shared-vehicle networks connecting railway stations and airports. Its economic influence is consequently both direct, through transport services, and indirect, through the spatial reorganization of commerce along junctions and nodes.

124.6 NH-31 and the Aunta–Simaria Ganga crossing

The Aunta–Simaria project illustrates how a single Ganga crossing can restructure a wider road economy. In August 2025 the Government of India inaugurated the 8.15-km project on NH-31, including a 1.86-km six-lane bridge constructed parallel to the older Rajendra Setu. Official project material emphasized that heavy vehicles travelling between North Bihar districts such as Begusarai, Supaul, Madhubani, Purnea and Araria and southern districts had been forced into detours exceeding 100 km because of restrictions and poor conditions on the older crossing. The new bridge therefore has significance well beyond Mokama and Begusarai. It can reduce truck operating cost, improve access to raw materials from South Bihar and Jharkhand, relieve pressure on alternative crossings and strengthen the industrial and logistics role of the Begusarai–Mokama node. The historical baseline matters: the project should not be described merely as an additional bridge, but as a capacity and routing change in a constrained network. Its long-term effect will depend on approach congestion, tolling, maintenance and how freight routes adapt after opening.

124.7 The Bheja–Bakaur Kosi bridge and changing regional distance

The Bheja–Bakaur Kosi project shows the opposite temporal problem: a transformative asset that must not be treated as fully operational before it actually is. In December 2025 the Ministry of Road Transport and Highways described the 13.3-km bridge and approaches as in the final stage of completion, with completion scheduled for financial year 2026–27. The ministry projected a 44-km reduction in travel distance and stronger links between Madhubani, Supaul and NH-27, with onward routes toward Patna, Nepal and the Northeast. The anticipated economic effect is plausible because the Kosi has historically fragmented east–west and north–south movement, but the gains should be tested after opening through origin–destination travel times, freight rates, bus routes and market catchments. Construction itself also has a temporary economy of labour, materials, rentals and land acquisition that should not be confused with permanent connectivity benefits. Once fully functional, the bridge may change where households seek hospitals, colleges and wholesale markets, and may alter land values near approaches. The key analytical point is that the economic geography changes when routine users actually re-route, not when a project is announced.

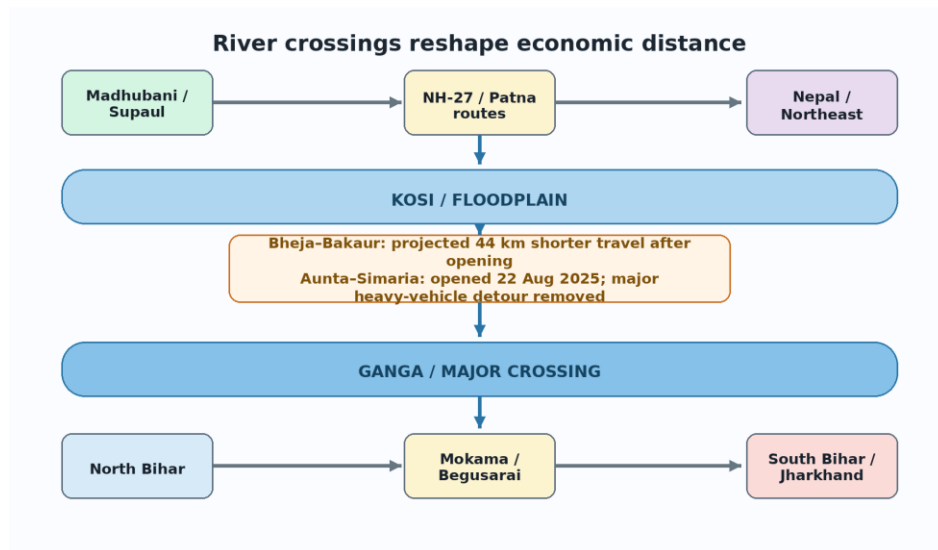


Figure 493 — Major river crossings change economic distance by eliminating detours and opening new route combinations across the Kosi and Ganga.

124.8 NH-327E and the Umagaon–Saharsa corridor

The NH-327E and Umagaon–Saharsa corridor projects are important because they attempt to improve connectivity inside the Kosi–Mithila zone rather than simply link the region to Patna. NHAI project documents have included four-laning packages toward Araria and a connection to NH-27, while earlier national-highway programmes have upgraded sections serving Saharsa and Purnea. These corridors matter for districts where river crossings and weaker east–west links historically imposed high transport penalties. A stronger corridor can integrate maize, makhana, dairy, fisheries and construction-material markets, but only if local roads connect production clusters to the highway. It can also redistribute traffic away from older town centres, creating demand for new petrol pumps, repair facilities, warehouses and roadside commerce near interchanges. Researchers should track the timing of each package separately because a corridor is only as strong as its least complete segment. Traffic can migrate suddenly once a missing link opens, producing congestion or commercial decline elsewhere. The economic history of highway upgrading is therefore a history of route substitution, not merely incremental lane widening.

124.9 Amas–Darbhanga / NH-119D and access to the Patna system

The Amas–Darbhanga / NH-119D system represents a different connectivity ambition: creating a higher-capacity north–south axis that links the Darbhanga–Samastipur side of North Bihar more directly into the Patna and southern highway system. NHAI documents in 2025 recorded a 14.5-km six-lane greenfield Ramnagar–Kacchi Dargah package as part of the Amas–Darbhanga corridor, including related widening near NH-31. The importance of this scheme lies in bypassing older congested approaches and creating a more continuous high-speed route. Yet such projects also raise questions of land acquisition, access control and local severance. A greenfield corridor may reduce inter-city time while making short local crossings harder unless underpasses and service roads are well designed. Its benefits should therefore be evaluated across different users: long-distance freight, buses, private cars, villages adjacent to the alignment and businesses on bypassed roads. The corridor's eventual economic value for Mithila will depend not simply on reaching Patna faster but on reliable connections to Darbhanga airport, industrial nodes, logistics parks and the east–west highway network.

124.10 Mokama–Munger–Bhagalpur high-speed corridor

The approved Mokama–Munger section of the Buxar–Bhagalpur high-speed corridor signals the growing strategic importance of the Anga–Munger belt. In September 2025 the Cabinet Committee on Economic Affairs approved an 82.4-km four-lane greenfield access-controlled section at a capital cost of Rs 4,447.38 crore. The official rationale explicitly connected the project to Mokama, Lakhisarai, Jamalpur, Munger and onward Bhagalpur, and to industrial and logistics activity including the Jamalpur railway workshop, defence production, food processing and warehousing. An access-controlled corridor can sharply reduce inter-city time and improve freight reliability, but its spatial effects are concentrated at interchanges. This makes interchange location an economic planning decision: warehousing and industry can cluster near ramps, while towns without convenient access may see less benefit. The corridor also needs feeder connections to river ports, rail terminals, industrial estates and agricultural markets. For Anga, the larger significance is that connectivity policy is beginning to treat the Munger–Bhagalpur axis as an industrial-logistics region rather than merely a sequence of district roads.

124.11 Anga, industrial logistics and the Bhagalpur–Munger belt

The Bhagalpur–Munger belt demonstrates why transport should be analysed together with production systems. Bhagalpur's silk, food processing, education and service economy; Munger's industrial and railway legacy; Jamalpur's workshop; stone and construction-material flows from adjacent Jharkhand; and agricultural movement from surrounding districts all create freight demand with different timing and vehicle requirements. A high-speed road can lower trunk-haul cost, but industrial productivity also depends on city access, truck parking, loading space, bridge capacity and predictable last-mile travel. Urban congestion near railway crossings or markets can add hours to a journey that moved quickly on the national highway. Logistics firms respond by shifting depots to peripheral land, which changes urban form and land values. The economic history of contemporary Anga therefore includes the migration of warehouses, repair workshops and wholesale functions toward bypasses and highway junctions. These changes can create jobs and investment while also generating land conversion, traffic risk and pressure on peri-urban drainage. Connectivity is productive only when freight movement and urban livability are planned together.

124.12 Bridges as market-making infrastructure

Bridges are market-making infrastructure because they collapse detours. Their economic value is often nonlinear: a bridge of two kilometres may eliminate a journey of fifty or one hundred kilometres, enable a daily round trip that was previously impossible, or allow heavier vehicles to use a route for the first time. The effect appears in freight rates, bus schedules, emergency response, school choice and the radius within which traders purchase produce. Bridge capacity can also redistribute traffic among towns. A new crossing may reduce the strategic importance of an older ferry ghat, bridgehead bazaar or repair cluster while creating new commercial land around its approaches. Historical analysis should therefore document losers as well as beneficiaries. In flood-prone terrain, approach embankments and drainage require equal attention: a bridge deck that remains above flood level can still be isolated if approach roads fail. Maintenance of bearings, expansion joints, lighting and crash barriers also determines long-term performance. The region's many bridge projects should consequently be understood as changes in network topology—alterations to the graph of possible routes—rather than as a simple inventory of engineering structures.

124.13 Bypasses, ring roads and urban congestion

Bypasses and ring roads change who passes through a town and who stops there. For congested urban centres, diverting through-trucks can reduce travel time, air pollution and crash exposure, while freeing road space for local commerce and public transport. But businesses built around highway traffic—dhabas, repair shops, lodges, fuel stations—may lose customers when the trunk route moves outside the old centre. New roadside commercial strips often emerge near bypass junctions, accelerating peri-urban land conversion. The policy question is not whether bypasses are good or bad but whether land use, public transport and local access are planned before speculative construction fills the corridor. In cities such as Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, Begusarai and Bhagalpur, intersection delay can dominate total journey time even when inter-city highways are improved. Grade separators, bus management, parking enforcement and safe pedestrian crossings may therefore yield larger time savings than another lane on an already fast rural section. Urban connectivity should be measured by person movement and access to destinations, not merely vehicle throughput.

124.14 Maintenance, monsoon damage and network reliability

Maintenance is the invisible half of connectivity. Monsoon rain, floodwater, overloaded trucks and repeated utility cutting can rapidly degrade pavements and shoulders. Potholes reduce speed, increase fuel use, damage vehicles and create crash risk; failed culverts or blocked drains can make a road unusable even when the pavement itself remains intact. Maintenance also has distributional consequences because high-visibility trunk roads often receive quicker repair than low-volume rural roads on which poorer households depend. Performance-based maintenance contracts, pavement-condition surveys and digital complaint systems can improve accountability, but only when budgets and response standards are transparent. In a flood-prone region, resilience requires pre-monsoon drainage clearing, slope and embankment inspection, stockpiles of repair materials and alternative-route planning. Climate change increases the importance of design standards that account for more intense rainfall and heat. A road that repeatedly closes for several days imposes a larger economic penalty than its average annual condition suggests, because uncertainty forces firms to hold more inventory and households to plan around disruption.

124.15 Road safety as an economic variable

Road safety is an economic variable because crashes destroy labour, household savings and public resources. Faster highways can reduce journey time while increasing the severity of collisions if access control, median design, lighting, speed management and emergency response are weak. Dense roadside settlement creates particular risk where pedestrians, bicycles, cattle, autos and high-speed vehicles share space. The cost extends beyond medical bills to long-term disability, lost earnings, school disruption and unpaid caregiving. Safety policy therefore belongs in economic infrastructure planning rather than in a separate police appendix. Black-spot treatment, safe junctions, service roads, pedestrian refuges, helmets and seatbelts, enforcement against dangerous driving and rapid trauma transport all have measurable economic returns. Data quality remains a major problem because police records may undercount non-fatal crashes and do not always capture disability or household financial loss. A mature connectivity strategy should track fatalities and serious injuries per vehicle-kilometre and per population, alongside travel-time savings. A corridor that becomes faster but substantially more dangerous has not delivered an unambiguous welfare gain.

124.16 Buses, shared mobility and intermediate public transport

For most households, connectivity is experienced through buses, shared autos, e-rickshaws, vans and motorcycles rather than private cars. Intermediate public transport solves the first-and-last-mile problem and allows small towns to function as transfer points between villages and trunk routes. Its flexibility is economically valuable, but fragmented operations can produce unsafe stopping, unpredictable fares and congestion around railway stations, hospitals and markets. Bus terminals are therefore economic nodes: they generate rental demand, food services, parcels, labour brokerage and information flows. Route frequency matters as much as road quality; a village connected by a good road but served by one unreliable vehicle per day remains poorly connected for women, students and workers without motorcycles. Public policy can improve this ecosystem through designated stands, timetable information, safe waiting areas, route permits, charging infrastructure for electric vehicles and integration with airports and railway stations. The goal should be a hierarchy of services rather than a false choice between formal buses and informal shared mobility.

124.17 Freight, trucking and agricultural logistics

Freight connectivity converts agricultural output into marketable surplus. Maize, makhana, vegetables, fish, milk, fruit and grain have different sensitivities to delay, temperature and handling. A better road lowers vehicle operating cost, but the benefit can be lost if produce waits at a congested market gate or if there is no cold chain, grading point or warehouse near the corridor. Trucking itself is a local industry involving drivers, cleaners, mechanics, tyre shops, finance, fuel, eateries and parking. Route improvements can shift these services toward new junctions. The economic effect should be measured through delivered price spreads and reliability rather than assuming that every reduction in truck cost passes fully to farmers. Market power among traders, commission agents and transporters influences who captures the gain. Freight policy also needs designated truck parking and loading areas to keep heavy vehicles from occupying town streets. In the Anga and Seemanchal belts, stronger links to Jharkhand, West Bengal and the Northeast can diversify markets, while north–south bridges improve access to Patna and central Indian supply chains.

124.18 Border roads and India–Nepal commercial mobility

The India–Nepal border is not a hard economic edge for Mithila and Madhesh. Family ties, pilgrimage, education, medical care, retail trade and formal and informal commerce generate daily movement across

multiple checkpoints and local roads. The economic quality of a border route depends on more than pavement: customs procedures, bridge capacity, parking, documentation, opening hours and security checks determine total crossing time. Large integrated check posts and national highways serve formal freight, while smaller crossings remain important for local mobility. Road upgrading on only one side can move the bottleneck to the border itself. For regional development, the most valuable projects are those that make entire corridors predictable from origin to destination. Cross-border tourism around Janakpur and Mithila also depends on coach parking, signage and safe city access, not just international publicity. Researchers should distinguish passenger movement, small local trade and truck freight because each uses different crossings and faces different transaction costs. Connectivity here is institutional as well as physical.

124.19 Janakpur and the road economy of Madhesh

Janakpur functions as the principal urban and cultural gateway of Madhesh's Mithila zone. Its road economy links surrounding Dhanusha and Mahottari settlements to markets, provincial institutions, hospitals, educational centres and the airport, while longer routes connect toward Birgunj, Kathmandu and the Indian border. Rapid urbanization can convert regional roads into congested city streets, especially where ribbon development and unmanaged parking narrow effective capacity. The economic cost is visible in slow bus movement, unpredictable freight delivery and reduced pedestrian safety. Janakpur's tourism economy adds seasonal peaks associated with religious festivals, requiring traffic management and coach facilities rather than permanent overbuilding everywhere. Improvements to the Dhalkebar–Janakpur connection are particularly important because Dhalkebar sits on the East–West Highway and acts as an interchange between national and local networks. The city's connectivity should therefore be evaluated as a system linking highway, airport, border routes and local streets. A better terminal or highway cannot compensate for a congested final few kilometres into the urban core.

124.20 East–West Highway upgrading through Madhesh

The Kamala–Dhalkebar–Pathlaiya section of Nepal's East–West Highway runs through six Madhesh Province districts and forms one of the province's most important trunk corridors. Department of Roads environmental and design documentation describes a roughly 130-km project section through Siraha, Dhanusha, Mahottari, Sarlahi, Rautahat and Bara. Upgrading this corridor has economic significance because it links agricultural districts, industrial and trading centres, east–west bus routes and feeder roads toward Janakpur and the Indian border. Widening, however, is not only an engineering problem. Resettlement, roadside businesses, pedestrian movement and urban sections require careful design if increased vehicle speed is not to divide settlements. Access control, service lanes, bus stops and crossing points determine whether local communities gain from the corridor or merely experience faster through-traffic. Environmental assessment also matters because drainage and flood patterns can be altered by embankments. For Madhesh, the East–West Highway is both a national artery and a local main street; successful upgrading must satisfy both roles.

124.21 The Postal Highway and southern Terai accessibility

The Postal Highway, or Hulaki Rajmarg, follows the southern Terai and has long been conceived as an alternative east–west development axis closer to the Indian border. Nepal's Department of Roads describes the wider project as a 975-km network intended to connect 21 Terai districts and improve economic, social and educational access. For Madhesh, its significance lies in serving settlements that are farther from the East–West Highway and in supporting border-oriented markets, agriculture and local government centres. The economic case is strongest where the road shortens access to schools, hospitals and markets rather than

simply paralleling another trunk corridor. Completion gaps, bridge quality and maintenance can fragment the network, so project status must be assessed section by section. The Postal Highway also illustrates a broader principle: redundancy has value. In flood-prone or congested regions, two viable east–west routes can increase resilience even if one is not always the shortest. Network redundancy becomes an economic asset during disasters, political blockades or major repairs.

124.22 Darbhanga Airport: from interim enclave to expansion

Darbhanga Airport is the clearest example of how latent travel demand can reshape regional infrastructure policy. Civil operations began in 2020 from an interim enclave at an Indian Air Force station under the Regional Connectivity Scheme. Early facilities were small, but the airport quickly became important for a migration-intensive catchment extending across Mithila and parts of Nepal. In October 2024 the foundation was laid for a new civil enclave valued at around Rs 910 crore. Airports Authority of India tenders in 2025–26 covered apron and taxiway work, baggage handling and operationalisation of the new building, demonstrating that the expansion remained an active construction-and-commissioning process rather than a finished event. The airport's economic significance extends beyond passenger convenience: it supports time-sensitive business travel, medical referrals, student mobility and diaspora visits. Yet route frequency and surface access remain crucial. A passenger from Madhubani or Saharsa still bears substantial road time to reach the terminal, and cancellations or high fares can push travellers back to Patna or rail. Airport impact must therefore be measured as a door-to-door mobility system.

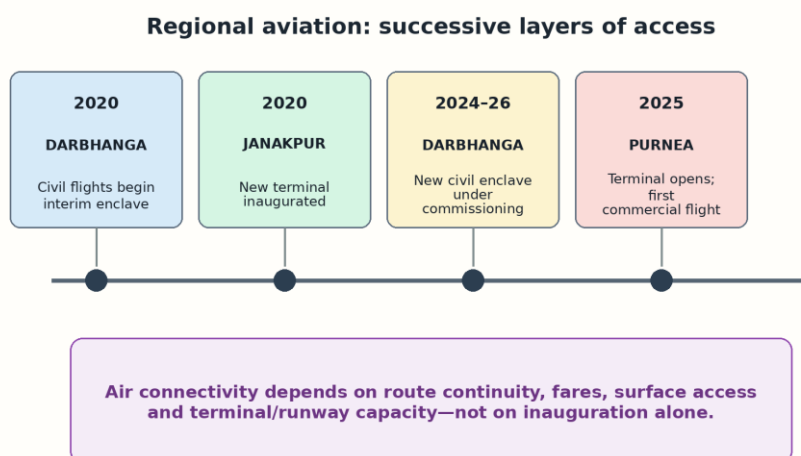


Figure 494 — Regional aviation expanded in successive layers: Darbhanga and Janakpur in 2020, major Darbhanga expansion from 2024, and Purnea commercial operations in 2025.

124.23 Purnea Airport and the aviation of Seemanchal

Purnea entered a new phase of aviation connectivity on 15 September 2025, when the interim terminal at the new civil enclave was inaugurated and the first commercial flight was flagged off. The project matters because Seemanchal had long depended on more distant airports such as Bagdogra, Patna or Darbhanga, each imposing additional surface travel. Purnea's catchment potentially includes Purnea, Araria, Katihar, Kishanganj and parts of the Kosi region. The economic benefit is likely to be largest for migrants, traders, officials, medical travellers and higher-income households for whom time savings justify airfare. It can also support tourism and investment, but only if routes remain commercially sustained. Regional airports are vulnerable to thin schedules: one daily flight at an inconvenient time may not create the same economic

connectivity as multiple frequencies. Surface links to the terminal, public transport, parking and cargo possibilities will determine how widely benefits spread. The 2025 opening should therefore be treated as the start of an aviation market, not proof that the market has reached maturity.

124.24 Janakpur Airport and the cross-border Mithila economy

Janakpur Airport gives the cross-border Mithila region an aviation gateway on the Nepal side. The Civil Aviation Authority of Nepal inaugurated a new terminal building in December 2020, with the explicit expectation that improved facilities would strengthen passenger handling and the cultural and religious significance of Janakpur. Its economic role is different from that of an international hub: scheduled domestic services shorten access to Kathmandu and connect pilgrims, officials, students and business travellers to the national capital. For Indian visitors, the airport complements rather than substitutes road and rail routes because most cross-border tourism still involves surface movement. The airport's value therefore depends on flight frequency, fares and the road link between terminal, Janaki Mandir, hotels and highway junctions. Weather and runway constraints also shape aircraft type and reliability. Janakpur illustrates how a modest regional airport can be economically important without handling very large volumes, because it reduces the time cost of a strategically important journey in a province where road travel to Kathmandu remains lengthy.

124.25 Patna and Bihta as wider regional gateways

Patna lies outside the core historical geography of Mithila, Vajji and Anga, yet it remains a dominant transport gateway for the entire region. Many long-distance flights, specialist services, government functions and road connections converge there. The new terminal at Patna Airport was inaugurated in May 2025 with substantially expanded passenger capacity, while the Union Cabinet had already approved a new civil enclave at Bihta in 2024 because expansion at the existing airport is physically constrained. For regional households, these projects matter because Darbhanga and Purnea do not serve every route or frequency. A wider multi-airport system can reduce dependence on one congested gateway and create competition among access points. The economic question is how surface corridors connect the region to these airports. A faster highway to Patna may be more valuable for a district without direct flights than a nearby airport with limited schedules. Gateway analysis should therefore compare total door-to-door time, frequency and fare across Darbhanga, Purnea, Patna, Bagdogra and Janakpur rather than assuming the nearest airport is always the most useful.

124.26 What air connectivity changes—and what it does not

Air connectivity changes the feasible radius of same-day travel. It is especially valuable for migrants returning for short visits, businesspeople, medical patients, students, government officials and tourists. It can encourage hotels, taxis, food services and logistics around terminals and can alter land values along access roads. But the economic effects are easily overstated. Airports do not automatically generate manufacturing or mass employment, and passenger growth can leak spending outward if travellers simply use the airport to leave. Air fares also exclude many households, making aviation a complement to roads and rail rather than a universal substitute. Cargo potential depends on aircraft capacity, handling infrastructure and regular routes; perishable high-value products may benefit, but bulk agricultural freight remains road- and rail-dependent. The most useful analytical measure is connectivity quality: number of destinations, frequency, schedule reliability, fare distribution and ground access. A small airport with reliable multiple flights to major hubs can be economically more valuable than a larger terminal with sparse service.

124.27 Digital navigation, FASTag and platform logistics

Digital systems are increasingly part of physical connectivity. Smartphone navigation reduces search time, enables route choice during floods or congestion and supports taxi and delivery platforms. FASTag and electronic tolling reduce stopping time on controlled highways, while fleet-management systems allow trucking firms to track vehicles and schedule deliveries more precisely. Online bus and flight booking lowers information costs for migrants who previously relied on agents. These gains, however, depend on mobile coverage, digital literacy and accurate maps. Platform logistics can also externalize congestion by sending many small delivery vehicles onto streets without designated loading space. Tolling data and anonymized mobility traces create new possibilities for transport planning but raise privacy and commercial-data questions. The economic history of connectivity is therefore moving from concrete alone toward data infrastructure layered on roads and airports. Chapter 125 examines the platform economy in greater depth; here the key point is that digital coordination can increase the effective capacity of a physical network without adding a lane, while poor data or fragmented systems can waste infrastructure that already exists.

124.28 Connectivity inequality and universal access

Connectivity is unequal because travel time is shaped by income, gender, disability, location and access to vehicles. A household with a motorcycle can use a highway junction that is difficult to reach by foot; a woman may avoid a bus stand that is unsafe after dark; an elderly or disabled passenger may find an airport terminal accessible but the feeder vehicle impossible to board. Toll roads can save time while imposing a cash cost that pushes poorer drivers onto slower alternatives. Remote floodplain settlements remain vulnerable even when the nearest district has excellent national highways. Universal access therefore requires pedestrian paths, safe crossings, affordable public transport, accessible vehicles, lighting and reliable first-mile roads alongside high-speed corridors. Distributional analysis should ask who receives the time saving and who bears land acquisition, noise, pollution or severance. A transport project can raise aggregate efficiency while worsening access for specific settlements. Economic evaluation should include these spatial and social effects rather than assuming that all people located near a corridor benefit equally.

124.29 Measuring connectivity by time, reliability and cost

The strongest measure of connectivity is door-to-door generalized cost. This includes travel time, fare or fuel, waiting, transfers, tolls, reliability, comfort and safety. Average speed on a road segment is only one component. Researchers can reconstruct connectivity through origin–destination surveys, bus timetables, GPS travel-time sampling, freight invoices, toll counts, airport schedules, crash data and seasonal closure records. Repeating the same journeys before and after a bridge or highway opening provides much stronger evidence than comparing road length. Market outcomes can then be tested: did farm-gate prices converge, did patient referrals shift, did school catchments widen, did warehouses move, did land values rise near interchanges, and did migration patterns change? The challenge is causal attribution because connectivity improvements often coincide with electrification, digital adoption and urban growth. A good economic history therefore combines network data with household and firm evidence and dates each project milestone precisely. Announced, awarded, under construction, inaugurated and fully operational are different states with different economic consequences.

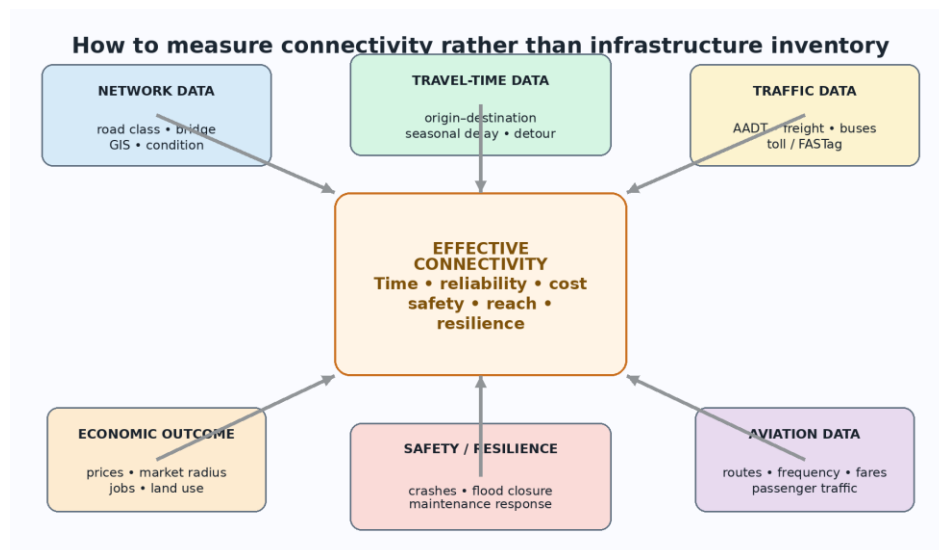


Figure 495 — Connectivity must be measured with travel time, traffic, safety, resilience, aviation and economic-outcome data rather than infrastructure counts alone.

124.30 From transport network to integrated regional economy

The contemporary transport economy of Mithila, Vajji and Anga is becoming more integrated but remains structurally shaped by rivers and uneven first-mile access. New Ganga and Kosi crossings, higher-capacity national highways, emerging high-speed corridors, airport expansion at Darbhanga and Purnea, and continued road development in Madhesh reduce long-standing penalties of distance. Yet the decisive test is whether these investments form a coherent network. A fast inter-city corridor needs safe local junctions; an airport needs reliable surface transport; a bridge needs flood-resilient approaches; a border road needs efficient customs; and every asset needs maintenance. Connectivity also changes the geography of economic opportunity, drawing warehouses, housing and services toward new nodes while bypassing older centres. PART XIII should therefore treat transport not as background infrastructure but as a force that reorganizes markets, labour and settlement. The next chapter turns to digital payments, mobile phones and platform economies—the informational layer that increasingly coordinates movement, trade and services across this physical network.

Table 124.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing transport connectivity

Evidence source	What it establishes	Economic use	Main limitation
Road inventory / GIS	alignment, class, bridges and network continuity	spatial access and missing-link analysis	does not show actual travel time or condition
Pavement / bridge condition surveys	surface, drainage, structural condition	maintenance need and reliability	inspection timing can miss seasonal failure
Origin–destination / GPS travel time	door-to-door movement and delay	true accessibility and detour measurement	needs repeated seasonal observations
Traffic counts / FASTag / toll data	vehicle volumes and route use	freight and passenger demand	misses untolled local movement
Bus routes / permits / timetables	public-transport coverage and frequency	access for non-car households	published timetable may differ from actual service
Freight invoices / truck surveys	delivered cost and logistics patterns	market integration and corridor economics	commercial data can be difficult to obtain
Crash / trauma records	fatality and serious-injury burden	safety-adjusted welfare analysis	under-reporting of non-fatal crashes
Flood / closure logs	seasonal interruption and resilience	reliability and redundancy planning	local closures may be poorly archived
Airport schedules / traffic data	routes, frequency and passenger use	aviation market depth and gateway choice	capacity does not equal sustained service
Land-value / business-location data	development around junctions and bypasses	spatial redistribution of economic activity	speculation can precede real demand
Household / firm surveys	actual purpose, cost and benefit of journeys	distributional impact	self-reported time and cost can be noisy

Chapter 125 — Digital Payments, Mobile Phones and Platform Economies

Chapter 125 examines the contemporary economy through the devices, payment rails and software platforms that increasingly coordinate everyday exchange. The smartphone is now simultaneously a telephone, identity token, bank interface, shop counter, map, workplace, classroom, ticket office and remittance terminal. Yet digitalisation is not a clean replacement of older institutions. Cash remains important; assisted banking remains essential; households share devices; mobile networks fail; and small merchants combine QR payments with notebooks and cash boxes. The correct historical frame is therefore a layered economy in which digital systems reduce some transaction costs while creating new dependencies on electricity, connectivity, authentication, software design, data governance and platform rules.

The scale of India's payment transition is unmistakable but should be dated carefully. NPCI's published monthly series records 22.716 billion UPI transactions worth about ₹28.92 lakh crore in June 2026. The RBI's Digital Payments Index, with March 2018 = 100, reached 516.76 in September 2025. These are national indicators, not district measures for Mithila, Vajji or Anga. Likewise, TRAI reported 89.56 million internet subscriptions in the Bihar telecom service area at the end of March 2026, but that service area includes Jharkhand. The regional historian must therefore resist converting regulatory geographies into cultural geographies and instead combine national rails, service-area infrastructure and local household/merchant evidence.

Across the India–Nepal border, digital integration now has a chronology of its own. Indian UPI users gained QR-based person-to-merchant acceptance at participating Nepalese merchants in 2024. In June 2026, India's UPI and Nepal's National Payments Interface were linked for real-time person-to-person remittances through participating institutions. These are distinct systems serving different transaction types. Together they show how the older border economy of family remittances, pilgrimage, shopping and petty trade is acquiring a digital layer without eliminating cash, foreign-exchange rules, bank regulation or informal exchange.

125.1 The digital layer of the contemporary economy

Digitalisation matters economically when it changes who can transact, at what cost, over what distance and with what record. A QR payment can remove the need for exact change, allow a migrant to support a household instantly and give a micro-enterprise a traceable payment history. An app can match customers and workers without a physical office. At the same time, the device and platform become new intermediaries. Network outages, account freezes, authentication failures, software design and platform commissions can now determine whether a sale or day's work succeeds. This chapter therefore studies digital systems as institutions of exchange rather than as gadgets. The relevant unit is the transaction chain linking connectivity, identity, payment, merchant acceptance, settlement, records and redress.

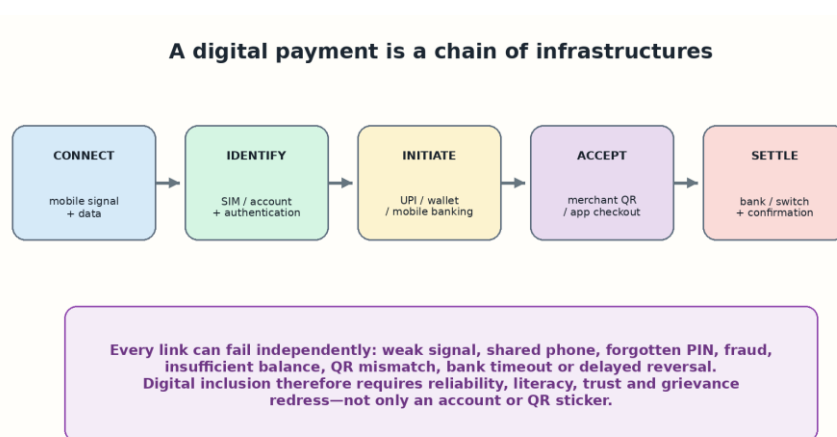


Figure 496 — A digital payment depends on a chain of connectivity, identity, initiation, merchant acceptance and settlement; failure at any link can exclude the user.

125.2 Mobile infrastructure and the problem of regional measurement

Telecom statistics are indispensable but easy to misuse. TRAI's March 2026 quarterly report recorded 89.56 million internet subscriptions and 51.65 internet subscriptions per 100 population in the Bihar telecom service area. Yet the report explicitly notes that this service area includes Jharkhand. Those numbers cannot be labelled Bihar population penetration, still less Mithila, Vajji or Anga penetration. State-level and district-level field evidence is needed to recover the regional pattern. The service-area figures nevertheless establish the scale of the network through which regional households transact. They also show a persistent rural–urban gap: infrastructure expands quickly, but reliable coverage, handset quality, electricity, data affordability and repair access remain spatially uneven.

125.3 Connectivity is not the same as effective access

A household can be counted as connected while still being digitally constrained. One smartphone may be shared among several family members; a woman may have an account but not control the SIM linked to it; an elderly user may require assistance; and a weak signal may make time-sensitive authentication impossible. Digital capability therefore combines device access, private control, literacy, language, confidence, accessibility and grievance knowledge. The distinction is economically important because failed or delegated use can reproduce dependence on agents even after formal account opening. For historical analysis, surveys should record who owns the handset, who knows the PIN, who authorises payments, whether the connection works during floods or power cuts, and whether the user can independently detect and contest an incorrect transaction.

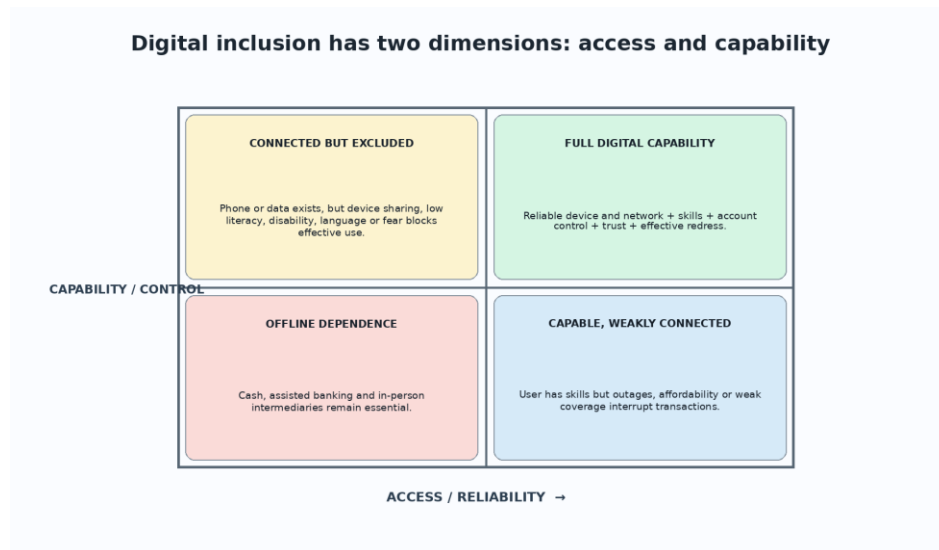


Figure 497 — Digital inclusion requires both reliable access and the capability to control, understand and contest transactions.

125.4 The mobile phone as a financial terminal

The mobile phone has collapsed functions once distributed across a branch, passbook, card terminal and paper receipt. Banking apps and UPI can display balances, transfer money and create transaction histories; wallets and mobile banking can pay utilities and school fees; messages provide confirmation; and cameras turn printed QR codes into acceptance devices. This compression reduces travel and queueing costs, which is especially valuable in dispersed rural settlements. But it also moves security responsibility toward the user. A lost handset, compromised SIM, remote-access scam or deceptive link can expose multiple services at once. The economic history of mobile finance must therefore include not only adoption but the reallocation of transaction costs and risks from institutions to individuals.

125.5 UPI and the reorganisation of small payments

UPI has become the central rail for India's retail instant-payment economy. NPCI's monthly data show 22.716 billion transactions in June 2026, demonstrating a scale at which small digital payments are no longer an urban novelty. The significance for north and eastern Bihar is not that every transaction is digital, but that the cost of initiating an account-to-account payment has fallen sufficiently for very small merchants, households and travellers to use the same national rail. The system also creates interoperability: a shop need not maintain a separate acceptance relationship with every customer's bank. For historians, national UPI volume supplies context, while district merchant surveys, bank data and household diaries are needed to measure regional intensity and exclusions.

125.6 Merchant QR codes and low-cost acceptance

Merchant QR codes radically lowered the physical cost of accepting digital payments because a printed image can substitute for a dedicated card terminal in many small transactions. Tea stalls, pharmacies, tuition centres, repair shops and market traders can therefore accept account-based payments with minimal equipment. The visible QR sticker, however, should not be mistaken for proof of active use. Merchants may prefer cash for some purchases, face settlement uncertainty, use several QR codes, or route receipts through a family member's account. The most useful field evidence records transaction frequency, average ticket size,

settlement account ownership, failure rates, refund practice and whether digital receipts alter bookkeeping or access to formal credit.

125.7 Cash persistence and the hybrid payment economy

The contemporary payment economy remains hybrid. RBI research has long noted the coexistence of rapid digital-payment growth and persistent currency demand. In rural Mithila, Vajji and Anga, cash remains useful where network coverage is weak, where small informal transactions are anonymous, where users fear fraud, or where merchants need notes for wholesale purchases and wage payments. Digital transfers can even generate cash demand when welfare or remittance receipts are withdrawn through an ATM or business correspondent. The relevant transformation is therefore not a linear move from cash to cashless exchange but a changing boundary between cash, account transfer, assisted cash-out and platform settlement. Resilience often comes from retaining more than one usable payment channel.

125.8 Assisted digital finance and the last mile

Assisted digital finance links sophisticated national payment infrastructure to users who cannot or do not wish to operate it independently. Business correspondents, customer service points and Bank Sakhis perform cash-in/cash-out, authentication, account support and information functions close to the village. This intermediary role can lower travel costs and build trust, but it also creates potential for overcharging, password sharing or mistaken delegation if oversight is weak. Evidence should distinguish transactions initiated by the customer from transactions executed on the customer's behalf. In a region with high migration and dispersed settlements, assisted finance remains part of digital infrastructure rather than evidence that digitalisation has failed.

125.9 JEEViKA, Bank Sakhis and women-centred digital finance

Bihar's JEEViKA provides a particularly important institutional bridge between women's collectives and digital finance. BRLPS describes its alternate-banking programme as using community members as Bank Sakhis or business-correspondent agents to expand savings, credit, insurance and digital services. In September 2025, Bihar Rajya JEEViKA Nidhi Saakh Sahkari Sangh was launched as a digitally operated credit institution for JEEViKA-linked women, with 12,000 community cadres being equipped with tablets. The significance is not merely technical. When trusted local women become financial intermediaries, the social location of banking changes. The model also shows that digital inclusion can be organisational: technology works through collective institutions, training and proximity rather than through individual apps alone.

125.10 Direct transfers, Aadhaar and cash-out points

Government-to-person transfers helped normalise account-based finance, but a digital credit to an account is not the same as usable money in the household. Aadhaar-linked payment architecture, bank accounts, mobile alerts and the Aadhaar Enabled Payment System can shorten transfer chains and make disbursement more traceable. Yet recipients may still need a correspondent to check balances or withdraw cash. The economics of direct transfer should therefore be measured across the entire route from government sanction to household control, including authentication failures, inactive accounts, cash-out distance and transaction fees. For migrant households, a government transfer and a private remittance can arrive through the same account while serving very different purposes and governance regimes.

125.11 Agriculture, input purchase and farm-side payments

Agriculture is increasingly touched by digital payments at the edges of production even where cultivation itself remains materially traditional. Farmers can pay input dealers, receive crop-sale proceeds, transfer wages, recharge electricity accounts and settle transport charges through mobile channels. Farmer-producer organisations can use digital records for aggregation and payments. But farm-side digitalisation is constrained by seasonality, thin margins and the need for immediate liquidity. A digitally paid farmer may withdraw cash to hire labour or purchase from a supplier who does not accept transfers. The key evidence is therefore the sequence of transactions around production and marketing, not merely whether an account exists. Digital traces can illuminate value chains only when interpreted alongside crop calendars, credit relations and market structure.

125.12 Micro-enterprise, records and working-capital visibility

For micro-enterprises, digital receipts can create a transaction trail that paper cash sales do not. This can improve bookkeeping, simplify supplier settlement and, under appropriate safeguards, provide evidence for credit assessment. Yet the trail may be fragmented across personal and business accounts, multiple QR providers and cash sales. A small enterprise can become more visible to banks and tax systems without becoming more profitable. Platform fees, data costs and delayed settlements can offset convenience. The correct economic question is whether digital records reduce the cost of working capital and market access, not whether the enterprise has been ‘formalised’ by technology. Formal status, tax registration, creditworthiness and digital visibility are distinct dimensions.

125.13 Street vending and digitally visible small commerce

Street vending demonstrates the low threshold of QR-based commerce. A vendor can display a code without purchasing expensive acceptance hardware, enabling customers to pay even when neither side has change. Digital receipts may also help vendors build a record of turnover. Yet the smallest traders operate in environments of insecure space, variable daily earnings and frequent cash purchases. Digital payments do not resolve eviction risk, storage constraints or dependence on informal wholesalers. Nor is the person whose name appears on the QR necessarily the economic owner of the stall. Field research should therefore match the payment account to control of the enterprise and examine how digital acceptance interacts with credit, municipal regulation and household finance.

125.14 E-commerce beyond metropolitan India

E-commerce expands the market radius of producers and consumers, but participation depends on more than internet access. Sellers need cataloguing, packaging, reliable pickup, returns management, digital settlement and the ability to absorb platform commissions. Consumers need delivery addresses, trust, payment options and dispute resolution. In smaller towns, national marketplaces coexist with social-media selling, messaging-app orders and local delivery arrangements. For Mithila painting, books, food products and specialised crafts, the platform can connect a producer to distant demand; it can also subordinate the producer to ranking systems and standardised presentation. The economic history of e-commerce must therefore study control over visibility and customer data as well as gross sales.

125.15 Logistics platforms and the new geography of delivery

Logistics platforms turn digital orders into physical movement. Warehouses, sorting hubs, courier franchises, delivery riders and address databases make e-commerce possible in places far from metropolitan

fulfilment centres. The resulting economy is geographically selective: a town can become a distribution node even without large manufacturing, while villages beyond reliable roads or standard service zones face surcharges and delays. Cash-on-delivery further demonstrates the hybrid nature of platform commerce because a digitally ordered good can still be settled in cash. Chapter 124's roads and Chapter 125's platforms therefore form one system: software can optimise a route, but it cannot substitute for a usable bridge, all-weather road or accurate last-mile address.

125.16 Ride-hailing and app-mediated mobility

Ride-hailing platforms reorganise urban mobility by matching drivers and passengers, displaying prices and processing some payments through an app. Their strongest presence is likely in larger regional cities and transport gateways rather than uniformly across the countryside. The platform can reduce search time for a passenger and idle time for a driver, while maps and ratings standardise parts of the service. Yet drivers bear vehicle, fuel, maintenance and waiting costs, and platform incentives can change rapidly. The economic unit is thus not the fare alone but net earnings after asset and time costs. Local studies should distinguish full-time app drivers, multi-platform drivers, auto-rickshaw integration and informal phone-based booking that imitates platform matching without the same corporate intermediary.

125.17 Food delivery and the urban service economy

Food-delivery platforms combine restaurants, cloud kitchens, delivery workers, digital payments, mapping and customer ratings. They can enlarge a restaurant's market beyond walking distance and create flexible work for riders, but commissions and promotional requirements redistribute margins. Their geography reveals the hierarchy of the urban system: dense zones with enough orders support short delivery cycles, whereas smaller towns may be served selectively or not at all. For regional economic history, the expansion date of service into Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur or other centres is less important than the resulting change in restaurant turnover, labour patterns and consumer habits. Platform listings are ephemeral and should be archived as dated evidence rather than assumed to persist.

125.18 Home services and mediated trust

Home-service platforms extend app-based matching to repair, beauty, cleaning and other personal services. They promise identity verification, standard prices and rating-based trust where customers once relied on neighbourhood recommendation. For workers, platforms can broaden customer reach and provide scheduling tools; they can also impose commissions, performance metrics and penalties. The regional effect depends on urban density and skill supply. Many services remain coordinated through telephone calls and messaging groups rather than formal apps. This continuum matters because platformisation is not synonymous with incorporation into a large venture-backed company: local digital directories, WhatsApp groups and social-media pages also mediate work, although with different data, pricing and liability structures.

125.19 Gig work, platform work and legal recognition

Indian law now formally distinguishes gig and platform work. The Code on Social Security, 2020 defines a gig worker as a person earning outside a traditional employer–employee relationship and recognises platform work as work arranged through an online platform. This matters because the vocabulary determines who can be counted, regulated and covered by schemes. It also warns against calling every casual worker a platform worker. A construction labourer hired at a roadside labour point is a gig-like worker in

ordinary speech but not necessarily engaged through a digital platform. Regional labour statistics should therefore record the matching mechanism, payment method, contractual relationship and dependence on an app instead of inferring platform status from occupation alone.

125.20 Social security after the 2025 labour-code commencement

The legal framework moved from enactment to operational significance when the Code on Social Security came into force on 21 November 2025. By January 2026, the Labour Ministry reported 12 major aggregators onboarded to the e-Shram aggregator module, while broader e-Shram registration exceeded 31 crore unorganised workers in 2026. These national totals do not tell us how many platform workers live in Mithila, Vajji or Anga, and early platform-worker registration data were incomplete. The policy shift is nevertheless historically important: platform labour moved from an emerging category to an explicitly recognised social-security subject. Future research must track actual scheme coverage, aggregator contributions, portability and claim outcomes rather than equating registration with protection.

125.21 Algorithms, ratings and income volatility

Platforms coordinate work through algorithms that workers cannot always observe. Order allocation, surge pricing, acceptance rates, cancellation rules, ratings and incentive thresholds can alter hourly earnings without a conventional supervisor issuing instructions. This produces a distinctive form of economic dependence: the worker may formally choose when to log in but has limited control over the terms of each match. Gross platform earnings therefore overstate welfare unless fuel, vehicle depreciation, unpaid waiting time, data costs and accident risk are deducted. Longitudinal worker diaries are especially valuable because a one-day survey misses changing incentive structures. The history of platform work will depend on preserving app screenshots, payout statements and worker testimony before interfaces and rules change.

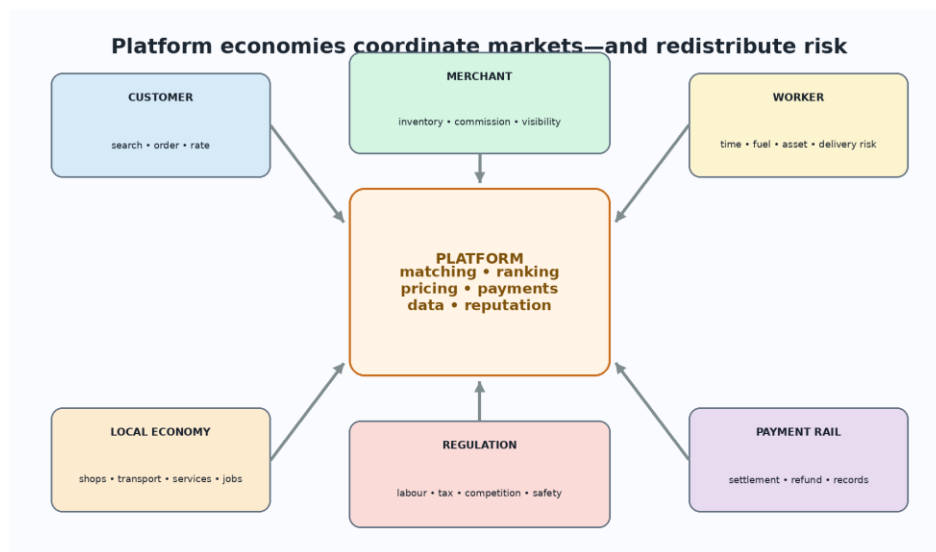


Figure 499 — Platform economies coordinate customers, merchants and workers through software while redistributing costs, information and risk.

125.22 Gendered access, device ownership and platform participation

Digital inclusion is gendered because device control, mobility, literacy and household norms shape who can transact privately. Women's collective institutions such as JEEViKA can reduce these barriers by creating trusted local intermediaries and training networks. At the same time, platform work in mobility and delivery can remain male dominated because of vehicle ownership, safety concerns and late-hour work. Digital

finance may expand women's control over savings only when the woman controls the account, SIM, authentication method and information. Counting women-owned accounts without recording effective control can therefore exaggerate autonomy. Regional surveys should combine sex-disaggregated ownership data with questions on who initiates transactions and who decides how digital income is used.

125.23 Language, voice and interface design

Interface language can determine economic access. A user may understand Maithili, Angika or another local speech form far better than formal Hindi or English but encounter payment menus, fraud warnings and grievance procedures only in larger languages. Voice interfaces and conversational payment systems can lower literacy barriers, while poorly designed transliteration can create new confusion. Local-language support is especially important for confirmation messages: the user must understand the payee, amount and action before authentication. The challenge is not merely translation but terminology, script support, speech recognition and accessibility. A digitally sophisticated region can still exclude users if the interface assumes a linguistic competence different from the language of everyday commerce.

125.24 Fraud, impersonation and cyber risk

Digital payment growth expands the attack surface for fraud. Criminals can exploit remote-access applications, false customer-care numbers, deceptive QR codes, phishing links, SIM swaps, social engineering and requests to 'receive' money by entering a PIN. The victim often experiences the fraud as a communication event before it becomes a banking event. This makes telecom regulation, platform moderation, bank controls and public awareness part of the same security system. Nepal Rastra Bank's August 2026 warnings about fraudulent accounts and QR codes for relief contributions illustrate the continuing relevance of basic verification even in a mature QR environment. Fraud data should be analysed by method and loss, not only by number of complaints.

125.25 Failed payments, reversals and grievance redress

Trust in instant payments depends on what happens when the payment is not instant in practice. A debit can occur without merchant confirmation; a reversal can take time; the user may contact the bank, payment app and merchant separately; and low-value disputes can impose high time costs. RBI's payment regulation, ombudsman mechanisms and transaction-failure rules are therefore part of economic infrastructure. Merchants likewise need predictable settlement and clear refund procedures. For regional fieldwork, failed-payment diaries are more informative than simple adoption questions because they reveal whether users return to cash after a bad experience. Consumer protection is a productive input: without credible redress, technically available payment rails may be underused.

125.26 Nepal's mobile-banking, wallet and QR ecosystem

Nepal's payment ecosystem has developed through banks, wallets, payment service providers, QR networks and the national clearing infrastructure. Nepal Rastra Bank's payment-system indicators show rapid growth of mobile banking, wallets and QR-based payments, while its oversight reports emphasise interoperability, cyber resilience and regulation of licensed operators. The relevant comparison with India is not a race for identical transaction volumes. Nepal's smaller market, different banking structure and remittance dependence produce a distinct institutional path. Madhesh participates in this national system through merchants, banks, migrant households and cross-border travellers. Local studies should therefore

connect NRB's national indicators with province- and municipality-level evidence rather than infer Madhesh usage directly from national totals.

125.27 The India–Nepal cross-border payment corridor

The India–Nepal corridor now has two separate digital-payment milestones. From February–March 2024, UPI users from India could make person-to-merchant payments at participating Nepalese QR merchants; NPCI reported more than 100,000 such transactions by August 2024. In June 2026, a direct UPI–NPI linkage was operationalised for real-time person-to-person remittances through select banks and apps. The distinction is crucial: buying goods in Janakpur is not the same transaction as sending household support across the border. The new P2P rail can reduce time and reliance on intermediaries, but foreign-exchange rules, limits, KYC, fraud control and participating-institution coverage still shape actual use. Border digitalisation therefore formalises some flows without making the border economically irrelevant.

India–Nepal digital payment corridor: two distinct stages

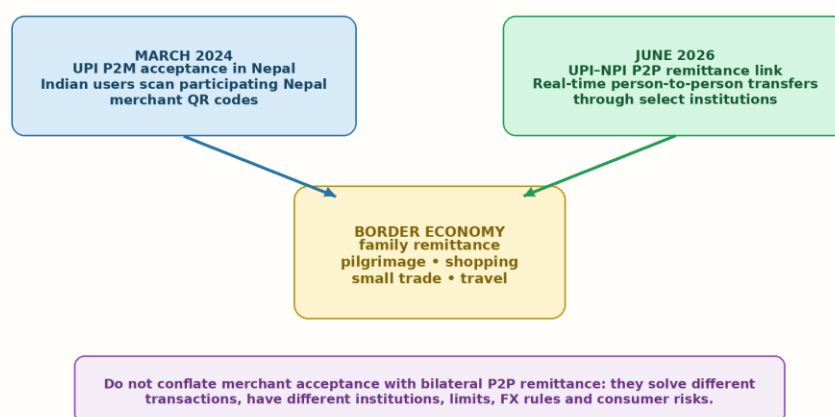


Figure 498 — India–Nepal payment integration developed in distinct stages: merchant UPI acceptance in Nepal from 2024 and bilateral P2P UPI–NPI remittance from June 2026.

125.28 Data governance, privacy and exclusion

Digital systems generate valuable data and new risks. Transaction records can improve fraud detection, credit assessment and economic measurement; location and behavioural data can also reveal intimate patterns of movement, consumption and work. Platform workers may have little bargaining power over data collection, while small merchants may not know how ranking or recommendation systems use their activity. Exclusion can arise through false fraud flags, KYC mismatch, inactive numbers or automated risk scores. Data governance is therefore part of distributive economics. The historian should ask who can see the data, who can correct it, how long it is retained and whether the person whose activity generated it can obtain a usable record.

125.29 Building an evidence archive for digital economic history

Born-digital economic evidence is unusually fragile. Payment apps update interfaces without preserving public archives; merchant listings disappear; platform commission schedules change; worker incentive screens are personalised; and transaction dashboards may provide only current aggregates. A serious archive for this chapter's subject should preserve dated regulator reports, NPCI and NRB series, telecom indicators, labour notifications, platform terms, screenshots, anonymised merchant statements and worker diaries.

Researchers must record denominators and geographies: a telecom service area may span two states, a national UPI total cannot be assigned to one district, and platform registrations may lag actual work. Metadata is therefore not clerical detail but protection against false precision.

125.30 From digital coordination to destination economies

Digital payments and mobile platforms now coordinate a substantial share of the journeys, purchases and services described across PART XIII. They shorten payment time, widen market reach and make transactions traceable, while shifting new forms of operational and informational risk onto users, workers and merchants. Their regional impact is strongest where physical connectivity, financial institutions and digital capability reinforce one another. The next chapter, on tourism and pilgrimage economies, makes this interdependence visible: travellers discover destinations on phones, book transport online, navigate by map, pay merchants by QR and increasingly cross the India–Nepal border through interoperable payment systems. Digital coordination does not replace place; it changes how places are reached, consumed and economically connected.

Table 125.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing digital payments and platform economies

Evidence source	What it establishes	Economic use	Main limitation
NPCI UPI statistics	monthly transaction volume/value and live-bank counts	national payment-rail scale and growth	not a district or cultural-region measure
RBI Digital Payments Index	multi-dimensional national digitisation trend	long-run infrastructure/performance context	composite index; not locally disaggregated
TRAI internet / telecom data	subscriptions, rural-urban access and service areas	network capacity and access constraints	Bihar LSA includes Jharkhand; subscriptions are not unique users
Bank / PSP settlement records	merchant receipts, failures and reversals	actual payment intensity and reliability	commercial access and privacy constraints
Merchant transaction diaries	cash/digital mix, ticket size and settlement practice	micro-level adoption and business effects	small samples and self-reporting
BC / Bank Sakhi logs	assisted cash-in/cash-out and account support	last-mile inclusion and intermediary economics	may omit informal assistance
Platform worker payout statements	gross earnings, incentives and deductions	net-income and algorithmic-work analysis	terms and incentives change frequently
App terms / screenshots	pricing, commissions, rankings and interface design	platform-governance history	highly ephemeral and often personalised
e-Shram / labour notifications	legal recognition and registration architecture	social-security institutional change	registration does not equal effective coverage
NRB payment indicators	mobile banking, wallet, QR and cross-border activity	Nepal/Madhesh payment-system context	mostly national rather than province-level
Cross-border payment logs	P2M and P2P corridor use	border commerce and remittance formalisation	coverage limited to participating institutions

Chapter 126 — Tourism and Pilgrimage Economies

Chapter 126 examines tourism and pilgrimage as service economies built around mobility, sacred geographies, heritage, festivals, crafts, food and hospitality. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the most important visitor flows do not fit a single category. A traveller may be simultaneously a pilgrim, family visitor, shopper and heritage tourist; a festival journey may involve ritual obligations as well as hotel, transport and retail expenditure; and a Buddhist, Jain or Ramayana itinerary may cross district, state and international borders. The analytical task is therefore to trace how movement becomes income, employment and infrastructure without reducing sacred practice to consumption or treating every visitor as a leisure tourist.

Official statistics provide scale but require caution. The Ministry of Tourism records Bihar in 2024 with 65.463 million domestic tourist visits and 736,720 foreign tourist visits, compared with 81.586 million domestic and 546,576 foreign visits in 2023. These are visit events reported for the whole state, not unique people and not a Mithila–Vajji–Anga total. They cannot reveal how much of the flow belongs to Vaishali, Sitamarhi, Sultanganj, Vikramshila, Madhubani or other destinations. Site counts, hotel records, transport data, festival administration and merchant evidence are needed to reconstruct the regional economy beneath the state aggregate.

The cross-border dimension is equally important. Nepal recorded 1,162,365 international tourist arrivals in 2025, with India accounting for 25.24 percent, but air-arrival statistics capture only part of the open-border mobility that connects north Bihar with Madhesh. Janakpur is a major pilgrimage and cultural centre whose Janaki Mandir, Vivah Panchami, Ram Navami and Chhath draw visitors from both countries. The contemporary regional tourism economy thus rests on a dense continuum: local day trips, periodic pilgrimage, circuit tourism, heritage travel, diaspora return, craft purchase and cross-border religious mobility. Its economic value depends less on headline footfall than on duration of stay, local retention of spending and the ability of communities to manage seasonal pressure.

126.1 Tourism as a regional service economy

Tourism becomes economically significant through linked services rather than through a monument or temple alone. A visitor buys a rail or bus ticket, uses a rickshaw or taxi, eats, purchases water and offerings, pays for lodging, hires a guide, buys crafts, donates to a religious institution and sometimes extends the journey to nearby destinations. Each transaction supports different workers and enterprises. The central policy question is how much expenditure remains in the local economy. A large visitor count can coexist with weak local income when travellers arrive and depart on the same day, bring food from outside, use externally owned transport or book through platforms that retain commissions elsewhere. Conversely, a smaller flow can have a larger local effect when visitors stay longer and buy locally produced goods and services. The regional tourism economy must therefore be analysed as a value chain linking mobility, hospitality, culture, retail and public infrastructure.

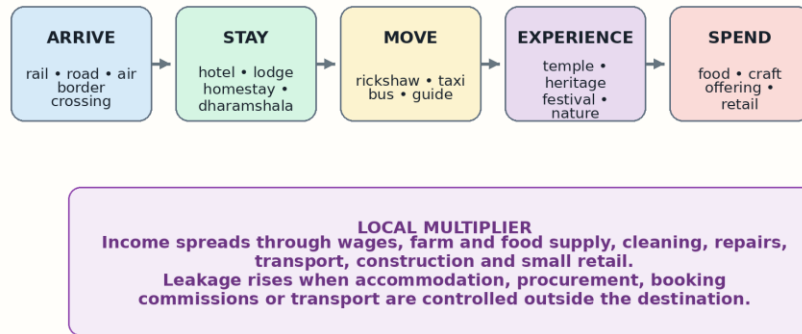
Visitor spending becomes a local economy through linked services

Figure 500 — Visitor expenditure creates a local multiplier through linked transport, accommodation, experience, food, craft and service economies, but value can leak outside the destination.

126.2 Counting visits without inventing a regional total

State tourism statistics are essential for trend analysis but not for drawing cultural-region boundaries. Bihar's 2024 figure of 65.463 million domestic tourist visits is a count of visits reported by the state, not a census of distinct tourists. One traveller visiting several destinations can generate several visits; a festival can create very large short-duration counts; and administrative counting methods may change. The 2024 decline from the state's 81.586 million domestic visits in 2023 should therefore be interpreted as a change in reported visits, not automatically as a fall in the number of unique travellers. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the proper method is to disaggregate wherever evidence permits: destination gate counts, accommodation occupancy, railway and bus flows, airport data, border movement, mela administration and local transaction records. When such evidence is absent, the historian should state the gap rather than manufacture a regional total.

126.3 Pilgrimage and tourism: overlapping but non-identical mobilities

Pilgrimage has an economic dimension but should not be collapsed into leisure tourism. Pilgrims may travel under vows, family obligations, calendrical ritual or community traditions in which consumption is secondary to sacred purpose. The same journey nevertheless generates demand for transport, food, lodging, flowers, ritual objects, sanitation and crowd management. The distinction matters because the appropriate infrastructure can differ. A pilgrimage destination may need inexpensive dormitories, bathing facilities, queue systems, drinking water, ritual access and temporary markets more urgently than luxury accommodation. It may also experience extreme seasonal peaks. Tourism policy that treats pilgrimage merely as a market can damage ritual autonomy; religious management that ignores the visitor economy can leave workers and public services unprepared. Historical analysis should therefore preserve both dimensions: the sacred meaning of movement and the material systems that make movement possible.

126.4 The Ramayana corridor from Mithila to Janakpur

The Ramayana geography linking Sitamarhi and Janakpur is one of the clearest cross-border tourism systems in the region. Punaura Dham and other Sita-associated sites in Sitamarhi connect naturally with Janaki Mandir and the Vivah Mandap in Janakpur. Government tourism planning has explicitly placed Punaura Dham within the Ramayana circuit, while Indian tourist-train itineraries have combined Sitamarhi

with a bus journey to Janakpur. The economic potential lies not in branding a single point but in creating a multi-stop itinerary with reliable border transport, multilingual information, clean rest facilities and enough time for local spending on both sides. Because the border is socially porous and historically interconnected, this corridor also serves family and ritual mobility that predates modern tourism policy. Its resilience depends on preserving that everyday connectivity rather than converting the route into a narrowly packaged excursion.

126.5 Punaura Dham and destination-scale investment

Punaura Dham illustrates how a sacred site can become the focus of destination-scale capital investment. The Ministry of Tourism identified the site for PRASHAD development in 2022, and in August 2025 the foundation was laid for a much larger comprehensive development of the temple complex with a stated project cost of ₹890 crore. Such investment can transform access roads, public space, sanitation, accommodation demand and land values around a destination. It can also redistribute benefits and pressures. Construction creates short-run employment; larger pilgrim flows can expand retail and transport; but land acquisition, rising rents and formalisation can displace small vendors or alter the social landscape if local participation is weak. The appropriate historical measure of success will therefore be not only the completed buildings but also whether ordinary pilgrims, nearby residents, local artisans and small service providers remain part of the destination economy.

126.6 Janakpur, Janaki Mandir and the cross-border sacred economy

Janakpur anchors the Nepal side of the Mithila pilgrimage economy. Nepal Tourism Board presents Janaki Mandir as a major national pilgrimage site and identifies Janakpur with temples, sacred ponds, Mithila art and festivals. Its economic geography extends well beyond the temple walls. Hotels and guesthouses serve overnight visitors; buses, e-rickshaws and taxis distribute movement; flower sellers and sweet shops depend on ritual demand; photographers, guides and craft sellers translate cultural significance into services; and festival periods expand temporary employment. Nepal's 2025 tourism statistics recorded 1.162 million international arrivals nationally, with India providing 25.24 percent, but Janakpur's open-border visitors cannot be inferred directly from that national air-and-border series. Local hotel occupancy, festival counts and municipal service data are needed to measure Janakpur's specific economy. The broader point is that Janakpur functions simultaneously as sacred centre, city economy and cross-border cultural node.

126.7 Festival calendars and concentrated demand

Festival calendars produce a tourism economy with sharp temporal concentration. Vivah Panchami, Ram Navami and Chhath in Janakpur, Shravani movement through Sultanganj, Bounsi Mela at Mandar and numerous local temple fairs can multiply demand within days or weeks. Merchants stock more goods; transport operators add trips; temporary stalls appear; family homes receive guests; and public agencies deploy sanitation, policing and medical services. Peak demand can raise earnings but also increase costs and risk. Water use, waste, traffic, crowd crush, heat exposure and price spikes become part of the economic calculation. Because festival workers often invest in inventory before knowing actual footfall, bad weather or transport disruption can turn a profitable season into debt. A mature tourism economy therefore needs seasonal finance, temporary infrastructure and reliable public information, not merely promotional campaigns designed to maximise crowd size.

126.8 The open border as tourism infrastructure

The India–Nepal open border is itself a form of tourism infrastructure. For residents of north Bihar and Madhesh, sacred travel often operates through road corridors and local border crossings rather than international airports. The economic friction of a journey depends on road quality, bridge reliability, border procedures where applicable, currency and payments, public transport frequency and the availability of onward vehicles. Chapter 124 showed how corridor improvements alter travel time; Chapter 125 showed how interoperable digital payments can reduce transaction friction. Tourism combines those systems. A visitor deciding whether to stay overnight in Janakpur or return to Sitamarhi responds to transport schedules and perceived reliability as much as to promotional material. For small merchants, the border creates a catchment larger than the administrative district. For policy, it means that bilateral connectivity, signage and information can have local economic effects even when no formal 'tourism zone' exists.

126.9 Vaishali: Buddhist, Jain and republican-memory tourism

Vaishali is a layered destination whose economic potential derives from multiple historical and religious narratives. Buddhist itineraries centre on the archaeological landscape, relic traditions and the Ashokan pillar; Jain traditions connect the district to Mahavira; modern civic narratives also invoke the Lichchhavi/Vajji political past. These audiences do not necessarily travel in the same seasons or consume the same services. International Buddhist visitors may arrive through larger circuits including Bodh Gaya, Rajgir, Nalanda, Kushinagar or Lumbini, while domestic pilgrims and school groups may visit on day trips. The challenge for the local economy is to convert circuit inclusion into local retention. Interpretation centres, trained guides, food, clean toilets, shaded waiting space and locally managed craft retail can lengthen stays. Without them, Vaishali risks becoming a brief bus stop in a circuit whose accommodation and higher-value spending occur elsewhere.

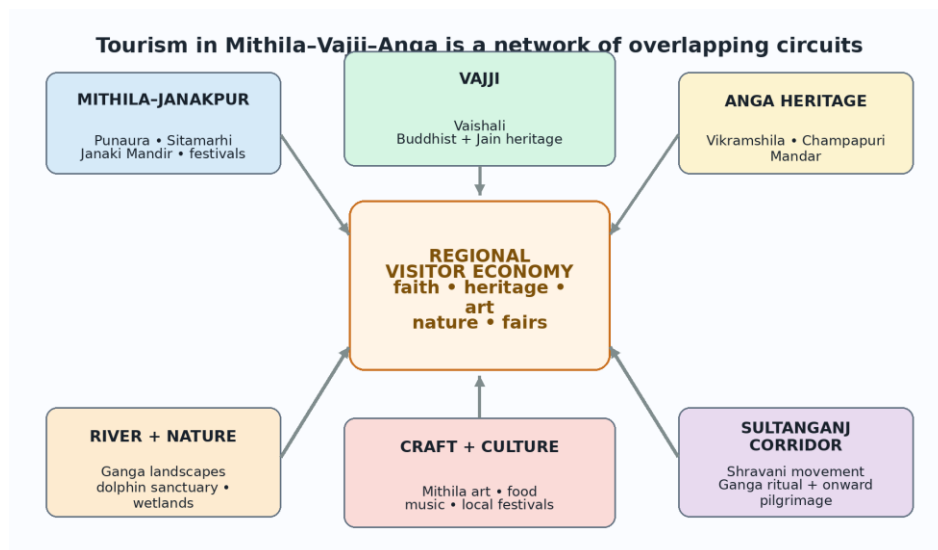


Figure 501 — Tourism and pilgrimage in Mithila–Vajji–Anga operate through overlapping cross-border, religious, heritage, cultural and ecological circuits rather than one linear route.

126.10 Buddhist circuits and international visitor economies

Buddhist circuit tourism demonstrates how international heritage economies are organised through networks rather than isolated sites. The Ministry of Tourism promotes Vaishali alongside better-known Buddhist destinations connected by national highways and theme-based trains. For a smaller site, circuit

membership can provide visibility that independent marketing cannot. Yet it also produces hierarchy: tour operators optimise itineraries around airports, major hotels and famous monuments, sometimes compressing secondary destinations into short visits. Vaishali's economic strategy should therefore focus on distinctive reasons to stay—high-quality historical interpretation, landscape walks, local food, links to nearby archaeological and cultural sites, and research or educational programmes. International visitor numbers at the state level do not show whether such value is captured locally. Destination-level evidence must examine bus dwell time, guide use, overnight stays, local purchases and the share of visitor expenditure that reaches workers and enterprises near the site.

126.11 Jain circuits, Vaishali and Champapuri

Jain tourism links Vajji and Anga through sites that are often omitted from generic Bihar narratives. A Swadesh Darshan Tirthankar Circuit approved in 2016–17 included Vaishali and Champapuri among its locations, with an approved project cost of ₹37.20 crore. Champapuri in Bhagalpur is associated with Vasupujya and remains an active Jain pilgrimage destination. The economic needs of such sites differ from those of mass leisure destinations: clean access, vegetarian food, religious accommodation, predictable transport, heritage interpretation and quiet surroundings may matter more than entertainment infrastructure. Circuit planning can create opportunities for specialist guides, transport operators and hospitality businesses if routes are coordinated rather than treated as disconnected projects. It also demonstrates that Anga's visitor economy is not confined to Vikramshila or the Ganga; it includes living religious networks whose mobility and patronage have their own institutional rhythms.

126.12 Sultanganj and the Shravani pilgrimage economy

Sultanganj is a classic example of pilgrimage shaping an entire seasonal economy. The Ganga at Ajgaibinath/Sultanganj is the starting point for large Shravani pilgrim movements toward Deoghar, creating intense demand for transport, food, temporary shelter, ritual goods and logistics. Under Swadesh Darshan, an integrated Sultanganj–Dharmshala–Deoghar spiritual circuit was approved in 2016–17 at a cost of ₹44.76 crore. The economic geography extends beyond the formal project boundary: wholesalers supply temporary markets; farmers and food vendors respond to seasonal demand; buses and shared vehicles reposition; and informal workers enter the corridor for a limited period. Because the route crosses state boundaries, coordination failures can be costly. Sanitation, medical posts, traffic separation, safe walking surfaces and crowd information are economic infrastructure because they reduce the risks that otherwise make pilgrimage more expensive for households and public authorities.

126.13 Vikramshila as heritage and knowledge tourism

Vikramshila offers a different tourism proposition: archaeological heritage, Buddhist intellectual history and the landscape of the Ganga near Kahalgaon. Bihar Tourism identifies the ruins at Antichak as a major heritage destination and a former centre of learning. Unlike a festival-driven site, its strongest opportunity is educational and cultural tourism that can operate across a longer season. University groups, researchers, Buddhist visitors and domestic heritage travellers could support trained interpretation, local transport, small museums, book and craft sales, and linked itineraries with the river landscape. The weakness of archaeological tourism is often short dwell time. Visitors photograph ruins and leave unless interpretation gives the site narrative depth. Investment should therefore favour conservation, signage, shaded circulation, accessible paths and academically reliable storytelling before spectacle. A knowledge site generates more durable value when the visitor understands why the physical remains matter.

126.14 Mandar Hill, fairs and multi-religious visitation

Mandar Hill in Banka combines pilgrimage, mythology, Jain associations, landscape tourism and fair culture. Bihar Tourism describes the hill and its ropeway as key district attractions, with Bounsi Mela providing a strong seasonal focus. The ropeway changes the destination economy by lowering the physical cost and time of reaching the summit, opening access to visitors who could not make the climb and increasing potential throughput. Such infrastructure can expand ticketing, food and retail demand, but it also concentrates visitors and therefore waste, safety and maintenance obligations. Mandar is a useful reminder that tourism infrastructure is not neutral: a ropeway changes who visits, how long they stay and where spending occurs. Local planning should connect the ride to interpretation, walking routes, religious etiquette and nearby markets so that the benefit is not confined to a single mechanical attraction.

126.15 River and nature tourism in the Anga–Ganga landscape

The Ganga landscape adds ecological tourism to Anga's heritage and pilgrimage portfolio. Bihar Tourism promotes the Vikramshila Gangetic Dolphin Sanctuary along the Sultanganj–Kahalgaoon stretch, where river travel can complement visits to Vikramshila, local ghats and other sites. Nature tourism can diversify the economy beyond festival peaks and archaeological day trips, but it is unusually sensitive to overuse. Boat speed, noise, waste disposal and irresponsible wildlife approach can damage the very resource being marketed. The economic model should therefore favour trained local boat operators, limited and safe viewing practices, ecological interpretation and monitoring. When conservation rules are clear, biodiversity can support livelihoods while strengthening incentives to protect river quality. When tourism becomes an uncontrolled chase for sightings, short-term income can undermine long-term ecological value. River tourism is sustainable only if the habitat remains primary and the visitor experience is designed around that constraint.

126.16 Darbhanga, Madhubani and urban-cultural itineraries

Mithila's urban-cultural tourism is more dispersed than a single monumental circuit. Darbhanga, Madhubani and surrounding towns contain temples, palace architecture, ponds, educational institutions, markets, archives and performance traditions that can be assembled into thematic itineraries. The economic advantage of an urban itinerary is that existing restaurants, transport, shops and lodging can serve visitors without creating an isolated resort economy. The difficulty is legibility: a visitor needs reliable maps, opening information, interpretation and routes that explain how apparently separate places fit together. Heritage buildings also require conservation before promotion; advertising a fragile ruin without visitor management can accelerate damage. The best urban-cultural tourism therefore begins with documentation and local stewardship. It can connect architecture, literature, music, food and everyday neighbourhood life while avoiding the false impression that Mithila's culture is contained only in a few landmark structures.

126.17 Mithila art as visitor experience rather than commodity alone

Mithila painting already has a global market history, which Chapter 127 examines in detail. Within tourism, however, the key question is different: how does a visitor encounter an artistic tradition in place? Studio visits, village workshops, museums, demonstrations and direct purchase can create income while giving travellers a more accurate understanding of materials, themes and artist lineages. The danger is that tourism demand can reward quick repetition of familiar motifs and push complex artistic practice into a narrow souvenir format. Authenticity should not mean freezing artists in an imagined past; living traditions innovate. A fair visitor economy should make attribution visible, allow artists to explain and price their own work, and distinguish original hand work from mass-printed imitations. Tourism is most valuable to the art

economy when it strengthens direct relationships between makers and audiences rather than using artists merely as decorative branding for destinations.

126.18 Food, ritual consumption and place-based markets

Food is one of the most widely distributed forms of visitor expenditure. Pilgrims buy prasad, sweets, fruit and simple meals; family visitors seek familiar regional dishes; heritage travellers increasingly treat local food as part of place identity. This creates opportunities for small restaurants, street vendors, women's groups, dairy producers, farmers and sweet makers. Yet food tourism is economically durable only when hygiene, water, waste handling and price transparency keep pace with demand. Festival surges can overwhelm kitchens and supply chains, while standardised menus can erase local variation. A regional tourism strategy should therefore treat food as an agricultural and cultural linkage rather than as a marketing slogan. Procurement from nearby producers increases the local multiplier, and documentation of seasonal dishes can distribute demand beyond a handful of famous items. Food connects Chapters 118 and 126 directly: tourism becomes rural development when visitor consumption pulls value through local farm and processing networks.

126.19 Accommodation: hotels, lodges, dharamshalas and homestays

Accommodation determines whether a destination captures overnight spending. The regional supply ranges from commercial hotels to small lodges, religious dharamshalas, guest houses and family-based accommodation. Each serves a different price point and social need. Bihar Tourism's 2026 listing of the Mukhyamantri Homestay Protsahan Yojana signals a policy interest in expanding community-level accommodation, but programme success should be judged by actual occupancy, quality, safety, local ownership and ease of booking rather than by the number of registered units. Homestays can spread tourism income beyond city hotels and create work for women and older household members, but only if hosts receive training and visitors can find and trust the service. Religious accommodation remains equally important because many pilgrims prioritise affordability and proximity over hotel amenities. A resilient destination needs a mixed accommodation ecology rather than one standard model.

126.20 Transport, last-mile access and the economics of time

Transport converts geographic proximity into economic accessibility. A temple fifty kilometres away can be effectively distant if the last road is flooded, buses stop before evening or travellers cannot find a safe vehicle from the railway station. Conversely, a new bridge, airport or upgraded corridor can enlarge the destination catchment immediately. Chapter 124 documented major connectivity changes affecting the region; tourism translates those changes into visitor behaviour. The relevant measure is door-to-door time, reliability and cost. Last-mile transport is especially important because national highways and airports do not deliver travellers to village shrines, archaeological mounds or craft studios. Local e-rickshaws, shared autos, taxis and buses are therefore part of tourism infrastructure. Their drivers also function as informal guides. Planning should include stands, transparent fares, safe waiting areas and information rather than assuming that the market will solve the final kilometres automatically.

126.21 Guides, priests, artisans and informal intermediaries

Many tourism services are provided by intermediaries who remain statistically invisible. Priests explain ritual, boatmen interpret river conditions, drivers recommend food and lodging, photographers produce souvenirs, craft sellers narrate artistic traditions, and informal guides translate monuments into stories. Their knowledge can raise visitor satisfaction and local spending, but unregulated intermediation can also create

harassment, misinformation or price disputes. The policy response should not be simple exclusion. Training, identification, voluntary certification and access to accurate multilingual materials can convert existing informal knowledge into higher-value work. Heritage sites particularly need guides who can distinguish evidence from legend without insulting living belief. For historians, these intermediaries are also sources: interviews with long-serving guides, priests and vendors can reveal changes in visitor origin, seasonality, transport and spending that are absent from official statistics. Their livelihoods are part of the destination archive.

126.22 Women and youth in tourism livelihoods

Tourism offers entry points for women and young people because many services can begin at household or micro-enterprise scale: food, homestay hosting, guiding, craft sale, digital marketing, photography, transport coordination and event services. Yet participation is shaped by mobility, safety, access to capital and control over income. A woman may perform most of the labour in a homestay while registration and payment remain in another family member's name. Young guides may have language and smartphone skills but lack recognized credentials or year-round demand. Policy should therefore examine who owns the enterprise, who receives payment and who bears unpaid labour. Women's collectives and local training institutions can help aggregate services, but tourism work should not be romanticised as automatically empowering. The best evidence combines enterprise registration with interviews, payment records and time-use information so that invisible labour becomes visible in economic analysis.

126.23 Digital discovery, booking and payment

Digital systems increasingly determine which destinations are visible before a journey begins. Search results, map listings, short videos, online reviews and booking platforms influence itineraries; QR payments shape on-site convenience; and social media can turn a previously local fair or viewpoint into a sudden mass destination. Chapter 125 showed that platform visibility is governed by ranking systems and unequal digital capability. The same applies to tourism. A well-documented small site may attract more visitors than a historically important place with poor online information. Local institutions therefore need accurate location data, opening hours, accessibility information, transport instructions and multilingual descriptions. Digital promotion without physical readiness is dangerous, however. Viral visibility can produce crowds before toilets, waste systems or emergency routes exist. The sequence should be documentation, capacity and stewardship first, then promotion calibrated to what the destination can safely absorb.

126.24 Tourism investment and Bihar policy after 2023

Bihar's Tourism Policy 2023 frames tourism as an investment and employment sector, combining infrastructure, focus destinations, marketing, digital interventions, skills and sustainability with fiscal and non-fiscal incentives. The 2024 Branding and Marketing Policy adds a stronger emphasis on professional content and promotion, and the tourism department's 2026 scheme list includes homestay and other new initiatives. For the regional historian, these policies mark a shift from ad hoc site improvement toward a more explicit tourism economy. Their effects, however, must be measured project by project. Incentive approvals do not equal completed hotels; branding does not equal increased dwell time; and infrastructure budgets do not prove local benefit. The most useful evaluation asks whether private investment follows, whether local workers gain skills, whether small enterprises can participate, and whether public assets remain maintained after inauguration.

126.25 Branding, storytelling and the danger of flattening regions

Tourism branding can make a region legible to outsiders, but it can also flatten cultural complexity. 'Mithila', 'Buddhist circuit', 'Ramayana circuit' or 'Anga heritage' are useful organising labels only if they lead visitors toward deeper understanding. Problems arise when a brand treats living communities as costumes, merges distinct historical periods, or presents contested traditions as uncontested fact. The economic temptation is obvious: simple stories sell easily. Yet long-term cultural tourism depends on trust and intellectual quality. Museums, websites, guides and signage should distinguish archaeological evidence, textual tradition, later memory and living belief. Maithili, Angika, Hindi, Nepali and English can all have roles in interpretation. Multilingualism is not merely symbolic; it expands access and signals respect. A destination that explains complexity well can attract repeat, educational and research visitation rather than depending only on one-time spectacle.

126.26 Seasonality, crowd management and public services

Seasonality is the defining operational problem of pilgrimage economies. A destination may have ample toilets, parking and beds for ordinary months but fail catastrophically during a major mela; building permanent infrastructure for the absolute peak can meanwhile leave costly assets underused. Flexible systems are therefore crucial: temporary sanitation, modular barriers, seasonal bus services, emergency water points, mobile health teams and designated vending zones. Figure 502 conceptualises the cycle from ordinary days through peak and cleanup. The economic burden also falls on residents when roads become inaccessible or prices rise. Crowd management should protect local mobility as well as visitor safety. Good management can extend the season by promoting quieter cultural, educational and nature experiences outside festival periods. This smooths employment and reduces the pressure to earn an entire year's tourism income in a few crowded weeks.

Pilgrimage economies oscillate between ordinary days and festival peaks

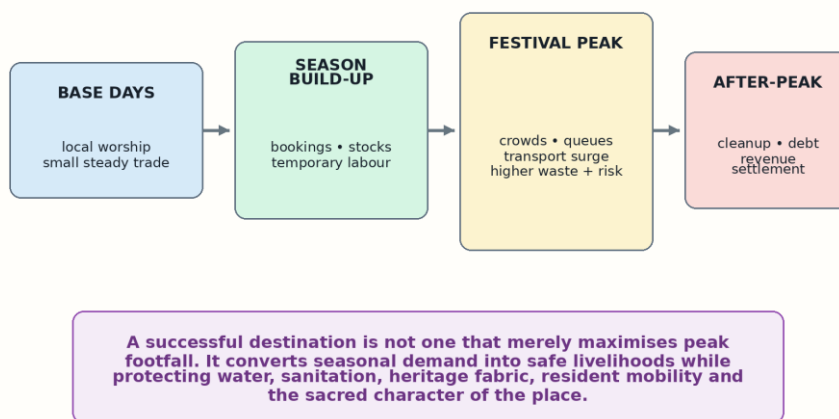


Figure 502 — Pilgrimage economies move between ordinary demand, seasonal build-up, festival peaks and post-event costs; crowd capacity is therefore an economic variable.

126.27 Heritage conservation and the economics of authenticity

Heritage is both an economic asset and a non-renewable cultural resource. Archaeological bricks, palace fabric, temple art, ponds and historic streets cannot be treated like expendable attractions. Heavy footfall, inappropriate construction, vibration, graffiti, uncontrolled vendors or visually intrusive commercial signage

can reduce the authenticity that draws visitors in the first place. Conservation therefore belongs inside tourism economics, not outside it as a cultural luxury. Spending on drainage, documentation, skilled repair, visitor routing and security preserves future income streams. At living sacred sites, conservation must also accommodate ritual use; at archaeological sites, new facilities should respect protected zones and visual setting. The correct question is not how to make every site look new, but how to maintain material integrity while allowing safe use. A conserved destination can generate value for generations; a damaged one converts heritage capital into short-term revenue.

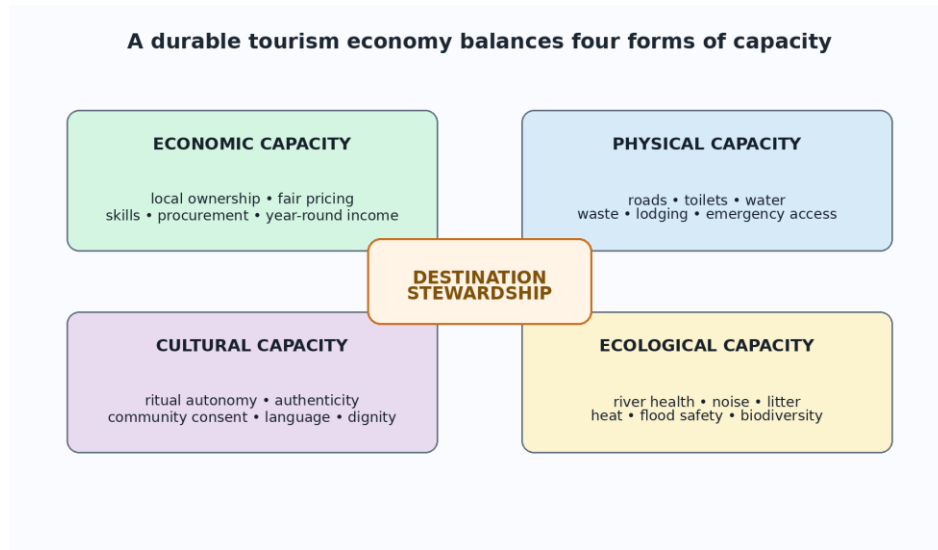


Figure 503 — Durable destination stewardship balances economic, physical, cultural and ecological capacity rather than maximising footfall alone.

126.28 Leakage, local procurement and the tourism multiplier

The tourism multiplier depends on where businesses buy inputs and who owns them. A locally owned guesthouse that purchases vegetables, milk, linen, repairs and transport nearby circulates visitor spending through several households. An externally owned property importing supplies and using a distant booking platform may retain much less value locally even at higher room rates. The same distinction applies to craft retail: direct purchase from an artist has a different distributional effect from purchase through a chain shop. Destination studies should therefore map supply chains, not only tourist expenditure. What share of food is sourced locally? Who owns vehicles? Where are platform commissions paid? Who receives land rent? These questions reveal leakage. Local procurement policies, producer cooperatives and direct digital payment can strengthen retention without excluding outside investment. The goal is not economic isolation but a negotiated balance in which external capital expands capacity while local households capture a meaningful share of returns.

126.29 Measuring success beyond footfall

Footfall is an incomplete success metric. A destination can report millions of visits while residents face congestion, heritage deteriorates and most visitors spend little locally. Better indicators combine volume with quality and distribution: average length of stay; local spend per visitor; occupancy outside peak periods; share of procurement sourced locally; number and survival of local enterprises; women's and youth earnings; visitor satisfaction; waste per visitor; water stress; conservation condition; accident and health incidents; and resident attitudes. For pilgrimage sites, affordability and ritual access should be included. For cross-border circuits, travel-time reliability and ease of payments matter. These measures require local data systems far

more detailed than state tourism totals. The evidence matrix in Table 126.1 therefore combines administrative statistics with hotel, transport, merchant, site and community records. What is not measured cannot be managed, but what is easy to count should not automatically become the goal.

126.30 Synthesis: from destinations to a resilient regional network

The most promising regional strategy is a network rather than a single flagship destination. Mithila–Janakpur can anchor Ramayana and cultural travel; Vaishali can connect Buddhist and Jain routes; Anga can combine Vikramshila, Champapuri, Sultanganj, Mandar and river ecology; Darbhanga and Madhubani can support urban, artistic and literary itineraries. Connectivity improvements from Chapter 124 and digital discovery/payment systems from Chapter 125 make such combinations easier. The next challenge is governance: common information standards, accurate maps, coordinated festivals, trained guides, local procurement, conservation and cross-border cooperation. A network also distributes demand, allowing visitors to stay longer without overloading one site. Tourism becomes a durable part of the contemporary economy when sacred places retain dignity, heritage remains intact, residents see tangible benefits and visitors encounter the region as a connected historical landscape rather than a sequence of isolated photo stops.

Table 126.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing tourism and pilgrimage economies

Evidence source	What it establishes	Economic use	Main limitation
State DTV / FTV series	reported annual tourist visits by state	trend and scale benchmark	visits are not unique tourists; no cultural-region split
Site / temple / ASI counts	destination-level footfall and seasonality	capacity planning and comparative demand	counting methods differ; many sites have no gates
Festival administration records	peak-day crowds, services and incidents	temporary infrastructure and staffing	estimates can be politically or operationally rough
Hotel / lodge occupancy	overnight stays, room rates and seasonality	dwell time and accommodation income	misses dharamshalas, informal stays and day visitors
Transport / border data	origins, corridor use and travel-time change	catchment and connectivity analysis	purpose of travel may be unknown
Merchant / vendor diaries	ticket size, product mix and cash flow	local multiplier and peak-season earnings	small samples; informal records
Guide / priest / driver interviews	visitor origin, behaviour and long-run change	qualitative destination history	recall and selection bias
Craft producer sales	direct visitor purchase and commissions	local cultural-economy capture	tourism sales can be hard to separate from other channels
Waste / water / health logs	environmental and service pressure	carrying-capacity management	often collected only during major events
Project budgets / completion data	public capital and facility creation	investment effectiveness	sanction is not completion or use
Resident surveys	distribution of benefits and costs	social licence and stewardship	requires repeated, representative sampling

Chapter 127 — Mithila Painting in the Global Market

Chapter 127 examines the transformation of Mithila painting from a largely domestic and ritual visual practice into a transregional and global art market. The phrase ‘global market’ can mislead if it suggests one unified arena with transparent prices. In practice, Mithila paintings circulate through many partially connected channels: direct commissions, village and town dealers, government craft emporia, fairs, tourist shops, artist collectives, non-profit exhibitions, galleries, museums, diaspora networks, e-commerce portals and social-media sales. Each channel produces a different combination of income, prestige, documentation and control. A painter who sells directly to a collector may retain more of the price and customer relationship; a museum exhibition may yield less immediate cash but substantially increase long-term recognition and provenance. The economic history of the form therefore lies in institutions and intermediaries as much as in the paintings themselves.

The movement onto paper during the drought years of the 1960s was a decisive commercialization and portability shift, but it was not the origin of Mithila painting. Recent scholarship, especially the 2025 volume edited by Paula Richman and David L. Szanton, stresses the long domestic history of women painting auspicious images and ritual spaces in Mithila. Government handicraft initiatives during the drought supplied or encouraged paper as a saleable medium, allowing works to travel beyond the house and region. Once paintings became portable, signatures, individual style, dealers, exhibitions and collecting practices acquired new importance. By the 1970s and later, named artists such as Sita Devi and Ganga Devi were no longer treated simply as anonymous bearers of a collective folk tradition; their careers helped establish the idea that a Mithila painting could be both a culturally rooted practice and an authored artwork.

The contemporary market is now institutionally layered. India’s handicrafts administration lists Madhubani painting as a Bihar GI craft; the GI certificate date recorded in the official handicrafts compendium is 16 May 2007. The National Portal’s ODOP pages currently connect the craft to public and private buying channels, while Bihar operates a dedicated Madhubani-art e-commerce portal whose current self-description advertises hundreds of handmade works and scores of artists. Internationally, museum exhibitions and collections have strengthened provenance and scholarly recognition, while organisations such as the Ethnic Arts Foundation and the Mithila Art Institute have created alternative routes that link training, curation and sales. North of the border, the Janakpur Women’s Development Center developed its own paper-painting economy from 1989 onward. These overlapping systems create opportunity, but they also raise questions about pricing, copying, standardisation, gender, caste, origin claims and who receives the value created by the global popularity of the Mithila image.

127.1 A market history rather than a style catalogue

Mithila painting’s global market cannot be understood by counting paintings or listing famous motifs. The economic object changes according to the channel through which it moves. A wedding-wall image is embedded in household ritual and may never be priced. A painting on paper can enter a handicraft shop. The same artist’s work, when documented in an exhibition catalogue, purchased by a museum or reproduced in a scholarly volume, acquires a provenance that may reshape its later value. Tourist demand rewards portability and recognisable imagery; galleries may reward originality and authorship; public programmes may reward certification or participation; online platforms reward searchable titles, photographs and logistics. These systems overlap but do not use identical standards. The chapter therefore treats the market as a sequence of institutions that assign price, authenticity, reputation and meaning. Figure 504 visualises that transformation while retaining an essential caution: becoming marketable did not make ritual meaning disappear.

127.2 From domestic ritual surface to portable commodity

Portability changed the economics of the tradition. Wall and floor paintings were inseparable from houses, ceremonies and seasonal renewal. Paper, cloth and later canvas created objects that could be stored, transported, exhibited and sold. Portability also made comparison possible: buyers could place several works side by side, dealers could sort by size and style, and museums could accession individual objects. The new medium encouraged signatures, dates, titles and artist biographies because detached works require information that a household context once supplied automatically. Yet portability also changes production incentives. Artists may work to buyer dimensions, repeat successful themes, use commercially stable colours or produce inventories for fairs. A ritual image created for a particular marriage is not economically identical to a paper work intended for an unknown buyer. The market therefore does not merely distribute pre-existing art; it changes the conditions under which art is made, named and remembered.

127.3 The drought-era paper transition and its limits as an origin story

The familiar story of the 1960s drought is best treated as a market turning point rather than a creation myth. Scholarship and museum accounts describe government handicraft intervention during severe drought, when women were encouraged to transfer established visual practices onto paper for sale. This created income at a moment of agrarian distress and made paintings portable. But to say that ‘Madhubani painting began in the 1960s’ would erase the older domestic painting tradition that made the paper works possible. It would also make state intervention appear as the source of the art rather than a change in its commodity form. The distinction matters economically. If a market is believed to have invented a tradition, buyers may value only portable products and neglect the living practices, ritual knowledge and women’s labour from which they emerged. A responsible global market recognises the 1960s as a shift in medium, circulation and livelihood strategy, not the birth of Mithila visual culture.

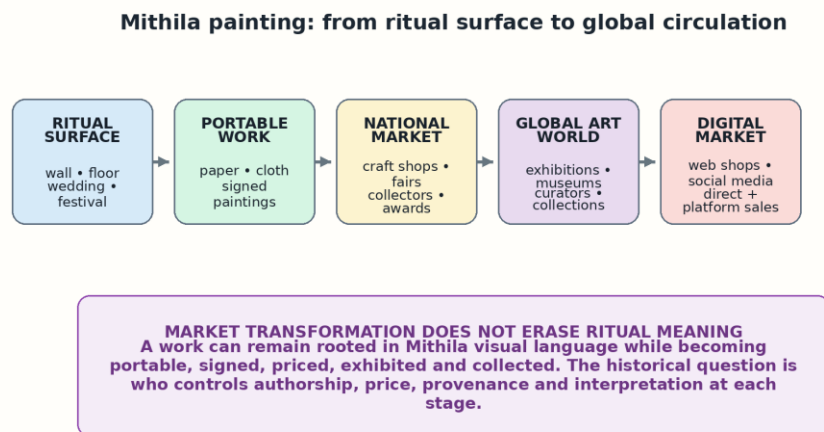


Figure 504 — Mithila painting moved from ritual surfaces into portable, national, international and digital markets without losing its older cultural meanings.

127.4 Signatures, named artists and the emergence of authorship

Paper painting helped individual authorship become more visible. Once a work leaves the household, buyers and curators want to know who made it. Names such as Sita Devi and Ganga Devi became central to national and international recognition, and Jyotindra Jain’s study of Ganga Devi demonstrated how an

individual painter could transform inherited visual language into narrative, autobiographical and experimental work. Authorship changes price formation because two visually similar works are no longer necessarily interchangeable. A documented master artist, a student, an anonymous workshop product and a reproduction may occupy very different markets. Signatures also create responsibilities: spelling must be consistent, dates and villages should be recorded, and sellers should avoid attributing workshop output to a well-known name merely because it resembles that artist's style. The move from anonymous 'folk' object to authored work is therefore both an artistic recognition and an economic infrastructure built from metadata, trust and provenance.

127.5 Early dealers, craft institutions and unequal bargaining power

Commercialisation initially exposed a basic asymmetry: artists often possessed skill but not market information, transport, English-language networks, storage or access to metropolitan buyers. Dealers and institutional intermediaries could therefore control both price and demand. The Ethnic Arts Foundation's own history recalls Raymond Owens reacting in the late 1970s to what he regarded as severe underpayment and pressure for repetitive production, then purchasing selected works at much higher rates and returning later sale proceeds to artists. Whatever the exact price ratios in any individual transaction, the structural issue is clear: when the buyer knows final demand and the producer does not, bargaining power is unequal. That remains relevant in online markets. A platform or reseller may know the customer, advertising cost and retail price while the artist sees only the wholesale payment. Fair markets require transparent commissions, itemised deductions, prompt payment and, where possible, access to customer and provenance records.

127.6 'Folk art' classification and the problem of a single market category

The label 'folk art' opened important markets but also created constraints. It placed Mithila painting within national craft and vernacular-art circuits, making it legible to institutions and buyers. At the same time, classification can imply that works are collective, repetitive, timeless or primarily decorative. Such assumptions suppress differences among individual artists, communities, subjects, ambitions and price levels. The 2025 scholarship on Mithila painting repeatedly challenges this flattening by treating painters as historical actors with biographies and changing visual languages. Economically, a single generic category can hold prices down: if a buyer thinks every 'Madhubani painting' is substitutable for every other, artistic reputation and innovation carry little premium. Conversely, an elite art-world reclassification can create scarcity and prestige but leave most producers outside the higher-value segment. The challenge is to recognise both shared tradition and individual authorship without forcing all works into one economic tier.

127.7 Caste, community and the widening field of professional painters

Market expansion changed who could participate. Older accounts often foreground Brahmin and Kayastha women because particular ritual painting practices and early collectors made their work especially visible. Over time, women from other communities, including Dalit painters, gained recognition, and men also entered professional painting. This widened field should not be narrated as a simple disappearance of caste. Access to training, household time, paper and colours, transport to towns, literacy, digital devices, language skills and networks remains unequal. Styles historically associated with particular communities can become commercial labels detached from their social history, while artists may also borrow and innovate across those boundaries. A fair market records the artist and their own account of practice rather than assigning identity from visual stereotypes. It also recognises that inclusion is not achieved merely because more social groups appear in catalogues; the distribution of high-value commissions, exhibitions and institutional attention must also be examined.

127.8 Women's income, household bargaining and artistic agency

For many women, painting income has altered household bargaining power. Museum and institutional narratives document artists whose success enabled greater financial independence, mobility and public recognition. But empowerment should not be inferred from sales alone. Women may still combine painting with unpaid domestic and care work; male relatives or dealers may control transport and payments; irregular orders may create unstable earnings; and artistic labour can be underpriced because it is seen as an extension of women's household craft rather than professional work. The market can nevertheless create important new options when payment is made directly to the painter, when artists travel to exhibitions, when their names appear on catalogues, and when teaching or commissions diversify income. The strongest indicator of agency is not simply that women produce saleable art, but that they can negotiate price, choose subjects, retain authorship, control earnings and decide how their work is represented.

127.9 The Ethnic Arts Foundation and an alternative transnational market

The Ethnic Arts Foundation provides a distinctive example of transnational market intermediation. Founded in 1980, it built a system around purchasing works, organising exhibitions and returning sale proceeds to artists, while also supporting documentation and scholarship. Its significance lies less in being a model that can be copied mechanically than in the questions it raises about intermediary ethics. An intermediary can add genuine value by curating, transporting, insuring, framing, documenting, translating and introducing artists to institutions. The problem arises when those functions are opaque or when the intermediary captures most of the appreciation in value. EAF's long relationship with painters also illustrates how repeated contact can build provenance and encourage ambitious, non-repetitive work. In a fragmented global market, trusted intermediaries remain important, but their legitimacy should be judged by transparency, artist benefit, documentation and whether they expand rather than monopolise artists' access to buyers.

Different market channels distribute money, information and control differently

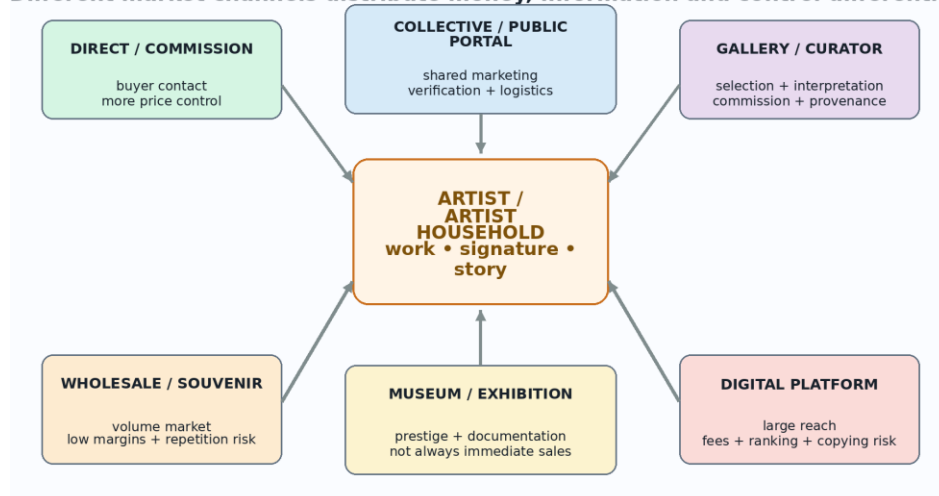


Figure 505 — Direct sales, public portals, galleries, museums, digital platforms and souvenir channels distribute money, information and control differently.

127.10 The Mithila Art Institute and professional formation

The Mithila Art Institute, established in Madhubani in 2003 with support from the Ethnic Arts Foundation, changed the supply side of the market. It created a structured training environment where

young artists could learn the history and practice of Mithila painting, develop individual work and encounter visitors, researchers and curators. Training can raise quality, confidence and market literacy, but it also changes the mode of transmission. Knowledge once learned within households and villages becomes partly institutional, with selection, curriculum, critique and exhibitions. This is not necessarily a loss of authenticity; it is a new educational infrastructure. Economically, professional formation helps artists enter markets that require consistency, deadlines, artist statements, documentation and larger commissioned works. At the same time, schools must avoid creating a single institutional style. The market is strongest when training enlarges artistic possibility rather than standardising work for predictable buyers.

127.11 State handicraft policy, awards and public craft markets

Government craft policy provides another major market channel. Handicrafts agencies classify and promote Madhubani painting, organise fairs, identify artisans, support awards and connect the craft to national marketing programmes. Such systems can give artists travel, visibility and access to consumers who might never visit Madhubani. They can also produce administrative categories that favour artisans who possess registration documents, bank accounts, digital familiarity or connections to implementing agencies. Public fairs often combine direct retail with demonstration, making the artist visible to the buyer and potentially reducing intermediary layers. Yet fair participation has costs: travel, accommodation, inventory, unsold stock and time away from household responsibilities. An evaluation should therefore compare gross sales with net income and subsequent commissions. Public recognition is valuable, but the economic objective is not merely to display the craft; it is to improve sustainable artist livelihoods and bargaining power.

127.12 Geographical Indication recognition in 2007

Madhubani Paintings received a Geographical Indication certificate dated 16 May 2007, according to the Government of India handicrafts GI compendium. The GI formally links the registered product to Bihar and creates an origin-based intellectual-property framework. In market terms, this is a branding asset: it signals that the name refers to a geographically rooted tradition rather than a free-floating decorative style. It can support tourism, public procurement, export promotion and consumer education. The economic value of the GI, however, depends on use. Buyers need to understand what the indication certifies; producers need accessible authorised-user or equivalent participation pathways where relevant; and enforcement must distinguish protected origin claims from legitimate artistic influence or descriptive discussion. The GI is therefore best seen as market infrastructure, not as a price guarantee. Its history and legal architecture lead directly into broader questions of heritage branding and intellectual property.

127.13 What a GI can—and cannot—do for artists

A GI cannot by itself solve underpayment, copying or weak provenance. It protects a geographical indication, not every individual composition, signature or image. A seller can misuse an artist's photograph, copy a design, falsely claim that a reproduction is hand-painted or obscure the actual maker even when the product name is correctly associated with the region. Conversely, excessive policing of a tradition can freeze it into a checklist of motifs that artists themselves do not recognise as mandatory. The economic task is to layer protections: origin claims for the regional tradition; contracts and invoices for transactions; signatures and artist records for authorship; copyright or licensing where applicable for individual images; and consumer education to distinguish originals, workshop products, prints and machine reproductions. GI value is greatest when it strengthens artist identity and market trust rather than substituting a collective label for the person who made the work.

127.14 ODOP, public portals and digital state marketing

Digital public marketing has become increasingly important. The National Portal's ODOP pages currently present Madhubani painting as a GI-linked product and provide buying links, while Bihar's dedicated Madhubani-art e-commerce portal presents a curated digital shop and currently advertises more than 500 handmade works from more than 50 artists, together with a customer count. Those figures should be read as portal self-description, not as an audited estimate of the total market. Their importance is institutional: the state is no longer promoting the craft only through fairs and emporia but through searchable online inventory, artist pages and home delivery. Digital public portals can reduce discovery costs and provide an authenticity signal, but their economic performance depends on traffic, photography, search design, payment reliability, packaging, returns and how artist payments are calculated. A portal with many listings but few transactions is not automatically a successful market institution.

127.15 Craft fairs, tourism and the souvenir economy

Tourism creates a large low- and middle-price market for paintings and painted products. Visitors to Madhubani, Darbhanga, Janakpur and wider Mithila circuits may buy small works, greeting cards, textiles or household objects as portable cultural memory. This market can spread income to many producers and encourage demonstrations, workshops and homestay-linked sales. It also creates the risk of a souvenir trap in which speed and recognisable motifs are rewarded more than originality. The problem is not small or inexpensive work itself; artists may deliberately create several product tiers. The problem is when buyers cannot distinguish an original signed painting from a traced or mass-printed object, or when souvenir wholesalers dictate repetitive output at very low margins. Tourism policy should therefore combine point-of-sale information, artist identification, transparent pricing and opportunities to encounter higher-ambition work as well as affordable products.

127.16 Galleries, curators and the conversion of craft into art-world value

Galleries and curators convert paintings into art-world value by selecting, contextualising and documenting them. Selection can increase scarcity, and catalogue essays can change how buyers interpret the work. A painting described only as 'Madhubani folk art' competes in a generic decorative market; the same work, when linked to a named artist, date, village, exhibition history and body of work, enters a more differentiated market. This can be beneficial because it rewards authorship and artistic development. It can also reproduce new hierarchies: a small group of artists become legible to metropolitan or international institutions while equally skilled painters remain in craft markets. Curatorial power should therefore be treated as an economic force. Who gets selected, who is translated, whose biography is published and which themes are described as 'contemporary' can affect both reputation and price.

127.17 Museums, exhibitions and the production of provenance

Museum acquisition and exhibition are among the strongest producers of provenance. The British Museum holds Madhubani works and documents individual objects, artists, dates and acquisition histories. The Chazen Museum of Art mounted 'Mithila Painting: The Evolution of an Art Form' in 2013, and the Asian Art Museum in San Francisco presented 'Painting Is My Everything' in 2018 with seventeen contemporary artists. Such exhibitions do more than generate publicity. They create stable cataloguing records, high-quality images, curatorial narratives and institutional associations that can follow an artist's work for decades. They also move Mithila painting from a temporary sales event into collections and art history. Yet museum prestige should not be confused with direct livelihood impact. Acquisition budgets,

loan fees, reproduction rights and artist participation vary. Ethical exhibition practice should document artists accurately, compensate where appropriate, and ensure that the institution's long-term informational value does not detach the work from living communities.

127.18 Diaspora collectors and transnational cultural attachment

Diaspora collectors create a different form of transnational demand. For Maithil, Bihari, Nepali and broader South Asian communities abroad, a painting can function as cultural attachment as well as art. Wedding gifts, home decoration, religious imagery and regionally specific memories all generate demand. Diaspora buyers may also commission themes that connect migration with Mithila identity, producing new visual subjects. Their purchasing power can support higher prices, but distance makes provenance and logistics more important. Buyers depend on photographs, digital payments, shipping and trust in sellers. Diaspora networks can bypass metropolitan galleries through direct social-media contact, yet they can also concentrate demand around familiar motifs. A mature market should make it easy for overseas buyers to discover a wide range of named artists rather than only a few viral images, and should provide invoices, dimensions, medium, artist biography and care instructions with every significant work.

127.19 Janakpur painting and Nepal's parallel market history

Nepal's Janakpur painting economy is related to, but institutionally distinct from, the Bihar market. The Janakpur Women's Development Center began in 1989 as a project that helped Maithil women transfer wall designs to paper; its first exhibition of works on paper was held in Kathmandu in 1990. Artists experimented with Nepali handmade lokta paper and acrylic colour, developing a recognisable Janakpur paper-painting practice. The history demonstrates why 'Mithila painting' should be understood as a cross-border cultural field rather than an India-only commodity name. At the same time, market institutions, legal protections, materials and buyer networks differ between the two countries. Janakpur artists have exhibited internationally and often depict both ritual themes and contemporary social life. Comparative analysis should therefore distinguish shared visual-cultural roots from separate organisational and commercial histories.

127.20 The Janakpur Women's Development Center as cultural enterprise

The Janakpur Women's Development Center is also a case study in cultural enterprise. It combined painting with ceramics, textiles, printing and other crafts, while linking income generation to literacy, management and women's collective organisation. Its 1998 online exhibition already documented international exhibitions in the United States and Europe. This model demonstrates how a market can be built around a women-run institution rather than individual dealer relationships. Collective production can share fixed costs, provide workspace and create a recognised brand; it can also make individual authorship less visible if products are marketed only under the organisation's name. The best institutional practice preserves both levels: the collective should be credited for training, logistics and fair-trade organisation, while the painter remains identifiable whenever an artwork is individually authored. This dual recognition strengthens provenance and prevents women's labour from disappearing behind a development-project brand.

127.21 How prices are formed when there is no transparent price index

There is no transparent, comprehensive price index for Mithila painting. Prices differ by artist reputation, provenance, size, medium, complexity, condition, theme, exhibition history, seller commission, location and urgency of sale. An online asking price is not the same as a completed transaction; a gallery retail price is not

the artist's net receipt; and an old auction result may reflect provenance that a new work does not have. Figure 506 therefore treats price as an evidence problem, not a formula. For historical analysis, invoices, dealer ledgers, exhibition catalogues and artist recollections are more useful than isolated web listings. Where a work has clear authorship and institutional history, the market can differentiate it from generic workshop output. Where metadata is absent, even excellent paintings may become economically anonymous. Better documentation is thus not bureaucratic overhead—it is part of value creation.

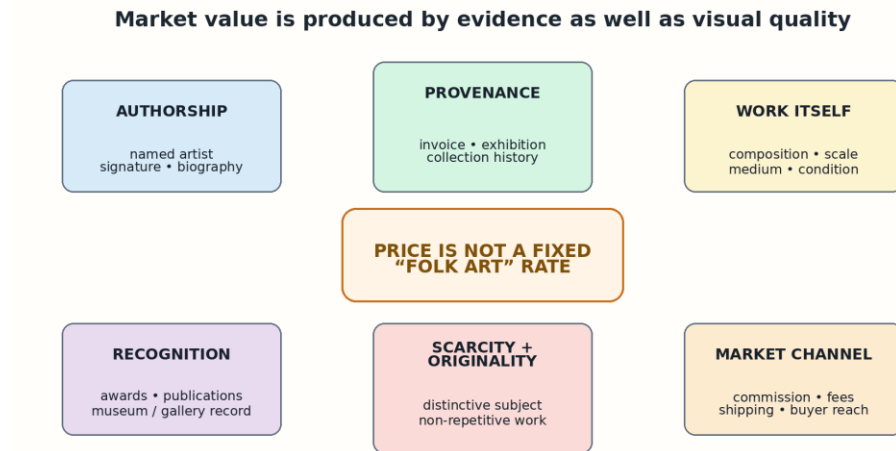


Figure 506 — Price formation depends on authorship, provenance, material qualities, recognition, originality and the market channel; there is no single “Mithila painting price”.

127.22 Repetition, wholesaling and the low-margin volume trap

The opposite of high-provenance art is not necessarily ‘bad’ art; it is often low-margin volume production. Wholesalers and souvenir markets can create steady orders for small, repeated designs, which may be economically rational for households needing predictable cash. The danger arises when repetition becomes compulsory and payment does not reflect labour. Dealers may specify motifs, colours and sizes known to sell quickly, compressing creative time and turning artists into piece-rate producers. Such production can coexist with ambitious individual work, but only if artists have market options. Training, direct sales and exhibitions matter because they allow a painter to choose between fast commercial products and slower original compositions rather than being locked into one segment. Analysts should therefore avoid romanticising either extreme. Mass demand can broaden livelihoods; elite collecting can reward experimentation. A healthy market needs a ladder between them.

127.23 Authenticity, innovation and the danger of freezing a living tradition

Authenticity is often invoked in global craft markets as if it meant unchanged repetition of an ancient design. That definition is historically false and economically harmful. Mithila painting has changed media, pigments, subject matter, scale, gender participation and institutional setting. Artists have responded to migration, environmental issues, political events, illness, family life and global news. Innovation is evidence that a tradition is alive. Authenticity is better located in honest authorship, cultural knowledge, process and provenance than in a fixed list of motifs. Buyers should be told whether a work is ritual-derived, experimental, commissioned, collaborative or adapted for a product. The market becomes exploitative when it demands that artists perform an outsider’s image of timeless village life while rejecting contemporary

themes as ‘not traditional’. Cultural sustainability requires the opposite: room for artists to inherit, argue with and extend their own visual language.

127.24 Contemporary subjects, social criticism and feminist visual language

Contemporary subject matter has been one of the strongest ways painters claim authorship. Museum exhibitions and recent scholarship document works on women’s lives, social inequality, environmental protection, politics and global events alongside gods, marriage imagery, flora and fauna. Feminist painters such as Rani Jha have used Mithila conventions to address gender directly, while artists from historically marginalised communities have expanded the social archive contained in the form. Such works can reach buyers who encounter Mithila painting as contemporary visual commentary rather than ethnographic decoration. They also complicate market categories: a politically explicit painting may fit awkwardly in souvenir shops but attract galleries, universities or museums. The expansion of subject matter therefore changes both the social meaning of the tradition and its segmentation across markets.

127.25 New surfaces, products and the boundary between artwork and design

Commercialisation has also expanded the range of surfaces and products: paper, canvas, cloth, garments, household textiles, stationery, ceramics, furniture, walls and public installations. Product diversification can create year-round demand and employ designers, printers and tailors as well as painters. It also raises an authorship boundary. A unique painting signed by one artist is economically different from a repeatable motif licensed for fabric, and both are different from an unlicensed digital print copied from the internet. Sellers should describe these categories clearly. Artists can benefit greatly when a motif is licensed for reproducible products, but only if the agreement specifies payment, duration, territory, attribution and permitted uses. Without such contracts, product diversification can detach the image from the maker and shift value toward manufacturers. The market should reward both fine-art originals and well-designed reproducible products without pretending they are the same object.

127.26 E-commerce, social media and direct-to-buyer possibilities

E-commerce and social media lower the cost of reaching distant buyers. An artist or family can post new work, accept a commission and ship directly without maintaining a metropolitan shop. Public portals and specialist retailers can aggregate demand, while social platforms allow biographies and process videos to travel with the image. Yet digital visibility is unequal. Good photography, English or Hindi copy, search optimisation, smartphones, reliable connectivity, packaging and online payment systems all matter. Platform algorithms may reward frequent posting and low prices rather than artistic quality. Fraudsters can copy images and offer reproductions. The key economic gain from digital commerce is not merely reach but data: artists who know which works sell, who their repeat buyers are and what prices are achieved can bargain more effectively. Platforms that hide this information reproduce the old dealer asymmetry in digital form.

127.27 Digital copying, image rights and origin claims

Digital circulation makes image rights increasingly important. A photograph of a painting can be copied instantly, printed on merchandise or used to train visual models without the artist ever seeing the downstream transaction. Regional origin protection does not automatically solve this problem. The practical response is layered documentation: high-resolution master images retained by the artist or trusted archive; public web images sized for display; visible artist credit; embedded metadata where feasible; contracts for commercial reproduction; and invoices that distinguish purchase of the physical work from licence to

reproduce its image. These measures should not become barriers that prevent legitimate scholarship, education or cultural circulation. The goal is to make commercial appropriation traceable and negotiable. The global success of the Mithila visual vocabulary increases the value of this rights infrastructure because copying becomes easier precisely when recognition becomes widespread.

127.28 Materials, conservation and the long-term value of works on paper

Long-term value also depends on material survival. Many contemporary works are on handmade or commercial paper with acrylic, poster colour, ink or natural pigments. Poor-quality acidic paper, unstable colour, adhesive tape, humid storage, direct sunlight and rolled shipping can damage works before they ever enter a collection. Artists and sellers benefit from basic conservation literacy: record medium and paper type, allow paint to dry fully, interleave and support works in transport, avoid pressure-sensitive tape, and give buyers simple framing and storage guidance. Museums and serious collectors add condition reports, climate control and conservation records, which in turn strengthen provenance. Material care is therefore part of the market, not an afterthought. A painting that survives well for decades can remain a cultural and financial asset; one that fades or tears because it was sold without care instructions loses both historical evidence and value.

127.29 Measuring the market: what evidence is actually available

The size of the global market is difficult to measure because transactions are dispersed. Government statistics generally count handicrafts in broad categories rather than isolating Mithila painting; galleries and platforms rarely publish completed-sales data; direct artist sales are private; museum acquisitions may disclose objects but not prices; and souvenir markets are largely informal. Website counts show inventory, not turnover. Social-media followers show attention, not income. A credible economic history therefore triangulates evidence. Artist household accounts reveal net earnings; invoices and catalogues reveal price and provenance; museum databases reveal institutional recognition; fair records reveal public-market participation; portal archives reveal digital inventory; shipping and export records may reveal movement but not always craft type; interviews reveal bargaining structures. Table 127.1 sets out this evidence architecture and its limits.

127.30 Toward a fairer and more durable global market

A fairer global market would not choose between tradition and commerce; it would improve the terms on which they meet. Artists need multiple channels so no single dealer, portal or curator controls access. Every significant work should carry the artist's name, place, date, medium and a durable transaction record. Public programmes should measure net artist income, repeat customers and order quality rather than only participation counts. Galleries and museums should make provenance and artist biographies visible. Digital sellers should distinguish originals from prints and disclose commissions. Training institutions should combine artistic development with contracts, pricing, photography and conservation. Cross-border networks should recognise the shared Mithila cultural field while respecting distinct Indian and Nepali institutions. Figure 507 summarises the principle: economic fairness, cultural integrity, provenance and material survival must reinforce one another. Global recognition is durable only when the people who make the art retain meaningful control over its value and story.

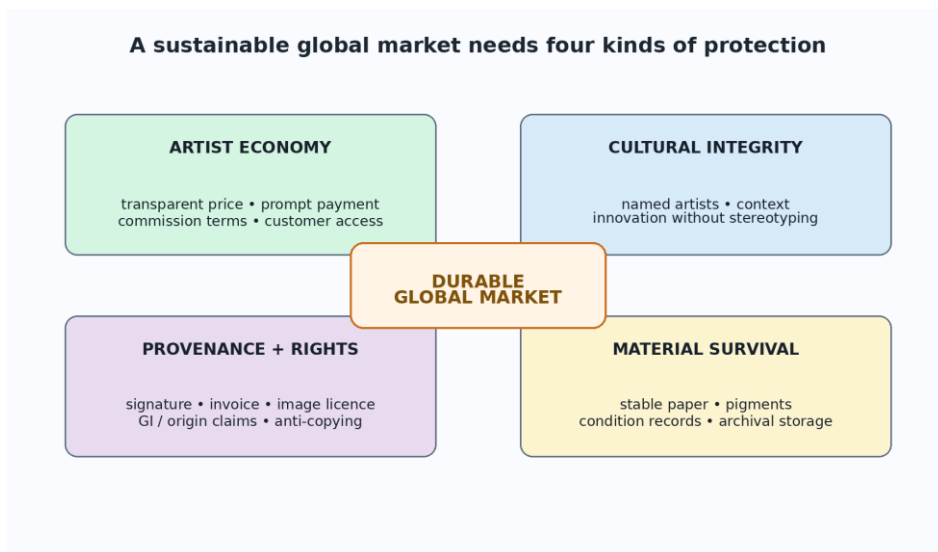


Figure 507 — A durable global market requires economic fairness, cultural integrity, provenance and rights, and material preservation to reinforce one another.

Table 127.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing Mithila painting in the global market

Evidence source	What it establishes	Market use	Main limitation
Artist ledger / household account	work made, time, materials, sale and payment	net-income and livelihood analysis	often incomplete or private
Signed invoice / certificate	artist, date, medium, buyer and price	provenance and later resale trust	format is not standardised
Dealer / gallery ledger	wholesale and retail price, commissions	value-chain and margin analysis	commercially confidential
Exhibition catalogue	artist biography, works, dates and curation	reputation and provenance	selection favours visible artists
Museum collection record	accession, object history, dimensions, maker	institutional canon and durable metadata	purchase price may be undisclosed
GI registry / craft compendium	protected regional indication and registration date	origin branding and policy history	does not measure artist income
Public e-commerce portal snapshot	listed artists, inventory, categories and claims	digital-market infrastructure	listing count is not completed sales
Fair / festival sales record	footfall, retail transactions and commissions	tourist and direct-sales market	net costs may be omitted
Platform / social analytics	views, enquiries, conversion and repeat buyers	digital demand and discovery	platform controls data; attention ≠ income
Shipping / customs documentation	destination and movement of goods	transnational circulation	craft may be aggregated under broad codes
Artist / intermediary oral history	bargaining, copying, training and market change	explains institutions and power	recall and selection bias
Conservation / condition record	materials, damage, treatment and storage	long-term collection value	rare in low-price markets

Chapter 128 — GI, Heritage Branding and Intellectual Property

Chapter 128 examines the legal and economic machinery that turns cultural reputation into market labels. ‘Heritage branding’ is often used loosely to cover geographical indications (GIs), One District One Product programmes, museum authority, tourism campaigns, certification marks, trademarks, packaging, festival promotion and even informal phrases such as ‘authentic Mithila’. These devices are not equivalent. A GI is a statutory right over an origin-linked indication for specified goods; copyright protects original expression; a trademark identifies an enterprise; a certification or collective mark can signal compliance with a group standard; and heritage safeguarding concerns the survival and transmission of knowledge and practices. Confusing these layers produces exaggerated claims—especially the idea that a GI somehow creates ownership over an entire artistic tradition or automatically raises producer incomes.

The Mithila–Vajji–Anga region is unusually useful for studying these distinctions because it contains both cultural and agricultural GIs. The Indian GI register includes Madhubani Paintings, Mithila Makhana, Shahi Litchi of Bihar, Bhagalpuri Zardalu, Katarni Rice, Bhagalpur Silk, Sikki Grass Products of Bihar, Sujini Embroidery Work of Bihar, Applique (Khatwa) Work of Bihar and Manjusha Art, among others. They do different economic work. An agricultural GI may depend on varietal identity, soil, processing and traceable supply; a handicraft GI depends more heavily on makers, methods, design traditions, quality control and the correct use of a regional name. In both cases, registration is only the legal beginning. Governance after registration determines whether producers can actually use the sign, distinguish genuine goods and capture a price or market advantage.

Madhubani Paintings also shows why administrative dates must be read carefully. The current IP India public record gives application number 37, filing date 22 August 2005, certificate number 31 and certificate date 16 May 2007. As reviewed on 5 September 2026, the same record still shows status ‘Registered’ while displaying ‘Registration Valid Upto 21-08-2025’ and a renewal notice dated 26 November 2024; it does not display a newly extended validity date. This chapter therefore records both facts rather than silently assuming the result of a renewal process. The larger lesson is methodological: heritage branding should be reconstructed from registers, authorised-user records, specifications, labels, invoices, platform listings, court or enforcement records and producer testimony—not from promotional language alone.

128.1 Heritage branding is not the same as intellectual property

Heritage branding begins before law. A place name, motif, crop, recipe or craft can acquire reputation through repeated social recognition long before a government registers anything. Markets then add labels: ‘Mithila’, ‘Madhubani’, ‘Bhagalpur’, ‘Janakpur’, ‘Shahi’, ‘Jardalu’, ‘Katarni’ or ‘Makhana’. Some are ordinary descriptive language; some become protected GIs; some are used inside trademarks or public-development programmes. A historical analysis must therefore ask two separate questions: who produces cultural reputation, and who receives legal authority to use or police the resulting sign? These can be different groups. State agencies, tourism departments and retailers may amplify a brand even though the knowledge that makes the product valuable remains dispersed among artists, farmers and artisan households. The economic issue is not whether branding is ‘good’ or ‘bad’, but whether the brand can be connected to transparent standards, producer participation, enforceable rights and a measurable return to the community whose reputation created it.

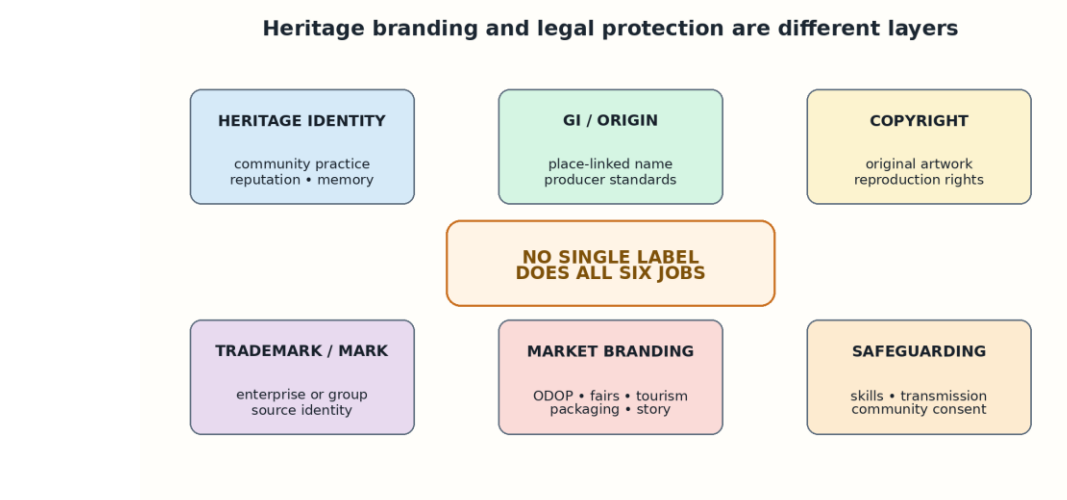


Figure 508 — Heritage identity, GI protection, copyright, marks, market branding and safeguarding are distinct but complementary layers.

128.2 What a geographical indication actually is

A geographical indication is an origin sign. WIPO defines a GI as a sign used on goods that come from a specific place and possess qualities, characteristics or a reputation essentially attributable to that origin. The legal object is therefore not an abstract tradition but the use of an indication in relation to specified goods. This is especially important for heritage products. A consumer may associate ‘Madhubani’ with a visual language, yet the GI right operates through the registered indication, the relevant class of goods, the defined geographical area and the standards contained in the registration record. The same logic applies to agricultural goods: the word ‘Mithila’ in Mithila Makhana links a product to an origin-based reputation, but it does not create ownership over every use of the word Mithila. GI law is a form of collective market regulation: qualified producers inside the defined area may use the protected sign, while misleading use by outsiders can be restrained.

128.3 India’s GI legal framework and collective rights

India protects GIs through the Geographical Indications of Goods (Registration and Protection) Act, 1999, in force from 2003 and amended through later legislation. The Act separates the registered proprietor from authorised users. An association of persons, producers, organisation or authority representing producer interests may register the indication; individual producers can apply to be entered as authorised users. Registration gives the registered proprietor and authorised users standing to seek relief for infringement, and gives authorised users the exclusive right to use the GI for the registered goods, subject to conditions. Unlike a private trademark, a GI cannot ordinarily be assigned, licensed, pledged or mortgaged as a freely transferable corporate asset. This structure matters historically because it embodies a collective territorial logic: the sign is supposed to remain attached to a producer community and place rather than becoming the alienable property of one firm. Whether that collective logic functions in practice depends heavily on authorised-user participation and local institutions.

128.4 Madhubani Paintings: the registration chronology

Madhubani Paintings entered the Indian GI system early. The public registry records application number 37, filed by the Director of Industries, Department of Industries, Bihar, on 22 August 2005. The goods are

classified as handicraft in Class 16; the geographical area is stated as Bihar. The GI Journal availability date is 6 February 2007, certificate number 31 is dated 16 May 2007, and official state-wise lists continue to classify Madhubani Painting as a registered Bihar handicraft GI. These dates explain why secondary sources sometimes give different ‘GI years’: one may cite the filing year, another the certificate year. For historical precision the chapter uses both. The certificate created a legal origin sign, but it did not create Mithila painting as a cultural form, nor did it suddenly transform all artists into authorised users. The longer market history described in Chapter 127 precedes registration by decades.

128.5 Renewal, registry status and the danger of administrative overstatement

The current registry illustrates another archival problem: legal status can be displayed through several administrative fields that do not update simultaneously. On 5 September 2026, the Madhubani Paintings page showed status ‘Registered’, a displayed registration-valid-until date of 21 August 2025, and a renewal notice dated 26 November 2024. It did not show a newly extended validity date. A responsible history should not erase this inconsistency by guessing. Instead it records the registry as found and treats any later renewal certificate or updated register entry as the evidence needed to establish the next validity period. This small issue has wider significance. Heritage brands depend on continuing administration—renewal, authorised users, specification maintenance, enforcement and public records. A famous label may remain culturally powerful even while its legal paperwork is in transition. Historians and market participants should distinguish cultural persistence from the formal status shown in the statutory register.

128.6 The geographical-area problem: ‘Bihar’ versus the cultural geography of Mithila

The registration describes the geographical area as Bihar, while the cultural discourse of Madhubani/Mithila painting is more specific and also extends across the international border into Nepal’s Madhesh. This mismatch illustrates how administrative and cultural geographies can diverge. A broad state-level legal territory may simplify registration and enforcement, but it can blur local centres such as Jitwarpur, Ranti, Madhubani, Darbhanga and other sites where particular styles, lineages and institutions developed. Conversely, defining the GI too narrowly could exclude legitimate practitioners whose families or workshops belong to the wider tradition. The correct question is therefore not simply ‘what is the real boundary of Mithila?’ but ‘what boundary is legally registered for these goods, and how does that boundary interact with the lived geography of practice?’ The answer matters for authorised-user eligibility, consumer claims and the treatment of Maithil painting made in Nepal, which shares cultural history but sits outside an Indian territorial registration.

128.7 Registered proprietor, producer and authorised user

A GI becomes economically meaningful when producers can actually use it. IP India distinguishes the registered proprietor from an authorised user: a producer of registered GI goods may apply to be entered as an authorised user. For handicrafts, the statutory idea of producer includes making, manufacturing, trading or dealing in the goods. In practice, this creates a governance challenge. If the authorised-user system is too costly, obscure or administratively distant, the artists or farmer-producers whose reputations sustain the GI may remain outside the formal register. The result can be a paradox: the region possesses a famous GI, but the right is weakly embedded in everyday transactions. Authorised-user data are therefore not a bureaucratic footnote; they are one of the best indicators of whether registration has reached the producer base. A mature GI system should make eligibility, application, renewal, labelling and enforcement intelligible to ordinary producers, cooperatives and self-help groups rather than only to lawyers and departments.

128.8 What GI protection can prevent

GI protection is aimed principally at deceptive or unauthorised use of the protected indication. Under Indian law, infringement includes using a registered GI on goods in a way that suggests they originate in a geographical area other than their true origin and misleads people about origin. This is different from a quality guarantee in the everyday sense. The law protects the indication and the connection between goods and place; quality control enters through the registered specification and producer compliance. In a practical marketplace, enforcement can involve packaging, signs, online descriptions, invoices and advertising. A seller outside the qualifying area who merely copies a visual motif may raise copyright, passing-off or consumer-protection issues, but a GI claim is strongest when the seller falsely presents the goods under the protected geographical indication. Good enforcement therefore requires evidence of what was sold, how it was described, where it was made and whether the seller was entitled to use the sign.

128.9 What a GI does not monopolise

A GI does not by itself give the community ownership over every technique, motif or idea associated with a tradition. WIPO explicitly notes that GI protection ordinarily does not prevent someone from making a product using the same techniques set out in the standards; the protected right concerns the indication. This is crucial for Mithila painting. Fish, lotus, bamboo, marriage scenes, deities, geometric borders and dense line work are parts of a large cultural repertoire. The GI should not be interpreted as a copyright over those ideas. Nor does it automatically stop an artist elsewhere from making a painting inspired by a similar aesthetic if the work is not falsely marketed under the protected GI or otherwise infringing a specific copyrighted work. Overstating GI scope can freeze culture and create false expectations. The more accurate protection strategy combines origin law with individual copyright, contracts, attribution, consumer-protection rules and community norms.

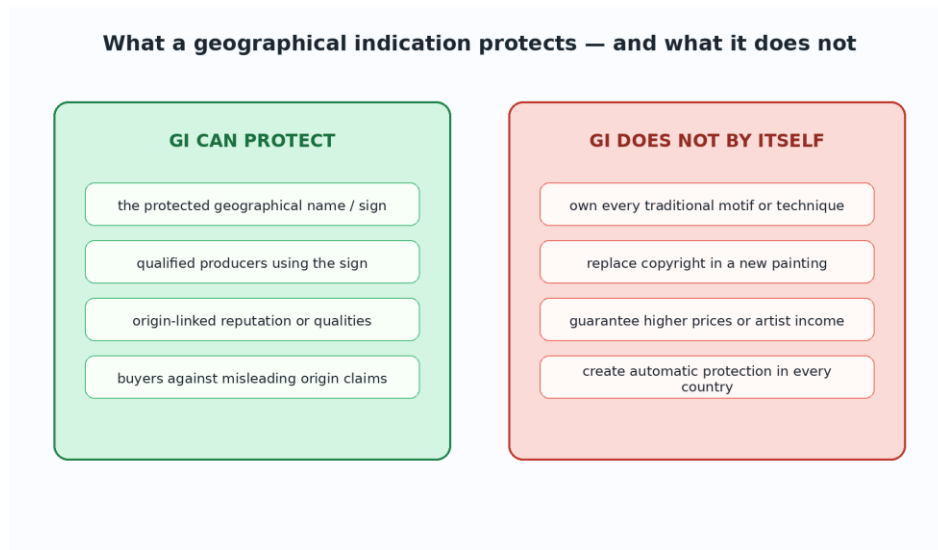


Figure 509 — A GI protects a qualifying origin-linked indication; it does not by itself monopolise techniques, guarantee producer income, or replace copyright.

128.10 Copyright in contemporary Mithila paintings

Contemporary paintings can be protected as original artistic works under India's Copyright Act, 1957. The Act defines artistic work to include paintings, drawings, engravings and works of artistic craftsmanship, whether or not they possess a prescribed level of artistic quality. Copyright in an artistic work includes rights

to reproduce it, communicate it to the public, issue copies, include it in film and make adaptations. This layer is different from GI protection. A Mithila artist can own copyright in her particular painting even though many elements draw on inherited visual conventions. A buyer who purchases the physical painting does not automatically acquire every reproduction right. This distinction is increasingly important in digital markets, where images are photographed, scanned, printed on garments, used in advertisements or reposted at scale. The relevant legal question is often not ‘is this authentically Mithila?’ but ‘who owns or controls reproduction of this particular work?’

128.11 Authorship, moral rights and attribution

Copyright also contains moral or special rights that matter greatly in heritage markets. Section 57 of India’s Copyright Act gives authors the right to claim authorship and to object to certain distortions or modifications prejudicial to honour or reputation, independently of the economic copyright. For artists historically marketed as anonymous ‘folk’ producers, attribution is not merely ceremonial. A name attached to a work creates biography, provenance, exhibition history and future market value. Removing the artist’s name while retaining only the regional label can transfer cultural prestige away from the maker and toward dealers or institutions. Conversely, indiscriminate attribution can also be harmful if a work is wrongly assigned to a famous artist. Heritage branding should therefore strengthen, not replace, individual authorship. A good label can carry both levels: the protected regional indication and the verified name of the maker, with dates, materials and transaction history where known.

128.12 Commissioned art, contracts and ownership of reproduction rights

Commissioned work complicates ownership. India’s copyright rules contain special provisions on first ownership when a painting or portrait is made for valuable consideration at another person’s instance, subject to agreements and statutory conditions. In modern practice, the safest approach is a written contract that separates the physical object from reproduction, merchandising, advertising and digital-image rights. A hotel may commission a mural; a publisher may commission an illustration; a fashion company may license a motif; a museum may acquire a painting while requesting image rights for a catalogue. These are not the same transaction. Without clear terms, artists can unintentionally surrender commercial uses far more valuable than the original fee, while buyers may assume rights they never obtained. Heritage-brand programmes should provide simple model contracts in local languages so artists and artisan groups can specify attribution, territory, duration, media, exclusivity, payment and permitted modifications.

128.13 Traditional motifs and the traditional-cultural-expression gap

Traditional cultural expressions expose the limits of conventional IP systems. WIPO uses the term TCEs for forms in which cultural heritage is expressed—designs, symbols, music, narratives, performance and other inherited creative forms. Existing IP tools can protect some aspects: a contemporary adaptation may qualify for copyright; a regional handicraft may use a GI; a community enterprise may use a trademark. Yet no single conventional right maps neatly onto collectively created, intergenerational motifs whose original individual author is unknown. This ‘TCE gap’ is especially visible when a company lifts a traditional pattern, changes it slightly and commercialises it at large scale without misleading consumers about geographical origin and without copying a single identifiable modern artwork. The legal issue may fall between GI, copyright and contract. This is why WIPO’s international work on traditional knowledge and traditional cultural expressions remains important for regions whose cultural capital is both collective and commercially attractive.

128.14 Trademarks, collective marks and certification marks

Trademarks and related marks solve different problems from GIs. A trademark identifies goods or services as coming from a particular enterprise. A collective mark can identify members of an association, while a certification mark can indicate that goods meet defined standards set by a certifying body. In heritage economies these devices can complement a GI. For example, a producer collective may develop its own logo and reputation while also using a regional GI where eligible. A certification system can signal natural materials, fair payment, documented authorship or quality requirements that the GI specification does not address. But these marks should not be allowed to imply exclusive ownership over the wider culture. The analytical test is simple: does the sign identify a place-linked collective good, an enterprise, membership in a group, or compliance with a standard? Once those functions are separated, brand architecture becomes clearer and enforcement less confusing.

128.15 ODOP and public heritage branding

One District One Product and similar development programmes are heritage-branding mechanisms, not substitutes for IP law. The National Portal currently lists Madhubani Paintings as a GI-tagged ODOP product for Madhubani and Darbhanga and links buyers to commerce channels. Such programmes can improve visibility, packaging, exhibitions, procurement and market access. Their economic value lies in coordination: local administrations can place training, credit, logistics and promotion around a recognisable product. Yet ODOP status does not itself define who owns a motif, who may use a GI, or how an artist's copyright is licensed. Promotional pages also tend to simplify complex traditions into compact origin stories. For historical work they are evidence of state branding, not neutral histories of the art. The strongest development model is layered: public branding creates demand, statutory IP protects legitimate signs and works, and producer institutions ensure that demand returns income to makers.

128.16 GI recognition without post-registration governance

Registration alone does not generate a functioning GI economy. After registration, somebody must maintain producer lists, standards, testing or verification, renewal, labels, complaint procedures and market surveillance. These tasks are costly and organisationally difficult, especially when production is dispersed across villages and informal workshops. The weakness is often not lack of cultural reputation but lack of post-registration governance. A famous GI can be printed on publicity material while local producers remain unsure how to become authorised users; online sellers may use the place name loosely; consumers may not know what label to look for; and enforcement may occur only sporadically. The value of a GI should therefore be measured through operational indicators—authorised-user coverage, compliance costs, producer awareness, frequency of legitimate label use, price or market-access changes, enforcement outcomes and the distribution of benefits across gender, caste and scale of producer—not simply by the existence of a certificate.

A heritage label creates value only when governance works

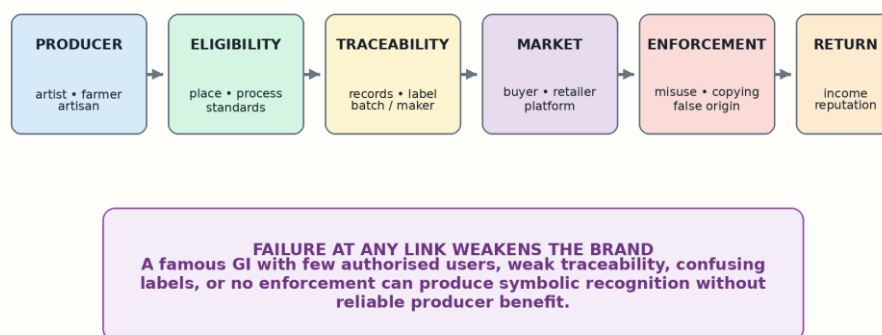


Figure 510 — Heritage branding creates durable producer value only when eligibility, traceability, market use, enforcement and benefit return form a functioning chain.

128.17 Mithila Makhana: agricultural origin branding

Mithila Makhana demonstrates how the same regional name functions differently in agriculture. The Indian GI register records application number 696, filed by the Mithilanchal Makhana Utpadak Sangh on 14 August 2020, with certificate number 421 dated 16 August 2022 and validity shown to 13 August 2030. Here the economic claim is tied to an agricultural commodity, production ecology and processing tradition rather than to visual expression. The GI can support origin differentiation in wholesale and retail markets, but it still does not guarantee a producer premium. Effective branding requires traceability from pond or production cluster through processing, grading and packaging. The makhana example also shows how a regional cultural term can become a legally delimited commercial indication. That may strengthen recognition of Mithila in national markets, yet it also requires care that ‘Mithila’ as a broad civilisational name is not mistaken for a private commercial property outside the specific registered goods.

128.18 Shahi Litchi and the Vajji–Muzaffarpur horticultural brand

Shahi Litchi of Bihar represents another form of heritage branding centred on horticulture. The GI register records application number 552, filed on 20 June 2016 by the Litchi Growers Association of Bihar, with certificate date 5 October 2018. Muzaffarpur and the wider Vajji belt are central to the public reputation of Shahi litchi, and Bihar Agricultural University, Sabour, appears in the registration record as facilitator. Here the GI can help distinguish a perishable fruit whose reputation depends on cultivar, place, timing and handling. But the commercial problem is not only naming. Cold-chain reliability, grading, packing, transport time and export phytosanitary requirements determine whether a geographical premium survives beyond the farm gate. Heritage branding without post-harvest infrastructure can raise demand while leaving growers exposed to spoilage and volatile prices. GI history must therefore be joined to supply-chain history.

128.19 Bhagalpuri Zardalu, Katarni Rice and place-linked agricultural reputation

Bhagalpuri Zardalu and Katarni Rice extend origin branding into the Anga economy. Official GI records list Bhagalpuri Zardalu and Katarni Rice among Bihar’s registered agricultural indications filed in 2016. Their names carry both sensory and geographical reputation: Zardalu mango is associated with the

Bhagalpur-Sultanganj belt, while Katarni is valued as an aromatic rice of eastern Bihar. These cases demonstrate that heritage branding can attach to biological materials and cultivation practices as strongly as to crafts. They also expose the problem of replication. If planting material or seed moves, which qualities remain place-dependent and which can be reproduced elsewhere? GI law answers through the registered origin and specification, but agricultural science may show a more complex interaction among genetics, soil, microclimate and farmer practice. This makes field-level documentation essential for both legal credibility and long-term conservation of the product itself.

128.20 Bhagalpur Silk, Manjusha, Sikki, Sujini and Khatwa

The region's handicraft GIs form a dense but differentiated cluster. Bhagalpur Silk, Manjusha Art, Sikki Grass Products of Bihar, Sujini Embroidery Work of Bihar and Applique (Khatwa) Work of Bihar each connect material skill to place and community. They should not be treated as interchangeable 'Bihar crafts'. Bhagalpur silk has a textile-production and trading history tied to weaving; Manjusha carries a distinctive narrative-visual tradition associated with Anga; Sikki depends on a grass material and coiling/weaving skills; Sujini developed through embroidery; Khatwa centres on appliqué. A state branding campaign may place them together in a handicraft portfolio, but their producer institutions, labour processes, gender structures, raw materials and risks differ. Effective IP governance therefore needs product-specific standards and producer organisations rather than one generic heritage policy. The comparative value of the cluster is precisely that it allows historians to see how one legal form—the GI—interacts with very different economies.

128.21 One region, many brands: the danger of flattening cultural difference

The multiplication of labels can flatten internal diversity. 'Mithila art', 'Bihar handicraft', 'ODOP product', 'GI tagged' and 'heritage craft' can each be true, yet each highlights a different scale. Market storytelling tends to simplify because short labels travel easily. The danger is that a regional brand can erase village, caste, gender, lineage or individual differences that are historically significant. Conversely, hyper-specific micro-branding can fragment a shared tradition and create exclusionary claims. Heritage governance therefore requires a nested vocabulary. A product can be described simultaneously by region, locality, maker, technique, material and institution. For a painting, that might mean a named artist from a particular village working within the Mithila tradition and using a GI-eligible origin label. For food, it may mean the GI, producer organisation, harvest year and batch. Layered description strengthens provenance without pretending that one brand fully contains the culture.

128.22 Standards, specifications and traceability

Specifications are the technical core of a credible GI. They translate cultural reputation into testable or documentable criteria: geographical area, raw materials, production method, characteristics, evidence of historical reputation and mechanisms for inspection or verification. In agriculture, traceability may involve grower registration, variety, field location, harvest and processing records. In handicrafts, it may involve maker identity, production location, material, method and approved labelling. The tension is that living traditions change. A specification that is too vague cannot support enforcement; one that is too rigid may freeze legitimate innovation. The best system distinguishes essential origin-linked features from aspects that can evolve. This is also where producer participation matters most. Standards written only by officials or consultants can become administratively elegant but socially unrealistic. A functioning heritage brand needs rules that producers understand, can comply with and regard as legitimate.

128.23 Labels, logos, QR codes and digital provenance

Modern heritage branding increasingly depends on small technical devices: labels, logos, serial numbers, QR codes, digital catalogues and searchable producer records. These tools do not create authenticity by themselves, but they can make claims auditable. A QR code can link a buyer to the registered GI, authorised producer, artist biography, production locality, materials, batch or invoice. For artworks, high-resolution reference images and provenance records can help distinguish an original from later reproduction. For agricultural goods, batch-linked data can support traceability through processing and retail. Yet digital provenance also raises privacy and governance questions: who controls the database, who corrects errors, how long records survive and whether small producers are excluded by technical requirements. The principle should be ‘minimum sufficient evidence’: enough information to verify origin and authorship without imposing a digital bureaucracy more expensive than the goods being protected.

128.24 False origin, counterfeiting and misleading authenticity claims

False-origin claims are the clearest target of GI law, but heritage markets contain several different kinds of deception. A product can falsely claim geographical origin; a machine-made item can be passed off as handmade; a print can be sold as an original painting; a dealer can attach a famous artist’s name to an unsigned work; a product can use ‘GI tagged’ in advertising even though the seller is not entitled to the GI; or a tourist commodity can claim ritual antiquity for a newly invented design. Each problem requires different evidence and sometimes different law. GI, copyright, trademark, consumer protection, fraud and contract remedies overlap. The enforcement strategy should begin by identifying the false statement rather than searching for one universal ‘heritage law’. Documentation—photographs, receipts, labels, shipping records, platform screenshots and expert comparison—turns vague suspicion into a case that can actually be investigated.

128.25 E-commerce, platforms and image-based infringement

E-commerce intensifies both opportunity and infringement. A producer can reach distant buyers directly, but platforms also make it easy to copy photographs, reuse regional keywords, mass-produce lookalike designs and hide the physical origin of goods. Search algorithms reward familiar words such as ‘Madhubani’ or ‘Mithila’, which can encourage sellers to use them broadly even when legal entitlement is uncertain. Enforcement therefore needs a platform layer: verified producer accounts, clear notice-and-takedown procedures, preservation of seller records, image matching for copied works and a distinction between descriptive discussion of a style and commercial use of a protected indication. Artist copyright and GI rights may need to be asserted together. A copied image on a T-shirt could infringe the artist’s reproduction right even if the seller does not make a false geographical claim; a falsely labelled ‘Madhubani GI’ product raises the origin question even if its design is newly drawn.

128.26 Commercialisation, community benefit and UNESCO safeguarding principles

Commercialisation can support living heritage, but it can also distort it. UNESCO’s 2003 Convention defines safeguarding as measures that ensure viability, transmission and continued recreation by communities, and its operational guidance warns against decontextualisation and over-commercialisation. Commercial activity can generate income, employment and incentives for transmission, but communities should be primary beneficiaries and safeguarding measures should be developed with their participation. This is especially relevant when heritage branding turns ritual practices into tourist products or standardised

designs. The goal is not to prevent sale; communities have long adapted traditions to changing economies. The goal is to preserve agency. Producers should be able to decide what can be commercialised, what requires attribution or consent, what is sacred or restricted, and how benefits are shared. A rights-based heritage economy therefore combines market access with cultural self-determination.

128.27 Nepal's legal landscape and the Janakpur/Madhesh side of Mithila

On the Nepal side, the legal landscape is related but not identical. Nepal's Industrial Enterprises Act, 2073 (2016/17) defines intellectual property broadly to include geographical indication signs, while the Ministry of Industry, Commerce and Supplies lists GI policy, law and promotion among its functions. Nepal also adopted a National Intellectual Property Policy in 2017 and has long discussed modernising its IP legislation. At the same time, the operative Patent, Design and Trade Mark Act of 1965 is built around patents, designs and trademarks rather than a mature Indian-style GI register. This means that a Janakpur/Madhesh producer should not assume that an Indian GI registration automatically supplies protection or authorised-user status in Nepal. The cultural tradition is transborder; legal rights are territorial. For Maithil painting, textiles, foods and other goods circulating between the two countries, contracts, trademarks, provenance and future GI cooperation may be as important as Indian registration.

128.28 Territorial IP rights versus transborder cultural heritage

Territoriality is one of the hardest issues in a historically connected borderland. The Indian GI 'Madhubani Paintings' is an Indian statutory right with an Indian registered geographical area. The cultural practice of Maithil painting, however, extends into Nepal, where Janakpur artists have developed their own institutions and market histories. Neither fact cancels the other. The wrong response would be to make a cultural identity claim do the work of a legal registration, or to let a legal boundary redefine the entire historical culture. Transborder heritage requires two maps at once: the cultural map of communities, skills and exchange, and the jurisdictional map of enforceable rights. Where producers on both sides seek common branding, cooperation may require separate registrations, bilateral arrangements, compatible certification systems or shared provenance standards. The principle is that cultural connectedness should facilitate cooperation, not generate misleading claims about the territorial reach of an IP right.

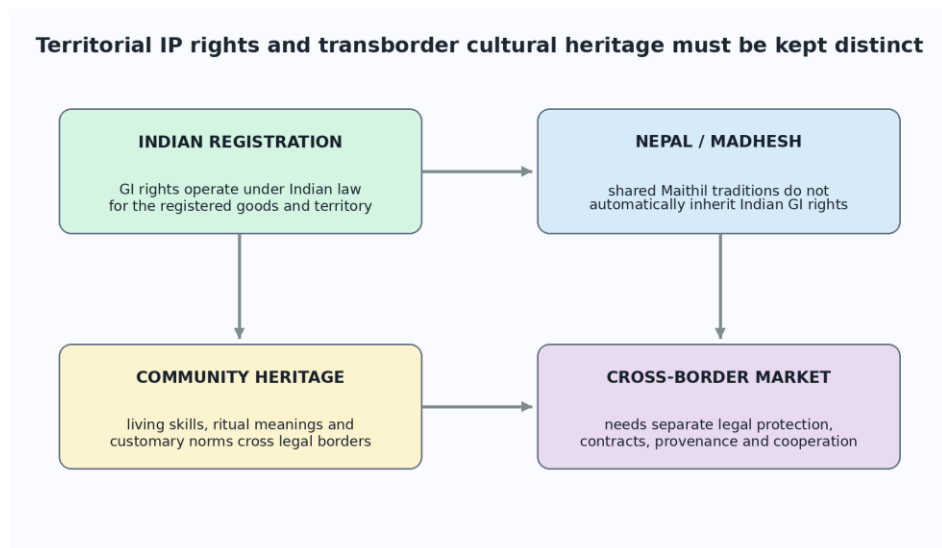


Figure 511 — Intellectual-property rights are territorial even when Maithil cultural heritage and markets cross the India–Nepal border.

128.29 Measuring whether heritage branding actually works

The success of heritage branding can be measured only with evidence beyond publicity. Relevant indicators include the number and distribution of authorised users; producer awareness of the GI; legitimate label use; enforcement actions; price differentials between verified and unverified goods; new wholesale or export channels; sales concentration among intermediaries; women’s control over earnings; costs of compliance; repeat purchases; consumer recognition; and whether younger producers continue learning the skill. For digital markets, platform conversion, complaint resolution and copied-image takedowns are useful. For agricultural GIs, farmgate prices, grading, rejection rates, post-harvest losses and traceable volumes matter. None of these measures is perfect. A price premium may reflect quality, scarcity or marketing rather than GI status alone. That is why before-and-after studies, matched producers, transaction records and interviews are preferable to single promotional numbers. The correct historical question is not ‘did the GI succeed?’ but ‘for whom, through which mechanism, and with what costs?’

128.30 Toward producer-centred heritage governance

A producer-centred system would treat heritage brands as shared infrastructure. Registration would be followed by local authorised-user drives, simple renewal support, clear labels, accessible specifications, transparent producer registers, model contracts, copyright education, platform enforcement and grievance channels. Cooperatives and women’s groups would have a role in setting standards and monitoring benefit distribution. Public procurement and tourism promotion would use verified producer information rather than only the regional name. Museums and archives would preserve maker attribution and provenance. Cross-border dialogue with Nepal would separate cultural cooperation from unsupported territorial claims. Above all, policy would avoid a false choice between ‘protecting tradition’ and ‘allowing innovation’. Living heritage survives through change. The legal task is to prevent deception, misappropriation and exclusion while allowing legitimate makers to adapt inherited knowledge, create new works and earn from the reputation they collectively sustain.

Table 128.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing GI, heritage branding and intellectual property

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in heritage-brand analysis	Main limitation
GI register entry	filing, proprietor, goods, area, dates, status	legal chronology and scope	fields may lag or show renewal transitions
GI specification / journal	origin link, standards, inspection logic	tests what ‘authentic’ legally means	may not reflect later practice
Authorised-user register	who can formally use the GI	producer reach and institutional depth	registration may undercount real producers
Copyright / licence contract	work, owner, permitted uses	image and reproduction rights	often absent in informal markets
Trademark / certification record	enterprise or standards-based sign	separates firm/group brand from GI	does not prove cultural legitimacy
Label / invoice / QR record	seller, maker, batch, transaction claim	traceability and provenance	can be incomplete or falsified
Platform listing / screenshot	online wording, price and origin claim	documents digital misuse and marketing	listing price is not completed sale
Enforcement / court record	dispute, legal theory, remedy	shows rights in operation	only a small fraction of misuse reaches court
Producer interview / accounts	costs, price, bargaining and awareness	measures lived economic effect	recall and selection bias
Consumer / buyer study	recognition and willingness to pay	tests whether branding changes demand	stated preference may differ from purchases

Chapter 129 — Climate Change and Agrarian Risk

Chapter 129 examines climate change as agrarian risk. The phrase matters. Farms do not experience a global mean-temperature curve directly; they experience heat during flowering, a delayed transplanting window, a dry canal, a waterlogged field, a failed fodder crop, a damaged road, a higher pump bill or a price shock after regional crop loss. Climate change alters the probability and intensity of some hazards, but economic loss appears through exposure and vulnerability created by landholding, irrigation, tenancy, credit, labour, seed systems, markets and public institutions. A social-economic history must therefore connect meteorology to the farm household rather than treating weather statistics as self-explanatory.

The recent evidence is unusually instructive. The India Meteorological Department reported that 2025 was India's eighth warmest year since 1901, with annual mean land-surface air temperature 0.28°C above the 1991–2020 average and a long-run warming trend across 1901–2025. India as a whole received 110 per cent of its long-period annual rainfall, yet East and Northeast India received only 80 per cent of its long-period southwest-monsoon rainfall, and IMD's 2025 Standardized Precipitation Index showed extremely or severely dry conditions in parts of Bihar. This is exactly why national rainfall totals cannot stand in for agrarian water conditions in Mithila, Vajji or Anga.

Across the border, Madhesh Province in Nepal experienced a severe 2025 drought. ICIMOD's rapid analysis estimated rainfall deficits of roughly 30–50 per cent, widespread groundwater stress and delayed rice transplantation—about 52 per cent completed compared with about 92 per cent at the same time a year earlier—together with a potential rice shortfall. ADB subsequently identified the delayed Madhesh monsoon, along with October flood damage elsewhere, as a factor reducing paddy output and pressuring food prices. These episodes do not by themselves prove that every component was caused by anthropogenic climate change. They demonstrate the kind of compound agrarian risk that a warming climate, variable monsoon, water dependence and unequal adaptive capacity make economically consequential.

129.1 Climate change as agrarian risk, not a weather slogan

The analytical starting point is to separate climate, weather and agrarian risk. Climate describes statistical patterns over long periods; weather is the event or season experienced now; agrarian risk is the possibility that those conditions produce economic or social loss. A heat wave matters differently to fallow land, flowering wheat, a dairy herd and a household with no irrigation. A monsoon deficit matters differently where a reliable canal exists than where a tenant depends on a costly diesel pump. The region's future cannot therefore be read from temperature or rainfall alone. The central historical question is how older institutions—fragmented holdings, tenancy, river-control systems, groundwater development, migration and public extension—mediate newer climatic pressures.

129.2 Hazard × exposure × vulnerability

A useful risk framework treats loss as the interaction of hazard, exposure and vulnerability. Hazard is the physical event or trend: heat, drought, intense rainfall, flood, waterlogging or a damaging sequence. Exposure asks what lies in its path and at what crop stage. Vulnerability asks how sensitive the exposed system is and how much capacity exists to cope or adapt. A short dry spell during a robust vegetative stage may have little effect; the same dry spell at transplanting or flowering can be decisive. A wealthy farmer with assured irrigation can absorb a pump repair; a marginal tenant may miss the entire planting window. This framework prevents 'climate' from becoming a blanket explanation for outcomes produced jointly by environment and social structure.

129.3 Attribution: what can and cannot be claimed

The scientific literature establishes that human-caused climate change has warmed the atmosphere and increased the likelihood or severity of several kinds of extremes, including heat. It does not follow that every local drought, flood or crop failure can be attributed to climate change without an event-specific analysis. Monsoon variability is shaped by multiple atmospheric and oceanic processes; river floods also depend on catchment rainfall, siltation, embankments, drainage and settlement; crop losses depend on planting date, variety and management. This chapter therefore uses climate change as a changing risk background and uses observed events as examples of vulnerability. Where no formal attribution study exists, the wording remains 'consistent with', 'occurred under', or 'illustrates' rather than 'was caused by'.

129.4 A warming baseline over the Indo-Gangetic and Terai plains

IMD's 2025 climate statement places the recent year within a longer warming record: India's annual mean temperature trend over 1901–2025 is positive, and 2024 remains the warmest year in the national series. Regional farms experience this background through hotter days and nights, higher evaporative demand and altered heat exposure for labour, crops and livestock. The Gangetic and Terai plains are not climatically uniform, but low elevation, dense settlement and intensive cropping make heat economically important. Higher temperatures can shorten crop development, increase irrigation demand and reduce safe outdoor labour hours. The historical significance is cumulative: a production system calibrated to older seasonal expectations must increasingly manage heat even in years when rainfall appears adequate.

Agrarian climate risk is a chain, not a single weather event



ADAPTATION lowers exposure or vulnerability; RESIDUAL RISK remains after feasible adaptation.

Historical institutions—land, credit, irrigation, migration and public extension—shape how the same climate hazard becomes unequal economic loss.

Figure 512 — Agrarian climate risk emerges through a chain linking hazard, exposure, vulnerability, loss and response; adaptation changes the chain but cannot remove all residual risk.

129.5 Monsoon dependence and intra-seasonal variability

Total monsoon rainfall is only one agronomic variable. Farmers also need onset timing, the distribution of rainy days, breaks between spells and rain intensity. Rice nurseries and transplanting depend on water at a narrow calendar stage; prolonged rain after sowing can be as damaging as deficit; intense rainfall may run off rather than recharge soil moisture. Cropping decisions are therefore sensitive to intra-seasonal variability. This is one reason district and block-level advisories matter more than a national seasonal headline. The economic risk rises when farmers must purchase seed, hire labour or rent pumps before they know whether the next critical rainfall window will arrive. Climate uncertainty thus interacts directly with working-capital decisions.

129.6 A wet region can still experience agricultural drought

Mithila and the north Bihar plains are widely associated with floods, yet drought and moisture stress are persistent parts of the agrarian system. Agricultural drought is not the simple opposite of flood history. A field can face delayed monsoon water in June and July and destructive inundation later in the season. Upland plots may dry while nearby lowlands waterlog. Canal or groundwater access may protect one village while another depends almost entirely on rain. The coexistence of flood and drought risk explains why climate resilience cannot be reduced either to embankments or to more pumping. Water must be available when crops need it and safely drained when it is excessive. Chapter 130 examines flood adaptation in detail; here flood is treated as one element in a wider risk portfolio.

129.7 2025 in India: above-normal national rain, regional dryness

The 2025 season provides a compact warning against spatial averaging. IMD reported 1,274 mm of annual rainfall for India, about 110 per cent of the 1971–2020 long-period average. Yet East and Northeast India received only 80 per cent of its long-period southwest-monsoon rainfall. The annual Standardized Precipitation Index also showed extremely or severely dry conditions in parts of Bihar. These measures are not interchangeable: one is an all-India total, one a broad regional monsoon statistic and one a spatial drought indicator. Together they show why agrarian analysis must move downscale. A farmer's crop calendar can fail in a year that looks 'wet' in the national aggregate.

129.8 2025 Madhesh drought as a crop-calendar shock

The 2025 Madhesh drought shows the economic force of timing. ICIMOD's rapid situational analysis reported deficient winter rain followed by weak monsoon performance, rainfall deficits of roughly 30–50 per cent, groundwater and borehole stress, and severe disruption to rice transplantation. By late July only about 52 per cent of rice land had reportedly been transplanted compared with about 92 per cent in the corresponding 2024 period. A delay at this stage propagates: nursery age changes, labour peaks shift, harvest is pushed later and the following rabi crop may be delayed. The shock is therefore not only lower rainfall; it is a compressed sequence of lost agricultural options.

129.9 Rice transplantation and the narrowing planting window

Transplanted rice is calendar-sensitive because nursery preparation, puddling, labour, standing water and field conditions must align. Delayed transplanting can force farmers toward older seedlings, shorter-duration varieties or direct seeding; it can also push harvest into a period that conflicts with wheat or maize establishment. Smallholders face especially hard choices when seed has already been purchased and labour arranged. ICAR's recent Bihar outreach has stressed timely crop establishment, short-duration rice where planting is delayed and direct-seeded rice under suitable conditions. These are not universal prescriptions. Soil type, weed control, water availability and farmer skill determine whether a technique works. Resilience comes from a menu of feasible options linked to real-time advisories, not from one promoted technology.

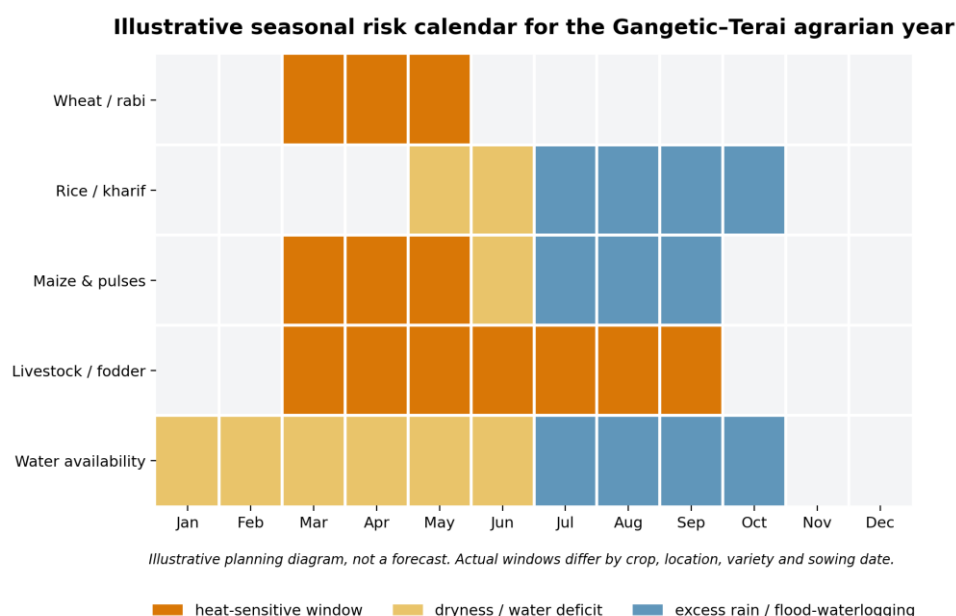


Figure 513 — Illustrative seasonal risk calendar: heat, water deficit and excess-water hazards overlap differently with rice, wheat, maize, livestock and water availability.

129.10 Terminal heat and wheat

Wheat is exposed to a different climate pathway. Much of the risk comes late in the season when rising spring temperatures can accelerate development during grain filling. The effect depends strongly on sowing date and variety. A delayed rice harvest can therefore create a cross-season cascade: late wheat establishment increases the chance that sensitive stages coincide with hotter weather. Research in Bihar has explicitly examined late-sown wheat and terminal heat as a production problem. Adaptation begins before the heat event—through timely rice harvest, suitable wheat varieties, seed access and machinery that allows rapid establishment. The rice-wheat system thus shows why climate risk cannot be analysed crop by crop in isolation.

129.11 Maize, pulses and crop-specific stress pathways

Maize and pulses diversify income and can fit into changing calendars, but they bring their own sensitivities. Maize can suffer from waterlogging as well as drought, and reproductive stages are sensitive to heat and moisture stress. Pulses often use less water than paddy but can be damaged by untimely rain, humidity or disease during flowering and harvest. Bihar Agricultural University and ICAR programmes have therefore worked on stress-tolerant varieties, crop diversification and location-specific agronomy rather than assuming that a single 'climate-smart crop' exists. Diversification is valuable because different crops fail under different conditions; its insurance value declines if all components share the same hazard exposure or market bottleneck.

129.12 Flood, waterlogging and submergence as yield risk

Excess water remains fundamental to northern Bihar and parts of the Nepal Terai. Submergence can destroy seedlings, waterlogging can reduce root oxygen, and prolonged inundation can delay replanting after the nominal flood has receded. Roads, storage and input delivery may be disrupted even where the standing crop survives. Farmers historically respond through crop choice, raised storage, livestock movement, flexible calendars and repeated sowing, while public policy adds embankments, drainage and relief. The difficulty is

that flood control itself can redistribute risk between places and times. Because those institutional and engineering questions deserve separate treatment, Chapter 130 examines flood adaptation and resilience directly. Chapter 129 treats excess water mainly as a competing climate hazard that must be managed alongside drought.

129.13 Groundwater: adaptation buffer and depletion risk

Groundwater is one of the most important buffers against rainfall failure because it lets farmers separate crop water from the exact timing of monsoon rain. But the buffer is not free. Wells require capital, pumps require electricity or fuel, aquifers require recharge and access is unequal. The 2025 Madhesh drought demonstrated how groundwater stress can intensify when weak winter rain and monsoon deficit coincide; ICIMOD reported that more than 30 per cent of boreholes were dry in affected areas. In Bihar, ICAR has also identified declining groundwater levels, irrigation energy cost and inefficient water application as current challenges. Climate adaptation that simply increases extraction can therefore shift risk into the future unless paired with recharge, efficient irrigation, surface-water management and monitoring.

129.14 Irrigation reliability, energy and unequal access

Irrigation statistics can overstate resilience if they count infrastructure without asking whether water arrives reliably, affordably and at the right time. A tubewell with an unreliable power supply, a canal with uncertain release or a pump that a tenant cannot afford may exist on paper while the crop remains exposed. Energy pricing also shapes water use: cheap power can support timely irrigation but encourage over-pumping where groundwater is scarce. Solar pumps lower operating costs yet need governance for the same reason. Adaptation should therefore measure service quality—hours of supply, depth to water, cost per irrigation, tail-end access and emergency availability—not merely installed capacity. Unequal irrigation access is one of the main mechanisms by which the same drought becomes unequal household loss.

129.15 Soil moisture, soil health and climate sensitivity

Soil is the first water reservoir available to a crop. Organic matter, texture, compaction, drainage and field levelling influence whether rainfall is stored, lost as runoff or trapped as damaging waterlogging. Climate-resilient agriculture therefore overlaps strongly with ordinary agronomy: balanced nutrients, residue management, green manuring, legumes, conservation practices and soil-test-based management can improve rooting and water-use efficiency. Recent ICAR programmes in Bihar have promoted these measures alongside direct-seeded rice and crop diversification. Their value should not be romanticized as immunity to drought. Healthy soil can buffer short stress and improve efficiency, but severe rainfall failure still requires water, crop adjustment or income support. Resilience is incremental, not absolute.

129.16 Pests, diseases and ecological uncertainty

Temperature, humidity and rainfall affect pests and crop diseases, but outcomes are biologically complex. A warmer or wetter season can favour one organism while suppressing another; changing crop calendars alter host availability; pesticide practices alter resistance and beneficial insects. Climate narratives sometimes exaggerate by attributing every outbreak to warming. The safer economic approach is surveillance. Integrated pest-management systems, field scouting, diagnostic laboratories and timely advisories reduce the chance that an emerging outbreak becomes a large loss. Seed systems also matter because disease-resistant varieties and replacement seed must reach farmers before the relevant planting window. Climate resilience therefore includes ecological information infrastructure, not only physical irrigation.

129.17 Livestock heat, fodder and water stress

Livestock convert crop residues, fodder and household labour into milk, traction, manure and a liquid asset. Heat raises drinking-water needs and can reduce feed intake, fertility and milk production, while drought reduces fodder availability. Floods can isolate animals from veterinary services and dry shelter. Small dairy households may experience a compound shock when crop residues fall at the same time purchased feed becomes more expensive. Heat adaptation includes shade, ventilation, reliable water, adjusted feeding times, fodder reserves and breed-specific management. The household economy matters because women often perform much of the daily livestock care. A climate shock that leaves animal ownership unchanged can still increase unpaid labour and reduce marketed milk.

129.18 Fisheries, ponds and aquaculture risk

Ponds, wetlands and aquaculture diversify rural income in a region rich in water bodies, but they are climate-sensitive assets. High temperature can reduce dissolved oxygen; drought can shrink ponds and concentrate fish; intense rainfall or flood can cause overtopping and stock escape; polluted runoff can damage water quality. Fish culture therefore requires water-depth management, embankment maintenance, stocking decisions and access to timely advisories. The risk profile differs from field crops: a pond may benefit from rainfall that waterlogs paddy, yet fail under prolonged heat and low water. Integrated farming systems can spread household risk precisely because components respond differently, provided one hazard does not simultaneously destroy all connections.

2025: one cross-border warning, different metrics

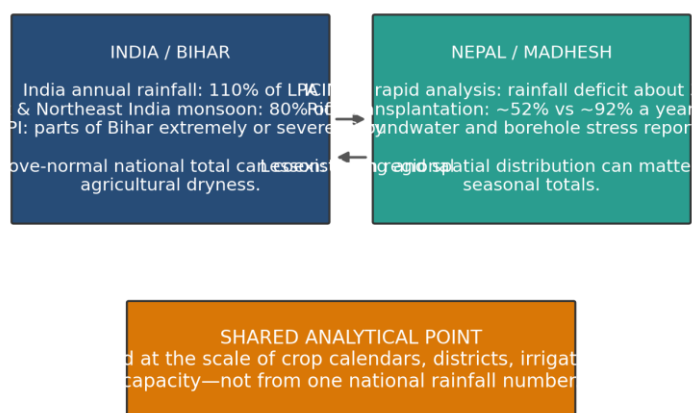


Figure 514 — The 2025 Bihar–Madhesh warning: national or broad-regional rainfall totals must not be treated as farm-level water conditions; timing and local distribution drive crop-calendar risk.

129.19 Horticulture and high-value crops

Vegetables, fruits, spices and flowers can raise returns per unit of land and suit small holdings, but higher value often comes with higher sensitivity to timing and quality. Heat can reduce flowering or fruit set, rain can spoil harvest, and interrupted roads or electricity can destroy value after production. Perishable crops therefore expose farmers to climate risk in transport, storage and markets as well as in fields. Adaptation requires shade or protected cultivation where economic, drainage, irrigation, short supply chains, cold-chain options and market information. Diversification into high-value agriculture is not automatically risk reduction; it changes the composition of risk from bulk yield toward quality, logistics and price.

129.20 Small holdings and limited shock-absorption capacity

Land fragmentation, examined earlier in PART XIII, amplifies climate risk because small plots limit economies of scale and leave little physical room for spreading production across soils or micro-elevations. More important, small farms often operate with thin savings. A failed crop may consume the capital needed for the next season, turning one weather shock into several years of constrained investment. Yet small size does not imply passive vulnerability. Intensive horticulture, livestock, migration income and collective irrigation can all raise resilience. The policy error is to treat farm size as destiny. What matters is the bundle of assets, income sources, institutions and services available to the household when a critical crop window fails.

129.21 Tenancy, landlessness and who carries crop loss

Climate losses are distributed through contracts as well as fields. A sharecropper may lose labour and input expenditure while owing a share of output or rent; a cash tenant may bear production risk on land whose owner retains the asset; a landless worker may lose wages when transplanting or harvesting demand collapses. Official crop-loss estimates centred on ownership can therefore miss large parts of the rural economy. Compensation, insurance and credit systems need to identify actual cultivators without creating perverse documentation burdens. The historical point is that agrarian vulnerability is a relation between people, not simply a map of damaged hectares. Climate change intensifies the stakes of long-standing debates over tenancy recognition and social protection.

129.22 Gendered labour, water and care burdens

Climate shocks redistribute labour within households. When water becomes scarce, collection and livestock care may take longer; when men migrate, women may manage crop decisions while still facing weaker access to land titles, formal credit, extension meetings or machinery. Heat also changes safe working hours, and the agricultural calendar may collide more sharply with domestic care. Recent ICAR programmes in Bihar have explicitly included women farmers in soil, water and diversified homestead-farming training, which is important because resilience technologies are ineffective if they reach only nominal male landholders. Gender-responsive adaptation should therefore measure control over income, access to advisories and assets, and time burden—not only attendance at training.

129.23 Migration and remittances as risk-sharing—and fragility

Migration can function as informal climate insurance. Income earned outside agriculture may finance irrigation, replace a failed harvest, pay school fees and prevent distress sale of assets. The earlier chapters on migration and remittances showed how central these flows are to Mithila and neighbouring regions. But dependence on migration can also create fragility. Labour shortages can make time-sensitive farm operations more expensive; destination shocks can reduce remittances just when a crop fails; and households may invest less in agriculture if returns appear persistently risky. Climate change therefore interacts with an already mobile economy. The key question is whether migration expands household choice or becomes the only viable response to repeated agrarian stress.

129.24 Prices, food security and household nutrition

A crop shock is transmitted beyond producing households through prices. Reduced paddy output can raise local rice prices; fodder scarcity can raise milk costs; damaged roads can widen the gap between farm-gate and retail prices. ADB's December 2025 Nepal update linked the delayed monsoon in Madhesh and flood damage to weaker paddy output and food-price pressure. Price effects are not uniform: a net-selling

farmer may gain from higher prices if enough crop survives, while a net-buying smallholder or landless household loses. Food security analysis must therefore distinguish production from entitlement. Nutrition may deteriorate even where calorie staples remain available if households cut vegetables, pulses, milk or animal protein to protect cash.

129.25 Weather advisories and the last mile

Forecasts have economic value only when they arrive in time, at a usable spatial scale and in language that connects to a decision. A rainfall probability is useful if a farmer knows whether to transplant, spray, irrigate or harvest. Advisories therefore need crop stage, local soil context and clear uncertainty. Bihar Agricultural University and ICAR programmes include weather advisories, contingency planning and climate-resilient management within their research and extension architecture. The last mile is not merely a smartphone problem. Tenant cultivators, women, older farmers and people with weak connectivity may receive information differently. The quality of an advisory system should be evaluated by decision change and avoided loss, not by the number of messages sent.

129.26 Stress-tolerant seed and crop-calendar adaptation

Seed is one of the fastest ways to alter biological exposure. Short-duration rice can help recover from delayed monsoon onset; submergence-tolerant, drought-tolerant or heat-tolerant material can reduce losses under particular stresses; maize and pulse breeding can expand options. But a variety is only useful if seed is available in sufficient quantity at the moment a contingency decision is made. Replacement seed after a failed nursery may be more important than the annual sale of normal seed months earlier. Climate adaptation therefore requires a responsive seed system with local multiplication, quality assurance and contingency inventories. It also requires realism: tolerance reduces sensitivity within a range; it does not make crops invulnerable to extreme or prolonged conditions.

129.27 Diversification, integrated farming and water-smart systems

ICAR's recent Bihar work has emphasized millets, water-smart farming, crop diversification and integrated farming systems. The economic logic is portfolio diversification. Rice, pulses, vegetables, livestock, fish and off-farm income respond differently to hazards and market conditions, so a household need not depend on one harvest. Integration can also recycle nutrients and residues. Yet complexity imposes management and labour demands. A diversified farm with unreliable veterinary services, no vegetable market and insufficient water may carry more, not less, operational risk. The best portfolio is therefore location-specific and household-specific. Public programmes should provide modular options and market connections rather than prescribing the same integrated model to every farmer.

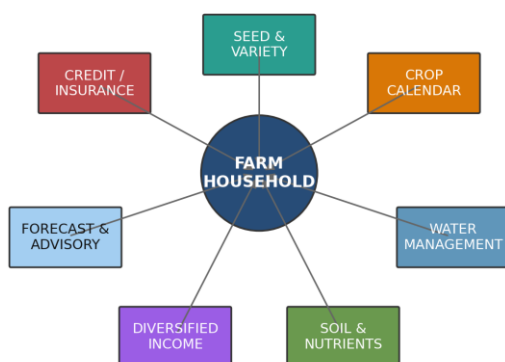
129.28 Insurance, credit and basis risk

Insurance and credit can smooth climate shocks, but their design determines whether they reduce or compound distress. Weather-index insurance may pay quickly but can create basis risk when the index does not match a particular farm's loss. Yield-based systems may reflect crop damage better but require reliable estimation and timely claims processing. Credit is essential for replanting, irrigation repair or fodder purchase, yet new debt after a failed season can become a trap if the next crop also fails. Financial resilience therefore needs transparent triggers, cultivator inclusion, grievance systems, rapid payment and links to agronomic contingency plans. The chapter does not use enrolment headlines as evidence of effectiveness; evaluation requires household-level claim, timing and loss data.

129.29 What climate-resilient agriculture should mean here

Climate-resilient agriculture in Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh should be understood as a portfolio of capacities rather than a branded package. It includes stress-tolerant and short-duration seed, flexible crop calendars, soil-water management, reliable but sustainable irrigation, drainage, diversified farm and non-farm income, livestock and fishery protection, weather advisories, responsive extension, credit, insurance and social protection. It also includes institutions capable of learning from failure. Nepal's National Adaptation Plan 2021–2050 and active NDC 3.0, and Bihar's climate-resilience consultations and research programmes, provide policy frameworks; their effectiveness will be visible only in local water security, reduced loss and more equal adaptive capacity. Resilience is the ability to preserve options under uncertainty.

A layered adaptation portfolio for agrarian resilience



No single technology is "climate resilience." Portfolios work when institutions, information and access make them usable before a shock.

Figure 515 — Climate resilience is a portfolio: seed, calendar, water, soil, diversification, forecasts and finance must work around the farm household and its institutional access.

129.30 From agrarian climate risk to flood resilience

The central conclusion is that climate change does not replace the region's older agrarian history; it works through it. Riverine ecology, land fragmentation, irrigation inequality, tenancy, migration, gendered labour and market integration determine how temperature and rainfall become household outcomes. The 2025 Bihar and Madhesh evidence illustrates spatially uneven drought within a monsoon system better known publicly for floods. At the same time, excess rainfall and river inundation remain recurrent threats. The next chapter therefore narrows the lens to flood adaptation and resilience: embankments and their externalities, drainage, forecasting, settlement, crop strategy, relief, insurance, infrastructure and the problem of living with rivers rather than treating each flood as an isolated emergency.

Table 129.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing climate change and agrarian risk

Evidence source	What it measures	Decision / historical use	Main limitation
Station / gridded weather	temperature, rainfall timing, intensity and dry spells	hazard baseline and crop-stage exposure	station gaps and spatial averaging can hide local extremes
SPI / drought index	standardized moisture anomaly over a chosen period	compare dryness across time and place	index choice may not match crop-root-zone water
Crop area / yield statistics	sown area, harvested area and output	estimate production impact	administrative revision and weak sub-district resolution
Crop-cutting experiment	field-level yield estimate	loss assessment and insurance	sampling and timing quality vary
Remote sensing	vegetation, water extent, crop condition and planting progress	rapid spatial monitoring	needs ground validation; clouds and mixed pixels can interfere
Groundwater monitoring	water level, drawdown and seasonal recharge	irrigation-buffer sustainability	well network may not represent farmer access or pump cost
Canal / irrigation service record	release timing, command-area supply, breakdowns	reliability of water access	installed capacity is not delivered service
Market price series	farm-gate / wholesale / retail price movement	food-price transmission after shocks	confounded by trade, policy and non-climate supply changes
Household panel / survey	assets, tenancy, income, migration, coping and nutrition	vulnerability and distributional effects	recall bias and attrition
Insurance / credit records	claims, payouts, loan restructuring and timing	financial protection after loss	coverage excludes many cultivators; claims are not total damage
Advisory / forecast verification	forecast skill, message timing and farmer response	value of climate services	message delivery does not prove decision use
Qualitative crop calendar	local thresholds, labour bottlenecks and farmer memory	interpret why timing mattered	not a substitute for measured meteorology or yield data

Chapter 130 — Flood Adaptation and Resilience

Chapter 130 examines flood adaptation as the capacity to live with a dynamic river system without accepting avoidable death, repeated destitution or permanent service collapse. Mithila, Vajji and Anga occupy one of South Asia's most intensively settled floodplains. In north Bihar, rivers descending from Nepal carry high sediment loads into a very low-gradient plain; the Bihar State Disaster Management Authority describes 73.63 per cent of North Bihar's geographical area as flood-prone. Yet 'flood' is not one phenomenon. Flash floods, river floods, drainage congestion and chronic waterlogging create different lead times, depths, durations and recovery problems. Resilience must therefore be matched to flood type rather than reduced to a universal embankment solution.

The institutional landscape has changed substantially since the 2008 Kosi disaster. Bihar's Flood Management Improvement Support Centre now combines hydrometeorological data, inundation mapping, embankment asset management and forecasting. Its Kosi Flood Forecasting and Early Warning System is designed to provide at least 72 hours of lead time at multiple sites on the Kosi and tributaries. Across the border, Nepal's Department of Hydrology and Meteorology issues daily 72-hour flood bulletins using telemetric rainfall and water-level networks together with basin models and regional forecast products. These capabilities are important, but resilience is created only when forecasts become trusted warnings, warnings become action, and infrastructure, households and public services can absorb the shock and recover.

The chapter consequently treats flood management as a portfolio. Structural measures—embankments, spurs, revetments, drainage works, culverts and raised infrastructure—remain indispensable in many locations. Non-structural measures—forecasting, hazard maps, land-use rules, shelters, drills, insurance, health preparedness and community organization—address the residual risk that structures cannot eliminate. Wetlands and flood-storage areas add a third layer by working with floodplain hydrology. The goal is not a fantasy of a flood-free river basin. It is an adaptive system in which protection, preparedness, response, recovery and learning continually reduce risk.

130.1 Flood adaptation means living with water without normalising loss

Adaptation begins by rejecting two extremes: the belief that every flood can be prevented and the belief that recurring loss is simply natural. Rivers need space, but people also need safe settlement, reliable transport, schools, health services and livelihoods. A resilient floodplain therefore accepts seasonal water where it can be accommodated while defending critical assets and giving households time and resources to act. The relevant outcome is not only peak water level. It is mortality, crop loss, days of school closure, isolation of health facilities, livestock survival, contamination of drinking water, debt after the event and the time needed to restore normal activity. This shifts evaluation from kilometres of embankment constructed to the performance of the whole social-ecological system.

130.2 Four flood regimes require four different responses

Bihar's disaster-management framework distinguishes flash floods associated with rainfall in Nepal, river floods with longer but still limited lead time, drainage-congestion floods near confluences, and permanently waterlogged areas. The distinction is operationally important. A flash-flood corridor needs fast upstream sensing, redundant warning and pre-identified evacuation routes. A river flood permits more staged relocation of livestock and movable assets. Drainage congestion requires outlet management, culvert capacity, pumping or channel restoration as well as flood protection. Chronic waterlogging is closer to a

land-and-water management problem than an emergency alone. Treating all four regimes as the same event produces poor investments because speed, duration and safe refuge differ radically.

130.3 The basin is transboundary even when administration is not

The major north Bihar rivers cannot be understood inside a single administrative boundary. Rainfall, landslides, sediment and river discharge generated in Nepal move downstream into Bihar, while downstream embankments and drainage conditions influence where water spreads and how long it remains. The Koshi, Kamla, Bagmati and other systems are therefore hydrological continuities crossing political jurisdictions. Adaptation requires routine exchange of observations, forecasts and operational information without implying that the two countries share identical institutions or legal responsibilities. Cross-border cultural and market ties can accelerate communication, but informal personal networks are not a substitute for dependable public protocols. Basin geography makes cooperation a technical necessity rather than an optional diplomatic add-on.

130.4 The 2008 Kosi breach as an institutional turning point

The breach of the eastern afflux bund near Kusaha in Nepal on 18 August 2008 redirected Kosi flows and caused catastrophic inundation across parts of Bihar. The disaster demonstrated how low-probability infrastructure failure can overwhelm assumptions based on normal monsoon operations. Recovery therefore had to address both destroyed assets and the institutions that manage risk. World Bank-supported reconstruction included more resilient housing and infrastructure, while subsequent basin-development work strengthened embankments, forecasting and flood-management capacity. The historical lesson is not that one project ‘solved’ the Kosi. It is that a breach converts maintenance, inspection, emergency communication and contingency planning from technical back-office functions into central components of public safety.

130.5 Embankments protect, redistribute and concentrate risk

Embankments can protect dense settlements, roads and fields from frequent inundation and remain a core part of Bihar’s flood-management system. Their benefits are real, but the risk they create must also be managed. When water is excluded from the floodplain, sediment may remain within the embanked channel, drainage from outside may be impeded, and a breach can release water rapidly into areas whose residents have come to depend on protection. Embankments therefore require inspection, maintenance, erosion control, access for repair, monitoring of river attack and explicit breach scenarios. The correct comparison is not ‘embankment versus no embankment’ in the abstract; it is the performance of a maintained embankment system combined with drainage, forecasting and emergency planning.

130.6 Embankment asset management turns maintenance into risk reduction

A structure is not resilient merely because it was once built to a design standard. Its condition changes through erosion, animal burrows, unauthorized cuts, vegetation, seepage, settlement, river migration and repeated high-water seasons. FMISC’s embankment asset-management approach is therefore significant: it treats flood-protection works as an inventory of assets whose condition, vulnerability and maintenance needs can be recorded and prioritized. Risk-based maintenance is economically preferable to waiting for visible failure because the consequences of a breach can be orders of magnitude larger than routine repair. Asset registers also create institutional memory when staff rotate. The long-term challenge is to connect inspection data to budgets and timely works rather than leave it as a mapping exercise.

130.7 Sediment and channel change are central, not secondary

Himalayan rivers carry large sediment loads, and the transition from steep uplands to the Gangetic plain encourages deposition and channel instability. Flood resilience must therefore include sediment management and geomorphology. A river can become more hazardous even without a larger rainfall event if aggradation reduces conveyance, shoals redirect flow toward an embankment, or a channel migrates toward a settlement. Dredging is not a universal remedy because sediment volumes are immense and intervention can simply move the problem. Better practice combines surveys, remote sensing, cross-sections, local observation and basin modelling to understand where erosion and deposition are changing risk. This is why flood management cannot be reduced to rainfall prediction alone.

130.8 Drainage congestion can make protected land remain flooded

A field or village outside an embankment may still flood because local rainfall and tributary water cannot escape when the receiving river is high. Roads without adequate cross-drainage, silted channels, blocked culverts and poorly maintained sluices can deepen this problem. The resulting waterlogging may last far longer than the river peak, damaging crops, contaminating water sources and delaying access to schools and markets. Drainage is therefore the less visible half of flood protection. Resilience planning should map natural drainage lines, protect outlets from encroachment, size culverts for present hydrology, maintain sluice gates and identify locations where temporary pumping is justified. A successful embankment that creates chronic interior waterlogging is not a successful flood-resilience system.

Flood resilience is a sequence of capacities, not a single structure



The objective is to reduce mortality and loss, preserve essential services, and shorten recovery while learning from each flood.

Figure 516 — Flood resilience as a chain from monitoring and warning through protection, continuity, recovery and adaptation.

130.9 Forecast lead time is an economic asset

Forecasting creates value by converting hydrological knowledge into time. A warning received hours or days before dangerous water arrives can move cattle, seed, documents, medicines, pumps and vehicles; pre-position boats; close unsafe roads; protect transformers; evacuate older people; and relocate hospital supplies. Lead time should therefore be valued in avoided loss, not only forecast accuracy. But a long nominal lead time is useless if the message arrives late or is not trusted. Operational performance must track the entire chain from gauge to model to district to village. False alarms, unexplained uncertainty and warnings that do not specify expected action can reduce compliance. Good systems communicate both hazard level and what recipients should do before the next update.

130.10 Kosi-FFEWS and the move toward 72-hour forecasting

Bihar's Kosi Flood Forecasting and Early Warning System was developed to provide a lead time of at least 72 hours using validated hydrological and hydraulic models. FMISC describes experimental forecasts for water level and discharge at seventeen sites on the Kosi and three tributaries—Kamla Balan, Bhutahi Balan

and Khando/Tiljuga—during the monsoon season. This is a major change from dependence on immediate gauge reading alone. Modelled forecasts can extend decision time, but they must be continuously tested against observed water levels and changing channel geometry. A 72-hour horizon should be treated probabilistically: uncertainty generally increases with lead time, so response plans need thresholds for watch, preparation and evacuation rather than a single deterministic number.

130.11 Data integration: rainfall, river level, inundation and asset condition

FMISC’s current public flood-information architecture brings together weather reports, Nepal rainfall and water-level information, flood bulletins, 72-hour water-level forecasts, barrage status, inundation maps and Central Water Commission products. The analytical importance of this integration is that no single dataset is sufficient. Rainfall indicates potential runoff; river levels show the current hydrological state; forecasts estimate future conditions; satellite imagery shows where water actually spread; and asset inspections reveal whether a protection line is physically vulnerable. Resilience increases when these datasets are linked spatially and temporally so that a district can ask not only ‘how high will the river rise?’ but ‘which road, embankment reach, settlement and service facility is exposed if that forecast materialises?’

130.12 Nepal’s telemetric system expands the upstream window

Nepal’s Department of Hydrology and Meteorology has developed a national flood-forecasting system that issues daily forecasts for the following three days during the monsoon. A July 2025 bulletin described real-time observation from roughly 260 rainfall stations and about 180 water-level stations, supplemented by basin models, numerical weather prediction, regional outlooks and global flood products. For Bihar, upstream observations are especially valuable because intense rain in Nepal can precede downstream flooding. The resilience benefit depends on interoperability: station identifiers, thresholds, timestamps and warning categories must be understandable across agencies. Data sharing becomes most valuable when it is routine before a crisis, because emergency improvisation is vulnerable to communication failure precisely when conditions are most severe.

130.13 The last mile is where forecast skill becomes social protection

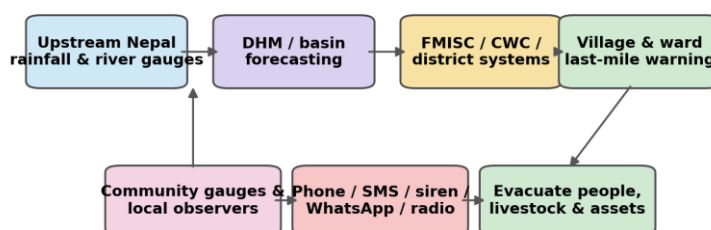
A technically accurate forecast can fail socially if it stops at a website or district office. Last-mile warning requires a chain that works during power cuts, weak mobile coverage, night-time events and language diversity. Sirens, public-address systems, mobile messages, local radio, ward representatives, school networks and trained volunteers should therefore be redundant rather than mutually exclusive. Messages need location, expected timing, likely severity and an action instruction. Communities also need to know the safe route and the destination before the warning arrives. The strongest warning system is one rehearsed through drills, because a familiar procedure reduces hesitation and makes responsibilities visible. Trust is built by consistent updates, including when a forecast is revised downward.

130.14 Community-based early warning adds local sensing and ownership

The Ratu River experience across Nepal and Bihar illustrates the value of community-based flood early warning. ICIMOD and government partners established systems in upstream Nepali locations and downstream Bihar communities so that rising water could be communicated before arrival. Community systems do more than install instruments: local caretakers observe gauges, relay information, maintain equipment and know which households require assistance. This creates ownership and can provide warning where formal networks are sparse. The limitation is sustainability. Volunteer turnover, equipment failure and

uncertain maintenance finance can erode performance. Community-based systems should therefore complement—not replace—public forecasting, with clear responsibility for calibration, communication and integration into district disaster plans.

A flood forecast has value only when information becomes timely action



Redundancy matters: formal forecasts and community systems should reinforce each other across the India–Nepal border.

Figure 518 — Transboundary flood warning becomes useful only when upstream observation is converted into a trusted last-mile message and timely household action.

130.15 Evacuation is a logistics system, not a final instruction

‘Move to higher ground’ is only the first line of an evacuation plan. Households need routes that remain passable as water rises, transport for people who cannot walk, arrangements for livestock, secure shelter space, drinking water, toilets, lighting, privacy, cooking and medicines. Schools and public buildings often become shelters, so their structural safety and continued educational function must be planned together. Boats require trained operators and fuel; rescue teams require local maps and communication. Evacuation planning should also account for people who refuse to leave because they fear theft or loss of cattle. Resilience improves when shelters protect both life and the assets on which recovery depends, reducing the perceived cost of complying with a warning.

130.16 Livestock survival is central to rural recovery

Cattle, buffalo, goats and poultry are productive assets, savings and sources of food. Flood plans that evacuate people but ignore animals can produce large post-disaster losses or cause households to delay evacuation. Safe raised sites, fodder reserves, veterinary care, carcass disposal and access to clean water should therefore be part of preparedness. Fodder shortages often appear after the flood because stored straw is soaked and grazing land remains submerged. Livestock disease risk also rises when animals crowd on embankments or raised roads. The economic value of animal protection is particularly high for smallholders because a lost dairy animal may represent years of accumulated household capital. Flood-resilient agriculture thus includes animal logistics as well as crop recovery.

130.17 Housing resilience depends on site, plinth, materials and recoverability

Rebuilding after the Kosi disaster demonstrated the importance of housing that can resist or recover from flooding. A stronger wall alone is insufficient if the house is in a high-velocity channel or the plinth lies below recurrent water levels. Site selection, raised plinths where appropriate, drainage around the dwelling, safe electrical placement, water-resistant lower-wall materials and secure storage for documents and grain can reduce damage. Owner-driven reconstruction can incorporate household preferences and local knowledge, but it needs technical assistance and transparent finance. Because many families modify houses over time, resilience guidance must also apply to incremental construction. The useful metric is not whether a house

remains completely dry; it is whether occupants survive, critical contents are protected and the building can be cleaned and reoccupied quickly.

130.18 Roads and culverts determine whether a flood becomes isolation

Transport infrastructure can be both protection and obstruction. Raised roads provide evacuation routes and temporary refuge, but they can act as unintended embankments if cross-drainage is inadequate. Washed-out approaches, undersized culverts and overtopped bridges can isolate villages even after rainfall stops. Resilient road design therefore needs hydrological sizing, erosion protection, multiple drainage openings and maintenance of approaches. Network redundancy matters: a district should know which alternative route reaches a health centre if the primary road is cut. Post-flood repair priorities should restore connectivity based on service dependence, not only traffic volume. In a dense rural economy, a short broken link can interrupt milk collection, school attendance, market access and emergency care across a much larger area.

130.19 Flood-resilient health and WASH prevent the second disaster

Deaths and illness after inundation can come from contaminated water, interrupted treatment, snakebite, diarrhoeal disease, skin infections and loss of access to maternal care rather than from drowning alone. Flood-resilient water and sanitation therefore require protected or elevated hand-pumps where feasible, chlorination supplies, safe temporary toilets, waste management and rapid testing of drinking-water sources. Health facilities need backup power, medicine stocks, cold-chain continuity and referral routes. Pregnant women, dialysis patients, people using regular medicines and persons with mobility limitations should be identified before the monsoon, with privacy safeguards. Public-health resilience is measured by continuity: how quickly safe water, routine treatment and surveillance continue when the normal physical network is disrupted.

130.20 Crop calendars can convert warning into agronomic action

Flood forecasts have agricultural value when they connect to crop stage. A warning before nursery establishment may change sowing location; before transplanting it may delay labour hiring; before harvest it may justify early cutting and rapid removal; before a forecasted prolonged inundation it may trigger relocation of pumps, fertilizer and machinery. Farmers also need contingency seed for re-sowing after water recedes. The same water depth can be tolerable for one crop stage and destructive for another, so district advisories should combine hydrological forecasts with agronomic calendars. This is a practical bridge between Chapter 129's climate-risk analysis and flood resilience: resilience is not a separate disaster sector but a set of adjustments embedded in farm decisions.

130.21 Submergence-tolerant crops and recovery packages reduce residual loss

No protection system can prevent all field inundation. Crop resilience therefore includes varieties and management practices that reduce loss when water enters the farm. Submergence-tolerant rice can survive specific periods of complete inundation better than susceptible varieties, while short-duration crops can help recover a delayed season after floodwater retreats. Seed reserves, rapid soil assessment, drainage restoration, livestock feed and access to small credit are part of the same recovery package. The emphasis should remain crop- and location-specific: a variety tolerant of submergence may not solve prolonged waterlogging, late-season lodging or drought after flood recession. Resilience comes from matching biological traits to the actual flood regime and keeping replacement inputs available when commercial supply chains are disrupted.

Structural and non-structural measures must work as a portfolio

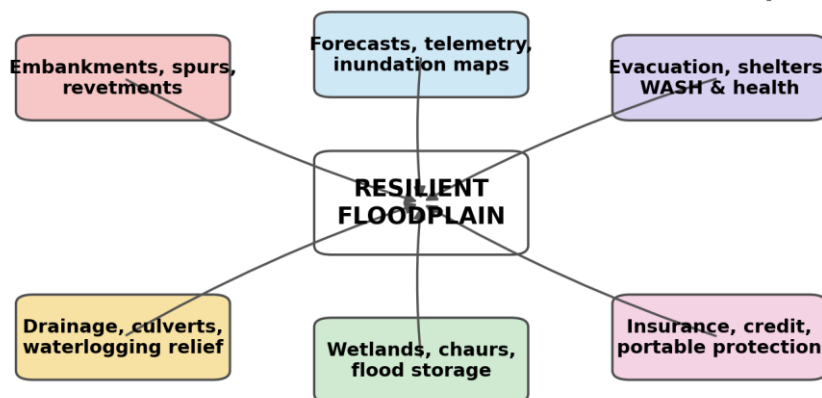


Figure 517 — Flood resilience depends on a portfolio of structural protection, forecasting, drainage, emergency services, flood-storage landscapes and household finance.

130.22 Credit, insurance and social protection shape the speed of recovery

A household that survives physically can still enter a debt spiral if crops, livestock, tools and stored grain are lost together. Recovery finance therefore determines whether a flood becomes a temporary shock or long-term impoverishment. Crop insurance, emergency grants, concessional credit, public employment and portable food or cash benefits can stabilize consumption while production restarts. Design matters: delayed compensation loses much of its value; documentation requirements can exclude people whose papers were damaged; tenants and sharecroppers may not appear in land records; migrants may be absent when local lists are prepared. Resilient social protection should therefore be pre-arranged, portable and linked to transparent damage assessment rather than invented after each event.

130.23 Vulnerability is differentiated by gender, age, disability and caste-class position

Flood depth alone does not determine who is harmed. People who cannot swim, older adults, pregnant women, small children, persons with disabilities, landless households and families living on low-cost marginal sites may face greater evacuation and recovery burdens. Women often carry responsibility for children, food, water and livestock while having less control over transport or cash. Social hierarchy can influence access to boats, shelters, information and compensation. Inclusive preparedness therefore requires disaggregated risk mapping, accessible shelters, targeted evacuation assistance and representation of vulnerable groups in local planning. The objective is not to label communities as helpless; it is to identify where unequal resources convert the same hazard into unequal loss.

130.24 Migration is both an adaptation mechanism and a recovery constraint

Migration can diversify household income before a flood and provide remittances for rebuilding afterward. Migrants may also return with cash, contacts or transport. But absence can leave older adults and women managing evacuation and farm recovery with fewer working-age members. A flood at origin can coincide with precarious employment at destination, limiting the remittance buffer precisely when it is needed. Recovery systems should therefore recognise multi-local households. Portable identity, bank access, digital transfers and communication with migrants can speed assistance. Long-term displacement after erosion differs from circular labour migration and requires land, housing and service solutions. Flood

resilience should not treat all mobility as either failure or success; its role depends on choice, safety and the household resources that make movement possible.

130.25 Wetlands, chauris and flood-storage landscapes are infrastructure

Floodplains contain natural and semi-natural depressions, wetlands, oxbows and chauris that temporarily store water, support fisheries and moderate local drainage. Filling or disconnecting these spaces can shift water elsewhere and increase waterlogging even when the development itself remains dry. Treating wetlands as infrastructure does not mean freezing all land use. It means mapping storage function before conversion, protecting key drainage corridors and designing roads and settlements so that water can move through the landscape. Where possible, seasonal storage can be combined with fisheries, biodiversity and groundwater recharge. The economic comparison should include avoided flood damage and ecosystem services, not only the immediate market value of filled land.

130.26 Floodplain zoning is a risk-allocation policy

Land-use regulation determines who will be exposed to future floods. Hospitals, power substations, schools used as shelters, hazardous-material stores and dense housing should not be sited using the same risk tolerance as seasonal agriculture. Floodplain zoning can distinguish areas where building is prohibited, restricted, elevated or required to meet special standards. Implementation is difficult in densely settled regions with insecure tenure and strong land-market pressure, so zoning must be accompanied by transparent maps, compensation or relocation mechanisms where rights are affected, and regular updates as rivers change course. Otherwise zoning becomes either unenforced paper or a tool applied selectively against weaker residents. Resilience requires both technical hazard information and procedural fairness.

130.27 Nature-based solutions complement engineered protection

Nature-based approaches use ecological processes to reduce risk or the consequences of risk: restoring flood-storage areas, reconnecting selected wetlands, vegetating erosion-prone surfaces, maintaining riparian buffers and designing space for water where settlement density allows. The World Bank's recent description of Kosi-basin work explicitly includes nature-based solutions alongside strengthened embankments. Such measures are not substitutes for critical engineered works at dense settlements or infrastructure. Their value is complementary: they can slow local runoff, store water, reduce erosion and provide livelihood or biodiversity benefits. Performance should be monitored with the same discipline applied to concrete structures. 'Nature-based' should not become a label for projects whose hydrological effect is assumed rather than measured.

130.28 India–Nepal warning cooperation should be institutional and redundant

The transboundary flood-warning chain currently draws on national hydrological agencies, district administrations, basin projects and community networks. ICIMOD's 2026 field reporting from North Bihar noted that informal WhatsApp communication connects upstream Nepali and downstream Indian stakeholders, but also that informal mechanisms are not a reliable substitute for a formal cross-border system. Communities reported that longer lead times—around a day where feasible—would materially improve preparation. Institutional resilience therefore means agreed contacts, routine data exchange, shared threshold understanding, multilingual message formats and fallback channels when one system fails. Cooperation should be practiced during ordinary monsoon days, not activated only at extreme water levels.

130.29 Resilience must be measured by outcomes across the full flood cycle

A useful resilience dashboard should track more than structures completed. Before the event it can measure forecast lead time, warning reach, shelter readiness, embankment condition and the share of vulnerable households with an evacuation plan. During the event it can record deaths, rescue time, road isolation, service interruption and livestock loss. Afterward it can measure days to restore drinking water, school, health care, electricity and market access; time to compensation; crop re-sowing; household debt; and permanent displacement. These metrics expose trade-offs. A project may reduce inundated area but worsen drainage duration elsewhere; a warning may be accurate but reach only connected households. Outcome measurement turns resilience from rhetoric into a falsifiable institutional claim.

130.30 From flood control to adaptive basin governance

The strongest conclusion of this chapter is that flood resilience is a governance process. Rivers change, sediment moves, climate alters rainfall extremes, embankments age, settlements expand and communication technology evolves. No master plan can therefore remain final. Institutions need an annual cycle of observation, forecast verification, asset inspection, community drills, monsoon response, post-event review and budgeted correction. Bihar's FMISC, Nepal's DHM network, community early-warning experience and basin projects show the components of such a system, but their value lies in integration and maintenance. The next chapter shifts from hazard management to the economy of the India–Nepal border after federalisation, where the same roads, markets, financial networks and administrative boundaries that shape resilience also shape everyday exchange.

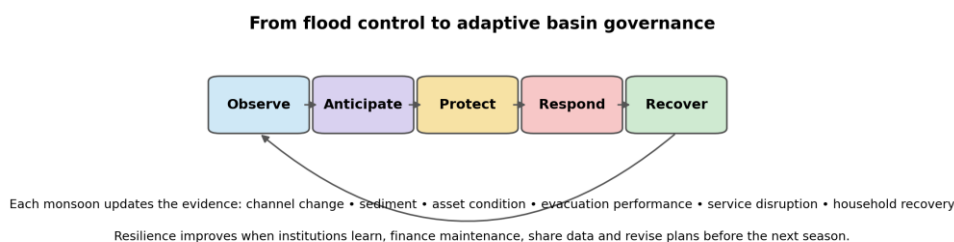


Figure 519 — Adaptive basin governance treats every monsoon as new evidence for observing, anticipating, protecting, responding, recovering and revising the next plan.

Table 130.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing flood adaptation and resilience

Evidence source	What it establishes	Decision / historical use	Main limitation
Hydrometeorological gauges	rainfall, river level, discharge and timing	forecast initiation and threshold monitoring	station gaps, telemetry failure and local representativeness
Hydrological / hydraulic models	future water level, discharge and inundation scenarios	lead-time decisions and contingency planning	uncertainty rises with lead time and changing channel geometry
Satellite inundation maps	actual water spread and persistence	event reconstruction, access and crop-loss assessment	cloud, revisit and water-under-vegetation limitations
Embankment asset register	location, condition, erosion, seepage and maintenance need	risk-based inspection and maintenance prioritisation	condition data matter only if linked to timely works
District flood hazard atlas	spatial exposure by settlement and	evacuation, siting and land-use planning	historical maps require updating as rivers and

Evidence source	What it establishes	Decision / historical use	Main limitation
	infrastructure		settlement change
Community warning logs	who received what message, when and through which channel	test last-mile reach and trust	informal communication may be incomplete or undocumented
Shelter / evacuation records	occupancy, route failure, rescue and vulnerable-person support	evaluate preparedness and operational capacity	attendance does not capture households that stayed behind
Agriculture damage & crop-stage data	crop area, stage, duration of submergence and recovery	link hydrology to livelihood loss	compensation surveys may omit tenants or mixed livelihood loss
Health / WASH surveillance	water contamination, disease, facility interruption and access	measure secondary public-health impacts	under-reporting is likely where access is most disrupted
Household recovery surveys	debt, asset replacement, migration, return and service restoration	measure resilience beyond immediate survival	attrition and recall bias increase with time
Cross-border data exchange records	timing and reliability of upstream-downstream information	assess institutional interoperability	formal access may differ from actual emergency use
Post-monsoon review & budgets	lessons, repairs, revised thresholds and funded actions	tests whether institutions learn between events	plans without budget execution do not create resilience

Chapter 131 — India–Nepal Border Economies after Federalisation

Chapter 131 examines the India–Nepal border economy after Nepal’s transition to federalism. The constitutional change of 2015 created a three-tier state—federal, provincial and local—and the first full cycle of provincial and local governments after the 2017 elections brought new institutions directly into the economic life of the Terai–Madhesh border. Yet federalisation did not create a new international border, nor did it transfer customs or international trade to Madhesh Province. Nepal’s Constitution keeps customs, international trade, international boundaries, major national transport and treaty-making within federal jurisdiction. Provincial and local governments nevertheless shape the economic experience of the border through roads, markets, agriculture, tourism, business administration, land-use decisions, municipal services and subnational finance.

For Mithila, Vajji and Anga this distinction is essential. The border is simultaneously a customs boundary and a dense field of family, labour, pilgrimage, educational, health and market mobility. Formal trade is concentrated in large corridors such as Raxaul–Birgunj and Jogbani–Biratnagar, while Jayanagar–Janakpur and numerous road crossings support passenger movement and local commerce. Since 2015 the material infrastructure of this border has also changed: integrated check posts, passenger and freight rail, a transnational petroleum pipeline, electricity trade, revised transit rules and digital-payment links have converted parts of the border from a truck-and-cash frontier into a multimodal economic network. The historical question is therefore not whether federalism ‘opened’ or ‘closed’ the border, but how authority, infrastructure and economic opportunity have been redistributed across a border economy that remains deeply transnational.

131.1 Federalisation changed the institutional map, not the border itself

Nepal’s 2015 Constitution reorganised the state into federal, provincial and local levels. The transformation mattered greatly for the Madhesh/Terai because provincial and municipal governments acquired their own budgets, laws and development responsibilities. But the international boundary with India remained a federal matter. Border diplomacy, treaty revision, customs tariffs, foreign exchange and international trade rules therefore continued to be negotiated by Kathmandu with New Delhi. What changed on the ground was the number of public institutions able to shape the economic environment around the border. A trader crossing at Birgunj still encounters federal customs, but the road to the market, local drainage, licensing of some businesses, municipal sanitation, market management and nearby agricultural services may involve provincial or local authorities. Federalisation thus created a layered governance system around an old border rather than a separate provincial border regime.

131.2 Three tiers govern one border economy

The post-federal border economy operates through three different scales of authority. Federal institutions control customs, international trade agreements, currency, major rail and highway frameworks, immigration and national security. Provincial governments influence transport, agriculture, tourism, provincial roads, industrial and commercial administration within their constitutional and statutory remit, and they prepare their own budgets and economic programmes. Municipalities and rural municipalities manage local roads, market areas, sanitation, drainage, local tourism, local business services and other functions that directly affect commercial costs. The practical economic problem is coordination. A modern land port can process cargo efficiently, yet trucks still lose time if the connecting municipal road is congested or flooded. A local

market may be well managed but unable to export perishable produce if federal quarantine procedures are slow. The border economy therefore behaves as one production-and-mobility system even though authority is divided among several governments.

131.3 Customs and international trade remain federal powers

Federalisation is sometimes described as economic decentralisation, but customs illustrates its limits. Nepal's Constitution lists customs, major national taxes, international trade, exchange, ports and quarantine among federal powers. This is logical because a country cannot operate multiple provincial tariff regimes on one international boundary. Madhesh Province cannot independently lower customs duties at Birgunj or negotiate a rules-of-origin concession with India. It can, however, advocate for its producers, improve access infrastructure and build institutions that help firms meet federal trade requirements. This distinction matters for historical interpretation. If an agricultural exporter in Sarlahi or Dhanusha faces difficulty entering the Indian market, the obstacle may arise from a federal sanitary standard or bilateral protocol rather than from provincial policy. Conversely, weak local roads or storage can undermine market access even when the formal tariff is favourable. Trade performance therefore emerges from the interaction of federal rules with subnational production systems.

131.4 Provincial and local governments shape the last mile

The strongest economic effect of federalisation is often found before the trader reaches the customs gate. Nepal's Local Government Operation Act assigns municipalities important responsibilities for local markets, supply monitoring, local roads, agricultural roads, irrigation, sanitation and local infrastructure. Provincial governments likewise plan roads, agricultural programmes, tourism and sectoral development. These powers influence the 'last mile' that determines whether small producers can use national trade opportunities. A farmer may benefit more from a reliable feeder road, collection centre and drainage improvement than from a headline bilateral agreement that does not solve local logistics. The same applies to pilgrims, patients and students: border crossing is only one part of a journey whose cost depends on municipal transport, bus stands, lodging, safety and information. Federalism therefore makes local administrative quality part of international economic competitiveness.

131.5 Madhesh Province is an economic layer across historic Mithila

Madhesh Province is a modern administrative unit and should not be equated with historical Mithila. Its eight districts include Maithili, Bajjika, Bhojpuri and other linguistic and social zones, while historical Mithila extends beyond the province and across the Indian border. Nevertheless, federalisation created a new economic layer centred on Janakpurdham with its own finance ministry, economic surveys, budget process and sectoral departments. For the history of Mithila, this provincial layer matters because it can coordinate infrastructure and services across districts that previously depended more directly on Kathmandu. It also produces a new documentary archive: provincial budgets, economic surveys, development programmes and local-government records. These sources allow historians to observe how border districts are governed after federalisation without projecting the province backwards as an ancient or culturally uniform territory.

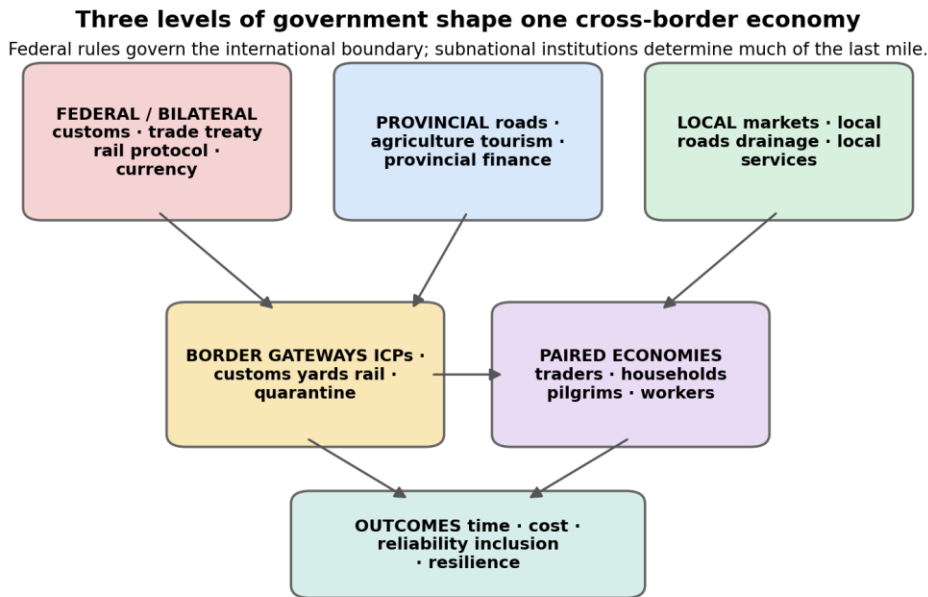


Figure 520 — Governance architecture of the post-federalisation India–Nepal border economy.

131.6 Border towns are paired urban systems

Large India–Nepal crossings function as paired urban systems rather than as isolated checkpoints. Raxaul and Birgunj share freight, warehousing, trucking, finance and labour markets; Jogbani and Biratnagar are linked by road, rail and industrial supply chains; Jayanagar and Janakpur connect pilgrimage, retail, education and passenger movement. Prices, transport strikes, road conditions or currency availability on one side can affect activity on the other. The formal border creates legal distinctions, but daily economic geography often treats the paired towns as one corridor with two regulatory systems. Federalisation gives the Nepali-side municipality and province greater administrative presence within this paired system, yet national customs and bilateral infrastructure remain decisive. The analytical unit should therefore be the corridor, not only the municipality. Corridor analysis can reveal how a policy adopted in Kathmandu or New Delhi is translated into queues, rents, wages and retail demand in specific border towns.

131.7 Raxaul–Birgunj remains the dominant formal gateway

Raxaul–Birgunj is the most important formal land-trade corridor between India and Nepal. The Land Ports Authority of India identifies it as the leading route for bilateral and third-country exchange, linked to Birgunj's inland container and customs infrastructure. Its current statistics illustrate the scale of formalisation: for 2025–26 the Raxaul land port reports trade facilitated of about ₹38,425.95 crore and 219,210 cargo movements. These are corridor-administration figures, not the whole of India–Nepal trade, and they should not be compared mechanically with national customs totals. Their importance lies in showing how strongly formal trade is concentrated in one logistics node. The corridor's economic reach extends far beyond the border itself, connecting Indian ports and industrial centres to Nepal's main commercial artery. Congestion, rail access, quarantine, warehouse capacity and customs processing at Raxaul–Birgunj therefore affect prices throughout Nepal, including Madhesh.

131.8 Jogbani–Biratnagar links eastern Bihar and the Nepal Terai

Jogbani–Biratnagar is especially important for the eastern part of the study region. It links north-eastern Bihar with Morang and the industrial-commercial economy of Biratnagar while also connecting to the wider Anga and eastern Gangetic transport system. The Land Ports Authority reports that in 2025–26 the Jogbani land port facilitated trade worth about ₹11,833.08 crore and recorded 109,551 cargo movements. The corridor is smaller than Raxaul–Birgunj but increasingly multimodal. Road traffic, an integrated land-port complex and the Jogbani–Biratnagar broad-gauge rail link now operate within one logistics geography. For producers and traders in eastern Nepal and Bihar, this reduces dependence on distant gateways and can change warehouse, trucking and industrial location decisions. It also creates a more direct link between local economic development in Madhesh/Koshi border districts and regional railway networks in India.

131.9 Jayanagar–Janakpur shows how passenger mobility creates local demand

The Jayanagar–Janakpur corridor demonstrates a different border economy. Passenger rail between Jayanagar and Kurtha began in 2022 and later extended further within Nepal, reconnecting a historic mobility axis in the central Mithila region. Its economic significance cannot be measured only by freight tonnage. Pilgrims, students, family visitors, patients, small traders and tourists generate demand for rickshaws, buses, hotels, food, retail and local services. Janakpurdham’s religious importance makes mobility itself a source of economic activity. The corridor also shows why an open-border economy requires more than customs statistics: a person may cross without carrying commercial cargo yet still create income through transport, lodging or purchases. Federal and provincial tourism policy, municipal management around stations and local transport regulation therefore interact with cross-border mobility. The railway turns a cultural route into transport infrastructure without erasing its social character.

131.10 Rail freight is changing the geography of transit

For decades, road trucking dominated Nepal’s land trade, with rail playing a major role mainly in container movement to Birgunj. Liberalisation of the rail-services framework has gradually widened the categories of cargo and operators able to use Indian railways for Nepal-bound trade. This matters because rail can reduce handling, fuel use and uncertainty for bulk or containerised cargo moving long distances from Indian ports. The economic effect is not simply cheaper transport; it changes where warehouses, customs yards and industrial users find it advantageous to locate. Birgunj gained early from rail-linked dry-port functions, while the extension of rail freight to Biratnagar opens a second major eastern gateway. For the border economy after federalisation, rail thus creates a corridor that cuts across municipal and provincial boundaries and requires federal coordination even while its local benefits—employment, land values, warehousing and services—are experienced subnationally.

131.11 The 2023 Transit Treaty widened multimodal options

India and Nepal revised their Treaty of Transit on 1 June 2023. India’s Department of Commerce notes that the revised arrangement incorporated updated routes for road, rail and inland-waterway transit and added locations for bulk cargo movement. For landlocked Nepal, transit policy is part of economic sovereignty because access to seaports and third-country trade depends on reliable passage through Indian territory. The post-federal implication is indirect but important. Provinces cannot negotiate their own transit treaties, yet a new route can redistribute opportunity among border regions. If freight can move efficiently through an eastern rail gateway, firms in Biratnagar and nearby districts may gain relative to more distant corridors. Transit reform therefore creates spatial consequences inside Nepal even though the treaty itself

remains federal. Provincial planning should respond to those corridor shifts through industrial land, road links, logistics skills and urban services.

131.12 The 2025 rail protocol and the 2026 Biratnagar container service

A further Letter of Exchange in November 2025 amended the transit protocol to facilitate rail-based freight between Jogbani and Biratnagar, including bulk cargo and direct links from Kolkata and Visakhapatnam routes. On 28 July 2026 Indian Railways reported the first direct commercial container freight train from Kolkata Port to Biratnagar Customs Yard: a 40-wagon train carrying canola. The operational importance lies in removing border transshipment for eligible container cargo and allowing end-to-end rail movement. This is a concrete example of how treaty language becomes economic infrastructure only when the first train actually runs. It also gives historians a precise marker for the emergence of Biratnagar as a direct port-connected freight node. Future evaluation should measure frequency, dwell time, freight rates and commodity mix rather than treating the inaugural train as proof that all logistics problems have been solved.

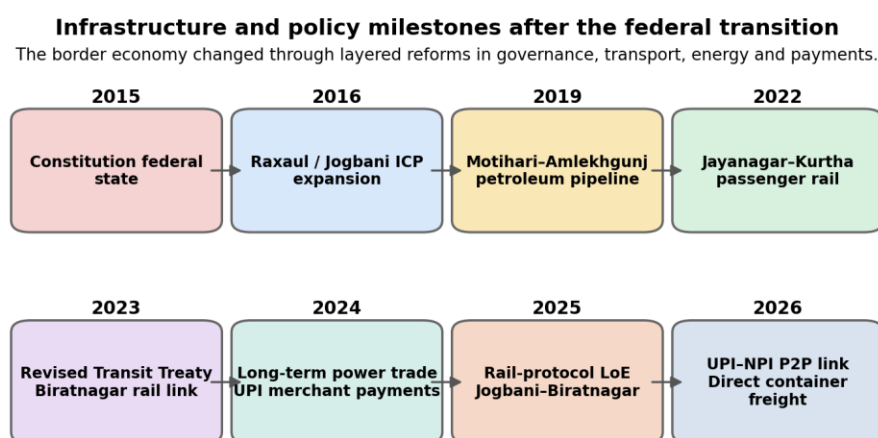


Figure 521 — Infrastructure and policy milestones after Nepal's federal transition.

131.13 Integrated check posts formalise without eliminating local crossings

Integrated check posts concentrate customs, immigration, quarantine, security and cargo-handling functions in purpose-built facilities. Raxaul and Jogbani were among the early India–Nepal land ports, and the model has since expanded elsewhere along the border. The economic gain comes from co-location of agencies, larger parking and warehouse capacity, electronic processing and clearer separation of cargo streams. Yet formalisation does not make smaller local crossings irrelevant. Family visits, local retail, short-distance transport and agricultural exchange continue through numerous road points that serve different functions from container trade. Policy should therefore avoid a false choice between ‘modern ICP’ and ‘traditional border’. High-volume commercial cargo benefits from concentrated infrastructure, while local mobility needs safe, predictable and proportionate procedures. A resilient border economy requires both scales to work without forcing every transaction into a single gateway.

131.14 Standards and quarantine can be more binding than tariffs

For agricultural and food products, market access often depends less on the headline customs duty than on sanitary, phytosanitary and technical requirements. Nepal raised this issue in the 2023 bilateral discussions, asking for better-equipped testing laboratories, simpler procedures and mutual recognition of test certificates. The January 2025 Inter-Governmental Committee again discussed harmonisation of standards and market-access issues. These are crucial for Madhesh and Bihar because much local production is perishable and low-margin. A truck of vegetables, milk products or processed food can lose value rapidly if sampling and certification are slow. Federal agencies must set and enforce legitimate health standards, but infrastructure can reduce unnecessary delay: laboratories near major corridors, interoperable certificates, transparent risk-based inspections and pre-arrival documentation. For small producers, standards policy is therefore an economic-development issue as much as a regulatory one.

131.15 Nepal's trade deficit with India is structural, not a corridor failure

Nepal's governments have repeatedly identified the large merchandise trade deficit with India as a policy concern. The imbalance reflects broad differences in economic scale, industrial capacity, energy and fuel demand, consumer imports, production structure and the range of goods Nepal can export competitively. It should not be attributed simply to border inefficiency. Better logistics can raise trade in both directions; they do not automatically reduce a deficit. A corridor that becomes faster may even increase imports if domestic demand is strong. The appropriate policy question is whether connectivity improves productivity and export capability inside Nepal: lower input costs, reliable electricity, better agricultural certification, industrial clustering and access to Indian and third-country markets. Federalisation can help if provincial and local governments use their development powers to strengthen production. It cannot substitute for national trade, industrial and macroeconomic policy.

131.16 Petroleum pipelines convert border queues into network infrastructure

The Motihari–Amlekhgunj petroleum pipeline, commissioned in 2019, was South Asia's first transnational petroleum-products pipeline. It changed border logistics by moving a large-volume commodity away from road tankers and into a continuous network. IndianOil and Nepal Oil Corporation have since agreed on further infrastructure, including extension toward Chitwan and a new Siliguri–Jhapa pipeline with storage terminals. Pipeline economics illustrate the deeper transformation of the border after federalisation: some exchange no longer appears as visible trucks at a gate. The border becomes a fixed energy network whose reliability depends on engineering, storage, regulation and bilateral coordination. The benefits include reduced handling, lower transport losses, less road congestion and potentially greater supply security. But network infrastructure also concentrates dependence, so redundancy, maintenance, disaster planning and transparent pricing remain important.

131.17 Electricity trade creates a new export geography

Electricity has become one of the most important new forms of Nepal–India exchange. The long-term power-trade agreement signed on 4 January 2024 envisages the possibility of Nepal exporting up to 10,000 MW to India over ten years, subject to projects, transmission capacity and market approvals. Nepal Electricity Authority reported that in FY2024/25 it exported 2,380 GWh to India while importing 1,681 GWh, making electricity trade seasonally bi-directional. A first trilateral transaction also sent up to 40 MW from Nepal to Bangladesh through the Indian grid. For the border economy, electricity is unlike ordinary cargo: it crosses through transmission lines, not markets or customs yards, and its geography follows

substations and grid capacity. Federal agreements dominate, but provincial economies gain through construction, land use, jobs, power reliability and the fiscal consequences of energy development.

131.18 Cross-border digital payments reduce the cash friction

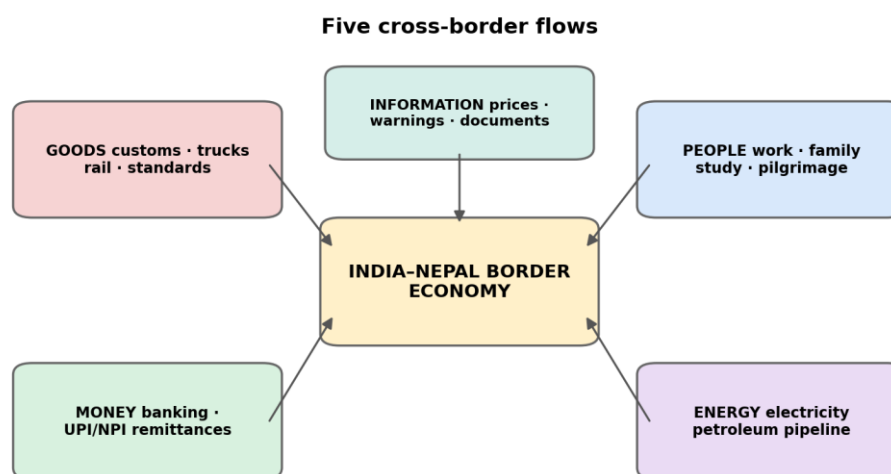
Cash has long been central to everyday India–Nepal transactions, but digital-payment interoperability is reducing some of the friction faced by travellers and merchants. UPI merchant acceptance through Nepal’s Fonepay network went live in 2024, allowing eligible Indian users to scan QR codes at participating Nepalese merchants. NPCI International reported that cross-border UPI merchant transactions in Nepal crossed 100,000 by August 2024. The figure is modest relative to the scale of total border movement, but it is institutionally significant. A tourist, pilgrim or business traveller can make a small payment without first finding a money changer or carrying large amounts of cash. The gain is greatest where merchant onboarding, mobile coverage and grievance handling are reliable. Digital payments do not replace currency regulation; they make regulated cross-border payments easier to execute at the point of sale.

131.19 The 2026 UPI–NPI remittance link changes household transfer channels

On 9 June 2026 NPCI International and Nepal Clearing House launched a real-time linkage between India’s UPI and Nepal’s National Payments Interface for person-to-person transfers through participating banks. The service was announced as live through select banks with expansion planned. This is different from merchant QR acceptance. P2P linkage potentially affects family transfers, workers, students and other small-value cross-border payments that previously depended more heavily on cash, bank branches or remittance intermediaries. The long-term economic effect will depend on fees, transaction limits, user eligibility, exchange arrangements, bank participation and customer trust. It should therefore be studied with transaction data rather than assumed. Nevertheless, the 2026 launch is a clear institutional milestone: household money movement is becoming part of the same real-time digital infrastructure that already transformed domestic payments in both countries.

131.20 Open-border mobility is larger than customs trade

The India–Nepal relationship includes visa-free movement for citizens under longstanding bilateral arrangements and practice, subject to applicable identity requirements. This makes the border economy fundamentally different from a conventional customs frontier. People cross for family visits, seasonal work, pilgrimage, shopping, education, health care and social events; most of these journeys never appear in merchandise trade data. The economic value generated can be substantial but dispersed across transport, lodging, food, retail, medical services and household transfers. It is therefore misleading to equate the border economy with customs revenue or cargo value. At the same time, an open-border mobility regime still requires security, lawful documentation and protection against trafficking or criminal activity. The policy challenge is to preserve low-friction legitimate movement while managing risks in a targeted way rather than making ordinary social mobility bear the costs of unrelated enforcement problems.



Customs data capture only one part of this connected system.

Figure 522 — Five cross-border flows that cannot be measured by customs data alone.

131.21 Labour migration and commuting create distributed households

Labour mobility between Nepal and India predates federalisation by generations and continues to shape household economies on both sides. Some movement is long-distance, but border districts also support shorter-term commuting, construction work, transport employment, retail labour and seasonal agricultural activity. A household can therefore earn in one jurisdiction while consuming, farming or educating children in another. This distribution complicates provincial economic statistics because income may be generated outside the province and spent inside it. Digital transfers, improved roads and easier passenger transport intensify these links. For local governments, the consequences appear in housing demand, school enrolment, care burdens and local markets rather than in customs records. Labour mobility should thus be treated as part of the economic infrastructure of the border, alongside railways and land ports, while worker protection and access to formal financial channels remain essential.

131.22 Health, education and pilgrimage are service exports and imports

Border economies exchange services as well as goods. Patients from Nepal travel to Indian hospitals and diagnostic centres; Indian pilgrims travel to Janakpurdham and other Nepalese religious sites; students cross for schools, colleges, coaching and professional education; families use transport and hospitality on both sides. These flows create income even when nothing is declared at customs. They also influence where pharmacies, hotels, bus services, hostels and private educational institutions locate. Federalisation increases the role of local and provincial governments because service quality depends on municipal roads, sanitation, tourism management and health or education administration. The economic history of the border must therefore count mobility-linked services conceptually even when complete statistics are unavailable. A railway or digital-payment link can raise service trade by making a journey easier without changing merchandise trade at all.

131.23 Local markets, haats and municipalities matter under federalism

Federalisation gives local governments greater visibility in the everyday commercial institutions that sit below the international-trade system. Nepal's local-government law assigns municipalities responsibilities for

local market management, supply monitoring, local roads and other services that shape haats, bus stands and retail streets. This matters in the border belt where small transactions are frequent and where formal wholesale chains coexist with weekly markets. Better paving, drainage, lighting, sanitation, vendor organisation and traffic management can raise productivity without any change in customs policy. Local governments can also improve transparency by publishing fees and reducing informal rent extraction. The important distinction is jurisdiction: a municipality may regulate its market but cannot impose a charge that obstructs national movement of goods contrary to higher law. The border economy works best when local revenue mobilisation supports services rather than recreating fragmented internal barriers.

131.24 Fiscal federalism expands responsibility faster than own-source revenue

Nepal's federal system gives provincial and local governments substantial expenditure responsibilities, but their fiscal autonomy remains incomplete. The World Bank's Nepal Fiscal Federalism Update 2024 found that subnational governments still relied heavily on intergovernmental transfers and that provincial and local deficits appeared in FY2023 as federal revenue weakened. Local governments received roughly three-quarters of their revenue through the four main forms of intergovernmental fiscal transfer. This matters for border development because municipalities may be responsible for local roads, markets and services without having a tax base large enough to finance major upgrades independently. The result can be a mismatch between the economic importance of a border town and its municipal fiscal capacity. Better coordination of federal grants, provincial investment and local maintenance is therefore as important as assigning legal responsibility. Federalism decentralises decisions only when money, staff and data follow the function.

131.25 Informal exchange must be distinguished from unauthorised trade

The bilateral Inter-Governmental Committee explicitly includes cooperation to control unauthorised trade, reflecting legitimate concerns about evasion, prohibited goods and revenue leakage. Yet historians should not collapse all small-scale or undocumented border exchange into one category. A family carrying household goods, a pilgrim buying food, a worker spending earnings, and a commercial trader evading customs are economically and legally different activities. Open-border social life creates many low-value transactions that may be difficult to measure but are not equivalent to organised smuggling. Effective regulation therefore needs thresholds, clear allowances, risk-based enforcement and public information. Excessive friction on ordinary movement can push more activity into informality, while weak enforcement can disadvantage compliant firms. The policy objective should be proportionality: concentrate inspection resources where fiscal, sanitary or security risks are greatest while preserving lawful local mobility.

131.26 Women traders and small firms face documentation and mobility costs

Border modernisation can lower costs, but it can also create barriers if procedures assume that every trader has dedicated staff, digital literacy, collateral and time to visit multiple offices. Women running small enterprises may face additional constraints from care responsibilities, safety, access to transport and weaker ownership of assets used for formal finance. Small agricultural processors can struggle with standards documentation, packaging, testing and minimum shipment sizes even when the tariff is favourable. Federalisation offers an opportunity because provincial and local agencies are closer to these firms. Business help desks, shared testing facilities, women's producer groups, market information and transparent digital procedures can convert formalisation from a compliance burden into productive capability. Inclusion should therefore be measured by who can actually use the border infrastructure, not merely by whether a new facility has been inaugurated.

131.27 Floods and climate shocks test economic continuity across the border

Chapter 130 showed that the river systems of Bihar and Nepal are physically transboundary. The same is true of economic disruption. Floods can close approach roads, strand trucks, damage railway embankments, interrupt electricity, contaminate markets and delay agricultural exports. A border land port may remain physically intact while its catchment roads fail. Climate resilience is therefore an economic-continuity problem as well as a disaster-management problem. Corridor planning should map alternate routes, elevate critical equipment, protect data links, maintain emergency fuel and power, and share hydrometeorological information across agencies. Local governments need plans for markets and shelters; provincial authorities need road and drainage coordination; federal agencies need customs and transport continuity. Federalism can improve resilience if these responsibilities are coordinated, but it can worsen fragmentation if each tier plans only within its own administrative boundary.

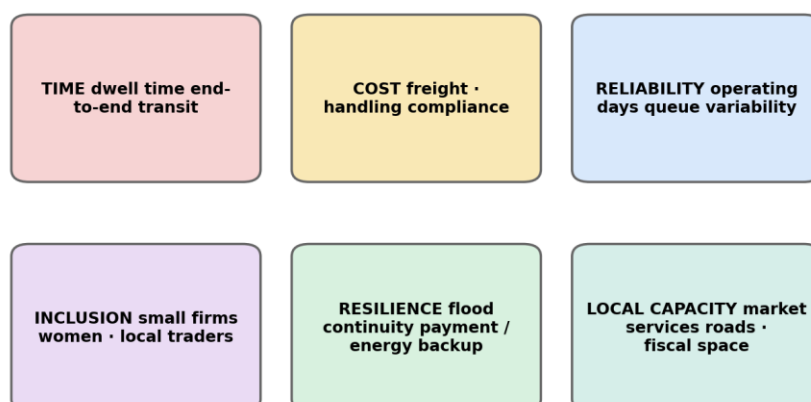
131.28 Data must be reconstructed from incompatible administrative systems

No single dataset measures the post-federalisation border economy of Mithila, Vajji and Anga. Indian trade statistics are national and financial-year based; Nepal uses a different fiscal calendar; land-port data are corridor-specific; provincial economic surveys cover Madhesh as a modern administrative unit; local budgets capture municipal services; electricity and petroleum flows belong to separate sectoral systems; passenger movement is incompletely recorded at many open-border points. The historian must therefore resist false aggregation. Raxaul land-port trade cannot be added casually to national bilateral totals, and Madhesh provincial GDP cannot be treated as the economy of historical Mithila. The correct method is an evidence architecture: use each dataset for the process it actually records, date it precisely, state the unit and keep gaps visible. Federalisation has created richer subnational records, but also more layers that need to be reconciled.

131.29 What better border governance should measure

A modern border-economy dashboard should move beyond gross trade value. For goods, it should track border dwell time, end-to-end transit time, truck or rail reliability, rejected consignments, testing time and logistics cost. For people, it should track safe passenger access, station connectivity and service availability without turning open-border mobility into unnecessary bureaucracy. For payments, it should monitor transaction success, cost and coverage across banks and merchant networks. For resilience, it should measure days of disruption after flood or infrastructure failure. For inclusion, it should ask whether small firms, women-owned enterprises and local producers can use formal systems. For federalism, it should record who is responsible for each bottleneck and whether the responsible level has the staff and finance to solve it. Measurement becomes useful when it points to an accountable institution rather than merely describing congestion.

What a border-economy dashboard should measure



Success means lower friction, wider access, reliable services and faster recovery — not merely a larger trade total.

Figure 523 — A producer- and household-centred dashboard for border-economy governance.

131.30 Conclusion: federalisation localised development while the border economy stayed transnational

The decade after Nepal's federal transition has produced two changes at once. First, provincial and local governments became durable actors in roads, markets, agriculture, tourism, public finance and municipal services. Second, the international economic network became more integrated through land ports, railways, petroleum pipelines, power trade and digital payments. These processes are not contradictory. Customs and bilateral treaties remain federal because the border is international; development is increasingly subnational because economic opportunity is local. The result is a layered border economy in which a household, trader or pilgrim may pass through infrastructure designed by one government, regulated by another and maintained by a third. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the durable historical fact is not the erasure of the border but the persistence of a connected economic zone across it. The next part of the volume turns from contemporary economic structures to the family, gender, youth, language and cultural institutions that inhabit this connected space.

Table 131.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing India–Nepal border economies after federalisation

Evidence source	What it establishes	Decision historical use /	Main limitation
Constitution of Nepal + federal laws	division of federal, provincial and local powers	separates customs/treaty powers from last-mile development functions	formal jurisdiction does not show administrative capacity
Madhesh Province budgets/economic surveys	provincial spending, sector priorities and subnational indicators	tracks the new provincial layer after federalisation	modern province is not identical with historical Mithila
Local-government budgets and acts	markets, local roads, drainage, sanitation and local services	shows how border competitiveness is produced below customs level	quality and comparability vary by municipality

Evidence source	What it establishes	Decision / historical use	Main limitation
India–Nepal trade and transit agreements	formal rules for bilateral and third-country movement	dates institutional changes in routes, rail and transit	treaty text does not measure actual use
LPAI Raxaul/Jogbani statistics	corridor trade value and cargo movements	measures concentration and change at major land ports	not equal to total bilateral trade; definitions can change
Railway operational records	passenger/freight opening dates and direct services	identifies when infrastructure became operational	inauguration does not prove sustained frequency or cost savings
Power-sector records	electricity exports/imports and transmission arrangements	captures a major non-cargo border flow	national/sectoral data, not province-level household effects
Petroleum-pipeline records	pipeline commissioning, expansion and storage plans	shows shift from tanker queues to network logistics	throughput and price effects need separate data
NRB/NCHL/NPCI payment records	merchant QR and P2P cross-border payment milestones	tracks formalisation of small-value money movement	coverage depends on participating banks/merchants and limits
Immigration/passenger sources	rules and selected passenger movements	documents mobility regime and service-economy links	open-border movement is incompletely enumerated
Fiscal-federalism reports	transfers, revenue dependence and subnational capacity	tests whether devolved functions have adequate finance	national aggregates may hide border-municipality differences
Disaster and hydrometeorological records	flood disruption and continuity risks	connects resilience to trade, mobility and service continuity	event data rarely measure full economic loss

PART XIV

CONTEMPORARY SOCIAL AND CULTURAL CHANGE

Chapters 132–142

Chapter 132 — Family Transformation

PART XIV turns from the contemporary economy to contemporary social and cultural change. Chapter 132 begins with the family because households are the point at which demographic transition, migration, education, property, paid work, unpaid care, digital communication and social policy become everyday social relations. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, however, ‘family transformation’ cannot be reduced to a simple story in which a traditional joint family disappears and a modern nuclear family replaces it. Residential arrangements, kinship obligations and economic cooperation do not change at the same speed. A married couple may live separately from parents yet share land, remittances, ritual duties and care. A migrant worker may be absent for most of the year while remaining central to household decisions. A woman may become the *de facto* manager of a farm without acquiring formal title or independent control of income. The appropriate object of study is therefore the changing family system, not a single household type.

The evidence is also uneven. On the Indian side, Census 2011 remains the last completed population census and contains the most detailed official tables on household size, household composition, marital status and migration. NFHS-6, conducted in 2023–24 and released in 2026, provides a far more recent sample-based picture of fertility, early marriage, schooling, digital access, health and household-linked assets, but it is not a substitute for a complete household census. On the Nepal side, the 2021 National Population and Housing Census gives a recent census baseline, while the 2022 Nepal Demographic and Health Survey updates fertility and family-health indicators. These sources use different definitions and dates. The chapter therefore compares processes and institutions while keeping statistical universes visible. It treats Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh/Terai as overlapping historical-cultural frames rather than inventing a single modern family-statistics region.

132.1 Family and household: two units that must not be confused

A household is usually defined for statistical purposes by co-residence and shared arrangements for food or living, while a family is a network of relationships that can extend across several dwellings and jurisdictions. The distinction is decisive in a high-migration region. Parents may remain in a village, one son may work in Delhi, another in Punjab, a daughter may live after marriage in another district, and a student may rent a room in Patna or Kathmandu. Census enumeration records where people usually reside; family obligation records who pays school fees, who inherits land, who cares for elders and who participates in marriage and ritual. Contemporary transformation often consists precisely in the widening gap between residential unit and family network. A historian who equates the two will misread migration as family dissolution and separate kitchens as the disappearance of kinship.

132.2 The evidence problem after 2011 on the Indian side

For Bihar, detailed official household composition still rests heavily on Census 2011. The HH-01 table records household size, HH-04 distinguishes nuclear, sub-nuclear, supplemented nuclear, joint and other household types, and marital-status tables record age and marriage categories. Those tables are indispensable but dated. Census 2027 is under way in 2026, so no completed post-2011 census household structure can yet be treated as observed fact. NFHS-6 offers a current sample survey and should be used for what it actually measures: fertility, marriage, schooling, health, digital use, bank access and selected property indicators. Administrative databases add pensions, ration cards, school enrolment and welfare participation, but they serve programme rules rather than a common household concept. The chapter therefore separates census

structure, survey behaviour and administrative participation instead of merging them into a fictitious ‘2026 household census’.

132.3 Household size is changing, but not everywhere at the same rate

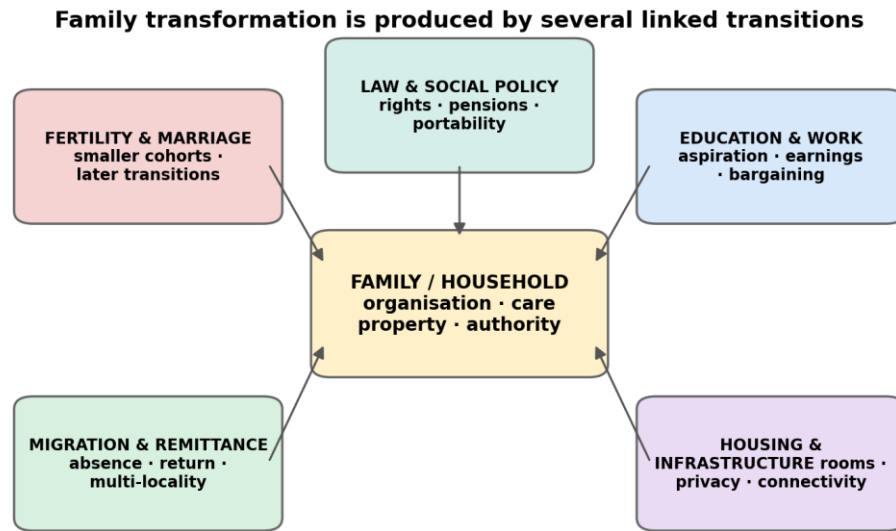
Household size is one visible dimension of family change. Long-run fertility decline, later marriage, migration and the subdivision of residential property tend to reduce the number of people sharing one dwelling. Yet the direction is not uniform. Rural households may retain multiple generations because land, care and housing are shared; migrant absence can reduce the number actually present without changing membership; and newly married sons may build adjacent houses on the same homestead rather than move into socially separate worlds. Nepal’s 2021 census provides a useful cross-border contrast: average household size in Madhesh Province was about 5.3 persons, the largest among Nepal’s provinces. The figure reflects fertility and regional household patterns, but it should not be translated mechanically into ‘joint-family prevalence’. Size counts persons; it does not identify the authority, property arrangements or kinship obligations inside the unit.

132.4 Nuclearisation is not a one-way historical law

The familiar narrative of modernisation predicts a movement from extended to nuclear families as schooling, wage work and urbanisation expand. Regional evidence requires a more careful model. Nuclear residence can increase while extended kinship remains economically powerful. Young couples may establish a separate kitchen for convenience or conflict reduction yet continue to cultivate jointly owned land, borrow from relatives, send children to grandparents during migration, and contribute to collective ceremonies. Conversely, an apparently joint household may contain separate budgets, unequal claims and strong internal divisions. Household forms can also move in both directions across the life cycle: a couple may begin with parents, separate after acquiring income, reunite during illness, or take in an elderly parent. Transformation is therefore better described as the diversification and renegotiation of co-residence rather than a linear disappearance of the joint family.

132.5 Fertility decline is altering the architecture of kinship

The size of sibling groups is one of the deepest long-run determinants of family structure. NFHS-6 reports a total fertility rate of 2.7 children per woman for Bihar in 2023–24, down from 3.0 in NFHS-5. The newly released NFHS-6 fact sheets are provisional, but the direction of change is consistent with the longer fertility transition. Smaller completed families eventually mean fewer brothers and sisters, fewer parallel branches competing for inherited plots, and different ratios between children, parents and grandparents. Yet fertility decline does not instantly produce small households because several generations overlap. It first changes the composition of future kin networks. In the longer run it can reduce the pool of adult children available for elder care even as longer survival increases the number of years parents may require support. Family transformation is thus demographic before it is architectural.



No single variable converts a “joint family” into a “nuclear family”; change is uneven, reversible and multi-local.

Figure 524 — Family transformation as the interaction of demographic, economic, institutional and material change.

132.6 Marriage is occurring later for some groups, but early marriage remains significant

Age at marriage affects schooling, fertility, work and the timing of household formation. Bihar’s NFHS-6 reports that 34.6 percent of women aged 20–24 had married before age eighteen, down from 40.8 percent in NFHS-5. The decline is substantial but the remaining level is high, and state averages conceal sharp district and social variation. Nepal’s 2021 census thematic analysis likewise found relatively early female marriage in Madhesh, with an estimated age at marriage of about 20.5 years. These indicators are not directly comparable: one measures the share married before a legal threshold and the other estimates timing from census data. Their historical significance nevertheless converges. Extended schooling and changing aspirations are postponing family formation for many young people, while poverty, insecurity, gender norms and local marriage markets continue to sustain earlier transitions for others.

132.7 Marriage remains one of the largest engines of women’s mobility

Labour migration dominates public discussion of mobility, but marriage has historically moved far more women between households and localities in Bihar. Census-based analyses have shown the overwhelming weight of marriage among recorded female migration. This matters for family transformation because a woman’s change of residence is tied to property, care, social support and the creation of affinal networks. Marriage can relocate women across village, district and sometimes national boundaries while leaving natal-family obligations active through visits, gifts, crisis support and digital contact. Patrilocal residence therefore does not imply severed natal ties. At the same time, women who pursue higher education or paid work before or after marriage may negotiate residence differently. Chapter 133 examines changing marriage practices in detail; here the key point is that household formation is inseparable from gendered mobility.

132.8 Education changes the timing and bargaining context of family formation

The expansion of schooling has transformed family strategies even where employment outcomes remain uncertain. Secondary and higher education can postpone marriage, increase the cost of withdrawing a daughter or son from study, and create expectations for salaried or skilled work. It also produces new residential forms: hostels, coaching rooms, student migration and temporary urban households. NFHS-6 shows continued improvement in female schooling in Bihar, though rural–urban and gender gaps remain. Education affects family authority because a digitally literate student may manage applications, banking or health information for older relatives. It can also generate conflict when aspirations exceed local opportunities or when prolonged exam preparation delays earnings and marriage. The family increasingly finances a transition period between childhood and stable adulthood that may extend into the twenties.

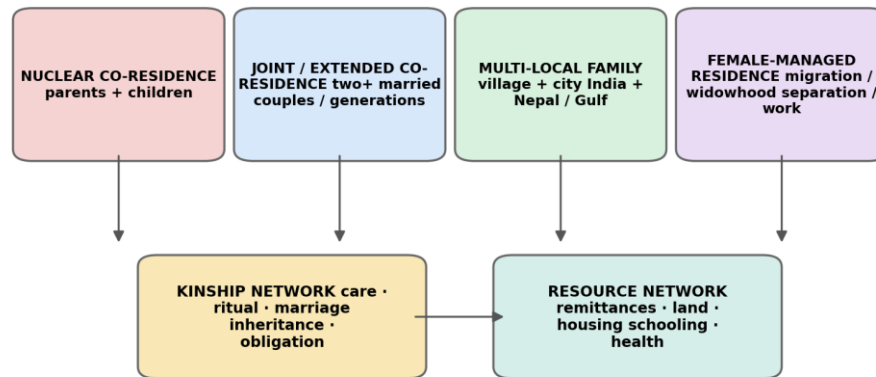
132.9 Migration has turned many families into multi-local institutions

Migration is one of the strongest forces separating family membership from daily co-residence. A worker in Delhi, Surat, Punjab, Mumbai, Kathmandu or the Gulf may remain economically central to a household in Darbhanga, Madhubani, Saharsa, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur or Madhesh. Remittances move one way; childcare, elder care, property supervision and ritual representation move another. Migration can create long periods in which women, older parents or siblings manage the origin household. It can also produce serial households when a migrant eventually brings spouse and children to the destination while land and elders remain in the village. The relevant family unit is therefore distributed across places. Mobile phones, digital payments and cheap transport allow this multi-local institution to function more continuously than earlier migration systems, but they do not remove the emotional and care costs of separation.

132.10 Remittances reorganise authority as well as consumption

Money sent by migrants is often described as household income, but its social meaning depends on who earns, receives, allocates and records it. A migrant son may send money to parents, to a spouse, or directly to a bank account used for school fees and construction. The recipient may gain practical authority without gaining ownership of the underlying land or house. Remittances can finance separate dwellings for younger couples, reduce dependence on local patrons and increase spending on education and health. They can also deepen hierarchy if one migrant's earnings give his branch of a joint family greater influence. During unemployment or return migration, the direction of dependency can reverse. The family therefore acts as a risk-sharing institution in which income, property and care are exchanged across places and generations rather than pooled automatically under a single household head.

Household form and family network are not the same thing



A small residential unit can remain embedded in a dense extended family economy.

Figure 525 — Household form, kinship network and resource network are analytically distinct.

132.11 Female household headship must not be equated with empowerment

Household-headship statistics are useful but easily over-interpreted. Nepal's 2021 census recorded 21.7 percent of Madhesh households as female-headed, lower than the national share. Female headship can arise from widowhood, male migration, separation, independent earning or a household's own reporting convention. None of these situations has a single implication for power. A woman whose husband is abroad may manage agriculture and schooling but still consult him on land sales; a widow may be the recognised head yet face weak inheritance security; an employed woman may live with a male household head while controlling substantial income. Empowerment is therefore better assessed through property rights, mobility, financial access, decision-making, exposure to violence and control over earnings. Headship is one indicator within that wider structure.

132.12 Women's unpaid care work is a central family economy

Household transformation is often measured through income while the redistribution of unpaid work remains invisible. Cooking, cleaning, water collection, child supervision, elder care, livestock care, fuel management and the organisation of illness are essential to the reproduction of the household. Male out-migration can increase women's management responsibilities even when it reduces some male consumption needs. Smaller families may reduce childcare burden but ageing can increase elder care. Schooling can change the daily timetable by shifting children into institutions while also creating homework, transport and fee-management tasks. Paid domestic appliances and services can substitute for some labour only for households that can afford them. The contemporary family therefore changes not only when people earn differently but when care is redistributed among women, men, grandparents, siblings, schools, markets and the state.

132.13 Paid work can expand women's bargaining power but also create a double burden

Women's paid employment affects household negotiation because cash income can strengthen claims over expenditure, mobility and children's education. Yet employment does not automatically reduce unpaid responsibilities. In rural Bihar and Madhesh, women may combine agriculture, livestock, self-help-group

activity, wage work or small enterprise with domestic care. Public employment, teaching, health work and salaried service create different bargaining positions from intermittent agricultural labour. Migration can also separate work from family: some women move for education, nursing, teaching or other jobs, while others remain at origin households during male migration. Chapter 134 analyses gender, education and employment directly. For family history, the central point is that the meaning of women's work depends on whether earnings, time and property rights are renegotiated inside the household.

132.14 Housing change creates privacy, separation and new forms of proximity

The built environment shapes family organisation. Concrete houses with several rooms, separate kitchens, toilets, electricity and digital connectivity allow forms of privacy that are difficult in one-room dwellings. Remittance-funded construction can physically separate brothers while keeping them within the same courtyard or village lane. Multi-storey houses can place related nuclear units on different floors. Roadside and peri-urban housing can weaken dependence on ancestral homesteads while increasing access to schools and markets. At the same time, vacant or partially occupied large houses are a visible outcome of migration. Housing should therefore be read as a material record of family strategy: rooms, kitchens, entrances and ownership titles reveal changing boundaries of privacy and property, though they do not by themselves reveal the quality of relationships.

132.15 Land fragmentation turns family demography into an economic constraint

Inheritance connects family structure directly to agrarian change. When land is divided among several heirs, holdings can become too small or scattered for efficient cultivation. Fertility decline may eventually slow subdivision, but the legacy of earlier large sibling groups persists for decades. Families respond through leasing, joint cultivation, sale, migration-funded purchase, or leaving some shares nominally undivided. A brother who migrates may retain a claim while another cultivates the land, creating a gap between ownership and labour. Women's inheritance rights add another important dimension: legal entitlement does not always translate into recorded possession or operational control. Family transformation therefore changes the farm not merely through labour supply but through the legal and social distribution of land across generations.

132.16 Property ownership is becoming more individualised in law than in everyday practice

Modern law increasingly recognises individual rights to land, housing, bank accounts and inheritance, yet family assets often continue to be treated socially as collective or lineage property. A registered title may be in one person's name while several relatives claim moral rights; conversely, a woman may have a legal inheritance claim that she does not press because of expectations of natal-family support. Housing schemes, bank credit, self-help groups and documentation drives can strengthen individual ownership records, but they interact with older norms of family property. The result is neither simple collectivism nor complete individualisation. Contemporary households operate through layered property regimes in which legal title, possession, use, investment and inheritance expectations may belong to different people. This ambiguity is a major source of both flexibility and conflict.

132.17 Ageing is creating a new care question before the region becomes old

Bihar and Madhesh still have relatively young populations, but ageing is already visible. NFHS-6 reports that 11.5 percent of Bihar's population lived in the age group sixty and above, while Nepal's census shows a

growing older population across provinces. The challenge is intensified by migration: adult children may live far from parents who remain in rural homes. Cash remittances can finance medicine and food but cannot by themselves provide daily assistance. Daughters, daughters-in-law, neighbours and hired carers may fill gaps; older couples may choose to live near town hospitals; and pensions can reduce dependence without eliminating care needs. As fertility falls, future cohorts of elders will have fewer children among whom to distribute responsibility. Family transformation must therefore be analysed from the perspective of ageing as well as youth.

132.18 Grandparents are increasingly part of the infrastructure of migration

Grandparental care can make migration and women's employment possible. Children may remain with grandparents while parents work elsewhere, or grandparents may move temporarily to urban households to provide childcare. This reverses the assumption that older people are only dependants. They can contribute housing, land supervision, ritual continuity, emotional support and childcare even when their cash income is limited. The arrangement also carries costs: older carers may face health strain, and children may experience prolonged parental absence. Grandparental involvement differs by class and household form, but it demonstrates how family adaptation relies on intergenerational exchange. The household is not simply a set of dependants supported by workers; it is a circulation of labour, care and assets across the life course.

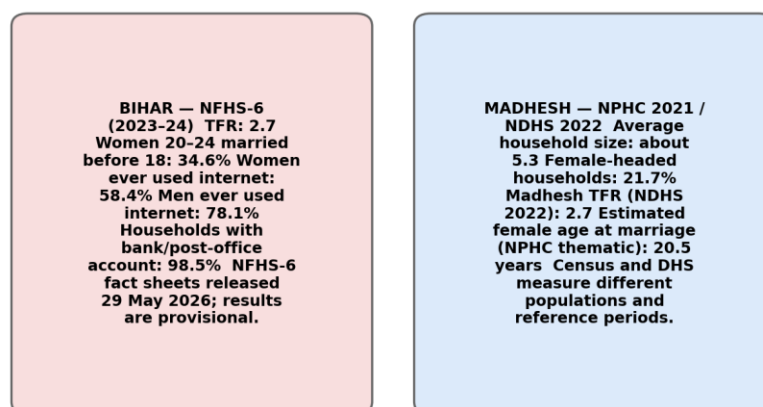
132.19 Childhood is becoming more education-intensive and expenditure-intensive

Fewer children do not necessarily mean lower household expenditure. Families increasingly spend on private tuition, coaching, transport, digital devices, uniforms, examination fees and higher education. Aspirations can concentrate resources on children in ways that alter sibling relations and marriage timing. Education also moves children and young adults out of the home for long periods, creating hostels, rented rooms and split households. Where educational quality is uneven, families with migration income or salaried employment can purchase options unavailable to poorer households, producing new class differences within the same caste or village. The transformation of childhood therefore links demographic decline to a rising investment model of parenting. Success and failure in education can then feed back into migration, marriage and the future support of parents.

132.20 Reproductive health and family planning have shifted decision-making into clinics and households

The fertility transition is mediated through contraception, maternal health care and changing reproductive preferences. NFHS-6 shows rising use of family-planning methods in Bihar, but method choice remains highly gendered, with female sterilisation far more common than male sterilisation. This means that smaller family size can coexist with an unequal distribution of reproductive responsibility. Institutional delivery, antenatal care and health insurance also connect family decisions to public and private health systems. The household must negotiate costs, travel, information and the authority of older relatives alongside the preferences of couples. Reproductive change is therefore both a demographic outcome and a reorganisation of decision-making between women, men, kin and medical institutions.

Two contemporary statistical baselines — useful, but not directly interchangeable



Compare processes, not raw percentages, unless definitions, dates and universes are harmonised.

Figure 526 — Bihar and Madhesh provide different contemporary statistical baselines; definitions and dates must be kept visible.

132.21 Digital communication has reduced distance without eliminating hierarchy

Mobile phones and messaging allow migrants to participate in daily family life from a distance: they can approve purchases, speak with children, send money, consult doctors and join rituals by video. NFHS-6 indicates a major rise in internet use in Bihar, though a substantial gender gap remains: 58.4 percent of women and 78.1 percent of men were reported as having ever used the internet. Digital access can strengthen women's financial and informational autonomy when phones and accounts are individually controlled. It can also extend surveillance by enabling continuous monitoring of spouses or young people. The family becomes more connected across space but not necessarily more equal. Digitalisation changes the channels through which authority, affection and conflict operate.

132.22 Banking and direct transfers are creating more individual financial identities

NFHS-6 reports near-universal household access to a bank or post-office account in Bihar at the household level. Public transfers, pensions, scholarships, self-help groups and mobile payments increasingly require named beneficiaries and documented accounts. This can shift some resources away from a single household cash pool toward individual financial identities. Women receiving transfers into their own accounts may gain practical control, but access depends on phone ownership, biometric authentication, literacy and the social freedom to use the account. Migrants can also remit directly to spouses or parents. Financial individualisation therefore interacts with family pooling rather than replacing it. The key question is who can convert a formal account into effective control over money.

132.23 Urbanisation and peri-urban growth are producing new household arrangements

Urban and peri-urban households often face different constraints from village households: high rents, limited space, commuting costs and weaker access to kin-based childcare can favour smaller residential units. Yet towns such as Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur, Hajipur and Janakpur also attract relatives for education, treatment and employment, turning some households into temporary hostels for kin. Peri-urban expansion can allow families to retain village land while participating in city labour markets. The result is not a clean rural-to-urban transition but a corridor of mixed livelihoods and residences. Family networks become spatially stretched across village, town and metropolis, with property and identity anchored in more than one place.

132.24 Cross-border kinship keeps India and Nepal socially connected beyond formal trade

The India–Nepal border is crossed not only by goods and workers but by kinship. Marriage, pilgrimage, education and family visits sustain networks between north Bihar and Madhesh. The open-border regime makes many ordinary journeys possible without the formalities associated with most international boundaries, although citizenship, property and public-service rights remain nationally specific. Families can therefore be socially transnational while legally divided between two states. Federalisation in Nepal added provincial and local institutions to this landscape without dissolving older kin networks. Cross-border family relations complicate any account that treats the nation-state as the natural boundary of household life. They also make documentation, inheritance and access to services important practical questions when relatives live under different legal systems.

132.25 Caste and community shape family practices, but no group is timeless

Marriage networks, residence norms, inheritance expectations and ritual obligations vary across caste and community, yet contemporary change occurs within every social group. Education, migration, land loss, reservation, public employment and urban housing can alter family strategies even where ceremonial identities remain strong. Historical categories should not be projected backward as if current boundaries and rankings were permanent. The same caution applies to claims that one caste is inherently ‘joint’ or another naturally ‘nuclear’. Household structure reflects assets, life-cycle stage, employment and local demography as well as social norms. The analytically useful question is how institutions and opportunities reshape family practice differently across groups, not which group represents tradition or modernity.

132.26 Religious diversity intersects with family law and everyday social practice

The region’s Hindu, Muslim, Buddhist, Jain, Christian and other populations live under a combination of civil law, personal-law traditions, customary practice and local social expectations. Marriage, divorce, inheritance and guardianship can therefore have different legal routes, but everyday family arrangements are also shaped by class, migration, education and neighbourhood. Economic pressures often cut across religious boundaries: housing scarcity, remittance dependence, elder care and schooling generate similar practical problems even when legal institutions differ. A responsible regional history should neither erase religious specificity nor treat it as a complete explanation of household behaviour. Family transformation occurs through the interaction of law, economy and lived practice.

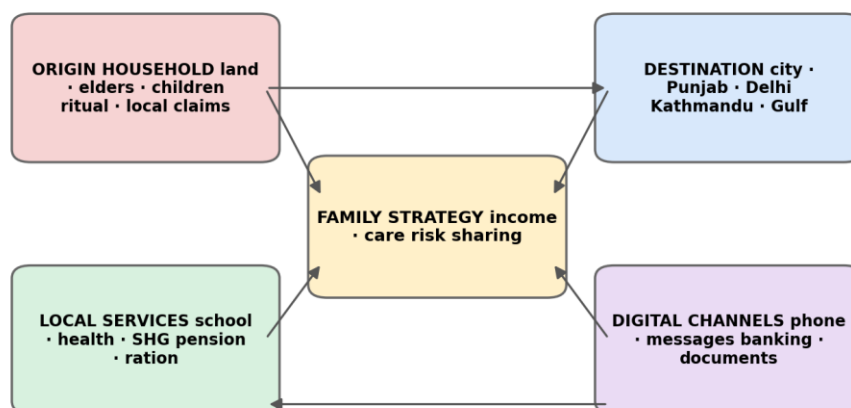
132.27 Widowhood, separation and single-person households make family vulnerability visible

Not all family change is produced by planned independence. Death, abandonment, divorce, separation and migration can create households headed by one adult or composed of a single person. Nepal's census thematic work on single women shows the scale and diversity of such situations, including widowhood and separation. In Bihar, census household and marital-status tables likewise allow these categories to be identified, though current post-2011 prevalence awaits a new census. Such households may face weaker access to labour, property or social support, but they are not uniformly vulnerable. Pensions, salaried work, land rights, adult children and neighbourhood networks can provide security. The important historical shift is that law and welfare increasingly recognise individuals as claimants even when family support remains the first line of care.

132.28 Disability and chronic illness redistribute family labour

Disability and chronic disease reveal the dependence of family life on care. A household member who needs assistance can alter work schedules, migration decisions, housing design and school participation of caregivers. Public disability benefits, health insurance and accessible infrastructure can reduce the burden, but implementation remains uneven. Care often falls disproportionately on women and older relatives, and the cost is rarely captured in household income statistics. Migration can both help and hurt: remittances finance treatment, while the absence of a working-age adult reduces hands-on care. As non-communicable disease becomes more important and survival improves, family transformation must be understood partly as the reorganisation of care around longer lives and chronic conditions.

The multi-local family: people, money and care move in different directions



Co-residence may shrink while economic and emotional interdependence remains strong.

Figure 527 — A multi-local family circulates income, care, information and obligations across places.

132.29 Crisis shows that household forms are adaptive rather than fixed

Floods, epidemics, unemployment and sudden return migration can rapidly reorganise households. The COVID-19 shock demonstrated how migrants could return to villages, temporarily enlarging households and reversing established cash flows. Flood displacement can move families to embankments, relatives'

houses or towns; illness can reunite separated kin; crop failure can accelerate labour migration. These episodes show why household categories should be treated as snapshots rather than permanent identities. Resilience often depends on the ability to activate wider kin networks, borrow housing, pool food and redistribute care. The same networks can also reproduce inequality when support is conditional or obligations become unsustainable. Family flexibility is therefore both a resource and a source of pressure.

132.30 Conclusion: from household type to negotiated family systems

The contemporary family in Mithila, Vajji and Anga is being transformed by declining fertility, shifting marriage timing, migration, schooling, women's work, ageing, housing, property law, welfare and digital communication. None of these forces produces one universal household form. Instead, families negotiate where members live, who controls resources, who provides care and how obligations are distributed across generations and places. A small co-resident household may remain embedded in a large kinship economy; a female-managed household may still contain unequal property rights; a migrant family may be geographically dispersed yet digitally and financially integrated. The historical movement is therefore from relatively stable assumptions about co-residence toward a more diverse set of negotiated family systems. The following chapters examine the major arenas in which those negotiations become visible: marriage, gender, youth, media, religion, caste, citizenship, language and cultural change.

Table 132.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing contemporary family transformation

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in family history	Main limitation
Census 2011 HH-01 / HH-04	household size and composition categories	baseline for nuclear, joint, extended and household-size analysis in Bihar	dated; no completed post-2011 Indian census yet
Census 2011 C-series	marital status and age-at-marriage structure	links household formation to age, sex and education	historical snapshot rather than current behaviour
NFHS-6 Bihar 2023–24	fertility, early marriage, schooling, internet, bank access, selected assets	updates major drivers of family change through 2024	sample survey; released results are provisional and not a household census
NFHS-5 Bihar 2019–21	comparable earlier survey indicators	measures recent direction of change	definitions must be checked before trend claims
Nepal NPHC 2021	household size, headship, marriage, migration and living arrangements	current census baseline for Madhesh and cross-border comparison	Nepal categories are not identical to Indian census categories
Nepal DHS 2022	fertility and reproductive/family-health indicators	updates demographic transition after the 2021 census	sample survey with different reference periods
Migration / labour reports	absence, destination, remittances and return	reconstructs multi-local family systems	resident-household surveys can miss circular mobility
Property and welfare records	titles, pensions, transfers, accounts, scheme participation	shows individual rights inside family economies	administrative coverage follows programme rules
Housing data and field observation	rooms, kitchens, tenure, proximity and construction	connects built form to privacy and family separation	housing form does not directly reveal authority or conflict
Qualitative / ethnographic studies	care, bargaining, obligation and	explains mechanisms hidden by household	local findings should not be universalised

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in family history	Main limitation
	kinship practice	counts	

Chapter 133 — Changing Marriage Practices

Chapter 133 examines changing marriage practices as a social institution, a household strategy and a legal relationship. Marriage in Mithila, Vajji and Anga is often discussed through ritual continuity, but the contemporary history lies equally in changing ages at marriage, education, migration, partner search, dowry and wedding expenditure, registration, post-marital residence, digital communication and the growing importance of individual consent. None of these changes follows a single line from ‘traditional’ to ‘modern’. Arranged marriages can incorporate extensive choice; digital searches can reproduce caste and community filters; later marriage can coexist with expensive dowry; and a legally registered union can remain embedded in dense kin obligations. The chapter therefore treats marriage as a sequence of decisions and institutions rather than as a ceremony alone.

The statistical frame requires the same caution used in Chapter 132. Bihar’s most recent marriage indicators now include the NFHS-6 (2023–24) state and district fact sheets released in 2026, while the detailed NFHS-5 state report remains important for distributions and age-at-marriage tables. Nepal’s 2022 Demographic and Health Survey provides recent measures of age at first marriage and registration, and the 2021 census supplies household and marital-status context. Legal thresholds differ across the border: India’s Prohibition of Child Marriage Act treats a female below eighteen and a male below twenty-one as a child for the Act, while Nepal’s current civil-law framework requires both parties to have completed twenty years. These thresholds are legal standards, not descriptions of actual marriage behaviour. Survey measures, civil registration and law-enforcement records answer different questions and must not be merged into a single prevalence figure.

133.1 Marriage as alliance, contract, mobility and household formation

Marriage joins several social processes that should be analysed separately. It creates a publicly recognised relationship between spouses, but it also links kin groups, reallocates residence, redistributes care obligations and may move property or money between households. In much of the region, a bride’s move after marriage has historically been one of the most important forms of female mobility. For men, marriage can trigger the formation of a separate household or the reorganisation of a joint one. For both spouses, the union creates claims on inheritance, support, ritual participation and childrearing. Contemporary change therefore appears not only in whom people marry but in how quickly they establish a separate kitchen, whether they migrate together, who controls documents and bank accounts, and how much autonomy the couple has from the two natal families. Marriage is simultaneously intimate and institutional.

133.2 Evidence architecture: surveys, censuses, law, registration and ethnography

No single source captures contemporary marriage adequately. NFHS and DHS measure age at first marriage, current marital status and selected dimensions of agency; censuses provide large-scale marital-status and migration patterns; registration systems record legally documented unions; court and police records capture only disputes that enter formal institutions; and ethnography reveals negotiations that statistics cannot see. NFHS-6 adds a new Bihar fact-sheet baseline, but as of September 2026 the public NFHS site states that the NFHS-6 microdata set is not yet available. This means that the released state and district estimates can be used descriptively, while finer multivariate analysis must await microdata or rely on earlier rounds. Nepal’s DHS microdata are available to registered researchers. A historically responsible chapter keeps the date, population universe and definition attached to every number.

133.3 The persistence of family-mediated partner search

Family-mediated partner search remains widespread because marriage is still understood as creating a relationship between households as well as between two individuals. Parents, siblings, maternal and paternal kin, neighbours, caste or community intermediaries and professional brokers can all participate. Yet family mediation does not imply the absence of choice. Prospective spouses may speak by phone, exchange photographs, meet in person, reject proposals or ask relatives to widen the search. The important change is often procedural: authority that was once concentrated in senior kin becomes negotiated among several actors. In educated and migrant households, the young person's employment plans, city of residence and willingness to support parents can become central criteria. The resulting marriage may still be described as 'arranged' even though the process contains substantial individual screening and consent.

133.4 Bihar: a measurable decline in marriage before eighteen

Bihar's survey series shows a significant but incomplete shift in female age at marriage. The NFHS-4 fact sheet reported 42.5 percent of women aged 20–24 as having married before eighteen. NFHS-5 reported 40.8 percent, and the NFHS-6 Bihar fact sheet reports 34.6 percent for 2023–24. The direction is clear: early marriage has declined, but more than one-third of women in this recent cohort still reported marriage before the legal threshold of eighteen. NFHS-5 also showed a pronounced rural–urban gap, with the prevalence much higher in rural Bihar than in urban Bihar. This pattern cautions against describing the state as uniformly changing. District, schooling, wealth and locality differences remain substantial, and a state average can conceal pockets where marriage timing has shifted slowly.

133.5 Age at marriage is linked to education, place and economic security

Later marriage is strongly associated with continued schooling, but the relationship operates in both directions. Staying in secondary school or college can delay marriage because families expect completion of a credential; marriage, in turn, can terminate schooling when residence changes or domestic work expands. Urban residence can widen educational and employment opportunities and reduce the social pressure to marry immediately after puberty, yet urban poverty does not guarantee later marriage. Household economic insecurity can work in competing directions: some families postpone weddings because costs are high, while others may prefer earlier marriage when they perceive daughters' unmarried mobility as risky. The historical change is therefore not produced by one variable. Schools, transport, safety, labour markets, welfare programmes, marriage costs and gender norms jointly shape the feasible age at marriage.

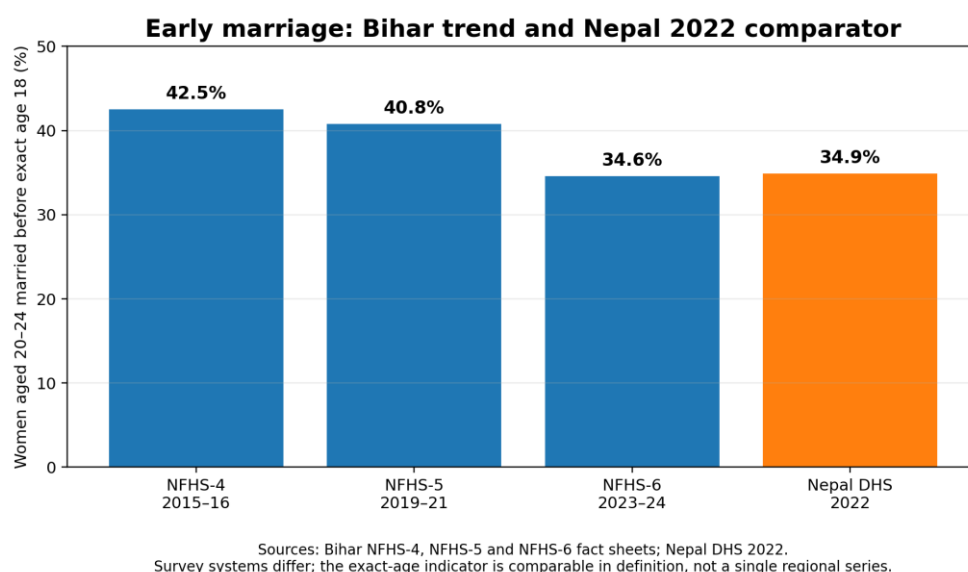


Figure 528 — Early marriage among women aged 20–24: Bihar trend and Nepal 2022 comparator; survey systems differ and are not one regional time series.

133.6 Nepal and Madhesh: later marriage trends within a twenty-year legal threshold

Nepal's 2022 DHS provides a useful cross-border comparison. Among women aged 20–24, 34.9 percent had married by exact age eighteen and 53.9 percent by exact age twenty; the median age at first marriage for this cohort was 19.6 years. The national legal threshold, however, requires both women and men to have completed twenty years. The difference between observed behaviour and the law is therefore analytically important. The 2022 results also fit a longer trend toward declining adolescent marriage: the share of women aged 15–19 who were currently married fell substantially from the 1990s to 2022. Yet the Terai has historically shown earlier marriage than some hill populations, and Madhesh cannot be treated as identical to Nepal as a whole. Province, caste/ethnicity, schooling and wealth matter.

133.7 Legal thresholds do not by themselves change social timing

The law establishes a minimum standard and creates remedies or penalties, but everyday compliance depends on birth registration, proof of age, local administration, schools, police, community institutions and the willingness of families and young people to invoke the law. India's Prohibition of Child Marriage Act, 2006, is implemented in Bihar through state rules and Child Marriage Prohibition Officers. Nepal's civil and criminal codes prohibit marriage below twenty. In both settings, a legal threshold may be known without being treated as socially decisive. Families can misstate age, avoid registration, or hold a customary ceremony before completing documentation. Conversely, officials, teachers, health workers and local campaigns can prevent marriages by making age documentation consequential. The history of legal change is therefore the history of enforcement capacity and social legitimacy as much as statutory text.

133.8 Bihar's anti-child-marriage and anti-dowry campaigns as social policy

Bihar has institutionalised campaigns against child marriage and dowry through the Women & Child Development Corporation and other departments. The state's 2010 rules operationalise the national child-marriage law, while public campaigns use local officials, community organisations, schools, faith leaders and information materials. Their significance is not merely punitive. They attempt to change the social

expectation that a family must arrange an early marriage or provide a demanded transfer. Measurement of success should distinguish prevalence from reported cases: a low number of police cases does not prove that early marriage or dowry has disappeared, and a rise in complaints can reflect greater awareness rather than worsening practice. Survey trends, school continuation, age documentation and qualitative evidence provide a stronger picture than enforcement counts alone.

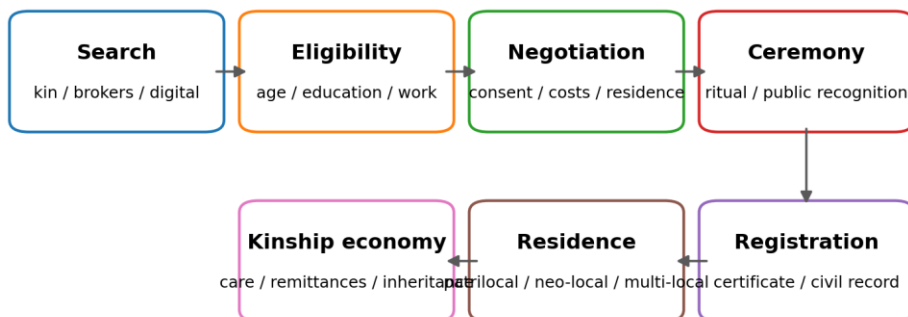
133.9 Dowry: law, gifts and the boundary between voluntary transfer and demand

The Dowry Prohibition Act, 1961 prohibits giving, taking and demanding dowry in India, but marriage exchanges remain socially complex. Families may distinguish customary gifts, jewellery, clothing or household goods from a demanded transfer linked to the marriage. The legal question turns on definitions and evidence, while the social-history question asks how expectations are negotiated and who bears the cost. In practice, a wedding can combine voluntary gifts, status display, reciprocal hospitality and coercive demands. Treating all gifts as identical to dowry obscures this complexity; treating every transfer as harmless custom ignores the power imbalance that a demand can create. For economic history, the critical variables are obligation, bargaining, affordability, control of transferred assets and whether the transaction becomes a condition of the union.

133.10 The marriage market can convert education and employment into status competition

Expansion of education has not automatically reduced status competition around marriage. Degrees, government employment, professional occupations, migration destinations and urban residence can become attributes in partner selection. When one side interprets a credential or secure salary as increasing ‘marriage value’, education can coexist with higher expenditure or larger demanded transfers. This mechanism should not be universalised: many families explicitly reject dowry, and some couples choose partners independently of such calculations. Nevertheless, the coexistence of modern credentials with older status hierarchies is historically important. It shows why social change is not a simple replacement of tradition by education. New forms of capital—degrees, exam success, salaried work, overseas employment and digital visibility—can be inserted into established marriage-market logics rather than dissolving them.

Marriage is a process, not a single ceremony



Change can occur at any stage: who searches, who consents, what is exchanged, where the couple lives, and how the union is documented.

Figure 529 — Marriage is a process involving search, eligibility, negotiation, ceremony, registration, residence and continuing kinship obligations.

133.11 Wedding expenditure, conspicuous consumption and household finance

The economic burden of marriage extends beyond dowry. Venue rental, tents, catering, jewellery, clothing, photography, transport, music, decoration, gifts and multi-day hospitality create a wedding-services economy. Roads, banquet halls, electricity, digital payments and social media have enlarged the range of purchasable services even in small towns. Families may finance ceremonies from savings, remittances, crop income, gold sales or borrowing. The same wedding can therefore redistribute income to local service providers while creating debt for the household. Expenditure also has a signalling function: families may fear that a modest ceremony will be interpreted as inability or disrespect. The relevant historical change is the commercialisation and standardisation of certain wedding components, not the disappearance of ritual. Ritual continuity increasingly operates through a larger market infrastructure.

133.12 Education changes not only timing but the criteria of compatibility

As secondary and higher education expand, partner selection increasingly includes educational compatibility. Families may seek similar degrees, English-medium schooling, professional training or examination credentials. Women's education can strengthen their ability to reject a proposal, continue study after marriage or negotiate residence, but it can also create pressure to find a groom with equal or higher credentials. Men's education may similarly be evaluated through employability rather than degree alone. The result is a more complex sorting process in which caste, kinship, education and occupation interact. This helps explain why average marriage age can rise even when arranged marriage persists: the search itself takes longer, candidates spend more years in education, and households wait for employment outcomes before finalising a match.

133.13 Migration widens the geographical radius of marriage

Migration has expanded the social map within which marriages are arranged. A family rooted in Darbhanga, Madhubani, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur or Janakpur may evaluate a prospective spouse working in Delhi, Mumbai, Bengaluru, Punjab, the Gulf or Kathmandu. Employment elsewhere can increase income and status, but it creates uncertainty about future residence and the practical support available to the spouse. Marriage negotiations therefore increasingly include questions once less central: Will the couple live at the destination? Can the wife work there? Who will care for parents? How often can they return? Migration can also produce long periods of post-marital separation when the husband returns to work soon after the wedding. Marriage thus becomes one mechanism through which the region is linked to distant labour markets.

133.14 Smartphones and matrimonial platforms transform search more than social boundaries

Digital communication has changed the infrastructure of partner search. Photographs, biodata, educational certificates, employment information and family contacts can circulate instantly through messaging applications. Matrimonial websites and social-media networks allow searches far beyond the local broker's knowledge. Yet wider reach does not necessarily produce wider social mixing. Digital forms often invite users to specify caste, religion, language, occupation, income and location, turning inherited social filters into searchable fields. Families can therefore modernise the search process while retaining strict endogamous preferences. At the same time, direct messaging gives prospective spouses opportunities to

communicate privately before marriage, compare expectations and refuse a proposal. Digitalisation consequently expands both family surveillance and individual agency; which effect dominates depends on the household and the platform.

133.15 ‘Arranged’ and ‘love’ marriage form a continuum rather than two sealed categories

Public discussion often divides marriages into arranged and love marriages, but actual pathways are more varied. A couple may meet at school or work, then seek family approval and conduct a fully arranged-looking ceremony. Parents may introduce candidates but allow the young people several meetings and a veto. A digitally initiated match may be screened by families from the beginning. Conversely, a self-chosen relationship can remain dependent on family financing, ritual recognition and post-marital housing. For historical analysis, the useful questions are disaggregated: Who initiated contact? Who could reject the match? Who negotiated material terms? Who selected the date and rituals? Who controlled the couple’s residence after marriage? These questions reveal changing authority more precisely than a binary label.

133.16 Inter-caste and inter-community marriage: visibility exceeds reliable measurement

Inter-caste and inter-community marriages are highly visible in public debate because they challenge social boundaries, but their regional prevalence is difficult to measure consistently. Census and standard health surveys do not provide a simple, regularly updated district series of spouses’ caste combinations suitable for all communities. Administrative incentive schemes capture only eligible and registered cases, not the full universe. Media reports are selective. It is therefore unsafe to infer a rapid numerical transformation from visibility alone. What can be said more securely is that education, urban residence, workplaces, universities and digital networks create more opportunities for interaction outside inherited marriage circles, while family opposition and community sanctions can remain strong. The historical change may first appear as an expansion of conceivable choices before it becomes a large change in aggregate rates.

133.17 Cross-border marriage keeps the India–Nepal social field alive

Marriage across the open India–Nepal border is one of the strongest mechanisms preserving a transnational Mithila and Madhesh social field. Kinship links can connect villages and towns on both sides even when customs, taxation, citizenship and administrative systems differ. Such marriages should not be romanticised as evidence of an unchanged borderless past: modern states matter greatly after the ceremony. Spouses may need marriage certificates, residence documents, citizenship-related papers, bank accounts and school records for children. Travel can be easy while documentary incorporation is complex. Cross-border marriage therefore combines cultural familiarity with legal asymmetry. It is precisely this coexistence—social continuity and state differentiation—that makes marriage a useful lens on the contemporary India–Nepal borderland.

133.18 Citizenship and documentation make cross-border marriage gendered in law

Nepal’s citizenship framework makes the nationality and sex of spouses legally consequential. The Constitution and Citizenship Act provide a route to naturalised citizenship for a foreign woman married to a Nepali citizen, subject to statutory procedure, while children of Nepali women married to foreign men are governed through different provisions and conditions. The point here is not to provide individual legal

advice but to identify a social-history effect: marriage can change a person's access to identity documents, property transactions, public services and the legal status of children. India and Nepal do not mirror one another, and customary recognition of a marriage does not automatically settle citizenship. Cross-border families therefore invest increasing effort in documentation, turning paperwork into part of the marriage economy.

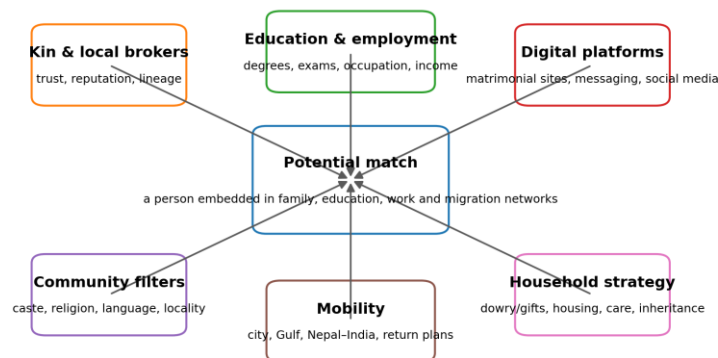
133.19 Registration is becoming part of marriage rather than an optional afterthought

Civil registration has grown in importance because a marriage certificate can be needed for passports, visas, pensions, inheritance, insurance, banking, migration and court proceedings. Nepal's 2022 DHS found that 81 percent of currently married women aged 15–49 reported their marriage registered with civil authorities, although registration was much lower among women aged 15–19 and rose sharply with age. This age pattern shows that registration can lag behind the social start of a union. In Bihar, multiple legal routes and registration procedures coexist with religious ceremonies, and administrative campaigns have emphasised registration as a protection against child marriage and later disputes. The historical shift is toward documentary marriage: ritual recognition remains important, but families increasingly need a state-readable record of the relationship.

133.20 Consent is becoming more explicit, but family bargaining remains powerful

Modern law treats consent as foundational, and education and communication give many young adults greater ability to express preferences. Yet consent is not simply present or absent. A person may formally agree while facing strong emotional or economic pressure, or may reject several proposals within a family-arranged framework and meaningfully shape the final choice. The expansion of private phone communication before marriage can help prospective spouses discuss work, residence, children and relations with in-laws. It can also create new forms of monitoring. A historical account should therefore avoid assuming that family-arranged marriage means coercion or that self-choice guarantees equality. The changing practice lies in the degree of veto, information and negotiation available to each person.

The contemporary marriage market: wider search, persistent filters



Smartphones can enlarge the pool of candidates while algorithms, family preferences and social networks reproduce older boundaries in new form.

Figure 530 — Digitalisation widens the marriage search while education, work, caste/community, mobility and household strategy continue to filter matches.

133.21 Post-marital residence is shifting from automatic patrilocality toward negotiated arrangements

Patrilocal residence—where a bride joins the husband’s family—remains influential, but migration, jobs, housing and education have diversified the actual patterns. Couples may live with the husband’s parents, establish a separate home nearby, move together to a city, live apart because of employment, or alternate between village and destination. A wife employed in government service may reside near her posting while the husband works elsewhere. Older parents may later join the couple. The result is not simply ‘nuclear family’ formation but a sequence of residence arrangements across the life course. These choices affect women’s access to natal kin, childcare, elder care and control over household expenditure. Marriage practices are therefore changing through geography as much as through ritual.

133.22 The separate kitchen remains a practical marker of household autonomy

In many families, residential separation and economic separation do not happen at the same moment. Brothers may live in the same compound but maintain separate kitchens; a migrant couple may rent elsewhere while pooling major expenses with parents; parents may divide land without dividing ritual obligations. Marriage can trigger one or more of these transitions. The spread of multi-room concrete housing makes partial separation easier, while high urban rents can push young couples back toward joint living. The separate kitchen is therefore a more useful practical indicator of household autonomy than a simple address. Contemporary marriage increasingly involves negotiation over when and whether such separation will occur.

133.23 Fertility decline changes the stakes of marriage and son preference

As fertility falls, marriage remains the main institutional setting for childbearing, but the number and timing of births become more actively planned. Bihar’s NFHS-6 reports a lower total fertility rate than NFHS-5, continuing the longer demographic transition. Smaller desired families can increase investment per child and reduce the number of siblings who later divide land, yet they can also intensify pressure around the sex composition of children where son preference persists. Contraceptive use, age at marriage and birth spacing therefore connect intimate choices to long-run household structure. A later marriage can shorten the period of exposure to childbearing, but fertility decline also occurs through deliberate spacing and stopping. Marriage timing and fertility should be analysed together, not as independent social trends.

133.24 Separation, divorce and widowhood make the diversity of marital trajectories visible

The dominant cultural narrative treats marriage as lifelong, but census and survey categories record widowed, divorced, separated and deserted people alongside the currently married and never married. These statuses have distinct economic consequences. A widow may remain in her marital household, return to natal kin or establish an independent household; a separated woman may face difficulty claiming maintenance or property; a divorced person may remarry; a migrant’s prolonged absence can resemble separation without legal dissolution. The social significance of divorce cannot be inferred only from formal court decrees because many relationships end or reorganise outside court. Contemporary change includes greater legal visibility and public discussion of marital breakdown, but the evidence does not support treating dissolution as the dominant family pattern.

133.25 Domestic violence is a marriage institution issue, not only a crime statistic

Marriage can provide companionship and economic security, but unequal power within marriage can also expose spouses—especially women—to violence and coercive control. Health surveys measure selected forms of spousal violence under carefully defined modules, while police and court data measure reported cases under legal categories. Neither source should be used to estimate the other. For social history, the important institutional change is the growing recognition that violence inside the household is a public and legal matter rather than a purely private dispute. Protection laws, one-stop centres, helplines and women's organisations create channels through which marital conflict can enter formal institutions. Increased reporting can therefore indicate greater access to remedies as well as continuing harm.

133.26 The wedding industry turns ritual time into a service economy

Contemporary weddings increasingly connect households to photographers, videographers, caterers, decorators, tent houses, beauty services, jewellery shops, transport operators, DJs, bands, invitation printers, priests, qāzīs, event managers and banquet halls. Smartphones and social media amplify the visual record of the event, encouraging expenditure on staged photography and decoration. This does not mean that all families imitate metropolitan weddings; village ceremonies remain diverse and constrained by income. The historical change is that a larger share of ritual production can now be purchased as specialised services. Marriage thus generates seasonal employment and urban–rural commercial flows. The same expansion, however, can intensify competitive expenditure and debt when families treat market consumption as socially obligatory.

133.27 Ritual continuity survives through selective adaptation

Maithil, Bajjika, Angika, Muslim and other communities retain distinctive wedding rites, songs, kin roles, foods and calendars, but contemporary practice continually edits them. Ceremonies may be shortened to fit travel schedules, moved to banquet halls, recorded on video, coordinated by phone and supplemented by legal registration. Migrant families may perform key rites in the village while holding a reception in the city. Inter-regional marriages can combine ritual repertoires. Reformist movements and anti-dowry campaigns may reject particular practices while preserving others. The appropriate historical language is therefore neither 'unchanged tradition' nor 'loss of culture'. Rituals remain durable because they are flexible enough to be reorganised around new technologies, costs, legal expectations and residential patterns.

133.28 Climate, floods and mobility can alter the timing and logistics of marriage

Environmental risk enters marriage less dramatically than demography or education but still matters in flood-prone and migration-dependent districts. Floods can interrupt transport, damage household savings, postpone ceremonies or force a change of venue. Repeated crop loss can reduce the resources available for a wedding and increase dependence on migrant income. Conversely, remittances may allow a family to schedule a marriage during a worker's brief return from a distant job, making the migration calendar more important than the agricultural calendar. These effects should not be exaggerated into a claim that climate change directly determines marriage rates. The stronger historical point is that marriage logistics increasingly depend on transport resilience, cash income and multi-local family coordination.

Cross-border marriage: one relationship, several documentary systems

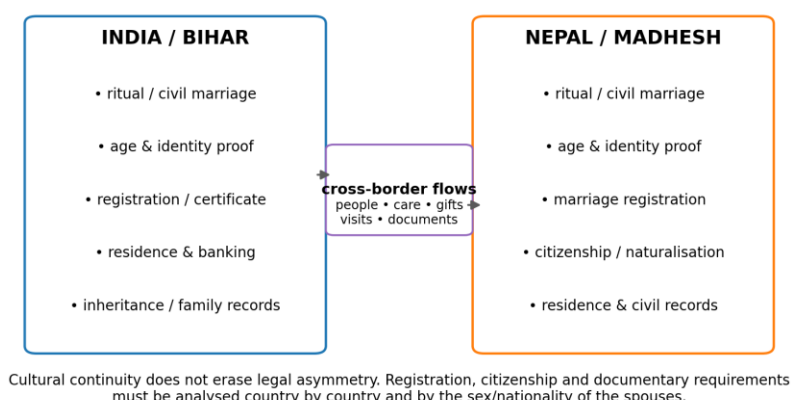


Figure 531 — Cross-border marriage joins one kinship relationship to distinct Indian and Nepali documentary and citizenship systems.

133.29 Measurement cautions: legal age, survey age, current status and registration are different indicators

Marriage statistics are especially vulnerable to false comparison. ‘Women aged 20–24 married before eighteen’ is a cohort measure, not the proportion of all current marriages that are child marriages. ‘Currently married at age 15–19’ is a different indicator. Median age at first marriage summarises a distribution and can move even when a substantial minority still marries early. Registration measures documentation, not necessarily the date at which cohabitation began. Legal-age thresholds also differ between India and Nepal. Finally, retrospective age reporting can contain recall or age-heaping error. The newly released NFHS-6 district fact sheets improve local resolution for Bihar, but they should not be combined with Census 2011 or Nepal DHS figures without preserving source definitions. Methodological transparency is essential because small wording differences can produce large apparent contradictions.

133.30 Conclusion: marriage is becoming more negotiated, documented and geographically extended

The contemporary history of marriage in Mithila, Vajji and Anga is not a story of the disappearance of arranged marriage or kinship. It is a reorganisation of the institutions through which marriages are made. Age at marriage is rising, though early marriage remains substantial; education and employment have become central matching criteria; migration widens the geography of partner search; phones and platforms change communication; registration makes the union more legible to the state; and post-marital residence is increasingly multi-local. Dowry and expensive wedding consumption remain major constraints even as public campaigns challenge them. Across the India–Nepal border, cultural continuity coexists with distinct legal systems. The central change is therefore from a marriage process dominated by a small circle of elders toward a more crowded field of actors—young adults, families, employers, schools, digital platforms, registrars, banks and courts—whose authority must be negotiated.

Table 133.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing changing marriage practices

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in marriage history	Main limitation
NFHS-4/5/6 Bihar fact sheets	cohort early-marriage prevalence, fertility	trend in marriage before eighteen and	fact-sheet indicators are descriptive;

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in marriage history	Main limitation
	and related indicators	rural–urban differences	NFHS-6 microdata not yet public
NFHS-5 Bihar state report	age-at-first-marriage distributions and background characteristics	detailed baseline for cohort and education analysis	2019–21; not a current census
Census of India 2011 C/D tables	marital status, age, migration and residence	large-scale spatial and historical baseline	dated; marriage-process details are limited
Bihar WCDC / state rules	institutional response to child marriage and dowry	legal and campaign architecture	programme activity is not prevalence
India Code statutes	legal age definition, child-marriage and dowry law	legal baseline for Bihar	law does not measure compliance
Nepal DHS 2022	age at marriage, registration and background differentials	recent cross-border comparator	national/provincial survey, not identical to Bihar NFHS
Nepal census 2021	marital status and household context	Madhesh population structure	different census categories and year
Nepal civil / penal / citizenship law	legal age, registration and nationality implications	state framework for cross-border marriage	legal rules require case-specific interpretation
Ethnography and qualitative studies	negotiation, consent, gifts, residence and kinship meanings	explains mechanisms behind statistics	local studies cannot be generalised mechanically
Court / police / helpline records	formal disputes and reported offences	institutional visibility of conflict	reporting depends on access, awareness and enforcement

Chapter 134 — Gender, Education and Employment

Chapter 134 examines a central paradox of contemporary social change in Mithila, Vajji and Anga: girls and women have made major gains in schooling and, in Bihar, female enrolment now matches or exceeds male enrolment at several educational levels, yet the conversion of education into secure paid work remains sharply unequal. Education, employment and gender cannot therefore be read as a simple sequence in which more years of schooling automatically produce economic independence. Household care obligations, marriage timing, transport, occupational segregation, public-sector recruitment, migration, caste and class, digital access and the local availability of work all mediate the passage from classroom to labour market.

The regional method used throughout this volume remains essential. Bihar, Madhesh Province and the historical-cultural regions do not coincide. UDISE+, AISHE and the Periodic Labour Force Survey describe Indian administrative units using distinct reference populations, while Nepal's 2021 census, 2022 Demographic and Health Survey, 2022–23 Living Standards Survey and other statistical programmes use different definitions. The chapter therefore uses Bihar and Madhesh as evidence frames without manufacturing a single “Mithila–Vajji–Anga” gender index. Where figures are compared, the denominator, age range and survey concept are stated so that enrolment parity is not confused with literacy, labour-force participation or employment.

134.1 Gender links household reproduction to the wider economy

Gender is an economic institution as well as a social identity. Households allocate food, schooling, care, mobility, property, paid work and migration through gendered expectations. Women may cultivate land, manage livestock, care for children and older people, supervise construction, operate accounts and organise ceremonies while being recorded as outside paid employment. Men may migrate and remit earnings while being absent from the daily household economy. Education can change these arrangements by expanding information, credentials and aspirations, but its effects depend on whether women can travel, seek work, retain earnings and negotiate domestic responsibilities. The correct unit of analysis is therefore not the isolated worker or student but the relationship among education, household labour, mobility and income.

134.2 Evidence architecture: enrolment, learning, credentials and labour measures are not interchangeable

UDISE+ measures school enrolment and institutional indicators; AISHE measures higher-education institutions and enrolment; PLFS measures labour-force status; NFHS measures selected educational, health, digital and household indicators; censuses provide population structure and literacy; and administrative programme records describe beneficiaries rather than the population as a whole. A girl can be enrolled without attending regularly, can complete secondary school without entering college, can hold a degree while preparing for an examination, and can undertake unpaid family work while being classified outside employment under another reference period. Gender analysis becomes misleading when these stages are collapsed into one “empowerment” number. The chapter therefore treats educational access, educational completion, labour-force participation, work status, earnings and control over income as related but distinct outcomes.

134.3 Literacy change is generational, not instantaneous

Literacy rates are stocks built from many past cohorts. Older women who grew up before mass schooling entered the region at very different educational starting points from girls now in primary or secondary

school. This is especially visible in Madhesh Province, where the 2021 census reported literacy among people aged five and above at 72.5 percent for males and 54.7 percent for females. That gap is historically important, but it should not be projected unchanged onto current school-age children. In Bihar too, the expansion of girls' schooling since the 2000s means that younger female cohorts are substantially more educated than their mothers and grandmothers. Contemporary gender history must therefore distinguish cohort replacement from immediate policy change.

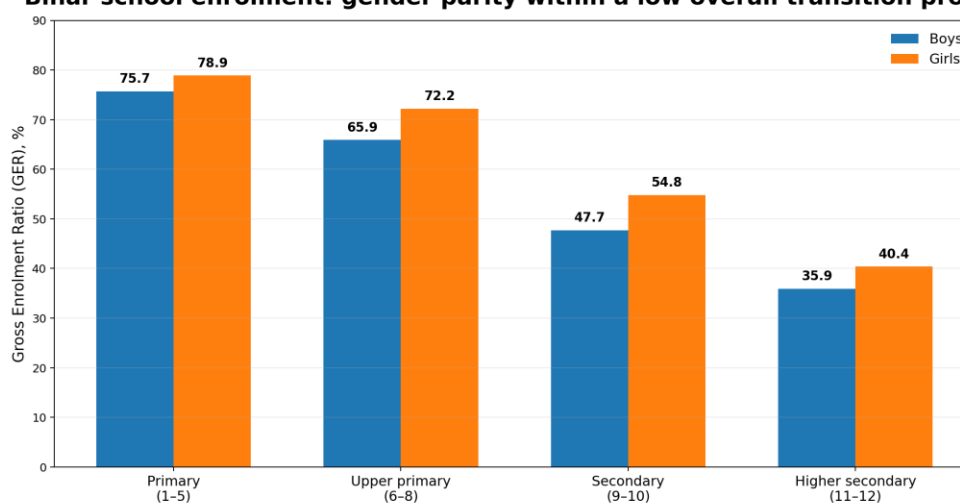
134.4 Bihar has reached gender parity in school enrolment ratios before reaching high enrolment at every level

UDISE+ 2024–25 shows a striking pattern. In Bihar, girls' Gross Enrolment Ratio exceeded boys' at primary, upper-primary, secondary and higher-secondary levels: 78.9 versus 75.7 at primary, 72.2 versus 65.9 at upper primary, 54.8 versus 47.7 at secondary and 40.4 versus 35.9 at higher secondary. The Gender Parity Index is therefore at or above one across these stages. Yet the absolute ratios decline sharply as the level rises. Gender parity and universal participation are different achievements. A system can be relatively equal between boys and girls while still losing large shares of both sexes before higher secondary. The contemporary challenge is thus retention and transition as well as gender parity.

134.5 The secondary and higher-secondary transition remains the critical educational bottleneck

The steep fall in Bihar's GER from primary to secondary and higher secondary shows where educational aspiration encounters practical constraints. Costs rise; schools may be farther away; examination failure becomes more consequential; household labour and wage work compete with study; and marriage discussions may begin for girls in late adolescence. For boys, migration and casual work can also pull students away from school. The gender question is therefore embedded in a broader transition problem. Policies that only count entry into Class I can miss the stage at which education becomes a credential with labour-market value. Safe transport, nearby secondary schools, subject choice, teachers, examination support and affordable post-school pathways become decisive for whether enrolment parity produces completed qualifications.

Bihar school enrolment: gender parity within a low overall transition profile



Source: UDISE+ 2024–25, Table 6.1. GER is an enrolment ratio, not a completion or learning measure.

Figure 532 — Bihar school GER by sex, 2024–25: girls exceed boys at each shown level, but absolute enrolment ratios fall sharply toward higher secondary.

134.6 The bicycle programme illustrates how mobility can be an education policy

Bihar's long-running cycle programme for schoolgirls became important because it addressed a concrete spatial constraint rather than treating gender inequality only as an attitude. Research on the programme found that reducing the effective cost and risk of travel could raise girls' secondary-school enrolment. Its broader historical significance lies in the visibility of girls moving independently through public space. A bicycle changes daily time use, expands the radius within which a school is reachable and can alter family expectations about adolescent mobility. The lesson extends beyond one scheme: roads, buses, lighting and safe last-mile transport are part of educational infrastructure. A school seat has limited value when reaching it requires a journey families regard as unsafe or socially unacceptable.

134.7 Toilets, menstrual health and school safety affect attendance as much as formal enrolment

Gender parity in registration can coexist with unequal attendance. Adolescent girls may miss school when toilets are unusable, water is unavailable, menstrual materials are unaffordable or privacy is weak. Harassment on the route to school or within crowded transport can change family willingness to allow continued study even when tuition is free. These constraints are difficult to capture in a single administrative indicator because they operate through repeated small absences and through household decisions about risk. The historical shift toward mass girls' education therefore depends on the quality and social usability of infrastructure, not merely its existence. A functioning toilet, a reliable bus and a responsive grievance system can be as consequential as a new classroom.

134.8 Digital access has become part of educational inequality

Smartphones and internet connectivity now shape homework, examination forms, scholarship applications, coaching, job searches and communication with teachers. Yet device access inside a household can be gendered. A phone may technically exist but be controlled by a father, brother or husband; data expenditure may be rationed; and young women may face stricter surveillance of online activity than young men. The pandemic made this distinction especially visible when remote learning depended on devices, electricity and connectivity. Digital inclusion should therefore be measured by effective individual use rather than by household ownership alone. For women seeking employment, the same infrastructure later mediates recruitment notices, digital payments, platform work and access to government services.

134.9 Higher education changes the gender balance of aspiration

The expansion of colleges and universities has created a new educational landscape in which young women increasingly remain in formal education beyond school. In the wider study region, institutions in Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur, Samastipur, Patna and other centres draw students from rural districts, while Janakpur and other Madhesh towns perform similar functions in Nepal. Higher education can delay marriage, enlarge peer networks and produce credentials for teaching, health, administration, banking and professional services. It can also create a prolonged period of dependency if local graduate jobs are scarce. The social meaning of a degree thus extends beyond immediate earnings: it affects marriage negotiations, migration decisions and the expectation that daughters should have an educational biography comparable to sons.

134.10 Bihar's female higher-education enrolment now slightly exceeds male enrolment

AISHE 2023–24 estimated about 14.0 lakh female students and 13.6 lakh male students in higher education in Bihar, placing the state among those where female enrolment exceeded male enrolment. This is a major historical reversal from the period when higher education was overwhelmingly male. The figure does not mean that every district, caste, class or discipline has reached equality, nor does it show completion or employment after graduation. But it demonstrates that the problem can no longer be described simply as the exclusion of women from college. The central question has shifted toward what women study, whether institutions are accessible and safe, and how credentials translate into employment, income and professional authority.

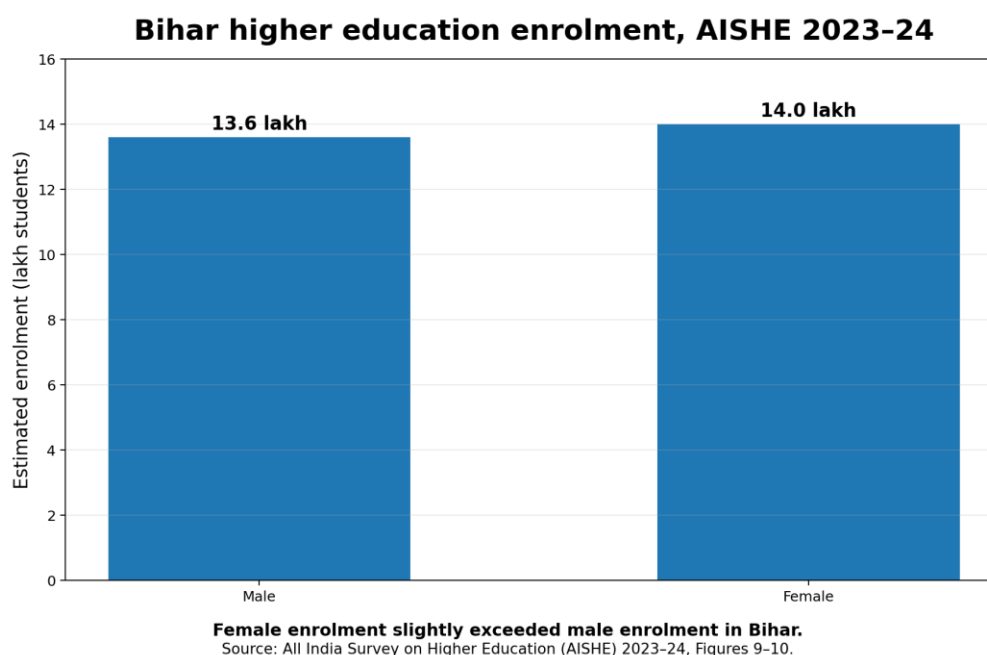


Figure 533 — AISHE 2023–24 estimated higher-education enrolment in Bihar: female enrolment (14.0 lakh) slightly exceeded male enrolment (13.6 lakh).

134.11 Discipline choice and occupational segregation begin before the first job

Equal numbers in higher education do not imply equal fields of study. Social expectations, school preparation, entrance examinations, hostel availability and perceived job security influence whether women enter arts, teacher education, nursing, medicine, science, engineering, law or commerce. Families may prefer courses that are available near home or lead to occupations considered compatible with marriage and care. Men may be more readily permitted to migrate for engineering, technical training or private-sector work. This sorting matters because disciplines have different earnings distributions and recruitment channels. Gender segregation in the labour market is therefore partly produced inside the education system. Expanding women's access to laboratories, technical institutes, professional colleges and internships is not a separate agenda from employment policy.

134.12 Local universities reduce mobility barriers but can also reproduce labour-market queues

A dense network of colleges allows women to study without leaving the district, which can be decisive where residential migration is expensive or socially constrained. At the same time, local access can concentrate students in general degrees for which the number of stable salaried jobs grows more slowly than enrolment. The result may be a queue for teaching, clerical, banking and government posts, with years spent in coaching and repeated examinations. This is not educational failure in a simple sense: degrees still carry social value and can improve capabilities. But when employment creation lags behind credential expansion, families may experience a mismatch between the cost of education and the expected return. Gendered restrictions on geographic mobility can make that mismatch sharper for women.

134.13 Coaching migration and competitive examinations produce a new gender geography

Competitive examinations have become a major bridge between education and desired employment. Students move temporarily to Patna, Delhi, Kota and other centres, or use online coaching from home. Women's participation depends on hostel safety, family permission, travel costs and whether extended preparation can be reconciled with marriage expectations. A young man may be allowed several years of uncertain preparation or migration, while a similarly qualified woman may face a shorter household timetable. Digital coaching can reduce some mobility costs but cannot eliminate unequal access to quiet study space, devices and time. The examination economy therefore reveals how gender operates through time as well as space: who is allowed to wait for a preferred job, and for how long.

134.14 Madhesh retains a large female educational deficit among adult cohorts

Nepal's 2021 census and 2022 DHS show that women in Madhesh remain educationally disadvantaged relative to men and to women in several other provinces. The census recorded a female literacy rate of 54.7 percent among people aged five and above, compared with 72.5 percent for males. The 2022 DHS reported that 46 percent of women aged 15–49 in Madhesh had no education, 29 percent had some basic education, 23 percent some secondary education and only 2 percent more than secondary education. These measures use different age ranges and concepts, but together they show that the educational transition is incomplete. Younger cohorts may improve faster than the adult average, so policy needs both school retention for girls and second-chance learning for adult women.

134.15 Cross-border educational comparison requires denominator discipline

Bihar's school GER, AISHE enrolment, Madhesh census literacy and DHS educational attainment cannot be placed on one ladder as if they were the same variable. GER can exceed 100 because of age-grade mismatch; literacy is a population characteristic; attainment describes completed or attended levels; and higher-education enrolment counts students in institutions. The temptation to create a single cross-border score should be resisted. A stronger regional history compares processes: expansion of schooling, persistence of adult female illiteracy, growth of college attendance, mobility to educational centres and the uneven translation of credentials into work. The shared pattern is not identical numerical performance but the coexistence of rapid educational change with deep household and labour-market constraints.

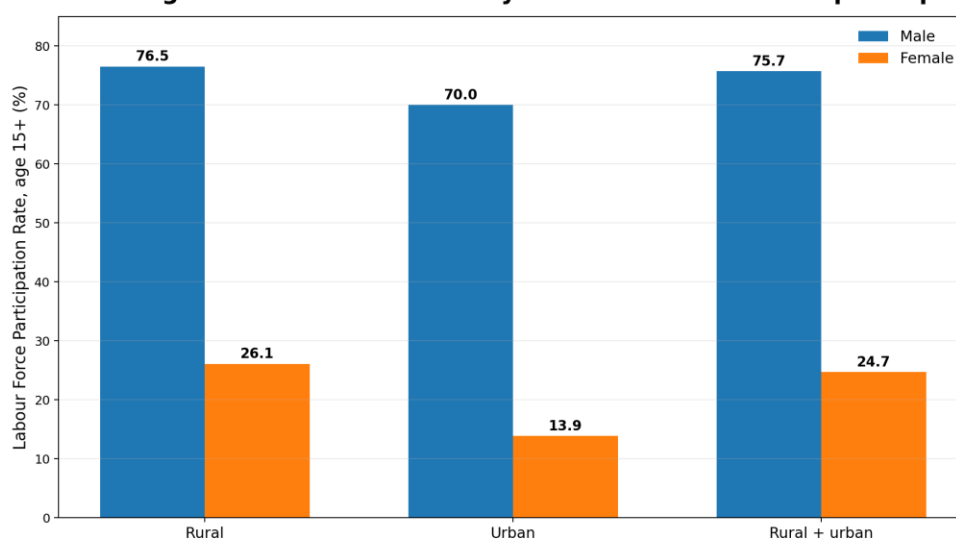
134.16 Labour-force participation reveals the limits of an education-only account of gender change

The Periodic Labour Force Survey Annual Report 2025 estimated Bihar's usual-status labour-force participation rate for people aged fifteen and above at 75.7 percent for males and 24.7 percent for females. The female rate was 26.1 percent in rural areas and 13.9 percent in urban areas. These are state-level measures, not specific to Mithila, Vajji or Anga, but they establish the scale of the gender gap in the labour market. The contrast with school and higher-education parity is analytically important. More women are studying, yet a much smaller share of adult women are counted in the labour force. Education is necessary for many occupations, but the supply of credentials alone does not determine labour-force entry.

134.17 The urban female participation gap is not evidence that rural women are necessarily more economically empowered

Bihar's 2025 female LFPR was higher in rural than urban areas. That difference should not be interpreted mechanically as greater rural empowerment. Rural women may enter the labour force through cultivation, livestock, casual work or unpaid family enterprises when household survival requires it, while urban households may withdraw women from low-status work as income rises or while women wait for salaried jobs. Conversely, urban women with professional employment may have higher earnings and autonomy despite the lower aggregate participation rate. Labour-force participation measures whether someone is working or seeking work under a defined status; it does not directly measure job quality, earnings, ownership or bargaining power. Gender analysis therefore needs both participation and the character of work.

Education gains do not automatically become labour-market participation



Source: Periodic Labour Force Survey, Annual Report 2025, usual status (ps+ss), age 15 years and above.

Figure 534 — Bihar PLFS 2025 labour-force participation, age 15+: a large male–female gap persists in both rural and urban areas despite educational gains.

134.18 Unpaid family work and care complicate the boundary between “working” and “not working”

Women's economic contribution is especially vulnerable to under-recognition where production is organised through households. Feeding livestock, processing grain, transplanting, sorting produce, maintaining kitchen gardens, collecting fuel, supervising hired labour or helping in a shop may be reported

differently depending on the survey question and respondent. Care work adds another layer: cooking, cleaning, childcare, elder care and support for migrants reproduce the labour force without usually appearing as paid employment. Time-use evidence from India has repeatedly shown that women perform much more unpaid domestic and care work than men. The policy implication is not to classify every domestic task as employment, but to recognise that unpaid responsibilities shape whether women have time, mobility and continuity for paid work.

134.19 The “education–employment paradox” is produced by job preferences, constraints and labour demand together

It is tempting to explain low female employment either as conservative family culture or as a shortage of jobs. Both explanations are incomplete on their own. Education can raise the reservation wage: a graduate may reject agricultural or domestic service work while waiting for teaching, banking or government recruitment. Families may permit work considered secure and respectable but oppose night shifts, distant factories or irregular service jobs. Employers may discriminate or fail to provide safe transport, toilets and maternity support. Local economies may simply generate too few formal positions. The resulting low participation is therefore an equilibrium produced by aspirations, norms, care burdens, safety, wages and labour demand. Policy must act on several margins simultaneously.

134.20 Marriage and motherhood change the timing of employment even when education is retained

Chapter 133 showed that marriage is becoming later and more negotiated, but it remains a major transition in women’s residence and responsibilities. A woman may complete college and work before marriage, then stop after moving to a village with fewer jobs or after childbirth. Others may enter teaching, health work or self-employment only after children are older. Employment statistics observed at one date can therefore miss life-course movement in and out of work. Affordable childcare, maternity protection, flexible transport and the possibility of returning to employment after a break are essential if educational investment is to retain economic value over the life course. The relevant question is not only whether women ever work, but whether they can sustain and re-enter work across family transitions.

134.21 Male migration can enlarge women’s responsibilities without automatically enlarging women’s rights

Migration is one of the central institutions of the regional economy. When men work in Delhi, Punjab, Gujarat, the Gulf, Kathmandu or elsewhere, women who remain may manage farming, schooling, remittances, debt payments and relations with local government. This can increase practical decision-making and public visibility. Yet land titles, bank control and major investment decisions may still remain with absent men or senior relatives. “Feminisation of agriculture” or household management therefore does not automatically mean female ownership or bargaining power. Education can help women navigate banks, digital payments and administrative systems, but durable economic agency also depends on property rights, documentation and recognition of women as farmers, entrepreneurs and account holders in their own right.

134.22 Public-sector employment remains disproportionately important to educated women’s aspirations

Teaching, health services, banking, administration, policing and other government-linked occupations carry a combination of salary, status, predictable hours and perceived security that many families regard as

compatible with women's employment. This helps explain the social intensity of competitive examinations and teacher recruitment. Public employment can create visible female role models and establish norms of women travelling to workplaces and handling official authority. But the number of applicants often far exceeds vacancies, producing long waiting periods and repeated examination cycles. A development strategy cannot rely on government jobs alone. The challenge is to make private and self-employment sufficiently safe, remunerative and socially legitimate that educated women do not face a binary choice between a scarce public post and economic inactivity.

134.23 Health, education and care services are both employment sectors and social infrastructure

The expansion of schools, anganwadi centres, health facilities, community programmes and private clinics has created large fields of female employment. Teachers, nurses, auxiliary health workers, community mobilisers and childcare workers connect paid or honorarium work with services used by other women. This produces a multiplier effect: a woman employed in health or education earns income, while the service she provides can reduce another household's care burden or improve girls' schooling. Yet many frontline roles remain low-paid, contractual or classified as volunteer/honorarium work. Gender-sensitive employment policy must therefore examine job quality inside sectors stereotyped as "women's work". Social value does not automatically generate adequate wages, pension coverage or promotion opportunities.

134.24 Women's collectives and JEEViKA shift economic participation from the individual to the group

Self-help groups have become one of Bihar's most important institutional routes for women's financial inclusion and collective action. JEEViKA and related programmes organise savings, credit, livelihoods, producer activity and links to banks and public schemes through village-level women's groups. Their economic significance extends beyond microcredit. Regular meetings create public participation, accounting experience, peer networks and a platform through which women can negotiate with banks or local officials. The limitation is equally important: group membership is not the same as profitable enterprise, and debt-financed activity can fail when markets are weak. Collective institutions work best when credit is connected to skills, procurement, storage, transport, insurance and reliable demand rather than treated as a substitute for broader employment creation.

134.25 Self-employment and platform work expand opportunity but transfer risk to workers

Digital payments, social media and e-commerce allow some women to sell food, tailoring, tuition, beauty services, craft products or agricultural goods without entering a conventional workplace. Home-based enterprise can fit care obligations and reduce travel barriers. It can also reproduce low scale, irregular earnings and dependence on family labour. Platform work adds another possibility through delivery, online services and digital marketplaces, but the infrastructure and occupational mix remain strongly gendered. Access to a smartphone, bank account and digital literacy is necessary but not sufficient. Women need working capital, market information, safe mobility, grievance mechanisms and social protection. Enterprise should be evaluated through net income and control over earnings, not by the number of accounts or registrations created.

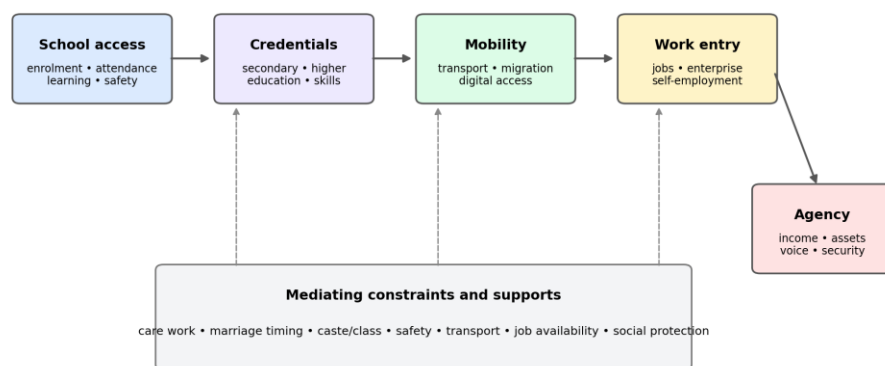
134.26 Informality keeps employment, social protection and identity documents tightly connected

Much of the regional labour market is informal: casual construction, agricultural work, domestic service, petty trade, transport-linked services, home production and small enterprises. Informal workers can move between occupations and locations without stable contracts. For women, irregular work often combines with interrupted labour-force participation and weak documentary proof of earnings. Portability of ration benefits, health coverage, maternity entitlements, pensions and worker registration therefore matters. The growth of digital public infrastructure can improve access, but it can also exclude women whose phone, biometric or bank access is mediated by another household member. Social protection becomes part of employment policy when the labour market cannot guarantee stable employer-provided benefits.

134.27 Caste, class, religion and location mediate the meaning of gender parity

Aggregate female averages conceal large differences. Landholding households, Dalit labouring households, Muslim artisan or trading households, urban salaried families and migrant-dependent villages face different combinations of work opportunity and social constraint. A college degree may open salaried employment for one woman while another equally educated woman lacks transport, networks or permission to migrate. Poor women may have high work participation because they cannot afford withdrawal from labour, yet remain concentrated in low-paid work. Wealthier women may have low measured participation but greater property and educational resources. Gender inequality is therefore intersectional in a literal economic sense: it is produced through the interaction of gender with assets, caste/community position, geography, occupation and family structure.

From schooling to economic agency: the pathway is mediated, not automatic



Analytical diagram: parity in enrolment can coexist with unequal conversion of education into paid work and control over income.

Figure 535 — From school access to economic agency: credentials must pass through mobility, job availability, care arrangements and social institutions before they become income and bargaining power.

134.28 Madhesh shows the same conversion problem under a different statistical and institutional system

Nepal's recent evidence reinforces the need to separate education from employment. The Nepal Living Standards Survey IV, 2022–23, reported a national female labour-force participation rate far below the male rate and identified Madhesh as the province with the largest sex gap: 54.9 percent for males and 16.5 percent

for females among the relevant working-age population in its sex-disaggregated provincial analysis. At the same time, the 2021 census and 2022 DHS document large female educational deficits in Madhesh adult cohorts. The fourth Nepal Labour Force Survey was still being fielded/reviewed in 2026, so it would be wrong to invent newer completed labour-force results. The cross-border pattern is comparable analytically, not statistically identical.

134.29 Measurement discipline is essential: GPI, GER, LFPR, WPR and earnings answer different questions

A Gender Parity Index near one says girls and boys have similar enrolment ratios; it does not say enrolment is high. GER measures enrolment relative to the official age-group population and may include over-age or under-age students. LFPR measures the share working or seeking work; WPR measures the share actually working; unemployment is calculated within the labour force rather than the whole population. Earnings and job quality require still other data. Census literacy uses a different age threshold from school indicators. These distinctions are not technical footnotes but the basis of sound historical interpretation. The central contemporary finding is precisely that indicators can move in different directions: educational parity can improve while adult female labour participation remains low.

134.30 Conclusion: the next transition is from educational presence to economic agency

The most important gender transformation of the past generation has been the normalisation of girls' and women's educational presence. Bihar's 2024–25 school data show parity or a female advantage in enrolment ratios, and AISHE 2023–24 shows female higher-education enrolment slightly above male enrolment. Yet PLFS 2025 records a large labour-force gap, while Madhesh evidence shows both an adult educational deficit and especially low female labour-force participation. The next phase of social change therefore cannot be measured only by getting girls into classrooms. It requires safe mobility, completion, skills, diverse jobs, childcare, property and financial control, social protection and the right to remain employed across marriage and motherhood. Education becomes transformative when women can convert credentials into choices, income and durable authority over their own economic lives.

Table 134.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing gender, education and employment

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 134	Main limitation
UDISE+ 2024–25	school GER and GPI by sex and level	shows Bihar gender parity alongside falling enrolment at higher levels	enrolment is not completion, learning or employment
AISHE 2023–24	higher-education enrolment by sex and institution	shows female enrolment slightly above male enrolment in Bihar	institutional enrolment; not graduate employment
PLFS Annual Report 2025	LFPR/WPR/unemployment by sex, age and rural–urban location	measures contemporary Bihar labour-market gender gap	state level; definitions differ from census and surveys
Census of India 2011	literacy, work and population structure	long baseline for district-level gender reconstruction	dated; no completed post-2011 census yet
NFHS-5 and NFHS-6 Bihar	education, marriage, digital and household indicators for defined cohorts	links education with life-course and household conditions	sample surveys; indicators do not equal labour-force

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 134	Main limitation
Nepal NPHC 2021, Madhesh report	sex-disaggregated literacy and population structure	adult educational gender gap in Madhesh	statistics census categories differ from Indian education statistics
Nepal DHS 2022	women's educational attainment and life-course indicators	shows incomplete female educational transition in Madhesh	women 15–49; not a labour-force survey
Nepal Living Standards Survey IV 2022–23	labour-market indicators by sex and province	documents very low female participation in Madhesh	survey definitions and reference population differ from PLFS
Programme/administrative records	beneficiaries, SHGs, scholarships, transport and service delivery	explains institutional mechanisms behind change	coverage is programme-specific, not population representative
Qualitative and time-use research	care work, norms, mobility, job preferences and household bargaining	explains why similar credentials can produce different outcomes	context-specific; not a substitute for representative estimates

Chapter 135 — Youth Culture

Chapter 135 examines youth culture as a social field created by education, work, migration, digital media, language, consumption, family expectations, public space and the unequal distribution of time and mobility. “Youth” is not a timeless stage with one fixed age boundary, and it does not describe a single homogeneous generation. A college student in Darbhanga, a migrant worker from Saharsa, a coaching aspirant in Patna, a young artisan in Madhubani, a platform worker in Bhagalpur and a labour migrant from Madhesh may all be called young, yet their resources, obligations and cultural worlds differ sharply. The analytical task is therefore to explain how institutions make youth identities and aspirations, not to treat youth culture as a catalogue of fashions.

The contemporary moment is nevertheless distinctive. Mass schooling has extended the period between childhood and stable adult work; competitive examinations can lengthen educational waiting; migration spreads households across multiple places; smartphones connect villages to national and transnational media; and young people move among Maithili, Angika, Bajjika, Hindi, Nepali and English registers with unusual speed. These processes create new forms of autonomy and creativity, but also new inequalities. Device ownership, gendered mobility, caste and class, rural–urban location and access to secure employment determine who can convert cultural participation into durable opportunity.

135.1 Youth is a policy category as well as a life stage

The word youth combines biology, law, policy and social expectation. Adolescence, legal adulthood, school leaving, marriage, migration and labour-market entry occur at different ages, so no single birthday creates an identical social transition. Policy nevertheless needs age bands. India’s National Youth Policy 2014 defines youth as 15–29 years, while Nepal’s National Youth Policy 2072 (2015) defines youth as citizens aged 16–40. These definitions are useful for programmes but cannot be treated as interchangeable statistics. A 35-year-old is inside Nepal’s youth policy category and outside India’s. Regional comparison must therefore state the age range rather than merely reporting a “youth percentage”.

135.2 India and Nepal institutionalise different boundaries of youth

The contrast between India’s 15–29 definition and Nepal’s 16–40 definition reveals something substantive: youth is partly an administrative construction. The Indian policy concentrates on the transition from secondary education through early labour-market and family formation, whereas Nepal’s wider band includes many people already established in employment, migration and parenthood. Nepal’s policy also explicitly identifies Madhesi youth among priority groups, reflecting the country’s inclusion framework. For a connected history of Mithila and Madhesh, the correct approach is not to choose one definition as “true” but to preserve both and use narrower five-year census bands when statistical comparability is required.

135.3 Bihar still has an unusually large youth share, but the demographic peak is not permanent

MoSPI’s Youth in India 2022, drawing on official population projections, estimated that people aged 15–29 formed 28.8 percent of Bihar’s population in 2021. The projected share falls to 27.7 percent in 2031 and 25.5 percent in 2036. These are projections rather than fresh census counts, but they matter historically because they locate the current youth bulge in time. Bihar’s institutions must simultaneously educate and employ very large young cohorts while preparing for a future in which the relative youth share declines.

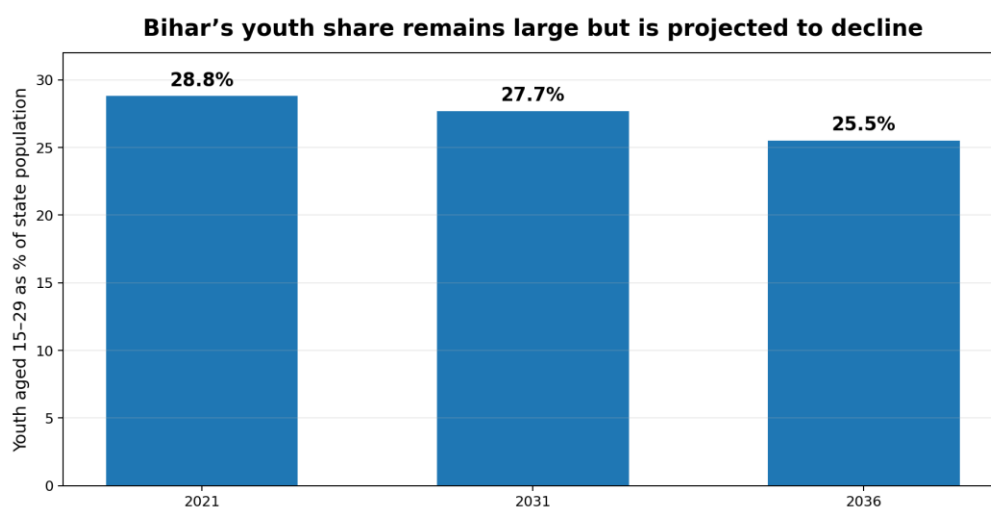
Youth culture is therefore not a permanent demographic condition; it is a phase within a longer population transition.

135.4 Madhesh has a similarly youthful age structure, but its policy definition is wider

Nepal's 2021 census recorded 628,716 people aged 15–19, 568,137 aged 20–24 and 480,982 aged 25–29 in Madhesh Province. Together these five-year groups make about 1.68 million people, or 27.4 percent of the province's 6.11 million residents. This 15–29 calculation is useful for comparison with India but is not Nepal's official policy definition of youth. The census also shows substantial populations in the 30–39 ages that Nepal policy still classifies as youth. The evidence therefore supports two simultaneous statements: Madhesh has a large young-adult population, and cross-border “youth” statistics require explicit age harmonisation.

135.5 Schooling has become the central institution of youth formation

For earlier generations, youth could move rapidly from childhood work into agriculture, craft, marriage or migration. Mass schooling now keeps a much larger share of adolescents and young adults inside formal education for longer periods. Chapter 134 showed that Bihar has achieved gender parity or a female advantage in enrolment ratios at several school levels even while overall participation falls toward higher secondary. This extension of schooling changes youth culture by creating age-graded peer groups, examination calendars, uniforms, student travel, tutorial markets and credential-based aspirations. The school and college are not only educational institutions; they are places where friendships, language styles, gender norms and occupational imagination are reorganised.



Source: MoSPI, Youth in India 2022 (population projections). Projection is not a new census count.

Figure 536 — Bihar's projected share of people aged 15–29 remains large but declines after 2021; projections are not new census counts.

135.6 Coaching and competitive examinations create a distinctive culture of extended preparation

The expansion of secondary and higher education has not been matched by an equally rapid expansion of secure salaried employment. Competitive examinations therefore occupy a large cultural space. Coaching centres, rented rooms, libraries, WhatsApp and Telegram study groups, YouTube instruction and repeated

application cycles can structure several years of a young adult's life. This produces what might be called an examination public: students share syllabi, rumours, cut-offs, model papers and stories of success or delay. Preparation can build knowledge and discipline, but prolonged uncertainty also postpones income, marriage and independent residence. The “student” category thus increasingly overlaps with unemployment and household dependence.

135.7 Youth unemployment is not merely an economic statistic; it reorganises time and aspiration

PLFS 2025 estimated Bihar's unemployment rate for people aged 15–29 at 12.1 percent under usual status for rural and urban areas combined. The corresponding urban rate was 31.3 percent, compared with 9.8 percent in rural areas. These figures should not be converted into a stereotype of idle youth: many young people study, prepare for examinations, perform family work or move in and out of short jobs. Yet the sharp urban rate confirms that educational concentration and job search can create long intervals of waiting. Youth culture is shaped by this temporal uncertainty—by timetables, application portals, result dates, recruitment litigation, temporary work and the expectation that mobility may be necessary.

135.8 Migration is a routine transition into adulthood

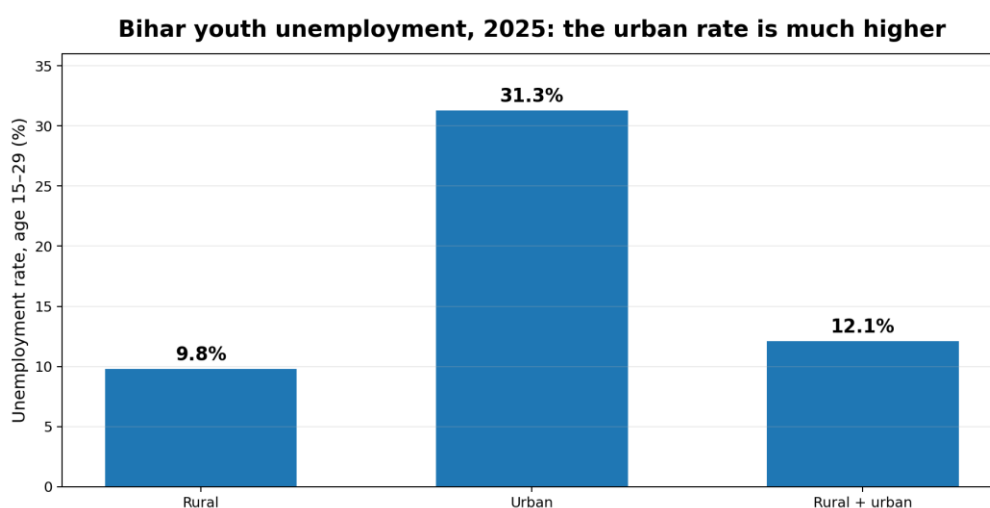
Migration links youth culture to the household economy described in earlier chapters. Young men and increasingly diverse categories of young women leave for education, construction, services, factories, transport, domestic work, professional employment and public-sector postings. Migration is not always a break with the village. Mobile phones, remittances, festival returns and marriage networks allow migrants to remain active in household decisions. A young person may therefore inhabit several cultural spaces at once: speaking local language at home, Hindi at a worksite, English in a digital course and platform slang online. Mobility does not dissolve regional identity; it often changes the media through which that identity is performed.

135.9 Madhesh youth culture is deeply connected to foreign and cross-border mobility

Nepal's labour-migration system makes overseas employment a major horizon of young-adult aspiration, while the open India–Nepal border sustains movement for work, study, trade, pilgrimage and kinship that is not captured by foreign-labour approval statistics. The Nepal Labour Migration Report 2024 documents the scale and institutional importance of overseas labour approvals in 2022/23 and 2023/24. For Madhesh households, India can be a nearby labour and education space while the Gulf, Malaysia and other destinations represent longer-distance wage strategies. Recruitment costs, passports, language training, online information and return migration therefore enter youth culture alongside local schooling and marriage.

135.10 The smartphone has become a basic infrastructure of youth sociality

For young people, the smartphone is simultaneously a telephone, classroom, camera, payment device, music player, map, job board, gaming console, television and social archive. It collapses several older institutions into one portable object and permits cultural participation from places with few formal youth facilities. This does not mean that digital life replaces face-to-face life. Phones intensify existing networks: classmates exchange notes, migrants video-call home, musicians circulate recordings, shops advertise through messaging apps and wedding or festival images move rapidly across kin groups. The important historical change is the speed and portability of connection, not the disappearance of locality.



Source: MoSPI, Annual Report PLFS 2025, Table 18.0; usual status (ps+ss), persons aged 15-29.

Figure 537 — Bihar unemployment among people aged 15–29 in PLFS 2025: the urban youth rate is much higher than the rural rate under the same usual-status measure.

135.11 Digital access and personal device ownership are different forms of power

ASER 2023 Beyond Basics provides an unusually concrete local example from rural Muzaffarpur. Among surveyed 14–18-year-olds, 89.9 percent of males and 81.9 percent of females had a smartphone at home; 92.0 percent of males and 80.3 percent of females could use one. Yet among those able to use a smartphone, 36.6 percent of males had their own device compared with only 9.5 percent of females. The sample represents rural Muzaffarpur, not all Bihar, but it demonstrates a key cultural distinction. Household connectivity can coexist with highly unequal privacy, time, passwords, contacts and freedom to communicate. Personal device autonomy is therefore a gender and class resource.

135.12 Social media creates publics, but platform use should not be mistaken for a single political consciousness

Young people encounter news, comedy, devotional content, music, beauty advice, examination guidance, sports, political speech and commercial advertising in the same feeds. Algorithms mix local and national material and reward emotionally engaging formats. This creates shared references across great distances, but it does not produce one uniform “youth opinion”. Families, caste/community networks, religion, education and occupation continue to shape interpretation. Researchers should therefore avoid treating trending content as representative survey evidence. Social media is best analysed as an infrastructure through which competing identities and claims circulate at high speed.

135.13 Short video, music and remix culture reduce the cost of cultural production

Recorded culture once required access to studios, cassettes, radio stations, publishers or television. A smartphone now allows a young singer, comedian, dancer or commentator to record, edit and distribute work at very low entry cost. This has particular significance for regional languages and performance traditions. Maithili, Angika and Bajjika songs, festival clips, wedding performances, jokes and spoken commentary can circulate beyond the places where they were produced. Digital distribution may broaden

audiences, but platform visibility is unstable and monetisation unequal. Cultural creativity can become work, yet most creators remain dependent on other income.

135.14 Code-switching is a normal feature of contemporary youth speech

Young speakers frequently move among local languages, Hindi, Nepali and English according to audience and setting. Such switching should not automatically be read as language loss. A Maithili-speaking student may use Hindi for a competitive examination, English technical terms in college, local Maithili at home and a mixed register in a message thread. In Anga and western Mithila, Angika and Bajjika similarly interact with broader school and media languages. The sociolinguistic question is which domains each language can occupy with confidence and prestige. Youth culture expands linguistic repertoires even as it can place minority or regional forms under pressure.

135.15 Script choice has become part of digital language practice

Devanagari is the dominant formal writing system for Maithili in contemporary public use, while Roman-script typing is common in informal digital communication because of keyboards, speed and habit. Tirhuta/Mithilakshar has gained new technical visibility through Unicode and digital fonts, as discussed in Chapter 116, but remains a specialised cultural script rather than the default everyday medium. Young users can therefore encounter one language across several graphic forms. Script choice may signal convenience, heritage, education or stylistic identity; it should not be treated as a simple test of linguistic loyalty.

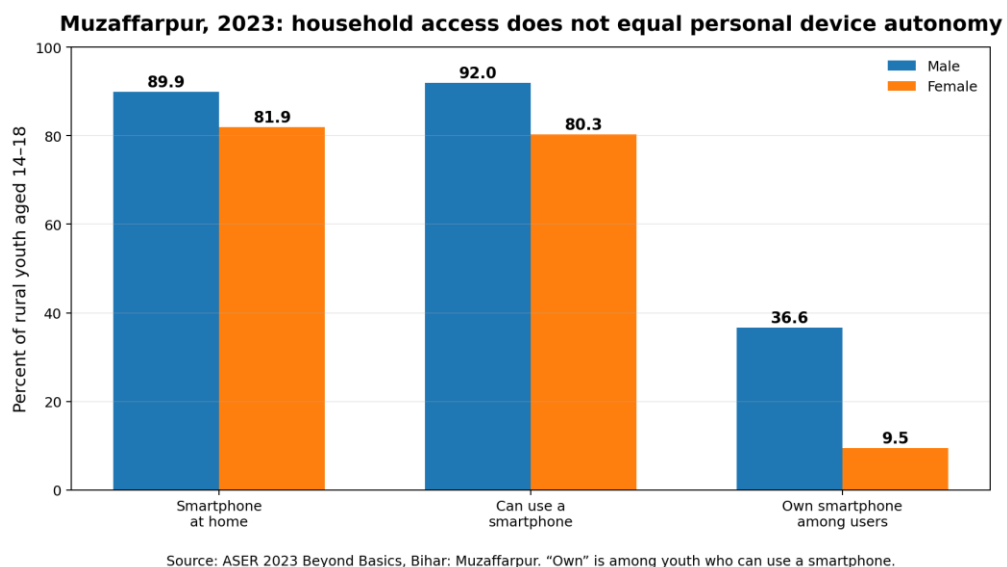


Figure 538 — Rural Muzaffarpur youth, ASER 2023: high household smartphone access coexists with a large gender gap in personal ownership.

135.16 Gender shapes who can occupy public and digital space

The gender gap in device ownership mirrors broader differences in mobility. Families may support girls' education while remaining more restrictive about travel after dark, mixed-gender friendship, independent residence or online privacy. Boys can also face strong expectations to earn and migrate. Youth culture is therefore gendered in different ways rather than simply open for men and closed for women. School transport, hostels, safe public space, family trust, affordable devices and control over personal accounts all influence whether education becomes social autonomy. The cultural meaning of "freedom" is often negotiated through ordinary decisions about where one can go, with whom and for how long.

135.17 Clothing and self-presentation combine local respectability with national fashion markets

Clothing is one of the most visible arenas in which youth culture is negotiated. Jeans, sportswear, branded or imitation shoes, salwar-kameez, saris, kurtas and festival dress coexist rather than forming a linear transition from “traditional” to “modern”. Social media and e-commerce accelerate fashion circulation, while weddings and festivals continue to generate strong demand for regionally meaningful clothing and jewellery. The same outfit can be read differently by gender, caste/class, village and city. Self-presentation is therefore a social negotiation: young people combine comfort, aspiration, affordability, family expectations and peer recognition.

135.18 Motorcycles, bicycles and buses reshape the geography of youth

Mobility technologies determine the size of the social world a young person can practically inhabit. The bicycle can make secondary school reachable; motorcycles connect villages to colleges, coaching centres and markets; buses and trains link district towns to Patna, Delhi, Kolkata and other destinations. Transport also has gendered and class effects because vehicle ownership and permission to travel are uneven. The cultural importance of mobility lies in the new radius of daily life. A person may remain resident in a village while studying, shopping, socialising and working across a much larger corridor.

135.19 Coaching lanes, campuses, tea stalls and transport nodes are important youth public spaces

Youth culture is often described through media while its physical spaces are overlooked. College gates, coaching districts, libraries, railway stations, bus stands, tea stalls, inexpensive restaurants, sports grounds and market streets provide places where peers meet outside household supervision. These spaces support information exchange about jobs, admissions, migration and relationships. Their accessibility is unequal: young women may have less unstructured time in public; poorer students may commute rather than rent rooms; rural youth may rely on weekly market towns. Public culture therefore depends on the built environment and on who is allowed to linger within it.

135.20 Festivals and religious events remain major arenas of youth participation

Religious and seasonal festivals are not cultural residues outside modern youth life. Young people organise processions, lighting, sound systems, fundraising, social-media publicity, transport, stage programmes and volunteer work. Weddings similarly combine ritual with photography, recorded music, fashion and digital invitation networks. These events can strengthen local belonging and provide organisational experience, but they can also become arenas of competition over sound, space, expenditure or identity. A social history should therefore analyse festivals as contemporary public institutions in which technologies and traditions are continually recombined.

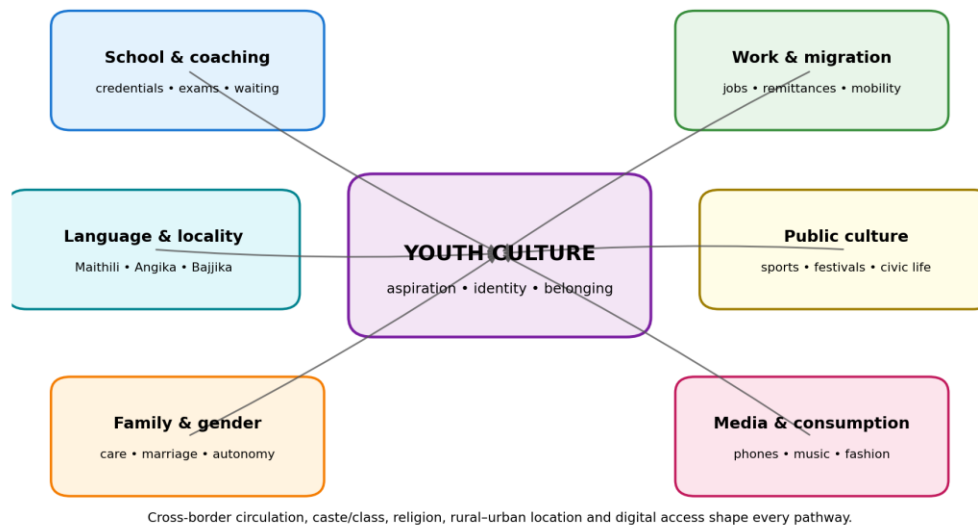
Youth culture is produced across institutions, not inside a single “generation”

Figure 539 — Youth culture is produced through interacting institutions: education, work and migration, family and gender, media and consumption, language and locality, and public culture.

135.21 Sports, gyms and physical culture create new forms of association

Cricket remains a pervasive youth activity, but the broader field includes football, volleyball, athletics, kabaddi, badminton, local tournaments, gyms and preparation for police or military physical tests. Sports can provide cross-caste and cross-village interaction while still reflecting unequal access to grounds, equipment and coaching. Gyms introduce another form of bodily self-fashioning linked to masculinity, health, appearance and social media. For young women, participation depends heavily on institutional provision and safe access. Sport is therefore both recreation and an infrastructure of sociability, discipline and aspiration.

135.22 Gaming and online entertainment add a new layer to leisure without eliminating older forms

Mobile gaming, streaming video and online comedy compete for leisure time with television, cinema, card games, outdoor sport, village gatherings and live performance. Because the smartphone is personal and portable, entertainment can become more individualised even inside crowded households. At the same time, games and videos are frequently social: friends compare scores, share clips and gather around screens. There is little reliable region-wide survey evidence that would justify precise claims about gaming prevalence in Mithila, Vajji or Anga, so the historical point should remain modest: low-cost networked entertainment has expanded the range and timing of leisure.

135.23 Friendship, romance and marriage are increasingly negotiated across institutional boundaries

Schooling, coaching, migration and phones increase opportunities for young men and women to meet beyond kin-arranged settings, yet Chapter 133 showed that marriage remains strongly embedded in family, caste/community and economic negotiation. Youth culture therefore contains both expanded private communication and durable collective control. Relationships can develop in classrooms, workplaces or online while marriage decisions still involve parents, property, dowry or gifts, residence and community

approval. The historical change is not the replacement of arranged marriage by individual choice but the multiplication of arenas in which preference, secrecy, negotiation and family authority interact.

135.24 Caste and community networks are reproduced as well as challenged by youth institutions

Education, urban residence and digital media can create friendships that cross inherited social boundaries, but the same technologies also allow caste and community associations to organise rapidly. Alumni groups, marriage networks, local associations and political or cultural pages can reinforce collective identities. Employment referrals and migration often move through kin and community connections. Youth should therefore not be imagined as automatically post-caste or post-community. The important question is where institutions broaden interaction and where they reproduce unequal access to information, capital and social protection.

135.25 Civic participation ranges from volunteering to issue-based mobilisation

Young people participate in public life through student associations, neighbourhood committees, disaster relief, blood donation, festival organisation, environmental campaigns, language and cultural groups, electoral work and online issue networks. These activities differ from formal party membership and cannot be reduced to one ideological direction. Digital tools lower the cost of coordination, but sustained civic work still requires institutions, trust and local relationships. For a regional history, youth participation is best understood through concrete organisations and issues rather than claims that an entire generation has become more or less political.

135.26 Entrepreneurship often begins as livelihood improvisation rather than start-up mythology

Youth entrepreneurship includes small retail, food services, tuition, repair shops, transport, photography, event services, online reselling, design, beauty work, agricultural services and platform-mediated freelancing as well as formal start-ups. In a region with limited salaried employment, self-employment can reflect both opportunity and necessity. Smartphones and digital payments reduce some transaction costs, while roads widen customer catchments. Yet credit, premises, skills and market demand remain decisive. Cultural celebration of “entrepreneurship” should therefore be separated from evidence about profitability and survival.

135.27 Regional-language creativity can turn cultural identity into production

The growth of cheap digital recording creates new openings for Maithili, Angika and Bajjika cultural production. Young writers, singers, actors, illustrators, podcasters and video creators can address dispersed audiences without first obtaining access to metropolitan publishers or broadcasters. This can strengthen language visibility and create archives of performance that were previously ephemeral. It can also reward sensational or formulaic content because platforms optimise for attention. The challenge for cultural institutions is to combine openness with documentation, attribution, quality and long-term preservation.

135.28 The pandemic accelerated digital normalisation but exposed infrastructure inequality

School and college closures in 2020–21 forced education, recruitment information and social contact onto phones and internet connections. The long-term significance was not that online learning permanently

replaced classrooms, but that digital tools became normal parts of educational and social life. Households without suitable devices, data, quiet space or reliable networks experienced the limits sharply. Later return to physical institutions produced a hybrid culture: notes, forms, payments, video lessons and peer groups remain online even when teaching is face to face. The pandemic therefore compressed a digital transition that was already under way.

135.29 Youth culture cannot be measured by one survey or one platform

Different sources observe different populations. PLFS measures labour-market status for specified age groups; UDISE+ and AISHE observe educational institutions; ASER 2023 Beyond Basics surveyed 14–18-year-olds in selected rural districts; Census 2021 provides complete age structure in Nepal; migration reports capture documented labour channels; and platform metrics describe users rather than all residents. Ethnography and cultural analysis reveal meanings that administrative datasets cannot. Sound interpretation requires triangulation. A viral video cannot establish regional opinion, and a labour-force rate cannot describe music, language or friendship.

135.30 Conclusion: youth culture is the social form of mobility, waiting and connection

Contemporary youth in Mithila, Vajji and Anga live within a dense interaction of extended education, uncertain employment, migration, digital connection and enduring family obligation. Bihar's projected youth share remains high even as it begins a long decline; Madhesh has a similarly youthful age structure under a different policy definition. Schooling and smartphones widen horizons, while unemployment, gendered device ownership and unequal mobility constrain them. Regional languages are not simply disappearing; they are being remixed across scripts and platforms. The defining feature of youth culture is therefore not any single fashion or technology. It is the negotiation of belonging and adulthood across multiple institutions at once. The next chapter turns directly to one of the most consequential of these institutions: social media and language.

Table 135.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing youth culture

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 135	Main limitation
National Youth Policy 2014 (India)	official youth age 15–29 and policy priorities	defines Indian policy category	policy category is not a universal life-stage boundary
National Youth Policy 2072/2015 (Nepal)	official youth age 16–40 and priority groups	shows cross-border definitional difference	not directly comparable with India's 15–29 band
MoSPI, Youth in India 2022	projected youth shares and demographic transition	places Bihar youth bulge in long-run context	projection, not a post-2011 census count
PLFS Annual Report 2025	employment and unemployment by age, sex and location	measures Bihar labour-market waiting among 15–29-year-olds	labour status does not describe culture or all forms of work
UDISE+ 2024–25 / AISHE 2023–24	school and higher-education participation	shows institutional extension of youth through education	enrolment does not equal learning or employment
ASER 2023 Beyond Basics, Muzaffarpur	education, skills, digital access and smartphone use among rural 14–18-	provides local evidence on device access and gendered ownership	one rural district; cannot represent all Bihar

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 135	Main limitation
	year-olds		
Nepal NPHC 2021	complete five-year age structure and migration/residence indicators	allows harmonised 15–29 calculation for Madhesh	Nepal policy youth is 16–40, not 15–29
Nepal Labour Migration Report 2024	documented overseas labour approvals and migration governance	locates youth aspiration in transnational labour systems	does not capture open-border India migration comprehensively
NLSS IV 2022–23 / Nepal DHS 2022	household welfare, education, labour and life-course indicators	adds household context for Madhesh/Nepal youth	survey concepts differ from Indian sources
Ethnography, cultural studies and local media archives	meanings of waiting, aspiration, language, consumption and public space	interprets institutions behind quantitative indicators	context-specific; must not be treated as population estimates

Chapter 136 — Social Media and Language

Chapter 136 examines social media as a linguistic institution rather than merely a communications technology. Facebook, WhatsApp, YouTube, Instagram, short-video platforms, messaging groups and emerging AI-assisted interfaces now sit between speech, writing, performance, migration and public debate. They make some language forms easy to record and circulate, others easy to search, and still others difficult to type or discover. The result is not a simple shift from “offline” to “online” language. Digital media reorganise the relative visibility of scripts, spellings, registers, accents, songs, jokes and political vocabularies while connecting speakers who may live in different districts, states or countries.

The regional frame remains essential. Maithili, Angika and Bajjika do not occupy identical institutional positions, and Mithila, Vajji and Anga do not form one current administrative unit. India’s Census 2011 C-16 table makes Maithili directly visible as a named mother-tongue category, while the Bihar table does not give Angika and Bajjika the same headline statistical visibility. Nepal’s 2021 census, by contrast, separately records Maithili and Bajjika in Madhesh Province. Platform data introduce another asymmetry: commercial services may know enormous amounts about users while releasing little language-specific regional evidence. This chapter therefore combines official language statistics, telecommunications evidence, national internet-use research and qualitative scholarship without inventing platform-specific counts for the historical-cultural region.

136.1 Social media is now an infrastructure of everyday language change

Language change once depended heavily on face-to-face interaction, schools, print, broadcasting, migration and institutions. Social media does not replace those mechanisms; it connects them at much higher speed. A phrase spoken in a village can be recorded on a phone, circulated through a family group, remixed into a short video, commented on by migrants in Delhi or the Gulf and returned to the village with a new spelling or comic association. The crucial historical change is the compression of distance and delay. Linguistic innovations can travel through weak ties as well as kinship networks, and archived or searchable posts allow forms to remain visible after the original conversation has ended. Social media therefore operates as infrastructure: it changes the pathways through which language moves.

136.2 Platforms do not simply carry pre-existing languages

Every platform has affordances and constraints. Text boxes reward what can be typed; search engines reward what can be spelled predictably; voice notes reduce the need for literacy; video privileges performance, facial expression and sound; recommendation systems rank some material above other material; monetisation rewards attention rather than linguistic representativeness. These design features affect language without mechanically determining it. Users adapt platforms, invent abbreviations, switch scripts, attach subtitles, use hashtags and circulate screenshots. The correct unit of analysis is therefore the relationship between platform design and social practice, not a claim that technology “causes” a single linguistic outcome.

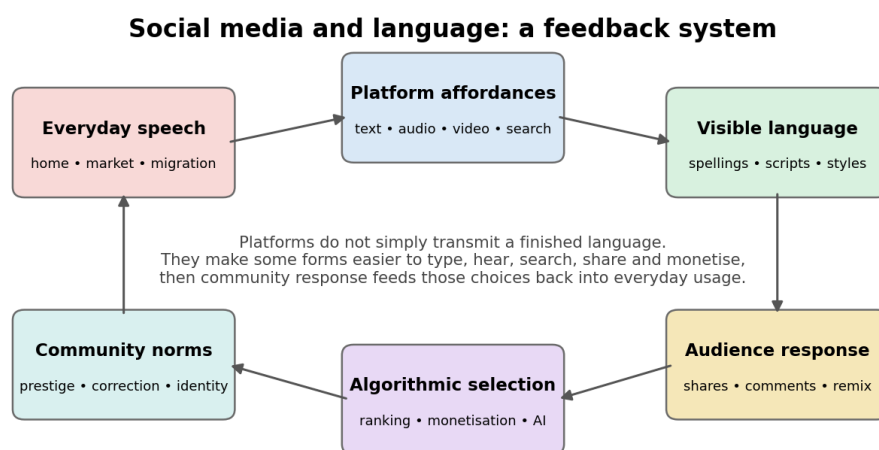


Figure 540 — Social media and language form a feedback system: platform affordances shape visible forms, audience response and algorithmic selection, which feed back into community norms and everyday usage.

136.3 The regional language field is multilingual before it becomes digital

Digital multilingualism in Mithila, Vajji and Anga begins with an already multilingual social world. Maithili, Bajjika, Angika, Hindi, Urdu, Nepali, Bhojpuri, English and other languages overlap through locality, schooling, administration, marriage, work and migration. Census of India C-17 explicitly treats bilingualism and trilingualism as measurable features, while Nepal's census documents a highly plural mother-tongue landscape. A social-media post that mixes Maithili and Hindi, or Bajjika and Nepali, should not automatically be read as digital corruption of a previously pure code. It may represent an established repertoire made newly visible in writing. The historian must distinguish long-standing multilingualism from changes introduced by digital media.

136.4 Maithili has strong demographic presence but unequal digital resources across domains

Maithili benefits from constitutional recognition in India, a large speaker base on both sides of the border and substantial literary production. Yet recognition does not guarantee equal digital support in keyboards, speech recognition, spell-checking, moderation, search, subtitles or machine translation. A language can be demographically large and still function as a low-resource language in particular computational systems. Social media partly compensates because video and audio allow creators to publish without sophisticated language technology. At the same time, discoverability often depends on metadata typed in Devanagari, Roman script, Hindi or English. The digital strength of Maithili is therefore domain-specific rather than uniform.

136.5 Angika and Bajjika reveal how digital visibility can diverge from official classification

Angika and Bajjika demonstrate why institutional statistics cannot be treated as complete maps of linguistic life. In the Bihar Census 2011 C-16 presentation, neither appears with the same directly retrievable headline status as Maithili, although both have strong regional identities and public cultural use. Nepal's 2021 census separately records Bajjika and shows its major presence in Madhesh Province. Online, users can name a language in a channel title, hashtag or video description even when official tables classify it differently.

Social media thus creates a form of self-indexing: communities can assert names and boundaries in public metadata. That visibility is culturally important, but it is not equivalent to a census count or legal recognition.

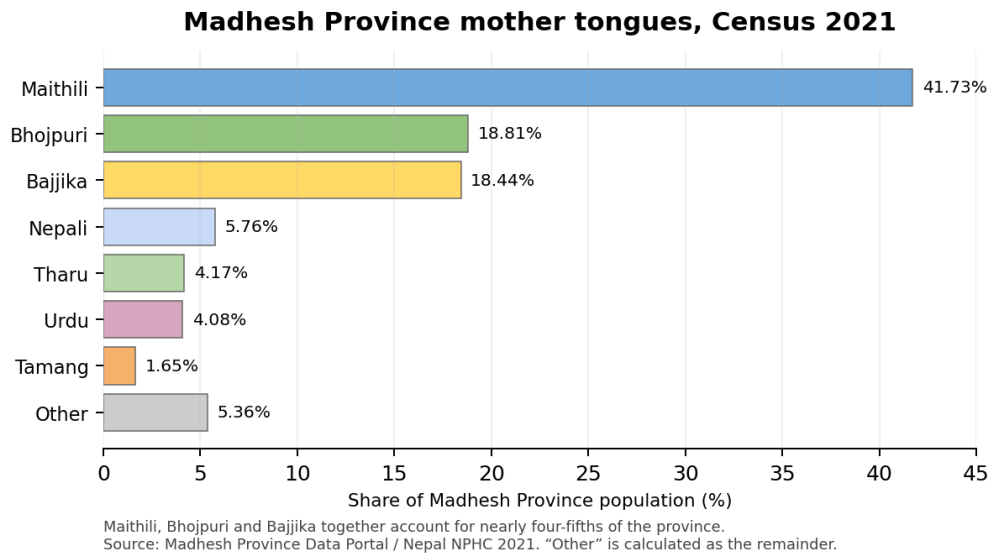


Figure 541 — Madhesh Province mother tongues in Census 2021: Maithili 41.73%, Bhojpuri 18.81%, Bajjika 18.44%, Nepali 5.76%, Tharu 4.17%, Urdu 4.08%, Tamang 1.65%, with the remainder grouped here as other languages.

136.6 Indic-language internet growth changes the economics of regional-language audiences

The IAMA–Kantar Internet in India Report 2024 estimated 886 million active internet users nationally, with rural India accounting for 488 million. It also reported that 98 percent of internet users accessed content in Indic languages and that 57 percent of urban users preferred regional-language content. These are India-wide figures, not Bihar estimates, but they establish an important market context. Regional-language content is no longer a marginal add-on to an English-dominant internet. Advertising, video distribution, news, entertainment and commerce increasingly have incentives to address users in non-English languages. For Maithili, Angika and Bajjika, the opportunity is real, but audience economics remain shaped by the much larger markets for Hindi and other major languages.

136.7 Video lowers the script threshold and gives oral vernaculars new public reach

Video is especially important for language varieties whose speakers may be more confident in speech than in standardised writing. A singer, comic performer, farmer, teacher or political speaker can address an audience in a local variety without choosing a formal orthography for every sentence. Subtitles and titles can then be added in Devanagari, Roman script, Hindi or English. IAMA–Kantar’s India-wide evidence shows video as the most common activity undertaken in Indic languages, ahead of social networking and search. For regional language history, this means that oral performance has become a major digital publication format. The public record of language is no longer dominated by books, newspapers and institutional broadcasting.

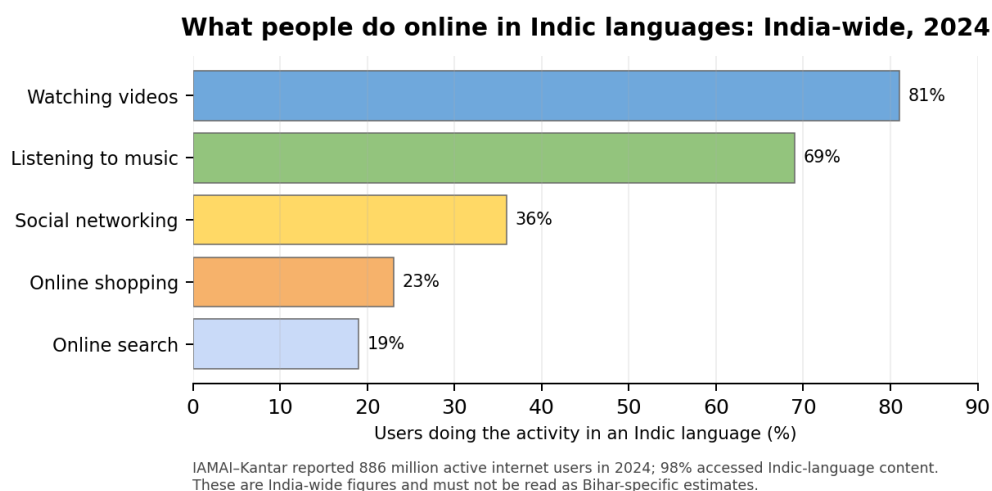


Figure 542 — India-wide Indic-language internet activities in the IMAI–Kantar Internet in India Report 2024; video and music dominate, while social networking, shopping and search also occur substantially in Indic languages; these are not Bihar-specific estimates.

136.8 Voice messages return spoken registers to the centre of digital communication

Messaging applications changed digital writing by making audio ordinary. Voice notes allow elderly users, people with limited literacy, migrants under time pressure and speakers unsure of standard spelling to participate in digital networks through speech. They preserve intonation, hesitation, local vocabulary and pronunciation that text messages flatten. Yet voice is also less searchable, less easily quoted and harder to archive systematically. A language may therefore thrive in private audio circulation while remaining underrepresented in searchable public text. Historians of digital language need to distinguish communicative vitality from archival visibility.

136.9 Devanagari has become the practical common script for much regional-language social media

For Maithili, Angika and Bajjika, Devanagari is widely usable across phones, operating systems and mainstream platforms and overlaps with Hindi literacy acquired through schooling. This lowers the technical cost of publishing regional-language text. The same convenience can blur linguistic boundaries because identical script does not imply identical language. A Maithili sentence in Devanagari may be mistaken by automated systems or casual readers for Hindi unless vocabulary, metadata or context mark the distinction. Script convergence therefore supports access while making language identification more dependent on linguistic and social cues.

136.10 Roman transliteration is a functional digital register, not automatic evidence of language loss

Roman-script writing appears frequently in messaging, comments and short captions because keyboards are familiar, code-switching with English is easy and users can avoid uncertainty about Devanagari spelling. Such writing is often unstable: the same word may appear in several Roman spellings. That instability reduces searchability and can make archiving difficult, but it also records pronunciation and informal style. Treating Roman transliteration simply as linguistic decline misses its practical function. The more useful

question is whether users can move between scripts and domains when required—for example, between a Roman-script chat, a Devanagari public post and a formal Maithili publication.

136.11 Tirhuta or Mithilakshar has a different digital role: heritage, expertise and identity

Unicode encodes Tirhuta at U+11480–U+114DF and identifies it as the traditional writing system of Maithili. Digital encoding makes genuine text possible rather than image-only reproduction, yet encoded existence is not the same as effortless everyday use. Fonts, keyboards, rendering support, user knowledge and platform compatibility still matter. On social media, Tirhuta often functions as a marker of heritage, scholarship, calligraphy and regional identity rather than as the default script for rapid conversation. This specialised visibility can nevertheless be historically significant: a script that had become difficult to reproduce in ordinary print can circulate globally as searchable text when the technical chain works.

136.12 Unicode, fonts and keyboards are part of language infrastructure

A user can only type what the input system makes practicable and only read what the device can render. Unicode standardisation solved the fundamental problem of assigning stable code points, but practical inclusion requires more: fonts, keyboard layouts, search indexing, line breaking, text-to-speech, optical recognition and developer support. Chapter 116 treated Unicode and Tirhuta as technological recognition; the present chapter follows the social consequence. When technical support is uneven, users route around it through screenshots, images, Roman transliteration or another script. These workarounds preserve communication but weaken machine readability and long-term digital preservation.

136.13 Code-switching is a resource for audience design

A single post may combine a Maithili or Bajjika spoken base with Hindi for a wider regional audience and English for technical terms, hashtags or prestige. Such code-switching can index education, humour, urbanity, migration or group membership. Creators also adjust language by platform: a family message may use a local variety, a public caption Hindi, and a professional profile English. Networked multilingualism therefore involves strategic audience design. The same person can inhabit several linguistic publics without abandoning a mother tongue. Analysis should ask who is being addressed and what social work each language performs.

136.14 Orthographic variation becomes publicly visible and therefore contestable

Print institutions historically reduced variation through editors, proofreaders and house styles. Social media exposes far more unedited writing, including local pronunciations, spellings, abbreviations and hybrid forms. Comment threads can then become sites of correction: users debate whether a word is “proper” Maithili, whether a form is Hindi-influenced, or whether a Bajjika or Angika expression belongs to another label. This can strengthen metalinguistic awareness, but it can also convert normal variation into status conflict. Digital visibility does not simply standardise language; it makes the politics of standardisation more public.

136.15 Search and hashtags create pressure toward searchable spellings

Search systems operate on strings, metadata and probabilistic matching. A creator who wants discovery has incentives to repeat widely recognised spellings, add alternative spellings or include Hindi and English

keywords. Hashtags similarly reward consistency because a one-character difference can fragment an audience. This may encourage practical standardisation around popular forms even without an academy or grammar committee. It can also privilege the spellings used by the largest accounts. Searchability is therefore a new source of linguistic authority—less formal than a dictionary, but powerful because it determines whether content can be found.

136.16 Recommendation systems can expand small-language reach while obscuring how selection occurs

Recommendation feeds can expose users to regional-language material they did not explicitly search for. This is potentially transformative for small and dispersed linguistic publics: a song or comic clip can travel beyond subscribers and locality. Yet recommendation systems are proprietary and constantly changing. Researchers usually cannot see the full ranking logic, training data or language-identification errors. A sudden increase in visibility may reflect content quality, engagement, platform experimentation or broader trends. The historian should therefore treat algorithmic reach as a mechanism with uncertain internal evidence rather than as a transparent measure of cultural popularity.

Platform affordances reshape different parts of language

Affordance	Immediate constraint / opportunity	Possible linguistic effect
Text / captions	typing speed; script choice	spelling conventions; code-mixing
Voice / messages	low literacy threshold	spoken registers; pronunciation
Short video / music	performance + discoverability	oral styles; catchphrases; song circulation
Search / hashtags	exact strings matter	pressure toward searchable spellings
Recommenders	attention is ranked	amplification can favour some registers
AI language tools	automatic conversion	access expands; low-resource errors matter

The direction of change is not automatic: users, institutions, keyboards, moderation, markets and education mediate every effect.

Figure 543 — Different platform affordances affect different linguistic dimensions: typing and script choice, spoken registers, audiovisual performance, searchable spelling, algorithmic amplification and AI-assisted conversion.

136.17 Monetisation can reward language mixing and scalable formats

Advertising and creator-revenue systems convert attention into income, but they do not necessarily reward linguistic distinctiveness. A creator may mix Hindi with Maithili or Angika to reach a larger monetisable audience, use English words in titles for search, or produce short repeatable formats favoured by recommendation systems. This does not mean local languages disappear. It means linguistic choices are partly embedded in platform economics. The strongest cultural output may come from creators who can move between intimate local address and broader multilingual circulation. Economic incentives should therefore be analysed alongside identity and expressive preference.

136.18 Migration turns regional languages into translocal digital publics

Migration, discussed throughout Parts XI and XIII, is one of the most important engines of online regional-language use. Migrants in Delhi, Punjab, Gujarat, Mumbai, the Gulf, Kathmandu and other destinations maintain everyday contact with home through messaging and video. Social media allows festivals, songs, local news, jokes and political debates to circulate between origin and destination in real time. The audience for a Maithili or Angika video is thus not geographically confined to its historical region. Digital language publics are translocal: they are organised by memory, kinship and interest as much as by current residence.

136.19 The India–Nepal border is porous linguistically even when digital regulation is national

Madhesh and north Bihar share Maithili and other linguistic networks, but telecommunications regulation, data protection, platform law, education policy and official language regimes remain national. The same video or message can cross the open border instantly while the institutional context differs. Nepal's 2021 census records Maithili as 41.73 percent and Bajjika as 18.44 percent of Madhesh Province's population, alongside Bhojpuri, Nepali, Tharu, Urdu and other languages. Social media overlays this plural census geography with a cross-border communication field. Cultural connectedness should not be mistaken for administrative uniformity.

136.20 Gender and device ownership shape who speaks publicly and in which register

Access to a household phone is not the same as autonomous control of a personal device. Earlier chapters showed gender gaps in personal smartphone ownership among young people even where household access was high. Shared devices can limit privacy, timing and willingness to participate in public discussion. Women may use closed messaging groups more freely than public comment sections, while safety concerns can influence profile names, photographs and language style. Social-media language data are therefore socially selected: the most visible speakers are not automatically representative of everyone who speaks the language offline.

136.21 Generational change is visible in format as much as vocabulary

Younger users often move quickly among short video, memes, emoji, voice notes, gaming vocabulary, Hindi film references and English technical terms, while older users may rely more on voice calls, forwarded messages or devotional and family content. These are tendencies, not fixed age rules. The linguistic significance lies in format. A generation raised with searchable, editable and remixable media experiences language through captions, comments and clips as well as conversation and books. This expands the range of public writing while shortening many messages and increasing the role of audiovisual cues.

136.22 Memes and humour are laboratories of lexical innovation

Humour rewards recognition of local accent, stereotype, proverb, kinship term and double meaning. Memes compress these into highly repeatable forms. A local word can become salient because it is attached to a recurring image or catchphrase, while code-mixing creates jokes that depend on contrast between registers. Humour can strengthen linguistic solidarity, but it can also caricature rural speech, caste, gender or district identity. The researcher should preserve both creativity and power relations: virality is not neutral evidence of acceptance.

136.23 Music and short video create a powerful oral economy of language

Songs have always travelled across Mithila, Vajji and Anga through performance, cassettes, radio, television and migration. Social platforms change the speed and granularity of circulation. A complete song can coexist with fifteen-second hooks, dance clips, devotional excerpts and user remixes. Language travels through melody even when listeners cannot read the script. This helps explain why oral and musical forms can achieve digital reach larger than prose. It also creates copyright and attribution questions when recordings are reposted without clear credit, linking the language economy back to the intellectual-property issues examined in Chapter 128.

136.24 News and public debate create a new vernacular sphere but not a single public sphere

Local journalists, institutions, political actors and ordinary users now publish directly through pages, channels and groups. Regional languages can therefore enter public debate without waiting for a newspaper column or broadcast slot. Yet online publics are fragmented by platform, locality, caste/community networks, ideology and recommendation systems. A widely viewed Maithili video may reach one segment of speakers while remaining invisible to another. The existence of more vernacular content should not be equated with a unified democratic public sphere. The key change is lower publication cost combined with greater fragmentation of attention.

136.25 Misinformation travels through trusted linguistic networks as efficiently as accurate information

Regional-language intimacy can increase trust. A message forwarded by a relative or recorded in a familiar accent may feel more credible than an anonymous English notice. This is valuable for public-health communication, disaster warnings and civic information, but the same trust can accelerate rumours, fabricated quotations and manipulated video. Fact-checking systems often have fewer resources for smaller languages and local dialects than for major national languages. Digital literacy therefore includes the ability to verify claims across languages and sources, not merely the ability to operate a phone.

136.26 Content moderation and automated language identification are uneven for low-resource varieties

Large platforms use combinations of automated classifiers, user reports and human review. Performance is generally strongest where abundant labelled data and commercial incentives exist. Regional varieties with fluid spelling, Roman transliteration and code-mixing can be harder to classify. A system may mistake Maithili or Bajjika for Hindi, fail to recognise abusive local vocabulary, or over-remove benign expressions if context is poorly modelled. Because moderation systems are proprietary, regional error rates are rarely available. Researchers should describe this as a plausible structural risk supported by the low-resource character of many language technologies, not invent unsupported platform-specific accuracy figures.

136.27 AI translation and speech technologies create a new phase of digital language politics

India's BHASHINI programme illustrates the rapid institutional expansion of multilingual AI. The Ministry of Electronics and Information Technology's 2025–26 annual report states that the platform supports more than 36 languages for text translation and more than 22 for voice, alongside a large multilingual glossary. Such infrastructure can improve subtitles, government services, speech interfaces and

content discovery. Yet support counts do not guarantee equal quality across languages or varieties. Training data, dialect coverage, named entities, spelling variation and code-switching remain difficult. For Maithili, Angika and Bajjika, AI can widen access while also amplifying errors if users treat automated output as authoritative language.

136.28 Digital archives must confront ephemerality, deletion and platform dependence

Social media produces enormous quantities of linguistic material but is an unstable archive. Accounts disappear, links break, platforms change policies, comments are deleted and recommendation context is lost. Screenshots preserve appearance but not searchable text or metadata; downloaded videos may lose captions and discussion threads. Long-term language history therefore requires deliberate preservation outside the platform: dated captures, transcripts, metadata, rights information and where possible original files. Digital abundance should not be confused with permanent preservation.

136.29 Measurement is the central methodological problem

Official censuses measure mother tongue, not social-media language. Telecom regulators measure subscriptions and traffic, not the language of every message. IAMA–Kantar measures national internet behaviour through surveys, while platform analytics are proprietary and creator-specific. Public search counts change over time and can be distorted by duplicate, automated or cross-linguistic content. No single dataset therefore answers “how much Maithili, Angika or Bajjika is on social media?” A rigorous account triangulates population language data, connectivity evidence, platform affordances, samples of public content and qualitative observation, and states clearly when figures are national rather than regional.

136.30 Conclusion: social media expands language domains without guaranteeing language transmission

The major historical change is domain expansion. Regional languages now circulate through messaging, video, music, comments, livestreams, digital commerce and transnational family networks in ways that print-era institutions could not match. This can increase prestige, creativity and cross-border connection, especially where oral forms are strong. But digital visibility is not the same as intergenerational transmission, literacy, educational use or institutional security. A language can be highly visible in entertainment while weakening in schooling or formal writing. The future of Maithili, Angika and Bajjika will therefore depend on the interaction of homes, schools, publishing, public institutions and digital platforms rather than on social media alone.

Table 136.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing social media and language

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 136	Main limitation
Census of India 2011 C-16 / C-17	mother tongue plus bilingualism/trilingualism in Bihar	baseline linguistic repertoire and classification	dated; does not measure social-media use
Linguistic Survey of India: Bihar	census-linked description of Bihar language categories	shows how official classification groups and names varieties	classification is not identical to self-identification online
Nepal NPHC 2021 / Languages in Nepal 2025	mother-tongue counts and multilingual structure	cross-border comparison; Maithili and Bajjika in Madhesh	census language is not platform language
Madhesh Province	province-level language	regional visualisation of the multilingual	administrative province is not

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 136	Main limitation
Data Portal	counts from NPHC 2021	field	identical to historical Mithila
IAMAI–Kantar Internet in India Report 2024	national active internet users and Indic-language activities	establishes scale of Indic-language digital demand	India-wide survey; not Bihar-specific
TRAI performance indicators 2026	current telecom and internet-system context in India	connectivity infrastructure surrounding language use	telecom subscriptions do not identify language
Nepal Telecommunications Authority MIS	broadband and mobile-service context	connectivity context on Nepal side	national service data are not Madhesh language-use counts
Unicode Standard, Tirhuta block	encoded script repertoire	technical basis for machine-readable Tirhuta text	encoding does not ensure fonts, keyboards or user adoption
BHASHINI / MeitY 2025–26	multilingual AI models, translation and voice support	institutional context for language technology	support count does not demonstrate equal quality by variety
Public platform samples / creator analytics	actual spellings, scripts, formats and audience interaction	qualitative study of language practice	non-random; proprietary metrics; unstable over time
Digital ethnography and CMC scholarship	how users negotiate identity, code-switching and platform norms	interprets social meaning rather than only counts	requires contextual sampling and cannot produce a census total

Chapter 137 — Religious Change and Public Ritual

Chapter 137 examines religious change through public ritual: the recurrent acts by which households, neighbourhoods, congregations, pilgrims, associations and public authorities occupy time and space together. It does not assume that religious change can be read directly from census percentages. Affiliation, belief, observance, institutional membership and participation in a festival are different variables. A person can join a public procession without changing formal religious identity; a ritual can expand in scale because roads and media improve even when the proportion of adherents is stable; and a shrine can become more visible through tourism without becoming more central to everyday household practice. The chapter therefore treats public ritual as a social institution whose form changes through mobility, technology, markets, law, ecology and political life.

The evidentiary chronology is uneven across the India–Nepal border. India’s latest completed census religion tables remain those of Census 2011, including the Bihar C-01 and religion Primary Census Abstract datasets at state, district, sub-district and town levels. Nepal’s National Population and Housing Census 2021 provides a more recent religious profile: Madhesh Province reported 84.24 percent Hindu, 13.28 percent Islam, 2.21 percent Buddhist and 0.18 percent Christian, with smaller reported religions making up the remainder. These figures establish affiliation at the census date, not the intensity of ritual life. Contemporary public ritual must therefore be reconstructed from census data together with institutional records, festival calendars, municipal arrangements, tourism documentation, observation, media and historical comparison.

137.1 From religious affiliation to lived public religion

Religion enters social history through more than doctrine or census identity. It appears in fasting, pilgrimage, household vows, offerings, life-cycle rites, mosque and temple attendance, shrine visitation, public processions, recitation, food distribution, mourning and the seasonal transformation of streets, ponds and riverbanks. These practices connect private obligations with collective institutions. The same person may participate differently across the life cycle, and a family may maintain domestic ritual while reducing attendance at one public festival or intensifying another. The analytical task is therefore to study repertoires of practice. “Religious change” in this chapter means change in scale, organization, participation, media, spatial reach and institutional form unless there is evidence for change in formal affiliation.

137.2 Why public ritual is a particularly sensitive indicator of social change

Public ritual is visible where household religion meets shared infrastructure. A Chhath ghat requires access to water, cleaning and safe movement; a procession requires a route and coordination; a large congregational prayer requires space and timing; a pilgrimage requires transport, lodging and information. These demands make ritual sensitive to road building, urbanization, migration, policing, sanitation and communications. They also make change easier to observe than private belief. A new loudspeaker, paved road, mobile announcement network or temporary lighting system can alter the experience of a festival without changing its theology. Public ritual is thus a useful historical lens precisely because it reveals interactions between devotion and material institutions.

Religious practice becomes public through institutions, spaces and mobility

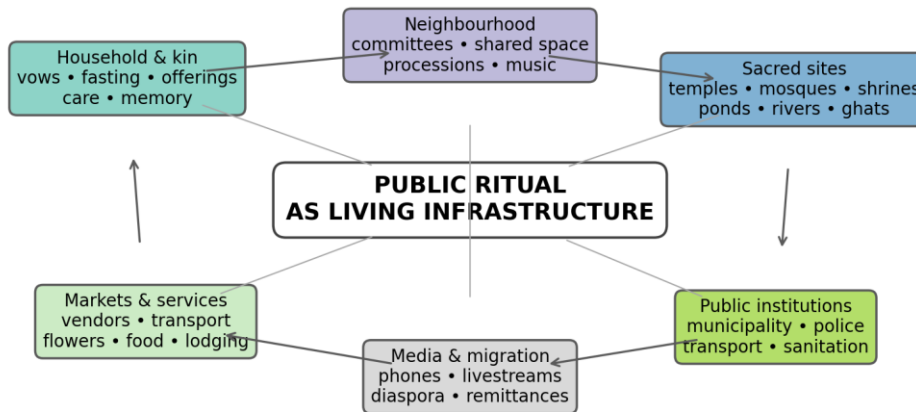
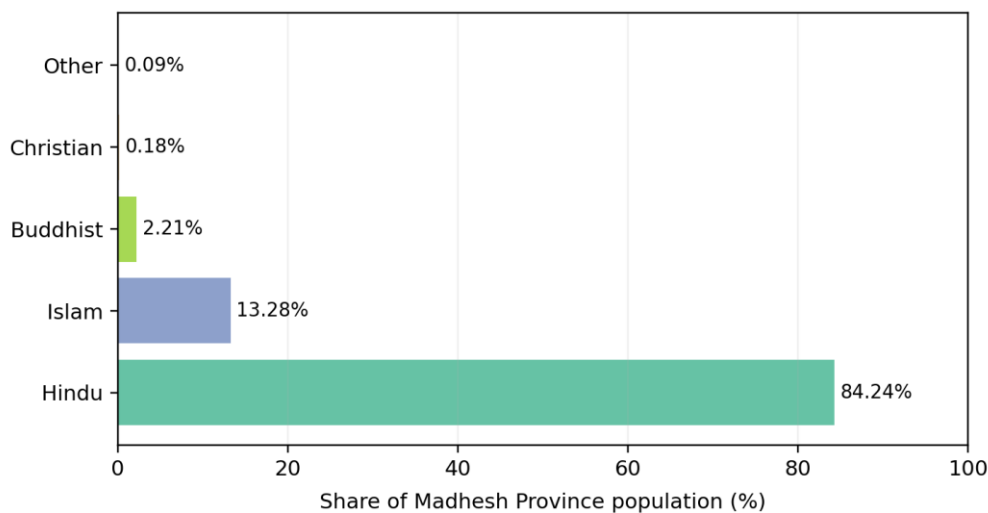


Figure 544 — Public ritual operates as living infrastructure linking households, neighbourhoods, sacred sites, public institutions, media, migration and markets.

137.3 The scale of public religion is not the same as the size of a religious population

Census tables are indispensable for demographic context, but public visibility is produced through calendar concentration, spatial concentration and organizational capacity. A small religious community can have a highly visible annual gathering; a large majority can practice mainly through dispersed household rites; a pilgrimage site can draw participants from far beyond the resident population. Bihar's 2011 religion tables allow district and town comparison, while Nepal's 2021 thematic report permits more recent province-level comparison. Neither dataset measures attendance at Chhath, Vivah Panchami, Eid, Muharram, an urs, a Buddhist assembly or a Jain pilgrimage. Any claim about growth or decline of ritual participation therefore needs evidence separate from affiliation counts.

Madhesh Province: religion reported in NPHC 2021



Source: Nepal National Statistics Office, NPHC 2021, Thematic Report XIII.
"Other" groups the remaining reported religions for this display only.

Figure 545 — Madhesh Province religious affiliation in Nepal's National Population and Housing Census 2021: Hindu 84.24%, Islam 13.28%, Buddhist 2.21%, Christian 0.18%, with the remaining reported religions grouped here as "Other".

137.4 Chhath as a household vow transformed into shared public infrastructure

Chhath is an especially revealing case because the ritual combines household discipline with collective occupation of water edges. Bihar Tourism describes a four-day observance involving fasting, ritual purity and offerings to the setting and rising sun, with large gatherings on riverbanks and other water bodies. The vrata is carried principally through household labour, yet its public performance depends on ghats, access paths, lighting, traffic management, waste removal and water safety. Urban growth can therefore enlarge the administrative footprint of the festival even when the ritual sequence remains recognizable. The historical change lies not simply in “more religion” but in the increasing coordination between domestic observance and civic infrastructure.

137.5 Women's labour, authority and visibility in Chhath and other vows

Public ritual often makes women highly visible while still depending on unequal household labour. In Chhath, fasting, food preparation, purification, basket organization, ritual singing and kin coordination can give women central ritual authority. Similar patterns appear in other vows and seasonal rites where women organize the continuity of practice across generations. Yet visibility should not be equated automatically with economic autonomy or equal decision-making in other domains. The social historian must ask who performs the labour, who finances the event, who controls movement, whose ritual expertise is recognized and how younger generations learn the sequence. Public religion can reproduce gendered work while also creating distinctive forms of female authority.

137.6 Ritual ecology: rivers, ponds and the politics of clean water

Water is both sacred medium and ecological infrastructure. Ritual bathing, offerings and immersion take place in water bodies that also receive sewage, agricultural runoff and urban waste. The resulting tension cannot be reduced to a conflict between religion and environmentalism. Devotees themselves often demand clean ghats and safe water, while public agencies must manage waste, crowd density and access. Environmental regulation increasingly shapes the materials permitted for idol immersion and the treatment of temporary structures. The historical shift is toward explicit negotiation between ritual entitlement, public health and ecological limits. This makes water quality, sanitation and waste management part of the institutional history of religion.

137.7 Vivah Panchami turns sacred narrative into a transborder public event

Vivah Panchami in Janakpur demonstrates how a ritual calendar can organize India–Nepal mobility. The Nepal Tourism Board describes a week-long celebration commemorating the marriage of Sita and Rama through reenactments, processions, music and cultural performance, attended by local residents and visitors from nearby Indian cities and Ayodhya. The event is rooted in Janakpur's identification with ancient Mithila and in the Janaki Mandir and Vivah Mandap complex. Modern roads, buses, hotels, border procedures, media coverage and tourism promotion increase the scale and visibility of a festival whose sacred narrative is much older. Public ritual here becomes a transnational social field without erasing the political border.

137.8 Janakpur's sacred ponds and temples are also an urban public-space system

Janakpur's religious landscape is not contained within one monument. Temples, the Vivah Mandap, sacred ponds such as Ganga Sagar and Dhanush Sagar, processional streets, markets and lodging facilities form an urban ritual network. Festival days redistribute movement through this network and temporarily change the functions of streets and open spaces. Urban expansion can improve access while also increasing pressure on ponds, traffic and heritage fabric. The transformation of Janakpur is therefore not a movement from "sacred" to "modern." Sacred geography is being reproduced through modern municipal systems, tourism and cross-border circulation. Religious continuity and urban change are intertwined.

137.9 Pilgrimage and public ritual overlap but should not be collapsed

Pilgrimage chapters emphasize journeys, visitor economies and sacred destinations; public ritual emphasizes collective performance at particular times and places. The two often overlap. A pilgrim may arrive for Vivah Panchami, a Chhath devotee may travel to a famous ghat, and visitors to Vaishali may participate in Buddhist or Jain commemorations. Yet analytical separation is useful. Pilgrimage asks how people move to sacred places; public ritual asks how collective action transforms those places and their surrounding infrastructure. This distinction prevents tourism statistics from being treated as direct measures of religious participation and keeps the social organization of ritual visible.

137.10 Neighbourhood puja committees and the associational form of religion

Many urban and semi-urban festivals depend on temporary or permanent committees that collect contributions, erect structures, commission images, arrange sound and lighting, coordinate volunteers and negotiate with authorities. Such associations can widen participation beyond kinship and create opportunities for young people to acquire organizational experience. They can also produce competition over scale, decoration, route and sponsorship. The historical significance lies in the associational form: ritual becomes a project managed through budgets, meetings, permissions and publicity. This does not make the ritual less religious; it shows how devotion is institutionalized in a dense civic environment.

137.11 Ram Navami, Durga Puja and the changing visual grammar of the street

Public Hindu festivals increasingly use banners, electric lighting, portable stages, amplified sound, printed iconography and digital posters. These technologies change scale and visual saturation. Ram Navami processions and Durga Puja installations, where locally prominent, turn streets into temporary ritual landscapes and require negotiation over routes, traffic and safety. The specific intensity varies by town and year, so regional generalization must be cautious. The important structural point is that ritual visibility is partly a media history: cheap printing, generators, LED lighting, mobile photography and social platforms alter how public devotion is designed, remembered and compared.

137.12 Muslim public religious life extends beyond a single festival calendar

Muslim religious life in Mithila, Vajji and Anga includes mosque congregations, Eid prayers, Ramadan practices, Muharram observances, shrine visitation, teaching institutions, charity and family rites. Census 2011 shows substantial Muslim populations in many Bihar districts, while Nepal's 2021 census reports Islam at 13.28 percent of Madhesh Province and places more than half of Nepal's Muslim population in Madhesh. These demographic facts provide context, not a complete map of practice. Public religious life varies by

locality, school of thought, class, gender, migration history and institutional resources. A serious regional history must resist reducing Muslim life either to census numbers or to moments of public controversy.

137.13 Muharram and processional memory reveal the layered history of public space

Muharram observances can include processions, tazias, mourning, recitation and local forms of participation whose organization differs widely. In many parts of South Asia, processional routes carry accumulated memories about neighbourhood, patronage and permission. Their meaning cannot be inferred from a generic description of Islam. The historical evidence needs to be local: route records, oral histories, photographs, municipal arrangements and community archives. Where non-Muslim participation or shared craftsmanship is documented, it should be recorded as a local historical pattern rather than romanticized as timeless “syncretism.” Public ritual is valuable precisely because it preserves both cooperation and boundary-making in observable forms.

137.14 Shrines, urs and vernacular devotional networks complicate formal categories

Sufi shrines and local saint traditions show how devotional geography can cross the neat categories used by censuses. An urs may draw visitors for prayer, healing, vows, music or social gathering; practices differ across shrines and periods. Similar boundary complexity appears around Hindu village deities and local sacred places whose ritual importance may be high even when they have little institutional visibility. The analytical lesson is not to dissolve differences between religions but to recognize that formal affiliation does not exhaust the ways people use sacred places. Public religion operates through localized networks of reputation, memory and efficacy.

137.15 Buddhist and Jain ritual in Vaishali links local heritage to global religious publics

Vaishali’s Buddhist and Jain significance creates forms of public religion whose participant base extends far beyond local demography. Monasteries, memorial sites, pilgrim groups and commemorative events connect the district with transnational Buddhist and Jain networks. A census of resident Buddhists or Jains would therefore radically understate the ritual importance of the landscape. Modern archaeological presentation, roads, tourism services and international religious institutions can reactivate ancient sites as contemporary ritual destinations. This is a different mechanism from majority-community festivals: religious publicness is produced by historical memory, institutional investment and pilgrimage circulation rather than by local population share alone.

137.16 Anga’s Ganga corridor links regional devotion to long-distance pilgrimage

In the Anga zone, the Ganga is simultaneously a river, transport barrier, ritual medium and pilgrimage corridor. Sultanganj in Bhagalpur district is a major departure point for the Shravani kanwar pilgrimage toward Deoghar, during which pilgrims carry Ganga water over a long route. The ritual therefore connects Anga to a wider sacred geography extending beyond the study region. Seasonal concentration creates temporary transport, sanitation, policing and market demands. It is a good example of how a locality can become central to a ritual network even when the ritual’s final destination lies elsewhere.

137.17 Cultural rites such as Sama-Chakeva show why “religious” needs careful definition

Mithila’s ritual calendar contains forms that are simultaneously religious, familial, seasonal, performative and cultural. Sama-Chakeva, for example, is often described through sibling relations, clay figures, songs and seasonal gathering rather than through a single centralized religious institution. Madhushravani likewise combines marriage, household ritual, women’s knowledge and narrative. Classifying every such practice simply as “religion” can obscure its social texture; classifying it merely as “folklore” can erase sacred obligation. Contemporary change should therefore be studied through what participants do and say, allowing ritual, culture and religion to overlap without forcing one administrative category onto all practices.

137.18 Caste and status shape access to ritual resources without determining all participation

Public ritual can reproduce social hierarchy through control of priesthood, sponsorship, seating, procession order, temple management or access to particular spaces. It can also create arenas in which historically marginalized groups establish their own institutions, sponsor public events or assert equal access. These processes vary locally and cannot be inferred from caste labels alone. The historian must trace institutions, land, patronage, committee membership and actual participation. This chapter therefore avoids presenting public religion as either automatically integrative or inherently exclusionary. Its social effects depend on who controls resources, who performs labour and what rights are recognized in practice.

137.19 Migration changes ritual finance, timing and expectations

Migration does not simply remove people from local religious life. Migrants send money for festivals, return during major observances, sponsor construction, circulate images and compare local events with those in destination cities. Gulf migration, Delhi and Mumbai employment, and India–Nepal mobility can all reshape household ritual budgets and aesthetic expectations. A family may have fewer working-age men present for everyday village life but greater cash resources for a yearly ceremony. Diaspora associations can organize the same festival in distant cities, creating parallel calendars. Ritual thus becomes one mechanism through which migrants remain socially present in places where they are physically absent for much of the year.

137.20 Digital media produces a second public around the ritual event

Chapter 136 showed how regional languages circulate through social media; public ritual gives those media recurrent content. Livestreams, short videos, WhatsApp invitations, route updates and devotional recordings extend participation beyond the physical crowd. This creates a second public composed of migrants, relatives and viewers who may never reach the site. Digital visibility can also standardize expectations: decorations, songs and procession styles are compared across towns, and spectacular images travel farther than ordinary devotional work. The archive is unstable, however. A viral clip should not be mistaken for representative participation, and platform metrics should not substitute for field evidence.

Change usually comes through interacting infrastructures, not a single “modernisation” process

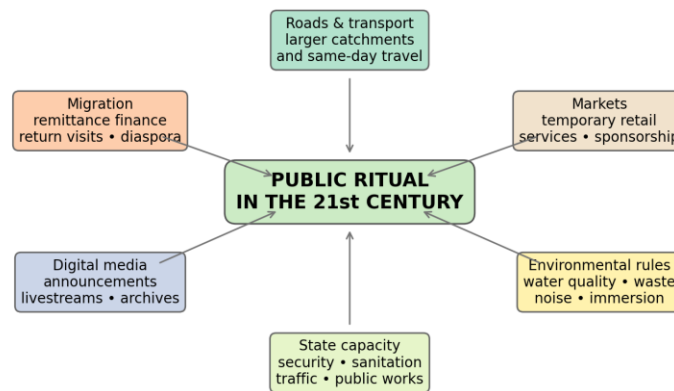


Figure 546 — Twenty-first-century public ritual is reshaped through interacting infrastructures: transport, migration, digital media, state capacity, environmental governance and markets.

137.21 Sound technology changes the radius of public religion

Loudspeakers, recorded music and portable amplification enlarge the acoustic reach of ritual. This can support collective singing, announcements and crowd coordination, but it also turns sound into a shared-space issue governed by time, decibel rules and local negotiation. India’s Noise Pollution (Regulation and Control) Rules, 2000 create a legal framework for amplified sound, although implementation varies. The historical point is that modern public religion is partly an acoustic infrastructure. What once reached the immediate courtyard or procession now reaches whole neighbourhoods, and this widened radius can generate both participation and dispute.

137.22 Markets and sponsorship are embedded in ritual without exhausting its meaning

Large rituals generate temporary demand for flowers, fruit, cloth, baskets, images, transport, food, lodging, lighting and sound services. Sponsorship can finance stages, banners, drinking water or community meals. Commercialization therefore accompanies public religion, but “commercial” and “sacred” are not mutually exclusive categories. Devotees routinely purchase ritual goods while treating the act as religiously serious. The historical question is how market relations alter access and display: whether costs rise, whether corporate branding enters community events, whether local artisans benefit, and whether expensive spectacle changes expectations for poorer households.

137.23 Municipal government is now part of the ritual apparatus

As gatherings become larger and towns denser, public authorities increasingly provide barricades, temporary lighting, road diversion, water, sanitation, medical posts, fire safety and waste removal. These are not external additions to the event; they help determine whether a ritual can occur safely at current scale. Government tourism pages for Chhath and Janakpur festivals also show that public institutions actively represent ritual as cultural heritage and destination branding. The resulting relationship is reciprocal: ritual claims public resources and visibility, while the state incorporates ritual into calendars of administration, tourism and civic identity.

137.24 Route governance and security make public ritual a negotiated civic right

Processions and mass gatherings occupy roads that are also used by residents, businesses, ambulances and other communities. Route permission, timing, traffic control and emergency access therefore become central to public ritual. These administrative mechanisms should not be read automatically as repression or endorsement; they are part of governing shared space. Problems arise when rules are applied unequally, when historical routes are disputed or when rumor turns ordinary coordination into confrontation. Good historical analysis distinguishes documented conflict from routine coexistence and examines the local institutions that resolve everyday friction before it becomes crisis.

137.25 Environmental regulation is changing materials as well as spaces

Idol immersion, plastic decoration, synthetic colour, single-use packaging and temporary structures have environmental consequences. Central and state pollution-control guidance increasingly promotes less toxic materials, designated immersion points and post-event waste management. Chhath raises different but related issues because offerings and very large crowds concentrate around water bodies. These interventions can change craft materials and ritual logistics even when the symbolic sequence remains stable. Environmental governance is therefore one pathway through which public ritual adapts to contemporary ecological pressure.

137.26 COVID-19 exposed how much ritual depends on physical co-presence

The pandemic interruption of 2020–21 made visible the infrastructure normally taken for granted. Restrictions on gatherings, travel and institutional opening reduced or reorganized many public observances, while households and religious institutions experimented with smaller ceremonies, recorded services and livestreaming. The long-term effect was not a general replacement of public ritual by digital religion. Instead, physical gatherings returned while digital layers remained more available than before. COVID-19 thus functions as a historical stress test: it shows which parts of ritual could be relocated to the household or screen and which depended on collective presence at a specific place.

137.27 Public ritual can carry regional identity without being reducible to identity politics

Chhath is widely represented as a marker of Bihar, Vivah Panchami as a marker of Janakpur and Mithila, and local festivals can become emblems of town or language identity. Such associations may strengthen cultural pride and tourism. Yet participants often understand the same ritual primarily as vow, devotion, family obligation or sacred memory rather than as a political statement. Analysts should therefore avoid reading identity politics into every public act. Regional identity is one layer among several, and its salience changes by context, speaker and moment.

137.28 Religious change includes institutional revival, not only conversion or secularization

Public debates often imagine religious change as a movement between affiliation categories or as a linear decline of religion under modernization. The regional evidence suggests a more complex field. Old sites can gain new visitors; household rites can move onto digital platforms; committees can formalize; tourism can restore monuments; migration can finance shrines; and environmental rules can alter materials. None of these necessarily changes census affiliation. Conversely, a stable census share can conceal large changes in

organization and practice. Religious history therefore requires an institutional vocabulary broader than “growth,” “decline” or “conversion.”

137.29 Measurement requires layered evidence and explicit limits

A reliable history of public religion should triangulate five kinds of evidence. Census and survey data establish affiliation; institutional records show organizations and public administration; observation and ethnography show practice; media traces show representation and circulation; historical sources establish change over time. Each has biases. Tourism pages emphasize attractive public culture, police records emphasize management, media emphasize spectacle, and census categories freeze complex identities into a single response. The method must therefore match each claim to the source that can actually support it and leave uncertainty visible where no comparable time series exists.

Evidence architecture for studying religious change and public ritual

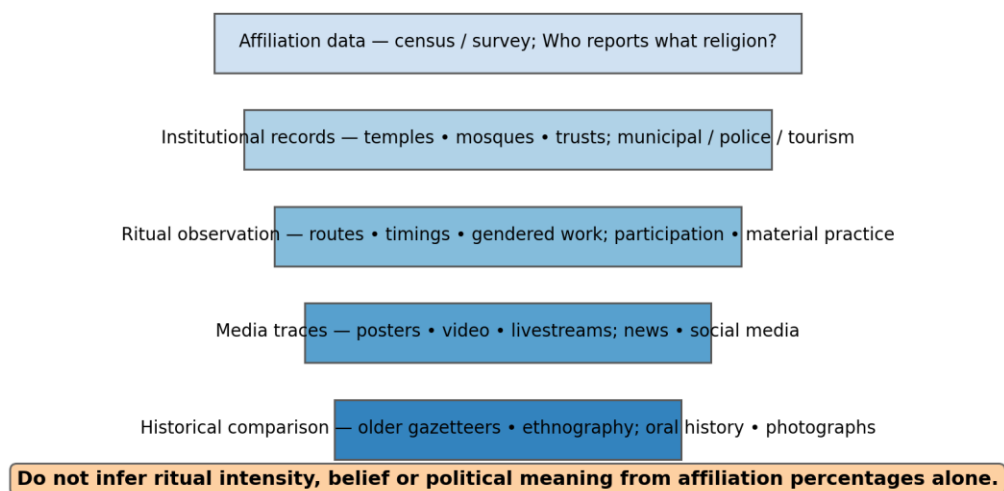


Figure 547 — Evidence architecture for religious change: affiliation data must be combined with institutional records, ritual observation, media traces and historical comparison.

137.30 Conclusion: continuity is being reproduced through new public infrastructures

The contemporary religious history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga is not a simple story of tradition surviving modernity. Ritual continuity is actively reproduced through roads, digital media, associations, remittances, municipal services, environmental regulation and transborder mobility. Chhath remains recognizable while its ghats become engineered civic spaces; Vivah Panchami reenacts sacred marriage while operating through international visitor flows; Muslim, Buddhist, Jain and local devotional institutions inhabit changing towns and media environments. The key historical process is institutional recomposition. Public ritual persists because communities repeatedly adapt the means through which sacred time is made collective.

Table 137.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing religious change and public ritual

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 137	Main limitation
Census of India 2011 C-01 / PCA Religion, Bihar	religious affiliation by state, district, sub- district, town, rural/urban and sex	demographic baseline for the Indian side	2011 is the latest completed Indian religion census; affiliation does not

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 137	Main limitation
			measure practice
Nepal NPHC 2021 / Religion in Nepal	religious affiliation by province and district	current cross-border demographic comparison; Madhesh religious profile	province is not identical to historical Mithila; census affiliation is not ritual intensity
Constitutions of India and Nepal	formal rights and state frameworks concerning religion	legal setting within which public ritual occurs	constitutional text does not describe everyday implementation
Bihar Tourism festival documentation	official description of Chhath and other state-promoted festivals	ritual sequence and state heritage/tourism framing	promotional source; not attendance or belief survey
Nepal Tourism Board: Janakpur / Vivah Panchami	official description of festival, sacred sites and cross-border visitors	Janakpur's ritual calendar and transborder publicness	tourism framing emphasizes visitor experience
Municipal / police / district administration records	routes, permissions, sanitation, traffic, security and temporary works	institutional infrastructure of mass ritual	records may foreground management problems over ordinary experience
Pollution-control / noise rules and guidance	regulation of amplification, immersion, waste and water-related impacts	environmental governance of public ritual	formal rules may be unevenly implemented locally
Temple, mosque, shrine, monastery and committee records	institutional organization, finance and event calendars	organizational history of public religion	survival and accessibility vary; institutional self-presentation can be selective
Ethnography / oral history / participant observation	gendered labour, meaning, participation, local memory and boundary-making	lived practice beyond affiliation statistics	local and time-specific; not automatically generalizable
Photographs, newspapers and social media	visual form, routes, publicity, digital extension and changing spectacle	tracks public representation and media transformation	selection bias; viral visibility is not representative participation
Historical gazetteers / travel accounts / earlier studies	older descriptions of sites, fairs, festivals and institutions	comparison across time	terminology and observer assumptions require critical reading

Chapter 138 — Caste in Contemporary Society

Chapter 138 examines caste as a contemporary social institution rather than as an unchanged survival from the past. Caste can shape marriage choices, neighbourhood relations, land access, political organization, educational trajectories, occupational networks and claims on the state, but none of those outcomes follows automatically from a person's jati or administrative category. Modern constitutional rights, migration, schooling, markets, affirmative action, urbanization and digital communication have changed the settings in which caste is reproduced and contested. The chapter therefore rejects two opposite simplifications: that caste has disappeared under modernity, and that every social or political behaviour can be explained by caste alone. The useful historical question is how caste operates through institutions, and how those institutions have changed across Mithila, Vajji, Anga and the India–Nepal borderland.

The evidence is unusually rich but methodologically difficult. Bihar's 2022–23 Caste-Based Survey produced a recent state-wide enumeration of caste and broad social categories together with a separate socio-economic report, while Census 2011 remains the last completed all-India census baseline for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes at district, sub-district, town and village levels. Nepal's National Population and Housing Census 2021 records caste/ethnicity through a different classification system, including Madhesh/Tarai castes, Madhesh/Tarai Dalits, Tarai Janajatis, Hill castes and religious/linguistic groups. Those categories are not equivalents of Bihar's Backward Class, Extremely Backward Class, Scheduled Caste, Scheduled Tribe and general/unreserved categories. Cross-border comparison must therefore compare institutions and outcomes without pretending that the legal-statistical taxonomies are interchangeable.

138.1 Caste is contemporary because institutions keep remaking it

Caste persists through repeated decisions and organizational routines rather than through an unchanging social script. A marriage broker asks about family and jati; a political party weighs local social coalitions; a student applies under a legally defined reservation category; a village dispute may turn on land, status and kinship; a migrant uses a hometown network to find work; and an association may mobilize around education, hostels, scholarships or symbolic recognition. Each activity is modern in form even when it draws on older social boundaries. Caste is therefore best understood as institutional reproduction under changing conditions. The same category can lose importance in one domain and gain it in another. Education may reduce dependence on hereditary occupation while competitive examinations increase the salience of administrative caste certificates. Urban anonymity may weaken village surveillance while digital groups make caste associations easier to organize across distance. Contemporary change is not a single movement from caste to castelessness; it is a redistribution of where caste matters.

138.2 Jati, social category and legal status are different analytical objects

Everyday jati names, broad survey categories and constitutional reservation categories should not be collapsed into one vocabulary. Jati is a social identity that may be localized, internally segmented and historically variable. Bihar's Caste-Based Survey groups people for administrative summary into Backward Class, Extremely Backward Class, Scheduled Caste, Scheduled Tribe and general/unreserved categories, but those umbrella categories contain many communities with different occupations, assets, histories and political trajectories. Scheduled Caste and Scheduled Tribe status derive from constitutional schedules; backward-class lists are governed through separate legal and administrative processes. A historian must therefore state which level is being analysed. A percentage for a broad category cannot be used to describe

every jati inside it, and an administrative label cannot by itself establish lived status in a village, town or profession.

Caste in contemporary society: an interacting institutional system

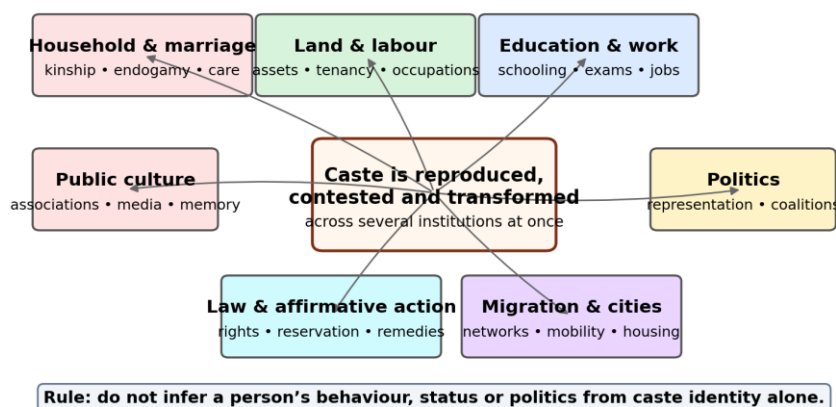


Figure 548 — Contemporary caste is produced and contested across interacting institutions rather than operating as a single autonomous hierarchy.

138.3 Bihar's 2022–23 Caste-Based Survey changed the evidentiary landscape

The Bihar survey was politically consequential because it supplied recent state-wide population counts by caste after decades in which public discussion relied on older censuses, sample surveys, electoral inference and category-level administrative records. The state reported a total population of 130,725,310 and released the first caste and social-category findings on 2 October 2023, followed by a socio-economic report tabled in the legislature on 7 November 2023. The survey recorded caste, education, income, occupation, migration and other household information. Its significance is not that it ends debate. Survey design, self-reporting, classification choices, non-public microdata and the distinction between enumeration and causal explanation remain important limitations. Its value is that claims about Bihar's contemporary social composition can now be tied to a dated administrative exercise rather than to impressionistic estimates.

138.4 The broad Bihar profile shows why “upper” and “backward” cannot be treated as small margins

At the broad category level, the Bihar survey reported Extremely Backward Classes at 36.0148 percent of the population, Backward Classes at 27.1286 percent, Scheduled Castes at 19.6518 percent, Scheduled Tribes at 1.6824 percent and the general/unreserved category at 15.5224 percent. The first analytical lesson is demographic: BC and EBC together form nearly two-thirds of the state population. The second lesson is methodological: demographic share does not itself reveal economic position, political power, educational achievement or representation in public employment. Those outcomes have to be measured separately. The third lesson is geographical. These are state-wide figures for Bihar, not a direct demographic map of Mithila, Vajji or Anga. District and sub-district variation remains essential, especially because the historical regions do not coincide with a single modern administrative boundary.

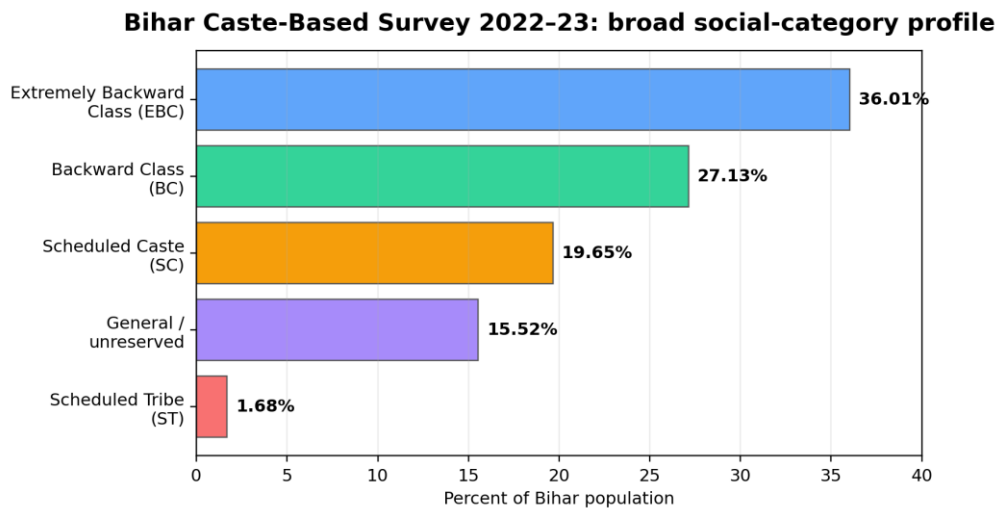


Figure 549 — Bihar Caste-Based Survey 2022–23: broad social categories as a share of the state population; rounded state-wide figures, not a direct map of Mithila, Vajji or Anga.

138.5 The socio-economic report shows inequality across broad categories, not a single caste ladder

The second survey release makes it impossible to equate social category mechanically with prosperity. Using a state-defined threshold of family monthly income up to ₹6,000, the report classified 34.13 percent of Bihar's families as poor. The broad-category poverty shares were 25.09 percent in the general category, 33.16 percent among Backward Classes, 33.58 percent among Extremely Backward Classes, 42.93 percent among Scheduled Castes and 42.70 percent among Scheduled Tribes. These differences are large and socially important, but they do not mean that every household in one category is better or worse off than every household in another. Poverty also exists within the general category, and substantial non-poor populations exist within disadvantaged categories. The correct interpretation is distributional: historical disadvantage remains visible in aggregate outcomes while class differentiation cuts across caste.

138.6 Within-category heterogeneity is a central fact, not statistical noise

Broad categories can conceal inequality among the communities they aggregate. Some jatis have accumulated land, education, public employment or political organization more effectively than others; some remain concentrated in insecure labour or poorly serviced settlements; and others display sharp internal class differentiation. The Bihar socio-economic report itself published caste-wise information, but category averages remain useful only as a first layer. For Mithila, Vajji and Anga, local history can be especially important because the same jati may occupy different economic positions in different districts, irrigation regimes or market corridors. A community connected to a commercial town, a migration route or a specialized craft economy may follow a different trajectory from members of the same broad category elsewhere. Caste analysis must therefore combine category-level statistics with locality, occupation, landholding, gender and migration.

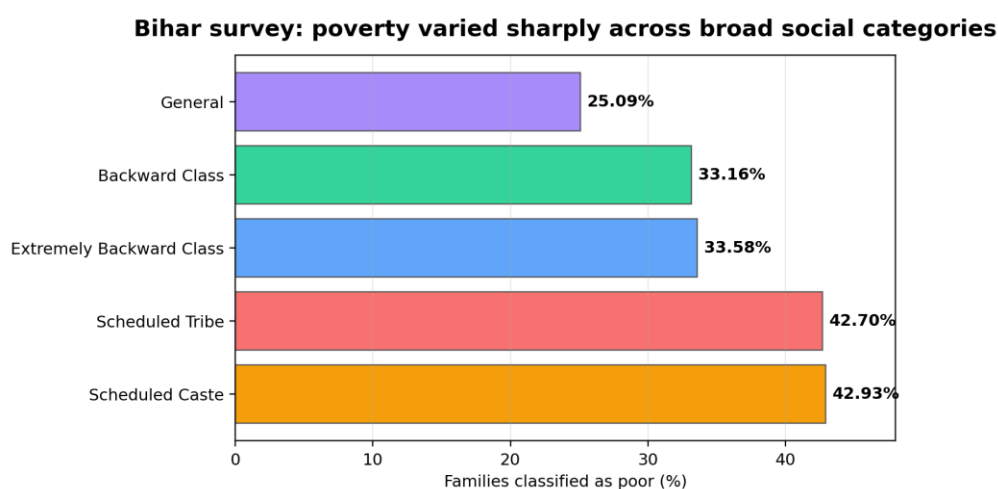


Figure 550 — Bihar survey poverty shares by broad social category; survey-defined poor means family monthly income up to ₹6,000, and the descriptive association is not a causal hierarchy.

138.7 Land remains one of the strongest links between caste and material power

Land connects social status to food security, credit, housing, political influence and the ability to absorb shocks. Yet land relations are more complicated than inherited stereotypes of “landowning” and “landless” castes. Bihar’s agrarian structure is dominated by very small holdings, fragmented parcels, informal leasing and migration-linked cultivation. Members of historically dominant landholding communities can be poor or own only small plots; members of historically disadvantaged communities can acquire land through purchase, reform, migration earnings or state programmes. What remains unequal is the distribution of secure, productive and well-located land and the bargaining power attached to it. Contemporary caste history should therefore ask who owns, who leases, who cultivates, who supplies labour, who controls irrigation and who can use land as collateral. Cadastral records, agricultural censuses and local surveys are more informative than caste reputation alone.

138.8 Occupational change weakens hereditary closure without erasing network effects

The movement from hereditary occupation to diversified work is one of the clearest forms of social change. Agricultural labourers enter construction, transport and services; artisan families pursue education and salaried employment; migrants work in factories, logistics and hospitality; and public-sector recruitment creates occupations that have no traditional caste analogue. Even so, networks can remain caste-inflected. Job information, apprenticeships, labour contractors, credit and accommodation often circulate through relatives and co-villagers, and these networks may overlap with jati. Such overlap should not be confused with a fixed occupational essence. The same network can facilitate mobility away from a stigmatized occupation. A contemporary account must therefore distinguish occupational inheritance from network-based recruitment, and it must recognize that migration can both loosen local hierarchy and reproduce social clustering at destination.

138.9 Education changes caste relations by changing the resources through which status is claimed

Schooling and higher education create credentials that can compete with inherited status, while also becoming new arenas of unequal access. Chapter 134 showed large expansion in girls’ education and

continuing differences in employment outcomes. Caste adds another layer: school quality, parental education, ability to finance coaching, access to hostels, language proficiency and digital resources affect who converts formal enrolment into competitive advantage. Scholarships, reserved seats and targeted welfare can widen access, but their effects depend on information, documentation and institutional quality. First-generation students may enter colleges without the cultural or financial resources available to established professional families. The relevant question is not whether education “abolishes” caste. It is whether educational institutions reduce inherited disparities, create new class divisions within castes, and enable identities based on profession and achievement to coexist with or displace older hierarchies.

138.10 Public employment makes caste simultaneously a social identity and a documentary category

Reservation in public employment and education transforms caste into a legally documented administrative status. Certificates, lists, non-creamy-layer rules where applicable, roster systems and recruitment categories become part of everyday state interaction. This can intensify the visibility of caste even as the policy objective is to remedy historical exclusion. The Bihar survey reported large differences in public-employment participation across communities and categories, but those figures should not be read as a direct measure of discrimination or merit. Recruitment reflects education, age structure, urban access, historical entry into services, exam preparation, reservation, migration and the size of the eligible population. A sound analysis separates three questions: whether a group is historically disadvantaged, whether it is adequately represented in a particular service, and whether a specific recruitment process complies with law.

138.11 Bihar’s 2023 reservation increase demonstrates the constitutional limits of demographic arithmetic

After the caste survey, Bihar amended its reservation laws in 2023 to raise the combined reservation for BC, EBC, SC and ST in public employment and educational admissions from 50 percent to 65 percent, apart from the separate EWS framework. On 20 June 2024, the Patna High Court in *Gaurav Kumar v. State of Bihar* set aside the amendments, holding that the increase could not be justified simply by population proportions and emphasizing the constitutional distinction between proportionate and adequate representation. On 29 July 2024, the Supreme Court granted leave in the State’s appeal but refused interim relief at that stage. This chapter does not invent a later final disposition where the publicly located record does not establish one. The episode is historically important because it shows how new caste data immediately entered a constitutional debate about equality, backwardness, representation and the 50-percent rule.

138.12 Local government makes representation visible at village and town scale

Panchayat and municipal reservations move caste representation from abstract constitutional debate into local institutions. Bihar State Election Commission tables for the 2021 Panchayat elections record reserved positions for Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes, Backward Classes and women across ward membership, mukhiya, panchayat samiti, zila parishad, panch and sarpanch posts. Reserved office can open political careers to groups previously excluded from formal authority, but election does not automatically eliminate social dependence, financial inequality or proxy control. Nor should one assume that a representative speaks for a homogeneous caste bloc. Local governance is where caste intersects most directly with roads, drainage, welfare lists, schools, housing schemes and dispute mediation. The historically meaningful question is whether representation changes resource allocation, administrative access and the social legitimacy of office, not simply how many reserved seats exist.

138.13 Gender changes the meaning of caste because women often carry boundary-making work

Caste reproduction is deeply gendered. Marriage rules, family honour, inheritance, residence after marriage, care work and control over sexuality have historically placed much of the practical enforcement of group boundaries on women's lives. Contemporary education, migration, legal rights and women's employment alter these arrangements, but not uniformly. A woman may gain a degree and salaried work while still facing strong constraints on partner choice; she may hold a reserved local-government office while male relatives manage public interaction; or migration may leave her with greater farm responsibility without formal land title. Intersectional analysis is therefore necessary. "Women" are not one caste-neutral category, and "caste" is not experienced independently of gender, class, age and marital status.

138.14 Marriage remains one of the most durable sites of caste reproduction, but its mechanisms are changing

Chapter 133 showed how marriage practices are changing through education, delayed marriage, digital matchmaking, migration and legal registration. Caste remains salient because marriage links households, property, ritual networks and social reputation. Endogamy can persist even when occupation and residence become highly mobile. Yet the process of arranging marriage is changing: matrimonial websites, WhatsApp networks, diaspora associations and university contacts expand the search radius while allowing families to filter by caste more efficiently. Conversely, education and urban interaction create opportunities for inter-caste relationships and marriages. The coexistence of these tendencies explains why modern communication does not necessarily reduce caste boundaries. Technology can widen individual choice and strengthen categorical sorting at the same time.

138.15 Urbanization changes the spatial form of caste more reliably than it eliminates caste

In cities and expanding district towns, occupational diversity and rental housing can weaken the dense surveillance of village hierarchy. Neighbours may know one another first through profession, school, apartment or workplace rather than lineage. But urban land markets, neighbourhood reputation, informal brokerage and social networks can reproduce clustering. Caste associations may become more formal in towns through hostels, community halls, welfare trusts and annual gatherings. The result is not simply persistence or decline but spatial transformation: practices once tied to village settlement may reappear as voluntary association, electoral networking or matrimonial organization. Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur, Patna-linked corridors and Janakpur all create urban settings in which caste interacts with class, education and migration in new combinations.

138.16 Migration can loosen everyday hierarchy while making origin networks economically valuable

Large-scale migration from Bihar and Nepal changes caste relations because people leave the institutions that once enforced local status. In destination cities, employers may care more about skill, contractor networks or willingness to accept particular work than about village rank. Workers from different castes share worksites and transport; students share hostels and coaching centres. At the same time, origin networks can become valuable precisely because migrants need trusted contacts for jobs, rooms, loans and emergency support. These networks may follow village, kin, religion, language or caste lines. Migration therefore does not have one predictable effect. It can create new solidarities across caste, expose migrants to new forms of

discrimination, or turn caste networks into practical social capital. Return migration can then bring new expectations back to the village.

138.17 Digital media has created caste publics that are larger, faster and more archival

Chapter 136 showed how social media expands regional-language publics. Caste associations, commemorations, recruitment networks and political campaigns now circulate through the same platforms. Historical figures are claimed, genealogies simplified, conference speeches clipped into short videos and local disputes amplified beyond their original setting. Digital media can support anti-discrimination organizing and educational mutual aid, but it can also intensify stereotyping, abuse and misinformation. A viral post should never be treated as evidence of a whole community's view. Digital caste history therefore requires source criticism: identify the account, audience, platform incentives, date, editing and offline organization behind the post. The scale of visibility is new; the representativeness of that visibility is not guaranteed.

138.18 Caste associations have shifted from ritual status claims toward education, welfare and lobbying

Associational life is one of the clearest bridges between older community organization and modern civil society. Community bodies may run hostels, scholarships, marriage networks, conferences, legal-aid funds, temples or memorial projects. They may lobby for inclusion in backward-class lists, sub-categorization, welfare schemes or symbolic recognition. Such organizations can produce social capital and educational opportunity, but they can also harden boundaries by presenting internally diverse populations as unified political constituencies. The historian should therefore examine what an association actually does, who funds it, who participates, how leadership is selected and whether benefits reach poorer members. The existence of an organization does not prove that its claims represent every person who shares the label.

138.19 Dalit assertion has transformed the public vocabulary of dignity and rights

The post-independence expansion of constitutional rights, education, reservation, political representation and Ambedkarite public culture has changed how caste subordination can be named and contested. Dalit organizations, student groups, elected representatives, writers and local activists frame exclusion as a question of rights rather than custom. This matters historically even where discrimination persists, because the legitimate public vocabulary has changed. Practices once defended as traditional can now be challenged through Article 17, the Protection of Civil Rights Act, the Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes (Prevention of Atrocities) Act, administrative complaints, electoral mobilization and media exposure. The transformation is not complete, but it alters the balance between social coercion and legal claim-making.

138.20 Untouchability is constitutionally abolished, but legal abolition and social practice must be studied separately

Article 17 of the Indian Constitution abolishes untouchability, and the Protection of Civil Rights Act, 1955 criminalizes disabilities arising from its practice. The existence of these norms is a foundational change from earlier social orders. Yet law cannot be used as evidence that discrimination has vanished, just as reported offences cannot be treated as a direct measure of the total prevalence of discrimination. Access to temples, water, burial grounds, schools, rental housing, barber shops, eating places and social ceremonies can

vary by locality. Researchers need complaints, court records, fieldwork and institutional observation, while protecting the dignity and safety of affected people. The analytical standard should be precise: identify the practice, location, institution and evidence rather than describing an entire district or caste through an unverified allegation.

138.21 The SC/ST Prevention of Atrocities Act creates a specialized rights-and-remedy framework

The Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes (Prevention of Atrocities) Act, 1989, with later amendments and rules, recognizes that some offences involve caste-based domination and therefore require specific offences, special courts, relief, rehabilitation and victim-witness protections. For contemporary history, the Act is evidence of institutional recognition that formal equality alone is insufficient. Court and police statistics can reveal patterns of reporting and processing, but they cannot by themselves establish the true incidence of violence: reporting propensity, policing, legal awareness, charge-sheeting and court capacity all affect the numbers. Legal data should therefore be used to analyse state response as well as social conflict, with careful distinction between allegation, charge and conviction.

138.22 Caste and religion intersect, but neither can be reduced to the other

The region's Hindu, Muslim, Buddhist, Jain, Christian and other communities contain distinct histories of social stratification. Hindu caste categories cannot simply be transferred to every religious setting, and religious affiliation does not erase all inherited occupational or status distinctions. Conversion, reform and sectarian membership may challenge older hierarchies while family and marriage networks persist. The correct approach is empirical and tradition-specific. Census religion tables, caste survey categories, local histories and ethnography answer different questions. This is especially important in border regions where the same language community may contain multiple religions and where administrative categories differ between India and Nepal.

138.23 Muslim social stratification should be analysed on its own historical terms

Bihar's caste survey enumerated numerous Muslim communities within its caste list, showing that social differentiation among Muslims is administratively visible in the state. Scholars often use terms such as ashraf, ajlaf and arzal to discuss South Asian Muslim stratification, but these are historical analytical categories rather than a simple mirror of Hindu varna. Occupation, lineage claims, region, sect, class and marriage networks can all matter. A contemporary history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga should therefore avoid two errors: assuming that Islam produces a socially undifferentiated population, and assuming that Muslim hierarchy is identical in structure or meaning to Hindu caste. The same caution applies to other religious communities.

138.24 Nepal's caste/ethnicity census framework is not a translation of Bihar's reservation categories

Nepal's 2021 census classifies the national population into broad groupings that include Hill castes, Madhesh/Tarai castes, Hill Dalits, Madhesh/Tarai Dalits, Mountain/Hill Janajatis, Tarai Janajatis, religious/linguistic groups and others. Nationally, the census counted 4.68 million people in Madhesh/Tarai caste groups and 1.39 million in Madhesh/Tarai Dalit groups, but province-level composition is different from the national distribution. These labels reflect Nepal's own history of caste, ethnicity, indigeneity, regional identity and inclusion policy. They cannot be mapped one-to-one onto Bihar's BC, EBC, SC and

ST categories. Cross-border kinship may connect communities with similar names, but legal status, reservation eligibility and census coding remain state-specific.

138.25 Madhesh housing data shows material inequality without converting census groups into causes

Nepal's NPHC 2021 Housing and Household thematic report provides an unusually concrete measure of inequality in Madhesh Province. Across all Madhesh households, 44.4 percent were classified as living in pakki housing and 31.9 percent in kachchi housing. Among Madhesh/Tarai caste households, the corresponding shares were 49.3 and 28.8 percent; among Tarai Janajati households, 41.3 and 33.8 percent; and among Madhesh/Tarai Dalit households, 27.2 percent were pakki and 44.0 percent kachchi. Religious/linguistic-group households recorded 50.9 percent pakki and 28.0 percent kachchi. These are strong descriptive inequalities, but housing type is shaped by income, location, land tenure, remittances, urbanization and disaster exposure as well as social exclusion. The data should support questions, not deterministic explanations.

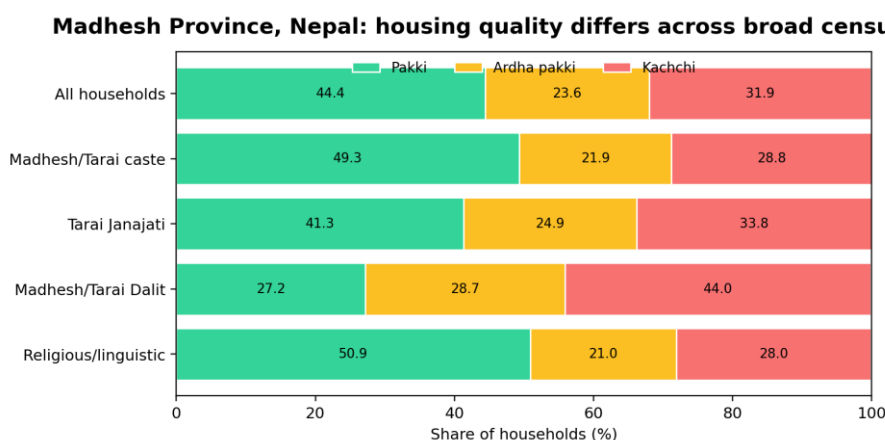


Figure 551 — Madhesh Province housing quality by selected broad caste/ethnicity categories in Nepal's NPHC 2021; the classifications are descriptive and are not equivalent to Bihar's reservation categories.

138.26 Nepal's constitutional inclusion framework links caste inequality to citizenship and representation

The Constitution of Nepal, 2015, embeds equality, social justice and specific Dalit rights within a federal political order. Article 40 provides rights relating to Dalits, while Article 42 addresses social justice and participation for groups that have experienced exclusion. These provisions make caste and ethnicity matters of constitutional citizenship rather than private custom alone. Implementation occurs through public-service recruitment, elected representation, education, welfare and federal, provincial and local institutions, and the details can vary across sectors. For Madhesh, this is especially important because caste inequality intersects with regional identity, language, citizenship history and the politics of federalism. A category may be disadvantaged through more than one institutional pathway, so analysis should not isolate caste from the wider inclusion regime.

138.27 Cross-border kinship connects social worlds while national law assigns different categories

India–Nepal marriage, pilgrimage, labour and market networks mean that families can recognize similar jati names across the border. Yet the legal consequences of those identities differ. A community listed as an

OBC, EBC or SC in Bihar does not thereby acquire an equivalent status in Nepal, and a Nepal census category or inclusion entitlement has no automatic force in India. This distinction matters for education, recruitment, certificates and welfare. It also matters historically: cross-border cultural continuity should not be used to invent a single transnational caste bureaucracy. The borderland is socially connected and administratively plural. Good regional history holds both facts at once.

138.28 Contemporary caste labels must not be projected backward as timeless medieval sub-castes

This volume has repeatedly separated later social classifications from the periods to which they are sometimes retroactively assigned. The rule is especially important for Mithila's genealogical traditions. Present-day or early-modern Maithil Brahmin sub-classifications, including the historically late consolidation of Śrotiṛya as a distinct sub-caste around the turn of the nineteenth century in the evidence used for this project, must not be treated as fixed medieval categories. The same principle applies more generally: a caste name recorded in a 2023 survey does not prove that the category had identical boundaries, rank or meaning centuries earlier. Contemporary data are indispensable for contemporary society; they are not a licence to rewrite medieval social history backwards.

138.29 Measurement requires an evidence architecture rather than a caste master-variable

A rigorous contemporary caste history should triangulate at least six kinds of evidence. Population and caste surveys establish self-reported identity and broad demographic shares. Socio-economic surveys show income, education, work and assets. Land and housing records reveal material position. Election and recruitment data show representation in specific institutions. Legal records establish rights, disputes and state response. Ethnography and oral history show how categories are experienced and negotiated. Each source has limits: survey categories can be coarse; administrative data reflect eligibility rules; court records capture litigated conflicts; and ethnography is local. The analytical discipline is to ask the same question across different sources and preserve disagreement rather than forcing every dataset into one hierarchy.

138.30 Conclusion: caste persists through unequal institutions, but the institutions are changing

Caste remains consequential in contemporary Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh because it is embedded in marriage, property, networks, political representation and state categories. Yet it is not a frozen remnant. Mass schooling, reservation, migration, local democracy, urban growth, rights law, women's education, digital communication and new labour markets continually alter the resources through which caste is reproduced and challenged. Bihar's caste survey makes social composition and inequality more measurable; Nepal's 2021 census shows a different but equally structured caste/ethnicity field; and both sides demonstrate why cross-border comparison requires methodological caution. The central finding is therefore neither "caste is disappearing" nor "caste explains everything." Contemporary caste is a changing architecture of unequal opportunities, collective identities and legal claims whose effects vary by institution, locality, gender and class.

Table 138.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing caste in contemporary society

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 138	Main limitation
Bihar Caste-Based Survey 2022–23	recent caste/social-category population; income, education, occupation and migration	demographic and socio-economic baseline for Bihar	self-reported state exercise; category design and unpublished microdata limit causal analysis
Census of India 2011 PCA / SC-ST tables	SC/ST population to district, sub-district, town and village level	local spatial baseline on the Indian side	does not enumerate all castes; 2011 is dated
Bihar State Election Commission, Panchayat 2021	reserved posts and elected representation by category	local political representation	office-holding does not equal social or economic power
Patna High Court 2024 + Supreme Court order 29 July 2024	legal status and constitutional dispute over Bihar 65% reservation amendments	reservation law and judicial reasoning	procedural posture must not be mistaken for a later final judgment
Protection of Civil Rights Act 1955; SC/ST PoA Act 1989	formal legal prohibitions, offences and remedies	rights framework and state response	legal cases measure reported and processed conflict, not full prevalence
PLFS / NFHS / NSS and education data	employment, education, health and household outcomes with limited social-group variables	cross-check social inequality	sampling and category definitions differ from caste survey
Nepal NPHC 2021 Population Composition	caste/ethnicity distribution under Nepal's classification	Madhesh and national social composition	not equivalent to Bihar BC/EBC/SC/ST categories
Nepal NPHC 2021 Housing & Household report	housing quality by broad caste/ethnicity and province	material inequality in Madhesh	descriptive association; housing also reflects income, location and remittances
Constitution of Nepal 2015 and inclusion institutions	equality, Dalit rights, social justice and participation	formal inclusion framework	rights on paper do not directly measure implementation
Ethnography, oral history, local archives and media	lived boundaries, marriage, networks, discrimination and assertion	mechanisms and change over time	local studies are not automatically representative of the whole region

Chapter 139 — Madhesh, Federalism and Social Citizenship

Chapter 139 examines federalism through the everyday institutions that make citizenship usable. Madhesh was central to Nepal's transition from a unitary state because movements in the Tarai-Madhesh linked regional identity and political inclusion to demands for state restructuring. The Constitution of 2015 created a three-tier federal democratic republic, and the eight districts from Saptari to Parsa now form Madhesh Province with Janakpur as its capital and 136 constitutionally recognized local governments. Yet a province is not social citizenship by itself. Rights become real through citizenship certificates, birth registration, schools, health services, social-security payments, language access, elected representation, budgets and grievance mechanisms. The chapter therefore asks not simply whether federalism exists, but how federal institutions alter the relationship between households and the state.

The subject requires careful separation of legal levels and evidence types. Citizenship is a federal legal status; civil registration is a local administrative function; social protection combines federal financing and rules with local identification and bank delivery; education and health involve overlapping responsibilities; and provincial autonomy depends heavily on intergovernmental fiscal transfers. The chapter also distinguishes Madhesh as a province from historical Mithila and from the wider Tarai. Madhesh Province contains Maithili, Bhojpur, Bajjika, Nepali, Urdu, Tharu and other linguistic and social populations and cannot be treated as a single caste, language or political constituency. The analysis uses constitutional texts, current amended citizenship law, provincial administrative records, Census 2011, fiscal-federalism studies and service-delivery evidence rather than assuming that political recognition automatically produces equal outcomes.

139.1 Federalism is a question of social citizenship, not only territorial design

Federalism matters to ordinary life when it changes who can decide, who can be reached, and who can be held responsible for public action. In Madhesh, the 2015 constitutional order did more than draw a provincial boundary. It created a provincial government and strengthened constitutionally recognized local governments that now participate in education, health, roads, agriculture, civil registration, local taxation, social protection administration and cultural policy. Social citizenship is therefore wider than nationality. It includes the practical ability to register a birth, obtain documents, attend school, use health services, receive an allowance, speak to an office in an understandable language, vote, seek information and challenge an arbitrary decision. Federalism can shorten the distance between citizen and state, but it can also multiply offices and jurisdictional uncertainty. The relevant test is not whether three tiers exist on paper; it is whether people can navigate them and whether responsibility is clear when a service fails.

139.2 Madhesh is central to Nepal's federal question because demands for inclusion preceded the province

The federal map cannot be understood without the political history that preceded it. During and after the 2006 democratic transition, Madheshi movements challenged a state structure widely perceived in the plains as centralized and insufficiently representative of Madheshi identities, languages and interests. The 2007 movement helped make federal restructuring an unavoidable national agenda, while later disputes concerned electoral representation, provincial boundaries, inclusion and citizenship. These movements were internally diverse: parties, caste groups, Dalits, Muslims, Tharus, women, linguistic communities and local

elites did not always define Madhesh or political priorities in the same way. A regional history should therefore avoid turning ‘Madhesh’ into a single political subject. The historical significance lies in the shift of the constitutional vocabulary itself—from administration by a unitary centre toward federalism, proportional inclusion and territorially grounded subnational government.

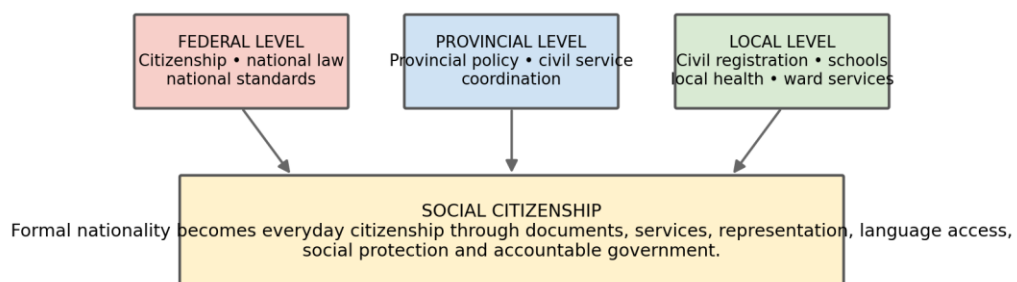
139.3 The 2015 Constitution created three constitutionally recognized levels of government

Nepal’s Constitution of 2015 institutionalized a federal democratic republic with federal, provincial and local levels. The change was structural because local government was no longer merely a delegated administrative extension of Kathmandu. Constitutional schedules allocate exclusive and concurrent competences across the tiers, while intergovernmental fiscal arrangements finance many functions through revenue sharing and grants. The resulting system is neither a simple hierarchy nor a loose federation. Federal law and national standards remain decisive in areas such as citizenship, foreign affairs and major taxation; provinces exercise policy and administrative responsibilities assigned to them; and local levels provide many services closest to households. Overlap is unavoidable in education, health, agriculture, roads, water, disaster management and social protection. The quality of federalism therefore depends on coordination, legal clarity and administrative capacity as much as on constitutional boundaries.

139.4 The federal settlement answered some Madhesh demands while leaving other disputes alive

Federalization created an institutional space in which the eight districts from Saptari to Parsa could be governed as one province, later known as Madhesh Province, with Janakpurdham as its capital. This was a major transformation from the earlier unitary structure. Yet the 2015 constitutional settlement was also contested. Madheshi and Tharu parties and activists raised objections concerning provincial boundaries, representation, citizenship and inclusion, while supporters of the constitution emphasized its elected origin, federal architecture and broad set of fundamental rights. Both facts belong in the historical record: the constitution was a democratic milestone and also a disputed settlement. The subsequent decade should therefore be studied not as the end of the Madhesh question but as a new institutional phase in which claims once directed almost entirely at the central state are also negotiated through provincial assemblies, municipalities, courts, commissions and fiscal systems.

Federalism as a social-citizenship architecture



The three tiers are distinct, but service outcomes depend on coordination among them.

Figure 552 — Federalism as a three-tier social-citizenship architecture: rights and services become usable through coordination among federal, provincial and local institutions.

139.5 A province creates a new arena of political responsibility

Before federalization, many decisions affecting the Tarai were filtered through central ministries and district administration. The provincial level creates an additional elected arena with a chief minister, council of ministers, provincial assembly, ministries, laws, budget and civil service. It can frame regionally specific priorities in agriculture, roads, tourism, education, culture, industry and social development within constitutional limits. This matters symbolically as well as administratively: Janakpurdhama is not only a religious and cultural centre but also a capital where provincial political claims are made visible. At the same time, a province cannot guarantee autonomy merely by existing. It needs predictable finances, personnel, legal competence and the ability to implement budgets. The distance between constitutional authority and administrative capacity is therefore one of the central themes of post-2015 Madhesh.

139.6 Madhesh Province consists of eight districts and 136 local governments

Official provincial sources describe Madhesh as comprising Saptari, Siraha, Dhanusha, Mahottari, Sarlahi, Rautahat, Bara and Parsa. Within them are 136 local levels: one metropolitan city, three sub-metropolitan cities, seventy-three municipalities and fifty-nine rural municipalities. This matters because many experiences of federalism occur at the ward or municipal office rather than the provincial capital. A birth is registered locally; a local road may be built by a municipality; school management and basic health services involve local institutions; social-security beneficiaries interact with ward offices and banks. The scale also creates coordination problems. A province with 136 local governments does not have one local administrative reality. Capacity, revenue, staffing, digital connectivity and political competition differ sharply between Birgunj, Janakpurdhama, district towns and rural municipalities.

139.7 Electoral federalism multiplies representative channels

The province has thirty-two constituencies for the federal House of Representatives and sixty-four first-past-the-post constituencies for the Provincial Assembly, in addition to proportional-representation seats created under electoral law. Local governments add mayors or chairs, deputies, ward chairs and councillors. The multiplication of electoral arenas can widen access to politics and create new leadership careers. It can also produce complex accountability: a citizen may ask a federal member, provincial member, mayor and ward chair about the same road or school even when formal responsibility belongs primarily to one tier. Federalism therefore increases representation more reliably than it increases clarity. Political education requires citizens and representatives alike to understand the assignment of functions, budgets and legal powers.

139.8 Proportional inclusion is a constitutional principle, not a synonym for demographic proportionality in every institution

Nepal's constitutional order links equality and social justice to proportional inclusion of groups historically excluded from state structures, including Madheshis, Dalits, women, indigenous nationalities, Tharus, Muslims and others identified in constitutional and statutory frameworks. Electoral design, party lists and public-service rules operationalize inclusion in different ways. These mechanisms should not be described as if every institution must reproduce population shares mechanically. They are legal techniques for broadening representation within specific rules. Their effectiveness must be evaluated by who actually enters decision-making positions, which portfolios they control, whether internal party selection is open, and

whether descriptive representation changes public priorities. Inclusion is therefore both a numerical and an institutional question.

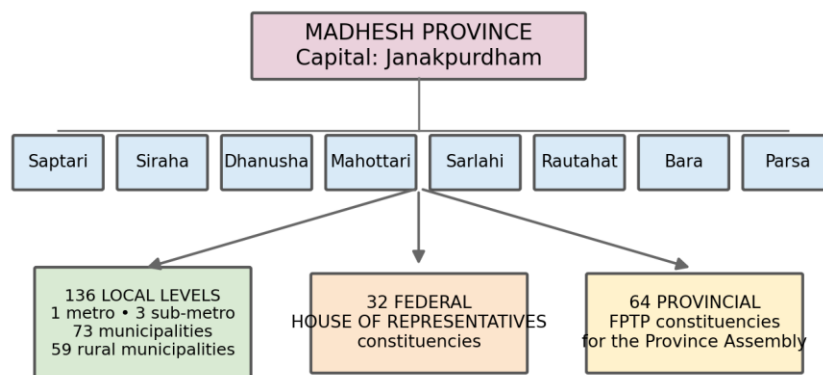
139.9 Local federalism has expanded women's formal political presence

Nepal's local electoral design reserves positions and structures candidacy rules in ways that have brought very large numbers of women into municipal and ward government. In Madhesh this creates a new political infrastructure for women who previously encountered strong barriers to elected office. Formal presence, however, does not automatically equal substantive power. Deputy positions can be marginalized, party leadership may remain male dominated, household responsibilities constrain time, and caste or class inequalities shape whose voice carries weight. The historically important change is that women's participation is now embedded in routine local institutions rather than depending only on exceptional leaders. The next analytical step is to examine budgets, committee leadership, administrative access and policy outcomes rather than counting seats alone.

139.10 Federal institutions can widen representation while reproducing social inequalities inside the represented groups

Madhesh is internally differentiated by caste, class, religion, language, gender, rural–urban location and landholding. A politics that increases representation of Madheshis at the national level can still leave Dalits, poor women, landless households or smaller linguistic communities underrepresented within Madhesh. The same applies to Muslim, Tharu and caste-based constituencies: no umbrella category is socially homogeneous. Federalism therefore shifts the scale at which inequality must be examined. Representation of a province in Kathmandu and representation within the province are separate questions. A socially grounded account asks who reaches party lists, public employment, school management committees, cooperatives, municipal contracts and welfare offices—not merely whether a regional identity has achieved institutional recognition.

Madhesh Province: the post-federal administrative field



Administrative numbers describe institutions, not the historical boundaries of Mithila or a single cultural identity.

Figure 553 — Madhesh Province’s post-federal administrative field: eight districts, 136 local levels, 32 federal constituencies and 64 provincial first-past-the-post constituencies.

139.11 Citizenship documents connect constitutional nationality to everyday rights

Citizenship in Nepal has unusually visible documentary consequences. A citizenship certificate is commonly required for voting registration, passports, many forms of higher education or public employment, formal property and financial transactions, and access to other identity documents. In Madhesh, where cross-border marriage and family networks are extensive, questions of descent, parentage and nationality have therefore carried immediate social effects. The historian must distinguish three levels: the constitutional definition of citizenship, the statutory procedures for obtaining a certificate, and the administrative practice through which district or local offices verify documents. Difficulties at any one level can turn a formal constitutional entitlement into delayed education, employment, banking or political participation.

139.12 The Constitution’s citizenship provisions combine descent, birthplace history and federal statutory rules

Part 2 of the Constitution guarantees that no Nepali citizen shall be deprived of the right to obtain citizenship and sets out several routes and conditions. It recognizes citizenship by descent where the father or mother was a citizen at birth, contains special provisions for children of citizens who had obtained citizenship by birth before the Constitution, addresses children born in Nepal to a Nepali mother where the father cannot be identified, and leaves acquisition, reacquisition and termination details to federal law. These provisions are legally technical and socially consequential. They should not be reduced to a slogan about an ‘open border’ or regional identity. Citizenship is national law; cross-border kinship does not itself confer nationality. The social question is whether the legal route appropriate to a person’s circumstances can be documented and completed.

139.13 The 2023 citizenship amendment removed a major post-constitutional blockage

In May 2023 the President authenticated legislation amending the Citizenship Act. One of its major effects was to operationalize the constitutional route for children of persons who had previously received citizenship by birth, a category that had faced prolonged difficulty obtaining citizenship certificates after reaching adulthood. The amendment also addressed citizenship by descent for a person born in Nepal to a Nepali mother where the father could not be identified, subject to statutory conditions. The importance in Madhesh was substantial because earlier citizenship-by-birth distribution had been especially relevant in the Tarai. The amendment should nevertheless be described as a legal change, not as proof that every administrative difficulty disappeared. Document verification, parentage, residence and local implementation remained important.

139.14 A second citizenship amendment was authenticated in 2025, showing that the legal framework is still evolving

Federal Parliament records show that the Nepal Citizenship (Second Amendment) Bill, 2081 was passed through both houses, repassed after return, and authenticated on 5 Ashoj 2082. The authenticated text adds further provisions for cases in which one parent had obtained citizenship by birth while the other parent died

or could not be contacted before obtaining citizenship, and it addresses additional parentage circumstances. For a contemporary history, the point is methodological as well as legal: citizenship law in 2026 cannot be described accurately using only the 2006 Act or the 2023 amendment. The framework has continued to change. Any claim about an individual pathway must therefore be checked against the current amended statute rather than inferred from older political debate.

139.15 Gender remains central to citizenship because parentage rules are not socially neutral

Citizenship debates in Nepal have repeatedly focused on whether mothers and fathers transmit nationality on equal terms in all circumstances. The Constitution permits citizenship in the name of either parent, but detailed routes for children of Nepali mothers, foreign fathers, unidentified fathers or parents with different citizenship histories have generated legal and political controversy. These questions matter in Madhesh because marriage across the India–Nepal border is common and because women may face greater difficulty assembling documentary evidence after marriage, migration, abandonment or widowhood. A rights-based analysis should be precise: it should identify the specific statutory route and documentary requirement rather than describe all cross-border families as ‘stateless’ or all citizenship administration as discriminatory. The enduring historical issue is how gendered family structures interact with documentary law.

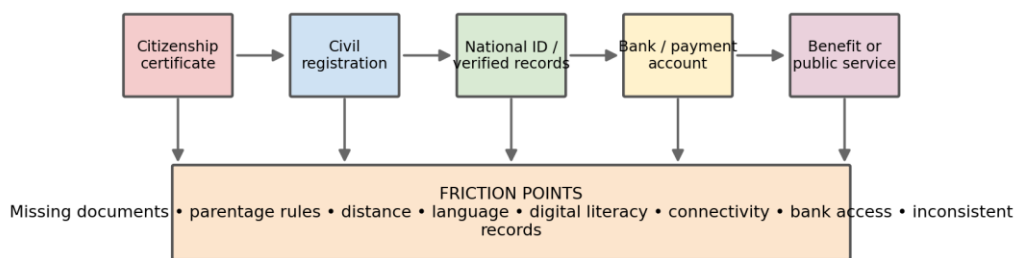
139.16 Birth registration is a foundational form of social citizenship even though it is not citizenship itself

A birth certificate records a civil event; it does not by itself establish Nepali nationality. Yet early registration is crucial because it creates an official identity trail used for schooling, age verification, social protection and later documentation. Nepal’s children’s-rights legislation recognizes a child’s right to a name, identity and birth registration, including procedures where a father is unidentified. Federalization placed much of civil registration at the local level, making the ward office a critical gateway to the documentary state. The distinction between registration and citizenship must remain clear, but so must their administrative connection. Delayed or inaccurate birth registration can make later procedures harder, especially for poor, mobile or socially marginalized households.

139.17 Digital civil registration has changed the infrastructure through which local citizenship is administered

The nationwide Strengthening Systems for Social Protection and Civil Registration programme was implemented during Nepal’s federal transition and helped move vital-event registration from paper files toward networked local systems. By 2023 the World Bank reported that more than 97 percent of wards were registering vital events online. This is a major state-capacity change: records can be verified across places, duplicate entries can be identified and local planning can draw on more consistent data. Digitization, however, transfers some exclusion risks rather than eliminating them. Connectivity failures, mismatched spellings, limited digital literacy and lack of assistance can make an online system harder for some users. The relevant standard is therefore assisted digital access, not digitalization for its own sake.

From legal identity to usable social citizenship



A legal entitlement becomes real only when the administrative chain can be completed without exclusion.

Figure 554 — Legal identity becomes usable social citizenship through an administrative chain; each step can create access or exclusion.

139.18 Social-security allowances make citizenship material through regular transfers

Nepal's Social Security Allowance system provides cash benefits to categories including older people, single women, persons with disabilities, children in specified groups and members of endangered ethnicities. The federal transition coincided with a shift toward banking these payments. World Bank reporting indicates that about 3.5 million beneficiaries nationally were receiving allowances through bank accounts and that electronic payment reduced duplication and manual cash handling. For Madhesh households, the significance is larger than the transfer amount alone. A predictable allowance can support food, medicine, mobility and a degree of personal financial autonomy. Yet bank distance, documentation, biometric or account problems and physical disability can make formal coverage difficult to use. Social citizenship must therefore be measured at the point of receipt, not only in beneficiary databases.

139.19 The ward office has become one of the most important faces of the federal state

For many residents, federalism is encountered less through constitutional language than through a ward secretary, municipal office, school, health post or local bank. Local governments certify residence, register civil events, recommend documents, manage local roads, administer many social programmes, raise some local revenues and coordinate disaster response. This proximity can increase accountability because citizens know where the office is and can identify elected representatives. It can also intensify patronage if access depends on personal networks. The democratic value of local federalism therefore depends on transparent procedures, published fees, grievance channels, accessible records and public hearings. Proximity is an opportunity for accountability, not a guarantee of it.

139.20 Citizens do not necessarily know which tier provides which service

A Survey of the Nepali People in 2022 provides a useful caution against assuming that constitutional restructuring automatically produces administrative literacy. In Madhesh Province, 49.6 percent of respondents said they were aware of services provided by local government, compared with 18.9 percent for provincial government and 18.2 percent for federal government. These figures measure awareness, not

satisfaction, effectiveness or trust, and they come from a survey rather than an administrative census. Even so, the pattern is revealing: the level closest to daily life was much more visible than the newer provincial tier. Federalism requires not only devolution but a public map of responsibility so citizens know where to take a problem and whom to hold accountable.

139.21 Education, health and welfare expose the difficulty of concurrent responsibility

Schools and health services show why federalism cannot be understood through exclusive powers alone. National law and standards, provincial planning, local management, teacher or health-worker personnel systems, conditional grants and infrastructure budgets can intersect in the same institution. When outcomes improve, several tiers may claim credit; when a building, medicine supply or staffing system fails, responsibility may be passed between them. The constitutional promise of social rights therefore depends on intergovernmental coordination. Clear expenditure assignments, interoperable data and predictable transfers are as important as formal rights. Madhesh's relatively weak education and health indicators make this coordination especially consequential because institutional ambiguity falls hardest on households that cannot substitute private services.

139.22 Language access is part of social citizenship even before it becomes a question of official-language status

Madhesh Province is linguistically plural. The 2021 census profile records large Maithili, Bhojपुरi, Bajjika, Nepali, Urdu and other language populations. Provincial assembly law permits members to participate in their mother tongue even where official working languages are defined separately. For citizens, the practical issue is whether forms, notices, health messages, school communication and grievance procedures can be understood. Language rights are not exhausted by symbolic recognition. A municipality can publish a Nepali notice that is legally valid yet poorly accessible to residents who read another language more confidently. Chapter 140 examines language in public life in detail; here the point is narrower: comprehensible administration is one component of equal access to the state.

139.23 E-government can reduce distance while creating a new digital queue

Madhesh's provincial e-governance planning recognizes the rapid spread of mobile and internet use and the growing use of websites by public agencies. Online applications, budget portals, tax payment, civil registration and information disclosure can reduce travel and create searchable records. Yet digital government can reproduce inequalities in devices, literacy, connectivity, language and gendered phone access. A web portal that technically exists is not automatically an accessible service. Good federal digital governance therefore needs assisted counters, mobile-friendly design, clear status tracking, downloadable records and offline alternatives. Digital systems are most valuable when they reduce discretion and repeated visits rather than simply moving a paper form onto a screen.

139.24 Fiscal federalism determines whether constitutional competences can become services

A province or municipality cannot exercise policy autonomy without resources. Nepal's fiscal federalism combines own-source revenues, revenue sharing, fiscal equalization grants, conditional grants, special grants and complementary grants. The Ministry of Finance's Fiscal Federalism Coordination Division is explicitly tasked with revenue sharing and intergovernmental transfers, while annual transfer documents allocate

resources to provinces and local levels. This architecture is central to social citizenship because salaries, roads, school buildings, health facilities and local programmes require predictable financing. The constitutional question ‘who has the power?’ must therefore be paired with the fiscal question ‘who has the money, under what conditions, and when does it arrive?’

139.25 Provincial and local governments remain substantially dependent on intergovernmental transfers

The World Bank’s 2024 Fiscal Federalism Update found continuing high reliance by local governments on intergovernmental fiscal transfers and noted that conditional grants formed a large share of local revenue. Conditional grants can protect national priorities, but excessive earmarking can narrow local discretion and make bottom-up planning less meaningful. Fiscal equalization is intended to give subnational governments more flexible capacity, especially where own-source revenue is weak. Madhesh contains both commercially active cities and poorer rural municipalities, so a uniform expectation of local revenue capacity would be misleading. Equal citizenship across territory requires some redistribution because the cost of providing a school or health service does not disappear when the local tax base is small.

139.26 Budget execution and administrative capacity are part of the federal bargain

Fiscal autonomy is not measured only by the size of a budget. The 2024 Fiscal Federalism Update documented substantial provincial and local underspending and persistent weaknesses in planning, procurement, internal control and timely financial reporting. These are not uniquely Madhesh problems, but they shape how provincial government is judged. An unspent capital budget can mean a delayed road, school or irrigation project even when funds were formally appropriated. Capacity includes engineers, accountants, procurement staff, data systems and legal clarity, not simply political willingness. The creation of provincial civil-service legislation and Madhesh’s local-service law are therefore significant institutional steps because federalism requires a durable subnational administrative cadre rather than continual dependence on ad hoc staffing.

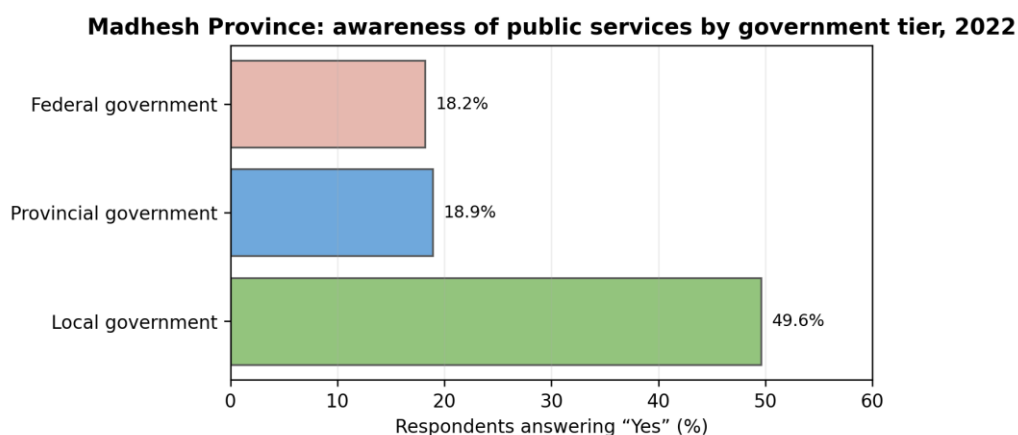


Figure 555 — Madhesh Province respondents reporting awareness of services provided by each level of government, 2022; awareness is not a measure of satisfaction or service quality.

139.27 The open India–Nepal border creates mobility without merging citizenship regimes

Madhesh's social world crosses the international border through marriage, pilgrimage, labour, trade, education and kinship. The open-border relationship allows forms of movement that are unusually easy by international standards, but legal nationality, voting, public employment, property rules, welfare programmes and civil registration remain governed by the two states. This distinction is essential. A family may be socially transborder and legally divided between two citizenship regimes. Cross-border marriage can expand kinship and economic opportunity while also making document trails more complex. Federalism inside Nepal does not internationalize provincial authority: citizenship remains a federal competence and foreign relations remain national. Madhesh's borderland character therefore creates a layered citizenship environment rather than a single cross-border citizenship.

139.28 Portability becomes crucial when citizens are mobile

Migration tests social citizenship because public systems are often built around fixed residence. A Madhesh worker may spend months in Kathmandu, the Gulf or India while family members remain in the village; students move for education; women change residence after marriage; floods can force temporary displacement. Benefits, civil records, health coverage and voter registration do not all follow the same residence rules. Digitized national records and banked transfers can improve portability, but local certification remains important for many procedures. The future effectiveness of federalism will partly depend on whether a citizen can move without losing access to documentation or entitlements. Mobility should therefore be treated as a normal feature of the region's society, not an exception to be handled case by case.

139.29 Federalism has changed the location of politics more clearly than it has equalized social outcomes

By 2026, federalism has unmistakably changed Nepal's institutional landscape. Madhesh has an elected provincial government, a provincial assembly, ministries, laws, a budget and a dense network of constitutionally recognized local governments. Civil registration and social-protection delivery have been modernized, women and historically excluded groups have more formal routes into representation, and subnational planning is routine. Yet poverty, unequal schooling, gendered documentation problems, caste exclusion, weak administrative capacity and dependence on transfers remain. These are not evidence that federalism 'failed'; nor does the existence of provincial institutions prove that inclusion has been achieved. The appropriate historical assessment separates institutional transformation from distributive outcomes and asks which mechanisms have changed, for whom, and with what measurable effect.

139.30 Conclusion: social citizenship is the everyday test of the federal settlement

The most important consequence of federalism in Madhesh is that the state is now encountered through several elected and administrative layers rather than a single distant centre. This has created new arenas for representation, language claims, budgeting, service delivery and accountability. Citizenship law remains federal, but the usefulness of citizenship is experienced locally through registration, schools, health care, allowances, roads, digital records and accessible offices. The federal settlement therefore succeeds or fails in

ordinary transactions as much as in constitutional debate. Madhesh's experience shows why social citizenship must be studied as an institutional chain: rights, documents, money, personnel, language, mobility and grievance mechanisms must connect. Federalism has created that chain; the continuing historical task is to make every link reliable and inclusive.

Table 139.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing Madhesh, federalism and social citizenship

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 139	Main limitation
Constitution of Nepal 2015	three-tier state structure, fundamental rights, citizenship and competence schedules	legal architecture of federal and social citizenship	constitutional assignment does not show implementation quality
Citizenship Act + 2023/2025 amendments	current statutory routes and documentary rules	citizenship-document analysis	individual eligibility remains fact-specific
Madhesh Province official portals	8 districts, 136 local levels, ministries and provincial laws	institutional geography	some profile indicators are dated and should not be treated as current census estimates
Election Commission Nepal	constituencies, voters and election administration	representative citizenship	voter registry is not the same as total adult population
NPHC 2021 / Madhesh profile	population, language and household structure	demographic context	census categories do not measure service access or political influence
World Bank federalism updates	fiscal transfers, capacity, underspending and PFM	implementation of fiscal federalism	mostly national/subnational-system evidence; not every indicator is Madhesh-specific
Civil registration / SSA programme records	online registration and banked social-security delivery	administrative social citizenship	national programme results should not be read as province-specific coverage rates
Survey of Nepali People 2022	awareness of services by government tier	citizen-facing visibility of federalism	sample survey; awareness is not satisfaction or quality
Provincial budgets and laws	Madhesh policy priorities, appropriations and service institutions	subnational state formation	appropriation is not execution
Historical and scholarly literature	Madhesh movements, inclusion and constitutional contestation	long-run interpretation	interpretive works differ in terminology and political framing

Chapter 140 — Maithili, Angika and Bajjika in Contemporary Public Life

Chapter 140 examines Maithili, Angika and Bajjika as languages of contemporary public life rather than as timeless cultural labels. Public life includes census naming, constitutional status, administration, education, examinations, literary institutions, broadcasting, digital media, political mobilisation and everyday interaction with the state. The three names do not occupy the same institutional position. Maithili is one of the twenty-two languages in the Eighth Schedule of the Constitution of India and has a long national literary-institutional presence. Angika has substantial regional use and a state-level educational and academy history in Bihar but is not a scheduled language. Bajjika has an extensive speech community and literary activism, yet its Indian census and state-institutional visibility remains comparatively unsettled. Nepal creates a different frame because its Constitution calls all mother tongues national languages and its 2021 census separately enumerates Maithili, Bajjika and Angika.

The chapter therefore refuses to turn a linguistic classification dispute into a demographic fact. A census category is an administrative instrument, not a final linguistic theory; a constitutional listing does not prove greater everyday vitality; and a speech community can be socially powerful without possessing a ministry, academy or examination paper. The border makes comparison especially revealing. In India, Maithili has strong formal recognition while Angika and Bajjika encounter narrower or more contested channels. In Nepal, separate census recognition is broader, but provincial working-language implementation remains politically contested. The correct historical question is how institutions convert language into usable public capacity, and where that conversion fails.

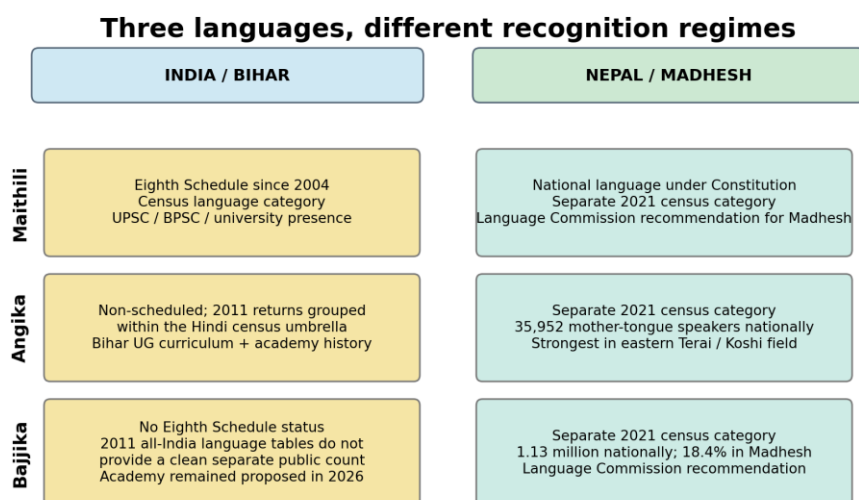
140.1 Public life requires separating language, variety, script and legal status

Language in public life is produced by several institutions that answer different questions. Linguists ask about structural relationships and mutual intelligibility; censuses ask people to name a mother tongue; constitutions and statutes define legal categories; universities create subjects and departments; broadcasters decide which languages receive scheduled airtime; and citizens choose languages situationally. These layers can diverge. A person may speak Bajjika at home, use Hindi for a government form, study Maithili literature, and consume English-language digital content without experiencing contradiction. A useful history therefore records classification disputes without letting them erase social practice. It also distinguishes language from script. Contemporary Maithili is usually printed in Devanagari even though Tīrhutā/Mithilakshar has major historical and symbolic importance. Angika and Bajjika likewise circulate principally in Devanagari in modern publishing, while older regional script traditions belong to a different historical layer.

140.2 The three names inhabit different recognition regimes

The institutional asymmetry is the starting fact of the chapter. In India, Maithili has constitutional recognition in the Eighth Schedule; Angika and Bajjika do not. Bihar has nevertheless created or proposed state institutions for regional languages beyond the Eighth Schedule, and its higher-education curriculum can recognise subjects that national constitutional schedules do not. Nepal reverses part of this pattern: all mother tongues are constitutionally national languages, and the 2021 census separately reports Maithili, Bajjika and Angika. Yet Nepal's federal Constitution still requires provincial law before an additional language becomes a provincial language of government. Recognition is therefore layered rather than binary. The same language name may be strong in one layer and weak in another. Figure 556 summarises these non-

equivalent regimes so that later comparisons do not confuse census visibility with legal or administrative power.



Recognition categories are not equivalent across the border; census naming, constitutional status and institutional use must be analysed separately.

Figure 556 — Maithili, Angika and Bajjika occupy different recognition regimes in India/Bihar and Nepal/Madhesh; the categories are not directly interchangeable.

140.3 Maithili's Eighth Schedule status created national institutional access

Maithili entered the Eighth Schedule through the Constitution (Ninety-second Amendment) Act, 2003, with effect from 7 January 2004. This is a major threshold because Eighth Schedule status places Maithili within the constitutional architecture used for official-language policy, public examinations and national recognition. It does not make Maithili the routine working language of Bihar, nor does it determine the boundaries of the speech community. Its practical importance lies in institutional access: Maithili can appear in Union-level language frameworks, examinations and official translation environments on a footing unavailable to non-scheduled regional languages. The distinction matters when comparing Maithili with Angika and Bajjika. It also shows why demands for inclusion in the Eighth Schedule carry political weight: they concern access to national institutions and symbolic equality, not merely a label in a list.

140.4 Constitutional recognition does not make Maithili Bihar's routine administrative language

The Eighth Schedule is sometimes treated as if it automatically changes the language of offices, courts and local administration. It does not. Bihar's routine government communication remains dominated by Hindi, with English important in higher administration, courts, technical documentation and intergovernmental work. Maithili's constitutional status creates opportunities but does not compel every district office in Mithila to function in Maithili. The gap between recognition and administrative use is a central theme of contemporary language politics. Citizens often experience their mother tongue orally at counters, meetings and political events while receiving written forms, orders and digital interfaces in Hindi or English. This produces a layered public sphere in which spoken accommodation can coexist with written standardisation. Measuring public vitality therefore requires observing actual transactions, not simply reading constitutional schedules.

140.5 Census 2011 remains India's latest published language baseline

As of September 2026, the 2011 Census remains the latest completed Indian census with published language tables. Table C-16 provides mother-tongue distributions, while C-17 records bilingualism and trilingualism. The published 2011 language data report roughly 13.6 million Maithili mother-tongue speakers nationally. Those figures are dated and should not be treated as 2026 population estimates. Their continuing importance is classificatory: they show how the state counted language at the last complete enumeration. Census 2027 is underway, but no language results can yet be used. This time lag matters politically because campaigns for recognition and self-identification take place in a statistical environment whose most authoritative public counts are fifteen years old. Any contemporary claim about growth or decline must therefore be labelled as a projection, survey finding or advocacy estimate rather than a new census fact.

140.6 Census classification itself shapes visibility

The Indian language census does not simply mirror everyday names. It aggregates many mother-tongue returns under broader scheduled or non-scheduled language categories. Linguistic scholarship drawing on Census 2011 notes that Angika is counted within the larger Hindi umbrella rather than treated as a scheduled language in its own right. Publicly circulated accounts of Bajjika face an even sharper problem: there is no clean, widely used 2011 all-India public figure equivalent to the Maithili scheduled-language total. This does not mean Angika or Bajjika speakers disappeared. It means that the architecture of aggregation changes what becomes visible in headline statistics. The historian should therefore distinguish three things: what people said, how enumerators coded it, and how final tables grouped it. Recognition movements often begin precisely at this gap between social naming and statistical publication.

140.7 Census 2027 is becoming a new arena of linguistic self-identification

Because the 2011 tables remain the last published baseline, Census 2027 has become a new horizon for regional language advocacy. Public campaigns in Bajjika-speaking areas have already urged residents to report Bajjika as their mother tongue. Similar recognition debates surround Angika. Such mobilisation is historically significant even before the results exist: it shows that census participation is understood as a form of political representation. The correct scholarly posture is restraint. The forthcoming census may alter counts, codes or aggregation, but no future outcome should be assumed. What can be documented now is the mobilisation itself and the institutional stakes attached to naming. Census categories shape funding claims, educational demands and narratives of numerical strength, but they remain administrative evidence rather than a substitute for linguistic fieldwork.

140.8 Nepal's Constitution creates a different legal starting point

Article 6 of Nepal's 2015 Constitution declares all mother tongues spoken in Nepal to be national languages. Article 7 makes Nepali in Devanagari the language of official business of Nepal while allowing a province, through provincial law, to designate one or more additional national languages spoken by a majority of its population as languages of provincial official business. Article 32 protects the right of individuals and communities to use and preserve their languages, scripts and cultures. This framework differs sharply from India's Eighth Schedule model. In Nepal, national-language status is broad; the politically difficult question is administrative implementation. A language can therefore be nationally recognised yet still await provincial legislation, terminology, trained staff, forms and procedures before citizens can use it routinely in government.

140.9 Nepal's 2021 census separately enumerates Maithili, Bajjika and Angika

The National Population and Housing Census 2021 makes the cross-border contrast unusually clear. It reports Maithili as the mother tongue of 3,222,389 people nationally, Bajjika of 1,133,764, and Angika of 35,952. These are separate census categories, not subdivisions hidden under another language heading. The totals should not be converted mechanically into claims about India, because the two censuses use different category systems and political histories. They do, however, demonstrate that the same linguistic names can acquire different statistical visibility on opposite sides of an open border. Angika's relatively small Nepal total also reminds us that Anga's demographic centre lies mainly in eastern Bihar and adjoining areas rather than in Madhesh Province. Separate enumeration is evidence of recognition, not evidence that all three languages possess equal institutional capacity.

140.10 Madhesh is multilingual rather than a single-language province

Madhesh Province is the most important contemporary cross-border arena for Maithili and Bajjika, but it cannot be reduced to either. The 2021 census reports Maithili at 41.7 percent of the provincial population, Bhojpuri at 18.8 percent and Bajjika at 18.4 percent, followed by Nepali, Tharu, Urdu, Magahi and many smaller languages. Figure 557 visualises this distribution. The pattern is geographically uneven: Maithili is especially strong in the eastern-central districts, Bhojpuri in the west, and Bajjika in the central-western belt. Administrative language policy must therefore solve two problems at once: represent the largest language communities and avoid making smaller communities invisible. A province-wide rule may need to coexist with local-level flexibility because the language ecology of Janakpur is not identical to that of Birgunj or Rautahat.

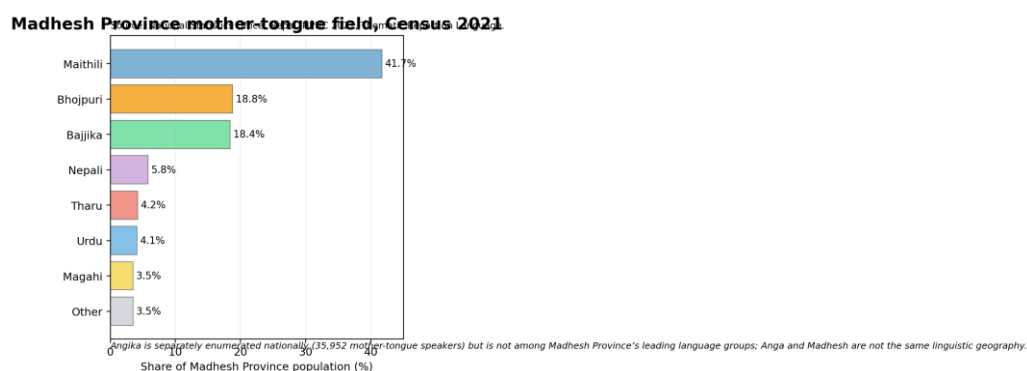


Figure 557 — Madhesh Province mother-tongue shares in Census 2021; Angika is separately enumerated nationally but is not among the province's leading mother tongues.

140.11 Nepal's Language Commission recommended Maithili, Bhojpuri and Bajjika for Madhesh official work

The Language Commission's provincial recommendations provide a constitutional bridge between census numbers and possible administrative use. For Madhesh, the Commission recommended Maithili, Bhojpuri and Bajjika as languages that could be brought into provincial official business through law, while discussing phased development for other languages. The recommendation is important because it did not rely on numerical rank alone; it also considered capacity, standardisation and practical readiness. Maithili was assessed as especially capable of immediate official use, while Bhojpuri and Bajjika were identified as requiring further capacity building in some domains. This is a useful reminder that administrative language planning requires dictionaries, terminology, trained personnel, keyboards, forms, translation practice and document

standards. Speaker numbers create democratic claims, but institutional readiness determines whether a law can be implemented.

140.12 The 2025 Madhesh working-language bill showed that inclusion lists are political instruments

In January 2025 the Madhesh provincial government introduced a bill proposing Nepali plus Maithili, Bhojpuri, Bajjika, Hindi and English for official work. The proposal immediately generated controversy. Critics questioned the inclusion of Hindi and English, whose mother-tongue shares in the province are small, and objected to the exclusion of Tharu. The dispute demonstrates that language legislation is not a neutral act of counting. A working-language list can signal identity, border orientation, elite preference, administrative convenience or coalition politics. Public debate also showed that a single provincial list may create new exclusions while attempting to correct older ones. For the historian, the bill is most valuable as evidence of competing concepts of representation: demographic weight, communicative reach, constitutional recommendation and political symbolism were all invoked.

140.13 The bill's withdrawal and continuing debate show that implementation remains unsettled

The 2025 proposal did not become a settled working-language regime. Reporting on the controversy records that the bill was withdrawn amid opposition and demands for revision, while public discussions in 2025 and 2026 continued to call for implementation of Maithili, Bhojpuri and Bajjika in provincial government. By February 2026, commentary on the Language Commission still noted the absence of a comprehensive federal language act. The result is a familiar gap between constitutional permission, expert recommendation and executable law. This unsettled status should not be simplified into a claim that Madhesh has already adopted Maithili or Bajjika as full official languages. The historically accurate statement is that the constitutional route exists, the Commission has recommended languages, a provincial bill was attempted, and the political-administrative settlement remains incomplete.

140.14 Maithili has the strongest national examination infrastructure of the three in India

Public examinations are one of the clearest ways in which constitutional recognition becomes practical. The Union Public Service Commission continues to include Maithili literature within the Civil Services Main examination framework, with papers requiring knowledge of Maithili language and literature and answers in Maithili. UPSC archives also contain Maithili compulsory-language papers. Bihar Public Service Commission material likewise demonstrates Maithili's use in relevant examination contexts. This matters socially because examination status generates textbooks, coaching material, standard terminology and a community of candidates and evaluators. Angika and Bajjika do not possess an equivalent national examination infrastructure. The contrast shows why scheduled-language status can affect educational markets and career pathways even when everyday administration remains Hindi-dominant.

140.15 Bihar's university curriculum institutionalises Maithili as an academic subject

Bihar's Raj Bhavan/Lok Bhavan curriculum framework issued in 2023 includes Maithili within the undergraduate credit framework. The public curriculum lists provide a state-level academic infrastructure beyond individual university departments: they define course progression, learning outcomes and credit-

bearing study. Maithili's university presence also has a longer history in institutions such as L. N. Mithila University, Patna University, B. R. Ambedkar Bihar University and others. Academic institutionalisation matters because it produces teachers, dissertations, grammars, editions and professional credentials. It can also standardise one written variety more strongly than everyday speech. The university therefore both preserves linguistic diversity and selects forms that become examinable. Public-life vitality should be measured not only by enrolment but by whether departments have staff, books, research programmes and pathways into school teaching, publishing and public service.

140.16 Angika's presence in Bihar's statewide undergraduate curriculum is institutionally significant

Angika occupies an instructive middle position. It lacks Eighth Schedule status, yet Bihar Lok Bhavan's 2023 undergraduate curriculum framework explicitly lists Angika for both the first two semesters and the third-to-eighth-semester sequence. This gives Angika a formal academic presence that cannot be dismissed as purely oral or folkloric. Curriculum recognition creates demand for teachers, reference works, spelling conventions and a body of examinable literature. At the same time, the absence of national scheduled status limits access to some Union-level channels available to Maithili. Angika thus demonstrates that language institutionalisation is multi-level: state higher education can move ahead of national constitutional recognition. This is particularly important in the Anga region around Bhagalpur and adjoining districts, where regional language identity intersects with a university city, print culture and migration.

140.17 Bajjika's India-side educational infrastructure remains comparatively weaker

Bajjika has a substantial speech community and active literary organisations, but the same 2023 Bihar statewide undergraduate curriculum lists that include Maithili and Angika do not list a comparable Bajjika undergraduate programme. This absence should not be mistaken for absence of literature or speakers. It identifies an institutional gap. Bajjika public life on the Indian side has depended more heavily on literary conferences, magazines, cultural organisations, local performance and digital media than on a stable university subject infrastructure. The weakness is consequential: without curricular pathways it is harder to create salaried teaching posts, standard reference materials and formal assessment. The Nepal side provides a contrasting form of recognition through separate census counting and provincial-language recommendation. Bajjika's contemporary history therefore illustrates how a language can be socially extensive while institutionally uneven across an international border.

140.18 Language academies reveal the difference between formal creation and operational capacity

Bihar's language academies have long been intended to publish books, support research, organise events and promote regional languages. Yet an academy's name in a government list is not the same as a functioning institution. Staffing, grants, offices, publication cycles and governance determine whether the academy produces a public sphere. In March 2025 the Bihar government told the Assembly that it was working to strengthen eight language academies and bring them under an umbrella structure. By May 2026, reporting described a proposed 'Policy 2026' still moving through financial and cabinet approval. The restructuring debate is itself evidence: language policy had become partly an institutional-repair problem. Figure 558 therefore treats academy presence as intermediate or unstable rather than automatically 'strong'. The relevant measure is output and accessibility, not nominal existence.

140.19 The Maithili Academy crisis shows how recognition can coexist with institutional fragility

Maithili offers the clearest example of the gap between symbolic prestige and organisational health. A January 2026 Patna High Court judgment, in a service-liability case, recorded counsel's submission that the Maithili Academy was 'no more in existence'. Contemporary reporting described a largely inactive institution, missing publications and demands for revival. At the same time, state policy discussions continued to treat Maithili as part of the language-academy structure to be reorganised. These sources are not necessarily contradictory: a society can survive formally, collapse operationally, and then be targeted for restructuring. The episode matters because the Academy had historically published important scholarly and literary works. When institutional continuity breaks, students, researchers and exam candidates lose access even though constitutional recognition remains intact.

140.20 Angika academy history and the proposed Bajjika academy show uneven institutionalisation

State-level academy policy has not developed uniformly. Angika has been named among Bihar's existing language academies in government statements and reporting, although the effectiveness and infrastructure of the academy have been questioned. Bajjika followed another trajectory. The state announced plans in 2022 for a Bajjika academy, but public demands for its actual establishment continued in 2025 and March 2026. May 2026 reporting on the proposed restructuring again described separate Bajjika and Surjapuri academies as proposals linked to a new umbrella arrangement. The sequence demonstrates why announcement dates must not be confused with functioning start dates. It also shows how language activism interacts with state architecture: movements seek not only symbolic recognition but offices, budgets, publications, experts and durable programmes.

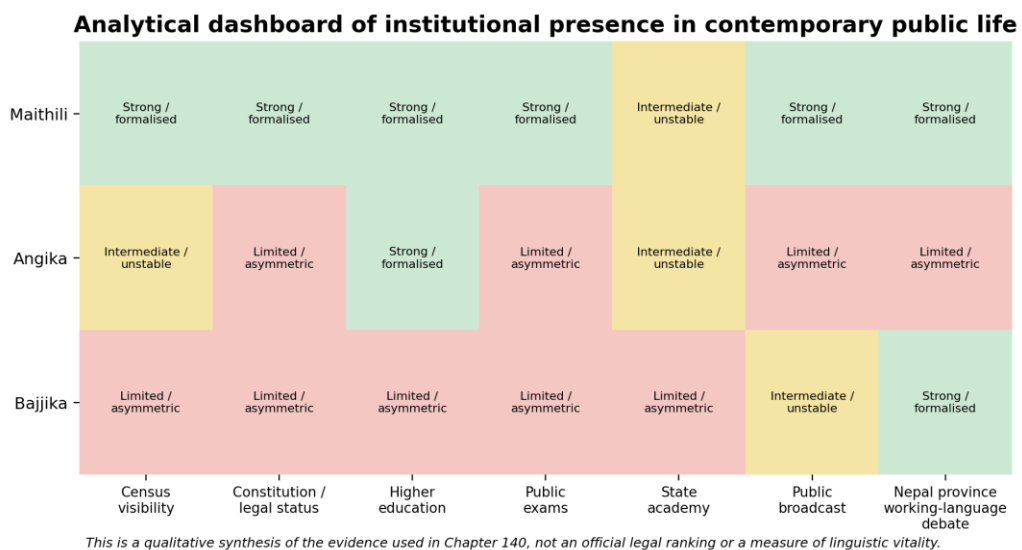


Figure 558 — Analytical dashboard of institutional presence across census visibility, legal status, education, examinations, academies, broadcasting and provincial-language politics; it is not an official ranking.

140.21 Sahitya Akademi gives Maithili a durable national literary public

National literary institutions create another form of public recognition. Sahitya Akademi has made awards in Maithili since 1966 and maintains a Maithili Advisory Board for 2023–27. Its current award lists include annual awards, translation prizes and Yuva Puraskar in Maithili. This continuity matters because it

creates a national circuit of publication, translation, prizes and literary events independent of the operational weakness of any one Bihar institution. The contrast with Angika and Bajjika is substantial: neither has a comparable separate Sahitya Akademi award stream. National literary recognition does not determine linguistic legitimacy, but it affects visibility, translation flows and canon formation. It also produces archives through which future historians can trace genres, authorship and generational change.

140.22 Public broadcasting converts language recognition into repeated audibility

Broadcasting is one of the most direct measures of a language's presence in public life because it creates scheduled, repeated use rather than occasional celebration. Akashvani's current Patna regional-unit page lists a five-minute Maithili evening news bulletin at 18:25 alongside Hindi, Urdu and Bhojpuri services, and its regional-audio archive continues to publish Maithili bulletins in 2026. A short bulletin is not equivalent to full programming, but it establishes editorial terminology, pronunciation norms and a recurring public-news register. Broadcasting also reaches listeners who may not buy books or use university Maithili. For Angika and Bajjika, comparable India-side public-service broadcasting visibility is more limited in the evidence reviewed here, which again shows that spoken population and media infrastructure need not move together.

140.23 Radio Nepal illustrates a different multilingual public-service model

Radio Nepal has a long history of broadcasting news and cultural programming in Maithili, with its own institutional history tracing Maithili news to the early 1990s and later expansion of programmes. The system also demonstrates how smaller public-language services can evolve. In August 2026 Radio Nepal published a notice seeking a Bajjika-language newsreader, direct evidence that Bajjika was being incorporated into a formal public-service broadcasting workflow. This is more than symbolic recognition: news reading requires recruitment, editorial text, terminology and broadcast scheduling. It does not mean Bajjika has become a provincial language of government, but it does show a concrete public institution using the language. Broadcasting can therefore advance faster than administrative-language law, creating audibility before full bureaucratic functionality.

140.24 Print, FM, video and digital platforms have multiplied language publics

The contemporary language public is no longer organised by a single newspaper or academy. Maithili, Angika and Bajjika circulate through local newspapers, magazines, FM radio, YouTube, Facebook, podcasts, messaging groups, e-journals and digitised books. Chapter 136 examined the platform dynamics in detail; the present point is institutional. Digital publication lowers entry costs and enables diaspora participation, but it also shifts standard-setting away from a small number of editors. Orthography, vocabulary and even the boundaries between named varieties become more visible and more contested. A language may therefore gain cultural presence while losing centralised editorial control. The public sphere becomes larger but more fragmented. For historians, digital abundance must be archived carefully because platform posts are unstable, searchable metrics can change, and algorithmic visibility is not the same as representative social use.

140.25 Script choice separates heritage identity from routine public functionality

Maithili's historical Tirhuta/Mithilakshar script is a major marker of regional heritage and has gained new technological visibility through Unicode and digital fonts, as discussed in Chapter 116. Yet routine contemporary publishing, examinations and most public communication use Devanagari. This does not make Tirhuta irrelevant; it changes its domain. Tirhuta can function as heritage script, calligraphic identity,

manuscript key and cultural emblem while Devanagari carries mass literacy and interregional interoperability. Angika and Bajjika public writing is likewise predominantly Devanagari today, although older Kaithi and regional manuscript practices belong to their wider history. Language policy should therefore avoid a false choice between heritage and access. Script revival and public readability can be pursued simultaneously when digital standards, teaching materials and archival practices are designed carefully.

140.26 Translation and terminology are the hidden infrastructure of administrative language

Declaring a language usable in government is easier than creating the materials required for actual administration. Offices need standard terms for land records, welfare, taxation, procurement, health, education, disaster response and digital services. Forms must be translated consistently; staff must be trained; databases must support relevant scripts and characters; and citizens need confidence that a mother-tongue submission will be legally understood. Maithili's literary depth does not automatically supply modern bureaucratic terminology, while Bajjika and Angika face additional standardisation and institutional-capacity challenges. This is why the Nepal Language Commission distinguished numerical strength from functional readiness. Terminology work is often invisible, but it determines whether language rights become usable public services. A language policy without translation budgets and document workflows can remain ceremonial.

140.27 Markets and migration sustain multilingual repertoires beyond formal recognition

Everyday public life in Mithila, Vajji, Anga and Madhesh is intensely multilingual. A trader may bargain in a local speech form, use Hindi for an invoice, Nepali at a cross-border office and English terms for mobile payments. Migrants acquire Punjabi, Bengali, Gujarati, Nepali, Hindi or Gulf workplace languages while retaining Maithili, Angika or Bajjika in family networks. Such repertoires complicate language politics because public utility is not zero-sum. The expansion of Hindi or Nepali does not necessarily imply the disappearance of regional languages, and strong mother-tongue use does not prevent multilingual competence. Census bilingualism tables and Nepal's second-language data should therefore be read as evidence of layered communication. Language vitality is often sustained by flexible multilingualism rather than by monolingual territorial closure.

140.28 Language politics cannot be reduced to speaker counts

Numerical weight is democratically important, especially when deciding which languages deserve public services. Yet counts alone cannot resolve questions of official use. A small language may require protection precisely because it lacks market power; a large language may still lack standardised administrative materials; a widely understood contact language may have few mother-tongue speakers; and a language concentrated in a district may deserve strong local use even if its province-wide share is modest. The Madhesh working-language controversy made these tensions explicit. The same caution applies in Bihar, where constitutional scheduling, census aggregation and state educational recognition do not align neatly. Good policy therefore needs multiple criteria: speaker numbers, geographic concentration, functional readiness, educational infrastructure, community demand, inclusion of minorities, cost, digital support and the rights of citizens to understand government.

140.29 Contemporary public vitality requires a multi-domain dashboard

A single indicator such as census share, award count or social-media followers cannot measure public vitality. A robust dashboard should track at least eight domains: census visibility; legal recognition; school and university provision; examination availability; academy and research capacity; publishing and translation; broadcast/digital presence; and actual administrative use. Each domain requires a dated source and a clear unit. Figure 558 offers a qualitative synthesis for the three languages, while Table 140.1 records the evidence architecture behind the chapter. The purpose is not to rank languages but to expose mismatches. Maithili is strong in national recognition yet can suffer weak state institutional capacity; Angika can have formal university curricula without national scheduling; Bajjika can possess large speech communities and Nepal-side census recognition while India-side educational structures remain thin. Such mismatches are the history.

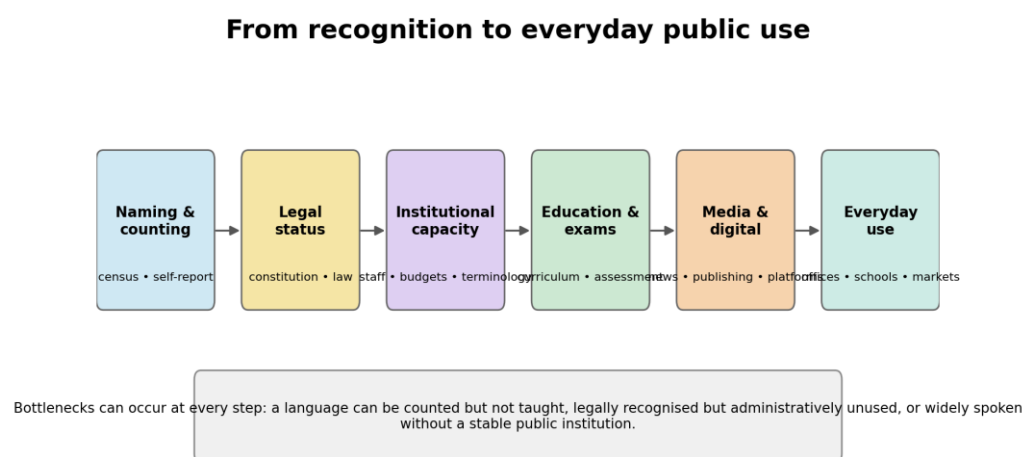


Figure 559 — Public-language equality depends on a chain from naming and legal status to institutional capacity, education, media and routine use; bottlenecks can occur at every stage.

140.30 Conclusion: recognition is strongest when institutions and everyday use align

The contemporary history of Maithili, Angika and Bajjika is not a linear movement from ‘dialect’ to ‘language’ or from private speech to official status. It is a field of overlapping recognitions. Maithili combines constitutional, literary, examination and broadcast presence with continuing struggles over institutional capacity. Angika demonstrates how a non-scheduled language can acquire state curriculum and academy recognition while remaining weak in national census and Union-level frameworks. Bajjika demonstrates the reverse cross-border pattern: strong social use, separate Nepal census recognition and provincial-language recommendation coexist with weaker India-side formal education and an academy project that remained unsettled in the evidence through 2026. Figure 559 summarises the central lesson. Naming matters, but public-language equality depends on the whole chain from counting and law to staff, curriculum, media, translation and routine use.

Table 140.1 — Evidence architecture for analysing Maithili, Angika and Bajjika in contemporary public life

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 140	Main limitation
India Constitution, Eighth Schedule	constitutional listing and date of Maithili inclusion	national legal-recognition baseline	does not measure Bihar administrative use

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 140	Main limitation
Census of India 2011 C-16/C-17	mother-tongue and multilingualism categories	last complete Indian language baseline	aggregation affects Angika/Bajjika visibility; dated
UPSC / BPSC examination records	actual exam availability and syllabus	career-linked public institutional use	exam presence is not population-wide language use
Bihar Lok Bhavan UG curricula	statewide credit frameworks for Maithili and Angika	higher-education institutionalisation	curriculum does not prove enrolment or staffing quality
Bihar academy records / policy	academy names, restructuring proposals, institutional crisis	state cultural infrastructure	formal existence can differ from operational capacity
Sahitya Akademi records	awards, advisory board, translation and youth prizes	national literary public for Maithili	literary prestige is not administrative status
Akashvani Patna schedules	scheduled Maithili news broadcasting	repeated public audibility	short bulletins do not represent all programming
Nepal Constitution 2015	all mother tongues as national languages; provincial working-language route	legal framework across the border	requires provincial law and implementation
Nepal NPHC 2021 language report	separate counts for Maithili, Bajjika and Angika	cross-border census comparison	classification differs from India
Language Commission recommendations	recommended provincial working languages for Madhesh	expert language-planning baseline	recommendation is not enacted law
Madhesh 2025 language bill debate	proposed list and political contestation	evidence of implementation politics	withdrawn/contested proposal, not settled status
Radio Nepal records	Maithili history and 2026 Bajjika newsreader recruitment	public-service multilingual broadcasting	broadcast use does not equal administrative use

Chapter 141 — Cultural Heritage versus Living Culture

Chapter 141 examines the tension between cultural heritage and living culture. The tension is real, but the opposition is often misleading. Heritage is not simply the old part of culture preserved from change, while living culture is not simply the new part left outside museums. Heritage is a process of selection, documentation, recognition and transmission through which some practices, objects, places and memories are made publicly valuable. Living culture is the continuing activity through which people speak, sing, paint, worship, cook, marry, make objects, remember places and reinterpret inherited forms. The historical problem arises when heritage institutions treat a living practice as if its most authentic form were a fixed photograph of the past.

The contemporary Mithila–Vajji–Anga region makes this problem especially visible. Mithila painting is simultaneously household practice, professional art, intellectual property, tourist image and global commodity. Chhath is simultaneously family ritual, public infrastructure problem, environmental event and diasporic marker. Tirhuta/Mithilakshar is simultaneously manuscript heritage, identity symbol and a script being re-enabled through digital technology. Panji manuscripts are archives, but the genealogical system from which they emerged has also been a social institution with changing authority. In Anga, Manjusha painting and Bhagalpur silk likewise show that a cultural form survives through makers, markets and reinterpretation rather than by remaining unchanged. The chapter therefore asks not whether culture should be preserved or modernised, but what kinds of safeguarding allow communities to continue making culture on their own changing terms.

141.1 Heritage is a process of selection, not a neutral storehouse

Every society inherits more practices, objects, memories and places than any institution can catalogue. Heritage policy therefore selects. A monument is scheduled, a craft is displayed, a ritual is promoted, a language is entered into a curriculum, or a style is marketed as representative. Selection can protect what is vulnerable, but it also creates hierarchies. Practices that fit administrative categories gain visibility, while ordinary domestic knowledge may remain invisible. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the historian must ask who selected an element, for what purpose, under which name, and whether practitioners themselves recognise the institutional description. Heritage is thus a form of cultural governance as well as remembrance.

141.2 The UNESCO concept of living heritage rejects the idea of a frozen original

The 2003 UNESCO Convention defines intangible cultural heritage as practices, representations, expressions, knowledge and skills that communities recognise as part of their heritage and that are transmitted from generation to generation while being constantly recreated in response to environment, history and interaction. This formulation is crucial. Continuity does not mean exact repetition. A song can acquire new verses, a ritual can move from a village pond to an urban ghat, a craft can adopt new materials, and a script can move from palm leaf and paper to Unicode. Change may sometimes threaten a tradition, but change is also one of the mechanisms through which a tradition stays alive.

141.3 Safeguarding is different from conservation

A stone sculpture can be conserved by stabilising its material. A living practice cannot be safeguarded in the same way. It depends on people who know how and why to perform, make, speak or interpret it. Safeguarding therefore includes transmission, education, access to materials and cultural spaces, documentation, livelihood support and the capacity of practitioners to adapt. A museum may preserve a

Madhubani painting for centuries, but that alone does not sustain the knowledge through which new artists learn line, colour, iconography, experimentation and market negotiation. Figure 560 shows heritage recognition as one stage in a continuing cultural cycle rather than its endpoint.

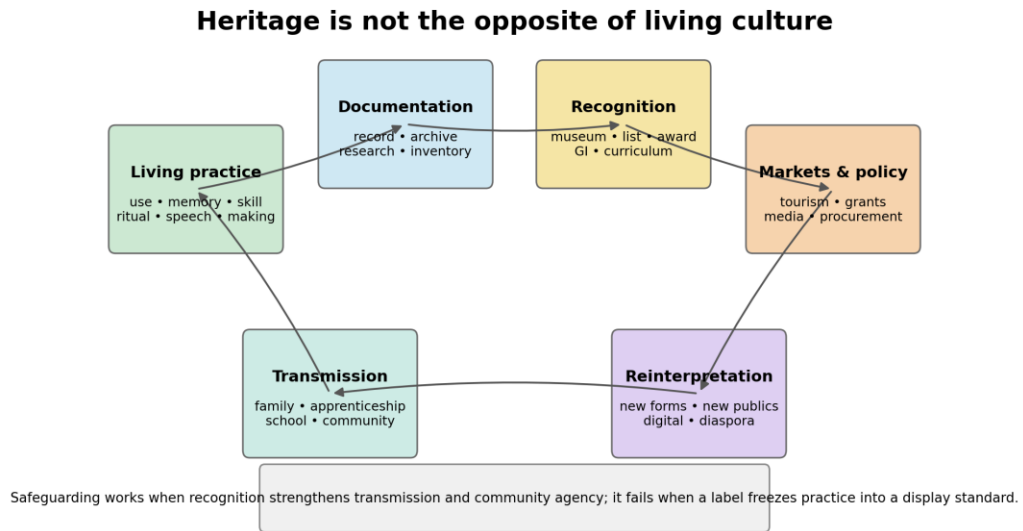


Figure 560 — Heritage recognition is one stage in a living cultural cycle of practice, documentation, policy, reinterpretation and transmission.

141.4 Tangible and intangible heritage are interdependent

The usual division between tangible and intangible heritage is analytically useful but socially porous. A manuscript is tangible; the reading conventions, script knowledge, genealogical expertise and ritual authority associated with it are intangible. A temple is tangible; pilgrimage routes, songs, ritual calendars, food offerings and remembered narratives make it socially active. A loom is tangible; weaving knowledge and labour organisation give it productive meaning. Regional heritage policy therefore fails when it conserves objects while losing the skills, vocabularies and social settings that animate them. Figure 562 represents this layered cultural ecosystem.

141.5 Mithila painting demonstrates how heritage can expand through transformation

Mithila painting is often narrated as a tradition that moved from ritual wall and floor surfaces into painting on paper and other portable media during the twentieth century. That transition did not simply remove the art from tradition; it created new artistic careers, signatures, markets, exhibitions and forms of experimentation. Women who had painted within domestic and ritual settings could become named artists in national and international art worlds. Later generations introduced political, ecological, autobiographical and feminist themes while retaining or reworking inherited visual vocabularies. Treating only an imagined village-wall form as authentic would erase a major part of the tradition's modern history.

141.6 The authenticity problem: style can become a cage

Once a cultural form is branded, curators, tourists, buyers and officials often develop a visual checklist of authenticity. Repeated motifs can become expected, and work that departs from them may be judged less traditional. This can reverse the logic of living culture: instead of practitioners deciding how to develop a style, the market rewards conformity to an external image of the past. The best safeguarding therefore

distinguishes continuity from standardisation. Provenance, practitioner knowledge and community recognition are stronger indicators than a rigid motif list. Innovation should not automatically disqualify a work from belonging to a living tradition.

141.7 Named artists and community traditions must be held together

Collective heritage labels can make a region visible, but they can also hide individual authorship. A painting may be sold as 'Madhubani' while the artist's name disappears; a song may circulate as 'folk' while the performer receives no credit; a digital archive may reproduce images without recording the custodian or source. Living culture requires both collective context and individual agency. The region's cultural economy is strongest when artists and performers can be identified, paid and documented without pretending that they created their traditions from nothing. This balance between community inheritance and individual creativity also links heritage policy to intellectual-property questions examined in Chapter 128.

141.8 Manjusha painting shows that Anga heritage has its own trajectories

Anga's cultural history should not be absorbed into a single Mithila heritage narrative. Manjusha painting, associated particularly with the Bihula–Bishahari narrative tradition around Bhagalpur, has its own iconography, ritual associations, performance history and modern revival. Its contemporary visibility illustrates a common heritage process: a form once embedded in a ritual and narrative environment is recast through workshops, paper formats, exhibitions and public promotion. Safeguarding should therefore preserve the narrative and performative ecology of the form as well as its graphic style. A decorative pattern without the cultural knowledge that produced it is only one fragment of the tradition.

141.9 Sikki, sujni and other crafts survive through viable making

Craft heritage depends on materials, skill, time and a market or social use that makes production worthwhile. Sikki grass work, embroidery, basketry, pottery and household craft practices cannot be sustained by displaying a few exemplary objects while artisans leave the occupation because earnings are too low. Nor should livelihood policy require artisans to reproduce only museum-era designs. Product innovation, design collaboration and new markets can support transmission when practitioners retain bargaining power and attribution. The key indicator is whether younger people can learn the skill and imagine a viable future using it.

Four regional examples: what keeps culture alive?

Practice / bearer	Heritage pressure	Living response	Safeguarding priority
Mithila painting ritual + professional art	tourist stereotype / copying	new media, signed work, teaching	artist income + authorship
Chhath household + neighbourhood ritual	spectacle / crowd management	urban ghats, migrant observance	safe access + ecological base
Tirhuta / Mithilakshar scribal + symbolic script	museum-only nostalgia	fonts, Unicode, learning tools	usable literacy + digital support
Panji / Saurath genealogical knowledge + marriage practice	archival fossilisation	digitisation, new uses, critique	provenance + ethical access

Examples are analytical: each tradition contains internal variation, disagreement and unequal access to authority.

Figure 561 — Four regional examples show that safeguarding priorities differ by cultural form; visibility alone does not keep a practice alive.

141.10 Bhagalpur silk joins industrial history to living craft knowledge

Bhagalpur's silk economy shows the overlap between heritage, industry and labour. Silk is not only a celebrated regional product; it is a chain of rearing, yarn, dyeing, weaving, design, trading and wage relations. Heritage branding that highlights the finished cloth while ignoring labour conditions gives an incomplete account. Conversely, industrial modernisation that eliminates specialised knowledge without documenting or transmitting it can narrow cultural capability. A living-heritage approach asks how technological change can improve productivity, safety and income while keeping skilled knowledge available to future producers.

141.11 Chhath is living culture because it reorganises everyday space

Chhath is not preserved principally in a museum or archive. It is reproduced through household preparation, fasting, songs, offerings, kin labour, water access and collective management of ghats and routes. Urbanisation changes its material setting: municipalities clean riverbanks and ponds, temporary structures are built, traffic is redirected, lighting and safety systems are added, and migrant communities recreate the observance far from the Gangetic plain. These changes are not external to the ritual; they are part of its contemporary life. Safeguarding therefore includes environmental quality, public safety and equitable access to ritual space rather than only symbolic promotion.

141.12 Sama-Chakeva illustrates the ecological and seasonal dimension of culture

Seasonal festivals such as Sama-Chakeva connect song, craft, kinship, agricultural calendars and ideas about birds and migration. When ecological conditions, clay availability, leisure time or patterns of migration change, the festival's practice can also change. A heritage programme that documents lyrics but ignores the seasonal and environmental setting preserves only part of the tradition. This is one reason UNESCO increasingly connects living heritage with sustainable development and climate-sensitive safeguarding. Cultural continuity can depend on ponds, riverbanks, grasses, clay, crops and other material ecologies.

141.13 Janakpur and Vivah Panchami show transborder heritage in motion

Janakpur's ritual and pilgrimage life crosses the India–Nepal border through stories of Sita and Rama, marriage symbolism, temple networks, processions, visitors, transport and commerce. Vivah Panchami is therefore both a ritual event and a transborder public economy. Its significance cannot be reduced to the Janaki Mandir as architecture, just as the temple cannot be understood apart from ritual life. Federal borders, municipal services, tourism promotion and media coverage shape how the event is experienced, while pilgrims and local residents continue to create its meaning. Here, heritage is a corridor of movement rather than a bounded object.

141.14 Saurath Sabha and Panji knowledge reveal the difference between archive and institution

The Panji tradition and Saurath Sabha are often described as heritage because of their antiquity and documentary value. Yet historically they were also institutions that organised information, marriage negotiation and social authority. Their contemporary significance is therefore complicated. Manuscripts require conservation and digitisation, but the social rules once enforced through genealogical institutions

cannot be treated as automatically desirable simply because they are old. Safeguarding an archive is different from endorsing every past hierarchy recorded in it. A critical heritage practice can preserve provenance, technical knowledge and historical evidence while allowing social institutions to change.

141.15 Language is one of the clearest forms of living heritage

Maithili, Angika and Bajjika survive through use, not through commemoration alone. Grammars, dictionaries, awards and academies are important, but a language remains living when people use it in homes, schools, songs, markets, offices, broadcasts, literature and digital exchange. Chapter 140 showed that recognition regimes differ sharply. The heritage perspective adds another question: does institutional recognition create new speakers, readers and writers, or does it merely certify a prestigious past? Language safeguarding should expand domains of use while allowing registers, vocabulary and media practices to evolve.

141.16 Tirhuta/Mithilakshar shows how digital technology can reverse archival confinement

A script can survive physically in manuscripts yet become socially inaccessible if few people can read or type it. Tirhuta/Mithilakshar therefore illustrates the difference between preservation and usability. Manuscript imaging protects evidence, while Unicode encoding, fonts, keyboards, learning materials and searchable text can return the script to active circulation. Digital revival does not recreate the historical scribal world unchanged. It creates a new literacy environment. That transformation is precisely what living heritage permits: continuity of cultural knowledge through a new technical infrastructure.

141.17 Oral traditions must remain performable, not merely transcribed

Songs, tales, proverbs, riddles, ritual speech and performance traditions are frequently collected as texts. Transcription is valuable, but oral culture includes voice, melody, timing, audience interaction, gesture, memory and variation. A printed lyric can preserve words while losing performance knowledge. Audio and video archives improve documentation, yet the strongest safeguard is continued performance in settings where new performers can learn. Schools, festivals and digital platforms can create additional spaces for transmission, provided that community performers are not displaced by polished stage versions presented as the only authentic form.

141.18 Food heritage lives in work, season and household knowledge

Regional food is easily converted into a tourist list of signature dishes, but living food culture is a system of crops, markets, preservation, fasting, festival calendars, caste and religious practices, gendered labour and household economy. Makhana, fish, dairy, rice preparations, sweets and festival foods have meanings that differ by place and occasion. Restaurant branding can increase visibility while detaching dishes from seasonal and social contexts. A more complete heritage approach documents recipes together with ingredients, cultivation, preparation knowledge, labour and changing nutrition. Food heritage is strongest when it remains cookable and economically accessible, not merely photographable.

141.19 Museums are changing from object-centred authority toward community participation

The International Council of Museums' 2022 definition explicitly includes both tangible and intangible heritage and emphasises accessibility, inclusion, diversity, sustainability and participation of communities.

This shift is relevant to regional collections. A museum displaying Mithila painting, archaeological material or textiles can provide conservation and interpretation, but it should also record maker names, provenance, local terminology and practitioner perspectives. Community participation does not mean abandoning scholarship; it means recognising that curatorial authority is not the only source of cultural meaning. Museums can become places where heritage is debated rather than simply certified.

One cultural ecosystem, many kinds of heritage

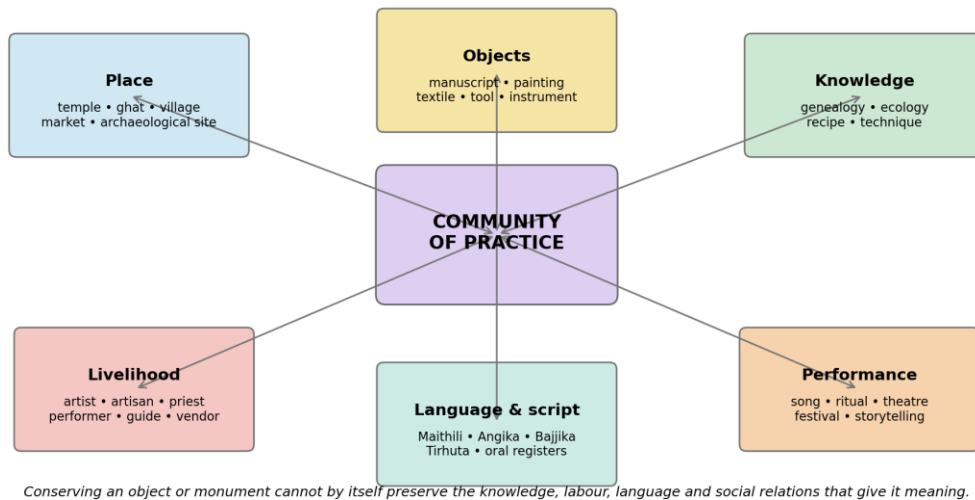


Figure 562 — Places, objects, knowledge, performance, language and livelihoods form one cultural ecosystem around communities of practice.

141.20 Archaeological heritage and living communities should not be treated as separate worlds

Vaishali, Vikramshila, Champa-associated landscapes and other archaeological sites are usually managed as material remains of past civilisations. Yet such sites also sit within contemporary settlements, pilgrimage routes, agricultural land, tourism economies and local memory. Conservation can restrict construction or access, while tourism can alter land values and livelihoods. A socially grounded heritage policy therefore considers residents as stakeholders rather than obstacles surrounding a monument. Archaeological authenticity and present-day community life require negotiation, especially where sacred use, excavation and commercial development overlap.

141.21 Sacred places accumulate new meanings while retaining old ones

Temples, shrines, mosques, dargahs, monasteries, ghats and sacred ponds are not static historical exhibits. They are maintained through worship, donations, repair, festivals, local governance and changing patterns of mobility. New construction may be criticised as a threat to architectural authenticity, yet worshippers may understand renewal as part of religious continuity. The challenge is to distinguish destructive alteration from legitimate living use. Documentation, conservation advice and negotiated management can protect historically significant fabric while acknowledging that sacred places remain active social institutions.

141.22 Festivalisation can increase visibility while narrowing meaning

Governments, tourism agencies and cultural organisations often stage festivals to promote regional identity. Such events can provide income and public recognition to artists and performers. They can also

compress complex practices into short stage segments designed for spectators. A ritual song performed for a community may become a five-minute item on a festival programme; a craft may become a demonstration detached from its normal production cycle. Festivalisation is not inherently harmful, but it should be evaluated by what returns to practitioners: income, new learners, documentation, commissions and respect, rather than visibility alone.

141.23 Digital archives preserve evidence but create new questions of control

Digitisation reduces handling of fragile manuscripts, enables dispersed access and allows audio, video and images to be copied at low cost. It can also detach material from provenance. Cropped images circulate without captions, sacred or private materials become searchable, and commercial platforms can reuse community expressions without consent. WIPO guidance on documenting traditional knowledge and cultural expressions stresses that documentation should be planned with clear objectives and an assessment of benefits and risks. Regional digital archives should therefore preserve metadata, source, rights information and uncertainty rather than treating openness as a substitute for ethics.

141.24 Intellectual property can support living culture but cannot define it

Chapter 128 examined GI, copyright, trademark and heritage branding. Those tools remain relevant here because practitioners need attribution and bargaining power. Yet legal protection does not determine cultural authenticity. A GI protects an origin-linked product name under specified conditions; copyright may protect an individual contemporary work; neither can decide whether a community's evolving practice is culturally legitimate. WIPO's work on traditional cultural expressions is useful precisely because it separates cultural continuity from the limits of ordinary IP categories. Safeguarding and rights protection should cooperate without collapsing into one another.

141.25 Tourism creates both resources and pressure

Tourism can finance transport, accommodation, guiding, crafts, food and cultural performance. It can also reward the most photogenic or easily packaged versions of culture. When visitors expect a single visual stereotype, communities may feel pressure to perform identity on demand. Sacred spaces can become congested, ritual privacy can decline, and prices around heritage sites can exclude residents. The appropriate response is not to reject tourism but to govern it. Local participation, visitor education, carrying-capacity planning and transparent benefit sharing can turn tourism revenue into support for living cultural systems.

141.26 Migration and diaspora do not simply weaken tradition; they relocate it

Migration separates people from village institutions and elders, but it also creates new cultural networks. Chhath, Maithili literary events, regional music, food, marriage networks and digital communities are reproduced in Delhi, Mumbai, the Gulf, Kathmandu and farther abroad. Diaspora practice often changes scale and symbolism because participants come from different districts, castes or language backgrounds and must share limited public space. These adaptations can produce new pan-regional identities. Living culture is therefore multi-local: transmission can take place through visits, remittances, video calls, online archives and urban associations as well as through continuous residence in an ancestral village.

141.27 Gender, caste and class shape who is authorised to represent heritage

The language of 'community heritage' can hide internal inequality. Some practices were historically controlled by particular families, castes, genders or occupational groups. Women may supply much of the

labour while men occupy public leadership; marginal groups may be represented in exhibitions but excluded from decision-making; elite versions of language and ritual may receive institutional preference. Community participation must therefore be specific: which practitioners, which generation, which neighbourhood, and who controls money and documentation? Heritage policy becomes more credible when it treats disagreement within communities as evidence rather than as a problem to be concealed.

141.28 Visibility is not a sufficient measure of safeguarding

A tradition may be famous and still be weak. Paintings can be internationally recognisable while artists remain poorly paid; a festival can attract huge crowds while local water bodies deteriorate; a script can appear on logos while few people learn to read it; a craft can be displayed in museums while apprentices disappear. Figure 563 therefore proposes a broader dashboard: transmission, participation, adaptability, livelihood, access, ecological sustainability, rights and documentation. These indicators focus on cultural capability rather than publicity. They also allow policy to identify where a highly visible heritage label conceals a fragile practice.

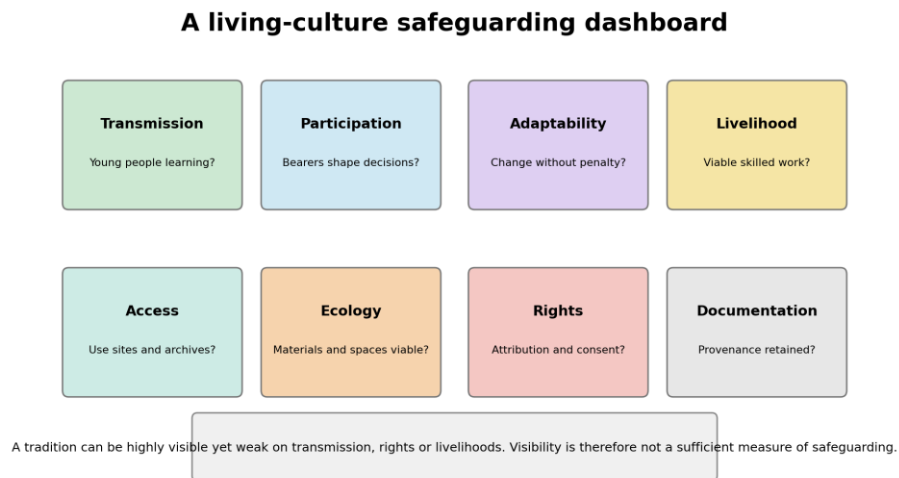


Figure 563 — A living-culture dashboard evaluates transmission, participation, adaptability, livelihood, access, ecology, rights and documentation rather than publicity alone.

141.29 A producer- and practitioner-centred safeguarding policy

A practical safeguarding programme for Mithila, Vajji and Anga would begin with practitioners rather than with a catalogue. It would identify transmission chains, document provenance, support teaching and apprenticeship, improve access to cultural spaces and materials, strengthen artist and performer income, protect archives, and create mechanisms for consent and attribution. Museums, universities, schools, local governments, tourism bodies and digital platforms would cooperate but would not claim exclusive authority. Inventories would be revised because living practices change. Evaluation would ask whether communities have greater capacity to continue and reinterpret their culture, not whether every performance looks like an earlier photograph.

141.30 Conclusion: living culture is heritage with a future tense

The phrase 'cultural heritage versus living culture' names a danger rather than an unavoidable choice. Heritage becomes destructive when it converts practice into an untouchable specimen, but it can be enabling when recognition supplies resources, memory, rights and new spaces for transmission. The region's most

resilient cultural forms have survived through adaptation: paintings changed medium, rituals moved across cities and countries, scripts entered digital code, languages moved into new media, and archives acquired new publics. The objective of safeguarding is therefore not to prevent change. It is to keep the capacity to change in the hands of people who inherit, practise and remake the culture. A living culture is not heritage preserved from the present; it is heritage capable of producing a future.

Table 141.1 — Evidence architecture for distinguishing heritage recognition from living cultural viability

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 141	Main limitation
UNESCO 2003 Convention	community recognition, transmission, constant recreation	conceptual baseline for living heritage	international framework; does not substitute for local evidence
UNESCO safeguarding guidance	participation, inventorying, education, economic dimensions	tests whether policy supports transmission	guidance must be adapted to each practice
Museum / archive records	objects, provenance, conservation and interpretation	documents material survival and curatorial framing	collection survival does not prove living transmission
Practitioner interviews / associations	skills, learning routes, innovation, constraints	central evidence for community agency	not always systematically archived
Festival and ritual observation	participation, space, labour, performance change	shows culture in use	single events can overstate continuity
Market / livelihood evidence	prices, commissions, wages, buyer channels	tests economic viability of cultural work	sales do not measure cultural meaning
Language / education records	speakers, curricula, exams, publication and broadcasting	measures domains of active use	institutional presence may not equal everyday use
Digital archives / platform records	reach, documentation, reuse and new publics	tracks digital transmission and exposure	provenance and rights can be lost
GI / IP records	registered origin claims and legal rights	supports attribution and market governance	legal status does not define authenticity
Environmental / site records	water, materials, land, conservation and access	reveals ecological conditions for practice	environmental data need cultural interpretation
Cross-border evidence	India–Nepal institutions, pilgrimage and diaspora	tests mobility of living culture	legal categories differ across states

Chapter 142 — The Future of the Regional Cultural Economy

Chapter 142 closes PART XIV by asking a deliberately economic question without reducing culture to merchandise: what would allow the cultural life of Mithila, Vajji and Anga to generate durable livelihoods, institutions and public value over the next decade? The answer cannot be a single market forecast. The region has no official statistical boundary called ‘Mithila–Vajji–Anga’, and the activities involved — painting, crafts, silk, publishing, festivals, pilgrimage, music, theatre, video, language technology, archives, museums, design and digital creation — are scattered across different industrial and administrative classifications. A defensible account must therefore combine sectoral evidence with a value-chain approach and must distinguish regional opportunity from national or global statistics.

The chapter treats the cultural economy as a system in which cultural practice, intellectual property, skills, tourism, media, digital infrastructure, finance and public institutions interact. Global and Indian evidence shows that creative industries are expanding, especially through digital services, but those aggregates do not prove that a Madhubani painter, Angika performer, Bajjika creator, Bhagalpur weaver or Janakpur cultural entrepreneur will automatically benefit. The central policy test is distribution: whether new visibility increases practitioner income, bargaining power, transmission and local reinvestment, or merely enlarges the revenue of platforms, intermediaries and destination businesses outside the producing community. The future is therefore best understood as a set of institutional choices rather than as an inevitable growth curve.

142.1 The regional cultural economy is larger than the handicraft sector

A regional cultural economy includes far more than objects sold as handicrafts. It includes the labour of painters, weavers, printers, writers, musicians, theatre groups, ritual specialists, guides, photographers, videographers, translators, teachers, designers, archivists, publishers, museum workers, festival organisers, cooks, transport workers and digital creators. It also includes the infrastructure that makes cultural work possible: schools, libraries, studios, rehearsal spaces, temples and shrines, heritage sites, markets, mobile networks, payment systems and archives. Some activity is commercial, some publicly funded and some unpaid or reciprocal. The future cannot therefore be measured only by craft sales or tourist arrivals. A region can have famous heritage and a weak cultural economy if practitioners cannot earn, young people cannot enter, venues are absent, and rights or market information are controlled elsewhere. The appropriate unit is an ecosystem of linked livelihoods and institutions.

142.2 No official dataset gives a single market size for Mithila, Vajji and Anga

The absence of a single statistical boundary is a methodological constraint, not a reason to invent a number. Bihar’s economic and tourism data are state-wide; Nepal’s data are national or provincial; GI records classify products by legal geography; platform data are proprietary; and many cultural workers operate informally or combine culture with agriculture, migration, teaching or household work. Any estimate of a ‘regional cultural economy’ would therefore depend on arbitrary inclusion rules. A better approach is to build a dashboard from observable components: artisan and creator counts where registries exist, enterprise registrations, sales and commissions, tourist and pilgrim expenditure, event employment, export records, digital transactions, publishing output, venue activity, licensing income and training participation. Over time these indicators can reveal whether the ecosystem is deepening without pretending to produce a false single GDP figure.

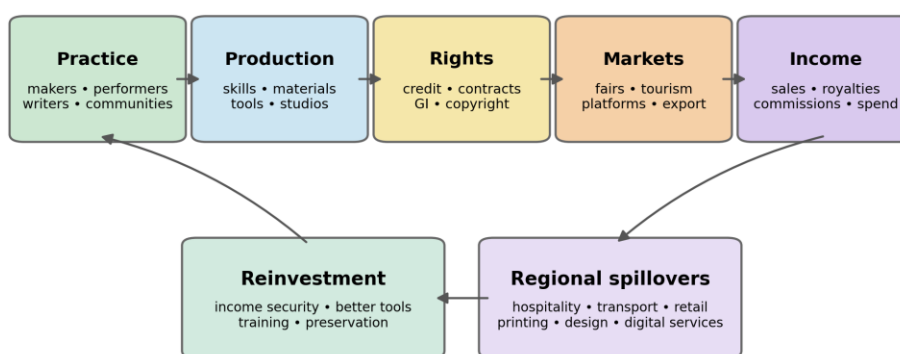
142.3 Global creative-economy growth provides context, not a regional forecast

UNCTAD's Creative Economy Outlook 2024 shows why cultural production now belongs inside mainstream economic analysis. Across countries responding to its survey, creative industries contributed from 0.5 to 7.3 percent of GDP and from 0.5 to 12.5 percent of employment. Global creative-services exports reached about US\$1.4 trillion in 2022, up 29 percent from 2017, while creative-goods exports reached US\$713 billion. UNESCO's 2025 global cultural-policy report places cultural and creative industries at about 3.39 percent of global GDP and 3.55 percent of employment. These figures establish scale, not a benchmark that can be copied onto Bihar or Madhesh. Their relevance is structural: growth increasingly comes from services, digital distribution and intellectual property, while market concentration and unequal access remain major risks. The regional opportunity is therefore real but institution-dependent.

142.4 India's 'Orange Economy' policy creates a new national opportunity structure

India's Economic Survey 2025–26 explicitly treats the 'Orange Economy' — activity driven by creativity, culture and intellectual property — as an emerging services frontier. Government material associated with the 2026–27 Budget describes the media and entertainment sector at about ₹2.5 trillion in 2024 and proposes AVGC Content Creator Labs in 15,000 secondary schools and 500 colleges, while the Indian Institute of Creative Technologies is intended to support a rapidly expanding talent pipeline. These are national initiatives, not evidence of automatic regional allocation. Their significance for Mithila, Vajji and Anga is that creative careers are becoming legible to education, skills and industrial policy. The regional task is to connect that national infrastructure to local-language storytelling, animation, documentary, design, music, games and heritage content rather than allowing opportunity to remain concentrated in metropolitan production centres.

From cultural practice to a regional cultural economy



Durability comes when value returns to practitioners and local capabilities.

Figure 564 — A regional cultural economy turns living practice into skills, rights, markets, income and reinvestment rather than treating visibility as the endpoint.

142.5 Small towns and rural creators can now reach markets without first relocating

The creator economy changes the geography of cultural work because production and distribution can occur from small towns if connectivity, equipment, skills and payments are reliable. A Maithili storyteller in

Darbhangha, an Angika musician in Bhagalpur, a Bajjika video creator near Muzaffarpur or an artist in Janakpur can publish directly, build an audience and receive commissions without permanent relocation. India's 2026 'Gems of India' pilot is explicitly designed around district-level discovery of grassroots digital creators, illustrating this shift in policy attention. Yet digital access does not eliminate geography. Reliable broadband, electricity, quiet work space, cameras, microphones, editing systems, banking and legal literacy still shape who can participate. A future-ready regional cultural policy would therefore treat creator infrastructure as a small-town development issue, not only as a media-sector programme.

142.6 Crafts remain productive industries even as the economy becomes more digital

Digital growth should not lead policy to treat material craft as an obsolete heritage niche. Painting, sikki work, sujni embroidery, textile production, wood and bamboo work, ceremonial objects and other craft forms combine cultural knowledge with labour-intensive production. Their economic future depends on material supply, design capability, time, credit, quality control, logistics and price discovery. The SFURTI programme's Traditional Painting Cluster in Madhubani records 600 artisans and sanctioned support of ₹147.89 lakh; this is a programme record rather than a current census of all active painters, but it demonstrates the scale at which cluster policy can operate. The deeper question is whether common facilities and marketing actually reduce individual costs and increase net artisan income. Future evaluation should follow household earnings and repeat orders, not only infrastructure created or people enrolled.

142.7 Mithila painting needs a market architecture that keeps the artist visible

Mithila painting is the region's most internationally recognisable visual-art economy, but recognition can hide unequal value capture. The future market should distinguish originals, commissioned works, workshop products, licensed reproductions and machine-made imitations; attach maker identity to the object; make price and commission structures more transparent; and give artists access to high-quality photography, cataloguing, digital payment and shipping. The GI for Madhubani Paintings remains an important origin-based asset, but a GI is not a substitute for artist attribution, copyright, contracts or platform enforcement. A producer-centred system would make it easy for buyers to identify the artist and the nature of the object while allowing artistic innovation rather than policing a frozen motif checklist. Market growth should be measured by sustainable artist income and repeat demand, not only by the visibility of the regional name.

142.8 Anga's cultural economy requires independent visibility, not absorption into a Mithila brand

A connected regional history does not require a single regional brand. Anga has its own cultural assets and market trajectories, especially Bhagalpur silk, Manjusha painting, local religious and riverine traditions, music, food and linguistic production. A future cultural economy should allow these to develop through their own names, histories and producer institutions while still benefiting from shared transport, digital, tourism and research infrastructure. Bhagalpur silk shows why this matters: it links weaving skill, raw-material supply, design, manufacturing, wholesale trade and reputation. Manjusha painting requires a different ecosystem of artists, training, documentation and markets. Combining them into a generic 'eastern Bihar heritage' package may simplify promotion but can weaken provenance. Networked branding — distinct identities connected by routes and platforms — is economically stronger than forced uniformity.

142.9 Cultural products can move from souvenirs to design-led everyday markets

Tourist souvenir demand is useful but narrow. A stronger cultural economy expands into everyday design without stripping products of provenance. Painting can enter publishing, textiles, interiors and licensed digital products; sikki and fibre work can serve home and lifestyle markets; traditional motifs can support contemporary graphic design when creators are credited and licensed; silk can move between ceremonial, fashion and premium everyday uses. This shift requires design collaboration that is negotiated rather than extractive. Designers should work with makers on product function, material cost, quality and price, while contracts specify ownership of new designs and reuse rights. The objective is not to make every object ‘modern’ but to give practitioners multiple market segments so that one weak tourism season or one fashion trend does not determine livelihood security.

142.10 Tourism and pilgrimage can anchor a wider local service economy

Tourism converts cultural reputation into demand for transport, lodging, food, guiding, retail, performance and craft. India’s Tourism Data Compendium 2025 reports 65.463 million domestic tourist visits and 0.737 million foreign tourist visits to Bihar in 2024; these are state-wide visit counts, not unique persons and not specific to Mithila, Vajji or Anga. Their value here is to show the scale of the potential visitor economy. The central regional question is retention: how much visitor expenditure remains with local guides, small hotels, restaurants, artists, performers and transport providers. Destination growth that increases traffic but channels spending to external operators has weak local multiplier effects. Cultural-economy policy should therefore link destination management to local procurement, verified craft retail, food enterprises, multilingual interpretation and event calendars rather than treating monuments and temples as isolated attractions.

Four market channels — and where value can leak away

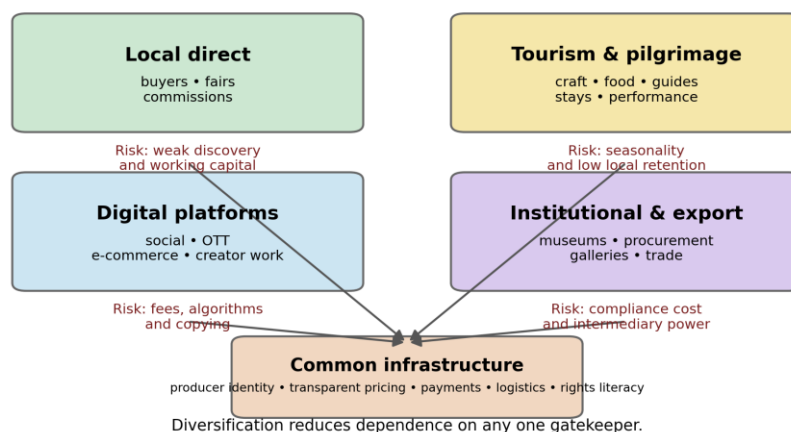


Figure 565 — Local, tourism, digital and institutional markets offer different opportunities and leakage risks; shared infrastructure reduces dependence on any one channel.

142.11 Janakpur can become a transborder cultural-economy hub rather than only a pilgrimage stop

Janakpur combines religious significance, Mithila art, festivals, ponds, urban services and India–Nepal mobility. The Nepal Tourism Board’s Madhesh Tourism Meet 2025 brought together more than forty travel and tour operators from India and a comparable number from Nepal and explicitly promoted linkages with

Sitamarhi, Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Patna, Varanasi and Ayodhya. This provides an institutional example of how cultural geography can be converted into business networks. The future opportunity is not simply more arrivals at Janaki Mandir. It is multi-day itineraries connecting art studios, food, performances, archives, festivals and nearby landscapes, with reliable transport and booking information in relevant languages. The Madhesh Province Tourism Act 2081 also provides a provincial legal frame within which such destination and enterprise systems can be developed.

142.12 Festivals should be planned as temporary cities with local procurement rules

Chhath, Vivah Panchami, Sama-Chakeva, fairs, urs, melas and other public events create short periods of intense economic activity. Transport demand rises; temporary retail appears; food, flowers, ritual goods and decorative products are sold; photographers and media workers are hired; accommodation fills; and municipalities bear sanitation, lighting, crowd and water-management costs. The future festival economy should therefore be planned like a temporary city. Organisers and local governments can publish vendor rules, allocate safe spaces, provide digital and cash payment options, protect small sellers from arbitrary exclusion and document local procurement. Cultural programming should not crowd out the ritual or community practice that created the event. The most useful economic indicator is not total attendance alone but the distribution of spending, temporary jobs, local enterprise participation and the public cost of hosting the event.

142.13 Maithili, Angika and Bajjika are productive infrastructure, not only identity symbols

Language becomes economic infrastructure when it enables publishing, teaching, translation, broadcasting, customer service, tourism interpretation, subtitling, voice technology and digital discovery. Chapter 140 showed that Maithili, Angika and Bajjika occupy different legal and institutional positions; the future cultural economy should not erase those differences. Maithili's constitutional recognition and larger publishing infrastructure create one set of opportunities, while Angika and Bajjika need stronger corpus, dictionary, educational and media resources to participate on comparable technical terms. Public funding should reward actual language use in books, audio, video, software and cultural services, not only commemorative events. A local-language economy grows when speakers can work professionally as writers, editors, translators, teachers, narrators, subtitlers, researchers and language-technology contributors.

142.14 Publishing can survive by becoming multi-format rather than print-only

Regional publishing faces high unit costs, limited distribution and fragmented readership, but digital production creates alternatives. A single scholarly or literary work can become print, e-book, searchable web text, audiobook, podcast, classroom extract and annotated archive while retaining one authoritative metadata record. This does not make print unnecessary; it changes the economics of discovery and reuse. Small publishers need shared services for copy-editing, Unicode text, cover design, ISBN and rights metadata, print-on-demand, audio production and digital distribution. Libraries and cultural institutions can support demand by purchasing regional-language books and preserving digital masters. The policy objective is a publication pipeline in which a work remains discoverable and saleable for years rather than disappearing when a small first print run is exhausted.

142.15 Music, theatre and performance need venues, documentation and rights systems

Performance economies are often invisible because earnings occur through event fees, teaching, ceremonies, seasonal programmes and informal touring rather than formal employment. A musician or theatre group needs rehearsal space, sound equipment, transport, booking, publicity and predictable payment. Documentation can extend a performance's life through recordings and clips, but it also raises rights questions about performers, composers, writers and organisers. India's recent Orange Economy policy has created a Live Events Development Cell and national creator initiatives, indicating broader institutional recognition of live performance as an economic sector. Regional policy should translate that recognition into small venues, transparent festival contracts, local-language ticketing and archival recording. A healthy ecosystem lets artists earn both from live work and from licensed digital circulation without requiring every performer to become a full-time influencer.

142.16 Film, video, animation and games can convert regional stories into new intellectual property

The strongest future opportunity may lie not in digitising existing heritage but in creating new works from regional experience. History, folktales, migration, rivers, cities, philosophical traditions, children's literature and contemporary youth culture can support documentary, fiction, animation, educational media and games. The national AVGC push and creator-lab programme lower the conceptual barrier between 'culture' and technology, but regional participation will depend on skills, equipment and language capability. New intellectual property should not be measured by the number of videos uploaded. The relevant indicators are completed productions, paid creative roles, rights ownership, licensing, audience retention and the ability of teams based in the region to undertake higher-value editing, animation, sound, research and design rather than only supplying low-paid content inputs.

142.17 Social media is a discovery layer, not a stable business model by itself

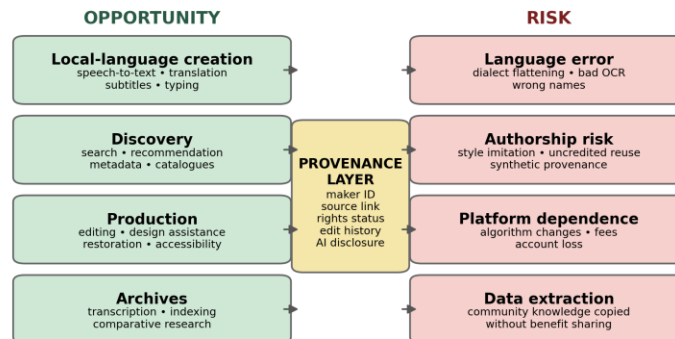
Social media can make an artist, singer, writer or destination visible at very low initial cost, but platform reach is volatile. Algorithms change, accounts can be suspended, short-form formats can reward repetition, and audience numbers do not necessarily translate into income. A future-proof creator strategy should therefore use platforms to build discoverability while retaining independent assets: a verified website or catalogue, email or messaging lists, payment links, rights records, high-resolution masters and customer data collected lawfully with consent. Public creator programmes can help with digital literacy, but they should teach business continuity as well as content production. The goal is to prevent a cultural livelihood from disappearing when one platform changes its rules. Platform analytics are useful evidence, but they should be interpreted alongside actual sales, commissions, bookings and licensing.

142.18 Local-language AI can reduce production costs but raises new risks of extraction

Artificial intelligence can lower barriers to transcription, translation, subtitling, image description, restoration, search, editing and educational adaptation. For Maithili, Angika, Bajjika and Tirhuta-related material, these tools could make large archives and media collections more accessible if models and datasets handle the languages accurately. Yet low-resource languages face distinctive risks: spelling and dialect variation may be flattened, OCR can silently corrupt names, machine translation can invent meaning, and generative systems can imitate visual or literary styles without clear provenance or benefit sharing. The

correct policy is neither technological rejection nor blind adoption. Cultural institutions need source-linked workflows, human review, version histories, disclosure of synthetic assistance and rights-aware training data. AI should increase the productivity of creators and archivists without making authorship less visible.

Digital and AI transition: opportunity must be paired with provenance



The policy goal is not to reject AI, but to make synthetic assistance auditable while preserving language diversity, authorship and community control.

Figure 566 — Digital and AI tools can improve language creation, discovery, production and archives only when a provenance layer protects source, authorship, rights and edit history.

142.19 Digital archives should become trusted cultural infrastructure rather than dead storage

Digitisation has economic value when it improves discovery, research, education and lawful reuse. Manuscript images, oral recordings, catalogues, performance video and historic photographs need persistent identifiers, descriptive metadata, rights statements and links back to sources. Searchable archives can support documentaries, exhibitions, school materials, tourism interpretation and scholarly publishing, creating demand for researchers, translators and digital technicians. But an archive should not become an uncontrolled source pool from which commercial actors extract community knowledge without attribution. Access levels may differ for public-domain material, copyrighted works, sensitive community records and commercially licensable images. The future regional cultural economy therefore needs repository governance as much as scanning capacity. Trustworthy archives reduce transaction costs because users can determine what an item is, where it came from and what they are allowed to do with it.

142.20 Intellectual property should be treated as a portfolio, not a single solution

No one intellectual-property tool can protect the regional cultural economy. Copyright can protect original contemporary works; trademarks can identify enterprises and collective brands; GIs can protect qualifying geographical indications; design rights may apply to specific designs; contracts allocate rights and payment in commissions; performers' rights matter for recorded performance; and unfair-competition rules can address misleading commercial conduct. WIPO's work on traditional cultural expressions and handicrafts emphasises this plural architecture. The practical challenge is accessibility. A painter or singer rarely needs an abstract lecture on IP; they need model invoices, commission contracts, licensing terms, takedown procedures, proof of authorship and advice on when registration is useful. Local rights clinics linked to universities, producer organisations or cultural institutions could turn law into everyday market infrastructure.

142.21 The Madhubani GI should be evaluated through authorised use and market outcomes

The public GI register continues to show Madhubani Paintings as registered, with a certificate date of 16 May 2007, displayed validity to 21 August 2025 and a renewal notice dated 26 November 2024. Because the public entry does not display a new renewed expiry date, the responsible approach remains to report exactly what the register shows rather than inventing one. For the future cultural economy, the key issue is not the existence of the label but its operational reach: who is registered or able to participate as an authorised user, whether buyers recognise the indication, whether misuse is challenged, and whether the system improves net producer returns. IP India's authorised-user register is therefore more economically informative than celebratory references to GI status alone. A GI becomes valuable when it changes market behaviour and strengthens producer organisation.

142.22 Working capital is as important as grants for cultural enterprises

Cultural businesses often fail for cash-flow reasons even when demand exists. An artist must buy paper and pigments before a sale; a weaver needs yarn before delivery; a theatre group incurs travel and rehearsal costs before payment; a publisher pays editing and printing before recovering revenue; a festival vendor buys stock in advance. Grants can create equipment or visibility, but working capital, payment discipline and affordable credit determine whether enterprises survive between orders. Financial products should therefore match cultural cash cycles and accept forms of evidence other than conventional factory collateral. Digital transaction histories, purchase orders and verified commissions may help demonstrate turnover, but data must not become a new barrier. Producer groups can also pool logistics and inventory. The future cultural economy needs ordinary business reliability as much as exceptional cultural recognition.

142.23 Skills policy should combine apprenticeship with new technical capabilities

Cultural skill is not divided neatly between 'traditional' and 'modern'. A painter may need pigment knowledge, drawing, photography, pricing and social-media literacy; a musician may need repertoire, performance, microphones and rights management; a publisher may need language editing, typography, metadata and audio production. Apprenticeship remains crucial because embodied techniques are difficult to learn from manuals alone, but schools, colleges and creator labs can add technical and entrepreneurial capability. The national content-creator-lab programme offers one potential infrastructure, while regional institutions can build specialised modules around local languages and forms. Training quality should be measured by subsequent work and earnings, not certificates issued. Mentor payment is also important: experienced practitioners should not be expected to transmit commercially valuable knowledge for free while institutions receive the programme credit.

142.24 Women's participation must be measured through control of income and rights

Many of the region's strongest cultural practices depend on women's labour, including painting, ritual production, song, embroidery, food knowledge and household transmission. Market expansion can create income but can also shift control toward male intermediaries when sales move from household or local networks into galleries, tourism firms or digital platforms. A gender-sensitive cultural economy therefore asks who holds the bank account, signs the contract, owns the enterprise, controls the digital login, is credited as creator and decides how revenue is used. Women's producer groups can improve bargaining and logistics,

but collective structures should not erase individual authorship. Childcare, safe travel, flexible training and local production spaces are economic infrastructure because they determine whether women can accept commissions, attend fairs or participate in professional networks.

142.25 Youth retention depends on making cultural work a credible career, not a symbolic duty

Young people will not remain in or return to cultural work simply because elders describe it as heritage. They compare income, status, mobility and working conditions with education, government examinations, migration and private-sector jobs. A future cultural economy must therefore create visible progression: beginner, skilled practitioner, designer, producer, researcher, curator, technician, entrepreneur and teacher. Digital media can make regional culture attractive to new audiences, but unpaid visibility is not a career ladder. Paid apprenticeships, commissions, creator residencies, production grants tied to deliverables, festival circuits and access to equipment can make cultural work legible as employment. Return migrants may also bring savings, language skills, marketing experience and networks that can be invested in hospitality, media or cultural enterprise if business support is available.

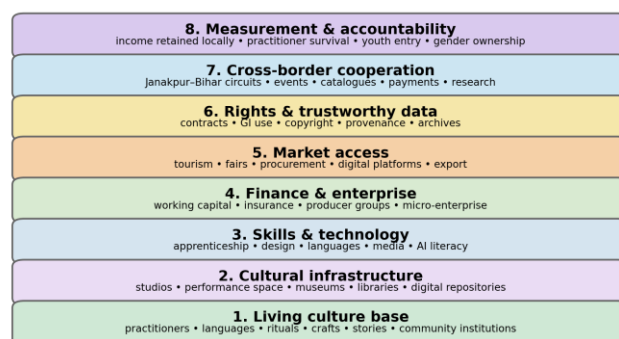
142.26 Diaspora demand can finance cultural production if the relationship is reciprocal

Migration has created Maithili-, Angika- and Bajjika-speaking communities across Indian cities, Nepal, the Gulf and beyond. Diaspora households consume books, music, religious media, festival services, art, clothing and food associated with home, and they can sponsor cultural events or archives. The risk is a nostalgia market that rewards only familiar symbols and freezes producers into repetition. A stronger relationship treats diaspora audiences as patrons, customers, collaborators and investors while allowing creators at home to innovate. Digital catalogues, transparent international shipping, licensed downloads, online performances and membership models can reduce transaction costs. Diaspora institutions can also commission documentation or translation, but governance should keep source communities and creators in decision-making roles. Cultural finance works best when it strengthens the production base rather than extracting symbolic authenticity.

142.27 India–Nepal cooperation can turn a borderland into a connected cultural market

The cultural economy of Mithila is inherently transborder, but economic and legal systems remain national. Janakpur and adjoining Bihar share pilgrimage, marriage narratives, language, art, festivals and family networks while operating under different currencies, tax systems, IP regimes, tourism rules and payment infrastructures. The Madhesh Tourism Meet 2025 demonstrates institutional willingness to build cross-border circuits. Future cooperation can go further through joint event calendars, bilingual destination information, reciprocal research access, artist exchanges, museum and archive partnerships, verified craft catalogues and interoperable booking and payment information where law permits. The objective is not to erase the border but to lower information and coordination costs. A connected cultural market can increase length of stay and audience size while preserving the territorial rules governing business and intellectual property.

A 2026–2035 policy stack for the regional cultural economy



Higher layers cannot substitute for the base: investment works only when living practices, practitioners and community institutions remain viable.

Figure 567 — A 2026–2035 cultural-economy policy stack begins with living culture and builds skills, infrastructure, finance, markets, rights, cross-border cooperation and measurable accountability above it.

142.28 Sustainability means protecting materials, water, climate resilience and carrying capacity

Cultural economies depend on ecological systems. Grass, bamboo, dyes, silk, paper, water bodies, river landscapes and seasonal calendars are material inputs or cultural settings. Climate change and pollution can therefore raise production costs or undermine cultural practice. Tourism and large festivals can also overload water, waste and transport systems. Sustainable cultural policy should track material sourcing, encourage repair and reuse, support low-waste packaging, protect ponds and ghats, and incorporate heat and flood planning into venues and events. Environmental standards should be designed with small producers so compliance does not simply exclude them. ‘Green’ branding is not sufficient; the relevant question is whether cultural production and visitation can continue without degrading the ecological base on which the practice or destination depends.

142.29 Success should be measured by retained value, transmission and agency

The future of the regional cultural economy cannot be judged by visitor counts, social-media views, GI labels or festival attendance alone. A useful dashboard would track median and distribution of practitioner income; repeat commissions; share of final sale price retained by makers; number and survival of cultural enterprises; women’s ownership and control of revenue; paid youth apprenticeships and entry; active use of Maithili, Angika and Bajjika in commercial and professional content; visitor spending retained locally; rights registrations or contracts actually used; digital reach converted to sales or bookings; and the survival of source practices, materials and community institutions. Data should be disaggregated by place, gender, social group and market channel where lawful and feasible. Measurement is not bureaucracy for its own sake; it prevents public policy from confusing publicity with livelihood improvement.

142.30 Conclusion: the strongest cultural economy increases the freedom to create

The future of the regional cultural economy will not be secured by turning every tradition into a product. It will be secured when cultural knowledge can support dignified work without losing the freedom to change, refuse, reinterpret or remain non-commercial. Mithila painting, Manjusha art, Bhagalpur silk, regional languages, festivals, performance, publishing, pilgrimage and digital creation have different value chains, but they require a common institutional foundation: skills, rights, finance, infrastructure,

trustworthy data, market access and practitioner agency. National Orange Economy policy, global digital growth and expanding tourism create opportunities, yet the decisive work remains regional and local. If income, rights and decision-making return to creators and communities, culture can generate economic resilience while remaining alive. If value is captured elsewhere, visibility may rise while the cultural base weakens. The policy objective is therefore not maximum monetisation; it is a durable ecology in which people can afford to keep creating.

Table 142.1 — Evidence architecture for measuring the future of the regional cultural economy

Evidence source	What it establishes	Use in Chapter 142	Main limitation
UNCTAD / UNESCO creative-economy reports	global scale, trade, employment and policy trends	context for structural opportunity	global aggregates cannot be applied directly to the region
Economic Survey / Orange Economy policy	national M&E and creator-economy direction	identifies new skills and platform infrastructure	national policy does not prove regional allocation or outcomes
Tourism statistics	state/province visitor flows and destination context	tests market opportunity and seasonality	visits are not unique persons and do not show local spending retention
Artisan / cluster programme records	registered participants, facilities and public support	tracks production-side capacity	programme enrolment is not a census of active practitioners
GI and authorised-user registers	legal status, proprietor, users and documents	tests whether origin protection is operational	registration alone does not reveal producer income
Enterprise and sales records	turnover, orders, repeat customers, enterprise survival	measures commercial viability	informal activity and cash sales may be missed
Platform analytics	reach, audience geography, engagement and conversion	measures digital discovery	platform-defined metrics are volatile and proprietary
Contracts / licensing / royalty records	rights ownership, commissions and revenue sharing	tests value distribution	private contracts may not be publicly accessible
Publishing / media / venue records	titles, performances, broadcasts, screenings and events	measures cultural production volume	output counts do not establish quality or income
Household / practitioner surveys	income mix, unpaid work, time, barriers and aspirations	captures lived livelihood conditions	sampling and self-report require careful design
Archive / repository metadata	provenance, preservation, access and reuse	measures knowledge infrastructure	digitisation does not by itself prove active transmission
Cross-border programme and trade data	India–Nepal routes, events, payments and exchange	tests regional connectedness	national systems use non-comparable categories

GAJENDRA THAKUR

PART XV

SYNTHESIS

Chapters 143–150

Chapter 143 — The *longue durée* of social change

PART XV turns from sectoral and period-specific analysis to synthesis. Chapter 143 asks what becomes visible when the social history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga is examined across very long spans of time rather than divided into isolated ancient, medieval, colonial and contemporary compartments. The term *longue durée* is useful only if it does not flatten change. Rivers, settlement corridors, agrarian land, kinship, languages and sacred places can persist for centuries, but the institutions that organise them repeatedly change. A riverine plain may remain densely settled while property rights, labour relations, market access, state boundaries and migration strategies are transformed around it.

This chapter therefore treats continuity as historically produced. It does not assume that a present-day caste category, linguistic identity, marriage rule, religious institution or regional boundary existed unchanged in the past. The governing method remains the one established throughout Volume II: archaeological evidence for prehistoric and early agrarian phases; inscriptions, coins and securely dated texts for ancient society; manuscripts, land grants and genealogical records under dating control for medieval change; settlement, census, revenue, print and administrative sources for the colonial period; and official statistics, surveys, legislation and peer-reviewed research for the contemporary period. The aim is synthesis without timeless essences.

143.1 *Longue durée* is a scale of analysis, not a claim that society stood still

Long-duration history asks which structures survive across several political regimes and which processes alter them slowly enough to escape event-centred narratives. In this region, river systems, alluvial soils, dense settlement, cross-border mobility and the household have unusually long histories. Yet none is socially self-explanatory. The Kosi does not generate one fixed social order; land around it can be cultivated under different tenures, embanked under different engineering regimes and inhabited by households whose income increasingly comes from migration. A *longue durée* approach therefore separates persistence of physical or institutional form from persistence of social meaning. The same village, shrine, script or marriage network can occupy a different place in economy and authority at different dates.

143.2 Environment shaped possibilities without mechanically determining society

The plains of Mithila, Vajji and Anga were created and repeatedly reworked by Himalayan and Gangetic river systems. Floodplains, wetlands, diara lands, chauras, forests and better-drained tracts offered different possibilities for cultivation, fishing, grazing, transport and settlement. These ecologies constrained action but did not dictate a single social outcome. Drainage works, embankments, irrigation pumps, roads and changing crops altered the economic meaning of terrain. Environmental history therefore enters social history through institutions: who controls water, who bears flood loss, who can relocate, who owns raised land and who receives compensation. Ecology becomes social when risk and opportunity are distributed through property, labour, state capacity and household resources.

143.3 The shift from mobile subsistence to settled production created new social dependencies

Prehistoric settlement evidence suggests a long transition from mobile or semi-mobile use of landscapes toward more durable agrarian communities. Sedentism did more than increase food production. Storage, fields, livestock and houses created assets that could be inherited, defended and differentiated. Seasonal

mobility did not disappear, but the village became a recurring unit of production and social memory. Over time, durable settlement increased the importance of rights over land and water, household labour and intergenerational transfer. The later historical prominence of village society cannot simply be projected into prehistory, yet its material preconditions developed through these much earlier changes in subsistence and settlement.

143.4 Early historic urbanisation multiplied institutions rather than replacing the countryside

The second urbanisation produced towns, markets, monetised exchange, craft specialisation and religious institutions across the middle Gangetic world. Vaishali and Champa belonged to networks that linked agrarian surplus, merchants, artisans, political authority and monastic communities. Urban growth did not create a clean divide between city and village. Towns depended on rural food, labour and transport, while villages gained access to markets, money and institutions. This village-town interdependence remained a recurring pattern in later periods. The scale and technology changed, but the social importance of nodes—market centres, pilgrimage towns, district headquarters and educational centres—persisted because they concentrated services, exchange and authority.

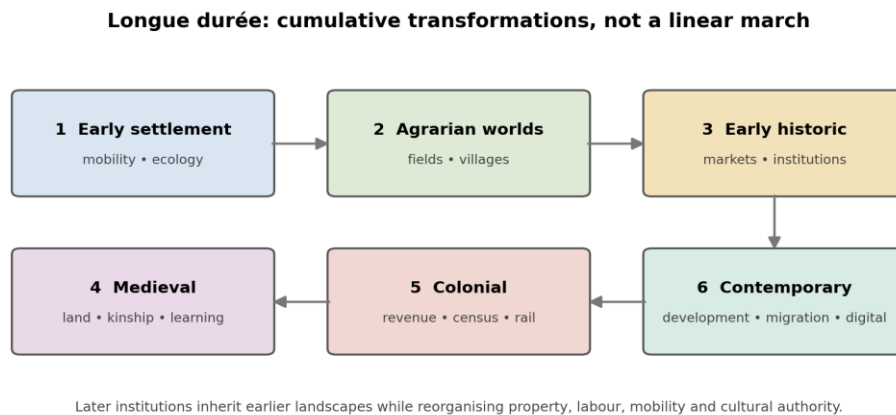


Figure 568 — The *longue durée* of social change as cumulative transformation across major historical phases.

143.5 Social differentiation preceded later fixed narratives of caste

Early historic evidence supports hierarchy, occupational differentiation and status distinctions, but it does not justify reading the fully elaborated social categories of much later centuries backwards without proof. This distinction is fundamental to the volume. Varna language, occupational labels, kin groups and political status existed in changing combinations; their historical relationship to later jati formations must be demonstrated rather than assumed. The *longue durée* of hierarchy is therefore not the timelessness of caste. What persists is the repeated production of unequal access to land, learning, ritual authority, office and labour rewards. The categories and institutions through which inequality operates change substantially across time.

143.6 Religious institutions became durable social and economic organisations

Buddhist, Jain, Brahmanical, Śaiva, Śākta, Vaiṣṇava, Islamic and later other religious formations entered the region through different historical processes. Their significance cannot be reduced to belief. Monasteries, temples, shrines, mosques, pilgrimage routes, festivals and learned lineages organised land, donations,

hospitality, education, performance and public space. Some institutions declined, others expanded, and many sacred geographies accumulated multiple layers of memory. The *longue durée* is visible in the continued importance of places such as Vaishali, Janakpur and major river ghats, but the constituencies, economies and administrative arrangements around those places changed. Religious continuity is therefore institutional reproduction under altered conditions.

143.7 Land grants and agrarian expansion reorganised authority in the early medieval period

Early medieval land grants linked political authority to rights over revenue, cultivation and settlement. Their historical importance lies not in a single theory of 'feudalism' but in the reorganisation of agrarian relations and local power. Grants could support religious or learned institutions, encourage cultivation and attach fiscal claims to specific territories. They also made land, lineage and status increasingly legible through documents. Over centuries, agrarian expansion deepened the social weight of village intermediaries and landed households. Yet grant language should not be mistaken for a complete description of everyday life: cultivators, service groups, women and mobile labour often appear only indirectly. The archive itself reflects the distribution of power.

143.8 Village, market and town formed a shifting continuum

Across medieval, early modern and colonial periods, settlements did not fit a permanent rural-urban binary. Periodic markets could serve many villages; pilgrimage centres could become commercial towns; administrative seats could attract artisans and scribes; river crossings could concentrate trade. Later roads, railways and highways changed the spacing and hierarchy of these nodes without abolishing older routes altogether. The contemporary spread of ribbon development and peri-urban growth is therefore new in scale but connected to a longer history in which mobility and exchange repeatedly reorganised settlement. Functional centrality—where people go for trade, justice, education, ritual or health—often matters more than a legal label of village or town.

143.9 Occupational specialisation changed with markets, technology and status systems

Craft, service and agricultural occupations have long structured social differentiation, but occupational communities were never frozen. New technologies altered demand; military and administrative regimes created new offices; commercial crops and transport created new labour; education opened some salaried paths; industrial decline closed others. Hereditary transmission could coexist with mobility, apprenticeship and migration. The persistence of a community name across centuries does not prove that its economic function or rank remained identical. *Longue durée* analysis must therefore reconstruct occupation as a relationship between skill, market, property, social classification and political power rather than as a timeless label.

143.10 Kinship institutions converted memory into social regulation

Genealogy became especially important in Mithila because kinship records were institutionalised in the Panji tradition and linked to marriage regulation. The Panji demonstrates how memory can become an administrative technology: lineages, places and relationships were recorded because they mattered to social decisions. Yet the surviving archive is selective and historically layered. It cannot be used to project every later category backwards. The evolution of marriage regulation also shows how households were connected to

wider institutions of status and learned authority. In the *longue durée*, kinship persists because it is repeatedly documented, interpreted and negotiated; its rules are maintained through social labour rather than by automatic continuity.

143.11 Migration and Islam created additional social worlds rather than a simple civilisational replacement

From the medieval period onward, Muslim soldiers, officials, scholars, artisans, traders and cultivators became part of regional society. Persianate administrative culture added languages, offices and documentary forms; Islamic institutions created new networks of learning, patronage and devotion. These developments interacted with existing agrarian and linguistic worlds rather than erasing them. Shared markets, crafts, towns and vernacular life produced forms of coexistence alongside conflict and boundary-making. The *longue durée* of plural society is therefore neither a narrative of timeless harmony nor permanent antagonism. It is a history of institutions that organised difference while also creating practical interdependence.

143.12 Language became social infrastructure through repeated standardisation and re-standardisation

Maithili, Angika, Bajjika, Sanskrit, Persian, Hindi, Urdu, Nepali and other languages occupied changing domains of household life, learning, administration, literature and media. Literary Maithili emerged historically; Tirhuta/Mithilakshar developed a major scribal role; Persian gained administrative importance; colonial and postcolonial institutions elevated new standard languages and scripts. Contemporary digital platforms add another layer by rewarding searchable text, Unicode support, speech technology and platform visibility. Language continuity therefore depends on infrastructure: schools, fonts, presses, archives, exams, broadcast systems and digital tools. A language may remain widely spoken while losing domains of formal use, or gain new public visibility through technological change.

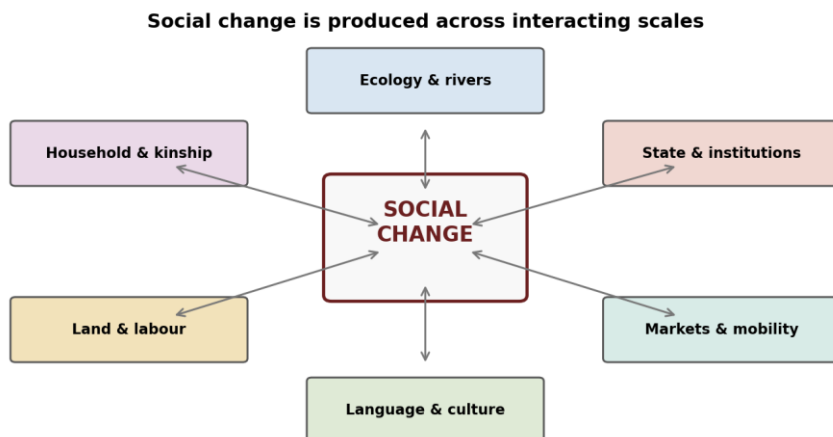


Figure 569 — Social change emerges from interaction among ecology, households, land and labour, markets and mobility, state institutions, and language and culture.

143.13 Material culture preserves skill while markets repeatedly change its meaning

Textiles, painting, food, music, theatre, ritual objects and architecture provide some of the most visible continuities in regional culture. But continuity of motif or technique does not imply continuity of market. Mithila painting, for example, moved from domestic and ritual contexts into paper, galleries, tourism, state

handicraft programmes, global art markets and digital commerce. Bhagalpur silk similarly links inherited skill to changing industrial and trade systems. Material culture survives when knowledge is transmitted, but transmission itself changes through schools, cooperatives, design intervention, museums and online platforms. The social history of art is therefore a history of labour and institutions as much as aesthetics.

143.14 Early modern revenue systems intensified the connection between state and agrarian surplus

Mughal and successor regimes deepened revenue administration and linked local agrarian production to broader fiscal and commercial systems. The state did not control every transaction directly, but assessments, intermediaries and rights over collection reshaped the incentives surrounding land. Regional trade connected Bihar, Bengal and Nepal, while towns and routes served both revenue and commerce. These structures matter in the *longue durée* because colonial rule later transformed rather than invented the fiscal importance of agrarian surplus. The decisive historical question is how claims were formalised, who was recognised as intermediary or proprietor and how cultivators experienced those changing claims.

143.15 Colonial property regimes converted flexible agrarian relations into new legal and fiscal hierarchies

The Permanent Settlement and related colonial institutions gave durable legal form to particular revenue relationships. Zamindari power, tenancy, rent, debt and litigation became central to rural political economy. Colonial law did not simply preserve precolonial landed society; it selected and redefined rights through property categories, courts and records. The effects lasted beyond colonial rule because land titles, estates, tenancies and social power accumulated over generations. Post-independence abolition of zamindari changed the legal order but could not instantly redistribute every advantage created by earlier property and status structures. This is a classic *longue durée* mechanism: institutional change occurs quickly, while its social consequences decay slowly.

143.16 Commodity production linked households to distant markets and new forms of risk

Indigo, opium and other commercial crops integrated parts of Bihar into imperial commodity chains. Market integration could create income but also expose cultivators to coercive contracts, price volatility and changing land use. The colonial commodity economy expanded the role of merchants, credit, transport and processing. Later specialisations—silk, makhana, dairy, fish, maize and horticulture—operated under different institutions but reproduced a general feature of market-dependent rural life: households balance subsistence, cash income and risk. The long-run transition is therefore not from a self-sufficient village to a market economy at one moment, but a series of deepening and diversifying market connections.

143.17 Scarcity and famine reveal the difference between food availability and social entitlement

Historical episodes of scarcity demonstrate that hunger depends on access as well as aggregate supply. Flood, drought, crop failure, war, price rise, revenue demand and weak transport could combine differently in different periods. Colonial famine administration introduced new bureaucratic forms of monitoring and relief, while post-independence food distribution, public works and social protection created additional buffers. Yet environmental shocks continue to expose unequal household capacity. The *longue durée* of

vulnerability lies in the distribution of land, savings, credit, mobility and state access. A climatic event becomes a social disaster when these buffers fail or are unequally available.

143.18 Census and survey made society legible while also hardening categories

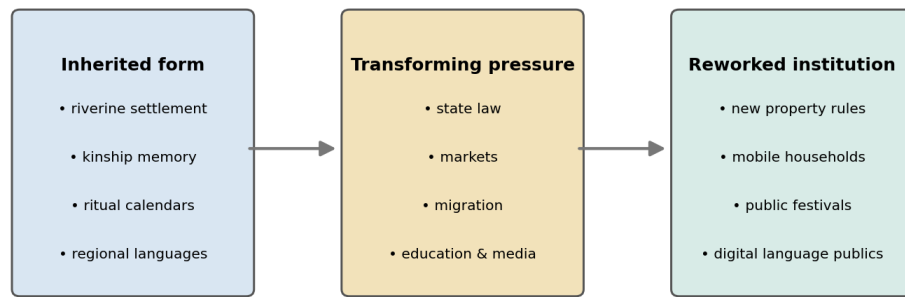
Colonial enumeration transformed the relationship between people and administrative classification. Censuses, gazetteers, settlement reports and ethnographic surveys converted fluid social descriptions into standardised categories that could be counted, mapped and compared. Such data are indispensable historical sources, but they also participated in the formation of the identities they described. Postcolonial statistics inherited many administrative habits while revising categories for reservation, welfare, language and development. The methodological lesson is enduring: official categories are historical institutions, not transparent mirrors of society. The 2022–23 Bihar caste survey and Nepal's contemporary census classifications must therefore be read within their own legal and statistical systems.

143.19 Education, print and transport created new publics

Colonial schooling, print capitalism, railways and roads altered the speed and scale at which ideas, people and goods circulated. New schools created credentials; newspapers and journals created publics that did not require face-to-face assembly; railways connected labour markets and pilgrimage routes; print helped standardise languages while multiplying debate. Post-independence mass schooling, universities, broadcasting and later digital media expanded these processes. The long-duration change is a widening of the infrastructure through which people can participate in social life beyond locality. Access, however, remained unequal by gender, caste, class, geography and language, so new publics repeatedly reproduced old exclusions while also creating tools to challenge them.

143.20 Labour migration became a durable household strategy rather than a temporary exception

Migration has deep historical roots in the region, but colonial and postcolonial labour markets expanded its scale and destinations. Movement to Calcutta, plantations, military service, seasonal agricultural work, metropolitan construction, factories, the Gulf and Nepal–India circuits transformed household economies. Migration does not necessarily sever village ties; it often creates multi-local families whose land, care, consumption and social obligations remain distributed across places. Remittances, return migration and marriage link destinations back to origin communities. The *longue durée* of migration lies in this household capacity to combine local belonging with external labour markets, even as destinations and transport technologies change.

Persistence usually works through reinvention

Continuity is historical when practices are repeatedly reproduced under changed conditions—not when they remain unchanged.

Figure 570 — Historical persistence usually works through reinvention under changing pressures rather than exact repetition.

143.21 The India–Nepal border is historically durable but socially permeable

Political borders matter because they separate citizenship, taxation, law, welfare and administrative data. They do not erase older social circuits. Marriage, pilgrimage, trade, language, festivals and labour connect the Bihar and Madhesh sides of the region in ways that predate modern federal arrangements. The correct synthesis therefore avoids two errors: treating the border as irrelevant because culture crosses it, or treating it as a complete social wall because states differ. Federalisation in Nepal and changing Indian border infrastructure add new institutional layers to a long interaction zone. Connected history must compare both political economies while tracing the circuits that cross them.

143.22 Forest clearance, malaria control and settlement transformed the Nepal Tarai

The twentieth-century Tarai illustrates how public health, ecology and demography can combine to remake a region. Forest clearance and malaria control facilitated settlement and intensified agriculture, while migration changed the social composition of towns and rural areas. Roads, land policy and state-building further reorganised the region that became central to Madhesh politics and economy. This transformation was historically compressed compared with the older settled plains south of the border, yet it became part of the same cross-border labour and market field. The case demonstrates that even apparently durable regional identities can rest on relatively recent demographic and ecological transformations.

143.23 Post-independence land reform changed institutions more quickly than social power

Abolition of zamindari removed a major colonial legal structure, but the distribution of land, tenancy security and rural influence changed unevenly. Land ceilings, tenancy rules, credit programmes and later welfare policies altered the formal environment without producing a uniform agrarian society. Some former intermediaries retained advantages through ownership, education or political networks; new groups gained land, office and electoral influence; marginal cultivators continued to rely on leasing and wage labour. Longue durée analysis is especially useful here because it distinguishes legal rupture from social lag. An

institution can disappear from statute while its accumulated effects remain embedded in assets and relationships.

143.24 River-development projects created a modern paradox of protection and dependence

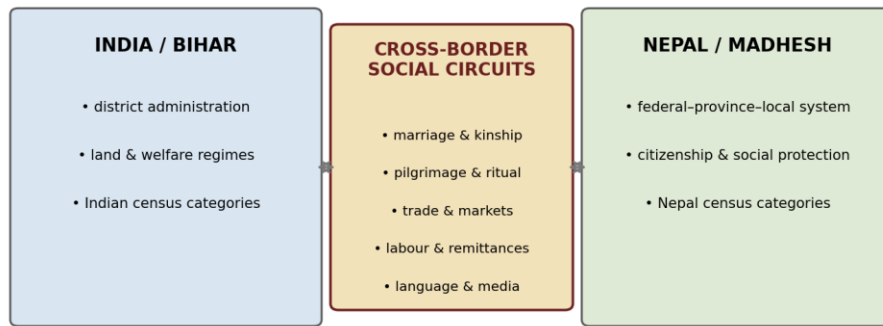
The Kosi, Gandak and other post-independence river projects represent a new scale of engineering and state responsibility. Embankments, barrages and canals promised flood control, irrigation and development, yet they also redistributed risk. Communities outside embankments could gain protection while those within or near altered channels faced different vulnerabilities; maintenance and drainage became continuing institutional obligations. Recurrent floods reveal that technical infrastructure does not end riverine history. Instead, it creates a new relationship among river dynamics, administrative capacity, compensation, forecasting and local adaptation. The modern state becomes part of the ecology it attempts to manage.

143.25 Agricultural change combines intensification, fragmentation and diversification

The contemporary farm economy inherits centuries of dense settlement and subdivision while adding new seed, irrigation, machinery, roads, digital payments and market channels. Small holdings can remain productive, but fragmented plots make mechanisation and water management harder. Migration can reduce resident labour while remittances finance pumps, houses or education. Diversification into maize, dairy, fish, makhana, vegetables and other specialised products widens opportunity but also increases dependence on logistics and prices. The *longue durée* here is not agrarian stagnation. It is the repeated adaptation of a land-based economy under changing demographic pressure, technology and markets.

143.26 Caste, class and gender have been reconfigured rather than erased

Modern law, electoral democracy, reservation, schooling, migration and market change altered the institutions through which hierarchy operates. Caste remains relevant to marriage, land, political networks and social identity, but contemporary categories cannot be projected unchanged into earlier periods. Class differentiation increasingly cuts across caste through education, salaried work, enterprise and migration, even while inherited assets matter. Gender relations likewise changed through girls' schooling, legal reform, paid work, migration and self-help groups, yet unpaid care and unequal property control persist. The synthesis is therefore one of reconfiguration: hierarchy survives through changed mechanisms and is contested through institutions that did not exist in earlier centuries.

India-Nepal interaction zone: institutions differ, social circuits cross

A connected history must compare different political economies without treating the border as either irrelevant or absolute.

Figure 571 — India and Nepal remain different political economies within a cross-border social interaction zone.

143.27 Contemporary households are increasingly multi-local economic institutions

The household remains one of the most durable social units in the region, but co-residence is no longer an adequate description of how many households function. Migrants work in Delhi, Punjab, Mumbai, the Gulf, Kathmandu or elsewhere while spouses, parents and children remain in villages or small towns. Money, care, decision-making and ritual obligations circulate between locations. Mobile phones and digital payments compress distance without eliminating separation. This multi-local form connects earlier kin-based economic cooperation to contemporary labour markets. It also changes gendered responsibility, elder care, housing investment and children's education, making the household a network rather than a single address.

143.28 Mass media and digital culture accelerated change while enlarging the archive

Print, radio, cinema, recorded performance, television, the internet and social media each altered the speed and audience of cultural circulation. Digital media now allow Maithili, Angika and Bajjika creators to publish without waiting for metropolitan institutions, while Unicode and speech technologies affect script and language visibility. At the same time, platform algorithms, monetisation rules and proprietary formats create new dependencies. Digital archives preserve manuscripts, recordings and ephemera at scales previously impossible, but preservation requires provenance and sustainable formats. The *longue durée* of cultural transmission has thus entered a phase in which memory is both more reproducible and more dependent on technological infrastructure.

143.29 Cultural persistence is strongest when communities can reinvent forms

The survival of festivals, painting, song, craft, script and regional language has rarely depended on exact replication. Chhath changes with urban ghats and digital coordination; Mithila painting moves across surfaces and markets; oral genres are recorded and remixed; Tirhuta enters Unicode; diaspora communities reproduce rituals in new locations. These changes do not automatically destroy authenticity. They demonstrate that living culture persists through selective adaptation. The analytical task is to distinguish community-led reinvention from extraction that removes practitioners, provenance or control. Continuity

should therefore be measured by transmission, participation and capacity to create, not by visual similarity to a fixed past.

143.30 Conclusion: the region is historically connected because institutions keep being remade

Across the very long run, Mithila, Vajji and Anga do not reveal a single timeless civilisation or an unbroken social essence. They reveal repeated institutional remaking within a connected ecological and cultural field. Settlement becomes denser; land rights change; towns and markets shift; religions institutionalise and diversify; kinship is recorded and regulated; languages move between scripts and domains; colonial rule recasts property and categories; democracy and development alter state-society relations; migration makes households multi-local; digital systems reorganise public culture. The strongest continuity is therefore not stasis but the capacity of people and institutions to reproduce social life under changing conditions. The remaining synthesis chapters will examine particular dimensions of that process in greater depth.

Table 143.1 — Evidence architecture for *longue-durée* social synthesis

Historical layer	Transformations to reconstruct	Principal evidence	Main caution
Prehistoric / early agrarian	subsistence; settlement; food production; mobility	archaeology; archaeobotany; palaeoenvironment	do not infer later identities from material culture
Early historic	urbanisation; trade; monetisation; religious institutions	archaeology; inscriptions; coins; dated texts	texts and categories do not describe the whole population
Early medieval / medieval	land grants; agrarian expansion; kinship; learning	inscriptions; grants; manuscripts; Panji under dating control	do not project later caste categories backward
Early modern	revenue; market networks; Persianate administration; trade	revenue records; chronicles; manuscripts; commercial records	administrative reach varied locally
Colonial	property; commodities; census classification; rail; migration	settlement reports; census; courts; revenue; print	official categories both describe and shape society
Post-independence India	land reform; river projects; development; reservation; schooling	legislation; statistics; surveys; institutional archives	state averages can hide regional variation
Modern Nepal / Madhesh	Tarai settlement; federalism; citizenship; language; welfare	census; constitutional and provincial records; surveys	Nepal categories are not interchangeable with Bihar categories
Contemporary cross-border	migration; remittances; digital public life; cultural economy	labour surveys; payment data; media/platform evidence	administrative data rarely map exactly onto cultural regions
Whole-period synthesis	persistence; rupture; reinvention; path dependence	triangulation across period-specific evidence	continuity of name or place does not prove continuity of meaning

Chapter 144 — From Subsistence to Market Integration

Chapter 144 synthesises the long economic movement from household provisioning and locally bounded exchange toward increasingly dense regional, national and cross-border markets. The phrase 'from subsistence to market integration' must not be read as a ladder on which self-provisioning disappears as markets advance. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, households have repeatedly combined food production, reciprocal labour, craft, wage work, tenancy, migration, remittances and trade. Market integration enlarged the range of prices, institutions and distant opportunities affecting everyday life; it also transmitted shocks that had once remained more local. The historical problem is therefore to explain changes in the scale and organisation of exchange without treating either subsistence or the market as a pure, timeless category.

144.1 Subsistence and market exchange are overlapping strategies, not opposite stages

A household that grows rice for its own consumption may also buy salt, cloth, fuel and medicine; sell milk or vegetables; hire labour; borrow cash; and send a migrant worker to a city. Such a household cannot be classified simply as 'subsistence' or 'commercial'. The useful distinction concerns the share of needs met through direct production, reciprocity and public provision versus exchange mediated by prices, contracts and money. Across the region, these proportions changed over time and differed by landholding, ecology, caste, gender, occupation and proximity to markets. Market integration should therefore be measured as expanding dependence on wider exchange networks rather than as the disappearance of self-provisioning.

144.2 Ecological diversity created multiple pathways into exchange

Alluvial plains, flood basins, wetlands, diara lands, forest margins and better-drained tracts supported different combinations of rice, wheat, pulses, oilseeds, fish, livestock, forest products and craft materials. Ecological variation shaped what could be stored, transported and sold, but it did not dictate market outcomes by itself. Transport cost, taxation, political security and demand determined whether a local surplus became a regional commodity. River routes could connect one zone while seasonal flooding isolated another. The longue durée of market integration therefore began with geography but was mediated through institutions and infrastructure.

144.3 Storage transformed surplus into a social and economic resource

The ability to store grain, seed, fodder and durable craft goods separated immediate consumption from future use. Storage made taxation, tribute, redistribution, credit and trade possible at larger scales. It also created inequality because households with larger stocks could withstand bad seasons, lend to others or wait for favourable prices. Archaeological evidence for settled agriculture should therefore be read not merely as proof of food production but as the beginning of new temporal relations around surplus. Later granaries, merchant storage, warehouses and cold chains enlarged the same basic problem: who controls the interval between production and sale?

144.4 Early towns linked agrarian surplus to specialised labour and institutions

The second urbanisation of the middle Gangetic region brought towns, specialised crafts, merchants, coin use and religious institutions into closer relation with agricultural production. Vaishali and Champa were not autonomous urban islands. They depended on surrounding villages for food and labour while offering markets, credit, artisanal goods, ritual institutions and political services. Urbanisation therefore

widened the circuit through which rural surplus moved. It also created consumers whose livelihoods were not based directly on cultivation. The market became denser because more occupational groups depended on exchange with one another.

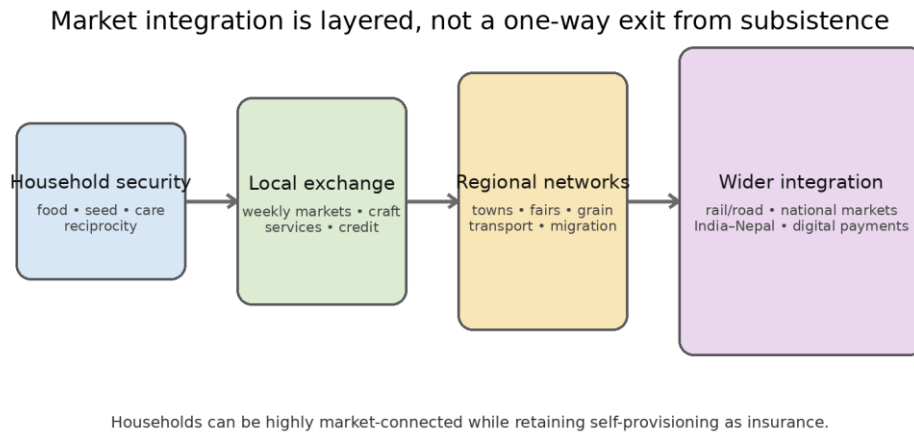


Figure 572 — Market integration as layered expansion from household provisioning to wider regional, national, cross-border and digital exchange.

144.5 Monetisation widened commensurability without eliminating payment in kind

Coins and monetary accounting allowed unlike goods and obligations to be compared through a common unit, but monetisation was uneven. Rent, wages, taxes, gifts and service obligations could remain partly in kind even when money circulated. The important transition was not a switch from barter to cash at one date. It was the growing use of monetary values in taxation, contracts, trade and savings. Periods of coin scarcity, debasement or uneven circulation could coexist with extensive commercial exchange. Historians should therefore distinguish money as a medium of exchange, a unit of account and a store of value.

144.6 Religious and political institutions became market actors as well as consumers

Monasteries, temples, courts and later mosques, shrines and educational establishments required food, building materials, land revenue, manuscripts, cloth and skilled labour. Endowments and grants connected institutional consumption to agrarian production. Pilgrimage generated recurring demand for transport, lodging, ritual objects and food. These institutions could stabilise markets by concentrating demand, but they could also control land or revenue and redistribute resources according to political or religious priorities. The history of market integration is therefore inseparable from institutions that were not themselves organised solely for profit.

144.7 Land grants and revenue rights converted agricultural production into fiscal claims

As states and intermediaries developed more regular rights over land revenue, agricultural output became linked to obligations expressed through assessment and collection. Fiscal systems could stimulate market sale when cultivators needed cash to meet revenue demands. They could also intensify vulnerability when

assessments were inflexible during crop failure. The connection between tax and market was thus double-edged: revenue collection extended the reach of states and monetary exchange, while the need to realise produce for cash could expose cultivators to traders and creditors under unfavourable conditions. Market integration is not synonymous with voluntary commercialisation.

144.8 Periodic markets created a dense intermediate layer between village and city

Weekly and periodic markets were crucial because they reduced the distance between dispersed producers and larger commercial centres. Farmers could sell small quantities, artisans could reach multiple villages, and itinerant traders could aggregate produce for onward movement. Such markets also circulated information about prices, employment and credit. Their importance lies in the intermediate scale they created: households did not need direct access to a major town in order to enter wider exchange. Roads, bridges and later motor transport enlarged the catchment area of these markets but did not replace their social function.

144.9 Craft production often combined household organisation with commercial demand

Textiles, metalwork, pottery, painting, basketry, food processing and other crafts were frequently organised through households rather than factories. This form should not be mistaken for production outside markets. Merchants could supply raw material, advance credit, specify designs and purchase finished goods while the labour process remained domestic. Bhagalpur silk and later Mithila painting show different versions of this relationship. Commercialisation can therefore penetrate household production without transforming the workplace into a factory. The resulting bargaining power depends on access to buyers, control of raw materials, reputation and alternative income sources.

144.10 Early modern regional trade connected Bihar, Bengal and Nepal through overlapping corridors

River routes, caravan traffic, fairs, pilgrimage and political centres linked the region to Bengal, the Himalayan foothills and the wider Gangetic economy. Grain, cloth, salt, livestock, forest products, metal goods and specialised crafts moved through networks that crossed later administrative boundaries. The India-Nepal frontier did not yet function as the modern customs boundary it would become. Trade was shaped by political authority, tolls, security and seasonal conditions. This early modern connectivity matters because colonial integration did not begin from an economically isolated countryside; it reorganised pre-existing circuits and redirected some of them toward new fiscal and imperial centres.

144.11 Colonial rule intensified the measurement and enforceability of economic obligations

The East India Company and later colonial state expanded written revenue settlements, cadastral surveys, courts, contracts and statistical reporting. These institutions made some economic claims more legible and enforceable while privileging particular forms of documentary ownership. Market relations were affected because land, rent, debt and commodity transactions increasingly operated within a legal-administrative framework that could be invoked in court. Yet formal law did not eliminate custom, oral tenancy or local bargaining. The result was layered governance: written rules expanded while many households continued to negotiate access to land, labour and credit through social relationships.

144.12 The Permanent Settlement tied property, rent and market risk into a new agrarian hierarchy

Permanent Settlement institutionalised zamindari revenue obligations and transformed the legal environment of landholding. Revenue pressure, rent extraction, arrears and auction linked agrarian power to cash flows. Cultivators faced market risk not only when selling crops but when meeting rents and debts. Landlords and intermediaries likewise depended on revenue collection and credit. Commercialisation therefore occurred through a hierarchy of claims on production. The key analytical lesson is that markets do not erase power relations; they often translate them into prices, rents, interest and enforceable obligations.

144.13 Indigo and opium demonstrate commercialisation under unequal bargaining power

Colonial commodity systems make clear why market integration cannot be judged solely by the growth of trade. Indigo contracts and opium procurement connected cultivators to export markets, but participation could involve coercion, advances, restricted crop choice and asymmetric information. The world price was distant from the cultivator's bargaining position. Commodity expansion increased the region's exposure to global demand while distributing gains unevenly. A serious economic history therefore separates the scale of commercial output from the welfare of producers. Integration can increase both opportunity and exploitation when institutions are unequal.

144.14 Famines and scarcity show how markets can transmit as well as relieve crisis

Markets can move grain toward scarcity zones, but they can also transmit price spikes and exclude households whose purchasing power collapses. Flood, drought, crop failure or war becomes a food-security crisis when access to food is lost through falling wages, debt, unemployment or high prices. Transport improvements may reduce local isolation, yet they do not guarantee entitlement to food. The history of scarcity therefore links market integration to distribution. Whether wider markets stabilise consumption depends on storage, purchasing power, public relief, information and the ability to move supplies rapidly.

144.15 Railways changed the spatial scale and timing of price integration

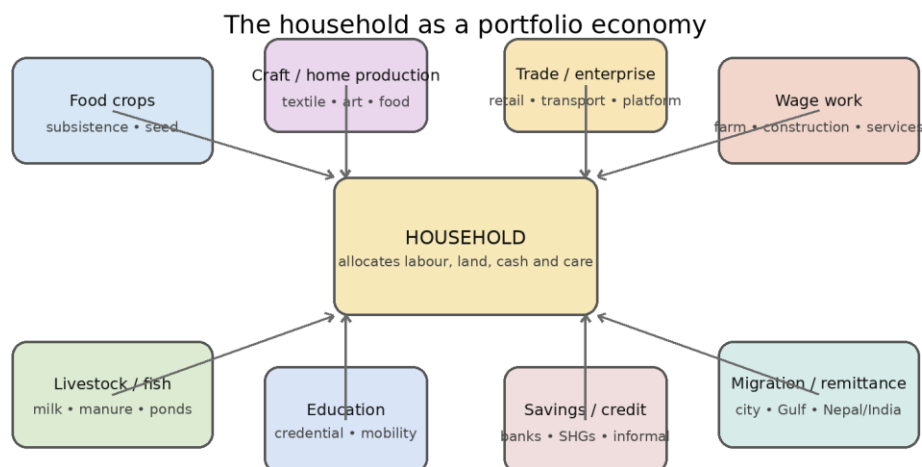
Railways lowered the cost and increased the reliability of moving bulky goods over long distances. For Bihar and eastern India they connected producing districts to Calcutta and other national markets, altered the commercial importance of older river routes and created new station towns. Price differences between distant markets could narrow when traders responded to arbitrage opportunities. Yet railway access was geographically uneven, and small producers still depended on local roads, carts and intermediaries to reach stations. Rail integration therefore had a layered spatial structure rather than an instantaneous regional effect.

144.16 Colonial migration converted labour into one of the region's major exportable resources

When land could not provide sufficient income, households increasingly used migration to connect themselves to distant labour markets. Calcutta, plantations, military service and later industrial centres became destinations. Wages earned elsewhere returned as cash, goods and social knowledge. Migration changed the household budget even when the village economy remained agrarian. This is a major transition in market integration: the household no longer sells only produce or craft goods; it sells labour across distance. The costs include separation, recruitment risk and dependence on external employment cycles.

144.17 Credit is the hinge between production today and uncertain income tomorrow

Seed, fertiliser, ceremonies, illness, migration and consumption all require spending before income arrives. Credit therefore sits at the centre of market integration. Informal lenders, traders, landlords, cooperatives, banks, self-help groups and digital lenders represent different institutional forms of the same temporal bridge. Credit can enable productive investment, but collateral, interest, tied sales and information asymmetry can transfer risk toward borrowers. The transition from informal to formal finance is neither complete nor automatically beneficial; households often combine several sources because speed, trust, documentation and flexibility matter as much as nominal interest rates.



Market integration often means diversification of the portfolio rather than disappearance of household production.

Figure 573 — Contemporary households combine production, wage work, enterprise, migration, education, savings and credit as a portfolio economy.

144.18 Independence altered the state-market relationship without ending household dependence on exchange

Post-1947 land reform, public procurement, irrigation, cooperatives, rural credit, agricultural extension and welfare schemes expanded the state's role in shaping markets. The objective was not simply laissez-faire integration but managed development. Public institutions attempted to change who could access land, inputs, credit and food. Outcomes were uneven, yet the economic architecture changed decisively: the state became a large purchaser, lender, builder, employer and provider of transfers. Households increasingly encountered markets through public institutions as well as private traders.

144.19 Green-revolution technologies deepened input and output markets even where yield gains were uneven

High-yielding seed, fertiliser, pumps, tractors and pesticides linked cultivation to purchased inputs. Farmers who adopted these technologies required cash, credit, electricity or diesel, repair services and reliable output markets. In the eastern Gangetic plains, adoption varied with irrigation, drainage, plot size and institutional access. The significance for market integration extends beyond yield. Production decisions became more dependent on industrial inputs and service markets, while harvests increasingly entered procurement, wholesale and processing chains. Agricultural modernisation thus increased both productivity potential and exposure to input-price risk.

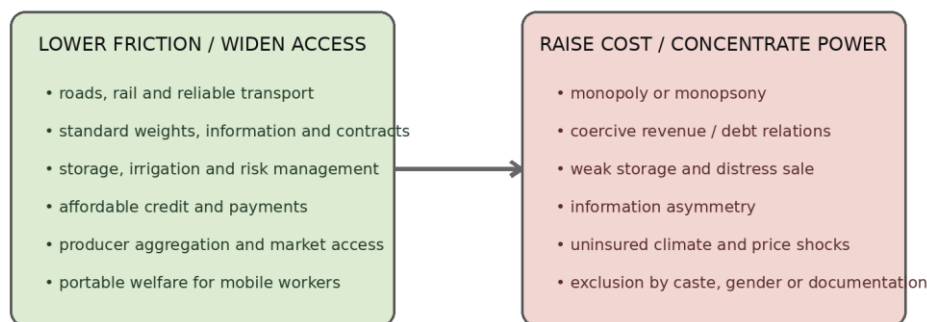
144.20 Roads and motor transport transformed the everyday geography of exchange

The expansion of all-weather roads, buses, trucks, motorcycles and small commercial vehicles changed how frequently villagers could reach markets, schools, hospitals and workplaces. Perishable produce became more marketable when travel times fell. Labour could commute rather than migrate permanently. Retail goods penetrated deeper into rural areas. Road connectivity also changed land values and encouraged ribbon development around junctions and market centres. Unlike railways, which concentrated flows at stations, road networks distributed access more diffusely, though quality and seasonal reliability continued to matter.

144.21 Specialised regional economies show integration through value chains rather than single crops

Makhana, fish, dairy, vegetables, maize, Bhagalpur silk, Mithila painting and other specialised activities depend on chains of seed or raw material, skill, finance, processing, transport, branding and sale. Their value cannot be understood at the farm gate or workshop alone. A profitable value chain coordinates multiple stages while preserving incentives for primary producers and artisans. Weak storage, quality control or bargaining power can cause value to accumulate downstream. Regional development therefore depends not only on producing distinctive goods but on governing the chain through which value is added and distributed.

Institutions determine whether markets widen opportunity or magnify risk



The same commodity market can produce different outcomes depending on institutions, bargaining power and infrastructure.

Figure 574 — Infrastructure and institutions can lower transaction costs and widen access, while monopoly, debt, weak storage and exclusion can concentrate market power.

144.22 The India-Nepal border creates simultaneous openness and regulatory difference

Cross-border marriage, labour, pilgrimage and small trade connect northern Bihar and Madhesh, while customs, currency, taxation, citizenship and regulation remain national. The border economy therefore operates through a combination of openness and institutional difference. Informal exchange may reduce transaction costs for households, but it can also create uncertainty when enforcement changes. Formal infrastructure, integrated check posts and digital payments alter the balance between documented and undocumented transactions. Market integration across the border is strongest when mobility is predictable and rules are intelligible to small traders as well as large firms.

144.23 Migration and remittances turned distant labour markets into local consumption infrastructure

Contemporary migration to Delhi, Mumbai, Punjab, Gujarat, the Gulf, Kathmandu and other destinations links household consumption to wages earned far away. Remittances finance food, education, health care, housing, ceremonies, debt repayment and sometimes enterprise. They can reduce dependence on local harvest income while increasing dependence on distant labour conditions. A recession or recruitment shock elsewhere can therefore affect village construction and retail demand. Remittance economies are a form of market integration in which the most important commodity is labour and the key transmission mechanism is the household.

144.24 Women's market participation is often obscured when production remains inside the household

Women contribute to farming, livestock, food processing, craft, petty trade and care work, but statistical categories may record only a principal occupation or overlook unpaid family labour. Market integration can increase women's workload without increasing control over earnings. Conversely, self-help groups, producer collectives, digital payments and education can widen access to credit and markets. The relevant measure is therefore not whether a household sells more, but who controls assets, time, mobility, accounts and decisions. Gender changes the distribution of gains from integration inside the household itself.

144.25 Caste and class shape access to markets through assets and networks

Markets may be formally open while access to land, credit, information, transport, education and social networks remains unequal. Historical caste relations can influence occupation, tenancy, customer networks and the ability to bear risk. Class differences matter because wealthier households can store produce, invest in machinery, wait for better prices and finance migration without distress borrowing. Poorer households may enter markets through urgent sale of labour or crops. Market integration therefore changes the forms through which inequality operates rather than guaranteeing its disappearance.

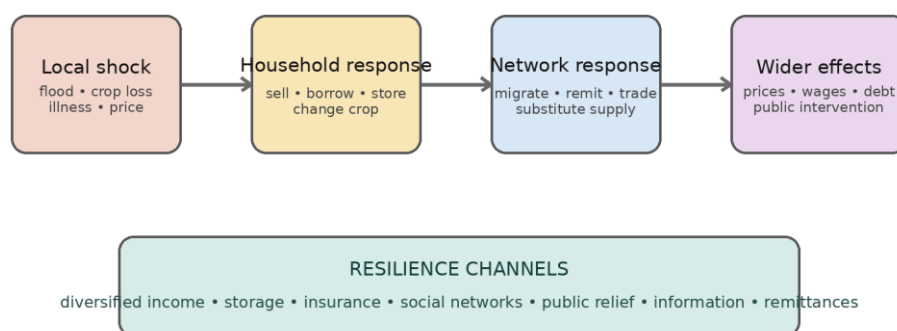
144.26 Digital payments reduce some transaction costs while creating new dependencies

Mobile phones, bank accounts, QR payments and digital platforms allow money and information to move at low cost. Migrants can remit quickly; merchants can settle transactions electronically; households can receive welfare into accounts; producers can compare prices or contact buyers. Yet digital integration depends on connectivity, identity documents, literacy, device access and trust. Fraud, platform rules and service outages create new vulnerabilities. Digitalisation should therefore be understood as a new institutional layer on older market networks, not as a replacement for cash, face-to-face credit or local relationships.

144.27 Climate risk makes diversification a rational response to deeper market integration

Flood, drought, heat and river erosion can destroy production precisely when households have purchased costly inputs or taken loans. Market integration can magnify loss through debt, but it also offers coping channels: wage migration, remittances, insurance, alternative crops, food purchase and public transfers. Diversification is therefore not evidence that agriculture has become unimportant. It is often a deliberate strategy for spreading risk across sectors and places. The most resilient household may be neither fully subsistence-based nor fully specialised, but connected to several income and support networks.

Market integration transmits both opportunity and shock



Integration reduces isolation but can also synchronize households with distant price, labour and financial shocks.

Figure 575 — Market integration transmits both opportunity and shock; resilience depends on diversified income, storage, insurance, networks, public support and remittances.

144.28 Price integration is not the same as welfare integration

Two districts can face similar grain or input prices while households experience very different welfare outcomes because wages, land access, debt, public services and household composition differ. Price convergence is useful evidence of connected markets, but it does not show who can participate on favourable terms. Likewise, rising consumption of manufactured goods may reflect remittances, borrowing or welfare transfers rather than rising local productivity. Economic synthesis therefore requires linking prices to incomes, assets and risk. The object of history is not merely the spread of markets but the changing capacity of people to use them.

144.29 The historical direction is toward denser networks, not complete commodification

Across two millennia, more aspects of life became connected to monetary exchange: land revenue, wages, inputs, transport, education, health care, housing, communication and cultural production. Yet household labour, kinship, reciprocity, ritual obligation, commons and public provision remain economically significant. Even a highly monetised household relies on unpaid care, social trust and state infrastructure that are not purchased anew in every transaction. The long-run movement is therefore toward denser networks of interdependence rather than a society in which all relations become commodities.

144.30 Conclusion: market integration is a history of institutions, bargaining power and risk

The movement from subsistence toward wider markets in Mithila, Vajji and Anga was cumulative but not linear. Early towns, periodic markets, fiscal systems, commodity crops, railways, migration, banking, roads, value chains and digital payments successively enlarged the scale of exchange. At each stage, older household practices survived and were repurposed. The central historical question is who gained access to wider opportunity, who carried the risk, and which institutions governed the terms of exchange. Market integration matters not because it replaces subsistence, but because it changes the number of distant decisions on which household security depends.

Table 144.1 — Evidence architecture for reconstructing the transition from subsistence to market integration

Historical layer	Principal market process	Evidence to prioritise	Main caution
Prehistoric / early agrarian	sedentism; storage; surplus; exchange	archaeology; archaeobotany; storage features; palaeoenvironment	material exchange does not prove monetised markets
Early historic	towns; crafts; trade; coin use; institutional demand	archaeology; coins; inscriptions; dated texts	urban evidence should not be projected onto all rural households
Medieval / early modern	land revenue; periodic markets; regional corridors; craft exchange	grants; revenue records; manuscripts; travel and commercial evidence	fiscal claims and voluntary trade must be distinguished
Colonial	property law; cash revenue; commodity chains; railways; labour migration	settlement reports; contracts; price series; rail statistics; census and migration records	trade growth does not establish producer welfare
Post-independence	land reform; irrigation; cooperatives; public procurement; formal credit	agricultural statistics; policy records; banking data; household surveys	policy provision and actual access differ
Contemporary	roads; value chains; remittances; cross-border trade; digital payments	economic surveys; PLFS/NSS; payment data; migration and Nepal/Bihar statistics	administrative units do not equal historical regions
Household economy	portfolio of food production, wage work, migration, credit and care	household surveys; ethnography; time-use and migration studies	single principal-occupation categories understate mixed livelihoods
Market performance	prices; wages; storage; transport cost; bargaining power	price series; mandi/market records; wage data; logistics evidence	price convergence is not equivalent to welfare convergence
Risk and resilience	climate shock; debt; insurance; remittances; public relief	disaster records; credit data; insurance; social protection; longitudinal surveys	copied after one shock may create vulnerability to the next

Chapter 145 — Household, Caste, Class and Gender across Time

Chapter 145 synthesises one of the central arguments of this volume: household, caste, class and gender are not separate topics that can be stacked beside one another. They are overlapping institutions through which land, labour, marriage, care, education, mobility, status and political claims are organised. Yet none of them is timeless. The form of the household changes with mortality, migration and property; caste categories are historically produced and administratively reworked; class relations change with landholding, markets and salaried employment; and gendered authority shifts with law, schooling, work and residence. A *longue durée* account must therefore track relationships without assuming that later labels existed unchanged in earlier periods.

The chapter also resists two opposite simplifications. The first is to imagine a static “traditional society” suddenly transformed by modernity. The second is to assume that legal reform, urbanisation or education automatically dissolves older inequalities. In Mithila, Vajji and Anga, continuity and change coexist. Kin networks can facilitate migration while also regulating marriage; women may manage farms during male absence without gaining title to land; reservation can enlarge educational and occupational opportunity while wealth differences persist inside the same broad category. The historical task is to identify mechanisms, evidence and bargaining power at each period rather than convert social categories into essences.

145.1 Household, family, lineage and kin group are not interchangeable

A household is usually a unit of co-residence, consumption and resource pooling at a particular moment; a family can extend beyond one dwelling; a lineage links descent across generations; and a wider kin network may organise marriage, ritual, inheritance and assistance across many settlements. Historical sources capture these units unevenly. A census household records people sleeping or ordinarily residing together under an administrative definition, while a genealogy records descent and marriage connections, and a land record identifies rights rather than everyday care. Treating all of these as the same “joint family” erases important change. In the study region, migration, widowhood, marriage residence, schooling and employment have long separated relatives spatially while preserving economic obligations. The useful question is therefore not whether the family was joint or nuclear, but which relationships actually organised production, property, care and authority.

145.2 Early evidence permits reconstruction of social relations more securely than a complete household model

Archaeology can reveal house size, storage, food preparation, craft activity and settlement hierarchy, but it rarely identifies caste, kinship terminology or legal ownership. Early texts and inscriptions add information about donors, dependants, merchants, cultivators, monastic institutions and elite lineages, yet they represent particular social locations. The second urbanisation created towns, monetised exchange and new religious institutions without eliminating household production. Women, servants, artisans and cultivators appear unevenly in the surviving record. A responsible reconstruction therefore begins with activities—who produced food, who controlled stored surplus, who moved between village and town, who could donate or inherit—before attaching later social categories. This is especially important for caste history, because a ranked social vocabulary in an early text is not evidence that the full modern *jati* order already existed in the same institutional form.

145.3 Kinship became an economic institution because marriage redistributed people, property and obligations

Marriage connects households through residence, gifts, inheritance expectations, ritual and long-term support. In patrilocal settings, women often moved at marriage, creating durable ties between natal and marital households. Such mobility could connect villages and regions long before modern labour migration. Marriage also affected land fragmentation, dowry or gift transfers, labour availability and the care of older relatives. The economic meaning of a marriage therefore exceeded the ceremony itself. At the same time, kinship rules were neither uniform nor immutable. Status, sect, locality, property and political authority shaped acceptable alliances. Later genealogical systems made some of these rules more explicit, but historians should not project a fully standardised marriage regime backward. The *longue durée* lies in the importance of alliance and descent, while the specific boundaries, documentation and sanctions changed.

145.4 Property is one of the principal channels through which household power becomes durable

Land, houses, livestock, tools, jewellery, savings and later education credentials can all carry advantage across generations. Property determines who can withstand crop failure, finance migration, support study, negotiate marriage and claim social standing. Yet legal ownership and practical control can diverge. A woman may contribute labour to land she does not own; a migrant son may finance a house managed by parents; a tenant may make production decisions without secure title; brothers may formally share inheritance while actual plots and incomes diverge. Changes in property law matter because they alter claims, but enforcement, documentation and bargaining power determine whether formal rights become usable. Across time, class formation is therefore inseparable from the institutions that record, transfer and defend property.

145.5 Social classification should be reconstructed historically rather than treated as a fixed caste map

The region possessed ranked identities, occupational communities, endogamous groups and ritual distinctions, but the boundaries and names of these formations changed. State patronage, land rights, scholarly status, migration, marriage strategies and local political power all contributed to classification. Colonial enumeration later hardened some labels by requiring people to fit administrative lists, but it did not invent every distinction from nothing. The correct approach is neither timelessness nor pure administrative construction. Categories have histories. This volume therefore does not project “Śrotriya” as a fixed medieval Maithil Brahmin sub-caste: the adopted evidence places its distinct sub-caste formation much later, around the turn of the nineteenth century. Similar caution is required whenever a modern caste name is carried backward beyond the evidence.

The household as a changing institution of social reproduction

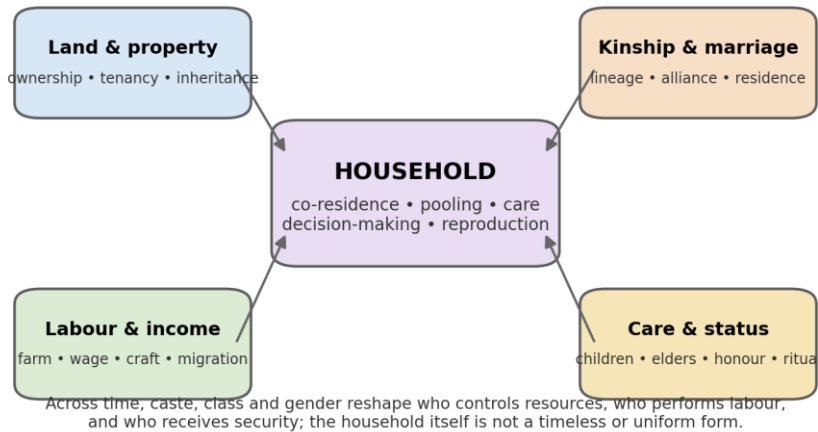


Figure 576 — The household is a changing institution connecting property, kinship, labour, care and social reproduction.

145.6 Occupational specialisation linked caste-like status to material interdependence

Village and town economies required cultivators, herders, potters, weavers, metalworkers, traders, priests, scribes, transport workers and many other specialised services. Such work could become associated with hereditary communities, but economic interdependence did not erase hierarchy. Payment might take the form of grain shares, customary service rights, wages or market sale, and the balance among these forms changed over time. The historical significance lies in the coupling of occupation and social status: access to a craft or service network could provide livelihood security while inherited stigma or restricted mobility could limit bargaining power. Market expansion sometimes weakened exclusive occupational ties, but it could also create new commercial niches organised through the same community networks. Caste and economy therefore interacted through institutions of work rather than through ritual ranking alone.

145.7 The Panji system transformed selected kinship information into an institutional archive

The Panji tradition is important because it shows how kinship could be professionalised, documented and used to regulate marriage. Genealogical manuscripts, Panjikars and marriage consultation connected household decisions to a larger archive of descent and status. Yet the Panji should not be treated as a census of Mithila or as proof that every later social category existed from the system's beginnings. It recorded what particular institutions needed to know, preserved some lines more fully than others and changed through copying and later classification. Its historical value is precisely that it reveals how households interacted with an information system. Marriageability, lineage memory and social reputation could become documentary assets, showing that social reproduction depended not only on property but also on recognised knowledge about descent.

145.8 Gender shaped household labour long before modern labour statistics existed

Women's work has always been difficult to reconstruct because sources often identify status more readily than activity. Food processing, transplanting, weeding, livestock care, water and fuel collection, spinning,

craft production, childcare, elder care and ritual labour may disappear from records focused on landholders, taxpayers or principal occupations. The invisibility of such work is itself historically significant. Households could reproduce labour and social status because large amounts of necessary work were unpaid or embedded in kinship obligations. Men's and women's tasks varied by caste, class, ecology and life-cycle stage; there was no single gender division of labour. A synthesis must therefore combine normative texts with material and later ethnographic evidence, and must never infer absence of work from absence in an official occupational category.

145.9 Medieval and early modern households were differentiated by land, office, learning and dependence

Court service, revenue rights, scholarly patronage, military functions, religious office and control over cultivated land created unequal household resources. Some families accumulated manuscripts, offices and patronage connections; others depended on tenancy, service or artisanal work. These differences should be understood as historically specific forms of class and status rather than translated mechanically into modern income classes. Political change could rapidly alter household fortunes when offices or revenue rights shifted. At the same time, marriage and kinship could stabilise advantage by connecting families with similar resources. Social hierarchy was therefore reproduced through combinations of land, knowledge, office and alliance. This helps explain why economic and ritual standing sometimes reinforced each other but could also diverge.

145.10 Muslim households added further legal, occupational and cultural diversity to the regional social field

From the medieval period onward, Muslim settlement, administration, craft, trade, scholarship and religious institutions became part of Mithila and Anga's social history. Household organisation cannot be reduced to a single Hindu caste model. Islamic inheritance norms, endogamous and occupational groupings, urban craft networks, rural cultivation and shrine-based institutions created distinct but interacting social worlds. Local economies connected Muslim and Hindu households through land, labour, markets and neighbourhoods even where marriage rules remained separate. Class differences also cut across religious identity. A prosperous trader, a land-poor artisan and a salaried professional did not occupy the same economic position simply because they shared a religious affiliation. Contemporary analysis must preserve this plurality and avoid turning religion into a substitute for caste or class.

145.11 Colonial property law changed the scale at which household inequality could be enforced

Revenue settlements, courts, cadastral surveys, registration and written contracts expanded the documentary infrastructure of property. Permanent Settlement strengthened zamindari claims in much of the region, while tenancy law and later litigation defined cultivators' rights in new legal language. Household wealth increasingly depended not only on possession and custom but on the capacity to document claims, pay revenue, obtain legal representation and survive market shocks. This could consolidate class differences across generations. Yet colonial law also generated new arenas of contestation in which tenants and heirs could assert claims. The household became more legible to the state through property, taxation and litigation, while everyday control of land still depended on local power.

145.12 Colonial censuses did not merely observe caste; they changed the incentives around naming and ranking

Census operations required administrators to classify an extraordinarily complex social field into countable categories. Communities could petition for preferred names, claim higher rank or seek recognition as distinct groups. Printed reports then circulated those classifications back into public debate. This process strengthened the political salience of caste labels, but the census should not be credited with creating all social distinctions. It standardised, compared and territorialised identities that already had local histories. The result was a new feedback loop between self-description, bureaucratic taxonomy and public mobilisation. Household strategies—especially marriage, schooling and occupational aspiration—were increasingly pursued within a social world in which categories had official statistical visibility.

Caste, class and gender operate through interacting mechanisms

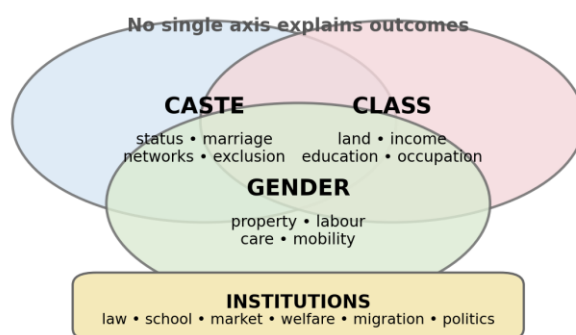


Figure 577 — Caste, class and gender operate through distinct but interacting mechanisms, mediated by institutions.

145.13 Commercialisation and wage migration created class mobility without eliminating inherited inequality

Indigo, opium, railways, urban employment and migration widened the number of ways households could obtain cash. A land-poor family might supplement cultivation with distant wages; an artisan could reach new markets; an educated household could enter clerical or professional work. These opportunities loosened the link between local landholding and total income, but access was uneven. Recruitment networks, literacy, travel costs and credit shaped who could move. Migration could also deepen debt if recruitment failed or wages were delayed. Class position thus became more multi-dimensional: land, occupation, education, migration and urban connection could pull in different directions. This layered structure persists in the contemporary region.

145.14 Male migration reorganised gendered responsibility inside origin households

Long-distance labour migration often removed working-age men for months or years while land, children, elders and local institutions remained at the origin. Women consequently assumed greater responsibility for cultivation, livestock, schooling, health care and dealings with officials. This expansion of responsibility did not automatically produce equal authority. Property documents, major financial decisions and control over remittances could remain male-centred even when women performed more managerial work. The distinction between responsibility and rights is essential. Historical accounts that describe

“feminisation of agriculture” must ask whether women also gained land title, credit access, mobility and decision-making power. Migration could therefore both unsettle and reproduce gender hierarchy.

145.15 Marriage expenditure and dowry became important channels of class competition and intergenerational transfer

Marriage transactions have changed in form and scale, but their economic importance remains substantial. Gifts can support a new household, transfer jewellery or durable goods to a woman, strengthen alliance and display status. Dowry demands, however, can also impose debt and violence. Modern education and salaried employment sometimes increase rather than reduce marriage-market competition because credentials and secure jobs become priced status assets. The result is not a simple survival of “tradition” but the adaptation of marriage transactions to new class signals. Legal prohibition matters, yet enforcement operates within family negotiations that are difficult to observe. Household strategies must therefore be analysed through both law and expenditure.

145.16 Education converted cultural capital into a major household investment strategy

Schooling and degrees changed how families reproduce advantage. Land and lineage remain important, but education can create access to government service, professions, migration and salaried employment. Households consequently devote money and time to tuition, coaching, hostel residence and mobility. The returns are uncertain: examination competition can delay earnings and produce long periods of dependent adulthood. Gender matters because girls’ schooling has expanded sharply while employment opportunities and safe mobility remain uneven. Caste and class shape access to high-quality institutions, digital devices and coaching. Education is therefore both a vehicle of mobility and a field in which prior inequalities can be reproduced.

145.17 Land reform altered formal agrarian hierarchy but did not equalise household assets

The abolition of zamindari and subsequent land-reform measures weakened older landlord institutions and changed the legal basis of agrarian power. Yet ceilings, tenancy reform, redistribution and record correction produced uneven outcomes. Many households remained landless or held very small plots, while others retained substantial assets through family division, litigation or local influence. Agricultural mechanisation and migration later reduced some forms of labour dependence, but ownership still affects collateral, housing, food security and political leverage. The post-independence class structure should therefore be understood as transformed rather than simply democratised. Land remains one axis among several, increasingly combined with education, business, salaried work and migration income.

145.18 Reservation and affirmative action created new routes of mobility and new internal differentiation

Constitutional reservation for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes, and later expansion of backward-class policies, altered access to education, public employment and elected representation. These policies recognise historical exclusion and can produce first-generation entrants into institutions previously difficult to access. Over time, however, broad legal categories contain households with very different levels of land, education, urban connection and occupational security. Mobility within a caste category therefore creates internal class differentiation. Political representation can also change collective bargaining even when

household income remains low. The historical effect of reservation is best analysed as institutional redistribution of opportunity, not as proof that caste has disappeared or that every beneficiary experiences the same outcome.

145.19 Democratisation changed who could claim public resources, but local power remained socially structured

Universal suffrage, panchayati institutions, reservations in local government and mass political mobilisation widened the arena in which ordinary households could demand roads, schools, welfare and recognition. Caste identities became vehicles of political organisation as well as social ranking. Class resources mattered because campaigns, legal action and bureaucratic navigation require time, money and networks. Women's political reservation created new forms of representation while sometimes operating through male relatives or entrenched local elites. The key transformation is that hierarchy increasingly had to negotiate with electoral legitimacy and public policy. Social power did not vanish; it changed institutional arenas.

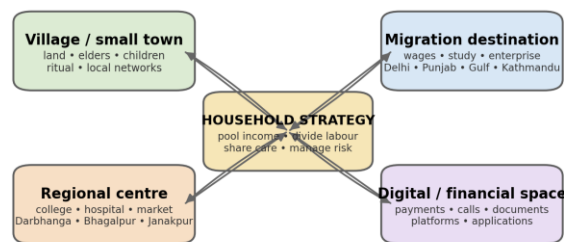
145.20 Urbanisation produces new mixtures of anonymity, neighbourhood clustering and occupational mobility

Towns and expanding peri-urban corridors reduce some forms of village surveillance while creating new housing, employment and educational markets. Caste can become less visible in everyday transactions such as commuting or office work, yet remain important in marriage, political association, neighbourhood choice and networks of trust. Class differences become more spatially visible through housing quality, private schooling, transport and access to health care. Domestic work and informal employment reproduce gender and class hierarchy inside urban settings. Urbanisation therefore rearranges social relations rather than automatically dissolving them. The same household may experience greater occupational freedom while maintaining restrictive marriage expectations.

145.21 Contemporary migration makes the household a network spread across several places

A family may cultivate land in north Bihar, educate children in Darbhanga or Patna, employ a son in Delhi, send another worker to the Gulf and maintain kin in Nepal. Remittances, phone calls, digital payments and periodic visits link these locations into one economic strategy. Such a household cannot be classified adequately by a single village address. Authority can also be distributed: an elder may manage land, a migrant may control cash, a woman at home may organise children's schooling, and a student may manage digital applications. Multi-locality changes class possibilities because income and information come from several labour markets, but it also intensifies care burdens and dependence on mobility.

The contemporary household is often multi-local rather than simply “joint” or “nuclear”



Money, care, authority and belonging can circulate across several places. Co-residence alone therefore does not reveal the effective economic or kin unit.

Figure 578 — Contemporary households are often multi-local networks linking origin, regional centres, migration destinations and digital-financial space.

145.22 Falling household size does not necessarily mean the disappearance of joint economic obligations

Census and survey data often show smaller average households over time, but this can reflect fertility decline, migration, widowhood, housing constraints or administrative definitions. Separate dwellings may still share land, care, ritual expenditure and migration income. Conversely, several generations living under one roof may maintain separate budgets. The opposition between “joint” and “nuclear” families is therefore too coarse for contemporary history. The more useful measures are who transfers money, who cares for children and elders, who has rights in property, who makes major decisions and how obligations persist after residential separation. Family transformation is often a shift from co-resident pooling to networked coordination rather than a clean institutional break.

145.23 Caste endogamy remains resilient even as education and mobility widen the pool of possible partners

Education, urban residence, migration and digital matrimonial platforms allow people to encounter a much wider social world than earlier village-based marriage networks. Yet these same technologies can be used to filter partners by caste, region, occupation, income and education. Change therefore occurs inside a continuing institution. Inter-caste marriages exist and may increase in some settings, but public data do not justify assuming a rapid disappearance of endogamy. Family negotiation remains central because marriage carries property, care and status consequences beyond the couple. The important historical transformation is the growing coexistence of individual preference, digital search and family-managed criteria.

145.24 Class increasingly modifies caste experience through schooling, occupation and consumption

A salaried teacher, landless agricultural worker, contractor, migrant entrepreneur and unemployed graduate may share a caste label while occupying very different class positions. Income and education affect housing, nutrition, medical care, English or digital competence, marriage options and political influence. Conversely, class mobility does not automatically remove caste discrimination or inherited network effects. Contemporary social analysis must therefore cross-tabulate categories rather than infer economic condition from identity alone. Bihar’s caste-based survey is valuable precisely because it links group classification to socio-economic indicators, but its broad averages cannot describe every household. Within-group inequality is a central feature of modern caste society.

145.25 Gender inequality crosses caste and class boundaries but takes different material forms

Women in affluent households may have greater education and health access yet face restrictions on paid work or mobility; poorer women may work intensively because household survival requires it while lacking property or income control. Dalit and other historically marginalised women can experience caste discrimination alongside gendered labour exploitation. Muslim, Hindu and other communities also contain diverse gender practices shaped by class, locality and education. A single “status of women” measure therefore obscures mechanisms. Property ownership, labour-force participation, unpaid work, age at

marriage, schooling, mobility, violence and political participation each capture different dimensions. Intersectional analysis is necessary because no social category operates in isolation.

145.26 The India–Nepal border adds citizenship and legal regime to household inequality

Cross-border kinship and migration connect households whose members live under different citizenship, inheritance, education and welfare systems. Marriage across the border can create documentation questions involving citizenship transmission, registration and access to services. Labour mobility can be socially routine even when administrative systems differ. Madhesh adds a federal context in which language, representation and social inclusion are debated within Nepal's constitutional framework. The historical interaction zone is therefore socially integrated in some respects and legally divided in others. Household strategies must navigate both kinship familiarity and state boundaries.

145.27 The education–employment gap is now a major site where gender and class are renegotiated

Girls' school and higher-education participation has expanded substantially, but women's labour-force participation remains far below men's in Bihar and Madhesh. This gap cannot be explained by education alone. Care responsibilities, safety, transport, job availability, social expectations and the acceptability of particular occupations shape whether credentials translate into paid work. Class matters because wealthier households may support long education but also delay women's employment, while poorer households may depend on labour that surveys undercount. The household becomes the arena in which the value of women's education is negotiated against marriage, migration and care obligations. This is one of the clearest examples of institutional change proceeding at different speeds.

145.28 Ageing and care are emerging as class and gender questions of growing importance

Fertility decline, longer life expectancy and migration increase the number of households in which older people require care while younger adults live elsewhere. Pensions, health insurance, remittances and public health services can reduce dependence on daughters-in-law or co-resident sons, but coverage and quality vary. Women continue to perform a large share of unpaid elder care, often alongside childcare and farm or paid work. Class shapes the ability to purchase private treatment, hire carers or maintain multiple residences. Ageing therefore exposes the hidden infrastructure of social reproduction. A household can be financially stronger because of migration while simultaneously facing a care deficit because working-age members are absent.

145.29 The long-run pattern is institutional recombination, not linear dissolution of hierarchy

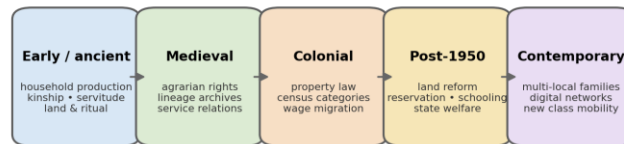
Across the volume's chronology, old and new institutions repeatedly combine. Kinship networks support modern migration; caste associations use electoral and digital platforms; women's unpaid care sustains households financed by salaried work; land remains socially important even when remittances exceed farm income; education creates mobility while intensifying competition in marriage and employment. The concept of "transition" is useful only when it identifies what is changing and what remains. No single event—colonial rule, land reform, democracy, urbanisation or the internet—ended earlier structures. Each altered incentives, records and bargaining power. Social change is therefore best understood as

recombination: persistent relationships are reorganised through new legal, economic and technological institutions.

145.30 Conclusion: social history is the history of bargaining power inside connected institutions

Household, caste, class and gender across Mithila, Vajji and Anga form a historical system of relationships rather than four independent variables. Property and kinship organise inheritance; caste and community networks shape marriage and access; class determines buffers against risk; gender structures labour, care and authority; education, migration and the state redistribute opportunities. None of these relationships is fixed, and none disappears simply because another becomes more important. The *longue durée* reveals persistence in the questions societies must answer—who owns, who works, who cares, who belongs and who can claim resources—while the answers change. A rigorous synthesis therefore follows mechanisms and evidence across periods, keeps modern categories from being projected backward, and recognises that social transformation is uneven within every group.

Long-run transformation: persistence of relationships, change in institutional form



Persistent questions

Who owns? Who works? Who cares? Who marries whom? Who can move? Who can claim state resources?

The answers change because law, markets, education, migration and politics alter bargaining power inside and between households. Continuity should therefore be demonstrated, not presumed.

Figure 579 — Across time, persistent questions of ownership, labour, care, marriage, mobility and claims are answered through changing institutions.

Table 145.1 — Evidence architecture for reconstructing household, caste, class and gender across time

Evidence source	What it can establish	Main caution
Archaeology and material culture	household scale; food; craft; storage; settlement difference	do not infer caste or legal kinship directly from artefacts
Inscriptions and dated texts	donors; offices; dependants; property claims; normative classifications	elite or institutional voices are not a census of society
Genealogies / Panji manuscripts	descent; marriage regulation; lineage memory; documentary status	institutionally selective; later categories must not be projected backward
Land and revenue records	ownership; tenancy; rent; inheritance; fiscal hierarchy	recorded rights may differ from practical control and labour
Colonial census / ethnography	households; occupations; caste names; migration; administrative classification	enumeration standardises categories and can reshape self-description
Post-1950 census / surveys	household size; work; education; migration; SC/ST and demographic structure	definitions change; unpaid work and circular migration can be under-recorded
Caste and socio-economic surveys	group distribution plus education, income, assets and deprivation	broad averages conceal within-group class inequality

Evidence source	What it can establish	Main caution
NFHS / DHS / labour-force surveys	marriage, fertility, health, schooling, employment and gender indicators	sample surveys; indicators are not direct measures of household authority
Oral history / ethnography	care, bargaining, migration, marriage negotiations and lived hierarchy	local studies require careful scaling and source criticism

Chapter 146 — Riverine Ecology and Economic History

Chapter 146 synthesises a proposition that runs through the entire volume: rivers are not a background to the history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga. They are active ecological and economic institutions. Himalayan rivers bring water and sediment, create and erase land, recharge wetlands, interrupt roads, sustain fisheries, shape cropping calendars and repeatedly redistribute settlement. The Ganga connects Anga and the wider middle Gangetic economy; the Kosi, Bagmati, Kamla-Balan, Gandak and Burhi Gandak systems structure north Bihar; and the Nepal Tarai lies upstream or across many of the same hydrological relationships. To write economic history without river dynamics is therefore to omit a major mechanism through which assets, risks and opportunities have been produced.

The chapter also rejects a simple contrast between a benign “natural river” and a destructive “engineered river”. Floodplains were risky before modern embankments, and infrastructure has saved lives, protected crops and connected markets. At the same time, barrages, embankments, roads, canals and urban expansion alter drainage, sediment movement and the geography of exposure. The historical question is not whether intervention is good or bad in the abstract. It is how different arrangements distribute water, silt, mobility, maintenance costs and failure risk among places and households. This makes river history simultaneously environmental history, agrarian history, labour history, infrastructure history and the history of public authority.

146.1 Rivers made the alluvial plains that later societies inhabited

The soils and settlement surfaces of Mithila, Vajji and much of Anga were built by repeated river action. Channels migrated, levees formed, backswamps and chauras retained water, and sediment accumulated unevenly. Human communities inherited no fixed landscape; they occupied a mosaic whose elevation, drainage and fertility were historically produced by water and silt. This matters because settlement density, crop choice and transport routes were partly responses to micro-topography. A village on a natural levee faced different waterlogging and erosion risks from a settlement in a low basin. Riverine economic history therefore begins with geomorphology, but it does not end there: people converted ecological differences into fields, ponds, grazing areas, markets and routes.

146.2 Flood is a hydrological event; disaster is a social relationship

High water becomes disaster when it intersects with exposed people, crops, houses, roads and unequal capacity to recover. The same depth of inundation can have very different consequences depending on crop stage, housing material, access to raised ground, livestock mobility, savings and public warning. Historical flood accounts often emphasise exceptional destruction, yet ordinary seasonal inundation may also replenish soil moisture, support fisheries and recharge shallow water bodies. Economic analysis must therefore separate hazard from vulnerability. This distinction prevents two errors: romanticising floods as uniformly beneficial and treating all river variability as pathology. The relevant unit is the coupled system of river process, settlement pattern, livelihood calendar and institutional response.

146.3 Seasonal water pulses organised agricultural time

Agriculture across the plains has long been timed around monsoon arrival, flood recession, soil moisture and access to irrigation. Rice systems depend on both rainfall and the depth and duration of standing water; rabi crops exploit cooler dry-season conditions and residual or pumped moisture; short-duration crops can use newly exposed floodplain surfaces. A late monsoon, prolonged inundation or sudden channel breach

affects not only yield but labour demand, tenancy obligations, credit and the next sowing window. River seasonality thus synchronises economic activity. Markets for seed, pumps, diesel, fodder and labour expand or contract with the hydrological calendar, while households spread risk across crops, livestock, fishing, migration and non-farm income.

146.4 Silt is both fertility and obstruction

Sediment is one of the most economically important materials moved by rivers. Fine silt can renew topsoil, while sand deposition can bury fields or alter their use for years. Sediment also raises channels, fills local drainage lines and accumulates around hydraulic structures. The economic meaning of silt therefore depends on grain size, depth, timing and location. A flood-recession cultivator may value fresh alluvium that an embanked settlement experiences as drainage congestion. Historical descriptions of “fertile floods” and modern complaints about sand-casting need not contradict one another; they describe different sediment outcomes. A serious history must follow material flows rather than treating floodwater as a uniform substance.

146.5 Wetlands, ponds and chauras formed a parallel economy of water

Riverine ecology extends beyond the main channel. Oxbows, ponds, marshes and seasonal depressions support fish, aquatic plants, makhana in suitable wetlands, fodder, birds, groundwater recharge and dry-season water. These spaces have often been classified administratively as wasteland or treated as land awaiting drainage, yet their economic functions can be substantial and distributed among users who do not hold conventional field titles. Wetland conversion can create cultivable or urban land while reducing fisheries, storage of floodwater and ecological buffering. The long-run history of regional development therefore includes a recurring contest over whether shallow water is an obstacle, a commons, a productive ecosystem or a real-estate opportunity.

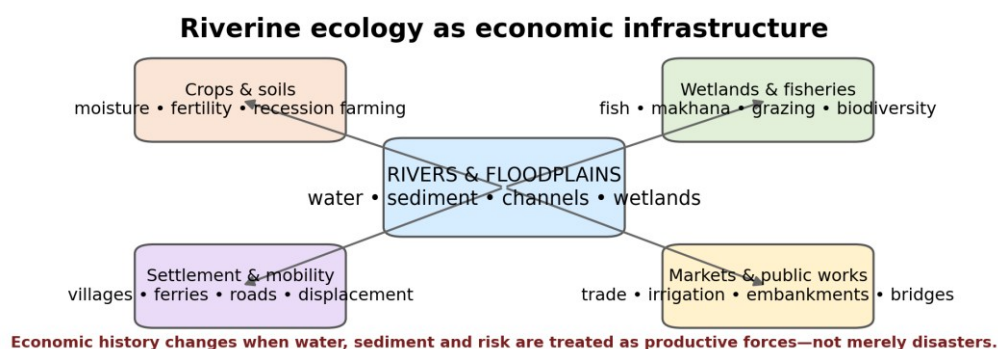


Figure 580 — Riverine ecology functions as economic infrastructure through soils, wetlands, settlement, mobility, markets and public works.

146.6 Fisheries translate ecological connectivity into food and income

Fish production depends on connections among rivers, floodplains, ponds and seasonal wetlands as well as on managed aquaculture. Flood pulses can open breeding and feeding habitat, while embankments, roads and drainage structures may interrupt movement unless designed with ecological connectivity in mind. Contemporary pond aquaculture can increase output and control, but it does not reproduce every function of open floodplain fisheries. For poorer households, capture fisheries may also provide flexible subsistence and cash income requiring little land. The historical transition is therefore not from “wild fish” to “modern

aquaculture” in a simple progression. It is a reorganisation of access, ownership, water control, species and market chains.

146.7 River crossings were economic bottlenecks before bridges became routine

Before modern bridge networks, ferries, boats and seasonal fords determined where people, cattle, grain and correspondence could cross. A river could be a trade corridor along its course and a barrier across it. Market towns grew around dependable crossings, while monsoon changes could isolate settlements and raise transport prices. Boatmen, ferry contractors and riverside traders occupied important niches in this economy. Bridges later reduced travel time and made road transport more reliable, but they also concentrated traffic onto approach roads and altered the commercial geography of older ghats. The history of connectivity is therefore partly a history of how societies solved the problem of crossing moving water.

146.8 Rivers linked Anga and Mithila to wider Gangetic exchange

The Ganga was a major east–west artery for the circulation of people and goods, while tributaries connected local production zones to the trunk river and to land routes. Bhagalpur and the Anga zone derived part of their commercial significance from this riverine position. In north Bihar, connections toward the Ganga linked agrarian and craft economies to larger markets even when tributary crossings made movement difficult. River transport did not disappear immediately with roads and railways; rather, different modes competed and complemented one another. The historical significance of a river corridor therefore lies less in proving continuous navigation on every reach than in understanding how water routes structured the relative costs and directions of exchange.

146.9 Early and medieval settlements reveal adaptation to changing water landscapes

Archaeological sites, mounds, old channels and later settlement records show that habitation was repeatedly adjusted to water conditions. Elevated natural surfaces, access to potable water, proximity to cultivable land and protection from frequent channel disturbance all mattered, although political and religious factors also influenced location. Abandoned channels could become routes, fields or wetlands; active channels could erase evidence. This creates a preservation bias: the riverine landscape destroys some of the archive through which its own history is studied. Settlement archaeology should therefore be read together with geomorphology and historical cartography rather than assuming that the modern river position represents the ancient one.

146.10 Land rights were complicated by accretion, erosion and diara formation

Alluvial rivers challenge cadastral ideas of fixed property because land can appear, disappear or shift relative to mapped boundaries. Diara and char-like lands may be seasonally cultivated, grazed or claimed by multiple users. Erosion can destroy titled parcels without immediately extinguishing debt or household need, while new accretions raise disputes over ownership and revenue. Colonial and postcolonial administrations attempted to map and classify these changing spaces, but the physical substrate remained mobile. Riverine property history is thus a particularly clear example of the tension between legal fixity and ecological change. Household wealth in land cannot be understood only from acreage when the durability and accessibility of that acreage vary.

146.11 Revenue systems converted ecological variability into fiscal pressure

When land revenue or rent expectations are relatively fixed, highly variable harvests can transmit river risk directly into debt and arrears. Flood, waterlogging, bank erosion or sand deposition can reduce output without automatically reducing fiscal or tenancy obligations. Conversely, landlords and states may capture part of the value created by fertile alluvium, irrigation or improved access. Historical records of remission, settlement revision and agrarian dispute therefore provide indirect evidence of environmental shocks. The key point is institutional: ecology affects livelihoods through contracts and claims. A wet year becomes an economic crisis more readily when obligations remain inflexible and households lack savings, alternative earnings or political capacity to obtain relief.

146.12 Colonial surveys made rivers more legible while also simplifying them

Gazetteers, revenue surveys, cadastral maps and engineering reports greatly expanded documentary knowledge of channels, embankments, ferries, wetlands and flood damage. They remain indispensable historical sources. Yet their categories were designed for administration: a map may privilege property boundaries, a flood report may prioritise damaged infrastructure, and a gazetteer may describe a wetland mainly in terms of cultivation potential. These records should be treated as measurements made for particular purposes rather than transparent portraits of nature. Their greatest value emerges when combined with maps, local testimony, hydrological evidence and later remote sensing to reconstruct how both the river and the administrative gaze changed.

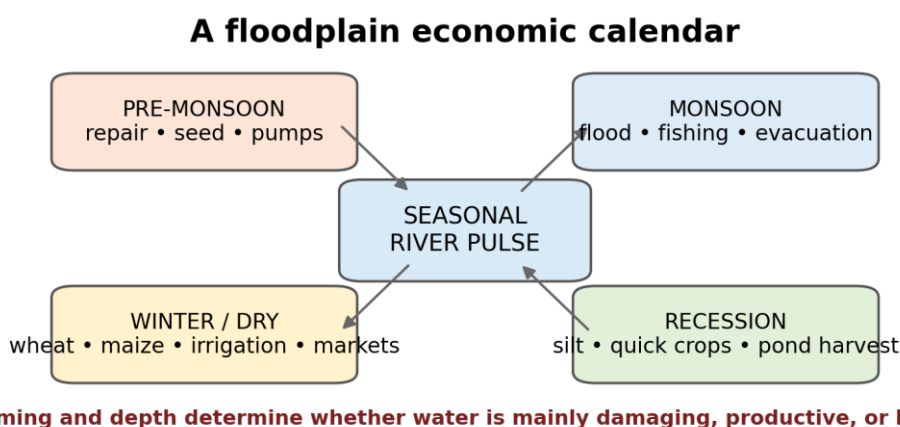


Figure 581 — Floodplain economies follow a seasonal calendar in which risk, production and recovery are intertwined.

146.13 Embankments emerged from a demand for predictability

Embankments are often discussed only through failure, but their historical appeal is easy to understand. Farmers, towns and governments value protection from recurrent inundation because predictable cropping and transport can support investment. By excluding moderate floods from selected areas, embankments may protect standing crops, houses, schools and roads. The economic benefit is therefore real and can be large. The problem is that protection is spatially selective and maintenance-intensive. Water excluded from one area must move elsewhere; local drainage may become trapped; sediment deposition patterns change; and rare breaches can concentrate damage. The correct historical analysis evaluates both the protection created and the new dependencies created with it.

146.14 The Kosi became a defining case of hydraulic modernity and contested risk

The Kosi system illustrates the difficulty of governing a sediment-rich Himalayan river across an international border and a densely settled plain. Barrage, embankment and canal projects were intended to reduce destructive channel movement, improve flood control and support irrigation. They also produced a long maintenance regime in which embankment condition, sediment, drainage and upstream–downstream coordination became permanent public responsibilities. The 2008 breach demonstrated how a failure at one point can rapidly reorganise the geography of risk. Kosi history should therefore not be reduced either to a morality tale against engineering or to a success narrative of control. It is a history of negotiated protection under persistent geomorphic uncertainty.

146.15 Gandak and other river projects linked irrigation to regional development

Large river-development schemes promised benefits beyond flood control: irrigation, agricultural intensification, navigation improvement in earlier visions, and later road and energy connections. The Gandak system exemplifies the cross-border and inter-state institutional scale required when water originates outside the command area. Canal irrigation can stabilise production where rainfall is uncertain, but performance depends on tributary maintenance, timing, tail-end access and drainage. Irrigation history therefore needs to measure service reliability rather than only designed command area. The wider lesson is that a river project converts hydrological variability into an institutional system of gates, schedules, engineers, farmers and budgets. Economic outcomes depend on that social machinery.

146.16 Drainage is as important as irrigation in a monsoon floodplain

Development policy often treats water scarcity as the primary agricultural constraint, but in low-lying parts of north Bihar excess water and blocked drainage can be equally damaging. Roads, embankments and canals can obstruct natural flow unless culverts and channels are adequately designed and maintained. Waterlogging delays sowing, damages roots, restricts livestock movement and can turn cultivable land into seasonal marsh. Pumps may remove local water but can transfer it elsewhere. The economic history of drainage is therefore the neglected counterpart to irrigation history. A successful water-control system must manage too little water, too much water and the timing of both, while preserving routes through which floodwater can safely recede.

146.17 Roads and bridges create connectivity but also act as hydraulic structures

A raised road across a floodplain is not only transport infrastructure; it is also a barrier that redirects water unless openings are sufficient and kept clear. The rapid expansion of rural roads and bridge approaches has transformed access to schools, hospitals and markets, yet cumulative local effects on drainage can be significant. This does not imply that roads should not be built. It means that economic appraisal should include hydrological design and maintenance. A road that remains passable during floods may produce large resilience benefits, while one that blocks drainage can impose losses on adjacent fields. Riverine economic history thus dissolves the boundary between transport policy and water policy.

146.18 Flood control changes land values and settlement incentives

Perceived protection alters behaviour. Land behind embankments or near new roads can become more attractive for housing, shops and permanent investment. Over time, this can increase the value of protected assets and make the consequences of a rare breach much larger. This dynamic is sometimes described as a

protection paradox: successful control encourages accumulation in places that remain exposed to residual risk. Historical land-price data are incomplete, but settlement expansion and construction patterns can reveal the process. Resilience planning must therefore manage not only existing exposure but the new exposure created by confidence in infrastructure. Building codes, raised critical facilities and evacuation access become economic policies, not merely emergency measures.

146.19 Erosion produces slow-onset dispossession that flood statistics can miss

Bank erosion differs from temporary inundation because it can remove the land itself. A household may lose fields, homestead space, trees and documents in stages over several seasons. Compensation systems designed around a single disaster date can struggle with this incremental process. Erosion also changes administrative geography as villages and boundaries shift relative to the channel. Families may move to embankments, roadside strips, relatives' land or towns, while maintaining claims to lost places. The economic cost therefore includes asset destruction, insecure tenure, interrupted schooling, migration and weakened access to public services. Riverine poverty can be produced through repeated partial losses rather than one spectacular flood.

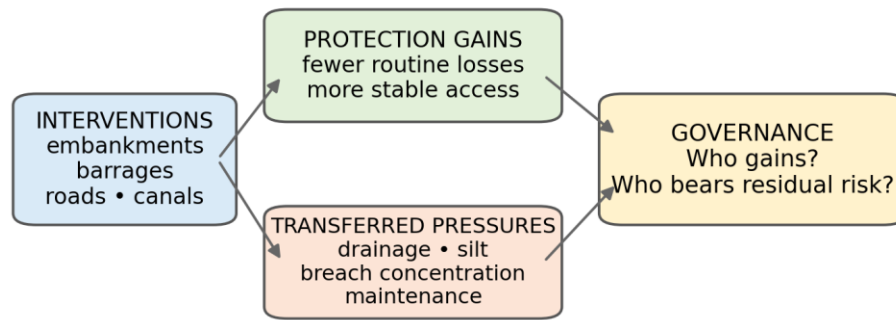
146.20 Migration is both a response to river risk and an independent household strategy

Flood-prone regions often have deep migration networks, but migration should not be attributed mechanically to environmental shocks. People move for wages, education, marriage and aspiration as well as after crop failure or erosion. What river risk does is alter the value of diversified income. Earnings from Delhi, Punjab, the Gulf or regional towns can finance house repair, debt repayment, irrigation pumps and post-flood consumption. Migration may also reduce the labour available for emergency response or farming at origin. The household becomes a geographically distributed risk-management system. Environmental and labour histories therefore intersect through remittances, return migration and decisions about whether to reinvest in vulnerable land.

146.21 Women's labour often absorbs the hidden costs of hydrological disruption

When water sources are contaminated, roads are cut, livestock must be moved or male migrants are absent, women frequently take on additional unpaid work in care, food preparation, water collection and household recovery. Flood shelters and relief systems that ignore privacy, sanitation, menstrual needs or childcare can raise these burdens. At the same time, women's self-help groups and local organisations may become important channels for savings, credit, warning and relief distribution. Gender therefore enters riverine economic history not only through victimhood but through labour allocation and institutional agency. Time-use effects should be counted alongside crop and infrastructure losses when evaluating floods and adaptation.

Engineering transforms risk rather than eliminating it



Good appraisal counts avoided damage AND transferred risk.

Figure 582 — River engineering can reduce frequent losses while redistributing drainage, maintenance and breach risk.

146.22 Caste and class shape exposure because assets and safe locations are unequally distributed

River hazards act through existing social structure. Households with secure land, savings, vehicles, salaried employment and urban kin can often evacuate earlier and recover faster. Landless workers may lose wages even when they lose little titled property; tenants can lose crops without appearing in land-compensation records; marginalised settlements may occupy embankment edges, low sites or poorly serviced peripheries. Caste, class and gender do not determine flood outcomes in a simple way, but they influence property, political voice and access to relief. Disaster statistics that count damaged houses without examining tenure and livelihood can therefore understate inequality in recovery.

146.23 Public health turns floodwater into a second economic shock

Floods affect health through contaminated drinking water, interrupted sanitation, vector habitat, injuries, displacement and reduced access to routine care. Illness imposes treatment costs and lost labour days after visible water has receded. Livestock disease can create parallel losses. Public-health infrastructure—raised clinics, mobile services, safe water, vaccination continuity and surveillance—is consequently part of river resilience. Historical accounts of mortality and epidemic disease after floods remind us that the economic value of water management cannot be measured only in hectares protected. As health systems improve, the composition of loss changes: fewer deaths may coexist with large costs from chronic disruption, damaged facilities and household medical expenditure.

146.24 Climate change alters the probability distribution, not the existence, of river risk

Flood, drought, channel movement and intense monsoon rainfall are older than anthropogenic climate change. The contemporary problem is that warming can modify rainfall intensity, snow and glacier processes, evapotranspiration and the frequency of compound extremes. Attribution must remain careful: one flood should not be labelled climate-caused without appropriate analysis. For economic planning, however, stationary assumptions become less reliable. Infrastructure designed from past hydrology may face future conditions outside the historical range, while exposure is also rising through population and asset

growth. Climate adaptation therefore requires flexible safety margins, updated data and livelihood strategies that perform under uncertainty rather than prediction of one exact future.

146.25 India–Nepal river relations are economic interdependence before they are diplomacy

Many rivers affecting the Bihar plains originate in or pass through Nepal. Rainfall, sediment and upstream channel conditions do not stop at the border, while downstream markets, roads, labour and kinship connect the same region socially. Treaties, barrages and technical committees are therefore only one layer of a wider transboundary economy. Timely hydrometeorological information can save crops and lives far downstream; infrastructure decisions can alter local effects across jurisdictions; and pilgrimage, trade and migration continue during ordinary hydrological conditions. River cooperation works best when it is understood as routine shared risk management rather than activated only during crisis.

146.26 Forecasting changes the economics of a flood before the water arrives

A warning has economic value because lead time allows households and institutions to move people, livestock, documents, machinery and stocks. Farmers may harvest early, traders can shift inventory, schools can close safely and health facilities can prepare. The benefit depends on forecast accuracy, communication, trust and the ability to act. A warning that reaches only district offices or smartphone users may fail households without connectivity or transport. Modern flood forecasting and community-based warning systems therefore extend infrastructure from concrete structures into information networks. Their performance should be assessed by lead time, reach, comprehension and protective action—not simply by whether a bulletin was issued.

146.27 Insurance, credit and social protection determine whether recovery becomes indebtedness

After a flood, households need liquidity before compensation or the next harvest arrives. Informal loans, traders, relatives, self-help groups, banks, crop insurance and public relief all shape the recovery path. High-cost debt can convert a temporary shock into long-term asset loss, while timely grants or affordable credit can preserve livestock, schooling and productive investment. Migrant remittances often function as private insurance but are unevenly available. Portable social protection is especially important for displaced and multi-local households. The economics of resilience therefore includes financial timing: two families with identical physical damage can have very different long-run outcomes depending on when and on what terms they obtain cash.

146.28 Ecological restoration can complement rather than replace engineered protection

Wetland conservation, room for local drainage, vegetated banks, flood-compatible land use and restoration of water-storage spaces can reduce some pressures while sustaining fisheries and biodiversity. Such measures are sometimes presented as alternatives to embankments and barrages, but in densely settled plains the more realistic strategy is often combination. Critical settlements and transport links may require structural protection, while adjacent floodplain functions are preserved where feasible. The economic comparison must include land opportunity cost, maintenance, ecosystem services and distributional effects. “Nature-based” should not become a slogan that ignores people already living in hazardous places, just as “engineering” should not become a synonym for permanent control.

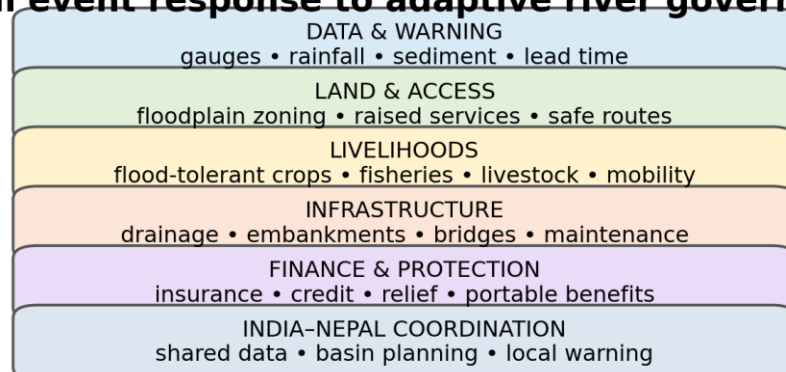
146.29 A river-resilience economy needs measurement beyond annual flood damage

A useful dashboard would combine hydrological indicators with livelihood and institutional measures: days of warning, duration of road closure, hectares waterlogged, erosion displacement, crop loss by tenancy status, fishery recovery, school interruption, health-service access, relief timing, debt, migration and time to restore electricity or drinking water. It should also track benefits from irrigation, fisheries, fertile silt and improved connectivity. This broader accounting changes policy incentives. Agencies are then rewarded not only for preventing inundation but for preserving function, reducing recovery time and avoiding the transfer of risk to less visible communities. Long-run data make it possible to distinguish resilience from a single fortunate season.

146.30 Conclusion: economic history in a floodplain is the history of living with moving water

Across Mithila, Vajji and Anga, rivers have created land, supported agriculture and fisheries, enabled exchange, destroyed assets, displaced households and demanded some of the region's largest public works. The long-run pattern is neither passive adaptation nor final conquest of nature. It is institutional learning under a landscape that continues to move. The most durable economic strategies diversify livelihoods, preserve drainage, maintain infrastructure, communicate risk, protect vulnerable households and coordinate across borders. Riverine ecology therefore belongs at the centre of the volume's synthesis: it shows how environment, technology, property, labour and state capacity become one historical system. The next chapter turns from this material infrastructure to language as social infrastructure.

From event response to adaptive river governance



RESILIENCE = absorb • recover • adapt • preserve livelihood choice

Figure 583 — Adaptive river governance combines forecasts, land-use decisions, livelihood diversity, maintained infrastructure, finance, cross-border coordination and ecological functions.

Table 146.1 — Evidence architecture for reconstructing riverine ecology and economic history

Evidence source	What it can establish	Main caution
Geomorphology & remote sensing	channel migration; floodplain units; erosion; sediment surfaces	modern imagery must not be projected backward without dating
Archaeology & settlement evidence	site location; elevation choices; food, storage and craft in river landscapes	preservation is biased by erosion and burial

Evidence source	What it can establish	Main caution
Historical maps & gazetteers	channels, ferries, wetlands, embankments, markets and reported floods	administrative purposes shape what was recorded
Revenue & cadastral records	property, accretion/erosion disputes, rent and revenue consequences	legal parcels may not match ecological use or tenancy
Hydrological gauges & forecasts	rainfall, river level, discharge, warning lead time and event chronology	station coverage and rating curves change over time
Disaster damage & relief records	houses, crops, infrastructure, deaths, assistance and recovery spending	informal work, tenants and unpaid care are often undercounted
Agriculture, fisheries & irrigation data	crop calendars, command performance, ponds, fish and allied livelihoods	sector statistics may miss open-access floodplain use
Household surveys & oral histories	mobility, debt, recovery, gendered labour, perceptions and local knowledge	memory is selective; samples need geographical context
India–Nepal institutional records	treaties, barrages, data-sharing, transboundary warning and project governance	formal cooperation does not capture all local cross-border practice

Chapter 147 — Language as Social Infrastructure

Chapter 147 synthesises a central argument of this volume: language is not only a marker of identity or a vehicle of literature. It is infrastructure through which households coordinate care, markets exchange information, schools transmit knowledge, courts and administrations communicate rights, migrants maintain relationships, and digital systems make people visible or invisible. Roads connect places; language connects intentions, rules, memories and transactions. When people can understand a notice, fill a form, read a prescription, negotiate a wage, search an archive or teach a child in a familiar linguistic register, communication lowers the cost of participation. When language access fails, exclusion can occur even where a formal service physically exists.

The history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga shows that this infrastructure has always been layered. Oral traditions coexisted with manuscript cultures; Sanskrit and other learned languages interacted with vernacular speech; Tirhuta/Mithilakshar, Devanagari, Kaithi and Persianate scribal practices belonged to different institutional worlds; print created new publics; Hindi and Nepali expanded as state and educational languages; Maithili, Angika and Bajjika continued through homes, performance, publication, broadcasting and local politics; and networked digital media have added Unicode, keyboards, search, speech technologies and machine translation. The relevant historical question is therefore not which single language ‘belongs’ to the region. It is how multilingual repertoires have been organised, valued and made usable across changing institutions.

147.1 Language infrastructure begins with coordination, not with official status

A language functions infrastructurally when it helps people coordinate action. Farmers exchange information about seed, rainfall and labour; traders negotiate quality and credit; families organise marriage, inheritance and care; patients describe symptoms; teachers explain concepts; migrants transfer instructions and money across distance. None of these activities requires constitutional recognition in order to matter. Conversely, formal recognition does not guarantee everyday usability. The useful unit of analysis is therefore a communication chain: who needs to understand whom, through which medium, with what consequences if meaning is lost. This approach shifts attention from prestige alone to the practical distribution of linguistic capability.

147.2 Multilingualism is the normal condition of the region, not an exception

Mithila, Vajji and Anga have never been sealed monolingual territories. People move between household speech, regional literary forms, market languages, administrative languages and languages associated with religion or education. The repertoire changes by place and social position. A merchant, teacher, migrant worker, student or ritual specialist may use several codes for different purposes. Historical sources likewise represent different linguistic domains rather than a single hierarchy valid everywhere. Treating multilingualism as normal prevents the historian from converting modern language boundaries into timeless cultural frontiers and makes it possible to study code choice as a form of social competence.

147.3 Oral language carried institutions long before mass literacy

Before widespread schooling and print, most social knowledge circulated orally: customary obligations, agricultural timing, songs, genealogical memory, ritual procedure, market reputation and dispute narratives. Oral transmission was not the absence of infrastructure. It depended on recognised performers, elders, specialists, repeated occasions and mnemonic forms that stabilised information. Even in literate societies, oral

explanation remains crucial because documents are often interpreted collectively. The persistence of song, story, recitation, announcement and face-to-face mediation reminds us that literacy is one layer of language infrastructure, not its starting point.

147.4 Script converted speech into durable records but also created gatekeepers

Writing allows language to travel across time and distance without the speaker being present. Land records, letters, genealogies, contracts, scholastic manuscripts and accounts expand institutional memory. Yet scripts also create thresholds: one must know how to read them, possess the material, and understand the conventions of the record. Tirhuta/Mithilakshar, Devanagari, Kaithi, Persian and other scripts therefore belonged not only to languages but to occupations and institutions. Scribes, teachers, clerks and manuscript custodians became mediators between oral claims and written authority. The social history of script is consequently a history of access as well as preservation.

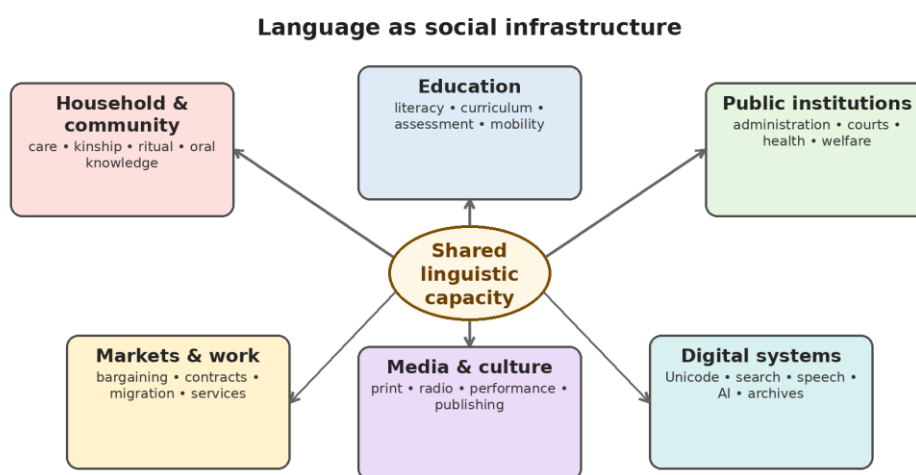


Figure 584 — Language acts as shared infrastructure across household, education, public institutions, markets, media and digital systems.

147.5 Learned languages formed specialised knowledge networks

Sanskrit, Pali, Prakrit and later Persian and other learned or administrative languages connected the region to intellectual and political networks larger than any one locality. Their importance should not be described as simple replacement of vernacular speech. Learned languages often operated in specialised domains—scholarship, ritual, court procedure, record keeping or elite correspondence—while everyday life continued in regional speech. Such functional differentiation could widen knowledge networks but also concentrate authority among trained groups. The history of language infrastructure must therefore distinguish domain from population: a language can have enormous institutional influence without being the ordinary mother tongue of most residents.

147.6 Literary Maithili expanded the capacity to address publics beyond the immediate household

The formation of literary Maithili created a medium in which lyric, drama, devotional expression, narrative and later prose could circulate beyond a single village. Literary standardisation makes texts more portable, but it also selects among regional forms. The resulting tradition should not be mistaken for

evidence that all speakers used one uniform vernacular. Its infrastructural significance lies elsewhere: it supplied a recognisable written medium, a repertoire of genres, models for teaching and publication, and a basis for institutions that could later claim a regional literary public.

147.7 The two Vidyāpatīs belong to different historical language infrastructures

The governing distinction maintained throughout this volume remains essential here. Mahākavi Vidyāpati, the earlier Maithili Padāvalī poet, and the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura associated with the Oiniwar court and Sanskrit/Avahatṭa works belong to different historical contexts. Conflating them collapses distinct literary and institutional environments into a single biography and distorts the chronology of language formation. Language infrastructure is built by texts, audiences, scripts and institutions at particular times; accurate attribution is therefore not a minor philological issue but part of reconstructing how literary publics were actually organised.

147.8 Tirhuta/Mithilakshar linked textual memory to a regional scribal ecology

Tirhuta/Mithilakshar served manuscript, genealogical and literary functions in Mithila and became a visible sign of regional textual culture. Its historical importance cannot be measured only by how many people use it in daily writing today. A script can persist as archival infrastructure, cultural knowledge and a technical requirement for reading older documents. Modern digitisation adds a new dimension: encoded text, fonts and keyboards can reconnect readers to manuscripts only when transcription standards, training and provenance are maintained. Script revival is strongest when it supports reading, teaching and archival work rather than functioning only as ornament.

147.9 Persianate and colonial administrations changed the languages of official legibility

Changes of political authority altered the linguistic interfaces through which land, revenue, petitions and law became legible to the state. Persianate administrative practices and later colonial regimes introduced new documentary conventions, vocabularies and clerical skills. The shift was not merely linguistic; it changed who could mediate between villagers and offices. Colonial standardisation further linked language to censuses, schools, courts and print. Every such change redistributed transaction costs: some groups acquired new opportunities through literacy in the administrative language, while others depended more heavily on intermediaries.

147.10 Census and survey categories transformed fluid speech into countable populations

Modern censuses require each response to enter a table. This makes language statistically visible but can simplify multilingual practice. Mother-tongue names may be grouped, separated or reported differently across censuses, and political recognition can affect what respondents choose to name. Census of India language tables and Nepal's population censuses are therefore indispensable but not transparent mirrors of speech. Their infrastructural effect is nevertheless real: counted languages can become objects of policy, schooling, representation and advocacy. The historian must read the table as both evidence about population and evidence about classification.

147.11 Print reduced the cost of repetition and created durable language publics

Printing multiplied the reach of grammars, newspapers, journals, textbooks, pamphlets and literary works. A manuscript may circulate through a small chain of readers; a printed edition can produce simultaneous publics and standardise spelling and terminology. Print also enables correction, debate and serial publication. In Maithili, Angika and Bajjika cultural worlds, print institutions helped turn dispersed speakers and writers into audiences who could imagine a shared field of discussion. The same process, however, privileges varieties that obtain presses, editors, typefaces, distribution and school demand. Print infrastructure therefore amplifies both communication and inequality.

A historical media stack: language infrastructure accumulates

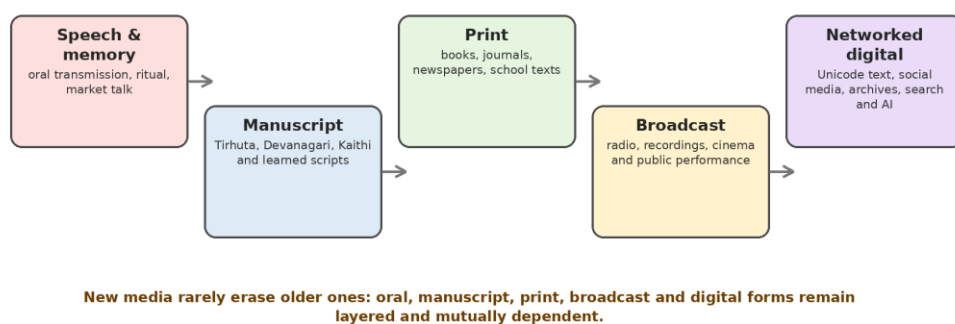


Figure 585 — Language infrastructure accumulates across oral, manuscript, print, broadcast and networked digital media.

147.12 Schooling makes language an economic resource as well as a cultural one

The language of schooling affects comprehension, progression, examination performance and the relationship between home knowledge and formal curriculum. Mother-tongue support can reduce the cognitive burden of learning unfamiliar content through an unfamiliar code, especially in early grades. At later stages, competence in wider languages can expand access to higher education and labour markets. The policy problem is not solved by choosing one side. A strong system needs additive multilingualism: children should gain literacy and conceptual confidence in familiar languages while acquiring the additional languages required for wider mobility.

147.13 Textbooks and terminology are the hidden engineering of language policy

A language cannot function in education or administration through symbolic recognition alone. It needs stable spelling practices, subject vocabulary, dictionaries, edited texts, translation conventions and materials that teachers and officials can actually use. Terminology work is especially important in science, law, health and technology because literal borrowing without explanation can reproduce exclusion in a new script. The quality of language infrastructure is therefore visible in mundane artefacts: a clear form, a usable glossary, a graded reader, a well-edited dictionary and a consistent place-name list.

147.14 Examinations convert linguistic competence into mobility

Public examinations, university admissions and recruitment tests give language choices direct economic consequences. A candidate who understands the subject but struggles with the examination language faces an additional barrier unrelated to substantive knowledge. At the same time, common languages can make large-

scale assessment administratively feasible. Fair systems require transparent language options, reliable translation, equivalent question difficulty and clear rules about scripts and terminology. Examination language is therefore an example of how linguistic design can redistribute opportunity without changing the formal syllabus.

147.15 Administration is accessible only when citizens can understand procedures

Government offices generate notices, certificates, land records, welfare forms, health instructions and grievance procedures. Physical proximity to an office does not guarantee access if the citizen cannot understand the document or explain the problem. Front-line multilingualism, plain-language drafting, interpretation and translated interfaces reduce this friction. The objective is not to reproduce every document in every variety regardless of demand, but to design service chains around actual linguistic needs. Language access is most valuable where misunderstanding carries high costs: identity records, land, benefits, policing, health and disaster warnings.

147.16 Courts reveal the difference between legal language and understood justice

Legal systems require precision, precedent and authoritative records, which encourages specialised vocabulary and standard languages. Yet a litigant must also understand the accusation, testimony, order and remedy. Interpreters and translated documents therefore form part of due process, not an optional cultural service. Historical court language has often differed from household speech, making legal intermediaries especially powerful. A language-infrastructure perspective asks how reliably meaning moves between litigant, lawyer, witness, clerk and judge, and where errors or asymmetries can affect rights.

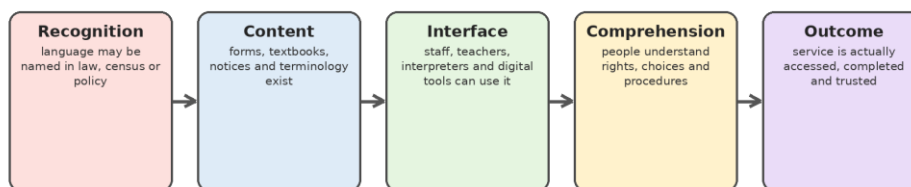
147.17 Health communication turns words into treatment outcomes

Diagnosis begins with description. A patient must communicate symptoms, duration, medication use and consent; a health worker must explain dosage, warning signs and follow-up. In multilingual regions, misunderstanding can reduce adherence even where medicines and clinics are available. Visual aids and multilingual digital tools can help, but they cannot substitute for trust and the ability to ask questions. Public-health campaigns similarly depend on language choices that people recognise and believe. Health therefore demonstrates the infrastructural principle clearly: communication is part of the service itself.

147.18 Disaster warnings must be linguistically local as well as technically accurate

Forecasting systems may generate precise information about floods, storms or heat, but warnings save lives only if people receive and understand them in time. Local vocabulary for river stages, evacuation routes, livestock movement and shelter can be more actionable than abstract technical terminology. Multiple channels—sirens, radio, mobile messages, village announcements and social networks—should reinforce one another. Language thus forms the last mile of disaster infrastructure. A technically sophisticated forecast that fails at the communication interface has not completed its public function.

From language access to usable public service



A symbolic language right becomes social infrastructure only when every link in the service chain works.

Figure 586 — Formal recognition becomes usable public access only when content, interfaces, comprehension and service outcomes align.

147.19 Markets depend on linguistic trust and repeated reputational information

Prices are numbers, but markets operate through much more than numbers. Buyers and sellers discuss quality, credit, delivery, authenticity, warranties and risk. Shared linguistic repertoires lower bargaining costs and support reputational networks, while multilingual brokers connect otherwise separate markets. Regional languages can therefore carry substantial economic value even when formal contracts use another language. The rise of digital commerce extends the same principle to product descriptions, customer service and search. A seller who cannot describe a product in the buyer's language may be invisible in a market that is technically open.

147.20 Migration makes language portable infrastructure

Migrants carry speech practices to destinations and acquire new languages for work, housing, transport and bureaucracy. They also maintain home-language networks through calls, messages, songs, video and remittances. This produces multi-local linguistic households in which children, elders and migrants may have different dominant repertoires. Language competence can affect occupational mobility and vulnerability at destination, but home-language continuity can sustain care, identity and information flows. Migration therefore does not simply erode regional languages; it reorganises the places and media through which they are used.

147.21 Gender shapes who acquires, transmits and can publicly use linguistic capital

Women are major transmitters of songs, ritual vocabulary, child language and household knowledge, yet historically their access to formal schooling, print authorship and public institutions has often been more restricted. Educational expansion and digital media can widen participation, but device ownership, mobility, time and safety still affect whose voice becomes public. A language may be vigorous in domestic transmission while women remain underrepresented in publishing, administration or digital production. Measuring vitality therefore requires attention to gendered control over both speech domains and communicative technologies.

147.22 Caste and class affect language through unequal access to institutions, not through fixed speech essences

Speech varieties can correlate with locality, occupation and social networks, but caste or class should not be treated as possessing timeless linguistic essences. What matters historically is access to schooling, scripts, clerical employment, literary institutions, migration and prestige registers. Groups excluded from formal literacy may sustain rich oral repertoires; upward mobility may encourage acquisition of state or metropolitan languages without erasing home speech. The key mechanism is unequal access to institutions that reward particular forms of linguistic capital. This approach avoids turning social hierarchy into linguistic determinism.

147.23 Angika and Bajjika demonstrate why public naming and linguistic relationship must be kept analytically distinct

Angika and Bajjika occupy important regional speech, literary and cultural fields within the wider history of Mithila–Vajji–Anga. Their relationship to neighbouring Maithili varieties has been described differently by linguists, activists, institutions and census systems. A historical synthesis should not resolve that debate by fiat. It should record how speakers and institutions name these forms, where they are used, how they appear in censuses or academies, and how literary production develops. Public life depends on usable communication regardless of whether a variety is classified as a language, dialect or regional style in a particular scheme.

147.24 Nepal’s Madhesh shows how federalism turns multilingualism into an institutional design problem

Madhesh contains large Maithili and Bajjika-speaking populations alongside Bhojpuri, Nepali, Urdu and other linguistic communities. Federalism creates additional arenas—province and local government—in which language can be used for education, administration and cultural policy. Constitutional principles and language-commission processes provide frameworks, but implementation depends on legislation, staffing, materials and political agreement. The lesson is broader than Nepal: decentralisation can bring language policy closer to speakers, yet it also requires careful coordination so that local inclusion does not create new barriers to mobility or intergovernmental communication.

147.25 Broadcasting created a shared listening public before the internet

Radio, recorded music, cassette culture, television and video expanded regional-language publics across distance and literacy levels. Broadcasting gives speech a new scale: pronunciation, performance styles and vocabulary that were once local can become widely recognisable. It also creates gatekeepers through programming schedules, licensing and audience measurement. For Maithili and related regional forms, broadcast history matters because sound media preserve voices that print cannot capture and can reach households with limited literacy. Digital streaming now extends this archive while making discoverability dependent on platform metadata.

147.26 Unicode changed scripts from images into searchable text

Digital preservation requires more than photographing a page. When a script is encoded in Unicode and supported by fonts and input methods, text can be searched, copied, indexed, compared and processed by software. Tirhuta’s inclusion in the Unicode Standard therefore created a technical foundation for digital use, but encoding alone does not guarantee adoption. Fonts, keyboards, OCR, teaching materials and

correctly encoded corpora are also needed. The distinction mirrors the chapter's wider argument: formal recognition creates a possibility; infrastructure turns that possibility into routine capability.

147.27 Artificial intelligence exposes the consequences of low-resource language inequality

Speech recognition, text-to-speech, translation, OCR and language models improve when they have high-quality corpora, lexicons and representative recordings. Languages with little digitised material may be poorly recognised, while regional accents and code-mixed speech can produce systematic errors. Public programmes such as BHASHINI expand the technical ecosystem for Indian languages, but smaller varieties still require deliberate data creation and evaluation. Community consent, provenance and privacy matter because linguistic datasets contain voices and cultural knowledge. AI policy should therefore treat data stewardship as part of language infrastructure, not as a purely technical procurement problem.

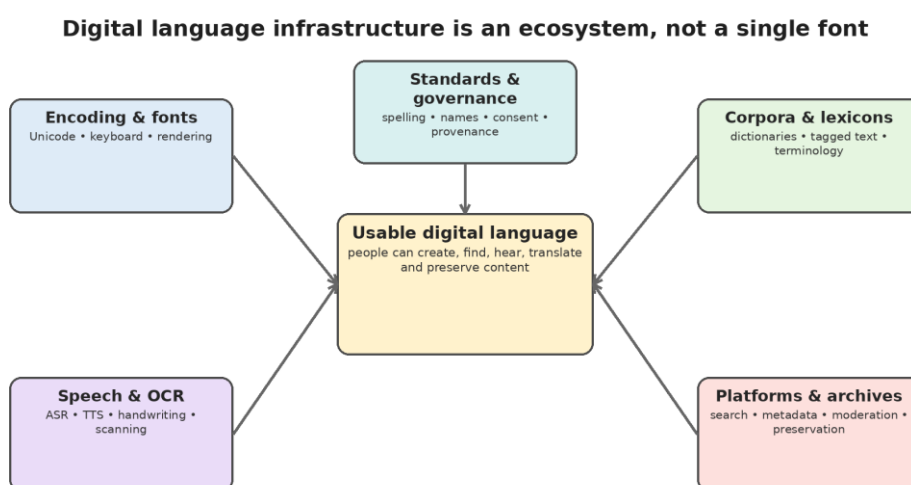


Figure 587 — Digital language capability depends on encoding, corpora, speech tools, platforms, archives and governance working together.

147.28 Archives, dictionaries and corpora are productive infrastructure for future language use

An archive is not only a repository of the past. Digitised manuscripts, newspapers, recordings, dictionaries, thesauri and aligned translations can support education, publishing, search, OCR and machine translation. Their value increases when metadata records date, place, author, script, edition and provenance. Poorly documented scans preserve appearance but limit reuse; normalised transcriptions without page links can erase uncertainty. Sustainable language infrastructure therefore combines preservation-quality images with searchable text, version history and clear licensing. This creates a bridge from cultural memory to future research and technology.

147.29 A language-infrastructure dashboard should measure usability rather than prestige alone

Useful indicators would include early-grade materials available, teachers trained, administrative forms translated, interpreter access, broadcast hours, books published, digital corpus size, keyboard and font availability, search quality, speech-recognition accuracy, archived hours of audio, and the share of users who

can complete a service in a preferred language. These measures reveal where the chain breaks. A language may have literary prestige but weak digital tools; another may have vigorous oral use but few textbooks. Measurement should therefore be domain-specific and should never reduce vitality to a single speaker count.

147.30 Conclusion: language is infrastructure because society repeatedly has to move meaning

Across the long history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga, the central linguistic problem has never been simply which language exists. It has been how meaning moves between generations, households, markets, schools, courts, states and technologies. Oral transmission, scripts, print, broadcasting and digital systems have accumulated rather than replacing one another. Maithili, Angika, Bajjika and the wider multilingual repertoire of the region remain socially consequential when they enable people to learn, transact, remember, claim rights and create. The strongest future policy is therefore neither linguistic homogenisation nor symbolic recognition without capacity. It is durable multilingual infrastructure that makes communication usable, interoperable and open to new generations.

Table 147.1 — Evidence architecture for reconstructing language as social infrastructure

Evidence source	What it can establish	Main caution
Census language tables	mother-tongue reporting; broad spatial distribution; changes in public naming	categories and self-reporting can change; multilingual practice is simplified
Manuscripts, inscriptions & records	scripts, documentary domains, scribal institutions and historical terminology	survival is socially selective; written language does not equal everyday speech
Print & publishing archives	standardisation, public debate, readership, textbook and literary production	publication counts do not measure everyday comprehension
Education records	medium of instruction, enrolment, curriculum, examinations and language options	formal provision may differ from classroom practice
Administrative & legal materials	official interfaces, forms, court language, translation and language rights	recognition does not prove service-level usability
Broadcast & performance archives	spoken registers, reach, music, drama and regional public culture	audience size and passive exposure may be difficult to reconstruct
Digital corpora & platform data	encoding, searchability, corpus scale, speech tools and online creation	platform metrics are proprietary and can change quickly
Interviews & ethnography	code choice, comprehension, language attitudes, household transmission and service barriers	local samples cannot automatically be generalised to the whole region
Dictionaries, thesauri & terminology	lexical resources, standardisation, translation capacity and machine-readable data	normative resources may underrepresent variation and living usage

Chapter 148 — India and Nepal: One Interaction Zone, Multiple Political Economies

Chapter 148 synthesises the cross-border argument developed throughout this volume. Mithila, Vajji and Anga cannot be reconstructed adequately by treating the India–Nepal boundary as either an impermeable line or an irrelevant modern interruption. The border separates two sovereign states with different constitutions, currencies, taxation systems, welfare regimes, regulatory institutions and macroeconomic structures. At the same time, households, languages, pilgrimage circuits, marriage networks, labour migration, rivers, trade routes and cultural markets repeatedly cross it. The result is one dense interaction zone containing multiple political economies rather than one unified economy or two socially disconnected national spaces.

The distinction matters methodologically. A historian can trace movement across the border without assuming that the institutions on both sides are equivalent. Indian and Nepali census categories are not interchangeable; Bihar and Madhesh have different subnational powers; the Indian rupee and Nepali rupee are not two versions of one currency; customs procedures apply to goods even where people-to-people mobility is unusually open; and national trade statistics do not reveal the full geography of local border markets. Synthesis therefore requires a layered scale: household, market town, corridor, district, province or state, national government, and transboundary system.

148.1 An interaction zone is a field of repeated connection, not a claim of political unity

The phrase ‘interaction zone’ describes recurring social and economic connections across a boundary. It does not deny sovereignty or imply that India and Nepal form a single political unit. A resident of Madhesh may have kin in Bihar, buy Indian goods, sell agricultural produce through a border market, receive remittances from the Gulf, use Nepali public services and vote in a Nepali municipality. A household in north Bihar may visit Janakpur, employ Nepali labour, trade with a border town and still operate entirely within Indian taxation and welfare systems. The analytical gain is to see overlapping circuits without collapsing the states that regulate them.

148.2 Long before the modern boundary, plains and foothills were linked by rivers, routes and settlement

The historical foundations of the zone precede the contemporary states. Rivers descending from the Himalaya connect upper catchments to the alluvial plains; pilgrimage routes linked Janakpur and other sacred places to north Indian networks; traders moved salt, grain, livestock, cloth and manufactured goods; scholars and ritual specialists travelled; and marriage created durable ties between settlements. Political frontiers changed repeatedly, but ecological and social corridors persisted. This *longue durée* does not make the modern border historically unreal. It shows why a later international boundary was inserted into an already connected landscape and why cross-border practices cannot be understood as merely recent exceptions.

148.3 The 1950 treaty framework institutionalised an unusually open field of movement

The 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship became the best-known formal framework for the distinctive India–Nepal relationship. In practice, the contemporary border is characterised by extensive movement of citizens for work, residence, trade, pilgrimage and family purposes, subject to national law and security regulation. The openness of person-to-person movement is economically significant because labour can cross more easily than it can across most international borders. Yet openness should not be described as the absence of a border: goods, vehicles, regulated commodities, taxation, identity documents for particular transactions and state security functions continue to be governed by national institutions.

148.4 Economic asymmetry is structural, but dependence is not one-directional

India's economy and population are vastly larger than Nepal's, and Nepal is landlocked with much of its external trade and transit historically depending on routes through India. This creates a strong structural asymmetry in bargaining power, market size, currency influence and logistics. But the relationship is not accurately described by one-way dependence. India also benefits from labour mobility, tourism, cultural connections, hydropower imports, river information, border commerce and political stability in Nepal. Local border economies can invert national scale: a Nepali town may be a major service centre for nearby Indian consumers, while an Indian market may anchor wholesale supply for several Nepali municipalities.

148.5 Nepal's federalisation added new political-economic layers to an old cross-border landscape

The Constitution of Nepal adopted in 2015 created a federal system with federal, provincial and local governments. For Madhesh, this changed the institutional geography through which roads, markets, schools, health services, language policy, local taxation and development priorities are negotiated. Cross-border relations remain primarily interstate matters where foreign policy, customs and treaties are concerned, but everyday economic conditions are increasingly shaped by provincial and local implementation. Bihar and Madhesh therefore cannot be treated as symmetrical subnational units: India's state system and Nepal's newer federal architecture distribute authority differently, even when neighbouring administrations face the same road, flood or market corridor.

148.6 A layered model prevents the border from disappearing analytically

A useful synthesis distinguishes three layers. The first is sovereign regulation: treaties, customs, currencies, national law and security. The second is corridor infrastructure: roads, railways, integrated check posts, transmission lines, pipelines, bridges and payment rails. The third is everyday social exchange: kinship, labour, pilgrimage, shopping, schooling, health care and cultural consumption. The layers interact but are not interchangeable. A new railway can reduce freight time without changing citizenship law; an open social border can coexist with customs documentation; a payment link can formalise remittances without eliminating exchange-rate risk. This layered approach provides the basic architecture for the rest of the chapter.

One interaction zone, multiple political economies

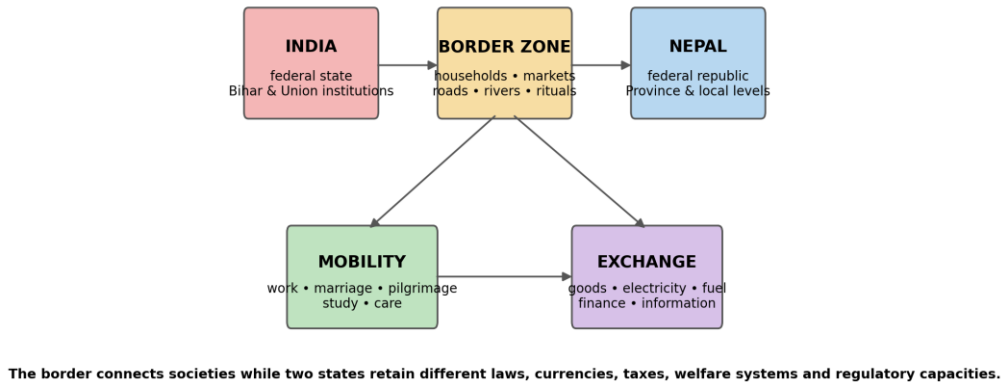


Figure 588 — One interaction zone can contain dense mobility and exchange while India and Nepal retain distinct political-economic institutions.

148.7 The border functions simultaneously as corridor, filter and administrative interface

A border crossing is not only a gate. It sorts flows according to legal category. A pedestrian visiting relatives, a truck carrying commercial goods, a petroleum tanker, a tourist vehicle, a remittance transfer and a high-voltage electricity flow each pass through different institutional systems. Integrated check posts attempt to reduce transaction costs by bringing customs, immigration or related functions and logistics into coordinated facilities. Informal crossings, local roads and traditional movement remain important in many places, but the growth of formal infrastructure increasingly concentrates high-value and bulk flows at selected nodes. The political economy of the border therefore depends on who can use which channel and at what cost.

148.8 Kinship and marriage create economic relations that trade statistics cannot capture

Cross-border marriage and extended-family ties move people, gifts, care, ceremonial expenditure and information. These transfers rarely appear as exports or imports, yet they affect household budgets and mobility. A family may cross the border for a wedding, medical treatment, ritual obligation or funeral and purchase transport, food, clothing and accommodation along the way. Kinship also provides informal credit, job information and temporary residence for migrants. Because these networks are socially selective, they can reduce transaction costs for some households while others remain dependent on commercial brokers. The social border is thus economically productive without being measurable through customs data alone.

148.9 Labour mobility links unequal wage structures and employment opportunities

Employment in India has long been one of the accessible options for Nepali workers, while Indians also work and operate businesses in Nepal under the broader bilateral relationship and national rules. The significance of this labour corridor lies partly in its low entry cost compared with overseas recruitment to the Gulf or East Asia. Workers may move seasonally or for long periods, and earnings can circulate through cash, banking channels or household purchases. Labour mobility also changes local bargaining power, skill availability and gendered household responsibilities. Because official migration statistics capture different

concepts—residence, permits, destination or border crossings—the India corridor is especially difficult to measure precisely.

148.10 Formal bilateral trade is large, but the border economy is larger than formal trade

India remains Nepal's largest trading partner, and bilateral merchandise trade is central to Nepal's import supply and export market. Yet national totals can mislead a regional history. They include flows through border points far from Mithila or Anga and do not show which districts consume the goods. They also omit informal exchange, household shopping, services and labour income. The correct approach is to combine national customs data with commodity composition, crossing-point data where available, wholesale-market evidence and local fieldwork. Formal trade is the measurable spine of the relationship, not the whole body of the border economy.

148.11 Nepal's trade deficit must be separated from the welfare effects of individual imports

Nepal typically imports far more goods from India than it exports to India, contributing to a persistent merchandise trade deficit. At the macroeconomic level that imbalance matters for foreign exchange and domestic production. At the household or firm level, however, an imported medicine, machine, fertiliser, food item or intermediate input may raise welfare or productivity. Historical analysis should therefore avoid treating every import as economic failure. The key questions are what Nepal imports, whether domestic alternatives are feasible, how imports affect producers and consumers, and whether export, hydropower, tourism or service earnings can finance the wider external account sustainably.

148.12 Transit through India gives logistics a constitutional-scale economic importance for Nepal

As a landlocked country, Nepal depends on access through neighbouring territories for much of its third-country trade. The revised India–Nepal Treaty of Transit signed in 2023 explicitly recognises Nepal's need for permanent access to and from the sea and provides a framework for road, rail and inland-waterway transit routes. This means that ports, customs procedures, rail terminals, container handling and corridor reliability in India become part of Nepal's effective trade infrastructure. Delays far from the political border can raise prices in Madhesh. Conversely, better multimodal transit can lower costs without changing geography. Transit policy is therefore a core component of Nepal's political economy, not a technical appendix to bilateral relations.

148.13 Infrastructure has progressively changed the cost structure of cross-border exchange

The contemporary interaction zone is being remade by infrastructure that converts proximity into usable connectivity. Integrated check posts reduce fragmentation of border procedures; railway links can move passengers or bulk freight more efficiently than road-only systems; pipelines reduce the cost and leakage risk of petroleum transport; transmission lines turn seasonal hydropower into a tradable commodity; and digital-payment links reduce the friction of small-value transactions. These projects do not automatically create balanced development. Their gains depend on complementary roads, warehouses, reliable procedures, competition among logistics providers and the capacity of small firms and households to access the new systems.

Selected institutional milestones in the contemporary India-Nepal interaction zone

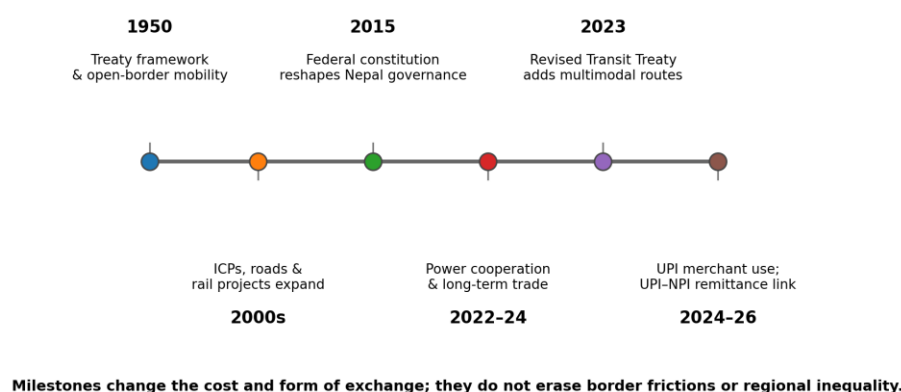


Figure 589 — Selected institutional and infrastructure milestones have progressively changed the cost and form of India–Nepal exchange.

148.14 Integrated check posts convert border management into logistics infrastructure

Integrated check posts at major crossings are designed to concentrate customs processing, warehousing, inspection and vehicle movement in purpose-built facilities. Their economic value is measured not by architecture but by clearance time, predictability, queue length, operating hours and the cost of compliance. For perishable food, a few hours of delay can matter more than a small tariff. For small traders, documentation and broker fees can determine whether formal trade is viable. The distributional question is therefore important: infrastructure that works well for containerised freight may not automatically serve pedestrians, cyclists, local market vendors or small consignments.

148.15 Cross-border railways change the geography of passenger and freight catchments

Rail links can reorganise border towns by expanding the radius from which passengers, pilgrims and goods reach a crossing. The Jayanagar–Kurtha–Bijalpura corridor demonstrates how a historical rail connection can be rebuilt as contemporary cross-border infrastructure, while freight rail connections elsewhere in the bilateral network show the potential for bulk movement. Railways shift economic activity toward stations, logistics yards and feeder roads and can alter the relative importance of older market streets. Their long-term effect depends on service frequency, last-mile transport, ticketing, customs arrangements for freight and integration with national rail networks on both sides.

148.16 Roads remain the dominant everyday connective tissue of the border economy

Even where railways and pipelines expand, roads carry most local passengers, buses, farm produce, retail supplies and short-haul freight. Road quality therefore determines the practical size of a border market. A paved feeder road can connect a village to a crossing; a damaged bridge can isolate the same village despite open-border rules. Road investment also has social effects: it changes school and hospital access, land values, migration frequency and the feasibility of daily commuting. Because roads interact with floodplains, embankments and drainage, transport planning in Mithila and Madhesh is inseparable from riverine ecology.

148.17 Petroleum illustrates how physical dependence can be reduced in cost without being eliminated

Nepal depends heavily on imported petroleum products, historically supplied through India. The Motihari–Amlekhgunj petroleum pipeline changed the logistics of this dependence by replacing part of tanker transport with a dedicated cross-border pipeline. Similar proposed or expanded pipeline infrastructure extends the same logic. Pipelines can lower transport cost, congestion, leakage and handling risk, but they do not remove exposure to global oil prices or upstream supply conditions. The World Bank’s 2026 Nepal update highlights how international energy shocks can still transmit through imported fuel. Infrastructure therefore changes the mode of dependence more readily than the underlying commodity dependence.

148.18 Electricity is transforming the relationship from one-way supply toward seasonal interdependence

Power trade has become one of the most important structural changes in the bilateral economy. Nepal’s hydropower expansion creates wet-season export potential, while Nepal can still require imports during dry periods or peak demand. The 2022 Joint Vision Statement framed cooperation around generation, transmission, grid operation and bi-directional trade, and the long-term power-trade agreement finalised in 2024 envisages Nepal exporting up to 10,000 MW to India over ten years. This does not guarantee that capacity will be built or sold. It establishes a market horizon around which generation and transmission investment can be planned.

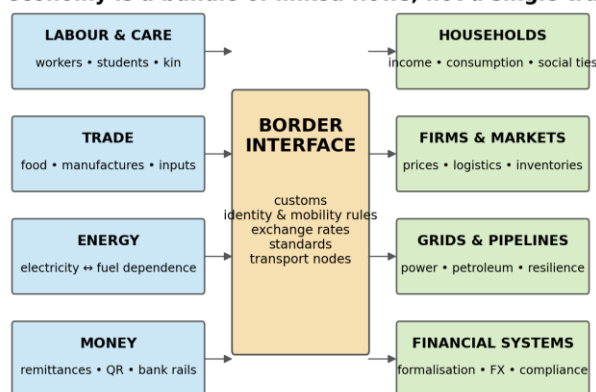
148.19 Hydropower turns rivers into fiscal, industrial and diplomatic assets as well as ecological systems

Hydropower projects generate electricity, construction demand, royalties, taxes and potential export revenue, but they also redistribute environmental risk and land use. A dam or transmission line may benefit the national grid while imposing local costs on affected communities. Cross-border power trade therefore sits at the intersection of energy economics, river governance, finance and diplomacy. The key economic transformation is that water falling through Nepal’s topography can be monetised in a much larger neighbouring market. The key governance challenge is to ensure that the resulting gains are not measured only in megawatts but also in local compensation, ecological sustainability and reliable domestic supply.

148.20 Different cross-border flows encounter different institutional boundaries

The interaction zone should be analysed as a flow matrix rather than as a single openness index. Labour is shaped by mobility arrangements and employment conditions; merchandise by customs and standards; electricity by grid codes and power-purchase rules; fuel by state-linked supply chains and pipelines; payments by banking, foreign-exchange and anti-money-laundering rules; tourism by transport and service capacity. A change in one channel does not automatically liberalise another. This is why apparently contradictory descriptions—‘open border’ and ‘regulated border’—can both be correct when they refer to different flows.

The border economy is a bundle of linked flows, not a single trade statistic



Different flows face different institutions: an open social border can coexist with customs, monetary and regulatory boundaries.

Figure 590 — Labour, goods, energy and money cross the same border through different institutional channels.

148.21 Nepal's currency peg to the Indian rupee transmits stability and constraint across the border

The Nepali rupee is pegged to the Indian rupee, making Indian monetary conditions and price movements especially important for Nepal. The peg reduces exchange-rate uncertainty in the largest bilateral trade relationship and simplifies household calculations in border markets, but it also limits independent exchange-rate adjustment. Inflation in India can transmit into Nepal through both the peg and imported goods. Border households often think in more than one currency even when formal accounting remains national. Monetary integration is therefore substantial without monetary union: Nepal retains its own central bank and currency while anchoring the exchange rate to its much larger neighbour.

148.22 Remittances and digital payments are moving part of the border economy from cash to interoperable rails

Cash has historically been central to small cross-border transactions, labour earnings and family transfers. Digital systems are now changing that infrastructure. UPI merchant acceptance in Nepal was launched in 2024 through collaboration between NPCI International and Fonepay and passed 100,000 merchant transactions within months. In June 2026, NPCI International and Nepal Clearing House launched a UPI–NPI linkage for real-time person-to-person remittances through participating banks. These developments reduce transaction friction and create better records, but they do not eliminate bank access, KYC, foreign-exchange, fraud or interoperability constraints. Digitalisation formalises some flows while leaving others cash-based.

148.23 Border markets reveal the everyday coexistence of price arbitrage and social familiarity

Consumers in border districts compare prices, quality, taxes, availability and exchange rates across two markets that may be only kilometres apart. A small change in fuel tax, food prices or currency conditions can redirect shopping. Traders respond by sourcing goods from whichever side offers a legal and profitable margin. Social familiarity lowers information costs because buyers understand language, brands and bargaining practices across the border. Yet price arbitrage can also encourage undeclared movement when formal procedures are costly. Effective border governance therefore requires enforcement that is

proportionate enough to protect revenue and standards without making legitimate small trade unnecessarily expensive.

148.24 Agriculture is cross-border even when farm statistics remain national

Madhesh and north Bihar share an alluvial agro-ecological zone, and farmers on both sides face similar monsoon timing, flood, drought, seed, fertiliser, irrigation and market problems. Inputs, livestock, farm machinery, labour and produce can move through formal or informal channels. Yet agricultural policy is national: procurement rules, subsidies, fertiliser distribution, crop insurance, land law and extension systems differ. A price or policy change on one side can therefore affect farmers on the other through markets rather than formal coordination. Comparative agricultural history must distinguish ecological similarity from institutional similarity.

148.25 Tourism and pilgrimage convert cultural geography into a cross-border service economy

Janakpur, the Ramayana circuit, Buddhist and Jain sites, river pilgrimages, festivals and family visits generate transport, accommodation, food, retail and guide services. These flows are economically different from merchandise trade because the consumer often crosses the border rather than the product. Improved roads, rail and digital payments can therefore increase tourism receipts without changing customs volumes. Cultural familiarity is an asset, but service quality, sanitation, congestion, heritage management and safety determine whether visitor numbers translate into local income. Pilgrimage also redistributes demand seasonally, creating short intense peaks that require temporary transport and public-space management.

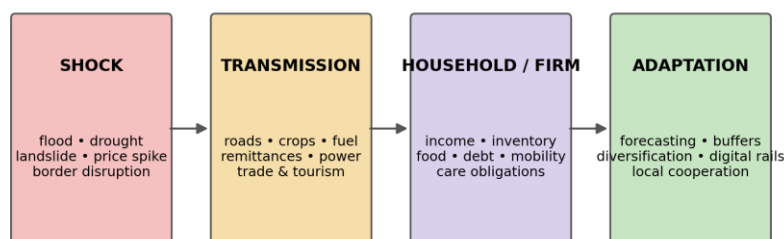
148.26 Language and cultural familiarity reduce transaction costs but do not remove institutional difference

Maithili and related regional speech networks allow many residents of Madhesh and Bihar to communicate across the border without translation. Shared ritual repertoires, food, kinship forms and media further reduce the social distance of travel and trade. This cultural infrastructure helps explain why the interaction zone can remain dense even when formal economic policies diverge. But cultural familiarity should not be romanticised into institutional sameness. A person may speak the same language on both sides and still encounter different school curricula, property rules, citizenship documents, taxes, welfare entitlements and political representation. Culture connects; states classify and allocate differently.

148.27 The interaction zone is also a shared risk corridor

Rivers, floods, drought, epidemics, commodity-price shocks and transport disruptions do not respect the political boundary. A flood forecast generated upstream can be valuable downstream; a damaged bridge can disrupt markets on both sides; fuel or fertiliser shortages can raise farm costs across the plains; a pandemic can abruptly transform an open mobility regime. Resilience therefore depends on the speed with which information, infrastructure and alternative routes cross the border. Household diversification—migration, multiple income sources, savings and kin networks—often provides the first line of adaptation, while states supply forecasting, public health, transport restoration and financial stability.

Resilience in a cross-border interaction zone



Resilience rises when information and infrastructure cross the border faster than the shock.

Measure lead time, rerouting capacity, service continuity, household recovery and distributional outcomes—not only aggregate trade.

Figure 591 — Cross-border resilience depends on whether information, infrastructure and household adaptation outrun the transmission of shocks.

148.28 River and climate cooperation is a test of whether the interaction zone can govern shared ecology

The Kosi, Gandak, Bagmati, Kamla and other river systems link Nepal's catchments to Bihar's floodplains. Engineering agreements, embankments, barrages, forecasting and maintenance therefore have consequences across the border. The hardest problems are not only technical. Benefits and risks are distributed unevenly by location, while national agencies may use different priorities and data systems. Climate change adds uncertainty to rainfall, heat and extreme events without making every flood attributable to climate change. Durable cooperation requires routine data exchange, joint maintenance, transparent hydrological evidence and local warning systems rather than reliance on crisis diplomacy after damage has occurred.

148.29 Federalism increases the number of actors whose coordination determines local outcomes

Nepal's federal system means that a cross-border corridor can involve federal ministries, Madhesh Province, municipalities and rural municipalities, while the Indian side may involve the Union government, Bihar departments, districts, municipalities and specialised agencies. More layers can improve responsiveness because local governments know specific roads, markets and service gaps. They can also create coordination costs when mandates overlap or financing is unclear. The institutional task is therefore not to bypass federalism but to design interfaces: data-sharing protocols, corridor committees, disaster contacts, compatible infrastructure planning and clear escalation paths for issues that local governments cannot resolve.

148.30 Conclusion: connected history requires comparison without collapse

India and Nepal form one of South Asia's most intensively connected border regions, but the connection operates through multiple political economies. Households can be socially transborder while citizenship remains national; markets can be integrated while taxation differs; electricity can flow through a synchronised grid while currencies remain separate; rivers can be shared while engineering authority is

divided; and a language community can cross the border while education and welfare institutions diverge. The central methodological lesson is comparison without collapse. The historian should follow flows across the border and then ask which institution governs each stage. That approach reveals both the depth of regional connectedness and the continuing power of the modern state.

Table 148.1 — Evidence architecture for reconstructing the India–Nepal interaction zone

Evidence source	What it can establish	Main caution
Bilateral treaties & agreements	legal framework for transit, trade, mobility, power and cooperation	formal text does not measure implementation or local experience
Customs statistics	commodity values, partners and formal crossing flows	national totals omit informal exchange and may not map to the study region
Central-bank & payment data	exchange-rate regime, remittances, digital payments and financial formalisation	cash and informal transfers remain partly invisible
Power-system records	approved electricity trade, capacity and transmission infrastructure	contracted or approved capacity is not the same as actual annual flow
Transport & ICP records	rail, road, pipeline and border-processing infrastructure	infrastructure presence does not establish service quality or distributional gain
Census & migration evidence	residence, language, household structure and selected mobility patterns	India and Nepal use different categories; open-border labour is hard to enumerate
Provincial/state/local records	subnational services, roads, markets, language and development programmes	competences differ across the two federal systems
Household & market fieldwork	kinship, shopping, informal credit, small trade and lived border practices	local evidence is not automatically representative of the entire border
Hydrology & disaster data	shared river hazards, forecasts and infrastructure exposure	hazard does not equal damage; vulnerability varies socially and spatially
Historical maps & archives	changing routes, settlements and political boundaries	later borders and identities must not be projected backward

Chapter 149 — Cultural Persistence, Reinvention and Modern Institutions

Chapter 149 synthesises a central argument of this volume: cultural persistence is not the survival of an unchanged substance from an imagined timeless past. Practices endure because people repeatedly reproduce them under altered ecological, political, economic and technological conditions. Families, neighbourhoods, ritual groups, artists, performers, writers, teachers and migrants carry knowledge forward, but modern institutions increasingly shape what is recorded, taught, funded, displayed, marketed, standardised and protected. Museums, archives, academies, universities, schools, tourism departments, cooperatives, courts, intellectual-property systems, broadcasters and digital platforms can extend cultural transmission. They can also narrow it by privileging selected forms and speakers. The historical question is therefore how institutions mediate continuity and change, and whether their authority strengthens or displaces the communities whose practices give culture its life.

149.1 Persistence is active reproduction, not passive survival

A custom persists only when people continue to perform, teach, finance, adapt or remember it. The repeated act may look continuous from outside even when its participants, materials, meanings and institutional setting have changed. Chhath performed in a village pond, on an urban riverbank and by migrants in a metropolitan park belongs to one recognisable ritual field, yet each setting reorganises space, logistics and public authority. The same principle applies to song, food, painting, language and craft. Historical continuity should therefore be demonstrated through chains of transmission rather than asserted from resemblance alone.

149.2 Reinvention is one mechanism of continuity

Reinvention is often treated as the opposite of authenticity, but historical evidence suggests otherwise. A practice that cannot respond to new materials, audiences, technologies or livelihoods may become more fragile than one that can adapt. Paper and commercial pigments transformed Mithila painting without making all later work culturally meaningless; microphones and recording changed performance without ending oral tradition; Unicode and digital publishing alter script and language use while enabling wider circulation. The analytical task is to identify who initiates change, who benefits, what is retained and what is lost.

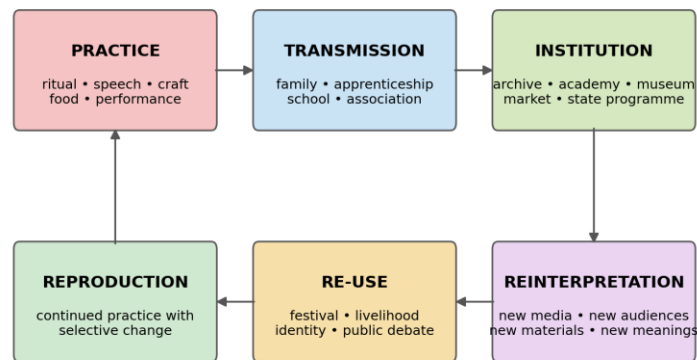
149.3 The household remains the smallest durable cultural institution

Before formal academies and cultural departments, households transmitted speech, ritual calendars, food techniques, songs, kinship knowledge, stories, craft skills and gendered forms of work. Modernity has not eliminated this role. Migration can spread households across several places, schooling can shift language preferences, and wage work can reduce time for apprenticeship, yet family networks still organise ceremonies, inherit objects and manuscripts, sponsor religious events and introduce children to cultural repertoires. Household transmission is therefore neither pre-modern residue nor sufficient by itself; it operates within larger institutional systems.

149.4 Public ritual turns cultural persistence into civic negotiation

Festivals and pilgrimages persist partly because they mobilise collective labour beyond the household. Committees negotiate routes, lighting, water, sound, sanitation, policing, traffic and sponsorship. Municipalities and district administrations increasingly become co-producers of ritual space. This can improve safety and access, but it also creates rules about timing, permissible structures and public visibility. Religious continuity is thus mediated by modern civic administration. The result is neither pure privatisation nor simple state control, but recurring negotiation between practitioners, neighbourhoods, markets and public authorities.

Cultural persistence is a cycle of reproduction and reinvention



Continuity does not require immobility: practices persist when communities can transmit, reinterpret and reuse them.

Figure 592 — Cultural persistence operates through repeated cycles of practice, transmission, institutionalisation, reinterpretation and reproduction.

149.5 Language persists through domains of use, not recognition alone

A language can possess constitutional, literary or census recognition while losing ground in schooling, administration or intergenerational conversation. Conversely, a language with limited formal status can remain vigorous in homes, markets, performance and digital media. Maithili, Angika and Bajjika illustrate different combinations of naming, standardisation, public recognition and everyday use. Cultural persistence therefore depends on a language ecology: speakers need domains in which the language is useful, prestigious and technically supported. Dictionaries, orthographies and awards matter, but so do classrooms, keyboards, broadcasting, customer service and local public communication.

149.6 Scripts survive when literacy ecosystems survive

Tirhuta/Mithilakshar demonstrates the difference between preserving letterforms and sustaining a script community. Manuscripts, typefaces, Unicode encoding, teaching materials, fonts and digital input methods are all necessary, but none alone guarantees everyday literacy. Script revival can be historically valuable when it enables reading of archives and creates new writing, yet symbolic display should not be confused with broad functional use. Modern institutions can help by connecting palaeography, education, digital tools and publication rather than treating the script only as a heritage emblem.

149.7 Print transformed literary authority and created new custodians

The expansion of print created editors, publishers, journals, libraries, literary organisations and textbook committees as new cultural gatekeepers. A work no longer depended only on manuscript copying or oral memory; it could enter a reproducible canon. This widened circulation while also concentrating authority in decisions about spelling, selection, authorship and literary value. The history of modern Maithili and Angika public culture is therefore partly a history of institutions that decide what is printable, reviewable, teachable and archivable. Digital publication now redistributes some of that authority again.

149.8 Academies and literary bodies convert cultural prestige into institutional resources

Literary academies, language boards, university departments and award systems can supply grants, publication, translation, conferences and public recognition. Their importance lies not only in prizes but in the infrastructure they create around writers and readers. Yet canon formation is selective. Institutional recognition can favour genres, standards, networks or metropolitan access and may lag behind experimental, women's, Dalit, folk or digital writing. The quality of a cultural institution should therefore be judged partly by the breadth of participation it enables and the transparency with which it allocates attention and resources.

149.9 Broadcasting changed who could hear regional culture

Radio, cassette, television, video and online streaming each expanded the scale of cultural circulation. Performance that once required physical co-presence could reach migrants, towns and transnational audiences. Recording also freezes a particular version of a song or performance that may later be mistaken for the definitive form. Broadcast institutions therefore both preserve and standardise. The historical gain is enormous access; the accompanying risk is that repeated media versions overshadow local variation. A strong cultural ecology preserves both professional broadcast archives and space for continuing live variation.

149.10 Digital platforms weaken some gatekeepers while creating new ones

Social media, video platforms and messaging networks allow creators to publish without waiting for an academy, newspaper or broadcaster. This can revitalise regional languages, music, comedy, oral history and craft marketing. But platform visibility is governed by algorithms, monetisation rules, copyright enforcement and advertising systems that creators do not control. Virality can reward short, spectacular or easily classified forms while slower practices become less visible. Digital persistence therefore requires more than uploading content: creators need discoverability, metadata, rights knowledge, stable archives and routes from attention to sustainable income.

149.11 Schools can reproduce culture, standardise it or displace it

Formal education is one of the strongest modern institutions of cultural transmission because it allocates daily time, literacy and prestige. Teaching a regional language or local history can strengthen cultural capability, while exclusive reliance on another language can narrow intergenerational literacy even when home speech survives. Curriculum necessarily selects from a larger cultural field, and textbook presentation can convert contested or variable traditions into fixed narratives. The educational challenge is to teach durable skills and historical knowledge without implying that one textbook version exhausts a living tradition.

149.12 Universities turn cultural practice into research objects and professional knowledge

Universities can document manuscripts, languages, archaeology, art, folklore and social history with methods unavailable to informal custodians. They train researchers, conserve collections and create scholarly criticism. At the same time, academic classification changes what it studies. A ritual becomes a fieldwork category; a speech form becomes a linguistic object; a painting becomes an art-historical corpus. Responsible scholarship therefore requires provenance, collaboration and return: copies, catalogues, translations and findings should remain accessible to the communities and institutions from which knowledge was drawn.

Modern institutions form an ecology, not a replacement for community culture

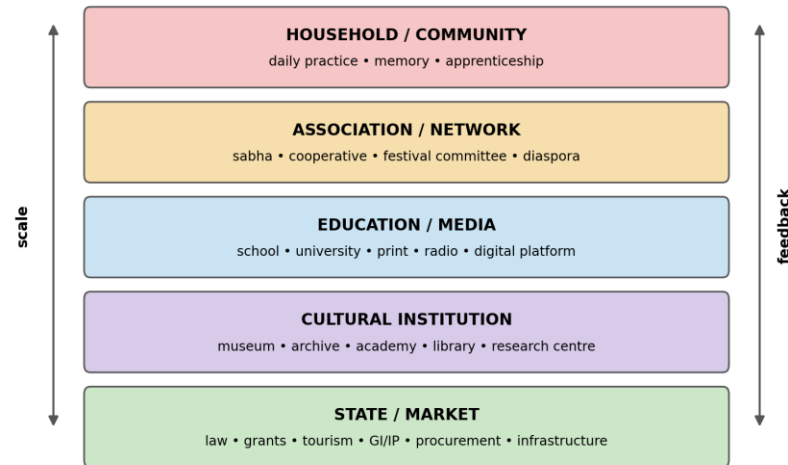


Figure 593 — Cultural continuity is mediated by an ecology of household, associative, educational, cultural, state and market institutions.

149.13 Museums are moving from collection-centred authority toward participation

Museums historically accumulated, classified and displayed objects, often separating them from the social life that produced them. Contemporary museum practice increasingly emphasises interpretation, accessibility, inclusion, sustainability and community participation. This shift matters for Mithila, Vajji and Anga because material culture cannot be represented adequately by objects alone. A painted surface, manuscript, textile, ritual object or agricultural implement gains meaning from makers, users, places and practices. Museums become stronger institutions when they document these relations and allow communities to participate in interpretation rather than serving only as repositories.

149.14 Archives preserve evidence but also shape the future visibility of culture

What enters an archive becomes easier for future historians to see. What remains uncatalogued, privately held or digitally unstable can disappear from public memory even if it was once socially important. Manuscript repositories, family collections, newspapers, photographs, audio recordings and born-digital files therefore require preservation strategies appropriate to their media. Digitisation reduces handling and expands access, but it also creates dependence on file formats, metadata and storage. An archive is not merely a warehouse of the past; it is infrastructure that determines which pasts can be researched in the future.

149.15 Archaeology and monuments can connect cultural identity to evidence when chronology is kept disciplined

Archaeological sites and monuments often attract regional pride, tourism and educational attention. Their public value is greatest when interpretation distinguishes excavated evidence, inscription, textual tradition, later memory and modern identity claims. Conflating these layers may create attractive stories but weak history. Modern heritage institutions therefore have a dual responsibility: protect physical remains and communicate uncertainty. A site can be culturally meaningful today without requiring every later tradition to be projected backward as archaeological fact.

149.16 Mithila painting shows how institutions can convert domestic practice into a global art world

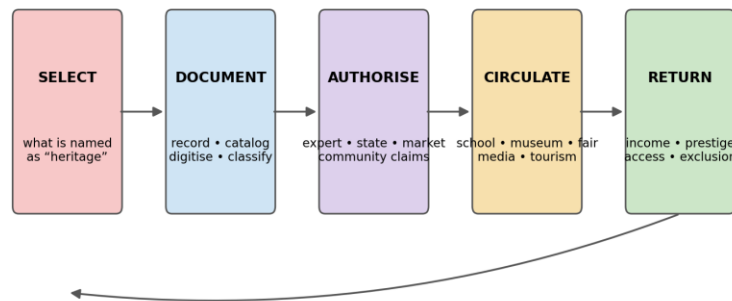
The twentieth-century expansion of Mithila painting onto paper connected village and household practices to collectors, government handicraft programmes, museums, galleries, researchers, training institutions, fairs, e-commerce and international markets. These institutions enabled income and recognition, including for many women artists. They also altered scale, subject matter, signatures, pricing and artistic careers. The tradition persisted precisely through this institutional transformation. The central equity question is whether the artist remains visible and compensated when a regional style becomes a market category.

149.17 Craft institutions work best when they create bargaining power rather than decorative branding

Cooperatives, self-help groups, producer organisations, handicraft boards, design programmes and fairs can help artisans aggregate supply, purchase inputs, reach buyers and manage quality. Their value is not measured by the number of exhibitions alone. Travel costs, commissions, delayed payments, unsold stock and dependence on intermediaries can absorb much of a nominal sales increase. Institutional success should therefore be measured through net producer income, repeat orders, bargaining power, access to credit and the ability of younger practitioners to see a viable livelihood in the craft.

149.18 GI and intellectual-property institutions protect some claims while leaving others exposed

Geographical indications can protect origin-linked names and support collective reputation, but they do not automatically protect every artist, design, performance or cultural expression. Copyright, trademark, contracts, performer rights and community protocols may address different problems. Documentation itself can create risk by making motifs, stories or recordings easier to copy. WIPO guidance therefore stresses that documentation of traditional cultural expressions should consider both benefits and possible misuse. The institutional task is layered governance: provenance, attribution, licensing, producer participation and enforceable rules should complement rather than substitute for cultural transmission.

Institutionalisation changes culture by selecting, documenting and circulating it

The key question is whether benefits, authority and access return to practitioners and communities.

Figure 594 — Institutionalisation selects, documents, authorises and circulates culture, with consequences that should return to practitioners.

149.19 Tourism can finance cultural continuity but can also reward simplification

Pilgrimage and cultural tourism create demand for guides, transport, accommodation, food, crafts, performance and public-space improvement. They can generate income around Janakpur, Vaishali, Bhagalpur and festival circuits while giving visitors reasons to learn local history. Yet tourism favours legible, schedulable and photographable experiences. Complex practices may be compressed into short demonstrations, and sacred or domestic spaces may become commercial attractions. Sustainable tourism therefore requires visitor management, local ownership and interpretation that does not reduce living culture to a souvenir catalogue.

149.20 Migration produces cultural institutions outside the region

Migrants reproduce language, ritual, food and association in destinations far from the places where those practices developed. Urban associations, student groups, online communities, festival committees and diaspora publications become new cultural institutions. They can preserve connection across generations and mobilise funds for home-region projects. They also select what to foreground: festivals and emblematic foods often travel more easily than local agricultural knowledge or village-specific forms. Diaspora culture is therefore not a diluted copy but a new institutional context in which regional identity is actively reconstructed.

149.21 Women are often principal transmitters but not always principal institutional authorities

Household ritual, song, food knowledge, painting, care and intergenerational teaching depend heavily on women's labour. Formal cultural institutions, however, may allocate titles, committee positions, property, payments or public authorship differently. A tradition can therefore appear female-centred at the level of performance yet male-dominated at the level of administration or market control. Measuring cultural persistence requires attention to who performs, who decides, who is named, who owns the archive or product, and who receives income. Gender equality is not external to safeguarding; it shapes whether cultural transmission is sustainable.

149.22 Caste and class shape access to cultural authority

Modern institutions can weaken inherited monopolies by opening schools, publication, public funding and digital platforms to wider participation. They can also reproduce inequality when selection depends on credentials, urban networks, unpaid time or control of cultural property. Folk performers, artisans, ritual specialists and communities historically treated as socially subordinate may contribute substantially to regional culture while receiving less institutional recognition. A democratic cultural history therefore asks not only which traditions survive but whose labour is visible, whose knowledge is treated as authoritative and who can enter the organisations that allocate cultural prestige.

149.23 Youth participation determines whether heritage remains a future practice

A tradition with no younger practitioners is preserved only in an archival sense. Young people weigh cultural participation against education, migration, earnings, status and time. Institutions can respond through apprenticeships, paid residencies, digital tools, curriculum, competitions and professional pathways, but symbolic appeals to tradition are insufficient if participation carries economic loss or social stigma. Youth also innovate, combining regional language, music, visual design and online formats. Safeguarding should create conditions in which experimentation remains connected to knowledge rather than requiring young practitioners to imitate an authorised past.

149.24 Urbanisation changes venues more quickly than identities

As settlements expand, ponds are filled, courtyards shrink, traffic intensifies and neighbourhood populations become more mixed. Cultural practices adapt by moving into community halls, parks, roadside stages, apartment compounds, institutional campuses and digital spaces. Urbanisation can therefore destroy particular cultural landscapes while generating new publics. Heritage planning needs to treat cultural space as infrastructure: water bodies, performance grounds, libraries, markets and pedestrian routes can be as important to continuity as monuments. Protecting an object while eliminating the space in which a practice occurs may preserve form but weaken use.

149.25 State cultural policy creates capability when it supports institutions rather than spectacles alone

Governments commonly support festivals, museums, academies, language programmes, tourism, grants and cultural infrastructure. Short public events can create visibility, but durable cultural capacity requires catalogues, conservation, staffing, transparent grants, publication, training and accessible facilities. The relevant distinction is between event expenditure and institutional investment. A well-funded festival with no archive or practitioner support may leave little long-term capacity, whereas modest recurring funding for a library, school programme or conservation laboratory can compound over decades. Cultural policy should therefore be evaluated through continuity of institutions as well as public attendance.

149.26 Federalism in Nepal redistributes cultural authority across governmental levels

Nepal's federal system gives provincial and local governments important roles in language, education, tourism, heritage and cultural programming alongside federal institutions. In Madhesh this creates opportunities for locally responsive support to Maithili, Bajjika, festivals and heritage sites. It also creates coordination problems when competences, budgets and standards overlap. Cultural federalism works best

when decentralisation expands participation without isolating collections, data or professional expertise. Shared cataloguing standards, conservation networks and interoperable digital systems can allow local ownership and national accessibility to reinforce one another.

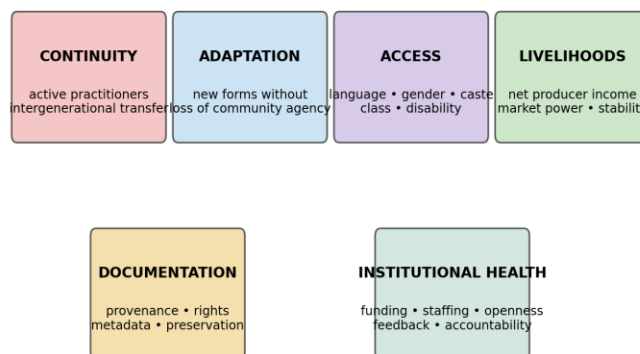
149.27 Cross-border cultural institutions can match the geography of culture more closely than national programmes alone

Mithila's language, pilgrimage, marriage networks, art and historical memory cross the India–Nepal border. National institutions remain indispensable because law, budgets, education and museums are organised by sovereign states. Yet joint exhibitions, research, translation, archival exchange, artist mobility and festival coordination can reflect the actual geography of cultural interaction. Cross-border cooperation should not invent a single administrative culture; it should create practical interfaces between distinct institutions. The strongest projects preserve provenance on each side while enabling comparison, circulation and shared scholarship.

149.28 Digital preservation and AI enlarge access while making provenance more important

High-resolution imaging, searchable text, speech technology, machine translation and generative systems can dramatically expand access to regional culture. They can help read manuscripts, transcribe recordings, index archives and create learning tools. They can also flatten dialect differences, generate false reconstructions, detach images from creators and reproduce copyrighted or culturally sensitive material without context. The more powerful the technology, the more important metadata and provenance become. Digital cultural infrastructure should preserve source images, uncertainty, authorship, date, place, rights and transformation history rather than presenting every machine output as an original cultural record.

A cultural-persistence dashboard should measure people, not only objects



Safeguarding succeeds when practice remains viable, adaptive, accessible, fairly rewarded and responsibly documented.

Figure 595 — Cultural safeguarding should be measured through continuity, adaptation, access, livelihoods, documentation and institutional health.

149.29 Cultural persistence should be measured with plural indicators

Counting monuments, festivals, registered products or digitised files captures only part of cultural vitality. A fuller assessment asks whether practitioners remain active, whether younger people learn, whether women and marginalised groups can exercise authority, whether languages retain functional domains,

whether producers earn sustainable income, whether archives preserve provenance, and whether institutions are staffed and accessible. Participation may grow while diversity falls; tourism may rise while local access declines; digitisation may expand while rights become weaker. No single indicator can therefore stand for cultural persistence.

149.30 Conclusion: modern institutions are mediators, not owners, of living culture

The long history reconstructed in this volume shows persistence through transformation rather than timeless essence. Institutions matter because they organise memory, resources, law, education, visibility and markets. Their legitimacy depends on whether they enlarge the capacity of people to practise, interpret and transmit culture rather than claiming exclusive authority over it. The most resilient cultural system is neither wholly informal nor wholly bureaucratic. It links households and practitioners to schools, archives, museums, markets, digital tools and public institutions through channels of participation and return. Reinvention then becomes not evidence of cultural loss, but one of the historical means by which culture remains alive.

Table 149.1 — Evidence architecture for studying cultural persistence, reinvention and modern institutions

Evidence source	What it can establish	Main caution
Ethnography & oral history	practice, transmission, local meanings and change within communities	memory is selective; local evidence should not be generalised automatically
Manuscripts, recordings & photographs	historical forms, performers, scripts, material culture and provenance	survival in an archive does not prove representative everyday use
School & university records	curriculum, teaching, enrolment, research and professional transmission	formal education captures only part of cultural learning
Museums, archives & catalogues	collection history, conservation, interpretation and public access	classification reflects institutional choices and can detach objects from practice
Academies, grants & awards	institutional recognition, publication and resource allocation	recognition can be selective and network-dependent
GI, copyright & IP records	legal protection, registrations, authorised claims and rights architecture	legal status does not establish actual benefit to practitioners
Market & producer evidence	sales, commissions, livelihoods, intermediaries and bargaining power	gross revenue can conceal costs and unequal distribution
Festival & tourism records	visitor flows, public expenditure, infrastructure and event scale	attendance does not measure depth of participation or cultural diversity
Digital-platform & archive data	reach, discoverability, engagement, preservation and new creative forms	platform metrics are proprietary and visibility is algorithmically shaped
Community governance records	rules, committees, custodianship and internal decision-making	formal minutes may not capture informal authority or excluded voices

Chapter 150 — Conclusion: Socio-Cultural-Economic Histories without Timeless Essences

Chapter 150 closes Volume II by drawing together the argument developed across the preceding 149 chapters. The history of Mithila, Vajji and Anga cannot be written as the biography of an unchanging civilisation, a fixed caste order, a single linguistic community, a continuous political unit or a timeless cultural personality. The evidence instead shows overlapping regions whose social forms were repeatedly made and remade through rivers, settlement, agriculture, kinship, religion, language, markets, states, migration, technology and institutions. Some practices endured for centuries; others disappeared, returned or changed meaning. Continuity is therefore a historical problem to be explained, not an assumption from which explanation begins.

This conclusion also clarifies the method of the volume. Terms such as Mithila, Videha, Vajji, Anga, Tirhut, Madhesh, caste, tribe, language, household, village, market and heritage have different evidentiary histories. They cannot be treated as identical across millennia. Archaeological evidence must be distinguished from textual memory; literary tradition from administrative classification; genealogical records from demographic totals; modern census labels from medieval social formations; ritual continuity from unchanged belief; and cultural recognition from actual institutional use. The task of synthesis is to connect these different kinds of evidence without flattening their dates, scales or purposes.

150.1 The region is historical because its boundaries and connections changed

Mithila, Vajji and Anga are most useful when treated as historically changing fields of connection rather than as permanent polygons. Rivers shifted, states expanded and contracted, trade corridors moved, linguistic distributions overlapped and modern districts divided older cultural geographies. A region can remain meaningful even when its administrative boundary is uncertain because routes, marriage networks, pilgrimage, language and markets create repeated connections. But those connections must be demonstrated for each period. The same name can refer to a polity in one source, a cultural memory in another and a modern identity in a third. The historian should therefore reconstruct regionality from evidence rather than use the region as an explanation for every similarity found within it.

150.2 Ecology is a historical agent without becoming environmental determinism

The alluvial plains, Himalayan-fed rivers, wetlands and monsoon regimes shaped settlement, agriculture, transport, disease, fisheries and risk. Yet ecology did not dictate one social outcome. Communities responded through crops, drainage, embankments, ponds, seasonal mobility, labour migration and political demands. The Kosi can be simultaneously a source of fertility, hazard, engineering intervention and administrative conflict. Climate change intensifies some risks, but vulnerability continues to depend on land, income, infrastructure, gender, credit and political voice. Riverine history thus demonstrates the volume's broader method: material environments create constraints and opportunities, while institutions determine who can convert them into security and who bears their costs.

150.3 Settlement history undermines the myth of an eternally village-bound society

Villages were central to agrarian life, but the region was never socially sealed within them. Early urbanisation, Vaishali and Champa, market centres, monasteries, fairs, pilgrimage sites, court towns, colonial stations, railway nodes and contemporary district cities created enduring rural–urban interdependence. Even apparently rural households bought salt, cloth, metalware, ritual goods and credit, sent members to markets and courts, and later relied on schools, hospitals, banks and transport hubs. Modern migration has made this interdependence more visible, not invented it. The historical household has long operated through networks that exceed the settlement in which its members were enumerated.

150.4 Agrarian continuity coexisted with repeated changes in property, labour and technology

Agriculture remained a foundational livelihood across long periods, yet the institutions surrounding cultivation changed substantially. Land grants, tenancy, revenue regimes, zamindari, colonial surveys, land reform, irrigation works, mechanisation, pumps, input markets, crop diversification and migration altered the relation between land, labour and household security. Smallholding persistence should not be mistaken for institutional stasis. The same field could be embedded successively in different regimes of taxation, credit, tenancy, market access and risk. Economic history therefore requires attention to relations around production, not only to the continuity of crops or rural settlement.

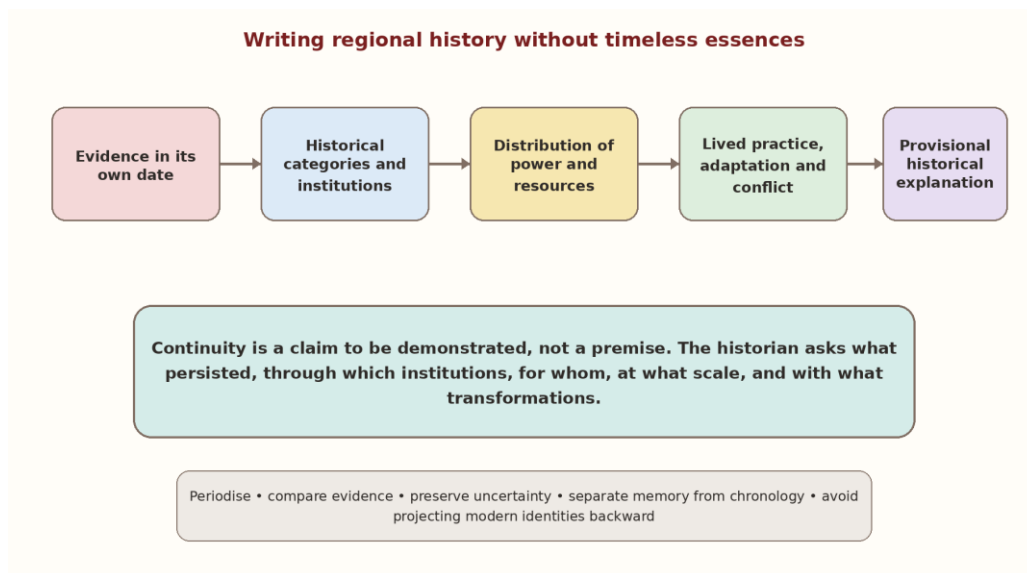


Figure 596 — A method for writing regional history without treating continuity as a timeless essence.

150.5 Markets expanded by layering exchange rather than abolishing subsistence

The movement from subsistence toward market integration was uneven and reversible. Households could retain grain for consumption while selling milk, fish, vegetables, labour or craft products; migrants could finance cultivation; cash income could coexist with reciprocal exchange and household production. Colonial commodities, railways and revenue demands intensified monetisation, while post-independence roads, banking, remittances and digital payments widened market access. Yet exposure to prices, debt and shocks also increased. The relevant contrast is not a simple binary between “traditional subsistence” and

“modern market”, but a changing portfolio through which households combine own-production, exchange, wage work, migration and public transfers.

150.6 Household forms changed without producing a single linear transition

The history of household organisation does not support a simple evolution from joint to nuclear family. Co-residence, property, care, marriage, migration and economic cooperation can move in different directions. A household may become smaller in census terms while remaining embedded in a wider kin-based economic unit. Migrants, students and workers can live elsewhere yet continue to finance parents, children, land and rituals. Women may assume more day-to-day farm and care responsibility without gaining equivalent property rights. The household is therefore best treated as a changing institution for pooling labour, risk, reproduction and resources rather than as a timeless cultural type.

150.7 Caste must be historicised as classification, hierarchy, network and institution

Caste has shaped occupation, marriage, access to land, education, public office and social honour, but neither its categories nor their political meanings remained unchanged. Early evidence must not be forced into later census or reservation classifications. Medieval institutional records need their own dating and context, and the later emergence of categories such as Śrōtriya must not be projected backward as if they were fixed from antiquity. Colonial enumeration, land relations, democratic mobilisation, reservation, migration, education and new class formations transformed caste practices and identities. Contemporary caste is real precisely because it has a history, not because it exists outside history.

150.8 Class became increasingly visible without replacing caste or kinship

Land, education, salaried work, business, migration, remittances and urban property created class differentiations that cut across older status groupings. Yet class did not simply supersede caste. Networks of marriage, political mobilisation, schooling, credit and occupation can combine caste and class in new ways. A prosperous migrant household may retain endogamous marriage preferences; a historically marginalised group may gain educational mobility while still facing discrimination; a landed family may lose agrarian power yet retain cultural or political capital. Social history therefore requires intersection rather than substitution: class, caste, gender and locality interact and their relative weight changes by institution and period.

150.9 Gender is visible when unpaid work, property and mobility are treated as history

Women’s contribution becomes central once the archive is read beyond formal officeholding and recorded wages. Agriculture, livestock care, food processing, ritual, craft, household management, child care and elder care have all relied on gendered labour that is often under-recorded. Education, migration, property law, self-help groups, employment and digital access have altered possibilities without producing uniform emancipation. Male migration can increase women’s responsibility while leaving ownership and major financial decisions elsewhere. Gender history therefore asks who performs necessary work, who controls assets, who moves, who is protected by institutions and whose labour becomes visible in statistics.

150.10 Religion changed through institutions, publics and material settings

Religious history in the region includes Buddhist, Jain, Brahmanical, Śaiva, Śākta, Vaiṣṇava, Islamic and other traditions, but no single sequence can be reduced to replacement. Sacred geographies accumulated meanings; temples, monasteries, shrines, mosques, festivals and pilgrimage routes connected households to larger publics. Chhath, Vivah Panchami, Muharram, urs, local goddess traditions and life-cycle rites demonstrate how public ritual depends on water, roads, committees, markets, policing, media and migration as well as belief. Religious persistence is therefore institutional and material. Demographic affiliation cannot by itself measure ritual practice, and later religious identities should not be projected into periods whose evidence uses different categories.

150.11 Language history is a history of domains, media and authority

Maithili, Angika, Bajjika, Sanskrit, Persian, Hindi, Nepali and other languages have occupied different domains at different times. Court, manuscript, household, market, school, print, broadcasting and digital platforms each create distinct forms of linguistic authority. Recognition can strengthen a language, but vitality depends on use, literacy, teaching, publication, administration, performance and intergenerational transmission. Census labels are valuable evidence of self-reporting within a modern classificatory system, not eternal boundaries of speech communities. The history of language is therefore the history of infrastructures that enable people to read, write, transact, learn, remember and participate.

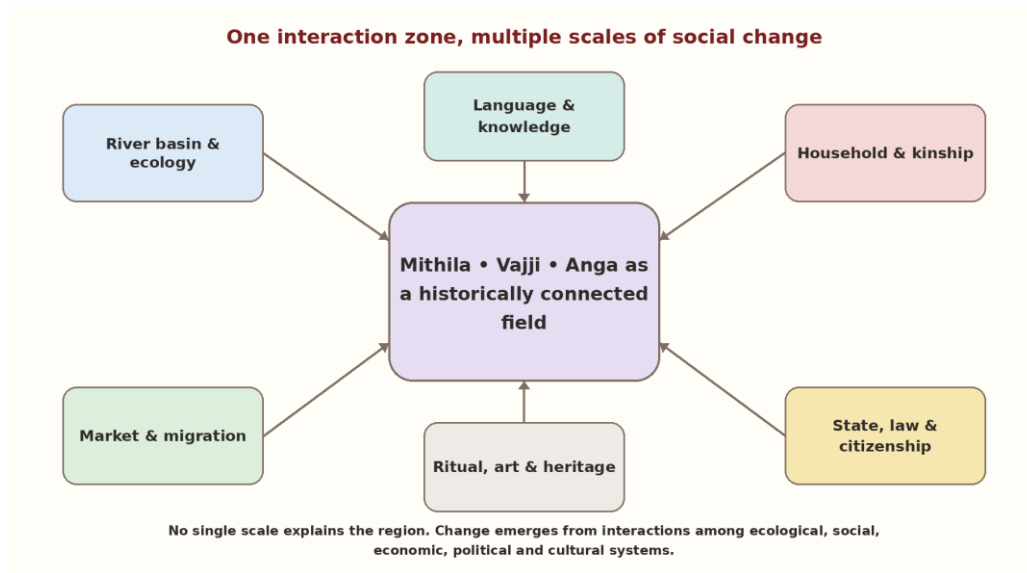


Figure 597 — Mithila, Vajji and Anga are best reconstructed across interacting ecological, household, market, political, linguistic and cultural scales.

150.12 The two-Vidyāpati framework illustrates why names require chronology

The volume's distinction between Mahākavi Vidyāpati, placed in the earlier Maithili Padāvalī context, and the later Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura associated with the Oiniwar court and Sanskrit/Avahaṭṭa works is not merely a biographical detail. It exemplifies a larger historiographical discipline: similarity of name or later attribution cannot substitute for chronological and textual control. Literary history is especially vulnerable to retrospective consolidation because manuscripts, oral circulation, devotional reuse and canon formation can merge distinct historical contexts. Separating evidence before synthesising memory allows both traditions to be studied more precisely rather than diminishing either.

150.13 Script history shows that preservation requires an ecosystem, not a specimen

Tirhuta/Mithilakshar survives through manuscripts, scribal knowledge, Unicode encoding, fonts, keyboards, teaching, publication and digital use. A script can be technically encoded yet socially marginal; conversely, manuscript survival can preserve historical evidence even when everyday literacy declines. The same principle applies to archives generally. Preservation is not the freezing of an object but the maintenance of conditions for access, interpretation and transmission. Digital tools can extend those conditions, but only when provenance, version history and readable formats are preserved.

150.14 Cultural continuity is strongest when reinvention is recognised as part of transmission

Mithila painting, Manjusha, music, ritual, foodways, festivals and oral forms persisted by changing materials, venues, patrons and audiences. Paper painting, institutional training, museums, craft fairs, global collecting, digital sales and new design forms altered the economic and aesthetic worlds of artists. Such transformation does not automatically prove loss of authenticity. UNESCO's formulation of intangible heritage as something "constantly recreated" is useful because it directs attention to communities and transmission rather than to an imagined frozen original. The historical question is whether practitioners retain meaningful agency, livelihoods and recognition as forms change.

150.15 Colonialism transformed categories as well as institutions

Colonial rule altered land revenue, property, policing, education, transport, commodity production and political authority. It also produced surveys, censuses, gazetteers and classifications that remain indispensable historical sources. Those records should neither be discarded as merely colonial nor accepted as transparent descriptions of timeless society. Administrative categories could standardise fluid identities, privilege what was measurable and turn local distinctions into governmental facts. The historian must therefore read colonial knowledge twice: once for the information it records and again for the institutions and purposes that shaped the record.

150.16 Post-independence development redistributed capability unevenly

Land reform, roads, schools, health systems, electricity, irrigation, banks, reservation, welfare and local government expanded the institutional reach of the state. Their effects were uneven across caste, class, gender and locality. A road can reduce travel time but also alter land values; a school can expand enrolment while leaving learning and employment unequal; an embankment can protect one area while worsening drainage elsewhere. Development history is therefore not a catalogue of schemes. It is the study of how public investment changes capabilities, risks, bargaining power and spatial connections.

150.17 Migration is not the opposite of regional belonging

Migration has connected the region to Kolkata, Delhi, Mumbai, Punjab, Haryana, the Gulf, Kathmandu and many other destinations. It has also reorganised households within the region through remittances, altered labour supply, financed education and housing, and created diaspora institutions. Mobility can weaken some local practices while strengthening others through deliberate revival. A person can be economically integrated into distant labour markets and culturally invested in village, language, festival or kinship networks. Regional history should therefore analyse circulation rather than equate belonging with permanent residence.

150.18 The India–Nepal border is both political boundary and social infrastructure

The India–Nepal border divides sovereign legal, fiscal and administrative systems, yet it also crosses a zone of dense kinship, pilgrimage, trade, labour mobility, language and river interdependence. Treating the border as absent would erase citizenship, customs, monetary and policy differences; treating it as a hard civilisational divide would erase everyday interaction. The correct unit of analysis depends on the question. Trade regulation may require national comparison; marriage networks may require local cross-border mapping; flood forecasting may require river-basin coordination. One interaction zone can therefore contain multiple political economies.

150.19 Federalism and decentralisation changed where social citizenship is negotiated

In Nepal, federalism redistributed significant responsibilities across federal, provincial and local governments. In India, state, district, panchayat and municipal institutions likewise mediate welfare, infrastructure and public services. Social citizenship is therefore experienced through documents, schools, health posts, roads, language access, registration, policing and local budgets as much as through constitutional principle. Institutional geography matters: a right formally guaranteed at one level may depend on administrative capacity at another. Comparing citizenship requires attention to delivery systems, not only legal texts.

150.20 Statistics are indispensable precisely because they are historically bounded

Censuses, surveys, administrative records and digital databases allow social and economic change to be measured, but each is produced by definitions, reference dates and institutional purposes. India's Census 2011, Nepal's 2021 census, labour surveys, health surveys, agricultural statistics and caste-related administrative exercises cannot be merged into a single seamless series without harmonisation. Missing data should be presented as missing, and projections as projections. Quantitative discipline supports rather than opposes historical interpretation because it prevents attractive narratives from becoming substitutes for evidence.

Continuity and transformation across the volume

Domain	Long continuities	Major transformations	Historical caution
Land & water	alluvial farming; river dependence	embankments; pumps; roads; climate risk	river systems are dynamic, not fixed borders
Household	kinship; care; property transmission	migration; education; smaller co-resident units	household ≠ static joint-family essence
Hierarchy	status, occupation and unequal assets	law; reservation; mobility; new classes	later caste categories cannot be projected backward
Language	multilingual exchange; regional literary memory	print; schooling; standardisation; Unicode/AI	administrative labels ≠ timeless speech communities
Culture	ritual, craft, performance and sacred geographies	markets; tourism; institutions; digital publics	persistence works through reinvention
Economy	agriculture, fairs, trade and mobility	rail/road; migration; remittance; platforms	market integration does not erase subsistence strategies

Figure 598 — Long continuities and major transformations coexist across land, household, hierarchy, language, culture and economy.

150.21 Archives are not neutral containers of the past

Manuscripts, Panji records, revenue documents, newspapers, photographs, recordings and digital repositories survive through selection, custody, copying and institutional investment. What is preserved becomes easier to study; what is dispersed or inaccessible can disappear from historical narratives. Digitisation can reduce handling, expand access and enable comparison, but it can also detach images from provenance or encourage searchable transcriptions to replace source criticism. The archive must therefore be studied as both evidence and institution. Preservation policy is part of historiography because it shapes what future historians will be able to know.

150.22 Public history must distinguish evidence, memory and identity without disrespecting any of them

Communities remember origins, heroes, sacred events and cultural continuities through narratives that carry meaning even when their chronology differs from archaeological or documentary evidence. Historians do not need to dismiss such memory, nor should they convert it automatically into dated fact. The productive approach is to identify the genre and social work of each claim. A legend can reveal values, pilgrimage, identity and later political use even when it cannot securely date an ancient event. Respect for tradition is compatible with evidentiary discipline because the two answer different historical questions.

150.23 Inequality is a distributional question inside every narrative of continuity

Claims about regional prosperity, cultural heritage or social change should always ask who possessed land, schooling, mobility, wages, authority and voice. The same institution can distribute benefits unevenly. Tourism may create income while concentrating commissions; digital access may widen audiences while excluding those without devices or literacy; education may expand mobility while credential costs reproduce class differences. A history without distribution can mistake aggregate change for shared progress. Caste, class, gender, age, disability and locality therefore belong inside economic and cultural history rather than in separate corrective chapters.

150.24 Technology changes mediation more rapidly than it erases older institutions

Railways, radio, electricity, mobile phones, digital payments, Unicode, social media and AI have successively changed the speed and scale of interaction. Yet new technologies typically layer onto existing households, markets, languages and institutions. Mobile payment can coexist with cash; digital publication with print; AI transcription with manuscript expertise; online ritual viewing with physical pilgrimage. Technology is most historically significant when it reorganises access, gatekeeping, labour and records. The analytical task is to identify which relationships change, not to assume that every new medium creates a complete social rupture.

150.25 Climate change makes historical vulnerability more consequential

Climate change intensifies the importance of long-standing relationships among rivers, rainfall, agriculture, housing, health and migration. But risk is not distributed by climate alone. Landlessness, drainage, credit, road design, crop choice, insurance, public warning systems and cross-border information

determine whether a hazard becomes disaster. Historical analysis contributes to adaptation by revealing how vulnerability was produced and which institutions have learned from past shocks. The future of the region will depend not on eliminating riverine change but on building flexible systems able to live with uncertainty.

150.26 Heritage policy should protect capability rather than manufacture timeless authenticity

Geographical indications, museums, archives, festivals, tourism programmes and cultural academies can strengthen cultural livelihoods when they support practitioners, provenance, transmission and access. They can also simplify diverse traditions into marketable labels. The measure of safeguarding should therefore include active practitioners, younger learners, fair compensation, community decision-making, documentation quality and the ability to adapt. A heritage policy that preserves an image while weakening the people who reproduce the practice mistakes representation for continuity.

150.27 Comparison across long periods requires asymmetry, not forced equivalence

The source base changes dramatically from prehistory to the contemporary period. Archaeology may reveal settlement and subsistence without names; inscriptions can record patrons and grants but not full populations; medieval manuscripts may illuminate elite institutions; colonial records can be detailed but administratively selective; modern surveys are statistically powerful but concept-dependent. Good comparison does not pretend that every period offers the same variables. It asks comparable questions while respecting unequal evidence. This asymmetry is a strength because it makes limits visible instead of filling them with speculation.

150.28 The volume rejects timeless essences without rejecting historical continuity

To deny timeless essences is not to claim that everything changed constantly or that regional identity is unreal. It is to insist that continuity itself has mechanisms. Language persists through speakers, schools and media; ritual through households and committees; caste through marriage, property and institutions; regional identity through mobility, memory and public culture. When those mechanisms alter, the meaning of continuity can alter too. Historical explanation becomes stronger when it shows how persistence was reproduced rather than assuming an essence capable of surviving without people, institutions or material support.

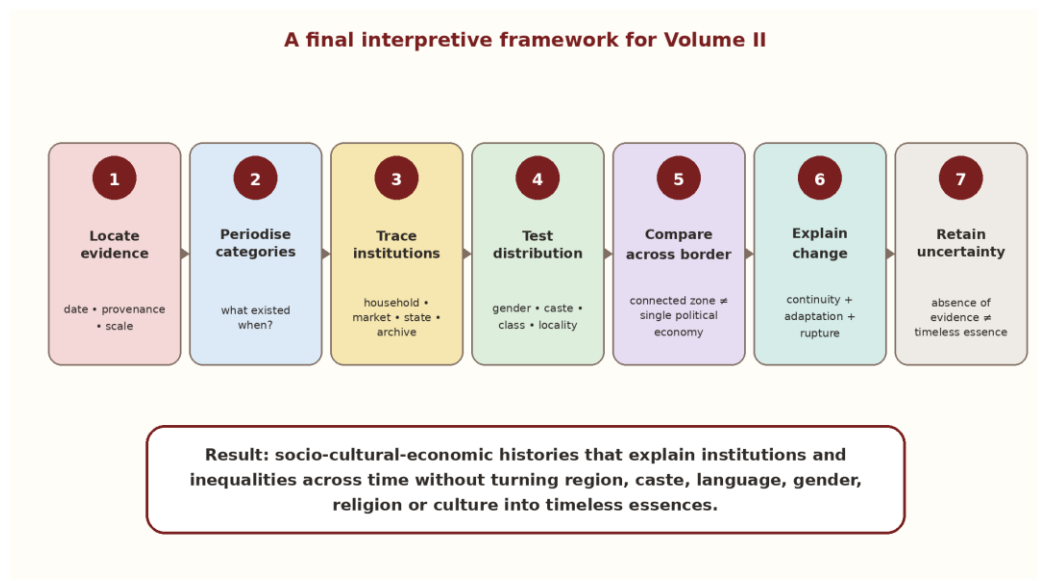


Figure 599 — Final interpretive framework: locate evidence, periodise categories, trace institutions, test distribution, compare scales, explain change and retain uncertainty.

150.29 A usable regional history is one that remains open to correction

New excavations, manuscript discoveries, digitised Panji sets, census results, oral histories, ecological data and institutional archives will change parts of the reconstruction offered here. That is not a defect. A historical synthesis should identify its evidence and uncertainty clearly enough to be revised. Exact citations, dated datasets, provenance, preserved images and explicit methodological distinctions allow future researchers to test claims rather than inherit conclusions as authority. The goal is not the last word on Mithila, Vajji and Anga but a durable architecture for cumulative research.

150.30 Conclusion: connected histories without timeless essences

Across prehistory, early urbanisation, agrarian transformations, religious and linguistic change, colonial rule, migration, development, digital modernity and the contemporary economy, the strongest continuity is not an unchanging social substance but a capacity for connection and institutional adaptation. Rivers linked and divided; households redistributed labour; markets expanded; states classified and invested; languages moved across media; rituals entered public infrastructures; migration stretched communities across distance; and cultural practices were repeatedly reinvented. Mithila, Vajji and Anga emerge from this history not as timeless essences but as historically produced and continually negotiated fields of social life. That conclusion preserves regional distinctiveness while making it explainable: identity, continuity and culture matter most when their institutions, inequalities, evidence and transformations are made visible.

Table 150.1 — Evidence architecture for socio-cultural-economic histories without timeless essences

Analytical problem	Evidence strategy	Inference to avoid
Regional boundary	map dated political, ecological, linguistic, market and kinship connections	treating one modern administrative boundary as the timeless region
Social category	establish when a category appears and how sources define it	projecting later caste, linguistic or political labels backward
Continuity	identify institutions and practices that reproduce it across time	assuming persistence proves an unchanged essence
Household & kinship	combine residence, property, marriage, care and migration evidence	equating census household with the full economic family

Analytical problem	Evidence strategy	Inference to avoid
Economic change	trace production, exchange, credit, labour, infrastructure and risk	opposing subsistence and market as mutually exclusive systems
Religion & culture	distinguish affiliation, practice, ritual infrastructure and memory	treating demographic labels as measures of belief or ritual intensity
Language	compare domains of use, scripts, education, print, media and census reporting	treating census mother-tongue categories as fixed ethnic borders
Borderland	analyse cross-border networks alongside sovereign law and institutions	describing India–Nepal connectedness as either no border or total separation
Quantitative evidence	retain source dates, definitions, denominators and uncertainty	merging censuses, surveys and administrative counts into false precision
Archives & heritage	record provenance, custody, access, practitioners and benefit distribution	confusing preservation or legal recognition with living continuity

Selected Chronology

Prehistory

Alluvial, piedmont and upland environments are occupied long before the later historical names Mithila, Videha, Vajji and Anga can be applied. Archaeological evidence is therefore treated without retrospective ethnic or linguistic labels.

c. 6th–5th centuries BCE

The second urbanisation transforms the Middle Gangetic world. Videha, Vajji/Vṛjji and Anga enter textual and archaeological histories connected with cities, trade, debate, Buddhism and Jainism.

c. 5th century BCE

Vaiśālī and the Vajji sphere become major settings in Buddhist and Jain traditions; Campā/Champa is remembered as an important urban and commercial centre of Anga.

3rd century BCE

Mauryan political integration and the wider epigraphic world provide a new scale for state, communication and religious history in the Gangetic region.

c. 4th–6th centuries CE

Gupta-period political and cultural formations intersect with older local agrarian, religious and exchange networks across the middle and eastern Gangetic plains.

c. 8th–12th centuries

Pāla- and Sena-era institutions, land grants, monasteries, temples and scholastic networks reshape eastern Indian agrarian and intellectual life.

c. 11th–early 14th centuries

Karnata-period Mithila develops distinctive courtly, agrarian and scholarly formations while remaining connected to Nepal and the wider Gangetic world.

1324

A major political rupture in the Karnata order does not constitute a demographic or cultural beginning; the volume treats political change and social continuity separately.

14th–16th centuries

Oiniwar-era court society, Sanskrit learning, vernacular literary formation and manuscript practices develop within a changing regional political economy.

16th–17th centuries

Mughal fiscal and administrative systems connect Tirhut, Hajipur, Munger and adjoining zones to imperial revenue and commercial circuits while local intermediaries remain important.

1765

East India Company acquisition of the Bengal diwani accelerates the reorganisation of revenue, agrarian mediation and commodity networks in Bihar and Bengal.

1793

The Permanent Settlement fixes the state demand through zamindars in the Bengal Presidency, with long-term effects on landed society, tenancy and rural power.

c. 1800

In the chronology adopted for this project, Panji/Śākhā-pustak evidence supports the emergence of Śrōtriya as a distinct Maithil Brahmin sub-caste around this period rather than in the medieval era.

19th century

Colonial surveys, censuses, education, print, railways and commercial agriculture increasingly standardise administrative categories while also creating new forms of mobility and public debate.

1873–1874

Bihar scarcity relief demonstrates an expanding colonial logistics and famine-administration apparatus and the distinction between crop failure, market stress, relief capacity and mortality.

late 19th–early 20th centuries

Railway growth reorders markets, migration routes and urban hierarchies; print expands new Maithili, Hindi, Urdu, Bengali and English publics.

1912

Bihar and Orissa are separated administratively from Bengal, altering the provincial framework within which Mithila, Vajji and Anga are governed.

1917

The Champaran agrarian settlement becomes a major comparative reference for indigo, peasant politics and changing colonial agrarian regulation in north Bihar.

15 January 1934

The Bihar–Nepal earthquake causes catastrophic loss and infrastructure damage across a transborder region already shaped by flood and river instability.

1936

Bihar becomes a separate province from Orissa, creating the administrative predecessor of post-independence Bihar.

1947

Indian independence begins a new phase of land reform, development planning, democratic politics, public education and infrastructure building in Bihar.

1950

The Constitution of India establishes a republican federal framework; the India–Nepal relationship also enters a new treaty and mobility context in the same historical conjuncture.

early 1950s

Abolition of zamindari and land-reform legislation begin to restructure formal landed authority in Bihar, with uneven consequences on the ground.

1954 onward

The Kosi development regime inaugurates a major phase of embankment, barrage and river-management intervention whose social consequences become central to modern flood history.

post-1960

Expansion of roads, electricity, schools, health services, banking and later telecommunications gradually changes rural opportunity, migration and market access, unevenly across districts.

late 20th century

Large-scale migration to metropolitan India, Punjab–Haryana and the Gulf becomes increasingly important to household income, labour allocation, housing and education.

2003

Maithili is added to the Eighth Schedule of the Constitution of India, strengthening its formal institutional recognition.

early 21st century

Mobile phones, digital payments, online publishing, diaspora networks and platform economies create new infrastructures of language, commerce and cultural circulation.

2015

Nepal adopts a federal constitution. Madhesh politics, citizenship debates and the distribution of authority among federal, provincial and local institutions become central to the contemporary borderland.

2017 onward

Provincial and local governments in Nepal acquire new roles in roads, markets, land use, education, tourism and services, while customs and international trade remain federal responsibilities.

2020s

Climate risk, flood adaptation, land fragmentation, remittance dependence, digital cultural production, heritage branding and the cultural economy become increasingly interlinked regional questions.

Glossary

Anga

An ancient eastern region associated especially with Campā/Champa and the middle Ganga zone around present-day Bhagalpur. The term is historical and is not treated as identical with any single modern district boundary.

Bajjika

A modern language-name used for speech varieties of western Mithila and adjoining north Bihar. Earlier colonial classifications may use labels such as Western Maithili; ancient Vajji/Vṛjī is not treated as automatic proof of linguistic continuity.

chaur

A low-lying floodplain depression or seasonal wetland, especially in north Bihar. A chaur may shift among open water, marsh, fishing ground, grazing area and seasonal cultivation.

diara

Riverine land formed or reworked by channels, bars and alluvial deposition. Diara land can be fertile yet insecure because boundaries, possession and even the land surface itself may change.

diaspora

Communities and institutions formed through migration beyond the region of origin. In this volume the term includes cultural associations, publishing, ritual, language maintenance and digital networks, not merely permanent overseas settlement.

GI — Geographical Indication

A form of intellectual-property recognition linking specified goods to a geographical origin and reputation or qualities associated with that origin. GI status does not by itself guarantee equitable producer income.

living culture

Cultural practice sustained through present use, adaptation, transmission and reinterpretation. The term is contrasted with heritage approaches that may freeze a practice into a single authorised past form.

Madhesh / Tarai

Madhesh is a historical, political and social term widely used for Nepal's southern plains; Tarai/Terai is also a physiographic and administrative label. Their meanings overlap in some contexts but are not identical.

Maithili

An eastern Indo-Aryan language with a long literary, oral and scholastic history in India and Nepal. Its historical registers, scripts, speech varieties and modern standardisation are treated separately rather than collapsed into one timeless form.

Mithila

A historical-cultural region whose extent changes by period and source. It overlaps with ancient Videha in some historical narratives and with later Tirhut and modern Maithili-speaking areas, but the names are not treated as timeless equivalents.

Mithilakshar / Tirhuta

Names used for the traditional script associated with Maithili and the manuscript culture of Mithila. Script history is distinguished from language history and from later Devanagari-based print standardisation.

Panji

Genealogical and marriage-regulation records associated especially with Maithil Brahmin and Karna Kayastha communities. The corpus is used as historically layered evidence rather than as a transparent record of remote antiquity.

Panjikar

A specialist traditionally associated with maintaining, interpreting or consulting Panji genealogical records and marriage eligibility.

Permanent Settlement

The 1793 East India Company revenue settlement that fixed the state demand through zamindars in much of the Bengal Presidency. It transformed formal property and revenue relations without eliminating layered local rights or intermediaries.

remittance economy

A household or regional economy in which income sent by migrants materially shapes consumption, housing, education, debt, investment and care arrangements.

ryot / raiyat

A cultivator or tenant recorded in colonial and post-colonial agrarian systems. The legal and practical content of raiyati rights varies by period, tenure regime and locality.

social citizenship

The effective ability to exercise rights and access public goods—education, health, documentation, welfare, mobility and political voice—not merely the possession of formal nationality.

Śrotriya

A Maithil Brahmin status/sub-caste category whose distinct formation is treated in this book as a late development, around 1800 CE on the adopted Panji chronology, not as a fixed medieval category.

tenancy

Cultivation or possession of land under rights that differ from full ownership. Rent, occupancy, sharecropping, hereditary claims and statutory protection vary widely across historical regimes.

Vajji / Vṛji

An early historic confederative political formation centred on the Vaiśālī region. It is distinct from later territorial and linguistic labels even where historical memory creates connections.

Vaiśālī / Vaishali

An early historic urban and political centre associated with Vajji, Buddhism and Jainism. The archaeological and modern district/place names require period-specific handling.

Videha

An ancient regional and political name associated with north of the Ganga and the wider Mithila historical imagination. Videha is not treated as a permanently surveyed synonym for all later Mithila.

zamindari

A historically variable complex of revenue-collecting, proprietary and landed authority. Under colonial rule the Permanent Settlement strengthened certain zamindari rights, but local agrarian relations remained layered and contested.

Historical Place-Name Concordance

Historical name	Modern / related reference	Caution on equivalence
Anga	Eastern Gangetic historical region; especially associated with Bhagalpur–Munger–Banka and Campā traditions	Historical region; not a modern administrative unit
Campā / Champa / Champanagara	Ancient urban centre associated with Anga, generally located in the Bhagalpur cultural-archaeological zone	Ancient name with later/local identifications
Darbhangā	Major city/district of north Bihar and later seat of the Darbhanga Raj	Modern administrative/cultural centre within wider Mithila
Hajipur	Ganga–Gandak confluence market/administrative centre opposite Patna	Modern Hajipur, Vaishali district
Janakpur / Janakpurdham	Religious, urban and commercial centre in Nepal Madhesh	Modern Janakpurdham, Madhesh Province, Nepal
Madhesh	Nepal's southern plains as political, social and historical space	Overlaps with but is not identical to the physiographic Tarai/Terai
Mithila	Historical-cultural region north of the Ganga with changing boundaries	Crosses the modern India–Nepal border; not a fixed administrative unit
Monghyr / Munger	Historic and modern Ganga-side centre in eastern Bihar	Colonial Monghyr corresponds to modern Munger
Muzaffarpur	North Bihar urban and administrative centre	Modern Muzaffarpur district/city; historically within Tirhut frameworks
Rajmahal	Ganga corridor and hill-edge zone east of Bhagalpur	Modern Jharkhand; relevant to eastern trade and colonial circuits
Tarai / Terai	Himalayan piedmont and southern Nepal plain	Physiographic term; overlaps variably with Madhesh
Tirhut	Medieval/early modern and colonial regional-administrative name in north Bihar	Historically overlaps with parts of Mithila but is not identical in every period
Vaiśālī / Vaishali	Early historic city/region associated with Vajji	Modern Vaishali district contains the Basarh archaeological zone
Vajji / Vṛjī	Early historic confederative region centred on Vaiśālī	Political-historical formation, not a modern district
Videha	Ancient regional/political name associated with north-Gangetic Mithila traditions	Ancient frame; not a timeless modern boundary

Language-Name Concordance

Name / label	Historical use	Concordance note
Maithili	Historical and modern name for the principal language of Mithila; modern standard language coexists with regional speech variation	Do not infer a single unchanged spoken form for all periods
Mithilakshar / Tirhuta	Traditional script name associated with Maithili manuscript culture	Script name, not a separate language
Angika	Modern language-name for speech of the Anga/eastern Bihar zone	Ancient Anga is not automatic proof of uninterrupted linguistic identity
Chhika-Chhiki	Colonial-era label used in descriptions of eastern speech varieties	Historical classificatory label; not automatically identical with all modern Angika usage
Bajjika	Modern name for western Mithila/north Bihar speech varieties	Ancient Vajji and modern Bajjika must be historically distinguished
Western Maithili	Label found in colonial/linguistic classifications	May overlap with varieties now described as Bajjika; classification depends on period and source
Avahatṭa	Late Middle Indo-Aryan literary register used in eastern Indian textual traditions	Register/category distinct from modern Maithili
Apabhraṃśa	Middle Indo-Aryan literary-linguistic category	Broad historical category; should not be equated mechanically with a single modern language
Sanskrit	Classical and scholastic language with major legal, ritual, philosophical and literary roles	High-register textual language coexisting with vernacular speech
Persian	Major administrative and literary language under Sultanate/Mughal and successor regimes	Documentary use does not imply ethnic identity of all users
Urdu	Modern Indo-Aryan literary and public language with strong Persian-Arabic lexical/script traditions	Its regional history intersects with Hindi, Persian and local vernaculars
Hindi	Modern standard/public language increasingly important in education, administration and print	Standard Hindi should not be projected unchanged into medieval vernacular history
Nepali	Official and widely used language of Nepal	Coexists with Maithili and other Madhesh languages in multilingual institutions
Bengali	Major eastern Indo-Aryan language and print/public language to the east	Important to colonial Bengal administration, migration and literary exchange
English	Colonial and post-colonial language of higher administration, education, law and global communication	Institutional role changes sharply across periods

Consolidated Bibliography

- Central Ground Water Board. 2013a. Ground Water Information Booklet: Bhagalpur District, Bihar. Ministry of Water Resources, Government of India.
- Central Ground Water Board. 2013b. Ground Water Information Booklet: Munger District, Bihar. Ministry of Water Resources, Government of India.
- Chakraborty, T., R. Kar, P. Ghosh and S. Basu. 2010. "Kosi megafan: Historical records, geomorphology and the recent avulsion of the Kosi River." *Quaternary International* 227(2): 143–160. doi:10.1016/j.quaint.2009.12.002.
- Census of India. 2011. District Census Handbook: Banka, Bihar. Directorate of Census Operations, Bihar.
- Forest Research and Training Centre (FRTC), Government of Nepal. 2022. Terai Forests of Nepal. Ministry of Forests and Environment, Kathmandu.
- Government of Bihar. 2019. Bihar Economic Survey 2018–19, section on agro-climatic profile and water resources. Finance Department, Patna.
- Government of Nepal. National Water Plan. Water and Energy Commission Secretariat / Ministry of Energy, Water Resources and Irrigation, Kathmandu.
- Jain, V. and R. Sinha. 2004. "Fluvial dynamics of an anabranching river system in Himalayan foreland basin, Bagmati River, north Bihar plains, India." *Geomorphology* 60(1–2): 147–170. doi:10.1016/j.geomorph.2003.07.008.
- Jain, V. and R. Sinha. 2005. "Response of active tectonics on the alluvial Bagmati River, Himalayan foreland basin, eastern India." *Geomorphology* 70(3–4): 339–356. doi:10.1016/j.geomorph.2005.02.012.
- Mohindra, R., B. Parkash and J. Prasad. 1992. "Historical geomorphology and pedology of the Gandak Megafan, Middle Gangetic Plains, India." *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 17(7): 643–662. doi:10.1002/esp.3290170702.
- Reza, S. K., S. Mukhopadhyay, D. Dutta, T. Chattopadhyay, J. Mukhopadhyay, D. Maurya and B. S. Dwivedi. 2022. "Soil–landform relationship and pedogenesis of flood plain soils of Mahananda sub-basin, Bihar." *Journal of the Indian Society of Soil Science* 70(2): 172–181. doi:10.5958/0974-0228.2022.00017.2.
- Singh, M. and R. Sinha. 2020. "Distribution, diversity, and geomorphic evolution of floodplain wetlands and wetland complexes in the Ganga plains of north Bihar, India." *Geomorphology* 351: 106960. doi:10.1016/j.geomorph.2019.106960.
- Sinha, R., V. Jain, G. Prasad Babu and S. Ghosh. 2005. "Geomorphic characterization and diversity of the fluvial systems of the Gangetic Plains." *Geomorphology* 70(3–4): 207–225. doi:10.1016/j.geomorph.2005.02.006.
- Sinha, R., A. Gupta, K. Mishra, S. Tripathi, S. Nepal, S. M. Wahid and S. Swarnkar. 2019. "Basin-Scale Hydrology and Sediment Dynamics of the Kosi River in the Himalayan Foreland." *Journal of Hydrology* 570: 156–166. doi:10.1016/j.jhydrol.2018.12.051.
- United States Geological Survey / ISC-GEM. 1934 Bihar–Nepal Earthquake event catalogue entry: Mw 8.0, 15 January 1934.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1965–66. Indian Archaeology 1965–66 — A Review. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See radiocarbon determinations for Chirand.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1977–78. Indian Archaeology 1977–78 — A Review. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India, pp. 17–18 (Chechar–Kutubpur).
- Corvinus, Gudrun. 1987. 'Patu, a New Stone Age Site of a Jungle Habitat in Nepal.' *Quartär* 37–38: 135–187.
- Corvinus, Gudrun. 1989. 'The Patu Industry in Its Environment in the Siwaliks in Eastern Nepal.' *Quartär* 39/40: 95–123. https://doi.org/10.7485/QU39_03.
- Corvinus, Gudrun. 2007. Prehistoric Cultures in Nepal: From the Early Palaeolithic to the Neolithic and the Quaternary Geology of the Dang-Deokhuri Dun Valleys. 2 vols. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Darnal, Prakash. 2016. 'Archaeology of Nepal.' In Gwen Robbins Schug and Subhash R. Walimbe (eds.), *A Companion to South Asia in the Past*, 412–425. Wiley. <https://doi.org/10.1002/9781119055280.ch26>.
- Fuller, Dorian Q. 2006. 'Agricultural Origins and Frontiers in South Asia: A Working Synthesis.' *Journal of World Prehistory* 20(1): 1–86. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10963-006-9006-8>.
- Gaillard, Claire, Manmohan Singh and Anne Dambricourt-Malassé. 2011. 'Late Pleistocene to Early Holocene Lithic Industries in the Southern Fringes of the Himalaya.' *Quaternary International* 229(1–2): 112–122. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.quaint.2010.06.023>.
- Narain, L. A. 1970. 'Neolithic Settlement at Chirand.' *Journal of the Bihar Research Society* 56: 16–35.
- Pokharia, Anil K., Shalini Sharma, Deepika Tripathi, Neelam Mishra, J. N. Pal, Ram Vinay and Alka Srivastava. 2017. 'Neolithic–Early Historic (2500–200 BC) Plant Use: The Archaeobotany of Ganga Plain, India.' *Quaternary International* 443(B): 223–237. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.quaint.2016.09.018>.

- Sinha, Harendra Prasad. 1994. *Archaeological and Cultural History of North Bihar: With Special Reference to Neolithic Chirand*. Delhi: Ramanand Vidya Bhawan.
- Verma, B. S. 1971. 'Excavations at Chirand: New Light on the Indian Neolithic Culture-Complex.' *Puratattva* 4: 19–23.
- Verma, B. S. 2007. *Chirand: Excavation Report 1961–1964 and 1967–1970*. Patna: Directorate of Archaeology, Government of Bihar.
- Vishnu-Mittre. 1972. 'Neolithic Plant Economy at Chirand, Bihar.' *The Palaeobotanist* 21(1–3): 18–22.
<https://doi.org/10.54991/jop.1972.1463>.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1962–63. *Indian Archaeology 1962–63 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See "Excavation at Chirand, District Saran."
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1966–67. *Indian Archaeology 1966–67 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See "Excavation at Oriup, District Bhagalpur."
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1968–69. *Indian Archaeology 1968–69 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See "Excavation at Chirand, District Saran."
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1970–71. *Indian Archaeology 1970–71 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See "Excavation at Champa, District Bhagalpur."
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1971–72. *Indian Archaeology 1971–72 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See "Excavation at Champa, District Bhagalpur."
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1972–73. *Indian Archaeology 1972–73 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See "Excavation at Champa, District Bhagalpur."
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1988–89. *Indian Archaeology 1988–89 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See "Excavation at Chechar, District Vaishali."
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1990–91. *Indian Archaeology 1990–91 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. Palaeobotanical investigations at Senuwar, District Rohtas.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 2001–02. *Indian Archaeology 2001–02 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. Report on Panda, District Samastipur.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 2002–03. *Indian Archaeology 2002–03 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. Report on Panda, District Samastipur.
- Choudhary, Bijoy Kumar. 2005. "Excavations at Pāṇḍ." *Prajna-Bharati* XI: 81–86.
- Singh, Birendra Pratap. 2004. *Early Farming Communities of the Kaimur: Excavations at Senuwar, 1986–87, 1989–90*. Jaipur: Publication Scheme.
- Singh, Purushottam. 2004. "Archaeology of the Middle Ganga Plain: The Chalcolithic Phase." *Studies in South Asian Art and Archaeology* 26: 1–16.
- Sinha, Bindeshwari Prasad, and Bhagwati Sharan Verma. 1977. *Sonpur Excavations, 1956 and 1959–1962*. Patna: Directorate of Archaeology and Museums, Bihar.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1986–87. *Indian Archaeology 1986–87 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. Palaeobotanical investigations at Senuwar, District Rohtas.
- Fuller, Dorian Q. 2011. "Pathways to Asian Civilizations: Tracing the Origins and Spread of Rice and Rice Cultures." *Rice* 4: 78–92.
<https://doi.org/10.1007/s12284-011-9078-7>.
- Fuller, Dorian Q. 2017. "Agriculture of Early India." *Oxford Research Encyclopedia of Environmental Science*. Oxford University Press.
- Nath, Bhola, and M. K. Biswas. 1980. "Animal Remains from Chirand, Saran District (Bihar)." *Records of the Zoological Survey of India* 76: 115–124.
- Saraswat, K. S. 2004. "Plant Economy of Early Farming Communities." In Birendra Pratap Singh, *Early Farming Communities of the Kaimur: Excavations at Senuwar, 1986–87, 1989–90*, vol. 2, 416–535. Jaipur: Publication Scheme.
- Tewari, Rakesh, R. K. Srivastava, K. S. Saraswat, I. B. Singh, and K. K. Singh. 2008. "Early Farming at Lahuradewa." *Pragdhara* 18: 347–373.
- Chakraborty, Tapan, Rimpal Kar, Parthasarathi Ghosh, and Sounak Basu. 2010. "Kosi Megafan: Historical Records, Geomorphology and the Recent Avulsion of the Kosi River." *Quaternary International* 227(2): 143–160.
<https://doi.org/10.1016/j.quaint.2009.12.002>.
- Darnal, Prakash. 2016. "Archaeology of Nepal." In *A Companion to South Asia in the Past*, edited by Gwen Robbins Schug and Subhash R. Walimbe. Wiley-Blackwell. <https://doi.org/10.1002/9781119055280.ch26>.
- Jain, Vikrant, and Rajiv Sinha. 2003. "Hyperavulsive-Anabranching Baghmata River System, North Bihar Plains, Eastern India." *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* 47(1): 101–116. <https://doi.org/10.1127/zfg/47/2003/101>.

- Jain, Vikrant, and Rajiv Sinha. 2004. "Fluvial Dynamics of an Anabranching River System in Himalayan Foreland Basin, Bagmati River, North Bihar Plains, India." *Geomorphology* 60: 147–170.
- Jain, Vikrant, and Rajiv Sinha. 2005. "Response of Active Tectonics on the Alluvial Bagmati River, Himalayan Foreland Basin, Eastern India." *Geomorphology* 70(3–4): 339–356. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.geomorph.2005.02.012>.
- Sinha, Rajiv. 1995. "Sedimentology of Quaternary Alluvial Deposits of the Gandak–Kosi Interfan, North Bihar Plains." *Journal of the Geological Society of India* 46(5): 521–532.
- Sinha, Rajiv. 1996. "Channel Avulsion and Floodplain Structure in the Gandak–Kosi Interfan, North Bihar Plains, India." *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie, Supplementband* 103: 249–268.
- Sinha, Rajiv. 1998. "On the Controls of Fluvial Hazards in the North Bihar Plains, Eastern India." In *Geohazards in Engineering Geology*, Geological Society, London, Engineering Geology Special Publication 15: 35–40. <https://doi.org/10.1144/GSL.ENG.1998.015.01.04>.
- Sinha, Rajiv, and P. F. Friend. 1994. "River Systems and Their Sediment Flux, Indo-Gangetic Plains, Northern Bihar, India." *Sedimentology* 41: 825–845.
- Sinha, Rajiv, P. F. Friend, and V. R. Switsur. 1996. "Radiocarbon Dating and Sedimentation Rates of Holocene Alluvial Sediments of Northern Bihar Plains, India." *Geological Magazine* 133(1): 85–90.
- Sinha, Rajiv, Vikrant Jain, G. V. Prasad Babu, and S. Ghosh. 2005. "Geomorphic Characterization and Diversity of the Fluvial Systems of the Gangetic Plains." *Geomorphology* 70(3–4): 207–225.
- Thakur, Pramod Kumar, and Naresh Kazi Tamrakar. 2002. "Geomorphology, Sedimentology, and Hazard Assessment of the Sapta Koshi Alluvial Fan in Eastern Nepal." *Journal of Nepal Geological Society* 27: 39–51. <https://doi.org/10.3126/jngs.v27i0.31974>.
- Allchin, F. Raymond, with contributions from George Erdosy et al. 1995. *The Archaeology of Early Historic South Asia: The Emergence of Cities and States*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Archaeological Survey of India, Patna Circle. "Monuments Details: Relic Stupa, Harpur Basant (Vaishali), and Raja Vishal ka Garh." Government of India, Ministry of Culture. Accessed 2026.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1974–75. *Indian Archaeology 1974–75 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See "Excavation at Champa, District Bhagalpur."
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1975–76. *Indian Archaeology 1975–76 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See "Excavation at Champa, District Bhagalpur."
- Kanungo, Alok Kumar, Chinmay Kulkarni, Varad Ingle, and Oishi Roy. 2021. "Northern Black Polished Ware in Indian Archaeology: A Study of Spatial and Chronological Distribution." In *Encyclopedia of Global Archaeology*. Cham: Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-51726-1_3555-1.
- Kumar, Vinay. 2022. "Human Settlement and Urbanization in the Middle Ganga Plain: An Overview." *Abhidha Journal of Art, Archaeology and Cultural Heritage* 2(2): 94–106.
- Roy, T. N. 1983. *The Ganges Civilization: A Critical Archaeological Study of the Painted Grey Ware and Northern Black Polished Ware Periods of the Ganga Plains of India*. New Delhi: Ramanand Vidya Bhawan.
- Sawant, Reshma, and Gurudas Shete. 2016. "A Review of Early Historic Urbanization in India." In *A Companion to South Asia in the Past*, edited by Gwen Robbins Schug and Subhash R. Walimbe. Wiley-Blackwell. <https://doi.org/10.1002/9781119055280.ch20>.
- Sharma, R. S. 2007. *India's Ancient Past*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press. See especially the discussion of state structure, technology and the NBPW phase in the age of the Buddha.
- Singh, Santosh Kumar. 2010. *Urbanisation of the Middle Ganga Plain: An Archaeological Perspective*. Delhi: Rishi Publication.
- Singh, V., and M. R. Singh. 2019. "Steelmaking in India — New Evidence from Microscopic and Archaeometallurgical Analysis from Middle Ganga Plain, Balirajgarh." *Journal of Microscopy* 276(3): 128–135. <https://doi.org/10.1111/jmi.12846>.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1970–71, 1971–72, 1972–73, 1974–75 and 1975–76. *Indian Archaeology — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See the excavation reports for Champa, District Bhagalpur.
- Bhikkhu Bodhi, trans. 2012. *The Numerical Discourses of the Buddha: A Translation of the Aṅguttara Nikāya*. Boston: Wisdom Publications. See especially AN 7.21 on the Vajjian conditions of non-decline.
- Chakravarti, Uma. 1987. *The Social Dimensions of Early Buddhism*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Horner, I. B., trans. 1952. *The Book of the Discipline (Vinaya-Piṭaka)*, Vol. V: Cūlavagga. London: Pali Text Society.
- Mishra, Yogendra. 1962. *An Early History of Vaiśālī: From the Earliest Times to the Fall of the Vajjian Republic, circa 484 B.C.* Delhi, Patna and Varanasi: Motilal Banarsidass.
- Olivelle, Patrick, trans. 1999. *The Dharmasūtras: The Law Codes of Ancient India*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Olivelle, Patrick, ed. 2019. *Gṛhastha: The Householder in Ancient Indian Religious Culture*. New York: Oxford University Press.

- Roy, Kumkum. 2010. *The Power of Gender and the Gender of Power: Explorations in Early Indian History*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Thapar, Romila. 1999. *From Lineage to State: Social Formations in the Mid-First Millennium B.C. in the Ganga Valley*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Walsh, Maurice, trans. 1995. *The Long Discourses of the Buddha: A Translation of the Dīgha Nikāya*. Boston: Wisdom Publications. See especially DN 16, the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta.
- Aktor, Mikael. 2017. "Social Classes: varṇa." In Patrick Olivelle and Donald R. Davis, eds., *The Oxford History of Hinduism: Hindu Law: A New History of Dharmaśāstra*, 60–77. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Chakrabarti, Dilip K. 2009. *India: An Archaeological History—Palaeolithic Beginnings to Early Historic Foundations*. 2nd ed. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Chakravarti, Uma. 2007. *Everyday Lives, Everyday Histories: Beyond the Kings and Brahmanas of 'Ancient' India*. New Delhi: Tulika Books.
- Collett, Alice. 2016. *Lives of Early Buddhist Nuns: Biographies as History*. Oxford University Press.
- Fick, Richard. 1920. *The Social Organization in North-East India in Buddha's Time*. Translated by Shishir Kumar Maitra. Calcutta: University of Calcutta.
- Sharma, R. S. 1983. *Material Culture and Social Formations in Ancient India*. New Delhi: Macmillan.
- Sharma, R. S. 1990. *Śūdras in Ancient India: A Social History of the Lower Order Down to Circa A.D. 600*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.
- Thapar, Romila. 1999. *From Lineage to State: Social Formations of the Mid-First Millennium B.C. in the Ganga Valley*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Collett, Alice, ed. 2013. *Women in Early Indian Buddhism: Comparative Textual Studies*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Collett, Alice. 2016. *Lives of Early Buddhist Nuns: Biographies as History*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Dundas, Paul. 2002. *The Jains*. 2nd ed. London and New York: Routledge.
- Hallisey, Charles, trans. 2015. *Therīgāthā: Poems of the First Buddhist Women*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
- Jaini, Padmanabh S. 1991. *Gender and Salvation: Jaina Debates on the Spiritual Liberation of Women*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Salgado, Nirmala S. 2013. *Buddhist Nuns and Gendered Practice: In Search of the Female Renunciant*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Bhattacharya, Sibesh. 1978. "Land, Soil, Rainfall, Irrigation—Some Aspects of the Backdrop of Agrarian Life in the Arthaśāstra of Kautilya." *The Indian Economic and Social History Review* 15 (2): 211–219.
- Olivelle, Patrick, trans. 2013. *King, Governance, and Law in Ancient India: Kautilya's Arthashastra*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Sinha, B. P., and Sita Ram Roy. 1969. *Vaiśālī Excavations, 1958–1962*. Patna: Directorate of Archaeology and Museums, Bihar.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1993–94. *Indian Archaeology 1993–94 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See "Excavation at Panda, District Samastipur, North Bihar."
- Chakrabarti, Dilip K. 2009. *India: An Archaeological History: Palaeolithic Beginnings to Early Historic Foundations*. 2nd ed. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Kanungo, Alok Kumar. 2004. *Glass Beads in Ancient India: An Ethnoarchaeological Approach*. Oxford: BAR International Series 1242.
- Kanungo, Alok Kumar, ed. 2021. *Ancient Glass of South Asia: Archaeology, Ethnography and Global Connections*. Singapore: Springer.
- Kenoyer, Jonathan Mark, Massimo Vidale, and Kuldeep Kumar Bhan. 1991. "Contemporary Stone Beadmaking in Khambhat, India: Patterns of Craft Specialization and Organization of Production as Reflected in the Archaeological Record." *World Archaeology* 23 (1): 44–63.
- Singh, Purushottam, and Ashok Kumar Singh. 2004. *The Archaeology of Middle Ganga Plain: New Perspectives: Excavations at Agiabir*. Shimla: Indian Institute of Advanced Study.
- Chakravarti, Ranabir, ed. 2001. *Trade in Early India*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Chakravarti, Ranabir. 2020. *Trade and Traders in Early Indian Society*. 3rd rev. and enl. ed. London and New York: Routledge.
- Liu, Xinru. 2022. *Early Buddhist Society: The World of Gautama Buddha*. Albany: State University of New York Press.
- Ray, Himanshu Prabha. 1986. *Monastery and Guild: Commerce under the Sātavāhanas*. Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Ray, Himanshu Prabha. 2003. *The Archaeology of Seafaring in Ancient South Asia*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

- Singh, Upinder. 2008. *A History of Ancient and Early Medieval India: From the Stone Age to the 12th Century*. Delhi: Pearson Longman.
- Horner, I. B., trans. 1938–1966. *The Book of the Discipline (Vinaya-Piṭaka)*. 6 vols. London: Pali Text Society.
- Jaini, Padmanabh S. 1979. *The Jaina Path of Purification*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- UNESCO World Heritage Centre. 2010. “Silk Road Sites in India,” Tentative List, component property: Ruins of Ancient Vaishali. Paris: UNESCO World Heritage Centre.
- Beal, Samuel, trans. 1884. *Si-Yu-Ki: Buddhist Records of the Western World*. 2 vols. London: Trübner.
- Malalasekera, G. P. 1937–1938. *Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names*. 2 vols. London: John Murray.
- Prasad, Ram Chandra. 1987. *Archaeology of Champā and Vikramaśilā*. Delhi: Ramanand Vidya Bhawan.
- Agrawal, Bhanu, and Subas Rai. 1994. *Indian Punch-marked Coins*. New Delhi: Kanishka Publishers, Distributors.
- Allan, John. 1936. *Catalogue of the Coins of Ancient India. A Catalogue of the Indian Coins in the British Museum*, vol. 7. London: Trustees of the British Museum.
- Allchin, F. Raymond, ed., with contributions by George Erdosy et al. 1995. *The Archaeology of Early Historic South Asia: The Emergence of Cities and States*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Chakravarti, Ranabir. 2021. *Trade and Traders in Early Indian Society*. 3rd rev. and enl. ed. London and New York: Routledge.
- Cribb, Joe. 2005. *The Indian Coinage Tradition: Origins, Continuity and Change*. Nashik: Indian Institute of Research in Numismatic Studies.
- Gupta, P. L., and T. R. Hardaker. 2014. *Indian Silver Punch-Marked Coins: Magadha-Maurya Karshapana Series*. Revised ed. Mumbai: Indian Institute of Research in Numismatic Studies.
- Kosambi, D. D. 1981. *Indian Numismatics*. New Delhi: Orient Longman.
- Mukherjee, B. N., and P. K. D. Lee. 1988. *Technology of Indian Coinage*. Calcutta: Indian Museum.
- Rajgor, Dilip. 2001. *Punch-Marked Coins of Early Historic India*. California: Reesha Books International.
- Sircar, D. C. 1968. *Studies in Indian Coins*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.
- Walsh, E. H. C. 1919. “An Examination of Fifty-eight Silver Punch-marked Coins Found at Gorho Ghat.” *Journal of the Bihar and Orissa Research Society*, pp. 463–494.
- Walsh, E. H. C. 1924. “Indian Punch-marked Coins.” *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 56, Supplement S1: 175–189.
- Deo, Shantaram Bhalchandra. 1956. *History of Jaina Monachism from Inscriptions and Literature*. Poona: Deccan College Postgraduate and Research Institute.
- Jain, Kailash Chand. 1974. *Lord Mahāvīra and His Times*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.
- Lüders, Heinrich. 1961. *Mathurā Inscriptions: Unpublished Papers*. Edited by Klaus L. Janert. Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht.
- Quintanilla, Sonya Rhie. 2007. *History of Early Stone Sculpture at Mathura, ca. 150 BCE–100 CE*. Leiden and Boston: Brill.
- Schopen, Gregory. 1997. *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawai‘i Press.
- Schopen, Gregory. 2004. *Buddhist Monks and Business Matters: Still More Papers on Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawai‘i Press.
- Schopen, Gregory. 2014. “On the Legal and Economic Activities of Buddhist Nuns: Two Examples from Early India.” In *Buddhism and Law: An Introduction*, edited by Rebecca Redwood French and Mark A. Nathan. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Wijayaratna, Mohan. 1990. *Buddhist Monastic Life: According to the Texts of the Theravada Tradition*. Translated by Claude Grangier and Steven Collins. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Altekar, A. S. 1934. *Education in Ancient India*. Benares: Nand Kishore & Bros. Later revised editions and reprints.
- Bodhi, Bhikkhu, trans. 2000. *The Connected Discourses of the Buddha: A Translation of the Saṃyutta Nikāya*. 2 vols. Boston: Wisdom Publications.
- Brereton, Joel P., and Stephanie W. Jamison. 2020. *The Rīgveda: A Guide*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Bronkhorst, Johannes. 2007. *Greater Magadha: Studies in the Culture of Early India*. Leiden and Boston: Brill.
- Bronkhorst, Johannes. 2011. *Buddhism in the Shadow of Brahmanism*. Leiden and Boston: Brill.
- Falk, Harry. 1993. *Schrift im alten Indien: Ein Forschungsbericht mit Anmerkungen*. Tübingen: Gunter Narr Verlag.
- Gombrich, Richard F. 2009. *What the Buddha Thought*. London: Equinox.
- Olivelle, Patrick, trans. 1998. *The Early Upaniṣads: Annotated Text and Translation*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Prebish, Charles S. 1974. “A Review of Scholarship on the Buddhist Councils.” *Journal of Asian Studies* 33 (2): 239–254.
- Rhys Davids, T. W., trans. 1899–1921. *Dialogues of the Buddha*. 3 vols. London: Oxford University Press for the Pali Text Society.

- Salomon, Richard. 1998. *Indian Epigraphy: A Guide to the Study of Inscriptions in Sanskrit, Prakrit, and the Other Indo-Aryan Languages*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Scharfe, Hartmut. 2002. *Education in Ancient India*. Leiden and Boston: Brill.
- Staal, Frits. 1986. *The Fidelity of Oral Tradition and the Origins of Science*. Amsterdam: North-Holland.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1959. *Indian Archaeology 1958–59—A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1971. *Indian Archaeology 1970–71—A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1973. *Indian Archaeology 1972–73—A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1976. *Indian Archaeology 1974–75—A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India.
- Fish, Jessica. 2014. *Health Care in Indian Buddhism: Representations of Monks and Medicine in Indian Monastic Law Codes*. MA thesis, McMaster University.
- Hultzsch, E., ed. and trans. 1925. *Inscriptions of Asoka. Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum*, vol. 1. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Meulenbeld, G. Jan. 1999–2002. *A History of Indian Medical Literature*. 5 parts. Groningen: Egbert Forsten.
- Salguero, C. Pierce, ed. 2017. *Buddhism and Medicine: An Anthology of Premodern Sources*. New York: Columbia University Press.
- Sik, Hin-tak. 2016. *Bhesajakkhandhaka (Chapter on Medicine): A Study of Ancient Indian Medicine in Early Buddhist Literature*. PhD thesis, University of Hong Kong.
- Stuart, Mari Jyväsjärvi. 2014. “Mendicants and Medicine: Āyurveda in Jain Monastic Texts.” *History of Science in South Asia* 2: 63–100.
- Wujastyk, Dominik, trans. and intro. 2003. *The Roots of Ayurveda: Selections from Sanskrit Medical Writings*. London: Penguin Classics.
- Zysk, Kenneth G. 1982. “Studies in Traditional Indian Medicine in the Pāli Canon: Jīvaka and Āyurveda.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 5: 70–86.
- Zysk, Kenneth G. 1991. *Asceticism and Healing in Ancient India: Medicine in the Buddhist Monastery*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Black, Brian. 2007. *The Character of the Self in Ancient India: Priests, Kings, and Women in the Early Upaniṣads*. Albany: State University of New York Press.
- Coningham, Robin. 2001. “The Archaeology of Buddhism.” In *Archaeology and World Religion*, edited by Timothy Insoll. London: Routledge.
- Eggeling, Julius, trans. 1882–1900. *The Śatapatha-Brāhmaṇa. Sacred Books of the East*, vols. 12, 26, 41, 43 and 44. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Gombrich, Richard F. 1988. *Theravāda Buddhism: A Social History from Ancient Benares to Modern Colombo*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul.
- Lamotte, Étienne. 1988. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Śāka Era*. Translated by Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain-la-Neuve: Institut Orientaliste.
- Samuel, Geoffrey. 2008. *The Origins of Yoga and Tantra: Indic Religions to the Thirteenth Century*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Witzel, Michael. 1995. “Early Sanskritization: Origins and Development of the Kuru State.” *Electronic Journal of Vedic Studies* 1(4): 1–26.
- Wynne, Alexander. 2007. *The Origin of Buddhist Meditation*. London and New York: Routledge.
- Archaeological Survey of India. 1958. *Indian Archaeology 1957–58—A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India.
- Anālayo, Bhikkhu. 2016. *The Foundation History of the Nuns’ Order*. Hamburg Buddhist Studies 6. Bochum and Freiburg: Projekt Verlag.
- Bechert, Heinz, and Richard Gombrich, eds. 1984. *The World of Buddhism: Buddhist Monks and Nuns in Society and Culture*. London: Thames & Hudson.
- Bodhi, Bhikkhu, trans. 2012. *The Numerical Discourses of the Buddha: A Translation of the Aṅguttara Nikāya*. Boston: Wisdom Publications.
- Ñāṇamoli, Bhikkhu, and Bhikkhu Bodhi, trans. 1995. *The Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha: A Translation of the Majjhima Nikāya*. Boston: Wisdom Publications.
- Ray, Reginald A. 1994. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Strong, John S. 2004. *Relics of the Buddha*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Warder, A. K. 2000. *Indian Buddhism*. 3rd ed. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.

- Jacobi, Hermann, trans. 1884. *Jaina Sūtras, Part I: Ācārāṅga Sūtra and Kalpa Sūtra*. Sacred Books of the East 22. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Jacobi, Hermann, trans. 1895. *Jaina Sūtras, Part II: Sūtrakṛtāṅga and Uttarādhyayana*. Sacred Books of the East 45. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Law, Bimala Churn. 1936. *Mahāvīra: His Life and Teachings*. Calcutta: published by the author.
- Schubring, Walther. 1962. *The Doctrine of the Jainas: Described After the Old Sources*. Translated by Wolfgang Beurlen. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.
- Wiley, Kristi L. 2009. *The A to Z of Jainism*. Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press.
- Bhattacharyya, Narendra Nath. 1973. *History of the Śākta Religion*. Calcutta: Firma K. L. Mukhopadhyay; reprinted by Munshiram Manoharlal.
- Davis, Richard H. 1997. *Lives of Indian Images*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Flood, Gavin. 1996. *An Introduction to Hinduism*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Fleet, John Faithfull. 1888. *Inscriptions of the Early Gupta Kings and Their Successors*. *Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum*, Vol. III. Calcutta: Government of India.
- Furui, Ryosuke. 2020. *Land and Society in Early South Asia: Eastern India 400–1250 AD*. New Delhi and London: Routledge.
- Hatley, Shaman. 2010. "Tantric Śaivism in Early Medieval India: Recent Research and Future Directions." *Religion Compass* 4(10): 615–628.
- Huntington, Susan L. 1984. *The "Pāla-Sena" Schools of Sculpture*. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Kinsley, David. 1986. *Hindu Goddesses: Visions of the Divine Feminine in the Hindu Religious Tradition*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Mishra, Vijayakanta. 1978. *Mithila Art and Architecture*. Darbhanga: Mithila Prakasana.
- Prasad, Birendra Nath. 2021. *Archaeology of Religion in South Asia: Buddhist, Brahmanical and Jaina Religious Centres in Bihar and Bengal, c. AD 600–1200*. London and New York: Routledge.
- Sanderson, Alexis. 2009. "The Śaiva Age: The Rise and Dominance of Śaivism during the Early Medieval Period." In *Genesis and Development of Tantrism*, edited by Shingo Einoo, 41–350. Tokyo: Institute of Oriental Culture, University of Tokyo.
- Singh, Diwakar Kumar. 2012. "Piety and Patronage: Exploring the Topography of Shaivism in Early Medieval Bihar (600–1200 A.D.)." *Proceedings of the Indian History Congress* 73: 470–476.
- Willis, Michael. 2009. *The Archaeology of Hindu Ritual: Temples and the Establishment of the Gods*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Burghart, Richard. 1978. "The Disappearance and Reappearance of Janakpur." *Kailash: A Journal of Himalayan Studies* 6(4): 257–284.
- Eck, Diana L. 2012. *India: A Sacred Geography*. New York: Harmony Books.
- Watters, Thomas. 1904–1905. *On Yuan Chwang's Travels in India, 629–645 A.D.* 2 vols. London: Royal Asiatic Society.
- Davis, Coralynn V. 2005. "Listen, Rama's Wife!: Maithil Women's Perspectives and Practices in the Festival of Sāmā Cakevā." *Asian Folklore Studies* 64(1): 1–38.
- Davis, Coralynn V. 2014. *Maithil Women's Tales: Storytelling on the Nepal-India Border*. Urbana: University of Illinois Press.
- Freed, Ruth S., and Stanley A. Freed. 1964. "Calendars, Ceremonies, and Festivals in a North Indian Village: Necessary Calendrical Information for Fieldwork." *Southwestern Journal of Anthropology* 20(1): 67–90.
- Ishii, Hiroshi. 1993. "Seasons, Rituals and Society: The Culture and Society of Mithila, the Parbate Hindus and the Newars as Seen through a Comparison of Their Annual Rites." *Senri Ethnological Studies* 36: 35–84.
- Kane, P. V. 1974. *History of Dharmaśāstra*, Vol. V, Part II, 2nd ed. Poona: Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute.
- Lagadha. 1985. *Vedāṅga Jyotiṣa of Lagadha in Its Rk and Yajus Recensions*, translated and annotated by T. S. Kuppanna Sastry; edited by K. V. Sarma. New Delhi: Indian National Science Academy.
- Pingree, David. 1981. *Jyotiḥśāstra: Astral and Mathematical Literature. A History of Indian Literature*, Vol. VI, Fasc. 4. Wiesbaden: Otto Harrassowitz.
- Pugh, Judy F. 1983. "Into the Almanac: Time, Meaning, and Action in North Indian Society." *Contributions to Indian Sociology* 17(1): 27–49.
- Sewell, Robert, and Śaṅkara Bālakṛṣṇa Dikṣita. 1896. *The Indian Calendar*. London: Swan Sonnenschein & Co.
- Singh, Rana P. B. 2009. "Ethno-geography of the Sun Goddess Festival, Chhatha, in Bhojpur Region, India: From Locality to Universality." *Man in India* 89(1): 103–120.
- Underhill, M. M. 1921. *The Hindu Religious Year*. Calcutta: Association Press; London: Oxford University Press.

- Yano, Michio. 2022. "Calendar, Astrology, and Astronomy." In *The Wiley Blackwell Companion to Hinduism*, edited by Gavin Flood. Hoboken: Wiley-Blackwell.
- Collins, Steven. 1998. *Nirvana and Other Buddhist Felicities: Utopias of the Pali Imaginaire*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Dundas, Paul. 2002. *The Jains*. 2nd ed. London: Routledge.
- Eggeling, Julius, trans. 1900. *The Śatapatha-Brāhmaṇa*, Part V. *Sacred Books of the East*, Vol. 44. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Jamison, Stephanie W., and Joel P. Brereton. 2014. *The Rigveda: The Earliest Religious Poetry of India*. 3 vols. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Kane, P. V. 1930–1962. *History of Dharmaśāstra (Ancient and Mediaeval Religious and Civil Law in India)*. 5 vols. Poona: Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute.
- Michaels, Axel. 2017. "Rites of Passage: Saṃskāra." In *The Oxford History of Hinduism: Hindu Law: A New History of Dharmaśāstra*, edited by Patrick Olivelle and Donald R. Davis, Jr., 86–97. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Oldenberg, Hermann, trans. 1886. *The Gṛhya-Sūtras: Rules of Vedic Domestic Ceremonies*, Part I. *Sacred Books of the East*, Vol. 29. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Pandey, Rajbali. 1969. *Hindu Saṃskāras: Socio-Religious Study of the Hindu Sacraments*. 2nd rev. ed. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.
- Barnett, Lionel D. "The Mungir Plate of Devapāladeva: Samvat 33." *Epigraphia Indica* 18 (1925–26): 304–307.
- Chattopadhyaya, B. D. *The Making of Early Medieval India*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1994; 2nd ed., 2012.
- Datta, Sanjukta. "In the King's Shadow: Petitioner-Donors of Eighth–Ninth Century Pāla Copper Plate Land Grant Charters." *The Indian Economic and Social History Review* 54, no. 4 (2017): 457–476.
- Datta, Sanjukta. "Issuance, Engravers, and Omissions: Aspects of Copper Plate Land Grant Charters of the Pāla Dynasty." 2017.
- DHARMA. "Bangaon Plate of Vīgrahapāla III, Year 17." Digital edition by Ryosuke Furui, DHARMA Bengal Charters.
- DHARMA. "Bhagalpur Plate of Nārāyaṇapāla, Year 17." Digital edition by Ryosuke Furui, DHARMA Bengal Charters.
- DHARMA. "Munger Plate of Devapāla, Year 33." Digital edition by Ryosuke Furui and Arlo Griffiths, DHARMA Bengal Charters.
- DHARMA. "Nalanda Plate of Devapāla, Year 35." Digital edition, DHARMA Bengal Charters.
- DHARMA. "Nandapur Plate of 169 GE." Digital edition, DHARMA Bengal Charters.
- Francis, Emmanuel. "Brahmadeya/Agrahāra." In *The Encyclopedia of Ancient History*. Wiley, 2021.
- Furui, Ryosuke. *Land and Society in Early South Asia: Eastern India 400–1250 AD*. New Delhi: Routledge India, 2020.
- Kielhorn, F. "The Mungir Copper-Plate Grant of Devapāladeva." *Indian Antiquary* 21 (1892): 253–258.
- Majumdar, N. G. "Nandapur Copper-Plate of the Gupta Year 169." *Epigraphia Indica* 23 (1935–36): 52–56.
- Mukhia, Harbans. "Was There Feudalism in Indian History?" *The Journal of Peasant Studies* 8, no. 3 (1981): 273–310.
- Sahai, Bhagwant. *The Inscriptions of Bihar (From Earliest Times to the Middle of the 13th Century)*. Patna: Ramanand Vidya Bhavan, 1983.
- Sastri, Hirananda. *Nālandā and Its Epigraphic Material*. Archaeological Survey of India, 1942.
- Sharma, R. S. *Indian Feudalism, c. A.D. 300–1200*. 2nd ed. Delhi: Macmillan Company of India, 1980.
- Sircar, D. C. "Bangaon Plate of Vīgrahapāla III; Regnal Year 17." *Epigraphia Indica* 29 (1951–52): 48–57.
- Sircar, D. C. "Copper-Plate Grants from Bihar." *Epigraphia Indica* 35 (1962–63): 127–136.
- Sircar, D. C. *Select Inscriptions Bearing on Indian History and Civilization*. Vol. 1. 2nd ed. Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1965.
- Deyell, John S. *Living Without Silver: The Monetary History of Early Medieval North India*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1990.
- Furui, Ryosuke. "Merchant Groups in Early Medieval Bengal: With Special Reference to the Rajbhita Stone Inscription of the Time of Mahipāla I, Year 33." *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 76, no. 3 (2013): 391–412.
- Indian Archaeology—A Review 1971–72. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. Section on excavations at Antichak, District Bhagalpur.
- Indian Archaeology—A Review 1973–74. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. Section on excavations at Antichak, District Bhagalpur.
- Pandey, Akash, Sushmita Sen, and Rahul Maurya. "Mudgagiri, a Pāla 'Jayaskandhāvāra': An Assessment of Recent Sculptural and Inscriptional Findings at Munger, Bihar." *South Asian Studies* 40, no. 2 (2024): 121–143.
- Sharma, R. S. *Urban Decay in India, c. 300–c. 1000*. Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1987.
- Sircar, D. C. *Studies in the Geography of Ancient and Medieval India*. 2nd ed. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1971.
- Sircar, D. C. *Select Inscriptions Bearing on Indian History and Civilization*. Vol. 2. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1983.
- Verma, B. S. *Antichak Excavations—2 (1971–1981)*. *Memoirs of the Archaeological Survey of India*, No. 102. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India.

- Furui, Ryosuke. "Agrarian Society and Social Groups in Early Medieval Bengal from a Study of Inscriptions." In *Inscriptions and Agrarian Issues in Indian History: Essays in Memory of D. C. Sircar*, edited by B. D. Chattopadhyaya, Suchandra Ghosh and Bishnupriya Basak, 168–188. Kolkata: The Asiatic Society, 2017.
- Furui, Ryosuke. "Early Medieval Bengal." *Oxford Research Encyclopedia of Asian History*. Oxford University Press, 2022.
- Maitreya, Akshayakumāra. *Gauḍalekhamālā*. Rajshahi: Varendra Research Society, 1912.
- Mitra, Rājendralāla. "On the Pāla and Sena Rājas of Bengal." *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal* 47, part 1 (1878): 384–410.
- Sharma, R. S. *Indian Feudalism*, c. 300–1200. 2nd ed. Delhi: Macmillan India, 1980.
- Bayly, Susan. *Caste, Society and Politics in India from the Eighteenth Century to the Modern Age*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999.
- Bhattacharya, Jogendra Nath. *Hindu Castes and Sects: An Exposition of the Origin of the Hindu Caste System and the Bearing of the Sects towards Each Other and towards Other Religious Systems*. Calcutta: Thacker, Spink and Co., 1896.
- Chattopadhyaya, B. D. *The Making of Early Medieval India*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Furui, Ryosuke. "Brāhmaṇas in Early Medieval Bengal: Construction of their Identity, Networks and Authority." *Indian Historical Review* 40, no. 2 (2013): 223–248.
- Furui, Ryosuke. "Finding Tensions in the Social Order: A Reading of the Varṇasaṃkara Section of the Bṛhaddharmapurāṇa." In *Revisiting Early India: Essays in Honour of D. C. Sircar*, edited by Suchandra Ghosh et al., 203–218. Kolkata: R. N. Bhattacharya, 2013.
- Furui, Ryosuke. *Land and Society in Early South Asia: Eastern India 400–1250 AD*. London and New York: Routledge, 2020.
- Hultzsch, E. "The Bhagalpur Plate of Narayanapala." *Indian Antiquary* 15 (1886): 304–310.
- Kane, P. V. *History of Dharmasāstra*. 5 vols. Poona: Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, 1930–1962.
- Olivelle, Patrick. *Manu's Code of Law: A Critical Edition and Translation of the Mānava-Dharmaśāstra*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2005.
- Pandey, Anshuman. "Recasting the Brahmin in Medieval Mithila: Origins of Caste Identity among the Maithil Brahmins of North Bihar." PhD diss., University of Michigan, 2014.
- Sharma, R. S. *Śūdras in Ancient India: A Social History of the Lower Order Down to Circa A.D. 600*. 3rd ed. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1990.
- Sircar, D. C. *Select Inscriptions Bearing on Indian History and Civilization*. Vol. 2: From the Sixth to the Eighteenth Century A.D. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1983.
- Sharma, R. S. *Indian Feudalism*, c. 300–1200. 3rd ed. Delhi: Macmillan India, 2005.
- Yājñavalkya Smṛti. See standard Sanskrit editions and P. V. Kane's *History of Dharmasāstra* for legal-historical discussion.
- Videha. "Parallel History / Panji materials and notes on the chronology of the Śrōtriya sub-caste." Videha eJournal, accessed for this volume's Panji-based chronological framework.
- FamilySearch. "India, Bihar, Koilukh, Pandit Kirtinand Jha, Maithil Brahmin Genealogical Records, 1750–1990." Digital image collection, FamilySearch Historical Records.
- Jha, Ugra Nath. *The Genealogies and Genealogists of Mithila: A Study of the Panji and the Panjikars*. Varanasi: Kishor Vidya Niketan, 1980.
- Jha, Makhan. *Anthropology of Ancient Hindu Kingdoms: A Study in Civilizational Perspective*. New Delhi: M.D. Publications, 1997.
- Thakur, Nisha. "The Brahmins of Mithila before the Pañji Prabandha." *Research Journal of Humanities and Social Sciences* 10, no. 1 (2019). DOI: 10.5958/2321-5828.2019.00043.3.
- Thakur, Gajendra. *Decoding the Panji of Mithila, Volume I: Surprising Insights from India and Nepal's Oldest Social Network*. Videha eJournal, 2026.
- Thakur, Gajendra. *Decoding the Panji of Mithila, Volume II: Genealogical Mapping, Mūla, Dūṣaṇ, and the Videha Panji Search System*. 2026.
- Verma, Binod Bihari. *Maithili Karna Kayasthak Panjik Sarvekshan (A Survey of the Panji of the Karna Kayasthas of Mithila)*. 1973.
- Videha. "Panji materials, digitised genealogical records, and notes on the chronology of the Śrōtriya sub-caste." Videha eJournal and Videha Pothi collections.
- Banerjee, Gooroodass. *The Hindu Law of Marriage and Stridhan*. Calcutta: Thacker, Spink & Co., 1879.
- Caṇḍeśvara Ṭhakkura. *Vivādaratnākara*. Edited by Dīnanātha Vidyālaṅkāra. Bibliotheca Indica, Work No. 103. Calcutta: Asiatic Society of Bengal, 1885–1887.
- Caṇḍeśvara Ṭhakkura. *Vivada-Ratnakara: A Treatise on the Hindu Law, Including the Portion Dealing with the Law of Partition and Inheritance*. Translated by Golāpchandra Sārkār Śāstrī and Digamvar Chattopādhyāya. Calcutta: Bose Brothers, 1899.

- Derrett, J. Duncan M. *Hindu Law, Past and Present*. Calcutta: A. Mukherjee, 1957.
- Jha, Pankaj. *A Political History of Literature: Vidyapati and the Fifteenth Century*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2019.
- Jolly, Julius. *Outlines of an History of the Hindu Law of Partition, Inheritance, and Adoption, as Contained in the Original Sanskrit Treatises*. Calcutta: Thacker, Spink and Company, 1885.
- Kane, P. V. *History of Dharmaśāstra: Ancient and Mediaeval Religious and Civil Law in India*. Vol. 3. Poona: Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, 1946.
- Mitter, Dwarka Nath. *The Position of Women in Hindu Law*. Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1913.
- Sinha, Chandreshwar Prasad Narayan. *Mithila Under the Karnatas, c. 1097–1325 A.D.* Janaki Prakashan, 1979.
- Vācaspatiśiṣṛa. *Vivada Chintamani: A Succinct Commentary on the Hindoo Law Prevalent in Mithila*. Translated by Prossunno Coomarr Tagore. Calcutta: A. D’Rozario at the Albion Press, 1863.
- Caṇḍeśvara Ṭhakkura. *Rājanīratnākara*. Edited by Kashi Prasad Jayaswal. Patna: Bihar and Orissa Research Society, 1924; 2nd ed., 1936.
- Choudhary, Radhakrishna. *Select Inscriptions of Bihar*. Patna: Smt. Shanti Devi, 1958.
- Cimino, Rosa Maria. “Simraongarh: The Forgotten City and Its Art.” *Contributions to Nepalese Studies* 13, no. 3 (1986): 277–288.
- Jha, Arun Kumar. *Some Aspects of the Cultural History of Mithila: The Janaka Dynasty, the Karnātas & the Oinwāras*. Patna: K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, 2005.
- Jha, Hetukar. “The Oinwaras in the Mughal Period.” *Journal of the Bihar Research Society* 55 (1969).
- Jyotiśvara Ṭhakkura. *Varṇaratnākara*.
- Prasad, Birendra Nath. *Archaeology of Religion in South Asia: Buddhist, Brahmanical and Jaina Religious Centres in Bihar and Bengal, c. AD 600–1200*. London: Routledge, 2021.
- Regmi, D. R. *Medieval Nepal*. 2 vols. Calcutta: Firma K. L. Mukhopadhyay, 1965–1966.
- Sinha, Chandreshwar Prasad Narayan. “Some Aspects of Social and Economic Life of Mithila (c. A.D. 1097 to 1325).” *Proceedings of the Indian History Congress* 33 (1971): 118–125.
- Sinha, Chandreshwar Prasad Narayan. *Mithila Under the Karnatas, c. 1097–1325 A.D.* Patna: Janaki Prakashan, 1979.
- Thakur, Upendra. *History of Mithila (Circa 3000 B.C.–1556 A.D.)*. Darbhanga: Mithila Institute, 1956.
- Videha research project. *Panji materials and source-critical notes on medieval genealogical institutions and the later emergence of the Śrotiya sub-caste*
- Ahmad, Qeyamuddin. *Corpus of Arabic & Persian Inscriptions of Bihar (A.H. 640–1200)*. Patna: K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, 1973.
- Choudhary, Radhakrishna. *History of Muslim Rule in Tirhut, 1206–1765 A.D.* Varanasi: Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series Office, 1970.
- Eaton, Richard M. *The Rise of Islam and the Bengal Frontier, 1204–1760*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1993.
- Isami, ‘Abd al-Malik. *Futūḥ-us-Salāṭīn*.
- Jackson, Paul. *The Way of a Sufi: Sharafuddin Maneri*. Delhi: Idarah-i Adabiyat-i Delli, 1987.
- Jackson, Paul, trans. *The Hundred Letters of Sharafuddin Maneri*. London: S.P.C.K., 1980.
- Jackson, Peter. *The Delhi Sultanate: A Political and Military History*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999; paperback ed. 2003.
- Kumar, Sunil. *The Emergence of the Delhi Sultanate, 1192–1286*. Delhi: Permanent Black, 2007.
- Nizami, K. A. *Some Aspects of Religion and Politics in India During the Thirteenth Century*. Bombay: Asia Publishing House, 1961.
- Vidyapati Ṭhakkura. *Kīrtitātā and Likhanāvalī*.
- Ahmad, Qeyamuddin. “A New Inscription of Sikandar Shah of Bengal from Bihar.” *Epigraphia Indica, Arabic and Persian Supplement* 1963 (published 1965): 1–4.
- Ahmad, Qeyamuddin. “Some Unpublished Pre-Mughal Inscriptions from Bihar.” *Epigraphia Indica, Arabic and Persian Supplement* 1968 (published 1969): 11–16.
- Alam, Muzaffar. *The Languages of Political Islam in India, c. 1200–1800*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2004.
- Alam, Muzaffar. “The Pursuit of Persian: Language in Mughal Politics.” *Modern Asian Studies* 32, no. 2 (1998): 317–349.
- Askari, Syed Hasan. “Bihar.” *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, Vol. IV, Fasc. 3, 252–253.
- Eaton, Richard M. *India in the Persianate Age, 1000–1765*. London: Allen Lane/Penguin, 2019.
- Eaton, Richard M. “The Persian Cosmopolis.” *Oxford Research Encyclopedia of Asian History*. Oxford University Press, 2021.
- Jha, Pankaj Kumar. “Beyond the Local and the Universal: Exclusionary Strategies of Expansive Literary Cultures in Fifteenth Century Mithila.” *Indian Economic & Social History Review* 51, no. 1 (2014): 1–40.

- O'Hanlon, Rosalind, Anand Venkatkrishnan, and Richard David Williams. "Scribal Service People in Motion: Culture, Power and the Politics of Mobility in India's Long Eighteenth Century, c. 1680–1820." *Indian Economic & Social History Review* 57, no. 4 (2020): 443–460.
- Bloch, Jules. *Indo-Aryan: From the Vedas to Modern Times*. Paris: Adrien-Maisonneuve, 1965 (English translation of L'Indo-Aryen).
- Cardona, George, and Dhanesh Jain, eds. *The Indo-Aryan Languages*. London: Routledge, 2003.
- Chatterji, Suniti Kumar. *The Origin and Development of the Bengali Language*. 2 vols. Calcutta: Calcutta University Press, 1926.
- Das, Basudev Lal. "Maithili in Medieval Nepal: A Historical Appraisal." *Academic Voices: A Multidisciplinary Journal* 3, no. 1 (2013): 1–3.
- Grierson, George A. *An Introduction to the Maithili Language of North Bihar: Containing a Grammar, Chrestomathy and Vocabulary*. Calcutta, 1881–1882.
- Grierson, George A. *Linguistic Survey of India*. Vol. V, Part II: Specimens of the Bihari and Oriya Languages. Calcutta: Office of the Superintendent of Government Printing, 1903.
- Jha, Subhadra. *The Formation of the Maithili Language*. London: Luzac & Company, 1958.
- Jyotirīśvara. *Varṇa-ratnākara of Jyotirīśvara Kaviśekharaścārya*. Edited by Suniti Kumar Chatterji and Babua Misra. *Bibliotheca Indica* 262. Calcutta: Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal, 1940; later reprint, New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi, 1998.
- Masica, Colin P. *The Indo-Aryan Languages*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1991.
- Pollock, Sheldon. *The Language of the Gods in the World of Men: Sanskrit, Culture, and Power in Premodern India*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2006.
- Rai, Alok. *Hindi Nationalism*. Hyderabad: Orient Longman, 2001.
- Sen, Sukumar. *A Comparative Grammar of Middle Indo-Aryan*. Calcutta: Linguistic Society of India, 1960.
- Shapiro, Michael C. "Hindi." In *The Indo-Aryan Languages*, edited by George Cardona and Dhanesh Jain. London: Routledge, 2003.
- Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura. *Kīrtilatā, Kīrtipatākā and Likhanāvalī*.
- Yadav, Ramawatar. *A Reference Grammar of Maithili*. Berlin/New York: Mouton de Gruyter, 1996.
- Chatterji, Suniti Kumar, and Babua Misra, eds. *Varṇa-ratnākara of Jyotirīśvara-Kaviśekharaścārya*. *Bibliotheca Indica* 262. Calcutta: Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal, 1940; reprint, New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi, 1998.
- Choudhary, Radhakrishna. *A Survey of Maithili Literature*. Patna: Shanti Devi / Anamika Prakashan, 1976.
- Davis, Carol C. *Theatre of Nepal and the People Who Make It*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2019.
- Grierson, George A. "The Pārijāta Haraṇa of Umāpati Upādhyāya." *Journal of the Bihar and Orissa Research Society*, 1917.
- Misra, Jayakānta. *History of Maithili Literature*. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi, 1976.
- Pollock, Sheldon. "The Cosmopolitan Vernacular." *Journal of Asian Studies* 57, no. 1 (1998): 6–37.
- Sinha, Chandreshwar Prasad Narayan. *Mithila Under the Karnatas, c. 1097–1325 A.D.* Delhi/Patna: Janaki Prakashan, 1979.
- Umāpati Upādhyāya. *Pārijāta Haraṇa Nāṭaka*. Patna: Maithilī Akādamī, 1984.
- Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura. *Likhanāvalī, Kīrtilatā, Kīrtipatākā and Puruṣaparīkṣā*.
- Coomaraswamy, Ananda K., and Arun Sen, trans. *Vidyāpati Padāvalī*. New Delhi: Indira Gandhi National Centre for the Arts, 1994.
- Choudhary, Radhakrishna. *Mithilā in the Age of Vidyāpati*. *Chaukhambha Oriental Research Studies* 1. Varanasi: Chaukhambha Orientalia, 1976.
- Diamond, Christopher L. "The Strange Afterlife of Vidyāpati Ṭhākura (ca. 1350–1450 CE): Anthological Manuscripts, Linguistic Confusion, and Religious Appropriation." *Manuscript Studies* 4, no. 1 (2019): 72–92. DOI: 10.1353/mns.2019.0000.
- Jha, Subhadra, ed. *The Songs of Vidyāpati*. Banaras: Motilal Banarsidass, 1954.
- Shahidullah, Muhammad. "The Date of Vidyāpati." *The Indian Historical Quarterly* 20, no. 3 (September 1944): 211–217.
- Sircar, D. C., and B. Ch. Chhabra, eds. *Epigraphia Indica*, vol. 32. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India, 1957–58. Relevant discussion of Oiniwar/Dronwara chronology and dated manuscript evidence.
- Vidyāpati Ṭhakkura. *Kīrtilatā, Kīrtipatākā, Puruṣaparīkṣā, Likhanāvalī and Gorakṣavijaya*.
- Vidyāpati Padāvalī. Manuscript and printed traditions, including the Nepal corpus edited and discussed by Subhadra Jha.
- Choudhary, Janaki Prasad. "Mithilaksharak Itihasikata." In *Maithili Nibandh Samkalan*, edited by N. K. Vikal. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi, 2014.
- Jha, Mithilesh Kumar. *Language Politics and Public Sphere in North India: Making of the Maithili Movement*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2018. See especially the note on Mithilakshar/Tirhuta and the expansion of Devanagari print.
- Jha, Subhadra, ed. *The Songs of Vidyāpati*. Banaras: Motilal Banarsidass, 1954. Important for description and editorial use of the Nepal manuscript written in the Maithili/Tirhuta script.

- Kumar, Lalit. "Caste, Script and Language: The Curious Case of Maithili Print." *Studies in Indian Politics* 12, no. 1 (2026). First published online 30 May 2025. DOI: 10.1177/23938617251337694.
- Pandey, Anshuman. "Proposal to Encode the Tirhuta Script in ISO/IEC 10646." ISO/IEC JTC1/SC2/WG2 N4035 / Unicode L2 submission, 5 May 2011.
- Pandey, Anshuman. "Request to Allocate the Maithili Script." Unicode L2/06-226, 2006.
- Salomon, Richard. *Indian Epigraphy: A Guide to the Study of Inscriptions in Sanskrit, Prakrit, and the Other Indo-Aryan Languages*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1998.
- The Unicode Consortium. *The Unicode Standard, Version 17.0*. Mountain View, CA: Unicode Consortium, 2025, sec. 15.11 "Tirhuta," and block U+11480–U+114DF.
- Government of India, Ministry of Human Resource Development. "MHRD Takes Immediate Steps to Implement Recommendations of Committee for the Promotion and Protection of Maithili Language and Its Scripts." Press Information Bureau, 11 February 2019.
- Davis, Coralynn V. *Maithil Women's Tales: Storytelling on the Nepal–India Border*. Urbana: University of Illinois Press, 2014.
- Finnegan, Ruth. *Oral Poetry: Its Nature, Significance and Social Context*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1977; revised editions thereafter.
- Grierson, George A. "The Birth of Lorik." *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies* 5, no. 3 (1929): 591–599.
- Jha, Makhan. *Folk-lore, Magic and Legends of Mithila*. Delhi: Jyoti, 1979.
- Pathak, Dev Nath. *Living & Dying: Meanings in Maithili Folklore*. Delhi: Primus Books, 2018.
- Pathak, Dev Nath. "Margin(al) Maithili: Cultural Politics of Engendered Folk in Mithila." In *Gender in Modern India: History, Culture, Marginality*, edited by Lata Singh and Shashank Shekhar Sinha. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2024, 263–282.
- Rakesh, Ram Dayal. *Folk Culture of Nepal: An Analytical Study*. Jaipur: Nirala Publications, 1990.
- Rakesh, Ram Dayal. *Folk Tales from Mithila*. Jaipur: Nirala Publications, 1996.
- Ramanujan, A. K. *Folktales from India: A Selection of Oral Tales from Twenty-Two Languages*. New York: Pantheon, 1991.
- Sen Gupta, Sankar, and K. D. Upadhyaya, eds. *Studies in Indian Folk Culture: Folk-songs, Folk-arts & Folk-literature*. Calcutta: Indian Publications, 1964.
- Vansina, Jan. *Oral Tradition as History*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press, 1985.
- Vidyarthi, L. P., Ganesh Chaubey, and Sankar Sen Gupta, eds. *Bihar in Folklore Study: An Anthology*. Calcutta: Indian Publications, 1971.
- Sahapedia. "Folklore of Raja Salhesh in Bihar" and associated documentation of Raja Salhesh shrines, performance, painting and oral traditions.
- Amarendra. *Angika Sahitya ro Itihas (Gadya-Bhag)*. Hyderabad: Hindi Akademi, 1998. A modern regional history of Angika prose and literary formation
- Chaudhary, Abhaykant, and Naresh Pandey Chakor. *Angika ka Sahitya ka Itihas*. Patna: Shekhar Prakashan, 1977. Bibliographic details are also recorded in the Government of Bihar Rajbhasha Department book list.
- Dasgupta, Dipankar. "Ghatoali and Mal-Paharia: A Note on a Contrastive Study." In *Linguistic Studies in Juang, Kharia Thar, Lodha Mal-Pahariya, Ghatoali Pahariya*, 215–237. Calcutta: Anthropological Survey of India, Government of India, 1978.
- Hammarström, Harald, Robert Forkel, Martin Haspelmath, and Sebastian Bank, eds. *Glottolog 5.3*. Entry "Angika" (Glottocode ang1238; ISO 639-3 anp).
- Kumar, Shantanu, and Narayan Kumar Choudhary. "Maithili Text to Speech Corpus." In *LDC-IL Corpus Insights*, edited by Rejitha K. S. and Narayan Kumar Choudhary, 88–98. Mysuru: Central Institute of Indian Languages, 2025. The chapter explicitly maps modern Angika to Grierson's Chhika-Chhiki within a modern Maithili-variety framework.
- Kumar, Shantanu, Dinesh Mishra, Saurabh Varik, Stephen Fernandes, Nithin S., Roopashri M. R., Narayan Kumar Choudhary, and Shailendra Mohan. *Maithili Text to Speech Corpus*. Mysuru: Central Institute of Indian Languages, 2025. ISBN 978-93-48633-36-1.
- Paudyal, Netra P., and John Peterson. "How One Language Became Four: The Impact of Different Contact-Scenarios between 'Sadani' and the Tribal Languages of Jharkhand." *Journal of South Asian Languages and Linguistics* 7, no. 2 (2020): 327–358.
- Sinha, Rajiva Kumar, and Om Prakash Pandey. *Manjusha Art: Reflections in Folk Lore, Trade and Regional History*. 2nd ed. Delhi: Shivalik Prakashan, 2012.
- Bihar Museum. "Bihulla Vishari Folklore (Manjusha)." Collection documentation, Patna.
- Government of India, Office of the Development Commissioner (Handicrafts). "Manjusha Art." Craft documentation.
- Government of Bihar, Rajbhasha Department. Book List, entry for *Angika ka Sahitya ka Itihas* by Abhaykant Chaudhary and Naresh Pandey Chakor (Shekhar Prakashan, Patna, 1977).

- Central Bureau of Statistics, Government of Nepal. National Population and Housing Census 2021: Language in Nepal. Kathmandu, 2025.
- Kashyap, Abhishek Kumar. "The Bajjika Language and Speech Community." *International Journal of the Sociology of Language* 2014, no. 227 (2014): 209–224. <https://doi.org/10.1515/ijsl-2014-0001>.
- Kashyap, Abhishek Kumar. "The Pragmatic Principles of Agreement in Bajjika Verbs." *Journal of Pragmatics* 44, no. 13 (2012): 1868–1887. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pragma.2012.08.005>.
- Kumari, Arti. Grammatical Sketch of Bajjika Language. MA thesis, Jawaharlal Nehru University, New Delhi, 2003.
- Prasad, Surendra Mohan. *Bajjika Vyakaran*. Patna: Akhil Bharatiya Bajjika Sahitya Sammelan, 1998.
- Arun, Awadheshwar, and R. N. Sharma. *Bharati Bajjika Hindi Kosh*. New Delhi: Konark Prakashan, 2008.
- Kumar, Ranjan. "Structural Changes as a Result of Dialect Contact." *International Journal for Multidisciplinary Research* 6, no. 6 (2024). <https://doi.org/10.36948/ijfmr.2024.v06i06.34352>.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011, Table C-16: Population by Mother Tongue, Bihar. New Delhi: Ministry of Home Affairs.
- Regmi, Dan Raj. "Exploring Relationships among the Major Indo-Aryan Languages of Tarai in Nepal." *Nepalese Linguistics* 30 (2015): 122–131.
- Bhattacharya, Dinesh Chandra. *History of Navya-Nyāya in Mithilā*. Darbhanga: Mithila Institute of Post-Graduate Studies and Research in Sanskrit Learning, 1958.
- Fleming, Christopher T. *Ownership and Inheritance in Sanskrit Jurisprudence*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2020. Especially the chapter on Navya-Nyāya and the Maithila and Gauḍa schools of jurisprudence.
- Matilal, Bimal Krishna. *The Navya-Nyāya Doctrine of Negation: The Semantics and Ontology of Negative Statements in Navya-Nyāya Philosophy*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1968.
- Matilal, Bimal Krishna. *Perception: An Essay on Classical Indian Theories of Knowledge*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1986.
- Phillips, Stephen H., trans. *Gaṅgeśa's Jewel of Reflection on the Truth about Epistemology (Tattvacintāmaṇi)*. 3 vols. London: Bloomsbury Academic, 2020.
- Potter, Karl H., ed. *Indian Metaphysics and Epistemology: The Tradition of Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika up to Gaṅgeśa*. *Encyclopedia of Indian Philosophies*, vol. 2. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1977.
- Potter, Karl H., and Sibajiban Bhattacharyya, eds. *Indian Philosophical Analysis: Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika from Gaṅgeśa to Raghunātha Śiromaṇi*. *Encyclopedia of Indian Philosophies*, vol. 6. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1993.
- Vidyabhusana, Satis Chandra. *A History of Indian Logic: Ancient, Mediaeval and Modern Schools*. Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1921; later reprints.
- Archaeological Survey of India. *Indian Archaeology 1962–63 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See the report on excavation at Balirajgarh for fortification sections and construction phases.
- Archaeological Survey of India, Patna Circle. *Centrally Protected Monuments/Sites — Patna Circle*. Entries
- Chakrabarti, Dilip K. *Archaeological Geography of the Ganga Plain: The Lower and the Middle Ganga*. New Delhi: Permanent Black, 2001. Especially the Kosi–Bagmati–Gandak plains and middle/lower Ganga settlement geography.
- Darnal, Prakash. "A Review of Simarongarh's History on Its Nexus Areas with References of Archaeological Evidences." *Dhaulagiri Journal of Sociology and Anthropology* 12 (2018).
- Jha, Avinash Kumar. "Some Aspects of the Archaeological Sites of Medieval Mithila." *Proceedings of the Indian History Congress* 63 (2002).
- Mishra, Vijayakanta. *Mithila Art and Architecture*. Mithila Prakasana, 1978.
- Sinha, B. P., and Sita Ram Roy. *Vaisali Excavations, 1958–1962*. Patna: Directorate of Archaeology and Museums, Bihar, 1969.
- Sinha, C. P. N. "Some Aspects of Social and Economic Life of Mithila (c. A.D. 1097 to 1325)." *Proceedings of the Indian History Congress* 33 (1971), 118–125.
- Sinha, C. P. N. "Some Aspects of Cultural Life of Mithila under the Karnatas (c. 1097 to 1325 A.D.)." *Proceedings of the Indian History Congress* 34 (1973).
- Vidale, Massimo, and Francesca Lugli, with an introduction by Giovanni Verardi. "Archaeological Investigations at Simraongarh, February–March 1991." *Ancient Nepal* 126–127 (October 1991–January 1992).
- UNESCO World Heritage Centre. "Silk Road Sites in India," tentative-list component description for the Remains of Vikramshila Ancient University.
- National Culture Fund, Government of India. *Conservation and Development of the Excavated Remains at Vikramshila, Bihar*.
- Archaeological Survey of India. *Annual Report 1913–14*. Calcutta: Superintendent Government Printing, 1917. See the Basarh/Vaishali excavations and catalogue of terracotta figurines and applied jewellery.

- Archaeological Survey of India. *Indian Archaeology 1961–62 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India. See the Vaishali excavation report for beads, bangles, stone and terracotta objects, and other small finds.
- Alkazi, Roshen. *Ancient Indian Costume*. New Delhi: Art Heritage, 1983.
- Asher, Frederick M. *The Art of Eastern India, 300–800*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1980.
- Chandra, Moti. *Costumes, Textiles, Cosmetics and Coiffure in Ancient and Mediaeval India*. Delhi: Oriental Publishers on behalf of the Indian Archaeological Society, 1973.
- Choudhary, Radhakrishna. *Mithila in the Age of Vidyapati*. Varanasi: Chaukhambha Orientalia, 1976.
- Gurumaita, Bhuvanesvara Prasada. *Varṇaratnākaram Citrīta Pūrvamadyayugīna Sāṃskṛtika Bhārata*. Patna: Maithili Academy, 2007. A study of cultural life represented in Jyotirishvara's Varna-ratnakara.
- Huntington, Susan L. *The "Pala-Sena" Schools of Sculpture*. Leiden: Brill, 1984.
- Hussain, Shahanara. *Everyday Life in the Pala Empire: With Special Reference to Material Remains*. Dacca: Asiatic Society of Pakistan, 1968.
- Acharya, K. T. *Indian Food: A Historical Companion*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Archaeological Survey of India. *Indian Archaeology 1958–59 — A Review*. New Delhi: Archaeological Survey of India.
- Fuller, Dorian Q. "Finding Plant Domestication in the Indian Subcontinent." *Current Anthropology* 52, Supplement 4 (2011): S347–S362.
- Narain, L. A. "Neolithic Settlement at Chirand." *Journal of the Bihar Research Society* 56 (1970): 16–35.
- Nath, Bhola, and M. K. Biswas. "Animal Remains from Chirand, Saran District (Bihar)." *Records of the Zoological Survey of India* 76 (1980): 115–124.
- Saraswat, K. S. "Plant Economy of Early Farming Communities." In *Early Farming Communities of the Kaimur (Excavations at Senuwar)*, edited by B. P. Singh, 416–535. Jaipur: Publication Scheme, 2004.
- Saraswat, K. S. "Agricultural Background of the Early Farming Communities in the Middle Ganga Plain." *Pragdhara* 15 (2005): 145–177.
- Sinha, Harendra Prasad. *Archaeological and Cultural History of North Bihar: With Special Reference to Neolithic-Chirand*. Delhi: Ramanand Vidya Bhawan, 1994.
- Verma, B. S. "Excavations at Chirand: New Light on the Indian Neolithic Culture-Complex." *Puratattva* 4 (1971): 19–23.
- Archer, Mildred. *Indian Popular Painting in the India Office Library*. London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office, 1977.
- Archer, W. G. "Maithil Painting." *Marg* 3, no. 3 (1949): 24–33. Foundational published documentation of Mithila wall painting.
- Baumgarten, Inge. "Sita-Ram's Marriage in the Holy City of Janakpur: The Life and Culture of Maithil Brahman Women in the Eastern Tarai of Nepal." PhD dissertation, Universität Heidelberg, 1997.
- Heinz, Carolyn Brown. "Documenting the Image in Mithila Art." *Visual Anthropology Review* 22, no. 2 (2006): 5–33.
- Jain, Jyotindra. *Ganga Devi: Tradition and Expression in Mithila Painting*. Ahmedabad: Mapin Publishing in association with the Mithila Museum, 1997.
- Rekha, Neel. "From Marriage Genealogies to Archer's Photos." In *India's Mithila Painting*, edited by Paula Richman and David L. Szanton, 25–40. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2025.
- Richman, Paula, and David L. Szanton, eds. *India's Mithila Painting*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2025.
- Szanton, David L. "The Politics of Mithila Painting." In *India's Mithila Painting*, edited by Paula Richman and David L. Szanton, 80–102. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2025.
- Szanton, David L., and Malini Bakshi. *Mithila Painting: The Evolution of an Art Form*. Berkeley: Ethnic Arts Foundation, 2007.
- Jain, Jyotindra. "Ganga Devi." In *Other Masters: Five Contemporary Folk and Tribal Artists of India*. New Delhi: Crafts Museum and Handicrafts and Handlooms Exports Corporation of India, 1998.
- Black, Tracey M. "Transforming Craft into Art." In *India's Mithila Painting*, edited by Paula Richman and David L. Szanton, 41–60. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2025.
- British Museum. Collection records for Madhubani paintings dated 1965–1972, including works associated with Alok Hastkala Kendra and acquisitions through the Bihar State Emporium.
- Fleury, Hélène, and Damien Ehrhardt. "The Transnational Field of Mithila Paintings in the 1970s." In *India's Mithila Painting*, edited by Paula Richman and David L. Szanton, 272–287. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2025.
- Government of India. *Gazette of India*, Padma Awards notification, 1975.
- Government of India. *Gazette of India*, Padma Awards notification, 1981.
- Jain, Jyotindra. *Other Masters: Five Contemporary Folk and Tribal Artists of India*. New Delhi: Crafts Museum and Handicrafts and Handlooms Exports Corporation of India, 1998.

- Lazarowicz, Katie. "Exhibiting Mithila Art in Its Cultural Context." In *India's Mithila Painting*, edited by Paula Richman and David L. Szanton, 261–271. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2025.
- Mishra, Kailash K. "Mithila Paintings: Past, Present and Future." Indira Gandhi National Centre for the Arts.
- Singh, Mani Shekhar. "Color, Rhythm, and Repetition in Paintings by Dalit Women of Mithila." In *India's Mithila Painting*, edited by Paula Richman and David L. Szanton, 160–179. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2025.
- Vequaud, Yves. *The Art of Mithila: Ceremonial Paintings from an Ancient Kingdom*. London: Thames and Hudson, 1977.
- Bharata. *Natya-sastra*.
- Grierson, George A. *Bihar Peasant Life*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Press, 1885.
- Jha, Ramanath. *Vidyapati*. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi, 1972. Important for the conventional single-author Vidyapati model and the documented reception of songs in Mithila
- Mishra, Jayakanta. *History of Maithili Literature*. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi, 1976.
- Mishra, Kailash K. "Classification and Structure of Maithili Folksongs." *Vihangama*, 2001; Indira Gandhi National Centre for the Arts.
- Nanyadeva. *Sarasvati-hrdayalankara / Bharata-bhasya*. Surviving musicological material attributed to the Karnata ruler Nanyadeva
- Roy Choudhary, P. C. *Bihar District Gazetteers: Bhagalpur*. Patna: Superintendent, Secretariat Press, 1962.
- Sahitya Akademi. *Vidyapati Geet Sanchaya*. Compiled and edited by Ramdeo Jha and Mohan Bhardwaj. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi, reprint 2018.
- Vijay, Anand. "Bihula Vishahari Lok Natak Mein Aharya Ka Mahatva." *Antar-rashtriya Hindi evam Samajik Vigyan Shodh Patrika* 13, no. 3 (2025).
- Widdess, D. R. "Tala and Melody in Early Indian Music: A Study of Nanyadeva's Panika Songs with Musical Notation." *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 44, no. 3 (1981): 481–508.
- Bharata. *Nāṭyaśāstra*.
- Brinkhaus, Horst, and W. L. Smith. "On the Transition from Bengali to Maithili in the Nepalese Dramas of the 16th and 17th Centuries." In *Maithili Studies: Papers Presented at the Stockholm Conference on Maithili Language and Literature*, 2003.
- Jhā, Śaśināth, ed. 1-Dhūrttasamāgamam—Jyotirīśvaraḥ; 2-Gorakṣavijayam—Vidyāpatiḥ. *Mithilā-paramparāgata-nāṭaka-saṃgrahaḥ* 1. Darbhanga: Kāmeśvarasiṃha Darbhāṅgā Saṃskṛta Viśvavidyālaya, 1983.
- Prakash, Pranav. "A Cowherd's Chapbook: An Inquiry into the Ethics of Literary Historiography." *Asian Ethnology* 85, no. 1 (2026).
- Thakur, Ripunjay Kumar. "The Dhūrttasamāgama of Jyotirīśvara: A Manuscriptological Exploration of Linguistic Diversity, Nāṭya Tradition and Judiciary System." Ministry of Culture research abstract, 2025.
- Umāpati Upādhyāya. *Pārijāta haraṇa nāṭaka*. Patna: Maithili Akādāmī, 1984. Modern Maithili edition
- Yadav, Ramawatar. "Medieval Maithili Stagecraft in the Nepalmandala: The Bhaktapur School." *Contributions to Nepalese Studies* 38, no. 2 (2011): 171–190.
- Byrne, Joseph. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Bhagalpur*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1911.
- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Darbhanga*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1907.
- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Saran*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1908.
- Roy Choudhury, P. C. *Bihar District Gazetteers: Saran*. Patna: Superintendent, Secretariat Press, 1960.
- Roy Choudhury, P. C. *Bihar District Gazetteers: Bhagalpur*. Patna: Superintendent, Secretariat Press, 1962.
- Singh, Sugandh. "Changes and Continuities in Traditional Matrimonial Alliances in Mithila: The Case of Saurath Sabha." *National Geographical Journal of India* 67, no. 3 (2021): 334–344.
- Yang, Anand A. *Bazaar India: Markets, Society, and the Colonial State in Gangetic Bihar*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998.
- Department of Tourism, Government of Bihar, and Saran District Administration. *Official Sonapur Mela documentation*.
- Bhagalpur District Administration. *Official Shravani Mela documentation for Sultanganj*.
- Nepal Tourism Board. *Official documentation on Janakpur and Vivah Panchami*.
- Abu'l-Fazl 'Allami. *The A'in-i Akbari*. Vol. II. Translated by H. S. Jarrett. Second edition, corrected and further annotated by Jadunath Sarkar. Calcutta: Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal / Asiatic Society, 1949.
- Ansari, Tahir Hussain. *Mughal Administration and the Zamindars of Bihar*. New Delhi: Manohar / Routledge, 2019.
- Habib, Irfan. *The Agrarian System of Mughal India, 1556–1707*. 3rd ed. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2013. Principal analytical framework for agricultural production, peasant society, zamindars, land revenue, jagir assignments, jama and hasil, and the distribution of agrarian surplus.
- Habib, Irfan. *An Atlas of the Mughal Empire: Political and Economic Maps with Detailed Notes, Bibliography and Index*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1982.

- Moosvi, Shireen. *The Economy of the Mughal Empire c. 1595: A Statistical Study*. 2nd rev. ed. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2015.
- Raychaudhuri, Tapan, and Irfan Habib, eds. *The Cambridge Economic History of India*. Vol. 1, c.1200–c.1750. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1982.
- Thakur, Upendra. *History of Mithila*. Darbhanga: Mithila Institute, 1956.
- Thakur, Upendra. *Aspects of Society and Economy of Medieval Mithila*. Delhi: Commonwealth Publishers, 1989.
- Bernier, François. *Travels in the Mogul Empire, A.D. 1656–1668*. Translated by Archibald Constable; revised by Vincent A. Smith. London: Oxford University Press, 1916.
- Buchanan-Hamilton, Francis. *An Account of the Kingdom of Nepal*. Edinburgh: Archibald Constable, 1819.
- Chatterjee, Kumkum. *Merchants, Politics and Society in Early Modern India: Bihar, 1733–1820*. Leiden: Brill, 1996.
- Foster, William, ed. *Early Travels in India, 1583–1619*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1921.
- Habib, Irfan. 'The Commercial Economy of the Mughal Empire.' In Tapan Raychaudhuri and Irfan Habib, eds., *The Cambridge Economic History of India*, Vol. 1, c.1200–c.1750. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1982.
- Khan, Ahmad Raza. 'A Brief Survey of Trade and Commerce in Bihar During the Seventeenth Century.' *Proceedings of the Indian History Congress* 39, Vol. I (1978): 473–480. Key regional synthesis for Patna's role as an inland emporium, road and river routes, Nepal links, commodities, sarais and seventeenth-century Bihar trade.
- Kirkpatrick, William. *An Account of the Kingdom of Nepaul*. London: William Miller, 1811.
- Mundy, Peter. *The Travels of Peter Mundy in Europe and Asia, 1608–1667*. Vol. II: *Travels in Asia, 1628–1634*. Edited by Richard Carnac Temple. London: Hakluyt Society, 1914.
- Prakash, Om. *The Dutch East India Company and the Economy of Bengal, 1630–1720*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1985.
- Roy, Tirthankar. 'Where Is Bengal? Situating an Indian Region in the Early Modern World Economy.' *Past & Present* 213, no. 1 (2011): 115–146.
- Tavernier, Jean-Baptiste. *Travels in India*. Translated by V. Ball; edited by William Crooke. 2 vols. London: Oxford University Press, 1925.
- Yang, Anand A. *Bazaar India: Markets, Society, and the Colonial State in Bihar*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998.
- Ascoli, F. D. *Early Revenue History of Bengal and the Fifth Report, 1812*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1917.
- Byrne, J. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Bhagalpur*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1911.
- Datta, K. K., ed. *The Comprehensive History of Bihar*. Vol. III, Part II. Patna: Kashi Prasad Jayaswal Research Institute, 1976.
- Guha, Ranajit. *A Rule of Property for Bengal: An Essay on the Idea of Permanent Settlement*. Durham: Duke University Press, 1996; originally published 1963.
- House of Commons. *Fifth Report from the Select Committee on the Affairs of the East India Company: Revenue and Judicial Departments*. London, 1812.
- Khan, Abdul Majed. *The Transition in Bengal, 1756–75: A Study of Saiyid Muhammad Reza Khan*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1969; digital reissue 2009.
- Marshall, P. J. *Bengal: The British Bridgehead: Eastern India 1740–1828*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1987.
- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Monghyr*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1909.
- Ray, Ratnalekha. *Change in Bengal Agrarian Society, c.1760–1850*. New Delhi: Manohar, 1979.
- Yang, Anand A. *The Limited Raj: Agrarian Relations in Colonial India, Saran District, 1793–1920*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1989.
- British Library, India Office Records, IOR/H/351, *Revenues of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa*.
- Bose, Sugata. *Agrarian Bengal: Economy, Social Structure and Politics, 1919–1947*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986.
- McLane, John R. *Land and Local Kingship in Eighteenth-Century Bengal*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1993.
- Robb, Peter. "Law and Agrarian Society in India: The Case of Bihar and the Nineteenth-Century Tenancy Debate." *Modern Asian Studies* 22, no. 2 (1988).
- Singh, Kabindra Prasad. *Land Revenue Administration in Bihar, 1793–1858: Some Aspects*. Calcutta: Minerva, 1987.
- Government of India. *Bengal Permanent Settlement Regulation I of 1793; Bengal Inheritance Regulation XI of 1793; Bengal Patni Taluks Regulation VIII of 1819; Bengal Rent Act X of 1859; Bengal Land Revenue Sales Act XI of 1859*.
- Bengal (India). Indigo Commission. *Report of the Indigo Commission Appointed Under Act XI of 1860, with Minutes of Evidence and Appendix*. Calcutta, 1860.
- Buchanan, D. H. *The Development of Capitalistic Enterprise in India*. New York: Macmillan, 1934.
- Hunter, W. W. *A Statistical Account of Bengal, Vol. XIII: Tirhut and Champaran*. London: Trübner & Co., 1877.

- Hunter, W. W. *A Statistical Account of Bengal*, Vol. XIV: Bhagalpur and Santal Parganas. London: Trübner & Co., 1877.
- Mishra, Girish. "Indigo Plantation and the Agrarian Relations in Champaran during the Nineteenth Century." *Indian Economic and Social History Review* 3, no. 4 (1966): 321–356.
- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Champaran*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1907.
- Pouchepadass, Jacques. *Land, Power and Market: A Bihar District under Colonial Rule, 1860–1947*. New Delhi: Sage, 2000.
- Shukla, Prabhat Kumar. *Indigo and the Raj: Peasant Protests in Bihar, 1780–1917*. Delhi: Pragati Publications, 1993.
- Wilson, Minden. *History of Behar Indigo Factories; Reminiscences of Bihar; Tirhoot and Its Inhabitants of the Past*. Calcutta, 1908.
- Watt, George. *The Commercial Products of India*. London: John Murray, 1908.
- Kumar, Prakash. "Plantation Science: Improving Natural Indigo in Colonial India, 1860–1913." *British Journal for the History of Science* 40, no. 4 (2007): 537–565.
- Bihar and Orissa. *The Champaran Agrarian Act, 1918 (Bihar and Orissa Act I of 1918)*. Patna: Bihar and Orissa Government Press, 1918.
- Champaran Agrarian Committee. *Report of the Champaran Agrarian Committee*. Government of Bihar and Orissa, 1917.
- Singh, Narayan Prasad. *The East India Company's Monopoly Industries in Bihar with Particular Reference to Opium and Saltpetre, 1773–1833*. Muzaffarpur: Sarvodaya Vangmaya, 1980.
- Richards, John F. "The Indian Empire and Peasant Production of Opium in the Nineteenth Century." *Modern Asian Studies* 15, no. 1 (1981): 59–82.
- Richards, John F. "The Opium Industry in British India." *Indian Economic and Social History Review* 39, no. 2–3 (2002): 149–180.
- Richards, John F. "Opium and the British Indian Empire: The Royal Commission of 1895." *Modern Asian Studies* 36, no. 2 (2002): 375–420.
- Markovits, Claude. "The Political Economy of Opium Smuggling in Early Nineteenth Century India: Leakage or Resistance?" *Modern Asian Studies* 43, no. 1 (2009): 89–111.
- Farooqui, Amar. *Smuggling as Subversion: Colonialism, Indian Merchants, and the Politics of Opium, 1790–1843*. Lanham: Lexington Books, 2005.
- Trocki, Carl A. *Opium, Empire and the Global Political Economy: A Study of the Asian Opium Trade, 1750–1950*. London: Routledge, 1999.
- Royal Commission on Opium. *First Report of the Royal Commission on Opium, with Minutes of Evidence and Appendices*. London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office, 1894.
- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Muzaffarpur*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1907.
- Hunter, W. W. *A Statistical Account of Bengal*, Vol. XIV: Districts of Bhagalpur and the Santal Parganas. London: Trübner & Co., 1877.
- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bihar and Orissa District Gazetteers: Monghyr*. Patna: Superintendent, Government Printing, Bihar and Orissa, revised ed., 1926.
- Roy Choudhury, Pranab Chandra. *Bihar District Gazetteers: Bhagalpur*. Patna: Superintendent, Secretariat Press, Bihar, 1962.
- British Library, India Office and Visual Arts collections. *Patna opium factory and godown records, including Sita Ram views, 1814–1815, and Shiva Lal opium-manufacture drawings, 1857*.
- Sherwill, Walter Stanhope. *Series of lithographs on opium production at the Patna factory, 1851*. Wellcome Collection.
- Bhattacharya, S. "Contract, Work, and Resistance: Boatmen in Early Colonial Eastern India, 1760s–1850s." *International Review of Social History* 60, no. 1 (2015): 11–43.
- Imperial Gazetteer of India. *Entries on Bengal opium, Muzaffarpur and Bhagalpur, second-edition series*. London: Trübner & Co., nineteenth century.
- Sur, Nikhil. "The Bihar Famine of 1770." *Indian Economic & Social History Review* 13, no. 4 (1976): 519–543.
- Hunter, W. W. *The Annals of Rural Bengal*. London: Smith, Elder & Co., 1868.
- Campbell, George, comp. *Extracts from Records in the India Office Relating to Famines in India, 1769–1788*. London, 1868.
- Temple, Richard. *Special Narratives of the Drought in Bengal and Behar, 1873–74, Together with Minutes and Correspondence*. Calcutta: Office of the Superintendent of Government Printing, 1874.
- India. *Famine Commission (1878–1880). Report of the Indian Famine Commission*. London: G. E. Eyre and W. Spottiswoode for H.M.S.O., 1880.
- India. *Famine Inquiry Commission. Report of the Indian Famine Commission, 1898*. London: H.M. Stationery Office, 1898.
- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bihar and Orissa District Gazetteers: Monghyr*. Patna: Government Printing, revised ed.
- Bhatia, B. M. *Famines in India: A Study in Some Aspects of the Economic History of India, 1860–1965*. Bombay: Asia Publishing House, 1967.

- Hall-Matthews, David. "Historical Roots of Famine Relief Paradigms: Ideas on Dependency and Free Trade in India in the 1870s." *Disasters* 20, no. 3 (1996): 216–230.
- Hall-Matthews, David. "Inaccurate Conceptions: Disputed Measures of Nutritional Needs and Famine Deaths in Colonial India." *Modern Asian Studies* 42, no. 6 (2008): 1189–1212.
- Dyson, Tim. "On the Demography of South Asian Famines: Part I." *Population Studies* 45, no. 1 (1991): 5–25.
- Sen, Amartya. *Poverty and Famines: An Essay on Entitlement and Deprivation*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1981.
- Davis, Mike. *Late Victorian Holocausts: El Niño Famines and the Making of the Third World*. London: Verso, 2001.
- Government of India. *Imperial Gazetteer of India, Provincial and District Series: Bengal and Bihar entries on famine, agriculture and communications*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, early twentieth century.
- Buchanan-Hamilton, Francis. *An Account of the District of Purnea in 1809–10*. Edited from the Buchanan manuscripts. Patna: Bihar and Orissa Research Society, 1928.
- Buchanan-Hamilton, Francis. *An Account of the District of Bhagalpur in 1810–11*. Edited by A. Banerji-Sastri. Patna: Bihar and Orissa Research Society, 1939.
- Buchanan-Hamilton, Francis. *An Account of the Districts of Bihar and Patna in 1811–1812*. 2 vols. Patna: Bihar and Orissa Research Society, 1934.
- Hunter, W. W. *A Statistical Account of Bengal*. Vol. XI, including Patna; and Vol. XIII, Tirhut and Champaran. London: Trübner & Co., 1877.
- Beverley, H. *Report on the Census of Bengal, 1872*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Press, 1872.
- Bourdillon, J. A. *Report on the Census of Bengal, 1881*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Press, 1883.
- Risley, H. H. *The Tribes and Castes of Bengal*. 4 vols.: *Anthropometric Data and Ethnographic Glossary*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Press, 1891–92.
- Risley, H. H. *The People of India*. Calcutta: Thacker, Spink & Co., 1908; later edition edited by William Crooke, 1915.
- Grierson, George A. *Linguistic Survey of India*. Vol. V, Part II: *Indo-Aryan Languages, Eastern Group: Specimens of the Bihārī and Oriyā Languages*. Calcutta: Government of India, 1903.
- Cohn, Bernard S. *Colonialism and Its Forms of Knowledge: The British in India*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1996.
- Dirks, Nicholas B. *Castes of Mind: Colonialism and the Making of Modern India*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 2001.
- Peabody, Norbert. "Cents, Sense, Census: Human Inventories in Late Precolonial and Early Colonial India." *Comparative Studies in Society and History* 43, no. 4 (2001): 819–850.
- Adam, William. *Adam's Reports on Vernacular Education in Bengal and Behar, Submitted to Government in 1835, 1836 and 1838*. With an introduction by J. Long. Calcutta: Home Secretariat Press, 1868.
- Adam, William. *Reports on the State of Education in Bengal, 1835 and 1838, Including Some Account of the State of Education in Bihar*. Edited by Anathnath Basu. Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1941.
- Macaulay, Thomas Babington. *Minutes on Education in India, Written in the Years 1835, 1836 and 1837*. Collected by H. Woodrow. Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press, 1862.
- Council of Education, Bengal. *General Report on Public Instruction in the Lower Provinces of the Bengal Presidency, 1850–51*. Calcutta: Bengal Military Orphan Press, 1852.
- East India Company, Court of Directors. *Despatch No. 49 of 19 July 1854 on Education in India ("Wood's Despatch")*. London and Calcutta, 1854.
- India. Education Commission. *Report of the Indian Education Commission, Appointed by the Resolution of the Government of India dated 3 February 1882*. Calcutta: Superintendent of Government Printing, 1883.
- Patna College. *Institutional History and Profile, documenting the 1835 Patna High School genealogy and the establishment of Patna College in 1863*.
- T.N.B. College, Bhagalpur. *Institutional History and Profile, documenting its foundation in 1883*.
- Patna University. *History of the Patna University (1917), institutional historical account*.
- Nurullah, Syed, and J. P. Naik. *A History of Education in India during the British Period*. Bombay: Macmillan, 1943; later editions.
- Basu, Aparna. *The Growth of Education and Political Development in India, 1898–1920*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1974.
- Kumar, Krishna. *Political Agenda of Education: A Study of Colonialist and Nationalist Ideas*. New Delhi: Sage, 1991.
- Viswanathan, Gauri. *Masks of Conquest: Literary Study and British Rule in India*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1989.
- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Darbhanga*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1907.
- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Muzaffarpur*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1907.
- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Monghyr*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1909.
- India. *The Press and Registration of Books Act, 1867 (Act XXV of 1867), with subsequent amendments*.

- India. Vernacular Press Act, 1878, and repeal under Lord Ripon's government in 1882.
- India. Indian Press Act, 1910.
- Pandey, S. N. "Role of the Press in Bihar Politics during 19th Century." *Proceedings of the Indian History Congress* 38 (1977): 508–516.
- Stark, Ulrike. *An Empire of Books: The Naval Kishore Press and the Diffusion of the Printed Word in Colonial India*. Ranikhet: Permanent Black, 2007.
- Ghosh, Anindita. *Power in Print: Popular Publishing and the Politics of Language and Culture in a Colonial Society, 1778–1905*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2006.
- Orsini, Francesca. *The Hindi Public Sphere, 1920–1940: Language and Literature in the Age of Nationalism*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2002.
- Naregal, Veena. *Language Politics, Elites and the Public Sphere: Western India under Colonialism*. New Delhi: Permanent Black, 2001.
- Gupta, Abhijit, and Swapan Chakravorty, eds. *Print Areas: Book History in India*. New Delhi: Permanent Black, 2004.
- Jha, Mithilesh Kumar. "Maithili in the Digital Space." *Seminar* 742 (2021).
- Mishra, Jayakant. *A History of Maithili Literature*. 2 vols. Allahabad: Tirabhukti Publications, 1949–50.
- Mithila Mihir. Early twentieth-century issues and later retrospective references; start year treated cautiously because secondary sources vary between 1908 and 1909.
- Government of India, Railway Department. *Administration Report on the Railways in India for the Calendar Year 1910*. London: His Majesty's Stationery Office, 1911.
- Hurd II, John. 'Railways and the Expansion of Markets in India, 1861–1921.' *Explorations in Economic History* 12, no. 3 (1975): 263–288.
- Andrabi, Tahir, and Michael Kuehlwein. 'Railways and Price Convergence in British India.' *Journal of Economic History* 70, no. 2 (2010): 351–377.
- Donaldson, Dave. 'Railroads of the Raj: Estimating the Impact of Transportation Infrastructure.' *American Economic Review* 108, nos. 4–5 (2018): 899–934.
- Bogart, Dan, and Latika Chaudhary. 'Railways in Colonial India: An Economic Achievement?' Working paper, 2012.
- Bogart, Dan, Latika Chaudhary, and Alfonso Herranz-Loncán. 'The Growth Contribution of Colonial Indian Railways in Comparative Perspective.' *Economic History Review* 77, no. 4 (2024): 1509–1534.
- Kerr, Ian J., ed. *Railways in Modern India*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Derbyshire, I. D. 'Economic Change and the Railways in North India, 1860–1914.' *Modern Asian Studies* 21, no. 3 (1987): 521–545.
- Gait, E. A. *Census of India, 1901. Vol. VI: Lower Provinces of Bengal and Their Feudatories. Part I: The Report*. Calcutta: Office of the Superintendent of Government Printing, 1902.
- O'Malley, L. S. *Census of India, 1911. Vol. V: Bengal, Bihar and Orissa and Sikkim. Part I: Report*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1913.
- India. *Report of the Assam Labour Enquiry Committee, 1906*. Calcutta: Government of India, 1906.
- Yang, Anand A. 'Peasants on the Move: A Study of Internal Migration in India.' *Journal of Interdisciplinary History* 10, no. 1 (1979): 37–58.
- Das Gupta, Ranajit. 'Factory Labour in Eastern India: Sources of Supply, 1855–1946.' *Indian Economic and Social History Review* 13, no. 3 (1976): 277–330.
- Roy, Tirthankar. 'Sardars, Jobbers, Kanganies: The Labour Contractor and Indian Economic History.' *Modern Asian Studies* 42, no. 5 (2008): 971–998.
- Sharma, Jayeeta. "'Lazy" Natives, Coolie Labour, and the Assam Tea Industry.' *Modern Asian Studies* 43, no. 6 (2009): 1287–1324.
- Sen, Samita. 'Commercial Recruiting and Informal Intermediation: Debate over the Sardari System in Assam Tea Plantations, 1860–1900.' *Modern Asian Studies* 44, special issue 1 (2010): 3–28.
- Sen, Samita. "'Without His Consent?": Marriage and Women's Migration in Colonial India.' *International Labor and Working-Class History* 65 (2004): 77–104.
- Sen, Samita. 'Unsettling the Household: Act VI (of 1901) and the Regulation of Women Migrants in Colonial Bengal.' *International Review of Social History* 41, no. 2 (1996): 135–156.
- Behal, Rana P. 'Coolie Drivers or Benevolent Paternalists? British Tea Planters in Assam and the Indenture Labour System.' *Modern Asian Studies* 44, special issue 1 (2010): 29–51.
- Behal, Rana P., and Prabhu P. Mohapatra. 'Tea and Money versus Human Life: The Rise and Fall of the Indenture System in the Assam Tea Plantations 1840–1908.' *Journal of Peasant Studies* 19, nos. 3–4 (1992): 142–172.

- Jha, Jagdish Chandra. *Aspects of Indentured Inland Emigration to North-East India, 1859–1918*. New Delhi: Indus Publishing, 1996.
- Tinker, Hugh. *A New System of Slavery: The Export of Indian Labour Overseas, 1830–1920*. London: Oxford University Press, 1974.
- Carter, Marina. *Servants, Sirdars and Settlers: Indians in Mauritius, 1834–1874*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1995.
- Mohapatra, Prabhu P. ‘Coolies and Colliers: A Study of the Agrarian Context of Labour Migration from Chota Nagpur, 1880–1920.’ *Studies in History* 1, no. 2 (1985): 247–303.
- India. Census Commissioner. *Census of India, 1921*. Vol. VII: Bihar and Orissa. Part I: Report. Patna: Superintendent, Government Printing, 1923.
- Lacey, W. G. *Census of India, 1931*. Vol. VII: Bihar and Orissa. Part I: Report. Patna: Superintendent, Government Printing, Bihar and Orissa, 1933.
- Government of Bengal, Education Department. ‘Expansion of Female Education (Establishment of Model Primary Schools and High Schools for Girls; Zenana Education of Girls; and Employment of Schoolmasters’ Wives as Mistresses of Girls’ Schools).’ *Proceedings*, 1904. Preserved in Bihar State Archives digitised education records.
- Government of Bengal / Bihar and Orissa, Education Department. *Proceedings on model girls’ primary schools, inspectresses, special primary schools for Muhammadan girls, advisory committees, and girls’ primary and middle-school curricula, 1911–1915*. Bihar State Archives digitised education records.
- Bihar and Orissa (India). Education Department. *The Second Quinquennial Review on the Progress of Education in Bihar and Orissa, 1 April 1917 to 31 March 1922*. Patna: Superintendent, Government Printing, 1922.
- Bihar and Orissa (India). Public Instruction Department. *Report on the Progress of Education in Bihar and Orissa for the Years 1927–28*. Patna: Superintendent, Government Printing, 1928.
- Bihar and Orissa (India). *The Fourth Quinquennial Review of the Progress of Education in Bihar and Orissa, 1 April 1927 to 31 March 1932*. Patna: Superintendent, Government Printing, Bihar and Orissa, 1932.
- Bihar and Orissa (India). *The Bihar and Orissa Primary Education Act, 1919 (Bihar and Orissa Act I of 1919)*. Patna: Government Press, 1919.
- India. *The Hindu Widows’ Remarriage Act, 1856 (Act XV of 1856)*. 25 June 1856.
- India. *Indian Criminal Law Amendment Act, 1891 (Act X of 1891)*, commonly known as the Age of Consent Act. 1891.
- India. *The Child Marriage Restraint Act, 1929 (Act XIX of 1929)*. Enforced from 1930.
- Bihar and Orissa (India). Legislative Department. *The Bihar and Orissa Nurses Registration Act, 1935 (Bihar and Orissa Act I of 1935)*. Patna: Superintendent, Government Printing, Bihar and Orissa, 1935.
- Government of Bihar. *Bihar in 1937–38*. Patna: Superintendent, Government Printing, 1939.
- Calcutta University Commission. *Report of the Calcutta University Commission, 1917–1919*. Vols. II and IV, sections on the education of girls and women and zenana schooling. Calcutta: Superintendent, Government Printing, India, 1919.
- Forbes, Geraldine. *Women in Modern India*. The New Cambridge History of India, IV.2. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996.
- Forbes, Geraldine. *Women in Colonial India: Essays on Politics, Medicine and Historiography*. New Delhi: Chronicle Books, 2005.
- Walsh, Judith E. *Domesticity in Colonial India: What Women Learned When Men Gave Them Advice*. Lanham, MD: Rowman & Littlefield, 2004.
- Sarkar, Tanika. *Hindu Wife, Hindu Nation: Community, Religion, and Cultural Nationalism*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 2001.
- Sen, Samita. *Women and Labour in Late Colonial India: The Bengal Jute Industry*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999.
- Anagol, Padma. *The Emergence of Feminism in India, 1850–1920*. Aldershot: Ashgate, 2005.
- Thapar-Björkert, Suruchi. *Women in the Indian National Movement: Unseen Faces and Unheard Voices, 1930–42*. New Delhi: Sage, 2006.
- Bihar State Archives. *Papers Relating to the Freedom Movement in Bihar, 1942*, including district political reports from Darbhanga and Monghyr.
- Dahal, Peshal; Ghanashyam Bhattarai; Shyam Prasad Dahal; and Kularaj Jnawali. *History of Nepal Customs*. Kathmandu: Department of Customs, Government of Nepal, 2019.
- Government of Nepal, Department of Railways. ‘Introduction / History of Railways in Nepal.’ Official departmental history.
- Hamilton, Francis Buchanan. *An Account of the Kingdom of Nepal, and of the Territories Annexed to this Dominion by the House of Gorkha*. Edinburgh: Archibald Constable, 1819.
- Michael, Bernardo A. *Statemaking and Territory in South Asia: Lessons from the Anglo–Gorkha War (1814–1816)*. London: Anthem Press, 2012.
- Regmi, Mahesh Chandra. *A Study in Nepali Economic History, 1768–1846*. New Delhi: Manjusri Publishing House, 1971.

- Regmi, Mahesh Chandra. *Land Tenure and Taxation in Nepal*. Berkeley: Institute of International Studies, University of California, 1963–1964.
- Sanwal, B. D. *Nepal and the East India Company*. New York: Asia Publishing House, 1965.
- Sinha, Nitin. *Communication and Colonialism in Eastern India: Bihar, 1760s–1880s*. London: Anthem Press, 2012.
- Treaty of Sugauli between the Honourable East India Company and the King of Nepal, concluded 2 December 1815 and ratified 4 March 1816, together with the supplementary restoration arrangement of December 1816.
- United Nations Treaty Series, No. 1302. *Treaty of Peace and Friendship between the Government of India and the Government of Nepal*, signed at Kathmandu, 31 July 1950.
- British Library, Endangered Archives Programme, EAP838, Dirgha Man and Ganesh Man Chitrakar photographic collections.
- Adhikari, Shyamchandra. “Impacts of Religious Tourism in Janakpur.” *Research Nepal Journal of Development Studies* 1, no. 2 (2018): 1–19.
- Buchanan-Hamilton, Francis. *An Account of the Kingdom of Nepal, and of the Territories Annexed to this Dominion by the House of Gorkha*. Edinburgh: Archibald Constable, 1819.
- His Majesty’s Government of Nepal, Solid Waste Management and Resource Mobilisation Centre. *Solid Waste Management in Janakpur Municipality*. Kathmandu, c. 2004–2005; field data collected in 2003.
- Lal, Ajay Chandra. “Augmenting Blue Land Uses: An Adaptation Approach for Climate Change in Urban Areas. A Case Study of Janakpur Municipalities, Nepal.” *Journal of Natural Resources and Development* 6 (2017): 99–107.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. *Urbanization and Development in Nepal*. Kathmandu: National Statistics Office, 2025.
- Nepal Tourism Board. “Janakpur”; “Ponds of Janakpur”; and “Janakpur and Vivah Panchami.” Official destination and heritage pages.
- Sah, Manisha Kumari. *Sequestration of Blue Land: An Urbanization Conflict in the Case of Janakpur Dham Sub-Metropolitan City, Nepal*. M.Sc. thesis, Institute of Engineering, Tribhuvan University, 2023.
- Shah, Ujala. “Assessment of Changes in the Ponds and their Services in Janakpur Sub-Metropolitan City.” *Dinkum Journal of Natural & Scientific Innovations* 4, no. 3 (2025): 181–194.
- UNESCO World Heritage Centre. “Ram Janaki Temple.” Nepal Tentative List, Ref. 5261, submitted by the Department of Archaeology, Government of Nepal, 30 January 2008.
- UNESCO. “Integrated Management Strategies for Ram and Janaki Temple Complexes in Janakpurdham Sacred Sites.” 2025–2026 project documentation.
- Gaige, Frederick H. *Regionalism and National Unity in Nepal*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1975.
- Government of Nepal. *Birta Abolition Act, 2016 B.S. (1959)*. Nepal Law Commission.
- Government of Nepal. *Lands Act, 2021 B.S. (1964)*, as originally enacted and subsequently amended. Nepal Law Commission / FAOLEX English text.
- Hodgson, Brian Houghton Papers, British Library, MSS Eur Hodgson, especially volumes 53 and 104. Inventory maintained by the University of Cambridge.
- Regmi, Mahesh Chandra. *Land Tenure and Taxation in Nepal, Vol. I: The Raikar System*. Berkeley: Institute of International Studies, University of California, 1963.
- Regmi, Mahesh Chandra. *Land Tenure and Taxation in Nepal, Vol. II: The Land Grant System: Birta Tenure*. Berkeley: Institute of International Studies, University of California, 1964.
- Regmi, Mahesh Chandra. *Land Tenure and Taxation in Nepal, Vol. III: The Jagir, Rakam, and Kipat Tenure Systems*. Berkeley: Institute of International Studies, University of California, 1965.
- Regmi, Mahesh Chandra. *Landownership in Nepal*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1976.
- Regmi, Mahesh Chandra. *Thatched Huts and Stucco Palaces: Peasants and Landlords in 19th-Century Nepal*. New Delhi: Vikas, 1978.
- Regmi, Mahesh Chandra. *An Economic History of Nepal, 1846–1901*. Varanasi: Nath Publishing House, 1988.
- Rinck, Jacob. “Failed” Not Futile: Reassessing Nepal’s 1964 Land Reform. *Studies in Nepali History and Society* 30, no. 1 (2025).
- Sugden, Fraser. *Landlordism, Tenants and the Groundwater Sector: Lessons from Tarai-Madhesh, Nepal*. IWMI Research Report 162. Colombo: International Water Management Institute, 2014.
- Sugden, Fraser. *Land, Labour, and Agrarian Change in Nepal’s Tarai-Madhesh*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2025.
- Thapa, Shankar. *Historical Study of Agrarian Relations in Nepal, 1846–1951*. Delhi: Adroit Publishers, 2000.
- Central Bureau of Statistics, Nepal. *Population Census 1971: Population of Nepal*. Kathmandu, 1970s retrospective tables.

- Dhimai, Meghnath, et al. "Malaria Control in Nepal 1963–2012: Challenges on the Path towards Elimination." *Malaria Journal* 13 (2014): 241.
- Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. *Forest Resources of Nepal / FRA 2000 Country Report and Annotated Bibliography on Forest Cover Change*. Rome, 2000.
- Gurung, Harka. *Vignettes of Nepal*. Kathmandu: Sajha Prakashan, 1980.
- Kansakar, Vidya Bir Singh. "Land Settlement Policy as a Population Distribution Strategy in Nepal." In Leszek A. Kosiński and K. Maudood Elahi, eds., *Population Redistribution and Development in South Asia*, 112–122. Dordrecht: D. Reidel, 1985.
- Nepal, His Majesty's Government / USAID. *Studies and programme reports on resettlement in Nepal, including the Rapti Valley Development Project and Nepal Resettlement Company*.
- Pandey, Tulsi Ram. "Mechanisms of Landlessness in Nepal." *Economic Journal of Nepal* 9, no. 4 (1986).
- Shrestha, Sahas Man, and Santosh Mani Nepal. *National Forest Policy Review: Nepal*. FAO regional forestry documentation, 1990s.
- Terrenato, L., et al. "Decreased Malaria Morbidity in the Tharu People Compared to Sympatric Populations in Nepal." *Annals of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology* 82 (1988), and Modiano et al., "Protection against Malaria Morbidity: Near-Fixation of the α -Thalassemia Gene in a Nepalese Population." *American Journal of Human Genetics* 48 (1991): 390–397.
- World Health Organization. *Nepal Malaria Programme Review, 7–16 June 2010*. WHO South-East Asia Regional Office.
- United States Agency for International Development. *Four Decades of Development: The History of U.S. Assistance to Nepal*. Washington, D.C., 1990s.
- Central Bureau of Statistics, Nepal. *Population Monograph of Nepal, migration chapters based on the 1971, 1981 and 1991 censuses*. Kathmandu.
- Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. *FRA 2000: Annotated Bibliography on Forest Cover Change — Nepal*. Rome, 2000.
- Gurung, Harka. *Regional Patterns of Migration in Nepal*. Honolulu: East-West Population Institute, 1989.
- Jnawali, Hari Har. "Population Resettlement in Indigenous and Madhesi Territories: Rise of Autonomy Struggles in Nepal." *Journal of Race, Ethnicity, and Politics* (2026).
- Kansakar, Vidya Bir Singh. "Land Resettlement Policy as a Population Distribution Strategy in Nepal." In Leszek A. Kosiński and K. Maudood Elahi, eds., *Population Redistribution and Development in South Asia*. Dordrecht: Reidel, 1985.
- Shrestha, Nanda R. *Landlessness and Migration in Nepal*. Boulder: Westview Press, 1990.
- World Bank. *Nepal — Settlement Project appraisal and project documentation*, 1970s.
- His Majesty's Government of Nepal, National Planning Commission. *Periodic plans and resettlement policy documents from the First through Fifth Plan periods*.
- Central Bureau of Statistics, Nepal. *Population Monograph of Nepal, linguistic-composition tables using the 1952/54, 1961 and 1971 censuses*. Kathmandu.
- National Statistics Office, Nepal. *Language in Nepal: National Population and Housing Census 2021, Thematic Report XI*. Kathmandu, 2025.
- National Education Planning Commission. *Education in Nepal: Report of the Nepal National Education Planning Commission*. Kathmandu, 1956.
- Gautam, Bhim Lal. 'Language Politics in Nepal: A Socio-Historical Overview.' *Journal of World Languages* 7, no. 2 (2021): 355–374.
- Government of Nepal / Nepal Law Commission. *Constitution of the Kingdom of Nepal, 1962; Constitution of the Kingdom of Nepal, 1990; Interim Constitution of Nepal, 2007; and Constitution of Nepal, 2015*.
- Government of Nepal / Nepal Law Commission. *Education Act, 1971, as amended; Language Commission Act, 2017; and Compulsory and Free Education Act, 2018*.
- Language Commission, Nepal. *Constitutional mandate, annual reports and recommendations on official-language criteria and language development*. Kathmandu.
- Nepal Academy. *Institutional history and statutory objectives*. Kathmandu.
- Tribhuvan University, Ramswarup Ramsagar Multiple Campus. *Institutional history*. Janakpurdham.
- Nepal Sanskrit University. *Institutional history*. Beljhundi, Dang.
- Rai, Maya; Rai, Nabina; Phyak, Prem; and Rai, Vishnu S. *Multilingual Education in Nepal: Hearsay and Reality?* Kathmandu: UNESCO, 2011.
- UNICEF Nepal. *Understanding the Impact of Languages and Language Policies on Children's Learning Outcomes in Nepal*. Kathmandu, 2024.
- Poudel, Prem Prasad, and Tae-Hee Choi. 'Discourses Shaping the Language-in-Education Policy and Foreign Language Education in Nepal: An Intersectional Perspective.' *Current Issues in Language Planning* 23 (2022): 488–506.

- Ministry of Education / Curriculum Development Centre and School Sector Reform documentation. Mother-tongue and multilingual education curricula, plans and implementation guidelines, 2000s–2010s.
- Government of Nepal / Nepal Law Commission. Constitution of the Kingdom of Nepal, 1990; Interim Constitution of Nepal, 2007; and Constitution of Nepal, 2015, as amended.
- Government of Nepal / Nepal Law Commission. Nepal Citizenship Act, 2006, incorporating amendments through the Nepal Citizenship (First Amendment) Act, 2079 (certified 2023).
- Ministry of Home Affairs, Government of Nepal. Nepal Citizenship (First Amendment) Act, 2079, certified 31 May 2023, and Nepal Citizenship Rules, as amended in 2023.
- Government of Nepal / Nepal Law Commission. National Civil Code Act, 2017.
- Government of Nepal / Nepal Law Commission. Domestic Violence (Offence and Punishment) Act, 2009, as amended.
- Government of Nepal / Nepal Law Commission. Safe Motherhood and Reproductive Health Rights Act, 2018.
- Government of Nepal / Nepal Law Commission. Local Level Election Act, 2017, and Constitution of Nepal, Articles 222–223.
- National Statistics Office, Nepal. National Population and Housing Census 2021: Madhesh Province Census Report. Kathmandu.
- National Statistics Office, Nepal. National Population and Housing Census 2021, Thematic Report XIV: Labour Force and Economic Activities in Nepal. Kathmandu.
- National Statistics Office, Nepal. National Sample Census of Agriculture 2021/22: Women's Ownership of Agricultural Land in Nepal, SDG Indicator 5.a.1. Kathmandu, 2023.
- Alaref, Jumana; Patil, Aishwarya; Rahman, Tasmia; Muñoz Boudet, Ana Maria; and Rajbhandary, Jasmine. Women's Labor Force Participation in Nepal: An Exploration of the Role of Social Norms. World Bank Policy Research Working Paper 10810, 2024.
- Ruppert Bulmer, Elizabeth, et al. Nepal Jobs Diagnostic and related World Bank work on women's employment. Washington, DC: World Bank, 2020.
- UN Women. Country Gender Equality Profile: Nepal. Kathmandu, 2023.
- UN Women. Women in Local Government: Nepal. Global database drawing on Nepal's Constitution and Local Level Election Act.
- Burkert, Claire. 'Introduction.' Janakpur Women's Development Center: Maithil Paintings, an Exhibition. Asianart.com, 1998.
- Burkert, Claire, and Cristin McKnight Sethi. 'Painting in Mithila, an Introduction.' Smarthistory, 2021.
- Davis, Coralynn V. 'Can Developing Women Produce Primitive Art? And Other Questions of Value, Meaning and Identity in the Circulation of Janakpur Art.' *Tourist Studies* 7, no. 2 (2007).
- Kim, Kyung-hak. 'Painting of Ritual Art and Empowerment of Women: Case of Janakpur in Nepal.' *Journal of Asia-Pacific Studies* 25, no. 1 (2018): 121–149.
- Szanton, David, and Malini Bakshi. Mithila Painting: The Evolution of an Art Form. Berkeley: Ethnic Arts Foundation, 2007.
- Nepal Tourism Board. 'Mithila Art.'
- Nepal Tourism Board. 'Janakpur and Vivah Panchami: A Timeless Journey into Nepal's Sacred Heritage.'
- Nepal Tourism Board / Sustainable Tourism for Livelihood Recovery Project. InFocus 2022.
- Nepal Tourism Board. 'STLRP Releases a Guidebook to Janakpurdham.'
- United Nations Development Programme Nepal. 'Brushstrokes of Change: A Mithila Artist Breaking Barriers and Empowering Communities.' 2 January 2025.
- British Council, Cultural Protection Fund. 'Preserving Maithil Women's Art in Nepal.'
- UNESCO World Heritage Centre. 'Ram Janaki Temple.' Nepal Tentative List, submitted 30 January 2008.
- Government of India and Government of Nepal. Treaty of Peace and Friendship, 1950.
- Government of India and Government of Nepal. Revised Agreement of Cooperation to Control Unauthorized Trade, 2009.
- Government of India and Government of Nepal. Treaty of Transit, signed 1 June 2023.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Impact Evaluation of Remittances: A Case Study of Dhanusha District. Kathmandu, 2012.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. 'Contribution of Foreign Employment and Remittances to Nepalese Economy.' Economic Review article.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Working Paper No. 4 on workers' remittances and Nepal's experience.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Macroeconomic Report, February 2026.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Payment Systems Oversight Report 2023/24 and 2024 payment-system review.
- National Payments Corporation of India International Payments Ltd. 'UPI is Now Accepted in Nepal.' Press release, 8 March 2024.
- Government of India, Press Information Bureau. 'India and Nepal Launch Cross-Border Remittance Mechanism to Strengthen Bilateral Financial Connectivity.' 11 June 2026.
- National Statistics Office, Nepal. National Population and Housing Census 2021: International Migration in Nepal, Thematic Report VI. Kathmandu, 2024.

- International Organization for Migration. Baseline Study on Cross-border Migration. Kathmandu: IOM, 2023.
- Taneja, Nisha, and Sanjib Pohit. 'India's Informal Trade with Nepal.' *Economic and Political Weekly* 36, no. 25 (2001): 2263–2269, with related ICRIER/NCAER survey work.
- World Bank. *Climbing Higher: Toward a Middle-Income Nepal*. Washington, DC: World Bank, 2017.
- World Bank. *Nepal Country Economic Memorandum: Unlocking Nepal's Growth Potential*. Washington, DC, 2025, and World Development Indicators.
- Bihar, Government of. *The Bihar Privileged Persons Homestead Tenancy Act, 1947 (Bihar Act IV of 1948)*. Directorate of Land Records and Survey / Bihar statutory compilation.
- Bihar, Government of. *The Bihar Land Reforms Act, 1950 (Bihar Act XXX of 1950)*. India Code, Revenue & Land Reforms Department.
- Bihar, Government of. *The Bihar Bhoodan Yagna Act, 1954 (Bihar Act XXII of 1954)*. India Code.
- Bihar, Government of. *The Bihar Consolidation of Holdings and Prevention of Fragmentation Act, 1956 (Bihar Act XXII of 1956)*. Bihar statutory text / India legal compilation.
- Bihar, Government of. *The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) Act, 1961 (Bihar Act XII of 1962)*.
- Census of India 1961. *Land Tenures in India, Part XI-A (i), Volume I*. Government of India.
- Jannuzi, F. Tomasson. *Agrarian Crisis in India: The Case of Bihar*. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1974.
- Henningham, Stephen. 'Bureaucracy and Control in India's Great Landed Estates: The Raj Darbhanga of Bihar, 1879 to 1950.' *Modern Asian Studies* 17, no. 1 (1983).
- Wadhwa, D. C. 'Transferability of Raiyati Holdings in Bihar: A Long Journey, 1793–1950.' *Economic and Political Weekly* 16, no. 38 (1981): 1532–1544.
- The State of Bihar v. Maharajadhiraja Sir Kameshwar Singh of Darbhanga and Others*, Supreme Court of India, 1952.
- Nehru, Jawaharlal. 'Zamindari Abolition in Bihar,' 25 June 1949, and 'Zamindari Abolition,' 25 July 1950. *Selected Works of Jawaharlal Nehru*, Second Series; Nehru Archive.
- Planning Commission, Government of India. *First Five Year Plan, 1951–56*.
- Richards, J. F., James R. Hagen and Edward S. Haynes. 'Changing Land Use in Bihar, Punjab and Haryana, 1850–1970.' *Modern Asian Studies*.
- Asian Development Research Institute. *Current Agrarian Situation in Bihar*. Patna, 2010s.
- Bihar, Government of. *The Bihar Land Reforms Act, 1950 (Bihar Act XXX of 1950)*, including Sections 4–7 and compensation provisions. India Code / Revenue and Land Reforms Department.
- Jha, Usha. *Land, Labour, and Power: Agrarian Crisis and the State in Bihar (1937–52)*. New Delhi: Aakar Books, 2003.
- Government of India. *Census of India 1961, Land Tenures in India, Part XI-A (i), Volume I*.
- World Bank. *Bihar: Towards a Development Strategy*. Washington, DC, 2005.
- World Bank / Government of Bihar. *Historical Context of the Changing Rural Economy of Bihar*. Background analysis for Bihar rural development, 2010s.
- Indian National Congress, All India Congress Committee, Economic and Political Information Department. *Zamindari Abolition & Agrarian Reforms: A Summary of the Efforts of the Congress Governments*.
- Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. 'Land Reform — Land Settlement and Cooperatives,' special issue on Indian land reform.
- Bihar, Government of. *The Bihar Bhoodan Yagna Act, 1954; The Bihar Consolidation of Holdings and Prevention of Fragmentation Act, 1956; and The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) Act, 1961*.
- Government of Bihar. *Bihar Third Five Year Plan, Volume I*. Patna / Planning Commission, 1961.
- World Bank. *India: Eastern States Foodgrain Review — Bihar, Volume I: The General Report*. Report No. 1440-IN, 4 May 1977.
- Government of Bihar, Revenue Department. *Report on Agricultural Census 1970–71, Bihar*.
- Government of India, Ministry of Agriculture. *All India Report on Agricultural Census, 1970–71, and subsequent Agricultural Census series*.
- Government of India, Planning Commission. *First, Second, Third and subsequent Five Year Plan documents, including Bihar annual-plan progress reports*.
- Indian Council of Agricultural Research. *Indian Agriculture after Independence*. New Delhi: ICAR, 2022.
- National Commission on Floods (Rashtriya Barh Ayog). *Report, 1980*. Government of India.
- Government of Bihar, Water Resources Department. *Irrigation and Flood Control / Water Resources historical programme documents*.

- Government of Bihar, Finance Department. Bihar Economic Survey, 2014–15 and 2019–20.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Agriculture. Agriculture Road Map documents, 2008 onward.
- Bihar Agricultural University, Sabour. Institutional history and Bihar Agricultural University Act, 2010.
- Dr Rajendra Prasad Central Agricultural University, Pusa. Institutional history.
- Government of Bihar, Directorate of Economics and Statistics. Crop, irrigation and agricultural statistics.
- Government of India and Government of Nepal. Agreement on the Kosi Project, signed at Kathmandu, 25 April 1954.
- Government of India and His Majesty's Government of Nepal. Revised Agreement on the Kosi Project, Kathmandu, 19 December 1966. Ministry of External Affairs treaty record.
- Lok Sabha, Estimates Committee. Sixty-Eighth Report on the Kosi Project, Fourth Lok Sabha, 1968.
- Government of India, Publications Division. Yojana, 29 September 1963, 'Bank-Breaking River: Project to Curb Floods.'
- Government of India and His Majesty's Government of Nepal. Agreement on the Gandak Irrigation and Power Project, Kathmandu, 4 December 1959, with amendments of 30 April 1964.
- Bihar State Hydroelectric Power Corporation Ltd. 'Eastern Gandak Canal H.E. Project, Valmikinagar.'
- Central Water Commission. Compendium of Major and Medium Irrigation Projects in India up to the end of the Ninth Plan. Government of India.
- Chowdary, V. M., R. Vinu Chandran, N. Neeti, R. V. Bothale, Y. K. Srivastava, P. Ingle, D. Ramakrishnan, D. Dutta, A. Jeyaram, J. R. Sharma and Ravindra Singh. 'Assessment of Surface and Sub-Surface Waterlogged Areas in Irrigation Command Areas of Bihar State Using Remote Sensing and GIS.' *Agricultural Water Management* 95, no. 7 (2008): 754-766.
- World Bank. Bihar Kosi Flood Recovery Project documents, 2010-2013.
- Government of Bihar, Water Resources Department, Flood Management Improvement Support Centre. Kosi basin flood, sediment and embankment-management reports and FMIS documentation.
- Mishra, Dinesh Kumar. *Refugees of the Kosi Embankments / Trapped! Between the Devil and Deep Waters: The Story of Bihar's Kosi River.*
- Government of India, Ministry of Jal Shakti. Lok Sabha written reply on India-Nepal cooperation concerning Kosi, Gandak, Kamla, Bagmati and Lalbakeya, 31 March 2022.
- Government of India, Cabinet Committee on Economic Affairs / Press Information Bureau. Approval of Kosi-Mechi Intra-State Link Project under PMKSY-AIBP, 28 March 2025.
- Government of India, Ministry of Jal Shakti / Press Information Bureau. 'Kosi-Mechi Intra-State Link Project,' 27 July 2026.
- Government of Bihar, Water Resources Department, FMISC. Flood Report 2012.
- National Remote Sensing Centre, National Disaster Management Authority and Government of Bihar. *Flood Hazard Atlas of Bihar, 2020.*
- Central Water Commission, Government of India. *Comprehensive Flood Management in India, 2018.*
- Central Water Commission, Government of India. *Assessment of Area Affected due to Floods in India, 2024.*
- Government of India, Ministry of Jal Shakti. Rajya Sabha Unstarred Question No. 2314, answered 16 December 2024, 'Steps to Mitigate the Worsening and Recurring Flood Situation in Bihar.'
- National Institute of Disaster Management. *Bihar Flood 2007: A Field Report / Case Study.*
- World Bank. Bihar Kosi Flood Recovery Project documents, 2010–2018.
- World Bank. *Building Disaster Resilience in Bihar and Bihar Kosi Basin Development Project documents, 2015–2016.*
- Mishra, Dinesh Kumar. *Trapped! Between the Devil and Deep Waters: The Story of Bihar's Kosi River; and related writings on Kosi embankments.*
- Kale, V. S. 'Flood Studies in India: A Brief Review.' *Journal of the Geological Society of India* 49 (1997).
- Government of Bihar, Disaster Management Department. *Standard Operating Procedures for Flood Disaster Management and flood preparedness circulars.*
- Government of Bihar, Water Resources Department. *Bihar Water Security and Irrigation Modernization Project, Environmental and Social Impact Assessment.*
- World Bank. *Bihar Kosi Flood Recovery Project: Owner Driven Housing Reconstruction, 2012.*
- Reserve Bank of India. *Report on Currency and Finance, 2006–08, Vol. II, 'The Evolution of Banking in India.'*
- Reserve Bank of India, Committee of Direction. *All-India Rural Credit Survey, 1951–52, published 1954.*
- Reserve Bank of India. *All-India Debt and Investment Survey, NSS 77th Round, 2019.*
- Government of India. *Regional Rural Banks Act, 1976.*
- Government of India. *National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development Act, 1981; NABARD, Annual Reports.*

- NABARD. Status of Microfinance in India, various years.
- NABARD. Annual Report 2023–24.
- Government of India / Reserve Bank of India / NABARD. Kisan Credit Card Scheme guidelines from 1998 onward.
- World Bank and Bihar Rural Livelihoods Promotion Society. Bihar Rural Livelihoods Project / JEEViKA project documents, 2007–2016.
- Hoffmann, Vivian, Vijayendra Rao, Vaishnavi Surendra and Upamanyu Datta. ‘Relief from Usury: Impact of a Self-Help Group Lending Program in Rural India.’
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Economic Survey, recent editions, chapter on Financial Institutions.
- Government of India. Agricultural and Rural Debt Relief Scheme, 1990; later national agricultural debt-relief documents.
- NABARD / Government of India. Short-Term Cooperative Credit Structure revival and computerisation programme documents.
- Reserve Bank of India. Reports on Trend and Progress of Banking in India, various years.
- Government of India. Pradhan Mantri Jan-Dhan Yojana and Direct Benefit Transfer programme documents.
- Government of Bihar. The Bihar Co-operative Societies Act, 1935.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Co-operative Societies Rules, 1959.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Self-Supporting Cooperative Societies Act, 1996, with later amendments.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar State Election Authority Act, 2008; Bihar Co-operative Societies (Amendment) Act, 2008.
- NABARD. Annual Reports and publications on the Short-Term Cooperative Credit Structure.
- Ministry of Cooperation, Government of India. Guidelines for Computerization of PACS, 2022–23, and subsequent implementation reports.
- Ministry of Cooperation, Government of India. Parliamentary replies on strengthening and computerisation of PACS in Bihar, 2025–26.
- Co-operative Department, Government of Bihar. e-Sahkari and procurement reports.
- Bihar State Milk Co-operative Federation Ltd. (COMFED/Sudha). Institutional history and milk-union profiles.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Fish Jalkar Management Act, 2006, with 2007, 2010 and later amendments.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997; Water Resources Department documents on Participatory Irrigation Management.
- Bihar Rural Livelihoods Promotion Society / JEEViKA and World Bank project documents.
- NABARD. Farmer Producer Organisation programme statistics and development publications.
- Ministry of Cooperation, Government of India. Model Bye-Laws for PACS; National Cooperation Policy 2025.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Economic Survey, recent editions.
- Government of Bihar, Finance Department. Bihar Economic Survey 2024–25, especially Chapter 4, ‘Enterprises Sector’.
- Government of Bihar, State Planning Board. Eleventh Five Year Plan / planning documents for 2007–12.
- World Bank. Bihar: Towards a Development Strategy. 2005.
- World Bank. Study on Regulating Enterprise Entry and Operations in Bihar: Towards Improved Implementation. 2008–09.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Industries. Bihar Industrial Investment Promotion Policy, 2016, with subsequent amendments and rules.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Industries. Ethanol Production Promotion Policy, 2021.
- Government of Bihar, Sugarcane Industries Department. Sugarcane Industry at a Glance and Bihar Sugarcane Industry Investment Promotion Policy, 2026.
- Bihar Industrial Area Development Authority (BIADA). Industrial-area, estate, growth-centre and land-bank records.
- Indian Oil Corporation Ltd. Barauni Refinery: institutional history and annual reports.
- NTPC Ltd. Corporate announcements and station records for Barauni Thermal Power Station and Kanti/Muzaffarpur.
- Department of Fertilizers, Government of India. Annual Report 2023–24; Hindustan Urvarak & Rasayan Ltd. Barauni Unit records.
- Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation, Annual Survey of Industries and Annual Survey of Unincorporated Sector Enterprises, as synthesised in Bihar and Union Economic Surveys.
- Government of India. Economic Survey 2024–25, Volume I, chapter on deregulation and enterprise.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Industries and Cabinet Secretariat, 2026 decisions on industrial land, infrastructure financing and policy extension.
- Railway Board / Eastern Railway institutional histories of Jamalpur Workshop.
- Buchanan, Francis (Hamilton). An Account of the District of Bhagalpur in 1810–11. Edited by A. Banerji-Sastri. Patna: Bihar & Orissa Research Society, 1939.

Office of the Development Commissioner (Handlooms), Ministry of Textiles, Government of India. Citizens' Charter, Weavers' Service Centre, Bhagalpur.

Office of the Development Commissioner (Handlooms). Bhagalpur (Bihar) Mega Handloom Cluster: Status as on 31 March 2023.

Press Information Bureau, Ministry of Textiles. 'Handloom Clusters in Bihar', 20 July 2017, and 'Rejuvenation of Silk Industry of Bhagalpur', 2014.

Geographical Indications Registry, Intellectual Property India. Application No. 180, Bhagalpur Silk Fabrics & Sarees.

Central Silk Board, Ministry of Textiles. Note on Sericulture / state-wise raw silk production statistics, 2020–21 to 2023–24.

Central Silk Board. Sericulture Information Linkages and Knowledge System (SILKS), Bhagalpur district portal.

Directorate of Handloom & Sericulture, Department of Industries, Government of Bihar. Natural Handloom Clusters of Bihar.

Directorate of Handloom & Sericulture, Government of Bihar. Infrastructure records.

Directorate of Handloom & Sericulture, Government of Bihar. State Government schemes for handloom and powerloom weavers.

Government of Bihar, Finance Department. Bihar Economic Survey 2018–19, handloom-sector tables and district product concentration.

District Administration, Bhagalpur. One District One Product: Bhagalpur Silk.

District Administration, Banka. District History and ODOP Banka Silk records.

Office of the Development Commissioner (Handlooms). Fourth All India Handloom Census background data, handloom weaver database and marketing-event beneficiary records.

Intellectual Property India, Geographical Indications Registry. Application No. 696, Mithila Makhana.

Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR), Research Complex for Eastern Region / National Research Centre for Makhana, Darbhanga. Swarna Vaidehi: First Ever Variety of Makhana Released in India; institutional reports on makhana cultivation, field systems, integrated makhana-fish-water-chestnut farming and processing mechanisation.

Government of India, Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare. Lok Sabha Unstarred Question No. 390, National Research Centre for Makhana, answered 4 February 2025.

ICAR. Selected Integrated Farming System Models.

Agricultural and Processed Food Products Export Development Authority (APEDA). Strategies to Boost India's Makhana Exports / Makhana Market Intelligence materials.

Press Information Bureau / APEDA. 'APEDA Facilitates First-Ever Export of GI-tagged Mithila Makhana by Sea Route from Bihar to Australia', 8 August 2026.

Department of Fisheries, Ministry of Fisheries, Animal Husbandry and Dairying, Government of India. 'Special Scheme to Promote Fish Production in Bihar', 11 December 2024.

Department of Fisheries, Government of India. 'Increase in Fish Production and Productivity under PMMSY', 17 December 2025.

Department of Fisheries, Government of India. 'Blue Revolution and Fisheries Development Schemes', 24 March 2026, and 'PMMSY and RGM in Bihar', 29 July 2026.

National Fisheries Development Board / ICAR-Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute. Super Success Stories from Indian Fisheries, including culture-based floodplain wetland fisheries in Bihar.

Bihar State Milk Co-operative Federation Ltd. (COMFED). Official Overview, Organisation and Board records.

Government of India, Ministry of Fisheries, Animal Husbandry and Dairying. Lok Sabha reply on dairy development in Bihar, 11 March 2025.

Dairy, Fisheries and Animal Resources Department, Government of Bihar. Official Vision and programme information.

Intellectual Property India, Geographical Indications Registry. Application No. 552, Shahi Litchi of Bihar; Application No. 551, Bhagalpuri Zardalu; Application No. 553, Katarni Rice.

APEDA. Bihar GI product records and Annual Report 2024–25.

Government of Bihar, Finance Department. Bihar Economic Survey 2024–25.

Bihar and Orissa District Gazetteers / Bihar District Gazetteers for Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Saharsa, Purnea and Bhagalpur.

Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India, 1981: Census Atlas, Bihar.

Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011, District Census Handbooks and Primary Census Abstracts for Darbhanga, Madhubani, Muzaffarpur, Vaishali, Samastipur, Begusarai, Bhagalpur and adjoining districts.

Ministry of Education, Department of School Education & Literacy, Government of India. UDISE+ 2024–25, state-wise reports.

Ministry of Education, Government of India. Parliamentary replies on school performance and dropout indicators, 2026, drawing on UDISE+ 2024–25.

Department of School Education & Literacy, Ministry of Education. Samagra Shiksha, Bihar Project Approval Board Minutes 2025–26.

- Ministry of Education. Sarva Shiksha Abhiyan, Right of Children to Free and Compulsory Education Act, 2009, Samagra Shiksha and NIPUN Bharat official documents.
- Ministry of Education / Government of Bihar. Official programme records on girls' uniforms, scholarships and Mukhyamantri Cycle Yojana, including Bihar presentations to national school-education review bodies.
- Ministry of Education. PM POSHAN / Mid-Day Meal Scheme programme documents.
- Ministry of Education, Department of Higher Education. All India Survey on Higher Education (AISHE) 2023–24 Final Report, released July 2026.
- Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar Bihar University, Muzaffarpur. Official History at a Glance and About University.
- Lalit Narayan Mithila University, Darbhanga. Official About University and Campus histories.
- Tilka Manjhi Bhagalpur University. Official institutional history and IQAC records.
- Kameshwar Singh Darbhanga Sanskrit University. Institutional records and UGC/AISHE listings.
- Muzaffarpur Institute of Technology. Official institute history and academic records.
- Bhagalpur College of Engineering. Official history and AICTE institutional records.
- Darbhanga College of Engineering. Official institutional history and annual report.
- Mahatma Gandhi Central University, Motihari. Official About University and Act & Statutes pages.
- Indian Institute of Information Technology Bhagalpur. Official About IIIT Bhagalpur and institutional disclosures.
- Tribhuvan University, Ramswarup Ramsagar Multiple Campus, Janakpurdham. Official campus history and programme records.
- University Grants Commission Nepal. Education Management Information System / Report of Higher Education.
- Government of Bihar, Finance Department. Bihar Economic Survey 2024–25 and earlier education-sector chapters.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Sample Registration System (SRS) Bulletin 2024, Volume 59-I, released 20 May 2026.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Special Bulletin on Maternal Mortality in India 2022–24, released 20 May 2026.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. National Family Health Survey-5, Bihar Fact Sheet, 2019–20.
- Central Bureau of Health Intelligence, Directorate General of Health Services. National Health Profile 2023.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare. Rural Health Statistics 2021–22.
- National Health Mission, Ministry of Health and Family Welfare. 17th Common Review Mission Report, 2025.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare. Annual Report 2024–25.
- National Centre for Vector Borne Diseases Control. Kala-azar, malaria and JE/AES programme guidelines and state surveillance series.
- Press Information Bureau, Ministry of Health and Family Welfare. Official releases on the Muzaffarpur AES/JE response, June 2019.
- Darbhanga Medical College. Official institutional history and college information.
- Sri Krishna Medical College and Hospital, Muzaffarpur. Citizen Charter and institutional history.
- District Administration, Darbhanga. Health profile and facility listings.
- Prime Minister's Office, Government of India. Cabinet approval and foundation-stone releases for AIIMS Darbhanga.
- National Health Mission. Janani Suraksha Yojana, ASHA, ambulance and maternal-child-health programme guidelines.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare. Ayushman Bharat–Health and Wellness Centre / Ayushman Arogya Mandir operational guidelines.
- National Health Authority. Ayushman Bharat–Pradhan Mantri Jan Arogya Yojana programme documents.
- Ministry of Health and Population, Nepal; New ERA; and ICF. Nepal Demographic and Health Survey 2022. Kathmandu, 2023.
- The DHS Program. Madhesh Province Key Findings from the 2021 Nepal Health Facility Survey and 2022 Nepal Demographic and Health Survey.
- Government of India and Government of Bihar official COVID-19 health-system and vaccination records, 2020–22.
- Bhore Committee. Report of the Health Survey and Development Committee, 1946.
- Government of India. National Health Policy 1983, National Health Policy 2002 and National Health Policy 2017.
- Nehru Archive. 'At Hathidah: Bridge across the Ganga', 1 May 1959.
- Department of Tourism, Government of Bihar. Mahatma Gandhi Setu, official destination note.
- Prime Minister's Office / Press Information Bureau. Releases on the Aunta–Simaria Ganga bridge, August 2025.
- Ministry of Road Transport and Highways / Press Information Bureau. Munger rail-cum-road bridge approach project, 11 February 2022.

- Ministry of Road Transport and Highways / Press Information Bureau. Cabinet approval for four-laning of Khagaria–Purnea section of NH-31 and NH-231, 3 June 2026.
- Ministry of Rural Development. Pradhan Mantri Gram Sadak Yojana programme documents and Year Ender 2025.
- Ministry of Rural Development / Press Information Bureau. Phase-wise construction of rural roads under PMGSY, 21 July 2026.
- Ministry of Railways / Press Information Bureau. Kosi Rail Mahasetu and Bihar electrification projects, 16–18 September 2020.
- Ministry of Railways / Press Information Bureau. Bihar railway-project status, July–August 2026.
- Ministry of Railways / Press Information Bureau. Railway Electrification Gains Momentum, 26 March 2025; subsequent electrification status releases through 2026.
- Ministry of External Affairs, Government of India. Annual Report 2022.
- Ministry of External Affairs. India–Nepal bilateral brief, June 2024.
- Ministry of Power / Press Information Bureau. Muzaffarpur–Dhalkebar transmission-line releases, February 2016 and January 2017.
- Ministry of Power / Press Information Bureau. Cross-border transmission links with neighbouring countries, 2026.
- Central Electricity Authority. Load Generation Balance Report 2024–25.
- Ministry of Power / Press Information Bureau. Electrification of households under Saubhagya Yojana, 2024.
- Ministry of Power. Revamped Distribution Sector Scheme and Parliamentary replies, March 2026.
- Central Electricity Authority. 20th Electric Power Survey of India.
- Telecom Regulatory Authority of India. Quarterly Performance Indicators, July–September 2024.
- Department of Telecommunications / Press Information Bureau. BharatNet Project status, November 2024.
- Department of Telecommunications / Press Information Bureau. Expansion of internet and 4G/5G infrastructure, 2025–26.
- Nepal Electricity Authority. Annual Report 2024/2025 and Madhesh Provincial Office publications.
- Government of Bihar and East Central Railway public works and project records.
- Cohn, Bernard S. *An Anthropologist among the Historians and Other Essays*. Oxford University Press, 1987.
- Jha, Makhan. *Civilizational Regions of Mithila and Mahakoshal*. Capital Publishing House, 1982.
- Lacey, W. G. *Census of India, 1931, Volume VII: Bihar and Orissa, Part I Report and Part II Tables*. Government of Bihar and Orissa, 1932–33.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Digital Census Library collections for Bihar, including historical census volumes and post-independence Scheduled Caste/Scheduled Tribe population tables.
- Bihar and Orissa / Bihar District Gazetteers: Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Bhagalpur and Monghyr/Munger volumes.
- Ram, Bindeshwar. *Land and Society in India: Agrarian Relations in Colonial North Bihar*. Orient Longman, 1997; based on the author's SOAS research on nineteenth-century north Bihar.
- Prakash, Gyan. *Bonded Histories: Genealogies of Labor Servitude in Colonial India*. Cambridge University Press, 1990.
- Pinch, William R. *Peasants and Monks in British India*. University of California Press, 1996.
- Hauser, Walter. *The Bihar Provincial Kisan Sabha, 1929–1942: A Study of an Indian Peasant Movement*. PhD dissertation, University of Chicago, 1961, and related publications.
- Jaffrelot, Christophe. *India's Silent Revolution: The Rise of the Lower Castes in North India*. Permanent Black / Columbia University Press, 2003.
- Witsoe, Jeffrey. *Democracy against Development: Lower-Caste Politics and Political Modernity in Postcolonial India*. University of Chicago Press, 2013.
- Witsoe, Jeffrey. 'Caste and Democratization in Postcolonial India: An Ethnographic Examination of Lower Caste Politics in Bihar.' *Democratization* 19, no. 2 (2012): 312–333.
- Kumar, Awanish. 'Land and Caste Relations in North Bihar: Observations from Two Villages.' *Review of Agrarian Studies* 12, no. 1 (2022).
- Kumar, Sanjay. *Post-Mandal Politics in Bihar: Changing Electoral Patterns*. SAGE Publications India, 2018.
- Government of India, Second Backward Classes Commission (B. P. Mandal Commission). *Report of the Backward Classes Commission, 1980*. National Commission for Backward Classes / Department of Social Justice and Empowerment digital edition.
- Government of Bihar, General Administration Department. *Reservation orders and compendia, including the 1978 backward-class reservation framework and subsequent BC/EBC classifications*.
- Bihar Legislature proceedings, 7 November 2023, and Government of Bihar caste-based survey materials, 2022–23.
- Höfer, András. *The Caste Hierarchy and the State in Nepal: A Study of the Muluki Ain of 1854*. 1979; 2nd ed., Himal Books, 2004.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. *National Population and Housing Census 2021: Caste/Ethnicity Report*.

- Constitution of India, 1950, especially Articles 14–17 and the constitutional framework for Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and backward classes.
- Srinivas, M. N. *Social Change in Modern India*. University of California Press, 1966.
- Ambedkar, B. R. *Annihilation of Caste*. 1936; standard critical editions.
- Sahay, Gaurang R. “Substantially Present but Invisible, Excluded and Marginalised: A Study of Musahars in Bihar.” *Sociological Bulletin* 68, no. 1 (2019): 25–43. DOI: 10.1177/0038022918819357.
- Roy, Indrajit. “Utopia in Crisis? Subaltern Imaginations in Contemporary Bihar.” *Journal of Contemporary Asia* 45, no. 4 (2015). DOI: 10.1080/00472336.2015.1045378.
- Sharma, Mukul. “‘God of Humans’: Dina-Bhadri, Dalit Folktales and Environmental Movements.” *South Asian History and Culture* 12, no. 1 (2021): 1–18. DOI: 10.1080/19472498.2020.1866365.
- Sharma, Mukul. *Dalit Ecologies: Caste and Environment Justice*. Cambridge University Press, 2025, especially the chapter on Dina-Bhadri.
- International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development (ICIMOD). *Life in the Shadow of Embankments: Turning Lost Lands into Assets in the Koshi Basin of Bihar, India*.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *Census of India 2011, A-10 Appendix: District-wise Scheduled Caste Population, Bihar*.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *Census of India 2011, SC-01 and B-01 (SC) worker tables and SC-08 Appendix educational-level tables*.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *Bihar District Census Handbooks for Madhubani, Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Vaishali, Samastipur, Bhagalpur and Banka*, 2011.
- Government of India. *The Constitution (Scheduled Castes) Order, 1950, as amended*; Department of Social Justice and Empowerment, state-wise Scheduled Castes list updated through 2025.
- Constitution of India, 1950, especially Articles 14–17 and the constitutional provisions governing Scheduled Castes and political representation.
- Government of India. *The Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes (Prevention of Atrocities) Act, 1989, and the Prevention of Atrocities Rules, 1995, as amended*.
- Government of Bihar, Scheduled Caste and Scheduled Tribe Welfare Department. Departmental mandate, scholarship/hostel programmes, atrocity-prevention administration and current welfare materials.
- Government of Bihar. *Bihar Economic Survey 2018–19*, section on Mahadalit development.
- Bihar Mahadalit Vikas Mission. Official programme materials, Vikas Register, Vikas Mitra, community-hall and skill-development programme information, consulted 2026.
- Government of Bihar, State Mahadalit Commission reports and related policy notifications.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *Census of India 2011, A-11 Appendix: District-wise Scheduled Tribe Population, Bihar*.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *Census of India 2011, Primary Census Abstract (ST), Bihar district files including Bhagalpur, Banka, Purnia and Katihar*.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *Census of India 2011, D-11 (ST): Persons from Scheduled Tribes Born and Enumerated in Districts of Bihar*.
- Ministry of Tribal Affairs, Government of India. *Statistical Profile of Scheduled Tribes in India 2013*, especially Table 1.24.
- Ministry of Tribal Affairs, Government of India. *State/Union Territory-wise List of Scheduled Tribes in India*, current notified list (2025/2026 web edition).
- Ministry of Tribal Affairs, Government of India. *State-wise List of Particularly Vulnerable Tribal Groups*.
- Ministry of Tribal Affairs, Government of India. *Forest Rights Act Monthly Progress Report, January 2025*.
- Government of India. *Scheduled Tribes and Other Traditional Forest Dwellers (Recognition of Forest Rights) Act, 2006, and Rules as amended*.
- Press Information Bureau, Ministry of Tribal Affairs. “Welfare Schemes for Scheduled Tribes in Bihar,” Lok Sabha reply, 30 July 2026.
- Government of India. *Constitution (Scheduled Tribes) Order, 1950, as amended*.
- Bhagalpur District Administration, Government of Bihar. “History.”
- Banka District Administration, Government of Bihar. “History.”
- Sahibganj District Administration, Government of Jharkhand. “History: Santhal Rebellion (Hul), 1855.”
- Pakur District Administration, Government of Jharkhand. “History.”

- O'Malley, L. S. S. *Bengal District Gazetteers: Santal Parganas*. Bengal Secretariat Book Depot, 1910.
- Hunter, W. W. *Annals of Rural Bengal*. Smith, Elder & Co., 1868, and later editions.
- Guha, Ranajit. *Elementary Aspects of Peasant Insurgency in Colonial India*. Oxford University Press, 1983.
- Xaxa, Virginius. "Tribes as Indigenous People of India." *Economic and Political Weekly* 34, no. 51 (1999): 3589-3595.
- Xaxa, Virginius. *State, Society, and Tribes: Issues in Post-Colonial India*. Pearson, 2008.
- Sundar, Nandini, ed. *The Scheduled Tribes and Their India: Politics, Identities, Policies, and Work*. Oxford University Press, 2016.
- Sharma, B. D. *Tribal Affairs in India: The Crucial Transition*. Sahyog Pustak Kuteer, 1990.
- National Foundation for Development of Indigenous Nationalities (NFDIN), Government of Nepal. Official materials on recognised Adivasi Janajati communities and policy terminology.
- Imperial Gazetteer of India, provincial and district entries for Bhagalpur and Santal Parganas.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *Census of India 2011, C-01: Population by Religious Community, Bihar*.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *District Census Handbook: Darbhanga, Series 11, Part XII A, 2011/2014*.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *District Census Handbook: Madhubani, Series 11, Part XII A, 2011/2014*.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *District Census Handbook: Vaishali, Series 11, Part XII A, 2011/2014*.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *District Census Handbook: Bhagalpur, Series 11, Part XII A, 2011/2014*.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *Linguistic Survey of India: Bihar, modern survey volume*.
- Government of Bihar. *The Bihar Official Language Act, 1950, as amended by Bihar Act II of 1981, and related official-language notifications*.
- Government of Bihar, Minority Welfare Department. *Departmental history, schemes and institutional materials*, consulted 2026.
- Government of Bihar. *Minority Welfare and Development programme document, including Talimi Markaz and Urdu/minority institutional measures*.
- Bihar State Madrasa Education Board. "About Us," current institutional materials and curriculum pages, consulted 2026.
- Sajjad, Mohammad. *Muslim Politics in Bihar: Changing Contours*. Routledge India, 2014.
- Ghosh, Papiya. *Muhajirs and the Nation: Bihar in the 1940s*. Routledge India, 2009.
- Sajjad, Mohammad. "Muslim Resistance to Communal Separatism and Colonialism in Bihar: Nationalist Politics of Bihar Muslims." *South Asian History and Culture* 2, no. 1 (2010).
- Blair, Harry W. "Minority Electoral Politics in a North Indian State: Aggregate Data Analysis and the Muslim Community in Bihar, 1952–1972." *American Political Science Review* 67, no. 4 (1973): 1275–1287.
- Ahmad, Imtiaz, ed. *Caste and Social Stratification among the Muslims*. Manohar, 1973 and later editions.
- Eaton, Richard M. *The Rise of Islam and the Bengal Frontier, 1204–1760*. University of California Press, 1993.
- Bayly, C. A. *Rulers, Townsmen and Bazaars: North Indian Society in the Age of British Expansion, 1770–1870*. Cambridge University Press, 1983.
- Bayly, Susan. *Saints, Goddesses and Kings: Muslims and Christians in South Indian Society, 1700–1900*. Cambridge University Press, 1989.
- Government of India, National Commission for Minorities. *Annual Report 1989–90 and follow-up materials on Bhagalpur*.
- Bhagalpur Communal Riots Inquiry Commission. *Report of the Commission of Inquiry into the communal disturbances at Bhagalpur, 1989*.
- Gyanendra Pandey. *The Construction of Communalism in Colonial North India*. Oxford University Press, 1990.
- O'Malley, L. S. S., and related Bengal/Bihar District Gazetteers for Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur and Bhagalpur.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. *Health and Family Welfare Statistics in India 2023*.
- National Statistical Office, Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation. *Time Use in India—2019*.
- Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation. *Women and Men in India 2020, Chapter 4: Participation in Economy*.
- Bihar Rural Livelihoods Promotion Society (JEEViKA). *72nd Quarterly Progress Report, July–September 2025*.
- Bihar Rural Livelihoods Promotion Society (JEEViKA). *Design Principles and Alternate Banking institutional materials*, consulted 2026.

- World Bank. Measuring Empowerment: JEEViKA's Success in Empowering the Women of Rural Bihar—Results from a Retrospective Survey. Impact Note 6, 2020.
- World Bank. India: Impact Evaluation of JEEViKA Multisectoral Convergence Initiative in Bihar—Engaging Women's Groups to Improve Nutrition. Summary Report, 2019.
- Government of India. The National Food Security Act, 2013. Gazette notification and Department of Food and Public Distribution implementation materials.
- Ministry of Women and Child Development / Savitribai Phule National Institute of Women and Child Development. Integrated Child Development Services historical and Mission Saksham Anganwadi & Poshan 2.0 materials.
- Ministry of Petroleum and Natural Gas, Government of India. Pradhan Mantri Ujjwala Yojana: About the Scheme.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011, household, housing and amenities tables for Bihar and district census handbooks for Darbhanga, Madhubani, Muzaffarpur, Vaishali, Bhagalpur and Banka.
- Agarwal, Bina. *A Field of One's Own: Gender and Land Rights in South Asia*. Cambridge University Press, 1994.
- Sen, Amartya. "Gender and Cooperative Conflicts." In Irene Tinker, ed., *Persistent Inequalities: Women and World Development*. Oxford University Press, 1990.
- Kabeer, Naila. *Reversed Realities: Gender Hierarchies in Development Thought*. Verso, 1994.
- Dube, Leela. *Women and Kinship: Comparative Perspectives on Gender in South and South-East Asia*. United Nations University Press, 1997.
- Jeffery, Patricia, Roger Jeffery and Andrew Lyon. *Labour Pains and Labour Power: Women and Childbearing in India*. Zed Books, 1989.
- Breman, Jan. *Footloose Labour: Working in India's Informal Economy*. Cambridge University Press, 1996.
- Desai, Sonalde, Amaresh Dubey, Brij Lal Joshi, Mitali Sen, Abusaleh Shariff and Reeve Vanneman. *Human Development in India: Challenges for a Society in Transition*. Oxford University Press, 2010.
- Dreze, Jean, and Amartya Sen. *An Uncertain Glory: India and Its Contradictions*. Princeton University Press, 2013.
- National Statistical Office, Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation. Annual Report, Periodic Labour Force Survey 2023–24. Government of India, 2024.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 1951–2011, worker and marginal-worker tables and district census handbooks for Bihar.
- Government of India. The Equal Remuneration Act, 1976; and Code on Wages, 2019.
- Government of India. Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005, and Ministry of Rural Development operational and annual-report materials.
- Bihar Rural Livelihoods Promotion Society (JEEViKA). Programme, quarterly progress and livelihood-institution materials, consulted through 2026.
- Majumdar, Shruti, Vijayendra Rao and Paromita Sanyal. *Revolution by Stealth: How Women's Groups Catalyzed a Cultural Transformation in Bihar*. Cambridge University Press, 2026.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. ASHA programme and National Health Mission implementation materials.
- Ministry of Women and Child Development, Government of India. Anganwadi Services / Saksham Anganwadi and Poshan 2.0 programme materials.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. Nepal Labour Force Survey 2017/18.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. Statistical Pocket Book Nepal 2024.
- Boserup, Ester. *Woman's Role in Economic Development*. George Allen & Unwin, 1970.
- Klasen, Stephan, and Janneke Pieters. "What Explains the Stagnation of Female Labor Force Participation in Urban India?" *World Bank Economic Review* 29(3), 2015.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 1901–2011, marital-status, age-at-marriage and district census materials for Bihar.
- Government of India. The Special Marriage Act, 1954. India Code.
- Government of India. The Hindu Marriage Act, 1955. India Code.
- Government of India. The Hindu Succession Act, 1956. India Code.
- Government of India. The Hindu Succession (Amendment) Act, 2005. Gazette of India / India Code.
- Government of India. The Dowry Prohibition Act, 1961. India Code.
- Government of India. The Prohibition of Child Marriage Act, 2006. India Code.
- Government of India. The Muslim Personal Law (Shariat) Application Act, 1937. India Code.

- Government of India. The Muslim Women (Protection of Rights on Marriage) Act, 2019. India Code.
- Nepal Law Commission. National Civil Code (Muluki Dewani Sanhita), 2017 (2074).
- Nepal Law Commission. Social Practices (Reform) Act, 1976 (2033), with rules.
- Singh, Ravi S., and Sugandh. "Matrimony, Marriage and Migration in Mithila Region, India: An Exploratory Geographical Study of Saurath Sabh." *National Geographical Journal of India* 63, no. 4: 49–59.
- Basu, Srimati. *She Comes to Take Her Rights: Indian Women, Property, and Propriety*. State University of New York Press, 1999.
- Chowdhry, Prem. *Contentious Marriages, Eloping Couples: Gender, Caste and Patriarchy in Northern India*. Oxford University Press, 2007.
- Oldenburg, Veena Talwar. *Dowry Murder: The Imperial Origins of a Cultural Crime*. Oxford University Press, 2002.
- Law Commission of India. Report No. 174, Property Rights of Women: Proposed Reforms under the Hindu Law, 2000.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011, SC-08 Appendix: Educational Level by Sex for Scheduled Castes, Bihar.
- Department of School Education & Literacy, Ministry of Education, Government of India. UDISE+ 2024–25, State-wise Highlights.
- Department of Higher Education, Ministry of Education, Government of India. All India Survey on Higher Education 2021–22.
- Ministry of Education, Government of India. Parliamentary statement on AISHE 2022–23 provisional state-wise GER, 2024–25.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Student Credit Card Yojana Guidelines, 2016, and Bihar State Education Finance Corporation materials.
- Government of Bihar, Scheduled Caste & Scheduled Tribe Welfare Department. Scheme and institutional materials on scholarships, hostels, residential schools, pre-examination training and civil-service incentives.
- Government of Bihar, Backward Classes & Extremely Backward Classes Welfare Department. Scheme materials on pre- and post-matric scholarships, merit incentives, welfare hostels and pre-examination training.
- Government of Bihar. Economic Survey 2019–20.
- Government of Bihar, DBT / MedhaSoft scheme listings.
- T.N.B. College, Bhagalpur. Institutional history.
- Langat Singh College, Muzaffarpur. Institutional history.
- Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar Bihar University, Muzaffarpur. University history.
- Tilka Manjhi Bhagalpur University. Institutional history and IQAC materials.
- Lalit Narayan Mithila University, Darbhanga. University history.
- Muralidharan, Karthik, and Nishith Prakash. "Cycling to School: Increasing Secondary School Enrollment for Girls in India." *American Economic Journal: Applied Economics* 9(3), 2017.
- Thorat, Sukhadeo, and Katherine S. Newman, eds. *Blocked by Caste: Economic Discrimination in Modern India*. Oxford University Press, 2010.
- Bourdieu, Pierre, and Jean-Claude Passeron. *Reproduction in Education, Society and Culture*. Sage, 1977/1990.
- Constitution of India, Articles 15, 16, 17, 46, 243D and 243T, with relevant constitutional amendments.
- Government of India. Report of the Backward Classes Commission (B. P. Mandal Commission), 1980.
- Indra Sawhney v. Union of India, 1992 Supp (3) SCC 217.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Reservation of Vacancies in Posts and Services (for Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and Other Backward Classes) Act, 1991, with Bihar Act 17 of 2002.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Panchayat Raj Act, 2006, and State Election Commission materials.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Reservation in Vacancies of Posts and Services and in Admissions in Educational Institutions (for Economically Weaker Sections) Act, 2019, Bihar Act 2 of 2019, and Rules of 26 February 2019.
- Government of Bihar. General Administration Department reservation circulars and Central Selection Board of Constable reservation-order archive, including 2025–26 orders on horizontal reservation, EWS certification and transgender-category administration.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Caste-Based Survey, 2022–23, population results released 2 October 2023 and socio-economic results released 7 November 2023.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Reservation of Vacancies in Posts and Services Amendment Act, 2023, and Bihar Reservation in Admission in Educational Institutions Amendment Act, 2023.
- Youth for Equality v. State of Bihar, Patna High Court, judgment dated 20 June 2024.
- Supreme Court of India. State of Bihar appeals arising from the 20 June 2024 Patna High Court reservation judgment; orders from July 2024 and 2026 cause-list records.
- State of Punjab v. Davinder Singh, 2024 INSC 562 (seven-judge bench).

- Janhit Abhiyan v. Union of India, (2023) 5 SCC 1.
- Government of Nepal, Civil Service Act, 2049 (1993), as amended in 2007; Nepal Law Commission.
- Public Service Commission, Nepal. Nijamati Sewa Patrika / Civil Service Journal materials on inclusion and diversity in public recruitment.
- Galanter, Marc. *Competing Equalities: Law and the Backward Classes in India*. Oxford University Press, 1984.
- Deshpande, Ashwini. *The Grammar of Caste: Economic Discrimination in Contemporary India*. Oxford University Press, 2011.
- Blair, Harry W. *Studies of backward-class mobilisation and the Karpoori Thakur period in Bihar, late 1970s–1980s*.
- Government of Bihar. *The Bihar Land Reforms Act, 1950 (Bihar Act 30 of 1950)*.
- Government of Bihar. *The Bihar Bhoodan Yagna Act, 1954 (Bihar Act 22 of 1954)*, with subsequent amendments.
- Government of Bihar. *Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) Act, 1961 (Bihar Act XII of 1962)*, with Rules, 1963 and later amendments.
- Government of Bihar, Revenue and Land Reforms Department. Departmental Acts, land-management objectives, online mutation, Bhu-Lagan, Jamabandi, Bhu-Manchitra, Bhu-Naksha, e-Mapi, Bhu-Abhilekh and Bihar Special Survey portals.
- Government of Bihar, Revenue and Land Reforms Department. *Right to Information manual on the Bihar Bhoodan Yagna Committee*.
- Government of India, Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare. *Agriculture Census 2015–16, Bihar state tables*.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. “Bihar Signs MoU with BHASHINI to Translate Kaithi Script Records Using AI,” 4 July 2025.
- Government of India, Department of Land Resources. *Digital India Land Records Modernization Programme materials and Year-End Review 2025*.
- Government of Bihar. *Bihar Panchayat Raj Act, 2006*.
- Government of Nepal, Nepal Law Commission. *Lands Act, 2021 B.S. (1964)*, as amended.
- Government of Nepal. *Third Plan, 1962–65*.
- Das, Arvind N. *Agrarian Unrest and Socio-Economic Change in Bihar, 1900–1980*. Manohar, 1983.
- Hauser, Walter. *Studies of the Bihar Provincial Kisan Sabha and peasant politics in Bihar*.
- Frankel, Francine R. *India’s Political Economy, 1947–2004*. Oxford University Press, revised edition.
- Bardhan, Pranab. *The Political Economy of Development in India*. Oxford University Press.
- Kunnath, George J. *Rebels from the Mud Houses: Dalits and the Making of the Maoist Revolution in Bihar*. Social Science Press / Routledge, 2012.
- NABARD. *Study of Agrarian Structure and Landholding Patterns in India, 2025*.
- Government of Bihar, Economic Survey and Agriculture Department statistical publications, relevant editions.
- Census of India. 2011. D-01: *Population Classified by Place of Birth and Sex, Bihar*. Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India.
- Census of India. 2011. D-02: *Migrants Classified by Place of Last Residence, Sex and Duration of Residence, Bihar*. Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India.
- Census of India. 2011. D-03: *Migrants by Place of Last Residence, Duration of Residence and Reasons for Migration, Bihar*. Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India.
- Census of India. 2011. D-05: *Migrants by Place of Last Residence, Age, Sex, Reason for Migration and Duration of Residence, Bihar*. Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India.
- Census of India. 2011. D-06: *Migrants by Place of Last Residence, Economic Activity, Age, Sex and Duration of Residence, Bihar*. Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India.
- Datta, Amrita. 2016. ‘Migration from Rural Bihar: Insights from a Longitudinal Study (1981–2011).’ In Himanshu, Praveen Jha and Gerry Rodgers (eds), *The Changing Village in India: Insights from Longitudinal Research*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, pp. 380–400.
- Datta, Amrita. 2020. ‘Circular Migration and Precarity: Perspectives from Rural Bihar.’ *Indian Journal of Labour Economics* 63(4): 1143–1163.
- Datta, Amrita. 2023. *Migration and Development in India: The Bihar Experience*. New Delhi: Routledge India.
- Datta, Amrita and Sunil K. Mishra. 2011. ‘Glimpses of Women’s Lives in Rural Bihar: Impact of Male Migration.’ *Indian Journal of Labour Economics* 54(3): 457–477.
- Grierson, George A. 1885. *Bihar Peasant Life: Being a Discursive Catalogue of the Surroundings of the People of that Province*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Press.
- Government of India, Ministry of Home Affairs. 2017. ‘Open Border of India and Nepal.’ Parliamentary/PIB statement, 26 July 2017.

- Government of India, Ministry of Railways. 2020. Statement on Shramik Special Trains and migrant passengers, 29 May 2020.
- Government of India. 2020. Garib Kalyan Rojgar Abhiyaan launch materials, 18–20 June 2020.
- Government of Nepal, Ministry of Labour, Employment and Social Security. 2025. Nepal Labour Migration Report 2024. Kathmandu.
- International Labour Organization. 2014. Labour Migration for Employment: A Status Report for Nepal 2013/2014. Kathmandu: ILO.
- Sen, Samita. 2004. 'Without His Consent? Marriage and Women's Migration in Colonial India.' *International Labor and Working-Class History* 65: 77–104.
- Sharma, Jeevan Raj. 2013. 'Nepal: Migration History and Trends.' In *Migration and Remittances during the Global Financial Crisis and Beyond*. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- Supreme Court of India. 2021. In Re: Problems and Miseries of Migrant Labourers, judgment dated 29 June 2021.
- Yang, Anand A. 1979. 'Peasants on the Move: A Study of Internal Migration in India.' *Journal of Interdisciplinary History* 10(1): 37–58.
- Bihar District Gazetteers: Darbhanga. Government of Bihar, various editions.
- Bihar District Gazetteers: Muzaffarpur. Government of Bihar, various editions.
- Bihar District Gazetteers: Bhagalpur. Government of Bihar, various editions.
- Agarwal, Perna. 2022. "The War at the Workplace: Calcutta's Dockworkers and Changing Labour Regime, 1939–1945." *International Review of Social History* 67(3): 407–434.
- Buat, Camille. 2020. "Segmented Possibilities: Migrant Life Histories of Hindustani Workers in Post-Colonial India." *International Labor and Working-Class History* 97: 134–158.
- Census of India. 2011. D-03 UA: Migrants from Urban Agglomerations by Place of Last Residence, Duration of Residence and Reasons for Migration, West Bengal. Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India.
- Chakrabarty, Dipesh. 1989. *Rethinking Working-Class History: Bengal, 1890–1940*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Chakravarty, Ishita and Deepita Chakravarty. 2013. "For Bed and Board Only: Women and Girl Children Domestic Workers in Post-Partition Calcutta (1951–1981)." *Modern Asian Studies* 47(2): 581–611.
- Das Gupta, Ranajit. 1987. *Migrant Workers, Rural Connexions and Capitalism: The Calcutta Jute Industrial Labour 1890s to 1940s*. Calcutta: Indian Institute of Management.
- De Haan, Arjan. 1994. *Unsettled Settlers: Migrant Workers and Industrial Capitalism in Calcutta*. Calcutta: K. P. Bagchi.
- De Haan, Arjan. 2008. "Unsettled Settlers: Migrant Workers and Industrial Capitalism in Calcutta." *Modern Asian Studies* 31(4), reissued online 2008.
- East Central Railway. "History of Railways in North Bihar: Tirhoot State Railway, Bengal and North Western Railway and Oudh & Tirhut Railway." General Information / historical note.
- Foley, B. 1906. *Report on Labour in Bengal*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot.
- Government of India. 1918. *Indian Industrial Commission, 1916–1918: Report*. Calcutta.
- Royal Commission on Labour in India. 1931. *Report and Evidence*. London / Delhi.
- Sailer, Anna. 2022. *Workplace Relations in Colonial Bengal: The Jute Industry and Indian Labour, 1870s–1930s*. London: Bloomsbury Academic.
- Sen, Samita. 1999. "Beyond the 'Working Class': Women's Role in Indian Industrialisation." *South Asia: Journal of South Asian Studies* 22(2): 95–117.
- Sinha, Nitin. 2018. "The Idea of Home in a World of Circulation: Steam, Women and Migration through Bhojpuri Folksongs." *International Review of Social History* 63(S26): 203–237.
- Bihar District Gazetteers: Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur and Bhagalpur. Government of Bihar, various editions.
- Bhagat, R. B. 2010. "Internal Migration in India: Are the Underprivileged Migrating More?" *Asia-Pacific Population Journal* 25 (1): 27–45.
- Census of India. 2011. D-02, D-03, D-05 and D-06 Migration Tables, Bihar; D-03 Migration Table, NCT of Delhi; and corresponding migration tables for Maharashtra. Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India.
- Deshingkar, Priya, and Shaheen Akter. 2009. *Migration and Human Development in India*. Human Development Research Paper 2009/13. United Nations Development Programme.
- Government of NCT of Delhi and Institute for Human Development. 2013. *Delhi Human Development Report 2013: Improving Lives, Promoting Inclusion*. New Delhi.
- Government of India, Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation. 2010. *Migration in India, 2007–2008*. NSS Report No. 533 (64/10.2/2). New Delhi: National Sample Survey Office.

- Institute for Human Development. 2001. Rural Labour Migration from Bihar. Study of migration from villages in Purnia, Madhubani and Gopalganj districts. New Delhi: IHD.
- International Labour Organization. 2020. Road Map for Development of Policy Framework for the Inclusion of Internal Migrant Workers in India. New Delhi: ILO DWT for South Asia and Country Office for India.
- International Labour Organization. 2021. Impact on Labour Supply due to COVID-19 Containment Measures in India: An Informal Employment Analysis. Geneva/New Delhi: ILO.
- Keshri, Kunal, and R. B. Bhagat. 2012. "Temporary and Seasonal Migration: Regional Pattern, Characteristics and Associated Factors." *Economic and Political Weekly* 47 (4): 81–88.
- Ministry of Consumer Affairs, Food and Public Distribution, Department of Food and Public Distribution. 2026. One Nation One Ration Card: Frequently Asked Questions and portability guidance.
- Ministry of Labour and Employment, Government of India. 2026. "Social Security for Unorganised Workers through e-Shram Portal." Press Information Bureau, 20 July 2026.
- Tumbe, Chinmay. 2018. *India Moving: A History of Migration*. Gurgaon: Penguin Viking.
- World Bank. 2023. "Inter-State Migrant Workers in India: Policy for a Decent World of Work." People Move / KNOMAD discussion, drawing on a post-COVID survey of low-income workers in Delhi and Mumbai.
- Ahuja, S. S., Pramod Rikhi, and Baldev Dogra. 2007. "Economics of Harvesting and Threshing of Wheat and Paddy in Northern India." *Journal of Agricultural Engineering* 44(2).
- Bhatt, Rajan, and Pritpal Singh. 2021. "Adoption Status of Crop Production Practices in Direct Seeded Rice: A Case Study of Kapurthala District of Punjab (India)." *Indian Journal of Extension Education* 57(3): 24–27.
- Gill, Jagjeet Singh, Surabhi Sharma, and Anil Sharma. 2017. "Employment Pattern of Migrant Labour in Punjab State: A Case Study." *Indian Journal of Extension Education* 53(4): 66–70.
- Government of Punjab. 2009. The Punjab Preservation of Subsoil Water Act, 2009, and subsequent notifications governing paddy nursery and transplantation dates.
- Government of Punjab. 2013. *Agriculture Policy for Punjab*. Chandigarh: Department of Agriculture.
- Indian Council of Agricultural Research. 2022. ICAR Annual Report 2021–22. New Delhi: ICAR. Section on the effect of COVID-19 on the farm economy of Punjab and Bihar.
- Punjab Agricultural University. 2024–2026. Extension notes and field demonstrations on mat-type nursery seeders, direct-seeded rice and mechanical paddy transplantation. Ludhiana: PAU.
- Rodgers, Gerry, and Janine Rodgers. 2001. "A Leap across Time: When Semi-Feudalism Met the Market in Rural Purnia." *Economic and Political Weekly* 36(22): 1976–1983.
- Rodgers, Gerry, and Janine Rodgers. 2011. "Inclusive Development? Migration, Governance and Social Change in Rural Bihar." *Economic and Political Weekly* 46(23): 43–50.
- Sharma, Alakh N. 1995. "Political Economy of Poverty in Bihar." *Economic and Political Weekly* 30(41–42): 2587–2602.
- Sharma, Alakh N. 2005. "Agrarian Relations and Socio-Economic Change in Bihar." *Economic and Political Weekly* 40(10): 960–972.
- Singh, Lakhwinder, Inderjeet Singh, and Ranjit Singh Ghuman. 2007. Changing Character of Rural Economy and Migrant Labour in Punjab. MPRA Paper 6420.
- Singh, Manjit. 1995. *Uneven Development in Agriculture and Labour Migration: A Case of Bihar and Punjab*. Shimla: Indian Institute of Advanced Study.
- Singh, Manjit. 1997. "Bonded Migrant Labour in Punjab Agriculture." *Economic and Political Weekly* 32(11): 518–519.
- Government of India, Ministry of External Affairs. 1950. Treaty of Peace and Friendship between the Government of India and the Government of Nepal, 31 July 1950.
- Embassy of India, Kathmandu. 2026. India–Nepal Bilateral Brief. Kathmandu: Embassy of India. Updated July 2026.
- Embassy of India, Kathmandu. 2025. "The 13th Meeting of the India–Nepal Joint Working Group on Border Management," 28 March 2025.
- Government of India, Ministry of Home Affairs. 2025. "India and Nepal Hold Home Secretary Level Talks in New Delhi," 23 July 2025.
- International Labour Organization. 2015. *Analysis of Labour Market and Migration Trends in Nepal*. Geneva/Kathmandu: ILO.
- Kansakar, Vidya Bir Singh. 2001. "Nepal–India Open Border: Nature, Pattern and Social Implications." In *India and Nepal: Aspects of Interdependent Relations*, edited by Ramakant and B. C. Upreti. New Delhi: Kalunga Publications.
- Sijapati, Bandita, and Amrita Limbu. 2017. *Governing Labour Migration in Nepal: An Analysis of Existing Policies and Institutional Mechanisms*. Kathmandu: Centre for the Study of Labour and Mobility.
- Thieme, Susan. 2006. *Social Networks and Migration: Far West Nepalese Labour Migrants in Delhi*. Münster: LIT Verlag.

- Central Bureau of Statistics, Nepal. 2023. National Population and Housing Census 2021: National Report. Kathmandu: Government of Nepal.
- World Bank. 2018. Moving for Prosperity: Global Migration and Labor Markets. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Various years. Macroeconomic and Financial Situation reports and remittance statistics. Kathmandu: NRB.
- Government of India, Ministry of External Affairs. Emigration Act, 1983, and current guidance on emigration abroad for employment, ECR/ECNR status, recruiting agents and emigration clearance.
- Government of India, Ministry of External Affairs. 2026. Parliamentary annexure: Number of Emigration Clearances Issued to Indian Nationals from 2016 to 2025. Bihar series and all-India state totals.
- Government of India, Ministry of External Affairs. 2026. Parliamentary annexure: District-wise and year-wise Emigration Clearances issued to emigrants from Bihar, 2014–2026.
- Government of India, Ministry of External Affairs. 2026. Parliamentary annexure: Year-wise and country-wise Emigration Clearances, 2023–2025.
- Government of India, Ministry of External Affairs. Guidelines for Emigration Clearance System and FAQs for intending emigrants.
- Government of India, Ministry of External Affairs. Pravasi Bharatiya Bima Yojana, 2017.
- Government of India, Ministry of External Affairs. Country Manuals for Emigrant Workers: UAE, Bahrain, Oman, Kuwait, Qatar and Saudi Arabia.
- International Labour Organization. 2016. India Labour Migration Update. New Delhi: ILO Decent Work Team for South Asia.
- International Labour Organization. 2015. Labour Migration from South Asia: Issues for Government and Private Sector Employers. Geneva/New Delhi: ILO.
- Rajan, S. Irudaya, ed. India Migration Report, various editions. New Delhi: Routledge.
- Rajan, S. Irudaya, V. J. Varghese, and M. S. Jayakumar. 2011. Dreaming Mobility and Buying Vulnerability: Overseas Recruitment Practices in India. New Delhi: Routledge / related migration studies.
- World Bank. 2024. Migration and Development Brief 40: Remittances Slowed in 2023, Expected to Grow Faster in 2024. Washington, DC.
- World Bank. 2025. Unlocking Nepal's Growth Potential: Nepal Country Economic Memorandum. Washington, DC.
- World Bank. 2026. Nepal Development Update, April 2026. Washington, DC.
- Government of Nepal, Ministry of Labour, Employment and Social Security. 2024. Nepal Labour Migration Report 2024. Kathmandu.
- Government of Nepal, Department of Foreign Employment. Annual Labour Approval Reports, including FY 2082/83. Kathmandu.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. 2026. Current Macroeconomic and Financial Situation of Nepal Based on Eight Months Data of 2025/26. Kathmandu.
- Zachariah, K. C., and S. Irudaya Rajan. 2015. Research on Gulf migration, remittances and return migration in India. Centre for Development Studies / related publications.
- Kumar, Nandan, and R. B. Bhagat. 2012. 'Outmigration from Bihar: Causes and Consequences.' Journal of Social and Economic Studies 22(2): 134–144.
- Ranjan, Rakesh. 2015. Remittance and Development: A Study of Selected Villages of Mithilanchal Region of Bihar. GRFDT Research Monograph 5. New Delhi: Global Research Forum on Diaspora and Transnationalism.
- Datta, Amrita. 2019. Continuity and Change: Migration and Development in India: The Case of Bihar. Doctoral thesis, Erasmus University Rotterdam.
- Ali, Imtiyaz, and R. B. Bhagat. 2016. 'Migration, Remittances, and Poverty Alleviation in Uttar Pradesh and Bihar, India.' Paper presented at the International Seminar on Growth, Disparities and Inclusive Development in Uttar Pradesh, Lucknow.
- Foundation for Agrarian Studies. 2022. Migration from Rural Bihar. Bengaluru: Foundation for Agrarian Studies.
- National Sample Survey Organisation. 2010. Migration in India, 2007–08. NSS 64th Round, Report No. 533. New Delhi: Government of India.
- National Statistics Office, Nepal. 2024. Nepal Living Standards Survey IV 2022/23: Statistical Report. Kathmandu: Government of Nepal.
- World Bank. 2024. Nepal Development Update: International Migration and Well-being in Nepal. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- World Bank. 2026. Nepal Development Update, April 2026. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- Reserve Bank of India. 2024. Report on Currency and Finance 2023–24, Chapter IV: Open Economy Digitalisation: Challenges and Opportunities. Mumbai: RBI.
- Ratha, Dilip, Vandana Chandra, Eung Ju Kim, Akhtar Mahmood, and Sonia Plaza. 2024. Migration and Development Brief 40. Washington, DC: World Bank.

- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011. A-04 series: Towns and Urban Agglomerations Classified by Population Size Class with Variation, 1901–2011.
- Government of Bihar, Fifth State Finance Commission. 2016. Report, Volume I. Chapter on Urban Local Bodies and Urban Monitor. Patna: Finance Department, Government of Bihar.
- Government of Bihar, Urban Development and Housing Department. Municipal Acts, notifications, urban local body records and planning documents, various years.
- Government of India, Ministry of Housing and Urban Affairs. Handbook of Urban Statistics and urban mission documents, various editions. New Delhi.
- National Institute of Urban Affairs. Studies on small and intermediate towns, municipal finance and urban infrastructure in India. New Delhi, various years.
- Office of the Registrar General, India. 2025. Gazette Notification declaring Census of India 2027 and its reference date.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. 2026. Preparatory activities and phase schedule for Census of India 2027.
- National Statistics Office, Nepal. 2023. National Population and Housing Census 2021: Madhesh Province Census Report. Kathmandu: Government of Nepal.
- National Statistics Office, Nepal. 2025. National Population and Housing Census 2021: Urbanization and Development in Nepal, Thematic Report XV. Kathmandu: Government of Nepal.
- National Statistics Office, Nepal. 2024. Population Composition of Nepal, National Population and Housing Census 2021. Kathmandu: Government of Nepal.
- World Bank. 2013. Urban Growth and Spatial Transition in Nepal: An Initial Assessment. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- Kundu, Amitabh. 2011. Trends and Processes of Urbanisation in India. Urbanization and Emerging Population Issues Working Paper 6. London/New York: IIED/UNFPA.
- Denis, Eric, Partha Mukhopadhyay, and Marie-Hélène Zerah. 2012. Subaltern Urbanisation in India. *Economic and Political Weekly* 47(30): 52–62.
- Government of India. 2014. The Street Vendors (Protection of Livelihood and Regulation of Street Vending) Act, 2014. New Delhi.
- Government of India, Ministry of Housing and Urban Affairs. 2026. PM SVANidhi: Advancing Financial Inclusion for Street Vendors. New Delhi.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. 2026. “PM SVANidhi Completes One Year of Restructuring: Expanding Credit, Digital Inclusion and Livelihoods Opportunities,” 27 August 2026.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. 2026. “Achievements and Socio-Economic Impact under the PM SVANidhi Scheme,” 10 August 2026.
- National Statistical Office, Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation. 2024. Annual Report, Periodic Labour Force Survey 2023–24. New Delhi: Government of India.
- National Statistical Office, Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation. 2026. Annual Survey of Unincorporated Sector Enterprises (ASUSE) 2025. New Delhi: Government of India.
- National Statistical Office, Nepal. 2019. Nepal Labour Force Survey 2017/18. Kathmandu: Government of Nepal.
- International Labour Organization. 2023. Diagnostic Report on the Extent, Circumstances, Causes, Factors and Nature of Informality in Nepal. Kathmandu: ILO Country Office for Nepal.
- World Bank. 2025. Nepal Informal Sector Enterprise Survey 2024. Enterprise Surveys. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- World Bank. 2026. What Nepal’s Smallest Businesses Reveal. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- Bhowmik, Sharit K. 2005. “Street Vendors in Asia: A Review.” *Economic and Political Weekly* 40(22/23): 2256–2264.
- Bhowmik, Sharit K. 2010. *Street Vendors in the Global Urban Economy*. New Delhi: Routledge India.
- Chen, Martha Alter. 2012. *The Informal Economy: Definitions, Theories and Policies*. WIEGO Working Paper 1. Manchester: WIEGO.
- Roever, Sally, and Caroline Skinner. 2016. “Street Vendors and Cities.” *Environment and Urbanization* 28(2): 359–374.
- Adhikari, Dipak Bahadur. 2018. “Informal Economy and Poverty in Urban Nepal.” *Economic Journal of Nepal* 41(3–4): 12–24.
- Jha, Mithilesh Kumar. 2018. *Language Politics and Public Sphere in North India: Making of the Maithili Movement*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Brass, Paul R. 1974. *Language, Religion and Politics in North India*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Cohen, Robin. 2008. *Global Diasporas: An Introduction*. 2nd ed. London: Routledge.
- Vertovec, Steven. 2009. *Transnationalism*. London: Routledge.
- Appadurai, Arjun. 1996. *Modernity at Large: Cultural Dimensions of Globalization*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Levitt, Peggy. 2001. *The Transnational Villagers*. Berkeley: University of California Press.

- Glick Schiller, Nina, Linda Basch, and Cristina Szanton Blanc. 1995. From Immigrant to Transmigrant: Theorizing Transnational Migration. *Anthropological Quarterly* 68(1): 48–63.
- Sahitya Akademi. 2023. List of Literary Associations in Indian Languages: Maithili. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi.
- Embassy of India, Oslo. 2020. Vishwa Maithili Sammelan 2020: Notice on Akhil Bharatiya Mithila Sangh and its objectives. Government of India.
- European Bulletin of Himalayan Research. 1994–95. 'Nepal Maithili Samaj: A Good Beginning.' *European Bulletin of Himalayan Research* 7/8.
- Antarrashtriya Maithili Parishad. 2026. Institutional history, objectives and organisational network. Official website.
- Association of Nepali Teraian in America. 2026. Who We Are; Our Vision; Trivani; Past Activities; and organisational history. Official website.
- Association of Nepali Teraian in America. 2025. Eighth General Convention and twentieth-anniversary materials. Official website.
- Maithil Association of America. 2026. About Us, core values and programme descriptions. Official website.
- Karnataka Mithila Sanskritik Parishad. 2026. Organisation profile, registration details and cultural programme descriptions. Official website.
- Gautam, Bhim Lal. 2022. Multilingualism and Language Contact in Maithili: Trends, Traits and Impact in Sociolinguistic Spaces. Gipan.
- Safran, William. 1991. Diasporas in Modern Societies: Myths of Homeland and Return. *Diaspora* 1(1): 83–99.
- Clifford, James. 1994. Diasporas. *Cultural Anthropology* 9(3): 302–338.
- Choudhary, Radhakrishna. 1976. A Survey of Maithili Literature. Patna: Ram Vilas Sahu.
- Jha, Devakanta. 2007. A History of Modern Maithili Literature: Post-Independence Period. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi.
- Mishra, Jayakanta. 1950. A History of Maithili Literature, Vol. II: Modern Period. Allahabad: Tirabhukti Publications.
- Mishra, Jayakanta. 1976. History of Maithili Literature. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi.
- Mishra, Chandranath 'Amar'. 1981. Maithili Patrakaritik Itihas. Maithili.
- Kamat, Devanand. 2024. 'The Voice of Mithila Mihir: The Making of the Idea of Mithila.' *Nidan: International Journal for Indian Studies*.
- The Indian Economic and Social History Review. 2024. 'An Elusive Quest for a Region: Darbhanga.' 61(1): 5-31.
- Sahitya Akademi. Maithili Awards List, 1966-2025. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi.
- Sahitya Akademi. Maithili Publication Catalogue and National Bibliography of Indian Literature materials. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi.
- Sahitya Akademi. 2013. 'The Contribution of Maithili Journals in the Development of Maithili Language and Literature.' Akademi Newsletter, report of Kolkata symposium, 22 September 2013.
- Government of India. 2003. Constitution (Ninety-second Amendment) Act, 2003; Eighth Schedule, effective 7 January 2004.
- Lok Sabha Secretariat. 2012. Unstarred Question No. 6649, 'Maithili Academy', answered 16 May 2012.
- Government of Bihar. 1975. Resolution Memo No. 876, 11 March 1975, establishing Maithili Academy as a society; status discussed in Patna High Court CWJC No. 20975 of 2013, judgment dated 30 January 2026.
- Maithili Sahitya Sansthan. Institutional history and Mithila Bharati publication record, Patna.
- Nepal Academy. Institutional mandate and publications, Kathmandu.
- Nepal Academy. 2025. Notice on the annual Maithili literary magazine Aangna, year 11, short-story special issue.
- Yadava, Yogendra P., et al. Linguistic Survey of Nepal: Maithili. Kathmandu: Central Department of Linguistics / Government of Nepal materials.
- European Bulletin of Himalayan Research. 1995. Survey material on Maithili organisations in Nepal, issue 7-8.
- Thakur, Gajendra, ed. Videha - First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal, ISSN 2229-547X. Digital publication and archive since 2000.
- Orsini, Francesca. 2009. The Hindi Public Sphere 1920-1940: Language and Literature in the Age of Nationalism. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Stark, Ulrike. 2007. An Empire of Books: The Naval Kishore Press and the Diffusion of the Printed Word in Colonial India. Ranikhet: Permanent Black.
- Grierson, George A. 1903. Linguistic Survey of India, Vol. V, Part II: Bihari and Oriya. Calcutta: Office of the Superintendent of Government Printing.
- Mahesh, Maheshwari Singh. 1959. Angika Bhasha aur Sahitya. Patna: Bihar Rashtrabhasha Parishad.
- Pandey, Baidyanath, and Radhavallabh Verma, eds. Angika Sanskar Geet. Patna: Bihar Rashtrabhasha Parishad.
- Choudhary, Abhaykant, and Naresh Pandey Chakor. Angika Sahitya Ka Itihas. Multiple editions.

- Jha, Madhusudan. *Angika Patrakarita Ro Itihas*.
- Ang Madhuri. 1970 onward. *Angika* monthly periodical; surviving issue archive, including January 1971, Year 1, Issue 2.
- Angika.com. *Angika Patrika Kosh*, *Angika Kitab Kosh*, *Sahityakar Kosh*, grammar and dictionary collections; volunteer digital project operating since 2003.
- Tilka Manjhi Bhagalpur University. Faculty of Humanities: University Department of Angika; official examination programmes for postgraduate Angika, 2024–2025; budget abstract 2025–26.
- Prabhat Khabar. 2015. Reports on the establishment and history of the TMBU Angika Department and the Bihar Angika Academy Bihar Education Department. 2018. Notifications concerning the acting president-cum-director of Bihar Angika Academy, Patna.
- Government and press records on Bihar Angika Academy, established 2015; contemporary administrative condition cross-checked with 2026 reporting on Bihar language academies.
- Jharkhand government and scholarly materials on the state's second-language framework; Angika included among the recognised second state languages, with 2018 inclusion reported for Angika, Magahi, Bhojpuri and Maithili.
- Akhil Bharatiya Angika Sahitya Kala Manch. Anniversary and programme records; contemporary regional press reports of literary meetings and awards.
- Amrendra. Author bibliography and publication record, including titles issued by Angika Sansad, Bhagalpur, and other small presses
- Wikimedia Foundation / Wikimedia Phabricator. 2023. T332115, 'Create Wikipedia Angika'; language code anp and creation workflow for anp.wikipedia.org.
- Wikidata. Angika Wikipedia (Q117306515), inception 22 March 2023; Wikimedia project metadata.
- Central Institute of Indian Languages-related seminar reporting, Bhagalpur, 2022.
- Times of India. 2026. 'Crisis looms for Bihar's language academies as staff numbers dwindle.'
- All India Radio. 2007. AIR Compendium 2007. New Delhi: Directorate General, All India Radio.
- Government of India, Ministry of Information and Broadcasting. 1991. Lok Sabha written answer, 25 November 1991, on the Darbhanga broadcasting centre and Maithili news demand.
- Government of India, Ministry of Information and Broadcasting. 2021. Lok Sabha Starred Question No. 168, answered 30 July 2021. Akashvani Darbhanga transmission, languages and internet streaming.
- Government of India, Ministry of Information and Broadcasting. 2026. Lok Sabha Unstarred Question No. 6080, answered 1 April 2026, and Press Information Bureau release on Akashvani Bhagalpur services.
- Prasar Bharati. Akashvani: institutional overview and live-radio directory. Current public-service network and online distribution information.
- Page, David, and William Crawley. 2001. *Satellites over South Asia: Broadcasting, Culture and the Public Interest*. New Delhi: Sage.
- Kumar, Keval J. *Mass Communication in India*. Multiple editions. Mumbai: Jaico.
- Brass, Paul R. *Language, Religion and Politics in North India*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1974.
- Radio Nepal. Organizational Overview. Public Service Broadcasting, Nepal. Institutional history, multilingual news and distribution system.
- Parajuli, Lokranjan. 2023. "Radio as a Propaganda Tool: The History of Broadcasting in Nepal." Annual Kathmandu Conference on Nepal and the Himalaya.
- Onta, Pratyoush. 2010. "Independent Radio and Public Engagement in Nepal." *Studies in Nepali History and Society* 14(2): 335–366.
- Martin Chautari. 2012. *The Need for a Citizen-Oriented Radio Policy*. Policy Paper No. 7. Kathmandu.
- Radio Sagarmatha. Institutional history. Kathmandu/Lalitpur: Nepal Forum of Environmental Journalists.
- UNESCO. 2001. *Community Radio Handbook*. Paris: UNESCO.
- Sah, Bishwa Nath. 2010. *English Code Mixing in Maithili FM Programs: A Descriptive Study*. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, Department of English Education.
- GoGo Foundation Nepal. 2017 onward. "Appan Shikshya" Maithili radio programme documentation, including distribution through six FM stations in Dhanusha, Mahottari and Siraha.
- Angika.com. Biographical and literary records of Angika writers and performers, including documentation of radio drama and Akashvani Bhagalpur participation
- Tilburg / Martin Chautari and Nepal media studies literature on multilingual and independent FM broadcasting.
- Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal, ISSN 2229-547X. Digital audio, literary and cultural archive
- Das, Arvind. 2020. "All these years later, Maithili cinema is still in search of a home." *Scroll.in*, 5 December 2020.
- Das, Arvind. 2023. "Amid a Bollywood wave, Maithili films offer new perspective on societal issues, but lack exposure." *The Kathmandu Post*, 22 July 2023.

- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. 2016. “63rd National Film Awards, 2015 announced,” 28 March 2016. Institutional record for the National Film Awards; Mithila Makhaan received Best Maithili Film.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. 2023. 69th National Film Awards announcement/results. Institutional record identifying Samanantar as Best Maithili Film for the 2021 awards year.
- The Indian Express / IANS. 2016. “Will continue making regional films, says Neetu Chandra,” 1 October 2016. Contemporary production and distribution context for Mithila Makhaan.
- Kantipur. 2018. “Badhdai chha Maithili prabhav” [Growing Maithili influence], 5 August 2018.
- Onlinekhabar. 2024. Report on the first Maithili International Film Festival in Janakpur, June 2024.
- Onlinekhabar. 2021. Report on the Maithili-language version of Rajja Rani receiving recognition at the Shine Cine Film Festival.
- Film Heritage Foundation. “Archiving and Preservation” and “Restoration.” Mumbai.
- Rajadhyaksha, Ashish, and Paul Willemen. 1999. *Encyclopaedia of Indian Cinema*. Revised edition. London: British Film Institute / Oxford University Press. General reference for Indian film history and archival method.
- Vasudevan, Ravi. 2010. *The Melodramatic Public: Film Form and Spectatorship in Indian Cinema*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Ganti, Tejaswini. 2012. *Producing Bollywood: Inside the Contemporary Hindi Film Industry*. Durham: Duke University Press.
- Pendakur, Manjunath. 2003. *Indian Popular Cinema: Industry, Ideology and Consciousness*. Cresskill, NJ: Hampton Press.
- Larkin, Brian. 2008. *Signal and Noise: Media, Infrastructure, and Urban Culture in Nigeria*. Durham: Duke University Press. Comparative methodological reference for media infrastructures, piracy and vernacular circulation.
- Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal, ISSN 2229-547X. Videha Archive, audio archive and video archive pages.
- Videha. “Parallel History” and archival documentation pages describing digitised books, manuscripts and audio-video-cultural material.
- National Film Archive of India / NFDC archival framework and Film Heritage Foundation preservation literature.
- Mishra, Chandranath “Amar.” 1981. *Maithili Patrakaritik Itihas*.
- Thakur, Dhanakar. 2011. “Maithili Journalism (1905–2011).” *Maithili Sandesh* / subsequently reproduced online.
- Government of India, Registrar of Newspapers for India. *Press in India, 1965–1970 annual reports*.
- Government of India, Press Registrar General of India. *Press in India 2021–22*, especially Table 8.10, “Circulation Pattern of Maithili Newspapers.”
- Press Registrar General of India. Registered Title database. Records consulted include Mithila Vani (Darbhanga, Maithili weekly, registration 1968), Sona Maati (Patna, Maithili monthly, 1970), Samadiya Mithila (Patna, Maithili daily, 2010) and Mithila Mirror (Delhi, Maithili monthly, 2018).
- Government of India. *Press and Registration of Periodicals Act, 2023; Press and Registration of Periodicals Rules, 2024*. In force from 1 March 2024; institutional basis for the transition from RNI to PRGI and online registration.
- Press Registrar General of India. 2024. *FAQs on the Press and Registration of Periodicals Act, 2023 and Press Sewa Portal*.
- Press Council Nepal. “Provision of Free Press under the Constitution of Nepal 2072 (2015).”
- Janakpur Today Media Group. *Janakpur Today print/e-paper and institutional pages*.
- Committee to Protect Journalists and Nepali court/news reporting on the 2010 murder of Janakpur Today media owner Arun Singhaniya.
- Mithila Jagaran. Current Janakpur-based web publication.
- Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal, ISSN 2229-547X. Since 2000.
- Jeffrey, Robin. 2000. *India’s Newspaper Revolution: Capitalism, Politics and the Indian-Language Press, 1977–99*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Ninan, Sevanti. 2007. *Headlines from the Heartland: Reinventing the Hindi Public Sphere*. New Delhi: Sage.
- Rajagopal, Arvind. 2001. *Politics After Television: Hindu Nationalism and the Reshaping of the Public in India*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Orsini, Francesca. 2002. *The Hindi Public Sphere 1920–1940: Language and Literature in the Age of Nationalism*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press. Comparative methodological reference for language, print, literature and political publics.
- Sahitya Akademi. About Us / Constitution and institutional history.
- Sahitya Akademi. *Akademi Awards (1955–2025)*, Maithili section.
- Sahitya Akademi. *Members of Advisory Boards: Maithili, term 2023–2027*.
- Sahitya Akademi. *Sahitya Akademi Prize for Translation; Translation Prize winners, Maithili*.
- Sahitya Akademi. *Annual Report 2023–24*.
- Sahitya Akademi. *Bhasha Samman: history and procedure*.

- Government of India. Constitution (Ninety-second Amendment) Act, 2003, effective 7 January 2004.
- Lok Sabha, Government of India. Unstarred Question No. 6649, answered 16 May 2012, 'Maithili Academy'.
- Patna High Court. Chandra Mohan Jha v. State of Bihar & Ors., LPA No. 742 of 2011, judgment 8 April 2013.
- Hindustan (Patna). 2017 report on launch of the Maithili Academy website.
- Hindustan and Prabhat Khabar reports, December 2025–January 2026, on demands to revive/reconstitute the Bihar Maithili Academy.
- Nepal Academy. 18 March 2025 notice, 'Maithili bhashako varshik sahityik patrika Angana prakashit'.
- Bourdieu, Pierre. 1993. *The Field of Cultural Production*. New York: Columbia University Press.
- Guillory, John. 1993. *Cultural Capital: The Problem of Literary Canon Formation*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Casanova, Pascale. 2004. *The World Republic of Letters*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
- Pollock, Sheldon, ed. 2003. *Literary Cultures in History: Reconstructions from South Asia*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Sahitya Akademi. Annual Report 2015–2016.
- Sahitya Akademi. Annual Report 2013–2014.
- Sahitya Akademi. Annual Report 2018–2019.
- Sahitya Akademi. Members of Advisory Boards: Maithili, 2023–2027.
- Sahitya Akademi. Akademi Translation Prizes (1989–2024), Maithili section.
- Sahitya Akademi. World Book Fair programme, January 2026.
- Jha, Devakanta. 2004. *A History of Modern Maithili Literature: Post-independence Period*. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi.
- Davis, Coralynn V. 2014. *Maithil Women's Tales: Storytelling on the Nepal–India Border*. Urbana: University of Illinois Press.
- Davis, Coralynn V. 2025. *Maithil Women's Oral Tales Digital Archive*. Bucknell University.
- Nepal Academy. 18 March 2025. Notice on publication of the Maithili annual literary journal *Angana*, year 11.
- Burkert, Claire / Janakpur Women's Development Center. 1998. Introduction to the JWDC Maithil Paintings exhibition.
- Fraser, Nancy. 1990. 'Rethinking the Public Sphere: A Contribution to the Critique of Actually Existing Democracy.' *Social Text* 25/26: 56–80.
- Warner, Michael. 2002. *Publics and Counterpublics*. New York: Zone Books.
- Tharu, Susie, and K. Lalita, eds. 1991–1993. *Women Writing in India: 600 B.C. to the Present*. 2 vols. New York: Feminist Press.
- Sangari, Kumkum, and Sudesh Vaid, eds. 1989. *Recasting Women: Essays in Colonial History*. New Delhi: Kali for Women.
- Videha. Home page, 'Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal', ISSN 2229-547X. Current masthead, twice-monthly publication statement, contributor instructions, rights statement and accessibility notice. Accessed 2026.
- Videha. 'We started from one and reached number three, then thirty and now three hundred!!' Institutional retrospective on the 300th issue.
- Videha. *A Parallel History of Mithila & Maithili Literature*.
- Videha. Investigation / script-technology pages.
- Videha. Book and e-learning pages.
- Videha Google Group. Public issue announcements and project notices.
- Videha eJournal GitHub Pages. Videha Quiz and Videha Sadeha repositories/sites.
- Videha. 'Videha सर्व-औजार / PDF · Image · Audio Tool'.
- Unicode Consortium. 2014. *The Unicode Standard, Version 7.0.0*. Mountain View, CA: Unicode Consortium.
- World Wide Web Consortium. 2023. *Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG) 2.2*, W3C Recommendation, 5 October 2023.
- Library of Congress. Digital Preservation. Current guidance on sustainable formats, born-digital materials, metadata and preservation infrastructure.
- Library of Congress. 'Keeping Personal Websites, Blogs and Social Media.' Digital Preservation guidance.
- LOCKSS Program. 'For Publishers' and programme documentation.
- Kirschenbaum, Matthew G. 2008. *Mechanisms: New Media and the Forensic Imagination*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Schreibman, Susan, Ray Siemens, and John Unsworth, eds. 2004. *A Companion to Digital Humanities*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Borgman, Christine L. 2007. *Scholarship in the Digital Age: Information, Infrastructure, and the Internet*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Risam, Roopika. 2019. *New Digital Worlds: Postcolonial Digital Humanities in Theory, Praxis, and Pedagogy*. Evanston, IL: Northwestern University Press.

- Earhart, Amy E. 2015. *Traces of the Old, Uses of the New: The Emergence of Digital Literary Studies*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press.
- National Archives of India. "Information Technology." Government of India. Current institutional statement on mass digitisation, Abhilekh-Patal access, and preservation of physical and digitised records. Accessed September 2026.
- Ministry of Culture, Government of India. National Mission for Manuscripts. Annual reports and programme documentation.
- Ministry of Culture, Government of India. 2022. *A Handbook of Best Practices for Museums and Cultural Institutions*.
- National Digital Library of India. Current service documentation. IIT Kharagpur / Ministry of Education.
- National Archives of Nepal. Official website and National Archives Digital Repository.
- Nepal Academy. E-Library. Current digital catalogue for language, literature, culture, philosophy, social science and periodical materials.
- Library of Congress. Digital Preservation. Current guidance on sustainable formats, storage, metadata, personal digital archiving and born-digital collections.
- National Digital Stewardship Alliance. Levels of Digital Preservation.
- Digital Preservation Coalition. Digital Preservation Handbook. Comparative guidance for preservation planning, file formats, fixity, storage, risk and organisational responsibilities.
- Consultative Committee for Space Data Systems. 2012. Reference Model for an Open Archival Information System (OAIS), Recommended Practice CCSDS 650.0-M-2.
- International Organization for Standardization. ISO 14721:2012. Open Archival Information System (OAIS) — Reference Model.
- International Organization for Standardization. ISO 16363:2012. Audit and Certification of Trustworthy Digital Repositories.
- PREMIS Editorial Committee. PREMIS Data Dictionary for Preservation Metadata.
- Library of Congress. METS: Metadata Encoding and Transmission Standard.
- Federal Agencies Digital Guidelines Initiative. Technical Guidelines for Digitizing Cultural Heritage Materials.
- International Association of Sound and Audiovisual Archives. IASA-TC 04: Guidelines on the Production and Preservation of Digital Audio Objects.
- UNESCO. 2003. *Charter on the Preservation of Digital Heritage*. Paris: UNESCO.
- UNESCO. 2015. *Recommendation Concerning the Preservation of, and Access to, Documentary Heritage Including in Digital Form*.
- Conway, Paul. 2010. "Preservation in the Age of Google: Digitization, Digital Preservation, and Dilemmas." *Library Quarterly* 80(1): 61–79.
- Owens, Trevor. 2018. *The Theory and Craft of Digital Preservation*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Rosenthal, David S. H., et al. 2005. "Requirements for Digital Preservation Systems: A Bottom-Up Approach." *D-Lib Magazine* 11(11).
- LOCKSS Program. Programme documentation.
- Internet Archive. Web archiving and preservation documentation. Comparative principles of periodic web capture and recovery of historical websites.
- Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal. Current and archived web infrastructure. Regional case of born-digital serial publication, static HTML, mirrors, repositories, audiovisual collections and evolving archival practice.
- The Unicode Consortium. The Unicode Standard, Version 7.0. Mountain View, CA, 2014. Tirhuta was added in this version.
- The Unicode Consortium. Tirhuta, Unicode block U+11480–U+114DF. Current code chart and names list.
- Pandey, Anshuman. 2011. Proposal to Encode the Tirhuta Script in ISO/IEC 10646. ISO/IEC JTC1/SC2/WG2 N4035 / Unicode L2/11-175R.
- Unicode Technical Committee. Document registers and records concerning the encoding of Tirhuta/Maithili script.
- Vikas, Om. 2005. Presentation concerning Maithili/Tirhuta encoding to the Unicode Technical Committee, cited in the Tirhuta encoding proposal.
- Google Fonts / Noto Project. Noto Sans Tirhuta. OpenType font support for the Tirhuta script.
- The Unicode Consortium. Unicode Standard Annex #15: Unicode Normalization Forms. Current edition.
- The Unicode Consortium. Unicode Standard Annex #29: Unicode Text Segmentation. Current edition.
- World Wide Web Consortium. Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG) 2.2. W3C Recommendation, 2023.
- Library of Congress. Recommended Formats Statement and Digital Preservation guidance. Current editions.
- UNESCO. Recommendation concerning the Preservation of, and Access to, Documentary Heritage Including in Digital Form. Paris, 2015.
- Videha. Tirhuta/Mithilakshara font, keyboard and conversion resources and related digital-publishing pages.

- Videha. Tirhuta-format periodical and archive materials.
- Everson, Michael. Unicode and ISO script-encoding documentation, comparative material on minority-script standardisation.
- Coulmas, Florian. 2003. *Writing Systems: An Introduction to Their Linguistic Analysis*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Daniels, Peter T., and William Bright, eds. 1996. *The World's Writing Systems*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011, A-02: Decadal Variation in Population 1901–2011, Bihar.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011, D-Series Migration Tables for Bihar, including D-01 and D-11.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Language Tables and Linguistic Survey of India: Bihar, based on Census 2011 language returns.
- Ministry of Home Affairs, Government of India. Gazette Notification S.O. 2681(E), 16 June 2025: Population Census 2027 and reference dates.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. Census 2027 operational releases, 2026: digital enumeration, self-enumeration, houselisting and population-enumeration framework.
- Technical Group on Population Projections, National Commission on Population. *Population Projections for India and States 2011–2036*. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare.
- International Institute for Population Sciences (IIPS) and ICF. *National Family Health Survey (NFHS-5), 2019–21: Bihar Fact Sheet and State Report*. Mumbai: IIPS.
- Finance Department, Government of Bihar. *Economic Survey 2024–25*. Patna: Government of Bihar.
- Finance Department, Government of Bihar. *Economic Survey 2014–15 and later demographic chapters using Census 2011 baseline data*. Patna: Government of Bihar.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. *Languages in Nepal: National Population and Housing Census 2021 Thematic Report*. Kathmandu.
- Dyson, Tim. 2018. *A Population History of India: From the First Modern People to the Present Day*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Davis, Kingsley. 1951. *The Population of India and Pakistan*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Deshingkar, Priya, and John Farrington, eds. 2009. *Circular Migration and Multilocational Livelihood Strategies in Rural India*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Srivastava, Ravi. 2011. “Labour Migration in India: Recent Trends, Patterns and Policy Issues.” *The Indian Journal of Labour Economics* 54(3): 411–440.
- Ministry of Labour, Employment and Social Security, Government of Nepal. 2025. *Nepal Labour Migration Report 2024*. Kathmandu, prepared with technical support from ILO and CESLAM/Social Science Baha.
- Department of Agriculture, Government of Bihar. *Fourth Agriculture Roadmap, 2023–2028*. Patna.
- Department of Agriculture, Cooperation and Farmers Welfare, Government of India. *Agriculture Census 2015–16: All India Report on Number and Area of Operational Holdings*. New Delhi.
- Department of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare, Government of India. *Agriculture Census 2021–22: Operational Guidelines and Manual of Instructions*. New Delhi.
- Directorate of Economics and Statistics, Department of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare. *Agricultural Statistics at a Glance*, recent editions. New Delhi.
- Indian Council of Agricultural Research. *State Agriculture Profile: Bihar*. New Delhi: ICAR.
- ICAR Research Complex for Eastern Region, Patna. Research and extension publications on eastern-region cropping systems, natural-resource management and climate resilience.
- ICAR–Mahatma Gandhi Integrated Farming Research Institute, Motihari. 2025–26 field-extension reports on soil health, integrated farming and climate-resilient agriculture in Bihar.
- ICAR–Indian Institute of Water Management. *Studies on post-flood crop management and agricultural resilience in flood-prone Bihar*.
- Bihar Agricultural University, Sabour. Research publications on rice, maize, horticulture, soil management and climate-resilient agriculture.
- Dr Rajendra Prasad Central Agricultural University, Pusa. Research and extension publications on eastern Indo-Gangetic agriculture.
- Directorate of Horticulture, Government of Bihar. *Horticulture programme and crop-development statistics, including makhana development schemes*.
- Government of Bihar. *Green Budget 2024–25: agriculture, organic corridor, watershed and water-conservation initiatives*.

- National Horticulture Board. Horticulture Statistics at a Glance and crop reports for Bihar. Gurugram: Government of India.
- Commission for Agricultural Costs and Prices. Price Policy Reports for Kharif and Rabi Crops, recent editions. New Delhi.
- Ministry of Agriculture and Livestock Development, Government of Nepal. Statistical Information on Nepalese Agriculture 2080/81 and 2081/82. Kathmandu.
- Ministry of Agriculture and Livestock Development, Government of Nepal. Agricultural Statistics Pocket Book 2023. Kathmandu.
- Investment Board Nepal. Sectoral Profile: Agriculture. Kathmandu, 2025.
- Council on Energy, Environment and Water. Scaling Climate-Resilient Agriculture in India: evidence including Bihar's Climate Resilient Agriculture programme. New Delhi, 2025.
- International Maize and Wheat Improvement Center (CIMMYT) and Borlaug Institute for South Asia. Research on cereal systems, zero tillage and climate adaptation in the eastern Indo-Gangetic plains.
- Agarwal, Bina. A Field of One's Own: Gender and Land Rights in South Asia. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994.
- Sharma, Alakh N. Studies of agrarian change, rural labour and migration in Bihar and eastern India.
- Breman, Jan. Footloose Labour: Working in India's Informal Economy. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996.
- World Bank. Agriculture, water and rural livelihoods analyses for Bihar and Nepal
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. State/UT-wise Number and Percentage of Marginal and Small Operational Holders as per Agriculture Census 2015–16, 2021.
- Finance Department, Government of Bihar. Economic Survey 2019–20. Patna: Government of Bihar, especially landholding structure and cropping pattern tables.
- Revenue and Land Reforms Department, Government of Bihar. Departmental mandate, land consolidation, survey and settlement, BiharBhumi and land-record services, accessed 2026.
- Revenue and Land Reforms Department, Government of Bihar. Special Survey and Settlement: Frequently Asked Questions and procedural guidance.
- Revenue and Land Reforms Department, Government of Bihar. Revenue Maha-Abhiyan, 16 August–20 September 2025: land-record correction campaign documentation.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Consolidation of Holdings and Prevention of Fragmentation Act, 1956, as administered through the Revenue and Land Reforms framework.
- Bihar Rural Livelihoods Promotion Society (JEEViKA). Annual Report 2024–25 and Quarterly Progress Reports through 2025–26. Patna.
- World Bank. Unleashing the Power of Women's Collectives for Rural Development in the Indian State of Bihar. Results brief, 2020.
- World Bank. Women Farmers Producer Companies: Expanding Women's Economic Space in the Rural Economy — Lessons from the JEEViKA Project, Bihar. Knowledge note.
- Ministry of Rural Development, Government of India. Action Plan of States/UTs 2024–25: Bihar MGNREGA Labour Budget and 2023–24 performance indicators. New Delhi.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. National Sample Census of Agriculture 2021/22: National Report. Kathmandu.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. Agriculture Census 2021/22: District Summary Report by Province. Kathmandu.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. Nepal Statistical Year Book 2023, table on holdings area and fragmentation by province.
- Sharma, Alakh N. Studies on agrarian relations, rural labour and migration in Bihar and eastern India.
- Bernstein, Henry. Class Dynamics of Agrarian Change. Halifax: Fernwood Publishing, 2010.
- National Council of Applied Economic Research. Agricultural Growth Diagnostics for Bihar: Identifying the Binding Constraints and Policy Remedies. New Delhi, 2019.
- World Bank. Bihar Rural Livelihoods Project and Bihar Transformative Development Project documentation on self-help groups, producer institutions, credit and livelihood diversification.
- International Labour Organization and Institute for Human Development. Studies of labour migration, informality and rural livelihoods in eastern India.
- FAO. World Programme for the Census of Agriculture 2020: concepts of agricultural holding, parcels, tenure and land use. Rome.
- Deininger, Klaus. Land Policies for Growth and Poverty Reduction. Washington, DC: World Bank and Oxford University Press, 2003.
- Finance Department, Government of Bihar. Economic Survey 2019–20. Patna. Chapter V: Labour, Employment and Migration.
- Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation, Government of India. Migration in India 2007–08, NSS 64th Round, Report No. 533. New Delhi.

- Office of the Registrar General and Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011 migration tables, including D-series tables on place of last residence and reasons for migration.
- Sharma, Alakh N., ed. *People on the Move: Nature and Implications of Migration in a Backward Economy*. New Delhi: Vikas, 1997.
- Rodgers, Gerry, Amrita Datta, Janine Rodgers, Sunil K. Mishra and Alakh N. Sharma, eds. *The Challenge of Inclusive Development in Rural Bihar*. New Delhi: Institute for Human Development and Manak, 2013.
- Datta, Amrita. *Migration and Development in India: The Bihar Experience*. Abingdon: Routledge, 2022.
- Institute for Human Development. Bihar migration and rural-transformation research programme; longitudinal village survey findings and COVID-19 livelihood study.
- Kumar, Girish and Pranab Banerji. *Poverty and Migration: Some Insights from a Study on Bihari Migrant Labour*. Institute for Human Development research paper / seminar study, 2010.
- World Bank. Bihar Rural Economic Transformation and non-farm economy analytical work, including evidence on migration, remittances and return migrants.
- Ministry of Labour and Employment, Government of India. e-Shram portal: National Database of Unorganised Workers, objectives and migrant-worker portability framework, accessed September 2026.
- Department of Food and Public Distribution, Government of India. One Nation One Ration Card: nationwide portability of NFSA food-grain entitlements, current programme documentation, 2026.
- Government of India. Occupational Safety, Health and Working Conditions Code, 2020, provisions concerning inter-State migrant workers.
- Labour Resources and Migrant Workers Welfare Department, Government of Bihar. Departmental mandate and Bihar State Migrant Workers Accident Grant Scheme, current official documentation.
- Ministry of Rural Development, Government of India. MGNREGA administrative reports and migrant-return livelihood measures.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. Nepal Living Standards Survey IV 2022/23. Kathmandu, including migration, absentee and remittance chapters.
- International Labour Organization and Institute for Human Development. *India Employment Report 2024: Youth Employment, Education and Skills*. Geneva/New Delhi, 2024.
- Deshingkar, Priya and Sven Grimm. *Internal Migration and Development: A Global Perspective*. Geneva: International Organization for Migration, 2005.
- Srivastava, Ravi. *Labour Migration, Vulnerability and Development Policy in India: research on circular and inter-state migrant workers*.
- de Haan, Arjan. *Livelihoods and Poverty: The Role of Migration — A Critical Review of the Migration Literature*. Journal of Development Studies, 1999.
- International Organization for Migration. *World Migration Report 2024*. Geneva: IOM, 2024.
- Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation, Government of India. Household Consumption Expenditure Survey 2023–24, Report No. 592. New Delhi, 2025.
- Institute for Human Development. *The Challenge of Inclusive Development in Rural Bihar*. New Delhi: IHD and Manak Publications, 2013.
- Institute for Human Development. *Development Research on Bihar, 2000–2010: compendium of migration, remittance, labour and poverty studies*.
- Institute for Human Development. *Impact of Migration on Poverty: The Case of Construction Workers of India, Nepal and Bangladesh*. Research programme findings.
- Directorate of Economics and Statistics, Government of Bihar. National Sample Survey programme and socio-economic survey documentation, current portal, 2026.
- Office of the Registrar General and Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011 housing, household amenities and migration tables.
- Ministry of Rural Development, Government of India. Pradhan Mantri Awaas Yojana–Gramin programme guidelines and administrative progress reports.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. Nepal Living Standards Survey 2022–2023 microdata catalogue and documentation, updated 2026.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Current Macroeconomic and Financial Situation and annual remittance indicators, 2025/26.
- World Bank. Migration and Development Brief series; remittances, transaction costs and development finance.
- de Haas, Hein. Migration and Development: A Theoretical Perspective. *International Migration Review* 44, no. 1 (2010): 227–264.
- Taylor, J. Edward. The New Economics of Labour Migration and the Role of Remittances in the Migration Process. *International Migration* 37, no. 1 (1999): 63–88.

- Stark, Oded. *The Migration of Labor*. Oxford: Basil Blackwell, 1991.
- Srivastava, Ravi. *Labour Migration, Vulnerability and Development Policy in India: studies of circular and inter-state migrant workers*. Government of India. Pradhan Mantri Jan-Dhan Yojana, digital payments and financial-inclusion programme documentation.
- Ministry of Education, Government of India. *All India Survey on Higher Education (AISHE) 2021–22*. New Delhi, 2024.
- Ministry of Education, Government of India. *UDISE+ Report 2023–24, Existing Structure and NEP Structure*. New Delhi, 2025.
- ASER Centre. *Annual Status of Education Report 2024*. New Delhi: Pratham Education Foundation, 2025.
- Ministry of Education, Government of India. *Guidelines for Regulation of Coaching Center*. Department of Higher Education, January 2024.
- Government of Bihar. *Bihar Coaching Institute (Control and Regulation) Act, 2010, Bihar Act 17 of 2010*. Bihar Gazette, 16 April 2010.
- District Administration Patna and District Education Office. *Patna Coaching Registration Portal: registration, compliance and FAQ documentation*, accessed 2026.
- Government of Bihar, Education Department. *Bihar Student Credit Card Scheme guidelines and MNSSBY operational documentation*.
- Bihar State Education Finance Corporation Limited. *Bihar Student Credit Card verification and institutional-payment documentation*.
- Government of Bihar, Higher Education Department. *Higher-education schemes, institutional and administrative portal documentation*, 2026.
- National Education Policy 2020. Ministry of Education, Government of India.
- National Testing Agency. *JEE (Main), NEET (UG) and National Test Abhyas programme documentation*.
- National Task Force to Address the Mental Health Concerns of Students. *Framework Guidelines for Emotional and Mental Wellbeing of Students in Higher Educational Institutions*. Ministry of Education, 2025.
- Bray, Mark. *The Shadow Education System: Private Tutoring and Its Implications for Planners*. Paris: UNESCO International Institute for Educational Planning, 1999.
- Bray, Mark. *Confronting the Shadow Education System: What Government Policies for What Private Tutoring?* Paris: UNESCO-IIEP, 2009.
- Aurini, Janice, Scott Davies and Julian Dierkes, eds. *Out of the Shadows: The Global Intensification of Supplementary Education*. Bingley: Emerald, 2013.
- Bourdieu, Pierre. *The Forms of Capital*. In *Handbook of Theory and Research for the Sociology of Education*, edited by John Richardson. New York: Greenwood, 1986.
- Becker, Gary S. *Human Capital: A Theoretical and Empirical Analysis, with Special Reference to Education*. 3rd ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1993.
- University Grants Commission, Nepal. *Report on Higher Education 2023/024 A.D. (2080/081 B.S.)*. Bhaktapur, Nepal.
- National Statistics Office, Nepal. *Nepal Living Standards Survey IV 2022/23*. Kathmandu, 2024/25.
- Center for Education and Human Resource Development, Nepal. *Flash Reports and school education statistics*, latest available rounds.
- Ministry of Education and Sports, Nepal. *No Objection Certificate system and Foreign Study Approval guidance*, current portal documentation, 2026.
- World Bank. *World Development Report 2018: Learning to Realize Education's Promise*. Washington, DC: World Bank, 2018.
- UNESCO. *Global Education Monitoring Report series: access, equity, private provision and education finance*.
- India Today. *Ground report on the contraction of Kota's coaching economy*, 20 March 2025
- NDTV / IANS. *Report on Patna's expanding coaching market*, 7 June 2026; market-size claims treated as press-reported estimates rather than official counts.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. *National Health Accounts Estimates for India 2021–22*. New Delhi, 2024.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. *Indian Public Health Standards (IPHS) Guidelines*, revised 2022.
- National Health Mission, Government of India. *Bihar State Programme Implementation Plans and Records of Proceedings, 2024–26 and 2026–27*.
- State Health Society Bihar. *Project Implementation Plan 2025–26 and programme documentation for maternal health, NCDs, disease control, referral transport, HMIS and eSanjeevani*.
- Health Department, Government of Bihar. *Departmental policy, institutional and public-health programme documentation*, accessed 2026.

- Government of Bihar, Finance Department. Economic Survey 2024–25. Patna, 2025.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. Health Dynamics of India 2022–23: Infrastructure and Human Resources. New Delhi, 2024.
- National Health Authority. Ayushman Bharat Pradhan Mantri Jan Arogya Yojana: Health Benefit Package 2.0 and Empanelment Guidance. New Delhi, 2020.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. Telemedicine Practice Guidelines and eSanjeevani service guidance.
- International Institute for Population Sciences and ICF. National Family Health Survey (NFHS-5), 2019–21: India Report. Mumbai, 2021.
- National Sample Survey Office. Key Indicators of Social Consumption in India: Health, NSS 75th Round, July 2017–June 2018. New Delhi, 2019.
- Ministry of Health and Population, Government of Nepal. Nepal National Health Accounts 2018/19 and 2019/20. Kathmandu, 2023.
- Government of Nepal. The Public Health Service Act, 2075 (2018), authenticated 18 September 2018; and Public Health Service Regulations, 2020. Kathmandu.
- World Health Organization. Global Health Expenditure Database and health-financing analytical framework.
- World Health Organization and UNICEF. Primary Health Care Measurement Framework and Indicators: Monitoring Health Systems through a Primary Health Care Lens. Geneva: WHO, 2022.
- World Bank. Raising the Sights: Better Health Systems for India's Poor. Washington, DC: World Bank, 2001.
- Kruk, Margaret E., et al. 'High-quality health systems in the Sustainable Development Goals era: time for a revolution.' *The Lancet Global Health* 6, no. 11 (2018): e1196–e1252.
- Xu, Ke, et al. 'Household catastrophic health expenditure: a multicountry analysis.' *The Lancet* 362 (2003): 111–117.
- Berman, Peter, Rajeev Ahuja and Laveesh Bhandari. 'The impoverishing effect of healthcare payments in India: new methodology and findings.' *Economic and Political Weekly* 45, nos. 16–17 (2010): 65–71.
- Dror, David M., Arpita Chakraborty, Atanu Majumdar, Pradeep Panda, and Ruth Koren. 'Impact of community-based health insurance in rural India on self-medication and financial protection of the insured.' *Indian Journal of Medical Research* 143, no. 6 (2016): 809–820.
- Baru, Rama V. *Private Health Care in India: Social Characteristics and Trends*. New Delhi: Sage, 1998.
- Duggal, Ravi. *The Private Health Sector in India: Nature, Trends and a Critique*. Mumbai: Centre for Enquiry into Health and Allied Themes, 1996.
- Government of India. National Health Policy 2017. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare.
- Government of India. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Non-Communicable Diseases; National TB Elimination Programme; National Vector Borne Disease Control programme documentation.
- National Centre for Disease Control, Government of India. National Action Plan for Prevention and Control of Snakebite Envenoming in India. New Delhi, launched 12 March 2024.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal 2015, Article 35; The Public Health Service Act, 2075 (2018); and Public Health Service Regulations, 2020.
- Ministry of Health and Population [Nepal], New ERA, and ICF. Nepal Health Facility Survey 2021: Final Report. Kathmandu, Nepal, and Rockville, Maryland, 2022; with DHS Program further analyses, 2023–24.
- Ministry of Road Transport and Highways, Government of India. 'Building a Connected and Prosperous Bihar.' Press Information Bureau, 22 August 2025.
- Ministry of Road Transport and Highways, Government of India. 'From Flood Fear to Freedom: A New Bridge of Hope Over the Kosi.' Press Information Bureau, 19 December 2025.
- Cabinet Committee on Economic Affairs, Government of India. 'Construction of 4-lane greenfield access-controlled Mokama–Munger section of the Buxar–Bhagalpur High-Speed Corridor in Bihar.' Press Information Bureau, 10 September 2025.
- National Highways Authority of India. Awarded Projects 2024–25 and project-status/MIS documents for Bihar corridors, 2025.
- Ministry of Road Transport and Highways, Government of India. Lok Sabha Unstarred Question No. 4022, National Highways in Bihar, answered 19 December 2024.
- Road Construction Department, Government of Bihar. Departmental road-network vision, programmes and project documentation, accessed September 2026.
- Government of Bihar, Finance Department. Bihar Economic Survey 2024–25. Patna, 2025.
- Airports Authority of India. Darbhanga Airport: civil-enclave development and tender/contract documentation, 2025–26.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. Foundation stone of New Civil Enclave at Darbhanga Airport, 20 October 2024.

- Airports Authority of India. Darbhanga Airport civil operations under Regional Connectivity Scheme: interim terminal and runway development documentation, 2020.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. 'Prime Minister lays foundation stone, inaugurates development works in Purnea, Bihar.' 15 September 2025.
- Airports Authority of India. Inauguration documentation for Interim Terminal Building, Purnea Airport, 15 September 2025.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. Major aviation infrastructure expansion in 2025, including Patna and Purnea terminal facilities, January 2026.
- Cabinet Committee on Economic Affairs, Government of India. Development of New Civil Enclave at Bihta, Bihar, 16 August 2024.
- Civil Aviation Authority of Nepal. 'Construction of New Terminal Buildings at Janakpur and Rajbiraj Airports.' CAAN annual/progress publication, 2020.
- Civil Aviation Authority of Nepal. National Airports Plan: Janakpur Airport diagnosis and infrastructure profile. Kathmandu, 2012.
- Department of Roads, Government of Nepal. Environmental and Social Impact Assessment of East–West (Mahendra) Highway, Kamala–Dhalkebar–Pathlaiya Section, 2024.
- Department of Roads, Government of Nepal. Postal Highway Project status and project overview, DoR Newsletter Vol. 28, 2022.
- Department of Roads, Government of Nepal. Annual Progress Reports for national-highway and bridge programmes, FY 2080/81–2081/82.
- World Bank. Rural Access Index and transport-accessibility analytical framework; selected South Asia transport studies.
- Asian Development Bank. South Asia Subregional Economic Cooperation road-corridor and transport-connectivity studies for Nepal and eastern South Asia.
- Government of India. Motor Vehicles (Amendment) Act, 2019, and National Road Safety policy/programme documentation.
- Ministry of Road Transport and Highways, Government of India. Road Accidents in India, latest available annual report.
- National Payments Corporation of India / Indian Highways Management Company Limited. FASTag and electronic tolling programme documentation.
- Ghani, Ejaz, Arti Grover Goswami and William R. Kerr. 'Highway to Success: The Impact of the Golden Quadrilateral Project for the Location and Performance of Indian Manufacturing.' *Economic Journal* 126, no. 591 (2016): 317–357.
- Roberts, Mark, Uwe Deichmann, Bernard Fingleton and Tuo Shi. 'Evaluating China's Road to Prosperity: A New Economic Geography Approach.' *Regional Science and Urban Economics* 42, no. 4 (2012): 580–594.
- World Health Organization. Global Status Report on Road Safety 2023. Geneva, 2023.
- World Bank. Connecting to Compete / logistics-performance and corridor-reliability analytical literature, selected editions.
- Government of Nepal, Ministry of Physical Infrastructure and Transport. Strategic Road Network and transport-sector policy documents, latest available editions.
- National Payments Corporation of India. Unified Payments Interface (UPI): Product Statistics, 2025–26 and 2026–27 monthly series.
- Reserve Bank of India. RBI – Digital Payments Index for September 2025. Press release, 12 February 2026.
- Reserve Bank of India. RBI – Digital Payments Index for March 2025. Press release, 28 July 2025.
- Reserve Bank of India. Annual Report 2024–25. Mumbai, 2025, chapters on financial inclusion, payments and regulation.
- Reserve Bank of India. Report on Trend and Progress of Banking in India 2024–25. Mumbai, 2025.
- Reserve Bank of India. Benchmarking India's Payment Systems, selected editions and payment-system policy publications.
- Telecom Regulatory Authority of India. The Indian Telecom Services Performance Indicators, January–March 2026. New Delhi, 22 June 2026.
- Telecom Regulatory Authority of India. Telecom subscription and quality-of-service releases, 2025–26.
- Bihar Rural Livelihoods Promotion Society (JEEViKA). Alternate Banking and Digital Financial Services programme documentation.
- Bihar Rural Livelihoods Promotion Society. JEEViKA Quarterly Progress Report, July–September 2025.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. Launch of Bihar Rajya Jeevika Nidhi Saakh Sahkari Sangh Limited, 1–2 September 2025.
- World Bank. JEEViKA Learning Note Series: Making the Poor Bankable—The JEEViKA Experience of Financial Inclusion. 2017.
- India Code. The Code on Social Security, 2020 (Act No. 36 of 2020), definitions and provisions relating to gig and platform workers.
- Ministry of Labour and Employment, Government of India. Notification/advisory on implementation of the Code on Social Security, 2020, including commencement on 21 November 2025.
- Ministry of Labour and Employment, Government of India. Social Security for Gig and Platform Workers. Press Information Bureau, 29 January 2026.

- Ministry of Labour and Employment, Government of India. Implementation of e-Shram Portal. Press Information Bureau, 3 August 2026.
- Ministry of Labour and Employment, Government of India. Five Years of e-Shram Portal: Building an Inclusive Social Security Ecosystem. Press Information Bureau, 25 August 2026.
- NITI Aayog. India's Booming Gig and Platform Economy: Perspectives and Recommendations on the Future of Work. New Delhi, 2022.
- Economic Survey 2025–26, Government of India. Chapter/press material on employment, digitalisation and gig work, January 2026.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Payment Systems Oversight Report 2081/82 (2024/2025). Kathmandu, 2026.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Payment Systems Indicators, monthly series through 2083 Asar (mid-July 2026), released August 2026.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Payment Systems-related Unified Directive, 2082. Kathmandu, 2026.
- Nepal Rastra Bank and Bank of Korea Knowledge Partnership Program. Study on Cross-Border Payments and Nepal's Payment-System Evolution. 2024.
- NPCI International Payments Limited and Fonepay Payment Service Ltd. UPI is Now Accepted in Nepal. Press release, 8 March 2024.
- NPCI International Payments Limited. UPI merchant transactions in Nepal surpass 100,000 mark. Press release, 9 August 2024.
- Nepal Clearing House Limited and NPCI International Payments Limited. Launch of Real-Time Cross-Border Remittance Link Between India and Nepal. 9 June 2026.
- Press Information Bureau, Ministry of Finance, Government of India. India and Nepal Launch Cross-Border Remittance Mechanism to Strengthen Bilateral Financial Connectivity. 11 June 2026.
- Nepal Clearing House Limited. Cross-Border Payments Operating Rules, Version 1.0. 2024.
- International Labour Office. Digital Labour Platforms and the Future of Work: Towards Decent Work in the Online World. Geneva: ILO, 2018.
- Ministry of Tourism, Government of India. India Tourism Data Compendium 2025. New Delhi, 2025.
- Ministry of Tourism, Government of India. Rajya Sabha Unstarred Question No. 3346, State-wise Domestic and Foreign Tourist Visits, answered 21 August 2025.
- Ministry of Tourism, Government of India. Rajya Sabha Unstarred Question No. 2196, State-wise Domestic and Foreign Tourist Visits 2019–2024, answered 7 August 2025.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Tourism. Bihar Tourism Policy 2023, amended edition.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Tourism. Bihar Tourism Branding and Marketing Policy, 2024.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Tourism. Mukhyamantri Homestay Protsahan Yojana 2026, scheme listing and departmental updates, 2026.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Tourism. Wayside Amenities / Margiya Suvidha policy documentation and integration into Bihar Tourism Policy 2023.
- Press Information Bureau, Ministry of Tourism. Punaura Dham included under PRASHAD Scheme of the Ministry of Tourism, 3 February 2022.
- Press Information Bureau, Ministry of Tourism. Gaya and Nalanda selected under Swadesh Darshan 2.0; Punaura Dham identified under PRASHAD, 19 December 2022.
- Press Information Bureau, Ministry of Home Affairs. Bhoomi Pujan for comprehensive development of Punaura Dham temple complex, Sitamarhi, 8 August 2025.
- Press Information Bureau / Ministry of Railways. Bharat Gaurav Ramayana circuit itinerary linking Sitamarhi and Janakpur, January 2023.
- Ministry of Tourism, Government of India. Buddhist Tourism Circuit in India. New Delhi, 2021.
- Ministry of Tourism, Government of India. Parliamentary reply on tourism cooperation and Buddhist connectivity, 11 August 2025.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Tourism. Vaishali destination and Buddhist/Jain circuit materials, current portal edition.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Tourism. Jain Circuit brochure, including Champapuri Vasupujya Jinalaya, Bhagalpur.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Tourism. Ruins of Vikramshila, Bhagalpur: destination profile, current portal edition.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Tourism. Vikramshila Gangetic Dolphin Sanctuary: destination profile, current portal edition.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Tourism. Mandar Hill and Mandar Hill Ropeway, Banka: destination profiles, current portal edition.
- District Administration, Bhagalpur. Tourism: Vikramshila, Champapur Digamber Jain Siddha Kshetra and associated visitor sites, updated August 2026.
- Nepal, Ministry of Culture, Tourism and Civil Aviation. Nepal Tourism Statistics 2025. Kathmandu, 2026.

- Nepal Tourism Board. Janakpur: destination profile, current edition.
- Nepal Tourism Board. Janaki Mandir, Janakpur, Dhanusha: destination profile, current edition.
- Nepal Tourism Board. Pilgrimage Sites: Janaki Mandir and Janakpur festival visitation, current edition.
- Nepal Tourism Board. Tourism Insights, monthly international visitor arrival series, 2025–2026.
- UN Tourism. International Recommendations for Tourism Statistics 2008. Madrid/New York, 2010.
- UN Tourism. Measuring the Sustainability of Tourism: Statistical Framework and methodological publications.
- World Bank. Tourism for Development: Knowledge Series on tourism value chains, local economic linkages and destination management.
- UNESCO World Heritage Centre. Sustainable Tourism Programme: visitor management and heritage conservation guidance.
- ICOMOS. International Cultural Tourism Charter: Managing Tourism at Places of Heritage Significance. 2022 revision.
- Timothy, Dallen J. Cultural Heritage and Tourism: An Introduction. Bristol: Channel View Publications, 2011.
- Richman, Paula. 'Introduction.' In *India's Mithila Painting*, edited by Paula Richman and David L. Szanton, 1–22. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2025.
- Rekha, N. 'From Marriage Genealogies to Archer's Photos.' In *India's Mithila Painting*, edited by Paula Richman and David L. Szanton, 25–40. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2025.
- Jayakar, Pupul. *The Earthen Drum: An Introduction to the Ritual Arts of Rural India*. New Delhi: National Museum, 1980.
- Szanton, David. 'The Evolution of Mithila Painting.' *Global InCH*, Winter 2024.
- Moser-Schmitt, Eva. 'Mithila Painting and Feminism in the 1970s: Constructing Women Painters as Heroines of Western Vanguard Journals.' *Asian Ethnology*, 2024.
- Davis, Coralynn V., et al. 'Collaborative Scholarship and the Politics of Participation: Linking Expressive Arts and Social Change in Mithila.' *Asian Ethnology*, 2026.
- Government of India, Development Commissioner (Handicrafts). 'Madhubani Paintings.' Handicrafts portal. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Government of India, Development Commissioner (Handicrafts). *A Compendium of Indian Handicrafts & Handlooms Covered under Geographical Indications (GI)*. New Delhi, 2017; Madhubani Paintings certificate date 16 May 2007.
- Government of India, National Portal. ODOP: Madhubani Paintings, Madhubani, Bihar. Current listing, reviewed 4 September 2026.
- Government of India, National Portal. ODOP: Madhubani Paintings, Darbhanga, Bihar. Current listing, reviewed 4 September 2026.
- Government of Bihar. Madhubani Painting | E-Commerce Portal. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Ethnic Arts Foundation. 'About.' Organisational history of support to Mithila artists since 1980. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Ethnic Arts Foundation. 'Mithila Art Institute.' Institutional history; institute established in 2003. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Chazen Museum of Art, University of Wisconsin–Madison. *Mithila Painting: The Evolution of an Art Form*, exhibition, 14 September–1 December 2013.
- Asian Art Museum, San Francisco. *Painting Is My Everything: Art from India's Mithila Region*, exhibition, 7 September–30 December 2018.
- British Museum. Collection object 1992,0415,0.1, 'painting,' Madhubani Style; and related Mithila-painting collection records. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Burkert, Claire. 'Introduction.' *Janakpur Women's Development Center: Maithil Paintings*, online exhibition, Asianart.com, 1998.
- Janakpur Women's Development Center. 'About.' Archived organisational self-description: project initiated in 1989 and registered under the present name in 1992. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- British Council Cultural Protection Fund. 'Preserving Maithil Women's Art in Nepal.' Project account. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Regmi, Bhim Nath. 'Mithila Painting: An Enquiry into Its Historiography and Identity.' *Bon Voyage: A Peer-Reviewed Journal of English Studies* 7 (2025): 1–16.
- Asian Art Museum. Artist profiles for Dulari Devi and Rani Jha in *Painting Is My Everything*, 2018 exhibition materials.
- UNESCO. *Convention for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage*. Paris, 2003.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. *Intellectual Property and Traditional Cultural Expressions/Folklore*. WIPO Publication No. 913(E). Geneva: WIPO, 2002.
- International Council of Museums. *ICOM Code of Ethics for Museums*. Paris: ICOM, 2017.
- Canadian Conservation Institute. *Storing Works on Paper*, CCI Notes 11/2. Ottawa, 1995; and 'Basic Care — Works of Art on Paper,' updated 2 December 2025.

- Museum and gallery collection records, artist invoices, exhibition catalogues and direct-sale documentation should be treated as transaction-level evidence rather than replaced by unsourced online asking prices.
- Government of India. The Geographical Indications of Goods (Registration and Protection) Act, 1999, Act No. 48 of 1999, as amended through 2023.
- Government of India, Intellectual Property India. Geographical Indications: An Introduction. Updated 2026; accessed 5 September 2026.
- Government of India, Intellectual Property India. GI Public Search, Application No. 37, 'Madhubani Paintings.' Public register reviewed 5 September 2026.
- Government of India, Intellectual Property India. State-wise Registered Geographical Indications of India, details available as of 31 March 2025.
- Government of India, Geographical Indications Registry. Annual Report 2007–08, Annexure V, registration certificates issued during 2007–08.
- Government of India, Intellectual Property India. Part B Register: List of Registered Authorised Users; portal updated 2 September 2026.
- Government of India, Intellectual Property India. Geographical Indications of Goods (Registration and Protection) (Amendment) Rules, 2025.
- Government of India, Intellectual Property India. GI Public Search, Application No. 696, 'Mithila Makhana.' Certificate dated 16 August 2022.
- Government of India, Intellectual Property India. GI Public Search, Application No. 552, 'Shahi Litchi of Bihar.' Certificate dated 5 October 2018; renewal details dated 15 June 2026.
- Government of India, Intellectual Property India. GI Public Search, Application No. 551, 'Bhagalpuri Zardalu.' Registration and renewal records.
- Government of India, Intellectual Property India. Registered GI lists for Katarni Rice, Bhagalpur Silk, Sikki Grass Products of Bihar, Sujini Embroidery Work of Bihar, Applique (Khatwa) Work of Bihar and Manjusha Art.
- Government of India, National Portal. ODOP: Madhubani Paintings, Madhubani, Bihar. Reviewed 4 September 2026.
- Government of India, National Portal. ODOP: Madhubani Paintings, Darbhanga, Bihar. Reviewed 4 September 2026.
- Government of India. Copyright Act, 1957, especially sections 13, 14, 17, 22 and 57; Copyright Office online text accessed 5 September 2026.
- Government of India, Copyright Office. Handbook of Copyright Law. New Delhi: Department for Promotion of Industry and Internal Trade.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. Frequently Asked Questions: Geographical Indications. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. How Are Geographical Indications Protected? Accessed 5 September 2026.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. Traditional Cultural Expressions. WIPO Traditional Knowledge resources, accessed 5 September 2026.
- UNESCO. Convention for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage. Paris, 17 October 2003.
- UNESCO. Guidance Note on the Economic Dimensions of Intangible Cultural Heritage Safeguarding under the 2003 Convention. Paris, 2023.
- UNESCO. Operational Directives and decisions concerning commercial activities, community benefit and rights in intangible cultural heritage, including Decision 4.COM 6 and Decision 10.COM 14.A.
- Nepal Law Commission. Industrial Enterprises Act, 2073 (2016/17), definition of intellectual property including geographical indication signs.
- Nepal Law Commission. Patent, Design and Trade Mark Act, 2022 (1965), as amended.
- Government of Nepal, Ministry of Industry, Commerce and Supplies. Institutional mandate covering patents, designs, trademarks and geographical indications; accessed 5 September 2026.
- Government of Nepal. National Intellectual Property Policy, 2073 (2017), as referenced in official policy and legal materials.
- WIPO. Geographical Indications and Traditional Knowledge / Traditional Cultural Expressions resources for handicrafts and producer communities, current online materials reviewed 5 September 2026.
- For market-effect analysis, GI certificates should be read together with authorised-user records, labels, invoices, enforcement records, producer accounts and transaction evidence; registration alone is not evidence of a producer premium.
- Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Climate Change 2023: Synthesis Report. Contribution of Working Groups I, II and III to the Sixth Assessment Report. Geneva: IPCC, 2023.
- Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Climate Change 2022: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2022, chapters on food, water, Asia and adaptation.

- India Meteorological Department. Statement on the Climate of India during 2025. New Delhi: Ministry of Earth Sciences, 1 January 2026.
- India Meteorological Department. Standardized Precipitation Index and seasonal rainfall products for 2025, as summarized in the Statement on the Climate of India during 2025.
- ICAR Research Complex for Eastern Region. State-Level Consultation on Combating Climate Crisis Organized in Bihar. Patna, 12 August 2025.
- ICAR Research Complex for Eastern Region. IoT-enabled Soil Monitoring System established in ICAR-RCER, Patna. 27 May 2026.
- ICAR Research Complex for Eastern Region. Women Farmers Resolve to Adopt Sustainable and Climate-Resilient Farming Practices under Khet Bachao Abhiyan. Patna, 30 June 2026.
- ICAR. Scientists and Gram Panchayat Leaders Unite under Khet Bachao Abhiyan to Promote Climate-Resilient Agriculture in Bihar. 2026.
- ICAR-Mahatma Gandhi Integrated Farming Research Institute. Khet Bachao Abhiyan 2026: science-led soil health and climate-resilient agriculture outreach across Bihar. Motihari, 2026.
- ICAR Research Complex for Eastern Region. Bihar agriculture and production-system research materials on rice under rainfed, drought, submergence and nutrient constraints. Current institutional materials.
- Bihar Agricultural University, Sabour. National Innovations on Climate Resilient Agriculture (NICRA): vulnerability assessment, weather advisory, contingency planning and stress-tolerant crop research. Current programme materials.
- Bihar Agricultural University, Sabour. Department of Agronomy research on climate variability, extreme weather, rice-wheat systems and late-sown wheat. Current project materials.
- Government of Bihar. State Action Plan on Climate Change. Patna, policy framework and subsequent climate-related departmental programmes.
- Government of Nepal, Ministry of Forests and Environment. National Adaptation Plan (NAP) 2021–2050. Kathmandu, 2021.
- Government of Nepal. Nationally Determined Contribution (NDC) 3.0. Submitted to the UNFCCC 19 May 2025.
- Government of Nepal, Department of Hydrology and Meteorology. Monsoon and drought monitoring products for 2025, including Madhesh Province.
- Shrestha, Sravan, Sarthak Shrestha, Bipin Dulal and Vijay R. Khadgi. 2025 Drought in Nepal's Madhesh Province: A Rapid Situational Analysis. Kathmandu: ICIMOD, 21 August 2025. DOI 10.53055/ICIMOD.1097.
- Shrestha, Sravan, Sarthak Shrestha and Vuyasi Rajbhandari. 'Drought in the Grain Basket: A Silent Agricultural Crisis in Nepal's Madhesh Province.' ICIMOD, 14 August 2025.
- Asian Development Bank. Macroeconomic Update: Nepal. Manila/Kathmandu, December 2025.
- Asian Development Bank. Nepal: Mechanized Irrigation Innovation Project, project documentation for Rautahat and Sarlahi. 2024 onward.
- Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. Climate-Smart Agriculture Sourcebook. Rome: FAO, second edition, 2017.
- Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. The State of Food and Agriculture: Climate Change, Agriculture and Food Security, relevant editions and technical papers.
- World Bank. Climate-Smart Agriculture and climate-risk management publications for South Asia and India/Nepal, relevant editions.
- International Water Management Institute. Research on groundwater, irrigation, drought and water-energy-food linkages in the Indo-Gangetic and Nepal Terai systems, relevant publications.
- International Labour Organization. Working on a Warmer Planet: The Impact of Heat Stress on Labour Productivity and Decent Work. Geneva: ILO, 2019.
- National Disaster Management Authority, Government of India. Guidelines on management of drought, heat wave and floods, relevant editions.
- Bihar State Disaster Management Authority. "Flood." Know Your Risk portal, current material accessed 5 September 2026; includes Bihar flood typology and district-level vulnerability framing.
- Bihar State Disaster Management Authority. Roadmap for Disaster Risk Reduction 2015–2030. Government of Bihar.
- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar. Flood Management Improvement Support Centre (FMISC): Flood Management Information System, current portal and institutional documentation, accessed 5 September 2026.
- Flood Management Improvement Support Centre, Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar. Kosi Flood Forecasting and Early Warning System (Kosi-FFEWS): system description, current portal accessed 5 September 2026.
- Central Water Commission, Government of India. Flood Forecasting and Inundation Forecast services, annual and operational publications relevant to Bihar river basins.

- National Disaster Management Authority, Government of India. National Disaster Management Plan and flood-risk-management guidance, relevant editions.
- World Bank. Bihar Kosi Flood Recovery Project: Owner Driven Housing Reconstruction. GFDRR Project Highlights No. 1. Washington, DC, 2012.
- World Bank. Building Disaster Resilience in Bihar. India Disaster Risk Management Program, 2016.
- World Bank. Bihar's Resilience: Transformative Flood Management Through the Kosi Basin Development Project. 23 January 2024.
- World Bank. India: Helping People Build Resilience to Climate Change. 18 November 2023, section on flood-prone Bihar and Kosi-basin resilience.
- Department of Hydrology and Meteorology, Government of Nepal. Flood Bulletin, 8 July 2025, and related 2025 daily 72-hour flood-forecasting bulletins.
- Government of Nepal. National Disaster Risk Reduction and Management strategic and institutional documents, including multi-hazard early-warning-system provisions.
- Asian Development Bank. Nepal: Priority River Basins Flood Risk Management Project (52195-001), project data and implementation documents, including FY2024/25 reporting.
- Asian Development Bank. Nepal: Mechanized Irrigation Innovation Project (52130-001), Report and Recommendation of the President, September 2024.
- International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development (ICIMOD). "Making Flood Information Travel Faster than Flood Waters: Timely Early Warnings in the Ratu River, Koshi Basin."
- International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development (ICIMOD). Strengthening Community-Based Flood Early Warning Systems in the Ratu River through Sustainability Mechanism. Workshop, Dhanusha, Nepal, 7 August 2025.
- International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development (ICIMOD). "Towards Enhanced Disaster Risk Reduction in the Koshi River Basin: A Look at the Downstream Reaches of Bihar in India."
- International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development (ICIMOD). "Notes from the Field: Building an Early Warning System Together in North Bihar." 2026.
- International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development (ICIMOD). Community-Based Flood Early Warning System manuals, training materials and Koshi Basin experience, relevant editions.
- Government of Bihar, Water Resources Department. Current flood-protection, drainage, embankment maintenance and basin-management programme materials, accessed September 2026.
- Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. Disaster Risk Reduction in Agriculture and climate-resilient agriculture guidance, relevant editions.
- World Health Organization. Floods and public-health emergency guidance on water, sanitation, disease prevention and continuity of care, relevant editions.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal, 2015, as amended; Parts 5, 13, 17–20 and Schedules 5–9 on federal, provincial and local powers.
- Government of Nepal, Nepal Law Commission. Local Government Operation Act, 2074 (2017), provisions on local market management, local roads, irrigation, tourism and municipal services.
- Government of Nepal, Ministry of Finance. Fiscal Federalism Coordination Division materials and intergovernmental fiscal-transfer framework, current editions.
- Ministry of Finance, Madhesh Province. Economic Survey 2082/83 (2025/26), budget and annual development-programme materials, Janakpurdham.
- National Natural Resources and Fiscal Commission, Nepal. Recommendations on fiscal equalization, conditional grants and intergovernmental transfers for FY 2082/83 and 2083/84.
- World Bank. Nepal Fiscal Federalism Update 2024. Washington, DC and Kathmandu, 2024.
- Asian Development Bank. Strengthening Fiscal Decentralization in Nepal's Transition to Federalism. Manila, 2022.
- Asian Development Bank. Strengthening Public Financial Management and Devolved Service Delivery Program (Subprogram 2): Report and Recommendation of the President. November 2025.
- Government of India, Department of Commerce. Annual Report 2025–26, section on India–Nepal Trade and Transit.
- Government of India, Department of Commerce / Press Information Bureau. India–Nepal Inter-Governmental Committee on Trade, Transit and Cooperation to Control Unauthorised Trade, Kathmandu, 10–11 January 2025.
- Government of India and Government of Nepal. Treaty of Transit, revised 1 June 2023, and associated protocols and Letters of Exchange.
- Government of India, Ministry of Commerce and Industry / Press Information Bureau. India, Nepal Ink Deal to Boost Rail Trade Connectivity, 13 November 2025.

- Government of India, Ministry of Railways / Press Information Bureau. India's First Direct Commercial Container Freight Train Reaches Nepal, 28 July 2026.
- Government of India, Ministry of External Affairs. India–Nepal Bilateral Brief, 20 June 2024, sections on connectivity, trade, railways, integrated check posts, petroleum pipeline and power cooperation.
- Land Ports Authority of India. Raxaul Land Port profile and trade/cargo statistics through FY2025–26, accessed 5 September 2026.
- Land Ports Authority of India. Jogbani Land Port profile and trade/cargo statistics through FY2025–26, accessed 5 September 2026.
- Land Ports Authority of India. Integrated Check Posts: Gateway to India and annual-report materials on land-port trade and cargo flows.
- Indian Oil Corporation Limited. Annual Report 2024–25 and framework-agreement materials on Motihari–Amlekhgunj–Chitwan and Siliguri–Jhapa petroleum infrastructure.
- Government of India and Government of Nepal. Agreement on Long-Term Power Trade, 4 January 2024.
- Government of India, Ministry of Power. Cooperation with Neighbouring Countries in Power Sector, 2 April 2026.
- Nepal Electricity Authority. Annual Report 2024/25, sections on cross-border electricity trade with India and Bangladesh.
- Government of India, Ministry of Power / Press Information Bureau. Inauguration of First Trilateral Power Transaction from Nepal to Bangladesh through the Indian Grid, 15 November 2024.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Payment-system oversight and cross-border-payment policy materials, 2024–26.
- Nepal Clearing House Ltd. and NPCI International Payments Ltd. Launch of Real-Time Cross-Border Remittance Link between India and Nepal, 9 June 2026.
- Government of Nepal, Department of Immigration. Current entry and visa information for Indian citizens, accessed 5 September 2026.
- Government of India, Ministry of External Affairs. Visa facility and bilateral materials concerning visa-free India–Nepal movement, current editions.
- World Bank. Nepal Development Update and trade/fiscal publications, relevant 2024–26 editions.
- Asian Development Bank. Macroeconomic Update: Nepal, December 2025, including Madhesh agriculture, trade and external-sector context.
- International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development. Koshi basin, Madhesh and north Bihar transboundary risk and connectivity materials, relevant editions.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011. HH-01: Normal Households by Household Size, Bihar.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011. HH-04: Households by Composition and Size.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011. C-02: Marital Status by Age and Sex, Bihar.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011. C-04 and C-06 tables on age at marriage, duration of marriage and education, Bihar.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011. Migration D-Series tables for Bihar.
- Ministry of Home Affairs, Government of India. Population Census 2027 operational notifications and releases, 2025–26.
- Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India, and International Institute for Population Sciences. National Family Health Survey 2023–24 (NFHS-6): India and State/UT Fact Sheets. Released 29 May 2026; provisional results.
- International Institute for Population Sciences. NFHS-6 (2023–24) Release Note and District Fact Sheet Compendiums, released August 2026.
- Finance Department, Government of Bihar. Economic Survey 2024–25. Patna, 2025.
- Finance Department, Government of Bihar. Economic Survey 2019–20. Patna, 2020, chapter on migration and labour.
- Ministry of Labour, Employment and Social Security, Government of Nepal. Nepal Labour Migration Report 2024. Kathmandu, 2025.
- World Bank. Nepal Development Update: International Migration and Well-being in Nepal. Kathmandu and Washington, DC, 2024.
- Shah, A. M. The Household Dimension of the Family in India: A Field Study in a Gujarat Village and a Review of Other Studies. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1973.
- Uberoi, Patricia, ed. Family, Kinship and Marriage in India. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1993.
- Deshingkar, Priya, and John Farrington, eds. Circular Migration and Multilocational Livelihood Strategies in Rural India. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2009.
- Srivastava, Ravi. 'Labour Migration in India: Recent Trends, Patterns and Policy Issues.' Indian Journal of Labour Economics 54, no. 3 (2011): 411–440.

- Seddon, David, Jagannath Adhikari, and Ganesh Gurung. 'Foreign Labor Migration and the Remittance Economy of Nepal.' *Critical Asian Studies* 34, no. 1 (2002): 19–40.
- Bongaarts, John. 'Household Size and Composition in the Developing World in the 1990s.' *Population Studies* 55, no. 3 (2001): 263–279.
- United Nations, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division. *Household Size and Composition Around the World*, relevant database and methodological materials.
- International Labour Organization. *Care Work and Care Jobs for the Future of Decent Work*. Geneva: ILO, 2018.
- International Institute for Population Sciences. *National Family Health Survey (NFHS-4), 2015–16: Bihar Fact Sheet*. Mumbai: IIPS.
- UNFPA India. *Child Marriage in Bihar: Key Insights from the NFHS-5 (2019–21)*. New Delhi, 2022.
- Ministry of Women and Child Development, Government of India. *The Prohibition of Child Marriage Act, 2006 (Act No. 6 of 2007)*, as in force.
- Government of Bihar. *Bihar Prohibition of Child Marriage Rules, 2010*. Bihar Gazette, 8 May 2010.
- Women & Child Development Corporation, Government of Bihar. *Campaign and programme materials on ending child marriage and dowry; Acts & Rules and Publications portals*, accessed September 2026.
- Government of India. *The Dowry Prohibition Act, 1961 (Act No. 28 of 1961)*, as amended.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. *Census of India 2011: C-Series tables on marital status, age at marriage and duration of marriage; D-Series migration tables, Bihar*.
- The DHS Program. *Trends in and Determinants of Adolescent Marriage, Childbirth, and Unmet Need for Family Planning, 2011–2022 Nepal DHS Surveys. Further Analysis Report 153*, 2024.
- Government of Nepal. *National Civil Code, 2017 (Muluki Civil Code, 2074)*, provisions relating to marriage.
- Government of Nepal. *National Penal Code, 2017*, provisions relating to child marriage and prohibited marriage transactions.
- Nepal Law Commission. *Marriage Registration Act, 2028 (1971)*, as amended.
- Government of Nepal. *Nepal Citizenship Act, 2063 (2006)*, as amended, and *Constitution of Nepal, 2015*, citizenship provisions.
- Srinivas, M. N. *Caste in Modern India and Other Essays*. Bombay: Asia Publishing House, 1962, essays on marriage, caste and social change.
- Bloch, Francis, Vijayendra Rao, and Sonalde Desai. 'Wedding Celebrations as Conspicuous Consumption: Signaling Social Status in Rural India.' *Journal of Human Resources* 39, no. 3 (2004): 675–695.
- Anderson, Siwan. 'Why Dowry Payments Declined with Modernization in Europe but Are Rising in India.' *Journal of Political Economy* 111, no. 2 (2003): 269–310.
- Desai, Sonalde, and Lester Andrist. 'Gender Scripts and Age at Marriage in India.' *Demography* 47, no. 3 (2010): 667–687.
- Allendorf, Keera. 'Going Nuclear? Family Structure and Young Women's Health in India, 1992–2006.' *Demography* 50 (2013): 853–880.
- Kaur, Ravinder. 'Mapping the Adverse Consequences of Sex Selection and Gender Imbalance in India and China.' *Economic and Political Weekly* 48, no. 35 (2013): 37–44.
- Ministry of Education, Government of India. *UDISE+ Report 2024–25: Existing Structure*. New Delhi, 2025, especially Tables 6.1 and 6.7 on GER and gender parity.
- Ministry of Education, Department of Higher Education, Government of India. *All India Survey on Higher Education (AISHE) 2023–24*. New Delhi, released July 2026.
- Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation, Government of India. *Annual Report, Periodic Labour Force Survey (PLFS), 2025*. New Delhi, 2026.
- Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation, Government of India. *Time Use Survey 2019*. New Delhi, 2020.
- International Institute for Population Sciences. *National Family Health Survey (NFHS-6), 2023–24: Bihar State Fact Sheet and release documentation*, 2026.
- Government of Bihar, Finance Department. *Economic Survey 2025–26*. Patna: Government of Bihar, chapters on education, labour, rural livelihoods and gender.
- Bihar Rural Livelihoods Promotion Society (JEEViKA). *Programme documentation on women's self-help groups, livelihoods, financial inclusion and producer organisations*.
- Chatterjee, Esha, Sonalde Desai, and Reeve Vanneman. 'Indian Paradox: Rising Education, Declining Women's Employment.' *Demographic Research* 38 (2018): 855–878.
- International Labour Organization. *Women and Men in the Informal Economy: A Statistical Picture*, 3rd ed. Geneva: ILO, 2018.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. *Nepal Labour Force Survey 2017–18, Third Round*. Kathmandu, 2019; fourth-round survey 2082/83 fieldwork and review notices, 2026.

- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal and UNICEF. Nepal Multiple Indicator Cluster Survey 2024–25. Kathmandu, 2026.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal, 2015, provisions on equality, education, employment and women's rights.
- Government of India. National Education Policy 2020. New Delhi: Ministry of Education.
- Ministry of Youth Affairs and Sports, Government of India. National Youth Policy 2014. New Delhi, 2014.
- Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation, Government of India. Youth in India 2022. New Delhi: National Statistical Office, 2022.
- ASER Centre. Annual Status of Education Report (Rural) 2023: Beyond Basics. New Delhi: Pratham Education Foundation, 2024, including Bihar: Muzaffarpur district tables on 14–18-year-olds and digital access.
- Ministry of Youth and Sports, Government of Nepal. National Youth Policy 2072 (2015). Kathmandu.
- Government of Nepal. Youth Vision 2025 and Ten-Year Strategic Plan. Kathmandu: Ministry of Youth and Sports / National Youth Council.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. Adolescents and Youth in Nepal: NPHC 2021 Thematic Report. Kathmandu.
- Jeffrey, Craig. Timepass: Youth, Class, and the Politics of Waiting in India. Stanford: Stanford University Press, 2010.
- Jeffery, Patricia, Roger Jeffery, and Craig Jeffrey. Degrees Without Freedom? Education, Masculinities, and Unemployment in North India. Stanford: Stanford University Press, 2008.
- Liechty, Mark. Suitably Modern: Making Middle-Class Culture in a New Consumer Society. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 2003.
- Miller, Daniel, et al. How the World Changed Social Media. London: UCL Press, 2016.
- Doron, Assa, and Robin Jeffrey. The Great Indian Phone Book: How the Cheap Cell Phone Changes Business, Politics, and Daily Life. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2013.
- Rangaswamy, Nimmi, and Edward Cutrell. "Anthropology, Development and ICTs: Slums, Youth and the Mobile Internet in Urban India." *Information Technologies & International Development*, selected studies.
- Srivastava, Ravi. "Labour Migration in India: Recent Trends, Patterns and Policy Issues." *The Indian Journal of Labour Economics* 54, no. 3 (2011): 411–440.
- UNICEF. The State of the World's Children 2021: On My Mind—Promoting, Protecting and Caring for Children's Mental Health. New York: UNICEF
- UNESCO. Global Education Monitoring Report, selected editions on youth, skills and digital learning.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011: C-16, Population by Mother Tongue, Bihar. New Delhi: Government of India.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011: C-17, Population by Bilingualism and Trilingualism, Bihar. New Delhi: Government of India.
- Madhesh Province, Government of Nepal. Madhesh Province Data Portal: Province Profile, language tables derived from NPHC 2021. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Internet and Mobile Association of India and Kantar. Internet in India Report 2024. New Delhi, 2025; press release "Led by Surge in Indic Language Adoption, Internet Users in India Set to Cross 900 Million," 16 January 2025.
- Nepal Telecommunications Authority. MIS Report series on voice and broadband services, selected 2025–26 issues. Kathmandu.
- Unicode Consortium. The Unicode Standard, Version 17.0: Tirhuta, U+11480–U+114DF. Mountain View, 2025.
- Ministry of Electronics and Information Technology, Government of India. Annual Report 2025–26, section on BHASHINI and multilingual AI infrastructure. New Delhi, 2026.
- Government of India. Constitution of India, Eighth Schedule and language provisions, as amended.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal, 2015, provisions on languages and language rights.
- Crystal, David. Language and the Internet. 2nd ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2006.
- Danet, Brenda, and Susan C. Herring, eds. The Multilingual Internet: Language, Culture, and Communication Online. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2007.
- Androutsopoulos, Jannis. "Networked Multilingualism: Some Language Practices on Facebook and Their Implications." *International Journal of Bilingualism* 19, no. 2 (2015): 185–205.
- Miller, Daniel, Elisabetta Costa, Nell Haynes, Tom McDonald, Razvan Nicolescu, Jolynna Sinanan, Juliano Spyer, Shriram Venkatraman, and Xinyuan Wang. How the World Changed Social Media. London: UCL Press, 2016.
- Udupa, Sahana. Making News in Global India: Media, Publics, Politics. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2015.
- Herring, Susan C. "Computer-Mediated Discourse Analysis: An Approach to Researching Online Behavior." In *Designing for Virtual Communities in the Service of Learning*, edited by Sasha A. Barab, Rob Kling, and James H. Gray. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2004.

- International Telecommunication Union. Facts and Figures 2025. Geneva: ITU, 2025.
- UNESCO.
- National Statistics Office, Government of Nepal. Religion in Nepal: National Population and Housing Census 2021, Thematic Report XIII. Kathmandu, 2025.
- Government of India. Constitution of India, Articles 25–28 and related provisions on freedom of religion.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal, 2015, provisions concerning secularism, religion and cultural rights.
- Department of Tourism, Government of Bihar. “Chhath Puja.” Bihar Tourism official festival documentation. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Department of Tourism, Government of Bihar. Festival and pilgrimage destination documentation, including Deo Sun Temple and Shrawani Mela materials. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Nepal Tourism Board. “Vivah Panchami.” Official festival documentation. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Nepal Tourism Board. “Janaki Mandir, Janakpur, Dhanusha” and “Janakpur and Vivah Panchami.” Official destination and heritage documentation. Accessed 5 September 2026.
- Government of India. Noise Pollution (Regulation and Control) Rules, 2000, as amended.
- Central Pollution Control Board, Government of India. Revised Guidelines for Idol Immersion. New Delhi, 2020.
- National Disaster Management Authority, Government of India. Managing Crowd at Events and Venues of Mass Gathering: A Guide for State Government, Local Authorities, Administrators and Organizers. New Delhi, 2014.
- Eck, Diana L. India: A Sacred Geography. New York: Harmony Books, 2012.
- Fuller, C. J. The Camphor Flame: Popular Hinduism and Society in India. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1992; revised edition, 2004.
- Freitag, Sandria B. Collective Action and Community: Public Arenas and the Emergence of Communalism in North India. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1989.
- van der Veer, Peter. Religious Nationalism: Hindus and Muslims in India. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1994.
- Asad, Talal. Formations of the Secular: Christianity, Islam, Modernity. Stanford: Stanford University Press, 2003.
- Turner, Victor. The Ritual Process: Structure and Anti-Structure. Chicago: Aldine, 1969.
- Feldhaus, Anne. Connected Places: Region, Pilgrimage, and Geographical Imagination in India. New York: Palgrave Macmillan, 2003.
- World Health Organization. Key Planning Recommendations for Mass Gatherings in the Context of COVID-19.
- Government of Bihar, General Administration Department. Bihar Caste-Based Survey 2022–23: caste-wise and social-category population results released 2 October 2023. Patna: Government of Bihar.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Caste-Based Survey 2022–23: socio-economic and educational report tabled in the Bihar Legislature, 7 November 2023. Patna: Government of Bihar.
- Akashvani / News on AIR. “Bihar govt releases findings of its Caste based Survey; OBCs and EBCs comprise more than 63% of State’s population.” 2 October 2023, reporting the official release.
- State Election Commission, Bihar. Panchayat General Election 2021: category-wise reservation and elected-representative tables for ward member, mukhiya, panchayat samiti, zila parishad, panch and sarpanch posts.
- Constitution of India, especially Articles 14–17, 15(4), 16(4), 46, 243D, 243T, 341 and 342, with later constitutional amendments where applicable.
- Government of India. The Protection of Civil Rights Act, 1955 (Act No. 22 of 1955), as amended.
- Gaurav Kumar & Ors. v. State of Bihar, CWJC No. 16760 of 2023 and connected matters, Patna High Court judgment dated 20 June 2024.
- State of Bihar & Anr. v. Gaurav Kumar & Anr., SLP(C) No. 14086 of 2024 and connected matters, Supreme Court of India order dated 29 July 2024 (leave granted; interim relief refused at that stage).
- Indra Sawhney v. Union of India, 1992 Supp (3) SCC 217, Supreme Court of India, on backward-class reservation and the 50-percent rule.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal, 2015, including provisions on equality, Dalit rights, social justice and proportional inclusion.
- World Bank and Department for International Development. Unequal Citizens: Gender, Caste and Ethnic Exclusion in Nepal. Kathmandu, 2006.
- Bennett, Lynn, Dilli Ram Dahal, and Pav Govindasamy. Caste, Ethnic and Regional Identity in Nepal: Further Analysis of the 2006 Nepal Demographic and Health Survey. Calverton, MD: Macro International, 2008.
- Jodhka, Surinder S. Caste. Oxford India Short Introductions. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2012.

- Shah, Ghanshyam, Harsh Mander, Sukhadeo Thorat, Satish Deshpande, and Amita Baviskar. *Untouchability in Rural India*. New Delhi: Sage, 2006.
- Béteille, André. *Caste, Class and Power: Changing Patterns of Stratification in a Tanjore Village*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1965
- Srinivas, M. N. *Social Change in Modern India*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1966; later editions.
- Government of Nepal. *Constitution of Nepal, 2015*, especially Parts 2 and 3; Articles 56–60 and 232; and Schedules 5–9 on federal, provincial, local and concurrent powers.
- Nepal Law Commission. *Nepal Citizenship Act, 2063 (2006)*, as amended by the First Amendment authenticated 17 Jestha 2080 and the Second Amendment authenticated 5 Ashoj 2082.
- Office of the President of Nepal. *Authentication of the bill amending the Nepal Citizenship Act, 2063, 17 Jestha 2080 (31 May 2023)*.
- Federal Parliament Secretariat, Nepal. *Nepal Citizenship (Second Amendment) Bill, 2081: legislative history and authenticated text*; authenticated 5 Ashoj 2082.
- Office of the President of Nepal. *Bill authentication notice for the amendment to the Nepal Citizenship Act, 5 Ashoj 2082 (September 2025)*.
- Office of the Provincial Chief, Madhesh Province. *Introduction and Background pages: province boundaries, eight districts, 32 federal constituencies, 64 provincial constituencies and 136 local levels*; accessed 5 September 2026.
- Ministry of Education and Culture, Madhesh Province. *Ministry introduction: composition of 136 local levels and post-federal allocation of provincial social-sector responsibilities*; accessed 5 September 2026.
- Madhesh Province Data Portal. *Madhesh Province Profile, based on National Population and Housing Census 2021 and provincial administrative data*; accessed 5 September 2026.
- Election Commission Nepal. *Madhesh Province Election Office: provincial voter information and election administration updates*; accessed 5 September 2026.
- World Bank. *Supporting Nepal's Historic Transition to Federalism. Results brief*, 29 September 2020.
- World Bank. *Nepal Fiscal Federalism Update 2024*. Kathmandu and Washington, DC, 2024.
- World Bank. *Digitizing Civil Registration and Cash Transfers in Nepal. Results brief*, 4 September 2023.
- World Bank. *Investing in an Integrated Social Registry for Nepal. End Poverty in South Asia blog and associated programme documentation*, 2023.
- Ministry of Finance, Government of Nepal. *Inter-Governmental Fiscal Transfer documents, including FY 2083/84, and Fiscal Federalism Coordination Division materials*.
- Ministry of Finance, Madhesh Province. *Budget Speech 2083/84, Economic Survey 2082/83, fiscal-transfer and annual development programme documents*.
- Madhesh Province. *Local Service (Formation and Operation) Act, 2081, and related provincial civil-service/legal instruments*.
- School of Arts, Kathmandu University; Interdisciplinary Analysts; and The Asia Foundation. *A Survey of the Nepali People in 2022*. Kathmandu, 2022.
- International Crisis Group. *Nepal's Troubled Tarai Region*. Asia Report No. 136, 9 July 2007.
- International Crisis Group. *Nepal: Identity Politics and Federalism*. Asia Report No. 199, 13 January 2011.
- International Crisis Group. *Nepal's Divisive New Constitution: An Existential Crisis*. Asia Report No. 276, 4 April 2016.
- Pokharel, Arjun Prasad. "Investigating the Underlying Factors and Outcomes of the Madheshi People's Movement in Nepal (2007–2008)." *Academia Research Journal* 3(1), 2024: 27–38.
- Malagodi, Mara. "The Rejection of Constitutional Incrementalism in Nepal's Federalisation." *Federal Law Review*, published online 2025.
- Government of India, Legislative Department. *Constitution of India, Eighth Schedule, including the Constitution (Ninety-second Amendment) Act, 2003, effective 7 January 2004*.
- Union Public Service Commission. *Civil Services Examination notification and syllabus, 2025, Maithili Literature optional; previous-question-paper archive including Maithili compulsory-language papers*.
- Bihar Public Service Commission. *Examination material including Language, General Studies and Maithili question booklet*, 2024.
- Bihar Lok Bhavan. *Curriculum and Credit Framework for Undergraduate Programme in Maithili*, updated 23 June 2023; semesters 3–8 framework, December 2023.
- Bihar Lok Bhavan. *Curriculum and Credit Framework for Undergraduate Programme in Angika*, updated 23 June 2023; semesters 3–8 framework, 18 December 2023.
- Bihar Legislative Assembly / Department of Education statements reported by Press Trust of India, 11 March 2025, on strengthening eight language academies under a common structure.

- Patna High Court. *Kalikant Jha v. State of Bihar and Others*, CWJC No. 20975 of 2013, judgment dated 30 January 2026, observations relating to Maithili Academy.
- Times of India. 'Eight language academies to function under single umbrella,' 1 May 2026, reporting the proposed Bihar language-academy Policy 2026 and proposed Bajjika/Surjapuri academies.
- Hindustan, Muzaffarpur. Reports on continuing demands for establishment of a Bajjika Academy, 9 February 2025 and 30 March 2026.
- Sahitya Akademi. Akademi Awards lists, Maithili since 1966; Maithili Advisory Board 2023–27; award and translation-prize records, accessed 5 September 2026.
- Akashvani News / Prasar Bharati. Patna Regional Unit schedule and regional-audio archive, including Maithili evening news bulletin, accessed 5 September 2026.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal, 2015, Articles 6, 7 and 32 on national languages, official business and language/culture rights.
- Language Commission, Nepal. Report/recommendations on provincial languages of official business, 2078, including recommendations for Madhesh Province.
- Madhesh Province Government. Second Periodic Plan, FY 2081/82–2085/86, programmes for protection and development of Maithili, Bhojpuri, Bajjika, Tharu, Urdu, Magahi and other languages.
- Onlinekhabar. Reports on the Madhesh Province Official Working Language Bill 2081, 22–23 January 2025, and subsequent controversy/withdrawal.
- Nepal Academy / Language Commission public discussion on implementation of Maithili, Bhojpuri and Bajjika as languages of official business in Madhesh Province, July 2025.
- Radio Nepal. Institutional history of multilingual broadcasting, including Maithili news and programming; Jhankar annual publications.
- Radio Nepal. Notice seeking a Bajjika-language newsreader, Bhadra 2083 (August 2026).
- Cardona, George, and Dhanesh Jain, eds. *The Indo-Aryan Languages*. London: Routledge, 2003, relevant chapters on eastern Indo-Aryan languages.
- UNESCO. Operational Directives for the Implementation of the Convention for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage, version amended by the Tenth General Assembly, 2024.
- UNESCO Intangible Cultural Heritage. Guidance Note on the Economic Dimensions of Intangible Cultural Heritage Safeguarding under the 2003 Convention. 2023.
- UNESCO Intangible Cultural Heritage. Guidance Note on Inventorying Intangible Cultural Heritage. 2015.
- UNESCO Intangible Cultural Heritage. Living Heritage and Education resources; transmission and community-participation guidance, accessed 5 September 2026.
- International Council of Museums. Museum Definition adopted by the ICOM Extraordinary General Assembly, Prague, 24 August 2022.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. Traditional Cultural Expressions. Geneva, continuously updated reference portal, accessed 5 September 2026.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. Documentation of Traditional Knowledge and Traditional Cultural Expressions. Background Brief No. 9. Geneva, 2023.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. Traditional Knowledge and Intellectual Property. Background Brief No. 1. Geneva, 2023.
- Ministry of Culture, Government of India. Scheme for Safeguarding the Intangible Cultural Heritage and Diverse Cultural Traditions of India; programme and expert-committee documentation.
- Ministry of Culture, Government of India. 'Sustain: The Craft Idiom,' G20 Culture Working Group exhibition on living heritage and sustainable future, 2023.
- Government of India. Geographical Indications of Goods (Registration and Protection) Act, 1999, as amended; relevant Madhubani Paintings GI registry material discussed in Chapter 128.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal, 2015, provisions concerning language, culture, religion, heritage and community rights.
- Smith, Laurajane. *Uses of Heritage*. London: Routledge, 2006.
- Kirshenblatt-Gimblett, Barbara. 'Intangible Heritage as Metacultural Production.' *Museum International* 56(1–2), 2004: 52–65.
- Hafstein, Valdimar Tr. *Making Intangible Heritage: El Condor Pasa and Other Stories from UNESCO*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 2018.
- Bendix, Regina F., Aditya Eggert, and Arnika Peselmann, eds. *Heritage Regimes and the State*. Göttingen: Göttingen University Press, 2012.

- Archer, W. G. 'Maithil Painting.' *Marg*, 1949, foundational documentation to be read critically alongside later artist-centred scholarship.
- Coomaraswamy, Ananda K. *The Indian Craftsman*. London: Probsthain, 1909, for the historical craft-and-social-organisation problem rather than as a contemporary policy account.
- Sahitya Akademi and regional language institutions. Publications and documentation on Maithili, Angika and Bajjika literary and performance traditions.
- Bihar Museum, Patna, and other public cultural institutions. Exhibition and collection documentation relating to Bihar's material and living cultural traditions.
- Indira Gandhi National Centre for the Arts. Digital and archival resources on folk, ritual, performance, manuscripts and traditional knowledge in eastern India.
- Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal, ISSN 2229-547X. Digital archives of Maithili literature, audio-video performance, discussion, documentary material and cultural documentation.
- UN Trade and Development (UNCTAD). *Creative Economy Outlook 2024*. Geneva: United Nations, 2024.
- UNESCO. *Culture: The Missing SDG — Global Report on Cultural Policies*. Paris: UNESCO, 2025.
- UNESCO. *MONDIACULT 2025 Narrative Report*. Paris: UNESCO, 2026.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. *Traditional Cultural Expressions: policy and intellectual-property resources*. Geneva: WIPO, current materials accessed September 2026.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. *IP and Traditional Handicrafts*. Geneva: WIPO, current guidance accessed September 2026.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. *World Intellectual Property Indicators 2025: Geographical Indications Highlights*. Geneva: WIPO, 2025.
- Government of India, Ministry of Finance. *Economic Survey 2025–26*, chapter on services and Box VII.6, 'The Orange Economy — An Emerging Lever for Media, Tourism and Urban Services'. New Delhi, 2026.
- Government of India, Ministry of Information & Broadcasting. *Union Budget 2026–27: Major Boost for Orange Economy and Creative Education*. Press Information Bureau, 1 February 2026.
- Government of India, Ministry of Information & Broadcasting. *Government Accelerates Orange Economy; Expands Content Creator Labs and Skill Development Initiatives Nationwide*. Press Information Bureau, 2 April 2026.
- Government of India, Ministry of Information & Broadcasting. *Ministry I&B Launches Pilot Phase of 'Gems of India' Challenge to Spotlight Grassroots Digital Creators*. Press Information Bureau, 21 July 2026.
- Government of India, Ministry of Information & Broadcasting. *Union Minister Unveils AI Skilling, MyWAVES and Digital Content Initiatives*. Press Information Bureau, 23 March 2026.
- Government of India, Ministry of Tourism. *India Tourism Data Compendium 2025, state/UT tourist-visit tables for 2023–2024*. New Delhi, 2025.
- Government of India, Ministry of Micro, Small & Medium Enterprises. *SFURTI State-wise Cluster Details: Bihar, including the Traditional Painting Cluster, Madhubani*. Current portal record accessed September 2026.
- Government of India, Intellectual Property India. *GI Application No. 37: Madhubani Paintings — public register details and renewal documents*. Current entry accessed September 2026.
- Government of Nepal, Ministry of Culture, Tourism and Civil Aviation. *Nepal Tourism Statistics 2025*. Kathmandu, 2026.
- Nepal Tourism Board. *Madhesh Tourism Meet 2025, Janakpur–Birgunj*, press release, 14 June 2025.
- Nepal Tourism Board. *Janakpur destination information: religious heritage, Mithila art and festivals*. Current official tourism portal.
- Madhesh Province Government, Ministry of Industry, Commerce and Tourism. *Madhesh Province Tourism Act, 2081*, and ministry mandate on industry, trade, intellectual property and tourism. Janakpurdhām.
- Trade and Export Promotion Centre, Government of Nepal. *Handicraft sector profile and export procedures*. Kathmandu, current portal materials.
- World Bank. *Unlocking Nepal's Growth Potential: Nepal Country Economic Memorandum 2025*. Washington, DC and Kathmandu, 2025.
- World Bank. *Digital Economy: policy brief on digital infrastructure, skills, startups and governance*. 2025.
- Braudel, Fernand. *On History*. Translated by Sarah Matthews. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1980.
- Bloch, Marc. *The Historian's Craft*. Manchester: Manchester University Press, 1954.
- Kosambi, D. D. *An Introduction to the Study of Indian History*. Bombay: Popular Prakashan, 1956.
- Thapar, Romila. *Early India: From the Origins to AD 1300*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2002.
- Singh, Upinder. *A History of Ancient and Early Medieval India: From the Stone Age to the 12th Century*. Delhi: Pearson, 2008.

- Sharma, R. S. *Indian Feudalism, c. 300–1200*. Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1965; later revised editions.
- Cohn, Bernard S. *An Anthropologist among the Historians and Other Essays*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1987.
- Robb, Peter. *Ancient Rights and Future Comfort: Bihar, the Bengal Tenancy Act of 1885, and British Rule in India*. Richmond: Curzon Press, 1997.
- Davis, Kingsley. *The Population of India and Pakistan*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1951.
- Dyson, Tim. *A Population History of India: From the First Modern People to the Present Day*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2018.
- Finance Department, Government of Bihar. *Bihar Economic Survey*, recent editions, for long-run state and sectoral series.
- IPCC. *Climate Change 2022: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability*. Working Group II contribution to the Sixth Assessment Report. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2022.
- Polanyi, Karl. *The Great Transformation: The Political and Economic Origins of Our Time*. New York: Farrar & Rinehart, 1944; later editions.
- Braudel, Fernand. *Civilization and Capitalism, 15th–18th Century*. 3 vols. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1982–84.
- Chakravarti, Ranabir. *Trade in Early India*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Prakash, Om. *The New Cambridge History of India, II.5: European Commercial Enterprise in Pre-Colonial India*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1998.
- Kumar, Dharma, ed. *The Cambridge Economic History of India, Volume 2: c.1757–c.1970*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983.
- Roy, Tirthankar. *The Economic History of India, 1857–1947*. 3rd ed. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2011.
- Roy, Tirthankar. *India in the World Economy: From Antiquity to the Present*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2012.
- Bose, Sugata. *Peasant Labour and Colonial Capital: Rural Bengal since 1770*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1993.
- Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India. *Agriculture Census and agricultural statistics series for Bihar*.
- Finance Department, Government of Bihar. *Bihar Economic Survey*, recent editions, chapters on agriculture, transport, banking, migration and rural development.
- Reserve Bank of India. *Handbook of Statistics on Indian States and reports on rural credit, banking inclusion and payment systems*.
- Government of Nepal, Ministry of Finance. *Economic Survey*, recent editions, chapters on agriculture, trade, remittances, transport and financial development.
- World Bank. *Bihar: Towards a Development Strategy*. Washington, DC: World Bank, selected analytical reports on agriculture, infrastructure and poverty.
- Karve, Irawati. *Kinship Organization in India*. Poona: Deccan College, 1953; later editions.
- Dumont, Louis. *Homo Hierarchicus: The Caste System and Its Implications*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1970.
- Chakravarti, Uma. *Gendering Caste: Through a Feminist Lens*. Kolkata: Stree, 2003.
- Raheja, Gloria Goodwin, and Ann Grodzins Gold. *Listen to the Heron's Words: Reimagining Gender and Kinship in North India*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1994.
- Oldenburg, Veena Talwar. *Dowry Murder: The Imperial Origins of a Cultural Crime*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.
- Government of Bihar. *Bihar Caste-Based Survey, 2022–23: population and socio-economic tabulations, official releases and reports*.
- Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation, Government of India. *Periodic Labour Force Survey*, recent annual reports and state tables.
- Central Water Commission, Government of India. *Flood Forecasting and Hydrological Observation reports and river-basin publications*, selected years.
- Bihar State Disaster Management Authority. *Flood Safety, disaster-management plans and district-level flood preparedness guidance*, selected editions.
- Government of India, Ministry of Jal Shakti. *Ganga basin, irrigation, flood-management and water-resources reports*, selected editions.
- National Remote Sensing Centre / ISRO and India-WRIS. *Remote-sensing and water-resources datasets for river channels, floodplains and inundation*.
- Department of Hydrology and Meteorology, Government of Nepal. *Hydrological observations, flood bulletins and early-warning documentation*, selected years.
- Water and Energy Commission Secretariat, Government of Nepal. *Water Resources Strategy and basin-planning documents*.
- International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development (ICIMOD). *Hindu Kush Himalayan hydrology, Koshi basin, transboundary flood-risk and community early-warning publications*, selected years.
- World Bank. *Bihar Kosi Flood Recovery Project: project documents, implementation reports and evaluations*.

- Asian Development Bank. Bihar and Nepal flood-risk, climate-resilience and water-management project documents, selected years.
- D'Souza, Rohan. *Drowned and Dammed: Colonial Capitalism and Flood Control in Eastern India*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2006.
- Rennell, James. *A Bengal Atlas*. London, 1779, and related eighteenth-century mapping of the Gangetic plains.
- Buchanan-Hamilton, Francis. Early nineteenth-century survey materials for Bihar and Bengal, including descriptions of agriculture, rivers, fisheries and markets.
- O'Malley, L. S. S., and other compilers. *Bengal District Gazetteers for Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Purnea, Bhagalpur and adjoining districts*, selected editions.
- Government of Bengal / Bihar and Orissa. Settlement reports, cadastral surveys and district administration reports for north Bihar and the Bhagalpur–Anga region, selected years.
- Government of Bihar, Finance Department. *Bihar Economic Survey*, recent editions, chapters on agriculture, irrigation, fisheries, roads, disaster management and climate resilience.
- Directorate of Economics and Statistics, Government of Bihar. *Agricultural, irrigation, livestock and fisheries statistics*, selected editions.
- International Water Management Institute. *Eastern Gangetic Plains and South Asian irrigation, groundwater and floodplain livelihood research*, selected publications.
- Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. *Floodplain agriculture, fisheries, disaster-risk reduction and climate-resilient agriculture guidance*, selected publications.
- World Bank. *Nepal Development Update and climate/disaster-risk analytical reports*, selected editions.
- UNDRR. *Global and South Asian disaster-risk reduction frameworks and terminology*, including hazard, exposure, vulnerability and resilience.
- Constitution of India. Eighth Schedule and the Constitution (Ninety-second Amendment) Act, 2003, adding Maithili to the Eighth Schedule.
- Government of India, Ministry of Education. *National Education Policy 2020*, provisions on multilingualism and home/mother-tongue learning.
- Government of India, Ministry of Electronics and Information Technology. *Digital India BHASHINI / National Language Translation Mission programme documentation*, selected releases.
- Unicode Consortium. *The Unicode Standard: Tirhuta block (U+11480–U+114DF)*, character charts and related technical documentation.
- Sahitya Akademi. *Publications and institutional materials relating to Maithili language and literature*.
- National Translation Mission, Central Institute of Indian Languages. *Translation, terminology and multilingual knowledge-resource publications*.
- Government of Nepal. *Constitution of Nepal, 2015*, provisions on languages of the nation, official language, education and cultural rights.
- Language Commission, Government of Nepal. *Annual reports and recommendations on official and provincial language use*, selected years.
- Government of Nepal, Ministry of Education, Science and Technology. *School education and multilingual/mother-tongue education policy materials*, selected editions.
- UNESCO. *Education in a Multilingual World*. Paris: UNESCO, 2003.
- UNESCO. *Guidance and global education materials on mother-tongue and multilingual education*, selected editions.
- Grierson, George A. *Linguistic Survey of India, Vol. V, Indo-Aryan Family, Eastern Group*, including materials on Bihari and Maithili varieties. Calcutta: Government of India, early twentieth century.
- King, Christopher R. *One Language, Two Scripts: The Hindi Movement in Nineteenth Century North India*. Bombay: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Government of Bihar. *Education, culture, language-academy and public-information materials relevant to Maithili, Angika and Bajjika*, selected years.
- All India Radio / Prasar Bharati. *Regional-language broadcasting schedules, archives and programme documentation relevant to Bihar*, selected years.
- Press Information Bureau, Government of India. *Official releases concerning scheduled languages, multilingual digital services and language technology*, selected years.
- Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal. *Digital literary, archival and language-technology materials*
- World Bank and UNESCO. *Digital inclusion, education and service-delivery research relevant to language access and multilingual communication*, selected publications.

- Treaty of Peace and Friendship between the Government of India and the Government of Nepal, 31 July 1950.
- Government of India and Government of Nepal. Treaty of Transit, signed 1 June 2023, including multimodal transit routes and access provisions.
- Ministry of External Affairs, Government of India. India–Nepal Relations / bilateral brief, updated materials including 20 June 2024.
- Ministry of External Affairs, Government of India. Annual Report 2024–25, sections on Nepal and neighbourhood relations.
- Government of India and Government of Nepal. Joint Vision Statement on Power Sector Cooperation, 2 April 2022.
- Government of India and Government of Nepal. Agreement for Long-Term Power Trade, finalised January 2024, envisaging export of up to 10,000 MW from Nepal to India over ten years.
- Department of Commerce, Government of India. Annual Report 2023–24, sections on India–Nepal trade and the revised Treaty of Transit.
- Department of Customs, Government of Nepal. Foreign Trade Statistics, fiscal year 2082/83 and preceding comparable series.
- Nepal Rastra Bank. Current Macroeconomic and Financial Situation, 2025/26 monthly and annual series; payment-system indicators and foreign-exchange materials.
- World Bank. Nepal Development Update: Growth Under Pressure — Navigating Domestic and Global Shocks. Kathmandu/Washington, April 2026.
- World Bank. Nepal Development Update: Reforms to Accelerate Public Investment. November 2025.
- Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, India. Census of India 2011: Bihar population, migration and language tables.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal, 2015, provisions on federal, provincial and local government.
- Constitution of India and Government of Bihar legal and administrative materials relevant to state–Union competences and border districts.
- Asian Development Bank. South Asia Subregional Economic Cooperation and trade-facilitation publications relevant to Nepal and India, selected editions.
- International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development (ICIMOD). Transboundary river, flood-forecasting and regional resilience research relevant to the Nepal–Bihar plains, selected publications.
- NPCI. UPI Global Acceptance and UPI product documentation, selected editions.
- Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal.
- UNESCO. Basic Texts of the 2005 Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions, current edition.
- International Council of Museums (ICOM). Museum Definition adopted by the Extraordinary General Assembly, Prague, 24 August 2022.
- International Council of Museums (ICOM). Museum Definition Handbook: Words Inspiring Action. 2025.
- World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO). Traditional Cultural Expressions: policy and resource materials, current web edition.
- WIPO. Documentation of Traditional Knowledge and Traditional Cultural Expressions. Background Brief No. 9. Geneva, 2023.
- WIPO. Intellectual Property and the Safeguarding of Traditional Cultures: Legal Issues and Practical Options for Museums, Libraries and Archives. Geneva, selected edition.
- WIPO. Digitizing Traditional Culture: Cultural Documentation and IP Management Training Program materials.
- Intellectual Property India, Geographical Indications Registry. Madhubani Paintings, Application No. 37: public register entry and associated renewal documents.
- Sahitya Akademi. Annual reports, language programmes, awards, publications and institutional materials relevant to Maithili literature, selected editions.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Art, Culture and Youth. Museum, heritage, academy, festival and cultural-programme materials, selected editions.
- Government of Bihar, Department of Industries and handicraft/ODOP materials relevant to Madhubani painting, Manjusha, Sikki, Sujni and Bhagalpur silk, selected editions.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal, 2015, provisions on language, culture, heritage and federal, provincial and local powers.
- Government of Madhesh Province. Cultural, tourism, education and language-programme materials, selected editions.
- Census of India 2011. Language tables and Bihar district-level materials relevant to Maithili and regional linguistic reconstruction.
- Blackburn, Stuart H., and Vasudha Dalmia, eds. India's Literary History: Essays on the Nineteenth Century. New Delhi: Permanent Black, 2004.
- Appadurai, Arjun. Modernity at Large: Cultural Dimensions of Globalization. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1996.

- Hobsbawm, Eric, and Terence Ranger, eds. *The Invention of Tradition*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983.
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Economic Survey, selected editions through 2025–26, including agriculture, infrastructure, social sectors, finance and development indicators.
- Government of Nepal. Constitution of Nepal, 2015, and current federal, provincial and local institutional materials relevant to citizenship, language, culture and social policy.
- UNESCO. *Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions*. Paris, 2005.
- World Intellectual Property Organization. *Traditional Cultural Expressions and documentation/safeguarding guidance*, selected current materials.
- Braudel, Fernand. *On History*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1980.
- Bloch, Marc. *The Historian's Craft*. Manchester: Manchester University Press, selected edition.
- Ludden, David. *An Agrarian History of South Asia*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999.
- Sen, Amartya. *Development as Freedom*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999.
- Ostrom, Elinor. *Governing the Commons: The Evolution of Institutions for Collective Action*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990.

Index

A

- Agriculture, 97, 469, 500, 664, 723, 1032, 1042, 1142
 early historic rural economy, 97–104
 Mughal revenue and agrarian society, 469–476
 commercial agriculture and indigo, 500–506
 post-independence change, 664–671
 specialised regional economies, 723–731
 twenty-first-century agriculture, 1032–1041
 land fragmentation and livelihoods, 1042–1051
 climate risk, 1142–1150
- Anga, 130, 326, 376, 420, 469, 477, 507, 714, 786, 858, 945, 1315
 Campā/Champa and early urban history, 130–137
 Persianate and regional cultural worlds, 326–332
 eastern linguistic-cultural zone / Angika, 376–384
 food and material culture, 420–427
 Mughal and colonial economy, 469–476, 477–484, 507–514
 Bhagalpur silk, 714–722
 Muslim social history, 786–793
 migration to Calcutta/Kolkata, 858–866
 print and literary institutions, 945–952
 India–Nepal comparative synthesis, 1315–1323
- Angika, see also Anga; Print culture
- Archaeology, 32, 42, 49, 64, 403
 prehistoric settlement, 32–41
 early agrarian communities, 42–48
 food and everyday life, 49–56
 second urbanisation, 64–71
 architecture and settlement, 403–411
- Architecture and settlement, 403–411

B

- Bajjika, 385, 617, 1244
 western Mithila language history, 385–393
 education and institutions in Nepal, 617–624
 contemporary public life, 1244–1253
- Banking and rural credit, 688–695
- Bhagalpur, 130, 477, 507, 714, 858, 1092
 Anga and Campā, 130–137
 trade and commodity networks, 477–484, 507–514
 silk economy, 714–722
 migration and urban circuits, 858–866
 contemporary connectivity, 1092–1102
- Buddha, 66, 80, 89, 96, 114, 127, 137, 151, 158, 166, 174, 183, 190, 197, 207, 215, 223, 235, 247, 405, 1115, 1217, 1386
- Buddhism, 148, 189, 216
 institutional economy, 148–158
 Vajji and Videha, 189–197
 sacred geography, 216–224

C

Campā / Champa, see Anga; Bhagalpur

Caste, 80, 272, 281, 524, 759, 769, 830, 1224, 1290

before fixed caste narratives, 80–88

medieval social classification, 272–280, 281–289

colonial surveys and categories, 524–531

historical caste relations, 759–768

Dalit histories, 769–777

reservation and new middle classes, 830–838

contemporary caste, 1224–1233

longue durée synthesis, 1290–1298

Census of India, 28, 650, 789, 849, 910, 1027, 1031, 1186, 1195, 1207, 1213, 1222, 1233, 1252, 1309, 1347, 1356, 1361–1362, 1365, 1368–1369, 1397

Chaur, see Floods; Rivers

Climate and environmental risk, 24, 57, 680, 1142, 1151, 1299

physical foundations, 24–31

environment and settlement, 57–62

flood history, 680–687

climate change and agrarian risk, 1142–1150

adaptation and resilience, 1151–1158

riverine ecology synthesis, 1299–1306

Cooperatives, 696–704

Crafts, 105, 412, 633, 1122

early technology and crafts, 105–112

textiles and ornament, 412–419

Janakpur art and crafts, 633–639

Mithila painting global market, 1122–1131

D

Dalit histories, 769–777

Darbhangā, 493, 532, 541, 656

landed society and Permanent Settlement, 493–499

colonial education, 532–540

print culture, 541–550

zamindari abolition, 656–663

Darbhangā Raj, 295, 472, 496, 536, 553, 648, 736, 762, 839, 971, 1345

Diara, see Floods; Rivers

Digital culture, 997, 1007, 1015, 1103, 1206, 1262

Videha, 997–1006

digital archives, 1007–1014

Unicode and Tirhuta, 1015–1021

digital payments and platforms, 1103–1111

social media and language, 1206–1214

cultural economy, 1262–1270

Dowry, 812, 1178

marriage and family structures, 812–820

changing marriage practices, 1178–1186

E

Economic development, 648, 664, 705, 750, 1023, 1032, 1052, 1092, 1103, 1112, 1281

post-1947/post-1950 development, 648–655, 664–671, 705–713, 750–757

- contemporary economy, 1023–1031, 1032–1041, 1052–1061, 1092–1102, 1103–1111, 1112–1121
- market integration synthesis, 1281–1289
- Education, 159, 532, 617, 732, 821, 1072, 1187
 - early intellectual communities, 159–167
 - colonial education, 532–540
 - Nepal language and education institutions, 617–624
 - post-independence education, 732–740
 - social mobility, 821–829
 - education economy and coaching migration, 1072–1082
 - gender, education and employment, 1187–1196

F

- Fairs and public culture, 461–467
- Family and household, 72, 299, 625, 794, 812, 902, 1169, 1178, 1290
 - early historic household, 72–79
 - medieval marriage and property, 299–307
 - Madhesh household economy, 625–632
 - gender and household economy, 794–802
 - marriage, inheritance and changing family, 812–820
 - remittances and household transformation, 902–909
 - family transformation, 1169–1177
 - changing marriage practices, 1178–1186
 - household across time, 1290–1298
- Famine and scarcity, 515–523
- Federalism, Nepal, 1159, 1234, 1315
 - border economies after federalisation, 1159–1167
 - Madhesh, federalism and social citizenship, 1234–1243
 - India–Nepal political economies, 1315–1323
- Floods, 57, 672, 680, 1142, 1151, 1299
 - environment and settlement, 57–62
 - Kosi and Gandak projects, 672–679
 - social and economic history, 680–687
 - climate risk, 1142–1150
 - adaptation and resilience, 1151–1158
 - riverine ecology synthesis, 1299–1306
- Food history, 49, 420, 515, 723
 - archaeology of food, 49–56
 - regional food history, 420–427
 - famine and food security, 515–523
 - specialised economies, 723–731
- Francis Buchanan-Hamilton, 477, 479–480, 524, 531, 577–580, 585, 1358, 1360, 1362, 1396

G

- Gaṅgeśa / Gangesha, 394–397, 399, 401, 1356
- Gender, 89, 299, 568, 625, 794, 803, 812, 988, 1169, 1187, 1290
 - women in early society, 89–96
 - medieval marriage and property, 299–307
 - women and colonial modernity, 568–575
 - Madhesh citizenship and household, 625–632
 - household economy, 794–802
 - paid and unpaid labour, 803–811

- marriage and inheritance, 812–820
- women writers, 988–996
- family transformation, 1169–1177
- education and employment, 1187–1196
- household synthesis, 1290–1298

Geographical Indication (GI), 1132–1141

George A. Grierson, 340–341, 349, 351, 368, 371, 373, 377–380, 384–385, 387, 391–392, 455, 524, 529, 531, 538, 544, 1396

GI, see Geographical Indication (GI)

Government of Bihar, 28, 1347, 1356, 1358–1359, 1362, 1365–1374, 1376–1377, 1381–1384, 1397

Government of Nepal, 26, 582, 1347, 1356, 1362–1366, 1369–1370, 1372–1373, 1375–1377, 1381–1385, 1388, 1397

H

Health, 168, 568, 625, 741, 1083

- early medicine and body, 168–177
- women and colonial modernity, 568–575
- Madhesh household/citizenship, 625–632
- post-independence public health, 741–749
- contemporary health economy, 1083–1091

I

India–Nepal borderland, 577, 610, 640, 885, 1159, 1315

- historical border economy, 577–585
- migration and settlement, 610–616
- border markets and informal exchange, 640–646
- circular migration, 885–892
- border economies after federalisation, 1159–1167
- interaction-zone synthesis, 1315–1323

Indigo, 500–506

Industrialisation, 705–713

Inheritance, 299, 812, 1178

- medieval women, marriage and property, 299–307
- postcolonial marriage and family structures, 812–820
- changing marriage practices, 1178–1186

J

Jainism, 148, 198, 216

- institutional economy, 148–158
- Vaiśālī–Videha landscape, 198–206
- sacred geography, 216–224

Janakpur, 586, 617, 633, 1112

- religious, commercial and urban centre, 586–593
- language and education institutions, 617–624
- art, crafts and cultural economy, 633–639
- tourism and pilgrimage, 1112–1121

Janakpur Women's Development Center, 635, 639, 993, 1122, 1127, 1364, 1379, 1387

Jyotirīśvara, 308, 310, 312, 316, 336–337, 343, 345–346, 350, 352–353, 357–359, 415, 423–425, 446, 453, 1354, 1358

K

Karna Kayastha, 294, 760–761, 812, 1343, 1353

Kosi, 24, 672, 680, 1142, 1151, 1299

- physical landscape, 24–31

river-development projects, 672–679
 flood history, 680–687
 climate risk and resilience, 1142–1150, 1151–1158
 riverine ecology synthesis, 1299–1306

L

Labour, 264, 559, 803, 876, 918, 1042
 medieval occupational communities, 264–271
 colonial labour migration, 559–567
 women paid and unpaid labour, 803–811
 seasonal agricultural labour, 876–884
 informal economies, 918–925
 rural livelihoods, 1042–1051
 Land grants, 245–253
 Land reform, 648, 656, 839
 independence and agrarian change, 648–655
 abolition of zamindari, 656–663
 changing landed power, 839–847
 Language as social infrastructure, 1307–1314

M

Madhesh, see Madhesh / Tarai
 Madhesh / Tarai, 577, 594, 602, 610, 617, 625, 633, 640, 1234, 1315
 borderland economy, 577–585
 land and tenancy, 594–601
 forest clearance and demographic change, 602–609
 migration and settlement, 610–616
 language and education, 617–624
 gender and citizenship, 625–632
 art and crafts, 633–639
 border markets, 640–646
 federalism and social citizenship, 1234–1243
 India–Nepal synthesis, 1315–1323
 Mahāvīra, 95, 127, 148, 154–155, 168, 172, 182, 188, 198–201, 203–206, 219, 223–224, 228, 241, 1351
 Maithili, 343, 352, 360, 541, 617, 935, 953, 979, 988, 997, 1007, 1015, 1244, 1307
 formation of literary Maithili, 343–351
 two Vidyāpatis, 352–359
 Tirhuta/Mithilakshar, 360–367
 colonial print, 541–550
 education and institutions in Nepal, 617–624
 print and literary institutions, 935–944
 radio and broadcasting, 953–960
 institutional canon formation, 979–987
 women writers, 988–996
 Videha and digital culture, 997–1006
 digital archives, 1007–1014
 Unicode and Tirhuta, 1015–1021
 contemporary public life, 1244–1253
 language infrastructure synthesis, 1307–1314
 Makhana, 723–731
 Markets, 113, 122, 130, 254, 461, 477, 586, 640, 750, 918, 1112, 1159, 1281

- early trade and merchants, 113–121
- Vaiśālī, 122–129
- Anga and Campā, 130–137
- village, market and town, 254–263
- fairs and public culture, 461–467
- Mughal/Bengal–Bihar–Nepal trade, 477–484
- Janakpur, 586–593
- border markets, 640–646
- roads and markets, 750–757
- informal street commerce, 918–925
- tourism/pilgrimage, 1112–1121
- border economies, 1159–1167
- market integration synthesis, 1281–1289
- Marriage, 290, 299, 812, 1178, 1290
 - medieval women and property, 299–307
 - Panji and regulation, 290–298
 - marriage, dowry and inheritance, 812–820
 - changing marriage practices, 1178–1186
 - household synthesis, 1290–1298
- Migration, 317, 559, 610, 640, 849, 858, 867, 876, 885, 893, 902, 926, 1052, 1072, 1169
 - Islam, migration and new social worlds, 317–325
 - colonial labour migration, 559–567
 - Nepal migration and settlement, 610–616
 - border markets/remittances, 640–646
 - longue durée, 849–857
 - Calcutta/Kolkata, 858–866
 - Delhi and Mumbai, 867–875
 - Punjab and Haryana, 876–884
 - Nepal–India circular migration, 885–892
 - Gulf migration, 893–901
 - remittances and household change, 902–909
 - diaspora institutions, 926–933
 - migration-dependent economies, 1052–1061
 - education/coaching migration, 1072–1082
 - family transformation, 1169–1177
- Mithila, 24, 245, 308, 334, 343, 403, 428, 445, 469, 493, 577, 648, 759, 849, 935, 1023, 1169, 1272, 1315, 1332
 - historical geography and environment, 24–31
 - medieval social transformation, 245–253, 308–316
 - language and literature, 334–342, 343–351
 - material culture, 403–411, 428–435, 445–452
 - colonial economy, 469–476, 493–499
 - Nepal/Madhesh interaction, 577–585
 - post-independence development, 648–655
 - caste/class/gender change, 759–768
 - migration and diaspora, 849–857
 - cultural modernity, 935–944
 - contemporary economy, 1023–1031
 - contemporary social change, 1169–1177
 - synthesis, 1272–1280, 1315–1323, 1332–1340
- Mithila painting, 428, 436, 633, 1122, 1132, 1262
 - before and beyond modern art market, 428–435
 - twentieth-century cultural economy, 436–444

- Janakpur art and crafts, 633–639
- global market, 1122–1131
- GI and heritage branding, 1132–1141
- future cultural economy, 1262–1270
- Mithilakshar / Tirhuta, 360, 541, 1007, 1015, 1307
 - scribal culture, 360–367
 - print and script change, 541–550
 - digital archives, 1007–1014
 - Unicode recognition, 1015–1021
 - language infrastructure, 1307–1314
- Monetisation, 138–147
- Muslims, 317, 326, 786
 - Islam, migration and new social worlds, 317–325
 - Persianate culture, 326–332
 - Muslims of Mithila and Anga, 786–793

N

- Nepal, 577, 586, 594, 602, 610, 617, 625, 633, 640, 885, 1159, 1234, 1315
 - borderland economy, 577–585
 - Janakpur, 586–593
 - Tarai land and tenancy, 594–601
 - forest clearance and demographic change, 602–609
 - migration, 610–616
 - language/education, 617–624
 - gender/citizenship, 625–632
 - art/crafts, 633–639
 - border markets, 640–646
 - circular migration, 885–892
 - federalism and border economy, 1159–1167, 1234–1243
 - India–Nepal synthesis, 1315–1323

O

- Opium, 507–514
- Oral culture, 368, 445, 988, 1007
 - oral culture, 368–375
 - music and song, 445–452
 - women writers and alternative publics, 988–996
 - digital preservation, 1007–1014

P

- Panji tradition, 290, 299, 352, 812, 1290
 - genealogy and social regulation, 290–298
 - marriage and property, 299–307
 - two Vidyāpatis: chronology control, 352–359
 - marriage and changing family structures, 812–820
 - household synthesis, 1290–1298
- Permanent Settlement, 493, 656, 839
 - landed society, 493–499
 - zamindari abolition and consequences, 656–663
 - rural elites and landed power, 839–847
- Persianate culture, 326–332

Print culture, 541, 935, 945, 970, 979
 colonial print, 541–550
 Maithili institutions, 935–944
 Angika institutions, 945–952
 newspapers and public debate, 970–978
 canon formation, 979–987
 Public health, 741–749

R

Radio and broadcasting, 953–960
 Railways and roads, 551, 750, 1092
 colonial railways and markets, 551–558
 post-independence communications, 750–757
 contemporary connectivity, 1092–1102
 Religion and ritual, 179, 189, 198, 207, 216, 225, 235, 1215, 1254, 1324
 Vedic to regional religious cultures, 179–188
 Buddhism, 189–197
 Jainism, 198–206
 Śaiva/Śākta/Vaiṣṇava change, 207–215
 sacred geography, 216–224
 festivals, 225–234
 life-cycle rites, 235–243
 public ritual today, 1215–1223
 heritage and living culture, 1254–1261
 cultural persistence, 1324–1331
 Remittances, 640, 902, 1052, 1062, 1169
 border markets and remittances, 640–646
 household transformation, 902–909
 migration-dependent economies, 1052–1061
 consumption and housing, 1062–1071
 family transformation, 1169–1177
 Reservation and affirmative action, 830–838
 Rivers, 24, 57, 672, 680, 1142, 1151, 1299
 physical foundations, 24–31
 environment and settlement, 57–62
 development projects, 672–679
 flood history, 680–687
 climate adaptation, 1142–1150, 1151–1158
 riverine ecology synthesis, 1299–1306
 Rural credit, 688–695

S

Sacred geography, 216–224
 Sahitya Akademi, 979–987
 Silk, Bhagalpur, 714–722
 Social citizenship, 625, 1234
 Madhesh gender and citizenship, 625–632
 federalism and social citizenship, 1234–1243
 Social media, 1206–1214
 Śrotriya, 281, 290, 352
 Brahmanical institutions and chronology, 281–289

Panji tradition, 290–298
 two Vidyāpatis / chronology control, 352–359

T

Tenancy, 245, 594, 648, 656, 1042
 medieval agrarian relations, 245–253
 Nepal Tarai land and tenancy, 594–601
 land reform and zamindari abolition, 648–655, 656–663
 land fragmentation, 1042–1051
 Theatre, 453, 961
 recorded performance, 961–969
 Tirhut, see Mithila
 Tirhuta, see Mithilakshar / Tirhuta
 Tourism and pilgrimage, 1112–1121
 Trade, 113, 122, 130, 477, 577, 640, 1159
 early merchants and markets, 113–121
 Vaiśālī, 122–129
 Anga and Campā, 130–137
 Mughal/Bengal–Bihar–Nepal circuits, 477–484
 borderland economy, 577–585
 border markets, 640–646
 contemporary border economy, 1159–1167

U

Unicode, 1015–1021
 Urbanisation, 64, 122, 130, 254, 586, 910
 second urbanisation, 64–71
 Vaiśālī, 122–129
 Anga and Campā, 130–137
 village, market and town, 254–263
 Janakpur, 586–593
 contemporary urbanisation, 910–917

V

Vaiśālī / Vaishali, 122, 189, 198, 216
 economic and social centre, 122–129
 Buddhism, 189–197
 Jainism, 198–206
 sacred geography, 216–224
 Vajji / Vṛji, 64, 80, 122, 189, 198, 216, 1315
 early historic society, 64–71, 80–88
 Vaiśālī, 122–129
 Buddhism, 189–197
 Jainism, 198–206
 sacred geography, 216–224
 India–Nepal synthesis, 1315–1323
 Videha, 64, 72, 89, 189, 198, 334, 997, 1272, 1332
 early historic society, 64–71, 72–79, 89–96
 Buddhism, 189–197
 Jainism, 198–206
 language before standardisation, 334–342

- Videha digital literary culture, 997–1006
- synthesis, 1272–1280, 1332–1340
- Videha eJournal, 997, 1007
- digital literary culture, 997–1006
- digital archives and preservation, 1007–1014
- Vidyāpati Thakkura, 352–359
- Vidyāpati, Mahākavi, 352–359
- Vṛji, see Vajji / Vṛji

W

- Women, 89, 299, 568, 625, 794, 803, 812, 988, 1169, 1187
 - early Mithila–Vajji–Anga, 89–96
 - medieval marriage/property, 299–307
 - colonial modernity, 568–575
 - Madhesh household/citizenship, 625–632
 - household economy, 794–802
 - paid/unpaid labour, 803–811
 - marriage/dowry/inheritance, 812–820
 - women writers, 988–996
 - family transformation, 1169–1177
 - education/employment, 1187–1196

Y

- Youth culture, 1197–1205

Z

- Zamindari, 493, 656, 839
 - Permanent Settlement, 493–499
 - abolition and uneven consequences, 656–663
 - rural elites and changing landed power, 839–847



ABOUT THIS VOLUME

Volume II of History of Mithila, Vajji & Anga in India & Nepal turns from politics and dynasties to the social, cultural and economic textures of everyday life. Beginning with the physical landscape and prehistoric settlement, it follows the households, markets, guilds, sacred geographies and literary cultures of Videha, Vajji and Anga through the early historic, early medieval and colonial periods, into the demographic, economic and cultural transformations of Nepal Madhesh and post-independence India. Fifteen parts move from land and subsistence to religion and ritual, caste and gender, migration and diaspora, mass media and the contemporary economy, closing with a synthesis that reads the region across the *longue durée*. Grounded in archaeology, inscriptions, Panji and Śakhā-pustak records, colonial administration and modern statistics, this volume offers a connected social history of one of South Asia's most continuously inhabited river-plains.

CONTENTS OVERVIEW

I — Land, Environment & Human Landscapes	IX — Post-1947 / Post-1950 Development
II — Early Historic Society: Videha, Vajji & Anga	X — Caste, Class, Gender & Social Change
III — Religion, Ritual & Cultural Formation	XI — Migration, Urbanisation & Diaspora
IV — Early Medieval & Medieval Social Transformation	XII — Cultural Modernity & Mass Media
V — Language, Literature & Knowledge as Social History	XIII — The Contemporary Economy
VI — Material Culture & the Arts	XIV — Contemporary Social & Cultural Change
VII — Early Modern & Colonial Economic Transformations	XV — Synthesis
VIII — Nepal Mithila / Madhesh as a Region	

ABOUT THE AUTHOR

Gajendra Thakur is the founder-editor of Videha (विदेह), the first Maithili fortnightly eJournal, and the author of works spanning Maithili fiction, poetry, philosophy translation and, with this project, social history.

VIDEHA

विदेह

Editor, Videha — First Maithili Fortnightly eJournal
ISSN 2229-547X · www.videha.co.in



Mithila, Videha, Vajji, Anga, Tirhut, Madhesh and modern administrative units are treated as overlapping historical-geographical frames rather than interchangeable names with permanent borders.

— EDITORIAL NOTE ON HISTORICAL METHOD



9789334494150

ISBN 978-93-344-9415-0



Scan for volume details